Pro Tools Reference Guide

version 2026.11



Legal Notices

© 2026 Avid Technology, Inc., (“Avid”), all rights reserved. This guide may not be duplicated in whole or in part without the written consent of Avid.

For a current and complete list of Avid trademarks visit: www.avid.com/legal/trademarks-and-other-notices.

This product may be protected by one or more U.S. and non-U.S. patents. Details are available at https://www.avid.com/legal/patent-marking.

Product features, specifications, system requirements, and availability are subject to change without notice.

Bonjour, the Bonjour logo, and the Bonjour symbol are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

Thunderbolt and the Thunderbolt logo are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Pro Tools includes élastique Pro V3 by zplane.development as time stretching engine for Elastic Audio processing.

Confidential unpublished works. Copyright 2026 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

Dolby, Dolby Atmos, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Avid Pro Tools Reference Guide • Created 10/12/2026 • REV A

Contents

Part I: Introduction to Pro Tools 1

1 Welcome to Pro Tools 2

Avid Master Account 2

System Requirements and Compatibility Information 2

Conventions Used in Pro Tools Documentation 3

Resources 3

Account Activation and Product Registration 3

Support and Downloads 3

Training and Education 3

Videos and Tutorials 3

Products and Developers 4

Avid Link 4

Pro Tools Analytics 4

Pro Tools In-app Tutorials 5

2 Pro Tools Concepts 6

Hard Disk Audio Recording 6

Nonlinear Editing 6

Audio Engines 6

Avid Audio Engine 6

Core Audio (Mac Only) 6

WASAPI (Windows Only) 6

ASIO (Windows Only) 7

Avid Video Engine 7

MIDI 7

Synchronization 8

Surround Sound 8

Pro Tools Sessions 8

Session Files 8

Tracks ... 9
Voices ... 10
Media Files ... 10
Clips ... 11
Playlists ... 12
Channels ... 13
Signal Routing ... 15
Pro Tools Projects ... 16
Pro Tools Sketches ... 17
Tick-Based and Sample-Based Time ... 17
Sample-Based Audio and MIDI ... 18
Tick-Based Audio and MIDI ... 18
Elastic Audio ... 18
System Resources ... 18
Active and Inactive Items ... 19
Workspace Browsers ... 20
AAF, MXF, and OMF ... 21
Media Data (Media Files) ... 21
Metadata ... 21
AAF, OMF, and MXF Basics ... 21
Pro Tools and Media Composer Terminology ... 22
Embedded Media and Linked Media ... 22
Embedded Media ... 23
Linked Media ... 23
3 Keyboard and Mouse Shortcuts ... 25
Mouse Shortcuts ... 25
Global Key Commands ... 25
Keyboard Focus ... 26
Toolbar Focus ... 27
Numeric Keypad Modes ... 28
Shuttle Lock Modes ... 28

Shuttle Mode 29
Pro Tools Search 30
4 Using Help 32
Accessing Guides in Pro Tools Software 32
Accessing the Help System 32
Help Display 33
Part II: System Configuration 34
5 Pro Tools Systems 35
Pro Tools Intro Software 36
Supported Hardware Configurations with Pro Tools Intro Software 36
Pro Tools Artist Software 37
Supported Hardware Configurations with Pro Tools Artist Software 37
Pro Tools Studio Software 38
Supported Hardware Configurations with Pro Tools Studio Software 39
Pro Tools Ultimate Software 39
Supported Hardware Configurations with Pro Tools Ultimate Software 40
MBOX Studio 40
Pro Tools | Carbon Systems 42
Pro Tools | Carbon 42
Pro Tools | Carbon Pre and Expanded Systems 43
Pro Tools | HDX 43
Pro Tools Ultimate Capabilities with HDX Hardware 44
Pro Tools | HD Native 45
Pro Tools Ultimate Capabilities with HD Native Hardware 45
Supported Pro Tools HD Audio Interfaces 46
Maximum I/O Configuration with HDX 46
Maximum I/O Configuration with HD Native 46
Playback, Recording, and Voice Limits with Pro Tools Ultimate Software 47
Pro Tools HD Audio Interface Features 48
HD OMNI Audio Interface 48
HD I/O Audio Interface 49

HD MADI Digital Audio Interface 50
Pro Tools | MTRX 51
Pro Tools | MTRX II 52
Pro Tools | MTRX Studio 53
Pro Tools Hardware Options 54
Pro Tools Software Options 54
Pro Tools | MachineControl 54
Pro Tools with VENUE Link 54
6 I/O Setup 55
Opening the I/O Setup 55
Closing the I/O Setup 55
Navigating in the I/O Setup 56
Pro Tools Software Signal Paths 56
Main Paths and Sub-Paths 56
Paths in Sessions 57
Path Configurations and I/O Settings 57
I/O Setup Pages 58
Opening an I/O Setup Page 58
Input Page 58
Output Page 59
Bus Page 60
Dolby Atmos Page 61
Insert Page 62
Mic Preamps Page 63
H/W Insert Delay (Compensation) Page 64
I/O Setup Signal Path Controls 65
I/O Setup Buttons 66
I/O Setup Options 68
Compensate for Delays After Record Pass 68
Monitor Path 69
Audition Path 69

Output Meter Path ... 69
Default Output Bus ... 70
AFL/PFL Path ... 70
Low Latency Monitoring ... 71
Default Format ... 71
Path Order ... 71
Embed Eleven Settings From ... 72
Customizing I/O Settings ... 72
Configuring Hardware in I/O Setup ... 74
Routing a Pro Tools Output Pair to Multiple Destinations ... 74
Signal Path Routing for Audio Input ... 75
Signal Path Routing for Audio Output ... 76
Creating New Paths ... 77
New Paths Dialog ... 78
Add Default Channel Assignments Option ... 78
Auto-Create Related Bus Paths Option ... 79
Auto-Create Sub-Paths Option ... 79
Creating New Sub-Paths ... 80
New Sub-Path Dialog ... 80
Add Default Channel Assignments Option ... 81
Create Default Sub-Paths Option ... 81
Editing Paths ... 82
Restoring Default Paths and Path Names ... 82
Renaming Paths ... 83
Renaming Interfaces ... 83
Selecting Paths ... 84
Reordering Paths ... 84
Deleting Paths ... 85
Making Paths Active or Inactive ... 85
Assigning Paths to Hardware I/O ... 86
Reassiging Paths ... 86
Valid Paths and Requirements ... 87

Configuring buses 88
Output buses 88
Internal Mix buses 88
Creating and Mapping buses to Outputs 88
Using Keyboard Modifiers When Enabling or Assigning Output buses 91
Resetting buses 91
Sorting Bus Paths 92
Factory I/O Settings 92
Stereo Mix Settings 92
Surround Mix Settings 92
Downmix and Upmix Output buses to Outputs 93
Downmix and Upmix Indicators for Output Paths 93
I/O Settings Files 94
Last Used I/O Settings 94
Custom I/O Settings 94
Importing I/O Settings 94
Exporting I/O Settings 95
Restore from Session 95
Session or Project Interchange and I/O Mapping 96
Indication of Remapping in the Bus Page 96
Show Last Saved or Current Setup 96
I/O Settings and the Playback Engine 97
Organize Track I/O Menus By Preference 98
I/O Setup in Session Notes 98
Pro Tools Session Templates and I/O Settings 99
Aux I/O 99
Setting Up Aux I/O 100
Path Colors 101
Color with Multiple Output/Send Assignments 102
I/O Plate Color Saturation 102
Color in I/O Menus 103
Color Quick Assign 104

Additional I/O Color Coding Behaviors 105

7 System Setup 106

Starting Up or Shutting Down Your System 106

Running DigiTest 106

Configuring the Playback Engine 107

Playback Engine 107

Settings Section 115

Optimizations Section 118

Disk Playback Section 119

Configuring MIDI Setup 120

Configuring Hardware Settings in Pro Tools 120

Selecting an Audio Interface to Configure 121

Launch Control Panel or Setup App 121

Configuring Pro Tools Aggregate I/O 122

Configuring Default Sample Rate Setting in Hardware Setup 122

Configuring Clock Source 123

Configuring Digital Format and Hardware Routing 123

Configuring Pro Tools | HDX and Pro Tools | HD Native Hardware Settings 124

Identifying Audio Interfaces 124

Configuring Avid HD Audio Interfaces 124

Configuring HD OMNI Controls 126

Configuring HD I/O Controls 129

Configuring HD MADI Controls 130

Configuring MTRX, MTRX II, and MTRX Studio Controls 131

System Usage 131

CPU Meters 132

Activity Meters 132

Resources 132

Hybrid I/O Channels 132

HDX Card DSP Usage Meters 133

Managing System Resources 133

8 Preferences 135
Preferences Search 135
Display Preferences 136
Basics 137
Warnings and Dialogs 138
General Color 139
Marker Colors 140
Pinned Tracks 140
Clip Colors 141
Operation Preferences 142
Transport 143
Auto Backup 145
User Media and Settings Location 145
Record 145
Misc (Miscellaneous) 148
Video 148
Data Collection and Personalization 149
Logging 149
Editing Preferences 150
Clips 151
Tracks 152
Memory Locations 152
Fades 152
Zoom Toggle 153
Levels of Undo 154
Mixing Preferences 155
Setup 156
Controllers 157
Automation 158
Delay Compensation 160
Routing Coefficients 160

Metering Preferences 163
Track and Master Meter Types 164
Advanced Meter Type Settings 166
Peak/Clip 166
Display 167
Processing Preferences 169
AudioSuite 170
Import 170
Commit 171
TC/E (Time Compression/Expansion) 171
Elastic Audio 172
DSP Management 172
ARA 172
Miscellaneous 172
MIDI Preferences 174
Basics 175
Note Display Options 176
Delay Compensation for External Devices Options 176
MIDI/Score Editor Display 176
Collaboration Preferences 177
Pro Tools Track Collaboration 178
Cloud Storage Services 178
Synchronization Preferences 179
Machine Control 180
Synchronization 180
Remote Mode 180
Satellites 181
Global and Local Preferences 182
Local (Session or Project Only) Preferences 182
9 Peripherals 184
Synchronization 184

MTC Reader and Generator 186
Synchronization Device (HDX and HD Native Systems Only) 186
Machine Control 189
MIDI Machine Control Master 189
MIDI Machine Control Remote 189
9-Pin Machine Control (Deck Control) 190
9-Pin Remote (Deck Emulation) 190
MIDI Controllers 191
Ethernet Controllers 192
Mic Preamps 193
Satellites 193
VENUE 195
10 Configuring MIDI 196
MIDI Studio Setup (Mac) 196
Pro Tools Audio Bridge 200
MIDI Studio Setup (Windows) 201
MIDI Studio Setup Window 201
Part III: Sessions, Projects & Tracks 204
11 Sessions, Projects, and Sketches 205
Sessions, Projects, and Sketches 205
Pro Tools Sessions 205
Pro Tools Projects 205
Session and Project Interchange 205
Pro Tools Sketches 206
Signing In and Out of Your Avid Master Account 206
Dashboard Window 209
Dashboard Commands, Options, and Settings 210
New Session Tab Settings 210
Showing or Hiding the Dashboard on Start 218
Showing or Hiding the Dashboard After Closing a Session 218
Bit Depths and Sample Rates 219

Bit Depths 219
Sample Rates 219
Mixed Audio File Formats 220
Interleaved Multichannel and Multi-Mono Audio Files 220
Session Files and Folders 221
Session File 221
Audio Files Folder 221
Fade Files Folder 221
Bounced Files Folder 221
Rendered Files Folder 221
Clip Groups Folder 221
ARA Data Folder 222
Sampler Audio Files Folder 222
WaveCache File 222
Session File Backups Folder 222
Video Files Folder 222
Renamed Audio Files Folder 222
Pro Tools Projects 222
Backup to Cloud: Online and Offline Projects 223
Shared Projects and Ownership 223
Setting the Location of the Local Cache 224
Creating a New Session or Project from a Template 224
Creating a New Blank Session or Project 227
Opening a Recent Session, Project, or Sketch 229
Opening a Session 230
Opening a Session that Contains Fade Files 230
Opening a Session that Contains Unavailable Files 230
Opening a Session with Missing Plugins 230
Opening a Session from a Transfer Volume 231
Opening a Session that Contains Unavailable Resources 231
Opening a Session with Audio File Names that Contain Illegal Characters 231
Opening a Session that was Saved with +6 dB Fader Gain 232

Opening a Session or Project with Plugins Deactivated ... 232
Saving Sessions and Projects ... 233
Saving the Session File ... 233
Saving Projects ... 233
Reverting to a Previously Saved Session or Project ... 233
Saving the Session File with a New Name ... 233
Saving a Sketch ... 234
Save Copy In ... 234
How the Save Copy In Command Works ... 235
Save Copy In Options ... 236
Save As New Version ... 239
Revision History ... 239
Version List ... 240
Save History ... 240
Renaming Versions of a Project ... 241
Restoring a Version of the Project ... 242
Conflicts Between Shared Tracks in Different Versions of a Project ... 242
Importing Data from Another Version of a Project ... 243
Deleting a Version of a Project ... 243
Saving a Session as a Project ... 243
Saving a Project as a Session ... 245
Session Templates ... 246
Creating and Saving Custom Templates ... 246
Save Session Template Dialog ... 246
Creating New Sessions or Projects from Templates ... 247
Project and Session Metadata ... 247
Metadata Inspector Window ... 248
Project Notes ... 249
Closing a Session, Project, or Sketch ... 250
Renaming Projects ... 250
Remove Local Cache ... 250
Deleting Projects ... 251

Restore Project from Cloud 252
Open Revision History 253
Backup to Cloud 254
Project Collaboration Invitations in the Dashboard 255
Quitting or Exiting Pro Tools 255
12 Pro Tools Main Windows 256
Mix Window 257
Edit Window 259
Edit Window Toolbar 259
Showing and Hiding Additional Controls in the Edit Window 262
Rearranging Controls and Displays 265
Edit Window Zoom Buttons 265
Edit Window Default Length 266
Sketch Window 266
Transport Window 266
Basic Transport Controls and Counters 267
MIDI Controls 270
Synchronization 271
Output Meters 272
Track Collaboration 272
MIDI Editor Windows 272
Docked Displays in the Edit Window 273
MIDI Editor 273
Clip Effects 273
Open Last Shown Docked Editor 273
Score Editor Window 273
Workspace Browsers 273
Task Manager Window 274
Pro Tools Projects Window 275
12 Pro Tools Extensions 275
Side Panel for Extensions and the Clip List 276

Tab Behavior ... 276
Add/Select Tabs Menu ... 276
In-Application Web Browser ... 277
Pro Tools In-Application Web Browser Navigation Controls ... 277
Managing Windows ... 278
Window Configurations ... 278
Creating New Window Configurations ... 278
Recalling Window Configurations ... 279
Undoing Window Configurations ... 280
Editing Window Configurations ... 280
Updating Window Configurations ... 280
Clearing Window Configurations ... 281
Deleting Window Configurations ... 281
Importing Window Configurations ... 281
Arranging Windows ... 281
Hiding All Floating Windows ... 282
Closing Windows ... 282
How Window Configurations Work ... 282
Window Configuration List ... 283
Window Configuration Properties ... 283
Window Configuration Commands and Options ... 285
View Filter Icons ... 285
Window Configuration List Pop-Up Menu ... 286
Active Window Configuration ... 287
Menus ... 287
Pro Tools Main Menus ... 287
Track, Clip, and Groups List Menus ... 288
Track Name and Clip Name Right-Click Menus ... 288
Group Name and Track Group ID Indicator Pop-Up Menus ... 289
Enable/Disable Control Sets in Menu ... 289
Tool Tips ... 290
Color Palette ... 290

UI Customization 291
UI Customization 292
13 Tracks 301
Track Types 301
Track Channel Strips in the Mix Window 302
Audio Track Channel Strips 302
Auxiliary Input Track Channel Strips 304
Master Fader Track Channel Strips 305
VCA Master Track Channel Strips 306
MIDI Track Channel Strips 307
Instrument Track Channel Strips 308
Basic Folder Track Channel Strips 309
Routing Folder Track Channel Strips 310
Track Controls and Indicators in the Edit Window 310
Audio Track Controls 310
Auxiliary Input Track Controls 311
Master Fader Track Controls 313
VCA Master Track Controls 314
MIDI Track Controls 315
Instrument Track Controls 316
Basic Folder Track Controls 317
Routing Folder Track Controls 318
Video Track Controls 319
Edit Window Views 319
Comments View 319
Mic Preamps View 319
Instruments View 320
Inserts View (A–E and F–J) 320
Sends View (A–E and F–J) 320
I/O View 320
Real-Time Properties 322

Track Color 322
Marker Controls 322
Track Collaboration 322
Track Level Meters 322
Pre- and Post-Fader Metering 324
Peak Hold 324
Clip Indication 324
Wide Meters View 326
Showing or Hiding Meters and Faders 326
Advanced Metering 327
Adjusting Track Width 331
Creating Tracks 331
New Tracks Dialog 332
Adding New Tracks by Double-Clicking in the Edit or Mix Windows 333
Default Track Names 334
Renaming Tracks 334
Batch Renaming Tracks 335
Adding Comments to Tracks 336
Track Numbering 336
Selecting Tracks 336
Scrolling a Track into View 337
Changing Track Channel Widths 338
Deleting Tracks 338
Duplicating Tracks 339
Duplicating VCA Member Tracks 341
Track Views 341
Overview Track View 342
Blocks Track View 342
Playlists Track View 342
Analysis and Warp Track View 342
Markers View 342
Transcript View (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only) 342

Waveform View ... 342
Clips View ... 343
Notes View ... 343
Automation and Controller Views ... 343
Setting Track Views in the Edit Window ... 344
Changing Track Views ... 346
Master Views for Tracks ... 347
Track Height ... 348
Continuously Variable Track Height ... 348
Track Controls and Track Height ... 349
Track List ... 350
Show/Hide Track List and Groups List ... 350
Track List Menu ... 351
Showing and Hiding Tracks ... 352
Mix/Edit Groups and Hidden Tracks ... 353
Track Numbering and Hidden Tracks ... 354
Folder Tracks in the Track List ... 354
Track Name Right-Click Menu ... 354
Assigning Audio Inputs and Outputs to Tracks ... 357
Automatic Input and Output Assignments ... 357
Assigning Audio Inputs ... 357
Assigning Audio Outputs ... 358
Searching Track Input and Track Output Path Selectors ... 360
Renaming Track Inputs and Outputs from the Edit or Mix Window ... 361
Making Track Inputs and Outputs Inactive from the Edit or Mix Window ... 362
Track Output Assignments and Pan Data ... 363
Send Output Assignments and Pan Data ... 363
Track Priority and Voice Assignment ... 363
Track Priority ... 363
Setting Voice Assignment ... 364
AAssigning MIDI Inputs and Outputs to Tracks ... 365
Assigning MIDI Track Input ... 365

Assigning MIDI Track Output ... 366
Assigning MIDI Input and Output for Instrument Tracks ... 368
MIDI Signal Flow ... 368
Instrument Track MIDI Chains ... 368
Individual MIDI Targets ... 370
MIDI Chain versus Individual Targets ... 370
Soloing and Muting Tracks ... 371
Soloing Tracks ... 371
Solo Button ... 371
Solo Modes ... 371
Solo Latch Options ... 372
Set Solo Mode and Latch Options in Solo Status Right-click Menu ... 373
Solo Safe Mode ... 373
Mute Button ... 374
Making Tracks Inactive ... 375
Track Pinning ... 375
Pin Track in the Edit Window ... 375
Resizing the Pinned Tracks Pane ... 381
Pinning Groups ... 381
Color Coding for Tracks, Clips, Markers, and Groups ... 383
Display Page Preferences for Color Coding ... 384
Color Palette ... 385
Using the Hold Button ... 386
Applying Track Color Coding to Channel Strips ... 387
14 Folder Tracks ... 389
Basic Folder Tracks ... 389
Routing Folder Tracks ... 392
Opening and Closing Folder Tracks ... 396
Keyboard Shortcuts and Key Modifiers for Opening and Closing Folder Tracks ... 396
Converting an Auxiliary Input Track to a Routing Folder Track ... 397
Adding Tracks to and Removing Tracks from Folder Tracks ... 397

Editing Folder Tracks in Overview ... 400
Modifier Keys for Folder Track Selections ... 403
Editing Routing Folder Track Automation ... 403
15 Track Presets ... 404
Creating and Saving Track Presets ... 404
Save Track Preset Dialog Settings ... 404
Track Data to Recall ... 407
Track Presets Files ... 410
Creating New Tracks from Track Presets ... 410
Track Presets in the New Tracks Dialog ... 410
Track Presets in the New Tracks Dialog from Track Output Selector ... 411
Track Presets in the Tracks Right-Click Menu ... 412
Recalling Inserts from Track Presets ... 412
Recalling Track Presets to Sends ... 413
Track Presets in Workspace Browsers ... 413
Tagging Track Presets ... 414
Searching Track Presets ... 414
Filtering Track Data when Recalling Track Presets from Workspace ... 415
Dragging Track Presets from a Workspace Browser ... 415
Importing Multiple Presets from Workspace Browser Simultaneously ... 416
16 Grouping Tracks ... 417
Mix Groups, Edit Groups, and Mix/Edit Groups ... 417
Selectable Group Attributes ... 418
Mix Groups and VCA Masters ... 418
Group Controls ... 418
The Groups List ... 418
Group Name and Track Group ID Indicator Pop-Up Menus ... 420
Group Dialog ... 421
Working with Groups ... 422
Creating Groups ... 422
Modifying Groups ... 423

Deleting Groups 424
Duplicating Groups 424
Making Selections in Grouped Tracks 425
Setting Group Attributes 425
Selecting Attributes in the Globals Page 426
Selecting Group Attributes 427
Saving Group Attribute Presets 428
Enabling Groups 429
Keyboard Selection of Groups 429
Temporarily Isolating Control of an Item from Group Operation 429
‹ALL› Group 430
Grouped Control Offsets 430
Setting Group Pan Controls to Ignore Offsets 430
17 The Clip List 432
Filtering Clips in the Clip List 433
Displaying Clips in the Clip List 433
Filter Clips by Name 434
Filter by Subclips and Whole File Clips 434
Clip List Menu 434
Displaying File Info for Audio Clips 435
Detaching or Docking the Clip List 436
Keep Window On Top Option 437
Sorting and Searching in the Clip List 437
Sorting Clips 437
Sort By Options 437
Filtering in Clip List 438
Finding Clips 439
Select Parent in Workspace 439
Selecting Clips in the Clip List 439
Keyboard Selection of Clips 440
Select Options 441

Previewing Clips in the Clip List ... 442
Auditioning Discrete Signals in Multichannel Items ... 442
Stereo and Multichannel Clips in the Clip List ... 442
Rules for Stereo and Multichannel Clips ... 443
Naming and Displaying Clips in the Clip List ... 443
Renaming Clips ... 443
Auto-Naming Options ... 445
Batch Clip Renaming ... 445
Managing Clips in the Clip List ... 447
Hiding Auto-Created Clips ... 447
Clearing Unwanted Clips ... 447
Clip Name Right-Click Commands ... 448
Batch Renaming ... 449
Batch Renaming Dialog Options and Settings ... 449
Regular Expressions Workflow Examples ... 453
Batch File Renaming ... 455
18 Splice ... 456
Login to Splice ... 457
Splice Home Page ... 457
Search Splice ... 457
Search Splice with Sound ... 462
Auditioning Search Results in Context ... 464
Import from Splice to Pro Tools ... 466
Search Splice with Sound ... 471
Auditioning Search Results in Context ... 473
Import from Splice to Pro Tools ... 475
Splice Library ... 475
Splice Settings ... 476
Splice Library ... 477
Splice Settings ... 477
19 SoundFlow ... 479

SoundFlow Macros 480
SoundFlow Window 481
SoundFlow Header Controls 481
SoundFlow Flows 482
SoundFlow Tab 482
SoundFlow Window 483
SoundFlow Header Controls 484
20 Stem Separator 485
Installing Pro Tools Stem Separator 486
Stem Separator AI Models and Privacy 487
Using Pro Tools Stem Separator 487
Stem Separation Models 487
Processing Audio from the Timeline 488
Process External Audio Files 490
Auditioning Stems 490
Importing Stems to the Timeline 491
Processing External Audio Files 492
Auditioning Stems 492
Clear Stems 493
20 Workspace Browsers 493
Workspace Browsers 494
Task Manager Window 495
Relink Window 495
Workspace Browsers 496
Performance and Transfer Volumes 497
Databases 497
Workspace Browser Layout and Tools 498
Opening Workspace Browsers 499
Viewing the Contents of Sound Libraries, or a Volume, Folder, or Catalog 499
Moving Workspace Browsers to the Foreground or Background 500
Closing Workspace Browsers 500

Volume Permissions 500
Unmounting Volumes 501
Working with Items in Workspace Browsers 501
Opening Sessions 501
Opening AAF and OMF Sequences 501
Creating and Opening Workspace Browser Folders 502
Scrolling and Moving Selections 502
Text Entry in Workspace Browsers 502
Indexing Workspace Databases 503
Indexing while Browsing 503
Manual Indexing 503
Workspace Browser Menu 504
Workspace Right-Click Menu 505
Workspace Browser Panes and Display 507
Showing (or Hiding) the Locations Pane 507
Moving Columns 508
Resizing Columns 508
Showing and Hiding Columns 508
View Presets 509
Sorting Columns 509
Column Data 510
Comments Fields 514
Adding and Editing Comments 515
Selecting Items 515
Moving, Copying, Duplicating, and Removing Items 515
Moving Items 515
Copying Items 516
Duplicating Items 516
Removing Session Items 516
Set Column Metadata Values for Multiple Selected Files in Workspace Browsers 516
Searching Items 516
Searching for Either/Or or And Text Strings 517

Search Tools ... 517
Simple Search ... 518
Advanced Search ... 518
Advanced Search Features ... 521
Saving Search Results as a Catalog ... 522
Soundbase and Tags ... 522
Opening a Workspace Browser with Soundbase ... 522
Sound Libraries ... 522
Tags Pane ... 524
Searching Based on Tags ... 525
Exclude Files from Search Results with Selected Tags ... 526
Adding and Editing Tags ... 527
Assign Tags Popover Window ... 528
Favorites ... 529
Waveforms ... 530
Calculating Waveforms for Display ... 530
WaveCache ... 530
Elastic Audio Files in the Workspace ... 530
File Timebase and Elastic Audio Analysis Icons ... 531
Previewing Audio in Workspace Browsers ... 532
Preview Controls and Indicators ... 533
Preview Modes ... 534
Normal Preview ... 534
Loop Preview ... 534
Auto-Preview ... 535
Conforming Preview to the Session Tempo ... 535
Preview in Context ... 536
Linking and Relinking Files ... 536
Choosing When to Relink ... 537
Transfer Files ... 537
Opening a Session with Transfer Files ... 537
Copy and Relink ... 538

Missing Files 538
Opening a Session with Missing Files 538
Relink Window 539
Opening the Relink Window 540
Selecting Areas to Search 540
Single and Multi-File Relinking 540
Force Relinking Files 542
Committing Links 543
Relinking and Aliases in Catalogs 543
Catalogs 543
Creating Catalogs 543
Renaming a Catalog 544
Modifying Catalogs 544
Removing Catalog Items 544
Consolidating Files with Catalogs 544
Updating Catalogs 545
Relinking Catalog Items 545
Removing Catalogs 545
Importing Catalog Items 545
Task Manager Window 546
Opening the Task Window 547
Task Manager Status 547
Task Window Messages 547
Task Window Views 547
Task Window Tools, Columns, and Displays 547
Pausing and Canceling Tasks 548
Closing Sessions with Pending Tasks 549
Task Prioritization 549
Pausing Tasks During Playback 549
Stored Tasks 549
Grouped Tasks 549

22 Collaboration with Pro Tools Projects 550
Your Avid Profile 550
Find Talent 551
Pro Tools Projects Window 553
Project Controls 554
Invite Contacts to Collaborate 554
Responding to Collaboration Invitations 555
Show or Hide Project Participants 555
Revoke an Invitation to Collaborate 556
Removing Participants from the Project 556
Leave a Pro Tools Project 557
Adding Project Participants to Your Contacts 557
Collaboration Transaction Logs 557
Project Chat 558
Private Messages Between Project Participants 559
Project List 559
Opening a Project from the List 559
Messages 560
Start a New Chat Thread 560
Individual Chat 561
Group Chat 561
Pinning or Unpinning Items in the Pro Tools Projects and Messages Lists 565
23 Track Collaboration 566
Sharing Projects and Collaborating 566
What is Shared? 566
Continually Shared Items 566
Items Shared Only when a Project is First Downloaded 567
Sending and Receiving Tracks and Updates 568
What is Not Shared? 568
Project Ownership 568
Start Collaboration 568

Contacts and Collaborators 569
Track Collaboration Tools in the Edit Window 569
Track Collaboration Tools in the Transport Window 569
Global Track Collaboration Tools 569
Invite User 570
Show Chat 570
Track Ownership Request 570
Upload All New Changes 570
Download All New Changes 571
Download All Shared Tracks 571
Cloud Storage Usage Meter 572
Track Collaboration Track View in the Edit and Mix Windows 572
Track Collaboration Controls 574
Share Track 574
Upload Track Changes 575
Download Track Changes 576
Track Ownership 577
Taking Ownership of an Unowned Track 577
Requesting Track Ownership 578
Relinquishing Track Ownership 579
Responding to a Track Ownership Request 579
Conflicts Between Track Changes and the Cloud 580
Making Changes to Tracks Owned by Another Collaborator 581
Indication of Transfer of Conflicting Changes 581
Track Cloud Synchronization Indicator in the Track List 581
Conductor Ruler Collaboration Controls 582
Upload Conductor Ruler Changes 583
Download Conductor Ruler Changes 584
Conductor Ruler Ownership 584
24 Pro Tools Sketches 587
Creating a New Sketch in Pro Tools 588

Opening and Viewing a Sketch in Pro Tools 588
Saving a Sketch in Pro Tools 589
Pro Tools Sketch Window 589
Pro Tools Sketch Window Controls 590
Media Browser 590
Sketch Window Toolbar 591
Sketch Settings 595
Clips 596
Adding Clips to a Sketch 596
Clip State Indicators 596
Empty Clips 597
Playing Back Individual Clips 597
Recording Clips 598
Duplicate Clip 599
Remove Clip 599
Open in Editor 599
Clip Properties 600
Dragging Clips to the Pro Tools Edit Window 600
Scenes and Arrangement 601
Scenes 601
Arrangement 602
Transport Settings 604
Tracks 604
Track Controls 606
Editor 607
Zooming in the Sketch Window Editor 609
Adding or Deleting Notes in the MIDI Editor 609
Adjust Clip Boundaries 609
Audio Clip Editor 609
Mixer 618
Mixer Controls 619
Global FX 620

Delay 621
Reverb 622
Effects 622
Common Controls 622
Chorus 623
Compressor 624
Crunch Crusher 625
Delay 626
EQ 627
LoFi 628
Multimode Filter 630
Reverb 631
Saturation 633
PlayCell 634
Common Controls 635
Macros 635
Global Controls 636
SynthCell 637
Common Controls 638
OSC 1 638
OSC 2 639
Filter 639
Env 641
Mod 642
Effects 643
Matrix 646
Arp 647
Global 649
25 Importing and Exporting Session Data 650
Importing and Exporting Data to and from a Session or Project 650
Audio Conversion on Import 651

Supported Audio File Formats 651
Sample Rate Conversion Quality 652
Bit Depth Conversion and Dither 653
Importing Interleaved Files 653
Importing Files with Drag and Drop 653
Snapping to Head and Tail 655
Elastic Audio on Import 655
Melodyne Analysis Data on Import 656
Importing Elastic Audio from Workspace to the Clip List 656
Importing Tempo from Tick-Based Audio 656
Importing Files and Clips Using the Import Audio Command 656
Importing Audio from CDs 659
Importing ACID and REX Files 659
Importing SD II Files 661
Importing Multichannel Audio Files from a Field Recorder 661
Importing Monophonic Audio Files 661
Importing Polyphonic Audio Files 661
Import Options and Preferences 661
Exporting Audio 663
Exporting a Clip as a New Audio File 664
Exporting Stereo or Multichannel Interleaved Files 665
Exporting Clip Definitions 665
Importing MIDI Files 665
Importing MIDI Files Using Pro Tools Menu Commands 666
MIDI Import Options Dialog 666
Importing MIDI Files with Drag and Drop 668
Exporting MIDI Files 668
Exporting Individual MIDI and Instrument Tracks 669
Exporting Sibelius Files 670
Copy and Paste MIDI between Pro Tools and Sibelius 670
Importing Session Data 670
Importing Grouped Playlists from Other Sessions 672

Folder Tracks and Import Session Data 672
Importing Sessions and Tracks by Drag and Drop 672
Copying During Import 672
Using Undo after Importing 673
Import Session Data Dialog 673
Independent Selection in Import Session Data 673
Key Commands in the Import Session Data Window 675
Source Properties 676
Audio Media Options 677
Timecode Mapping Options 678
Track Offset Options 678
Sample Rate Conversion (SRC) Options 678
Marker Rulers Tab 679
Tracks Tab 679
Filter Track Attributes in Import Session Data 680
Track Data to Import 682
Import Options 687
Main Playlist Options 688
Importing AAF and OMF Sequences 688
Importing an AAF or OMF Sequence as a Pro Tools Session 689
Importing an AAF or OMF Sequence into an Existing Session or Project 691
Importing AAF/OMF Audio Sequences with Mixed Sample Rates or Bit Depth 692
Importing Audio from AAF Sequences with Unsupported Video Formats 692
Importing AAF/OMF Sequences Containing Media Mixdowns 693
SMPTE ID and Unique ID 693
Import Options when Importing AAF or OMF Sequences 693
Audio Media Options 693
Video Media Options 694
Timecode Mapping Options 695
Track Offset Options 695
Sample Rate Conversion Options 696
AAF/OMF Source Track Translation Settings 696

Main Playlist Options 698
Import Sequence from Media Production 699
Media Composer Software Export Options for Audio and Video Mixdowns 699
Audio File Format Compatibility Issues 699
AIFC Audio File Format 699
Sound Designer II Audio File Format 699
Exporting Pro Tools Tracks as AAF or OMF Sequences 701
Exporting Multichannel Audio Tracks 702
Exporting Clip Gain 702
Exporting Fades 703
Clip Groups 703
Importing MXF Files 703
OP-Atom MXF Files 703
OP1a MXF Files 703
Exporting Pro Tools Tracks as MXF Audio Files 703
Exporting AAF Sequences Containing MXF Audio 704
Exporting MXF Audio Files Using Bounce Mix 705
Exporting a Clip as a New MXF File 706
Export Options when Exporting to AAF or OMF Sequences 706
OMF/AAF Options 707
Sample Rate Conversion Options 708
Audio Media Options 709
Publishing Options 710
Export Selected Tracks to Sequence in Production Management 711
Export Selected Tracks as New Session or Project 711
Export Selected Time Range as New Session or Project 712
Exporting Session Information as Text 713
Exported Session Text Files 713
Export Session Information as Text Options 714
Importing and Exporting Clip Group Files 715
Importing Clip Groups with Pro Tools Menu Commands 716
Importing Clip Groups with Drag and Drop 717

Exporting Clip Groups 718

26 File and Session Management and Compatibility 719

Audio File Management 719

Unique File IDs 719

SMPTE IDs 719

Locating Audio Files 719

Renamed Audio Files 721

WAV File Compatibility 722

Sharing Projects Offline 723

Sharing Sessions Created on Different Computer Platforms 723

Working with Mac-Based HFS+ Drives on Windows Computers 723

Moving Sessions on Windows Systems to Mac-Based HFS+ Drives 723

Moving Mac-Based Sessions on HFS+ Drives to Windows Systems 723

Recording and Playback from HFS+ Drives on Windows 724

Sharing Sessions Created on Different Pro Tools Systems 724

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools Ultimate, Studio, and Artist 725

Sharing Sessions Created on Different Pro Tools Software Versions 726

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2026.11 (or later) and Pro Tools 2026.4 726

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2026.4 (or later) and Pro Tools 2025.12 726

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2025.12 (or later) and Pro Tools 2025.10 726

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2025.10.1 (or later) and Pro Tools 2025.6 726

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2025.10 (or later) and Pro Tools 2025.6 726

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2025.6 (or later) and Pro Tools 2024.10 726

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2024.6 (or later) and Pro Tools 2024.3 727

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2024.3 and Pro Tools 2023.12 727

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2023.12 and Pro Tools 2023.9 727

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2023.9 and Pro Tools 2023.6 727

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2023.6 and Pro Tools 2023.3 727

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2022.9 and Pro Tools 2022.6 728

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2022.4 to Pro Tools 2022.6 and Pro Tools 2021.10 to 2021.12 728

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2021.10 to 2021.12 and Pro Tools 2021.7 728

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2021.6 and Pro Tools 2021.3 728
Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2020.11 to 2021.3, and Pro Tools 2020.9 728
Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2020.3 and Pro Tools 2019.x to 2020.9 728
Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2019.x and Pro Tools 2018.x 729
Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2018.x and Pro Tools 12.x 729
Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 12.x and Pro Tools 11.x 729
Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 11.x or Higher and Pro Tools 10.x 729
Saving Pro Tools 12.x–10.x Sessions to Pro Tools 7 –> 9 Format 730
Opening Pro Tools 9.0 Sessions with Pro Tools 8.1 and 8.5 730
Opening Pro Tools 9.0 Sessions with Pro Tools 8.0 730
Opening Pro Tools 9.0 Sessions with Pro Tools 7.4.x 731
Opening Pro Tools 7.4 or Higher Sessions with Pro Tools 7.3.x or 7.2 731
Opening Pro Tools 7.2 or Higher Sessions with Pro Tools 7.1 or 7.0 731
Opening Sessions Created with Pro Tools HD 7.2–9.x with Pro Tools LE 8.0 732
Saving Pro Tools 12.x–10.x Sessions to Pro Tools 5.1 -> 6.9 Format 733
Saving Pro Tools 12.x–10.x Sessions to Pro Tools 5.0 Format 734
Opening Sessions with Markers Exported from Media Composer 734
Renderer Migration Utility 735
Language Compatibility 736
Unicode Support for Languages 736
Pro Tools Automatic Naming Language 737
Pro Tools Application Language 737
Multilingual Application Support for Pro Tools Systems 737
Part IV: Playback and Recording 738
27 Playing Back Track Material 739
Starting and Stopping Playback 739
Playing Back Audio 739
Playing Back MIDI 740
Playback Location 740
Counters and Indicators that Display the Playback Location 741
Cursors that Indicate the Playback (or Edit) Location 741

Setting the Playback Location 742
Setting Playback Location Using the Selector Tool 742
Setting Playback Location with Basic Transport Controls 743
Setting Playback Location with the Main Counter or Edit Selection Start Indicator 743
Setting Playback Location with Fast Forward/Rewind 743
Setting Playback Location with Back and Forward Commands 744
Additional Ways of Moving the Playback Location 746
Scrolling Options 746
Page Scrolling During Playback 747
Continuous Scrolling During Playback 747
Center Playhead Scrolling 747
Half-Screen Edit Window 748
Playing Selections 748
Auditioning Pre-Roll and Post-Roll 748
Auditioning Start and End Points for Selections 749
Transport Fade-in 749
Playing Timeline and Edit Selections with the Playhead 750
Moving the Playhead 751
Playback Modes 751
Normal Playback Mode 751
Half-Speed Playback Mode 751
Prime for Playback Mode 751
Loop Playback Mode 752
Dynamic Transport Mode 753
Using Dynamic Transport Mode with Loop Playback 755
Using Separate Play and Stop Keys 756
Keyboard Shortcuts for Relocating the Play Start Marker 756
Recording in Dynamic Transport Mode 757
MIDI Beat Clock 757
Transmitting Beat Clock 757
Sending MIDI Beat Clock Over IAC 758
MIDI Beat Clock Offsets 758

Measuring Beat Clock Latency ... 758
Ableton Link ... 759
Showing and Hiding Ableton Link Controls ... 760
Ableton Link Controls and Indicators ... 760
28 Record Setup ... 763
Record Setup Overview ... 763
Configuring Pro Tools Hardware I/O for Recording ... 763
Input Connections and Audio Levels ... 764
Connecting a Sound Source ... 765
Recording with a Click ... 765
Creating a Click Track ... 766
Enabling the Click ... 766
Click Options ... 767
Setting the Session Meter and Tempo ... 768
Setting the Session Meter ... 768
Setting the Session Tempo ... 769
Using Manual Tempo Mode ... 770
Record Modes ... 771
Normal (Nondestructive) Record Mode ... 771
Destructive Record Mode ... 772
Loop Record Mode ... 772
QuickPunch ... 772
TrackPunch ... 773
DestructivePunch ... 773
Record Modes and MIDI ... 773
Configuring Default Names for Audio Files and Clips ... 774
Names for Stereo Audio Tracks ... 774
Names for Multichannel Tracks ... 774
Assigning Hardware I/O on a Track ... 775
Record Enabling Tracks ... 776
Latch Record Enable Buttons Preference ... 778

Record Safe Mode 778
Working with Hard Drives for Recording 778
Monitoring Drive Space 778
Recording with Multiple Hard Drives 779
Allocating Audio Drives in Your System 779
Saving Disk Allocation Settings 781
Disk Allocation and Cross-Platform Sessions 781
Workspace Volume Designation 781
Recording to the System Volume 781
Disk Allocation and Unavailable Volumes 781
Selecting a Record Input Monitoring Mode 782
Auto Input Monitoring 782
Input Only Monitoring 782
Selecting a Record Monitor Mode 782
Selecting Record Monitor Modes with TrackInput Monitoring 782
Setting Monitor Levels for Record and Playback 783
Link Record and Play Faders 784
Reducing Monitoring Latency 784
Recording with Delay Compensation 785
Zero Latency Monitoring 785
Low Latency Monitoring 785
Ultra-Low Latency Monitoring with DSP Mode 786
29 Audio Recording 787
Before Recording 787
Basic Recording Steps 787
Undo or Cancel Audio Recording 788
Canceling a Record Take 789
Recording Multiple Audio Tracks 789
Recording Shortcuts 789
Prime for Record Mode 789
Setting Punch and Loop Points 790

Timeline Selection Markers 791
Start, End, and Length Fields 792
Memory Locations 792
Setting Pre- and Post-Roll 794
Setting Pre- and Post-Roll in the Transport Window 794
Setting Pre- and Post-Roll in a Playlist 795
Enabling Pre/Post-Roll from the Options Menu 795
Setting Pre-Roll or Post-Roll from the Edit Insertion Point 795
Dragging Pre- and Post-Roll Flags in the Timebase Ruler 795
Audio Punch Recording Over a Specified Range 796
Recording Additional Takes 797
Appending New Material to the End of a Track 798
Recording to a New Playlist 799
Loop Recording Audio 799
Automatically Create New Playlists When Loop Recording 801
Alternate Takes 801
Selecting Alternate Takes 801
Matches and Multiple Tracks 803
Matching Criteria Window 803
Expanding Alternate Takes to New Playlists or Tracks 804
Recording from a Digital Source 805
Pro Tools HD Audio Interface Digital Options 805
Pro Tools Audio Interface Digital Options 806
Recording from Digital Sources 806
Half-Speed Recording 807
30 MIDI Recording 809
Recording from MIDI Devices 809
Enabling Input Devices 809
MIDI Thru 810
The Default Thru Instrument 811
MIDI Input Filter 811

Input Quantize 812
Wait for Note 812
MIDI Merge/Replace 813
MIDI Merge Release Mode 814
Configuring MIDI or Instrument Tracks for Recording 814
Recording MIDI and Instrument Tracks 817
MIDI Clips Are Created on Barlines 818
Recording Over Existing MIDI Clips 819
Playing Back Recorded MIDI 819
Undoing MIDI Recording 819
Canceling a Record Take 820
Input Monitoring on Instrument Tracks 820
MIDI Input Monitoring Follows Selected Track 821
MIDI Live Mode 821
MIDI Input Display 822
MIDI In and Out Indicators 822
MIDI Punch Recording Over a Specified Range 822
Punch Recording During Playback with MIDI 823
MIDI Clips and Punch Recording 823
Loop Recording MIDI 824
Loop Recording in MIDI Merge Mode 824
Loop Recording Multiple Takes 825
MIDI Step Input 827
MIDI Keyboard Window 827
Recording System Exclusive Data 828
Recording Audio from a MIDI Instrument 829
Recording Audio from an Instrument Plugin 829
Recording Audio from an External MIDI Instrument 830
Retrospective Record for MIDI 830
Additional Behaviors with Retrospective Record for MIDI 832
31 Punch Recording Modes 833

Introduction to Punch Recording Modes 833
Pro Tools Punch Recording Modes 833
Guidelines for Punch Recording 833
Voice Requirements for Punch Recording 833
Delay Compensation and DestructivePunch Mode 834
Audio Files, Clips and Takes 835
Preferences for Punch Recording 836
Synchronization and Track Arming Options for Punch Recording 837
QuickPunch Audio Recording 838
Recording with QuickPunch 838
TrackPunch Audio Recording 839
TrackPunch Setup 839
Enabling TrackPunch Mode 839
TrackPunch Enabling Tracks 840
Monitoring and Levels 841
Using TrackPunch 842
Punching In on Individual Tracks 842
Punching In on Multiple Tracks Simultaneously 842
Start Recording on All Tracks 842
DestructivePunch Audio Recording 843
DestructivePunch Setup 843
Enabling DestructivePunch Mode 843
Preparing Tracks for DestructivePunch Recording 844
Enabling Tracks for DestructivePunch Recording 845
Monitoring and Levels 846
Using DestructivePunch 846
Punching In On Single Tracks 846
Punching In on Multiple Tracks 847
Starting Recording Immediately on Multiple Tracks 847
Example TrackPunch and DestructivePunch Workflows 847
Film Dubbing and Mixing 848
Loading Dailies Using RecordLock 849

Foley Recording 849
Tracking and Overdubbing Music 850
"In-the-box" Dubbing 850
Part V: Editing 852
32 Editing Basics 853
Nondestructive Editing 853
Editing During Playback 853
Track Material 854
Clip Types 854
Audio Clips and Waveforms 855
Waveform Views 855
Calculating Waveform Overviews 856
Rectified Waveforms 856
Outlined Waveforms 857
Overlapped Crossfades 858
Guidelines for Editing Waveforms 858
Avoiding Clicks and Pops 858
Nondestructive Audio Editing 859
Audio Clips and Automation Data 859
MIDI Clips and MIDI Data 859
Clips View for MIDI and Instrument Tracks 859
Notes View for MIDI and Instrument Tracks 861
Nondestructive MIDI Editing 862
Naming Clips 862
Displaying Clip Names, Clip Times, and Other Data 863
Multiple Undo 865
Undo History Window 866
Clearing the Undo Queue 866
Levels of Undo and Memory 867
Basic Editing Commands 867
Cut, Copy, Paste, and Clear 867

Track View and Edit Content ... 867
Cut and Copy Commands ... 868
Paste Command ... 869
Clear Command ... 869
Special Cut, Copy, Paste, and Clear Commands ... 870
Editing Across Multiple Tracks ... 871
33 Edit Modes and Tools ... 872
Edit Modes ... 872
Shuffle Mode ... 872
Shuffle Lock ... 872
Slip Mode ... 873
Spot Mode ... 873
Grid Mode ... 873
Displaying Grid Lines ... 873
Absolute and Relative Grid ... 874
Snap To Grid ... 874
Configuring the Grid ... 875
Grid Mode Lock ... 875
Edit Tools ... 876
Zooming Options ... 877
Zoom Buttons ... 877
Horizontal Zoom In and Out Buttons ... 877
Audio and MIDI Zoom In and Out Buttons ... 877
Additional Zoom Key Commands ... 879
Zoomer Tool ... 879
Normal Zoomer Tool ... 879
Single Zoom Mode ... 880
Zooming in a Ruler ... 881
Continuous Zoom with the Zoomer Tool ... 881
Vertical Zooming In or Out of All Audio Tracks Continuously ... 881
Zoom Preset Buttons ... 882

Zoom Toggle 882
Zoom Toggle Parameters 882
Zoom Toggle Preferences 883
Using Zoom Toggle 885
Auto-Toggle When Changing Selection 886
Zooming with a Scroll Wheel 886
Using the Trim Tools 887
Trim Tool 887
Time Compression/ Expansion Trim Tool 888
Elastic Audio TCE Trim Tool 889
AudioSuite TCE Trim Tool 889
Time Compression/Expansion Plugin Preferences 889
Using the TCE Trim Tool in Grid Mode 889
Using the TCE Trim Tool in Slip Mode 890
Using the TCE Trim Tool in Spot Mode 890
Scrub Trim Tool 890
Loop Trim Tool 891
Creating Loops with the Loop Trim Tool 891
Trimming Looped Clips 891
Tandem Trimming 893
Using the Selector Tool 893
Placing the Edit Cursor 894
Making an Edit Selection with the Selector Tool 894
Making a Timeline Selection with the Selector Tool 895
Using the Grabber Tools 895
Using the Smart Tool 895
The Smart Tool in Waveform View (Audio) or Clips View (MIDI) 896
The Smart Tool in Warp View 896
The Smart Tool in Notes View 897
The Smart Tool in Automation and Controller Views 898
The Smart Tool with Stereo and Multichannel Tracks 898
Using the Scrubber Tool 898

Scrub/Shuttle Mode 899
Shuttle Lock Mode 900
Custom Shuttle Lock Speed 900
Numeric Keypad Set to Shuttle 900
Using the Pencil Tool 901
Waveform Repair with the Pencil Tool 901
Edit/Tool Mode Keyboard Lock 902
34 Making Selections 903
Linking or Unlinking Timeline and Edit Selections 903
Timeline and Edit Selection Markers 904
Linking or Unlinking Track and Edit Selections 904
Selecting Track Material 905
Selecting Clips 906
Clip List Selection Follows Edit Selection 906
Selecting All from Timebase Rulers 907
Making Selections While Playing 907
Object Selections 907
Object to Time Selection 908
Changing a Selection Length 909
Nudging a Selection Range 909
Nudging Selection Start/End Points 909
Extending Selections in Time 910
Shrinking the Edit Selection to the Next or Previous Edit 910
Doubling or Halving the Edit Selection 911
Duplicating and Extending the Edit Selection 911
Moving the Edit Selection in Time 911
Using the Edit Selection Indicators (Start, End, and Length) 911
Selecting Across Multiple Tracks 912
Moving the Edit Selection Across Tracks 913
Extending (or Contracting) the Edit Selection Over Multiple Tracks 913
Moving and Extending Selections Between Tracks with Commands Keyboard Focus 913

Other Useful Selection Techniques 914
Right-Click Commands and Selection Preservation 915
Tabbing to Transients 915
Timeline Selections 916
Sliding a Timeline Selection 917
Timeline Selections to/from Edit Selections 918
Match the Timeline and Edit Selection Start or End 918
Navigating the Timeline with the Edit Window Counters and Indicators 918
Scrolling in a Timebase Ruler 919
Scrolling with a Scroll Wheel 919
Auto-Scrolling Tracks in the Mix and Edit Windows 920
Universe View 920
Showing the Universe Window 920
Framed Area in the Universe View 921
Navigating with the Universe View 922
Resizing the Universe View 922
Scrolling the Universe View 923
Navigating a Pro Tools Session with Keyboard Shortcuts 923
Zooming to the Entire Session and to the Edit Selection 923
Creating Edit Selections with Tab to Transients 924
Making an Edit Selection During Playback 924
Moving the Edit Selection 924
Moving the Insertion to the Beginning or End of the Selection 925
Restoring the Last Selection 925
Changing Track Heights 926
Changing Track Views 926
35 Editing Clips and Selections 927
Creating New Clips 927
Capture Clip Command 927
Separate Commands 927
Auto-Name Separated Clips Option 929

"Separate Clip" Operates On All Related Takes 929
Separating Multiple Tracks 929
Separation Grabber Tool 930
Healing Separated Clips 931
Trimming Clips 931
Trim to Selection Command 932
Trim to Insertion Commands 932
Trim to Fill Selection Commands 932
Trim Clip to File Commands 934
Trimming with Nudge 934
Nudging Clips 934
Defining the Nudge Value 935
Nudging Clips by the Nudge Value 935
Nudging Clips on Multiple Tracks and in Multichannel Tracks 936
Nudging by Next Nudge Value 936
Nudging the Contents of a Clip 936
Layered Editing 937
Quantizing Clips to Grid 938
Editing Stereo and Multichannel Tracks 939
Split Selected Tracks 939
Dragging Clips to and from Stereo and Multichannel Tracks 939
Consolidating Clips 940
Compacting an Audio File 940
Processing Audio with AudioSuite Plugins 941
TCE (Time Compression and Expansion) Edit To Timeline Selection 941
TCE Edit to Timeline Selection on Multiple Tracks and Channels 941
Fitting an Audio Clip to an Edit Selection 941
Fit to Selection on Multiple Tracks and Channels 941
Rating Clips 942
36 Fades and Crossfades 943
About Crossfades and Curves 943

Standard Crossfade (Centered) ... 943
Pre Crossfade ... 944
Post Crossfade ... 944
Overlapping Crossfades View ... 944
Fade Dialogs ... 945
Fade-Out Shape Settings ... 946
Fade-In Shape Settings ... 947
Fade Slope Settings ... 948
Link Settings ... 948
Typical Curve Combinations ... 949
Fade and Crossfade Preferences ... 950
Fade Presets ... 950
Fade Settings Menu ... 951
Creating Fades at the Beginnings and Ends of Clips ... 951
Creating Fade-Ins and Fade-Outs ... 952
Creating a Crossfade ... 954
Crossfades on Tick-Based Audio Tracks ... 954
Pre and Post Crossfade Selections ... 955
Using AutoFades ... 955
Creating Fades and Crossfades in Batches ... 956
Manually Adjusting Fade Shapes in Fade Windows ... 957
Adjusting the Start and End Points of a Crossfade ... 957
Adjusting Fade Shapes with the Smart Tool in the Edit Window ... 958
Changing Fade Shapes in the Edit Window ... 959
Fades Options in the Edit Selection Right-Click Menu ... 959
Moving and Nudging Fades and Crossfades ... 960
Moving or Nudging Fades or Crossfades within Clips ... 960
Moving Clips Containing Fades or Crossfades ... 960
Nudging Clips Adjacent to Fade-Ins or Fade-Outs ... 961
Moving Clips Adjacent to Crossfades ... 961
Nudging Clips Adjacent to Crossfades ... 962
Separating Clips that Include Fades or Crossfades ... 963

Trimming Clips that Include Fades or Crossfades ... 964
Trimming a Clip to a Fade Boundary ... 964
Trimming to a Selection Across Fades or Crossfades ... 965
Fade Boundaries and Shapes Displayed in Automation View ... 965
37 Playlists ... 966
Working with Playlists ... 966
Creating a Playlist ... 966
Duplicating a Playlist ... 967
Assigning a Playlist to Another Track ... 967
Renaming a Playlist ... 968
Deleting a Playlist ... 968
Show Next and Previous Playlist ... 968
Additional Playlists Indicator ... 968
Playlists and Edit Groups ... 969
Elastic Audio and Alternate Playlists ... 970
Track Compositing ... 970
Track Compositing Example ... 970
Playlists View ... 972
Auditioning Alternate Playlists ... 973
Copying and Pasting Edit Selections to Other Playlists ... 975
Cutting and Pasting Edit Selections to Other Playlists ... 977
Dragging Clips to Playlists Lanes ... 980
Editing in Playlist Lanes ... 980
Reordering Playlist Lanes ... 980
Resizing Playlist Lanes ... 980
Renaming Alternate Playlists ... 981
Alternate Playlists in the Track List ... 981
Filtering Lanes ... 982
Matching Alternate Clips ... 982
Matching Criteria ... 983
Matching Criteria Options ... 984

Alternates Match Options 984
In Addition To Match Options 984
Selecting Alternate Takes on Tracks 984
Matches and Multiple Tracks 986
Automatically Create New Playlists when Loop Recording 986
Expanding Alternate Takes to New Playlists or Tracks 986
Expanding Alternate Takes to New Playlists 987
Expanding Alternate Takes to New Tracks 987
Expanding Alternate Channels to New Playlists or Tracks 988
Conditions for Alternate Channel Availability 988
Expanding Channels to New Playlists 988
Expanding Channels to New Tracks 989
Expanding Channels by Timecode Only 989
Target Playlist 990
Designating the Target Playlist 990
Working with Target Playlists 992
Cycling Audio Within a Selection 993
Visual Indicators when Working in Waveform View 994
Track Compositing Keyboard Shortcuts 995
38 Beat Detective 998
Beat Detective and Source Material 998
Uses for Beat Detective 998
Beat Detective Requirements 999
The Beat Detective Window 999
Beat Detective Modes 1000
Defining a Beat Detective Selection 1000
Beat Detective Analysis 1002
Calculating Tempo with Beat Detective 1002
Generating Beat Triggers 1003
MIDI Chord Recognition 1004
Realign Session 1005

Tips for Getting Useful Beat Triggers ... 1006
Editing Beat Triggers ... 1006
Deleting Beat Triggers ... 1006
Moving Beat Triggers ... 1007
Inserting Beat Triggers ... 1007
Promoting Beat Triggers ... 1007
Redefining a Beat Trigger's Metric Location ... 1008
Navigating Consecutive Beat Triggers ... 1008
Generating Bar|Beat Markers with Beat Detective ... 1008
Working with Sub-Beats ... 1009
DigiGroove Templates ... 1009
Extracting Groove Templates ... 1010
Swing Content for Generating Groove Templates ... 1011
Groove Extrapolation ... 1011
Separating Clips with Beat Detective ... 1011
Separating Multiple Tracks ... 1012
Conforming Clips with Beat Detective ... 1013
Standard Conform ... 1014
Groove Conform ... 1015
Edit Smoothing ... 1016
Edit Smoothing Creates Sync Points ... 1017
Consolidating Clips after Edit Smoothing ... 1018
Detection (Normal) and Collection Mode ... 1018
Drum Tracks and Collection Mode ... 1018
Using Collection Mode ... 1019
Part VI: MIDI ... 1021
39 MIDI Editing ... 1022
MIDI Editing Options ... 1022
Play MIDI Notes When Editing ... 1022
Default Note Duration ... 1022
Default Note On Velocity ... 1023

Mirrored MIDI Editing 1024
Setting the Grid Value 1024
Using the Pencil Tool 1025
Pencil Tool Shapes for MIDI 1026
Inserting MIDI Notes 1027
Inserting a Series of Notes 1029
Manually Editing MIDI Notes 1029
Selecting MIDI Notes 1029
Selecting and Auditioning MIDI Notes with the Mini-Keyboard 1030
Selecting Only MIDI Notes Using the Note Selector Tool 1031
Editing MIDI Notes in Grid or Relative Grid Mode 1032
Using the Grabber Tools 1032
Transposing Notes 1032
Moving Notes 1033
Trimming Note Start and End Times 1034
Trimming MIDI Notes with Nudge 1034
Transposing MIDI Notes with Nudge 1035
Separating MIDI Notes 1035
Separate and Consolidate Tools for MIDI Notes 1035
Consolidating MIDI Notes 1036
Muting MIDI Notes 1036
Manually Editing Note Velocities 1037
Velocity Trim Tool 1039
Auditioning Velocity Changes 1039
Typing in Note Attributes 1039
Multiple Notes and Event Edit Area 1040
Deleting MIDI Notes 1040
Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool Functionality on MIDI Clips 1041
Using the Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool in Grid Mode 1041
Using the Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool in Slip Mode 1041
Using the Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool in Spot Mode 1041
Using the Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool in Shuffle Mode 1042

Continuous Controller Events ... 1042
Inserting and Editing Controller Events ... 1043
Setting Resolution for Inserted Controller Events ... 1043
MIDI Controller Numbers Shown in Track View and Controller Lane Selectors ... 1046
Clip Boundaries Shown in MIDI Control Automation Track Views ... 1047
Keyboard Shortcuts for Navigating MIDI ... 1047
Using Tab to Transients with MIDI Clips and MIDI Notes ... 1047
Using the Arrow Keys in Notes or Velocity View or in MIDI Editor Windows ... 1049
Patch Select (Program and Bank Changes) ... 1052
About Program and Bank Changes ... 1052
Default Program Change ... 1052
MIDI Patch Names ... 1053
Inserting and Editing Program Changes ... 1055
Auditioning Programs ... 1057
System Exclusive Events ... 1057
Note and Controller Chasing ... 1058
Note Chasing ... 1058
Controller and Program Chasing ... 1059
Default Controller Values and Chasing ... 1059
Offsetting MIDI Tracks ... 1059
Global MIDI Playback Offset ... 1060
Stuck Notes ... 1061
Remove Duplicate Notes ... 1061
Quantize MIDI ... 1061
MIDI Quantize Command ... 1062
MIDI Real-Time Properties ... 1062
Real-Time Properties View ... 1062
Real-Time Properties Window ... 1063
Enabling Real-Time Properties ... 1064
Real-Time Properties Settings ... 1064
Quantize ... 1064
Duration ... 1065

Delay ... 1067
Velocity ... 1067
Transpose ... 1067
Real-Time Properties on Tracks and Clips ... 1068
Writing Real-Time Properties to Tracks or Clips ... 1068
Real-Time Properties In the MIDI Event List ... 1069
Display of Real-Time Properties Effects ... 1069
40 MIDI Editors ... 1071
Opening a MIDI Editor Window ... 1072
MIDI Editor Window Toolbar ... 1072
Record-Enable, Solo, and Mute Buttons ... 1072
Notation View ... 1073
Edit Tools ... 1073
MIDI Editing Controls ... 1073
Edit Modes ... 1074
Cursor Location Display ... 1074
Edit Selection Display ... 1074
Quantize Controls ... 1074
MIDI Input Display ... 1075
Custom Note Labels in MIDI Editors ... 1076
Grid and Nudge Selectors ... 1078
Target ... 1078
MIDI Editor Window Menu ... 1079
Keep MIDI Editor Window On Top ... 1082
Customizable Toolbar ... 1082
Show Sharps or Flats ... 1082
MIDI Editor Zoom Controls ... 1083
Track List ... 1084
Track List Columns ... 1084
Showing and Hiding Tracks ... 1084
Track List Right-Click Menu ... 1084

Groups List 1085
MIDI Operations in MIDI Editors 1085
Timebase and Conductor Rulers 1086
MIDI Notes Focus View 1086
MIDI Notes Focus View in the Edit Window 1086
Superimposed Notes View 1087
Color Coding MIDI Notes 1088
Editing MIDI Notes 1091
Manually Inserting MIDI Notes 1091
Notes Pane Right-Click Menu 1092
Notes Pane Right-Click Menu Options 1092
Notation View 1094
Double Bar in Notation View 1095
Notation View Right-Click Menu 1096
Velocity, Controller, and Automation Lanes 1096
Controller and Automation Lanes Right-Click Menu 1097
41 Score Editor 1099
Opening the Score Editor Window 1099
Edit Tools 1100
Zoomer 1100
Trim 1101
Note Selector 1101
Grabber 1101
Pencil 1101
Default Note Duration 1102
Default Note On Velocity 1102
Play MIDI Notes When Editing 1102
Link Timeline and Edit Selection 1103
Mirrored MIDI Editing 1103
Double Bar 1103
Cursor Location 1104

Grid 1104
Inserting Notes on the Grid 1105
Score Editor Window Target 1105
Score Editor Window Menu 1105
Expanded Edit Tools 1105
Selection Display 1105
Track List 1105
Scrolling 1106
Keep Score Editor Window On Top 1106
Customizable Toolbar 1106
Track List 1107
Showing and Hiding Tracks 1107
Page Controls 1108
Score Editor Zoom Controls 1108
Zoom to Page Sizes 1109
Notation Display Track Settings 1110
Notation Display Track Settings Options 1110
Score Setup 1112
Score Setup Window Options 1112
Editing Notes 1114
Selecting Notes 1114
Transposing Notes 1115
Moving Notes 1115
Inserting Notes 1116
Rests 1117
Score Editor Right-Click Menu 1117
Score Editor Right-Click Menu Items 1117
Key Changes 1119
Meter Changes 1120
Chord Symbols and Diagrams 1120
Exporting Scores 1122
Printing Scores 1122

42 MIDI Event List 1123
Opening the MIDI Event List 1123
Track Selector 1123
Number of Events 1124
Target 1124
MIDI Event List Menu 1124
Columns in the MIDI Event List 1124
View Filter for MIDI Event List 1125
Navigating in the MIDI Event List 1125
Inserting Events in the MIDI Event List 1126
Inserting Another Event 1129
Editing Events in the MIDI Event List 1129
Selecting Events in the MIDI Event List 1129
Deleting Events in the MIDI Event List 1130
Copying and Pasting Events in the MIDI Event List 1130
MIDI Event List Options 1131
43 MIDI Polyphonic Expression (MPE) 1132
MPE and Pro Tools 1132
MPE Modes 1132
Poly Mode 1132
Mono Mode 1133
MPE MIDI Input Devices 1133
MPE Instrument and MIDI Tracks 1133
Recording MPE 1135
Editing MPE Data 1135
Viewing MPE Data 1136
Editing MPE Data in the Edit or a MIDI Editor Window 1136
Deleting MPE Data 1137
MPE Editing Restrictions 1137
Editing MPE Data in the MIDI Event List 1137
MPE Channel Color Coding 1138

MPE Tracks Always Show Channel Option 1139
Note-Channel Management in Mono Mode 1139
Part VII: Arranging 1142
45 Time, Tempo, Meter, Key, and Chords 1143
Timebase Rulers and Conductor Rulers 1143
Timebase Rulers 1143
Conductor Rulers 1145
Displaying Rulers 1145
Ruler View Selector 1146
Main Time Scale 1146
Setting the Main Time Scale 1147
Navigating with the Main Counters 1147
The Sub Counter 1147
Tick-Based Timing 1148
Tick- and Sample-Based Timebases 1149
Sample-Based Audio and MIDI 1149
Tick-Based Audio and MIDI 1149
Tick-Based Elastic Audio 1149
Switching Timebases 1149
Alternate Playlist Timebases 1150
Groups 1150
Audio Clip Location 1150
Marker Location 1151
Sample Rounding and Edit Operations 1151
Song Start Marker 1151
Tempo 1152
Tempo Events 1152
Inserting Tempo Events 1152
Moving and Editing Tempo Events 1153
Tap Tempo 1154
Tempo and Automation Drift 1155

Tempo Changes and Tick-Based Elastic Audio Tracks ... 1156
Tempo Changes and Tick-Based Audio Tracks ... 1157
Conform to Tempo ... 1158
Alternate Playlists and Tempo ... 1158
Graphic Tempo Editor ... 1158
Displaying the Tempo Editor ... 1158
Zooming and Scrolling in the Tempo Editor ... 1159
Editing Tempo Events in the Tempo Editor ... 1159
Drawing Tempo Events ... 1159
Selecting Tempo Resolution (BPM Rate) ... 1160
Selecting Tempo Edit Density ... 1160
Curve Adjustment Mode ... 1161
Creating New Tempo Settings with Grabber Tools ... 1161
Selecting Tempo Events ... 1162
Extending Tempo Selections ... 1162
Scaling and Stretching Tempo Events with the Trim Tool ... 1163
Moving, Cutting, Pasting and Nudging in the Tempo Editor ... 1164
Changing the Linearity Display Mode ... 1165
Tempo Edit Density and Linearity Display Mode ... 1166
Tempo Operations Window ... 1166
Constant ... 1167
Linear ... 1168
Parabolic ... 1169
S-Curve ... 1170
Scale ... 1172
Stretch ... 1173
Identify Beat Command ... 1174
Bar|Beat Markers ... 1174
Choosing Bar|Beat Markers or Tempo Events ... 1174
Identifying Beats ... 1174
Dragging Bar|Beat Markers ... 1175
Editing Bar|Beat Markers ... 1176

Inserting Bar|Beat Markers One at a Time 1177
Meter Events 1177
Current Meter 1177
Inserting Meter Events 1178
Editing Meter Events 1179
Partial Measures 1180
Time Operations 1180
Change Meter 1180
Change Meter Examples 1181
Change Meter Options 1181
Insert Time 1182
Insert Time Example 1183
Insert Time Options 1183
Realign 1183
Cut Time 1184
Cut Time Example 1184
Cut Time Options 1184
Move Song Start 1185
Move Song Start Example 1185
Move Song Start Options 1185
Renumbering Bars 1186
Key Signatures 1186
Key Signature Ruler 1186
Changing Key Signatures 1187
Key Change Dialog 1187
Pitched Tracks 1189
Importing Key Signatures 1189
Chord Symbols 1189
Chord Symbols Ruler 1190
Chord Change Dialog 1190
Extract Chords From Selection 1191
Marker Rulers 1192

Renaming Alternate Marker Rulers ... 1193

46 Memory Locations ... 1194

Creating Memory Locations ... 1194

Marker Ruler and Track Marker Controls ... 1196

Show/Hide All Rulers Command ... 1197

Marker Context Menu ... 1197

Marker Line Display Options ... 1197

Creating Memory Locations During Playback ... 1198

Properties of Memory Locations ... 1198

Time Properties ... 1199

Marker Properties ... 1200

General Properties ... 1201

Comments ... 1201

Recalling Memory Locations ... 1201

Editing Memory Locations ... 1202

Deleting Memory Locations ... 1204

Copying Marker Memory Locations ... 1204

Memory Locations Window ... 1205

Filtering Memory Locations ... 1205

Managing Memory Locations ... 1208

Memory Locations Commands and Options ... 1208

View Filter Icons ... 1210

Batch Rename Memory Locations ... 1211

Track Markers ... 1213

Adding Markers ... 1213

Track Marker Views ... 1213

Editing with Track Markers ... 1214

Marker Follows Edit (MFE) ... 1214

Select Between Markers ... 1214

Snap Marker to Edit Selection ... 1215

Key Commands for Selecting Marker Lanes ... 1215

Dragging Markers Between Tracks and Between Tracks and the Marker Ruler ... 1215
Move Selection to Main Marker Ruler ... 1215
Copy and Merge Paste Track Markers ... 1216
47 Arranging Clips ... 1217
Placing Clips from the Clip List on to Track Playlists ... 1217
Working with Multiple Items from the Clip List ... 1217
Setting Timeline Drop Order ... 1217
Dragging and Dropping Multiple Items from the Clip List ... 1218
Placing Clips at the Edit Insertion Point ... 1219
Aligning Clips with the Edit Insertion Point ... 1220
Arranging with Transparent Clip Overlays ... 1221
Moving Clips with the Grabber Tools ... 1221
Time Grabber and Object Grabber ... 1221
Separation Grabber ... 1222
Layered Editing ... 1222
Snapping to the Preceding or Next Clip on a Track ... 1224
Arranging Clips in Shuffle Mode ... 1225
Shuffling Multiple Tracks and Multichannel Clips ... 1226
Arranging Clips in Slip Mode ... 1226
Spotting Clips ... 1226
Right-Click Commands for Spotting Clips ... 1227
Clip Time Stamps ... 1228
Arranging Clips in Grid Mode ... 1228
Setting Up the Grid ... 1228
Defining the Grid Value ... 1228
Absolute and Relative Grid Mode ... 1229
Replacing Audio Clips ... 1230
Replacing Clips from the Clip List ... 1231
Replace Clip and Multichannel Tracks ... 1231
Replace Clip Dialog Options ... 1231
Sync Points ... 1232

Removing Sync Points ... 1233
Displaying Sync Points ... 1233
Dragging Sync Points ... 1233
Scrubbing Sync Points ... 1234
Shift Command ... 1234
Space Clips ... 1235
Locking Clips ... 1236
Edit Locking Clips ... 1237
Time Locking Clips ... 1237
Allowing Editing of Edit-Locked Clips ... 1238
Muting/Unmuting Clips ... 1238
Stripping Silence from Clips ... 1239
Auto-Naming for Strip Silence ... 1239
Using Strip Silence ... 1240
The Strip Silence Window ... 1241
Inserting Silence ... 1242
Duplicating Clips ... 1243
Duplicating Audio and Keeping It On The Beat ... 1244
Duplicate and Extend Selection ... 1244
Repeating Clips ... 1244
48 Clip Loops and Groups ... 1246
Clip Looping ... 1246
Creating Looped Clips ... 1246
Unlooping Clips ... 1249
Editing Looped Clips ... 1249
Trimming Looped Clips ... 1250
Automation and Looped Clips ... 1250
Clip Groups ... 1251
Creating Clip Groups ... 1252
Ungrouping Clips ... 1253
Regrouping Clips ... 1253

Multitrack Clip Groups ... 1254
Separated Multitrack Clip Groups ... 1255
Clip Groups on Tick-Based Tracks ... 1256
Changing Clip Group Timebase ... 1256
Editing Clip Groups ... 1257
Editing MIDI Clip Groups ... 1257
Editing Audio Clip Groups ... 1257
Tabbing to Transients and Clip Boundaries ... 1258
Recording ... 1258
Fades and Crossfades on Clip Groups ... 1258
Clip Groups and Clip Gain ... 1259
Importing and Exporting Clip Group Files ... 1260
Part VIII: Processing ... 1261
48 AudioSuite Processing ... 1262
AudioSuite Menu ... 1262
AudioSuite Window ... 1262
AudioSuite Window Header ... 1262
AudioSuite Plugin Selector ... 1263
Selection Reference ... 1263
Use In Playlist Button ... 1264
File Mode Selector ... 1264
Process Mode Selector ... 1265
AudioSuite Plugin Preset Controls ... 1265
Target Button ... 1266
Other AudioSuite Controls ... 1266
AudioSuite Window Footer ... 1267
Preview Button ... 1267
Preview Volume Control ... 1268
Bypass Button ... 1268
Reverse Button ... 1268
Whole File Button ... 1268

Handle Length ... 1268
Render Button ... 1269
Using AudioSuite Plugins ... 1269
Selecting Tracks for AudioSuite Processing ... 1270
Selecting Tracks for Delay or Reverb Processing ... 1270
AudioSuite Handles ... 1271
Using AudioSuite Plugins in Stereo ... 1272
Conditions for AudioSuite Rendering with Handles, Fades, Clip Gain, and Metadata ... 1272
49 Clip Gain and Clip Effects ... 1274
Clip Gain ... 1274
Clip Gain Info View ... 1274
Clip Gain Line ... 1275
Editing Clip Gain ... 1276
Converting Clip Gain and Track Volume Automation ... 1281
Coalescing Clip Gain and Track Volume Automation ... 1282
Bypassing Clip Gain ... 1282
Rendering Clip Gain ... 1282
Clip Effects ... 1283
Clip Effects Display ... 1284
Clip Effect Floating Window ... 1284
Clip Effects Header ... 1284
Applying Clip Effects ... 1285
Bypassing Clip Effects ... 1285
Rendering Clip Effects ... 1285
Clip Effects Signal Chain Ordering ... 1286
Showing or Hiding the EQ, Filters, and Dynamics Sections ... 1287
Enabling or Disabling EQ, Filter, and Dynamics Effects ... 1287
Clip Effects Status View ... 1287
Clip Effects Special Edit Commands ... 1288
Clip Effects Settings ... 1289
Input Trim and Polarity Invert ... 1289

EQ and Filters ... 1289
Dynamics ... 1292
Clip Effects Presets and Settings Files ... 1297
Clip Effects Settings Menu ... 1298
49 Transcription ... 1298
Track Transcription ... 1299
Clip Transcription ... 1300
Re-Transcribe Text ... 1300
Edit, Join, and Clear Words ... 1300
Transcription Settings ... 1302
Transcript Window ... 1304
Selecting Transcribed Text ... 1304
Common Controls ... 1305
Timeline View ... 1307
Files View ... 1309
Editing with Text ... 1312
Drag and Drop Text to Timeline ... 1312
Spot to Edit Insertion in Transcript Window ... 1313
SSeparate Clip by Word, Sentence, or Speaker ... 1314
Navigate to Audio by Text ... 1314
Transcribe in the Workspace ... 1315
Transcription Settings without Session Open ... 1315
Transcription and Transcription Channel Column ... 1315
Searching by Transcription in the Workspace ... 1315
Track Transcription ... 1315
Show Transcription Lane per Track ... 1316
Clip Transcription ... 1317
Re-Transcribe Text ... 1318
Edit, Join, and Clear Words ... 1318
Transcription Settings ... 1320
File Analysis Options ... 1320

Transcription Display ... 1322
Transcript Window ... 1322
Selecting Transcribed Text ... 1323
Common Controls ... 1323
Timeline View ... 1325
Files View ... 1327
Editing with Text ... 1330
Drag and Drop Text to Timeline ... 1330
Spot to Edit Insertion in Transcript Window ... 1331
Separate Clip by Word, Sentence, or Speaker ... 1332
Navigate to Audio by Text ... 1332
Separate Clip by Word, Sentence, or Speaker on Tracks ... 1333
Transcribe in the Workspace ... 1333
Transcription Indicator in Workspace ... 1334
Transcription Settings without Session Open ... 1334
Transcription and Transcription Channel Column ... 1334
Searching by Transcription in the Workspace ... 1334
50 Elastic Audio ... 1335
Example Elastic Audio Workflow ... 1336
Elastic Audio Tracks ... 1339
Enabling Elastic Audio Tracks ... 1340
Creating New Tracks with Elastic Audio Enabled ... 1341
Disabling Elastic Audio Tracks ... 1342
Committed Clips ... 1342
Disabling Elastic Audio and Alternate Playlists ... 1342
Elastic Audio Track Controls ... 1342
Elastic Audio Track Views ... 1343
Warp View ... 1343
Analysis View ... 1343
Elastic Audio Analysis ... 1343
Tempo Detection ... 1343

Event Confidence ... 1344
Real-Time and Rendered Elastic Audio Processing ... 1344
About Rendered Files ... 1345
Clipping Indicator ... 1345
Elastic Audio Plugins ... 1345
Elastic Audio Plugin Window Controls ... 1346
Polyphonic Plugin ... 1347
Rhythmic Plugin ... 1348
Monophonic Plugin ... 1348
Varispeed Plugin ... 1348
élastique Pro Plugin ... 1349
X-Form Plugin ... 1349
Editing in Warp View ... 1350
Elastic Audio Markers in Warp View ... 1350
Event Markers ... 1351
Warp Markers ... 1351
Tempo Event-Generated Warp Markers ... 1352
Warping Audio ... 1352
Telescoping Warp ... 1352
Accordion Warp ... 1354
Range Warp ... 1354
Range Warp with an Edit Selection ... 1355
Individual Range Warp ... 1355
Warped Clips ... 1356
Displaying the Warp Indicator ... 1356
Out of Range Processing ... 1356
Removing Clip Warping ... 1357
Edit Groups and Warp Editing ... 1357
Editing in Analysis View ... 1357
Adding Event Markers ... 1358
Moving Event Markers ... 1358
Promoting Event Markers ... 1358

Deleting Event Markers ... 1359
Edit Groups and Event Editing ... 1359
Elastic Properties ... 1359
Elastic Properties Window ... 1359
Clip Property ... 1360
Source Length Property ... 1360
Source Tempo Property ... 1360
Meter Field ... 1361
TCE Factor Property ... 1361
Event Sensitivity Property ... 1361
Reset Button ... 1362
Input Gain Property ... 1362
Pitch Shift Property ... 1362
Elastic Audio Clip-Based Pitch Shifting ... 1362
Varispeed and Pitch Shifting ... 1363
Removing Clip Pitch Shifting ... 1364
AudioSuite Processing and Elastic Audio Clips ... 1364
Moving Elastic Audio Between Tracks ... 1364
Approximate Waveforms ... 1365
Elastic Audio Preferences ... 1365
51 Melodyne Editing and Audio to MIDI ... 1367
Integrated Melodyne Editing ... 1367
Melodyne Floating Window ... 1367
Melodyne Analysis Display on Clips ... 1368
Melodyne Track and Clip Commands ... 1368
Editing Audio in Melodyne ... 1368
Extract MIDI from an Audio Track ... 1369
Drag and Drop Audio to MIDI ... 1370
Copy Audio and Paste as MIDI ... 1372
Integrated ARA Plugins ... 1374
Adding ARA Plugins to Tracks or Clips ... 1374

ARA Data Management ... 1375
Acon Digital Acoustica Essentials ... 1375
iZotope RX Spectral Editor ... 1376
NoiseWorks DynAssist Lite ... 1381
SoundRadix ... 1381
Synchro Arts ... 1382
SpectraLayers Go ... 1384
WaveLab Go ... 1385
53 Committing, Freezing, and Bouncing Tracks ... 1386
Commit Tracks ... 1386
What Gets Committed ... 1386
Clip Boundaries Maintained on Committed Tracks ... 1387
Commit Tracks Dialog ... 1388
Commit Up To This Insert ... 1390
Committing MIDI ... 1390
Committing MIDI Clips by Drag and Drop ... 1391
Committing Tracks with Multiple Output Assignments ... 1392
Committing Tracks with Inserts that Have Auxiliary Output Sends ... 1392
Rendered File Bit Preference ... 1392
Track Freeze ... 1392
What Gets Frozen ... 1393
Freeze Up To This Insert ... 1394
Editing Restrictions on Frozen Tracks ... 1395
Global Freeze Tracks ... 1396
Bounce Track ... 1397
Track Bounce Dialog ... 1397
54 MIDI Operations ... 1400
MIDI Operations Window ... 1400
Using the MIDI Operations Window ... 1402
Quantize ... 1402
Edit and MIDI Editor Window Toolbar Quantize Controls ... 1405

Grid Quantize 1405
What to Quantize 1405
Quantize Grid 1406
Additional Grid Quantize Options 1407
Grid Quantize Examples 1408
Straight Quantize 1408
Quantizing While Preserving the Original Feel 1408
Quantizing with Swing 1409
Quantizing with Randomize 1409
Experimenting with Grid Quantize 1410
Groove Quantize 1410
Groove Templates 1410
Groove Quantize Settings 1411
Recalling Options Slider Settings 1412
Applying Groove Templates 1412
Mapping Groove Templates 1413
Quantizing Elastic Audio 1415
Quantizing Audio Clips 1415
Quantizing Mixed Selections 1416
Restore Performance Command 1416
Removing Input Quantize 1418
Flatten Performance 1418
Change Velocity 1419
Fading Velocities 1420
Preserving Existing Velocity Relationships 1420
Scaling Velocities 1420
Change Velocity Settings 1421
Velocity Ranges 1422
Change Duration 1422
Change Duration Settings 1423
Change Duration Examples 1424
Transpose 1425

Select/Split Notes Command ... 1428
Select/Split Notes Settings ... 1428
Selecting and Splitting Notes ... 1430
Selecting a Pitch Range of Notes ... 1430
Selecting Notes in a Chord ... 1430
Input Quantize Command ... 1431
Input Quantize Button in Edit Window and MIDI Editor Toolbars ... 1433
Step Input Command ... 1433
Step Input Controls ... 1435
Triggering the Undo Step, Next Step, or Redo Step Buttons ... 1436
Numeric Keypad Shortcuts for Step Input ... 1437
55 HEAT ... 1438
Enabling HEAT ... 1438
About HEAT Processing ... 1438
Drive ... 1438
Tone ... 1439
HEAT Processing ... 1439
HEAT Controls ... 1439
HEAT Master Controls ... 1439
HEAT Track Controls ... 1440
Master Bypass and Track Bypass Indicators ... 1441
A Note About Other Track Types ... 1442
DSP and Voice Requirements ... 1442
Insufficient DSP Resources ... 1442
Voice Requirements ... 1443
Using HEAT with a Control Surface ... 1443
D-Control and D-Command ... 1443
C|24 ... 1445
Part IX: Mixing ... 1446
56 Basic Mixing ... 1447
Mixing Concepts ... 1447

Metering and Calibration 1447
Calibrating Audio Interfaces 1447
Signal Flow by Track Type 1447
Audio Tracks and Signal Flow 1448
Auxiliary Input Tracks and Signal Flow 1449
Common Uses for Auxiliary Inputs 1450
Routing an Auxiliary Input 1450
Master Fader Tracks and Signal Flow 1451
Common Uses for Master Faders 1452
Using a Master Fader 1452
Instrument Tracks and Signal Flow 1452
Common Uses for Instrument Tracks 1453
Routing with an Instrument Track 1453
VCA Master Tracks 1454
VCA Member Track Control Indications 1454
VCA Member Track Controls and Group Behavior 1454
Common Uses for VCA Master Tracks 1454
VCA Master Track Controls 1455
Assigning Groups to VCA Masters 1456
Allowing Grouped Behavior of VCA Member Track Controls 1456
Inserts 1457
Track Output Format and Plugins 1457
Plugin Formats 1457
Configuring Inserts View in the Mix and Edit Windows 1457
HEAT 1458
Stereo Pan Depth 1458
Stereo Pan Depth Options 1458
Views in the Mix and Edit Windows 1459
Window View Selectors 1459
Displaying Views 1460
Hiding Views in the Edit Window 1460
Window View Options 1460

Audio Input and Output Paths 1465
Input Audio Path 1465
Output Audio Path 1466
Output Windows 1466
Multiple Output Assignments 1466
Display of Multiple Output Assignments 1467
Inactive Outputs 1467
Inactive Outputs and DSP Resources 1467
About the “No Output” Option 1468
I/O Path Color 1468
Sends 1468
Assigning Sends to Tracks 1469
Search Send Paths 1471
Muting Sends 1473
Creating and Assigning a New Track from a Send 1473
Assigning an Existing Track from a Send 1474
Send Formats 1475
Send Path Selector Choices 1475
Configuring Sends View in the Mix and Edit Windows 1475
Sends View Options 1476
Assignments View 1476
Expanded Send Views (A–J) 1477
Meters in Send Assignments 1477
Editing Sends in the Mix and Edit Windows (Individual Send Views) 1478
Individual Send Views and Meters 1478
Send Status Display 1478
Inactive Sends 1479
Moving or Copying Sends 1480
Copying Track Settings to Sends 1480
Linking Send Pan and Main Pan Controls 1480
Pre/Post–Fader Indicator for Sends 1481
AAX Render Plugin Bed Sends 1481

Bed Path Management ... 1482
Format and Width Constraints ... 1483
Mixer and Panning Behavior ... 1483
Format Migration Behavior ... 1483
Bus Interrogation Options ... 1484
Output Windows for Tracks and Sends ... 1485
Opening Multiple Output Windows ... 1486
Track or Send Fader, Pan Controls, and Solo, Mute, and Automation Controls ... 1487
Panner Linking ... 1487
Inverse Linked Panning ... 1488
Standard Selector Controls in Output Windows ... 1488
Output Meters ... 1490
Signal Routing for Monitoring and Submixing ... 1491
Monitoring and Mixing Audio with Auxiliary Input Tracks ... 1491
Monitoring and Mixing Audio with Instrument Tracks ... 1492
Creating a Submix ... 1495
Discrete Submix Output ... 1495
Send and Return Submixing for Effects Processing ... 1496
Send and Return Submixes with External Devices ... 1497
Creating Monitor Submixes ... 1498
Creating a Master Send Level Control ... 1499
Soloing Tracks in a Submix ... 1500
Generating Stereo Output from a Mono Send/Return ... 1500
Delay Compensation ... 1500
Enabling Delay Compensation ... 1500
Delay Compensation Time Mode ... 1501
System Delay ... 1501
Delay Compensation View ... 1501
Metering Follows Delay Compensation Values ... 1502
Delay Compensation View Indicators and Field ... 1502
Delay Compensation for Side-Chains ... 1503
Delay Compensation for Hardware Inputs ... 1504

Delay that Exceeds the Compensation Limit ... 1504
Low Latency Monitoring During Recording ... 1504
Overriding Low Latency Monitoring During Recording ... 1505
Delay Compensation on Auxiliary Inputs ... 1505
Delay Compensation for MIDI ... 1505
Low-Latency Recording with Virtual MIDI Instruments and Delay Compensation ... 1505
Configuring Cue Mixes with Delay Compensation ... 1506
Setting a Hardware Insert Delay Offset ... 1507
Determining Your Hardware's Insert Delay ... 1507
Dither ... 1507
Dither in Pro Tools ... 1508
Noise Shaping ... 1508
Using an Ethernet Control Surface with Pro Tools ... 1508
EUCON ... 1508
Enabling an Ethernet Control Surface in Pro Tools ... 1509
Using a MIDI Control Surface with Pro Tools ... 1510
MIDI Control Surface Personalities ... 1510
Connecting a MIDI Control Surface ... 1510
Configuring Your System for a MIDI Control Surface ... 1511
Enabling a MIDI Control Surface in Pro Tools ... 1511
Enabling the MIDI Control Surface as an Input Device ... 1511
57 Plugin and Hardware Inserts ... 1512
Types of Inserts ... 1512
Plugin Inserts ... 1512
Hardware I/O Inserts ... 1512
Using Inserts for Effects Processing ... 1513
Insert Formats ... 1513
Plugin Formats ... 1514
Viewing Inserts ... 1514
Display of Plugin Window Status ... 1515
Making Inserts Inactive ... 1516

Inserting Plugins on Tracks 1517
Inserting Native and DSP Plugins on Tracks 1518
Plugin Menu Organization 1519
“Organize Plugin Menus By” Setting 1519
Width-Changing Plugins Organized in Sub-menu 1520
MIDI Plugins 1520
Plugin Insert Search 1521
Default EQ and Dynamics Plugins 1522
Plugin Favorites 1522
Moving and Duplicating Plugin and Hardware Inserts 1523
Moving Plugins to Tracks with Different Channel Widths 1524
Plugin Windows 1524
Track Controls in the Plugin Window 1524
Automation Controls in the Plugin Window 1526
Plugin Map Controls in the Plugin Window 1526
Additional Plugin Controls in the Plugin Window 1527
Multi-Mono Controls in the Plugin Window 1527
Opening Plugin Windows 1528
Opening Multiple Plugin Windows 1528
Using Plugin Window Controls 1528
Editing Plugin Controls 1529
Editing Plugin Parameters Using a Mouse 1529
Editing Plugin Parameters Using a Computer Keyboard 1529
Plugin Automation and Safe Modes 1530
Side-Chain Input 1530
Using a Key Input for External Side-Chain Processing 1531
Delay Compensation for Side Chains 1531
Plugin Bus Outputs 1531
Plugin Presets 1532
Plugin Settings Menu 1533
Settings Preferences 1534
Choosing a Destination for Settings 1534

Creating Subfolders for Settings ... 1534
Managing Presets ... 1534
Changing Presets with the Next (+) and Previous (–) Setting Buttons ... 1535
Editing Settings on Unlinked Multi-Mono Plugins ... 1535
Plugin Settings Dialog ... 1536
Auditioning Plugin Presets ... 1537
Workspace and Plugin Settings Files ... 1537
Searching for Plugin Settings Files ... 1538
Dragging and Dropping Plugin Settings Files ... 1538
Selecting Plugin Presets from the Plugin Selector ... 1539
Plugin Mapping ... 1540
Plugin Map Controls ... 1541
Creating Plugin Maps ... 1542
Creating and Editing Plugin Maps ... 1542
Saving Plugin Maps ... 1543
Deleting Plugin Maps ... 1544
Setting a Custom Plugin Map as the Default Map ... 1544
Hiding Default Plugin Map Pages ... 1545
Exporting and Importing Plugin Maps ... 1545
Bypassing Plugins ... 1546
HiDPI Scaling with Some 3rd-Party Plugins ... 1547
Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins ... 1548
Drag and Drop Audio Clips from Pro Tools to AAX Plugins ... 1549
Using Hardware Inserts ... 1549
Assigning Hardware Inserts ... 1551
Bypassing Hardware Inserts ... 1552
Connecting and Integrating External Devices ... 1552
Connecting Effects Units Digitally ... 1552
Using External Clock Sources (for Recording and Monitoring) ... 1553
58 DSP Mode ... 1555
DSP Mode for Ultra-Low Latency Monitoring ... 1555

DSP Mode States ... 1555
Enabling DSP Mode ... 1556
Enabling DSP Mode Safe ... 1558
DSP Mode Indicators for Plugins, Inserts, Sends, and Outputs ... 1559
DSP-Compatible Badge for plugins ... 1559
DSP Mode Insert Indicators ... 1560
Plugin Format Indicator in plugin Windows ... 1561
Send Selector DSP Mode Indicator ... 1562
Output View Selector DSP Mode Indicator ... 1562
Workflow Example: Recording in DSP Mode for Ultra-Low Latency Monitoring ... 1563
Adjust the Mix for Recording ... 1564
Record with Ultra-Low Latency Monitoring ... 1565
Use DSP Mode Safe to Record with Native Reverb ... 1566
Tips for Using DSP Mode ... 1568
59 Automation ... 1569
Automation Accuracy with Control Surfaces ... 1569
Automation Overview ... 1569
Automation Playlists ... 1569
Automation Playlists with Audio and MIDI Clips ... 1571
Trim Automation Playlists ... 1572
Multiple Edit Playlists and Audio Track Automation ... 1572
Duplicating Tracks for Playlist Editing ... 1572
Automation Modes ... 1572
Off Mode ... 1572
Read Mode ... 1573
Write Mode ... 1573
Touch Mode ... 1573
Latch Mode ... 1573
AutoJoin with Latch Mode ... 1574
Touch/Latch Mode ... 1575
Trim Mode ... 1575

Trim Automation Modes ... 1576
Automation Preferences ... 1577
Send Levels and Trim Mode ... 1578
Smoothing ... 1578
Thinning ... 1578
AutoMatch Time ... 1578
Automation Follows Edit Option ... 1578
Automation Safe ... 1579
Viewing Automation ... 1579
Track Views ... 1579
Automation and Controller Lanes ... 1580
Displaying Trim Automation Along with the Main Playlist ... 1583
Displaying the Composite Automation Playlist ... 1583
AutoMatch Indicators ... 1583
Indication of Automation in Track View and Automation Lane Selectors ... 1584
Writing Automation ... 1585
Storing an Initial Control Position ... 1586
Automating Switched Controls ... 1587
Automating Switched Controls in Touch Mode ... 1587
Setting Switched Controls for Momentary Behavior ... 1587
Automating Sends ... 1587
Copying Track Automation to Sends ... 1588
Automating Plugins ... 1589
Enabling Automation for Individual Plugin Parameters ... 1590
Enabling Automation for All Plugin Parameters ... 1590
Automatically Enabling Plugins for Automation ... 1590
Color Indication of Automation Mode for Plugin Parameters ... 1591
Record Safing Plugin Automation ... 1591
AutoMatching Controls ... 1591
AutoMatching All Controls ... 1591
AutoMatching Individual Tracks ... 1592
AutoMatching Individual Automation Types ... 1592

AutoMatching Individual Controls ... 1592
Priming Controls for Writing Automation in Latch Mode ... 1593
Taking Tracks and Controls Out of Latch Prime ... 1593
Rolling Through Automation Punch Points in Latch Prime ... 1595
Enabling and Suspending Automation ... 1595
Suspending Automation on All Tracks ... 1596
Suspending Automation for Individual Controls ... 1596
Viewing Automation Enable Status ... 1597
Automation Enable Guidelines ... 1597
Deleting Automation ... 1598
Clearing Trim Automation ... 1598
Thinning Automation ... 1599
Smooth and Thin Data After Pass ... 1599
Thin Automation Commands ... 1599
Drawing Automation ... 1599
Using Pencil Tool Shapes ... 1600
Resolution of MIDI Controller Data ... 1600
Editing Automation ... 1601
Graphical Editing of Automation Data ... 1601
Editing Automation Types ... 1603
Editing Automation Breakpoints ... 1605
Constraining New Breakpoints to the Next or Previous Automation Value ... 1605
Editing Automation on Stereo and Multichannel Tracks ... 1606
Editing Automation on Grouped Tracks ... 1607
Cutting, Copying, and Pasting Automation ... 1608
Editing and Track Views ... 1610
Tips for Cutting, Copying and Pasting Automation ... 1610
Cut, Copy, Clear, and Paste Special Commands ... 1611
Special Paste Function for Automation Data ... 1612
Converting Volume Automation and Clip Gain ... 1612
Coalescing Volume Automation and Clip Gain ... 1613
Glide Automation ... 1613

Glide Automation Considerations 1614
Trimming Automation 1614
Writing Trim Automation 1615
Coalescing Trim Automation 1615
Writing Automation to the Start, End, or All of a Track or Selection 1616
Requirements for Standard Write Automation Commands 1617
Write to Start, End or All and Trim Mode 1617
Writing Automation to the Start, End or All of a Track or Selection on Stop 1618
Writing Automation to the Next Breakpoint or to the Punch Point 1618
Write To Next Breakpoint or Punch Point and Trim Mode 1620
Writing Automation to the Next Breakpoint or to the Punch Point on Stop 1621
Guidelines for “Write To” Commands 1621
Using “Write To” Commands During Playback 1621
Applying “Write To” Commands to Selected Tracks 1622
Suppressing Warnings when Using “Write To” Commands 1622
Overwriting or Extending Mute Automation 1622
Mute Overwrite/Extend is Supported in Touch and Latch Mode, as follows: 1623
Creating Snapshot Automation 1626
Adding Snapshot Automation to Empty Automation Playlists 1627
Writing Snapshot Automation over Existing Automation Data 1627
Capturing Automation and Applying it Elsewhere 1628
Snapshot Automation and Trimming of Automation Data 1628
Previewing Automation 1629
Previewing New Automation Values 1629
Taking Controls Out of Isolated State 1630
Isolating Multiple Controls 1630
Suspending Preview Mode 1630
Punching Preview Values 1631
Preview Mode and “Write To” Commands 1631
Capturing Automation 1631
Capturing Automation Values 1632
Punching Captured Automation Values 1632

Capturing Automation Values for All Controls ... 1632
Punching Automation Values for All Controls ... 1632
Capture and Trim Mode ... 1633
Punch Capture and “Write To” Commands ... 1633
Capture and Preview Mode ... 1633
VCA Master Track Automation ... 1634
Displaying Automation on VCA Master Tracks ... 1634
Displaying the Composite Automation Playlist on Member Tracks ... 1634
Excluding VCA Member Tracks from VCA Master Automation ... 1634
Inverse VCA Automation ... 1635
Coalescing VCA Automation ... 1635
Clearing a VCA Master ... 1635
Deleting a VCA Master ... 1636
Removing a Member Track from a VCA Group ... 1636
Duplicating a Member Track ... 1636
Coalescing Automation Across an Edit Selection ... 1637
60 Mixdown ... 1638
Selecting Audio for Loops, Submixes, and Effects ... 1638
Using Dither ... 1638
When to Use a Dither Plugin ... 1638
Bounce Mix and Dither ... 1639
Using Dither on an Output Mix ... 1639
Sample Rate Conversion and Bit Depth Reduction ... 1639
Bus Recording to Tracks ... 1639
Voice Requirements for Recording a Submix ... 1640
Bounce Mix ... 1640
Bounce From Sends or Track Outputs ... 1641
Bounce Options ... 1642
Presets ... 1643
File Name ... 1645
File Type ... 1645

Mix Source 1647
Compression Type 1649
Quality 1649
Add MP3 1649
File Format 1649
Delivery Format 1650
Bit Depth 1651
Sample Rate 1651
Pad to Frame Boundary 1652
Import After Bounce 1652
Location 1652
Offline Bounce 1653
Cancel 1654
Bounce 1654
Recording a Submix (with Bounce Mix) 1654
Final Mixdown (with Bounce Mix) 1654
Mastering 1655
Mastering to a Digital Recorder 1655
Mastering and Audio Compression 1655
Mastering and Error-Correcting Media 1656
Part X: Surround 1657
61 Pro Tools Setup for Surround 1658
Surround Mixing in Pro Tools 1658
Dolby Atmos Surround Formats 1658
Immersive Surround Formats 1658
Pro Tools Audio Connections for 5.1 Mixing 1658
7.1 and 7.0 Formats 1659
7.1 and 7.0 Format 1659
7.1 and 7.0 SDDS Formats 1659
7.1.2 and 7.0.2 Formats 1660
7.0.2 and 7.1.2 Track Layouts 1660

7.0.2 and 7.1.2 Path Orders 1660
5.0.2 to 9.1.6 Immersive Surround Formats in Pro Tools 1661
Ambisonics Formats 1661
Configuring Pro Tools for Multichannel Sessions 1661
New Sessions and I/O Settings 1662
Surround Mix Settings Files 1663
Importing Multichannel I/O Setups 1664
Exporting I/O Settings 1664
Custom Multichannel Paths 1665
Reassigning Channels 1665
Example LCRS Setup 1665
5.1 Tracks, Formats, Assignments, and Metering 1666
Default I/O Selectors in I/O Setup 1666
5.1 Track Layouts, Routing, and Metering 1667
62 Multichannel Tracks and Signal Routing 1668
Multichannel Audio Tracks 1668
Placing Audio in Multichannel Tracks 1668
Solo, Mute, and Gain in Multichannel Tracks and Paths 1669
Track and Output Formats 1669
Multichannel Signal Routing 1671
Multichannel Track Outputs 1672
Multichannel Sends 1673
Multichannel Auxiliary Inputs and Master Faders 1673
Multichannel Instrument Tracks 1674
Mono, Multi-Mono and Multichannel Plugins 1674
Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins 1674
Paths in Surround Mixes 1675
Mixing with Paths and Sub-Paths 1676
Extending Stereo Mixing Conventions to Surround Mixing 1677
Example Paths and Signal Routing for a Surround Mix 1678
Example Output Paths 1678

Example Bus Paths 1678
Example Sub-Paths 1678
Signal Routing Examples 1679
LFE Examples 1681
LFE and Filtering 1682
Flexible Track Routing 1682
Fold Down and Fan Out Indicators 1683
63 Surround Panning and Mixing 1684
Introduction to Pro Tools Surround Panning 1684
Mix and Edit Window Panner Grids 1684
Output Windows 1685
Standard Controls 1686
Track Fader, Solo, Mute, and Auto 1686
Surround Panner Controls 1687
The X/Y Grid and Pan Location Cursor 1687
Panning Mode Button 1688
Position Controls 1688
Center % Control 1688
Divergence Controls 1688
Snap Pan to Speaker Icons 1689
LFE Fader 1689
Multichannel Panner Linking 1689
Panning Modes 1689
X/Y Panning 1690
3-Knob Panning 1690
AutoGlide Mode 1692
Divergence and Center Percentage 1693
Divergence 1693
Divergence Editing Mode 1695
Center % (Percentage) 1695
Side % (Percentage) 1696

LFE Faders in Multichannel Panners 1697
LFE Faders and Groups 1697
LFE Enable 1697
Pan Playlists 1698
Immersive Surround Panner 1698
Height Pan Laws 1698
63 Pro Tools Immersive Panner 1698
Anchor Point 1702
Meta and Macro Controls 1703
Expanded View 1703
Top Panel Controls 1704
Reset All 1704
Z 1704
Height Modes 1704
Walls 1704
Room Views 1706
Room Guides 1708
Anchor Link 1711
Manipulate 1712
Spin 1712
Scale 1713
Channel Controls 1713
Channels View 1714
64 Mixing to Dolby Atmos 1715
Dolby Atmos Overview 1715
Audience Immersion 1715
Elements of a Dolby Atmos Mix 1715
Dolby Atmos Renderer 1716
“3D” Multichannel Formats 1716
Mixing to Dolby Atmos with Pro Tools Ultimate or Studio 1717
Pro Tools Restrictions when Mixing to Dolby Atmos 1717

Enabling the Internal Renderer 1717
Enabling the External Renderer 1718
Reasons to Use an External Renderer 1719
Configuring Pro Tools Using Core Audio with the Dolby Atmos Renderer 1719
Using Core Audio Outputs with Pro Tools and Dolby Atmos Renderer 1719
Dolby Atmos Page Sub-paths 1720
Configuring Session Setup for Dolby Atmos 1720
Configuring the I/O Setup for Dolby Atmos 1720
Output Page 1721
Dolby Atmos Page 1722
Bed/Object Groups 1726
Bed/Object Group Management 1726
Bed/Object Group Assignments 1728
Groups Color Coding 1728
Clear Unused Dolby Atmos Groups 1728
Mixing Bed Material 1729
Object Names and Properties 1730
Track Object Output Assignment 1730
Bus Output 1731
Object Output 1731
Object View in the Edit and Mix Windows 1732
Object Controls 1732
Object Path Selector 1734
Output Window Button 1734
Bus/Object Toggle 1734
Object Control Mode 1734
Binaural and Group Settings on Tracks 1735
3D Panner 1736
Panner Controls and Indicators 1737
Object/Bus Toggle Automation 1744
Auto-Height Overrides Height Automation Option 1744
Coalesce Pan Guide Automation 1745

Duplicating Object Track Pan Automation and Dolby Atmos Panner Plugin Automation 1746
Object Controls Mix Attribute for Grouped Tracks 1746
Dolby Atmos Renderer Window 1748
Monitoring Controls 1748
Input Status Indicators 1749
Objects View 1751
Room Configuration Display 1755
Output Meters 1756
Dolby Atmos Settings Pane 1758
Solo and Mute Dolby Atmos Groups 1761
Trim and Downmix 1762
Presets 1762
New Session Defaults/Current Session 1763
Downmix 1764
Import Trim and Downmix Settings 1766
Using a Master Fader to Control Internal Renderer Monitoring 1766
Binaural Render Mode 1767
Headphone Personalization 1768
Dolby Atmos PEC/DIR Recorder Workflow Example 1769
Configuring the Pro Tools Recorder 1769
Importing Bed/Object-Related Track Data from Another Session 1770
Importing ADM BWF Files 1772
ADM File Metadata on Import 1774
Opening Legacy Dolby Atmos Sessions 1775
Export ADM files 1775
Dolby Atmos Bounce Mix Options 1775
Stock and Custom Re-Renders 1777
Stock Re-Renders 1777
Custom Re-Renders 1779
Bounce Mix, Metadata, and ADM/Re-render Files 1780
Offline Bounce of Dolby Atmos Re-renders 1781
Re-Renders Bounce Options 1783

Internal Renderer Bounce, Commit, and Freeze ... 1784

64 Immersive Audio with 360RA WalkMix Creator ... 1784

Installing and Activating 360RA WalkMix Creator Lite ... 1785

360RA WalkMix Renderer ... 1785

Renderer View in the Edit Window ... 1785

360RA WalkMix Renderer Window ... 1787

Authenticate ... 1787

360RA Renderer Window Views ... 1787

Spherical Panner Display ... 1790

360RA WalkMix Object Assignments ... 1796

Object Assignments ... 1797

Object Panning ... 1797

360RA WalkMix Pan Automation ... 1797

Renderer Master Track ... 1798

Import ADM File ... 1800

Export 360RA Rendered File ... 1800

64 Audio Vivid ... 1801

Install the Audio Vivid Production Suite ... 1801

Configure the Audio Vivid Renderer ... 1801

Audio Vivid Object and Beds Assignments ... 1802

Object Assignments ... 1802

Bed Assignments ... 1803

Audio Vivid Renderer Window ... 1805

Theater View ... 1806

Bed and Object Panel ... 1808

Monitor Level Meters ... 1808

Loudness Meters ... 1809

Audio Vivid Object Panner ... 1811

Space Editing and Display ... 1812

Function Knobs ... 1814

Step Controls ... 1815

Audio Vivid Panning Automation 1817
XYZ Panner and Conversion 1817
Export 1818
Audio Vivid Bounce Options 1819
Import 1821
64 Fraunhofer MPEG-H Audio Renderer 1821
MPEG-H Renderer Features 1823
Installing MPEG-H Renderer 1824
MPEG-H Renderer Setup 1824
Enabling MPEG-H Renderer 1824
Rendering Format 1824
Reference Layout 1825
Setup Assistant 1825
Creating MPEG-H Objects and Beds 1826
Import 1828
Export 1829
65 Ambisonics 1832
Pro Tools Support for Ambisonics 1832
What is Ambisonics? 1832
Configuring the I/O Setup for Ambisonics 1832
Ambisonics Sub-Paths 1833
Channel Ordering for Ambisonics Audio Signal Paths 1833
Ambisonics Mixes in Pro Tools 1834
Folding Down Ambisonics 1835
Part XI: Sync and Video 1836
66 Working with Synchronization 1837
Pro Tools Synchronization Options 1837
Sync X and SYNC HD Synchronization Options 1837
Timecode Trigger Only 1837
Timecode Trigger Resolved with Pro Tools | Sync X 1837
Timecode Trigger Resolved with a SYNC HD 1837

MachineControl 1838
Ext. Clock Output 1838
Session Setup Window 1838
Format Displays and Controls in the Session Setup Window 1840
Sample Rate 1840
Bit Depth 1840
Clock Master/Clock Source 1840
System Delay 1841
Pan Depth 1841
Audio Format 1841
Interleaved 1841
Session Start 1841
Session Length 1841
Timecode 1842
Timecode Rate 1842
Feet+Frames Rate 1842
Timecode 2 Rate 1842
Sync X Setup in the Session Setup Window 1842
Clock Ref (Sample Rate Lock) 1842
Video Ref (Frame Edge Lock) 1843
Positional Reference 1843
SYNC HD Setup in the Session Setup Window 1843
Clock Reference 1843
Positional Reference 1843
Video Ref Format 1843
Video In Format 1843
VSO (Variable Speed Override) 1843
External Timecode Offsets in the Session Setup Window 1844
External Timecode Offsets 1844
Timecode Settings in the Session Setup Window 1845
Freewheel 1845
Pull Up/Down 1845

Preparing to Work with Timecode 1846
Configuring Pro Tools for Timecode 1846
Selecting a Timecode Format 1846
Setting a Session Start Time (Start Frame) 1846
Redefining a Feet+Frames Position 1847
Redefining a Timecode Position 1847
Displaying Time in Timecode Frames 1848
Pull Up and Pull Down 1848
Configuring Pull Up and Pull Down 1848
Extended Pull Up and Pull Down Preference and Session Setup Controls 1849
Auto Match Pull Factors 1849
Example of Auto Match Pull Factors 1849
Audio Sample Rate Pull Up and Down 1849
Audio Rates and Pull Up/Down Options 1849
Video Frame Rate Pull Up and Down 1850
Video Rates and Pull Up/Down Options 1850
Effect of Using Pull Up or Pull Down 1851
Video Pull Up and Pull Down and Timecode Ruler 1852
Plugins and Pull Up and Pull Down 1852
Putting Pro Tools Online 1852
Recording Online 1852
Generating Timecode 1852
Limitations for Synchronization with Video Input or Video Reference 1854
Using MIDI Machine Control 1854
Controlling External Devices Using MMC 1854
Enabling MIDI Machine Control in Pro Tools 1854
Pro Tools as MMC Master 1854
Pro Tools Following MMC 1856
Operating MMC Devices with the Pro Tools Transport 1856
MMC Transport Settings 1857
Taking a Device Offline 1857
Setting Minimum Sync Delay 1857

Remote Track Arming ... 1858
Spotting Clips to Timecode Frame Locations ... 1858
Spot Mode ... 1858
The Spot Dialog ... 1858
Use Subframes Option ... 1859
Capturing Timecode ... 1860
Auto-Spotting Clips ... 1860
Using the Trim Tools in Spot Mode ... 1861
Time Stamping ... 1861
Show Original Timecode in Clips ... 1861
Creating a User Time Stamp ... 1861
Identifying a Synchronization Point ... 1862
Troubleshooting Timecode Synchronization ... 1863
Stripe Timecode Before You Record ... 1863
Resolve All Components of Your System ... 1863
Know the True Frame Rate on Your Media ... 1863
29.97 fps Non-Drop Rate Not Recognized ... 1863
Use a Consistent Clock Source ... 1864
Disabling Avid Audio Sever to Prevent Clock Disruptions with Sync X or Sync HD ... 1864
Speed Correction for Film, NTSC Video, and PAL Video ... 1865
67 Pro Tools | MachineControl ... 1867
MachineControl Requirements ... 1867
Serial Deck Control Mode Requirements ... 1867
Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Requirements ... 1867
MachineControl Components ... 1867
Cables and Connections ... 1868
Cables ... 1868
Serial Deck Control Mode ... 1868
Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode ... 1869
Connecting Machines ... 1869
Using a Rosetta Stone Adapter with MachineControl ... 1870

Starting Up Your System 1870
Machine Local and Remote Modes 1871
MachineControl Communication Modes 1871
Serial Deck Control Mode 1871
Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode 1872
Setting Up Machine Control 1873
Online and Offline Operation 1873
Transport Controls 1873
Remote Mode 1875
Serial Deck Control Mode 1875
Configuring Serial Deck Control (Overview) 1876
Configuring a MachineControl Device for Deck Control 1876
Machine Pre-Roll 1877
Selecting Machines in Serial Deck Control Mode 1877
Using Serial Timecode for Positional Reference 1877
Preferences for Serial Deck Control Mode 1878
Playback Options 1878
Recording Options 1879
Session Setup Window and MachineControl 1879
Session Settings for MachineControl 1880
Additional Pro Tools MachineControl Commands 1880
Selecting Pro Tools or the Machine as the Transport Master 1881
Playback in Serial Deck Control Mode 1882
Machine Cueing 1883
Spotting to the Machine 1883
Remote Track Arming 1883
Configuring Track Arming 1884
Identifying Your Machine 1884
Creating a Track Arming Profile 1885
Choosing a Machine ID 1885
Configuring a Profile 1885
Choosing a Record Protocol 1886

Choosing a Record Mode ... 1886
Rehearsing a Layback to an External Device ... 1887
Arming Tracks Remotely for Layback ... 1888
Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode ... 1888
Generating Timecode in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode ... 1888
Configuring Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode ... 1889
Selecting Full Remote Mode or Remote/LTC Chase Mode ... 1889
Alternate Machine Types ... 1890
Preferences for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode ... 1891
Remote Mode Section ... 1891
Playback in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode ... 1892
Optimizing Playback in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode ... 1892
Recording in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode ... 1892
Auto Edit Recording ... 1892
Punch In/Out Recording ... 1892
Track Arming in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode ... 1892
Using a Paddle Device in Local Mode ... 1893
Connecting a Supported Third-Party Paddle Device to Your Pro Tools System ... 1894
Allow Track Arm Commands in Local Mode Preference ... 1894
Configuring Ports for a Deck and a Supported Third-Party Paddle Device ... 1894
Deck Control Key Commands ... 1895
Machine IDs ... 1895
9-Pin Cable Pinouts ... 1899
Serial Deck Control Mode Cable: D Sub 9-Pin Male to D Sub 9-Pin Female (Windows Only) ... 1899
MachineControl Controller/Controlled Adapter ... 1900
Serial Deck Control Cable: Mini DIN 8 Male to D Sub 9-Pin Male (Mac Only) ... 1901
Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Cable: Mini DIN 8-Pin to D Sub 9-Pin Female (Mac Only) ... 1902
68 Working with Field Recorders in Pro Tools ... 1903
Field Recorder and Production Workflow Terminology ... 1903
Field Recorder Terminology ... 1903
Production Terminology for All Production Workflows ... 1904

Production Terminology for Film Workflows Only 1904
Supported Field Recorder Audio Files and Metadata 1905
Displaying Field Recorder Metadata in Pro Tools 1905
Workspace Support for Field Recorder Metadata 1906
About Tape and Sound Roll Metadata 1907
About Shoot Date Metadata 1907
Editing the Channel Name 1907
Field Recorder Workflows 1907
Ensuring Metadata of Source Files Have Been Preserved 1907
Receiving Source Files 1907
Separate Deliveries of Source Files 1908
Single Delivery of Source Files 1908
Importing Source Files into Pro Tools 1908
Importing an AAF or OMF Sequence into Pro Tools 1908
Importing Raw Production Source Audio Directly into Pro Tools 1909
Repairing Audio Misalignment When Importing Audio Not Exported from Avid 1909
Don't Convert Sample Rate on Import Preference 1910
Designating Field Recorder Tracks 1910
Displaying Multichannel Files from a Field Recorder in the Clip List 1910
Selecting a Matching Field Recorder Channel to Replace a Clip 1911
Replacing a Clip with a Matching Segment from a Matching Field Recorder Channel 1911
Conditions for Matching Field Recorder Channel Availability 1912
Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels to New Tracks 1915
Determining the Method of Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels to New Tracks 1916
Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels by Match Criteria 1916
Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels by Timecode Only 1917
Example Workflow: Working with a Guide Track 1917
Film Workflow 1918
Setting Up Before Shooting (Film Workflow) 1919
Shooting (Film Workflow) 1919
Telecine Transfer (Film Workflow) 1919
Batch Digitizing the Telecine Videotape to Digital Files (Film Workflow) 1920

Video and Fully Non-Linear Workflows 1921
Setting Up Before Shooting (Video and Fully Non-Linear Workflows) 1921
Shooting (Video and Fully Non-Linear Workflows) 1922
Digitizing a Videotape in the Avid Video Editing Application 1922
Importing Digital Video Directly into the Avid Video Editing Application 1923
69 Working with Video in Pro Tools 1924
Avid Video Engine (AVE) 1924
Video Format Support in Pro Tools 1924
Video File Types 1924
Video Codec Support 1925
Rate and Raster Support 1925
Check Latest Compatibility Documentation 1925
Before Starting Your Project 1925
Video Tracks 1926
Multiple Video Tracks in the Timeline 1927
Multiple Video Track Playlists 1927
Multiple Codecs on an Individual Video Track 1927
Main Video Track 1927
Video Track Controls and Indicators 1928
Video Track View 1928
Frames View 1928
Blocks View 1928
Timecode Overlay Button 1929
Video Online Button 1929
Video Dropped Frames Indicator 1929
Video Track Settings 1931
Engine Rate and Raster Settings 1931
Support for Video Peripherals 1932
Video Quality 1935
Color Space 1936
Locking Video Tracks 1937

Video Engine Rate 1937
Video File Rate Indicator 1937
Importing Video into Pro Tools 1938
Audio Codecs Supported within Video Formats 1938
Import Methods 1938
Importing Video into Pro Tools Using the Import Video Command 1939
Importing Video into Pro Tools with Drag and Drop 1939
Importing Video into Pro Tools Using Import Session Data 1939
Dragging Video Files from the Clip List to the Timeline 1940
Configuring Video Import Options 1940
Destination Section 1940
Location Pop-Up Menu 1940
Additional Video Import Options 1941
Bypassing the Video Import Options Dialog 1941
Importing Audio from Video Clips 1942
Sample Rate Conversion Quality 1942
Video Clips 1942
Video Clips in the Clip List 1943
Showing or Hiding Video Clips in the Clip List 1943
General Video Editing 1943
General Editing Operations Not Applicable to Video Clips 1945
Selecting and Editing Across Multiple Audio and Video Tracks 1945
Selecting within Video Frame Boundaries 1945
Using the Insert Silence Command to Insert Space in Video Tracks 1946
Renaming Video Disk Files 1946
Video Clip Groups 1946
Using the Video Window 1946
Resizing the Video Window 1947
Managing Aspect Ratio in the Video Window 1947
Setting the Video Window Color Space 1948
Scrubbing the Video Track 1948
Shuttling the Video Track 1948

Video Window “Always On Top” 1949
Browsing Video in the Video Universe Window 1949
Increasing or Decreasing the Size of Video Frames 1950
Selecting Zoom Resolutions in the Video Universe 1950
Selecting Ranges in the Video Universe 1950
Selecting Zoom Resolutions and Ranges Simultaneously in the Video Universe 1951
Pro Tools Video Preferences 1951
Tips for Optimizing Video Playback 1951
Compensating for Video Monitoring Delays 1952
Playing Video to an External Monitor Using a Video Peripheral 1952
Video Hardware Settings 1952
External Display Color Space 1953
Video Reference 1953
Timecode Overlay 1953
Bouncing the Video Track to a QuickTime Movie 1954
Bounce to QuickTime Settings 1955
Bounce Mix to MOV 1956
Audio Settings 1958
Video Settings 1958
MOV Export with PCM or AAC Audio 1960
MOV Timecode Track Support 1960
Part XII: Satellite Systems 1961
70 Satellite Link 1962
Satellite Link Requirements and Compatibility 1963
Satellite System Requirements 1963
Configuring Satellite Link 1963
Configuring Network Settings 1963
Configuring a Satellite Link Network 1964
Linking Satellite Systems 1966
Satellite Link Controls 1966
Linking Pro Tools Systems in a Satellite Network 1967

Linking Play Selections 1967
Solo Linking 1968
Satellite Link Errors 1969
Using Satellite Link with MachineControl 1970
Control Surface Support for Satellite Link 1970
Linking Satellite Systems 1970
Satellite Link Soft Keys 1970
71 Pro Tools Video Satellite 1972
Pro Tools Video Satellite System Requirements 1972
Video Output Options 1972
Connecting a Pro Tools Video Satellite System 1972
Configuring the Main Pro Tools System as an Administrator 1972
Configuring the Pro Tools Video Satellite System 1972
Declaring the Pro Tools Video Satellite System 1973
Linking the Pro Tools Video Satellite System 1973
Link Controls 1973
Pro Tools Video Satellite Operation 1974
Spotting Video to the Pro Tools Timeline 1974
Compensating for Different Start Times in Pro Tools and a Pro Tools Video Satellite 1974
Compensating for Monitor-Induced Output Delay 1975
72 Media Composer Video Satellite 1976
Media Composer Video Satellite Requirements 1976
Video Output Options 1976
Full-Screen Playback Using Output to a Computer Monitor 1976
Supported Video Resolutions 1977
Media Composer Video Satellite Workflows 1977
Using a Video Satellite in a MediaCentral | Production Management Environment 1977
Connecting Pro Tools and a Video Satellite 1978
Conditions for Connecting Pro Tools and a Video Satellite 1978
Troubleshooting the Satellite Connection 1978
Matching Media Composer and Pro Tools Settings in a Video Satellite System 1979

Matching Media Composer Project Type to Pro Tools Timecode Rate, Clock Reference, and Video Ref Format 1979

Matching Audio Pull-Up and Edit Play Rate 1980

Matching Timecode Format (Drop Frame or Non-Drop Frame) 1981

Matching Media Composer Starting TC Timecode Setting and Pro Tools Session Start 1982

Compensating for Monitor-Induced Output Delay 1983

Linking or Unlinking Pro Tools and a Video Satellite 1983

Link Controls 1984

Controlling Linking with a Control Surface 1985

Capturing Audio and Video with a Video Satellite System 1985

Before Capturing Audio and Video 1985

Conditions for Capturing Audio and Video 1986

Configuring Pro Tools and a Media Composer Video Satellite for Capturing 1986

Re-Digitizing an Existing Sequence 1986

Digitizing from an EDL 1986

Laying Back Audio and Video to Tape 1987

Part I: Introduction to Pro Tools

Learn about important Pro Tools concepts and resources.

- "Welcome to Pro Tools" on page 2
- "Pro Tools Concepts" on page 6
- "Keyboard and Mouse Shortcuts" on page 25
- "Using Help" on page 32

1 Welcome to Pro Tools

Welcome to Pro Tools®, brought to you by Avid® Technology. Pro Tools software integrates powerful multitrack digital audio and MIDI sequencing features, giving you everything you need to record, arrange, compose, edit, mix, and master professional quality audio and MIDI for music, video, film, and multimedia.

Avid Master Account

Your Avid Account contains all your purchased product entitlements, installers, and profile details and can be accessed through Avid Link or at my.avid.com.

To create an account:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Download and install Avid Link, then launch the Avid Link app and click **`Create new account`**.
   - Visit my.avid.com.
2. Fill in the required fields located under "Create a new Avid Account."
3. Next time you can just sign in to your Avid Account through Pro Tools, Avid Link, or online.

System Requirements and Compatibility Information

To use Pro Tools plugins, you need the following:

- An Avid-qualified system running Pro Tools software.
- An iLok USB key (iLok) for authorizing Pro Tools software and certain third-party plugins that can be purchased or rented. Pro Tools also supports PACE computer-based authorization or iLok Cloud.

Avid can only assure compatibility and provide support for hardware and software it has tested and approved.

For complete system requirements and a list of Avid-qualified computers, operating systems, hard drives, and third-party devices, visit: www.avid.com/compatibility

Third-Party Plugin Support

For information on third-party plugins for Pro Tools systems, refer to the documentation that came with your plugin.

Third-Party Hardware Support

For information on third-party hardware for Pro Tools systems, refer to the documentation that came with your hardware.

Conventions Used in Pro Tools Documentation

Pro Tools documentation uses the following conventions to indicate menu choices, keyboard commands, and mouse commands:

Convention	Action
File › Save	Choose Save from the File menu
Control+N	Hold down the Control key and press the N key
Control-click	Hold down the Control key and click the mouse button
Right-click	Click with the right mouse button

The names of **`Commands`**, **`Options`**, and **`Settings`** that appear on-screen are in a different font.

The following symbols are used to highlight important information:

User Tips are helpful hints for getting the most from your Pro Tools system.

Important Notices include information that could affect your Pro Tools session data or the performance of your Pro Tools system.

Shortcuts show you useful keyboard or mouse shortcuts.

Cross References point to related sections in this guide and other Avid documentation.

Resources

The Avid website (www.avid.com) is your best online source for information to help you get the most out of your Avid system.

Account Activation and Product Registration

Activate your product to access downloads in your Avid account (or quickly create an account if you do not have one). Register your purchase online, download software, updates, documentation, and other resources.

- www.avid.com/account

Support and Downloads

Contact Avid Customer Success (technical support), download software updates and the latest online manuals, browse the Compatibility documents for system requirements, search the online Knowledge Base or join the worldwide Avid user community on the User Conference.

- www.avid.com/support

Training and Education

Study on your own using courses available online, find out how you can learn in a classroom setting at an Avid-certified training center, or view video tutorials and webinars.

- www.avid.com/learning

Videos and Tutorials

Visit the Avid YouTube channel to find playlists and videos that show how to use and learn Pro Tools.

- Avid YouTube Channel (all playlists and videos)
- Pro Tools Tech Tips (playlist)
- Pro Tools Quick Tips (playlist for the *Pro Tools Quick Reference Guide*, available from the Dashboard)

Products and Developers

Learn about Avid products, download demo software, or learn about our Development Partners and their plugins, applications, and hardware.

- www.avid.com/products

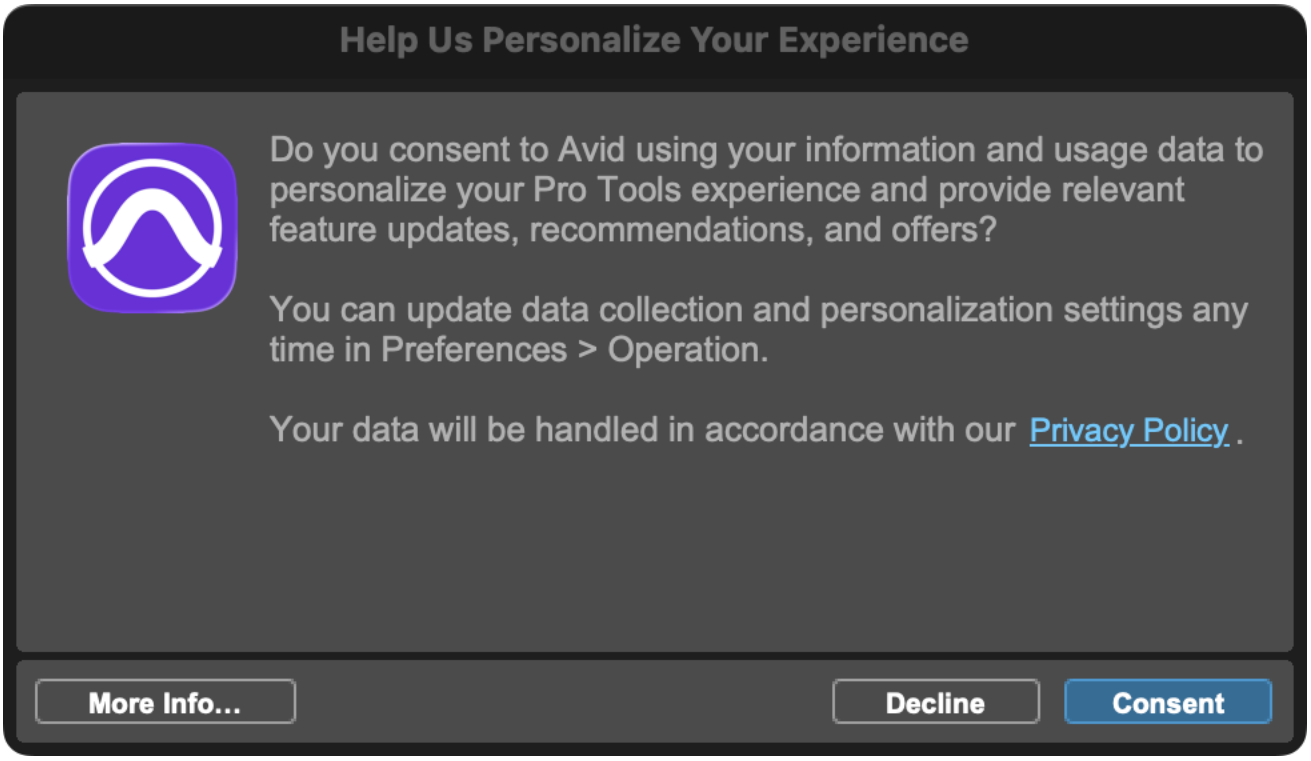
Avid Link

Use Avid Link™ to manage your Avid account, product licenses, and subscriptions. The desktop version is installed with Pro Tools, a mobile version is available for iOS, it is available online using any browser, and it is also accessible from Pro Tools by choosing Help › **`Avid Link`**.

For more information about the Avid Link application, see the Avid Link User Guide or visit https://www.avid.com/avid-link.

Pro Tools Analytics

In order to aid our customers each according to their individual needs, Pro Tools can automatically send personalized data to Avid on how you use the features in Pro Tools. You can agree (or disagree) to sending this information to Avid either when you install and first launch Pro Tools or at any time thereafter in the Pro Tools Operation preferences (**`Setup > Preferences > Operations`**).



Pro Tools In-app Tutorials

The first time you launch Pro Tools you are presented with a Dashboard for creating and opening sessions, projects, and sketches. You are also presented with the opportunity to take a guided tour of Pro Tools with the included demo session and In-app **Tutorials** on the **Learn** page of the Dashboard. These resources provide quick and easy overviews of how to use Pro Tools, highlighting elements of the user interface with information about the "what" and "why" of each. You can revisit the guided tour at anytime from the Help menu in Pro Tools (**Help > In-app Tutorial**).

2 Pro Tools Concepts

Before you begin to use Pro Tools, you may find it helpful to review Pro Tools concepts. These concepts are the foundation of Pro Tools operation and functionality.

Hard Disk Audio Recording

Hard disk recording is a *nonlinear* (or random access) medium—you can go immediately to any spot in a recording without having to rewind or fast forward.

This differs from tape-based recording, which is a *linear* medium—where you need to rewind or fast forward to hear a particular spot in a recording. To rearrange or repeat material in a linear system, you need to re-record it, or cut and splice it.

Nonlinear systems have several advantages. You can easily rearrange or repeat parts of a recording by making the hard disk read parts of the recording in a different order or multiple times. In addition, this re-arrangement is *nondestructive*, meaning that the original recorded material is not altered.

Nonlinear Editing

Pro Tools is a Digital Audio Workstation (DAW) and nonlinear editing system that lets you arrange and mix recorded material nondestructively. Nonlinear editing simply means that you can cut, copy, paste, move, delete, trim, and otherwise arrange any audio, MIDI, or video in the Pro Tools Edit window.

Nonlinear editing provides significant advantages over dubbing (re-recording), and cutting and splicing magnetic tape. It gives you the greatest possible flexibility for editing and arranging, and it is all nondestructive and "undoable." Additionally, with nonlinear editing in Pro Tools, you will never introduce any degradation of audio fidelity as you would with tape.

Audio Engines

You can stream audio between Pro Tools software and your audio hardware using the Avid Audio Engine (Avid audio hardware only), Core Audio (Mac), ASIO (Windows only with third-party audio hardware), or WASAPI (built-in audio or third-party Windows Audio Devices for playback only).

Avid Audio Engine

The Avid audio engine (AAE) is a real-time operating system for digital audio recording, playback, and processing with Pro Tools and Avid audio hardware. When you install Pro Tools, AAE is automatically installed on your system. AAE provides the foundation for much of the hard disk recording, digital signal processing, and mix automation required by Pro Tools and other products from Avid and its Development Partners. This include HDX and HDX Hybrid engines.

Core Audio (Mac Only)

Apple's Core Audio provides audio connectivity between software applications and audio hardware on macOS. Pro Tools software can use audio interfaces with supported Core Audio drivers for playback and recording with up to 256 channels of I/O depending on your audio hardware and which tier of Pro Tools you are using.

WASAPI (Windows Only)

WASAPI is the Window's built-in audio engine.

ASIO (Windows Only)

Pro Tools software can use audio interfaces with supported ASIO drivers for playback and recording with up to 256 channels of I/O depending on your audio hardware and which tier of Pro Tools you are using.

Avid Video Engine

Pro Tools uses the Avid Video Engine (AVE) for real-time digital video playback. AVE supports a wide range of video formats up to 60fps with a 4k picture display, which provides interoperability with many video editing applications such as Avid Media Composer. Video may be played on the desktop, as well as out an external monitor with a qualified video peripheral.

MIDI

MIDI (Musical Instrument Digital Interface) is a communication protocol for musical instruments. This industry standard enables connections between a variety of devices from different manufacturers. Examples of MIDI-compatible equipment include synthesizers, drum machines, MIDI patch bays, effects processors, MIDI interfaces, MIDI control surfaces, and MIDI sequencers as well as Virtual Instruments and MIDI effects plugins.

MIDI devices are equipped with 5-pin DIN connectors, labeled as either IN, OUT, or THRU. The MIDI OUT port transmits messages. The MIDI IN port receives messages. The MIDI THRU outputs whatever is received from the IN port. MIDI devices are connected with MIDI cables that are available at most music stores.

USB-compatible MIDI devices send and receive MIDI messages to and from the computer over USB.

The MIDI protocol provides 16 channels of MIDI per port. A single MIDI cable can transmit a separate set of messages for each of the 16 channels. These 16 channels can correspond to separate MIDI devices or to multiple channels within a single device (if the device is *multitimbral*). Each channel can control a different instrument sound.

Pro Tools provides powerful MIDI sequencing capabilities. You can record, enter, edit, and play back MIDI data on Pro Tools Instrument and MIDI tracks. These actions can be done in the Edit window, the MIDI Editor window, the Score Editor window, and the MIDI Event List.

MIDI data in Pro Tools can be anything from MIDI note data (note number, on/off, velocity) to System Exclusive (Sysex) messages. MIDI data can be recorded or played back from both external MIDI devices with a MIDI interface and other MIDI software (such as instrument plugins and ReWire client applications).



For information about MIDI Polyphonic Expression (MPE), see MIDI Polyphonic Expression (MPE).

Synchronization

When you are working with multiple time-based systems, such as Pro Tools and an external deck, you want the systems to be synchronized. Synchronization is where one system outputs clock source (such as timecode or MIDI Beat Clock) and another device synchronizes to or follows that clock source so that they work together and stay in time. Pro Tools can be synchronized to other devices (or other devices can be synchronized to Pro Tools) using Timecode.

Surround Sound

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Surround sound simply means having one or more speakers with discrete audio signals (channels) placed behind the listener in addition to the typical stereo pair.

There are multiple types of surround formats in use (from three-channel LCR to 7.1, which has eight channels, as well as Dolby Atmos and Ambisonics).

The most common surround format is 5.1, which refers to having 5 speakers and a sub-woofer (the ".1"). 5.1 is used in movie theaters and home entertainment systems. Additionally, most DVDs are mixed to 5.1. The standard speaker placement for 5.1 for surround monitoring is stereo left and right speakers, and an additional center speaker in front, two more stereo left and right speakers in the rear, and the sub-woofer on the side.

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio software supports mixing in surround formats. In Pro Tools, each surround format is considered to be a *greater-than-stereo* multichannel format.

Pro Tools Sessions

When you start a session in Pro Tools, you create a *session*.

Sessions are always local to your system. You can also create shared online projects for track-based collaboration with others. For more information, see *"Pro Tools Projects" on page 16.*

Session Files

A *session file* is the document that Pro Tools creates when you choose **`File > New Session`** and configure a new session. Pro Tools can open only one session file at a time. The session file is named with a .ptx (Pro Tools file) extension. Session files contain maps of all elements associated with a project, including audio files, MIDI data, and all your edit and mix information. It is important to realize that a Pro Tools session file does not contain any media files (audio or video). Instead, it references audio, video, MIDI, and other files. You can make changes to a session and save those changes in a new session file. This lets you create multiple versions of a session or back up your editing and mixing work.



Session file icon

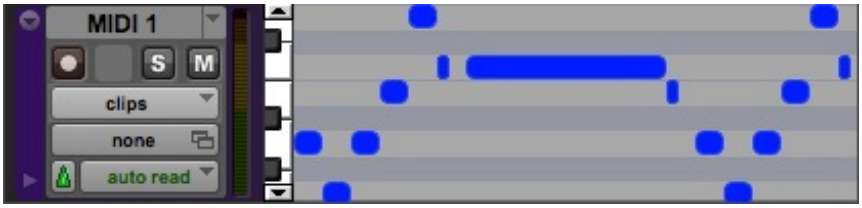
Tracks

Pro Tools tracks are where audio, MIDI, video, and automation data are recorded and edited. Pro Tools tracks also provide audio channels for routing internal buses, and physical inputs and outputs for audio and MIDI.

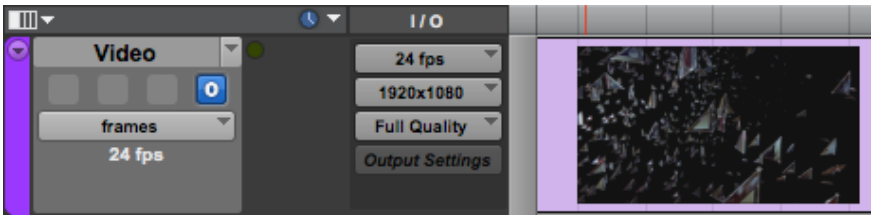
Pro Tools provides multiple types of tracks: Audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, VCA Master, MIDI, Instrument, Folder, and Video.



Audio track in the Edit window (stereo track shown)



MIDI track in the Edit window



Video track in Frames view

Audio, MIDI, Instrument, and video track data can be edited into clips or repeated in different locations to create loops, re-arrange sections or entire songs, or to assemble tracks using material from multiple takes.

Auxiliary Input tracks can route internal audio buses or physical inputs to internal buses or physical outputs. Auxiliary Inputs are typically used for audio effects buses, audio throughput (monitoring), and submixing.

Master Fader tracks provide controls for physical audio output channels, including the volume level of your mix, panning, and plugin inserts.

VCA Master tracks provide control of tracks in a Mix Group that has been assigned to the VCA Master.

Folder tracks let you organize both track layout and signal routing in your projects and sessions.

Video tracks support several different video file types, including .mov and .mxf video files. There are many variations of video file types, so refer to the Pro Tools Knowledgebase for the most up to date specifics regarding your version of Pro Tools, on your current operating system.

Routing Folder, Audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks can be mono, stereo, or multichannel (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only). When creating a new track, select from the list of channel formats supported by your system.

Voices

In Pro Tools, voices are unique, discrete audio streams that can be routed to and from Pro Tools audio tracks, and physical audio outputs and inputs on your Pro Tools audio interfaces. The audio paths to and from Pro Tools software routed to Pro Tools hardware use voices. If you exceed the number of available voices in your system, you have effectively exceeded the available number of audio paths. Voices are allocated *dynamically*.

Typically, each audio channel for each track in your Pro Tools session uses a single voice. So, for a mono audio track, a single voice is used; for a stereo audio track, two voices are used; for a 5.1 track, six voices are used. When using Punch Recording, two voices are needed for every single audio channel (one for playback and one for recording on punch in and out). In some situations, with Pro Tools | HDX systems, more than one voice may be necessary for a single channel (such as when using host processing on a DSP bus).

On HDX systems, the number of available voices is dependent on the amount of dedicated DSP processing in your system.

See “Playback, Recording, and Voice Limits with Pro Tools Ultimate Software” on page 42).

On all other Pro Tools systems, the full number of available voices for your system may be limited by the host processing power of your computer (see "Pro Tools Artist Capabilities with Different Hardware Configurations" on page 37).

For more information about voicing in Pro Tools, see "Track Priority and Voice Assignment" on page 363.

Media Files

Pro Tools sessions create, import, export, and reference media files. Media files are audio, MIDI, and video files. Audio and video media files are stored separately from the Pro Tools session file. MIDI data is stored in the session file.

Audio Files

When you record audio into a Pro Tools session, audio files are created.



Audio file icon

Audio files for each session are stored in a folder named “Audio Files.” Audio files are listed in the Pro Tools Clip List and can appear in an audio track. A section of an audio file can be defined as a clip (see "Clips" on the next page).

MIDI Files

When you record or enter MIDI into a Pro Tools session, all MIDI data is stored in the Pro Tools session file. You can import and export MIDI files to and from Pro Tools sessions, but MIDI recorded or otherwise created in a Pro Tools session does not automatically create new MIDI files.



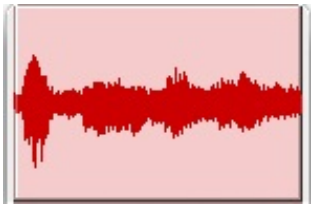
MIDI file icon

Video Files

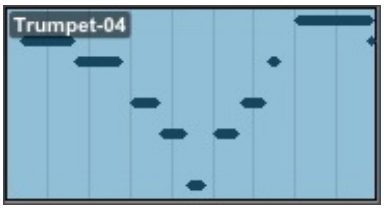
Pro Tools references video files that have been captured by another application, such as Avid Media Composer® Software. When video is imported into Pro Tools, it references the file in its current location. In some cases, such as when importing an AAF or Saving Copy In, video may be copied and referenced from the Video Files folder within the session folder. Pro Tools cannot natively record new video. Depending on your OS, Pro Tools is able to export video and re-import it to the timeline. For more information, visit the Pro Tools Knowledge Base.

Clips

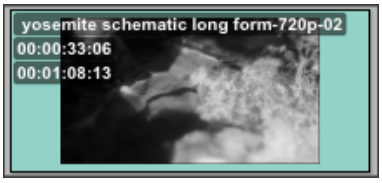
A *clip* is a segment of audio, MIDI, or video data. A clip could be a drum loop, a guitar riff, a verse of a song, a recording take, a sound effect, some dialog, or an entire sound file. Clips are especially useful for arranging audio and MIDI. A clip can also have associated automation data. In Pro Tools, clips are created from audio files or MIDI data, and can be arranged in audio and MIDI track playlists. Clips can also be grouped (a “clip of clips”) and looped (repeated).



Audio clip



MIDI clip



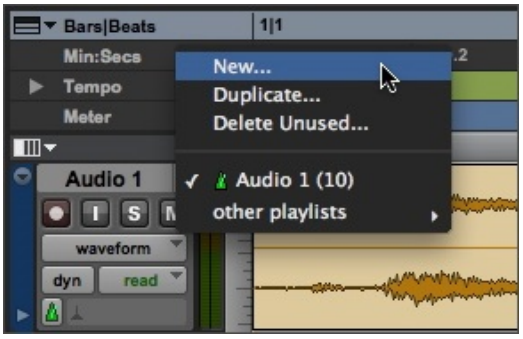
Video clip (Frames view)



Clip group (Mixed audio and MIDI multitrack clip group)

Playlists

A *playlist* is a sequence of clips arranged on an audio, MIDI, or video track. Tracks have *edit playlists* and *automation playlists*.



Playlist selector pop-up menu

On audio tracks, an edit playlist tells the hard disk which audio clips to play in what order. For example, you can have separate audio clips for a song introduction, the first verse, the first chorus, and so on. You can also use the same audio clip to access the same piece of audio multiple times at different locations and not use additional disk space. Different versions of the same original audio can be used in different places and have different effects applied. On MIDI and Instrument tracks, edit playlists can store multiple MIDI sequences (or performances) on a track.

A playlist can be made up of a single clip or many separate clips. It can be made up of similar elements (such as clips from several different takes of a solo), or dissimilar elements (such as several sound effects).

You can create any number of alternate edit playlists for a track. This lets you assemble different versions of performances or edits on a single track and choose between them from the Playlists menu on the track.

Each audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, Master Fader, and VCA track also has a single set of automation playlists. Automation playlists can include volume, pan, mute, and each automation-enabled control for the insert and send assignments on that track.

MIDI controller data on Instrument and MIDI tracks is always included as part of the track playlist.

Channels

The term *channel* is used to describe several related components of a Pro Tools system. The first example of channel refers to a physical input or output of your Pro Tools system. For example, Pro Tools | HD I/O provides up to 16 channels of audio input and output to a HDX or Pro Tools | HD Native system, while the Pro Tools | Mbox® Pro audio interface provides up to eight inputs and eight outputs. The second use of the term *channel* refers to a channel strip in the Pro Tools Mix window. Each track in a Pro Tools session has a corresponding *channel strip* in the Mix window. Audio and MIDI channel strips have similar controls, but those controls have slightly different effects. For example, audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument track channel strip faders control the output gain to the mix bus for that channel, while MIDI channel strip faders send MIDI volume data (MIDI controller 7) to the selected MIDI instrument.



The term "MIDI channel" also describes a separate aspect of MIDI operation.

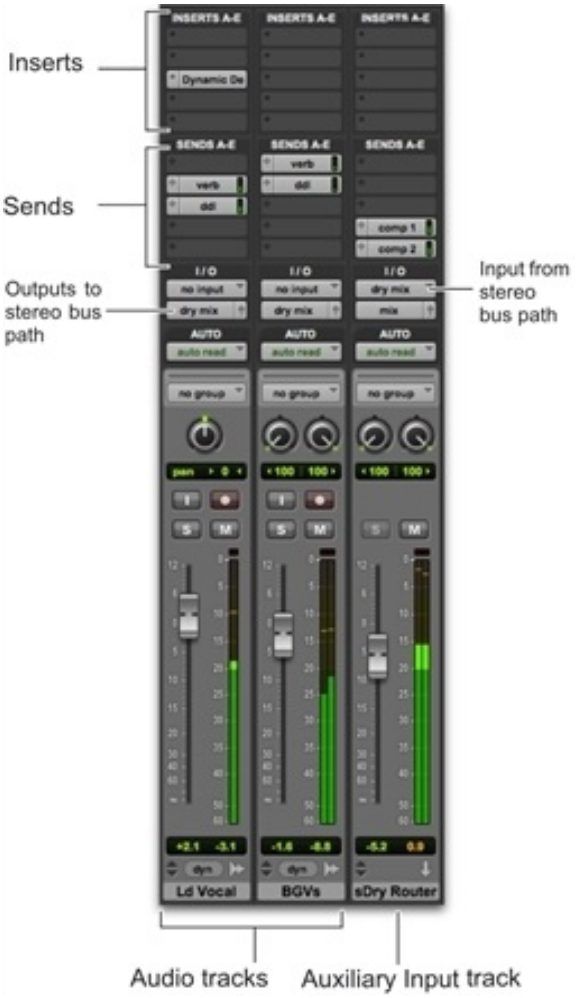


Channel strip in the Mix window (audio track)

Signal Routing

Pro Tools provides software-based mixing and signal routing controls for audio and MIDI. These controls are located in the Mix window. Some of these controls can also be accessed from the Edit window.

A common audio signal routing task is to submix multiple tracks to a single channel strip (such as an Auxiliary Input) for shared processing and level control. The following example shows two audio tracks submixed to a stereo Auxiliary Input.



Submixing to an Auxiliary Input

Signal Routing Options

Signal routing options include the following:

Track Input and Output (I/O) Controls

The most basic type of signal routing is track input and output. A track needs to have an assigned input path to record audio, and an assigned mapped output path in order to be audible through a hardware output. Signals can also be routed to or from other tracks in Pro Tools (or hardware inputs and outputs) using internal buses.

Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, and Master Fader Tracks

Auxiliary Inputs and Routing Folder tracks can be used as returns, submixers, and bus masters. Master Fader tracks are used as bus and output master level controls. Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder tracks, and Master Fader tracks can have plugin and hardware inserts.

MIDI Tracks

MIDI tracks are generally used for routing MIDI from internal or external sources to external MIDI devices. MIDI data can also be routed to plugins on Auxiliary Inputs or Instrument tracks.

Instrument Tracks

Instrument tracks are the primary way to route MIDI to an instrument plugin and then route the plugin's sound to outputs, sends and buses, or other inserts. Instrument tracks can also be used to send MIDI to and monitor audio from external MIDI devices.

Sends

Sends route audio from tracks to hardware outputs, or to internal buses that are in turn routed to other tracks within Pro Tools. MIDI, Master Fader, and VCA Master tracks do not have sends.

Plugin and Hardware Inserts

Plugin processing occurs completely within the Pro Tools system. Hardware inserts use audio interface inputs and outputs for traditional insert routing to and from external effects and other devices. MIDI and VCA Master tracks do not have inserts.

Instrument Plugins

Instrument plugins are different from processing plugins in that they generate audio rather than process the audio signal from a track's audio input or from hard disk. Instrument plugins are typically played by MIDI.

Paths

Paths are any routing option in Pro Tools, including internal or external inputs, outputs, buses, and inserts. Pro Tools lets you name these paths, and these path names appear in the Audio Input and Output Path selectors and other menus. For more information, see "I/O Setup" on page 55.

Mixing Formats

Sessions can include combinations of mono, stereo, and greater-than-stereo multichannel format tracks, buses, inputs, outputs, and inserts. Greater-than-stereo multichannel formats are supported with Pro Tools Studio and Ultimate only.

Grouping and VCA Tracks

Tracks can be grouped together for mixing so that their relative mix settings are maintained when changing a mix setting for any track in the group. For example, changing the volume of one track affects the volume of all the other tracks in the group. VCA Master tracks control the relative mix settings for all tracks within the selected group.

Pro Tools Projects

Projects are similar to sessions, but projects are cloud enabled. Projects are written to a local project cache that includes all project data and associated media as well as mirrored in your Avid Cloud Account. *Offline* projects store all media and project data in the local cache only. *Online* projects are stored in your Avid Cloud Account and mirrored locally (though you can clear the local project cache and have the project and its media stored only in the cloud).

Online projects let you collaborate on a track-by-track basis with anyone in the Avid Artist Community anywhere in the world; or, if you prefer, you can choose your collaborators privately and invite them to join a project by email.

You can only collaborate with projects, never with sessions. Otherwise, projects work just like sessions. Projects have all of the same recording, editing, mixing, and processing capabilities as do sessions (you can save a copy of a session as a project or a project as a session using the **Save Copy In** command). Throughout this Reference Guide, "sessions" refers to session and projects unless otherwise noted.

Project data and media are bundled and cached on local storage, but you cannot open a project by navigating through the file system. You can only access projects through the Pro Tools Dashboard. Projects are differentiated from sessions by their file icon.



Project icon (online, left; offline, right)

You must be online and logged in to your Avid Master Account the first time you create a project, but after that you can work offline. Pro Tools and Avid Link will synchronize your local project with your account the next time you online. This process runs in the background and can be monitored in Pro Tools by checking the Task Manager (**Window > Task Manager**).

If a project is downloaded on another system when you log in to your Avid Master Account, all associated media is downloaded inside of the project bundle. This does not affect the location of the media on the originating system. Each system maintains its own unique placement of media without duplication.

Pro Tools Sketches

Pro Tools Sketch™ is a free application for iOS on iPad that lets you add, create, edit, arrange, and play back MIDI and audio clips. Pro Tools provides a Sketch window (available in all tiers), which provides the same functionality as the Sketch app right in Pro Tools. Sketches can be created in and shared to either the app or Pro Tools.



Sketch file icon

Pro Tools Sketch is essentially a clip launching application (both audio and MIDI). The ability to mix Audio and MIDI clips, audio effects, and virtual instruments in a non-linear environment, makes Pro Tools Sketch a flexible centerpiece to your creative process. Pro Tools Sketch lets you experiment with different sounds and musical ideas in context with each other without having to focus immediately on the arrangement or linear sequencing.

Tick-Based and Sample-Based Time

Pro Tools lets you set any track timebase to either sample-based or tick-based. You can also set the Timeline to be viewed as tick-based or sample-based.

Audio in Pro Tools is sample-based by default. This means that if an audio clip is located at a particular sample location, it will not move from that location if the tempo changes in the session—though its Bar|Beat location *will* change.

MIDI data in Pro Tools is tick-based by default. This means that if a MIDI clip is located at a particular Bar|Beat location, it will not move from that Bar|Beat location if the tempo changes in the session—though its sample location *will* change.

You can select whether a track is sample-based or tick-based when it is created, or change timebases later.

Sample-Based Audio and MIDI

With a sample-based audio track, all clips in the track have an absolute location on the Timeline. Clips stay fixed to the sample time, regardless of where tempo or meter changes occur in a session.

If you make a MIDI track sample-based, all MIDI events in the track have an absolute location on the Timeline. MIDI events stay fixed to sample time, regardless of any tempo or meter changes in a session.

Tick-Based Audio and MIDI

Tick-based audio is fixed to a Bars|Beat location, and moves relative to the sample Timeline when tempo and meter changes occur. However, MIDI events and tick-based audio respond differently to tempo changes with respect to duration. MIDI note events change length when tempo or meter is adjusted, while audio clips do not (unless Elastic Audio is enabled). When Elastic Audio is *not* enabled on an audio track, meter and tempo changes affect only the start point (or sync point) for each audio clip in a tick-based track. If Elastic Audio is enabled on an audio track, tempo changes apply Elastic Audio processing, which changes the duration of the audio clip.

Elastic Audio

Elastic Audio provides real-time and non-real-time (rendered) Time Compression and Expansion (TCE) of audio. Tick-based Elastic Audio tracks actually change the location of samples according to changes in tempo. The audio stretches or compresses to match changes in tempo. Elastic Audio also provides high-quality non-real-time clip-based pitch shifting.

Pro Tools Elastic Audio uses exceptionally high-quality transient detection algorithms, beat and tempo analysis, and real-time or rendered TCE processing algorithms. Elastic Audio lets you quickly and easily tempo conform and beat match audio to the session's Tempo ruler. It also provides an unprecedented degree of control over transient detection and TCE processing on an event-by-event basis.

With Elastic Audio, Pro Tools analyzes entire audio files for transient "events." For example, an event can be a drum hit, a sung note, or chord played by a guitar. These detected events can then serve as control points for "warping" the audio. Pro Tools can warp (TCE) audio events automatically, such as when automatically conforming audio to the session tempo or quantizing audio events, or you can warp audio manually using the standard editing tools with the audio track set to Warp view.

Elastic Audio is useful in several common workflows: working with loops, correcting performances, remixing, beat and pitch matching, and sound design and special effects.

System Resources

Track count, plugin processing, signal path and routing options, and voice availability are ultimately limited by the combined resources available from the host computer and from your Pro Tools hardware.

Pro Tools provides several ways to manage and conserve resources to maximize the performance of your system. As you begin working with Pro Tools sessions and tracks, you can take advantage of the following features to extend the effectiveness of your available DSP and other resources:

- Pro Tools lets you adjust the performance of your system by changing system settings that affect its capacity for processing, playback, and recording. See "Configuring the Playback Engine" on page 107.

- In order to free up needed DSP resources, Pro Tools allows for certain items (such as tracks and inserts) to be manually made inactive. Inactive elements are viewable, editable, and retained within the session. See "Active and Inactive Items" below.
- All Pro Tools systems provide flexible voice options for audio tracks, to help maximize use of available voices in your system. For more information on voice management and options, see "Track Priority and Voice Assignment" on page 363.

Active and Inactive Items

Pro Tools lets you make certain items (such as tracks and inserts) *inactive*, in order to free up DSP resources and mixer connections.

Items in Pro Tools that can be made inactive include the following:

- Folder, Audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, VCA Master, Instrument, and MIDI tracks
- Track Inputs and Outputs
- Sends
- Side-chain inputs
- Plugins
- Hardware inserts
- Paths (session-wide)



Side-chain inputs support direct active and inactive switching, but do not follow switching all or all selected side-chain inputs.

In addition to manually setting Active and Inactive modes, Pro Tools automatically makes items inactive if there are insufficient or unavailable resources.

- When *active*, items are fully engaged and operational.
- When *inactive*, items are silent and off, although most associated controls can still be adjusted. Different inactive items affect available system resources in specific ways, as follows:

Plugins

When a plugin is inactive on a track, its DSP is made available for other plugins and processing. Plugin assignments can be made inactive manually or automatically.

Paths and Path Assignments

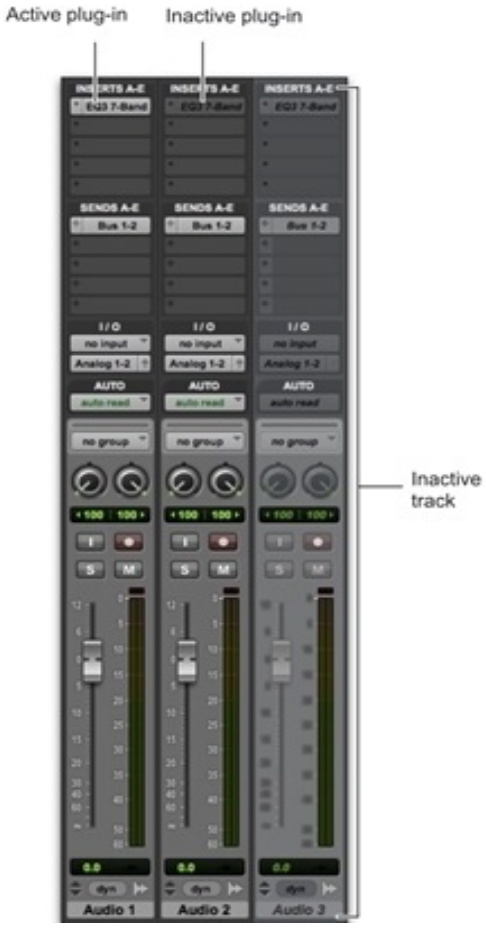
When a path or path assignment is inactive, its mixer resources are made available for other signal routing purposes in the session. Paths and assignments can be made inactive manually or automatically.

Tracks

When a track is made inactive, its voices become available for another track. Inactive mono tracks free up one voice; inactive stereo and multichannel tracks free up one voice per channel. Additionally, when a Routing Folder, audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, or Master Fader track is made inactive, its plugins, inserts, sends, and I/O assignments become inactive, and the associated DSP used is freed up for use elsewhere in the session.

Display of Inactive Items

When items are inactive, their names appear in italics, and their background becomes dark gray. When a track is inactive, the entire channel strip is grayed out.



Active and inactive plugins, sends, and tracks

Workspace Browsers

The Workspace is a database management tool for Pro Tools. Workspace browsers expand upon basic Pro Tools search and import capabilities by providing powerful tools to manage your data both inside and outside of your sessions, on any hard drive connected to the system.

A *database* is a way of organizing data such that it can easily be searched, sorted, managed, and utilized. Your checkbook is an example of a database file. For every check you write, you enter a new record. That record contains information about the check, such as when you wrote it, to whom you wrote it, and for what amount. This information is written in specific columns, or fields. Everything you need to know (the check's *metadata*) is there, even though the check itself is not.

Workspace browsers let you search, sort, and mange these databases by volume or catalog. You can use Workspace browsers not only to organize your Pro Tools sessions and media files (audio, MIDI, and video), but also to audition and import by drag and drop.

For more information, see "Workspace Browsers" on page 493.

AAF, MXF, and OMF

Pro Tools lets you exchange audio, video, and sequences with other AAF, MXF, and OMF™ compatible applications (such as Media Composer).

Media Data (Media Files)

Media data represents raw audio or video material and is stored in individual media files. Every time you record a piece of video or audio material into an application, you are creating a media file. Audio media files hold *samples* (such as 44,100 or 48,000 samples per second of recording) while video media files use *frames* (24, 25, or 30 frames per second of recording).

The size of each media file depends on how much audio or video material it contains. For example, a file containing ten minutes of high resolution video might be approximately 2 GB in size, whereas a ten-minute audio recording at the might result in a 100 MB file. Media files tend to be large, since high quality audio and video signals are data intensive. Video data generally requires considerably more storage than audio data.

Metadata

Metadata is used to describe the following:

- Information embedded in a media file. This may include scene, take, sample rate, bit depth, external clip names, the name of the videotape from which the media file was captured, and even timecode values.
- Information embedded in Pro Tools sessions or other *sequences*, including what files are used, where they appear in a timeline, and automation.
- For AAF or OMF sequences, metadata also includes information embedded in unrendered AudioSuite™ effects (such as real-time EQ) for Media Composer. Pro Tools skips unrendered effects on import. Rendered effects are media files that can be imported into Pro Tools.
- For AAF or OMF sequences, information about automation (clip-based gain or keyframe gain).

AAF, OMF, and MXF Basics

AAF and OMF files are mechanisms for storing and retrieving media files and metadata so that projects can be freely exchanged between different applications and platforms. MXF is a media file format that can be used with AAF (but not OMF) files.

Media data and metadata enable an application that receives AAF and OMF sequence files (such as Pro Tools) to automatically and quickly reassemble the composition. A simple metaphor for this approach is that media data files are the pieces of a puzzle and metadata is the set of instructions for assembling the puzzle.

In the simplest case, only an AAF or OMF sequence is exchanged. If this sequence points to existing media files, the size of the sequence file is relatively small and the export/import process is relatively fast.

AAF and OMF sequences can also have media data embedded in them. This creates a single, larger file that is slower to export and import, but which may be easier to manage than thousands of files stored on different volumes.

AAF

AAF is a sequence file format. AAF sequences are the best way to exchange projects and maintain valuable metadata. An AAF sequence can refer to OMF or MXF media files, or have OMF and MXF media files embedded within them. There is no such thing as an AAF audio or video media file.

Pro Tools will import, play back, and export an AAF sequence that either links to media files or has audio embedded within it.

When you import an AAF sequence with embedded audio into Pro Tools, the audio will be extracted into mono tracks using the current session's audio file format.

MXF

MXF is a media file format. There are MXF video files and MXF audio files, but there are no MXF sequences. An AAF sequence may refer to or include MXF media files, but OMF sequences cannot refer to or include MXF files.



MXF file icon

Pro Tools can import and play back MXF audio and video files created in Media Composer.

OMF

OMF is both a media file and sequence format. OMF media files can be audio or video, and Pro Tools can import and play back OMF audio, but not OMF video. Pro Tools can also export OMF audio, but not OMF video.

Pro Tools can import and play back OMF audio files created in Media Composer or other applications.

An OMF sequence cannot reference or have MXF media embedded within it.

Pro Tools can import an OMF sequence with embedded audio, but not embedded video.

Pro Tools and Media Composer Terminology

Pro Tools and Media Composer use different terms to describe the same items. For example, a Pro Tools *session* is equivalent to a Media Composer *sequence*. The following table lists common Pro Tools elements and their Media Composer equivalents.

Pro Tools	Media Composer (AAF or OMF)
session	sequence
whole file clip	master clip
clip	subclip
plugins	real-time audio effects
volume automation gain	Media Composer keyframe volume

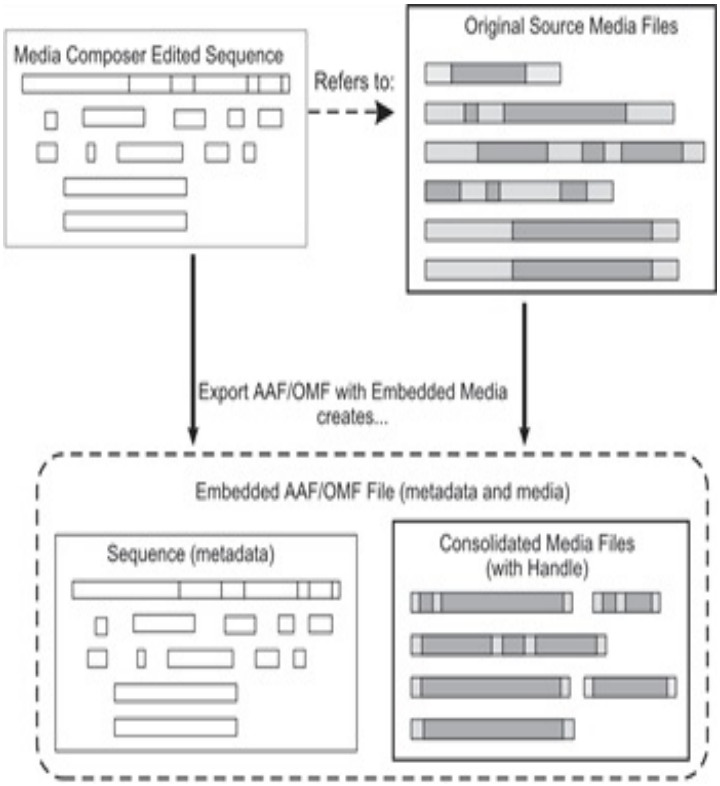
Whole audio files in the Clip List normally appear in bold type. However, master clip audio files imported from AAF or OMF into Pro Tools will not appear in bold type (indicating clips) in the Pro Tools Clip List even though they are audio files.

Embedded Media and Linked Media

There are two types of AAF and OMF files: ones with embedded media, and ones with linked media.

Embedded Media

Exporting to AAF or OMF with embedded media results in one large AAF or OMF file containing both the metadata and all associated media files.



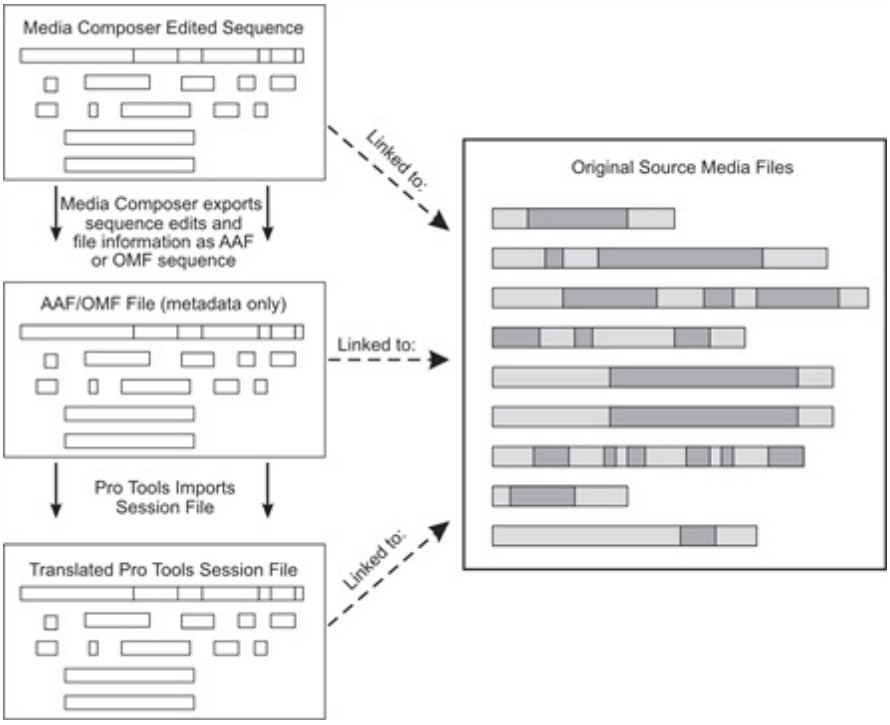
AAF/OMF Interchange Workflow with Embedded Media

Linked Media

Exporting AAF or OMF with linked media results in a single metadata file (.AAF or .OMF) and all associated media stored as separate files.

The main benefit to this approach is that fewer copies of media files may need to be made, so the export and import process can be much faster. Using this approach, it is less likely that you will encounter any file size limitations since the data is broken up into many smaller files.

The main disadvantage to this approach is that there are potentially many files (for example, one AAF or OMF file and hundreds of media files) that must be transported between systems.



AAF and OMF Interchange Workflow with Linked Media

3 Keyboard and Mouse Shortcuts

For increased operational speed and ease of use, there are many Pro Tools keyboard and right-click shortcuts.

For a complete list of the default Pro Tools keyboard and Right-click shortcuts, as well as information about assigning custom keyboard shortcuts, see Pro Tools Shortcuts.pdf (Help › Pro Tools Shortcuts).

To access the full list of Pro Tools shortcuts in online Help:

1. Choose **`Help > Pro Tools Help`**.
2. Click Pro Tools Shortcuts on the Contents page (in the left pane of Help).

To access the full list of Pro Tools shortcuts in the Pro Tools Shortcuts Guide:

- Choose **`Help > Pro Tools Shortcuts`**.

Mouse Shortcuts

Right-Click Shortcuts

Pro Tools provides Right-Click shortcuts for choosing various Pro Tools commands and menus with any Right-Click capable mouse.

Scroll-wheel Functions

Pro Tools lets you increment or decrement values in numerical fields by selecting the value and moving the mouse scroll wheel up or down.

Global Key Commands

Some keyboard shortcuts apply to many functions in Pro Tools.

Track Functions

Pro Tools provides keyboard shortcuts for the following track functions:

- Changing Automation mode
- Enabling playlists
- Adding plugins
- Record enabling, soloing, and muting tracks
- Record safing and solo safing tracks
- Assigning inputs, outputs, and sends
- Toggling volume/peak/delay display
- Clearing meters
- Changing track heights

Command	Mac	Windows
Apply action to all channel strips/tracks	Option+action	Alt+action
Apply action to selected channel strips/tracks	Option+Shift+action	Alt+Shift+action
Vertically constrained, fine adjustment for automation and control breakpoints		

List and Parameter Selection

Pro Tools provides keyboard shortcuts for the following items:

- Selection of tracks in Track List
- Enabling of groups in Groups List
- Automation Enable window parameters
- Setting Memory Location parameters

Command	Windows	Mac
Toggle item and set all others to same new state	Alt-click item	Option-click item
Toggle item and set all others to opposite state	Control-click item	Command-click item

Controls and Editing Tools

Pro Tools provides keyboard shortcuts for moving plugin controls, faders and sliders, the Scrubber, and automation data.

Command	Mac	Windows
Fine adjustment of sliders, knobs, and breakpoints	Hold Command while clicking the item	Hold Control while clicking the item
For extra-fine adjustment of breakpoints in Grid mode	Hold Command +Shift while adjusting automation breakpoints	Hold Control +Shift while adjusting automation breakpoints

Keyboard Focus

The Keyboard Focus in Pro Tools determines how the alpha keys function. Depending on which Keyboard Focus is enabled, you can use the keys on your computer (alpha) keyboard to select clips in the Clip List, enable or disable groups, or perform an edit or play command.

You can only enable one of the three Keyboard Focus modes at a time. Enabling a Keyboard Focus will disable the one previously enabled.

There are three types of Keyboard Focus:

Commands Keyboard Focus

When selected in the Tracks pane in the Edit window or in the Notes pane of any MIDI Editor window, this provides a wide range of single key shortcuts from the computer keyboard for editing and playing. The frontmost Edit or MIDI Editor window always receives Commands Keyboard Focus when it is enabled. With Commands Keyboard Focus disabled, you can still access any of its key shortcuts by pressing Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) along with the key. See the *Shortcuts Guide* for a complete list of Commands Keyboard Focus shortcuts.

Commands Keyboard Focus provides single-key shortcuts for a range of edit and play commands. Avid as well as other vendors supply custom keyboards for Mac and Windows labeled with Pro Tools commands when in Commands Keyboard Focus.



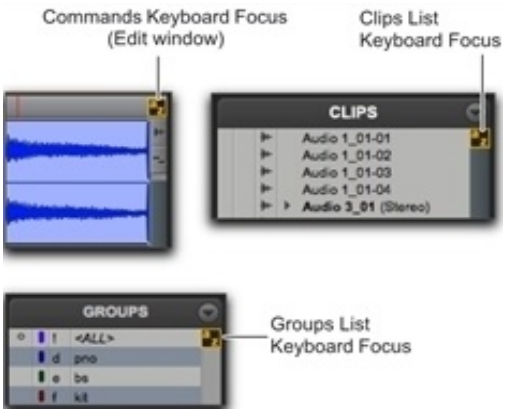
Pro Tools Custom Keyboard labeled with keyboard commands (Mac keyboard shown)

Clip List Keyboard Focus

When selected, audio clips, MIDI clips, and clip groups can be located and selected in the Clip List by typing the first few letters of the clip's name.

Groups List Keyboard Focus

When selected, Mix and Edit Groups can be enabled or disabled by typing the Group ID letter (in either the Mix or Edit window).



Keyboard Focus buttons

To set the Keyboard Focus, do one of the following:

- Click the **a–z** button for the focus you want to enable.
- While pressing Command+Option (Mac) or Control+Alt (Windows), press one of the following keys: 1 (Commands), 2 (Clip List), or 3 (Groups List).

Although multiple plugin windows can have a keyboard focus enabled, only the front-most window receives any keyboard input.

Toolbar Focus

In the Edit window, the MIDI Editor pane can be displayed in addition to the Tracks pane (**View > Other Displays > MIDI Editor**). When the MIDI Editor pane is displayed, there are two separate Toolbars and Timelines in the Edit window: one for the Tracks pane and one for the MIDI Editor pane. Only one Toolbar and Timeline can be focused for Menu and Toolbar commands (including the corresponding keyboard shortcuts) at a time. The focused Toolbar displays a yellow outline.

If Keyboard Focus for the Edit window is enabled, it follows the selected Toolbar focus.

To enable Toolbar focus for the Tracks pane, do one of the following:

- Click the Toolbar at the top of the Edit window.
- Press Command+Option+4 (Mac) or Control+Alt+4 (Windows).

To enable Toolbar focus for the MIDI Editor pane, do one of the following:

- Click the Toolbar right above the MIDI Editor pane.
- Press Command+Option+5 (Mac) or Control+Alt+5 (Windows).

Numeric Keypad Modes

The Operation preference for Numeric Keypad mode determines how the numeric keypad functions for Transport.

There are two Shuttle Lock modes (Classic and Transport), and one Shuttle mode. No matter which Numeric Keypad mode is selected, you can always use the numeric keypad to select and enter values in the Event Edit Area, Edit Selection indicators, Main and Sub Counters, and Transport fields.

To set the Numeric Keypad Mode:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. In the Transport section, select a Numeric Keypad mode (Classic, Transport, or Shuttle).
3. Click **OK**.

Shuttle Lock Modes

There are two Shuttle Lock modes (Classic and Transport). Both modes let you use the numeric keypad to shuttle forward or backwards at specific speeds.

- 5 is normal speed.
- 6–9 provide increasingly greater fast-forward speeds.
- 1–4 provide progressively greater rewind speeds (4 is the slowest, 1 is the fastest).
- Press 0 to stop Shuttle Lock, then press the number to resume Shuttle Lock speed.
- Press Escape or Spacebar to exit Shuttle Lock mode.

Custom Shuttle Lock Speed

The highest fast-forward Shuttle Lock speed (key 9) can be customized.

For more information, see "Custom Shuttle Lock Speed" on page 900.

Classic Mode

This mode emulates the way Pro Tools worked in versions lower than 5.0. With the Numeric Keypad mode set to **Classic**, you can:

- Play up to two tracks of audio in Shuttle Lock mode. Press the Control key (Mac) or the Start key (Windows), followed by 1–9 for different play speeds.
- Press Plus or Minus to reverse direction.
- Press 0 to stop Shuttle Lock, then press the number to resume Shuttle Lock speed.
- Press Escape or Spacebar to exit Shuttle Lock mode.
- Recall Memory Locations by typing the Memory Location, followed by a Period (.).

Transport Mode

This mode lets you set a number of record and play functions, and also operate the Transport from the numeric keypad.

Function	Key
Click on/off	7
Countoff on/off	8
MIDI Merge/Replace mode	9
Loop Playback mode on/off	4
Loop Record mode on/off	5
QuickPunch mode on/off	6
Rewind	1
Fast Forward	2
Record enable	3
Play/Stop	0

With the Numeric Keypad mode set to **`Transport`**, you can also:

- Play up to two tracks of audio in Shuttle Lock mode. Press the Control key (Mac) or the Start key (Windows), followed by 1–9 for different play speeds.
- Press Plus or Minus to reverse direction.
- Press 0 to stop Shuttle Lock, then press the number to resume Shuttle Lock speed.
- Press Escape or Spacebar to exit Shuttle Lock mode.
- Recall Memory Locations by typing Period (.), the Memory Location number, and Period (.) again.

Shuttle Mode

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only)

Pro Tools offers another form of shuttling, different from that of the two Shuttle Lock modes. With the Numeric Keypad mode set to **`Shuttle`**, playback of the current Edit selection is triggered by pressing and holding the keys on the numeric keypad—playback stops once the keys are released. Various playback speeds are available in both forward and reverse. In this mode, pre- and post-roll are ignored.

Playback Speeds	Key
1x Forward	6
1x Rewind	4
4x Forward	9
4x Rewind	7
1/4x Forward	3
1/4x Rewind	1
1/2x Forward	5+6
1/2x Rewind	5+4
2x Forward	8+9

Playback Speeds	Key
2x Rewind	8+7
1/16x Forward	2+3
1/16x Rewind	2+1
Loop Selection (1x)	0

With the Numeric Keypad mode set to **`Shuttle`**, you can also recall Memory Locations by typing Period (.), the Memory Location number, and Period (.) again.

Shuttle Lock modes are not available when the Numeric Keypad mode is set to Shuttle.

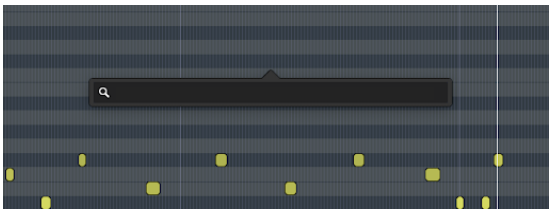
Pro Tools Search

Pro Tools lets you quickly search for commands or objects (such as tracks or clips) by name and do any of the following:

- Search commands by name and execute them.
- Search tracks by name and select them.
- Search clips by name and select them.
- Search Memory Locations by name and recall them.
- Search Track Groups by name and enable or disable them.
- Search AudioSuite plugins by name and open them.

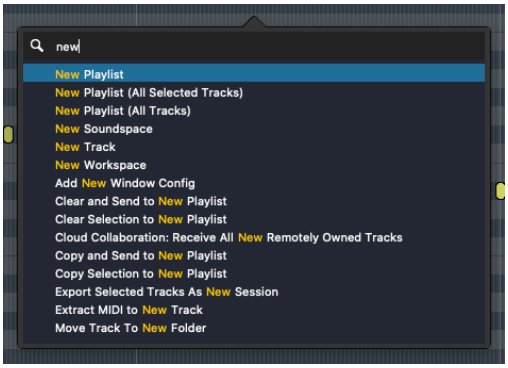
To use Pro Tools search:

1. Open the Pro Tools Search field by doing one of the following:
   - Choose **`Window > Pro Tools Search`**.
   - Press Control+Shift+S (Mac) or Start+Shift+S (Windows).



Pro Tools Search field

2. In the pop-up search field, type the name of the command or object you want. As you type all matching results are listed below the search field.



Typing in the Search field, results listed below

3. Do one of the following:
   - If the command or object you want is already selected in the results list, press Return to execute the command or select the object.
   - Use the Up and Down Arrow keys to move up and down through the list to select the item you want and then press Return.
   - Click the item you want in the list to execute the command or select the object.

4 Using Help

The Pro Tools Help menu provides quick access to installed PDF documentation and online Help. The Help system is HTML-based and launches in the Pro Tools in-application browser. It also runs on most common web browsers.

The Pro Tools Help menu also provides direct access to the online Pro Tools Knowledge Base, Avid Audio Forums, and the Avid Support Center using the in-application browser (an internet connection is required).

The Pro Tools in-application Web browser is not available outside Pro Tools. To use Pro Tools Help while Pro Tools is not running, use the default Web browser for your operating system.

Accessing Guides in Pro Tools Software

PDF (Portable Document Format) versions of the main Pro Tools guides are accessible from the Pro Tools **Help** menu. Adobe Reader is recommended for PDF documentation.

To access guides in Pro Tools:

- Choose **Help**, then a guide name.

Guides Accessible in Pro Tools

The following guides are available from the Pro Tools **Help** menu:

Audio and MIDI Plugins Guide

Describes the audio and MIDI plugins included with Pro Tools, as well as additional plugins available for purchase separately.

Pro Tools Reference Guide

Explains Pro Tools systems and software in detail.

Pro Tools Shortcuts

Lists keyboard and Right-click shortcuts for Pro Tools, including those shown in Pro Tools menus.

Accessing the Help System

There are several ways to access the Help system.

- Open Help at its Welcome page from the Help menu in Pro Tools
- Open Help at its Welcome page from within a Help browser in Pro Tools
- Open Help at its Welcome page outside of Pro Tools
- Open a different version or language of Pro Tools Help

To open Help within Pro Tools, do one of the following:

- Choose **Help > Pro Tools Help**.
- From the Pro Tools Online browser window, choose **Help**.

To open Help outside of Pro Tools (or to select a different version or language of Help):

1. Open your favorite online browser (such as Safari or Explorer).
2. Visit the Pro Tools Help launch page https://apps.avid.com/ProToolsHelp.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to open a version of Help.

To close the Help system:

- Click the Help viewer's Close button.

Help Display

The Help system includes the following display elements:

Topics

Help topics open in the right pane of the Help viewer.

Navigation Tools

Navigate the topics in the left pane of the Help viewer and use the Search field to find topics that include specific key words.

Hierarchy Links

Use these links to verify the location of the currently displayed topic within its chapter and to jump to relevant higher-level topics, including the Main Topic.

Part II: System Configuration

Learn about Pro Tools systems and system configuration.

- "Pro Tools Systems" on page 35
- "I/O Setup" on page 55
- "System Setup" on page 106
- "Preferences" on page 135
- "Peripherals" on page 184
- "Configuring MIDI" on page 196

5 Pro Tools Systems

There are several types of Pro Tools systems:

Pro Tools Intro Software

Pro Tools Intro software can be used with built-in computer audio, and using Avid or third-party audio interfaces with supported Core Audio (Mac) or ASIO (Windows) drivers.

All Pro Tools subscriptions and trials automatically default to Pro Tools Intro upon expiration, ensuring that you have some limited capabilities even if your license or trial expires.

For a list of qualified audio interfaces and computers for all Pro Tools systems, visit www.avid.com/compatibility.

Pro Tools Artist Software

Pro Tools Artist software can be used with built-in computer audio, and using Avid or third-party audio interfaces with supported Core Audio (Mac) or ASIO (Windows) drivers.

Pro Tools Studio Software

These systems include Pro Tools Studio software using either Avid or third-party audio interfaces with supported Core Audio (Mac, including built-in audio on Mac computers), ASIO (Windows), or WASAPI (Windows Audio Session API).

Pro Tools Ultimate Software

These systems include Pro Tools Ultimate software with any compatible non-HDX or non-HD Native Avid audio interfaces (such as Mbox), or Core Audio (Mac), ASIO (Windows), or WASAPI (Windows) hardware.

MBOX Studio

MBOX Studio consists of MBOX Studio hardware, MBOX Control software, Pro Tools Studio software, and Sibelius® Artist software.

For more information on MBOX Studio, see the MBOX Studio Guide.

Pro Tools | Carbon

These systems include Pro Tools | Carbon™ hardware with Pro Tools Ultimate or Pro Tools Studio software using Core Audio AVB (Mac). Carbon provides on-board DSP for minimal latency while recording and input monitoring. You can further expand your Carbon system with up to two additional Pro Tools | Carbon Pre devices.

For more information, see the Carbon Systems Guide.

Pro Tools | HDX and HD Native Hardware

Hardware accelerated Pro Tools | HD™ systems include Pro Tools | HDX™ or HD Native (PCIe or Thunderbolt) hardware with HD or MTRX audio interfaces running Pro Tools Ultimate software. Hardware accelerated systems provide expanded I/O capabilities and low-latency monitoring.

HDX systems provide dedicated DSP for plugin processing and large mixer configurations (HDX Classic). HDX systems also let you use the HDX Hybrid Engine to leverage host processing for maximum voice counts and DSP for minimal latency while recording and input monitoring.

Pro Tools Sketch app

Pro Tools Sketch is a free application for iOS on iPad that lets you add, create, edit, arrange, and play back MIDI and audio clips. Pro Tools also provides a Sketch window (available in all tiers) that provides the same functionality as the Sketch app right in Pro Tools. Sketches can be created in and shared to either the app or Pro Tools.

For more information, see the Using Pro Tools Sketch.pdf.

Pro Tools Intro Software

Pro Tools Intro software is a free, feature-reduced version of Pro Tools designed to introduce you to the Pro Tools product line that provides the following capabilities, depending on your hardware configuration:

- Up to 4 channels of I/O depending on your system and audio hardware
- Up to a total of 8 mono or stereo audio tracks per session at all sample rates
- Up to 4 Auxiliary Input and Routing Folder tracks
- 1 Master Fader track
- Up to 8 MIDI tracks
- Up to 8 Instrument tracks
- 16-bit, 24-bit, or 32-bit floating point audio resolution, at sample rates up to 192 kHz
- Non-destructive, random-access editing and mix automation
- Audio processing with up to 10 real-time plugins per track, depending on the capabilities of your computer
- Up to 10 sends per track

For more information about the I/O capabilities of your audio interface with Pro Tools, see the documentation that came with your audio interface.

Supported Hardware Configurations with Pro Tools Intro Software

Pro Tools Intro software works seamlessly with Avid- and third-party Core Audio (Mac), and ASIO and WASAPI (Windows) audio interfaces. For the latest information on supported hardware configurations with Pro Tools Intro software, visit www.avid.com/compatibility.

Processing Capacity

The total processing capacity of a Pro Tools Intro system depends on the processing power of your computer. Visit www.avid.com for the latest system requirements and compatibility information.

Pro Tools Intro Capabilities with Different Hardware Configurations

Pro Tools Artist supports up to 4 channels of audio input and output, but the available input and output capabilities with Pro Tools Intro varies depending on your audio interface. For information about the input and output capabilities of your audio interface, refer to the documentation that came with your hardware.

If you open a Pro Tools session created on a different Pro Tools system that contains more than the number of tracks supported on your Pro Tools system, audio tracks beyond the system's track limit will be lost.

For details on sharing sessions between Pro Tools systems, see "Sharing Sessions Created on Different Pro Tools Systems" on page 724.

Pro Tools Artist Software

Pro Tools Artist software provides the following capabilities, depending on your hardware configuration:

- Up to 16 channels of I/O depending on your system and audio hardware
- Up to a total of 32 mono or stereo audio tracks per session at all sample rates
- Up to 32 Auxiliary Input and Routing Folder tracks
- Up to 2,000 Basic Folder tracks
- 1 Master Fader track
- Up to 64 MIDI tracks
- Up to 32 Instrument tracks
- 16-bit, 24-bit, or 32-bit floating point audio resolution, at sample rates up to 192 kHz
- Automatic Delay Compensation (up to 16,383 samples at 48 kHz)
- Non-destructive, random-access editing and mix automation
- Audio processing with up to 10 real-time plugins per track, depending on the capabilities of your computer
- Up to 10 hardware inserts per track
- Up to 10 sends per track
- AAC audio support
- Timecode support

For more information about the I/O capabilities of your audio interface with Pro Tools, see the documentation that came with your audio interface.

Supported Hardware Configurations with Pro Tools Artist Software

Pro Tools Artist software works seamlessly with Avid- and third-party Core Audio (Mac), and ASIO and WASAPI (Windows) audio interfaces. For the latest information on supported hardware configurations with Pro Tools Artist software, visit www.avid.com/compatibility.

Processing Capacity

The total processing capacity of a Pro Tools Artist system depends on the processing power of your computer. Visit www.avid.com for the latest system requirements and compatibility information.

Pro Tools Artist Capabilities with Different Hardware Configurations

Pro Tools Artist supports up to 16 channels of audio input and output, but the available input and output capabilities with Pro Tools Artist varies depending on your audio interface. For information about the input and output capabilities of your audio interface, refer to the documentation that came with your hardware.

If you open a Pro Tools session created on a different Pro Tools system that contains more than the number of tracks supported on your Pro Tools system, audio tracks beyond the system's track limit will be lost.

For details on sharing sessions between Pro Tools systems, see "Sharing Sessions Created on Different Pro Tools Systems" on page 724.

Pro Tools Studio Software

Pro Tools Studio software provides the following capabilities, depending on your hardware configuration:

- Up to 64 channels of I/O depending on your system and audio hardware
- Up to a total of 512 mono or stereo audio tracks per session at all sample rates
- Up to 128 Auxiliary Input and Routing Folder tracks
- Up to 2,000 Basic Folder tracks
- Up to 64 Master Fader track
- Up to 1,024 MIDI tracks
- Up to 512 Instrument tracks
- Up to 128 VCA Master tracks
- A single video track
- 16-bit, 24-bit, or 32-bit floating point audio resolution, at sample rates up to 192 kHz
- Automatic Delay Compensation (up to 16,383 samples at 48 kHz)
- Fixed RAM Disk Cache allocation options
- Non-destructive, random-access editing and mix automation
- Advanced automation features
- Smart HDX DSP for minimal latency recording and input monitoring (Pro Tools | Carbon only)
- Multichannel support for surround sound including Dolby Atmos® and Ambisonics
- Audio processing with up to 10 real-time plugins per track, depending on the capabilities of your computer
- Up to 10 hardware inserts per track
- Up to 10 sends per track
- AAF and OMF Import/Export
- HEAT
- Clip Effects
- AAC audio support
- Import video
- Bounce Mix multi-stem support
- Support for up to 2 Satellite systems
- Timecode + Feet/Frames support
- AFL/PFL
- Mic Pre support
- Batch Rename
- Advanced Metering



For more information about the I/O capabilities of your audio interface with Pro Tools, see the documentation that came with your audio interface.

Supported Hardware Configurations with Pro Tools Studio Software

Pro Tools Studio software works seamlessly with non-HD Avid audio hardware (such as Mbox or Pro Tools | Carbon) as well as third-party Core Audio (Mac), and ASIO and WASAPI (Windows) audio interfaces. For the latest information on supported hardware configurations with Pro Tools Studio software, visit www.avid.com/compatibility.

Processing Capacity

The total processing capacity of a Pro Tools Studio system depends on the processing power of your computer. Visit www.avid.com for the latest system requirements and compatibility information.

Pro Tools Studio Capabilities with Different Hardware Configurations

Pro Tools Studio supports up to 64 channels of audio input and output, but the available input and output capabilities with Pro Tools Studio varies depending on your audio interface. For information about the input and output capabilities of your audio interface, refer to the documentation that came with your hardware.

If you open a Pro Tools session created on a different Pro Tools system that contains more than the number of tracks supported on your Pro Tools system, audio tracks beyond the system's voiceable track limit will be automatically set to inactive.

Pro Tools Ultimate Software

Pro Tools Ultimate software provides the following capabilities with Core Audio, ASIO, or WASAPI hardware:

- Up to 256 channels of I/O depending on your system configuration
- Up to a total of 2,048 voiceable audio tracks of any channel width (unvoiced tracks are made inactive)
- Up to a total of 2,048 voices at all sample rates
- Up to 1,024 Auxiliary Input and Routing Folder tracks
- Up to 2,000 Basic Folder tracks
- Up to 512 Master Fader tracks
- Up to 128 VCA Master tracks
- Up to 1,024 MIDI tracks
- Up to 512 Instrument tracks
- Up to 64 video tracks per session
- 16-bit, 24-bit, or 32-bit floating point audio resolution, at sample rates up to 192 kHz
- Automatic Delay Compensation (up to 16,383 samples at 48 kHz)
- Fixed RAM Disk Cache allocation options
- Non-destructive, random-access editing and mix automation
- Advanced automation features
- FPGA-based low latency monitoring (LLM) with Pro Tools | HDX and HD Native hardware
- Smart HDX DSP for minimal latency recording and input monitoring (Pro Tools | Carbon only)
- Multichannel support for surround sound including Dolby Atmos and Ambisonics
- Audio processing with up to 10 inserts per track (in any combination of real-time, host-based plugin and hardware inserts), depending on the capabilities of you computer, the number and type of installed audio interfaces, and whether or not you are using HDX or Pro Tools | Carbon hardware for

additional dedicated DSP processing

- Up to 10 sends per track
- AAF and OMF Import/Export
- HEAT
- Clip FX
- AAC audio support
- Import video
- Bounce Mix multi-stem support
- Support for up to 2 Satellite systems
- Timecode + Feet/Frames support
- AFL/PFL
- Mic Pre support
- Batch Rename
- Advanced Metering

For more information about the I/O capabilities of your audio interface with Pro Tools, see the documentation that came with your audio interface.

Supported Hardware Configurations with Pro Tools Ultimate Software

Pro Tools Ultimate software works seamlessly with non-HD Avid audio hardware (such as Mbox or Pro Tools | Carbon) as well as third-party Core Audio (Mac), and ASIO and WASAPI (Windows) audio interfaces. For the latest information on supported hardware configurations with Pro Tools Ultimate software, visit www.avid.com/compatibility.

Processing Capacity

The total processing capacity of a Pro Tools Ultimate system depends on the processing power of your computer. Visit www.avid.com for the latest system requirements and compatibility information.

For details on sharing sessions between different Pro Tools systems, see "Sharing Sessions Created on Different Pro Tools Systems" on page 724.

Pro Tools Ultimate Capabilities with Different Hardware Configurations

Pro Tools Ultimate supports up to 64 channels of audio input and output with non-HD hardware, but the available input and output capabilities with Pro Tools Ultimate varies depending on your audio interface. For information about the input and output capabilities of your audio interface, refer to the documentation that came with your hardware.

MBOX Studio

MBOX Studio is a versatile multi-channel audio and MIDI interface for Pro Tools and Sibelius software, or other Core Audio or ASIO–compatible software.

MBOX Studio provides:

- Up to 21 inputs and 22 outputs at 44.1/48 kHz. Maximum I/O varies with sample rate, as follows: 10 x 10 simultaneous IO at 176.4/192k
- 4x XLR/¼-inch TRS Combo Microphone/Line/Instruments Inputs (2 on the back panel, 2 on the front panel), each with:

- High quality microphone preamps
- Variable Z impedance circuit to provide more tonal options and compatibility for Mic and Instrument inputs
- Large dual-function (rotate/push) encoder
- Link button to link stereo inputs
- 48V phantom power
- HPF (High Pass Filter)
- –10 dB Pad
- Polarity invert
- Soft-Limit
- 9-segment input meters
- Hardware inserts assignable via FX Loops 1–2
- 2x ¼-inch TRS Line inputs
- 4x ¼-inch TRS Line outputs
- L/R Main Monitor outputs
- 1/2 Alt outputs
- 2x ¼-inch TRS effect loops (hardware inserts) with Level and Impedance matching
- 2x ¼-inch TRS outputs
- 2x ¼-inch TRS inputs
- Switchable impedance between “Line” and “Hi-Z/Stomp Box”
- Control Room section
- Large dual-function (rotate/push) encoder to control output levels (rotate) and Speaker Output select Main/Alt (push)
- Mute, Dim, and Mono buttons
- Bluetooth input/output source select button
- Monitor Link Button to link output levels on Main/Alt/Bluetooth
- 4x User Action buttons, color coded with custom color selection (push and push /hold dual functionality)
- Stereo Bluetooth input
- Stereo Bluetooth output
- 1x Coax S/PDIF I/O
- 1x Optical I/O (supports ADAT, SMUX and S/PDIF)
- 8x Pro Tools (or other DAW) software inputs
- 2x ¼-inch headphone outputs with individual mixes and rotary controls
- 1x ¼-inch Hi-Z Out to Amp output for re-amplification
- MBOX button (launches MBOX Control)
- Input channel-based EQ, and Avid Reverb and Delay FX
- Built-in instrument Tuner
- 1x1 MIDI I/O
- 2x Footswitch and/or Expression Pedal inputs

- Low Latency Direct Monitoring (LLM) via MBOX Control
- USB 2.0 Type C Connector
- Supports iOS (compatible with camera kit (not included)
- External 12V Power Supply
- Kensington Security Slot

Pro Tools | Carbon Systems



For more information, see the Carbon Systems Guide.

Pro Tools | Carbon

Pro Tools | Carbon is a versatile multi-channel audio interface for Pro Tools Ultimate and Pro Tools Studio software, or other AVB Core Audio–compatible software.

Pro Tools | Carbon provides:

- Up to 192 kHz 32-bit AD/DA conversion
- Low latency tracking workflows with on-board smart HDX DSP
- 8 analog preamp inputs with
- Variable Z (impedance) on INST inputs 1–2 (front panel)
- Variable Z (impedance) on MIC inputs 5–8 (back panel)
- 8 line inputs (DB25 or TRS 1/4-inch) with
- True preamp bypass option
- 18 channels digital-to-analog conversion
- 8 line outputs (DB25)
- Dedicated stereo (L–R) monitor outputs (TRS 1/4-inch)
- 4 stereo headphone outputs
- ADAT I/O
- 16 channels at 44.1/48 kHz
- 8 channels at 88.2/96 kHz
- 4 channels at 176.4/192 kHz
- 8 channel I/O metering
- Stereo monitor output metering
- Front panel control over monitor sets, headphone outputs, input channel settings, input and output metering, and talkback mic
- Integrated talkback mic
- Footswitch to toggle talkback on and off
- Gigabit AVB-capable Ethernet
- Support for optical S/PDIF
- Mic Preamp control from Pro Tools tracks

Pro Tools | Carbon Pre and Expanded Systems

Pro Tools | Carbon Pre is a versatile multi-channel audio interface for use with Pro Tools Studio and Pro Tools Ultimate software or other Core Audio–compatible software. It provides exceptional AD/DA audio conversion with 8 mic/line inputs (combo XLR/TRS or DB25), 2 instrument inputs (TS), 8 line outputs (DB25), ADAT I/O, Word Clock, and AVB. You can use up to two Carbon Pre units in a Pro Tools | Carbon Expanded system for additional I/O.

In a Pro Tools | Carbon Expanded system, each Pro Tools | Carbon Pre provides an additional 8 channels of audio I/O, and when used with Pro Tools can each take advantage of the DSP in your Pro Tools | Carbon. Pro Tools | Carbon Pre can also function as a standalone 8-channel analog microphone preamp or as a standalone ADAT AD/DA converter. Additionally, you can use Pro Tools | Carbon Pre as an AVB interface with thrid-party AVB Core Audio–compatible audio software.

Pro Tools | Carbon Pre can be used in the following system configurations:

- To provide additional I/O in a Pro Tools | Carbon Expanded system (up to two Carbon Pre units)
- As a standalone AD/DA converter (ADAT mode)
- As a standalone 8-channel microphone preamp (ADAT mode and AD->DA mode)
- As an AVB audio interface with Pro Tools or any other Core Audio–compatible DAW

Pro Tools | Carbon Pre provides:

- Sample rates up to 192 kHz
- 32-bit AD/DA conversion
- 8 analog preamp inputs with
- Variable Z (impedance) on INST inputs 1–2 (front panel)
- Variable Z (impedance) on MIC inputs 5–8 (back panel)
- 8 line inputs (DB25 or TRS 1/4-inch) with true preamp bypass capability
- 8 line outputs (DB25)
- Multichannel ADAT I/O:
- 16 channels ADAT at 44.1/48 kHz
- 8 channels ADAT at 88.2/96 kHz
- 4 channels ADAT at 176.4/192 kHz

  ADAT I/O is not available in Pro Tools with Pro Tools | Carbon Pre when it is part of a Pro Tools | Carbon Expanded system. However, ADAT I/O remains available on the Pro Tools | Carbon primary device in a Pro Tools | Carbon Expanded system.

- Stereo Optical S/PDIF input (auto-detected) at 44.1/48 kHz and 88.2/96 kHz
- Word Clock I/O
- 8 channel I/O metering
- Front panel control over input channel settings, and input and output metering
- Gigabit AVB-capable Ethernet (100’ maximum cable length)

Pro Tools | HDX

HDX systems can be expanded by adding HDX cards to increase track count and the amount of plugin and mixer processing, and expanding I/O by adding additional audio interfaces. Each system requires at least one Avid HD audio interface (sold separately).

Pro Tools Ultimate Capabilities with HDX Hardware

Pro Tools Ultimate with HDX hardware provides the following capabilities:

- Up to 192 channels of I/O depending on your system configuration (up to 64 channels of I/O per HDX card)
- Up to a total of 2,048 voiceable audio tracks of any channel width (unvoiced tracks are made inactive):
- Up to 256 voices per HDX card (HDX Classic)
- Up to 2,048 voices with the HDX Hybrid Engine (HDX Hybrid Engine only)
- Up to 1,024 Auxiliary Input tracks or Routing Folder Tracks
- Up to 2,000 Basic Folder tracks
- Up to 512 Master Fader tracks
- Up to 128 VCA Master tracks
- Up to 1,024 MIDI tracks
- Up to 512 Instrument tracks
- Up to 64 video tracks per session
- 16-bit, 24-bit, or 32-bit floating point audio resolution, at sample rates up to 192 kHz
- Multichannel support for surround sound including Dolby Atmos and Ambisonics
- Automatic Delay Compensation (up to 16,348 samples at 48 kHz)
- Fixed RAM Disk Cache allocation options
- No-latency monitoring
- Non-destructive, random-access editing and mix automation
- Audio processing with up to 10 inserts per track (any combination of real-time plugin and hardware inserts), depending on your computer's capabilities
- Up to 10 sends per track
- TrackPunch and DestructivePunch
- AAF and OMF Import/Export
- HEAT
- Clip FX
- AAC audio support
- Field Recorder support
- Import video and advanced video editing features
- Bounce Mix multi-stem support
- Support for up to 12 Satellite systems
- Timecode + Feet|Frames support
- H.265 support

Audio Recording and Playback Capabilities

The number of simultaneous tracks for audio recording or playback depends on your system configuration and system resources.

Number of Voiced Audio Tracks

Each channel in an audio track requires a single voice for playback. For example, while a mono track uses one voice and a stereo track uses two voices, a 5.1 track uses six voices.

Number of Voices with HDX Classic

With the Playback Engine set to HDX, the number of available voices depends on the number of HDX cards in your system.

HDX 1

256 voices at 48 kHz, 128 voices at 96 kHz, and 64 voices at 192 kHz.

HDX 2

512 voices at 48 kHz, 256 voices at 96 kHz, and 128 voices at 192 kHz.

HDX 3

768 voices at 48 kHz, 384 voices at 96 kHz, and 192 voices at 192 kHz.

Number of Voices with HDX Hybrid Engine

With the Playback Engine set to HDX with the Hybrid Engine enabled, Pro Tools Ultimate supports up to 2,048 voices at all sample rates using host processing while HDX DSP are used for low latency Channel I/O in DSP mode (the number of available Channel I/O depends on the number of HDX cards in your system).

Pro Tools | HD Native

HD Native systems can be expanded by adding additional HD audio interfaces. Each system requires at least one Pro Tools HD audio interface (sold separately).

Pro Tools HD systems with HD Native hardware consist of the following:

- One of the following:
- HD Native PCIe card
- HD Native Thunderbolt interface
- Pro Tools Ultimate
- An authorized iLok for running Pro Tools Ultimate software
- One or more Avid HD audio interfaces (sold separately)
- DigiLink™ Mini cable for connecting HD Native hardware to an audio interface
- A MIDI interface (optional)

For detailed information about installing HD Native PCIe hardware, see the HD Native Installation Guide. For information about installing HD Native Thunderbolt hardware, see the HD Native Thunderbolt Guide.

Pro Tools Ultimate Capabilities with HD Native Hardware

Pro Tools Ultimate with HD Native hardware provides the following capabilities:

- Up to 64 channels of I/O depending on your system configuration
- Up to a total of 2,048 voiceable audio tracks of any channel width (unvoiced tracks are made inactive)
- Up to a total of 2,048 voices at all sample rates

- Up to 1,024 Auxiliary Input tracks or Routing Folder tracks
- Up to 2,000 Basic Folder tracks
- Up to 512 Master Fader tracks
- Up to 128 VCA Master tracks
- Up to 1,024 MIDI tracks
- Up to 512 Instrument tracks
- Up to 64 video tracks per session
- 16-bit, 24-bit, or 32-bit floating point audio resolution, at sample rates up to 192 kHz
- Non-destructive, random-access editing and mix automation
- Multichannel support for surround sound including Dolby Atmos and Ambisonics
- Automatic Delay Compensation (up to 16,348 samples at 48 kHz)
- Fixed RAM Disk Cache allocation options
- FPGA-based low latency monitoring (LLM)
- Audio processing with up to 10 inserts per track (in any combination of real-time, host-based plugin and hardware inserts), depending on your computer's capabilities, and the number and type of installed audio interfaces
- Up to 10 sends per track

Supported Pro Tools HD Audio Interfaces

The following Pro Tools | HD audio interfaces are compatible with HDX and HD Native hardware:

- Pro Tools | HD I/O
- Pro Tools | HD OMNI
- Pro Tools | HD MADI
- Pro Tools | MTRX
- Pro Tools | MTRX Studio

⚠ **HDX and HD Native systems require at least one HD I/O, HD OMNI, HD MADI, MTRX, or MTRX Studio.**

Maximum I/O Configuration with HDX

HDX supports up to a maximum combination of 12 total of the following audio interfaces:

- HD OMNI (only 1 HD OMNI interface is supported in a single system)
- HD I/O (up to 12 HD I/O interfaces can be used simultaneously—requires 3 HDX cards)
- HD MADI (up to 3 HD MADI interfaces can be used simultaneously—requires 3 HDX cards)
- MTRX (up to 12 MTRX interfaces can be used simultaneously—requires 3 HDX cards)
- MTRX Studio (only 1 MTRX Studio interface is supported in a single system)

Maximum I/O Configuration with HD Native

HD Native supports up to a maximum combination of up to 4 total of the following audio interfaces:

- HD OMNI (only 1 HD OMNI interface is supported in a single HD Native system)
- HD I/O (up to 4 HD I/O interfaces can be used simultaneously)
- HD MADI (full connectivity with 1 HD MADI interface is possible when both DigiLink ports of the HD MADI are connected to both DigiLink ports on the HD Native PCIe card or Thunderbolt interface)
- MTRX (up to 4 MTRX interfaces can be used simultaneously)
- MTRX Studio (only 1 MTRX Studio interface is supported in a single system)

Playback, Recording, and Voice Limits with Pro Tools Ultimate Software

The table below lists the audio playback, recording, and voiceable track limits with Pro Tools Ultimate software with HDX, HD Native, Core Audio, and ASIO hardware. *Playback and recording voices* refers to the number of unique simultaneous playback and record tracks on your system. *Total voiceable tracks* refers to the maximum number of audio tracks that can share the available voices on your system. (Mono tracks take up one voice. Stereo and multichannel tracks take up one voice per channel.)

With HDX systems, voice limits are dependent on the session sample rate and the number of DSP chips dedicated to the system's Playback Engine. With the HDX Hybrid Engine, HD Native, Core Audio, and ASIO systems, voice limits are dependent on host processing.

The following table lists Pro Tools Ultimate audio playback, recording, and voice limits by hardware configuration.

Core System Type	Maximum I/O	Sample Rate (kHz)	Maximum Voices
HDX, 1 card	64 channels	44.1/48	256
		88.2/96	128
		176.4/192	64
HDX, 2 cards	128 channels	44.1/48	512
		88.2/96	256
		176.4/192	128
HDX, 3 cards	192 channels	44.1/48	768
		88.2/96	384
		176.4/192	192
HDX Hybrid Engine	64 channels per HDX card	44.1/48	2,048
		88.2/96	2,048
		176.4/192	2,048
HD Native	64 channels	44.1/48	2,048
		88.2/96	2,048
		176.4/192	2,048
Pro Tools Ultimate with Core Audio or ASIO	256 channels	44.1/48	2,048
		88.2/96	2,048
		176.4/192	2,048

Pro Tools HD Audio Interface Features

The following table lists the input and output capabilities of the various Pro Tools HD audio interfaces for HDX and HD Native systems. Each HDX card in your system supports a maximum of 64 channels of I/O. HD Native hardware supports a maximum of 64 channels of I/O. To record and play audio with Pro Tools Ultimate with any of these hardware configurations, you must have at least one Pro Tools HD audio interface connected to the first port of the first card (or Thunderbolt interface) in the system.

Interface Type	Number of I/O Channels	Sample Rates (kHz)	A/D Conversion	D/A Conversion	Digital I/O
HD I/O	16 in/16 out	44.1, 48, 88.2, 96, 176.4, 192	24-bit	24-bit	24-bit
HD OMNI	8 in/8 out	44.1, 48, 88.2, 96, 176.4, 192	24-bit	24-bit	24-bit
HD MADI	64 in/64 out	44.1, 48, 88.2, 96, 176.4, 192	None	None	24-bit
MTRX	up to 64	44.1, 48, 88.2, 96, 176.4, 192	24-bit	24-bit	24-bit
MTRX Studio	up to 64	44.1, 48, 88.2, 96, 176.4, 192	24-bit	24-bit	24-bit

HD OMNI Audio Interface

HD OMNI is a professional digital audio interface designed for use with Pro Tools HD systems. HD OMNI provides a compact preamp, monitoring, and I/O solution for music production and recording, and post production studios.

HD OMNI Features

HD OMNI provides up to 8 discrete channels of Pro Tools input and output, with 4-segment LED meters for input or output (selectable).

Analog I/O

- 24-bit analog-to-digital (A/D) and digital-to-analog (D/A) converters, with support for sample rates up to 192 kHz
- 2 high-quality Mic/DI preamps (Channels 1–2)
- 2 combined XLR and 1/4-inch TRS front panel inputs for microphone and instrument level input
- 2 XLR back panel microphone inputs
- 2 1/4-inch TRS Send and 2 1/4-inch TRS Return back panel jacks for hardware inserts on channels 1 and 2
- 4 analog TRS line level back panel inputs (Channels 1–4)

  HD OMNI provides multiple analog input connections, but only four channels of analog input for Pro Tools.

- Soft Clip and Curv limiting circuits to protect against clipping on analog input
- 8 channels of analog back panel output using a DB-25 breakout cable (sold separately) with variable

output gain

- 2 channels of analog back panel output using TRS (Mirrors channels 1–2 or 7–8 on DB-25 connector)
- Front panel stereo 1/4-inch headphone jack

Digital I/O

- 8 channels of AES/EBU output (up to 192 kHz Single Wire) using a DB-25 breakout cable (sold separately)
- 2 channels of AES/EBU XLR input (up to 192 kHz Single Wire)
- 2 channels of S/PDIF RCA input and output (up to 192 kHz)
- 8 channels of ADAT™ TOSLINK input and output
- Support for ADAT S/MUX Optical for sample rates of 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, and 192 kHz
- Support for two channels of S/PDIF Optical with sample rates of up to 96 kHz
- Real-time sample rate conversion (SRC) on Digital Inputs 1–2 of either AES/EBU, S/PDIF, or Optical (S/PDIF)

SRC is not supported with ADAT S/MUX.

Monitoring

- An additional stereo “CUE” output path in Pro Tools for headphone monitoring from the front panel headphone jack
- Front panel Control Room (MAIN/ALT) and Headphone monitoring volume control
- Flexible monitoring with fold-down from all stereo and surround formats (up to 7.1 surround)
- Input mixer for low latency direct monitoring of a variety of incoming signals (configured in the Pro Tools Hardware Setup)

Synchronization

- Loop Sync input and output for connecting additional HD peripherals
- External Clock input and output for synchronizing HD OMNI with external Word Clock devices

For more information, see the HD OMNI Guide.

HD I/O Audio Interface

HD I/O is a multichannel digital audio interface designed for use with Pro Tools HD systems. HD I/O features extremely high quality 24-bit analog-to-digital (A/D) and digital-to-analog (D/A) converters, and supports sample rates of up to 192 kHz.

HD I/O comes in three standard configurations:

- 8 x 8 x 8 (8 analog in, 8 analog out, and 8 digital in and out)
- 16 x 16 analog in and out
- 16 x 16 digital in and out

You can also add or remove HD I/O Analog Expansion cards (ADC and DAC) and HD I/O Digital Expansion cards for custom configurations.

HD I/O Features

HD I/O provides up to 16 discrete channels of Pro Tools input and output, with 4-segment LED meters for input and output.

Analog I/O

- Up to sixteen channels of 24-bit D/A and A/D converters for superior analog input and output at sample rates of 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, and 192 kHz with Analog In and Analog Out HD I/O cards
- Soft Clip and Curv limiting circuits to protect against clipping on analog input

Digital I/O

- Up to sixteen channels of 24-bit digital I/O, using AES/EBU, TDIF DB-25, or Optical at sample rates of 44.1, 48, 88.2, 96, 176.4, and 192 kHz with a Digital HD I/O card
- Real-time sample rate conversion on digital inputs with a Digital I/O card (up to sixteen channels of AES/EBU, Optical, or TDIF)
- Support for S/MUX Optical for sample rates of 88.2 kHz and higher
- Support for 2 channels of S/PDIF Optical (enclosed) with sample rates of up to 96 kHz
- 2 channels of AES/EBU I/O (enclosed) with support for sample rates up to 192 kHz
- 2 channels of 24-bit-capable S/PDIF I/O (enclosed) with support for sample rates up to 192 kHz

Synchronization

- Loop Sync input and output for connecting additional Avid HD audio interfaces and peripherals
- External Clock input and output for synchronizing HD I/O with external Word Clock devices

Expandability

- Optional addition of I/O cards to expand analog or digital I/O
- Simultaneous use of multiple Avid HD audio interfaces to further expand system input and output

For more information, see the HD I/O Guide.

HD MADI Digital Audio Interface

HD MADI is a 64-channel, digital audio interface designed for use with Avid HD systems. HD MADI supports the Multichannel Audio Digital Interface (MADI) format and sample rates of up to 192 kHz. HD MADI provides simplified connectivity between your Avid HD system and MADI-compatible audio equipment.

HD MADI Features

- 2 MADI Optical and Coaxial inputs and 2 MADI Optical and Coaxial outputs for up to 64 discrete channels of digital input and output (32 channels per DigiLink Mini port)
- Supports sample rates of 44.1, 48, 88.2, 96, 176.4, and 192 kHz
- 24- or 16-bit resolution
- Sample Rate Conversion (SRC) on input or output
- Front panel clock and SRC indicators
- Front panel signal present LEDs for input and output
- BNC Word Clock I/O for synchronizing HD MADI with external 1x Word Clock
- BNC Loop Sync I/O for synchronizing HD MADI with additional Avid HD audio interfaces and peripherals (such as HD I/O, HD OMNI, or Sync X)
- Dedicated BNC Word Clock input and XLR AES/EBU input (clock input only) for external MADI

synchronization (when using SRC on output)

- Clock support for the following formats: Internal, Loop Sync, Word Clock, AES/EBU, and MADI
- Varispeed modes (supports both 64- and 56-channel standards)



For more information, see the HD MADI Guide.

Pro Tools | MTRX

Pro Tools | MTRX is a multichannel digital audio interface designed for use with Pro Tools | HDX and Pro Tools | HD Native systems.

Depending on installed analog expansion I/O cards, MTRX features extremely high quality 24-bit analog-to-digital (A/D) and digital-to-analog (D/A) converters, and supports sample rates of up to 192 kHz.

MTRX comes in three standard configurations:

- 8 x 8 x 8 (8 analog in, 8 analog out, and 8 digital in and out)
- 16 x 16 analog in and out
- 16 x 16 digital in and out

You can also add or remove analog and digital I/O expansion cards for custom configurations.

MTRX Features

Pro Tools MTRX provides up to 64 discrete channels of audio for Pro Tools with two DigiLink Mini ports (Primary and Primary/Expansion).

Digital I/O

- Built-in 8 AES3 interfaces with 16 channels of I/O
- Built-in MADI coax interface with 64 channels of I/O
- Compliant with the Dante Controller and Dante Virtual Sound Card
- Ethernet IP audio interface for 64 I/O channels using Dante® with configurable redundant network
- Digital router and format converter between all analog and digital inputs and outputs

Synchronization

- Sample rates of 44.1–384 kHz as well as DSD64/DSD 128 with high precision internal clock and PLL
- Sample rate can be adapted to the setting of an external device
- Synchronization by Word Clock, AES11, Video, and all digital audio inputs

Remote Control

- Operation using DADman software—some settings can be controlled on the front panel
- All settings are controlled over Ethernet

Pro Tools | MTRX I/O Expansion Options

- 2 to 48 analog channels depending on the installed analog I/O cards (Mic/Line AD cards with relay-based mic pre gain circuits):
- MTRX 8 Line Pristine AD Card
- MTRX 2 Mic/Line Pristine AD Card
- MTRX 8 Mic/Line Pristine AD Card
- MTRX Pristine 8 DA Card

- Digital I/O Expansion Cards:
- MTRX 8 AES3 I/O Card
- MTRX Dual SDI/HD/3G Card
- MTRX Dante 128 Card
- MTRX 64-Channel IP Audio Dante Module
- MTRX Dual MADI I/O Card
- MTRX DigiLink I/O Card
- MTRX SPQ Processing Card

For more information, see the MTRX Installation and the MTRX Operation guides.

Pro Tools | MTRX II

Pro Tools | MTRX II is an extremely capable multi-channel audio converter, router, and monitor mixer designed for use with Pro Tools | HDX and Pro Tools | HD Native systems.

Depending on installed analog expansion I/O cards, MTRX features extremely high quality analog-to-digital (A/D) and digital-to-analog (D/A) converters, and supports sample rates of up to 192 kHz.

Add or remove analog and digital I/O expansion cards to configure MTRX II to suit your needs.

MTRX Features

- 64-channel audio interface for Pro Tools with two DigiLink Mini ports (Primary and Primary/Expansion).
- Built-in MADI coaxial connections for up to 64 channels of digital I/O at all sample rates.
- Ethernet IP audio interface for 256 I/O channels using Dante with configurable redundant network (with an additional 128 Channels using the Dante Expansion card).
- Digital router and format converter between all analog and digital inputs and outputs.
- Sample rates of 44.1–384 kHz as well as DSD64/DSD 128 with high precision internal clock and PLL.
- Sample rate can be adapted to the setting of an external device.
- Synchronization by Word Clock, AES11, Video, and all digital audio inputs.
- All settings are controlled over Ethernet (or Thundebolt 3) using DADman software (macOS or Windows).
- Ultra low-noise internal fan with speed adaptation to the temperature.

Pro Tools | MTRX II lets you install optional I/O expansion cards in any of the eight back panel slots that include:

- Up to 64 analog channels depending on the configuration of installed Analog I/O Expansion Cards:
- Pro Tools | MTRX II 8 Line Pristine AD Card provides eight channels of line-level analog inputs.
- Pro Tools | MTRX II 2 Mic/Line Pristine AD Card provides two channels of analog inputs and mic preamps with relay-based gain circuit—an ideal low-cost option for talk-back and tracking—includes microphone preamplifiers with relay-based gain circuits.
- Pro Tools | MTRX II 8 Mic/Line Pristine AD Card provides eight channels of analog inputs and mic preamps with relay-based gain circuits.
- Pro Tools | MTRX II Pristine 8 DA Card provides eight channels of line-level analog outputs with an output level control.
- Digital I/O Expansion Cards:

- Pro Tools | MTRX II 8 AES3 I/O Card provides eight line AES3 inputs and outputs (16 channels) with built-in sample rate conversion.
- Pro Tools | MTRX II Dual SDI/HD/3G Card provides 2 x 16 channels of SDI/HD/3G connections with built-in sample rate conversion.
- Pro Tools | MTRX II Dual MADI I/O Card provides up to 128 channels of MADI inputs and outputs through two optical SFP ports, and also provides SRC on input.
- Pro Tools | MTRX II MADI mini-module for the Base Unit provides additional one or two 64-channel I/O coaxial or optical MADI module to the chassis.
- Pro Tools | MTRX II Dante 128 Card provides up to 128 channels of high-density, low-latency digital audio using Dante (128 channels at 44.1 kHz or 32 channels at 192 kHz), and also provides Sample Rate Conversion (SRC).

  MTRX II is compliant with the Dante Controller and Dante Virtual Sound Card, and also supports Dante Domain Manager.

DigiLink Expansion Card:

- Pro Tools | MTRX II DigiLink Card provides 2 DigiLink ports to connect to HDX cards, HD Native, or additional audio interfaces (such as HD MADI I/O) for up to 64 channels of DigiLink I/O per card at all sample rates.
- Optional Thunderbolt 3 option card

Remote Control

- Operation using DADman software—some settings can be controlled on the front panel
- All settings are controlled over Ethernet

For more information, see the MTRX II Guide.

Pro Tools | MTRX Studio

Pro Tools | MTRX Studio is a multi-channel audio interface for Pro Tools | HDX and Pro Tools | HD Native systems.

MTRX Studio Features

MTRX Studio provides up to 64 discrete channels of audio for Pro Tools with two DigiLink Mini ports (Primary and Primary/Expansion) or an optional Thunderbolt 3 interface.

Analog I/O

- 2 Instrument/Microphone inputs (with mic pres)
- 16 analog line inputs (DB-25)
- 16 analog line outputs (DB-25)
- 2 monitor outputs (balanced 1/4-inch)
- 2 stereo headphone outputs

Digital I/O

- 64x64 Dante I/O
- 16x16 ADAT I/O

Synchronization

- Sample rates of 44.1–192 kHz
- Synchronization by Internal, Word Clock, Loop Sync, ADAT, or Dante IP

Control, Routing, and Processing

- Operation using DADman software—some settings can be controlled on the front panel
- All settings controlled over Ethernet
- 512x512 cross-point matrix
- 256x32 summing (Pro | Mon) with monitor profiles
- 256 filters for 16 channels of speaker EQ

For more information, see the MTRX Studio Installation and the MTRX Studio Operation guides.

Pro Tools Hardware Options

Pro Tools Ultimate also supports the following Avid HD hardware options:

- Pro Tools | Sync X or SYNC HD™ synchronization peripherals (HDX and HD Native systems only):

Pro Tools Ultimate and Pro Tools Studio also support the following Avid HD hardware options:

- Pro Tools | PRE™ (Eight-channel microphone preamp)
- Control surfaces (such as Avid S1™, Avid Dock, Avid Control app, and Artist™ Series controllers)

Pro Tools Software Options

Pro Tools | MachineControl

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) Pro Tools | MachineControl™ enables serial communication with Sony® 9-pin compatible synchronizers, and video or audio machines (see "Pro Tools | MachineControl" on page 1867).

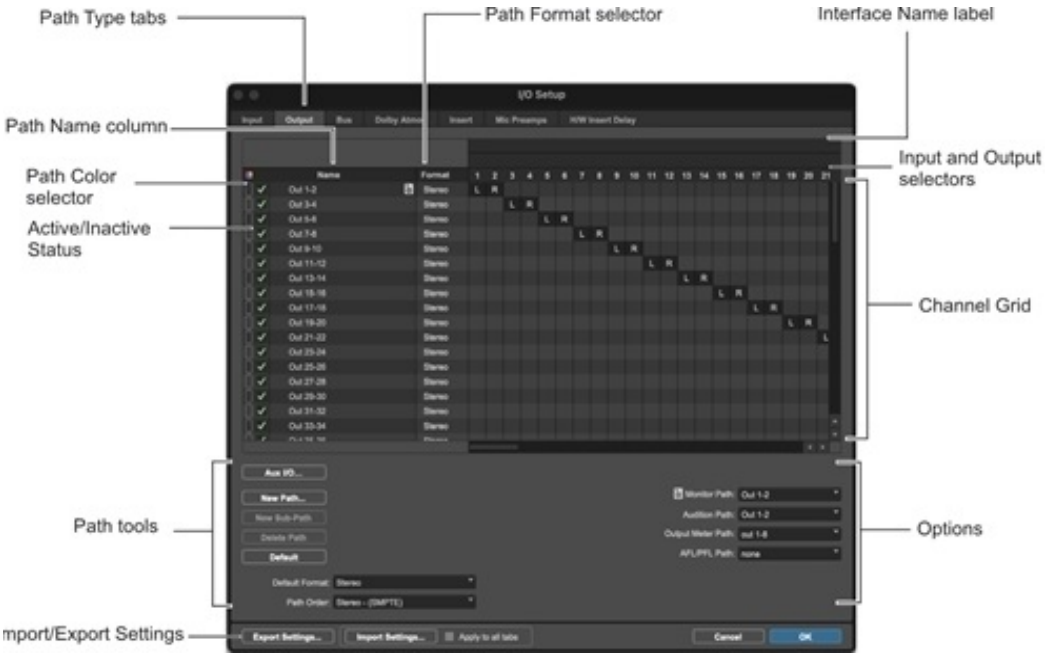
Pro Tools with VENUE Link

For Pro Tools systems that are connected to VENUE™ systems using Ethernet, VENUE Link provides Pro Tools and VENUE system integration and interoperability (see "VENUE" on page 195).

6 I/O Setup

The I/O Setup provides tools to label, format, and assign Pro Tools input, output, insert, and bus *audio signal paths* both for individual sessions as well as for your specific Pro Tools system. I/O Setup also provides controls for Mic Preamps (such as for Avid | PRE) signal paths and Delay Compensation settings for hardware inserts.

The I/O Setup displays a graphical representation (*cross-point matrix*) of the signal routing for physical input and output paths for each connected audio interface. Like a virtual patchbay, I/O Setup controls let you route physical inputs and outputs on audio interfaces to Pro Tools input and output channels. For HDX and HD Native systems, some of these controls mirror the routing controls found in the Hardware Setup—changes made to physical routing in one is always reflected in the other. The I/O Setup also includes controls for creating internal mix buses and for creating and mapping output buses.



I/O Setup on an HDX system with HD OMNI and HD I/O

Opening the I/O Setup

The I/O Setup can be opened from the application window (with a session closed), or from within a session (when a session is open).

To open the I/O Setup:

1. Make sure your audio interfaces are enabled and configured properly in the Hardware Setup. See "Configuring Hardware Settings in Pro Tools" on page 120.
2. Choose **Setup > I/O**.

Closing the I/O Setup

To close the I/O Setup and save changes:

- Click **OK**.

Pro Tools checks several settings for routing validity (to prevent feedback loops). If there are any overlapping or invalid settings, you will be required to correct them (see "Valid Paths and Requirements" on page 87).

To close the I/O Setup without saving changes:

- Click **Cancel**.

Navigating in the I/O Setup

To scroll up or down in the I/O Setup:

- Press Page Up/Down (Mac) or Page Up/Down (Windows).

To scroll left or right in the I/O Setup:

- Press Option+Page Up/Down (Mac) or Alt+Page Up/Down (Windows).

Pro Tools Software Signal Paths

A *signal path* is a logical grouping of multiple inputs, outputs, or buses that has a single name and (channel) format. The I/O Setup lets you create, define and name paths according to the configuration of your studio and the needs of each project. 24 buses are created by default, but you can create as many as you need.

Main Paths and Sub-Paths

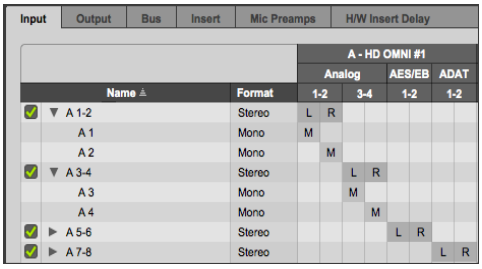
Paths in Pro Tools tracks and I/O Setup include *main paths* and *sub-paths*.

Main Paths

Main paths are logical groupings of inputs, inserts, buses, or outputs. For example, a master stereo output path will include both its left and right channels.

Sub-Paths

A *sub-path* represents a signal path within a main path. For example, a default stereo output bus path consists of two mono sub-paths, left and right. Mono tracks and sends can be routed to either mono sub-path of the stereo output bus path.



Main and sub-paths in I/O Setup (Input page)

Sub-paths for Output Paths

Pro Tools lets you create sub-paths for physical output paths in the Output page. Using output bus sub-paths rather than physical output sub-paths is sufficient for most workflows. Use physical output sub-paths only when you need alternate mix formats for the same physical output (including explicit downmix paths).

Default Bus Sub-paths

Pro Tools lets you create the default sub-paths for buses in the New Sub-Path dialog when accessed from the Bus page. Enable the **Create Default Sub-Paths** option to have Pro Tools automatically create the default set of sub-paths for the path format (channel width) of the selected main bus path, as follows:

Main Path	Sub-Paths	Sub-Path Name
Mono	N/A	N/A

Main Path	Sub-Paths	Sub-Path Name
Stereo	2 mono	‹*main path name*› followed by channel designation .L and .R
LCR	1 Stereo (LR) 3 Mono (one for each channel)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R
LCRS	1 Stereo (LR) 4 Mono (one for each channel)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*› .LR Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .S
Quad	1 Stereo (LR) 4 Mono (one for each channel)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*› .LR Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .R, .Ls, .Rs
5.0 – 6.0 – 7.0	1 Stereo (LR) 5–7 Mono (one for each channel)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Ls, .Rs, and so on
5.1 – 6.1 – 7.1	1 Stereo (LR) 6–8 Mono (one for each channel)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Ls, .Rs, and so on, and LFE
7.0.2 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.0, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR); and 9 Mono (one for each channel)	multichannel sub-paths: ‹*main path name*›.‹*channel format*› Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .Lts, .Rts
7.1.2 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.1, 7.0, 5.1, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR); and 10 Mono (one for each channel)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .LFE, .Lts, .Rts

When the **`Create Default Sub-Paths`** option is enabled, all other custom options in the New Sub-Paths dialog are grayed-out and unavailable.

It is especially useful to define and name sub-paths for complex mixing setups, such as a 5.1 surround mix.

Paths in Sessions

In sessions, signals are routed to and from tracks, sends, and inserts using track Input, Output, Insert, and Send selectors.

When you click a track Input, Output, Insert, or Send selector, the paths created and defined in the I/O Setup appear in the list of available paths (see "Assigning Audio Inputs and Outputs to Tracks" on page 357).

Path Configurations and I/O Settings

Each Pro Tools system can have a different path configuration, determined by:

- On Pro Tools systems, the type of audio interface or other physical I/O (including built-in hardware)
- On HDX and HD Native systems, the number and types of audio interfaces

Path configurations in Pro Tools are saved as I/O settings.

I/O Settings are saved with both the session and with the system. You can choose to overwrite the I/O settings saved with the system with those saved with the session (see "Restore from Session" on page 95).

Unavailable items (including hardware, paths, or required resources) remain in the session as inactive items (see "Making Paths Active or Inactive" on page 85). When you create a new session, you can specify which I/O Settings to use. For example, you can use the factory installed default settings, the "Last Used" setting, or one of any available custom I/O settings files.

See "Factory I/O Settings" on page 92 and "I/O Settings Files" on page 94 for more information.

Default I/O Settings

Pro Tools comes with default I/O Setup settings to get you started (see "Factory I/O Settings" on page 92). You should only need to open the I/O Setup if you want to customize I/O paths or if you change your system hardware (for example, adding an expansion card to HD I/O, or adding or removing an audio interface).

You can always return to the default settings for an I/O Settings page by clicking the Default button. These paths are available in session tracks and are reflected in the I/O Setup.

You can customize your I/O Setup configuration at any time, according to the needs of each project (see "Customizing I/O Settings" on page 72).

I/O Setup Pages

The I/O Setup provides tabs to open pages for configuring specific I/O Settings.

Opening an I/O Setup Page

To open an I/O Setup page:

- Click the corresponding tab at the top of the I/O Setup.

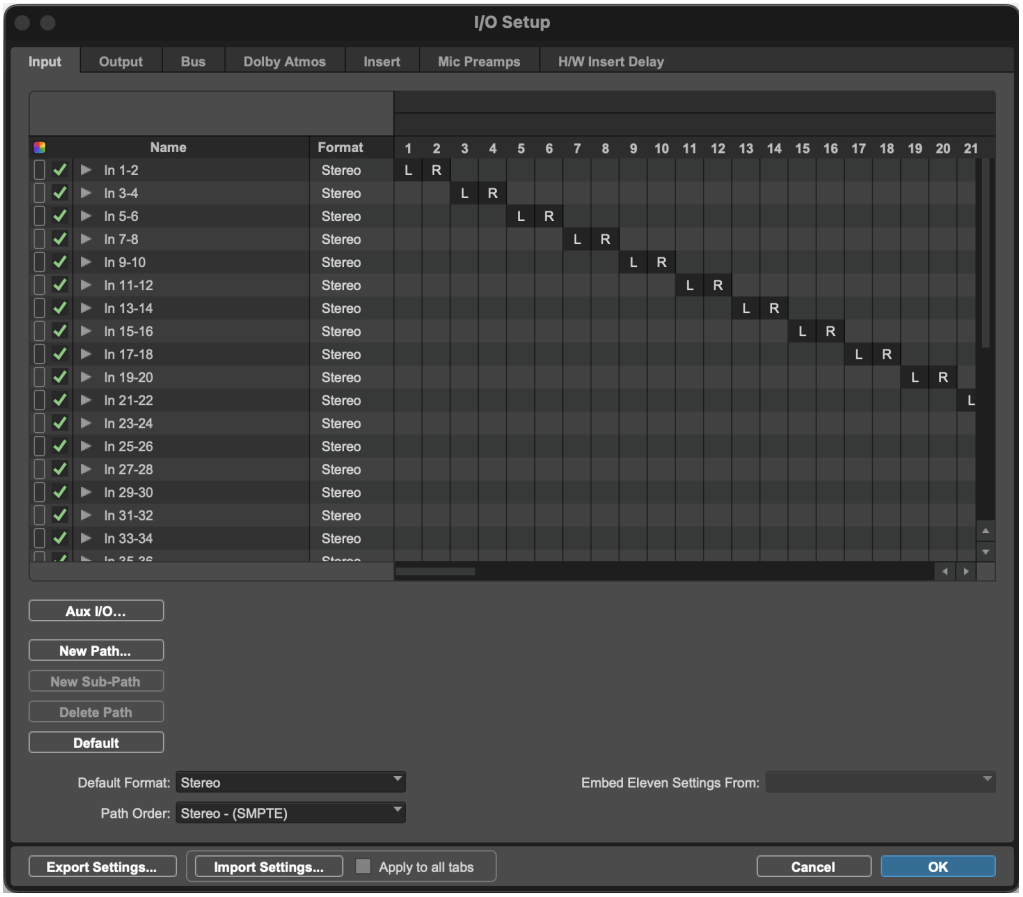
Hold the Command key (Mac) or the Control key (Windows) and use the Left or Right Arrow keys to cycle through the different pages of the I/O Setup.

If you choose to customize your I/O Setup, configure the system-specific options first: Input, Output, Insert, Mic Preamps, and H/W Insert Delay. Once you have configured your system, you should not need to change it unless you add or remove hardware (such as audio interfaces) from your system. *"Customizing I/O Settings" on page 72*

Input Page

The Input page of the I/O Setup lets you create and assign Pro Tools Input channels to receive audio from the physical inputs of your audio hardware.

Configure input signal path names, formats, and source channel (analog or digital) on the Input page. Multichannel input paths (greater-than-stereo) can have any number of sub-paths. Input channels can have overlapping input paths. Input names, channel widths, and physical input mappings are saved with the system and the session, and can be recalled from either.

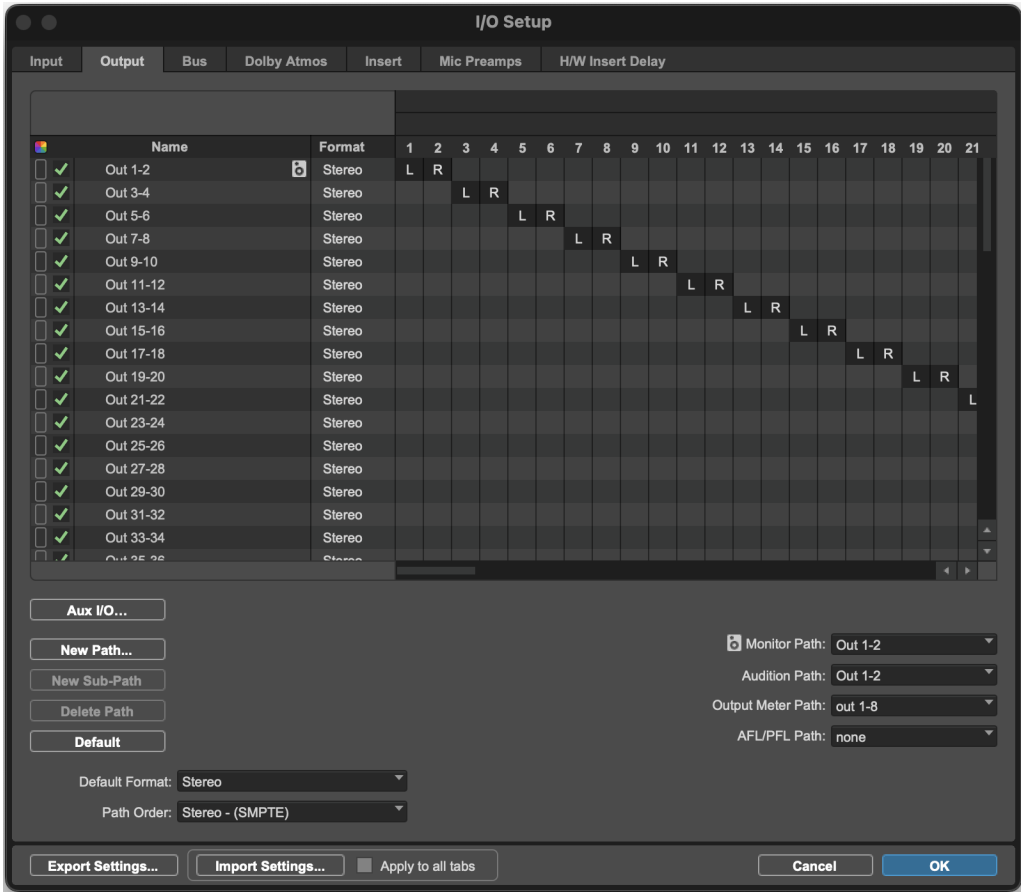


I/O Setup, Input page

Output Page

The Output page of the I/O Setup lets you create and assign Pro Tools Output channels to send audio to the physical outputs of your audio hardware.

Configure output signal path names and formats on the Output page. Output channels can have overlapping output paths. Multichannel Output paths (greater-than-stereo) can have any number of sub-paths. Output names, channel widths, and physical output assignments are saved with the system and the session, and can be recalled from either.

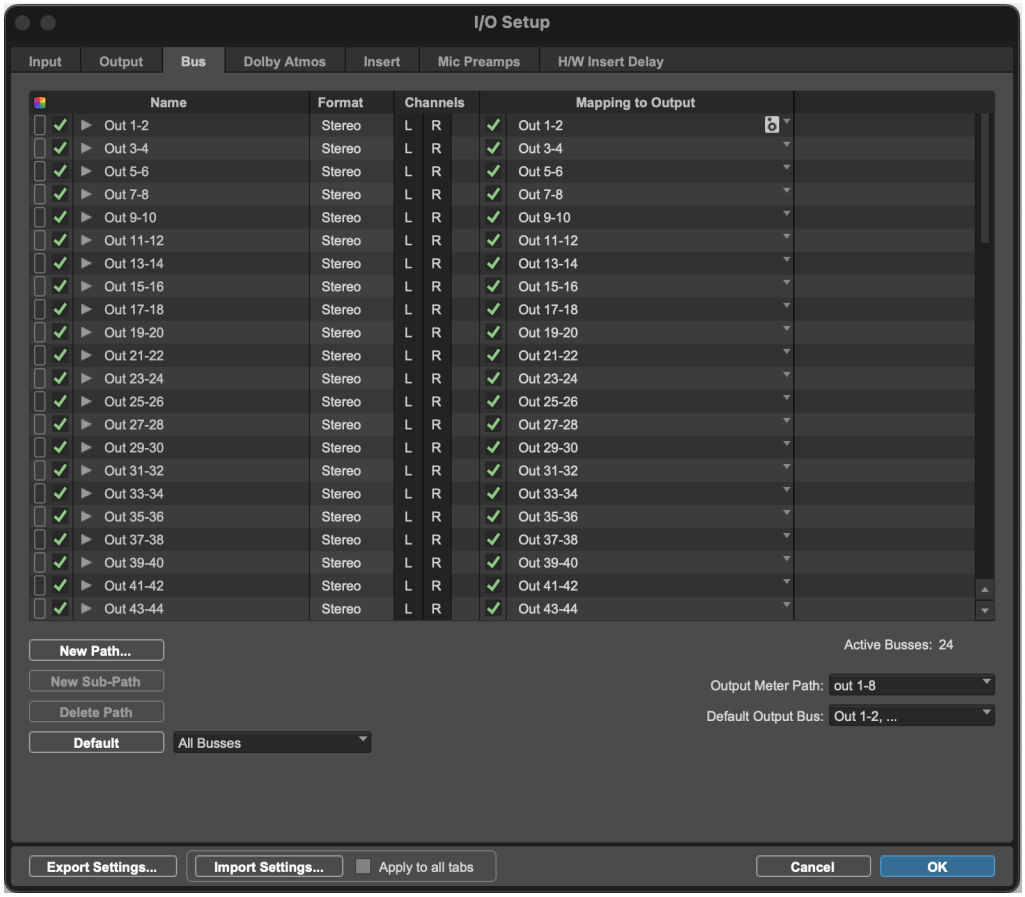


I/O Setup, Output page

Bus Page

The Bus page of the I/O Setup lets you create and edit internal mix buses and output buses. The Bus page also lets you map output buses to output paths (as configured in the Output page of the I/O Setup).

Configure bus path names and formats, and map any main bus path to any available output of the same width or greater. Multichannel bus paths (greater-than-stereo) can have any number of sub-paths. Output bus and internal mix bus names and channel widths are saved with and recalled from the session.



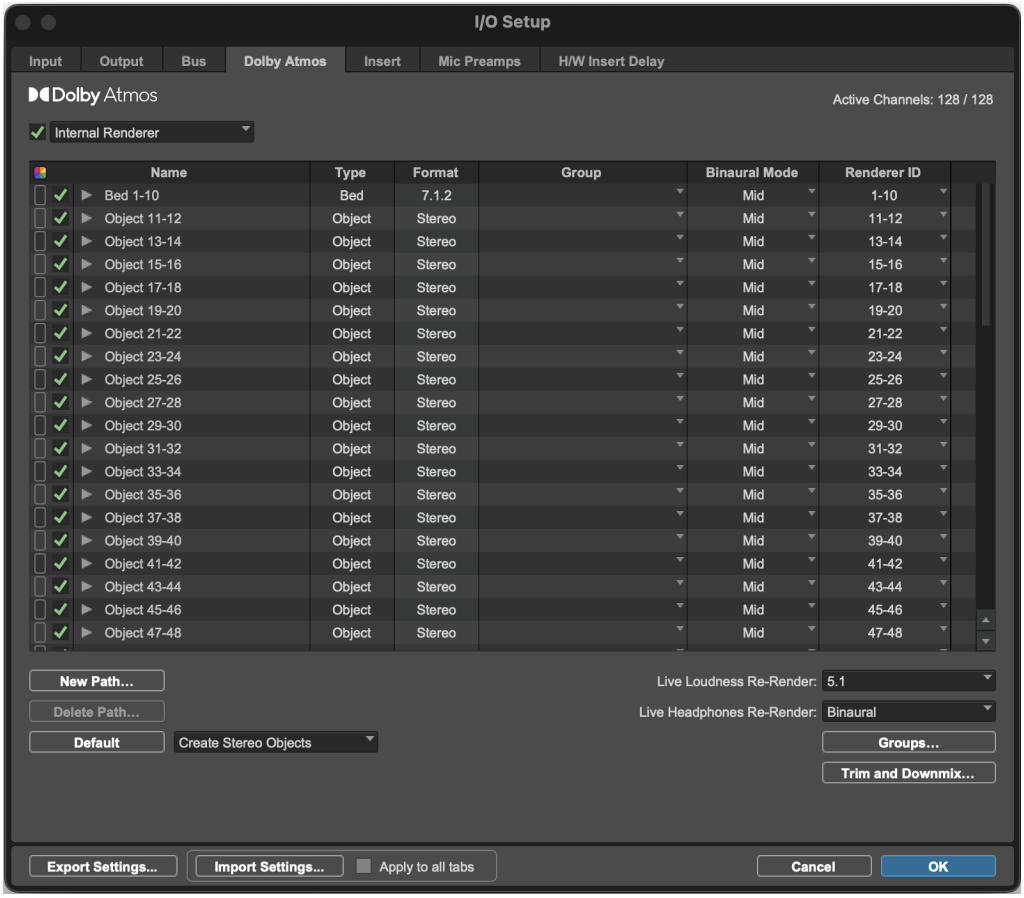
I/O Setup, Bus page

For more information, see "Configuring buses" on page 88.

Dolby Atmos Page

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

The Dolby Atmos page of the I/O Setup lets you enable Dolby Atmos mixing and configure either the Pro Tools Internal Render or setup for mixing to an External Renderer.



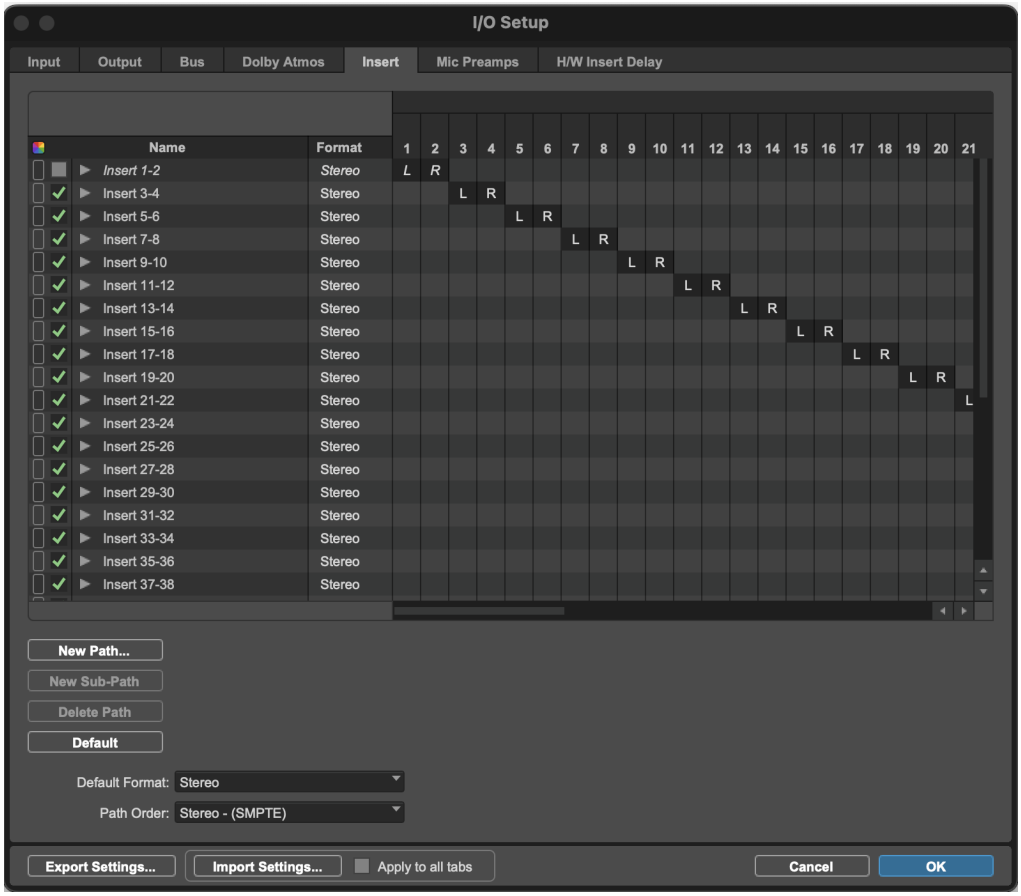
I/O Setup, Dolby Atmos page

For more information, see "Mixing to Dolby Atmos" on page 1715.

Insert Page

The Insert page of the I/O Setup lets you create and edit hardware insert signal paths for the Pro Tools mixer. Hardware inserts can route audio through an external device connected to parallel inputs and outputs of a Pro Tools audio interface. This lets you process audio on a track with a hardware insert in real time.

Insert paths require audio interface inputs and outputs, and are determined by the configuration of the Insert page in the I/O Setup for your system.

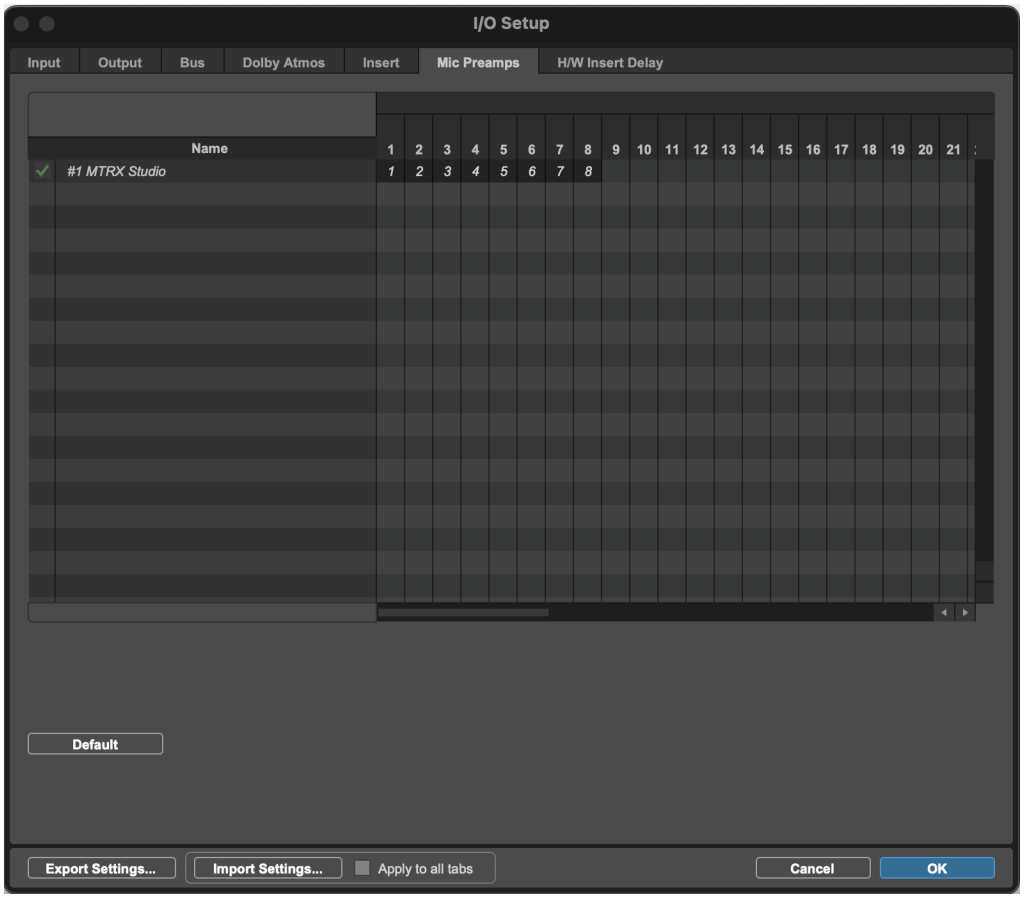


I/O Setup, Insert page

For more information, see "Using Hardware Inserts" on page 1549.

Mic Preamps Page

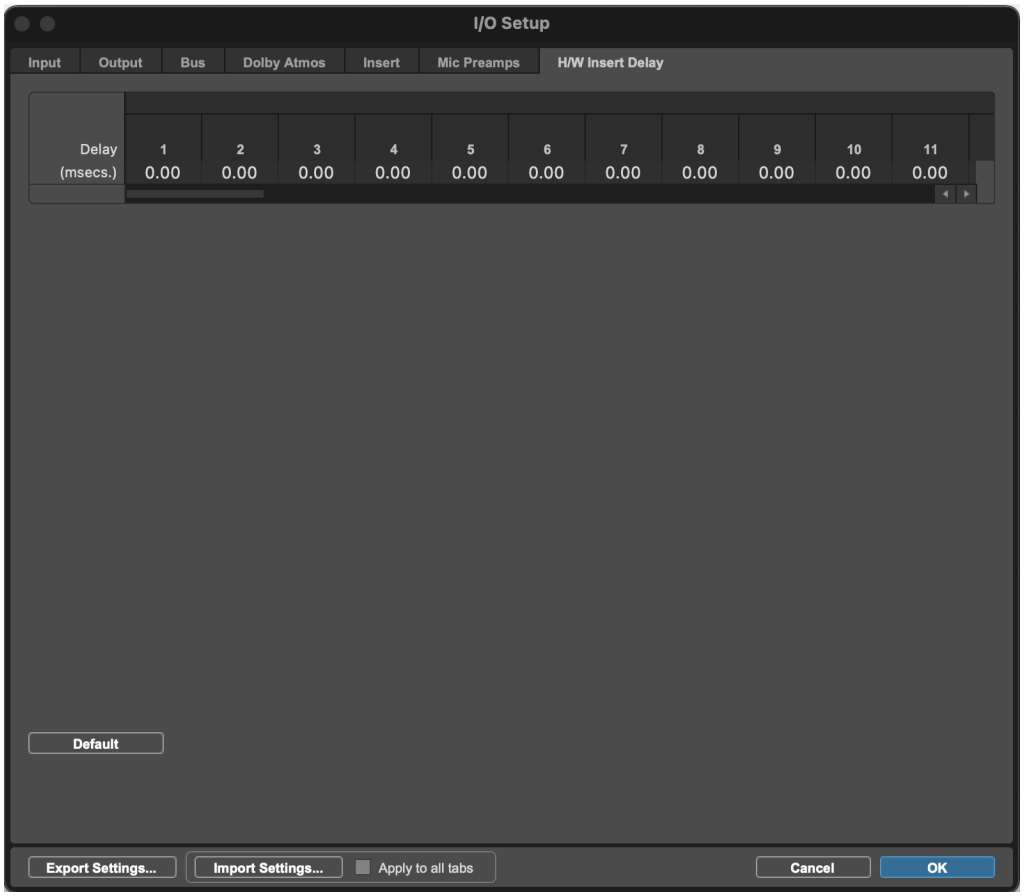
On the Mic Preamps page of the I/O Setup, signal paths for one or more Mic Preamp (such as Avid | PRE or Pro Tools | MTRX) multi-purpose microphone preamplifiers can be mapped to audio interfaces. For more information, see the *PRE Guide* or the *Pro Tools MTRX Guide*.



I/O Setup, Mic Preamps page

H/W Insert Delay (Compensation) Page

To compensate for the delay (latency) of any external hardware devices (such as an effects unit) used in your session, you can set the amount of Hardware Insert Delay Compensation (in milliseconds) for each external device. These times will be used by the Delay Compensation Engine to time-align input paths when the hardware insert is in use and Delay Compensation is enabled.

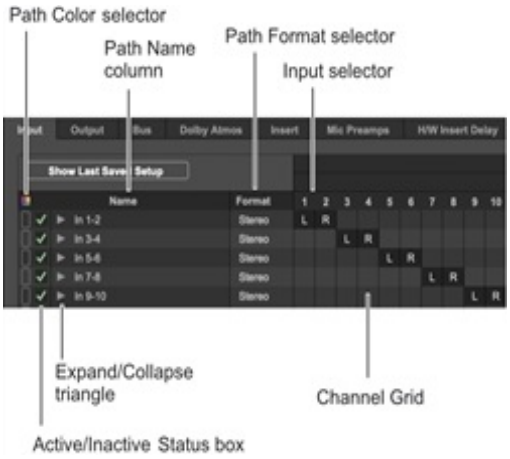


I/O Setup, HW Insert Delay page

For more information, see "Setting a Hardware Insert Delay Offset" on page 1507.

I/O Setup Signal Path Controls

Depending on the I/O Setup page, the I/O Setup provides the following controls in its graphical section for configuring signal routing paths.



I/O Setup, Signal Path controls (Input page shown)

Path Color Selector

Lets you color code Input, Output, Bus, Dolby Atmos (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only), and Insert paths. Color coded paths display their assigned color on Input, Output, Send, and Insert Name plates in the Edit, Mix, Send, and Output windows. For more information, see "Path Colors" on page 101).

Input and Output Selectors (HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

Lets you select the physical ports on your audio interface to route to Pro Tools inputs and outputs. Ports are selectable in channel pairs. Available ports for each displayed interface are based on Hardware Setup settings; for example, if the AES/EBU inputs and outputs of an interface are enabled in Hardware Setup, they are available for routing in I/O Setup. The functionality provided with the Input and Output selector is the same as that provided on the Main page of the Hardware Setup.

Path Name Column

Shows paths that are available for selection, including the name of each defined path. Path names can be renamed.

Expand/Collapse Triangle

Shows or hides the sub-paths associated with a main path (Input and Bus paths only).

Active/Inactive Status Box

Shows and changes the active/inactive status of each path.

Path Format Selector

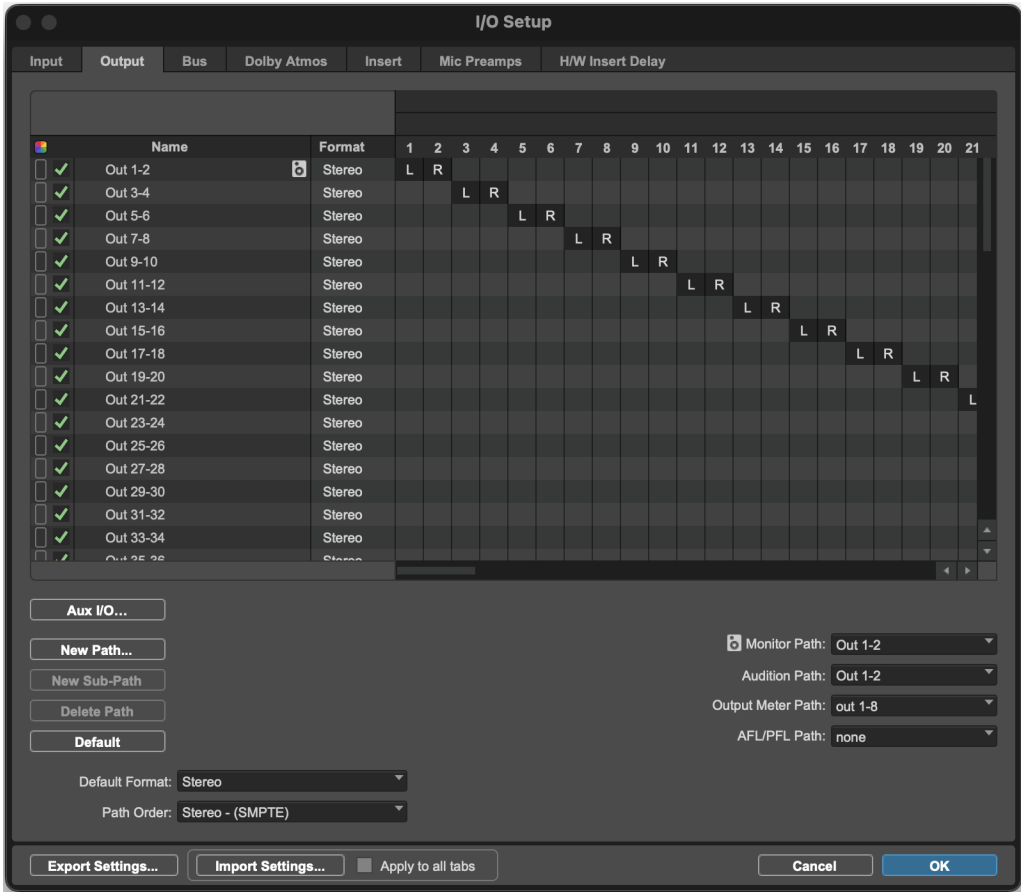
Shows and selects the type/format (such as Mono, Stereo, Quad, or 5.1) of each defined path (greater-than-stereo multichannel formats are supported with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only).

Channel Grid

Assigns paths to specific interfaces and channels.

I/O Setup Buttons

Depending on the I/O Setup page, the I/O Setup can provide the following buttons for configuring signal routing.



I/O Setup, Signal Path buttons (Output page shown)

Aux I/O Button (macOS Big Sur or Later Only)

Lets you use Aux I/O to extend your Pro Tools I/O capabilities through Core Audio routing (see "Aux I/O" on page 99).

New Path Button

Lets you create a new path on signal path pages for Input, Output, Insert, Bus, or Mic Preamp.

New Sub-Path Button

Lets you create a new sub-path on signal path pages for Input, Output, Insert, or Bus.

Delete Path Button

Lets you delete any selected path or sub-path on signal path pages for Input, Output, Insert, or Bus.

Default Button

Resets a path type to its default path configuration, depending on the physical hardware I/O you are using and how your hardware is configured.

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Default button to restore defaults to paths in all pages of the I/O Setup.

Import Settings Button

Lets you import an I/O settings file to reconfigure I/O Setup. **`Import Settings`** only imports the settings for the currently viewed page of the I/O Setup (such as the Input page).

Apply to All Tabs

Applies imported I/O settings to all pages of the I/O Setup.

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Import Settings button to import settings to all pages of the I/O Setup.

Export Settings Button

Lets you save I/O settings as a file that can be imported into other sessions or used on other Pro Tools systems. **Export Settings** exports the settings for all pages of the I/O Setup.

Show Last Saved Setup

Appears in the I/O Setup in certain session transfer situations. For details on this feature, see "Show Last Saved or Current Setup" on page 96.

Cancel Button

Closes the I/O Setup without saving changes.

OK Button

Closes the I/O Setup and saves any changes.

I/O Setup Options

Pro Tools systems have several additional I/O Setup options depending on which page of the I/O Setup you are viewing. These include default signal routing for metering and auditioning, and default track layout for multichannel mix formats.

Compensate for Delays After Record Pass

(HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

Pro Tools provides two options for compensating for input and output latency (due to any inherent latency in the analog to digital and digital to analog converters of the audio interface) after recording.

Compensation for Input Delays After Record Pass

When enabled, this option provides automatic compensation for any analog or digital input delay with Avid HD interfaces. Enable this option for all recording situations. When recording from a digital source, both the **Compensation for Input Delays After Record Pass** and the **Compensation for Output Delays After Record Pass** options must be enabled.

The **Compensation for Input Delays After Record Pass** option is only available in the Input page of the I/O Setup.

Compensation for Output Delays After Record Pass

When enabled, this option provides automatic compensation for any analog or digital output delay with Avid HD audio interfaces. Enable this option when you are synchronized to an external clock source. When recording from a digital source, both the **Compensation for Input Delays After Record Pass** and the **Compensation for Output Delays After Record Pass** options must be enabled.

The **Compensation for Output Delays After Record Pass** option is only available in the Output page of the I/O Setup.

Monitor Path

Pro Tools provides a Monitor Path setting in the Output page of the I/O Setup. Using the selected Monitor path for the main mix output of your Pro Tools sessions ensures that a session created on another Pro Tools system will always have at least one audible output.

Pro Tools automatically downmixes or upmixes the session Monitor path to the system Monitor path so that you always hear session playback regardless of name and width of the Output path on either system.

The Monitor path is graphically indicated by a speaker icon in track and send Output selectors, Output paths, and in the Output and Bus pages of the I/O Setup.

Audition Path

You can specify the output path through which files and clips are previewed (auditioned) from the Clip List, Splice, Transcript window, or Workspace browsers, as well as when previewing AudioSuite processing. Pro Tools lets you assign the Audition path to any available Output path regardless of its channel width. For mismatched channel widths, the Audition path is automatically downmixed or upmixed to the selected Output path.

The **Audition Path** selector is available in the Output page of the I/O Setup.



For information on previewing audio, see "Previewing Clips in the Clip List" on page 442 or "Previewing Audio in Workspace Browsers" on page 532.

Using the Default Audition Path

When you preview a file or clip in the Clip List, Transcript window, Splice, or in a Workspace browser, or when previewing AudioSuite processing, Pro Tools routes the audio output through the specified Audition Path. Pro Tools assigns a default Audition Path to the first available main Output path of the corresponding format. You can also select a different Audition Path in the I/O Setup.

Configuring Audition Paths

You can specify the monitoring outputs for auditioning audio in the Clip List, Transcript window, Splice, and Workspace browsers, or for previewing AudioSuite processing, using the **Audition Paths** pop-up menu.

Audition Paths Main Menu

The main menu consists of all path format choices available on the current system (Mono and Stereo on all systems, and LCR and greater with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only).

Audition Paths Submenus

Each path format choice has a submenu listing Output paths of that given format. (The mono submenu lists Output paths of any format.)

To configure an Audition Path:

- Select a path from the **Audition Paths** pop-up menu or submenus.

Output Meter Path

The **Output Meter Path** selector determines the which output or bus paths are monitored by the Output Meters in the transport (see "Output Meters" on page 1490). It also determines the path displayed across the Output meters of D-Control or D-Command worksurfaces as well as in the Pro Tools transport. For more details, see your control surface documentation.

The **Output Meter Path** selector is available in the Output and Bus pages of the I/O Setup.

To set the Output Meter Paths:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O Setup**.
2. Select the **Output** tab.
3. From the Output Meter Path selector, select the desired output path for metering.

Default Output Bus

You can specify the default output bus path assignment for new tracks, in each available format.

The **Default Output Bus** selector is available in the Bus page of the I/O Setup.

The Default Output Bus can be set for internal mix bus paths, as well as for output bus paths.

To specify a default output for new tracks in the I/O Setup:

- Click the **Default Output Bus** pop-up menu and select a format and output bus path.

AFL/PFL Path

Tracks soloed in AFL (After Fader Listen) or PFL (Pre Fader Listen) Solo mode are routed to the current AFL/PFL Path, as set with the **AFL/PFL Path** selector.

Pro Tools provides a combined **AFL/PFL Path** setting that can use any available Output path, regardless of channel width. For mismatched channel widths, the AFL/PFL path is automatically downmixed or upmixed to the selected Output path.

Note that if you assign the **AFL/PFL Path** to a physical output used for monitoring, that signal is muted when soloed and the solo path is used for monitoring instead. However, if the **AFL/PFL Path** is assigned to a different output, the main output continues to pass signal even when the AFL/PFL path is soloed. This lets you use XMON™ "Broadcast Mode" without XMON (ICON) hardware.

The **AFL/PFL Path** selector is available in the Output page of the I/O Setup.

See "Solo Modes" on page 371 for more information on using AFL or PFL Solo modes.

To select the AFL/PFL Path output:

- Select a path from the **AFL/PFL Path** pop-up menu.

Selecting None as the AFL/PFL Path disables AFL and PFL Solo modes. When None is selected, AFL and PFL cannot be used.

Setting AFL or PFL Path Levels

You can set a separate master AFL/PFL Path level for all AFL solos and all PFL solos.

Tracks do not need to be soloed to have the master AFL/PFL Path level adjusted.

To set the AFL/PFL Path level for AFL or PFL solos:

1. Choose **Options > Solo Mode**, and select a Solo mode:
    a. To set the level for AFL solos, select **AFL**.
    b. To set the level for PFL solos, select **PFL**.
2. In the Mix or Edit window, Control-click Command-click (Mac) or (Windows) a Solo button on any

track.

3. Adjust the AFL/PFL Path fader.
4. Click on the new fader position (or press Esc) to close the fader display.

To set the AFL/PFL Path level to 0 dB, Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) any Solo button.

Low Latency Monitoring

(HD Native Systems Only) With HD Native systems, the Output page of the I/O Setup lets you enable (or disable) Low Latency Monitoring. It also lets you specify any available Output path for Low Latency Monitoring. The Output path for Low Latency Monitoring can be of any channel width (from Mono to 7.1). Low Latency Monitoring uses Outputs 1–2 by default.

To configure Low Latency Monitoring in the I/O Setup:

1. Open the I/O Setup dialog (**Setup > I/O**).
2. Click the **Output** tab.
3. Enable the **Low Latency Monitoring** option.
4. From the **Low Latency Monitoring** pop-up menu, select the Output path you want to use for Low Latency Monitoring.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the I/O Setup.

Default Format

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

The **Default Format** selector lets you select the default format (Mono, Stereo, and all multichannel formats) for new paths and for when you click the **Default** button.

The **Default Format** selector is available in the Input, Output, and Insert pages of I/O Setup. The **Default Format** settings on each page are set independently of one another. The Input and Insert pages only provide Mono and Stereo options. The Output page provides all available formats.

Depending on which page of the I/O Setup is currently shown, the **Default Format** setting determines the width of the first output (or input or insert) when clicking the **Default** button. If mono or stereo is selected, all outputs (or inputs or inserts) are created accordingly.

To choose a Default Format:

- Select the desired channel format from the **Default Format** pop-up menu.

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio let you filter which multichannel formats appear in the Default Format selector. For more information, see "Channel Width Filtering" on page 1670.

For more information about multichannel mixing with Pro Tools Ultimate and Pro Tools Studio, see "Pro Tools Setup for Surround" on page 1658.

Path Order

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) The **Path Order** selector lets you specify the default channel order for all new paths created. The selected **Path Order** setting determines the channel order for the following:

- Channels added to newly created path (first paths) when hitting the **Default** button.
- Channels added to empty paths when penciling in channel assignments.
- Channels added when creating a new path and selecting the **Add default channel assignments** option.

The **Path Order** selector is available in the Input, Output, and Insert pages of I/O Setup. Setting the **Path Order** on any page of I/O Setup affects the other pages.

To choose a new default path order (track layout):

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click the **Output** tab.
3. Use the **Default Path Order** setting to select the channel order you want for the corresponding channel width.

Embed Eleven Settings From

(Systems with Eleven Rack Only) With an Eleven® Rack connected to your Pro Tools system, Pro Tools lets you embed the current Eleven Rack Rig settings into audio clips as you record them, so that you can retrieve that same setting for further use later. This can also be helpful when collaborating or bringing sessions or clips to a different system using Eleven Rack, because your settings travel with the files.

The **Embed Eleven Setting From** selector determines the audio input used for routing audio from an Eleven Rack into a separate audio interface.

The **Embed Eleven Setting From** selector is available in the Input page of the I/O Setup.

To embed Rig setting in recorded audio:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O Setup**.
2. Select the **Input** tab.
3. Set the **Embed Setting From** menu to the input you plan to record through, such as **Eleven Rig L/R**.

   This same method applies when using Eleven Rack as an insert with any Pro Tools system.

4. Create an audio track, and set its input to the corresponding input on your audio interface.
5. Record enable the track.
6. Record your part.
7. The settings of the currently loaded Rig will be embedded in each audio clip that is recorded from the input you select in the **Embed Setting From** menu.

Audio clips with embedded Rig data are marked with a small Eleven Rack logo icon in both the Edit Window and the Clip List in Pro Tools.

Customizing I/O Settings

The following shows how to customize your I/O settings for your particular studio setup.

If you are using an HD OMNI, be sure to configure the Monitor page of the Hardware Setup for HD OMNI before configuring the I/O Setup. For more information, see the HD OMNI Guide.

To customize I/O Settings:

1. Open the I/O Setup (**Setup > I/O**).
2. Import I/O settings from an existing I/O settings .pio file or a Pro Tools session file (.ptx) (see "Importing I/O Settings" on page 94).

   You can prepare a session for use on a different system this way. Any paths for hardware that is not present on the current system will appear as inactive.

3. For HDX and HD Native systems, double-click the label above an interface and enter a name.

   With systems using HDX or HD Native hardware, the I/O Setup bases default Input and Output path names on the custom name given to the interface.

4. Click the **Input** tab and do the following:
   a. Create input paths and sub-paths with appropriate widths and physical input assignments that match your studio configuration (see "Signal Path Routing for Audio Output" on page 76).
   b. Rename input paths and sub-paths to match your studio configuration.
5. Click the **Output** tab and do the following:
   a. Create output paths with appropriate widths and physical output assignments that match your studio configuration.
   b. Rename output paths to match your studio configuration.
6. If you plan on using hardware inserts, click the **Insert** tab and do the following:
   a. Create insert paths with appropriate widths and physical input and output assignments that match your studio configuration.
   b. Name insert paths to match your studio configuration. Name insert paths using standard industry terminology if possible, such as “Compressor,” “Reverb,” “EQ,” and so on.
7. Click the **H/W Insert Delay** tab and enter the correct insert delay in milliseconds for each input/output pair that you are using for hardware inserts. (See "H/W Insert Delay (Compensation) Page" on page 64.)
8. If you are using one or more PRE peripherals, click the **Mic Preamps** tab and configure it accordingly (see the *PRE Guide*).
9. Click the **Bus** tab.
10. Create internal mix bus paths and sub-paths. Ensure that output buses are mapped to the correct output paths (see "Output buses" on page 88).

    Output buses are automatically created and mapped to outputs when new output paths are created.

11. Export your I/O settings to create a backup of your current settings (see "Exporting I/O Settings" on page 95).
12. Click **OK**. You should not have to open the I/O Setup again unless you add or remove hardware to or from your system, or if you open a session created on a different system (see "Session or Project Interchange and I/O Mapping" on page 96).

Configuring Hardware in I/O Setup

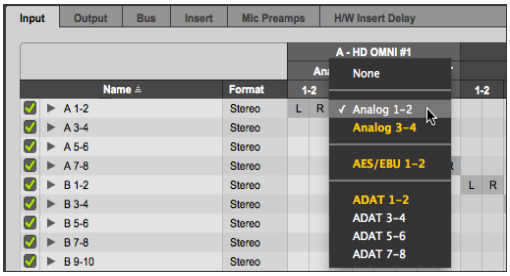
(Pro Tools HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

With HDX and HD Native systems, you can define which physical ports on your audio interface are routed to available input and output channels in the I/O Setup. Any changes made here are also reflected in the Hardware Setup, and vice-versa (see "Configuring Hardware Settings in Pro Tools" on page 120).

HD MADI and Pro Tools systems such as Mbox Pro and 003 are "hard-wired" and cannot be changed. For third-party and built-in hardware, in the Hardware Setup click the Launch Setup App button to for available configuration options.

To configure I/O routing in I/O Setup:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click the **Input** or **Output** tab to display the corresponding path type.
3. Click the Input or Output selector for the first interface channel pair, located below the first audio interface icon.
4. From the pop-up menu, select a physical port pair (such as Analog 1–2), to route to a Pro Tools channel pair (such as A 1–2) in the Path Name column on the left.



I/O Channel selector pop-up menu

5. Repeat the above step for additional channel pairs.
6. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.

The Monitor path for HD OMNI is fixed and cannot be changed in the I/O Setup. The Monitor path for HD OMNI can be configured in the Monitor page of the Hardware Setup.

Routing a Pro Tools Output Pair to Multiple Destinations

Pro Tools channel pairs can be routed to multiple outputs on an audio interface through the I/O Setup. For example, if you assign both Analog 1–2 and Analog 3–4 interface outputs to Pro Tools Output pair 1–2, when you send a signal to Pro Tools Outputs 1–2, that signal will be routed simultaneously to both pairs of output ports on your audio interface.

This lets you send the same signal (such as a stereo pair, a stem mix, or a multichannel mix) to multiple destinations (such as multiple mastering devices).

The only limit to output choices is the number of outputs available in your system.

Output path assignments can overlap in certain situations. See "Valid Paths and Requirements" on page 87 for details.

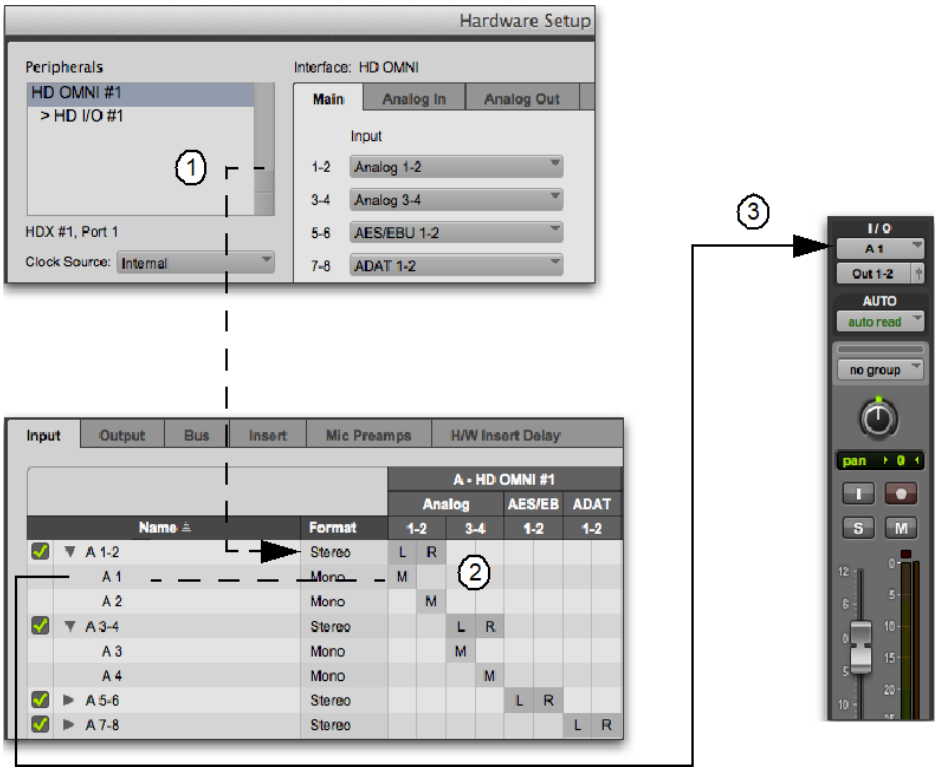
Pro Tools outputs pairs can also be routed to multiple audio interface outputs in the Hardware Setup.

To route a Pro Tools output channel pair to multiple audio interface output ports:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click the **Output** tab.
3. Click the Output selector for an interface channel pair, just below an audio interface icon.
4. From the pop-up menu, select a physical port pair (such as Analog 1–2) to route to the corresponding Pro Tools channel pair (such as A 1–2) in the Path Name column on the left.
5. Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the same Output selector and select an additional output pair from the same pop-up menu. The output name updates with a plus sign ("+") before it to indicate that multiple output ports are selected. In the pop-up menu, each physical port pair assigned to that Pro Tools output pair is indicated by a check mark.
6. Repeat the above steps to select additional output destinations.
7. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.

Signal Path Routing for Audio Input

The following example shows the signal path from the physical analog input of an HD OMNI audio interface, through the Pro Tools audio input path, to the Input of an audio track in the Pro Tools mixer:



Input signal path from an HD OMNI to the Pro Tools mixer as mapped in I/O Setup

(1) Physical Input

For Avid HD interfaces, such as the HD OMNI, the physical inputs that are available to Pro Tools are set on the Main page of the Hardware Setup (this selector is mirrored in the Input page of the I/O Setup).

For Pro Tools systems such as the Mbox Pro and the 003, physical inputs are fixed. For third-party and built-in hardware, in the Hardware Setup click the Launch Setup App button for available configuration options.

(2) Input Path

Main input paths and sub-paths are routed (patched) to physical inputs using cross-point matrix mapping in the I/O Setup. In this example, audio input is routed from HD OMNI physical inputs Analog 1–2 to Pro Tools Input channels A 1–2.

(3) Track Input

Input paths and sub-paths are routed to track inputs in the Pro Tools mixer by selecting the path (or sub-path) from the Track Input selector. In this example, input sub-path A1 is routed to the input of track "Audio 1."

Signal Path Routing for Audio Output

The following example shows the signal path from the output of an audio track through an output bus mapped to an output path that is routed to a physical output on an HD I/O audio interface:



Output signal path from an audio track to a physical output as mapped in I/O Setup

(1) Track Output

Audio is played back from disk and routed from the Track Output to Output Bus "B 1–2."

(2) Output Bus Path

The Output Bus is defined on the Bus page of the I/O Setup. On the Bus page of the I/O Setup, the Output Bus "B 1–2" is mapped to Output "B 1–2," which is defined on the Output page of the I/O Setup.

(3) Output Path

On the Output page of the I/O Setup, the Grid is used to route the output path (to which the output bus is mapped) to physical outputs.

(4) Physical Output

For Avid HD audio interfaces, such as the HD OMNI, the physical outputs that are available to Pro Tools are set on the Main page of the Hardware Setup (this selector is mirrored in the Output page of the I/O Setup).

For Pro Tools systems such as the Mbox Pro and the 003, physical outputs are fixed. For third-party and built-in hardware, click the Launch Setup App button in the Hardware Setup for available configuration options.

Creating New Paths

The I/O Setup lets you create new paths with custom names, formats, and assignments to physical I/O. Custom path names appear in a session's track Input, Output, Insert, and Bus selectors.

To create a new path:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click the **Input**, **Output**, **Insert**, or **Bus** tab to display the corresponding path type.
3. Click **New Path**.
4. In the New Path dialog, specify the number of new paths you want to create, the channel width for each path, and the path name.



New Paths dialog

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio let you filter which multichannel formats appear in the New Paths Format selector. For more information, see "Channel Width Filtering" on page 1670.

5. Do one of the following:
   - To add more paths, click the Add Row button ("+").
   - To remove a path, click the Remove Row button ("–").

Add a new path by pressing Command+N (Mac) or Control+N (Windows), or by pressing Command+Plus (+) (Mac) or Control+Plus (+) (Windows) on the numeric keypad.

To remove the last path from the New Path dialog Command+Minus (–) (Mac) or Control+Minus (–) (Windows).

6. Enable (or disable) the New Paths options **Add the Default Channel Assignments** and **Auto-Create Sub-paths**.
7. Click **Create**.

When you create a new Output path, an output bus is automatically created on the Bus page of the IO Setup, and is automatically mapped to the output path you created. For more information, see "Output buses" on page 88.

8. Assign the path to a specific audio interface (Input, Output, and Insert pages only) in the Grid column. See "Assigning Paths to Hardware I/O" on page 86.
9. Repeat the previous steps to configure all path types (Input, Output, Insert, or Bus).
10. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup. If there are any identically named paths, you will be instructed to correct them before the I/O Setup will close. For more information, see "Valid Paths and Requirements" on page 87.

Multichannel paths and mixing are explained in "Pro Tools Setup for Surround" on page 1658.

New Paths Dialog

The New Paths dialog lets you create new paths on the Input, Output, Bus, and Insert pages of the I/O Setup.



New Path Row Settings

Number of New Paths

Enter the number of new paths you want to create (or a certain type, like “Bus”).

Path Format

Select the channel width from the Path Format selector.

Path Name

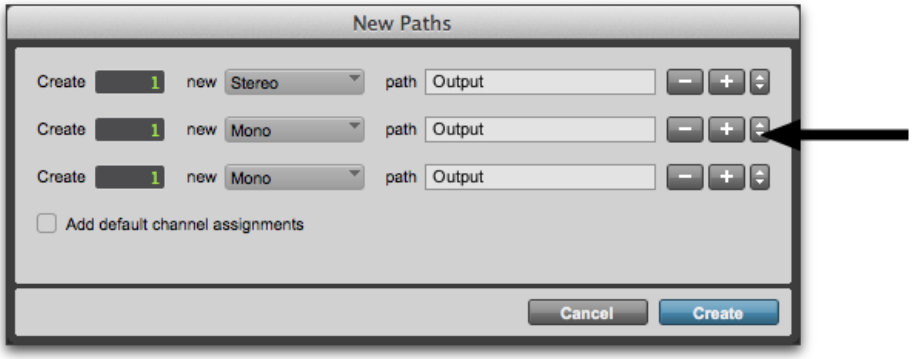
Enter the path name. If you are creating more than one path, the number of each new path will be appended to the path name (for example, Bus 1, Bus 2, Bus 3, and so on).

Add/Remove Rows

the Add Row button to add more paths, or click the Remove Row button to remove paths.

Move Row Icon

Drag a Move Row icon up or down to reorder paths.



Move Row icon in the New Paths dialog

Add Default Channel Assignments Option

Enable **`Add Default Channel Assignments`** option if you want Pro Tools to automatically assign input, output, and insert paths to physical inputs and outputs in the Channel Grid (from the first available channel to the maximum number of channels available). If the number of new paths of a certain width exceeds the number of available channels, Pro Tools wraps around and starts over at the first physical input or output of your audio interface.

Auto-Create Related Bus Paths Option

For output paths, enable the **Auto-Create Related Path** option to have Pro Tools automatically create the default output bus mappings for new ouput paths.

Auto-Create Sub-Paths Option

For input and insert paths, enable the **Auto Create Sub-Paths** option to have Pro Tools automatically create the default set of sub-paths for the path format (channel width), as follows:

Main Path	Sub-Paths	Sub-Path Name
Mono	N/A	N/A
Stereo	2 mono	‹*main path name*› followed by channel designation .L and .R
LCR	1 Stereo (LR)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR
	3 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R
LCRS	1 Stereo (LR)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*› .LR
	4 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .S
Quad	1 Stereo (LR)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*› .LR
	4 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .R, .Ls, .Rs
5.0 – 6.0 – 7.0	1 Stereo (LR)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR
	5–7 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Ls, .Rs, and so on
5.1 – 6.1 – 7.1	1 Stereo (LR),	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR
	6–8 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Ls, .Rs, and so on, and LFE
7.0.2 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.0, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR);	Multichannel sub-paths: ‹*main path name*›.‹*channel format*›
	and 9 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .Lts, .Rts
7.1.2 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.1, 7.0, 5.1, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR);	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR
	and 10 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .LFE, .Lts, .Rts
7.0.4 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.0, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR x2);	Multichannel sub-paths: ‹*main path name*›.‹*channel format*›
	and 11 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .Ltf, .Rtf, .Ltr, .Rtr
7.1.4 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.1, 7.0, 5.1, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR x2);	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR
	and 13 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .LFE, .Ltf, .Rtf, .Ltr, .Rtr
7.0.6 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.0, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR x3);	Multichannel sub-paths: ‹*main path name*›.‹*channel format*›
	and 13 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr,

Main Path	Sub-Paths	Sub-Path Name
		.Ltf, .Rtf, .Ltm, .Rtm, .Ltr, .Rtr
7.1.6 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.1, 7.0, 5.1, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR x3); and 15 Mono (one for each channel)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .LFE, .Ltf, .Rtf, .Ltm, .Rtm, .Ltr, .Rtr
9.0.4 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 9.0, 7.0, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR x2); and 113 Mono (one for each channel)	Multichannel sub-paths: ‹*main path name*›.‹*channel format*› Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lw, .Rw, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .Ltf, .Rtf, .Ltr, .Rtr
9.1.4 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 9.1, 9.0, 7.0, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR x2); and 114 Mono (one for each channel)	Multichannel sub-paths: ‹*main path name*›.‹*channel format*› Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lw, .Rw, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .LFE, .Ltf, .Rtf, .Ltr, .Rtr
9.0.6 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 9.0, 7.0, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR x3); and 115 Mono (one for each channel)	Multichannel sub-paths: ‹*main path name*›.‹*channel format*› Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lw, .Rw, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .Ltf, .Rtf, Ltm, .Rtm, .Ltr, .Rtr
9.1.6 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 9.1, 9.0, 7.0, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR x3); and 116 Mono (one for each channel)	Multichannel sub-paths: ‹*main path name*›.‹*channel format*› Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lw, .Rw, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, LFE, .Ltf, .Rtf, Ltm, .Rtm, .Ltr, .Rtr

Creating New Sub-Paths

You can create sub-paths for main paths in the Input, Output, Bus, and Insert pages of the I/O Setup.

To create a new sub-path:

1. Select the page of the I/O Setup where you want to create sub-paths (such as the Input page).
2. Select the Main path for which you want to create sub-paths.
3. Click **`New Sub-Path`**.
4. Configure the New Sub-Paths dialog as desired and click **`Create`**.
5. Click in the Grid to assign the new sub-path channels to available main path channels.

New Sub-Path Dialog

The New Sub-Path dialog lets you create new sub-paths for main paths on the Input, Output, Bus, and Insert pages of the I/O Setup.



New Sub-Path Row Settings

Number of New Sub-Paths

Enter the number of new sub-paths you want to create for the selected main path.

Sub-Path Format

Select the channel width from the Path Format selector.

Sub-Path Name

Enter the sub-path name. If you are creating more than one sub-path, the number of each new sub-path will be appended to the sub-path name (for example, Bus 1, Bus 2, Bus 3, and so on).

Add/Remove Rows

the Add Row button to add more paths, or click the Remove Row button to remove paths.

Move Row Icon

Drag a Move Row icon up or down to reorder paths.

Add Default Channel Assignments Option

(Input, Output, and Insert Sub-Paths Only) Enable **`Add Default Channel Assignments`** option if you want Pro Tools to automatically assign input, output, and insert sub-paths to physical inputs and outputs in the Grid (from the first available channel to the maximum number of channels available). If the number of new sub-paths of a certain width exceeds the number of available channels, Pro Tools wraps around and starts over the first physical input or output of your audio interface.

Create Default Sub-Paths Option

(Bus Sub-Paths Only) Pro Tools lets you create the default sub-paths for buses in the New Sub-Path dialog when accessed from the Bus page. Enable the **`Create Default Sub-Paths`** option to have Pro Tools automatically create the default set of sub-paths for the path format (channel width) of the selected main bus path, as shown in the following table.

Main Path	Sub-Paths	Sub-Path Name
Mono	N/A	N/A
Stereo	2 mono	‹*main path name*› followed by channel designation .L and .R
LCR	1 Stereo (LR)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR
	3 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R
LCRS	1 Stereo (LR)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*› .LR
	4 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .S
Quad	1 Stereo (LR)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*› .LR
	4 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .R, .Ls, .Rs
5.0 – 6.0 – 7.0	1 Stereo (LR)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR
	5–7 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Ls, .Rs, and so on
5.1 – 6.1 – 7.1	1 Stereo (LR),	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR

Main Path	Sub-Paths	Sub-Path Name
	6–8 Mono (one for each channel)	Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Ls, .Rs, and so on, and LFE
7.0.2 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.0, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR); and 9 Mono (one for each channel)	Multichannel sub-paths: ‹*main path name*›.‹*channel format*› Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .Lts, .Rts
7.1.2 (Dolby Atmos only)	1 each: 7.1, 7.0, 5.1, 5.0, Quad, LCR, Stereo, Overhead (LR); and 10 Mono (one for each channel)	Stereo: ‹*main path name*›.LR Mono: ‹*main path name*›.L, .C, .R, .Lss, .Rss, .Lsr, .Rsr, .LFE, .Lts, .Rts

When the **`Create Default Sub-Paths`** option is enabled, all other custom options in the New Sub-Paths dialog are grayed-out and unavailable.

Editing Paths

The I/O Setup lets you edit or customize signal path definitions. Paths can be:

- Restored to default configurations
- Renamed, for easier identification after changing or renaming audio interfaces
- Selected and reordered to change menu order in track selectors
- Selected and deleted
- Remapped to or from different sources or destinations
- Deactivated (or reactivated) to manage unavailable or unnecessary I/O resources

In addition, you can import and export your I/O Setup configurations as I/O Settings files, as well as set default path parameters. See "I/O Settings Files" on page 94.

The following table lists the available attributes for each path type:

Path options that can be edited by type

Path Type	Path Options (Attributes)
Input	Names, formats, and source channel (physical input)
Output	Names, formats, and destination channel (physical output)
Insert	Names, formats, and destination (physical inputs and outputs)
Bus	Names, formats, output mapping

Interfaces can also be renamed.

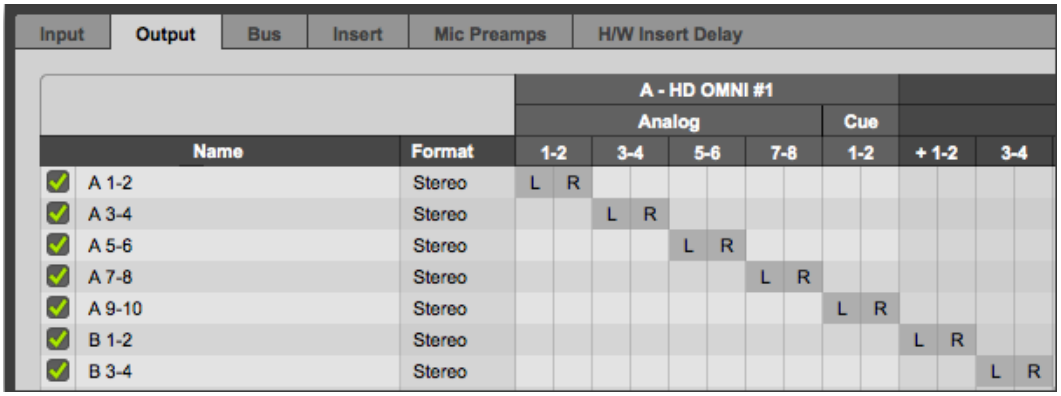
Restoring Default Paths and Path Names

You can restore I/O Setup paths to their default state at any time. You may want to restore defaults if, for example, you replace or add an audio interface to your system.

To restore default paths and path names:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click the **Input**, **Output**, **Insert**, or **Bus** tab to display the corresponding path type.
3. Click **Default**. Pro Tools does the following:
   - If a session is open, deletes any paths that are not in use.
   - Creates new default paths up to the capacity of your system's available physical I/O and resources.
   - Resets path names to the default path names (see "Default Path Names" below). These default path names appear in track Input and Output Path selectors.

   Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Default button to set all pages of I/O Setup to the default settings.
4. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.



Default Stereo Output Path

Renaming Paths

Path names can be customized in the I/O Setup.

I/O paths can also be renamed directly from the Edit or Mix window by Right-clicking the Input or Output selector and choosing Rename.

To rename a path in the I/O Setup:

1. Double-click the path name.
2. Type a new path name.
3. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.

Renaming Interfaces

Audio interfaces can be renamed in the IO Setup. When you rename Avid HD audio interfaces, default path names are based on the custom name given to the interface.

To rename an audio interface in the I/O Setup:

1. Double-click the label above an interface.
2. Type a new interface name.
3. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.

Default Path Names

Default names for input, output, and insert paths are based on the hardware you are using for physical I/O.

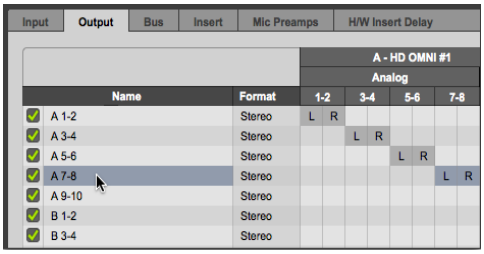
For HDX and HD Native systems, default path names are based on the names of interfaces you are using. If you have renamed your interface, default path names are based on the custom name.

Selecting Paths

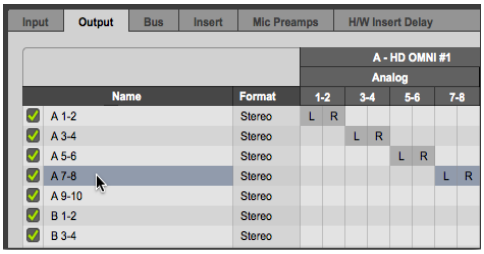
Individual and multiple paths can be selected in the I/O Setup Path Name column. Selected paths and sub-paths can be reordered higher or lower in the Path Name column to change their menu order in track Input, Output, Insert, and Bus selectors. Paths can also be deleted. Sub-paths follow their main paths when they are moved in the I/O Setup.

To select a main path or sub-path:

- Click the path name.



Selecting Paths in I/O Setup



To select a range of paths:

1. Click the path name.
2. Shift-click an additional path name.

All paths between the first selected path name and the additional path name will also be selected.

To select or deselect noncontiguous paths, do one of the following:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) path names that are unhighlighted to select them.
- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) path names that are highlighted to deselect them.

To select all paths and sub-paths:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any path name that is unhighlighted.

To deselect all paths and sub-paths:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any path name that is highlighted.

Reordering Paths

Selected paths and sub-paths can be reordered higher or lower in the Path Name column to change their menu order in track Input, Output, Insert, and Bus selectors.

To reorder paths in the I/O Setup and Track selectors:

1. Drag one or more selected path names up or down.
2. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.

Deleting Paths

Path definitions can be deleted from the current session to reflect changes to your hardware setup, or to clean up track selector menus by removing unwanted or unnecessary path definitions. After deleting a path, any tracks or send assignments to that path are reset to **No Output**.

To delete a main path or sub-path:

1. In the I/O Setup, select the path you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete Path**.
3. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.

To delete all paths:

1. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any path name.
2. Click **Delete Path**.
3. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.

Making Paths Active or Inactive

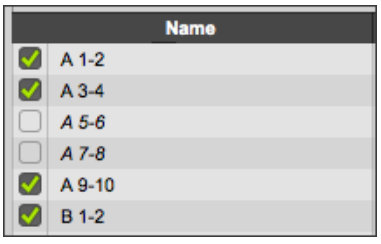
Pro Tools paths can be Active (on) or Inactive (off, or unavailable). Paths can be globally activated or deactivated in the I/O Setup. Making a signal path inactive will turn off the signal path on any and all tracks currently assigned to it.

Pro Tools also sets unavailable paths to inactive. Paths can be unavailable when hardware or other system resources are unavailable, such as when opening a session saved on a different system.

Tracks can also be made active or inactive. For information, see "Making Track Inputs and Outputs Inactive from the Edit or Mix Window" on page 362.

To globally activate or deactivate a path:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Select a path type using the tabs at the top of the window.
3. Set the Active/Inactive control for the path.



Active (top) and inactive (bottom) path settings

Any tracks that were assigned to the now inactive path will show that path's name in italics on the track's I/O selectors.

4. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup. Path status is displayed as follows:

- Italics

  Indicates the path is inactive.

- Non-Italics

  Indicates the path is active.

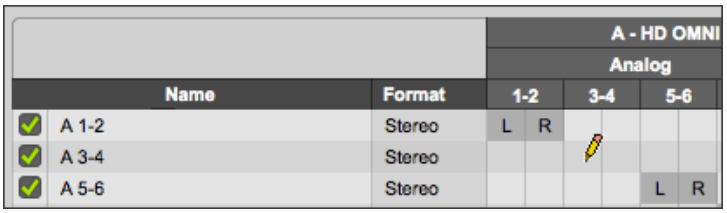
With overlapping output paths of different channel widths, if the widest path is made inactive, all other overlapped output paths will not pass audio from Pro Tools.

Assigning Paths to Hardware I/O

Paths are assigned to specific inputs, outputs, and inserts in the Grid. Paths can be assigned to physical I/O in the Grid, and can be reassigned at any time.

To assign channels:

1. Select (or create) a main path or sub-path.
2. Select the channel Format (such as **Stereo**).
3. In the row for the selected path, click in the Grid column under an audio interface and channel.



Assigning channels

Other channels for the path type, if any, fill to the right. For example, when assigning a new stereo path, clicking in the path row under output channel 1 fills both channel 1 and 2 (left to 1, right to 2).

To reassign channels in a path, see "Reassiging Paths" below.

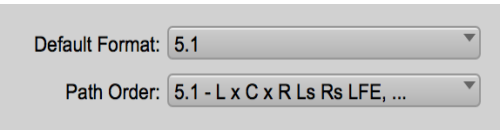
4. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.

If there are any invalid settings, you will be required to correct them before the I/O Setup will close. For more information, see "Valid Paths and Requirements" on the next page.

Assigning Paths with the Surround Mixer (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

When assigning multichannel paths, the left channel (L) is assigned first to the clicked Grid box, and remaining channels fill immediately to the right according to the default path order.

Because some multichannel mixing formats use unique track layouts, Pro Tools lets you set the default format in the I/O Setup (see "I/O Setup Options" on page 68).



Default Format and Path Order settings

Reassiging Paths

You can move the individual assignments to different channels, to reorder the path's definition (for example, changing a multichannel path to L-R-C-LFE-Ls-Rs).

To reassign channels in a path:

- Drag the channel to the new location in the Grid. Other channel assignments move (shuffle) to accommodate dragged channels.

Channel Shuffling

Moving a signal from right to left results in a shuffle of other signals after the new destination channel. Moving a signal from left to right shuffles any and all signals after the new destination channel and leaves the previous channel empty.

⚠ **Changing a path's format erases any current channel assignment.**

Sub-Paths Follow Main Paths

When a main path is reassigned, its sub-paths (if any) are reassigned automatically to maintain consistent routing. For example, reassigning a stereo path to different hardware outputs results in any of its sub-paths moving with it.

Valid Paths and Requirements

While configuring the I/O Setup, certain rules apply for path definition and channel assignment. All paths must be valid before the I/O Setup configuration can be applied.

Though it is possible to set up invalid assignments in the Channel Grid, Pro Tools will not accept an I/O Setup configuration unless all paths meet the path definition and channel assignment requirements, as follows:

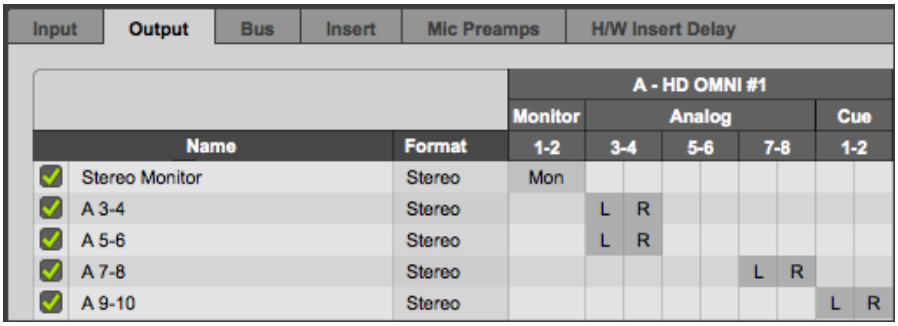
Minimum Path Definitions

All paths must have a name, be of a specific format, and have a valid I/O assignment.

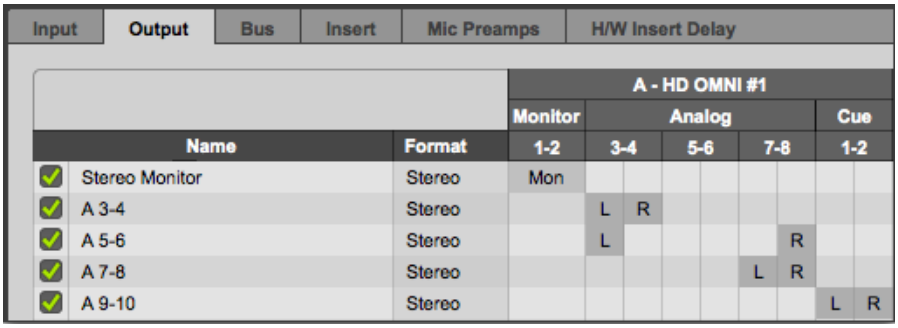
Valid Paths

Channel assignment follows certain rules regarding overlapping paths.

- There can be no partial overlaps between any two output paths.
- A newly-created output path must either be completely independent of other assignments (not assigned to any other available I/O interface/channels), or it must be a path completely contained within a larger path (for example, an LCR sub-path within a larger 5.1 path).



Valid (complete) output path



Invalid (partial) output path

Configuring buses

buses appear on the Bus page of the IO Setup. Pro Tools provides two types of buses:

- Output buses
- Internal mix buses

Output bus, internal mix bus, and Object bus settings are saved with and recalled from the session. The advantage of this is that when you take a session from one system to another, track and send assignments are maintained within the session.

Where possible, Pro Tools can automatically remap the session's output buses to the output paths of the system on which the session is being opened.

See "Session or Project Interchange and I/O Mapping" on page 96 for more information exchanging sessions between systems, and on opening sessions in lower version of Pro Tools. Output buses do not exist in Pro Tools 8.0.x and lower.

Output buses

Output buses are *mapped* (routed) to output paths, as configured on the Output page of the I/O Setup. Output paths are then assigned to the system's physical audio outputs in the I/O Setups Grid (see "Assigning Paths to Hardware I/O" on page 86).

When you create a new output path on the Output page of the I/O Setup, a new output bus of the same width is automatically created and mapped to that output path. Output buses are also created and mapped according to default settings when creating a new session or restoring defaults (see "Restoring Default Paths and Path Names" on page 82).

Physical outputs for output paths are configured on the Outputs page of the I/O Setups (see "Assigning Paths to Hardware I/O" on page 86).

Internal Mix buses

Pro Tools provides internal mix buses that can be used to route audio signal from track outputs and sends to other track inputs and plugin side-chains. Common uses for internal mix buses include effects sends and returns (such as bussing sends from audio tracks to an Auxiliary Input track for plugin effects processing) and bus recording.

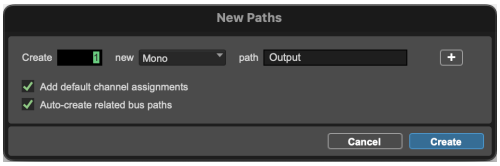
Creating and Mapping buses to Outputs

Any available bus can be mapped to any of the available output paths of the same channel width or greater. For example, a mono bus can be mapped to a mono output path, a stereo bus can be mapped to a stereo output path, and a 5.1 surround bus can be mapped to a 5.1 surround output path.

You can unmap buses from outputs at any time.

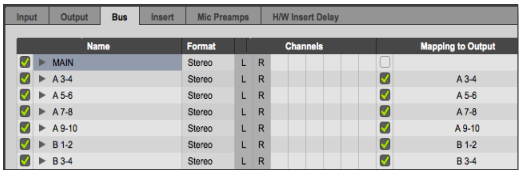
To create a bus and map it to an output path:

1. On the Bus page of the I/O Setup, click **New Path**.
2. In the New Paths dialog, specify the number of new paths you want to create, the channel width for each path, and the path name.



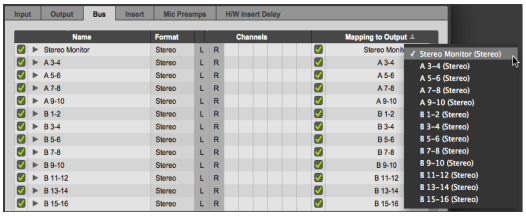
New Paths dialog

3. Click **Create** to create the new paths.



Unmapped "MAIN" output bus

4. Enable Mapping To Output for the path.
5. Select an output path from the **Mapping To Output** selector.



Mapping the "MAIN" output bus to output path "A 1–2"

Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select multiple outputs in the Mapping to Output menu in the Bus page of the I/O Setup (I/O Setup › Bus › Mapping to Output).

Any signals from tracks or sends sent to the bus are now sent to the hardware outputs assigned to the corresponding Output paths.

To map all output buses of the same format to an output path:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Mapping To Output selector and select an output path (mono or stereo).

All mapped output buses of the same format (such as stereo) are all assigned to the same output path. For example, you can assign all stereo output buses to output path A 1–2.

To map all output buses of the same format to one output path:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Shift-click to select contiguous Output buses.
   - Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select noncontiguous Output buses.
2. Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the Mapping To Output selector for one of the selected Output buses and select an output path (mono or stereo).

Only the selected mapped output buses of the same format (such as stereo) are assigned to the same output path. For example, you can assign only the selected stereo output buses to output path A 1–2.

To map all buses of the same format to unique ascending output paths (cascading):

- Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) the Mapping to Output selector of the top-most output path and select the first output path.

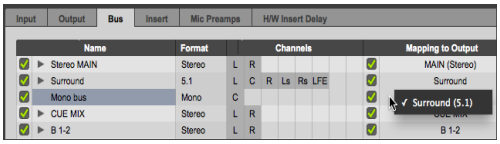
All buses of the same channel format are automatically assigned to unique output path assignments in ascending order. For example, for stereo output paths, output bus A 1–2 is assigned to output path A 1–2, A 3–4 to A 3–4, A 5–6 to A 5–6, and so on.

Mapping Mono buses to Surround Paths (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

You can map a mono bus to any channel of a surround output path. For example, route a dialogue track to the center channel of 5.1 output path. (This capability is available for all output channel widths except Stereo and Quad outputs.)

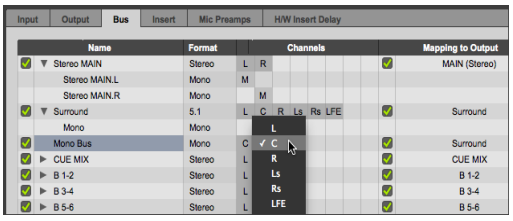
To map a mono bus to a channel of a surround output path:

1. On the Bus page of the I/O Setup, click **`New Path`**.
2. In the New Paths dialog, specify Mono channel width for the bus path, type a path name, and click **`Create`**.
3. Enable Mapping To Output for the path.
4. Select a multichannel output path from the **`Mapping To Output`** selector. The mono bus indicator changes to "C" (Center) by default, and a pop-up menu becomes available.



Selecting a multichannel output path

5. To assign another channel, click the mono bus indicator and select the channel from the pop-up menu.



Assigning a channel to a mono bus

To assign the same channel to all mono buses mapped to a multichannel output path:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the mono bus indicator and select the channel from the pop-up menu.

To assign the same channel to all selected mono buses mapped to a multichannel output path, do one of the following:

- Shift-click to select contiguous monobuses in the Name column.
- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select noncontiguous mono buses in the Name column.
- Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) a mono bus indicator and select the channel from the pop-up menu.

To assign ascending (cascading) channels to all mono buses mapped to a multichannel output:

- Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) the mono bus indicator of the top-most mono bus and select the first channel from the pop-up menu.

To assign ascending (cascading) channels to all selected mono buses mapped to a multichannel output, do one of the following:

- Shift-click to select contiguous mono buses in the Name column.
- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select noncontiguous mono buses in the Name column.
- Command-Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the mono bus indicator of the top-most mono bus and select the first channel from the pop-up menu.

Using Keyboard Modifiers When Enabling or Assigning Output buses

Pro Tools lets you use keyboard modifiers when enabling or assigning Output buses. These keyboard modifiers behave in the same way as when assigning track inputs, and track and send outputs. Being able to assign a single output bus to multiple physical outputs is useful in cases where you want to route a single source signal to two or more outputs. Rather than assigning multiple outputs on a track-by-track basis, you can do it once in the I/O Setup.

In the I/O Setup, the following keyboard modifiers apply:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to apply to all buses.
- Command-Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Shift-click (Windows) to apply only to selected Output buses.
- Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) for each additional Output path you want to assign an Output bus to.
- Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) to assign a bus to the selected Output path and all subsequent buses to the next available Output path sequentially.

Resetting buses

You can reset the number of available internal mix buses in your session to match your system's full capabilities by reverting to the default bus configuration.

Pro Tools creates 24 internal buses by default.

To revert to the default bus configuration for your system:

1. Open the I/O Setup.
2. Click the **Bus** tab in the upper left.
3. From the pop-up menu to the right of the **Default** button, select one of the following:
   - **All buses**
   - **Output buses**
   - **Internal buses**
4. Click **Default**.

   Resetting buses to the default setting will rename all buses to their default name (Bus 1–2, Bus 3–4, and so on).

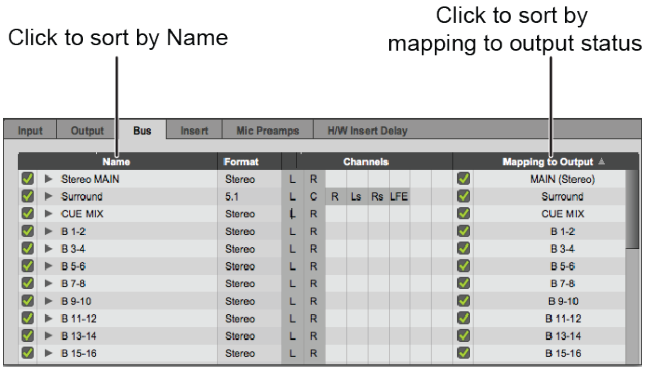
5. Click **OK** to save changes and close the I/O Setup.

Active buses

The Bus page of the I/O Setup displays the number of active internal mix buses. If the number of active buses exceeds the number of available buses, the display turns red. Delete or deactivate any active buses in excess of the available number of buses to be able close the I/O Setup and save your settings.

Sorting Bus Paths

The Bus page provide controls to sort buses by name (ascending or descending), format (ascending or descending), or by mapped to output status (ascending only).



Sorting bus paths in the I/O Setup

To sort bus paths by Name:

1. In the Bus page, click the **Name** column header.
2. Click the **Name** column header again to toggle between ascending and descending sort order.

To sort bus paths by Format:

1. In the Bus page, click the **Format** column header.
2. Click the **Format** column header again to toggle between ascending and descending sort order.

To sort bus paths by Mapping To Output status:

- In the Bus page, click the **Mapping To Output** column header.

Factory I/O Settings

Pro Tools provides factory I/O settings for stereo and surround mixing, and are automatically installed with Pro Tools. These settings provide new sessions with generic path and sub-paths for either mixing format.

Factory I/O settings are available in the I/O Settings pop-up menu in the Dashboard.

Stereo Mix Settings

This Stereo Mix setting creates the maximum number of stereo paths, as determined by the available system's I/O Setup and hardware configuration.

Using the "Stereo Mix" settings file has the same effect as clicking Default for every individual tab in I/O Settings. *"Restoring Default Paths and Path Names" on page 82*

Surround Mix Settings

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

The Surround Mix setting provides additional, surround-specific Output and Bus settings files.

See "Pro Tools Setup for Surround" on page 1658.

Downmix and Upmix Output buses to Outputs

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Pro Tools lets you "downmix" session output buses to physical output paths with channel formats of a lesser width. For example, you can listen to a 5.1 mix on a stereo system without modifying the actual session routing.

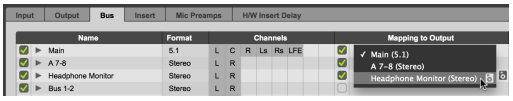
Narrower formats automatically map to wider ones with one-to-one matching connections (for example, L to L, R to R, and so on). In cases where certain channels do not match (such as mono to stereo Left and Right, or LCRS to 5.1), Pro Tools lets you upmix by distributing the mismatched channels of an output bus channel to more than one physical output channel. For example, Pro Tools let you upmix a mono output bus to both channels of a stereo output path, or the Surround path from an LCRS source to the Left Surround and Right Surround paths of a 5.1 output.

When down mixing ("fold down") or up mixing ("fan out"), Pro Tools uses the routing coefficients defined in the Mixing Preferences (see "Routing Coefficients" on page 160).

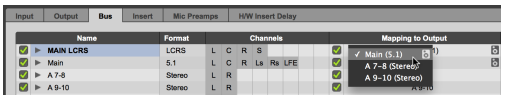
It is not recommended that you mix while monitoring the session through a downmixed or unmixed Output path. Use downmixed or upmixed monitoring for editing and other non-mixing tasks.

To assign downmix or upmix Output bus paths:

1. Open the I/O Setup (**Setup > I/O**).
2. Select the Bus page (**I/O Setup > Bus**).
3. Click the Mapping to Output column on the row for the Output bus that you want to remap to a lower or higher channel format (from the available Output paths).



Selecting a stereo Output path for a 5.1 Output Bus

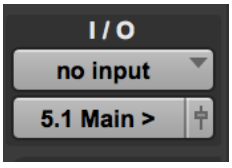


Selecting a 5.1 Output path for an LCRS Output Bus

4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close I/O Setup.

Downmix and Upmix Indicators for Output Paths

When a track or send is set to an Output path of a different channel width, the source audio is downmixed or to upmixed accordingly. The Output selector in the Mix, Edit, and Output windows displays a **>** (downmix) or a **<** (upmix) symbol respectively. This lets you easily identify any track that is downmixing or upmixing to an Output path of a different channel width.



5.1 track with Downmix indicator

I/O Settings Files

I/O settings files (.pio files) provide default path configurations for new sessions. I/O settings can be imported and exported for use with sessions shared between systems. I/O settings files are also available in the I/O Settings pop-up menu in the Dashboard.

For I/O settings files to be available in the Dashboard, I/O settings files must be saved to the IO Settings folder in the Root Settings Folder. You can change the location of the Root Settings Folder in the Operation Preferences (see "User Media and Settings Location" on page 145).

Last Used I/O Settings

If any changes are made to the I/O Setup, these changes are automatically saved to the IO Settings folder as the Last Used settings file when the I/O Setup is closed (by clicking **OK**).

Last Used settings are available in the I/O Settings pop-up menu in the Dashboard, or when importing I/O Settings in the I/O Setup.

Custom I/O Settings

Custom I/O Settings files can be created by changing I/O Setup settings (see "Customizing I/O Settings" on page 72), and then exporting the settings. These I/O settings can then be restored by importing them into a system.

This lets you save settings for different projects, import settings to reconfigure the I/O Setup, and manage path definitions and signal routing setups.

Importing I/O Settings

Pro Tools lets you import I/O Settings from session files (.ptx) I/O settings files (.pio) before or after you open a session. I/O Settings are only imported for the current page of the I/O Setup. For example, if you are viewing the Output page and import I/O Settings, only the settings for the Output page are imported. This helps to avoid overwriting your custom I/O Settings on other pages.

When you import I/O Settings, you can choose to delete any unused path definitions before importing the new paths, or leave unused path definitions intact and add the new paths to the current I/O Setup configuration.

To import I/O settings for your Pro Tools system from a Pro Tools session file:

1. Open the I/O Setup (**Setup > I/O**).
2. Select the tab for the page where you want to import settings.
3. Click **Import Settings**.

   Enable the Apply to all tabs option or press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while clicking Import Settings to overwrite I/O Settings in all pages with the settings imported from a session file.
4. In the Open dialog, navigate to and select the session or I/O settings file you want.
5. Click **Open**.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close I/O Setup.

You can also import I/O paths and path names, as well as other session data, from a different session by using the Import Session Data command (File › Import › Session Data). For information, see "Importing Session Data" on page 670.

To import I/O Settings:

1. Click the tab for the page of the I/O Setup for which you want to import settings.
2. Click **Import Settings**.

   Enable the Apply to all tabs option or press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while clicking Import Settings to overwrite I/O Settings in all pages with the settings imported from a session file or I/O settings file.

3. Select an I/O settings file (.pio) or a Pro Tools session file (.ptx) in the Import Settings dialog and click **Import**.
4. A dialog appears asking whether you want to delete existing paths. Do one of the following:
   - Click **Yes** to remove any unused paths and add the imported paths to the current I/O Setup configuration.
   - Click **No** to add the imported paths to the current I/O Setup configuration.

If the import results in overlapping paths, the new paths will appear in the I/O Setup as Inactive. See "Making Paths Active or Inactive" on page 85.

After importing I/O Settings, you can then reassign path routing definitions in the I/O Setup by remapping, renaming, and deleting paths. "Pro Tools Software Signal Paths" on page 56

Exporting I/O Settings

When you export I/O settings, all pages of the I/O Setup are exported.

To export and save an I/O Setup configuration as a custom I/O Settings file:

1. Configure the I/O Setup settings.
2. Click **Export Settings**.
3. Name and save the settings file. The settings file is appended with ".pio" to distinguish it as an I/O settings file.

To start sessions with a blank or empty I/O Setup, you can create and export an I/O Settings file in which all definitions have been deleted.

Restore from Session

Pro Tools provides a **Restore from Session** button that only affects the currently viewed page in I/O Setup. For example, if you are viewing the Output page, only the Output settings are overwritten by the settings saved with the session.

To restore I/O settings from the session:

1. Open the I/O Setup (**Setup > I/O**).
2. Select the tab for the page that you want to restore from the session.
3. Click **Restore from Session**.

   Enable the Apply to all tabs option or press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while clicking Restore from Session to restore settings for all I/O Setup pages from the session.

4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close I/O Setup.

Session or Project Interchange and I/O Mapping

I/O Setup mappings are saved both with the last used .pio file (Pro Tools I/O settings file) and the session or project. When opening a session or project on a system that has a different I/O Setup, Pro Tools follows these rules to ensure the best possible re-mapping of the session's or project's I/O Setup to the new system:

- Output buses are mapped to system Output paths by unique ID if possible.
- Pro Tools always maps the Monitor Path of the session or project to the Monitor path of the current system. (If Monitor subpaths exist in the session, Pro Tools uses the best matching format for the system Monitor subpaths.)
- Otherwise, Output buses that are mapped to system Output paths by name and format if there is an exact match.

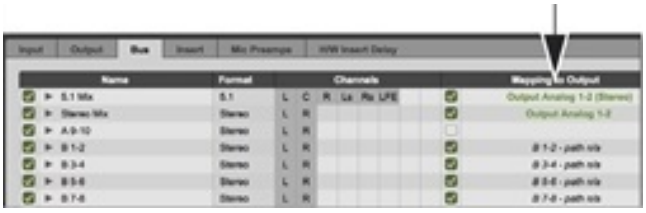
If there is no match between Output buses and system Output paths, you can manually remap Output buses. Pro Tools uses the manually remapped unique ID the next time the session is opened on that system.

After configuring the I/O Setup on any given system for a session or project, the settings are retained with the session file or the project.

You can recall the I/O settings saved with the session or project and overwrite the system settings (see "Restore from Session" on the previous page).

Indication of Remapping in the Bus Page

Where the system Output path name or format has changed, session Output buses that are successfully remapped are displayed in green.



Remapped Output buses displayed in green

Additionally, a Previous Output Mappings column appears to the right of the Output Mappings column. This lets you take note of the output mappings that the session used the last time it was saved.



Previous Output Mappings column

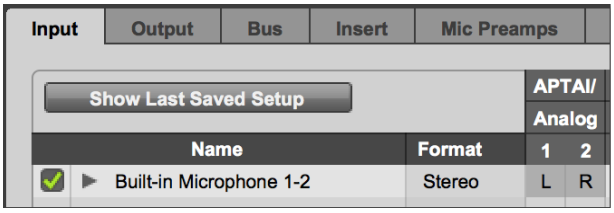
Once you save the session, the Output mapping changes from green to black and is saved both with the system and with the session.

Show Last Saved or Current Setup

When opening a session that was saved with a different I/O Setup configuration for either hardware inputs or outputs, Pro Tools lets you switch between the I/O Setup last saved with the session and the current system I/O Setup. This lets you take note of the hardware Input and Output configuration of the I/O Setup saved with the session.

Both the **Input** and **Output** pages of the I/O Setup window provide the **Show Last Saved Setup** button. When the last saved I/O setup is shown, the button is highlighted.

Once you save the session, the **Show Last Saved Setup** button is grayed out.



Show Last Saved Setup button in the Input page

When showing the I/O Setup last saved with the session, any unavailable hardware Inputs or Outputs are displayed in italics.



Unavailable hardware Input shown in italics

Additionally, when showing the I/O Setup last saved with the session, the Monitor Path, Audition Path, Output Meter Path, and AFL/PFL Path settings that were saved with the session are shown grayed out.

To show the last saved I/O settings:

1. Open the I/O Setup (**Setup > I/O**).
2. Click either the **Input** or **Output** tab.
3. Click the **Show Last Saved Setup** button (the button highlights).

You can restore the I/O settings saved with the session and overwrite the system settings (see "Restore from Session" on page 95).

When viewing the I/O Setup last saved with the session, the OK option is not available for saving and closing I/O Setup.

To show the current I/O settings:

1. If not already open, open the I/O Setup (**Setup > I/O**).
2. Click either the **Input** or **Output** tab.
3. Click the highlighted **Show Last Saved Setup** button (the button becomes unhighlighted).

I/O Settings and the Playback Engine

When you change the Playback Engine (for example, from HDX to Built-in) Pro Tools automatically creates and recalls I/O Settings (.pio) files based on the Playback Engine. The first time that you use a new Playback Engine, Pro Tools uses the stereo defaults for the selected Playback Engine and corresponding hardware. Thus, even on the same computer, Pro Tools treats different Playback Engines as if they are

different systems. This facilitates changing the Playback Engine without having to manually remap Output buses in the I/O Setup. These I/O Settings files are named after the corresponding Playback Engine and are saved both on the system and with the session.

Pro Tools remembers the individual I/O settings for your system for each Playback Engine available to your system. This includes all Inputs, Output, Insert, and Hardware Delay settings, and also settings such as the selected Monitor and Audition paths. The session's output bus mappings are stored in the I/O Settings of the selected Playback Engine, ensuring that you can hear the main mix from the session from any Playback Engine.

Organize Track I/O Menus By Preference

Pro Tools lets you organize track I/O Menus by Type, Width, or both Type and Width.



Track IO menus organized by both Type and Width

To specify the organization of Track I/O Menus:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Select the **Display** tab.
3. Select one of the following options from the **Organize Track IO Menus By** selector:
   - Type

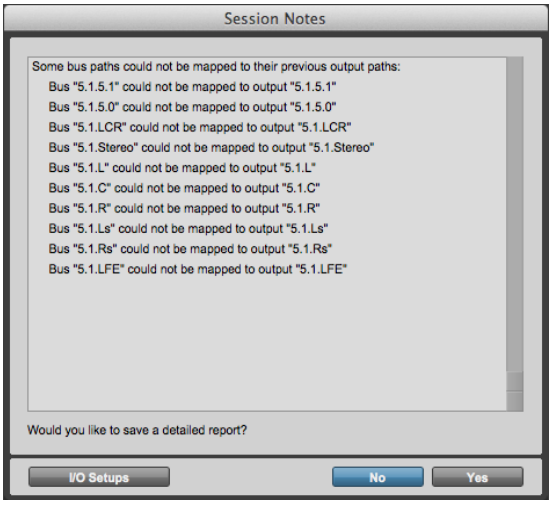
     Displays only the I/O Type (Interface or Bus) as I/O categories in Track I/O menus.
   - Width

     Displays only the I/O Channel Width (such as stereo or 5.1) as I/O categories in Track I/O menus.
   - Type and Width

     Displays both Type and Width as I/O categories in Track I/O menus.
4. Click **OK**.

I/O Setup in Session Notes

When opening a Pro Tools session or project, the Session Notes dialog provides a complete list of any mismatched Output bus mappings. In addition to being able to see this information and save it to a text file, you can also open the I/O Setup from the Session Notes dialog to resolve any unmapped Output buses.



Session Notes with unmapped Output buses

To open the I/O Setup from the Session Notes dialog:

1. If the Session Notes dialog reports unmapped bus paths, click the **I/O Setup** button.
2. In I/O Setup, reassign any unmapped bus paths as necessary.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close I/O Setup.

Pro Tools Session Templates and I/O Settings

Pro Tools session templates include the I/O Settings of the system on which the template was created. The I/O Settings selector is available when creating a new session from a template. This setting determines the configuration of the physical inputs and outputs of your system. The new session uses the buses from the selected template, but these buses are automatically mapped to the physical outputs of the system (the selected Playback Engine).

Aux I/O

(macOS Big Sur or Later Only)

Pro Tools on macOS lets you use Aux I/O to extend your Pro Tools I/O capabilities through Core Audio routing on macOS (Big Sur or later only). Choose any device that you prefer to use as your main Playback Engine, such as HDX (Hybrid Engine only) or Pro Tools | Carbon, and then add individual Aux I/O input and/or output devices in the I/O Setup (such as Zoom or your favorite sound library application). Each enabled device appears in I/O Setup as an additional interface that can be assigned to input or output of a track.

Aux I/O Available Channels by tier

Tier	Ultimate	Studio	Artist
Inputs	unlimited	unlimited	4
Outputs	unlimited	32*	4

*Dolby Audio Bridge allows 130 with an active connection to the Dolby Atmos Renderer.

Aux I/O is not supported with Pro Tools Intro and is not available with Classic HDX (for technical reasons).

Use Aux I/O with Pro Tools Audio Bridge to stream audio between Pro Tools and another DAW (such as Ableton Live) or virtual instrument and effects hosts like Apple MainStage, or use Aux I/O to stream audio out to Zoom or Microsoft Teams for production review.

For more information about Pro Tools Audio Bridge in AMS, see "Pro Tools Audio Bridge" on page 200.

When streaming audio between Pro Tools and other audio applications and hardware, it is strongly recommended that they all use the same sample rate in order to avoid performance issues.

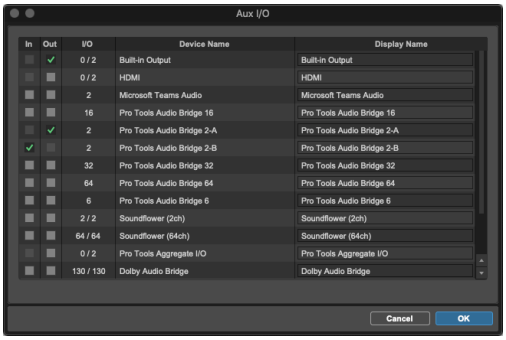
While Aux I/O can use any Core Audio device on the system, it is recommended that you use Pro Tools Audio Bridge devices for optimal performance. Aux I/O devices should not be used interchangeably with your main playback engine as it incurs greater, non-deterministic latency (which means latency can change between playback and recording passes). Aux I/O is meant to be used as a utility to route signal through Pro Tools, but should not be relied upon for critical audio tasks.

Setting Up Aux I/O

The Input and Output pages of the Pro Tools I/O Setup window let you add any Core Audio device for use with Pro Tools as Aux I/O in addition to the I/O of the selected Playback Engine.

To add Core Audio devices as additional Auxiliary Inputs or Outputs to the Pro Tools mixer:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. On either the **Input** or **Output** page of the I/O Setup, click the **Aux I/O** button.
3. In the Aux I/O dialog, select the In or Out option for the Core Audio devices that you want to use as additional Input and Output Aux I/O with Pro Tools.



Aux I/O dialog

Use Pro Tools Audio Bridge as the audio connection between Pro Tools and any other application to avoid clicks pops, errors, or other artifacts.

4. If desired, you can rename Aux I/O input and output devices in the **Display Name** column.
5. After you have selected In and Out for any Core Audio devices you want to use as Aux I/O with Pro Tools, click **OK**.
6. Click **OK** to close the I/O Setup window.

Any Core Audio devices selected as In or Out Aux I/O devices can be selected as the input or output for audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Instrument, and Master Fader tracks, or as Outputs for Sends.

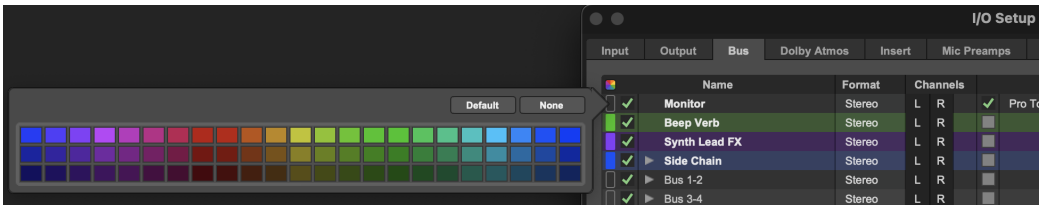
In the Playback Engine (Setup › Playback Engine), enable the Aux I/O option under Ignore Errors During Playback/Record to ensure uninterrupted playback with Aux I/O. However, this may result in pops and clicks during playback.

Path Colors

I/O Setup lets you color code Input, Output, Bus, Dolby Atmos (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only), and Insert paths. Color coded paths display their assigned color on Input, Output, Send, and Insert Name plates in the Edit, Mix, Send, and Output windows.

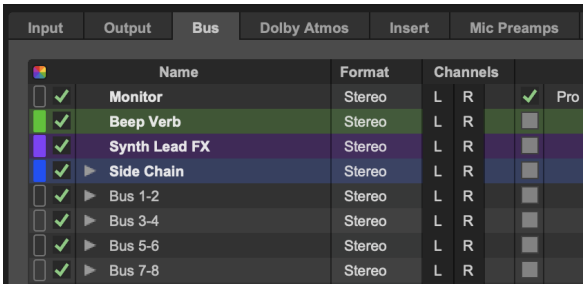
To color code an I/O path:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Select the I/O Setup page you want (**Input**, **Output**, **Bus**, **Dolby Atmos**, or **Insert**).
3. Click the Color selector to the left of the path to which you want to assign a color.



Selecting an I/O path color

4. Click the desired color on the Color palette to assign the color you want to the path.



Bus paths with selected colors

You can assign a single color to multiple selected paths with a single click in the Color palette.

5. Configure the rest of the I/O Setup as desired.
6. Click **OK**.

Assigned path colors are saved as part of the path and included with the I/O Settings in sessions and .pio files. Paths are stored and recalled from different places depending on the path type.



Mix window with color coded output, input, and bus paths



Edit window I/O and Insert view with color coded I/O paths

Assigned path colors are inherited by related paths (as long as the related paths are set to the default color, which they are by default). For example, assigning a color to an Output path is automatically inherited by its corresponding assigned output bus path (unless the bus path is uniquely assigned a different color).

If you color code Dolby Atmos groups and assign a group to a path in the Dolby Atmos tab, it also colors the path. If that path is mapped to an output when using an external renderer, that output inherits the Group color as well.

Color with Multiple Output/Send Assignments

Pro Tools lets you assign track outputs and sends to more than one path. If these paths are colored differently, all colors are shown.



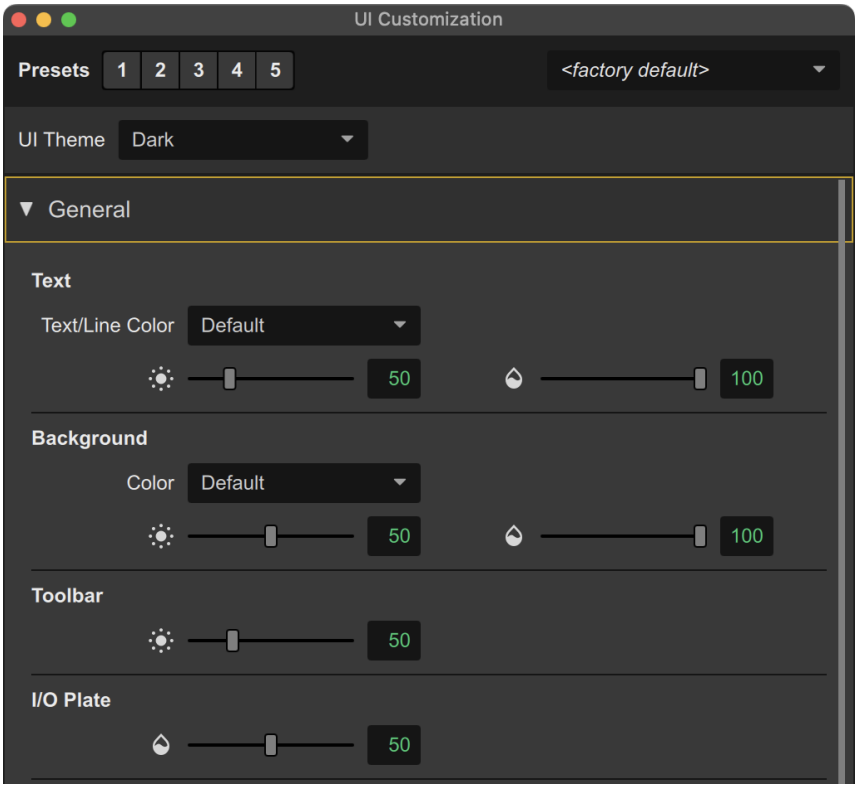
Mix window I/O view with multi-color coded I/O paths

I/O Plate Color Saturation

The Color Palette window provides an **`I/O Plate Saturation`** control that lets you adjust the color saturation for I/O paths on Input, Output, Send, and Insert Name plates in the Edit, Mix, Send, and Output windows.

To adjust the color saturation of color-coded I/O paths for I/O name plates:

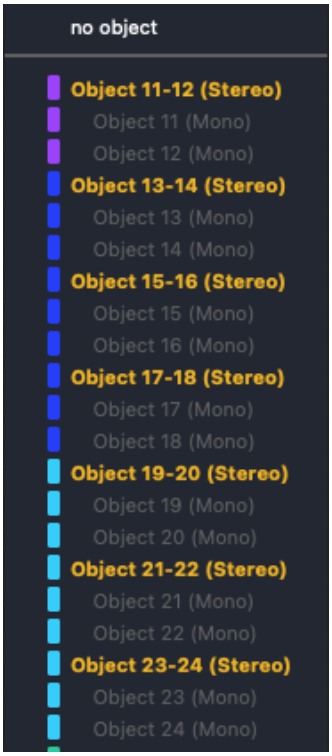
1. Choose **`Window > UI Customization`**.
2. Reveal **`General`**.



3. Close the UI Customization window.

Color in I/O Menus

I/O menus show a color swatch next to each path in the menu when a path in the I/O Setup is assigned a color. This includes Input, Output, Send, H/W Insert, Side-Chain, Object, and Dolby Atmos Group menus.



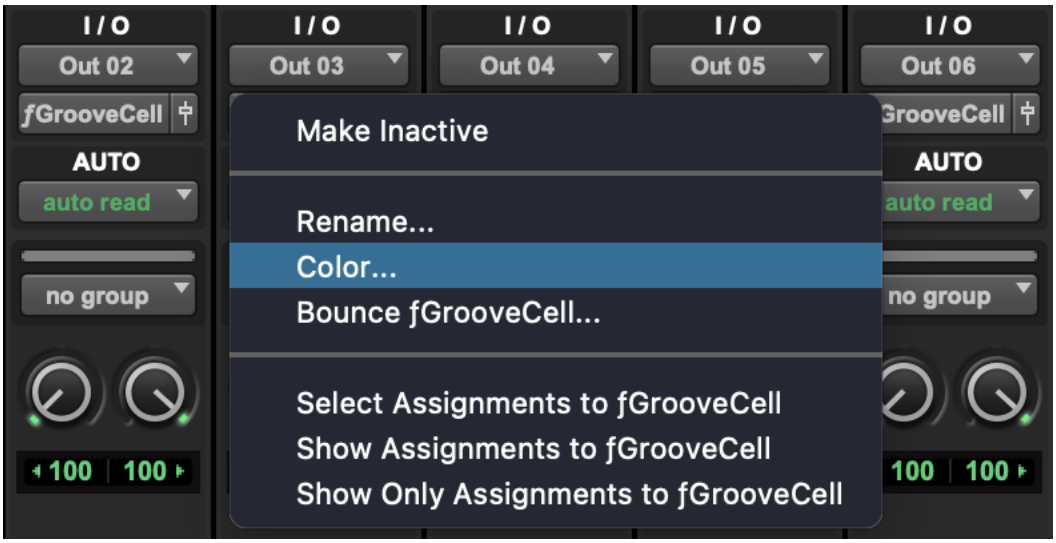
Color Quick Assign

Pro Tools lets you quickly assign color coding to multiple related elements of track I/O plates (Input, Output, Send, H/W Insert, Side-Chain, Object, and Dolby Atmos Group)

- Marker rulers and lanes
- Marker color in the Memory Locations window
- Track name plate
- Clips

There are two new ways to color various items in Pro Tools:

- **Context menus**—If you see a color, right-click it and choose **Color**. This either opens a color menu, or the color palette, depending on the item that you select.



- **Key modifier-click**—Control-right-click (macOS) or Start-right-click (Windows) to get to the same color picker that you would otherwise choose in the context menu.



Additional I/O Color Coding Behaviors

Color coding in the I/O Setup and I/O selectors in the Edit and Mix windows also observe the following behaviors:

- Outputs reflect the Output path color instead of the Bus path color if there is a conflict between the two.
- Colors do not show as filled on paths unless they are explicitly colored. Rows in the I/O Setup still inherit the color from other connections regardless.
- Dolby Atmos Groups and Output mappings show their assigned color in their specific cells if it is different from the color of the Bus or Dolby Atmos path.

7 System Setup

Starting Up or Shutting Down Your System

To ensure that the components of your Pro Tools system communicate properly with each other, you need to start them in a particular order.

Start up your Pro Tools system in this order:

1. Make sure all your equipment (including your computer) is off.
2. Lower the volume of all output devices in your system.
3. For systems with an expansion chassis, turn on the chassis.
4. Turn on any control surfaces (such as S1 or S6).
5. Turn on any MIDI interfaces, MIDI devices, or synchronization peripherals.
6. Do one of the following, depending on your Pro Tools system:
   - For HDX and HD Native systems, with the volume of all output devices lowered, turn on your audio interfaces (such as HD OMNI). Wait at least fifteen seconds for your system hardware to initialize.
   - For Pro Tools systems with hardware requiring external power (like Pro Tools | Carbon), with the volume of all output devices lowered, turn on the hardware.
7. Turn on your computer.
8. Launch Pro Tools.

Shut down your Pro Tools system in this order:

1. Quit Pro Tools by choosing Pro Tools › Quit (Mac) or File › Exit (Windows).
2. Turn off or lower the volume of all output devices in your system.
3. Turn off your computer.
4. Do one of the following depending on your Pro Tools system:
   - For HDX and HD Native systems, turn off your Pro Tools audio interfaces.
   - For Pro Tools systems with hardware requiring external power (like Pro Tools | Carbon), turn off the hardware.
5. For systems with an expansion chassis, turn off the chassis.
6. Turn off any MIDI interfaces, MIDI devices, or synchronization peripherals.
7. Turn off any control surfaces (such as S1 or S6).

Running DigiTest

Before you use Pro Tools, you may want to run the DigiTest™ diagnostic application to ensure that all HDX cards in the system are recognized, installed in the proper order, and have valid connections. You can also use DigiTest to validate your HD Native PCIe card or Thunderbolt interface. For more information, see the *HDX Card Installation Guide*.

Configuring the Playback Engine

When you first launch Pro Tools, you are now prompted to select the Playback Engine for your system. Similarly, if the previously selected Playback Engine is unavailable, you are prompted to select a new Playback Engine the next time you launch Pro Tools.

To select the Playback Engine for your system the first time you launch Pro Tools:

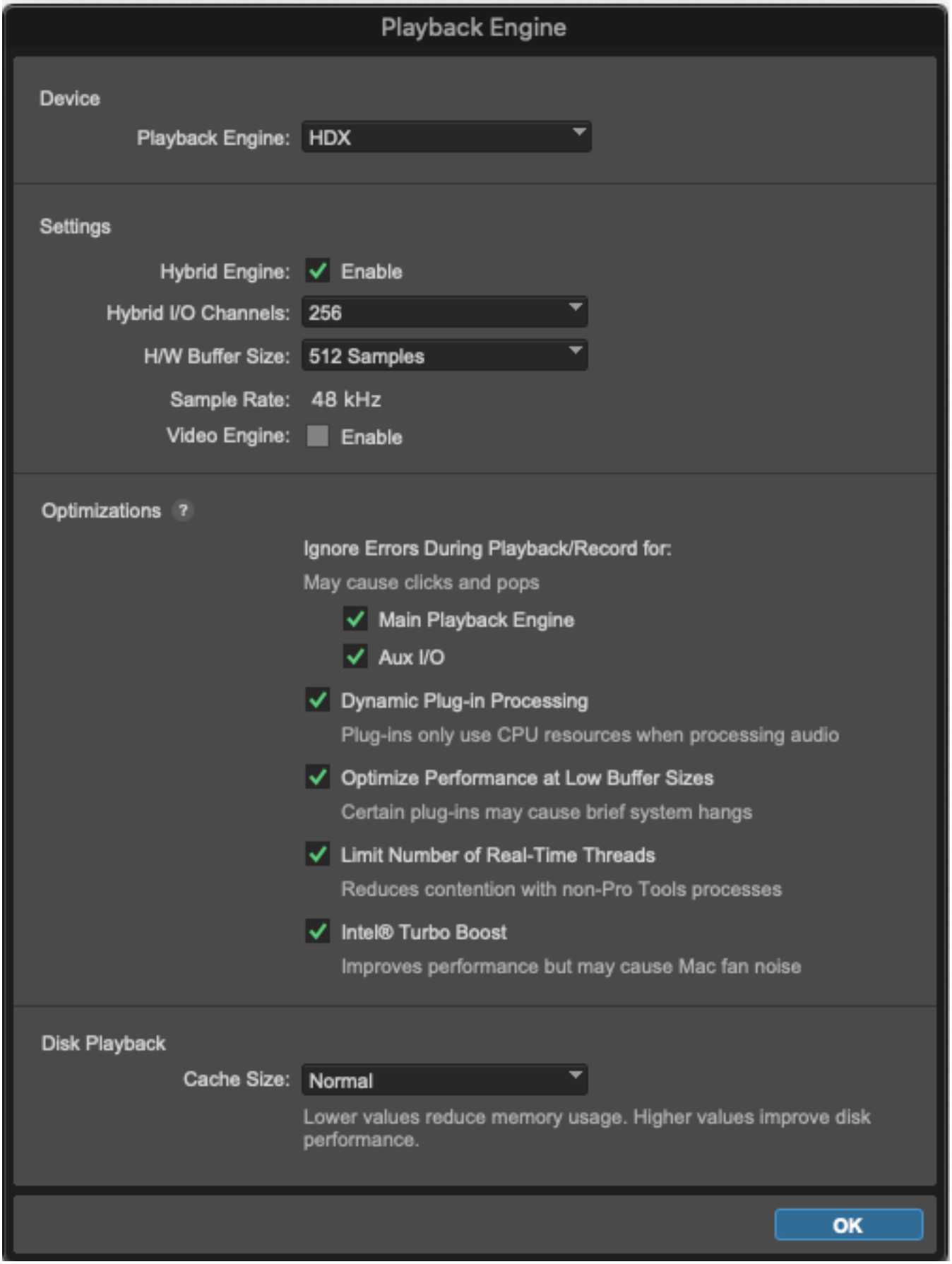
1. Install and then launch Pro Tools.
2. When prompted to select the audio device (Playback Engine) for you system, click **Next**.
3. In the resulting Playback Engine dialog, select the desired Playback Engine for your system.
4. Click **OK**.

Pro Tools launches using the selected Playback Engine for audio input and output.

Playback Engine

Pro Tools lets you adjust the performance of your system by changing *system settings* that affect its capacity for processing, playback, and recording. These system settings are available in the Playback Engine (**Setup > Playback Engine**).

In most cases, the default settings for your system provide optimum performance, but you may want to adjust them to accommodate large or processing-intensive Pro Tools sessions.



Playback Engine for an HDX system, Hybrid Engine enabled (Mac)

To configure the Pro Tools Playback Engine:

1. Choose **Setup > Playback Engine**.
2. From the **Playback Engine** selector, select your audio interface:
    a. For HDX systems, use **HDX** for the **Playback Engine**. Enable the **Hybrid Engine** option for mixed HDX DSP and host CPU processing for the mixer. Disable the **Hybrid Engine** option to use only HDX DSP for the mixer (HDX Classic).
    b. For HD Native systems, use the default setting of **HD Native**.
    c. For supported Avid audio interfaces (such as Mbox), select the name of the corresponding interface to use the Avid Audio Engine for Pro Tools.
    d. For Pro Tools | Carbon (Mac only), select **Pro Tools | Carbon** (configured with Core Audio AVB in AMS). For more information, see the *Pro Tools | Carbon Guide*.
    e. For third-party audio interfaces with compatible Core Audio (Mac) or ASIO (Windows), select the name of the corresponding Core Audio (Mac) or ASIO (Windows) compatible audio interface.
    f. On Mac systems, if you are using built-in audio, select any of the available built-in options for playback or select **Pro Tools Aggregate I/O** for simultaneous input and output with the built-in I/O hardware options. (You can create and configure Aggregate I/O Core Audio devices in AMS.)
    g. On Windows systems, select **ASIO4ALL v2** or **Windows Audio Device** to use the built-in audio.
3. Configure the remaining Playback Engine settings as desired.
4. Click **OK**.

Device Section

Playback Engine

In the Playback Engine dialog, Pro Tools lets you select the audio engine for use with your audio interface. The available options are determined by which audio interfaces are connected and have compatible drivers installed.

Changing the **Playback Engine** setting can be useful if you have multiple audio interfaces connected to your computer with different routing configurations in your studio, or if you want to prepare a session for use with a specific interface on a different system (for example, you might want to prepare a session created on your HDX system for use with the built-in audio on your Mac laptop).

When changing engines with a Pro Tools session open, Pro Tools closes and reopens the session to initialize the new engine.

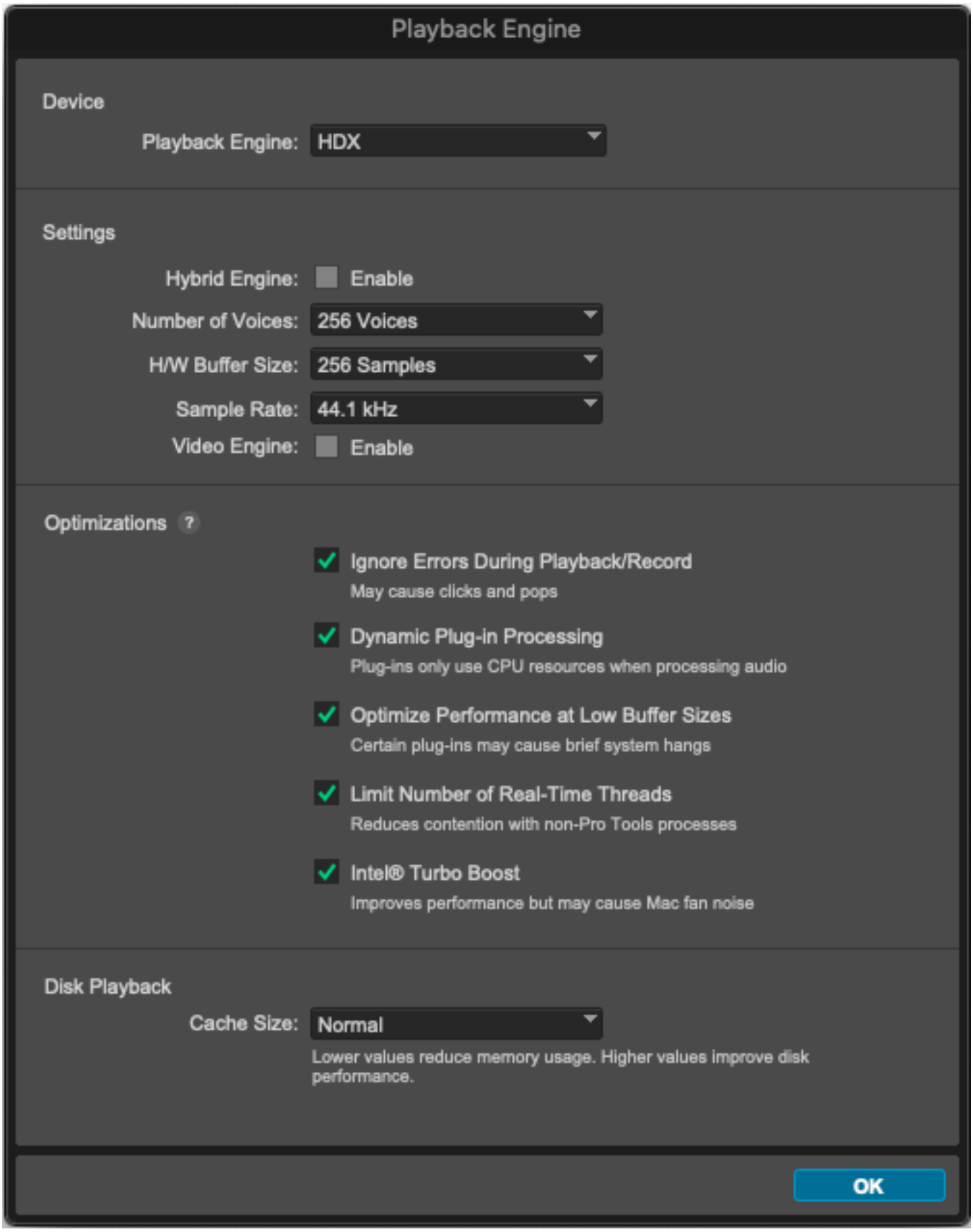
On HDX systems, changing engines, or toggling the Hybrid Engine on or off, requires that you quit and relaunch Pro Tools for the new setting to take effect.

When changing engines on any Pro Tools system, you may need to reset the default I/O settings to match the selected audio interface.

HDX Classic versus HDX Hybrid Engine

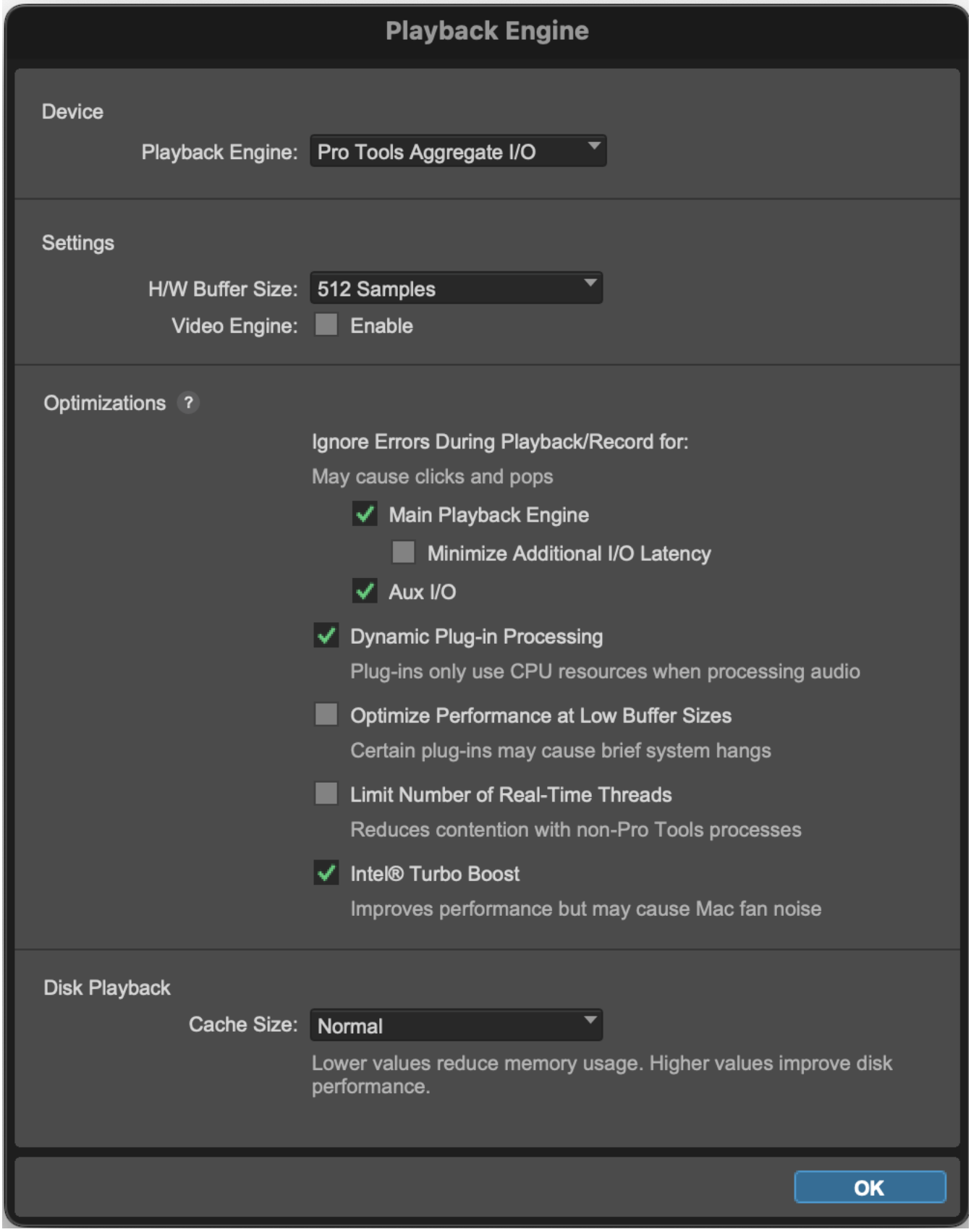
(HDX Systems Only) HDX systems running with the Hybrid Engine disabled use dedicated DSP on the HDX cards installed in your system for playback and recording, plugin processing, and mixer configurations. This is referred to as *HDX Classic* to differentiate it from the HDX Hybrid Engine. With HDX Classic the number of available voices for playback and recording is limited by the number of HDX cards installed in your system.

HDX systems running on the HDX Hybrid Engine on the other hand, use CPU host processing for plugin processing, mixer configurations, and playback with high voice counts, and reserve HDX DSP for track-by-track plugin processing and mixer configuration in DSP Mode for ultra-low latency record and input monitoring.



Pro Tools Aggregate I/O

(Mac Only) On Mac systems using Core Audio, you can use Pro Tools with the built-in audio inputs and outputs on your Mac by selecting any of the available built-in inputs and outputs, or by selecting the **Pro Tools Aggregate I/O** option for using a combination of built-in inputs and outputs simultaneously (for recording and monitoring).



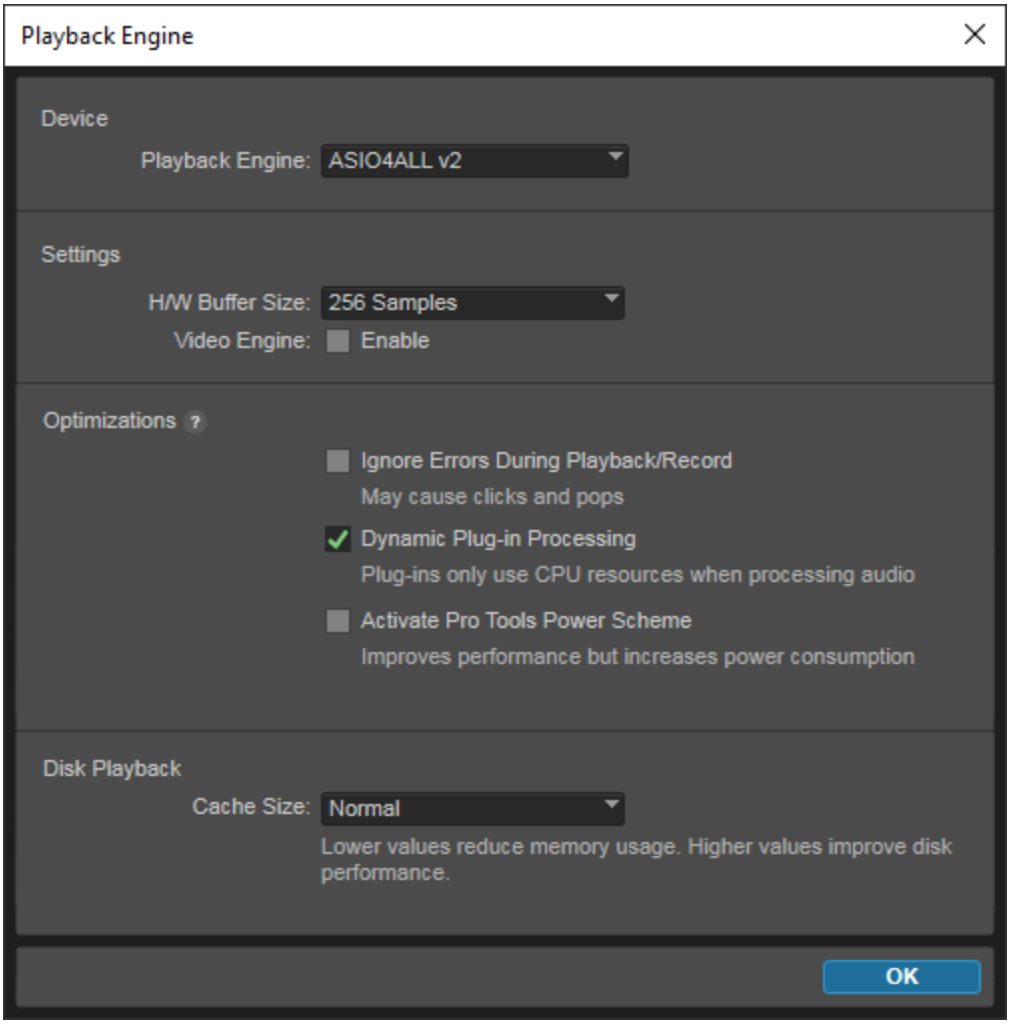
Playback Engine using Pro Tools Aggregate I/O (Mac)

Configure the Input and Output options for Pro Tools Aggregate I/O in the Mac Audio MIDI Setup (AMS), which can be accessed from the Pro Tools Hardware Setup.

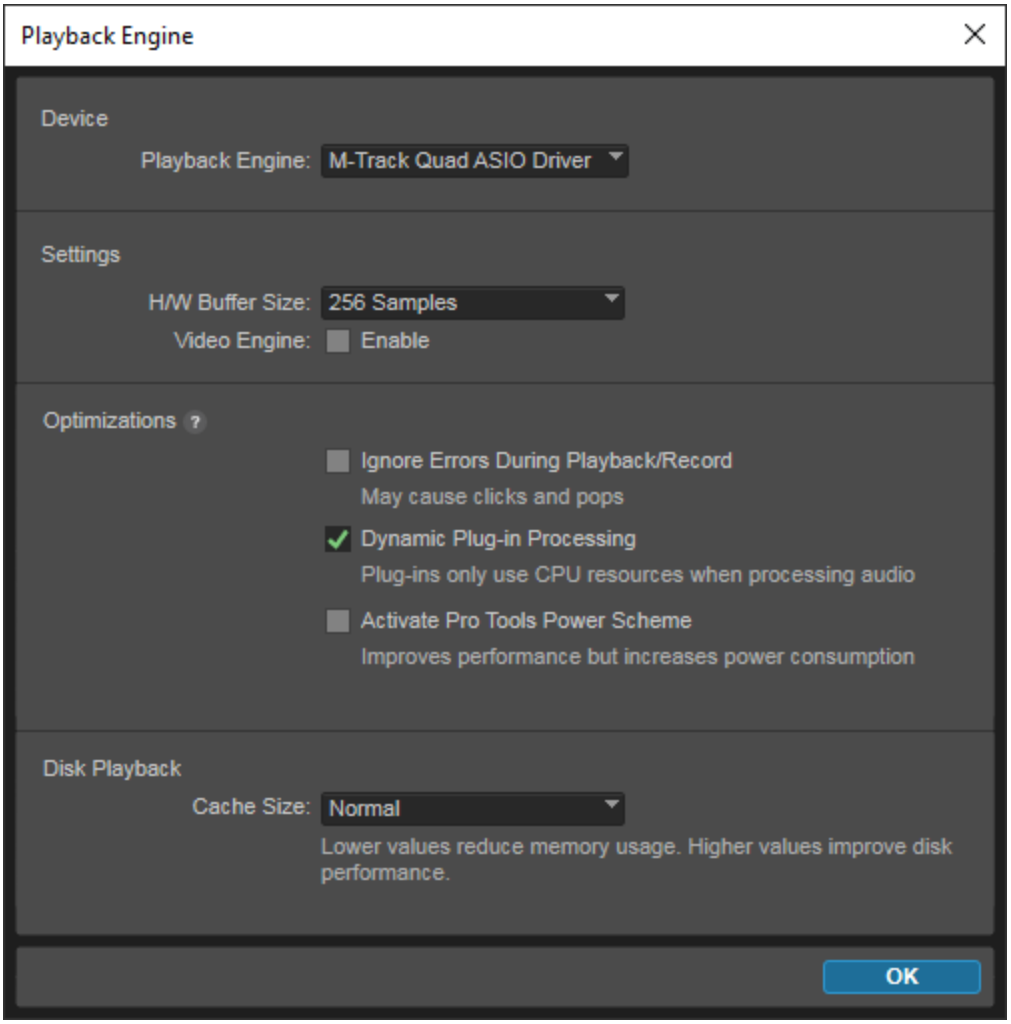
If you need simultaneous input (recording) and output (playback and monitoring) with Pro Tools using the built-in audio options on Mac, use the Pro Tools Aggregate I/O option. If you only need to play back audio for editing and mixing, select the appropriate built-in audio output option.

ASIO4ALL v2

(Windows Only) On Windows systems, select the **`ASIO4ALL v2`** option to use the built-in WDM sound card (for recording and monitoring). The ASIO4ALL v2 driver is installed automatically with Pro Tools. You can configure the ASIO4ALL settings in its Setup App (choose **`Settings > Hardware`** and click **`Launch Setup App`**).



Playback Engine using ASIO4all (Windows)



Playback Engine with ASIO device on Windows

If you are using a third-party audio interface on Windows, it is recommended that you use the ASIO driver provided by the manufacturer rather than ASIO4ALL or WASAPI if one is available.

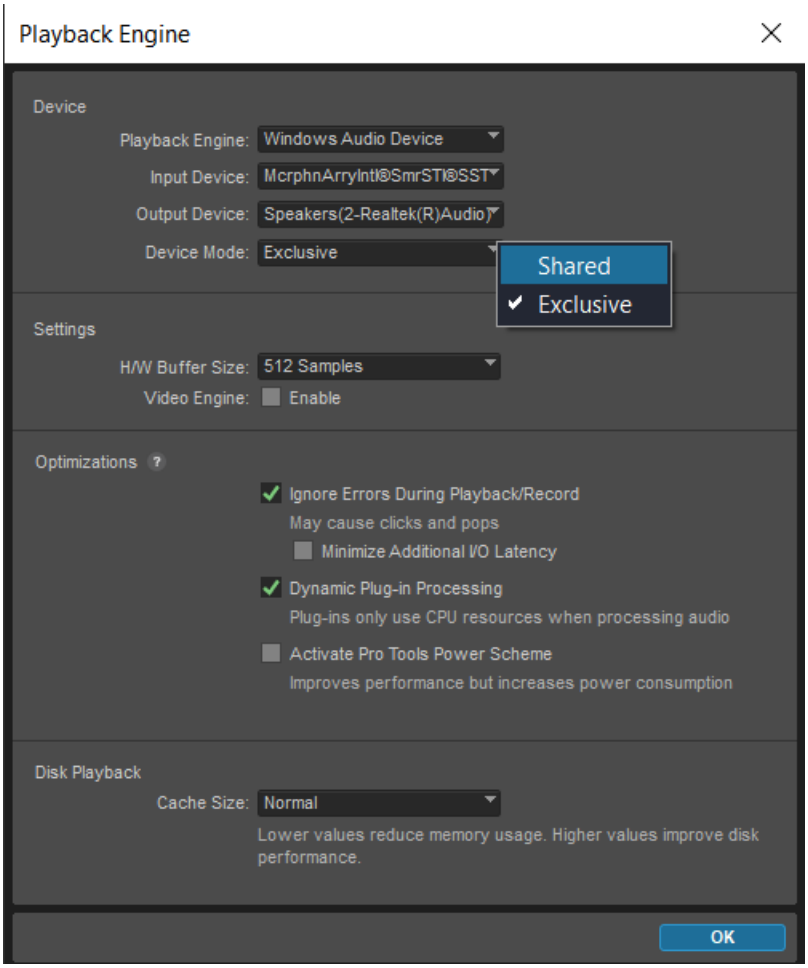
Windows Audio Device

(WASAPI) (Windows Only) On Windows systems, select the **`Windows Audio Device`** option to use the built-in audio, or any other supported 3rd-party Windows Audio Device.

Pro Tools can use WASAPI in **`Exclusive`** mode or in **`Shared`** mode:

- Exclusive mode provides the lowest latency and the best experience for professional audio work. It grants Pro Tools exclusive control over the audio device and disallows other applications from using it. Depending on the selected audio device, Exclusive mode may also support a wider choice of sample rate settings that Shared mode.
- Shared mode lets other applications use the audio device simultaneously with Pro Tools, but with greater latency and restricted sample rate options compared to Exclusive mode. Shared mode is useful for multitasking and basic usage. Also note that in Shared mode, input and output devices may have different periods, which may result in errors. If you do experience encounter errors, switch

to Exclusive mode.



Playback Engine using Windows Audio Device

For optimal performance, make sure your input and output devices are set to the same sample rate in Windows settings.

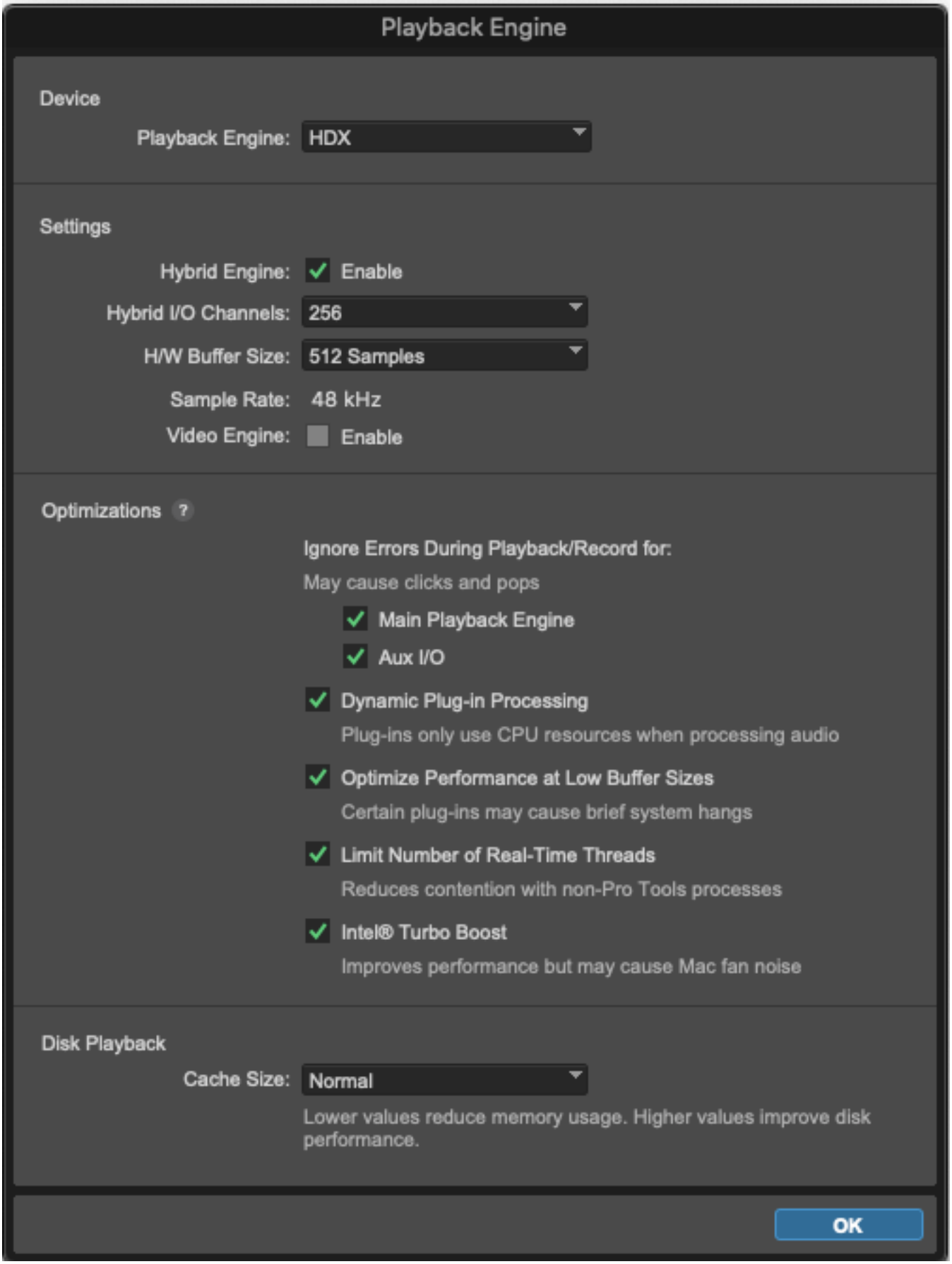
In order to reduce demand on the CPU and to provide optimal performance when using a WASAPI device with Pro Tools, audio streaming with that device is restricted to Pro Tools and is unavailable for the system or any other audio application.

Settings Section

The Settings section of the Playback Engine dialog provides different settings and options depending on the device selected as the **Playback Engine**.

HDX Hybrid Engine

(HDX Systems Only) The HDX Hybrid Engine uses both HDX DSP and host CPU processing to maximize Pro Tools performance. With the **Hybrid Engine** enabled, the mixer runs on the host CPU, and HDX DSP is reserved for DSP plugin processing and track-based DSP Mode. The **Hybrid Engine** provides up to 2,048 voices (at all sample rates)—compared to a maximum of 256 voices per HDX card with the **Hybrid Engine** disabled (HDX Classic).



Playback Engine using the HDX Hybrid Engine

With the HDX Hybrid Engine enabled, you can enable or disable DSP Mode on a track-by-track basis for ultra-low latency input and record monitoring. DSP Mode is only supported with the HDX Hybrid Engine or Pro Tools | Carbon.

For information about DSP Mode, see "DSP Mode" on page 1555.

Using the HDX Hybrid Engine can also reduce system delays incurred by mixed DSP and Native plugin processing, which directly improves the fader and knob responsiveness when using a control surface.

Number of Voices

(HDX Classic Only) On HDX systems with the **Hybrid Engine** disabled (HDX Classic), the **Number of Voices** setting in the Playback Engine lets you set the number of available voices. Depending on the session sample rate and the number of HDX cards in your system, there are different choices for voice count.

For voice limits with different HDX systems, see "Playback, Recording, and Voice Limits with Pro Tools Ultimate Software" on page 47.

Hybrid I/O Channels

(HDX Hybrid Engine Only) On HDX systems with the **Hybrid Engine** enabled, the **Hybrid I/O Channels** setting lets you specify the number of Input and Output channels available for ultra-low latency monitoring with tracks in DSP Mode. Each HDX card installed in your system supports 256 Hybrid I/O channels at 48 kHz, 128 at 96 kHz, and 64 at 192 kHz. As a general rule, select the lowest number of Hybrid I/O channels you need.

Hardware Buffer Size

The Hardware Buffer Size (**H/W Buffer Size**) controls the size of the buffer used to handle host-based processing tasks such as processing with Native plugins.

- Lower Hardware Buffer Size settings are useful for improving latency issues in certain recording situations or for improving certain system performance problems.
- On all Pro Tools systems, lower settings reduce MIDI-to-audio latency (such as when playing a virtual instrument live and monitoring the instrument's output). Lower settings can also improve screen response or the accuracy of plugin and mute automation data.
- On host-based Pro Tools systems, lower settings reduce all input-to-output monitoring latency on any record-armed tracks or Auxiliary Input tracks with live inputs.
- On HDX systems, lower settings reduce monitoring latency that occurs on tracks that have one or more Native plugins. Lower settings can also improve the accuracy of MIDI track timing on systems without a MIDI interface that supports time stamping. Lower settings also improve MIDI track timing on tracks using MIDI virtual instruments that do not support time stamping.
- Higher Hardware Buffer Size settings are useful when playing back and mixing sessions that use Native plugins. They can also be useful to reduce errors on machines that require a higher buffer size.

Sample Rate

(HDX Systems Only) The **Sample Rate** setting in the Playback Engine shows the default sample rate used when you create a new session. If a session is open, the current session sample rate is displayed, but cannot be changed. If no session is open, you can set the default sample rate for new sessions.

Voices

(Pro Tools Ultimate on non-HDX Systems or HDX Hybrid Engine Only) Displays the maximum number of voices available (2,048).

Video Engine

Enable the **Video Engine** option to import, edit, and playback a wide range of Avid HD and SD MXF video formats on Pro Tools video tracks without transcoding. With the Video Engine enabled you can simultaneously view desktop video and video monitored using a video peripheral.

Optimizations Section

The settings in the Optimization section provide various options for optimizing Pro Tools performance.

Ignore Errors During Playback/Recording

The **Ignore Errors During Playback/Record** option determines how Pro Tools responds to error reporting from the Avid Audio Engine (AAE) during playback and recording. This can be useful when working with instrument plugins where you care less about clicks and pops in the audio signal while you work on composing and arranging.

Once you are ready to work on the final mix you should disable this option. Observe the following guidelines as to whether or not to enable or disable error suppression:

- Enable error suppression only if you are experiencing frequent errors that are interrupting your creative workflow. When error suppression is enabled, you can experience a degradation of audio quality. However, this may be acceptable in order to avoid interrupting playback and recording when working with instrument plugins.
- Disable error suppression when you need to ensure the highest possible audio quality, such as for a final mix.

If the **Ignore Errors During Playback/Record** option is enabled and too many CPU intensive Native plugins are active in the session (such as Eleven Free or various virtual instrument plugins), you may experience badly distorted audio. If you encounter this problem, remove or make inactive any unnecessary Native plugins. You can also isolate and bus record any tracks that use virtual instruments, and then make those source tracks inactive to free up processing resources.

Ignore Errors During Playback/Recording For

On macOS only, there are two options for ignoring errors during playback and recording:

Main Playback Engine

Enable to avoid interruptions to playback and recording for the main playback engine.

Aux I/O

Enable to avoid interruptions to playback and recording for any Aux I/O configured for Input and/or output with Pro Tools on macOS.

Minimize Additional I/O Latency

(Host-based Pro Tools Systems Only) When the **Minimize Additional I/O Latency** option is enabled, any additional latency due to ignoring errors during playback and recording is minimized to 128 samples. Ignoring errors requires at least 128 samples of additional buffering on some systems. If this option is disabled, the buffer is half the **H/W Buffer Size**, or at least 128 samples (whichever is greater). If you are using a slower computer, you may want to disable this option to avoid adverse performance.

Dynamic Plugin Processing

When enabled, the **Dynamic Plugin Processing** option maximizes plugin counts by dynamically reallocating host-based processing resources as needed. This means that plugins only use CPU cycles when they are actually processing audio.

Optimize Performance at Low Buffer Sizes

(Mac Only) In the Playback Engine dialog, the **Optimize Performance at Low Buffer Sizes** option ensures that CPU performance is optimized as thread-wakeup time jitter is minimized on macOS. When enabled (it is enabled by default), this option impacts only the two lowest available **HW Buffer Size** settings. However, when this option is enabled, certain plugins may cause the system to hang for several seconds. If you encounter this issue, disable the option or increase the **HW Buffer Size** setting.

Limit Number of Real-Time Threads

(Pro Tools on Intel-based Macs Only) Pro Tools uses real-time threads for low-latency audio processing. To achieve low latency, these threads take priority to be processed quickly. However, if there are other, non-Pro Tools real-time threads running, they may contend with Pro Tools threads for CPU resources. This can cause playback errors (such as –9093 and –6101 errors) and AVB audio drop outs.

To reduce the possibility of resource contention you can limit the number of real-time threads that are spun up and run by enabling the **Limit Number of Real-Time Threads** option in the Playback Engine dialog.

- When enabled, CPU resource contention is minimized by limiting the number of low latency processing threads that Pro Tools will spin up to [(number of physical cores) –1].
- When disabled (legacy Pro Tools behavior), Pro Tools will spin up and run more real-time threads [(number of logical cores) –1], or [(number of logical cores) –2] for machines with 12 or more logical cores.

If you are recording or input monitoring many tracks with plugins, having this option enabled may result in –9093 and –6101 errors due to a reduction in the number of parallel high-priority real-time threads that Pro Tools will spin up. If this occurs, disable this option.

Intel® Turbo Boost

(Intel-based Macs with Turbo Boost Support Only) Many Intel®-based Macs provide a feature called "Turbo Boost." This accelerates processor and graphics performance for peak loads, automatically allowing processor cores to run faster than the rated operating frequency. The downside is that this also increases CPU temperature, which can cause Mac fans to have to run faster and thus generate more noise.

Turbo Boost is enabled by default on macOS and its setting applies to the entire Mac system (not just Pro Tools).

When the **Intel Turbo Boost** option is disabled, Mac fan noise should be greatly reduced. However, you may notice a slight reduction in overall system performance.

Activate Pro Tools Power Scheme

(Windows Only) Enable the **Activate Pro Tools Power Scheme** option to optimize Pro Tools performance. When enabled, a dialog is displayed that describes how this setting optimizes Pro Tools performance, but de-activates Windows power-saving settings which can result in increased power consumption, CPU heat generation, fan activity and potential noise.

Disk Playback Section

Cache Size

The **Cache Size** setting in the Playback Engine determines the amount of memory allocated to pre-buffer audio for playback and recording. In most cases, the default setting of **Normal** is the optimum Cache Size for most sessions.

Pro Tools can also load audio files used in Pro Tools sessions into RAM for cached playback. Pro Tools prioritizes files closest to the current playhead location. This way, when you start playback, those files are already cached for playback. This is especially useful when working with shared media storage (such as with Avid Unity ISIS® shared storage systems).

To determine the maximum amount of RAM available for the Disk Cache, Pro Tools polls the computer for the amount of RAM installed and subtracts 4 GB of RAM. For example, if your computer has 16 GB of RAM installed, the total amount of RAM available for the Disk Cache will be 12 GB.

You can use the Disk Cache and Memory meters in the System Usage window to determine whether to assign more or less RAM to the Disk Cache for the current session. See "System Usage" on page 131.

To set the amount of RAM for use by the Disk Cache:

1. Choose **Setup > Playback Engine**.
2. From the **Disk Cache** selector, select the amount of RAM you want to allocate for Disk Cache.
3. Click **OK**.

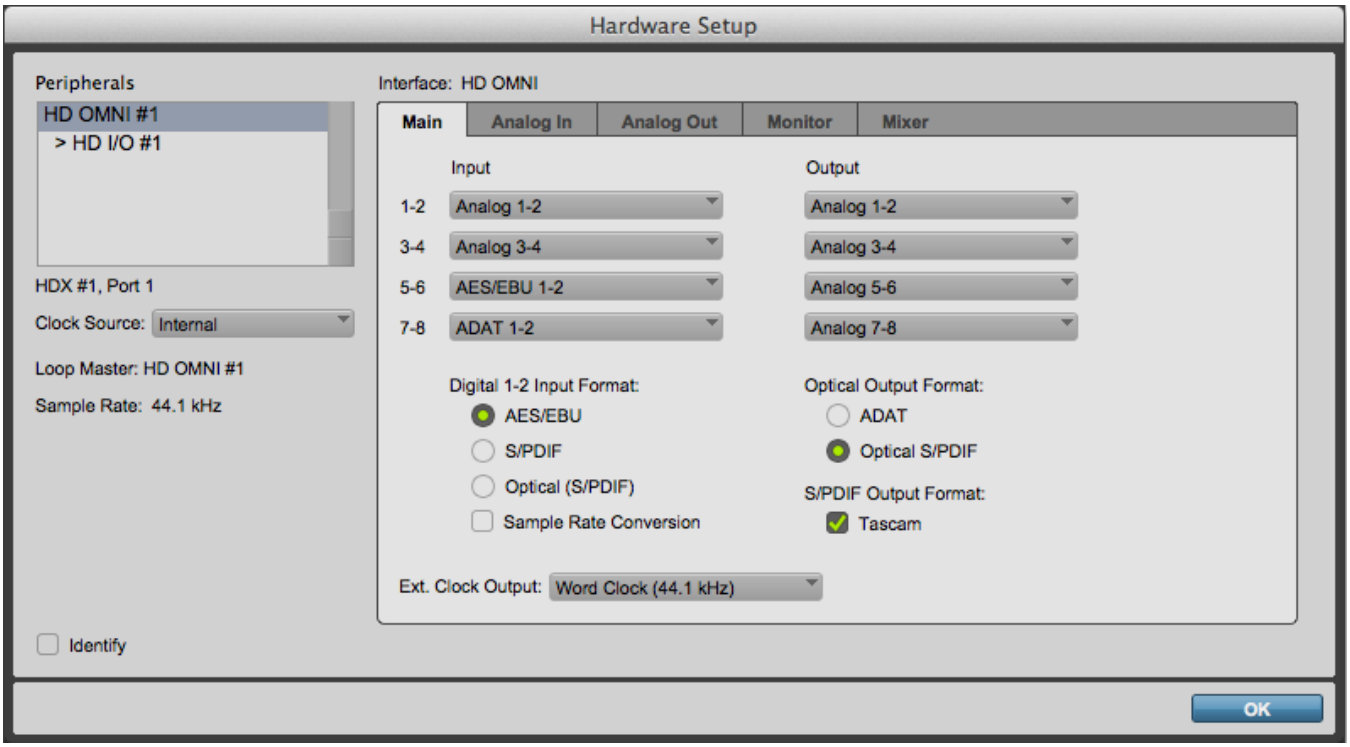
Configuring MIDI Setup

If you plan to use any external MIDI devices with Pro Tools (such as controllers, keyboards, synthesizers, drum machines, samplers, sequencers, or sound modules), you may want to configure your MIDI setup using Audio MIDI Setup (Mac) or MIDI Studio Setup (Windows).

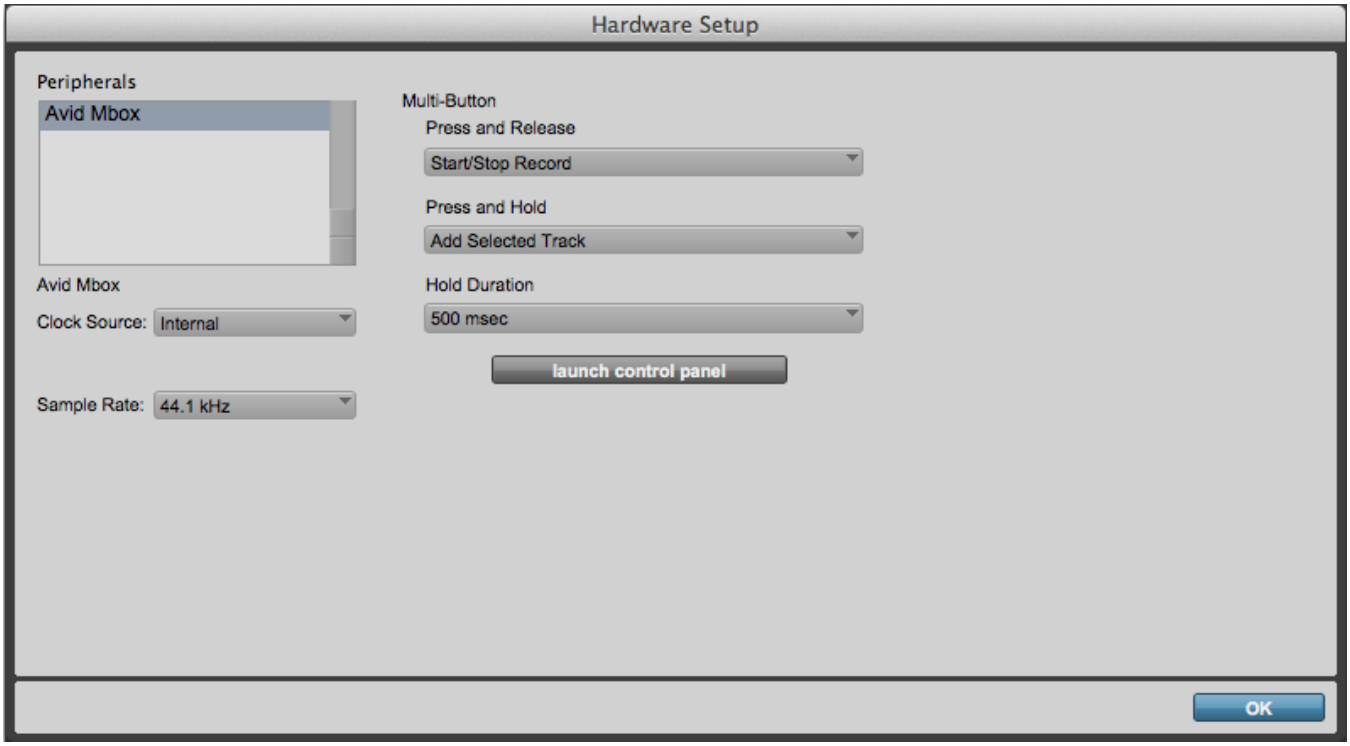
For more information, see "Configuring MIDI" on page 196.

Configuring Hardware Settings in Pro Tools

Pro Tools lets you configure the signal routing, digital I/O format, default sample rate, clock source, and other hardware-based settings depending on your system configuration. These system settings are available in the Hardware Setup (**Setup > Hardware**).



Hardware Setup for HD OMNI, Main page



Hardware Setup for Mbox (third generation)

Selecting an Audio Interface to Configure

The **Peripherals** list in the Hardware Setup lets you select any audio interface connected to your Pro Tools system associated with the selected **Current Engine** setting in the Playback Engine dialog.

To change the **Playback Engine** setting to use a specific audio interface or AAE (such as HDX, HD Native, or a third-party Core Audio or ASIO interface), see "Playback Engine" on page 109).

For Avid HD audio interfaces (such as HD OMNI or HD I/O) you can configure the signal routing, digital I/O format, default sample rate, clock source, and other hardware-based settings for each HD peripheral connected to your system.

For third-generation Mbox family audio interfaces, and third-party Core Audio (Mac) and ASIO (Windows) compatible audio interfaces, use the **Launch Control Panel** button to launch the control panel for configuring your specific audio interface.

Launch Control Panel or Setup App

(Pro Tools with Avid Hardware or Third-Party Audio Interfaces with Control Panel Software)

Using the control panel or setup application for your audio interface, you can change settings in the following areas, depending on your audio interface:

- Mixer Settings
- Output Settings
- Hardware Settings (including sample rate, hardware buffer size, and sync source).

You can set the sample rate when creating a new Pro Tools session by selecting a different sample rate in the New Session dialog.

To change control panel settings:

1. In the Hardware Setup dialog, click the **Launch Control Panel** button or **Launch Setup App** button (depending on your audio interface).
2. To change settings in the control panel or setup application, see the documentation that came with your audio interface.
3. When finished, close the control panel or setup application.

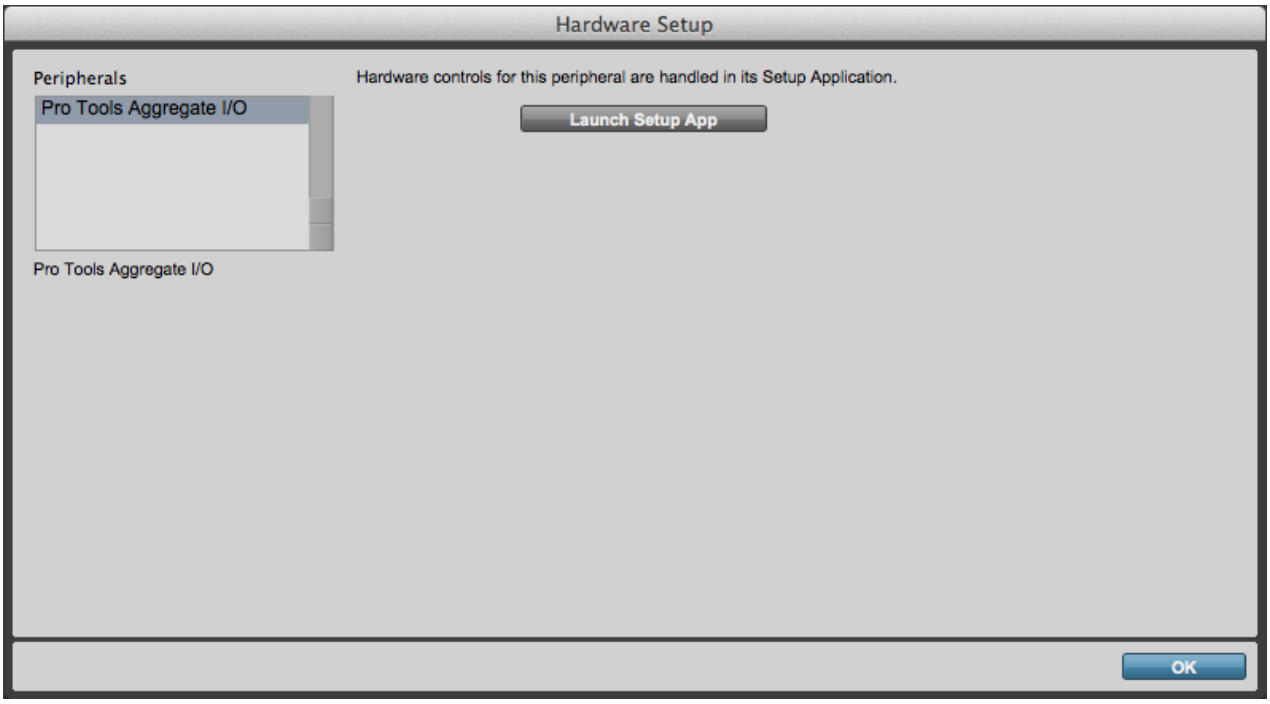
Configuring Pro Tools Aggregate I/O

(Mac Only)

On Mac systems using Core Audio, you can select **Pro Tools Aggregate I/O** as the **Current Engine** to use the built-in audio inputs and outputs on your Mac computer. You can configure the Pro Tools Aggregate I/O setting in the Mac Audio Setup, which can be accessed from the Pro Tools Hardware Setup.

To configure Pro Tools Aggregate I/O settings:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. In the **Peripherals** list, select **Pro Tools Aggregate I/O**, or whichever Built-in input or output option is selected as the **Current Engine** in the Playback Engine.



Hardware Setup for Pro Tools Aggregate I/O (Mac only)

3. Click the **Launch Setup App** button.
4. In the Audio Devices window of the Mac Audio Setup, configure the Pro Tools Aggregate I/O settings.

The Pro Tools Aggregate I/O device is intended for use only with the built-in audio on your Mac computer. For best performance, use the default settings.

Configuring Default Sample Rate Setting in Hardware Setup

The **Sample Rate** setting in the Hardware Setup dialog determines the default sample rate when you create a new session. This setting is available only when there is no session open. Otherwise, the current session sample rate is displayed, but cannot be changed.

With HDX and HD Native hardware, you can change the default Sample Rate in the Hardware Setup, or in the Playback Engine.

With HDX and HD Native hardware, the Sample Rate setting can affect the number of available voices.

On other Pro Tools systems, you can only change the default sample rate in the Hardware Setup or using the control panel for third-party audio interfaces.

You can set the sample rate when creating a new Pro Tools session by selecting a different sample rate in the New Session dialog.

To change the default Sample Rate in the Hardware Setup:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware Setup**.
2. Select the sample rate from the **Sample Rate** pop-up menu.
3. Click **OK**.

Configuring Clock Source

The Pro Tools Hardware Setup lets you select the **Clock Master** for the system.

Changes made to Clock Master in the Session Setup window are reflected in the Hardware Setup window.

Internal

If you are recording an analog signal directly into Pro Tools, you will usually use the Pro Tools **Internal** clock source.

External

If you are transferring material into Pro Tools from an external digital device, or if you utilize a common house clock signal, you will synchronize Pro Tools to that digital device or common signal.

Depending on your audio interface, external options can include **AES/EBU [Encl]**, **S/PDIF**, **Optical [Encl]**, **AES/EBU 1–8**, **TDIF**, **ADAT**, and **Word Clock**. For details, see the guide for your audio interface.

To select the Clock Master:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. Choose the clock source from the **Clock Master** pop-up menu.
3. Click **OK**.

Your digital input device must be connected and powered on for Pro Tools to synchronize to it. If your input device is not powered on, leave the Clock Master set to Internal.

Configuring Digital Format and Hardware Routing

The Hardware Setup includes additional settings for configuring the digital format and hardware routing for your system's audio interfaces.

To configure specific hardware settings for other Pro Tools or third-party audio interfaces, see the documentation that came with your audio interface.

Configuring Pro Tools | HDX and Pro Tools | HD Native Hardware Settings

On HDX and HD Native systems, you configure Hardware settings for each audio interface connected to your system (see "Pro Tools Systems" on page 35).

HDX and HD Native systems can have HD I/O, HD OMNI, HD MADI, Pro Tools | MTRX, or Pro Tools | MTRX Studio audio interfaces connected to HDX cards or HD Native hardware. HD I/O, HD OMNI, MTRX, and MTRX Studio can also have additional interfaces attached using the Expansion port on each interface.

Identifying Audio Interfaces

If you have multiple audio interfaces of the same type connected to your system, before you make audio connections to them, you should confirm the identity of each interface. This ensures that you choose the appropriate interface in the Peripherals list when you define its inputs and outputs in the Hardware Setup.

To identify audio interfaces in your system:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. From the Peripherals list, select an audio interface connected to your system.

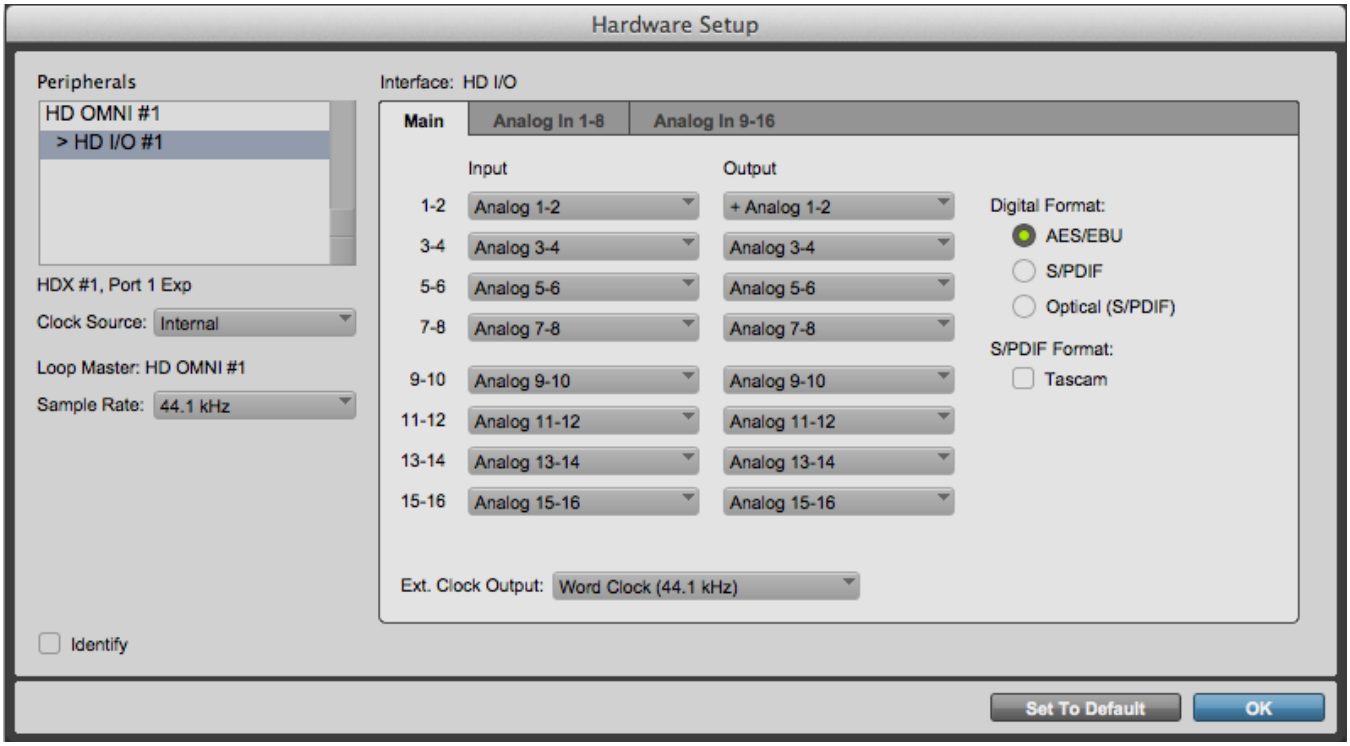
   Use the Up and Down Arrow keys to scroll though the Peripherals list in the Hardware Setup.
3. Make sure the Main page is shown.
4. Select the **Identify** option, located in the lower left corner of the Hardware Setup. This illuminates all the LEDs on the front panel of the selected audio interface.
5. Make a note of which interface in your studio setup corresponds to the identified interface.
6. Repeat the above steps for each additional audio interface in your setup.

Configuring Avid HD Audio Interfaces

HD OMNI supports up to eight channels of simultaneous I/O and multiple I/O formats (such as analog, AES/EBU, ADAT Optical, and S/PDIF).

HD I/O audio interfaces support sixteen channels of simultaneous I/O and multiple I/O formats (such as analog, AES/EBU, ADAT Optical, S/PDIF, and TDIF). HD MADI supports up to 64 channels of MADI I/O.

The Main page of the Hardware Setup is where you define which physical inputs and outputs on your audio interface are routed to available inputs and outputs in Pro Tools. You can think of this window as a patchbay that allows you to route any of the inputs or outputs on your audio interfaces to channel assignments in the Pro Tools mixer.



Hardware Setup for HD I/O, Main page

Additional pages are available to configure other controls for each audio interface (such as setting operating levels).

To configure Avid HD audio interfaces:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. From the Peripherals list, select the audio interface connected to the first card in your system. This will be the interface at the top of the list.
3. Click the **Main** tab.

   Press Command+Left or Right Arrow keys (Mac) or Control+Left or Right Arrow keys (Windows) to move though the different pages of the Hardware Setup.

4. From the **Clock Master** pop-up menu, select the appropriate clock source for the interface. In many cases, you will use **Internal**. The other choices are for resolving Pro Tools to external clock sources. Depending on your audio interface, Clock Source options can include: **AES/EBU [Encl]**, **S/PDIF**, **Optical [Encl]**, **AES/EBU 1–8**, **TDIF**, **ADAT**, and**Word Clock** (optional Word Clock rates are available when operating at higher sample rates).
5. If you want to send clock output to other devices attached to the audio interface, select the appropriate output from the **Ext. Clock Output** pop-up menu.
6. Select which digital I/O port on your audio interface enclosure is active by selecting the corresponding option under **Digital Format**. Depending on the type of interfaces in your system, choices include **AES/EBU**, **S/PDIF**, and **Optical (S/PDIF)**. Selecting **Optical (S/PDIF)** resets the Optical I/O port (which is, by default, eight channels of ADAT Optical I/O) to two channels of S/PDIF Optical I/O.
7. For S/PDIF compatibility with Tascam DA-30 DAT recorders, select the **Tascam** option under S/PDIF Format.

8. From the **Input** and **Output** channel pop-up menus, select the physical ports (such as **Analog 1–2** or **Optical 1–2**), that will be routed to the corresponding Pro Tools input and output channels (such as Ch 1–2, Ch 3–4), listed on the left side of the Main page.

   Inputs and outputs of similar format are differentiated in the input and output channel pop-up menus. For example, the AES/EBU inputs and outputs in the HD I/O enclosure are listed as **AES/EBU [Encl]**, while the AES/EBU inputs and outputs on the factory-installed Digital I/O card are listed (in pairs) as **AES/EBU 1–2**, **AES/EBU 3–4**, **AES/EBU 5–6**, and **AES/EBU 7–8**. For HD I/Os equipped with a second Digital I/O Card, the additional AES/EBU I/O ports on the optional card are listed as **AES/EBU 9–10**, **AES/EBU 11–12**, **AES/EBU 13–14**, and **AES/EBU 15–16**.

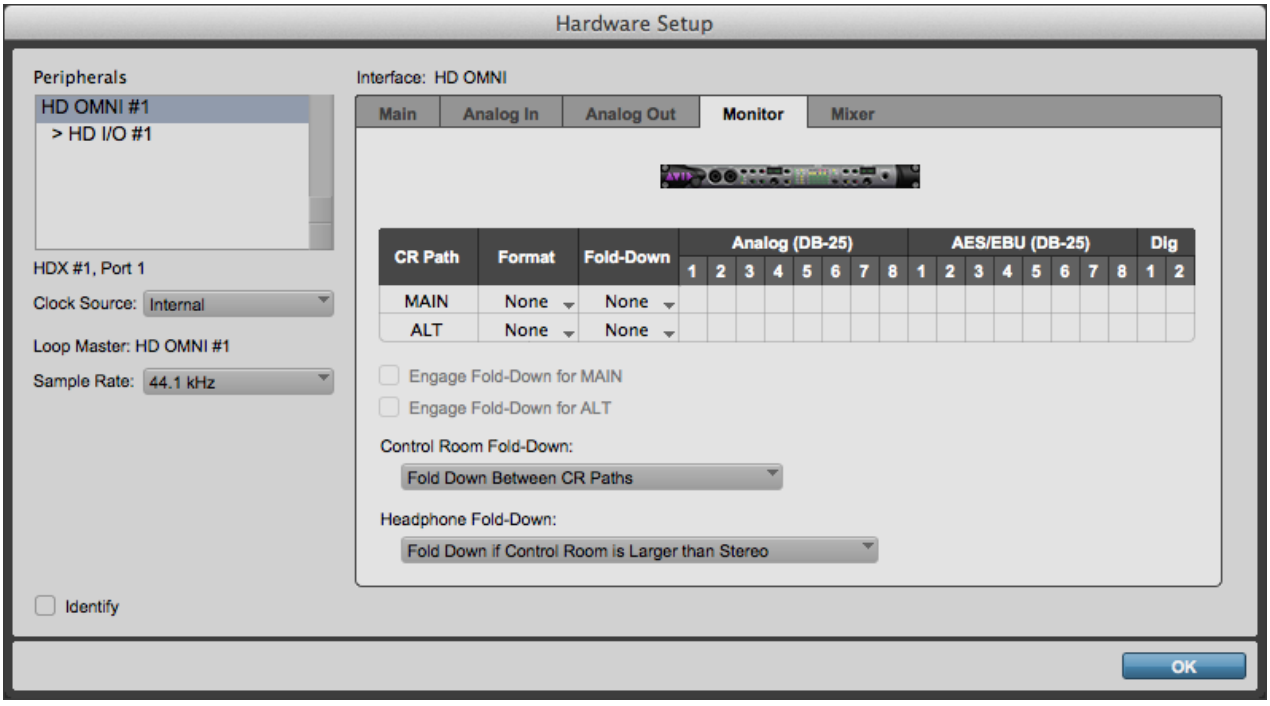
9. Configure any specific controls for your audio interface:
   - "Configuring HD OMNI Controls" below
   - "Configuring HD I/O Controls" on page 129
   - "Configuring HD MADI Controls" on page 130
10. For additional audio interfaces, select them in the Peripherals list, and repeat the above steps.

See your audio interface guide for additional configuration details and restrictions.

Configuring HD OMNI Controls

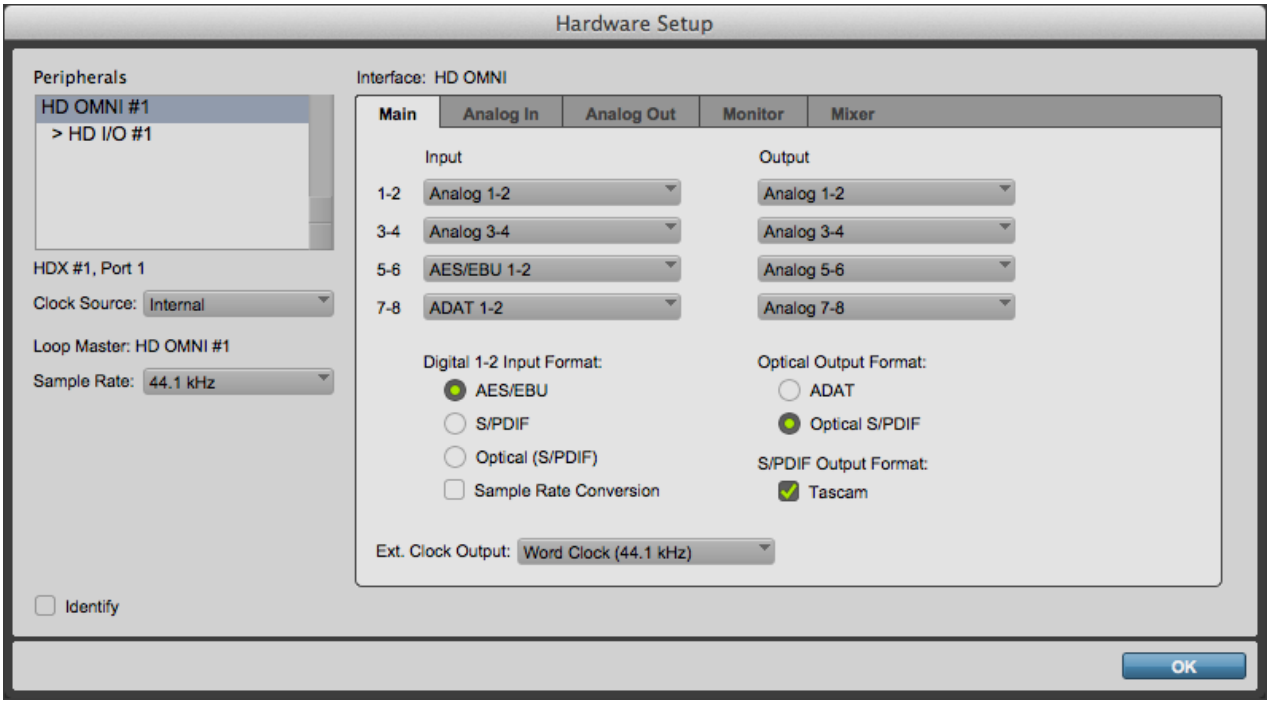
To configure HD OMNI in Pro Tools:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. From the Peripherals list, select the HD OMNI audio interface.
3. Click the **Monitor** tab and configure the options. When working with HD OMNI, you should always configure the Monitor page first.



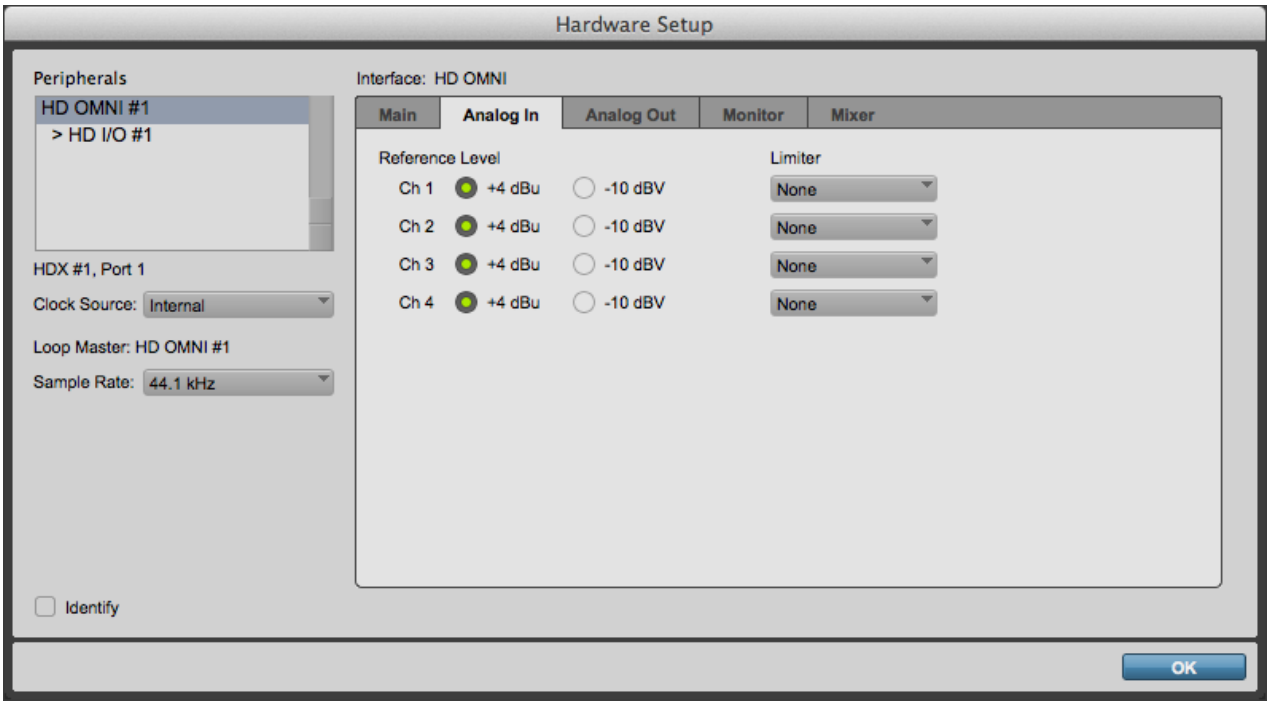
HD OMNI Hardware Setup, Monitor page

4. Click the **Main** tab and configure the options.



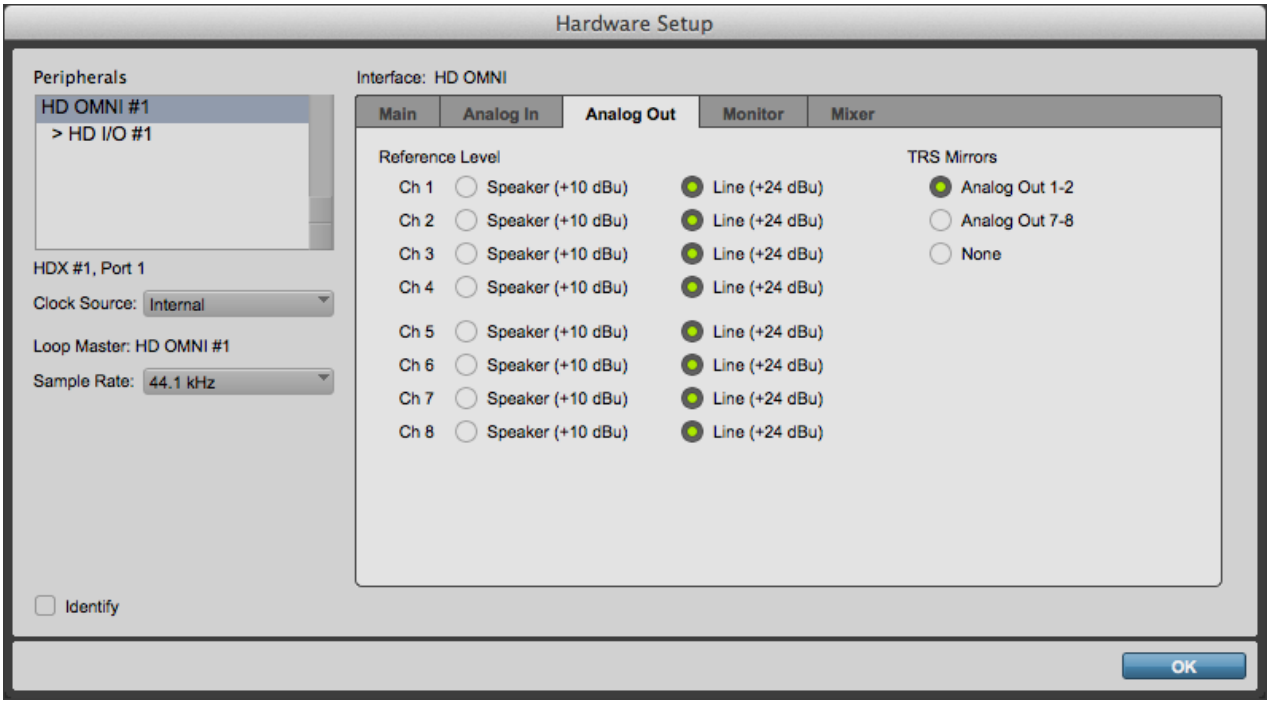
HD OMNI Hardware Setup, Main page

5. Click the **`Analog In`** tab and configure the options.



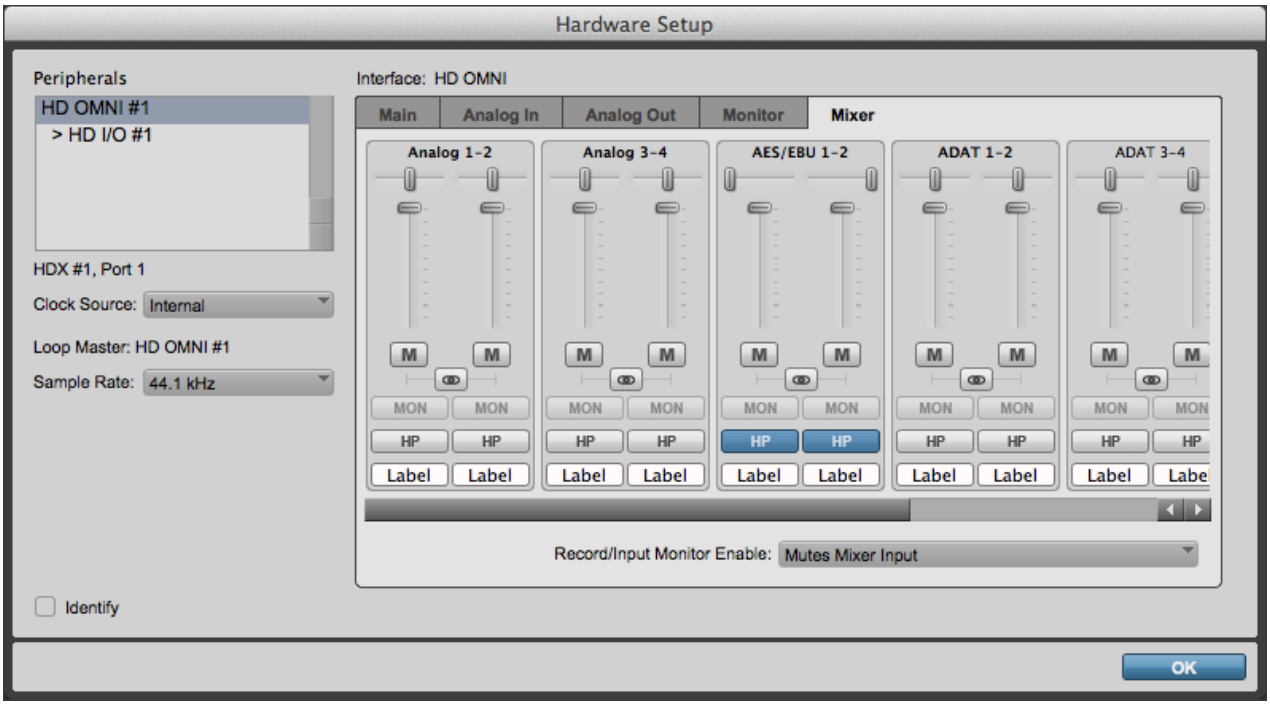
HD OMNI Hardware Setup, Analog In page

6. Click the **`Analog Out`** tab and configure the options.



HD OMNI Hardware Setup, Analog Out page

7. Click the **Mixer** tab and configure the options.



HD OMNI Hardware Setup, Mixer page

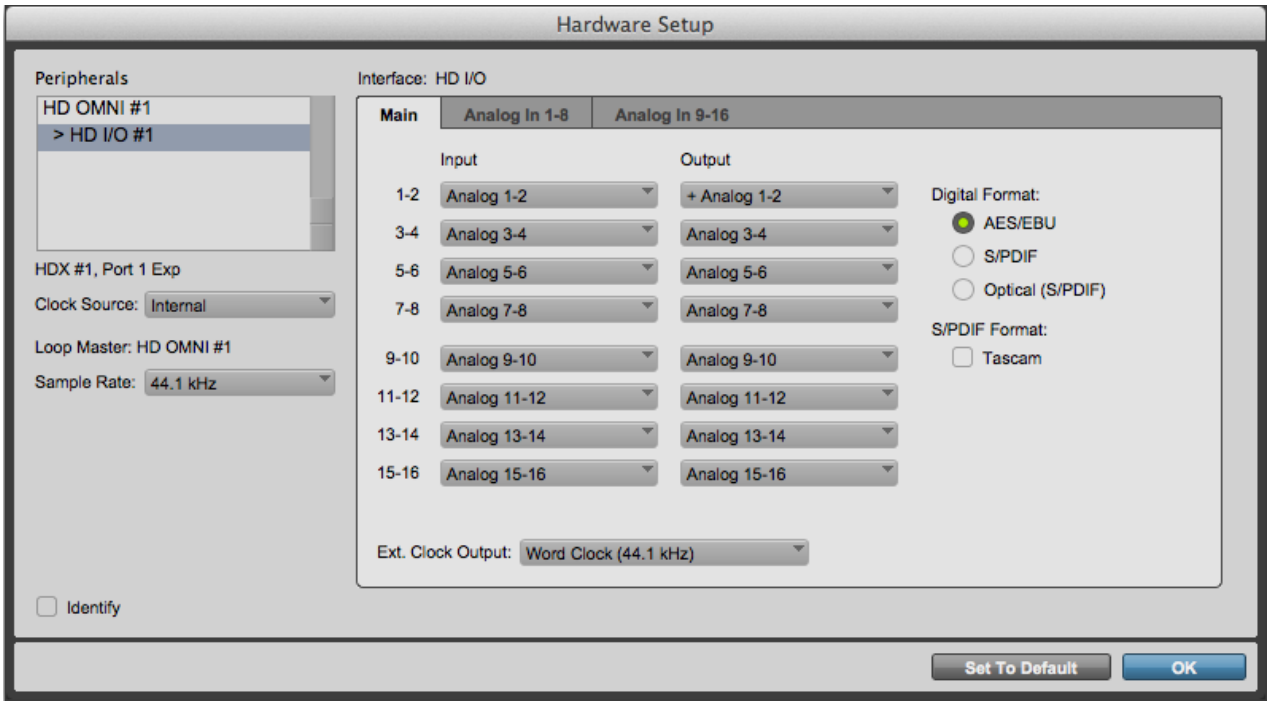
8. When you are finished, click **OK**.

For detailed information about configuring HD OMNI, see the HD OMNI Guide.

Configuring HD I/O Controls

To configure controls for HD I/O:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. From the Peripherals list, select the HD I/O audio interface.
3. Click the **Main** tab and configure the options.



HD I/O Hardware Setup, Main page

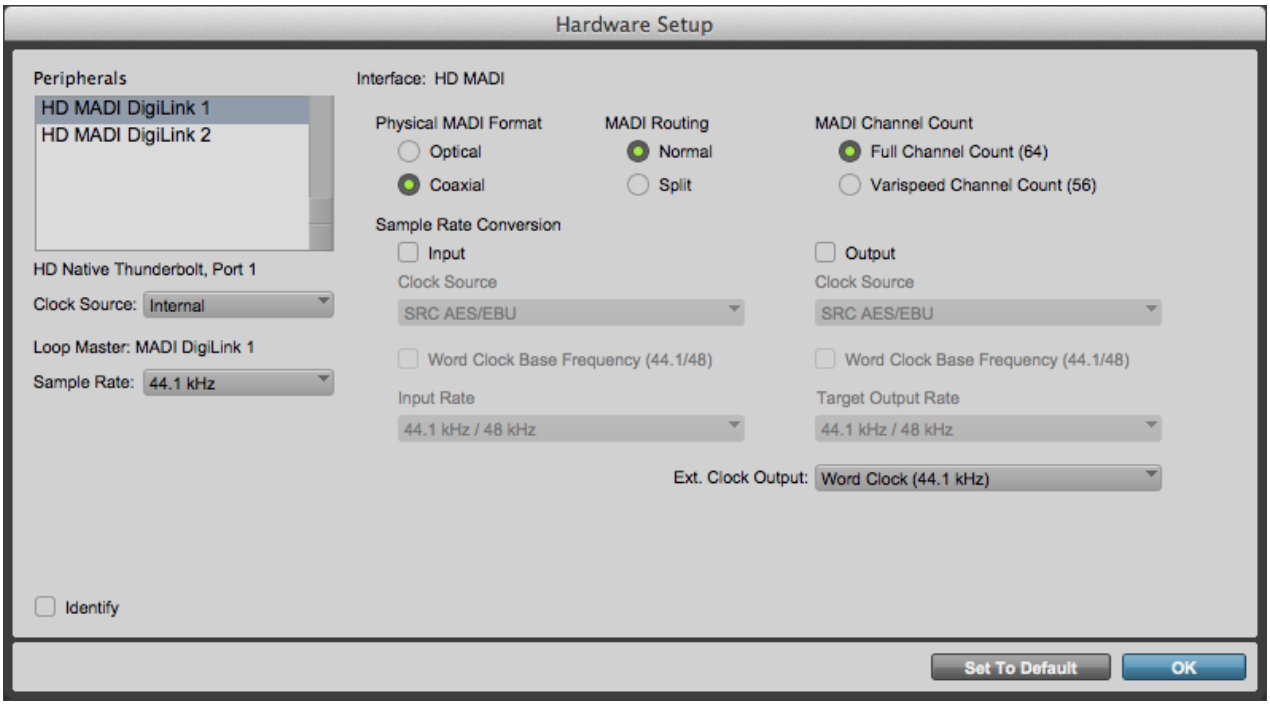
4. If you have at least one HD I/O AD card, click the **Analog In** tab and configure the options. If you have two HD I/O AD cards, this tab is labeled **Analog In 1–8**.
5. If you have two HD I/O AD cards, click the **Analog In 9–16** tab and configure the options.
6. If you have at least one HD I/O Digital card, click the **Digital** tab and configure the options.
7. If you have two HD I/O Digital cards, click the second **Digital** tab and configure the options.
8. When you are finished, click **OK**.

For detailed information about configuring HD I/O, see the HD I/O Guide.

Configuring HD MADI Controls

To configure controls for HD MADI:

1. Choose **`Setup > Hardware`**.
2. From the Peripherals list, select either HD MADI Port 1 or HD MADI Port 2 and configure the options.



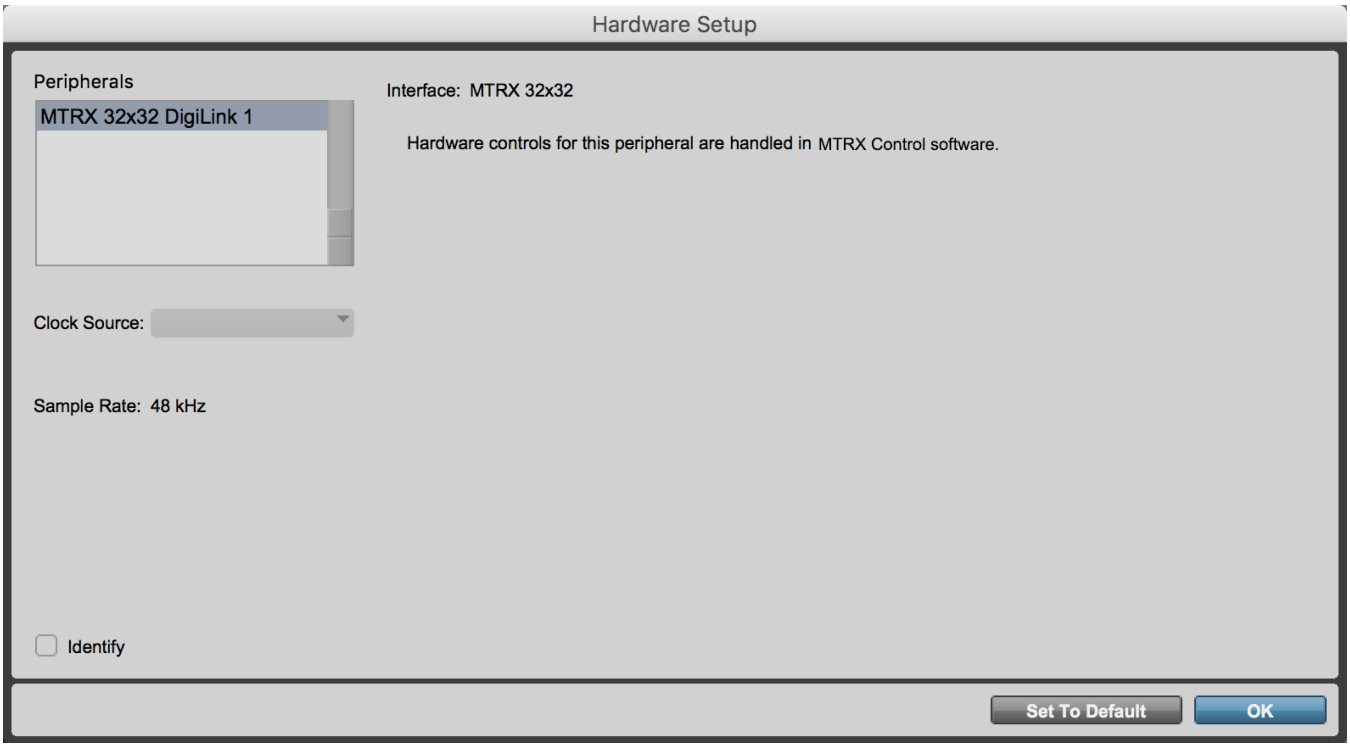
HD MADI Hardware Setup

The settings for HD MADI Port 1 and HD MADI Port 2 are linked. Any changes are global regardless of which is selected in the Peripherals list.

3. When you are finished, click **`OK`**.

For detailed information about configuring HD MADI, see the HD MADI Guide.

Configuring MTRX, MTRX II, and MTRX Studio Controls



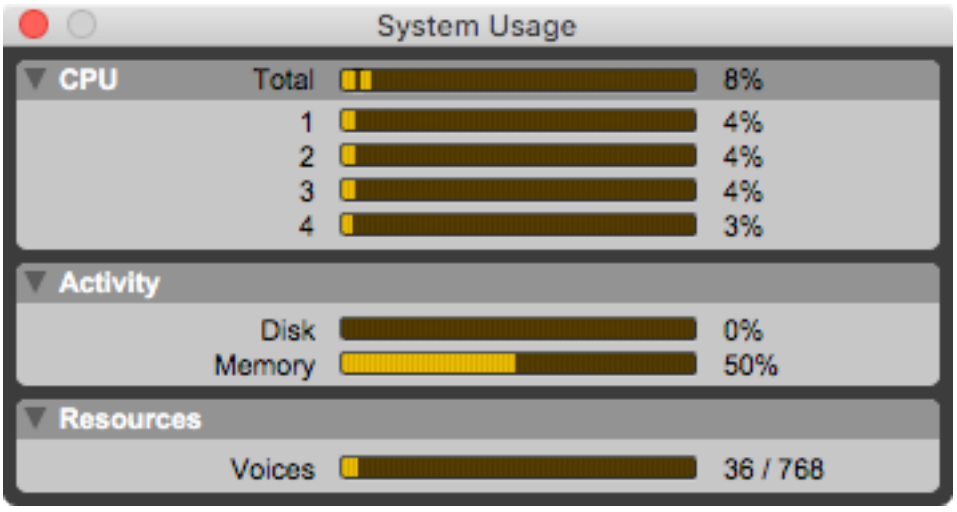
Pro Tools | MTRX Hardware Setup

MTRX, MTRX II, and MTRX Studio are configured using DADman Control software. For information, see the MTRX Operation Guide, the MTRX II Guide, or the MTRX Studio Guide.

System Usage

Meters in the System Usage window indicate how much of your system's resources are being used when processing audio, and when writing and playing back automation.

As these meters approach their limits, host processing and recording or playback of automation data can be affected. If CPU or PCI Activity are high, a system error may occur. If Disk Activity is high, Pro Tools may miss playback of some automation data during particularly dense periods of activity, such as while using the Bounce Mix command.



CPU Meters

The **CPU Total** meter displays session performance for Elastic Audio processing, Clip Gain processing, and Native plugin and mixer processing. A 3-second peak indicator provides visual indication of peak CPU usage.

The individual **CPU** meters provide a general indication of how much Pro Tools is using each of the processors in your computer.

Activity Meters

The Activity section of the System Usage window display meters for disk usage and memory usage.

Disk Meter

As in previous versions of Pro Tools, the **Disk** meter displays the amount of hard disk processing activity.

Disk Cache Meter

The System Usage window lets you monitor use of the Disk Cache. This meter is only present if a fixed **Cache Size** is selected in the Playback Engine dialog.

The Disk Cache meter indicates the amount of allocated memory being used to cache audio in the timeline (up to the amount of RAM selected for the **Disk Cache** setting in the Playback Engine). An additional peak-meter style indicator is included to show how much of the allocated RAM is needed for caching the session.

Memory Meter

The **Memory** meter displays how much of the installed physical RAM in the system is being used by Pro Tools. This includes RAM used by the audio engine, the video engine (if enabled), plugins, and the disk cache. Other than Pro Tools, it does not show any other RAM usage by the system. If the Memory meter approached 100%, install more physical RAM or lower the Disk Cache setting in the Playback Engine dialog.

Resources

The Resources section of the System Usage window display meters for Voices and Time Slots (HDX only).

Voices

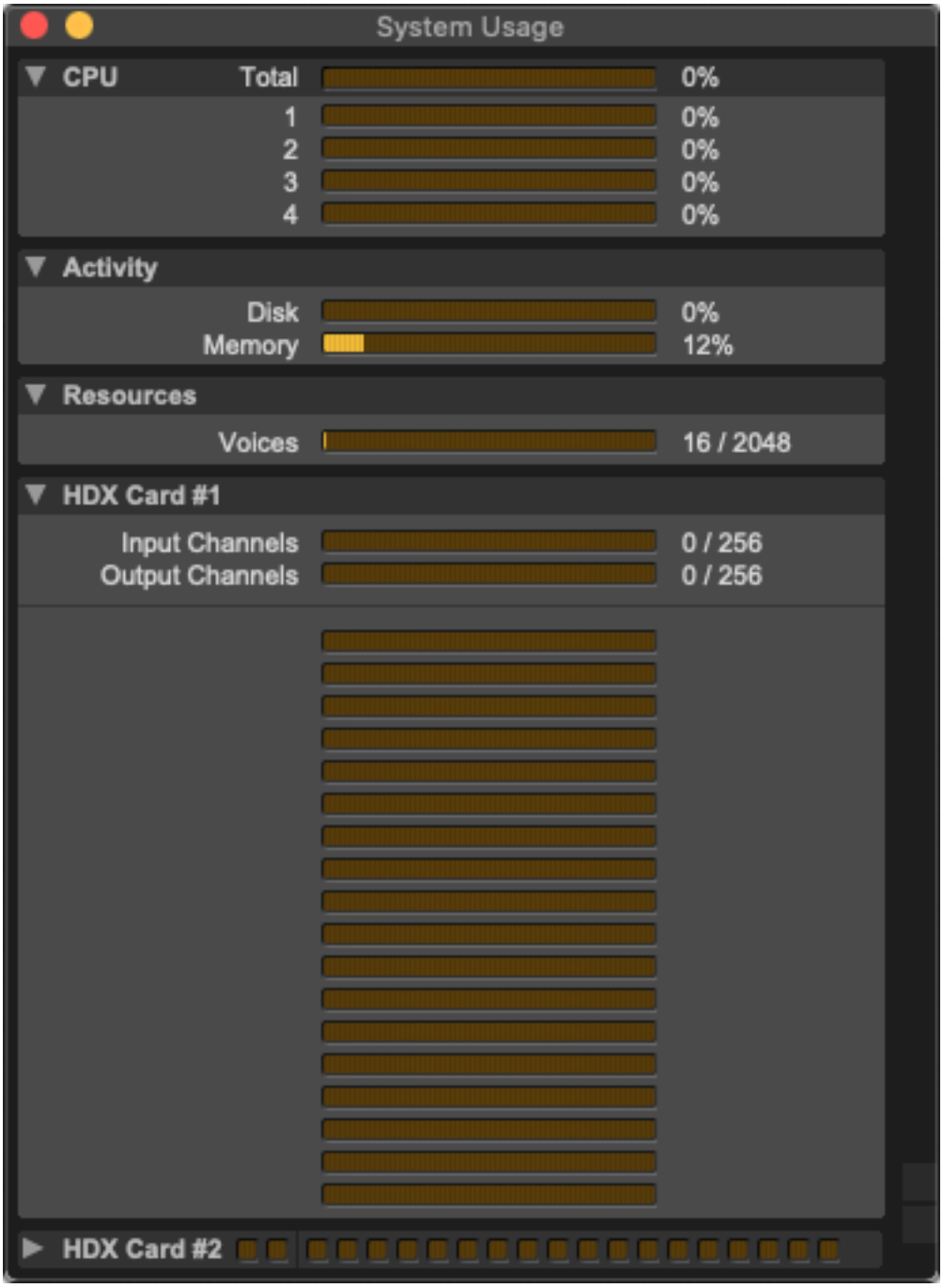
(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) The Voices meter displays the total number of voices available and the number of voices currently used. This includes all voices, including any voices used for routing between DSP and host-based processing.

Time Slots

(HDX Systems Only) The Time Slots meter displays the total number of DSP Time Slots available and the number of DSP Time Slots currently used.

Hybrid I/O Channels

(HDX Hybrid Engine Only) Displays how many of the available Hybrid Input and Output channels are being used for record and input monitoring in DSP Mode.



System Usage window (HDX Hybrid Engine shown)

HDX Card DSP Usage Meters

(HDX Systems Only) The DSP meters display how much of each DSP chip on each HDX card is currently being used for mixer configurations and DSP-based plugins.

Managing System Resources

To monitor the usage of resources during a Pro Tools session:

- Choose **Window > System Usage**.

To reduce processing load, do one of the following:

- Reduce the density of automation in places where it shows the most activity (see "Thinning Automation" on page 1599.)
- Make unnecessary track inputs and outputs inactive (see "Making Track Inputs and Outputs Inactive from the Edit or Mix Window" on page 362).
- Make unnecessary tracks inactive (see "Making Tracks Inactive" on page 375).
- Make unnecessary DSP plugins inactive (see "Making Inserts Inactive" on page 1516).

8 Preferences

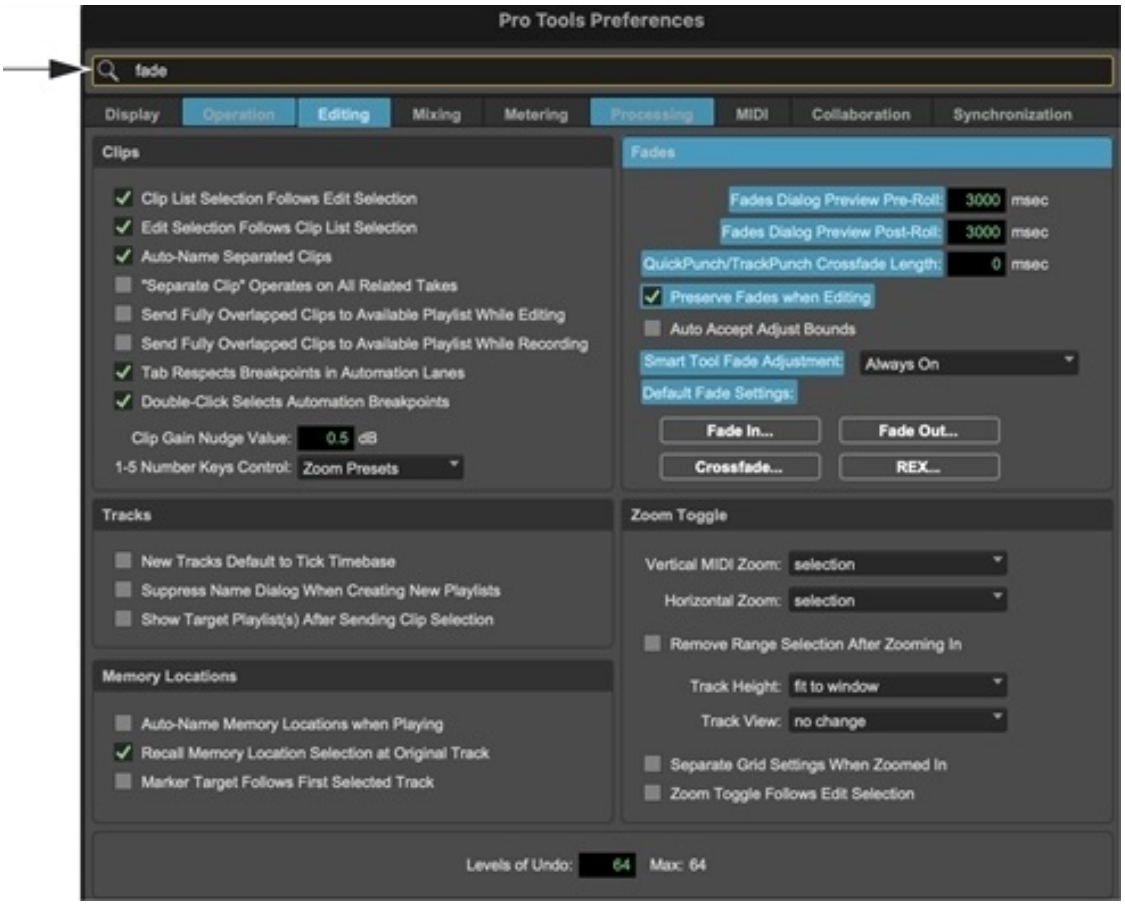
The settings in the Pro Tools Preferences define how Pro Tools features work. The Preferences dialog has several tabbed pages in which you can specify your preferred settings.

To change Pro Tools preferences:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the tab for the page that has preferences you want to change.
3. Change preferences.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the Preferences dialog.

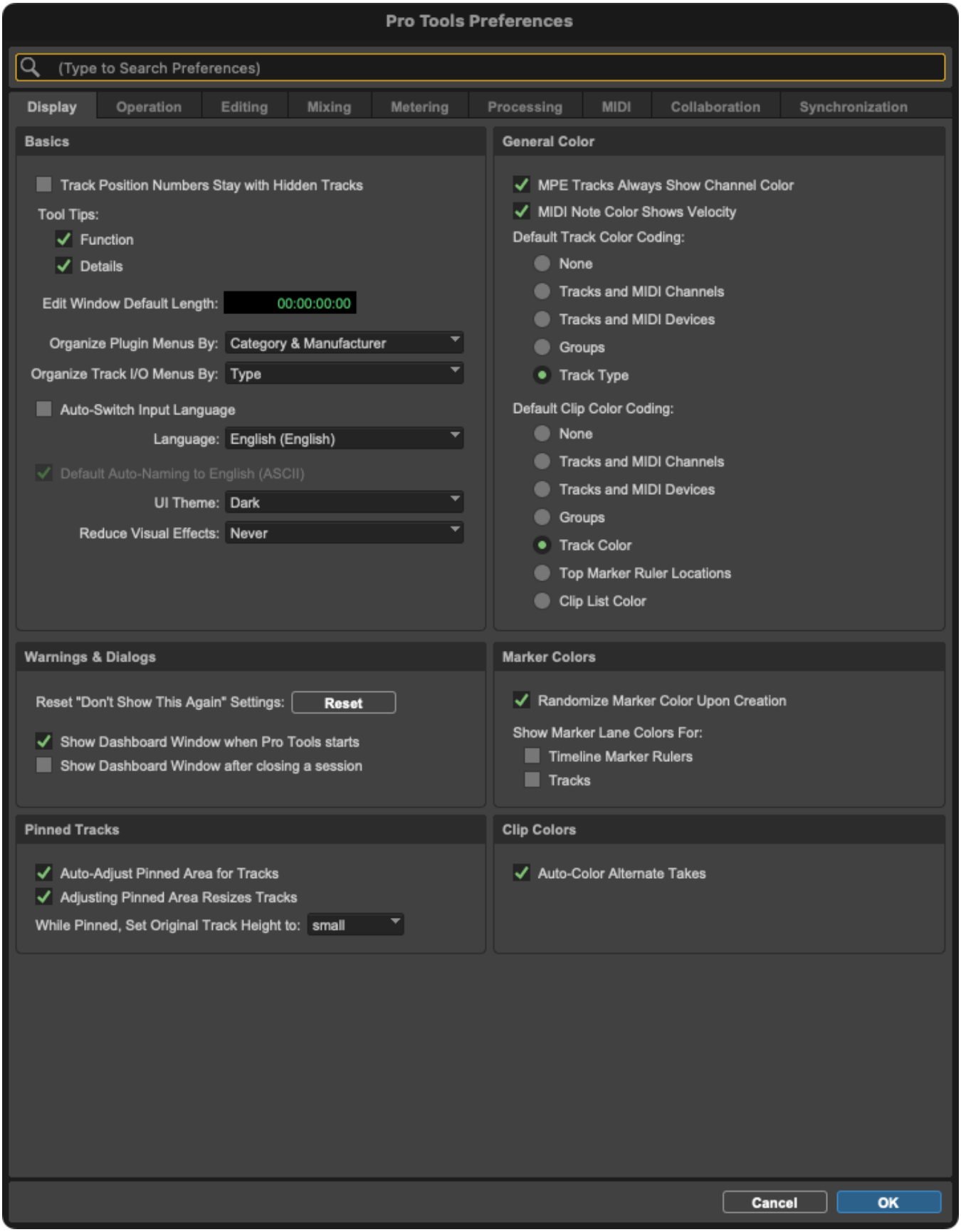
Preferences Search

You can now search preferences using the Search field at the top of the Preferences dialog. Type in the Search field to highlight Tabs, Sections, Settings, and Options in the Preferences dialog that contain matching text. For example, type “fade” in the Search field and the **Operation**, **Editing**, and **Processing** tabs are highlighted as well as any options on the currently viewed tab that containing the text “fade.”



Preferences search: “fade” options highlighted

Display Preferences



Basics

Track Position Numbers Stay with Hidden Tracks

When selected, tracks keep their track numbers even when hidden. When not selected, numbers are only assigned to tracks that are shown. In this case, shown tracks are then numbered sequentially, and hidden tracks are not numbered.

Tool Tips Display Options

Function

Configures Tool Tips to show the basic function of the item.

Details

Configures Tool Tips to show the complete form of an abbreviated name or item (such as a track name). Details view can also show the hidden or abbreviated value of parameters, as well as input and output assignments.

Edit Window Default Length

This preference sets a default length for the Edit window in hours, minutes, seconds, and frames (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only). This is useful if you want to assemble a session of a particular length or leave extra room to expand the Edit window's work area in your session. The maximum length is 24 hours. For best scrollbar sensitivity, set the length to slightly longer (a minute or more) than the total session or song length.

"Organize Plugin Menus By" Options

These options determine how plugin menus are organized in the Insert selector or Plugin selector.

Flat List

Organizes plugins in a single list, in alphabetical order.

Category

Organizes plugins by process category (such as EQ, Dynamics, and Delay), with individual plugins listed in the category submenus. Plugins that do not fit into a standard category (such as the Signal Generator), or third-party plugins that have not had a category designated by their developers, appear in the Other category. Plugins can appear in more than one category.

Manufacturer

Organizes plugins by their manufacturer (such as Bomb Factory, Focusrite, or TL Labs), with individual plugins listed in the manufacturer submenus. Plugins that do not have a Manufacturer defined will appear in the "Other" manufacturer folder.

Category and Manufacturer

Organizes plugins in two levels of menus. The top menus display plugins by process category (such as EQ, Dynamics, and Delay), with individual plugins listed in the category submenus. The bottom menus display plugins by manufacturer (such as Bomb Factory, Focusrite, or TL Labs), with individual plugins listed in the manufacturer submenus.

"Organize Track I/O Menus By" Options

These options determine how track I/O menus are organized in the Track Input selector, and Send and Track Output selectors.

Type

Displays only the I/O Type (Interface or Bus) as I/O categories in Track I/O menus.

Width

Displays only the I/O Channel Width (such as stereo or 5.1) as I/O categories in Track I/O menus.

Type and Width

Displays both Type and Width as I/O categories in Track I/O menus.

Language Options

You must have Administrator privileges for the Pro Tools application Properties to change these options.

Language

Sets the language to use in the Pro Tools application, independently of what language is used by your OS.

Default Automatic Naming to English

Causes automatically named session elements in a session to be named in English even when working with the Pro Tools application set to another language.

Auto-Switch Input Language

When the **Auto-Switch Input Language** option is enabled, the input language is switched automatically from English to the current OS input language when entering text. It automatically switches back to English for using Keyboard commands in Pro Tools. When disabled, English is used when entering text regardless of the current OS input language.

UI Theme

Pro Tools lets you change the theme for the User Interface (UI) between **Classic** (legacy) and **Dark** (new). Depending on the lighting environment where you use Pro Tools, you may find that one UI Theme is more desirable than the other.

You can customize UI Themes in the Color Palette window (see "UI Customization" on page 291).

Reduce Visual Effects

If you encounter UI performance issues with transcribed audio and continuous scrolling modes, you can try different settings for **Reduce Visual Effects**: **Always**, **Only During Playback**, or **Never**.

Enable HiDPI Mode (Windows Only)

Enable for HiDPI (High Dots Per Inch) displays and Windows display scaling with Pro Tools and Avid plugins running one one or more HiDPI displays. This option is enabled by default.

HiDPI mode only works if the High DPI scaling override option in Windows compatibility settings is not enabled for Pro Tools.

Warnings and Dialogs

Reset "Don't Show This Again" Settings

If you have made any changes by selecting the **Don't Show This Again** setting for any dialog in Pro Tools, you can click this Reset button to revert to the default settings.

Show Dashboard Window When Pro Tools Starts

When selected, Pro Tools shows the Dashboard window on launch. Deselect this option if you do not want to see the Pro Tools Dashboard window on launch.

General Color

MPE Tracks Always Show Channel

When this option is enabled, MPE per-note controller data is color coded by note channel in per-note controller lanes.

Press Command+Option+Control+M (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+M (Windows) to toggle the MPE Channel Color preference on or off.

MIDI Note Color Shows Velocity

When this option is enabled, MIDI notes display varying shades of the assigned track color in MIDI notes view in the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows. Notes with high velocities are darker and notes with lower velocities are lighter.

Default Track Color Coding Options

These color coding options determine the default color coding assignment for tracks in the Edit and Mix windows. The options are:

- None

  Turns off color assignment for tracks.

- Tracks and MIDI Channels

  Assigns a color to each track in the Mix or Edit window according to its voice or MIDI channel assignment.

- Tracks and MIDI Devices

  Assigns a color to each track in the Mix or Edit window according to its voice assignment or MIDI device assignment.

- Groups

  Assigns a color to each track according to its Group ID. If groups are suspended using the **Suspend Groups** command, the tracks color bars are not shown.

- Track Type

  Assigns a color to each track according to its type (audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, VCA Master, MIDI, Instrument, or Video).

Default Clip Color Coding Options

These color coding options determine the default color coding assignment for tracks, Marker Locations, and clips residing in the track playlist and Clip List. The options are:

- None

  Turns off color assignment for clips. Clips are drawn with black waveform or MIDI notes on a light gray background.

- Tracks and MIDI Channels

  Assigns a color to each clip in the Edit window according to its voice or MIDI channel assignment.

- Tracks and MIDI Devices

Assigns a color to each clip in the Edit window according to its voice assignment or MIDI device assignment.

- Groups

  Assigns a color to each clip according to the Group ID of its track. If groups are suspended using the **Suspend Groups** command, all clips display black waveforms or MIDI notes on a light gray background.

- Track Color

  Assigns a clip color based on the color assigned to the track.

- Marker Locations

  Assigns a unique color to each marker area in the Marker ruler, including the area preceding the first marker.

- Clip List Color

  Assigns a color to each clip based on its color in the Clip List.

Marker Colors

Randomize Marker Color Upon Creation

When enabled, newly created markers are assigned a random color (note that black, white, and gray are excluded). When disabled, new marker default to amber.

Show Marker Lane Colors For

Timeline Marker Ruler

Marker color extends within the lane until the next marker is reached.

Tracks

Marker color extends within the lane until the next marker is reached.

Pinned Tracks

Auto-Adjust Pinned Area for Tracks

When enabled, the pinned area adjusts to perfectly fit tracks as they are added and removed. When disabled, the pinned area will remain a consistent size until it is manually adjusted.

Adjusting Pinned Area Resizes Tracks

When enabled, adjusting the pinned area resizes all tracks within it to fit. When disabled, adjusting the pinned area does not affect the track size.

Use the Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) modifier keys when dragging to temporarily reverse the selected behavior while the modifier key is held.

While Pinned, Set Original Tracks Height To

When pinning a track, you can have Pro Tools automatically set the source track to a specific track height:

- **No Change**
- **Micro**
- **Mini**
- **Small**

Clip Colors

Auto-Color Alternate Takes

When the **Auto-Color Alternate Takes** option is enabled, alternate takes are automatically assigned distinct colors when they are created during loop recording, when manually creating a new playlist, or when sending fully overlapped clips to an available playlist.

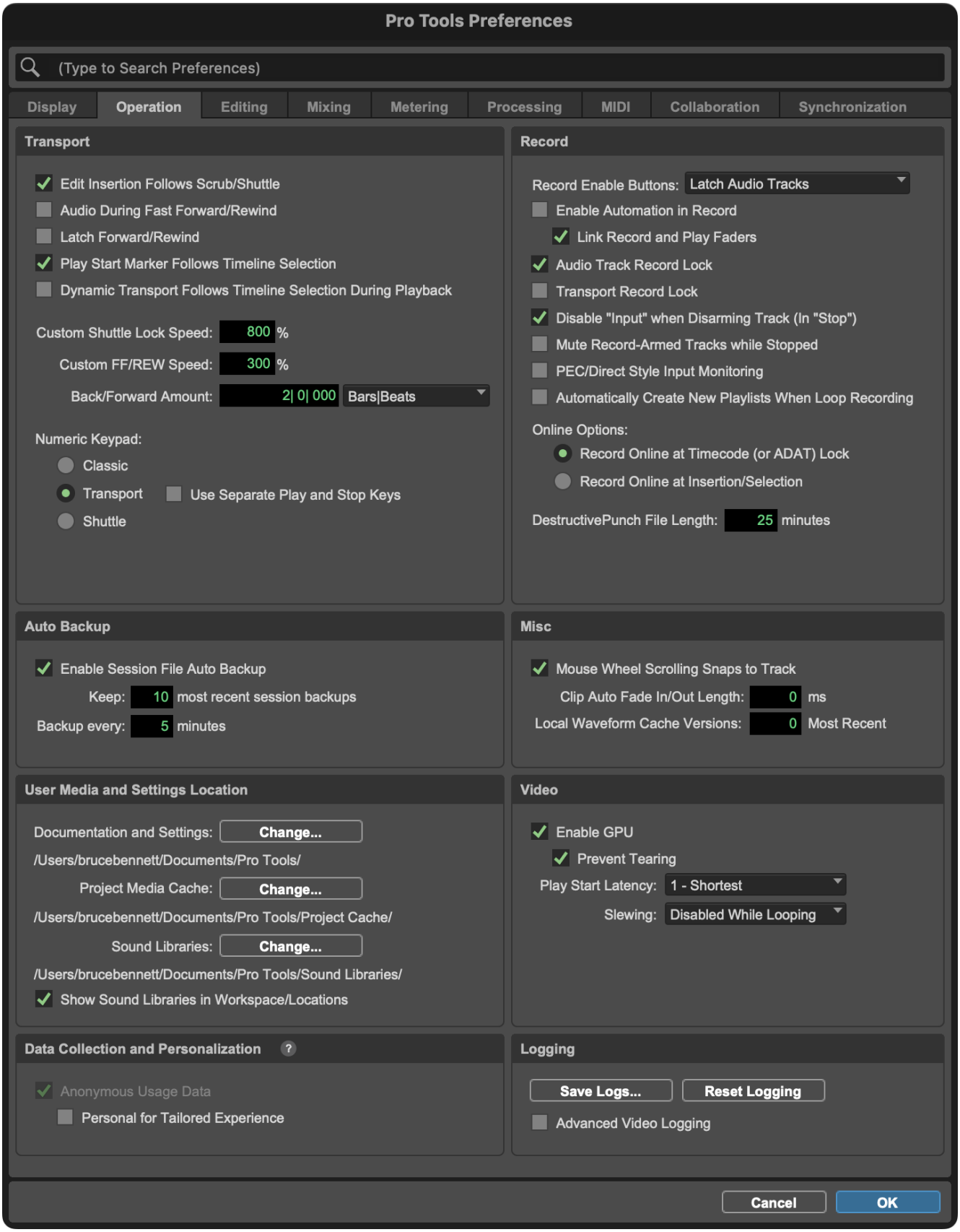
Clips are colored at loop-record time or at alternate take creation, based on a stable take ID that is shared across all tracks captured in the same record pass. This provides consistent, predictable colors across tracks for each take.

Disable this option for full manual control over color coding alternate takes.

Automatic Color-Coding Alternate Takes Behaviors and Caveats:

- When manually creating a new playlist, clips on the previous main playlist adapt the auto-color coding of that playlist if they have no explicit color. This does not apply to the **Duplicate Playlist** command. Undo restores the clips' default colors and redo reapplies the assigned color.
- When sending fully overlapped clips to an available playlist, clips pushed by layered playlist editing or recording are colored based on the destination playlist, whether it is an existing or newly created playlist.
- Explicitly colored clips are left unchanged, and MIDI playlists are excluded from both added cases.

Operation Preferences



Transport

Timeline Insertion/Play Start Marker Follows Playback

When selected, the Timeline Insertion and the Play Start Marker both move to the point in the Timeline where playback stops. When deselected, the Timeline Insertion and Play Start Marker do not follow playback, but return to the location where playback began.

Press Control+N (Mac) or Start+N (Windows) to toggle the Timeline Insertion/Play Start Marker Follows Playback preference on and off.

Edit Insertion Follows Scrub/Shuttle

When selected, the edit cursor automatically locates to the point where scrubbing stops.

Audio During Fast Forward/Rewind

When selected, audio is audible during fast forward or rewind.

Latch Forward/Rewind

When selected, fast forward and rewind latch and continue until you press Stop, Play, Return To Zero, or Go To End on the Transport. When disabled, the Fast Forward and Rewind only last as long as you hold the mouse after clicking either button on the Transport (or hold the corresponding switch on a Control Surface).

Play Start Marker Follows Timeline Selection

When enabled, the Play Start Marker snaps to the Timeline Selection In Point when you move the Timeline Selection, draw a new Timeline Selection, or adjust the Timeline Selection Start. When disabled, the Play Start Marker doesn't move with the Timeline selection.

Dynamic Transport Follows Timeline Selection During Playback

Lets you switch between moving the Playhead or not when changing the timeline selection during playback in Dynamic Transport mode.

- When this option is enabled, the Playhead jumps to the new timeline selection instantly without waiting for playback of the current loop to complete, changing the timeline selection during Loop Playback in Dynamic Transport mode, and begins to loop within the boundaries of the new selection.
- When this option is disabled, the Playhead behaves as follows when changing the timeline selection in Dynamic Transport mode with Loop Playback:
- If a new timeline selection is made during playback that is later than the current location of the Playhead, the Playhead continues uninterrupted without jumping to the new selection.
- If the Playhead enters the new selection, it resumes loop playback between the loop points of the selection.
- If a new timeline selection is made before the location of the Playhead during playback, the Playhead continues uninterrupted without jumping back to the start of the new selection. You will need to manually relocate the Playhead to the new timeline selection to loop playback within the selection boundaries.
- If a new timeline selection is made during playback that does not contain the Playhead, stopping and restarting the transport moves the Playhead to the beginning of the selection and loops within the selection boundaries.

Reserve Voices for Preview in Context (HDX and HD Native Only)

When enabled, Pro Tools reserves the appropriate number of voices for preview in context (previewing audio files from Workspace browsers during session playback). The number of available voices is reduced by the channel width of the selected audition paths on the Output page of the I/O Setup window. For example, if

the number of playback voices is set to 48 in the Playback Engine, and you have a stereo audition path selected in the I/O Setup, only 46 voices will be available for tracks. If you have a 5.1 audition path, only 42 voices will be available. When this option is disabled, you will not be able to preview in context if there are not enough available voices.

Custom Shuttle Lock Speed

Sets the highest fast-forward Shuttle Lock speed (key 9) for Shuttle Lock modes (Classic or Transport). The range for this setting is 50–800%.

For more information, see "Custom Shuttle Lock Speed" on page 900.

Custom FF/REW Speed

Sets the speed for fast forward and rewind in relation to normal playback. The range for this setting is 100–3,200%.

Back/Forward Amount (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

Sets the default length of **Back**, **Back and Play**, **Forward** and **Forward and Play**. The timebase of the **Back/Forward Amount** settings follows the Main Time Scale by default, or you can deselect the **Follow Main Time Scale** option and select another timebase format: Bars|Beats, Min:Sec, Timecode, Feet+Frames, or Samples.

Numeric Keypad Mode

Numeric Keypad mode determines how the numeric keypad functions. You can always use the numeric keypad to select and enter values in the Event Edit Area, Edit Selection indicators, Main and Sub Counters, and Transport fields.

Classic

Selects a Shuttle Lock mode that emulates the way Pro Tools worked in versions lower than 5.0. With the Numeric Keypad mode set to **Classic**, you can play up to two tracks of audio in Shuttle Lock mode. Press Control (Mac) or the Start key (Windows), followed by 0–9 for different play speeds. Press Plus (+) or Minus (–) to reverse direction. Recall Memory Locations by typing the Memory Location number, followed by Period (.).

Transport

Selects a Shuttle Lock mode that lets you set a number of record and play functions, and also operate the Transport from the numeric keypad. With the Numeric Keypad mode set to **Transport**, you can play up to two tracks of audio in Shuttle Lock mode. Press Control (Mac) or the Start key (Windows), followed by 0–9 for different play speeds. Press Plus (+) or Minus (–) to reverse direction. Recall Memory Locations by typing Period (.), the Memory Location number, and Period (.) again.

To customize the highest fast-forward Shuttle Lock speed, see "Custom Shuttle Lock Speed" on page 900.

Shuttle (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

Selects a type of shuttling different from that of Shuttle Lock mode. With the Numeric Keypad mode set to **Shuttle**, playback is triggered by pressing and holding the keys on the numeric keypad—playback stops once the keys are released. Various playback speeds are available in both forward and reverse. You can also recall Memory Locations by typing Period (.), the Memory Location number, and Period (.) again.

Use Separate Play and Stop Keys

When enabled, this option lets you start playback with the Enter key and stop playback with the 0 key on the numeric keypad. This is useful for quickly starting and stopping playback when auditioning loop transitions. The **Use Separate Play and Stop Keys** option is only available in Transport Numeric Keypad mode.

When this option is enabled, it overrides using the Enter key to add Memory Location markers. Instead, press Period (.) and then Enter on the numeric keypad to add a Memory Location marker.

Auto Backup

Enable Session File Auto Backup

When selected, Pro Tools automatically saves backups of your Pro Tools session file while you work. Backups are saved to in the Session File Backups folder in your session folder.

Keep *n* Most Recent Session Backups

Specifies the total number of incremental backups that are kept for sessions (backups for projects are handled separately by Revision History).

Backup Every

Specifies how often the session is saved.

User Media and Settings Location

Documentation and Settings

Click the **Change** button to set the Root directory for all user files including Documentation, Grooves, IO Settings, Plugin Maps, Plugin Settings, Session Templates, and Video Test Patterns.

Project Media Cache

Click the **Change** button to set the Root directory for caching all project media.

Sound Libraries

When Pro Tools is installed, any included audio loops are stored in the Sound Libraries folder by default:

Mac

Macintosh HD/Users/‹username›/Documents/Pro Tools/Sound Libraries

Windows

C:\Users\‹username›\Documents\Pro Tools\Sound Libraries

Click the **Change** button to direct Pro Tools to reference another location for the Sound Libraries folder and Loops content.

Show Sound Libraries in Workspace Locations

Enable the **Show Sound Libraries in Workspace/Locations** option to show Sound Libraries in the Locations pane of Workspace browsers.

Record

Record Enable Buttons Options

Latch Audio Tracks

When selected, the Record Enable button on each audio track latches on (or off) when you click it.

Cancel Previous on Audio Tracks

When selected, clicking the Record Enable button on any audio track disengages record enable on all other audio tracks.

Cancel Previous on All Tracks

When selected, clicking the Record Enable button on any track of any type disengages record enable on all other tracks regardless of track type.

Shift-click the track record enable button of any track of any type to engage or disengage record enable on that track in latch mode regardless of the selected Record Enable Buttons option.

Enable Automation in Record

When this option is enabled, automation can be written during recording as well as during playback. When this option is disabled, automation can only be written during playback.

Note that when the **`Enable Automation in Record`** option is selected, the **`Link Record and Play Faders`** option is automatically disabled and is unavailable.

Link Record and Play Faders

When selected, Pro Tools does not remember separate fader levels for tracks when they are record-enabled, allowing you to maintain the same monitoring level for tracks during recording and playback.

Audio Track RecordLock (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

This option configures Pro Tools tracks to either emulate a digital dubber, or to maintain legacy behavior for track record status.

- When selected, the record-enabled audio tracks remain record-enabled when playback or recording stops.
- When not selected, record-enabled audio tracks are taken out of record enable when Pro Tools is stopped. This prevents tracks from remaining armed from pass to pass, emulating track record behavior of a digital dubber.

Transport RecordLock (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

This option lets the Transport Record (the Record button in the Transport controls) be configured to either emulate a digital dubber, or to maintain legacy behavior for the Transport master Record.

- When selected, the Transport Record remains armed when playback or recording stops. This saves having to re-arm the Transport between takes, emulating digital dubber behavior.
- When not selected, the Transport Record disarms when Pro Tools is manually stopped or stops due to a loss of timecode. This replicates standard Pro Tools recording behavior.

The **`Transport RecordLock`** option is automatically disabled and grayed out when Destructive Record mode is enabled.

Disable “Input” When Disarming Track (In “Stop”)

For flexibility, TrackInput monitoring can be customized to remain selected regardless of track record status, or to automatically switch to Auto Input monitoring after a recording pass. This lets you optimize monitoring for a typical dubbing workflow (in which you might want tracks to remain in Input Only mode until explicitly switched to Auto Input monitoring) or a typical music tracking workflow (in which leaving a track in Input Only monitoring mode after recording can result in accidental double-monitoring).

- When selected, taking an audio track out of record enable (any mode) takes it out of Input Only mode, regardless of the global monitor mode, and switches it to monitor audio from disk only.
- When not selected, audio tracks remain in Input Only monitoring mode until explicitly switched to Auto Input monitoring.

Mute Record-Armed Tracks While Stopped

This setting determines monitor status of record-armed tracks.

- When selected, Pro Tools mutes all record-enabled tracks when the transport is stopped. Input can still be monitored while stopped using the TrackInput Monitor button.
- When not selected, Pro Tools does not mute audio input on record-enabled tracks when the transport is stopped.

Enable DSP Mode when Tracks with Hardware Inputs are Record-Armed/Input-Enabled (HDX Hybrid Engine and Pro Tools | Carbon Only)

When enabled, audio tracks are automatically set to DSP Mode when they are record-armed or input-enabled. This ensures low-latency monitoring using DSP Mode for all live signal paths. This option is enabled by default.

Disable DSP Mode when Disabling Record/Input (HDX Hybrid Engine and Pro Tools | Carbon Only)

When enabled, Pro Tools automatically disables DSP Mode when disengaging Record Arm and TrackInput Monitor on a track. This option is disabled by default.

PEC/Direct Style Input Monitoring (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

This option changes the way the TrackInput monitoring mode is indicated on-screen (and on supported control surfaces) to emulate “PEC” (playback) and “Direct” (input/bus) indication on some large format consoles.

- When not selected, the TrackInput button shows the letter “I.” The button remains gray to indicate Auto Input mode and lights green to indicate Input Only mode.
- When selected, the TrackInput button remains gray and shows the letter “D” to indicated Input Only mode (“Direct”); it lights green and shows the letter “P” to indicate Auto Input mode (“Pec” or playback).

Automatically Create New Playlists When Loop Recording

When selected, copies loop recorded alternate takes to new playlists in the track. This is especially useful to prepare for track compositing in Playlists view after loop recording multiple alternate takes.

Online Options

Record Online at Timecode (or ADAT) Lock

When selected, online recording begins as soon as Pro Tools receives and locks to incoming timecode.

Record Online at Insertion/Selection

When selected, online recording begins at the edit cursor location. Recording continues until Pro Tools stops receiving timecode. If you make a selection, Pro Tools records online for the length of the selection.

DestructivePunch File Length (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

This preference sets the duration of consolidated audio files when preparing tracks for DestructivePunch mode. The default value for this setting is 25 minutes.

Misc (Miscellaneous)

Mouse Wheel Scrolling Snaps to Track

The Operations page of the Preferences window includes a new **Mouse Wheel Scrolling Snaps to Track** option. When this option is enabled, the top of tracks in the Edit window snap to fit as you scroll with the mouse wheel and tracks in the Mix window snap to the left. When this option is disabled, scrolling with the mouse wheel is smooth and continuous.

Press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) while scrolling the mouse wheel to accelerate scrolling tracks vertically in the Edit window or horizontally in the Mix window. Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while scrolling the mouse wheel to slow down scrolling tracks vertically in the Edit window or horizontally in the Mix window.

Clip Auto Fade In/Out Length (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

This setting determines the default length for fade-ins and fade-outs that are automatically applied to clip boundaries on playback. Using automatic fade-ins and fade-outs saves you the trouble of editing to zero-crossings or creating numerous rendered fades in order to eliminate clicks or pops in playback. Autofades are not written to disk. Value range is from 0–10 ms for the **Auto Clip Fade In/Out Length** setting. A value of zero means that no auto-fading will occur. The Auto Fade value is saved with the session, and is automatically applied to all free-standing clip boundaries until you change it.

Local Waveform Cache Versions (Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only)

The **Local Waveform Cache Versions** preference determines whether or not one or more copies of the Waveform cache are stored locally for sessions on network storage systems.

Keeping a short history of the Waveform cache stored locally can greatly speed up opening sessions on network storage. Rendering tasks and redrawing waveforms are also quicker when the Waveform cache is stored locally.

A setting of **0** means that no local Waveform cache is stored and the Waveform cache is only saved on the network storage system. A setting of **1** always only saves the most recent version of the Waveform cache locally and deletes the previously locally saved Waveform cache. You can store up to 99 versions of the Waveform cache locally. When the designated number of versions to be stored locally is exceeded creation of a new Waveform cache, the oldest locally stored Waveform cache is deleted.

The local Waveform cache (if any) is saved to the **Documents/Pro Tools/Local Waveform Cache** folder on your system drive.

Video

Enable GPU

Pro Tools video processing is done on the GPU (Graphics Processing Unit) in order to free up the CPU for Pro Tools audio and MIDI. If you are using a slower GPU and encounter poor video playback, you may want to disable this option and have the video processing done on the CPU.

Prevent Tearing

When enabled, Pro Tools buffers video to prevent visual artifacts with horizontal movement in situations where video sync does not match the screen refresh rate. This options is not available when the **Enable GPU** option is disabled.

Play Start Latency

If you are working on a slower computer, set the **Play Start Latency** setting to a higher value. The range is from **1-Shortest** to **5-Longest**.

Slewing

Slewing helps audio and video to stay in sync when there is no common clock reference between audio and video hardware. However, it can be problematic in certain circumstances, such as with loop playback. This option lets you keep longer playback passes in sync, while maintaining performance during loop playback.

Enabled

Slewing is always enabled.

Disabled While Looping

Slewing is disabled only during looping playback. Select this option if you are encounter video engine errors, such as failure messages during loop playback.

Disabled Always

Slewing is always disabled. Disable slewing in cases where it is interacting poorly with video hardware. Select this option if you are encounter video engine errors, such as failure messages during normal playback.

Note that when this slewing is disabled, and no common clock is provided, video may drift over time. If you are locked to common clock, or you do not have a video peripheral, this preference is not applicable.

For more information about slewing, see "Clocking Video and Audio Hardware with Pro Tools" on page 1933.

Data Collection and Personalization

Anonymous Usage Data

Enable the **Anonymous Usage Data** option to opt in to reporting Pro Tools usage data to Avid. Disable this option to opt out.

Personal for Tailored Experience

Enable the **Personal for Tailored Experience** option to allow Avid to collect information and usage data to personalize your Pro Tools experience and provide relevant feature updates, recommendations, and other offers. Disable to opt out.

Logging

Logs are always be saved to the following folders regardless of the analytics preference:

macOS: /Users/‹username›/Library/Logs/Avid/Crashlog/ProTools

Windows: C:/Users/‹username›/AppData/Local/ Avid/Logs/Crashlog/ProTools

Save Logs

Click **Save Logs** to save all log files as a .zip file that you can share with Avid Customer Support for troubleshooting purposes.

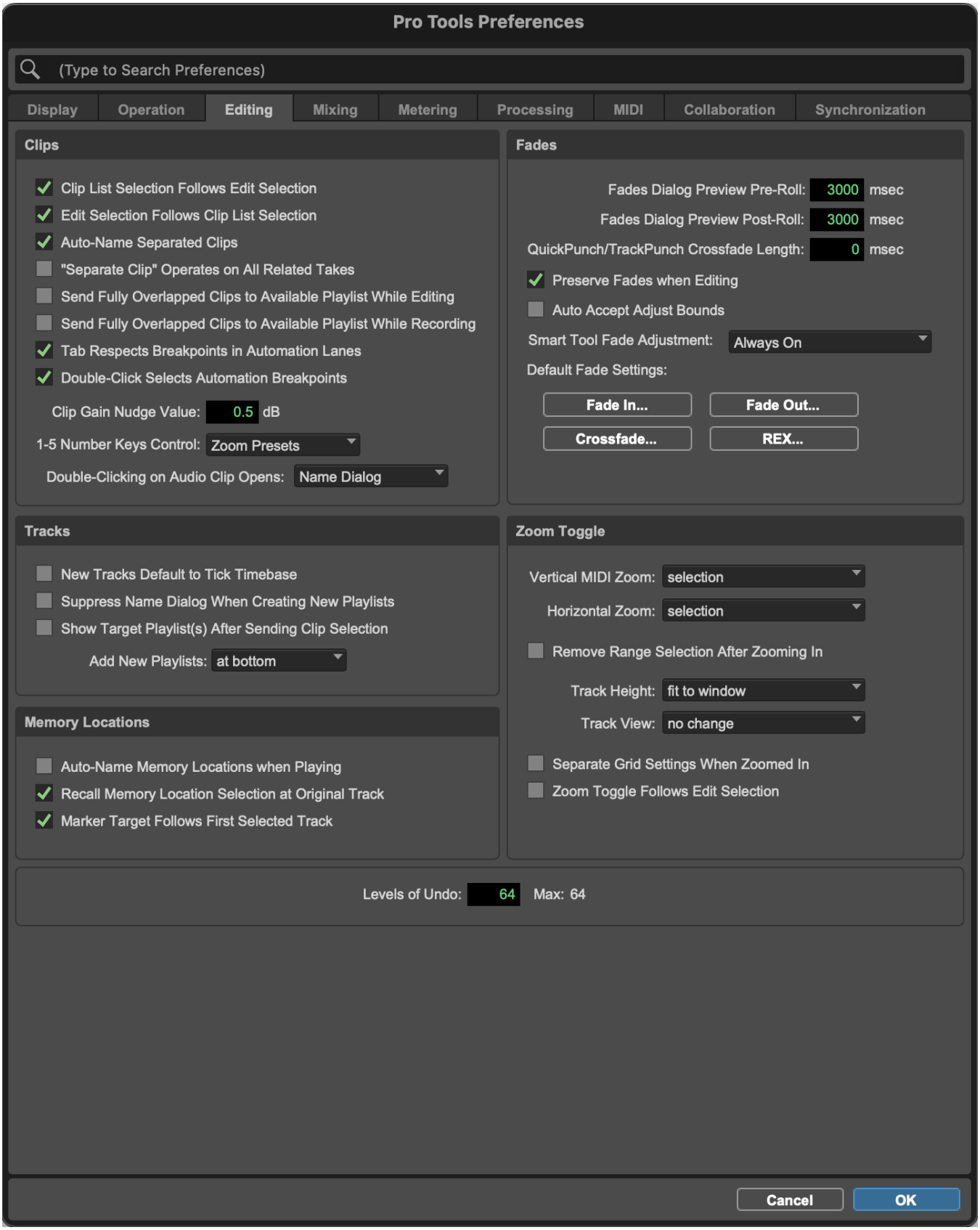
Reset Logging

Click **Reset Logging** to reset Pro Tools logs if requested by Avid Customer Support.

Advanced Video Logging

Enable the **Advanced Video Logging** option to capture advanced logging options for the Avid Audio Engine (AVE).

Editing Preferences



Clips

Clip List Selection Follows Edit Selection

When selected, selecting a clip in a track also selects it in the Clip List.

Edit Selection Follows Clip List Selection

When selected, selecting a clip in the Clip List causes Pro Tools to highlight that clip's occurrence in a track.

Auto-Name Separated Clips

When selected, Pro Tools automatically names newly separated clips by appending a number to the clip's name.

"Separate Clip" Operates On All Related Takes

When selected, editing a clip with the **Separate Clip** command also affects all other related takes (recording passes) with the same User Time Stamp. This option helps you compare different sections from a group of related takes.

Send Fully Overlapped Clips to Playlist while Editing

Whenever a whole clip is fully overlapped by another clip when editing it is moved from the main playlist to a new playlist (or the first available, empty playlist). This is true for editing on all playlists, not just the main playlist.

Send Fully Overlapped Clips to Playlist while Recording

Whenever a whole clip is fully overlapped by another clip when recording it is moved from the main playlist to a new playlist (or the first available, empty playlist).

Double-Click Selects Automation Breakpoints

Enable this option to select between automation breakpoints by double-clicking with the selector tool. Disable to ignore breakpoints for selection, making it quicker to select the duration of a clip.

Clip Gain Nudge Value

This setting specifies the amount (from 0.1 dB to 6.0 dB) by which clip gain settings are adjusted when nudging clip gain.

Clip Matching Options

Lets you assign number keys 1–5 to control either **Zoom Presets** or **Clip Effects Presets**. Press Control+1–5 (Mac) or Start+1–5 (Windows) to recall the corresponding preset in your session or project for the selected option. If Commands Keyboard Focus is also enabled in the Edit window, just press the number for the preset you want (1–5).



Press Command+Control+1–5 (Mac) or Control+Start+1–5 (Windows) to apply the number keys to the opposite of what is set for the 1–5 Number Keys Control preference (for example, if Zoom Presets is selected, these key combinations would apply to Clip Effects Presets instead). If Commands Keyboard Focus is enabled for the Edit window, press Command+1–5 (Mac) or Control+1–5 (Windows).

Double-Clicking on Audio Clip Opens

Lets you set whether double-clicking on an audio clip opens the **Name Dialog**, **ARA** editor, or **Clip Effects** editor. If no ARA edits or processing, or no Clip Effects are applied to the clip, the Name dialog opens instead.

Tracks

New Tracks Default To Tick Timebase

When selected, all new tracks default to ticks. When deselected, audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and VCA tracks default to samples.

Suppress Name Dialog When Creating New Playlists

Enable this option to automatically name new playlists without opening the Name New Playlist dialog. This applies when creating both new of duplicate playlists.

Show Target Playlist(s) After Sending Clip Selection

Enable this option to show Target playlist(s) in the Main playlist after moving or copying an Edit selection to that playlist.

Add New Playlists at Bottom or Top Preference

Choose whether you want to add new playlists at the top or at the bottom of existing track playlists.

Memory Locations

Auto-Name Memory Locations When Playing

When selected, Pro Tools gives new Memory Locations default names based on their time location in the session. The time units currently chosen in the View menu determine the units for the names.

Recall Memory Location at Original Track

When selected, Memory Locations that recall a selection also recall the track in which the selection was made.

Marker Target Follows First Selected Track

When selected, the Marker Target always follows the first track in the selection. If no track is selected, the Marker Target moves to the ruler.

Fades

Crossfade Preview Pre-Roll

This setting specifies the amount of pre-roll to be added when you are auditioning crossfades in the Fades dialog.

Crossfade Preview Post-Roll

This setting specifies the amount of post-roll to be added when you are auditioning crossfades in the Fades dialog.

QuickPunch/TrackPunch Crossfade Length

Specifies a default length for crossfades created by QuickPunch™ or TrackPunch (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only) recordings. Crossfades occur before the punch in and after the punch out.

Preserve Fades when Editing

This option preserves fade-ins and fade outs, and converts separated crossfades into corresponding fade-ins and fade-outs.

Auto Accept Adjust Bounds

This option automatically adjusts fade boundaries without presenting the Invalid Fades dialog.

Smart Tool Fade Adjustment

Determines whether adjusting fade and crossfade shapes in the Edit window using the Smart Tool is always on or if it requires that you also use the Command key (Mac) or the Control key (Windows) to adjust fades and crossfades with the Smart Tool (see "Adjusting Fade Shapes with the Smart Tool in the Edit Window" on page 958).

Always On

Adjust fade and crossfade shapes in the Edit window using the Smart Tool.

Requires Command Key (Mac) or Requires Control Key (Windows)

Adjust fade and crossfade shapes in the Edit window using the Smart Tool only when the Command key (Mac) or Control key (Windows) is pressed.

Default Fade Settings

Fade In

Selects the default envelope shape for fade-ins when using the Smart Tool.

Fade Out

Selects the default envelope shape for fade-outs when using the Smart Tool.

Crossfade

Selects the default envelope shape for crossfades when using the Smart Tool.

To apply a Fade In, Fade Out, or Crossfade to an Edit selection using the Default Fade settings, and without opening the Fades dialog, press Command+Control+F (Mac) or Control+Start+F (Windows).

REX

Selects the default envelope shape for fades and crossfades between clips (“slices”) in imported REX files.

Zoom Toggle

Vertical Zoom

Selects either **Selection** or **Last Used** for the **Zoom Toggle Vertical Zoom** setting.

Horizontal Zoom

Selects either **Selection** or **Last Used** for the **Zoom Toggle Horizontal Zoom** setting.

Remove Range Selection After Zooming In

When selected, the current Edit selection collapses into an insertion point after zoom toggling in. Zoom toggling back out reverts to the previous selection.

Track Height

Selects **Last Used**, **Medium**, **Large**, **Extreme**, or **Fit To Window** for the **Zoom Toggle Track Height** setting.

Track View

Selects **Waveform/Notes**, **Warp/Notes**, **Last Used**, or **No Change** for the **Zoom Toggle Track View** setting.

Separate Grid Settings When Zoomed In

When selected, the Grid setting stored with Zoom toggle is recalled when zoom toggling in. When this option is deselected, the same (current) grid setting is used whether zoom toggling in or out.

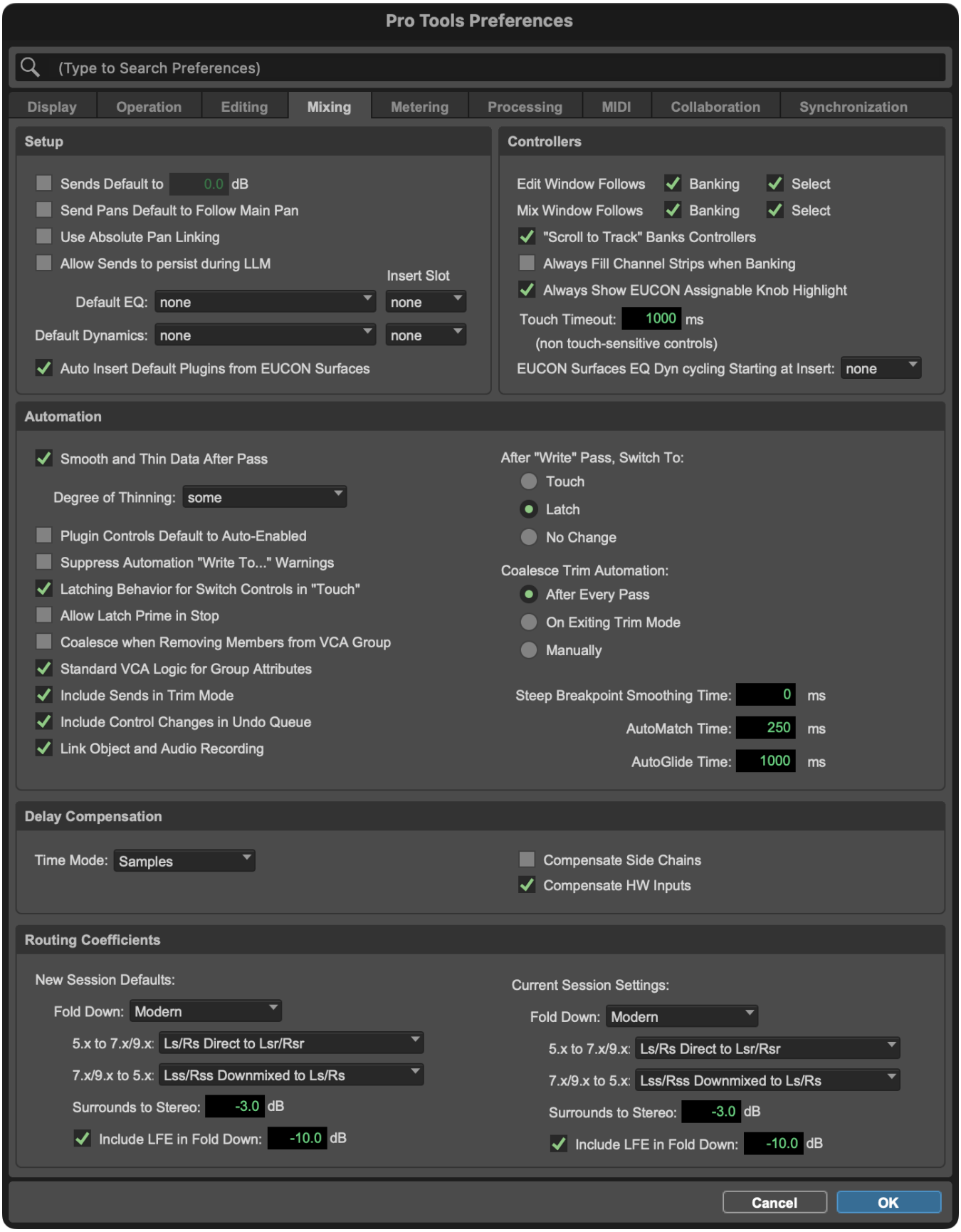
Zoom Toggle Follows Edit Selection

When selected, zoom toggle automatically follows the current Edit selection. When disabled, changing the Edit selection has no affect on the currently toggled-in track.

Levels of Undo

This preference sets the maximum number of actions that can be undone with the multiple undo feature. Setting this to a lower number can speed up the performance of slower computers. Pro Tools supports up to 64 levels of Undo.

Mixing Preferences



Setup

Sends Default to

Lets you enter a value from –∞ (–144) to +12 dB for the initial fader level of newly-created sends. The default setting is –∞ (no audible signal level).

Send Pans Default to Follow Main Pan

When selected, newly created sends have **Follow Main Pan** turned on, so the Send Pan controls follow the pan controls of the track. When not selected, newly created sends have **Follow Main Pan** turned off.

Use Absolute Pan Linking

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only) This option affects behavior of grouped pan controls.

- When selected, grouped pan controls do not maintain relative offsets when any of the grouped pan controls is adjusted. All grouped pan controls snap to the absolute value of the adjusted control.
- When not selected, grouped pan controls maintain relative offsets when any of the linked controls is adjusted.

Allow Sends to Persist During LLM

(Core Audio, ASIO, and HD Native Systems Only) All plugins and sends are bypassed by default when Low Latency Monitoring (LLM) is enabled (**Options > Low Latency Monitoring**). Enable the **Allow Sends to Persist During LLM** option to maintain sends audio signal output with Low Latency Monitoring. When this setting is enabled, plugins and sends remain active. Audio signal that is routed to the main outputs bypass the plugins in the signal flow, but any sends still receive the plugin affected audio along with any additional incurred latency. This option is most useful when using sends for delay and reverb effects while monitoring track input signals in Low Latency mode for recording.

Default EQ

This preference lets you choose any installed EQ plugin as the default, which makes it available for quick assignment, both on-screen and on ICON controllers (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only). On-screen, the plugin appears at the top of the Insert selector pop-up menu. On ICON controllers, the plugin appears first in the list of menu choices on the rotary encoders.

Insert Slot

The specified Insert slot (**none**, or **a–j**) is used (if it is available) when inserting the default EQ plugin from a S6 or S4 control surface. If the specified slot is not available, the next available plugin slot is used. When **None** is selected, S6 or S4 control surfaces insert the selected default plugin in the first available insert slot.

Default Dynamics

This preference lets you choose any installed Dynamics plugin as the default, which makes it available for quick assignment, both on-screen and on ICON controllers (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only). On-screen, the plugin appears at the top of the Insert selector pop-up menu. On ICON controllers, the plugin appears first in the list of menu choices on the rotary encoders.

Insert Slot

The specified Insert slot (**none**, or **a–j**) is used (if it is available) when inserting the default Dynamics plugin from a EUCON™ control surface. If the specified slot is not available, the next available plugin slot is used. When **None** is selected, EUCON control surfaces insert the selected default plugin in the first available insert slot.

Auto Insert Default Plugins from EUCON Surfaces

When selected, the default EQ and default Dynamics plugins are automatically available when creating new tracks from EUCON surfaces.

Controllers

Edit Window Follows

Banking

If you are using a supported control surface with Pro Tools, this option scrolls the Edit window to display the selected bank of tracks when you switch banks on the control surface, ensuring that the current bank is viewable on-screen.

Select

If you are using a supported control surface with Pro Tools, this option scrolls the track into view as the top-most track in the Edit window.

Mix Window Follows

Banking

If you are using a supported control surface with Pro Tools, this option scrolls the Mix window to display the selected bank of tracks when you switch banks on the control surface, ensuring that the current bank is viewable on-screen.

Select

If you are using a supported control surface with Pro Tools, this option scrolls the track into view as the left-most track in the Mix window.

"Scroll to Track" Banks Controllers

When using a control surface (such as D-Control) you can select this option to bank control surface faders to a numbered track when using the **`Scroll to Track`** command.

Always Fill Channel Strips When Banking

If you are using an ICON controller (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only), or other supported control surface, you can select this option to maximize the number of channels displayed when banking. This setting optimizes the Bank commands to prevent the display of a small number of channels at the extremes of the surface.

Always Show EUCON Assignable Knob Highlight

If you are using an Avid S4/S6, Dock, or Artist Transport and the EUCON Assignable Knob feature, you can use this setting to optimize indication of the EUCON Assignable Knob (this setting is enabled by default):

- When enabled, the Assignable Knob highlight is shown in Pro Tools whenever any parameter is hovered over, clicked, assigned, or adjusted.
- When not enabled, the Assignable Knob highlight is only shown around the currently assigned parameter (if any).

The blue highlight appears in Pro Tools whenever EUCON is enabled (Setup › Peripherals, Ethernet Controllers) even when using an Artist Mix or Artist Transport, which do not support the Assignable Knob.

Touch Timeout

If you are writing automation in Touch mode and you stop moving a non-touch sensitive fader or encoder, Pro Tools continues to write automation for the Touch Timeout value.

After the Touch Timeout period, writing of automation stops and the automation data returns to its previous automation value at the rate specified in the **AutoMatch Time** setting.

EUCON Surfaces EQ Dyn cycling Starting at Insert

Lets you specify the starting slot for EQ/Dyn cycling with S4, S6, and EuControl control surfaces to optimize EQ and Dyn cycling (via repeated pressing of the EQ or Dyn switches) to start from either a specific slot, or from the most recently cycled slot. Choose ‹none› to have Pro Tools begin cycling from most recently cycled slot.

Automation

Smooth and Thin Data After Pass

When selected, Pro Tools automatically smooths and then applies the specified amount of thinning to the automation data created in an automation pass.

Degree of Thinning

Specifies the amount of thinning performed on automation data when you using the Thin Automation command, or if you have selected the **Smooth and Thin Data After Pass** option.

Plugin Controls Default to Auto-Enabled

When selected, all applicable controls of newly added plugins are enabled for automation. When not selected, the controls of newly added plugins must be manually enabled for automation.

Suppress Automation “Write To” Warnings

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only) When selected, Pro Tools suppresses the warnings that appear after invoking any of the **Write Automation To Start**, **Selection**, **End**, or **Punch** commands and then stopping the transport.

Latching Behavior for Switch Controls in “Touch”

This option determines the behavior of switch-type controls (such as mute or plugin bypass) when writing automation in Touch mode.

- When selected, controls in Touch mode will latch in their current state. If an existing breakpoint is encountered, writing of automation stops. If the transport is stopped while writing, the control will AutoMatch to the underlying value.
- When not selected, controls in Touch mode will not latch.

Allow Latch Prime in Stop

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only) When selected and any tracks are in Latch mode, any automation-enabled controls on those tracks can be set to new values while the transport is stopped by touching or moving controls, to prepare for the next automation pass.

Coalesce when Removing Members from VCA Group

This option determines the behavior when removing member tracks from a VCA-controlled group.

- When selected, any automation on the VCA Master is automatically coalesced (without confirmation) to its member tracks when the tracks are removed from the group.
- When not selected, a confirmation dialog lets you choose whether or not to coalesce the VCA Master automation to the member tracks.

Standard VCA Logic for Group Attributes

This option determines which Mix group attributes may be selected in the Group dialog when the group is assigned to a VCA Master.

- When selected, the Main Volume, Mute, Solo, Record Enable, and Input Monitoring controls on member tracks follow the VCA Master only and are not available to be independently linked. (This emulates the behavior of analog console VCA masters.)
- When deselected, the Main Volume, Mute, Solo, Record Enable, and Input Monitoring controls follow the VCA Master, but also remain available for independent linking with groups.

Include Sends in Trim Mode

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only) This option determines the Trim status of Send faders when a track is put in Trim mode.

- When selected, Send faders go into Trim mode along with the Main Volume fader.
- When deselected, the Main Volume fader goes into Trim mode, but the Send fader stays in the corresponding standard Automation mode.

Include Control Changes in Undo Queue

This option determines whether certain mixer control changes, such as moving a fader or pan control, are entered into the Undo queue.

- When selected, mixer control changes appear in the Undo queue, and are undone if any prior operation is undone.
- When deselected, mixer control changes will not appear in the undo queue, allowing you to undo other types of operations without losing the current mixer settings.

Any set to default operations that affect mixer controls will be entered into the Undo queue.

Link Object and Audio Recording

When this option is enabled, Pro Tools links recording and monitoring of audio and metadata for tracks with object output assignments.

After Write Pass, Switch To Options

These options select the Automation mode that Pro Tools tracks automatically switches to after an automation pass in Write (or Write Trim) mode. Select one of the following options:

Touch

Switches to Touch mode after an automation pass in Write (or Write Trim) mode.

Latch

Switches to Latch mode after an automation pass in Write (or Write Trim) mode.

No Change

Stays in Write mode after an automation pass in Write (or Write Trim) mode.

After an automation pass in Write Trim mode, tracks automatically switch to the Trim version of the specified setting.

Coalesce Trim Automation Options (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

These options determine when Trim automation is committed to the main automation playlist on a track.

After Every Pass

Sets Trim automation to coalesce when the transport is stopped at the end of each Trim automation pass. No Composite Playlist is indicated.

On Exiting Trim Mode

Sets Trim Automation to coalesce on a track when the track is taken out of Trim mode. A Composite Playlist can be viewed before committing Trim moves.

Manually

Trim Automation can be coalesced only with the **`Coalesce Trim Automation`** command. A Composite Playlist can be viewed before committing Trim moves.

Steep Breakpoint Smoothing Time

This setting lets you specify a minimum delay time in milliseconds to help avoid pops or clicks due to abrupt changes in volume or pan automation. If there are any automation breakpoints with large value differences that are extremely close together, this preference applies a slight delay between those breakpoints to smooth the audio ramp between them. The default value of 0 applies no delay between breakpoints. Enter a minimum delay in milliseconds. For any volume or pan automation breakpoints that are closer together than the specified value, the second breakpoint will be delayed by the specified value. Breakpoints that are already separated by at least the specified amount are not affected.

AutoMatch Time

If you are writing automation in Touch mode, when you release a fader or control, writing of automation stops and the automation data returns to its previous value. The rate of return to the previous value is set by the AutoMatch Time.

AutoGlide Time

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only) This setting specifies how quickly Pro Tools transitions (glides) from one automation value to another, when AutoGlide mode is used.

Delay Compensation

Delay Compensation Time Mode

When Delay Compensation is enabled (**`Options > Delay Compensation`**), this option lets you choose whether information in the Delay Manager is displayed in milliseconds or samples.

Compensate Side Chains

When Delay Compensation is enabled (**`Options > Delay Compensation`**), this option applies Delay Compensation to plugin side chain signals.

Compensate HW Inputs

When Delay Compensation is enabled (**`Options > Delay Compensation`**), this option applies Delay Compensation to hardware inputs.

Routing Coefficients

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

The Routing Coefficients settings are used for all fold down and fan out routing in the session. These settings affect what happens in the following circumstances:

- Internal routing within the session of an output or send to a bus with a different channel width.
- Mapping a bus to an output with a different channel width.
- Signal sent to the Audition path.
- Signal sent to the AFL/PFL path.

New Session Defaults and Current Session Settings

The **`New Session Defaults`** settings for Routing Coefficients are only saved with new sessions and new session templates. Sessions created from existing templates retain the settings used to create the template. Changing the New Session Defaults settings does not affect the currently open session

The **`Current Session Settings`** show the Routing Coefficients settings saved with the session. Changing the Current Session Settings affects the currently open session and are saved with it.

Fold Down

Classic

Uses the legacy coefficients used in earlier versions of Pro Tools and cannot be edited. All sessions created in versions of Pro Tools prior to 2021.10 default to using the Classic coefficients.

Modern

Uses an updated set of coefficients. You can also edit certain important coefficients to suit your needs.

5.x to 7.x/9.x

Select one of the following options to determine what happens to the left and right surround channels of 5.x or Quad signal when routing to a 7.x or 9.x path (including 7.1.2 to 9.1.6):

Ls/Rs Direct to Lss/Rss

Ls/Rs are sent to Lss/Rss at unity. No signal is sent to Lsr/Rsr.

Ls/Rs Direct to Lsr/Rsr

Ls/Rs are sent to Lsr/Rsr at unity. No signal is sent to Lss/Rss.

Ls/Rs Split to Lss/Rss and Lsr/Rsr

Ls/Rs are sent to both Lss/Rss and Lsr/Rsr at –3 dB.

7.x/9.x to 5.x

Select one of the following options to determine what happens to the left and right side surround channels of a 7.x or 9.x (including 7.1.2 to 9.1.6) signal, when routing to a 5.x or Quad path:

Lss/Rss Downmixed to Ls/Rs

Lss/Rss and Lsr/Rsr are both sent to Ls/Rs at –3 dB.

Lss/Rss Split to L/R and Ls/Rs

Lss/Rss is sent to both L/R and Ls/Rs at –3 dB. Lsr/Rsr is sent to Ls/Rs at unity.

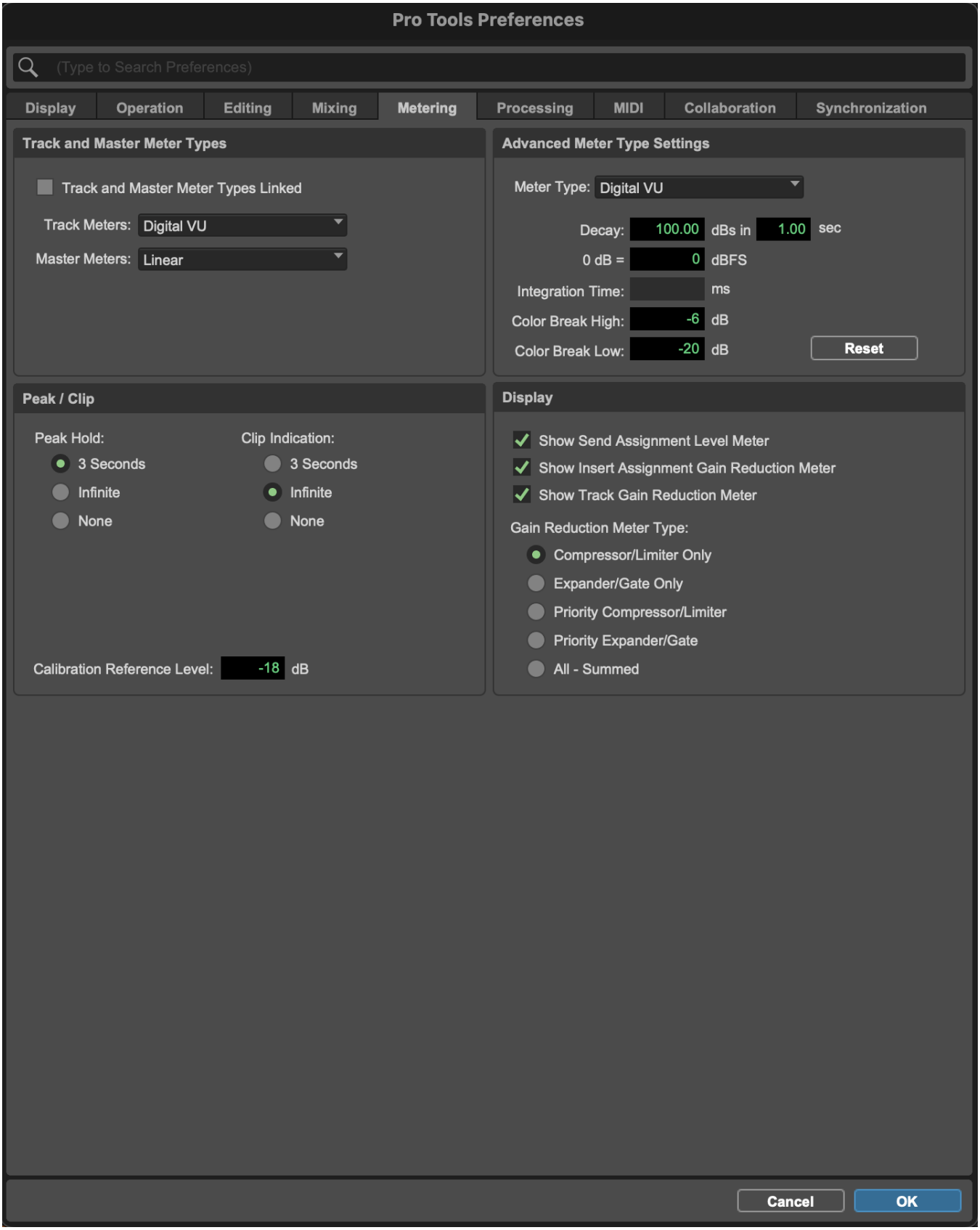
Surround to Stereo

Enter the desired gain reduction value for down mixing surround channels to stereo. This also controls the downmix level for height channels formats such as 7.1.2.

Include LFE When Folding Down

Enable this option to include the LFE channel when folding down. Enter the desired gain reduction value for the LFE signal.

Metering Preferences



Metering preferences (Pro Tools Ultimate shown)

Track and Master Meter Types

The Track Meters section of the Mixing preferences let you set the Meter Type and associated metering ballistics and displays settings for audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks. The Master Meters sections let you configure these settings independently for Master Fader tracks.

Track and Master Meter Types Linked

Enable the **Track and Master Meter Types Linked** option to ensure that Track (audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks) and Master (Master Fader) meters always use the same Meter Type setting. Disable this option if you want the Track and Master meters to use different Meter Type settings (for example, you may want to use VU metering for your Track meters, but Peak for your Master meters).

Track Meters and Master Meters

Pro Tools lets you choose from several industry standard meter types for visually monitoring audio levels. You can link the Track (audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks) and Master (Master Fader) meter settings, or you can set them independently of one another. The following **Meter Type** options are available:

Sample Peak

The scale and the decay time is calculated in dB/second, which results in slower decay in metering compared to previous versions of Pro Tools. The **Sample Peak** option is the only **Meter Type** that has a 0 sample integration time, and as such shows all dynamic activity of the digital signal at every moment in time.

Pro Tools Classic

Provides legacy Pro Tools scale and metering ballistics.

Linear

Use **Linear** for post-production and music mixing scenarios. Using a fast decay time, **Linear** provides direct one-to-one linear metering of sample peaks in the audio signal with a metering range down to –40 dB. This offers higher metering resolution closer to 0 dB (which can be particularly useful for mixing and mastering).

Linear (Extended)

Provides the same ballistics as Linear, but the meter scaling extends to –60 dB.

RMS

Provides metering ballistics that display the average loudness (Root Mean Square of the signal) over a range of time. Peak metering, on the other hand, displays the peak signal level at any given point in time.

VU

Popular for music and dialog mixing, the VU scale used in Pro Tools is extended on the low end from –23 dB to –40 dB to accommodate a wide range of material without the need for stage re-calibration.

Digital VU

Provides the default for Pro Tools metering and uses VU ballistics with a modern digital scale.

PPM Digital

Popular in Europe and Asia with broadcasters, and also with US Film consoles (such as the Avid System5 consoles), **PPM Digital** has a similar integration time to **Sample Peak** metering, but different scales and decay times.

The **PPM Digital** option, like all other **Meter Type** options besides **Sample Peak**, does not report every transient (such as a series of very fast transients). However, even though it under-reports the actual digital dynamic range, it more closely matches human hearing of loudness over time.

PPM BBC

Adopted by commercial broadcasters in the UK, BBC scaling uses 4 dB spacing between scale marks. Other organizations around the world, including the EBU, CBC, and ABC used the same dynamics but with slightly different scales.

PPM Nordic

A Scandinavian variant of the DIN PPM has the same integration and return times but a different scale, with "TEST" corresponding to Alignment Level (0 dBu) and +9 corresponding to Permitted Maximum Level (+9 dBu). Compared to the DIN scale, the Nordic scale is more logarithmic and covers a somewhat smaller dynamic range.

PPM EBU

Is a variant of the British PPM designed for the control of program levels in international program exchange (Type IIb PPM in IEC 60268-10). It is identical to the British PPM (BBC) except for the meter scale. The meter scale is calibrated in dB relative to the Alignment Level, which is marked "TEST." There are ticks at 2 dB intervals and at +9 dB, which corresponds to the Permitted Maximum Level.

PPM DIN

Used in German broadcasting, the nominal analog signal corresponding to Permitted Maximum Level was standardized by ARD at 1.55 volts (+6 dBu), and this is the usual sensitivity of a DIN-type PPM for an indication of 0 dB. The Alignment Level (−3 dBu) is shown on the meter by a scale mark at −9.

K-12

The K-scales are RMS based scales with an integrated sample peak meter as a secondary value. K-Scales are popular with music mixers that are looking for a meaningful indication of overall loudness. K-12 should be reserved strictly for audio to be dedicated to broadcast, though broadcast recording engineers may choose K-14 if they feel it fits their program material.

K-14

Use K-14 for mastering when working in a calibrated mastering suite.

K-20

Using K-20 during mix encourages a clean-sounding mix that is advantageous to the mastering engineer. At that point, the producer and mastering engineer should discuss whether the program should be converted to K-14, or remain at K-20. If mixing to analog tape, work at K-20, and realize that the peak levels off tape will not exceed about +14.

K-scale meters are RMS based scales with an integrated sample peak meter as a secondary value. For more information about K-scale metering, see the paper "An Integrated Approach to Metering, Monitoring, and Leveling Practices" by Bob Katz, Digital Domain, Inc.

VENUE Peak

Provides the same ballistics as **Sample Peak**, but with VENUE meter scaling to +20 dB.

VENUE RMS

Provides the same ballistics as **RMS**, but with VENUE meter scaling to +20 dB.

Advanced Meter Type Settings

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

The Advanced Meter Type settings let you adjust the scale and ballistics of the selected **Meter Type**. These settings update automatically to match the specifications of the selected **Meter Type**. In some system configurations you may want to make manual adjustments to these settings in order to ensure that Pro Tools metering matches the meter response your broadcast console (some broadcast consoles use variations from the standard Meter Types that are provided in Pro Tools). However, in most cases these settings should be left at the default values.

Decay

The **Decay** settings determine the decibel range (**dBs**) that the meters fall at the specified rate in **seconds** after peak level is registered. For some Meter Types, these settings are not adjustable (such as **VU**).

0 dBFS

The **0 dBFS** setting determines the unity reference level for the meter scale in decibels compared to digital 0 dB. Exceeding this level should result in clipping at the digital to analog converters or to the specified clipping level for broadcast. For some Meter Types, this setting is not adjustable (such as **K-meters**).

Integration Time

The **Integration Time** setting determines the amount of time it takes, in milliseconds, to average the peak level as registered on the meter display. You can think of this as the attack time for registering peak levels on the meters. For some Meter Types, this setting is not adjustable (such as **Peak**).

Color Break High

The **Color Break High** setting determines the high point in dB where the color changes for metering. Typically, this will be the ceiling level for the current **Meter Type**. When this level is exceeded clipping will occur. Levels registering on the meters between the **Color Break High** setting and the **Color Break Low** setting should be considered the “sweet spot” for the loudness of the program material.

Color Break Low

The **Color Break Low** setting determines the low point in dB where the color changes for metering. Typically, this will be the minimum level for the current **Meter Type**. Use this setting to provide a visual indication in the meters for the lowest level of the dynamic range of the program material for the intended delivery format (such as film, DVD, CD, MP3, or broadcast).

Reset

Click the **Reset** button to reset the Advanced Meter Type preferences to the default settings for the selected **Meter Type**.

Peak/Clip

Peak Hold Options

These options determine how long the peak indicators on track meters stay lit after a peak is detected.

- 3 Seconds

  When selected, track meters display the last peak level for three seconds.
- Infinite

When selected, track meters display the last peak level until you click them to clear them.

- None

  When selected, track meters do not hold the peak level.

Clip Indication Options

These options determine how long the clip indicators on plugin, send, and track meters stay lit after a clip is detected.

- 3 Seconds

  When selected, meters display the last clip indication for three seconds.

- Infinite

  When selected, meters display the last clip indications until you click them to clear them.

- None

  When selected, meters do not hold the clip indication.

Display

The Display section of the Metering preferences provides options for configuring the display of the new Gain Reduction meters on tracks and in sends.

Show Send Assignment Level Meter

Enable the **`Show Send Assignment Level Meter`** option to show Level meters in Sends Assignments on audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks in the Mix window. When this option is disabled, level meters are not displayed in Send Assignments on tracks.

Show Track Gain Reduction Meter

Enable the **`Show Track Gain Reductions Meter`** option to show Gain Reduction meters in tracks on audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, and Master Fader tracks in the Mix window. Note that even when this option is enabled, Gain Reduction meters are only displayed for those tracks with supported dynamics plugin inserted. When this option is disabled, Gain Reduction meters are not displayed on tracks.

Show Insert Assignments Gain Reduction Meter

Enable the **`Show Insert Assignment Gain Reductions Meter`** option to show Gain Reduction meters in Insert Assignments on audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, and Master Fader tracks in the Mix window. Note that even when this option is enabled, Gain Reduction meters are only displayed for those tracks with supported dynamics plugin inserted. When this option is disabled, Gain Reduction meters are not displayed in Insert Assignments on tracks.

Gain Reduction Meter Type

The **`Gain Reduction Meter Type`** settings determine which dynamics processing plugins display Gain Reduction meters on audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, and Master Fader tracks in the Mix window. Note that even Gain Reduction Meters are only displayed for those tracks with supported dynamics plugin of the corresponding type inserted.

Compressor/Limiter

When selected, only gain reduction applied by Compressor/Limiter plugins on tracks are displayed in the gain reduction meter.

Expander/Gate

When selected, only gain reduction applied by Expander/Gate plugins on tracks are displayed in the gain reduction meter.

Priority Compressor/Limiter

When selected, if a Compressor/Limiter is inserted on a track, only gain reduction applied by Compressor/Limiter plugins is displayed in the gain reduction meter. However, if no Compressor/Limiter plugin is on a track, any gain reduction applied by other dynamics processing plugins on the track is displayed on that track.

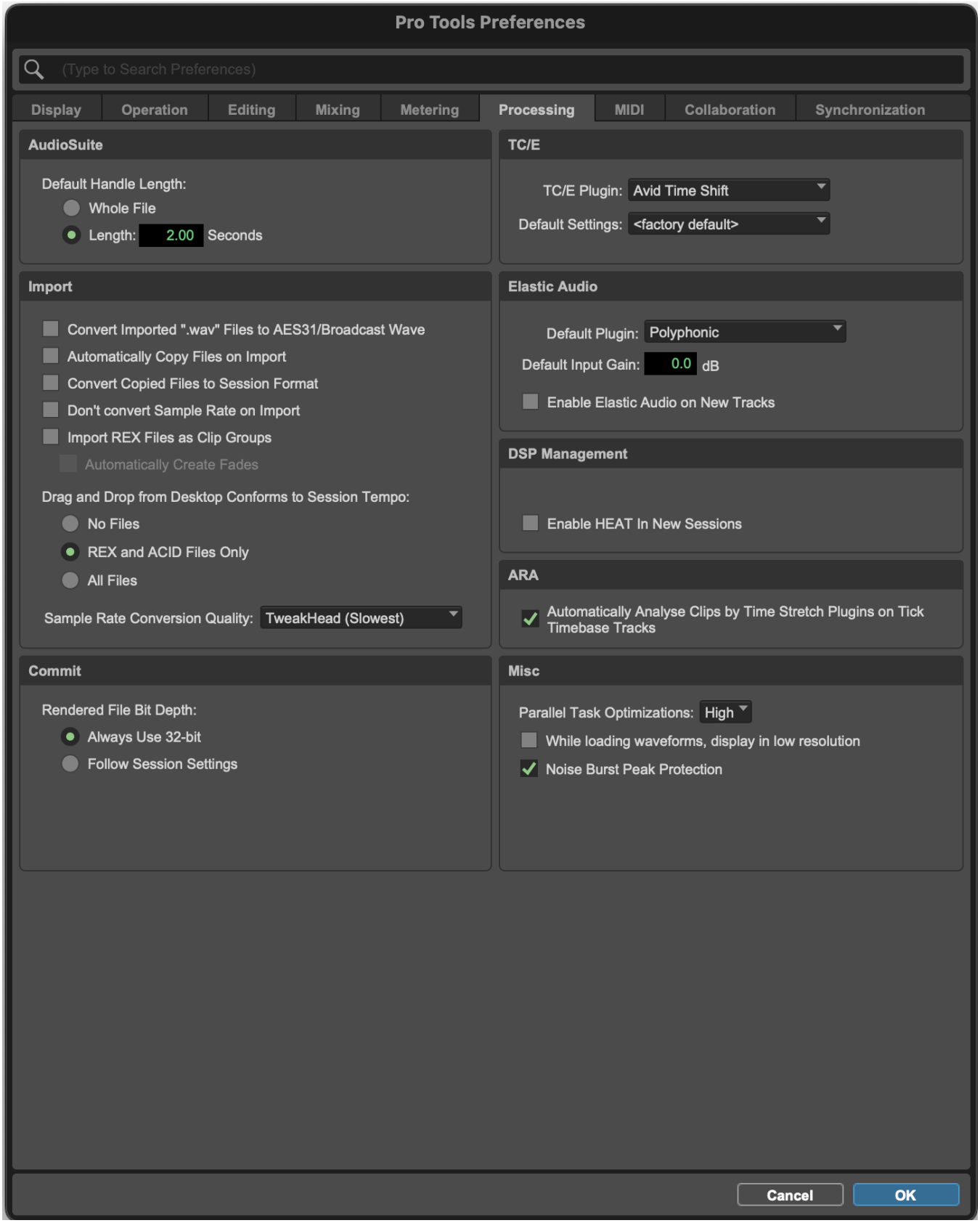
Priority Expander/Gate

When selected, if an Expander/Gate plugin is inserted on a track, only gain reduction applied by Expander/Gate plugins is displayed in the gain reduction meter. However, if no Expander/Gate plugin is on a track, any gain reduction applied by other dynamics processing plugins on the track is displayed on that track.

All – Summed

When selected, the sum of all gain reduction applied on a track by dynamics plugins inserted on that track is displayed in the gain reduction meter.

Processing Preferences



AudioSuite

Default Handle Length

The Default Handle Length options let you set the default length for AudioSuite and clip gain handles.

Whole File

When enabled, AudioSuite and clip gain rendering renders the whole file referenced by the selection or clip.

Length

This setting lets you specify the default Handle Length (from 0.00 to 60.00 seconds) for AudioSuite and clip gain rendering. AudioSuite and clip gain rendering renders the selection plus any additional available audio up to the specified Handle Length.

Import

Convert Imported "WAV" Files To AES31/BroadcastWave

When selected, this option applies to all newly imported WAV files, making them compliant with the AES31/EBU Broadcast standard.

Automatically Copy Files on Import

When selected, all audio files that are imported by dragging and dropping are copied to the current session's Audio Files folder, regardless of whether the files need to be converted to the current session's file type, bit depth or sample rate. Additionally, when selected, the **`Copy from Source Media`** option is automatically enabled in the Import Session Data dialog. The **`Automatically Copy Files on Import`** preference does not affect the **`Import Audio`** command.

Convert Copied Files to Session Format

When selected, files that have different file formats from the current session file format are copied and converted to the current session audio file format on import. For example, if the session file format is WAV and you import an AIF, the files is copied and converted to WAV on import. When this option is not selected, copied files retain their original format (unless that file format is incompatible with Pro Tools, in which case it must be converted).

Do Not Convert Sample Rate on Import

When selected, files with different sample rates than the session sample rate are not automatically converted when imported into the session. This means that files with mismatched sample rates playback at a different speed (and pitch transpositions than when they were originally recorded (or converted).

Import REX Files as Clip Groups

When selected, REX flies are imported as clip groups, all the underlying slices are imported as individual clips contained within the clip group. When this option is not selected, importing REX files into a session converts them to the session's audio file format, the individual slices are consolidated, and the slice information is used for Elastic Audio analysis. These files remain tick-based after import and conversion.

Automatically Create Fades

When selected, crossfades are applied automatically to the sliced clips within clip groups created by importing REX files. If the **`Import REX Files as Clip Groups`** option is not selected, the **`Automatically Create Fades`** option is not available.

To change the default fade settings for REX files, click the REX button in the Default Fade Settings section on the Editing Preferences page.

Drag and Drop From Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo

The **Drag and Drop From Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo** options determine whether or not REX, ACID, and audio files are imported as tick-based Elastic Audio and conformed to the session tempo.

No Files

When enabled, REX and ACID files, and all other audio files are not conformed to the session tempo when imported by drag and drop from Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder. They are imported as sample-based files and converted to the sessions audio file format.

REX and ACID Files Only

When enabled, only REX and ACID files are conformed to the session tempo when imported by drag and drop from Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder. REX files are imported either as tick-based Elastic Audio or, if the **Import REX Files as Clip Groups** option is enabled, as tick-based clip groups.

All Files

When enabled, all audio files (including REX and ACID files) imported by drag and drop from Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder are imported as tick-based Elastic Audio and conform to the session tempo.

Sample Rate Conversion Quality

The **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** pop-up menu lets you select the default sample rate conversion quality for importing audio files by drag and drop from any Workspace browser, or Windows Explorer or Mac Finder. The higher the quality of sample rate conversion you select, the longer Pro Tools will take to process the audio file.

Commit

Rendered File Bit Depth

The **Rendered File Bit Depth** options determine the bit depth of new audio files created using the **Track Commit** command.

Always Use 32-bit

When selected, new audio files created using **Track Commit** command are 32-bit files regardless of the session bit depth.

Follow Session Settings

When selected, new audio files created using **Track Commit** command are the same bit depth as the session.

TC/E (Time Compression/Expansion)

TC/E Plugin

Lets you select the plugin used for Time Compression and Expansion when you edit audio with the Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool. This Trim tool works by using Time Compression/Expansion to match an audio clip to the length of another clip, a tempo grid, a video scene, or other reference point. The Time Shift plugin is selected by default.

Default Settings

Specifies the default settings used by the chosen Time Compression/Expansion plugin.

Elastic Audio

These preferences determine Elastic Audio usage and settings on new tracks, as well as for previewing and importing tick-based audio.

Default Plugin

Lets you select any Real-Time Elastic Audio plugin as the default for previewing and importing Elastic Audio. The selected default Elastic Audio plugin is also used when new tracks are created with the **Enable Elastic Audio on New Tracks** option enabled.

Default Input Gain

Lets you attenuate the signal input to Elastic Audio plugins by 0 to –6 dB for preview and import. If you experience clipping due to Elastic Audio processing during preview or after import, you may want to set the **Default Input Gain** to slightly attenuate the audio signal input for Elastic Audio processing. This preference also applies to any audio imported to an Elastic Audio-enabled track.

The Elastic Properties window inherits the **Default Input Gain** setting. To apply further clip-based input gain attenuation for Elastic Audio processing, select the clip and adjust the **Input Gain** setting in the Elastic Properties window (see "Elastic Properties Window" on page 1359).

Enable Elastic Audio on New Tracks

When selected, new tracks are created with Elastic Audio enabled. The selected default Elastic Audio plugin is used.

If the Enable Elastic Audio on New Tracks option is selected, you may want to also select the New Tracks Default to Tick Timebase option in the Editing Preferences page.

DSP Management

These preferences determine DSP management behavior for converting DSP plugins to Native and also for the HEAT software option.

Open Unresourced DSP Plugins as Native

(HDX Systems Only) When this option is enabled, any DSP plugins that exceed the available DSP processing are converted to Native format plugins wherever possible. When this option is disabled, any DSP plugins that exceed the available DSP processing are made inactive.

Enable HEAT in New Sessions

When enabled, new sessions are created with HEAT enabled for all audio tracks. When disabled, HEAT is disabled in new sessions by default. This option is only available if the HEAT software option is installed. For more information, see "HEAT" on page 1438.

ARA

Automatic Analysis on Tick-based Tracks

Enable the **Automatic Analysis on Tick-based Tracks** option to automatically analyze and stretch audio on tick-based tracks with ARA plugins.

Miscellaneous

Parallel Task Optimization

The **Parallel Task Optimization** preference lets you select the optimal possible number of parallel processing tasks that can happen at the same time on your computer. Relevant factors include how many core processors your computer has, how fast the processors are, how fast or how fragmented your hard

drives are, how fast your network storage connection is, and so on. The optimal possible number of parallel processing tasks is usually proportional to the number of core processors in your computer.

Affected parallel processing tasks include:

- Waveform calculation
- File indexing
- Rendering Clip Gain, Clip Effects, and Elastic Audio

Compare different settings to see what works best with your system.

Off

Only a single task is processed at a time

Low

Up to 4 tasks can be processed simultaneously

Med

Up to 6 tasks can be processed simultaneously

High

Up to 8 tasks can be processed simultaneously

While Loading Waveforms, Display in Low Resolution

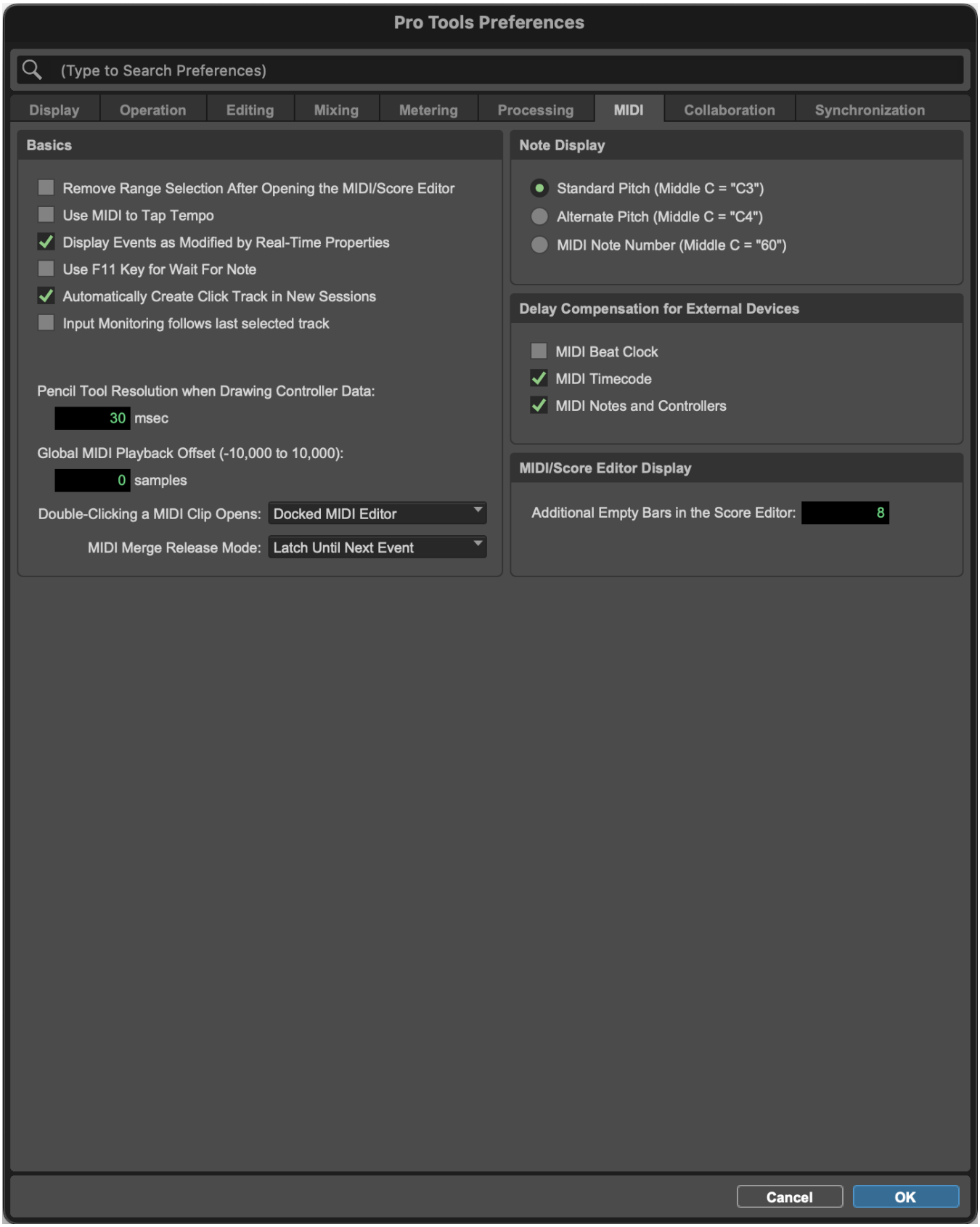
Enable this option to improve speed and performance when opening large sessions and when preforming actions such as continuous scrolling at extreme zoom levels. This can be especially helpful when working with network storage or using older non-solid-state drives. Waveforms will be rendered in low resolution until Pro Tools is able to complete reading the file from the Waveform cache, after which waveforms are displayed in full resolution.

Noise Burst Peak Protection

The **`Noise Burst Peak Protection`** option is designed to protect your ears from unexpected spikes in the audio signal, which may occur with certain plugins or other components in the signal chain. When enabled, signals above 20 dBFS are silenced automatically. Disabling this option allows for full 32-Bit floating point headroom, but removes protection against high signal-level noise bursts.

For HDX systems, if you have an open session, Pro Tools prompts you to close and reopen the session. Note that for Pro Tools | Carbon systems this option is always enabled and disabling it does not affect the output signal, though it does still affect the signal for internal buses.

MIDI Preferences



Basics

Remove Range Selection After Opening the MIDI/Score Editor

When selected, the MIDI Editor and Score Editor open with no Edit selection. When this option is disabled, the MIDI Editor and Score Editor open with the current Edit selection intact.

Use MIDI to Tap Tempo

When enabled, you can tap a MIDI keyboard to enter a new tempo value into a tempo field.

Display Events as Modified by Real-Time Properties

When enabled, Pro Tools displays the effects of Real-Time Properties in the Edit, MIDI Editor, and Score Editor windows, and the MIDI Event List.

Use F11 Key for Wait for Note

When enabled, pressing the F11 Function key puts MIDI recording in Wait for Note mode.

Automatically Create Click Track in New Sessions

When enabled, Pro Tools automatically creates a new click track in new sessions.

MIDI Input Monitoring Follows Selected Track

When enabled, Input Monitoring is automatically engaged whenever you select an Instrument track. If you then select a different Instrument track, Input Monitoring is moved to that track.

Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data

This option lets you set the default resolution for MIDI controller data created with the Pencil tool. Setting this to a lower resolution helps avoid creating controller data that is unnecessarily dense. The value range is from 1 to 100 milliseconds.

Global MIDI Playback Offset

This option lets you set an offset in samples to compensate for MIDI latency. Entering a value here has the same effect as setting an offset with the **`MIDI Track Offsets`** command. Offset values can be positive (later) or negative (earlier).

Double-Clicking a MIDI Clip Opens

This option lets you specify what happens when you double-click MIDI clips with the Grabber tool.

Docked MIDI Editor

Opens the MIDI clip in a Docked MIDI Editor window.

MIDI Editor

Opens the MIDI clip in a MIDI Editor window.

Score Editor

Opens the MIDI clip in the Score Editor window.

MIDI Event List

Opens the MIDI clip in the MIDI Event List.

Name Dialog

Opens the Name dialog for the MIDI clip.

MIDI Merge Release Mode

MIDI Merge Release mode determines how Pro Tools writes MIDI CC data when recording MIDI in MIDI Merge mode.

Latch

Continues writing the last value. Any existing events are overwritten until you stop recording.

Latch Until Next Event

Continues writing the last value until the next event even if you are still recording.

Note Display Options

These options set the reference for middle C as C3, C4, or MIDI note number 60.

Delay Compensation for External Devices Options

These options only apply when a **`Delay Compensation Engine`** is selected in the Playback Engine and **`Delay Compensation`** is enabled in Pro Tools. These options are distinct from the hardware offsets available for hardware inserts in the I/O Setup.

MIDI Timecode

When selected, Pro Tools applies Delay Compensation to Pro Tools-generated MIDI Timecode (MTC). Enable this option when synchronizing video to Pro Tools using MTC.

MIDI Beat Clock

When selected, Pro Tools applies Delay Compensation to Pro Tools-generated MIDI Beat Clock.

MIDI Notes and Controllers

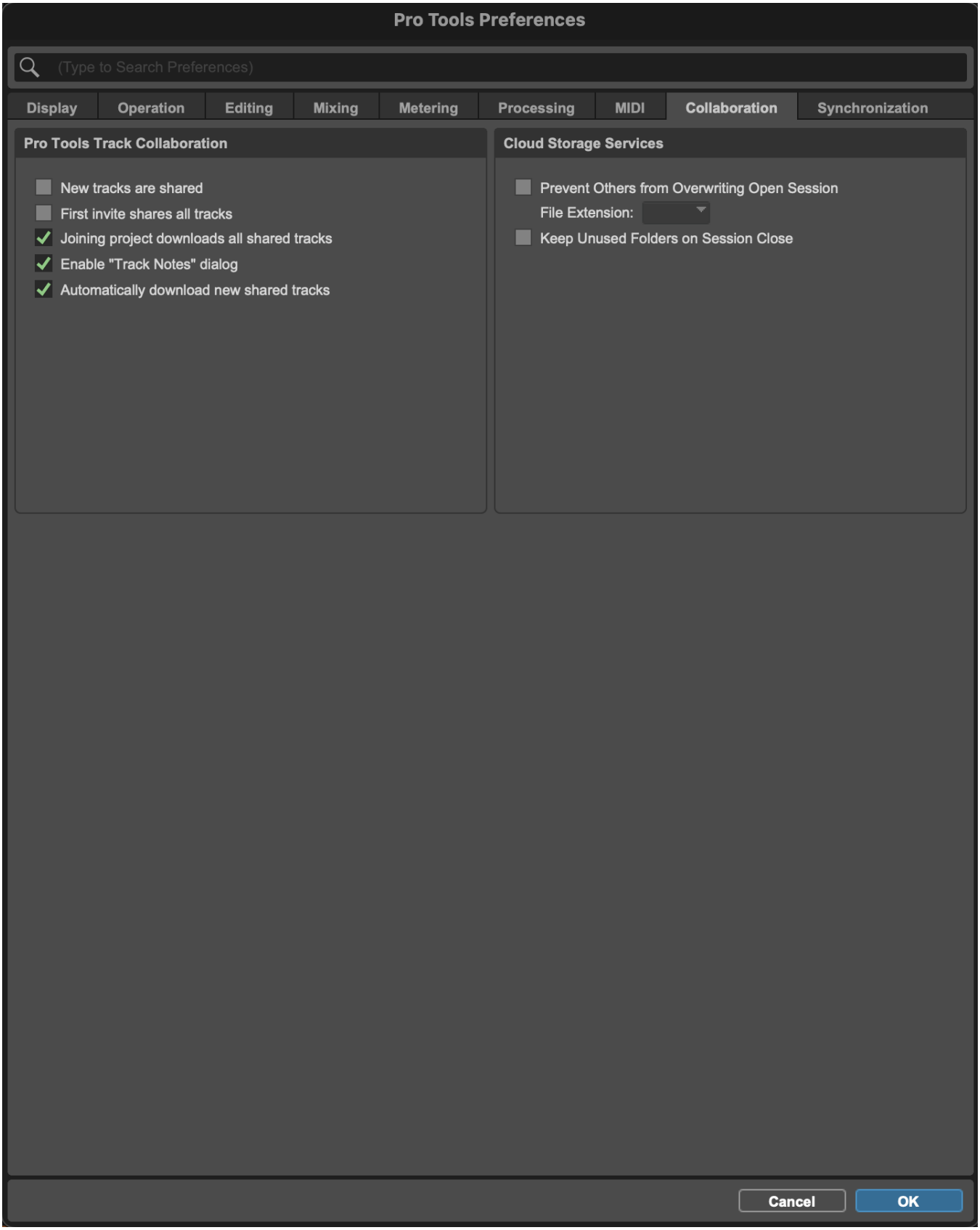
When selected, Pro Tools applies Delay Compensation to MIDI notes and MIDI controller data. This is useful when monitoring playback or when recording input from external MIDI devices.

MIDI/Score Editor Display

Additional Empty Bars in the Score Editor

This setting lets you specify the default number of empty bars that appear in the Score Editor window after the end of the last MIDI clip in the session.

Collaboration Preferences



Pro Tools Track Collaboration

New Tracks Are Shared

When enabled, new tracks are automatically shared when they are created.

First Invite Shares All Tracks

When enabled, all tracks are automatically shared when you invite anyone to join your project.

Joining Project Downloads All Shared Tracks

When enabled, all shared tracks in the project are automatically downloaded when you join a project.

Enable "Track Notes" Dialog

When enabled, the Track Notes dialog is presented whenever opening a project that reports information such as mismatched I/O Settings or missing plugins and so forth. When this option is disabled, the Track Notes dialog is suppressed when opening a project even there are reportable discrepancies.

Automatically Download New Shared Tracks

When enabled, any new remote shared tracks are automatically downloaded.

Cloud Storage Services

Prevent Others from Overwriting Open Session File Extension

When working with cloud based file synchronization services such as Dropbox, Google Drive, or Microsoft OneDrive, enable this option to prevent collaborators from overwriting your session. Pro Tools creates a temporary file next to the session file on both local and cloud storage as long as the session is open. If another user attempts to open the session, they are notified that you already have the session open and that they should Save As a new session to continue. When you close the session, the temp file is deleted so that others can take command of the session.

File Extension

The file extension for the temp file can be set to either **.tmp** or **.ptmp**. It is recommended that you use **.tmp** when working exclusively with NAS (Network Attached Storage) to ensure compatibility with any legacy Pro Tools systems (Pro Tools 10 to 2020.3) also operating on the same NAS. However, you must use **.ptmp** when working with Microsoft OneDrive as OneDrive ignores .tmp files. You can use either extension in most other cases. If you encounter a service that does not recognize the file extension, try using the other extension. The **File Extension** setting only dictates which extension Pro Tools creates when a session is opened. Pro Tools always respects either extension, and other users will be notified, even if their **Prevent Others from Overwriting Open Session** option is disabled. Unless all users are working exclusively with NAS, all users must be using Pro Tools 2020.5 or higher.

Note that a temp file (.tmp) is automatically generated if a session is opened on NAS, even if the **Prevent Others from Overwriting Open Session** option is disabled.

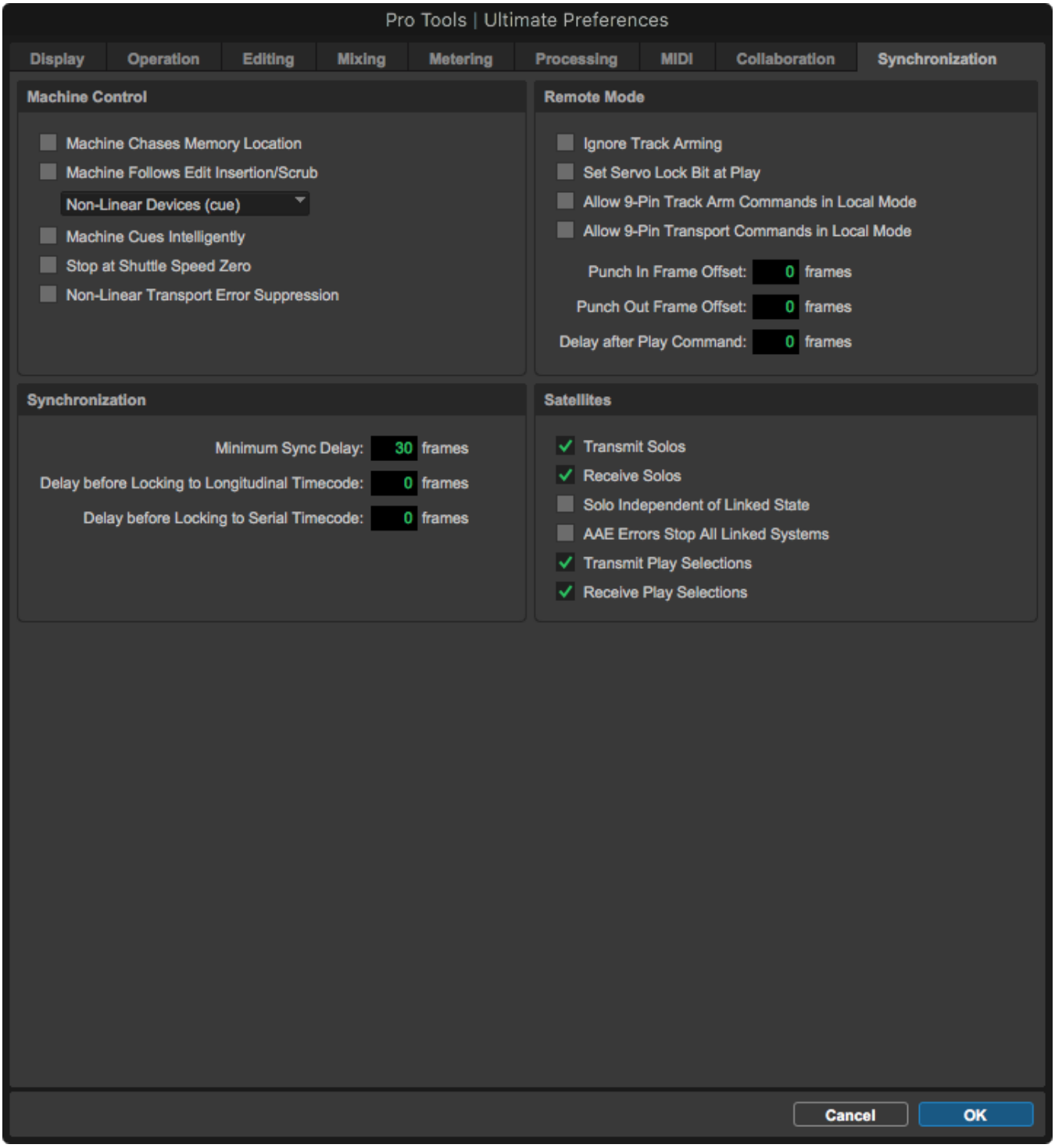
Keep Unused Folders on Session Close

It is helpful to minimize unnecessary file syncing operations when working with cloud-based file synchronization services. By default, when you close a session Pro Tools removes unused folders within the session folder that it automatically created when the session was opened. This includes, but is not limited to, Clip Groups and Video Files folders. Enable the **Keep Unused Folders on Session Close** option to leave these folders in place when closing your session, preventing additional synchronization operations.

Additionally, you can use the **Local Waveform Cache Versions** setting in the Operation Preferences to reduce unnecessary synchronization operations. When a value greater than zero is used, the session waveform cache is created and updated outside of the session folder. The waveform cache is then copied

into the session folder when you close the session. This lets you have a single synchronization operation instead of many while working on the session. Note that the **`Prevent Others from Overwriting Open Session`** option must also be enabled in order for this to work with non-NAS related storage.

Synchronization Preferences



Machine Control

Machine Chases Memory Location

When selected, navigating to a specific location in a session with a Memory Location causes a connected transport to chase to that location.

Machine Follows Edit Insertion/Scrub

When selected, navigating to a specific location in a session by moving the selection point or by scrubbing a track will cause a connected transport to chase to that location.

When the connected device is a linear device (such as a tape deck), select **`Linear Devices (jog)`** to set Pro Tools to send jog commands.

When the connected device is a non-linear device (such as a random-access video recorder or another Pro Tools system), select **`Non-Linear Devices (cue)`** to set Pro Tools to send cue commands.

Machine Cues Intelligently (HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

When selected, if you navigate to a cue point that is more than 10 seconds from the current location, Pro Tools will command a connected transport to fast wind to the new location at full speed to within 10 seconds of the cue point. Cueing will then slow to normal speed until the point is reached. This can significantly speed up tape cueing with certain video transports.

Stop at Shuttle Speed Zero (HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

Causes Pro Tools to send a Stop command whenever you stop shuttling. This is useful if you have a machine that requires an explicit stop command to park correctly.

Non-Linear Transport Error Suppression (HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

When Transport = Pro Tools, keeps Pro Tools from sending a Stop command when taken offline. This prevents Pro Tools from stopping any other 9-pin devices connected to the system.

Synchronization

Minimum Sync Delay

Sets the initial amount of prime time (in frames) your system's devices need to achieve synchronization "lock." This amount varies for each device. Pro Tools lock up delay is set by entering a value for **`Minimum Sync Delay`** in the Synchronization page of the Preferences. The lowest value available is 15 frames. Find the shortest possible lock-up time that your equipment can operate at consistently, and set this as the **`Minimum Sync Delay`**. On systems using MachineControl, enabling the **`Use Serial Timecode`** option will make machines lock up much faster. (Serial timecode requires both a qualified synchronization peripheral and external devices to be locked to house video reference.)

Delay Before Locking to Longitudinal Timecode (HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

Sets the amount of time (in frames) for Pro Tools to lock to incoming LTC. Use this option when locking Pro Tools to a stable timecode source (such as a non-linear tape machine or LTC generator) and not a linear tape machine.

Delay Before Locking to Serial Timecode (HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

Sets the amount of time (in frames) for Pro Tools to wait before attempting to lock to machines that issue servo lock messages. This setting allows time for the servo mechanisms to achieve stable lock.

Remote Mode

(HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

Ignore Track Arming

Sets Pro Tools to ignore incoming track arming (record enable) commands. This is useful if you are using a master controller to arm tracks on other machines, but you do not want to arm tracks in Pro Tools.

Set Servo Lock Bit at Play

Enable this option when using a synchronizer to control Pro Tools in Remote mode to minimize lock-up times during recording.

Allow 9-Pin Track Arm Commands in Local Mode

Sets Pro Tools to respond to incoming track arming (record enable) commands even when the system is not in Remote mode. This is useful if you are using a paddle device to control Pro Tools track arming or punching.

Allow 9-Pin Transport Commands in Local Mode

Sets Pro Tools to respond to incoming transport commands even when the system is not in Remote mode. This is useful when using Satellite Link in conjunction with a 9-pin controller. You can receive the transport controls from the 9-pin controller, but not experience the lag-time associated with a 9-pin device.

Punch In Frame Offset

Sets an offset (in frames) to compensate for punch in timing advances or delays.

Punch Out Frame Offset

Sets an offset (in frames) to compensate for punch out timing advances or delays.

Delay After Play Command

Sets the amount of time (in frames) for Pro Tools to wait after receiving a Play command before starting the audio engine. This can prevent false starts when locking to synchronizers that are not fully supported by Pro Tools.

Satellites

(HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

Satellite Link lets you link up to 12 Pro Tools HD systems, or 11 Pro Tools HD systems and an Avid Video Satellite (Media Composer) or a Pro Tools Video Satellite system, over an Ethernet network so that you can cue, play, and stop the transport, make play selections, and solo tracks across any of the systems from any linked workstation.

Transmit Solos

Causes a linked Pro Tools system to send the solo status of its tracks to all other linked Pro Tools systems. On other linked systems that are set to receive solos, tracks follow solo behavior as if the solo were on the local system.

Receive Solos

Causes a linked Pro Tools system to receive solos from all other linked Pro Tools systems that are set to transmit solo status of their tracks. Tracks on the receiving system follows solo behavior as if the solos were on the local system.

Solo Independent of Linked State

Causes a Pro Tools system to send the solo status of its tracks to other satellite systems even when it is unlinked. This allows control of solo status across systems even when transport control is not enabled.

AAE Errors Stop All Linked Systems

Causes an AAE error on any linked Pro Tools system to stop the transport on all linked systems. When this option is not selected, linked systems will not stop if an AAE error occurs on one system.

Transmit Play Selections

Causes a linked Pro Tools system to send the Edit window selection to all other linked Pro Tools systems. On other linked systems that are set to receive play selections, the selection is mirrored in the Edit window.

Receive Play Selections

Causes a linked Pro Tools system to receive Edit window selections from all other linked Pro Tools systems that are set to transmit play selections.

Global and Local Preferences

Pro Tools preferences are either *global* (system-wide) or *local* (for the current session or project only).

Global (System-Wide) Preferences

Global preferences are applied to all sessions. These preferences become the default preferences for any existing sessions that you subsequently open or any new sessions that are created.

Local (Current Session) Preferences

Local preferences are applied to the current session (if one is open). Local preferences are not applied to older sessions that are subsequently opened.

Preferences and New Sessions

New sessions use global preference settings, plus the most recent local preference settings. The most recent local settings refer to the last open session (unless subsequent changes were made in the Preferences from the application window).

Local (Session or Project Only) Preferences

All Preferences are global (system-wide), except for the following, which are local:

- Display Preferences
  - Edit Window Default Length
  - Always Display Marker Colors
  - Default Track Color Coding options
  - Default Clip Color Coding options
- Operation Preferences
  - Latch Forward/Rewind
  - Custom Shuttle Lock Speed
  - Custom FF/REW Speed
  - Back/Forward Amount (Pro Tools Ultimate only)
  - PEC/Direct Style Input Monitoring (Pro Tools Ultimate only)
  - DestructivePunch File Length (Pro Tools Ultimate only)

  - Clip Auto Fade In/Out Length (Pro Tools Ultimate only)
  - Delay Comp Time Mode
  - Compensate side chains (HDX systems only)
- Editing Preferences
  - None
- Mixing Preferences
  - Coalesce When Removing Members from VCA Group (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Metering Preferences
  - None
- Processing Preferences
  - Convert Imported “WAV” Files To AES31/BroadcastWave
- MIDI Preferences
  - Display Events as Modified by Real-Time Properties
  - Automatically Create Click Track in New Sessions
  - Default Thru Instrument
  - Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data
  - Delay for External Devices Options
- Collaboration Preferences
  - None
- Synchronization Preferences
  - None

9 Peripherals

The settings in the Peripherals dialog define how Pro Tools works with various audio, synchronization and controller devices, as well as with VENUE systems.

To configure settings for Pro Tools peripherals:

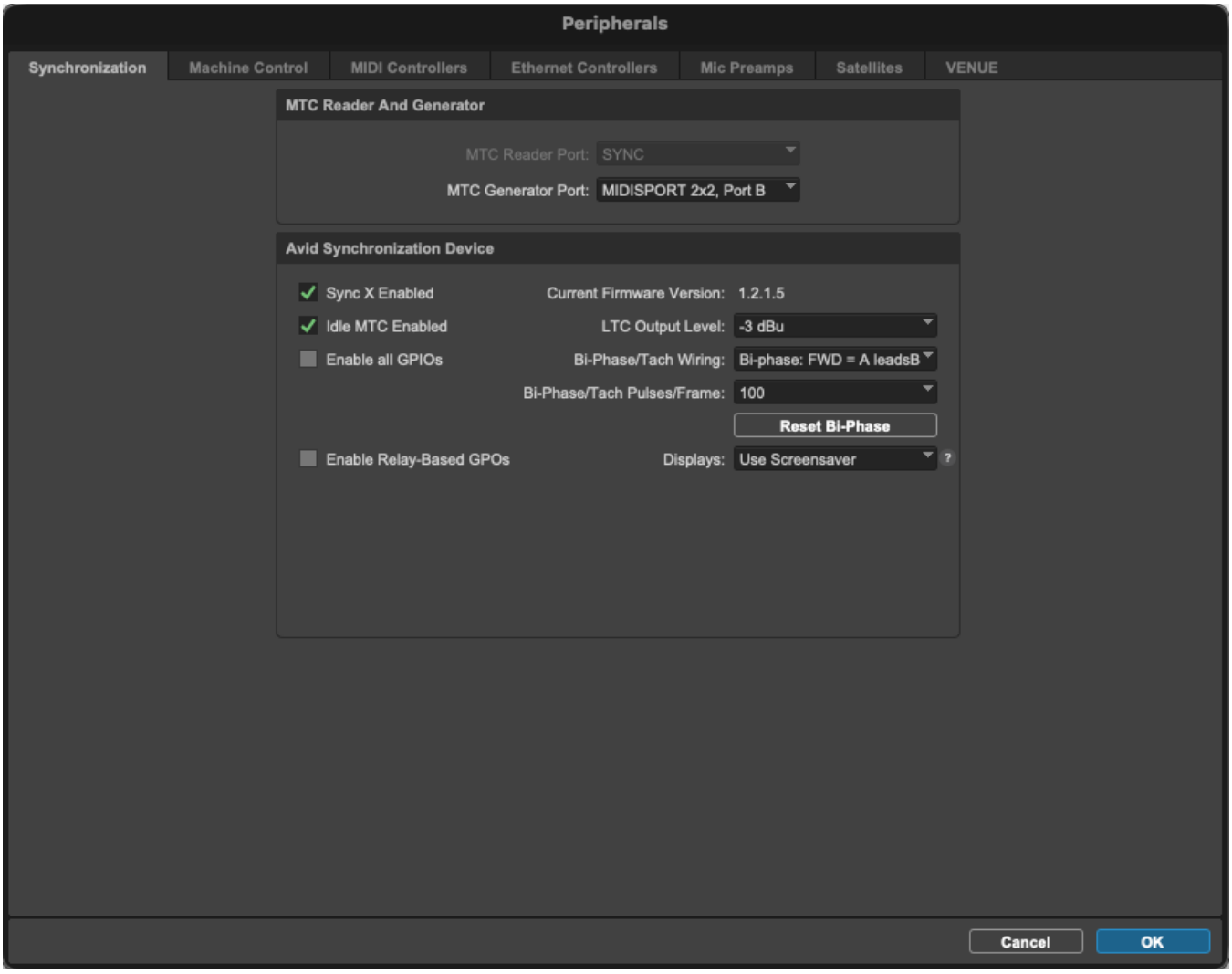
1. Choose **Setup > Peripherals**.
2. Click the tab for the type of peripheral you want to configure.
3. Change the settings.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the Peripherals dialog.

Synchronization

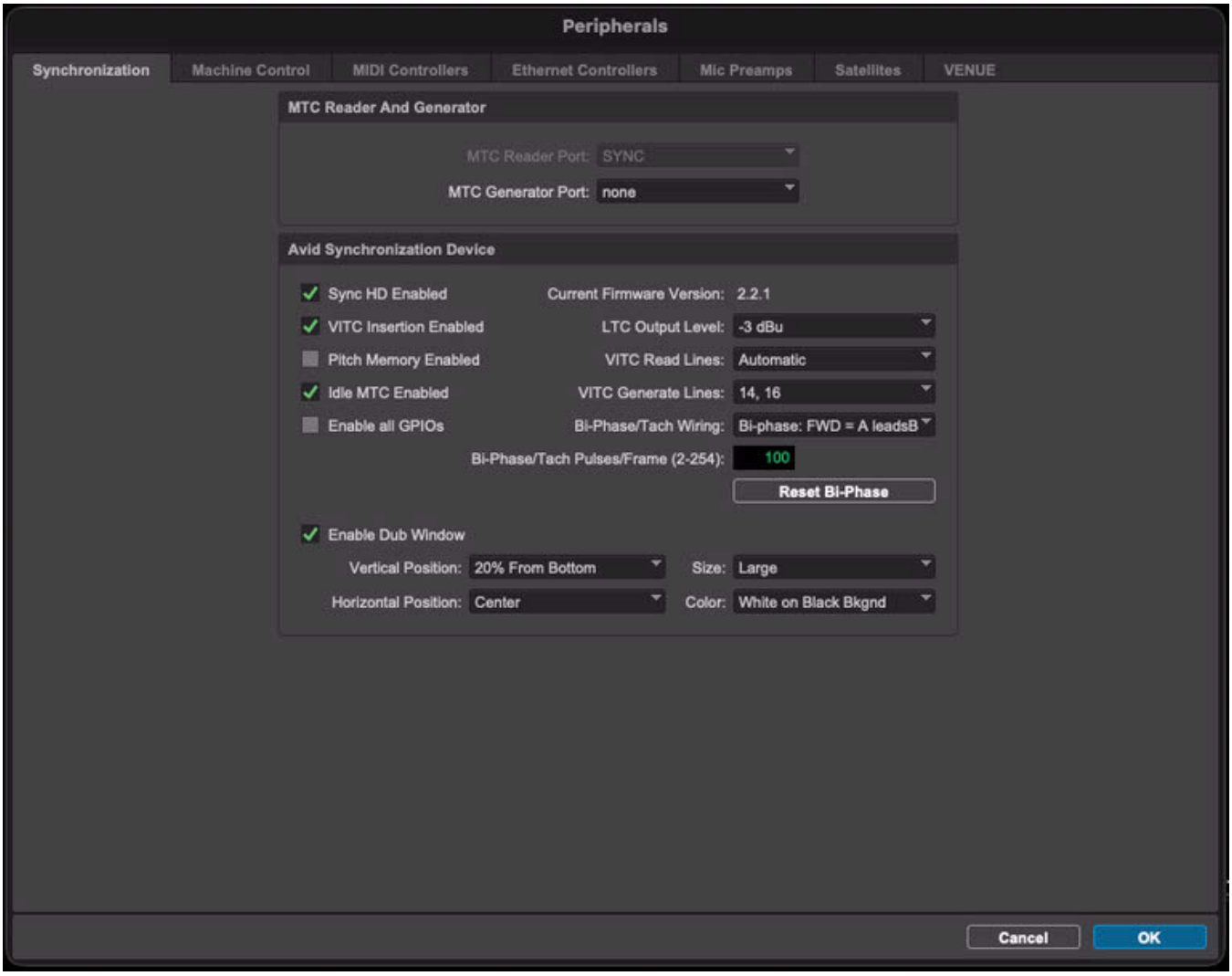
The Synchronization page lets you configure Pro Tools for use with MIDI Timecode and a synchronization peripheral.

Pro Tools Ultimate supports both SYNC HD and Pro Tools | Sync X synchronization peripherals with Pro Tools | HDX and HD Native systems.

For information about synchronization peripherals, see the Pro Tools | Sync X Guide or the SYNC HD Guide.



Synchronization Peripherals with Sync X



Synchronization Peripherals with SYNC HD

MTC Reader and Generator

The MIDI Timecode (MTC) settings let you select the MIDI In and Out ports for MTC.

MTC Reader Port

The **MTC Reader Port** setting lets you select the MIDI In port to receive MIDI Timecode from an external device.

MTC Generator Port

The **MTC Generator Port** setting lets you select the MIDI Out port for sending MIDI Timecode generated by Pro Tools.

Synchronization Device (HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

The Synchronization Device settings let you enable and configure a synchronization peripheral (Pro Tools | Sync X or SYNC HD) for use with Pro Tools Ultimate running on Pro Tools | HDX or HD Native systems.

Sync X Enabled/Enable SYNC HD

When this option is selected, any connected synchronization peripheral is enabled for use with Pro Tools.

Current Firmware Version

This displays the firmware version for the connected synchronization peripheral, such as a SYNC HD or Sync X.

VITC Insertion Enabled (SYNC HD Only)

When this option is selected, VITC is inserted into the outgoing video signal—assuming that a video signal is present at a synchronization peripheral video input, and that the synchronization peripheral is in a valid mode for inserting VITC.

Pitch Memory Enabled (SYNC HD Only)

When this option is selected, the synchronization peripheral will remain at a *pitch* (sample rate) that corresponds to the last known incoming timecode speed. When deselected, the Synchronization peripheral reverts to the selected sample rate. If Pitch Memory is disabled and the selected external clock reference is not available, then the synchronization peripheral reverts to the nominal, selected internal sample rate setting.

Sync X always maintains Pitch Memory, so this option is not exposed in the Synchronization Device settings.

Idle MTC Enabled

When this option is disabled, MTC output is muted when playback is idle. When enabled, MTC is continuously output.

LTC Output Level

This setting adjusts the analog audio level of the LTC output, from –24 dBu to +9 dBu.

VITC Read Lines (SYNC HD Only)

This setting determines which line pair of incoming video signal is used for the VITC source. When set to Auto, the synchronization peripheral searches for the first valid line pair automatically. Alternatively, this value can be set to specific VITC line pairs.

VITC Generate Lines (SYNC HD Only)

This setting determines the line pair of the outgoing video signal onto which the synchronization peripheral inserts VITC. Normally, this should be left at the default (and preferred) setting of 14/16.

Bi-Phase/Tach Wiring

This setting lets you select from the following options for Bi-Phase or Tach wiring:

- Bi-Phase: FWD = A leads B
- Bi-Phase: FWD = B leads A
- Tach:FWD = B is Low
- Tach: FWD = B is High

Bi-Phase/Tach Pulses/Frame (2–254)

There are several different standards for the number of pulses-per-frame output by Bi-Phase or Tach devices. You can set the synchronization peripheral to operate from 2 to 254 pulses per frame from Pro Tools. The setting should match the PPF rate of the Bi-Phase/Tach encoder on the external device.

Reset Bi-Phase

This button lets you set the Bi-Phase/Tach start frame from Pro Tools. Click the button to update the Timecode Display on the synchronization peripheral to match the session timecode value.

Enable Dub Window (SYNC HD Only)

When this option is selected, you can insert a timecode window into a video signal with the following Window dub appearance settings:

Vertical Position

Sets the vertical position of the window dub, relative to the bottom of the video picture. The choices range from 10% From Bottom to 50% From Bottom, in 10% increments.

"10% from Bottom" vertical position is outside the standard "safe title" area, which means it may not be visible on some video monitors.

Horizontal Position

Sets the relative horizontal position of the window dub within the video picture. The choices include Extreme Left, Left, Center, Right and Extreme Right.

The "Extreme" horizontal positions are outside the standard "safe title" area, which means they may not be visible on some video monitors.

Size

Sets the relative size of the window dub (Small or Large).

Color

Sets the color of the timecode numbers and background of the window dub. The choices include White on Black Bkgnd, Black on White Bkgnd, White on Video Bkgnd, or Black on Video Bkgnd. (Video Bkgnd means that the background of the window dub is transparent, so that the timecode numbers are displayed directly on top of the video signal, without a contrasting background box.) The default setting is White on Black Bkgnd.

Enable Relay-Based GPOs (Pro Tools | Sync X Only)

When this option is selected, GPO Output triggers 0–3 are enabled for the GPIO DB-25 port on the back panel of Sync X. When disabled, there is no audible click noise from the device during playback, record, or fader start. For more information, see the *Pro Tools | Sync X Guide*.

Displays (Pro Tools | Sync X Only)

This setting lets you specify the behavior of the Sync X front panel displays when the unit is powered on and idle for a certain amount of time.

Use Screensaver

After 15 minutes of inactivity the displays are dimmed. After 30 minutes the screen saver appears. After 60 minutes the displays are turned off. Pressing any front panel switch returns displays to normal on state.

Always On (Not Recommended)

Displays are always on while Pro Tools is running and Sync X is enabled. Not recommended for long periods of time as this reduces display lifespan.

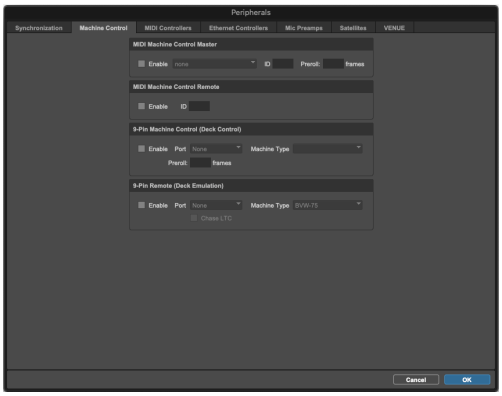
Off

Displays are turned off, but can be turned on temporarily by pressing any front panel switch. Recommended when displays are only viewed occasionally.

Machine Control

The Machine Control page lets you configure Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio for use with MIDI Machine Control or 9-Pin Machine Control (Pro Tools Ultimate only).

For information about using MachineControl with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, see "Pro Tools | MachineControl" on page 1867.



MIDI Machine Control Master

Pro Tools provides the following for configuring **`MIDI Machine Control Master`** settings.

Enable

When the **`Enable`** option is selected, Pro Tools is the Master. Pro Tools sends MMC commands to control a connected MMC-compatible device and receives MTC information back from that device.

MIDI Out Port

Select the **`MIDI Out Port`** to which the MMC device you want to control is connected.

MMC ID

The MMC ID setting lets you specify the MMC ID number for which MMC information will be sent. MMC commands contain an ID number to identify which machine should respond to the MMC command. There are 128 MMC ID numbers, from 0–127. The default of ID #127 is a special setting that transmits to all 128 MMC IDs. With a setting of 127, Pro Tools will transmit MMC commands to all MMC IDs.

Preroll

The **`Preroll`** setting lets you specify a pre-roll time in frames for the MMC device being controlled. Pre-roll is needed to provide the device with sufficient time to lock to the timecode transmitted by Pro Tools. This value will vary depending on the device. If the pre-roll time is insufficient, the device may not be ready to lock until after the current timecode position has passed.

MIDI Machine Control Remote

Pro Tools provides the following for configuring **`MIDI Machine Control Remote`** settings.

Enable

When the **Enable** option is selected, Pro Tools is controlled by MMC commands it receives from the master device and sends MTC information back to that device.

MMC ID

The MMC ID setting lets you specify the MMC ID number for which MMC information will be received.

9-Pin Machine Control (Deck Control)

(HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

The **9-Pin Machine Control (Deck Control)** settings let you configure a Machine Control device for Serial Deck Control mode with Pro Tools Ultimate. Serial Deck Control mode is available whenever Machine Control is connected using the Serial Deck Control cable. When connected for Serial Deck Control mode, Machine Control enables all Pro Tools track arming, synchronization, and Transport features, as available on your system. Serial Deck Control mode also supports 9-pin serial timecode.

Enable

When the **Enable** option is selected, Pro Tools is in Serial Deck Control mode.

Port

The **Port** setting lets you select the 9-pin Machine Control port. The available choices depend on your platform and configuration

Machine Type

After you select a port, Pro Tools automatically polls the port to see what kind of machine is connected. If the machine is recognized, Pro Tools loads the corresponding **Machine Type**. This includes the corresponding track layout and automatically enters the name of that machine into the Machine Track Arming window. However, if the machine is not recognized, the "Generic 1" personality is automatically loaded.

Preroll

The **Preroll** setting lets you specify a variable amount of machine preroll to account for the time it may take the machine to achieve servo lock. Shorter preroll values are usually better for non-linear machines. Longer preroll values are usually better for older tape transports. The Machine preroll value is added to any preroll specified in the Transport window.

9-Pin Remote (Deck Emulation)

(HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

The **9-Pin Remote (Deck Emulation)** settings let you configure Pro Tools Ultimate for 9-Pin Remote (Deck Emulation) mode. This mode makes Pro Tools operate as a virtual deck, supporting most standard Sony P2 9-pin commands. By default, Pro Tools emulates a Sony BVW-75 model video deck. You can also configure Pro Tools to emulate other machines.

Enable

When the **Enable** option is selected, Pro Tools is in 9-Pin Remote (Deck Emulation) mode.

Port

The **Port** setting lets you select the 9-pin MachineControl port. The available choices depend on your platform and configuration

Machine Type

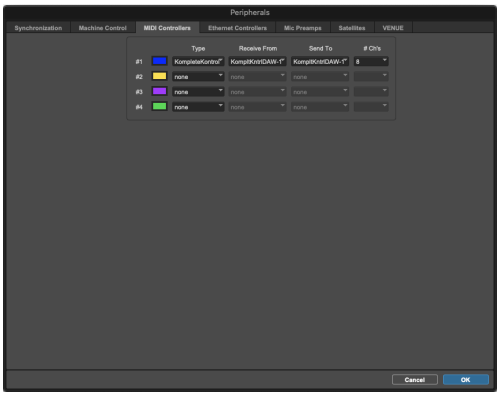
The **Machine Type** setting lets you select the machine description for specific machine controllers (such as the Soundmaster ATOM). By default, Pro Tools emulates a Sony BVW-75.

Chase LTC

When **Chase LTC** is enabled, Pro Tools still responds to track arming and record commands. However, Pro Tools will chase incoming LTC with the machine controller. By having Pro Tools follow the LTC source instead of having the machine chase Pro Tools timecode, you can avoid the waiting (and tape wear) that occurs while a machine transport locates and bumps tape to the cue point.

MIDI Controllers

The MIDI Controllers page lets you configure up to four different MIDI controllers for Pro Tools.



For information on using any third-party MIDI controller, consult the manufacturer's documentation.

Number and Color

The number of the row indicates the order of the selected controllers. The color corresponds to the controller focus around Pro Tools track and plugin controls.

Type

The **Type** setting lets you select the MIDI controller connected to your computer. Choose from any of the following types of MIDI controllers:

- Command | 8 (Windows only)
- HUI
- Surround Panner
- NI Komplete Kontrol

Be sure to install and configure Native Instruments Komplete Kontrol software according to the manufacturer's instructions before selecting it for use as a MIDI controller in Pro Tools.

Receive From

The **Receive From** setting lets you select the MIDI In port to which your MIDI controller is connected.

With Komplete Kontrol, **Receive From** will be automatically set to **Komplete Kontrol DAW-1**.

Send To

The **Send To** setting lets you select the MIDI Out port to which your MIDI controller is connected.

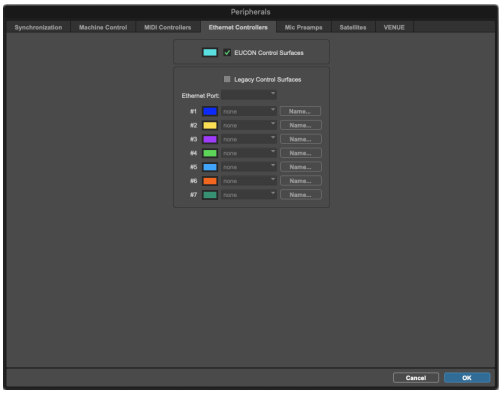
With Komplete Kontrol, **Send To** will be automatically set to **Komplete Kontrol DAW-1**.

Number of Channels

The Number of Channels (**# Ch's**) setting displays the number of control channels supported by the selected MIDI controller type.

Ethernet Controllers

The Ethernet Controllers page lets you configure up to seven different Ethernet controllers for Pro Tools.



Enable EUCON (Extended User Control)

When selected, Pro Tools is enabled for control by one or more EUCON-compatible controllers. EUCON is an innovative high-speed Ethernet protocol developed by Avid to allow hardware control surface to directly communicate with a software application.

You can also toggle EUCON on and off using the EUCON Status Control in the Edit Window toolbar. This Edit Window Toolbar view also indicates the current status of EUCON: disabled, enabled, connected, or if there is a connection error. For more information see Using EuControl Surfaces.pdf.

For more information about using Pro Tools with EUCON, see the documentation for your controller.

Legacy Control Surfaces

When selected, Pro Tools is enabled for control by one or more legacy Avid Ethernet controllers (such as C|24™ or D-Command).

Ethernet Port

The **Ethernet Port** setting lets you specify the Ethernet port on your computer to which your controller is connected.

Number and Color

The number of the row indicates the order of the selected controllers. The color corresponds to the colored controller focus border around Pro Tools track and plugin controls.

Ethernet Controller

From the Ethernet Controller pop-up menu, select the Ethernet controller that you want to use.

Name

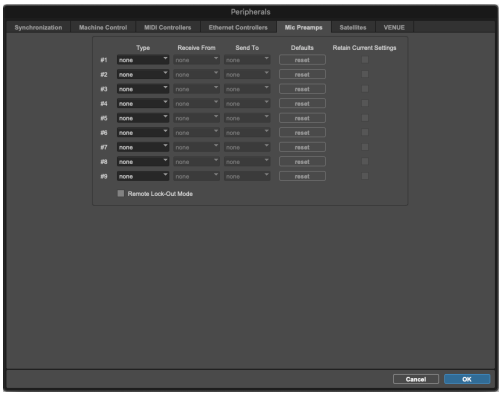
Click the Name button to enter a name for the selected Ethernet controller.

Mic Preamps

The Mic Preamps page lets you configure up to nine different Mic Preamps (PRE or Carbon) for Pro Tools.

Be sure to filter out Mic Pre MIDI messages so that they do not interfere with Virtual Instruments (see "MIDI Input Filter" on page 592).

For information about Avid | PRE, see the Avid | PRE Guide. For information about Pro Tools | Carbon, see the Pro Tools Carbon Guide.



Type

The **Type** setting lets you select **none** or **PRE**. Select the **PRE** option to declare any connected PRE.

Receive From

The **Receive From** setting lets you specify the MIDI In port to which the PRE is connected.

Send To

The **Send To** setting lets you specify the MIDI Out port to which the PRE is connected.

Defaults

Click the Reset button reset the corresponding PRE to its default settings.

Retain Current Settings

Select the **Retain Current Settings** option to retain PRE channel settings when an existing session with different settings is loaded. New sessions will automatically retain the current settings.

Remote Lock-Out Mode

When the **Remote Lock-Out Mode** option is selected, all connected PREs ignore their front panel controls.

Satellites

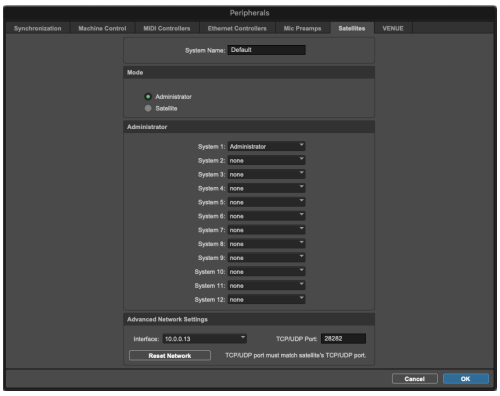
The Satellites page lets you configure synchronization between multiple Pro Tools systems (including an Avid Video Satellite system) using Satellite Link.

Satellite Link lets you link up to 12 HDX or HD Native systems (or any combinations of 11 HDX or HD Native systems and an Avid Video Satellite system or a Pro Tools Video Satellite system) over an Ethernet network so that you can cue, play, and stop the transport, make play selections, and solo tracks across any of the systems from any linked workstation.

Without HD hardware, you can link up to 2 systems: one administrator and one satellite system (typically used for monitoring video).

Media Composer Video Satellite lets you link an HDX or HD Native system and a Media Composer system for monitoring Avid video. Pro Tools Video Satellite lets you link an administrator (can be an HDX or HD Native system, or a non-HD system) and a Pro Tools host-based system for monitoring video.

For more information, see "Satellite Link" on page 1962.



System Name

Type a name for the local system. This name appears in the list of available satellites in other connected systems with the Satellite Link option.

Mode

The **Mode** settings let you configure the satellite behavior of the local system.

Administrator

When enabled, the **Administrator** option sets the local system to be the administrator system for any satellite systems on the network. Satellite systems can be declared from the administrator system.

Satellite

When enabled, the **Satellite** option sets the local system to be a satellite system on the network. When a system is in Satellite mode, it becomes available to be declared as a satellite from any administrator system on the network.

Administrator

When the local system is in Administrator mode, the **Administrator** settings let you declare satellites from that system. HDX and HD Native systems let you administer up to 12 satellite systems. Non-HD systems let you administer only one satellite system (typically for monitoring video).

System 1–12

These pop-up menus let you declare up to 11 satellite systems (in addition to the administrator system itself) from an administrator system. The number of the system indicates the order of the declared satellites in the Transport window.

Advanced Network Settings

The **Advanced Network Settings** options let you manually configure the satellite network. Typically, these options should be left at the default settings.

Interface

Lets you select the Ethernet interface if more than one interface is available on your system.

TCP/UDP Port

Lets you enter the TCP/UDP Port number. By default, Satellite Link uses TCP/UDP port 28282. If the default port is already in use, or if you want to set up separate Satellite Link networks, you can select a different TCP/UDP port for Satellite Link communication.

For Satellite Link to function properly, you must select a TCP/UDP port number between 1024 and 65534.

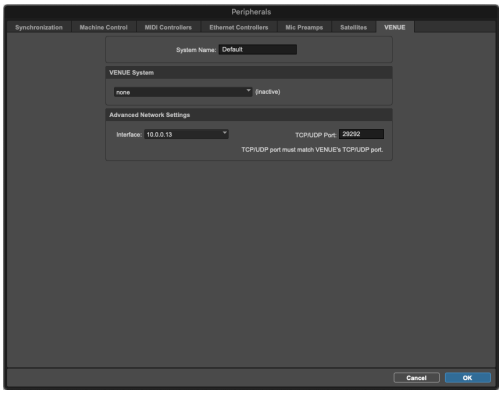
Reset Network

Lets you reset the entire satellite network. Click the **Reset Network** button to automatically disconnect and reconnect all satellites on the network.

VENUE

The VENUE page lets you configure Pro Tools for use with a VENUE system over Ethernet using VENUE Link.

Pro Tools VENUE Link lets you create Pro Tools sessions based on VENUE settings for live recording and Virtual Soundcheck, create Pro Tools markers from VENUE Snapshots, and locate to Pro Tools markers from VENUE Snapshots.



System Name

The System Name field lets you enter a name for your Pro Tools system.

VENUE System

The VENUE System selector lets you select a remote VENUE system for recording to (or playback from) your Pro Tools system. You can also manually enter the IP addresses of the VENUE system.

Advanced Network Settings

The **Advanced Network** settings let you specify an IP address and port for VENUE Link communication.

Interface

For systems that have more than one Ethernet network connection, the **Interface** setting lets you select which connection to use for VENUE Link communication.

TCP/UDP Port

For systems that have more than one Ethernet network connection, you can enter the TCP/UDP port number to be used for VENUE Link communication.

10 Configuring MIDI

If you are using external MIDI devices with Pro Tools (such as controllers or sound modules), you can customize your MIDI studio setup to display the names of your MIDI devices in Pro Tools.

MIDI Studio Setup (Mac)

Pro Tools recognizes the ports on your MIDI interface as generic ports. With macOS, you use Apple's Audio MIDI Setup (AMS) utility to identify external MIDI devices connected to your MIDI interface and configure your MIDI studio for use with Pro Tools.

To ensure optimum performance, do not change the AMS configuration while Pro Tools is playing back. Stop the Pro Tools transport before launching AMS.

To configure your MIDI studio in AMS:

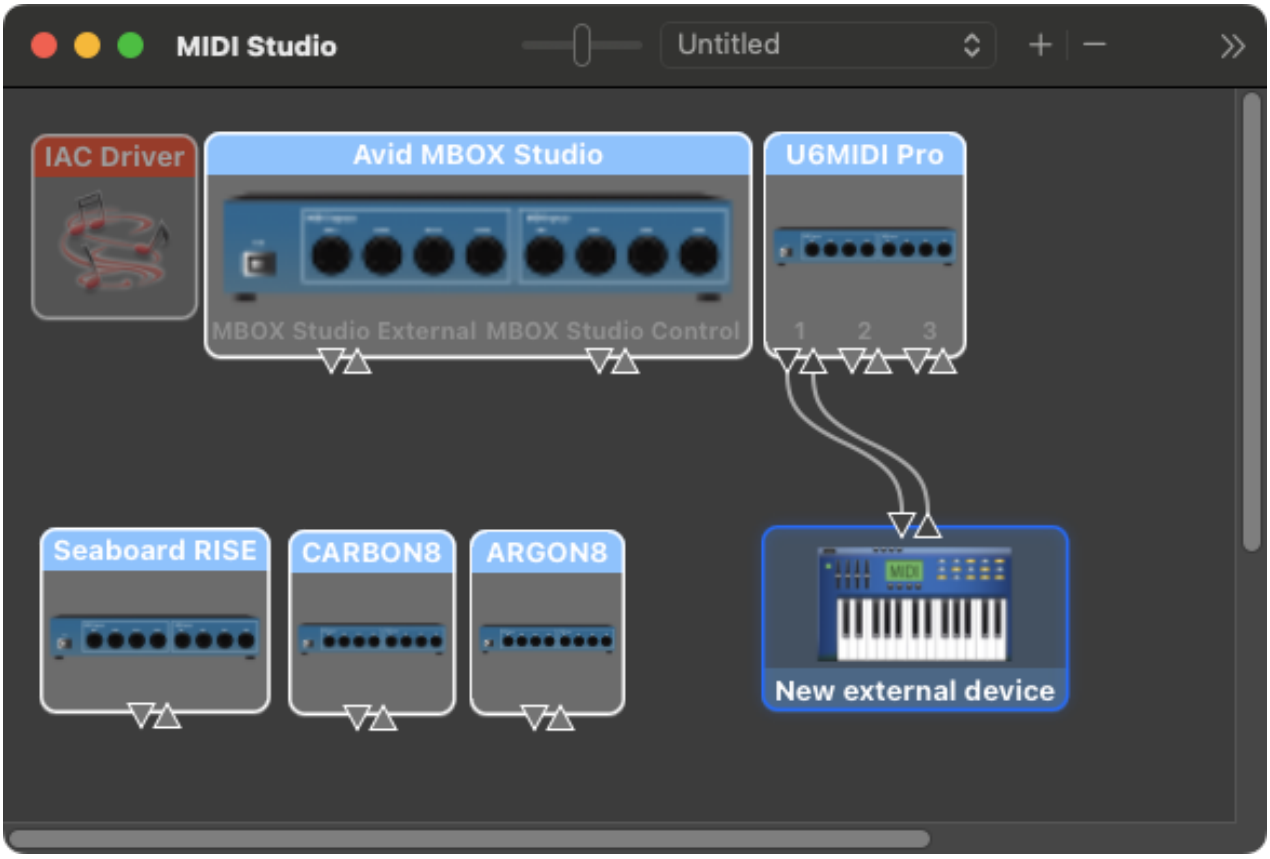
1. Do one of the following:
   - Launch Audio MIDI Setup (located in Applications/Utilities).
   - In Pro Tools, choose **`Setup > MIDI > MIDI Studio`**.
2. If the MIDI Studio window is not showing, choose **`Window > Show MIDI Studio`**.



Audio MIDI Setup, MIDI Devices window

AMS scans your system for connected MIDI interfaces. If your MIDI interface is properly connected, it appears in the window with each of its ports numbered.

3. To create a custom MIDI device for any external MIDI devices connected to your MIDI interface, click the + button at the top of the window. A new external device icon with the default MIDI keyboard image appears.
4. Drag the new device icon to a convenient location within the window.
5. Connect the MIDI device to the MIDI interface by clicking the arrow for the appropriate output port of the device and dragging a connection or “cable” to the input arrow of the corresponding port of the MIDI interface.



Making MIDI input and output connections

6. Click the arrow for the appropriate input port of the device and drag a cable to the output arrow of the corresponding port of the MIDI interface.

   To remove a connection, select the cable and press Delete.

7. Repeat steps "To create a custom MIDI device for any external MIDI devices connected to your MIDI interface, click the + button at the top of the window. A new external device icon with the default MIDI keyboard image appears." above–"Click the arrow for the appropriate input port of the device and drag a cable to the output arrow of the corresponding port of the MIDI interface." above for each MIDI device in your MIDI setup.

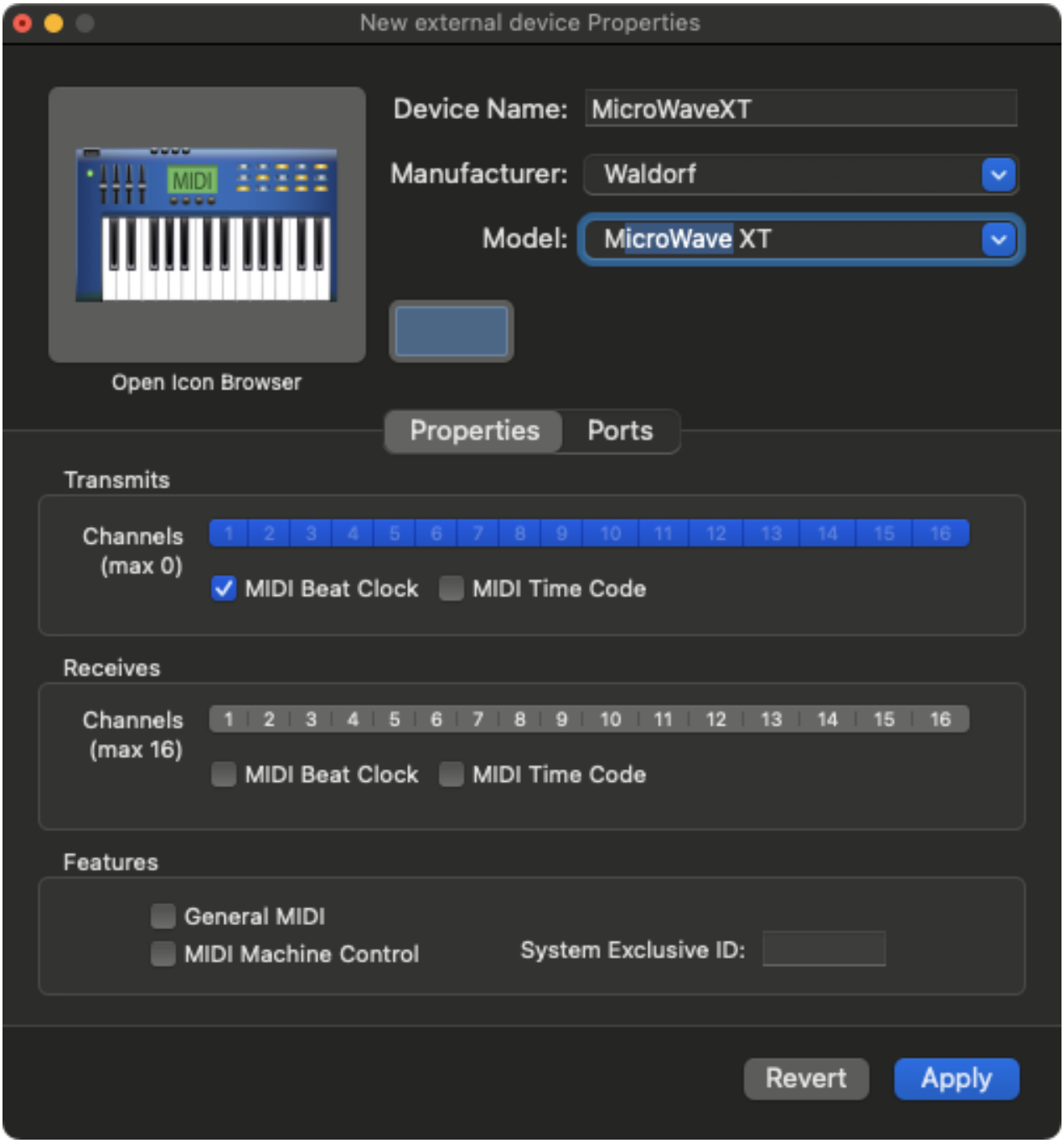
To customize an external MIDI device in AMS:

1. Double-click the new device icon.



External Device Icon

2. Select a manufacturer and model for the new device from the corresponding pop-up menus. (If the Manufacturer and Model pop-up menus do not provide a name for your particular device, you can type a name.)



Naming a new MIDI device

For Manufacturer and Model names, AMS refers to one or more files with the suffix ".middev" in the directory Root/Library/Audio/MIDI Devices. Pro Tools installs a file that contains information for many commercially available MIDI devices, named "Digidesign Device List.middev." If the Manufacturer or Model names for any of your external MIDI devices is not available in the AMS Manufacturer and Model pop-up menus, you can add them by editing the .middev file in any text editor (such as TextEdit).

For more information, see "MIDI Patch Names" on page 1053.

3. If necessary, click **Properties**, then enable the appropriate MIDI channels (1–16) for the Transmits and Receives options. (These determine which channels the device will use to send and receive MIDI.)
4. Click the device image. The window expands to show images for various MIDI devices (such as keyboards, modules, interfaces, and mixers). Select an icon for your device.



Selecting a device icon

To use your own custom icons, you can place TIFF image files in /Library/Audio/MIDI Devices/Generic/Images, and they will appear as choices in the AMS device window.

5. Select a device image and click **Apply**.
6. Close the AMS window to quit the AMS application.

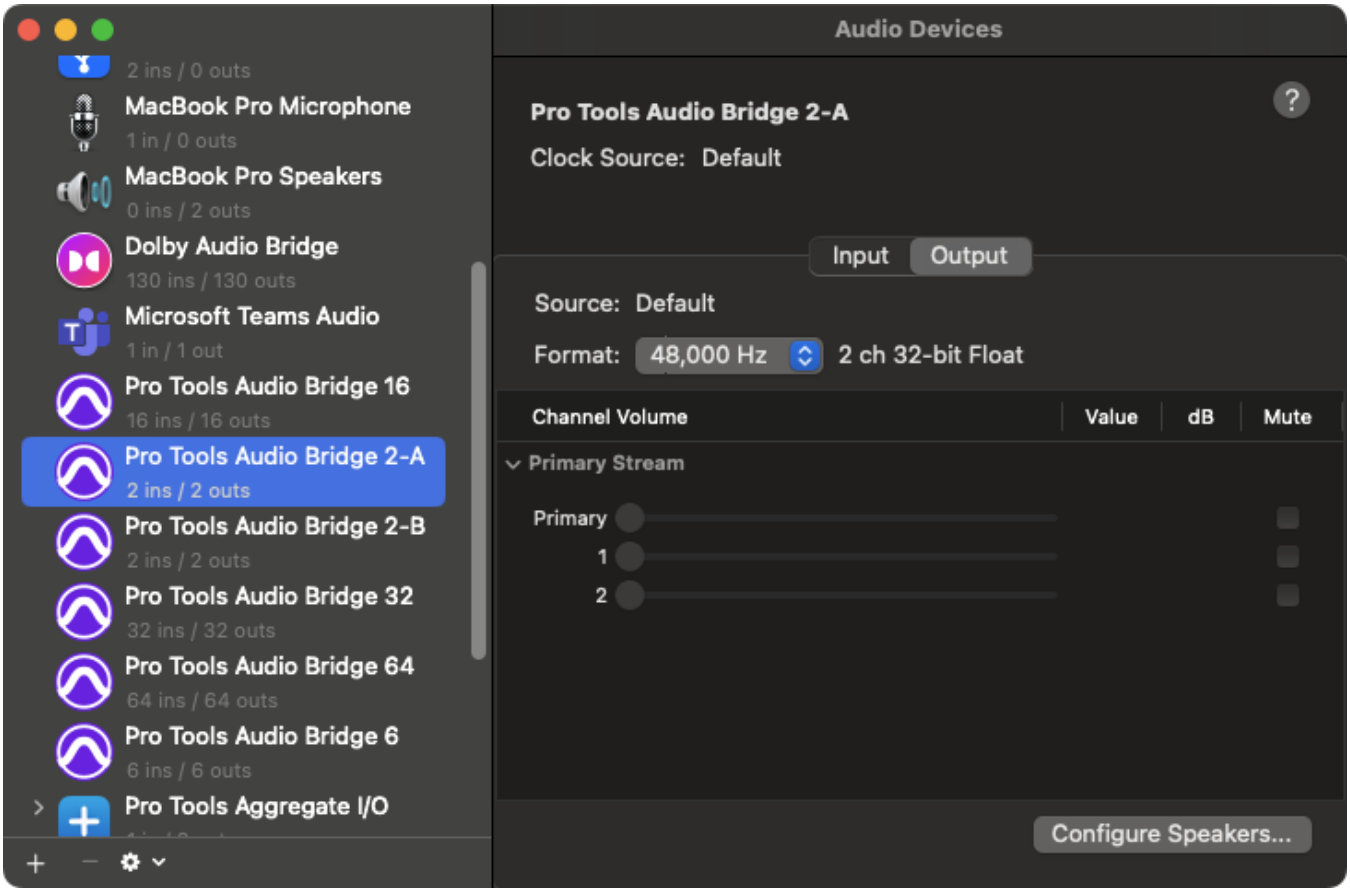
The device names you enter appear as MIDI input and output choices in Pro Tools.

Pro Tools Audio Bridge

Pro Tools Audio Bridge provides a set of Core Audio drivers with different I/O counts for streaming audio between Pro Tools software and other Core Audio–compatible applications.

Although Pro Tools Audio Bridge devices (just like any Core Audio Device) can be selected as the main Playback Engine, Pro Tools Audio Bridge was designed to be used for Aux I/O streaming only and should not to be used as the main Playback Engine.

Pro Tools Audio Bridge provides a set of Core Audio drivers with different I/O counts for streaming audio between Pro Tools software and other Core Audio–compatible applications. It is recommended that you use a device with a channel count that is closest to your streaming requirements. Note that each device can only be used for either input or output, but not both.



Pro Tools Audio Bridge 2-A

Pro Tools Audio Bridge includes devices with the following channel counts:

Pro Tools Audio Bridge 16

Provides 16 channels of input or 16 channels of output to or from Pro Tools software.

Pro Tools Audio Bridge 2-A and 2-B

Two separate drivers that each provide 2 channels of input or 2 channels of output to and from Pro Tools software.

Pro Tools Audio Bridge 6

Provides 6 channels of input or 6 channels of output to or from Pro Tools software., which is useful for 5.1 routing.

Pro Tools Audio Bridge 32

Provides 32 channels of input or 32 channels of output to or from Pro Tools software.

Pro Tools Audio Bridge 64

Provides 64 channels of input or 64 channels of output to or from Pro Tools software.

Customizing Pro Tools Audio Bridge Drivers

(For Advanced Users Only)

You can create, edit, and delete Pro Tools Audio Bridge devices to match your specific needs using TextEdit. Note that the following should only be attempted by advanced users.

To change the configuration of Pro Tools Audio Bridge devices:

1. Quit any applications that are using Pro Tools Audio Bridge.
2. Open ProToolsAudioBridge.config with any text editor (such as Apple's TextEdit), which is located here: **`Macintosh HD/Library/Audio/Plugins/HAL/ProToolsAudioBridge.driver/Contents/Resources/`**
3. Add, remove, or modify an existing line to add, remove, or change the Pro Tools Audio Bridge devices listed in AMS. The first number is the channel count, followed by the name of the device.
4. Save the file and restart your computer.

When you next launch Core Audio after restarting, your changes appear in AMS.

MIDI Studio Setup (Windows)

MIDI Studio Setup (MSS) lets you configure the MIDI controllers and sound modules that are connected to your system, and control the routing of MIDI data between your MIDI equipment and Pro Tools.

MSS automatically finds MIDI interfaces, and lets you specify a custom name for each of the MIDI ports within the MIDI Studio Setup document.

MSS also supports XML-based patch file names for storing and importing patch names for your external MIDI devices.

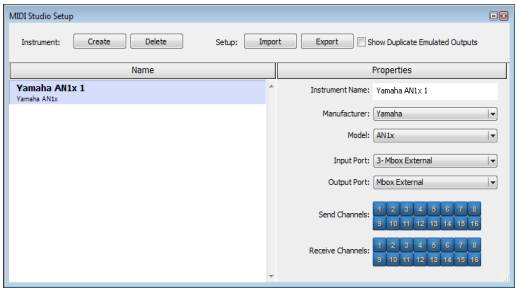
Entire MIDI Studio Setup configurations created within MSS can be imported and exported.

To configure your MIDI studio with MSS:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **`Setup > MIDI > MIDI Studio`**.
2. Configure the MIDI Studio Setup windows.
3. When you are finished configuring the MIDI Studio Setup, close the MIDI Studio Setup window.

MIDI Studio Setup Window

The MIDI Studio Setup window is organized into three sections. Interface controls are at the top of the window. All the currently defined instruments are displayed in the Instrument Name list on the left side of the window. A detailed view of MIDI parameters is shown in the Properties section on the right.



MIDI Studio Setup window

Interface Controls

Create

Adds a new instrument to the Instrument Name list.

Delete

Deletes the instrument or instruments selected in the Instrument Name list.

Import

Imports an existing MIDI Studio Setup file.

Export

Exports the current MIDI Studio Setup file.

Show Duplicate Emulated Ports

When this option is selected and you are using a MIDI interface that supports time-stamping, the MIDI Studio setup window shows both the DirectMusic time-stamped output ports, and non-stamped duplicate emulated output ports.

Some MIDI Interfaces will not properly load or unload their drivers unless you quit and re-launch Pro Tools. Refer to the documentation that came with your MIDI interface for more information.

Instrument List

The Instrument list contains all the currently defined instruments. Selecting an instrument in the list displays that instrument's properties in the Properties section of the window.

Properties Section

The Properties section lets you edit information for new instruments, or instrument currently selected in the Instrument list.

When a previously defined instrument is selected in the Instrument list, the Properties section changes to reflect the properties of the selected instrument.

To define an instrument with MIDI Studio Setup:

1. Choose **`Setup > MIDI > MIDI Studio`**.
2. Click **`Create`**.
3. In the Instrument Name field, type the name of your instrument, and press Enter.

If you do not enter an instrument name, the Instrument Name field will automatically inherit information from the Manufacturer and Model pop-up menu.

4. Set a manufacturer and model for the new device from the corresponding pop-up menus. If the Manufacturer and Model pop-up menus do not provide a name for your particular device, choose None.
5. From the Input pop-up menu, choose the input port on your MIDI interface that is connected to the MIDI Out of your instrument.
6. From the Output pop-up menu, choose the output port on your MIDI interface that is connected to the MIDI In of your instrument.
7. Enable the appropriate MIDI channels (1–16) for the Send Channels and Receive Channels options (These determine which channels send and receive MIDI.)

Instrument Name

The Instrument Name field shows the user-definable instrument name for the currently selected instrument.

Manufacturer

The Manufacturer pop-up menu provides a list of MIDI equipment manufacturers. This list is derived from the XML-based MIDI device files.

For more information, see "MIDI Patch Names" on page 1053.

Model

The Model pop-up menu provides a list of MIDI devices, filtered by the manufacturer name. This list is derived from the XML-based MIDI device files provided with your Pro Tools installation.

For more information, see "MIDI Patch Names" on page 1053.

Input Port

The Input Port pop-up menu displays a list of available MIDI interface input ports. The MIDI interface port that is set and displayed here is the port through which MIDI data is sent from the external MIDI device specified in the Instrument Name field into your MIDI interface.

If you set the input port to None, the defined instrument will not appear as a choice in a MIDI Input Selector.

Output Port

The Output Port pop-up menu displays a list of available MIDI interface output ports. The port set and displayed here is the port through which MIDI data is sent from your MIDI interface to the MIDI device specified in the Instrument Name field.

If you set the output port to None, the defined instrument will not appear as a choice in a MIDI Output Selector.

Send Channels

The Send Channels grid sets the send channels for the MIDI device specified in the Instrument Name field.

Receive Channels

The Receive Channels grid sets the receive channels for the MIDI device specified in the Instrument Name field.

Part III: Sessions, Projects & Tracks

Become familiar with sessions, projects, and tracks, the primary Pro Tools windows, and more.

- "Sessions, Projects, and Sketches" on page 205
- "Pro Tools Main Windows" on page 256
- "Tracks" on page 301
- "Folder Tracks" on page 389
- "Track Presets" on page 404
- "Grouping Tracks" on page 417
- "The Clip List" on page 432
- "Splice" on page 456
- "SoundFlow" on page 479
- "Stem Separator" on page 485
- "Workspace Browsers" on page 496
- "Collaboration with Pro Tools Projects" on page 550
- "Track Collaboration" on page 566
- "Pro Tools Sketches" on page 587
- "Importing and Exporting Session Data" on page 650
- "File and Session Management and Compatibility" on page 719

11 Sessions, Projects, and Sketches

Sessions, Projects, and Sketches

The first step to working in Pro Tools is creating a new session, project., or Sketch.

Pro Tools Sessions



Sessions are represented by session files that can be saved, copied, and made into templates. Sessions and all associated media and settings files are stored locally on connected qualified storage systems (such as internal and external hard drives, or certain network storage systems (such as Avid ISIS).

Pro Tools Projects



Projects are similar to sessions except that they store your media and project data online (as well as caching it locally) in your Avid Cloud account. Projects also let you collaborate on a track-by-track basis with anyone in the Avid Artist Community anywhere in the world; or, if you prefer, you can choose your collaborators privately and invite them to join a project by email as long as everyone is using Pro Tools 12.5 or higher. Otherwise, projects operate just like sessions. Projects have all of the same recording, editing, mixing, and processing capabilities as sessions. As such, throughout most of this *Reference Guide*, unless otherwise noted, any feature or function for sessions works for projects as well.

Projects can also be *online* or *offline* (Pro Tools 12.8 or higher). Online projects are stored in the cloud and mirrored locally (though the local cache can be cleared to free up local storage and downloaded later). Offline projects are not backed up to the cloud and are only stored in the local project cache (you might want to do this to free up online storage for other active projects). You can only collaborate with online projects.

Projects store all associated media and project data in the cloud while caching it locally. Sessions store all associated media and session data locally, either on hard drives in your computer or networked storage. For example, with a session, you can go to the session folder and find all of the audio files associated with that session in the Audio Files folder (note that if you have configured Pro Tools to store audio in other locations, those files will not be in the session's Audio Files folder). With projects you must export media from the project as a new file. While media is cached locally it is all bundled with the project data, so you cannot simply go and find individual audio files in the local cache.

Session and Project Interchange

You can save a copy of a session as a project using the **`Save Copy In`** command. This lets you take an existing session and save it as a project for cloud collaboration. Likewise, you can save a copy of a project as a session. You might want to do this with the project is complete so that you can archive it as a session and free up storage space in your Avid Cloud Account.

Pro Tools Sketches



Sketches are files that can been created and exchanged between the Pro Tools Sketch app for iPad and the Sketch window in Pro Tools. In Pro Tools, the Sketch window provides the same functionality as the Sketch app, but with the additional functionality of being able to drag and drop audio and MIDI clips (and Scenes and Arrangements) between the Sketch window and a Pro Tools session.

You can share Sketches between the Pro Tools Sketch app and the Sketch window in Pro Tools (.ptsketch file format). In Pro Tools, a Sketch can be open with or without a session.

Note that Sketches are not fully supported with projects. They cannot be shared in a collaboration, but they can be part of a project locally.

For more information about the Pro Tools Sketch window, see "Pro Tools Sketches" on page 587.

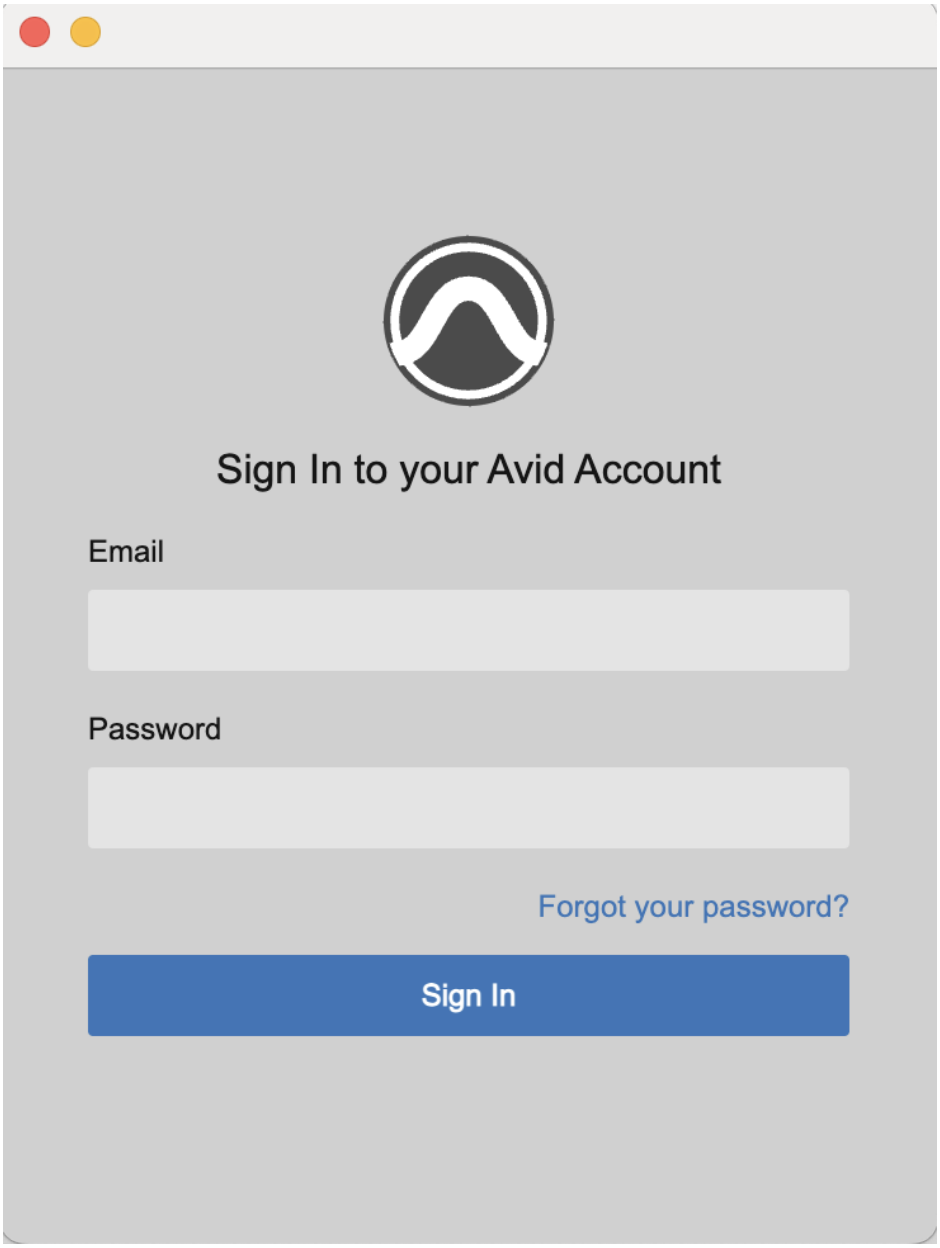
For detailed information about using the Pro Tools Sketch app on iPad, see Using Pro Tools Sketch Guide.pdf.

Signing In and Out of Your Avid Master Account

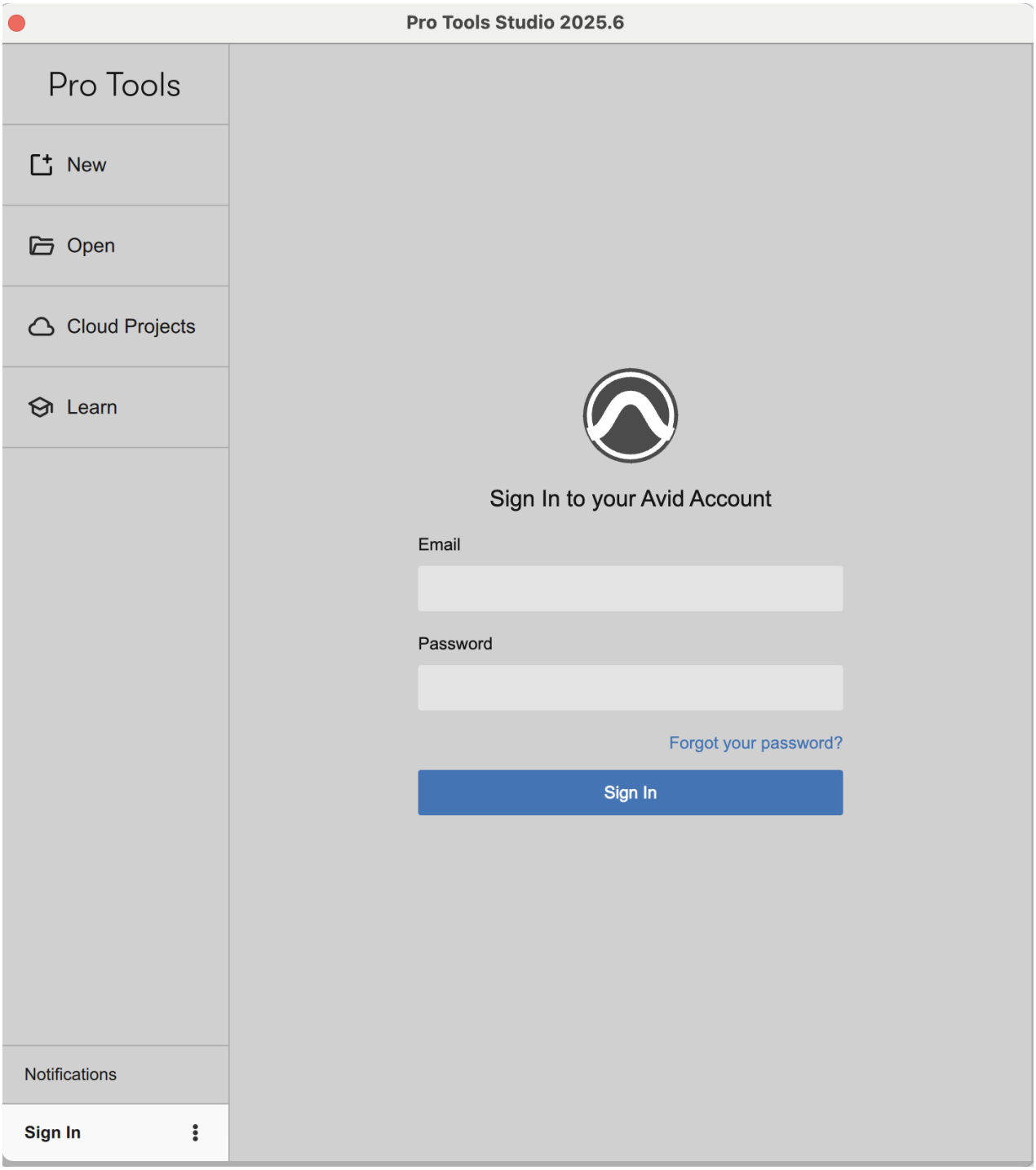
To be able to create or open a project, you must first be signed in to your Avid Master Account. You will have already created your Avid Master Account when you registered Pro Tools. Once you are signed in and have created or opened a project, you can choose to work online or offline.

To sign in to your Avid Master Account from Pro Tools:

1. Do one of the following:
   - If the Dashboard is not open, choose **File > Sign In**.
   - In the Dashboard window, click **Sign In**.
   - In the Dashboard window, press Command+S (Mac) or Control+S (Windows).



Avid Master Account sign in



Sign In in the Dashboard

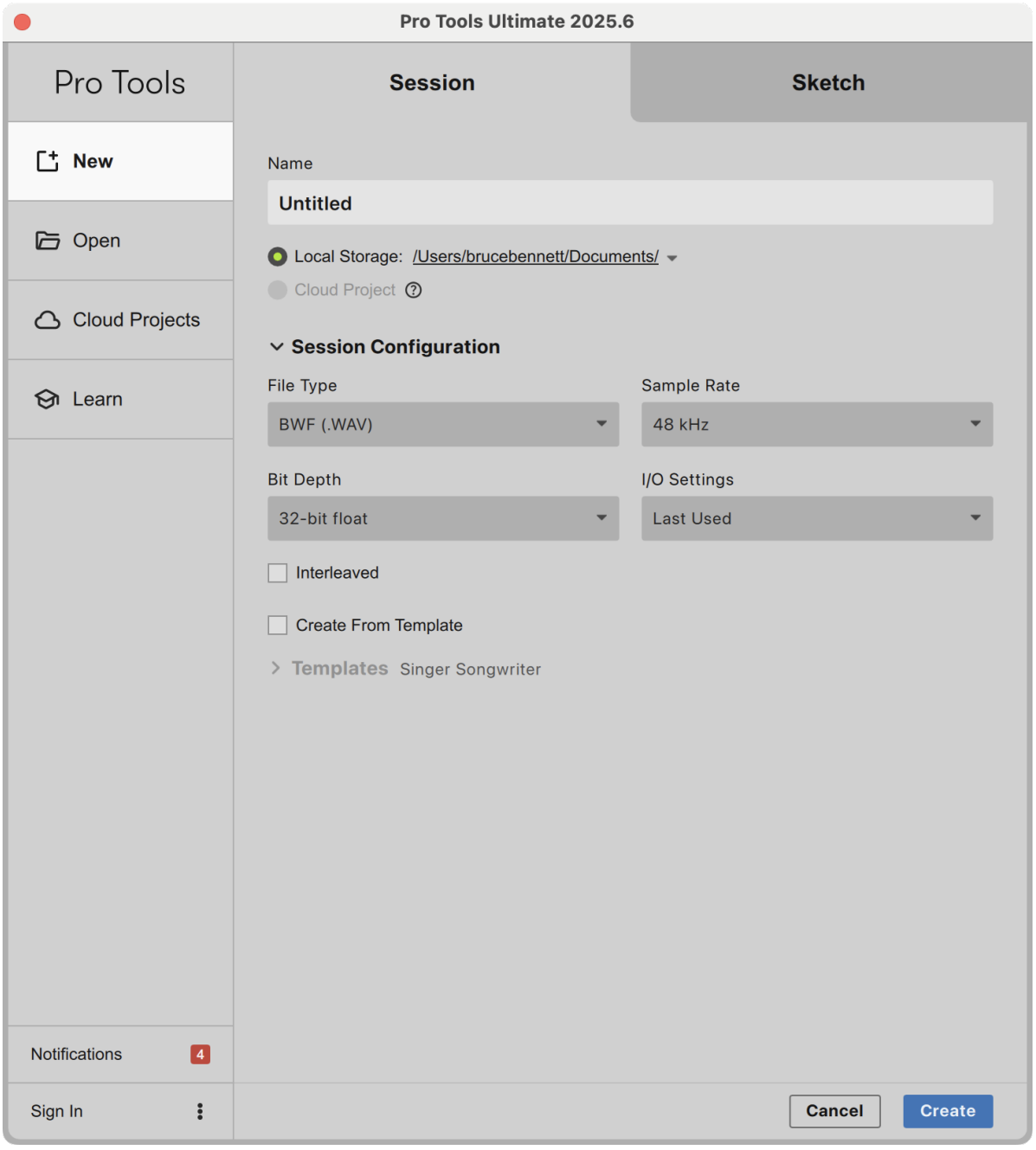
2. Enter your email and password for your Avid Master Account.
3. Click **`Sign In`**.

To sign out of your Avid Master Account, do one of the following:

- If the Dashboard is not open, choose **`File > Sign Out (<username>)`**.
- In the Dashboard window, click **`Sign Out`**.
- In the Dashboard window, press Command+S (Mac) or Control+S (Windows).

Dashboard Window

Pro Tools presents the Dashboard window on launch. The Dashboard lets you quickly and easily create a new session or project, or open an existing one. You can choose to show or hide the Dashboard on launch in the Pro Tools Display Preferences (**`Settings > Preferences > Display`**).



Dashboard window

When you first launch Pro Tools, you are prompted by the Dashboard window to do one of the following:

- Create a new session or project from a template.
- Create a new blank session, project, or Sketch.

- Open any of the last most recent sessions, projects, and Sketches.
- Open any other session or Sketch on your system.
- Open any projects you created or projects that you are collaborating on.

To open the dashboard window:

- Choose **File > New** or press Command+N (Mac) or Control+N (Windows).

Dashboard Commands, Options, and Settings

The Dashboard provides several options for creating and opening sessions and projects.

Global Dashboard Commands and Settings

Show/Hide Section

You can show or hide sections, such as **Session Configuration** or **Templates** in both the **New** and **Learn** pages of the Dashboard.

Cancel

Click to close the Dashboard window without creating or opening a session or project.

Create/Open

Click **Create** to close the Dashboard and create a new session or project with the specified session or project settings (on the **New** tab only). Click **Open** to open the selected session or project (on the **Recent** and **Cloud Project** tabs only). You can also press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) to create or open a session or project.

New Session Tab Settings

To show the New tab (if not already shown, do one of the following:

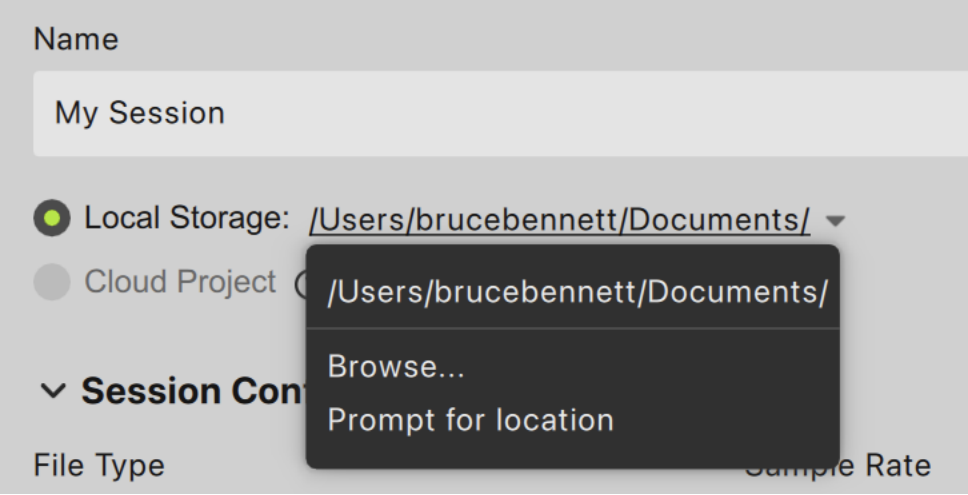
- In the Dashboard, click the **New** tab.
- In the Dashboard, press Command+1 (Mac) or Control+1 (Windows).
- In the Dashboard, press Command+Up/Down Arrows to toggle through the tabs.
- In Pro Tools, choose **File > New**, or press Command+N (Mac) or Control+N (Windows).

Name

Type a name for your session or project.

Local Storage (Session)

You can click the **Local Storage** selector to select up to five stored locations, **Browse** for a new location, or prompted for the location. Similarly, you can do the same for the **Location** of new Sketches.



Browse (Sessions and Sketches Only)

Choose Browse to specify where you want to save the new session.

Prompt for Location (Sessions and Sketches Only)

Select **`Prompt for location`**]to specify the default location for saving sessions.

Cloud Project

Select this option to create an online project for collaboration and cloud back up. The number of projects you currently have is displayed in relation to the total number of projects you are entitled to base on your Avid Cloud Storage Account.

Backup to Cloud (Projects Only)

Select the **`Backup to Cloud`** option to create an online project. Disable this option if you want to create an offline project (you can always put the project online later with the **`Backup To Cloud`** command in the Projects tab). For more information, see "Backup to Cloud: Online and Offline Projects" on page 223.

Press Command+Left/Right Arrow (Mac) or Control+Left/Right Arrow (Windows) to toggle between these options.

Session Configuration

File Type

Sets the **`File Type`** (WAV or AIFF) for the session or project. Press Command+F (Mac) or Control+F (Windows) to toggle between the two options.

Sample Rate

Sets the sample rate for the session or project. Press Command+R (Mac) or Control+R (Windows) to scroll

Bit Depth

Sets the **`Bit Depth`** (16-bit, 24-bit, or 32-bit float) for the session or project. Press Command+B (Mac) or Control+B (Windows) to toggle through the available options.

I/O Settings

Sets which I/O Settings to use for the session or project. Press Command+I (Mac) or Control+I (Windows) to toggle through the available **`I/O Settings`** options.

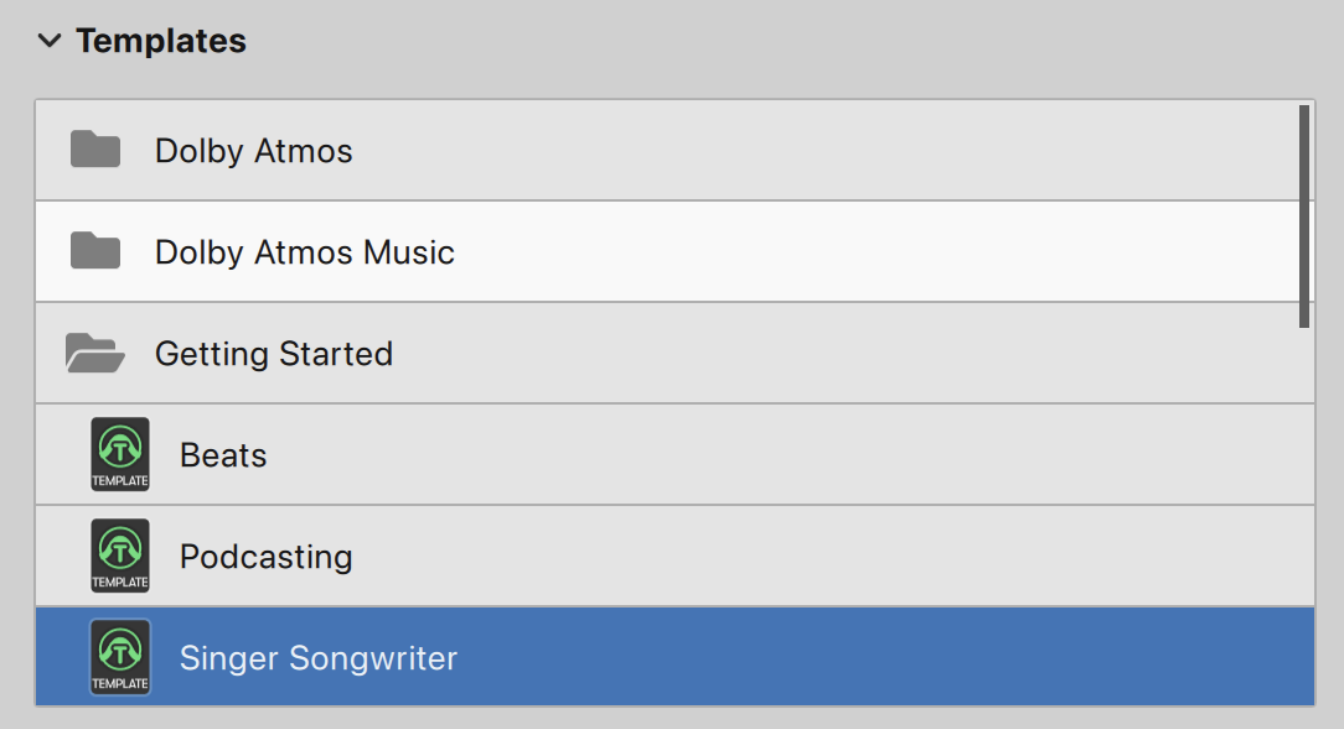
Interleaved

Enable the Interleaved option to create interleaved stereo (or greater) audio files in the session or project. Press Command+G (Mac) or Control+G (Windows) to enable or disable the **`Interleaved`** option.

Create from Template

Enables the options to create a session or project from a template.

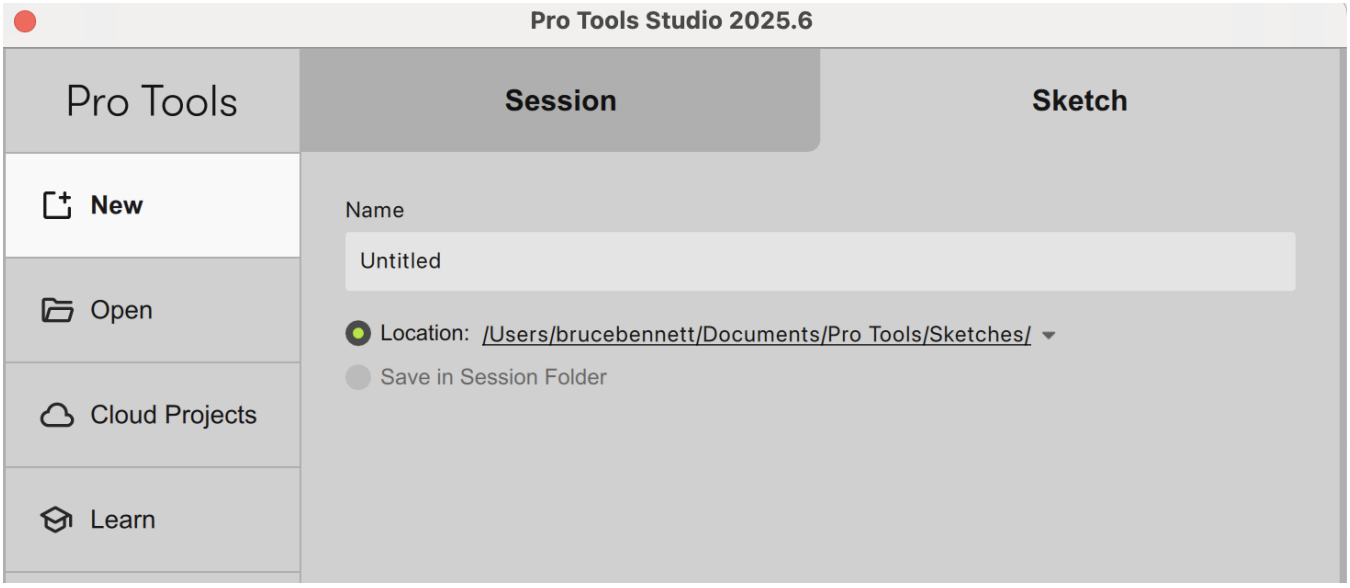
Templates



Template Group

Select the **`Template Group`** you want to review. Press Option+Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Alt+Up/Down Arrows (Windows) to scroll through the available Template Groups.

New Sketch Tab Settings



Name

Type a **Name** for your new Sketch.

Location

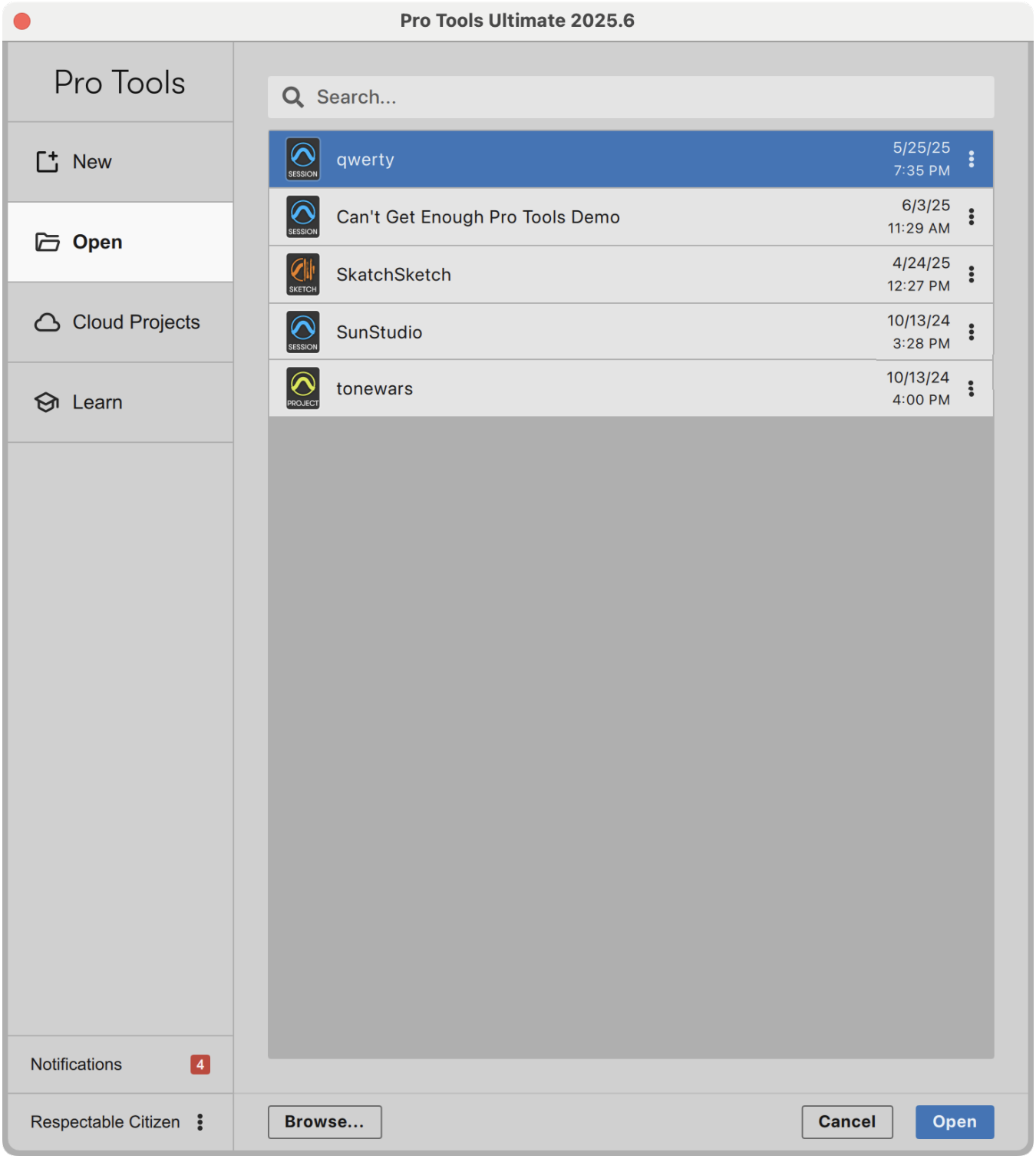
Enable to save your Sketch to the default location. Choose **Browse** to change the default location or select **Prompt for Location** to be prompted for the location where you want to save your new Sketch.

Save in Session Folder

If you already have a session open and you want to create a new Sketch as part of that session, enable **Save in Session Folder**.

Open Tab

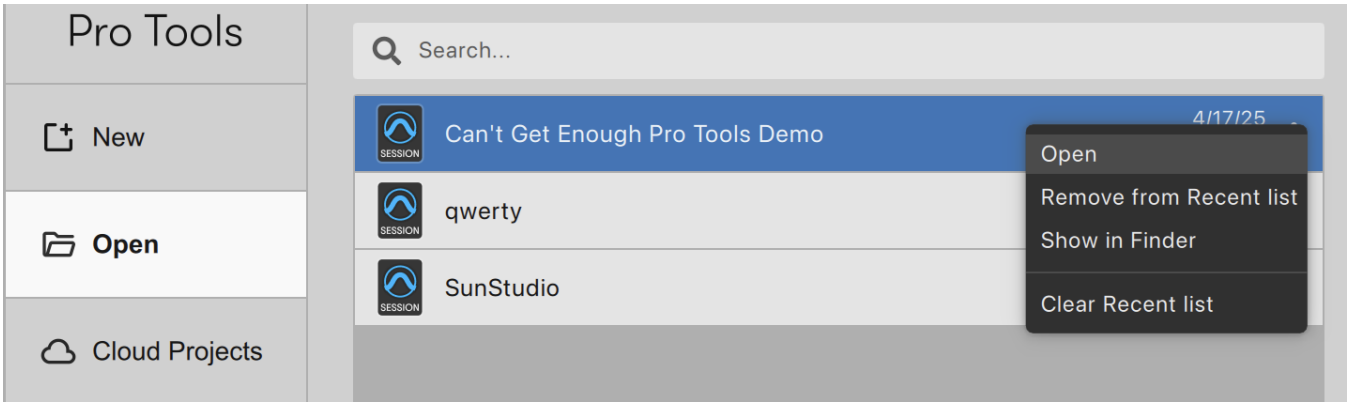
In the Dashboard, click the **Open** tab, or press Command+2 (Mac) or Control+2 (Windows) to show the **Open** tab. The **Open** tab lists your most recent sessions, projects, and Sketches. Double-click any session, project, or Sketch in the list to open it. Recent projects are not shown if you are not logged in.



Browse (Sessions and Sketches Only)

Click **Browse** in the Open tab to navigate to and open any session stored on your local system. you can also press Command+O (Mac) or Control+O (Windows).

Contextual Menu



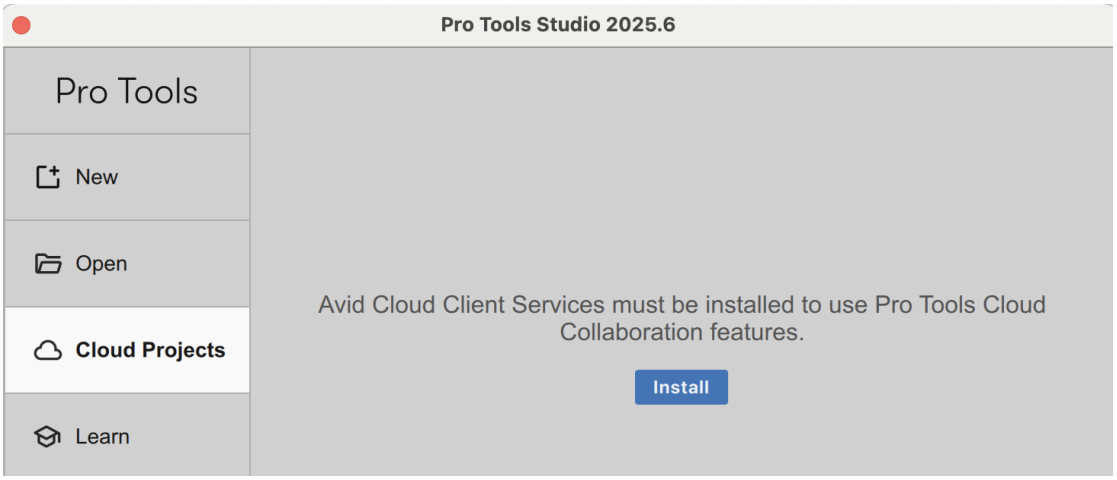
The contextual menu available on the right of each session and sketch provides the following commands:

- **Open**
- **Remove from Recent list**
- **Show in Finder/Explorer**
- **Clear Recent list**

Cloud Projects Tab

In the Dashboard, click the **Cloud Projects** tab, or press Command+3 (Mac) or Control+3 (Windows) to show the **Projects** tab. The **Cloud Projects** tab lists all projects stored in the cloud that you have created or collaborated on. Double-click any project in the list to open it. No projects are shown if you are not logged in.

The **Cloud Projects** tab lets you open your Cloud projects. You must be signed in to your Avid Master Account to access your Cloud projects. Also, Avid Cloud Client Services must be installed to use Pro Tools Cloud Collaboration features, and if it is not installed, you are prompted to do so.

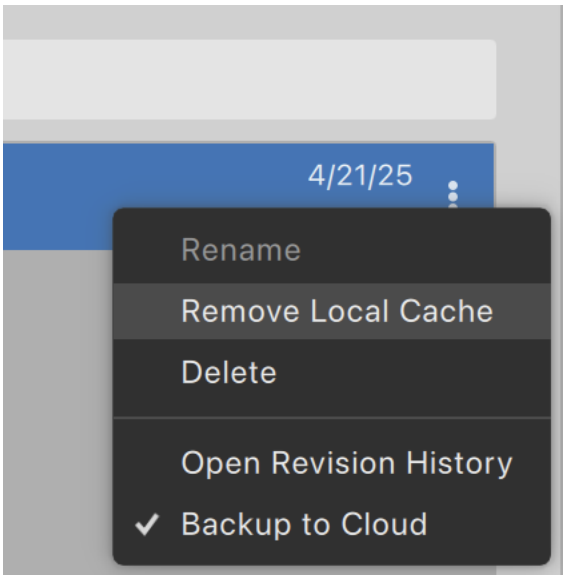


Project Contextual Menu

The contextual menu available on the right of each project provides the following commands:

- **Rename**
- **Remove Local Cache**

- **Delete**
- **Open Revision History**
- **Backup to Cloud**



Cloud Storage Used

At the bottom of the Dashboard on the Cloud Projects page is an indicator for how much total cloud storage is being used by your account.

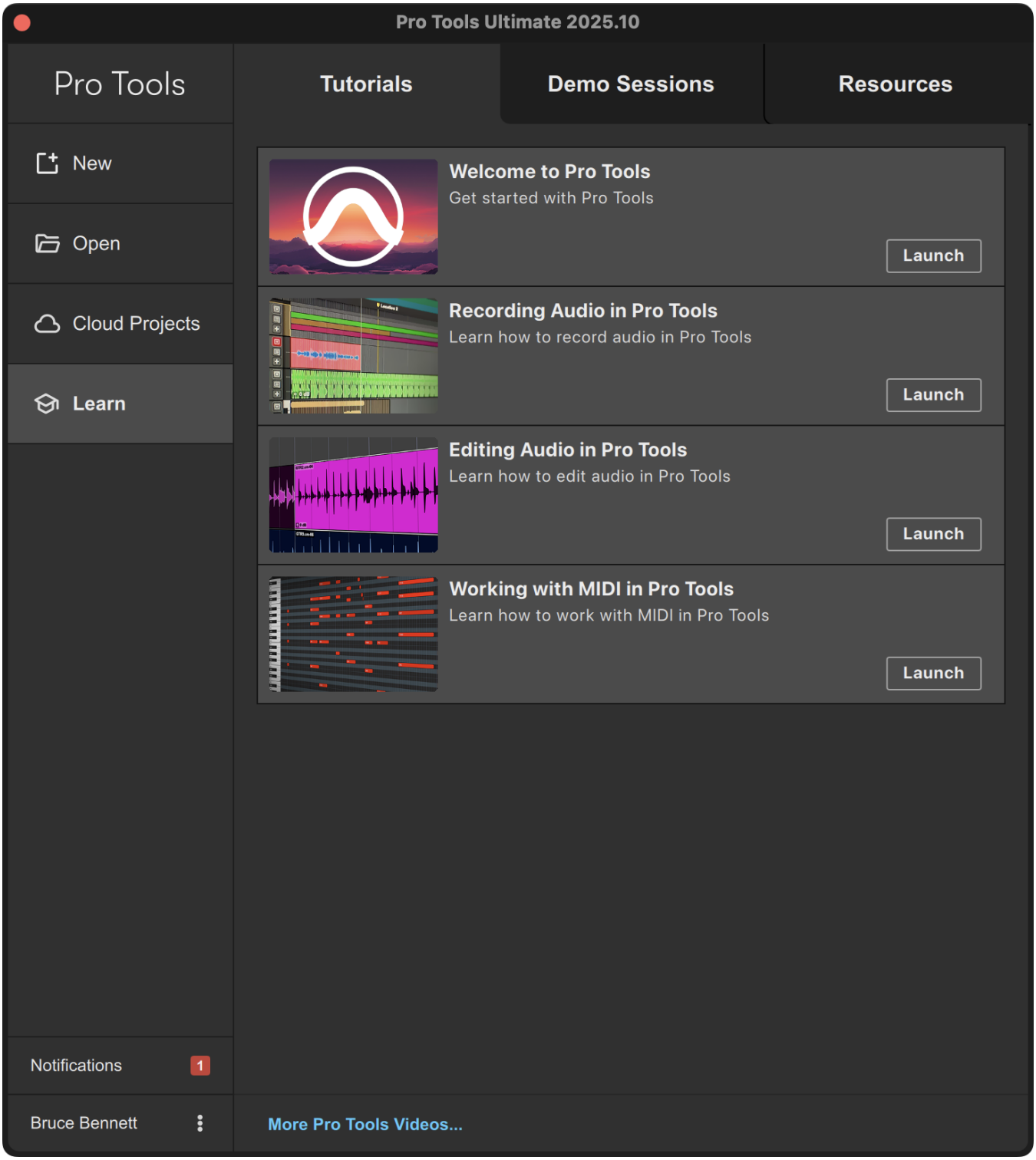


Learn Tab

In the Dashboard, click the **Learn** tab, or press Command+4 (Mac) or Control+4 (Windows). The **Learn** tab provides easy access to **Tutorials**, **Demo Sessions**, and additional **Resources**. The bottom of the **Learn** tab provides a link to **More Pro Tools Videos** online.

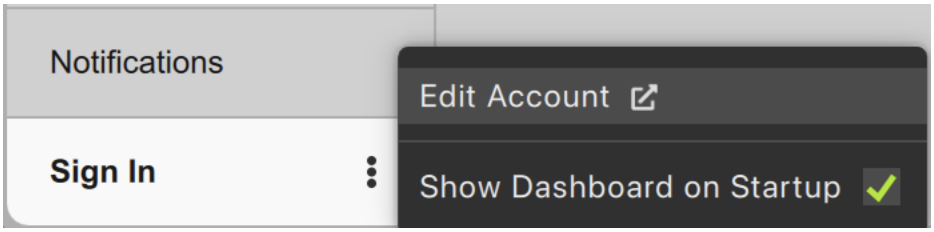
Pro Tools Tutorials are powered by SoundFlow. You will need to log in to your Avid Master Account to access Tutorials (see "Sign In/Out" on the next page). You can also access Tutorials in the Learn pane on the right of the Edit window (see "SoundFlow" on page 479) or the Learn window (**Window > Learn**).

For more information about SoundFlow, visit soundflow.org.



Sign In/Out

The Sign In/Out link is present in all tabs. Click **Sign In** to sign in to your Avid Master Account. Once you are signed in, your Display Name will be shown and you will also see the percentage of your Avid Cloud storage that you are using all of the projects you own on the **Cloud Projects** tab. Any media you post to a shared project that you do not own will count against the project owner's Cloud storage allocation. To sign out, click your Display Name and choose **Sign Out**.



Dashboard Sign In menu

Edit Account

Click the Sign In menu and choose **Edit Account** to launch my.avid.com in your default Web browser.

Show Dashboard on Startup

Click the Sign In menu and select or deselect the **Show Dashboard on Startup** option. You can also enable or disable this option in the Display Preferences (**Setup > Preferences**).

Additional Dashboard Keyboard Shortcuts

To navigate through the focused Template, Session, or Project list, press the Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Alt+Up/Down Arrows (Windows).

To select the item at the top or bottom of the displayed list, press Home/End (Mac and Windows).

To scroll up or down through the focused Template, Session, or Project list, press Page Up/Down (Mac and Windows).

Showing or Hiding the Dashboard on Start

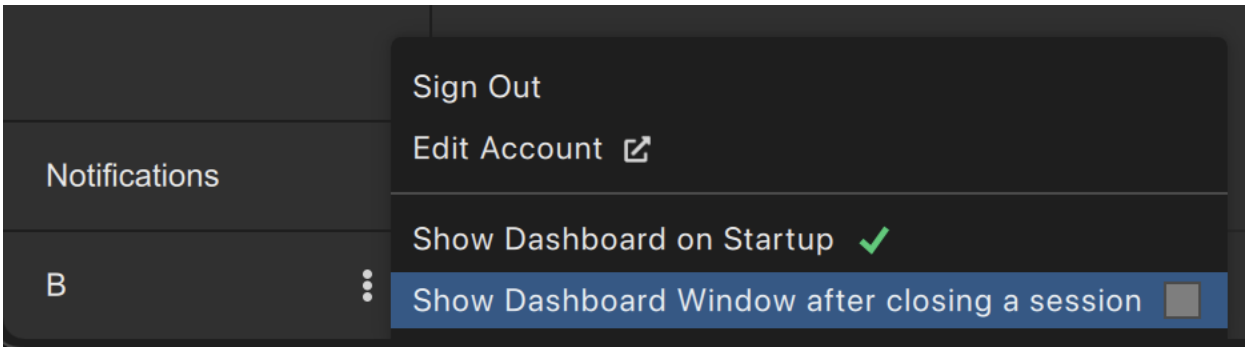
To show or hide the Dashboard on startup, do one of the following:

- In the **Warnings & Dialogs** section of the Display Preferences page (**Setup > Preferences**), select (to show) or deselect (to hide) the **Show Dashboard window when Pro Tools starts** option. Click **OK**.
- In the Dashboard, click the Sign In menu and select or deselect the **Show Dashboard on Startup** option.

Showing or Hiding the Dashboard After Closing a Session

To show or hide the Dashboard after closing a session, do one of the following:

- In the **Warnings & Dialogs** section of the Display Preferences page (**Setup > Preferences**), select (to show) or deselect (to hide) the **Show Dashboard Window After Closing a Session** option. Click **OK**.
- In the Dashboard window, enable the **Show Dashboard Window After Closing a Session** option.



Bit Depths and Sample Rates

When selecting a bit depth or sample rate for your session or project, consider fidelity, any compatibility issues with others systems, and storage space.

Bit depth and sample rate also have an effect on the amount of mixing power available in a session or project. Fewer mixer channels are available with 24-bit and 32-bit floating point sessions and projects, and with sessions at higher sample rates.

Bit Depths

16-Bit

Using 16-bit for audio files is useful for keeping audio file sizes down. You may want to use 16-bit for sessions and projects with few tracks, and little mixing and plugin processing. CDs (Compact Discs) use 16-bit.

24-Bit

Using 24-bit for audio files is commonly used for most music production and post-production sessions and projects with multiple audio tracks, mixing, and plugin processing. 24-bit files take up a third as much space as 16-bit files.

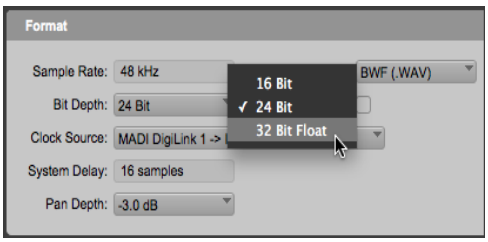
32-Bit Floating Point

Using a 32-bit floating point bit depth for audio files in Pro Tools sessions and projects can help avoid clipping or unnecessary dithering with AudioSuite rendering. It can also help avoid rounding errors in signal processing (which can occur during bit depth conversion for file playback and real-time plugin insert processing). However, 32-bit files take up a third more disk space and audio streaming bandwidth, which can be problematic with higher track counts when using slower hard drives.

You can change the bit depth for all newly recorded or imported (and converted) files in the session or project by selecting a different **Bit** option in the Session Setup window.

To change the Bit Depth for the Pro Tools session or project:

1. Choose **Setup > Session**.
2. In the Session Setup window, select a bit depth from the **Bit Depth** selector.



Session Setup window, selecting 32 Bit Float

Sample Rates

44.1 kHz

Is the sample rate used for CDs and is used in most common music production environments.

48 kHz

Is the standard sample rate for film and video projects, and is commonly used in post-production environments. It is the sample rate used for DVDs.

88.2 kHz and 96 kHz

Each of these sample rates are twice the standard sample rates for CD audio and DVD audio respectively. Audio files recorded at higher sample rates take up more drive space, but provide higher resolution for time-based plugin processing (which can help avoid aliasing). These options are only available if you are running Pro Tools with audio hardware that supports these sample rates.

176.4 kHz and 192 kHz

Each of these sample rates are four times the standard sample rates for CD audio and DVD audio respectively. Audio files recorded at higher sample rates take up more drive space, but provide higher resolution for time-based plugin processing (which can help avoid aliasing). These options are only available if you are running Pro Tools with audio hardware that supports these sample rates.

Mixed Audio File Formats

Pro Tools supports mixed audio file formats (such as WAV and AIF) in a single session or project. When importing audio files into a Pro Tools session or project, you can choose to **Add** them rather than **Convert** them regardless of the audio file format.

You can change the audio file format for all newly recorded or imported (and converted) files in a session or project by selecting a different **Audio Format** option in the Session Setup window.

To change the Audio Format for the Pro Tools session or project:

1. Choose **Setup > Session**.
2. In the Session Setup window, select an audio file format (AIF or WAV) from the **Audio Format** selector.

Interleaved Multichannel and Multi-Mono Audio Files

For stereo and greater-than-stereo multichannel audio, Pro Tools supports both interleaved multichannel audio files and multi-mono audio files.

An interleaved audio file contains all channel information, stored in an alternating single audio "stream." Interleaving distributes and "interleaves" the consecutive bits of data. This helps protect against consecutive errors when the data is read back.

Multi-mono, or "split-mono" multi-channel audio files are separate mono audio files that are treated together as a multichannel group of audio files. This lets you each channel (file) independently. For example, with stereo files, two separate files are created, where one file contains the left channel, and the other file contains the right channel. The files are identified by the suffixes of ".L" and ".R". The two files are linked, and are edited as a pair in stereo tracks in Pro Tools. However, you can decouple them and split them to individual mono audio tracks in Pro Tools so that the can be edited, processed, and mixed independently.

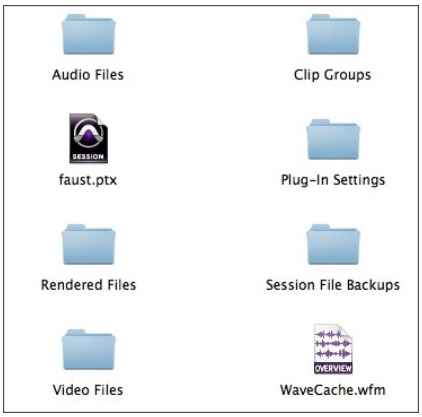
You can change the **Interleaved** setting for the currently open session or project in the Session Setup window. When this option is enabled, all newly recorded or imported (and converted) stereo or greater-than-stereo multichannel files in the session will be interleaved audio files.

To enable (or disable) interleaved audio files for the Pro Tools session or project:

1. Choose **Setup > Session**.
2. In the Session Setup window, select (or deselect) the **Interleaved** option.

Session Files and Folders

When you create a new session, Pro Tools automatically creates a new folder named for your session. Within this folder is the session file, a WaveCache.wfm file, and several subfolders (including, but not limited to, an Audio Files folder and a Clip Group folder).



Typical session folder contents (macOS shown)

Session File

The session file is the document that Pro Tools creates when you start a new project. Pro Tools can open only one session file at a time. The session file is appended with the extension *.ptx*.

Audio Files Folder

The Audio Files folder contains all audio recorded or converted during the session.

When you record a new audio track, the track is saved as a new audio file to the Audio Files folder. You can also import other audio files into the session, and work with them as well.

For details on allocating audio tracks to different hard drive locations, including shared media volumes, see "Recording with Multiple Hard Drives" on page 779.

Fade Files Folder

The Fade Files folder may be present in legacy Pro Tools sessions. Versions of Pro Tools lower than 10.0 use rendered fades and cross-fades that are written to the “Fade Files” folder in the session folder.

Bounced Files Folder

The Bounced Files folder is the default directory for files bounced from the session (Bounce Mix).

Rendered Files Folder

The Rendered Files folder contains any temporary files created by Rendered Elastic Audio processing in the session. It may also contain temporary filtered analysis files (.aan) as a result of any changes to Elastic Audio analysis.

Clip Groups Folder

The Clip Groups folder is the default directory for any clip groups that you export from your Pro Tools session.

ARA Data Folder

The ARA Data folder contains separate folders, each named after the ARA plug-used in the session and each containing ARA analysis data for that plugin.

Sampler Audio Files Folder

The Sampler Audio Files folder contains rendered audio files that result from dragging and dropping audio clips from tracks in Pro Tools to Virtual Instrument plugins.

WaveCache File

The WaveCache.wfm file stores all of the waveform display data for the session. If you delete the WaveCache.wfm file, Pro Tools creates a new one the next time you open the session.

By storing waveform data in the WaveCache file, sessions open more quickly. The session WaveCache file can be included whenever a session is transferred to another Pro Tools system (7.x and later).

Pro Tools also maintains a distinct WaveCache file inside the Databases folder, which retains waveform data for all files used on the system.

Deleting or trashing a WaveCache file does not harm the session or your system. However, the session will take longer to open because it has to recalculate waveform data for any associated audio files and store that data in a new WaveCache file.

Session File Backups Folder

The Session File Backups folder contains automatically-generated backups of your Pro Tools sessions. These files are created when working on a session and the Operations preference for **Enable Session File Auto Backup** is enabled. (See "Enable Session File Auto Backup" on page 145.)

Video Files Folder

The Video Files folder is the default directory for video files in the session.

Renamed Audio Files Folder

This folder includes file names that have been renamed when you open a session that contains audio file names with incompatible characters, or, in certain situations, save a copy of a session to a Pro Tools version that does not support long file names.

For more information, see "Renamed Audio Files" on page 721.

Pro Tools Projects

A Pro Tools project is like an online session. It lets you access your session from any system with online access. Projects also let you collaborate remotely with other people. Pro Tools synchronizes your local project and associated media with your online account automatically.

You must be online and signed in to your Avid Master Account the first time you create a project (see "Signing In and Out of Your Avid Master Account" on page 206), but after that you can work offline. Pro Tools synchronizes your local project with your online account the next time you are online. This process runs in the background and can be monitored in Pro Tools by checking the Task Manager (**Window > Task Manager**).

Project data and media are bundled and cached on local storage, but you cannot open a project by navigating through the file system. You can only access projects through the Pro Tools Dashboard. Projects are differentiated from sessions by the Project icon in the Dashboard.



Project icon (online project)

You can save a session as a project using the **Save Copy In** command. This lets you take an existing session and save it as a project for cloud collaboration. Likewise, you can save a project as a session. You might want to do this when the project is complete so that you can archive it as a session and free up storage space in your Avid Cloud Account.

Backup to Cloud: Online and Offline Projects

The **Backup to Cloud** option determines whether or not a project is online (stored in the cloud) or offline (stored in the local project cache only). Disabling **Backup to Cloud** for online projects can be useful for freeing up storage in your Avid Cloud Account for other projects. This option is only available for projects (not sessions).

Online Projects

When the **Backup to Cloud** option is enabled for a project, the project is *online* and all associated media are copied to your Avid Cloud Storage Account as well as being stored in the local designated project cache. You can collaborate with other users on online projects as well as access your project from any computer when you are signed in to your Avid Master Account. Enabling the **Backup to Cloud** option for an offline project copies the project and all associated media to your Avid Cloud Account.

Offline Projects

When the **Backup to Cloud** option is disabled for a project, the project is *offline* and all associated media is only stored in the local project cache.



Project icon (offline project)

You cannot collaborate with other users on offline projects nor can you access offline projects from any other computer. Disabling the **Backup to Cloud** option for an online project deletes the project and all associated media from your Avid Cloud Account, leaving only the local cached copy of the project. Offline projects do not appear in the Projects List in the Artist Chat window, they only appear in the Projects List in the Dashboard. Note that you cannot disable the **Backup to Cloud** option for shared projects or if the local project cache has been cleared.

Shared Projects and Ownership

Whoever creates a project, owns the project. All media posted to the project, whether by the owner or a collaborator, counts against the owner's cloud storage allocation. Posted media never counts against a collaborator's cloud storage allocation.

You can hover the cursor over a project icon in the Dashboard and a tooltip identifying the project name and the project owner appears.



Tooltip displaying project name and project owner

Setting the Location of the Local Cache

All project data and media is stored both in your Avid Cloud account and in a local cache. The local project cache is stored on your system drive by default. However, for the best performance with Pro Tools, it is generally recommended that you do not use your system drive for recoding audio, so you should set the local project cache to an external drive if possible. You can change the location of where the project cache is stored in the Pro Tools Operation Preferences.

To set the location for storing the local project cache:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Operation** tab.
3. Click the **Change** button for the **Project Media Cache**.
4. In the Open dialog, navigate to the location where you want to store the Project Media Cache and click **Open**.

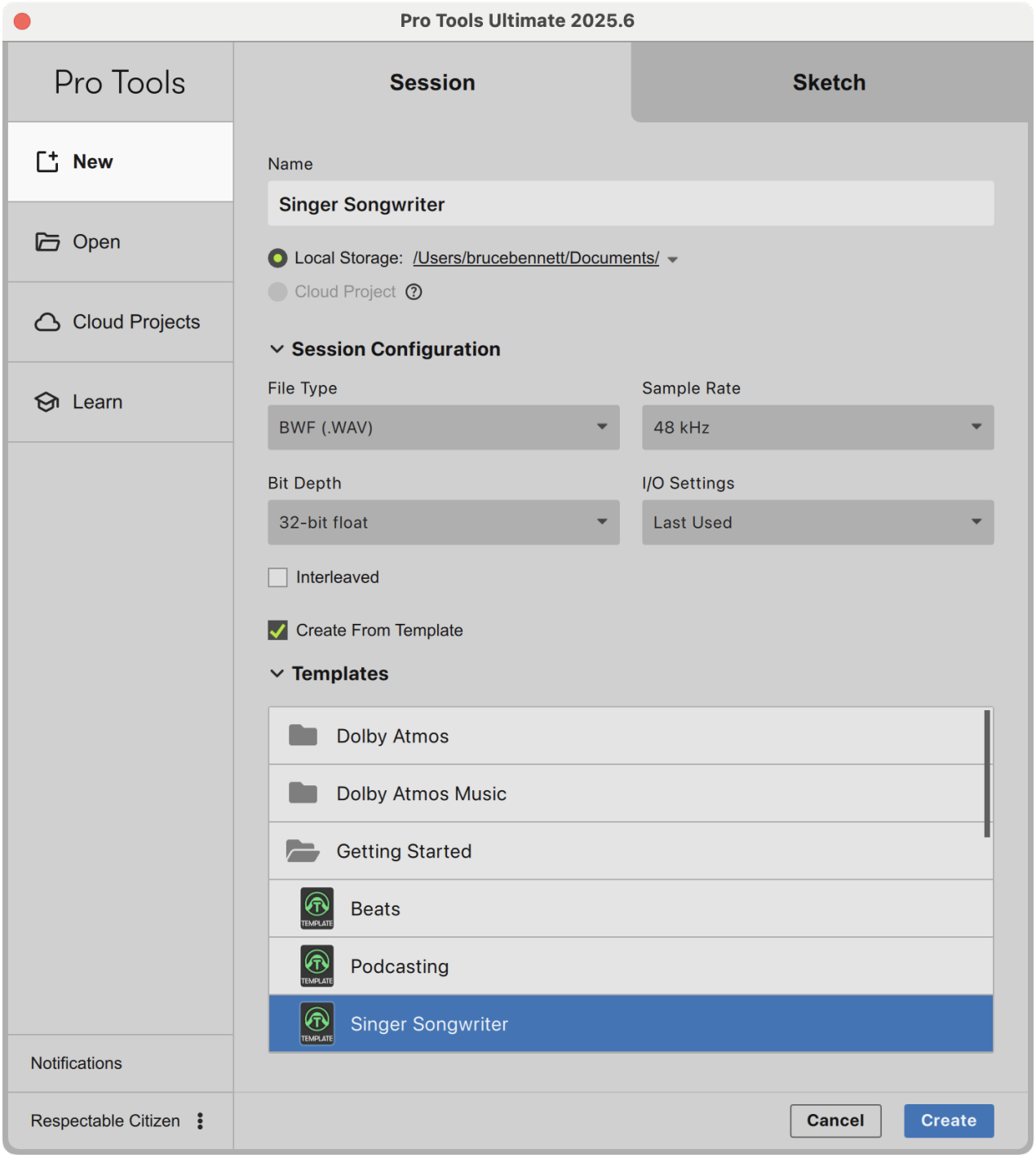
Creating a New Session or Project from a Template

To create a new session or project from a template:

1. In the Dashboard, click the **New** tab if it is not already shown, or press Command+1 (Mac) or Control+1 (Windows).

   You can create your own custom categories. For more information, see "Session Templates" on page 246.

2. For **Type**, select either **Project (cloud)** or **Session (local)**.
3. Type a **Name** for the session or project.
4. Enable the **Create From Template** option.
5. From the **Template Group** pop-up menu, select the category of templates you want (for example, **Guitar** or **Songwriter**).
6. Select the template you want to use from the list (on the right).



Dashboard, Create From Template option enabled

7. If you want to change any of the session or project parameters, do any of the following:
   - Select the **`Audio File Type`** (**`WAV`** or **`AIF`**).
   - Select the **`Bit Depth`** (**`16 bit`**, **`24 bit`**, or **`32 bit float`**).
   - Select the **`Sample Rate`**.
   - To create interleaved multichannel audio files in the session or project, enable **`Interleaved`**.
   - For sessions only, select either the **`Prompt for location`** option or the **`Location`** option. If you select the **`Location`** option, you can specify the default location for saving sessions by

clicking the **Location** button.

- For projects only, select the **Backup to Cloud** option to create an online project. Disable this option if you want to create an offline project.

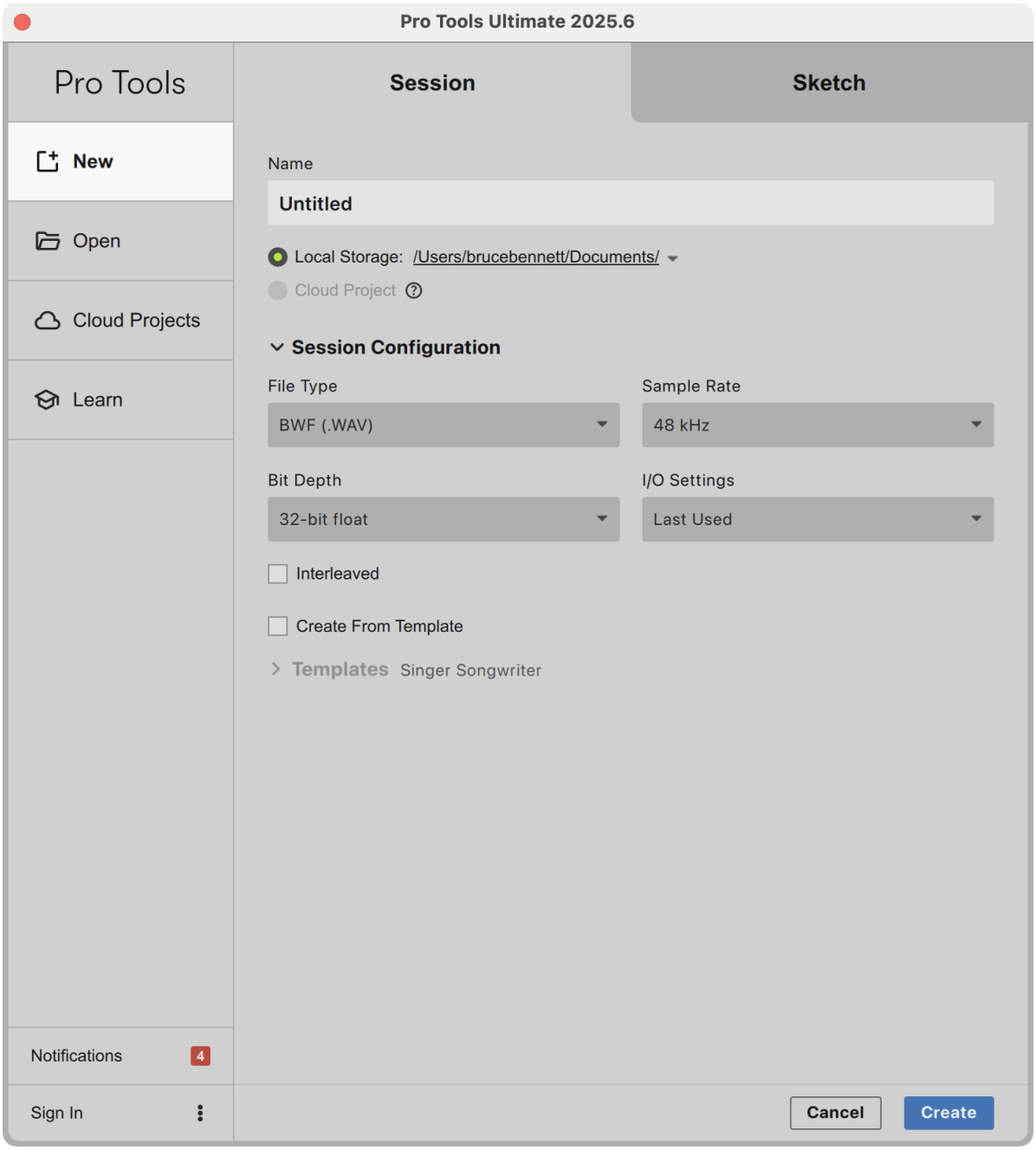
8. Click **Create**.
9. For sessions only, in the Save dialog, specify where you want to save the session, and then click **Save**.

For optimum compatibility between Mac and Windows, set the file project to BWF (.WAV).

Creating a New Blank Session or Project

To create a new blank session or project:

1. In the Dashboard, click the **New** tab if it is not already shown, or press Command+1 (Mac) or Control+1 (Windows).



Dashboard, creating a new session

2. For **Format**, select either **Project (cloud)** or **Session (local)**.

   You must be online and signed in to your Avid Master Account to create a new project (see "Signing In and Out of Your Avid Master Account" on page 148).

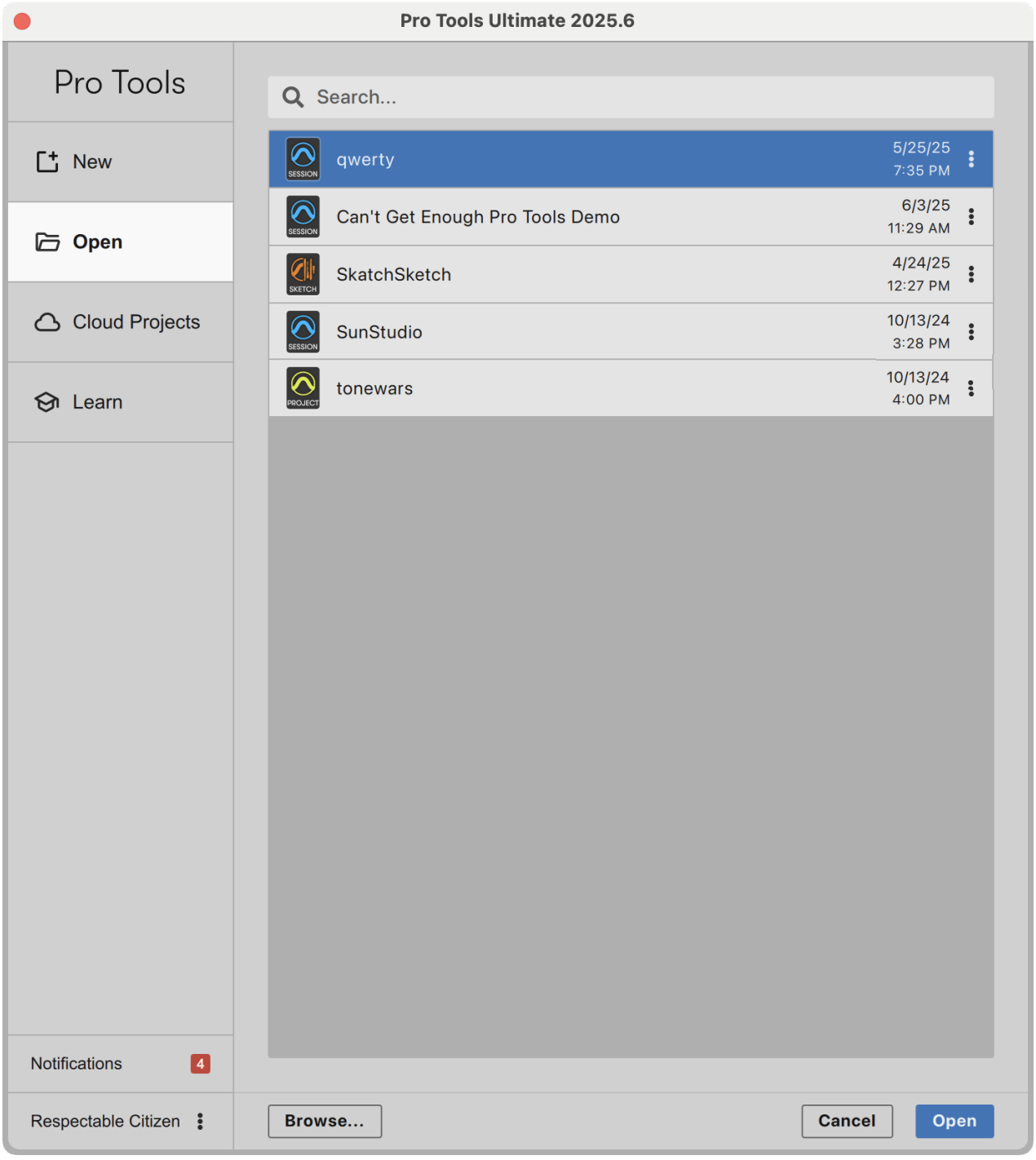
3. Type a **Name** for the session or project.
4. Ensure that the **Create From Template** option is deselected.

5. If you want to change any of the session or project parameters, do any of the following:
   - Select the audio **File Type** (**WAV** or **AIF**).
   - Select the **Bit Depth** (**16 bit**, **24 bit**, or **32 bit float**).
   - Select the **Sample Rate**.
   - Select the **I/O Settings** to use for the session or project. Several pre-configured I/O Settings are included with your system, or you can select a custom **I/O Setting**. For more information, see "I/O Setup" on page 55.
   - To create interleaved multichannel audio files in the session or project, enable **Interleaved**.
   - For sessions only, select either the **Prompt for location** option or the **Location** option. If you select the **Location** option, you can specify the default location for saving sessions by clicking the **Location** button.
   - For projects only, select the **Backup to Cloud** option to create an online project. Disable this option if you want to create an offline project.
6. Click **Create**.
7. For sessions only, in the Save dialog, specify where you want to save the session, and then click **Save**.

Opening a Recent Session, Project, or Sketch

To open a recent session, project, or Sketch from the Dashboard:

1. In the Dashboard, select **Open**, or press Command+2 (Mac) or Control+2 (Windows).



Dashboard, Recent Sessions/Projects/Sketches list

The Open Recent option is not available the first time you launch Pro Tools (or if you have cleared the Recent Sessions list by choosing File › Open Recent › Clear).

2. Select any of the last ten recent sessions, projects, or Sketches from the list (on the right).

You must be online and signed in to your Avid Master Account to open a project. If you are not signed in, no projects appear in this list (see "Signing In and Out of Your Avid Master Account" on page 148).

3. Click **Open**.

To open a recent session, project, or Sketch from the File menu:

- Choose **File > Open Recent >** and select the recent session, project, or Sketch that you want to open from the list.

Press Command+Shift+O (Mac) or Control+Shift+O (Windows) to open the most recent session, project, or Sketch.

Opening a Session

When you open a session, Pro Tools looks in the session folder for audio and fade files linked to the session.

For more information on opening sessions created on different platforms, Pro Tools systems, or versions of Pro Tools software, see "File and Session Management and Compatibility" on page 719.

To open an existing session:

1. Do one of the following:
   - If Pro Tools is running, choose **File > Open > Session**.
   - To open a session from the Dashboard, click the **Open** button or press Command+O (Mac) or Control+O (Windows).
2. In the Open dialog, locate the session you want to open and click **Open**.

You can also open a session from a Workspace browser by double-clicking it.

Opening a Session that Contains Fade Files

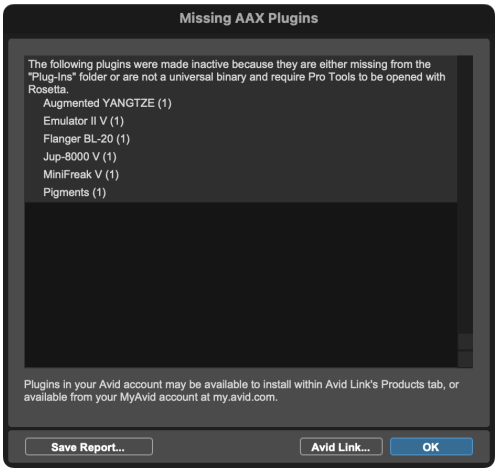
When opening a session created in a version of Pro Tools lower than 10.0, Pro Tools calculates and plays back all fades in real time. The "Fade Files" folder in the session folder is neither deleted nor used. Any rendered fades created in legacy sessions are calculated and played back in real time. Any new fades created in the session do not generate any new rendered fade files in the pre-existing "Fade Files" folder.

Opening a Session that Contains Unavailable Files

Pro Tools notifies you if files are found but reside on Transfer volumes, or if any required files cannot be found. For more information, see "Locating Audio Files" on page 719.

Opening a Session with Missing Plugins

Pro Tools notifies you when you open a session with missing plugins.



Do one of the following:

- Click **OK** to open the session without the missing plugins.
- Click **Avid Link** to download and authorize missing plugins (or purchase them if necessary).
- Click **Save Report** to save a text file report for the session's missing plugins.

Opening a Session from a Transfer Volume

When opening a session from a Transfer volume (such as a USB Thumb Drive, CD, or DVD), Pro Tools prompts you to save the session on a Performance volume, and copy and convert any referenced media files. For more information, see "Locating Audio Files" on page 719.

Opening a Session that Contains Unavailable Resources

Pro Tools prompts you when opening a session that contains unavailable voices, I/O paths, DSP resources, or plugins. This is common when transferring sessions between systems with different Pro Tools hardware.

The Unavailable Resources dialog provides an initial report of the missing session components. To save a text (.txt) file containing a more detailed Notes report, along with the resulting action, click **Yes**. The Notes report is named with the session name, followed by Notes.txt. You can choose to save this file in your Session folder, or in another location.

The following occurs when opening a session with unavailable items:

With all Pro Tools Systems:

- Inserts assigned to unavailable plugins are made inactive.
- Inputs, outputs, and sends that are assigned to unavailable paths are made inactive.

With HDX Systems Only:

- Any tracks beyond the maximum number of available voices on the current system are made inactive.

With Pro Tools Host-based Systems Only:

- Any tracks beyond the maximum number of available voices on the current system are set to *voice off*.

Opening a Session with Audio File Names that Contain Illegal Characters

Pro Tools does not support audio file names that contain the following ASCII characters:

- / (Forward Slash)
- \ (Backslash)
- : (Colon)
- * (Asterisk)
- ? (Question mark)
- “ (Quotation marks)
- < (Less-than symbol)
- > (Greater-than symbol)
- | (vertical line or pipe)

When opening a session that contains audio files with illegal characters, Pro Tools automatically creates a renamed copy of each file (replacing these characters with an underscore “_”). Renamed files are copied to the Renamed Audio Files folder. The original files are left intact in the Audio Files folder.

Before the session opens, you are prompted to save a detailed report of the renamed files and their original file names to a Notes text file. Follow the on-screen instructions. By default, the Notes text file is saved to the Session folder.

Opening a Session that was Saved with +6 dB Fader Gain

All Pro Tools 7.x and later sessions have a +12 dB fader gain level. However, when saving a Pro Tools 7.x or higher session to a lower version of Pro Tools that supports +6 dB and +12 dB fader gain, the new session can be saved with either a +6 dB or a +12 dB maximum fader gain.

When saving a +12 dB session as a +6 dB session, Pro Tools alerts you that any automation settings over +6 dB will be lowered to +6 dB. See "Save Copy In" on page 234.

In Pro Tools 7.x or higher, when opening a session that was saved with a +6 dB maximum gain level, the session will update to a +12 dB range.

Opening a Session or Project with Plugins Deactivated

Pro Tools lets you open sessions and projects with all plugins set to inactive. Since sessions and projects with a lot of plugins can take a long time to load, this lets you quickly open any session or project for immediate visual inspection and audio playback (without plugins). If it is the session or project that you want to work with, you can easily reopen the session or project with plugins activated.



You can make individual plugins active by Command-Control-clicking (Mac) or Control-Start-clicking (Windows) them. To make an entire row of plugins active, Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) any plugin in the row of inserts.

To open a Pro Tools session with all plugins set to inactive:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **File > Open Session**.
2. In the Open Session dialog, locate and select the session you want.
3. Shift-click **Open**.

If you close and re-open the session without using the Shift key, plugins are activate.

To open a Pro Tools project with all plugins set to inactive:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **File > Open Project**.
2. In the Dashboard Projects list, select the project you want.
3. Shift-click **Open**.

If you close and re-open the project without using the Shift key, plugins are activate.

Saving Sessions and Projects

Saving the Session File

The **Save** command saves the changes you have made to your session and writes them over the previously saved version of the session file. The **Save** command cannot be undone. Consider saving regularly while working on your session to ensure that your work is preserved on your hard drive.

To save a session or project:

- Choose **File > Save**.

Press Command+S (Mac) or Control+S (Windows) to save the session or project.

Saving Projects

Projects are saved to the cloud when changes are uploaded by any collaborator. The local cache keeps your local working copy distinct from the cloud version (and from other collaborators' versions) until all changes are uploaded and downloaded (you can set this to happen automatically).

Reverting to a Previously Saved Session or Project

If you have made changes to a session or project since you last saved it, you can discard those changes and revert to its previously saved state.

To revert to the last saved version of a session or project:

- Choose **File > Revert to Saved**.

If you have enabled the Operation preference for Auto Backup, you can also open up a backup copy of your session or project. This feature lets you specify the total number of incremental backups that are kept and how often the session or project is saved. See *"Auto Backup" on page 145.*

Reverting to a previously saved session or project can also be used to open a session or projects with all of its plugins active, after opening it with all of its plugins inactive. See *"Opening a Session or Project with Plugins Deactivated" on the previous page.*

Saving the Session File with a New Name

To save a copy of the current session with a new name or to a different hard drive location, use the **Save As** command. The **Save As** command closes the current session and lets you keep working on the renamed copy. This is useful if you are experimenting and want to save successive versions of the session.

By working this way, you can quickly retrace your steps if you want to go back to an earlier version of your session. The **Save As** command saves a new version of the *session file* only, and does not duplicate versions of the audio or fade files.

To save a session with a new name:

1. Choose **File > Save As**.
2. Type a new name for your session.
3. Click **Save**.

Press Command+Control+S (Mac) or Control+Start+S (Windows) for the Save As command.

The renamed session file is saved in the session folder along with the original session (unless you specify a different destination). Any new audio files that you record in your renamed session will be placed into the same Audio Files folder that was created for your original session.

Saving a Sketch

To save a Sketch in Pro Tools:

- With the Sketch window in the foreground, do one of the following:
  - Choose **File > Save Sketch**.
  - Press Command+S (Mac) or Control+S (Windows).

To save a Sketch as a new Sketch in Pro Tools:

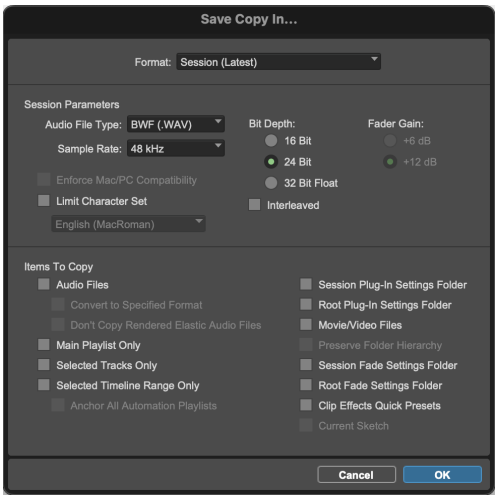
1. With the Sketch window in the foreground, do one of the following:
2. Choose **File > Save Sketch As**.
3. Press Command+Control+S (Mac) or Control+Start+S (Windows).

To save a copy of Sketch in Pro Tools:

1. Ensure that the Sketch window is in the foreground.
2. Choose File › Save Sketch Copy In.
3. In the resulting dialog, navigate to where you want to save the copy of the Sketch.
4. Type a name for the copy and click **Save**.

Save Copy In

To save a copy of the current session or project, use the **Save Copy In** command. In addition, you can specify the session or project file format, audio file format, bit depth, and sample rate for the copy.



Save Copy In dialog

To save a session or project copy as new session or project:

1. Choose **File > Save Copy In**.
2. Specify the **Format** for the copy, such as **Session (Latest)**.
3. Set the audio **File Type** for the copy: BWF (.WAV) or AIFF.
4. Set the **Sample Rate** and **Bit Depth** for the copy.
5. If applicable, select a **Fader Gain** level for the copy.
6. If applicable, select **Enforce Mac/PC Compatibility** to create session and audio files that can be used on both Windows and Mac Pro Tools systems.
7. Select the **Items to Copy** for the copy.

   To include all audio being used in the session, select the All Audio Files option.
8. Click **Save**.

For information on sharing sessions between different operating systems, Pro Tools systems, or versions of Pro Tools software, see "File and Session Management and Compatibility" on page 719.

How the Save Copy In Command Works

Unlike the **Save As** command, **Save Copy In** does not close the original session, so subsequent edits are made to the original session. Session copies can be used to archive important sessions, for versioning, or as a means to prepare sessions for transfer to another Pro Tools system.

Save Copy In can save only the audio being used in the session. Any audio that was recorded or imported and then later removed from the session, but not deleted from disk, is not included in the new session or project copy.

To include all audio being used in the session or project, select the All Audio Files option.

Using the **Save Copy In** command is the only way to change the sample rate of a session or project. The sample rate of each of the session or project copied audio files is converted to the selected sample rate. When saving a session copy to a different sample rate, Pro Tools uses the selected **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** option in the Import section of the Processing Preferences page (**Setup > Preferences**).

When you save a copy of the session or project to a lower bit depth, Dither (and Noise Shaping) are applied automatically.

See the following table:

Dither and Noise Shaping with Save Copy In

Bit Depth	Dither	Noise Shaping
32-bit float to 32-bit float	No	No
32-bit float to 24-bit	Yes	Yes
32-bit float to 16-bit	Yes	Yes
24-bit to 32-bit float	No	No
24-bit to 24-bit	No	No
24-bit to 16-bit	Yes	Yes
16-bit to 32-bit float	No	No

Bit Depth	Dither	Noise Shaping
16-bit to 24-bit	No	No
16-bit to 16-bit	No	No

The dither setting used for any conversion is the Dither plugin with **Noise Shaping** enabled.



For more information about using Dither, see "Dither" on page 1507.

Save Copy In Options

When saving a copy of a session or project, the **Save Copy In** command provides the following options.

Format

When saving a copy of a session or project with the **Save Copy In** command, you can save the session or project copy in the following formats:

- **Project**; lets you save a copy of the session as a project.
- **Latest**; supports Pro Tools 10.x and later sessions (.ptx)
- **Pro Tools 7.x -> 9.x Session** (.ptf)
- **Pro Tools 5.1 -> 6.9 Session** (.pts)

Session Parameters

When saving a copy of a session or project with the **Save Copy In** command, the following Session Parameters are available:

Audio File Type

You can save the session or project to reference BWF (.WAV) or AIFF audio files.

Using Mixed File Types

Sessions and projects can use mixed audio file projects. If your original session or project has mixed file projects, they are *not* converted to the selected file project unless you specify that they be converted by selecting the **Convert to Specified Format** option in the Items To Copy section (see "Items to Copy" on the next page).

Bit Depth

You can save the session or project at a Bit Depth of **16 Bit**, **24 Bit**, or **32 Bit Float**.

Pro Tools 10.0 and later sessions can use audio files with different bit depths. If your original session or project has mixed bit depths, they are *not* converted to the selected bit depth unless you specify that they be converted by selecting the **Convert to Specified Format** option in the Items To Copy section (see "Items to Copy" on the next page).

When saving to a Session Format lower than 10.0, if your session or project is in a different bit depth, audio files are converted to the new session bit depth, and copied to the specified location. Also, 32 Bit Float is not available for session formats lower than 10.0.



For information on bouncing to disk and dither, see "Using Dither" on page 1638.

Sample Rate

You can save the session or project at various sample rates depending on your system hardware. See "Supported Hardware Configurations with Pro Tools Artist Software" on page 37.

If your session or project is at a different sample rate, audio files are converted to the new session or project sample rate, and copied.

Fader Gain

When saving a Pro Tools 7.x or higher session to a lower version that supports +12 dB fader gain, you can save the new session with either a +6 dB or a +12 dB maximum fader gain. When saving a +12 dB session as a +6 dB session, any automation over +6 dB will be lowered to +6 dB.

Enforce Mac/PC Compatibility

When saving a Pro Tools 7.x or higher session to a lower version, enable the **Enforce Mac/PC Compatibility** option to force Windows or Mac versions of Pro Tools to create sessions and audio files that are compatible on both platforms.

Limit Character Set

When saving a copy of a session or project to the current session or project format, you can choose to limit the character set to a single language by selecting the **Limit Character Set** option.

When saving a copy of a session or project to a lower session format, the **Limit Character Set** option is automatically selected. Select a language from the **Limit Character Set** pop-up menu.

To choose the language encoding when saving a copy of a session or project:

1. Choose **File > Save Copy In**.
2. Select the **Limit Character Set** option.
3. Choose the language you want to use from the **Limit Character Set** pop-up menu.

Items to Copy

When saving a copy of a session or project with the Save Copy In command, you can select which items are copied, as follows:

Audio Files

When this option is selected, all audio files are copied to the new location. This setting is automatically selected if you select a Session Format lower than 10.0.

Convert To Specified Format

When the **Convert To Specified Format** option is selected, all copied audio files are converted to the specified audio file format settings in the Session Parameters section. When this option is not selected, any copied audio files retain their original audio file format settings (including sample rate and bit depth), and are exactly copied, bit-by-bit.

Note that copying formats bit-by-bit is much faster than converting files.

This option is automatically selected if you enable **Enforce Mac/PC Compatibility**.

Don't Copy Elastic Audio Rendered Files

When this option is selected, Elastic Audio Rendered files are not copied to the new session's Rendered Files folder or project bundle.

When opening the new session or project, Pro Tools opens the session or project with all available media and any missing Rendered files are regenerated automatically.

Main Playlist Only

When this option is selected, only the main playlists are included with the copy. Any alternate playlists are not included with the copy.

When this option is not selected, all playlists are included with the copy.

Selected Tracks Only

When this option is selected, only the selected tracks in the source session or project are saved with the copy. This option is automatically enabled when choosing **File > Export > Selected Tracks As New Session**.

When this option is not selected, all tracks in the source session or project are saved with the copy. This option is automatically disabled when choosing **File > Save Session Copy**.

For more information, see "Export Selected Tracks as New Session or Project" on page 711.

Selected Timeline Range Only

Pro Tools lets you save a copy of a timeline range of a session. This is useful for splitting a session into smaller pieces.

For more information, see "Export Selected Time Range as New Session or Project" on page 712.

Backup to Cloud (Projects Only)

When saving a copy of a session or project as a new project, enable the **Backup to Cloud** option to create an online project. Disable this option to create an offline project.

Session Plugin Settings Folder (Sessions Only)

When this option is selected, the session's Plugin Settings folder is copied to the new location. The references to these settings in the session are redirected to the copied settings files.

Root Plugin Settings Folder (Sessions Only)

When this option is selected, the contents of the root-level Plugin Settings Folder are copied into a folder named *Place in Root Settings Folder*, indicating that these files will need to be moved to the root level plugin settings folder on the destination system before you can use them. The references to these settings files in the session are *not* redirected to point to the copied files.

Movie/Video Files

When this option is selected, video files are copied, and references are updated to point to the copied video files.

Preserve Folder Hierarchy (Sessions Only)

When this option is selected, the relative arrangement of session audio files located across different drives or folders is maintained. The main folder for the session copy will include subfolders for each drive or folder in the original session and the destination subfolders will use the same names as the source drives and folders.

When this option is not selected, the **Save Copy In** command copies all files of the same project, regardless of their location, into a single destination folder.

Session Fade Settings Folder (Sessions Only)

When this option is selected, the session's Fade Settings folder is copied to the new location. The references to these settings in the session are redirected to the copied settings files.

Root Fade Settings Folder (Sessions Only)

When this option is selected, the contents of the root-level Fade Settings Folder are copied into a folder named *Place in Root Settings Folder*, indicating that these files will need to be moved to the root level Fade settings folder on the destination system before you can use them. The references to these settings files in the session are *not* redirected to point to the copied files.

Clip Effects Quick Presets

Enable this option to export any custom Clip Effects Presets with the copy of the session or project.

Current Sketch

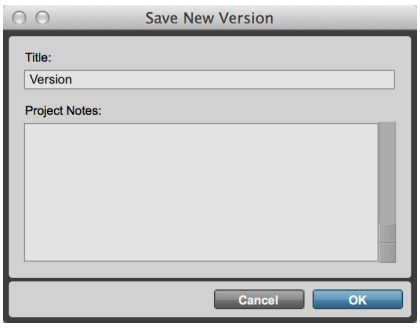
Enable this option to save the currently open Sketch with the session copy (Current Sketch). This also pins the Sketch to the session.

Save As New Version

You can save different versions of Pro Tools projects using the **Save As New Version** command (similar to using the **Save As** command for sessions). Pro Tools lets you review and restore any version of a project from the Project Revision History window.

To save a new version of the current project:

1. Choose **File > Save Project As**, or press Command+Control+S (Mac) or Control+Start+S (Windows).



Save New Version window

2. In the Save New Version window, type the **Title** for the new version of the project (for example, "Ver. 3" or "acapella version").
3. Type any notes for this version of the project under **Project Notes**. This is optional—you can always add or edit **Project Notes** for any given version later (see "Project Notes" on page 249).
4. Click **OK**.

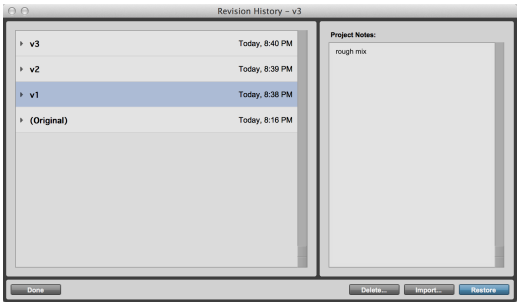
The title bar at the top of the Edit and Mix windows, and the Revision History window update to read "‹project name›—‹version title›."

Enter a unique title for the new version of the project. No project can contain two separate versions with the same name nor can one version overwrite another.

Revision History

Revision History keeps track of all versions of a project, including any automatically and manually saved histories for each version.

The left pane of the Revision History window lists all versions for the project, and the right side displays Project Notes (if any) for the selected version of the project.



Revision History window

To open the revision history window, do one of the following:

- Choose **File > Revision History**.
- Press Command+Control+O (Mac) or Control+Start+O (Windows).
- On the Project page of the Dashboard, choose **Open Revision History** from the Project pop-up menu.

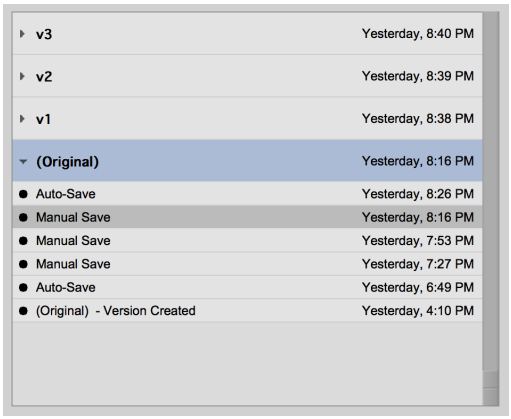
To close the revision history window:

- Click **Done**.

Press Esc to close the Revision History window.

Version List

The Version List displays the versions you have saved by name and are always sorted by date (with the most recent at the top of the list). Any manually or automatically saved histories of any version in the list can be displayed by clicking the reveal triangle to the left of the version title. You can also rename any version of the project in the list.



Use the Up and Down Arrow keys to navigate the Region History List, and use the Right and Left Arrow keys to Show or Hide the save history for the selected version.

Save History

Automatic and manual save histories are readily accessible for any version of a project. However, they are automatically thinned out over time—always keeping the most recent while gradually deleting older save histories from your local cache and cloud storage for the project (automatic saves are deleted first). Revision History maintains a reasonable distribution of older to more recent save histories in relation to your available storage.

Save histories are deleted (or *not* deleted) according to the following rules:

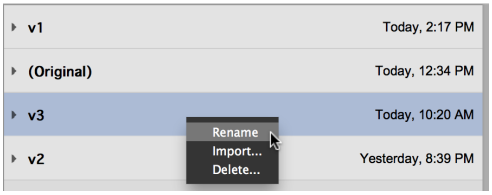
- Original versions are always kept.
- The latest manual save for each version is always kept.
- If at least one save (manual or auto) is contained in the version, it is always kept.
- The last two automatically saved backups are always kept for all versions.
- Every manual save for the last two hours is kept.
- A save for every half hour, if any, is kept for up to 24 hours for all versions.
- Manual saves are preferred over auto-saves.
- A save for every hour, if any, is kept for a week for all versions.
- The last manual save of every day, if any, is always kept for all versions.
- The automatic deletion of save histories in both the cloud and the local cache that are to be "thinned out" for the project happens directly after any save (manual or automatic).
- The version history for a project is synchronized across all machines sharing the project.

The **Auto Backup** settings in the **Operation** preferences determine how often the active version of a project is automatically saved and how many automatically saved backups are maintained for that version.

Renaming Versions of a Project

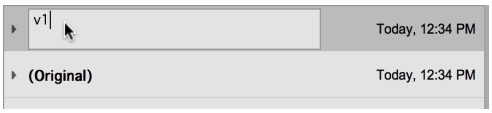
To rename any version of a project:

1. Open the Revision History window.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the version you want to rename and choose **Rename**.



Right-click any version of a project to rename it

   - Click the name of the version you want to rename.



Renaming a version of a project

   - Select **Window > Metadata Inspector** and type the **Title** that you want for this version of the project. However, you can only do this if you are the owner of the project; collaborators cannot edit the Metadata Inspector.
3. Type the new name.
4. Press Enter.

When renaming a version of a project, it must be a name that is not already used by another version of the project. No project can contain two separate versions with the same name nor can one version overwrite another.

Restoring a Version of the Project

The Revision History window lets you restore any version of a project and still maintain access to all other versions. Restoring a version closes the currently open, active version of the project (you will be prompted to save any changes) and opens the selected version of the project. The date and time are reset for the most recently opened version of the project and it moves to the top of the Version List.

To restore a version of a project:

1. Select the version you want to restore in the Version List.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the **Restore** button.
   - Double-click the version in the Version List.
   - Press Return or Enter.
   - Press the R key.
3. You may be prompted to **Save** the currently open version of the project before restoring the selected version.

Conflicts Between Shared Tracks in Different Versions of a Project

It is possible to have conflicts with shared tracks and project data in the active version of a project if they do not match the latest version on the cloud. This may be a common occurrence when working with different versions of a shared project. For example, if you save version X of a shared project, make some edits without saving or uploading your changes, then save as new version Y and upload your changes, and then restore version X, there will be conflicts between the version in the cloud (Y) and the local, active version (X).



Shared Tracks Conflict warning

Pro Tools warns you of conflicts and lists the names of mismatched tracks so that you can make an informed decision on how to proceed:

- Upload and overwrite tracks and project data in the cloud.
- Download and overwrite local tracks and project data.
- Do nothing and leave both the local version and the cloud version unaltered.
- Unshare any conflicting tracks and leave the cloud version unaltered.

Even if the Auto Upload All or Auto Download All Track Collaboration options are enabled in a shared project, Pro Tools never automatically overwrites the cloud version with the local version, nor the local version with the cloud version, when conflicts are detected.

Importing Data from Another Version of a Project

You can import project data from any version into the currently active version of the project (much like when importing data from another session into the current session). This can be useful if you only want to use some of the data from another version of the project and not have to restore that entire version. For example, you might have the best guitar solo in one version of the project, but you want to keep everything else in the currently active version. Use the Import command in the Revision History window to import just that one track.

To import project data from another version into the current version of the project:

1. In the Version List, select the version from which you want to import data.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the **Import** button.
   - Press I on your computer keyboard.
   - Right-click the version you want to import data from and choose **Import**.
3. Configure the Import Session Data dialog as desired.
4. Click **OK**.

For detailed information on the Import Session Data dialog, see "Importing and Exporting Data to and from a Session or Project" on page 650.

Deleting a Version of a Project

You can delete any version (or manual or automatic save) of a project in the Revision History window.

To delete any version of a project:

1. In the Version List, select the version you want to delete.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the **Delete** button.
   - Press the D key.
   - Right-click the version you want to delete and choose **Delete**.
3. Click **Delete**.

The selected version of the project and its entire save history are permanently deleted. When deleting one of the automatically or manually saved histories for a version, only that one history of the version is deleted.

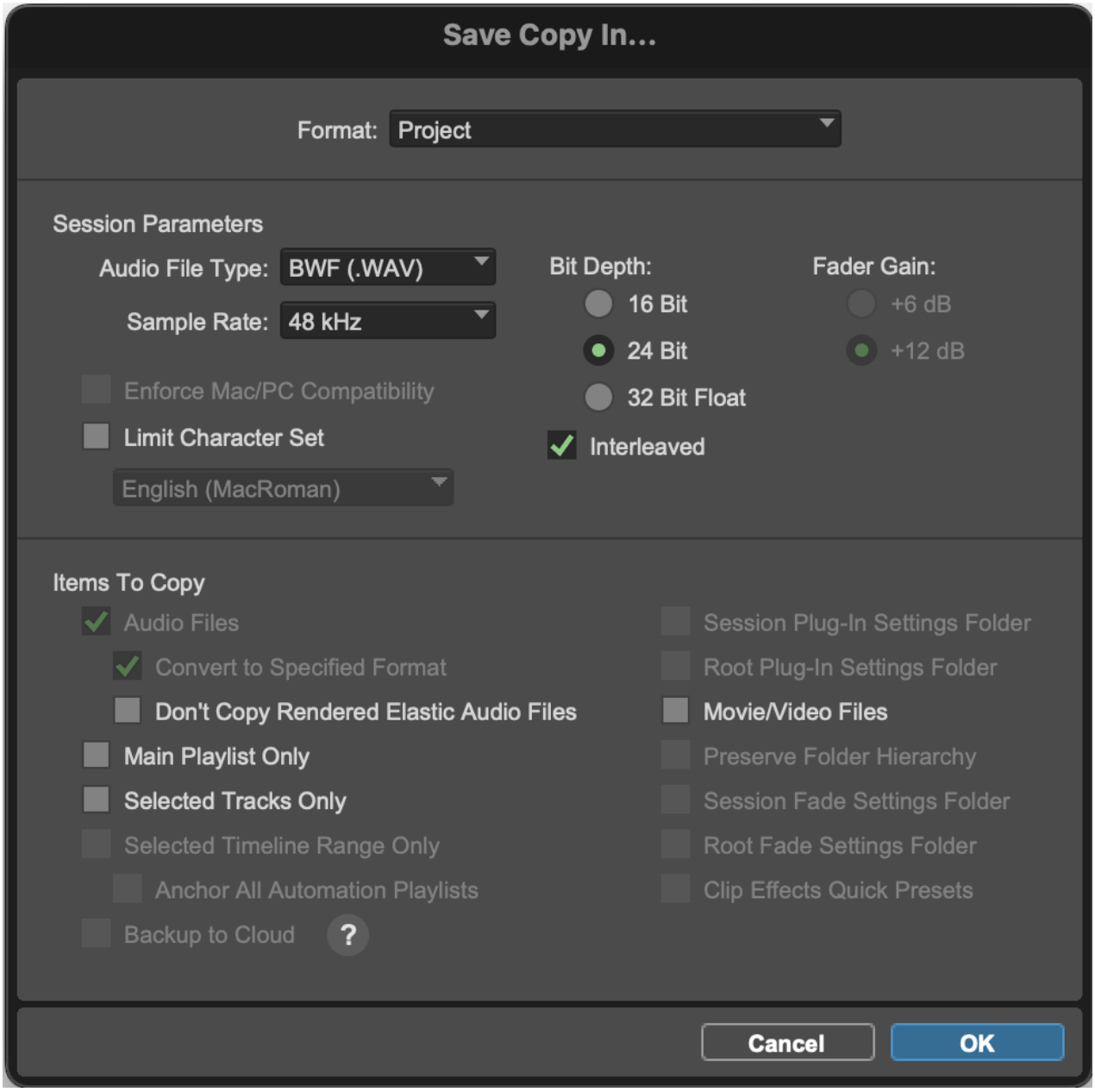
Saving a Session as a Project

Pro Tools lets you save a copy of a session as a project. This facilitates taking an existing session and converting it to a project for online collaboration (and you will still have the original session for reference).

Before saving a copy of a session as a project, consider your allocated online storage space and available bandwidth. For example, if you are working with clips that only reference only a little bit of audio in much larger files, you might want to consolidate each of those clips. If you don't have the fastest internet connection, it might take awhile to upload large referenced files whereas small whole file clips might upload and download relatively quickly. Maybe you don't need to share every alternate playlist, perhaps just a track's main playlist will do. Or, maybe you can have your collaborators record to a scratch track rather than the whole mix. The more you can do to lighten up your session before saving it as a project, the better. It will save you and your collaborators both time and online storage space.

To save a copy of a session as a project:

1. Prepare the session for saving as a project (for example, remove extraneous files from the session, consolidate clips that only reference part of large files, and so on).
2. Select only the tracks that you want in the project (optional).
3. Ensure that you are logged in to your Avid Master Account through Pro Tools (**`File > Sign In`** or click Sign In in the lower-left corner of the Dashboard).
4. Choose **`File > Save Copy In`**.
5. In the Save Copy In dialog, set the **`Format`** to **`Project`**.



Saving a copy of a session as a project

6. Set the **`Session Parameters`** as desired. For the sake of bandwidth and storage, you may consider saving the session to a project with a lower sample rate and bit depth.
7. Select which **`Items To Copy`**. Saving a session as a project always copies all **`Audio Files`**. and only the main playlist on tracks. Also, you might not want to copy rendered Elastic Audio files.

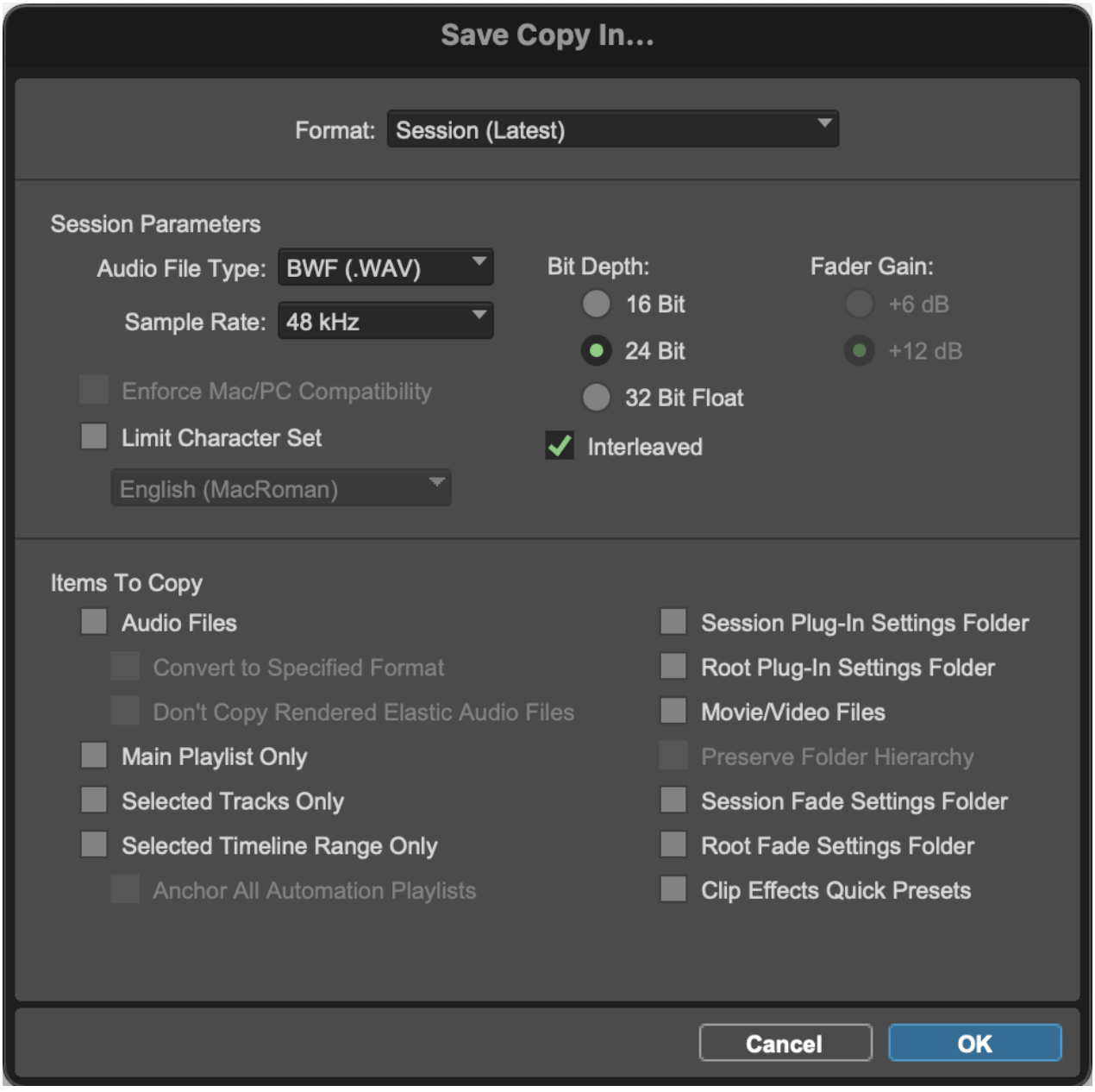
8. Enable **Selected Tracks Only** (optional).
9. Enable (or disable) **Backup to Cloud** to save as an online project (or an offline project). You must be signed in to your Avid Master Account for this option to be available.
10. Click **OK**.

Saving a Project as a Session

Pro Tools lets you save a copy of a project as a session. When you are done working on a project you can archive it as a session locally and delete the online project to free up cloud storage in your Avid Cloud Account.

To save a copy of a project as a session:

1. Ensure that you have accepted or rejected all changes to shared tracks.
2. Choose **File > Save Copy In**.
3. In the Save Copy In dialog, set the **Format** to **Session (Latest)**.



Saving a copy of a project as a session

4. Set the **Session Parameters** as desired.
5. Select which **Items To Copy**. Note that **Audio Files** and **Movie/Video Files** will always be copied.
6. Click **OK**.

Session Templates

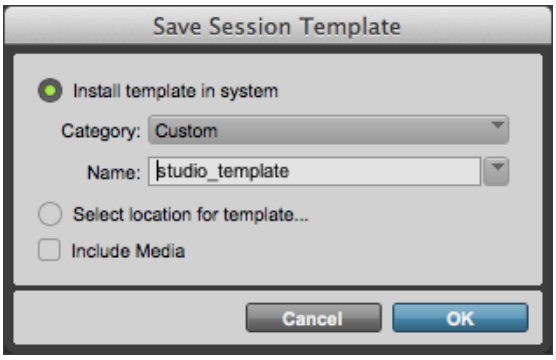
In addition to the Session Templates provided in the Dashboard, Pro Tools lets you create and share your own custom Session Templates. Pro Tools Session Template files use the suffix ".ptxt" to differentiate them from regular Pro Tools session files (".ptx").

Creating and Saving Custom Templates

The following process applies to sessions only.

To create a custom Pro Tools Session Template:

1. Create a new Pro Tools session and configure it for the session template you want.
2. Choose **File > Save As Template**.



Save Session Template dialog

3. Configure the Save Session Template dialog (see "Save Session Template Dialog" below).
4. Select the **Include Media** option if there is any audio, MIDI, or video media in the session that you want included in the template.

   When the Include Media option is enabled, all media in the session is included in the template. If you want to include media in your session template, be sure that your session only contains the media you want.

5. Click **OK**.

   If you selected the **Install Template In System** option, your session template will be available in the Dashboard.

   If you selected the **Select Location For Template** option, you are prompted by the Save As Template dialog to save the file to another location on your system.

   When you are ready to use a template as the basis for a new session, see "Creating a New Session or Project from a Template" on page 224.

Save Session Template Dialog

The Save Template dialog provides the following options:

Install Template In System

Select this option to save the template file in the system folder referenced by the Dashboard (the Session Templates in the Pro Tools application folder).

Category

The **Category** pop-up menu is only available if the **Install Template In System** option is enabled. The **Category** pop-up menu lets you select the subdirectory in which to save the template file. It also provides options for adding a category and revealing the Session Templates folder in Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder.

Add Category

Select this option from the **Category** pop-up menu to create a new subdirectory in the Session Templates folder.

Name

The **Name** setting is only available if the **Install Template In System** option is enabled. This lets you project a new name for the template file. From the Name pop-up menu (to the right of the Name field), you can select from a list of all of the templates available in the currently selected Category. Selecting one places that name in the Name field, letting you overwrite, or create a incremental version of, an existing template.

Select Location For Template

Select this option to save the template file to any directory location on your system. Note that the saved session template will not appear in the Dashboard unless it is in a subdirectory (Category) in the Session Templates folder in the Pro Tools Root Settings folder. You can change the location of the Root Settings Folder in the Operation Preferences (see "User Media and Settings Location" on page 145).

Include Media

Select this option to include any audio, MIDI, or video media in the session with the template.

Creating New Sessions or Projects from Templates

You can create new session or project from templates by opening a template. You can open any Pro Tools Session Template file (.ptt) to start a new session based on that template.



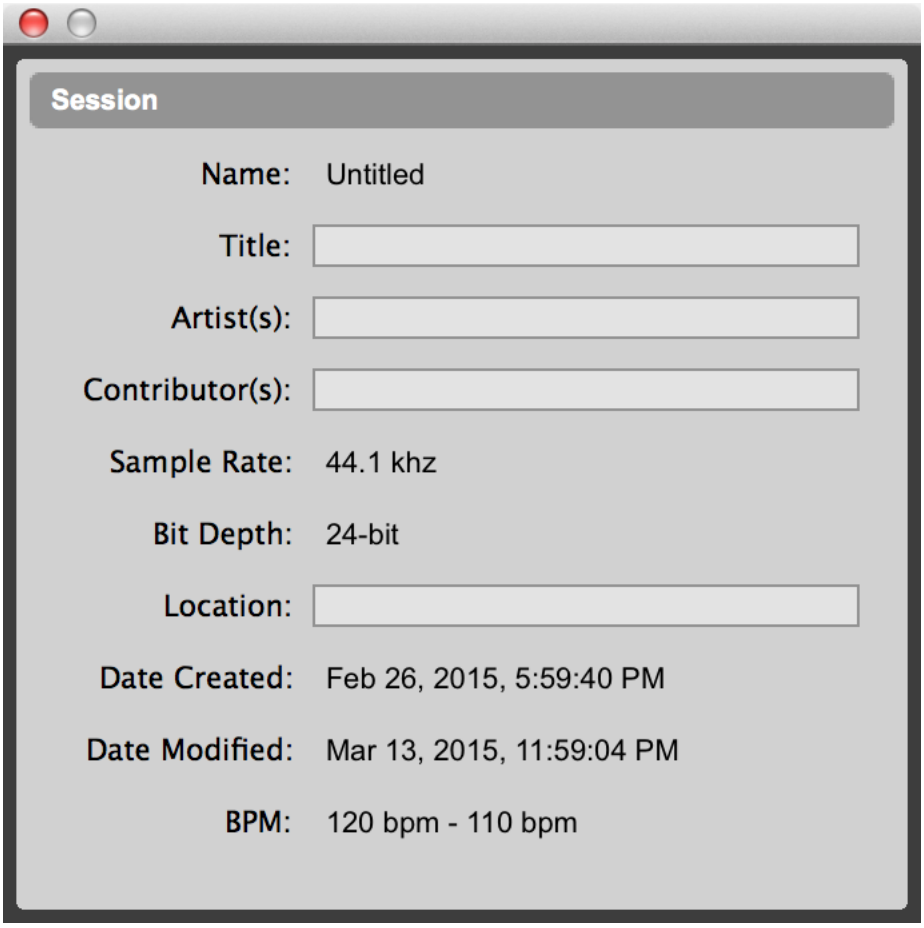
For information on creating new sessions from templates using the Dashboard, see "Creating a New Session or Project from a Template" on page 224.

Project and Session Metadata

Pro Tools provides a Metadata Inspector window for sessions and projects. Sessions and projects have slightly different Metadata options. This window lets you view and edit metadata for sessions and projects. However, certain metadata is display only (such as Sample Rate and Bit Depth). Metadata is stored with the session file (.ptx) or with the project bundle.

To open the Metadata Inspector:

- Choose **Window > Metadata Inspector**.



Session Metadata Inspector window

Metadata Inspector Window

The Metadata Inspector window displays the following information about your session or project. Some metadata can be edited and some is display only.

Name (Sessions Only)

Displays the name of the session.

Project Name (Projects Only)

Displays the name of the project.

Project Owner (Projects Only)

Displays the name of the project owner.

Title

Enter a title that is independent of the name of the session or project.

Artist(s)

Enter the name of the artist (or artists) for the session or project.

Contributor(s)

Enter the names of the contributors to the session or project.

Sample Rate

Displays the session or project sample rate. The **Sample Rate** can also be viewed in the Workspace.

Bit Depth

Displays the session or project bit depth. The **Bit Depth** can also be viewed in the Workspace.

Location

Enter the location where the session or project was recorded.

Date Created

Display the date and time that the session or project was created. The **Date Created** can also be viewed in the Workspace.

Date Modified

Displays the date and time that the session or project was last modified. The **Date Modified** can also be viewed in the Workspace.

BPM

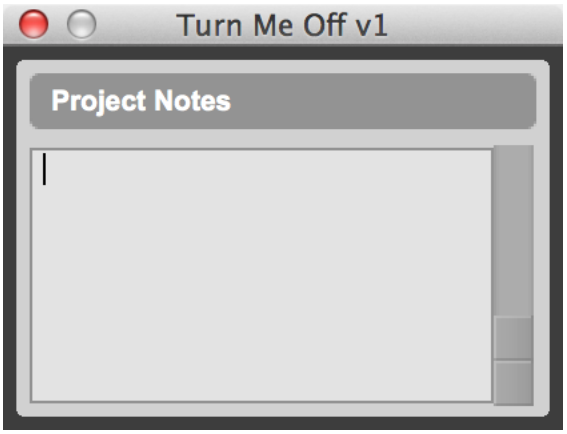
Displays the tempo or range of tempos used in the session or project in beats per minute. **BPM** can also be viewed in the Workspace as **Tempo**.

Project Notes

Pro Tools lets you add and edit Project Notes for any version of a project. Use Project Notes for anything from reminders to descriptions, or a to do list. You can add and edit Project Notes when you create a new version of a project or in the Project Notes window. Project Notes are always saved with the specific version of the project.

To add or edit Project Notes:

1. Choose **File > Save Project As** to open the Save New Version dialog. Or, select **Window > Project Notes** to open the Project Notes window for the current version of the project.
2. Type and edit the Project Notes as desired.



Project Notes window

Closing a Session, Project, or Sketch

Pro Tools only lets you work on just one session, project, or Sketch at a time (though you can have a Sketch open with an open session or project. The **Close Session/Project/Sketch** command closes your current Pro Tools session or project but leaves the Pro Tools application running. Pro Tools prompts you to save the session or project when closing it, but it is recommended that you save your work using the **Save** or **Save As** command before closing a session or project.

To close a session or project:

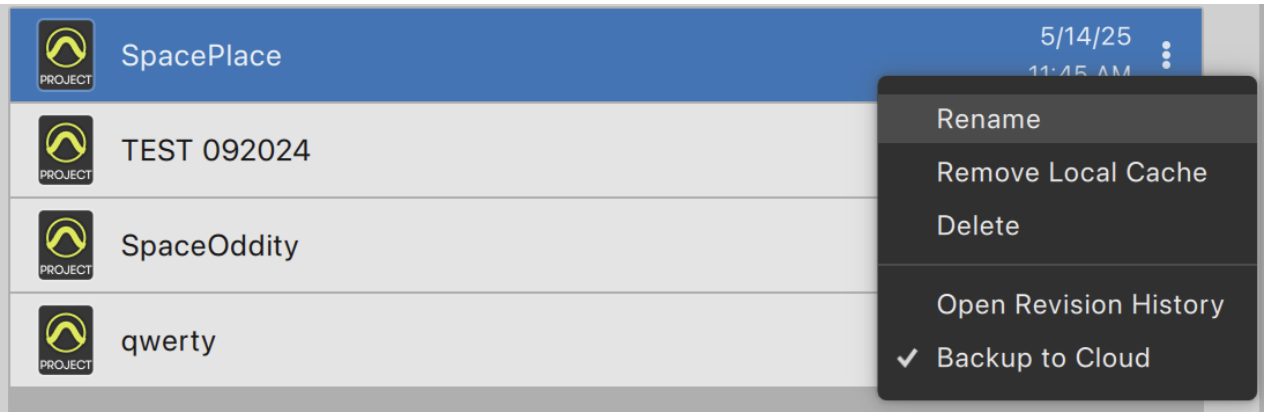
- Choose **File > Close Session/Project/Sketch**.

Renaming Projects

You can rename any project you own that is not currently open on the **Cloud Projects** tab of the Dashboard.

To rename a project:

1. Ensure that you are logged in to your Avid Master Account through Pro Tools (**File > Sign In** or click **Sign In** in the lower-right corner of the Dashboard).
2. In the Dashboard window, select the **Cloud Projects** tab to view your current projects; or if Pro Tools is already running, choose **File > Open Project**—Command+Option+O (Mac) or Control+Alt+O (Windows)—to access the **Cloud Projects** tab in the Dashboard window.
3. To the right of the project list, click the pop-up menu for the project you want to rename (you must be the owner of the project to rename it.
4. Choose **Rename**.



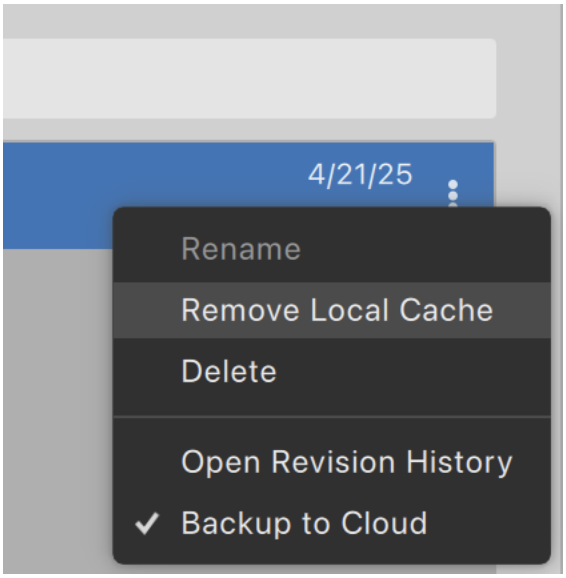
5. In the resulting dialog, project the new name for the project.
6. Click **OK**.

Remove Local Cache

Use the **Remove Local Cache** command for any project that is not currently open to free up storage space on your local system. Your project will remain intact and retrievable from the cloud. You can always restore your project from your online MyAvid account cloud storage.

To remove the local cache for a project:

1. Ensure that you are logged in to your Avid Master Account through Pro Tools (**File > Sign In** or click Sign In in the lower-left corner of the Dashboard).
2. In the Dashboard window, select the **Cloud Projects** tab to view your current projects; or if Pro Tools is already running, choose **File > Open Project**—Command+Option+O (Mac) or Control+Alt+O (Windows)—to access the **Cloud Projects** tab in the Dashboard window.
3. To the right of the project list, click the pop-up menu for the project whose local cache you want to clear.



Dashboard, Remove Local Cache

4. Choose **Remove Local Cache**.
5. When prompted, click **Delete**.

Notice the Cloud icon to the right of the project. Pro Tools deletes the local cache for the project while keeping the project intact in the cloud. Click the Cloud icon to download the project media and synchronize the local and online versions of the project.

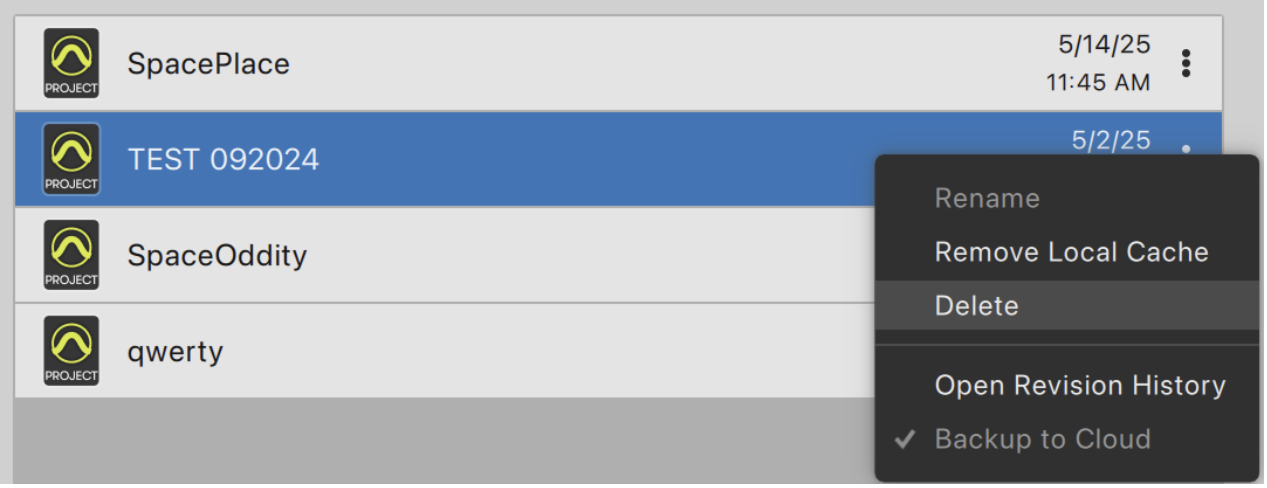
Deleting Projects

Once you have completed work on a project and exported the final mix or archived it as a session using the **Save Copy In** command, you can delete the project to free up online storage space for other projects. Use the Dashboard window to delete any project that you no longer need.

You cannot undo the Delete Project command. If you delete a project that you do not own, but are only collaborating on, you simple remove yourself as a collaborator for that project. The project remains available to the owner and other collaborators. However, once you delete a project that you own, it is permanently deleted and is unrecoverable.

To delete a project:

1. Ensure that you are logged in to your Avid Master Account through Pro Tools (**File > Sign In** or click **Sign In** in the lower-left corner of the Dashboard).
2. In the Dashboard window, select the **Cloud Projects** tab to view your current projects; or if Pro Tools is already running, choose **File > Open Project**—Command+Option+O (Mac) or Control+Alt+O (Windows)—to access the **Cloud Projects** tab in the Dashboard window.
3. To the right of the Project list, click the pop-up menu for the project you want to delete.



Dashboard, Delete project

4. Choose **Delete**.

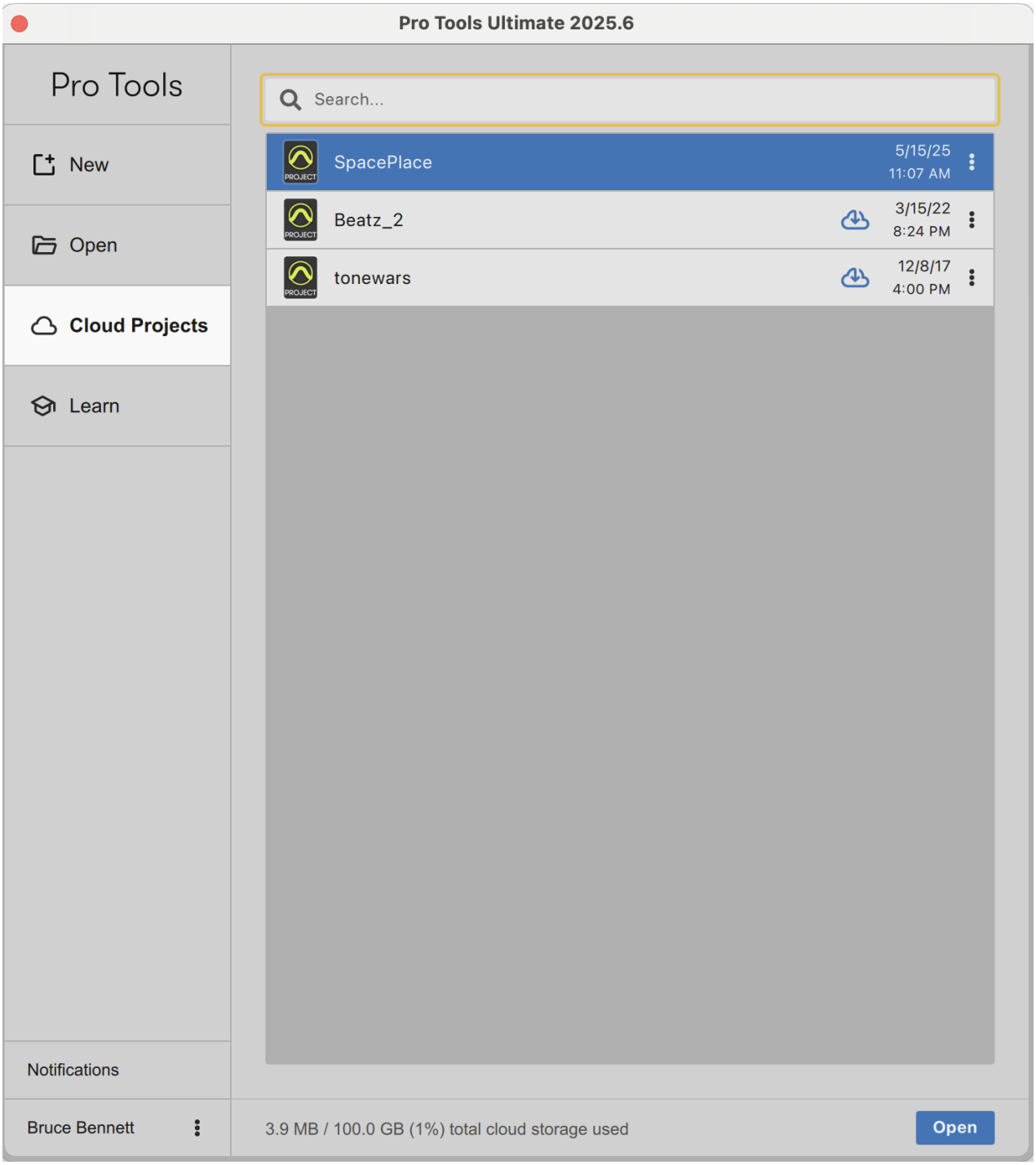
Pro Tools deletes the project and updates the percentage of your available storage used.

Restore Project from Cloud

If you have deleted the local cache for a project, you can restore your project from the cloud.

To restore a project from the cloud:

1. Ensure that you are logged in to your Avid Master Account through Pro Tools (**File > Sign In** or click Sign In in the lower-left corner of the Dashboard).
2. In the Dashboard window, select the **Cloud Projects** tab to view your current projects; or if Pro Tools is already running, choose **File > Open Project**—Command+Option+O (Mac) or Control+Alt+O (Windows)—to access the **Cloud Projects** tab in the Dashboard window.
3. To the right of the Project list, click the Cloud icon for the project you want to restore.



Pro Tools downloads all data from the cloud to the local cache on your system for the selected project. Download progress is shown to the right of the project name.

Open Revision History

Use the **`Open Revision History`** command to open the Revision History window and restore the project from any version or from any version's save history.

To open the latest auto-backup for a project:

1. Ensure that you are logged in to your Avid Master Account through Pro Tools (**File > Sign In** or click Sign In in the lower-left corner of the Dashboard).
2. In the Dashboard window, select the **Cloud Projects** tab to view your current projects; or if Pro Tools is already running, choose **File > Open Project**—Command+Option+O (Mac) or Control+Alt+O (Windows)—to access **Cloud Projects** tab in the Dashboard window.
3. To the right of the Project list, click the pop-up menu for the project for which you want to open the Revision History.
4. Choose **Open Revision History**.

Pro Tools opens the Revision History window where you can view, restore, import, and delete versions of the project as well as their save histories.

For more information about working with the Restore History window, see "Revision History" on page 239.

Backup to Cloud

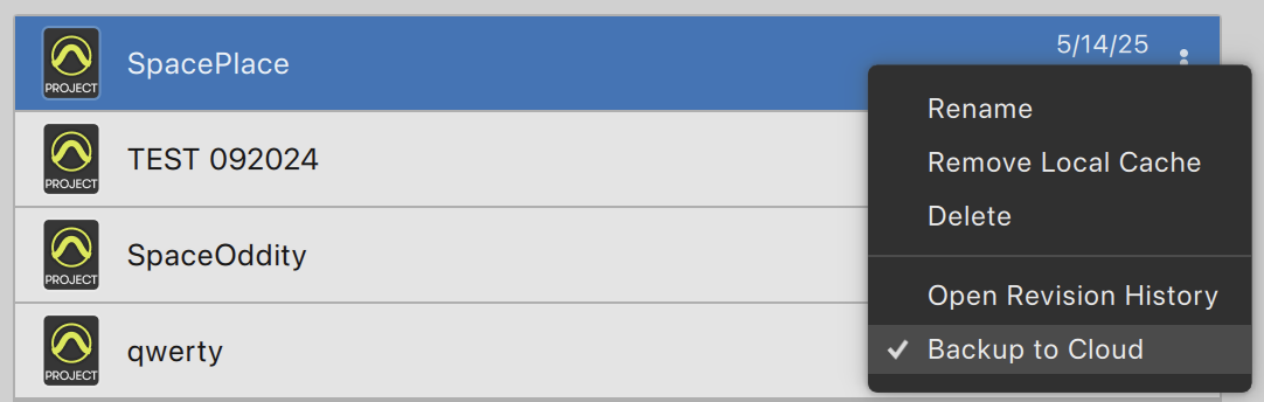
Using the **Backup to Cloud** option in the **Projects**Cloud tab in the Dashboard, you can take existing online projects offline or put offline projects online at any time. Since shared projects cannot be taken offline, the **Backup to Cloud** option is grayed out and unavailable.

For projects you are taking offline, all project data and associated media is deleted from your Avid Cloud Storage Account and the Project icon turns gray.

For projects you are putting online, all project data and associated media are uploaded to your Avid Cloud Storage Account and the Project icon turns blue.

To take an online project offline (or to put an offline project online):

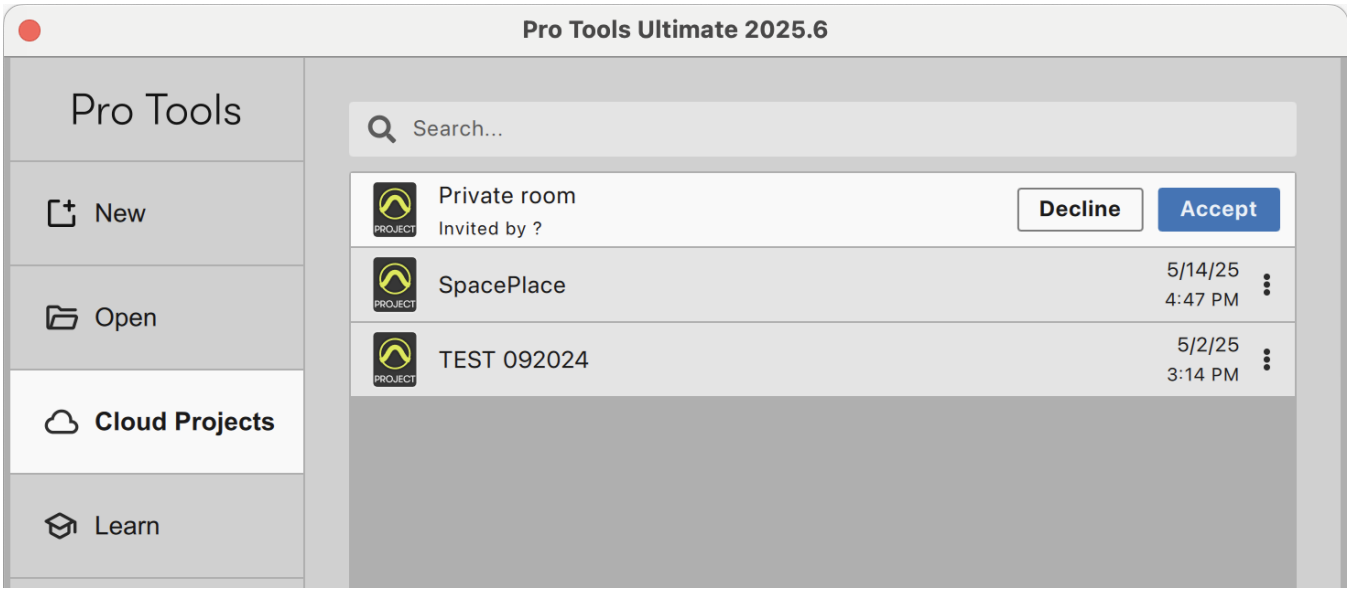
1. Ensure that you are logged in to your Avid Master Account through Pro Tools (**File > Sign In** or click **Sign In** in the lower-left corner of the Dashboard).
2. Choose **File > Open Project**, or press Command+Option+O (Mac) or Control+Alt+O (Windows) to open the Dashboard showing the **Projects** tab.
3. In the list of projects list, deselect (or select) **Backup to Cloud** from the pop-up menu to the right of the project you want to take offline (or put online).



Dashboard, Projects tab, deselecting Backup to Cloud for a project

Project Collaboration Invitations in the Dashboard

The Dashboard lets you accept or reject project participation requests. When another user invites you to join a project, that project appears in the Project List in the Dashboard along with Reject and Accept icons.



Dashboard, project participation requests

To accept or reject project participation requests from the Dashboard:

1. Ensure that you are logged in to your Avid Master Account through Pro Tools (**`File > Sign In`** or click Sign In in the lower-left corner of the Dashboard).
2. In the Dashboard, select the Projects tab. Projects that you have been invited to display Accept and Reject icons to the right of the project name.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Accept icon to join the project.
   - Click the Reject icon to reject the collaboration request and remove the project from the project list.

For more information about project participation requests, see "Responding to Collaboration Invitations" on page 555.

Quitting or Exiting Pro Tools

When you quit (Mac) or exit (Windows) the Pro Tools application, Pro Tools prompts you to save any open session before exiting or closing the application.

To quit Pro Tools on the Mac:

- Choose **`Pro Tools > Quit Pro Tools`** (or press Command+Q).

To exit Pro Tools in Windows:

- Choose **`File > Exit`** (or press Alt+F4).

12 Pro Tools Main Windows

Pro Tools provides two complementary ways of viewing tracks in a session:

Mix Window

Shows tracks as channel strips, like a mixing board (see "Mix Window" on the next page).

Edit Window

Shows tracks and track material against the Timeline (see "Edit Window" on page 259).

To toggle between the Mix and Edit windows, press Control+Equals (=) (Windows), or press Command+Equals (=) (Mac).



Pro Tools windows

Pro Tools provides several other types of windows:

Transport Window

Lets you control the transport and transport-related functions (see "Transport Window" on page 266).

Plugin Windows

Let you control plugin parameters, such as Frequency and Q for an EQ (see "Plugin Windows" on page 1524).

MIDI Editor Windows

Lets you edit MIDI data (see "MIDI Editors" on page 1071).

Score Editor Window

Lets you edit MIDI data as music notation (see "Score Editor" on page 1099).

Clip Effects Editor

Lets you edit Clip Effects for any selected clips (see "Clip Effects" on page 1283).

ARA Editors

Lets you edit ARA processing using various third-party integrated ARA plugins (see "Integrated ARA Plugins" on page 1374).

Workspace Browsers

Let you manage, audition, and import media for Pro Tools sessions (see "Workspace Browsers" on page 493).

Artist Chat

Lets you chat with project collaborators (see "Collaboration with Pro Tools Projects" on page 550).

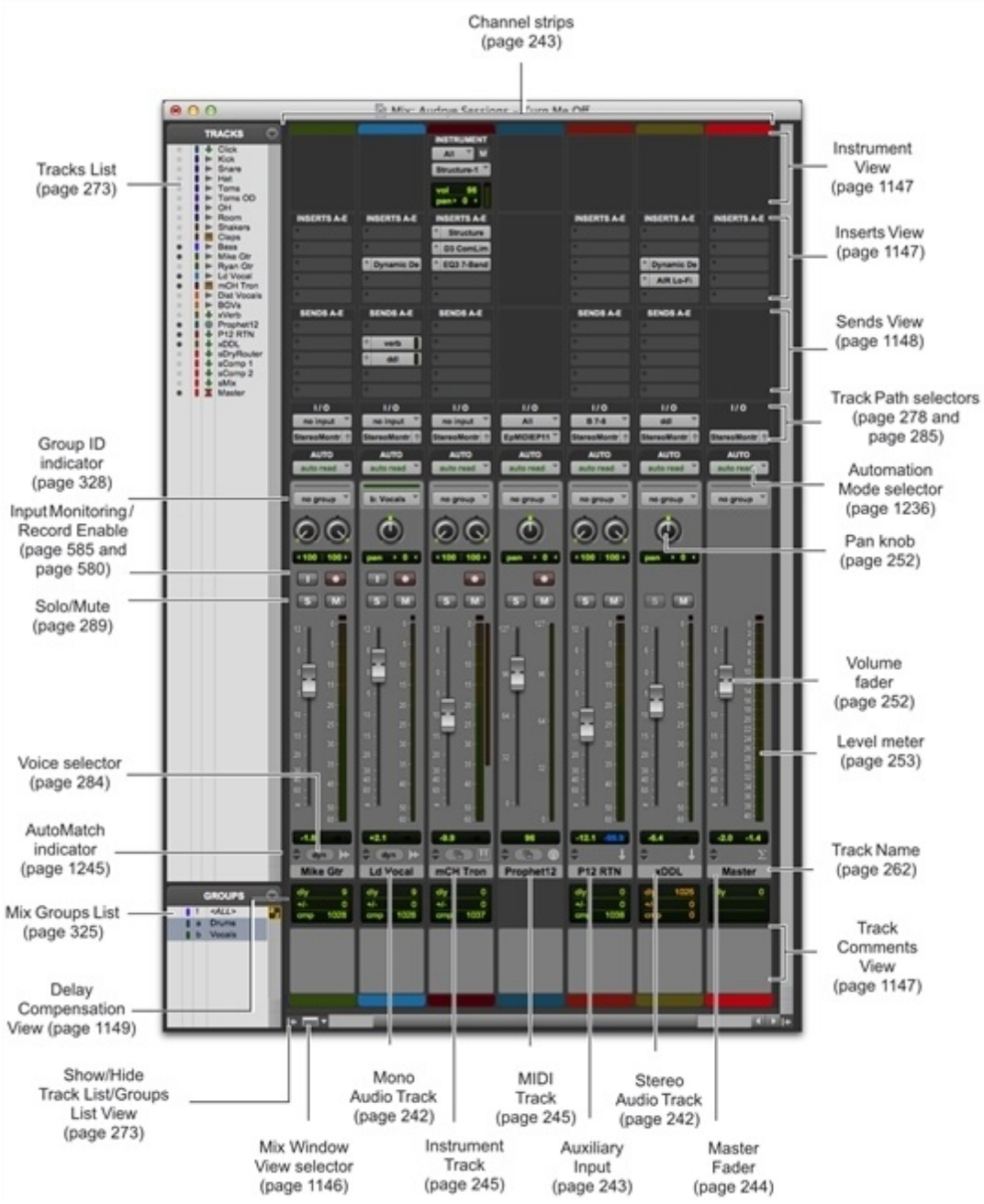
In-App Web Browsers

Let you access the Avid Marketplace and Pro Tools Online (see "In-Application Web Browser" on page 277).

Mix Window

In the Mix window, tracks appear as channel strips just like a mixing console, with controls for:

- Inserts
- Sends
- Input and output assignments
- Volume
- Panning
- Record enable
- Track Input monitoring
- Automation mode
- Solo and Mute
- Instrument controls
- HEAT controls
- Mic preamps



Pro Tools Mix window

To display the Mix window:

- Choose **Window > Mix**.

To display all Mix window view options:

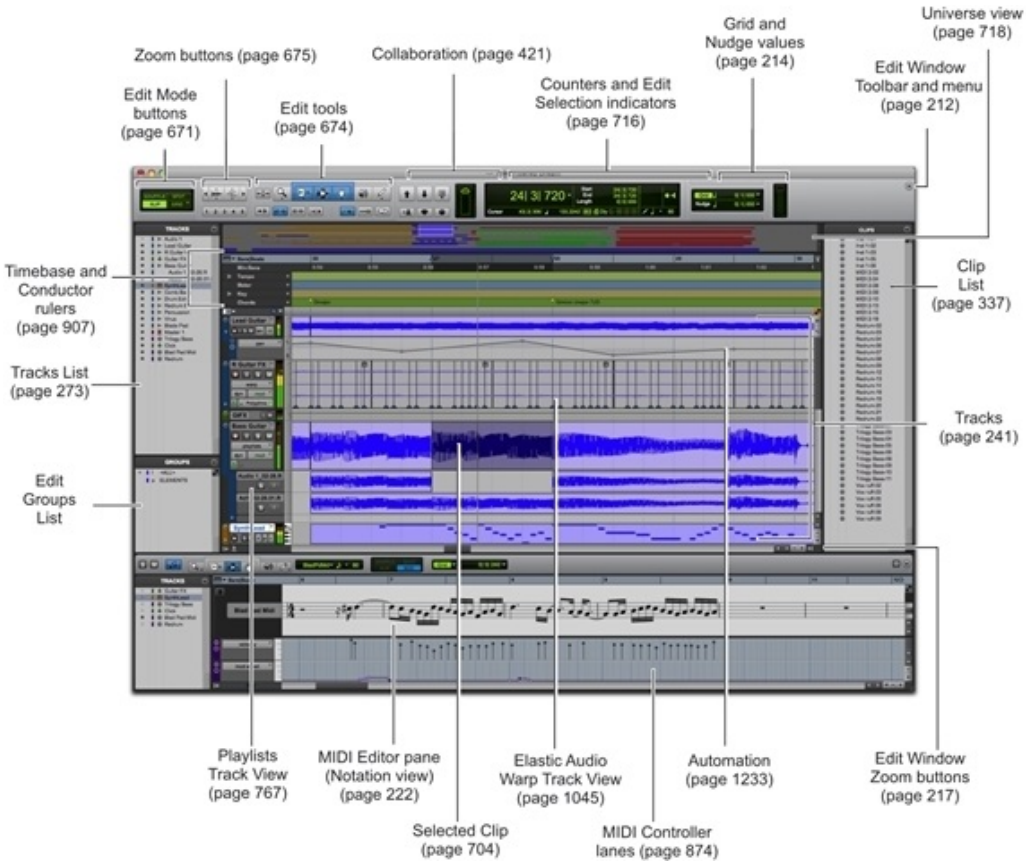
- Select **View > Mix Window > All**.

For information on selecting individual view options, see "Views in the Mix and Edit Windows" on page 1459.

Edit Window

The Edit window provides a Timeline display of audio, video, MIDI notes, as well as other MIDI data and mixer automation for recording, editing, and arranging on tracks. As in the Mix window, each track has controls for record enable, solo, mute, and automation mode.

Edit window view options can be selected individually. See "Views in the Mix and Edit Windows" on page 1459.



To display the Edit window:

- Choose **Window > Edit**.

To display all Edit window view options:

- Select **View > Edit Window > All**.

Edit Window Toolbar

At the top of the Edit window is the Edit Window Toolbar and menu. This Toolbar provides access to the editing modes, tools, options, indicators, and displays for Pro Tools. You can customize the Toolbar in the Edit, MIDI Editor, or Score Editor windows by re-arranging, showing, and hiding the available controls and displays.

Edit Toolbar Controls and Displays

The following controls and displays in the Edit Window Toolbar are always shown.

Edit Modes

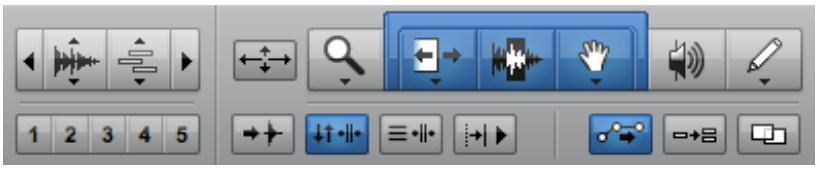
The Edit mode affects the movement and placement of audio and MIDI clips (and MIDI notes), how commands like **Copy** and **Paste** function, and also how the various Edit tools (Trim, Selector, Grabber, and Pencil tools) work. For more information, see "Edit Modes" on page 872.



Edit mode buttons

Edit Tools

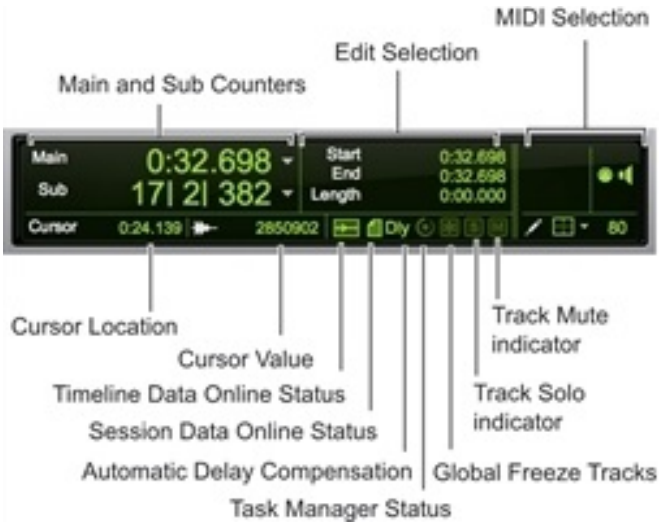
Edit tools are used for editing audio, MIDI, and automation data in Pro Tools. For more information, see "Edit Tools" on page 876.



Edit tools

Counters and Edit Selection Indicators

The Counters and Edit selection indicators provide information where selections are in the Timeline.



Edit window indicators

Main Counter

Displays the current Edit insertion location in the Main Timebase ruler.

Sub Counter

Displays the current Edit insertion location in the Sub Timebase ruler.

Cursor Location

Displays the current cursor location in the Main Timebase ruler.

Cursor Value

Displays the value of the current cursor value in peak amplitude (audio), pitch (MIDI), or according to the current automation or controller data type.

Edit Selection Indicators

Displays the Start, End, and Length of the current Edit selection.

MIDI Selection Indicators and Controls

Displays the current MIDI Edit selection (MIDI note number, and Note On and Note Off velocities), MIDI IN and Out activity, and provides controls for MIDI editing.

Timeline Data Online Status Indicator

Is green when all files in use in track playlists are available for playback. If files are offline, being processed, or otherwise unavailable for playback, this indicator is red.

Session Data Online Status Indicator

Is green when all audio files referenced by the session are available for playback. If files are offline, being processed, or otherwise unavailable for playback, this indicator is red. If any files are offline, you can click the indicator to open the Relink window and relink to offline files.

Delay Compensation Status Indicator

Is displayed when **Delay Compensation** is enabled (**Options > Delay Compensation**). When **Delay Compensation** is disabled, this indicator is not displayed.

Task Manager Status

Lights and animates when the Task Manager is busy. When no tasks are in progress, it is unlit. The indicator turns red if the Task Manager requires your attention. Click the Task Manager Status indicator to open or close the Task Manager window.

Global Freeze Tracks Indicator

lights when one or more tracks in the session are frozen. When it is unlit, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Global Freeze Tracks button to freeze all audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks in the session. When it is lit, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) it to unfreeze all tracks in the session. You can also Right-click the Global Freeze Tracks button to specify which track types you want (or do not want) to freeze.

Tracks cannot be frozen while hidden or inactive.

If any of the Include options are deselected, you can Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Global Freeze icon to freeze (or unfreeze) all tracks. The previously selected Include options remain selected.

Track Solo Indicator

Lights yellow when any track in the session is soloed. When no tracks in the session are soloed, the Track Solo indicator appears dim green. For systems using Satellite Link, the Track Solo indicator lights dim yellow when a track is soloed on any satellite system.

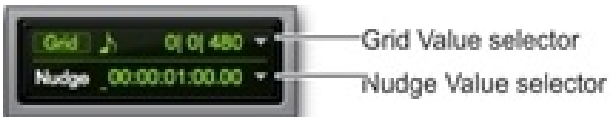
If the Track Solo indicator is lit, you can click it to clear all soloed tracks in the session.

Track Mute Indicator

Lights orange when any track in the session is muted. When no tracks in the session are muted, the Track Mute indicator appears dim green. (Note that because Mute is an automatable mixing function, the Track Mute indicator does not function to clear all mutes when clicked.)

Grid and Nudge

The Grid and Nudge selectors let you set the Grid and Nudge values for editing in Pro Tools. For information on the Grid Value selector, see "Configuring the Grid" on page 875. For information on the Nudge Value selector, see "Defining the Nudge Value" on page 935.



Grid and Nudge value selectors

Showing and Hiding Additional Controls in the Edit Window

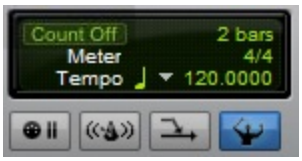
To show or hide controls in the Edit window toolbar:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Edit Window Toolbar menu (in the upper-right corner of the window).
   - Right-click in the Toolbar.
2. From the menu, select or deselect any of the following depending on which window you are configuring:
   - **`Zoom Controls`**: When selected, the Zoom controls are displayed in the Edit window toolbar.

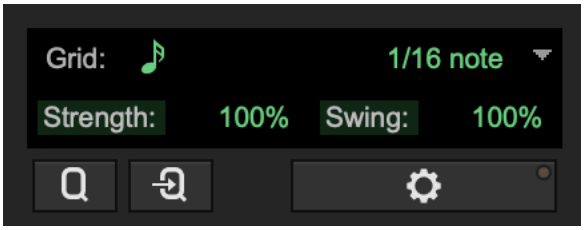
     

   - **`Transport`**: When selected, the Transport controls are displayed in the Edit window toolbar.

     
   - **`MIDI Controls`**: When selected, the MIDI controls are displayed in the window toolbar.

   - **`Quantize Controls`**: When selected, the Quantize tools are displayed in the Edit window toolbar (for more information, see "Edit and MIDI Editor Window Toolbar Quantize Controls" on page 1405).



– **Synchronization**: When selected, the Synchronization controls and indicators are displayed in the Edit window toolbar. These controls and indicators are slightly different depending on whether or not you have Sync X or SYNC HD, or no synchronization peripheral in your Pro Tools system.



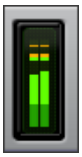
– **Ableton Link**: When selected, the Ableton Link controls and indicators are displayed in the Edit window toolbar.



– **Learn**: When selected, the Learn icon appears in the Edit Window toolbar. Click to show (or hide) the Learn tab at the right of the Edit window.



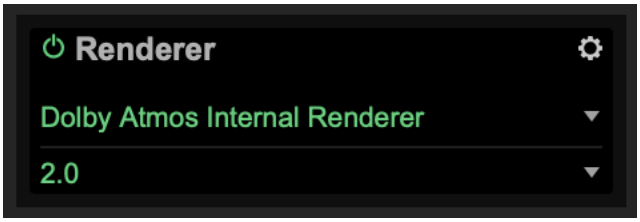
– **Output Meters**: When selected, the Output meters are displayed in the Edit window toolbar.



– **EUCON**: When selected, EUCON Status controls are displayed in the Edit window toolbar. These controls let you enable/disable EUCON and monitor the connection status of EUCON control surfaces.



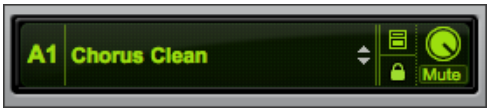
– **Renderer**: When selected, the Renderer (Dolby Atmos or Sony 360RA) controls are displayed in the Edit window toolbar.



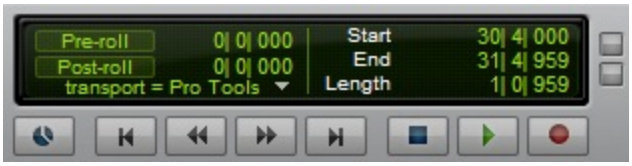
- **Track Collaboration** (Projects Only): When selected, the Track Collaboration controls are displayed in the Edit window toolbar.



- **Eleven Rack** (Eleven Rack Only): This option is available only when an Eleven Rack is connected to your Pro Tools system. When selected, Eleven Rack controls are displayed in the Edit window toolbar. For more information, refer to the *Eleven Rack User Guide*.



- **Expanded Transport**: When selected, the Expanded Transport controls are displayed in the Edit window toolbar if Transport is also selected.



- **MIDI Input Display**: When selected, the MIDI Input display is shown in the Edit window toolbar.



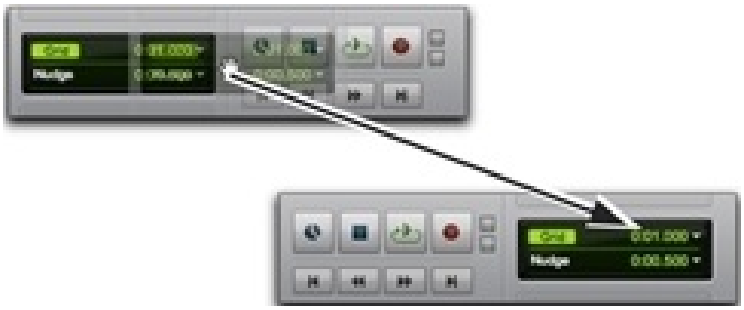
- **Universe**: When selected, Universe view is shown near the top of the Edit window.
- **Track List**: When selected, the Track List is shown on the left of the Edit window.
- **Clip List**: When selected, the Clip List is shown on the right of the Edit window.
- **Lower Dock**: When selected, shows the docked **MIDI Editor**, **Clip Effects**, or ARA Plugins at the bottom of the Edit window.

Rearranging Controls and Displays

To rearrange controls and displays in the Edit, MIDI Editor, or Score Editor window toolbar:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the control or display you want to move and drag it to a new location in the toolbar.

  For example, if you want the Counters and Edit Selection indicators to the right of the Transport controls in the toolbar, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) and drag them to the right of the Transport controls.



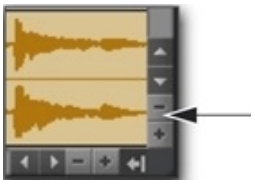
Moving the Counters and Edit Selection indicators

Edit Window Zoom Buttons

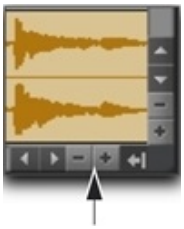
The Edit window also provides Zoom buttons in the lower right and upper right corners of the tracks pane.

Vertical and Horizontal Zoom In and Out Buttons

In addition to the Zoom controls in the Toolbar, Pro Tools provides horizontal and vertical zoom buttons in the lower-right corner of the Edit window.



Vertical Zoom buttons (Edit window)



Horizontal Zoom buttons (Edit window)

Vertical Zoom Buttons

Zoom the track heights proportionally in the Edit window.

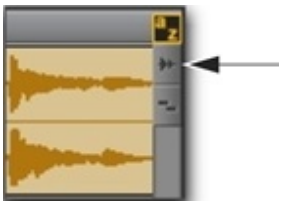
Horizontal Zoom Buttons

Zoom the Timeline just like the Horizontal Zoom controls in the Edit window toolbar.

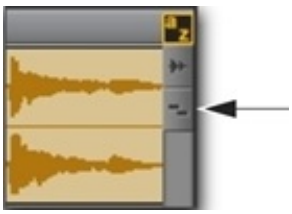
Audio and MIDI Zoom In and Out Buttons

Pro Tools also provides Audio and MIDI Zoom In and Out buttons in the upper-right corner of the Edit window. These controls function exactly the same as the Audio and MIDI Zoom controls in the Toolbar, and let you zoom in and out vertically on audio waveforms and MIDI notes respectively.

In the Edit window, MIDI Vertical Zoom only affects tracks not in Clips view.



Audio Zoom button (Edit window)



MIDI Zoom button (Edit window)

Edit Window Default Length

Pro Tools lets you set a default length for the Edit window in hours, minutes, seconds, and frames. This is useful if you want to assemble a session of a particular length or leave extra room to expand the Edit window's work area in your session. The maximum length is 12 hours and 25 minutes at 48 kHz, and proportionally less at higher sample rates. For best scrollbar sensitivity, set the length to slightly longer (a minute or more) than the total session or song length.

To set the default length for the Edit window:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. On the Display page, enter the value in hours, minutes, seconds, and frames for the **Edit Window Default Length** setting.
3. Click **OK**.

Sketch Window

The Sketch window in Pro Tools mirrors the functionality of the Pro Tools Sketch app on iPad. However, there are some unique controls and behaviors with the Sketch window in Pro Tools.

For more information on the Sketch window in Pro Tools, see "Pro Tools Sketches" on page 587. For detailed information using the Pro Tools Sketch app, see Using Pro Tools Sketch Guide.pdf.

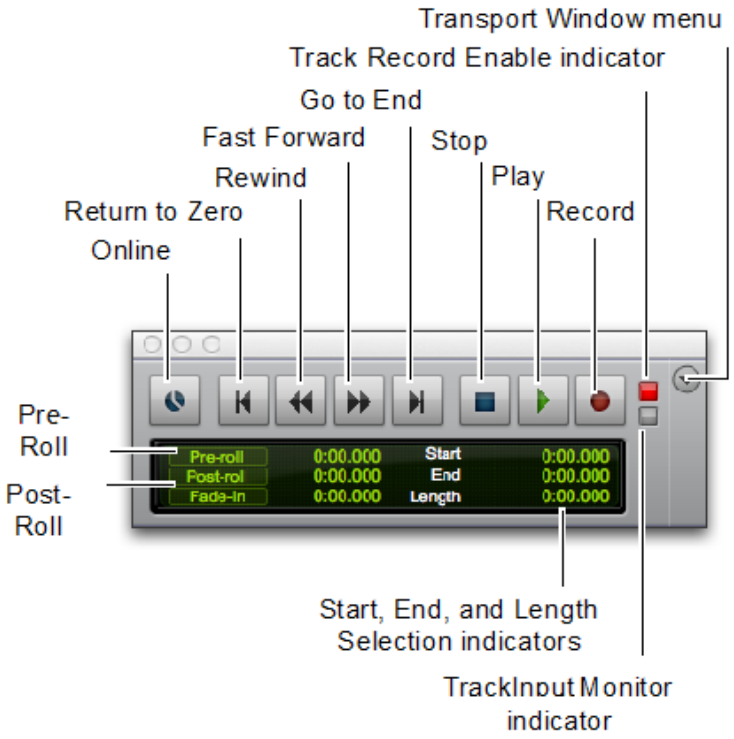
Transport Window

The Transport window can be set to show basic transport controls, counters, MIDI controls, and expanded features. The counters in the Transport window mirror the controls and counters at the top of the Edit window.

To display the Transport window:

- Choose **Window > Transport**.

Basic Transport Controls and Counters



Transport window showing basic transport controls and counters (Main and Sub Counters and MIDI not shown)

Online

Puts Pro Tools online so that playback and recording is triggered by an external timecode source.

Return to Zero

Locates to the beginning of the session.

Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) to Return to Zero.

You can Right-click the Return to Zero button to access the Write to Start and Write to All automation commands.

Rewind

Rewinds from the current play location. You can also click repeatedly to rewind incrementally, by an amount based on the Main Time Scale, as follows:

Rewind and Fast Forward Increments

Main Time Scale Format	Increment Amount
Min:Sec	1 second
Timecode	1 frame
Bars|Beats	1 bar
Feet+Frames	1 foot
Sample	1 second

With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport, you can rewind by pressing 1.

Fast Forward

Fast forwards from the Timeline insertion point. You can also click repeatedly to fast forward incrementally (by an amount based on the Main Time Scale).

With Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport, you can fast forward by pressing 2.

Go to End

Locates to the end of the session.

You can press Option+Return (Mac) or Control+Enter (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard to locate to the end of the session.

You can Right-click the Go to End button to access automation commands Write to End and Write to All.

Stop

Stops playback or recording.

You can also stop the transport by pressing the Spacebar, or with the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport, pressing 0.

Play

Starts playback or (if the Record button was clicked first) recording from the Timeline insertion point or the Play Start Marker location if Dynamic Transport mode is enabled.

You can also begin playback by pressing the Spacebar, or with the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport, pressing 0.

Right-clicking the Play button lets you select the playback mode from a pop-up menu:

- Half-Speed
- Prime for Playback
- Loop
- Dynamic Transport

To initiate playback at half-speed, you can also press Shift+Spacebar (Windows or Mac) or Shift-click (Mac) the Play button.

With the Transport stopped, Control-click Play (Mac) or Start-click Play (Windows) to toggle Loop Playback mode. When enabled, a loop symbol appears in the Play button and Pro Tools plays continuously from the beginning of the selection to the end.

For more information on loop playback and Dynamic Transport mode, see "Loop Playback Mode" on page 752.

Record

Arms Pro Tools for recording (the button flashes). Clicking Play then starts recording on record-enabled tracks only.

You can also begin recording immediately by pressing F12, pressing Command+Spacebar (Mac) or Control+Spacebar (Windows), or with the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport, pressing 3.

Right-clicking the Record button lets you select the record mode from a pop-up menu:

- Normal
- Loop
- Destructive
- QuickPunch
- TrackPunch (Pro Tools HD only)
- Destructive Punch (Pro Tools HD only)

You can also cycle through the Pro Tools record modes with the Transport stopped, by Control-clicking (Mac) or Start-clicking (Windows) the Record button.

The Record button changes to indicate the currently selected mode: blank for Nondestructive, “D” for Destructive, a loop symbol for Loop Record, “P” for QuickPunch, “T” for TrackPunch, and “DP” for DestructivePunch.

To initiate recording at half-speed, you can press Command+Shift+Spacebar (Mac) or Control+Shift+Spacebar (Windows).

Track Record Enable Indicator

When lit (red), indicates that at least one audio track is currently record-enabled. When off (gray), no tracks are currently record-enabled.

TrackInput Monitor Indicator

When lit (green), indicates that at least one audio track is currently set to Input Only monitoring (regardless of record enable status). When off (gray), all tracks are in Auto Input monitoring.

Transport Window Menu

Lets you select what options to show in the Transport window: **`Counters`**, **`MIDI Controls`**, **`Synchronization`**, **`Ableton Link`**, **`Output Meters`**, and **`Expanded Transport`**.

Pre-Roll

During playback or record, specifies the amount of audio that plays before the Play (Timeline) Cursor or Play Start Marker location, or beginning of the Timeline selection. Pre-roll is particularly useful with punch recording since it gives you time to “catch the beat” before reaching the punch-in point. To set the pre-roll amount, type a new value in this field, or drag the Pre-Roll flag in the Main Timebase ruler.

Post-Roll

During playback or record, specifies the amount that plays after the end of a Timeline selection. Post-roll is useful in punch recording since playback continues after the punch-out point so you can check for a smooth transition to previously recorded material. To set the post-roll amount, type a new value in this field, or drag the Post-Roll flag in the Main Timebase ruler.

Start

Specifies the beginning of the play or record range. You can set the start point by entering a location in this field, or by dragging the corresponding Timeline Selection or Play Start Marker in the Main Timebase ruler. For more information, see "Timeline Selection Markers" on page 791.

End

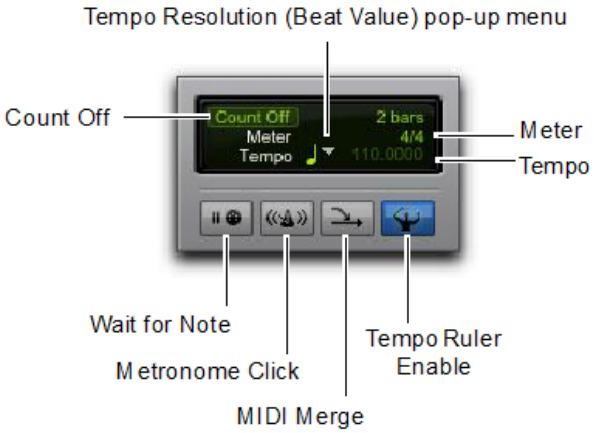
Specifies the end of the play or record range. You can set the end point by entering a location in this field, or by dragging the corresponding Timeline Selection Marker in the Main Timebase ruler. For more information, see "Timeline Selection Markers" on page 791.

Length

Specifies the length for the play or record range. You can set the length by entering a location in this field, or by selecting a range in any Timebase ruler.

When the Timeline and Edit selections are linked, you can make an Edit selection in a track's playlist to set the play and record range. See "Linking or Unlinking Timeline and Edit Selections" on page 903.

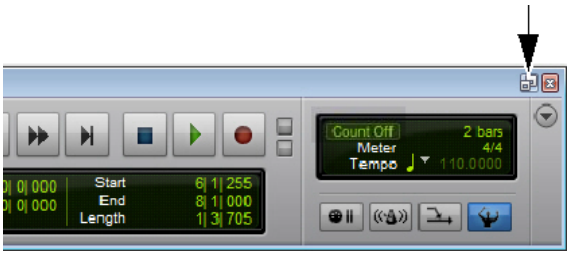
MIDI Controls



Transport window, MIDI controls

To view the MIDI controls in the Transport, do one of the following:

- Select **`View > Transport > MIDI Controls`**.
- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Expand/Collapse "+" button in the Transport window to display the MIDI controls.



Expand/Collapse button, Transport Window with MIDI controls

Wait for Note

When selected, recording does not begin until a MIDI event is received. This ensures that you begin recording when you're ready to play, and that the first note, or other MIDI data, is recorded precisely at the beginning of the record range.

You can press F11 to turn on Wait for Note, unless the MIDI preference for "Disable F11 for Wait for Note" is enabled.

On Mac, the Desktop Keyboard Shortcut uses the same key command that Pro Tools uses for Wait For Note (F11). To use F11 for Wait For Note in Pro Tools, be sure to disable the Desktop Keyboard Shortcut in the Apple System Preferences.

Metronome Click

When selected, Pro Tools generates a metronome pulse that can be set to trigger built-in sounds or MIDI instruments during playback and recording.

The Pro Tools metronome is configured in the Click/Countoff Options dialog. Double-click the Metronome Click button to open the Click/Count-off Options dialog.

With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport, press 7 to enable the Metronome Click.

Count Off

When selected, Pro Tools counts off a specified number of measures (indicated in the button) before playback or recording begins.

Double-click the Count Off button, to open the Click/Count Off Options dialog.

With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport, press 8 to enable the Count Off.

MIDI Merge

When selected (Merge mode), recorded MIDI data is merged with existing track material. When deselected (Replace mode), recorded MIDI data replaces existing track material.

With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport, press 9 to enable MIDI Merge.

Tempo Ruler Enable (Conductor)

When selected, Pro Tools uses the tempo map defined in the Tempo ruler. When deselected, Pro Tools switches to Manual Tempo mode and ignores the Tempo ruler.

In Manual Tempo mode, you can enter a BPM value in the tempo field, or tap in the tempo with the T key on your alphanumeric keyboard.

Current Meter

Displays the session's current meter based on the play location. Double-click the Current Meter indicator to open the Change Meter window.

Current Tempo

Displays the session's current tempo based on the play location. In Manual Tempo mode, you can enter a BPM value into this field, or manually tap in a tempo with a computer keyboard or an external MIDI keyboard.

Synchronization

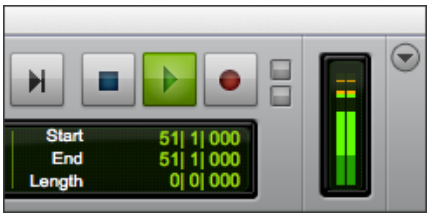
The Synchronization controls and indicators in the Transport window mirror those that are displayed in the Edit Window toolbar. These controls and indicators are slightly different depending on whether or not you have Sync X or SYNC HD, or no synchronization peripheral in your Pro Tools system. For more information, see "Putting Pro Tools Online" on page 1852 and "Generating Timecode" on page 1852.

Output Meters

Pro Tools provides Output meters in the Transport that display the monitoring levels for signals routed to the physical outputs on your audio interfaces from your session or to internal buses in the session. The top LED is red and indicates clipping at the converters on your audio interface (DAC) on the corresponding channels or on internal buses.

To view the Output Meters in the Transport:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Select **View > Transport > Output Meters**.
   - Click the Transport Window menu (in the upper-right corner of the window) and select or deselect **Output Meters**.
   - Right-click in the Transport window and select or deselect **Output Meters**.
2. From the menu, select or deselect **Output Meters**.



Output meters in the Transport window

For more information, see "Output Meters" on page 1490.

Track Collaboration

The Track Collaboration controls can be shown or hidden in the Transport window. They mirror the controls at the top of the Edit window. The following process applies to projects only.

To view the Track Collaboration controls in the Transport:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Select **View > Transport > Output Meters**.
   - Click the Transport Window menu (in the upper-right corner of the window) and select or deselect **Track Collaboration**.
   - Right-click in the Transport window and select or deselect **Track Collaboration**.

For more information, see "Global Track Collaboration Tools" on page 569"Global Track Collaboration Tools" on page 569.

MIDI Editor Windows

MIDI Editor windows let you view and edit MIDI notes and controller data. You can open multiple MIDI Editor windows to work on different parts of your MIDI arrangements separately. MIDI Editor windows show Instrument and MIDI track data superimposed in Notes view, or on separate tracks in Notation view, and lets you view and edit MIDI controller data (such as velocity, pitch bend, and mod wheel) in controller lanes under the Notes pane.

For more information, see "MIDI Editors" on page 1071.

Docked Displays in the Edit Window

MIDI Editor

You can choose to show (or hide) a MIDI Editor pane at the bottom of the Edit window (below the Tracks pane).

To show (or hide) the MIDI Editor tab in the Edit window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **View > Other Displays > MIDI Editor**.
- From the Edit Window menu, select (or deselect) **MIDI Editor**.
- Press Shift+Option+Control+"=" (Mac) or Shift+Alt+Start+"=" (Windows).

Clip Effects

You can choose to show (or hide) Clip Effects at the bottom of the Edit window (below the Tracks pane).

To show (or hide) the Clip Effects tab in the Edit window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **View > Other Displays > Clip Effects**.

For more information, see "Clip Effects" on page 1283

Open Last Shown Docked Editor

The following two methods open the Clip Effects tab in new empty sessions, and open the MIDI Editor tab if a MIDI track is in the session and no other Editor tab was shown previously; otherwise, the following open the last shown Editor tab:

- Click the Docked Editor Show/Hide icon in the lower left corner of the Tracks pane in the Edit window.
- Double-click the divider below the Tracks pane in the Edit window.

Score Editor Window

The Score Editor window lets you view and edit Instrument and MIDI tracks as music notation. It automatically transcribes MIDI performances in real-time. You can print a score of your session or just parts from individual tracks.

For more information, see "Score Editor" on page 1099.

Workspace Browsers

Pro Tools can database your session and media files and directories using Workspace *browsers*. Browsers provide an intuitive user interface within Pro Tools to quickly access both online and offline media files and sessions.

Browsers in Pro Tools are analogous to windows in your computer's operating system (such as Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder), but are specially designed for working in Pro Tools. Multiple browsers can be displayed simultaneously, and arranged independently with custom display settings for each.

Browsers let you search and sort audio files, video files, and sessions. These files are displayed in browsers and can be dragged directly into the current Pro Tools session.

When offline items are needed, Pro Tools lets you find the correct matching files, then relink to online media.

To open/close a Workspace browser focused on Volumes, press Option+; (Mac) or Alt+; (Windows). To open a default Workspace browser focused on Volumes, press Option+I (Mac) or Alt+I (Windows). Press these key combinations again to open additional Workspace browsers. To open a Workspace browser with Soundbase and the Tags pane revealed, press Option+Control+I (Mac) or Alt+Start+I (Windows). Press these key combinations again to open additional Workspace browsers with Soundbase. To bring all browsers to the front, press Option+J (Mac) or Alt+J (Windows). To send all browsers to the back, press Option+Shift+J (Mac) or Alt+Shift+J (Windows).

The main elements of a Workspace browser (see the figure below) include the following:

View Presets

Let you store up to 5 different browser views.

Preview Controls

Provide tools for auditioning audio files from the browser.

Search Tools

Let you search your system for files and folders by simple or advanced search criteria.

Browser Menu

Provides commands for file management.

Column Headers

Display the type of metadata displayed in the Items List. Column Headers can be:

- Resized by dragging the column border, or rearranged by dragging the Column headers.
- Dragged to either of two available panes, the Fixed or Scrolling panes.

Soundbase

Lets you tag audio files with descriptive metadata that you can then use as search criteria.

Track Presets

Lets you organize all of your Track Presets for easy access.

Locations Pane

Provides a view of Volumes (and folders and files), Catalogs, and the currently open Session for your system.

Browser Pane

Provides a view of items on your system contained within the Volume (or folder), Catalog, or open session that is selected in the Locations pane. Alternatively, the Browser pane displays search results.

For detailed information about Workspace browsers, see "Workspace Browsers" on page 493.

Task Manager Window

The Task Manager window is a utility for viewing and managing all of the background tasks that you initiate with Pro Tools. Use the Task window to monitor, pause, or cancel background tasks such as file copies, searches, indexing, and fade creation.

For detailed information about the Task window, see "Task Manager Window" on page 546.

Pro Tools Projects Window

The Pro Tools Project window lets you chat with collaborators for your Pro Tools projects.

For detailed information about the Artist Chat window, see "Collaboration with Pro Tools Projects" on page 550.

12 Pro Tools Extensions

Pro Tools Extensions are a new plugin format for providing production workflow tools directly within the Pro Tools application. For example, Extensions provide in-application access to sound libraries, AI-powered assistants, workflow utilities, and other tools that are not necessarily tied to tracks, clips, or audio processing. Unlike traditional AAX plugins, Extensions remain available even when no session is open.

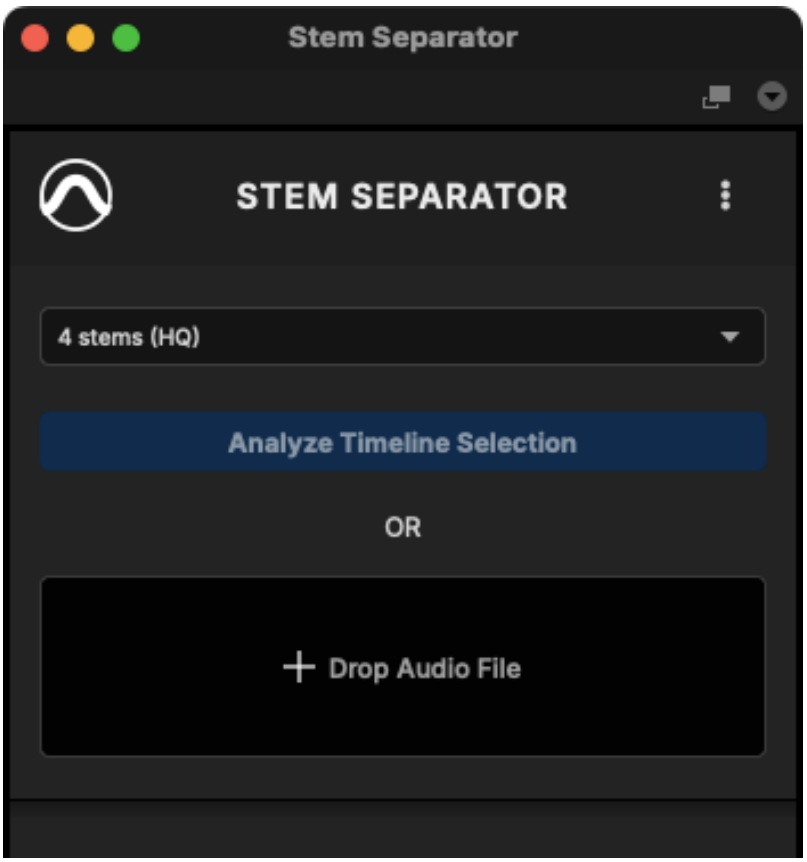
Pro Tools Stem Separator, Splice, and SoundFlow appear as Extensions in Pro Tools.

The Pro Tools **`Extensions`** menu provides access to:

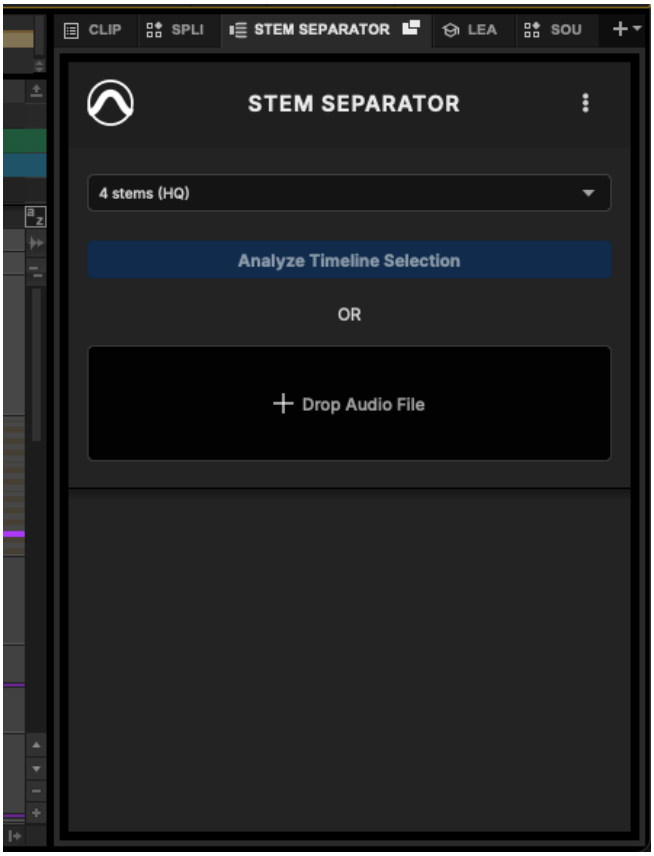
- Stem Separator
- Splice
- SoundFlow
- Any other installed third-party Extensions

For a list of all available Pro Tools Extensions, visit avid.com/pro-tools/extensions.

Extensions can be opened in their own floating windows or in their own tabs in the right-side panel of the Edit window (with the Clips List).



Side Panel for Extensions and the Clip List



Tab Behavior

Side panel tabs (including the Clip List) behave like tabs found in modern web browsers, providing a familiar and intuitive navigation experience. You can easily switch between different panels while maintaining a clean and organized workspace.

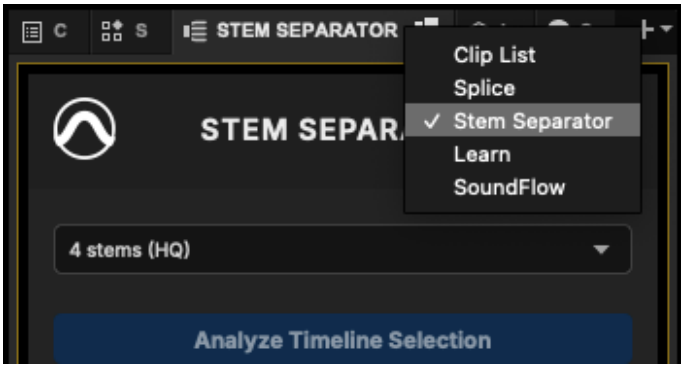
Detach/Dock tabs: When a tab is detached from the right panel, it appears in its own floating window and its tab plate is removed from the tab row. Docking the tab to the Edit Window puts the tab plate back into the tab row.

Drag to Detach/Dock tabs: You can drag the tabs out of the side panel (Detach to a window) or back into the side panel (Dock to Edit window) in a similar fashion to browser tabs.

Reordering tabs: Tabs can be reordered in the tab row by clicking the tab and dragging left or right to place it where you want in the tab order.

Add/Select Tabs Menu

Pro Tools provides a dedicated Add/Select Tabs menu for the Clip List and Extensions.



This menu provides a centralized place to:

- Add available Extensions/tabs to the side panel.
- Switch directly to another tab.
- View all available panel options in one location.

The currently active tab is indicated by a check mark within the menu.

In-Application Web Browser

Pro Tools provides easy access to web-based Pro Tools Help, the Knowledge Base, and the Avid Support Center using an in-application Web browser.

To launch the Pro Tools in-application Web browser for online resources, choose one of the following from the Help menu:

- **Pro Tools Help**
- **Pro Tools Knowledge Base**
- **Avid Audio Forums**
- **Avid Support Center**

Pro Tools In-Application Web Browser Navigation Controls

The Pro Tools in-application Web browser provides a few simple navigation controls in the Web Browser Tool Bar.

Go Backward

Clicking the Go Backward button navigates back to the previously viewed page.

Go Forward

Clicking the Go Forward button navigates forward to the next page.

Go Home

Clicking the Home button navigates to the starting page for the currently selected Location.

Refresh

Clicking the Refresh button reloads the currently viewed page.

Locations

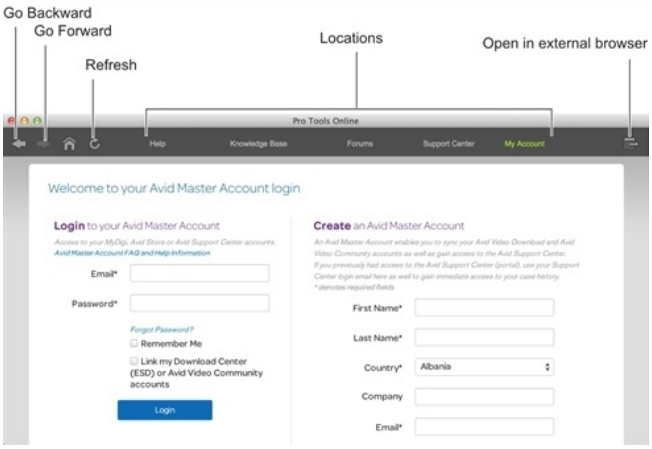
Clicking a location button navigates to the corresponding starting page on the Avid website. The Avid Marketplace and Pro Tools Online browsers provide different Location options.

Launching an External Web Browser

You can launch the currently viewed page in the default Web browser for your operating system.

To launch the currently viewed page in an external browser:

- Click the Launch in External Web Browser icon in either the Avid Marketplace window or the Pro Tools Online window.



Pro Tools Web browser

Managing Windows

Window Configurations

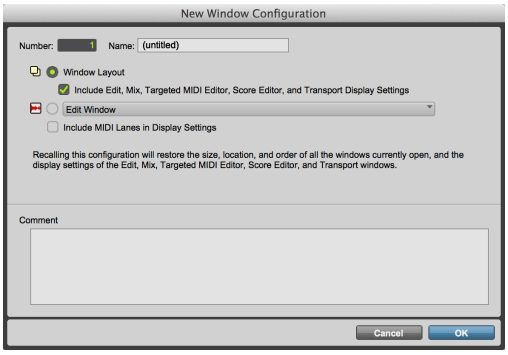
Pro Tools provides a powerful means of managing the configuration of windows in your session, as well as the internal configurations of the Edit, Mix, MIDI Editor, Score Editor, and Transport windows. Use the Window Configuration List to create (or delete) and manage stored Window Configurations. Pro Tools lets you store up to 99 Window Configurations. Window Configurations are saved with the session.

Create a session template with your favorite Window Configurations. You can then use the template when you start a new session, or you can use Import Session Data to import Window Configurations into your current session.

Creating New Window Configurations

To create a new Window Configuration:

1. Open the windows you want to include in the Window Configuration and position them where you want on the screen.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Window > Configurations > New Configuration`**.
   - If the Window Configuration List is open, choose **`New Configuration`** from the **`Window Configuration List`** pop-up menu.



New Window Configuration dialog

3. In the New Window Configuration dialog, do one of the following:
   - Select **Window Layout** and whether or not to include the Edit, Mix, Targeted MIDI Editor, Score Editor, and Transport window display settings.
   - Select a Window Display Settings option from the pop-up menu (**Edit Window**, **Mix Window**, **MIDI Editor (Targeted)**, **Score Editor Window**, or **Transport Window**.
   - If there are any shown MIDI CC lanes that you want to save with the configuration, enable **Include MIDI Lanes in Display Settings**.
4. Name the Window Configuration.
5. You can type a different number for the new Window Configuration. If the number you type is already used by another Window Configuration, you are prompted to replace it or **Cancel**. Otherwise, Pro Tools automatically fills in the first available number (1–99) for the Window Configuration.
6. Type any comments for the new Window Configuration.
7. Click **OK** to store the new Window Configuration, or **Cancel**.

The new Window Configuration is added to the Window Configuration List.

To create a new Window Configuration at a specific numbered slot:

- On the numeric keypad, type Period (.), a number (1–99), and then Slash (/) to add a new Window Configuration at that number slot.

⚠ **If a Window Configuration already exists at that numbered slot, the new Window Configuration overwrites it.**

Recalling Window Configurations

You can use the Window Configuration List to recall stored Window Configurations. You can also use the Number Keypad on your computer keyboard to recall a specific Window Configuration.

To recall a Window Configuration, do one of the following:

- Select the Window Configuration from **Window > Configurations**.
- In the Window Configuration List, click the Window Configuration to recall it.
- On the numeric keypad, press Period (.), the number of the Window Configuration (1–99), and then Asterisk (*).

The Pro Tools session's screen layout updates with the stored Window Configuration.

Undoing Window Configurations

Pro Tools lets you revert to the previous Window Layout and Window Settings with a single level of undo. This is useful, for example, if you recall a Window Configuration, but then decide you want to revert to the previous screen state.

To undo a Window Configuration:

- On the numeric keypad, press Period (.), 0, and then Asterisk (*).

  If **Auto-Update Active Configuration** is enabled, undoing the Window Configuration reverts to the previously stored Window Configuration without automatically saving changes (see "Updating Window Configurations" below).

To redo a Window Configuration:

- On the numeric keypad, press Period (.), 0, and then Asterisk (*).

Editing Window Configurations

You can change which properties are stored with Window Configurations, as well as the number, name, or comments.

To edit a Window Configuration:

1. In the Window Configuration List, select the Window Configuration you want to edit.
2. From the **Window Configuration List** pop-up menu, select **Edit <Name>**.
3. In the Edit Window Configuration dialog, edit the configuration and click **OK**.

Updating Window Configurations

After you recall a stored Window Configuration, you can make changes to the window layout and window settings, and then update the stored Window Configuration with your changes. You can do this manually, or you can have Pro Tools automatically update the active configuration.

To manually update a Window Configuration, do one of the following:

- Choose **Window > Configurations > Update Active Configuration**. The active Window Configuration updates to include any changes to its included properties (Window Layout and Window Display Settings).
- From the **Window Configuration List** pop-up menu, choose **Update <Name>**. The selected Window Configuration updates with any changes to its included properties.

To have Pro Tools automatically update the active Window Configuration, do one of the following:

- Select **Window > Configurations > Auto-Update Active Configuration**.
- From the **Window Configuration List** pop-up menu, select **Auto-Update Active Configuration**.

When **Auto-Update Active Configuration** is selected, the active Window Configuration updates with every change to the Window Layout and Window Display Settings.

Window Configurations that do not include Window Layout and only store Window Display Settings cannot be made active and thus won't automatically update. If you want to update a Window Configuration with changes to the Window Display Settings (such as the width of the Clip List in the Edit window), use the **Update** command in the Window Configuration List.

Clearing Window Configurations

Clearing a window configuration removes it and its associated slot number while keeping the slot numbers of other window configurations unchanged. The **Clear** command is useful if you want to insert another configuration in the same slot.

To clear a Window Configuration:

1. In the Window Configuration List, select the Window Configuration you want to clear.
2. From the **Window Configuration List** pop-up menu, select **Clear <Name>**.

Deleting Window Configurations

Deleting a Window Configuration removes it and its slot number, and renumbers any subsequent Window Configurations.

To delete a Window Configuration:

1. In the Window Configuration List, select the Window Configuration you want to delete.
2. From the **Window Configuration List** pop-up menu, select **Delete <Name>**.

To delete all Window Configurations:

- From the **Window Configuration List** pop-up menu, select **Delete All**.

Importing Window Configurations

You can import Window Configurations from another session using **Import Session Data**.

To import Window Configurations:

1. Choose **File > Import > Session Data**.
2. Select the **Window Configurations** option.
3. If you only want to import Window Configurations, click the **Session Data to Import** pop-up menu and select **None**.
4. Click **OK**.

Arranging Windows

Pro Tools provides commands to tile or cascade all open windows. Floating windows (such as plugin windows) and the Transport window are not affected by these commands.

To arrange windows:

- Choose **Window > Arrange** and select one of the following:

Tile

Arranges all open windows in a tiled pattern on the screen.

Tile Horizontal

Arranges all open windows in a horizontally tiled pattern on the screen. This option is not available if there are too many windows open.

Tile Vertical

Arranges all open windows in a vertically tiled pattern, side by side, on the screen. This option is not available if there are too many windows open.

Cascade

Arranges all open windows in cascading pattern on the screen.

Hiding All Floating Windows

The **Hide All Floating Windows** command hides or shows all floating windows. This is useful for quickly clearing the screen of all floating windows so that you can work in the Edit or Mix windows.

To hide or show all floating windows:

- Select or deselect **Window > Hide All Floating Windows**.

Press Control+Option+Command+W (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+W (Windows) to hide or show all floating windows.

Closing Windows

To close an open window:

1. Make sure the window you want to close is in the foreground.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Close button for the window.
   - Choose **Window > Close Window**.

Press Command+W (Mac) or Control+W (Windows) to close the frontmost window.

How Window Configurations Work

A Window Configuration can store the location and size of all open windows, including:

- Edit window
- Mix window
- Targeted MIDI Editor window
- Score Editor window
- Workspace browsers
- Session Setup window
- Time, Tempo, and MIDI Operations windows
- MIDI Event List
- Real-time MIDI Properties window
- Beat Detective™ window
- Plugin windows
- Panner windows
- Mic Pre windows
- All floating windows listed in the Window menu:
- Clip Effects
- ARA Plugins
- Task Manager window
- Transport window

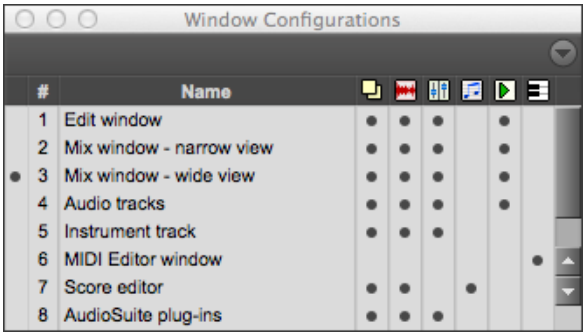
- Big Counter window
- Automation window
- Memory Locations window
- Machine Track Arming window
- Video Universe window
- Video window
- Color Palette window
- Undo History window
- Disk Space window
- System Usage window

The location and size of the Window Configuration List is not stored with Window Configurations.

A Window Configuration can also store the Window Display settings for the Edit, Mix, Targeted MIDI Editor, Score Editor, and Transport windows.

Window Configuration List

The Window Configuration List lets you recall and manage stored Window Configurations, as well as create new Window Configurations.



Window Configuration List

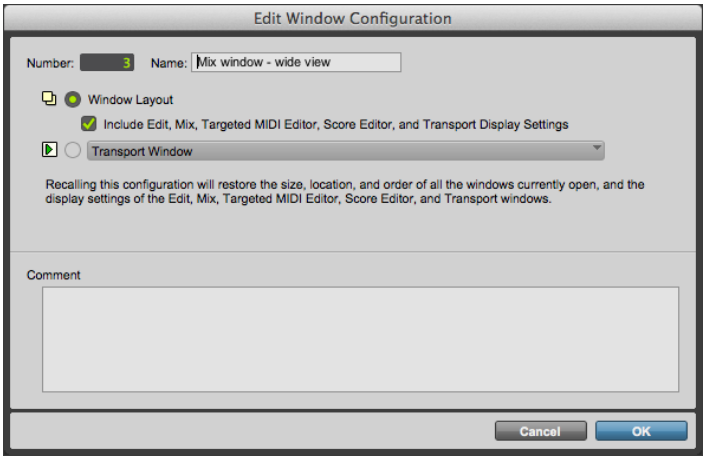
To open the Window Configuration List:

- Select **`Window > Configurations > Window Configuration List`**.

Press Command+Option+J (Mac) or Control+Alt+J (Windows) to show or hide the Window Configuration List.

Window Configuration Properties

Window Configurations can be stored and recalled with the layout of windows in your Pro Tools session, as well as with the settings for the Edit, Mix, and Transport windows. You can specify which of these properties are stored for each Window Configuration either in the New Window Configuration dialog or the Edit Window Configuration dialog.



Edit Window Configuration dialog

Number

Is the number of the slot in which the Window Configuration is stored (1–99). You can type Period (.), the number of the Window Configuration, and then Asterisk (*) on the numeric keypad on your computer keyboard to recall the Window Configuration stored in that slot.

Name

Is the name of the stored Window Configuration.

Window Layout

When enabled, stores the size and location of all open windows.

Include Edit, Mix, Targeted MIDI Editor, Score Editor, and Transport Display Settings

When enabled, stores all window display settings for the Edit, Mix, Targeted MIDI Editor, Score Editor, and Transport windows with the Window Configuration (such as whether or not the Clip List is shown in the Edit window). This option is only available when the **`Window Layout`** option is enabled.

Window Display Settings

Stores only the window display settings for the selected window (Edit, Mix, Targeted MIDI Editor, Score Editor, or Transport):

- Edit Window Display Settings
- Width of the Track List and Groups List
- Height of the Track List
- Width of the Clip List
- What rulers are shown (the main ruler is always shown)
- What track columns are shown (such as Inserts, Sends, or Comments)
- Tempo editor display
- Whether Transport controls are shown in the Edit window
- Edit Window Toolbar arrangement
- Mix Window Display Settings
- Width of the Track List and Groups List
- Height of the Track List

- What track rows are shown (such as Inserts, Sends, or Comments)
- Narrow/wide mixer view
- Score Editor
- MIDI Editor (Targeted)
- MIDI Editor (Untargeted)
- Transport Window Display Settings
- Counters display
- MIDI controls display
- Expanded view

Include MIDI Lanes in Display Settings

Stores the layout of MIDI Automation Lanes in MIDI Editor windows, whether docked in the Edit window or when open as a separate window. Any Window Configuration that includes MIDI Lanes in Display Settings will recall that exact window and MIDI Automation Lane layout.

Comments

Lets you type comments for the Window Configuration.

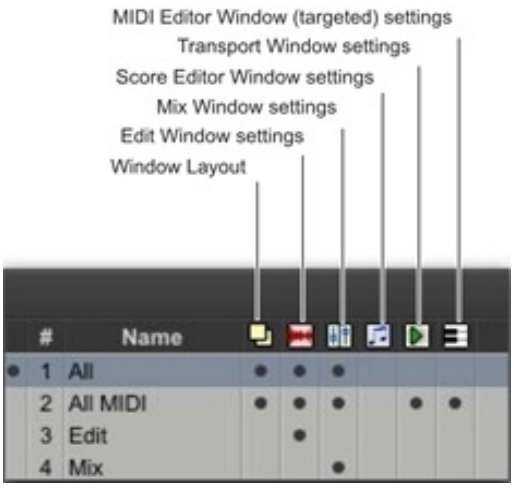
Window Configuration Commands and Options

There are three main types of Window Configuration commands and options

- View Filter icons
- Window Configuration List pop-up menu items
- Active Window configuration options

View Filter Icons

Using the View Filter icons, the Window Configuration List lets you show or hide Window Configurations based on whether or not they are stored with Window Layout, Edit Window settings, Mix Window settings, Score Editor window settings, MIDI Editor Window settings, or Transport Window settings.



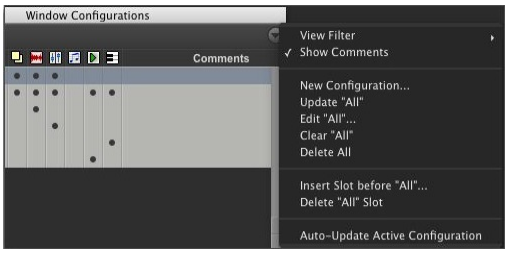
Window Configuration List view filter icons

To show or hide Window Configurations in the Window Configuration List, do one of the following:

- Click the View Filter icon to show or hide Window Configurations that include that property (Window Layout, Edit Window Settings, Mix Window Settings, Score Editor Window Settings, MIDI Editor Window Settings, or Transport Window Settings).
- Select or deselect the View Filter item in the Window Configuration List pop-up menu.

Window Configuration List Pop-Up Menu

You can select viewing and sorting options, along with commands for creating and removing Window Configurations, from the pop-up menu in the Window Configuration List.



Window Configuration List pop-up menu

View Filter

Lets you show or hide Window Configuration filter icons in the Window Configuration List as well as show or hide Window Configurations with Window Layout, Edit Window Settings, Mix Window Settings, Score Editor Window Settings, MIDI Editor Window Settings, or Transport Window Settings.

Show Comments

Lets you show or hide Comments in the Window Configuration List.

New Configuration

Creates a new Window Configuration. This command is also available from **`Window > Configurations`**.

Update ‹Name›

Updates the selected Window Configuration with any changes to the layout and settings of windows depending on the Window Configuration's properties. This command is also available from **`Window > Configurations`**.

Edit ‹Name›

Opens the Edit Window Configuration dialog where you can edit the properties of the selected Window Configuration.

Clear ‹Name›

Clears the selected Window Configuration without deleting the slot (number).

Delete All

Deletes all Window Configurations.

Insert Slot Before ‹Name›

Inserts a new slot before the selected Window Configuration and, if necessary, increments the number of each following slot.

Delete ‹Name› Slot

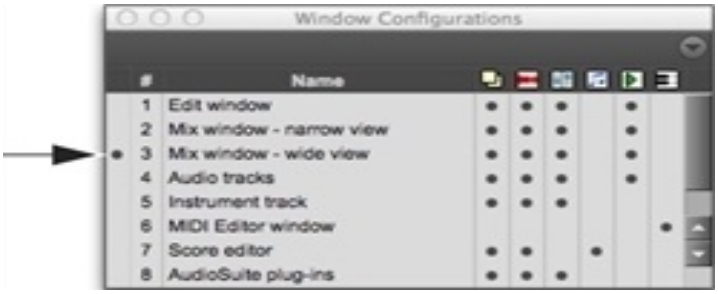
Deletes the selected Window Configuration and its slot (number), and renumbers each subsequent slot.

Auto-Update Active Configuration

Automatically updates the active Window Configuration as you make changes to the layout and settings of windows. If **Auto-Update Active Configuration** is enabled, the number of the active configuration is also displayed in the Window menu. This command is also available from **Window > Configurations**.

Active Window Configuration

The active Window Configuration is indicated by a diamond to the left of the Window Configuration Number in the Window Configuration List and in the Configurations submenu (**Window > Configuration**). If **Auto-Update Active Configuration** is enabled, the number of the active configuration is also displayed in the **Window** menu. Only Window Configurations that include Window Layout can be made active.



Window Configuration List showing active configuration

Menus

Pro Tools menus provide commands and options for configuring and working with Pro Tools, sessions, and session material.

Pro Tools Main Menus

Pro Tools includes the following main menus:

File

Provides commands that are used to create and maintain Pro Tools sessions.

Edit

Provides commands that are used to edit and manipulate the current selection and affect data in the Timeline or the clipboard.

View

Provides options and commands to customize what is shown in various windows.

Track

Provides commands that are used to create, manage, and edit tracks.

Clip

Provides commands that are used to manage and edit clips.

Event

Provides commands for editing audio and MIDI events.

AudioSuite

Provides AudioSuite plugins.

Options

Provides commands that let you select several editing, recording, monitoring, playback, and display options.

Setup

Provides commands to open dialogs and windows or configure various Pro Tools hardware and software parameters.

Window

Provides commands to toggle the display of various Pro Tools windows.

Help

Provides access to searchable **Pro Tools Help**, the online **Pro Tools Knowledge Base**, and the online **Avid Audio Forums**. The **Help** menu also provides easy access to PDF documentation (installed with Pro Tools).

The **Help** menu also provides access to **the Avid Support Center**.

Track, Clip, and Groups List Menus

The Track, Clip, and Groups Lists provide pop-up menus for managing and working with the contents of each list, as follows:

Track List Menu

Provides commands to show and hide tracks in the Mix, Edit, MIDI Editor, and Score Editor windows. The Track List pop-up menu also lets you sort the contents of the Track List.

For more information, see "Track List" on page 350.

Groups List Menu (Edit Groups and Mix Groups)

Provides commands to create, display, suspend, and delete Mix and Edit Groups.

For more information, see "The Groups List" on page 418.

Clip List Menu (Edit Window Only)

Provides commands to find, select, sort, clear, rename, time stamp, compact, export, and recalculate waveform overviews of items in the Clip List. The pop-up menu also lets you set the drop order for clips dragged from the Clip List and dropped in the Timeline.

For more information, see "The Clip List" on page 432.

Track Name and Clip Name Right-Click Menus

Track and clip names provide Right-click menus for managing and working with tracks or clips, as follows:

Track Name Right-Click Menu

Right-clicking a track name in the Edit window, Mix window, or the Track List provides access to various track commands (such as show/hide, make active/inactive, rename, duplicate, and delete tracks).

For more information, see "Track Name Right-Click Menu" on page 354.

Clip Name Right-Click Menu

(Edit Window Only) Right-clicking a clip name in the Clip List provides commands to clear, rename, time stamp, or replace clips (Pro Tools HD software only). The pop-up menu also lets you export clip definitions or selected clips as files, recalculate waveform overviews, select the parent file of selected clips in a Workspace Browser, or select a clip as an object in the Edit window.

For more information, see "The Clip List" on page 432.

Group Name and Track Group ID Indicator Pop-Up Menus

When you click and hold on a group name in the Groups List, or click on a Group ID indicator in a track, a pop-up menu provides access to various group commands (such as selecting tracks in a group).

For more information, see "Group Name and Track Group ID Indicator Pop-Up Menus" on page 420.

Enable/Disable Control Sets in Menu

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) is an easy way to quickly enable or disable entire multi-select menus in Pro Tools. There are several such menus in the Mix and Edit Window, such as Show/Hide rulers, Clip List, and the Transport controls. You can also use modifier keys to select or deselect all items within each section of a menu.

To select or deselect all items in a section of a menu:

1. Click the reveal menu icon to show all menu items.
2. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any item in the desired section of the menu.



Selecting or deselecting all items in a section of a menu

To select or deselect all items in a menu:

1. Click the reveal menu icon to show all menu items.
2. Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) any item in the menu.



Selecting or deselecting all items in a section of a menu

Tool Tips

Pro Tools provides Tool Tips in all main windows. Holding the cursor for a few seconds over an abbreviated name, or unlabeled icon or tool, displays either the function or details of the item (depending on the Tool Tips preferences settings).

To configure Tool Tips for Pro Tools:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **Display** tab.
2. In the Basics section, enable the Tool Tips options you want displayed.
   - Function

     Shows the functional name of different Pro Tools items (such as specific buttons, indicators, modes, selectors, and Edit tools).
   - Details

     Shows abbreviated or hidden Pro Tools names or values for different Pro Tools items (such as insert names, gain levels, settings, and routing assignments).

   To turn off Tool Tips, leave both options deselected.
3. Click **OK**.

Color Palette



The Color Palette window lets you set custom colors for UI elements in Pro Tools.

You can further customize the look and feel of the UI in the UI Customization window, see "UI Customization" below.

To assign custom colors in Pro Tools:

1. Select the track, clip(s) (on a track or in the Clip List), group(s), or marker(s) you want to color.
2. Choose **Window > Color Palette** (you can also double-click the colored area of a track to open the Color Palette).
3. Select which UI element you want to color: **Tracks**, **Clips in Tracks**, **Clips in Clip List**, **Groups**, or **Markers**.
4. Click the color in the palette that want for that UI element.

To apply the same color to multiple elements without having to reselect it:

- Enable (or disable) **Hold**.

To apply same color from the Color Palette to selected items on the Timeline, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click the color you want.

To revert to the default color settings:

- Click **Default**.

To clear the current color and set the element to gray:

- Click **None**.

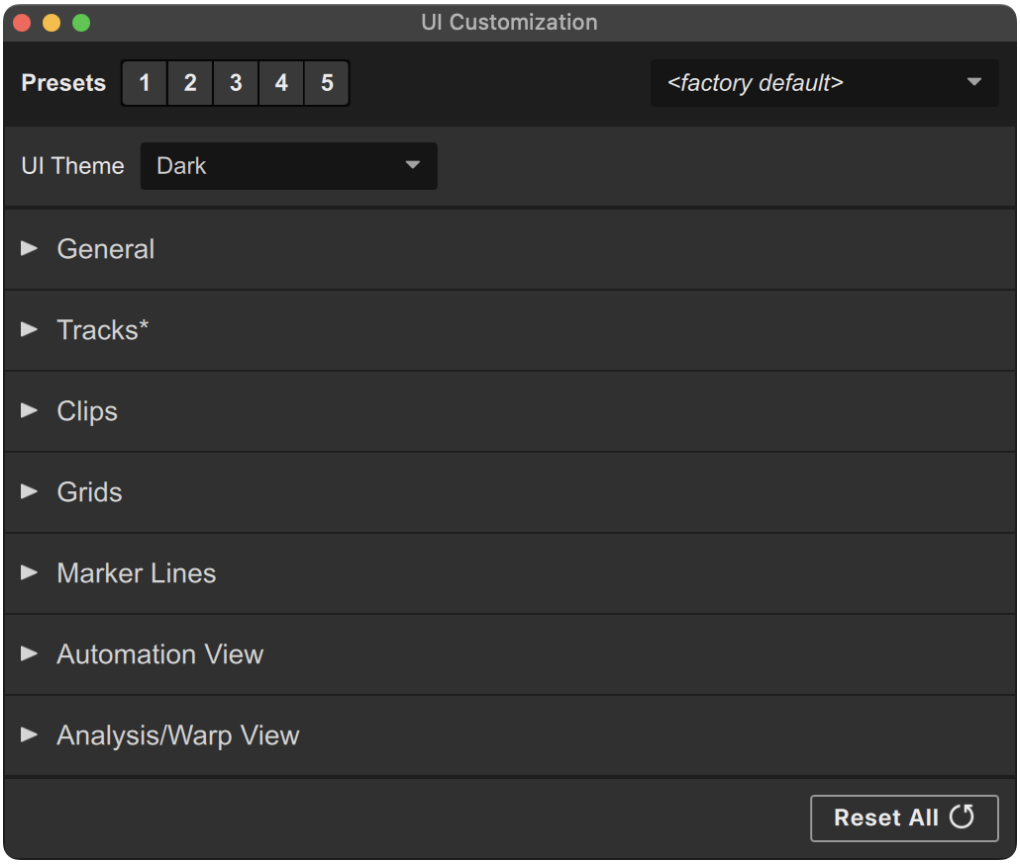
UI Customization

Pro Tools lets you change the look and feel of the User Interface (UI) between **Classic** and **Dark** UI Themes. Depending on the lighting environment where you work, you may find that one UI Theme is more desirable than the other. You can customize UI Themes to best suite your needs and save them as presets.

You can pic specific colors for various UI elements such as Tracks or Groups using the Color Palette, see "Color Palette" on the previous page.

To set the UI Theme, do one of the following:

- Select the desired theme (**Classic** or **Dark**) in the Display Preferences (**Setup > Preferences**).
- Select the desired theme (**Classic** or **Dark**) in the UI Customization window (**Window > Color Palette**).



UI Customization

The **UI Customization** window provides settings that let you adjust the look and feel of Pro Tools to best fit your work environment.

To customize UI themes:

1. Choose **Window > UI Customization**.
2. If necessary, click the expand/collapse icon for any section to display its settings.
3. Adjust settings as desired.

If desired, you can save your settings as a preset.

UI Customization Settings

UI Theme

The **UI Theme** selector in the expanded Color Palette window lets you change the UI Theme (**Classic** or **Dark**). This is the same as the settings in the Display Preferences (**Setup > Preferences**). When you change the theme, the user interface switches immediately.

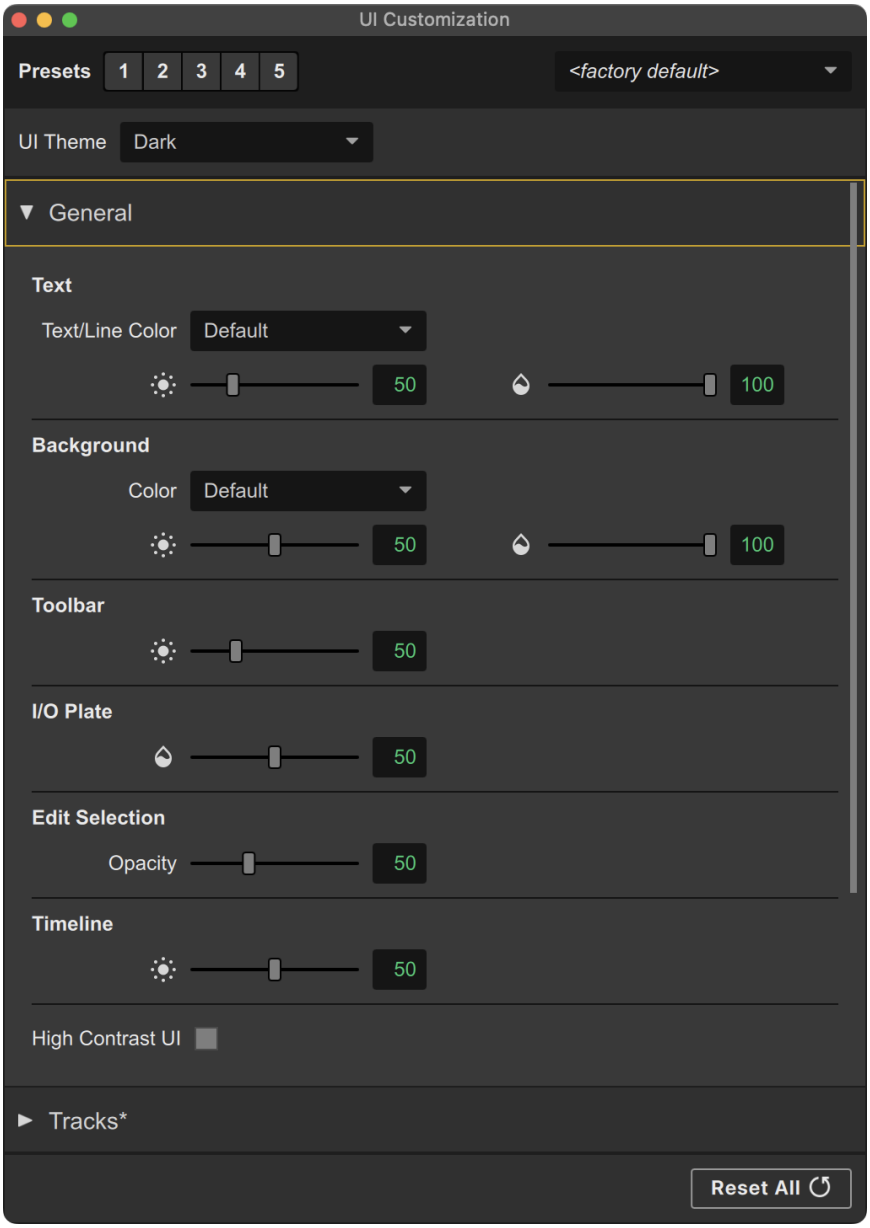
UI Theme Settings

The sections under the **UI Theme** selector provides settings to customize brightness and other parameters for specific UI elements and areas (such as **Text**, **Tracks**, **Clips**, and more). An asterisk (*) next to a section title indicates that one or more parameters have been changed.

Reset All

Use this button to clear all custom settings and reset them to their default values.

General



Text/Line Color

Select the desired color for text and lines.

Text Brightness

Adjust the text color brightness.

Text Saturation

Adjust the text color saturation.

Background Color

Select the desired color for text background.

Background Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for text background.

Background Saturation

Adjust the color saturation for text background.

Toolbar Brightness

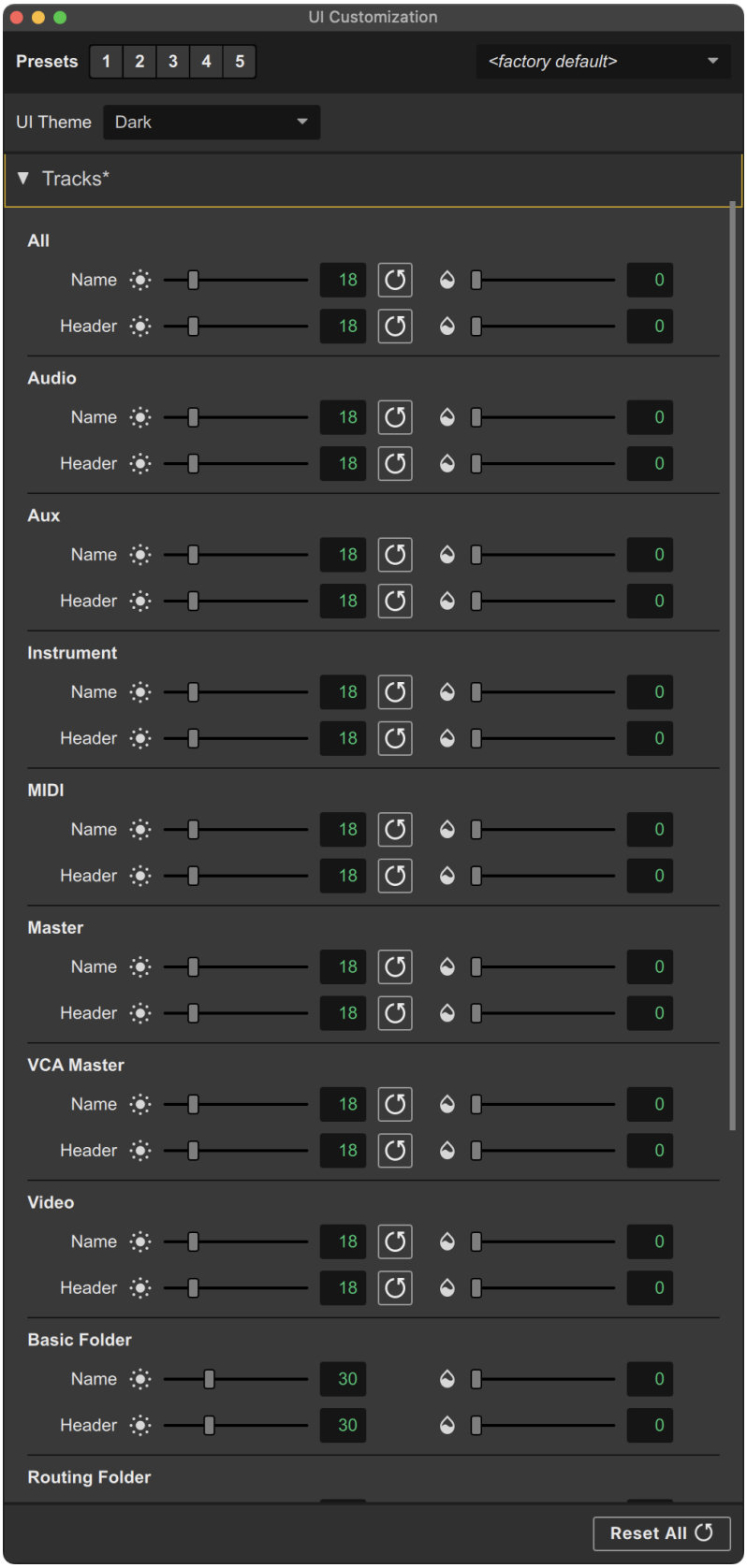
Adjust the brightness for the Edit window Toolbar.

High Contrast UI

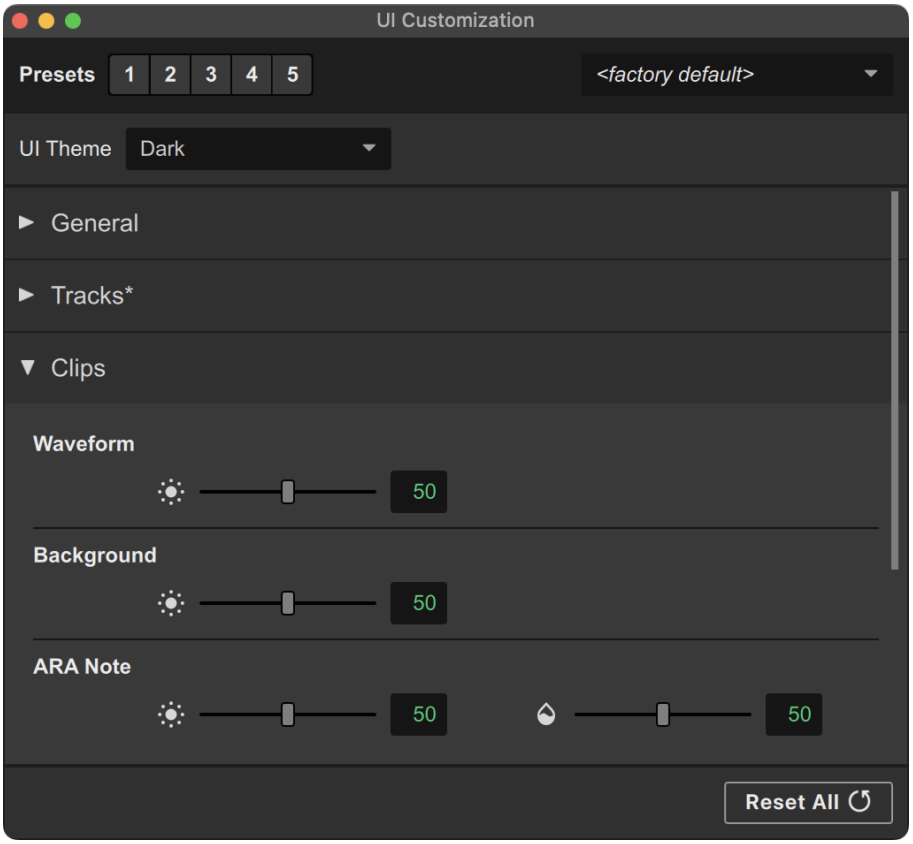
When the **High Contrast UI** option is enabled, the user interface changes to set text and other UI elements in high contrast to their background. This can improve visibility of the user interface when working in low light conditions, as well as provide greater accessibility if you have low vision or color blindness.

Tracks

Pro Tools lets you independently adjust the color **Brightness** and **Saturation** of the **Name** and **Header** of tracks by track type: **All**, **Audio**, **Aux**, **Instrument**, **MIDI**, **Master**, **VCA Master**, **Video**, **Basic Folder**, **Routing Folder**, and **Inactive**.


UI Customization
Presets
1
2
3
4
5
<factory default>
UI Theme
Dark
▼ Tracks*
All
Name
18
0
Header
18
0
Audio
Name
18
0
Header
18
0
Aux
Name
18
0
Header
18
0
Instrument
Name
18
0
Header
18
0
MIDI
Name
18
0
Header
18
0
Master
Name
18
0
Header
18
0
VCA Master
Name
18
0
Header
18
0
Video
Name
18
0
Header
18
0
Basic Folder
Name
30
0
Header
30
0
Routing Folder
Reset All

Clips



Waveform Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for waveforms in clips.

Background Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for clip backgrounds.

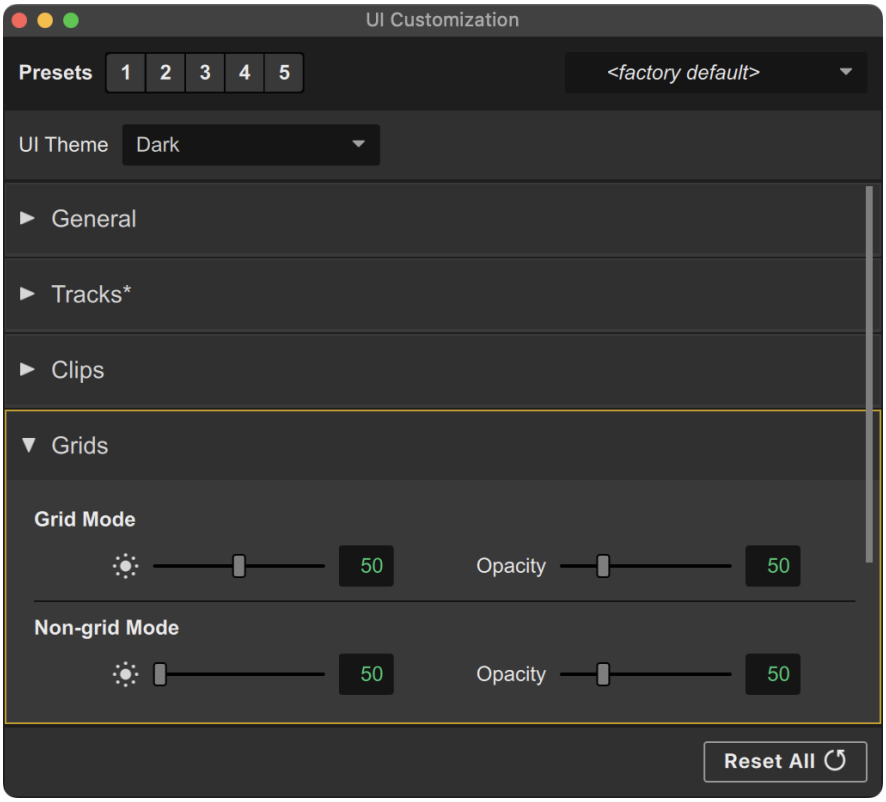
Melodyne Note Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for Melodyne notes in clips.

Melodyne Note Saturation

Adjust the color saturation for Melodyne notes in clips.

Grids



Brightness (Grid Mode)

Adjust the color brightness for grid lines in Grid mode.

Opacity (Grid Mode)

Adjust the opacity for grid lines in Grid mode. This means that in Dark theme you can set grid lines (in Grid Mode) to black for improved visibility.

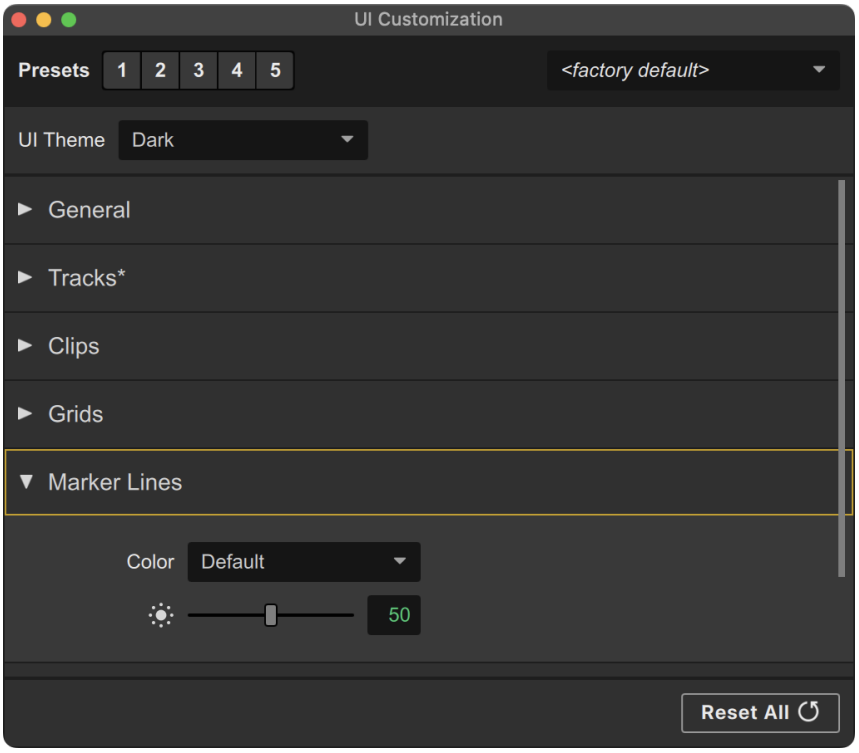
Brightness (Non-Grid Mode)

Adjust the color brightness for grid lines in non-grid mode.

Opacity (Non-Grid Mode)

Adjust the opacity for grid lines in Non-Grid mode.

Marker Lines



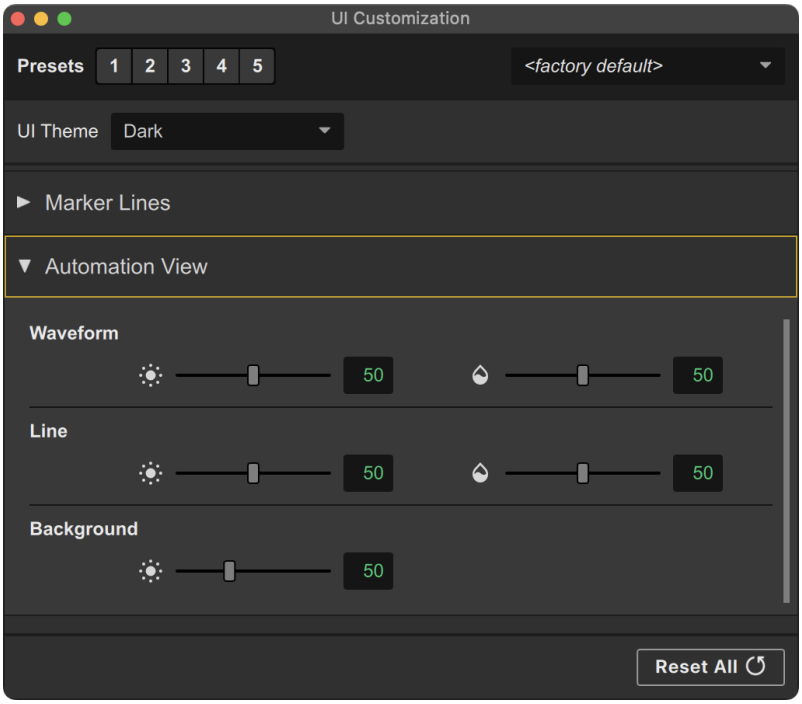
Color

Select the desired color for Marker lines.

Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for Marker lines.

Automation View



Waveform Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for waveforms in Automation view.

Waveform Saturation

Adjust the color saturation for waveforms in Automation view.

Line Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for lines in Automation view.

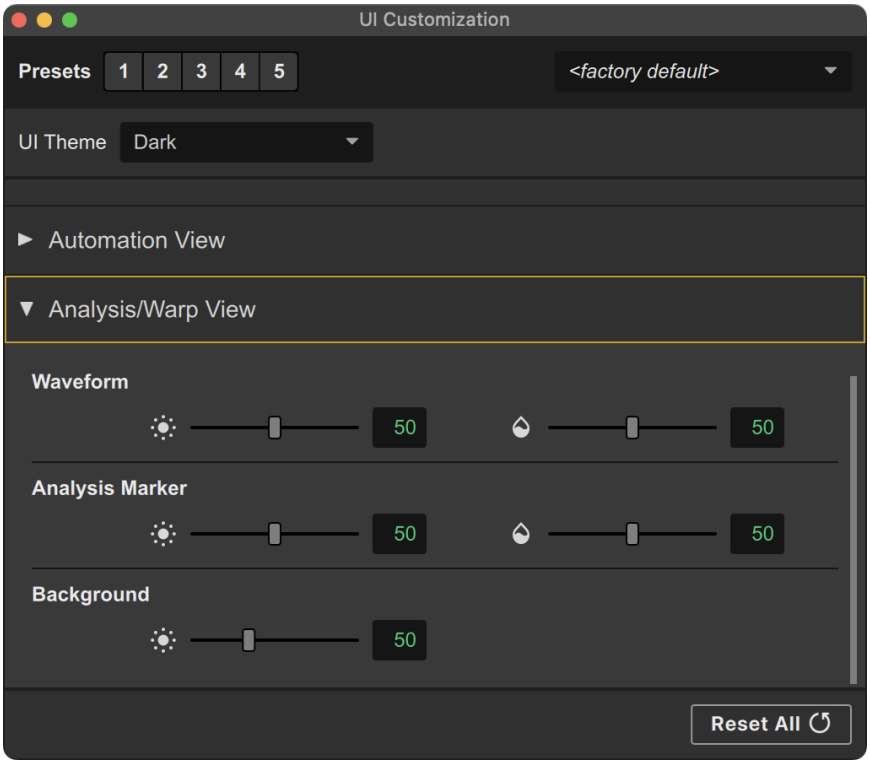
Line Saturation

Adjust the color saturation for lines in Automation view.

Background Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for the track background in Automation view.

Analysis/Warp View



Waveform Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for waveforms in Analysis/Warp view.Waveform Saturation.

Waveform Saturation

Adjust the color saturation for waveforms in Analysis/Warp view.

Analysis Marker Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for analysis markers in Analysis/Warp view.

Analysis Marker Saturation

Adjust the color saturation for analysis markers in Analysis/Warp view.

Background Brightness

Adjust the color brightness for the track background in Analysis/Warp view.

UI Presets

The currently selected **UI Theme** and all UI settings can be saved as UI Presets files. UI Presets files can be imported, transferred for backup or sharing, and locked to prevent changes. Quick Presets 1–5 let you store and quickly switch UI settings.

To save a UI preset file:

1. In the UI Customization window, select a **UI Theme** and adjust any settings as desired.
2. Click the Preset selector and choose **Save Settings**, or **Save Settings As**, name the file and click **Save**.

Quick Presets

Quick Presets 1–5 let you quickly switch UI settings for different users, or to optimize the UI for different types of work or lighting environments. For example, you might prefer one setting while editing clips in the Edit window, and different settings while working with automation. Quick presets 1–5 function identically to similar features such as Zoom Presets.

To store a UI Preset:

1. Use the UI Customization window to adjust the settings for visual elements as desired.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) a UI Preset button 1–5.
3. To recall a UI Preset, click its button (1–5).

13 Tracks

Pro Tools provides different types of tracks for working with audio, MIDI, and video in Pro Tools sessions.

Track Types

In a Pro Tools session, you can have several different types of tracks. These can include audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, VCA Master, MIDI, Instrument, Folder, and video tracks.

Video track features are described in "Working with Video in Pro Tools" on page 1924

Audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and VCA Master Tracks

Pro Tools provides mono, stereo, and multichannel format audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, and VCA Master tracks.

Audio Tracks

Audio tracks let you record to disk and play back from disk recorded or imported audio files.

Auxiliary Input Tracks

Auxiliary Input tracks can be used as effects sends, destinations for submixes, as a bounce destination, as inputs to monitor or process audio (such as audio from external MIDI instruments), and for many other audio routing tasks.

Master Fader Tracks

Master Fader tracks control the overall level of audio paths that are routed to physical output paths. For example, you could have 24 tracks in a session with channels 1–8 routed to Analog Output 1–2, channels 9–16 to Analog Output 3–4, and channels 17–24 to Analog Output 5–6. You could then create three master faders, one to control each of these output pairs.

Master Fader tracks have additional uses (such as controlling submix levels). For more information, see "Master Fader Tracks and Signal Flow" on page 1451.

VCA Master Tracks

VCA Master tracks (or VCA Masters) emulate the operation of voltage-controlled amplifier channels on analog consoles, where a VCA channel fader would be used to control, group, or offset the signal levels of other channels on the console.

VCA Master tracks do not pass audio, so they do not have inputs, outputs, inserts, or sends. A Mix Group is assigned to a VCA Master track, which appears in the VCA track's Assignment selector.

The controls of the tracks in that Group are modified by the controls on the VCA Master. For more information, see "VCA Master Tracks" on page 1454.

MIDI Tracks

MIDI tracks record, store, and playback MIDI data. You cannot select a track format when you create a MIDI track, because audio does not pass through it.

Instrument Tracks

Instrument tracks are a special type of track that provide both MIDI and audio capabilities in a single channel strip. Instrument tracks simplify using software and hardware instruments to record and monitor MIDI instruments.

Folder Tracks

Folder tracks are a special type of track that essentially function as containers for other tracks of any type. A Folder track can be closed to hide all of the tracks it contains, or opened to show all of the tracks it contains (*member* tracks). There are two types of Folder tracks: Basic and Routing.

Basic Folder Tracks

Basic Folder tracks let you organize tracks in your sessions, but without any of the special routing capabilities that Routing Folder tracks provide.

Routing Folder Tracks

Routing Folder tracks let you organize tracks in your sessions, and also route audio through its input, apply plugins, use sends, assign track automation, and output audio similarly to an Auxiliary Input track.

Video Tracks

Video tracks let you add or import supported video file formats. With an Avid video peripheral and Pro Tools, you can add or import Avid video to the Pro Tools Timeline (see "Working with Video in Pro Tools" on page 1924).

Video tracks only appear in the Edit window, and video can be viewed in the Video window.

Pro Tools Studio lets you import a single video file to create a single video track in a session, while Pro Tools Ultimate lets you create up 64 separate video tracks in a session.

Track Formats

Mono Tracks

A mono audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, or Instrument track controls volume, and, in some cases, panning, for a single channel of audio. A mono audio track uses a single voice. A mono track can also be routed to a multichannel output.

Stereo Tracks

A stereo audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, or Instrument track is a single channel strip for two channels of audio as a stereo pair. Stereo audio tracks use two voices.

Multichannel Tracks (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

A multichannel track is a single channel strip that plays multiple channels of audio (from 3 to 8 channels at a time). This lets Pro Tools support multichannel mixing formats including LCRS, 5.1, 6.1, and others. Audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks can all use any supported multichannel format.

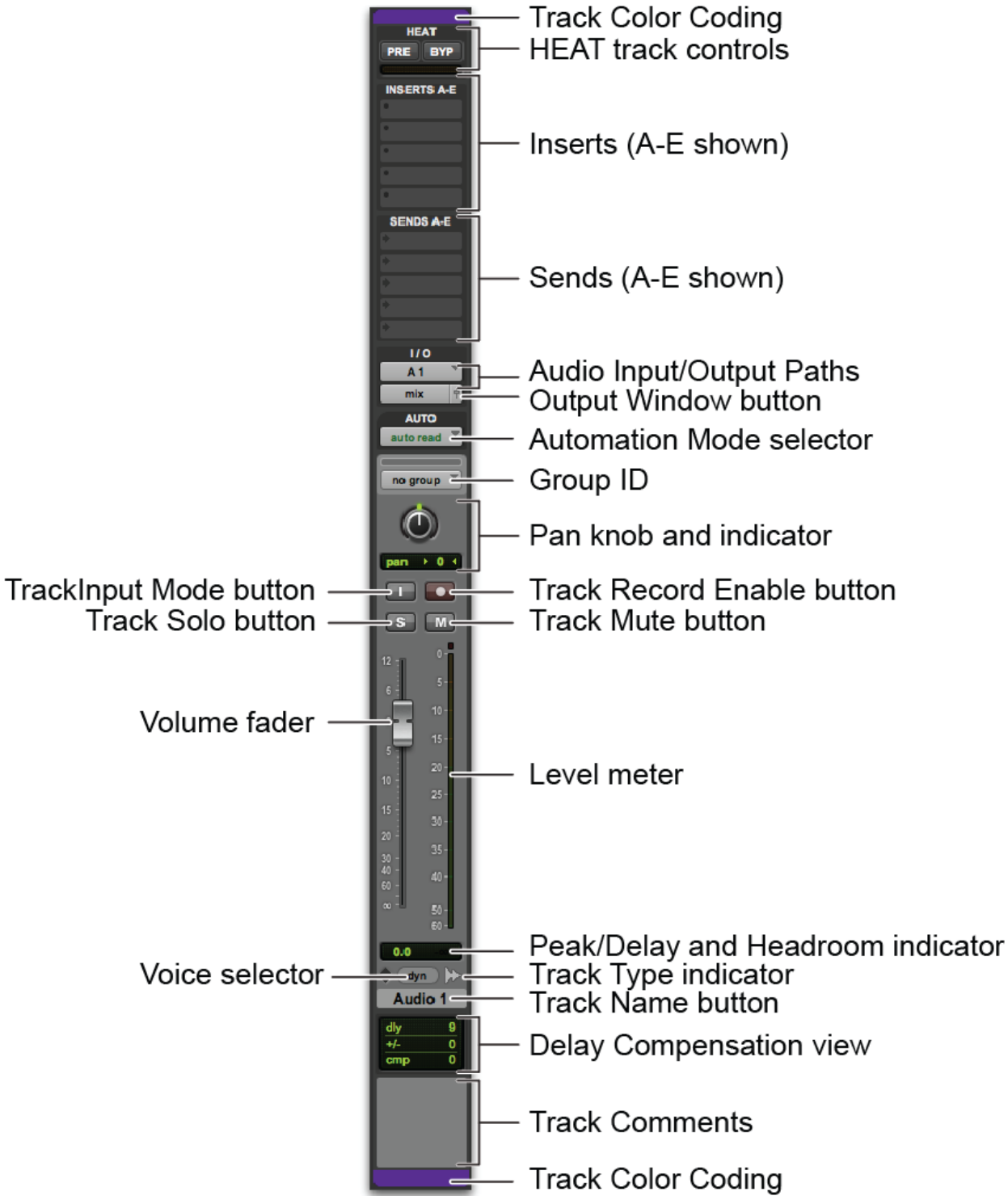
For more information on surround mixing with Pro Tools, see the following:

- "Pro Tools Setup for Surround" on page 1658
- "Multichannel Tracks and Signal Routing" on page 1668
- "Surround Panning and Mixing" on page 1684

Track Channel Strips in the Mix Window

Audio Track Channel Strips

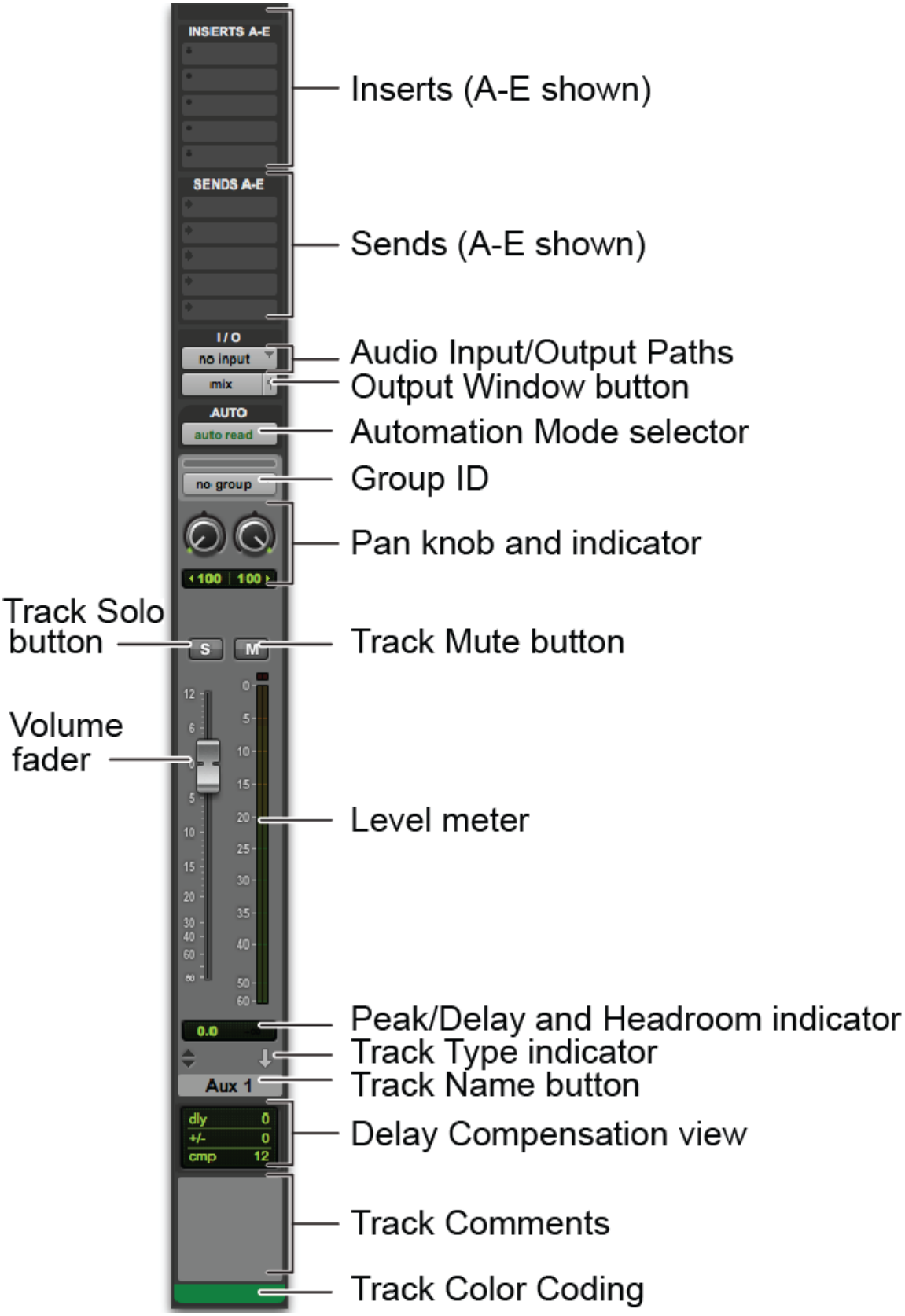
Each audio track has its own set of channel strip controls, including volume, pan, record enable, input monitoring, automation mode, solo, mute, and voice assignment.



Mono audio track channel strip

Auxiliary Input Track Channel Strips

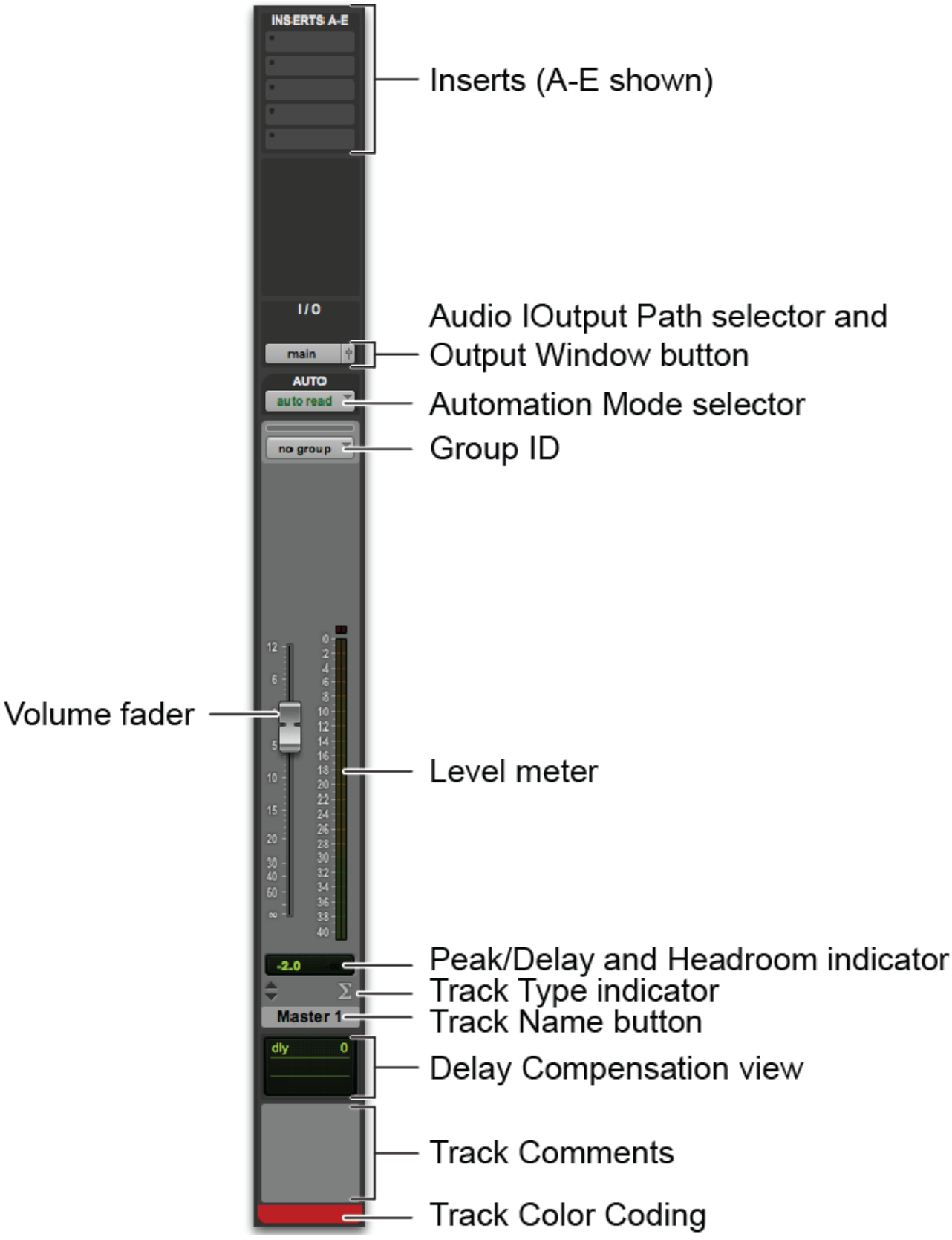
Each Auxiliary Input track has its own set of channel strip controls, including volume, pan, automation mode, solo, and mute.



Stereo Auxiliary Input track channel strip

Master Fader Track Channel Strips

Each Master Fader track has its own set of channel strip controls, including volume and automation mode.

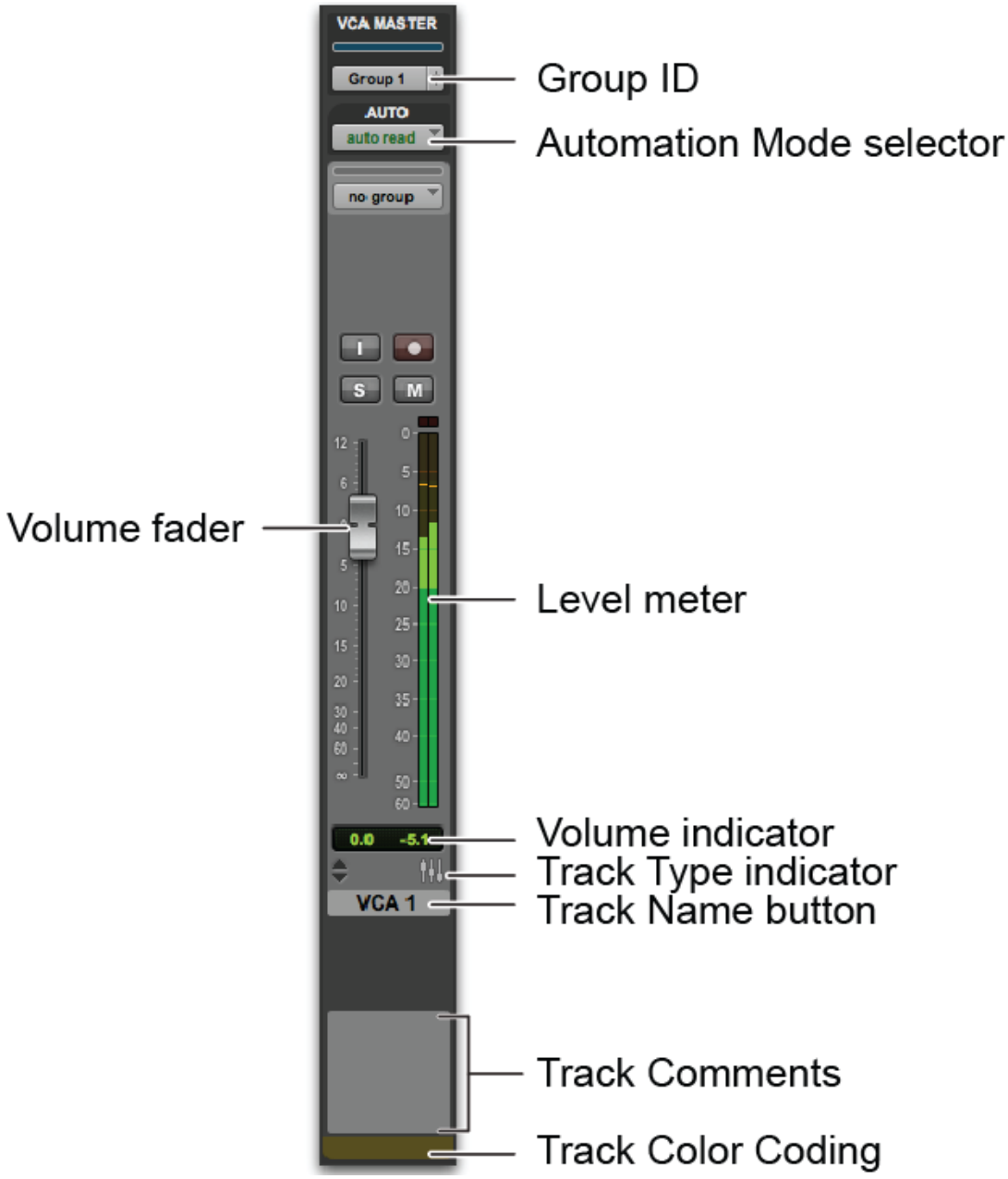


Stereo Master Fader track channel strip

VCA Master Track Channel Strips

Each VCA Master track has its own set of channel strip controls, including volume, record enable, input monitoring, automation mode, solo, and mute.

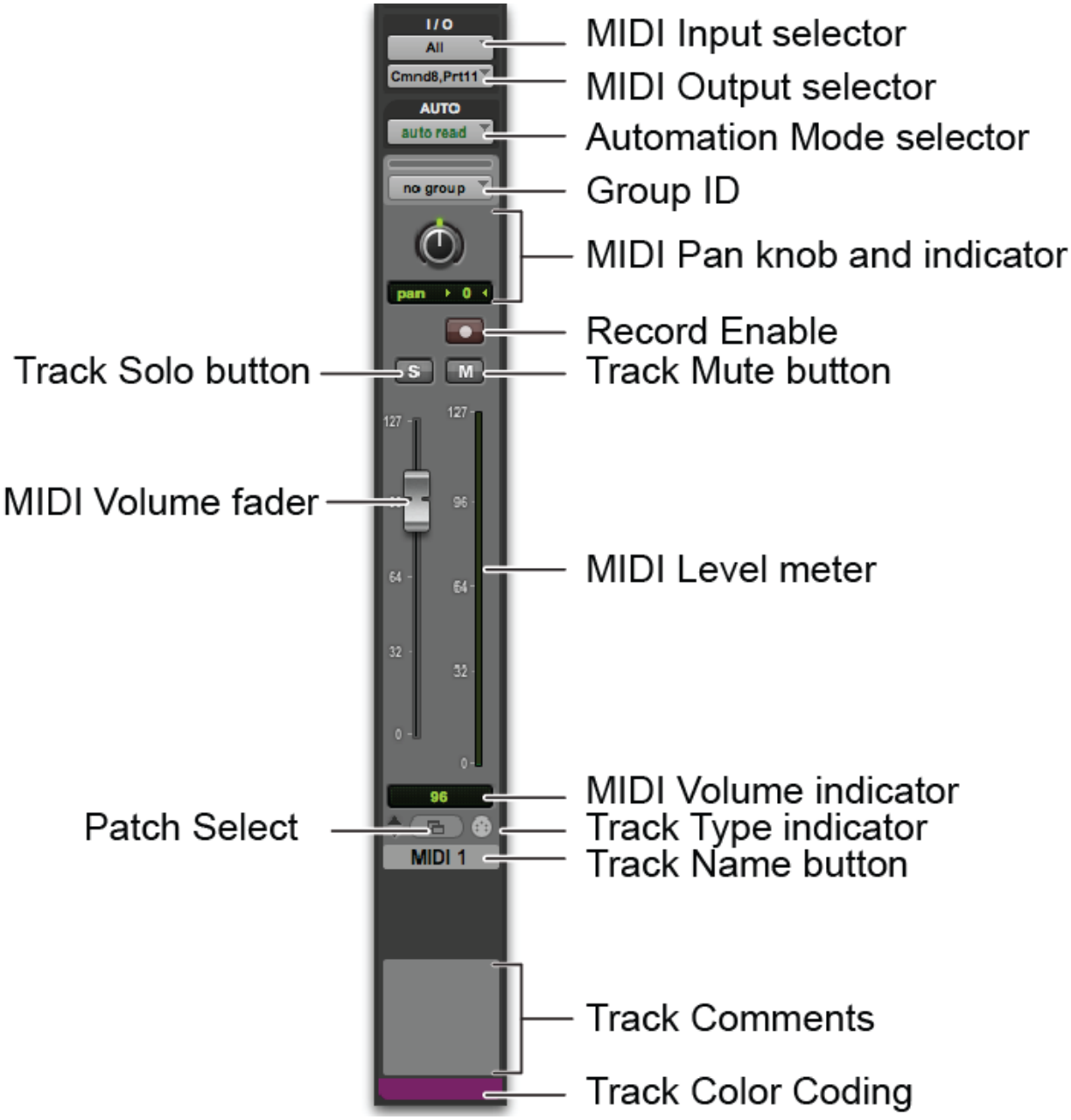
For more information, see "VCA Master Tracks" on page 1454.



VCA Master Track

MIDI Track Channel Strips

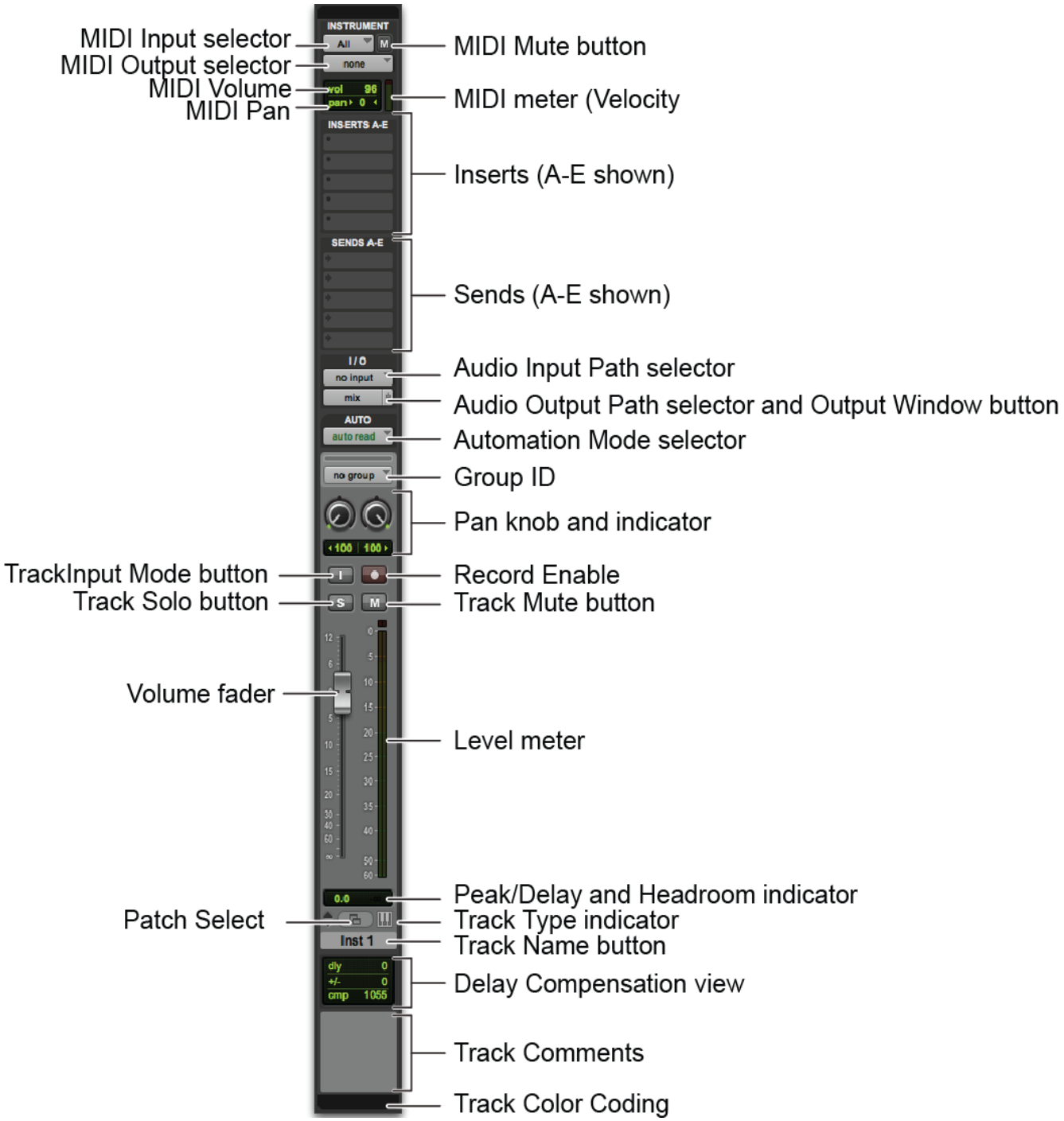
Each MIDI track has its own set of channel strip controls, including MIDI volume, pan, record enable, automation mode, solo, mute, patch assignment, and channel assignment.



MIDI Channel strip

Instrument Track Channel Strips

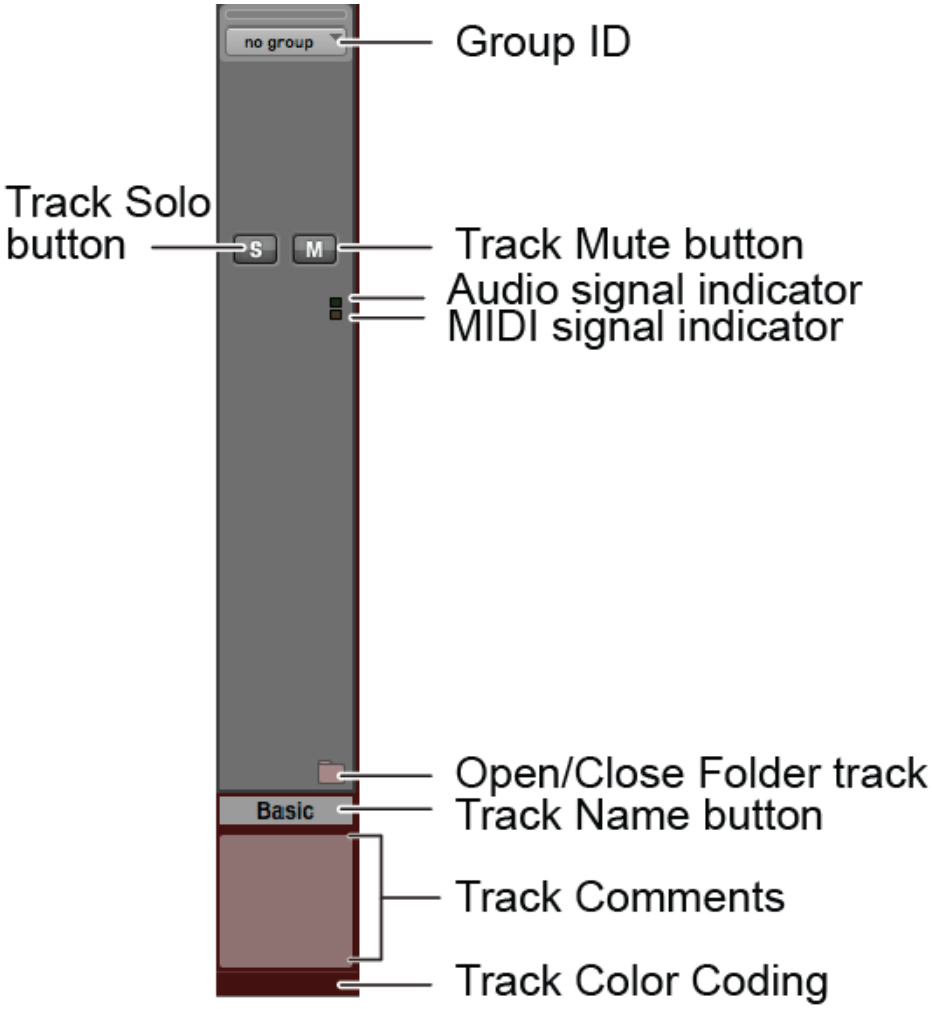
Each Instrument track has its own set of channel strip controls, including audio (like an Auxiliary Input track) volume, pan, automation mode, solo, and mute, and MIDI (like a MIDI track) record enable. Instrument tracks have an additional Instruments view that provides controls for MIDI input, output, mute, volume, and pan (like on a MIDI track).



Stereo Instrument track channel strip, Instruments view shown

Basic Folder Track Channel Strips

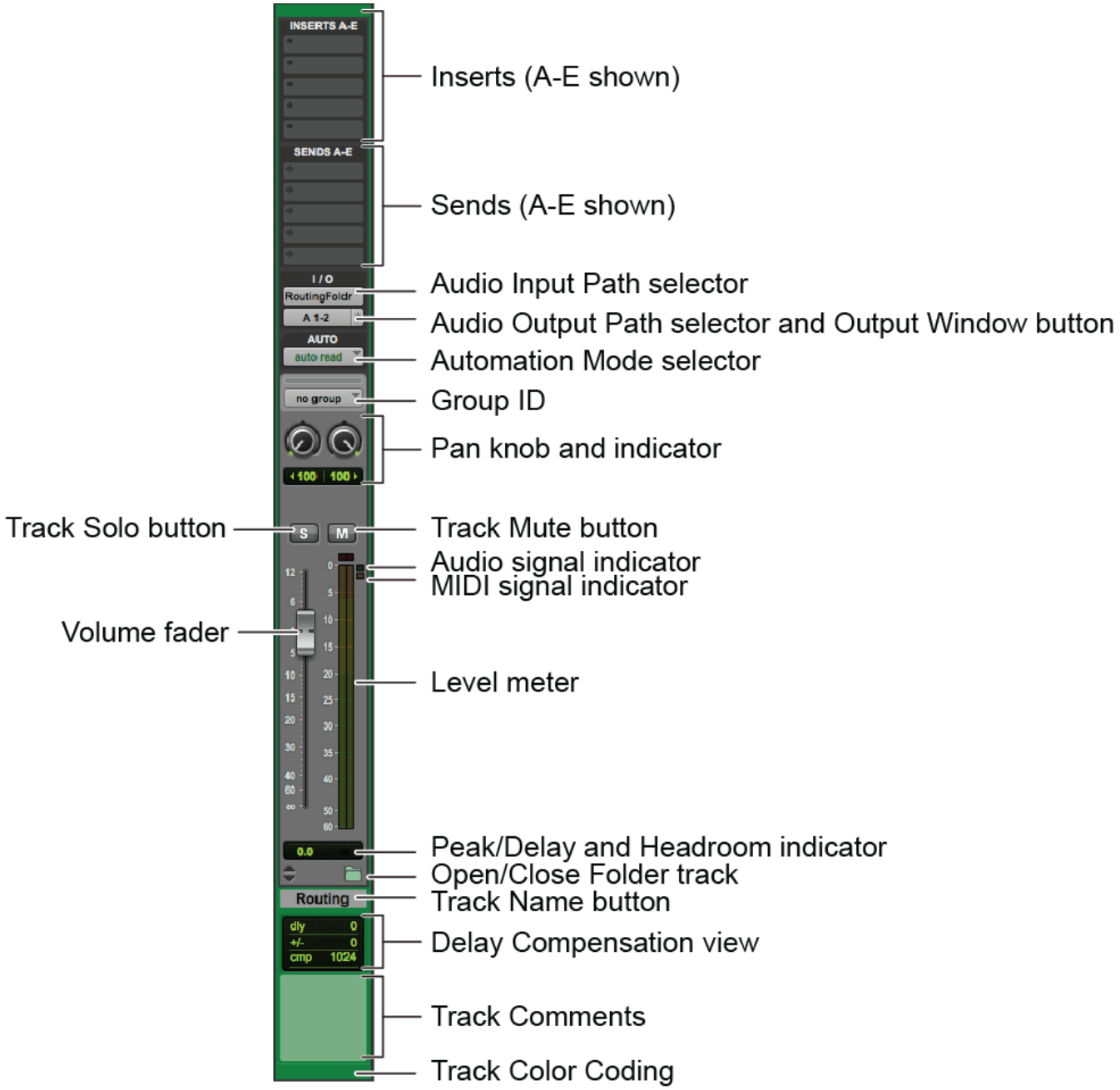
Each Basic Folder track has its own set of channel strip controls and indicators, including solo and mute, audio and MIDI signal indicators, and Open/Close Folder.



Basic Folder track channel strip

Routing Folder Track Channel Strips

Each Routing Folder track has its own set of channel strip controls and indicators, including volume, pan, automation mode, solo and mute, audio and MIDI signal indicators, and Open/Close Folder.

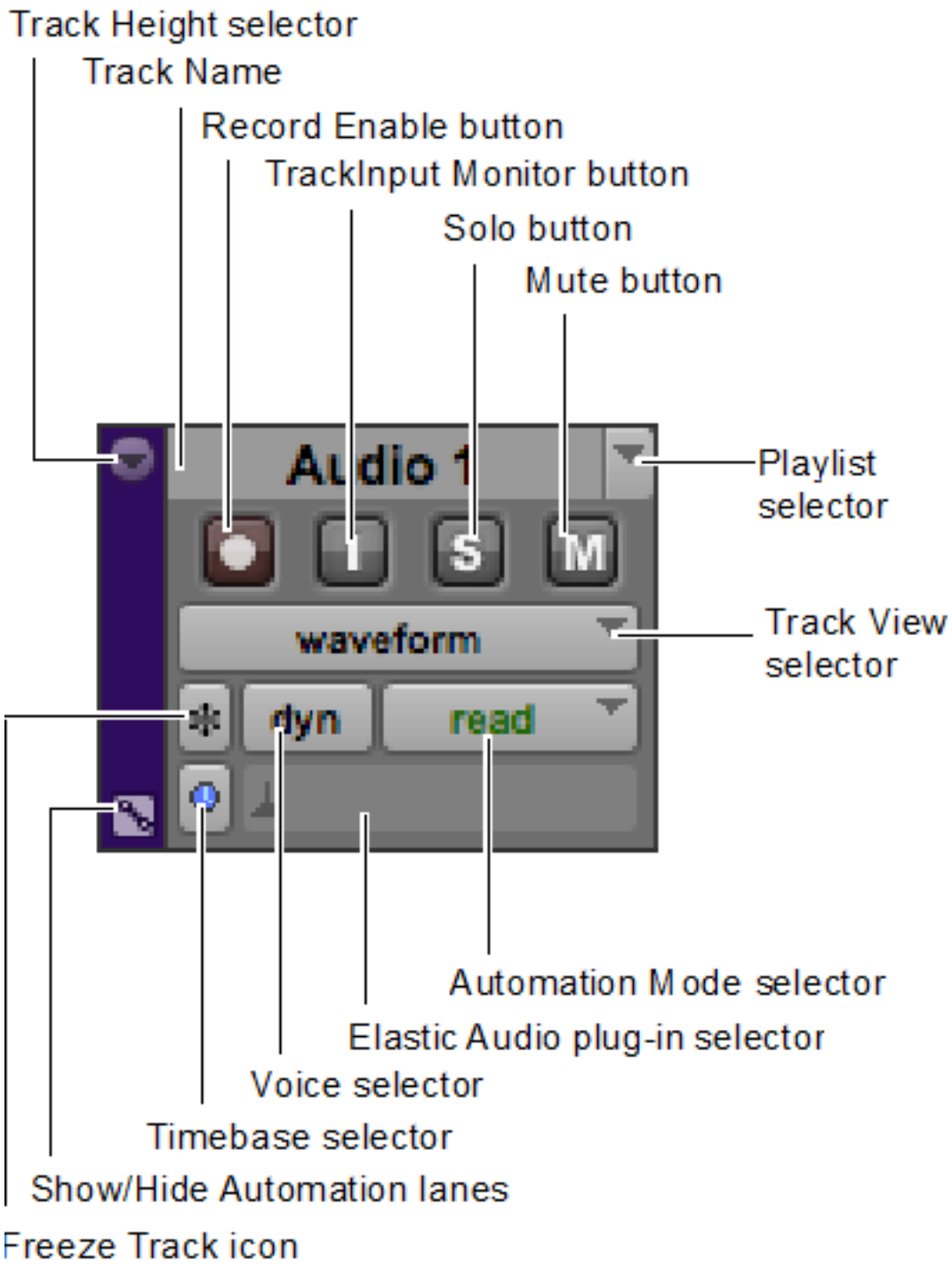


Stereo Routing Folder track channel strip

Track Controls and Indicators in the Edit Window

Audio Track Controls

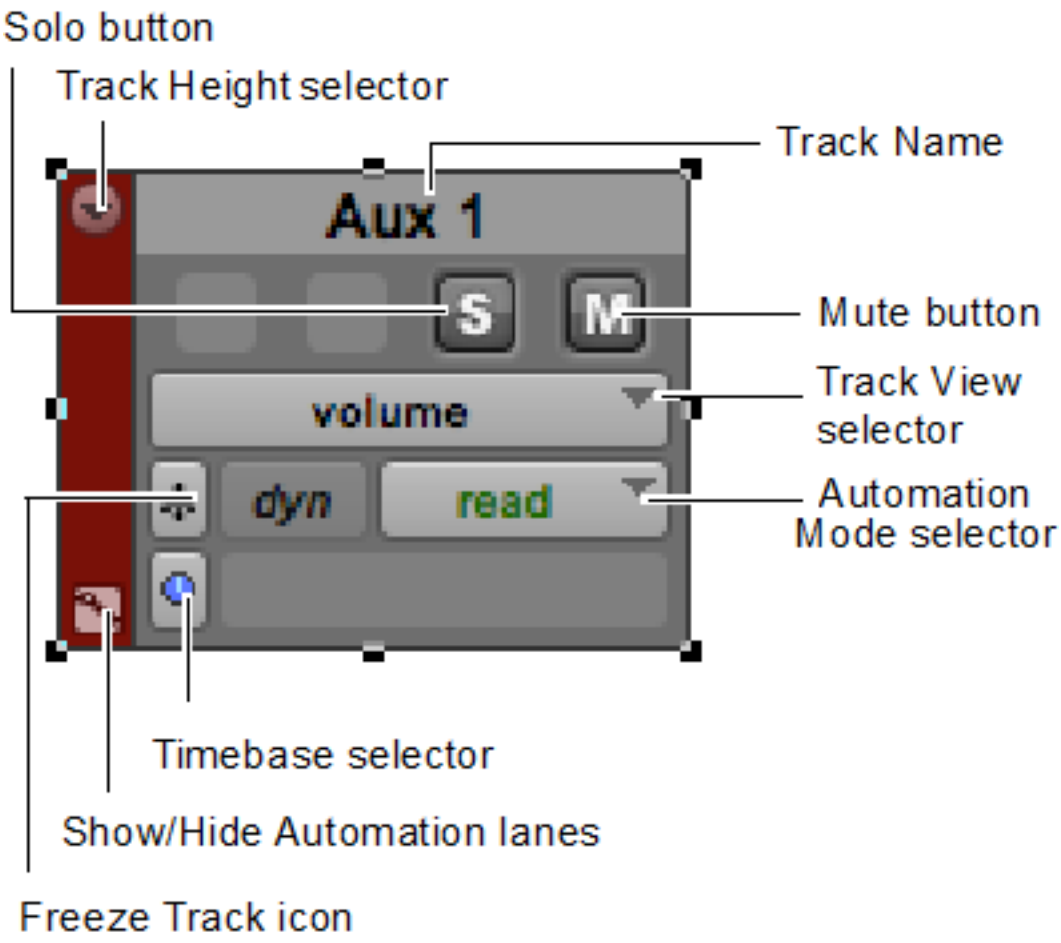
Each audio track has its own set of track controls, including Track Name, Playlist, Record Enable, Input Monitoring, Solo, Mute, Track View, Track Height, Track Freeze, Timebase, Elastic Audio, Voice Assignment, and Automation mode.



Edit window track controls for a mono audio track (medium track height)

Auxiliary Input Track Controls

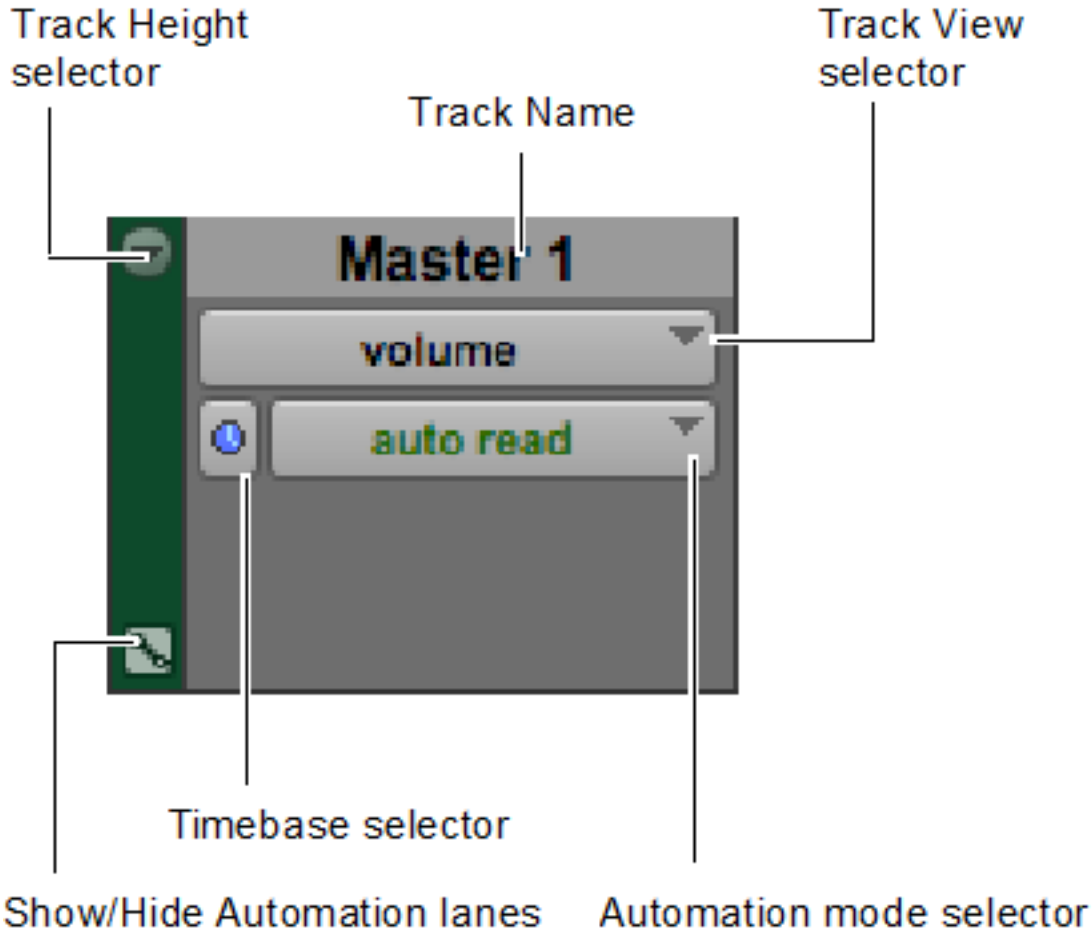
Each Auxiliary Input track has its own set of track controls, including Track Name, Solo, Mute, Track View, Track Height, Track Freeze, Timebase, and Automation mode.



Edit window track controls for a stereo Auxiliary Input track (medium track height)

Master Fader Track Controls

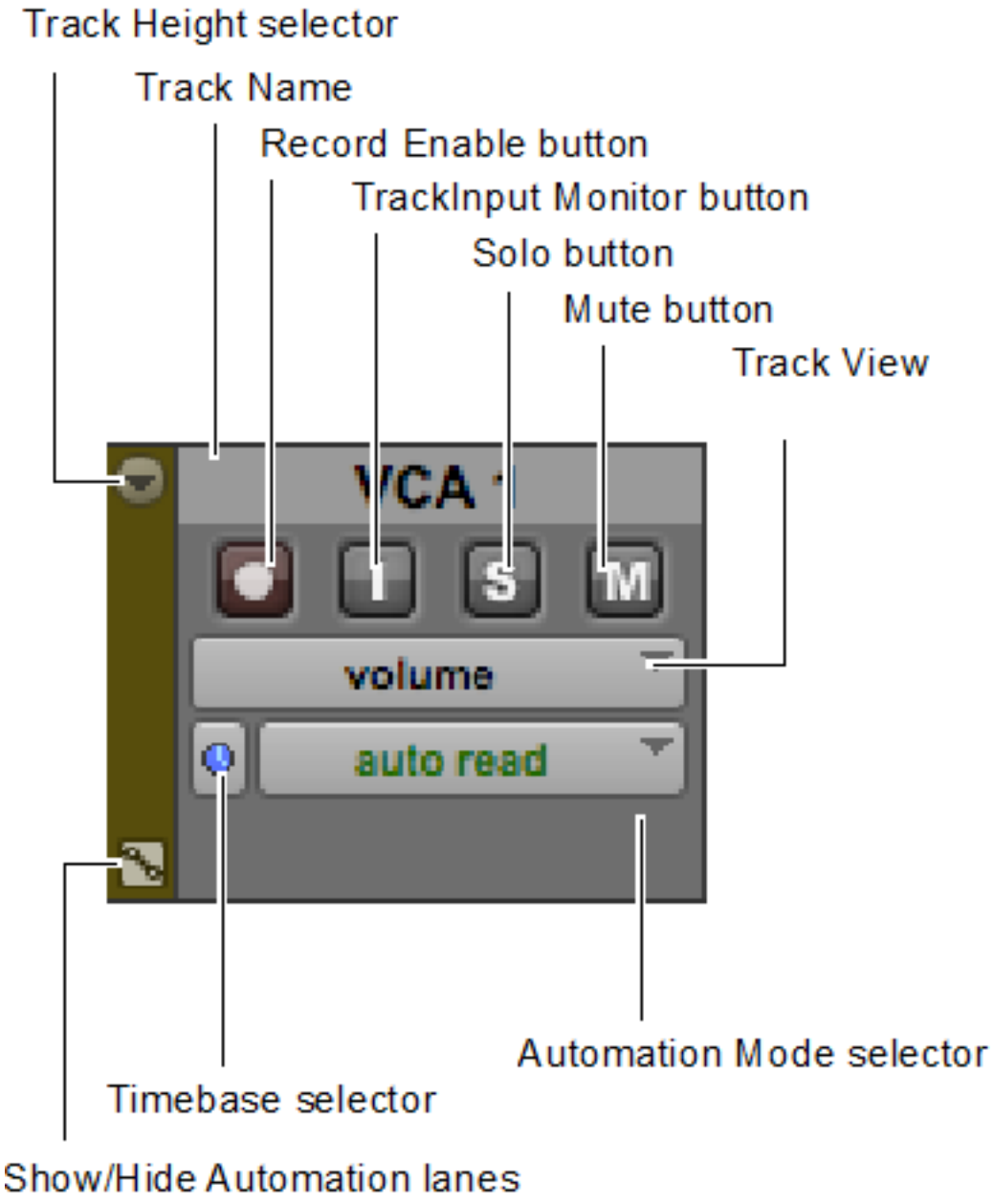
Each Master Fader track has its own set of track controls, including Track Name, Track View, Track Height, Timebase, and Automation mode.



Edit window track controls for a stereo Master Fader track (medium track height)

VCA Master Track Controls

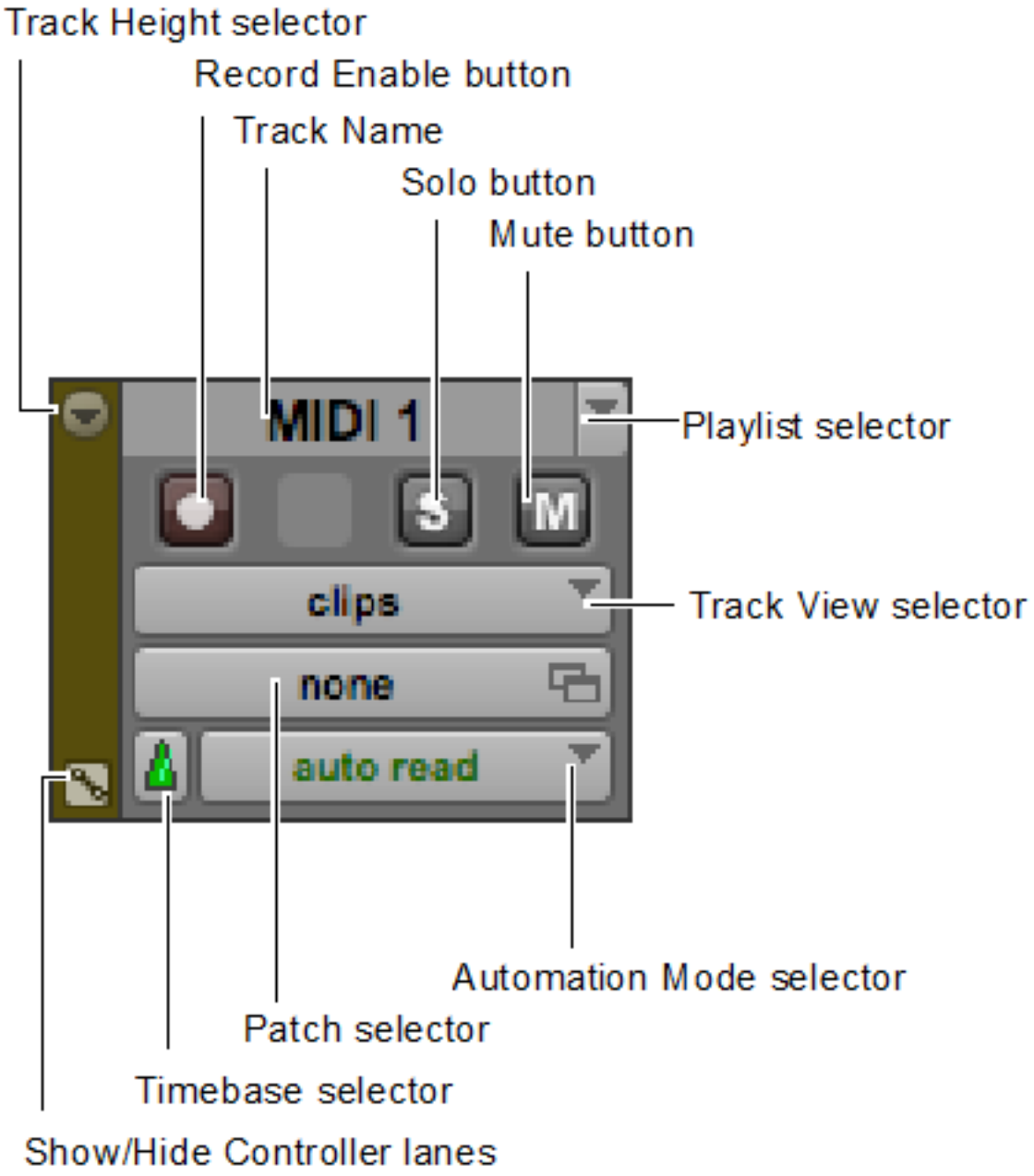
Each VCA Master track has its own set of track controls, including Track Name, Playlist, Record Enable, Input Monitoring, Solo, Mute, Track View, Track Height, Timebase, and Automation mode.



Edit window track controls for a VCA Master track (medium track height)

MIDI Track Controls

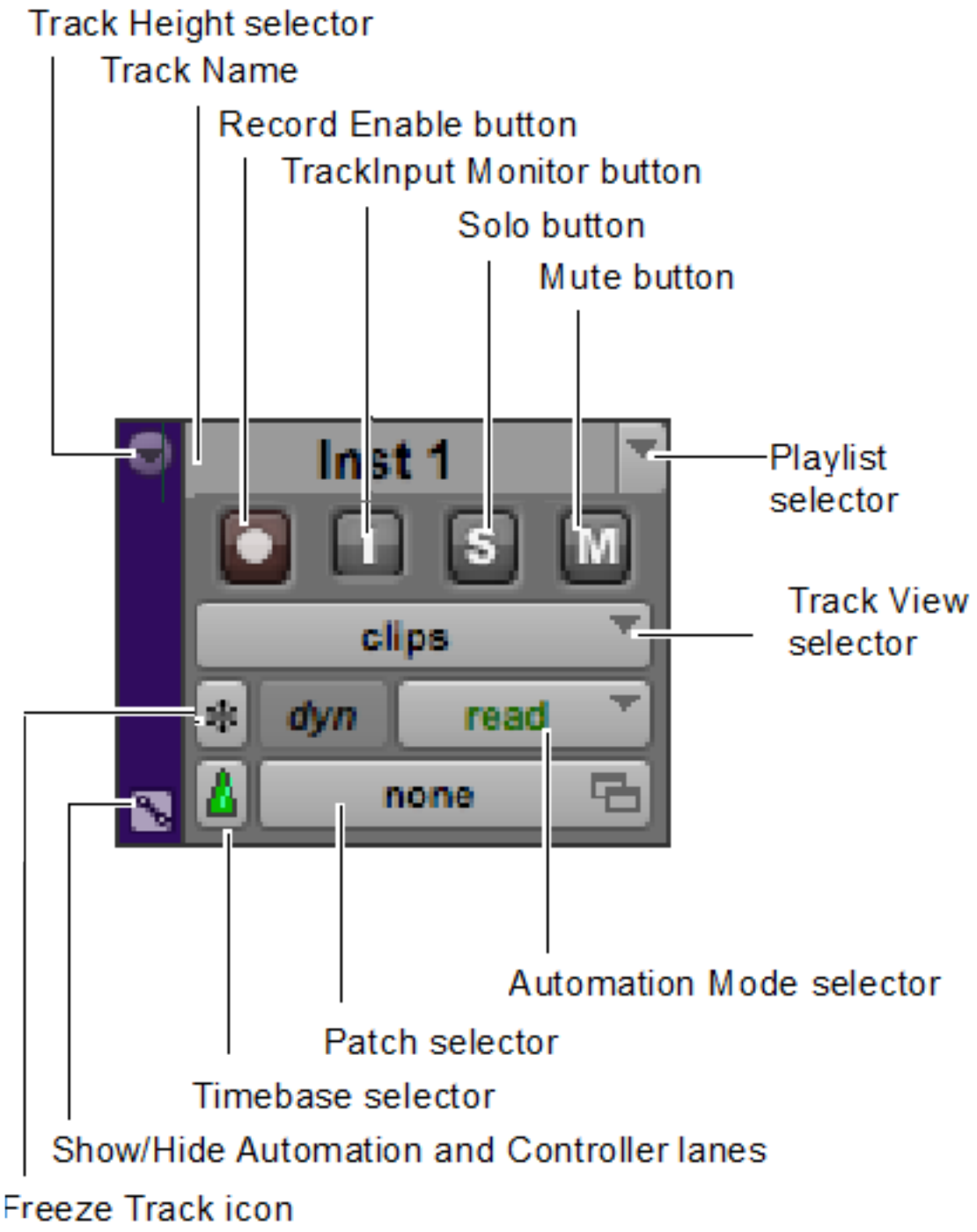
Each MIDI track has its own set of track controls, including Track Name, Playlist, Record Enable, Solo, Mute, Track View, Track Height, Patch, Timebase, and Automation mode.



Edit window track controls for a MIDI track (medium track height)

Instrument Track Controls

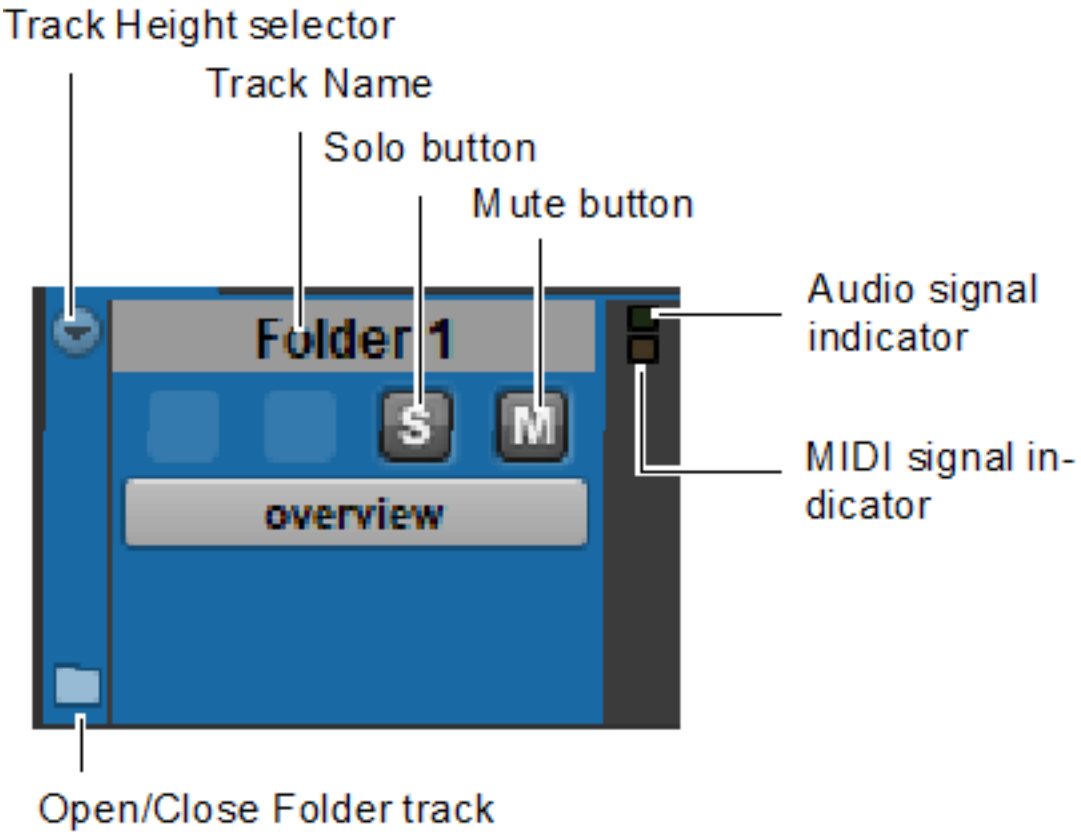
Each Instrument track has its own set of track controls, including Track Name, Playlist, Record Enable, Solo, Mute, Track View, Track Height, Track Freeze, Patch, Timebase, and Automation mode.



Edit window track controls for a stereo Instrument track (medium track height)

Basic Folder Track Controls

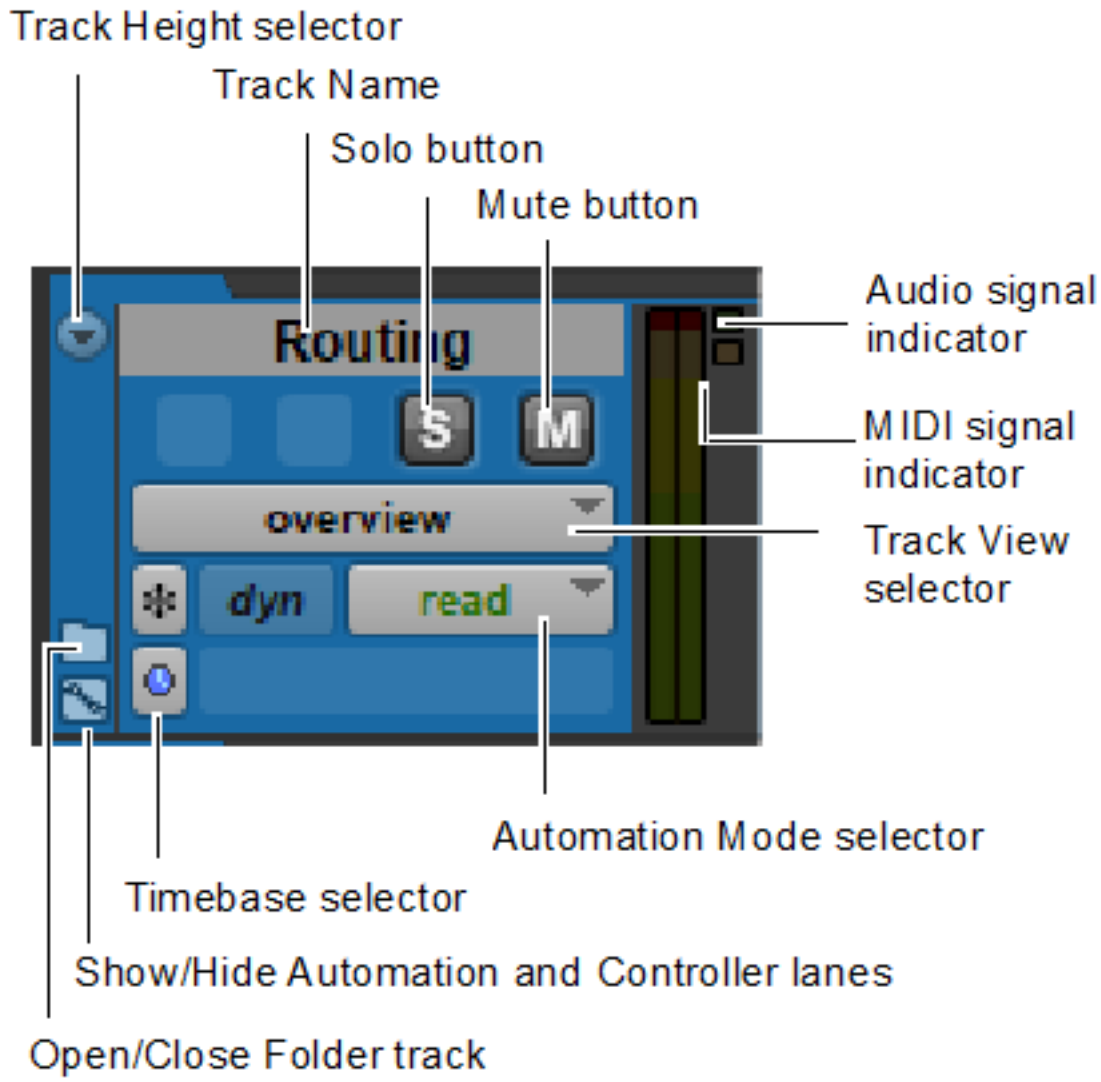
Each Basic Folder track has its own set of track controls, including Track Name, Track View, and Track Height.



cEdit window track controls for a stereo Instrument track (medium track height)

Routing Folder Track Controls

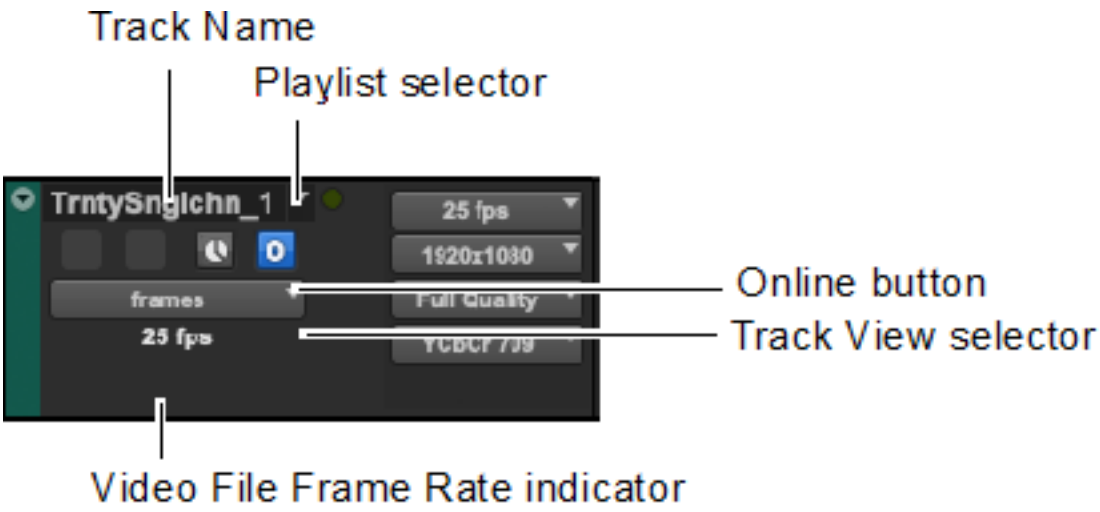
Each Routing Folder track has its own set of track controls, including Track Name, Track View, and Track Height.



Edit window track controls for a Routing Folder track (medium track height)

Video Track Controls

Each video track has its own set of track controls, including Track Name, Playlist, Online, Track View, and Track Height.



Edit window track controls for a video track (medium track height)

Edit Window Views

In addition to track controls and playlists (of clips of events on the Timeline), the Edit window provides the following views that correspond to channel strip controls in the Mix window:

- **Comments**
- **Mic Preamps**
- **Instruments**
- **Inserts** (**A–E** and **F–J**)
- **Sends** (**A–E** and **F–J**)
- **I/O**
- **Object** (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio with Dolby Atmos only)
- **Real-Time Properties**
- **Track Color**
- **Marker Controls**
- **Track Collaboration** (projects only)

See also "Views in the Mix and Edit Windows" on page 1459.

Comments View

Comments view lets you type and view comments for a specific track.

For more information on Comments view, see "Adding Comments to Tracks" on page 336.

Mic Preamps View

The Mic Preamps view shows controls for tracks with physical audio inputs routed through Avid | PRE or Pro Tools | Carbon.

For more information, see the PRE Guide or the Pro Tools | Carbon Guide.

Instruments View

Instruments view provides MIDI controls for Instrument tracks: MIDI Input selector, MIDI Output selector, MIDI Volume, MIDI Pan, and MIDI Mute.

For more information, see "Assigning MIDI Input and Output for Instrument Tracks" on page 368.

Inserts View (A–E and F–J)

Inserts view provides up to ten inserts (software plugins and hardware I/O inserts for generating and processing audio) on each audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, and Instrument track.

For more information on inserts, see "Plugin and Hardware Inserts" on page 1512.

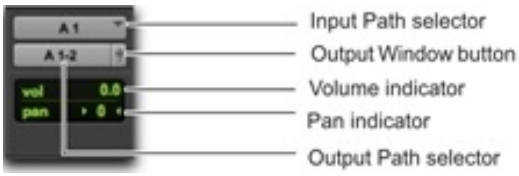
Sends View (A–E and F–J)

Sends view shows send assignments in each audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, and Instrument track.

For more information, see "Configuring Sends View in the Mix and Edit Windows" on page 1475.

I/O View

In the Edit window, I/O view provides Input and Output selectors on audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader (output only), MIDI, and Instrument tracks (corresponding to the controls of the same name in the Mix window).



Edit window I/O view (audio track)

To show the I/O View in the Edit window:

- Select **`View > Edit Window > I/O`**.

Channel strips in the Mix window always display Input and Output selectors as well as volume and pan values, so there is no I/O view display option for the Mix window.

For details on Input and Output selectors, see "Assigning Audio Inputs and Outputs to Tracks" on page 357.

Volume/Peak/Channel Delay Indicator

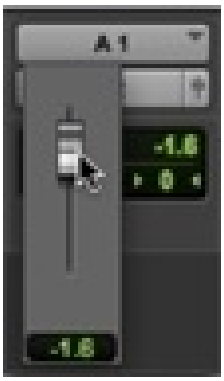
The Volume indicator on an audio track has three display modes: Volume, Peak, and Channel Delay.

To toggle the Volume indicator display:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the indicator to toggle it between the following modes:

Volume Indicator (and Pop-Up Fader)

Shows the current volume, or input level of a track as set by the track Volume fader. In I/O view (Edit window), click the Volume indicator to display the Volume pop-up fader, which can be used to adjust the volume.



Edit window I/O view, Volume pop-up fader (audio track)

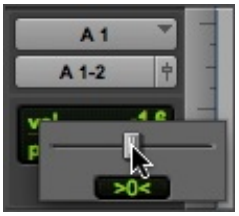
Peak Indicator

Functions as a headroom indicator based on the last peak playback level. To reset the peak counter, click anywhere in the meter. Values range from –∞ (no signal) to 0 dB.

Pan Indicator

The Pan indicator displays the current pan setting of a track. Pan values range from ‹*100* (full left) to *100*› (full right). Pan controls are only available for stereo tracks or for mono tracks routed to a stereo output.

In I/O view (Edit window), click the Pan indicator to display the Pan pop-up slider, which can be used to adjust panning.



Edit window I/O view, Pan pop-up slider (audio track)

Greater-than-stereo multichannel tracks do not provide a Pan indicator in I/O view. You can view and adjust multichannel panning in the track's Output window or in the Mix window.

Pan Slider

The Pan slider controls the balance of a track between the assigned output pair. It only appears if you are using stereo tracks or mono tracks routed to a stereo output.

The Pan slider on a MIDI track is effective only if you are controlling a sound module that supports MIDI panning.

Send Pan controls can be linked to the Main Pan controls of a track by enabling the Follow Main Pan button in Send window.

Volume Fader

The Volume fader controls the playback level of a track when it is playing back, and the monitor level of the track when it is recording. You can link the record and monitor levels by enabling the **`Link Record and Play Faders`** option in the Operation preferences.

The maximum fader gain for a volume fader is +12 dB.

MIDI Volume Fader

If your MIDI sound module supports volume, the volume fader on a MIDI or Instrument track can send a value of 0–127 to the MIDI volume controller.

Real-Time Properties

In the Edit window, Real-Time Properties view provides access to Real-Time Properties controls (such as Quantize or Transpose) on MIDI and Instrument tracks. For more information, see "MIDI Real-Time Properties" on page 1062.

Track Color

In the Edit window, Track Color view displays the Track Color strip at the left-most side of the Track controls.

Marker Controls

In the Edit window, Marker Controls view displays the controls for Track Markers. For more information, see "Marker Ruler and Track Marker Controls" on page 1196.

Track Collaboration

(Projects Only)

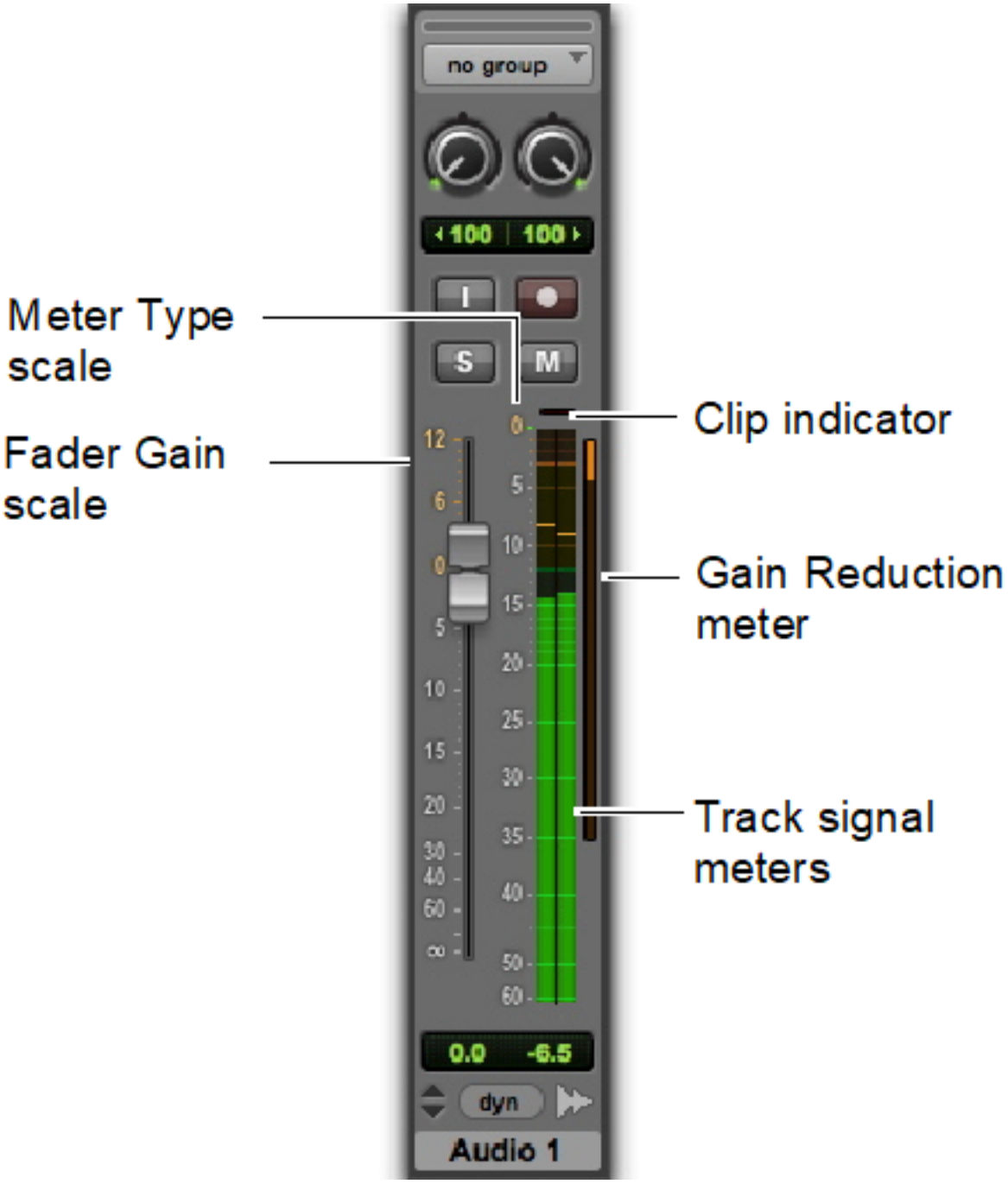
In the Edit window, Track Collaboration view provides access to the Track Collaboration controls for all track types except Basic Folder, VCA and Video tracks. Routing Folder tracks are converted to Auxiliary Input tracks when shared. Track Collaboration controls are only available in projects and never in sessions. For more information, see "Track Collaboration Track View in the Edit and Mix Windows" on page 572.

Track Level Meters

On audio tracks, level meters indicate the level of the signal being recorded or played back from the hard drive. When an audio track is record-enabled or input monitoring–enabled, these meters indicate record or input monitoring levels respectively.

On Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks, level meters indicate the level of the signal being played through the channel output.

On MIDI tracks, and in Instruments view for Instrument tracks, the meter shows the MIDI velocity of the most recent MIDI event.



Fader Gain Scale

The Fade Gain scale indicates the amount of gain boost or attenuation of the signal by the Fader control.

Meter Type Scale

Displays the meter scale for the selected Meter Type (see "Advanced Metering" on page 327).

Gain Reduction Meter

Pro Tools provides the option to display a Gain Reduction Meter just to the right of the track signal meters on audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, and Master Fader tracks with supported dynamics plugins (such as the Avid Pro Compressor or Pro Expander). For more information, see "Configuring Gain Reduction Meters" on page 330.

Track Signal Meter

For audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, VCA, and Master Fader tracks, meters show a green hash mark to indicate where digital 0 dB sits on the selected Meter scale. If digital 0 dB sits above the current Meter scale, the hash mark moves to the top of the Meter and is colored orange.

Clip Indicator

Displays Red when clipping at the audio interface input or output converters, or when clipping while writing to a 16- or 24-bit audio file. The clip indicator displays yellow when the audio signal exceeds 0 dBFS in the internal mixer. For more information, see "Clip Indication" below.

Pre- and Post-Fader Metering

You can globally set audio track level meters to indicate pre- or post-fader levels. When pre-fader metering is selected, the level meters show levels independent of fader position. With post-fader metering, the level meters respond to fader position.

To toggle track level metering between pre- fader and post-fader metering:

- Select **Options > Pre-Fader Metering**.

Peak Hold

Pro Tools meters provide a Peak Hold feature with three options: **3 Second**, **Infinite**, or **None**.

To choose a Peak Hold setting:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Metering** tab.
2. Select a **Peak Hold** option.
3. Click **OK**.

To clear a meter:

- Click anywhere on the meter.

To clear all meters, do one of the following:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any meter.
- Choose **Track > Clear All Clip Indicators**.
- Press Option+C (Mac) or Alt+C (Windows).

Clip Indication

Because Pro Tools uses 64-bit floating point calculations for the mixer, there will never be any internal clipping in the mixer. However, it is possible to clip at the converters on your audio interface. It is also possible to clip when writing audio to disk in fixed point audio files (16-bit or 24-bit files only, 32-bit floating point files will not clip).

Pro Tools meters provide Clip Indication with three options:**3 Second**, **Infinite**, or **None**. If clipping occurs, the topmost LED will stay lit.

Clip indicators appear in plugin, send, and track windows.

To choose a Clip Indication setting:

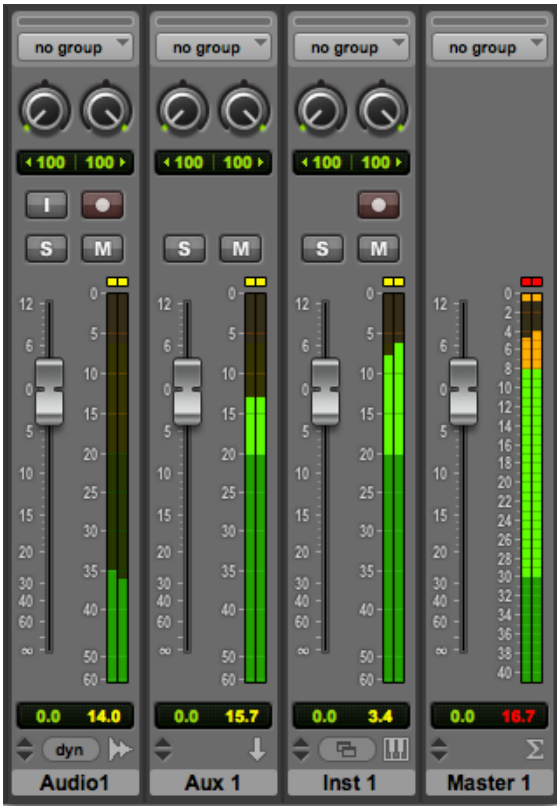
1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Metering** tab.
2. Select a **Clip Indication** option.
3. Click **OK**.

To clear a clip indicator:

- Click anywhere on the meter.

To clear all clip indicators, do one of the following:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any meter.
- Choose **`Track > Clear All Clip Indicators`**.
- Press Option+C (Mac) or Alt+C (Windows).



Audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, and Master Fader tracks showing clipping

Master Fader Track Clip Indicators

Master Fader track clip indicators display red when the audio signal exceeds 0 dBFS, causing clipping at the output converters on your audio interface. This behavior is mirrored in the Output Meters in the Transport.

Audio Track Clip Indicators

Audio track clip indicators display red under the following circumstances, otherwise they display yellow:

- When an audio track is record enabled or set to input monitoring and the input assignment is set to a physical input signal that exceeds 0 dBFS causing clipping at the converters.
- When an audio track is recording to a fixed-point bit depth (16- or 24-bit) and the audio written to disk exceeds 0 dBFS causing clipping in the file.

Auxiliary Input and Instrument Track, and Sends Clip Indicators

Auxiliary Input and Instrument tracks, as well as Sends clip indicators display yellow when the audio signal exceeds 0 dBFS (even though there is no internal clipping). This provides a warning that these audio streams can clip at the output converters or when writing fixed-point file formats to disk.

Wide Meters View

Wide Meters view expands the width of the level meters for tracks in both the Mix and Edit windows, to make the track level meters easier to read. Wide Meters view are also available Narrow Mix view.

To toggle Wide Meters View on or off:

- Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) any track level meter in the Mix or Edit window.



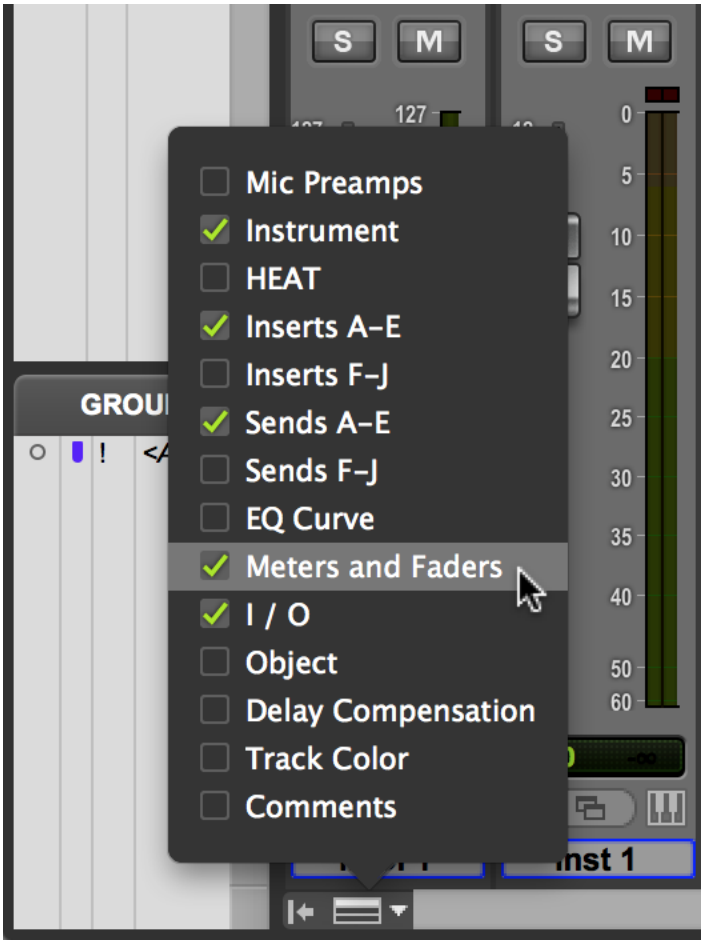
Wide Meters view, Mix and Edit windows

Showing or Hiding Meters and Faders

Pro Tools lets you show or hide Meters and Faders in the Mix window. This can be useful for conserving screen space, especially if you are working with a control surface.

To show (or hide) meters and faders in the Mix window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **`View > Mix Window Views > Meters and Faders`**.
- From the Mix Window View selector, select (or deselect) **`Meters and Faders`**.



Mix Window View selector

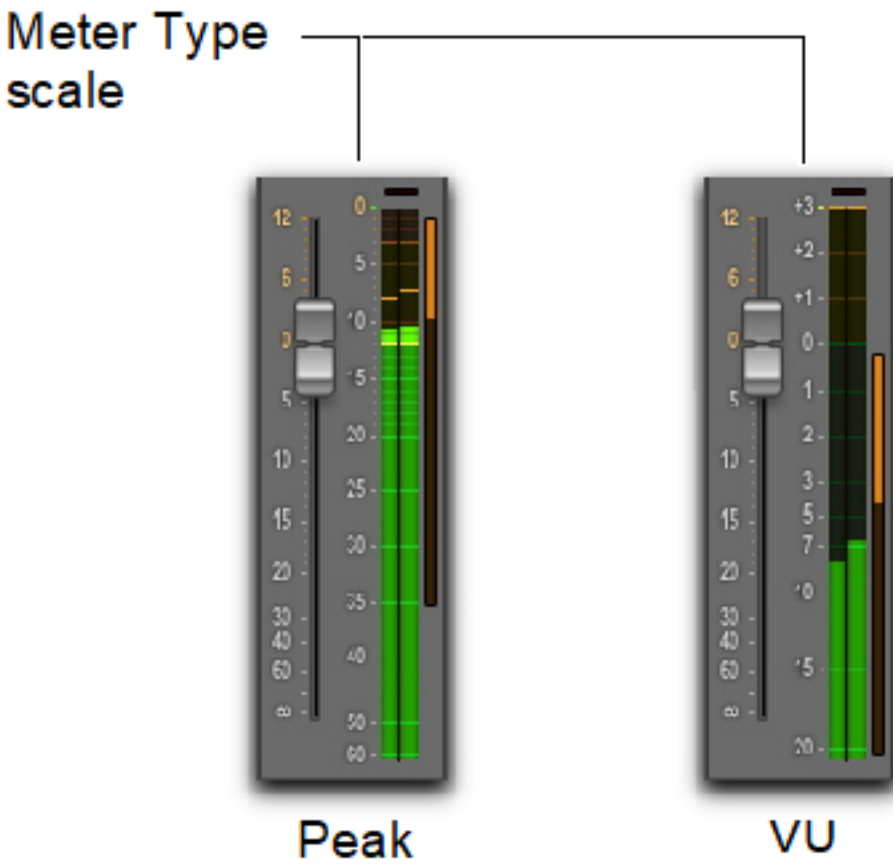
Advanced Metering

Pro Tools lets you change metering ballistics and scales to match your needs for visually monitoring audio levels. For most users, the default settings for each of the Meter Type settings work best. However, for some broadcasters, post production facilities, and mixing and mastering facilities, other metering options may be desired so that Pro Tools metering matches the metering on various external consoles or other devices.

Fader and Meter Scales

In the Mix window, Pro Tools shows a gain boost and attenuation scale, measured in dB, to the left of the track Volume fader from +12 dB down to –INF dB. This scale shows how much changes to the fader affect the audio level for the track. In some cases, such as with Wide Meters view or greater-than-stereo channel widths, the Fader scale may not be displayed.

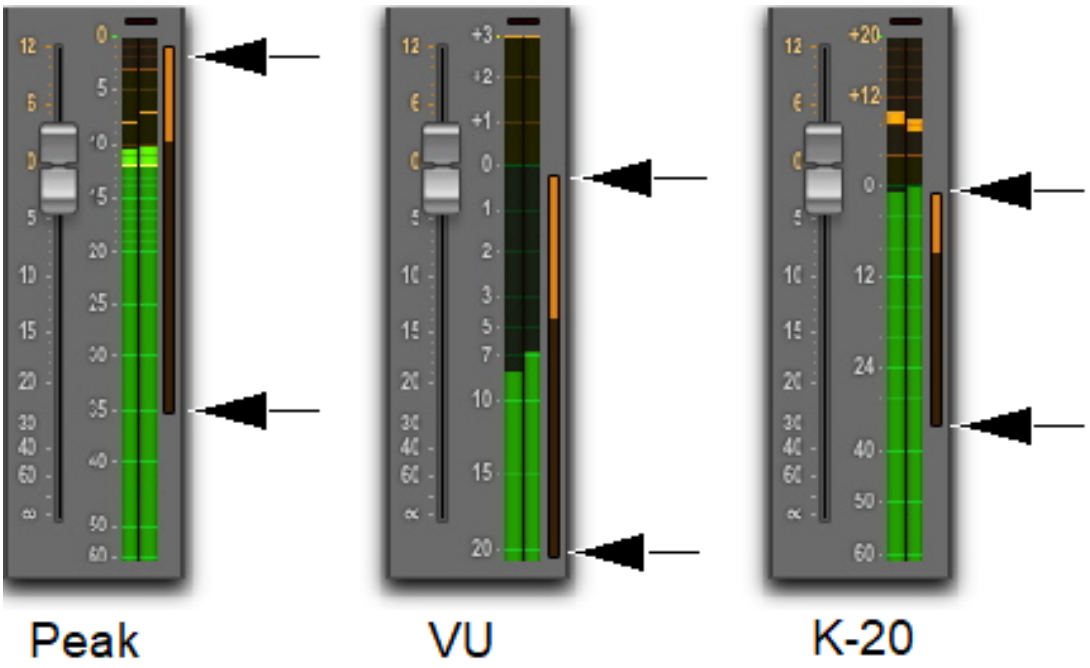
The values between the fader and the meters change depending on the selected **`Meter Type`**. For example, for the **`Peak Meter Type`**, the meter scale is from 0 dB down to –60 dB, while for the **`VU Meter Type`**, the meter scale is from +3 dB down to –20 dB.



Different Meter Type scales

Gain Reduction Meter Placement to Scale

The placement of the Gain Reduction meter (when shown) depends on the scale for the selected Meter Type. The top of the Gain Reduction meter will always match the reference level for the selected Meter Type. Likewise, the bottom the Gain Reduction meter scales to the range of the selected **`Meter Type`**.



Different Gain Meter locations to Meter Type scale

Setting the Meter Type

You can set the Meter Type either in the Pro Tools Metering preferences or using the Right-click Meter menu. Depending on the **Track and Master Meter Types Linked** setting, you can set the Track (audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks) or Master (Master Fader tracks) Meter Type settings independently.

For details on the available Meter Types, see "Track and Master Meter Types" on page 164.

To set the Meter Type for Track and Master meters in the Pro Tools Preferences:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Metering** tab.
3. Enable or disable the **Track and Master Meter Types Linked** setting as desired.
4. Do one of the following:
   - If the **Track and Master Meter Types Linked** setting is enabled, select the desired Meter Type from either the **Track Meters** or **Master Meters** pop-up menus.
   - If the **Track and Master Meter Types Linked** setting is disabled, select the desired Meter Type for Track meters from the **Track Meters** pop-up menu and select the desired Meter Type for Master meters from the **Master Meters** pop-up menu.

   Option-Right-click (Mac) or Alt-Right-Click (Windows) any track meter and select the desired Meter Type to set all track types to the same setting regardless of the Track and Master Meter Types Linked option is setting.
5. Click **OK**.

To set the Track Meter Type in the Mix or Edit windows:

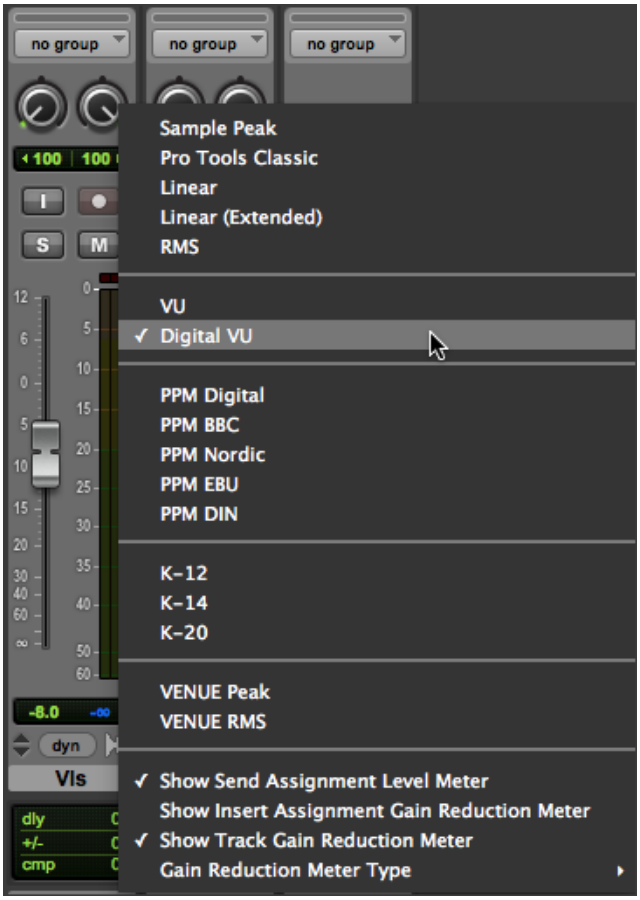
1. Right-click on any Track meter.
2. From the **Meter Type** menu, select the desired option.

If the Track and Master Meter Types Linked option is enabled in the Pro Tools Metering Preferences, Master meters are also set to the selected Meter Type

To set the Master Meter Type in the Mix or Edit windows:

1. Right-click on any Master meter.
2. From the **Meter Type** menu, select the desired option.

If the Track and Master Meter Types Linked option is enabled in the Pro Tools Metering Preferences, all Track meters are also set to the selected Meter Type



Selecting the Meter Type in the Mix window

Configuring Gain Reduction Meters

You can configure the Gain Reduction meters either in the Pro Tools Metering preferences or using the Right-click Meter menu. The Gain Reduction Meters setting applies equally to Track and Master meters regardless of the **Track and Master Meter Types Linked** setting.

To configure Gain Reduction Meter Type, do one of the following:

- Choose **Setup > Preference > Metering** and select the desired **Gain Reduction Meter Type** option.
- Right-click on any Track meter and select the desired option from the **Gain Reduction** submenu in

the **Gain Reduction Meter Type** menu.



Enabling Gain Reduction Meters in the Mix window

Adjusting Track Width

The **Narrow Mix** command lets you view all tracks/channels in the Mix window at a reduced width to conserve screen space in a large session. (See "Track Height" on page 348, to adjust track height in the Edit Window.)

To reduce the width of tracks in the Mix window:

- Select **View > Narrow Mix**.

To display tracks at normal width:

- Deselect **View > Narrow Mix**.

You can toggle track width by pressing Command+Option+M (Mac) or Control+Alt+M (Windows).

Creating Tracks

You can create mono and stereo tracks on all Pro Tools systems. With Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, you can also create multichannel tracks (from LCR to 7.1).

When new tracks are created, they are given a name that can be changed at any time.

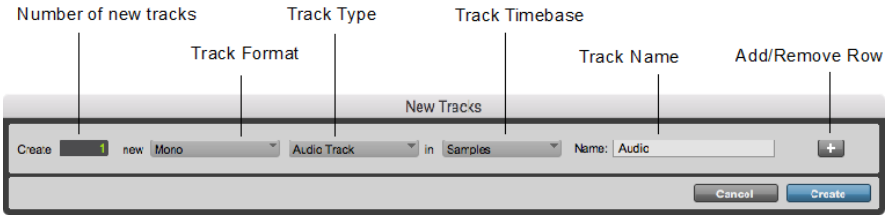
- To insert new tracks next to a specific track in a session, select that track by clicking the track's name in the Mix or Edit window before opening the New Tracks dialog. The new tracks are added immediately after the selected track.
- To insert new tracks after the last tracks in a session, make sure that no track names are selected on-screen before opening the New Tracks dialog.

You can also add tracks to your session by importing them from preexisting sessions. See "Importing Session Data" on page 670.

To create new tracks:

1. Do one of the following to open the New Tracks dialog:
   - Choose **Track > New**.
   - Right-click any Track Name in the Mix or Edit windows, or Track List, and choose **New**.
   - Press Command+Shift+N (Mac) or Control+Shift+N (Windows).
2. Configure the New Tracks dialog as desired (see "New Tracks Dialog" below).
3. Click **Create**.

New Tracks Dialog



Number of New Tracks

Enter the number of tracks of the specified type and format that you want to create.

In the New Tracks dialog, press the Tab key to move forward from the Number of tracks field to the Name field and down row by row. Press Shift+Tab to move backward from the Name field to the Number of tracks field and up row by row. If there are multiple rows for new tracks, press Option+Tab (Mac) or Control+Tab to move down the column for either the Number field or the Name field. Press Option+Shift+Tab (Mac) or Control+Shift+Tab (Windows) to move up the column.

Track Format

Select the track format (mono, stereo, or one of the multichannel surround formats) from the **Track Format** pop-up menu. Surround formats are only available with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio.

To auto-scroll the Track Format pop-up menu, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and use the Left/Right Arrow keys.

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio lets you filter which multichannel formats appear in the Track Format selector. For more information, see "Channel Width Filtering" on page 1670.

Track Type

Select the track type (Routing Folder, Basic Folder, Audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Input, MIDI, Instrument, Video, or Track Preset) from the **Track Type** pop-up menu.

To auto-scroll the Track Type pop-up menu in the New Tracks dialog, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and use the Up/Down Arrow keys.

Track Timebase

Select the timebase (samples or ticks) from the **Track Timebase** pop-up menu.

To auto-scroll the Track Timebase pop-up menu, press Command+Option (Mac) or Control+Alt (Windows) and use the Up/Down Arrow keys.

Track Name

If desired, name the track something other than the default name. If you are creating multiple tracks, each track name is appended with a number sequentially (for example, “name 1,” “name 2,” “name 3,” and so on).

If you clear the track name for any row, the new tracks are created and named with numbers sequentially. For example, if you create 5 new mono audio tracks and clear the name field, the resulting tracks are named 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 respectively.

Add Tracks

To add more tracks, click the Add Row button.

To add a new track, press Command+N (Mac) or Control+N (Windows), or press Command+Plus (+) (Mac) or Control+Plus (+) (Windows) on the numeric keypad.

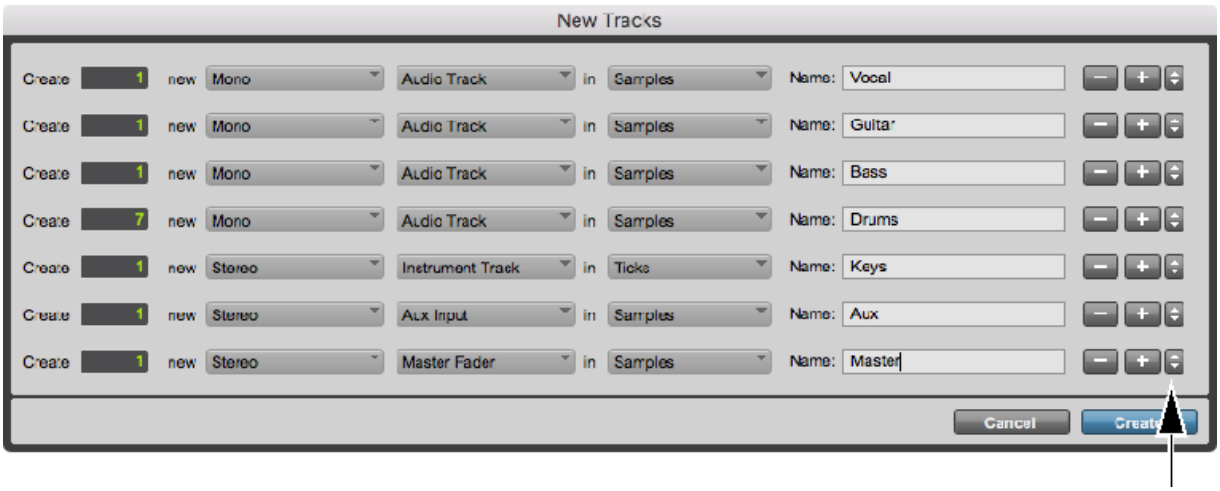
Remove Tracks

To remove track, click the Remove Row button.

To remove the last track from the New Tracks dialog, press Command+Minus (–) (Mac) or Control+Minus (–) (Windows).

Reordering Track Rows

To reorder tracks, drag a **Move Row** icon up or down.



Adding New Tracks by Double-Clicking in the Edit or Mix Windows

Pro Tools lets you add new tracks by double-clicking in blank space below tracks in the Edit window or below or to the right of tracks in the Mix window.

To add a new track of the same type and channel width as the last new track, do one of the following:

- Double-click in the empty area of the Mix window below or to the right of any current tracks.
- Double-click in the empty area of the Edit window below any current tracks.
- Double-click in the empty area below any current tracks in the Track List.

If no tracks exist in the session, a stereo audio track is created by default.

To add a new audio track of the same channel width as the last new track, do one of the following:

- Command-double-click (Mac) or Control-double-click (Windows) on the empty area of the Mix window below or to the right of any current tracks.
- Command-double-click (Mac) or Control-double-click (Windows) on the empty area of the Edit window below any current tracks.
- Command-double-click (Mac) or Control-double-click (Windows) in the empty area below any current tracks in the Track List.

If no tracks exist in the session, a stereo audio track is created by default.

To add a new Auxiliary Input track of the same channel width as the last new track, do one of the following:

- Control-double-click (Mac) or Start-double-click (Windows) on the empty area of the Mix window below or to the right of any current tracks.
- Control-double-click (Mac) or Start-double-click (Windows) on the empty area of the Edit window below any current tracks.
- Control-double-click (Mac) or Start-double-click (Windows) in the empty area below any current tracks in the Track List.

If no tracks exist in the session, a stereo Auxiliary Input track is created by default.

To add a new Master Fader track of the same channel width as the last new track, do one of the following:

- Shift-double-click on the empty area of the Mix window below or to the right of any current tracks.
- Shift-double-click on the empty area of the Edit window below any current tracks.
- Shift-double-click (Mac) in the empty area below any current tracks in the Track List.

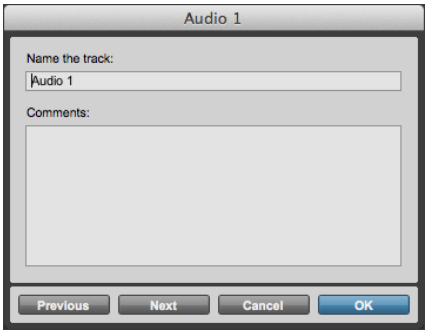
If no tracks exist in the session, a stereo Master Fader track is created by default.

Default Track Names

When creating new Folder, Audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, VCA Master, MIDI, and Instrument tracks, Pro Tools names them as “Folder,” “Audio,” “Aux,” “Master,” “VCA,” “MIDI, or “Inst” accordingly and numbers them consecutively. For example, when you create the first two audio tracks in a new session, their default names are “Audio 1” and “Audio 2.” You can change the default track name when you create the track (see "Creating Tracks" on page 331). You can also change track names anytime after (see "Renaming Tracks" below).

Renaming Tracks

Track names are used to auto-name recorded audio files and clips. You can rename tracks and also log comments for each track in the session.



Track Name/Comments dialog

To rename a track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the Mix or Edit window, double-click the Track Name button for the track you want to rename.
   - In the Track List, or Mix or Edit window, Right-click the track name for the track you want to rename.
2. In the Track Name/Comments dialog, type a new track name.
3. Click **Previous** or **Next** to rename other displayed tracks.

   To move to the previous or next track in the Track Name/Comments dialog, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and use the Up/Down or Left/Right Arrows.

4. Click **OK**.

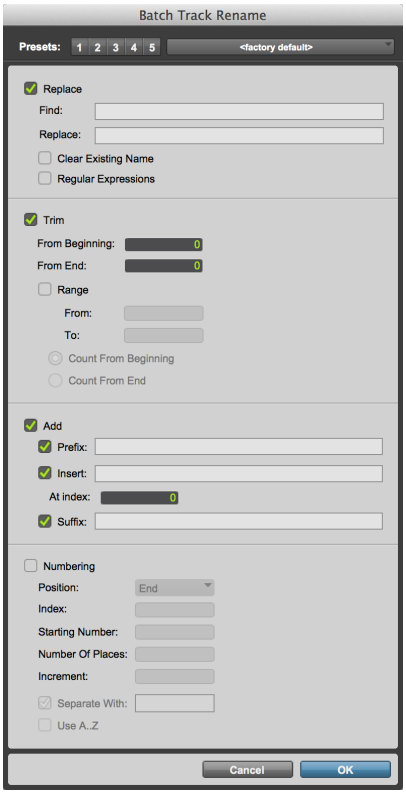
Batch Renaming Tracks

The **Batch Rename** command for tracks is only available in the Track Name Right-click menu.

To rename selected tracks in batches:

1. Select the tracks you want to rename.
2. Right-click any selected track name in the Track List, Edit window, Mix window, Score Editor window, or a MIDI Editor window.
3. Choose **Batch Rename**.

   Press Option+Shift+R (Mac) or Alt+Shift+R (Windows) to open the Batch Track Rename dialog.



Batch Track Rename dialog

4. Configure the Batch Track Rename dialog as desired.
5. Click **OK**.

   All selected tracks are renamed accordingly.

For details on batch renaming tracks or clips, see "Batch Renaming" on page 449.

Adding Comments to Tracks

To add comments to a track, do one of the following:

- From the track channel strip, click directly in the Comments area, type any comments for the track, and press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows).
- In the Edit or Mix window, double-click the **Track Name** button for a track. Then click directly in the Comments area, type any comments for the track, and press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows).

To enter a carriage return in the Comments area, press Shift+Return (Mac) or Shift+Enter (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.

Track Numbering

With Track Number view enabled, each track is assigned a number corresponding to its position in the Mix and Edit Windows. When tracks are reordered, they are renumbered to maintain positional sequence.

To enable (or disable) Track Number view:

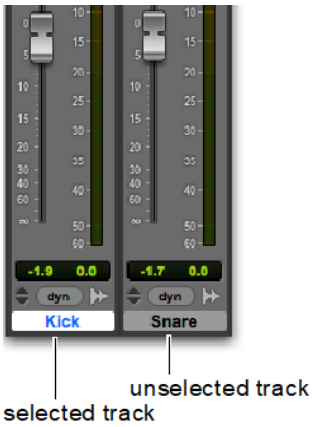
- Select (or deselect) **View > Track Number**.

Selecting Tracks

Tracks need to be selected for operations such as duplicating tracks or adding tracks to a group. One or more tracks can be selected at a time.

To select a track:

- Click the name of an unhighlighted track in its track channel strip.



Selected and unselected tracks

To select a range of tracks:

1. Click the name of an unhighlighted track in its track channel strip.
2. Shift-click an additional button.

   All tracks between the first track selected and the additional track are also selected.

To select or deselect noncontiguous tracks, do one of the following:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) **`Track Name`** buttons that are unhighlighted to select them.
- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) **`Track Name`** buttons that are highlighted to deselect them.

To select all tracks:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any **`Track Name`** button that is unhighlighted.

To deselect all tracks:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any **`Track Name`** button that is highlighted.

Selecting Tracks when Making Edit Selections

Pro Tools lets you link Track selection with Edit selections. When Track and Edit selections are linked, you can make a selection within a track or across multiple tracks for editing and each associated track is selected (track names automatically highlight).

To link Track and Edit selections:

- Select **`Options > Link Track and Edit Selection`**.

Press Shift+T to toggle Link Track and Edit Selection on and off.

Scrolling a Track into View

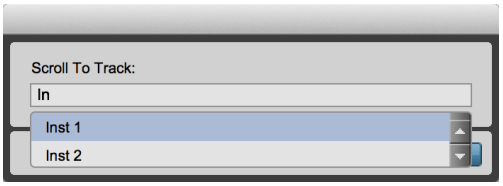
The Scroll To Track dialog lets you type the name of the track you want to scroll to. As you type a track name, only those tracks whose names begin with the letter you enter appear in the Scroll To Track list. You can also Right-click a track name in the Track List and choose **`Scroll Into View`**.

To scroll to a track by name in the Edit or Mix window:

1. Choose **Track > Scroll To Track**.

   Press Command+Option+F (Mac) or Control+Alt+F (windows) to open the Scroll to Track dialog.

2. In the Scroll To Track dialog, type the first few letters of the track name you want to scroll to.
3. From the Scroll To Track list, select the track name you want to scroll to using the Up and Down Arrow keys.



Scroll To Track dialog

4. Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows), or click **OK**.

   The specified track is selected and scrolled into view.

To scroll a track into view from the Track List Right-click menu:

- In the Track List, or Mix or Edit window, Right-click the track name and select **Scroll into View**.

Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Start-Shift-click (Windows) the track name in the Edit window, Mix window, or Track List.

Changing Track Channel Widths

You can change the channel width of any track to any other available channel width, while preserving plugins, sends, and routing. For example, you can convert a stereo Auxiliary Input into a 5.1 Auxiliary Input track, or convert a 5.1 audio track into a 7.1.2 audio track and maintain all plugins and signal routing (plugins must support the destination width). This can be especially useful for modifying and updating Track Presets and session templates.

To change the channel width of a track:

1. Be sure the track you want to change does not have any clips in the timeline.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select the track and choose **Track > Change Track Width**.
   - Right-click a Track Name and choose **Change Track Width**.
3. Select the desired new channel width from the sub-menu.

Pro Tools updates any plugins on the track(s) as long as the plugin supports the new channel width. If any multi-mono plugins on a stereo or larger track are un-linked, changing track width prompts you to relink the un-linked channels. Any automation not supported by the new channel width will be discarded, but you will be warned first.

Deleting Tracks

When you delete tracks, your audio or MIDI clip data remains in the Clip List, but your arrangement of the clips on the deleted track (the track's playlist) will be lost.

If the track contains playlists that are not assigned to any track, you are prompted to delete or retain them.

When deleting a Folder track, you are prompted to **Keep** or **Delete** its member tracks.

The Delete Track command cannot be undone.

To delete a track:

1. Click the name of the track in its track channel strip to select it.

   To select multiple tracks, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) additional Track Names. To select a range of tracks, Shift-click additional Track Names.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > Delete**.
   - In the Track List, or Mix or Edit window, Right-click the track name and select **Delete**.
3. Click **OK** to remove the selected tracks from the session.

Duplicating Tracks

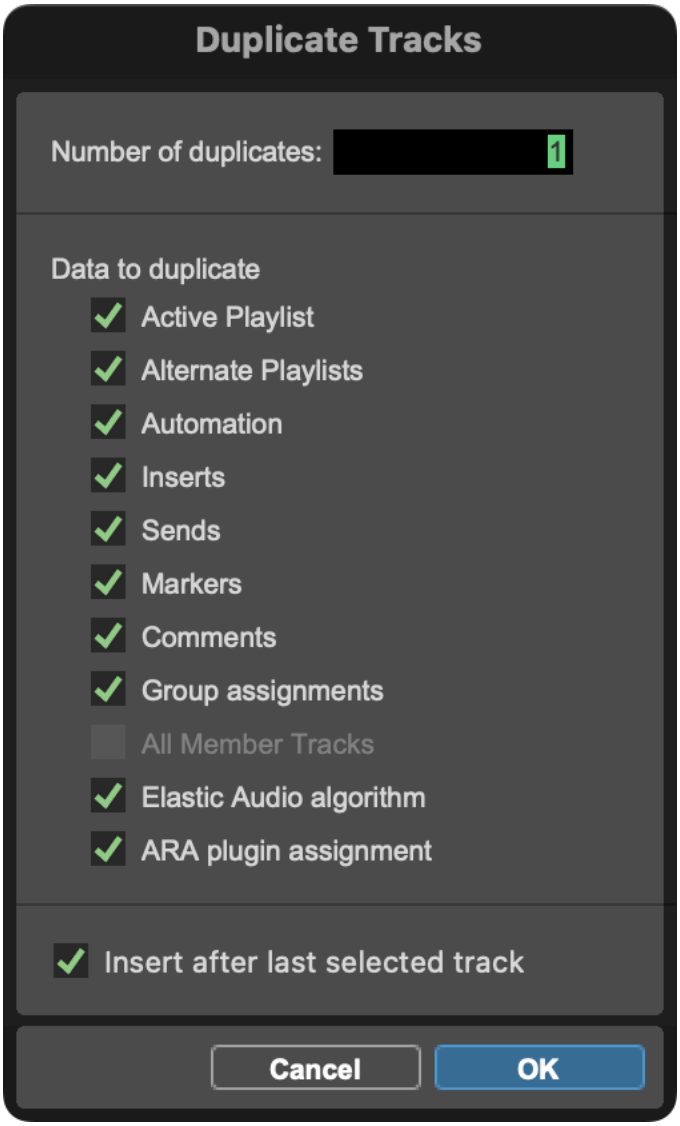
The Duplicate Track command lets you duplicate one or more tracks, including their audio or MIDI data, playlists, automation, and other attributes.

To duplicate one or more tracks:

1. Select the tracks you want to duplicate.

   For information, see "Selecting Tracks" on page 336.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > Duplicate**.
   - Press Option+Shift+D (Mac) or Alt+Shift+D (Windows).
   - Right-click the name of the track in the Track List, or Mix or Edit window, and select **Duplicate**.



Duplicate Tracks dialog

3. In the Duplicate Tracks dialog, configure the following options:
   - Enter how many copies you want to create in the **Number of Duplicates** filed.
   - To copy the currently active (visible) Edit playlist from the source track, select **Active Playlist**.
   - To copy all Edit playlists on the source track, select **Alternate Playlists**
   - To copy all automation from the source track, select **Automation**.
   - To copy all plugin and insert assignments, select **Inserts**.
   - To copy all sends and send assignments, select **Sends**.
   - To copy all Track Markers, select **Markers**.
   - To copy track Comments, select **Comments**.
   - To maintain all Mix and Edit Group assignments, select **Group Assignments**.
   - To duplicate all member tracks of a Folder track, select **All Member Tracks**.
   - To duplicate the Elastic Audio settings, select **Elastic Audio algorithm** (audio tracks

only).

- To duplicate the ARA plugin assignment, select **ARA plugin assignment** (audio tracks only).

4. If duplicating multiple tracks, do one of the following:
   - If you want all the newly created tracks to follow the last selected source track (to the far-right of the Mix window, and at the bottom of the Edit window), select the **Insert after Last Selected Track** option.
   - If you want each newly-created track to be inserted directly after its source track, deselect the **Insert after Last Selected Track** option.
5. Click **OK** to duplicate tracks according to the settings in the Duplicate Tracks dialog. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog and not create duplicate tracks.

Duplicating VCA Member Tracks

Duplicating a VCA member track without duplicating its group assignments will coalesce any automation on the duplicate track. The coalesced duplicate plays back exactly as if it were in the VCA group. For more information, see "VCA Master Tracks" on page 1454.

Track Views

The Track View determines which data is displayed and edited in the track's playlist area. Track View data can be set to Playlists, Blocks, Analysis, Warp, Waveform, Volume, Volume Trim, Mute, Pan, Send, or an automated control or continuous controller, based on the track type and your Pro Tools system.

Basic Folder Tracks

Provides only **Overview**.

Routing Folder Tracks

Can be set to **Overview**, **Volume**, **Volume Trim**, **Mute**, **Pan**, Send controls, or any plugin controls that are enabled for automation.

Audio Tracks

Can be set to **Blocks**, **Playlists**, **Analysis**, **Warp**, **Transcript**, **Waveform**, **Volume**, **Volume Trim**, **Mute**, **Pan**, Send controls, or any plugin controls that are enabled for automation. By default, audio tracks are set to Waveform view where track material is graphically drawn with amplitude waveforms (a time-domain representation of sound). This Track View provides the necessary detail for important clip edits.

Auxiliary Input Tracks

Can be set to **Volume**, **Volume Trim**, **Mute**, **Pan**, Send controls, or any plugin controls that are enabled for automation.

Master Fader Tracks

Can be set to **Volume**, **Volume Trim**, or any plugin controls that are enabled for automation.

VCA Master Tracks

Can be set to **Volume**, **Volume Trim**, or **Mute**.

MIDI Tracks

Can be set to **Blocks**, **Clips**, **Notes**, **Velocity**, **Volume**, **Mute**, **Pan**, **Pitch Bend**, **Mono After Touch**, **Program Change**, **Sysex**, and any continuous controller type. MIDI tracks are commonly set to **Notes** or **Clips**, each of which displays notes in a "piano roll" format. Use Clips view to edit and arrange

MIDI clips. Use Notes view for inserting and editing MIDI notes. Other MIDI track views are useful for editing velocity, controller data, program changes, and Sysex events.

Instrument Tracks

Can be set to **Blocks**, **Clips**, **Notes**, **Velocity**, **Volume**, **Mute**, **Pan**, **Pitch Bend**, **Mono After Touch**, **Program Change**, **Sysex**, and any continuous controller type for MIDI; as well as **Volume**, **Volume Trim**, **Mute**, **Pan**, Send controls, or any plugin controls that enabled for automation. Instrument tracks are commonly set to **Notes** or **Clips**, each of which displays notes in a "piano roll" format. Use Notes view for inserting, editing, and copying and pasting MIDI notes. Use Clip view to arrange, capture, or consolidate clips. Other Instrument track views are useful for editing automation, controller data, program changes, and Sysex events.

Video Tracks

For information on video track views, see "Video Track View" on page 1928.

Overview Track View

Folder tracks provide the unique Overview track view. Overview displays blocks representing clips on member tracks. You can edit track material on all member tracks in Overview.

Blocks Track View

With the Track View set to **Blocks**, audio and MIDI clips are displayed as empty blocks bearing the clip's name. This Track View is most useful once you have finished capturing and editing clips at the waveform or MIDI event level and are moving and rearranging them. Screen redraws are fastest with this format.

Playlists Track View

(Audio Tracks Only) With the Track View set to **Playlists**, alternate playlists for audio tracks are revealed in Playlist lanes under the Main Playlist on the track. This view is useful for track compositing, letting you select the best parts from a track's alternate playlists and copy them to the main playlist.

Analysis and Warp Track View

(Audio Tracks Only) With the Track View set to **Analysis** or **Warp**, you can edit Elastic Audio analysis and warp markers on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks.

Markers View

Pro Tools lets you add and edit markers on any targeted track, as well as on the Marker rulers.

For more information, see "Track Markers" on page 1213.

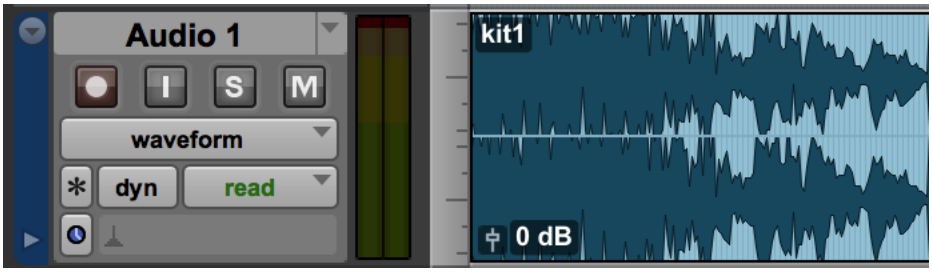
Transcript View (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

(Audio Tracks Only) With the Track View set to **Transcript**, audio clips of speech (like dialog) are transcribed and displayed in the audio clip.

For more information, see "Transcription" on page 1298.

Waveform View

(Audio Tracks Only) With the Track View set to **Waveform**, you can edit and arrange audio clips on audio tracks. Waveforms are time-domain representations of the audio data and can be shown as normal or rectified waveforms, and calculated using Peak or Power mode.



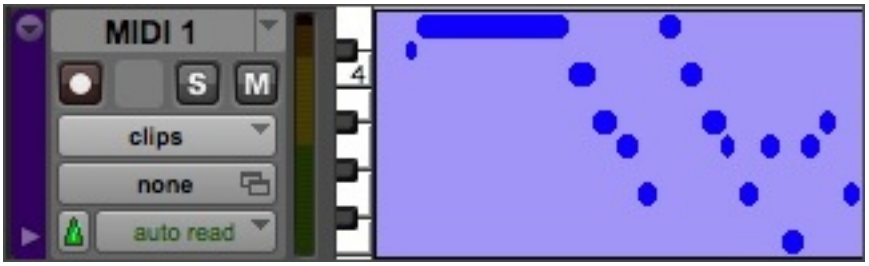
Track View set to Waveform for audio track

On audio tracks, the Waveform is also visible in Playlists, Analysis, Warp, and Automation views.

Clips View

(MIDI Only)

With the Track View set to **Clips**, you can edit and arrange MIDI clips on MIDI and Instrument tracks.



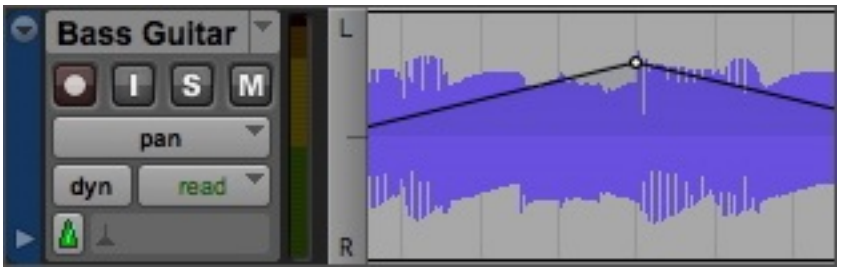
Track View set to Clips for MIDI track

Notes View

(MIDI Only) With the Track View set to **Notes**, you can insert and edit MIDI notes on MIDI and Instrument tracks.

Automation and Controller Views

When an audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, or Instrument track is displayed as **Volume**, **Pan**, or another automated control, or when a MIDI or Instrument track is set to one of the continuous controller types (such as **Volume** or **Pitch Bend**), the data for that track appears in the form of a line graph with a series of editable breakpoints. The breakpoints can be dragged to modify the automation data, and new breakpoints can be inserted with the Pencil tool or a Grabber tool. MIDI and Instrument tracks also provide Velocity view for editing MIDI velocities.



Track View set to Pan for audio track

For details on inserting and editing controller data for MIDI tracks, see "Continuous Controller Events" on page 1042.

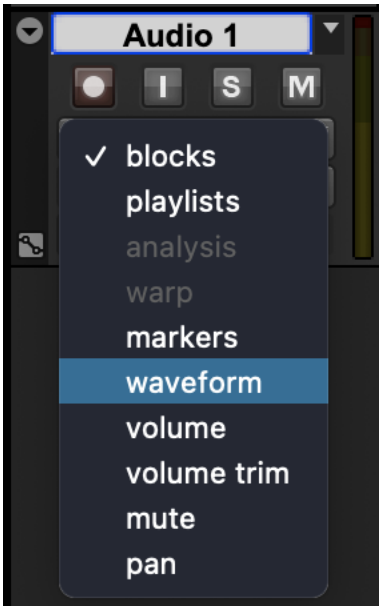
You can also edit automation and controller data in lanes below the track's main playlist view. For details on editing automation data for audio tracks, see "Automation" on page 158.

Setting Track Views in the Edit Window

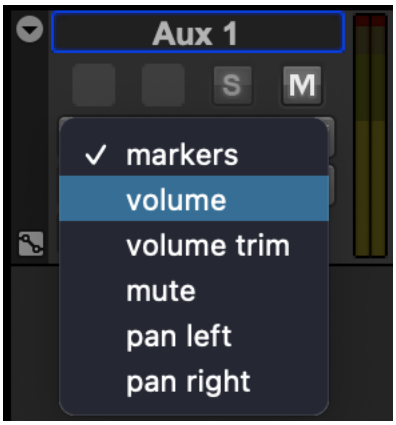
To set the Track View:

- Click the Track View selector for the track and select the view from the pop-up menu.

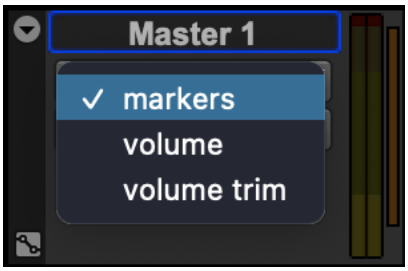
  The track displays the new view. If the track is part of an active Edit Group, all tracks in the group are set to the new view.



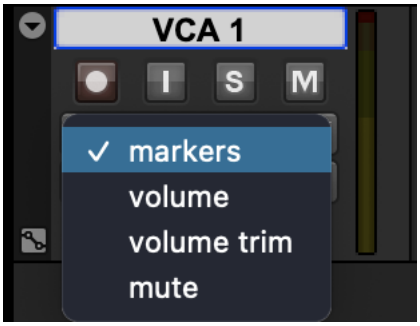
Audio Track View selector



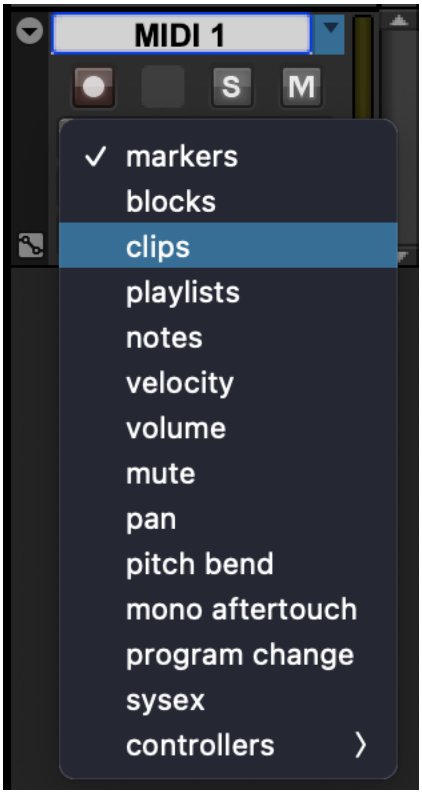
Auxiliary Track View selector



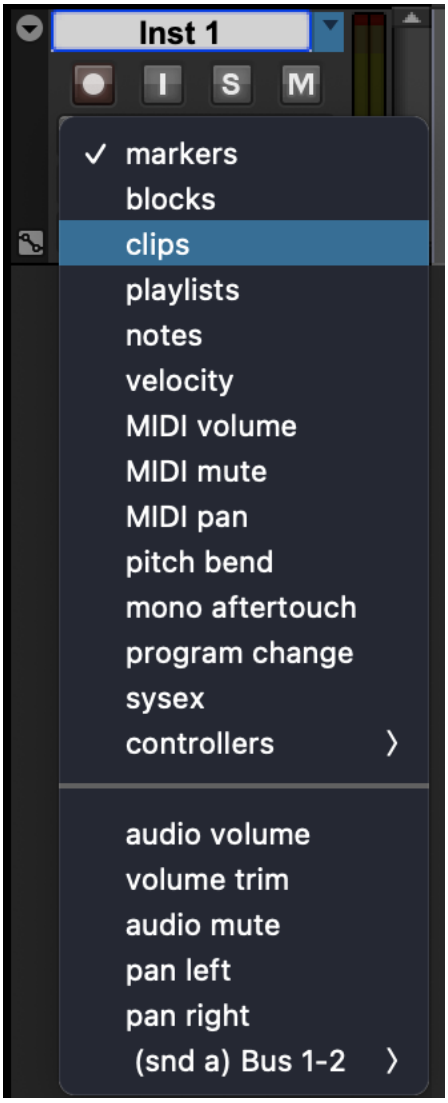
Master Fader Track View selector



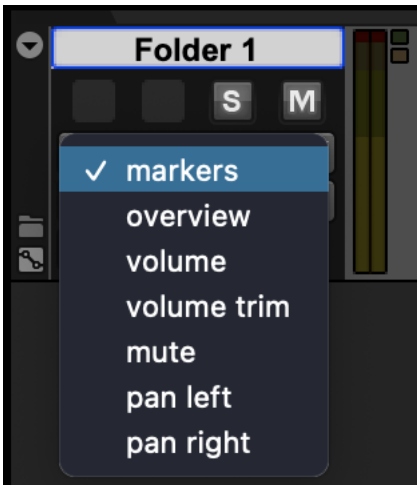
VCA Master Track View selector



MIDI Track View selector



Instrument Track View selector



Routing Folder Track View selector

Changing Track Views

For audio, Auxiliary Input, MIDI, and Instrument tracks, you can change to the next or previous Track View, or toggle between pre-defined common views.

Changing to Previous or Next Track View

When changing to the next or previous Track View, Track View list ordering is maintained as shown in the Track View selector.

Track Views at the beginning of the list (such as Blocks for audio or MIDI tracks) cannot be changed to the previous Track View. Tracks Views at the end of the list (such as a MIDI controllers option) cannot be changed to the next Track View.

To change to the previous or next Track View:

1. Click in the track you want to change. To change views on multiple tracks, Shift-click or drag the Selector tool to select additional tracks, or select a group.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To change to the previous or next Track View on all selected tracks, press Control+Command (Mac) or Control+Start (Windows) and the Left or Right Arrow key.
   - To change to the previous or next Track View on all tracks, press Command+Option+Control (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start (Windows) and the Left or Right Arrow key.

Toggling Common Track Views

The most common editing view for audio tracks are Waveform and Volume view. The most common editing views for MIDI and Instrument tracks are Notes and Clips view. Pro Tools provides an easy way to toggle these views.

To toggle Track Views on tracks containing the edit cursor (or an Edit selection):

1. Click in the track you want to toggle. To toggle multiple tracks, Shift-click or drag with the Selector tool to select additional tracks.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Press Control+Minus (Mac) or Start+Minus (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.
   - With Commands Keyboard Focus enabled (see "Keyboard Focus" on page 26), press Minus on the alphanumeric keyboard.

   To toggle Track Views for all tracks, press Option+Control+Minus (Mac) or Alt+Start+Minus (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.

   To toggle Track Views for all tracks with Commands Keyboard Focus enabled, press Option+Minus (Mac) or Alt+Minus (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.

   Audio tracks are toggled between Waveform and Volume view. MIDI and Instrument tracks are toggled between Notes and Clips view.

Master Views for Tracks

Audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks have Track Views that act as “master.” When a track is displayed in its Master view, any edits performed apply to all data in the track. For instance, when an audio track is set to Waveform, copying and pasting affects not just the waveform information, but all of the automation data as well.

The Master view is based on the type of track, as follows:

- Audio tracks: Waveform and Blocks
- MIDI and Instrument tracks: Clips, Blocks, and Notes (when using the Selector tool)

Track Height

Tracks can be viewed in the Edit window at any of eight heights: **Micro**, **Mini**, **Small**, **Medium**, **Large**, **Jumbo**, **Extreme** and **Fit To Window**. Larger track heights are particularly useful for precise editing, especially for MIDI. Smaller track heights are useful for conserving screen space in a large session.

You can adjust track heights on an individual track basis or set all tracks to the same height. Track heights can be changed during playback.

To set the Track Height, do one of the following:

- Click the small arrow to the left of the Track name to get the **Track Height** pop-up menu.



Track Height pop-up menu

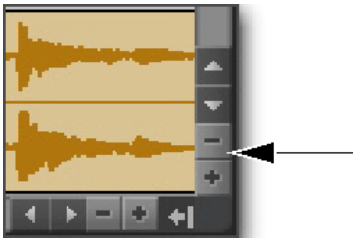
- Right-click on the vertical zoom scale just to the right of the track controls and choose the height from the pop-up menu.

The track is resized to the new height. If the track is part of an Edit Group, all tracks in the group are set to the new height.

Press Control+Up/Down Arrow key (Mac) or Start+Up/Down Arrow key (Windows) to increase/decrease track height of any track that contains a selection or in which the edit cursor is currently placed.

To resize all tracks proportionally:

- Click Edit window Vertical Zoom In or Out button.



Vertical Zoom In and Out buttons, Edit window

Continuously Variable Track Height

In the Edit window, you can continuously resize the Track Height of any given track by dragging the lower boundary of the Track Controls column.

To resize the Track Height of any track in the Edit window:

- Drag the bottom line of any given track's Track Controls column up or down. The cursor changes to indicate that you can resize the track.

  The track's Track Height changes incrementally.



Adjusting the Track Height of an audio track

- *Hold Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while adjusting track height for continuous, non-incremental adjustments.*
- *To continuously resize all tracks, Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows).*
- *To continuously resize all selected tracks, Option-Shift-drag (Mac) or Alt-Shift-drag (Windows).*

Track Controls and Track Height

The Track Height affects how the various track controls appear in the Edit window. For instance, when a track's height is set to Small, most of the buttons are reduced in size.



Track Height set to Small

When the Track Height is set to **`Mini`** or **`Micro`**, only controls for Record, Solo, and Mute appear, and the menus for **`Playlist`**, **`Track Timebase`**, **`Track Height`**, and **`Track View`** are accessed from the same selector.



Track Height set to Mini

When the Track Height is set to **`Medium`**, **`Large`**, **`Jumbo`**, or **`Extreme`**, all track controls are displayed at their full size.

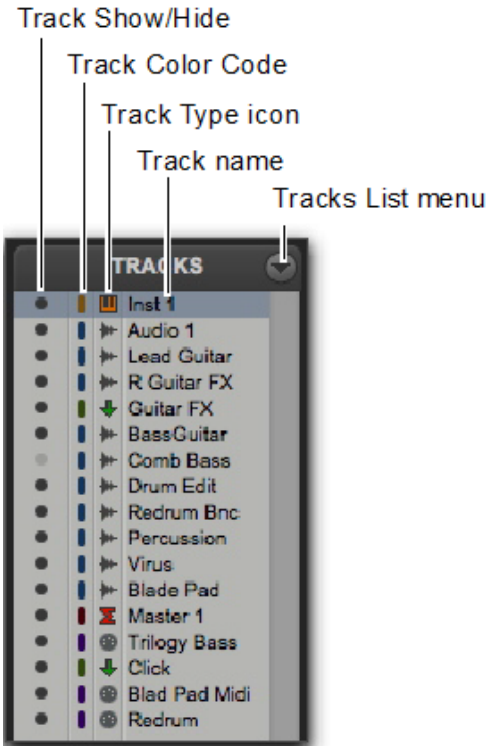


Track Height set to Large

Track List

The Track List (at the left of both the Mix and Edit windows) shows all tracks in the session. It allows you to show or hide a track in the Mix, Edit, MIDI Editor, and Score Editor windows. Even though a track is hidden, the material on the track will still play as part of the session. Inactive tracks appear in italics in the Track List.

The Track List can also be used to create new tracks when importing media by drag and drop from a Workspace browser. See "Importing Files with Drag and Drop" on page 653.

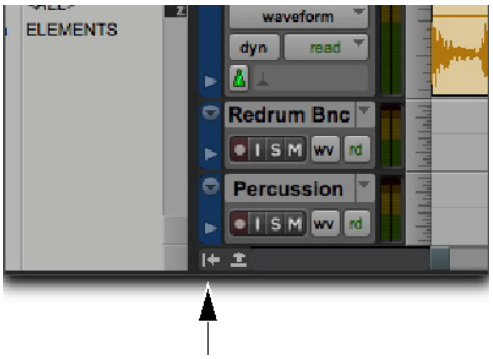


Track List

Show/Hide Track List and Groups List

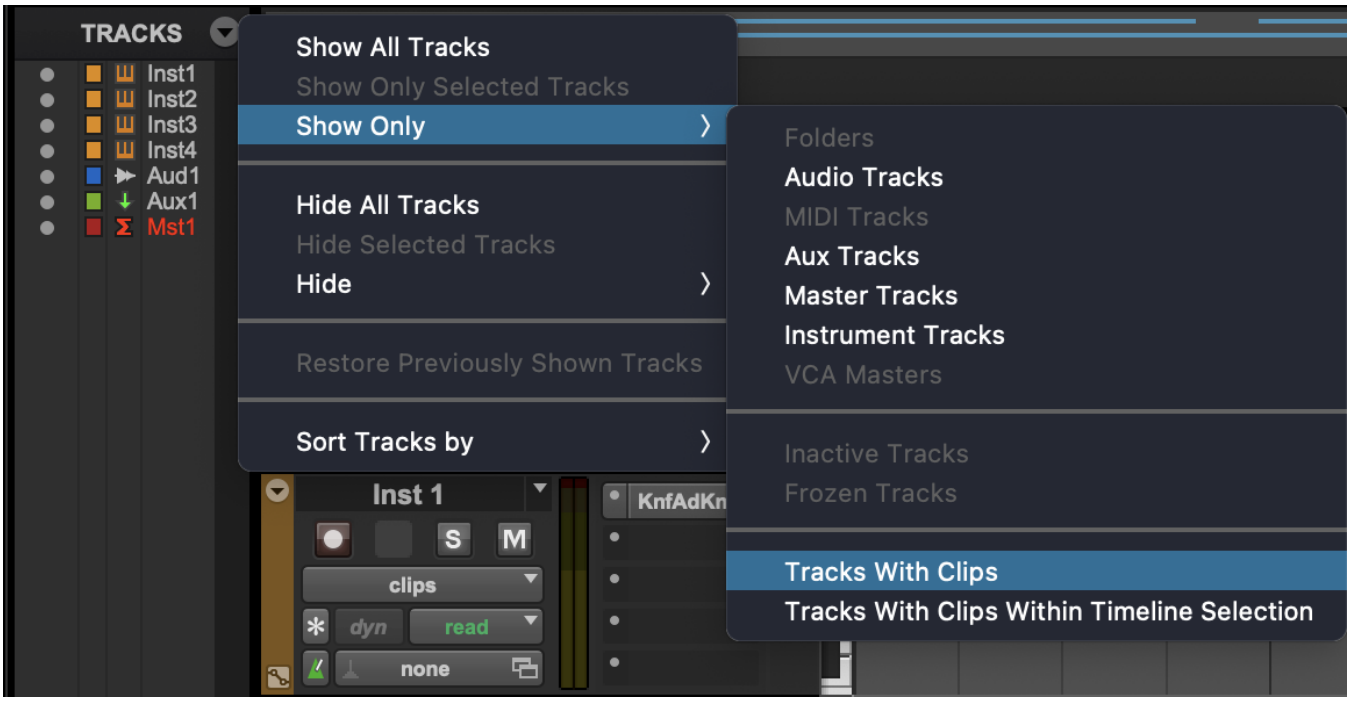
To show (or hide) the Track List (and Groups List), do one of the following:

- From the Edit window menu, select (or deselect) **`Track List`**.
- Click the **`Show/Hide Track List/Groups List View`** button in the Mix or Edit window.



Track List Menu

The Track List menu (at the top right of the Track List) provides commands that let you show or hide all tracks, tracks currently selected on-screen, specific types of tracks (Folders, audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, MIDI, Instrument, VCA Master, or Inactive or Frozen tracks), or only Tracks with Clips or Tracks with Clips within the Timeline Selection.



The **`Sort Tracks By`** command lets you set the track order according to **`Name`**, **`Type`**, **`Edit Group`**, **`Mix Group`**, or **`Voice`**. The sort order will be reflected in the Track List in the Mix, Edit, MIDI Editor, and Score Editor windows.



When a track that is a member of an active group is hidden from view, editing operations performed on other members of the group in the Edit window will not affect the hidden track. In the Mix window, however, all operations other than record-enable will affect a hidden track that is a member of an active group.

The options in the Track List menu in the Score Editor window are different from the Mix, Edit, and MIDI Editor windows. For more information, see "Track List" on page 1105.

Showing and Hiding Tracks

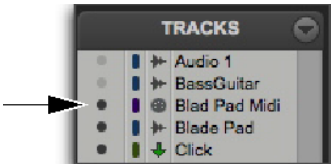
The Mix and Edit windows are linked in terms of which tracks are shown or hidden. However, the Score Editor window and MIDI Editor windows are all unique in terms of which tracks are shown or hidden. For example, hiding a specific track in the Edit window also hides it in the Mix window, but not in the Score Editor or MIDI Editor windows. Also, hiding a specific track in a MIDI Editor window hides it only in that MIDI Editor window.

Note that hiding a Folder track also hides all of its member tracks. Likewise, showing a Folder track also shows all of its member tracks (except for any that were explicitly hidden separately).

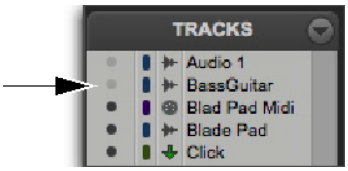
Show and Hide Tracks commands can be assigned custom Keyboard Shortcuts. For more information, see the Pro Tools Shortcuts Guide (Help › Pro Tools Shortcuts).

To hide a track, do one of the following:

- Click the Track Show/Hide icon in the Track List.
- In the Track List (or on the track channel strip), Right-click the track name and select **Hide** (or **Hide and Make Inactive** if the track is active and you also want to make it inactive).



Shown track icon in the Track List



Hidden track icon in the Track List

To show a track that is currently hidden, do one of the following:

- Click the Track Show/Hide icon in the Track List.
- In the Track List (or on the track channel strip), Right-click the track name and select **Show** (or **Show and Make Active** if the track is inactive and you also want to make it active).

To show all tracks:

- Click the Track List menu and choose **Show All Tracks**.

You can also show all tracks by Option-clicking (Mac) or Alt-clicking (Windows) the Show/Hide icon of any track that is hidden.

To hide all tracks:

- Click the Track List menu and choose **Hide All Tracks**.

You can also hide all tracks by Option-clicking (Mac) or Alt-clicking (Windows) the Show/Hide icon of any track that is shown.

To reorder tracks on-screen, drag the track names to new positions within the Track List or in the Mix or Edit window.

To hide selected tracks:

1. Select the tracks you want to hide.
2. Click the Track List menu and choose **Hide Selected Tracks**.

To hide all tracks of a given type:

- Click the Track List menu and choose the type of tracks you want to hide from the Hide submenu.

To show a range of tracks:

1. Select a range of hidden tracks in the Track List.
2. Click the Show/Hide icon of hidden track at the top of the Track List.
3. Shift-click the Show/Hide icon of hidden track at the bottom of the selection.

All tracks that occur between the first track selected and the last track will also be selected.

To show or hide a range of tracks in the Track List with the Marquee:

1. Move the cursor to the left of a track name until the Marquee with a small "+" symbol appears.
2. Click on the track in the list and drag up or down over the Show/Hide icons (to show or hide the track and the tracks immediately above or below it).

To show or hide non-contiguous tracks:

- Click the Show/Hide icon for the tracks you want to show or hide.

To restore previously shown tracks after using the Show All Tracks, Show Only Selected Tracks, or Show Only Tracks by ‹Track Type› commands:

- From the Track List menu, choose the **Restore Previously Shown Tracks** option.

To show selected hidden tracks and hide all shown tracks:

1. In the Track List, select the hidden tracks you want to show.
2. Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the Show/Hide icon for one of the selected hidden tracks.

Mix/Edit Groups and Hidden Tracks

In the Mix window, if a hidden track is part of an enabled group, all Mix window operations performed on other members of the group *also affect the hidden track*—with the exception of audio or MIDI record-enabling. If you solo, mute, or automation write-enable a grouped track, any group members that are hidden are soloed, muted, or automation write-enabled as well.

In the Edit window, however, editing operations performed on members of an enabled group do *not* affect hidden tracks that are also members of the enabled group.

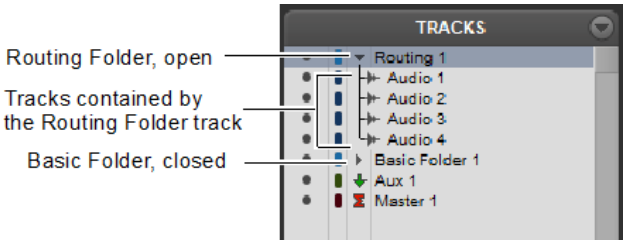
Track Numbering and Hidden Tracks

In the Mix and Edit windows, Track Position Numbers can either include hidden tracks in their numbering sequence, or ignore them:

- When **`Track Position Numbers Stay with Hidden Tracks`** is not selected in the Display Preferences page, numbers are only assigned to tracks that are shown. In this case, active tracks are then numbered sequentially. Hidden tracks are un-numbered.
- When **`Track Position Numbers Stay With Hidden Tracks`** is selected in the Display Preferences page, tracks keep their Track Position Numbers even when hidden.

Folder Tracks in the Track List

Folder Tracks appear in the Track List just like any other track type, but any tracks contained by them are indented to indicate the folder hierarchy. Folder tracks also have a reveal triangle to the left of their name in the Track List that lets you open or close the list of track names contained in any given Folder track.



Folder tracks in the Track List

Track Name Right-Click Menu

When you Right-click a track name in the Mix window, Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, or the Track List, a pop-up menu provides access to the following commands:

Download (Track List, Remote Shared Tracks Only)

Downloads the track data without importing. Track data can be imported at a later time.

Ignore for Future Download (Track List, Remote Shared Tracks Only)

Does not download or import the track data.

Import (Track List, Remote Shared Tracks Only)

Downloads and imports the track data immediately.

For more information about downloading remote shared tracks, see "Track Cloud Synchronization Indicator in the Track List" on page 581.

Hide/Show

Hides (or shows) the track (or selected tracks if any).

Hide and Make Inactive

Hides the track and makes it inactive (or selected tracks if any).

Make Active/Inactive

Toggles the active status of the track (or all selected tracks in the Mix or Edit window only).

Scroll Into View

Scrolls the track to the top of the Edit window or to the left of the Mix window.

Move To

Lets you move the selected track to a **New Folder** (the Move To New Folder dialog opens), to an existing folder (choose the folder name), or, if the track is already in a folder, you can move it out of that folder to the top level (**Top Level**).



For more information about moving tracks in and out of Folder tracks, see "Folder Tracks" on page 389.

Export MIDI (MIDI and Instrument Tracks Only)

Exports the MIDI data from one or more MIDI or Instrument tracks to a standard MIDI file. For more information, see "Exporting MIDI Files" on page 668.

Freeze (Audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument Tracks Only)

Freezes the track.

Commit

Commits the track.

Bounce

Opens the Track Bounce dialog.

Extract MIDI to New Track (Audio Tracks Only)

Opens the Audio to MIDI Properties dialog.

Coalesce VCA Master Automation (VCA Master Tracks Only)

Coalesces the VCA automation to the member tracks of the VCA.

Coalesce Trim Automation (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

Coalesces Trim automation on the track (or selected tracks if any).

Clear Trim Automation (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

Clears Trim automation on the track (or selected tracks if any).

Locked (Video Track Only)

Toggles the locked/unlocked status of the video track (or selected video tracks if any).

Save Track Preset

Opens the Save Track Preset dialog.

Recall Track Preset

Lets you recall a track preset.

New

Opens the New Track dialog.

Rename

Opens the Track Name dialog.

Batch Rename

Opens the Batch Track Rename dialog.

Duplicate

Duplicates the track (or selected tracks if any).

Split Into Mono (Multichannel Tracks Only)

Splits a multichannel track (or selected multichannel tracks if any) into their mono component tracks.

Convert Aux To Routing Folder (Auxiliary Input Tracks Only)

Converts the selected Auxiliary Input track to a Routing Folder track.

Change Track Width

Lets you change the channel width of any track to any other available channel width while preserving plugins (plugins must support the destination width), sends, and routing.

Delete

Deletes the track (or selected tracks if any).

Field Recorder Guide Track (Audio Tracks with Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

Sets the selected track to be the guide track for field recorder workflows.

Keep Track Transcribed (Audio Tracks with Pro Tools Studio and Ultimate Only)

Keeps the track transcribed regardless.

Transcribe (Audio Tracks with Pro Tools Studio and Ultimate Only)

Transcribes speech from audio to text.

MIDI Delay Compensation (Instrument Tracks Only)

Enables (or disables) MIDI Delay Compensation for the track. Enable this option for tracks that require MIDI tempo sync (either because they use a plugin with an internal sequencer loaded or because they are taking input from external MIDI hardware).

MIDI Real-Time Properties (MIDI and Instrument Tracks Only)

Opens the Real-Time Properties window for the track.

Open in New MIDI Editor (MIDI and Instrument Tracks Only)

Opens the track in a new MIDI Editor window.

Open in Score Editor (MIDI and Instrument Tracks Only)

Opens the track in the Score Editor window.

Open in MIDI Event List (MIDI and Instrument Tracks Only)

Opens the track in the MIDI Event List.

Notation Display Track Settings (MIDI and Instrument Tracks Only)

Opens the Notation Display Track Settings window for the track. Music notation can only be viewed in the Score Editor or in MIDI Editor windows set to Notation view.

Expand Channels to New Tracks

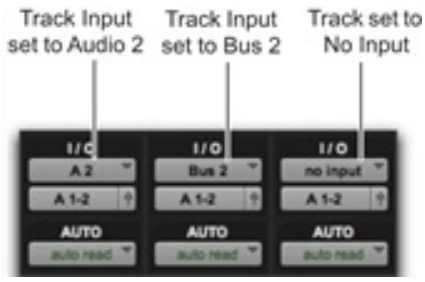
Expands multichannel audio files imported from a field recorder to new tracks, such that every channel resides on its own mono audio track. Pro Tools also automatically conforms all expanded tracks to the edits in the guide (expanded) track. You can expand multichannel files to new tracks ordered by channel name, by channel number, by channel name and number, or by Timecode only.

EUCON Control (Master Fader Tracks Only)

On systems configured for use with EUCON, Pro Tools lets you use a single Master Fader to act as a Monitor Path control for EUCON control surfaces.

Assigning Audio Inputs and Outputs to Tracks

Inputs for Routing Folder, audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks can be assigned to audio interface channels, buses, or plugin output buses (such as with some Virtual Instrument or multi-band processing plugins). Outputs for Routing Folder, audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks can also be assigned to audio interface channels or buses.



Input/output assignments for three mono audio tracks

For stereo and multichannel surround tracks, inputs and outputs appear as stereo pairs and multichannel groups. The available inputs, outputs, and buses are defined as *paths* in the I/O Setup dialog (see "I/O Setup" on page 55).

Automatic Input and Output Assignments

When adding tracks to a new session, inputs are automatically assigned in ascending order. For example, if you have an audio interface with eight inputs, creating four new mono audio tracks will automatically add four audio tracks with inputs assigned to the first four paths defined in the I/O Setup dialog. When creating stereo tracks, inputs are automatically assigned to subsequent input pairs.

The outputs automatically assigned to new tracks are determined by the **`New Track Default Output Bus`** specified in the I/O Setup dialog.

Assigning Audio Inputs

To assign an audio input of a Routing Folder, audio, Auxiliary Input, or Instrument track:

1. In order to assign audio track inputs in the Edit window, select **`View > Edit Window > I/O`**.
2. In the Mix or Edit window, click the track's Input Path selector and choose from the available audio interface channels and buses. Stereo and multichannel surround tracks have inputs available as pairs and multichannel groups.

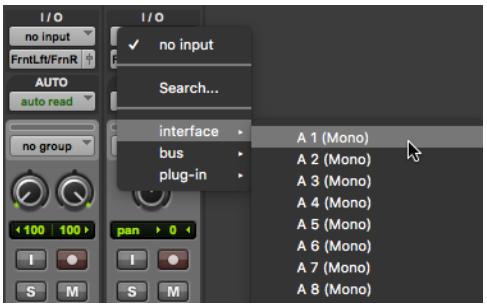
The Input Path selector lets you route any audio input or any of the Pro Tools internal buses to a Routing Folder, audio, Auxiliary Input, or Instrument track. The choices available in this pop-up menu are determined by the Input Path configuration in the I/O Setup. Inputs in use by another track appear bold in the Input Path selector pop-up menu.

Instrument tracks automatically assign the audio output from the instrument plugin inserted on the track to the track audio Input.

To automatically assign all track inputs (of the same type and channel width) to unique ascending Input paths (cascading):

- Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) the Input Path selector of the left-most Input Path selector and select the first Input Path (mono or stereo, depending on whether your tracks are mono or stereo).

All visible tracks of the same channel width (mono or stereo) are auto-assigned to unique Input Path assignments in ascending order. For example, Track 1 to A1, Track 2 to A2, Track 3 to A3, and so on.



Input Path selector

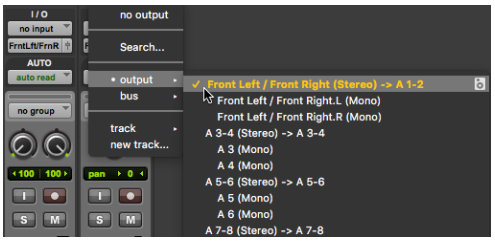
To remove an input assignment:

- Select **`No Input`** from the Input Path selector.

Assigning Audio Outputs

To assign an audio output of a Routing Folder, audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, or Instrument track:

1. In order to assign audio track outputs in the Edit window, select **`View > Edit Window > I/O`**.
2. In the Mix or Edit window, click the track's Output Path selector and choose from the available audio interface channels and buses. Stereo and multichannel surround tracks have outputs available as pairs and multichannel paths.



Output Path selector

The Output Path selector lets you route a track to any configured audio output or internal bus. The choices available in this pop-up menu are determined by the Output Bus Path configuration in the I/O Setup. Outputs in use by another track appear bold in the Output Path selector's pop-up menu.

Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) the Output Path selector of the left-most track and select the first Output Path (mono or stereo). All visible tracks are automatically assigned to unique Output Bus Path assignments in ascending order. For example, Track 1 to A1–2, Track 2 to A3–4, Track 3 to A5–6, and so on.

To remove an output assignment:

- Select **No Output** from the Output Path selector. Playlists become dimmed for tracks with no output assignment.

Assigning an audio track, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, or Instrument track to "No Output" will cause its automation data for pan and plugin controls to be lost.

Create and Assign New Track from Track Output

Pro Tools lets you create a new Auxiliary Input, Audio, or Instrument track from the Output selector and automatically assign the Output of the original track to the Input of the new track using an available internal mix bus.

To create a new track from a track output:

1. On an existing track, click the Output selector for the track and select **New Track**.
2. In the New Track dialog, select the **Width**, **Type**, and **Time Base** for the new track.
3. Type a Name for the new track.
4. Select (or deselect) whether you want the new track to be created next to the current track.
5. Click **OK**.

Pro Tools creates a new track with the output of the originating track automatically routed to the input of the new track using an available internal mix bus.

When creating a new internal mix bus, the new bus will be named after what you typed for the new track. For example, if you entered the name "Drum Sub," Pro Tools creates a new Auxiliary Input track named "Drum Sub" and also creates an internal mix bus named "Drum Sub."



New Auxiliary Input track with audio track output automatically assigned to Bus 1–2

Assign Existing Track from a Track Output

Pro Tools lets you assign the Output of a track to the Input of an existing track using an available internal mix bus. Note that the destination track must be set to either an internal mix bus or to **No Input** in order to be available for assignment.

To assign the output of a track to an available input on an existing track:

1. On an existing track, click the Output selector for a track and select **Track**.
2. From the **Track** submenu, select the destination track you want.



Assigning a track output to an existing Auxiliary Input track

Pro Tools automatically routes the track or send to the input of the selected track using an available internal mix bus.

Searching Track Input and Track Output Path Selectors

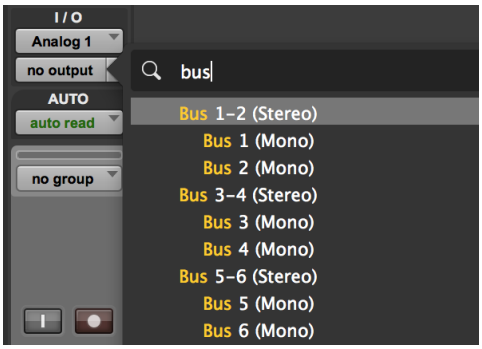
To search for a path in an Input or Output selector:

1. Click the path selector for the input or output you want to assign and do one of the following:
   - Type the first character of the path name you want.
   - Click **Search**.
   - Press Tab.



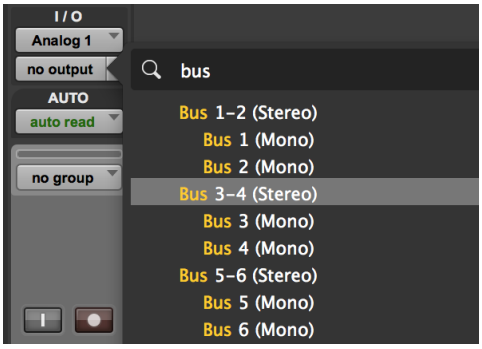
Searching a path selector (Track Output)

2. Type a few letters included the path name that you want. Only paths whose names that include those letters (highlighted yellow) now appear in the list (maximum of 20).



Searching a path selector, typing to find a path

3. Select the desired path with the mouse, or use the Up and Down arrow keys to select the path name.

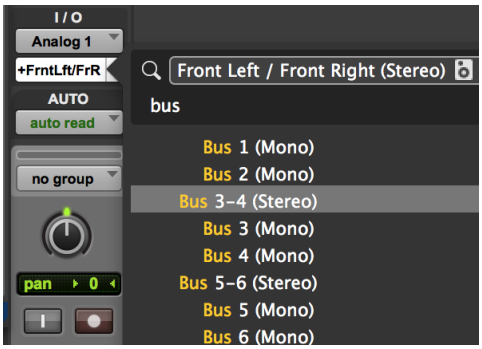


Searching a path selector—single path found by typing the first letters of its name

4. Do one of the following:
   - Press Return again to close the selector menu.
   - Click anywhere outside the menu.

To search for and assign multiple paths (Sends and Track Outputs only):

1. Type to search for each additional path assignment, do one of the following:
   - Tab to confirm current tag that you are typing.
   - Press Shift+Return.
   - Click the entry.
2. Press Return to close the selector menu and assign the outputs.



Searching and assigning multiple outputs

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to assign outputs to the same path for all tracks of the same type.

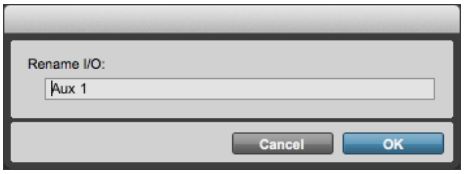
Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) to assign outputs to the same path for all selected tracks.

Renaming Track Inputs and Outputs from the Edit or Mix Window

I/O path names can be renamed in the Edit or Mix windows, or in the I/O Setup.

To rename an I/O path in the Edit or Mix window:

1. In the Edit or Mix window, Right-click the Input selector or Output selector for a track, and choose **Rename** from the pop-up menu.
2. In the Rename I/O dialog, type a name for the I/O Path, and click **OK**.



Rename I/O dialog

Making Track Inputs and Outputs Inactive from the Edit or Mix Window

Track Input, Output, and Bus Path assignments can be made inactive using the corresponding selector on the track. Making a track's Input or Output inactive silences that Input or Output, while retaining all automation and playlist data. For HDX systems, inactive Inputs and Outputs do not consume resources for DSP mixer connections, but any active assigned plugins on the track continue to use their required DSP resources. For Pro Tools host-based systems, inactive Inputs and Outputs do not consume host-processing resources. Host-based, or Native plugins require CPU resources, and DSP-based plugins use the DSP available on HDX cards.

You can make track inputs and outputs inactive (or active) directly from the Edit or Mix windows. Inactive I/O Paths are grayed out.

You can also make a path globally inactive (or active) in the I/O Setup dialog. See "Making Paths Active or Inactive" on page 85.

To make a track's Input or Output Path inactive (or active), do one of the following:

- In the Edit or Mix window, Right-click the Input selector or Output selector for a track, and choose **Make Inactive** (or **Make Active**) from the pop-up menu.
- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Input or Output selector in the Mix or Edit window.

To make all tracks' Inputs or Outputs assigned to the same path inactive (or active), do one of the following:

- In the Edit or Mix window, Option-Right-click (Mac) or Alt-Right-click (Windows) the Input selector or Output selector for a track, and choose **Make Inactive** (or **Make Active**) from the pop-up menu.
- Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) the Input or Output selector in the Mix or Edit window.

To make all selected tracks' Inputs or Outputs assigned to the same path inactive (or active), do one of the following:

- In the Edit or Mix window, Option-Shift-Right-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-Right-click (Windows) the Input selector or Output selector for a track, and choose **Make Inactive** (or **Make Active**) from the pop-up menu.
- Command-Option-Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-Shift-click (Windows) the Input or Output selector in the Mix or Edit window.

Toggling Multiple Paths

If a track has only one main output assignment, Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the track's Output Path selector to toggle the main output to inactive. When there are multiple assignments, the track selector will be displayed for you to specify the Input, Output, Insert, or Bus Path by Control-clicking (Mac) or Start-clicking (Windows).

If a Send (A–J) has multiple Output Path assignments and one of those is toggled active or inactive, then all of the Output Path assignments for that Send (A–J) are toggled active or inactive.

Track Output Assignments and Pan Data

Pan data linked to a track output is preserved even when the output is changed or removed. If a track is routed to an output that uses an incompatible channel width, its pan automation is retained and automatically re-applied once a compatible output is restored.

⚠ **In earlier versions of Pro Tools, removing or changing a track output permanently deletes the track pan controls and automation data. Any incompatible or unused automation data preserved in a session created in Pro Tools 2025.10 is discarded if the session is opened and saved in Pro Tools 2025.6.1 or earlier.**

Send Output Assignments and Pan Data

Explicitly removing a send deletes its associated pan data. However, replacing a send with one that uses an incompatible channel width preserves the data until a compatible send is reapplied. When dragging a send to another existing send, pan data is overwritten.

Track Priority and Voice Assignment

Track priority and voice assignment are dependent on your Pro Tools hardware and software configuration.

HDX systems provide a certain number of voices (simultaneous channels of audio playback and recording), depending on the number of cards in the system. For details on Pro Tools system capabilities, see "Playback, Recording, and Voice Limits with Pro Tools Ultimate Software" on page 47.

Pro Tools systems let you play or record up to 256 simultaneous stereo or mono tracks in any combination. For details on system capabilities, see "Pro Tools Artist Capabilities with Different Hardware Configurations" on page 37.

Track Priority

With certain system configurations it is possible to have more voiceable tracks in a session than available voices. In this case, not all tracks in the session can play back simultaneously. When the number of tracks exceeds the number of available voices, tracks with lower priority may not be heard. For these situations, Pro Tools assigns priorities to tracks that compete for the available voices. Because there can be more tracks than available voices, Pro Tools provides several ways of adjusting the playback priority of audio tracks. See "Changing a Track's Playback Priority" below and "Freeing up Voices on a Track" below.

Changing a Track's Playback Priority

Tracks with higher positions (leftmost in the Mix window or topmost in the Edit window) have priority over tracks in lower positions in a session.

To increase a track's priority, do any of the following:

- In the Mix window, drag the Track Name button to the left of other tracks in the session. Tracks at the left of the Mix window have higher priority than those on the right.
- In the Edit window, drag the Track Name button above other tracks in the session. Tracks at the top of the Edit window have higher priority than those below.
- In the Track List, drag the Track Name to a higher position in the list. Tracks at the top of this list have higher priority than those below.

Freeing up Voices on a Track

You can also adjust the relative priority of tracks by freeing up the voices of individual tracks, making them available to other tracks in the session.

To free up the voice of a track, do one of the following:

- Click the Voice selector of the track and set it to **Off**. See "Setting Voice Assignment" below.
- Deactivate the track by Command-Control-clicking (Mac) or Control-Start-clicking (Windows) its track type icon in the Mix window.
- Make sure the track does not have an Output Path or Send assignment.

Setting Voice Assignment

A track's voice assignment can be turned off or set to be dynamically allocated. Use Dynamically Allocated Voicing to automatically take care of voice management in the background.

With Pro Tools Ultimate, QuickPunch, TrackPunch, and DestructivePunch require additional voices. For more information, see "Punch Recording Modes" on page 833.

With HDX systems, the initial insert of a Native (host-based) plugins uses additional voices in certain situations. See "Inserting Native and DSP Plugins on Tracks" on page 1518.

To set the voice assignment for a track:

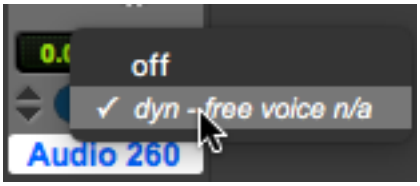
- Click the Voice selector and set the track to **Dyn** or **Off**.



Track Priority and Dynamic Voicing

The lowest-numbered (highest priority) audio tracks that are active *and* have their voice assignment set to **DYN** (Dynamically Allocated Voicing) are the tracks that play back. (The total number of tracks that play back depends on the maximum number of voiced audio tracks allowed by your system.)

Tracks that are higher-numbered (lower priority) than these tracks do not play back and you cannot record to them. For those tracks, the **Dynamically Allocated Voicing** button turns blue to indicate they are unavailable for playback or recording.



No free voice available for a lower priority audio track

Tracks do not play back when they are inactive or their voice assignment is set to Off.

When working with more than the maximum number of voiced audio tracks allowed by your system, you can only play back audio from higher-numbered (lower priority) tracks by changing the track priority by doing any of the following:

- Make a lower-numbered track inactive (click the **Track Name** and select **Track > Make Inactive**).
- Set the voice assignment in a lower-numbered track to **Off** (click the Voice selector and select **Off**).

- Drag the **Track Name** button of the higher-numbered track to the left (Mix window) or upwards (in the Edit window or Track List) until it is in the range of the maximum number of voiced audio tracks allowed by your system. The previously last voiced audio track is moved out of range and its voice assignment is changed to **Off**.

When the priority of the higher-numbered track is changed, its voice assignment is automatically changed from **Off** to **DYN**.

AAssigning MIDI Inputs and Outputs to Tracks

MIDI recording and playback is supported with MIDI tracks and Instrument tracks.

MIDI ports in your system can be named and configured for use in Pro Tools (for Windows, see “Configuring MIDI Studio Setup” and for Mac, see “Configuring AMS”).

Assigning MIDI Track Input

Pro Tools lets you assign specific MIDI ports and channels to a MIDI track input. The default selection of All receives all incoming MIDI data from all ports on all channels. Use the MIDI Input selector to specify a MIDI port and channel for input.



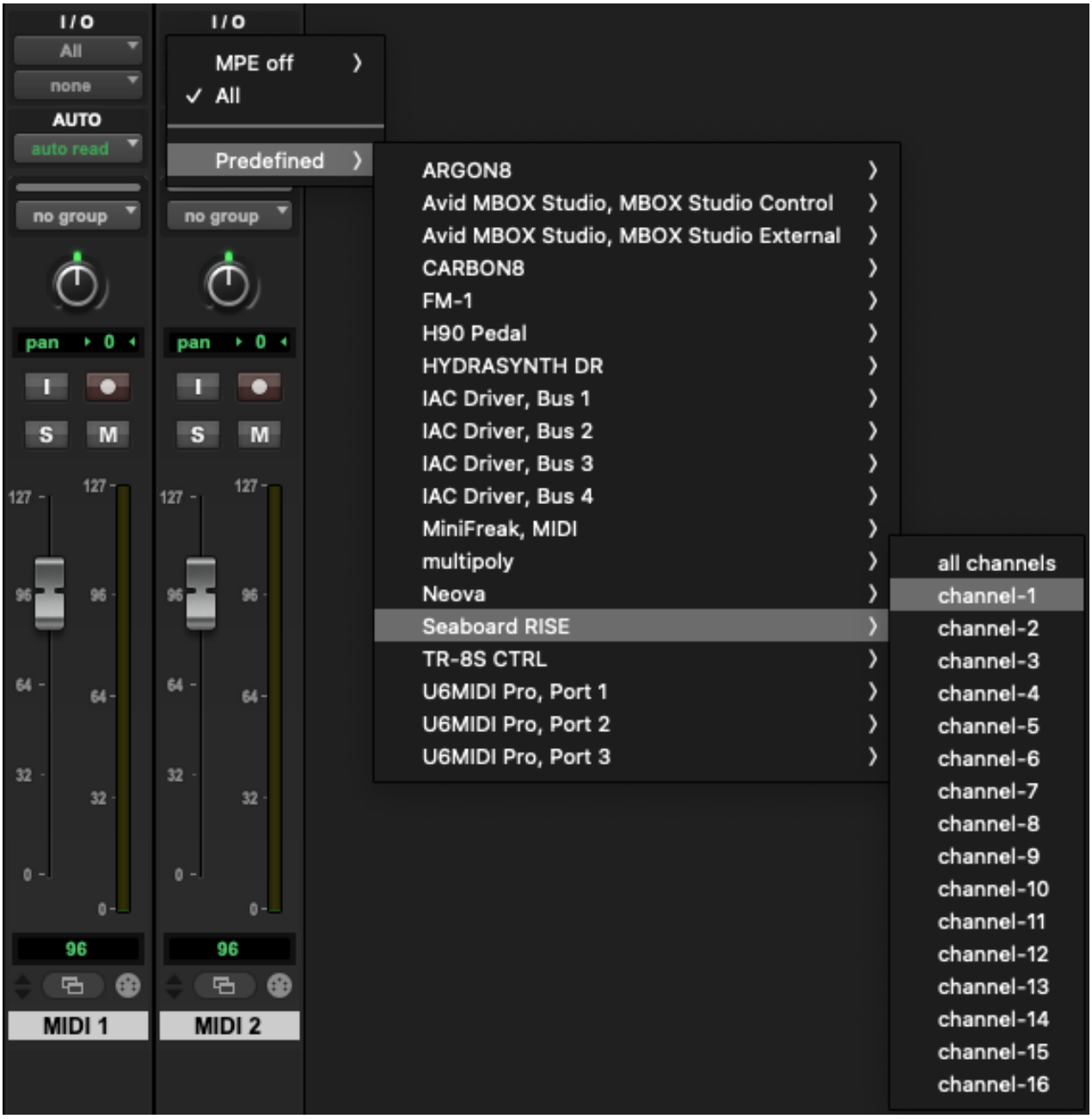
For information on assigning MIDI input to Instrument tracks, see "Assigning MIDI Input and Output for Instrument Tracks" on page 368.

To assign a MIDI track input:

- Click the track’s MIDI Input selector and assign a port and channel for MIDI input. Channels already assigned to another track appear in bold.



In the Edit window, select View › Edit Window › I/O to access any track’s Input selector.



MIDI Input selector (MIDI Track shown)

Assigning MIDI Track Output

Pro Tools lets you assign specific MIDI ports and channels to a MIDI track output. The default selection of none sends MIDI data to no port on any channel. Use the MIDI Output selector to specify a MIDI port and channel for output.

MIDI tracks in Pro Tools cannot contain multiple channels of MIDI data.

For information on assigning MIDI output to Instrument tracks, see "Assigning MIDI Input and Output for Instrument Tracks" on page 368.

To assign a MIDI track (and all its clips) to a specific MIDI device channel:

- Click the track's MIDI Output selector and assign a port and channel for MIDI output. Channels already assigned to another track appear in bold.

  In the Edit window, select View › Edit Window › I/O to access any track's Output selector.



MIDI Output selector (MIDI track shown)

To assign multiple destinations to a single MIDI track:

- Control-click (Mac) or Right-click (Mac or Windows) the MIDI Output selector and select additional channels from any device.

For information on recording and importing MIDI data, see "MIDI Recording" on page 809.

Assigning MIDI Input and Output for Instrument Tracks

Instrument tracks have a specific view for MIDI controls, including MIDI Input and Output selectors.

In addition to assigning MIDI input and output for recording and playing back MIDI data, Instrument tracks can also be used to monitor the audio from your hardware MIDI instruments and instrument plugins. See "Signal Routing for Monitoring and Submixing" on page 1491.

To view Instrument track MIDI controls, do one of the following:

- Select **`View > Mix Window > Instruments`**.
- Select **`View > Edit Window > Instruments`**.



Instruments view, Mix window

Instrument Track MIDI Input

Pro Tools lets you assign specific MIDI ports and channels to an Instrument tracks' MIDI input. The default selection of All receives all incoming MIDI data from all ports on all channels. Use the MIDI Input selector to specify a MIDI port and channel for input.

Channels in use by another track input appear bold in the MIDI Input pop-up menu.

To assign an Instrument track MIDI input:

- Click the track's MIDI Input selector and assign a port and channel for MIDI input. Channels already assigned to another track appear in bold.

Instrument Track MIDI Output

Pro Tools lets you assign specific MIDI ports and channels to an Instrument tracks' MIDI output. The default selection of none sends MIDI data to no device, port, or node on any channel. Use the MIDI Output selector to specify a MIDI port and channel for output.

Channels in use by another track input appear as bold in the MIDI Input pop-up menu.

To assign an Instrument track MIDI output:

- Click the track's MIDI Output selector and assign a port and channel for MIDI output. Channels already assigned to another track appear in bold.

MIDI Signal Flow

Pro Tools lets you route MIDI from the MIDI input of an Instrument track to any plugins on the track with MIDI ports, such as MIDI plugins, virtual instruments, or audio plugins with MIDI CC (Continuous Control). MIDI can be routed to individual plugins, or to a "MIDI Chain" that consists of a series of compatible plugins in consecutive insert slots on an Instrument track.

Instrument Track MIDI Chains

An Instrument Track Chain lets MIDI data pass sequentially (top to bottom) through the MIDI-compatible plugins on an Instrument track. A MIDI Chain is essentially virtual MIDI Thru for virtual MIDI devices on individual Instrument tracks. MIDI outputs from Instrument and MIDI tracks can be assigned to an Instrument track's MIDI Chain In. MIDI inputs for Instrument and MIDI tracks can be assigned to an

Instrument track's MIDI Chain Out. MIDI Chains let you control all compatible plugins on an Instrument track from a single MIDI stream. This can be useful for live performance and MIDI recording (for example, playing a virtual electric piano on insert A and controlling a wah-wah pedal effect plugin on insert B).

Chain In

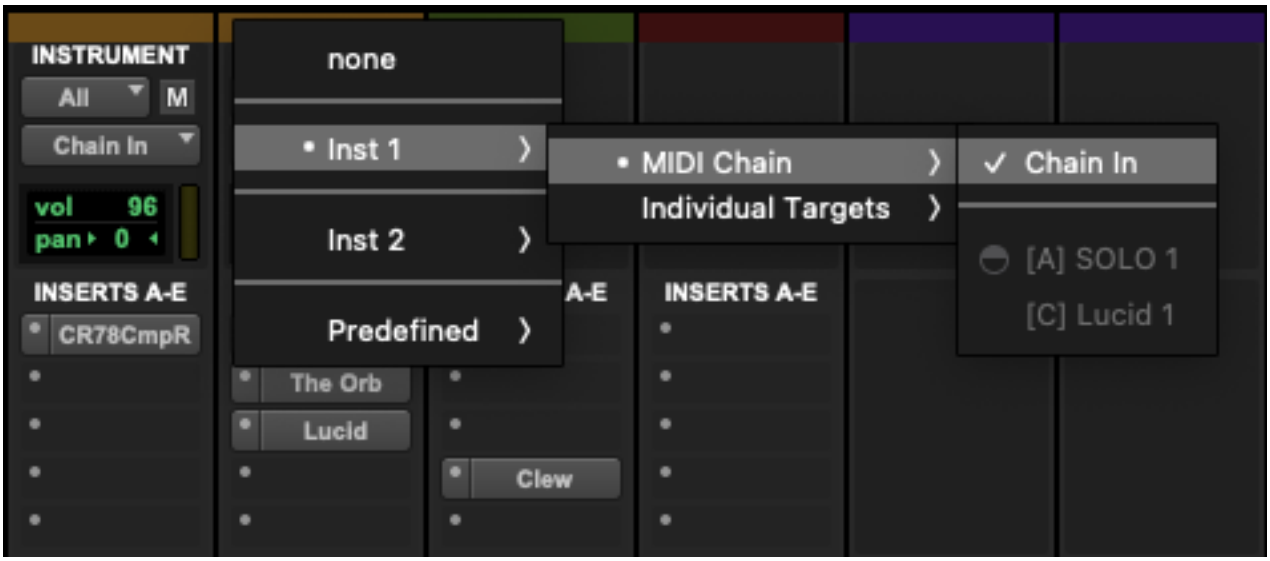
To assign the MIDI output of an Instrument track to the plugin chain:

- From the MIDI Output selector, select ***<track name>*** **> MIDI Chain > Chain In**.

  Note that the moment you insert any MIDI-capable plugin on an Instrument track, Chain In is assigned automatically.

  The MIDI Chain order is displayed below **Chain In**:

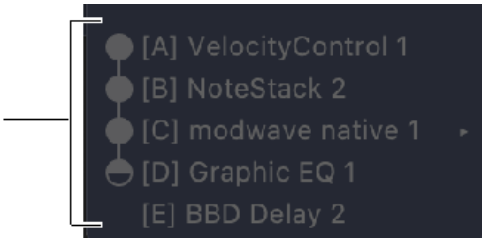
  MIDI Thru indicator, Insert slot (A–E, F–J), <*plugin name*›, ‹*plugin instance #*›



Assigning a Instrument track MIDI output to MIDI Chain In

MIDI Chain Flow Visualization

MIDI Thru is indicated for each insert in the MIDI Chain by a shaded circle. A top-half shaded circle indicates MIDI In only (no MIDI thru). A bottom-half shaded circle indicates MIDI Out only (such as with a generative MIDI plugin). No circle is present for inserts that are completely excluded from the MIDI Chain (no MIDI In, Out, or Thru).



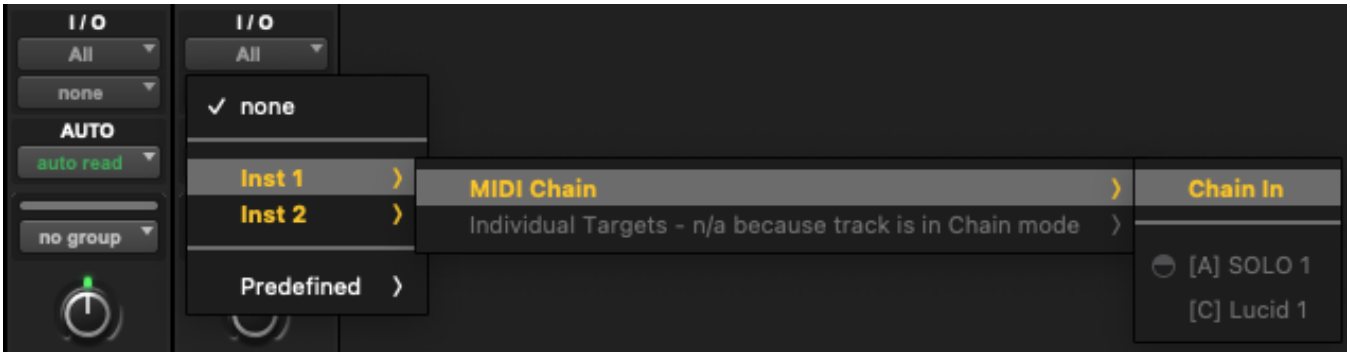
MIDI Thru indicators

MIDI Chain Out

You can select the MIDI Chain Out of any Instrument track in the session as the MIDI input for Instrument and MIDI tracks. MIDI Chain Out includes any MIDI processing on the source Instrument track.

The MIDI Chain order is displayed below **Chain Out**:

MIDI Thru indicator, Insert slot (A–E, F–J), ‹*plugin name*›, ‹*plugin instance #*›



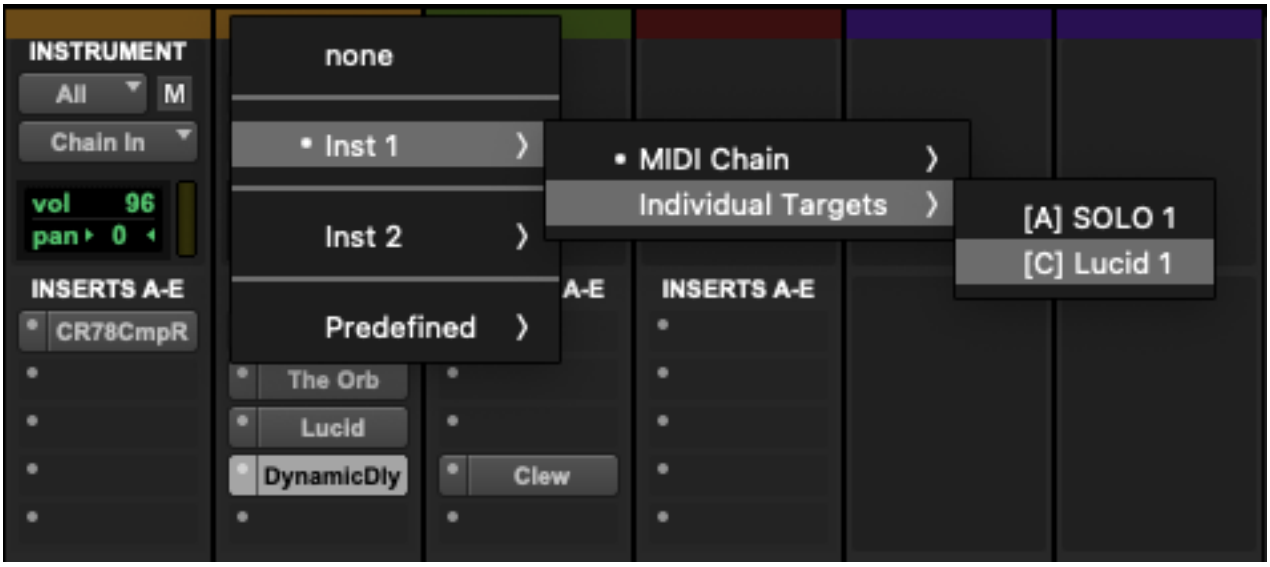
Selecting Chain In to an Instrument track from a MIDI track output

Individual MIDI Targets

Select an individual MIDI target to send MIDI exclusively to that device on the track. This provides the same functionality as MIDI In and Out of tracks in previous versions of Pro Tools.

To select an individual MIDI target:

- From the MIDI Output selector, select ***<track name>*** **> Individual Target >** ***<MIDI device>***.



Selecting an individual MIDI target ([C] modwave native 1)

MIDI Chain versus Individual Targets

MIDI Chains use the first MIDI channel of plugins inserted on an Instrument track. Chain In and Chain Out cannot be part of a selection of multiple MIDI streams. If anything other than the MIDI Chain is selected (that is, if one or more individual plugins are selected), then plugins inserted on the track can only be targeted individually. Plugins cannot be in both Chain mode and Individual Target mode at the same time. If an Instrument track is in MIDI Chain mode (either because the track itself or another track that is routed to the MIDI Chain), then individually targeting plugins on that track is not possible, and the plugins are grayed out. Likewise, if one or more plugins on an Instrument track are targeted individually, then the MIDI Chain for that track is not available and is grayed out.

Soloing and Muting Tracks

The Solo and Mute buttons can be engaged at any time during playback. The Solo and Mute buttons affect MIDI as well as audio tracks. It is possible to have more than one track soloed or muted at the same time in a session.

Instrument tracks have separate sets of Solo and Mute buttons for MIDI and audio monitoring.

Track grouping also affects mute and solo behavior. Muting or soloing a track that is a member of an active Mix Group will mute or solo all other tracks that are a member of that active Mix Group as well.

Soloing Tracks

To solo tracks:

1. Click the Solo button on a track. The button is highlighted and all other tracks are muted.
2. Click the Solo button on another track. The buttons for both tracks are highlighted and all other tracks are muted.

Soloing a Folder track leaves all member tracks unmuted (except for any member tracks that were explicitly muted separately) while all other tracks that are not also soloed are muted.

To un-solo tracks:

- Click the Solo button on soloed tracks.

For information on creating and modifying groups for track soloing and muting, see "Grouping Tracks" on page 417.

Solo Button

The Solo button normally mutes other tracks so that the selected track can be auditioned independently.

With Pro Tools Ultimate, this behavior is selected as a Solo mode, called “Solo In Place.” Additional Solo modes are provided to change how the Solo button works. See "Solo Modes" below.

Solo Modes

Pro Tools lets you use the Solo button to:

- Mute other tracks so that the selected track can be auditioned alone.
- Route a selected track to a separate output.

Solo button behavior is defined by the Solo mode, as follows:

SIP (Solo In Place)

The Solo button mutes other tracks. When this mode is enabled, tracks can be solo safed (see "Solo Safe Mode" on page 373).

AFL (After Fader Listen)

The Solo button routes the track’s post-fader/post-pan signal to the AFL/PFL Path output. The AFL/PFL Path is configured in the Output page of the I/O Setup dialog (see "AFL/PFL Path" on page 70).

With AFL, the level you hear is dependent on the fader level for that track. Additionally, there is a separate master level setting for AFL that affects the output of any or all tracks you solo in AFL mode (see "AFL/PFL Path" on page 70). This level setting is independent of the PFL level setting.

PFL (Pre Fader Listen)

The Solo button routes the track's pre-fader/pre-pan signal to the AFL/PFL Path output. The AFL/PFL Path is configured in the Output page of the I/O Setup dialog (see "AFL/PFL Path" on page 70).

With PFL, the fader level and pan are ignored, and the level you hear is dependent on the signal's recorded level. Additionally, there is a separate master level setting for PFL that affects the output of any or all tracks you solo in PFL mode (see "AFL/PFL Path" on page 70). This level setting is independent of the AFL level setting.

AFL and PFL Solo modes require the Surround Mixer plugin.

Custom Pan Depth settings are unavailable when either AFL or PFL Solo mode is enabled.

If Mute Frees Assigned Voice is enabled, muted tracks will not be audible in PFL mode.

To select a Solo mode:

1. Choose **Options > Solo Mode**.
2. Select **SIP**, **AFL**, or **PFL**.

The Solo mode for all soloed tracks can be changed from any Solo mode to either SIP or AFL. Previously soloed tracks will switch their solo behavior to the new mode.

Switching the Solo mode for all soloed tracks to PFL clears all previously soloed tracks before entering PFL mode. This prevents potentially large boosts in level.

DSP Usage when Using AFL or PFL Mode

AFL and PFL are accomplished by Pro Tools creating a "behind the scenes" mixer to route the signal to the chosen AFL/PFL Path. Depending on the size of your main mixer, Pro Tools will devote a substantial portion of its available DSP when using AFL/PFL mode.

Un-declaring the AFL/PFL Path will free up all DSP resources previously used for AFL/PFL mode.

Using AFL/PFL on Pro Tools Systems with a D-Control or D-Command

AFL/PFL is optimized for Pro Tools systems using a D-Control or D-Command control surface, where the XMON automatically switches its monitor source between the main output and the AFL/PFL output from Pro Tools.

For more information on using XMON and AFL/PFL, see your control surface guide.

Solo Latch Options

Solos can be *latched* (where pressing subsequent buttons adds them to the soloed mix of tracks), unlatched, or temporarily latched (Pro Tools Ultimate only).

To select a Solo Latch mode:

- Choose **Options > Solo Mode** and select from the following options:

Latch

When selected, pressing subsequent Solo buttons adds them to the soloed mix of tracks.

X–OR (Cancels Previous Solos)

When selected, pressing subsequent Solo buttons cancels previous solos.

To override X–OR mode and solo more than one track at a time, hold the Solo button on the first track. Subsequently pressed Solo buttons will latch.

Momentary (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

When selected, Solo buttons are not sticky. A track is soloed only when its Solo switch is held down.

With a qualified control surface, additional tracks can be soloed by pressing their SOLO switches (as long as at least one Solo button is held down). When no SOLO switch is held down, all soloed tracks will unsolo.

Temporarily Latching Solos in Momentary Solo Mode

The following applies to Pro Tools Ultimate Software only.

To temporarily latch solos:

1. Choose **`Options > Solo Mode > Momentary`**.
2. Press the Solo button on the first track that will be soloed.
3. While holding the first Solo button, press additional Solo buttons. Solo buttons remain soloed as long as one Solo button is held.

As long as at least one Solo button is held, all the solos will remain latched.

Set Solo Mode and Latch Options in Solo Status Right-click Menu

Pro Tools lets you set the Solo mode and Solo Latch in the Solo Status button right-click menu in the Edit Window toolbar.



Solo Safe Mode

Pro Tools lets you *solo saf e* a track. This prevents the track from being muted even if you solo other tracks. This feature is useful for tracks such as Auxiliary Inputs that are being used as a submix of audio tracks, or effects returns, allowing the audio or effects track to remain in a mix even when other tracks are soloed. It is also useful to solo safe MIDI tracks so that their playback is not affected when you solo audio tracks.

New Auxiliary Input tracks default to Solo Safe mode when added to a session. However, when converting an Auxiliary Input track to a Routing Folder track, the resulting Routing Folder track will not be in Solo Safe mode.

AFL or PFL soloed tracks cannot be solo safed.

To solo safe a track:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Solo button on the track. This prevents the track from being muted even if you solo other tracks. The Solo button changes to a transparent color in Solo Safe mode.

To return a solo safe track to normal:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Solo button on the track again.

Mute Button

The Mute button silences a chosen track. More than one track can be muted at one time.

Muting a Basic Folder track also mutes all member tracks. However, muting a Routing Folder track mutes only the output of the Routing Folder track. Member tracks of the Routing Folder are not muted, so any tracks that are not routed to the input of the Routing Folder track are potentially still audible.

To mute a track:

- Click the Mute button on the track.

To unmute a track:

- Click the Mute button again.

To mute (or unmute) all tracks, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Mute button on any track.

MIDI Mute

The Mute button on a MIDI track mutes MIDI data, not audio. Muting MIDI results in no MIDI data being passed to the MIDI output. On Instrument tracks, the track's Mute button mutes the audio signal and the MIDI Mute button is only available in Instruments view.



MIDI Mute button, Instruments view, Mix window

Allow All-Track Mute Option

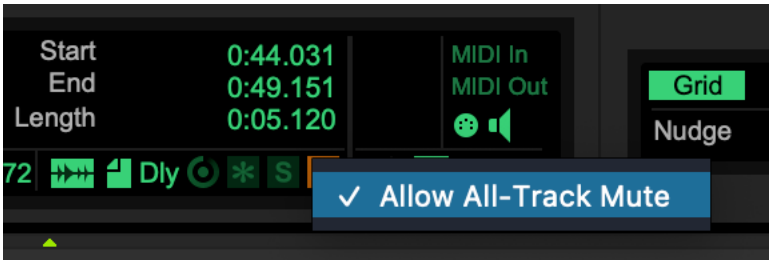
Disabling the **`Allow All-Track Mute`** option prevents muting or unmuting all tracks with the Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) modifiers. This is useful for preventing unwanted state changes in the mix.

To enable (or disable) Allow All-Track Mute, do one of the following:

- Right-click on a Mute button on any track and select (or deselect) **`Allow All-Track Mute`**.



- Right-click on the Mute button in the Edit window toolbar and select (or deselect) **Allow All-Track Mute**.



Making Tracks Inactive

Folder, audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, VCA Master, Instrument, and MIDI tracks can be made inactive. Inactive tracks use no DSP or voices. Plugins, sends, voices, and automation on inactive tracks are all disabled. Tracks may also be automatically made inactive if a session is opened on a system with less DSP power than the system that it was created on.

Making a Folder track inactive also makes all of its member tracks inactive. Similarly, making a Folder track active also makes all its members active (except for any that were explicitly made inactive separately).

To toggle a track active/inactive:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Track Type indicator in the Mix window.

  Playlists for inactive tracks are dimmed and track controls are grayed out.

To make one or more tracks inactive or active, do one of the following:

- Select the track and select **Track > Make Inactive/Active**.
- Right-click the Track Name in the Track List, or Mix or Edit windows and choose **Make Inactive/Active**.

To select multiple tracks, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) additional Track Names. To select a range of tracks, Shift-click the Track Names bounding the range of tracks you want selected.

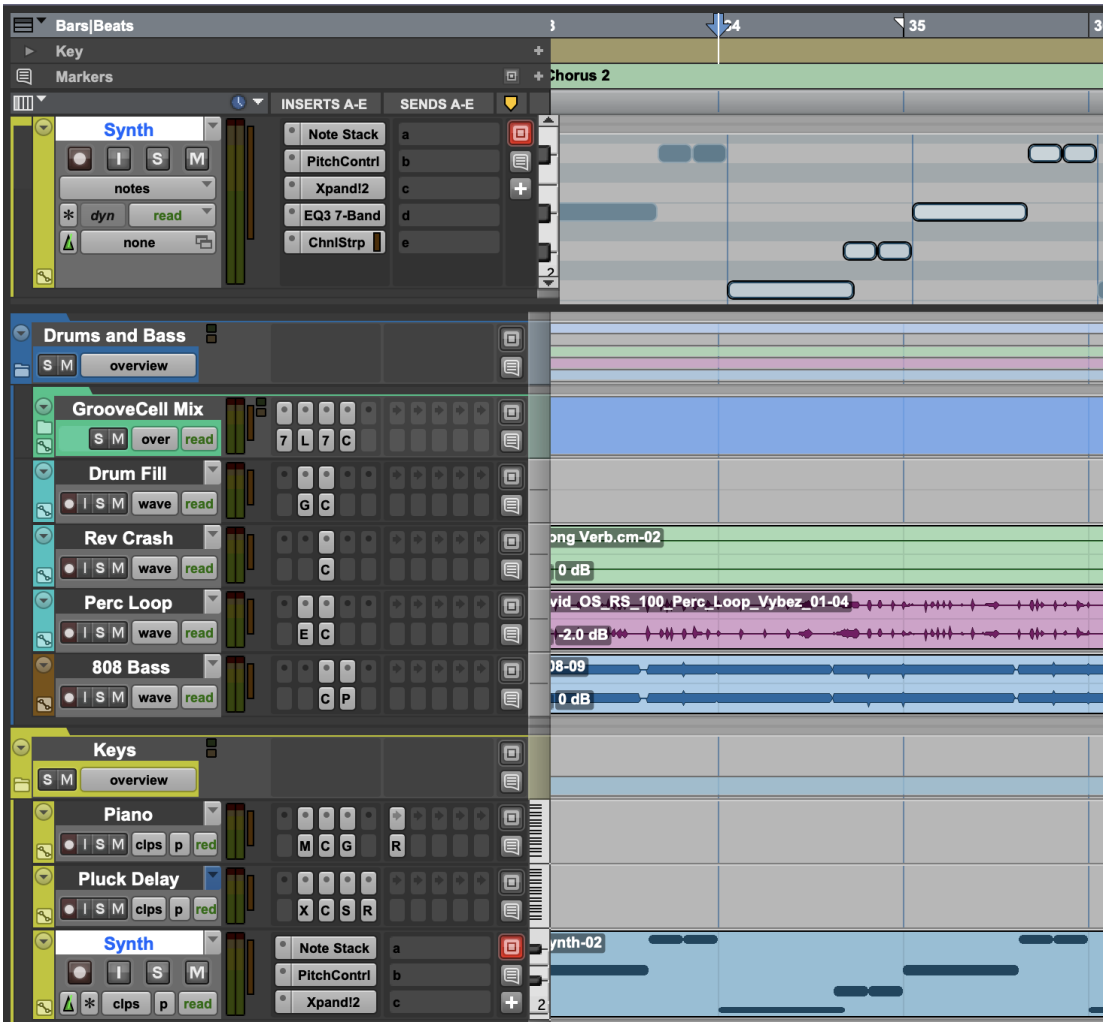
Track Pinning

Pin Track in the Edit Window

Pro Tools lets you "pin" tracks to the top of the Edit window. Pinned tracks remain in place (in track order), and an alias of a pinned track appears pinned at the top of the Edit window in a special Pinned Tracks pane. Aliased tracks are persistently pinned on top of all tracks in the Edit window, so they never go out of

view when scrolling up or down through the rest of the tracks in the Edit window. Pinned tracks share the same data as their source tracks, and any changes performed on either pinned or source tracks are mirrored in the other in real time. However, pinned tracks do not share the same view settings as source tracks. This means that you can set the view (clips, notes, playlists, and so on), automation lanes, and the height of pinned tracks independently from source tracks.

Pinned Folder tracks appear as a single flat track. You can only view and edit individual contained tracks under the source Folder track.

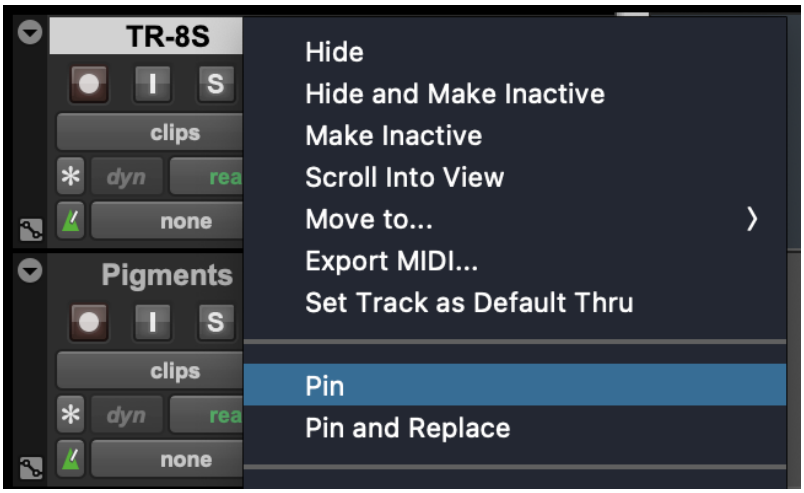


"Synth" track pinned to the top of the Edit window

For information about Pinned Tracks preferences, see Pinned Tracks

To pin a track to the top of the Edit window:

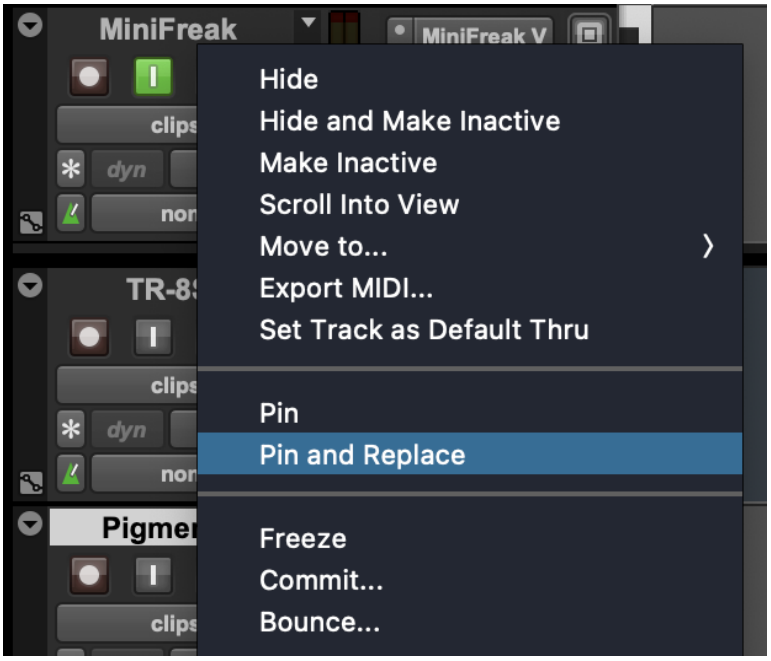
- In the Edit window, right-click the track name and choose **`Pin`**.



You can Pin more than one track to the top pane of the Edit window.

To pin a track and replace the top pinned track:

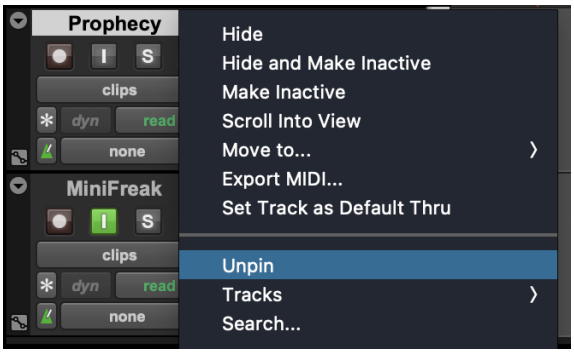
- In the Edit window, right-click the track name and choose **`Pin and Replace`**.



When you choose Pin and Replace, the selected track replace all tracks pinned in the top pane of the edit window.

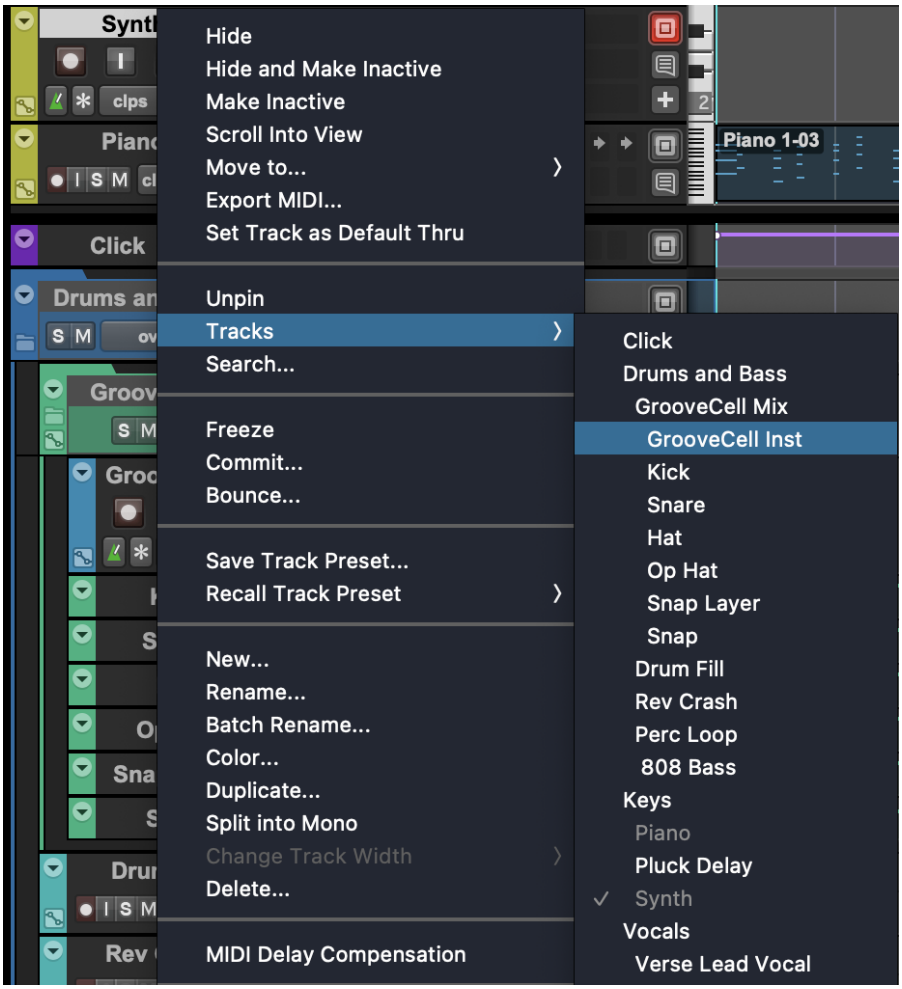
To unpin a track:

- Right-click the track name pinned at the top of the Edit window and choose **Unpin**.



To add another track to the Pinned tracks pane, do one of the following:

- In the Edit window, right-click an unpinned track name and choose **Pin**.
- In the Pinned Tracks pane, right-click on the name of a pinned track and choose the desired track from the **Tracks** submenu.



To toggle keyboard focus between the Pinned Tracks pane and non-pinned tracks, press Command+– ("minus") (Mac) or Control+– ("minus") (Windows).

Search Pinned Tracks

Pro Tools also lets you "search" pinned tracks to add or remove tracks to or from the Pinned Tracks pane.

To search for and remove a pinned track:

1. Right-click a pinned track and click Search.
2. In the resulting search panel, click **x** on the tag for the track you want to remove for the Pinned Tracks pane.



To search tracks to pin:

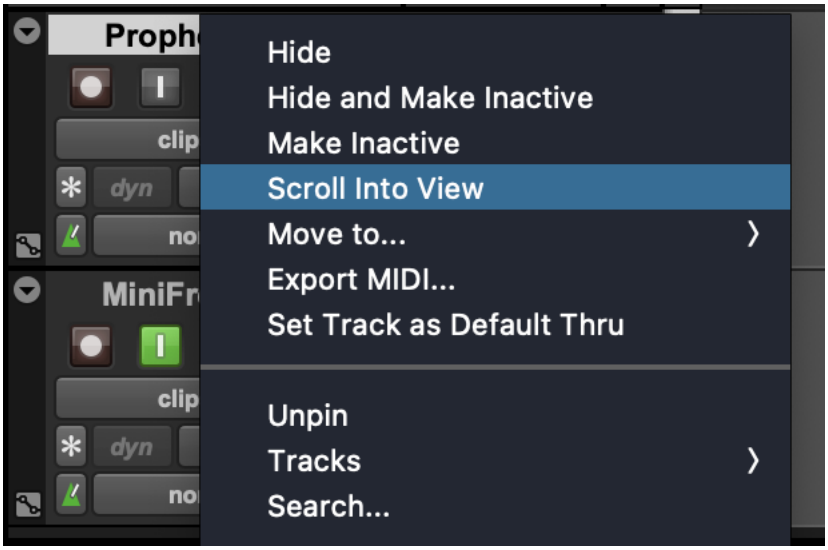
1. Right-click a pinned track and click Search.
2. In the resulting search panel, click the search icon (magnifying glass).
3. Type the name of the track you want to pin and select it from the search results.



Scroll Pinned Track into View

To scroll to the source of a pinned track:

- Right-click the track name pinned at the top of the Edit window and choose **`Scroll into View`**.

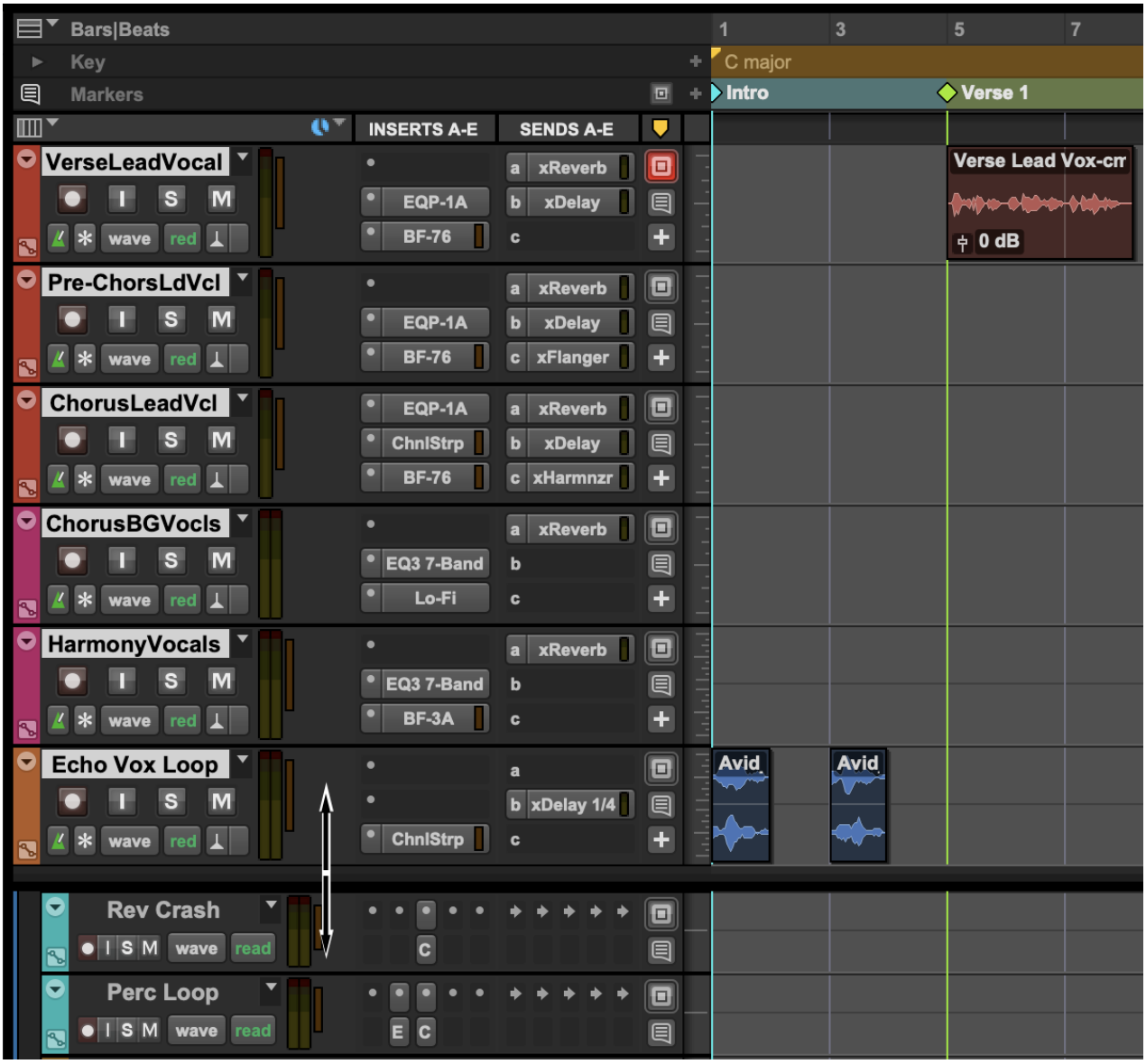


The source track is scrolled into view at the top of the Edit window just under its pinned alias.

Resizing the Pinned Tracks Pane

To resize the Pinned Tracks pane:

- Click and drag the lower border of the Pinned Tracks pane up or down. If the Adjusting Pinned Area Resizes Tracks preference is enabled the height of pinned tracks resizes accordingly.



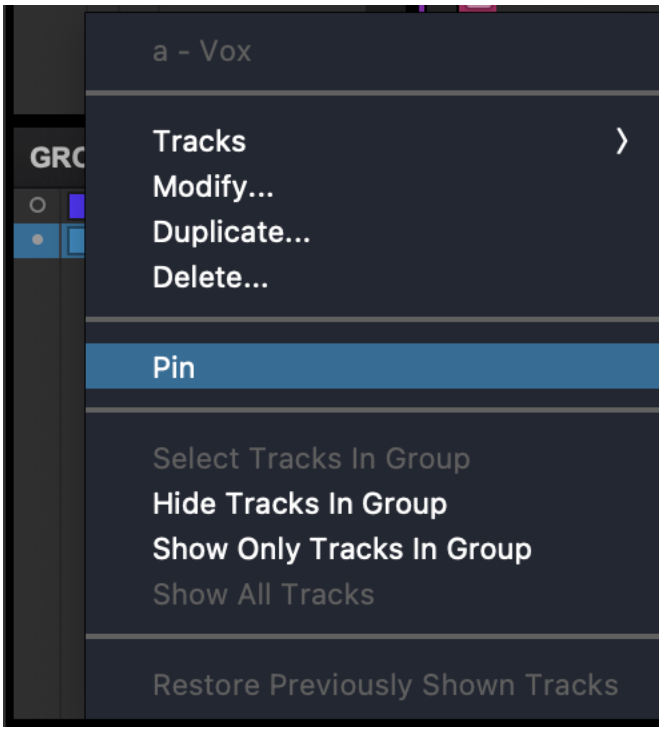
Pinning Groups

Pro Tools lets you pin grouped tracks just like pinning individual tracks.

For information about Track Groups, see Grouping Tracks.

To pin a group of tracks:

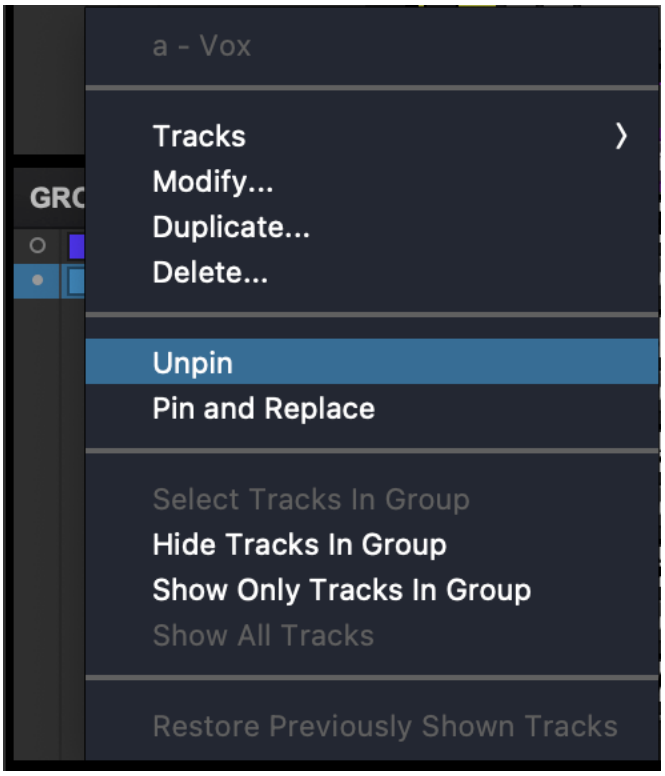
- In the Groups list, right-click the Goup you want to pin to the top of the edit window and choose **Pin**.



Command-Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Shift-click on a group to add the group members to the pinned area.

To unpin a group of tracks:

- In the Groups list, right-click the Goup you want to unpin to the top of the edit window and choose **Unpin**.



To pin a group of tracks and replace currently pinned tracks:

- In the Groups list, right-click the Goup you want to unpin to the top of the edit window and choose **Unpin**.

  Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click on any group but ‹all› to pin and replace pinned tracks or groups with the clicked group (or to pin it if no other track is already pinned).

Color Coding for Tracks, Clips, Markers, and Groups

Separate colors can be assigned to audio and MIDI clips, tracks, markers, and groups. Clips shown in Waveform and Block Views in the Edit window are drawn in color. Tracks shown in the Track List, Groups List, and Mix and Edit windows have associated color bars.

I/O paths can also be color coded in the I/O Setup. Color coded paths display their assigned color on Input, Output, Send, and Insert Name plates in the Edit, Mix, Send, and Output windows. For more information, see "Path Colors" on page 101.

Color Bars

Color coding at the track level is displayed using color bars, as follows:

Mix Window

Track colors are displayed in horizontal color bars that appear above each channel strip, and below the track name.

Edit Window

Track colors are displayed in vertical color bars that appear to the left of each track.

Track List

Track colors are displayed in vertical color bars that appear to the left of each track name.

Groups List

Track colors are displayed in vertical color bars that appear to the left of each Group Name.

Default colors are automatically assigned to tracks, but you can override those colors by choosing from a color palette of 96 possible colors. For more information, see "Color Palette" on the next page.

Display Page Preferences for Color Coding

Color Coding options determine how colors are assigned to the display of tracks and clips.

To change Color Coding options:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Display** tab.
3. Select or deselect the **Always Display Marker Colors** option.
4. Select the **MIDI Note Color Shows Velocity** option.
5. Select or deselect the **Apply Color Coding to Track Channel Strip** option.
6. Select a **Default Track Color Coding** option.
7. Select a **Default Clip Color Coding** option.
8. Click **OK**.

Always Display Marker Colors

This option lets you view Marker colors in the Markers ruler, regardless of the option you choose for the **Default Clip Color Coding** option.

MIDI Note Color Shows Velocity

When this option is enabled, MIDI notes display varying shades of the assigned track color in MIDI notes view in the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows. Notes with high velocities are darker and notes with lower velocities are lighter.

Default Track Color Coding

The **Default Track Color Coding** options determine how colors are assigned to the display of tracks.

None

Turns off default color assignment for tracks.

Tracks and MIDI Channels

Assigns a color to each track in the Mix or Edit window according to its voice assignment or MIDI channel assignment.

Tracks and MIDI Devices

Assigns a color to each track in the Mix or Edit window according to its voice assignment or MIDI device assignment.

Groups

Assigns a color to each track according to its Mix or Edit Group ID. If groups are suspended using the **Suspend Groups** command, the tracks color bars are not shown.

Track Type

Assigns a color to each track according to its type (audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, VCA Master, MIDI, Instrument, or video).

Default Clip Color Coding

The **`Default Clip Color Coding`** options determine how colors are assigned to the display of tracks, clips in the track playlist and Clip List, and Marker Locations.

None

Turns off default color assignment for clips. Clips are drawn as black waveforms or black MIDI notes on a light gray background.

Tracks and MIDI Channels

Assigns a color to each clip in the Edit window according to its voice or MIDI channel assignment.

Tracks and MIDI Devices

Assigns a color to each clip in the Edit window according to its voice assignment or MIDI device assignment.

Groups

Assigns a color to each clip according to the Group ID of its track. If groups are suspended (using the **`Suspend Groups`** command) all clips display black waveforms or MIDI notes on a light gray background.

Track Color

Assigns a clip color based on the color assigned to the track. ("Color Palette" below)

Marker Locations

Assigns a unique color to each marker area in the Marker ruler, including the area preceding the first marker.

Clip List Color

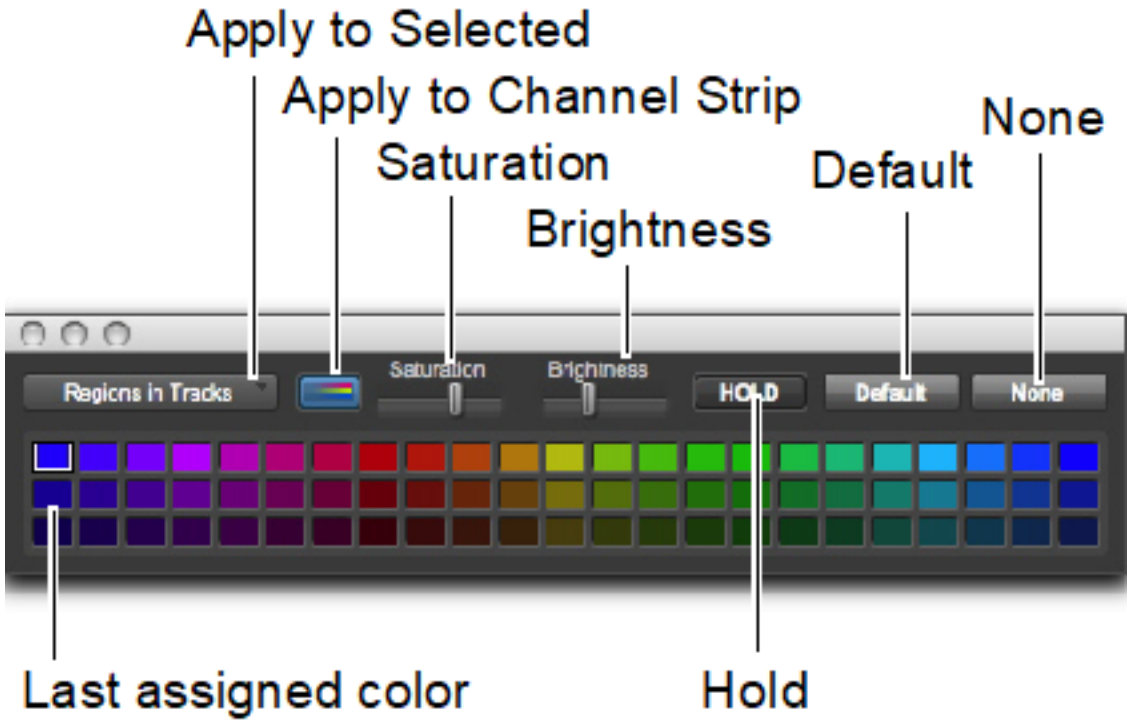
Assigns a color to each clip based on its color in the Clip List. When this **`Default Clip Color Coding`** option is enabled, the assigned clip color is maintained even if the clip is placed in a track set to a different color coding.



Enabling any Default Clip Color Coding option other than Clip List Color will override Clip List Color and reassign the parent track color to copies of the clip placed in tracks. Copies of the clip in the Clip List will retain their unique color.

Color Palette

The Color Palette lets you make color selections for tracks, clips, groups and markers.



Color Palette window

The Color Palette supports independent clip color coding in the Clip List and in tracks.

You can also use the Color Palette to customize UI Themes (see "UI Customization" on page 291).

To apply a color from the Color Palette:

1. Choose **Window > Color Palette**.
2. Do one of the following:
   - In the **Apply to Selected** pop-up menu, select the destination for color coding: **Tracks**, **Marker**, **Group**, **Clips in Tracks**, or **Clips in Clip List**.
   - Select a track, marker, group, track clip, or Clip List clip in the appropriate Pro Tools window. The **Apply to Selected** menu will display the type of item you have selected.

   If selecting a marker does not display the Marker option in the Apply to Selected pop-up menu, then the Always Display Marker Colors option in the Display Preferences page is deselected. See "Always Display Marker Colors" on page 384 for more information.
3. Select a color from the palette, or select one of the following:
   - Default

     Removes any custom coloring and restores the color to the default color orientation. See "Display Page Preferences for Color Coding" on page 384 for more information.
   - None

     Turns off color assignment. Affected clips are drawn with black waveform or MIDI notes on light gray background. Affected tracks and groups no longer show their color bars.

Using the Hold Button

The Color Palette provides a **Hold** button to simplify the process of assigning the same colors to multiple items (such as track and clips).

By default, the **Hold** button is off. When off, the Color Palette automatically highlights the assigned color (if any) of items as you select them.

When the **Hold** button is enabled, the assigned color selected in the Color Palette persists and does not change when a different track or clip is selected.

To use the Hold button to assign the same color to multiple items:

1. Click the **Hold** button to enable it. The **Hold** button becomes white, and the currently selected color is now highlighted with a wider white outline.
2. Select additional tracks or clips to which you want to assign the same color. Because the **Hold** button is enabled, the Color Palette does not follow item selection; it remains (or "holds") at the last currently assigned color.
3. Click the assigned color again to assign it to the new selection of tracks or clips. Use the **Apply to Selected** pop-up menu to determine which selected elements are affected.
4. To turn off **Hold** and return the Color Palette to its default mode, click the **Hold** button until it turns off.

Applying Track Color Coding to Channel Strips

The Color Palette lets you apply the Track color coding to channel strips in the Mix and Edit windows.

To apply track color coding to channel strips:

1. Enable the Apply to Channel Strip button.
2. If necessary, adjust the Saturation slider to get the color saturation you want.
3. If necessary, adjust the Brightness slider.



Color Coding applied to channel strips, Mix window

14 Folder Tracks

Pro Tools provides Folder tracks to help you organize both track layout and signal routing in your projects and sessions. Folder tracks essentially function as containers for other tracks of any type. A Folder track can be closed to hide all of the tracks it contains, or opened to show all contained tracks (member tracks). Thus, Folder tracks are a powerful tool for organizing tracks (by stems, instruments, and so on) so that you can more easily navigate complex sessions from a high level overview.

Folder tracks can hold other Folder tracks up to nine layers deep. A Folder track that contains another Folder track is a parent Folder, and the Folder it contains is a child Folder. Folder tracks that are in the same layer are sibling Folders.

There are two types of Folder tracks: Basic and Routing.

Basic Folder Tracks

Let you organize and manage tracks in your sessions, but without any of the special routing capabilities that Routing Folder tracks provide. A Basic Folder track is like a container for other tracks (of any type). It is especially useful in large sessions with many tracks. For example, if you have sixteen drum tracks in a session, you can add them to a Basic Folder track which you can then close to free up screen space so you can view other tracks in the Edit and Mix windows without scrolling. The solo and mute buttons on Basic Folder tracks affect all member tracks, but otherwise Basic Folder tracks do not provide any audio or MIDI routing for member tracks.

Routing Folder Tracks

Let you organize and manage tracks in your sessions, and they also provide audio routing and processing. You can route audio from member tracks through its input, apply plugins, use sends, assign track automation, and output audio much like an Auxiliary Input track.

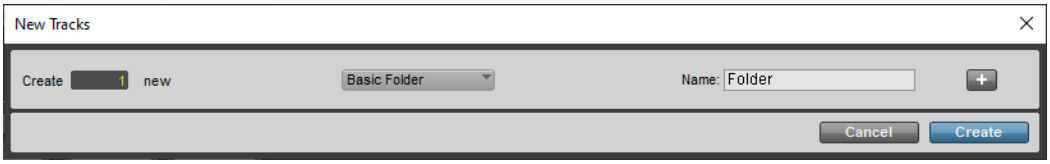
Tracks do not need to be contained by a Routing Folder track in order to route audio through it. You can bus audio from any track to the audio input of a Routing Folder track as desired.

Basic Folder Tracks

Basic Folder tracks can contain multiple tracks of any type (including other Folder tracks). Use Basic Folder tracks to organize tracks in your session. In the Edit window, Basic Folder tracks display an Overview of clips on all member tracks. Any edits you make on Folder tracks Overview apply to all member tracks (see "Editing Folder Tracks in Overview" on page 400).

To create a Basic Folder track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > New**.
   - Press Command+Shift+N (Mac) or Control+Shift+N (Windows).
   - Right-click the Track name of any track in the Track List, or Edit or Mix windows, and choose **New**.
2. In the New Tracks dialog, select **Basic Folder** from the Track Type selector.

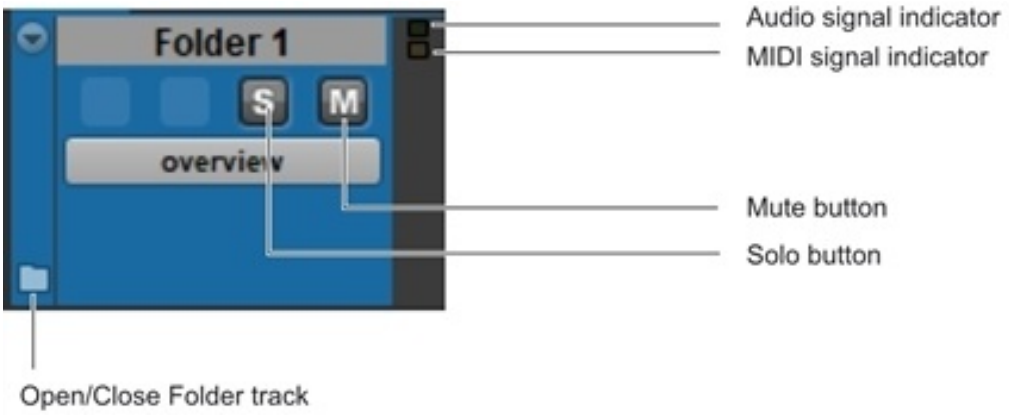


New Tracks dialog, Basic Folder track selected

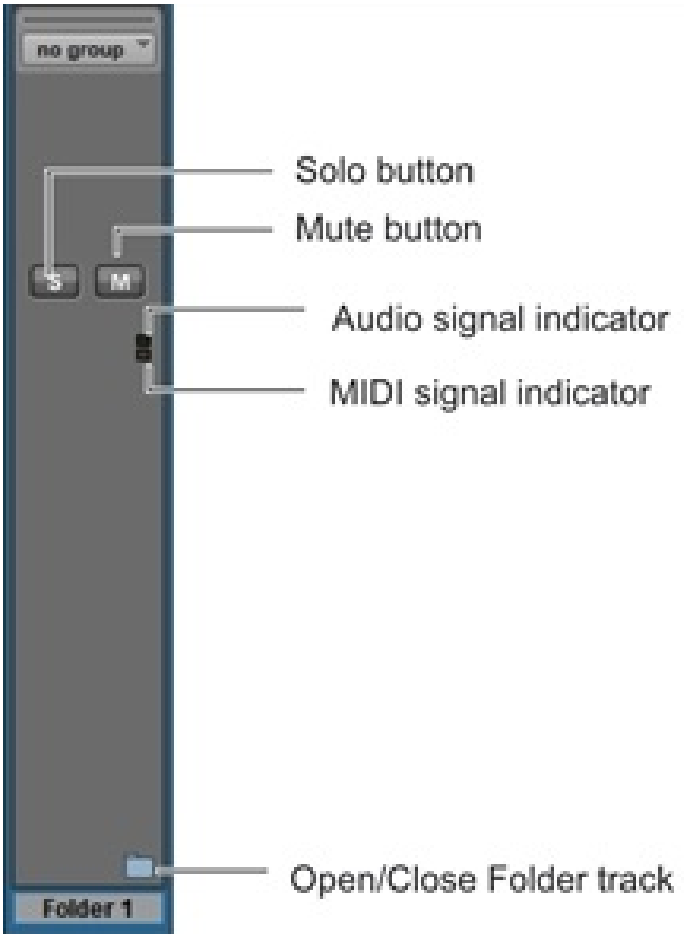
3. Type a descriptive **Name** for the Folder track, if desired.
4. Click **Create**.

Basic Folder Track Controls

Basic Folder tracks provide Solo and Mute controls that apply to all member tracks. They also provide Audio and MIDI signal indicators, which light when any member track is playing back audio or MIDI respectively.



Basic Folder track, Edit window controls and indicators



Basic Folder track, Mix window controls and indicators

Audio Signal Indicator

Lights green when any member track plays back audio (even if the track is muted). If audio from any member track clips, the border of the indicator turns either amber or red.

MIDI Signal Indicator

Lights amber when any member track plays back MIDI.

Mute

When selected (lit), all member tracks are muted.

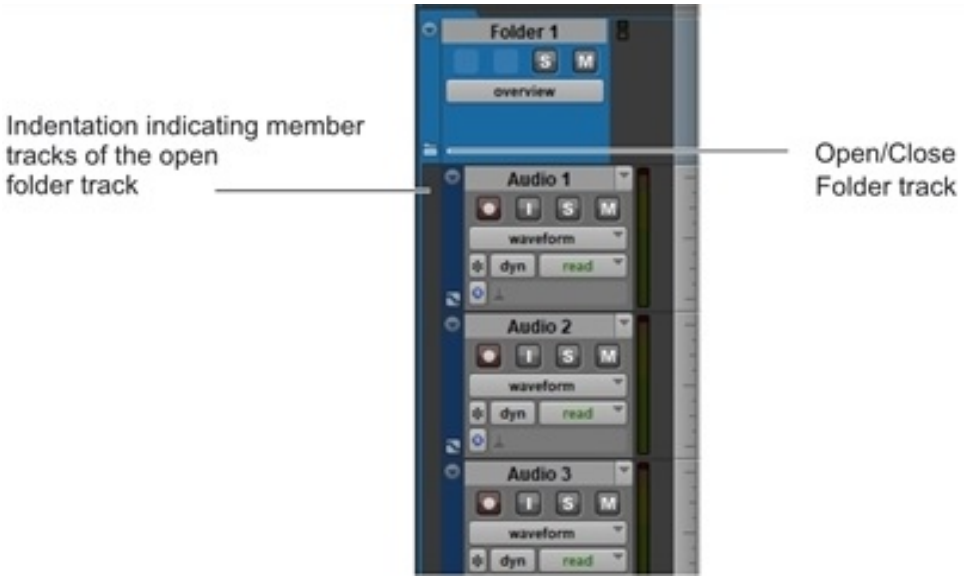
Solo

When selected (lit), all member tracks remain unmuted (except for any member tracks that were explicitly muted separately) while all other tracks that are not also soloed are muted.

Open/Close Folder

Click to open or close the Folder track. When closed, all member tracks are hidden. When open, all member tracks are shown. In the Edit window, member tracks are indented to show that they are contained by the Folder track. In the Mix window, member tracks are bracketed by the Folder track's track color.

To open or close any Folder tracks that contain the Edit cursor or are included in the Edit selection, press Shift+F.



Edit window, Basic Folder track open



Mix window, Basic Folder track open

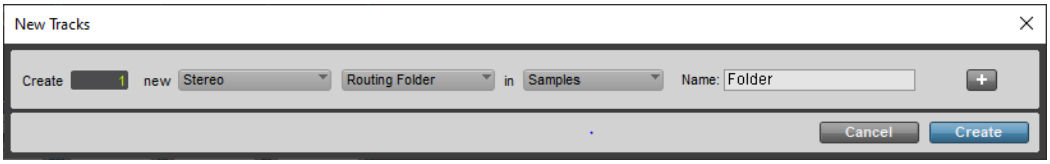
Routing Folder Tracks

Routing Folder tracks function just like Basic Folder tracks and can contain multiple tracks of any type (including other Folder tracks). They also let you route and process audio in the same way as Auxiliary Input tracks. Routing Folder tracks are especially useful for summing and stem-mixing workflows. In the Edit window, Routing Folder tracks provide Track Automation views in addition to Overview. Any edits you make on Folder tracks Overview apply to all member tracks (see "Editing Folder Tracks in Overview" on page 400).

To create a Routing Folder track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > New**.
   - Press Command+Shift+N (Mac) or Control+Shift+N (Windows).
   - Right-click the Track name of any track in the Track List, or Edit or Mix windows, and choose **New**.

2. In the New Tracks dialog, select **Routing Folder** from the Track Type selector.

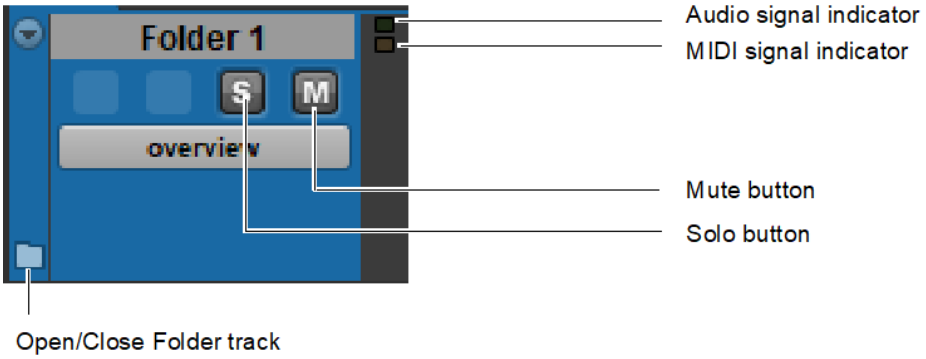


New Tracks dialog, stereo Routing Folder track selected

3. Select the desired channel width from the Track Format selector.
4. Select the desired Track Time Base.
5. Type a descriptive **Name** for the Folder track.
6. Click **Create**.

Routing Folder Track Controls

Routing Folder tracks provide the same controls and indicators as Basic Folder tracks as well as the same controls as Auxiliary Input tracks. However, be sure to note the difference in Mute behavior between Basic and Routing Folder tracks.



Routing Folder track, Edit window controls and indicators

Audio Signal Indicator

Lights green when any member track plays back audio (even if the track is muted). If audio from any member track clips, the border of the indicator turns either amber or red.

MIDI Signal Indicator

Lights amber when any member track plays back MIDI.

Mute

When selected (lit), the output of the Routing Folder track is muted. Unlike the Mute behavior with Basic Folder tracks, tracks contained by the Routing Folder are not muted, so any tracks that are not routed to the input of the Routing Folder track are potentially still audible.

Solo

When selected (lit), all member tracks remain unmuted (except for any member tracks that were explicitly muted separately) while all other tracks that are not also soloed are muted.

Track View Selector

Lets you select Overview or Track Automation views.

Automation Mode Selector

Lets you select the Automation mode for the Routing Folder track.

Track Freeze Button

Lets you Freeze (or Unfreeze) the Routing Folder track. Only the audio output of the Routing Folder track will be frozen (or unfrozen); audio from member tracks that are not routed through the Routing Folder track are not included.

Open/Close Folder

Click to open or close the Folder track. When closed, all member tracks are hidden. When open, all member tracks are shown. In the Edit window, member tracks are indented to show that they are contained by the Folder track. In the Mix window, member tracks are bracketed by the Folder track's track color.

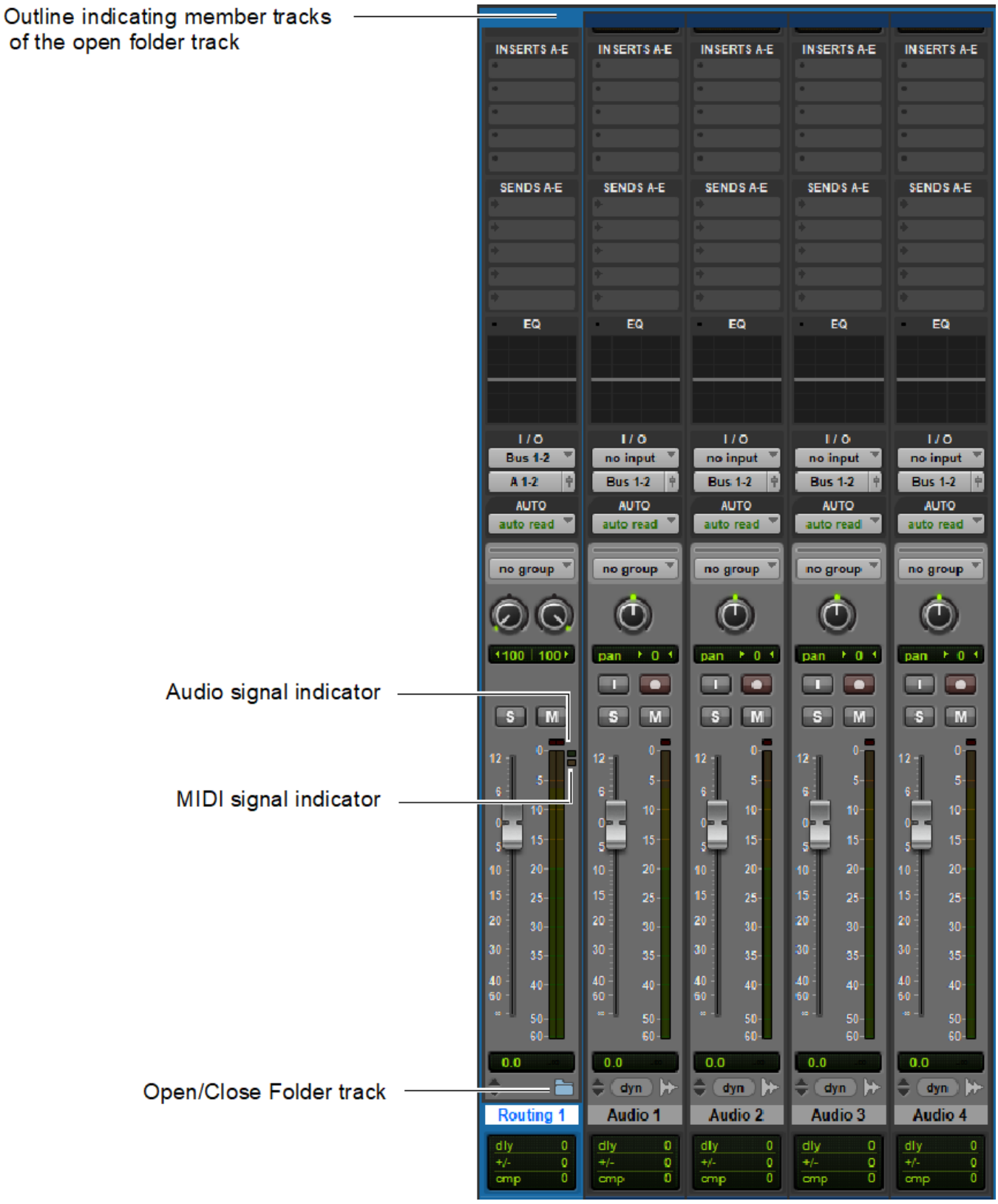
Open/Close Automation Lanes

Click to open or close Automation lanes for the Folder track. All Routing Folder track automation applies only to audio routed through the Routing Folder track.

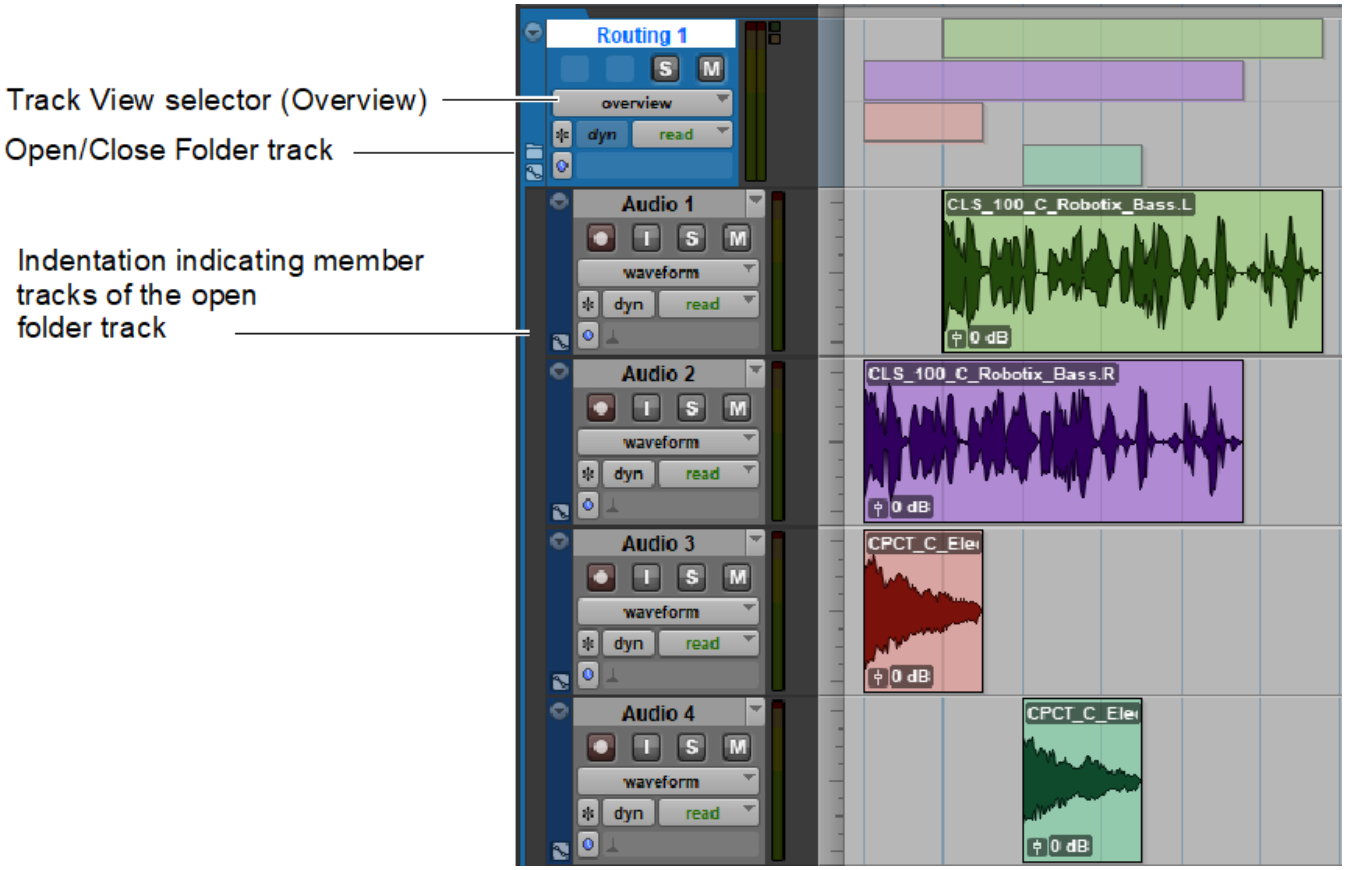
Track Timebase Selector

Lets you select the Track Timebase (**`Samples`** or **`Ticks`**).

To open or close any Folder tracks that contain the Edit cursor or are included in the Edit selection, press Shift+F.



Mix window, Routing Folder track open—output of contained audio tracks routed to input of Routing Folder track



Edit window, Routing Folder track open

Opening and Closing Folder Tracks

Folder tracks can be opened or closed to show or hide all member tracks. When opened, tracks contained by a Folder track are indented in the Edit window and Track List, and always appear in order below the Folder track. In the Mix window, tracks contained by a Folder track are outlined and always appear in order to the right of the Folder track. The track color bars at the top and bottom show folder levels and membership in the Mix window.

To open (or close) a folder track, do one of the following:

- Click the Open/Close Folder track icon on the track in either the Edit or Mix window.
- Click the reveal triangle in the Track List.
- Right-click the Folder track name in the Track List, or in the Edit or Mix window, and choose `Open` (or `Close`).

Keyboard Shortcuts and Key Modifiers for Opening and Closing Folder Tracks

Press Shift+F to open or close Folder tracks:

- In the Edit window, this affects only tracks in an Edit selection.
- In the Mix window, this affects only tracks within a track selection.
- If a non-folder track that is a member of a Folder track is selected, its parent Folder is closed.

Click a Folder icon or reveal triangle in the Track List using the following key modifiers:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to open or close the entire Folder hierarchy.
- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to open or close all Folder tracks in the same layer (sibling Folders).
- Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) to open or close all Folder tracks in the same layer (sibling Folders) and below (nested, or child Folders).
- Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) to open or close all selected Folder tracks.

In order to avoid confusion when a large number of tracks are being shown or hidden, Pro Tools does its best to keep the tracks that are currently on-screen visible while Folders are being opened or closed.

Converting an Auxiliary Input Track to a Routing Folder Track

Pro Tools lets you convert Auxiliary Input tracks to Routing Folder tracks. This is especially useful when working with projects and sessions created in earlier versions of Pro Tools. Once you have converted an Auxiliary Input track to a Routing Folder track, you can then manually add tracks to it.

To convert an Auxiliary Input track to a Routing Folder track:

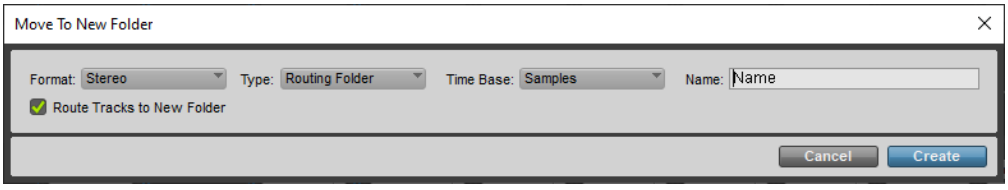
1. Select the Auxiliary Input track that you want to convert in the Edit or Mix window, or in the Track List.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > Convert Aux to Routing Folder**.
   - Right-click the name of the Auxiliary Input track in the Edit or Mix window, or in the Track List and choose **Convert Aux to Routing Folder**.

Adding Tracks to and Removing Tracks from Folder Tracks

You can add tracks to and remove tracks from Folder tracks in several different ways.

To add one or more tracks of any type to a new Folder track:

1. Select one or more tracks in the Edit or Mix window, or in the Track List that you want to add to a new Folder track.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > Move To New Folder**.
   - Press Command+Option+Shift+N (Mac) or Control+Alt+Shift+N (Windows).
   - Right-click the Track name of a selected track and choose **Move To > New Folder**.
3. In the resulting Move To New Folder dialog, do the following:
   - Select **Basic Folder** or **Routing Folder** for the **Type** selector.
   - If you selected **Routing Folder**, select the **Format**, **Time Base**, and, if desired, select **Route Tracks to New Folder**.
   - Name the new Folder track.
   - Click **Create**.



A new Basic or Routing Folder track is created and the selected tracks are moved to the new Folder track. If you created a new Routing Folder track, a new internal bus named after the new folder track is created and assigned to its track input. If you selected the **`Route Tracks to New Folder`** option, the outputs of any tracks you are moving to the new Routing Folder track are also assigned to that bus.

A new bus is always created for a new Routing Folder and assigned to its input. The outputs of new member tracks are only automatically routed to that bus if the Route Tracks to New Folder option is enabled.

To add one or more tracks of any type to an exiting Folder track:

1. Select one or more tracks in the Edit or Mix window, or in the Track List that you want to add to an existing Folder track.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click and drag any of the selected tracks to the Folder track in either the Edit or Mix window, or in the Tracks list. Orange lines indicate the target location and level.
   - Right-click the Track name of any selected track and choose **`Move To > <Folder track name>`**.

Moving a Folder track also moves all of its member tracks with it.

You cannot change the channel width of any Folder Track that contains one or more tracks.



Dragging a track to add it to a Folder track



Dragged track added to Folder

To remove one or more tracks from a Folder track:

1. If necessary, open the Folder track to view all contained tracks.
2. Select one or more tracks in the Edit or Mix window, or in the Track List that you want to remove from the Folder track.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click and drag any of the selected tracks out of the Folder to blank space or to another track location in either the Edit or Mix window, or in the Tracks list. Orange lines indicate the target location of dragged tracks.
   - Right-click the Track name of any selected track and choose **`Move To > Top Level`**.



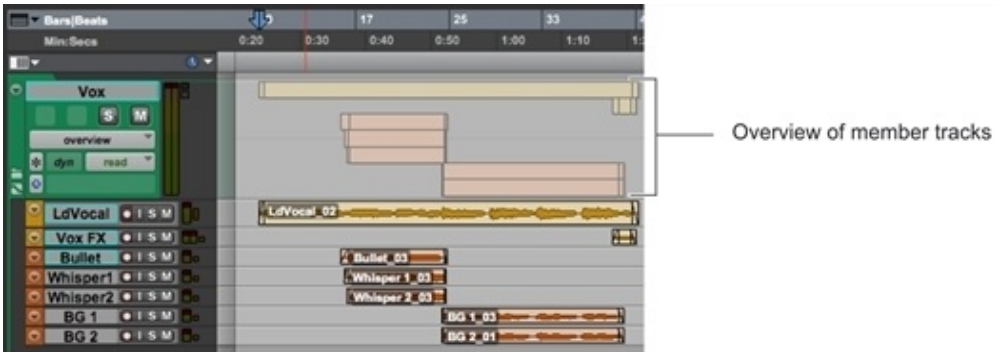
Dragging a track to remove it from a Folder track



Dragged track removed from Folder

Editing Folder Tracks in Overview

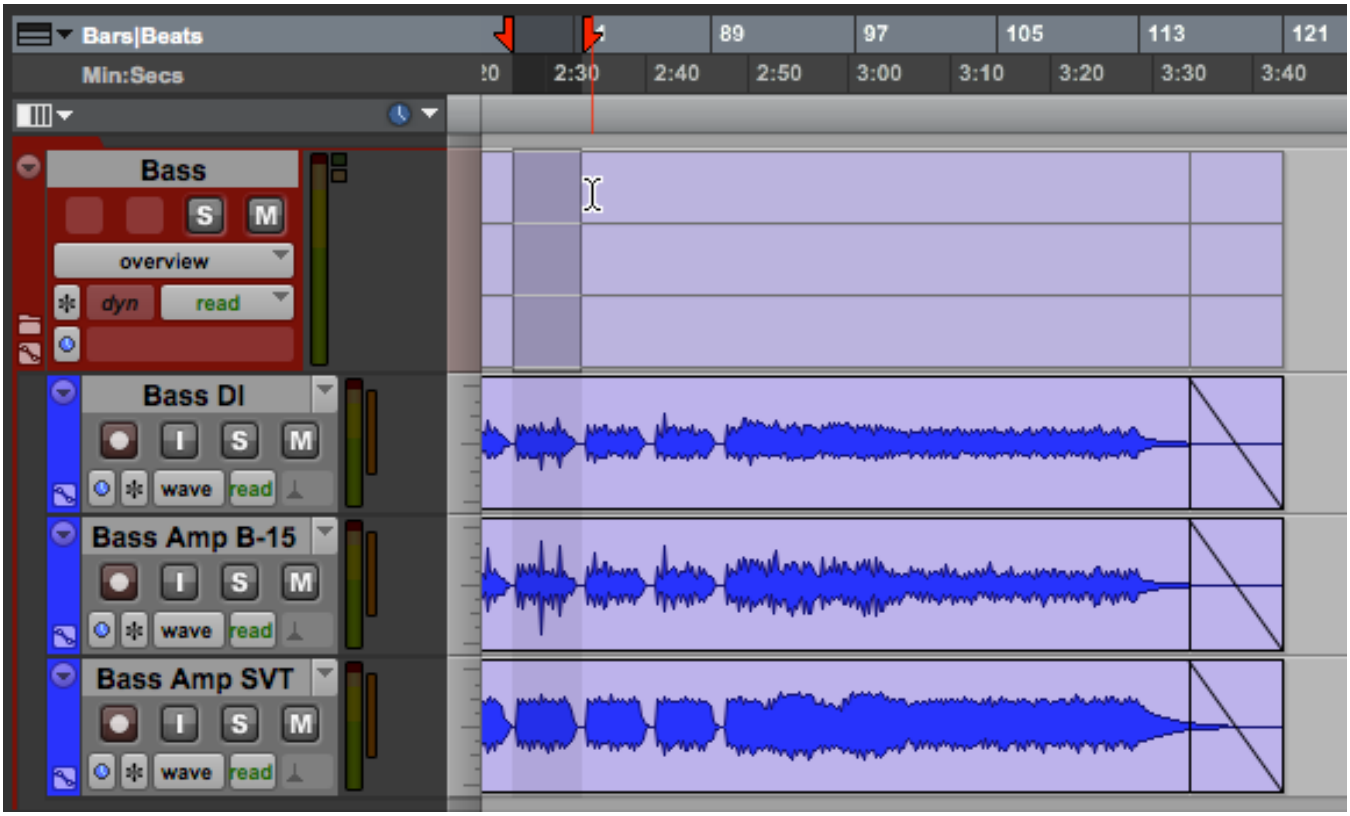
In the Edit window, Folder tracks provide the unique Overview track view that displays blocks representing clips on member tracks. This is the only track view available for Basic Folder tracks. Routing Folder tracks also let you view and edit in Track Automation views in addition to Overview.



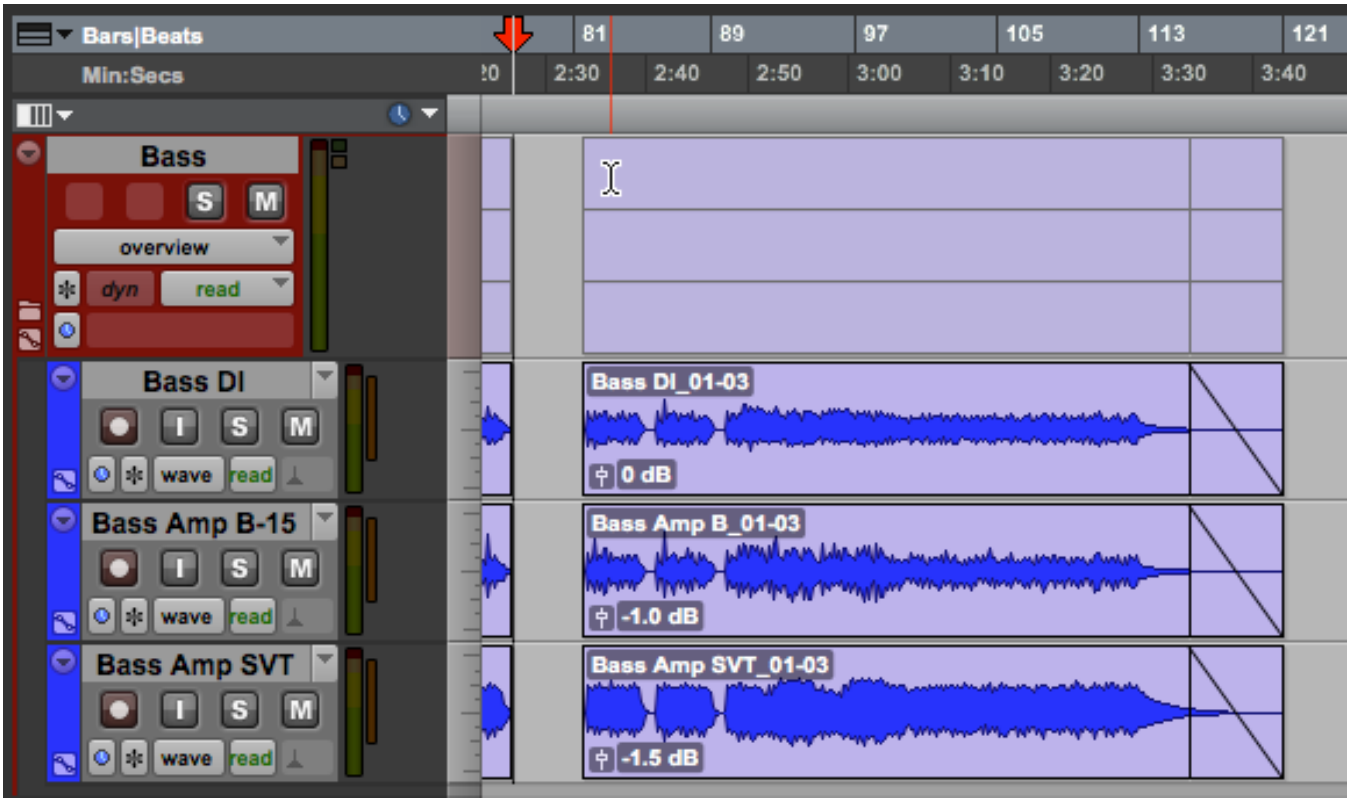
Open Folder track in Overview

Any Edit selection you make on a Folder track in Overview includes any track material within the range of the selection on all member tracks. Editing in Overview on Folder tracks applies to track material on all member tracks.

When a Folder is open, Edit selections made on a Folder track in Overview are implicitly extended to all member tracks. Most edit commands can be used without any restrictions (such as Clear, Cut, Copy, and Paste) and apply to all member tracks.



Edit Selection on Folder track in Overview



Clear applied to all member tracks

When a Folder is closed, Edit selections made in Overview are implicitly extended to all member tracks. However, not all edit commands are available for closed Folder tracks, and some restrictions apply. Commands that are unavailable for closed Folder tracks are grayed out in their respective menus.

Of course you can make explicit Edit selections in member tracks and apply edits only to specific member tracks.

Track-based edits (such as changing the color of a track), however, are not propagated to member tracks and only apply to the selected Folder track.

- *Press Option+Control+Shift+P (Mac) or Alt+Start+Shift+P (Windows) to extend the Edit selection up through member tracks.*

- *Press Option+Control+Shift+; (Mac) or Alt+Start+Shift+; (Windows) to extend the Edit selection down through member tracks.*

The following are disallowed for implicit selections on member tracks whether the Folder track is open or closed:

- Commit (Track menu)
- Toggling bypass of inserts and sends

The following are restricted on closed Folder tracks:

- Select/Split Notes (MIDI Operations)
- Step Input (MIDI Operations)
- Record Enable
- Input Monitor

- Special edit commands for plugin automation
- Real-Time Properties
- Elastic Properties

Modifier Keys for Folder Track Selections

The following key modifiers can be used to make track selections in the Edit and Mix windows, as well as the Track List:

- Option-Control-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-click (Windows) any track in the Edit or Mix windows, or in the Track List to select all tracks in the same layer (siblings).
- Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) a track in the Track List to select (or deselect) siblings in different Folders.
- Option-Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-Shift-click (Windows) to extend the selection to sibling tracks.

Editing Routing Folder Track Automation

Routing Folder tracks let you view and edit track automation, such as `Volume`, either in the corresponding track view or in Automation lanes. Routing Folder track automation is independent of any automation on member tracks, and editing Routing Folder track automation does not affect the automation on member tracks.

15 Track Presets

Pro Tools lets you create, save, overwrite, and recall Track Presets. A Track Preset captures the current configuration of the selected track or tracks, and can include the track type, format, level, panning, plugin and send configurations, and more. You can recall Track Presets to create new pre-configured tracks in your session. You can also recall Inserts or Sends configurations from Track Presets to tracks that are already in your session.

Track Presets are available for recall in the Track Type selector in the New Tracks dialog. Track Presets can also be recalled from a Workspace browser to create new tracks. You can use Workspace browsers to organize, manage, and search your collection of Track Presets, so you always have easy access to the perfect Track Presets for any session or project.

Creating and Saving Track Presets

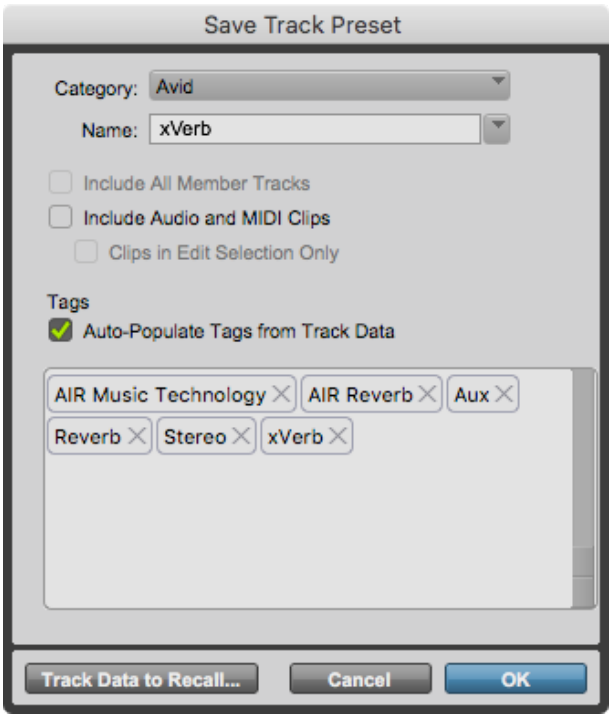
You can save any selected track or tracks in your session as a Track Preset. A Track Preset captures the current configuration of the selected track or tracks.

To create and save a new Track Preset:

1. Create and configure one or more tracks for any of your common workflow scenarios (such as “lead vocal input chain,” or “drums parallel compression bus,” and so on).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select the track or tracks and choose **Track > Save Track Preset**.
   - Right-click the track name and choose **Save Track Preset**.
   - Select the track or tracks and press Option+Shift+P (Mac) or Alt+Shift+P (Windows).
3. Configure the Save Track Preset dialog as desired (see "Save Track Preset Dialog Settings" below).
4. Click **OK**.

Save Track Preset Dialog Settings

The Save Track Preset dialog lets you name the preset, assign it to a category, and include audio and MIDI clips (all clips or only clips within the current Edit selection). Add metadata tags to your Track Presets to make searching for the perfect Track Preset in a Workspace browser even easier. You can rename and re-categorize Track Presets later in any Workspace browser.



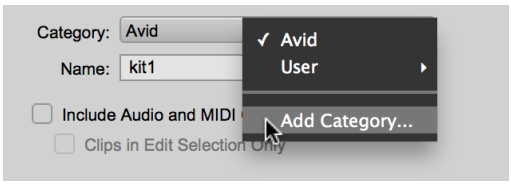
Save Track Preset dialog

Category

From the **Category** selector, assign the Track Preset to an appropriate category. If the appropriate category for the preset doesn't yet exist, create a new one.

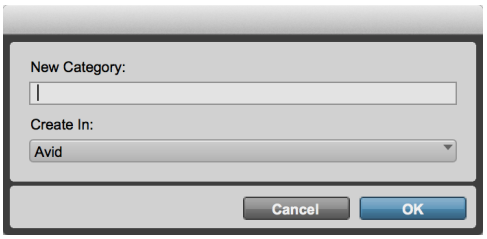
To create a new Track Preset Category:

1. In the Save Track Preset dialog, choose **Add Category** from the **Category** selector.



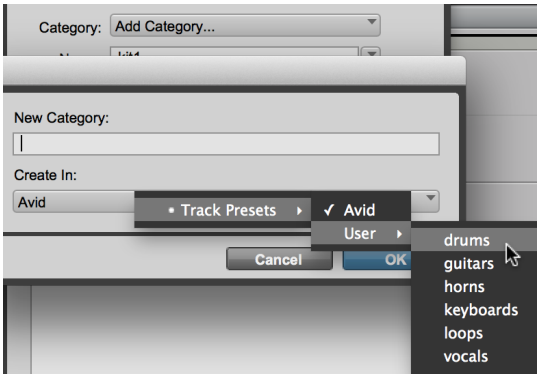
Adding a Track Preset Category

2. In the resulting dialog, type the name for the **New Category**.



Naming a new Track Preset Category

3. If desired, select the directory in which you want your new category to be created.



Selecting the directory in which to create a new Track Preset Category

4. Click **OK**.

The new category is added to the available Track Preset Categories.

Press Command+Left/Right Arrow keys (Mac) or Control+Left/Right Arrow keys (Windows) to cycle through the available Categories.

Name

The **Name** field is pre-populated with the track name. You can continue using the track name for the preset, type a new name, or select the name of an existing preset to overwrite it.

Press Command+Up/Down Arrow keys (Mac) or Control+Up/Down Arrow keys (Windows) to cycle through the Name menu.

Include All Member Tracks

When saving a Folder track as a Track Preset, you can either save the Folder track as an empty folder or with all member tracks. To include all member tracks with the Track Preset, enable the **Include All Member Tracks** option in the Save Track Preset dialog. Folder track hierarchies are maintained when Track Presets are saved and recalled.

Include Audio and MIDI Clips

Enable **Include Audio and MIDI Clips** to include any audio or MIDI clips on the track with the Track Preset. This can be useful if you often work with loops, for example.

Press Command+I (Mac) or Control+I (Windows) to enable or disable the Include Audio and Media Clips option.

Clips in Edit Selection Only

Enable **Clips in Edit Selection Only** to include only whole audio and MIDI clips, and any associated automation data that is within the current Edit selection. Use this option in conjunction with **Track Offset Options** set in the Track Data To Recall dialog to place included media at any desired Timeline location in any other session or project (see "Track Data to Recall" on the next page).

The beginning of the Edit selection is defined as the first sample of the saved Track Preset.

Press Command+N (Mac) or Control+N (Windows) to enable or disable the Clips in Edit Selection Only option.

Tags

Add metadata tags to Track Presets to narrow searches for Track Presets in Workspace browsers.

Auto-populate tags from Track Data

Enable **Auto-populate tags from Track Data** to automatically create tags based on the following Track Data: Plugin Manufacturers, Plugin Names, Plugin Categories, Plugin Preset (if unmodified), Track Types, Track Names, and Track Width.

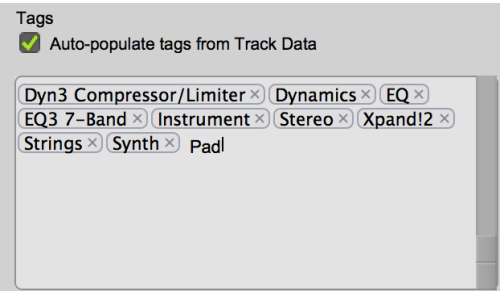
Press Command+T (Mac) or Control+T (Windows) to enable or disable the Auto-populate Tags from Track Data option.

Tags Field

Type descriptive tags for the Track Preset in the Tags field.

To add a tag to a Track Preset:

1. Click in the Tags filed and type the tag you want (for example, “Strings,” “Synth,” or “Pad”).
2. Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) to assign each new tag that you type.



Entering tags in the Tags field

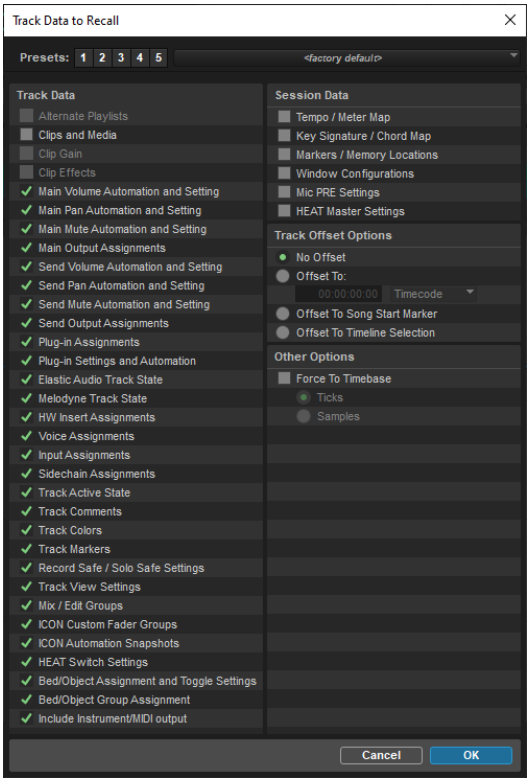
To remove a tag from a Track Preset:

- Click the **x** on the right-edge of the tag.

Use the Left and Right Arrow keys to navigate tags. Press Delete to remove a selected tag.

Track Data to Recall

Pro Tools lets you specify what Track and Session data to recall with the Track Preset. These settings can be modified in a Workspace browser for any selected Track Preset (see "Track Presets in Workspace Browsers" on page 413).



Track Data to Recall dialog

Press Command+R (Mac) or Control+R (Windows) to open the Track Data To Recall dialog from the Save Track Preset dialog.

When recalling a Track Preset by any means, press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) to open and edit the Track Data to Import dialog. You can then specify what Track Data you want to recall.

Clips and media will only be stored with a Track Preset if the ***Clips and Media*** *option is enabled.*

Track Data to Recall Presets

Pro Tools lets you store and recall different configurations of the Track Data to Recall dialog as presets. The Presets controls for the Track Data to Recall dialog work much like the Presets controls for Batch Renaming, Fades, and Clip Effects.

Presets Buttons

The Track Data to Recall dialog provides five **Presets** buttons that let you store and recall your most commonly used Track Data to Recall configurations. You can also save and recall Track Data to Recall settings using the Librarian menu.

To store a Track Data to Recall preset:

1. Configure the Track Data to Recall dialog as you like.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the **Presets** button where you want to store the current Track Data to Recall settings.

To recall a Track Data to Recall preset:

- Click the **Presets** button that contains the settings you want to recall.

Librarian Menu

Use the Librarian menu to save and recall presets files (.ptpreset). These are usually saved to and recalled from the Track Data to Recall folder (/Documents/Pro Tools/Pro Tools Presets/Track Data to Recall/). However, you can save to and recall from any directory location on your system. Preset files can be shared and used on any other Pro Tools system as well.

The Librarian menu commands include:

‹factory default›

Restores the default settings for the Track Data to Recall dialog.

Save Settings

Saves the current settings. This command overwrites any previous version of the preset.

- *Press Command+Shift+S (Mac) or Control+Shift+S (Windows) to save the current settings.*

Save Settings As

Saves the current settings as a new preset. You can name the preset and save it to any location on your system.

Import Settings

Opens the Choose a Settings File dialog focused on the default Track Data to Recall folder. Track Data to Recall Settings files stored in this location are listed by name under **<factory default>** in the Librarian menu. In the Choose a Settings File dialog, you can navigate to any location on your system to select and import the Track Data to Recall Settings preset file you want.

Delete Current Settings File

Permanently deletes the current settings file from disk.

Lock (Unlock) Settings File

Locks (or unlocks) the selected Settings file so that it cannot (or can) be edited.

Track Data

Pro Tools lets you include (or exclude) Track Data with Track Presets. For a complete list of Track Data options with descriptions, see "Track Data to Import" on page 682.

Session Data

Pro Tools lets you include (or exclude) the following Session Data with Track Presets: For a complete list of Session Data options with descriptions, see "Importing Session Data" on page 670.

Track Offset Options

Pro Tools lets you specify a Track Offset in addition to any offset incurred with the **Timecode Mapping Options**. Any imported audio is offset in the current session or project Timeline by the specified amount.

Select one of the following options:

No Offset

No Track Offset is applied.

Offset To

Lets you specify the Track Offset to a Timeline location in **Bars|Beats**, **Min:Sec**, **Timecode**, **Feet+Frames**, or **Samples**.

Offset to Song Start Marker

Locates the Track Offset to the Session Song Start Marker.

Offset to Timeline Selection

Locates the Track Offset to the start of the current Timeline Selection.

Other Options

Pro Tools lets you set the current Track Preset to Recall settings to be Tick-based or as a Sample-based track.

Force to Timebase

Enable the **Force to Timebase** option to ensure that the Track Preset is always imported in the selected Timebase:

Ticks

Ensures that the Track Preset imports as Tick-based.

Samples

Ensures that the Track Preset imports as Sample-based.

Track Presets Files

All Track Presets are stored as and recalled from Track Presets files (.ptxp). By default, Pro Tools installs and looks for Track Presets files in the following locations:

Mac

```
Macintosh HD/Users/<username>/Documents/Pro Tools/Track Presets
```

Windows

```
C:\Users\<username>\Documents\Pro Tools\Track Presets
```

Customize the location for storing Track Preset files in Preferences › Operation › Documentation and Settings.

Track Presets can be stored in sub-folders within the designated directories so you can organize your Track Presets by sub-categories. Pro Tools displays these as sub-menus when selecting Track Presets in the application.

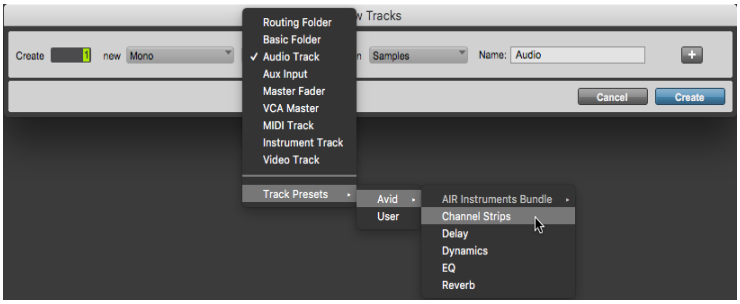
Creating New Tracks from Track Presets

You can create new tracks from Tracks Presets using the New Tracks dialog or the Track Right-click menu, or by drag and drop from a Workspace browser (see "Track Presets in Workspace Browsers" on page 413).

Track Presets in the New Tracks Dialog

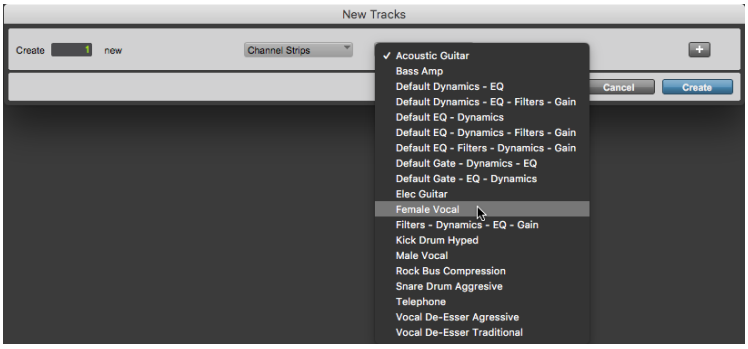
To create a new track from a Track Preset:

1. Choose **Tracks > New Track**.
2. From the Track Type selector, choose Track Presets and select the Track Preset Category (such as “Avid”).



Selecting the Track Preset Category

3. Select the Track Preset.



Selecting a Track Preset

4. Click **`Create`**.

The Track Preset is recalled into the session as a new track (or as new tracks) according to the current Track Data to Recall settings.

Track Presets in the New Tracks Dialog from Track Output Selector

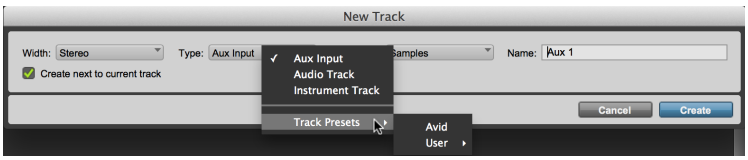
To create a new track from a Track Preset using the Track Output Selector:

1. Click the Output selector of a track and choose **`New Track`**.



Creating a New Track from a Track Output selector

2. From the Track Type selector, choose Track Presets and select the Track Preset Category (such as “Avid”).



Selecting the Track Preset Category

3. Select the Track Preset.



Creating a new track from a Track Preset

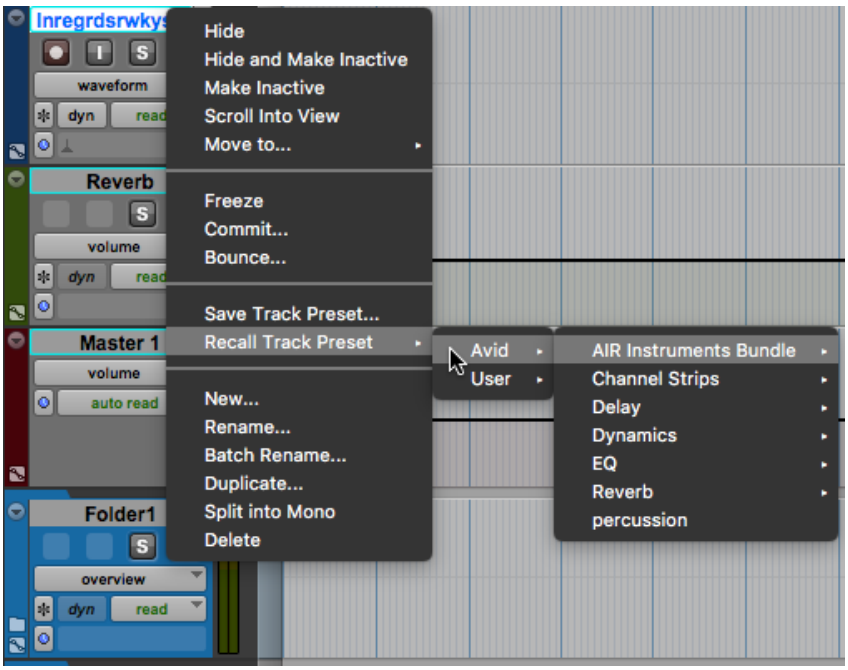
4. Click **Create**.

The Track Preset is recalled into the session as a new track (or as new tracks) according to the current Track Data to Recall settings.

Track Presets in the Tracks Right-Click Menu

To configure a track from a Track Preset using the Track Right-click menu:

1. Right-click any Track Name in the Track List, or in the Edit or Mix windows.
2. From the Right-click menu, choose **Recall Track Preset** and select the Track Preset you want to recall.



Selecting a Track Preset from the Track Right-click menu

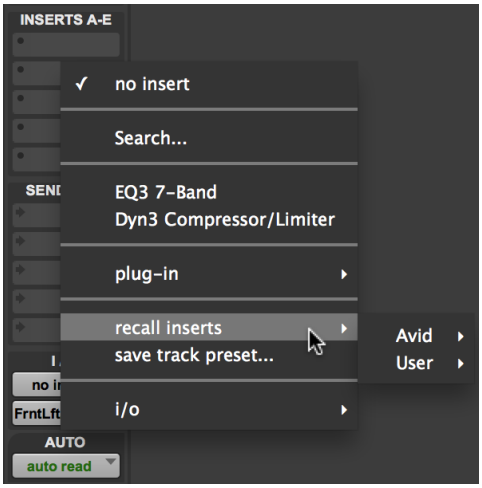
Recalling Inserts from Track Presets

Pro Tools lets you recall Inserts saved in a Track Preset. This lets you quickly configure any track with common effects chains saved in Track Presets.

Plugins recalled from Track Presets adapt to the format of the current track when possible. For example, if a Track Preset was saved as stereo, but you are recalling Inserts from it to a 5.1 track, any plugins stored with that Track Preset that support 5.1 are recalled as 5.1 inserts. However, if a plugin does not support the track format (for example, in this case, if there is no 5.1 version of a plugin saved with the Track Preset), it is not recalled.

To recall inserts from a Track Preset, do one of the following:

- Drag and drop a Track Preset from a Workspace browser to the Inserts view of an existing track.
- Choose a Track Preset from the **Recall Inserts** submenu in the Inserts selector of an existing track.

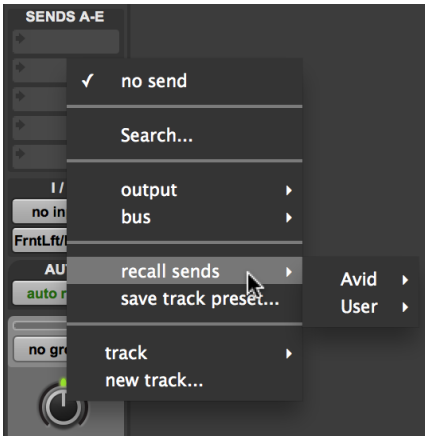


Recalling Track Presets to Sends

Pro Tools lets you recall Sends configurations saved in a Track Preset. This lets you quickly configure any track with common send configurations saved in Track Presets.

To recall sends from a Track Preset, do one of the following:

- Drag and drop a Track Preset from a Workspace browser to the Sends view of an existing track.
- Choose a Track Preset from the **Recall Sends** submenu in the Sends selector of an existing track.



Track Presets in Workspace Browsers

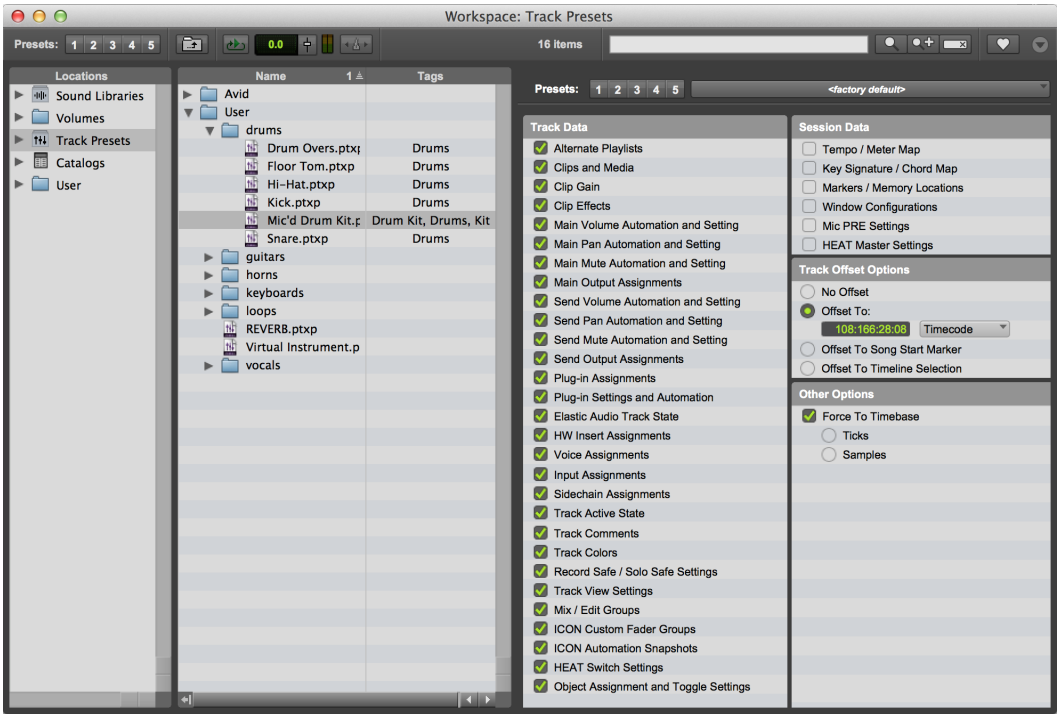
Workspace browsers provide easy access to all of your Track Presets from the **Track Presets** alias in the Locations pane. Subdirectories of the Track Presets location let you organize Track Presets by Category—each subdirectory appears as a Track Preset Category in the New Tracks dialog. Search for Track Presets by name, category, or by matching metadata tags (just like with Soundbase) in any Workspace browser.

To open new Workspace browser focused on Track Presets:

- Choose **Window > New Workspace > Track Presets**.

To recall Track Presets from the Workspace into a session and create new tracks, do one of the following:

- Drag and drop a Track Preset to the Track List or to blank space in the Mix or Edit windows.
- Double-click a Track Preset.
- Right-click a Track Preset and choose **`Recall Track Preset`**.



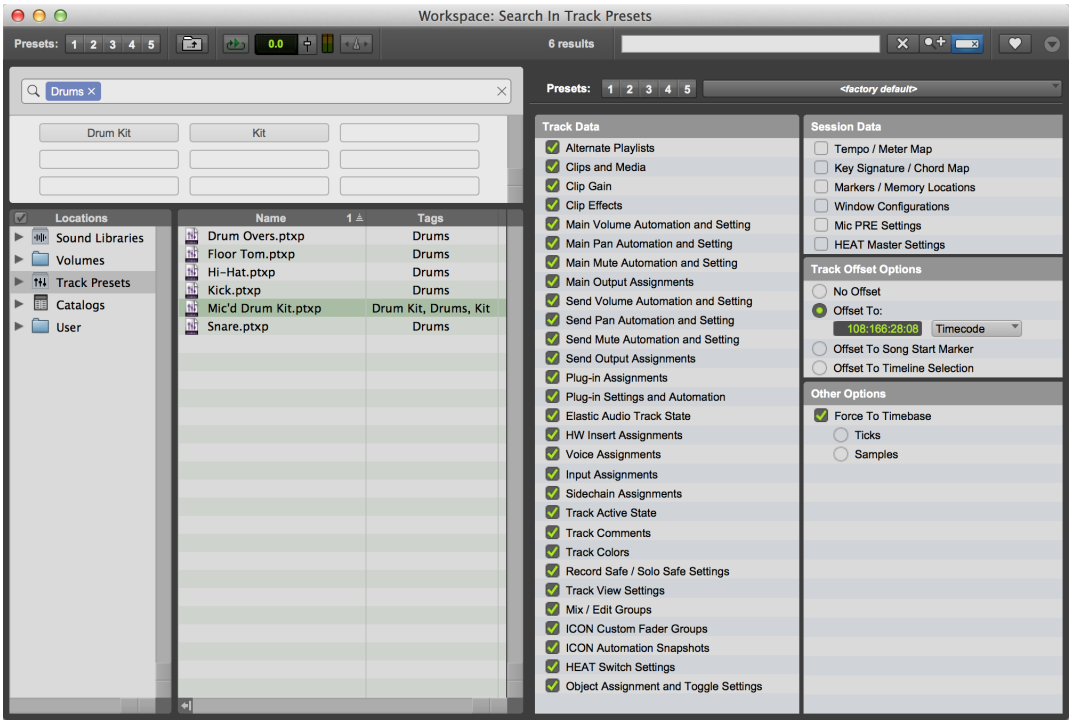
Track Preset selected in a Workspace browser showing Track Data to Recall

Tagging Track Presets

Pro Tools lets you add metadata tags to Track Presets just like with Soundbase. For more information about working with tags, see the *Pro Tools Reference Guide*.

Searching Track Presets

Pro Tools lets you search for track presets in a Workspace browser using basic or advanced search criteria, or by searching on metadata tags. For more information about searching in Workspace browsers, see "Searching Items" on page 516.



Searching Track Presets with Tags in a Workspace

Filtering Track Data when Recalling Track Presets from Workspace

When a Track Preset is selected in the search pane of a Workspace browser, the Track Data to Recall settings for the selected Track Preset appears in its own pane on the right side of the Workspace browser. These settings are the same as those in the Track Data to Recall dialog. You can edit the Track Data to Recall settings for the selected Track Preset in the Workspace browser. The Track Preset is updated with any changes you make. These settings are applied when you recall the Track Preset from the Workspace browser or when you create a new track (**`Track > New`**) from the Track Preset.

For more information about the Track Data to Recall settings, see "Track Data to Recall" on page 407.

Dragging Track Presets from a Workspace Browser

You can recall Track Presets by dragging and dropping them from Workspace browsers to your session or project.

Dragging to the Track List, or Edit or Mix Windows

Drag and drop a Track Preset from a Workspace browser to the Track List, or to the Edit or Mix window to create new tracks from the Track Preset. See also "Creating New Tracks from Track Presets" on page 410.

Dragging to Inserts

Drag and drop a Track Preset from a Workspace browser to a track's Inserts view in the Edit or Mix window to recall Inserts from the Track Preset. See also "Recalling Inserts from Track Presets" on page 412.

Dragging to Sends

Drag and drop a Track Preset from a Workspace browser to a track's Sends view in the Edit or Mix window to recall Sends configurations from the Track Preset. See also "Recalling Track Presets to Sends" on page 413.

Dragging to a Track Name

Drag and drop a Track Preset from a Workspace browser to a Track Name in the Edit or Mix window to configure that track based on the Track Preset. If the Track Preset contains more than one track, on the first track stored with the Track Preset is recalled.

Press Option+Shift (Mac) or Alt+Shift (Windows) when dragging and dropping to configure all tracks based on the Track Preset.

Importing Multiple Presets from Workspace Browser Simultaneously

Pro Tools lets you import an entire folder of Track Presets from Workspace browsers with a single command. Similarly, you can import a selection of multiple Track Presets at once.

To import all of the Track Presets in a folder:

1. Locate the folder of Track Presets you want to recall in a Workspace browser.
2. Right-click the folder and choose **`Import Track Preset`**.

All Track Presets are recalled to create new tracks in your session or project.

To recall a selection of Track Presets:

1. Locate the Track Presets you want to recall in a Workspace browser.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Track Presets you want to import.
3. Right-click one of the selected Track Presets and choose **`Import Track Preset`**.

All selected Track Presets are imported to create new tracks in your session or project.

16 Grouping Tracks

Pro Tools provides a relative grouping function for linking tracks and their controls.

Groups are useful for editing several tracks in exactly the same way, or for mixing several tracks (such as a pair of stereo tracks or a submix) while keeping them at the same relative volume level.

Pro Tools provides the following grouping features:

- Up to 104 different groups are available, arranged in 4 banks of 26 Group IDs.
- Groups can be nested (subgroups within groups).
- Grouped faders or controllers preserve their levels relative to each other.
- Groups are assignable to an available VCA Master track.

Mix Groups, Edit Groups, and Mix/Edit Groups

Mix Groups only affect mixing functions and Edit Groups only affect editing. Mix/Edit Groups link the grouping functions of the Mix Group and the Edit Group.

Edit Groups

Edit Groups affect the following items in the Edit and MIDI Editor windows:

- Track View
- Track Height
- Track Timebase
- Audio and MIDI editing functions
- Automation editing functions
- Rulers

Mix Groups

Mix Groups can be set to affect the following items:

- Main Mute
- Solo
- Send Level
- Send Mute
- Main Volume
- Main Pan
- Main LFE Level (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Record Enable
- Input Monitoring
- Automation Mode
- Object Controls (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio with Dolby Atmos only)
- Send Pan

- Send LFE Level (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Plugin Controls
- Plugin Bypass

In Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, when the Main Pan attribute is enabled for groups, grouped behavior applies to the Link, Front inverse, Rear inverse and Front/Rear inverse controls in stereo and multichannel panner windows.

Grouping Limitations

Grouping does not affect these parameters:

- Voice assignment
- Output assignment
- Inserting plugins
- Elastic Audio plugins

Selectable Group Attributes

You can select which parameters, or *attributes*, are linked in groups by the following methods:

- By making the group an Edit Group, a Mix Group, or both (Mix/Edit Group).
- With Mix and Mix/Edit Groups, by selecting from a list of attributes for the group.
- With Mix Groups in Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only, by choosing whether the selected attributes apply globally to all groups or to individual groups.

Mix Groups and VCA Masters

An existing Mix Group can be assigned to a VCA Master, or a new Mix Group can be assigned to a VCA Master while it is being created. Only one group can be assigned to a VCA Master at a time. A VCA Master cannot control a group that includes itself.

For information on assigning groups to VCA Masters, see "Assigning Groups to VCA Masters" on page 1456.

Group Controls

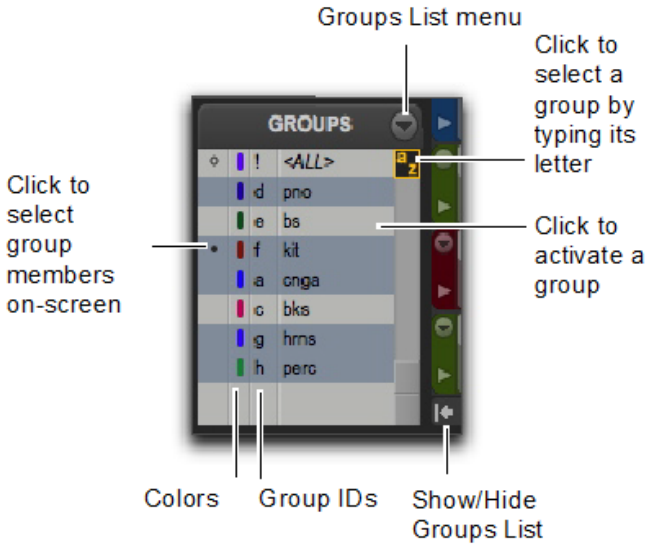
Menus and commands for creating and modifying groups are accessible in the following:

- Groups List
- Group name in the Groups List
- Group ID indicator on a track
- **`Track > Group`** menu

The Groups List

The Pro Tools track grouping functions are located at the left side of the Mix, Edit, and MIDI Editor windows in the Groups List. This scrolling window contains the names of all the groups in your session, as well as a pop-up menu for accessing grouping commands. From this menu, you can select and enable groups.

By default, every session has a group named *All*, which includes every track in the session. The *All* group cannot be edited or deleted.



Groups List

Show/Hide Track List/Groups List View Button

To show the Groups List (and Track List):

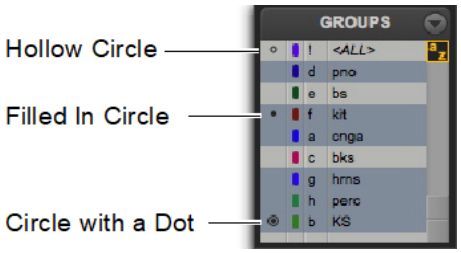
- Click the Show/Hide Track List/Groups List View button in the Mix, Edit, or MIDI Editor window.

Group ID

To the left of each name in the Groups List is a letter denoting its Group ID (“a” through “z”).

Group Symbols

To the left of each Group ID (“a” through “z”) is a symbol indicating whether that group is selected in the current window (either the Mix or Edit window). There are three types of Group symbols, as shown in the following figure:



The Group symbols indicate the following:

- Filled-in Circle

  Indicates that all members of the group are currently selected, and no members from outside the group are selected.

- Hollow Circle

  Indicates that only some members of the group are currently selected.

- Circle with a Dot

  Indicates that all members of the group are currently selected, plus additional members *outside* the group.

Groups List Menu

The pop-up menu at the top of the Groups List provides the following commands:

New Group

Executes the **Track > Group** command.

Display

Provides commands to show Edit groups only, Mix groups only, or all groups (Edit, Mix, and Mix/Edit).

Suspend All Groups

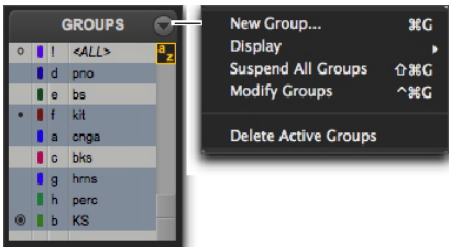
Suspends group behavior for all Mix and Edit groups.

Modify Groups

Opens Group dialog to modify existing groups only.

Delete Active Groups

Deletes only currently active groups.



Groups List menu

Group Name and Track Group ID Indicator Pop-Up Menus

When you Right-click on a group name in the Groups List or click a Group ID indicator in a track, a pop-up menu provides the following commands:

Tracks

Displays track membership in group.

Attributes

Displays attributes of group.

Modify

Opens Group dialog to modify existing groups only.

Duplicate

Opens Group dialog for duplicated group.

Delete

Deletes a single group.

Select Tracks in Group

Selects tracks in the group.

Show/Hide Tracks in Group

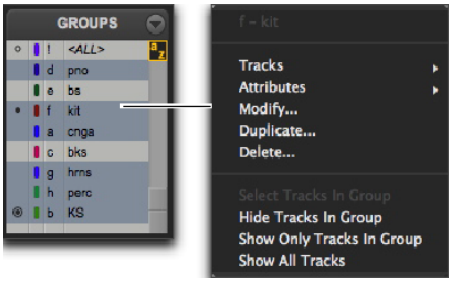
Shows or hides tracks in the current group.

Show Only Tracks in Group

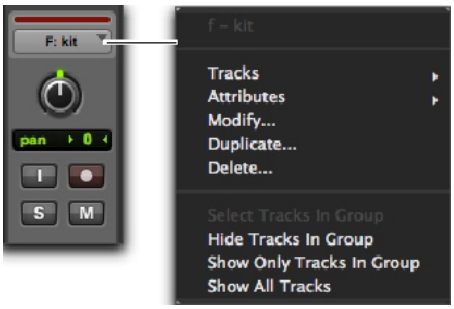
Shows only the tracks in the group and hides all other tracks.

Show All Tracks

Shows all tracks in the session.



Group Name pop-up menu



Group ID indicator pop-up menu

Group Dialog

Whether you are creating or modifying groups with the Groups List, a track's Group ID indicator, or the **`Track > Group`** menu command, you use the Groups dialog.

The Group dialog lets you create new groups and assign attributes to groups.

Group Dialog

The Group dialog has three pages:

Tracks

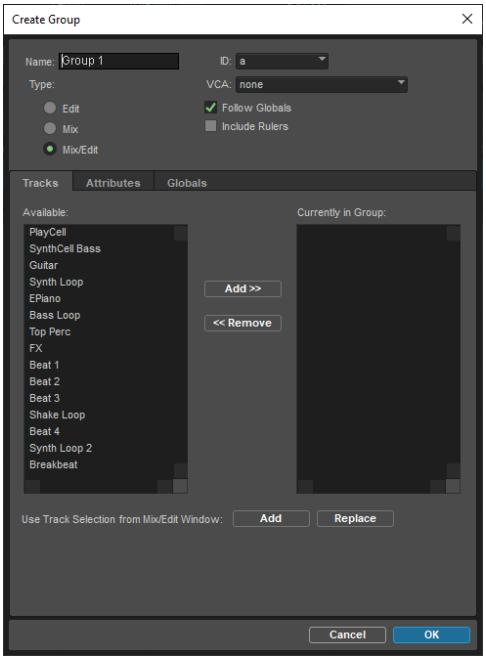
Lets you add and remove tracks from the current group.

Attributes

Lets you select which parameters are linked for the current Mix or Mix/Edit Group.

Globals

Lets you select parameters to use as a template that can be applied to individual groups by selecting the **`Follow Globals`** option.



Group dialog

Working with Groups

Creating Groups

You can select the tracks you want to add to a group before creating it, or add and remove tracks from a group after it has been created.

Creating Groups

To create a group:

1. Select the tracks you want to include in the group. (If you do not select tracks at this time, you can add tracks later.)
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > Group**.
   - Choose **New Group** from the Groups List menu.
3. Type a name for the group.
4. Select the type of group to create: **Edit**, **Mix**, or **Mix/Edit**.
5. Choose a Group ID from the **ID** pop-up menu. Four banks of 26 are available: **a–z**, **2a–z**, **3a–z**, **4a–z**. (If you do not choose a Group ID, Pro Tools automatically assigns the next available ID to a new group.)
6. Click Tracks in the Group dialog, and do any of the following:
   - To add the tracks that are currently selected in the session to the group, click the **Add** button at the bottom of the Group dialog.
   - To add tracks to the group, select the track names in the Available Track List, and click **Add** or press A on the computer keyboard.
   - To remove tracks from the group, select the track names in the Currently In Groups List, and click **Remove** or press R on the computer keyboard.

- Double-click track names in either list to move them to the opposite column.
- To replace all tracks in the group with the tracks that are currently selected in the session, click the **Replace** button at the bottom of the Group dialog.

In either list, Shift-click to select a range of track names. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select discontiguous track names.

7. If the group is a Mix Group or a Mix/Edit Group, do the following:
   a. Set the Attributes for the Group (see "Setting Group Attributes" on page 425).
   b. If you want to assign the group to an available VCA, select the VCA Master track from the **VCA** pop-up menu.
8. Click **OK**.

Modifying Groups

To modify a group:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Modify Groups** from the Groups List menu.
   - In the Mix window, click the Group ID indicator on a track and choose **Modify** from the pop-up menu.
   - Right-click the Group name in the Groups List and choose **Modify** from the pop-up menu.
2. In the Groups dialog, choose the group you want to modify from the **ID** pop-up menu.
3. Change any of the following for the current group:
   - Group name
   - Group type (**Edit**, **Mix**, or **Mix/Edit**)
   - VCA status
   - **Follows Global** status
   - **Include Rulers** status
   - Track membership
   - Attributes
   - **Linked Within Group** items
4. Click **OK**.

To modify the settings for the "All" group:

1. Right-click the "All" group name in the Groups List and choose **Modify** from the pop-up menu.
2. In the Group dialog, select **Edit**, **Mix**, or **Mix/Edit** to change the settings for the "All" group. If you select **Edit** only or **Mix** only, the "All" group will apply only to that Group type.



Modify ALL Group dialog

3. For Mix or Mix/Edit Groups, you can change any of the following:
   - **Follows Globals** status
   - **Include Rulers** status
   - Mix Attributes
4. Click **OK**.

Deleting Groups

One or all groups can be deleted at a time.

Deleting a group cannot be undone.

To delete a single group, do one of the following:

- In the Mix window, click the Group ID indicator on a track and choose **Delete** from the pop-up menu.
- Right-click the Group name in the Groups List and choose **Delete** from the pop-up menu.

To delete all currently active groups

- Choose Delete Active Groups from the Groups List menu.

The "All" group cannot be deleted.

Duplicating Groups

You can duplicate a group and modify its settings in order to quickly set up a mix.

To duplicate a group:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Group ID indicator on a track and choose **Duplicate** from the pop-up menu.
   - Right-click the Group name in the Groups List and choose **Duplicate** from the pop-up menu.
2. Change any of the following for the current group:
   - Group name
   - Group type (Edit, Mix, or Mix/Edit)
   - VCA status (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
   - **Follows Global** status (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
   - Track membership
   - Attributes (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
   - **Linked Within Group** items (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
3. Click **OK**.

Making Selections in Grouped Tracks

When making a selection a track in waveform view, the selection is made in all tracks in the group. However, making a selection in a track in automation view selects only tracks in the same group that are also in automation view.

To ensure a selection of a grouped track applies to all tracks in the group, make the selection in a track in Waveform, Blocks, Overview, or MIDI view.

If you make a selection in a track in an Automation view, it will only select in other tracks if they are displaying an Automation view. This prevents accidental editing of audio or MIDI when the intent is to edit Automation only.

Setting Group Attributes

When creating a Mix Group or a Mix/Edit Group, you can select the Mix window parameters that will be linked for that group. These linked parameters are the *attributes* of the group.

You can select attributes in the Globals page and then set individual groups to follow the Global settings, or you can select attributes for groups individually.

Selecting Attributes in the Globals Page

To select attributes in the Globals page:

1. While creating or modifying a group, click Globals in the Group dialog.



2. Select the base set of attributes for groups in your session.
3. Click **OK** to save the group and the new Globals settings.

For information on selecting attributes, see "Selecting Group Attributes" on the next page.

To select attributes for an individual group:

1. While creating or modifying a Mix Group or a Mix/Edit Group, do one of the following:
   - Click Attributes in the Group dialog, and select the attributes you want to link.
   - Enable **Follow Globals** to follow the base set of attributes. The Attributes page grays out to indicate that the group is following the selections in the Globals page.

For information on selecting attributes, see "Selecting Group Attributes" on the next page.

2. Click OK to save the settings.



Attributes page of Group dialog

Selecting Group Attributes

The following attributes can be selected for Global settings and for individual groups.

Track controls:

- Main Volume
- Main Mute
- Main Pan
- Main LFE Level (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)

Insert controls (Inserts A–J):

- Plugin Controls
- Insert Bypass

Send controls (Sends A–J):

- Send Level
- Send Mute
- Send Pan
- Send LFE Level (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)

Mix Attributes:

- Record Enable
- Input Monitoring
- Solos
- Automation Mode
- HEAT Pre/Post
- HEAT Bypass
- Object Controls (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio with Dolby Atmos only)

To select the attributes for a group, do any of the following:

- Select individual attributes.
- To select or deselect all attributes, Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) any attribute.
- To select or deselect all attributes for a single Send or Insert (across a row), Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) any attribute in that row.
- To select or deselect attributes for a single control across all Sends, all Inserts, or for the four track controls (down a column), Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any attribute in that column.

Saving Group Attribute Presets

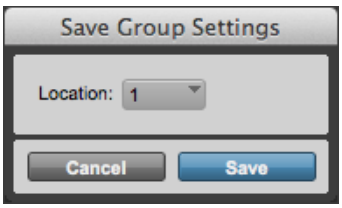
You can define six Group presets that can be recalled on either the Attributes or Globals page whenever you are creating or modifying a Mix or Mix/Edit Group.

To save the current attribute settings as a Group preset:

1. In the Groups dialog, click **Save**. (Follow Globals must be deselected to save a setting from the Attributes page.)



2. In the Save Group Settings dialog, select one of the six preset locations from the **Location** pop-up menu, and click **Save**.



To save the current attribute settings directly to a preset location, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the preset button.

To recall a Group preset:

- Click the corresponding Preset button (**1–6**) in the Groups dialog. (**Follow Globals** must be deselected to recall a setting in the Attributes page.)



Enabling Groups

Editing operations are not applied to members of a group that are hidden with the Track List. Mix operations (with the exception of record-enabling of tracks) are applied to hidden tracks.

Pro Tools lets you create separate groups for editing and mixing. You set this option when you use the **New Group** command. Groups that apply to both editing and mixing can be decoupled.

To enable a group:

- In the Groups List, click the name of the group you want to enable. The name is highlighted to indicate that it is enabled.

  To enable additional groups, click their names in the Groups List.

  Moving a fader of a group member causes other group members to move relative to it. If a fader belongs to multiple groups, and the groups conflict when faders are moved, the fader will follow the top-most or "parent" group to which it belongs.

To disable a group:

- In the Groups List, click the name of the group you want to disable. The name is unhighlighted to indicate that it is not enabled.

Keyboard Selection of Groups

The Groups List Keyboard Focus lets you type a Group ID letter to automatically toggle that group's enable status.

- In the Mix window, the Groups List Keyboard Focus is always enabled.
- In the Edit window, you need to enable the Groups List Keyboard Focus to use it.

To enable the Edit Groups List Keyboard Focus, do one of the following:

- Click the Keyboard Focus button in upper right of the Edit Groups List.
- Press Command+Option+3 (Mac) or Control+Alt+3 (Windows).



Groups List Keyboard Focus enabled

To enable and disable groups using the Edit and Mix Groups List Keyboard Focus:

- With Groups List Keyboard Focus enabled, type the Group ID letter (a–z) to automatically enable or disable the corresponding group.

Temporarily Isolating Control of an Item from Group Operation

You can temporarily isolate control of a group item from group operation by Right-clicking on the item.

You can also temporarily suspend group behavior for a track by Control-clicking (Mac) or Start-clicking (Windows) a group function.

The following items can be isolated from group operation:

- Pan slider
- Channel Record Enable
- Channel TrackInput
- Send Pan slider
- Channel Volume fader
- Channel Pan slider
- Channel Mute button
- Channel Solo button
- Channel Record Enable button
- Channel TrackInput button
- Send fader
- Send Pan slider

<ALL> Group

When enabled, the **<ALL>** Group lets you apply changes to all tracks of the same type (for example, to all audio tracks).

Before you do a conform or global (non-automation) edit, Option-Control-Command-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) one of the track names to put all tracks into their "default" view. Make the selection in a track in Waveform, Blocks, Overview, or MIDI view to select in all tracks.

Making a selection in any of the Timebase (such as Bars|Beats, Min:Sec, Timecode, Feet+Frames, or Samples) also makes the selection and all tracks without having to enable any groups.

Grouped Control Offsets

When the following controls are grouped with offsets and moved to their extremes, relative offsets are preserved when the controls are moved back from their extremes:

- Main Volume
- Main Pan
- Send Level
- Send Pan

For example, when a grouped Volume fader is moved to its maximum value, any other faders in that group that had higher values will remember their relative offset whenever the first fader is pulled down again.

In Automation views, this “overflow” is indicated on the automation playlist by blue automation breakpoints at the extremes of the automation playlist.

Setting Group Pan Controls to Ignore Offsets

By default, offsets are preserved for grouped pan controls. In some workflows, it is desirable to have grouped pan controls match absolute values rather than preserve offsets.

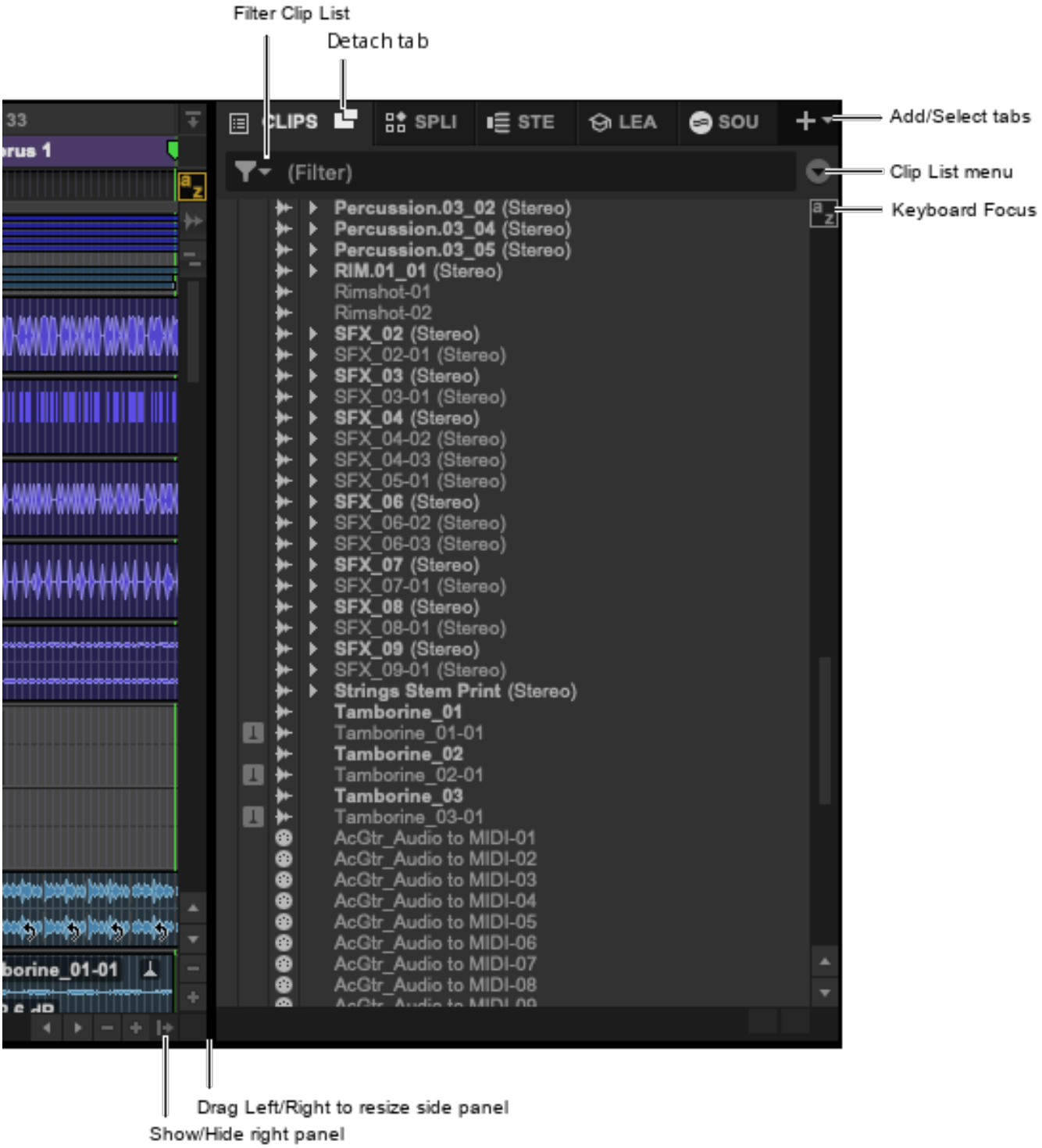
To set grouped pan controls to ignore offsets:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Select the **Use Absolute Pan Linking** option.

When this option is enabled, grouped pan controls will snap to the absolute value of the pan control that is being adjusted.

17 The Clip List

The Edit Window displays all audio clips, MIDI clips, and clip groups in a single, comprehensive Clip List.



All clips of all types that are recorded, imported, or created by editing appear in the Clip List. Items can be dragged from the list to tracks and arranged in any order. You can also preview audio and MIDI clips and clip groups in the Clip List.

Because clip information can become lengthy, the Clip List can be scrolled or resized as necessary.

Use the Clip List as a bin for storing your favorite audio loops and MIDI clips. Save the session as a template and the clips are available for future sessions (see "Session Templates" on page 246).

Filtering Clips in the Clip List

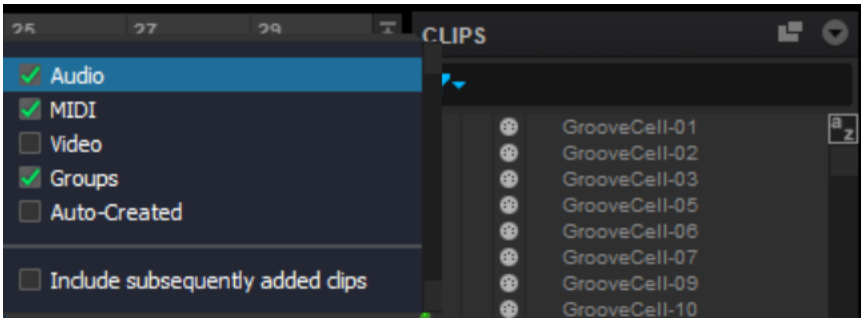
The Filter Clip List menu let you show or hide clips by type. Use the search field to filter clips by name.

Displaying Clips in the Clip List

The Clip List can show all clip types (audio, MIDI, video, Groups, Auto-Created), or only certain clip types. This is useful for isolating the type of clips you want to work with while editing and arranging. For example, when arranging clip groups, you may want the Clip List to show only clip groups.

To show (or hide) certain types of clips in the Clip List:

- Click the Clip List Filter menu (at the top-left of the Clip List) and select (or deselect.) the types of clips you want.



Audio

Shows or hides audio clips in the Clip List.

MIDI

Shows or hides MIDI clips in the Clip List.

Video

Shows or hides video clips in the Clip List.

Groups

Shows or hides clip groups in the Clip List.

Auto-Created

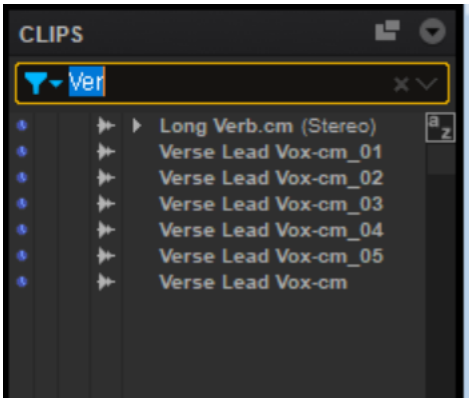
To shows or hides automatically-created clips (of all types) in the Clip List, press Command+Option+K (Mac) or Control+Alt+K (Windows). These are clips that were created as a by-product of cutting, pasting, and separating other clips. Since these auto-created clips can become numerous, hiding them (by deselecting the option) helps you to avoid scrolling through an unnecessarily long Clip List.

Hiding Auto-Created clips can be useful when importing clip groups (or REX files as clip groups), because these file types can contain so many separate clips that it becomes difficult to read the Clip List.

Filter Clips by Name

To Filter clips in the Clip List by name:

- In the Filter Clips field, type the name of the clips you want to show.



Filter by Subclips and Whole File Clips

The Clip List includes the following two options, which are enabled by default:

- Whole File Clips
- Subclips

Disabling either of these hides the respective items from the Clip List. Hiding Subclips makes it easier to select only whole files to batch rename.

Press Command+Shift+Numpad 5 (Mac) or Control+Shift+Numpad 5 (Windows) to toggle filtering by Whole File Clips on or off.

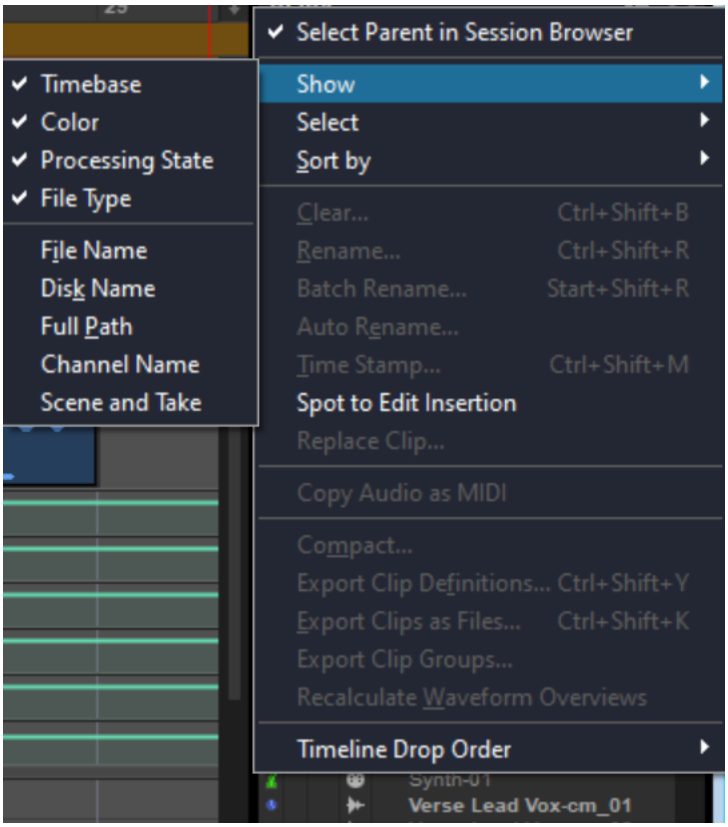
Press Command+Shift+Numpad 6 (Mac) or Control+Shift+ Numpad 6 (Windows) to toggle filtering by Subclips on or off.

Clip List Menu

The Clip List menu provides tools to sort, export, clear, and manage items in the Clip List.

To access the Clip List menu:

- In the Edit window, click the Clip List menu.



In the Clip List, whole-file audio clips are displayed in bold, and stereo and multichannel audio clips can be expanded to display individual channels.

If the **`Clip List Selection Follows Edit Selection`** option is enabled in the Editing preferences, selecting a clip or clip group in the Clip List selects it on any track where it is present in assigned playlists. Likewise, selecting a clip or clip group on a track selects it in the Clip List.

Displaying File Info for Audio Clips

In addition to clip names, the Clip List can also display information about the clip's color coding, type (audio, MIDI, and clip group), timebase, Elastic Audio processing, and parent file:

Timebase

Displays the timebase (samples or ticks) for audio and MIDI clips, and clip groups.

Color

Displays Track Color Coding as assigned with Default Clip Color Coding option in Display Preferences page, or as assigned in the Color Palette.

Processing State

Displays the Warp Indicator icon if Elastic Audio processing has been applied to the clip.

Guitar Settings (Eleven Rack Only)

Displays the Eleven Rack icon if guitar settings are embedded in the clip.

File Type

Displays the File Type icon for audio and MIDI clips, and clip groups.

File Name

Displays the parent file name.

Disk Name

Displays the name of the hard drive on which referenced file resides.

Full Path

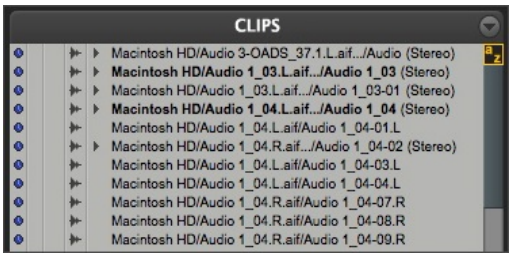
Displays the full directory path of the clip's parent file.

Channel Name

Displays the channel name for audio files imported from field recorders.

Scene and Take

Displays the scene and take for audio files imported from field recorders.



Clips with file information shown in the Clip List

Pro Tools displays only the clip name in the Clip List by default.

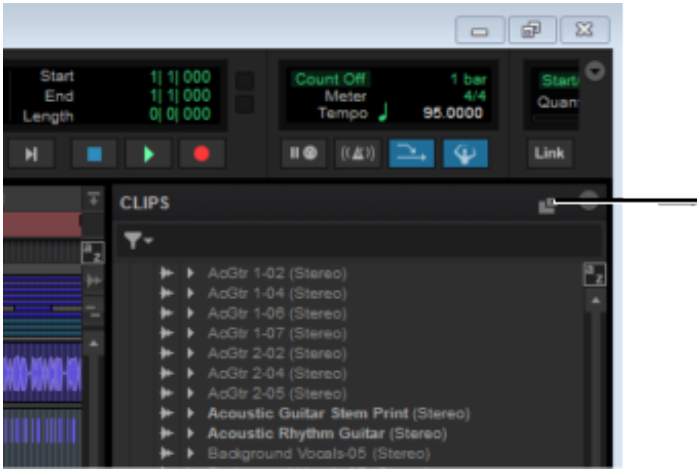
When editing, the Clip List can become cluttered with auto-created clips. You can hide auto-created clips by choosing Show in the Clip List menu, and deselecting Auto-Created.

Detaching or Docking the Clip List

Pro Tools lets you detach the Clip List as floating window or dock it in the Edit window.

To detach the Clip List from the Edit window, do one of the following:

- Click the Detach from Edit Window button.

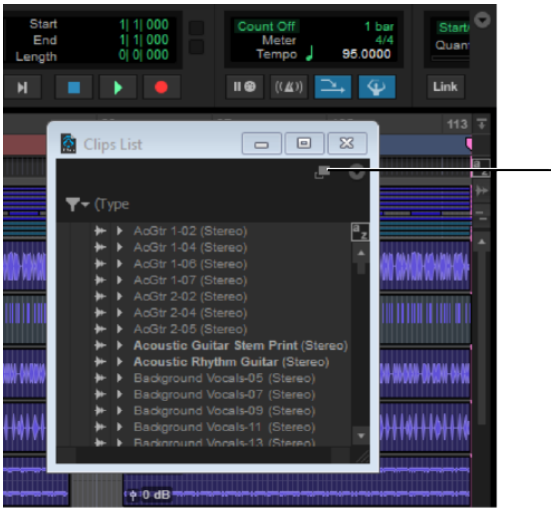


Detach from Edit Window button

- Choose Window › Clip List.

To dock the Clip List window to the Edit window:

- Click the Dock in Edit Window button.



Dock in Edit Window button

Keep Window On Top Option

Enable the **`Keep Window On Top`** option in the detached Clip List window menu to ensure that the floating Clip List window remains in the foreground of the Edit window (and other windows). When disabled, other windows may cover the floating Clip List window.

Sorting and Searching in the Clip List

Most sessions will contain many clips, which can make it challenging to swiftly locate a particular clip in the Clip List. Pro Tools lets you sort and search clips in the Clip List to quickly locate any clip you want.

Sorting Clips

To sort clips in the Clip List:

1. Click the Clip List menu (at the top of the Clip List) and choose **`Sort By`**.
2. From the submenu, select a basis for sorting. Different options are available for audio and MIDI clips. See "Sort By Options" below.
3. To set whether clips are listed in ascending or descending order, click the Clip List menu, choose **`Sort By`**, and select **`Ascending`** or **`Descending`**.

Sort By Options

The Sort By options let you sort clips to help keep track of large numbers of clips.

Audio clips can be sorted by:

- Clip Type
- Name
- Length
- Original Time Stamp
- User Time Stamp

- Timebase
- Start in Parent
- End in Parent
- File Name
- File Length
- File Creation Date
- File Modification Date
- Disk Name (audio and clip groups only)
- Track Format/Width
- By Channel Name
- By Scene and Take

MIDI clips can be sorted by:

- Name
- Length
- Original Time Stamp
- User Time Stamp
- Timebase
- Start in Parent
- End in Parent

Clips can also be sorted by **`Clip Type`** (Audio and MIDI), or in **`Ascending`** or **`Descending`** order.

Filtering in Clip List

Pro Tools lets you filter the Clip List by clip names (type text) and by any combination of clip types. If the Clip List is not shown, the Filter controls automatically appear when the Clip List is shown.

Press Command+Shift+F (Mac) or Control+Shift+F to enter the Filter box.



To filter clips in the Clip List:

1. In the Clip List, click the Filter icon.
2. Select (or deselect) the type of clips you want shown:
   - **`Audio`**
   - **`MIDI`**

- **Groups**
- **Auto-Created**
- **Include subsequently added clips**

Except for Include subsequently added clips, the above options were moved out of the menu: Clip List › Show menu.

To filter clips in the Clip List by text:

- In the Clip List, type text in the Filter field to show clips that include that text.

  When the Filter field is focused, it shows a gold border indicating that it is focused. This also suspend all keyboard focus modes. Once the filter is unfocused, the previous command focus returns. When focused, press Esc, Tab, or Enter/Return to exit the focus.

  The filter box border turns yellow when focused, blue when a search is present and unfocused, and red if a text filter is present but there are no results.

  After you enter a text filter and leave focus, a search history is available in the Filter field. Also, you can click the **x** button to clear the filter.

Finding Clips

Use the Find command to display all clips in a list whose names contain a particular word or phrase.

Select Parent in Workspace

Enable this option to highlight the parent file of any selected clips in a Workspace browser.

Selecting Clips in the Clip List

In the Clip List, you can select clips so they can be dragged to tracks, processed with AudioSuite plugins, or exported.

To select or deselect a clip in the Clip List, do the following:

- Click a clip name that is unhighlighted to select it.
- Click a clip name that is highlighted to deselect it.

To select a range of clips in the Clip List, do one of the following:

- Move the cursor to the left of the clip names, so the Marquee appears, and drag around the clips you want to select.



Clips selected with Marquee

- Click the name of a clip in the Clip List, and Shift-click an additional clip name.

All clips that occur between the first clip selected and the additional clip will also be selected.

To select or deselect a range of clips with the Marquee:

1. Move the cursor to the left of the clip name until the Marquee icon with a small "+" symbol appears:
   - To select clips, the Marquee should be to the left of an unhighlighted clip name.
   - To deselect clips, the Marquee should be to the left of a highlighted clip name.
2. Click on the clip name and drag up or down (to select or deselect clips immediately above or below the clip name).

To select multiple noncontiguous clips in the Clip List, hold Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) when making subsequent selections.

To select or deselect noncontiguous clips, do one of the following:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) clip names that are unhighlighted to select them.
- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) clip names that are highlighted to deselect them.

Keyboard Selection of Clips

If Clip List Keyboard Focus is enabled, you can type the first few letters of a clip's name and Pro Tools will automatically locate and select the clip in the Clip List.

To enable and use the Clip List Keyboard Focus:

1. Click the **Keyboard Focus** button in the upper right of the Clip List.



Clip List Keyboard Focus enabled

2. Type the first or first few letters of the clip to automatically locate and select it. Once a clip is located and selected, it can be dragged to a track.

Keyboard selection of audio clips locates clips based on their clip name, not on the names for their parent audio files or the volumes on which they reside.

Select Options

In the Clip List, you can select specific clips so they can be dragged to tracks, processed with AudioSuite plugins, or exported.

To select specific clips in the Clip List:

- From the Clip List menu, choose **Select**, and then choose one of the **Select** options:

All

Selects all clips in the Clip List.

Unused

Selects clips that have not been placed in a track in the current session. Offline clips appear in the Clip List italicized and dimmed.

Unused Except Whole Files

Selects clips that have not been placed in a track in the current session, but do not include Whole-file clips. Whole-file clips are clips that were created when recording or importing audio, consolidating existing clips, and when nondestructively processing with an AudioSuite plugin. Whole-file audio clips reference an entire audio file that resides on your hard drive. Whole-file audio clips are displayed in bold in the Clip List

Offline

Selects clips whose parent files cannot be located, or are not available, when opening a session or importing a track. Offline clips appear in the Clip List as italicized and dimmed; they appear in playlists as light blue clips with italicized names.

"Select Unused" Ignores Parent Clip

Enabling the **"Select Unused" Ignores Parent Clip** option affects the behavior of the **Select Unused** command. When it is enabled, all unused clips are selected except for any unused whole clips that have related sub-clips currently on tracks in the session.

Previewing Clips in the Clip List

You can preview audio and MIDI clips and clip groups in the Clip List. Previewing follows the master Audition path as selected in the Output page of the I/O Setup. The base level for previewing is determined by the Master Fader (or Auxiliary Input) level assigned to the Audition path.

The Preview Volume control in the Import Audio dialog also affects the preview volume when auditioning clips in the Clip List.

To preview a clip in the Clip List:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the clip name.

Audio clips and clip groups play back through the specified Audition Path (see "Audition Path" on page 69).

Sample-based clips play back at their native tempo. Tick-based MIDI and Elastic Audio processed clips play back at the session tempo (based on the location of the playback cursor). You can also preview clips from the Clip List during session playback.

MIDI clips play back using the Default Thru Instrument selected in the MIDI Preferences page (see "The Default Thru Instrument" on page 811).

Auditioning Discrete Signals in Multichannel Items

In the Clip List, multichannel clips are auditioned through the Audition Path specified in the I/O Setup. Signals can be auditioned "in-place," or through all outputs, as described below.

Audition In-Place

When auditioning a mono component of a mono component clip, the mono clip can be played from the corresponding channel of its parent mono component clip. This playback method is called *audition in-place*.

To audition in-place:

1. In the Clip List, make sure the stereo or multichannel clip is in expanded view (showing .L, .R, and other component channels).
2. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the clip for the channel you want to audition.

Audition to All Outputs

When auditioning a mono component of a mono component clip, the clip can be routed equally to all outputs of the parent clip's Audition Path.

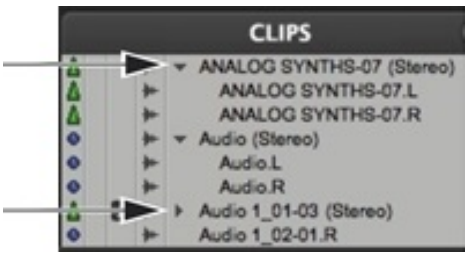
To audition through all channels of the main audition path:

- Shift-Option-click (Mac) or Shift-Alt-click (Windows) on the signal in the Clip List.

Stereo and Multichannel Clips in the Clip List

Stereo and multichannel clips, whether imported or recorded into Pro Tools, are displayed as single items in the Clip List. For example, two mono source clips named "Main Piano.L" and "Main Piano.R" are listed as "Main Piano (Stereo)." An expand/collapse triangle indicates stereo and multichannel clips.

Stereo and multichannel clips are displayed in the Clip List by default in collapsed view. The individual clips can be displayed by clicking the arrow to the left of the clip to expand the name.



Stereo clips, expanded (top) and collapsed (bottom)

To expand or collapse all stereo and multichannel clips:

- Press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while clicking the expand/collapse triangle.

Individual items of an expanded-view stereo or multichannel clip can be selected independently of the other associated clips in the Clip List.

Rules for Stereo and Multichannel Clips

For stereo and multichannel audio clips to be shown as collective clips, the component clips must be the same length. If an existing stereo or multichannel clip has been dragged onto multiple mono tracks and edited such a way that one or more components are no longer the same length, the stereo display is removed and the clips are displayed as individual clips in the Clip List.

Naming and Displaying Clips in the Clip List

A typical session can become cluttered with dozens of tracks and hundreds of clips. There are a number of things you can do to keep track of and manage a session's clips, including:

- Renaming existing clips
- Specifying how auto-created clips are named
- Hiding auto-created clips
- Removing unused clips

Renaming Clips

In the course of a session you can rename clips to give them more descriptive names, or to shorten or simplify existing names. When renaming a clip that was auto-created during editing, the clip becomes a user-defined clip and is displayed in the Clip List even when auto-created clips are hidden.

If a clip resides in a track, you can easily rename it by double-clicking it with one of the Grabber tools. However, if the clip does not reside in a track, or if you want to rename several clips, use the **Rename** command in the Clip List.

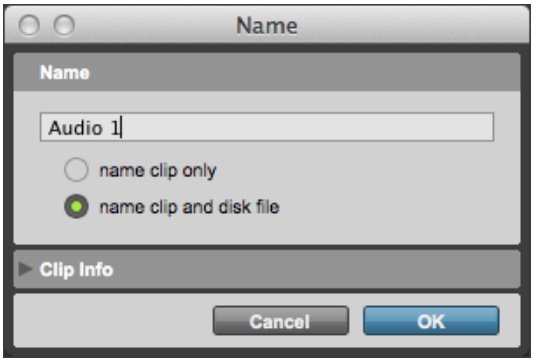
You can also rename a clip in a track using the **Rename** command in the Clip List menu or the Right-click menu.

To rename one or more clips from the Clip List:

1. If you will be renaming an auto-created clip, select **Show > Auto-Created** from the Clip List menu.
2. Select one or more clips to be renamed in the Clip List.

> *If the Clip List Selection Follows Edit Selection option in the Editing Preferences page is enabled, you can highlight a clip in the Clip List by selecting it in a track.*

3. Do one of the following:
   - From the Clip List menu, choose **Rename**.
   - Right-click on any selected clip and select **Rename** from the pop-up menu.
4. In the Name dialog, type a new name for the clip. If a whole-file audio clip was selected, specify whether to rename just the clip, or both the clip *and* the disk file.



5. Click **OK** to rename the clip. If renaming multiple clips, you are prompted, successively, to rename each clip.

You can resize the Name dialog by dragging the boundaries of the dialog.

Clip Info

The Name dialog provides the option to view information about the selected clip. This information is *not* editable from the Name dialog. The following clip information is available:

Instances

Displays the number of instances of the clip used in the session.

Rating

Displays the Rating for the clip (see "Rating Clips" on page 942).

File Name

Displays the file name of the parent file for the clip.

Start

Displays the start time of the selected clip according to the main timebase.

Sync

Displays the Sync point time of the selected clip according to the main timebase.

End

Displays the end time of the selected clip according to the main timebase.

Duration

Displays the duration of the selected clip according to the main timebase.

Original Time Stamp

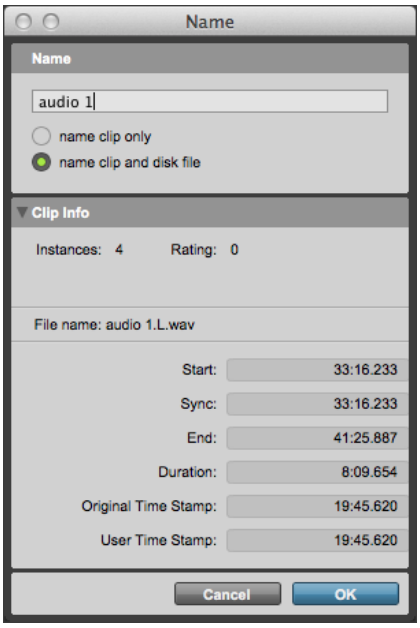
Displays the original time stamp of the selected clip according to the main timebase.

User Time Stamp

Displays the user time stamp of the selected clip according to the main timebase.

To show (or hide) information for the selected clip:

- In the Name dialog, click the show/hide triangle for Clip Info.



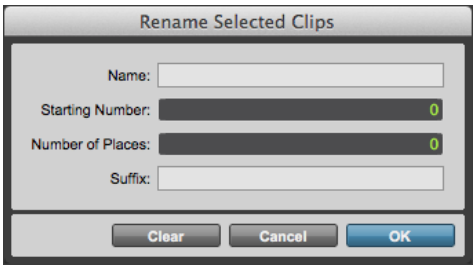
Auto-Naming Options

You can specify the auto-naming options for a clip when new clips are created from it in the course of editing.

Auto-naming of clips does not affect the names of parent audio files. Instead, it stores pointers to the clips within the parent source file.

To set auto-naming options for a clip:

1. Select a clip in the Clip List.
2. Choose **Auto Rename** from the Clip List menu.
3. In the Rename Selected Clips dialog, enter the text to be used when naming clips created from the selected clip.



   - Name: Determines the root name for the auto-created clips.
   - Starting Number: Sets the start number for the sequentially numbered new clips.
   - Number of Places: Determines the number of digits that occur before the auto numbers.
   - Suffix: Specifies text to be appended to the end of the name, following the auto numbering.
4. Click **OK**.

Batch Clip Renaming

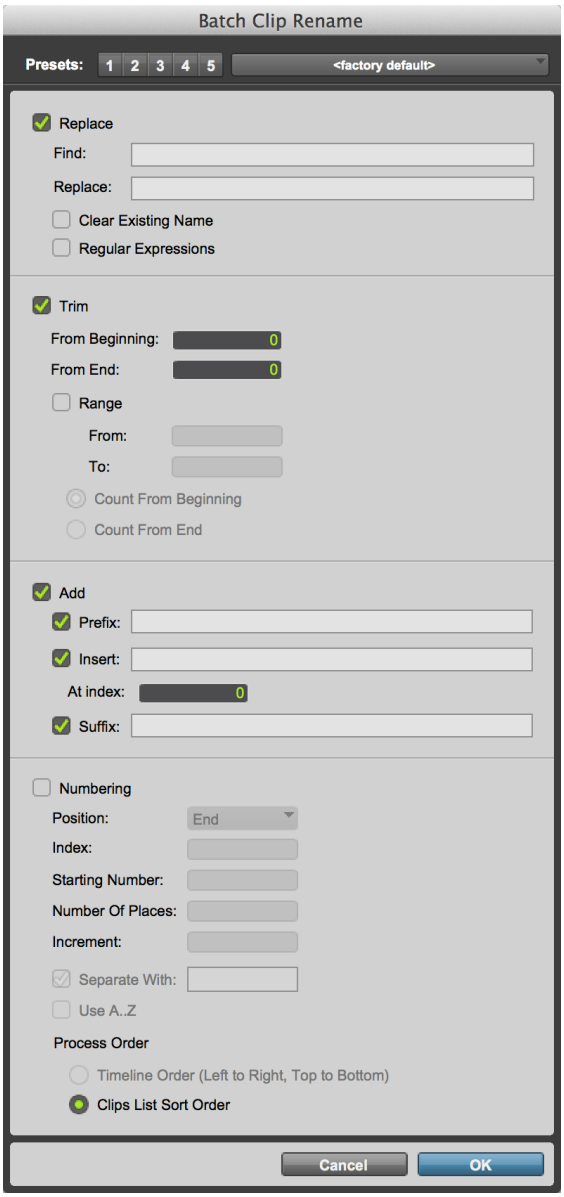
The **Batch Rename** command for clips is only available in the Clip List.

Clip Groups and clips contained within are ignored by Batch Clip Renaming.

To batch rename selected clips:

1. In the Clip List, select the clips you want to rename.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Clip List menu.
   - Right-click a selected Clip in the Clip List.
3. Choose **Batch Rename**.

   Press Control+Shift+R (Mac) or Start+Shift+R (Windows) to open the Batch Clip Rename dialog.



4. Configure the Batch Clip Rename dialog as desired.
5. Click **OK**.

All selected clips are renamed accordingly.

For details on batch renaming tracks or clips, see "Batch Renaming" on page 449.

Managing Clips in the Clip List

In the course of editing a session, the Clip List can quickly fill up with many clips—with ones you have created intentionally and also with those that are automatically created by cutting, pasting, and separating other clips, or importing Clip Group files (or REX files as clip groups). Pro Tools lets you hide or remove clips in your session so you do not have to scroll through a long Clip List.

Hiding Auto-Created Clips

You can hide clips that were automatically created during the course of editing.

To hide auto-created clips:

- From the Filter Clip List menu, deselect **Show > Auto-Created**. With this option deselected, only user-defined clips appear in the Clip List.

User-defined clips include:

- Whole-file clips
- Clips created during recording
- Imported clips
- Renamed clips
- Clips created as a result of AudioSuite processing
- New clips created with the **Clip > Capture** command or the **Edit > Separate Clip** commands
- Clips created by trimming whole-file audio clips

When auto-created clips are hidden, Pro Tools warns you if the number of auto-created clips exceeds a certain threshold, and gives you the option of deleting them. If you choose to delete them, all auto-created clips are deleted at the same time.

To ensure that you keep any specific auto-created clips, rename them. When you name a clip, it is promoted from being an auto-created clip to a user-defined clip (see "Renaming Clips" on page 443).

Clearing Unwanted Clips

In the Clip List, you can select unwanted clips and then use the **Clear** command to remove them from the session. Whole-file clips can also be permanently removed from the hard drive on which they are stored.

⚠ **The Clear command cannot be undone.**

To find and remove unused clips in a session:

1. Do any of the following:
   - For MIDI clips, from the Clip List menu, choose **Select > Unused**.
   - For audio clips, from the Clip List menu, choose **Select**, then choose **Unused**, **Unused Except Whole Files**, or **Offline**.
2. After all unused clips are selected, choose **Clear** from the Clip List menu. The Clear Selected dialog opens.
3. In the Clear Selected dialog, select the **Automatically select all unused clips** option if you want to ensure that *all* unused clips, including whole file clips, are selected for deletion or removal. Any selections previously made in the Clip List are ignored.
4. Do one of the following:

- Click **Remove** to remove the unused clips from the session.
- If clearing a whole-file audio clip and you want to permanently remove the audio file from your hard drive, click **Delete**.

When deleting audio files for multiple clips, Pro Tools presents a warning dialog for each audio file.

To bypass repeated warning dialogs:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the **Delete** button in the Clear dialog. This permanently deletes each successive audio file from your hard drive (for each of the unused clips) without any further warning.

⚠ **Use this "power delete mode" with caution. Deletion of these files cannot be undone.**

Clip Name Right-Click Commands

When you Right-click a clip name in the Clip List, a pop-up menu provides access to the following commands:

Clear

Removes selected clips from the session.

Rename

Renames selected clips.

Batch Rename

Lets you batch rename selected clips.

Time Stamp

Redefines the time stamp of selected clips.

Spot to Edit Insertion

Spots selected clips to the Edit insertion point on tracks.

Replace Clip (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

Replaces multiple instances of a clip with another clip.

Copy Audio as MIDI (Audio Clips Only)

Opens the Audio to MIDI Properties dialog for the selected audio clip.

Compact

Compacts selected clips.

Export Clip Definitions

Exports definitions for selected clips.

Export Clips as Files

Exports selected clips as files.

Recalculate Waveform Overviews

Redraws waveforms for selected clips.

Reveal in Workspace

Lets you reveal the parent file for any individual clip in a Workspace browser.

Reveal in Finder/Reveal in Explorer

lets you reveal the parent file for any individual clip in the Mac Finder or Windows Explorer.

Object Select in Edit Window

Selects clip as an object in the Edit window.

Batch Renaming

Pro Tools lets you rename selected tracks, or subclips or whole file clips in batches. This can be very useful for managing auto-named tracks and clips, especially in a large session.

Batch Renaming Dialog Options and Settings

The Batch Track Renaming and Batch Clip Renaming dialogs provide controls for changing the names of all selected items (tracks or clips) by Replacing text, Trimming characters, Adding characters, and sequential Numbering. The Batch Clip Renaming dialog also provides controls for setting the order for numbering selected clips based on timeline order or Clip List sort order. Both dialogs also offer presets so you can store and recall common renaming schemes best suited to your workflow.

Renaming tasks are applied in order from top to bottom: Replace, then Trim, then Add, and finally Numbering.

Replace

Enable (or disable) the **Replace** option to replace text in the names of clips or tracks.

Press Command+R (Mac) or Control+R (Windows) to select (or deselect) Replace.



Batch Rename, Replace options

Find

Type the text you want replaced in the names of selected items.

Replace

Type the text you want to use in the names of selected items instead.

Clear Existing Name

Enable to completely clear the existing names of selected items.

Regular Expressions

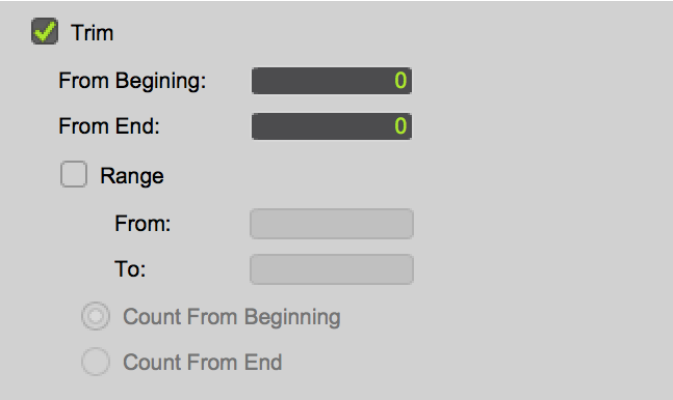
Enable to use advanced find and replace operations using *regular expressions*.

For more information about using regular expressions for batch renaming tasks, see "Regular Expressions Workflow Examples" on page 453.

Trim

Enable (or disable) the **Trim** option to remove the specified number of characters from the beginning or end of names.

Press Command+T (Mac) or Control+T (Windows) to select (or deselect) Replace.



Batch Rename, Trim options

From Beginning

Enter the number of characters you want to trim from the beginning of the names of selected items.

From End

Enter the number of characters you want to trim from the end of the names of selected items.

Range

Enable **Range** and then enter the number of characters **From** the beginning and the number of character **To** the end of the range that you want to trim (or crop) the selected names to. The From and To values can be counted from the beginning or from the end of the selected names.

Count From Beginning

Enable to count the **From** and **To** values for **Range** from the beginning of the selected names.

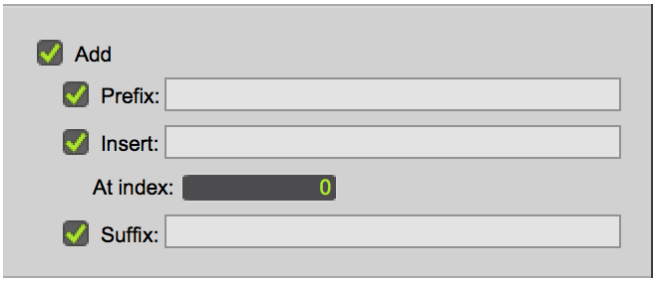
Count From End

Enable to count the **From** and **To** values for **Range** from the end of the selected names.

Add

Enable (or disable) the **Add** option to add prefixes or suffixes to names. You can also insert text into the middle of names.

Press Command+D (Mac) or Control+D (Windows) to select (or deselect) Add.



Batch Rename, Add options

Prefix

Enable the **Prefix** option and type the text you want to add to the names of selected items as a prefix.

Insert

Enable the **Insert** option and type the text you want to insert into the names of selected items. Enter a number in the **At Index** field to specify after which character you want to insert the text (for example, type 3 to insert text after the third character in names).

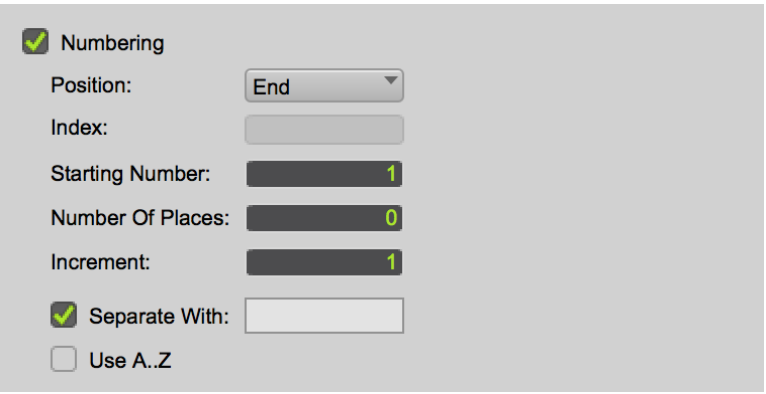
Suffix

Enable the **Suffix** option and type the text you want to add to the names of selected items as a suffix.

Numbering

Enable (or disable) the **Numbering** option to add numbers to the names of selected items.

Press Command+N (Mac) or Control+N (Windows) to select (or deselect) Numbering.



Batch Rename, Numbering options

Position

Select whether you want numbers to be added at the **Beginning** or **End** of names, or at the specified character index (**At Index**) in names. If you select **At Index**, also enter a number in the **Index** field to specify after which character in names you want to insert the numbers.

Starting Number

Enter the number from which you want to start.

Number of Places

Enter the number of places you want for numbering (for example, type 3 for three places 000).

Increment

Enter the value by which you want the numbering to increment.

Separate With

Enable to separate added numbers with a space or any other single character after (if placed at the beginning) or before (if placed at the end), or before and after the specified character index (if inserted at the specified index).

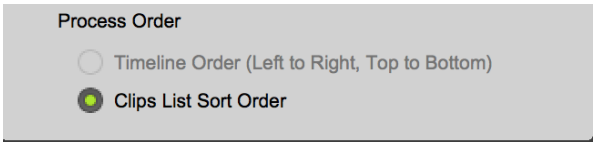
Use A.Z

Enable to use capital letters instead of numbers.

Process Order

(Batch Clips Renaming Only)

The **Process Order** options are only in the Batch Clips Rename dialog and determine the order by which numbering is applied to selected clips.



Batch Clips Rename, Process Order

Timeline Order (Left to Right, Top to Bottom)

Applies numbering according to the timeline order of selected clips from left to right and then from top to bottom.

Clip List Sort Order

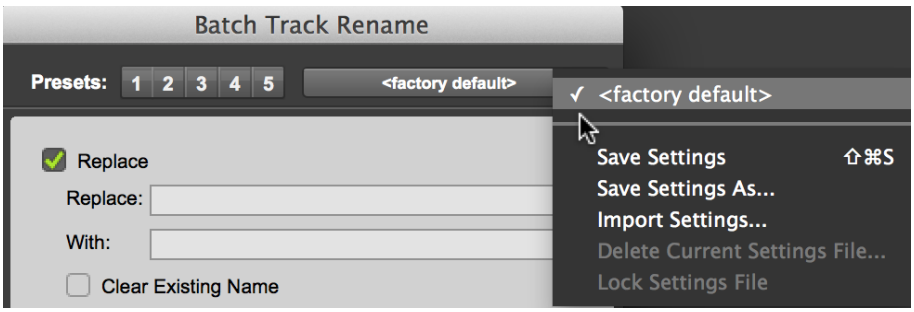
Applies number according to the current Clip List sort order for selected clips.

Presets

Pro Tools lets you store and recall common renaming schemes best suited to your workflow in both the Batch Track Renaming and Batch Clip Renaming dialogs. The Presets controls for Batch Renaming work much like the Preset controls for Fades and Clip Effects.

Presets Buttons

Both the Batch Track Renaming dialog and the Batch Clip Renaming dialog provide five preset buttons that let you store and recall your most commonly used naming conventions. You can also save and import additional Batch Naming settings using the Librarian menu.



Batch Rename Presets, Librarian menu shown

To store a Batch Naming preset:

1. Configure the Batch Naming dialog as you like.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Preset button where you want to store the current Batch Naming settings.

To recall a Batch Naming preset:

- Click the Preset button that contains the settings you want to recall.

Librarian Menu

Use the Librarian menu to save and recall Batch Naming Settings files (.ptpreset). These are usually saved to and recalled from the Batch Track Rename folder or the Batch Clip Rename folder accordingly (/Documents/Pro Tools/Pro Tools Presets/Batch Track Rename/). Of course you can save to and import from any directory location on your system. Batch Name preset files can be shared and used on any other Pro Tools system as well.

The Librarian menu commands include:

<factory default>

Restores the default settings for Batch Naming.

Save Settings

Saves the current settings. This command overwrites any previous version of the preset.

Press Command+Shift+S (Mac) or Control+Shift+S (Windows) to save the current settings.

Save Settings As

Saves the current settings as a new preset. You can name the preset and save it to any location on your system.

Import Settings

Opens the Choose a Settings File dialog focused on the default Batch Rename folder. Batch Naming Settings files (.ptpreset) stored in this location are listed by name just under **<factory default>** in the Librarian menu. In the Choose a Settings File dialog, you can navigate to any location on your system to select and import the Batch Settings file you want.

Delete Current Settings File

Permanently deletes the current settings file (.ptpreset) from disk.

Lock (Unlock) Settings File

Locks (or unlocks) the selected Settings file so that it cannot (or can) be edited.

Regular Expressions Workflow Examples

Regular expressions are standardized text strings that describe search patterns. Use regular expressions when batch renaming tracks or clips to find and replace text based on more advanced criteria than simple find and replace text operations.

For more information about regular expressions, visit https://www.regex101.com.

Some commonly used regular expressions for advanced find and replace text operations:

regular expressions	function
`.`	Matches any single character.
`\ - \`	Lets the character following the second `\` be considered differently. For example, since `.` (period) is used to match any character, type `\.` to match an actual `.` (period) in a search string.
`\s`	Matches any instance of a single space (such as the space bar or tab).
`\d`	Matches a single number.
`\w`	Matches a single "word character" or letter.
`+`	Any of the above regular expressions or any literal character can be followed with `+` to match one or more of the preceding characters (for example, `\w+` can be used to find any number of spaces created by the spacebar or tab).
`[abc]`	Match a single instance of `a`, `b`, or `c`.
`[^abc]`	Match any character except `a`, `b`, or `c`.

Performing Multiple Find and Replace Commands

With **Regular Expressions** enabled, any number of text patterns can be matched and replaced when batch renaming tracks or clips. In the **Find** field, type the pattern you want to match inside parentheses and then separate patterns using `|` (the pipe symbol). For example:

find	replace
`(Audio)|(VCA)|(Aux)`	`(?1)(?2)(?3)`

The text following ?1 will replace the text Audio, the text following ?2 will replace VCA, and the text following ?3 will replace Aux—(?1Aud)(?2Group Master)(?Bus)

Removing Automatic Names Generated By Track Duplication

Use the following regular expressions to remove all instances of **.dup1**, **.dup2**, or up to any number of duplicates from track or clip names by replacing them with no character at all.

find	replace
`\.dup\d+`	

`\.` searches for literal periods—as opposed to the special token `.` (period) since `.` itself is used to match any character—followed by **dup**, then **\d** (the regular expression for any number) followed by **+** (which matches any number of digits that follow **.dup**) and replaces all matches with nothing (effectively deleting that text).

Replacing Multiple Common AudioSuite Suffixes from Clip Names

Use the following regular expressions to find text automatically added by common AudioSuite processes and remove them or replace them with something more appropriately descriptive.

find	replace
`(-Norm)|(-EQ3-1B)`	`(?1)(?2-HPF)`

This replaces **-Norm** with nothing (effectively deleting that text), and replaces **-EQ3-1B** with **-HPF** to indicate that the EQ3-1B AudioSuite processing on the selected clips was used to roll off low frequencies.

Batch File Renaming

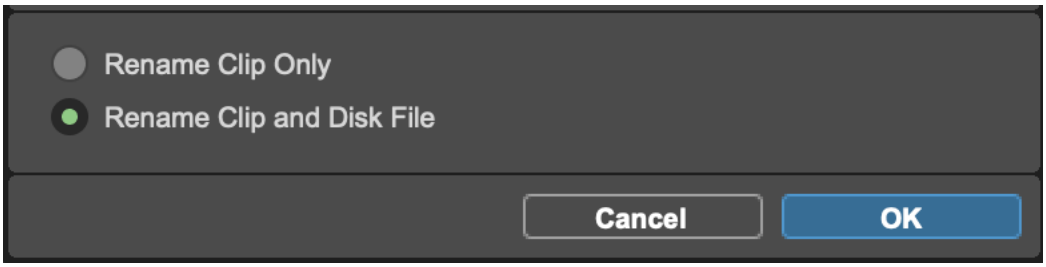
Pro Tools lets you rename clips and disk files in batches.

To batch rename clips and files:

1. In the Clips List, select the clips you want to rename.
2. From the Clips List menu, choose **Batch Rename**.

   Press Control+Shift+R (Mac) or Start+Shift+R (Windows).

3. In the Batch Clip Rename dialog, enable **Rename Clip and Disk File**.



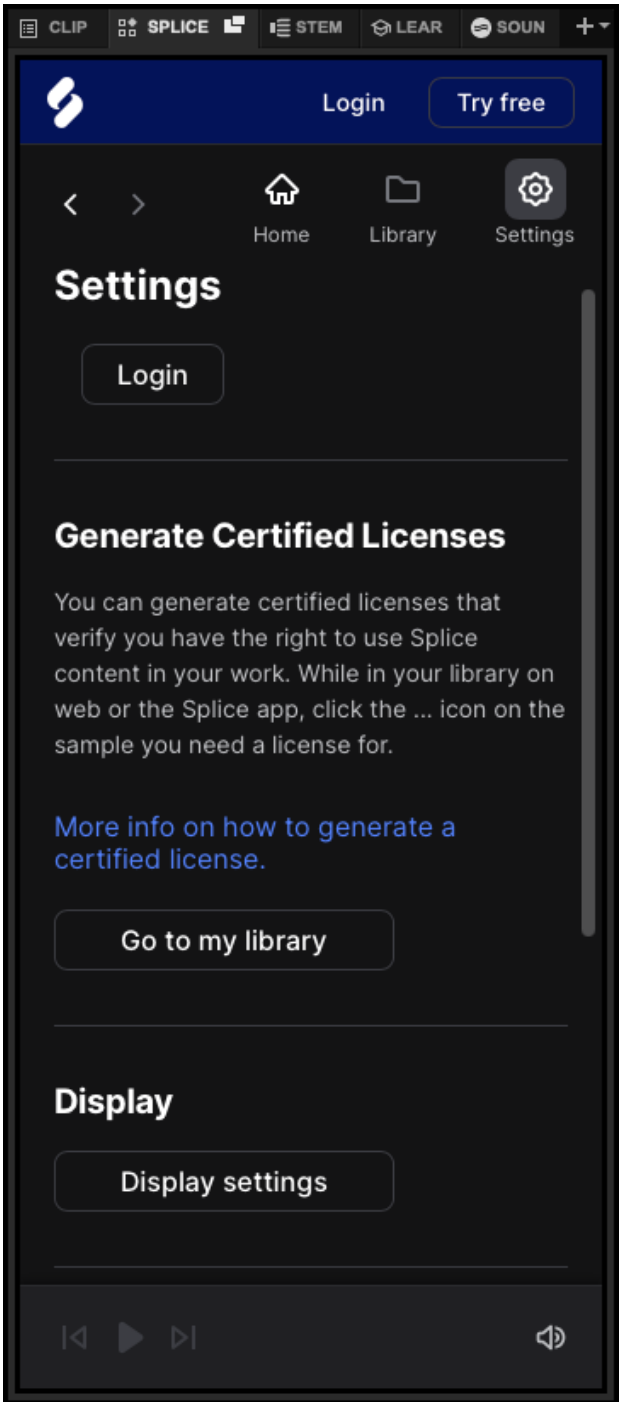
4. Configure the rest of the Batch Clip Rename dialog as desired.
5. Click **OK**.

If any subclips are included in the selection, the two radio buttons will be greyed out and only clips will be renamed.

18 Splice

Pro Tools integrates Splice as an Extension and is installed by default with Pro Tools. Splice offers a cloud-based music production subscription platform that provides access to a large library of royalty-free sounds, loops, and presets. It also offers an AI-driven feature called “Search with Sound” giving you machine-learning based similarity searching across its entire marketplace.

The Splice AAX plugin (and subsequent updates) is also available through Avid Link and https://my.avid.com.



To access Splice, do one of the following:

- Choose **Extensions > Splice**.
- Click the **SPLICE** tab at the top of the Clip List.

To dock Splice window:

- Click the Dock to Edit Window icon in the upper-right corner of the Splice window.

To detach the Splice tab:

- Click the Detach from Edit Window icon in the upper-right corner of the **SPLICE** tab.

To show (or hide) the Splice tab:

- Click the Right Side Tab View selector and select (or deselect) **Splice**.

Login to Splice

You can create an account and login to Splice or try Splice for free. You must be connected to the internet to use Splice. Your Splice account can also be used in a web browser or in the stand-alone Splice application.



For more information about Splice, visit https://sounds.splice.com.

To log in to Splice:

- In the Splice window or the **SPLICE** tab, click **Login** and follow the onscreen instructions.

To try Splice for free:

- In the Splice window or the **SPLICE** tab, click **Try free** and follow the onscreen instructions.

To log out of Splice:

1. In the Splice window or the **SPLICE** tab, click **Settings**.
2. On the Splice Settings page, click **Log out**.

Splice Home Page

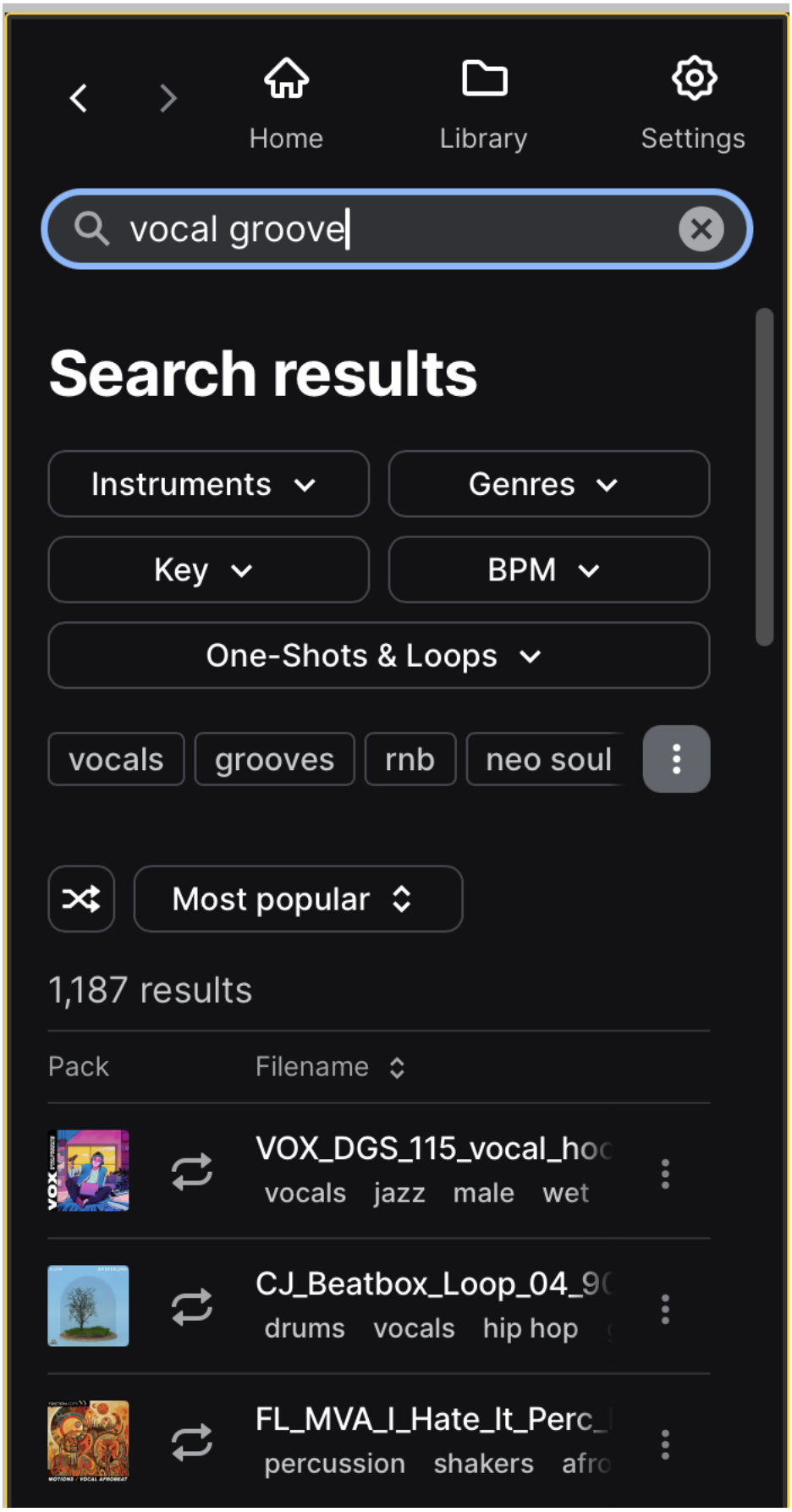
The **Home** page lets you search Splice for audio files by text or sound (audio or MIDI) from your Pro Tools session), and filter by metadata (including instruments, genre, key, and tempo).

Search Splice

To search Splice by text:

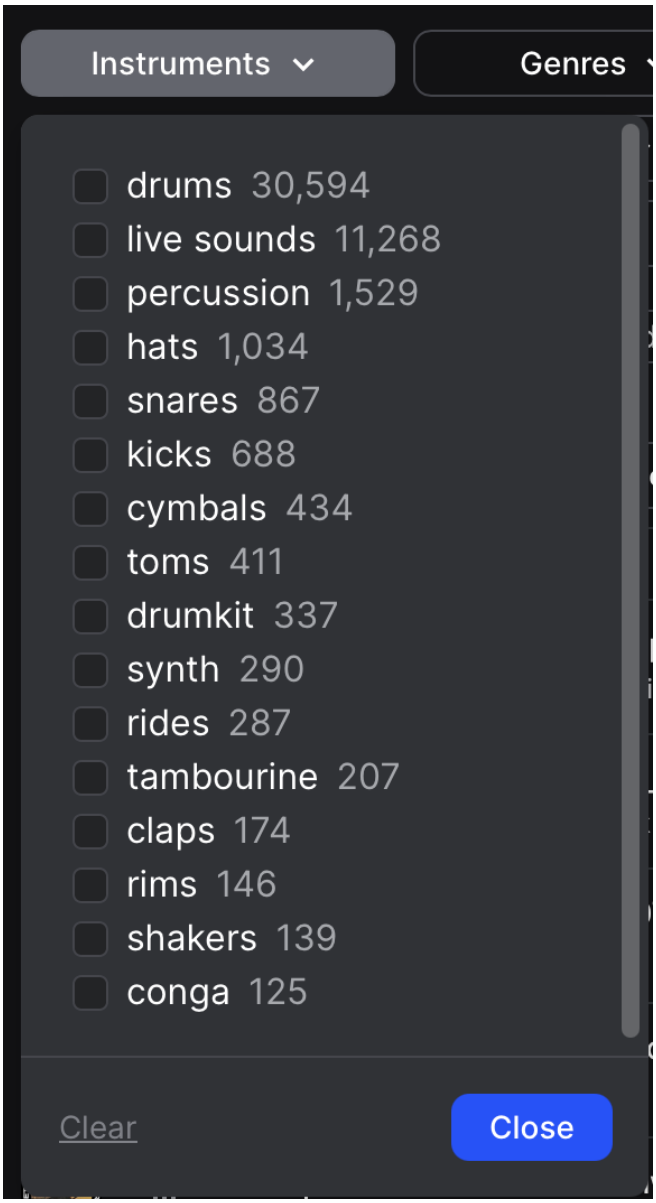
- Type text that describes the sound you want in the Search text field.

Search results appear below. You can then add metadata filters (such as **Instruments**, **Genre**, **Key**, and **BPM**) to refine your search results. You can also sort search results by **Most relevant**, **Most popular**, **Most recent**, or **Random**.


Home
Library
Settings
vocal groove
Search results
Instruments
Genres
Key
BPM
One-Shots & Loops
vocals
grooves
rnb
neo soul
Most popular
1,187 results
Pack
Filename
VOX_DGS_115_vocal_hoc
vocals jazz male wet
CJ_Beatbox_Loop_04_9(
drums vocals hip hop
FL_MVA_I_Hate_It_Perc_
percussion shakers afro

To filter search results by metadata, do any of the following:

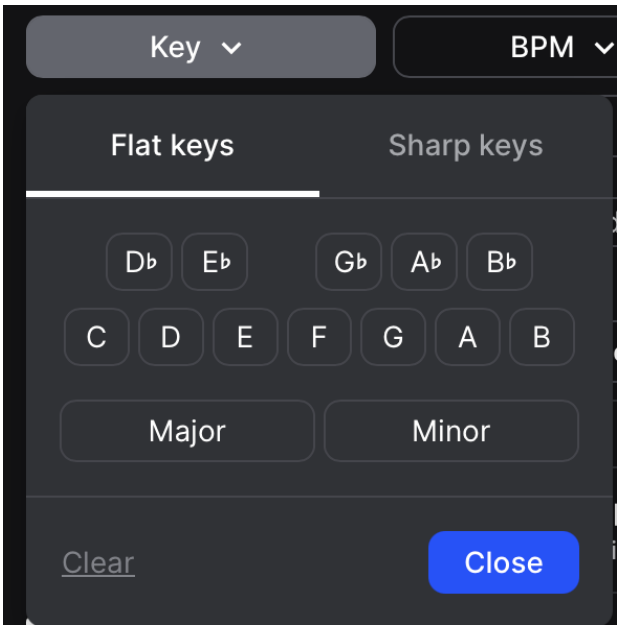
- Click **`Instruments`** and select one or more instruments.



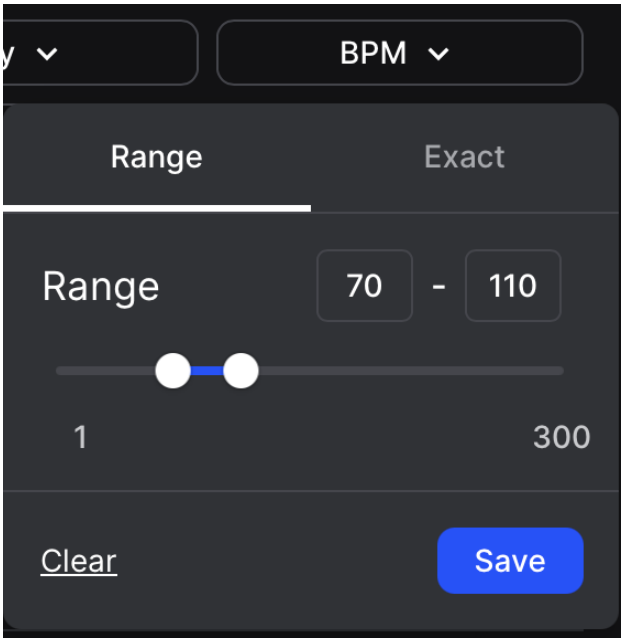
- Click **Genres** and select one or more genres.



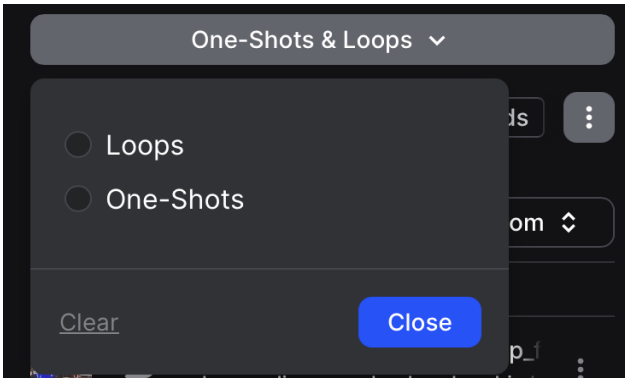
- Click **Key** and select a key.



- Click **BPM** and select a tempo (or a range of tempi).

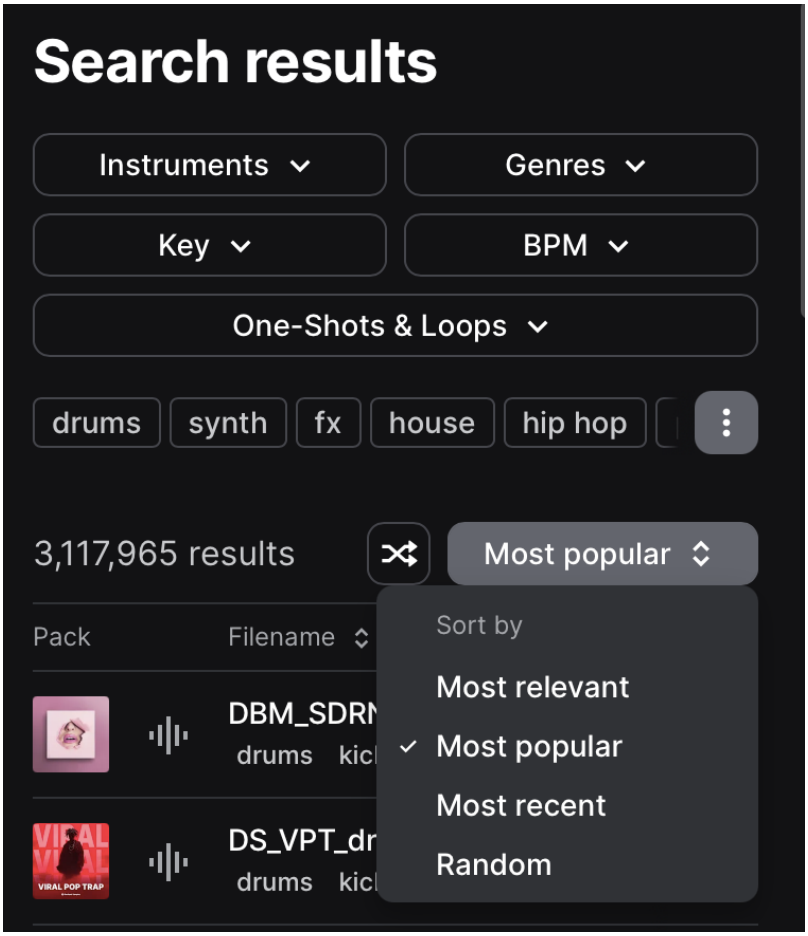


- Click **One-Shots & Loops** and select either (or both) **One-shots** or **Loops**.



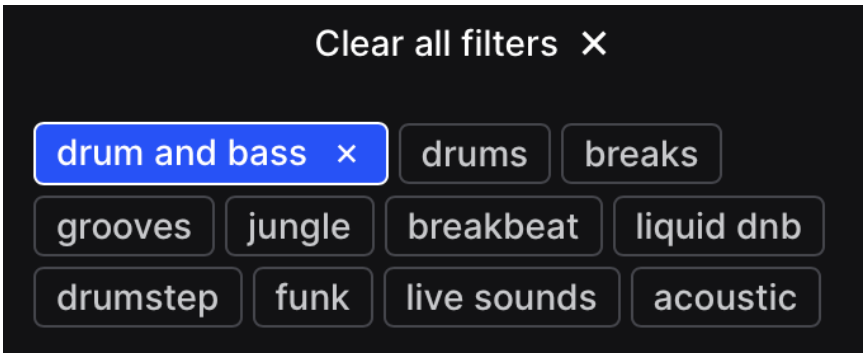
To sort search results:

Click the Sort By selector and select one of the following: **Most relevant**, **Most popular**, **Most recent**, or **Random**.



To clear filters, do one of the following:

- Click Clear all filters to clear all filters.
- Click X for specific metadata tags.

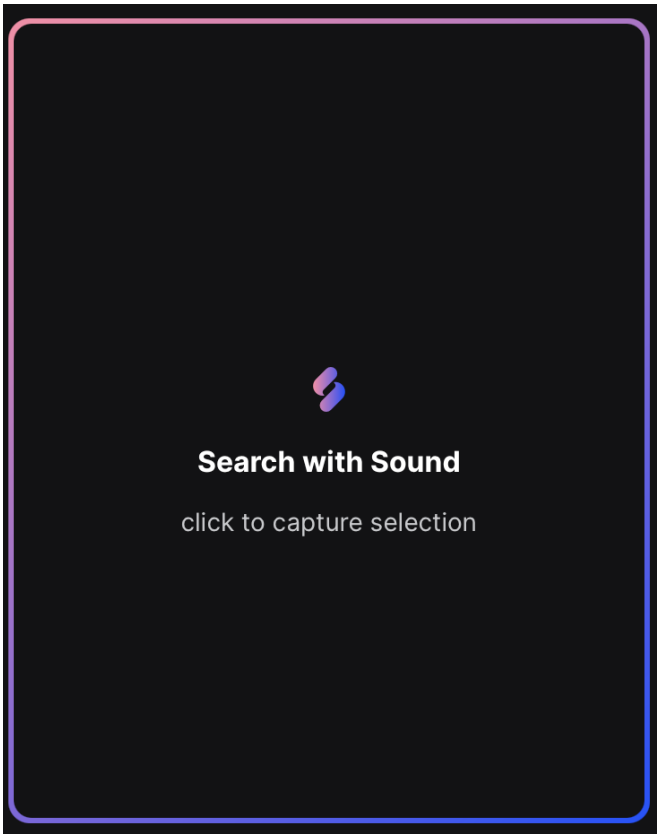


Search Splice with Sound

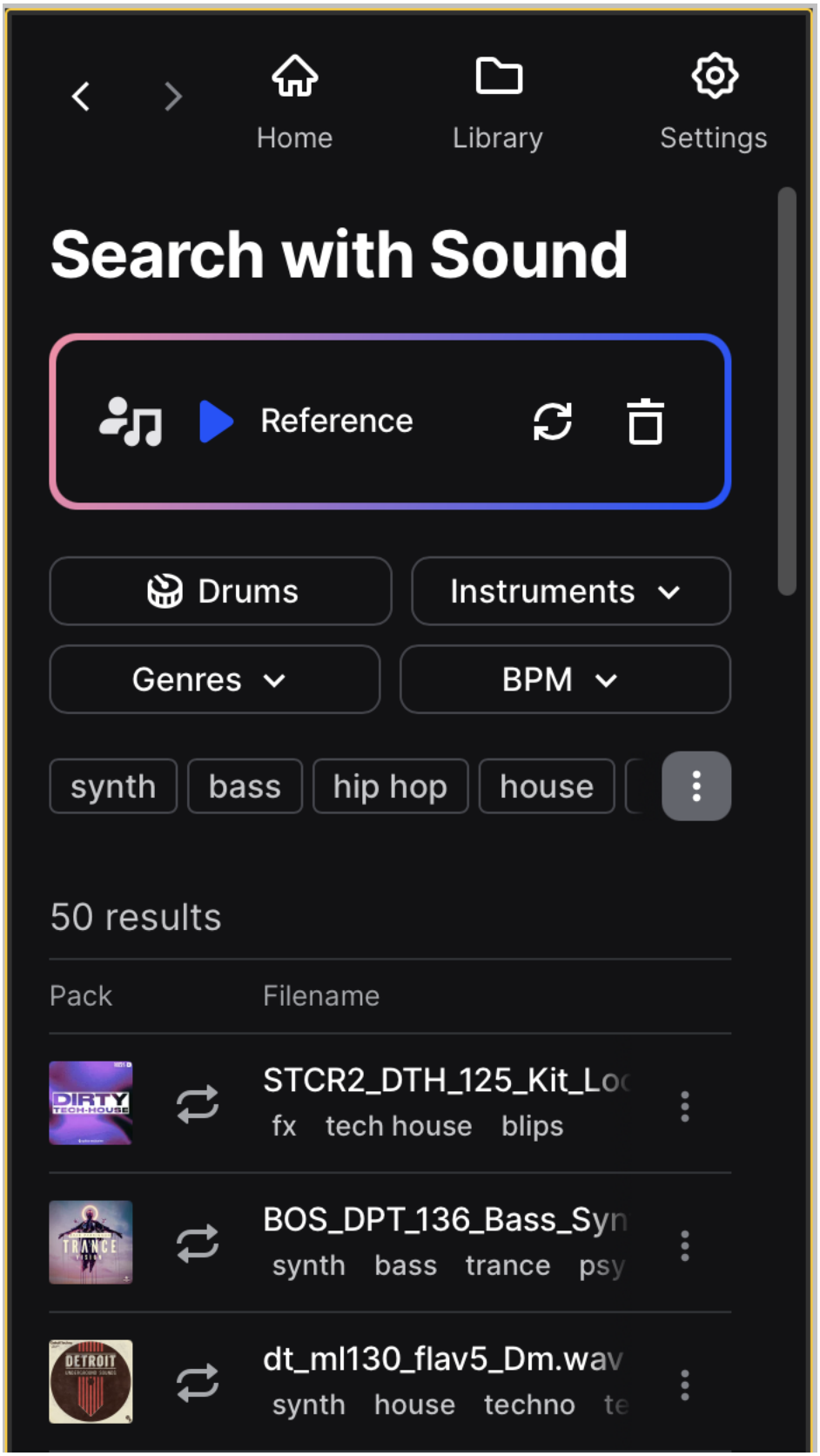
When using **`Search with Sound`**, you are restricted to using selections that are limited to 1, 2, 4, or 8 bars, and that are no longer than 30 seconds.

To Search with Splice, do one of the following:

- Drag and drop a mono or stereo audio clip, or a MIDI clip to **`Search with Sound`** in Splice.
- Make a selection that includes mono or stereo audio, or MIDI, then click **`Search with Sound`** in Splice.



Splice returns matching results below the Reference file.



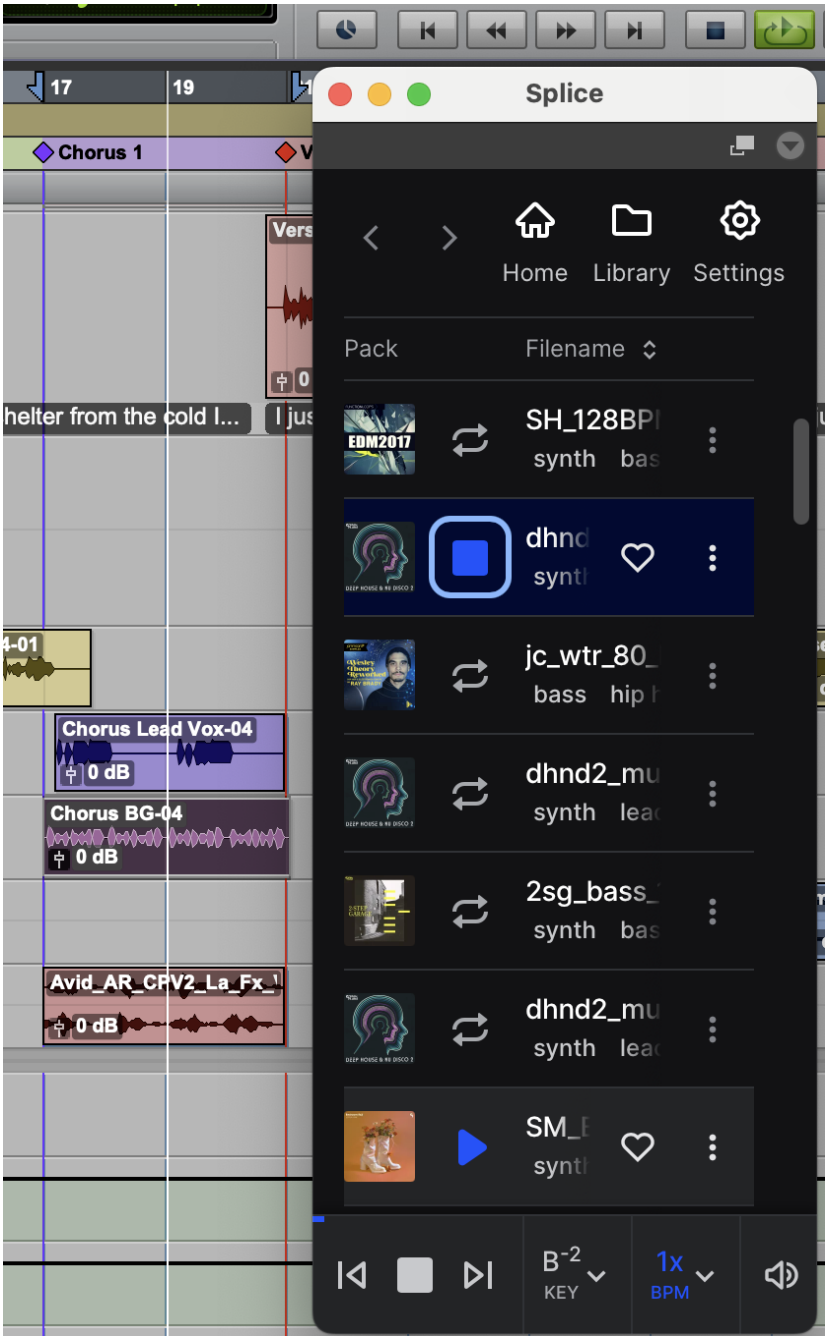
Click Loop Playback buttons for any given search result to audition the file. Likewise, click the **`Reference`** Play/Stop button to compare your search source with various search results.

Auditioning Search Results in Context

Once you have a list of Search Results, you can audition them in context with your Pro Tools session.

To audition Splice search results in context:

1. Make a selection in Pro Tools that includes the material you want to match.
2. Start loop playback in Pro Tools.
3. Playback each of the search results you want to consider.



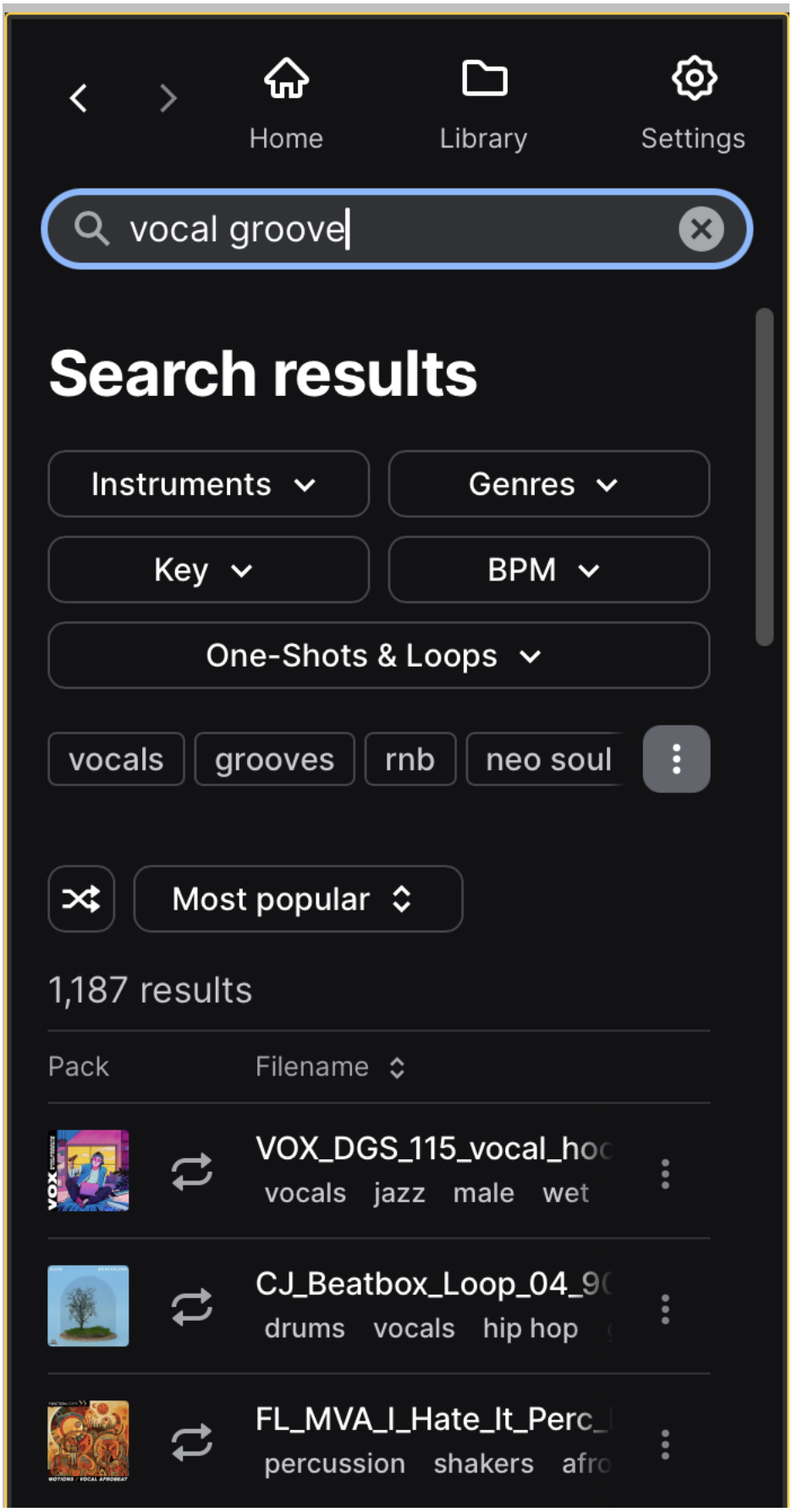
Import from Splice to Pro Tools

To import of audio content from Splice to Pro Tools:

- Drag and drop from the Splice tab or window to:
  - An existing track.
  - Blank space below existing tracks (this creates a new track).
  - Track List (this creates a new track).

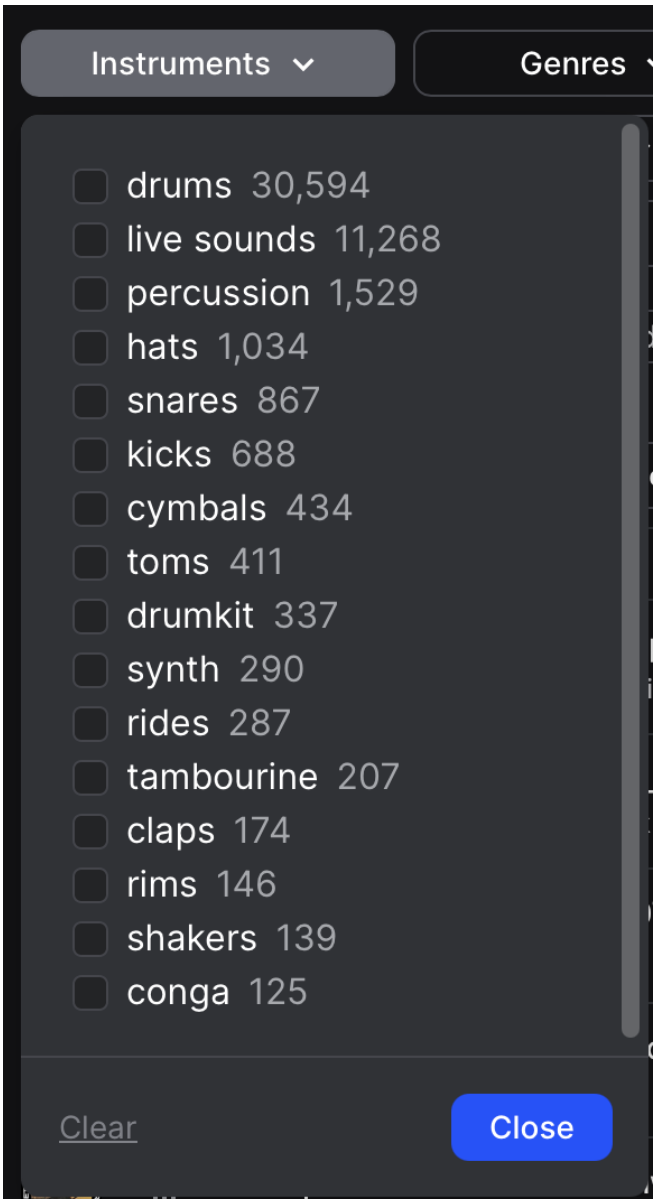
⚠ **Pro Tools currently only supports the import of stereo files from Splice.**

⚠ **Spot mode is not currently supported when importing audio from Splice.**


Home
Library
Settings
vocal groove
Search results
Instruments
Genres
Key
BPM
One-Shots & Loops
vocals
grooves
rnb
neo soul
Most popular
1,187 results
Pack
Filename
VOX_DGS_115_vocal_hoc
vocals jazz male wet
CJ_Beatbox_Loop_04_9(
drums vocals hip hop
FL_MVA_I_Hate_It_Perc_
percussion shakers afro

To filter search results by metadata, do any of the following:

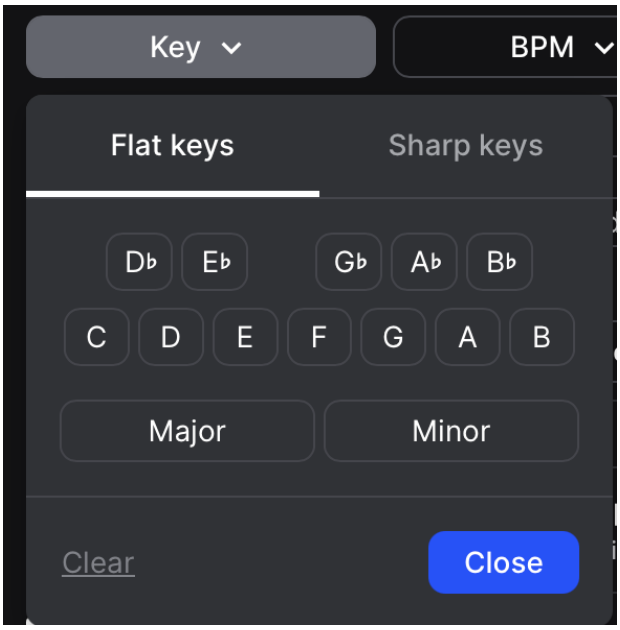
- Click **`Instruments`** and select one or more instruments.



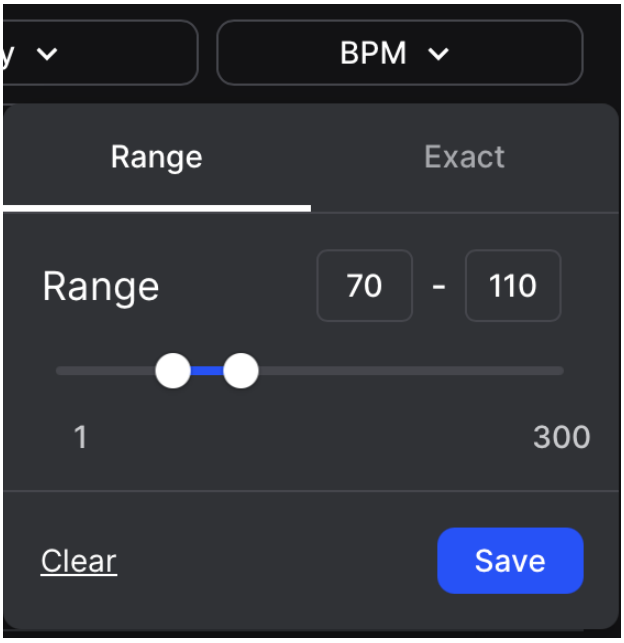
- Click **Genres** and select one or more genres.



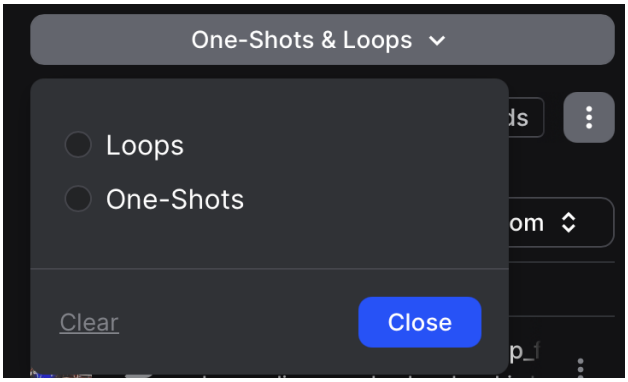
- Click **Key** and select a key.



- Click **BPM** and select a tempo (or a range of tempi).

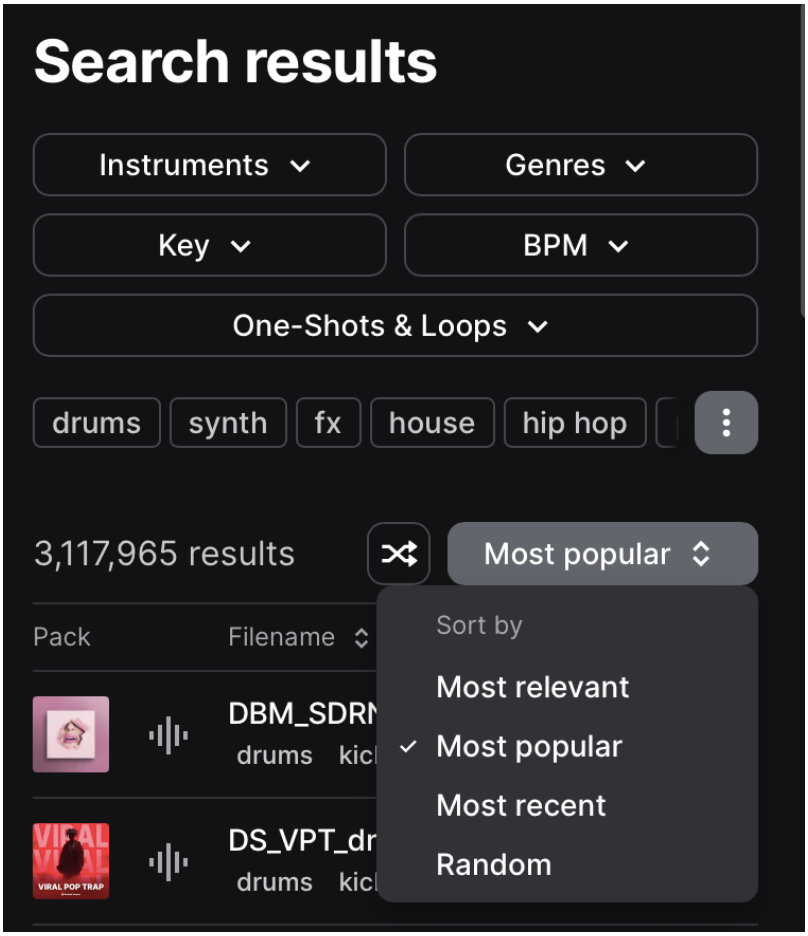


- Click **One-Shots & Loops** and select either (or both) **One-shots** or **Loops**.



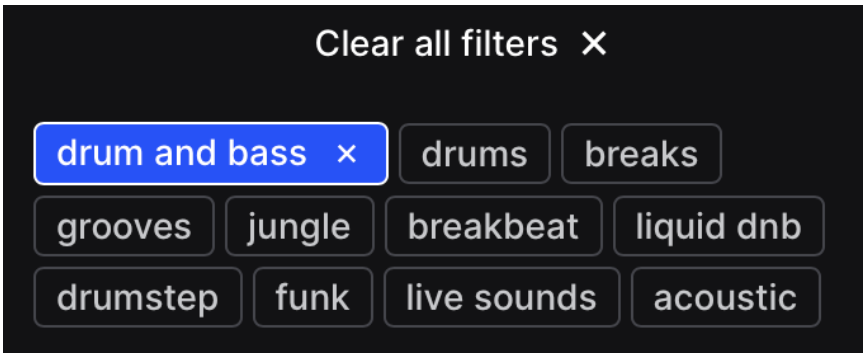
To sort search results:

Click the Sort By selector and select one of the following: **Most relevant**, **Most popular**, **Most recent**, or **Random**.



To clear filters, do one of the following:

- Click Clear all filters to clear all filters.
- Click X for specific metadata tags.

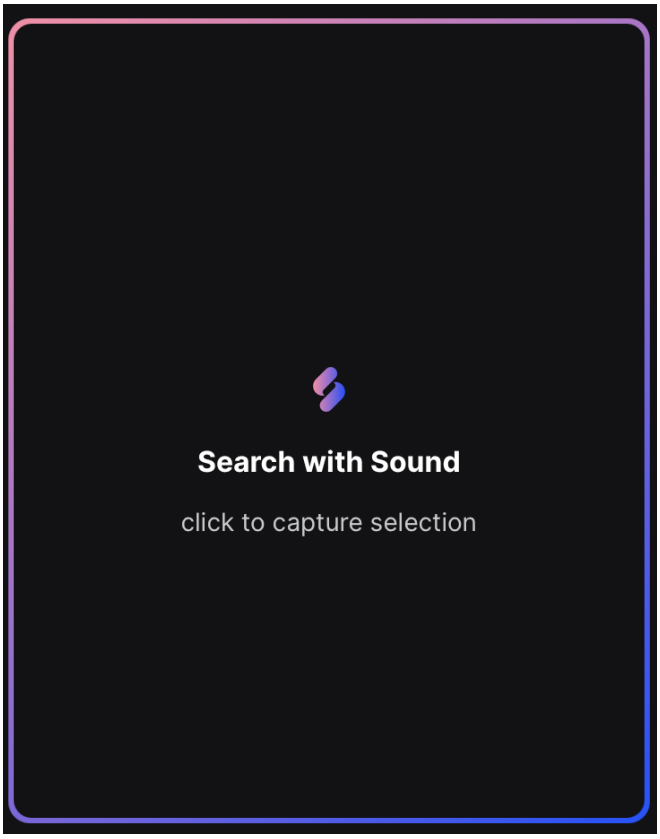


Search Splice with Sound

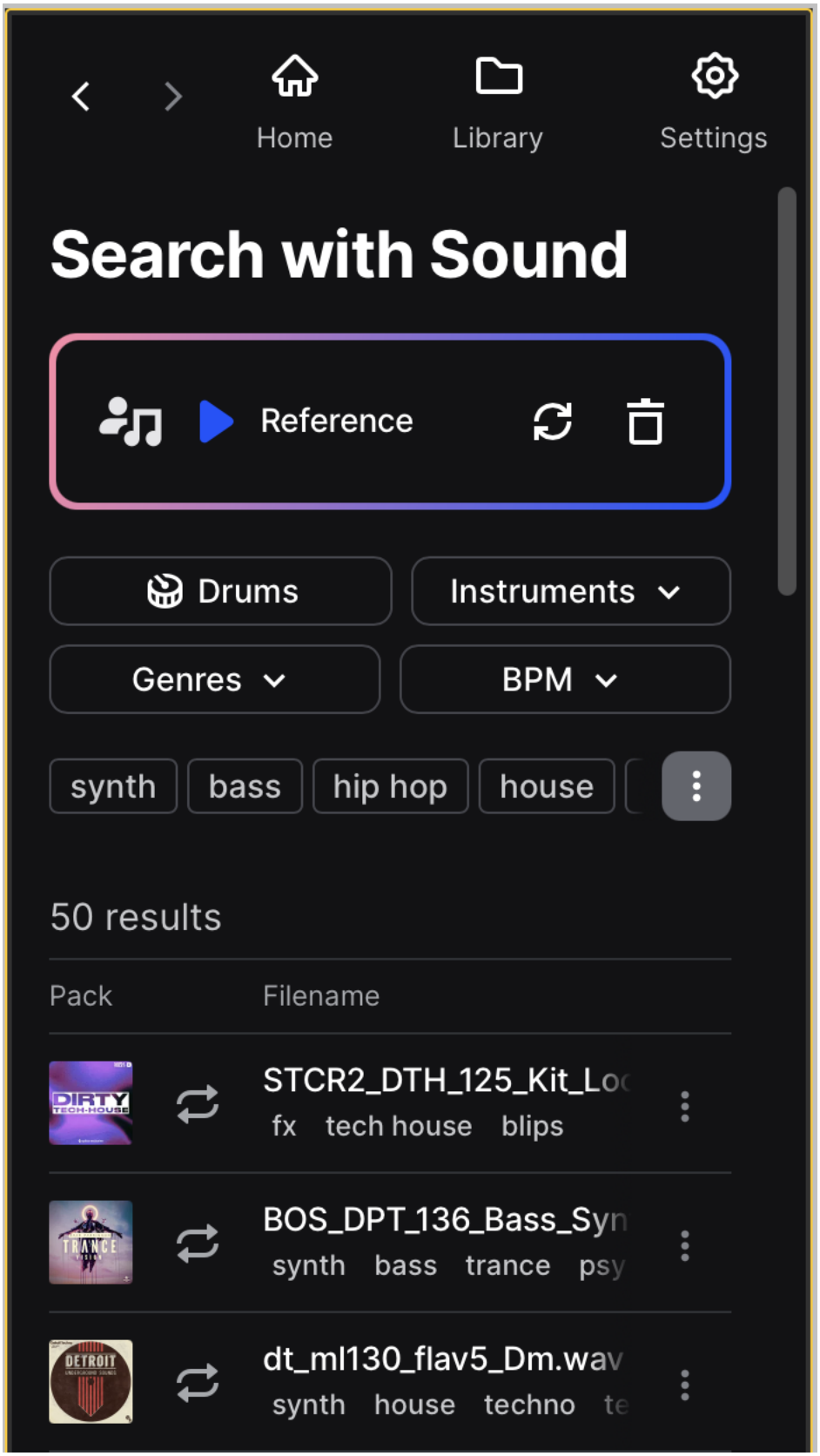
When using **`Search with Sound`**, you are restricted to using selections that are limited to 1, 2, 4, or 8 bars, and that are no longer than 30 seconds.

To Search with Splice, do one of the following:

- Drag and drop a mono or stereo audio clip, or a MIDI clip to **`Search with Sound`** in Splice.
- Make a selection that includes mono or stereo audio, or MIDI, then click **`Search with Sound`** in Splice.



Splice returns matching results below the Reference file.



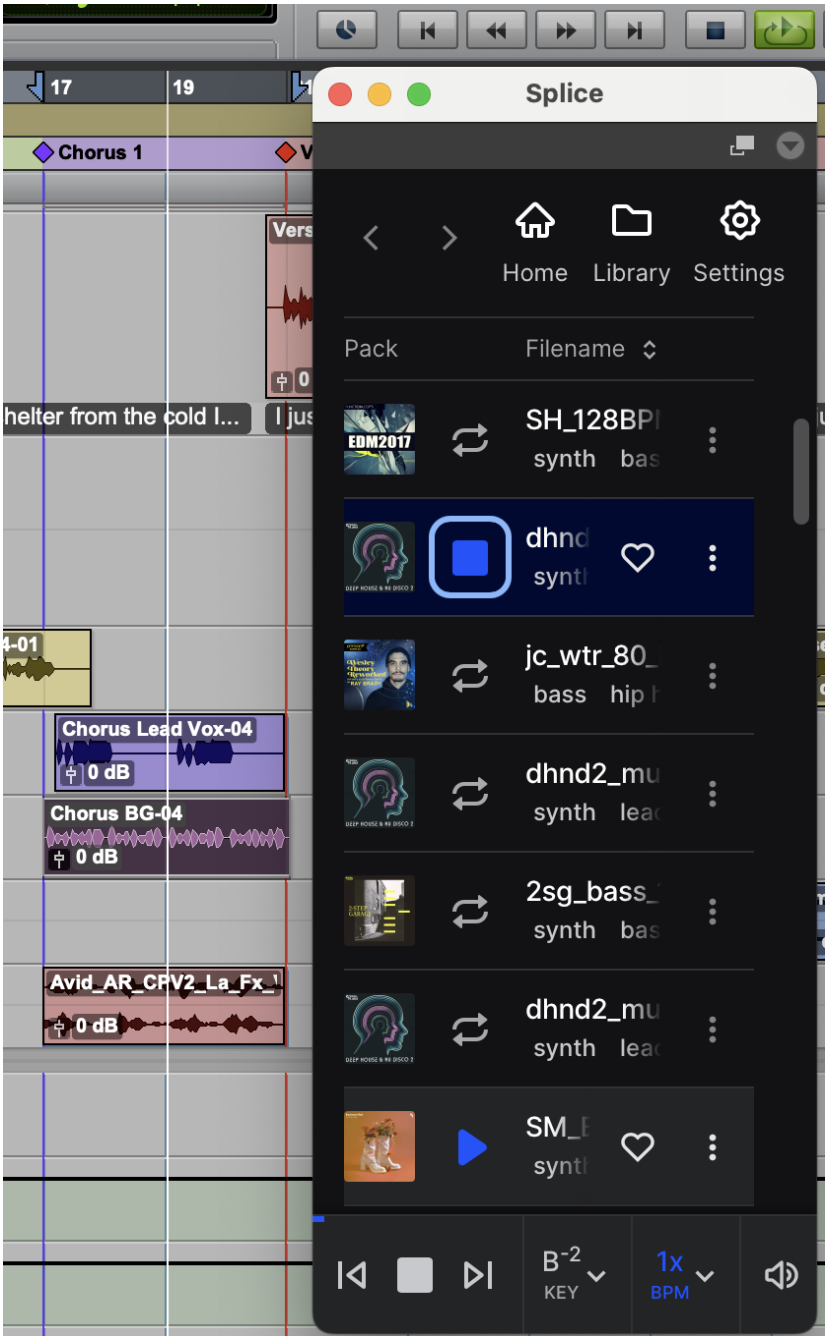
Click Loop Playback buttons for any given search result to audition the file. Likewise, click the **`Reference`** Play/Stop button to compare your search source with various search results.

Auditioning Search Results in Context

Once you have a list of Search Results, you can audition them in context with your Pro Tools session.

To audition Splice search results in context:

1. Make a selection in Pro Tools that includes the material you want to match.
2. Start loop playback in Pro Tools.
3. Playback each of the search results you want to consider.



Import from Splice to Pro Tools

To import of audio content from Splice to Pro Tools:

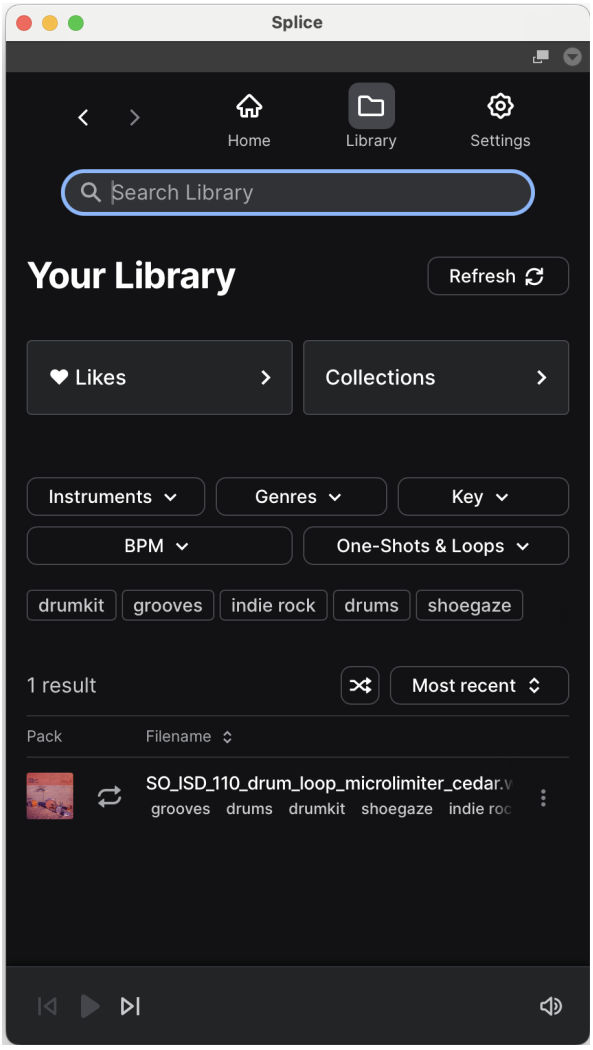
- Drag and drop from the Splice tab or window to:
  - An existing track.
  - Blank space below existing tracks (this creates a new track).
  - Track List (this creates a new track).

⚠ **Pro Tools currently only supports the import of stereo files from Splice.**

⚠ **Spot mode is not currently supported when importing audio from Splice.**

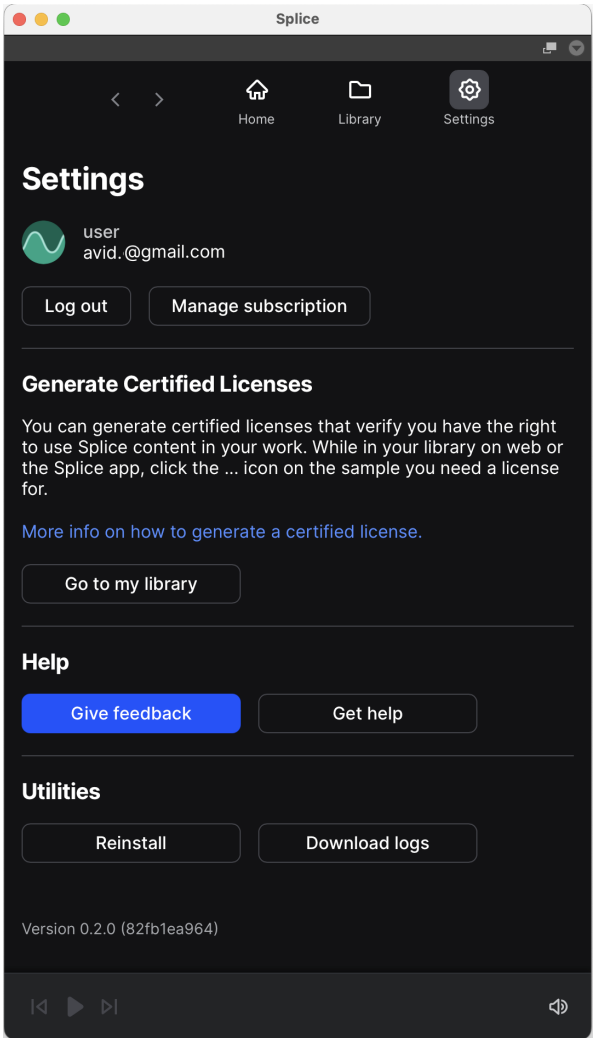
Splice Library

Your Splice Library consists of files you have imported from Splice into any of your Pro Tools sessions, as well files you have Liked or added to your Collections. You can log in to Splice from any Pro Tools system and access your Library.



Splice Settings

The Settings page lets you log out of Splice, Manage your subscription, and Generate Certified Licenses for content you own.



To access Splice, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Window > Splice`**.
- Click the **`SPLICE`** tab at the top of the Clip List.

To dock Splice window:

- Click the Dock to Edit Window icon in the upper-right corner of the Splice window.

To detach the Splice tab:

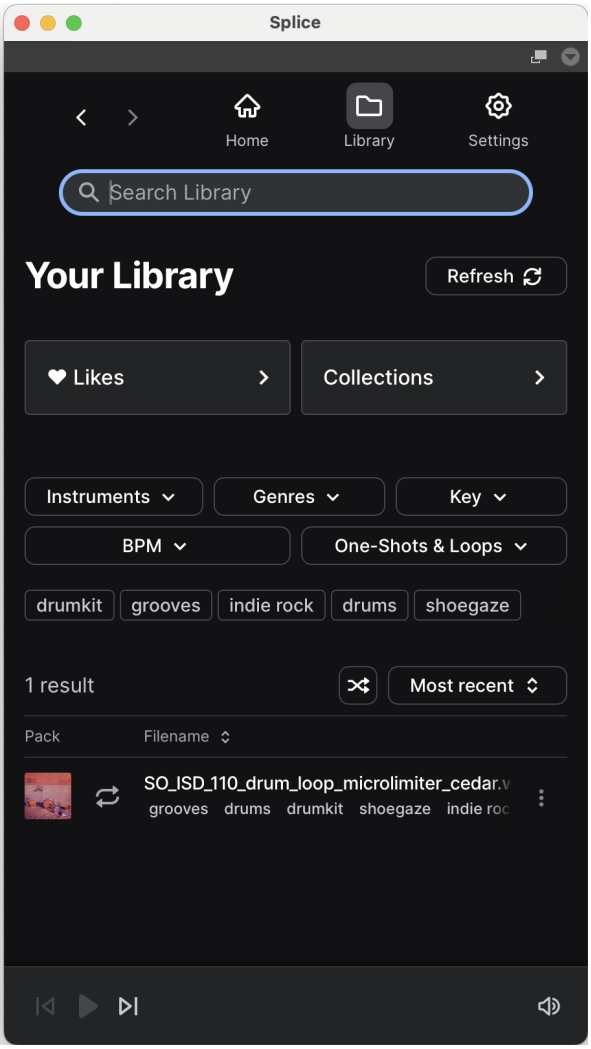
- Click the Detach from Edit Window icon in the upper-right corner of the **`SPLICE`** tab.

To show (or hide) the Clip List and/or Splice:

- Click the Right Side Tab View selector and select (or deselect) Clip List and/or Splice.

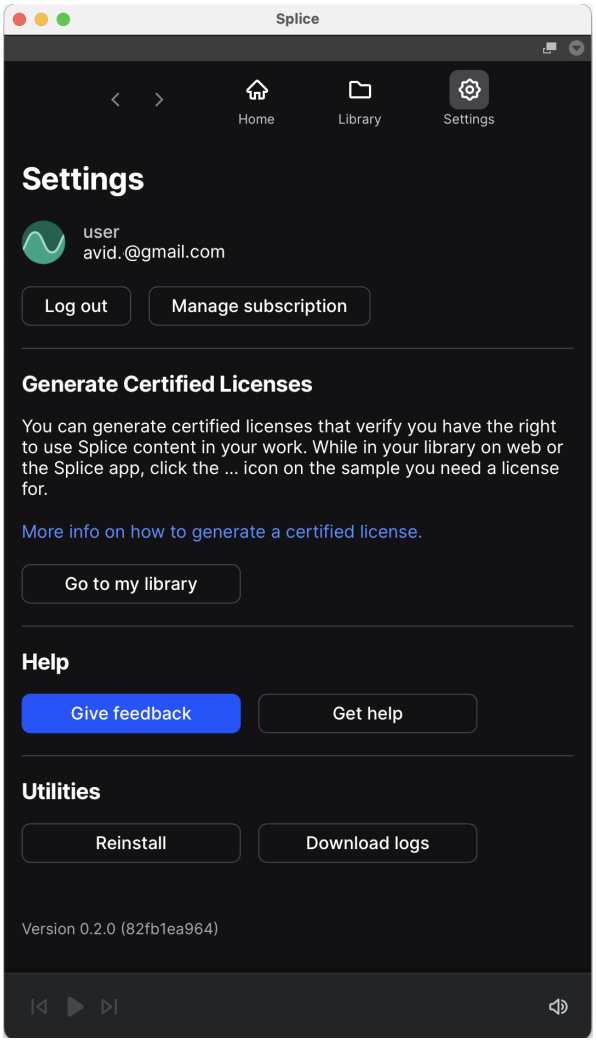
Splice Library

Your Splice Library consists of files you have imported from Splice into any of your Pro Tools sessions, as well files you have Liked or added to your Collections. You can log in to Splice from any Pro Tools system and access your Library.



Splice Settings

The Settings page lets you log out of Splice, Manage your subscription, and Generate Certified Licenses for content you own.


Splice
Home
Library
Settings
Settings
user
avid.@gmail.com
Log out
Manage subscription
Generate Certified Licenses
You can generate certified licenses that verify you have the right to use Splice content in your work. While in your library on web or the Splice app, click the ... icon on the sample you need a license for.
More info on how to generate a certified license.
Go to my library
Help
Give feedback
Get help
Utilities
Reinstall
Download logs
Version 0.2.0 (82fb1ea964)

19 SoundFlow

Pro Tools includes SoundFlow technology to provide customizable Macros and Flows (SoundFlow subscription required). Streamline repetitive tasks using SoundFlow Macros with the integrated SoundFlow Extension. SoundFlow also powers the Pro Tools Learn tutorials.

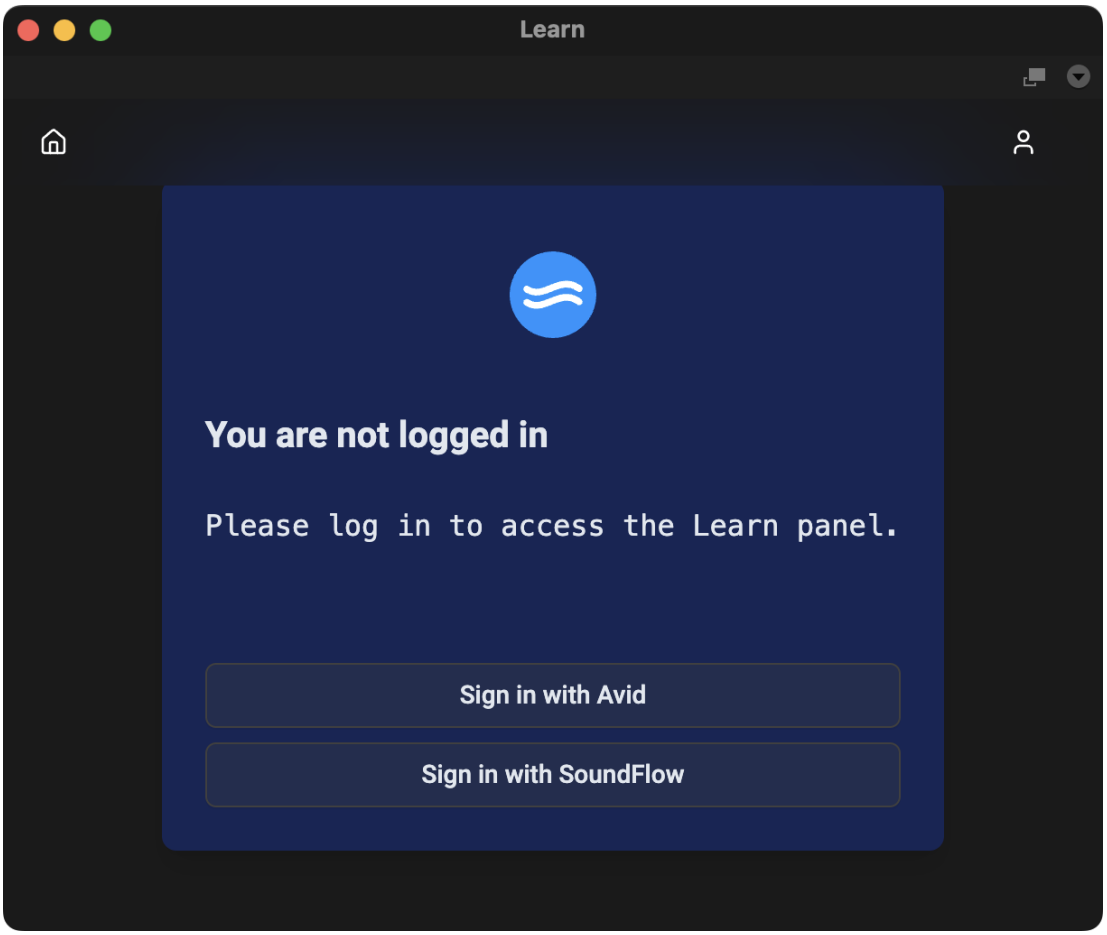
You need to be online and logged in to access Learn and SoundFlow features.

For more information about Learn, see "Learn Tab" on page 216.

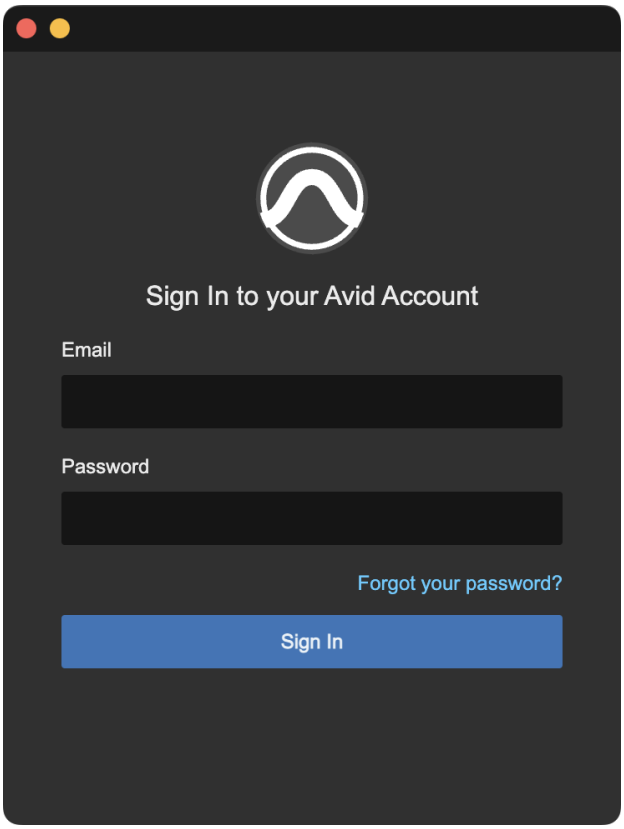
For more information about SoundFlow, visit soundflow.org.

To sign into SoundFlow:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the **Learn** or **SoundFlow** panel on the right of the Edit window.
   - Choose **Window > Learn** or **Extensions > SoundFlow**.



2. Do one of the following:
   - Click **`Sign in with Avid`** and sign in with your Avid Master Account email and password.



   - If you have a separate SoundFlow account, click **`Sign in with SoundFlow`** and sign in with your SoundFlow credentials.

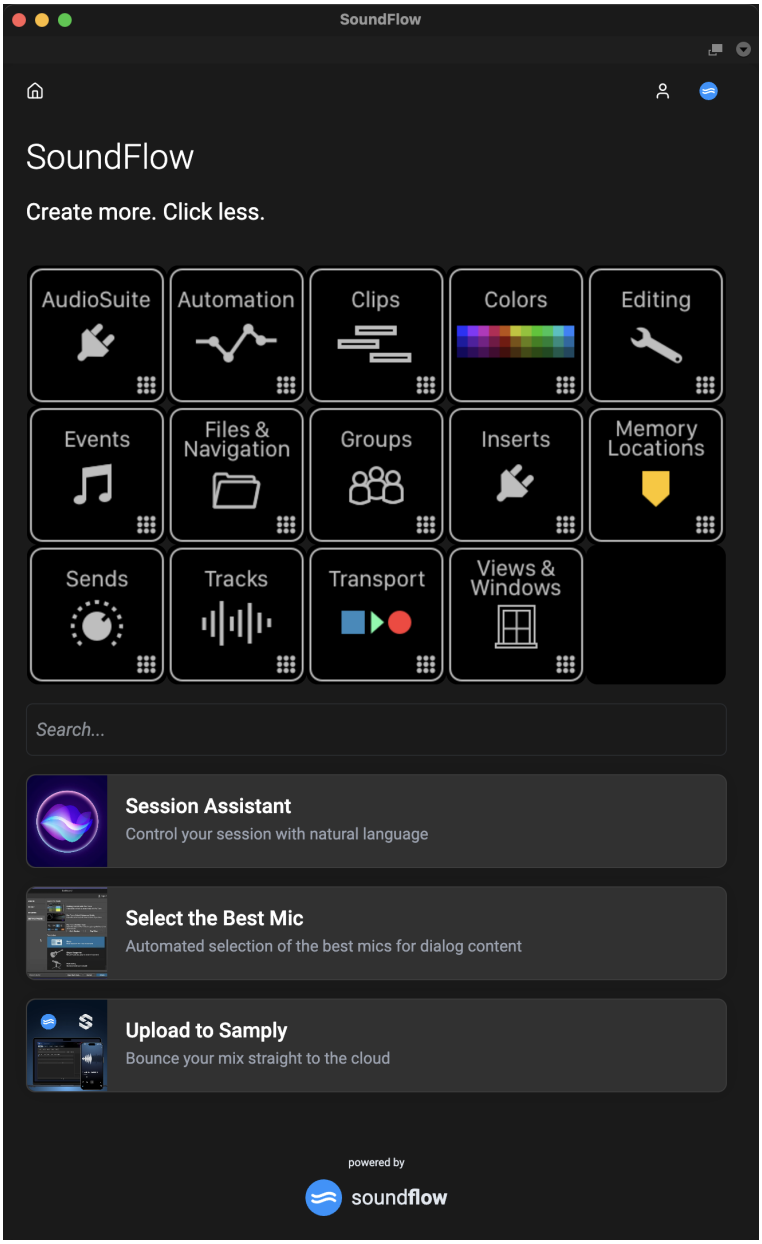
SoundFlow Macros

With SoundFlow integration, the legacy in-app tutorials in the Pro Tools Dashboard's Learn tab have been replaced by interactive tutorials powered by SoundFlow. When launched from the Dashboard, these tutorials close the Dashboard and guide users through an interactive tutorial experience. The SoundFlow tutorials available in the Dashboard's Learn tab cover the essential topics for getting started with Pro Tools. Additional tutorials can be accessed from the SoundFlow Learn panel and Learn window.

SoundFlow Window

To open the SoundFlow window:

- Select **`Window > SoundFlow`**.



SoundFlow Header Controls

The Learn tab and window, and the SoundFlow tab and window all provide the following common controls at the top of the panel or window:



Click the Home icon to show the main SoundFlow controls.



Click the Account icon to access your SoundFlow account online (in your default browser) or to Log Out of SoundFlow.



Click the SoundFlow icon to **`Open SoundFlow`** online (in your default browser). You can also choose Report Issue to submit an issue, a bug report, or a support request.

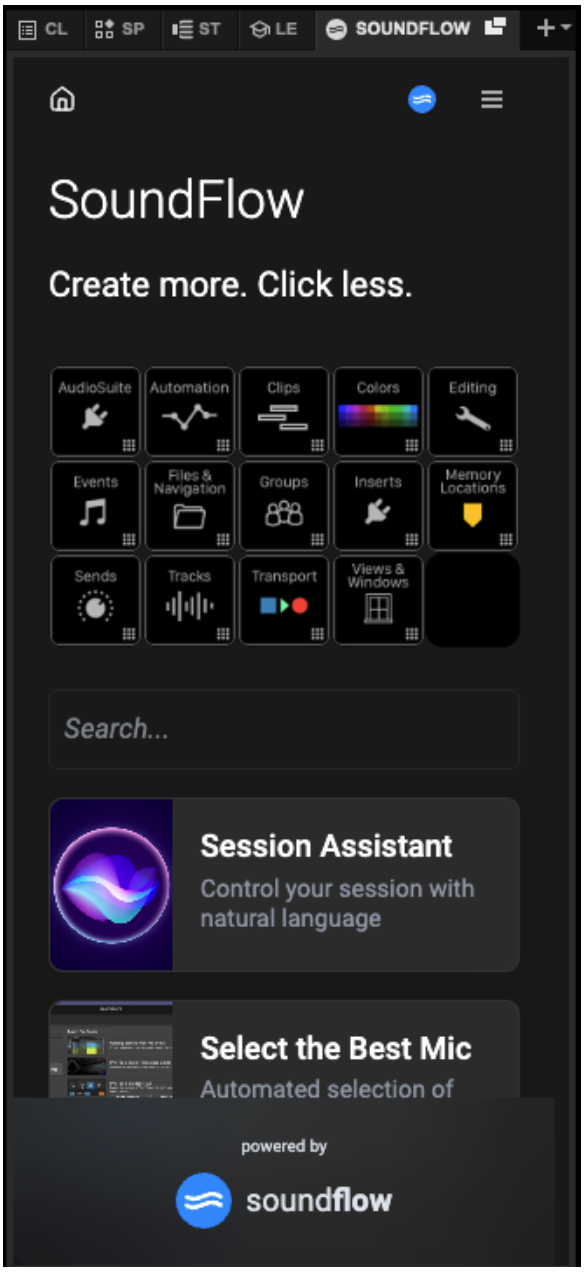
SoundFlow Flows

SoundFlow Flows are available with a SoundFlow subscription. Flows are scripts that let you execute more complicated tasks than Macros, such as Select the Best Mic or Upload to Samply. Flows appear below Macros in the SoundFlow panel and window. For more information, visit soundflow.org.

SoundFlow Tab

The SoundFlow tab is available in the side panel of the Edit window along with the Clip List, Splice, Stem Separator, and Learn tabs.

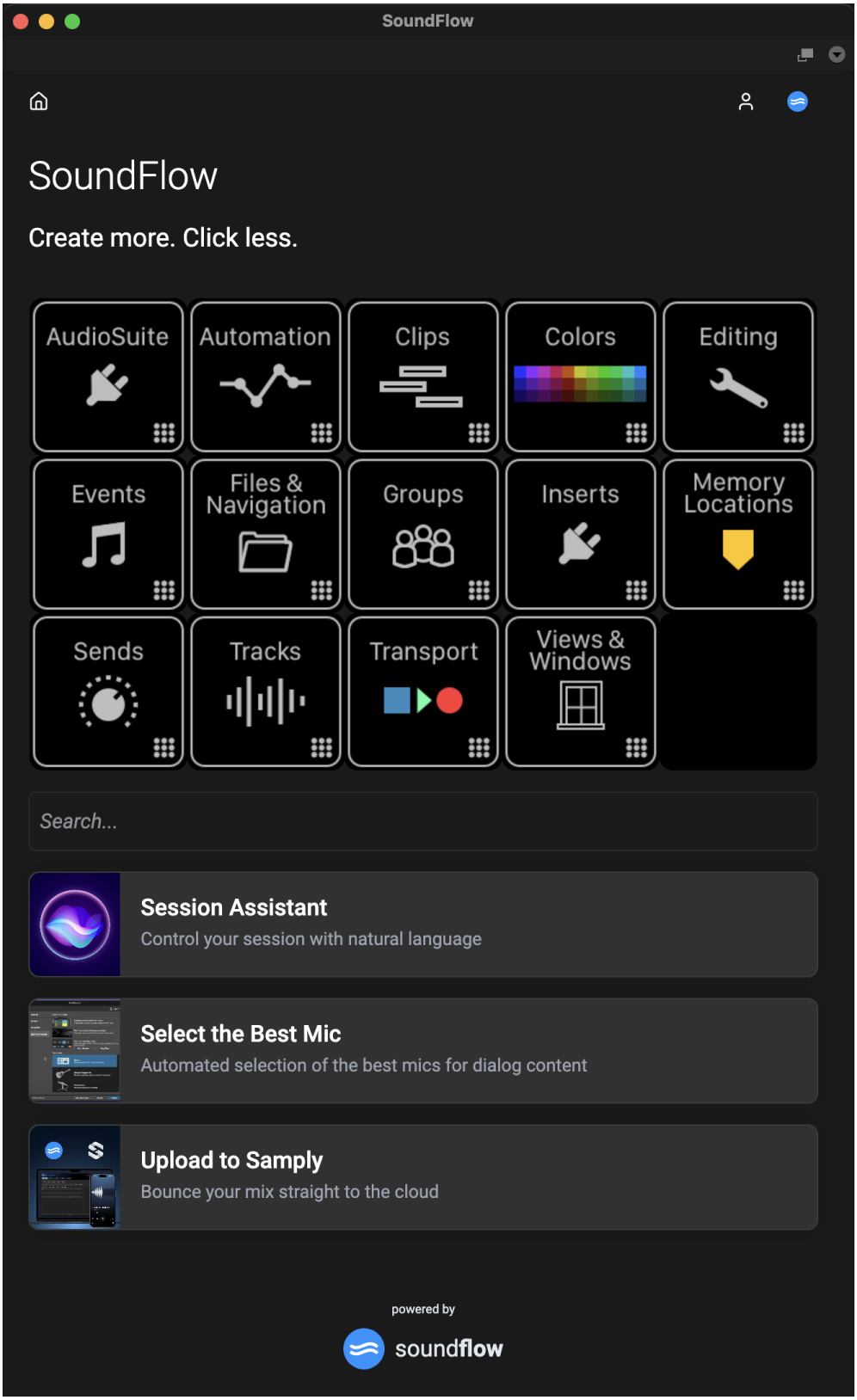
Custom key commands can be assigned to call the "Learn" and "SoundFlow" panels/windows in the same way as for Splice and ARA plugins.



SoundFlow Window

To open the SoundFlow window:

- Select **`Extensions > SoundFlow`**.



SoundFlow Header Controls

The Learn tab and window, and the SoundFlow tab and window all provide the following common controls at the top of the panel or window:



Click the Home icon to show the main SoundFlow controls.



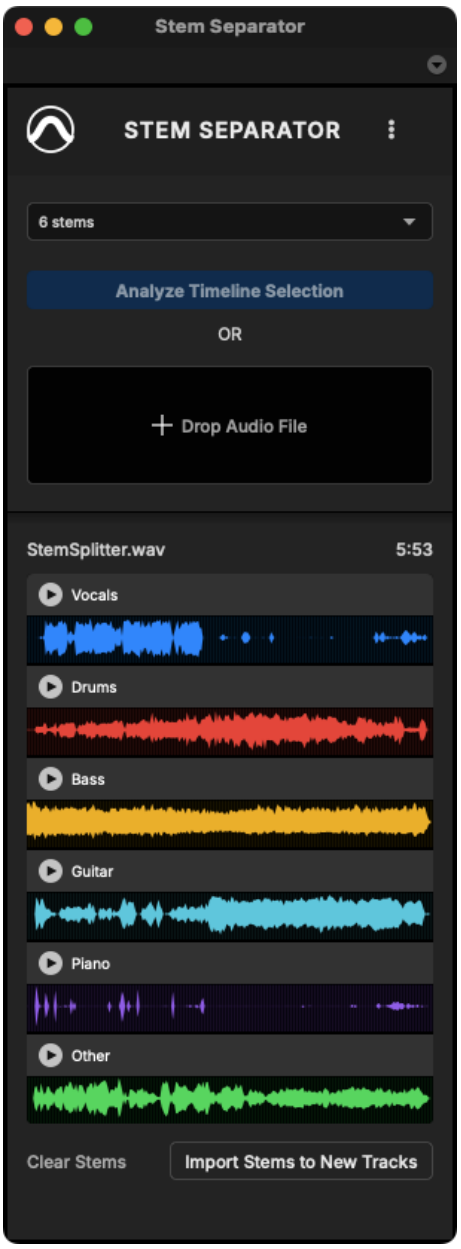
Click the Account icon to access your SoundFlow account online (in your default browser) or to Log Out of SoundFlow.



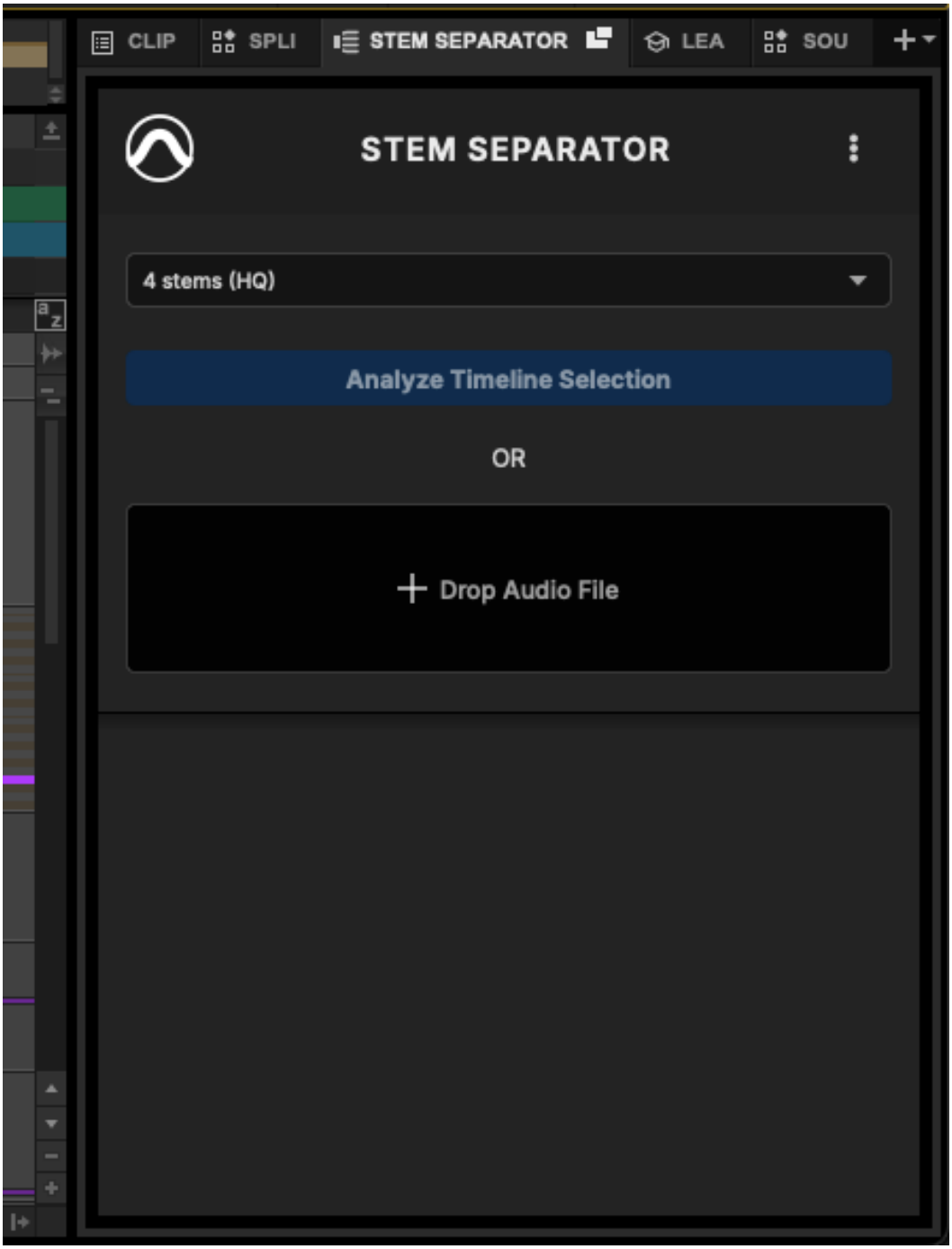
Click the SoundFlow icon to **`Open SoundFlow`** online (in your default browser). You can also choose Report Issue to submit an issue, a bug report, or a support request.

20 Stem Separator

Pro Tools Stem Separator is an Extension for Pro Tools that lets you separate audio into individual stems by category. Available in all versions of Pro Tools, this Extension separates any audio into a number of stems according to the chosen separation model. You can drag audio clips or files into the Extension (or process a timeline selection), preview results, and then drag stems back into the session or write them as new tracks from the insertion point.



Stem Separator window



Stem Separator tab

Installing Pro Tools Stem Separator

To install Pro Tools Stem Separator:

- Download the Pro Tools Stem Separator installer from your MyAvid.com account and run it following the onscreen instructions.
- Install the Pro Tools Stem Separator using Avid Link.

Stem Separator AI Models and Privacy

Pro Tools Stem Separator performs local stem separation, meaning all analysis and processing occur directly on your computer using built-in fine-tuned transformer-based Demucs music source separation models.

Pro Tools Stem Separator is designed with your privacy and content security in mind:

- All audio analysis and stem separation processing occurs locally on your machine.
- No internet connection is required to analyze or process audio.
- Audio content is never uploaded to the cloud during stem separation.
- Audio files are never shared with any third-party service.
- The AI models included with Pro Tools Stem Separator are used solely for local inference.
- No AI training or model training is performed on your audio content.
- Your audio remains under your control throughout the entire workflow.

Using Pro Tools Stem Separator

The Stem Separator Extension separates stems from an audio selection in a Pro Tools session or from an audio file using locally installed AI models.

As a Pro Tools Extension, Stem Separator can be used whether you have a session open or not.

Stem Separation Models

Pro Tools Stem Separator includes the following locally installed full and single stem separation models.

Full Stem Models:

- 4 Stems
  - Vocals
  - Drums
  - Bass
  - Other
- 6 Stem
  - Vocal
  - Drums
  - Bass
  - Guitar
  - Piano
  - Other
- 4 Stems (High Quality: uses enhanced processing for improved stem quality, but with a slightly increased processing time).
  - Vocals
  - Drums

- Bass
- Other

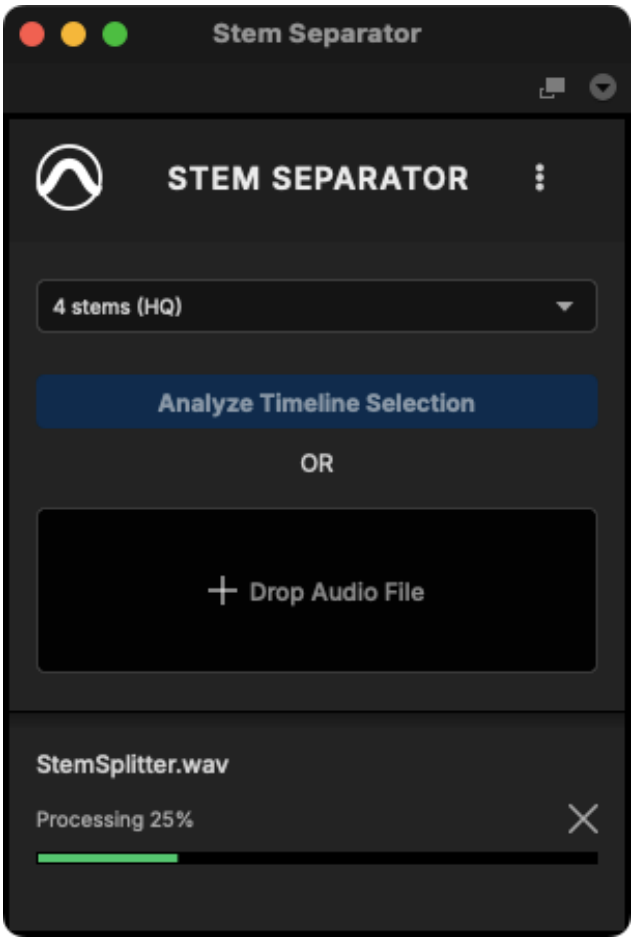
Single Stem Models

- Vocals (only)
- Drums (only)
- Bass (only)
- Other (only)

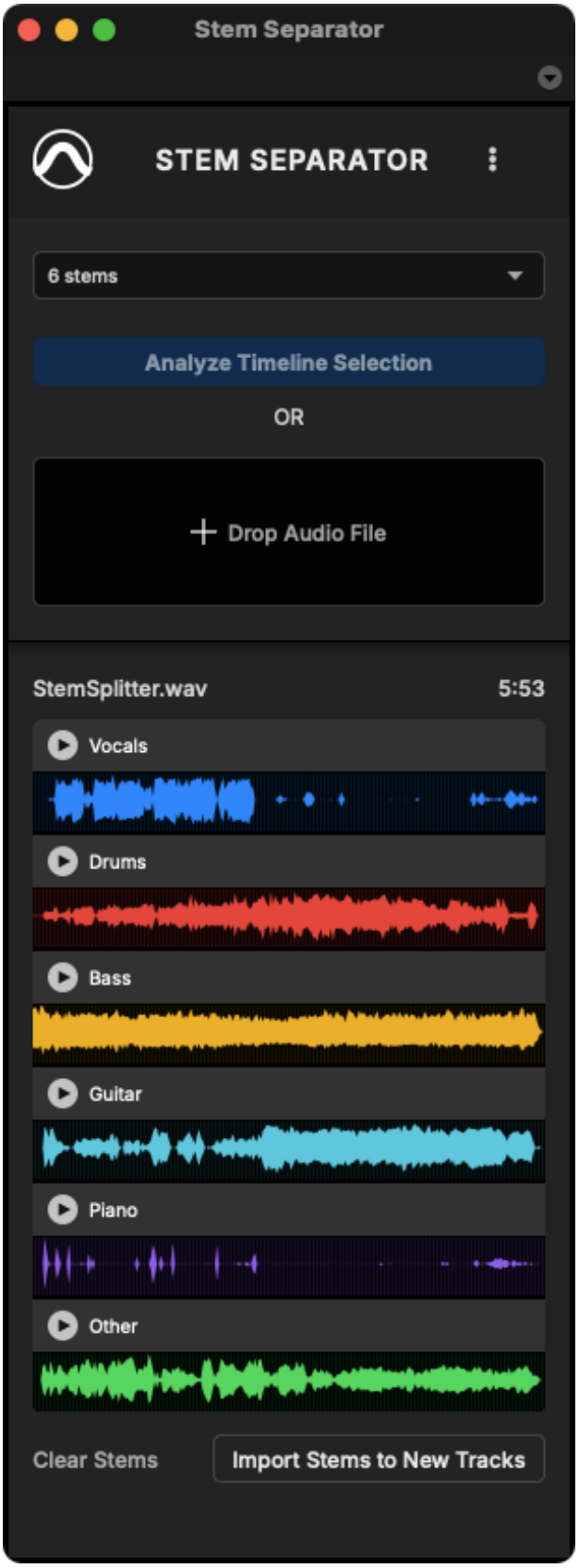
Processing Audio from the Timeline

To separate stems from a selection on the timeline:

1. Make an audio selection on the Pro Tools timeline.
2. Choose **`Extensions > Stem Separator`**.
3. Select the desired Stem model.
4. Click **`Analyze Timeline Selection`**.
5. Stem Separator bounces the audio and processes it using the selected model.



6. Once processing is complete, the separated stems appear in the Extension panel.



Process External Audio Files

You can also use the Drop Audio target to analyze audio files directly whether or not a Pro Tools session is open.

To separate stems from an audio file:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **`Extensions > Stem Separator`**.
2. Drag an audio file from Finder (macOS) or File Explorer (Windows), or from a Workspace Browser (Pro Tools) and drop it on the Drop Audio area in the Stem Separator window.

   Pro Tools Stem Separator analyzes and processes the file, and the resulting stems appear in the Extension panel.

Auditioning Stems

Auditioning Individual Stems

Stem Separator lets you audition individual stems before importing them to new tracks in a Pro Tools session.

To audition a stem in the Stem Separator window:

- Click the Play button on an individual stem.



Auditioning Multiple Stems Simultaneously

You can audition more than one stem at a time in the Stem Separator window.

To audition multiple stems simultaneously:

1. Shift-click, or Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select (or deselect) the stems you want to audition.
2. Click Play on any selected stem.

   All selected stems play together.

To audition all stems simultanesously:

1. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any stem in the Stem Separator window to select all stems.
2. Click Play on any selected stem.

   All stems play together.

Stem Transport Navigation

To reposition the playhead for auditioning stems:

- Click anywhere within a stem waveform display.

Pro Tools Stem Separator Audition Path

Stem Separator uses the Audition Path selected in I/O Setup for stem audio preview. When you audition stems from the Stem Separator window, audio is routed through the currently assigned Audition Path.

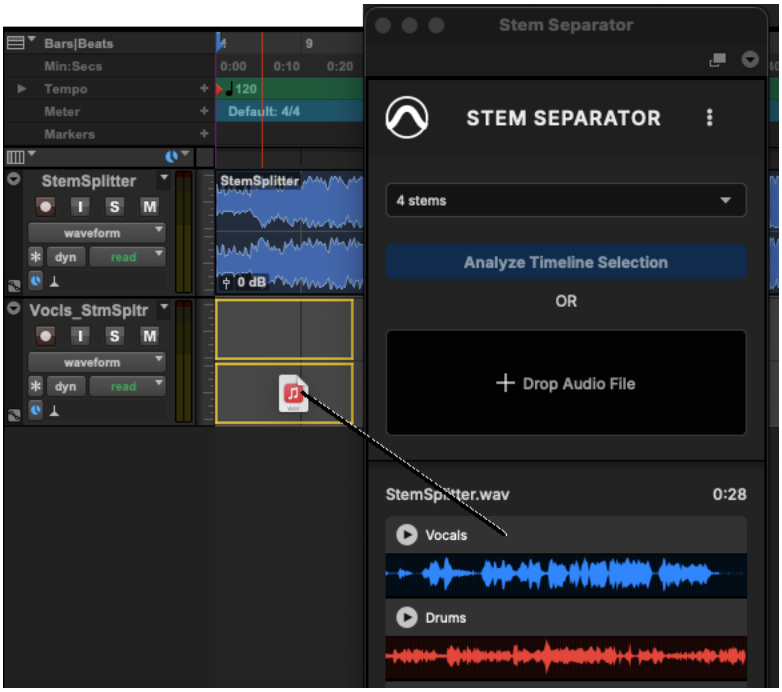
Importing Stems to the Timeline

You can import stems from Stem Separator either by dragging and dropping stems to the timeline in a session or by importing stems to new tracks.

Drag and Drop

To import stems to existing tracks:

- Drag an individual stem onto the Pro Tools timeline or select multiple stems and drag them together.

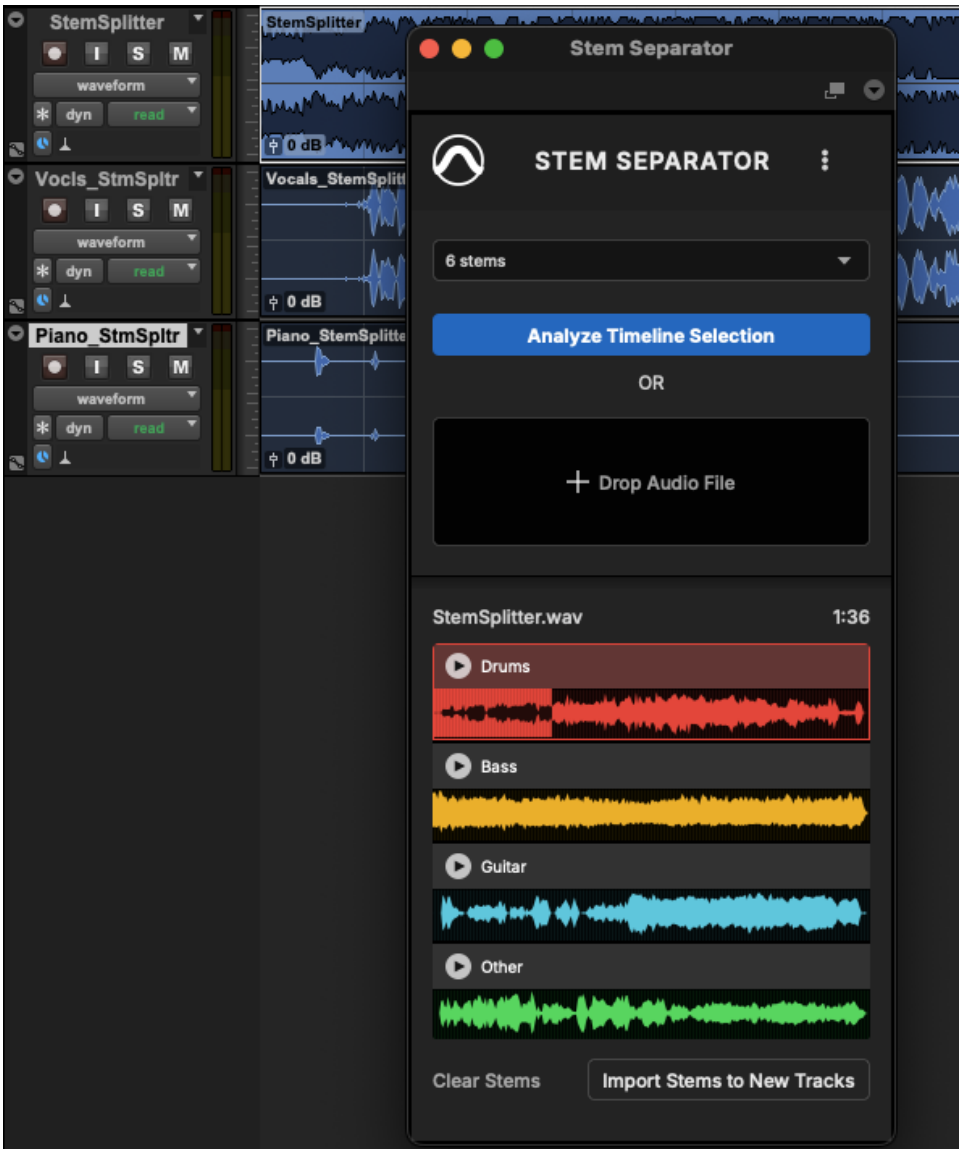


Import Stems to New Tracks

You can import any or all stems to new tracks in a session. If one or more stems are selected, only those stems are imported. If no stems are selected, all available stems are imported. New tracks are automatically created for each stem.

To import stems to new tracks:

- Select one or more stems (or none) and click the **`Import Stems to New Tracks`** button.



Processing External Audio Files

Use the Drop Audio target to analyze audio files directly whether or not a Pro Tools session is open.

To separate stems from an audio file:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **`Extensions > Stem Separator`**.
2. Drag an audio file from Finder (macOS) or File Explorer (Windows), or from a Workspace Browser (Pro Tools) and drop it on the Drop Audio area in the Stem Separator window.

   Pro Tools Stem Separator analyzes and processes the file, and the resulting stems appear in the Extension panel.

Auditioning Stems

Auditioning Individual Stems

Stem Separator lets you audition individual stems before importing them to new tracks in a Pro Tools session.

To audition a stem in the Stem Separator window:

- Click the Play button on an individual stem.



Auditioning Multiple Stems Simultaneously

You can audition more than one stem at a time in the Stem Separator window.

To audition multiple stems simultaneously:

1. Shift-click, or Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select (or deselect) the stems you want to audition.
2. Click Play on any selected stem.

   All selected stems play together.

To audition all stems simultanesously:

1. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any stem in the Stem Separator window to select all stems.
2. Click Play on any selected stem.

   All stems play together.

Stem Transport Navigation

To reposition the playhead for auditioning stems:

- Click anywhere within a stem waveform display.

Pro Tools Stem Separator Audition Path

Stem Separator uses the Audition Path selected in I/O Setup for stem audio preview. When you audition stems from the Stem Separator window, audio is routed through the currently assigned Audition Path.

Clear Stems

To clear all stems:

- Click `Clear Stems`.

  All currently cached stems are removed and Stem Separator is ready for new audio analysis and processing.

20 Workspace Browsers

The Pro Tools Workspace combines an intuitive, browser-style interface with an integrated databasing engine, optimized for metadata and media management.

Workspace browsers provide extensive databasing tools for searching, sorting, auditioning, and importing of audio, MIDI, video, plugin settings (.tfx), Guitar Rig Settings (Eleven Rack only), and session files. Multiple browsers can be displayed and arranged, with custom display settings provided to customize your work environment.

For information on dragging and dropping files from Workspace browsers to your Pro Tools session, see "Importing Files with Drag and Drop" on page 653.

Workspace Browsers

Workspace browsers provide an intuitive user interface to databases with many convenient features for various file management tasks (such as search and sort functions).

Workspace browsers in Pro Tools are analogous to windows in your computer's operating system, but are specifically designed for Pro Tools workflow. Multiple browsers can be displayed simultaneously, and arranged independently with custom display settings for each.

Workspace browsers let you search and sort audio files, video files, and sessions. Audio, video, and session files displayed in browsers can be dragged directly into the current Pro Tools session.

When offline items are needed, Pro Tools lets you find the correct matching files, then relink to online media.

The Workspace browser provides access to all your mounted volumes, as well as the folders and files they contain.

Using the Workspace browser, you can:

- Use Soundbase to tag and find audio files with musically descriptive metadata
- Access all mounted volumes
- Access and organize Track Presets
- Access all Catalogs
- Search across multiple volumes and Catalogs simultaneously
- Designate volumes for Record and Playback, Playback Only, or Transfer
- View, manage, audition, and import individual items in any catalog or mounted volume
- Update databases for entire volumes

Sound Libraries

At the top of the list in the Location pane of any Workspace browser is the Sound Libraries directory. Sound Libraries provides easy access to tagged audio files, and search on criteria that includes musically useful information about the audio content—especially Time Base, Duration (Min:Sec or Bars|Beats), Tempo, Key, Time Signature, Favorites, Rating, and Tags. Use Soundbase in Workspace browsers to find audio files using tags (WAV and AIFF only). Tags are descriptive metadata saved to and read from the header of an audio file. You can create, add, and edit tags for any WAV or AIFF file accessible through the Workspace.

Volumes

Workspace browsers provide file management for local and network *volumes*. Volumes are formatted partitions on a physical drive (hard drive). Any changes made in the Workspace (such as copying, or moving files and folders) is mirrored on the volumes themselves. Volumes include mounted hard drives, network storage, and removable media (such as USB thumb drives).

When Volumes are focused in the Locations pane you can:

- View, manage, audition, and import individual items on the volume
- Update a database for contents of the volume

Session

Workspace browsers provide powerful search and management tools for the files referenced in your current session, regardless of where they are stored.

When the currently open session is focused in the Locations pane you can:

- Show all the media files associated with the current session, including any missing files
- View, manage, audition, and spot individual items

Track Presets

Select Track Presets in the Locations pane to view all of your Track Presets. You can organize and search Track Presets in the Workspace. Drag and drop Track Presets from the Workspace to tracks in your sessions.

Catalogs

Catalogs provide the highest level of Pro Tools file management. Catalogs make it easy to organize files from multiple sources into libraries of favorite files. Catalogs can be sorted and searched, even when the files they reference are offline.

Using Catalogs, you can:

- Collect and organize files from any combination of volumes
- Create catalogs of complete volumes to view and search even if a volume is offline
- View, manage, audition, and import individual items in the catalog
- Update a database for contents of catalog

For more information, see "Catalogs" on page 543.

Task Manager Window

The Task Manager window is a utility for viewing and managing all of the background tasks that you initiate with Pro Tools. Use the Task Manager window to monitor, pause, or cancel background tasks such as file copies, searches, and indexing.

For more information, see "Task Manager Window" on page 546.

Relink Window

The Relink window provides tools and features for relinking sessions and catalogs to media files. Use Relink tools to search and reacquire missing files for use in the current session.

For more information, see "Relink Window" on page 539.

Workspace Browsers

Pro Tools can database your session and media files and directories using Workspace *browsers*. Browsers provide an intuitive user interface within Pro Tools to quickly access both online and offline media files and sessions.

Browsers in Pro Tools are analogous to windows in your computer's operating system (such as Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder), but are specially designed for working in Pro Tools. Multiple browsers can be displayed simultaneously, and arranged independently with custom display settings for each.

Browsers let you search and sort audio files, video files, and sessions. These files are displayed in browsers and can be dragged directly into the current Pro Tools session.

When offline items are needed, Pro Tools lets you find the correct matching files, then relink to online media.

❑ *To open/close a Workspace browser focused on Volumes, press Option+; (Mac) or Alt+; (Windows). To open a default Workspace browser focused on Volumes, press Option+I (Mac) or Alt+I (Windows). Press these key combinations again to open additional Workspace browsers. To open a Workspace browser with Soundbase and the Tags pane revealed, press Option+Control+I (Mac) or Alt+Start+I (Windows). Press these key combinations again to open additional Workspace browsers with Soundbase. To bring all browsers to the front, press Option+J (Mac) or Alt+J (Windows). To send all browsers to the back, press Option+Shift+J (Mac) or Alt+Shift+J (Windows).*

The main elements of a Workspace browser (see the figure below) include the following:

View Presets

Let you store up to 5 different browser views.

Preview Controls

Provide tools for auditioning audio files from the browser.

Search Tools

Let you search your system for files and folders by simple or advanced search criteria.

Browser Menu

Provides commands for file management.

Column Headers

Display the type of metadata displayed in the Items List. Column Headers can be:

- Resized by dragging the column border, or rearranged by dragging the Column headers.
- Dragged to either of two available panes, the Fixed or Scrolling panes.

Soundbase

Lets you tag audio files with descriptive metadata that you can then use as search criteria.

Track Presets

Lets you organize all of your Track Presets for easy access.

Locations Pane

Provides a view of Volumes (and folders and files), Catalogs, and the currently open Session for your system.

Browser Pane

Provides a view of items on your system contained within the Volume (or folder), Catalog, or open session that is selected in the Locations pane. Alternatively, the Browser pane displays search results.

For detailed information about Workspace browsers, see "Workspace Browsers" on page 493.

Performance and Transfer Volumes

Workspace browsers let you view, manage, and import sessions and media from both Performance and Transfer volumes.

Performance Volumes

These are storage volumes (hard drives) that are suitable for playback and have been designated in the Workspace browser as Record and Playback (R) or Playback Only (P) of media files in a Pro Tools session.

Transfer Volumes

These are volumes that are not supported for media playback in Pro Tools (such as shared network volumes or USB thumb drives), or storage volumes (hard drives) that have been designated in the Workspace browser as Transfer (T) volumes. Transfer volumes *cannot* be used to record or play back media in a Pro Tools session. Designated Transfer (T) volumes can be useful for transferring session and media files between different Pro Tools systems.

For more information, see "Volume Permissions" on page 500.

Databases

The information displayed in Workspace browsers is stored in the system-wide Pro Tools database. Pro Tools creates a centralized database automatically for all mounted volumes, including Transfer volumes, on your system drive. Pro Tools uses a single database file that maintains an index of all volumes (hard drives, networked drives, and removable media) and catalogs.

- On Mac, the database file is stored in /Users/Shared/Pro Tools.
- On Windows, the database file is stored in C:\\Users\Public\Pro Tools.

The waveform cache for audio files indexed by the database are stored within the database file. This includes the mini thumbnail waveforms for previewing (waveform cache files for sessions continue to be stored in the session folder).

There is also a global waveform cache file used to store audio file metadata when no session is open, or for files that reside on read-only volumes. As in previous versions of Pro Tools, this is a separate file that is stored next to the database file.

When opening sessions created in previous versions of Pro Tools in Pro Tools 12.7 or later, you are prompted to update the database file and to manually back up the database file from the lower version of Pro Tools. This is important if you (or anyone else for that matter) expect to continue to work on the session in a version of Pro Tools lower than 12.7. Back up that database file to facilitate session interchange between different versions Pro Tools. This helps to maintain things like Catalogs created in previous versions of Pro Tools or Favorites and Ratings created in Pro Tools 12.7 or later.

Pro Tools databases use two file types:

- Workspace.wksp

  Stores media and session file metadata for a particular volume or catalog.

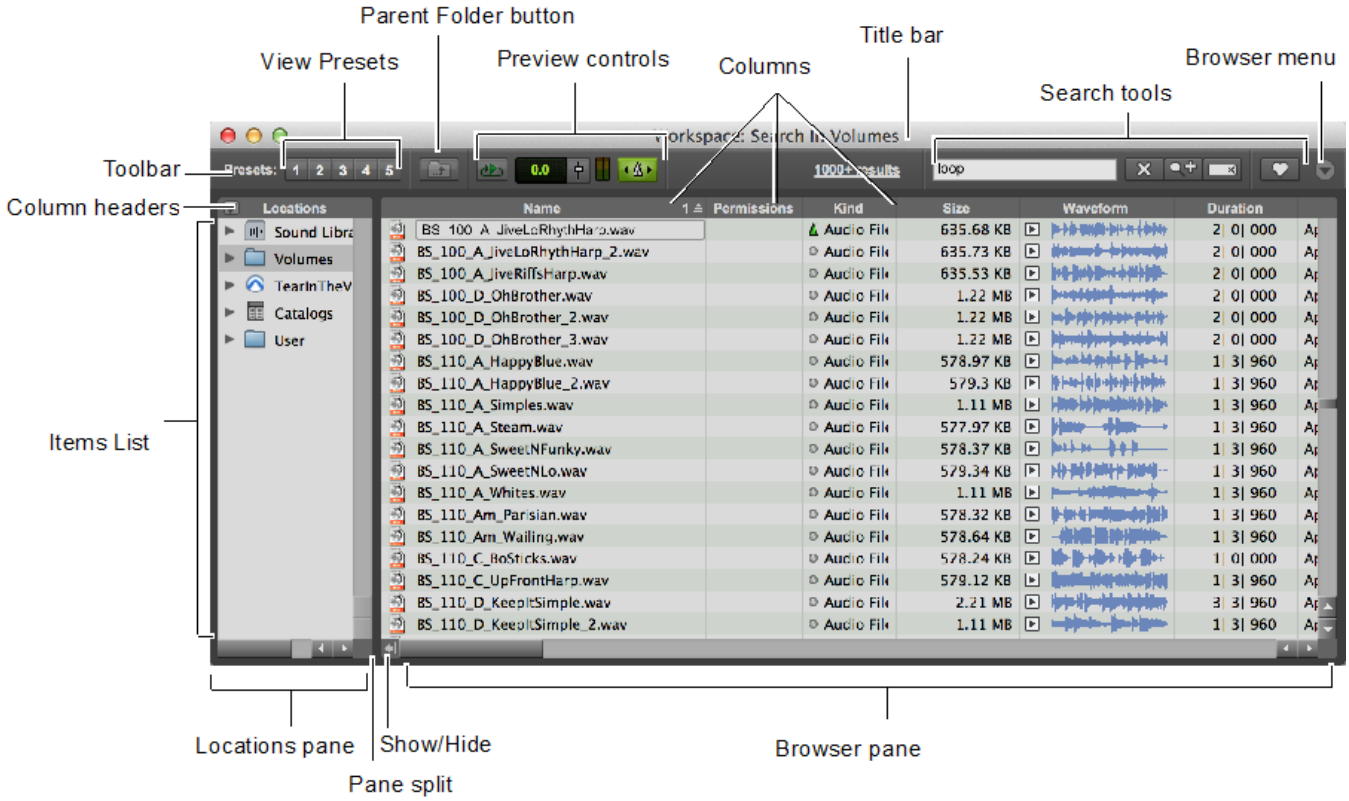
- Wavecache.wfm

  Stores waveform overviews for all audio files referenced by each session.

There is also the MiscSettings file which stores the directory path for the Sound Libraries folder.

Workspace Browser Layout and Tools

Workspace browsers display all files in their database, including Pro Tools and non-Pro Tools files. Unknown file types can be shown, as well as aliases, and desktop folders.



Basic Workspace browser tools, panes, and columns

To maximize processing speed and protect vital components, Workspace browsers do not display all folders. For example, in Windows, Workspace browsers do not display the WU Temp or System Volume Information folders; and on Mac, Workspace browsers do not display the System folder. This excludes them from being indexed, searched, sorted, or affected in any way by Workspace tasks. You should not store Pro Tools session or media files in any of these folders.

The main elements of a Workspace browser include the following.

Toolbar

Provides the Browser menu, Search icon, View Presets (numbered 1–5), Workspace browser navigation tools, and preview tools.

Items List

Displays the contents of a volume, folder, session, or Catalog database in rows.

Columns

Identifies the type of metadata displayed in the items list (such as file name and format) for volumes, folders, and files in the Items List. Columns can be resized by dragging the column border, or rearranged by dragging the Column headers.

Each row of data in a Workspace browser represents an Item (such as a file or folder). Data about each item is displayed in columns.

Locations Pane

Used to navigate the Sound Libraries, volumes (local and networked drives) on your system, the currently open session, indexed Catalogs of media, and the system User directory.

Browser Pane

Displays the contents of items selected in the Locations pane or search results.

Opening Workspace Browsers

There are several ways to open, close, and navigate one or more Workspace browsers.

To open a new Workspace browser focused on Volumes, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Window > New Workspace > Default`**.
- Press Option+I (Mac) or Alt+I (Windows).

To open a new Workspace browser focused on Soundbase:

- Choose **`Window > New Workspace > Soundbase`**.
- Press Option+Control+I (Mac) or Control+Alt+I (Windows).

To open a new Workspace browser focused on Track Presets:

- Choose **`Window > New Workspace > Track Presets`**.

To open a new Workspace browser focused on the Project:

- Press Option+O (Mac) or Alt+O (Windows).

To open a new Workspace browser from a selected volume, catalog, or folder, do one of the following:

- Command-double-click (Mac) or Control-double-click (Windows) a volume, catalog, or folder in the currently open Workspace browser.
- Press Option+Down Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Down Arrow (Windows) to open the currently selected volume, catalog, or folder in a new Workspace browser.
- Press Option+; (Mac) or Alt+; (Windows). to open and close a single Workspace browser.

❑ *Option+; (Mac) or Alt+; (Windows) also close the Workspace browser if the selection in the Locations pane is on the Volumes root folder. If another item is selected in the Locations pane, these key commands will open a new browser focused on that item.*

Viewing the Contents of Sound Libraries, or a Volume, Folder, or Catalog

To expand or collapse the currently selected folder, do one of the following:

- Click the Expand/Collapse icon next to the volume, folder, session, or catalog in either the Browser pane or the Locations pane.
- Select Sound Libraries, or a volume, folder, or Catalog, and press the Right Arrow key to expand, or the left Arrow key to collapse.

To move up one level in a browser:

- Click the Browse Back arrow in the toolbar.

  To move up one level in a browser, press Command+Up Arrow key (Mac) or Control+Up Arrow key (Windows).

Moving Workspace Browsers to the Foreground or Background

To bring all open Workspace browsers to the foreground:

- Choose **`Window > Browsers > Bring to Front`**.

  To bring all Workspace browsers to the foreground, press Option+J (Mac) or Alt+J (Windows).

To send all Workspace browsers to the background:

- Choose **`Window > Browsers > Send to Back`**.

  To send all Workspace browsers to the background, press Option+Shift+J (Mac) or Alt+Shift+J (Windows).

  All open Workspace browsers are moved to the background, bringing the other windows to the foreground. Nonetheless, all Workspace browsers remain open and accessible.

To bring an open Workspace browser to the foreground:

- Choose **`Window > Browsers`**, and select an open Workspace browser from the submenu.

To cycle to the next or previous Workspace browser:

- Press Command+Left/Right Arrow keys (Mac) or Control+Left/Right Arrow keys (Windows).

Closing Workspace Browsers

To close all Workspace browsers:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Close box of any Workspace browser.

  Because the Task window is a utility and not a browser, it remains open.

Volume Permissions

The Workspace includes a permissions column (**`Permissions`**) for Volume permissions. This column displays, and let you designate, whether a volume has permissions for Record, Playback, or Transfer of media files.

R (Record and Playback)

Able to play audio and video files already on the volume, and record new audio files.

P (Playback Only)

Can play audio and video files already on the volume, but cannot have new files recorded to it.

T (Transfer)

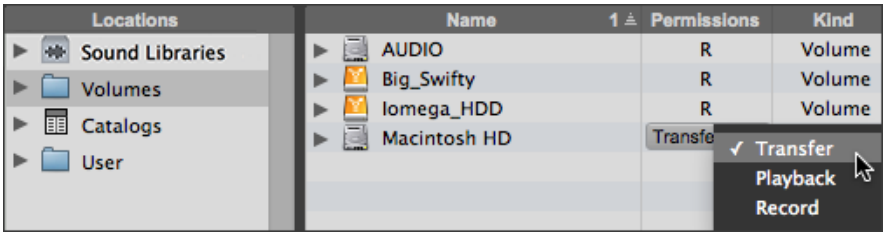
Can only be used for storing, transferring, or auditioning files, and cannot be used for recording or playback.

If you have a Pro Tools system with multiple drives, and you intend to record multiple tracks simultaneously, you may want to designate the System drive as a Playback only or Transfer only drive for optimal performance.

To change a volume designator:

1. Open a Workspace browser.
2. In the Locations pane, select **Volumes**.
3. In the Browser pane, click and select the appropriate permissions for any volume.

You can also Right-click any volume in either the Locations pane or the Browser pane and set the desired permissions setting for the selected volume.



Designating a volume in the Workspace

Unmounting Volumes

Use the Finder (Mac) or Windows Explorer (Windows) to mount and unmount volumes while Pro Tools is running.

Working with Items in Workspace Browsers

Opening Sessions

To open a Pro Tools session listed in a Workspace browser:

- With no Pro Tools session currently open, double-click a Pro Tools session file in the Browser pane of any Workspace browser.

Opening AAF and OMF Sequences

AAF and OMF sequences can be opened from Workspace browsers.

You can also drag and drop AAF and OMF sequences from Workspace browsers into the current session.

To open an AAF or OMF sequence from a Workspace browser:

1. Do one of the following:
   - With no Pro Tools session currently open, double-click the AAF or OMF sequence in the Browser pane of any Workspace browser.
   - Drag the AAF or OMF sequence from the Browser pane of any Workspace browser to the Timeline in an open session.
2. Configure the Import Session Data dialog.
3. Click **OK**.

Creating and Opening Workspace Browser Folders

Workspace browsers let you create and manipulate folders (file system sub-directories). All folders have Expand/Collapse icons to show their contents. Dragging items onto a folder icon is the same as dragging into an open Workspace browser.

To create a new folder in a volume, folder, or catalog:

1. Select the volume, folder, or catalog in which you want to create a new folder.
2. Right-click the item and choose **`New Folder`**.
3. Type a name for the folder and click **`OK`**.
4. For volumes and folders, the folder is created on disk. In Catalogs, the folder is created in the catalog database only. The Items List updates as new items are added.

To open a folder in the current Workspace browser:

- Double-click the folder, or click the Expand/Collapse icon for the item.

With a browser in the foreground and the folder selected, press Command+Down Arrow (Mac) or Control+Down Arrow (Windows) to open a folder in the current Workspace browser.

To open a folder in its own new Workspace browser:

- Command-double-click (Mac) or Control-double-click (Windows) the folder. The previous (parent) Workspace browsers window remains open.

With a browser in the foreground and the folder selected, press Command+Option+Down Arrow (Mac) or Control+Alt+Down Arrow (Windows) to open a folder in its own new browser.

Scrolling and Moving Selections

To scroll the active pane up or down:

- Press the Page Up or Page Down key.

To scroll to the top or bottom of the active pane:

- Press Home (for the top) or End (for the bottom).

To move items up or down in the current Workspace browser:

1. Select items in a Workspace browser, and make sure that window is in the foreground.
2. Press the Up Arrow or Down Arrow key.

Text Entry in Workspace Browsers

Many text fields can be edited to replace or update data for an item.

To enter an edit to a text field and exit, and return to the previous display state:

- Press Enter.

To revert to the previous text and cancel a text edit:

- Press Esc.

For details on column editing, see "Column Data" on page 510.

Indexing Workspace Databases

Indexing is the process of reading media files, extracting just the metadata for each file, then storing that data in an associated database so that it may be displayed in the columns of a Workspace browser. Once a volume or folder has been fully indexed, it can be searched very quickly because all of the metadata has already been sorted and organized.

If a volume or folder has not been indexed, it is indexed automatically the first time it is opened in a Workspace browser. Volumes or folders containing a lot of media files can take a long time to index. For this reason, you may want to manually index specific volumes or files prior to starting a project to help expedite workflow.

Indexing while Browsing

The first time you open a browser for a volume or folder that has never been indexed, Pro Tools automatically begins to fill the database for that level of the volume. Files and folders appear in the browser Items List, along with metadata in the columns for each item. Indexing continues until you either close the browser, or until that folder is completely indexed.

The next time you open that browser, metadata for items that have already been indexed is visible immediately. If the browser or folder was closed before indexing was complete, or if the contents of the folder have changed since the last time it was browsed, Pro Tools automatically updates the database the next time it is opened. This way, the database is always up to date for the folder you are browsing. (View the Task Manager to see current activity.)

Indexing while Browsing saves time because it only fills the database for items on the level of the volume that you are currently browsing. For example, if you are browsing the root level of the volume, it indexes only the folders and files on the root level. If you open a folder, Pro Tools indexes just the items in that folder. As a result, a database is only indexed for the parts of the volume that you have browsed. However, searches are faster and more complete when a volume is already completely indexed.

The following actions engage indexing:

- Navigating to a folder cause a re-indexing of just the top level items in that folder and for only the items with changed modified dates.
- Click **Update Index** on a folder to look recursively through the folder for any changed modified dates and update the index.
- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) **Update Index** to force a recursive re-index of a folder for all files, regardless of changed to modified date.

Manual Indexing

Manual indexing fills in all missing data, and updates changed data for selected folders and all of their sub-folders.

To update the index for a folder and all sub-folders:

- Right-click the item in a Workspace browser Items List and choose **Update Index**.

To update the index for an entire volume:

- Right-click the volume to update in the Workspace browser and choose **Update Index**.

Last Indexed Date Display

The Date Indexed column shows the date that the index for that folder and all of its sub-folders was updated. Keep in mind that individual sub-folders may have been updated more recently.

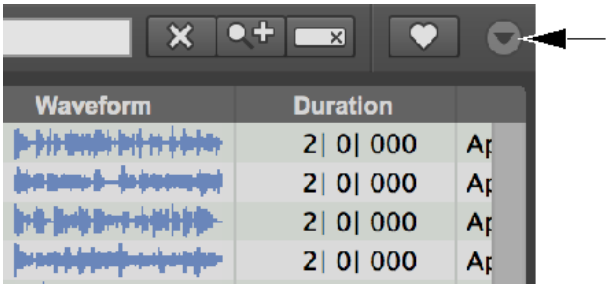
Automatic Updating for Pro Tools Actions

Whenever Pro Tools adds, deletes, or modifies a file on a volume or in a session, the appropriate database is immediately updated to reflect the change.

Changes that are made with Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder (such as copying or moving files) are not tracked by Pro Tools and are only indexed if the necessary folder is browsed or if a manual index is performed.

Workspace Browser Menu

All Workspace browsers provide a Browser menu in the upper right corner of their toolbar. The Browser menu provides access to global workspace commands. When enabled, these commands apply to all items in all open browsers.



Workspace Browser menu icon

Loop Preview

Previews the selected file by looping playback of the file. If multiple files are selected, only the first selected file previews. When Loop Preview mode is enabled, the Preview button updates to show a Loop Preview Mode icon.

Auto-Preview

Enables or disables automatic preview of files. When this option is enabled, selecting a file in the browser starts preview. The Preview button updates to show that **Auto-Preview** is enabled.

Spacebar Toggles File Preview

Enables or disables the Spacebar for starting and stopping preview. When this option is disabled, use the Preview button to start and stop preview. In this mode, the Spacebar starts and stops session playback. This lets you play back the session and, with the **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo** option enabled, preview the selected audio file in time with the session.

When a browser is front-most, Command+P (Mac) or Control+P (Windows) starts and stops preview. Also, the Esc key stops preview.

Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo

Conforms all tick-based audio files with Elastic Audio analysis, as well as REX and ACID files, to the session tempo. This option lets you play back the session and simultaneously preview the selected files in time with the session. This option is only available when a session is open. For more information, see "Conforming Preview to the Session Tempo" on page 535.

When the **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo** option is enabled, Pro Tools analyzes un-analyzed files on preview or import. Audio files that have been analyzed as tick-based can then be previewed at the session tempo and conform to the session tempo on import.

When the **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo** option is disabled, any tick-based audio files with Elastic Audio analysis, and REX and ACID files preview and import at their native tempo.

Don't Limit Search Results

Select (or deselect) the **Don't Limit Search Results** option to show all search results past the default 1,000 item limit. If a search returns more than 1,000 items you are notified to the left of the simple search field that **1,000+** items were found. You can click the **1,000+** link to show all items found or you can enable the **Don't Limit Search Results** option to always show all search results.

Show Offline Volumes

Select (or deselect) the **Show Offline Volumes** command to show (or hide) all indexed offline volumes from the database in the Locations pane.

Delete Index for All Offline Volumes

Deletes the index for all offline volumes from the database.

Keep Window on Top

Select (or deselect) the **Keep Window On Top** option in the Workspace Browser menu to ensure that the Workspace remains in the foreground when working with other windows. This can be helpful when working with the Workspace and the Edit window in particular. When this option is disabled, clicking on another window (such as the Edit or Mix windows) brings that window to the front and the Workspace may be hidden behind it. When enabled, all open Workspace browser remain in front of all other windows with the focused Workspace always in the foreground.

Workspace Right-Click Menu

Pro Tools lets you Right-click on items in the Locations pane (such as volumes and folders) and the Browser pane (such as folders and files) to access relevant contextual commands. These commands are specific to the type of items selected in the Locations pane or the Browser pane, as described below.

New Folder

Creates a new folder on the currently selected volume or folder, or within the currently selected catalog. For volumes and folders, a new folder is created on disk. For more information, see "Creating and Opening Workspace Browser Folders" on page 502.

Create Catalog from Selection

Creates a fully indexed catalog of all items selected in either the Locations or the Browser pane.

Reveal in Finder/Explorer

Opens the corresponding parent window in the Finder (Mac) or Explorer (Windows) for the currently selected file.

Open in New Workspace

Opens the selected item in a new browser. The selected item is highlighted in the new browser.

Tags

Opens the Assign Tags popover window for audio files (WAV or AIFF only). For details on the Assign Tags popover window, see "Soundbase and Tags" on page 522).

Recently Used Tags

Lets you assign any of the last 10 used tags to the selected audio file (WAV or AIFF only).

Spot To Edit Insertion

Spots the selected audio file to the current Edit insertion location. Note that the channel width of the file must match the channel width of the target audio track.

Update Index

Updates the index for the currently selected volumes or folders.

Delete Index

Deletes the index of files for the items in the selected volume or folder from the database.

Delete Index for All Offline Volumes

Deletes the index for all offline volumes from the database.

Invert Selection

Reverses (inverts) the current selection.

Select All

Selects all items shown in the browser.

Calculate Waveform

Calculates the waveform displays for selected audio files, or for all audio files within selected volumes, folders, or catalogs.

For more information, see "Waveforms" on page 530.

Calculate Elastic Analysis

Calculates Elastic Audio analysis data for all selected audio files. Analyzed files are indicated by a blue clock for sample-based files and by a green metronome for tick-based files. Analyzed files where a tempo has been detected are also updated as tick-based, display their duration in Bars|Beats, and display their native tempo in the Tempo column. You can view the progress of Elastic Audio analysis in the Task window.

Clear Elastic Analysis

Clears Elastic Audio analysis data for all selected audio files. Files cleared of Elastic Audio analysis data revert to sample timebase, display their duration in minutes and seconds, and do not report a tempo.

For more information, see "Elastic Audio Files in the Workspace" on page 530.

Load Guitar Rig Settings (Eleven Rack Only)

Loads the Guitar Rig Settings for selected audio files with embedded Guitar Rig Settings from an Eleven Rack.

Select Offline Files

Selects all files that are currently offline.

Select Online Files

Selects all files that are online.

Select Transfer Files

Selects all files identified as Transfer files (files found on media that do not support playback).

Relink Offline

Opens the Relink window for items selected in the current session.

Relink

Opens the Relink window, with all *selected* files from the current browser displayed and selected as Files to Match. This command is available for catalogs and sessions only.

Copy and Relink

Copies items selected in the current session browser to a chosen location, and relinks the session to the copies instead of the originals. Use this to easily move files from a Transfer to a Performance volume. This command is also available in selected catalogs to copy items and relink the current catalog to the copies.

Duplicate

Creates a duplicate of the selected items in the same location.

Rename

Renames the selected item.

Permissions

Lets you set Transfer, Playback, or Record permissions for the selected volume (see "Volume Permissions" on page 500).

Lock

Locks all selected items. Any files already locked remain so. Locking a folder locks all files and sub-folders it contains.

Unlock

Unlocks the selected items.

Delete

Lets you delete selected files, folders, and catalogs from disk, or move selected items to the Trash (Mac) or to the Recycle Bin (Windows).

Scan Audio File(s) for Irregularities

Lets you scan audio files for irregularities in the workspace. The scan looks for the following corrupt files and irregularities: the file header size does not match the file size, chunk chains do not proceed linearly, chunk sizes and/or offsets that point outside the bounds of the file, and suspected invalid chunks (chunk IDs with non-alphanumeric or space characters). After the scan is complete, any irregularities found are be reported. A more detailed report can be generated from the resulting dialog.

Workspace Browser Panes and Display

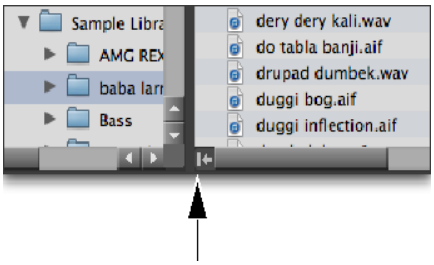
Workspace browsers display an Items List consisting of various columns (such as file name, size, creation date, and sample rate).

Showing (or Hiding) the Locations Pane

The Locations pane can be hidden.

To show or hide the Locations pane:

- Click the Show/Hide icon in the lower right corner of the left-hand pane.



Show/Hide Locations Pane icon

Moving Columns

To move a column:

- Drag the column to a new location in the Workspace.

Resizing Columns

To resize a column, do one of the following:

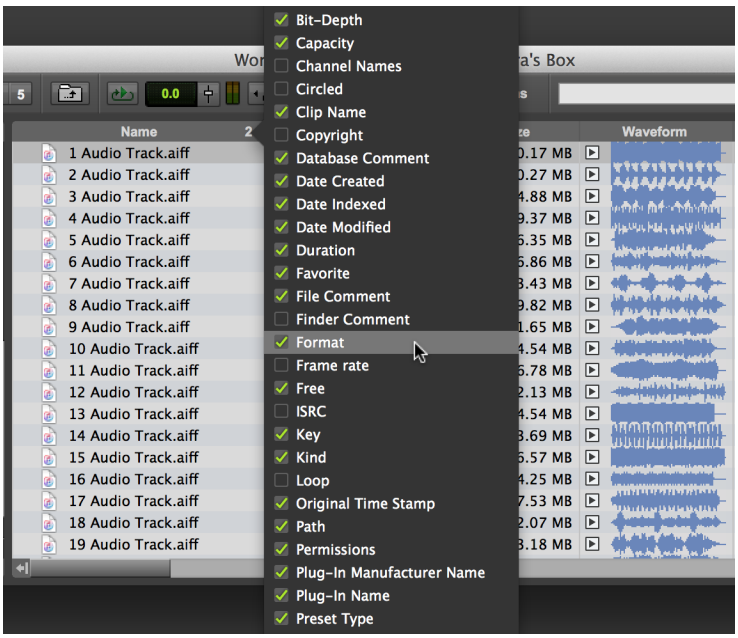
- Drag the right column boundary to a new width.
- Double-click the right column boundary to resize the column to the widest element in column.

Showing and Hiding Columns

You can show or hide individual columns in Workspace browsers to fit your workflow. The default column display includes the items you would use in most sessions.

To show or hide individual columns:

- Right-click a column label and select or deselect checkboxes for column names in the popover menu.



Showing and hiding columns

Selected items appear in new columns. Deselected items are hidden.

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) a column to hide it. The item is deselected in the Column menu.

To show all columns:

- Right-click a column label and Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any unchecked checkbox in the popover menu.

To hide all columns:

- Right-click a column label and Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any checked checkbox in the popover menu.

To show the default set of columns:

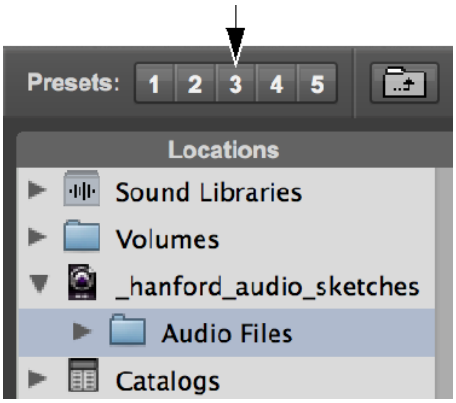
- Right-click a column header and choose **DEFAULT** from the popover menu.

View Presets

Pro Tools lets you save up to five preset views for the Workspace browser and for the Relink window. Presets can be recalled by clicking a View Preset button.

To store a View Preset:

1. Open a Workspace browser or the Relink window.
2. Arrange columns and views.
3. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) any of the Preset buttons 1–5.



Browser View preset buttons

To recall a saved preset:

- Click the appropriate View Preset button.

Sorting Columns

Columns can be sorted in ascending or descending order, and multiple sorts can be applied (up to four levels).

To sort by columns:

- Click the column title header.

To toggle the current sort order between ascending and descending:

- Click the column title header a second time.

To sort by multiple columns:

- Shift-click successive column headers.

Column Data

In Workspace browsers, each row of data represents an item in a database (such as a file, session, or volume). Each column displays specific data for an item.

ALL

Choose to show all columns.

NONE

Choose to hide all but the **Name** column (which is always shown).

DEFAULT

Choose to show the default columns.

SOUNDBASE

Choose to show only Soundbase related columns.

of Channels

Displays the number of channels in an audio file: mono, stereo, or 3–8 as appropriate for supported multichannel files. This field cannot be edited.

Author

Displays the assigned **Author** of the item. Click in the **Author** column for an item and type the name of the author or authors.

Bit Depth

Displays an audio file's bit depth. This field cannot be edited.

Capacity

Displays the total capacity of a volume. This field cannot be edited.

Channel Names

Displays the channel name and number data embedded in multichannel audio files. You can edit the Channel name for mono BWF files only. When editing the channel name, anything entered in parentheses is discarded. However, the channel number will always be preserved.

Circled

Indicates if the status of a take is set to "circled" (*No* or *Yes*) in audio files. This is usually for indicating which take should be used.

Clip Name

Displays the name of the file, or the Avid clip name when the item is an AAF or OMF file. The Clip Name is what appears in the Timeline and Clip List when a file is imported into a session.

Copyright

Displays the assigned **Copyright** for the item. Click in the **Copyright** column for an item and type the copyright.

Database Comment

Displays user comments stored with the database, with support for Finder comments. See "Comments Fields" on page 514 for more information.

Date Created

Displays the creation date of an item. This field cannot be edited.

Date Modified

Displays the last modified date for the item. This field cannot be edited.

Date Indexed

Displays the last indexed date for the item. This field cannot be edited.

Duration

Displays the duration of a file in absolute time (minutes and seconds), regardless of the timecode format. For clip groups, MIDI, tick-based Elastic Audio files, REX, and ACID files, Duration displays Bars and Beats. This field cannot be edited.

Favorite

Select (or deselect) the heart icon to designate an item as a Favorite. Only items in the selected Location that are marked as a Favorite are shown when the Favorites (heart) icon is enabled in the Workspace Toolbar.

File Comment

Displays any embedded comments associated with the file. File comments are supported with BWF and SD II files, but are not supported with AIFF files. File Comments always remain with the file when copied, converted, or transferred. See "Comments Fields" on page 514 for more information.

Pro Tools 11 through 2020.5 cannot convert SD II files on import. They must be converted to a supported audio file format (.WAV or .AIF) that can be imported into a session. Pro Tools 2020.9 and later can convert SD II files to the session file format on import (macOS only). On Windows, SD II files must be separately converted to a supported audio file format (.WAV or .AIF) that can then be imported into a session.

Format

Displays the audio file format: WAV, WAV (ACID) for ACID files, WAV (BWF), AIFF, MP3, or ReCycle for REX files. This field cannot be edited.

Frame Rate

Displays the frame rate of video files where applicable.

Free

Displays the unused space on volumes. This field cannot be edited.

ISRC

Displays the ISRC (International Standard Recording Code), if any, for the selected file. Click the **ISRC** field to add or edit the ISRC for a file.

For more information about ISRC, visit www.usisrc.org.

Key

Displays the assigned key of the file. Click in the **Key** column for an item and select the key (such as C) and mode (such as Major).

Kind

Displays whether the item is a volume, folder, catalog, or file. For files, this column displays what kind of file it is: session file, audio file, video file, or other. This field cannot be edited. For audio files, this column also indicates whether the file is sample-based to tick-based.

Link Path

Displays the path to the file used for relinking. Available in the Relink window only.

Loop

Click the Loop icon for an item to enable (or disable) its Loop designation.

Name

Displays the name of the file, folder, volume, catalog, or session. For offline items, the name is italicized. The Name column is always shown.

Original Time Stamp

Displays the original time stamp (timecode location) of audio or video files.

Path

Displays the directory path to the item.

Permissions

Displays the designated permissions for volumes for media recording, playback, or transfer only.



For more information, see "Volume Permissions" on page 500.

Plugin Manufacturer Name

Displays the plugin manufacturer's name for Plugin Settings files (.tfx).

Plugin Name

Displays the name of the plugin for Plugin Settings files (.tfx).

Project

Displays the project name data embedded in audio files.

Rating

Lets you rate the item from zero to five stars. Click the Stars to set the rating for an item.

Sample Rate

Displays an audio file's sample rate. This field can be edited in Workspace browsers for WAV and SD II files only. This can be useful when dealing with audio that has been pulled up or down, or to force a sample rate conversion to occur if that is necessary before importing a file that otherwise would not require conversion.

Scene

Displays scene number data embedded in audio files.

Shoot Date

Displays origination date and time information embedded in audio files. However, many field recorders do not populate the Shoot Date field, relying instead on the file's Creation Date to indicate date of production. When Pro Tools imports a field recorder file, it checks to see if the Shoot Date field is populated. If it is empty, Pro Tools copies the Creation Date of the original source file to the Shoot Date field of the new imported files. This field cannot be edited.

Size

Displays the size of a file. This field cannot be edited.

SMPTE ID

Displays the 32-bit unique ID for specific MXF files that were made with the SMPTE standard identifier. Also, WAV files generated from Pro Tools or Media Composer display a SMPTE ID.

Sound Roll

Displays sound roll number data (This data is usually named "Tape" in BWF files, but is distinct from the date displayed in the Workspace Tape column). This field cannot be edited.

Sound Roll TC

Displays the starting timecode of audio files. This field cannot be edited.

Sound Roll TC Rate

Displays the frame rate information embedded in audio files: 24, 25, 29.97, 30, drop or non-drop. This field cannot be edited.

Tags

Displays, and lets you add and edit tags. Click in the Tags column for an item to add or edit tags. You can also mark items as Favorites and Rate them from zero to five stars. For more information, see "Soundbase and Tags" on page 522.

Take

Displays take number data embedded in audio files.

Tape

This column displays the original Avid tape name if the item is an OMF file (audio or video). If an audio file was originally recorded in Pro Tools, this field displays the name of the original session.

Tape ID

Displays tape ID information embedded in audio files. This field cannot be edited.

TC Rate

This column displays the frame rate of the item if the item is an AAF sequence or an OMF sequence or file: 24, 25, 29.97, 30, drop or non-drop. For sequences, the frame rate at the start of the sequence is displayed.

Tempo

Displays the tempo associated with clip group, MIDI, tick-based Elastic Audio files, REX, and ACID files, and session files. This field cannot be edited.

Time Signature

Displays the assigned Time Signature of the file. Click in the **`Time Signature`** column and select the meter (such as 4/4).

Transcription

Displays any transcription included in the audio file.

Transcription Channel

Displays the Transcription Channel for the transcription shown in the Transcription column. Click to select the channel that includes the transcription data you want to view for an interleaved multichannel or field recorder file.

Unique ID

Displays the standard 8-bit Unique ID for most media and Pro Tools files.

User Bits

Displays text information embedded in audio files. This field can be used for user comments, or auto-generated info with certain field recorders.

User Time Stamp

Displays the user time stamp, if any, of audio files only.

Video Compression

Displays the compression ratio of video files where applicable.

Waveform

Displays a graphical overview of an audio file. See "Waveforms" on page 530 for more information.

Comments Fields

Comments about individual files can be stored in the database, and embedded with the file's metadata wrapper. There are two types of comments fields: File Comments and Database Comments.

File Comments

File Comments are stored with the metadata of the file itself. Not all file types support File Comments. Indexing stores File Comments in the database, allowing them to be searched and viewed even if the file is offline. File Comments can be edited in Workspace browsers, as long as the files or their parent media are not defined as read-only.

You can also add and edit File Comments to Pro Tools Session files. File Comments cannot be edited in Catalogs.

Database Comments

(Sessions and Catalogs Only) Database Comments, which can be up to 256 characters in length, are searchable, cross-platform, and editable.

Adding and Editing Comments

To add, view, or edit a comment:

1. Click the **Comments** field. The field expands to display the entire contents of the field if necessary.
2. Enter or edit a comment.
3. Press Enter, or click outside the text box to close it.

Selecting Items

To select a single item in the Locations pane:

- Click the icon for an item. When selected, the item is highlighted. The contents of the selected item (volume, folder, session, or catalog) are displayed in the Browser pane.

If there is already a selection in the Locations or Browser pane, you can also type the first letters of the item you want to select.

To select multiple items in the Browser pane:

- Drag to select a group of items, or Shift-click additional items. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select multiple noncontiguous items.

To select all items listed:

- Press Command-A (Mac) or Control-A (Windows).

To select all Transfer files in the current window:

- Choose **Select Transfer Files** from the Browser menu.

To select all offline files:

- Choose **Select Offline Files** from the Browser menu.

To select all online files:

- Choose **Select Online Files** from the Browser menu.

To reverse the current selection:

- Choose **Invert Selected** from the Browser menu.

Moving, Copying, Duplicating, and Removing Items

Moving, copying, duplicating, and removing items in Workspace browsers follow the same rules and behavior as in the operating system. For example, moving a file to another volume copies the file, and Pro Tools warns you if an items is about to be overwritten or replaced. Dragging an item from a Catalog to a Volume folder always makes a new copy of the item.

Moving Items

To move items:

- Select one or more items and drag them to a new location. Moving to a new location on the same volume moves the item, while moving to a different volume copies the item.

You can drag items directly into the Timeline or Clip List of the current session. See "Importing Files with Drag and Drop" on page 653.

Copying Items

To copy and move items:

- Select one or more items and Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) them to a new location.

Duplicating Items

To duplicate one or more items:

1. Select one or more items.
2. Choose **Duplicate Selected** from the Browser menu.

To Duplicate selected items in Workspace browser, press Command-D (Mac) or Control-D (Windows).

Removing Session Items

Workspace browsers let you remove or delete files from the currently open session. If a selected item resides on a read-only volume, it can be removed from the session, but it cannot be deleted.

To delete one or more items from the session:

1. Select the current session in the Locations pane.
2. Select one or more items in the Browser pane.
3. Choose **Delete** from the Right-click menu.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click **Move to Trash** (Mac) or **Move to Recycle Bin** (Windows) to remove the item from session.
   - Click **Delete** to remove the items from your system.
   - Click **Cancel** to leave selected items unchanged.

Set Column Metadata Values for Multiple Selected Files in Workspace Browsers

Pro Tools lets you select multiple files in a Workspace browser and then set certain metadata (by column) for the selected items to the same value simultaneously. The following columns can be edited in this fashion: **Permissions**, **Circled**, **Key**, **Time Signature**, **Tags**, **Favorite**, **Rating**, and **Loop**.

To set the column metadata for all selected files in a Workspace browser to the same value:

1. Select multiple files in a Workspace browser. The selected files can be contiguous or discontiguous.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the column drop-down menu (**Permissions**, **Circled**, **Key**, **Time Signature**, or **Tags**) and select the desired value.
   - Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the **Rating**, **Favorite**, or **Loop** column.
   - Click on the **Rating**, **Favorite**, or **Loop** icon and drag up or down.

Searching Items

Pro Tools lets your search your entire system, or specific volumes, directories, or catalogs with ease. Workspace browsers provide a simple set of search tools so you can quickly search and find files (both online and offline) on your system.

Performing a search filters items listed in the Browser pane to display only those items that match the search criteria.

The Relink window provides specialized search capabilities for finding and relinking missing files. For more information, see "Linking and Relinking Files" on page 536.

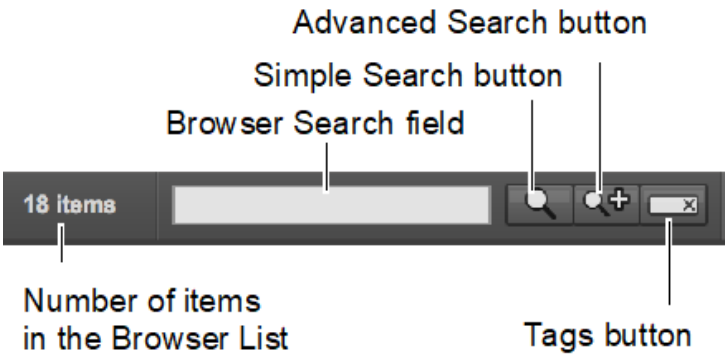
Searching for Either/Or or And Text Strings

When typing in a search query in either simple or advanced search mode, use spaces for *OR* searches. For example, to search for file names that contain either *guitar* or *bass*, type **`guitar bass`**.

Similarly, use quotes around text strings separated by spaces for *AND* searches. For example, to search for file names that contain both *bass* and *guitar*, type **`"bass guitar"`**.

Search Tools

The top of every Workspace browser provides a set of search tools for finding files on your system quickly and easily.



Search tools

Number of Items

The Number of items listed in the Browser pane is displayed to the left of the Browser Search field in the Workspace Toolbar. If a search returns more than 1,000 items you are notified that **`1,000+`** items are returned from the search. You can click this to show all items returned in the search.

Browser Search Field

Type the names of files, dates, durations, and so forth into the Browser Search field. As soon as you start typing, Pro Tools initiates the search for matches to the text you type. Results are displayed in the Browser pane.

Simple Search Button

Click the Search button to initiate a simple search before typing any text into the Browser Search field. The Simple Search button changes from a magnifying glass icon to an "X" and immediately initiates a search. Click the Search button again to end the search (or press the Esc key).

Advanced Search Button

Click the Advance Search button to open the Advanced search toolbar (see "Advanced Search" on the next page).

Tags Button

Click the Tags button to show the Tags pane. (see "Tags Pane" on page 524).

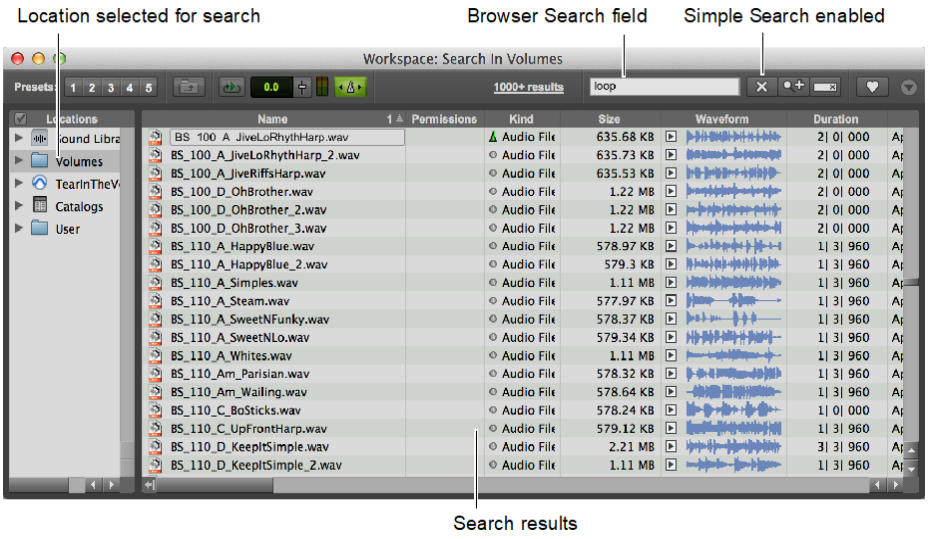
Simple Search

Pro Tools provides a simple text search with the Browser Search Field that lets you quickly search all volumes for items by file name as well as any other text field available in the Workspace browser (such as **`File Comment`**, **`Database Comment`**, **`Scene`**, **`Take`**, **`Plugin Name`**, and so on).

Initiating a search with no search criteria returns all items on the system.

To initiate a simple search:

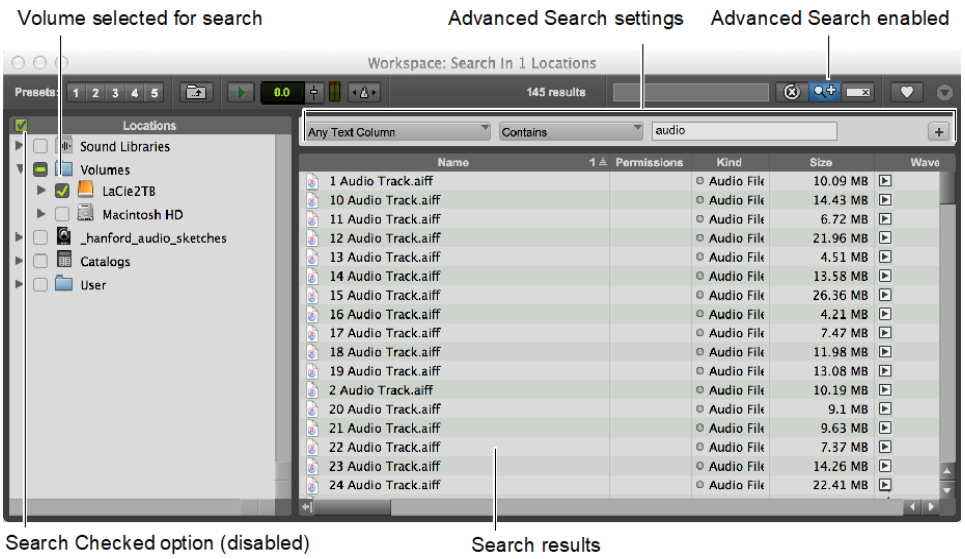
1. In the Locations pane, select the Volume, Catalog, Session, or Folder that you want to search. If you do not make a selection, the entire system is searched (including shown offline volumes).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Simple Search button.
   - Press Command+F (Mac) or Control+F (Windows).
3. Type in the Browser Search field.
4. Click in the Browser Search field and type text for the search. Search results are displayed in the Browser pane.



Simple search results for the selected location

Advanced Search

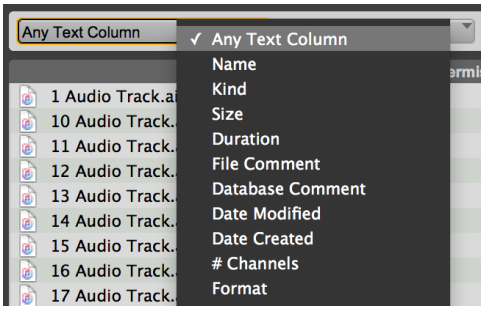
Pro Tools provides advanced tools for searching files and volumes by specific categories. You can refine your search by providing multiple constraints on the search parameters. You can also easily switch from an advanced search to a simple search.



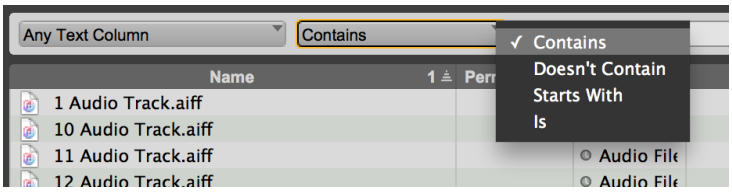
Advanced search results for the selected Volume

To initiate an advanced search on a selected item in the Locations pane:

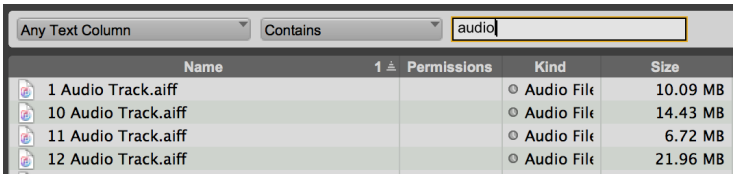
1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Advanced Search button.
   - Press Command+Shift+F (Mac) or Control+Shift+F (Windows).
2. If it is disabled, enable the Search Checked option at the left of the Locations pane header by clicking it.
3. In the Locations pane, select the Volume, Catalog, Session, or Folder that you want to search.
4. Select the Column name.



5. Select the Search Criteria.



6. Click in the Search Text field and type text for the search.



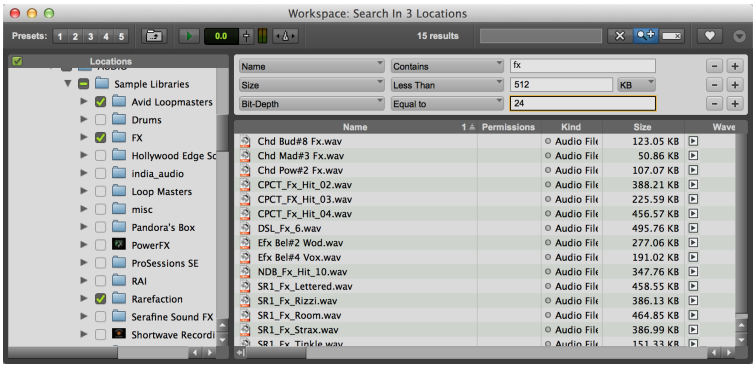
7. Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows).

   The search results are displayed in the Browser pane.

   If you want to refine your search, click the Add Row button to add further constraints to the search. Repeat steps 4–6 for each row you add.

To initiate an advanced search on checked items in the Locations pane:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Advanced Search button.
   - Press Command+Shift+F (Mac) or Control+Shift+F (Windows).
2. If it is disabled, enable the Search Checked option at the left of the Locations pane header by clicking it.
3. In the Locations pane, check each of the Volumes, Catalogs, Sessions, or Folders that you want to search.



Advanced search results for checked folders

4. Select the Column type.
5. Select the Search Criteria.

   Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select multiple criteria for an either/or search.

6. Click in the Search Text field and type text for the search. (Use spaces between text strings for *either/or* searches and use quotes around text strings with spaces for *and* searches.)
7. Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows).

   The search results are displayed in the Workspace pane.

   If you want to refine your search, click the Add Row button to add further constraints to the search. Repeat steps 4-6 for each row you add.

To switch from an advanced search to a simple search, do one of the following:

- Click the Advanced Search button so that it is unhighlighted.
- Press Command+Shift+F (Mac) or Control+Shift+F (Windows).

To switch from an simple search to an advanced search, do one of the following:

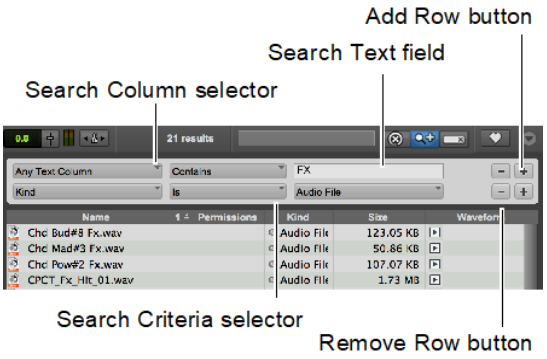
- Click the Advanced Search button so that it is highlighted.
- Press Command+F (Mac) or Control+F (Windows).

To cancel the search entirely:

- Click the Simple Search button (“X”).

Advanced Search Features

Once you have initiated an advanced search, the Workspace browser displays additional advanced search features.



Column Search Selector

You can search text by all columns or only be specific columns in the browser.

Search Criteria Selector

You can search for items in the selected column according to the following search criteria:

Contains

Select this option to search for items that include the text you type into the Search Text field.

Does Not Contain

Select this option to exclude items from the search that contain the text you type into the Search Text field.

Starts With

Select this option to search for items that start with the text that you type into the Search Text field.

Contains Exactly

Select this option to search for items that are an exact match to the text you type into the Search Text field.

Search Text Field

Use the Search Text field to search the selected column type according to the selected column type and search criteria.

Add/Remove Row Buttons

Pro Tools lets you refine your search by up to 8 rows of search criteria.

Add Row Button

Click the Add button (“+”) to add another row to refine the advanced search.

- *Press Shift + “+” (plus) or to add a new row.*
- *Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) a column header to add it as search criteria.*

Remove Row Button

Click the Remove button (“–”) for a row to remove that row.

Press Shift + "–" (minus) to remove the bottom row.

Saving Search Results as a Catalog

To save the results of your search as a Catalog:

1. Choose **Edit > Select All**, or press Command+A (Mac) or Control+A (Windows), to select all items in the Items List.
2. Right-click any selected item and choose **Create Catalog**.

For more information, see "Catalogs" on page 543.

Soundbase and Tags

Use Soundbase in Workspace browsers to find audio files using tags (WAV and AIFF only). Tags are descriptive metadata saved to and read from the header of audio file. You can create, add, and edit tags for any WAV or AIFF file accessible through the Workspace. Use the Sound Libraries folder in the Locations pane to store and organize the audio files in your sound library collection.

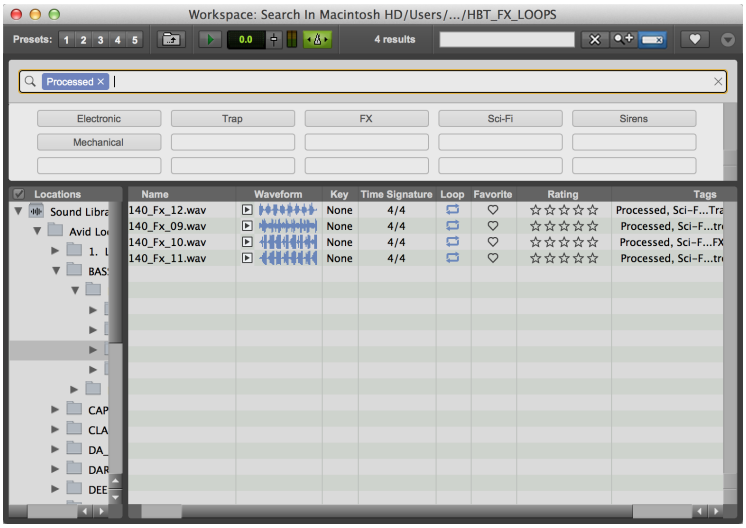
Tags are written to and read from the file header.

Opening a Workspace Browser with Soundbase

By default, Workspace browsers open without the Tags pane shown (see "Tags Pane" on page 524). However, you can open a new Workspace browser with the Tags pane shown for ready access to Soundbase. The Workspace browser also opens with columns relevant to Soundbase shown (such as Key, Time Signature, and Tags).

To open a Workspace browser with Soundbase, do one of the following:

- Choose **Window > New Workspace > Soundbase**.
- Press Option+Control+I (Mac) or Alt+Start+I (Windows).



Workspace showing Soundbase with Sound Libraries and Tags pane

Sound Libraries

At the top of the list in the Location pane of any Workspace browser is the **Sound Libraries** folder. It is an essential part of Soundbase that provides a special location for easy access to tagged audio files. In addition to descriptive metadata tagging, you can include musically useful information about the audio

content through column data, especially Time Base, Duration (Min:Sec or Bars|Beats), Tempo, Key, Time Signature, Favorites, Rating, and Tags.

To show (or hide) Sound Libraries in Workspace Locations:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Operations** tab.
3. Enable (or disable) the **Show Sound Libraries in Workspace Locations** option.
4. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

When you install Pro Tools, this folder is created in the following locations:

- macOS: HD/Users/‹username›/Documents/Pro Tools/Sound Libraries/
- Windows: C:\Users\‹username›\Documents\Pro Tools\Sound Libraries

You can install audio content for Sound Libraries available from Avid as well as third-party vendors. Of course, you can also add your own content by either actually copying it to the location Sound Libraries folder on your system or by adding alias to other locations on your system.

To show (or hide) Sound Libraries in Workspace Locations:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Operations** tab.
3. Enable (or disable) the **Show Sound Libraries in Workspace Locations** option.
4. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

Sound Libraries Location

Pro Tools lets you change the location of the Sound Libraries folder in the Operation preferences. However, you will have to manually copy or move any media to the new location.

To change the location of the Sound Libraries folder:

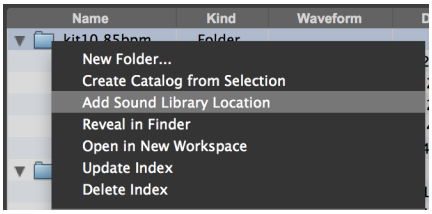
1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Operations** tab.
3. Click the **Change** button for Sound Libraries under **User Media and Settings Location**.
4. Navigate to the new location you want for the Sound Libraries folder and click **Open**.
5. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

Adding and Removing Sound Library Locations

You can add (or remove) different directories on your system whose contents are not actually copied or moved to the Sound Libraries folder. Added locations are essentially aliases that point to the original location of the designated folder and no media is copied or moved from the original location.

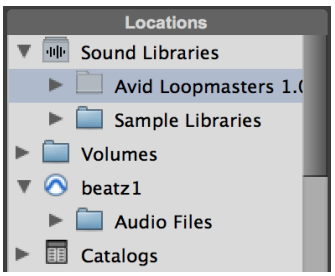
To add a location to the Sound Library:

1. In any Workspace browser, navigate to the location of the folder you want to add to the Sound Library.
2. Right-click the folder and choose **Add Sound Library Location**.



Adding a folder to Sound Libraries

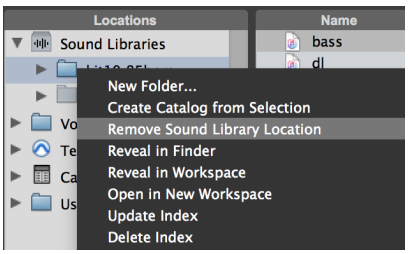
An alias of that folder is added to Sound Libraries. Directories (and all folders and files in that folder) that are added as a **Sound Library Location** are colored blue, whereas files and folders actually located in the default (or assigned) Sound Libraries location are gray.



Added folders that point to other locations are blue

To remove a location from the Sound Library:

1. In the Locations pane of any Workspace browser, reveal the contents of **Sound Libraries**.
2. Right-click the folder you want to remove from the Sound Library and choose **Remove Sound Library Location**.



Removing a folder from Sound Libraries

The folder is removed from **Sound Libraries**. However, the folder and all files within it remain at the original location. Only the alias is removed.

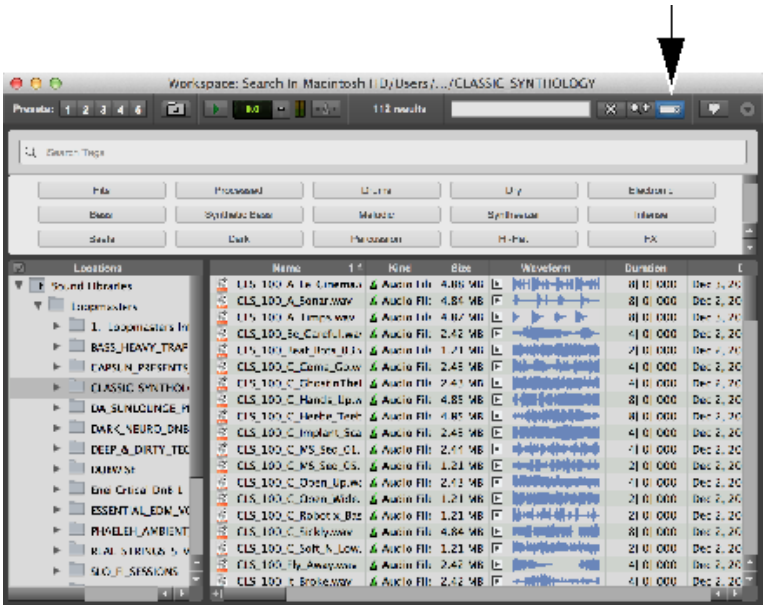
Tags Pane

You can show or hide the Tags pane in any Workspace browser. The Tags pane shows all tags for media in the selected folder in the Locations pane. Click any Tag in the Tags pane to show only media with that Tag in the browser.

Tags appear in the Tags Pane in order from most used to least used for any selected location in Sound Libraries folder. After adding a new Sound Library that has existing tags (such as the Avid Loopmasters Sample Pack) or after tagging a number of files, relaunch Pro Tools to ensure that these tags appear in the proper order.

To show (or hide) the Tags pane in a Workspace browser:

- Click the Tags pane icon at the top of the Workspace browser. It is highlighted only when the Tags pane is shown.



Tags pane shown, Tags pane icon highlighted

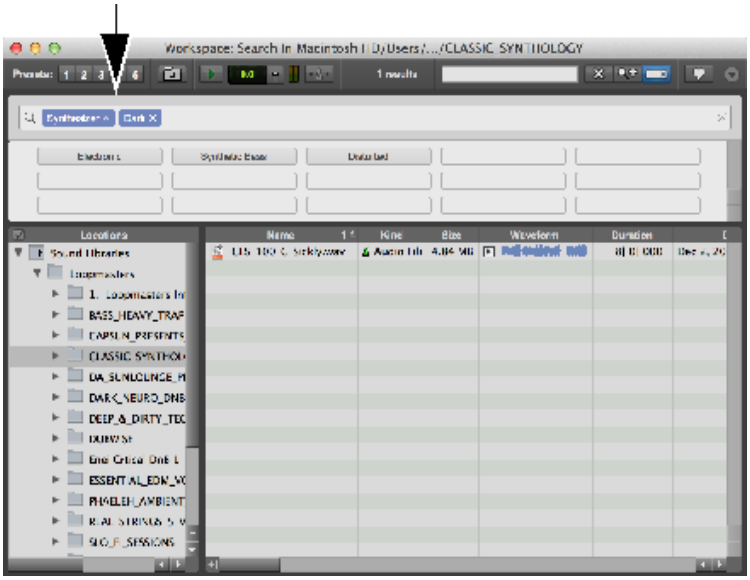
Press Control+Option+Command+T (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+T (Windows) to show or hide the Tags pane.

Searching Based on Tags

Use tags in Soundbase to find all audio files in the selected Location that have the selected tags. Any WAV or AIFF audio file can be assigned multiple tags so you can refine you search criteria using as many descriptive tags as necessary. Be sure to be consistent in how you tag your audio files so that you can quickly and reliably call up the audio files you need, based on tags that accurately describe the audio, for whatever project you are working on.

To search audio files based on tags:

1. Show the Tags pane in any Workspace browser.
2. Navigate to the location you want to search in the Locations pane.
3. Click the desired tags in the Tags pane to limit the search to those criteria, or type in the name of Tags in the search field.



A single audio file found with two matching tags

4. Click the “X” on the right side of any tag in the Tag Search field to clear it from the search criteria. The search results in the Browser list update automatically.

   Press the Esc key to clear the search criteria.

5. Audition and use the audio in the search results that best suits your needs.

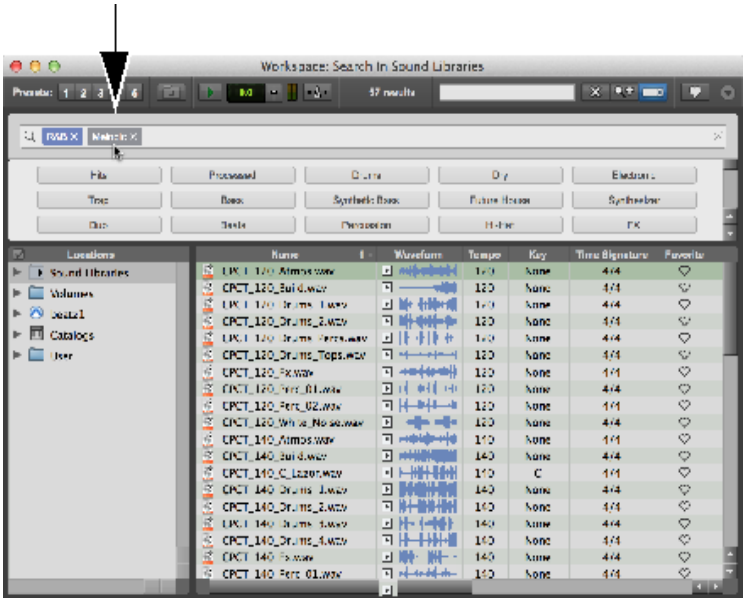
Exclude Files from Search Results with Selected Tags

Not only can you find audio files by what tags they do have, you can also find files by what tags they do not have.

To exclude files from the search results that have the specified tag:

1. Show the Tags pane in any Workspace browser.
2. Navigate to the location you want to search in the Locations pane.
3. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any tags in the Tags pane that you want to exclude from the search results. Those tags turn gray in the Search Tags field.

   Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any gray tags in the Search Tags field again to include files with those tags in the search results. Those tags turn back to blue.



Search results based on tags “R&B” included (blue) and Melodic excluded (gray)

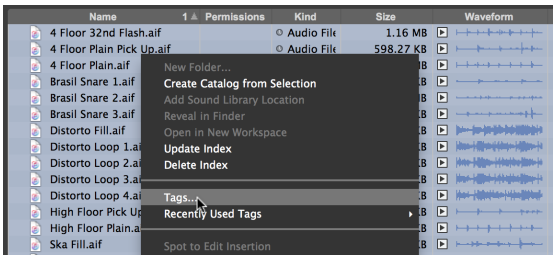
The search results include only files with the blue tags and exclude those with the gray tags.

Adding and Editing Tags

Pro Tools lets you add and edit tags for audio files in Soundbase. If you want to search your existing sample libraries or custom audio files, you will need to add tags manually.

To add tags to an audio file:

1. Locate and select one or more audio files that you want to tag in any Workspace browser.
2. Right-click on a selected audio file in the Workspace browser and choose **Tags**.

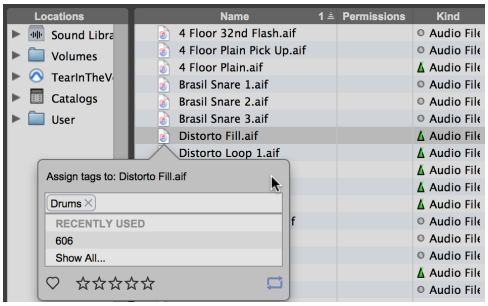


Choosing Tags in the Right-click menu for selected audio files

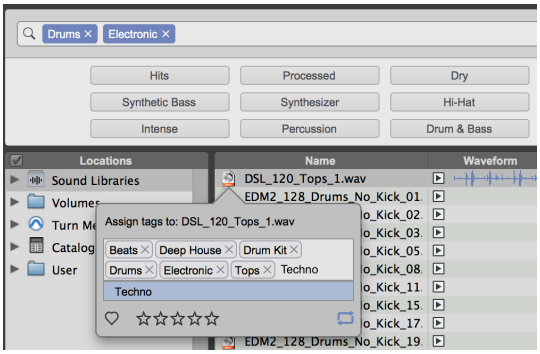
You can also assign tags by clicking in the Tags column.

3. Select the tags you want to add or type in a new tag. You can add as many tags to any audio file (WAV or AIFF only) as you like. If more than one audio file is selected, you are prompted to confirm that you want to add the tag to all selected files.
4. When done, press Enter.

When searching on tags, all audio files in the selected location with matching tags appear in the search results—the more tags you specify, the more selective your searches can be.



Adding tags to selected audio files

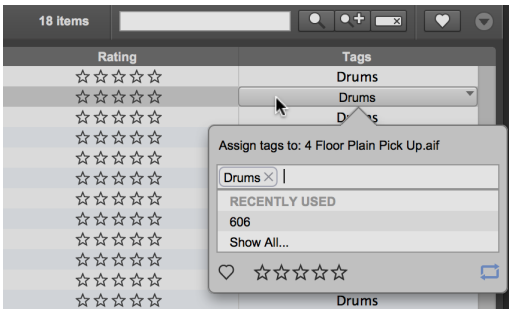


Creating a new tag for the selected audio file

Choose from the Recently Used Tags options in the Right-click menu to quickly add any of the last used tags to the selected audio files.

Assign Tags Popover Window

Access the Assign Tags popover window for one or more selected items either through the Right-click menu or from the Tags column. Here you can add, remove, and create new tags assigned to the selected audio files. You can also mark a file as a favorite and rate it from zero to five stars.



Assign Tags popover window

Press Option+Control+T (Mac) or Alt+Start+T (Windows) to show or hide the Assign Tags popover window for selected items.

To enable (or disable) the Favorite marker for selected audio files in the Assign Tags popover window:

- Click the Heart icon so that it is highlighted (or unhighlighted).

Press Control+F (Mac) or Start+F (Windows) to enable or disable the Favorite designation in the Assign Tags popover window.

To assign 0–5 stars for the rating of selected audio files in the Assign Tags popover window:

- Click the Star icons so that the number of stars you want for the rating are highlighted.

Press Control+0–5 (Mac) or Start+0–5 (Windows) to assign the number of stars for Rating.

To mark (or unmark) a file as a loop in the Tags pop-up window:

- In the Tags pop-up window, select (or deselect) the Loop icon in the lower-right corner of the pop-up window. The icon highlights when selected.



Loop indicator enabled in Tags pop-up menu

Press Control+O (Mac) or Start+O (Windows) to mark (or unmark) the selected file as a loop.

Favorites

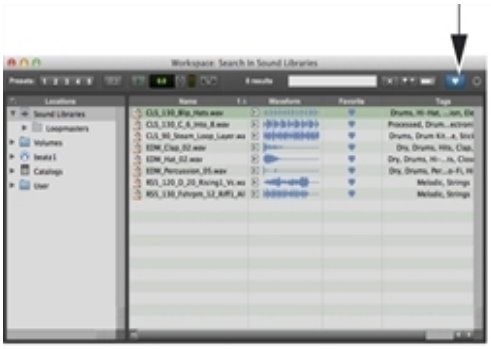
Pro Tools lets you mark audio files as Favorites, so you can quickly filter the Items List to show only Favorites.

To mark an audio file as a favorite, do one of the following:

- Select the Heart icon in the Assign Tags popover window.
- Select the Heart icon in the Favorite column.

To filter for Favorites:

- Select the Heart icon in the Workspace Browser Toolbar.



Favorites filter enabled

Press Control+Option+Command+F (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+F (Windows) to show or hide Favorites for the selected Location or search results.

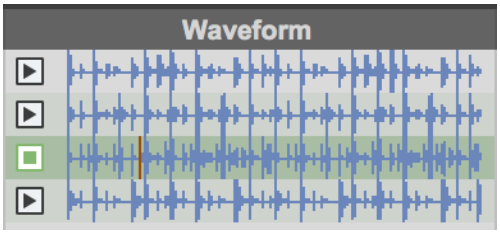
To use the Favorites designation in an Advanced Search:

1. Select **`Favorites`** for the Column type.
2. Select either **`Set`** or **`Not Set`** for the Search Criteria.
3. Press Enter or Return.

Waveforms

The Waveform column displays waveforms for audio files. Waveform display depends on the following:

- Waveforms are displayed if they have already been calculated and stored, either with the file metadata or in the global Waveform cache.
- When a file is imported into a session, a waveform is automatically calculated for it.



Waveform displays in a Workspace browser

The waveform overview is stored in the file, or in the Pro Tools Databases folder on your system drive. For more information, see "WaveCache" below.

To scale the vertical zoom on waveforms displayed in the Workspace browser, press Command+Option+[or Command+Option+] (Mac), or Control+Alt+[or Control+Alt+] (Windows).

Summed Waveforms for Multichannel Files

Waveform displays for stereo and multichannel files are summed.

Calculating Waveforms for Display

If an audio file item does not have a waveform, the waveform must be calculated to be visible in a Workspace browser Waveform display.

To calculate waveforms in a Workspace browser:

1. Select online audio files, or folders containing audio files, in a Workspace browser.
2. Right-click any selected item and choose **`Calculate Waveform`**.

WaveCache

A global WaveCache file stores waveforms that cannot be written back to the sound file, such as read-only files, files on network and other read-only volumes, and interleaved files.

On Mac, the WaveCache file is stored in /Users/Shared/Pro Tools.

On Windows, the WaveCache file is stored in C:\\Users\Public\Pro Tools.

Elastic Audio Files in the Workspace

You can both calculate and clear Elastic Audio analysis for selected audio files in Workspace browsers. Only AIFF and WAV files are supported for Elastic Audio analysis and processing. Any other file format (such as MP3) must be converted to AIFF or WAV for Elastic Audio analysis and processing.

Even though the MP3 file formats are not directly supported by Elastic Audio, you can import them into a WAV- or AIFF-based session and then use the converted files on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks. File formats that do not match the session are converted automatically on import.

For more information, see "Elastic Audio" on page 1335.

To calculate Elastic Audio analysis:

1. In a Workspace browser, select the files you want to analyze.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click one of the selected files and choose **Calculate Elastic Analysis** from the pop-up menu.
   - Preview the file with the **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo** option enabled.

Analyzed files in which a regular tempo was detected are updated as tick-based, display their duration in Bars|Beats, and display their native tempo in the Tempo column.

Analyzed files in which no tempo was detected remain sample-based. These files typically contain only a single transient (such as a snare hit) or they are longer files without a readily identifiable regular tempo (such as entire songs).

On Mac, if you do not see the Elastic Audio Analysis icon or the duration does not change to tick-based during the preview process, check the permissions for the folder in the Mac Finder. You must have write access of the directory for this feature to work.

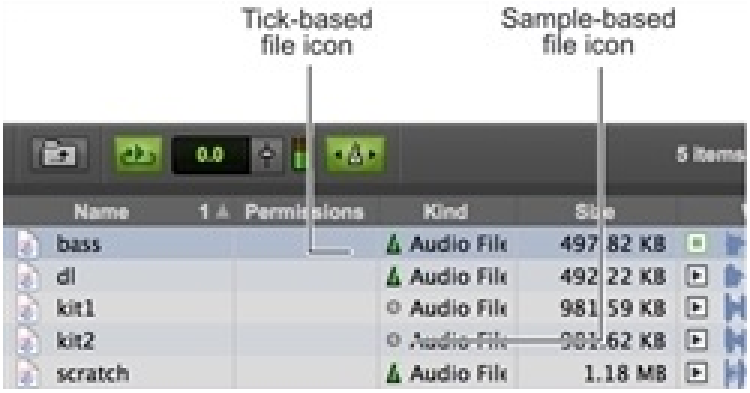
To clear Elastic Audio analysis:

1. In a Workspace browser, select the files with Elastic Audio analysis that you want to clear.
2. Right-click one of the selected files and choose **Clear Elastic Analysis** from the pop-up menu.

   Files cleared of Elastic Audio analysis data revert to sample timebase, display their duration in minutes and seconds, and do not report a tempo.

File Timebase and Elastic Audio Analysis Icons

Workspace browsers provide two different icons for time-based or tick-based files. For time-based files, the time-based icon is color coded to indicate whether or not a file includes Elastic Audio analysis.



Elastic Audio and Timebase icons in Workspace browsers

Sample-Based File Icon

Indicates that the file is sample-based. The icon is color coded to display whether or not the file includes Elastic Audio analysis data. Sample-based WAV and AIF files without elastic audio analysis data display a gray clock icon. Sample-based WAV and AIF files with elastic audio analysis data display a blue clock icon. The file's duration is displayed in minutes and seconds.

Tick-Based File Icon

Indicates that the file is tick-based. The file's duration is displayed in Bars|Beats and the file's native tempo is displayed in the tempo column. MIDI, REX and ACID files are tick-based and contain their own tempo and Bar|Beat metadata. WAV and AIF files with elastic audio analysis that are tick-based also display a green metronome icon.

Previewing Audio in Workspace Browsers

Audio files can be previewed in Workspace browsers. Previewing follows the master Audition path as selected in the Output pane of the I/O Setup (see "Audition Path" on page 69). The base level for previewing is determined by the Master Fader (or Auxiliary Input) level assigned to the Audition path. You can also adjust the Preview Volume in the Workspace browser.

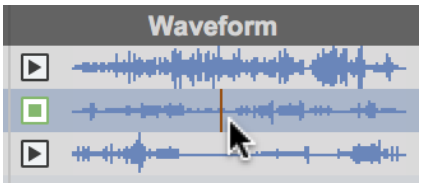
To preview an audio file in a Workspace browser:

1. Select an audio file in a browser Items List. Make sure the Workspace browser is the foreground (active) window.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Waveform Preview button (the speaker icon to the left of the waveform display). Click again to stop auditioning.
   - If **`Spacebar Toggles File Preview`** is selected in the Browser menu, press the Spacebar. Press the Spacebar again to stop auditioning.
   - Press Command+P (Mac) or Control+P (Windows) to start and stop previewing.
   - Press the Esc key to stop previewing.

If the Auto-Preview option is enabled, previewing starts as soon as the file is selected in a Workspace browser.

To audition from a specific location within the file:

- Click in the waveform display at the location.



Auditioning an audio file

Interleaved Files

When previewed in Workspace browsers, interleaved audio files with more than two channels are summed to mono for auditioning.

Multi-Mono Files

Multi-mono files must be previewed one file at a time.

Split Stereo Files Preview Together

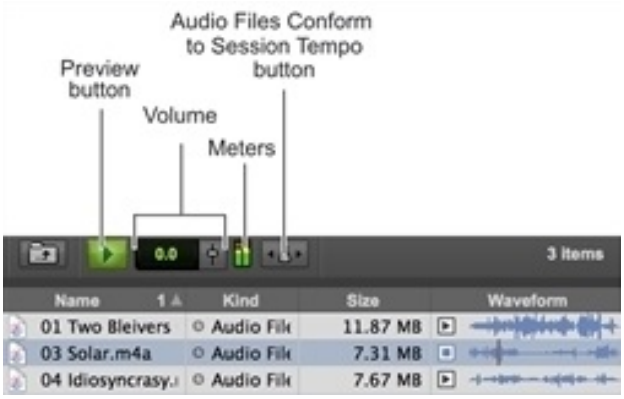
When selecting one of a pair of Split Stereo files, such as "Drums.L" and "Drums.R," both files preview together. To preview only the selected channel of a split stereo pair, press the Shift key and start preview.

Some Pro Tools operations can cause temporary interruptions in Workspace auditioning.

MIDI files can be previewed from the session Clip List, but not from Workspace browsers. See "Previewing Clips in the Clip List" on page 442.

Preview Controls and Indicators

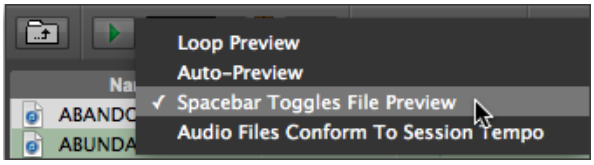
Every Workspace browser provides the following preview controls in the Toolbar: Preview, Volume, Meters, Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo, and Elastic Audio Plugin.



Preview controls in Workspace browsers

Preview Button

The Preview button starts and stops preview of audio files selected in Workspace browsers. You can also Right-click the Preview button to change the Preview mode and set whether or not the Spacebar toggles file preview.



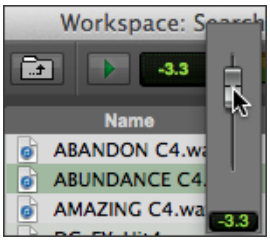
Workspace Browser, Preview button Right-click menu

Volume

The Volume control in Workspace browsers lets you boost or attenuate the gain for previewing selected files.

To change the volume for previewing in Workspace browsers:

1. Click the Volume control (Fader icon) to display the Volume fader.
2. Adjust the Volume fader (from –INF to +12 dB).



Workspace Browser, Preview Volume fader

Meters

The meters display the level of the audio and also provide clip indicators. For mono files, the mono signal is shown in both meters. For stereo files, the left and right meters show the left and right channels respectively. Greater than stereo multichannel files are displayed as summed mono in both meters.

Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo Button

The Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button mirrors the corresponding Browser menu command. When enabled, all tick-based audio files with Elastic Audio analysis, as well as REX and ACID files, conform to the session tempo. This lets you play back the session, and then simultaneously preview the selected files in time with the session. The Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button is only available when a session is open, otherwise it is disabled and grayed out.

When the Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button is enabled, Pro Tools analyzes any un-analyzed files on preview or import. Tick-based audio files conform to the session tempo during preview and on import. Sample-based files, those where no tempo has been detected, always preview and import at their original speed and duration.

When the Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button is disabled, any tick-based audio files with Elastic Audio analysis, and REX and ACID files preview at their native tempo.

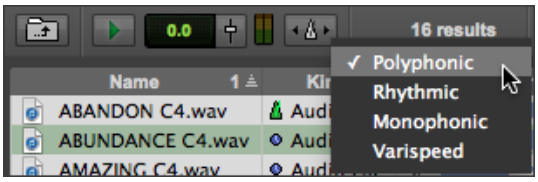
For more information, see "Conforming Preview to the Session Tempo" on the next page

Elastic Audio Plugin Selector

The Elastic Audio Plugin selector lets you select any Real-Time Elastic Audio plugin as the default plugin for previewing and importing Elastic Audio files. Changing the plugin in any Workspace browser also affects the **`Elastic Audio Default Plugin`** option in the Processing preferences.

To use Elastic Audio for preview in context:

1. Right-click the Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button.
2. Select the desired Elastic Audio plugin.



Workspace Browser, selecting Elastic Audio plugin for previewing Elastic Audio files.

For more information, see "Elastic Audio Plugins" on page 1345.

Preview Modes

Workspace browsers provide three Preview modes: Normal Preview, Loop Preview, and Auto-Preview.

Normal Preview

Normal Preview simply plays the selected audio file and stops at the end of the file. Deselect Loop Preview and Auto-Preview for Normal Preview mode.

Loop Preview

Loop Preview plays the selected file by looping playback of the file. If multiple files are selected, only the first selected file previews. When Loop Preview mode is enabled, the Preview button updates to show a Loop Preview Mode icon.

Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Preview button to toggle Loop Preview mode on and off.

To loop preview a file in a Workspace browser:

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the Browser menu, select **Loop Preview**. The Browser Preview button updates to show the Loop Preview icon.
   -  Right-click the Preview button and select Loop Preview.
2. Select an audio file in a Workspace browser's Items List. Make sure the Workspace browser is the foreground (active) window.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Browser Preview button.
   - Click the Waveform Preview button.
   - If **Spacebar Toggles File Preview** is selected in the Browser menu, press the Spacebar.
   - Press Command+P (Mac) or Control+P (Windows).

To stop loop audition, do one of the following:

- Click the Browser Preview button again.
- If **Spacebar Toggles File Preview** is selected in the Browser menu, press the Spacebar again.
- Press Command+P (Mac) or Control+P (Windows).
- Press the Esc key.

Auto-Preview

Auto-Preview plays the audio file as soon as it is selected. Additionally, the Preview button updates to show an Auto-Preview icon.

Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Preview button to toggle Auto-Preview mode on and off.

To automatically preview files when selected, do one of the following:

- From the Browser menu, select **Auto-Preview**. The Preview button updates to show that Auto-Preview is enabled.
-  Right-click the Preview button and select Auto-Preview.

Conforming Preview to the Session Tempo

Pro Tools lets you preview Elastic Audio analyzed files at the session tempo. The selected default Elastic Audio plugin is used for previewing Elastic Audio analyzed audio files at the session tempo. Additionally, other tick-based files, such as REX and ACID files, can also be previewed at the session tempo and in time with playback.

To preview files at the session tempo:

1. In the session, place the insertion point at the location where you want to preview the file in Workspace.
2. In a Workspace browser, select the file you want to preview.
3. Do one of the following:

- Click the Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button. It highlights when enabled.
- From the Browser menu, select **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo**.
- Right-click the file you want to preview and select **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo** from the pop-up menu.

4. Click the Preview button in the Workspace browser and the file plays at the session tempo.

Preview in Context

Pro Tools lets you preview audio files in Workspace browsers while playing back a Pro Tools session. Tick-based audio files (those with tempo detected Elastic Audio analysis, as well as REX and ACID files) can play back in tempo, and at the corresponding bar and beat location, with session playback. Tick-based audio files audition at the session tempo when the **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo** option is enabled.

Deselect the Spacebar Toggles File Preview option in the Browser menu to start and stop session playback with the Spacebar without previewing in the Workspace browser. Use Command+P (Mac) or Control+P (Windows) to start and stop preview in the front-most Workspace browser during session playback.

Reserve Voices for Preview in Context (Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only)

Preview in context (previewing audio files in Workspace during session playback) uses disk voices for playback. The number of voices required depends on the channel width of the selected Audition Paths on the Output page of the I/O Setup window. For example, if a stereo audition path selected in the I/O Setup requires 2 voices for preview in context, whereas a 5.1 audition path requires 6 voices. If one or more voices are not available for preview in context because they are in use by disk tracks (or routing for Native processing on HDX systems), the Preview button in Workspace browsers will be unavailable during session playback.

Pro Tools provides an option to reserve voices for preview in context. The number of reserved voices is determined by the channel width of the selected Audition Paths in the I/O Setup. Voices reserved for preview in context are unavailable for disk tracks.

To reserve for voices for preview in context:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Select the **Operation** tab.
3. Enable the **Reserve Voices For Preview In Context** option.
4. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

Linking and Relinking Files

A Pro Tools session is made up of references, or *links*, to audio files and other session media. Audio and video files must be stored on suitable Performance volumes and be properly linked in order to be playable in the session.

The following types of files are not playable:

- Transfer Files

  Files that are stored on volumes not suitable for playback, such as network volumes or USB thumb drives.

- Missing Files

  Files that cannot be found where the session expects them, either because they have been moved, or because they are stored on volumes that are not currently mounted (offline volumes).

The process of reacquiring missing files is referred to as *relinking*. Relinking can involve certain sub-tasks, depending on the situation.

- Transfer files must first be copied to a suitable Performance volume. The session is then relinked to the copies on the Performance volumes instead of the original Transfer files.
- Volumes may be searched for missing files and, when the files are found, Pro Tools relinks the session to the file's new location.
- Files that reside on offline volumes must first have their volumes mounted (brought online) before they can be relinked.



Catalogs have unique linking characteristics. See "Relinking and Aliases in Catalogs" on page 543.

Choosing When to Relink

Pro Tools lets you relink files while opening a session or after a session is already open, as follows:

- Relinking when opening a session ensures that the session opens with all media playable. Automatic and manual relinking can be performed. See "Opening a Session with Missing Files" on the next page.
- Relinking later (after a session is already open) is the fastest way to open the session, but all missing items remain offline and unplayable. See "Relink Window" on page 539.

Forcing a Relink

If you cannot relink to the original file, you can force a relink to another file. See "Force Relinking Files" on page 542.

Transfer Files

Unlike missing files, Transfer files are files that have been found but which reside on volumes unsuitable for playback, such as USB thumb drives or network drives. These volumes appear as Transfer volumes in the Workspace browser.

Opening a Session with Transfer Files

If a session finds files on a volume unsuitable for playback, a dialog appears prompting you to copy them to a suitable volume.

To copy Transfer files found when opening a session, do one of the following:

- Click **Yes** to open the Copy and Relink dialog.
- Click **No** to open the session with all Transfer files offline. When opened, the session's Workspace browser indicates Transfer files with a "T" in their Status column.

Transfer Files in an Open Session

To make Transfer files playable in the current session:

1. Select the current session in the Locations pane.
2. Double click the Audio Files folder to display all of the audio files.
3. Choose **Select Transfer Files** from the Browser menu.
4. Choose **Copy and Relink** from the Browser menu.
5. Specify a location for the copied files on a valid Performance volume and click **OK**.
6. Repeat for video files, as necessary.

Copy and Relink

The **Copy and Relink** command is a file management option for session and catalogs in the Workspace browser.

Copy and Relink provides a convenient way to copy files and relink the session or Catalog to the copies rather than to the originals.

To copy items to a new location and Relink to the copies:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Window** > **New Workspace** and select the current session in the Locations pane.
   - Open a Catalog.
2. Select the items you want to copy and relink. You can select any media files (online, offline, and Transfer files).
3. Choose **Copy and Relink Selected** from the Browser menu.
4. If the default location for the copies (the session's Audio Files folder) is not appropriate, specify a different location and click **Choose**.

   The files are copied to the chosen destination and the session or Catalog is relinked in the background.

Missing Files

Files are missing if they are not found in the same location as when the session was last saved. This could be because you moved the files or the session folder, or because the files are on a volume that is not currently mounted.

Opening a Session with Missing Files

To open a session with missing files:

1. When you open a session, Pro Tools opens the session with all available media, then shows you how many files are missing (if any) and asks how you want to proceed. (If told that files are unsuitable for playback, see "Transfer Files" on the previous page.)
2. Select one of the following:
   - **Skip All**—or press Command+S (Mac) or Control+S (Windows).
   - **Manually Find Relink**—or press Command+M (Mac) or Control+M (Windows).
   - **Automatically Find Relink**—or press Command+A (Mac) or Control+A (Windows).
3. Select **Regenerate Missing Rendered Files Without Searching** to exclude rendered Elastic Audio files from the relink process and regenerate them instead.
4. Click **OK**.

Skip All

Skips all missing files. This option is the fastest way to open the session utilizing all available media. Missing files are offline in the session, and shown in the Clip List and the Workspace browser with *italic* text.

Manually Find and Relink

Opens the Relink window. Use the Relink window to search, compare, verify, and relink missing files. Files can be relinked one at a time or in batches. See "Relink Window" on the next page for more information.

Automatically Find and Relink

Is the simplest method to relink sessions to required media, but it provides no way to compare files or verify links. This option cannot be undone. The **Automatically Find and Relink** option does the following:

- Searches all Performance volumes for all missing items with matching Name, ID, Format, and Length
- Links missing items to the first matches found
- Commits links for all items possible

Links, once committed, cannot be undone once the session is saved. The only way to revert to previous links is to close the session without saving changes.

If some files remain unlinked, the Task window opens and a failed task appears in the Paused Tasks pane. Double-click the Task icon to open the Relink window and manually find and relink files.

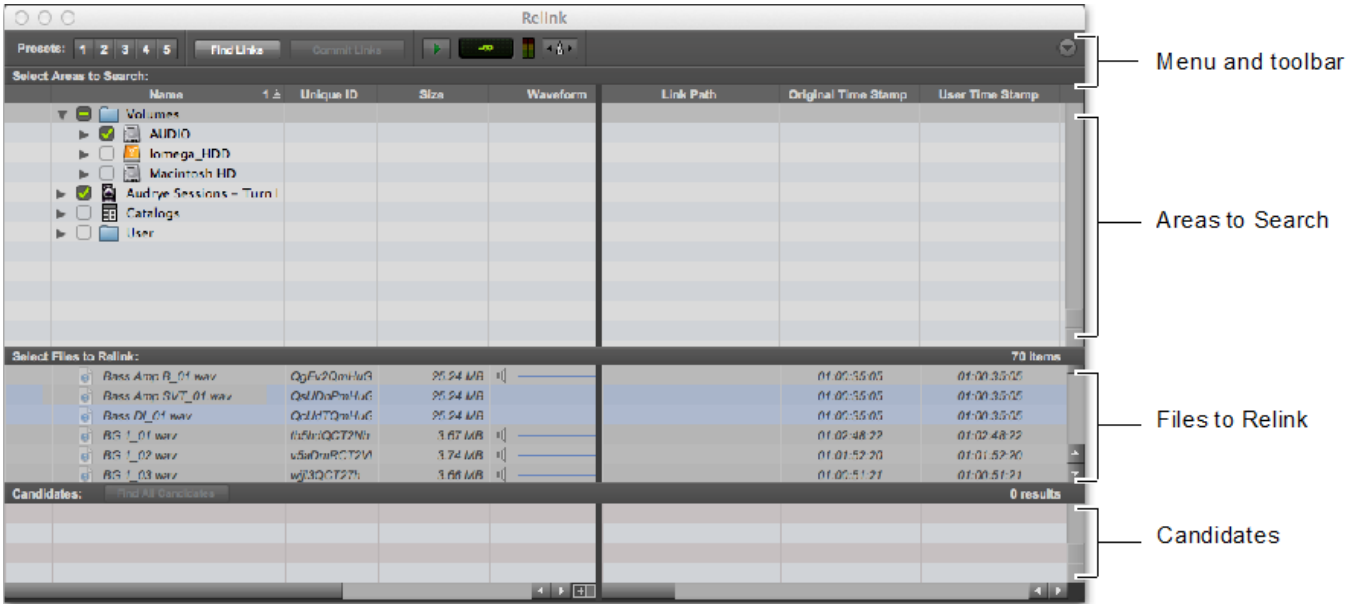
Even if all of the missing files are later found and relinked, the failed task remains in the Task Window. Like all failed tasks, it must be manually selected and deleted. See "About Failed Tasks" on page 549.

Regenerate Missing Rendered Files Without Searching

Enable this option to exclude rendered Elastic Audio files from the relinking process (rendered files are recalculated instead). This option is available when **Automatically Find and Relink** or **Manually Find and Relink** is enabled.

Relink Window

The Relink window provides tools for all relinking tasks.



Menu and Toolbar

Includes the Relink menu, View Presets, and relinking buttons. Status is displayed at the far right.

Areas to Search

Selects volumes on which to search for missing items.

Files to Relink

Lists missing files.

Candidates

Lists files that match the “relinking criteria” for a particular missing file. The Link icon next to the candidate can be toggled on or off to link (or unlink) the proposed candidate to the selected missing file.

The Relink window controls each phase of the relinking process.

Opening the Relink Window

When opening a session with missing files, use the **`Manually Find and Relink`** option to open the Relink window. The Relink window can also be accessed after a session is open.

To access the Relink window from an open session:

1. In the Workspace browser, select the item you want to relink.
2. Choose **`Relink Offline`** from the Browser menu.

The Session Data Online Status indicator in the Edit window (under the Edit Selection indicators) is green when all audio files referenced by the session are available for playback. However, if files are offline, being processed, or otherwise unavailable for playback, this indicator is red. If any files are offline, click the indicator to open the Relink window and relink to offline files.

Selecting Areas to Search

Selecting volumes and folders in the Areas to Search pane lets you focus the search for missing files. This can speed the relinking process by limiting the number of volumes or folders to search. In addition, excluding folders from a search for missing files also lets you redirect a session or Catalog to a more appropriate copy of an item.



Volumes selected to include in the search

To select volumes or folders to include or exclude in a search:

1. Configure the Areas to Search pane to display the appropriate volume, Catalog, or folder.
2. Click each item’s Search column to toggle it to be included or excluded in the search. A check next to an item indicates it will be included in the search. All folders within items are also checked.

Single and Multi-File Relinking

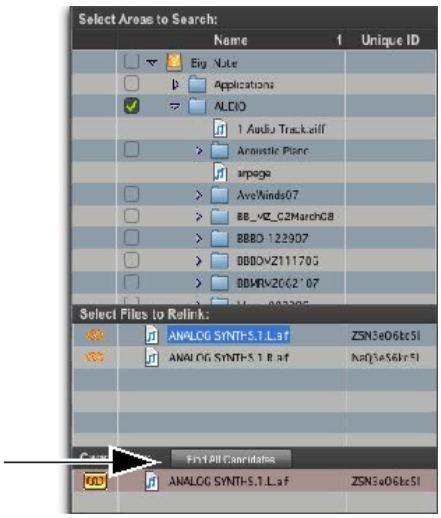
The Relink window can be used to relink one missing file at a time, or to relink missing files in batches.

Relinking Individual Missing Files

In some situations, individual files must be relinked one at a time in order to relink the session to the correct file. This is necessary if multiple copies of a media file are online, or whenever you want the most control and flexibility over the relinking process.

To relink a missing file:

1. Configure the Areas to Search pane.
2. Select one item in the Files to Relink list.
3. Click **`Find All Candidates`**.



Find All Candidates, for relinking a selected missing file

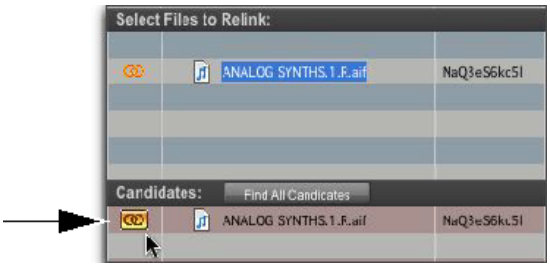
Pro Tools searches the selected volumes and displays all files that match File Name, SMPTE ID, or Unique ID in the Candidates list. Link icons indicate if a Candidate is already linked.

OMF video clips can only be relinked to a session if they have matching Unique IDs.

Video clips can only be relinked to a session by file name and file format.

To control matching and linking criteria when relinking an individual missing file, use the Find Links button. Find Links is explained in "Relinking Multiple Missing Files " below.

4. Click the Link icon next to the appropriate Candidate to which you want to relink. A Link icon next to an item indicates it will be relinked to the item currently selected in the Files to Relink list.



Link icon, indicating Linked status

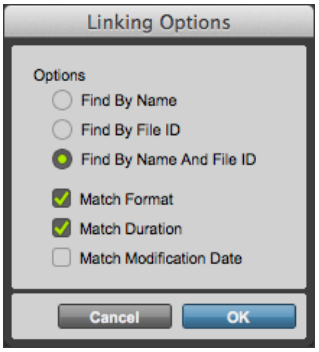
5. Click the Link icon next to other Candidates, if you want to relink to additional missing files.
6. Click the **`Commit Links`** button.

Relinking Multiple Missing Files

Using the Find Links button, multiple files can be matched and linked in one procedure.

To relink multiple missing files:

1. Configure Areas to Search. (See "Selecting Areas to Search" on page 540.)
2. Select one or more items in the Files to Relink list. The Find Links button becomes available.
3. Click **Find Links**.
4. Configure criteria for relinking, if necessary, in the Linking Options dialog:
   - By default, Find by Name and ID is enabled.
   - To add additional matching criteria, select an option from the Linking Options dialog. (Modification Date is only applicable to Catalogs.)
   - If **Match Duration** is enabled, Pro Tools only selects files of the same length or *greater*.



Linking options

5. Click **OK** to continue (or click **Cancel** to return to the Relink window).

   Pro Tools searches for an acceptable candidate for the first missing file (the first item selected in the Files to Relink list). A link icon appears next to each file as Pro Tools finds and links the first acceptable candidate to the missing file. The Link Path column shows the location of the selected candidate. Pro Tools continues searching, matching, and linking for each missing file in the Files to Relink list.
6. To view a candidate for a missing file, select to highlight the missing file. That file's candidate appears in the Candidates pane, where you can view its information and waveform.
7. If you are not satisfied with the candidate for a particular missing file, you can click **Find All Candidates** for the selected file (see "Relinking Individual Missing Files" on page 540).

Force Relinking Files

If you want to link to a substitute file (for example, if you know a file has the same audio or video but does not have a matching File Name, SMPTE ID, or Unique ID), you can force a relink.

- To force relink an audio file, its file format (WAV, AIFF, or MXF), sample rate and bit depth must match those of the original file.
- To force relink a video file, its format (MOV, Avid, MXF, or OMF) and frame rate must match those of the original file.

To force a relink:

1. Select the items you want to relink.
2. Choose **Relink Offline** from the Browser menu.
3. In the Relink window, select one item in the Files to Relink list.
4. Navigate in the Areas to Search pane to locate the file you want to relink.

5. Drag the file to the Candidates pane in the Relink window.
6. Click the Link icon next to the file you dragged to the Candidates pane.
7. Click the **Commit Links** button.

Committing Links

There is no Undo for relinking. Once a file has been relinked and the session saved, the session always remembers the new link (the original link is forgotten). For this reason, no files are actually relinked until you click **Commit Links**.

> *The Automatically Find and Relink option is the only relinking process that does not ask you to verify links before they are committed. If you use this option and are unsatisfied with the results, close the session without saving to prevent the new links from being committed.*

To commit links:

1. Use the Relink window to link files as explained in "Single and Multi-File Relinking" on page 540.
2. Click **Commit**. You are asked to verify committing links.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click **Yes** to commit links.
   - Click **No** to stop without affecting files.

Relinking and Aliases in Catalogs

Catalogs are collections of “aliases” or “shortcuts” to actual files. If the files are moved, an item in a Catalog can become unlinked from the file it references.

To relink a Catalog:

1. Open the Catalog.
2. Select items to relink.
3. Choose **Relink Selected** from the Browser menu in that Catalog window.

Catalogs

Catalogs are similar to having a Favorites folder, and serve as a way to collect and organize frequently used items regardless of where they are stored. A Catalog is analogous to a folder full of aliases or shortcuts. Placing a file in a Catalog does not create a copy of the file, and does not change where the file is stored. Rather, it stores a reference (or alias) to the file so that it can be found and manipulated without having to search for its physical location.

Creating Catalogs

Catalogs can be added to the Workspace as new, empty Catalogs, or you can select items first and then save a Catalog of all selected items.

To create a new, empty Catalog:

1. Open a Workspace browser.
2. Choose **New Catalog** from the Browser menu.
3. Type a unique name and click **OK**.

To catalog a selection of items:

1. Open a Workspace browser.
2. Select the items you want to include in the new Catalog.
3. Choose **Create Catalog from Selection** from the Browser menu.

A new, fully indexed Catalog database of the selected items is created.

Creating Catalogs of Folders

To create a Catalog of an entire folder and all its contents:

1. Open the Workspace browser, if not already open.
2. Drag and drop a single folder onto the Catalog icon in the Workspace browser.

Pro Tools first indexes the folder, then a fully indexed Catalog is created, with the same name as the dropped folder.

Renaming a Catalog

Catalogs can be renamed at any time.

To rename a Catalog:

1. Click the Catalog item in the Workspace browser until its name highlights.
2. Type a new name for the Catalog.

Modifying Catalogs

To add items to a Catalog, do one of the following:

- Open the Catalog and drop new items from another Workspace browser.
- Click the main Catalogs icon in the Workspace, to expand your view of all existing Catalogs, then drop items onto any Catalog.

To add a folder to a Catalog:

1. Open the Catalog.
2. Choose **New Folder** from the Browser menu.

Removing Catalog Items

When you remove a folder or file from a Catalog, Pro Tools lets you choose whether to delete only the alias from the Catalog, or also delete the original files from disk.

To delete an item from a Catalog.

1. Select a catalog in the Locations pane.
2. In the Browser pane, select one or more items in the catalog that you want to remove.
3. Choose **Remove Selected Items** from the Browser menu.
4. When prompted, do one of the following:
    - To remove the aliases for the selected items from the Catalog, click **Remove**.
    - To delete the selected items from disk (and remove their aliases from the Catalog), click **Move To Trash** (Mac) or **Move To Recycle Bin** (Windows).

Consolidating Files with Catalogs

Catalogs are excellent tools for consolidating files from a variety of sources.

For example, create a Catalog named “Thumps” and fill it with sound effects from three different volumes. You can then drag the Catalog from the Workspace browser to another volume, and a folder named “Thumps” is created on that volume. All of the files referenced by the Catalog are automatically copied to the volume. Folders and sub-folders, if any, and their contents are included in the copy.

Updating Catalogs

Since a Catalog database is not linked to any particular volume, there is a limit to the abilities of the **Update Index** command. When **Update Index for Selected** Items is selected from the Browser menu in a Catalog, Pro Tools searches for the items represented by the aliases in the Catalog and updates the following information:

Metadata

Metadata for all files found online, including File comments, are updated.

Database Comments

Database Comments are not updated, because they are unique to each Catalog and are not part of the file’s metadata.

Relinking Catalog Items

If files are ever missing from a Catalog, use the Relink window to locate, copy, and relink files. For more information, see "Linking and Relinking Files" on page 536.

Removing Catalogs

To delete a Catalog:

1. Select a catalog in the Locations pane.
2. Select the catalog in the Browser pane.
3. Choose **Remove Selected Items** from the Browser menu. A warning dialog appears.
4. In the warning dialog, do one of the following:
   - Click **Cancel** to cancel the delete operation.
   - Click **Move to Trash** (Mac) or **Move to Recycle Bin** (Windows) to remove aliases and associated files from disk.
   - Click **Remove** to remove only the aliases from the catalog (and not the associated files on disk).

This operation cannot be undone.

Importing Catalog Items

You can import online and offline items from Catalogs into the current session.

Importing Online Items from a Catalog

Dragging and dropping audio files to the Pro Tools Clip List and Timeline is identical to dragging and dropping from Workspace browsers.

For more information, see "Importing Files with Drag and Drop" on page 653.

Importing Offline Items from a Catalog

With Catalogs, it is possible to search and import files that are offline. For example, if you have a music cue that you know you want to use, but it resides on an unmounted volume, you can spot the file from a Catalog to the session Timeline, and it is automatically imported into the session when the volume is

mounted.

The first step is to add files to a Catalog (files must be online to be added to a Catalog). Once added to a Catalog, if the items are taken offline they are listed in italicized text.

Offline files can be dropped from a Catalog to the Timeline just like online files. When you drop the files, a dialog appears asking if you want to relink the files or skip relinking. Click **`Skip All`** to load all the items as offline files (in the Timeline, their clips appear in light blue).

Whenever the volume containing the offline items is mounted, Pro Tools automatically starts to import the files, in the background. This is true even if you have saved the session, quit, and relaunched Pro Tools.

Once the items are completely imported, they appear as online items in the Timeline, Clip List, and in the Workspace browser.

If the offline items match the session sample rate, bit depth, and file format, no conversion is necessary. As long as the volume is playable, the items become playable in the session as soon as the volume is mounted.

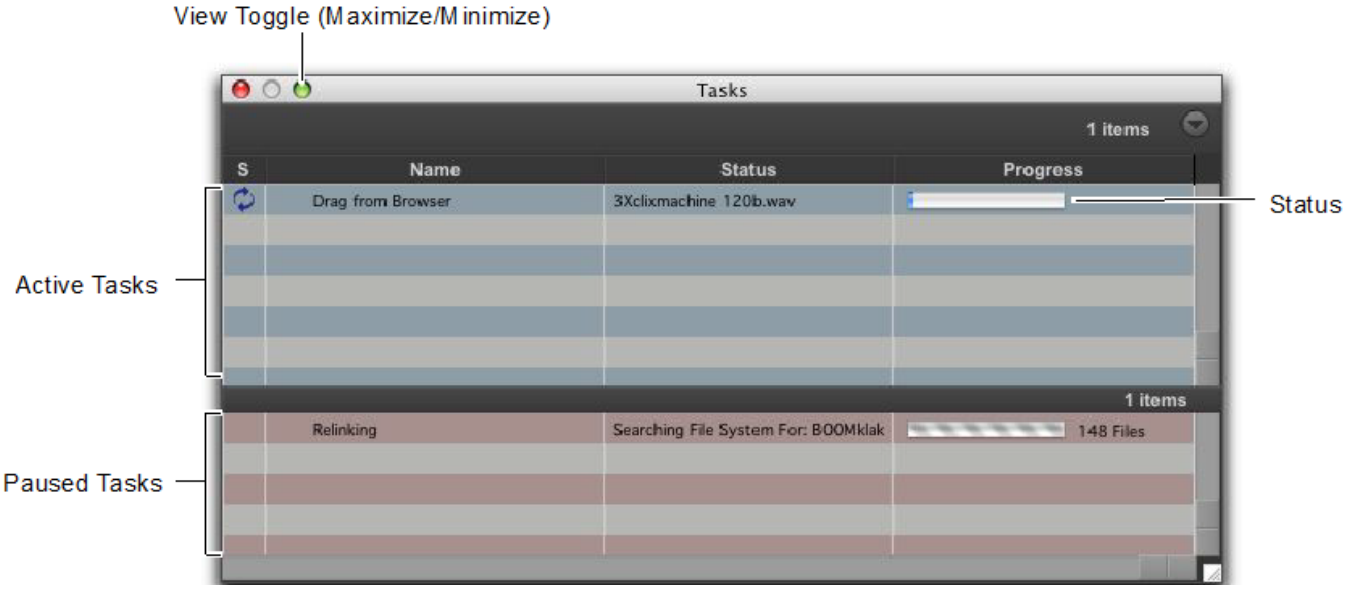
If the volume is unsuitable for playback, you are informed that some items must be copied to suitable volumes first.

For more information on Transfer files, missing files, and relinking, see "Relink Window" on page 539.

Task Manager Window

For maximum performance and flexibility with file management tasks, Pro Tools provides the Task Manager window. File management with Pro Tools involves nearly constant creating, copying, converting, processing, searching, and indexing files. These tasks occur in the background, letting you continue recording, editing, and mixing without delay.

The Task window lets you monitor, pause and cancel ongoing tasks including file copying, fade regeneration, and indexing. You can also use the Task Manager to monitor upload and download progress with projects.



Opening the Task Window

To open the Task Window, do one of the following:

- In Pro Tools, choose **Window > Task Manager**.
- Press Option+' (Mac) or Alt+' (Windows) to open the Workspace browser.
- Click the Task Manager Status indicator in the Edit Window toolbar.

Task Manager Status

The Task Manager Status indicator lights and animates when the Task Manager is busy. When no tasks are in progress, it is unlit. The indicator turns red if the Task Manager requires your attention.



Task Manager Status indicator, tasks in progress

Task Window Messages

If any background task cannot be successfully completed, the Task window comes to the foreground to notify you. The incomplete task is shown in the Paused Tasks pane of the Task window.

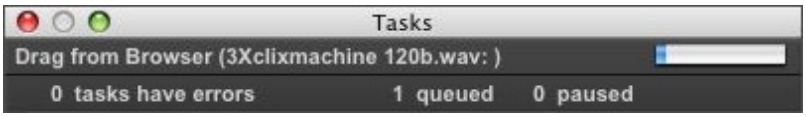
Because the Task window is a floating window, it does not interrupt current work. This allows you to continue recording and editing, and postpone file management until a more convenient time.

Task Window Views

The Task window provides a maximized and minimized view.

To toggle between maximized and minimized views:

- Click the View Toggle icon in the top of the Task window.



Task window, minimum view

Task Window Tools, Columns, and Displays

The Task window menu provides commands for Task window operations. The following data is always displayed in the Task window (both views):

- Item Name

  Indicates affected item, whether a file, database, or other supported item.

- Status

  Action being taken (for example, copying, processing, indexing and so on).

- Progress

  Indicates the progress of the task or its sub-tasks, which include assessing the size of the items and the estimated amount of time necessary to complete the task.

- Progress Indicator

  Indicates processing is ongoing.

- Quantification

  Shows percentage of progress of the current task.

Active Tasks Pane

The upper Active Tasks pane shows the tasks that are in progress or waiting to start. The currently executing task is at the top. Tasks in this pane will be processed.

As tasks complete, they disappear from the queue.

Any task that fails to complete successfully is moved to the Paused Tasks pane (see below). The Status column displays a description of the failure.

Paused Tasks Pane

The Paused Tasks pane is displayed below the Active Tasks pane, and is separated by a movable horizontal divider. Tasks listed in this pane will not be processed until they are moved back to the Active Tasks pane.

Pausing and Canceling Tasks

The Task window lets you pause, resume, and cancel tasks.

To pause a task:

- Drag the appropriate task from the Active Tasks pane to the Paused Tasks pane.

To pause all tasks:

- Choose **`Pause All`** from the Task window menu.

To resume a task:

- Drag a task from the Paused Tasks pane to the Active Tasks pane. The task returns to its previous position in the queue.

To resume all paused tasks:

- Select **`Resume All`** from the Task window menu. All tasks in the Paused Tasks pane (except failed tasks) are moved to the Active Tasks pane.

To cancel a task:

1. Highlight any task in either pane of the Task window.
2. Press Delete to remove it from the Task window.

To cancel all tasks:

1. Select any single task in either pane.
2. Press Command+A (Mac) Control+A (Windows) to select all the tasks in that pane.
3. Press Delete.

This command cannot be undone.

About Canceling Tasks

Some tasks involve one or more sub-tasks. Deleting a task cannot undo sub-tasks already completed. For example, if importing and converting multiple files appears as a single task, deleting that task before it is completed stops the import and conversion process, but files already converted and imported remain on disk. If you want to cancel a task involving multiple sub-tasks, you can instead let the process complete and then use **`Undo`** to completely undo all sub-tasks, as available.

Closing Sessions with Pending Tasks

If you close a session or quit Pro Tools while tasks are still pending (either in the Active or Paused Tasks panes of the Task window) Pro Tools asks if you want to cancel, or complete the pending tasks. You can choose to open the Task window and wait for pending tasks to complete, cancel the pending tasks, or quit. If you quit, some tasks are canceled. Tasks that involve file copies are remembered and restarted when you relaunch Pro Tools.

About Failed Tasks

The Paused Tasks pane shows any tasks that could not be completed. The reason for the failure is shown in the Status column.

Failed Tasks cannot be resumed, and must be deleted manually from the Paused Tasks pane.

If **Automatically Find and Relink** was unable to find all files in a session, a failed task is placed in the Paused Tasks pane of the Task window. It remains there unless you manually remove it from the Task window (even if you have since found the files through a subsequent search and relink task).

Task Prioritization

A task that is in progress may be interrupted by a task of higher priority. When this happens, the partially completed task is halted and rescheduled later in the queue, and shown with a progress bar in the Active Tasks pane. When the higher priority task is finished the first incomplete task in the queue resumes.

Pausing Tasks During Playback

A global preference **Pause During Playback** is provided in the Task window Browser menu. When enabled, Active Tasks are paused whenever Pro Tools is playing (or recording). This setting is especially useful when working on slower CPUs, or whenever you want to minimize system load for maximum playback and recording performance. This preference maintains its setting until the next time it is changed.

Stored Tasks

Any task that imports files into a session is stored with a session when it is closed, and resumes when the session is re-opened. For example, if you **Import Session Data** with **Copy From Source Media** selected, then **Save** and **Close** the session before the copy completes, the copy tasks resume when the session is reopened.

Grouped Tasks

Some tasks consist of many smaller tasks. For instance, **Copy and Relink** may require hundreds of individual files to be copied. To help manage these tasks, they are grouped under the originating command. So in the example of a **Copy and Relink** command, one copy task would appear with an Expand/Collapse icon in the Task window. Clicking the icon shows each of the individual sub-tasks.

If there is more than one grouped task in the queue, all of the sub-tasks for the first group must be completed before the sub-tasks of the second group can be processed.

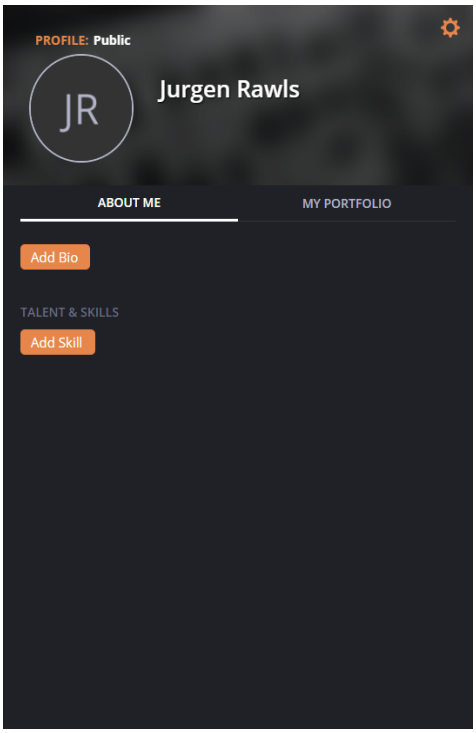
If the session is saved and closed while several of these group tasks are in the queue, and if those tasks are the type that can be interrupted and saved when closing the session, all of the tasks reappear as part of the same group when the session is reopened.

22 Collaboration with Pro Tools Projects

The **Pro Tools Projects** window (**Window > Collaboration > Pro Tools Projects**) lets you create and manage your Avid Community Profile, and find collaborators using **Find Talent** (**Window > Collaboration > Find Talent**). The **Pro Tools Projects** window lets you invite people from your list of contacts to collaborate on a project and communicate with collaborators using Messages (**Window > Collaboration > Messages**).

Your Avid Profile

Set up and maintain your Avid Profile to promote your work, and share your talents and skills with the Avid Creative Community. Add tags for your skills to helps people find you when they are searching for collaborators using **Find Talent**.



New Avid Profile

To set up your Avid Profile:

1. If you are not already signed in to your Avid Master Account in Pro Tools, choose **File > Sign In** and sign in.
2. In Pro Tools, choose **Window > Collaboration > Pro Tools Projects**.

   Press Command+Shift+= (equals) (Mac) or Control+Shift+= (equals) (Windows).
3. To add or change your Profile Picture and Cover Photo, do the following:
   - Choose **Edit Cover Photo** from the gear icon in the upper right corner of the window.
   - Click Edit to browse for and add photos.
   - Click **Save Changes**.
4. To add relevant information about you, such as your Bio and Contact Information, do the following:

- Click **About Me**.
- Click **Add Bio**.
- Select (or deselect) **Make My Profile Public**.
- Enter your personal information.
- Click **Save** when you are done.

5. To add (or remove) tags for your talents and skills, do the following:
   - Click **About Me**.
   - Click **Add Skill** and select your skills in each category (for example, select **Instruments** and click **Piano**). Tags for each selected skill are added to your Profile.
   - For each added tag, set your **Expertise**.
   - Click **Save** when you are done.
6. To add audio samples of your work, do the following:
   - Click **My Portfolio**.
   - Click **Add Content** and select **Audio Content**.
   - Click **Upload File**, locate and select the audio file you want to upload and click **Open**.
   - Add a picture and enter information about the audio file as desired.
   - Click **Save**.

To edit your personal information after you have setup your Profile:

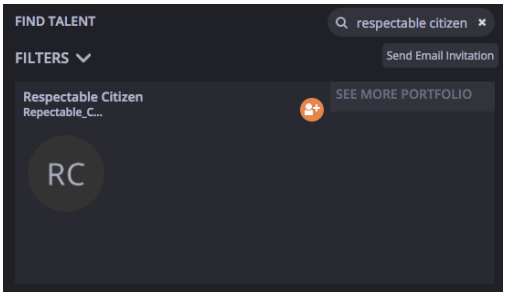
1. Choose Edit About Me from the gear icon in the upper right corner of the window.
2. Edit your personal information as desired.
3. Click **Save** when you are done.

Find Talent

Use **Find Talent** (**Window > Collaboration > Find Talent**) to search for other members of the Avid Creative Community to add to your contacts for collaboration based on specific talents and skills. You can also search for people by name. If you want to collaborate with someone who is not yet part of the Avid Creative Community, you can email them an invitation to join.

To find a member of the Avid Creative Community by name:

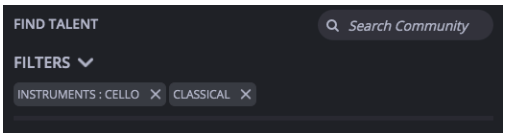
1. If you are not already signed in to your Avid Master Account in Pro Tools, choose **File > Sign In** and sign in.
2. In Pro Tools, choose **Window > Collaboration > Find Talent**.
3. In **Search Community** field in the upper right corner of the window, type the name of the person you are searching for and press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows), or click the Magnifying Glass icon.



4. Locate the person you are looking for in the results list and click their name, profile photo, or **`See More Portfolio`** to view their Profile.

To search for talent by Skill tags:

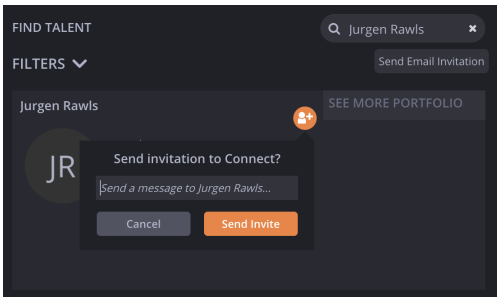
1. If you are not already signed in to your Avid Master Account in Pro Tools, choose **`File > Sign In`** and sign in.
2. In Pro Tools, choose **`Window > Collaboration > Find Talent`**.
3. Click **`Filters`**.
4. Click a Category (such as **`Instruments`**).
5. Click a skill in that Category (such as **`Cello`**).
6. To further refine your search, click **`Filters`** again and select a **`Genre`** (such as **`Classical`**).



7. The Talent list updates to show only those Profiles that have the Skill tags for which you have added Filters.

To invite someone from the Talent list to connect and add them to your contacts:

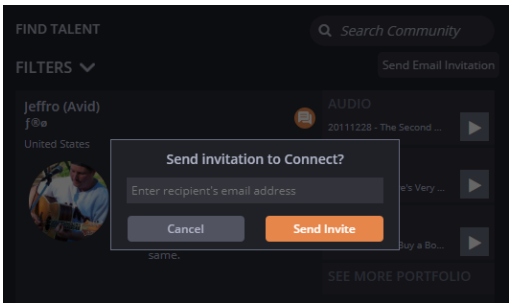
1. If you are not already signed in to your Avid Master Account in Pro Tools, choose **`File > Sign In`** and sign in.
2. In Pro Tools, choose **`Window > Collaboration > Find Talent`**.
3. Search for talent by name or filter the Talent list Skill tags.
4. Click the Add Contact icon for the person with whom you want to connect.
5. Type a message and click **`Send Invite`**.



To invite a person to join the Avid Creative Community to connect and collaborate:

1. If you are not already signed in to your Avid Master Account in Pro Tools, choose **`File > Sign In`** and sign in.
2. In Pro Tools, choose **`Window > Collaboration > Find Talent`**.

3. Under the Search Community field, click **Send Email Invitation**.
4. Enter the person's email address and click **Send Invite**.



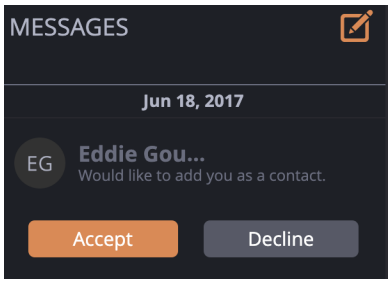
Emailing an invitation to join the Avid Creative Community and connect

5. Type a message and click **Send Invite**.

   That person will receive an email from you with a link inviting them to join the Avid Artist Community and connect.

To respond to an invitation to connect:

1. When you are invited to connect as a new contact, you receive a new Message in the Artist Chat window.
2. To accept, click the **Accept** button.



Emailing an invitation to join the Avid Creative Community and connect

You are both added to each others list of contacts and you can now invite each other to collaborate on projects.

Pro Tools Projects Window

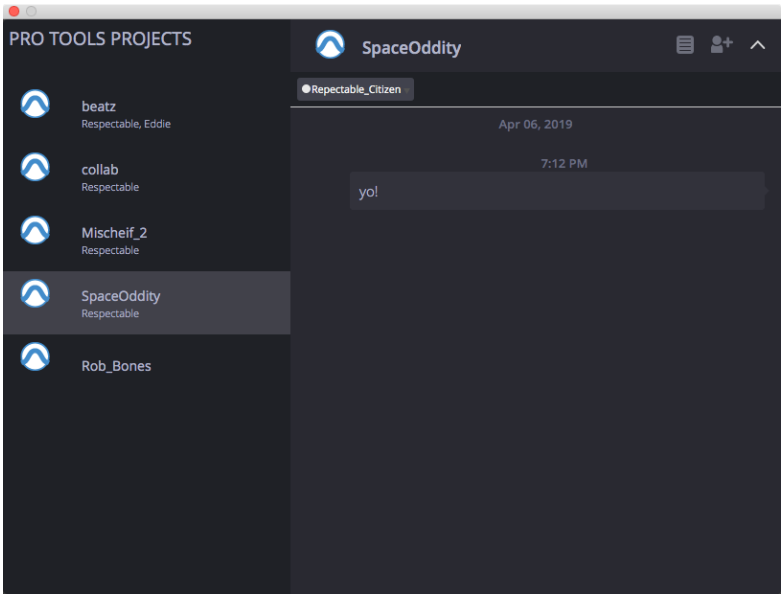
Use the Pro Tools Projects to invite people in your contacts to collaborate on individual projects. You can monitor collaboration activity on Pro Tools Projects, see who is collaborating on a project, and communicate with all project collaborators using group messaging in the Pro Tools Projects window. The project owner (the person who created the project) can invite collaborators from their contacts. The project owner can also remove individual collaborators from the project.

To open (or close) the Pro Tools Projects window:

1. Launch Pro Tools.
2. Log in to your Avid Master Account, either through the Dashboard window or by selecting **File > Sign In**. You must be connected to the Internet and signed in to access the Pro Tools Projects window.
3. Do one of the following:

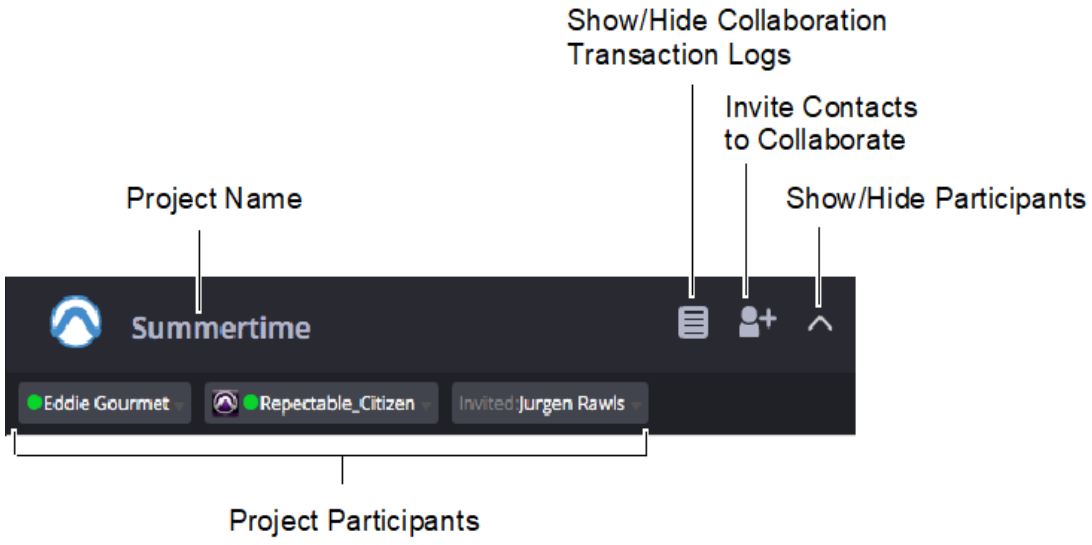
- Choose **Window > Collaboration > Pro Tools Projects**.
- Press Command+Shift+= (equals) (Mac) or Control+Shift+= (equals) (Windows).
- Click the Show Pro Tools Projects window button in the Edit window toolbar or Transport window collaboration controls.

The Pro Tools Projects window appears as in the following illustration.



Project Controls

The Pro Tools Projects window provides controls for managing who can participate in the project, messaging between project participants, and whether or not to show the project collaboration transaction logs.



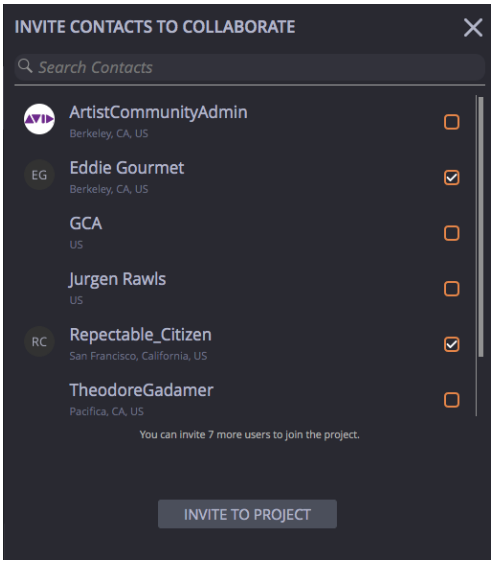
Invite Contacts to Collaborate

(Project Owner Only) You can invite any of your contacts to collaborate on the open project.

To invite any of your contacts to collaborate on the selected project:

1. Open the project for which you want to invite collaborators.
2. Click the Invite contacts to Collaborate icon.
3. Search your contacts or select one or more contacts from the list.
4. Click the **`Invite to Project`** button.

The selected contacts are notified that you invited them to collaborate on your project. They can choose to accept or reject your invitation.



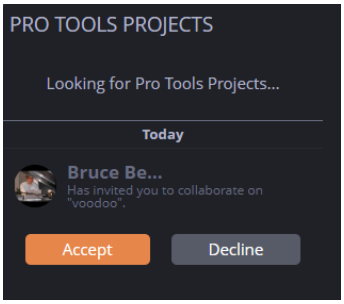
Inviting selected contacts to collaborate on the project

Responding to Collaboration Invitations

If you are invited to collaborate on a project, you are notified both in the Pro Tools Projects window and in the Project page of the Dashboard.

To accept or decline an invitation to collaborate on a project:

1. In the Pro Tools Projects window, you will see an invitation to collaborate on a specific project from the project creator.



2. Click **`Accept`** or **`Decline`**.

Show or Hide Project Participants

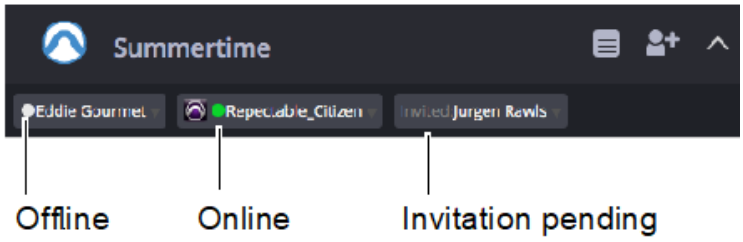
You can show or hide the participants for the selected project. Each participant is listed by name with indicators for the status of their participation.

To show or hide project participants:

- Click the Show/Hide Participants icon.

Participant Status Indicators

The status of each participant is indicated graphically to let you know if they have been invited but have not yet accepted the invitation, and whether or not they are online or offline if they have accepted.



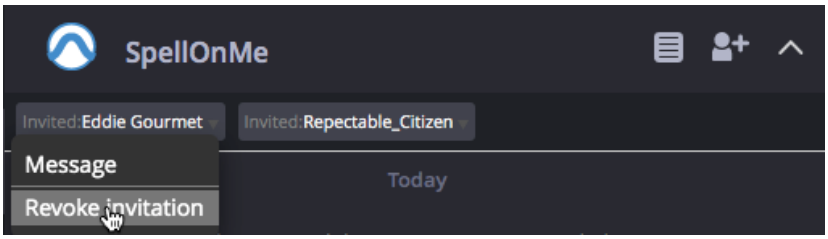
Revoke an Invitation to Collaborate

(Project Owner Only)

If you are the owner of the project, you can revoke the invitation to collaborate on the project for anyone that has not yet accepted your invitation.

To revoke an invitation to collaborate:

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show project participants. Any participant that has not yet accepted the invitation shows "Invited" to the left of their name.
2. Click on their name and choose **`Revoke Invitation`**.



Revoking an invitation to participate on a project

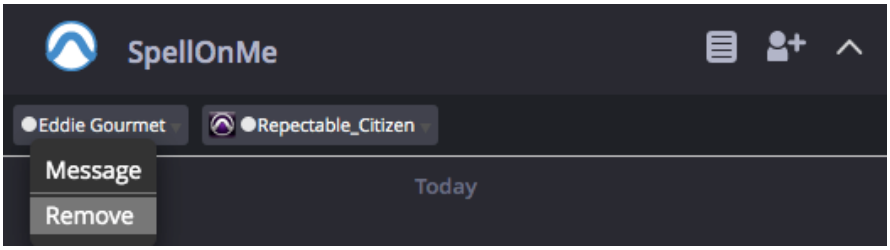
Removing Participants from the Project

(Project Owner Only) If you are the project owner, you can remove participants from the project. When a participant is removed from a project, that project is no longer available to them and will not appear in their list of projects in the Dashboard or in the Pro Tools Projects window.

To remove a participant from a project:

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show project participants.
2. Click on the name of the participant you want to remove and choose **`Remove`**.

The Remove command is not available if the participant currently has the project open.



Removing a participant from the project

That participant is removed from the project and the project is no longer available to them.

Leave a Pro Tools Project

If you are participating in a project for which you are not the owner, you can leave it at any time. When you leave a project, the other participants are notified and you are removed from the list of project participants. You now no longer have access to that project, and it is removed from the Projects lists in the Pro Tools Projects window and in the Projects page of the Dashboard.

To leave a project:

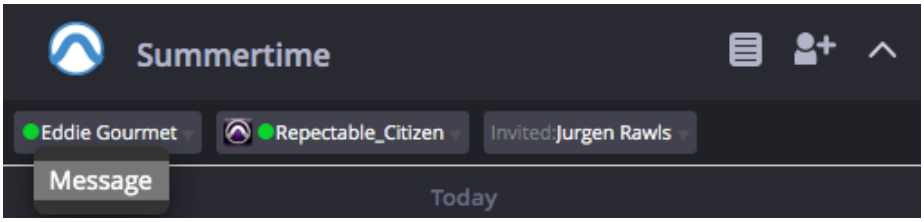
- Right-click on the project icon in the Pro Tools Projects list and choose **Leave**.

Adding Project Participants to Your Contacts

If you are participating in a project for which you are not the owner, you can add other participants to your contacts with whom you have not yet connected.

To add another project participant to your contacts:

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show project participants.
2. Click on the name of the participant you want to add to your contacts and choose **Add to Contacts**.



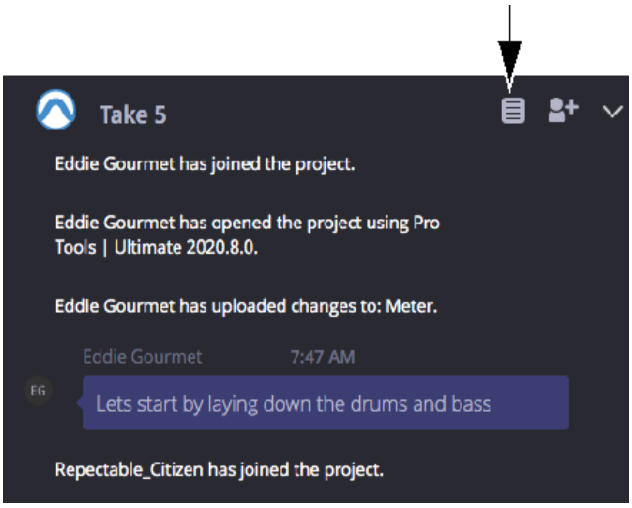
A contact request is sent to that participant.

Collaboration Transaction Logs

The collaboration transaction logs show all actions taken by the owner and all contributors on the project. When any participant uploads any changes to the project (such as sharing a new track or uploading changes), these changes are added to the collaboration transaction logs for the project. This useful for keeping a record and tracking all changes to the project. However, if you find that they clutter the project chat, you can hide them.

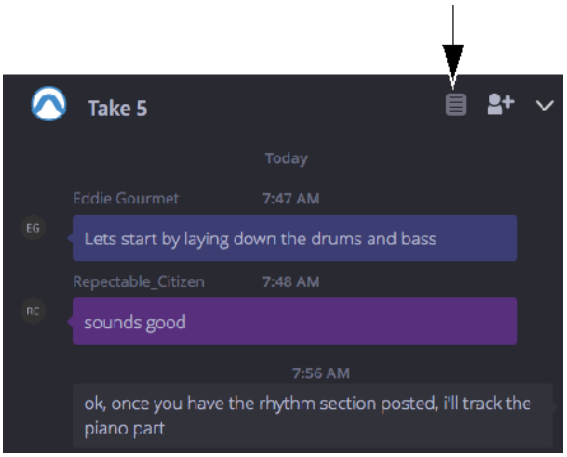
To show the collaboration transaction logs for the project:

- Click the Show/Hide Collaboration Transaction Logs icon so that it is lit.



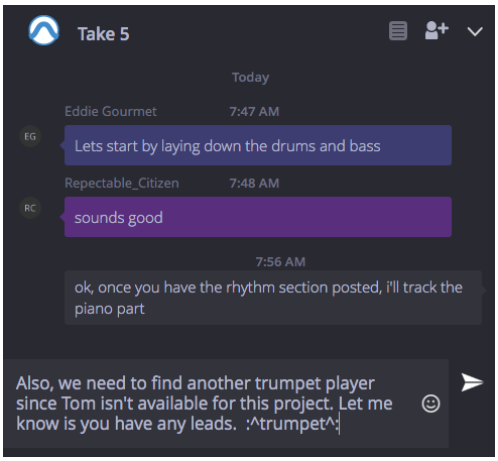
To hide the collaboration transaction logs for the project:

- Click the Show/Hide Collaboration Transaction Logs icon so that it turns gray.



Project Chat

Type in the **`Write Message`** field to communicate with all participants in the selected project. Any participant can communicate using the project chat. You can also chat with individual participants or select group of participants.



To communicate using project chat:

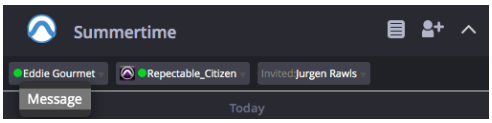
1. Click in the Write Message field and type your message.
2. To add emoticons or notation, click the Show Emoticons icon.
3. To send your message, press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows), or click the Send icon.

Private Messages Between Project Participants

Any participant can privately message one or more of any other participant in the project

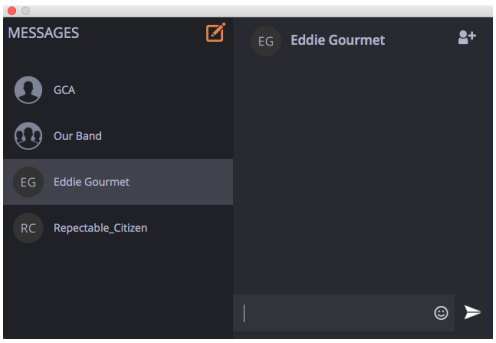
To privately message one or more participants in the project:

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show project participants.
2. Click on the name of the participant you want to message and choose **Message**.



Message a particular project participant

3. The Pro Tools Projects window updates to show Messages with the individual participant selected for private messaging.



Private Messaging with selected participant

4. If you want to include any of your other contacts, do the following:
   - Click the Add Contact Message icon.
   - Select anyone else you want to include from the Contacts list.
   - Click the **Add to Chat** button.
5. Type a message in the **Write Message** field.
6. To send your message, press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows), or click the Send icon.
7. To return to the project chat, choose **Avid Link > Pro Tools Projects**.

Project List

All projects that you are participating in, either as an owner or as a collaborator, are listed on the left of the Pro Tools Projects window. You can select any project from the list to participate in the project chat whether that project is open or not.

The number of any new changes to the project you have not yet downloaded as well as any new project chat messages you have not yet read are shown to the right of each Project icon.

Opening a Project from the List

You can open any project listed in the Projects List.

To open a project:

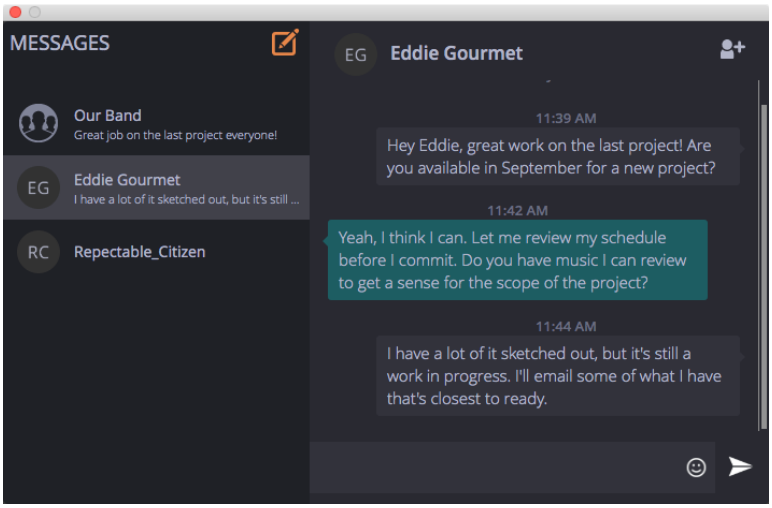
- Double-click the Project icon in the Project List.

Messages

The Messages window keeps track of your individual and group chats that are independent of project chats. In the left column of the Messages window shows the names of each individual and group chat. When you are not viewing a specific chat thread, a number shows up to the right of the chat thread name if you have received any messages while you were not viewing it. As soon as you select that chat thread in the list, the number disappears since you can review all unread messages in that chat thread.

To view Messages:

- Choose **`Window > Collaboration > Messages`**.

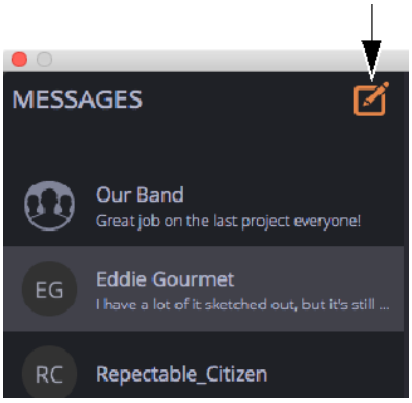


Start a New Chat Thread

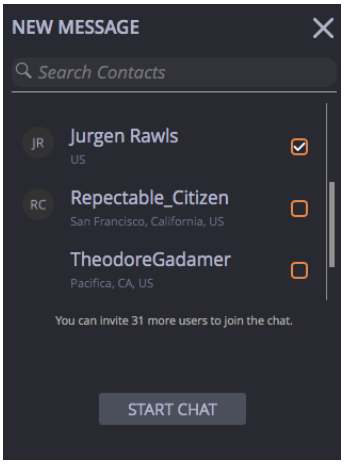
You can start a new chat with any of your contacts.

To start a new chat thread:

1. In the Messages window, click the Create New Messages icon.



2. In the resulting list of your contacts, select who you want to chat with. Select multiple contacts to start a new group chat thread.



3. Click the Start Chat button.
4. In the **`Write Message`** field, type your message and then press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows), or click the Send icon.

Individual Chat

To chat with an individual contact:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Start a new chat with one of your contacts.
   - Continue an existing chat by clicking the name of the Contact in the Messages list.
2. In the **`Write Message`** field, type your message and then press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows), or click the Send icon.

Group Chat

You can create a new chat with multiple contacts or add contacts to an existing chat to create a group chat.

Group chats provide several additional options that are not available with individual chats:

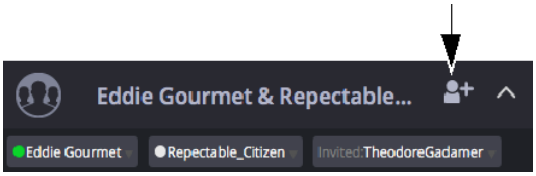
- Rename a group chat
- Show participants in the group chat
- Privately message individual participants in the group chat
- Add or remove participants to or from the group chat
- View the status of participants in the group chat
- If a participant is not already in your contacts, you can add them

To start a group chat:

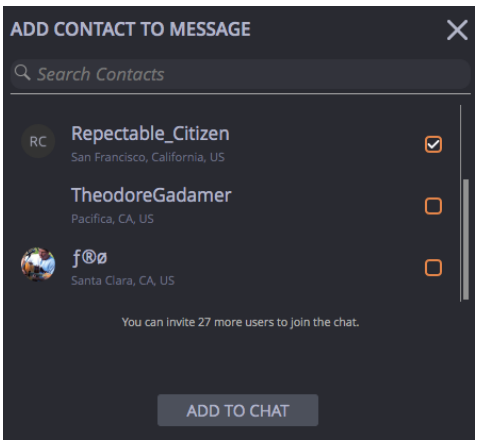
- Do one of the following:
  - Create a new chat with multiple contacts.
  - Add one or more contacts to an existing chat.

To add one or more contacts to an existing chat:

1. In the Messages list, select the chat you want to add to.
2. Click the Add Contact to Message button.



3. Select any contacts you want to add to the chat.



4. Click the **`Add to Chat`** button.

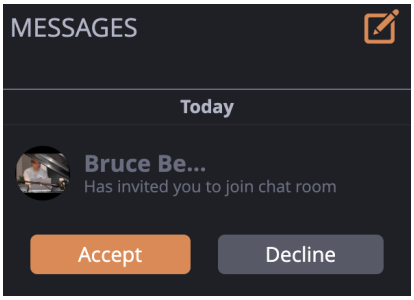
Any added contacts are sent an invitation to join the group chat thread.

Responding to Group Chat Invitations

If you are invited to a group chat thread, you are notified in the Artist Chat Messages window.

To accept or decline an invitation to collaborate on a project:

1. In the Artist Chat Messages window, you will see an invitation to join a group chat thread from one of its participants.



2. Click **`Accept`** or **`Decline`**.

Show or Hide Project Participants

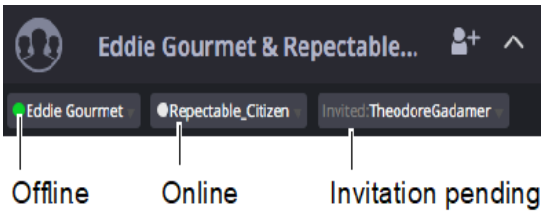
You can show or hide the participants for the selected group chat thread. Each participant is listed by name with indicators for the status of their participation.

To show or hide project participants:

- Click the Show/Hide Participants icon.

Participant Status Indicators

The status of each participant is indicated graphically to let you know if they have been invited but have not yet accepted the invitation, and whether or not they are online or offline if they have accepted.

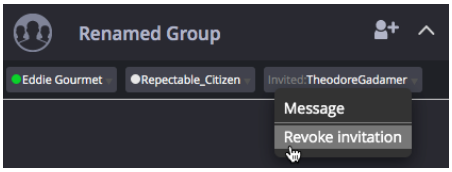


Revoke an Invitation to Join a Group Chat

Anyone who has already join a group chat can revoke the invitation to join for anyone else that has not yet accepted the invitation.

To revoke an invitation to join a group chat:

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show group chat participants. Any participant that has not yet accepted the invitation shows "Invited" to the left of their name.
2. Click on their name and choose **Revoke Invitation**.

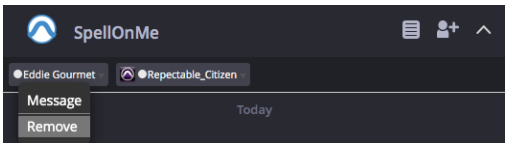


Removing Participants from a Group Chat

If you are started the group chat, you can remove participants from it. When a participant is removed from a project, that project is no longer available to them and will not appear in their list of projects in the Dashboard or in the Artist Chat window.

To remove a participant from a group chat:

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show the group chat participants.
2. Click on the name of the participant you want to remove and choose **Remove**.



That participant is removed from the group chat and it is no longer available to them.

Leave a Group Chat

If you are participating in a group chat that you did not initiate, you can leave it at any time. When you leave a group chat, the other participants are notified and you are removed from their list of group chat participants. You now no longer have access to that group chat, and it is removed from the Messages list in the Artist Chat window.

To leave a group chat:

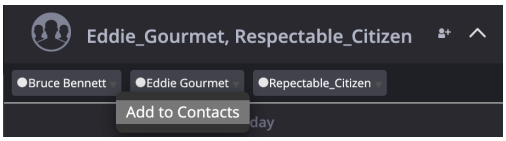
- Right-click on the group chat icon in the Messages list and choose **Leave**.

Add a Group Chat Participant to Your Contacts

If you are participating in a group chat that you did not star, you can add other participants to your contacts with whom you have not yet connected.

To add another group chat participant to your contacts:

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show the group chat participants.
2. Click on the name of the participant you want to add to your contacts and choose **Add to Contacts**.



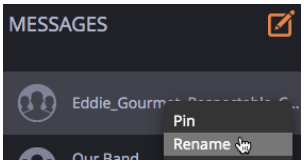
A contact request is sent to that participant.

Renaming a Group Chat Thread

When a group chat is started, it initially uses the names of the members of the chat as the name for the chat. You can add a specific name to the group chat to help identify it in the Messages list.

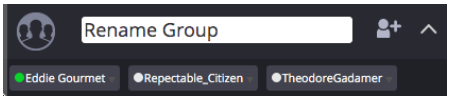
To rename a group chat:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Double click the title of the group chat at the top of the chat pane.
   - Right-click the group chat in the Messages list and choose **Rename**.



Group chat right-click menu

2. Type the a name for the group chat and press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows).



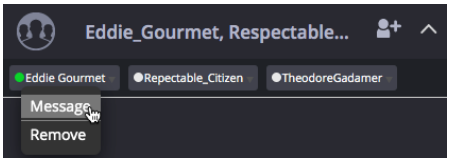
Group Chat Participants

Use the Participant menu to privately message any participant of a group chat. If you initiated the group chat, you can remove participants from it. Also, if a participant is not one of you contacts, you can add them to your contacts.

Message a Group Chat Participant

To privately message a participant in the group:

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show the group chat participants.
2. Click on the name of the participant you want to chat with privately and choose **Message**.



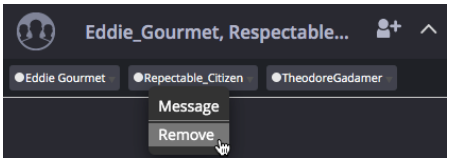
3. Send that person a private message.

Remove a Participant from a Group Chat

If you initiated a group chat, you can remove any other participant in that group chat.

To remove a participant from a group chat (only if you started the chat):

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show the group chat participants.
2. Click on the name of the participant you want to remove and choose **Remove**.



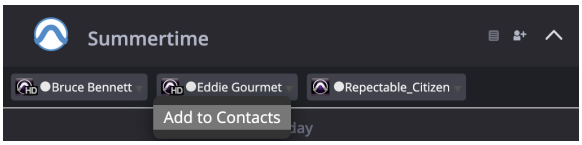
That person is removed from the group chat.

Add a Participant to your contacts

If there is a participant in a group chat with you who is not already in your contacts, you can add them.

To add participant in a group to your contacts:

1. Click the Show/Hide Participants icon to show the group chat participants.
2. Click on the name of the participant you want to add to your contacts and choose **Add to Contacts**.



A contact request is sent to that participant.

Pinning or Unpinning Items in the Pro Tools Projects and Messages Lists

After you have been working with projects, adding contacts, and collaborating for awhile, you can imagine that the Pro Tools Projects and Messages lists might get rather long. Pro Tools lets you "pin" items in either list to the top of the list, or if you don't need to keep an item at the top of the list any longer, you can "unpin" it. Note that pinning a project or a chat also pins it for all participants in that project or chat (the same is true for unpinning). This can be useful for keeping the highest priority projects and chats at the top of the list for all participants.

To pin a project or chat thread:

1. Right-click the project or chat you want to pin to the top of the list.
2. Choose **Pin**.
3. The project or chat moves to the top of the list.

This item will also be pinned to the top of the list for all participants the next time they go online

To unpin a project or chat thread:

1. Right-click the project or chat you want to unpin from the top of the list.
2. Choose **Unpin**.
3. The project or chat moves back to its original location on the list.

This item will also be unpinned to for all participants the next time they go online.

23 Track Collaboration

Sharing Projects and Collaborating

Pro Tools lets you upload your projects to the cloud and collaborate on the same project with other users on a track-by-track basis. Obviously, you do not have to share a project and you can just use your cloud storage to keep your project and all associated media backed up online, but the real fun of working with online projects is being able to collaborate with others. Once you have created a project using the Dashboard, and you have created your Artist Profile in Avid Link, you can find and invite other Pro Tools users to collaborate on the project. Likewise, other users can share their projects with you and enlist your collaboration.

When you first get started with shared projects and collaboration, you may want to use an existing session rather than create a new project from scratch. In this case, open the session you want to work with and use the **Save Copy In** command to save it and its associated media (for more information, see "Saving a Session as a Project" on page 243).

For in depth information about creating, opening, and saving projects, among other tasks, see "Pro Tools Projects" on page 222.

For information about using the Pro Tools Projects window to invite and communicate with collaborators, see "Collaboration with Pro Tools Projects" on page 550.

What is Shared?

Most project data, media, track data, and conductor rulers is shared when you choose to share a project. Some items are continuously shared, that is they can be constantly edited and posted or downloaded. Other aspects of a project are only shared the first time you upload or download a project, such as the sample rate, bit depth, and audio file format for the project. Other project data is never shared.

Continually Shared Items

The following items are continually shared with all participants in the project:

Tracks and Rulers

Tracks

- Audio, MIDI, Instrument, and Master Fader tracks
- Main Playlists
- Alternate Playlists
- Clips Associated with Playlists
- Clip Gain
- Clip Color
- Elastic Audio Properties for Clips
- Melodyne track status
- Media Associated with Clips
- Track Color
- Volume Automation Settings

- Pan Automation Settings
- Mute Automation Settings
- Plugin Assignments
- Plugin Settings and Automation
- Sidechain Assignments
- HW Insert Assignments
- Track Metadata
- Track I/O assignments

Routing Folder tracks can be shared, but they are converted to Auxiliary Input tracks and all member tracks are moved to the top level.

Rulers

- Markers (Specific Markers)
- Tempo ruler
- Meter
- Key
- Chords

Automation Mode Selector

The track automation mode selector is continuously shared, but not every change prompts an update.

While “Read” and “None” are continually shared, “Write” modes are not (as this could cause problems for other project participants).

I/O Setup

New projects are received with the bus settings from the project owner. All existing buses on collaborator systems are cleared for the new project.

Any received bus follows the standard I/O Setup mapping logic. Output mapped buses look for a unique ID, followed by the assigned monitor path (if any), followed by the name and channel format of tracks. If none are found, the bus does not map to the collaborator’s system and they are notified through the project notes when they first receive an open the project. If this occurs, they may have to remap those buses manually.

Items Shared Only when a Project is First Downloaded

Project Level

- Sample Rate
- Bit Depth
- File Format
- Interleaved Audio Files option (enabled or disabled)
- Project Start Time
- Project Length
- Timecode Rate
- Feet+Frames Rate
- Timecode 2 Rate

- If the Conductor is enabled or not (whether or not to follow the project Tempo track)
- Pan depth
- Track level (initial fader settings, not volume automation)
- Track Voice assignments

Sending and Receiving Tracks and Updates

A track must be shared to send or receive updates with other project participants. If a track is not shared, it is usable only on the local system. This can be desirable if you want to keep certain tracks from being changed by other participants in the project, or if you want to share only mixdowns of the full mix rather than the entire mix (this can actually save time and online storage space). A track must be shared by at least one user to show up as "available for download" in the Track List.

What is Not Shared?

The following are not shared in a project:

- Mix and Edit groups
- Clip groups
- Basic Folder tracks
- VCA tracks
- HEAT settings
- Video
- Sketches

Project Ownership

The owner of the project is the one who creates the project and invites others to collaborate on the project. All media posted to the shared project counts only against the project owner's storage allocation. Be sure to communicate using the Pro Tools Projects window to make sure all participants manage the amount of media they post to the project so as to not overburden the project owner. Only the project owner can invite participants to collaborate on the project and delete participants from the project. When the project owner deletes the project, it is deleted for all participants. When a participant who is not the project owner deletes the project, it is the same as if they simply leave the project and all other participants will be able to continue collaborating on the project.

Start Collaboration

Use the **`Start Collaboration`** command to quickly invite collaborators to join an existing session or project, or to create a new collaborative online project.

To start a collaboration:

1. Choose **`File > Start Collaboration`**.
2. If you are not already signed in to your Avid Account, you are prompted to do so.
3. Do one of the following:
    - If a project is already open, skip this step.
    - If a session is already open, the session is saved, closed, duplicated as a project, and that project is opened automatically.

- If no session or project is already open, the Dashboard opens where you can create a new project or open an existing project.

4. The Pro Tools Projects window opens automatically where you can immediately invite collaborators from your contacts to join the project.

Contacts and Collaborators

Use Find Talent to find potential collaborator to add to your contacts. You can invite anyone in your contacts to collaborate on your projects. Create and maintain your Avid Profile so that other members of the Avid Creative Community can find you and invite you collaborate on their projects.

For information about using the Pro Tools Projects window for collaboration, see "Collaboration with Pro Tools Projects" on page 550.

Track Collaboration Tools in the Edit Window

The Edit Window toolbar is host to the global Track Collaboration tools.

To show (or hide) the Track Collaboration tools in the Edit window toolbar, do one of the following:

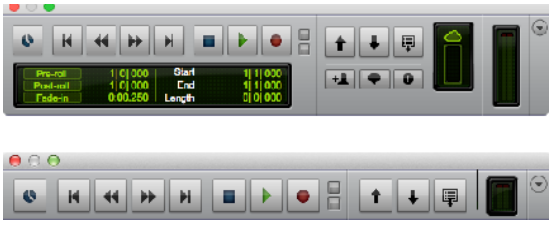
- Select (or deselect) **`View > Track Collaboration`**.
- From the Edit Window menu, select (or deselect) **`Track Collaboration`**.

Track Collaboration Tools in the Transport Window

Just like the Edit window, the Transport window can also be host to the Global Track Collaboration tools. These controls and their settings mirror each other in both the Edit Window toolbar and in the Transport window.

To show (or hide) the Track Collaboration tools in the Transport window, do one of the following:

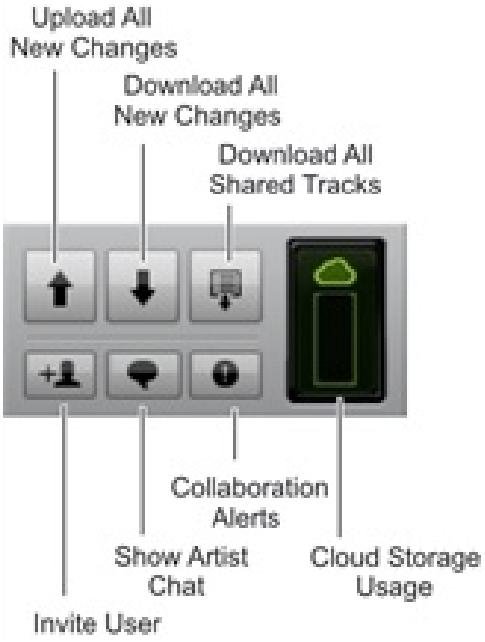
- Select (or deselect) **`View > Transport > Track Collaboration`**.
- From the Transport Window menu, select (or deselect) **`Track Collaboration`**.



Track Collaboration view in the Transport window (in Expanded view on top and non-Expanded view on the bottom)

Global Track Collaboration Tools

The Global Track Collaboration tools provide a high level means of posting and receiving all shared track data. For track-by-track collaboration controls, see "Track Collaboration Controls" on page 574.



Track Collaboration tools in the Edit window toolbar

If a project is offline, all collaborations tools are grayed out. Collaboration is only possible with online projects.

Invite User

Click the Invite User button to open the Pro Tools Projects window where you can invite one or more of your contacts to participate on the project (see "Invite Contacts to Collaborate" on page 554).

Show Chat

Click the Show Chat button to open the Pro Tools Projects window. The Show Chat button turns green when you receive a message from another participant in the Project Chat for the open project.

See "Collaboration with Pro Tools Projects" on page 550.

Track Ownership Request

The Track Ownership Request indicator turns orange when you have ownership of a track and another participant wants to take ownership of the track.



Track Ownership Requested

Upload All New Changes

As soon as you have made any change on any track whose own Upload Track Changes control turns green, the Upload All New Changes button also turns green. If you are busy working on the project you probably won't want to upload each change individually, but rather wait until you feel ready to post all of your changes at once.

To post all the new changes you have made on tracks in the project since the last complete upload:

- Click the lit Upload All New Changes button

If you have made changes to tracks and decide that you do not want to share your changes, you can **`Abandon Changes`**. The Upload All New Changes light goes out and your project reverts to the way it was right before you started making changes.

To abandon all changes since the last upload:

- Right-click the Upload All New Changes button and choose **`Abandon Changes`**.



Global Abandon Changes

Download All New Changes

As soon as another collaborator has made any change on any track whose Upload Track Changes control turns green, your Download All New Changes button turns green as well. Since you probably won't want to download each change individually, you can wait until you are ready to download all changes from the cloud.

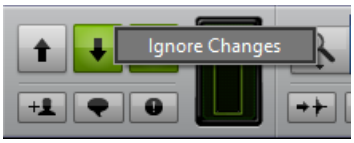
To receive all the new changes other collaborators on the project have made on tracks in the project since your last complete download:

- Click the lit Download All New Changes button.

If other participants have made changes to tracks and you decide that you do not want to receive these changes, you can choose **`Ignore Changes`**. The Upload All New Changes light goes out and no changes are downloaded.

To ignore all changes other collaborators on the project have made in the project since your last complete download:

- Right-click the Download All New Changes button and choose **`Ignore Changes`**.



Global Ignore Changes

Download All Shared Tracks

Typically, the Download All Shared Tracks button turns green the first time you join a project with tracks. As with all collaboration transaction activity, you can monitor the progress of the download in the Task Manger window (**`Window > Task Manager`**). The Download All Tracks button turns green again when any participant creates new tracks and shares them. Tracks that are unshared, and then re-shared do not trigger the lighting of the Download All Tracks button.

To download all available tracks in a project:

- If it is lit, click the Download All Tracks button to download all available tracks in the project.



Download All Tracks button lights when any new tracks are available

Cloud Storage Usage Meter

The Cloud Storage Usage Meter shows how much cloud storage is being used on the project owner's account. If you hover the mouse cursor over the meter, a tooltip appears that shows how much of the owner's storage space is being used by the project. Note that the Details Tool Tip option must be enabled in the Pro Tools Display Preferences for this to occur.

What the Project Owner Sees

The project owner sees the meter level rise or lower as more media is posted to or deleted from their Cloud Account. The tool tip informs you of how much storage is being used (both as a percentage and as a hard number) on your Cloud Account and how much total storage you have allocated to your account.



Cloud Storage Meter and tool tip for the project owner

What a Project Collaborator Sees

A collaborator sees a meter level and how full the project owner's cloud storage is.



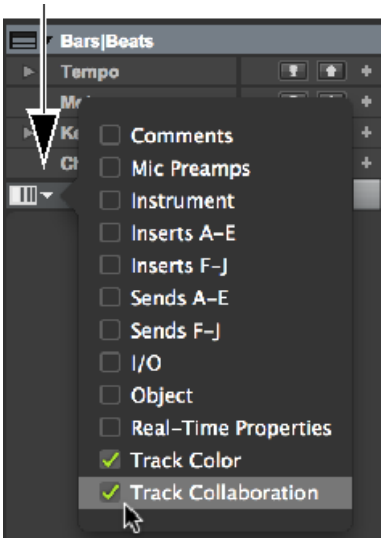
Cloud Storage Meter and tool tip for a collaborator

Track Collaboration Track View in the Edit and Mix Windows

Track Collaboration controls can be shown or hidden independently in both the Edit window and Mix windows. In the Edit window, these controls show up in the left-most column of all Track and Ruler views. In the Mix window, these controls appear between the Sends and the I/O selectors. These controls mirror each other for any given track regardless of whether they are changed in the Edit window or the Mix window.

To show (or hide) the Track Collaboration controls in the Edit window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **`View > Edit Window Views > Track Collaboration`**.
- From the Edit Window View selector, enable (or disable) **`Track Collaboration`**.



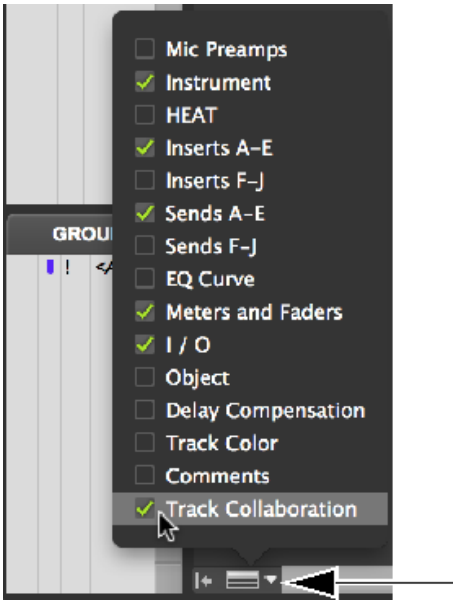
Selecting Track Collaboration view for tracks in the Edit window



Track Collaboration Track view, Edit window

To show (or hide) the Track Collaboration controls in the Mix window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **`View > Mix Window Views > Track Collaboration`**.
- From the Mix Window View selector, enable (or disable) **`Track Collaboration`**.



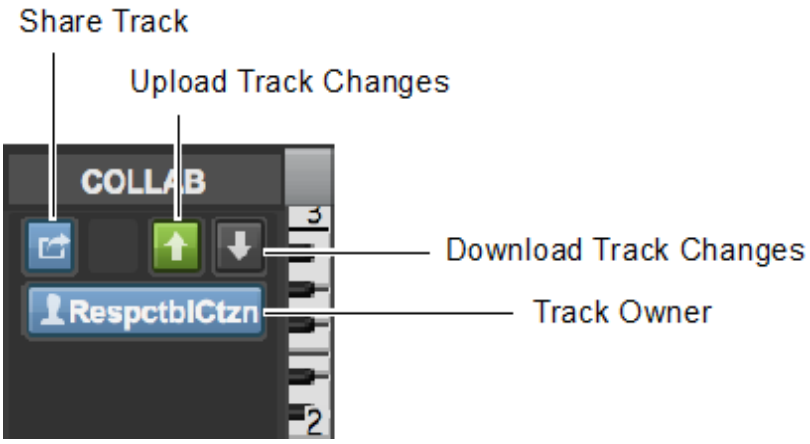
Selecting Track Collaboration Track view, Mix window



Track Collaboration Track view, Mix window

Track Collaboration Controls

The Track Collaboration controls in the Edit and Mix windows mirror each other on a track-by-track basis. Use these controls to share a track, take or release ownership of a track, upload changes on a track, or download changes to a track.



Track Collaboration Track view, Edit window

Share Track

Enable the Share Track control to share a track with other participants in the project. When a track is shared, the Share Track icon is blue. When a track is not shared, it is gray. Anyone can share or unshare any track in the project that has been posted to the cloud and that they have downloaded from the cloud. Any participant can create new tracks and keep them private in their own local copy of the project by not sharing them at all.

To share a track:

1. Create a new track (or use an existing one).
2. Show Track Collaboration view to access the Track Collaboration controls (see "Track Collaboration Track View in the Edit and Mix Windows" on page 572).
3. Click the Share Track control.



Sharing a track

The Share Track control turns blue when the track is successfully shared.



Shared track

Share Track Indicators

There are three different states that the track can be in with sharing. The clearest is when a track is either shared or not shared. Anyone can click any Share Track control to share it or unshare it just as long as they already have that track in their local copy of the project.



Track not shared Track shared

Track, Not Shared

When it is not shared, it is gray. When a track is not shared, none of the other Track Collaboration controls are available. You can keep unshared tracks in your project as if they are “private” tracks. In many cases you won’t need to share all the tracks in your project. Consider duplicating tracks to keep them as a reference against other collaborators changes. Or, consider sharing only mixed down tracks as a reference for your collaborators rather than sharing the entire mix.

Shared Track

When a track is shared, the Share Track control is blue. When a track is shared, anyone can take ownership of the track and make changes to it.

Upload Track Changes

When any participant makes a “share-able” change to a shared track, they take ownership of that track, even if only temporarily, and the Upload Track Changes control on that track turns green. When that person clicks the Upload Track Changes control, it uploads the track changes to the cloud copy of the project. Other participants will notice that the Download Track Changes control for that track turns green in their local copy of the project and they can choose to download those changes or not.

To upload track changes:

1. Make changes on a shared track.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Upload Track Changes control.
   - Right-click the Upload Track Changes control and choose **`Upload`**.

Command-click (Mac) or Control-Click (Windows) an Upload Track Changes control to force upload the track.

Upload Track Changes Right-Click Menu



The Upload Track Changes control provides a few additional options in its right-click menu as follows:

Force Upload

The **Force Upload** command is only available when the Upload Track Changes control is not lit. Choose **Force Upload** to force upload the entire track, replacing the cloud version.

Upload

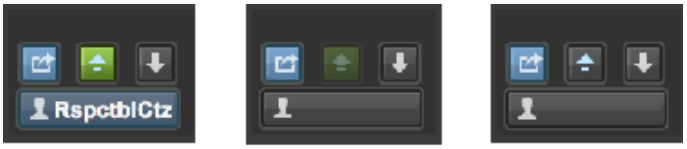
The **Upload** command works just like clicking a green Upload Track Changes control and posts all of the changes on that track to the cloud copy of the project.

Abandon Changes

Choosing the **Abandon Changes** command clears the upload and resets all of the changes to how the track was prior to you working on the track.

Shared as Frozen

The **Shared as Frozen** option is especially useful if you know that your collaborators do not have a particular plugin that you are using, but you want them to be able to hear what you are doing on that track. The Upload Track Changes control icon shows a slightly different graphic to indicate that the track has been shared as a frozen track.



Upload Track as Frozen | Uploading Track as Frozen | Track Shared as Frozen

A shared frozen track will be frozen on all systems that download that track.

Download Track Changes

When any participant makes a “share-able” change to a shared track that you do not own and they upload it to the cloud copy of the project, your Download Track Changes control for that track turns green. When you click the Download Track Changes control, your local copy of the project begins to download the changes for that track.

To download track changes, do one of the following:

- Click the Download Track Changes control.
- Right-click the Download Track Changes control and choose **Accept Download**.

Consider making an unshared duplicate of a track before you download changes to it. This way you will always have your original for reference.

Download Track Changes Right-Click Menu



The Download Track Changes control provides a few additional options in its right-click menu as follows:

Force Download

The **`Force Download`** command is only available when the Download Track Changes control is not lit. Choose **`Force Download`** to force download of the entire track from the cloud, replacing the entire local track.

Accept Download

The **`Accept Download`** command works just like clicking a green Download Track Changes control and downloads all changes to the track from the cloud copy of the project.

Ignore Changes

Choosing the **`Ignore Changes`** command rejects any changes to that track in the cloud copy of the project and maintains your current version of the track.

Track Ownership

The Track Ownership control lets you take ownership of a shared track, release ownership of a shared track, request ownership of a shared track, and show you if another participant currently owns the track.

It is important to understand that the ownership of shared tracks is not restrictive. Multiple participants can edit unowned tracks simultaneously, and this can result in edit conflicts between the cloud copy of the project and collaborators' local copies (see "Conflicts Between Track Changes and the Cloud" on page 580).

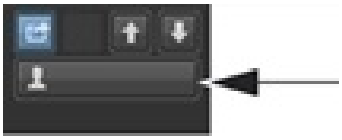
Generally speaking, no collaborator should take ownership of any track for any longer than they need to work on that track and upload their changes. This helps to avoid conflicting changes between collaborators.

When any Upload Track Changes control or Download Track Changes controls light yellow, it indicates that there are edit conflicts between various participants' local copies of the project and the cloud copy of the project. You can upload your changes and overwrite the cloud copy for a track simply by clicking the Upload Track Changes control, even if it is yellow. Otherwise, you can click the Download Track Changes button, even if it is yellow, and overwrite your local track with the version from the cloud.

Taking Ownership of an Unowned Track

Unowned Shared Track

When no one owns a shared track, the Track Ownership control is gray and anyone is free to work on it.



Shared track, unowned

You can take ownership of an unowned track either by making changes on the track (in this case you automatically become the owner of the track) or you can click on the Track Ownership control to manually take ownership of the track. The Display Name for whoever takes ownership of a track is shown in the Track Ownership control for all participants to see. It turns green when you own it, and it turns orange when another participant owns it.

Automatic Ownership

You automatically take ownership of an unowned track by making a “share-able” change on it. The Track Ownership control turns dim green (it turns orange for every one else) and shows your Display Name and the Upload Track Changes control turns green. You automatically release ownership of the once your changes are uploaded. Any other collaborator can download your changes and even take ownership of it if they want.



Manual Ownership

You manually take ownership of an unowned track (or one that you took ownership of automatically) simply by clicking the Track Ownership control. It shows your Display Name and turns solid green. Even if you make changes to the track and then upload those changes, you retain ownership of the track. Any other collaborator must request ownership and be granted ownership, or seize ownership to take ownership of a manually owned track.



Requesting Track Ownership

If another collaborator has manual ownership of a track, their Display Name appears in the Track Ownership control on the track and the control is colored orange. You can request ownership, and they can relinquish ownership to you or deny your request.

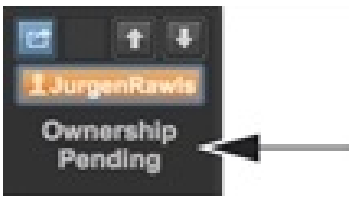


Track owned by another participant

To request track ownership, do one of the following:

- Click the Track Ownership control.
- Right-click the Track Ownership control and choose **Request**.

The Track Ownership control highlights and displays the notification, “Ownership Pending.”



Rescinding Your Request

If you change you mind, you can rescind your request.

To rescind your request for track ownership:

- Right-click the Track Ownership control and choose **Rescind My Request**.

  The Track Ownership control reverts to the owner's name and remains colored orange.

Seizing Ownership

If you really need to work on a track owned by someone else and they aren't responding to your request for ownership, you can seize ownership.

To seize track ownership:

- Right-click the Track Ownership control and choose **Seize**.

  You now own the track, and the Track Ownership control displays your name and turns solid green (or orange for every one else).

Relinquishing Track Ownership

If you own a track, you can relinquish ownership whether or not another collaborator requested ownership from you. If you relinquish a track that no one else is requesting, it becomes an unowned track.

To relinquish ownership of a track, do one of the following:

- If you took ownership of the track automatically, click the Track Ownership control.
- If you took ownership of the track either manually or automatically, Right-click the Track Ownership control and choose **Relinquish**.
- If you took ownership of the track automatically, choose **Keep** to keep your changes without posting and change the track to manual ownership.

The Track Ownership control turns gray and is now unowned.

Responding to a Track Ownership Request

If another collaborator requests ownership of a track from you, you are notified both on the track requested and by the Track Ownership Request indicator in the Edit window toolbar. The collaborator who is requesting ownership can rescind the request, seize ownership, or be denied the transfer of ownership. You can relinquish ownership (or not) at any time.

Track Ownership Requested

The Track Ownership control on the track for which ownership is being requested also highlights and displays the text "Ownership Requested."



Ownership Request for a track

Track Ownership Request Indicator

The Track Ownership Request indicator turns orange when you have ownership of a track and another participant wants to take ownership of the track.



Track Ownership Requested indicator in the Edit window toolbar

If you have many tracks in your project, it may not be immediately clear for which track ownership is being requested. The Track Ownership Request indicator lets you toggle between showing all tracks and only those tracks requested by another collaborator.

To show only tracks requested by another collaborator:

- Click the Track Ownership Request indicator to show only the requested track (or tracks) in the Edit window.

  The Track Ownership Request indicator turns blue and all tracks except those being requested are hidden.

  Showing only the requested track

- Click the Track Ownership Request indicator again to show all previously shown tracks in the project. The Track Ownership Request indicator again turns orange.

To relinquish ownership or reject a request, Right-click the Track Ownership control and choose one of the following options:

- Relinquish

  If you have no track changes that have not yet been uploaded, choose **`Relinquish`** to surrender track ownership to the collaborator making the request.

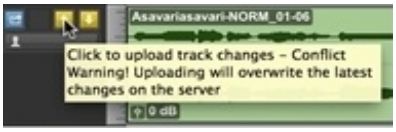
- Reject Collaborator Request

  If you do not want to surrender track ownership (and regardless of whether or not you have any track changes that have not yet been uploaded), choose **`Reject Collaborator Request`**.

Conflicts Between Track Changes and the Cloud

When any Upload Track Changes control or Download Track Changes control turn yellow, it indicates that there are conflicts between collaborators' changes and the cloud.

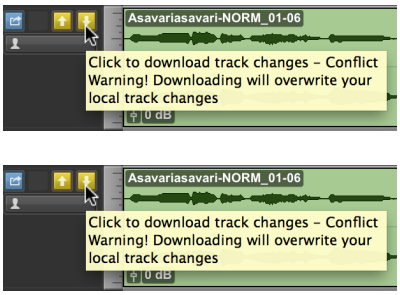
You can upload your changes and overwrite the cloud copy for a track simply by clicking the Upload Track Changes control, even if it is yellow. However, if you upload your changes, the cloud copy will be overwritten.



Track changes conflict with cloud copy

Likewise, you can click the Download Track Changes control, even if it is yellow, and overwrite your local track with the version from the cloud.

If you make changes to a track while another participant uploads their changes to the cloud copy, when you are notified that changes are available for download, the Download Track Changes control turns yellow indicating that your local track changes will be overwritten by changes on the cloud.



If you place the cursor over any yellow track Upload Track Changes or Track Download Changes control, a tool tip appears with a warning about whether the track will be overwritten by the cloud copy or the cloud copy will be overwritten by you track changes.

Making Changes to Tracks Owned by Another Collaborator

You can make changes to a track that you do not own, in which case the Upload Track Changes control is darkened. You should request and take ownership of the track before uploading your changes to avoid conflicts with other collaborator's work. You will not be able to upload your changes until ownership is relinquished.



Local track changes conflict with changes made by the track owner

Indication of Transfer of Conflicting Changes

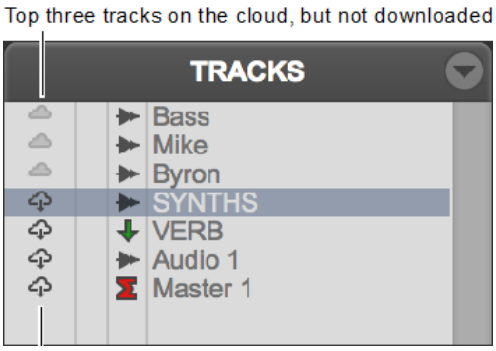
The Download Track Changes control turns red when a download for that track is currently in progress and the cloud copy is in conflict with the local track changes. Once the transfer is complete it changes to yellow. You can then choose to ignore those changes and keep your version of the track, or download those changes and overwrite your version of the track.



Download from cloud in progress that conflicts with local track changes

Track Cloud Synchronization Indicator in the Track List

Pro Tools displays a Cloud icon in the Track List for tracks in online projects that are shared but the track data is not downloaded to the local cache. The Cloud icon is gray for tracks that are in the cloud, but not mirrored in the local project cache. The icon changes to clear with a black boarder and an arrow pointing down while the track is being downloaded. The Cloud icon is cleared once the track is downloaded and synchronized between the cloud copy and the local cache.



Two states of the cloud icon

To download a track from the cloud, do one of the following:

- In the Track List, click the gray Cloud icon to the left of the track name to download and import all track data.
- In the Track List, right-click the gray Cloud icon to the left of the track name and select on of the following options:

Download

Downloads the track data without importing. Track data can be imported at a later time.

Ignore for Future Download

Does not download or import the track data.

Import

Downloads and imports the track data immediately.

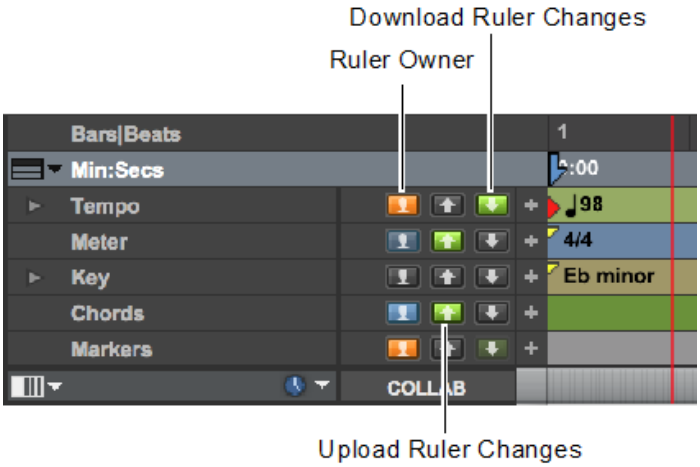


Track List Right-click menu for online, shared tracks

Conductor Ruler Collaboration Controls

Conductor rulers have Ruler Collaboration controls that work just like the Track Collaboration controls. Each conductor ruler has its own Ruler Collaboration controls—Tempo, Meter, Key, Chords, and Markers—and they are shown any time **`Track Collaboration`** is selected in the Edit Window View.

It is important to understand, that unlike tracks in a shared project (which can be shared or not), all Conductor rulers in a shared project are always shared.



Ruler Collaboration controls

Upload Conductor Ruler Changes

When any participant makes a “share-able” change to a Conductor ruler, the Upload Ruler Changes control turns green. They can then click the control to upload their changes to the cloud copy of the project.

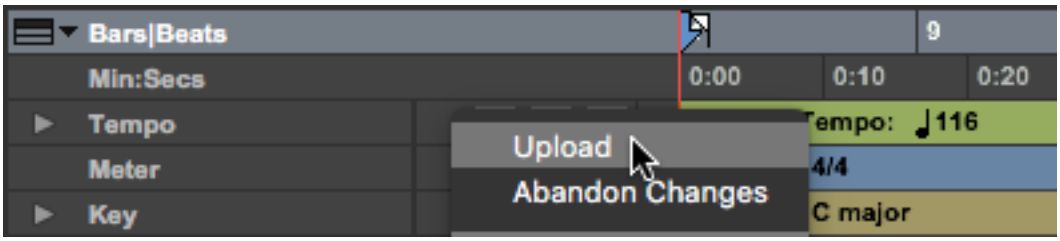
To upload Conductor ruler changes:

1. Make changes on a Conductor ruler (see "Track Ownership" on page 577).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Upload Ruler Changes control.
   - Right-click the Upload Ruler Changes control and choose **Upload**.

Command-click (Mac) or Control-Click (Windows) an Upload Ruler Changes control to force upload the track.

Upload Ruler Changes Right-Click Menu

The Upload Ruler Changes control provides a right-click menu that offers similar controls to the Upload Track Changes control right-click menu.



Force Upload

The **Force Upload** command d is only available when the Upload Ruler Changes control is not lit. Choose **Force Upload** to force upload the entire ruler as is, replacing the cloud version.

Upload

The **Upload** command works just like clicking a green Upload Ruler Changes control and posts all of your changes on the ruler to the cloud copy of the project.

Abandon Changes

Choosing the **Abandon Changes** command clears the upload and resets all of your changes to how the Conductor ruler was prior to you working on the it.

Download Conductor Ruler Changes

When another participant makes a "share-able" change to a Conductor ruler and they then upload their changes to the cloud copy of the project, the corresponding Download Ruler Changes control turns green for all other participants. They can click the Download Ruler Changes control to download the changes to the Conductor ruler from the cloud copy of the project to their local copy.

To download Conductor ruler changes, do one of the following:

- Click the Download Ruler Changes control.
- Right-click the Download Ruler Changes control and choose **Accept Download**.

Download Ruler Changes Right-Click Menu

The Download Ruler Changes control provides a right-click menu that offers similar controls to the Download Track Changes control right-click menu.



Force Download

The **Force Download** command is only available when the Download Ruler Changes control is not lit. Choose **Force Download** to force download of the entire ruler from the cloud, replacing the entire local ruler.

Accept Download

The **Accept Download** command works just like clicking the green Download Ruler Changes control and downloads all changes on that ruler from the cloud copy of the project.

Ignore Changes

Choosing the **Ignore Changes** command clears the download and keeps your Conductor ruler as is regardless of any changes in the cloud copy of the project.

Conductor Ruler Ownership

The Conductor Ruler Ownership control lets you take ownership of a Conductor ruler, release ownership of a Conductor ruler, request ownership of a Conductor ruler, and show you if another participant currently owns that Conductor ruler.

Ruler Ownership Right-Click Menu

The Conductor Ruler Ownership control right-click menu provides different commands depending on whether or not the ruler is unowned, owned by you, or owned by another, and whether or not changes are pending upload or download.



Request

Choose **Request** to request ownership of a Conductor ruler that is owned by another or to take ownership of an unowned Conductor ruler.

Keep

Choose **Keep** to keep ownership of a Conductor ruler that you have changed without posting your changes.

Relinquish

Choose **Relinquish** to surrender ownership of a Conductor ruler.

Reject Collaborator Request

Choose **Reject Collaborator Request** to deny the request for ownership of a Conductor ruler by another collaborator, keeping ownership for yourself.

Rescind My Request

Choose **Rescind My Request** to cancel your request for ownership of a Conductor ruler.

Seize

Choose **Seize** to seize ownership of a Conductor ruler from another collaborator.

Unowned Conductor Rulers

When no one owns a Conductor ruler, anyone is free to work on it and the Conductor Ruler Ownership control is gray.



You can take ownership of a Conductor ruler either by making “share-able” changes on that ruler (in this case you automatically own the ruler for the time being) or you can click the Ruler Ownership control and manually take ownership of the ruler. For whoever takes ownership of a ruler, the Conductor Ruler Ownership control turns either dim green or solid green. For all other participants, the Conductor Ruler Ownership control turns orange in their local copy of the project.

Automatic Ownership

When you automatically take ownership of a Conductor ruler by making a “share-able” change on an unowned ruler, the Upload Ruler Changes control turns dim green.



Manual Ownership

When you manually take ownership of a Conductor ruler by clicking its Conductor Ruler Ownership control, it turns solid green and no other participant can take ownership of that Conductor ruler simply by making a “share-able” change to their copy of that Conductor ruler.



Ownership Requested

If any other participant wants to take ownership of that Conductor ruler, they must request ownership either by making a “share-able” change to that Conductor ruler or by clicking the Conductor Ruler Ownership control for that ruler in their local copy of the project.



You can click the Conductor Ruler Ownership control to relinquish ownership of that ruler and the other participant will take ownership of that ruler.

Conductor Ruler Owned by Another Participant

When another participant owns a Conductor ruler, the Conductor Ruler Ownership control turns orange for everyone else.



Ownership Pending

If you want to take control of a Conductor ruler owned by another participant, you can make a “share-able” change on the Conductor ruler or click the Conductor Ruler Ownership control. The other participant is notified that the ownership of the Conductor ruler is being requested and you will see that the request is pending. If they relinquish ownership of that Conductor ruler, you will take ownership of it.



24 Pro Tools Sketches

Pro Tools Sketch is both a free application for iOS on iPad and a window within Pro Tools (all tiers). Pro Tools Sketch is essentially a clip launcher that lets you create and mix audio clips, MIDI clips, virtual instruments, and audio effects in a non-linear environment, and arrange them into Scenes and Arrangements. In Pro Tools, the Sketch window provides the same functionality as the Sketch app but with the additional ability to drag and drop audio and MIDI clips, Scenes, and Arrangements between the Sketch window and a Pro Tools session.



In Pro Tools, the Sketch window provides the same functionality as the Sketch app, but with the additional functionality of being able to drag and drop audio and MIDI clips (and Scenes and Arrangements) between the Sketch window and a Pro Tools session. You can share Sketches between the Pro Tools Sketch app and the Sketch window in Pro Tools (.ptsketch file format). In Pro Tools, a Sketch can be open with or without a session. You can also “pin” a Sketch to one or more sessions, which ensures that the Sketch opens with the session to which it is pinned.

The Sketch window in Pro Tools mirrors the functionality of the Pro Tools Sketch app. However, there are some unique controls and behaviors with the Sketch window in Pro Tools.

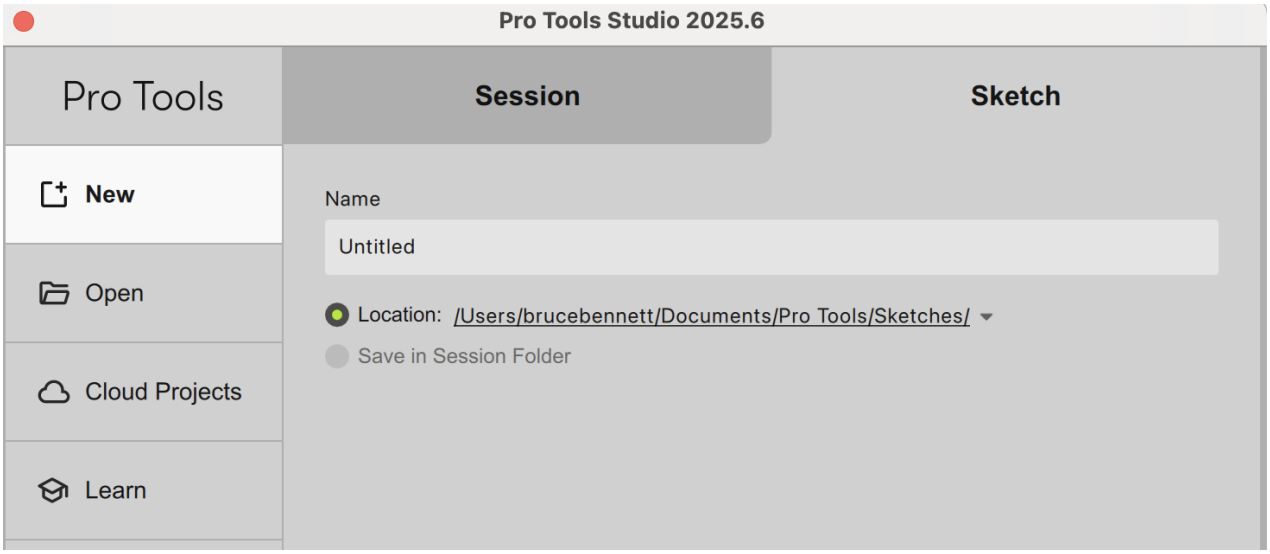
For more information about the Sketch app, see Using Pro Tools Sketch.pdf.

Creating a New Sketch in Pro Tools

Sketches can be created and opened in Pro Tools independently of sessions and projects.

To create a new Sketch in Pro Tools:

1. Launch Pro Tools.
2. Choose **File > New** (or **File > Dashboard**).
3. Click **Sketch**.



Dashboard, creating a new Sketch

4. Type the **Name** you want for your Sketch (optional).
5. Choose whether you want to be prompted for the location of the new sketch or specify the location.
6. If desired, select **Save in session folder** to create and embed a new Sketch document in an open session (saved in the Session Folder). This also pins the new Sketch to the open session
7. Click **Create**.

Sketches created in Pro Tools use the Playback Engine settings for bit depth and sample rate. When sharing Sketch files between Pro Tools and the iPad app, bit depth and sample rate conversion is managed in the background.

Opening and Viewing a Sketch in Pro Tools

You can open a Sketch in Pro Tools whether a session is open or not.

To open a Sketch in Pro Tools:

1. Launch Pro Tools.
2. Choose **File > Open > Sketch**.
3. Navigate to and select the Sketch you want to open.
4. Click **Open**.

To open a Sketch, press Command+Option+ Control+O (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+O (Windows).

To bring the Sketch window to the front when you have both a Sketch and a session open at the same time:

- Choose **Window > Sketch to Front**.

Press Command+Options+Control+= (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+= (Windows).

Saving a Sketch in Pro Tools

To save a Sketch in Pro Tools:

- With the Sketch window in the foreground and choose **File > Save Sketch**.

  Press Command+S (Mac) or Control+S (Windows).

To save a Sketch as a new Sketch in Pro Tools:

- With the Sketch window in the foreground, choose **File > Save Sketch As**.

  Press Command+Control+S (Mac) or Control+Start+S (Windows).

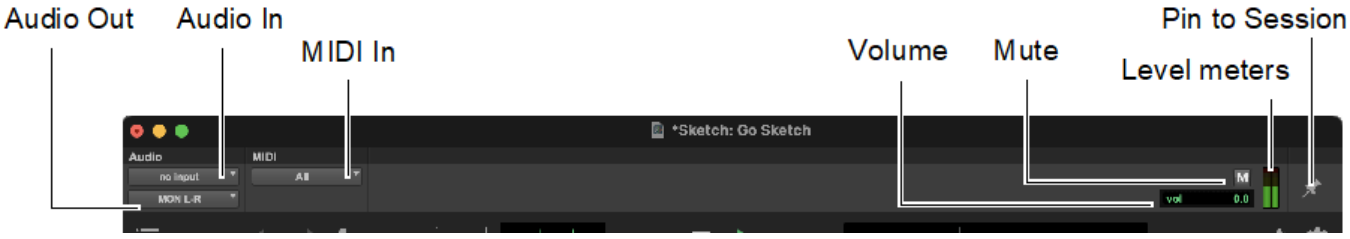
To save a copy of Sketch in Pro Tools:

1. Ensure that the Sketch window is in the foreground and choose **File > Save Sketch Copy In**.
2. In the resulting dialog, navigate to where you want to save the copy of the Sketch.
3. Type a name for the copy and click Save.

Pro Tools Sketch Window



Pro Tools Sketch Window Controls



Sketch window controls in Pro Tools

Audio Output (Monitoring)

Select the monitor output for the Sketch window. This can be any stereo path defined in the Pro Tools I/O Setup (stereo only).

Audio Input

Select the audio input for recording audio clips in the Sketch window. This can be any stereo path defined in the Pro Tools I/O Setup (stereo only).

MIDI In

Select the MIDI input device and channel for recording MIDI clips in the Sketch window.

Volume

This master volume control (vol) lets you adjust the monitoring volume for the Sketch window.

Mute

Mute lets you mute the output signal of the Sketch window.

Level Meters

This stereo segmented level meter displays volume levels and provides clip indicators for the Sketch audio output.

Pin to Session

If you have the Sketch window and a Pro Tools session open at the same time, you can pin the Sketch window to the session. This means that whenever you open that session while the Sketch remains pinned to it, the Sketch window opens with that particular Sketch document. Note that a single Sketch can be pinned to multiple sessions.

Media Browser

Click the Media Browser icon to reveal the Media Browser on the left of the Sketch window.

Sound Library

Pro Tools Sketch comes with a full library of sounds and MIDI, including audio loops and one shots, and MIDI patterns.

Loops

The audio loops included with Pro Tools Sketch are available in the **Loops** directory of the **Sound Library** tab.

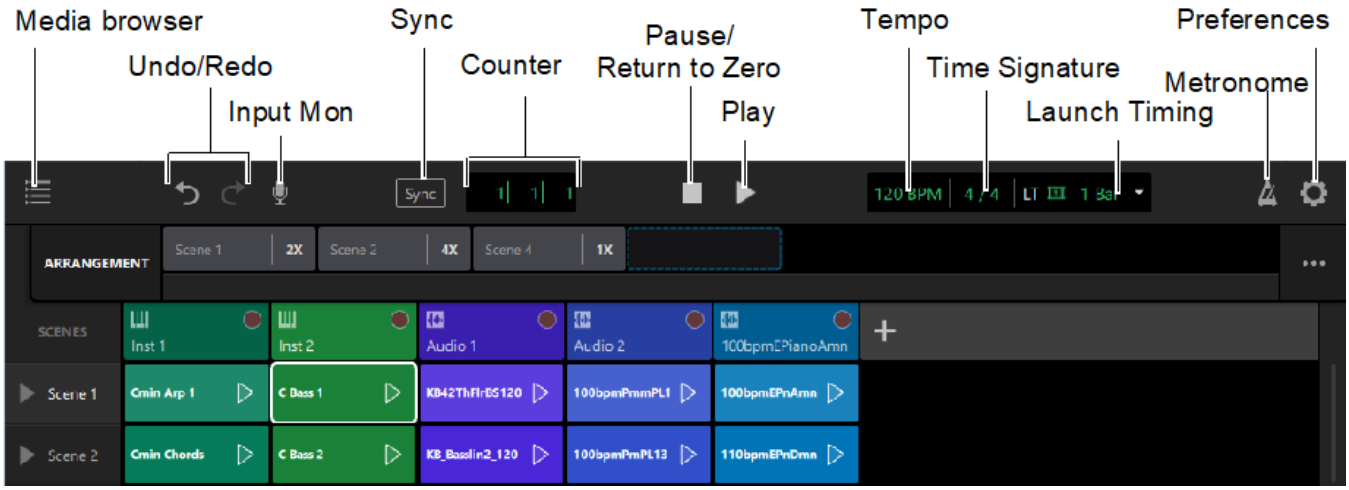
MIDI

The MIDI sequences included with Pro Tools Sketch are available in the **MIDI** directory of the **Sound Library** tab.

Browse

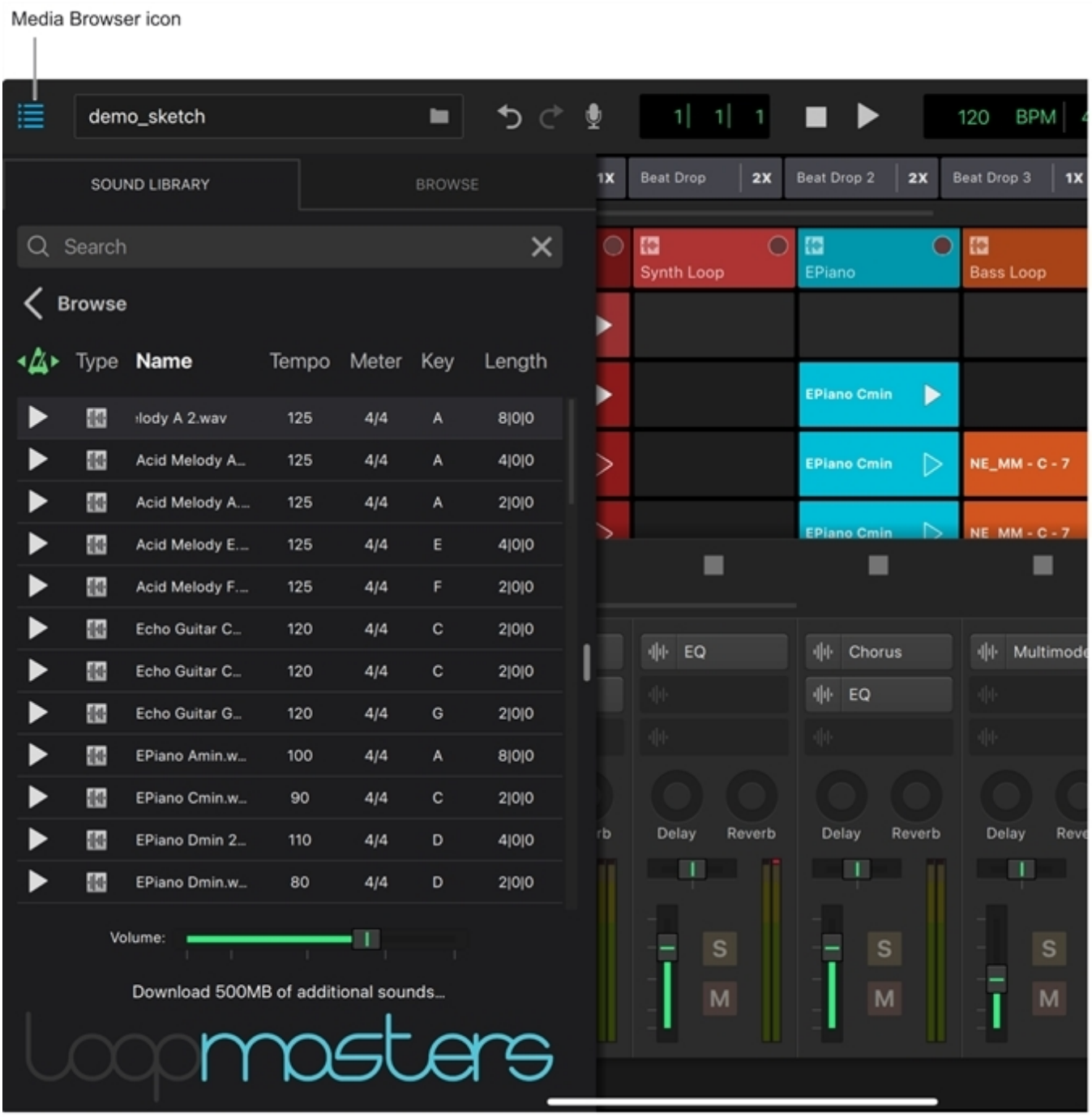
Click the **Browse** tab to navigate your iPad or cloud storage for audio and MIDI files. You can drag and drop any audio or MIDI file to Pro Tools Sketch from any accessible location.

Sketch Window Toolbar



Sketch Window Toolbar

Media Browser



Sound Library

Pro Tools Sketch includes a collection of sounds and MIDI, including audio loops and one shots, and MIDI patterns. Included content for Pro Tools Sketch is placed in the Pro Tools Sound Libraries folder.

This automatically makes downloaded Sonic Drop content visible in the Sketch window Media browser.

- **Loops**: The audio loops included with Pro Tools Sketch are available in the Loops directory of the Sound Library tab.
- **MIDI**: The MIDI sequences included with Pro Tools Sketch are available in the MIDI directory of the Sound Library tab.

Browse

Click the Browse tab to navigate your system directories for audio and MIDI files. You can drag and drop any audio or MIDI file to Pro Tools Sketch from any accessible location.

Play/Stop

The Play/Stop button lets you audition clips before importing them.

Volume

Click and drag the **Volume** slider left or right to decrease or increase the audition volume for clips in the Media Browser.

Undo/Redo

Click the Undo icon to undo your last edit in the Sketch. Click the Redo icon to redo the last undone edit in the Sketch.

Sync

When Sync is enabled, the Sketch window plays in the context of Pro Tools (like with Elastic Audio in the Workspace browser). The Sketch plays back following the Pro Tools tempo, and the Scene Arranger and Pro Tools timeline are synced. The Sketch file returns to its original tempo when Sync is disabled (even if you saved when it was synced, it will not be overwritten with the Pro Tools session tempo).

Also, when Sync is enabled, regardless of what tempo a Sketch file was created in, media that is dragged from the Sketch window to the Pro Tools timeline is time-stretched to fit the Pro Tools session tempo. When Sync is disabled, media dragged from the Sketch window into Pro Tools retains its original duration.

Input Monitoring

Click to enable (or disable) audio input monitoring (audio tracks only).

Counter

Displays the current playback location. Click to open the Transport Settings where you can change the location of play start.

Pause/Return to Zero

Click the Pause icon once to pause playback. Click it again to return to the beginning of the Sketch.

Play

Click the Play icon to start playback.

Tempo

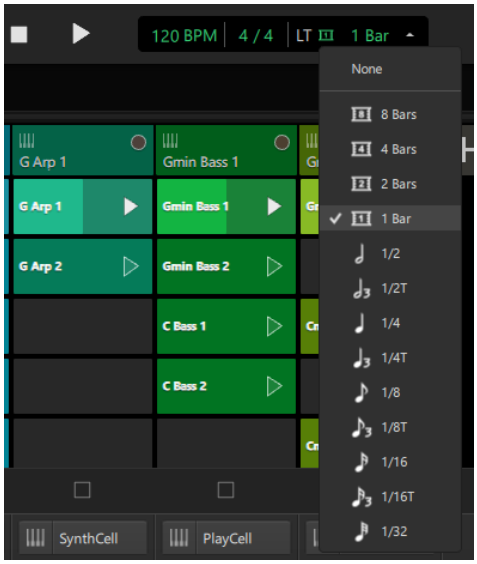
Displays the Sketch tempo. Click to open Sketch Settings where you can change the tempo.

Time Signature (Meter)

Displays the Sketch meter. Click to open Sketch Settings where you can change the meter.

Launch Timing (Launch Quantize)

Set the Launch Timing (LT) for the start of clip playback. This is when a clip starts playback in a Scene or Scene Arrangement.



Selecting the rhythmic value for Launch Timing

Metronome

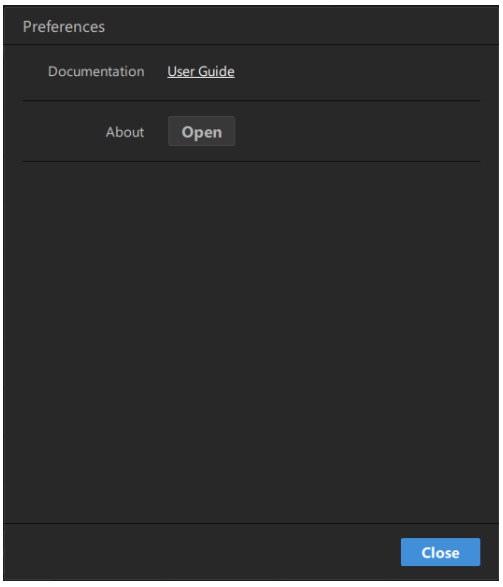
Click to play the Metronome click. Click again to stop the Metronome.

Preferences

The Sketch Window Preferences are distinct from the Pro Tools Preferences. They are a limited number of settings just for Sketches and the Sketch window.

To open the Sketch Window Preferences:

- Click the Preferences icon (the Gear icon) in the upper-right corner of the Sketch window.



The Preferences window includes the following options:

- **`Documentation`**: Click for online access to the *Using Pro Tools Sketch Guide.pdf*. The functionality of the Sketch window is nearly identical to using the Sketch app on iPad. In most cases, where the guide says to tap in the Sketch app, click in the Sketch window.
- **`About`**: Click to view the version of Pro Tools Sketch that you are running. In the resulting window,

click **Close** to close the About window.

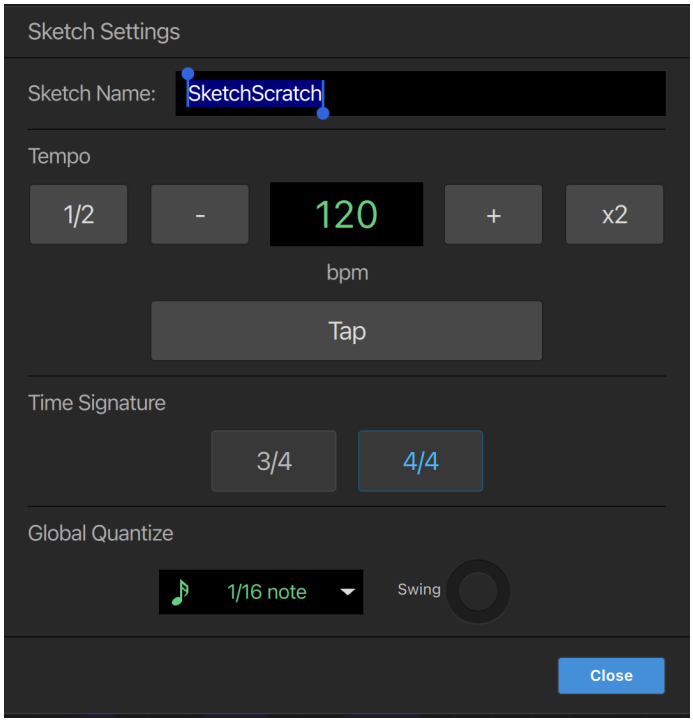
- **Close**: Click to close the Preferences window.

Sketch Settings

The Sketch Settings let you name the Sketch, set the **Tempo** and **Time Signature**, as well as configure **Global Quantize**.

To open Sketch Settings:

- Click the Sketch Name, Tempo, or Time Signature in the toolbar.



Sketch Name

Type the name you want for the open Sketch.

Tempo

Type the tempo you want to use for the open Sketch or click the **–/+**, **1/2**, or **x2** buttons to set the tempo.

Time Signature

Click **3/4** or **4/4** to set the **Time Signature** for the open Sketch.

Global Quantize

Select the rhythmic value for global quantization of MIDI.

Swing

Click and drag to adjust to quantize with swing from 0 to 100%.

Close

Click **Close** to save your changes and close the Sketch Settings.

Clips

Drag and drop to an empty Clip cell to add a clip to an existing track or to an empty space to create a new track (an Instrument track for MIDI clips or an audio track for audio clips) with the new clip in the first cell. You can also drag and drop clips between the Pro Tools Sketch window and the Pro Tools Edit window, the Clip List, and Workspace browsers. Additionally, Scenes can be dragged and dropped from the Sketch window to the Pro Tools timeline in the Edit window.

When dragging a MIDI clip from the Sketch window to an instrument or MIDI track in the Edit window, the clip remains as MIDI data. Conversely, Pro Tools renders the entire signal chain for MIDI clips being dragged into the Sketch window from the Edit window.

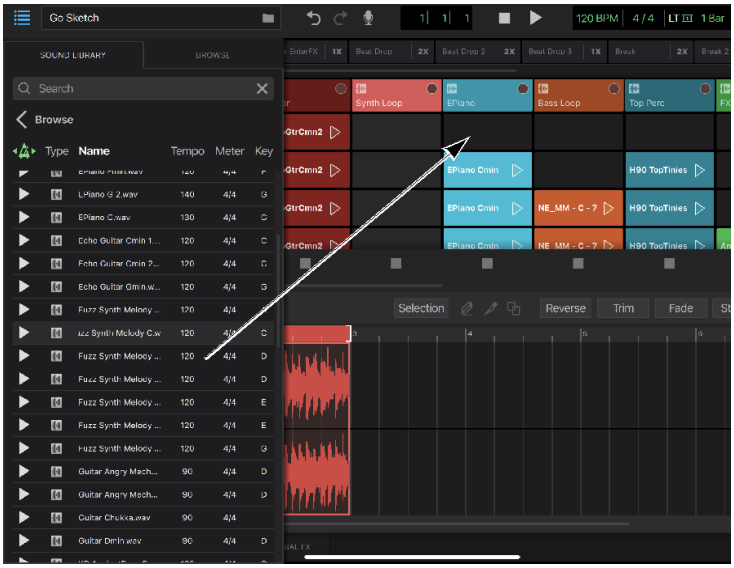
When dragging and dropping an audio clip into the Sketch window from the Edit window, it is also rendered to include any Clip Gain, Clip Effects, Elastic Audio, Fades, and Plugin processing.

You can only drag single interleaved stereo clips from sessions to the Sketch window. Clips with fades can be imported, but any fades are removed. Clip groups are not supported.

Adding Clips to a Sketch

To add clips to a Sketch, do one of the following:

- Drag and drop from Media browser to a cell (see
- Drag and drop from a Pro Tools Workspace browser to a cell.
- Drag and drop from the Finder (Mac) or Windows Explorer (Windows) to a cell.
- If you have a session open, drag and drop from the session Clip List to a cell on a track.

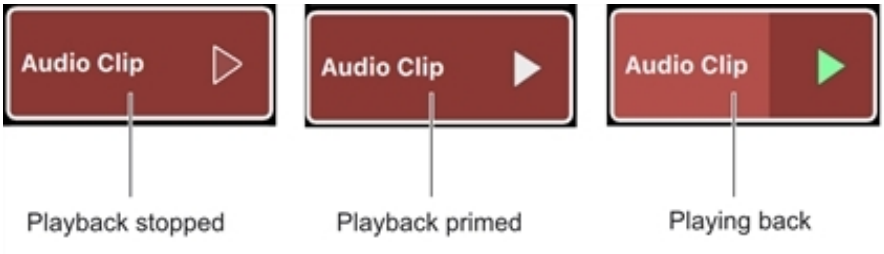


Dragging and dropping from Media browser to a clip cell on an audio track

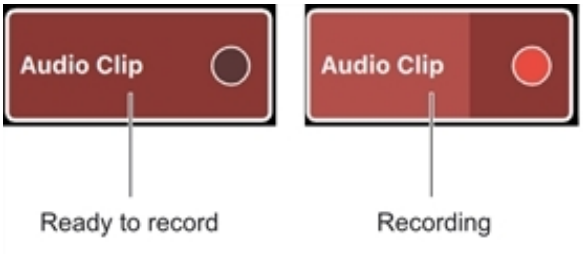
Clip State Indicators

Clip Play icons change to indicate the various states for audio and MIDI playback and recording.

Audio Clip playback state indicators:



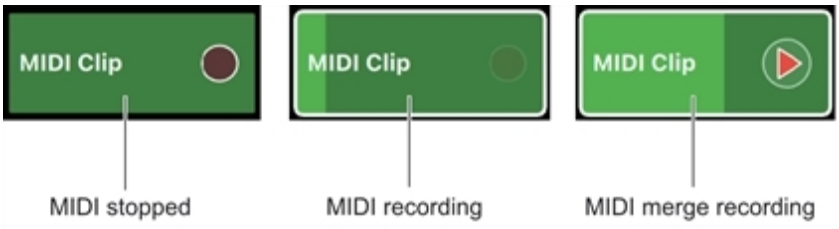
Audio Clip recording state indicators:



MIDI Clip playback state indicators:



MIDI Clip playback state indicators:



Empty Clips

Empty clips are useful for recording new audio and MIDI.

To create an empty clip with defined boundaries:

1. Double-click an empty clip cell.
2. Specify the **`Length`** of the clip in **`Clip Properties`** or in the **`Editor`**.

Playing Back Individual Clips

You can play back individual clips in your Sketch.

To play back any individual clip, do one of the following:

- Click the Play icon on the clip you want.
- Click the Play icon in the Editor for the selected clip.

Recording Clips

When you record into an empty clip cell, audio or MIDI, you can do long form recording. When recording into an empty clip, the subsequent recording is of a fixed length determined by the current clip boundaries. With MIDI, recording into an existing clip results in MIDI Merge recording.

Recording Audio Clips

The Pro Tools Sketch window lets you record audio clips using the selected stereo audio input (available inputs are defined in the Pro Tools I/O Setup).

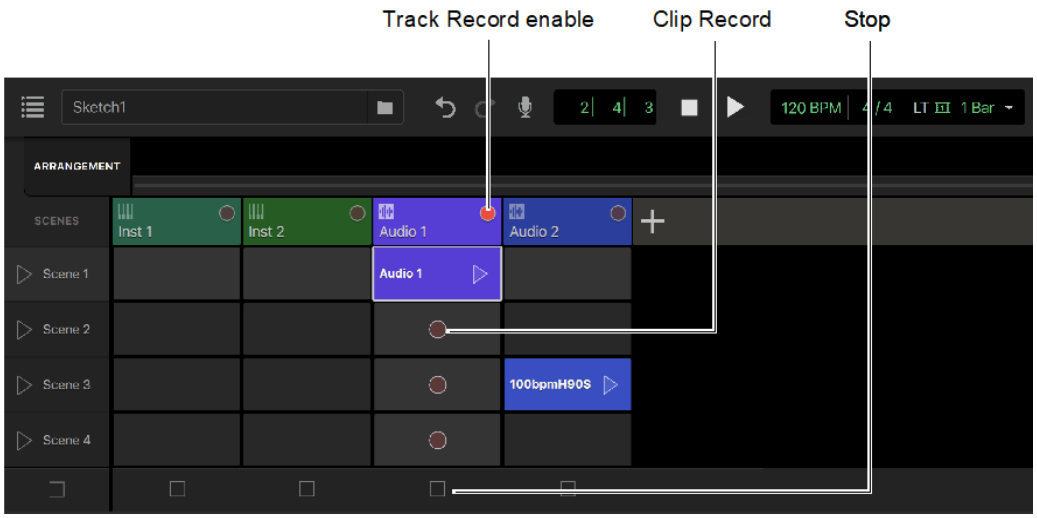
To record audio clips:

1. Select the audio input path.
2. If desired, click Input Monitor to hear your audio source during recording.
3. Click Track Record enable on an audio track.
4. Click Clip Record on the clip cell where you want to record audio. Recording starts immediately. However, if you are at a counter position between Launch Timing points, then recording starts at the next timing point.

Recording starts immediately. However, if you are at a counter position between Launch Timing points, then recording starts at the next timing point.

Record into an empty clip cell to record for an indefinite length.

Record into an existing empty clip with defined boundaries to record for the duration of this clip. You cannot record into and overwrite audio in an existing clip.



When you are finished recording, click Stop. Recording stops automatically if it was made into a clip with predefined length For information on the clip length, see "Clip Properties" on page 600.

You can view the audio you recorded in the Audio Clip Editor.

Recording MIDI Clips

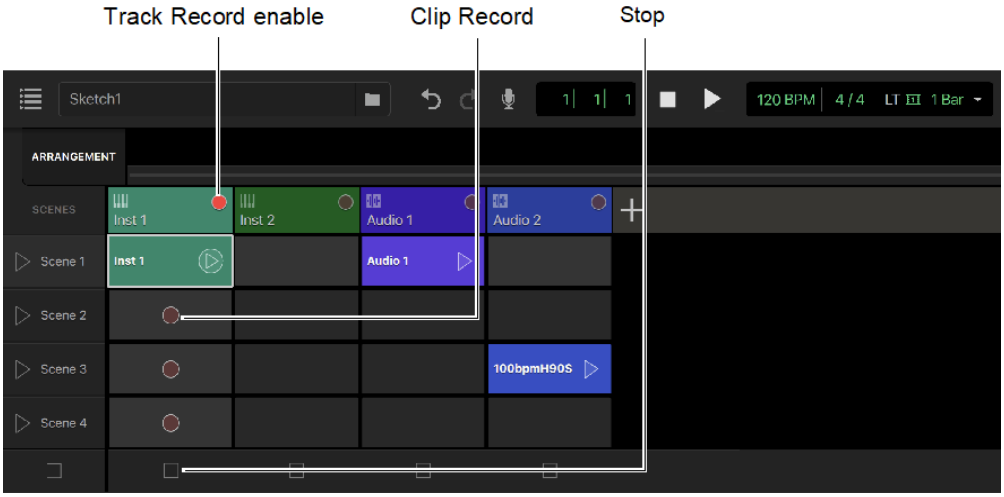
Pro Tools Sketch lets you record MIDI clips using the selected MIDI input device.

To record MIDI clips:

1. Select the MIDI device for MIDI Input.
2. Click Track Record enable on an Instrument track.
3. Click Clip Record on the clip cell where you want to record MIDI.

   Recording starts immediately. However, if you are at a counter position between Launch Timing points, then recording starts at the next timing point.

   Record into an empty clip cell to record for an indefinite length. Record into an existing MIDI clip to record for the duration of the existing clip—recorded MIDI merges with the existing MIDI in the clip.



4. Play your MIDI controller or playback MIDI from a Pro Tools MIDI or Instrument track. (You can also click keys on the on-screen keyboard in the Editor view or the on-screen keyboard of a Virtual Instrument in Track view).

When you are finished recording, click Stop in the Sketch Window toolbar. You can view the MIDI you recorded in the MIDI Clip Editor.

Duplicate Clip

To duplicate a clip:

- Right-click the clip and choose **Duplicate**.

The clip is duplicated in the next empty clip cell on the track.

Remove Clip

To remove a clip:

- Right-click the clip and choose **Remove**.

The clip is removed from the track.

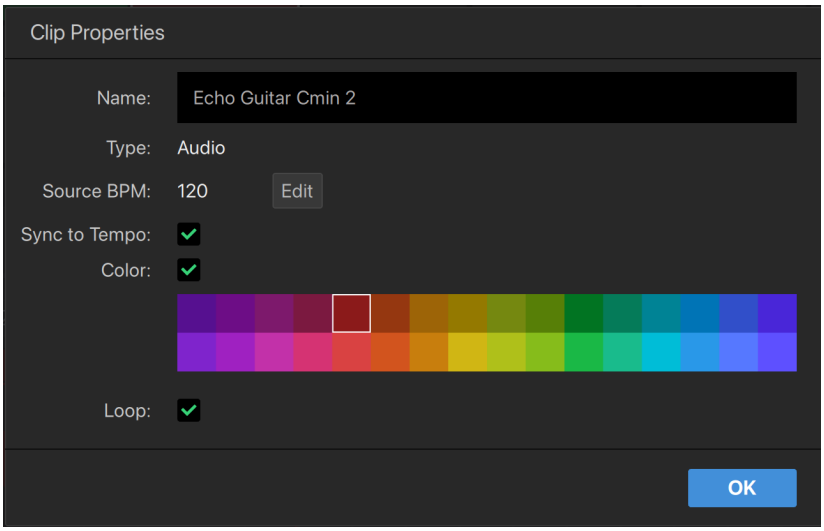
Open in Editor

To open a clip in the Editor, do one of the following:

- Right-click the clip and choose **Open in Editor**.
- Double-click any clip to open it in the Editor tab.

The audio or MIDI clip opens in the Editor tab.

Clip Properties



To edit the properties for a clip:

1. Right-click the clip and choose **Properties**.
2. Make the changes you want in the Clip Properties window.
   - Name

     Type the name you want for the clip.
   - Type

     Displays the Clip Type: **AUDIO** or **MIDI**.
   - Source BPM

     Displays the BPM for the source clip. Click **Edit** to change.
   - Color

     Enable (or disable) to show the selected clip color. Click in the color palette to select the color you want for the clip.
   - Loop

     Enable (or disable) to loop the clip on playback. Clips with **Loop** disabled act as "one shots."
3. Click **OK** to close Clip Properties.

You should only change the Source BPM if you know it should be different than what is displayed.

Dragging Clips to the Pro Tools Edit Window

Pro Tools lets you drag clips, as well as scenes and arrangements, from the Sketch window and drop them into the Edit window:

- Dragging a clip to the Clip List commits the clip with any of its track-based processing from the Sketch window.
- Dragging a clip to the Timeline commits the clip with any of its track-based processing from the Sketch window.
- Dragging a clip to the Track List creates a new track and the Sketch Mixer settings (volume, pan,

mute, and solo) are used for the new track in the session.

- Dragging a MIDI clip from the Sketch window to an instrument or MIDI track in the Edit window, the clip remains as MIDI data.

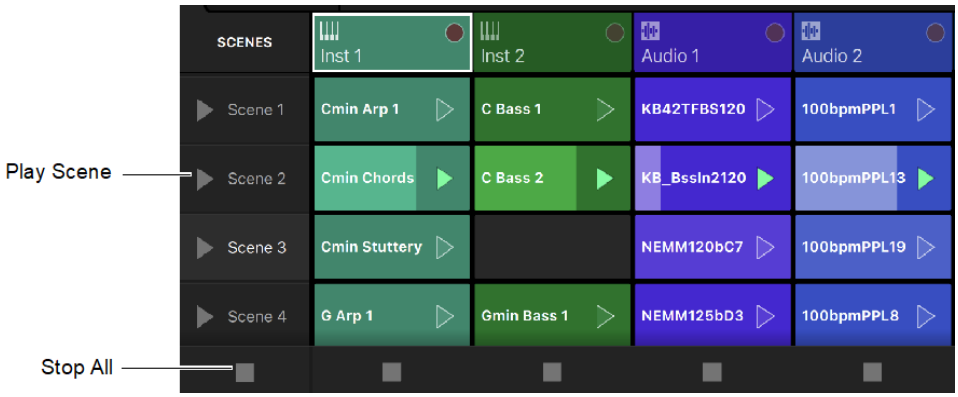
Conversely, Pro Tools renders the entire signal chain for MIDI clips being dragged into the Sketch window from the Edit window. When dragging and dropping an audio clip into the Sketch window from the Edit window, it is also rendered to include any Clip Gain, Clip Effects, Elastic Audio, Fades, and Plugin processing.

Scenes and Arrangement

Clips on tracks can be played back all together in a Scene. A Scene is a row of clips in the Clip Launcher. Scenes can be ordered in an Arrangement, and each Scene can be set to repeat playback by a specified number of time. Fore example, in an Arrangement you can have Scene 1 play four times and then move to playing back Scene 5 two times, and so on. Scenes do can be ordered in an Arrangement however you want: Scene 5 x2, Scene 3 x4, Scene 8 x1, and so on.

Scenes

Scenes are rows of clips that can be played back all together.



To play back a Scene:

- Click the Play icon for the Scene.

To stop playback of a Scene:

- Click the Stop All icon at the bottom of the Scenes column. This stops playback of the Scene and any other clips that may be playing back on other tracks (and in other Scenes).

To duplicate a Scene:

- Right-click the Scene you want in the left-hand column and choose **Duplicate**.

To delete a Scene:

- Right-click the Scene you want in the left-hand column and choose **Delete**.

To change Scene Properties:

1. Right-click the Scene you want in the left-hand column and choose **Properties**.
2. Type a new **Name** for the Scene if desired.
3. Click **Color** to select a color for the Scene and then click the color you want in the color palette.
4. Click **OK**.

To add a new Scene above another Scene:

- Right-click the Scene you want in the left-hand column and choose **New Scene Above**.

To add a new Scene below another Scene:

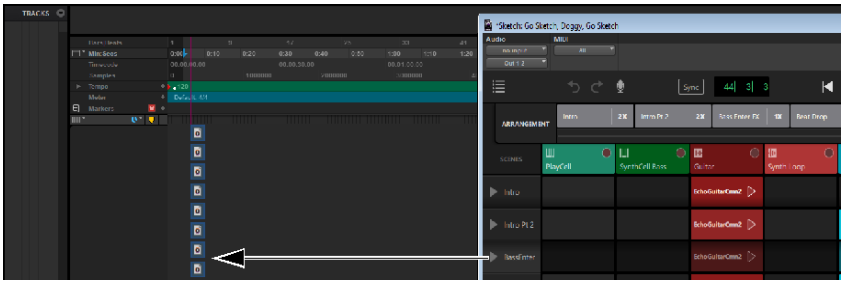
- Right-click the Scene you want in the left-hand column and choose **New Scene Below**.

To create a new Scene from clips playing on different tracks:

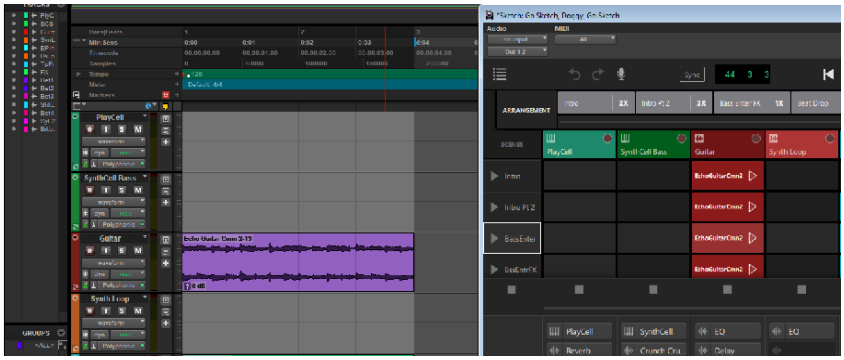
1. Start playback of clips on different tracks and Scenes that you want to duplicate on the same tracks, but into a new Scene.
2. Right-click any Scene in the left-hand column and choose **Create Scene from Playing**.

Dragging a Scene into a Session

You can drag and drop any Scene from the Sketch window to the Timeline in the Edit window of an open session. Doing so results in new tracks matching those in the Sketch being created in the session with media beginning at the Timeline location where you dropped the Scene. Scenes cannot be dropped in the Track List.



Dragging a Scene from the Sketch window onto Timeline in Edit window



Scene dropped from Sketch window onto Timeline in Edit window

Arrangement

The Pro Tools Sketch window lets you create an Arrangement of different Scenes that you can set up like a song. You can export the Arrangement as a new audio file or drag and drop it into an open Pro Tools session.



Adding a Scene to the Arrangement

To add a Scene to the Arrangement:

- Drag and drop a Scene from the left-most column up into the Arrangement.

To reorder Scenes in the Arrangement:

- In the Arrangement, drag and drop a Scene to a new location in the Arrangement,

To repeat a Scene in the Arrangement:

1. Click the Scene Multiplier to the right of the Scene in the Arrangement.
2. Click + to increase the number of times that you want the Scene to repeat during playback of the Arrangement, or click – to decrease the number of times that you want the Scene to repeat during playback of the Arrangement. 64 is the maximum number of repeats for a Scene in the Arrangement.
3. Click **Close**.

To remove a Scene from the Arrangement:

- Right-click the Scene in the Arrangement that you want to remove and choose **Remove Scene**.

To export the current Arrangement from your Sketch as a new audio file:

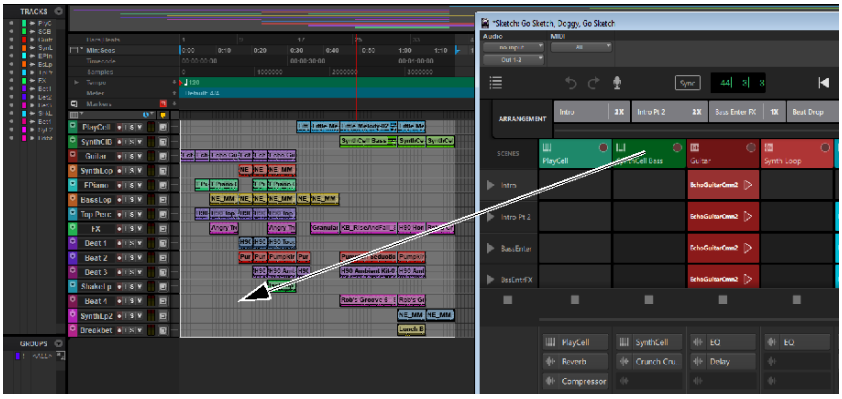
1. Click the Arrangement menu icon and choose **Export Arrangement**.
2. Navigate to the location where you want to save your Arrangement.
3. Type a name for the Arrangement.
4. Click **Export**.

To clear all Scenes from the Arrangement:

- Click the Arrangement menu icon and choose **Clear All**.

Dragging the Arrangement into a Session

You can drag and drop an Arrangement from the Sketch window to the Timeline in the Edit window of an open session. Doing so results in new tracks matching those in the Sketch being created in the session with media beginning at the Timeline location where you dropped the Arrangement. The Arrangement cannot be dropped in the Track List.



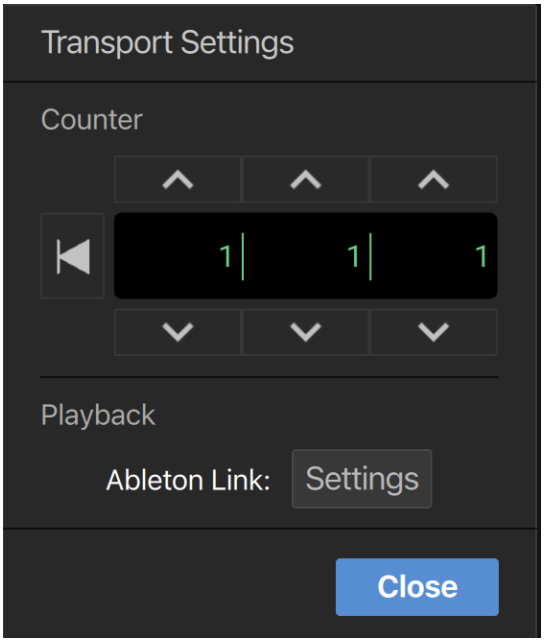
Arrangement dragged from Sketch window onto Timeline in Edit window.

Transport Settings

The **`Transport Settings`** let you set the playback start location. You can also access the **`Ableton Link`** settings here.

To open the Transport Settings:

- Click the Counter.



Tracks

Tracks in the Sketch window consist of columns of MIDI or audio clips. Each track provides its own mixer controls and real-time effects processing for all clips on the track. Audio and MIDI tracks both have three effects inserts. MIDI tracks use virtual instruments (PlayCell and SynthCell) for MIDI playback on the first insert on the track.



Track tab: audio track

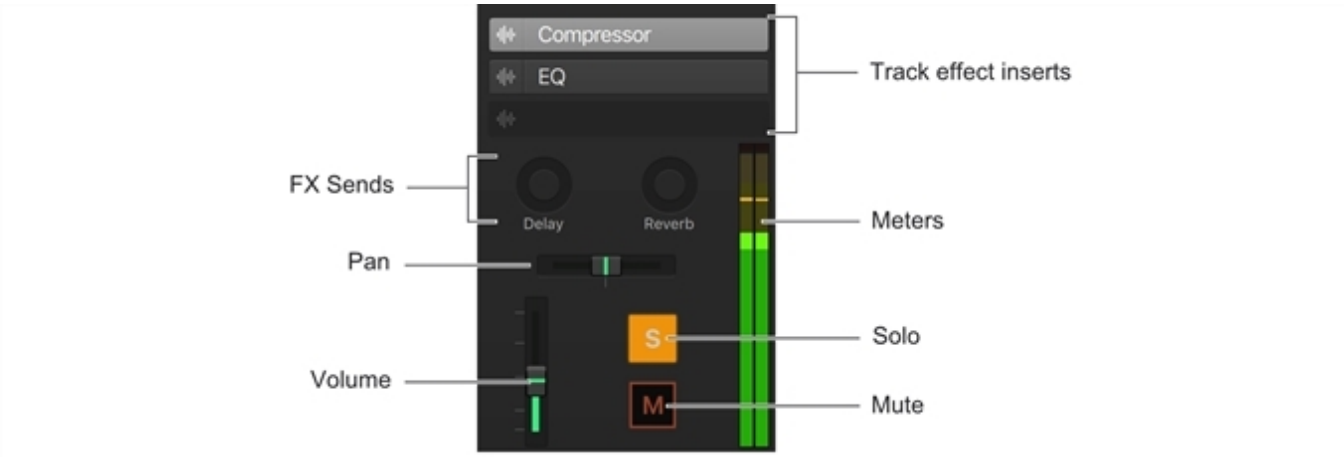


Track tab: Instrument track

Track Controls

To show track controls:

1. Click the track header for the track you want.
2. Click the **Track** tab at the bottom left. (Click the tab again to hide the track controls.)



You can also double-click a track header to simultaneously select the track and open the Track tab.

Volume Fader

Click and drag up or down to adjust the track volume.

Pan

Click and drag left or right to adjust the stereo panning.

Solo

Click **S** (solo) to solo the track. (Click it again to unsolo the track.)

Mute

Click **M** (mute) to solo the track. (Click it again to unmute the track.)

Meters

The vertical stereo meters show the track output level. The clip indicators light red when the signal clips.

Effects Sends

Adjust the effects sends to bus signal to the global effects (see Global FX).

Delay

Adjust the **Delay** dial to send signal from the track to the Global Delay.

Reverb

Adjust the **Reverb** dial to send signal from the track to the Global Reverb.

Track Effects and Virtual Instruments

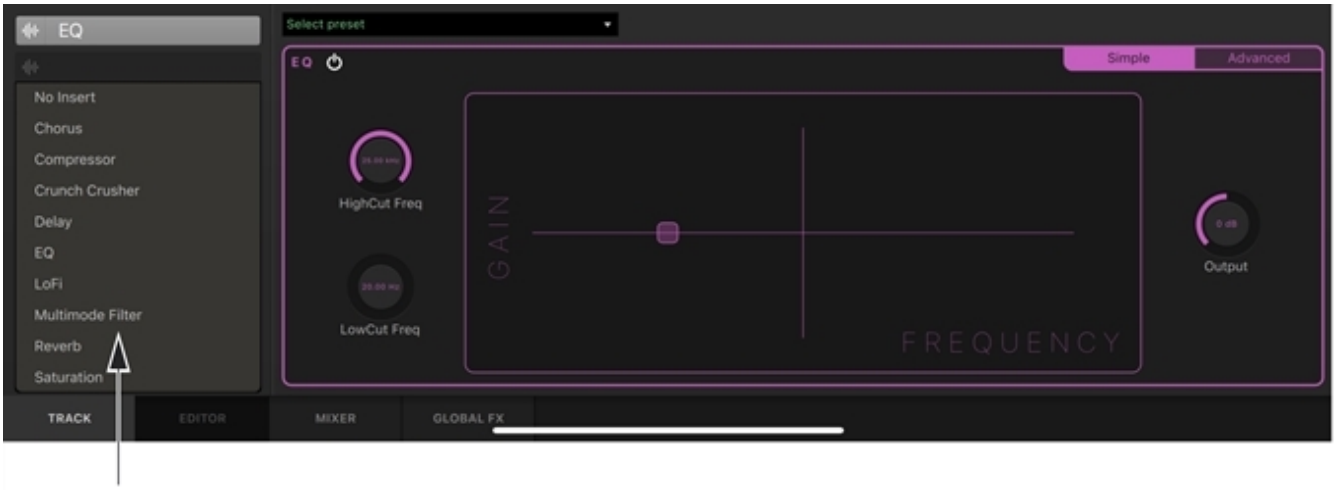
Each track provides three inserts for track effects (with a serial signal path from top to bottom). Instrument tracks provide virtual instruments (PlayCell and SynthCell) for MIDI playback on the first insert on the track. Pro Tools Sketch includes the following track effects:

- Chorus
- Compressor
- Crunch Crusher
- Delay
- EQ
- LoFi
- Multimode Filter
- Reverb
- Saturation

For complete descriptions of each effect, see "Effects" on page 622.

To select a track effect:

1. Select the audio or Instrument track to which you want to add effects.\
2. Click the **Track** tab.
3. Click the insert where you want to add an effect. For Instrument tracks, the first insert can only host a Virtual Instrument (PlayCell or SynthCell).
4. Click the effect you want in the list. (To remove an effect, select **No Insert**.)

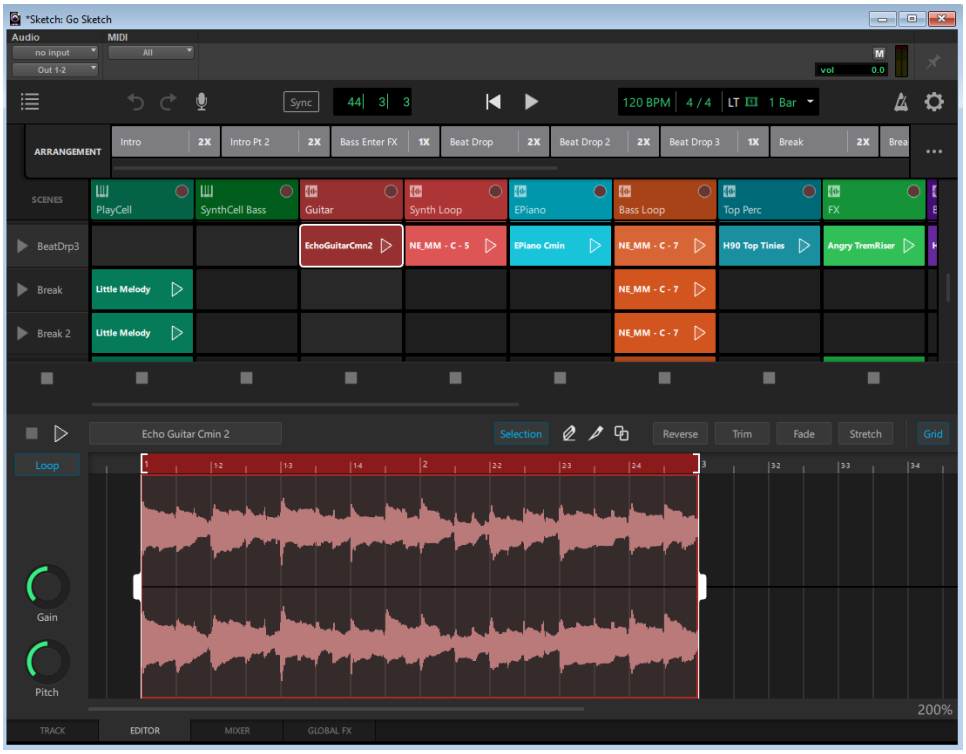


You can click and drag effects from one insert to another in either the Track view or the Mixer view. Dragging to an empty insert moves the effect. Dragging to an occupied insert swaps the inserts. In the Mixer view, you can also drag a Virtual Instrument to another on a different track to swap places.

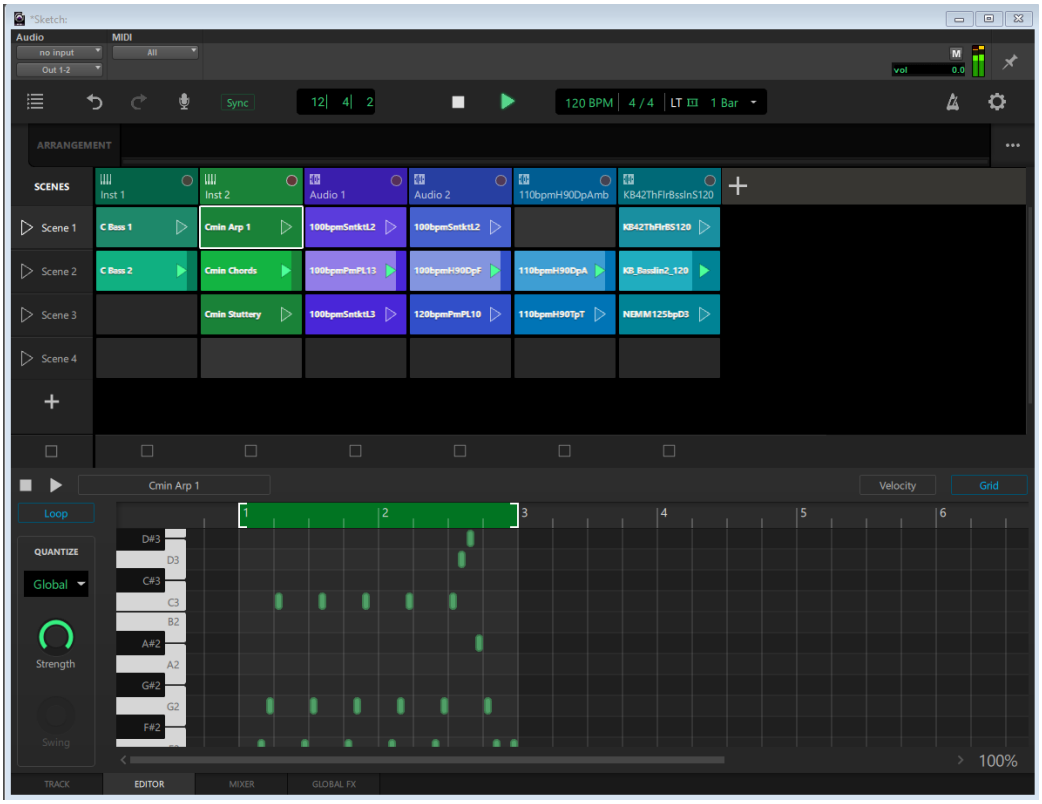
Drag and Drop effects from one insert onto another empty or non-empty insert to move or switch places; it is also possible to move a Virtual Instrument onto another Virtual Instrument insert to switch places

Editor

You can edit selected audio and MIDI clips in the Sketch window. You can trim the clip boundaries, enable or disable looping, edit audio or MIDI notes, and so on.



Editor tab: audio clip



Editor tab: MIDI clip

Zooming in the Sketch Window Editor

To zoom out or in the Sketch Window Editor, do one of the following:

- Press Command+[or Command+] (Mac), or Control+[or Control+] (Windows).
- With Key Command Focus enabled, press R or T.
- Command-scroll up or down (Mac), or Control-scroll up or down (Windows).

Adding or Deleting Notes in the MIDI Editor

To add MIDI notes in the MIDI Editor:

- Double-click in blank space in the Clip Editor to add a MIDI note there.

To delete MIDI notes in the MIDI Editor:

- Double-click MIDI notes in the Clip Editor.

Adjust Clip Boundaries

You can adjust the clip boundaries for both audio and MIDI clips in the same way. Clip boundaries determine the playback duration of the clip. The beginning and ending clip boundaries can be independently moved left or right to reduce or extend the clip duration. When trimming clip boundaries, you can enable or disable **Grid** to have the clip boundaries snap to the grid or not.

To trim clip boundaries:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click to select the audio or MIDI clip you want to edit, then click the **Editor** tab at the bottom of the window.
   - Click to select the audio or MIDI clip you want to edit, then click **Open in Editor** in the Clip menu.
   - Double-click the clip you want to edit.
2. Click **Grid** to enable or disable as desired.
3. Click and drag the Start or End Clip Bracket left or right to adjust the clip boundaries.

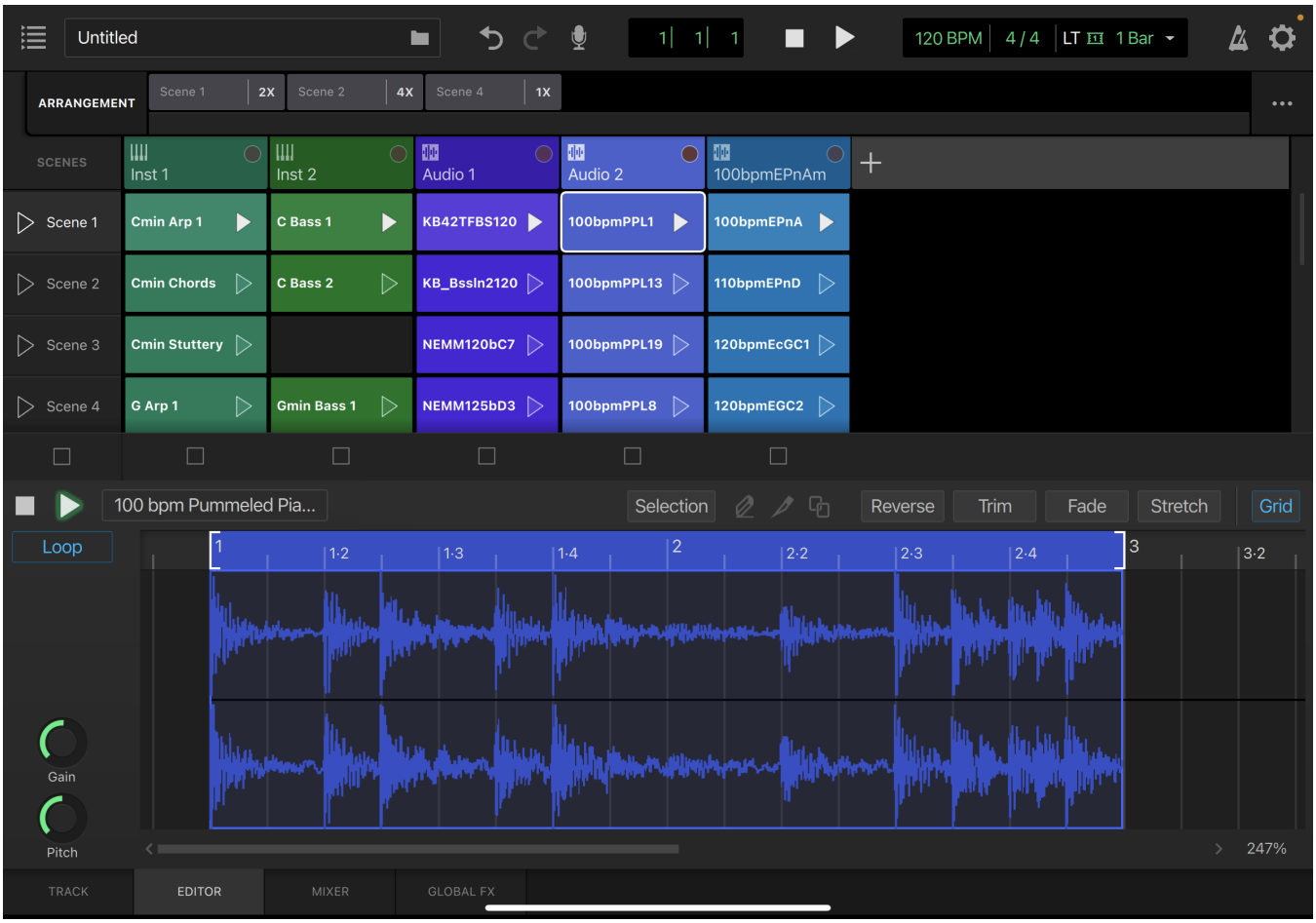


Audio Clip Editor

To open the audio clip editor, do one of the following:

- Click to select the audio clip you want to edit, then click the **Editor** tab at the bottom of the window.

- +
- Click to select the audio clip you want to edit, then click **`Open in Editor`** in the Clip menu.
- Double-click the clip you want to edit.



Audio Clip Editor Controls

Transport

The Clip Editor transport controls let you start and stop playback of the selected clip.

Loop

Click **`Loop`** so that it is lit to loop the clip. Click again to disable looping.

Gain

Lets you adjust the clip gain from –INF to + 24 dB.

Pitch

Lets you adjust the clip pitch from –24 to +24 semitones.

Name

Shows the clip name. Click to open **`Clip Properties`** where you can change the clip name (see Clip Properties).

Selection

Enable **Selection** to show selection handles and enable the editing functions **Erase**, **Slice**, and **Duplicate**. Move the start and end markers of the selection to the desired range, then click **Erase**, **Slice**, or **Duplicate**. Any changes are applied to the audio within the selected range.

Disable **Selection** to hide selection handles and disable the **Erase**, **Slice**, and **Duplicate** editing options.



Erase

If **Selection** is enabled, you can make a selection and click **Erase** to clear the content of the selection.

Slice

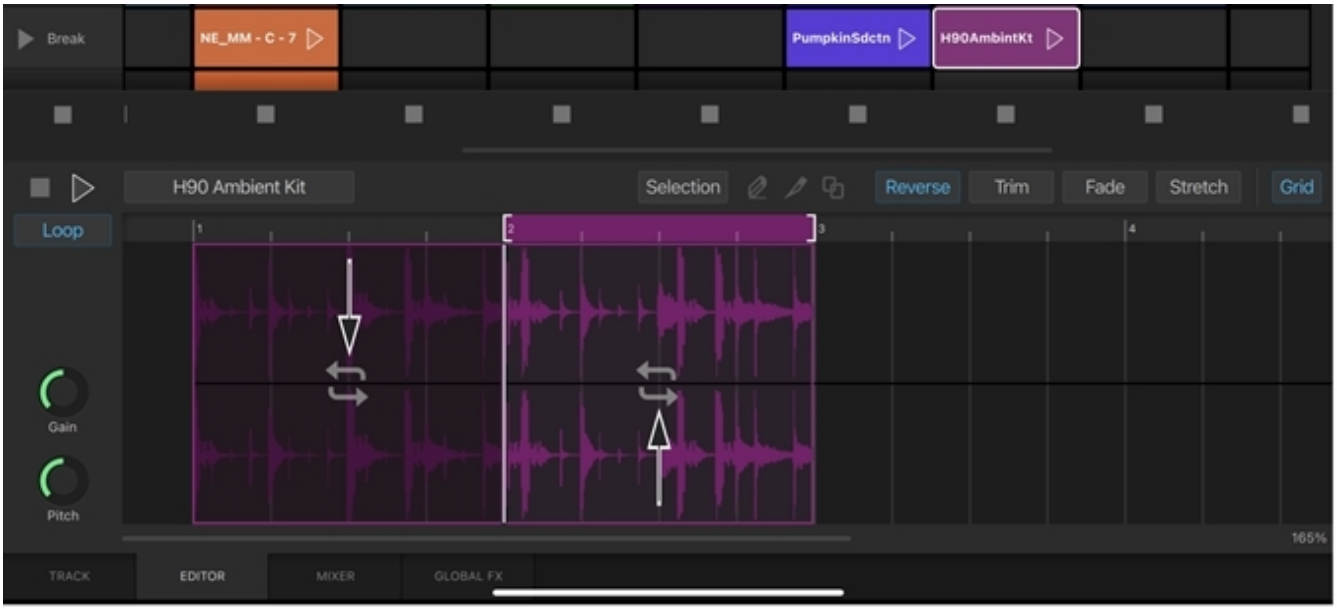
If **Selection** is enabled, you can make a selection and click **Slice** (the scalpel icon) to create edit points at the selection boundaries. You can use these edit points to **Erase**, **Duplicate**, **Reverse**, **Trim**, **Fade**, or **Stretch** content between edit points.

Duplicate

If **Selection** is enabled, you can make a selection and click **Duplicate** to duplicate the content of the clip or selection.

Reverse

Click **Reverse** to reverse the content of the clip or selection. You can reverse content between edit points.



Trim

Click **`Trim`** to trim the start and end of the clip or selection. You can also trim at edit points.



Fade

Click **`Fade`** to fade in or fade out the start or end of the clip. You can also add fades at edit points.



Stretch

Click **Stretch** to stretch or compress the start or end of the clip. You can also stretch content between edit points.



Grid

Enable the **Grid** option to ensure that your changes to the location or duration of audio always snaps to the Grid. The Grid resolution changes based on your zoom. The more you zoom in, the finer the resolution.

To zoom in, touch with two pinched fingers and spread. To zoom out, touch with two spread fingers and pinch.

MIDI Clip Editor

To open the MIDI clip editor, do one of the following:

- Click to select the MIDI clip you want to edit, then click the **Editor** tab at the bottom of the window.

- Click to select the MIDI clip you want to edit, then click **Open in Editor** in the Clip menu.
- Double-click the MIDI clip you want to edit.



Transport

The Clip Edit transport controls let you start and stop playback of the selected clip.

Loop

Click **Loop** so that it is lit to loop the clip. Click again to disable looping.

Quantize

The Quantize options let you set the quantization parameters for MIDI notes in the clip.

Global or Local

Click for the **Quantize** menu. Click **Global** to follow the **Global Quantize** settings or click the desired rhythmic value for local quantize (clip only). To view the **Global Quantize** settings, click **Show Global Quantize Settings** (see Sketch Settings).

Strength

Adjust the **Strength** of the quantization applied to MIDI notes in the clip.

Swing

Adjust the amount of **Swing** applied to the quantization of MIDI notes in the clip. Note that **Swing** is unavailable if quantize is set to **Global**.

Name

Shows the clip name. Click to open **Clip Properties** where you can change the clip name.

Select All

Click **Select All** to select all MIDI notes.

Trash

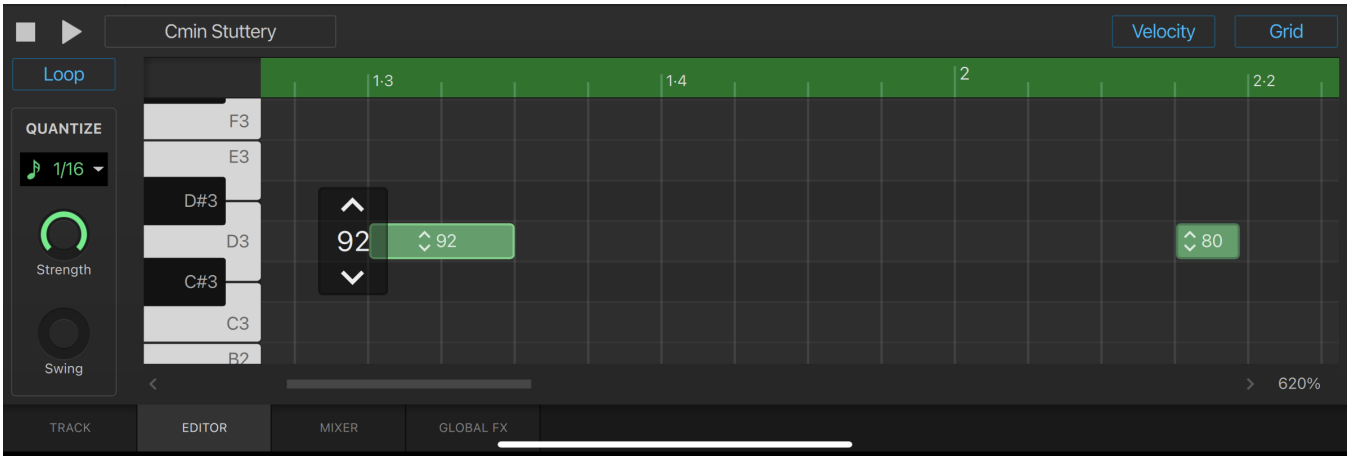
Click the trash can icon to delete all selected MIDI notes.

Velocity

Enable the Velocity option to edit the velocity of MIDI notes in the editor. Click to enable **Velocity** (click it again to disable it). Note that to change the pitch, location, or duration of a MIDI note, the **Velocity** option must be disabled.

To edit the velocity of a MIDI note:

1. Click to select the MIDI clip you want to edit.
2. Click the **Editor** tab.
3. In the Editor pane, click **Velocity** so that it is lit.
4. Locate the MIDI note you want to edit.
5. If necessary, touch with two pinched fingers and spread to zoom in.
6. Click the MIDI note and drag up to increase its velocity, or drag down to decrease its velocity. The velocity value is shown on the note.



Grid

Enable the **Grid** option to ensure that your changes to the location or duration of MIDI notes always snaps to the Grid. The Grid resolution changes based on your zoom. The more you zoom in, the finer the resolution (up to a point).

To zoom in, touch with two pinched fingers and spread. To zoom out, touch with two spread fingers and pinch.

Editing MIDI Notes

- You can edit the pitch, location, and duration of MIDI notes in the MIDI Clip Editor.

To add a MIDI note:

- Double-click on blank space in the editor where you want to add the note.

To add a MIDI note in the Sketch window in Pro Tools, double-click on blank space in the editor where you want to add the note.

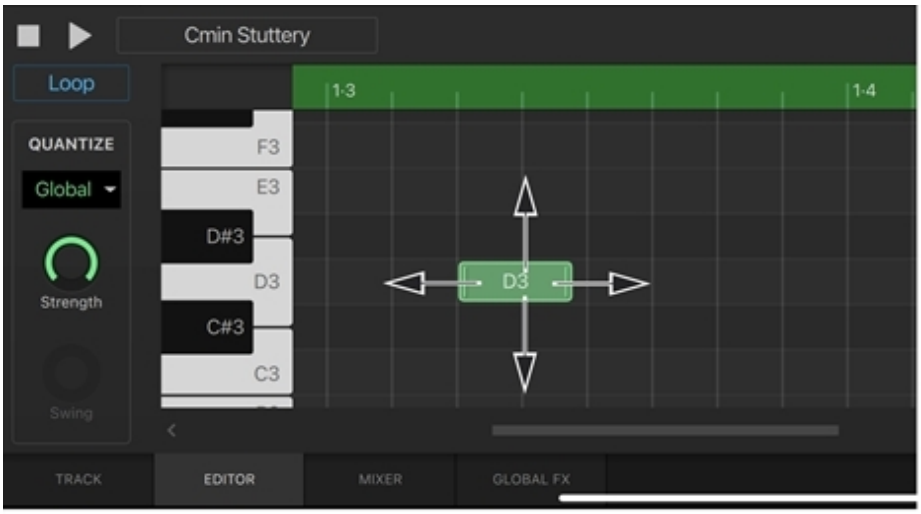
To delete a MIDI note:

- Double-click the note you want to delete.

To delete a MIDI note in the Sketch window in Pro Tools, double-click the note you want to delete.

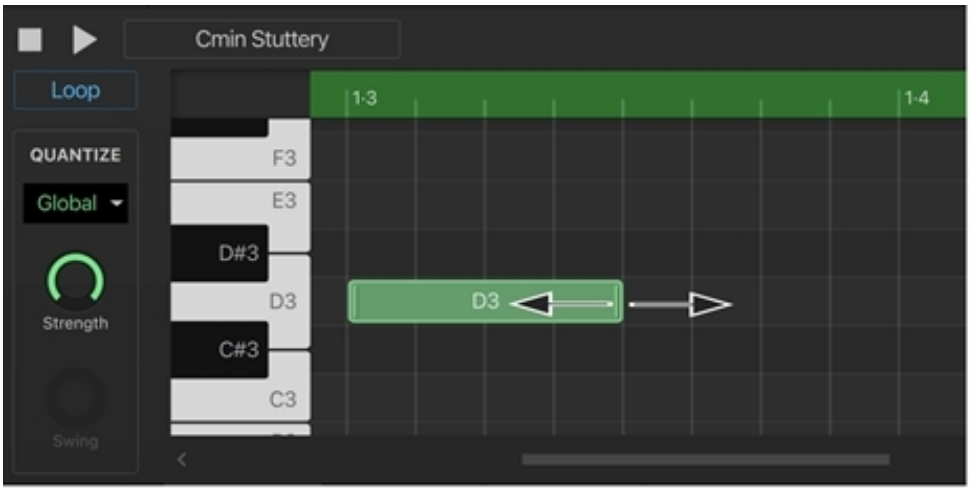
To change the pitch or location of a MIDI note:

1. Select the MIDI clip you want to edit.
2. Ensure that the **`Velocity`** option is disabled.
3. Locate and press the note you want to edit and do the following.
   - Click and drag the note up or down to change the pitch.
   - Click and drag the note left or right to change the location.



To change the duration of a MIDI note:

1. Select the MIDI clip you want to edit.
2. Ensure that the **`Velocity`** option is disabled.
3. Zoom in so that you can click and drag either the beginning or the end of the note.
4. Click and drag the end of the note left or right to shorten or lengthen the note.

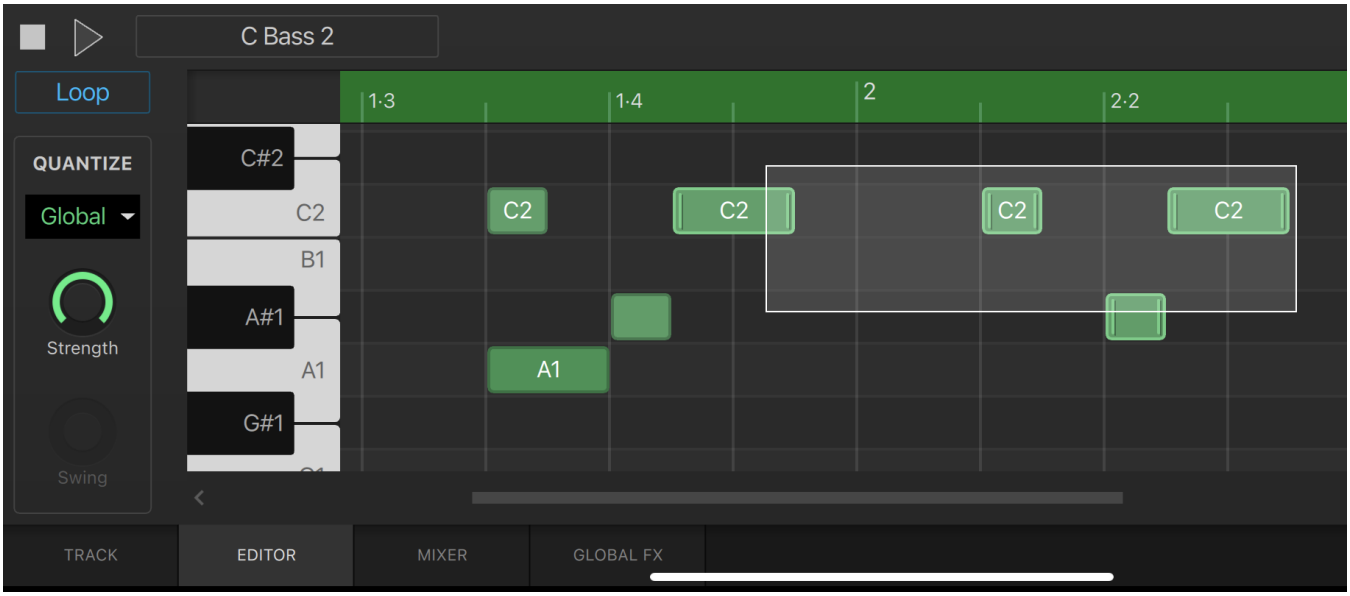


Editing Multiple Selected Notes

You can make a marquee selection to affect multiple notes at once.

To make a marquee selection in the MIDI editor:

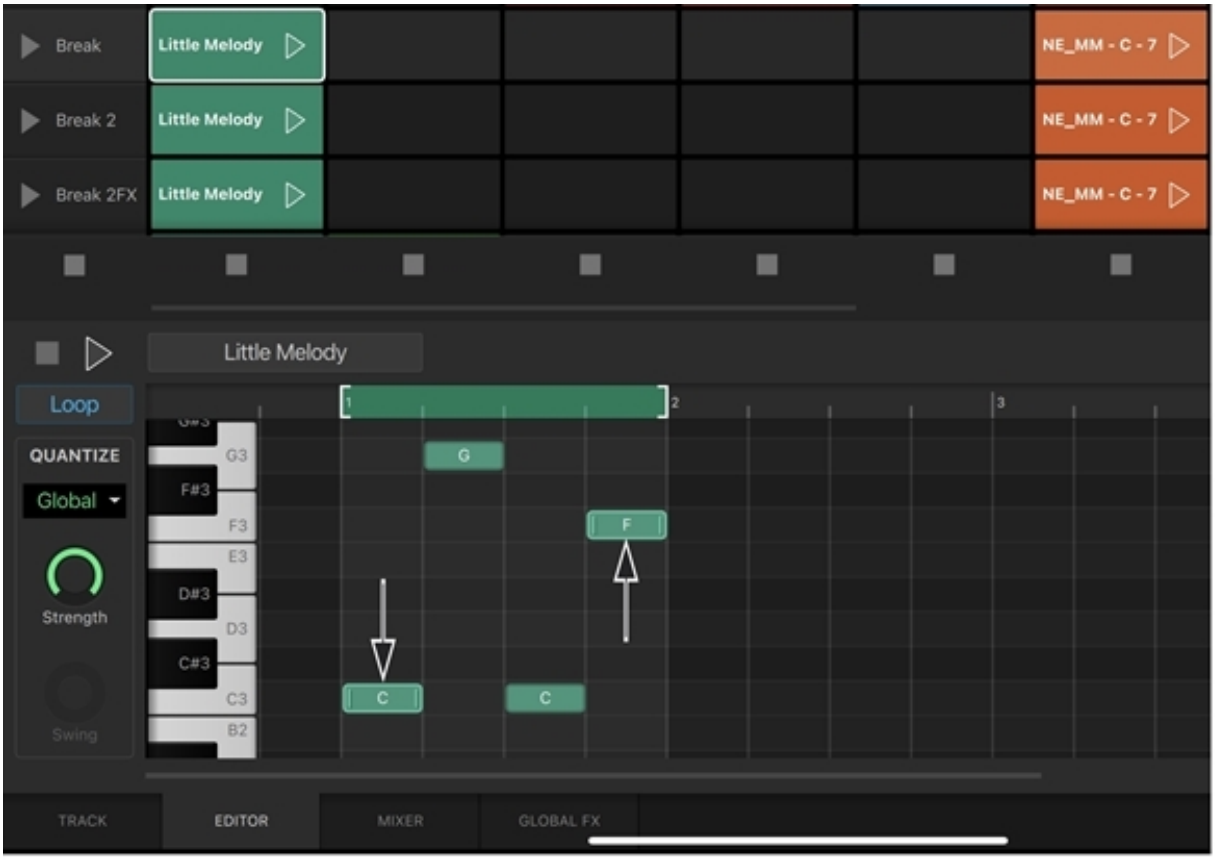
1. Click and hold into an empty space in the MIDI editor.
2. Move your finger and hover over the area you want to select.



Any and all MIDI notes touched by the marquee selection are selected and can be edited all together. However, you can only delete MIDI notes one at a time.

To selecting multiple individual notes:

1. Click and hold with one finger on a note.
2. With a second finger, click all of the notes you want to include into the selection.



Mixer

The Mixer tab lets you mix tracks, including master controls, plugin effects, global effects sends, panning, levels, and solo and mute.



Mixer tab

Mixer Controls

Master Controls

Sketch provides a Master section on the Mixer tab.

Main Volume

Controls the overall output volume of the Sketch and displays stereo master meters.

Output Limiter Toggle

Switches the Limiter ON/OFF. The Output Limiter keeps the main output signal from clipping.

Click Volume

Lets you adjust the volume of the metronome.

Track Type

A keyboard icon indicates an Instrument track and an audio waveform icon indicates an audio track.

Track Color

The track color can be set in the Track Properties (see Track Properties).

Track Record Enable

Click the Record Enable icon in the right of the color bar to record enable the track (see Recording MIDI Clips and Recording Audio Clips).

Volume Fader

Touch and drag up or down to adjust the track volume.

Pan

Touch and drag left or right to adjust the stereo panning.

Solo

Click **S** (solo) to solo the track. (Click it again to unsolo the track.)

Mute

Click **M** (mute) to solo the track. (Click it again to unmute the track.)

Meters

The vertical stereo meters show the track output level. The clip indicators light red when the signal clips.

Effects Sends

Adjust the effects sends to bus signal to the global effects (see Global FX).

Delay

Adjust the **Delay** dial to send signal from the track to the Global Delay.

Reverb

Adjust the **Reverb** dial to send signal from the track to the Global Reverb.

Effects and Virtual Instruments Inserts

Each track provides three inserts for track effects (with a serial signal path). MIDI tracks use virtual instruments (PlayCell and SynthCell) for MIDI playback on the first insert on the track. Pro Tools Sketch includes the following track effects:

- Chorus
- Compressor
- Crunch Crusher
- Delay
- EQ
- LoFi
- Multimode Filter
- Reverb
- Saturation

For complete descriptions of each effect, see "Effects" on page 622.

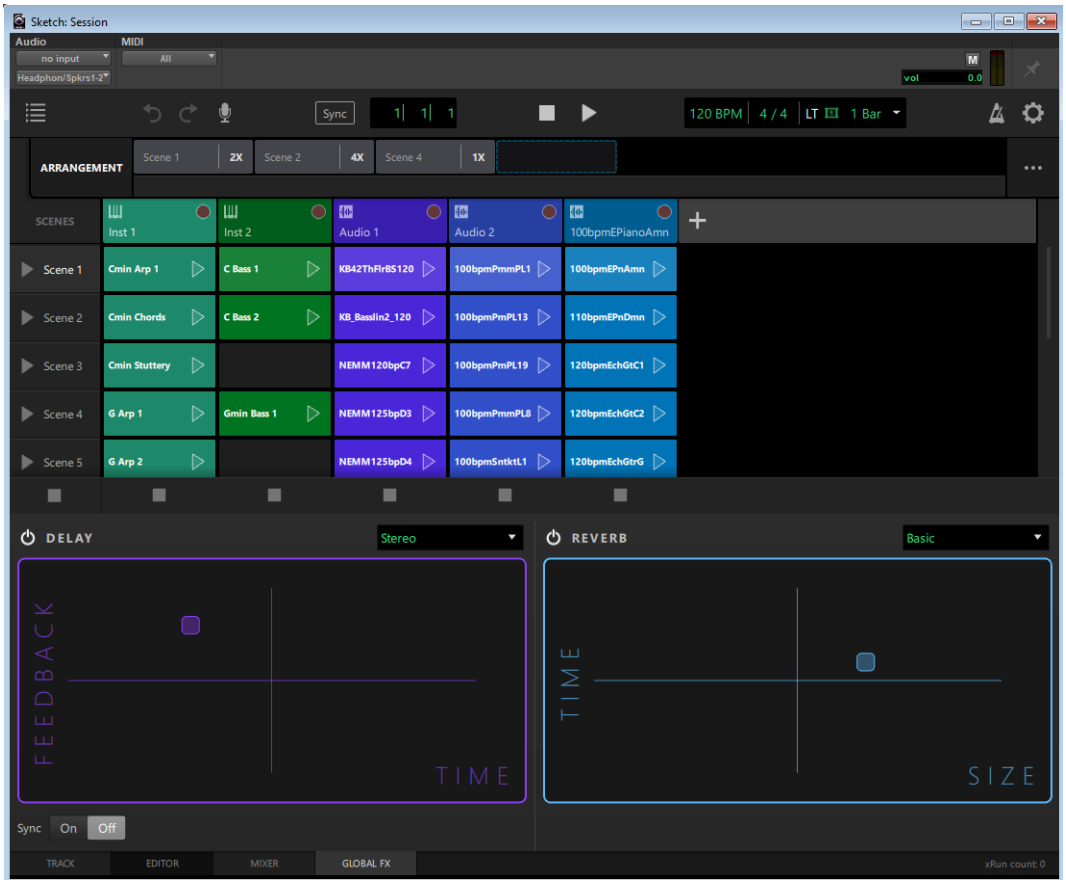
To select a track effect:

1. Select the audio or MIDI track you want.
2. Click the **Track** or **Mixer** tab.
3. Click the insert where you want to add an effect.
4. Click the effect you want in the list. (To remove an effect, select **No Insert**.)



Global FX

The Global FX tab lets you adjust settings for Delay and Reverb, which are fed by the effects sends on tracks in the Mixer tab.



Global FX tab

Delay

Delay Type

Stereo

Feedback is based on the original stereo position.

Cross

Feedback is on the opposite side of the source.

Left

Feedback is based on the left signal only and centered.

Right

Feedback is based on the right signal only and centered.

Ping-Pong

Feedback is hard panned left and right, in an alternating fashion.

Feedback

Adjust the Delay **`Feedback`** from 0 to 100% by clicking and dragging the control up or down.

Time

Adjust the Delay **`Time`** by tapping and clicking the control left or right.

Sync On/Off

Lets you turn **`On`** or **`Off`** synchronization of the **`Delay`** times with the Sketch tempo.

Reverb

Reverb Type

Basic

Basic reverb.

Gated

Classic gated reverb. Perfect for your typical 80s style snare drum.

Room

Basic room reverb, great for more intimate sounds.

Hall

Basic hall reverb algorithm to emulate the space of classic churches and huge buildings.

Taj Mahal

Great for epic sounds and big clouds of reverb.

Time

Adjust the Reverb **`Time`** by clicking and dragging the control up or down.

Size

Adjust the Reverb **`Size`** by clicking and dragging the control left or right.

Effects

Each track provides three effects inserts (with a serial signal path).

Common Controls

All track effects provide a set of common controls.



Effect Name

Displays the Effect name.

Power

Click to enable or disable (bypass) the effect.

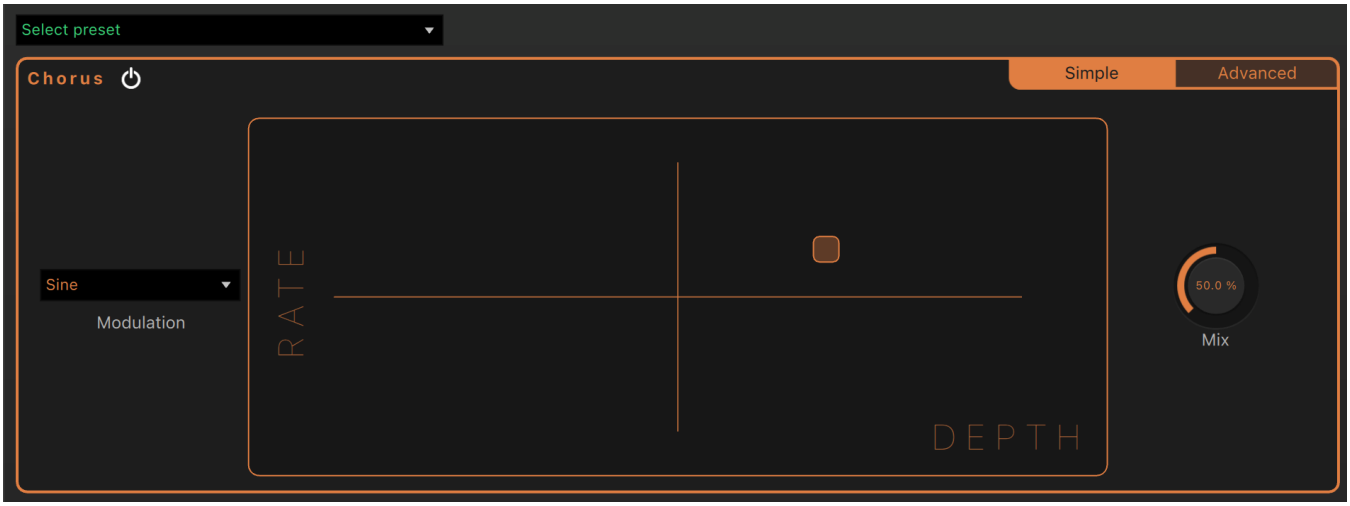
Preset Selector

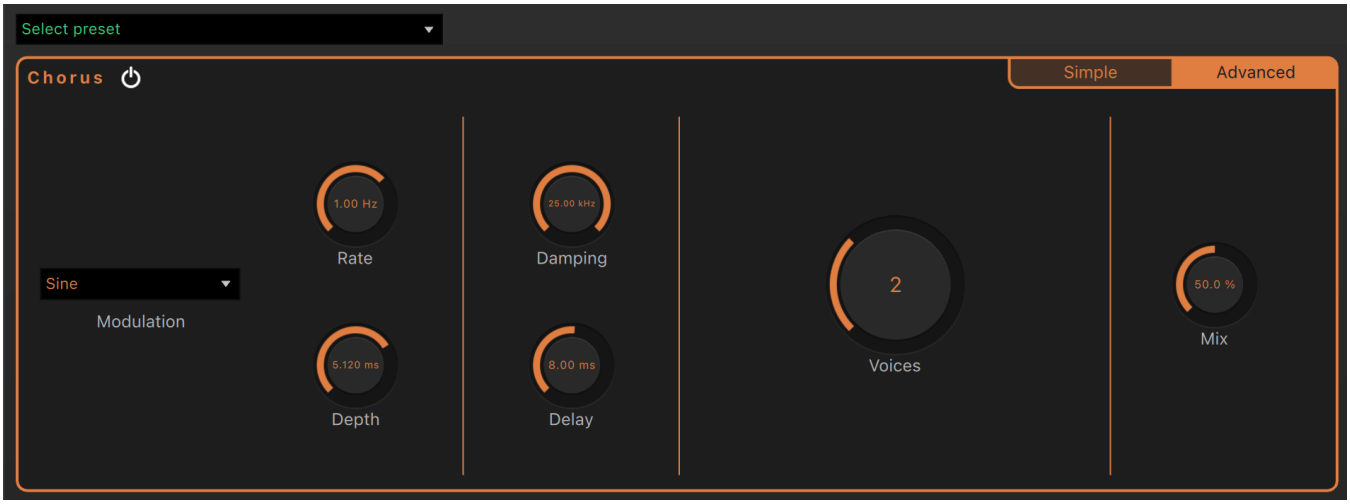
Select the desired preset.

Simple or Advanced

Click the **Simple** tab to access the Simple settings. Click the **Advanced** tab to access the Advanced settings.

Chorus





Modulation

Select the desired waveform for modulation: **Square**, **Sine**, or **Random**.

Rate

Adjust the **Rate** of **Modulation** from 0.10 Hz to 3.00 Hz.

Depth

Adjust the **Depth** of **Modulation** from 0.000 ms to 10.000 ms.

Damping

Adjust frequency **Damping** from 1.00 kHz to 25.00 kHz.

Delay

Adjust the **Delay** time from 0.00 ms to 30.00 ms.

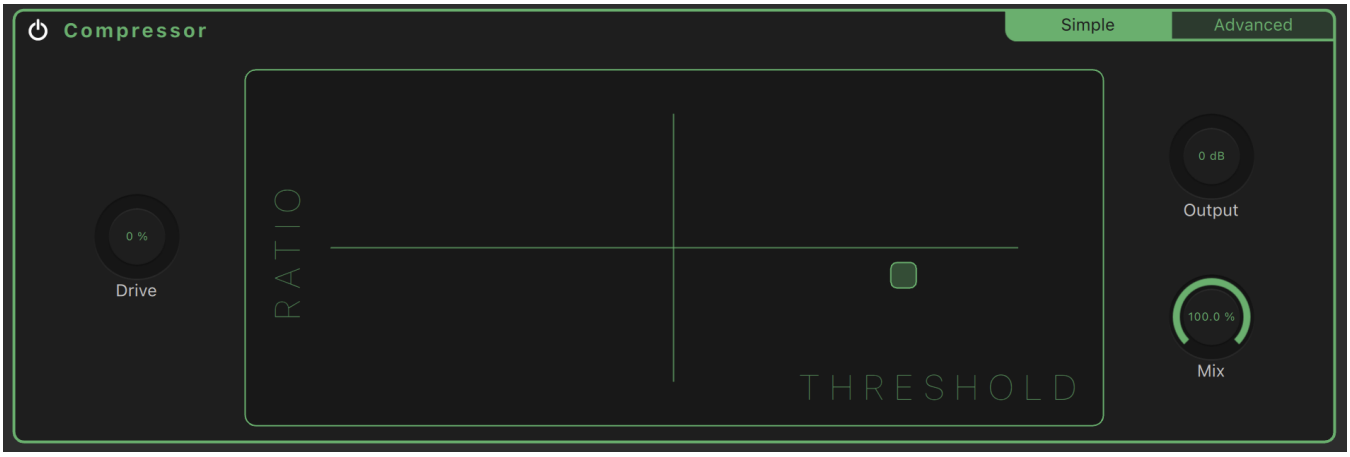
Voices

Select the desired number of chorusing Voices from 1 to 4.

Mix

Adjust the balance between the dry and wet signal from 0 to 100% (where 50% is an equal mix of the dry and wet signal).

Compressor





Drive

Adjust the Drive control from 0 to 100% to add distortion to the signal.

Ratio

The Ratio control sets the compression ratio—the amount of compression applied as the input signal exceeds the threshold. For example, a 2:1 compression ratio means an input level that is 2 dB above the threshold will be attenuated, resulting in an output level that is 1 dB over the threshold. The compression ratio ranges from 1.00:1 to 20.00:1.

Attack

Sets the attack time, or the rate at which gain is reduced after the input signal level crosses the threshold. The smaller the value, the faster the attack. The faster the attack, the more rapidly the compressor applies attenuation to the signal. If you use fast attack times, you should generally use a proportionally longer release time, particularly with material that contains many peaks in close proximity. You can adjust this setting from 0.0 ms to 1,000 ms.

Release

Sets the length of time it takes for compression to be fully deactivated after the input signal drops below the threshold. Release times should be set long enough that if signal levels repeatedly rise above the threshold, the gain reduction "recovers" smoothly. If the release time is too short, the gain can rapidly fluctuate as the compressor repeatedly tries to recover from the gain reduction. If the release time is too long, a loud section of the audio material could cause gain reduction that continues through soft sections of program material without recovering. You can adjust this setting from 0.0 ms to 10.00 s.

Threshold

Sets the level that the input signal must exceed to trigger compression. The signal will be compressed if its level exceeds this setting. If the signal level falls below this value, no compression will occur. You can adjust this setting from –60 dB to 0 dB.

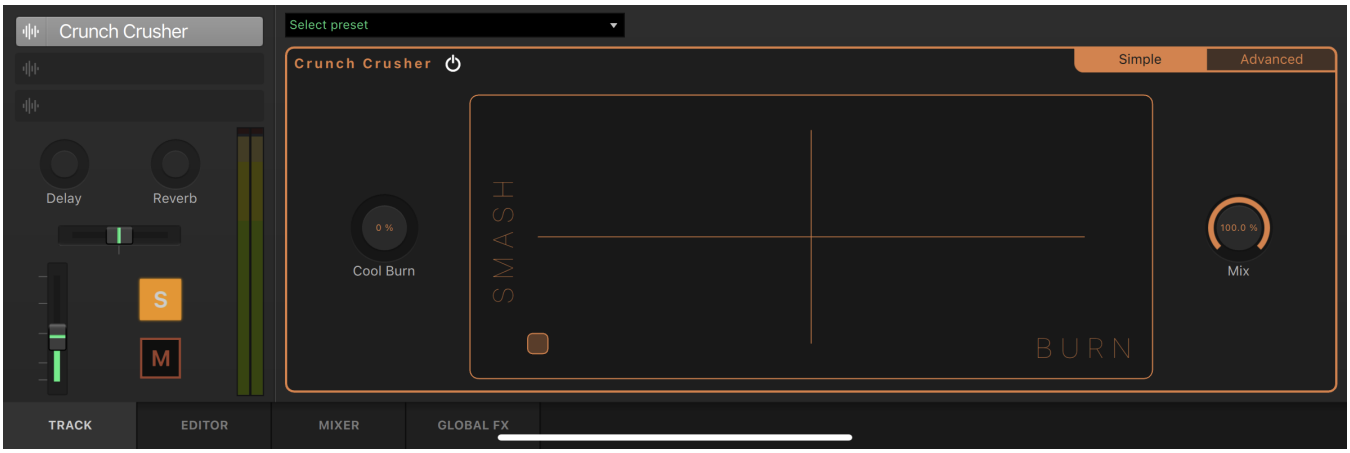
Output

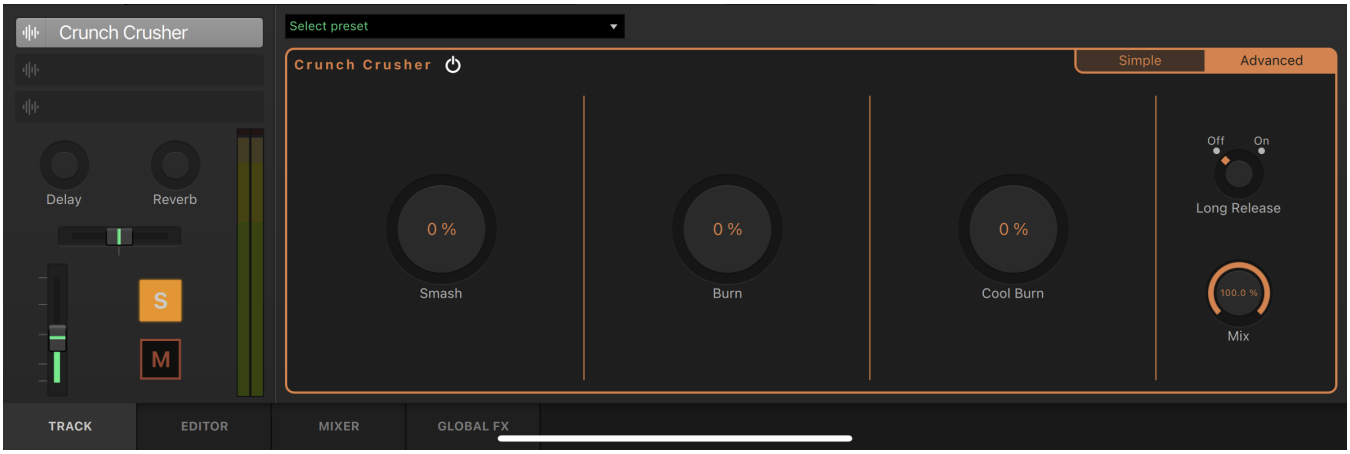
Adjust the output level (gain makeup) from 0 dB to 20 dB.

Mix

Adjust the balance between the dry and wet signal from 0 to 100% (where 50% is an equal mix of the dry and wet signal).

Crunch Crusher





Smash

Adjust the amount of compression applied.

Burn

Adjust the amount of saturation applied.

Cool Burn

Adjust the tone for saturation.

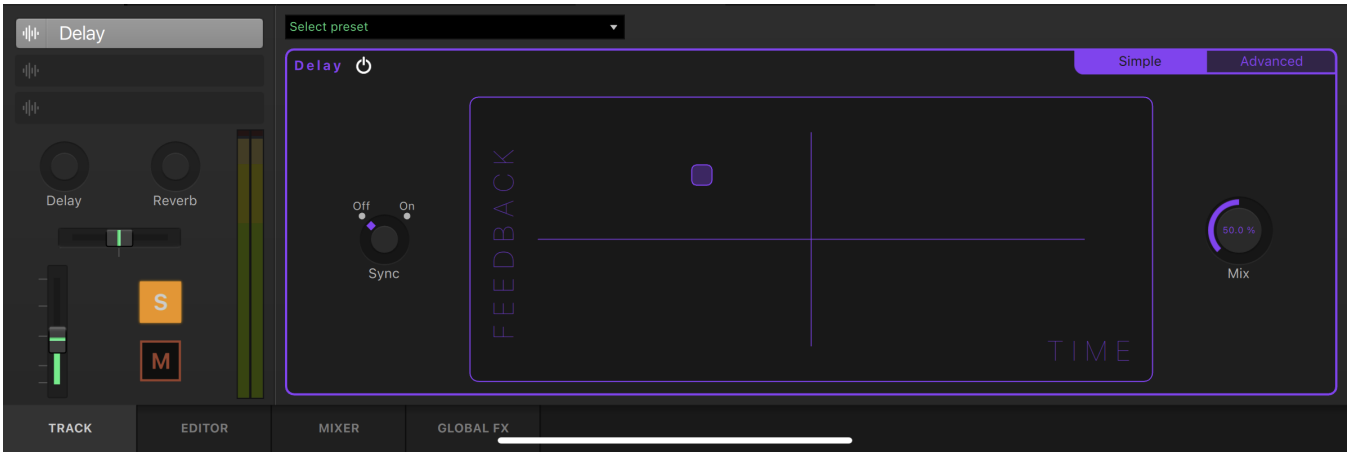
Long Release

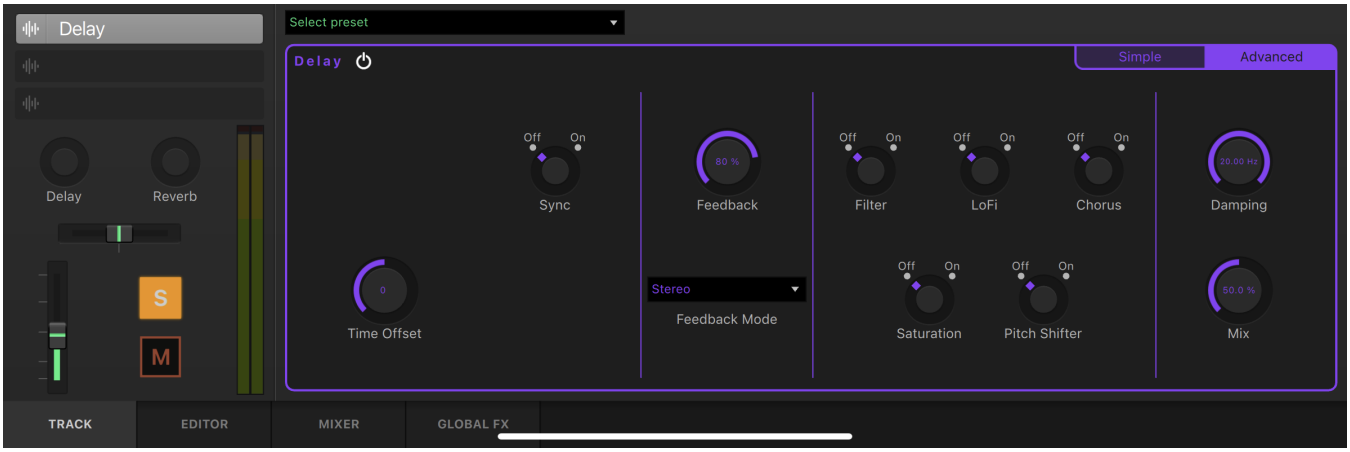
Adjust the compression time release.

Mix

Adjust the balance between the dry and wet signal from 0 to 100% (where 50% is an equal mix of the dry and wet signal).

Delay





Time

Sets the delay time between the original signal and the delayed signal from 0.000 ms to 4.000 ms).

Time Offset

Sets the delay time offset from –50 to 50. Negative values reduce the left channel delay while positive values reduce the right channel delay.

Sync

Lets you enable (or disable) **Sync** to the set tempo.

Feedback

Controls the amount of feedback applied from the output of the delay back into its input (from 0% to 100%). It also controls the number of repetitions of the delayed signal.

Feedback Mode

Lets you select **`Stereo`**, **`Cross`**, **`Left`**, **`Right`**, or **`Ping Pong`**.

Filter

Lets you enable (disable) filtering on the delay signal path.

LoFi

Lets you enable (disable) **`LoFi`** processing on the delay signal path.

Chorus

Lets you enable (disable) **`Chorus`** on the delay signal path.

Saturation

Lets you enable (disable) **`Saturation`** on the delay signal path.

Pitch Shifter

Lets you enable (disable) pitch shifting on the delay signal path.

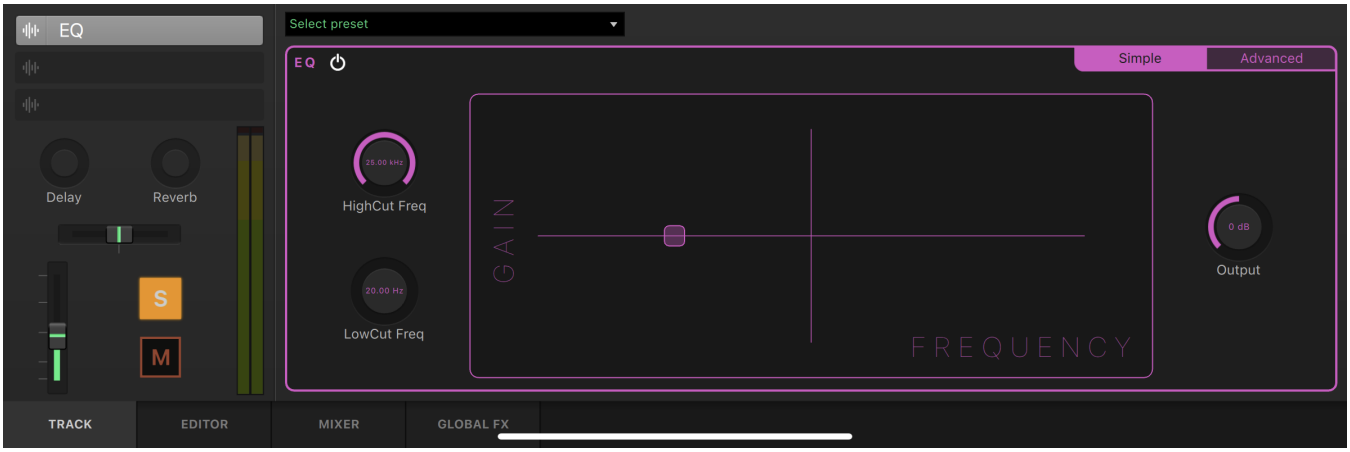
Damping

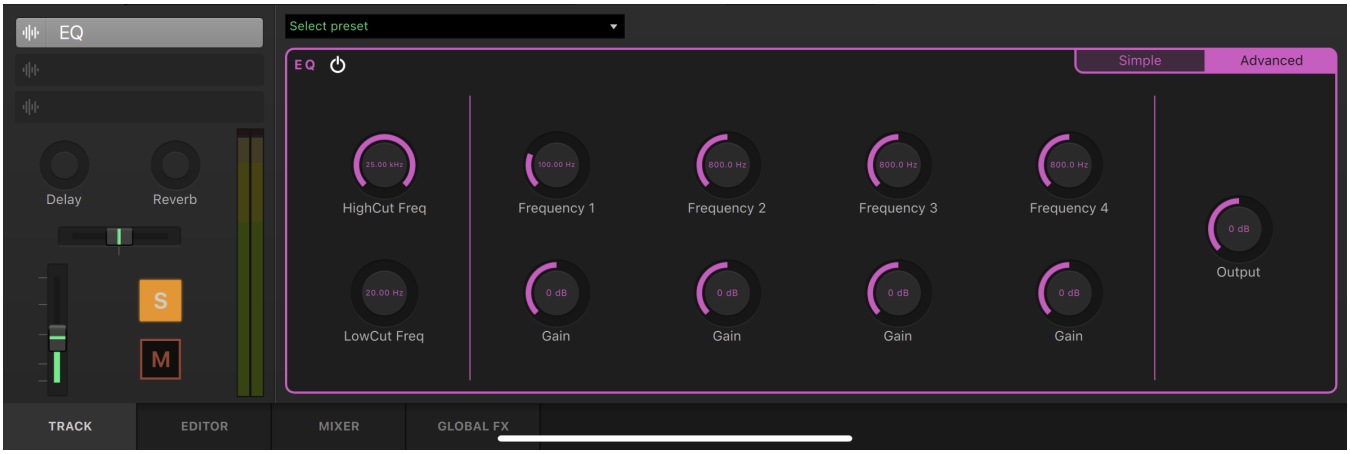
Adjust the damping of frequencies from 1.00 to 20.00 Hz.

Mix

Adjust the balance between the dry and wet signal from 0 to 100% (where 50% is an equal mix of the dry and wet signal).

EQ





HighCut Freq

Adjust the High Cut frequency from 20.00 Hz to 25 kHz.

LowCut Freq

Adjust the Low Cut frequency from 20.00 Hz to 25 kHz.

Frequency/Gain 1

Adjust the Frequency from 50 Hz to 800.00 Hz, and Gain from –20 dB to +20 dB.

Frequency/Gain 2

Adjust the Frequency from 40 Hz to 16.00 kHz, and Gain from –20 dB to +20 dB.

Frequency/Gain 3

Adjust the Frequency from 40 Hz to 16.00 kHz, and Gain from –20 dB to +20 dB.

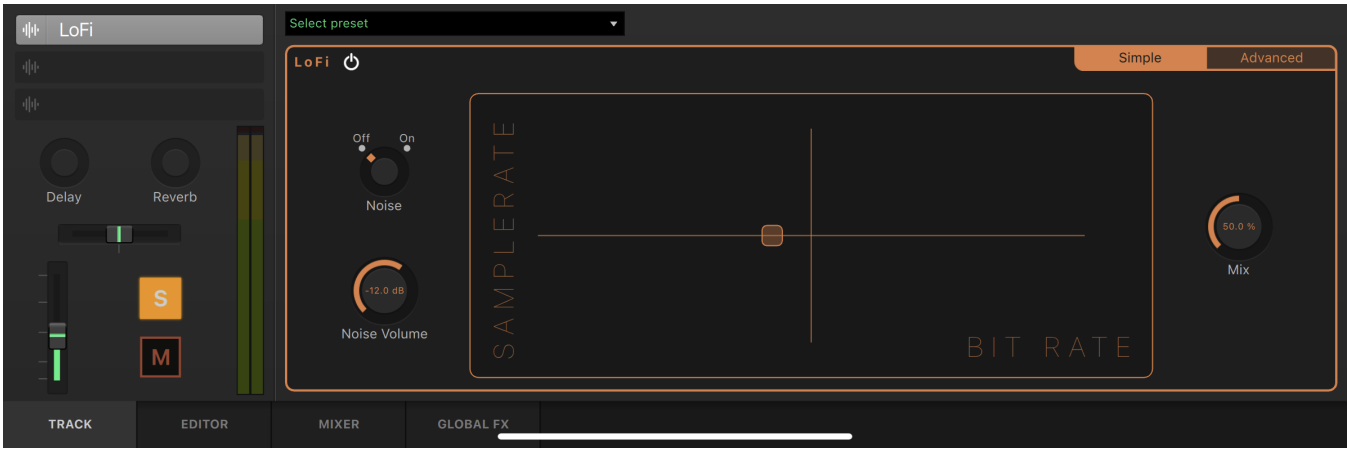
Frequency/Gain 4

Adjust the Frequency from 40 Hz to 16.00 kHz, and Gain from –20 dB to +20 dB.

Output

Adjust the output gain from –20 dB to +20 dB.

LoFi





Sample Rate

Adjust the **`Sample Rate`** of the audio signal from 2.00kHz to 50 kHz. Reducing the **`Sample Rate`** has the effect of degrading its audio quality, the lower the **`Sample Rate`**, the grungier the sound.

Jitter

Adjust the amount of **`Jitter`** in the signal from 0 to 50%.

Bit Rate

Adjust the **`Bit Rate`** from 2.0 to 16.0 bits. Reducing the **`Bit Rate`** has the effect of degrading the audio quality, the lower the **`Bit Rate`**, the grittier the sound.

Broken Bit Rate

Select **`Off`**, **`Light`**, **`Medium`**, or **`Bad`**. These settings randomly reduces the bit rate by a set amount.

Bit Bias

Offset to adjust the quietest audio that jumps from one bit level to the next.

Slew Rate

Limits the change from one sample to the next.

Noise

Select **`On`** to add **`Noise`** to the signal pre or post processing (**`Noise Post`**), or select **`Off`**.

Noise Post

With Noise enabled (**`On`**), noise is added after the LoFi effect

Noise Volume

Adjust the level of the noise added to the signal from –INF to 0.0 dB.

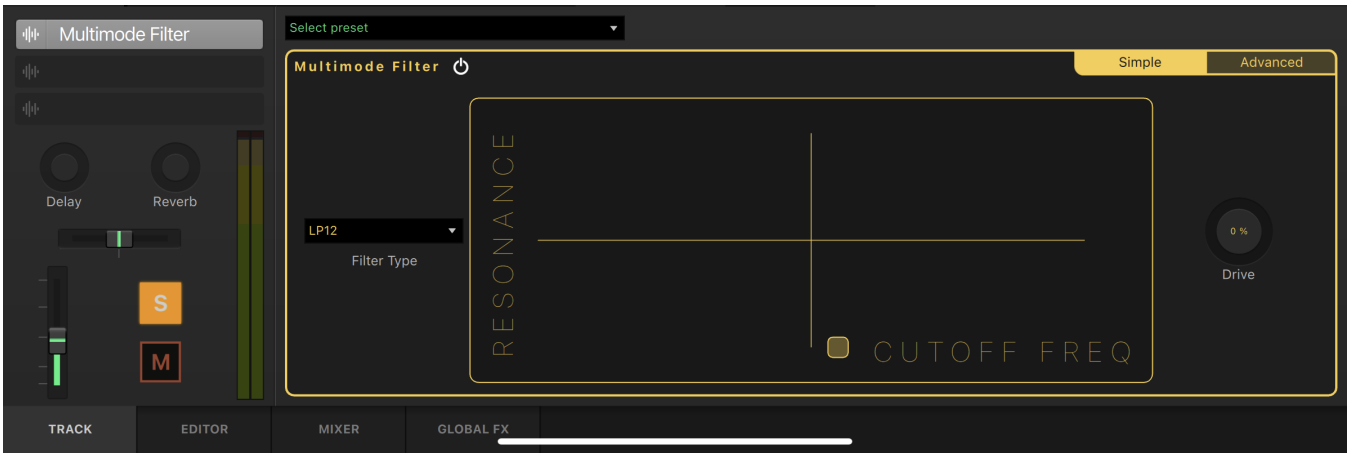
Sharp Boost

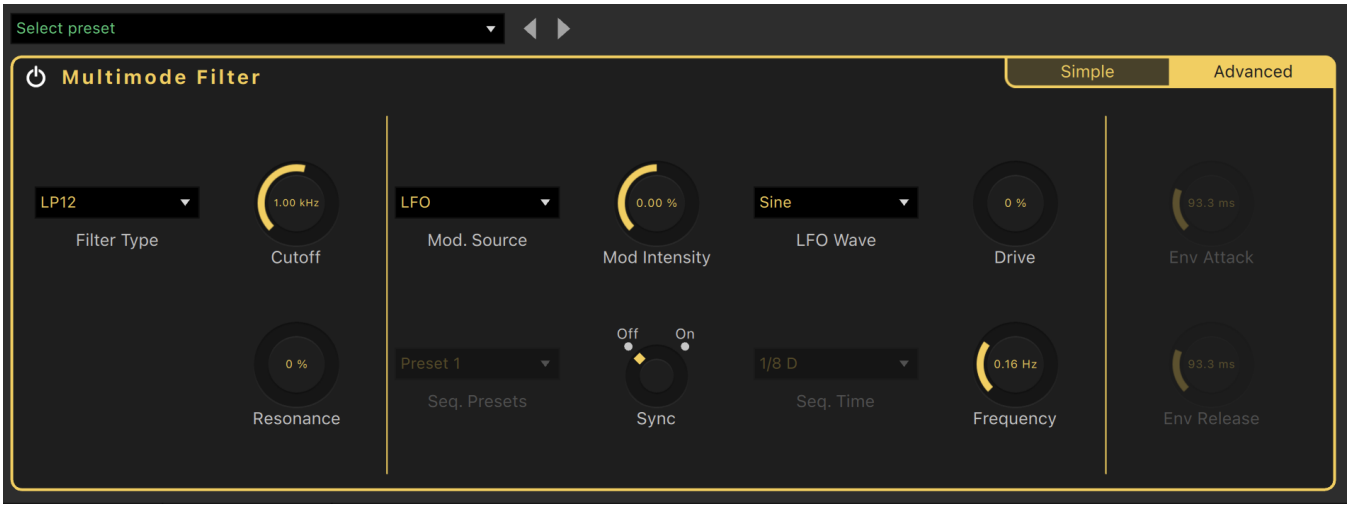
Adjust to boost the high frequencies of the effects signal.

Mix

Adjust the dry versus wet signal from 0 to 100%. At 50%, equal parts of the dry and the wet signal are output.

Multimode Filter





Filter Type

Select the **`Filter Type`**: **`LP12`** (low-pass, 12 dB per octave), **`LP24`** (low-pass, 24 dB per octave), **`HP12`** (high-pass, 12 dB per octave), or **`BP6`** (band-pass, 6 dB per octave).

Cutoff

Adjust the **`Cutoff`** frequency for the filter from 20.00 Hz to 25.00 kHz.

Resonance

Adjust the **`Resonance`** for the **`Cutoff`** frequency from 0 to 100%.

Mod. Source

Select the **`Modulation Source`**: **`LFO`**, **`Envelope Follower`**, or **`Step Sequencer`**.

Seq. Presets

When the **`Modulation Source`** is set to **`Step Sequencer`**, you can select from 5 available preset sequences.

Mod Intensity

Adjust the depth (or intensity) of modulation from –100 to +100%. Negative settings invert the modulation source.

Sync

Select **On** to synchronize the LFO **Frequency** (or rate) to the Sketch tempo. When set to Off, the **Frequency** control determines the LFO rate.

LFO Wave

When the **Modulation Source** is set to **LFO**, you can select any of the following waveforms for the **LFO**: **Sine**, **Saw Down**, **Saw Up**, **Triangle**, **Square**, or **Random** (S&H).

Seq. Time

When the **Modulation Source** is set to **Step Sequencer**, you can select the timing for the notes in the preset sequence from the following rhythmic values: **1/1**, **1/2 D**, **1/1 T**, **1/2**, **1/4 D**, **1/2 T**, **1/4**, **1/8 D**, **1/4 T**, **1/8**, **1/16 D**, **1/8 T**, or **1/16** (where "D" indicates a dotted rhythm and "T" indicates a triplet rhythm).

Drive

Adjust the **Drive** to add distortion to the filtered signal.

Frequency

When the **Modulation Source** is set to **LFO**, and **Sync** is enabled, you can set the rate of the **LFO** in rhythmic values from 1/16 to 1/1 (including dotted and triplet rhythmic values. When the **Modulation Source** is set to **LFO**, and **Sync** is disabled, you can set the rate of the **LFO** from 0.01 Hz to 100.0 Hz.

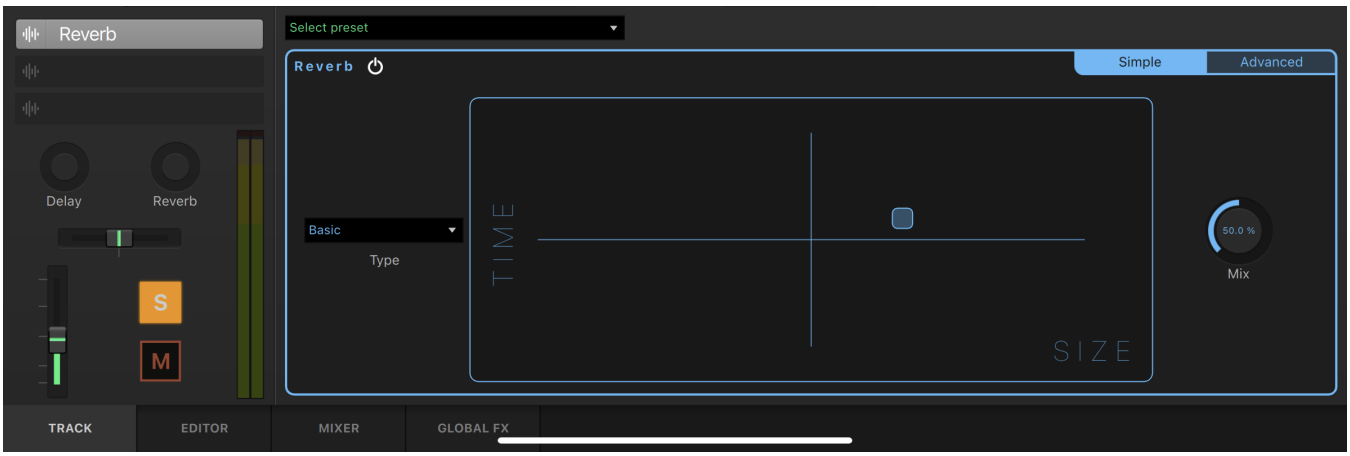
Env Attack

When the **Modulation Source** is set to **Envelope Follower**, you can set the **Envelope Attack** time from 0.0 ms to 100.00 s.

Env Release

When the **Modulation Source** is set to **Envelope Follower**, you can set the **Envelope Release** time from 0.0 ms to 100.00 s.

Reverb





PreDelay

Determines the amount of time that elapses between the original audio event and the onset of reverberation from 0.00 ms to 250.00 ms. Under natural conditions, the amount of pre-delay depends on the size and construction of the acoustic space, and the relative position of the sound source and the listener. Pre-Delay attempts to duplicate this phenomenon and is used to create a sense of distance and volume within an acoustic space. Long Pre-Delay settings place the reverberant field behind rather than on top of the original audio signal.

Time

Adjust the rate at which the reverberation decays from 0.10 to 60.00 seconds after the original direct signal stops. The value of the **Time** setting is affected by the **Size** setting. Adjust the reverb **Size** setting before adjusting the **Time** setting. If you set **Time** to its maximum value, infinite reverberation is produced. The **High Damping** also affects reverb **Time**.

Size

Adjust the overall **Size** of the reverberant space from 25.00 to 200.0% of the selected **Type** (reverberant space). First, select the reverb **Type** and then adjust the Size setting that fits the acoustic space that you are trying to create.

Type

Select the desired reverberation space: **Basic**, **Gated**, **Room**, **Hall**, or **Taj Mahal**.

Modulation

Adjust pitch modulation within the reverberation from 0 to 100% for a richer sound.

HighDamp

Adjust damping of the high frequency components of the reverb from 2,000 to 20,000 Hz. When set relatively low, high frequencies decay more quickly than low frequencies, simulating the effect of air absorption in a hall. The maximum value of this control is Off (which effectively means bypass).

Diffusion

Adjust the degree to which initial echo density increases over time from 0 to 100%. High settings result in high initial build-up of echo density. Low settings cause low initial buildup. This control interacts with the **Size** control to affect the overall reverb density. High settings of diffusion can be used to enhance percussion. Use low or moderate settings for clearer and more natural-sounding vocals and mixes.

Compression

Adjust the amount of Compression from 0 to 100%

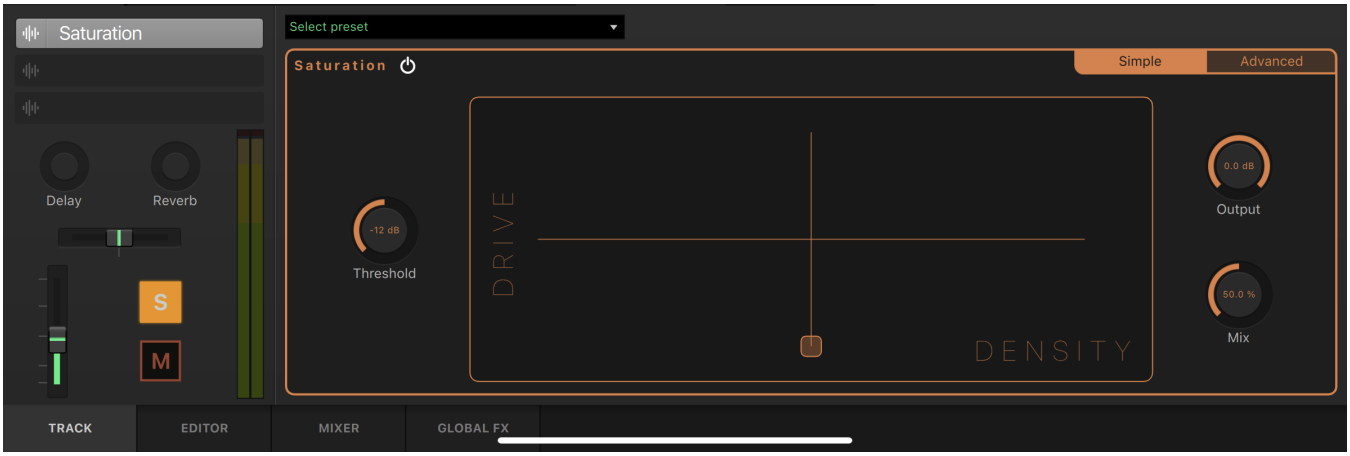
Ducking

While there is an incoming signal present the reverb signal is ducked when enabled.

Mix

Adjust the balance between the dry and wet signal from 0 to 100% (where 50% is an equal mix of the dry and wet signal).

Saturation





Threshold

Adjust the **`Threshold`** level at which saturation of the signal begins from –24 to 0 dB.

Density

Adjust the distortion curve from concave to convex from –100 to +100%.

Drive

Adjust the amount of overall **`Drive`** (distortion) in the saturation effect by increasing the input signal while automatically compensating by reducing the overall output. **`Drive`** is adjustable from 0 dB to 40 dB.

Low Drive

Adjust the amount of **`Drive`** (saturated distortion) that is applied to low frequencies in the signal from –12 to +12 dB.

High Drive

Adjust the amount of **Drive** (saturated distortion) is applied to high frequencies in the signal from –12 to +12 dB.

High Bypass

Adjust the high frequency bypass in the output signal from 40.00 to 16.00 kHz.

Output

Adjust the Output level from –INF to 0.0 dB.

Mix

Adjust the balance between the dry and wet signal from 0 to 100% (where 50% is an equal mix of the dry and wet signal).

PlayCell

PlayCell is a Virtual Instrument that provides high-quality sampled instruments for music creation in any genre, no matter your level of expertise. It combines an extensive factory library of drums, pianos, guitars, basses, synths, orchestral, and other instruments. Each instrument comes with pre-assigned macro controls, fine-tuned to impact the character of each sound. PlayCell can be used for MIDI playback on Instrument tracks in Track view.



Common Controls



Preset Selector

Click the preset selector to view a list of presets. Click the left or right triangles select the previous or next preset.

Octave

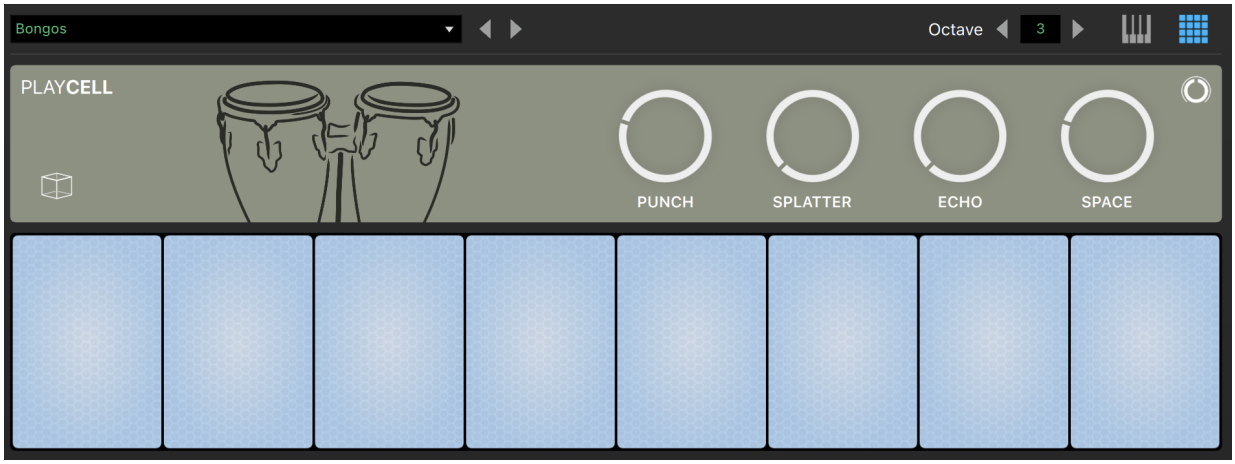
Click the left or right triangles to change the octave focus of the Keyboard or Pads.

Keyboard Icon

Click the Keyboard icon to show the playable on-screen keyboard. Use the on-screen keyboard for pitched instruments, such as **`Piano`** or **`Solo Cello`**.

Pads

Click the Pads icon to show the playable on-screen pads. The pads are chromatic in terms of MIDI note mappings. Use the on-screen pads for unpitched percussion instruments, such as **`Bongos`** or **`Taikos`**.



Macros

PlayCell provides macro controls that control various parameters depending on the selected instrument. Each macro control is fine tuned by the creator of each instrument, displays descriptive labels for what parameter the macro is controlling, and has a significant effect on the character of the sound.



Randomize

The Randomize button lets you randomize the settings for the macros with a single click.

Global Controls

Click to switch from Macros view to Global Controls view.

Global Controls



Global Amplitude Controls

Pan

Click and drag to adjust stereo panning left/right.

Volume

Click and drag to adjust volume.

ADSR Envelope

Click and drag any slider to adjust the Attack (A), Decay (D), Sustain (S), and Release (R) amplitude envelope settings.

Tune

Semi

Click and drag left/right to adjust the global tuning in semitones.

Cent

Click and drag left/right to adjust the global tuning in cents.

Global Filter Controls

Frequency

Click and drag to adjust the filter cutoff frequency (20 to 25,000.0 Hz).

Resonance

Click and drag to adjust the filter resonance (0 to 100%).

ADSR Envelope

Click and drag any slider to adjust the Attack (A), Decay (D), Sustain (S), and Release (R) filter envelope settings.

ENV

Click and drag to adjust the amount the envelope affects the Filter Frequency.

X

Click to switch to Macros view.

SynthCell

SynthCell is a subtractive synthesis virtual instrument that can be used for MIDI playback on Instrument tracks in Track view.

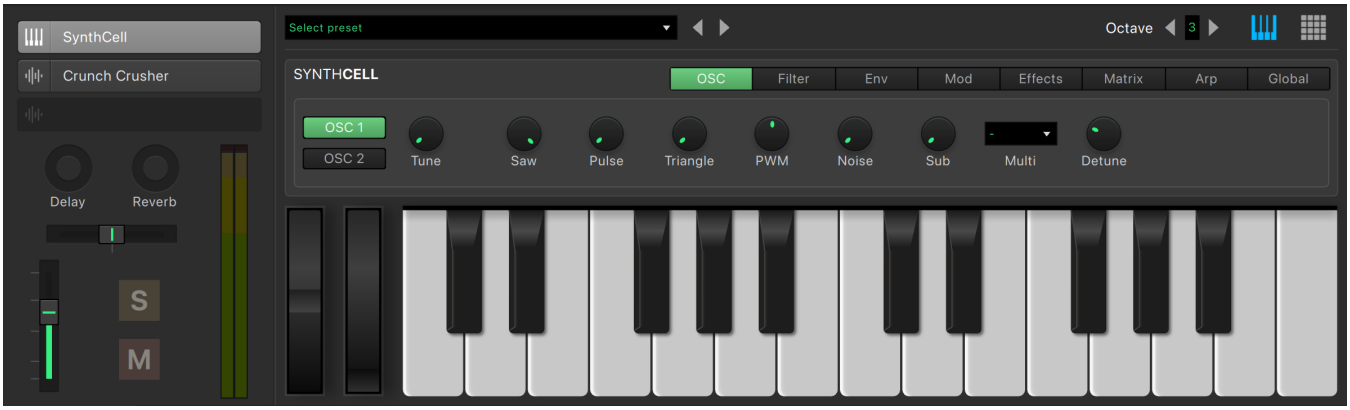


Common Controls

The common controls of SynthCell have the same functionality of as those of PlayCell. For more information, see "Common Controls" above.

OSC 1

Oscillator 1 lets you mix several different waveforms, a noise generator, and a sub-oscillator.



Tune

Adjust the tuning of Oscillator 1 between –24 and +24 semitones.

Saw

Adjust the level of a Saw wave from 0 to 100%. A sawtooth wave sound is harsh and clear, and its spectrum contains both even and odd harmonics. It is particularly useful for creating leads and aggressive string-like sounds.

Pulse

Adjust the level of a Pulse wave from 0 to 100%. The Pulse wave length can be modified by adjusting the PWM control: at 50% it is a square wave, at 0% it is an impulse, and at 100% a rectangle wave. Square waves consist of odd harmonics and are useful for emulating woodwind instrument–like sounds.

Triangle

Adjust the level of a Triangle wave from 0 to 100%. Like a square wave, a triangle wave contains only odd harmonics. However, the higher harmonics roll off much faster than with a square wave.

PWM

Adjust the amount of Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) from 0 to 100%. This affects the width (duty cycle) of the Pulse wave oscillator. At 50% the Pulse wave oscillator produces a square wave.

Noise

Adjust the level of the Noise generator (white noise) from 0 to 100%.

Sub

Adjust the level of the Sub-oscillator (a square wave an octave lower) from 0 to 100%.

Multi

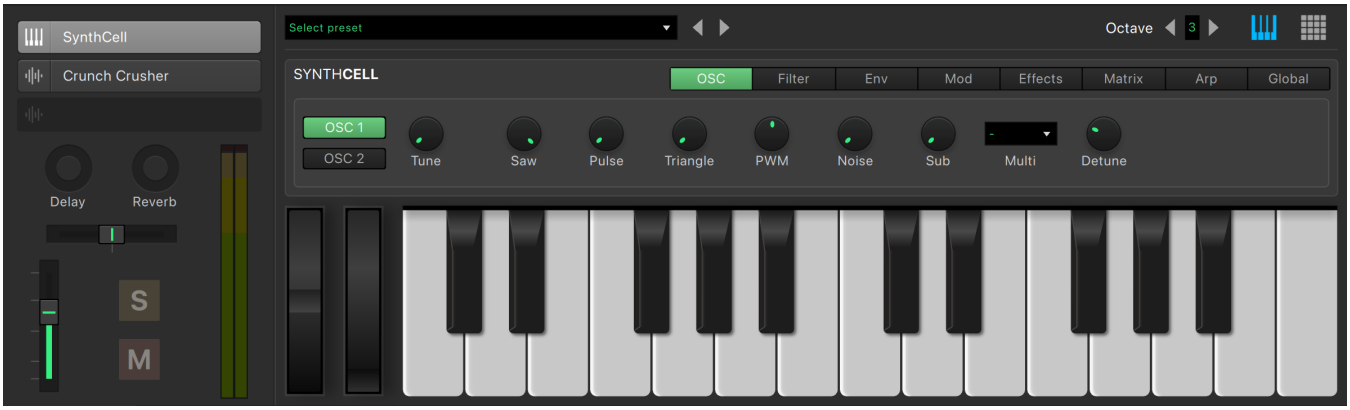
Multiplies the number of Saw oscillators per voice for Oscillator 1 from none (–) up to x7. Use this setting in conjunction with the Detune control to thicken or “fatten” the sound.

Detune

Adjust the Detune control to detune the multiple saw oscillators from one another between 0 to 100%. This control has no effect if Multi is set to none (–).

OSC 2

Oscillator 2 lets you mix Saw and Pulse waveforms.



Tune

Adjust the tuning of Oscillator 2 between –24 and +24 semitones.

Saw

Adjust the level of a Saw wave from 0 to 100%.

Pulse

Adjust the level of a Pulse wave from 0 to 100%.

PWM

Adjust the amount of Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) from 0 to 100%. This affects the width (duty cycle) of the Pulse wave oscillator. At 50% the Pulse wave oscillator produces a square wave.

Fine Tune

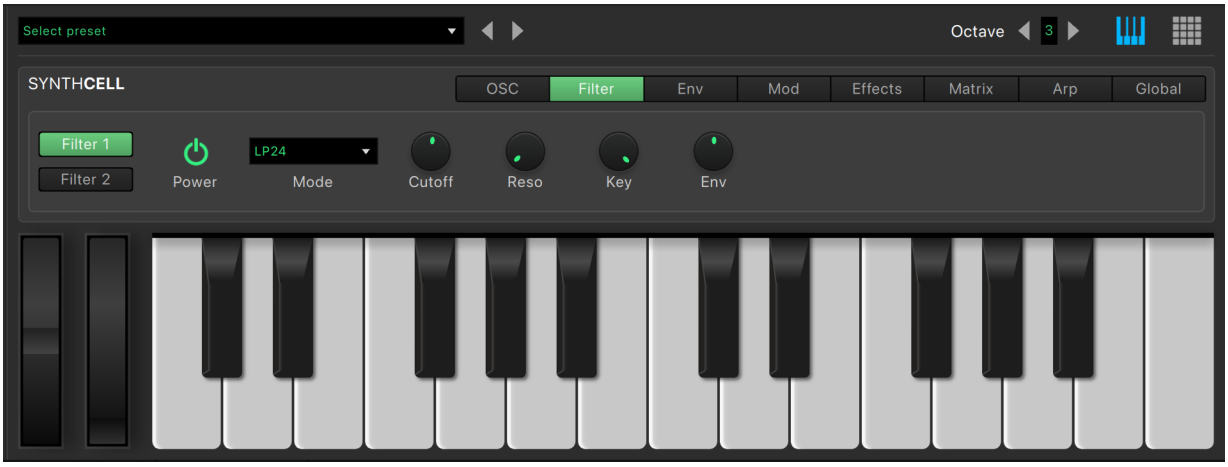
Adjust the Fine Tune for Oscillator 2 between –50 to +50 cents. Slightly detuning Oscillator 2 against Oscillator 1 can create a warmer, richer tone when mixing both oscillators together.

Filter

Filter 1 processes the output of both Oscillator 1 and 2. Filter 2 is applied to the signal path after Filter 1.

Power

Enable (or disable) the **`Power`** button to enable (or disable) the selected filter.



Filter 1

Power

Click the Power button in the upper right corner of the Filter 1 panel to enable or disable the filter.

Mode

Choose one of the following filter types: **HP12** (12 dB per octave high pass filter), **BP12** (12 dB per octave band pass filter), **LP6** (6 dB per octave low pass filter), **LP12** (12 dB per octave low pass filter), **LP18** (18 dB per octave low pass filter), or **LP24** (24 dB per octave low pass filter).

Cutoff

Adjust the **Cutoff** frequency of the filter from 20 Hz to 25.00 kHz

Reso

Adjust the resonance (**Reso**) of the filter from 0 to 100%.

Key

Adjust how much the keyboard (pitch) affects the Cutoff frequency of the filter from 0 to 100%.

Env

Adjust how much the Filter Envelope affects the Cutoff frequency of the from –100% (inverted envelope) to +100%. The default setting is 0% (no affect).

Filter 2

Power

Click the Power button in the upper right corner of the Filter 2 panel to enable or disable the Filter.

Mode

Choose one of the following filter types: **HP12 SVF** (12 dB per octave state variable high pass filter), **HP12 MS** (12 dB per octave high pass filter that emulates the filter of a popular, patchable semi-polyphonic synthesizer from the late 70s), **BP12 SVF** (12 dB per octave state variable band pass filter), **LP12 SVF** (12 dB per octave state variable low pass filter), **LP12 MS** (12 dB per octave low pass filter that emulates the filter of a popular, patchable semi-polyphonic synthesizer from the late 70s), **Notch** (notch filter where the **Reso** setting controls the notch width), **Comb +** (Positive comb filter that adds a delayed copy of the signal resulting in a series of peaks/notches), or **Comb –** (negative comb filter that subtracts a delayed copy of the signal resulting in a series of notches/peaks).

Cutoff

Adjust the Cutoff frequency of the filter from 20 Hz to 25.00 kHz.

Reso

Adjust the resonance of the filter from 0 to 100%.

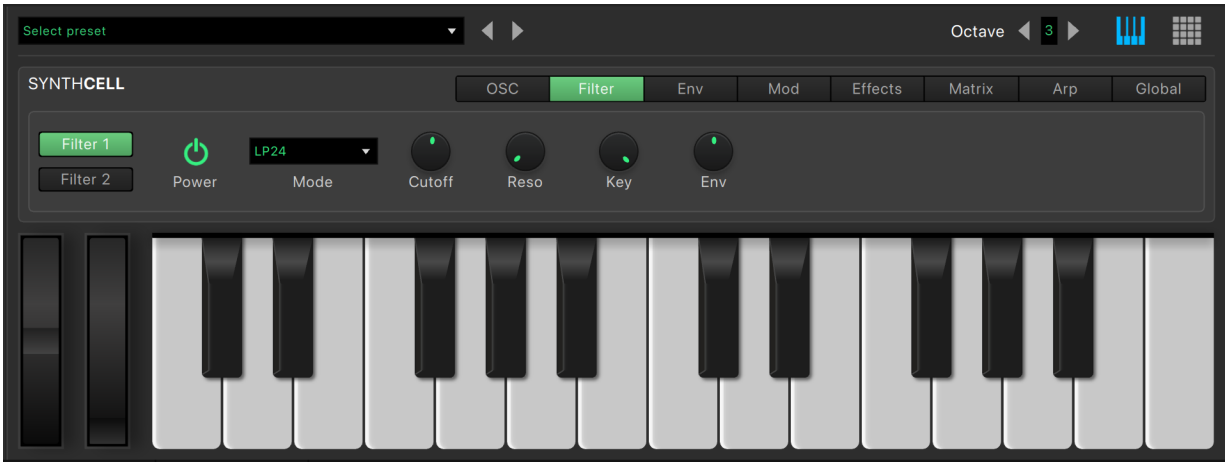
Key

Adjust how much the keyboard (pitch) affects the Cutoff frequency of the filter from 0 to100%.

Env

Adjust how much the Filter Envelope affects the Cutoff frequency of the filter from –100% (inverted envelope) to +100%. The default setting is 0% (no affect).

Env



Amplitude

The Amplitude Envelope shapes the level of each note from MIDI Note On to MIDI Note Off.

Attack

Adjust the **A** control to set the duration of the attack portion of the envelope from 0 ms to 16.00 s.

Decay

Adjust the **D** control to set the duration of the decay portion of the envelope from 0 ms to 16.00 s.

Sustain

Adjust the **S** control to set the level of the sustain portion of the envelope from 0 to 100%.

Release

Adjust the **R** control to set the duration of the release portion of the envelope from 0 ms to 16.00 s.

Velocity

Adjust the **Vel** control to set how much MIDI note velocity affects the level of the envelope from 0 to 100%.

Filter

The Filter Envelope can applied to Filters 1 and 2. Adjust the **Env** controls for each filter to determine how much the Filter Envelope affects the Cutoff frequency of the filter.

Attack

Adjust the **A** control to set the duration of the attack portion of the envelope from 0 ms–16.00 s.

Decay

Adjust the **D** control to set the duration of the decay portion of the envelope from 0 ms–16.00 s.

Sustain

Adjust the **S** control to set the level of the sustain portion of the envelope from 0–100%.

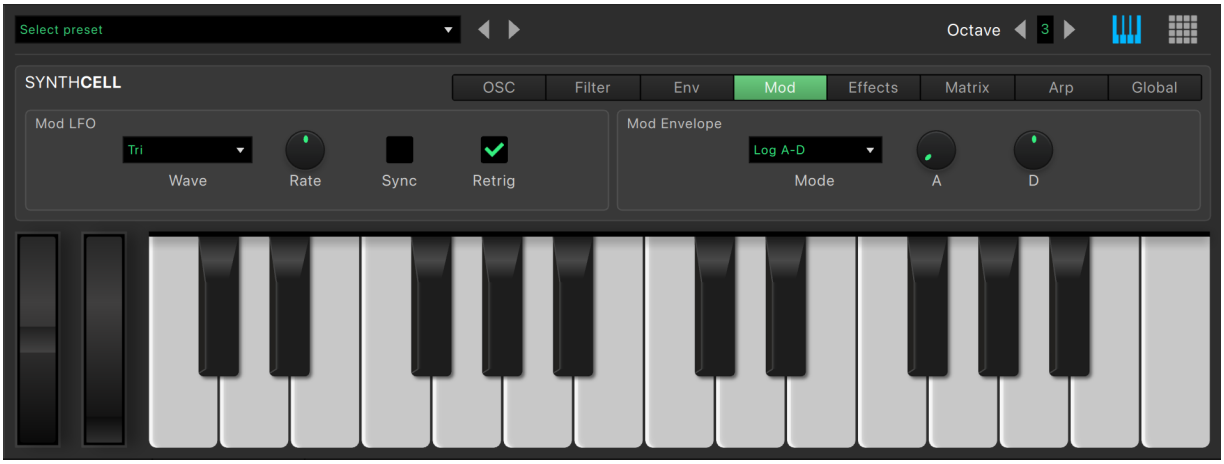
Release

Adjust the **R** control to set the duration of the release portion of the envelope from 0 ms–16.00 s.

Velocity

Adjust the **Vel** control to set how much MIDI note velocity affects the level of the envelope from 0–100%.

Mod



Mod LFO

The **Mod LFO** (Low Frequency Oscillator) can be used to modulate Oscillator pitch for vibrato as well as many other modulation possibilities that can be mapped in the Mod Matrix.

Wave

Select one of the following waveforms for the LFO: **Sin** (sine wave), **Tri** (triangle wave), **Sqr** (square wave), **Sqr Up** (square wave up waveform is the inverse, low to high to low to high, of a regular square wave, high to low to high to low), **Saw** (sawtooth wave with a down ramp), **Saw Up** (sawtooth wave with an up ramp), Saw Exp (Sawtooth wave with an exponential down ramp), **S+H** (sample and hold), or **Drift** (a smoothly rounded random signal, like sample and hold but with the steps rounded off).

Rate

Set the **Rate** of the LFO. When **Sync** is disabled, **Rate** can be set from 0.01 to 100.0 Hz. When **Sync** is enabled, the values for the **Rate** settings are measured as fractions or multiples of a quarter-note: where 1.00 is a quarter-note, 0.50 is an eighth-note, 2.00 is a half-note, and so on.

Sync

Enable **Sync** to synchronize the LFO to the Sketch tempo.

Retrig

Enable **Retrig** to re-trigger the start of the LFO with every MIDI Note On.

Mod Envelope

The **Mod Envelope** provides a variable ramp generator that can be used to modulate other parameters of the synthesizer.

Mode

Select one of the following ramp shapes for the Modulation Envelope: **Lin A-D** (Linear Attack and Decay), **Log A-D** (Logarithmic Attack and Decay), **Exp A-D** (Exponential Attack and Decay), **Lin A-R** (Linear Attack and Release), **Log A-R** (Logarithmic Attack and Release), or **Exp A-R** (Exponential Attack and Release).

Attack

Adjust the **A** control to set the duration of the attack portion of the Modulation Envelope from 0 ms to 16.00 s.

Decay

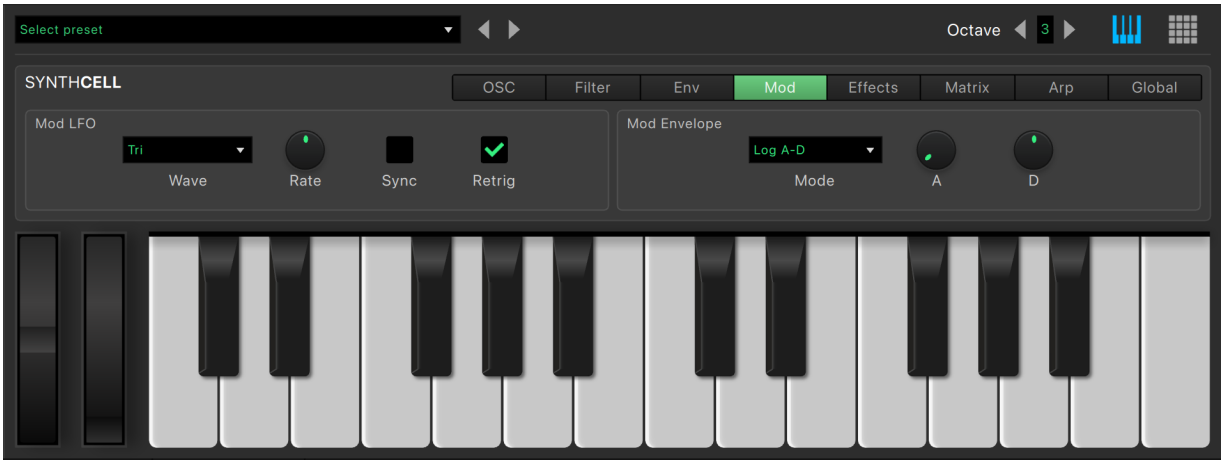
Adjust the **D** control to set the duration of the decay (or release) portion of the Modulation Envelope from 0 ms to 16.00 s.

Effects

Power

Enable (or disable) the **Power** button to enable (or disable) the selected effect.

Reverb



Mode

Select one of the following Reverb options: **Small** (emulates a small room), **Room** (emulates a medium room), **Chapel** (emulates a medium chapel space), **Hall** (emulates a medium hall), **Large Hall** (emulates a large hall), **Stadium** (emulates a large stadium), **Outer Space** (way out reverb), **Deep Space** (big, vast reverb), **Digital** (digital reverb), **Left Right** (panning reverb), **Reverse** (reverse reverb), or **Gated** (gated reverb).

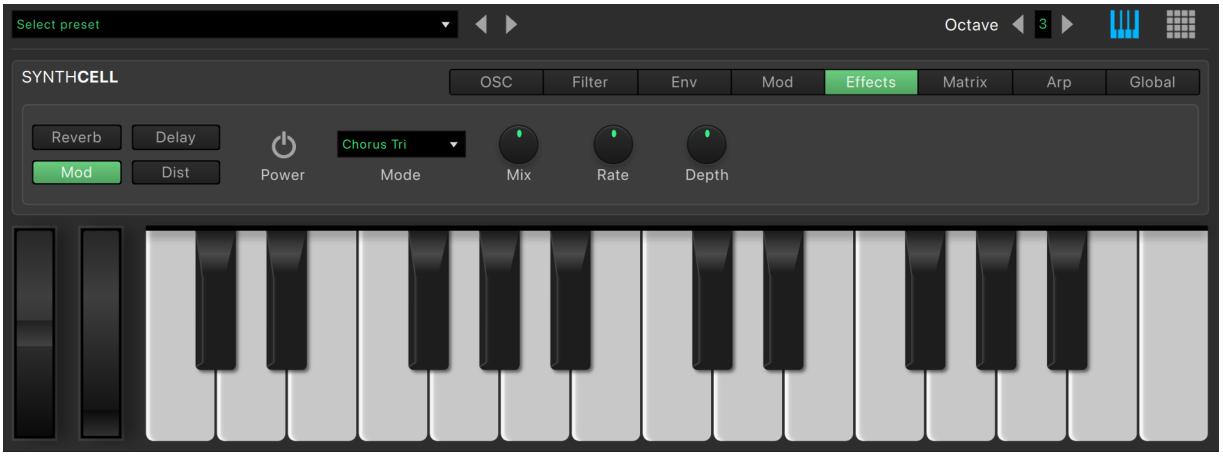
Mix

Adjust the **Mix** control to set the balance of dry versus wet (effected) signal from 0– to 100%.

Time

Adjust the reverb time as percentage of the selected **Mode** from –100 to +100%.

Mod



Mode

Select one of the following Modulation effect options: **`Chorus Tri`** (chorus with triangle LFO resulting in steady detuning), **`Chorus Sine`** (chorus with sine LFO resulting in undulating detuning), **`Chorus Random`** (chorus with random LFO resulting in ensemble-like detuning), **`Flanger`** (flanger effect), or **`Phaser`** (phaser effect).

Mix

Adjust the **`Mix`** control to set the balance of dry versus wet (effected) signal from 0 to 100%.

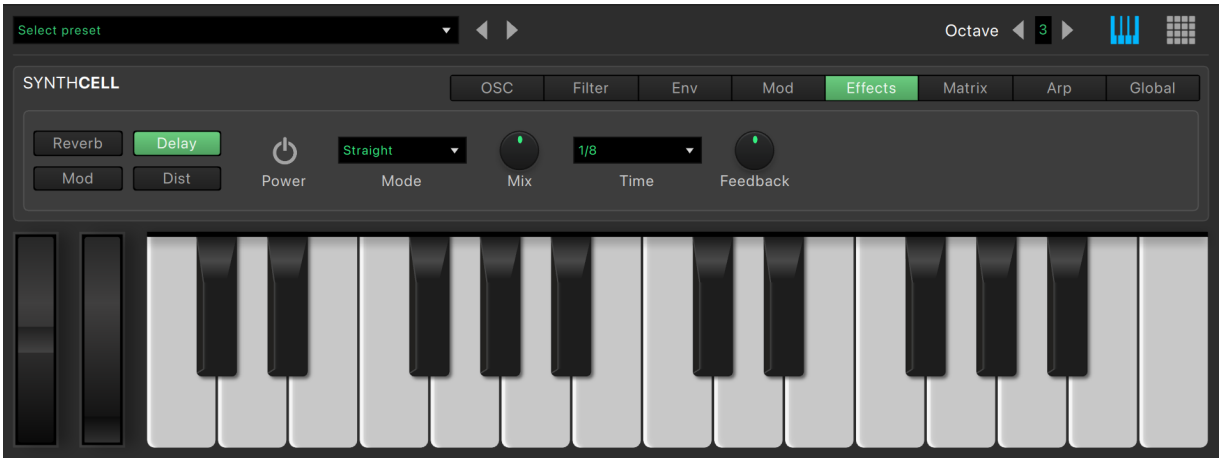
Rate

Adjust the **`Rate`** of modulation from 0.10 Hz to 10.00 Hz.

Depth

Adjust the Depth of modulation from 0 to 100%.

Delay



Mode

Select one of the following Delay options: **`Straight`** (equally spaced repetition), **`Spread`** (slightly different left and right delay times to create a stereo spread), **`Ping Pong`** (alternating left and right delays), **`L/R Straight`** (left delay time is half of the right delay time), **`L/R Triplet`** (left delay time is two-thirds of the right delay time), **`L/R Dotted`** (left delay time is three-quarters of the right delay time), **`Thin`** (delay with a low-cut filter), **`Dark`** (delay with a high-cut filter), **`Tape`** (delay with both low-cut and high-cut filters,

and also “wow” and “flutter”), **L/R Tape** (like **Tape** delay, but with a ping pong effect), **Rise 3** (repeating pattern of three delays from soft to loud), **Rise 4** (repeating pattern of four delays from soft to loud), **L L R R** (alternating delays between two left then two right), **Circles** (quasi-random pattern of left and right delays), **Gallop** (rhythmic delay pattern with gaps), **Offbeat** (rhythmic delay pattern on the offbeats relative to the input), **Trance 1** (Delay pattern of dotted intervals), **Trance 2** (alternative delay pattern of dotted intervals), **Flit Up 3** (repeating pattern of three delays with a rising cutoff filter), **Flit Down 3** (repeating pattern of three delays with a descending cutoff filter), **Flit Up 4** (repeating pattern of four delays with a rising cutoff filter), or **Flit Down 4** (repeating pattern of three delays with a descending cutoff filter).

Mix

Adjust the Mix control to set the balance of dry versus wet (effected) signal from 0 to 100%.

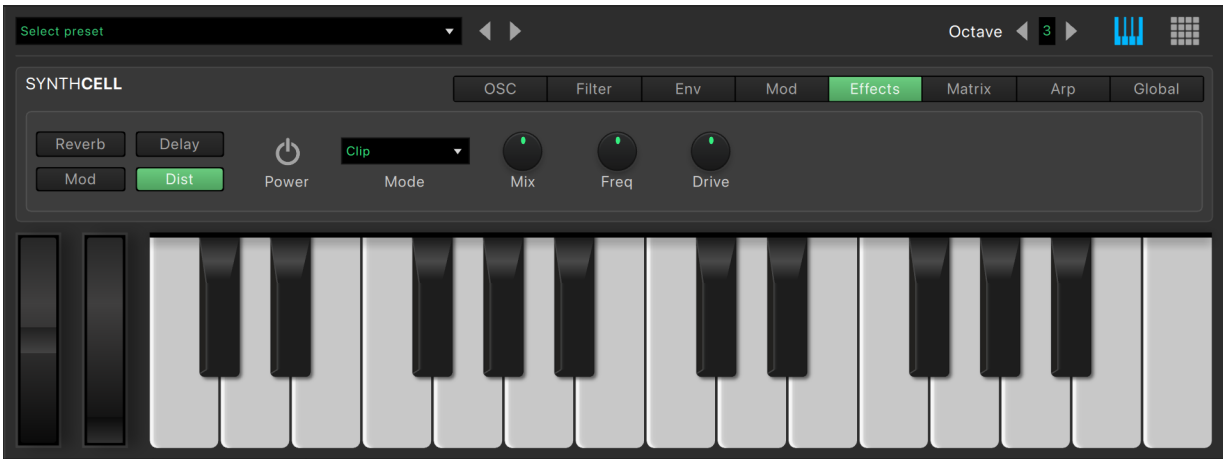
Time

The delay time always synchronizes to the Sketch tempo. The following rhythmic values are available: 1/2, 1/4D, 1/2T, 1/4, 1/8 D, 1/4 T, 1/8, 1/16 D, 1/8 T, 1/16, 1/32 D, 1/16 T, or 1/32 where “D” indicates a dotted rhythm and “T” indicates a triplet rhythm.

Feedback

Adjust the Feedback of the delay from 0 to 100%.

Dist



Mode

Select any of the following distortion options: **Clip** (emulates hard transistor clipping), Tube (emulates soft vacuum tube overdrive), **Distort** (emulates diode-modeled distortion like in many distortion pedals), **Rectify** (inverts negative parts of waveform to positive), **Lo-Fi** (reduces the sample rate and bit depth of the signal for a “low-fidelity” distortion effect), or **Crush** (like **Lo-Fi**, but more digital sounding—like a “bit-crusher”).

Mix

Adjust the **Mix** control to set the balance of dry versus wet (effected) signal from 0 to 100%.

Freq

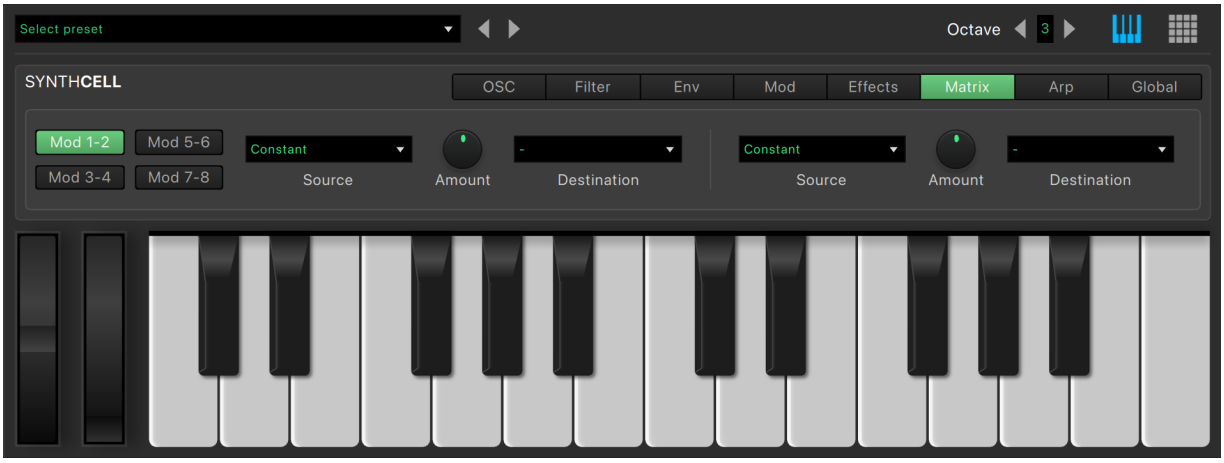
Adjust the distortion frequency from 1.00 kHz to 20.00 kHz. When Mode is set to **Lo-Fi** or **Crush**, the **Freq** setting controls the resampling rate (sample rate reduction). For any other **Mode** settings it controls high frequency tone damping, like a “brightness” control.

Drive

Adjust the **Drive** (gain) of the distortion from 0 to 100%.

Matrix

The Modulation Matrix lets you modulate any of the available Destination controls by any available Source. You can modulate up to 8 Destination controls.



Mod 1–2, 3–4, 5–6, 7–8 Buttons

Click the corresponding button to edit the Modulation Matrix in pairs of sources and destinations.

Source

Select the desired modulation **Source**:

Constant

Offsets the destination by a constant amount determined by the **Depth** setting.

Velocity

MIDI velocity.

Key

MIDI note number.

Pitch Bend

MIDI pitch bend.

Mod Wheel

MIDI CC 1.

Aftertouch

MIDI aftertouch.

MPE Timbre

MIDI CC 74, which is usually sent from the y-axis of MPE (as well as typically being the MIDI CC for filter cutoff).

Random

Generates random bi-polar numbers each time a note is played.

Ramdom +

Generates random positive numbers each time a note is played.

Alternate

Alternates between 0 and the maximum value (determined by the Depth setting) with each note played so that every other note is modulated.

Legato

Generates 0 for notes that are played with no other note held, and the maximum value (determined by the Depth setting) for notes played while any other note is held.

Wheel LFO

The LFO signal applied by the modulation wheel (MIDI CC 1) and used by the Mod Wheel Destination parameter

Mod LFO

Modulation LFO.

Mod Env

Modulation envelope.

Filt Env

Filter envelope.

Amp Env

Amplitude envelope.

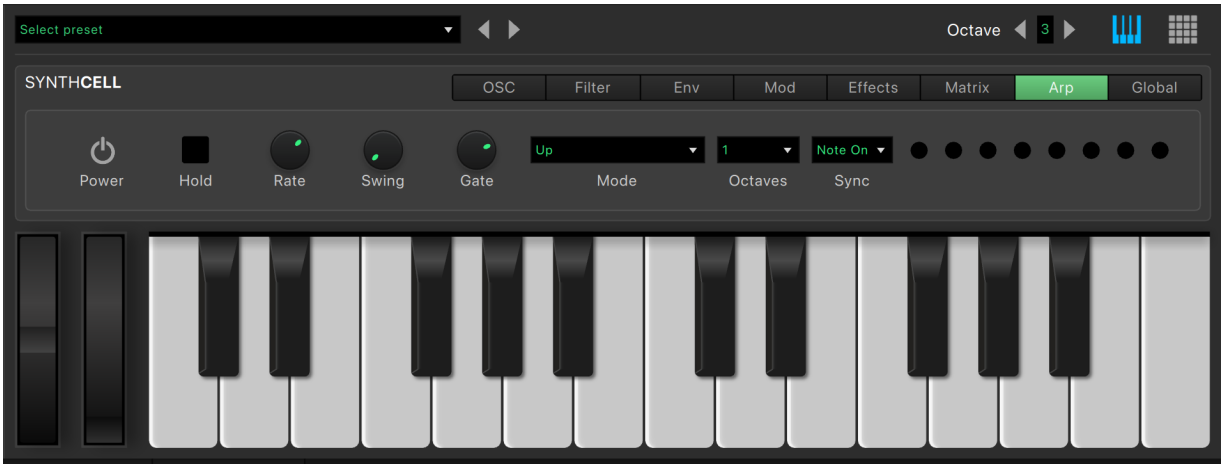
Depth

Lets you adjust the **`Depth`** of the modulation applied to the Destination from 0 to 100%.

Destination

Select the desired modulation **`Destination`** (where – is none).

Arp



Power

Click the Power button in the upper left corner of the Arpeggiator panel to enable or disable the Arpeggiator.

Hold

Functions like a sustain pedal. When enabled, the Arpeggiator continues playing after releasing the keys on your MIDI keyboard controller (MIDI Note Off).

Rate

Set the Rate for the Arpeggiator as a rhythmic value in relation to the Pro Tools session tempo. Options range from quarter note (4) to thirty-second note (32) values including triplet and dotted note options.

Swing

Adjust the Swing setting to apply a certain amount of swing rhythmic variation (from 0 to 100%).

Gate

Adjust the Gate setting to set the length of the notes triggered by the Arpeggiator (from 0 to 100%) as a percentage of the Rate.

Mode

Select the Mode for the Arpeggiator pattern from the following options: **Up** (plays held notes from lowest to highest), **Down** (plays held notes from highest to lowest), **Up+Down** (plays held notes from lowest to highest and then back down again), **Up,Down** (plays held notes from lowest to highest and then back down again, but repeats lowest and highest), **Zig-Zag** (plays held notes in a "zig-zag" pattern: 1st, 3rd, 2nd, 4th note and so on), **Random** (plays each of the held notes in a random order), **Rhythmic Random** (plays each of the held notes in a random order with random rhythms), **Up 4** (plays held notes from lowest to highest, but restarts every 4 steps), **Up 6** (plays held notes from lowest to highest, but restarts every 6 steps), **Up 8** (plays held notes from lowest to highest, but restarts every 8 steps), **Down 4** (plays held notes from highest to lowest, but restarts every 4 steps), **Down 6** (plays held notes from highest to lowest, but restarts every 6 steps), **Down 8** (plays held notes from highest to lowest, but restarts every 8 steps), **Up 4 Down 4** (plays held notes from lowest to highest and then back down again, but restarts every 4 steps), **Low Up Alt** (plays held notes alternating between the lowest note and **Up** mode), or **Low Up Alt 2** (plays held notes alternating between the lowest note and **Up** mode).

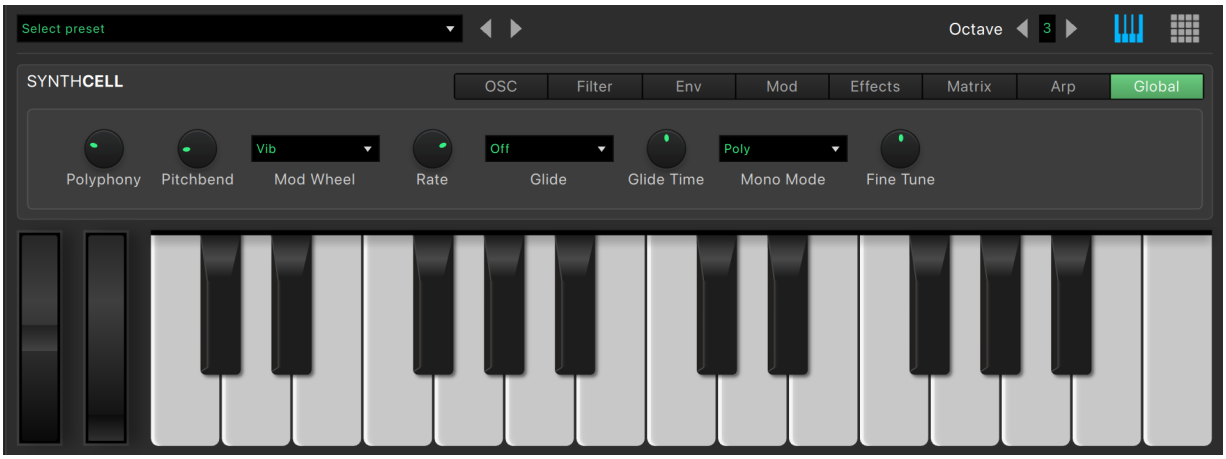
Octave

Select the number of octaves (1, 2, 3, or 4) over which the Arpeggiator pattern is played.

Sync

Select whether the Arpeggiator synchronizes to MIDI Note On or to the specified Grid.

Global



Polyphony

Select the number of voices for maximum polyphony from 1 to 32 voices.

Pitch Bend

Select the range for Pitch Bend from 0 to 48 semitones.

Mod Wheel

Select the effect of the Mod Wheel: – (no effect), **Vib** (controls vibrato), **Pan** (controls Left/Right panning), **Trem** (controls tremolo), **LPF** (controls the frequency of the master Low Pass Filter—separate from Filters 1 and 2), or **HPF** (controls the frequency of the master High Pass Filter—separate from Filters 1 and 2).

Rate

Adjust the Rate of the Mod Wheel effect from 0 to 100%.

Glide

Select the Glide Mode: **Off** (no glide), **Legato** (legato glide effect—portamento), **On** (linear glide effect).

Glide Time

Set the Glide Time from 0.0 ms to 5.00 s.

Mono Mode

Poly (Polyphonic mode provides full polyphony up to the number of voices selected for the Max Poly setting), **Retrig** (Retrigger Monophonic mode re-triggers the Amplitude Envelope Attack with each MIDI Note On), or **Legato** (Legato Monophonic mode does not re-trigger the Amplitude Envelope Attack for any MIDI Note On until all notes are off).

Fine Tune

Set the global Fine Tune between –50 to +50 cents.

25 Importing and Exporting Session Data

Pro Tools lets you import and export a variety of data into and out of a session, including audio and MIDI files, clip groups, video files, track playlists, I/O configurations, and signal routing configurations.

You can import individual audio and MIDI files into a session, or import entire audio or MIDI tracks, along with all of their attributes, from another session. Additionally, with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, you have the option of importing any combination of track attributes from another session, such as a track's audio or MIDI playlists, signal routing, plugins, or automation (see "Importing Session Data" on page 670).

When you are working with video, you can import and export video files from a session (see "Working with Video in Pro Tools" on page 1924).

Importing and Exporting Data to and from a Session or Project

Importing

Pro Tools lets you import audio, video, MIDI, clip groups, or session files into the current Pro Tools session or project by:

- Dragging and dropping from:
  - A Workspace browser
  - Mac Finder or Windows Explorer
- Using the File menu Import commands:
  - Session Data
  - Audio
  - MIDI
  - Video
  - Clip Groups
  - VENUE Channel Names as Track Names

Session or project data, audio files, and clips can be imported to existing tracks, new tracks, the Track List, or the Clip List in a Pro Tools session or project.

Exporting

Pro Tools lets you export audio, video, MIDI, clip groups, and session data by:

- Using the **Export to Sibelius** or **Send to Sibelius** command (MIDI only)
- Using the File menu Export commands:
  - **Selected Tracks as New AAF/OMF**
  - **Selected Tracks as New Session**
  - **MIDI**
  - **Sibelius**
  - **Session Info As Text**
- Using the Tracks Right-click menu:
  - **Send To Sibelius** command (Score Editor only)
  - **Export MIDI** command

- Using the Clip List menu:
  - **Export Clip Definitions** command
  - **Export Clips as Files** command
  - **Export Clip Groups** command

Audio Conversion on Import

Depending on the properties of the audio files you are importing, you can add, copy, or convert the files:

- When files are *added* to a Pro Tools session, they remain at their current hard drive location and are not moved or copied. The session references the original files wherever they are on your system. Additionally, the files referenced by the session retain their original file format, sample rate, and bit depth.
- When files are *copied* into the session, the original files remain wherever they are on your system and are copied to the session's Audio Files folder and are then added to the session. The session references the copied files, not the original files. Additionally, the copied files referenced by the session retain their original file format, sample rate, and bit depth.
- When files are *converted* into the session, the original files remain wherever they are on your system, converted to the session file format, sample rate, and bit depth, and are written to the session's Audio Files folder. The session references the converted files, not the original files.

Files That Can Be Added to a Session or Project Without Conversion

Any audio file of a supported file format (WAV and AIFF) and bit depth (16, 24, and 32-bit float) can be added to sessions and projects without conversion. Audio files with sample rates that do *not* match the session or project sample rate can be added to the session or project without conversion, but will playback at a different pitch and speed from files that match the session or project sample rate.

You can enable the Automatically Copy Files on Import option in the Processing Preferences page to be sure to always copy files to the session's Audio Files folder when importing audio by drag and drop.

Files That Must Be Converted on Import

Audio files formats other than WAV and AIFF must be converted on import. Pro Tools automatically converts these files to the current session or project audio file format on import. Also, if the session or project is not enabled for Interleaved files, Pro Tools splits interleaved audio files into multiple mono files on import.

If clip definitions are present in an audio file, you can convert and import the audio for a clip without importing the entire parent audio file using the **Import Audio** command.

Pro Tools 7.x and later does not support audio file names that contain certain ASCII characters (see "Opening a Session that Contains Audio File Names with Illegal Characters" on page 721).

Supported Audio File Formats

Audio files of the following types can be imported into Pro Tools sessions and projects without conversion:

- .wav
- PCM (uncompressed) audio
- Wave Extensible, RF64, BW64, OMF
- .aif/.aiff/.aifc
- PCM (uncompressed), AIFF-C audio

- .mxf
- PCM (uncompressed) audio
- OP-Atom (single audio channel per file)

Audio files of the following types can be imported into Pro Tools sessions and projects, but will be converted to the current session or project file format on import:

- .m4a/.m4v/.aac
- AAC audio
- Apple Lossless ALAC
- .mp3
- MP3 audio
- .mov
- PCM (uncompressed), AAC, and MP3 audio
- .mp4
- PCM (uncompressed), and AAC audio
- .mxf
- PCM (uncompressed) audio
- OP1a (audio from a combined audio/video MXF)
- .wav
- ACID files
- .rx/.rx2
- Recycle (Rex 1 and 2)
- .snd
- Sound Resource (AIDL – Mac Only)
- .sd2
- Legacy Pro Tools audio file format (Mac Only)

Pro Tools 11 through Pro Tools 2020.5 cannot import SD I or SD II files or convert them to the session format on import. To convert SD II files on import, use Pro Tools 10 or lower, or Pro Tools 2020.9 or later (macOS only). Otherwise, use an audio file format conversion utility to convert the SD I or SD II files to AIFF or WAV for use with the latest version of Pro Tools.

Pro Tools cannot import protected AAC or MP4 files with the .M4p file extension. These files are protected under the rules of digital rights management.

Sample Rate Conversion Quality

The **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** setting determines the quality of sample rate conversion used when converting and importing audio into a session. It can also applied when exporting files at different sample rate and when bouncing to disk. There are five possible settings, ranging from **Low** (fastest, but lowest quality) to **Tweak Head** (highest quality, but slowest). The higher the quality of sample rate conversion you choose, the longer Pro Tools will take to process the audio file.

The **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** options are available in the Import Audio and the Import Session Data dialogs. In each case, the **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** setting is local to that specific dialog. The **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** preference only applies to conversion on import by drag and drop.

To set the sample rate conversion quality for importing audio by drag and drop:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Processing** tab.
2. From the **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** pop-up menu, select a quality setting. For most applications, the **Good** or **Better** setting will yield very good results.
3. Click **OK**.

The Import Audio and Import Session Data dialogs provide local controls for sample rate conversion quality.

Bit Depth Conversion and Dither

If the **Convert Copied Files on Import** preference is enabled (**Setup > Preferences > Processing**), the following occurs when importing audio files with different bit depths than the current session bit depth:

- When importing audio at a lower bit depth than the session, Pro Tools converts the file to match the session bit depth by adding empty bits. For example, when importing a 16-bit file into a 24-bit session, Pro Tools converts the file to 24-bit.
- When importing audio at a higher bit depth than the session, Pro Tools automatically applies a preset, noise-shaped dither and converts the file to the session bit depth. For example, when importing a 24-bit file into a 16-bit session, dither is applied automatically and the file is converted to 16-bit.

Importing Interleaved Files

When using the **Import Audio** command, interleaved stereo files are automatically imported to stereo tracks. With Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, greater-than-stereo multichannel audio files are automatically imported to tracks with the corresponding multichannel audio file format.

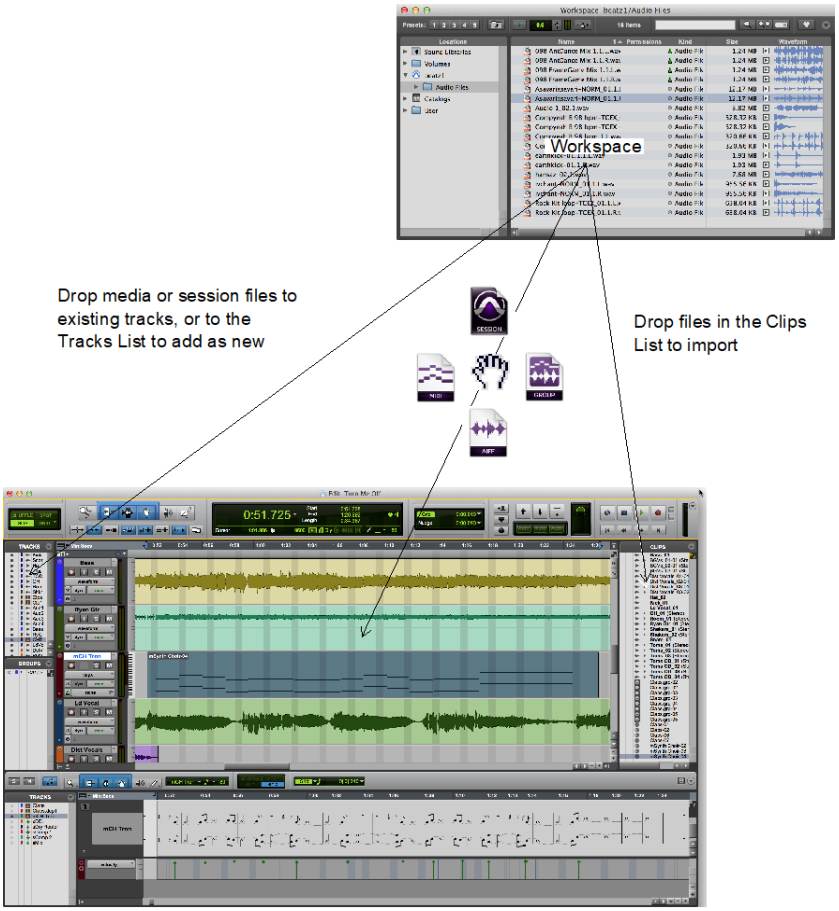
If the **Interleaved** option is enabled for the session, or is enabled on import, interleaved files are imported to the session and remain interleaved files. If this option is not enabled, interleaved files are split into multi-mono.

Conversely, split stereo (dual mono) audio files can be automatically imported to stereo tracks. Split stereo audio files must have the channel identifiers ".L" and ".R" in their names (for example, *filename*.L and *filename*.R), and the files must be the same length. In Windows, or in Mac/PC Compatibility mode, these files will have a 3-letter file extension appended after the ".L" or ".R" channel identifier.

Importing Files with Drag and Drop

Pro Tools lets you import audio, MIDI, video, and session files by dragging and dropping files from a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer, or Mac Finder to the Pro Tools application icon, the session Timeline, a track, the Track List, or the Clip List.

The following figure illustrates some of the options available to import files using drag and drop from Workspace browsers.



Importing from the Workspace by drag and drop

To import files into the Clip List:

1. Select audio, video, MIDI, clip group, REX, or ACID files in a Workspace browser, or Windows Explorer, or Mac Finder.
2. Drag the selected files onto the Clip List.

To import files into an existing track:

1. Select the files you want to import in a Workspace browser, or Windows Explorer or Mac Finder.
2. Drag the selected file to a location on an existing, compatible track. The file is imported and placed where it was dropped.

To import files as new tracks:

1. Select the files you want to import in a Workspace browser, or Windows Explorer or Mac Finder.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Shift-drag files and drop anywhere in the Edit window.
   - Drop files to the Track List.
   - Drop files to empty space in the Edit window, below or between tracks.

Importing does not always convert or copy audio files. See "Audio Conversion on Import" on page 651.

Importing using drag and drop does not necessarily bring the Edit window to the foreground. For example, dragging and dropping a file from a browser into a track leaves the source browser in the foreground (not the Edit window). Always verify the active, foreground window or browser before continuing.

To import and spot files into a track:

1. Enable Spot mode.
2. Select the files you want to import in a Workspace browser, or Windows Explorer, or Mac Finder.
3. Drag the files onto an existing, compatible track. The Spot dialog appears.
4. Enter the appropriate timecode location (where you want to spot the imported file).
5. Click OK.

To import and spot an audio file by its Waveform in Workspace browsers:

1. In a Workspace browser, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the file's Waveform display at the approximate reference point you want to use for placement in a track.
2. While continuing to press Control (Windows), or Command (Mac), drag the waveform onto an existing audio track (the source audio file and the destination audio track must have the same number of channels).

Snapping to Head and Tail

You can drag and drop files to tracks and have them snap to the head or the tail of the current Edit selection or insertion point. When snapping to head, the beginning of the imported file snaps to the beginning of the Edit selection. When snapping to tail, the end of the imported file snaps to the beginning of the Edit selection.

To import and snap to head:

- Control-drag (Mac) or Start-drag (Windows) a file onto a track.

To snap to head and copy the file to the session Audio files folder:

- Option-Control-drag (Mac) or Alt-Start-drag (Windows) a file onto a track.

To snap to tail:

- Command-Control-drag (Mac) or Control-Start-drag (Windows) a file onto a track.

To snap to tail and copy the file to the session Audio Files folder:

- Command-Option-Control-drag (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-drag (Windows) a file onto a track.

Elastic Audio on Import

When importing any audio file by drag and drop to an Elastic Audio-enabled track, the audio file is imported and analyzed (if not already analyzed). If the imported audio file is tick-based, it is conformed to tempo using the track's Elastic Audio plugin. If it is a sample-based audio file, such as a single drum hit or short sound effect, it maintains its original duration. Longer audio files with no detectable tempo also remain sample-based.

You can also import audio by drag and drop to create new tick-based Elastic Audio-enabled tracks.

When importing tick-based audio by drag and drop from Workspace browsers to the Track List or empty space in the Edit window, Pro Tools creates a new tick-based, Elastic Audio-enabled track using the default Elastic Audio plugin selected in the Processing Preferences page (see "Elastic Audio Options" on page 663).

If you are importing an audio file by drag and drop from Windows Explorer or Mac Finder to the Track List or to empty space in the Edit window, files are imported as sample-based or as tick-based Elastic Audio depending on the **Drag and Drop from Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo** preference (see "Drag and Drop From Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo" on page 662).

Melodyne Analysis Data on Import

When importing audio, Melodyne analysis persists as long as no sample rate conversion is applied.

Importing Elastic Audio from Workspace to the Clip List

With the **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo** option enabled, dragging and dropping tick-based audio from Workspace browsers to the Clip List (or to the Track List), creates two separate clips in the Clip List. The first is a sample-based whole file clip and the second is a tick-based copy of the same clip.

Importing Tempo from Tick-Based Audio

If there are no tracks in the session, and you import a tick-based audio file to the Clip List, Track List, or empty space in the Edit window, you are prompted to either import the tempo from the file or use the default session tempo. To keep the default session tempo, and have the loop conform to the session tempo, click **Don't Import**.

If the session already contains at least one track (regardless of track type), you are not prompted to import the tempo from the file and the file is conformed to the session tempo.

Importing Files and Clips Using the Import Audio Command

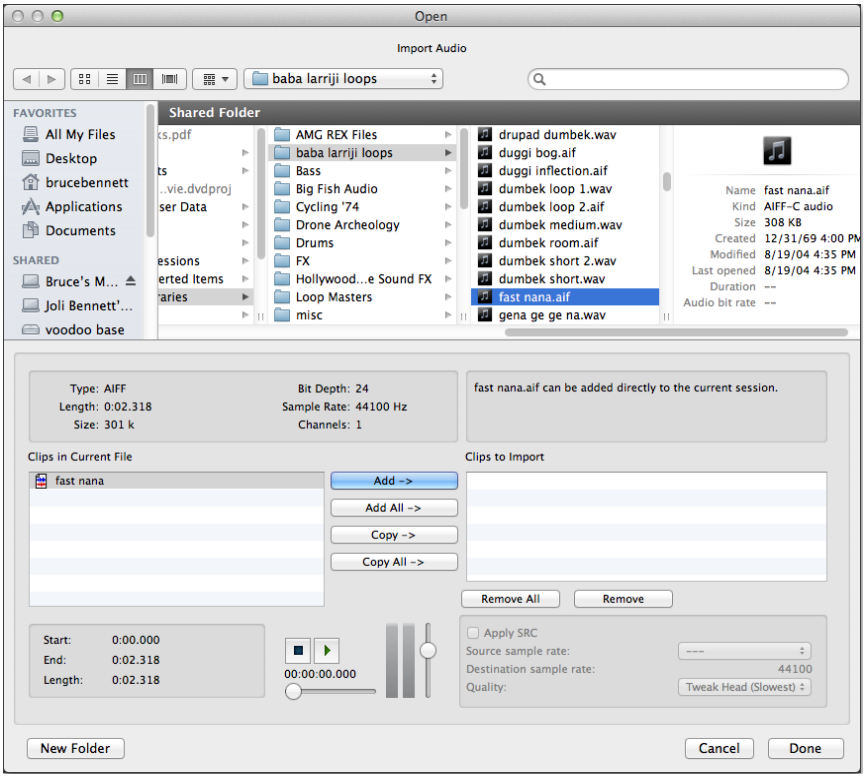
The **Import Audio** command lets you import audio files or clips into your Pro Tools session or project.

To import entire tracks from other sessions, see "Importing Session Data" on page 670.

For a complete list of key commands for use in the Import Audio dialog, refer to the Pro Tools Shortcuts Guide.pdf.

To import audio files or clips into a session or project using the Import Audio command:

1. Choose **File > Import > Audio**.
2. In the Import Audio dialog, locate and select an audio file to display its properties and associated clips.



You can choose to display only a certain file type (such as WAV) by selecting the type from the **Show** pop-up menu. To display all supported file types, select **All Documents** from the **Show** pop-up menu.

In the import list, audio files are distinguished from clips by their icons:


Audio File icon


Audio Clip icon

On Mac, Sound Resource files must have the ".SFIL" extension to be imported by Pro Tools.

3. To preview a selected file or clip before you import it, click the Play and Stop buttons in the Import Audio dialog.

   Adjust the preview volume with the vertical slider. To navigate to a particular location in the file, use the horizontal slider under the Play and Stop buttons.

   The Preview Volume control in the Import Audio dialog also affects the preview volume when auditioning clips in the Clip List.

   The audition output path defaults to channels 1–2. For Pro Tools systems with more than 2 channels of output, the audition path can be changed in the I/O Setup (see "Audition Path" on page 69).

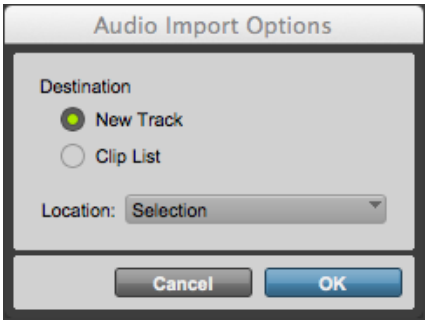
4. Do any of the following:
   - To place a file or clip in the Import list, select the file and click **Add** or **Convert**.
   - To import all files and clips in the current directory, click **Add All** or **Convert All**.
   - To remove a file or clip from the Import list, select it and click **Remove**.
   - To remove all files and clips, click **Remove All**.

Pro Tools lets you add files to a session that are at a different sample rate than your session. In the comments field of the Import Audio dialog, a warning is posted that these files will play back at the wrong speed and pitch if they are not converted.

5. When you have added all audio files and clips to the Import list, you can apply sample rate conversion by doing the following:
    a. Enable Apply SRC.
    b. Specify the **Source Sample Rate** either by typing a number, or by selecting a sample rate from the pop-up menu.
    c. Select the sample rate conversion quality from the **Quality** pop-up menu. This setting overrides the **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** setting in the Processing Preferences page.
6. Click **Done**.

    Press Command+W (Mac) or Alt+E (Windows) to select Done. Press Command+ "." (Period) (Mac) or Esc to Cancel.

7. If you are copying or converting files, choose a location for the new files. Choose a folder on a valid audio drive, such as the Audio Files folder for the current session.
8. In the Audio Import Options dialog, select where the imported files will go in the session:



    – New Track

      Each audio file is imported into its own individual track and into the Clip List.

      When importing audio into a track, you can also choose the location in the track where the audio file will begin (such as Session Start).

    – Clip List

      Audio files are imported into the Clip List without creating a new track. Imported audio files appear in the Clip List and can then be dragged to audio tracks.

9. If you chose to create a new track, choose a location for the imported file in the track:
    – Session Start

      Places the file or clip at the start of the session.

    – Song Start

      Aligns the beginning of the file or clip to the Song Start point.

    – Selection

      Aligns the beginning of the file or clip to the edit cursor or to the beginning of a selection in the Timeline.

– Spot

Displays the Spot dialog, which lets you spot the file or clip to a precise location based on any of the Time Scales.

10. Click **OK**.

Importing Audio from CDs

(Mac Only)

Pro Tools lets you import tracks from audio CDs using the same methods that you use to import audio files, as follows:

- Drag CD audio from the CD folder.
- Drag files from a Workspace Browser.
- Use the **Import Audio** command.

Before importing CD audio, make sure your hard drive has enough space for the converted audio files.

Importing CD audio with either drag and drop method lets you continue working in the session foreground (such as in the Mix or Edit window), while the Task Manager (Window › Task Manager) works in the background (importing and converting the audio until the import is completed). For more information on the Task Manager, see "Task Manager Window" on page 546.

Because the transfer is made in the digital domain, there is no signal loss.

The sample rate for audio CDs is 44.1 kHz. Therefore, if your session's sample rate is set to 48 kHz or higher, Pro Tools will convert the sample rate for the imported audio. Before importing CD audio, set the **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** preference accordingly. For more information, see "Sample Rate Conversion Quality" on page 652.

Importing ACID and REX Files

ACID files and REX 1 and 2 files are converted to the session audio file type. Depending on the preferences settings, ACID and REX files can be imported as sample-based clips or as tick-based Elastic Audio clips. For REX files only, Pro Tools uses any slice data to create Event markers with 100% confidence. ACID files are analyzed for Elastic Audio events just like WAV files, and so events are detected with varying degrees of confidence.

For information on Elastic Audio, see "Elastic Audio" on page 1335.

REX files can also be imported as tick-based clip groups.

For information on clip groups, see "Clip Groups" on page 1251).

To import ACID and REX flies as sample-based clips:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Processing** tab.
2. Disable the **Import REX Files as Clip Groups** option.
3. Select **No Files** as the **Drag and Drop from Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo** preference.
4. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.
5. When importing by drag and drop from Workspace browsers, make sure that the **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo** option is disabled.

6. Import the ACID and REX files you want by drag and drop from a Workspace browser or the Desktop, or using the **Import Audio** command (see "Importing Files and Clips Using the Import Audio Command" on page 656).

To import ACID and REX files as tick-based Elastic Audio clips:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Processing** tab.
2. Disable the **Import REX Files as Clip Groups** option.
3. Select **REX and ACID Files Only** or **All Files** as the **Drag and Drop from Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo** preference.
4. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.
5. Do one of the following:
   - Import the REX files you want by drag and drop from a Workspace browser.
   - Import the REX files you want by drag and drop from the Desktop.
   - Use the **Import Audio** command (see "Importing Files and Clips Using the Import Audio Command" on page 656).

To import REX files as tick-based clip groups:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Processing** tab.
2. Select the **Import REX Files as Clip Groups** option.
3. To apply real-time crossfades to the files, enable the **Automatically Create Fades** option (see "Automatic Fades for Imported REX Files" below).
4. Select **REX and ACID Files Only** or **All Files** as the **Drag and Drop from Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo** preference.
5. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.
6. Do one of the following:
   - Import the REX files you want by drag and drop from a Workspace browser
   - Import the REX files you want by drag and drop from the Desktop.
   - Use the **Import Audio** command (see "Importing Files and Clips Using the Import Audio Command" on page 656).

Automatic Fades for Imported REX Files

If the **Import REX Files as Clip Groups** option is enabled in the Processing Preferences page, Pro Tools can automatically apply real-time crossfades to the clips or “slices” in imported REX format files.

To apply real-time crossfades to REX files:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Processing** tab.
2. Enable the **Import REX Files as Clip Groups** option.
3. Enable the **Automatically Create Fades** option.
4. In the Preferences dialog, click the **Editing** tab.
5. Under Default Fade Settings, click **REX**.
6. In the REX Auto-Crossfades dialog, select the shapes you want for crossfades, and click **OK**.
7. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

Depending on your edits or tempo changes after importing REX files, fades can be deleted and you will have to recreate them manually.

Importing SD II Files

(Mac Only)

Pro Tools converts SD II (Sound Designer II) files on import when using Import Audio (**File > Import > Audio**), Import Session Data (**File > Import > Session Data**), or drag and drop from a Workspace browser or macOS Finder. When opening a legacy session with SDII files, the session file format is set to BWF (.WAV) and all SD II files are converted to BWF (.WAV).

Importing Multichannel Audio Files from a Field Recorder

Pro Tools lets you use any of its import methods to import monophonic and polyphonic audio files recorded by a field recorder. When you import these types of files, they must be converted to an audio format compatible with Pro Tools.

For more information on importing files from a field recorder, see "Working with Field Recorders in Pro Tools" on page 1903.

Importing Monophonic Audio Files

A monophonic audio file contains one mono channel and relevant metadata from a single multichannel recording.

When you import monophonic audio files that were recorded simultaneously, they are converted to multichannel clips and displayed together in the Clip List. Any metadata is also imported with the files.

Importing Polyphonic Audio Files

A polyphonic audio file contains multiple mono channels and relevant metadata recorded simultaneously in a multichannel recording.

When imported into Pro Tools, a polyphonic audio file is divided into individual monophonic audio files written to disk—one file for each channel. Clips for each channel appear in the playlist, and a multichannel clip appears in the Clip List with the channels expandable underneath. Any metadata is also imported with the files.

Import Options and Preferences

Pro Tools provides several options and preferences that affect audio import. Configure Pro Tools to match your most common workflows. For example, if you frequently work by importing REX files for loop-based composition, you can configure Pro Tools to always import REX files to conform to tempo and create new tick-based Elastic Audio tracks.

Convert Imported "WAV" Files To AES31/BroadcastWave

When selected, this option applies to all newly imported WAV files, making them compliant with the AES31/EBU Broadcast standard.

Automatically Copy Files on Import

When selected, all audio files that are imported by dragging and dropping are copied to the current session's Audio Files folder, regardless of whether the files need to be converted to the current session's file type, bit depth, or sample rate. Additionally, when selected, the Import Session Data dialog defaults to **Copy from Source Media**. The **Automatically Copy Files on Import** preference does not affect the **Import Audio** command.

Convert Copied Files to Session Format

When selected, files that have different file formats from the current session file format are copied and converted to the current session audio file format, bit depth, and sample rate on import. For example, if the session file format is WAV, 24-bit, 48 kHz and you import an AIF, 16-bit, 44.1 kHz file, the file is copied and converted to WAV, 24-bit, 48 kHz on import. When this option is not selected, copied files retain their original format (unless that file format is incompatible with Pro Tools, in which case it must be converted).

Do Not Convert Sample Rate on Import

When selected, files with different sample rates than the session sample rate are not automatically converted when imported into the session. This means that files with mismatched sample rates play back at a different speed (and pitch transpositions than when they were originally recorded (or converted).

Import REX Files as Clip Groups

When selected, REX flies are imported as clip groups, all the underlying slices are imported as individual clips contained within the clip group. When this option is not selected, importing REX files into a session converts them to the session's audio file format, the individual slices are consolidated, and the slice information is used for Elastic Audio analysis. These files remain tick-based after import and conversion.

Automatically Create Fades

When selected, crossfades are applied automatically to the sliced clips within clip groups created by importing REX files. If the **Import REX Files as Clip Groups** option is not selected, the **Automatically Create Fades** option does not apply.

To change the default fade settings for REX files, click the REX button in the Default Fade Settings section on the Editing Preferences page (see "Fades Editing Preference" on the next page).

Drag and Drop From Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo

The **Drag and Drop From Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo** options determine whether or not REX, ACID, and all other audio file formats dragged and dropped from Windows Explorer or Mac Finder are imported as tick-based Elastic Audio and conformed to the session tempo.

None

When enabled, all audio files, including REX and ACID files, are not conformed to the session tempo when imported by drag and drop from Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder. They are imported as sample-based files and converted to the sessions audio file format.

REX and ACID Files Only

When enabled, only REX and ACID files are conformed to the session tempo when imported by drag and drop from Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder. REX files are imported either as tick-based Elastic Audio or, if the **Import REX Files as Clip Groups** option is enabled, as tick-based clip groups.

All Files

When enabled, all audio files are imported as tick-based Elastic Audio and conform to the session tempo.

Sample Rate Conversion Quality

The **Sample Rate Conversion Quality** preference determines the quality of sample rate conversion used when converting and importing audio into a session by drag and drop. Sample rate conversion is used in a variety of Pro Tools processes including converting and importing audio files of different formats into a session, and bouncing and saving tracks to a different sample rate or bit depth. The higher the quality of sample rate conversion you choose, the longer Pro Tools will take to process the audio file.

Elastic Audio Options

The Elastic Audio preferences determine which Elastic Audio plugin is used for preview and import, and whether or not new tracks are created with Elastic Audio enabled using the selected default plugin.

Default Plugin

Lets you select any Real-Time Elastic Audio plugin as the default plugin for previewing and importing Elastic Audio. The selected default Elastic Audio plugin is also used when new tracks are created with Elastic Audio enabled. The Elastic Audio Plugin selector in Workspace browsers inherits the selected default plugin. Likewise, changing the selected plugin in Workspace browsers updates the selected **Default Plugin** in the Processing preferences.

Default Input Gain

Lets you attenuate the signal input to Elastic Audio plugins by 0 to –6 dB for preview and import. If you experience clipping due to Elastic Audio processing during preview or after import, you may want to set the **Default Input Gain** to slightly attenuate (lower) the audio signal input for Elastic Audio processing. This preference also applies to any audio imported to an Elastic Audio-enabled track.

If you commit any clips on a track (by disabling Elastic Audio on the track) that were imported with the **Default Input Gain** applied, their clip-based In **put Gain** is reset to 0.

The Elastic Properties window inherits the Default Input Gain preference. To apply further clip-based Input Gain for Elastic Audio processing, select the clip and adjust the Input Gain setting in the Elastic Properties window (see "Elastic Properties Window" on page 1359).

Enable Elastic Audio on New Tracks

When selected, new tracks are created with Elastic Audio enabled. The selected default Elastic Audio plugin is used. When importing audio to new tracks, new tracks are created with Elastic Audio enabled if this option is enabled.

If the Enable Elastic Audio on New Tracks option is selected, you may want to also select the New Tracks Default to Tick Timebase option in the Editing Preferences page.

Tracks Preference

When the **New Tracks Default To Tick Timebase** option is enabled, all new tracks default to ticks. This includes importing audio to new tracks. When deselected, audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and VCA tracks default to samples. MIDI and Instrument tracks always default to ticks.

Fades Editing Preference

The **Default Fade Settings** for REX files in the Editing preferences lets you select the default envelope shape for fades and crossfades between clips (“slices”) in imported REX files. Fades are only applied to imported REX files if the **Import REX Files as Clip Groups** option and the **Automatically Create Fades** option are both enabled on the Processing Preferences page.

Exporting Audio

Pro Tools supports exporting audio clips as audio files, exporting left and right audio files as stereo interleaved files, and exporting clip information.

You can also export audio from Pro Tools by bouncing or consolidating audio tracks. For more information, see "Bounce Mix" on page 1640 and "Consolidating Clips" on page 940.

Exporting a Clip as a New Audio File

You can export clips as audio files with the **Export Clips as Files** command. Use this command if you intend to use a clip in other sessions (or other audio applications) without using its parent source file.

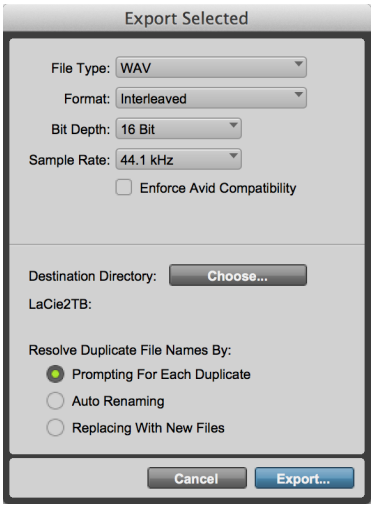
This command also provides a way to convert clips to a different audio format, sample rate, or bit depth.

To export clips as new audio files:

1. In the Clip List, select the clips you want to export.

   Warped clips (Elastic Audio) will be exported unwarped at their original duration.

2. From the Clip List menu, choose **Export Clips as Files**.



3. In the Export Selected dialog, set the **File Type**, **Format**, **Bit Depth**, and **Sample Rate**. In addition, choose the **Destination Directory**.

   When you export clips to a lower bit depth, Dither (with or without Noise Shaping) is applied as shown in the following table:

   Dither and Noise Shaping with Export Selected dialog

Bit Depth	Dither	Noise Shaping
32-bit float to 32-bit float	No	No
32-bit float to 24-bit	Yes	Yes
32-bit float to 16-bit	Yes	Yes
24-bit to 32-bit float	No	No
24-bit to 24-bit	No	No
24-bit to 16-bit	Yes	Yes
16-bit to 32-bit float	No	No
16-bit to 24-bit	No	No
16-bit to 16-bit	No	No

   The Avid Dither plugin is used for any conversion (with or without Noise Shaping enabled.

   For more information about using Dither, see "Dither" on page 1507.

4. Select an option for how Pro Tools should resolve duplicate file names.

- Prompting for Each Duplicate

  Prompts you for a file name for any file that has the same name as a file in your destination directory.

- Auto Renaming

  Automatically changes the name of any duplicate file by adding a number at the end of the file name (such as file_01).

- Replacing with New Files

  Replaces files with the same name with the new files.

5. Click **Export** to export the new audio files.

Exporting Stereo or Multichannel Interleaved Files

You can use the **Export Clips as Files** command to export audio clips to stereo or multichannel interleaved files for use in other applications. (Pro Tools cannot use interleaved files directly in the Timeline—these must be converted into multiple mono files.) For example, for this to work with a stereo file, the selected clips must have identical names with ".L" and ".R" suffixes (for instance, vocals_01.L and vocals_01.R). These clips appear as a stereo clip in the Clip List.

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio also let you bounce multichannel interleaved files of any supported file type.

To export clips as a stereo or multichannel interleaved file:

1. Select the stereo or multichannel audio clip in the Clip List or in the track playlist. If the clips appear on mono tracks in the session, select the two mono clips.
2. From the Clip List menu, choose **Export Clips as Files**.
3. In the Export Selected dialog, select **Stereo Interleaved** in the **Format** pop-up menu. For multichannel clips, the **Stereo Interleaved** option produces a multichannel interleaved file.
4. Configure any other output settings, then click **Export** to export the new stereo interleaved file.

Exporting Clip Definitions

Pro Tools stores clip definitions for audio files within each session. If you want to use an audio file's clips in another session, or with another application that supports them, you can export the clip information.

If you plan to transfer Pro Tools session data to another session, you should export clip definitions for sessions containing multiple takes created with Loop Record.

The **Export Clip Definitions** command does not export clips as audio files (unlike the **Export Clips as Files** command). Instead, it stores pointers to the clips within the parent source file.

To export clip definitions for an audio file:

1. In the Clip List, select any clips or clip groups for which you want to export definitions. You do not have to select the parent file audio clip.
2. Choose **Export Clip Definitions** from the Clip List menu.
3. Click **Export**.

Importing MIDI Files

You can import Standard MIDI Files (SMF) into your Pro Tools sessions and projects.

Pro Tools provides several ways to import MIDI files into an open session or project.

- "Importing MIDI Files Using Pro Tools Menu Commands" below.
- "Importing MIDI Files with Drag and Drop" on page 668.

Pro Tools does not import proprietary sequence files. To use sequences from other MIDI applications in a Pro Tools session, you will need to first save them as Standard MIDI Files. See the manufacturer's documentation for details on saving Standard MIDI Files.

There are two types of Standard MIDI Files, both of which are supported by Pro Tools:

- Type 0 MIDI files store data for all MIDI channels in a single track. When importing these files, Pro Tools separates the data by channel and places each track's data in separate clips and tracks.
- Type 1 MIDI files, sometimes referred to as multitrack MIDI files, contain multiple tracks of MIDI data. When importing these files, each track's data is placed on its own new MIDI track in the Pro Tools session.

Importing MIDI Files Using Pro Tools Menu Commands

Pro Tools provides commands to import MIDI files.

To import Standard MIDI Files into a session or project using the Pro Tools File menu:

1. Choose **File > Import > MIDI** and select the file you want to import.
2. Configure the MIDI Import Options dialog as desired (see "MIDI Import Options Dialog" below).
3. Click **OK**.

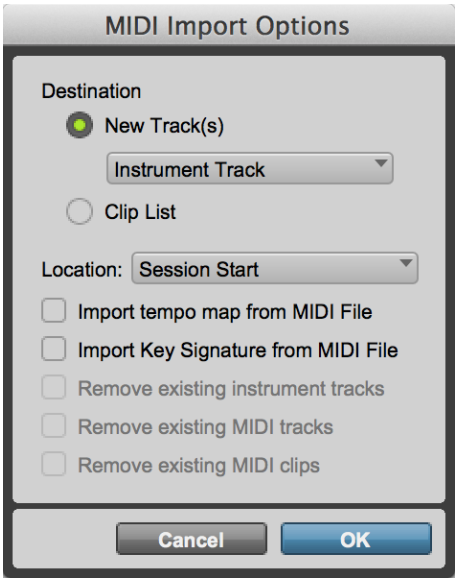
   The MIDI file will be imported according to the settings in the Import MIDI Settings dialog.

   If the Standard MIDI File contains markers, they are only imported if the current session does not contain any markers.

4. In the Mix window, click the MIDI Output selector for each new track and assign a MIDI instrument and channel.

MIDI Import Options Dialog

The MIDI Import Options dialog lets you specify what Pro Tools does when importing MIDI files.



Destination

The Destination options determine whether new tracks are created for imported MIDI or if MIDI is imported just to the Clip List.

New Track(s)

The **`New Track(s)`** option creates new tracks for imported MIDI

Instrument Track

Select this option to create new Instrument tracks for imported MIDI.

MIDI Track

Select this option to create new MIDI tracks for imported MIDI.

Clip List

The **`Clip List`** option imports the file into the Clip List, where it will be available to place into tracks.

Location

The Location options determine where imported MIDI is placed when the **`New Track(s)`** option is selected.

Session Start

Places the file or clip at the start of the session.

Song Start

Aligns the beginning of the file to the Song Start point.

Selection

Aligns the beginning of the file to the edit cursor or to the beginning of a selection in the Timeline.

Spot

Displays the Spot dialog, which lets you spot the file to a precise location based on any of the Time Scales.

Additional Options

Import Tempo Map From MIDI File

When selected, overwrites any existing tempo and meter map with tempo and meter information read from the MIDI file.

Import Key Signature From MIDI File

When selected, overwrites any existing key signatures with key signature information read from the MIDI file.

Remove Existing Instrument Tracks

When selected, deletes any existing Instrument tracks. Selecting this option does not remove any current MIDI tracks. All existing MIDI clips will be left in the Clip List.

Remove Existing MIDI Tracks

When selected, deletes any existing MIDI tracks. Enabling this option does not remove any current Instrument tracks. All existing MIDI clips will be left in the Clip List.

Remove Existing MIDI Clips

When selected, deletes existing MIDI clips (all data on all MIDI and Instrument tracks) but leaves existing MIDI and Instrument tracks in place.

Importing MIDI Files with Drag and Drop

You can drag and drop MIDI files from a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer, or Mac Finder to the Timeline, a track, the Track List, or the Clip List.

To import MIDI into the Clip List:

1. Select MIDI files in a Workspace browser, or Windows Explorer, or Mac Finder.
2. Drag the files onto the Clip List of the current session.

To import MIDI into an existing track:

1. Select MIDI files in a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer, or Mac Finder.
2. Drag the files onto an existing track in the Edit window of the current session.

To import MIDI into new tracks:

1. Select MIDI files in a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer or Mac Finder.
2. Do one of the following:
   - From the Workspace browser, Shift-drag the files anywhere in the Edit window of the current session.
   - Drag the files to the Timeline of the current session.
   - Drag the files to the Track List.

For more information, see "Workspace Browsers" on page 493.

Exporting MIDI Files

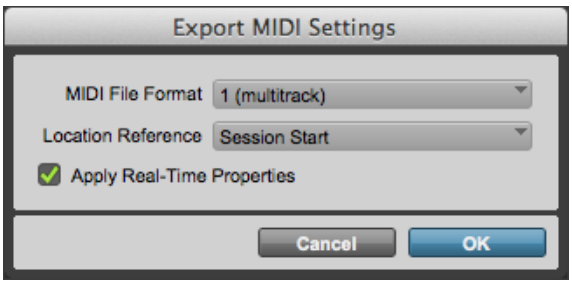
To export a session's MIDI tracks for use in another MIDI application, or for playback with an external (hardware) MIDI sequencer, you can export Pro Tools MIDI and Instrument tracks as a Standard MIDI File.

MIDI can be exported from Pro Tools as a merged, single, multichannel track (Type 0), or as multiple tracks (Type 1).

If your Pro Tools session uses key signatures and meters, they are exported with the MIDI file.

To export all MIDI and Instrument tracks in the current session:

1. Make sure to unmute any MIDI tracks in the session that you want included in the exported MIDI file. (Or, conversely, mute any MIDI tracks you do not want included in the exported MIDI file.) For Instrument tracks, enable or disable the MIDI mute button (Instruments view).
2. Choose **`File > Export > MIDI`**. The Export MIDI Settings dialog opens.



3. From the **MIDI File Format** pop-up menu, select **1 (multitrack)** or **0 (single track)**.
4. If the Song Start time is different from the Session Start time, select **Session Start** or **Song Start** from the **Location Reference** pop-up menu.
5. Enable or disable the **Apply Real-Time Properties** option.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Specify a folder destination and name for the MIDI file.

   Pro Tools automatically adds the ".mid" extension when exporting MIDI files.

8. Click **Save**.

Pro Tools exports all unmuted MIDI and Instrument tracks in the current session to a Standard MIDI File and writes it to your hard drive. Exported MIDI information includes notes, controller events, program changes, and System Exclusive data, as well as events for tempo, meter, and markers.

The Timecode start time for the session or the song (depending on the selection from the **Location Reference** pop-up menu) is also exported. This ensures that the exported tracks, when played from another MIDI application, will align with the correct Timecode frames, and also synchronize correctly to tape and video devices, or Pro Tools.

See your third-party MIDI sequencer documentation to determine whether it supports importing Timecode start times from MIDI files.

Items Not Exported with MIDI Files

Mute automation and muted clips do not affect exported MIDI. As long as a MIDI track is not muted by clicking its Mute button, or an Instrument track is not muted by clicking its MIDI Mute button (Instruments view), all of its MIDI data is exported.

Chord symbols and chord diagrams are not exported with MIDI files.

When exporting MIDI files from Pro Tools, device assignments for tracks are not retained (though channel assignments are). If you export MIDI or Instrument tracks from Pro Tools and later re-import them, you will need to reassign the tracks to devices in your studio.

All playlist information for MIDI and Instrument tracks is lost when exporting. For example, tracks that previously contained dozens of MIDI clips will be flattened and only contain single clips after exporting and re-importing.

Exporting Individual MIDI and Instrument Tracks

You can also export individual MIDI and Instrument tracks as MIDI files. This can be useful for storing libraries of your favorite MIDI sequences or Sysex data (such as bulk or individual patch dumps for your external MIDI devices), or for importing MIDI into notation applications (other than Sibelius).

To export a single MIDI or Instrument track as a MIDI file:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the Track name of an unselected track in the Edit or Mix window, or in the Track List.
   - In the Track List, or Mix or Edit window, Command-Right-click (Mac) or Control-Right-click (Windows) the track name.
2. From the Right-click menu, select **Export MIDI**.

3. Set the Export MIDI settings in the Export MIDI Settings dialog.
4. Click **OK**.
5. In the Save dialog, type a name for the MIDI file, specify where you want to save it, and click **Save**.

Option-Right-click (Mac) or Alt-Right-click (Windows) to export all tracks to a single MIDI file.

To export all selected Pro Tools Instrument or MIDI tracks as a MIDI file:

1. Select the tracks you want to export to a MIDI file.
2. Right-click the Track name of one of the selected tracks in the Edit or Mix window, or in the Track List.
3. From the Right-click menu, select **Export MIDI**.
4. Set the Export MIDI settings.
5. Click **OK**.
6. In the Save dialog, type a name for the MIDI file, specify where you want to save it, and click **Save**.

Option-Shift-Right-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-Right-click (Windows) to export all selected tracks as a single MIDI file.

Exporting Sibelius Files

Pro Tools can export the score of your session or project as a Sibelius file (.sib). You can choose to export the score as a Sibelius file for later use or score transfer, or to open the score in Sibelius immediately (if Sibelius) is installed on your computer. Sibelius uses the Pro Tools transcription of MIDI in your session as seen in the Pro Tools Score Editor window (for more information, see "Exporting Scores" on page 1122).

Sibelius 5.x or higher is required to open .sib files exported from Pro Tools.

Copy and Paste MIDI between Pro Tools and Sibelius

In Sibelius and Pro Tools (versions 2024.3 and later) you can copy and paste MIDI to the clipboard and then paste it from any Pro Tools session or Sibelius score into any other as long as you do not clear the system clipboard.

To copy and paste MIDI between Pro Tools and Sibelius:

1. Make a selection of MIDI in either Sibelius or Pro Tools.
2. Copy the selection to the Clipboard.
3. Paste the selection to Pro Tools MIDI or Instrument tracks or to Sibelius Instruments (staves).

Importing Session Data

You can import data and copy media from other Pro Tools sessions into the current Pro Tools session or project using the **Import Session Data** command (or drag and drop). You can also import data into sessions from versions of projects by means of the Revision History window. The Import Session Data dialog lets you import tracks and select specific session data (such as automation and routing) to import. You can also import main playlist options—either replacing existing options or overlaying elements onto existing tracks.

To import tracks or their attributes:

1. Open or create a new session or project.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **File > Import > Session Data**, select the session to import data from, and click **Open**.
   - Drag the session file whose tracks or attributes you want to import from a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer, or Mac Finder into empty space in the Edit window or to the Track List.
3. If the **Fader Gain** setting of the session is different, you will be prompted to keep or change the **Fader Gain** before the Session Data dialog opens.
4. In the Source section, select tracks to import by clicking the pop-up menu to the right of each track name and selecting **New Track**.

   To select multiple tracks, Opt-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) on any track pop-up menu and select Import As New Track.

   If the destination Pro Tools system does not support surround mixing, surround tracks are not displayed in the Source Track List.
5. For each track you select, you can choose to import it as a new track, or choose a destination track from the corresponding pop-up menu. Click **Match Tracks** to automatically match source and destination tracks with the same names.
6. Select any additional track data you want to import from the **Track Data to Import** pop-up menu.
7. Select from among the **Main Playlist Options** to choose how you want to import the source tracks.
8. If applicable, choose options for how media files should be imported from the **Audio Media Options** and the **Video Media Options** pop-up menus.

   Any tracks in a project containing media linked to a local source file cannot be shared.
9. Choose the **Timecode Mapping Options** for imported data.
10. If the sample rates of the sessions are different, select the sample rate for the source session from the **Source Sample Rate** pop-up menu.
11. To import the meter and tempo maps from the source session, select the **ImportTempo/Meter Map** option.
12. To import key signatures from the source session, select the **Import Key Signature Map** option.
13. To import Markers and Memory Locations from the source session, select the **Import Marker/Memory Locations** option.
14. To import Window Configurations, select the **Import Window Configurations** option.
15. With Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, select the **Import Mic Pre Settings** option to import any Mic Pre settings from the source session.
16. Click **OK** when you are finished.
17. If you chose to copy or consolidate media, choose a location to place the media files.

Imported tracks are made inactive if their source media is unavailable, or if the current session does not contain an equivalent output path.

Importing Grouped Playlists from Other Sessions

You can import tracks that use Grouped Playlists from another Pro Tools session, and the playlist grouping function will remain intact for those imported tracks. There is, however, a restriction for importing from pre-Pro Tools 6.1 sessions: After importing a partial set of grouped playlists (such as tracks 1–7 of a 10-track group), you cannot subsequently import tracks 8–10 and have them rejoin the playlist group for tracks 1–7.

Folder Tracks and Import Session Data

When importing Folder tracks and their member tracks using Import Session Data, the hierarchy of source tracks is maintained where possible. The Tracks Source column indicates Folder track hierarchies using indentations. If a Folder track and its member tracks are imported, the Folder hierarchy is maintained.

Option-Control-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-click (Windows) to select all source tracks in the same layer (siblings).

Tracks imported as new tracks are inserted after the last selected track. Note that if the last selected track is an open Folder track, selected tracks are imported into that Folder track.

Importing Sessions and Tracks by Drag and Drop

Session files can be dragged into the current session or project to import (and spot) audio, video, MIDI, clip group, REX and ACID files, tracks, and session data.

- Dragging a session to the Clip List imports all the clips from that session (without importing tracks).
- Dragging a session to a track in Pro Tools lets you import tracks.
- Dragging a session to a track playlist in Pro Tools opens the Import Session Data dialog, letting you select tracks and attributes to import. The imported session data will begin wherever you drop the session in the Timeline.

To import tracks and other session data by drag and drop:

1. Open a Workspace browser.
2. Drag a Pro Tools session file, or an AAF or OMF sequence, into the current session, as follows:
   - Drag onto an existing track to overlay or overwrite data on the target tracks. Hold the Shift key while dragging if you intend to replace the current track playlists with those being imported (the Shift key pre-configures the settings in the Import Session Data dialog).
   - Drag to empty space in the Edit window to create new tracks for the imported session data.
   - Configure the Import Session Data options (see "Import Session Data Dialog" on the next page).

Copying During Import

If no conversion is necessary, and the files reside on a suitable Performance volume, Pro Tools references the original version of the media. You can also choose to copy media while importing by using key commands, or enabling the **Automatically Copy Files on Import** preference. Copies are created in the session's Audio Files Folder or, for projects, uploaded to the cloud.

To manually copy files on import:

- Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) the files. A copy is created in the session Audio Files folder or, for projects, uploaded to the cloud.

When importing sessions or tracks, the Import Session Data dialog lets you specify whether to reference the source media, or copy it.

To automatically copy files on import:

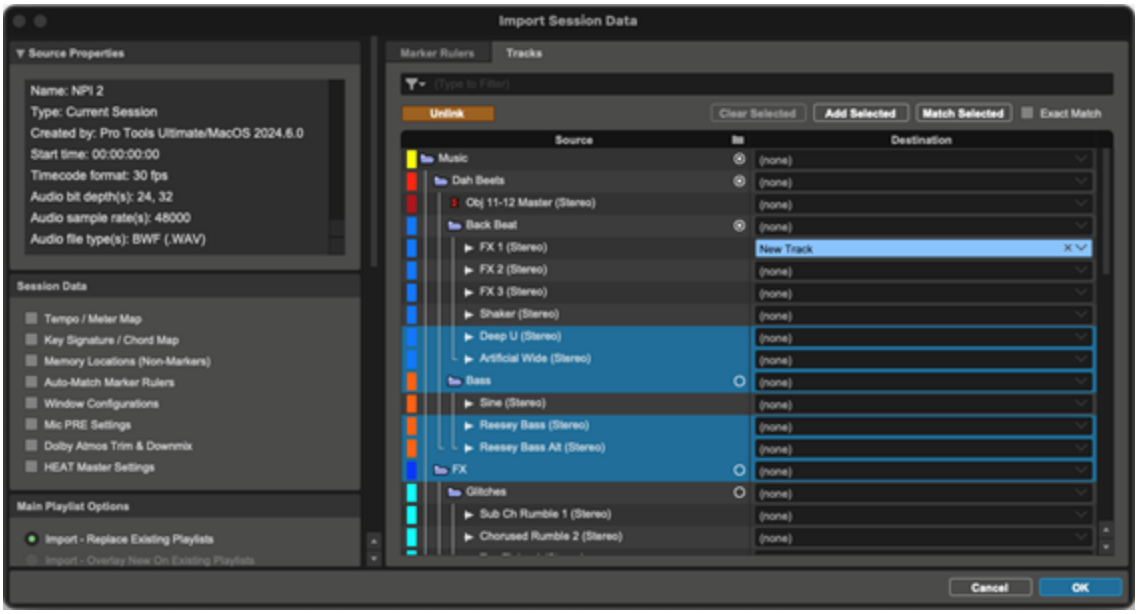
1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **Processing** tab.
2. Select **Automatically Copy Files on Import**.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

Using Undo after Importing

Using **Undo** after importing any files to the Timeline removes the files from the Timeline. However, the files remain in the session or project (in the Clip List and Workspace browser) and are offline. If you do not remove or delete the files from the session or project manually, Pro Tools will report them as missing files the next time the session or project is opened.

Import Session Data Dialog

The Import Session Data dialog lets you view the properties of the source session, select which tracks to import, and with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, choose which attributes of those tracks you want to import into the current session or project.



Import Session Data dialog (Pro Tools Ultimate)

Independent Selection in Import Session Data

Pro Tools lets you filter tracks to be imported from a source session to the currently open session, and then match them exactly, inexactly, or create new tracks.

Selection

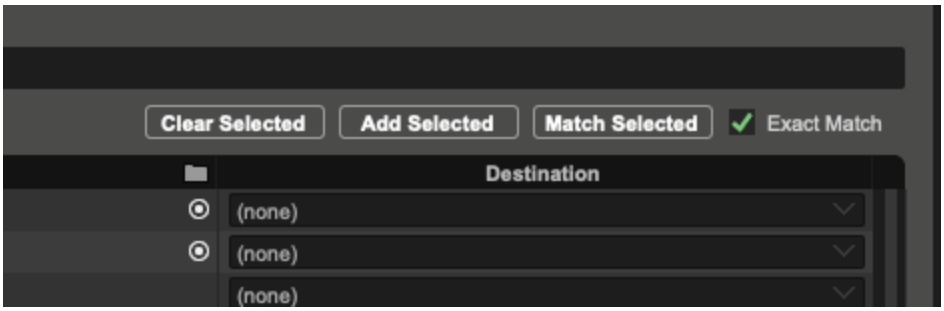
Enable **Unlink** to ensure that no **Destination** is automatically designated when selecting a track in the **Source** list. You must specify the **Destination** for each track selected in the **Source** list manually.

Disable **Unlink** to be able to make a selection in the **Source** list and have it assigned automatically to **New Track** in the **Destination** list.

Clear, Add, or Match Tracks

Pro Tools lets you Clear, Add, or Match selected or all tracks in the **Source** list with tracks in the **Destination** list. These buttons are context sensitive update to read either **Selected** or **All** accordingly.

- **Clear**: Sets selected or all tracks in the **Source** list to **none** in the **Destination** list.
- **Add**: Adds selected or all tracks in the **Source** list as New Tracks in the **Destination** list.
- **Match**: Matches selected or all tracks in the **Source** list to matching session tracks in the **Destination** list.

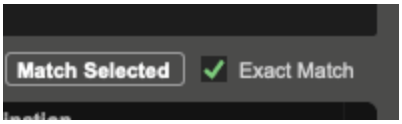


Exact Match

When the **Exact Match** option is enabled, Pro Tools looks for exact matched of track names (case-sensitive). When this options is disabled, Pro Tools uses a fuzzy matching algorithm when not checked.

To match tracks selected in the Source list exactly with tracks in the session:

1. Select the tracks you want to match in the **Source** list.
2. Enable the **Exact Match** option.



3. Click the **Match Selected** button.

Tracks in the open session that exactly match the selected tracks in the **Source** list are assigned in the **Destination** list.

Filtering Selected Tracks

When unlinked, the track selection is removed when filtering tracks out of the list.

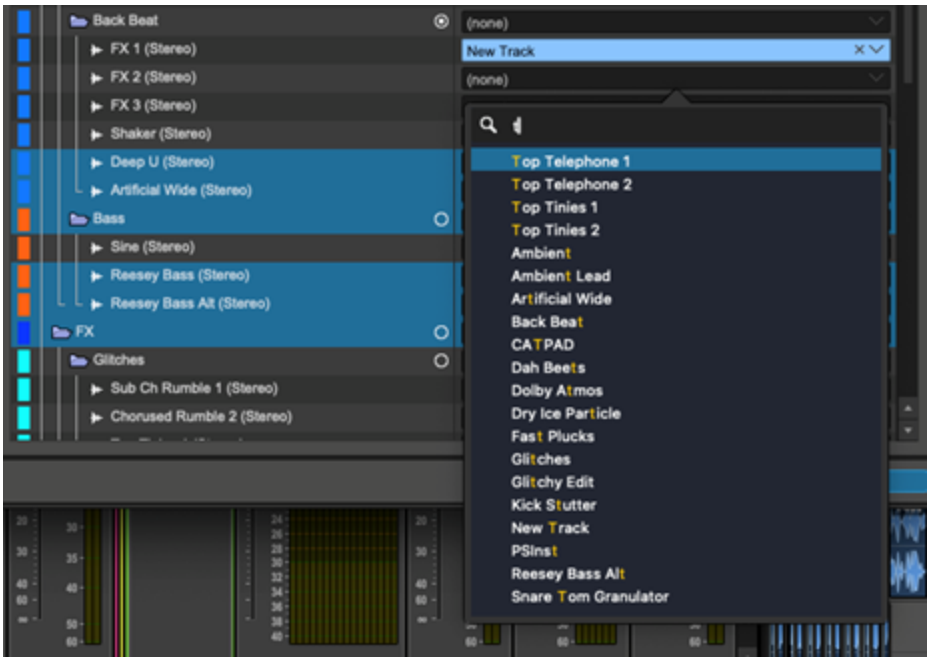
Imported Tracks Destination Indication

- None: Default color
- New track: Blue
- Mapped by exact name: Green
- Mapped without exact name: Orange



Search Tracks

Pro Tools lets you type to search for track names in the destination box. When clicking on the destination item you can immediately start typing to search, or click the Search (magnifying glass) icon.



Key Commands in the Import Session Data Window

There are two types of key commands available in the Import Session Data dialog. The standard commands, accessed with a modifier, are available even if a text field is focused. There are also single press key commands that are only available if a text field is not focused. This speeds up actions on tracks after making a selection.

Action	Mac	Windows
Select all source tracks and toggle to new tracks or none, and tracks are automatically imported if linked	Command+A	Control+A

Action	Mac	Windows
Trigger the Add button	Command+N	Control+N
Triggers the Clear button	Command+B	Control+B
Triggers the Match button	Command+M	Control+M
Filter tracks by name	Command+F	Control+F
Toggle Exact Match option on/off	Command+E	Control+E
Toggle Unlink on/off	Command+U	Control+U
Add	A or N	A or N
Match	M	M
Clear	C or B	C or B
Unlink	U	U
Exact match	E	E
Import all visible tracks as new tracks	Option-click the source track name	Alt-click the source track name
Extend the selection	Shift-click the Folder button	Shift-click the Folder button
Set all tracks **new** or **none** and only import the track on which you clicked	Command-click the source track name	Control-click the source track name
Select all visible tracks	Option-click the Folder button	Alt-click the Folder button
Set all visible tracks to 'none', except for the clicked Folder and its members (which will be imported as new tracks	Command-click the Folder button	Control-click the Folder button
With all tracks set to either new or none, import only clicked tracks	Command-click source track names	Control-click source tracks names

Source Properties

The Import Session Data dialog displays properties for the source session. These properties include source session name, session type, start time of the session, audio bit depth, and sample rate. For Pro Tools 5.1 or higher sessions, the program that created the session and the session's audio file type are listed.

Text Encoding

Pro Tools allows entry and display of any language characters supported in Unicode anywhere in the Pro Tools application. This lets you use multiple languages in session names, and in path names, file names and clip names.

However, Pro Tools 7.3.x and lower does not support Unicode. When importing data from sessions or OMF sequences created or saved with older versions of Pro Tools, you may need to identify the language encoding used in the imported elements.

To choose the language encoding when importing data from a legacy Pro Tools session:

1. Choose **File > Import > Session Data**.
2. Choose the language used in the legacy session from the **Text Encoding** pop-up menu.

Audio Media Options

The following Audio Media Options are available in the Import Session Data dialog:

Link to Source Media (Where Possible)

This option lets you avoid duplicating audio files by referring to the original files when possible. If the source files do not reside on supported playback media (such as removeable media, like a thumb drive), or if they require bit depth or sample rate conversion, the source files are copied instead. This option allows the current session or project to refer to files that do not match the current session or project audio file format.

Projects can link to media files on the local system that are stored outside of the project bundle. In this case, linked media it will still sync to the cloud, but it will not be copied to the local project media cache.

Copy from Source Media

This option copies all audio files related to the imported tracks from the source media to a new specified location (for sessions) or to the cloud (for projects), and converts the files to the current session or project sample rate if necessary. The source media's audio file format and bit depth are not changed. This is useful if you are importing tracks from a source such as shared storage or such as removeable media, like a thumb drive, and you want to place the audio files on a different hard drive.

Consolidate from Source Media

This option consolidates audio while copying it. This is useful if you want to copy only the clips of the audio files used in the source tracks, without copying unused audio. This option copies and converts consolidated audio to the current session or project audio file format, bit depth, and sample rate if necessary.

When you choose this option, you can also choose the **`Handle Size`** (in milliseconds) applied to consolidated audio. *Handle* is the amount of the original audio file that is preserved before and after each clip in case you need to make any edits (such as applying fades or trimming) to the new clips.

⚠ **Consolidate From Source Media is not available when importing Elastic Audio tracks.**

Force to Target Session Format

This option copies and converts all source media files to the current session or project file format, bit depth, and sample rate. Files are copied even if they already match the current session or project format.

Video Media Options

In the Import Session Data dialog, you can either choose to leave video media files in their original locations or copy them to a new location. This is useful if you are importing tracks from a source such as CDs or DVDs or shared storage, and you want to place video files on a different drive.

Link to Source Media

Select this option to avoid duplicating video files by referring to the original files.

Copy from Source Media

Select this setting to copy all video files related to the imported tracks from the source media to a new specified location.

Import as Offline Satellite Media (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Select this option to import a video track with offline media. You will be able to see cuts and clip names, but the video media remains offline. You can view the video media on a connected Video Satellite system. This option is only available when **`New Satellite Track`** is selected for the video track.

Timecode Mapping Options

In the Import Session Data dialog, you can specify where the imported tracks are placed in the current session. Times are indicated in timecode.

The following **Timecode Mapping Options** are available:

Maintain Absolute Timecode Values

This option places tracks at the locations where they were located in the source session. For example, if the current session starts at 00:01:00:00, and the session from which you are importing starts at 10:00:00:00, the earliest imported tracks can appear in your session is 9 hours and 59 minutes after the start of the session.

Maintain Relative Timecode Values

This option places tracks at the same offset from session start as they had in the source session. For example, if the source session starts at 01:00:00:00 and contains a track that starts at 01:01:00:00, and the current session start is 02:00:00:00, the track will be placed at 02:01:00:00 in the current session.

Map Start Timecode To

This option places tracks relative to their original session start time. (Times are expressed in hh:mm:ss:ff) For example, if the current session starts at 00:01:00:00, and the session from which you are importing starts at 10:00:00:00, you can reset the start timecode to 00:01:00:00, to avoid placing files 9 hours and 59 minutes from the start of your session.

Adjust Session Start Time to Match Source Start Time

When selected, the **Adjust Session Start Time to Match Source Start Time** option lets you automatically set the start time of the current Pro Tools session to match the start time of the session, or AAF or OMF sequence you are importing.

Track Offset Options

In the Import Session Data dialog, you can specify a track offset in addition to any offset incurred with the **Timecode Mapping Options**. Any imported audio is offset in the current session or project Timeline by the specified amount. You can enter values in Minutes:Seconds, Bars|Beats, Samples, Timecode, or Feet/Frames.

Sample Rate Conversion (SRC) Options

In the Import Session Data dialog, you can set options that control how sample rate conversion is applied to imported audio files. If the source session and the current session have the same sample rate, this portion of the dialog is unavailable.

The following **Sample Rate Conversion (SRC) Options** are available:

Source Sample Rate

For audio files created in any session, no matter what the session sample rate is, you can have the sample rate conversion process treat the files in several ways to compensate for pull up, pull down, and NTSC or PAL frame rates. This setting allows you to choose the sample rate from which you want the sample rate conversion process to start.

Destination Sample Rate

The destination sample rate is always set to the sample rate of your current session.

Conversion Quality

This option lets you set the quality of the sample-rate conversion process (see "Sample Rate Conversion Quality" on page 652).

Marker Rulers Tab

Click the **Marker Rulers** tab to access the list of Marker rulers in the source session that can be imported, each with a corresponding pop-up menu for mapping source rulers to rulers in the open session.

Operation/Destination Ruler Pop-Up Menus

In the Import Session Data dialog, each source ruler has a corresponding pop-up menu that lists options for importing the ruler as well as for possible destination rulers in the current session or project. The pop-up menus display the following items:

(none)

Neither the source track nor any of its attributes are imported.

New Basic Folder

Neither the source track nor any of its attributes are imported.

❑ *Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any Source marker to set it to a New Basic Folder.*

Destination Ruler Names

The names of possible destination rulers in the current session or project are listed at the bottom of the pop-up menu.

Match Rulers

In the Import Session Data dialog, you can make sure Marker rulers match when you are importing from source rulers with the same name as destination rulers in the current session or project (such as a new cut of a scene). Click **Match Rulers** to automatically match the ruler names.

Tracks Tab

Click the **Tracks** tab to access the list of tracks in the source session that can be imported, each with a corresponding pop-up menu.

Operation/Destination Track Pop-Up Menus

In the Import Session Data dialog, each source track has a corresponding pop-up menu that lists options for importing the track as well as for possible destination tracks in the current session or project. The pop-up menus display the following items:

Do Not Import

Neither the source track nor any of its attributes are imported.

Import as New Track

The source track and all attributes selected in the **Track Data to Import** pop-up menu are imported into a new track in the current session or project.

Destination Track Names

The names of possible destination tracks in the current session or project are listed at the bottom of the pop-up menu. Imported playlists and all attributes selected in the **Track Data to Import** pop-up menu will be placed in the destination track you select.

Only destination tracks that match the track type (audio, Instrument, MIDI, Auxiliary Input, or Master Fader) and the channel format (mono, stereo, or any of the supported multichannel formats) of the source track appear in the pop-up menu.

Display of Inactive and Hidden Tracks in the Track List

- Inactive tracks show as italicized.
- Hidden tracks are gray and show **(Hidden)** at the end.
- Inactive tracks are as gray and italicized.
- Hidden and inactive tracks are gray, italicized, and show **(Hidden)** at the end.
- Track type and color icons are shown in the Tracks list, as well as indication of folder hierarchy.
- To show or hide folder member tracks, click the folder icon.
- To open or close all folders in the Tracks list, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Folder icon.
- To open all descendant folders in the tree, Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) the top level Folder icon.

Match Tracks

In the Import Session Data dialog, you can make sure track names match when you are importing playlists from source tracks with the same name as destination tracks in the current session or project (such as a new cut of a scene). Click **Match Tracks** to automatically match the track names. Tracks must have the same name, track type, and channel format to be automatically matched.

Matching tracks only affects the visible area. If a track is already mapped or set to a new track, and then a filter causes it to be filtered out, it maintains its mapping setting. This lets you show only subsets of tracks, match, and then show another subset and match those too.

Filter Track Attributes in Import Session Data

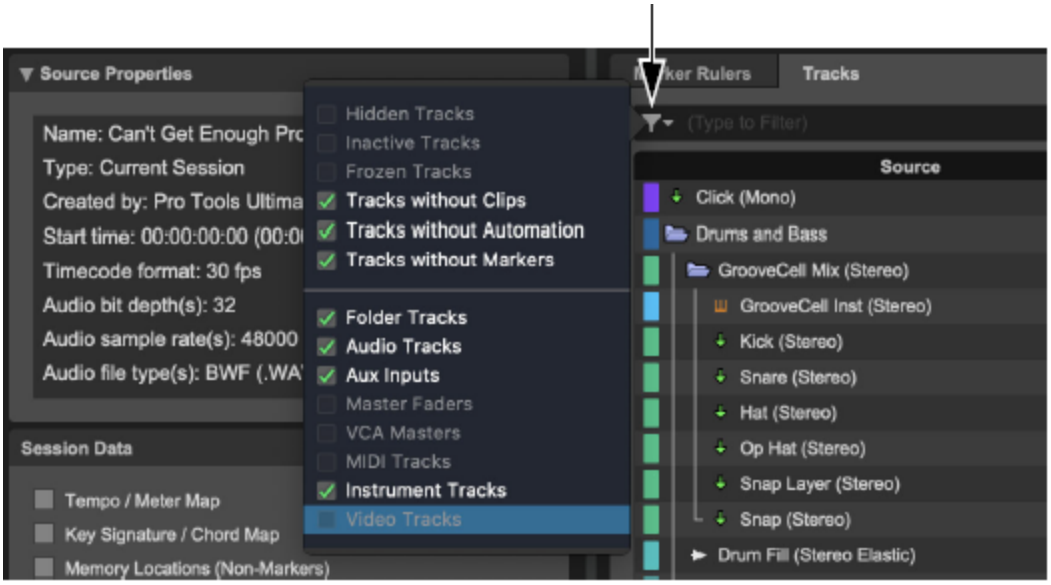
Pro Tools lets you filter tracks by track attributes in the Import Session Data dialog.

Filterable track attributes include:

- Hidden Tracks
- Inactive Tracks
- Frozen Tracks
- Tracks without Clips
- Tracks without Automation
- Tracks without Markers
- Routing Folders
- Basic Folders
- Audio Tracks
- Aux Inputs
- Master Faders
- VCA Masters
- MIDI Tracks
- Instrument Tracks
- Video Tracks

To filter tracks by track attributes in the Import Session Data dialog:

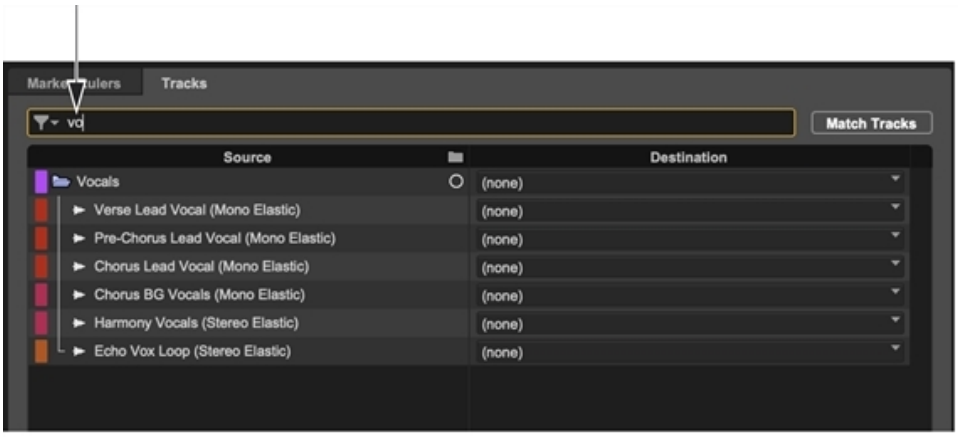
1. Choose **File > Import > Session Data**.
2. Navigate to and select the session from which you want to import session data.
3. In the Import Session Data dialog, click the Filter button for the track where you want to filter track data.



4. Select the Track attributes you want to include when importing track data. Any tracks that do not have the selected track attributes are filtered out.

To find Source Tracks by text:

1. Choose **File > Import > Session Data**.
2. Navigate to and select the session from which you want to import session data.
3. In the Import Session Data dialog, click the Filter button for the track where you want to filter track data.



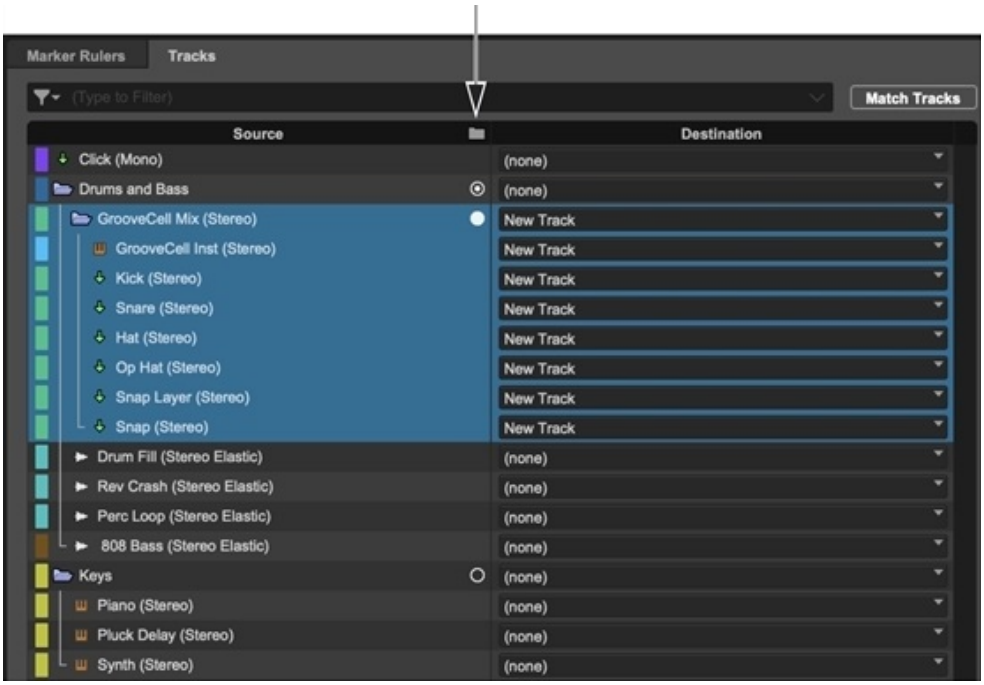
4. Type text in the Filter field to show only those Source Tracks the include the typed text in their name.

Import Folder Members with Folder

Pro Tools lets you import Track Folders along with any selected member tracks of the Track Folder.

To automatically import a Folder Track and all member tracks to New Tracks (or none):

- Click the Folder icon in the Source Tracks list for the Folder Track you want.



The Folder icon has 3 states to indicate:

- Filled: Folder Track and all member tracks are selected for import.
- Partially Filled: Some but not all member tracks are selected for import.
- Empty: Neither the Folder Track nor any of the members are selected for import.

To import all visible tracks (as well as any member tracks):

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click the button in the Folder column.

To set all visible tracks to 'none,' except the clicked folder and its members which will be imported as new tracks:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the button in the Folder column.

Track Data to Import

Available through the Import Session Data dialog, the **`Track Data to Import`** dialog lets you select which attributes of the selected tracks you want to import into the current session or project.

Selected attributes are applied to all tracks that you choose to import into the current session or project.

Replacing Track Attributes

When you import an attribute of the source track into an existing track in the current session or project, it replaces the corresponding attribute in the destination track. If you choose not to import an attribute of the source track, the corresponding attribute in the destination track is retained.

Replacing Track Path Names

When you import a track's input, output, send output or hardware insert assignments, any custom path names and I/O configurations from the source session are not imported. You can import path names and I/O configurations by importing **`I/O Setup`** settings. For more information, see "Factory I/O Settings" on page 92.

Selecting Track Data to Import

To select what Track Data to import:

1. In the Import Session Data dialog, click the **Choose** button for **Track Data to Import**.
2. Configure the Track Data to Import dialog as desired.



3. Click **OK**.

Pro Tools lets you include (or exclude) the following Track Data with Track Presets:

Alternate Playlists

Recalls all of the alternate playlists from source tracks. The alternate playlists appear in the playlist selector of destination tracks.

Clips and Media

Recalls all of the audio files or clips in the source track, and places them in the Clip List.

Clip Gain

Recalls the clip gain settings for all imported audio clips.

Clip Effects

Recalls the clip effects settings for all imported audio clips.

Main Volume Automation and Setting

Recalls the source track's Volume fader setting and any automation data on the track's Volume Automation playlist. The Volume fader setting and any Volume automation data in the destination track are replaced.

Main Pan Automation and Setting

Recalls the source track's Pan Slider settings and any automation data on the track's Pan Automation playlist. The Pan Slider setting and any Pan automation data in the destination track are replaced.

Main Mute Automation and Setting

Recalls the source track's Mute setting and any automation data on the track's Mute automation playlist. The Mute setting and any Mute automation data in the destination track are replaced.

Main Output Assignments

Recalls the source track's channel output assignments, including any multiple output assignments. The channel output assignments in the destination track are replaced.

Send Volume Automation and Setting

Recalls the Volume fader setting and any automation data for sends on the source track. The Volume fader setting and any Volume automation data for sends in the destination track are replaced.

Send Pan Automation and Setting

Recalls the Pan slider setting and any automation data for sends on the source track. The Pan slider setting and any Pan automation data for sends in the destination track are replaced.

Send Mute Automation and Setting

Recalls the Mute setting and any Mute automation data on the source track. The Mute setting and any Mute automation data in the destination track are replaced.

Send Output Assignments

Recalls the source track's send output assignments. Any Send output assignments in the destination track are replaced.

Plugin Assignments

Recalls the source track's plugin assignments. Any plugins in the destination track are removed, and their associated settings and automation are lost.

If the source track uses a plugin that is not available on the destination system, it appears in the destination track and is made inactive.

Plugin Settings and Automation

When the source track's plugin assignments are recalled, this option imports the track's plugin settings and any automation data associated with the plugins. If no plugin assignments are imported, this option has no effect.

Elastic Audio Track State

Recalls the source track's Elastic Audio track state. Any Elastic Audio settings in the destination track are replaced.

Melodyne Track State

Recalls the source track's Melodyne track state. Any Melodyne settings in the destination track are replaced.

ARA Track State

Recalls the source track's ARA track state. Any ARA settings in the destination track are replaced.

HW Insert Assignments

Recalls the source track's hardware Insert assignments. Any Insert assignments in the destination track are replaced.

Voice Assignments

Recalls the source track's voice assignment from the source session. Any voice assignments in the destination track are replaced.

Input Assignments

Recalls the source track's channel input assignment. The Input assignment in the destination track is replaced.

Side-Chain Assignments

When the source track's plugin assignments are recalled, this option imports any side-chain assignments associated with the plugins. If no plugin assignments are imported, this option has no effect.

Track Active State

Recalls the active/inactive state of the source track from the source session.

Track Comments

Recalls the track comments associated with the source track. Any comments in the destination track are replaced.

Track Markers

Recalls all Markers on the source track.

Track Colors

Recalls the track color associated with the source track. Any color for the destination track is changed.

Record Safe/Solo Safe Settings

Recalls the record safe and solo safe settings of the source track from the source session. Any record safe or solo safe settings in the destination track are replaced.

Track View Settings

Recalls the track height and playlist view of the source track from the source session.

Mix/Edit Groups

Recalls track groups from the source session.

ICON Custom Fader Groups (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

Recalls any ICON Custom Fader Groups from the source session.

ICON Automation Snapshots (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

Recalls any ICON Automation Snapshots from the source session.

HEAT Switch Settings

Recalls any stored HEAT switch settings from the source session.

Bed/Object Assignment and Toggle Setting (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio with Dolby Atmos Only)

Imports the mapping of buses to Bed Inputs to the Renderer, and Object Output Path assignments and Bus/Object toggle settings for any tracks selected for import.

Bed/Object Group Assignments (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio with Dolby Atmos Only)

Imports Bed/Object Group assignments to buses in the I/O Setup. The setting is not available if Bed/Object Groups are being managed by the Renderer.

Include Instrument/MIDI output

Recalls the source track's MIDI output assignment for Instrument and MIDI tracks. The MIDI output assignment in the destination track is replaced. Disable this option to keep the current assignment of destination tracks.

Plugin Global Renderer Assignments

Imports plugin global renderer assignments. This provides greater flexibility when working with sessions with track assignments to multiple renderers.

Panner Assignment & Automation

Imports panner assignments and automation. This provides greater flexibility when working with sessions with track assignments to multiple renderers.

Track Data to Import Presets

Pro Tools lets you store and recall different configurations of the Track Data to Import dialog as presets. The Presets controls for the Track Data to Import dialog work much like the Presets controls for Batch Renaming, Fades, and Clip Effects.

Presets Buttons

The Track Data to Import dialog provides five **Presets** buttons that let you store and recall your most commonly used Track Data to Import configurations. You can also save and import Track Data to Import settings using the Librarian menu.

To store a Track Data to Import preset:

1. Configure the Track Data to Import dialog as you like.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the **Presets** button where you want to store the current Track Data to Import settings.

To recall a Track Data to Import preset:

- Click the **Presets** button that contains the settings you want to recall.

Librarian Menu

Use the Librarian menu to save and recall presets files (.ptpreset). These are usually saved to and recalled from the Track Data to Import folder (/Documents/Pro Tools/Pro Tools Presets/Track Data to Import/). However, you can save to and import from any directory location on your system. Preset files can be shared and used on any other Pro Tools system as well.

The Librarian menu commands include:

‹factory default›

Restores the default settings for the Track Data to Import dialog.

Save Settings

Saves the current settings. This command overwrites any previous version of the preset.

Press Command+Shift+S (Mac) or Control+Shift+S (Windows) to save the current settings.

Save Settings As

Saves the current settings as a new preset. You can name the preset and save it to any location on your system.

Import Settings

Opens the Choose a Settings File dialog focused on the default Track Data to Import folder. Track Data to Import Settings file stored in this location are listed by name under **<factory default>** in the Librarian menu. In the Choose a Settings File dialog, you can navigate to any location on your system to select and import the Track Data to Import Settings preset file you want.

Delete Current Settings File

Permanently deletes the current settings file from disk.

Lock (Unlock) Settings File

Locks (or unlocks) the selected Settings file so that it cannot (or can) be edited.

Import Options

The following Import Options are available in the Import Session Data dialog:

Tempo/Meter Map

Imports the meter and tempo maps, as they appear in the Tempo and Meter Conductor rulers, from the source session. Any Tempo or Meter events in the destination session or project are replaced.

Key Signature/Chord Map

Imports all key signatures (if present) and chord markers into Pro Tools with the imported session data. Any key signatures and chord markers in the destination session or project are replaced.

Memory Locations (Non-Markers)

Imports all Memory Locations that are not markers. Any Memory Locations in the destination session or project are retained and imported Memory Locations are assigned the next available Marker/Memory Location numbers.

Auto-Match Marker Rulers

Automatically matches Marker rulers from the source session to Marker rulers in the open session by name. If no match is found, Pro Tools notifies you. When this option is enabled, disabling it sets all matched marker rulers to (none).

Window Configurations

Imports the Window Configurations from the source session.

Mic Pre Settings

Imports any Pro Tools Mic Pre settings from the source session. Any Mic Pre settings in the destination session or project are replaced.

Dolby Atmos Trim and Downmix

imports Trim and Downmix settings from either a source session or ADM file (see "Importing ADM BWF Files" on page 1772).

HEAT Master Settings

Imports any HEAT Master settings from the source session, including Bypass, Drive, and Tone settings. The HEAT Master settings in the destination session or project are replaced.

Main Playlist Options

In the Import Session Data dialog, you can select from the following options to control how the main playlist from each source track is imported to the destination track in the current session or project.

Import – Replace Existing Playlists

Imports the main playlist from the source track. When you import the playlist into an existing track, the main playlist in the destination track is deleted and replaced with the imported playlist.

- If you select this option and import all of the source track's attributes, this is equivalent to importing the entire track.
- If you select this option and do not import any of the source track's attributes, you replace the audio playlists while keeping your current mixer settings.

Import – Overlay New On Existing Playlists

Imports the main playlist from the source track. When you import the playlist into an existing track, any existing playlist data that overlaps data imported from the source track is trimmed and replaced with the imported data. Any playlist data in the destination track that does not overlap remains in the destination track.

Do Not Import

Does not import the main playlist from the source track. No audio is imported; only the attributes selected in the **`Track Data to Import`** list are imported to the selected tracks. When selected, importing all of the source track's input, output, send, insert and plugin attributes is equivalent to importing a channel strip.

Importing AAF and OMF Sequences

Pro Tools lets you open AAF and OMF sequences as new Pro Tools sessions or projects, or you can import AAF and OMF sequences into existing Pro Tools sessions and projects. Pro Tools can import AAF and OMF sequences exported from other Pro Tools sessions or projects, from Avid Media Composer, or from third-party applications (such as Final Cut Pro, Logic Audio, Adobe Premiere Pro, and Nuendo—consult your third-party application's documentation for information on how they handle OMF and AAF export).

When importing AAF sequences generated from an Avid video editing application, Pro Tools can import mono, stereo, and 5.1 and 7.1 surround audio tracks. Mono tracks with 5.1 or 7.1 surround panning can also be imported, with panning information intact. (Greater-than-stereo multichannel formats are supported with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only.)

When opening and importing an AAF or OMF sequence, a modified version of the Dashboard window opens and prompts you to name and save the sequence as a new session or project. Once you name and save the new session or project, the Import Session Data dialog opens. For more information, see "AAF/OMF Source Track Translation Settings" on page 696.

Pro Tools can import the following types of files sourced from Avid editors:

- AAF or OMF sequences (including those with embedded audio)
- Individual Avid video files in the MXF or OMF format
- OMF and MXF audio files

Multi-channel import and export are only possible with AAF sequences.

To import AAF or OMF sequences into Pro Tools, do one of the following:

- Use the **File > Import > Session Data** command.
- Use the **File > Open Session** command.
- Drag and drop them from any Workspace browser or the desktop.

For more information, see "Importing an AAF or OMF Sequence into an Existing Session or Project" on page 691.

To import individual Avid MXF or OMF video files into Pro Tools, do one of the following:

- Use the **File > Import > Video** command.
- Drag and drop them from any Workspace browser or the desktop.

To import individual OMF or MXF audio files into Pro Tools, do one of the following:

- Use the **File > Import > Audio** command.
- Drag and drop them from any Workspace browser or the desktop.

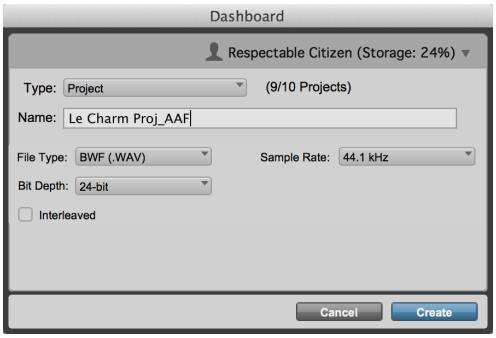
Importing an AAF or OMF Sequence as a Pro Tools Session

The easiest way of using Pro Tools to edit a sequence exported from an Avid application (such as Media Composer) is to open it as a new session or project.

Pro Tools cannot play video files embedded within an AAF or OMF sequence.

To open and import an AAF or OMF sequence in Pro Tools:

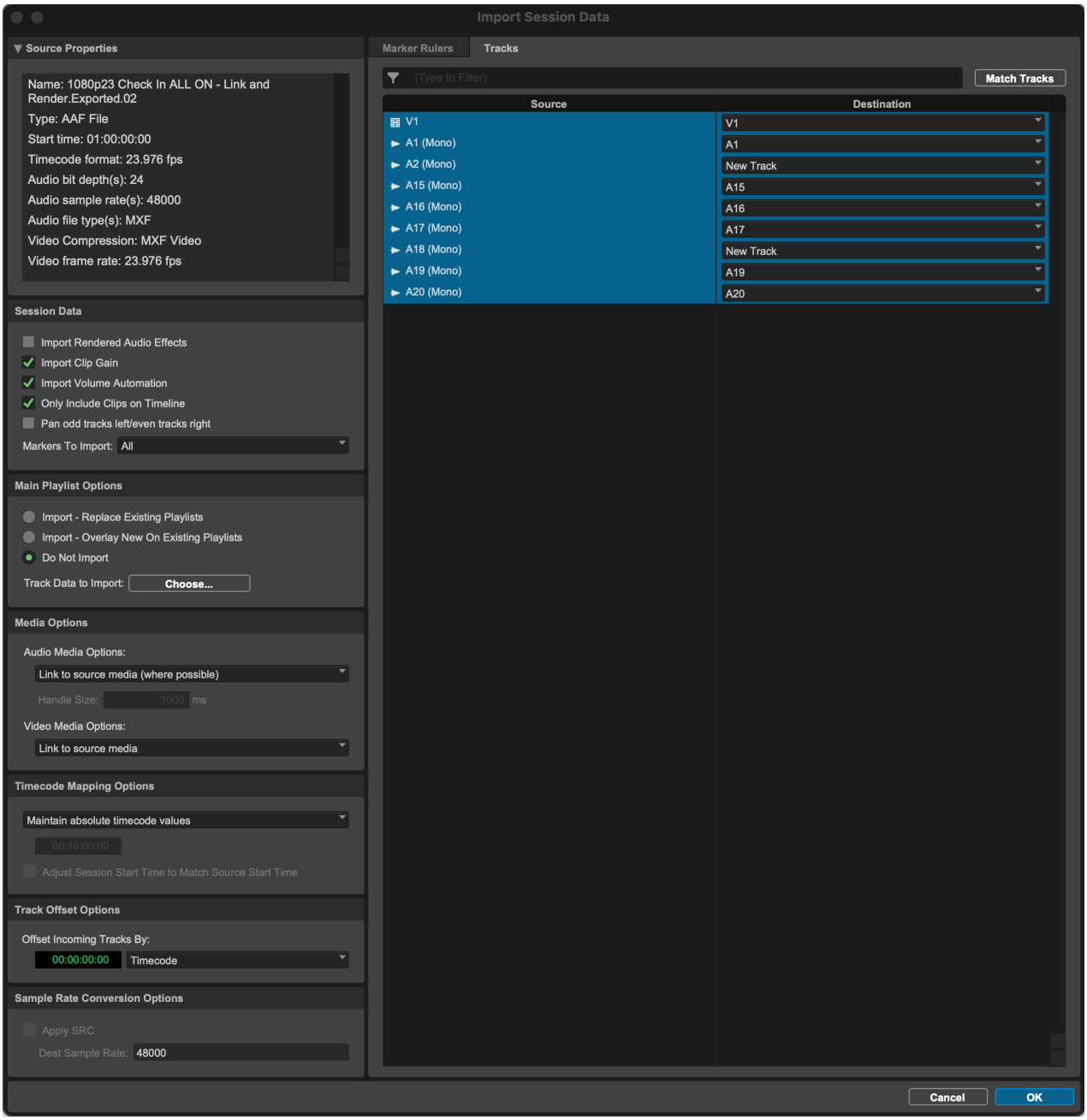
1. Launch Pro Tools.
2. Choose **File > Open Session**.
3. In the Open Session dialog, navigate to the AAF or OMF sequence you want to import.
4. Click **Open**.



Dashboard dialog

5. Set **Type** to **Project (cloud)** or **Session (local)**.
6. **Name** your session or project.
7. Select the **Audio File Type**, **Sample Rate**, and **Bit Depth** to use for the session.
8. To create interleaved multichannel audio files in the session. select **Interleaved**.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Click **Save**. The Import Session Data dialog opens.

You can open and import OMF or AAF sequences that reference audio files with mixed sample rates or bit depths.



Import Session Data dialog

11. Select an option for importing audio from the **`Audio Media Options`** pop-up menu (see "Audio Media Options" on page 693).
12. Select an option for importing video from the **`Video Media Options`** pop-up menu (see "Video Media Options" on page 694).
13. Change other settings and options as necessary (see "Import Options when Importing AAF or OMF Sequences" on page 693).
14. Click **`OK`**.

Pro Tools creates a new online project or a new local session file in the location you specified, along with the following new items (sessions only):

- Audio Files folder
- Bounced Files folder
- Clip Groups folder
- Session File Backups folder
- Video Files folder
- cache.wfm file

This session or project will match the audio file type, sample rate, and bit depth of the audio in the OMF or AAF you selected. Pro Tools does not import video embedded in a sequence.

If a Video Satellite system is available, Pro Tools can import the video metadata from a sequence to a satellite track. In this case, the video itself is played back from the Video Satellite machine, in tandem with Pro Tools playback.

For more information, see "Media Composer Video Satellite" on page 1976.

During the import, if there are any errors, clip name truncations, or other notes (such as missing effect renderings), a dialog appears asking you if you want a detailed report of the changes. Click Yes and choose where you want to save the log. The log is a text file that you can open in any text editing application.

Every AAF and OMF file has a filename and unique identifier stored in the AAF and OMF metadata, and a name which is displayed on the desktop. Truncating a clip name in the translation process does not change the AAF or OMF filename, Unique ID, or SMPTE ID (only Pro Tools 12.8 and later generate and recognize both Unique ID and SMPTE ID for AIFF and WAV files).

Multi-Cam Resolution Files

On an Avid system, Multi-Cam Resolution files display multiple individual camera angles of the same scene. The Avid operator chooses which of the Multi-Cam files (and therefore camera angles) will be dominant, at the time of creating an AAF or OMF export. When you import an AAF or OMF sequence into a Pro Tools session, only the clip representing the dominant camera angle will be displayed.

Importing an AAF or OMF Sequence into an Existing Session or Project

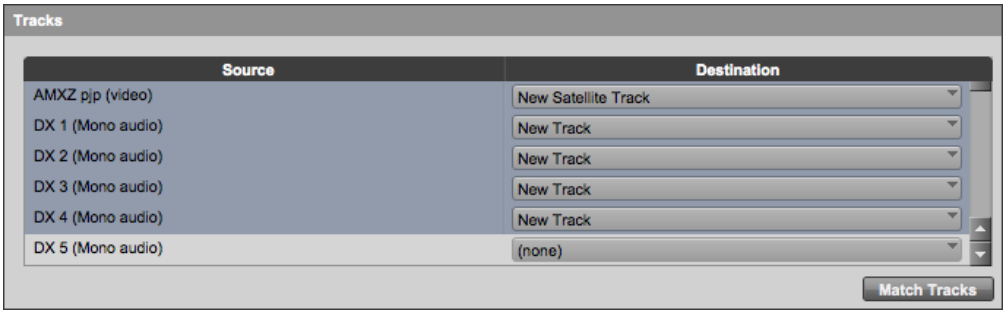
You can import an AAF or OMF sequence containing audio and video media into an existing Pro Tools session or project.

To open and import audio and/or video tracks from an OMF or AAF sequence:

1. Launch Pro Tools, and open an existing Pro Tools session or project.
2. Choose **`File > Import > Session Data`**, and select the AAF or OMF sequence that you want to import.

   You can also open an AAF or OMF sequence by dragging it from any location on your computer or the Workspace browser to the Pro Tools Timeline.

3. In the Import Session Data dialog, deselect any source tracks that you do *not* want imported. (If importing Session Data from AAF or OMF sequences, all tracks are selected by default. However, if you are importing tracks from a Pro Tools session, no tracks are selected by default.)



Source Tracks

4. Select the AAF/OMF translation settings (see "AAF/OMF Source Track Translation Settings" on page 696).
5. Select the **Audio Media Options** (see "Audio Media Options" on the next page).
6. Select the **Video Media Options** (see "Video Media Options" on page 694).
7. Select the **Timecode Mapping Options** (see "Timecode Mapping Options" on page 695).
8. Set the **Track Offset Options** (see "Track Offset Options" on page 695).
9. Set the **Sample Rate Convert Options** (see "Sample Rate Conversion Options" on page 696).
10. Change other settings and options as necessary (for more information about the Import Session Data dialog, see "Import Session Data Dialog" on page 673).
11. Click **OK**.

    If there are any errors or clip name truncations, a dialog will appear asking you if you want a detailed report of the changes. Click Yes and choose where you want to save the log.

12. If your audio or video source media is on a volume that is not suitable for playback (shown as a Transfer volume in the Workspace browser), Pro Tools displays a dialog that guides you to copy the media to a volume designated for Playback or Record. (Click **Yes**.)

Pro Tools imports the audio and video media to the Timeline. Audio tracks with mixed sample rates are automatically converted to the same sample rate as the session.

Importing AAF/OMF Audio Sequences with Mixed Sample Rates or Bit Depth

You can open and import AAF or OMF sequences with mixed sample rates and bit depths into Pro Tools.

Audio files that are not of the same sample rate as a session or project must be converted to be used with the session or project. When an audio file is converted, a new file with the correct file type, and sample rate is created and placed in a folder you choose. Audio files with mixed bit depths (and matching sample rates) can be imported without conversion.

You can use the Source Sample Rate settings to compensate for any pull up or pull down factors that may have been applied to the audio prior to importing. In a sequence with files of mixed sample rates, set the Source Sample Rate in proportion to the Target sample rate of the session, and the pull up or pull down compensation will be applied correctly to all files in proportion with their original sample rate.

Importing Audio from AAF Sequences with Unsupported Video Formats

Pro Tools lets you import audio from AAF sequences containing unsupported video formats, including high-definition Avid video files with frame rates over 30 frames per second.

The following rules apply when importing AAF sequences of this type:

- Supported audio in these sequences will play back, but unsupported video will not.
- Unsupported video appears in the Timeline as orange blocks.

Importing AAF/OMF Sequences Containing Media Mixdowns

Pro Tools with an Avid video peripheral lets you import AAF and OMF sequences exported from Avid editing applications by selecting **File > Import > Session Data** or by dragging them from the desktop or a Workspace browser to Pro Tools. For more information, see "Importing Session Data" on page 670.

If the sequence contains a video mixdown, the video mixdown and its corresponding metadata are displayed in two separate video tracks on the Timeline.

If the sequence contains an audio mixdown, the audio mixdown and its corresponding metadata are displayed in two separate video tracks on the Timeline.

SMPTE ID and Unique ID

Pro Tools recognizes and creates two different unique IDs for media files (AIFF and WAV only): Unique ID and SMPTE ID. SMPTE ID (Pro Tools 12.8 and later only) provides optimal compatibility and interchange with other applications that utilize SMPTE IDs in media files and AAF sequences (such as Avid Media Composer), and ensures truly unique IDs for AIFF and WAV files.

8-bit Unique ID

Legacy ID format used with versions of Pro Tools lower that 12.8.

SMPTE ID

32-bit SMPTE IDs created and supported with Pro Tools 12.8 or higher.

Import Options when Importing AAF or OMF Sequences

When importing AAF or OMF sequences, Pro Tools provides the following import options through the Import Session Data dialog:

- Audio Media options
- Video Media options
- Timecode Mapping options
- Track Offset options
- Sample Rate Conversion options
- AAF/OMF Source Track Translation settings
- Main Playlist options

Audio Media Options

When importing AAF or OMF tracks into Pro Tools, use the **Audio Media Options** pop-up to select whether to copy, consolidate, or link to the source audio media.

Link to Source Audio Media (Where Possible)

Select this option to translate the AAF or OMF file to a Pro Tools session that refers to as many of the original media files as possible. In this case, the Pro Tools session points to the BWF (WAV) or AIF files from the source project.

When importing audio embedded in an AAF sequence, Pro Tools copies the audio to a new drive or folder even if this setting is selected.

For projects, you should always copy or consolidate from source media. Any tracks in a project that contain linked local media cannot be shared.

Copy from Source Media

Use this setting to copy referenced audio to a new drive or folder.

You can perform sample rate conversion on audio during translation.

OMFI Audio Media and Copy from Source Media Mode

When importing an AAF or OMF sequence with the Copy from Source Media option enabled, Pro Tools can copy OMFI format .WAV and .AIF audio files directly into the session. However, Pro Tools treats OMFI audio files as read-only.

Destructive edits or processes (such as the Pencil tool) cannot be applied to these files, unless they are first converted into standard audio files.

To convert OMFI audio files during import:

- Choose Force to Target Format mode, rather than Copy from Source Media mode, when setting import options. For more information, see "Force to Target Session Format" below.

To convert an OMFI audio file that exists in the current session or project:

1. Select the audio to be converted.
2. Apply the Consolidate command to convert the selected audio (**`Edit > Consolidate Clip`**).
3. Edit and process your newly converted files as normal.

Consolidate from Source Media

Use this setting to copy the audio from the source sequence to the Pro Tools session or project, while removing all unused areas in the copies. For example, you might only be using ten seconds of a ten-minute audio file in your project. Consolidating this audio saves a great deal of disk space by preserving only the audio you use and a user-defined amount of *handle*, and discarding the rest.

You can sample-rate convert the audio during translation.

Force to Target Session Format

Use this setting to convert source media to the session audio file format if the source media file format differs from the project or session file format.

Handle Size (Milliseconds)

If you have selected **`Consolidate from Source Media`**, you can specify the number of milliseconds of each original audio file to retain both before and after the clip boundaries defined in the source project. This enables you to extend clip boundaries even after you've consolidated, by the amount you specify.

It is a good idea to have at least 1000 milliseconds of handle, so you can "trim out" edits that sound "clipped" or "up-cut."

Video Media Options

When importing AAF or OMF tracks into Pro Tools, use the pop-up menu in the Video Media Options section to copy or link to the source video media.

Link to Source Media

Select this option to avoid duplicating video files by referring to the original files.

Copy from Source Media

Select this setting to copy all video files related to the imported tracks from the source media to a new specified location.

Import as Offline Satellite Media (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Select this option to import a video track with offline media. You will be able to see cuts and clip names, but the video media remains offline. You can view the video media on the connected Video Satellite system. This option is only available when **`New Satellite Track`** is selected for the video track.

Timecode Mapping Options

When importing AAF or OMF tracks into Pro Tools, you can specify where the imported tracks are placed in the current session. Times are indicated in timecode.

Maintain Absolute Timecode Values

This option places tracks at the locations where they were located in the source session. For example, if the current session starts at 00:01:00:00, and the session from which you are importing starts at 10:00:00:00, the earliest imported tracks can appear in your session is 9 hours and 59 minutes after the start of the session.

Maintain Relative Timecode Values

This option places tracks at the same offset from session start as they had in the source session. For example, if the source session starts at 01:00:00:00 and a contains a track that starts at 01:01:00:00, and the current session start is 02:00:00:00, the track will be placed at 02:01:00:00 in the current session.

Map Start Timecode to hh:mm:ss:ff

This option places tracks relative to their original session start time. For example, if the current session starts at 00:01:00:00, and the session from which you are importing starts at 10:00:00:00, you can reset the start timecode to 00:01:00:00, to avoid placing files 9 hours and 59 minutes from the start of your session.

Adjust Session Start Time to Match Source Start Time

This option changes the start time of the current session to match the start time of the AAF or OMF sequence being imported. When this option is enabled, the **`Map Start Timecode to hh:mm:ss:ff`** option (and its timecode entry box) are disabled.

If the sequence being imported has a later start time than the current session or project, the Maintain Absolute Timecode Values option is disabled.

In some cases, when clips in the current session or project are situated near the time boundaries of the session or project, enabling Adjust Session Start Time and choosing to Maintain Relative Timecode Values can put clips in danger of being moved out of bounds. In these cases, a warning is displayed and Pro Tools does not adjust the session start time.

Track Offset Options

When importing AAF or OMF tracks into Pro Tools, specify a track offset in addition to any offset incurred with the Timecode Mapping options. Any imported audio is offset in the current session's timeline by the specified amount. Values can be entered in **`Bars|Beats`**, **`Min:Sec`**, **`Timecode`**, **`Feet+Frames`**, or **`Samples`**.

Sample Rate Conversion Options

When importing AAF or OMF tracks into Pro Tools, these settings let you convert the sample rate of the session's audio files. For example, you can convert from 48 kHz to 44.1 kHz, or from 44.1 kHz to 48 kHz. HDX and HD Native systems support sample rates higher than 48 kHz (88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, and 192 kHz). These settings also enable you to convert to compensate for the 0.1% speed change (pull up or pull down) between 24 fps film and 29.97 fps NTSC video, or the 4% speed change (pull up or pull down) between 24 fps film and 25 fps PAL video.

See "Speed Correction for Film, NTSC Video, and PAL Video" on page 1865 for information about converting between different speeds and sample rates.

Source Sample Rate

This setting lets you specify the sample rate of the audio material you are working with in Pro Tools independently of the source audio sample rate settings.

For exmple, you may receive a a sequence created on Media Composer at 44.1 kHz. If you want to work at 48 kHz in Pro Tools, you should set the Source Audio Sample Rate setting to 44,100 and the Destination Audio Sample Rate to 48,000.

These settings can also be used to correct for pull up or pull down problems. For example, you may receive an AAF or OMF transfer from a Film Composer that contains audio media at "film speed" when played back at 48 kHz. You may want to convert all the audio files and edits to play back at NTSC video speed and 48 kHz.

In this case, set the Source Audio Sample Rate setting to 47,952 and the Destination Audio Sample Rate to 48,000. These settings tell Pro Tools that you want to fit 47,952 of the original "film speed" samples into 48,000 of the new "video speed" samples. With these settings, you sample-rate-convert the material to NTSC video speed.

You can set the Source Audio Sample Rate either by selecting one of the predefined sample rates from the pop-up menu, or by typing a value into the text box.

Destination Sample Rate

This setting determines the target session or project audio sample rate setting, as shown in the Session Setup window, and the sample rate of all audio files in the target session or project. Available settings include Pro Tools standard sample rates of 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz. HDX and HD Native systems support sample rates higher than 48 kHz (88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, and 192 kHz).

If this setting differs from the Source Audio Sample Rate setting, audio is sample-rate converted digitally to the Destination Audio Sample Rate.

Conversion Quality Pop-Up Menu

This pop-up menu lets you select settings corresponding to Pro Tools sample rate conversion settings. The **`Tweak Head (Slowest)`** option provides the best results.

AAF/OMF Source Track Translation Settings

Pro Tools provides specific options for "translating" audio clips when importing AAF sequences or OMF files and sequences.

Import Rendered Audio Effects

Enabling the **`Import Rendered Audio Effects`** option imports clips as audio clips, retaining the rendered effects (such as EQ) that were applied to the clip. You may want to disable this if you plan to use Pro Tools audio effects and audio processing exclusively for your audio post production work. The resulting audio with this setting disabled is the unprocessed source material.

Import Clip Gain

The **Import Clip Gain** setting lets you import clip-based gain settings, or ignore clip-based gain entirely. Media Composer and other Avid products provide clip-based gain to adjust the volume of an individual audio clip.

Clip-based gain differs from standard Pro Tools volume adjustments for an entire track, or volume breakpoint automation. Enable this option to import clip-based gain data from the incoming sequence.

Import Volume Automation

The Import Volume Automation setting lets you import volume breakpoint automation, or ignore it entirely. Media Composer and other Avid products provide volume automation, for continuous volume change throughout a sequence.

Only Include Clips on Timeline

When enabled, the **Only Include Clips on Timeline** option prevents missing files for those that do not work directly on a shared storage environment with video editors.

An AAF often contains clip information about all channels related to a multi-channel clip or file, even if not all channels are on the timeline. This can be useful if you are on the same shared storage environment with the video editor because you have immediate access to the alternate channels, even if the video editor decided not to include them in the edit. However, when users do not work in a shared environment, it can result in missing files. This is because when an AAF is exported from Media Composer, only the timeline contents are copied to a folder, but the AAF is still aware of the alternate channels.

Pan Odd Tracks Left/Even Tracks Right

The **Pan Odd Tracks Left/Even Tracks Right** setting enables you to set the basic track pan setting so that odd-numbered tracks translate with full-left panning, and even-numbered tracks translate with full-right panning. This is useful if you want to pan the currently unpanned audio full-left or full-right.

⚠ **The Pan Odd Tracks Left/Even Tracks Right setting is not supported when importing multi-channel audio tracks from an AAF. When importing multi-channel tracks, the setting is grayed-out and any imported stereo channels are panned hard right and hard left.**

Markers To Import

Avid Media Composer sequences can contain metadata points called Markers that serve a similar purpose to the Markers in Pro Tools, adding color-coded contextual information to the timeline. Even though markers are associated with specific tracks in Media Composer, you can import markers into Pro Tools without importing those tracks.

When exporting an AAF from Media Composer, Marker information is included and can be imported into Pro Tools, thus preserving this data.

Markers can only be imported from AAF sequences.

To import all Markers:

- Click the **Markers to Import** menu and select **All**.

To import no Markers:

- Click the **Markers to Import** menu and select **None**.

To import Markers based on marker color:

1. Click the **Markers to Import** menu.
2. Select the colors of markers you want to import. Check marks appear next to the selected colors.

Once imported, the new Markers can be edited as normal.

Unlike Pro Tools Markers, which only mark specific points in time in a session, Media Composer Markers point specifically to individual audio or video tracks. Information on which track each Marker was associated with can be found in the Comments section in the Memory Locations window in Pro Tools.

When Media Composer Markers are imported to Pro Tools as Markers, the associated comment text is added to the Marker name in Pro Tools (up to 31 characters). Comments over 31 characters can be viewed in full in the Memory Locations window in Pro Tools.

Track Data to Import Dialog

The **Track Data to Import** dialog lets you select which attributes of the selected tracks you want to import into the current session or project. The selected attributes are applied to all tracks that you choose to import into the current session or project. For more information about **Track Data To Import** options, see "Track Data to Import" on page 682.

When importing an AAF into Pro Tools, use the **Track Data to Import** dialog to specify whether or not to import the plugins and plugin settings.

To import (or ignore) plugin settings when importing AAF tracks or sequences:

1. For **Track Data to Import**, click **Choose**.
2. Enable (or disable) the **Plugin Settings and Automation** option.
3. Configure the rest of Track Data to Import dialog as desired.
4. Click **OK**.

You can also enable (or disable) **Main Mute Automation and Setting** to import (or ignore) static track mute settings in an AAF created from Avid Media Composer 2020.9 and higher.

To import (or ignore) static track mute settings when importing AAF tracks or sequences:

1. For **Track Data to Import**, click **Choose**.
2. Enable (or disable) the **Main Mute Automation and Setting** option.
3. Configure the rest of Track Data to Import dialog as desired.
4. Click **OK**.

Note that Pro Tools automatically exports static mute settings with an AAF (File › Export › Selected Tracks as New AAF/OMF), but only if there is no additional mute automation on the track. If there are more mute automation breakpoints on the track than the initial mute on/off, no mute settings are exported.

Main Playlist Options

When importing AAF or OMF tracks into Pro Tools, you can choose how the main playlist from each source track is imported to the destination track in the current session. See "Main Playlist Options" on page 688.

Import Sequence from Media Production

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) Pro Tools Ultimate lets you import sequences from Avid MediaCentral | Production Management.

To import a sequence from Production Management:

1. Create a new session or use an existing session.
2. Choose **File > Import > Sequence from Production Management**.

For more information, see the Pro Tools Production Management Guide.

Media Composer Software Export Options for Audio and Video Mix-downs

You can request the following export options for the AAF you are receiving from an Avid application:

- To export both a video mixdown and its corresponding editing metadata, the Avid video editor should select **Video Mixdown** from the Export Method pop-up menu, then select **Mixdown with Video Edits** in the Export Settings dialog.
- To export both an audio mixdown and its corresponding editing metadata, the Avid video editor should select Add Audio Mixdown Track(s) in the Export Settings dialog.

Audio File Format Compatibility Issues

AIFC Audio File Format

Avid Media Composer and other Avid editors support audio files in the AIFC format, a version of the Audio Interchange File Format (AIFF) that supports compressed media. Pro Tools can import and use this format, but not compress audio in this format.

Sound Designer II Audio File Format

Support for AAF Sequences Referencing SD II Audio Files

Pro Tools 11.x and later do not support Sound Designer II (SD II) audio files. Open any AAF sequence that references SD II files in Pro Tools 10.x and lower, or Pro Tools 2020.9 or later (macOS only). Any referenced Sound Designer II files are automatically converted to a supported audio file format (WAV or AIF). You can then save the session and open it in Pro Tools 11.x through 2020.9 or higher.

Translation Notes File

If there are any errors, clip name truncations, or other notes (such as missing effect renderings), during import of an AAF or OMF file or sequence, a dialog appears asking if you want a detailed report of the changes. Click **Yes** and choose where you want to save the translation notes file.

The Translation Notes File can be opened by most word processing applications that can read plain text files.

Translation Notes Format

Translation Notes are presented in the following format:

Track Name ‹Timecode Start–Timecode End› "clip name (if available)";message

Translation Notes and Categories

The Translation Notes File is separated into different categories. The following are sample messages in each category, with explanations of what has happened and solutions if necessary.

Parsing Errors

Example

A1‹01:00:00:00–01:00:04:20›error reading component "Assertion in OMF_Objects2x.cpp", line 2871;substituting fill.

This error indicates a problem that may have originated in Pro Tools or the application that produced the AAF or OMF file. In the translated composition, there will be silence or video black at the given interval.

Missing Renderings

Example 1

A1‹01:00:02:00–01:00:07:01› no rendering for effect:EFF_AUDIO_EQMB;using bypass clip.

This indicates the presence of an effect for which there is no rendering. The "bypass clip" is the (unprocessed) source material for the effect.

Example 2

V1‹01:00:48:25–01:00:49:26›no rendering for effect: omfi:effect: VideoRepeat;substituting silence/video black.

For some effects, the length of the output is different than the length of the input. In this case, substituting a bypass when a rendering is missing doesn't make sense, because it won't sync properly. Pro Tools substitutes silence or video black.

Ignored Effects

A1‹01:00:02:00–01:00:07:01›ignoring rendering for effect: EFF_AUDIO_EQMB;using bypass clip.

This indicates that the user has selected "Ignore Rendered Audio Effects" in Pro Tools. This note is a convenience so that if something is odd in the translated sequence, the user can determine if an effect that was ignored is actually required.

Incomplete Rendering

A1‹00:00:28:29-00:00:31:17›incomplete rendering for effect Audio MultiBand EQ;using bypass clip.

This indicates that an effect was not rendered completely at a fade boundary in an Avid system. On import, Pro Tools bypassed the incomplete rendering and imported the audio without the effect. If you need the effect, re-render the effect and fade on the Avid system, and export again.

Example

A1‹01:00:00:00–01:00:16:06›"Jag film to Whirl.01.Sub.06.new.01"; insufficient source material for clip;shortening clip by 1 sample.

This Translation Note is primarily informational, informing you that Pro Tools was not able to translate the AAF or OMF sequence exactly, and has had to make an adjustment so Pro Tools can understand it.

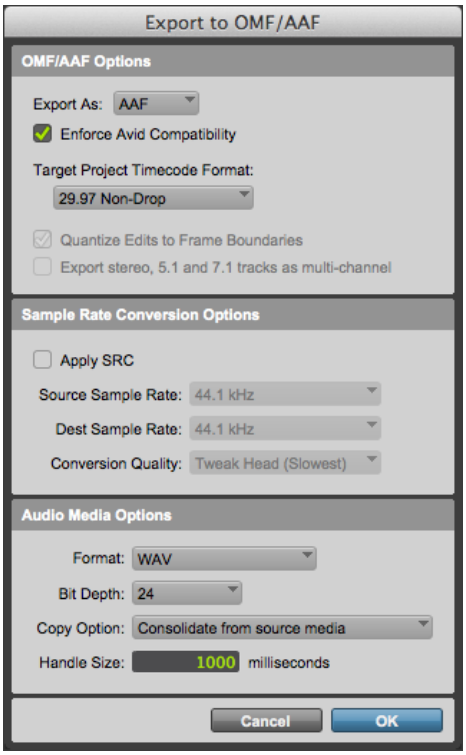
This error occurs because applications do not always calculate the number of samples in a frame in the same way. In some cases, there may be one too few samples of media to support a given clip from the Pro Tools standpoint. In this situation, there can potentially be an audio "pop."

Exporting Pro Tools Tracks as AAF or OMF Sequences

Pro Tools lets you export individual tracks in AAF or OMF format. Use the **Export Selected Tracks as AAF/OMF** command.

AAF and OMF sequences exported from Pro Tools do not support video files. They also do not retain information about Elastic Audio, plugin assignments, parameters, markers, routing, or grouping. It is recommended that you commit Elastic Audio tracks, and any plugin or hardware insert processing prior to export.

Pro Tools can export AAF or OMF sequences linked to RF64/BW64 audio files. RF64/BW64 files are special WAV files that can be larger than 4 GB (normal WAV files must be under 4 GB). If you are exporting a sequence from a session referencing RF64/BW64 WAV files, use AAF as the sequence container and MXF as the media file format.



To export selected audio tracks as an AAF or OMF sequence:

1. In Pro Tools, select the tracks you want to export. Choose either mixed or unmixed files.

   Shift-click to select multiple tracks; or Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to select all tracks.

2. Choose **File > Export > Selected Tracks as OMF/AAF**.
3. From the **Export As** pop-up menu, select **AAF** or **OMF**.
4. If desired, select **Enforce Avid Compatibility**.

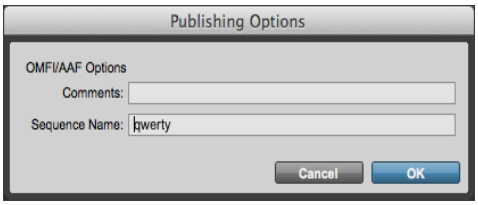
   Enforce Avid Compatibility limits the sample rate options to 44.1 or 48 kHz, and enables exporting of clip gain data. Dither without noise shaping will be applied to files being exported from 24-bit to 16-bit.

5. Be sure to select the correct **Target Project Timecode Format** option for the project as set for the project in your target application (such as Avid Media Composer).

6. Set the **Sample Rate Conversion Options** as necessary.
7. Set the **Audio Media Options** settings by doing the following:
   - Ensure that the **Format** and **Bit Depth** match the settings in your target project (as set for the project in your video software application).
   - Select a **Copy Option** (**Link to Source Media**, **Copy from Source Media**, or **Consolidate from Source Media**).
8. If you're exporting a sequence that contains stereo, 5.1 or 7.1 tracks and want those tracks to retain proper channel layouts upon export, enable the **Export Stereo, 5.1 and 7.1 Tracks as Multi-Channel** option.
9. Select other export options as desired.

   For more information, see "Export Options when Exporting to AAF or OMF Sequences" on page 706.

10. Click **OK**.
11. In the Publishing Options dialog, type the Pro Tools Comment and Sequence Name.



Publishing Options dialog (Export Selected Tracks as OMF/AAF) shown

12. Click **OK**.
13. In the Save dialog, navigate to a folder where you can easily locate the AAF or OMF sequence when it is time to distribute it to another editor or import it into Media Composer.
14. Click **Save**.
15. In the "Please Choose a Folder for Converted Audio Files" dialog, navigate to a folder where the media files can be easily located (such as the same folder where AAF or OMF sequence resides).

    Some video editors (such as Avid Media Composer), require all media files to be in specific folders to allow proper relinking.

16. Click **Choose** (Mac) or **Use Current Folder** (Windows).

Pro Tools exports the composition and related media to the appropriate folders.

Exporting Multichannel Audio Tracks

When exporting AAF, stereo, 5.1, and 7.1 tracks can be exported as multichannel tracks, or as split-mono tracks. When exporting to OMF, multi-channel tracks are always exported as multiple mono files.

Video tracks cannot be exported to AAF or OMF from Pro Tools.

Exporting Clip Gain

When exporting to AAF with the **Enforce Avid Compatibility** option on, Pro Tools generates Media Composer-style clip gain data, based on the clip gain data on each track.

To export clip-based gain data, the Enforce Avid Compatibility option must be enabled.

The clip gain of Pro Tools clips with static volume between -inf dB and +12 dB will translate directly to clip-based gain upon export. Dynamic clip gain and values above 12 dB will be rendered for each clip in the resulting media, to optimize compatibility with Avid video editing applications.

⚠ **Clip-based gain is not exported when exporting to OMF format.**

Exporting Volume Automation to AAF or OMF

Pro Tools does export volume automation to AAF and OMF, but only if the **Enforce Avid Compatibility** and **Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries** options are disabled.

Exporting Fades

While Pro Tools supports generating audio fades in real time, all fades in the session are rendered to disk upon AAF or OMF export, to optimize compatibility with Avid video editing applications.

Fades are rendered and exported even when creating an AAF/OMF sequence with the Link to Source Media option enabled.

Clip Groups

Pro Tools cannot export tracks with clip groups when exporting to AAF or OMF. Before exporting tracks from a sequence containing clip groups to AAF or OMF, ensure that any tracks containing clip groups are not selected or ungroup any clip groups on tracks you want to export.

Importing MXF Files

MXF (Material Exchange Format) files are commonly used with a NLE (Non-Linear Editor), such as Avid Media Composer. There are several types of MXF files with varying file complexities. The different types are referred to by their operational patterns. Pro Tools supports two different operational patterns within MXF files: OP-Atom and OP1a.

OP-Atom MXF Files

OP-Atom MXF files contain either one channel of audio or one track of video per file. These files cannot contain both audio and video, nor more than one channel of either. OP-Atom files are optimized for post-production and editorial because they are easy to decode and play. However, since the audio and video channels are not self-contained, they are not a especially useful as a final delivery format.

Pro Tools can import and playback OP-Atom MXF audio and video files natively without conversion, but they cannot be used as a default audio file format. OP-Atom MXFs are often sent and received with an AAF that references them in a sequence, which can be imported alongside the AAF using **Import Session Data** (**File > Import > Session Data**). They can also be imported using standard import methods, such as **Import Audio** (audio only MXF), **Import Video** (video only MXF), and drag and drop.

OP1a MXF Files

OP1a MXF files contain more than one channel of audio, as well as video, in a single file. These files are typically used for the final delivery format, rather than for editorial workflows. They are easy to deliver because all of the audio and video elements are contained within a single package. However, they are more complicated to decode and playback in real-time, which makes them less optimal for editorial work.

Pro Tools can import and playback MXF OP1a video natively. Pro Tools can also import MXF OP1a audio, but it is converted to the native session file format. Audio and video can be imported together using **Import Video** or drag and drop, or audio can be imported using **Import Audio**.

Exporting Pro Tools Tracks as MXF Audio Files

You can export MXF audio files using the following commands:

- **Export Selected Tracks as OMF/AAF**
- **Bounce Mix**
- **Export Selected Clips as Files**

Exporting AAF Sequences Containing MXF Audio

Use **Export Selected Tracks as OMF/AAF** to export individual tracks or an entire Pro Tools session as an AAF sequence referring to MXF audio files.

Tracks are exported in their entirety and time selections are ignored.

Volume and pan automation is not exported if Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries or Avid Compatibility Mode are enabled.

To export selected audio tracks from Pro Tools as an AAF sequence referring to MXF audio files:

1. In Pro Tools, select the tracks you want to export.
2. Choose **File > Export > Selected Tracks as OMF/AAF**.
3. Under **OMF/AAF Options**, select **AAF** from the **Export As** pop-up menu.

   An OMF sequence cannot reference MXF media files. When using the Export Selected Tracks as OMF/AAF dialog, choose AAF in the Export As pop-up menu to enable MXF in the Audio Format menu.

4. Select **Enforce Avid Compatibility**.

   Enforce Avid Compatibility creates frame-accurate edits, wraps the files as OMFI (unless you choose MXF), and limits the sample rate options to 44.1 or 48 kHz. Dither without noise shaping will be applied to files being exported from 24-bit to 16-bit.

5. Ensure the **Target Project Timecode Format** is correct for the Avid application project to which you are exporting the AAF sequence.
6. Under the Audio Media Options section, select **MXF** from the Audio Format pop-up menu.
7. Verify the **Audio Bit Depth** setting is acceptable for the recipient of this export.
8. If you're exporting a sequence that contains stereo, 5.1 or 7.1 tracks and want to export those tracks as multi-channel audio files, enable the **Export Stereo, 5.1 and 7.1 Tracks as Multi-Channel** option.
9. Click **OK**.
10. In the Publishing Options dialog, type the Pro Tools Comment and Sequence Name. Pro Tools creates a sequence with the name you supply. The comment appears in the Avid application bin in the Pro Tools Comment column.
11. Click **OK**.
12. In the **Name the AAF File to Export** dialog, navigate to a folder where you can easily locate the AAF sequence when it is time to distribute it to another editor or import it into Media Composer.
13. Click **Save**.
14. In the **Please Choose a Folder for Converted Audio Files** dialog, navigate to a folder where the media files can be easily located (such as the same folder where AAF or OMF sequence resides).

    Some video editors require all media files to be in specific folders to allow proper relinking.

15. Click **Choose** (Mac) or **Use Current Folder** (Windows).

    Pro Tools exports the AAF sequence to the selected folder, and exports the related media to the OMFI MediaFiles folder (OMF files) or the Avid MediaFiles folder (MXF files).

16. If you are ready to import the files into the Avid video application, exit Pro Tools.

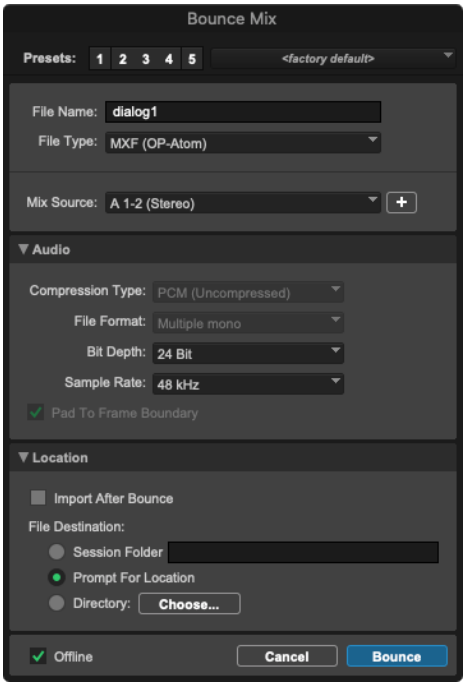
For more information on working in Avid video applications, see the appropriate Avid video application guide.

Exporting MXF Audio Files Using Bounce Mix

You can use the **Bounce Mix** command to create pre-mixed MXF audio files of the current Pro Tools session or project. This does not export all of the individual files on the Timeline, but it does guarantee that the mix you hear in another application will be identical to the mix you hear in Pro Tools, including all panning, effects, and automation.

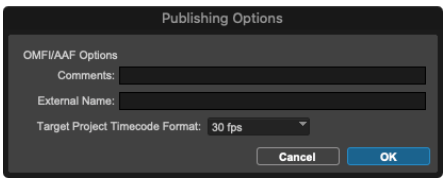
To export to MXF using Bounce Mix:

1. After you have finished recording and mixing a session in Pro Tools, highlight the length of the session in the timeline ruler (or on a track), plus an additional amount of time to avoid cutting off any reverb tails that might continue past the end of the clip.
2. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.



3. In the Bounce dialog, select the **Mix Source**.
4. Select **MXF (OP-Atom)** for the **File Type**.
5. Select a **Sample Rate** and **Bit Depth**.
6. Type a different name for the bounce file if desired.
7. Click **Choose** to specify the directory where you want the bounced file to be saved.
8. Click **Bounce**.
9. In the Publishing Options dialog, do the following:

- Type the Pro Tools **Comment** and **Clip Name**.
- Choose a **Target Project Timecode Format** that matches the Avid application project to which you are exporting the MXF audio.



10. Click **OK**.

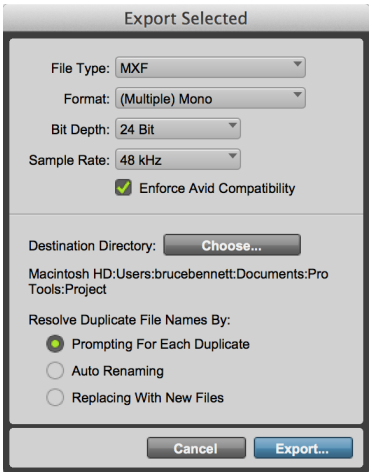
    All audible audio in the selection will be exported to two multi-mono audio files.

Exporting a Clip as a New MXF File

You can export clips as MXF audio files with the **Export Selected As Files** command. Use this command if you intend to use a clip in other sessions or other audio applications without using its parent source file. This command also provides a way to convert clips to a different sample rate or bit depth.

To export clips as new MXF files:

1. In the Clip List, select the clips you want to export.
2. From the Clip List menu, choose **Export Selected As Files**.



Pro Tools Bounce Mix dialog (MXF file type)

3. In the Export Selected dialog, select the **Enforce Avid Compatibility** option.

   Enforce Avid Compatibility creates frame-accurate edits, wraps the files as OMFI (unless you choose MXF), and limits the sample rate options to 44.1 or 48 kHz. Dither without noise shaping will be applied to files being exported from 24-bit to 16-bit.

4. Select **MXF** from the Audio Format pop-up menu.
5. Set the bit resolution and sample rate.
6. Click **Choose** to specify the **Destination Directory**.
7. Click **Export**.

Export Options when Exporting to AAF or OMF Sequences

Pro Tools provides several translation settings when exporting tracks to OMF/AAF, including OMF/AAF Options, Sample Rate Conversion Options, and Audio Media Options.

OMF/AAF Options

When exporting tracks to AAF or OMF, Pro Tools provides the following OMF/AAF Options:

Enforce Media Composer Compatibility

If the **Enforce Media Composer Compatibility** option is enabled, all AAF and OMF files and sequences will meet the specific requirements of Media Composer. Sample rates are limited to 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz. Exported clips will be padded to the nearest frame boundaries (Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries). This padding ensures that the placement of a file in the Timeline will be the same on sample-accurate as well as frame-accurate systems.

⚠ **When exporting a sequence with multi-channel audio tracks, the Enforce Media Composer Compatibility option must be enabled.**

Target Project Timecode Format

Select the timecode format for the project into which this file or sequence will be imported. This may be different from the timecode format of the current session or project. This parameter allows clips to be placed correctly in sessions or projects with different timecode formats, and also calculates how many samples must be added to pad clips to frame boundaries.

Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries

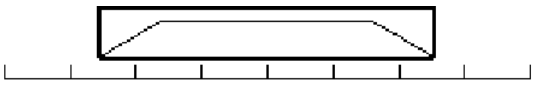
Pro Tools allows sample-accurate placement of clips. In Pro Tools, you can place a clip of any length at any position, without any requirement for aligning clips with frame boundaries.

However, most video editing programs, such as Media Composer, only support frame-accurate editing. In these programs, you can only edit sounds on whole frame boundaries, limiting your precision.

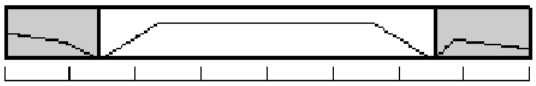
Selecting **Enforce Media Composer Compatibility** will automatically select **Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries**.

The **Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries** option allows Pro Tools to export your sample-accurate Pro Tools edits into an AAF or OMF file so they appear as frame-accurate.

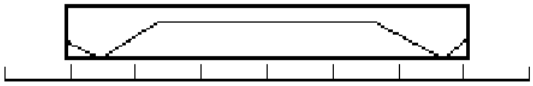
⚠ **The Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries setting must be selected when you are translating your Pro Tools session or project for use in frame-accurate editing workstations. Therefore, it is automatically selected whenever you export tracks with Enforce Media Composer Compatibility selected.**



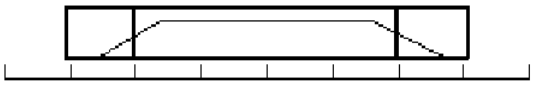
Original clip



Clip exported with handles



Subclip: Clip stretched to farthest frame boundaries



Subclip with OFFs (One-frame files) laid over end frames

When you quantize edits to frame boundaries, you must enter a handle size (length) under Audio Media Options. See "Consolidate Handle Size (Milliseconds)" on the next page.

A master clip consisting of the clip plus the handle size (length) on both front and back will be exported. The exported sequence creates a subclip which is equivalent to the original clip, but extended to the farthest frame boundaries. For example, if the clip starts at 1:15 and 500 samples, the subclip would start at 1:15; and if the clip ends at 4:00 and 500 samples, the subclip would end at 4:01.

Because quantizing edits to frame boundaries extends the clips, extra audio may be heard. To prevent this extra audio from playing, special one-frame sound files are rendered to duplicate the original boundaries of the clip. In the exported sequence, these one-frame files are placed over the start and end frames of the extended clip so you cannot hear the extension.

One-frame files (OFFs) are imported into Avid workstations as part of the AAF or OMF sequence like any other sound file. In the Avid Timeline, they appear as one-frame edits on either side of a subclip.If you decide you need to extend the subclip at any point, discard the OFF and trim the subclip as needed.

This solution is only available when you export a sequence, not when you export individual files.

If Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries is selected, Pro Tools volume automation will not be exported.

Export Stereo, 5.1, and 7.1 Tracks as Multi-Channel

Select this option to make Pro Tools export audio from multi-channel tracks as multi-channel audio files, rather than sets of multiple mono files.

Sample Rate Conversion Options

These settings allow you to convert the sample rate of your Pro Tools session or project during export to AAF or OMF by sample-rate converting each audio file, and adjusting the edits in the resulting AAF or OMF file to compensate for this change.

See "Speed Correction for Film, NTSC Video, and PAL Video" on page 1865, for information about converting between different speeds and sample rates.

You might want to change the sample rate of a session or project if you are exporting to a system or are at a stage in the process that requires a different sample rate.

Check the Audio and Video pull options before applying a sample rate conversion to the entire session or project.

For example, your session or project contains audio media at 29.97 fps (NTSC video) at 48 kHz, while the film composer to whom you are exporting your session or project requires audio media at 24 fps (film speed) at 48 kHz. To convert all the audio files and edits to play back at 24 fps (film speed) at 48 kHz, you would set the **Source Sample Rate** setting to 48,048 (a pull up rate of 0.1%) and the **Destination Sample Rate** to 48,000. These settings tell Pro Tools that you want to fit 48,048 of the original video speed samples into 48,000 of the new film speed samples. With these settings, you sample-rate convert the video material to film speed.

Source Sample Rate

This setting allows you to specify the sample rate of the material you are working with in Pro Tools, independent of the session or project sample rate settings.

Destination Sample Rate

This setting allows you to specify the sample rate for audio files after the AAF or OMF translation.

If this setting differs from the **Source Sample Rate** setting, audio is sample-rate converted digitally to the **Destination Sample Rate**.

Sample Rate Conversion Quality

These settings correspond to Pro Tools sample rate conversion settings. It is not recommended that you use the **Low (Fastest)** setting. The **Tweak Head (Slowest)** setting provides the highest quality sample rate conversion.

Audio Media Options

When exporting tracks to AAF or OMF, Pro Tools provides the following Audio Media Options:

Audio Format

Choose whether you want the resulting AAF or OMF file to refer to BWF (.WAV), AIFF, MXF (AAF only), or embedded files. The audio files will be converted accordingly.

If you create AIFF or BWF (.WAV) audio, the audio files have extra OMF data attached to them. Though most applications will not have problems reading these audio files, they may not be compatible with all applications.

MXF is only available if you have selected the Enforce Media Composer Compatibility option.

Bit Depth

Select 16-bit or 24-bit as the target bit depth for the exported media. Pro Tools automatically applies dither, without noise shaping, when reducing bit depth from 24-bit to 16-bit.

Source Media

When exporting tracks from Pro Tools to AAF or OMF, there are three ways that Pro Tools can handle source audio media (as set in the Export to OMF/AAF dialog's Audio Media Options pop-up menu).

Link To Source Media

Creates an AAF or OMF file that refers to as many of the original media files as possible. In this case, the AAF or OMF file points to the BWF (.WAV), AIFF, or MXF from the source project.

Copy From Source Media

Copies audio to another drive or folder. You can sample-rate convert the audio during this translation.

Consolidate From Source Media

Copies only the part of the files that are actually used by the session or project. For example, you may only be using a ten second clip of a ten-minute audio file in your session or project. Consolidating this audio saves a great deal of disk space by copying only the audio you use and discarding the rest.

Consolidate Source Audio Media is the only usable option for a Pro Tools to AAF or OMF translation when Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries is selected. See "Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries" on page 707.

Consolidate Handle Size (Milliseconds)

Specifies the number of milliseconds of the original audio file to retain at the beginning and end of each audio clip that is created. This lets you extend clip boundaries even after you have consolidated, by the amount you specify. It is a good idea to have at least 1000 milliseconds (one second) of handle, so you can "trim out" edits that sound "clipped" or "up-cut." **Consolidate Handle Size** is only available when **Consolidate From Source Media** is selected.

Export Stereo, 5.1, and 7.1 Tracks as Multi-Channel

When exporting a sequence with multi-channel (stereo, 5.1 or 7.1) tracks, enable this option to retain proper channel layouts upon export.

Publishing Options

When exporting AAF or OMF files from Pro Tools, specific publishing options that provide information about the sequence or media are available through the Publishing Options dialog. These options will vary depending on which method of exporting files you use.

OMF Options

Comments

Identifies the source of the file, and defaults to the name of the current session. The **`Comment`** field does not appear if you are using the **`Export Selected as Tracks`** command, since audio on one track may have many different sources.

Sequence Name

This is the name that will be displayed when the file is imported into another AAF- or OMF-compatible program. The sequence name is not the file name that will appear in the finder. This field defaults to the Pro Tools clip name. When exporting more than one clip, all clip names are automatically set to the clip name.

Target Project Timecode Format

This is the timecode format for the project into which this file or sequence will be imported. This may be different from the timecode format of the current session or project. This parameter allows clips to be placed correctly in sessions or project with different timecode formats, and also calculates how many samples must be added to pad clips to frame boundaries.

Time Stamping

When you export to AAF or OMF, all exported media is *time stamped*. A time stamp is a specific timecode location stored within an individual media file.

The time stamp can indicate:

- Timecode location on the source tape
- Where the file was originally recorded in the Pro Tools Timeline
- Where a clip was placed in an Avid or Pro Tools Timeline
- User-entered timecodes

Time stamps can be stored in three different places within a media file:

- In a clip definition
- In the file format metadata (for example, .WAV file wrappers)
- In the AAF or OMF wrapper

Exporting a Clip

If you are exporting a clip, the time stamp will be the start point of the clip, relative to the point where the file originally started to record. For example, if you record a file from 1:00 to 1:30, then trim it to start at 1:15, the time stamp for the exported clip would be 1:15. This is true even if the clip is slipped elsewhere in the Timeline.

Exporting a Clip as Part of a Sequence

When you export a clip as part of a sequence, the clip's original time stamp reflects the clip's position in the Timeline of the sequence.

Exporting a File

Recorded in Pro Tools

If the file was recorded in Pro Tools, the time stamp is the location in the Timeline at which the recording began. For instance, if you record the file from 1:00 to 2:00, the time stamp would be 1:00.

AudioSuite

If the file was created by AudioSuite, the time stamp depends on the rendering mode used when the file was rendered. If **Create Individual Files** mode is selected, the time stamp of the new file matches the original time stamp of the source file. If **Create Continuous File** is selected, the time stamp of the new file matches the position of source file on the timeline.

Existing Time Stamp

If a file is imported with an existing time stamp, it will remain the time stamp for the exported file as well. If the original file contained a time stamp in the format wrapper, it will be copied to the OMF wrapper when exported.

Exporting a File With No Time Stamp

If you import a file that does not contain a time stamp (such as a sound effect from a CD), the time stamp will be 0 when it is exported.

Importing Files from an Avid AAF or OMF Sequence

If you import a file from an Avid AAF or OMF sequence, the media file's source tape time stamp becomes the original time stamp of the new Pro Tools file. The User Timestamp maintains the original time stamp.

Workspace provides columns for specific Avid OMF metadata, including Clip Name, Tape, FPS, Original Timestamp, and User Timestamp.

Export Selected Tracks to Sequence in Production Management

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) Pro Tools Ultimate lets you export selected tracks in your session as a sequence for check-in to Avid MediaCentral | Production Management.

To export selected tracks as a sequence to Production Management:

1. Select the tracks you want to export as a sequence and check in to Production Management.
2. Choose **File > Export > Selected Tracks to Sequence in Production Management**.

For more information, see the Pro Tools Production Management Guide.

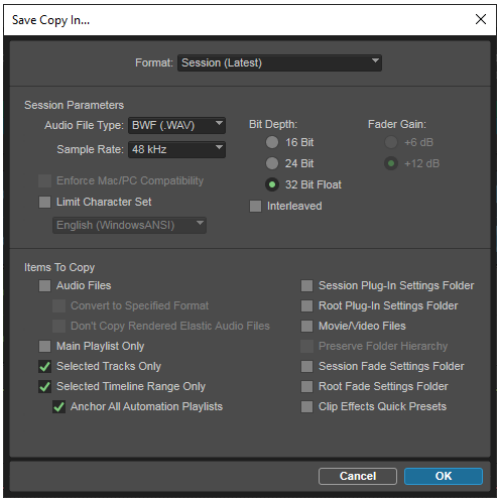
Export Selected Tracks as New Session or Project

Pro Tools lets you export any selected tracks in a session or project as a new session or project. This feature is especially useful in collaborative situations.

For example, you might be working on a large post-production session and you want your collaborator to work on only some dialog in the session or project while you continue working on other parts of the session. You can now select the dialog tracks and export them as a new session or project. Your collaborator can then open the new session or project and edit the dialog. When your collaborator is done, you can import the session data from the dialog session or project to update the dialog tracks in your big session or project.

To export selected tracks as a new session or project:

1. Select the tracks you want to export as a new session or project.
2. Choose **File > Export > Selected Tracks As New Session**. The Save Copy In dialog opens. (You can also open the Save Copy In dialog by choosing **File > Save Copy In**.)



Save Session Copy dialog

3. In the Save Copy In dialog, verify that the **Selected Tracks Only** option is enabled.
4. Configure the **Format** (**Project** or **Session**) and **Session Parameters** settings and options.
5. Configure the **Items to Copy** settings and options.
6. For projects only, enable (or disable) the **Backup to Cloud** options to create an online project (or an offline project).
7. You can also enable the **Main Playlist Only** option if you do not want to include any of the alternate playlists associated with any of the selected tracks in the new session or project.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Either the Save dialog opens or the Save Project Copy dialog opens depending on the **Format** setting. Type a name for the session or project.
10. For sessions only, navigate to where you want to save the session.
11. Click **Save**.

A copy of the session or project that contains only the selected tracks from the source session or project is saved to the specified location for sessions and to the cloud for projects.

For information on the Save Copy In dialog settings and options, see "Save Copy In Options" on page 236.

Export Selected Time Range as New Session or Project

Pro Tools lets you save a copy of a timeline range of a session. This is useful for splitting a session into smaller pieces.

When saving a copy of a timeline range, only clips on the timeline within the selection are included in the export. If a clip on a main or alternate playlist spans the edge of the selection, the exported session includes an trimmed version of the clip. The source session is unaffected. Note that files themselves are not truncated. The entire file is still copied, only the clip is trimmed. Exporting a timeline range can be used in conjunction with both the **Main Playlist Only** and **Selected Tracks Only** options to further refine the export and limit what is copied. The session start is not affected.

Anchor breakpoints are always written at the start and end of the selection for all automation playlists that contain one or more written breakpoints. This prevents any unwanted automation ramps. Additionally, anchor breakpoints are not written to plugin automation play-lists unless their controls are already automation-enabled.

Optionally, when the **Anchor All Automation Playlists** option is enabled, anchor breakpoints to automation playlists that do not have any additional written breakpoints are added. This ensures that the values are anchored if the session is imported into another session, and that only automation within the specific imported range is affected.

To save a copy of a timeline range of a session:

1. Make a timeline range selection in the open session.
2. Choose **File > Save Copy In**.
3. Select **Selected Timeline Range Only**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Navigate to the location where you want to save the new session.
6. Type a name for the new session.
7. Click **Save**.

Exporting Session Information as Text

You can use the **Export Session Info as Text** command to create a text file that contains extensive information about your session or project.

This text file can contain a list of audio files, audio clips, audio track EDL (Edit Decision List) information, extended timestamp information, and information about crossfades.

Track EDLs are exported as tab-delimited text, with tabs between each column heading, and tabs between each event parameter. You can use this data in a program for reading EDLs, or you can format the EDL data into tables using a word processor or spreadsheet application.

To export session information as text:

1. Choose **File > Export > Session Info as Text**.
2. Select whether to include the File List, Clip List, and track EDLs.
3. If you choose to include track EDLs, select whether to show subframes, and whether to include user timestamps. Also select an option for crossfade handling.
4. If you choose to include track EDLs, select the **Time Format** for the exported session text from the pop-up menu.
5. Select the File Format for exported text using the pop-up menu.
6. When you have set your options, click **OK**.
7. Select a location and type a filename for the exported text file. In Windows, Pro Tools adds the correct 3-letter filename extension, while on the Mac, the file extension ".txt" is added.

Exported Session Text Files

Session Information

The session text file starts with basic information about the session or project. This information includes the session or project name, sample rate, bit depth, timecode format, and number of audio tracks, audio clips, and audio files, as shown in the following example.

SESSION NAME:	Ripleys II-092700
SAMPLE RATE:	48000.000000
BIT DEPTH:	24-bit
TIMECODE FORMAT:	30 Frame
# OF AUDIO TRACKS:	19
# OF AUDIO CLIPS:	203
# OF AUDIO FILES:	54

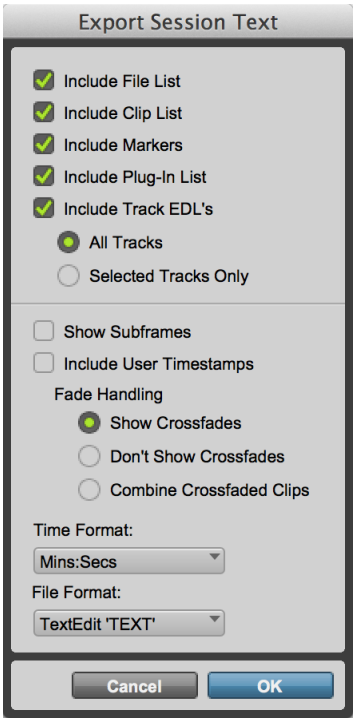
File List and Clip List

Next, if you choose to include them, are the lists of audio files and clips.

Track EDLs

The final item, if exported, is the list of track EDLs. A track EDL lists the track name, and all edits, including the event number, the clip name, clip start and end time, and clip duration. The clip timestamp is also exported, if you select this option. Subframes are shown in each time field if you select this option.

Export Session Information as Text Options



Export Session Text dialog

Include File List

Select this option to export a list of the session or project audio files. The File List provides a list of all the audio files in the session (and their hard drive locations) or project.

Include Clip List

Select this option to export a list of the session or project audio clips. The Clip List provides a list of all of the audio clips in the session or project, as well as the source audio file for each clip.

Include Markers

Select this option to export a list of all markers included in the session or project.

Include Plugin List

Select this option to export a list of the plugins used in the session or project.

Include Track EDLs (Playlists)

You can export track EDLs (playlists). Track EDLs can be used to spot-check clip placement and edits, or in a conforming program for post applications. In extreme circumstances the EDL can be used to recreate the entire session or project. You can export session text for **`All Tracks`** or for **`Selected Tracks Only`**.

⚠ **MIDI track EDLs are not exported.**

When exporting track EDLs, the following options are available:

Show Subframes

This option allows you to export subframe time information with track EDLs, if used in your session or project.

Include User Timestamps

You can include user timestamps with track EDLs. User timestamps indicate a user-defined session or project location for the clip, or the original location of the clip when recorded.

Fade Handling

For track EDLs, you can choose whether to show crossfades, not to show them, or to combine crossfaded clips. When clips are combined, their durations and locations are listed up to the center of the crossfade (for the leading clip) and from the center of the crossfade (for the following clip).

Time Format

You can select the appropriate time format that exported EDL information is based on. For example, for post work, you might select Timecode location, but for music creation locked to a grid, you might select **`Bars:Beats`**.

File Format

On Mac, you can to export to TextEdit, UTF-8, MS Excel, MS Word, Write Now, Word Perfect, and AppleWorks text formats. On Windows, you can export to either TextEdit or UTF-8.

Importing and Exporting Clip Group Files

Pro Tools can export and import the clip group file format (.rgrp). This lets you do the following:

- Separate clip group metadata from audio files to avoid unnecessary file copy operations when exporting audio clip groups composed from multiple source files.
- Export MIDI data as part of a clip group.
- Create multitrack loops.

Clip group files store the following metadata:

- References to all audio files within the clip group
- Clip names and relative location in tracks
- Embedded fades and crossfades

- Clip group names and format (single or multitrack)
- All MIDI data present in the clip group (such as notes, controllers, and Sysex)
- Track names
- Elastic Audio Warp markers and TCE factor
- Clip timebase (samples or ticks)
- Sync points
- Loops
- Tempo map

Clip group files do not store the following:

- Audio
- Automation
- Plugins
- Track routing
- Meter map
- Clip List information

Pro Tools provides several ways to import clip groups into an open session:

- "Importing Clip Groups with Pro Tools Menu Commands" below
- "Importing Clip Groups with Drag and Drop" on the next page

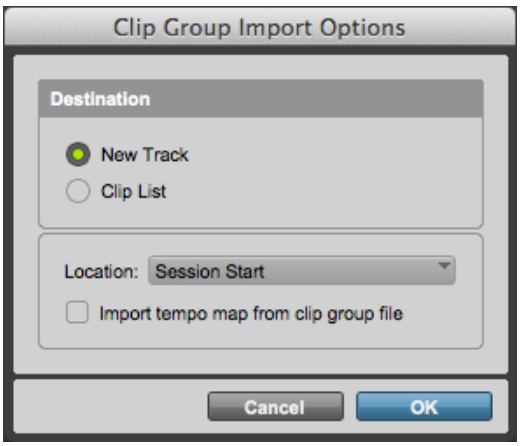
Importing Clip Groups with Pro Tools Menu Commands

To import a clip group with Pro Tools menu commands:

1. Choose **File > Import > Clip Groups** and select the clip group you want to import.
2. In the Clip Group Import Options dialog, choose where the clip group will go:
   - New Track

     Creates a new track where the clip group will be imported.
   - Clip List

     Imports the clip group into the Clip List, where it will be where it will be available to place into tracks.



3. If you chose to create a new track, choose a location for the imported group in the track.

- Session Start

  Places the group at the start of the session or project.

- Song Start

  Aligns the beginning of the group to the Song Start point.

- Selection

  Aligns the beginning of the group to the edit cursor or to the beginning of a selection in the Timeline.

- Spot

  Displays the Spot dialog, which lets you spot the group to a precise location based on any of the Time Scales.

4. If desired, enable the **Import Tempo Map from Clip Group File** option, which replaces the session tempo map with the tempo map of the clip group). This option is only available when importing the clip group to the Session Start.
5. Click **OK**.

Importing Clip Groups with Drag and Drop

You can drag and drop clip groups from a Workspace browser, or from Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder to the Timeline, to a track, to the Track List, or to the Clip List.

To import clip groups into the Clip List:

1. Select one or more clip groups in a Workspace browser, or Windows Explorer or Mac Finder.
2. Drag the files onto the Clip List of the current session.

To import clip groups into an existing track:

1. Select one or more clip groups in a Workspace browser, or from Windows Explorer or Mac Finder.
2. Drag the files onto an existing track in the Edit window of the current session or project.

To import clip groups into new tracks:

1. Select one or more clip groups in a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer or Mac Finder.
2. Do one of the following:
   - From the Workspace browser, Shift-drag the files anywhere in the Edit window of the current session or project.
   - Drag the files onto any empty space in the Edit window of the current session or project.
   - Drag the files to the Track List.

Exporting Clip Groups

To export a clip group:

1. Select one or more clip groups in the Clip List.
2. From the Clip List menu, choose **Export Clip Groups**.



3. In the Export Clip Groups dialog, the Destination Directory defaults to the auto-created Clip Groups folder in the session folder. You can change the Destination Directory by clicking the **Choose** button, navigating to a new location, and clicking **Open**. Click **Reset** to reset the Destination Directory to the default location.
4. Enable one of the following options for resolving duplicate clip group file names:
   - **Prompting for Each Duplicate** (default)
   - **Auto Renaming**
   - **Replacing with New Files**
5. Click **Export**.

Exporting Clip Groups to Another Hard Drive

Generally, if you are exporting clip groups to another hard drive, you should copy any referenced audio files. This way you can move clip groups not only from one session to another, but from one system to another.

To export a clip group to a different hard drive and include its audio files:

1. Export one or more clip groups to the new drive.
2. Create a new session or project on the new drive.
3. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
4. In the Preferences dialog, click the **Processing** tab and select **Automatically Copy Files on Import**.
5. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.
6. Import all previously exported clip groups by dragging and dropping them into the session or project.

The audio files folder of the new session or the cloud account for the project now contain all files referenced by the clip groups.

26 File and Session Management and Compatibility

When working with Pro Tools, you will encounter several different kinds of computer files. Pro Tools systems require that you keep certain files in specific hard drive locations in order to function properly:

- Pro Tools software files (such as the application and plugins files) should be located on your Startup drive (the drive that contains your operating system and other system-related files).
- Data files (such as session files, audio files, and video files) can be located on any compatible drive connected to your computer's internal or external SSD, SAS, SATA, IDE/ATA, FireWire, USB, or Thunderbolt buses.

You can specify the location of new session files when creating new sessions (see "Creating a New Blank Session or Project" on page 227).

In Pro Tools sessions, use the Disk Allocation command to specify where you want newly recorded audio files to be stored (see "Working with Hard Drives for Recording" on page 778).

Although Pro Tools lets you record to your system drive, this is generally not recommended. You should record to system drives only when necessary—for example, if your computer system has just one hard drive, or it your other hard drives are completely full

It is recommended that you disable iCloud storage for User Desktops and Documents on your Pro Tools system. This will help avoid missing files when disconnected from iCloud.

If you have a system with multiple drives, you can designate the System drive as a Playback only or Transfer only drive for optimal performance (see "Volume Permissions" on page 500).

Audio File Management

Unique File IDs

Pro Tools tags each audio file in a session with a unique identifier that allows it to distinguish a particular file even if its name or location has changed. This Unique ID is 8-bit and is used by versions of Pro Tools lower than 12.8.

SMPTE IDs

Pro Tools (version 12.8 and later) creates and reads 32-bit SMPTE IDs. SMPTE ID provides optimal compatibility and interchange with other applications that utilize SMPTE IDs in media files and AAF sequences (such as Avid Media Composer), and ensures truly unique IDs for all AIFF and WAV files. When linking to WAV files, the SMPTE ID is prioritized over any Unique ID.

ID linking priority is as follows:

1. SMPTE ID: Both Pro Tools and Media Composer generate these.
2. Unique ID: Stored in the UMID Chunk. This is the legacy Pro Tools ID.
3. Unique ID: Stored in the OMF Chunk - This is the ID that you see in Wave files included with an AAF from Media Composer. They are shown in the Unique ID field if there is no UMID Chunk ID, and they are only be used for linking if there is no SMPTE ID or UMID Chunk ID.

Locating Audio Files

With Pro Tools, you manage *links* to audio and other media files using the Relink window.

Pro Tools classifies storage volumes according to their suitability for *performance* (recording or playback) or *transfer* (storage or copying) of audio and other media files. Audio files must be stored on suitable Performance volumes and be properly linked in order to be playable in a Pro Tools session.

When you open a session, if Pro Tools determines that audio files are not located on a Performance volume, or if it is unable to locate audio files contained in the session, you can locate or copy the files in order to play back the session. This process is called *relinking*.

For more information on storage volume classifications, see "Performance and Transfer Volumes" on page 497.

Transfer Files

Transfer files reside on volumes unsuitable for playback, such as CD or DVD discs, or network drives.

To open a session containing Transfer files:

Open the Pro Tools session. If any files are on a volume unsuitable for playback, Pro Tools prompts you to do one of the following:

- Click **Yes** to open the Copy and Relink window.
- Click **No** to open the session with all Transfer files offline.

To make Transfer files playable in the current session:

1. Select the session in the Locations pane.
2. Double-click the Audio Files folder to display all of the audio files.
3. Choose **Select Transfer Files** from the Browser menu.
4. Choose **Copy and Relink** from the Browser menu.
5. Specify a location for the copied files on a valid Performance volume.
6. Click **OK**.

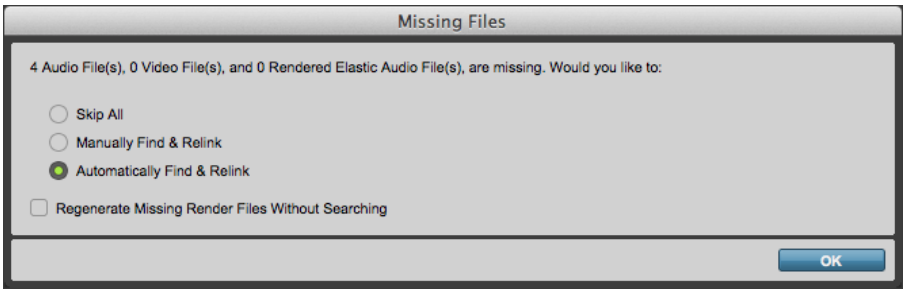
For more information, see "Linking and Relinking Files" on page 536.

Missing Files

A file is missing if it is not found in the same location as when the session was last saved.

To open a session with missing files:

1. Open the Pro Tools session. If any files are missing, Pro Tools posts a Missing Files warning.



2. Choose one of the following options:
   - Skip All

     Ignores all missing files. Missing files appear offline in the session.
   - Manually Find and Relink

Opens the Relink window, where you can search, compare, verify, and relink missing files.

- Automatically Find and Relink

  Searches all Performance volumes for all missing files with matching name, unique file ID, format, and length, and automatically commits links to missing files where possible.

3. To exclude any Rendered Elastic Audio files from the relink process and regenerate them instead, select **Regenerate Missing Rendered Files Without Searching**.
4. Click **OK**.



For more information, see "Linking and Relinking Files" on page 536.

Renamed Audio Files

Renamed audio files are located in the auto-created Renamed Audio Files folder in the Pro Tools session folder. Files can be renamed when you open a session that references audio file names with incompatible characters. Files can also be renamed in certain situations when saving a copy of a session to a Pro Tools version that does not support long file names

Opening a Session that Contains Audio File Names with Illegal Characters

Pro Tools does not support audio file names that contain the following ASCII characters:

- / (Forward Slash)
- \ (Backslash)
- : (Colon)
- * (Asterisk)
- ? (Question mark)
- “ (Quotation marks)
- ‹ (Less-than symbol)
- › (Greater-than symbol)
- | (vertical line or pipe)

When opening sessions that contain audio file names with illegal characters, Pro Tools automatically creates a renamed copy of each file that contains illegal characters (replacing these characters with an underscore “_”). Renamed files are copied to the Renamed Audio Files folder. The original files are left intact in the Audio Files folder.

Before the session opens, you are prompted to save a detailed report of the renamed files and their original file names to a Notes text file. By default, the Notes text file is saved to the Session folder.



It is possible to have a Pro Tools 7.x or higher session that contains audio file names with illegal characters. If you Save Copy In the session to Pro Tools 6.9.x or earlier with Mac/PC Compatibility on, the tracks are renamed with legal characters. If Mac/PC Compatibility is off, the characters are not changed.

Saving a Copy of a Session that Contains Long Audio File Names

When saving files to Pro Tools 6.9.x and lower (using Save Copy In), audio files with file names that exceed the limits of the destination format are truncated and located in the Session folder, as follows:

- If the new session is saved to the same directory as the original, a Renamed Audio Files folder is created in the session's original folder, and the renamed audio files are placed in it.
- If the new session is saved to a different directory than the original and the All Audio Files option *is not selected*, a new Session folder is created, which includes an Audio Files folder and a Renamed Audio Files folder. Renamed audio files are included in the Audio Files folder.
- If the new session is saved to a different directory than the original and the All Audio Files option *is selected*, a new Session folder is created, which includes an Audio Files folder. Renamed audio files are included in the Audio Files folder.

WAV File Compatibility

Convert Imported WAV files to AES31/Broadcast Wave

Pro Tools always creates AES31/Broadcast compliant BWF (.wav) files when the file originates in Pro Tools. Non-BWF .wav files can be added to BWF (WAV) format Pro Tools sessions without conversion. This option ensures that all WAV files are imported, and if necessary, converted to BWF (WAV), compliant with the AES31/EBU Broadcast standard.

AES31/Broadcast Wave is a variant of the standard audio WAV file type. The AES31 format contains time stamps and other information beyond the raw PCM audio data.

This variant complies with standards set by the AES (Audio Engineering Society) and EBU (European Broadcasters Union). Choose this option to ensure compatibility with other workstations that recognize this file type.

To make imported WAV files compliant with the AES31/EBU Broadcast standard:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Processing** tab.
2. Select the **Convert Imported ".wav" Files to AES31/BroadcastWave** option.
3. Click **OK**.

WAVE Extensible File Format

Pro Tools supports the WAVE Extensible file format for audio files. This file format specifies multiple audio channel data (surround sound) along with speaker positions, which is stored within the audio file header. These audio files are identified in Workspace browsers with the designation "WAV (BWF EXT)" in the Attributes field.

If you are working with greater-than-stereo multichannel track formats in your Pro Tools sessions, it is recommended that you use the WAV file format.

When using the WAV file format in Pro Tools sessions, the corresponding channel order for each channel of greater-than-stereo, interleaved multichannel files is displayed in the Clip List.

RF64

Pro Tools supports the RF64 audio file format. RF64 is an extension to the WAV audio file format that addresses the 4 gigabyte size limitation of other WAV audio file formats. RF64 audio files are identified in Workspace browsers with the designation "MBWF" in the Attributes field.

Earlier versions of Pro Tools cannot read RF64 files. These files have to be manually edited and consolidated so that they are no larger than 4 GB in order to be available to systems running earlier versions of Pro Tools.

BW64

Pro Tools lets you convert BW64 files on import, as well as link to and play back BW64 files. BW64 audio files are extensions to the WAV audio file format that address the 4 gigabyte size limitation of other WAV audio file formats.

If Pro Tools creates or converts a 4 GB or greater file to the WAV format, the resulting file is formatted as RF64 even if the file originated as BW64. While Pro Tools can link to and play back BW64 files, it does not acknowledge the ADM metadata that is unique to the format.

Sharing Projects Offline

For Pro Tools projects, all media is stored in the cloud and cached locally as specified in the **Project Media Cache** setting in the Operation Preferences.

To share projects offline, you must save the project as a session using the **Save Copy In** command, and then share the session.

Sharing Sessions Created on Different Computer Platforms

Working with Mac-Based HFS+ Drives on Windows Computers

You can use the MacDrive Utility from Mediafour to mount HFS+ drives on an NTFS system for use with Pro Tools.

Moving Sessions on Windows Systems to Mac-Based HFS+ Drives

(From Window-Based NTFS Drives Only) There are specific steps for transferring session files from Windows-based NTFS drives to Mac-based HFS+ drives.

To transfer Pro Tools Windows sessions from NTFS drives to HFS+ drives:

1. Set the MacDrive Options to **Backup/File Transfer**.
2. Do one of the following:

- Drag the session folder from the NTFS drive to the HFS+ drive.
- Open the Windows session on the NTFS drive, choose **Save Copy In**, and save a copy of the session to the HFS+ drive.

Moving Mac-Based Sessions on HFS+ Drives to Windows Systems

(To Windows-Based NTFS Drives Only) There are specific steps for transferring files from Mac-based HFS+ drives to Windows-based NTFS drives.

When transferring Pro Tools sessions from HFS+ drives to NTFS drives, Pro Tools sessions cannot relink to audio files that have Mac characters that are illegal in Windows. These characters are automatically converted to underscore ("_") characters. These files are saved to the Renamed Audio Files folder. You need to manually relink each file by File ID. **See "Missing Files" on page 720.**

To transfer Pro Tools Mac sessions from HFS+ drives to NTFS drives:

1. Set the MacDrive Options to **Normal Use**.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Drag the session folder from the HFS+ drive to the NTFS drive.
   - Open the Mac session on the HFS+ drive, and when prompted, choose **Save Copy In** and save a copy of the session to the HFS+ drive.

   If the session previously used SD II files, those files must be converted to the new audio file format separately.

Recording and Playback from HFS+ Drives on Windows

Windows supports recording and playback of sessions directly from Mac-formatted (HFS+) drives using the MacDrive software application.

In older versions of Pro Tools, Mac-formatted HFS+ drives could only be used as Transfer volumes when connected to Windows systems using MacDrive.

When using MacDrive for recording and playback on a Windows system, the session file and all audio files must be stored on Mac-formatted (HFS+) drives. Recording and playback of a session from a mixture of Windows- and Mac-formatted drives is not supported.

To record or play back from HFS+ drives with Windows using MacDrive:

1. In Windows, go to the MacDrive Control Panel.
2. Choose **Options > File Names** and select the **International Use** option.
3. Delete all options listed under "File Name Maps."
4. In Pro Tools, choose **Window > Workspace** and make sure that all Mac-formatted volumes are set to R (record) or P (playback) in the A (Audio) and V (Video) columns.

Sharing Sessions Created on Different Pro Tools Systems

Pro Tools makes it easy to share sessions between different tiers of Pro Tools. There are some important differences between systems that can affect how session material is transferred.

For details on transferring sessions between Windows and Mac systems, see "Sharing Sessions Created on Different Computer Platforms" on the previous page.

Feature	Pro Tools Ultimate on HDX Systems	Pro Tools Ultimate on non-HDX Systems	Pro Tools Studio	Pro Tools Artist	Pro Tools Into
Maximum number of voices	In HDX Classic mode: 256 voices per HDX card (768 voices with HDX3) In HDX Hybrid mode: 2,048	2,048	1,024	1,024	1,024
audio tracks	2,048	2,048	512	32	8
Aux Input and Routing Folder tracks	1,024	1,024	128	32	4
Instrument	512	512	512	32	8

Feature	Pro Tools Ultimate on HDX Systems	Pro Tools Ultimate on non-HDX Systems	Pro Tools Studio	Pro Tools Artist	Pro Tools Into
tracks					
MIDI tracks	1,024	1,024	1,024	64	8
VCA tracks	128	128	128	0	0
Master tracks	512	512	64	1	1
Video tracks	64	64	1	0	0
I/O channel count	256	256	64	16	4

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools Ultimate, Studio, and Artist

A session created in any tier of Pro Tools (Artist, Studio, or Ultimate) can be opened in any other tier of Pro Tools. However, when opening a session created in a higher tier in a lower tier (such as when opening a session created in Pro Tools Ultimate in Pro Tools Studio) certain caveats apply.

When opening a Pro Tools Ultimate session in Pro Tools Studio, the following occurs:

- Any tracks beyond the first 512 are lost.
- Any Auxiliary Input and Routing Folder tracks beyond 128 are lost.
- Any Master tracks beyond 64 are lost.
- DSP plugins with Native equivalents are converted; those without equivalents are made inactive.
- Unavailable input and output paths are made inactive.
- Video:
  - Only the main video track is displayed.
  - Only the first movie in the session is displayed or played back.
  - If the session contains movies in the Clip List but no video track, the session opens with a new video track containing the first movie from the Clip List.
  - The Timeline displays and plays back only the video playlist that was last active. Alternate video playlists are not available.

When opening a Pro Tools Ultimate or Pro Tools Studio session in Pro Tools Artist, the following occurs:

- Any tracks beyond the first 32 are lost.
- Any Auxiliary Input and Routing Folder tracks beyond 32 are lost.
- Any Instrument tracks beyond 32 are lost.
- Any MIDI tracks beyond 64 are lost.
- Any VCA tracks are lost.
- Only the first Master track is preserved.
- Any video tracks are lost.
- Any multichannel surround tracks are removed from the session.
- Unavailable input and output paths are made inactive.

Sharing Sessions Created on Different Pro Tools Software Versions

Pro Tools .ptx session files can be opened in Pro Tools versions 10.x and later. However, there are certain caveats to consider when opening sessions created in later versions of Pro Tools in previous versions of Pro Tools as follows.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2026.11 (or later) and Pro Tools 2026.4

Pro Tools 2026.11 (or higher) and Pro Tools 2026.4 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- MPE per-note controller data will be lost when opening a Pro Tools 2026.11 session in an earlier version of Pro Tools.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2026.4 (or later) and Pro Tools 2025.12

Pro Tools 2026.4 (or higher) and Pro Tools 2025.12 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Pinned tracks are no longer pinned.
- Send assignments to AAX renderer plugin beds are lost.
- Dolby Headphone Personalization setting is not remembered.
- Sessions saved in 2026.4 using the MPEG-H Renderer and the Pro Tools Immersive Panner are not available in earlier versions of Pro Tools, but assignments and pan data are preserved when saved in lower versions and then re-opened in Pro Tools 2026.4 (or later).

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2025.12 (or later) and Pro Tools 2025.10

Pro Tools 2025.12 (or higher) and Pro Tools 2025.10 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Sessions saved in 2025.12 using the Audio Vivid Renderer are not available in earlier versions of Pro Tools, but assignments and pan data are preserved when saved in lower versions and then re-opened in Pro Tools 2025.12 (or later).

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2025.10.1 (or later) and Pro Tools 2025.6

Pro Tools 2025.10.1 (or higher) and Pro Tools 2025.6 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Unsupported automation is removed when saving sessions in PT 2025.6 you are prompted to “Save Session As.”

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2025.10 (or later) and Pro Tools 2025.6

Pro Tools 2025.10 (or higher) and Pro Tools 2025.6 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Sessions saved in 2025.10 using the 360RA WalkMix Renderer are not available in earlier versions of Pro Tools, but assignments and pan data are not preserved when saved in lower versions and then re-opened in Pro Tools 2025.10 (or later).
- All Immersive assignments and pan data are not supported in versions of Pro Tools earlier than 2025.10 and you are prompted to “Save Session As.”

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2025.6 (or later) and Pro Tools 2024.10

Pro Tools 2025.6 (or higher) and Pro Tools 2024.10 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Transcriptions are lost.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2024.6 (or later) and Pro Tools 2024.3

Pro Tools 2024.6 (or higher) and Pro Tools 2024.3 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Any ARA editing made using 2024.6 (or later) cannot be read, restored, or played back in previous versions of Pro Tools. Unsupported ARA plugins are dropped.
- Dolby Atmos 9.1.4 monitoring becomes 7.1.4, 7.1.2 becomes 5.1.2, and 2.0 Direct becomes 2.0.
- Custom re-renders result in the same relative format change behavior. If they are assigned to a track, the input will be set to **no input** since the re-render format no longer matches. Re-Renders are session based.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2024.3 and Pro Tools 2023.12

Pro Tools 2024.3 and Pro Tools 2023.12 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Any MIDI outputs assigned to Chains revert to **none**.
- Track inputs with assigned Dolby Atmos custom re-renders revert to **none** when opened in Pro Tools 2023.12, but in Pro Tools 2023.9 and earlier the track input is maintained but inactive. Regardless, you will have to manually re-assign the corresponding track input.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2023.12 and Pro Tools 2023.9

Pro Tools 2023.12 and Pro Tools 2023.9 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- I/O Path Colors are lost.
- Memory Locations are all combined into the main marker ruler.
- Dolby Atmos:
- Trim and Downmix settings are lost.
- Binaural mode settings are lost.
- Group color assignments are lost.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2023.9 and Pro Tools 2023.6

Pro Tools 2023.9 and Pro Tools 2023.6 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Pinned Sketches are lost.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2023.6 and Pro Tools 2023.3

Pro Tools 2023.6 and Pro Tools 2023.3 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Any tracks or buses using unsupported immersive surround formats are converted to 5.0/5.1 for any 5.0.2/5.1.2 tracks and buses, and 7.0.2/7.1.2 for any 5.0.4-9.1.6 tracks and buses.
- All 4th Order and higher Ambisonics tracks and buses are converted to 3rd order Ambisonics.
- Clips using unsupported immersive surround formats are converted to separate mono clips.
- Any 4th through 7th order Ambisonics clips are kept as 3rd order multichannel clips with leftovers as mono clips.
- Any Track Markers are lost.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2022.9 and Pro Tools 2022.6

Pro Tools 2022.9 and Pro Tools 2022.6 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Any Aux I/O routing is lost.
- Markers (Memory Locations) beyond 999 are lost.
- Melodyne track states and edits are lost.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2022.4 to Pro Tools 2022.6 and Pro Tools 2021.10 to 2021.12

Pro Tools 2022.4 and Pro Tools 2021.7 to 2021.12 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Custom Keyboard Shortcuts are unavailable.
- With Pro Tools | Ultimate:
- Any Instrument tracks beyond 512 are lost.
- Unavailable input and output paths are made inactive.
- With Pro Tools:
- Any audio tracks beyond the first 256 are lost.
- Any multichannel surround tracks are lost.
- Any VCA tracks are lost.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2021.10 to 2021.12 and Pro Tools 2021.7

Pro Tools 2021.10 to 2021.12 and Pro Tools 2021.7 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveat applies:

- With Pro Tools Ultimate, unsupported routing assignments are removed (multichannel output and send assignments made to paths of mismatched channel widths).

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2021.6 and Pro Tools 2021.3

Pro Tools 2021.6 and Pro Tools 2021.3 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveat applies:

- With Pro Tools, any tracks beyond 128 are lost.
- With Pro Tools Ultimate, any tracks beyond 1,024 are lost.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2020.11 to 2021.3, and Pro Tools 2020.9

Pro Tools 2020.11 to 2021.3 sessions, and Pro Tools 2020.9 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveat applies:

- Any Master Fader tracks beyond 64 are lost.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2020.3 and Pro Tools 2019.x to 2020.9

Pro Tools 2020.3 and Pro Tools 2019.x to 2020.9 sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Basic Folder tracks are lost, but all member tracks are retained.
- Routing Folder tracks are converted to Auxiliary Input tracks, all member tracks are retained, and all track settings, including input and output routing, are maintained.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2019.x and Pro Tools 2018.x

Pro Tools 2019.1 and Pro Tools 2018.x sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Voices beyond the available maximum are made inactive.
- MIDI tracks beyond 512 are deleted.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 2018.x and Pro Tools 12.x

Pro Tools 2018.x and Pro Tools 12.x sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- Track Presets are not available in Pro Tools 12.x and lower.
- EQ Curve view is not available in Pro Tools 12.x and lower.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 12.x and Pro Tools 11.x

Pro Tools 12.x and Pro Tools 11.x sessions are cross-compatible. However, the following caveats apply:

- When opening a session created Pro Tools 12.8.2 session with any Ambisonics paths or tracks in a lower version of Pro Tools, they are dropped.
- When opening a session created Pro Tools 12.8 session with any Dolby Atmos specific elements in a lower version of Pro Tools, they are dropped.
- When opening a session created Pro Tools 12.8 session with 7.0.2 or 7.1.2 paths or tracks in a lower version of Pro Tools, those paths and tracks are dropped.
- Offline projects created by Pro Tools 12.8 or higher are not supported with earlier versions of Pro Tools.
- Pro Tools 12.8 and later can create and read **ISRC** metadata for audio files (AIFF and WAV), but earlier versions cannot.
- When opening sessions created in Pro Tools 12.7 or higher in Pro Tools 12.6.1 or earlier, Revision History in not available.
- When opening sessions created in Pro Tools 12.7 or higher in Pro Tools 12.6.1 or earlier, Soundbase in not available.
- When opening sessions created in Pro Tools 12.7 or higher in Pro Tools 12.6.1 or earlier, the database file for Soundbase is backed up and a new database file is written.
- When opening sessions created in Pro Tools 12.6 or higher in Pro Tools 12.5 or earlier, clip effects will be dropped.
- When opening sessions created in Pro Tools 12.2 or higher that have VCA Master tracks in Pro Tools 12.1 or earlier, those tracks will be dropped.
- When opening sessions created in Pro Tools 12.1 or higher that have more than the maximum number of audio tracks or instrument tracks in Pro Tools 12.0 or earlier, those tracks will be dropped.

Sharing Sessions Between Pro Tools 11.x or Higher and Pro Tools 10.x

Pro Tools 11.x or higher and Pro Tools 10.x sessions are cross-compatible. However, for sessions with 64-bit AAX plugins that do not have 32-bit equivalents, those plugins will be made inactive when opening the session in Pro Tools 10.x. Likewise, for sessions with 32-bit AAX, RTAS, and TDM plugins that do not have 64-bit AAX equivalents, those plugins will be made inactive when opening the session in Pro Tools 10.x.

Additionally, for sessions created or modified by Pro Tools 11.x or higher, any instrument tracks beyond 128 will be made inactive when the session is opened in Pro Tools 10.x.

When opening a session in Pro Tools 10.x that was created in Pro Tools 11.x or higher that uses more than 4 GB of RAM (due to plugin usage), the session will not open.

Sharing Sessions with Video

When opening a session in Pro Tools 11.x or higher created in a lower version of Pro Tools that contains SD video, the aspect ratio must be reset.

When opening a session created in Pro Tools 11.x or higher that contains Avid video in a lower version of Pro Tools, the track will be inactive unless the Avid video is an SD resolution and a Mojo or Mojo SDI is attached.

Saving Pro Tools 12.x–10.x Sessions to Pro Tools 7 –> 9 Format

To save a Pro Tools 12.x or 10.x session so it is compatible with Pro Tools version 7.x through 9.x, use the **`File > Save Copy In`** command to choose the **`Pro Tools 7 –> 9 Session`** format.

When saving a Pro Tools 12.x–10.x session to Pro Tools 7 –> 9 format, the following occurs:

- Any audio tracks beyond 256 are made inactive
- Clip effects and settings are dropped (sessions created in Pro Tools HD 12.6 or higher). If you want to apply any clip effects prior to saving the session copy, you will need to manually render clip effects.
- Clip gain and settings are dropped. If you want to apply any clip gain settings prior to saving the session copy, you will need to manually render clip gain settings.
- Fades have to be rendered when the session is opened in a lower version of Pro Tools.
- Sessions with mixed file formats and bit depths must convert all files to the same file format and bit depth.
- Sessions with files that have a bit depth of 32-bit floating point must be converted to 24-bit or 16-bit.
- For sessions with RF64 files larger than 4 GB, these files will be unavailable to earlier versions of Pro Tools. (You will need to manually edit and consolidate these files so that the audio can be available to earlier versions of Pro Tools.)

Opening Pro Tools 9.0 Sessions with Pro Tools 8.1 and 8.5

A Pro Tools 9.0 session can be opened with Pro Tools 8.1 and 8.5, but certain session components open differently or not at all.

⚠ **When opening a Pro Tools 9.0 session with Pro Tools 8.1 or 8.5, you are warned that you are opening a session created with a newer version of Pro Tools and that not all session components will be available.**

When opening a Pro Tools 9.0 session with Pro Tools 8.1 or 8.5, the following occurs:

- Any audio tracks beyond 256 are made inactive.
- Any internal mix buses beyond 128 are made inactive.
- The Stereo Pan Depth reverts to –2.5 dB.

Opening Pro Tools 9.0 Sessions with Pro Tools 8.0

A Pro Tools 9.0 session can be opened with Pro Tools 8.0, but certain session components open differently or not at all.

⚠ **When opening a Pro Tools 9.0 session with Pro Tools 8.0, you are warned that you are opening a session created with a newer version of Pro Tools and that not all session components will be available.**

When opening a Pro Tools 9.0 session with Pro Tools 8.0, the following occurs:

- All that occurs when opening a Pro Tools 9.0 session with Pro Tools 8.1.
- Output bus assignments are removed.
- HEAT (if present) is removed.

Opening Pro Tools 9.0 Sessions with Pro Tools 7.4.x

A Pro Tools 9.0 session can be opened with Pro Tools 7.4.x, but certain session components open differently or not at all.

⚠ **When opening a Pro Tools 9.0 session with Pro Tools 7.4.x, you are warned that you are opening a session created with a newer version of Pro Tools and that not all session components will be available.**

When opening a Pro Tools 9.0 session with Pro Tools 7.4.x, the following occurs:

- All that occurs when opening a Pro Tools 9.0 session with Pro Tools 8.0.
- Inserts F–J and any associated automation are removed.
- Clips from audio files larger than 2 GB appear offline.
- Pitch transpositions of Elastic clips are removed.
- Chord markers are removed.

Opening Pro Tools 7.4 or Higher Sessions with Pro Tools 7.3.x or 7.2

A Pro Tools 7.4–9.x session can be opened with Pro Tools 7.3.x or 7.2, but certain session components open differently or not at all.

⚠ **When opening a Pro Tools 7.4–9.x session with Pro Tools 7.3.x, you are warned that you are opening a session created with a newer version of Pro Tools and that not all session components will be available.**

When opening a Pro Tools 7.4.x or higher session with Pro Tools 7.3.x or 7.2, the following occurs:

- All that occurs when opening a Pro Tools 8.x or higher session with Pro Tools 7.4.x.
- Elastic Audio-enabled tracks open without Elastic Audio and clip durations revert to the timing of the original source file.
- Sessions with mixed language characters supported in Unicode may not open or, if they do open, Pro Tools displays “garbage” text.

Opening Pro Tools 7.2 or Higher Sessions with Pro Tools 7.1 or 7.0

A Pro Tools 7.2–9.x session without video tracks or VCA Masters can be opened with Pro Tools 7.1 or 7.0, but certain session components open differently or not at all.

⚠ **When opening a Pro Tools 7.4–9.x session with Pro Tools 7.2, 7.1, or 7.0, you are not warned that not all session components will be available.**

When opening a Pro Tools 7.4–9.x session with a version of Pro Tools 7.1 or 7.0 the following occurs:

- All that occurs when opening a Pro Tools 7.4 or higher session with Pro Tools 7.3.x or 7.2.

Tracks

- VCA Master tracks are removed and any uncoalesced VCA automation is dropped.
- Any uncoalesced Trim automation is dropped.

Groups

- All groups beyond the first 26 (Bank 1, Groups a–z) are dropped.
- Mix Groups keep only Main Volume information.
- Mix/Edit Groups keep only Main Volume and Automation Mode information.

- Automation overflow information for grouped controls is not preserved.
- Group behavior of Solos, LFEs, Mutes, Send Levels, Send Mutes is not preserved.
- Solo Mode and Solo Latch settings are dropped.

Video

- Only the main video track is displayed.
- Only the first QuickTime movie in the session is displayed or played back.
- If the session contains QuickTime movies in the Clip List but no video track, the session opens with a new QuickTime Movie track containing the first QuickTime movie from the Clip List.
- The Timeline displays and plays back only the video playlist that was last active. Alternate video playlists are not available.
- Video clips and video clip groups are not shown or saved.

Opening Sessions Created with Pro Tools HD 7.2–9.x with Pro Tools LE 8.0

A session created with Pro Tools HD 7.2–9.x session that does not contain video tracks or VCA Masters can be opened with Pro Tools LE 8.0, but certain session components open differently or not at all.

⚠ **Session created with Pro Tools HD 7.2 or higher that contain video tracks or VCA Master tracks can only be opened with Pro Tools LE 7.0cs3 and later.**

When opening a session created with Pro Tools HD 7.x–9.x in Pro Tools LE 8.0, the following occurs:

Tracks

- Any tracks beyond the first 48, as well any inactive tracks, are set to *voice off*.
- Any assignments to buses beyond 32 are made inactive.
- Any Instrument tracks beyond 32 are made inactive.
- TDM plugins with RTAS equivalents are converted; those without equivalents are made inactive.
- Multichannel surround tracks are removed from the session.
- Unavailable input and output paths are made inactive.
- Any Delay Compensation settings are removed.
- VCA Master tracks are removed and any uncoalesced VCA automation is dropped.
- HEAT (if present) is removed (Pro Tools HD 8.1 or higher sessions with HEAT option only).
- Output Bus assignments are removed (Pro Tools HD 8.1 or higher sessions only).

Groups

- In Pro Tools LE 7.1 or earlier only, all groups beyond the first 26 (Bank 1, Groups a–z) are dropped.
- Mix Groups keep only Main Volume information.
- Mix/Edit Groups keep only Main Volume and Automation Mode information.
- Automation overflow information for grouped controls is be preserved.
- Group behavior of Solos, Mutes, Send Levels, Send Mutes is be preserved.
- Solo Mode and Solo Latch settings are dropped.

Video

- Only the main video track is displayed.
- Only the first QuickTime movie in the session is displayed or played back.
- If the session contains QuickTime movies in the Clip List but no video track, the session opens with a new QuickTime Movie track containing the first QuickTime movie from the Clip List.
- The Timeline displays and plays back only the video playlist that was last active. Alternate video playlists are not available.
- In Pro Tools LE 7.1 or earlier only, video clips and video clip groups are not shown or saved.

Saving Pro Tools 12.x–10.x Sessions to Pro Tools 5.1 -> 6.9 Format

Pro Tools 7.x and later sessions cannot be opened with Pro Tools versions 6.9.x through 5.1.

To save a Pro Tools 12.x–10.x session so it is compatible with Pro Tools version 6.9.x through 5.1, use the **`File > Save Copy In`** command to choose the **`Pro Tools 5.1 -> 6.9 Session`** format.

Pro Tools 8.x and later supports file sizes up to 3.4 GB, and Pro Tools 10 and later support file sizes over 4 GB. Pro Tools 5.1 through 6.9 on Mac only supports file sizes up to 2 GB. If your session references audio files larger than 2 GB, edit and consolidate clips to reference only files smaller than 2 GB.

When saving a Pro Tools 12.x–10.x session to Pro Tools 5.1 -> 6.9 format, the following occurs:

- All that occurs when saving a Pro Tools 12.x–10.x session to Pro Tools 7–>9 session format.

Tracks

- Any audio tracks beyond 256 are removed.
- Any internal mix buses beyond 128 are removed.
- Output bus assignments are removed.
- HEAT (if present) is removed.
- Elastic Audio-enabled tracks are saved untransposed, unwarped, and clip durations revert to the timing of the original source file.
- Instrument tracks are split into separate Auxiliary Input and MIDI tracks.
- VCA Master tracks are removed and VCA automation is coalesced to the corresponding member tracks.
- Trim automation playlists are coalesced to their corresponding automation playlists.
- Fader Gain levels and automation breakpoints higher than +6 dB are changed to +6 dB.
- Long names are shortened to 31 characters.
- The following attributes are dropped:
- Clip groups
- Clip loops
- Sample-based MIDI clips
- Sample-based MIDI tracks
- Inserts F–J and any associated automation
- Sends F–J and any associated automation
- Marker/Memory Locations 201–999

Groups

- All groups beyond the first 26 (Bank 1, Groups a–z) are dropped.
- Mix Groups keep only Main Volume information.
- Mix/Edit Groups keep only Main Volume and Automation Mode information.
- Automation overflow information for grouped controls is not preserved.
- Group behavior of Solos, LFEs, Mutes, Send Levels, Send Mutes is not preserved.
- Solo Mode and Solo Latch settings are dropped.

Video

- Only the main video track is displayed.
- Only the first QuickTime movie in the session is displayed or played back.
- If the session contains QuickTime movies in the Clip List but no video track, the session opens with a new QuickTime Movie track containing the first QuickTime movie from the Clip List.
- The Timeline displays and plays back only the video playlist that was last active. Alternate video playlists are not available.
- Video clips and video clip groups are not shown or saved.

Language Compatibility

- The Limit Character Set option must be enabled and you must select a single language and character set.

Saving Pro Tools 12.x–10.x Sessions to Pro Tools 5.0 Format

Pro Tools 5.1 and later sessions cannot be opened with Pro Tools version 5.0.

To save a Pro Tools 12.x–10.x session so it is compatible with Pro Tools version 5.0, use the **`File > Save Copy In`** command to choose the **`Pro Tools 5.0 Session`** format.

When saving a Pro Tools 12.x–10.x session to Pro Tools 5.0 format, the following occurs:

- All that occurs when saving a Pro Tools 12.x–10.x session to Pro Tools 5.0 format.
- Multichannel surround tracks are removed from the session.
- Inactive tracks are removed from the session.
- Tracks assigned to “No Output” are routed to buses 31 and 32.
- Tracks or sends assigned to buses 33–64 are routed to buses 31 and 32.
- Tracks assigned to multichannel paths or subpaths of multichannel paths are routed to buses 31 and 32.
- Sends assigned to multichannel paths or subpaths of multichannel paths are dropped.
- Tracks or sends assigned to stereo paths referring to even/odd channels (such as 2–3) are routed to buses 31 and 32.
- Multi-mono plugin instances are dropped.

Opening Sessions with Markers Exported from Media Composer

Media Composer 2022.12 can export Pro Tools session files with markers that work with all versions of Pro Tools. When opening sessions exported from Media Composer 2022.12:

- Pro Tools 2022.12 places the Media Composer comment field text into the Pro Tools memory location name field. The memory location comments also contain the Media Composer track name and marker color. This results in the same behavior as for markers imported from a Media Composer generated AAF.
- Versions prior to Pro Tools 2022.12 show the Media Composer marker name in the Pro Tools memory location name field—this is a one-to-one mapping of name field, and the Media Composer marker name typically contains the Media Composer username.

Renderer Migration Utility

When switching between renderers in a Pro Tools session, you are presented with options to manage the migration between renderers.

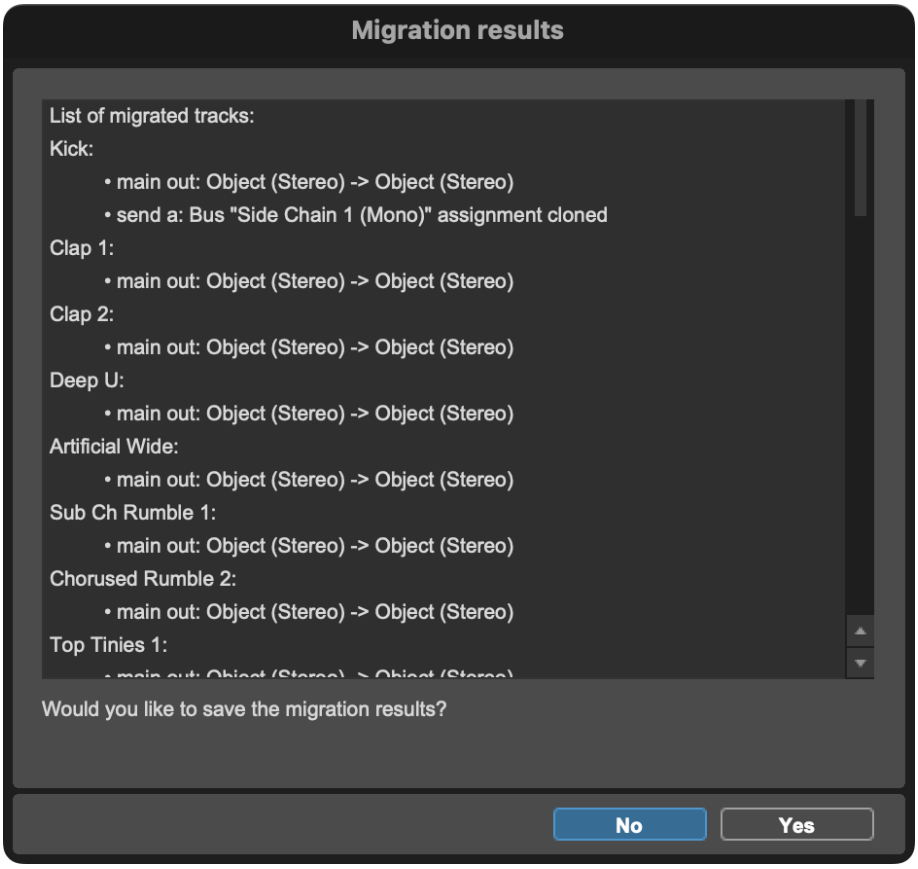
To launch the Migration Utility:

1. With an Immersive session open in Pro Tools, switch from the current renderer to another (such as from 360RA WalkMix to MPEG-H).

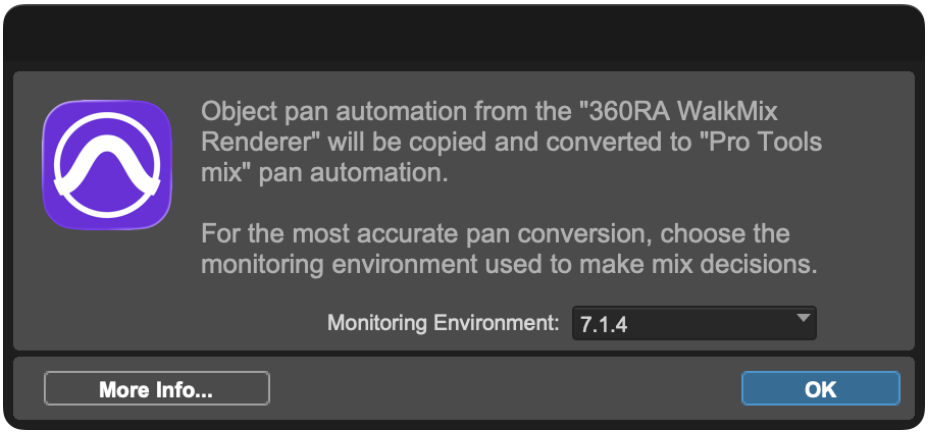


2. Select the desired option for migration.
   - **`Perform Automatic Migration`**: Select this option to perform automatic migration of Object and Bed assignments. Unsupported Object or Bed assignments are removed of deactivated.
   - **`Convert All Immersive Assignments to a Bed`**: Select this option to convert all immersive assignments to a Bed. All tracks currently assigned as Objects or Beds are converted into a single Bed. After migration, you can manually reassign tracks as Objects as desired. This option is not available for the 360RA WalkMix renderer.
   - **`Do Not Perform Migration`**: When this option is select, Pro Tools does not migrate Immersive assignments to the new format.
3. Select the desired Bed Width for the destination renderer: **`9.1.4`**, **`7.1.4`**, **`7.1.2`**, **`7.0.2`**, **`7.1`**, **`7.0`**, **`6.1`**, **`5.1.4`**, **`5.1.2`**, **`5.0.2`**, **`5.1`**, **`5.0`**, **`Quad`**, **`LCRS`**, **`LCR`**, **`Stereo`**, or **`Mono`**.
4. Click **`OK`**.

5. In the resultant Migration Results dialog, click **Yes** to save a text file of the results or **No** to not.



6. If prompted, select the desired **Monitoting Environment** (such as **7.1.4**).



7. Click **OK**.

Language Compatibility

Unicode Support for Languages

Pro Tools supports entry and display of any language characters supported in Unicode anywhere in the Pro Tools application. This lets you:

- Use multiple languages in session names, and in path names, file names and clip names within the same session.
- Search for terms in multiple languages in Workspace browsers.

Pro Tools Automatic Naming Language

When working in a language other than English, you can set Pro Tools to automatically name session elements (such as clips, tracks, and I/O paths) in English. This is useful when sharing sessions with other users working in English.

To set the Automatic Naming Language to match the language selected for the Pro Tools application:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Display** tab.
2. Choose the language you want to use in Pro Tools from the **Language** pop-up menu.
3. Deselect the **Default Automatic Naming to English** option.

Pro Tools Application Language

You can choose the language you want to use in the Pro Tools application, independently of what language the OS is using.

To select the language for Pro Tools:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and select the **Display** tab.
2. Choose the language you want to use in Pro Tools from the **Language** pop-up menu.

Multilingual Application Support for Pro Tools Systems

(Localized OS on Mac Only) Localized versions of Pro Tools can be opened on a qualified Mac that supports English and the localized language versions of Mac. You can also select a different language in any localized version of Pro Tools (including English) in the Apple System Preferences.

To change to a different language version of Pro Tools:

1. Quit Pro Tools if it is currently open.
2. Launch Apple System Preferences.
3. Click International (the “flag” icon).
4. Click the **Language** tab.
5. In the Languages column, drag the language you want to the top of the list.
6. Close the International window.
7. Do one of the following:
   - If you are changing from a localized language to English, launch Pro Tools.
   - If you are changing from one language to another (or from English to a localized language), log out and log in from the Apple menu, then launch Pro Tools.



If you want your computer to start with the previous language (after working on a different language version) follow the above steps and change the International preference back to the previous language.

Part IV: Playback and Recording

Learn to play and record audio and MIDI in Pro Tools.

- "Playing Back Track Material" on page 739
- "Record Setup" on page 763
- "Audio Recording" on page 787
- "MIDI Recording" on page 809
- "Punch Recording Modes" on page 833

27 Playing Back Track Material

After importing or recording audio or MIDI to tracks, you will want to play back the material when editing and mixing.

Starting and Stopping Playback

To start playback, do one of the following:

- Click Play in the Transport.
- Press the Spacebar.
- With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport or Shuttle, press 0 on the numeric keypad.
- If the Numeric Keypad mode is set to Transport, and the Use Separate Play and Stop Keys option is enabled, press Enter on the numeric keypad.
- If you have a worksurface or MIDI control surface connected and configured, press the Play switch.
- If Pro Tools is online and controlled by another deck, press play on the master deck (see "Putting Pro Tools Online" on page 1852).



For more information about the Numeric Keypad modes, see "Numeric Keypad Modes" on page 28.

To stop playback, do one of the following:

- Click Stop in the Transport.
- Press the Spacebar.
- With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport or Shuttle, press 0 on the numeric keypad.
- If you have a control surface connected and configured, press the Stop switch.
- If Pro Tools is online and controlled by another deck, press stop on the master deck (see "Putting Pro Tools Online" on page 1852).

Playing Back Audio

To play back audio:

1. Import or record audio to a track.
2. Assign the track's Output selector to your main monitoring path.
3. To have playback start from the beginning of the session, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
4. Start playback.
5. The audio plays through the selected Output Path. Adjust the track's volume and pan faders as necessary.
6. When you are finished, stop playback.

Playing Back MIDI

To play back MIDI (and monitor the audio):

1. Import, record, or enter MIDI into an Instrument or MIDI track.
2. For an Instrument track, do the following:
   - Set the Instrument track's audio Output selector to the main monitoring path.
   - If you are using an Instrument Plugin, insert the plugin on the track. The track's MIDI Output selector (in Instrument view) should be automatically set to the plugin.
   - If you are using an external MIDI device (not an Instrument plugin), set the MIDI Output selector in Instrument view to the MIDI device (port) and channel you want to play back.
   - If you are using an external MIDI device (not an Instrument plugin), set the Instrument track's audio Input selector to the Input path to which your MIDI device's audio outputs are connected.
3. For a MIDI track, do the following:
   - If you are using an Instrument plugin, create an Auxiliary Input or Instrument track insert the Instrument plugin on the track.
   - If you are using an external MIDI device (not an Instrument plugin), create an Auxiliary Input or Instrument track to monitor the audio from an external MIDI device or Instrument plugin.
   - If you are using an external MIDI device (not an Instrument plugin), set the Auxiliary Input or Instrument track's audio Input selector to the Input path to which your MIDI device's audio outputs are connected.
   - Set the Auxiliary Input or Instrument track's audio Output selector to the main monitoring path.
   - Set the MIDI track's output selector to the Instrument plugin, or MIDI device (port), and channel you want to play back.
4. To have playback start from the beginning of the session, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
5. Start playback.
6. The MIDI plays the selected MIDI device, and the audio from the MIDI device is monitored through the selected Output Path on the Auxiliary Input or Instrument track. Adjust the MIDI, Auxiliary Input, or Instrument track's volume and pan faders as necessary.
7. When you are finished, stop playback.



For information about synchronizing external MIDI devices with Pro Tools for playback and recording using MIDI Beat Clock, see "MIDI Beat Clock" on page 757, and for information about using MIDI Timecode, see "Generating Timecode" on page 1852.

Playback Location

The playback location is the point in the Pro Tools Timeline where you can begin playing back audio or MIDI in your session.

The playback location is displayed in counters and indicators in the Edit window, Transport window, and Big Counter. The playback location (or Edit selection) is also indicated by a playback or edit cursor in the Timeline or playlist of the Edit window.

Pro Tools also provides a pre-roll control for setting playback to begin before the playback location. See "Basic Transport Controls and Counters" on page 267.

Counters and Indicators that Display the Playback Location

Main and Sub Counters and Edit Selection Indicators

At the top of the Edit window, the playback location is displayed in the Main and Sub counters, and the Edit Selection Start indicator. If no selection is made, the playback location is also displayed in the Edit Selection End indicator.



Main and Sub Counters, Edit Selection indicators

Counters and Edit Selection indicators can also be displayed in the Transport window.



Transport with Counters displayed

To display the Main Counter in the Transport window:

- Select **View > Transport > Counters**.

- *Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Expand/Collapse button in the Transport window to show or hide counters.*

- *Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Expand/Collapse button in the Transport window to show or hide counters and MIDI controls.*

To display the Sub Counter in the Transport window:

1. Select **View > Transport > Counters**.
2. Select **View > Transport > Expanded**.

To display Edit Selection indicators in the Transport window:

- Select **View > Transport > Expanded**.

The Big Counter

The current playback location can also be displayed in the Big Counter.



To display the Big Counter:

- Choose **Window > Big Counter**.

Cursors that Indicate the Playback (or Edit) Location

There are two types of cursors in the Pro Tools Edit window for indicating the current playback or Edit selection:

Playback Cursor

The *playback cursor* is a solid line that moves across the Edit window to indicate the current playback location.

The selected Scrolling Option determines how the Edit window scrolls during playback, and how the playback cursor functions. See "Scrolling Options" on page 746 for details.

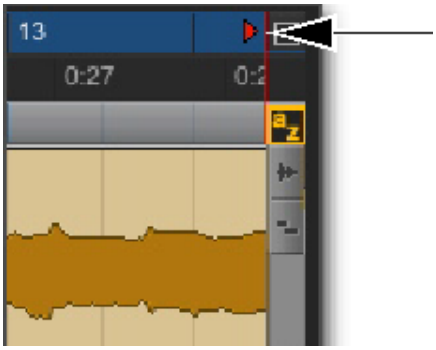
Edit Cursor

The *edit cursor* is a flashing line that appears when you click with the Selector tool in a track's playlist. The flashing edit cursor indicates the start point for any editing tasks performed. If you make a selection and perform an edit, the selection is the target of the edit.

Locating the Playback Cursor when It Is Off-Screen

Use the Playback Cursor locator to locate the playback cursor when it is off-screen.

If the playback cursor is located after the time visible in the Edit window, the Playback Cursor locator appears on the right edge of the Main Timebase ruler. If the playback cursor is located before the time visible in the Edit window, the Playback Cursor locator appears on the left edge of the Main Timebase ruler.



Playback Cursor locator, recording enabled (playback cursor located after currently viewed audio)

For example, if the Scrolling option is set to None, the playback cursor moves off-screen after it has played past the time currently visible in the Edit window. The Playback Cursor locator appears on the right edge of the Main Timebase ruler after the playback cursor has moved beyond the time visible in the Edit window.

The Playback Cursor locator is red when a track is record-enabled and blue when no track is record-enabled.

To locate the playback cursor when it is off-screen:

- Click the Playback Cursor locator in the Main Timebase ruler.

  The Edit window changes to center the playback cursor on-screen.

Setting the Playback Location

Pro Tools provides commands for different ways of setting or moving the playback location in a session. These include finding a passage in a song, moving to a different section of your arrangement, or comparing different sections.

Setting Playback Location Using the Selector Tool

To set where playback begins, you can click anywhere in a track with the Selector tool (as long as the Timeline and Edit selections are linked). See "Linking or Unlinking Timeline and Edit Selections" on page 903).



Setting a playback point with the Selector tool

To begin playing from a specific point within a track:

1. Make sure that **`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`** is enabled.
2. With the Selector tool, click in the track where you want playback to begin.
3. Start playback.
4. Stop playback.

To jump to a different location and begin playing from there, do one of the following:

- When playback is stopped, click with the Selector tool at the point you want to start playback and click Play in the Transport window.
- During playback, click the new location in any Timebase Ruler.

With the Timeline and Edit selections linked, you can click a clip or MIDI note with the Time Grabber tool to automatically update the Timeline with the selection's start time, letting you play from that point.

Setting Playback Location with Basic Transport Controls

Transport controls in the Transport window and top of the Edit window can be used to move the playback location. These include Rewind, Fast Forward, and Return to Zero (to move playback location to the beginning of the session). For more information, see "Basic Transport Controls and Counters" on page 267.

Setting Playback Location with the Main Counter or Edit Selection Start Indicator

To set the playback location using a Main Counter (or the Edit Selection Start indicator):

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click in one of the counters.
   - Press asterisk (*) on the numeric keypad to highlight the Main Counter in the Edit window (or the Main Counter in the Transport window or Big Counter window, if either are displayed).
2. Type in the new location. Press Period (.) to cycle through to the different time fields.
3. Press Enter to accept the new value and automatically locate there.

Setting Playback Location with Fast Forward/Rewind

You can use the Fast Forward and Rewind buttons in the Transport window to move the playback location. If the Operation preference for **`Audio During Fast Forward/Rewind`** is selected, the scanned audio is heard (similar to a CD player) when clicking the Fast Forward and Rewind buttons.

You can also fast forward or rewind incrementally by repeatedly clicking the appropriate button. The size of these increments is determined by the Main Time Scale:

Bars|Beats

Moves to the beginning of the previous or next bar.

Min:Sec

Moves back or forward in one-second steps.

Timecode

Moves back or forward in one-second steps (while adjusting for current Timecode format).

Feet+Frames

Moves back or forward in one-foot steps.

Samples

Moves back or forward in one-second steps.

Setting Playback Location with Back and Forward Commands

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) Pro Tools provides four Back/Forward commands (sometimes called "rollback") for moving the playback location in the Edit window.

You can also move the playback location in multiple increments by repeating the command (See "Repeating Back/Forward Commands" on the next page).



Back/Forward commands also work when controlling a 9-pin device. For more information, see "Pro Tools | MachineControl" on page 1867.

Back

Moves the playback location backward by the Back/Forward Amount.

Back and Play

Moves the current playback location backward by the Back/Forward Amount *and* automatically begins playback.

Forward

Moves the playback location forward by the Back/Forward Amount.

Forward and Play

Moves the current playback location forward by the Back/Forward Amount *and* automatically begins playback.

Setting the Back/Forward Amount

The length of the Back/Forward move is determined by the Back/Forward Amount preference in the Operation page (**`Setup > Preferences`**).

To configure the Back/Forward Amount:

1. Choose **`Setup > Preferences`** and click the **`Operation`** tab.

   The timebase of the Back/Forward Amount settings follows the Main Time Scale by default, or you can deselect Follow Main Time and select any of the following timebase formats:

   - Bars|Beats
   - Min:Sec

- Timecode
- Feet+Frames
- Samples

2. Do one of the following:
   - Select a preset amount in the **Back/Forward Amount** pop-up menu.
   - In the **Back/Forward Amount** field, enter a custom amount.

Using Back or Forward Commands

To move the playback location backward by the Back/Forward Amount:

- Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows), and click Rewind in the Transport window.

To move the playback location forward by the Back/Forward Amount:

- Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows), and click Fast Forward in the Transport window.

To move the playback location backward by the Back/Forward Amount and then begin playback:

- Press Command+Option (Mac) or Control+Alt (Windows), and click Rewind in the Transport window.

To move the playback location forward by the Back/Forward Amount and then begin playback:

- Press Command+Option (Mac) or Control+Alt (Windows), and click Fast Forward in the Transport window.

Repeating Back/Forward Commands

All the **Back/Forward** commands can be repeated in order to increase the amount of the total Back or Forward move.

To repeat Back/Forward moves:

1. Hold Command (Mac) or Control (Windows).
2. Click Rewind or Fast Forward the number of times you want to repeat moving the playback location backwards or forwards by the specified Back/Forward Amount.

Extending Selections with Back or Back and Play Commands

The **Back** or **Back and Play** commands can be used to extend a selection backwards by the length of the specified Back/Forward Amount.

Although you cannot extend a selection with the Forward or Forward and Play commands, you can use the following procedures with Forward or Forward and Play to move the start point of a current selection.

To extend a selection with Back or Back and Play commands:

1. Specify the Back/Forward Amount. (See "Setting the Back/Forward Amount" on the previous page.)
2. With the Selector tool, drag within a track to make a selection.
3. Do one of the following:
   - To extend the selection backwards by the Back/Forward Amount, press Shift+Command (Mac) or Shift+Control (Windows) and click Rewind in the Transport window.
   - To extend the selection backwards by the Back/Forward Amount and then begin playback, press Shift+Command+Option (Mac) or Shift+Control+Alt (Windows) and click Rewind in the Transport window.

Additional Ways of Moving the Playback Location

You can also move the playback location with the following:

Shuttle Lock Modes

With either Shuttle Lock mode (Classic or Transport) you can use the numeric keypad to shuttle forward or backwards at specific speeds. For more information, see "Shuttle Lock Modes" on page 28.

Memory Locations

Memory Locations can be used to move the playback location (or Edit selection). When a Memory Location is recalled, the playback location (or Edit selection) updates. Memory Locations can be recalled from the Memory Locations window and from the numeric keypad. In addition, Marker Memory Selections can be recalled by clicking them in the Markers ruler. For more information, see "Recalling Memory Locations" on page 1201.

Tabbing to Transients

With the Tab to Transients button enabled, you can automatically navigate to transients in audio waveforms, placing the cursor just before the detected transient peak. For more information, see "Tabbing to Transients" on page 915.

Scrolling Options

You can configure how contents of the Edit window scroll during playback and recording.

To configure Scrolling options:

Choose **`Options > Scrolling`** and select one of the following options:

- No Scrolling

  The Edit window does not scroll during or after playback. The playback cursor moves across the Edit window, indicating the playback location.

- After Playback

  The playback cursor moves across the Edit window, indicating the playback location. When playback has stopped, the Edit window scrolls to the final playback location.

- Page

  The playback cursor moves across the Edit window, indicating the playback location. When the right edge of the Edit window is reached, its entire contents are scrolled, and the playback cursor continues moving from the left edge of the window. For more information, see "Page Scrolling During Playback" on the next page.

Continuous

See "Continuous Scrolling During Playback" on the next page.

Center Playhead (HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

See "Center Playhead Scrolling" on the next page.

Making a selection in the Timeline or a playlist, or manually scrolling the Timeline while in Page Scroll or Continuous Scroll mode suspends page scrolling. To resume page scrolling and jump to the current playback location, click the Playback Cursor locator in the Main Timebase ruler (see "Locating the Playback Cursor when It Is Off-Screen" on page 742).

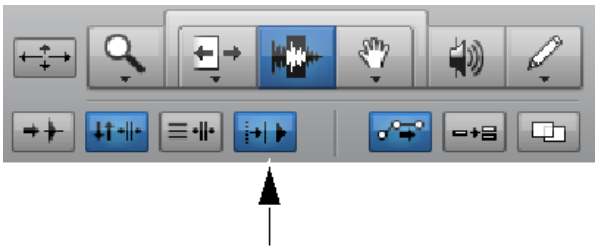
You can change the Scrolling option while the Transport is running.

Page Scrolling During Playback

You can set Pro Tools to scroll the track display while playing, and also have the edit cursor appear wherever playback stops.

To make the track display and the edit cursor follow playback:

- Enable the Timeline Insertion/Play Start Marker Follows Playback button in the Edit window.



Timeline Insertion/Play Start Marker Follows Playback button enabled

You can enable or disable the Timeline Insertion/Play Start Marker Follows Playback option in the Operation Preferences.

Press Control+N (Mac) or Start+N (Windows) to toggle the Timeline Insertion/Play Start Marker Follows Playback preference on and off.

Continuous Scrolling During Playback

When this scrolling option is selected, the Edit window's contents scroll continuously past the playback cursor, which remains in the center of the window. With this option, playback is always based on the Timeline selection (unlike the **`Center Playhead Scrolling`** option).

`Continuous Scrolling During Playback` uses host processing power, so use this option with host-based Pro Tools systems only when absolutely necessary.

Center Playhead Scrolling

(HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

When this scrolling option is selected, the Edit window's contents scroll continuously past the *Playhead*, which is a blue line in the center of the window (or a red line when recording).

The Playhead indicates where playback begins when clicking Play in the Transport window.



Center Playhead Scrolling option

To move the Playhead to a particular location for playback, you can scroll there in a ruler (see "Scrolling in a Timebase Ruler" on page 919), use the Edit window's horizontal scroll bar, or type the location into one of the Edit Selection indicators or one of the Counters.

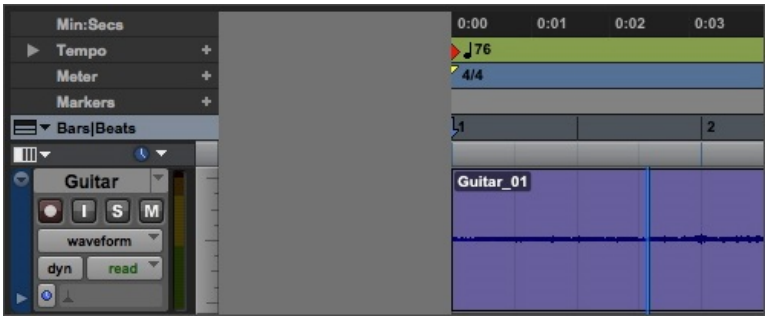
Moving the Playhead with these methods does not update the Timeline selection. However, updating the Timeline selection automatically moves the Playhead to the Timeline insertion point.

With the Playhead enabled, you can jump to and play an Edit or Timeline selection. For details, see "Playing Timeline and Edit Selections with the Playhead" on page 750.

⚠ **Center Playhead Scrolling and Dynamic Transport mode cannot be used at the same time. Selecting Center Playhead Scrolling disables Dynamic Transport mode (if it is enabled). Likewise, enabling Dynamic Transport mode when Center Playhead Scrolling is selected automatically changes the Scrolling option to No Scrolling.**

Half-Screen Edit Window

When the Scrolling option is set to **`Continuous or Center Playhead`**, a half-screen appears at the far left of the Edit window (before the beginning of the session) when the Playhead is at the beginning of the session.



Half-screen for Center Playhead Scrolling option

Playing Selections

Once an Edit selection is made, you can audition it by clicking Play in the Transport window. If enabled, the pre- and post-roll amounts play as well.

To play a selection:

1. Select **`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**.
2. With the Selector or Time Grabber tool, make a track selection.
3. If you want to use pre-roll or post-roll, enable and set the pre-roll and post-roll amounts. For details, see "Setting Pre- and Post-Roll" on page 794.
4. Click Play in the Transport window, or press the Spacebar.

All tracks play for the range of the selection, including pre-roll and post-roll if enabled.

To play an Edit selection with Link Timeline and Edit Selection disabled:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Play Edit`**.

To play a Timeline selection with Link Timeline and Edit Selection disabled:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Play Timeline`**.

Auditioning Pre-Roll and Post-Roll

You can audition and play *just* the pre-roll or post-roll material for a selection.

To play from the pre-roll point to the start of a selection, or to the current Cursor location:

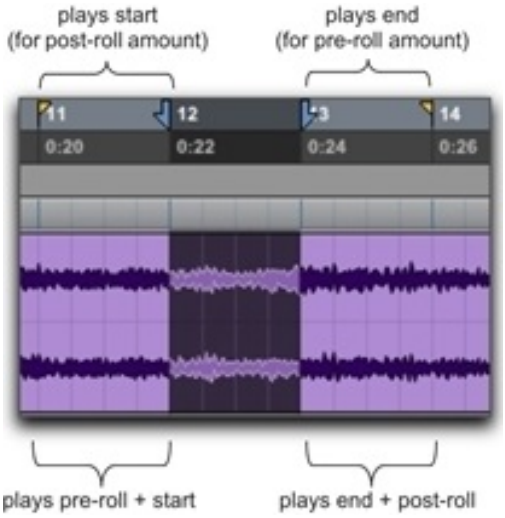
- Press Option+Left Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Left Arrow (Windows).

To play to the post-roll point from the end of a selection, or from the current Cursor location:

- Press Command+Right Arrow (Mac) or Control+Right Arrow (Windows).

Auditioning Start and End Points for Selections

There may be times when you want to audition the start or end of an audio selection without hearing the entire selection. This allows you to check, for instance, whether the beginning or end of a selection includes any unwanted clicks or pops.



Playback ranges for auditioning start/end points

To audition a selection start point:

- Press Command+Left Arrow (Mac) or Control+Left Arrow (Windows).

  When auditioning the beginning of a selection, the selection plays from the start point for a duration equal to the post-roll amount.

To audition a selection start point with pre-roll:

- Press Command+Option+Left Arrow (Mac) or Control+Alt+Left Arrow (Windows).

To audition a selection end point:

- Press Option+Right Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Right Arrow (Windows).

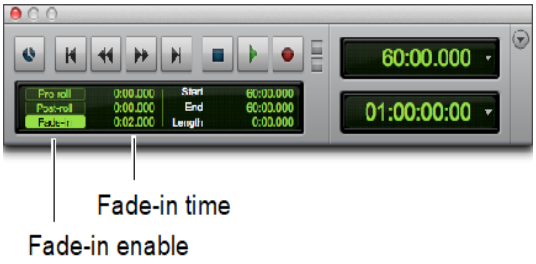
  When auditioning the end of a selection, playback begins before the end point by the pre-roll amount.

To audition a selection end point with post-roll:

- Press Command+Option+Right Arrow (Mac) or Control+Alt+Right Arrow (Windows).

Transport Fade-in

Pro Tools provides a **Fade-in** option for the Transport. Enable this option to fade in the levels for all source audio linearly, from silence to the current levels of the source audio when the transport starts. The Fade-in time can be set between 0.000 and 4.000 seconds. This option is useful for avoiding pops and clicks, or sudden boosts in volume when relocating the playback location during playback.



Transport window with Fade-in enabled (2 seconds)

For music production scenarios, use shorter fade-in times (250 ms). In certain post-production scenarios when synchronizing to external decks, use longer fade-in times depending on how long it takes for all synchronized decks to lock to timecode (up to 2 seconds).

To enable (or disable) the Fade-in Transport option:

1. Open the Expanded Transport window.
2. Click **Fade-in** so that it is lit (or unlit).

To set the Fade-in time for the Transport:

1. Open the Expanded Transport window.
2. Click in the numeric field to the right of the Fade-in enable button.
3. Type in the desired time.
4. Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) on your computer keyboard.

Be sure to disable the Fade-in Transport option when recording. Audio that is recorded with the Fade-in Transport option enabled will include a fade based on the set Fade-in duration.

Playing Timeline and Edit Selections with the Playhead

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) When the Scrolling option is set to **Center Playhead**, selections in the Timeline do not determine when playback begins. The Playhead itself denotes where playback begins.

Timeline and Edit selections, however, can still be played when the Playhead is enabled.

To play an Edit selection with the Playhead enabled:

1. Deselect **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selections**.
2. Select **Options > Scrolling > Center Playhead**.
3. With the Selector or Time Grabber tool, make a track selection.
4. Choose **Edit > Selection > Play Edit**.

To play a Timeline selection with the Playhead enabled:

1. Deselect **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selections**.
2. Select **Options > Scrolling > Center Playhead**.
3. Drag with the Selector tool in any Timebase ruler to set the play range.
4. Choose **Edit > Selection > Play Timeline**.

Moving the Playhead

When the Scrolling option is set to **Center Playhead**, the Playhead can be moved forward or back to the next clip boundary in the selected track.

To move the Playhead through a track's clip boundaries:

1. Make sure the Tab to Transients button is not enabled (see "Tabbing to Transients" on page 915).
2. Click in the track with the Selector tool.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Press Tab to move the Playhead forward to the next clip boundary.
   - Press Option+Tab (Mac) or Control+Tab (Windows) to move the Playhead back to the previous clip boundary.

Playback Modes

Pro Tools provides several Playback modes:

- Normal Playback mode
- Half-Speed Playback mode
- Prime for Playback mode
- Loop Playback mode
- Dynamic Transport mode

Normal Playback Mode

Normal Playback mode is simply when none of the other Playback modes are selected. In Normal Playback mode, Pro Tools plays back at the session sample rate.

Half-Speed Playback Mode

Use Half-Speed Playback mode to learn or transcribe difficult passages in recorded tracks.

To play at half-speed:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Shift-click the Play button in the Transport.
   - Right-click the Play button in the Transport and select **Half-Speed**. Then click Play to start Half-Speed Playback.

   You can also play at half-speed by pressing Shift+Spacebar.
2. Click Stop in the Transport to stop playback.

Prime for Playback Mode

When playing back a large number of tracks, Pro Tools may take a little longer to actually start playback. To avoid this delay, put Pro Tools in Prime for Playback mode before starting playback.

To enable Prime for Playback mode and start playback:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) Play in the Transport to put Pro Tools in Prime for Playback mode.
   - Right-click the Play button and select **Prime for Playback**.

   The Stop button lights and the Play button flashes.
2. To begin playback instantaneously, click Play.
3. Click Stop to stop playback.

When synchronizing to timecode, use Prime for Playback mode to play back large numbers of tracks. This decreases the time it takes to lock to timecode.

Loop Playback Mode

When Loop Playback mode is enabled, the selected track range repeats on playback. If there is no selection, playback occurs normally from the current Cursor location.

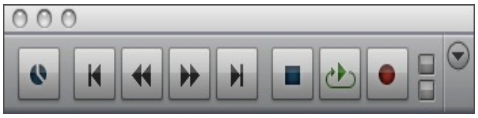
A selection must be at least 500 ms in length for it to loop on playback.

Looping playback is a useful way to check the rhythmic continuity of a selection when working with musical material. If you're working with one-bar selections, you can loop playback to see if the material loops cleanly. If it seems to skip, you should then adjust the length of the selection until it works "musically" within the context of the playlist and the other tracks.

To loop playback of a selection:

1. Select **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
2. With the Selector tool, select the track range you want to loop.
3. Enable Loop Playback by doing one of the following:
   - Select **Options > Loop Playback**.
   - Right-click the Play button in the Transport window and select **Loop** from the pop-up menu.
   - Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Play button in the Transport window.
   - Press Command+Shift+L (Mac) or Control+Shift+L (Windows).
   - With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport, press 4 on the numeric keypad.

   When enabled, a loop symbol appears in the Play button in the Transport window.



Loop Playback enabled

4. Click Play in the Transport window.

   Playback begins from the pre-roll point (if enabled) and continues to the selection's end point, where it loops back to the selection's start point.
5. Click Stop in the Transport window to stop playback.

Loop Playback and Audio Recording

Looping playback does *not* enable loop recording. Use Loop Record mode to loop during recording (see "Loop Recording Audio" on page 799).

Dynamic Transport Mode

Dynamic Transport mode lets you decouple the playback location from the Timeline selection. This means that you can start playback from anywhere on the Timeline without losing your Timeline or Edit selections. For example, you can use Dynamic Transport mode in conjunction with Loop Playback mode to quickly audition loop transitions.

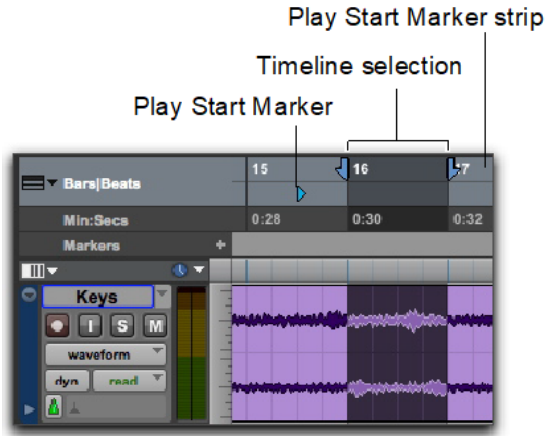
When Dynamic Transport mode is enabled, the Main Timebase ruler expands to double-height and reveals the Play Start Marker. The Play Start Marker determines where playback starts when the Transport is engaged. You can position the Play Start Marker independently of the Timeline Selection. The Play Start Marker can be repositioned during playback and playback continues from the new location.

To enable or disable Dynamic Transport mode, do one of the following:

- Select or deselect **`Options > Dynamic Transport`**.
- Right-click the Play button in the Transport window and select **`Dynamic Transport`** from the pop-up menu.
- Press Command+Control+P (Mac) or Control+Start+P (Windows) to toggle Dynamic Transport mode on or off.

Enabling Dynamic Transport mode automatically disables Link Timeline and Edit Selection, and automatically enables Loop Playback mode.

Center Playhead Scrolling (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only) and Dynamic Transport mode cannot be used at the same time. Selecting Center Playhead Scrolling disables Dynamic Transport mode (if it is enabled). Likewise, enabling Dynamic Transport mode when Center Playhead Scrolling is selected automatically changes the Scrolling option to No Scrolling.



Dynamic Transport mode, Play Start Marker shown in expanded Main Timebase ruler

To reposition the Play Start Marker, do one of the following:

- With any Edit tool selected, click in the Play Start Marker strip in the Main Timebase ruler.
- With any Edit tool selected, drag the Play Start Marker to a new location.
- Click Fast Forward or Rewind in the Transport to relocate the Play Start Marker forward or backward by the standard Fast Forward and Rewind increment amount.

Double-click anywhere in the Play Start Marker strip in the Main Timebase ruler to move the Play Start Marker to that location and start playback.

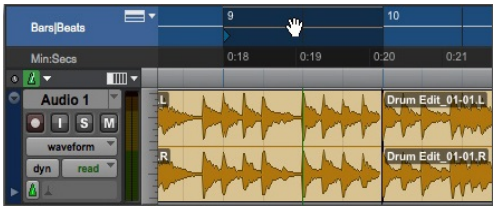
To change the Timeline Selection Start or End Markers:

1. Make a Timeline selection with the Selector tool by dragging in the Main Timebase ruler. If the **Link Timeline and Edit Selection** option is enabled, you can make an Edit selection with the Selector or any of the Grabber tools.
2. With any Edit tool selected, drag either the Timeline Selection Start or End Markers left or right, extending or constricting the Timeline selection.

Changes to the Timeline selection during playback temporarily interrupt playback. To minimize this interruption, reduce the AAE Playback Buffer size in the Playback Engine dialog.

To move the Timeline selection:

- With any Edit tool selected, drag the selection on the Main Timeline ruler to another location.



Dynamic Transport mode, moving the Edit selection

When the Link Timeline and Edit Selection option is disabled, Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) the Timeline selection to snap the Edit selection to the Timeline selection and move both in tandem.

Play Start Marker Follows Timeline Selection

When enabled, the Play Start Marker snaps to the Timeline Selection In Point when you move the Timeline Selection, draw a new Timeline Selection, or adjust the Timeline Selection Start. When disabled, the Play Start Marker does not move with the Timeline Selection.

To have the Play Start Marker always snap to the Timeline Selection In Point:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Operation** tab.
3. Select **Play Start Marker Follows Timeline Selection**.
4. Click **OK**.

Dynamic Transport Follows Timeline Selection During Playback

When enabled, the Playhead snaps to the Timeline Selection In Point when you move the Timeline Selection, draw a new Timeline Selection, or adjust the Timeline Selection Start during playback. When disabled, the Playhead is not affected by changes to the Timeline Selection during playback.

Also see "Using Dynamic Transport Mode with Loop Playback" on the next page.

To have the Playhead always snap to the Timeline Selection In Point when changed during playback:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Operation** tab.
3. Select **Dynamic Transport Follows Timeline Selection During Playback**.
4. Click **OK**.

With this option is enabled and you make a new timeline selection during Loop Playback in Dynamic Transport mode, the Playhead jumps to the beginning of the new timeline selection instantly without waiting for playback of the current loop to complete, and it begins to loop within the boundaries of the new selection.

When this option is disabled and you make a new timeline selection during Loop Playback in Dynamic Transport mode, the Playhead is behaves as follows:

- If a new Timeline Selection is made during playback that is later than the current location of the Playhead, the Playhead continues uninterrupted without jumping to the start of new selection.
- If the Playhead enters the new selection, it loops playback between the loop points of the selection.
- If a new Timeline Selection is made before the location of the Playhead during playback, the Playhead continues uninterrupted without jumping back to the start of the new selection. You will need to manually relocate the Playhead to the new timeline selection to loop playback within the selection boundaries.
- If a new Timeline Selection is made during playback that does not contain the Playhead, stopping and restarting the transport playback starts at the location of the Play Start Marker.

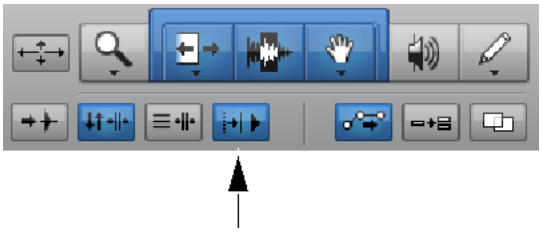
Timeline Insertion Follows Playback

When enabled, the Timeline Insertion follows playback.

Press Control+N (Mac) or Start+N (Windows) to toggle Insertion Follows Playback on and off.

To have the Timeline Insertion follow playback, do one of the following:

- Select `Option > Insertion Follows Playback`.
- In the Edit window Toolbar, select the Insertion Follows Playback button so that it is lit.



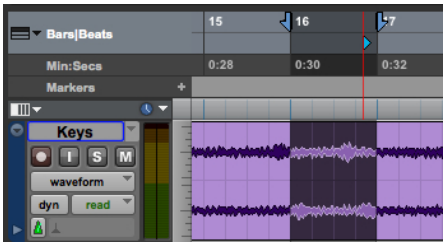
Insertion Follows Playback button enabled

Using Dynamic Transport Mode with Loop Playback

Use Dynamic Transport mode in conjunction with Loop Playback to specify the loop start and end points with the Timeline selection while using the Play Start Marker to specify where playback begins. This is especially useful for auditioning loop transitions. Note that enabling Dynamic Transport mode automatically enables Loop Playback mode.

To audition a loop transition:

1. Enable Dynamic Transport mode.
2. Ensure that Loop Playback mode is enabled.
3. Make a Timeline selection to loop.
4. Reposition the Play Start Marker before the Timeline Selection Out Point.



Dynamic Transport mode, auditioning the loop transition

5. Start playback.

   Playback starts before the loop end point and continues across the loop point through the loop start. You can reposition the Timeline Selection Start and End Markers by dragging them left or right, even during playback.

Using Separate Play and Stop Keys

When enabled, the **Use Separate Play and Stop Keys** option lets you start playback with the Enter key and stop playback with the 0 key on the numeric keypad. This is useful for quickly starting and stopping playback when auditioning loop transitions.

To use separate play and stop keys on the numeric keypad:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Operation** tab.
3. Select **Transport** for **Numeric Keypad**.
4. Select **Use Separate Play and Stop Keys**.

   This option overrides using the Enter key to add Memory Location markers. Press Period (.) and then Enter on the numeric keypad to add a Memory Location marker.

5. Click **OK**.

   The Enter key starts playback. The Zero key stops playback. Pressing Zero twice locates the Play Start Marker to the Timeline Selection start.

Keyboard Shortcuts for Relocating the Play Start Marker

In Dynamic Transport mode, you can use keyboard shortcuts to quickly relocate the Play Start Marker either during playback or when the Transport is stopped.

To move the Play Start Marker to the Timeline Selection Start:

- Press Period (.) on the numeric keypad and then the Left Arrow.

To move the Play Start Marker to the Timeline Selection End:

- Press Period (.) on the numeric keypad and then the Right Arrow.

To move the Play Start Marker to the Edit Selection Start:

- Press Period (.) on the numeric keypad and then the Down Arrow.

To move the Play Start Marker to location of the Playhead:

- Press Period (.) on the numeric keypad and then the Up Arrow.

To nudge the Play Start Marker backward (rewind):

- Press 1 on the numeric keypad.

To nudge the Play Start Marker forward (fast forward):

- Press 2 on the numeric keypad.

To move the Play Start to a specific bar:

With Bars|Beats selected as the Main Timebase ruler, do the following on the numeric keypad:

- Press Asterisk (*).
- Type the bar number.
- Press Enter.

Recording in Dynamic Transport Mode

Recording in Dynamic Transport mode lets you start playback independently of the Timeline selection. Use the Play Start marker as a manual pre-roll before the Timeline selection. Recording punches in and out based on the Timeline selection.

MIDI Beat Clock

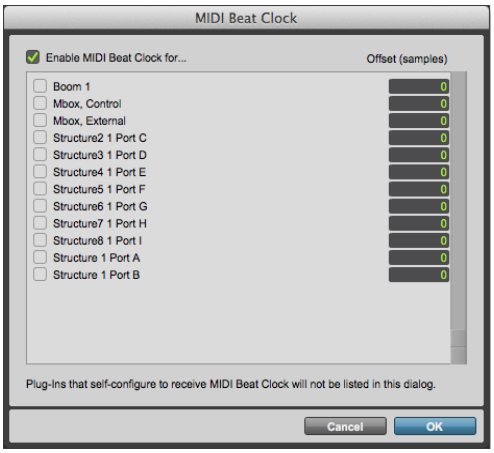
Pro Tools can transmit MIDI Beat Clock to synchronize external MIDI devices that receive MIDI Beat Clock (such as drum machines, hardware sequencers, or arpeggiators) with the Pro Tools session tempo for playback and recording. Some instrument plugins also support MIDI Beat Clock for synchronizing to the Pro Tools tempo.

For information about synchronizing external MIDI devices with Pro Tools for playback and recording using MIDI Timecode, see "Generating Timecode" on page 1852.

Transmitting Beat Clock

To transmit MIDI Beat Clock:

1. Choose **Setup > MIDI > MIDI Beat Clock**.
2. In the MIDI Beat Clock dialog, select the **Enable MIDI Beat Clock** option.



3. Select the devices you want to receive MIDI Beat Clock. If your MIDI interface does not support transmitting MIDI Beat Clock to separate ports, only the interface appears as a destination.
4. Enter the correct negative offset values (such as "–200" samples) for each port that is enabled for transmitting MIDI Beat Clock (see "Measuring Beat Clock Latency" on the next page).
5. Click **OK**.

Sending MIDI Beat Clock Over IAC

(Mac Only) You can synchronize other MIDI applications that use the Apple Inter-Application Communication (IAC) driver to Pro Tools by transmitting MIDI Beat Clock on the IAC bus.

To transmit MIDI Beat Clock on the IAC bus:

1. Choose **Setup > MIDI > MIDI Studio**.
2. In the MIDI Devices window of Audio MIDI Setup, double-click the IAC Driver icon.
3. Configure the IAC Driver ports and confirm that it is online.
4. Choose **Setup > MIDI > MIDI Beat Clock**.
5. In the MIDI Beat Clock dialog, select the **Enable MIDI Beat Clock** option.
6. Select the IAC Driver ports you want to enable for sending MIDI Beat Clock.
7. Click **OK**.

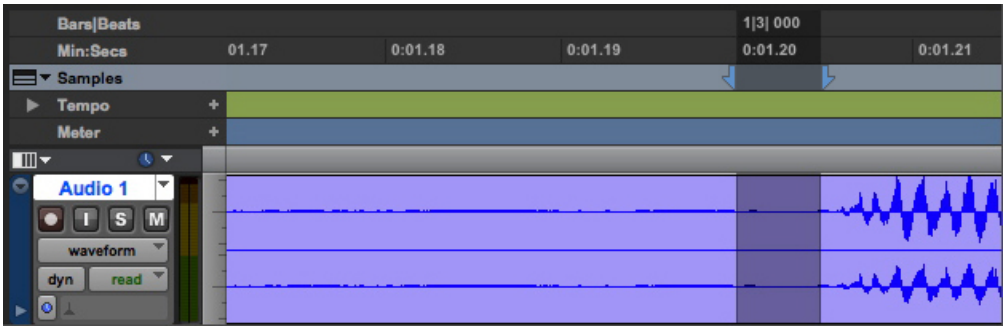
MIDI Beat Clock Offsets

You can set an offset for MIDI Beat Clock on a port-by-port basis with your MIDI interface and external MIDI devices. This lets you adjust the timing for each device where some devices sound late due to different, fixed latencies. Where appropriate, enter negative offset values in samples for each port to correctly synchronize the audio signals from your external MIDI devices with Pro Tools playback.

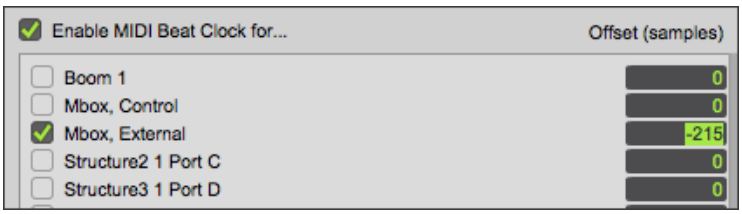
Measuring Beat Clock Latency

To determine the correct MIDI Beat Clock offset for an external MIDI device:

1. Ensure that your computer and external MIDI device are correctly connected and configured for MIDI, and that its audio output is correctly connected to audio inputs on your Pro Tools audio interface.
2. Ensure that your external MIDI device is configured to receive MIDI Beat Clock, and that it is correctly configured to play back a simple rhythmic pattern "on the beat."
3. Create a new Pro Tools session. In the MIDI Beat Clock dialog, ensure that **MIDI Beat Clock** is enabled and that the device is selected.
4. Set the Main Time Scale to Bars|Beats.
5. Create a new audio track and select the audio input channels for your external MIDI device.
6. Record enable the audio track and start recording. MIDI Beat Clock is sent to the external MIDI device, which starts playing back the pattern.
7. Stop recording after a few bars.
8. Enable both Snap to Grid and Show Grid.
9. With the Selector tool, place the edit cursor on the beat grid prior to a prominent transient in the waveform that is "on the beat."
10. Enable Tab to Transients and Shift+Tab to the transient. The duration of this selection is the approximate amount of latency for your external MIDI device.
11. Switch the Main Time Scale to Samples. The length of the selected clip in samples is the MIDI Beat Clock latency for that device.
12. In the MIDI Beat Clock dialog, enter the Sample Offset value as a negative number.



Measuring the offset for MIDI Beat Clock in samples



MIDI Beat Clock Sample Offset

Since MIDI is not sample accurate, you may want to make several measurements at different grid locations and average them to come up with the best value for the MIDI Beat Clock Offset.

Once you have measured the latency for your MIDI Beat Clock-enabled devices, be sure to keep a record of these values in case you need to re-enter the MIDI Beat Clock Sample Offset in other sessions.

Ableton Link

Pro Tools supports Ableton Link, a synchronization technology from Ableton that keeps Link-enabled applications in time over a local network (LAN or WLAN). Link synchronizes musical beat, tempo, phase and start/stop commands across multiple applications running on the same or different devices. Applications on devices connected to a local network discover each other automatically and form a musical session in which each participant can perform independently:

- Anyone can start or stop while still staying in time.
- Anyone can change the tempo and the others follow.
- Anyone can join or leave without disrupting the session.

Link-enabled applications on the same network are referred to as *peers*. Peers can be on the same computer as well as on other computers on the network.

The tempo range supported by Ableton Link is 20 bpm to 999 bpm.

For more information about Ableton Link, visit www.ableton.com.

To enable Ableton Link:

1. Ensure that your Pro Tools system is connected to a local network (LAN or WLAN).
2. Ensure that any other devices running Link-enabled applications (peers) are connected to the same local network.
3. In Pro Tools, show the Ableton Link controls in the Edit window toolbar or the Transport window.
4. Click the **Link** button so that it turns blue.

5. Enable **Start/Stop** if desired.
6. Select the desired **Quantize** value.
7. Start playback.

In Pro Tools, use Elastic Audio on tick-based tracks to conform to tempo changes made over Ableton Link.

In Pro Tools, disable the Conductor to enter Manual Tempo mode otherwise the Pro Tools Tempo track may override tempo changes made in other Link-enabled applications.

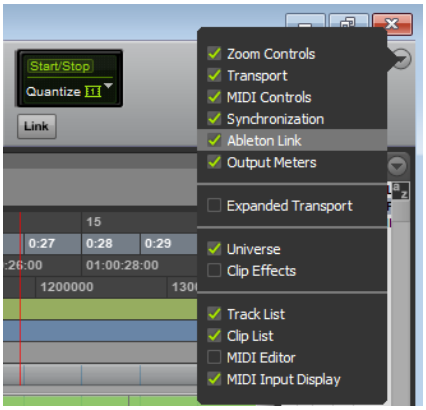
Count Off is unavailable with Ableton Link. If Count Off is enabled, enabling Ableton Link disables Count Off.

Showing and Hiding Ableton Link Controls

Controls for Ableton Link can be shown or hidden in the Edit window toolbar and the Transport window.

To show (or hide) Ableton Link controls in the Edit window toolbar:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Edit Window Toolbar menu (in the upper-right corner of the window).
   - Right-click in the Toolbar.
2. From the menu, select (or deselect) **Ableton Link**.

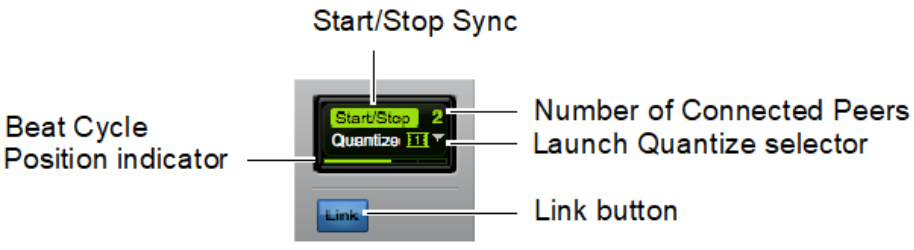


Selecting Ableton Link in the Edit Window Toolbar menu

To show (or hide) Ableton Link controls in the Transport window:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Transport Window menu (in the upper-right corner of the window).
   - Right-click in the Transport window.
2. From the menu, select (or deselect) **Ableton Link**.

Ableton Link Controls and Indicators



Start/Stop Sync

Click **Start/Stop** to toggle Pro Tools transport start/stop synchronization on and off. **Start/Stop** lights green when enabled. When enabled, starting and stopping the Pro Tools transport sends and responds to start and stop messages to and from any other linked applications. Note that not all Link-enabled applications send or respond to start and stop messages. For those that do, you may need to enable Start/Stop sync within the application itself.

Number of Connected Peers Display

The number of connected peers is displayed to the right of **Start/Stop**. Peers are other Link-enabled applications connected over the network or running on the host computer. For example, in addition to your Pro Tools system, if there is a laptop on the network running Ableton Live and an iPad running two Link-enabled applications (such as a synth app and a drum machine app), the number of peers displayed will be 3.

Note that peers can be on the same computer as well as on other computers on the network.

Launch Quantize

Launch **Quantize** determines the bar/beat cycle for synchronizing playback with other peer applications on the network. The selected **Quantize** value determines at what point in the bar/beat cycle Pro Tools playback starts when joining an active multi-peer session. This ensures that Pro Tools synchronizes with other peers on the network in a musically meaningful way.

If Pro Tools is the first peer on the network to start playback, playback starts immediately regardless of the selected **Quantize** value and tick-based tracks follow the session tempo.

If playback has already been started by another peer on the network, Pro Tools starts playback at the beginning of the next bar/beat cycle specified by the selected **Quantize** value, and tick-based tracks follow the network tempo set by any peer on the network. For example, with **Quantize** set to 1 Bar and you start playback after the downbeat played by other peers on the network, Pro Tools waits to start playback until the next downbeat.

The following bar and beat values are available:

- None (Launch Quantize is off and Pro Tools starts playback immediately regardless of beat/bar location, and tick-based tracks follow the network tempo)
- 8 Bars
- 4 Bars
- 2 Bars
- 1 Bar
- 1/2 note
- 1/4 note
- 1/8 note
- 1/16 note
- 1/32 note
- Triplet (select in addition to a beat value to make the selected beat value a triplet)

The selected **Quantize** value is saved with the session.

Beat Cycle Position Indicator

The Beat Cycle Position indicator shows progress through the bar/beat cycle.

Link Button

Click the **Link** button to toggle Ableton Link on and off. The button lights blue when enabled. When Ableton Link is enabled, your Pro Tools session is automatically recognized by all other Link-enabled applications and devices on the same local network.

28 Record Setup

Before you start recording in Pro Tools, you need to set up your Pro Tools system, a session, and one or more tracks for recording. You will also need to configure how Pro Tools monitors the input you intend to record.

While some of the information here is relevant to preparing to record MIDI, there are more specific setup details for MIDI recording in "MIDI Recording" on page 809.

For information on recording audio, see "Audio Recording" on page 787.



For information on digitizing (recording) video in Pro Tools, see "Working with Video in Pro Tools" on page 1924 or the Avid Video Peripherals Guide.

Record Setup Overview

Record setup includes the following:

Hardware Setup for Recording

- "Configuring Pro Tools Hardware I/O for Recording" below
- "Connecting a Sound Source" on page 765

Session Setup for Recording

- Configuring a new or existing session for recording:
  - "Working with Hard Drives for Recording" on page 778
  - "Recording with a Click" on page 765
  - "Setting the Session Meter and Tempo " on page 768
  - Setting a Record Mode. See "Record Modes" on page 771

Track Setup for Recording

- Configuring one or more tracks for recording:
  - "Configuring Default Names for Audio Files and Clips " on page 774
  - "Assigning Hardware I/O on a Track" on page 775
  - "Record Enabling Tracks" on page 776
  - "Recording with Multiple Hard Drives" on page 779

Monitoring Setup for Recording

- "Selecting a Record Input Monitoring Mode" on page 782
- "Setting Monitor Levels for Record and Playback" on page 783
- "Reducing Monitoring Latency" on page 784
- "Recording with Delay Compensation" on page 785

Configuring Pro Tools Hardware I/O for Recording

Before you start recording, make sure your Pro Tools system hardware is connected and configured properly. For details on connecting Pro Tools to your studio and configuring your Hardware in the Hardware Setup dialog, see the User Guide that came with your system. For information on how to route audio signal paths in Pro Tools, see "I/O Setup" on page 55.

Input Connections and Audio Levels

Avid HD audio interfaces operate as line-level devices and offer no pre-amplification. Low-level sources like microphones and electric guitars need to be pre-amplified. You can do this with a quality mixing board or dedicated preamp (such as PRE).

PRE can be remote-controlled from within Pro Tools sessions.

003 Rack+ has eight inputs with preamps, to which you can connect low-level signals.

003 and 003 Rack have four inputs with preamps, to which you can connect low-level signals, and four additional line-level inputs with switchable gain.

Eleven Rack has one Mic input with a preamp and 1 instrument-level Guitar input with a special variable-impedance circuit called True-Z (for more information, see the *Eleven Rack User Guide*.)

Mbox (3rd generation), Mbox 2, Mbox Pro, Mbox 2 Pro, Mbox Mini, and Mbox 2 Mini each have two inputs with preamps, to which you can connect low-level signals.

For all systems, volume and pan controls for tracks in Pro Tools only affect monitoring levels—not the recording input gain. The LED meters on HD audio interfaces (such as HD I/O or HD OMNI) indicate both full-code (highest level before clipping) and true clipping of Pro Tools output signals. The on-screen meters in Pro Tools indicate true clipping on audio input and when recording to disk. With Pro Tools, it is possible to clip at the input and output converters on your audio interface, as well as when recording to a fixed-point file bit depth (16- or 24-bit only, 32-bit floating point bit depth will not clip).

Digital Clipping

Clipping occurs when you feed a signal to a recorder or mixer that is louder or "hotter" than the device allows. On many analog tape decks, a little clipping adds a perceived warmth to the sound due to tape compression. In digital recording, however, clipping causes digital distortion, which is undesirable and should always be avoided.

Set Input Levels

When you feed a signal into any audio recording system, including Pro Tools, make sure to adjust the input level to optimize the dynamic range and signal-to-noise ratio of the recorded file. If the input level is too low, you will not take full advantage of the dynamic range of your Pro Tools system. If the input level is too high, the waveform can clip and distort the recording. Set the input levels high, but not high enough to clip.

As a general rule of thumb, try to set levels so that they peak within –3 dB to –12 dB on the input meter without triggering the clipping indicator on your audio interface. Depending on the type of material you are recording and its dynamic range and peak content, you may want to record with higher or lower levels.

You can display a track's input levels in its Audio Volume indicator. Normally, this indicator is set to be a Peak Volume indicator. You can also use the Headroom indicator to compare the incoming peak level of the signal with how much headroom is available.

To display a track's peak level:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) a track's Volume indicator to step through the different indicator modes (Volume or Channel Delay) until the indicator displays peak (pk) level.

Headroom Indicator

Pro Tools provides a numeric display (in dB) of the available headroom on tracks based on the last registered sample peak level in relation to the reference level of the currently selected Meter Type. The Headroom indicator is just to the right of the Audio Volume indicator below the faders and meters in the Mix window. Click the Headroom indicator to reset the current value.

- *Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to reset all Headroom indicators. Shift-Option-click (Mac) or Shift-Alt-click (Windows) to reset the Headroom indicators for only selected tracks.*

If the Headroom indicator is displayed in blue, it is measuring below the dB value of the lowest scale marking for the currently selected Meter Type.



Audio Volume and Headroom indicators

Calibration Mode

(HDX and HD Native Systems Only) You can use the Calibration mode in Pro Tools to adjust the input and output levels for your audio interface so they match those of your mixing console and other audio devices in your studio.

HD I/O has one set of adjustable trim pots for its inputs. Additionally, the reference level for the input can be set to +4 dBu or –10 dBV. For more information on calibrating HD I/O, see the *HD I/O Guide*.

There are no input or output trims on the following audio interfaces: HD OMNI, HD MADI. Some Pro Tools audio interfaces that do not have output trims (such as the HD OMNI) offer software-controllable input levels, adjustable from **Setup > Hardware** (see the guide for your particular audio interface).

Connecting a Sound Source

Depending on your Pro Tools audio interfaces, you can connect different types of sound sources (such as musical instruments, mics, and mixer outputs). See the User Guide for your Pro Tools system. For additional information, see the documentation that came with your sound source.

If you connect a sound source to a Pro Tools input that was not previously configured to accept input, you may need to reconfigure you hardware in the Hardware Setup dialog (see your User Guide). You may also need to reset your I/O signal paths in I/O Setup (see "I/O Setup" on page 55).

Recording with a Click

If you intend to work with MIDI or Instrument tracks in your session, or if the audio you're working with is bar and beat-oriented, you can record your tracks while listening to a *click*. This ensures that recorded material, both MIDI and audio, aligns with the session's bar and beat boundaries.

When your track material lines up with the beats, you can take advantage of some very useful editing functions in Pro Tools, such as quantizing MIDI and audio events or clips, quantizing individual MIDI notes, and copying and pasting measures and song sections in Grid mode.

Material that is recorded without listening to a click can still be aligned to bar and beat boundaries in Pro Tools with Beat Detective (see "Beat Detective" on page 998), or by using the Identify Beat command to determine the tempo (see "Identify Beat Command " on page 1174).

Creating a Click Track

Pro Tools lets you create a Click track using the Click II plugin. You can also create a click track using a MIDI instrument.

For more information on the Click II plugin, see the Audio Plugins Guide.

To create a click track using the Click II plugin:

- Choose **Track > Create Click Track.**

Pro Tools creates a new Auxiliary Input track named "Click" with the Click II plugin already inserted. In the Edit window, the click track's Track Height is set to Mini. You can create more than one click track and each subsequent click track is named in sequence. For example, Click 1, Click 2, and Click 3.

To hear the click during playback and recording, configure the Click Options (see "Click Options" on the next page) and ensure that Click is enabled (see "Enabling the Click" below).

To create a click track using MIDI:

1. Create a new (mono) Auxiliary Input or Instrument track.
2. Do one of the following:
   - From the track's Input selector, select the path to which the MIDI device is connected.
   - Insert an instrument plugin on the track (such as Pro Tools PlayCell).
3. Configure the Click/Countoff options, and be sure to select the port for the MIDI device or instrument plugin from the **Output** pop-up menu (see "Click Options" on the next page).
4. Enable **Click** (see "Enabling the Click" below).

Enabling the Click

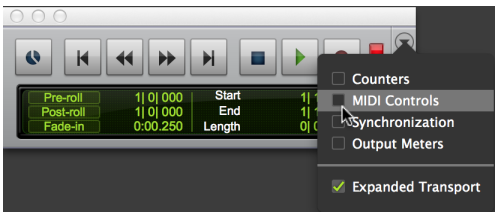
Click tracks must be enabled to be heard during playback or recording.

To enable the click from the MIDI menu:

- Select **Options > Click.**

To enable the click in the Transport:

1. Display the MIDI controls in the Transport by doing one of the following:
   - Select **View > Transport > MIDI Controls.**
   - From the Transport window menu, select **MIDI Controls.**



- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Expand/Collapse "+" button in the Transport window to display the MIDI controls.
- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Expand/Collapse "+" button in the Transport window to display the MIDI controls and the Counters.



2. In the Transport, click the Metronome button so it is highlighted.



3. To hear the click *count off* when recording or playing, click the Count Off button in the Transport so it is highlighted.



Hearing the countoff before recording helps musicians to start playing at the right time and in tempo. The Count Off button in the Transport window displays the number of bars counted before the transport starts.

The countoff is ignored when Pro Tools is online and synchronized to Timecode.

Count Off is unavailable with Ableton Link. If Count Off is enabled, enabling Ableton Link disables Count Off.

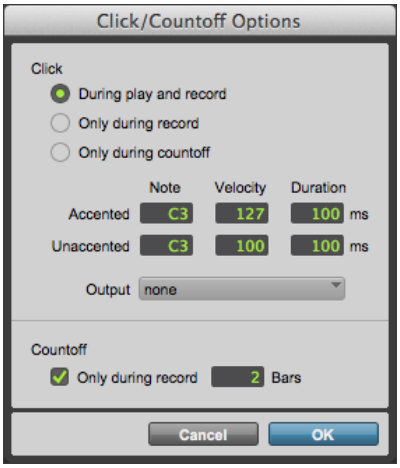
Click Options

Pro Tools provides options and controls for driving a click. The following steps are for configuring and enabling a click using the Click II plugin or MIDI.

To configure click options:

1. Open the Click/Countoff Options dialog by doing one of the following:
   - Choose **`Setup > Click/Countoff`**.
   - Double-click the Metronome button in the Transport window.
2. In the Click/Countoff Options dialog, do one of the following:

- If using the Click II plugin, select **None** in the **Output** pop-up menu.
- If playing a click using MIDI, select the port number (device) and channel for the click from the **Output** pop-up menu.



3. Specify the note, velocity, and duration for the accented and unaccented notes.

   If one is connected, you can also play new note values on a MIDI controller keyboard.

   When listening to the click in your Pro Tools sessions, the accented note sounds on the first beat of each measure and the unaccented note sounds on the remaining beats.
4. Select whether the click is heard **During Play and Record**, or **Only During Record**, or **Only During Countoff**.
5. If using a countoff, specify the number of Bars to be counted off. To hear the countoff only when recording, select that option.
6. Click **OK**.

Setting the Session Meter and Tempo

Setting the Session Meter

When opening a new session in Pro Tools, the meter defaults to 4/4. If you intend to record with a click in a meter other than 4/4, make sure to set the meter accordingly.

If a session's meter does not match the music you're recording, the accented clicks will not line up with what you're playing, and, as a result, the recorded material may not align with the bars and beats in the Edit window.

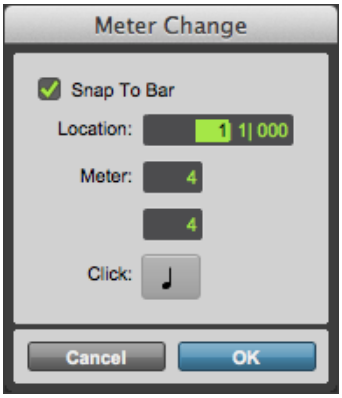
Meter events, which can occur anywhere within a Pro Tools session, appear in the Meter ruler. For more information on inserting and editing meter events, see "Meter Events" on page 1177.

To set the meter for a session:

1. Double-click the Current Meter button in the Transport window.



2. Enter the **Meter** for the session and set the **Location** to 1|1|000 (to ensure that the inserted meter event replaces the default).



3. From the **Click** pop-up menu, select a note value for the beat. (For example, if you are in 6/8, select a dotted-quarter note).
4. Click **OK** to insert the new meter event.

Setting the Session Tempo

When opening a new session in Pro Tools, the tempo defaults to 120 BPM. If you intend to record with a click at a tempo other than 120 BPM, make sure to set the tempo accordingly.

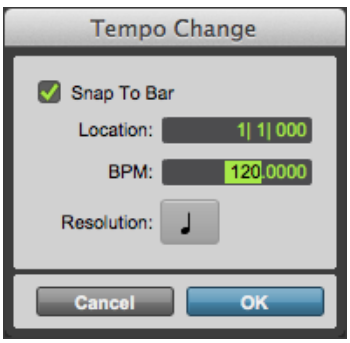
Tempo events, which can occur anywhere within a Pro Tools session, appear in the Tempo ruler. For more information on inserting and editing tempo events, see "Tempo" on page 1152.

To change the session tempo:

1. Double-click the Song Start Marker in the Edit window (see "Song Start Marker" on page 1151).
2. Enter the **BPM** value for the session.

   You can type in a specific tempo, or you can use the T key to tap in the tempo.

3. Set the **Location** to 1|1|000 (to ensure that the inserted tempo event replaces the default).



4. From the **Resolution** pop-up menu, select the note value for the beat. (For example, if you are in 6/8, select a dotted-quarter note.)
5. Click **OK**.

Using Manual Tempo Mode

In *Manual Tempo* mode, Pro Tools ignores tempo events in the Tempo ruler and instead plays back a Manual Tempo. This tempo can be set with the Tempo slider, or if you are not sure of the actual tempo, by tapping in the tempo.

While you can adjust the Manual Tempo during playback, doing so momentarily interrupts playback.

To set the Manual Tempo with the Tempo slider:

1. To view the MIDI controls in the Transport window, select **View > Transport > MIDI Controls**.
2. In the Transport window, click the Tempo Ruler Enable button (Conductor) button so it becomes unhighlighted. Pro Tools switches to Manual Tempo mode. In this mode, any tempo events in the Tempo ruler are ignored.



3. To base the BPM value on something other than the default quarter-note, click the Tempo Resolution selector and select a different note value. (For example, if you are in 6/8, select a dotted-quarter note.)
4. To enter a new tempo, do one of the following:
   - Drag the Tempo value up or down. For finer resolution, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while dragging.
   - Click the Tempo value, type a new number, and press Enter.

To exit Manual Tempo mode and enable the Tempo ruler:

- Click the Tempo Ruler Enable (Conductor) button in the Transport window so it becomes highlighted.

To set the Manual Tempo by tapping:

1. Ensure that the MIDI controls are shown in the Transport window (select **View > Transport > MIDI Controls**).
2. In the Transport window, click the Tempo Ruler Enable (Conductor) button so it becomes unhighlighted. Pro Tools switches to Manual Tempo mode. In this mode, any tempo events in the Tempo ruler are ignored.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click in the Tempo field so it becomes highlighted and tap the "T" key on your computer keyboard repeatedly at the new tempo.
   - If the **Use MIDI to Tap Tempo** option is enabled in the MIDI Preferences, click in the Tempo field so it becomes highlighted and tap in the tempo by playing a note repeatedly at the new tempo on your MIDI keyboard controller.

   To compute the new tempo, Pro Tools averages the last eight (or fewer) taps to determine the correct tempo. The computed BPM value appears in the Transport window's Tempo field.

To lock in the new tempo:

- Take Pro Tools out of Manual Tempo mode by clicking the Tempo Ruler Enable (Conductor) button, then set the default tempo for the Song Start Marker to the new tempo.

Record Modes

For recording audio, Pro Tools provides the following Record modes:

- Normal (Nondestructive)
- Destructive
- Loop
- QuickPunch
- TrackPunch (Pro Tools Ultimate only)
- DestructivePunch (Pro Tools Ultimate only)

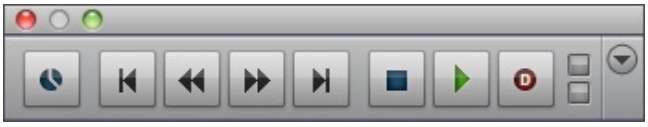
To select the Record mode, do one of the following:

- Select the Record mode in the Options menu. If no Record mode is selected, Pro Tools is in Normal (Nondestructive) Record mode.
- Right-click the Record button in the Transport and select the Record mode from the pop-up menu.

You can also cycle through the Pro Tools record modes with the Transport stopped, by Control-clicking (Mac) or Start-clicking (Windows) the Record button.

The Record button changes to indicate the selected Record mode as follows:

- Blank for Normal (Nondestructive)
- “D” for Destructive
- Loop symbol for Loop Record
- “P” for QuickPunch
- “T” for TrackPunch (Pro Tools Ultimate only)
- “DP” for DestructivePunch (Pro Tools Ultimate only)



Destructive Record mode enabled

When recording, you can preserve disk space by removing unwanted record takes (see "Clearing Unwanted Clips" on page 447) and compacting audio files (see "Compacting an Audio File" on page 940).

Normal (Nondestructive) Record Mode

In Normal, Nondestructive Record mode, Pro Tools records audio nondestructively, which means that if you record over a track’s existing clips, the audio is not erased from your hard drive. Both the new and old audio files remain on your hard drive, available as clips from the Clip List.

In Normal Record mode, the record range can be defined by selecting a range in a ruler or in a track’s playlist, or by specifying start and end points in the Transport window. If there is no selection, recording begins from the current Cursor location and continues until the Transport Stop button is clicked.

To set a record range by selecting within a track's playlist, the Timeline and Edit selections must be linked. See "Linking or Unlinking Timeline and Edit Selections" on page 903.

The pre- and post-roll settings allow material to be heard up to and after the start and end points, which is useful when punch recording (see "Audio Punch Recording Over a Specified Range" on page 796).

Destructive Record Mode

In Destructive Record mode, recording over existing clips replaces the original audio permanently, which allows you to keep disk use to a minimum. However, if you have sufficient drive space, it is usually best to use Pro Tools in Nondestructive Record mode, to avoid losing any previously recorded material.

When defining the record range and setting pre- and post-roll, Destructive Record mode works the same as Normal (Nondestructive) mode.

Unlike the other record modes, it is not possible to cancel or undo record takes when using Destructive Record mode (see "Canceling a Record Take" on page 789).

In Destructive Record mode, the waveform overview is not redrawn until you stop recording.

Destructive recording is not supported with AudioSuite rendered clips with handles. You can consolidate such clips if you need to use Destructive Record mode.

Loop Record Mode

Loop Record mode lets you record take after take (nondestructively) while the same section of audio repeats. This is a convenient technique for quickly recording multiple takes of a part without losing spontaneity.

The time range that is looped and recorded—which must be at least one second in length—is defined by selecting a range in a ruler or in a track's playlist, or by specifying start and end points in the Transport window. The pre-roll setting, if enabled, is used during the first record pass, but on each successive loop the pre- and post-roll times are ignored.

To set a record range by selecting within a track's playlist, enable the Link Timeline and Edit Selection option. See "Linking or Unlinking Timeline and Edit Selections" on page 903.

When using Loop Record mode, each successive take appears as a clip in the Clip List and each is numbered sequentially. The various takes, which are identical in length and start time, are easily auditioned and placed in the track at the correct location with the Matches pop-up menu (see "Selecting Alternate Takes" on page 801).

In Loop Record mode, the waveform overview is not redrawn until you stop recording.

QuickPunch

QuickPunch gives you the ability to manually and instantaneously *punch in* (initiate recording) and *punch out* (stop recording) on record-enabled audio tracks during playback by clicking the Record button in the Transport. Recording with QuickPunch is nondestructive.

When using QuickPunch, Pro Tools begins recording a new file when playback begins, automatically generating clips in that file at each punch in/out point. These clips appear in the track's playlist; and the complete audio file appears in the Clip List along with the QuickPunch created clips. Up to 200 of these "running punches" can be performed in a single pass.

Though you can punch record in the other record modes by manually specifying the record range, only QuickPunch provides instantaneous monitor switching on punch-out.

For more information on QuickPunch, see "QuickPunch Audio Recording" on page 838.

TrackPunch

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only)

TrackPunch lets individual tracks be punched in, punched out, and taken out of record enable without interrupting online recording and playback.

TrackPunch is a nondestructive recording mode. When a track is TrackPunch-enabled, Pro Tools begins recording a new file when playback begins. During playback, you may record arm or disarm, or punch in or out a combination of any or all TrackPunch enabled tracks.

TrackPunch automatically creates clips in that file at each punch-in and punch-out point. These clips appear in the track's playlist, and the complete audio file appears in the Clip List along with the TrackPunch created clips. Up to 200 of these "running punches" can be performed in a single pass.

For more information on TrackPunch, see "TrackPunch Audio Recording" on page 839.

DestructivePunch

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only)

Destructive Punch is a destructive recording mode that lets you instantaneously *punch in* (start recording) and *punch out* (stop recording) on individual audio tracks during playback, while preserving a contiguous audio file on each punched track.

For more information on DestructivePunch, see "DestructivePunch Audio Recording" on page 843.

Record Modes and MIDI

In addition to the various record modes, there is also a MIDI Merge button in the Transport window that determines how MIDI is recorded. When enabled (*Merge* mode), recording over existing MIDI clips results in the new data being merged with the old. When the MIDI Merge button is disabled (*Replace* mode), the new material replaces the old.



MIDI Merge button, enabled

MIDI recording works the same whether using Nondestructive or Destructive Record mode. In addition, neither QuickPunch nor TrackPunch need to be enabled to punch on-the-fly with MIDI—this capability is available in Nondestructive and Destructive Record modes.

Unlike audio loop recording, the state of the MIDI Merge toggle determines whether existing material is replaced or merged.

Unless MIDI Merge is enabled, MIDI recording is destructive (though you can undo a MIDI record pass), either overwriting or adding to clip material. One exception to this rule is when Loop Record mode is

enabled; in this mode, existing track clips are replaced with new clips when new material is recorded. The old clips remain intact and available from the Clip List, and from the **Matches** pop-up menu. In Loop Record mode, MIDI Merge has no effect, so its button is dimmed.

Configuring Default Names for Audio Files and Clips

Track names define new file and clip names when recording to a track (see "Renaming Tracks" on page 334).

When recording to an audio track, the resulting file and clip names are based on the name of the track. For example, after recording for the first time on a track called “Electric Gtr,” an audio file is created with the name “Electric Gtr_01.” In addition, a clip appears in the Clip List with the name “Electric Gtr_01.” This clip is a whole-file clip.

Subsequent record takes on the same track are named identically, but the digits (indicating the take number) are incremented (for example, “Electric Gtr_02.”) A second set of digits (such as used in “Electric Gtr_01-01”) indicates that the clip was *auto-created* from an edit.

QuickPunch, TrackPunch, and Destructive Punch modes use a different method for numbering clips. For details, see "TrackPunch Audio Recording" on page 839.

When recording MIDI tracks, a similar naming scheme is used, though with only one set of digits. For example, after recording to a track called “Synth 1,” a clip is created called “Synth 1-01.” Subsequent clips for that track, generating either from additional record takes or clip edits, are numbered sequentially (for example, “Synth 1-02”).

To rename a track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the Mix or Edit window, double-click the Track Name button for the track you want to rename.
   - In the Track List in the Mix, Edit, MIDI Editor, or Score Editor window, Right-click the track name for the track you want to rename.
2. In the Track Name/Comments dialog, type a new track name.
3. Click **OK**.

Names for Stereo Audio Tracks

When recording to stereo audio tracks, audio file and clip names for the left and right channels are appended with a “.L” and “.R” suffix.

Names for Multichannel Tracks

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) When recording to multichannel surround tracks, audio file and clip names for each channel are appended with the following suffixes:

Multichannel Format	File and Clip Suffixes
LCR	L, C, R
Quad	L, R, Ls, Rs
LCRS	L, C, R, S
5.0	L, C, R, Ls, Rs
5.1	L, C, R, Ls, Rs, LFE

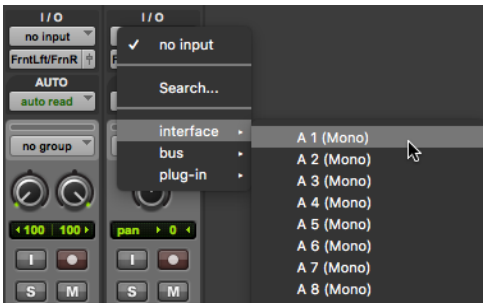
Multichannel Format	File and Clip Suffixes
6.0	L, C, R, Ls, Cs, Rs, LFE
6.1	L, C, R, Ls, Cs, Rs
7.0	L, C, R, Lss, Rss, Lsr, Rsr
7.1	L, C, R, Lss, Rss, Lsr, Rsr, LFE
7.0 SDDS	L, Lc, C, R, Rc, Ls, Rs
7.1 SDDS	L, Lc, C, R, Rc, Ls, Rs, LFE

Assigning Hardware I/O on a Track

Before recording to a track, you must specify the input and output signal path for the material you are recording. You will do this by assigning a hardware input (recording source) and an output bus (for monitoring recording) on the track.

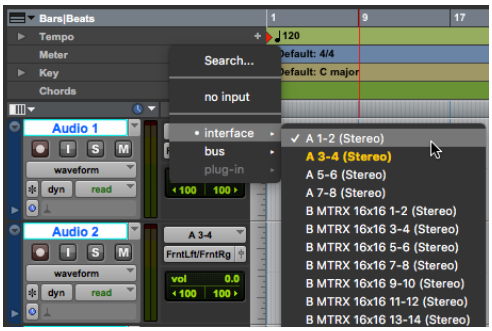
To assign I/O on a track:

1. Assign a hardware input (recording source) by doing one of the following:
   - In the Mix window, select the corresponding hardware input for your source from the track's Input Path selector.



Input Path selector (mono audio track, Mix window

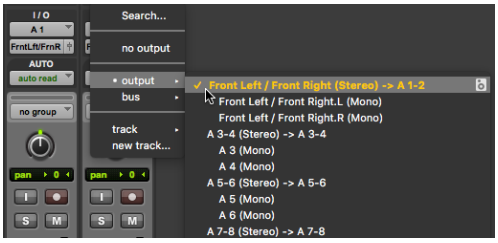
   - In the Edit window, with I/O view enabled, select the corresponding hardware input for your source from the track's Input Path selector.



Input Path selector (stereo audio track), Edit window

2. Assign an output bus (for monitoring recording) by doing one of the following:

- In the Mix window, select the corresponding output bus for monitoring (such as “Monitor” or “A 1–2”) from the track’s Output Path selector.



Output Path selector (stereo audio track), Mix window

- In the Edit window, with I/O view enabled, select the corresponding output bus for monitoring (such as “Monitor” or “A 1–2”) from the track’s Output Path selector.



Output Path selector (stereo audio track), Edit window

Record Enabling Tracks

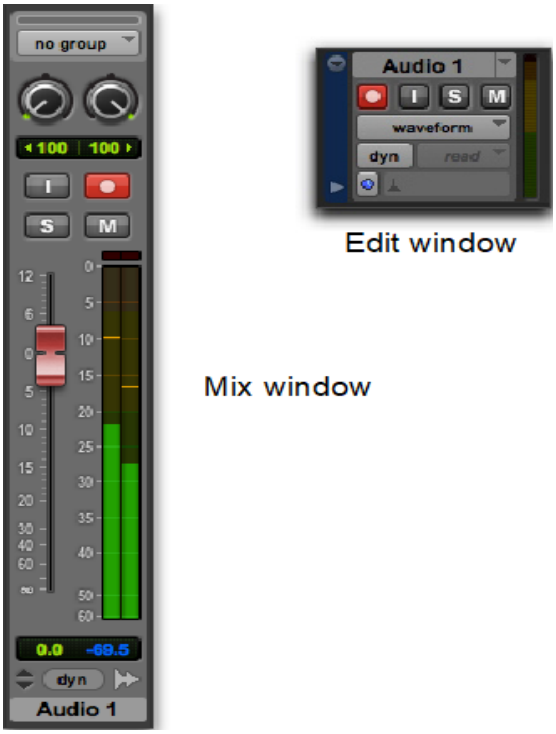
To record audio or MIDI to a track you must first enable the track’s Record Enable button. To record simultaneously to multiple tracks, record enable multiple audio, Instrument, or MIDI tracks.

When one or more tracks are record-enabled, click the Record button in the Transport to arm recording, and then click the Play button in the Transport to start recording.

MIDI and Instrument tracks can be record-enabled during playback or record. To record enable audio tracks, the Transport must be stopped, or QuickPunch, TrackPunch, or DestructivePunch must be enabled. For more information on QuickPunch, TrackPunch, and DestructivePunch, see "Record Modes" on page 771.

To record enable an audio, MIDI, or Instrument track:

- From either the Mix or Edit window, click the track’s Record Enable button to toggle record enable on or off for the track. The track’s Record Enable button flashes red, the track’s fader is solid red, and the Track Record Enabled indicator in the Transport turns red (indicating at least one track is record-enabled).



Record-enabled audio track in Mix and Edit windows

Press Shift+R to record enable any track containing the Edit cursor on an Edit selection.

To record enable multiple audio tracks:

- From either the Mix or Edit window, click each audio track's Record Enable button to toggle record enable on or off for each track.

  If Latch Record mode is not enabled, Shift-click each track's Record Enable button to toggle record enable on or off for each track. See "Latch Record Enable Buttons Preference" on the next page.

To record enable multiple MIDI and Instrument tracks:

- From either the Mix or Edit window, Shift-click each MIDI or Instrument track's Record Enable button to toggle record enable on or off for each track.

To record enable MIDI and Instrument tracks using the Up/Down Arrows:

- While pressing Command (Mac) or Control (Windows), press the Up/Down Arrows to record enable the previous or next MIDI or Instrument track. The previous (or next) record track is no longer record-enabled.

  To keep the previous track record-enabled while enabling new tracks, press Command+Shift+Up/Down (Mac) or Control+Shift+Up/Down (Windows).

To record enable (or disable) all audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any Record Enable button to toggle record enable on or off for all audio, Instrument, and MIDI tracks.

To record enable (or disable) all selected audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks:

- Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the Record Enable button on any selected audio, MIDI, or Instrument track to toggle record enable on or off for all selected tracks.

> *Record enabling a track that is part of a Mix Group does not record enable the other tracks in the Group. To record enable all tracks in a group, click directly to the left of the group's name in the Groups List to select all tracks in the group, and then Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the Record Enable button of one of the tracks to record enable the selected tracks.*

Latch Record Enable Buttons Preference

When the **Latch Record Enable Buttons** option is selected in the Operation Preferences, you can record enable additional audio tracks by clicking their Record Enable buttons. Previously record-enabled tracks remain enabled. The **Latch Record Enable Buttons** option affects audio tracks only.

When the **Latch Record Enable Buttons** option is deselected, record enabling a subsequent audio track disables the previously record-enabled audio track.

To enable the Latch Record Enable Buttons preference:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. Select **Latch Record Enable Buttons**.

Record Safe Mode

Pro Tools provides a *Record Safe* mode on a per track basis that prevents tracks from being record-enabled by accident. Use Record Safe mode to protect important audio or MIDI data on a track from being recorded over.

To put an audio, MIDI, or Instrument track in Record Safe mode:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the track's Record Enable button. The Record Enable button is grayed out.

Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) again to take the track out of Record Safe mode.

To put all audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks in Record Safe mode:

- Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) the Record Enable button on any track.

Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) again to take all tracks out of Record Safe mode.

To put all currently selected tracks into Record Safe mode:

- Command-Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the Record Enable button on any of the selected tracks to toggle them in and out of Record Safe mode.

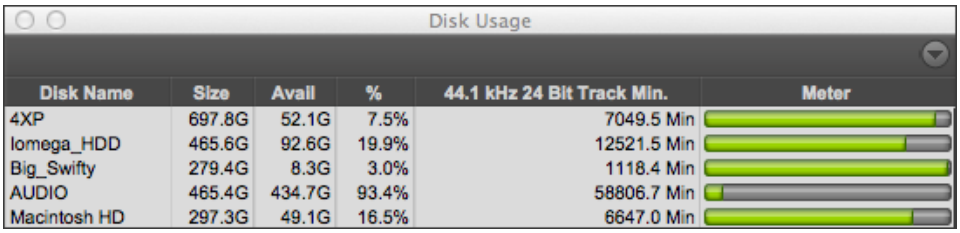
Working with Hard Drives for Recording

Monitoring Drive Space

Pro Tools lets you check how much drive space is available. The Disk Usage window shows the available drive space for each drive connected to your system as text and as a gauge display.

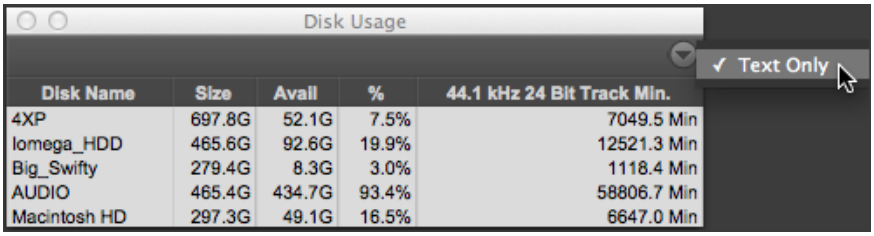
To monitor available space on your drive during a Pro Tools session:

- Choose **Window > Disk Space**.



To display available drive space in Text Only view only:

- From the Disk Usage menu, select **Text Only**.



Recording with Multiple Hard Drives

By default, Pro Tools records audio files to the Audio Files folder inside the session folder. If you have multiple hard drives for recording, you can use the Disk Allocation window to specify other hard drive locations to record audio files on a track-by-track basis.

Hard drives that are full do not appear in the Disk Allocation window.

To increase system performance, Pro Tools can record and play each track from a different hard drive. You can also automatically distribute any newly created tracks to multiple audio drives with Round Robin Allocation.

Navigating in the Disk Allocation Window

To resize the Disk Allocation window:

- Drag the lower-right corner of the window.

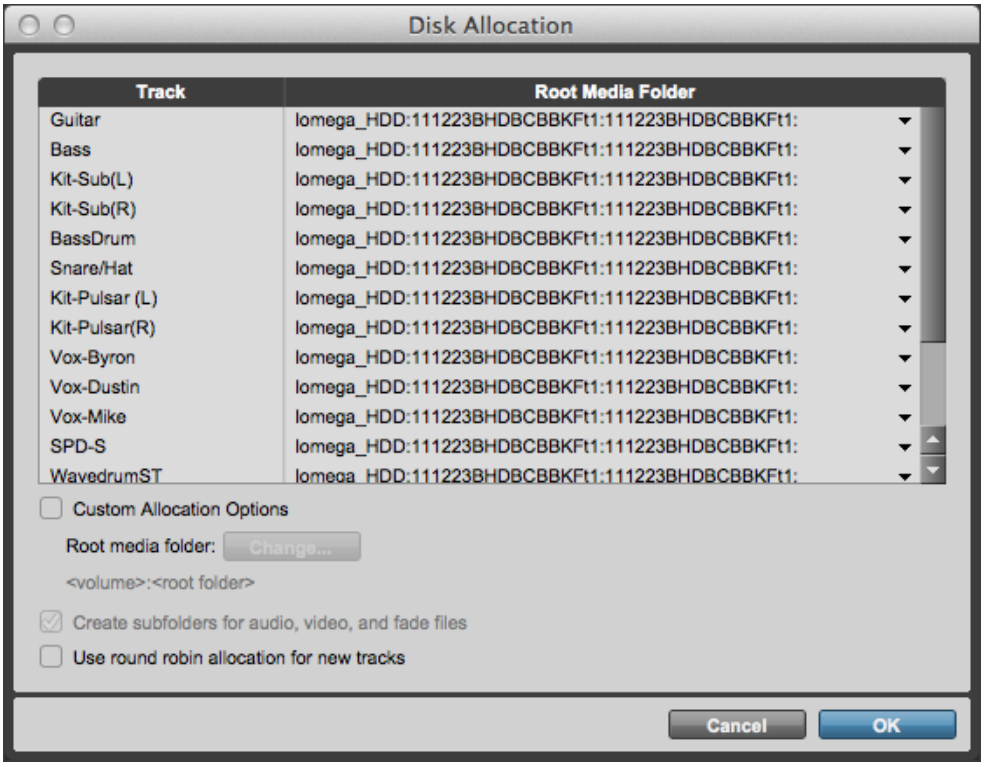
To scroll up or down in the Disk Allocation window:

- Press Page Up or Page Down.

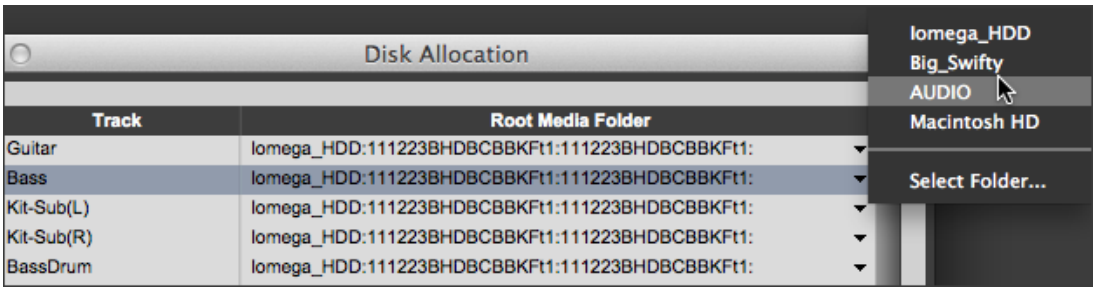
Allocating Audio Drives in Your System

To allocate the audio drives in your system:

1. Choose **Setup > Disk Allocation**.
2. In the Disk Allocation window, assign a hard drive for each track by clicking in the Root Media Folder column and selecting a volume from the Disk Allocation pop-up menu.



3. Only drives designated as R (Play and Record) can be selected in the Disk Allocation window. For more information, see "Performance and Transfer Volumes" on page 497.



A folder with the session name is created on each hard drive, containing subfolders for audio and fade files.

   - To assign a track to a different hard drive, click the track and select a drive name.
   - To assign all tracks to the same hard drive, press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while selecting a drive name.
   - To make a continuous selection, Shift-click a track name (in the Track column) to extend the selection to include already-selected tracks and all tracks in between.
   - To make a noncontiguous selection, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) a track name in the Track column to extend the selection to include already-selected tracks without including tracks in-between.

4. To save recorded audio files to an existing folder (without creating another session folder), select **`Customize Allocation Options`**, then click **`Change`** and choose the folder. To create subfolders in this folder, select the **`Create Subfolders for Audio, Video, and Fade Files`** option.
5. To automatically distribute any newly created tracks among the drives connected to your system, select the **`Use Round Robin Allocation for New Tracks`** option.

   If you are using Round Robin Allocation and want audio to be recorded to your system's start-up drive, do the following:

- Open the Workspace browser (**Window > Workspace**) and set the Volume Designator for your system volume to R (Record and Playback). See "Workspace Volume Designation" below.

Round Robin Allocation is not supported with partitioned hard drives.

If you want to exclude individual, valid, mounted volumes from Round Robin Allocation passes, open the Workspace browser and make the volume safe by designating it as P (Playback only) or T (Transfer). For more information, see "Volume Permissions" on page 500.

6. When you are finished, click **OK**.

Saving Disk Allocation Settings

To save Disk Allocation settings for use with future sessions, save the session as a template. For details, see "Session Templates" on page 246.

Disk Allocation and Cross-Platform Sessions

To ensure cross-platform operation, it is required that Mac Pro Tools sessions and their associated audio files be on Mac-formatted (HFS or HFS+) drives. Windows Pro Tools sessions and their associated audio files must be on Windows-formatted NTFS drives.

See "Sharing Sessions Created on Different Computer Platforms" on page 723.

Workspace Volume Designation

The Workspace volume designation can alter disk availability, thus affecting Disk Allocation. From the Workspace browser, you can designate volumes as Record, Playback, or Transfer. If you change a drive's designation, making it read-only (Play Only or Transfer), check the Disk Allocation window for any tracks formerly allocated to that drive. For more information, see "Volume Permissions" on page 500.

Recording to the System Volume

Although Pro Tools lets you record to your system volume, this is generally not recommended. Performance for audio recording and playback on system drives is not as good as on non-system hard drives.

Record to system drives only when absolutely necessary, such as if your computer system has only one hard drive, or if your other hard drives are completely full.

By default, the system volume is not included in Round Robin Allocation (regardless of volume designation in the Workspace browser). To include the System Volume in Round Robin Allocations, see "Allocating Audio Drives in Your System" on page 779.

If you have a Pro Tools system with multiple drives, and you intend to record multiple tracks simultaneously, you may want to designate the System drive as a Playback only or Transfer only drive for optimal performance.

Disk Allocation and Unavailable Volumes

Pro Tools remembers disk allocation settings for tracks and does not automatically reassign them if a volume becomes unavailable.

If a volume for a session becomes unavailable (because it went offline or its volume designation changed), Pro Tools cannot record to tracks allocated to that volume.

To enable recording, bring the volume online, change its volume designation to R (Play and Record), or change the allocation of the affected tracks to a valid record volume.

Selecting a Record Input Monitoring Mode

Pro Tools offers two modes of input monitoring: *Auto Input* and *Input Only*. These monitoring modes determine how input signals are monitored during playback, recording, or while the transport is stopped.

Auto Input Monitoring

In Auto Input mode, when session playback is stopped, Pro Tools monitors audio input. When playback is started for a punch-in, Pro Tools monitors existing track material up until the punch point. While punched in, the input signal is monitored. On punch-out, monitoring switches back to the existing track material. This is similar to the auto-switching logic found on digital and analog multitrack tape machines.

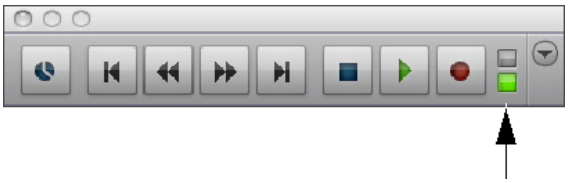
When in Auto Input mode, the switch back to monitoring track material on punch-out is not instantaneous.

Tracks are in Auto Input mode by default, and a monitoring control (TrackInput button) is provided for each track. See "Selecting Record Monitor Modes with TrackInput Monitoring" below.

Input Only Monitoring

In Input Only mode, when a track is record-enabled, Pro Tools monitors audio input only, regardless of any punch-in/out selection or state.

For Pro Tools, the Input Monitor Enabled Status indicator (in the Transport window) lights green when Input Only mode is enabled.



The indicator lights green when one or more tracks have TrackInput enabled (see "Selecting Record Monitor Modes with TrackInput Monitoring" below).

Selecting a Record Monitor Mode

For record-enabled tracks to use Auto Input Monitoring:

- Select **`Track > Set Record Tracks to Input Only`**.

For record-enabled tracks to use Input Only Monitoring:

- Select **`Track > Set Record Tracks to Auto Input`**.

To toggle between Auto Input and Input Only monitoring, press Option+K (Mac) or Alt+K (Windows).

Selecting Record Monitor Modes with TrackInput Monitoring

TrackInput monitoring lets you toggle *individual* audio tracks between Auto Input and Input Only monitoring modes at any time, during playback, recording, while stopped, and even when a track is not record-enabled. TrackInput monitoring provides the necessary monitoring flexibility for overdubbing and mixing, and is similar to input switching on analog multitrack recorders and similar machines.

When the TrackInput button in a track is enabled (green), the track monitors audio in Input Only mode.



When the TrackInput button in a track is disabled, the track monitors in Auto Input mode.



To toggle the monitoring mode of audio tracks, do one of the following:

- To toggle individual tracks, click the TrackInput Monitor button for each track you want to toggle.
- To toggle all tracks in the session, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) a TrackInput Monitor button.
- To toggle all selected tracks in the session, Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) a selected track's TrackInput Monitor button.

Press Shift+I to enable the TrackInput Monitor button for any track containing the Edit cursor on an Edit selection.

To toggle the TrackInput button states of all record-enabled tracks, do one of the following:

- To change all record-enabled tracks to Auto Input monitoring, select **`Track > Set Record Tracks to Auto Input`**.
- To change all record-enabled tracks to Input Only monitoring, select **`Track > Set Record Tracks to Input Only`**.

To toggle record-enabled tracks between Auto Input and Input Only monitoring, press Option+K (Mac) or Alt+K (Windows).

Disable "Input" When Disarming Track

When the **`Disable "Input" When Disarming Track (in "Stop")`** option is enabled in the Operation Preferences, TrackInput monitoring is disabled whenever a track is taken out of record enable. This is useful for certain workflows, such as when you are recording on a series of tracks, one at a time.

Disabling this option allows TrackInput buttons to remain enabled when deselecting the track Record Enable button.

Setting Monitor Levels for Record and Playback

Pro Tools remembers two different fader levels for monitoring each audio track: one for when the track is record-enabled, and one for when it is *not* record-enabled.

Pro Tools keeps track of these two states for fader levels automatically. If you adjust a fader when a track is record-enabled and then turn off record enable for the track, the fader returns to its playback level.

When audio tracks are record-enabled, their volume faders in the Mix window turn red, indicating that the record monitor level is active.

Link Record and Play Faders

When the **Link Record and Play Faders** option is selected in the Operation Preferences, Pro Tools does not keep track of record and play levels for audio tracks. In this case, record enabling an audio track has no effect on the fader level for the track. This lets you maintain a consistent mix regardless of whether you are recording or just listening.

Reducing Monitoring Latency

There will inevitably be some audio delay, or *latency*, in the monitoring signal (even if only a few samples) due to the process of converting an analog signal to a digital signal (input) and back again (output). There may be additional latency due to mixer configurations and processing.

HDX systems have additional latency when using Native plugins because these plugins also use your computer's host processor.

Host-based Pro Tools systems use the host processor in your computer for all audio processing, playback, and recording, so there is always a small amount of latency in the system. For example, there may be some audible delay between the incoming signal and outgoing signal when monitoring recording through Pro Tools.

With Pro Tools, latency occurs as follows:

- All Pro Tools systems can have Virtual Instrument plugin MIDI-to-audio latency (such as when playing a virtual instrument live and monitoring the instrument's output).
- Pro Tools systems have input-to-output monitoring latency on any record-armed tracks or Auxiliary Inputs with live inputs.
- HDX systems have monitoring latency on tracks that have one or more host-based plugins.

The latency amount is related to the **H/W Buffer Size** setting—the larger the buffer size, the greater the latency. You can reduce the amount of monitoring latency by reducing the **H/W Buffer Size** setting. However, even at the smallest buffer size, there is still some latency.

In addition, reducing the buffer size limits the number of simultaneous audio tracks you can record without encountering performance errors.

While there may be times when you want a larger buffer size, such as when you have higher track counts with more plugins, you will generally want the smallest possible buffer size when latency is present during recording and monitoring.

If you are monitoring the recording source with an external mixer before it is routed to Pro Tools, you will not hear any latency.

To set the Hardware Buffer Size:

1. Choose **Setup > Playback Engine**.
2. Choose the number of samples from the **H/W Buffer Size** pop-up menu.
3. Click **OK**.

For more information on the H/W Buffer Size setting, see "Hardware Buffer Size" on page 117.

Computers with slower CPUs may not be able to use a H/W Buffer Size setting lower than 512 samples buffer size without encountering performance errors.

Recording with Delay Compensation

Generally, you will want to record with Delay Compensation enabled to maintain phase coherent time alignment between tracks with different DSP delays. However, you will generally want to avoid using inserts on recording tracks or tracks used for controlling the levels of cue mixes. For more information, see "Delay Compensation" on page 1500.

Zero Latency Monitoring

Some Avid, and third-party Core Audio and ASIO audio interfaces give you the ability to monitor your analog input signals while recording, without hearing any latency. This zero-latency analog monitoring is typically controlled by a Mix knob on the audio interface, which you can use to blend and adjust the mix between the interface's analog input and Pro Tools playback. For more information, see the documentation that came with your audio interface.

Low Latency Monitoring

(HD Native, 003, 003 Rack, 003 Rack+, Mbox Pro, and Core Audio and ASIO Interfaces with Built-in Mixers Only)

HD Native, 003, 003 Rack, 003 Rack+, and Mbox Pro systems can use the **Low Latency Monitoring** option to record with an extremely small amount of monitoring latency, to as many tracks as each system supports.

Likewise, certain Core Audio and ASIO audio interfaces that have a built-in mixer can use the **Low Latency Monitoring** option.

Only tracks with inputs set to a physical output (not an internal mix bus) use Low Latency Monitoring.

Software monitoring is automatically disabled for all Record-enabled tracks and TrackInput Monitoring–enabled tracks. This lets you use hardware monitoring with any output channels on your audio interface without having to re-configure your session.

⚠ **If your Core Audio or ASIO hardware does not have a built-in mixer, Low Latency Monitoring does not function. If you do enable Low Latency Monitoring with such hardware, monitoring will not be available for record-enabled tracks in Pro Tools.**

To use Low Latency Monitoring:

1. Assign each track to the selected Low Latency Monitoring Path as set in the I/O Setup Output page (see "Low Latency Monitoring" on page 71). Only tracks assigned to these outputs use Low Latency Monitoring.
2. Record enable audio tracks by clicking their Record Enable buttons.
3. Select **Options > Low Latency Monitoring**.

When **Low Latency Monitoring** is enabled, any plugins and sends assigned to record-enabled tracks are automatically bypassed, and must remain bypassed. Also, these tracks do not register on meters for Master Faders.

Allow Sends to Persist During LLM Preference

All plugins and sends are bypassed by default when Low Latency Monitoring (LLM) is enabled (**Options > Low Latency Monitoring**). Enable the **Allow Sends to persist during LLM** preference to maintain sends audio signal output with Low Latency Monitoring.

To maintain (or bypass) sends with Low Latency Monitoring enabled:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Mixing** tab.
2. Select (or deselect) the **Allow Sends to persist during LLM** option.
3. Click **OK**.

Low Latency Monitoring and Bounce To Disk

With **Low Latency Monitoring** enabled, only audio tracks are included with the **Bounce Mix** command—Auxiliary Input and Instrument tracks are ignored. To include Auxiliary Input and Instrument tracks, disable **Low Latency Monitoring** before using **Bounce Mix**.



External input cannot be recorded during a Bounce Mix. To include external input in your bounce, it must be recorded to new audio tracks before using Bounce Mix (see "Bounce Mix" on page 1640).

Ultra-Low Latency Monitoring with DSP Mode

(Pro Tools | Carbon and HDX Hybrid Engine Only) Pro Tools | Carbon and HDX systems using the HDX Hybrid Engine let you use track-based DSP Mode for ultra-low latency record and input monitoring. For more information, see "DSP Mode" on page 1555.

29 Audio Recording

In Pro Tools, you record audio to audio tracks. Audio tracks can be mono, stereo, or multichannel as appropriate for the recording source.

When recording a mono source, record to a single, mono audio track in Pro Tools. A single, mono audio file is written to disk, and the file appears as a clip both in the track's playlist and in the Clip List.

When recording a stereo audio source, record to a single, stereo audio track in Pro Tools. A single, mono audio file is written to disk for each channel of a stereo track: one for the left channel, and one for the right channel. These files appear as a stereo clip both in the track's playlist and in the Clip List.

Recording a multichannel source to a multichannel track (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only) is similar to recording stereo audio tracks. A single, mono audio file is written for each channel in the track, and these files appear as multichannel clips in both the track's playlist and in the Clip List (see "Multichannel Audio Tracks" on page 1668).

Before Recording

Before you start recording in Pro Tools, you need to set up your Pro Tools system, a session, and one or more tracks for recording. You will also need to configure how Pro Tools monitors the input you intend to record. For information, see "Record Setup" on page 763.

Basic Recording Steps

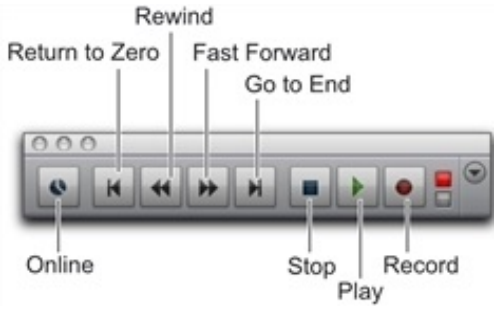
To record an audio track:

1. From the track's Input Path selector, select the audio Input Path you want to record (see "Assigning Hardware I/O on a Track" on page 775).
2. From the track's Output Path selector, select the main monitoring path.
3. Click the Record Enable button for the audio track. It lights red.



4. Adjust the output level of your sound source (instrument, mixer, or preamp). Monitor the track's meter levels in Pro Tools to ensure that levels peak within at least –6 dB to –12 dB on the input meter without triggering the clipping indicator on your audio interface.
5. Do one of the following:
   - In the Mix window, adjust the track's volume and pan faders. These settings are for monitoring purposes only and do not affect the recorded material.
   - In the Output window for the track, adjust the track's Volume fader and Pan sliders. These settings are for monitoring purposes only and do not affect the recorded material. (See "Output Windows for Tracks and Sends" on page 1485.)

6. Choose **Window > Transport** to display the Transport window. Click Return to Zero to go to the beginning of the session.



7. Click Record in the Transport window to arm Pro Tools for recording. The Record button flashes red to indicate that Pro Tools is ready to record.
8. Ensure that Normal Record mode is selected (see "Record Modes" on page 771).
9. When you are ready to start recording, click Play or press the Spacebar.

   If using Countoff, Pro Tools counts off the specified number of measures and then begins recording. See "Recording with a Click" on page 765.
10. Record your performance.
11. Click Stop in the Transport window or press the Spacebar when you are finished recording.

    The newly recorded audio is written to disk and appears as an audio clip both in the track's playlist and in the Clip List.

To play back the audio track:

1. Click the Record Enable button for the audio track so that it is no longer record-enabled. Track volume faders now function as playback level controls.

   If a record-enabled track is in Auto Input Monitor mode, you will hear "through" the input while the Transport is stopped. The track automatically switches to playback when you press play, then back to Input mode when you either stop, or punch into record. For more information, see "Auto Input Monitoring" on page 782.
2. To have playback start from the beginning of the session, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
3. To start playback, click Play in the Transport or press the Spacebar.

Undo or Cancel Audio Recording

Once you have recorded an audio track and the transport is stopped, you can undo the record take.

To undo an audio recording:

- Once the Transport has been stopped, choose **Edit > Undo Record Audio**.

The track's playlist is restored to its previous state and material is discarded as follows:

- When in normal Record mode, only the most recent take is discarded.
- When in Loop Record mode, all takes from each record pass are discarded.
- When using QuickPunch, TrackPunch, or DestructivePunch mode, all punches from the last recording pass are discarded.

If you undo a record pass during recording, Pro Tools removes any previously undone record pass from the session and lets you delete the previous record pass from your hard drive.

If no actions are available to undo, the menu displays a grayed out **Can't Undo**.

Canceling a Record Take

While recording, it is possible to discard the current record take. This removes the audio (recorded up to that point) from your hard drive and deletes the clip from the track's playlist and the Clip List. When using Loop Record mode, all takes from each record pass are discarded. Canceling recording when in Destructive Record mode is prohibited.

To cancel a record take while recording:

- Press Command+Period (.) (Mac) or Control+Period (.) (Windows) before the Transport is stopped.

Recording Multiple Audio Tracks

Pro Tools can record multiple audio tracks simultaneously, up to the track recording limits of your system. To record to multiple tracks, configure and record enable each track, then record. Follow the same steps as in "Basic Recording Steps" on page 787.

For each record-enabled track, a new audio file is written to disk, and a new clip is created that appears both in the track's playlist and in the Clip List.

If you have a Pro Tools system with multiple drives, and you intend to record multiple tracks simultaneously, you may want to designate the System drive as a Transfer only drive for optimal performance.

Recording Shortcuts

In addition to clicking the Record button in the Transport or Edit window to arm Pro Tools recording, you can arm and start recording with the following keyboard shortcuts:

- Press F12 to start recording immediately.

  On Mac systems, to use F12 for recording, the Mac "Dashboard" feature must be disabled or remapped. See your User Guide for details.

- Press Command+Spacebar (Mac) or Control+Spacebar (Windows) to start recording.

  On Mac systems, to use Command+Spacebar for recording, the Mac "Spotlight" feature must be disabled or remapped. Refer to Apple's documentation for more information.

- Press 3 on the numeric keypad (when the Numeric Keypad mode is set to **`Transport`**) to start recording.

  To initiate recording at half speed, press Command+Shift+Spacebar (Mac) or Control+Shift+Spacebar (Windows). See "Half-Speed Recording" on page 807.

Prime for Record Mode

When recording a large number of tracks or channels, or playing back a large number of tracks while recording, Pro Tools may take a little longer to begin recording. To avoid this delay, put Pro Tools in Prime for Record mode before beginning to record.

To enable Prime for Record mode and start recording:

1. Click Record in the Transport. The Record button flashes.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) Play in the Transport to put Pro Tools in Prime for Record mode.
   - Right-click the Play button and select **Prime for Record**.

   The Stop button lights and both the Play and Record buttons flash.
3. To begin recording instantaneously, click Play.
4. Click Stop to stop recording.

When synchronizing to timecode, use Prime for Record mode to record or play back large numbers of tracks. This decreases the time it takes to lock to timecode.

Setting Punch and Loop Points

The start and end points of a record range for punch and loop recording can be set by the following methods:

- Select a range in a track's playlist (with **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** enabled).
- Select a range in a Timebase ruler.
- Drag the Timeline Selection Markers in the ruler.
- Enter start and end times in the Transport window.
- Recall a Memory Location that includes an Edit selection (with **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** enabled).

To set the record range in a track's playlist:

1. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. Select **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - With the Selector tool, select the record range in a track's playlist.



Playlist selection

   - If a clip's start and end points define the record range, select the entire clip.

You can also enter a start and end point during playback. Press the Down Arrow to set the start point, and press the Up Arrow to set the end points. Note that when in Grid mode, start and end point when entered in this manner do not snap to the grid.

To set the record range in a Timebase ruler:

1. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. Select the record range in any Timebase ruler.

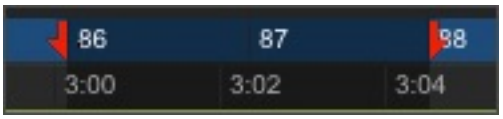


Timeline selection

If the Selector tool is not active, you do not need to manually select it. Other Edit tools (such as the Time Grabber tool) automatically turn into the Selector tool when used in Timebase rulers.

Timeline Selection Markers

When tracks are record-enabled, Timeline Selection Markers for start and end times appear as red up and down arrows in the Main Timebase ruler. If no tracks are record-enabled, the Timeline Selection Markers are blue.



Timeline Selection Markers in the Main Timebase ruler

The Timeline Selection Markers can be moved, either separately or at the same time, to set record and play ranges.

To set the record range by dragging the Timeline Selection Markers:

1. If you want the Timeline Selection Markers to snap to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid
2. Drag the first Timeline Selection Marker (down arrow) to the start point of the range.



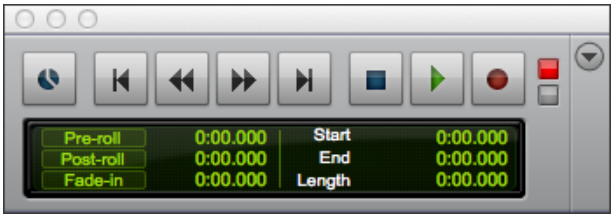
Dragging a Timeline Selection Marker (start time) in the Main Timebase ruler

3. Drag the second Timeline Selection Marker (up arrow) to the end point of the range.

If the current record range is already the right length and the range needs only to be moved to a new location, Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) either Timeline Selection Marker to move both to a new location (while keeping the same length).

Start, End, and Length Fields

In its Expanded view, the Transport window can display start, end, and length times, and pre- and post-roll settings. When setting a record or play range, the range is reflected in these fields.



Transport window with Start, End, and Length fields displayed

You can enter locations in the start and end fields to set the record or play range. The Timeline Selection Markers in the Main Timebase ruler are updated accordingly.

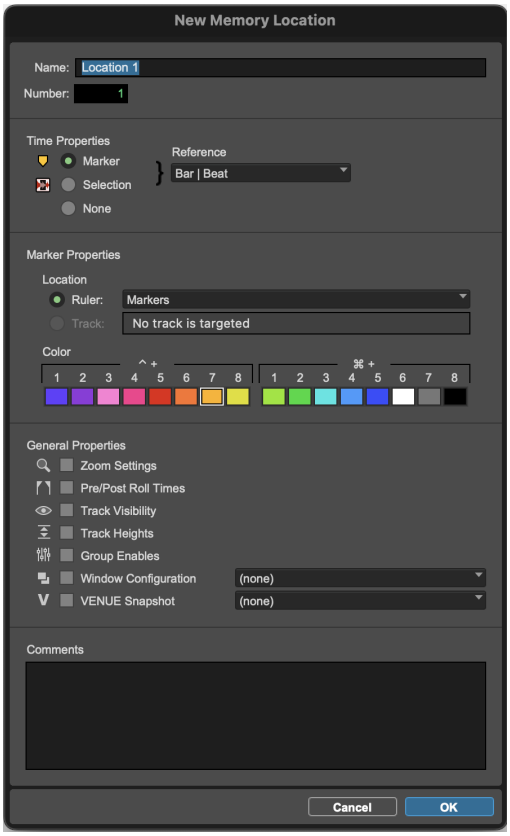
To set the record range by entering start and end times in the Transport window:

1. To see the start, end, and length times, do one of the following:
   - Select **`View > Transport > Expanded`**.
   - Shift-click the Expand/Collapse "+" button in the Transport window.
2. Do one of the following:
   - In the Transport window, click in the Start field.
   - Press Option+/ (Mac) or Alt+/ (Windows) on the numeric keypad to select the start field in the Transport window.
3. Type in the start location and press Option+/ (Mac) or Alt+/ (Windows) on the numeric keypad to enter the value and automatically move to the end field.
4. Type in the end location and press Enter to accept the value.

Use the Period (.) or Left/Right Arrow keys to move through the different time fields for Start and End. Use the Up/Down Arrow keys to increase or decrease the numerical values.

Memory Locations

You can store Edit selections as Memory Locations, which can also include current pre- and post-roll values.



New Memory Location dialog

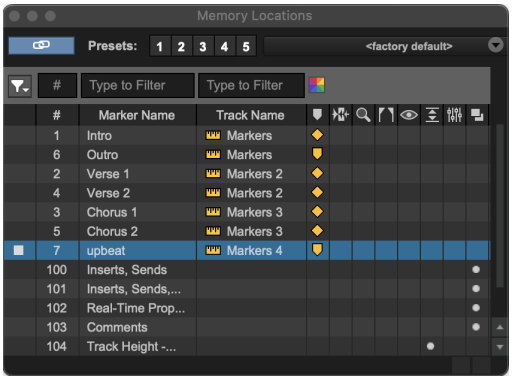
For more information on Memory Locations, see "Memory Locations" on page 1194.

To save an Edit selection with a Memory Location:

1. Ensure that **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** is selected.
2. Set the record range by making an Edit or Timeline selection, or by entering start and end times in the Transport window.
3. To save the pre- and post-roll values, enable and set the pre- and post-roll amounts by entering them in the Transport window, or by dragging the Pre- and Post-Roll Flags in the ruler that represents the Main Time Scale (see "Setting Pre- and Post-Roll" on the next page).
4. Press Enter on the numeric keypad or click the Add Marker/Memory Location button in the Edit window.
5. In the New Memory Location dialog, set Time Properties to **Selection**, and if saving pre- and post-roll values, select the **Pre/Post Roll Times** option in the General Properties section.
6. Type a name for the new Memory Location.
7. Click **OK**.

To recall an Edit selection with a Memory Location:

1. Make sure to select **Options > Link Timeline and Edit** Selection.
2. Choose **Windows > Memory Locations**.

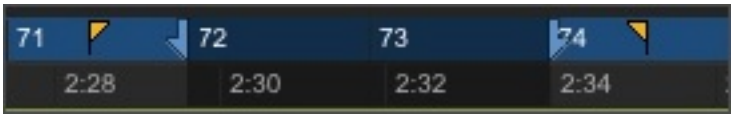


3. Do one of the following:
   - In the Memory Locations window, click the name or number of the Memory Location.
   - Recall the Memory Location by typing Period (.), the Memory Location number, and Period (.) again on the numeric keypad. (See "Numeric Keypad Modes" on page 28).

   The start and end times and pre- and post-roll settings stored with the Memory Location are recalled.

Setting Pre- and Post-Roll

Pre- and post-roll times appear as flags in the ruler that represents the Main Time Scale. When pre- and post-roll are enabled, the flags are green, otherwise they are gray.



Green Pre- and Post-Roll Flags (enabled) in the Main Timebase ruler

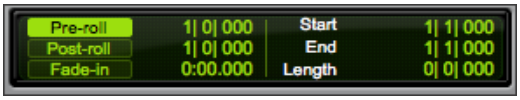
Pre- and post-roll amounts can be entered in the Transport window, set from a track's playlist or Timebase ruler, or by recalling a Memory Location.

Setting Pre- and Post-Roll in the Transport Window

Pre- and post-roll can be enabled and set in the Transport window.

To set and enable the pre- and post-roll times in the Transport window:

1. Select **View > Transport > Expanded**.
2. In the Transport window, click in the pre-roll field.
3. Type in the pre-roll amount and press Forward Slash (/) on the numeric keypad to enter the value and automatically move to the post-roll field.
4. Type in the post-roll amount and press Enter to accept the new value.



Pre-roll enabled for 2 beats; Post-roll disabled

5. To enable either pre- or post-roll, click the appropriate button so it is highlighted.

Use the Period (.) or Left/Right Arrow keys to move through the different time fields for pre and post-roll. Use the Up/Down Arrow keys to increase or decrease the numerical values.

Setting Pre- and Post-Roll in a Playlist

You can use the Selector tool to enable and disable pre- and post-roll by clicking in a track's playlist.

To set and enable the pre- and post-roll by clicking in a playlist:

1. Select **`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**.
2. With the Selector tool, select the record range in the track's playlist.
3. With the Selector tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) in the track's playlist before the selection to enable the pre-roll at that location.
4. With the Selector tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) in the track's playlist after the selection to enable the post-roll at that location.

To disable the pre- and post-roll by clicking in a playlist:

1. With the Selector tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) in the Edit selection near the start to disable the pre-roll.
2. With the Selector tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) in the Edit selection near the end to disable the post-roll.

   In the Timeline, you can reset the pre- and post-roll to zero. First, drag the Pre-Roll Flag to the Timeline Selection In Point, then drag the Post-Roll Flag to the Timeline Selection Out Point.

3. Drag the Pre-Roll Flag to the Timeline Selection In Point.
4. Drag the Post-Roll Flag to the Timeline Selection Out Point.

Enabling Pre/Post-Roll from the Options Menu

Pre- and post-roll (as a pair) can be enabled and disabled from the Options menu.

To enable both pre/post-roll from the Options menu:

- Select **`Options > Pre/Post-Roll`**.

Setting Pre-Roll or Post-Roll from the Edit Insertion Point

When the Timeline and Edit Selection are not linked, Pro Tools lets you set the Pre-Roll or Post-Roll from the current Edit insertion point. This can be useful if you are not working to a grid (such as recording without click track). Tab to a location before you want to punch in and then use the Set Pre-Roll or Post-Roll command to set the Pre-Roll flag to line up with the edit cursor (this also works for Post-Roll).

To set the Pre-Roll or Post-Roll from the current Edit insertion point:

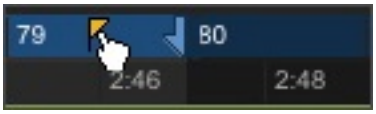
- Press Control+Option+Command+K (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+K (Windows).

Dragging Pre- and Post-Roll Flags in the Timebase Ruler

The Pre- and Post-Roll Flags can be moved in the Main Timebase ruler, either separately or at the same time, to set their location.

To set the pre- and post-roll amounts by dragging in the Main Timebase ruler:

1. If you want the Pre- and Post-Roll flags to snap to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. Drag the Pre-Roll Flag to a new location in the ruler.



Dragging a Pre-Roll Flag in a Timebase ruler

3. Drag the Post-Roll Flag to a new location in the Timebase ruler.

To set pre- and post-roll values to the same amount, Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) either the Pre- or the Post-Roll Flag in the ruler. The deselected flag will immediately reset to the same value, and will adjust accordingly as you drag the selected flag.

Audio Punch Recording Over a Specified Range

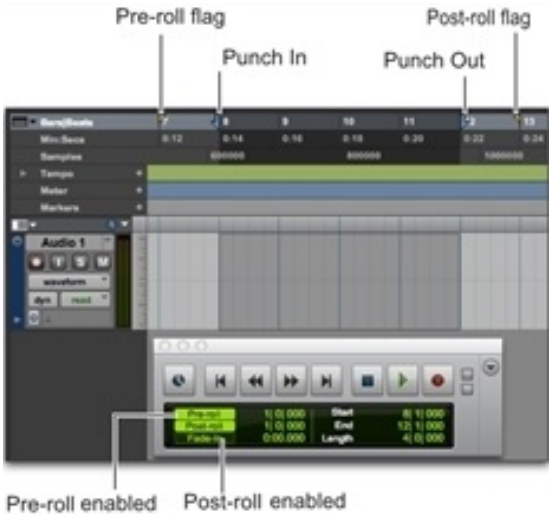
You can set Pro Tools to automatically *punch* record over a specific range in an audio track (for example, to replace a portion of a recorded track). The range's start (*punch in*) and end (*punch out*) points must be specified before recording.

To manually punch in and out on record-enabled audio tracks during playback, see "Punch Recording Modes" on page 833.

Though there are several ways to set record and play ranges (see "Setting Punch and Loop Points" on page 790), perhaps the easiest is to select within the track's playlist the range for recording.

To set a record or play range by selecting within a playlist, the Edit and Timeline selections must be linked (select Options › Link Timeline and Edit Selection).

During the recording process, playback begins at the pre-roll time (if enabled) and proceeds to the start time (the punch-in point), where recording begins. When the end time (the punch-out point) is reached, Pro Tools automatically switches out of Record mode and continues playing through the specified amount of post-roll. This automated punch-in/out feature is a powerful and precise way of recording or re-recording on a track.



Timeline selection for punch recording with Pre-roll and Post-roll

To punch record on an audio track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - To record nondestructively, make sure that **Options > Destructive Record** is not selected.
   - If you *do* want to permanently record over the specified record range, select **Options > Destructive Record**.

   If you are recording in any mode other than Destructive Record mode, punches do not permanently replace previously recorded material. If you do want to permanently record over the specified record range (and keep only the most recent take), select Options › Destructive Record.
2. Record enable the track.
3. Select **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
4. With the Selector tool, drag in the track's playlist or in one of the Timebase rulers until the selection encompasses the punch range (see "Setting Punch and Loop Points" on page 790).
5. To hear any existing track material up to the start point, or after the end point, enable and set pre- and post-roll times (see "Setting Pre- and Post-Roll" on page 794).
6. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording.
7. Click Play to start recording.

Pro Tools starts recording from the punch-in (start) point. If there is any pre-roll, recording starts when the punch-in (start) point is reached. Recording continues until the punch-out (end) point is reached (unless you manually stop recording first). If post-roll is enabled, playback continues for the specified post-roll amount.

If recording nondestructively, a new audio file is written to your hard drive and a new audio clip appears both in the track and the Clip List.

If recording in Destructive Record mode, the new audio overwrites the previous material in the existing audio file and clip.

Monitoring during Punch-Ins

Pro Tools provides two monitoring modes for recording: Auto Input monitoring and Input Only monitoring (see "Selecting a Record Input Monitoring Mode" on page 782).

Recording Additional Takes

After recording to an audio track, you can record additional takes to the same track. Any of these additional takes can be used in the main playlist. For information about accessing alternate takes, see "Alternate Takes" on page 801.

Recording additional takes in Destructive Record mode overwrites previous take. To keep the audio from previous takes, record the new takes in Normal (Nondestructive) Record mode.

For information on audio file and clip names for new takes, see "Configuring Default Names for Audio Files and Clips " on page 774.

To nondestructively record a new take on the same track:

1. Ensure that Normal Record mode is selected (see "Record Modes" on page 771).
2. Record enable the track.
3. Do one of the following:

- To record from the beginning of the session, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
- If **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** is enabled, click anywhere in the track's playlist to begin recording from that point.

To record a specific track range, with precise start and end points, see "Audio Punch Recording Over a Specified Range" on page 796.

4. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording.
5. Click Play to start recording.
6. Click Stop to stop recording.

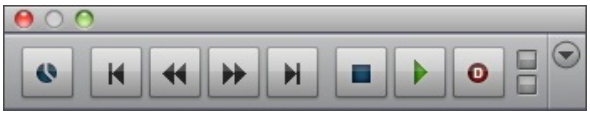
An audio file for the new take is written to disk and appears as an audio clip both in the track's playlist and in the Clip List.

The audio from the original take remains on your hard drive, and is still available as a clip in the Clip List.

To destructively record over a previous take:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Options > Destructive Record**. When in Destructive Record mode.
   - Right-click the Record button in the Transport and select **Destructive**.

   A "D" appears in the Record button when Destructive Record mode is enabled.



2. Record enable the track.
3. Do one of the following:
   - To record from the beginning of the track, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
   - If **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** is enabled, click anywhere in the track's playlist to begin recording from that point.

To record a specific track range, with precise start and end points, see "Audio Punch Recording Over a Specified Range" on page 796.

4. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording.
5. Click Play to start recording.
6. When finished, click Stop to stop recording.

   The audio for the new take is written to disk, permanently overwriting the original. The new material replaces the original material within the existing clip and the clip is not renamed.

Appending New Material to the End of a Track

You can also append new material to the end of a track.

To append new material to the end of a track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Go to End button in the Transport to locate to the end of the track (this locates the end of the session).
   - Tab to the end point of the last clip on the track.
2. From there, begin recording.

Pro Tools adds the new material to the end of the track. If using Destructive Record mode, the new audio is appended to the audio file and clip from the first take. In Nondestructive Record mode, a new file and clip are created.

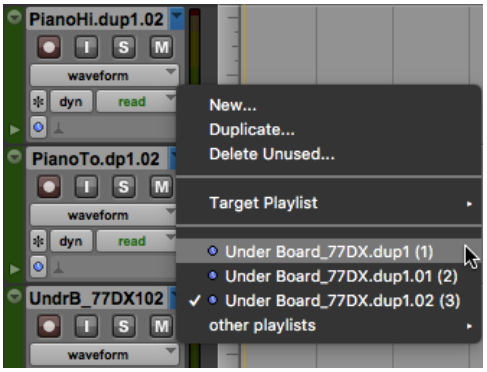
Recording to a New Playlist

Instead of recording over existing audio clips, there is another way to nondestructively record new takes to the same track. Do this by creating a new playlist for the track, then record just as before.

Tracks can have multiple edit playlists, each of which stores a list of clips strung together in a particular order. Also, since playlists follow groups, duplicating or selecting alternate playlists for a track in an enabled group will affect all tracks in the group.

To record to a new playlist for a track:

1. From the track's Playlist selector, choose **New**.



Playlist selector, creating new playlist

2. Type a name for the new playlist.
3. Click **OK**.

   When a new playlist is created, its name replaces the track name. Names for new audio files and clips are based on the track name.
4. Record enable the track.
5. To start from the beginning of the session, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
6. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording.
7. Click Play to start recording.
8. Click Stop to stop recording.

An audio file for the new take is written to disk and appears as an audio clip both in the track's new playlist and in the Clip List.

Selecting a previous playlist from track's Playlist selector recalls its clips as they previously appeared in the track. At any time, all clips from all playlists are available in the Clip List, and can be mixed and matched between playlists and tracks.

For more information on playlists and playlist editing, see "Playlists" on page 966.

Loop Recording Audio

Pro Tools provides a loop recording feature that lets you record take after take while the same section of audio repeats over and over. This is a convenient technique for quickly recording multiple takes of a part without losing spontaneity.

When loop recording, you must first specify the start and end points for the loop. Though there are several ways to set record and play ranges (see "Setting Punch and Loop Points" on page 790), the easiest is to select the range to be looped in the track's playlist (ensure that **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** is selected).

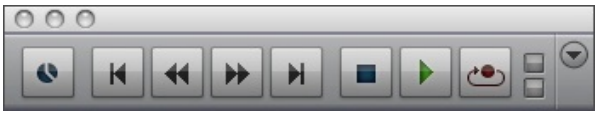
The pre-roll setting, if enabled, is used only during the first record pass. Pre- and post-roll times are ignored on each successive loop. To compensate for this, you may want to make the loop range slightly longer. Later, you can trim back the recorded takes to the proper length with the Trim tool (see "Using the Trim Tools" on page 887).

When loop recording audio, Pro Tools creates a single audio file that includes all takes. Takes appear as individual clips in the Clip List and are numbered sequentially. Once you stop recording, you can audition any of the recorded takes.

To use alternate takes created with Loop Record in other sessions (such as when using Import Session Data), export clip definitions (see "Exporting Clip Definitions" on page 665). If clip definitions are not exported, alternate takes created with Loop Record will be inaccessible when imported into another session.

To loop record an audio track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Options > Loop Record**. When Loop Record mode is enabled, a loop symbol appears in the Record button.
   - Right-click the Record button in the Transport and select **Loop**.



Loop Recording enabled

2. Record enable the audio track by clicking its Record Enable button.
3. Select **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
4. With the Selector tool, select the loop range on the track. For other methods of setting the record range, see "Setting Punch and Loop Points" on page 790.
5. To hear track material up to the start point of the loop, enable pre-roll and set the pre-roll time (see "Setting Pre- and Post-Roll" on page 794).
6. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording.
7. Click Play to start recording.

   The Record button flashes during the pre-roll. When the start point is reached, Pro Tools begins recording. When the end point is reached, Pro Tools loops back to the start time and continues recording.
8. To cancel all recorded takes while loop recording, press Command+Period (.) (Mac) or Control+Period (.) (Windows).
9. When finished, click Stop to stop recording.

If you stop recording before you reach the midpoint of the loop, Pro Tools discards that take. If you record more than half of the looped take, Pro Tools leaves the take in the track when you stop recording.

The recorded takes appear as clips in the Clip List and are numbered sequentially. The most recently recorded take appears in the active playlist on the track. For details on auditioning the different takes, see "Selecting Alternate Takes" on the next page.

Loop Playback and Audio Recording

Pro Tools ignores **Loop Playback** when recording. The only way to loop while recording is to enable Loop Record mode.

Automatically Create New Playlists When Loop Recording

When loop recording, Pro Tools creates a single file containing all recording passes where each recording pass is a clip in the file. On the track, only the last recording pass is present as a clip in the main playlist. All other clips (recording passes) are hidden and can only be recalled as matching alternate clips (takes). When enabled, the **Automatically Create New Playlists When Loop Recording** option in the Operation Preferences automatically copies each clip (take) to a new playlist in the track. This facilitates using Playlists view for auditioning and selecting alternate takes.

To automatically create new playlists when loop recording:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. In the Recording section, enable the **Automatically Create New Playlists When Loop Recording** option.

Alternate Takes

When punch recording or loop recording, Pro Tools creates matching alternate takes (clips). Pro Tools lets you exchange clips in the main playlist on tracks with matching alternate clips from other playlists associated with the same track, from other tracks, or from the Clip List. Matching alternate clips are clips that meet certain criteria, for example, clips that have the same *User Time Stamp* match (see "Matching Alternate Clips" on page 982).

Selecting Alternate Takes

After recording multiple takes with loop or punch recording, you can replace the current take in the track's active playlist with any of the previous takes. All takes are numbered sequentially.

Selecting Alternate Takes from the Clip List

To select a take from the Clip List:

1. In the Edit window, select the current clip (take) with the Time Grabber tool.
2. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) different clips in the Clip List to audition them.
3. Control-drag (Mac) or Start-drag (Windows) the clip you want from the Clip List into the playlist.

The clip replaces the previous take and snaps precisely to the correct location.

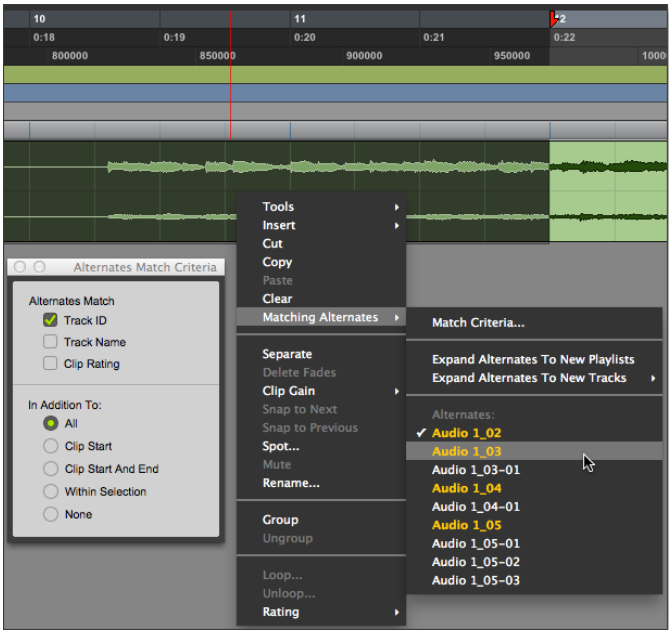
Selecting Alternate Takes on a Track

Each clip resulting from a punch or loop record pass has an identical start time (the *User Time Stamp*). You can select and audition alternate takes from the Right-click Matches submenu or the Alternate Takes pop-up menu—even during playback.

To select an alternate take:

1. Ensure that Track ID (or Track Name) is selected and that Clip Start is selected in the Matching Criteria window (see "Matching Criteria Window" on page 803).
2. Do one of the following:

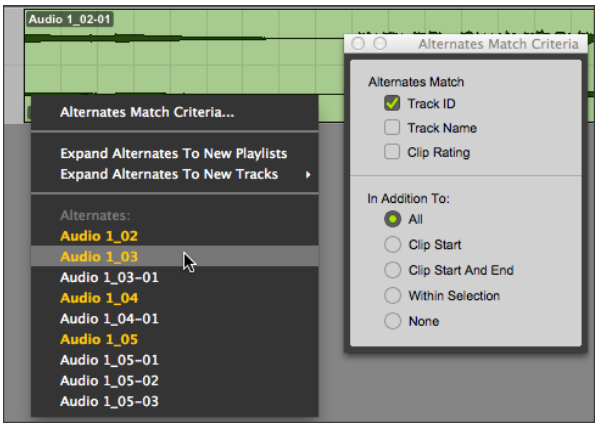
- Right-click the clip with the Selector or the Grabber tool, and select a matching alternate take from the Matches submenu in the pop-up menu.



Right-click Matches submenu

- If the take currently residing in the track is selected, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) anywhere on the selected take with the Selector tool, and select a different take from the Alternate Takes pop-up menu.
- With the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) at the precise beginning of the loop or punch range and select a different take from the Alternate Takes pop-up menu.

To cycle through matches for the selected clip, press Command+Option+Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Control+Alt+Up/Down Arrows (Windows).



Alternate Takes pop-up menu

The selected matching alternate clip (take) replaces the clip in the main playlist and snaps precisely to the correct location.

One way to ensure that subsequent recording takes have the same *User Time Stamp* (and as such can be available as matching alternate clips) is to store punch and loop record selections as Memory Locations. Then, if you later need to record additional takes, recall the corresponding Memory Location.

To change the User Time Stamp of other clips so that they can be available as alternate matching clips for a specific location, use the **Time Stamp** command in the Clip List menu.

Matches and Multiple Tracks

If you have loop recorded on multiple tracks, and each track contains multiple takes with identical User Time Stamps, you can change all takes simultaneously.

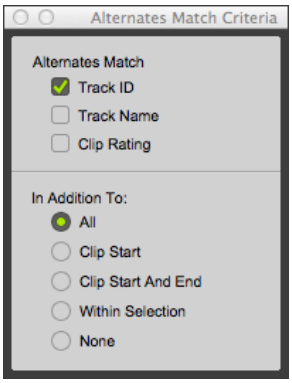
To switch takes for multiple tracks:

1. Configure the Matching Criteria window (see "Matching Criteria Window" below), so that the following options are enabled:
   - **Track Name**
   - **Selection Range**
2. With the Selector tool, select the take range for each track you want to replace.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the Edit selection and select a different matching alternate take from the Matches submenu.
   - Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Edit selection and select a different take from the Alternates pop-up menu.

   The selected take replaces the previous take and snaps precisely to the correct location on each track.

Matching Criteria Window

The Matching Criteria window lets you select the criteria for matching alternate clips. This lets you refine the list of available matching clips in the Alternate Takes pop-up menu and Clip Right-click Matches submenu.



Matching Criteria affects MIDI as well as audio clips.

Alternates Match Options

The following Alternates Match options can be selected in any combination:

Track ID

Any clips recorded to the same track are considered matching. Use this option for selecting alternate takes from loop or punch recording.

Track Name

Any clips that share the same root name with the track or playlist are considered matching. For example, the Matches for a track named “Gtr.L” would show the clips “Gtr.L_01” and “Gtr.L_02-01,” but not “Guitar.L_01.”

Clip Rating

Any clips that have the same Rating are considered matching. Enable this option if you have rated clips (see "Rating Clips" on page 942).

In Addition To Match Options

The following In Addition To Match options are mutually exclusive.

All

Any clips that include the time location of the Edit cursor; or any clips that are either partly or fully within the current time range of the Edit selection.

Clip Start

Any clips that have the same start time as the time location of the Edit cursor or Edit selection.

Clip Start and End

Any clips that have the same start and end times as the Edit selection.

Within Selection

Any complete clips that are entirely within the Edit selection.

None

No other criteria in addition to the selected Alternates Match options are used to filter matching alternate clips.

Expanding Alternate Takes to New Playlists or Tracks

Pro Tools lets you copy alternate takes to new playlists or tracks. This is especially useful for auditioning, editing, and mixing multiple alternate takes or channels. Alternate takes are created when punch and loop recording.

Expanding Alternate Takes to New Playlists

Expanding alternate takes to new playlists readily facilitates track compositing. Once you have expanded alternate takes to new playlists on a track, you can audition and edit them in Playlists view to assemble the best takes in the main playlist.

To expand alternate takes to new playlists:

1. Identify the clip on the main playlist with matching alternate clips (takes).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the clip and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Playlists**.
   - If the clip is selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) anywhere on the selected clip and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Playlists**.

- If the clip is not selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) at the precise beginning of the loop or punch range and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Playlists**.

All matching alternate clips are copied to new playlists on the track. To view all playlists for the track, select Playlists view. In any track view, you can also select any available alternate playlist as the main playlist from the Playlist selector. For more information, see "Playlists View" on page 972.

Expanding Alternate Takes to New Tracks

Expanding alternate takes to new tracks readily facilitates auditioning, editing, and mixing alternate takes, each on separate tracks.

To expand alternate takes to new tracks:

1. Identify the clip on the main playlist with matching alternate clips (takes).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the clip and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Tracks**.
   - If the clip is selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) anywhere on the selected clip and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Tracks**.
   - If the clip is not selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) at the precise beginning of the loop or punch range and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Tracks**.
3. Then choose one of the following from the Expand Alternates To New Tracks sub-menu:

By Track Name

Names all new tracks after the source track name.

By Clip Name

Names each new tracks after the corresponding original clip names that you see in the Matches list.

By Track and Clip Name

Names all new tracks after the source track name, but with the corresponding original clip names in parenthesis.

All matching alternate clips are copied to new tracks.

Recording from a Digital Source

If you plan to use a digital device with your Pro Tools system, make sure it supports the correct digital format. For example, your Pro Tools audio interface's AES/EBU inputs and outputs should only be connected to another AES/EBU device.

For additional information on configuring your particular Pro Tools system for recording from a digital source, see your User Guide.

Pro Tools HD Audio Interface Digital Options

HD I/O and HD OMNI include AES/EBU, S/PDIF, and ADAT digital options. Additionally, the HD I/O with a Digital Expansion card includes TDIF digital I/O options.

HD MADI includes both optical and coaxial MADI I/O (for more information, see the *HD MADI Guide*).

Pro Tools | MTRX includes built-in AES3 and MADI coaxial digital interfaces. Additionally, you can install optional digital I/O expansion cards for AES3 I/O, Dual SDI/HD/3G, and Dual MADI I/O, and a 64-Channel IP Audio Dante module.

Pro Tools | MTRX II includes built-in MADI coaxial digital interfaces and Dante Ethernet I/O. Additionally, you can install optional digital I/O expansion cards for AES3 I/O, Dual SDI/HD/3G, Dual MADI I/O, and a 64-Channel IP Audio Dante module.

Pro Tools | MTRX Studio includes built in 64x64 Dante I/O (at all sample rates) and 16x16 ADAT I/O.

On HD I/O and HD OMNI, Pro Tools can receive digital audio from the factory-installed Optical (ADAT) I/O at any time (if it is not set to S/PDIF). However, Pro Tools can only receive digital audio from one of its enclosure [Encl] digital sources—AES/EBU, S/PDIF, or Optical (S/PDIF)—at a time.

Enclosure digital sources come standard with Avid HD audio interfaces and are labeled on-screen as [Encl] versions, to differentiate them from digital inputs and outputs available on the Digital card installed in HD I/O. For example, the AES/EBU inputs and outputs that come standard in the HD I/O enclosure are identified as AES/EBU [Encl].

The additional digital ports on the HD I/O are TDIF, AES/EBU, and ADAT. Pro Tools can only receive digital audio from one of these ports at a time.

Inputs on the HD I/O enclosure I/O and Digital card can be used simultaneously. For example, on an HD I/O, it is possible to clock off a source from one of the enclosure inputs and have another digital input from the digital ports doing a sample rate conversion, thus having two digital sources.

Pro Tools Audio Interface Digital Options

003, 003 Rack, and 003 Rack+ include S/PDIF and ADAT digital I/O.

Eleven Rack includes S/PDIF and AES/EBU digital I/O.

Mbox (3rd generation) include only the S/PDIF digital option.

MBOX Studio includes coaxial S/PDIF I/O and Optical I/O that supports ADAT, SMUX, and S/PDIF.

Pro Tools | Carbon includes optical I/O for ADAT and S/PDIF.

All digital outputs are active at all times, so you can actually send digital audio to different digital devices simultaneously at mix time.

Recording from Digital Sources

To record from a digital source with Pro Tools:

1. Connect the digital output of the recording source to the appropriate digital input of your audio hardware.
2. If you want to start a new session with a different sample rate, do the following:
    a. Choose **File > New Session**
    b. Select the sample rate.
    c. Configure the rest of the New Session dialog accordingly.
    d. Click **Save**.
3. Specify the format (digital) of the inputs of the audio interface to which the digital recording source is connected:

a. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.

b. Choose the audio interface.

c. Select the digital format for the appropriate channel pair (such as AES/EBU or S/PDIF).

Some Pro Tools audio interfaces only have two channels that can be set for analog or digital. For example, Mbox (3rd generation) has S/PDIF L–R (Stereo) digital inputs and In 1–2 analog inputs. Mbox (3rd generation) can record through analog and digital inputs simultaneously.

4. For Pro Tools Ultimate, select the appropriate **Clock Master** in the Session Setup window or Hardware Setup dialog.
5. Create a new stereo audio track.
6. Assign the Input Path selector for the track to the appropriate input. Since this is a digital transfer, you do not need to worry about input levels.
7. Assign the Output Path selector for the track to the appropriate output for monitoring (such as A 1–2).
8. In the Options menu, ensure that the following options are deselected: Destructive Record, Loop Record, QuickPunch, TrackPunch, and DestructivePunch.
9. To have recording start from the beginning of the session, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
10. Record enable the new audio track.
11. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording.
12. Click Play to start recording.
13. Start playback on the recording source.
14. When the material from the source has finished, click Stop in the Transport.
15. Stop playback on the recording source.

After a Digital Transfer

(HDX or HD Native Systems Only) After you have finished recording digitally, set the **Clock Master** pop-up menu in the Session Setup window back to **Internal**. Otherwise, Pro Tools will not switch back to its own internal clock and may not record or play audio properly. Failure to switch back to Internal synchronization typically results in pitch problems (fast or slow playback), clicks and pops, or AAE errors, since a DAT machine or CD Recorder that is idle can default to a different sample rate or stop outputting a sample rate clock altogether.

Half-Speed Recording

Pro Tools lets you play and record at half speed. This capability is similar to that of a tape deck where you can record material at half-speed and then play it back at normal speed (faster and up an octave), or record material at normal speed and play it back at half speed (slower and down an octave), for special effects.

Use half-speed recording to record difficult-to-play MIDI tracks or to record complex automation moves.

To record at half speed:

1. Record enable the tracks you want to record at half speed.
2. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording.
3. Press Command+Shift+Spacebar (Mac) or Control+Shift+Spacebar (Windows). Recording begins and all existing track material plays at half speed.
4. When you have finished recording, click Stop.



For information on Half-Speed Playback, see *"Half-Speed Playback Mode" on page 751.*

30 MIDI Recording

Although recording MIDI in Pro Tools is similar to recording audio, there are some important differences:

- Unlike audio, MIDI recording is almost always destructive. See "Record Modes and MIDI" on page 773 for details.
- Unlike audio tracks, MIDI and Instrument tracks can be record-enabled during playback or recording.
- MIDI and Instrument tracks have an Input selector that determines which port on your MIDI interface (devices) and which MIDI channel is routed and recorded to the track. If the MIDI Input selector is set to All, all channels for all devices are routed to the track.
- Similar to Auxiliary Inputs, Instrument tracks have audio Input and Output selectors. These selectors are different than the Instrument track's selectors for MIDI Input and Output and are primarily used for monitoring audio from MIDI instruments or instrument plugins.
- It is not necessary to use QuickPunch, TrackPunch, or DestructivePunch to punch in with MIDI or Instrument tracks. This capability is available both in Normal (Nondestructive) Record mode and Destructive Record mode.

Recording from MIDI Devices

The MIDI Inputs for record-enabled MIDI and Instrument tracks determine what MIDI data is recorded in Pro Tools. MIDI Inputs can be set to a specific device (port) and channel, or they can be set to All, where all channels for all devices are merged to the track.

MIDI and Instrument tracks in Pro Tools do not contain multiple channels and always play back on the track's assigned MIDI output device and channel. Multiple MIDI devices and channels can be simultaneously recorded to multiple tracks.

The following Pro Tools options determine whether you can record from a MIDI controller (such as a MIDI keyboard or drum pad):

- Devices that are assigned as a MIDI Controller in the Peripherals dialog (**`Setup > Peripherals`**) are ignored when MIDI tracks are recorded. This is to avoid recording data from MIDI control surfaces (such as HUI).
- To record and play MIDI, the device must be enabled in the MIDI Input Enable dialog. For more information, see "Enabling Input Devices" below.

In addition, the following options affect how MIDI data is recorded in Pro Tools:

- The MIDI Input Filter can filter out MIDI messages that you may not want to record, such as Polyphonic Aftertouch or System Exclusive data. For more information, see "MIDI Input Filter" on page 811.
- Input Quantize, when enabled, automatically quantizes (time corrects) all MIDI notes that are recorded. For more information, see "Input Quantize" on page 812.

For information about recording with MIDI Polyphonic Expression (MPE), see MIDI Polyphonic Expression (MPE).

Enabling Input Devices

To record from a MIDI device (such as a MIDI keyboard) in Pro Tools, the device must be enabled in the MIDI Input Enable dialog. You can also use this dialog to make sure unwanted notes from certain devices, such as drum machines or arpeggiators, are not recorded.

MIDI Control Surfaces

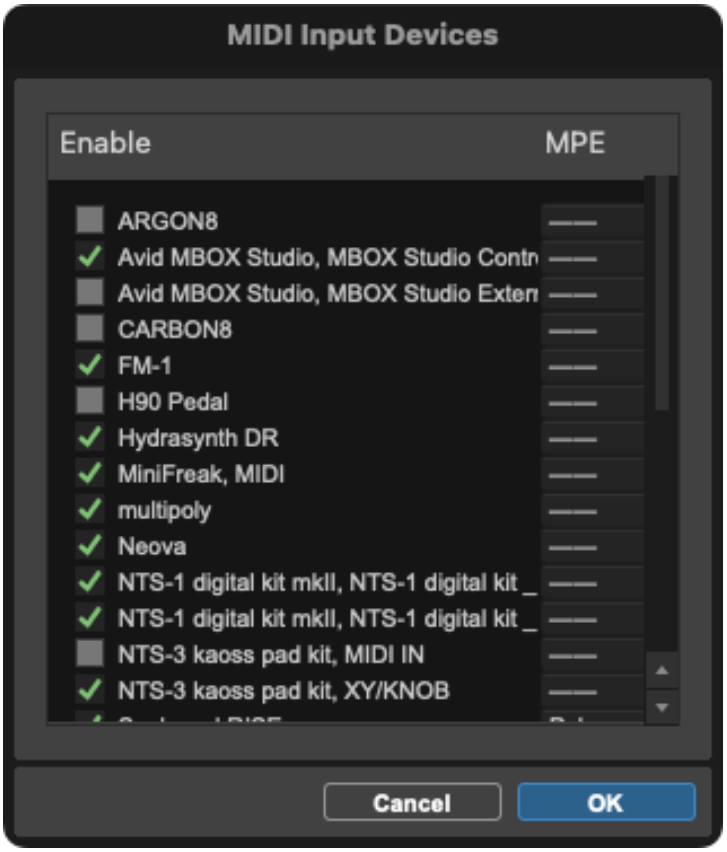
In order to use any MIDI control surfaces (such as Command|8), they must be enabled in the MIDI Input Enable dialog.

MMC

In order for Pro Tools to synchronize to MIDI Machine Control (MMC), the MMC source must be enabled in the MIDI Input Enable dialog. For more information on using MMC with Pro Tools, see "Using MIDI Machine Control" on page 1854.

To enable input devices:

1. Choose **Setup > MIDI > Input Devices**.
2. Select the MIDI devices you want to record. Also, select any device to be used as a control surface.
3. Deselect any input devices you want to ignore while recording MIDI.



Devices do not need to be selected to receive MIDI data from Pro Tools. For example, a device used exclusively as a sound module does not need to be selected in the MIDI Input Enable dialog.

4. Click OK.

MIDI Thru

To monitor MIDI tracks while recording, enable MIDI Thru. When enabled, Pro Tools routes MIDI from your controllers to the device and channels assigned to the currently record-enabled MIDI track.

The MIDI preference for Global MIDI Playback Offset and individual MIDI track offsets do not affect MIDI routed with MIDI Thru.

When MIDI Thru is enabled, System Exclusive (Sysex) events are echoed to the MIDI device assigned to the record-enabled track—but only if the Sysex events are smaller than 256 bytes.

To enable MIDI Thru:

- Select **Options > MIDI Thru**.

  When using MIDI Thru, you should disable Local Control, if present, on your MIDI devices. Otherwise, your MIDI device may receive double MIDI notes, which can lead to stuck notes. If you are unsure how to disable Local Control for your instrument, see the manufacturer's documentation.

The Default Thru Instrument

In addition to any MIDI tracks that are record-enabled, you can also route MIDI to the Default Thru Instrument. This saves the extra steps of creating a MIDI track and record enabling it to hear a particular MIDI device and channel.

Unlike MIDI tracks, which only receive MIDI from the device and channel assigned to its MIDI Input selector, all incoming MIDI data is routed to the Default Thru Instrument.

If the Default Thru Instrument is assigned to a record-enabled MIDI track, Pro Tools only routes incoming MIDI to the record-enabled track.

To configure a default Thru instrument:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **MIDI** tab.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Select a specific device from the **Default Thru Instrument** pop-up menu to play MIDI through on that device by default.
   - Select **Follows First Selected MIDI Track** to have MIDI preview assignment follow MIDI track selection. When multiple MIDI tracks are selected, previewing uses the topmost MIDI track in the Edit window or the leftmost MIDI track in the Mix window.
   - To disable the **Default Thru Instrument**, select **None**.

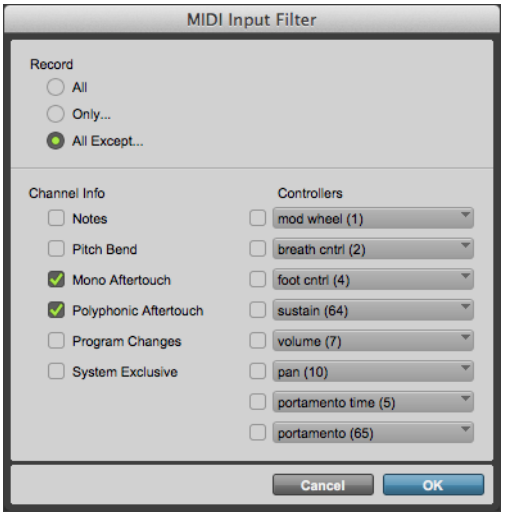
The Default Thru Follows First Selected MIDI Track Selection option also lets you play an instrument without having to create and record-enable a MIDI or Instrument track.

MIDI Input Filter

Use the MIDI Input Filter to prevent certain types of MIDI messages from being recorded. The MIDI Input Filter can be set to record **All** messages, **Only** the specified messages, or **All Except** the specified messages.

For example, to filter out program changes:

1. Choose **Setup > MIDI > Input Filter**.
2. In the MIDI Input Filter dialog, select the **All Except** option.
3. Select the option for **Program Changes**. Leave all other messages deselected.



4. Click **OK**.

   When using the **All Except** option, the selected types of MIDI messages are not recorded. Conversely, when using the **Only** option, only the selected types of MIDI messages are recorded.

   *To be able to record per-note mono aftertouch with MPE-capable instruments, you must first ensure that **Mono Aftertouch** is disabled in the MIDI Input Filter dialog.*

Input Quantize

When **Input Quantize** is enabled in the Input Quantize MIDI Operations dialog (**Event > MIDI Operations > Input Quantize**), all recorded MIDI notes are quantized automatically. Quantizing MIDI on input is useful for achieving rhythmically precise MIDI recordings. However, to preserve all of the original nuance of your recorded MIDI tracks (such as *rubato* phrasing), disable this option.

For more information on Input Quantize, see "Input Quantize Command" on page 1431.

Wait for Note

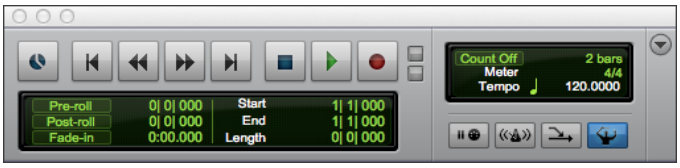
The Wait for Note button, located in the Transport window, determines how Pro Tools begins recording. When enabled, Pro Tools does not start recording until a MIDI event is received. This ensures that recording begins only when you start playing, and that the first note, or other MIDI data, is recorded precisely at the beginning of the set record range (start time).

Wait for Note can be used when recording normally, when punching in, or when loop recording. If pre-roll is enabled, it occurs after the MIDI event is received and before recording begins.

Wait for Note and Countoff are mutually exclusive and cannot both be enabled at the same time. If, for instance, Countoff is enabled and you click the Wait for Note button, Countoff is disabled. Furthermore, Wait for Note starts recording immediately, ignoring any specified Pre-roll.

To enable Wait for Note:

1. To view the MIDI controls in the Transport window, select **View > Transport > MIDI Controls**.



2. In the Transport window, click the Wait for Note button so it becomes highlighted.



Wait for Note button, enabled

With the Operation preference for "Use F11 for Wait for Note" enabled, you can press F11 to turn on Wait for Note. (On Mac systems, the Mac "Desktop" keyboard shortcut must be disabled or remapped.)

MIDI Merge/Replace

The MIDI Merge button, located in the Transport window, determines how MIDI is recorded when overdubbing or punching in. When MIDI Merge is on (*Merge* mode), recorded MIDI is merged with existing track material. When MIDI Merge is off (*Replace* mode), existing data within the punched clip is replaced by the newly recorded material.

The MIDI Merge button can be turned on and off during playback and recording. In Loop Record mode, MIDI Merge has no effect, and the button is dimmed.

To enable MIDI Merge with a keyboard shortcut, set the Numeric Keypad mode to Transport, and press the 9 key on the numeric keypad.

You can also paste and merge MIDI notes using Paste Special commands. See "Special Paste Function for Automation Data" on page 1612.

To enable MIDI Merge:

1. To view the MIDI controls in the Transport window, select **View > Transport > MIDI Controls**.
2. In the Transport window, click the MIDI Merge button so it becomes highlighted.



MIDI Merge Release Mode

MIDI Merge Release mode provides three options for how Pro Tools writes MIDI Continuous Controller (CC) automation when recording MIDI in MIDI Merge mode. These options determine how MIDI CC data (such as the Sustain Pedal: MIDI CC 64) is written. Select the desired MIDI Merge Release Mode option in the Pro Tools MIDI Preferences or from the Right-click menu on the MIDI Merge button.

To set the MIDI Merge Release mode:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the MIDI Merge button.
   - Choose **Settings > Preferences > MIDI**.
2. Select the best option for your workflow:
   - Latch

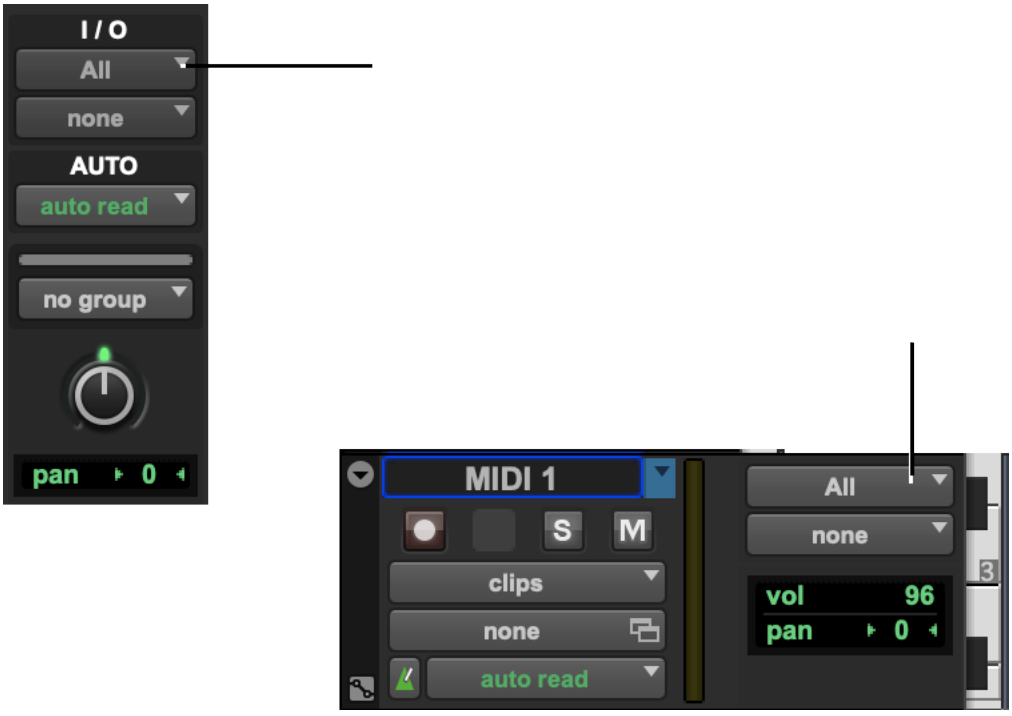
     Continues writing the last value. Any existing events are overwritten until you stop recording.
   - Latch Until Next Event

     Continues writing the last value until the next event even if you are still recording.

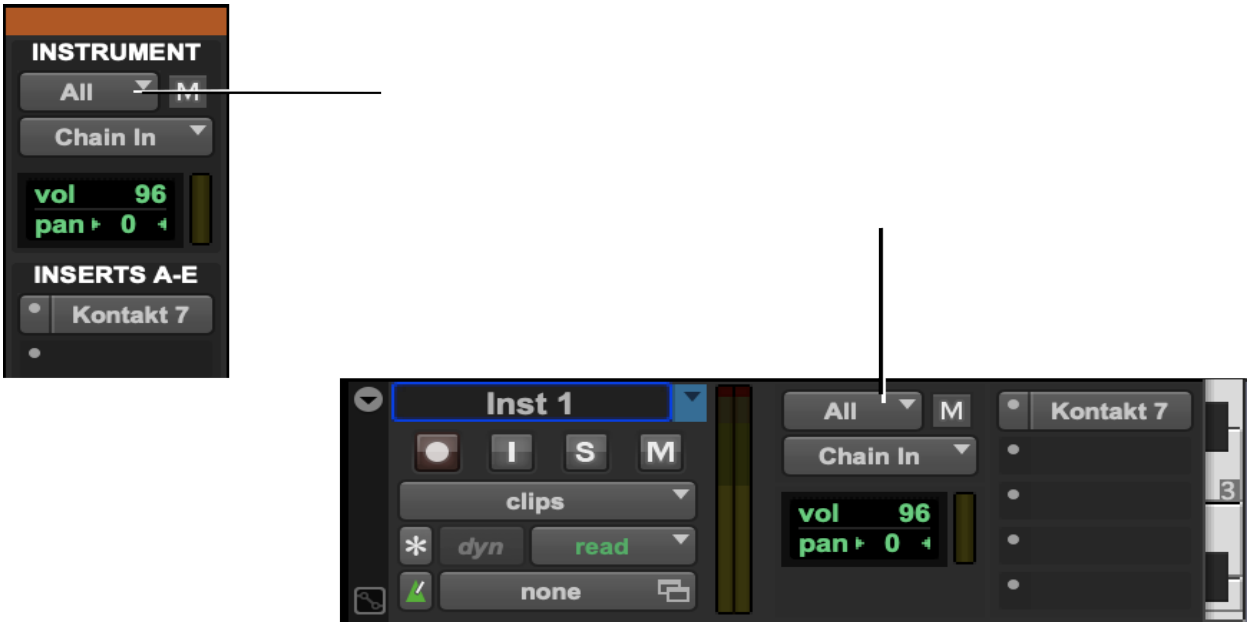
Configuring MIDI or Instrument Tracks for Recording

To configure one or more MIDI or Instrument tracks for recording:

1. Create a new MIDI or Instrument track, or use an existing MIDI or Instrument track.
2. For Instrument tracks, select **View > Mix Window > Instruments** or **View > Edit Window > Instruments**.
3. From the track's MIDI Input selector, select the device and channel to be recorded. (For Instrument tracks, the MIDI Input selector is available in Instruments view.)

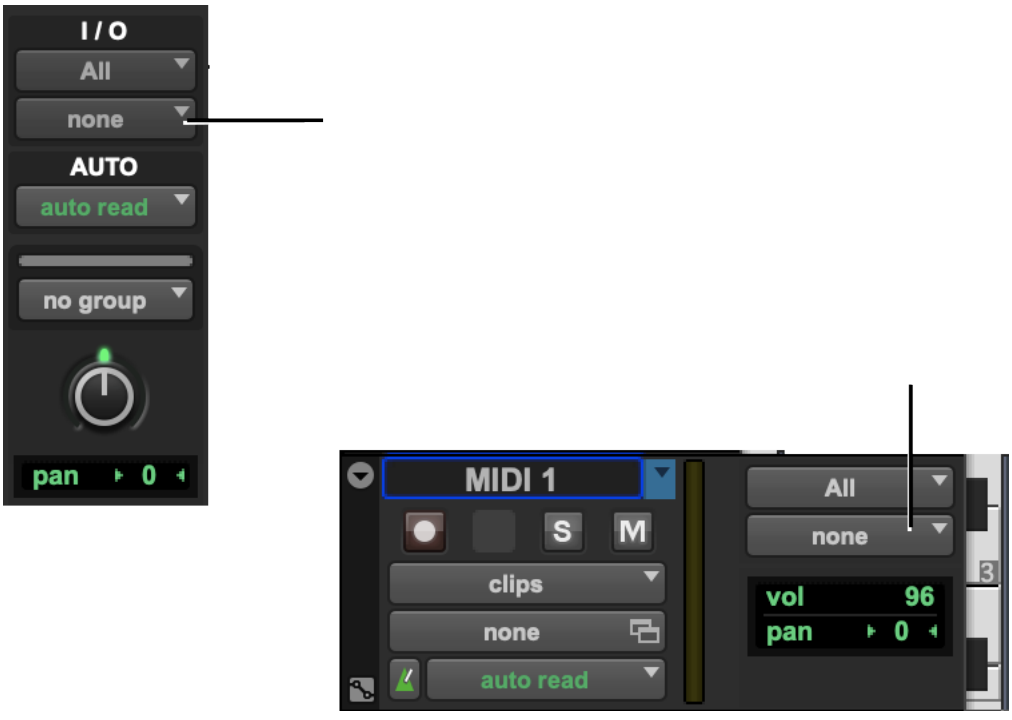


MIDI track Input selector



Instrument track MIDI Input selector

4. From the MIDI Output selector, select the device and channel for MIDI playback.



MIDI track Output selector



Instrument track MIDI Input selector

5. To assign multiple destinations to a single MIDI or Instrument track, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the MIDI Output selector and select additional channels from any device. When multiple destinations are selected for a single MIDI track, a plus sign ("+") appears next to the first destination name in the track's MIDI Output selector.
6. To assign a default program change to the track, do the following:
    a. Click the Patch Select button.
    b. Make the necessary selections for program and bank select.
    c. Click **Done**.

    Default program changes are sent whenever the track is played. For more information, see "Patch Select (Program and Bank Changes)" on page 1052.
7. If recording to multiple MIDI or Instrument tracks, repeat the preceding steps for each track, then continue to the next step.
8. To use a click, enable and configure the click, and set a default tempo and meter for the session (see "Recording with a Click" on page 765).
9. Enable either Wait for Note or Countoff in the Transport window.
10. To replace existing track material, disable MIDI Merge in the Transport window (see "MIDI Merge/Replace" on page 813).
11. To automatically quantize material as it is recorded, enable **Input Quantize** (**Event > MIDI Operations > Input Quantize**). See "Input Quantize" on page 812.
12. To start recording from the beginning of the session, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
13. Record enable the MIDI or Instrument track by clicking its Record Enable button.

    To record enable additional MIDI and Instrument tracks, Shift-click their Record Enable buttons.
14. Make sure that **Options > MIDI Thru** is selected, then play your MIDI controller. The MIDI device or instrument plugin assigned to the track's MIDI Output sounds, and the track's meters register MIDI activity (note velocity).

You are now ready to record MIDI data to the record-enabled MIDI and Instrument tracks.

To monitor audio from an external MIDI instrument, select the corresponding audio Input Path for your MIDI instrument on the Instrument track (or use an Auxiliary Input track). See "Signal Routing for Monitoring and Submixing" on page 1491.

Recording MIDI and Instrument Tracks

In Pro Tools, you can record one or more MIDI and Instrument tracks (up to 32 in any combination simultaneously). Recording simultaneously to multiple tracks lets you:

- Record from multiple MIDI devices at the same time, such as when recording several performers.
- Record multiple channels from the same device, such as recording from a split keyboard.
- Transfer MIDI tracks from an external MIDI sequencer.

To take full advantage of the MIDI editing capabilities in Pro Tools, make sure to record tick-based MIDI tracks with a click. This ensures that recorded data aligns with the session's bar and beat boundaries. You can also record to sample-based MIDI tracks without a click and derive the tempo and meter from the performance.

To record audio from a MIDI instrument or instrument plugin, bus the audio output of the Instrument or Auxiliary Input track that is monitoring the instrument to an audio track. Record enable the audio track and start recording. See "Recording Audio from a MIDI Instrument" on page 829.

To record to one or more MIDI or Instrument tracks:

1. Configure a MIDI or Instrument track for recording (see "Configuring MIDI or Instrument Tracks for Recording" on page 814).
2. Ensure that the track to which you want to record is record enabled.

   To record enable additional MIDI and Instrument tracks, Shift-click their Record Enable buttons.

   To move record enable from the current MIDI or Instrument track (containing the current Edit selection) to the previous MIDI or Instrument track, press Command Up Arrow (Mac) or Control+Up Arrow (Windows). To move record enable from the current MIDI or Instrument track (containing the current Edit selection) to the next MIDI or Instrument track, press Command Down Arrow (Mac) or Control+Down Arrow (Windows).

   To optimize workflow efficiency, no more than any combination of up to 32 MIDI and Instrument tracks can be record-enabled at the same time.

3. Ensure that Normal Record mode is selected (see "Record Modes" on page 771).
4. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording (Record Ready mode). The Track Record Enabled indicator lights red.



Record button in Record Ready mode

5. Do one of the following:

- Click Play to start recording. If using Countoff, Pro Tools counts off the specified number of measures and then begins recording.
- If Wait for Note is enabled, do not click the Play button; recording will begin automatically as soon as you start playing (when a MIDI event is received).

6. Play your MIDI controller.



Recording progress indicated on an Instrument track

7. When you are finished playing, click Stop in the Transport to stop recording.

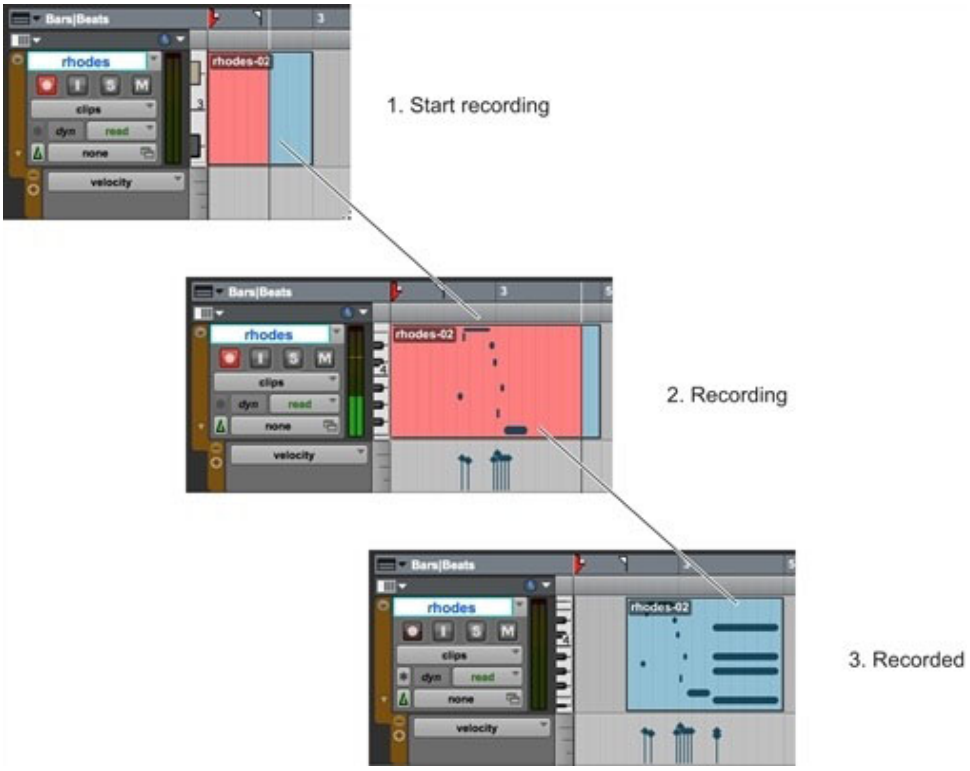
   For each record-enabled track, a new MIDI clip is created and appears both in the playlist and in the Clip List.

Press F12 to start recording immediately. You can also press Command+Spacebar (Mac) or Control+Spacebar (Windows) to start recording. For more information, see "Recording Shortcuts" on page 789.

MIDI Clips Are Created on Barlines

When recording MIDI, or when manually entering MIDI notes, the beginning and ending of MIDI clips are created on bar boundaries. This greatly facilitates arranging MIDI clips in a musically meaningful way, in whole bar lengths.

The beginning of a recorded MIDI clip always starts on the barline immediately before the first MIDI note (Note On) of the clip. Likewise, the MIDI clip ends on the barline immediately following the last note (Note Off) of the clip. The resulting clip contains all MIDI data recorded.



Recorded MIDI clip fits to nearest whole bars based on first and last recorded MIDI events

Recording Over Existing MIDI Clips

Unlike audio clips, existing MIDI clips are never overwritten even though MIDI data within clips can be overwritten. When MIDI Merge mode is disabled and recording MIDI on a track with existing clips, newly recorded MIDI data overwrites existing MIDI data within existing clips, but the existing clip boundaries remain. New MIDI clips are only created to fill the gaps between existing MIDI clip boundaries. Typically, new MIDI clips are always created on barlines. However, if existing clip boundaries are not on barlines, newly created clips are bound by the existing clips.

It is possible to have the Note On of a MIDI note be in one MIDI clip, and its Note Off be in a subsequent MIDI clip. It is also possible to have the clip end before the Note Off, resulting in notes that extend beyond the clip boundary. However, Note Ons can never precede the beginning of a clip.

Playing Back Recorded MIDI

To play back recorded MIDI and Instrument tracks:

1. To start from the beginning of the session, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
2. Click Play in the Transport to begin playback.

   The recorded MIDI data plays back through each track's assigned Output device (port) and channel.

To monitor audio from an external MIDI instrument, select the corresponding audio Input Path for your MIDI instrument on the Instrument track (or use an Auxiliary Input track). See "Signal Routing for Monitoring and Submixing" on page 1491.

Undoing MIDI Recording

You can undo previous MIDI record takes.

To undo a MIDI recording:

- Once the Transport has been stopped, choose **`Edit > Undo MIDI Recording`**.

  The track's playlist is restored to its previous state. However, the following conditions apply:

  - If you punched in and out several times before stopping the Transport, only the last punch is undone.
  - When using Loop Record mode, all takes from each record pass are discarded.

Canceling a Record Take

It is also possible to discard the current record take *before* the Transport is stopped.

To cancel a take while recording:

- Press Command+Period (.) (Mac) or Control+Period (.) (Windows) before the Transport is stopped.

  When in Loop Record mode, all takes from each record pass are discarded.

Input Monitoring on Instrument Tracks

Instrument tracks support Input Monitoring just like audio tracks—although audio tracks switch between Input Monitoring and playback, Instruments tracks continue to play back and merge input. This lets you listen to the audio output of the track in real-time, which is particularly useful for live performances or when checking the output of a plugin with MIDI output functionality. This can be done without needing to record-enable the track.



Instrument track, Input Monitoring enabled

Note that Input Monitoring on an Instrument track (as well as recording) is affected by the MIDI Delay Compensation setting. When MIDI Delay Compensation is enabled, the Input Monitoring button lights blue, indicating that the output you hear is compensated for any delays ensuring a tight and coherent sound. This is not recommended for live performance, but is useful for ensuring accurate timing of virtual instruments with built-in sequencers (for example).



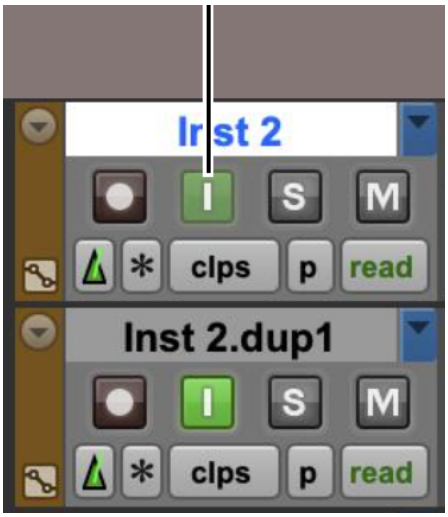
Instrument track, both Input Monitoring and MIDI Delay Compensation enabled

Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Input Monitoring button to switch between “blue” and “green” modes. Blue indicates that both Input monitoring and delay compensation are enabled. Audio is aligned with the rest of the session, but there will be latency with live MIDI input. Green indicates that Input monitoring is enabled, but delay compensation is disabled.

MIDI Input Monitoring Follows Selected Track

Pro Tools has replace the **`Default Thru Instrument`** preference available in earlier versions with the **`MIDI Input Monitoring Follows Selected Track`** option (**`Setup > Preferences > MIDI`**). When enabled, Input Monitoring is automatically engaged whenever you select an Instrument track. If you then select a different Instrument track, Input Monitoring is moved to that track.

When Input Monitoring is automatically enabled (rather than explicitly enabled) on an Instrument track, the Input Monitoring button is dimly illuminated.



Input Monitoring button dimmed



Input Monitoring button dimmed

MIDI Live Mode

When **`MIDI Live Mode`** is enabled, all live instrument tracks are treated as live audio tracks. Audio within the same signal chain behaves similarly, and recorded data is shifted to align with the recorded MIDI. As such, playback will sound exactly as recorded.

When **MIDI Live Mode** is disabled, Pro Tools operates in legacy mode. It stays in sync with the Instrument track output mixer's inputs but does not remain in sync with the session.

It is recommended that you disable **MIDI Live Mode** when MIDI Loopback, MIDI Hardware I/O devices, IAC bus loopbacks, or a low **Hardware Buffer Size** is required, otherwise MIDI will be late depending on the **Hardware Buffer Size** setting.

To enable (or disable) MIDI Live Mode:

- Select (or deselect) **Options > MIDI Live Mode**.

MIDI Input Display

The MIDI Input display in the Edit window toolbar shows chord names as they are received by MIDI and Instrument tracks. You can use this display to ensure that you are playing the right chords for your music when recording MIDI.

The MIDI Input Display can also be shown in MIDI Editor windows, see "MIDI Input Display" on page 1075.

To show (or hide) the MIDI Input display in the Edit window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **View > Other Displays > MIDI Input Display**.
- Click the Edit Window Toolbar menu and select (or deselect) **MIDI Input Display**.



Editor Window toolbar, MIDI Input Display shows that a A-flat major 7 chord is received at an Instrument or MIDI track input

MIDI In and Out Indicators

Above the MIDI Input display, the MIDI In and MIDI Out indicators light when MIDI Input is received on any MIDI or Instrument track, and similarly when playback of MIDI from MIDI or Instrument tracks occur.

MIDI Punch Recording Over a Specified Range

You can set Pro Tools to automatically *punch* record over a specific range in a MIDI or Instrument track. The range's start (*punch in*) and end (*punch out*) points must be specified before recording. Recording starts at the punch-in point and continues until the punch-out point is reached.

If pre-roll is enabled, the track material leading up to the punch-in point plays. You can start playing during the pre-roll to get the "feel." However, MIDI is *not* recorded until the punch-in point is reached. Only when that point is reached does Pro Tools begin recording. Additionally, for any note that is played before the punch-in point, but is released after that point, it *is* recorded and the start of the note is quantized to the punch-in point.

If post-roll is enabled, playback continues after recording stops for the specified post-roll amount.

To punch in on a MIDI or Instrument track:

1. Configure a MIDI or Instrument track for recording (see "Configuring MIDI or Instrument Tracks for Recording" on page 814).
2. Ensure that Normal Record mode is selected (see "Record Modes" on page 771).

3. In the Transport window, disable Wait for Note and Countoff.
4. Select **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
5. With the Selector tool, select the punch range in the track's playlist.

   For other methods of setting the record range, see "Setting Punch and Loop Points" on page 790.

6. To hear existing track material up to the start point, or after the end point, enable and set pre- and post-roll times (see "Setting Pre- and Post-Roll" on page 794).
7. Record enable the track containing the previous take.
8. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording. The Record button flashes.
9. Click Play to start recording.
10. When you have finished recording, click Stop in the Transport. The newly recorded MIDI data appears in the track.

Punch Recording During Playback with MIDI

You do not have to set a record range to punch in on a MIDI or Instrument track. In fact, you can punch in and out at any time during playback. Unlike audio tracks, it is not necessary to enable QuickPunch to perform real-time punch recording.

To punch record with MIDI:

1. Configure a MIDI or Instrument track for recording (see "Configuring MIDI or Instrument Tracks for Recording" on page 814).
2. Ensure that Normal Record mode is selected (see "Record Modes" on page 771).
3. In the Transport window, disable Wait for Note and Countoff.
4. Record enable the track containing the previous take.
5. Click Play in the Transport to start playback.
6. When you reach the punch-in point, do one of the following:
   - Click Record in the Transport.
   - For Pro Tools systems that support a connected footswitch, press the footswitch at the punch-in point.

   Footswitches are supported by 003 family interfaces, Mbox Pro, and Mbox 2 Pro, as well as any Pro Tools system with a supported control surface.

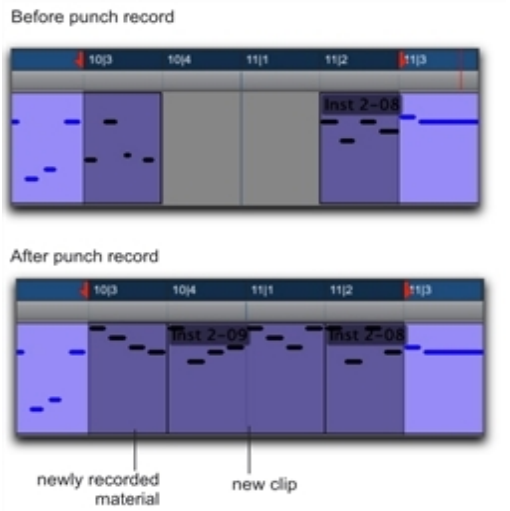
   The Record button in the Transport and the track's Record Enable button stop flashing and stay lit during recording.
7. To punch out, click Record again (or press the footswitch).

   Pro Tools exits Record mode and continues playing. You can perform additional punches during the same pass.

MIDI Clips and Punch Recording

Depending on the record range, new clips may be created after punch recording.

For example, if MIDI Merge mode is disabled, recording overwrites any existing MIDI data within the record range. Since the start and end times for recording are located within both of the existing clips, newly recorded notes are written into both of the existing clips, and into a new clip created to fill the space between them.



Clip added after punch record

When selecting an entire clip, or a section within a clip, before punching, no new clips are created. In this instance, only the material residing within the existing clip changes, with no new material recorded outside the clip.

Unlike audio recording, MIDI recording in this scenario is destructive. Newly recorded MIDI data overwrites existing MIDI data while leaving the existing clip boundaries intact.

If the MIDI data within a clip is altered because of a record take, the original material is either lost (unless you choose Edit › Undo MIDI Recording) or combined with new material (if MIDI Merge was enabled during recording). If an existing clip contains material you want to keep, use Duplicate to make a copy of the clip ("Duplicating Clips" on page 1243), or duplicate the track's playlist or record in a new playlist to keep a backup (see "Working with Playlists" on page 966).

Loop Recording MIDI

Loop recording with MIDI is supported by two methods:

- In Normal (Nondestructive) Record mode, enable Loop Playback and MIDI Merge for drum machine style loop recording.
- Use Loop Record mode to record multiple takes on each record pass. This is similar to loop recording audio.

Loop Recording in MIDI Merge Mode

For MIDI loop recording, use Normal (Nondestructive) Record mode with Loop Playback and MIDI Merge enabled. With this method, MIDI is recorded and merged to the same clip with each new record pass—for example, you can record hi-hats on the first pass and kick and snare on the next.

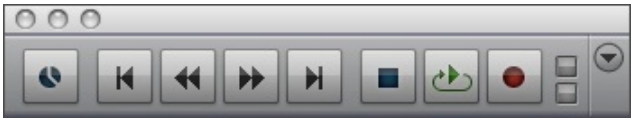
For drum machine-style step entry, use Step Input (see "Step Input Command" on page 1433).

Make sure that MIDI Merge is enabled in the Transport window, otherwise (in Replace mode) each subsequent take destructively replaces the previous take.

You can record enable a different MIDI or Instrument track while loop recording. While pressing Command (Mac) or Control (Windows), use the Up/Down Arrows to record enable the previous or next MIDI or Instrument track.

To loop record in MIDI Merge mode:

1. Configure a MIDI or Instrument track for recording (see "Configuring MIDI or Instrument Tracks for Recording" on page 814).
2. Ensure that Normal Record mode is selected (see "Record Modes" on page 771).
3. Select **Options > Loop Playback**. When Loop Playback is enabled, a loop symbol appears in the Play button.



4. Record enable the MIDI or Instrument track. Ensure that no audio tracks are record-enabled.
5. In the Transport window, click the MIDI Merge button so it is highlighted.
6. Disable Wait for Note and Countoff in the Transport window.
7. Select **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
8. With the Selector tool, select the loop range in the track's playlist.

   For other methods of setting the record range, see "Setting Punch and Loop Points" on page 790.

9. To hear track material up to the start point of the loop, enable and set the pre-roll time (see "Setting Pre- and Post-Roll" on page 794).
10. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording. The Record button flashes.
11. Click Play to start recording.

    The Record button flashes during pre-roll. When the start point is reached, Pro Tools begins recording. When the end point is reached, Pro Tools loops back to the start point and continues playing and recording.
12. Play your MIDI controller. Newly recorded MIDI data appears as a clip in the record track. On each successive take, recorded material shows up in the clip, without replacing material from previous takes.
13. To switch to a new record track, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows), and press the Up/Down Arrow keys to record enable the previous or next MIDI or Instrument track.
14. When you are finished recording, click Stop in the Transport.

    The newly recorded MIDI data appears as a MIDI clip in the track's playlist, and in the Clip List.

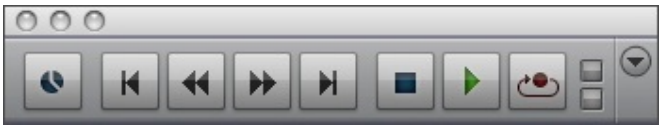
Loop Recording Multiple Takes

When recording MIDI in Loop Record mode, new clips are created each time new material is received during a record pass. This differs somewhat from loop recording audio, where Pro Tools creates a single audio file that comprises all takes, which appear as individual clips in the Clip List.

You can use MIDI loop recording to record successive takes without stopping the record process, thereby capturing your creative spontaneity. Another advantage with this method of recording MIDI, which is nondestructive, is that all existing and newly recorded clips remain intact (and available in the Clip List).

To record MIDI in Loop Record mode:

1. Configure a MIDI or Instrument track for recording (see "Configuring MIDI or Instrument Tracks for Recording" on page 814).
2. Select **Options > Loop Record**. When Loop Record mode is enabled, a loop symbol appears in the Record button.



3. If you have not done so already, record enable the MIDI or Instrument track by clicking its Record Enable button. Make sure no audio tracks are record-enabled.
4. Disable Wait for Note and Countoff in the Transport window.
5. Select **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
6. With the Selector tool, select the loop range in the track's playlist.

   For other methods of setting the record range, see "Setting Punch and Loop Points" on page 790.

7. To hear track material up to the start point of the loop, enable and set the pre-roll time (see "Setting Pre- and Post-Roll" on page 794).
8. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording. The Record button flashes.
9. Click Play to start recording.

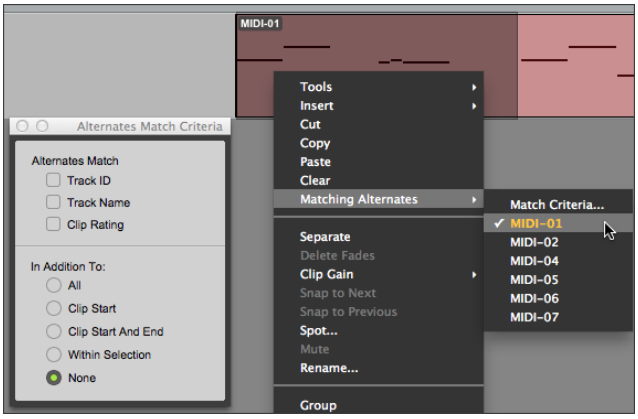
   The Record button flashes during the pre-roll. When the start point is reached, Pro Tools begins recording. When the end point is reached, Pro Tools loops back to the start point and continues playing and recording.
10. Play your MIDI controller. A new MIDI clip containing the newly recorded material is automatically created and appears in the track's playlist, replacing the previous clip. Clips are replaced (nondestructively) during subsequent record passes when new MIDI material is received.
11. When you are finished recording, click Stop in the Transport.

    The recorded takes appear as clips in the Clip List and are numbered sequentially. The takes, which are the same length and easily interchangeable, can be selected from the Matches pop-up menu—even while the session plays or loops.

To select the various record takes:

1. Ensure that the Matching Criteria window is correctly configured (see "Matching Criteria Window" on page 803).
2. Do one of the following:

- Right-click the clip with the Selector or Grabber tools, and select a take from the Matches submenu in the pop-up menu.



Selecting an alternate MIDI take

- With the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) at the precise beginning of the loop or punch range and select a different take from the Alternates pop-up menu.
- If the take currently residing in the track is selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) anywhere on the selected take and select a different take from the Alternates pop-up menu.

The selected take (clip) replaces the previous take and snaps precisely to the correct location.

For more information on auditioning and managing takes, see "Selecting Alternate Takes" on page 801.

MIDI Step Input

Step Input lets you use a MIDI keyboard (including the Pro Tools MIDI Keyboard window), or any other MIDI controller that sends MIDI note data to enter notes individually, one step at a time. This gives you precise control over note placement, duration, and velocity. With MIDI Step Input you can also create musical passages that might be difficult to play accurately, or at faster tempos.

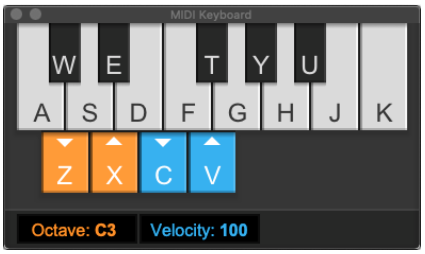
For more information on Step Input, see "Step Input Command" on page 1433.

MIDI Keyboard Window

The Pro Tools MIDI Keyboard window lets you play MIDI notes from your computer keyboard. For example, if you press A on your computer keyboard, it plays C; if you press T on the keyboard, it plays F#/Gb. You can also click in the MIDI Keyboard window to play notes. The key-to-note mappings are shown on the keyboard itself. The range is restricted to one octave since it is being played by your computer keyboard, but you can transpose that octave range down or up from –C2 to C8 using the Z and X keys. You can also change the MIDI note velocity from 1–127 using the C and V keys.

To open (or close) the MIDI Keyboard window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **Window > MIDI Keyboard**.
- Press Shift+K.



You can use the MIDI Keyboard window to play MIDI Thru, record MIDI, or enter MIDI using Step Input on MIDI and Instrument tracks.

To play MIDI Thru or record MIDI on an Instrument or MIDI track using the MIDI Keyboard window:

1. Open the MIDI Keyboard window.
2. Ensure that **MIDI Thru** is enabled (**Options > MIDI Thru**).
3. Ensure that **All** is selected as the MIDI Input for the MIDI or Instrument track.
4. Ensure that the MIDI Output for the track is assigned to the MIDI instrument you want to play (either an Instrument plugin or an external MIDI device).
5. Record enable the track.
6. Press the keys on your computer keyboard corresponding to the notes you want (or click keys in the MIDI Keyboard window).
7. To record, record arm the transport and press play.

Recording System Exclusive Data

Pro Tools supports recording and playing System Exclusive data (Sysex) with MIDI tracks. This allows you to use MIDI tracks in Pro Tools to store patch and configuration data for your MIDI devices, or to record real-time Sysex changes for a particular parameter of a MIDI device that cannot be controlled by a standard MIDI controller.

To record a Sysex dump at the beginning of a MIDI track:

1. Make sure that the MIDI OUT for the device sending the Sysex is connected to your MIDI interface's MIDI IN.
2. In the MIDI Input Filter dialog, enable **Only** and **System Exclusive**.
3. Configure a MIDI track for recording (see "Configuring MIDI or Instrument Tracks for Recording" on page 814).
4. Ensure that Normal Record mode is selected (see "Record Modes" on page 771).
5. Record enable a MIDI track.
6. Enable Wait for Note in the Transport window.
7. To start recording from the beginning of the session, click Return to Zero in the Transport.
8. When you are ready to begin recording, click Record in the Transport window. The Record, Play, and Wait for Note buttons flash, indicating that Pro Tools is waiting for MIDI data.
9. Initiate the Sysex transfer from the MIDI device, according to the manufacturer's instructions. Pro

Tools automatically begins recording as soon as it starts to receive Sysex data.

10. When the Sysex transfer is complete, click Stop in the Transport.

The newly recorded MIDI data appears as a MIDI clip in the track's playlist, and in the Clip List. MIDI clips that contain System Exclusive data appear blank when the Track View is set to **Clips**.

To see the Sysex event blocks, which indicate the location of the data, set the Track View to **Sysex** (see "Clips View for MIDI and Instrument Tracks" on page 859).

For information on moving and copying of Sysex data, see "System Exclusive Events" on page 1057.

To send Sysex data from Pro Tools to an external MIDI device:

1. For the device receiving the System Exclusive data, make sure its MIDI IN is connected to the MIDI interface's MIDI OUT. Also, make sure the device is set to receive Sysex. Some devices require that memory protect be off. For more information, see the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Make sure that the MIDI track containing the Sysex data is not record enabled.
3. Click the track's MIDI Output selector and assign the device from the pop-up menu.
4. Configure the external MIDI device to receive Sysex data according to the manufacturer's instructions.
5. Click Play in the Transport to begin playback. Pro Tools begins playing and transmits the previously recorded Sysex to the assigned MIDI device.

Recording Audio from a MIDI Instrument

Typically, you will monitor the audio from MIDI instruments (both hardware and plugins) using Instrument and Auxiliary Input tracks. During the final mixdown, audio from Instrument and Auxiliary Input tracks can be included when using Bounce Mix, or on a bussed recording path if recording to a new track.

When using instrument plugins, you may want to record the audio from a MIDI instrument to a new track before mixing in order to free up DSP resources.

Recording Audio from an Instrument Plugin

To record audio from an instrument plugin:

1. Create a new Instrument track.
2. Insert an instrument plugin on that track.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Record your MIDI performance on the Instrument track.
   - Manually enter MIDI data in the Instrument track.

   You can also record the MIDI and audio from your performance at the same time.
4. Create a new audio track with the same number of channels as the Instrument track (such as stereo).
5. Set the Instrument track's Audio Output Path selector to a bus (for example, Bus 1–2).
6. Set the audio track's Audio Input Path selector to the same bus.
7. Set the audio track's Audio Output Path selector to the main monitoring path).
8. Record enable the audio track.
9. Do one of the following:

- To record from the beginning of the session, click Return To Zero in the Transport.
- Make a Timeline selection for the record range.

10. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording.
11. Click Play in the Transport to start recording.



Bus recording audio from an instrument plugin

12. When your previously recorded MIDI performance is finished playing, click Stop in the Transport to stop recording.

Recording Audio from an External MIDI Instrument

You can record audio from an external MIDI instrument in one of two ways:

- By bussing audio from the output of the Instrument (or Auxiliary Input) track used to monitor the MIDI instrument to an audio track for recording.
- By setting the audio track's Audio Input Path selector to the same Audio Input Path as the Instrument (or Auxiliary Input) track used for monitoring the external MIDI instrument.

This second method avoids any additional latency associated with bussing. However, be sure to mute the Instrument (or Auxiliary Input) track used for monitoring while recording the same audio path to the audio track.

Retrospective Record for MIDI

When you play a MIDI controller (such as a USB MIDI keyboard or trigger pad) along with the playback of your Pro Tools session or project, your MIDI performance is stored in a buffer by Pro Tools behind the scenes. As long as any MIDI or Instrument is record-enabled, Pro Tools captures any MIDI performance during playback whether you are recording or not. For example, if were playing along with your session, but did not actually record your performance, Pro Tools captures it for you. You can then place it on a MIDI or

Instrument track spotted to the exact time of your original performance on the Timeline. Using **Retrospective Record**, you won't lose that perfect take or that great musical idea just because you were only playing along with the session but not actually recording.

⚠ **Retrospective Record takes into account the MIDI Import Filter settings. For example, if Pitch Bend is filtered, but the Modulation Wheel (MIDI CC 1) is not, when you perform using both any Pitch Bend activity is excluded while Modulation Wheel activity is included.**

⚠ **Pro Tools only captures your MIDI performance when a MIDI or Instrument track is record enabled, or if the Default Thru Instrument in the Pro Tools MIDI preferences is set to any option other than None (Setup > Preferences > MIDI).**

To recover a MIDI performance that was played, but not recorded:

1. First, one of the following conditions must be met for Pro Tools to buffer any MIDI performance:
   - There is at least one MIDI or Instrument track in the session and **Default Thru Instrument** is set to any option other than **None** in the MIDI Preferences (**Setup > Preferences > MIDI**).
   - Any MIDI or Instrument track is record enabled and its MIDI Input selector is set to either your MIDI instrument or **All**.
2. Start playback of your Pro Tools session.
3. Play your MIDI controller along with session playback. You will hear your performance either from the designated Default Thru Instrument (if one is assigned in the MIDI Preferences) or from the instrument (virtual or hardware) assigned to the MIDI output of the record-enabled MIDI or Instrument track to which your controller is assigned.



Instrument track record-enabled, Transport not record-enabled, MIDI performance sounds during playback

4. Choose **Events > Retrospective Record**.

   Press Option+Shift+Z (Mac) or Alt+Shift+Z (Windows) to write your MIDI performance to the record-enabled MIDI or Instrument track.

   Pro Tools places your MIDI performance in the record-enabled track matching the time of the original

performance on the Timeline.



MIDI performance written to record enabled track using Retrospective Record command

Additional Behaviors with Retrospective Record for MIDI

- Pro Tools lets you apply **`Retrospective Record`** during playback.
- Pro Tools lets you play over a MIDI or Instrument track that already contains MIDI data. When using **`Retrospective Record`** on a track that already contains MIDI data, your performance is written to and merged with the existing MIDI data on that track.

31 Punch Recording Modes

Punch recording is used in many areas of audio production for film, video, and music.

Introduction to Punch Recording Modes

Once basic track material has been recorded, it is often necessary to replace some, but not all, of the audio that makes up each track. Punch recording lets you manually punch one or more audio tracks in and out of recording without stopping the Transport.

You do not need to use QuickPunch or any other audio punch recording mode to punch record with MIDI tracks. MIDI tracks can be punched while in Normal (Nondestructive) Record mode, and in Destructive Record mode.

Pro Tools Punch Recording Modes

Pro Tools provides three different manual punch recording modes:

QuickPunch

A nondestructive Record mode that lets record-enabled tracks be punched in and punched out during playback by clicking the Record button in the Transport. QuickPunch mode is available on all systems.

TrackPunch (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

A nondestructive Record mode that lets individual tracks be punched in, punched out, and taken out of record enable without interrupting online recording and playback.

DestructivePunch (Pro Tools Ultimate Only)

A destructive Record mode that maintains a single continuous audio file per punch track, and lets individual tracks be punched in, punched out, and taken out of record enable without interrupting online recording and playback.

To automatically punch in and out on record-enabled audio tracks over a specific range, see "Audio Punch Recording Over a Specified Range" on page 796.

Guidelines for Punch Recording

This topic lists the basic settings and guidelines for Pro Tools punch recording, including the following:

- "Voice Requirements for Punch Recording" below.
- "Delay Compensation and DestructivePunch Mode" on the next page.
- "Audio Files, Clips and Takes" on page 835.
- "Preferences for Punch Recording" on page 836 (for crossfades, as well as transport and monitor configuration settings).

Voice Requirements for Punch Recording

The maximum number of tracks that can be punched depends on the type of system you are using, as well as the number of available voices. The following topics provide guidelines for voice usage with punch recording that can be useful when managing resources during sessions.

Pro Tools (QuickPunch Only)

QuickPunch capabilities for Pro Tools depends on the total number of voices available. This will vary depending on the number of tracks and plugins in use in the current session (which affects the number of available voices).

QuickPunch uses CPU processing power, and may reduce the number of tracks and plugins you can use.

For details on voice capabilities, see "Pro Tools Artist Capabilities with Different Hardware Configurations" on page 37.

To make more voices available for punch recording:

1. Identify tracks that are not record-enabled, and do not need to be heard while recording.
2. Make those tracks inactive.

Pro Tools Ultimate (QuickPunch, TrackPunch, and DestructivePunch)

When using any punch recording mode with Pro Tools Ultimate, two voices are required for each record-enabled mono track. This means that you can punch record up to half the total number of voices available on your system.

If the required number of voices for the record-enabled tracks is not available when switching to QuickPunch, TrackPunch, or DestructivePunch mode, you are prompted to free up the necessary voices.

To make more voices available for punch recording:

Identify tracks that are not record-enabled, and do not need to be heard while recording, and do any of the following:

- Set voice assignments for tracks to Off.
- Make tracks inactive.
- Group all Native plugins before DSP plugins.

Voices that are in use by other tracks, but not record-enabled, may be “stolen” during punch recording as necessary.

When any punch recording mode is enabled, voice playback priority is as follows (from highest to lowest playback priority):

- Tracks with assigned voices that are not record-enabled.
- Tracks with assigned voices that *are* record-enabled.
- Tracks with Dynamically Allocated Voicing that are not record-enabled.
- Tracks with Dynamically Allocated Voicing that *are* record-enabled.

If a session has plenty of available voices, you should have no trouble punch recording tracks using Dynamically Allocated Voicing. However, if you are running out of voices, and want to ensure that a track is heard when punch recording, be sure to set the voicing tracks that you don’t need to punch into to **Off**.

Delay Compensation and DestructivePunch Mode

When using DestructivePunch to punch in on an existing recording, make sure the Delay Compensation settings are the same as when the original file was recorded. If they differ, the punched-in audio will not be time-accurate to the original recording.

- If Delay Compensation was inactive when recording the original file, it should be deactivated while using DestructivePunch.
- If Delay Compensation was active when recording the original file, it should be kept active while using DestructivePunch.

To ensure that the Delay Compensation path on record tracks remains consistent while using DestructivePunch, you need to prevent Pro Tools from using the Low Latency monitoring path when record tracks switch to Input monitoring.

To apply Delay Compensation to a track where Delay Compensation was suspended, do one of the following:

- Right-click the Track Compensation indicator on the track and select **`Auto Low Latency Off`**.
- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Track Compensation indicator on the track.

To apply Delay Compensation to all selected tracks where Delay Compensation was suspended, do one of the following:

- Shift-Right-click the Track Compensation indicator on the track and select **`Auto Low Latency Off`**.
- Command-Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Start-Shift-click (Windows) the Track Compensation indicator on the track.

For more information, see "Delay Compensation" on page 1500.

Audio Files, Clips and Takes

QuickPunch and TrackPunch Modes

QuickPunch and TrackPunch are *nondestructive* recording modes. Instead of replacing audio while punching, QuickPunch and TrackPunch create new audio files for each *pass* (a pass is one cycle of starting and stopping the Transport).

Pro Tools begins recording a new audio file when playback begins, automatically generating *clips* in that file at each punch-in and punch-out point. Up to 200 of these "running punches" can be performed in a single pass. QuickPunch and TrackPunch provide instantaneous monitor switching on punch-out.

After recording with QuickPunch or TrackPunch, the new audio clips appear in the Clip List. This includes the whole-file audio clip encompassing all punches from the record pass, along with the clips derived for each punch.

Names for the punched clips are numbered consecutively starting with "01." For example, if QuickPunch is used to punch in twice on a track called "Lead Gtr," a clip for the parent audio file appears and is named "Lead Gtr_01," and two clips for the punches are named "Lead Gtr_01-01" and "Lead Gtr_01-02."

If you stop playback and record additional punches with QuickPunch (or TrackPunch), a new whole file clip is created (since one is created for each pass), and subsequent clips are named by incrementing the first two digits in the name. For example, on the second pass, the punched clips are named "Lead Gtr_02-01," "Lead Gtr_02-02," and so forth.

DestructivePunch Mode

DestructivePunch is a *destructive* recording mode which permanently replaces pre-existing track material with newly recorded "punch" audio. Pro Tools only records while tracks are punched in, inserting new material and replacing audio in the track playlist.

Preferences for Punch Recording

(Crossfade, Transport, and Record Settings) Pro Tools provides several punch-related preference settings that let you specify how crossfades, monitoring and transport functions are to perform during and after recording passes. These settings optimize Pro Tools fades, transport and track behavior for different types of tasks, including dubbing, mixing, and overdubbing.

Crossfades while Punch Recording

Pro Tools places crossfades at each in and out point, for smooth transitions between punch clips. You can specify the crossfade length for QuickPunch and TrackPunch modes (DestructivePunch uses a fixed crossfade length which cannot be changed). After punch recording is completed, all crossfades can be edited in the same manner as standard crossfades (see "Fades and Crossfades" on page 943).

QuickPunch/TrackPunch Crossfade Length

Pro Tools can automatically write a crossfade for each punch point when using QuickPunch and TrackPunch. The length for these crossfades is set with the **QuickPunch/TrackPunch Crossfade Length** option on the Editing Preferences page.

To set the QuickPunch/TrackPunch Crossfade Length:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Editing** tab.
2. Enter a new value (in msec) for the **QuickPunch/TrackPunch CrossFade Length**. A good general-purpose crossfade length for punches is 10 milliseconds. If you set the preference to zero, Pro Tools will not create any crossfades at the punch-in/out points.
3. Click **OK**.

If a value other than zero is specified for the **QuickPunch/TrackPunch Crossfade Length**, Pro Tools writes a pre-crossfade at the punch-in point (the fade occurs up to but not into the punched clip boundary), and a post-crossfade at punch-out (after the punched clip).

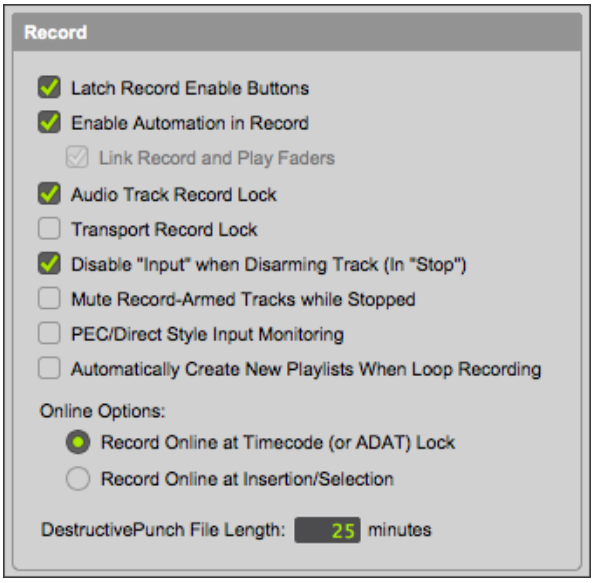
Regardless of the current QuickPunch/TrackPunch Crossfade Length setting, Pro Tools always executes a 4 millisecond “monitor only” crossfade (which is not written to disk) to avoid distracting pops or clicks that might occur as you enter and exit record mode.

DestructivePunch and Crossfades

DestructivePunch uses a fixed 10-millisecond linear crossfade at each in and out point. After punch recording is completed, crossfades can be edited in the same manner as standard crossfades (see "Fades and Crossfades" on page 943).

Transport and Record Settings

Transport and Record preferences for punch recording appear on the Operation Preferences page. These preferences specify how track and Transport record status respond during, between, and after punches and passes.



Transport RecordLock

This setting lets the Transport Record be configured to either emulate a digital dubber, or to maintain legacy behavior for the Transport master Record.

- When not enabled, the Transport Record disarms when Pro Tools is manually stopped or stops due to a loss of timecode. This replicates legacy Pro Tools recording behavior.
- When enabled, the Transport Record remains armed when playback or recording stops. This saves having to re-arm the Transport between takes, emulating digital dubber behavior.

Punching out of record by pressing Record on the Transport takes the transport out of record enable.

Destructive Recording and Transport RecordLock

As a precaution against accidentally recording over previous material, the **`Transport RecordLock`** option is automatically disabled and grayed out when Destructive record mode is enabled.

Audio Track RecordLock

This setting lets Pro Tools tracks either emulate a digital dubber, or maintain legacy behavior for track record status.

- When the **`Audio Track RecordLock`** option is enabled, the record-enabled audio tracks remain armed when playback or recording stops.
- When the **`Audio Track RecordLock`** option is not enabled, record-enabled audio tracks are taken out of record enable when Pro Tools is stopped. This prevents tracks from remaining armed from pass to pass, emulating track record behavior of a digital dubber.

For examples of how these settings can be applied, see "Example TrackPunch and DestructivePunch Workflows" on page 847.

Synchronization and Track Arming Options for Punch Recording

Synchronization settings for online punch recording vary depending on the type and capabilities of your Pro Tools system and other devices in your studio.

For basic timecode and synchronization information for Pro Tools, see "Working with Synchronization" on page 1837.

Pro Tools Ultimate with MachineControl lets you remotely arm tracks on supported 9-pin decks (or V-LAN for Transport only).

Choose Setup › Machine Track Arming Profiles to configure your system, and choose Window › Machine Track Arming to display the Machine Track Arming window.

For information on remote track arming with MachineControl, see Chapter 57, "MachineControl."

QuickPunch Audio Recording

QuickPunch is available on all systems and lets you instantaneously punch in and out all record-enabled audio tracks during playback by clicking the Record button in the Transport.

Many Pro Tools systems also let you use a footswitch to punch in and out. See the guide that came with your Pro Tools audio interface or control surface.

Recording with QuickPunch

To punch record with QuickPunch:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Options > QuickPunch**.
   - Right-click the Record button in the Transport and select **QuickPunch**.

   When QuickPunch is enabled, a "P" appears in the Record button in the Transport.



2. Check or reconfigure the crossfade setting for punch recording (see "QuickPunch/TrackPunch Crossfade Length" on page 836).
3. Click the track Record Enable button to record enable each track on which you want to punch in.

   If you cannot record enable tracks due to voice limitations, see "Voice Requirements for Punch Recording" on page 833.

4. Prepare to record by cueing Pro Tools to an appropriate location. To use pre-roll, enable a pre-roll value in the Transport window.
5. Start playback by clicking Play in the Transport window.
6. Do one of the following:
   - When you reach the punch-in point, click Record in the Transport.
   - For Pro Tools systems that support using a connected footswitch, step on the footswitch at the punch-in point.

   The Record button stops flashing and stays lit during recording.
7. To punch out, click Record again (or step on the footswitch).

   As Pro Tools continues playing, you can perform additional punches (up to 200). When recording multiple punches during a single pass, a single audio file is recorded from which Pro Tools creates the appropriate clips.

After a QuickPunch recording pass, the punched track's playlist in the Edit window displays the clips created by punching. You can use any of the Trim tools after punch recording to open up the head or tail of QuickPunch recorded clips, or to reveal the parent audio file that was recorded in the background. This lets you compensate for any late or missed punches.

For information on file and clip naming, see "Audio Files, Clips and Takes" on page 835.

QuickPunch with an Edit Selection

If you make an Edit selection and use QuickPunch, the following rules apply:

- If the Transport is not online, recording begins and stops whenever you click the Record button in the Transport—regardless of the selection's start or end point.
- If the Transport is online, punch-in/out behavior is controlled by the Online Options setting on the Operation Preferences page.
- If you select **`Record Online at Insertion/Selection`**, QuickPunch punches in and out only within the selection (or in the case of an insertion point, only after the insertion point).
- If you select **`Record Online at Timecode Lock`**, QuickPunch disregards the selection and punches in and out whenever you want (after Pro Tools has locked to timecode).

For information about online playback with Pro Tools, see the User Guide that came with your system. For information about synchronization with TrackPunch and DestructivePunch recording, see "Synchronization and Track Arming Options for Punch Recording" on page 837.

TrackPunch Audio Recording

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) TrackPunch mode lets you punch tracks in and out individually (one at a time) or punch multiple tracks in and out simultaneously. TrackPunch is a nondestructive punch mode which leaves previous material on disk. (To destructively replace audio on disk, see "DestructivePunch Audio Recording" on page 843).

TrackPunch Setup

Before using TrackPunch in a record pass you must configure Pro Tools, session, and track settings.

To configure Pro Tools:

1. Configure tracks, voicing, and other TrackPunch settings as needed (see "Guidelines for Punch Recording" on page 833).
2. Make sure Pro Tools is not recording or playing back (the Transport is stopped).

Enabling TrackPunch Mode

To enable TrackPunch mode, do any of the following:

- Select **`Options > TrackPunch`**.
- Right-click the Record button in the Transport, and select **`TrackPunch`** from the pop-up menu.
- Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Record button in the Transport to cycle through available Record modes until TrackPunch mode is selected (a "T" indicates TrackPunch mode).
- Press Command+Shift+T (Mac) or Control+Shift+T (Windows).

Transport Display of TrackPunch Status

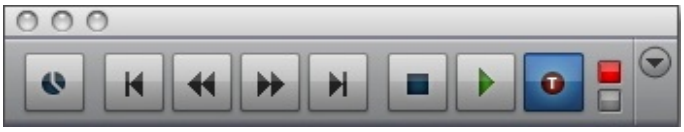


TrackPunch and TrackInput Status indicators in the Transport window

The Transport Record button indicates TrackPunch and Record status as follows:

When TrackPunch mode is enabled:

- A “T” appears in the Record button in the Transport.
- If at least one track is TrackPunch-enabled, the Record button lights solid blue.



TrackPunch mode, with at least one TrackPunch-enabled track

When TrackPunch mode is enabled and the transport is armed for recording:

- If no tracks are TrackPunch-enabled, the Record button in the Transport flashes gray and red.
- If at least one track is TrackPunch-enabled, the Record button flashes blue and red.
- If at least one TrackPunch-enabled track is also record-enabled, the Record button flashes blue and red, *and* the record LED lights.
- Whenever at least one audio track is recording, the Transport Record button lights solid red.

TrackPunch Enabling Tracks

Before each pass, you must TrackPunch enable all tracks that you intend to punch (you can TrackPunch enable tracks without record enabling them).

To TrackPunch enable one audio track:

- Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the track’s Record Enable button.

To TrackPunch enable or disable all audio tracks:

- Option-Control-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-click (Windows) a track’s Record Enable button.

To TrackPunch enable or disable all selected audio tracks:

- Option-Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-Shift-click (Windows) a track’s Record Enable button.

When TrackPunch enabled, Track record enable buttons light solid blue.

Create track groups for each stem or set of tracks on which you plan to punch, then use the Groups List to quickly select all tracks in the group.

Track Record Status Display

Each track’s Record Enable button indicates its TrackPunch and record enable status as follows:

- When a track is TrackPunch-enabled but not record-enabled, its Record Enable button lights solid blue.



Record Enable button, enabled

- When a track is both TrackPunch-enabled and record-enabled, its Record enable button flashes blue and red.
- When a track is record-enabled only, its Record Enable button flashes red.
- While a track is recording (in any mode), its Record Enable button lights solid red.



Red (not flashing) indicates recording (all modes)

Monitoring and Levels

To complete the setup for TrackPunch:

1. Configure monitoring for record-enabled tracks by selecting a mode from the Track menu, or using the TrackInput button, as appropriate. Choices include:
   - `Set Record Tracks to Auto Input`
   - `Set Record Tracks to Input Only`

   Selecting either monitoring mode only affects tracks that are record-enabled.
2. Start playback and compare levels of the input source with audio on disk. Click the TrackInput button to toggle the track source. When lit (green), the track is monitoring input. When unlit (gray), the track is monitoring from disk (see "Selecting Record Monitor Modes with TrackInput Monitoring" on page 782).
3. When you are satisfied with your levels, you are ready to start punch recording.

Using TrackPunch

After you have configured Pro Tools, tracks, and levels, you can record with TrackPunch in several ways.

Punching In on Individual Tracks

To punch in on individual tracks:

1. Make sure Pro Tools is in TrackPunch mode.
2. Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Record Enable button for each track you want to punch in, so that the track is TrackPunch-enabled only. The track's Record Enable button should light solid blue.
3. Click Record in the Transport to enter the TrackPunch Record Ready mode. The Record button flashes blue and red.
4. Click Play in the Transport to begin playback.
5. During playback, punch in and out on individual TrackPunch-enabled tracks by clicking their respective Record Enable buttons.
6. While continuing local or remote playback, do any of the following:
   - Punch in on other TrackPunch enabled tracks individually.
   - After punching out, take tracks out of record enable then record enable different TrackPunch enabled tracks.
   - Repeat as needed to punch other stems, tracks, or takes.
7. Stop playback. When you are finished with the record pass, track Record Enable status and transport Record Arm status follow the current **`Audio Track RecordLock`** and **`Transport RecordLock`** preference settings.

   After a TrackPunch recording pass, the punched track's playlist in the Edit window displays the clips created by punching. You can use any of the Trim tools after punch recording to open up the head or tail of TrackPunch recorded clips, or to reveal the parent audio file that was recorded in the background. This lets you compensate for any late or missed punches.

   For information on file and clip naming, see "Audio Files, Clips and Takes" on page 835.

Punching In on Multiple Tracks Simultaneously

To punch in on multiple tracks simultaneously:

1. Enable TrackPunch mode.
2. Click the Record Enable button on each track you want to punch in, so that the track is both TrackPunch- and Record-enabled. The track's Record Enable button flashes blue and red.
3. Do one of the following:
   - During playback, click Record in the Transport to punch in and out on all TrackPunch-enabled tracks simultaneously.
   - Click Record in the Transport first, then Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) a track's Record Enable button to simultaneously punch in and out on all currently selected TrackPunch enabled tracks.
4. Stop playback. When you are finished with the record pass, track Record Enable status and transport Record Arm status follow the current **`Audio Track RecordLock`** and **`Transport RecordLock`** preference settings.

Start Recording on All Tracks

You can choose to begin a punch pass in record, to punch out and back in as needed.

To punch in on all tracks:

1. Enable TrackPunch mode (see "Transport Display of TrackPunch Status" on page 840).
2. Click the Record Enable button on each track you want to punch in, so that the track is both TrackPunch- and Record-enabled. The track's Record Enable button flashes blue and red.
3. Click Record in the Transport to enter the TrackPunch Record Ready mode. The Record button flashes blue and red.
4. Click Play in the Transport to begin playback.
5. During playback, punch out and back in on individual TrackPunch-enabled tracks by clicking their respective Record Enable buttons.
6. Stop playback. When you are finished with the record pass, track Record Enable status and transport Record Arm status follow the current **`Audio Track RecordLock`** and **`Transport RecordLock`** preference settings.

DestructivePunch Audio Recording

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only)

DestructivePunch is a *destructive* recording mode that lets you punch in and out on during playback, while preserving a contiguous audio file on each punched track. Like TrackPunch mode, DestructivePunch mode lets you punch tracks in and out individually (one at a time) or punch multiple tracks in and out simultaneously.

Unlike QuickPunch and TrackPunch, DestructivePunch replaces audio within the target parent file. DestructivePunch is essentially a destructive version of TrackPunch mode. Where TrackPunch always records audio to a new file in the background, DestructivePunch destructively records audio directly into the original file, using a fixed 10-millisecond linear crossfade. No additional clips are created when recording in DestructivePunch mode. Up to 200 "running punches" can be performed in a track during a single DestructivePunch pass.

⚠ **DestructivePunch recording is not supported with AudioSuite rendered clips with handles. You can consolidate such clips if you need to use DestructivePunch.**

DestructivePunch Setup

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) Before using DestructivePunch in a record pass you must configure Pro Tools, session, and track settings.

To configure Pro Tools:

1. Configure tracks, voicing, and other settings as needed (see "Guidelines for Punch Recording" on page 833).
2. Make sure Pro Tools is not recording or playing back (the Transport is stopped).

Enabling DestructivePunch Mode

To enable DestructivePunch mode, do one of the following:

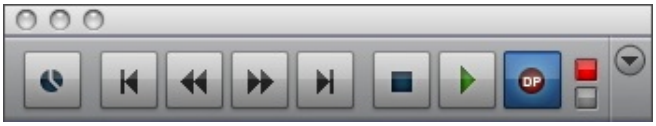
- Select **`Options > DestructivePunch`**.
- Right-click the Record button in the Transport and select **`DestructivePunch`**.
- Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Record button in the Transport to cycle through available Record modes until DestructivePunch mode is indicated by "DP" in the Transport Record Enable button.

⚠ **Power waveform view is not available in Destructive Punch mode.**

Transport Display of DestructivePunch Status

When DestructivePunch mode is enabled:

- The letters “DP” appear in the Record button in the Transport.
- If at least one track is DestructivePunch-enabled, the Record button in the Transport lights solid blue.



Transport Record Enable button with DestructivePunch mode enabled

When DestructivePunch mode is enabled and the transport is armed for recording:

- If no tracks are DestructivePunch-enabled, the Record button in the Transport flashes gray and red.
- If at least one track is DestructivePunch-enabled, the Record button flashes blue and red.
- If at least one DestructivePunch-enabled track is also record enabled, the Record button flashes blue and red, *and* the record LED lights.
- Whenever at least one audio track is recording, the Record button lights solid red.

Preparing Tracks for DestructivePunch Recording

In order for a track to be enabled for DestructivePunch recording, the track must contain a contiguous audio file that meets the following requirements:

- The file must start at the beginning (sample 0) of the session.
- The File Length must be equal to or greater than the DestructivePunch File Length setting (see "DestructivePunch File Length" below).

If a track does not contain a file that meets these requirements, you can do any of the following to meet the requirements:

- Move the current file in the track Timeline so that its beginning aligns with the session start.
- Use the Consolidate command to create a continuous file of the required length.
- Change the DestructivePunch File Length setting so that the current file is equal to or greater than the required length.
- Use the Prepare DPE Tracks command to consolidate audio on all DestructivePunch-enabled tracks. (See "Using the Prepare DPE Tracks Command" on the next page.)

DestructivePunch File Length

To use DestructivePunch on an audio track, the track must contain a contiguous audio file of a minimum length, which is set in the Pro Tools Operation preferences page.

To set DestructivePunch File Length:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. Type a value for **DestructivePunch File Length**.
3. Click **OK**.

Using the Prepare DPE Tracks Command

To prepare a track for DestructivePunch recording:

1. Enable DestructivePunch mode ("Enabling DestructivePunch Mode" on page 843).
2. Make sure the tracks you want to prepare are DestructivePunch-enabled (see "DestructivePunch Enabling Tracks without Record Enabling Them" below).
3. Choose **Options > Prepare DPE Tracks**.

   Pro Tools consolidates audio on all DestructivePunch-enabled tracks from the beginning of the session to the value specified in the **DestructivePunch File Length** preference.

For clips with any clip gain settings other than 0 dB, the Prepare DPE Tracks command automatically renders all clip gain and resets all clip gain to 0 dB.

Enabling Tracks for DestructivePunch Recording

You can enable tracks for DestructivePunch without record enabling them. This lets you punch in on individual tracks at any time after starting playback by clicking their respective Record Enable buttons.

You can also simultaneously DestructivePunch enable tracks and record enable them. This lets recording begin as soon as the transport is record-armed and playback begins. (See "DestructivePunch-Enabling and Record-Enabling Tracks Simultaneously" below.)

DestructivePunch Enabling Tracks without Record Enabling Them

This method lets you use the **Prepare DPE Tracks** command to consolidate files for DestructivePunch recording.

To DestructivePunch-enable an audio track:

- Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the track's Record Enable button to toggle the button to solid blue.

To DestructivePunch-enable all audio tracks:

- Option-Control-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-click (Windows) a track's Record Enable button to toggle all Record Enable buttons to solid blue.

To DestructivePunch-enable all selected audio tracks:

- Control-Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-Shift-click (Windows) a track's Record Enable button to toggle the Record Enable buttons for the selected audio tracks solid blue.

Create a VCA group for each stem or set of tracks on which you plan to punch, and use the VCA Record Enable button to arm all tracks in the group for DestructivePunch. For more information, see "VCA Master Tracks" on page 1454.

DestructivePunch-Enabling and Record-Enabling Tracks Simultaneously

This method can be used when tracks already meet the requirements for DestructivePunch recording.

To simultaneously DestructivePunch enable and record enable an audio track:

- Click the track's Record Enable button. The track's Record Enable button flashes blue and red.

To simultaneously DestructivePunch enable and record enable all audio tracks:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) a track's Record Enable button. All tracks' Record Enable buttons flash blue and red.

To simultaneously DestructivePunch enable and record enable all selected audio tracks:

- Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) a track's Record Enable button. The Record Enable buttons for the selected audio tracks flash blue and red.

Track Record Status Display

When Pro Tools is in DestructivePunch mode, each track's Record Enable button indicates its DestructivePunch and record enable status as follows:

- When a track is both DestructivePunch-enabled and record-enabled, its Record Enable button flashes blue and red.
- When a track is DestructivePunch-enabled but not record-enabled, its Record Enable button lights solid blue.
- When a track is record-enabled only, its Record Enable button flashes red.
- While a track is recording (in any mode), its Record Enable button lights solid red.

Monitoring and Levels

To complete the setup for DestructivePunch:

1. Configure monitoring for record-enabled tracks by selecting a mode from the Track menu, as appropriate. Choices include:
   - **`Set Record Tracks to Auto Input`**
   - **`Set Record Tracks to Input Only`**

   Selecting either monitoring mode only affects tracks that are record-enabled.
2. Start playback.
3. To compare levels of the input source with audio on disk, click the TrackInput button. When lit (green), the track is monitoring input. When unlit (gray), the track is monitoring from disk (see "Selecting Record Monitor Modes with TrackInput Monitoring" on page 782).

   When you are satisfied with your levels, you are ready to start punch recording.

Using DestructivePunch

After you have configured Pro Tools, tracks, and levels, you can use DestructivePunch to record in several ways.

Punching In On Single Tracks

To punch in on single tracks:

1. Enable DestructivePunch mode ("Enabling DestructivePunch Mode" on page 843).
2. Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Record Enable button for each track you want to punch in, so that the track is DestructivePunch-enabled only. The track's Record Enable button lights solid blue.
3. Click Record in the Transport to enter Record Ready mode. The Record Enable button flashes blue and red.
4. Click Play in the Transport to begin playback.
5. During playback, punch in and out on individual DestructivePunch-enabled tracks by clicking their Record Enable buttons.

6. Stop playback. When you are finished with the record pass, track Record Enable status and transport Record Arm status follow the current **Audio Track RecordLock** and **Transport RecordLock** preference settings.

Punching In on Multiple Tracks

To punch in on multiple tracks simultaneously:

1. Enable DestructivePunch mode ("Enabling DestructivePunch Mode" on page 843).
2. Click the Record Enable button on each track you want to punch in, so that the track is both DestructivePunch-enabled and Record-enabled. Each track's Record Enable button flashes blue and red.
3. Click Play in the Transport to begin playback.
4. During playback, click Record in the Transport to punch in and out on all DestructivePunch-enabled tracks simultaneously.
5. Stop playback. When you are finished with the record pass, track Record Enable status and transport Record Arm status follow the current **Audio Track RecordLock** and **Transport RecordLock** preference settings.

Starting Recording Immediately on Multiple Tracks

To punch in on multiple tracks:

1. Enable DestructivePunch mode ("Enabling DestructivePunch Mode" on page 843).
2. Click the Record Enable button on each track you want to punch in, so that the track is both DestructivePunch-enabled and Record-enabled. Each track's Record Enable button flashes blue and red.
3. Click Record in the Transport to enter Record Ready mode. The Record button flashes blue and red.
4. Click Play in the Transport to begin playback.
5. During playback, punch out and back in on individual DestructivePunch-enabled tracks by clicking their respective Record Enable buttons.
6. Stop playback. When you are finished with the record pass, track Record Enable status and transport Record Arm status follow the current **Audio Track RecordLock** and **Transport RecordLock** preference settings.

Example TrackPunch and DestructivePunch Workflows

TrackPunch and DestructivePunch let you use Pro Tools punch recording in many ways. For example, DestructivePunch lets Pro Tools be used as a digital dubber for film re-recording (dubbing) and mixing (see "Film Dubbing and Mixing " on the next page).

If you are not already familiar with routing, selecting, and grouping Pro Tools tracks, see "Tracks" on page 301 and "Basic Mixing" on page 1447.

Keyboard shortcuts and preference settings for recording and input monitoring provide flexibility that makes TrackPunch or DestructivePunch equally useful for the following workflows commonly performed in film, video, and music production:

- Loading dailies (see "Loading Dailies Using RecordLock" on page 849)
- Recording Foley (see "Foley Recording " on page 849)
- Tracking and overdubbing in music production and any other recording situation (see "Tracking and Overdubbing Music" on page 850)

Throughout these examples, references to TrackPunch can also be applied to DestructivePunch (just remember that TrackPunch is nondestructive, while DestructivePunch is a destructive punch mode).

Because Pro Tools can be networked, TrackPunch (and all other) audio files and whole sessions can be available for secure transfer to other systems for review, editing, and archiving.

Film Dubbing and Mixing

Film dubbing and mixing features of TrackPunch and DestructivePunch let you do the following:

- Arm and punch Pro Tools audio tracks remotely from a master synchronizer such as SoundMaster through P2 commands, at any time, without having to stop playback and while maintaining timecode lock (requires MachineControl).
- Toggle Pro Tools audio tracks between input and disk monitoring.

  Do not use any Native plugins on any tracks that are Record or TrackInput–enabled. You will hear an audible click as Native plugins on those tracks are automatically bypassed.
- Use Pro Tools as the timecode master (generating) or when chasing external timecode.
- Punch non-destructively with TrackPunch, or destructively with DestructivePunch.

A typical pre-dub session includes the following steps:

1. Configure synchronization between Pro Tools and other devices as appropriate.
2. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
3. Select (enable) **Transport RecordLock**. This keeps the Transport Record armed after the transport stops.

   In Remote mode, Transport RecordLock has no effect. The synchronizer determines the behavior.
4. Deselect **Audio Track RecordLock**. This causes the audio track record to disarm when the transport stops.

   In Remote mode, Audio Track RecordLock has no effect. The synchronizer determines the behavior.
5. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Options > TrackPunch** to enable TrackPunch mode for non-destructive punch recording.
   - Select **Options > DestructivePunch** to enable DestructivePunch recording.
6. Create 32 new tracks.
7. Assign the track inputs.
8. Group the tracks into groups of eight.
9. Click the record enable buttons in the first eight tracks to TrackPunch enable the first eight tracks (or, the group for the first pre-dub).

   Use the Groups List to quickly select all tracks in the group, and Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) to record-enable all the tracks in the group.
10. Assign the console paddles to the first eight-track group in the session.
11. Begin the pre-dub pass. Use the console paddles to arm Pro Tools, and to punch in and out on the first group.

12. When the first pre-dub is over and all tracks are punched out, clear all TrackPunch or DestructivePunch enabled tracks.
13. Select the next group of tracks and TrackPunch- or DestructivePunch-enable them.
14. Punch in and out on the second group of tracks.
15. Repeat the preceding steps as necessary.

Loading Dailies Using RecordLock

Dailies and similar types of transfers are comprised of multiple takes or scenes, each recorded while locked to unique time-of-day timecode. In between each take, timecode does not continue but stops completely. Because of this, the timecode on dailies and similar source material is said to be "discontinuous" (also known as broken timecode).

By default, Pro Tools drops out of recording when it goes offline due to broken timecode. However, you can change this behavior so that Pro Tools will instead remain armed, waiting to begin recording again when lock is re-established with the timecode of the next take.

To configure RecordLock for loading:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. Enable **Transport RecordLock**.
3. Enable **Audio Track RecordLock**.
4. Configure synchronization and other settings as required.
5. Put Pro Tools online, and start the external source player.
6. Whenever timecode drops out or stops, Pro Tools remains online and waits to receive new timecode. The Transport and record-enabled tracks remain record-enabled. When timecode resumes, Pro Tools begins recording to a new audio file (properly time stamped based on the incoming code).

Because Pro Tools has a 24-hour Timeline limit, you must use multiple sessions to load dailies if the span is more than 24 hours.

Foley Recording

Foley recording is one of the more specialized forms of recording in film production with unique monitoring requirements. Between punches and takes, inputs must be muted while Foley artists move themselves and equipment as they progress through a scene.

TrackInput monitoring can be configured to support Foley style TrackPunch recording using the **Mute Record-Armed Tracks While Stopped** preference.

To configure Pro Tools for Foley-style punch record monitoring:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. Enable **Mute Record-Armed Tracks While Stopped**.
3. Configure synchronization and other settings for Pro Tools and your other devices.
4. Enable TrackPunch or DestructivePunch mode and proceed with punch recording.

When recording online and **Mute Record-Armed Tracks While Stopped** is enabled, record-enabled tracks mute when the Transport is stopped. Input can still be monitored at any time by using the TrackInput switch.

Tracking and Overdubbing Music

Modern multitrack recording requires the flexibility to “capture the moment” by allowing on-the-fly record enabling and punch recording, as provided by TrackPunch. Features of TrackPunch for all tracking, overdubbing, and punching situations include the following:

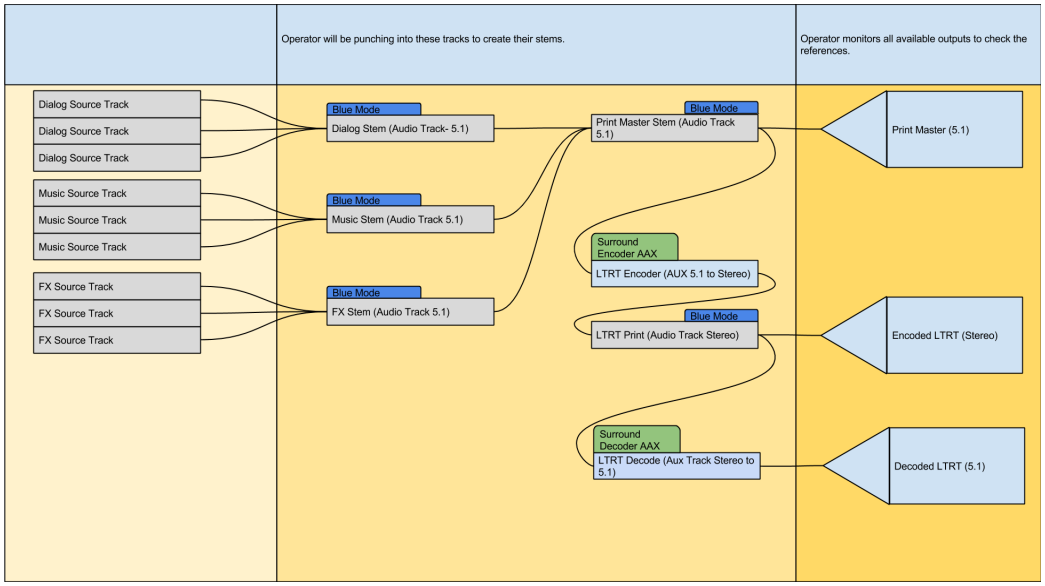
- Record enable tracks while the transport is moving.
- Punch tracks in and out using on-screen Record Enable buttons, remotely from a synchronizer, from a control surface, or using a foot switch.
- Compare and match levels using TrackInput switching.

“In-the-box” Dubbing

(HDX Only) Pro Tools Ultimate software with HDX hardware lets you punch in and out of cascaded tracks. You can activate and deactivate recording or input monitoring on tracks in all punch modes (and in punch modes only): QuickPunch, TrackPunch, and DestructivePunch.

Workflow example for configuring “in-the-box” dubbing:

1. Using internal buses, route your source tracks, by stem (for example, dialog, music, and effects), to your record tracks (see "In-the-box punch recording workflow example with cascading tracks" on the next page).
2. Route your stem source tracks to your print master track (such as a 5.1 audio track).
3. When encoding an LTRT, also route your stem source tracks to a 5.1 Auxiliary Input track with an AAX DSP LTRT encoder plugin; or, use a pre-fader send from the print master track for LTRT encoding. Note that only AAX DSP LTRT encoders are supported with this workflow.
4. Route the output of the LTRT encoded track to a stereo Auxiliary Input track for monitoring (stereo).
5. Route the LTRT Auxiliary Input track to a stereo audio track for recording.
6. Route the output of your LTRT-encoded stereo audio track to an Auxiliary Input track to monitor LTRT decoding (stereo to 5.1). Note that only AAX DSP LTRT decoders are supported with this workflow.
7. Cascade as many tracks as you want for punch recording.
8. Disable Auto Low Latency for all Record-enabled and InputMonitoring-enabled audio tracks (blue mode) by doing one of the following:
   - Right-click the Track Compensation indicator on the track and select **Auto Low Latency Off**.
   - Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Track Compensation indicator on the track.
9. Ensure that all plugins on tracks that are Record-enabled or InputMonitoring-enabled are AAX DSP plugins. Using AAX Native plugins will result in audible artifacts as they will be bypassed and unbypassed as you punch in and out.
10. Prepare your punch tracks and begin your punch-in and punch-out record pass.



In-the-box punch recording workflow example with cascading tracks

When cascade-recording in Pro Tools as a "standalone" recorder, an additional step is required when cascade punch recording on a separate Pro Tools system where the source tracks are on different Pro Tools systems than the cascaded record tracks. Since Delay Compensation is no longer working in a "closed loop system" like "dubbing in the box" you need to route all recorder inputs into Auxiliary Input tracks before the signal hits the audio tracks. Adding these "mixer points" to the inputs lets Delay Compensation address the hardware inputs, which is not necessary in a single "in-the-box" workflow.

Part V: Editing

Learn how to cut, trim, and edit audio and MIDI clips.

- "Editing Basics" on page 853
- "Edit Modes and Tools" on page 872
- "Making Selections" on page 903
- "Editing Clips and Selections" on page 927
- "Fades and Crossfades" on page 943
- "Playlists" on page 966
- "Beat Detective" on page 998

32 Editing Basics

Use the Edit window in Pro Tools to edit and arrange audio, video, and MIDI. Track material can be edited nondestructively and in real time during playback.

The Edit window also lets you graphically edit other data, as follows:

Editing Clips and Selections

See "Editing Clips and Selections" on page 927 and "Arranging Clips" on page 1217

Editing Fades and Crossfades

See "Fades and Crossfades" on page 943

Editing Elastic Audio

See "Elastic Audio" on page 1335

Editing MIDI

See "MIDI Editing" on page 1022

Editing Automation

See "Automation" on page 158

Editing Video

See "Working with Video in Pro Tools" on page 1924

Nondestructive Editing

The vast majority of audio editing in Pro Tools is nondestructive. Whether cutting, pasting, trimming, separating, or clearing clips, you are only performing these functions on a map of the actual media (such as audio files). The source files remain untouched. However, certain processes or tools work destructively (can permanently change audio files on your hard disk), as noted in other topics.

While editing for MIDI tracks is in some instances destructive, with a few precautions you can keep important MIDI tracks and clips safe when performing edits (see "Nondestructive MIDI Editing" on page 862).

Editing During Playback

Pro Tools lets you perform many editing tasks while the session plays. This powerful capability lets you interactively modify and edit a session, hearing the changes as you make them.

Use Loop and Dynamic Transport modes for auditioning and editing loops during playback. See "Playback Modes" on page 751.

Following are just a few examples of editing and arranging tasks that can be performed while playing back a Pro Tools session:

- Capture, separate, cut, copy, paste, and trim clips
- Place, spot, or rearrange clips
- Add fades or crossfades to audio clips
- Quantize MIDI notes and audio events
- Transpose and otherwise modify MIDI tracks

- Nudge audio or MIDI clips
- Audition different playlists
- Adjust or scale automation and MIDI continuous controller data
- Insert real-time plugins
- Apply Real-Time (and Rendered) Elastic Audio processing
- Process audio with an AudioSuite plugin
- Automation editing

There are a few things that cannot be changed while Pro Tools plays, as noted in relevant topics.

Track Material

Each time you record or import audio, video, and MIDI, Pro Tools creates *clips* for the new track data, which not only indicate where the material begins and ends, but also provides visual feedback on its general character and content. When you record additional takes, or "punch in" on a specific location within a track, Pro Tools creates additional clips.

Clips are also created by cutting and pasting, resizing, separating, and re-capturing existing clips. Clips in a session are listed in the Clip List, where they can be dragged to existing tracks. A track can contain any number of clips, in any arrangement. The order and location of clips in a track define its *playlist*.

In addition to audio and MIDI clips, tracks provide automation playlists of any automation data (such as volume and pan). Automation can be recorded and edited in the Mix, Edit, and MIDI Editor windows (see "Automation" on page 158).

Clip Types

There are different types of audio and MIDI clips, based on how they are created:

For information on video clips, see "Working with Video in Pro Tools" on page 1924.

Whole-File Audio Clips

These audio clips are created when recording or importing audio, consolidating existing clips, and when nondestructively processing with an AudioSuite plugin. Whole-file audio clips reference an entire audio file that resides on your hard drive. Whole-file audio clips are displayed in bold in the Clip List (see "The Clip List" on page 432). Normal clips often reference only a portion of the parent audio file and are created in the course of editing and, in some instances, when punch recording or loop recording.

User-Defined Clips

These are clips that are explicitly defined, such as when you record or import audio or MIDI; capture, separate, or consolidate a selection; trim a whole-file audio clip; or rename an existing clip.

Auto-Created Clips

These clips are automatically created in the course of editing, and, in some instances, when punch recording over existing clips. Since these clips can accumulate rapidly in a session, you can hide them in the Clip List. Auto-created clips can be turned into user-defined clips by renaming them.

For more information, see "Naming and Displaying Clips in the Clip List" on page 443.

Offline Clips

Clips are *offline* when their parent files cannot be located, or are not available, when opening a session or importing a track. Offline clips appear in the Clip List as italicized and dimmed; they appear in playlists as light blue clips with italicized names. Offline clips can be edited like other clips, but they cannot be processed with AudioSuite plugins.

Multichannel Clips

These clips, which are displayed as a single clip in the Clip List, reference multiple clips and audio files for stereo and surround tracks. Multichannel clips can be expanded (by clicking the triangle next to their name) to see the individual channels, which can be dragged independently to tracks.

Clip Groups

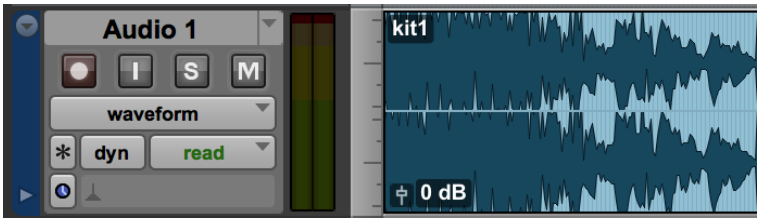
A *clip group* is a collection of any combination of audio and MIDI clips that looks and acts like a single clip. Clip groups are essentially containers holding one or more clips. Clip groups can be created on a single track or on multiple adjacent audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks. Clip groups let you "nest" multiple clips into "macro" clips for groove and tempo manipulation, editing, and arranging (see "Clip Groups" on page 1251).

Warped Clips

Clips on Real-Time Elastic Audio-enabled tracks can be *warped*. Warped clips are identified with a Warp Indicator icon in the upper-right corner of clips on tracks and to the left of clip names in the Clip List. Warped clips result from the application of Elastic Audio processing. Elastic Audio processing can be applied manually in Warp view or using the TCE Trim Tool in Waveform view, or automatically using tempo conform, quantization, or transposition (see "Warped Clips" on page 1356).

Audio Clips and Waveforms

When the Track View for audio tracks is set to **`Waveform`**, Pro Tools draws a waveform diagram of the audio. Audio waveforms tell you several things about the recorded sound.



Audio waveform of a drum track

In the figure above, the "peaks" represent places in the recording where the attack of the sound causes the volume to increase momentarily. These are followed by "valleys," where the volume decreases.

Different types of sounds produce different types of waveforms. Drums, for example, generally produce waveforms with sharp *transients* (peaks of short duration) that are clearly defined. A drum hit has a loud, sharp attack and a rapid decay.

Other sounds, such as vocals or sustained synthesizer pads, produce very different waveforms. These sounds have less pronounced peaks and valleys because they generally have softer attacks and longer decays.

Waveform Views

Pro Tools provides a several different Waveform View options. Depending on the editing task, you may want to display waveforms in any number of different ways.

Calculating Waveform Overviews

Waveforms can be calculated using Peak or Power overviews.

To set how the Waveform view is calculated:

- Choose **View > Waveforms** and select **Peak** or **Power**.
  - Peak

    When selected, the waveform display is calculated based on the sample-by-sample peak level. Peak view is traditionally how Pro Tools calculates the waveform overview and can be used for normal or rectified views. Peak view clearly displays any clipping in the waveform.

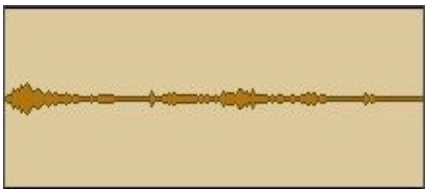
    

    Normal Peak Waveform view with Outlines

    When zoomed in to the sample level, Pro Tools always displays Peak view.

  - Power

    When selected, the wave form display is calculated according to the Root Mean Square (RMS). Power view can be used for normal or rectified views. Power view is useful for better seeing the characteristics of the audio in the waveform representation when zoomed out beyond the sample level. For mastering applications in particular, it can be more revealing of the sonic characteristics of the audio than Peak view.

    Normal Power Waveform view with Outlines

    Power view is not available in Destructive Punch mode or when zoomed to the sample level.

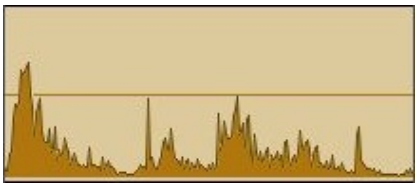
Peak view is always shown during recording. Power waveform view is calculated and shown only after you stop recording.

Rectified Waveforms

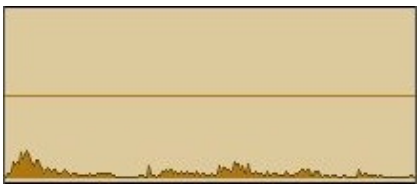
Rectified waveforms are displayed so that their positive and negative waveform excursions (the portions that fall above and below the center line) are summed together and viewed as a single positive-value signal. This view lets you see more waveform detail in normal or reduced track height views. It can be particularly useful when editing volume automation data, since it depicts waveform levels as starting at the bottom of the track. Rectified view is available in both Peak and Power views.

To show waveforms rectified (or normally):

- Select (or deselect) **View > Waveforms > Rectified**.



Rectified Peak Waveform view with Outlines



Rectified Power Waveform view with Outlines

When zoomed in to the sample level, Pro Tools always displays waveforms in Normal Peak view.

Outlined Waveforms

Outlined waveforms provide more visual definition of the waveform, especially when viewed from a distance. However, you may want to disable Outlines when you need to do precise, detailed editing in Peak waveform view. Outlines are not displayed when you are zoomed in to the sample level.

To show (or hide) waveform outlines:

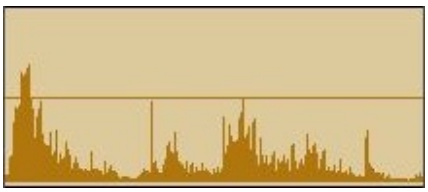
- Select (or deselect) **View > Waveforms > Outlines**.



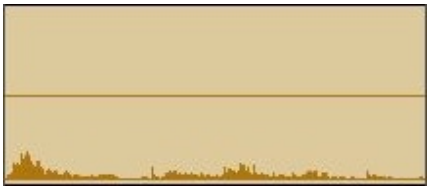
Peak Waveform view without Outlines



Power Waveform view without Outlines



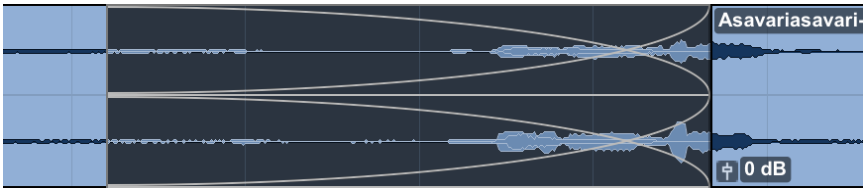
Rectified Peak Waveform view without Outlines



Rectified Power Waveform view without Outlines

Overlapped Crossfades

`Overlapped Crossfades` view (**`View > Waveforms > Overlapped Crossfades`**) lets you see the waveforms for both the end of the first clip and the beginning of the second clip within a crossfade. Use this view option to help visually align crossfaded audio.



Overlapped Crossfades view

Guidelines for Editing Waveforms

With the Selector tool in the Edit window, you can select portions of audio waveforms and divide them into segments called *clips*, so that you can rearrange and manipulate them in tracks.

While editing musical material, try to create clips that let you maintain a consistent beat. If you always define clips so that they contain a whole number of beats, you will be able to string the clips together and maintain a smooth, steady rhythm.

It is sometimes useful to have a steady, well-defined reference waveform (such as a drum track or click track) as a guide when selecting and defining other clips. If you have played in time with the beat, it should be easier to create rhythmically accurate clips by referring to the reference waveform.

Some important rules to keep in mind when defining clips:

- Whenever possible, begin a clip precisely before a volume peak, and end it immediately before another volume peak.
- Whenever possible, make sure a clip starts and ends on exactly the same part of a beat.
- Use the following Pro Tools features to help you edit rhythmic material or audio with clear transients into precise clips:
  - Tab to Transients (see "Tabbing to Transients" on page 915)
  - Editing to a Grid (see "Grid Mode" on page 873)
  - Beat Detective (see "Beat Detective" on page 998)

Avoiding Clicks and Pops

If an edited clip begins or ends at a point of high amplitude, you may hear a click when Pro Tools plays from one clip to another. In order to avoid clicks or pops do any of the following:

- Make sure that the start and end points of your selection are as close as possible to the point where the amplitude of the waveform tapers down to meet the *zero-crossing* line (the center line of the track's waveform display). If necessary, use the zooming tools in the Edit window (see "Zooming

Options" on page 877) to display waveforms in greater detail.



Selection that begins and ends at zero crossings

- Apply a crossfade between clips where a click or pop occurs. See "Creating a Crossfade" on page 954 for details.
- With Pro Tools Ultimate, use the AutoFade feature to apply real-time fade-ins/outs to all clip boundaries that do not touch or overlap other clips. See "Using AutoFades" on page 955 for details.

Nondestructive Audio Editing

When editing an audio track's playlist in Pro Tools, you are not actually cutting and moving pieces of sound as you would if you were cutting and splicing analog tape. Instead, Pro Tools creates a map of the audio file on your hard disk, which describes the order in which to play various portions of the audio.

When trimming audio clips with any of the Trim tools, or when editing the placement or order of clips within a track, you can use multiple playlists to easily return to a track's previous state. For more information, see "Playlists" on page 966.

Audio Clips and Automation Data

Automation data for audio resides in tracks and *not* in the Clip List. This means that when you drag an audio clip from the Clip List to a new track, no automation data is placed in the track. However, if you drag an audio clip from an existing track (that contains automation data) to another track, the automation from the source track is placed in the destination track.

You can edit automation data by switching track views or by revealing the automation lanes under the track.

For more information on automation, see "Automation" on page 158.

MIDI Clips and MIDI Data

The two most common Track Views you will use for MIDI and Instrument tracks are Notes and Clips:

- Use Clips view for arranging clips.
- Use Notes view for inserting and editing individual MIDI notes, and for working with and affecting groups of notes.

For more information on setting Track View, see "Track Views" on page 341.

To toggle the Track View between Notes and Clips, click in the track you want to toggle and press Control+Minus (Mac) or Start+Minus (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.

Clips View for MIDI and Instrument Tracks

MIDI and Instrument tracks can be viewed as Clips, which is similar to Waveform view for audio tracks. While a track's notes are visible in Clips view, individual note editing is not available in this view. Instead, all editing occurs across a time range encompassing all track data, including continuous controller events, program changes, and System Exclusive events.

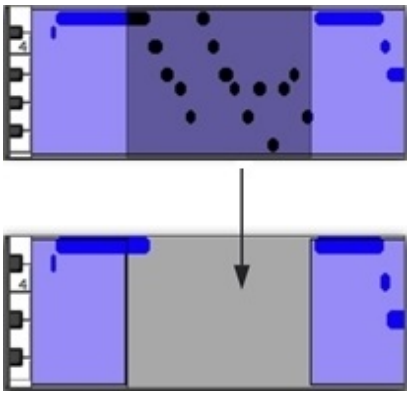
Use Clips view to define clips that represent song sections and clips, or to rearrange or assemble track material.

In Clips view, the vertical zoom is automatically scaled to fit the entire range of pitches of MIDI notes on a track.

You can double-click a MIDI clip to open it in the MIDI Editor window. See "MIDI Editors" on page 1071.

There are a few things to consider when selecting, copying and cutting, and trimming MIDI clips:

- When cutting or clearing a clip or clip group selection that includes a note's start point, the entire note is removed. This is even the case when only a portion of the note (that includes its start point) is selected.
- When cutting or clearing a clip or clip group selection that includes a note's end point (but not its start point), the note remains and overlaps the edge of the clip.



Cutting a MIDI clip with note overlap

- Similar rules also apply when MIDI clips or clip groups containing MIDI clips are trimmed with any of the Trim tools. If the MIDI clip's start point is moved beyond a note's start point, the note is removed. If the clip's end point is trimmed so that a note's start point is within the clip but its end point is not, the note remains and overlaps the edge of the clip.

When moving and placing MIDI clips with overlapping notes, the notes always move with the clips. When placing MIDI clips with overlapping notes next to or near another clip, the overlapping notes extend into the next clip on the track.

To separate MIDI notes, rather than leave them hanging, when separating, cutting or copying clips, make the Edit selection you want, switch to Notes view and use the Separate At Selection command, then switch back to Clips view and make the edit (separating, cutting, or copying).

MIDI Clips Created on Barlines

When recording MIDI, or when manually entering MIDI notes, the beginning and ending of resulting MIDI clips are constrained to bar boundaries. This facilitates arranging MIDI clips in a musically meaningful way, in whole bar lengths.

The beginning of a recorded MIDI clip always starts on the barline immediately before the first MIDI note (Note On) of the clip. Likewise, the MIDI clip ends on the barline immediately following the last note (Note Off) of the clip.

MIDI Clips and Continuous Controller Events

Continuous controller events reside in MIDI clips and not in tracks. This means that when dragging clips that contain controller data from either a track or the Clip List, the controller data is written to the destination track.

You can edit continuous controller events by switching track views or by revealing the controller lanes under the track.

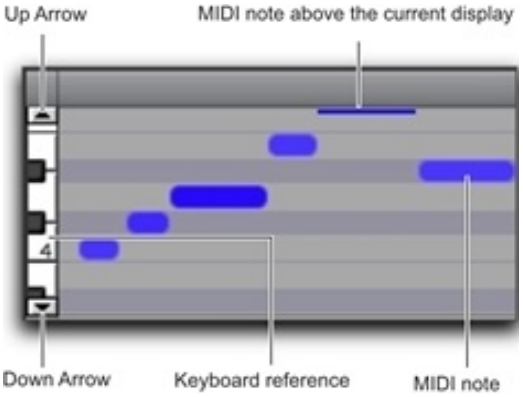
For more information on editing MIDI controller data, see "MIDI Editing" on page 1022.

MIDI Mute Automation

Unlike continuous controller events, which represent nuances that are part of a MIDI performance, Mute in Pro Tools is an automation playlist that actually mutes the MIDI engine. Mute automation does not correspond to actual MIDI events and is therefore not exported when saving as a Standard MIDI File.

Notes View for MIDI and Instrument Tracks

When a MIDI or Instrument track's Track View is set to **Notes**, MIDI notes are displayed in a "piano roll" format. Each note is displayed as a small rectangle with its vertical placement indicating pitch and its horizontal placement indicating location in time (and duration).



MIDI track displaying notes

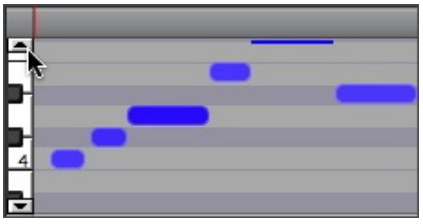
To the left of the MIDI or Instrument track's playlist is a vertical mini-keyboard, complete with octave numbering, for pitch reference. You can click the mini-keyboard to play pitches using the track's selected MIDI output. Arrows at the top and bottom of the mini-keyboard (not available in the smaller track heights) are used to scroll the Notes display up and down.

Clicking the mini-keyboard clears the current Edit selection. For more information, see "Selecting MIDI Notes" on page 1029.

In Notes view, the pitch range of MIDI notes that can be displayed depends on the track height, and on the current zoom value. Any time a track's notes do not fit within its current height, notes above or below the viewed area are displayed as single-pixel lines at the very top and bottom of the range.

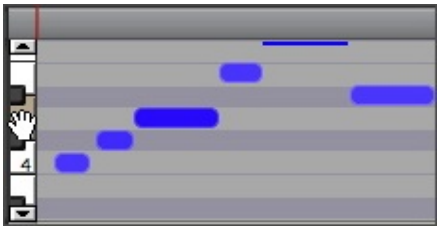
To scroll the Notes display up or down for a MIDI or Instrument track, do one of the following:

- Click either the up or down arrow of the mini-keyboard.



Scrolling notes with the Up Arrow on mini-keyboard

- With any of the Edit tools (such as the Time Grabber tool) selected, press Command+Option+Control (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start (Windows) and drag up or down on the mini-keyboard.



Scrolling Notes display by dragging

- If you have a mouse with a scroll wheel, move the cursor over the track and Command-Option-Control-scroll (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-scroll (Windows) up or down to scroll the notes display up or down.

Using the Edit tools, notes can be inserted, deleted, transposed, trimmed, and moved. For more information, see "Manually Editing MIDI Notes" on page 1029.

Nondestructive MIDI Editing

While editing audio clips is usually nondestructive, this is generally not the case for MIDI clips. For instance, if a MIDI clip resides in just one track at a single location, editing for that clip *is* destructive. This means that altering the pitch, duration, or placement of notes in Notes view permanently alters the clip.

However, if the **`Mirror MIDI Editing`** option is disabled, when editing a MIDI clip that appears elsewhere in the session (either on the same track at another location or in a different playlist, or in another track), editing is nondestructive and creates a new auto-created clip. To go back to the previous material, drag the original clip from the Clip List, or return to a previously saved playlist.

One way to safely return to a track's previous state is with playlists. Before you edit notes, trim clips, or rearrange the order of clips, make a duplicate of the track's existing playlist and then edit the duplicate (see "Playlists" on page 966).

To apply edits to all instances of a MIDI clip, enable Mirrored MIDI Editing mode (see "Mirrored MIDI Editing" on page 1024).

Naming Clips

You can rename clips to give them more descriptive names, or to simplify existing names. When renaming a clip that was auto-created during editing, the clip becomes a user-defined clip and is displayed in the Clip List even when auto-created clips are hidden.

For more information, see "Renaming Clips" on page 443.

To rename a clip on a track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Select the clip you want to rename and then choose **`Clip > Rename`**.
   - With any of the Edit tools, Right-click the clip that you want to rename and select **`Rename`** from the pop-up menu.
   - Press Command+Shift+R (Mac) or Control+Shift+R (Windows).

- With the Grabber tool, double-click the clip you want to rename. For MIDI clips, the **Name Dialog** option must be selected as the **Double-Clicking a MIDI Clip Opens** setting in the MIDI Preferences.

2. In the Name dialog, type a new name for the clip. If a whole-file audio clip was selected, specify whether to rename just the clip, or both the clip *and* the disk file.
3. Click **OK** to rename the clip.

Displaying Clip Names, Clip Times, and Other Data

Clip names and times can sometimes get in the way of editing audio waveforms and MIDI data. In these instances, you may want to disable their display. In other instances, such as arranging or spotting Foley, displaying clip names and times is extremely useful.

To enable or disable the display of clip names in playlists:

- Select or deselect **View > Clip > Name**.

To display clip times:

- From **View > Clip**, select one of the following options:
  - No Time

    Disables display of clip times.
  - Current Time

    Displays start and end times for clips.
  - Original Time Stamp

    Displays the Original Time Stamp for each clip. The Original Time Stamp is the original timecode location for the clip when it was first recorded or created.
  - User Time Stamp

    Displays the User Time Stamp for each clip. The User Time Stamp, which defaults to the Original Time Stamp, can be redefined with the **Time Stamp** command.



Display enabled for clip names, Overlap, and times

Displaying Clip Data on All Channels

For stereo and greater-than-stereo multichannel tracks, clip data can be shown on all channels.

To enable or disable the display of clip data on all channels:

- Select or deselect **View > Clip > Display on All Channels**.

Displaying Other Clip Information

You can also choose to display the following in clips:

Sync Points

Can be displayed on clips in playlists. This is useful when visually spotting to timecode or in arranging in Grid mode. For more information, see "Sync Points" on page 1232.

Processing State

For clips that are processed with Elastic Audio, displays a Warp indicator in playlists and in the Clip List. See "Warped Clips" on page 1356.

Channel Name and Scene And Take Information

Can be displayed in clips in playlists and in the Clip List. This is useful for working with multichannel recordings and metadata made by field recorders. For detailed information on workflows for field recorders, see "Working with Field Recorders in Pro Tools" on page 1903.

Rating

Can be displayed on clips in playlists. This is useful for arranging when working with multiple playlists and alternate takes. See "Rating Clips" on page 942.

Overlap Shadows

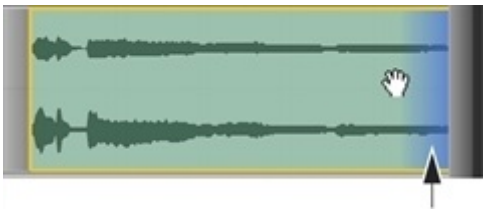
When enabled, overlapping clips cast shadows over any partially overlapped clips. This is useful for arranging and when working with tick-based audio tracks. See "Tempo Changes and Tick-Based Audio Tracks" on page 1157.

Transparency

When enabled, this option shows transparent clip overlays when moving clips on the timeline. This can be useful for visually aligning clips over other clips when arranging. See "Arranging with Transparent Clip Overlays" on page 1221.

Overwrite Indicator

When **Overwrite Indicator** is enabled (**View > Clip > Clip Overwrite Indicator**), Pro Tools provides a visual indication that an off-screen clip is being fully overlapped by a larger clip that you are moving. The clip you are moving highlights red at the edge of the screen if a smaller off-screen clip is being overwritten. If the **Send Fully Overlapped Clips to Available Playlist While Editing** preference is enabled (**Setup > Preferences > Editing**), it highlights blue indicating that a smaller off-screen clip is being fully overlapped and moved to an alternate playlist.



Moving an audio clip so that it overwrites a smaller off-screen clip highlights blue

Copy/Move Indicators

When **Copy/Move Indicators** is enabled (**View > Clip > Copy/Move Indicators**), Pro Tools provides a visual indication of any clips being sent to an alternate playlist whether or not the track is in Playlist view. The indicator appears as a blue animated down arrow.



Overlapped clip being sent to a new playlist

Clip Gain Line

Shows the Clip Gain Line for all clips in the Edit window. The Clip Gain Line lets you edit the clip gain settings for any given clip using breakpoint editing, much like with track-based volume automation. See "Clip Gain Line" above.

Clip Gain Info

Shows the Clip Gain Fader icon at the beginning of the clip, in the lower left corner. If the clip uses static clip gain, the static Clip Gain value (–144 dB to +36.0 dB) for a clip is displayed to the right of the Clip Gain Fader icon. For a clip that has dynamic clip gain (using breakpoint gain settings), the Clip Gain value is not shown. For more information, see "Clip Effects Status View" on page 1287.

Clip Effects Status

When **Clip Effects Status** is enabled (**View > Clip > Clip Effects Status**), **ø**, **EQ**, and **DYN** are displayed in the upper right corner of the clip depending on which effects are being applied to the clip. **ø** is displayed when the phase is inverted. **EQ** is displayed when EQ or Filtering is applied to the clip. **DYN** is displayed when Dynamics processing or Input Gain is set to any value other than 0.0 dB. See "Clip Effects" on page 1283.



Multiple Undo

Pro Tools can keep track of up to 32 of the last undoable operations, allowing you to return to a previous editing state.

The Undo operations in Pro Tools are stored in a queue, in the order in which they were invoked. When choosing **Edit > Undo**, the most recent operation is undone. If you choose **Undo** again, the next operation in the queue is undone. You can also choose **Edit > Redo** to redo an operation, which moves back through the Undo queue by one step.

When the number of operations in the Undo queue reaches the maximum specified level of Undo (set in the Editing Preferences page), performing another undoable operation will remove the oldest operation at the top of the queue.

To undo the last operation, do one of the following:

- Choose **Edit > Undo**.
- Press Command+Z (Mac) or Control+Z (Windows).

If no actions are available to undo, the menu displays Can't Undo.

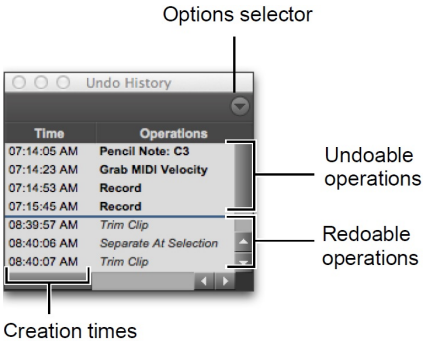
To redo the last undone operation, do one of the following:

- Choose **Edit > Redo**.
- Press Shift+Command+Z (Mac) or Shift+Control+Z (Windows).

If no actions are available to redo, the menu displays Can't Redo.

Undo History Window

You can use the Undo History window to view the queue of the undoable and redoable operations and return to any previous state. The Undo History can show edit creation times, enabling you to revert to the state a session held at a particular time.



To show (or hide) the Undo History window:

- Choose **Window > Undo History**.

To undo operations in the Undo History window:

- Click the operation (bold) in the list to undo.

  All operations in the queue that were performed after the operation you select are also undone. In the Undo History window, undoable operations are shown in bold and redoable operations (operations that have already been undone) are shown in italics.

To redo operations in the Undo History window:

- Click the operation (italics) in the list to redo.

  The operation you choose, as well as all the operations in the queue before it, are redone.

To toggle display of creation times in the Undo History window:

- Click the **Options** pop-up menu and choose **Show Creation Times**.

To undo all the operations in the Undo Queue:

- Click the **Options** pop-up menu and choose **Undo All**.

To redo all the operations in the Redo Queue:

- Click the **Options** pop-up menu and choose **Redo All**.

Clearing the Undo Queue

To manually clear the Undo Queue

- Click the **Options** pop-up menu and choose **Clear Undo Queue**.

Other operations that clear the Undo Queue include:

- Deleting a track, or clearing a clip from the Clip List
- Selecting **Select > Unused**, or **Select > Unused Audio Except Whole Files** in the Clip List menu

When the number of operations in the Undo History reaches the maximum level of Undo, performing another undoable operation removes the oldest operation at the top of the Undo History queue. When the oldest operation is one operation away from being pushed out of the queue, it is shown in red.

Levels of Undo and Memory

Because Pro Tools needs to keep track of the playlists for all tracks that are edited, the use of multiple levels of Undo can be memory intensive. You can lower the **Levels of Undo** setting (Editing Preferences) in Pro Tools to reduce the amount of system memory (RAM) used by the Undo queue. If you have plenty of memory available for Pro Tools, you can use a higher **Levels Of Undo** setting.

Use the Undo History window to view a queue of undo operations and return to a previous state.

To set the Levels of Undo in Pro Tools:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Editing** tab.
2. Click in the **Levels of Undo** field and type a value between 1–64.



3. Click **OK**.

Basic Editing Commands

Pro Tools provides many standard edit commands (such as **Cut**, **Copy**, and **Paste**). Pro Tools also provides many specialized edit commands that are optimized for audio and MIDI production (such as **Repeat Paste to Fill**).

Cut, Copy, Paste, and Clear

Use the **Cut**, **Copy**, **Paste**, and **Clear** commands to rearrange and edit track material. Edits can operate on entire clips selected with the Time Grabber tool, or on track ranges selected with the Selector tool. Edits can also work across multiple tracks (see "Editing Across Multiple Tracks" on page 871).

You can Cut, Copy, and Paste noncontiguous clips by selecting them with the Object Grabber tool.

Track View and Edit Content

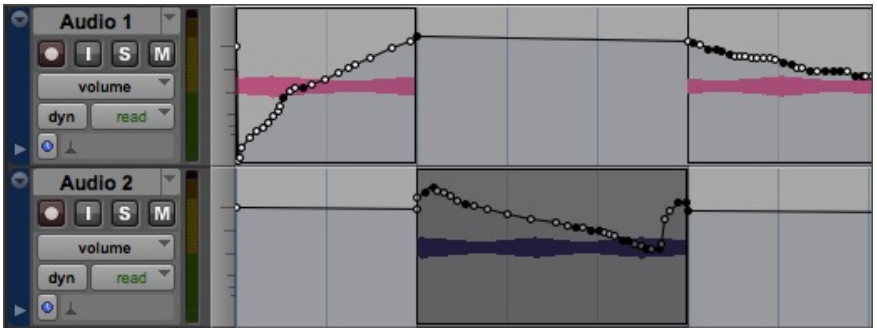
When cutting or copying track material, the Track View determines the type of data placed on the Clipboard. When editing in a track's Master View (Waveform view for audio tracks and Clips view for MIDI or Instrument tracks), selections can include all underlying automation and controller data ("Automation Follows Edit Option" on page 1578). Thus, cutting an audio clip can also cut any volume, pan, mute, send, continuous controller, or plugin automation that is also on the track. This saves you from having to individually cut from each automation playlist on the track.



Audio waveform data

When selecting groups of MIDI notes in Notes view with any of the Grabber tools (by drawing a rectangle around them), only the note data is placed on the Clipboard. When selecting a time range of MIDI notes (in Notes view) with the Selector tool, all controller data in the track is selected (similar to selecting with the Selector tool for audio tracks in Waveform view).

When a track is displaying automation data or controller data, only that data is placed on the Clipboard. Also, whenever you cut or copy automation data, bounding breakpoints are created at each end of the selected area, in order to preserve the slope of the automation both inside and outside the selection.



Automation data with Cut and Pasted audio clip

Use Command+Control+V (Mac) or Control+Start+V (Windows) to special paste automation data into another automation type. For example, you can copy Pan automation into a Volume automation playlist.

You cannot cut or copy automation data from an automation playlist unless that playlist includes at least one breakpoint in it. The selection you are cutting or copying does not need to include any breakpoints, but without at least one breakpoint on an automation playlist, there is no automation data to copy.

If tracks are grouped, copying and pasting on any of the tracks affects each of the other tracks in the group. Tracks that are hidden—even if they are part of a group being edited—are not affected by edits.

The Shuffle Clips option affects how material is cut and pasted:

- When Shuffle Clips is enabled, the **Cut** command leaves no empty space, since the clips to the right of the cut slide over, closing the gap. Otherwise the **Cut** command leaves an empty space corresponding to the data removed from the track.
- When Shuffle Clips is enabled, pasted data causes all clips to slide over to make room for the pasted material. Otherwise, pasted data can overlap an adjacent clip.

For more information on the Shuffle Clips option, see "Shuffle Mode" on page 872.

New clips are often auto-created when performing edits. For instance, when clearing a selection from a clip, new clips are auto-created from the material residing outside of the selection.

Cut and Copy Commands

Use the **Cut** command to remove the selection from the track and place it on the Clipboard.

Use the **Copy** command to place a copy of the selection on the Clipboard so it can be pasted to another track, or to the same track at a different location, while leaving the original intact and in place.

To cut or copy a selection or clip:

1. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, enable Snap to Grid.
2. Set the Track View for the tracks you want to edit.

   When displaying waveforms for audio tracks, or notes or clips for MIDI tracks, selections include underlying automation and controller data. If the track is displaying automation data, only the automation data is affected by the edits.

3. Make an Edit selection of the material you want to **Cut** or **Copy**.

   For information on making Edit selections, see "Selecting Track Material" on page 905.

4. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Cut** to remove the selection and place it on the Clipboard.
   - Choose **Edit > Copy** to place the selection on the Clipboard, without removing it.

If a portion of a clip was cut or copied, the material on the Clipboard appears as a new clip in the Clip List. If a portion of a clip was cut, new clips are auto-created from the material residing outside of the selection.

When Shuffle Clips is enabled, any subsequent clips slide over to fill any empty space.

Deleting Underlying Clip Data

When removing a clip or selection, you can choose to remove or keep the underlying clip data.

To delete a clip or selection along with the underlying clip data:

- Choose **Edit > Cut**.

To delete a clip or selection without removing the underlying clip data:

- Choose **Edit > Clear**.

Paste Command

Use the **Paste** command to place the contents of the Clipboard at the Edit insertion point, and overwrite any material already there.

To paste a selection or clip:

1. If you want to constrain the insertion point or the selection to the current Grid value, enable Snap to Grid.
2. Do one of the following:
   - With the Selector tool, click in a track at the point where you want to paste the material.
   - Use the Selector or Time Grabber tool to make a selection where the material will be placed.

   With the Grabber tool, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) a clip to conform it to the current selection.

3. Choose **Edit > Paste**.

   If pasting at an insertion point with Shuffle Clips enabled, material to the right of the paste point is shifted to the right. Otherwise, any material within the paste range is overwritten.

   If pasting into a selection with Shuffle Clips enabled, the selection is replaced by the Clipboard's contents with the adjacent material slid left or right as necessary. Otherwise, the selection is also replaced but with the surrounding material remaining unchanged.

   When working with MIDI, you can merge the contents of the Clipboard with material in the destination track using Edit › Paste Special › Merge MIDI. For more information, see "Paste Special" on page 1611.

   Non-automated plugin parameters need to be the same between different instances of a plugin, or the pasted automation can have unpredictable results.

Clear Command

Use the **Clear** command to remove a selection from a track without placing it on the Clipboard.

To clear a selection or clip:

1. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, enable Snap to Grid.
2. Set the Track View for the tracks you want to edit.

   When displaying waveforms for audio tracks, or notes or clips for MIDI tracks, selections include underlying automation and controller data. If the track is displaying automation data, only the automation data is affected by the edits.
3. Make an Edit selection.
4. Choose **Edit > Clear** to remove the selection.

   If the **Layered Editing** option is disabled (**Options > Layered Editing**) and a portion of a clip was cleared, new clips are auto-created from the material residing outside of the selection. When Shuffle mode is enabled, any subsequent clips slide over to fill any empty space.

Special Cut, Copy, Paste, and Clear Commands

Use the four "special" Edit menu commands (**Cut Special**, **Copy Special**, **Paste Special**, and **Clear Special**) for cutting, copying, pasting, and clearing automation (volume, pan, mute, and plugin automation) on audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, VCA Master, and Instrument tracks. These commands can also be used for MIDI controller data on MIDI and Instrument tracks. There are also **Cut Special**, **Copy Special**, and **Clear Special** commands for cutting, copying, and clearing clip gain settings (see "Clip Gain" on page 1274) and clip effects settings (see "Clip Effects" on page 1283).

You cannot paste MIDI controller data to automation data nor automation to MIDI.

For more information, see "Cutting, Copying, and Pasting Automation" on page 1608.

The **Repeat to Fill Selection** command lets you automatically fill a selection with audio or MIDI clips or data without requiring that you manually duplicate the clips. To use **Repeat to Fill Selection**, **Cut** or **Copy** a clip, then make a selection and use the command to fill the selection. When pasting audio clips, you are prompted to specify a crossfade to be used for the pasted clips.

If you fill an area that is an exact multiple of the copied clip size (for example, filling 16 bars with a 4-bar clip), the copied selection is pasted as many times as it takes to fill the selection. If you fill an area that is not an exact multiple of the copied clip size (for example, filling 15 seconds of a track with a 2-second clip of room noise), the remaining selection area is filled with an automatically trimmed version of the original selection.

To fill a selection with Repeat to Fill Selection:

1. Select the clip you want to copy.
2. Choose **Edit > Copy**.
3. Select the area you want to fill using the Selector tool and choose **Edit > Paste Special > Repeat to Fill Selection**.
4. Do one of the following:
   - If pasting audio clips to larger areas, the Batch Fades dialog opens. Configure the dialog to create crossfades between each pasted clip, then click **OK**.
   - If you do not want crossfades for the pasted audio, click **Cancel** in the Batch Fades dialog.

Editing Across Multiple Tracks

When working with data from multiple tracks, there are some important points to remember. For example, if any selected tracks are set to their master view (see "Master Views for Tracks" on page 347), edits affect not only audio and MIDI for the selected tracks, but *all* automation and controller data as well.

If all selected tracks are displayed as automation data, edits only affect the type of automation data displayed in each track. Furthermore, if track 1 displays Pan automation, track 2 displays Volume automation, and track 3 displays Mute automation, the **Cut** command cuts *only* pan data from track 1, volume data from track 2, and mute data from track 3.



For more information on selecting data on multiple tracks, see "Selecting Across Multiple Tracks" on page 912.

To copy all types of automation on all selected tracks when copying only automation or controller data:

- Choose **Edit > Copy Special > All Automation**.

To paste to multiple tracks:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Place the insertion point in each of the destination tracks by Shift-clicking in them.
   - Make a selection in one of the Timebase rulers.
2. Choose **Edit > Paste**.

   When you paste multiple types of data, whatever data has been copied is pasted into the correct type of playlist. Automation data is pasted into the corresponding automation playlist. Audio or MIDI data is pasted into the audio or MIDI playlist. You do not need to set target tracks to the specific type of data being pasted for the paste to work correctly.

   If *all* destination tracks in a multitrack paste are displayed as automation, the paste replaces any previous data on the target track without shuffling—regardless of whether Shuffle Clips is enabled.

33 Edit Modes and Tools

Pro Tools provides four Edit modes and various Edit tools to help you successfully edit material.

Edit Modes

Pro Tools has four Edit modes: Shuffle, Spot, Slip, and Grid. Grid mode provides two modes of operation, Relative and Absolute, explained below. The Edit mode is selected by clicking the corresponding button in the upper left of the Edit window.



The Edit mode affects the movement and placement of audio and MIDI clips (and MIDI notes), how commands like Copy and Paste function, and also how the various Edit tools (Trim, Selector, Grabber, and Pencil tools) work.

- *Use the Accent key (`) to toggle through the Edit modes.*

Shuffle Mode

In Shuffle mode, you can move, trim, delete, cut, or paste clips freely within a track or to other tracks, but their movement is constrained by other clips. That is, if you place several clips in a track, they automatically snap to each other. You can then "shuffle" their order, but you cannot separate them from each other and you cannot make them overlap as in Slip mode. However, if there is silence between existing clips, and the clips are shuffled, the silence is maintained, and not removed.

In Shuffle mode, adding another clip to the beginning of a track moves all subsequent clips to the right (later in time) by the length of the added clip.

When using any of the Trim tools in Shuffle mode, changing a clip's start or end point automatically moves any subsequent clips as necessary. The placement and insertion of MIDI notes is not affected by Shuffle mode.

- *Press F1 to enable Shuffle mode.*

Shuffle Lock

With certain workflows, it is important to exclude Shuffle mode in order to ensure that clips stay time-aligned while editing. Shuffle Lock prevents you from inadvertently entering Shuffle mode by disabling all key commands and control surface switches for Shuffle mode. You cannot invoke Shuffle Lock while in Shuffle mode.



Shuffle Lock enabled

To lock out Shuffle Mode:

- While in any Edit mode other than Shuffle mode, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Shuffle button on-screen. A lock icon appears in the Shuffle button.

To unlock Shuffle Mode:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the locked Shuffle button on-screen.

Slip Mode

In Slip mode, clips can be moved freely within a track or to other tracks. In this mode, it is possible to place a clip so that there is space between it and other clips in a track. When the track is played back, this space is silent. It is also possible to move a clip so that it overlaps or completely covers another clip.

Use Slip mode when you want the Trim, Selector, Grabber, and Pencil tools to work without any restrictions to placement in time.

- *Press F2 to enable Slip mode.*
- *To temporarily suspend Slip mode and switch to Grid mode while editing, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) while making the edit.*

Spot Mode

Use Spot mode to place clips at precise locations. In Spot mode you can specify a frame location (or a location based on any of the other time formats), capture an incoming Timecode address, or use a clip's time stamps as reference points for spotting. This can be particularly useful when performing post production tasks around Timecode frame locations.

When Spot mode is enabled, Pro Tools asks you to specify a destination location when a clip is dragged from the Clip List, a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer, or the Mac Finder.

- *Press F3 to enable Spot mode.*

Grid Mode

In Grid mode, clips and MIDI notes that are moved, trimmed or inserted "snap" to the currently selected Grid value, or to precise increments on a user-definable time grid.

- *Press F4 to enable Grid mode.*

Displaying Grid Lines

To show (or hide) the Grid lines in the Edit window or in a MIDI Editor window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) the Grid button.



Grid button selected in the Edit window

- Click the Name of the currently selected Timebase ruler.



Turning on Grid lines from a Timebase ruler

Absolute and Relative Grid

Grid mode can be applied in Absolute or Relative mode:

- In Absolute Grid mode, moving any clip (or selected MIDI data) snaps the clip start to Grid boundaries. If a clip's start point falls between beats, and the Grid is set to 1/4 notes, dragging the clip will *snap* its start time to the nearest 1/4 note (the current absolute Grid value).
- In Relative Grid mode, clips (or selected MIDI data) can be moved by Grid (or Nudge) *units*. If a clip's start point falls between beats and the Grid is set to a 1/4 note (assuming the 1/4 note gets the beat), dragging the clip will be constrained to 1/4 notes, preserving the clip's relative position to the nearest beat. For more information on Relative Grid mode, see "Arranging Clips in Grid Mode" on page 1228.

To select Absolute or Relative Grid mode:

- Click the Grid mode selector and choose **`Absolute`** or **`Relative`**.

To temporarily suspend Grid mode and switch to Slip mode while editing, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) while making the edit.

Snap To Grid

Pro Tools lets you enable Snap To Grid while in Shuffle, Slip, or Spot mode. When in any of these modes with Snap To Grid also enabled, placing the Edit cursor and making Edit selections is constrained by the Grid, but any clip editing is also affected by the other selected Edit mode.

For example, in Shuffle mode, with Snap To Grid enabled, you can make a selection in a clip based on the Grid, cut the selection, and any clips to the right of the edit shuffle to the left.



Shuffle mode with Snap To Grid enabled

To enable Snap To Grid while in another Edit mode:

- Shift-click the Grid mode button.

Press Shift+F4 to enable Snap To Grid while in another Edit mode.

To enable Shuffle, Slip, or Spot while in Grid mode:

- Shift-click the Shuffle, Slip, or Spot mode button.

Press F1+F4 to enable Snap To Grid and Shuffle mode; press F2+F4 to enable Snap To Grid and Slip mode; and press F3+F4 to enable Snap To Grid and Spot mode.

Configuring the Grid

The actual Grid size, chosen from the Grid value selector can be based on a time value using the Main Time Scale; or, if the **`Follow Main Time Scale`** option is deselected, another time format can be used for the Grid size.

The Grid Value indicator and selector are located in the Edit window. Also, the Score Editor window and MIDI Editor windows each provide an independent Grid Value indicator and selector.



Grid Value indicator and pop-up menu

The current Grid value is also used for the Quantize to Grid command (see "Quantizing Clips to Grid" on page 938) and Separated Clip At Grid command (see "Separate Commands" on page 927).

To increase the grid value incrementally:

- Press Shift+Equal (=).

To decrease the grid value incrementally:

- Press Shift+Minus (–).

  The Clips/Markers option in the Grid Value menu allows events to be placed freely (as in Slip mode), but they will snap to clip locations (start, end, and sync points), markers, and Edit selections when placed near them.

  MIDI notes inserted with the Pencil tool ignore the Clips/Markers option, and instead snap to the time value selected in the Grid Value selector.

Grid Mode Lock

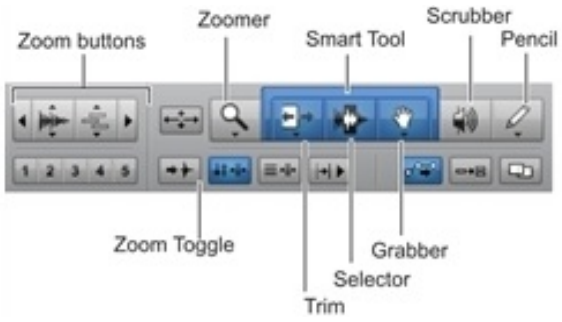
To ensure that you do not inadvertently change the Grid mode setting when using Edit mode keyboard shortcuts, you can enable **`Edit/Tool Mode Keyboard Lock`**.

To lock (or unlock) the selected Grid mode:

1. Click the Grid mode selector and choose **Absolute** or **Relative**.
2. Select (or deselect) **Options > Edit/Tool Mode Keyboard Lock**.

Edit Tools

Pro Tools provides the following Edit tools: the Zoomer, Trim, Selector, Grabber, Scrubber, and Pencil tools, and the multifunctional Smart Tool.



Zoom buttons and Edit tools

To select an Edit tool:

- Click the icon for the tool you want in the Toolbar.

  The Zoomer, Trim, Grabber, and Pencil tools have multiple modes, which you can select from a pop-up menu when you click the tool.

  You can use F5 (Zoomer), F6 (Trim), F7 (Selector), and F8 (Grabber), F9 (Scrubber), and F10 (Pencil) to select and toggle through the modes for each tool.

  Press the Escape key to toggle through the Edit tools.

Zoom Buttons

Use the Zoom buttons to zoom in and out vertically and horizontally on MIDI and audio track material. You can also store and recall five Zoom presets.

Zoomer Tool

Use the Zoomer tool to select a zoom view in a track.

Zoom Toggle

Use the Zoom Toggle to switch between the current zoom view and a defined zoom view.

Trim Tools

Use the Trim tools to trim clips and clip groups.

Selector Tool

Use the Selector to make selections on tracks.

Grabber Tools

Use the Grabber tools to select, separate, or move clips on tracks.

Smart Tool

Use the Smart tool to Trim, Select, or Grab clips, or apply or adjust fades in tracks.

Scrubber Tool

Use the Scrubber tool to scrub through track material.

Pencil Tool

Use the Pencil tool to draw automation and MIDI data.

For information on using the Edit tools in Notes view on MIDI and Instrument tracks, see "MIDI Editing" on page 1022.

For information on using the Edit tools in Warp view and Analysis view on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, see "Editing in Warp View" on page 1350 and "Editing in Analysis View" on page 1357.

Zooming Options

Zooming options in Pro Tools include Zoom buttons, the Zoomer tool, the Zoom Preset buttons, and the Zoom Toggle command.

Zoom Buttons

Pro Tools includes different Zoom buttons for zooming in and out on track data.

The Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, and the Score Editor window also provide Zoom buttons above and below the right vertical scroll bar (see "Edit Window Zoom Buttons" on page 265, "MIDI Editor Zoom Controls" on page 1083, and "Score Editor Zoom Controls" on page 1108.)

Horizontal Zoom In and Out Buttons

The Horizontal Zoom In and Out buttons let you zoom in and out horizontally on track data.



Horizontal Zoom Out and In buttons

To zoom in horizontally for all tracks, do one of the following:

- Click the Horizontal Zoom In button.
- Drag on the Horizontal Zoom In button to zoom in continuously.
- Press Command+] (Mac) or Control+] (Windows).

To zoom out horizontally for all tracks, do one of the following:

- Click the Horizontal Zoom Out button.
- Drag on the Horizontal Zoom Out button to zoom out continuously.
- Press Command+[(Mac) or Control+[(Windows).

Audio and MIDI Zoom In and Out Buttons

The Audio and MIDI Zoom buttons let you zoom in and out vertically on audio and MIDI data respectively.



Audio Vertical Zoom button



MIDI Vertical Zoom button

MIDI Vertical Zoom only affects tracks in not in Clips view.

To zoom in vertically for all audio tracks, do one of the following:

- Click the Audio Zoom In button.
- Drag on the Audio Zoom In button to zoom continuously.
- Press Command+Option+] (Mac) or Control+Alt+] (Windows).

To zoom out vertically for all audio tracks, do one of the following:

- Click the Audio Zoom Out button.
- Click the Audio Vertical Zoom buttons.
- Press Command+Option+[or Command+Option+] (Mac) or Control+Alt+[or Control+Alt+] (Windows).

To zoom all audio vertically to show the default waveform height:

- Press Control+Option+Command+[(Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+[(Windows).

To zoom in vertically for all MIDI and Instrument tracks, do one of the following:

- Click the MIDI Zoom In button.
- Press Command+Shift+] (Mac) or Control+Shift+] (Windows).

To zoom out vertically for all MIDI and Instrument tracks, do one of the following:

- Click the MIDI Zoom Out button.
- Press Command+Shift+[(Mac) or Control+Shift+[(Windows).

To zoom MIDI vertically to show all notes (lowest to highest) in MIDI and Instrument tracks:

- Press Command+Control+Shift+[(Mac) or Control+Start+Shift+[(Windows).

To zoom in or out vertically for a single MIDI or Instrument track:

1. Make sure the Track View is not set to **`Clips`**.
2. Select the Zoomer tool.
3. Hold Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) and drag upwards to zoom in, or downward to zoom out.

Additional Zoom Key Commands

To return to the previous zoom level, do one of the following:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any of the Horizontal, Audio, or MIDI Zoom buttons.
- Press Command+Option+E (Mac) or Control+Alt+E (Windows).

To zoom in horizontally on the Edit selection without affecting vertical zoom:

- Press Option+F (Mac) or Alt+F (Windows).

  If the selection contains MIDI notes, the selected MIDI notes are vertically scrolled to show in tracks as necessary.

To zoom in horizontally on a selection without affecting vertical zoom or scrolling, do one of the following:

- Press Option+Control+F (Mac) Alt+Start+F (Windows).
- Press Command+Control+] (Mac) or Control+Start+] (Windows).

To zoom horizontally to show the entire session, do one of the following:

- Double-click the Zoomer tool in the toolbar.
- Press Option+A (Mac) or Alt+A (Windows).

Audio waveforms revert to the default vertical zoom; on tracks set to Notes view, MIDI notes zoom vertically to show all notes in the track (same as the vertical zoom in Clips view); and the Tempo Editor zooms vertically to show all tempo events.

To zoom horizontally to show the entire session without affecting vertical zoom or scrolling, do one of the following:

- Press Option+Control+A (Mac) or Alt+Start+A (Windows).
- Press Command+Control+[(Mac) or Control+Start+[(Windows).

To set horizontal zoom to "overview scale" (256 samples per pixel):

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Zoomer tool.

Zoomer Tool

Use the Zoomer tool to zoom in and out around a particular area within a track. The Zoomer tool offers two modes:

- Normal Zoom

  The Zoomer tool remains selected after zooming.
- Single Zoom

  The previously selected Edit tool is automatically reselected after zooming.

Press the F5 key to select the Zoomer tool and toggle between Normal and Single Zoom modes.

Normal Zoomer Tool

To zoom around a certain point in a track:

1. Do one of the following:



- Click the Zoomer tool pop-up menu and select Normal Zoom mode.
- Right-click on any track and select **`Tools > Zoomer Tools > Normal Zoom`**.

2. Click once with the Zoomer tool at a location within the track. All tracks are zoomed in by one level and the Edit window is centered around the zoomed location.
3. To zoom back to the previous level, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) with the Zoomer tool.

To zoom into a particular track area:

1. Do one of the following:



   - Click the Zoomer tool pop-up menu and select Normal Zoom mode.
   - Right-click on any track and select **`Tools > Zoomer Tools > Normal Zoom`**.

2. Do one of the following:
   - To zoom horizontally only, drag with the Zoomer tool in the track's playlist.
   - To zoom horizontally *and* vertically, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while dragging in the track's playlist.



Zooming horizontally with Zoomer tool

The zoomed area fills the entire Edit window.

Single Zoom Mode

Single Zoom mode returns you to the previously selected tool after a zoom has been performed.

For example, when using the Smart Tool you can click the Single Zoomer tool, and once the Zoom operation has been performed, Pro Tools automatically switches back to the Smart Tool.

To use Single Zoom mode, do one of the following:

- Click the Zoomer tool pop-up menu and select Single Zoom mode.



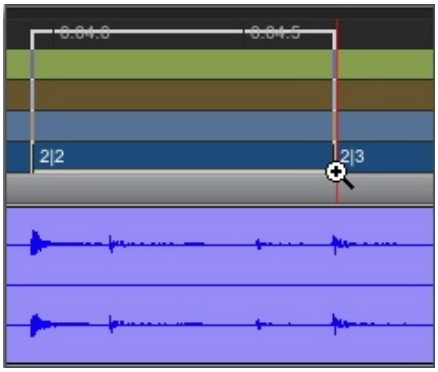
  Single Zoom is identified with an arrow to the right of the Zoomer icon. Normal Zoom mode does not have the arrow.

- Right-click on any track and select **`Tools > Zoomer Tools > Single Zoom`**.
- Press the F5 key to toggle to Single Zoom mode.

Zooming in a Ruler

To zoom horizontally in a ruler:

1. Press Command+Control (Mac) or Control+Start (Windows) and move the cursor into the ruler area, so the Zoomer tool appears.



Zooming in a ruler

2. Do one of the following:
   - Click once to zoom in one level around a certain point.
   - Drag to zoom in around a particular ruler range.

Continuous Zoom with the Zoomer Tool

Use the Zoomer tool to zoom in or out continuously.

To use continuous zoom on one track or a group of tracks:

1. Select the Zoomer tool.
2. Hold the Control (Mac) or Start key (Windows) and do one of the following:
   - Drag up to continuously zoom in vertically.
   - Drag down to continuously zoom out vertically.
   - Drag to the right to continuously zoom in horizontally.
   - Drag to the left to continuously zoom out horizontally.

For horizontal zoom, all tracks zoom together. Tracks will zoom in or out centered horizontally on the location where you click.

Vertical Zooming In or Out of All Audio Tracks Continuously

To vertically zoom in or out of all audio tracks using continuous zoom:

- Drag up or down on the Audio Zoom In or Out button.

To vertically zoom in or out of all MIDI and Instrument tracks that are set to Notes view using continuous zoom:

- Drag up or down on the MIDI Zoom In or Out button. Any waveform height offsets will be maintained.

To zoom horizontally and show the entire session or project, and to reset the audio waveform to show the default height, zoom MIDI to show all notes in a track, and zoom the Tempo Editor to show all tempo events, do one of the following:

- Double-click the Zoomer tool.
- Press Option+A (Mac) or Alt+A (Windows).

This will also affect your MIDI note heights.

To reset the default audio waveform heights without affecting the horizontal zoom level or MIDI note heights, press Control+Option+Command+[(Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+[(Windows).

To only zoom horizontally to show the entire session without affecting vertical zoom or scrolling:

- Press Option+Control+A (Mac) or Alt+Start+A (Windows).

To set all audio track waveform heights to match the waveform height of the topmost audio track in the Edit window:

- Command-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Shift-click (Windows) the Audio Zoom button. All waveform height offsets will be lost.

To set all MIDI and Instrument track note heights to match the note height of the topmost MIDI or Instrument track in the Edit window:

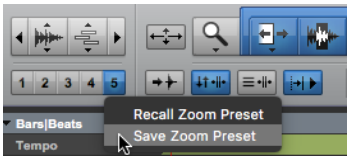
- Command-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Shift-click (Windows) the MIDI Zoom button. All note height offsets will be lost.

Zoom Preset Buttons

Pro Tools lets you save up to five horizontal Edit window Zoom presets, which can be recalled by typing a number or by clicking a Zoom Preset button.

To store a view as a Zoom preset:

1. Use the Zoomer tool to configure the Track View.
2. Click and hold one of the Zoom Preset buttons (1–5) and choose Save Zoom Preset from the Zoom Preset pop-up menu. The preset button flashes momentarily, and any previously stored Zoom preset at that number is replaced.



Zoom Preset pop-up menu

To recall a saved Zoom preset, do one of the following:

- Click the appropriate Zoom Preset button (1–5).
- Click and hold the Zoom Preset button and choose Recall Zoom Preset from the Zoom Preset pop-up menu.

If the 1–5 Number Keys Control Editing Preference is set to Zoom Presets, press Control+1–5 (Mac) or Start+1–5 (Windows) to recall the corresponding Zoom preset.

Zoom Toggle

Zoom Toggle lets you define and toggle between zoom states in the Edit window.

Zoom Toggle Parameters

The Zoom Toggle stores and recalls the following parameters:

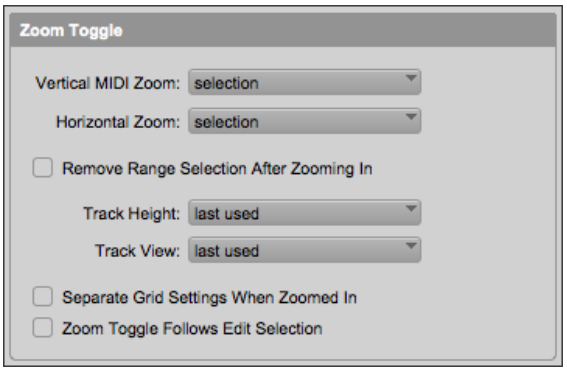
- Vertical Zoom
- Horizontal Zoom
- Track Height
- Track View
- Grid setting

Zoom Toggle Preferences

The Zoom Toggle preferences determine how Zoom Toggle works. Adjust the Zoom Toggle preferences to fit your workflow.

To change the Zoom Toggle preferences:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Editing** tab.
3. Change the Zoom Toggle settings and options.



Zoom Toggle preferences

For MIDI Editing, set the Zoom Toggle preferences as follows: Vertical Zoom to Last Used, Horizontal Zoom to Last Used, Track View to Waveform/Notes, and Track Height to Fit to Window.

For audio editing, set the Zoom Toggle preferences as follows: Vertical Zoom to Selection, Horizontal Zoom to Selection, Track Height to Fit to Window, and Track View to No Change.

4. Click **OK**.

Vertical Zoom

Selection

When selected, zoom toggling in zooms vertically to the current Edit Selection.

Last Used

When selected, zoom toggling in zooms vertically to the last stored Zoom Toggle state for MIDI notes in Notes view only.

Horizontal Zoom

Selection

When selected, zoom toggling in zooms horizontally to the current selection. This is especially useful for audio editing.

Last Used

When selected, zoom toggling in zooms horizontally to the last stored Zoom Toggle state. This option can emulate a separate editor window. This is especially useful for editing MIDI notes.

Remove Range Selection After Zooming In

When the Remove Range Selection After Zooming In option is selected, the current Edit selection collapses into an insertion point after zoom toggling in.

Track Height

Last Used

When selected, zoom toggling in changes all tracks containing an Edit Selection to the last used Track Height.

Medium

When selected, zoom toggling in changes all tracks containing an Edit Selection to the Medium Track Height.

Large

When selected, zoom toggling in changes all tracks containing an Edit Selection to the Large Track Height.

Jumbo

When selected, zoom toggling in changes all tracks containing an Edit Selection to the Jumbo Track Height.

Extreme

When selected, zoom toggling in changes all tracks containing an Edit Selection to the Extreme Track Height.

Fit To Window

When selected, zoom toggling in changes all tracks containing an Edit Selection to the Fit To Window Track Height.

Track View

Waveform/Notes

When selected, zoom toggling in changes the Track View for audio tracks to Waveform view, and changes the Track View for Instrument and MIDI tracks to Notes view.

Warp/Notes

When selected, zoom toggling in changes the Track View for audio tracks to Warp view, and changes the Track View for Instrument and MIDI tracks to Notes view.

Last Used

When selected, zoom toggling in changes the Track View to the last used Track View that was stored with Zoom Toggle.

No Change

When selected, the track view does not change when zoom toggling in or out.

Separate Grid Settings When Zoomed In

When this option is selected, the Grid setting stored with Zoom toggle is recalled when zoom toggling in. When this option is deselected, the same (current) grid setting is used whether zoom toggling in or out.

Zoom Toggle Follows Edit Selection

When selected, this option ensures that zoom toggle automatically follows the current Edit selection. When disabled, changing the Edit selection has no affect on the currently toggled-in track.

Using Zoom Toggle

Depending on the Zoom Toggle preference settings, the Zoom Toggle button in the Edit window lets you define a zoom state and toggle between it and the current zoom state, or it zooms to the settings in the Zoom Toggle preferences. When Zoom Toggle is enabled, the Edit window displays the stored zoom state. Additionally, any changes made to the view while Zoom Toggle is enabled are also stored in the zoom state.

When Zoom Toggle is disabled, the Edit window reverts to the last zoom state.

To store a zoom state using Zoom Toggle:

1. Set the Zoom Toggle preferences.
2. Make an Edit selection.
3. Click the Zoom Toggle button. It lights to indicate that Zoom Toggle is enabled and Pro Tools zoom toggles in based on the settings of the Zoom Toggle preferences.



Zoom Toggle button in the Edit window

If Last Used is selected for any of the following, you can adjust the corresponding zoom, height, or view in the Edit window to update the stored zoom state:

- Vertical Zoom
- Horizontal Zoom
- Track Height
- Track View

In Commands Keyboard Focus mode (see "Keyboard Focus" on page 26), press the E key to enable or disable Zoom Toggle.

Press Option+Shift+E (Mac) or Alt+Shift+E (Windows) to cancel Zoom Toggle without reverting to the previous view.

To modify the stored Zoom Toggle state if Last Used is selected:

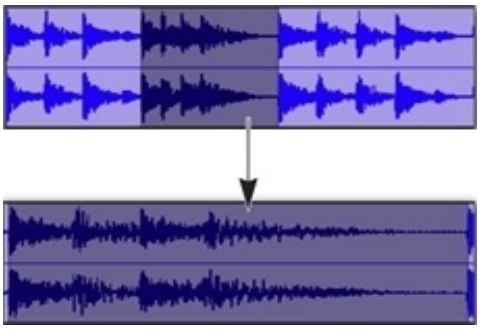
1. Make sure the Zoom Toggle button is lit (enabled).
2. Adjust the Track Height, Vertical Zoom, Track View, or the Grid depending on which preferences are set to Last Used. Changes are stored as the new Zoom Toggle state.

To clear the stored Zoom Toggle state:

1. Make sure the Zoom Toggle button is lit (enabled).
2. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Zoom Toggle button.

To use Zoom Toggle without changing playlist views:

1. Make a selection on one or more tracks.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Press Option+Control+E (Mac) or Alt+Start+E (Windows).
   - With Commands Keyboard Focus enabled (see "Keyboard Focus" on page 26), press Option+E (Mac) or Alt+E (Windows).



Using the Zoom Toggle

Auto-Toggle When Changing Selection

When Zoom Toggle is enabled, selecting a different range of material, or selecting material on a different track affects Zoom Toggle as follows:

- Changing the selection length does not re-zoom the window, the current zoom level is maintained.
- Changing the selection to a different track sets the toggle-in state for track height and view. However, horizontal zoom remains unchanged. When moving the selection from a toggled in track, the toggled out track height and view are restored.

Auto-Toggle does not work for Edit selections across multiple tracks that are Zoom-toggled to Fit to Window.

Zooming with a Scroll Wheel

If you have a mouse with a scroll wheel, you can use the scroll wheel to zoom in and out of tracks, both vertically and horizontally.

To continuously zoom horizontally using a scroll wheel:

- Hold Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while turning the mouse scroll wheel.

To continuously zoom audio (vertical zoom) in the Edit window:

- Hold Option+Shift (Mac) or Alt+Shift (Windows) while turning the mouse scroll wheel.

To continuously zoom MIDI (vertical zoom) in the Edit window:

- Hold Option+Control (Mac) or Alt+Start (Windows) while turning the mouse scroll wheel.

To scroll the contents of the Edit window or Mix window horizontally:

1. Focus the window you want to scroll by clicking in it or bringing it forward.
2. Hold the Shift key while turning the mouse scroll wheel.

Using the Trim Tools

Trim tools provide clip, note, and data trimming functions. The following Trim tools are available:

- Trim tool; also called the Standard Trim tool
- Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool; also called the TCE Trim tool
- Scrub Trim tool (Pro Tools Ultimate only)
- Loop Trim tool

The Standard and Scrub Trim tools are only constrained by the boundaries of the whole-audio file referenced by the clip. The TCE Trim tool is only constrained by the maximum TCE amount when using the TCE Trim tool.

The TCE, Scrub, and Loop Trim tools do not apply to fades.

Trim Tool

With the Trim tool, you can quickly shorten or expand a clip (up to the entire length of the source audio file). The first time you trim a clip, Pro Tools automatically adds it to the Clip List as a new clip (with a name derived from the original) in order to differentiate it from the original.

The Trim tool is a nondestructive tool and does not actually modify the original audio or MIDI data (when working on clips). To return to the length of the original clip, drag it from the Clip List, or resize the edited clip with the Trim tool to its original length.

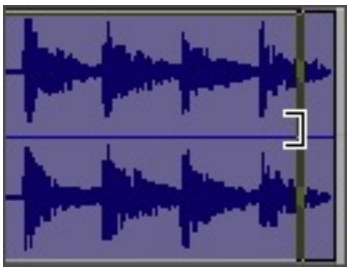
Use of the Trim tool is affected by the current Edit mode: Shuffle, Slip, Spot, or Grid (see "Edit Modes" on page 872).

The Trim tool can also be used to lengthen and shorten MIDI notes (see "Trimming Note Start and End Times" on page 1034), and also to scale automation and controller data up or down. "Drawing Automation" on page 1599.

To trim a clip with the Trim tool:



1. Select the Trim tool.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Trim tool pop-up menu and select **`Standard`**.
   - Right-click on any track and select **`Tools > Trim Tools > Standard`**.
3. Move the cursor near the start or end of the clip, so the Trim Tool cursor appears.



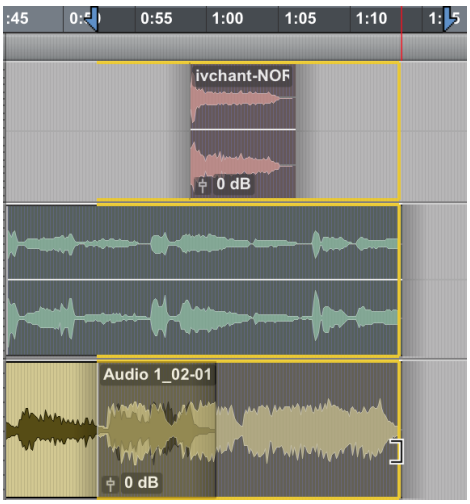
To reverse the direction of the Trim tool, press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows).

4. Do one of the following:
   - If trimming the end, drag left to shorten the clip, right to lengthen.
   - If trimming the start, drag right to shorten the clip, left to lengthen.

When working with audio, you cannot trim past the boundaries of adjacent clips.

When trimming clips in a stereo or multichannel track, all channels are trimmed.

The standard Trim tool trims the edges of all selected clips (not just the one you click and trim).



Trimming all selected clips

When using Shuffle mode, subsequent clips are slid as necessary to make room for the edited clip. If using Grid mode, the dragged start/end times snap to the nearest Grid boundary. If using Spot mode, the Spot dialog opens, where you can enter the new location for the clip's start or end point.

Time Compression/ Expansion Trim Tool

The Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool (TCE Trim) is a convenient tool for matching an audio clip to the length of another clip, a tempo grid, a video scene, or to practically any other reference point you want.



Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool over a clip

The TCE Trim tool unloops and consolidates looped clips.

You can match an Edit selection to the length of a Timeline selection by selecting Edit › TCE Edit to Timeline Selection command (see "TCE (Time Compression and Expansion) Edit To Timeline Selection" on page 941.

When using the TCE or Elastic trimmer, hold Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) to constrain the trim to the edge of adjacent clips.

Elastic Audio TCE Trim Tool

On Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, the TCE tool uses the track's selected Elastic Audio plugin (Real-Time or Rendered) to apply Real-Time or Rendered Elastic Audio processing. The resulting clip displays a Warp indicator to indicate Elastic Audio processing.

For information on Elastic Audio plugins, see "Elastic Audio Plugins" on page 1345.

AudioSuite TCE Trim Tool

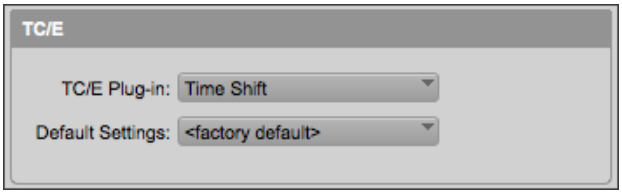
On audio tracks without Elastic Audio enabled, the Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool works by using the Time Compression/Expansion (TCE) AudioSuite plugin selected in the Pro Tools Processing preferences to create a new audio file.

Time Compression/Expansion Plugin Preferences

You can select which AudioSuite plugin is used for trimming with the TCE Trim tool on non-Elastic Audio-enabled audio tracks.

To set the AudioSuite plugin for use with the TCE Trim tool:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Processing** tab.
3. From the **TC/E Plugin** pop-up menu, select the AudioSuite plugin to be used with the Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool.



4. From the **Default Settings** pop-up menu, select the plugin setting best suited to the material you work with most (such as **Stereo Mix Default**).
5. Click **OK**.

For more information about AudioSuite plugins, see "AudioSuite Processing" on page 1262.

Using the TCE Trim Tool in Grid Mode

The TCE Trim tool can be used in Grid mode to match a clip to the tempo of a session or a section of a session. For example, you might import a one-bar drum loop with a tempo of 90 BPM into a session with a tempo of 120 BPM. In Grid mode, you can use this tool to simply and quickly "time compress" the drum loop to the length of one measure, with no noticeable to minimal loss of audio fidelity.

Trimming clips while in Relative Grid mode will trim the clips in grid increments while maintaining their relative offset (if any) from the grid.

To use the TCE Trim tool in Grid mode:

1. Set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. Do one of the following:



- Click the Trim tool pop-up menu and select **TCE**.

- Right-click on any track and select **Tools > Trim Tools > TCE**.

3. With the TCE Trim tool, drag the audio clip's start or end point to compress or expand the clip to the Grid (for example, by quarter notes).

Using the TCE Trim Tool in Slip Mode

To use the TCE Trim tool in Slip mode:

1. Set the Edit mode to Slip.
2. Click the Trim tool pop-up menu and select TCE.
3. With the TCE Trim tool, drag the clip's start or end point to compress or expand the clip freely.

Using the TCE Trim Tool in Spot Mode

In Spot mode, clicking with the TCE Trim tool in a clip opens the Spot dialog. You can specify the location you want the clip to start or end at, or the duration of the clip, and the clip is automatically compressed or expanded as specified.

To use the TCE Trim tool in Spot mode:

1. Set the Edit mode to Spot.
2. Click the Trim tool pop-up menu and select TCE.
3. Click the clip near its start or end point. The Spot dialog opens. Using any Time Scale, enter a new start or end time (or duration) for the clip, then click OK.

Scrub Trim Tool

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only)

The Scrub Trim tool is a convenient tool for auditioning material (on up to two tracks) to find a trim point. You can drag in a track to hear the audio information, then trim at a specific location by releasing the mouse button.

This action creates a new clip. Note that the Scrub Trim tool changes into a "right trim" or "left trim" shape as it is placed over the right or left side of a clip. To reverse the direction of the Scrub Trim tool, press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) before you click the clip.



Scrub Trim tool over a clip

Scrub playback speed and direction vary with controller movement. Scrubbed audio is routed through the track signal path, so you hear any effects in the signal path.

To scrub trim a track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Trim tool pop-up menu and select **Scrub**.
   - Right-click on any track and select **Tools > Trim Tools > Scrub**.

   The tool changes to a speaker with a bracket.

2. Drag within a track to the left or right. Audio from a scrubbed track is routed through the track signal path, including any DSP effects. When you locate the trim point, release the mouse button to trim the clip.
    - To scrub trim two tracks, drag with the Scrub Trim tool between two adjacent tracks.
    - To scrub with finer resolution (without having to zoom in), press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while scrubbing.

Loop Trim Tool

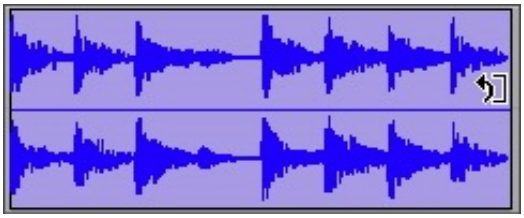


Use the Loop Trim tool to create or trim looped clips (see "Clip Looping" on page 1246).

Creating Loops with the Loop Trim Tool

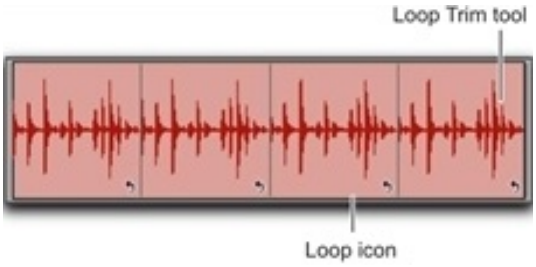
To create loop clips using the Loop Trim tool:

1. Do one of the following:
    - Click the Trim tool pop-up menu and select **Loop**.
    - Right-click on any track and select **Tools > Trim Tools > Loop**.
2. Position the cursor over the top half of an unlooped audio or MIDI clip, or clip group. The cursor changes to indicate that you can loop trim the clip. (Positioning the cursor over the bottom half of the clip results in the Standard Trim cursor.)



Loop Trim cursor

3. Do one of the following:
    - Click at the end of the clip, and drag left or right to the point you want the loop to stop.
    - Click at the beginning of the clip, and drag left or right to the point you want the loop to start.



Looped clip

Trimming Looped Clips

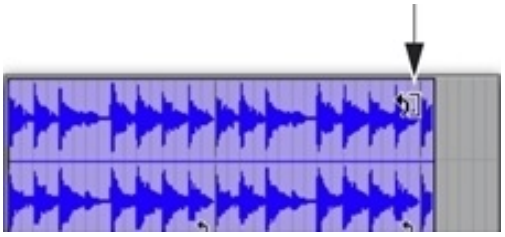
You can trim looped clips in two ways:

- Loop Trim a looped clip to change how long the clip is looped. For example, Loop Trim a looped clip from 2 bars to four bars. With a 1 bar clip, the number of loops changes from 2 to 4. Each loop iteration remains the same length, but the length of the entire looped clip changes.

- Trim the source clip (loop iteration) while keeping the overall loop length unchanged. The number of loop iterations within the looped clip changes accordingly. For example, trim a 2 bar loop iteration of a 4 bar looped clip to 1 bar. The 4 bar looped clip remains constant, but the number of loop iterations changes from 2 to 4. Each loop iteration's length changes, but how long the clip is looped does not.

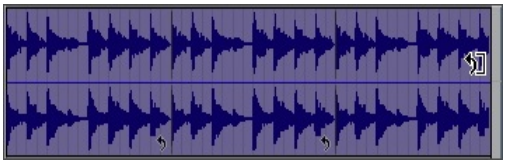
To Loop Trim a looped clip:

1. Select the Loop Trim tool.
2. Move the cursor over the top half of the looped clip (not over a Loop icon). The cursor indicates the Loop Trim tool.



Loop Trim tool

3. Trim the looped clip.



Loop trimming a looped clip

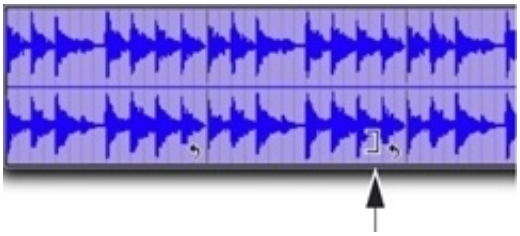
The number of loops increases or decreases to fill the new length of the entire looped clip.

Hold the Start key (Windows), or the Control key (Mac) while trimming to trim in loop iteration increments.

Trimming a looped clip does not trim any underlying Fades.

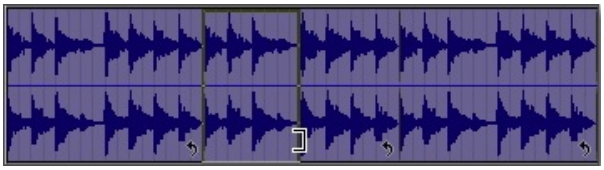
To trim the source clip (loop iteration) of a looped clip:

1. Select the Loop Trim tool.
2. Move the cursor over a Loop icon in the looped clip, or anywhere along the bottom of the clip. The cursor indicates the Trim tool icon.



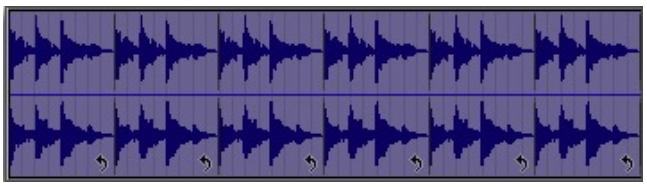
Loop Trim tool

3. Trim the start or end of the loop iteration.



Trimming a looped clip

The number of trimmed loop iterations increases or decreases to fill the original length of the entire looped clip.



Trimmed looped clip

Tandem Trimming

Tandem trimming lets you trim the start and end of two adjacent clips in tandem as long as one clip overlaps the other. Tandem trimming can be used in conjunction with Loop trimming and Scrub trimming. However, TCE and Elastic trim do not support tandem trimming.

To use Tandem trimming:

1. Select the Trim tool (or the Smart tool).
2. Command-Control-trim (Mac) or Control-Start-trim (Windows) between two adjacent overlapping clips. The cursor updates to show two brackets and an arrow to show the direction of the tandem trim.



Tandem trimming

When in Slip mode, Grid mode can be temporarily enabled by holding the Command key after releasing the Control key (Mac) or by holding the Control key after releasing the Start key.

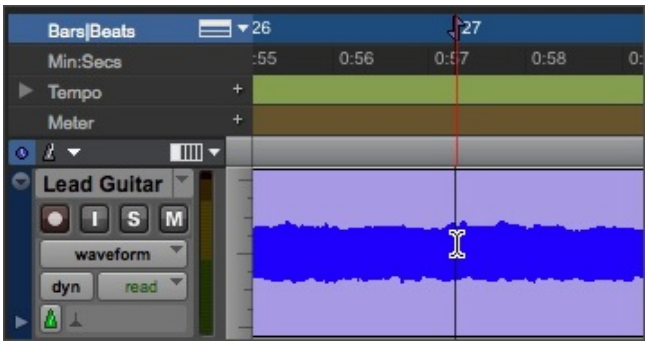
Using the Selector Tool

Use the Selector tool to place the edit cursor in a track or Timebase ruler, or to make Timeline selections or Edit selections on tracks.

Placing the Edit Cursor

To place the edit cursor with the Selector tool:

1. Select the Selector tool in the Edit window.
2. Click the location in a track or on a Timebase ruler.

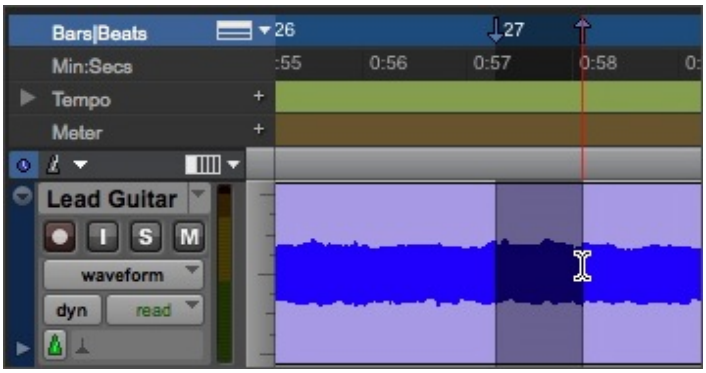


Placing the edit cursor with the Selector tool

Making an Edit Selection with the Selector Tool

To make an Edit selection with the Selector tool:

1. Select the Selector tool in the Edit window.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To make an Edit selection in a single track, drag in the track.
   - To make an Edit selection across multiple tracks, drag across the tracks.
   - If Link Timeline and Edit Selection is enabled, drag on the Timebase ruler to make an Edit selection across all tracks.



Making a selection with the Selector tool

To select an entire clip with the Selector tool:

1. Select the Selector tool in the Edit window.
2. Double-click a clip on a track.

To select an entire track with the Selector tool:

1. Select the Selector tool in the Edit window.
2. Triple-click in the track.

Making a Timeline Selection with the Selector Tool

To make a Timeline selection with the Selector tool:

1. Select the Selector tool in the Edit window.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Drag on a Timebase ruler.
   - If Link Timeline and Edit Selection is enabled, drag in a track.

Using the Grabber Tools

Use the Grabber tools to select, move, separate, and arrange clips on tracks. There are three modes for the Grabber tool: Time Grabber, Separation Grabber, and Object Grabber. For more information about arranging clips, also see "Arranging Clips" on page 1217.

Time Grabber

Selects an entire clip on a track with a single click. For more information on selecting clips, see "Selecting Track Material" on page 905.

Separation Grabber

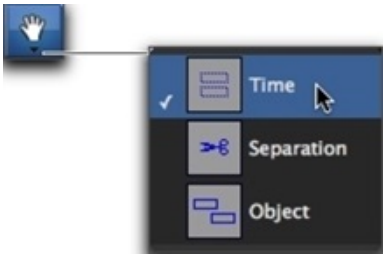
Cuts and pastes an Edit selection from one location to another by dragging. For more information, see "Separation Grabber Tool" on page 930.

Object Grabber

Lets you select multiple, noncontiguous clips. For more information, see "Object Selections " on page 907.

To select one of the Grabber tools, do one of the following:

- Click the Grabber tool in the Edit window and select the Grabber tool from the pop-up menu.



- Right-click on any track and select the Grabber tool from **`Tools > Grabber Tools`**.

Using the Smart Tool

With the Smart Tool, you can instantly access the Selector, Grabber, and Trim tools, and you can also apply and adjust fades and crossfades. The position of the cursor in relation to a clip or note, or within an automation playlist, determines how the Smart Tool functions.

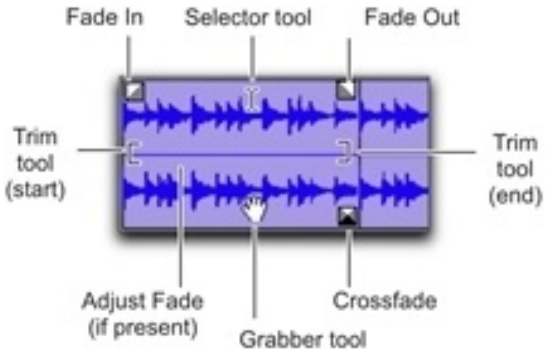


Smart Tool enabled in the Edit window

To select the Smart Tool:

- Click its icon in the upper left of the Edit window, or press F6+F7 (or F7+F8) simultaneously.

The Smart Tool in Waveform View (Audio) or Clips View (MIDI)



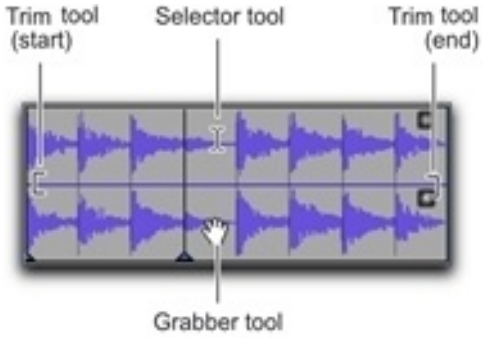
Smart Tool in Waveform view

The following capabilities are available with the Smart Tool when working with audio tracks in Waveform or Blocks view, or MIDI or Instrument tracks in Clips view:

- For the Selector tool, position the cursor over the middle of the clip, in the upper half of the clip.
- For the Grabber tool, position the cursor over the middle of a clip, in the lower half of the clip.
- For the Trim tool, position the cursor near the clip's start or end point.
- For a fade-in or fade-out, position the cursor near an audio clip's start or end point, near the top of the clip. Once the Fade cursor appears, drag into the clip to set the fade length. The fade is created automatically with the Default Fade Settings (in the Editing Preferences page).
- For a crossfade, position the cursor between two adjacent audio clips, near the bottom of the clip. Once the Crossfade cursor appears drag left or right to set the crossfade length. The crossfade is created automatically with the Default Fade Settings (in the Editing Preferences page).
- To adjust a fade-in, fade-out, or crossfade (if present), position the cursor over the fade in the vertical middle of the clip. Once the corresponding Fade or Crossfade cursor appears, drag to the left or right to adjust fade shape.

To temporarily switch the Smart Tool to the Scrubber, place the cursor over the clip so that the Selector tool is enabled, then press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows).

The Smart Tool in Warp View



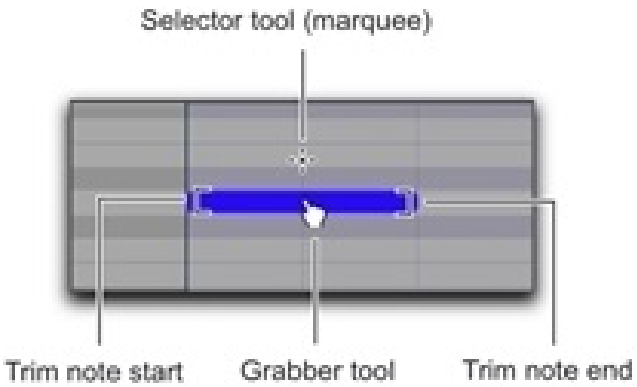
Smart Tool in Warp view

The following capabilities are available with the Smart Tool when working with Elastic Audio-enabled audio tracks in Warp view, or MIDI or Instrument tracks in Clips view:

- For the Selector tool, position the cursor over the middle of the clip, in the upper half of the clip.
- For the Grabber tool, position the cursor over the middle of a clip, in the lower half of the clip, but not over an Event marker or Warp marker.
- For Elastic Audio warping, position the cursor over an Event marker or a Warp marker, in the lower half of the clip (for more information on warping audio, see "Editing in Warp View" on page 1350).
- For the Trim tool, position the cursor near the clip's start or end point, in the upper half of the clip.

To temporarily switch the Smart Tool to the Scrubber, place the cursor in the upper half of the clip so that the Selector tool is enabled, then press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows).

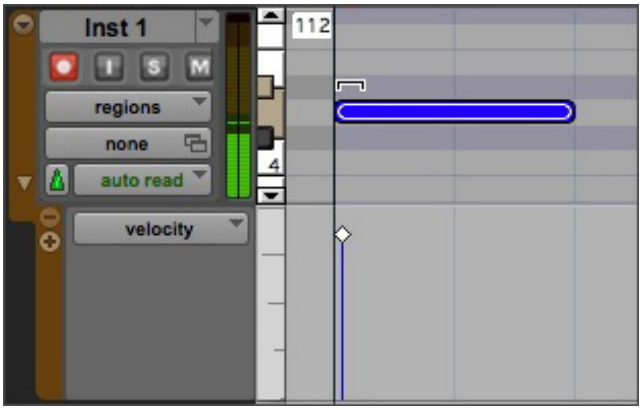
The Smart Tool in Notes View



Smart Tool in Notes view

The following capabilities are available with the Smart Tool when working with MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes view in the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows:

- For the Marquee Selector, position the cursor so it does not cover any notes.
- For the Grabber tool, position the cursor over the note, near its middle.
- For the Trim tool, position the cursor near the note start or end point.
- For the Velocity Trim tool, position the cursor over the note and press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows).



Trimming the velocity of a note

To temporarily switch the Smart Tool to the Pencil tool, press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows).

To temporarily switch the Smart Tool to the Eraser, press Option+Control (Mac) or Alt+Start (Windows).

The Smart Tool in Automation and Controller Views

The following capabilities are available with the Smart Tool when working in both automation and controller views:

- For the Selector tool, position the cursor anywhere in the bottom 75% of the playlist for the Selector tool. Drag with the Selector tool to select breakpoints.
- For Trim tools, position the cursor in the top 25% of the playlist for the Trim tool. Drag with the Trim tool to trim breakpoints. Press Command+Shift (Mac) or Control+Shift (Windows) while trimming for fine control.
- To add a breakpoint with the Smart Tool, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) to temporarily change the cursor from the trimmer to the insertion grabber. When this occurs, other command key behaviors such a Grid toggle and High Resolution editing are superseded by the insertion operation.
- For Grabber tools, Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) for the Grabber tool, then click in on the automation line to create breakpoints.
- To edit existing breakpoints, move the cursor near a breakpoint for the Grabber tool.
- To vertically constrain Grabber tool movement, press Shift.
- To vertically constrain Grabber tool movement with fine control, press Command+Shift (Mac) or Control+Shift (Windows).

The Smart Tool with Stereo and Multichannel Tracks

When using the Smart Tool on stereo and multichannel tracks, individual channels cannot be independently edited. All edits affect all channels as a whole.

Tool switching for the Smart Tool in stereo and multichannel tracks is determined by the position within the entire track, and not within individual channels.

Using the Scrubber Tool

The Scrubber tool lets you “scrub” up to two tracks of audio in the Edit Window. Scrubbing is a technique that originated in tape editing, where the tape was rocked back and forth past the playhead at slower than normal speeds to find a particular location (usually for cutting and splicing).

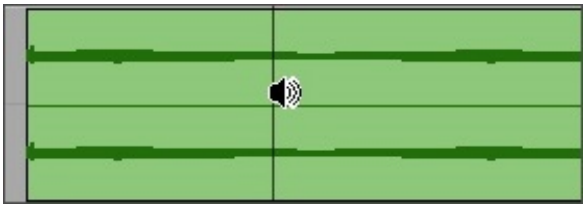
While viewing an audio waveform in Pro Tools can be helpful in visually finding an edit point, sometimes a waveform display (because of its sonic characteristics) may not reveal the desired spot in the audio material. By scrubbing back and forth in Pro Tools, you can listen and locate an exact edit point.

When the Edit Insertion Follows Scrub/Shuttle option is enabled in the Operation Preferences page, the edit cursor automatically locates to the point where scrubbing stops.

When the Scrolling option is set to **`Continuous`** (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only) or **`Center Playhead`** (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only), clicking with the Scrubber in a track’s playlist centers the Edit window around that point, and moves the Playhead there. With these Scrolling options, scrubbed material moves past the Playhead, which remains stationary and centered.

To scrub a single audio track:

1. Select the Scrubber tool.
2. Drag within the track: left for reverse or right for forward.



Scrubbing an audio track with the Scrubber

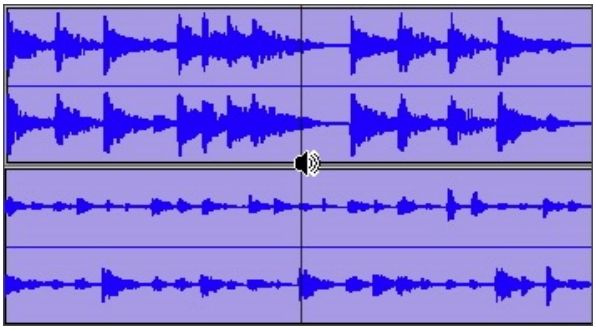
The distance and speed with which you drag (with either the mouse, or the scrub wheel on a control surface) determine the length and speed of the scrubbed audio. Audio from the scrubbed track is routed to its output, along with any effects assigned to the track.

The resolution for the Scrubber is dependent on the zoom factor for the scrubbed track.

You can temporarily switch the Selector tool to the Scrubber tool by Control-clicking (Mac) or Start-clicking (Windows). For finer resolution, Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows).

To scrub multiple audio tracks, do one of the following:

- With the Scrubber selected, drag between two adjacent tracks.



Scrubbing between two audio tracks

- Scrub within a selection that contains multiple tracks.

When scrubbing multiple tracks, only the first two tracks are heard.

The maximum number of channels scrubbed in Pro Tools is eight, which lets you scrub a 7.1 track, two stereo tracks (four channels), but not two 5.1 surround tracks (12 channels).

Scrub/Shuttle Mode

When scrubbing normally, you can scrub at normal playback speeds or slower. Scrub/Shuttle mode, however, lets you scrub at several times normal speed, which is helpful in playing through large ranges and locating material.

To scrub in Shuttle mode (at several times normal speed):

1. Select the Scrubber tool.
2. While pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), drag within the track—left for reverse, right for forward. The Fast Forward and Rewind buttons in the Transport window engage.

   The distance and speed dragged determine the speed for the scrubbed audio.

Shuttle Lock Mode

Shuttle Lock mode lets you use the numeric key-pad to shuttle up to two tracks forward or backwards at specific speeds: 5 is normal speed, numbers from 6 up to 9 provide increasingly faster fast-forward speeds, and numbers from 4 down to 1 provide progressively faster rewind speeds (4 is the slowest rewind Shuttle Lock speed, 1 is the fastest). If multiple tracks are selected, only the first two tracks are shuttled.

To play one or two tracks with the shuttle lock:

1. With Pro Tools Ultimate, make sure the Operation preference for Numeric Keypad mode is not set to **Shuttle** (see "Operation Preferences" on page 142).
2. With the Selector tool, click in the track where you want playback to begin. To shuttle on two tracks, Shift-click in a second track.
3. Press the Control (Mac) or Start key (Windows) and a number on the numeric keypad: 0–9 (9 is fastest, 5 is normal speed, and 0 stops shuttling).

   Once Shuttle Lock mode is initiated, Fast Forward and Rewind become highlighted in the Transport window.
4. Press additional keys to change the playback speed, or press Plus (+) or Minus (–) to switch the playback direction (plus for forward, minus for backward).
5. To stop playback, press Control+0 (Mac) or Start+0 (Windows).

To exit Shuttle Lock mode, do one of the following:

- Press Stop in the Transport window.
- Press the Spacebar.

Custom Shuttle Lock Speed

Use the Custom Shuttle Lock Speed preference to customize the highest fast-forward Shuttle Lock speed (key 9) to better match your editing and auditioning needs.

To configure Custom Shuttle Lock Speed:

1. In Pro Tools, select **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. Be sure that the Numeric Keypad mode is set to **Transport** or **Classic** (see "Operation Preferences" on page 142).
3. Enter a percentage for the **Custom Shuttle Lock Speed** setting. The range for this setting is 50–800%. You can use the Up and Down Arrow keys to increase or decrease the setting.
4. Click **OK**.

   The **Custom Shuttle Lock Speed** setting is saved with your Pro Tools system preferences (not with the session).

To enable Custom Shuttle Lock Speed:

- Press Control+ 9 (Mac) on the numeric keypad or Start+9 (Windows).

Numeric Keypad Set to Shuttle

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) Pro Tools offers another form of shuttling, different from that of Shuttle Lock mode. With the Numeric Keypad mode set to **Shuttle**, playback of the current Edit selection is triggered by pressing and holding the keys on the numeric keypad—playback stops once the keys are released. Various playback speeds are available in both forward and reverse. In this mode, pre- and post-roll are ignored.

To shuttle with the Numeric Keypad mode set to Shuttle:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. Set the Numeric Keypad mode to **Shuttle** and click **OK**.
3. With the Selector tool, click in the track where you want playback to begin. To shuttle on two tracks, Shift-click in a second track.
4. Hold any of the following keys (or key combinations) on the numeric keypad to trigger playback.

Shuttle Speed	Rewind Key	Forward Key
1 X Speed	4	6
4 X Speed	7	9
1/4 X Speed	1	3
1/2 X Speed	4+5	5+6
2 X Speed	7+8	8+9

5. Press a different key to switch the playback direction or speed. Release to stop.

Using the Pencil Tool

The Pencil tool lets you draw several types of Pro Tools data:

- Audio waveforms (see "Waveform Repair with the Pencil Tool" below)
- MIDI data (see "Using the Pencil Tool" on page 1025)
- Tempo changes (see "Editing Tempo Events in the Tempo Editor" on page 1159)
- Automation (see "Drawing Automation" on page 1599).

When editing automation or MIDI control data with the Pencil tool, you can switch between the current Pencil Tool shape (such as Line) and Free Hand pencil editing using the Command key (Mac) or the Control key (Windows). When editing with the selected Pencil shape, the Pencil cursor angles to the left. When editing in Free Hand with the key modifier, the Pencil cursor angles to the right.

Waveform Repair with the Pencil Tool

On audio tracks, the Pencil tool lets you destructively "redraw" waveform data. This tool is most commonly used to repair a pop or click in an audio file. A pop or click appears as a sudden sharp spike in a waveform. This tool only becomes active when the Edit window is zoomed in to the sample level.

Although you can Undo a Pencil tool edit, it is recommended that you create a backup copy of the target audio before using the Pencil tool. You can do this by using the AudioSuite Duplicate plugin.

The Pencil tool is a destructive editing tool that permanently modifies the audio file on disk and should be used with caution.

For information about the AudioSuite Duplicate plugin, see the Audio Plugins Guide.

To destructively edit an audio waveform with the Pencil tool:

1. Locate the area you want to edit.
2. Using the Zoomer tool or the Zoom buttons, zoom down to the sample level so the waveform appears as a continuous thin line. Adjust the Track Height, as necessary, to edit the waveform with greater precision. You can also use vertical zoom for greater visual resolution.

   You can recall zoom levels with the Zoom Preset buttons (see "Zooming Options" on page 877), or with Memory Locations (see "Recalling Memory Locations" on page 1201). The default setting for Zoom Preset 5 is at the sample level for Pencil editing.



3. Select the Pencil tool.
4. Carefully draw with the Pencil tool by dragging over the area of the waveform.

   Do not over-edit or the results may be undesirable. However, you can use the Undo command to undo your previous edit.



Repairing a “pop” with the Pencil tool

The Pencil tool can independently edit different channels of a multichannel track.

Try to limit editing to smoothing over a very small problem area, and keep the “fixes” in character with the shape of the surrounding waveform.

Edit/Tool Mode Keyboard Lock

Enable **`Options > Edit/Tool Mode Keyboard Lock`** to lock the currently selected Edit Tools (Zoom, Trim, Grabber, and Pencil only) in place and prevent them from being inadvertently changed when using keyboard shortcuts. For example, with **`Edit/Tool Mode Keyboard Lock`** enabled and the Trim tool is set to Standard, pressing F6 repeatedly will only select the Standard Trim tool and will not toggle through the other Trim tools (TCE, Scrub, and Loop). This way you can switch between Edit tools (such as switching from the Grabber to the Trim) using keyboard shortcuts without accidentally cycling through Edit tool types.

Even when Edit/Tool Mode Keyboard Lock is enabled, Edit Tool types can still be changed using the mouse or by using the Right-click menu.

When enabled, this option also locks the current Grid mode (Grid or Relative Grid) in place.

To lock (or unlock) the current Edit Tool modes:

1. Select the Edit Tool modes you want (such as the Standard Trim tool, Time Grabber tool, and the Free Hand Pencil tool).
2. Select (or deselect) **`Options > Edit/Tool Mode Keyboard Lock`**.

34 Making Selections

Pro Tools provides many tools for selecting material in the Edit window.

Linking or Unlinking Timeline and Edit Selections

Pro Tools lets you link or unlink the Timeline and Edit selections.

When the Timeline and Edit selections are linked, selecting in a track's playlist (making an Edit selection) also defines the play and record range (the Timeline selection).

Unlinking Timeline and Edit selections lets you make a selection within a track for editing purposes that is distinct from the selection in the Timeline (which determines the playback and recording range).

To link or unlink the Timeline and Edit selections, do one of the following:

- Select or deselect **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
- In the Edit window, a MIDI Editor window, or the Score Editor window, click the Link Timeline and Edit Selection button so it becomes highlighted (selected) or unhighlighted (not selected). Enabling or disabling the Link Timeline and Edit Selection button in any editor window affects all editor windows.



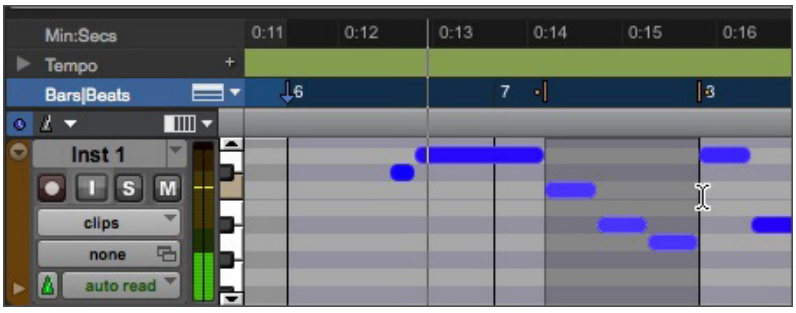
Link Timeline and Edit Selection button enabled in the Edit window

Press Shift+Forward Slash (/) to toggle Link Timeline and Edit Selection on and off.

If you are working on a film or video scene, you may want to unlink the Timeline and Edit selections to find or audition material that is at a different location than the current Timeline selection. Edit selections can be played (choose **Edit > Selection > Play Edit**) without disrupting the current Timeline selection. Once you find the material, you can then go back to the Timeline selection and place it within the context of the scene.

The following figure illustrates another reason why you might want to unlink the Timeline and Edit selections. In this example, the Timeline selection sets a range to be looped on playback, while a MIDI clip (residing within the loop) is selected for editing purposes.

During playback, the Edit selection can be nudged, quantized, or transposed while the loop plays back completely independent and uninterrupted.

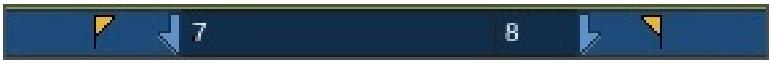


Timeline and Edit selections unlinked

While you could theoretically do this with the Timeline and Edit selections linked, as soon as playback is stopped, the playback range would then be updated to that of the more recent edit range, or to a single note when editing MIDI.

Timeline and Edit Selection Markers

Timeline selections are displayed in the Main Timebase ruler with *Timeline Selection Markers*, which appear as blue arrows (red when recording). In addition, there are *Pre- and Post-Roll Flags* (which are green when enabled) indicating the location for pre- and post-roll.



Timeline Selection Markers with Pre- and Post-Roll Flags

When the Timeline and Edit selections are unlinked, Edit selections are displayed in the ruler with *Edit Markers*, which appear as black brackets.



Edit Markers

If the Timeline and Edit selections are linked, Edit selections are represented by the blue Timeline Selection Markers.

See the following topics for more information on working with Timeline and Edit selections:

- "Selecting Track Material" on the next page
- "Timeline Selections" on page 916
- "Setting Punch and Loop Points" on page 790
- "Setting Pre- and Post-Roll" on page 794

Linking or Unlinking Track and Edit Selections

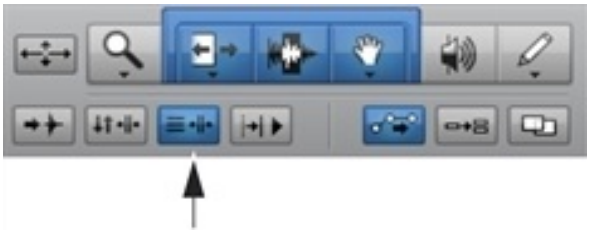
Pro Tools lets you link or unlink Track selection with Edit selections.

When Track and Edit selections are linked, you can make a selection within a track or across multiple tracks for editing and each associated track is selected (track names automatically highlight). This lets you quickly apply track-level commands (such as Track View toggle, change track heights) and have the command apply to all tracks you are working on.

When Track and Edit selections are unlinked, making an Edit selection does not automatically select all associated tracks.

To link or unlink Track and Edit selection, do one of the following:

- Select or deselect **`Options > Link Track and Edit Selection`**.
- In the upper left of the Edit window, under the Edit tools, click the Link Track and Edit Selection button so it becomes highlighted (selected) or unhighlighted (not selected).



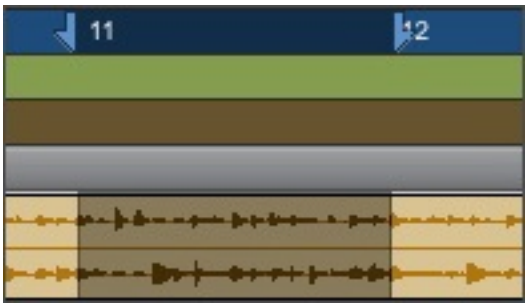
Link Track and Edit Selection enabled

- *Press Shift+T to toggle Link Track and Edit Selection on and off.*

Selecting Track Material

Before audio and MIDI material can be edited, it must first be selected. The Track View determines how the material is viewed and selected.

When you make a selection, it appears as a highlighted area of the tracks, and is also indicated by blue start and end arrows (*Timeline Selection Markers*) in the Main Timebase ruler. If any track (audio or MIDI) in the session is record-enabled, even if it is hidden, these markers appear red.



Timeline Selection Markers indicating Edit selection

If the Timeline and Edit selections are unlinked, the Edit selection range is indicated by Edit Markers in the Main Timebase ruler. See "Linking or Unlinking Timeline and Edit Selections" on page 903 for details.

Selections and Edit Groups

When making selections on tracks that are part of an Edit Group, all tracks within the group become selected.

Selections and Hidden Tracks

When editing tracks that are part of an active Edit Group, any tracks within the group that are hidden are not affected by the edits. To edit all members of a group, make sure they are visible by highlighting their names in the Track List.

Selections in Multiple Tracks

To make a selection in multiple tracks:

- With the Selector tool, drag vertically to include adjacent tracks in a selection (drag horizontally to define the time range).

Selecting Clips

To select a portion of a clip:

- With the Selector tool, drag within a clip (left or right) to select the material on a single track. (You can also use the Selector tool across multiple, adjacent tracks to make multitrack selections.)



Selecting a portion of a clip

To select an entire clip, do one of the following:

- Click the clip with the Time Grabber tool.
- Double-click the clip with the Selector tool.

To select two clips and the time range between them:

1. With the Time Grabber, click the first clip.
2. Shift-click the second clip. Both clips are selected, along with the time range between them (including any other clips).

To select an entire track, do one of the following:

- Click in the track with the Selector tool and then choose **`Edit > Select All`**.
- Triple-click with the Selector tool in the track.

Press Command+A (Mac) or Control+A (Windows) for Select All.

To select all clips in all tracks:

1. Select the "All" Edit Group in the Groups List menu.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click in any track with the Selector tool and choose **`Edit > Select All`**.
   - Triple-click with the Selector tool in any track.

   Another way to select all clips in all tracks, without having to select the "All" Edit Group, is to press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows), then press Command+A (Mac) or Control+A (Windows). The Link Timeline and Edit Selection option must be enabled.

Clip List Selection Follows Edit Selection

When the Editing preference for **`Clip List Selection Follows Edit Selection`** is enabled, selecting a clip in a track also causes the clip to become selected in the Clip List.

Conversely, if the Editing preference for **`Edit Selection Follows Clip List Selection`** is enabled, selecting a clip in the Clip List causes the initial occurrence of that clip to become selected within the track.

Selecting All from Timebase Rulers

To select all material in all displayed audio and MIDI tracks:

1. Enable Link Timeline and Edit Selection (**`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**).
2. Double-click in any Timebase ruler. All clips in all displayed audio and MIDI tracks are selected. Tracks that are hidden are not selected.

To select all material in all tracks, including Conductor events:

1. Enable Link Timeline and Edit Selection (**`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**).
2. While pressing Option (Mac) or Control (Windows), double-click in any Timebase ruler. All clips in all displayed audio and MIDI tracks are selected, including all events in each of the Conductor tracks.

Making Selections While Playing

Pro Tools lets you make selections during playback with the Up and Down Arrow keys.

To make a selection while playing:

1. Enable Link Timeline and Edit Selection (**`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**).
2. With the Selector tool, click somewhere near the beginning of the track in which you want to make the selection.
3. Click Play in the Transport window (or press the Spacebar) to begin playback.
4. When playback reaches the point where you want the selection to begin, press the Down Arrow key.
5. Press the Up Arrow key at the point where you want the selection to end. The selected range becomes highlighted.
6. To stop playback, click Stop in the Transport (or press the Spacebar).

To automatically scroll to the beginning of the selection (or to the location of the on-screen cursor), press the Left Arrow key. To scroll to the end of the selection, press the Right Arrow key.

While in Page Scroll or Continuous Scroll mode, making a selection in the Timeline or a playlist during playback as the playback cursor moves off-screen suspends page scrolling. To resume page scrolling and jump to the current playback location, click the Playback Cursor locator in the Main Timebase ruler (see "Locating the Playback Cursor when It Is Off-Screen" on page 742).

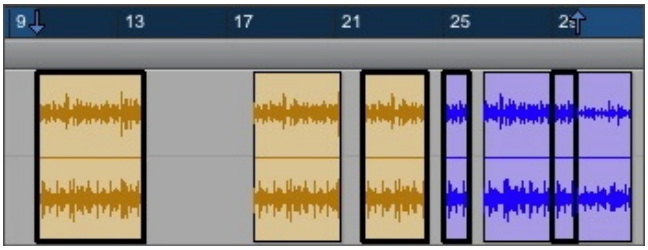
Object Selections

Use the Object Grabber tool to select noncontiguous clips on one or more tracks. Noncontiguous selections must encompass entire clips. If you want a noncontiguous selection to include a portion of a clip, first turn the portion into a new clip with the Separate Clip command (see "Separate Commands" on page 927).

The Object Grabber is not available when the Edit mode is set to Shuffle or Spot.

To select noncontiguous clips:

1. Set the Edit mode to either Slip or Grid.
2. Click the Grabber tools pop-up menu and select **`Object`**.
3. Shift-click each clip you want to include in the selection. The clips can even reside on different tracks.



Noncontiguous selection

Each clicked clip is surrounded by a dark border, indicating it is selected.

The Object Grabber tool ignores Edit Groups when making selections. For instance, selecting a clip on a grouped track does not cause clips in the other tracks in the group to become selected.

Object to Time Selection

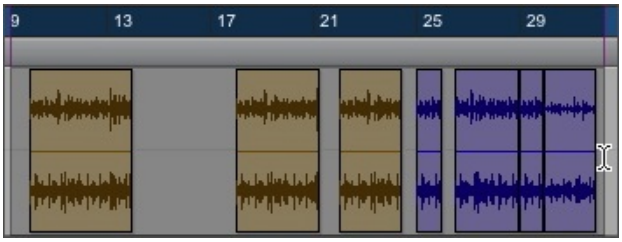
You can convert between Time- and Object-based selections. Time selections are made with the Selector and Time Grabber tools. Object selections are made with the Object Grabber tool.

Converting to an Object selection is useful when you are working with large selections, especially across multiple tracks, and you want to remove certain clips from the selection.

Converting to a Time selection is useful if you want to select all clips between a noncontiguous Object selection.

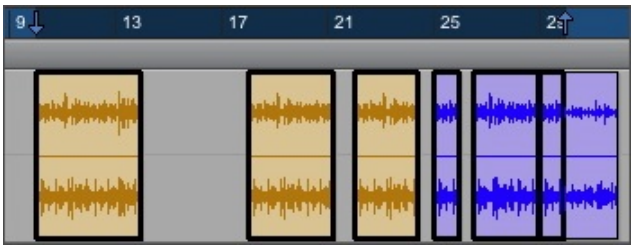
To change a Time selection to an Object selection:

1. Drag with the Selector tool in any track to define a selection, or select in a Timebase ruler to select across all tracks.



Selected clips

2. With the Object Grabber tool selected, double-click the Grabber icon in the toolbar. Clips falling within the selection range become selected as objects. Clips that were partially selected become deselected.



Clips selected as objects

To select clips that were partially selected, press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) while double-clicking the Grabber icon.

To change an Object selection to a Time selection:

1. Select any number of clips with the Object Grabber tool.
2. Double-click the Selector tool in the toolbar. The time range between the first and last clip becomes selected.

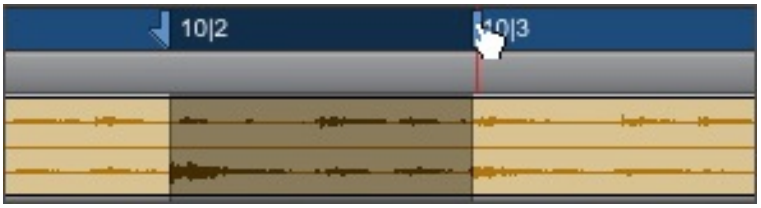
   When using the Object Grabber tool on tracks that belong to an Edit Group, clips in the other grouped tracks are selected if they fall within the range of the selected clip.

Changing a Selection Length

The selection range can be shortened or lengthened. This does not affect the material within the selection.

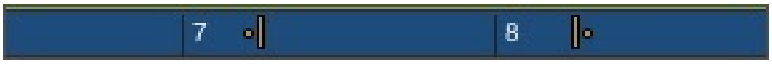
To change the length of a selection, do one of the following:

- With the Selector tool, position the cursor over one end of the current selection and Shift-click, or Shift-drag left or right.
- In the Main Timebase ruler, drag the Timeline Selection Marker for the selection's start or end point.



Dragging a Timeline Selection Marker

- If **`Link Timeline and Edit Selection`** is disabled, drag the Edit Marker to change the selection length.



Edit Markers

To make a long-length selection:

1. With the Selector tool, click at where you want the selection to start.
2. Scroll to the end point and Shift-click at the point where you want the selection to end.

   To verify the start and end points of a long selection, press the Left Arrow key to scroll to the beginning of the selection, or press the Right Arrow key to scroll to the end.

Nudging a Selection Range

The selection range (not the material within the selection) can be moved by the Nudge value.

To nudge a selection range:

1. Configure the Nudge value. For details, see "Defining the Nudge Value" on page 935.
2. Make the initial selection with the Selector tool.
3. While pressing Shift, press Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to move the selection range by the Nudge value.

Nudging Selection Start/End Points

Start and end points for selections can be moved by nudging them.

To move a selection start or end point by the Nudge value:

1. Configure the Nudge value. For details, see "Defining the Nudge Value" on page 935.
2. Make the initial selection with the Selector tool.
3. Do one of the following:
   - While pressing Option+Shift (Mac) or Alt+Shift (Windows), press Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to move the selection's start point by the Nudge value.
   - While pressing Command+Shift (Mac) or Control+Shift (Windows), press Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to move the selection's end point by the Nudge value.

Extending Selections in Time

You can extend the Edit selection to clip start and end points, to include an adjacent clip, to Markers and Memory Locations (Edit and/or Timeline selections).

To extend the selection to a clip start or end point:

1. With the Selector tool, select a portion of a clip, or click anywhere in the clip.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Press Shift+Tab to extend the selection to the clip's end point.
   - Press Option+Shift+Tab (Mac) or Control+Shift+Tab (Windows) to extend the selection to the clip's start point.

To extend the selection to include an adjacent clip:

1. Select the first clip with the Time Grabber tool.
2. Do one of the following:
   - With Tab to Transients disabled, press Control+Shift+Tab (Mac) or Start+Shift+Tab (Windows) to extend the selection to the next clip boundary.
   - Press Option+Control+Shift+Tab (Mac) or Control+Start+Shift+Tab (Windows) to extend the selection to include the previous clip boundary.

To extend the selection to a Marker or Memory Location:

1. With **`Link Timeline and Edit Selection`** enabled, do one of the following:
   - Click in a track with the Selector tool at the start or end point.
   - Make a selection with the Selector or Time Grabber tool.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Shift-click a Marker in the Markers ruler.
   - Shift-click a Memory Location in the Memory Locations window.

   The selection is extended from the original Insertion point to the Marker or Memory Location.

Shrinking the Edit Selection to the Next or Previous Edit

You can shrink the current Edit selection so that Selection Start and End can be trimmed (for example when Tabbing to Transients while making a Selection, you can move the Selection End earlier if you tabbed too far).

To shrink the start of the Edit selection and move the insertion point to next edit:

- Press Command+Option+Shift+L (Mac) or Control+Alt+Shift+L (Windows)

To shrink the end of the Edit selection and move the insertion point to previous edit:

- Press Command+Option+Shift+' (Mac) or Control+Alt+Shift+' (Windows)

Doubling or Halving the Edit Selection

Pro Tools lets you double or halve the current Edit selection. This can be especially useful for music production when working with audio loops and MIDI in Grid mode.

To double the Edit selection, do one of the following:

- Choose **Edit > Selection > Double Selection**.
- Press Command+Option+Control+Shift+' (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+Shift+' (Windows).

To halve the Edit selection, do one of the following:

- Choose **Edit > Selection > Halve Selection**.
- Press Command+Option+Control+Shift+L (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+Shift+L (Windows).

Duplicating and Extending the Edit Selection

Pro Tools lets you Duplicate and Extend the Edit selection. This can be especially useful for music production when working with audio loops and MIDI in Grid mode.

To duplicate and extend the Edit selection, do one of the following:

- Choose **Edit > Selection > Duplicate and Extend Selection**.
- Press Command+Option+Control+Shift+D (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+Shift+D (Windows).

Any track content in the Edit selection is duplicated and the selection extends from the original start time to the end of the duplicate.

Moving the Edit Selection in Time

Pro Tools lets you move the Edit selection earlier or later by the selection amount. You can also move the Edit selection to the next track above or below the current Edit selection.

To move the Edit selection earlier by the selection amount, do one of the following:

- Choose **Edit > Selection > Move Edit Left**.
- Press Command+Option+Control+L (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+L (Windows).

To move the Edit selection later by the selection amount, do one of the following:

- Choose **Edit > Selection > Move Edit Right**.
- Press Command+Option+Control+' (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+' (Windows).

Using the Edit Selection Indicators (Start, End, and Length)

The Edit Selection indicators at the top of the Edit window can define precise Edit selections. Time values for the Edit Selection indicators use the time format for the Main Time Scale.



Edit Selection indicators

To make a selection with the Edit Selection indicators:

1. Click with the Selector tool in the track you want to select.
2. Click in the Start field at the top of the Edit window.
3. Type in the start point for the selection and press the Forward Slash key (/) to enter the value and automatically move to the end field.
4. Type in the end point for the selection and press Enter to accept the value.

Numeric Entry Shortcuts for Selection Indicators

You can use the following shortcuts for entering values in the Edit Selection indicators:

- Press the Forward Slash (/) key to cycle through the three Edit Selection indicators.
- Use Period (.) or the Left and Right Arrow keys to move through the different time fields in each Edit Selection indicator.
- Press the Up or Down Arrow keys to increase or decrease numerical values.
- Move the mouse scroll wheel up or down to increase or decrease numerical values.
- Drag in a field to scroll to a new value. For finer resolution, Command-drag (Mac) or Control-drag (Windows).
- Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and Plus (+) or Minus (–), then type a number, to add or subtract from the current field value. For example, to add 10 to a current field value, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and Plus (+) key, type "10," and press Enter.
- Press Escape to exit the Edit Selection indicators without entering any values.

These shortcuts can also be used to enter start and end values in the Transport window.

Calculator Entry Mode

You can perform calculator-style editing of values in the Edit Selection indicators.

To subtract time values:

1. In the Edit Selection indicator, highlight the time field you want to change.
2. Press Minus (–) on the numeric keypad.
3. Type the amount you want to subtract from the current time value, then press Enter.
4. Press Enter again to apply the change.

To add time values:

1. In the Edit Selection indicator, highlight the time field you want to change.
2. Press Plus (+) on the numeric keypad.
3. Type the amount you want to add to the current time value, then press Enter.
4. Press Enter again to apply the change.

Selecting Across Multiple Tracks

To perform edits across multiple tracks or all tracks, you must first select the tracks. Do this by including other tracks in the selection, or by selecting in a Timebase ruler (for all tracks).

To make a selection in multiple tracks:

- With the Selector tool, drag vertically to include adjacent tracks in a selection (drag horizontally to define the time range).

To extend a selection to another track:

1. Using the Selector or Time Grabber tool, make a selection in the first track or tracks.
2. Shift-click in additional tracks with the Selector tool. An identical range is selected for each additional track.

To shorten or lengthen the selection across each of the tracks, press Shift while dragging to change the range of the selection.

To select across all tracks, do one of the following:

- Enable the *All* Edit Group and make a selection in any track.
- Drag with the Selector tool in any Timebase ruler (make sure the Timeline and Edit Selections are linked).

These selections include all tracks in the Edit window, but do not include the Conductor tracks (for Tempo, Meter, and Markers).

To select across all tracks, including the Conductor tracks (for Tempo, Meter, and Markers):

- Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) with the Selector tool in any Timebase ruler.

Moving the Edit Selection Across Tracks

To move the Edit selection to the next track above the current selection:

- Press Control+P (Mac) or Start+P (Windows).

To move the Edit selection to the next track below the current selection:

- Press Control+; (Mac) or Start+; (Windows).

Extending (or Contracting) the Edit Selection Over Multiple Tracks

To extend the Edit selection to the next track above the current selection, do one of the following:

- Shift-click with the Selector tool (within the same time as the current Edit selection) on the track just above the current Edit selection.
- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Extend Edit Up`**.
- Press Control+Shift+P (Mac) or Start+Shift+P (Windows).

To extend the Edit selection to the next track below the current selection, do one of the following:

- Shift-click with the Selector tool (within the same time as the current Edit selection) on the track just below the current Edit selection.
- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Extend Edit Down`**.
- Press Control+Shift+; (Mac) or Start+Shift+; (Windows).

To remove the top track from an Edit selection spanning more than one track, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Remove Edit From Top`**.
- Press Option+Control+P (Mac) or Alt+Start+P (Windows).

To remove the bottom track from an Edit selection spanning more than one track, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Remove Edit From Bottom`**.
- Press Option+Control+; (Mac) or Alt+Start+; (Windows).

Moving and Extending Selections Between Tracks with Commands Keyboard Focus

With Commands Keyboard Focus enabled, Edit selections can be moved or extended to adjacent tracks.

To move a selection to an adjacent track:

1. Enable Commands Keyboard Focus (see "Keyboard Focus" on page 26).



Commands Keyboard Focus button enabled

2. With the Selector or Time Grabber tool, make a selection.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Press P on your computer keyboard to move the selection to the previous track.
   - Press semicolon (;) to move the selection to the next track.

   In either instance, the original Edit selection becomes deselected.

To extend a selection to an adjacent track:

1. Enable Commands Keyboard Focus (see "Keyboard Focus" on page 26).
2. With the Selector or Time Grabber tool, make a selection.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Press Shift+P to extend the selection to the previous track.
   - Press Shift+Semicolon (;) to extend the selection to the next track.

   In either instance, the original Edit selection remains selected.

Other Useful Selection Techniques

Following are some additional useful selection editing techniques.

To position the edit cursor precisely at a clip start, end, or sync point:

1. Make sure the Tab to Transients button is not enabled. (See "Tabbing to Transients" on the next page.)
2. Click with the Selector tool in the track.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Press Tab to move the cursor to the next clip or clip group start, end, or sync point.
   - Press Option+Tab (Mac) or Control+Tab (Windows) to move the cursor to the previous clip or clip group start, end, or sync point.

To make a selection with the Scrubber:

1. Choose Setup › Preferences and click the **Operation** tab.
2. Select the option for “Edit Insertion Follows Scrub/Shuttle,” then click OK.
3. Scrub with the Scrubber to find an appropriate start point for the selection, then release.
4. While pressing Shift, scrub to an appropriate end point for the selection, then release. The range between the initial and final scrub becomes selected.

To move a selection to an adjacent clip on the same track:

1. Select a clip with the Time Grabber.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Press Control+Tab (Mac) or Start+Tab (Windows) to move the selection to the next clip.
   - Press Option+Control+Tab (Mac) or Control+Start+Tab (Windows) to move the selection to the previous clip.

   In either instance, the original clip becomes deselected.

To slide an Edit selection in the Main Timebase ruler:

1. With the Selector or Time Grabber tool, make a selection.
2. While pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), move the cursor over either of the Timeline Selection Markers in the ruler (the Time Grabber appears).



Sliding an Edit selection in the Main Timebase ruler

3. Drag left or right to move the Edit selection back or forward in time while preserving its length.

   If Link Timeline and Edit Selection is disabled (**`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**), Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) the Edit Markers instead.

Right-Click Commands and Selection Preservation

You can use Right-click commands with key combinations to perform operations on objects while maintaining selections in the Edit and Mix windows. For example, you can maintain selections in the following areas while carrying out certain commands:

- Clip selections in the Timeline
- Clip name selections in the Clip List
- Track selections

To apply a command to an object while keeping the current selection:

- Command-Right-click (Mac) or Control-Right-click (Windows) the object and choose a command from the pop-up menu.

Tabbing to Transients

With the Tab to Transients button enabled, you can automatically navigate to transients in audio waveforms in Waveform view, placing the cursor just before the detected transient peak. This lets you define selections and play ranges, as well as start and end points for new clips, without having to zoom in on the waveform.



Tab to Transients button enabled

To toggle Tab to Transients on and off, press Command+Option+Tab (Mac) or Control+Alt+T (Windows).

In Warp view, Tab to Transients tabs to all Event and Warp markers in a clip. Normal Tab tabs to clip boundaries and all Warp markers. In Analysis view, pressing Tab always tabs to Event markers, regardless of whether or not Tab to Transients is enabled.

With MIDI and Instrument tracks when Tab to Transients is disabled, pressing Tab moves the insertion point to the next MIDI clip boundary regardless of the track view (just like with audio clips).

With MIDI and Instrument tracks when Tab to Transients is enabled, pressing Tab moves the Edit insertion to the beginning of the next note or clip boundary regardless of the track view (just like with audio transients), but does not make note selections.

For more information, see "Keyboard Shortcuts for Navigating MIDI" on page 1047.

To set the start and end points of a selection with Tab to Transients:

1. In the upper left of the Edit window, click the Tab to Transients button so it becomes selected.
2. If you will be setting the play range with this selection, enable **`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**.
3. Click in the audio track just before the beginning of the material you want to select.
4. Press Tab repeatedly until the cursor locates to the transient where you want to start the selection. If necessary, you can move to the previous transient by pressing Option+Tab (Mac) or Control+Tab (Windows).
5. Press Shift+Tab until the cursor locates to the end of the material you want to select.

To move the selection end point to the previous transient, press Option+Shift+Tab (Mac) or Control+Shift+Tab (Windows).

Once selected, the material can be looped for recording or playback, or it can be turned into a new clip with the Separate or Capture command.

Peak transients are usually visible in the waveform. However, some low-frequency transients may not appear as visible peaks in the waveform.

Tab to Transients Across Multiple Tracks

With the edit cursor inserted across multiple tracks, you can use Tab to Transients to tab to the next transient on any of those tracks. When transients on multiple tracks are closely aligned, Tab to Transients tabs to the first transient on any of those tracks.

Timeline Selections

With the Link Timeline and Edit Selection option disabled, selections can be made in the Timeline that are distinct and separate from Edit selections.

With the Timeline and Edit selections linked, any Edit selections that are made are mirrored in the Timeline, and any Timeline selection is mirrored as an Edit selection across all tracks.

Whether the Timeline and Edit selections are linked or not, the range indicated by the Timeline Selection Markers always determines the range for playback and recording (except when in Dynamic Transport mode, see "Dynamic Transport Mode" on page 753).

With Pro Tools Ultimate or Studio, when the Scrolling option is set to **Center Playhead**, it determines where playback begins (see "Playing Timeline and Edit Selections with the Playhead" on page 750).

To make a Timeline selection with the Selector tool:

1. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. Drag with the Selector tool in any Timebase ruler.



Making a Timeline selection with the Selector tool

The Timeline selection is indicated in the Main Timebase ruler by the blue Timeline Selection Markers (or if a track is record-enabled, the Timeline Selection Markers are red). The start, end, and length for the Timeline selection is displayed in the corresponding fields in the Transport window.

To select all tracks, including Conductor tracks, press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging in a Timebase ruler with the Selector tool.

To set the Timeline selection by dragging the Timeline Selection Markers:

1. If you want to constrain movement to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. With the Time Grabber, drag the first Timeline Selection Marker (down arrow) to set the start point.
3. Drag the other Timeline Selection Marker (up arrow) to set the end point.

To select all tracks, including Conductor tracks, press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging in a Timebase ruler with the Selector tool.

To set the Timeline selection by typing into the Transport window:

1. If necessary, resize the Transport window to Expanded view so the start and end times are displayed (**View > Transport > Expanded**).
2. Do one of the following:
   - In the Transport window, click in the start field.
   - Press Option+Forward Slash (/) (Mac) or Alt+Forward Slash (/) (Windows) on the numeric keypad to select the start field in the Transport window.
3. Type in the new start location and press Forward Slash (/) to enter the value and automatically move to the end field.
4. Type in the new end location and press Enter to accept the value.

Shortcuts for entering start and end values in the Transport window are listed in "Numeric Entry Shortcuts for Selection Indicators" on page 912.

Sliding a Timeline Selection

Like Edit selections, Timeline selections can be slid in the Main Timebase ruler.

To move a Timeline selection in the Main Timebase ruler:

1. While pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), move the cursor over either of the Timeline Selection Markers (the Time Grabber appears).
2. Drag left or right to move the Timeline selection back or forward in time, while preserving its length.

Timeline Selections to/from Edit Selections

When the Timeline and Edit selections are unlinked, you can copy selections between them.

To change the Timeline selection to match the current Edit selection:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Change Timeline to Match Edit`**.

- *Press Option+Shift+5 (Mac) or Alt+Shift+5 (Windows) to change the Timeline selection to match the Edit selection.*

To change the Edit selection to match the current Timeline selection:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Change Edit to Match Timeline`**.

- *Press Option+Shift+6 (Mac) or Alt+Shift+6 (Windows) to change the Edit selection to match the Timeline selection.*

Match the Timeline and Edit Selection Start or End

When working with Timeline and Edit Selection unlinked, there are Keyboard Commands to copy **`Edit Selection Start and End`** to the **`Timeline Selection Start and End`** (O and 0 keys). Start and End options let you copy only the Selection Start or End between Edit and Timeline selections. This can be useful, for example, to find an appropriate Selection End point with the Edit Insertion point, and then copying it to the Timeline Selection End without losing the Selection Start.

To change the Edit selection to match the Timeline selection start:

- Press Option+Control+Shift+0 (Mac) or Alt+Start+Shift+0 (Windows).

To change the Edit selection to match the Timeline selection end:

- Press Command+Control+Shift+0 (Mac) or Control+Start+Shift+0 (Windows).

To change the Timeline selection to match the Edit selection start:

- Press Option+Control+Shift+O (Mac) or Alt+Start+Shift+O (Windows).

To change the Timeline selection to match the Edit selection end:

- Press Command+Control+Shift+O (Mac) or Control+Start+Shift+O (Windows).

Navigating the Timeline with the Edit Window Counters and Indicators

The counters and indicators at the top of the Edit window display the current playback location and Edit selection. These include the Main and Sub Counters, and the Edit Selection Start, End, and Length indicators.

All Edit window counters and indicators (except the Sub Counter) let you enter a location in their counter display to navigate to a specific time location.



Main and Sub Counters, Edit Selection indicators

The Main Counter displays the playback location in the time format for the Main Time Scale. The Sub Counter can be set to any of the other Time Scale formats for another timing reference.

The Edit Selection indicators (to the right of the Main and Sub counters) display the Start and End times, and Length of the current Edit selection according to the Main Timebase.

The Main and Sub Counters, as well as the Edit Selection indicators, also appear in the Transport window when it is set to display Counters.

To navigate with the Edit window Main Counter (or one of the Edit Selection indicators):

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click in one of the counters.
   - Press asterisk (*) on the numeric keypad to highlight the Main Counter in the Edit window (or the Main Counter in the Transport window or Big Counter window, if either are displayed).
2. Type in the new location. Press Period (.) to cycle through to the different time fields.
3. Press Enter to accept the new value and automatically locate there.

Scrolling in a Timebase Ruler

You can scroll the contents of the Edit window by dragging in a ruler. While this does not actually update the session's Current Location, it does let you conveniently shift the display left or right for the sake of finding and editing material.

This method of scrolling is especially useful when using the Continuous Scrolling option, which does not update or follow Timeline selections.

To scroll the entire contents of the Edit window from a ruler:

- While pressing Command+Option+Control (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start (Windows), drag left or right in any of the Timebase rulers.



Scrolling in a ruler

Scrolling with a Scroll Wheel

If you have a mouse with a scroll wheel, you can use the scroll wheel to scroll vertically or horizontally in any Pro Tools window that has a scroll bar (such as the MIDI Event List).

To scroll a Pro Tools window vertically:

1. Place the mouse over the window you want to scroll (for example, in the Edit window you might want to scroll either the track display or the Clip List).
2. Scroll the scroll wheel up or down to scroll the window up or down.

To scroll a Pro Tools window horizontally:

1. Place the mouse over the window you want to scroll (for example, in the Edit window you might want to scroll either the track display or the Clip List).
2. Shift-scroll the scroll wheel up or down to scroll the window to the left or right.

Auto-Scrolling Tracks in the Mix and Edit Windows

If you are working with more tracks than can be displayed at one time in the Mix or Edit windows, you can select a track in one window and Pro Tools will automatically scroll to that track in both windows.

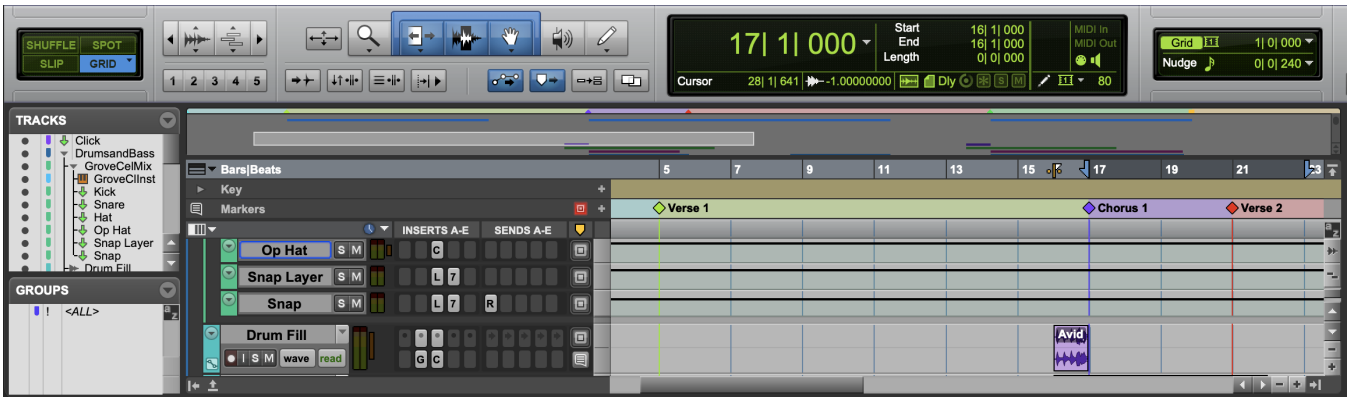
To auto-scroll the Mix and Edit windows to show a track, do one of the following:

- In the Track List, Right-click the track name and select **Scroll Into View**.
- In the Track List, Control-click (Mac) the track name and select **Scroll Into View**.

The track becomes selected, and the Mix and Edit windows both scroll to display the selected track.

Universe View

The Universe view displays an overview of the entire Pro Tools session above the tracks pane in the Edit window.



Universe view at the top of the Edit window

This overview represents audio and MIDI material on all tracks in the session that are not hidden (including tracks that are inactive, or that contain offline clips). The order in which material is displayed in the Universe view corresponds to the track order in the Edit window.

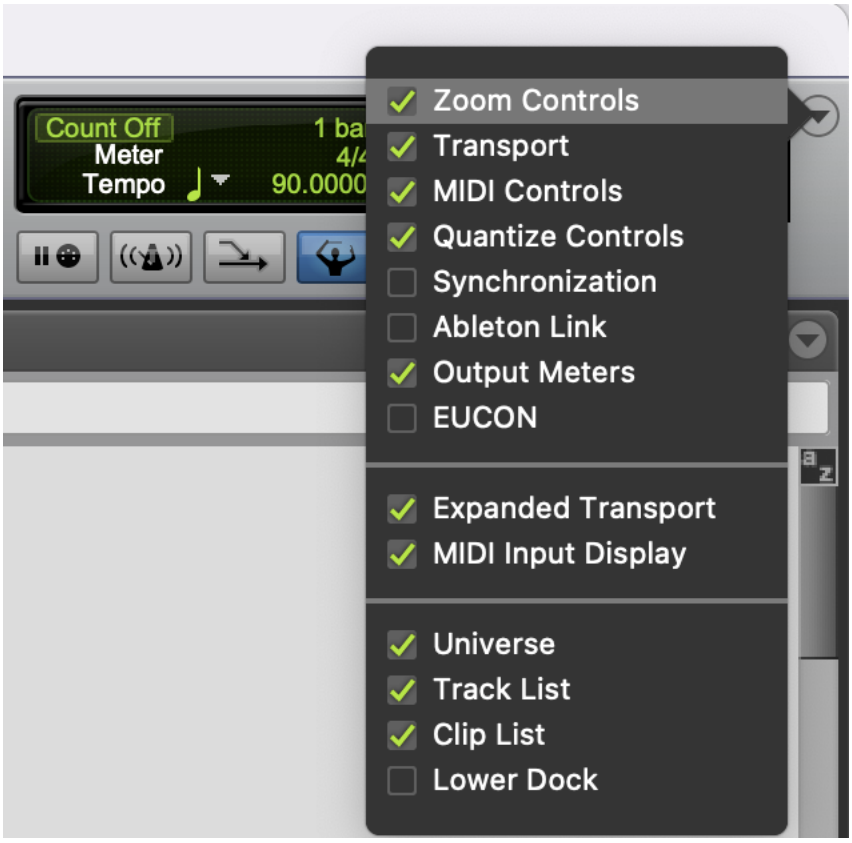
In the Universe view, audio, MIDI, and video clips on tracks are represented by horizontal lines that are the same colors as the clips on the tracks. Each audio track is represented at the same height regardless of how many channels it has. Additionally, tracks that show Automation, Controller, or Playlist lanes are represented with increasing height for each lane shown.

Since Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and VCA Master tracks do not contain audio or MIDI clips, they are displayed as blank areas in the Universe view.

Showing the Universe Window

To show or hide the Universe view in the Edit window, do one of the following:

- Select or deselect **View > Other Displays > Universe**.
- Double-click the divider above the Main Timebase ruler.
- From the Edit window menu, select or deselect **Universe**.



Selecting Universe view from the Edit window menu

- Click the Show/Hide Universe/Clip Effects view button.



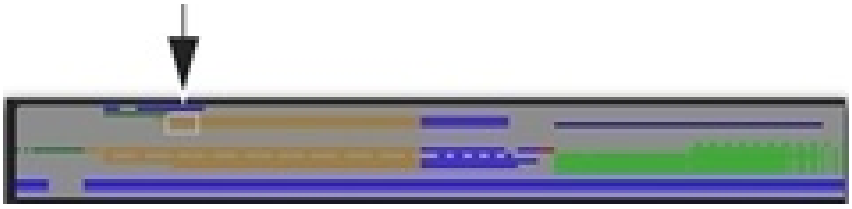
Show/Hide Universe/Clip Effects view button

- Press Option+7 (Mac) or Alt+7 (Windows).

Framed Area in the Universe View

The framed area in the Universe view represents what is visible in the Tracks pane in the Edit window. If you change what is displayed in the Edit window—by zooming, scrolling horizontally or vertically, hiding or showing tracks, or changing track heights—the framed area in the Universe view relocates and resizes accordingly. During playback, if the Edit window is set to scroll, the framed area in the Universe view also scrolls.

When all tracks are visible in the Edit window and the session is zoomed all the way out, with all clips visible, the entire Universe window is framed.



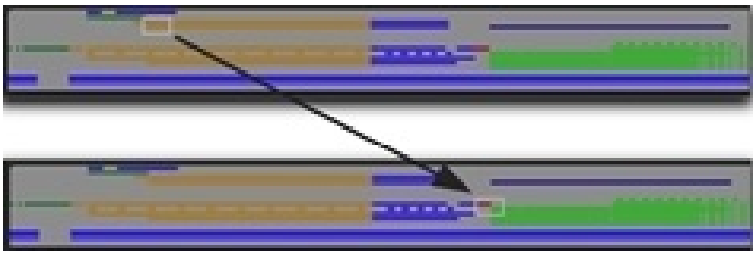
Framed area representing what part of the session is viewed in the Tracks pane of the Edit window

Navigating with the Universe View

By clicking in the Universe view, you can scroll the material displayed in the Edit window horizontally, vertically, or both. This provides a convenient method of focusing the Edit window anywhere in the session.

To navigate the session using the Universe view:

1. Ensure that Universe view is shown (**`View > Other Displays > Universe`**).
2. Click anywhere in the Universe view to move the framed area and the Edit window updates accordingly.



Resizing the Universe View

You can resize the height of the Universe view to fit the total number of tracks in the session, or to show more of the Edit window.

To resize the height of the Universe view:

1. Click the area between the bottom of the Universe window and the top of the Timebase rulers. The cursor changes to show that you can resize the Universe view.
2. Drag up to decrease the height of the Universe view or drag down to increase the height of the Universe view.



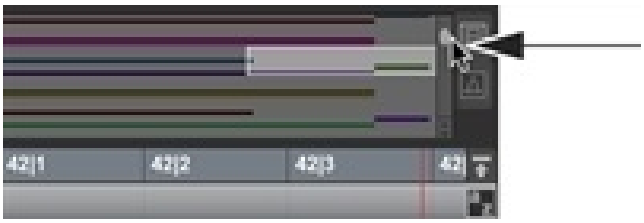
Resizing the Universe view

Scrolling the Universe View

If you have more tracks in the session than are visible in the Universe view, you can scroll up or down to show the other tracks.

To scroll the Universe view up or down:

- Click the Scroll Up or Scroll Down Arrows on the right of the Universe view.



Scroll Up and Down Arrows in the Universe view

Navigating a Pro Tools Session with Keyboard Shortcuts

In addition the Universe view, Pro Tools lets you quickly and easily navigate a session using keyboard shortcuts. This topic provides an overview of the essential key commands for navigating and making Edit selections in a session.

Zooming to the Entire Session and to the Edit Selection

To zoom your entire session into view:

1. Press Option+Control+A (Mac) or Alt+Start+A (Windows) to horizontally fit the beginning and end of the session to the length of the Edit window.
2. Press Option+Control+Up Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Start+Up Arrow (Windows) to fit all of the tracks in the session to the height of the Edit window.

To zoom to an Edit selection:

1. With the Selector or the Grabber tool, make an Edit selection.

   Press F7 for the Selector tool or F8 for the Grabber tool.

2. Press Option+Control+F (Mac) or Alt+Start (Windows) to fit the length of the selection to the length of the Edit window.
3. Press Command+Control+Up Arrow (Mac) or Control+Start+Up Arrow (Windows) to zoom the Track Height of the Edit selection to fit to the height of the Edit window.

To zoom to an Edit selection using Zoom Toggle:

1. With the Selector or the Grabber tool, make an Edit selection.

   Press F7 for the Selector tool or F8 for the Grabber tool.

2. Press Control+E (Mac) or Start+E (Windows) to enable Zoom Toggle.

   Set the Track Height option for Zoom Toggle to Fit To Window in the Editing Preferences.

3. Do one of the following:

- Press Control+E (Mac) or Start+E (Windows) again to revert to the preview zoom state.
- Press Option+Shift+E (Mac) or Alt+Shift+E (Windows) to cancel Zoom Toggle without reverting to the previous view.

Creating Edit Selections with Tab to Transients

If you are editing audio with clear transients, you can use Tab to Transients to make Edit selections.

To toggle Tab to Transients on and off:

- Press Command+Option+Tab (Mac) or Control+Alt+T (Windows).

To navigate and extend selections forward with Tab to Transients:

1. With the Selector tool, place the Edit cursor before the first transient your want in your selection.
2. Press Tab to place the Edit cursor at the first transient.
3. Press Shift+Tab to extend the selection to the next transient.

To navigate and extend selections backward with Tab to Transients:

- Press Option+Tab (Mac) or Control+Tab (Windows) to move the Edit cursor to the previous transient.
- Press Option+Shift+Tab (Mac) or Control+Shift+Tab (Windows) to extend the selection to the previous transient.

Making an Edit Selection During Playback

To make an Edit selection during playback:

1. Place the Edit cursor in the track or across multiple tracks where you want to make the selection.
2. Start playback.
3. Press the Down Arrow to place the Edit cursor at the current playback location and mark the beginning of the Edit selection.
4. Press the Up Arrow to mark the end point of the Edit selection.
5. Stop playback.
6. Do one of the following:
   - Press the Left arrow to locate the beginning of the Edit selection.
   - Press the Right arrow to locate the end of the Edit selection.

Moving the Edit Selection

Pro Tools provides several keyboard shortcuts for moving and extending or decreasing the range of an Edit (or Timeline) selection.

To move the selection down to the next track:

- Press Control+; (semicolon) (Mac) or Start+; (semicolon) (Windows).

  To extend the Edit selection down across tracks, Press Control+Shift+; (semicolon) (Mac) or Start+Shift+; (semicolon) (Windows).

To move the selection up to the next track:

- Press Control+P (Mac) or Start+P (Windows).

  To extend the Edit selection up across tracks, Press Control+Shift+P (Mac) or Start+Shift+P (Windows).

To move the selection forward by the selection amount:

- Press Command+Control+Option+’ (single quote) (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+’ (single quote) (Windows).

To move the selection backward by the selection amount:

- Press Command+Control+Option+L (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+L (Windows).

To double the Edit selection:

- Press Command+Control+Option+Shift+’ (single quote) (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+Shift+’ (single quote) (Windows).

To halve the Edit selection:

- Press Command+Option+Control+Shift+L (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+Shift+L (Windows).

To go to and select the previous clip, do one of the following:

- Press Option+Control+Tab (Mac) or Alt+Start+Tab (Windows).
- Press Command+Control+L (Mac) or Control+Start+L (Windows).

To go to and select the next clip, do one of the following:

- Press Control+Tab (Mac) or Start+Tab (Windows).
- Press Command+Control+’ (single quote) (Mac) or Control+Start+’ (single quote) (Windows).

To extend the selection to include the previous clip, do one of the following:

- Press Option+Control+Shift+Tab (Mac) or Alt+Start+Shift+Tab (Windows).
- Press Command+Control+Shift+L (Mac) or Control+Start+Shift+L (Windows).

To extend the selection to include the next clip, do one of the following:

- Press Control+Shift+Tab (Mac) or Start+Shift+Tab (Windows).
- Press Command+Control+Shift+’ (single quote) (Mac) or Control+Start+Shift+’ (single quote) (Windows).

Moving the Insertion to the Beginning or End of the Selection

With the Transport stopped, you can use the Down and Up Arrows on your alphanumeric keyboard to the beginning or end of the Edit (or Timeline) selection (and collapse the selection).

To move the insertion to the beginning of the selection:

- Press the Down Arrow.

To move the insertion to the end of the selection:

- Press the Up Arrow.

Restoring the Last Selection

There are times when editing that you can lose your selection. If you lose the current Edit (or Timeline) selection and want to restore it, use the **`Restore Last Selection`** command.

To restore the last selection:

- Choose **`Edit > Restore Last Selection`**.

  You can also press Command+Option+Z (Mac) or Control+Alt+Z (Windows) to restore the previous selection.

Changing Track Heights

To fit the Track heights of tracks containing he Edit selection to the height of the Edit window:

- Press Command+Control+Up Arrow (Mac) or Control+Start+Up Arrow (Windows).

To change Track height proportionally for tracks containing the Edit selection:

- Press Control+Up or Down Arrows (Mac) or Start+Up or Down Arrows (Windows).

To change Track views for all tracks together:

- Press Option+Control+Up or Down Arrows (Mac) or Alt+Start+Up or Down Arrows (Windows).

Changing Track Views

To change Track views for tracks containing the Edit selection:

- Press Command+Control+Left or Right arrows (Mac) or Control+Start+Left or Right arrows (Windows).

To change Track views for all tracks together:

- Press Command+Option+Control+Left or Right arrows (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+Left or Right arrows (Windows).

35 Editing Clips and Selections

Clips are the basic building blocks for arranging audio and MIDI in Pro Tools. Understanding how clips are created, edited, and arranged is essential to taking full advantage of the editing capabilities of Pro Tools.

This chapter covers basic editing functions as they apply to clips and clip groups, and selections, which for the most part apply to both MIDI and audio data. For editing procedures more specific to MIDI, see "MIDI Editing" on page 1022. For editing procedures specific to video, see "Video Clips" on page 1942.

Creating New Clips

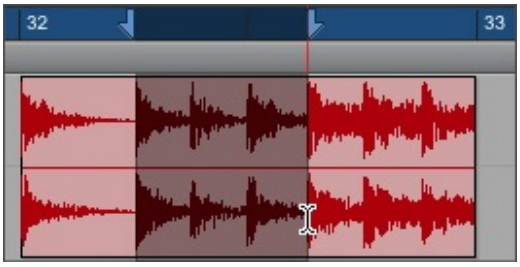
Pro Tools provides several commands for creating clips and clip groups, each of them having a slightly different effect on the selection. When you create a new clip or clip group, it appears in the Clip List and in the track's playlist. When creating a new clip from an existing clip, the original clip remains in the Clip List. New clips are named automatically (see "Auto-Naming Options" on page 445).

Capture Clip Command

The **Capture Clip** command defines a selection as a new clip and adds it to the Clip List. From there, the new clip can be dragged to any existing tracks.

To capture a new clip:

1. With the Selector tool, drag in an existing clip to select the material for the new clip.



Selecting a portion of a clip

2. Choose **Clip > Capture**.

   Press Command+R (Mac) or Control+R (Windows) for Capture Clip.

3. Type a name for the new clip and click **OK**.

   The new clip appears in the Clip List. The original clip remains intact and unchanged.

Separate Commands

The **Separate** commands define a selection within an existing clip, or a partially selected clip, as a new clip and separate it from surrounding material. The **Separate** commands can also be applied to MIDI notes (see "Separating MIDI Notes" on page 1035).

New clips appear in the tracks in which they are created, separate from the data surrounding them. They also appear in the Clip List.

There are three different **Separate** commands:

At Selection (or Edit Cursor)

Creates new clip boundaries at the selection start and end points. If there is no selection and the edit cursor is placed within the clip, the clip is split into two new clips at the insertion point. Likewise, MIDI notes can be separated at the selection start and end points (or at the Edit cursor).

On Grid

Creates new clips according to the selected Grid value (see "Defining the Grid Value" on page 1228). Likewise, MIDI notes can be separated on the grid.

At Transients

Automatically creates clip boundaries on detected transients within a selection. This uses the same algorithm for transient detection as the Tab to Transients feature (see "Tabbing to Transients" on page 915). On Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, the **Separate At Transients** command uses the transient events detected by Elastic Audio analysis (see "Elastic Audio Analysis" on page 1343). **Separate At Transients** only applies to audio and is not applicable to MIDI notes or clips.

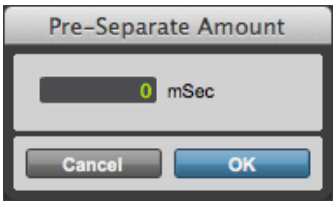
To separate one or more clips (or MIDI notes) at the selection (or at the edit cursor):

1. Do one of the following:
   - With the Selector tool, make an Edit selection.
   - With the Selector tool, click at the point where you want to separate the clip (or MIDI note).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Separate > At Selection**.
   - With an Edit selection, Right-click near the cursor position or selection and choose **Separate** from the pop-up menu.

   Press Command+E (Mac) or Control+E (Windows) for Separate At Selection.
3. If the Editing preference for **Auto-Name Separated Clips** is disabled, type a name for the new clip when prompted, then click **OK**.

To separate clips (or MIDI notes) according to the current grid resolution:

1. Make an Edit selection.
2. Choose **Edit > Separate > On Grid**.
3. In the Pre-Separate Amount dialog, type a pre-separate amount in milliseconds. This can be useful to pad the beginnings of the new clips.



Pre-Separate Amount dialog

4. Click **OK**.

To separate audio clips at transients:

1. Make an Edit selection.
2. Choose **Edit > Separate > At Transients**.
3. In the Pre-Separate Amount dialog, type a pre-separate amount in milliseconds. This can be useful to pad the beginnings of the new clips.
4. Click **OK**.

Auto-Name Separated Clips Option

With the **Auto-Name Separated Clips** option in the Editing Preferences page selected, Pro Tools automatically names separated clips for you. The name is a numbered variation of the original clip's name.

By separating a clip, additional clips are auto-created from data on either side of the separation, which have new numbers assigned to their names. The original clip remains intact and unchanged on the Clip List.

The Clip List can quickly fill up with auto-created clips. For easier clip management, click the Clip List menu, deselect Show › Auto-Created to hide all auto-created clips in the Clip List.

"Separate Clip" Operates On All Related Takes

When the **"Separate Clip" Operates on All Related Takes** option is enabled in the Editing Preferences, editing a clip with the **Separate Clip** command also affects all other related takes with the same User Time Stamp.

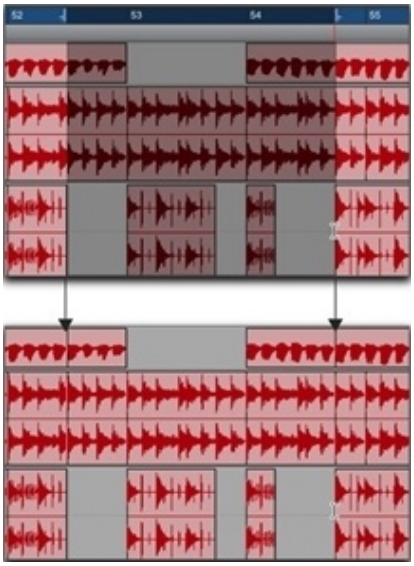
This option helps you compare different sections from a group of related takes. For example, you can quickly separate an entire group of related vocal takes into sections, then audition and select the best material from each section independently.

If this option is selected, make sure the **Track Name** and **Clip Start and End** options are also selected in the Matching Criteria window (see "Matching Criteria" on page 983). If they are not, *all* clips in the session that have the same User Time Stamp will be affected.

In most instances, you will want to disable the **Separate Clip Operates On All Related Takes** option, to prevent a large number of clips from being created when you use the **Separate Clip** command.

Separating Multiple Tracks

The following figure illustrates a separation across one mono audio track and two stereo tracks. For some tracks, the selection resides within a clip, while others reside at the start or end of a clip.



Separating across multiple tracks

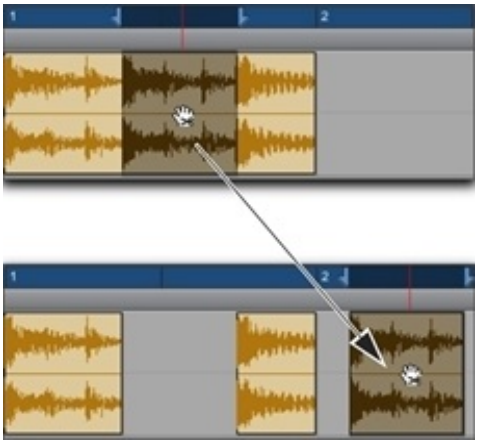
Once separated, this material can be moved or copied to another location.

Separation Grabber Tool

You can use the Separation Grabber tool to automatically separate an Edit selection and move it to another location or another track.

To separate a selection with the Separation Grabber tool:

1. With the Selector tool, make an Edit selection. The selection can reside within a single clip, across adjacent clips within the same track, or across multiple tracks.
2. From the Grabber tools pop-up menu, choose the Separation Grabber tool.
3. Drag the selection to the new location, or to another track.



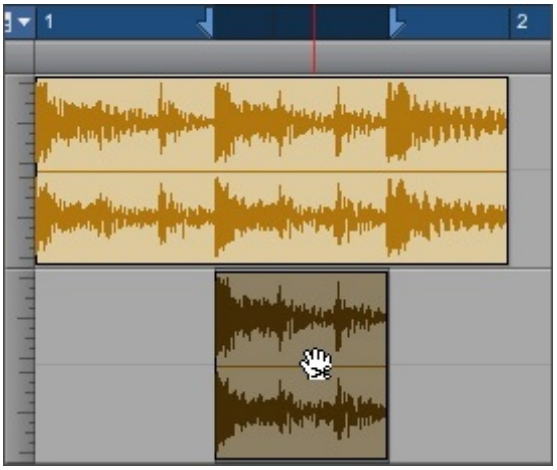
Dragging selection to later in track with Separation Grabber tool

A new clip (or clips) containing the previous selection is created, separate from the original selection. New clips are also created from the material outside the original selection.

To separate a selection without affecting the original clips:

1. With the Selector tool, make an Edit selection. The selection can reside within a single clip, across adjacent clips within the same track, or across multiple tracks.
2. From the Grabber tools pop-up menu, choose the Separation Grabber tool.

3. While pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), drag the selection to the new location, or to another track.



Dragging to another track with the Separation Grabber tool

New clips containing the previous selection are created and placed at the new location. The original selection and clips remain intact.

Healing Separated Clips

The Heal Separation command returns separated clips to their original state—provided the clips are still next to each other and their relative start and end points have not changed since the separation.

If you have trimmed or otherwise changed the start or end points of the two clips, or moved them further away from each other, you will not be able to repair them with the Heal Separation command. It is not possible to heal two clips created from different audio files.

To heal a separation between two clips:

1. With the Selector tool, make a selection that includes part of the first clip, the entire separation between the clips, and part of the second clip.
2. Choose **`Edit > Heal Separation`**.

   Press Command+H (Mac) or Control+H (Windows) to Heal Separation.

3. (if required) If the clips do not heal with Heal Separation, do one of the following to return the separated clips to a single clip:
   - Delete one of the two separated clips (verify that Slip mode is enabled so the gap does not close) and use the Trim tool to expand the remaining clip to its original length (see "Using the Trim Tools" on page 887).
   - Delete both of the separated clips and drag the original clip from the Clip List to the original location (see "Placing Clips from the Clip List on to Track Playlists" on page 1217).

Trimming Clips

In addition to the Trim tools (see "Using the Trim Tools" on page 887), Pro Tools provides several options for editing clip and clip group boundaries.

Trim to Selection Command

The **Trim to Selection** command removes data before and after a clip or MIDI note selection, leaving only the selection. This command lets you quickly remove all data in a clip (and in some instances the entire track) except for the current selection.

To trim unwanted data from a clip or note:

1. With the Selector tool, select a portion of a clip or note (or a range of notes).
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip > To Selection** to remove material outside of the selection.

Trim to Insertion Commands

You can trim a clip or MIDI note by automatically removing the material between the Edit insertion point and the start or end point of the clip.

To trim from a start point to insertion:

1. With the Selector tool, click inside the clip or note where you want the new start point to be.
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip > Start To Insertion**. The clip's start point is automatically trimmed to the insertion point.

Press Option+Shift+7 (Mac) or Alt+Shift+7 (Windows) to Trim Start To Insertion.

To trim from an end point to insertion:

1. With the Selector tool, click inside the clip or note where you want the new end point.
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip > End To Insertion**. The clip's end point is automatically trimmed to the insertion point.



Clip end trimmed to insertion

Press Option+Shift+8 (Mac) or Alt+Shift+8 (Windows) to Trim Start To Insertion.

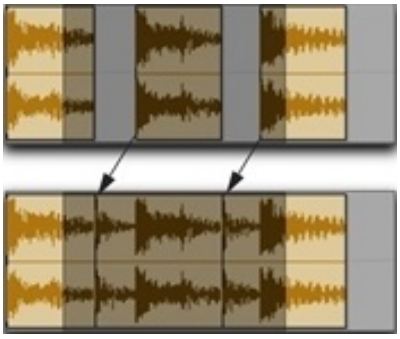
Trim to Fill Selection Commands

The Trim to Fill Selection commands let you automatically reveal underlying material in the gaps between clips, or before and after individual clips, as follow:

To trim from a start point to fill gaps:

1. With the Selector tool, select across at least one gap between clips.
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip > Start to Fill Selection**.

   The start point of the clip behind the gap is automatically trimmed (expanded) to the previous clip, or as far as possible if there is not enough underlying material to cover the gap.

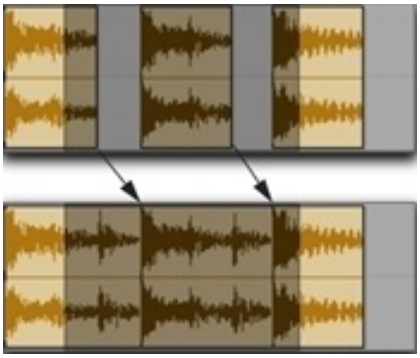


Clip start trimmed to fill gap

To trim from an end point to fill gaps:

1. With the Selector tool, select across at least one gap between clips.
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip > End To Fill Selection**.

   The end point of the clip in front of the gap is automatically trimmed (expanded) to the next clip, or as far as possible if there is not enough underlying material to cover the gap.



Clip end trimmed to fill gap

To trim from a clip's start and end points to fill the Edit selection:

1. With the Selector tool, make an Edit selection that includes the clip you want to trim out.
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip > To Fill Selection**.

   The start point of the clip is automatically trimmed (expanded) to the Edit selection start, or as far as possible if there is not enough underlying material to cover the selection, and the end point of the clip is automatically trimmed out (expanded) to the Edit selection end, or as far as possible if there is not enough underlying material to cover the selection.

   The **Trim to Fill Selection** command is the inverse of the **Trim to Fit Selection** command: where the **Trim to Fill Selection** command trims a clip out to match the Edit selection, the **Trim to Fit Selection** command trims a clip in to match the Edit selection.

Trim Clip to File Commands

There are three **Trim Clip to File** commands that let you trim a clip to the end of the file, the beginning of a file, or both. However, clips trimmed to file boundaries do not overlap other clips on the same track. Instead, the selected clip is trimmed out only to the next or previous clip boundary depending on which command you use.

To trim out the selected audio clip to the start of the referenced file:

1. Select the entire clip.
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip > To File Start**.

   To trim the selected clip to the file start, press Command+Control+R (Mac) or Control+Start+R.

To trim out the selected audio clip to the end of the referenced file:

1. Select the entire clip.
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip > To File End**.

   To trim the selected clip to the file end, press Command+Control+Y (Mac) or Control+Start+Y.

To trim out the selected audio clip to the start and end of the referenced file:

1. Select the entire clip.
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip > To File Boundaries**.

   To trim the selected clip to both the beginning and end of the file, press Command+Control+T (Mac) or Control+Start+T.

Trimming with Nudge

You can trim the start and end points of clips (or MIDI notes) by the current Nudge value.

To trim a clip's start or end point by the Nudge value:

1. Configure the Nudge value (see "Defining the Nudge Value" on the next page).
2. With the Time Grabber tool, select the clip you want to trim.
3. Do one of the following:
   - While pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), press Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to trim the clip's start point by the Nudge value.
   - While pressing Command (Mac) or Control (Windows), press Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to trim the clip's end point by the Nudge value.

Nudging Clips

Pro Tools can nudge clips (or MIDI notes) by precise increments with the Plus (+) and Minus (–) keys on the numeric keypad. The amount of the nudge is determined by the value specified in the Nudge Value pop-up menu. The Nudge function can be used in any of the Edit modes.

Nudging can be invaluable for adjusting the "groove" of a musical phrase or a sound effect relative to other elements in the session. Since Pro Tools can nudge material during playback, you can nudge continuously in real time to adjust the timing relationship between tracks.

Nudge can also be used to adjust the placement of automation breakpoints. For more information, see "Editing Automation" on page 1601.

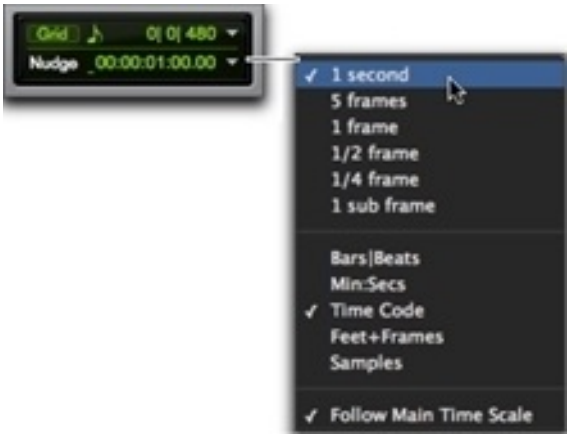
Defining the Nudge Value

The Nudge value determines how far clips and selections are moved when nudging.

Start and end points for selections can also be moved by the Nudge value (see "Nudging Selection Start/End Points" on page 909). In addition, clips can be trimmed by the Nudge value (see "Trimming with Nudge" on the previous page).

To set the Nudge value:

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the **`View > Main Counter`** menu, select the Time Scale for the Nudge value.
   - To keep the Main Time Scale and use a different time format for the Nudge value, deselect **`Follow Main Timebase`** in the Nudge Value pop-up menu.
2. Specify a Nudge value by doing one of the following:
   - From the Nudge value pop-up menu in the Edit window, select the Nudge value.
   - To specify a Nudge value not listed in the Nudge Value pop-up menu, click the Nudge Value indicator and type in the value.



Nudge Value pop-up menu showing Timecode

To increase the nudge value incrementally:

- Press Shift+Option+Equal (=) (Mac) or Shift+Alt+Equal (=) (Windows)

To decrease the nudge value incrementally:

- Press Shift+Option+Minus (–) (Mac) or Shift+Alt+Minus (–) (Windows)

Nudging Clips by the Nudge Value

To nudge one or more clips:

1. Configure the Nudge value (see "Defining the Nudge Value" above).
2. With the Time Grabber or Selector tool, select the clip, clips, or clip groups you want to nudge. The clips can reside on multiple tracks. Only clips that are completely selected are nudged.
3. Do one of the following:
   - On the numeric keypad, press Plus (+) to move the selection forward by the Nudge value.
   - Press Minus (–) to move the selection back by the Nudge value.

   The **`Nudge`** command works the same regardless of the Edit mode. Adjacent clips are overlapped in Shuffle mode, the Spot dialog does not appear when in Spot mode, and shifted material does not snap to the Grid when in Grid mode.

Nudging Clips on Multiple Tracks and in Multichannel Tracks

When nudging a selection of multiple clips within a single track or across multiple tracks, that also contains silence, any automation data residing within the silence is also nudged.

Nudging by Next Nudge Value

In addition to nudging by the current Nudge value, you can also nudge by the next larger value in the Nudge pop-up menu.

For example, if the Nudge value is set to 1 frame and you want to nudge by a larger value, you can nudge by the Nudge value of 10 frames.

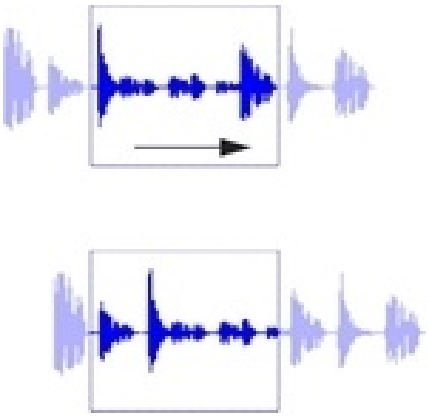
To nudge forward or back by the next larger Nudge value:

1. Enable Commands Keyboard Focus (see "Keyboard Focus" on page 26).
2. Select the clips or notes you want to nudge.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Press Forward Slash (/) to nudge the selected material forward by the next Nudge value.
   - Press M to nudge the selection back by the next Nudge value.

When Commands Keyboard Focus is not enabled, press Control+Forward Slash (/) (Mac) or Start+Forward Slash (/) (Windows) to nudge the selected material forward by the next Nudge value, and press Control+M (Mac) or Start+M (Windows) to nudge the selected material back by the next Nudge value.

Nudging the Contents of a Clip

Often a clip's start point will reside at the correct location, perhaps at a Timecode frame or barline, but the material within the clip starts too late or early. You can, in effect, nudge a clip's audio waveform or MIDI notes without displacing the clip start and end points.



Nudging clip contents without changing clip boundaries

This "sliding" of clip contents is only possible if there is material residing outside the clip's start and end points—from the clip having been trimmed, or perhaps captured from a larger clip.

To nudge the contents of a clip without changing the clip start and end points:

1. Configure the Nudge value (see "Defining the Nudge Value" on page 935).
2. With the Time Grabber tool, select the clip whose contents you want to nudge.
3. While pressing the Control (Mac) or Start key (Windows), press Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to move the material by the Nudge value to the left (+) or right (–).

Layered Editing

Pro Tools provides the option to enable layered editing so that you don't lose partially overlapped clips while editing. This is true for both audio and MIDI.

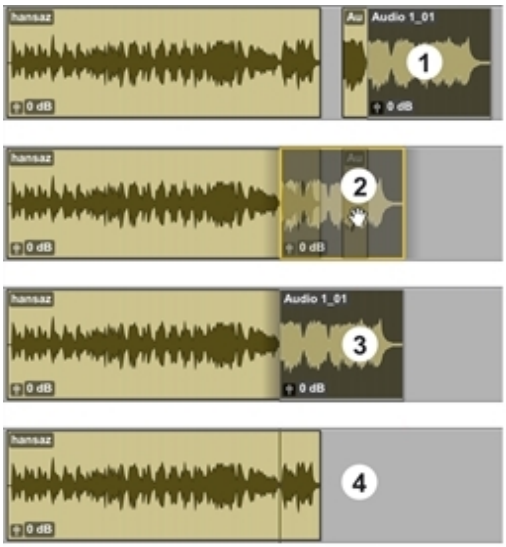
To enable (or disable) layered editing, do one of the following:

1. Select (or deselect) **`Options > Layered Editing`**.
2. Click the Layered Editing button in the Edit Window toolbar so that it is lit (or unlit).



Layered Editing button (enabled)

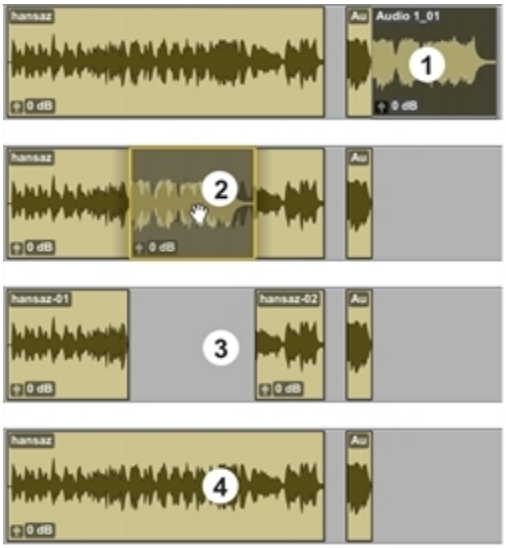
When the **`Layered Editing`** option is enabled, any partially overlapped clips are revealed when cutting, clearing (deleting), or moving the overlapping clip. Note that if any clip is fully overlapped by another, larger clip, it is removed from the timeline. In "Editing with Layered Editing enabled" below, the clip "Audio 1_01" (1) is moved (2) to fully cover one clip and partially cover another clip (3). When that clip ("Audio 1_02-01") is cleared, the fully covered clip is gone, but the partially covered clip is revealed (4).



Editing with Layered Editing enabled

Press Command+Delete (Mac) or Control+Delete (Windows) to clear all track data within the edit selection regardless of whether or not Layered Editing is enabled.

When the **Layered Editing** option is disabled, overlapped clips remain “trimmed” to the start or end time of the overlapping clip. In "Editing with Layered Editing disabled" below, the clip “Audio 1_01” (1) is moved to cover the middle of a larger clip (2). When that clip (“Audio 1_01”) is cleared, the overlapped clip has a hole punched in it (3). If Layered Editing is enabled in this case, the underlying clip is completely revealed and healed (4).



Editing with Layered Editing disabled

Quantizing Clips to Grid

The **Quantize to Grid** command adjusts the placement of selected audio and MIDI clips so that their start points (or sync points, if present) align precisely to the nearest Grid boundary.

To quantize individual MIDI notes or Elastic Audio Events, use the Quantize MIDI Operations. You can also use the Quantize Event Operation to quantize audio clips (see "Quantize" on page 1402).

To quantize one or more clips:

1. Select the Grid value (see "Defining the Grid Value" on page 1228).
2. With the Selector or Time Grabber tool, select the clip or clips you want to quantize. The clips can be on multiple tracks. Only clips that are entirely selected will be quantized.
3. Choose **Clip > Quantize to Grid**. Clip start times (or sync points) are aligned to the nearest boundaries for the defined Grid.

Press Command+0 (Mac) or Control+0 (Windows) to Quantize to Grid.

For MIDI clips, only the clips are quantized and all MIDI data contained within the clips (such as notes) are moved equally, thereby retaining their rhythmic relationships.

For Elastic Audio clips, only the clips are quantized and all Elastic Audio Events contained within the clips (such as transient events) are moved equally, thereby retaining their rhythmic relationships.

To quantize individual MIDI notes or Elastic Audio Events, use the Quantize MIDI Operations. You can also use the Quantize Event Operation to quantize audio clips. For more information see "Quantize" on page 1402).

Editing Stereo and Multichannel Tracks

Clips on individual channels within stereo and multichannel tracks cannot be independently selected. All selections for these tracks are time-based, which means that selections made with the Selector or Time Grabber tool extend to each and every channel in the track.

When clips in multichannel tracks are edited with any of the Trim tools or dragged with the Time Grabber tool, material on all channels is affected equally as a group.

Split Selected Tracks

To edit a specific channel within a stereo or multichannel track without affecting the other channels, you can split the track into separate mono tracks. Once the edits have been made to the separated material, you can then drag or copy it back to the original multichannel track.

To split a stereo or multichannel track:

1. Select one or more stereo or multichannel tracks (see "Selecting Tracks" on page 336).
2. Choose **`Track > Split Into Mono`**. Clips from the channels on the selected tracks are placed on new, mono audio tracks.

Names for the new tracks are based on the source track name and channel suffix. For example, if a stereo track called “Funkit” is split, two new tracks called “Funkit.L” and “Funkit.R” are created.

Output and send assignments and volume and pan settings are retained in the new tracks. Mono equivalents of stereo and multi-mono plugin assignments are assigned in the new tracks. However, multichannel plugin assignments are not assigned in the new tracks.

Dragging Clips to and from Stereo and Multichannel Tracks



Dragging a stereo clip to two mono audio tracks

When dragging clips to or from stereo or multichannel tracks, the following rules apply:

- Provided the number of tracks and channels are the same for the source and destination, you can drag clips between multichannel tracks and mono tracks.
- The source and destination for dragged clips can be mixed. For example, you can drag clips from a 5.0 track (containing five channels) to a stereo track and three mono audio tracks.

- When dragging multichannel clips to mono tracks, the destination tracks must be adjacent.
- When dragging clips from mono tracks to a multichannel track, the source tracks need not be adjacent.

Multichannel clips can also be dragged from the Clip List, to multichannel tracks of the same format, groups of mono audio tracks, or a combination of both.

Conversely, a collection of single, mono clips can be dragged from the Clip List to multichannel tracks—provided the dragged number of clips matches the number of channels in the destination track.

Consolidating Clips

During the course of normal edit operations, any track can accumulate many clips. However, once a track or track range (such as a verse or chorus) reaches a satisfactory state, you may want to consolidate multiple clips into a single clip.

When consolidating an entire audio track or just an Edit selection, a new audio file is written that consists of the entire selection, including any blank space.

When consolidating, muted clips are treated as silence. Otherwise, whether or not a track is muted, or contains Mute automation, does not affect the **Consolidate** command.

Consolidating an audio track does not consolidate underlying automation data. To create a single file with automation data applied to the audio, use Bounce Mix (see "Bounce Mix" on page 1640).

To consolidate clips within a track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Using the Time Grabber or Selector tool, select the clips you want to consolidate.
   - To select all clips in a track, triple-click in its playlist with the Selector tool.
2. Choose **Edit > Consolidate**.

   Press Option+Shift+3 (Mac) or Alt+Shift+3 (Windows) to Consolidate.

Compacting an Audio File

The **Compact** command deletes unused portions of audio files to conserve disk space, and to prepare for cleaner hard drive back-ups. The **Compact Selected** command also deletes any audio files for which there are no clips on tracks referencing those files.

Because it permanently deletes audio data, the **Compact** command should be used only after you have completely finished your editing and are sure that you have no further use for the unused audio data.

The **Compact** command can *pad* the clips of the compacted file by a selectable amount. If clips in your session use crossfades, or if you want to pad the clips for the sake of any future trimming, you should enter an appropriate amount of padding (in milliseconds).

The Compact command is destructive and cannot be undone. It permanently alters the original audio files. There is no way to recover data deleted by this command.

To compact an audio file:

1. In the Clip List, select the clip or clips you want to compact.
2. From the Clip List menu, choose **Compact**.
3. Enter the amount of padding in milliseconds that you want for each clip in the file.

4. Click **Compact** to compact the file or **Cancel** to cancel the command.

   Once the **Compact** command has been completed, the session is saved automatically.

Processing Audio with AudioSuite Plugins

The AudioSuite plugins included with your Pro Tools system can be used to process and modify audio clips or even entire audio files. Do this in order to apply a specific AudioSuite process (such as Normalization or DC Offset Removal) to any number of audio clips in your session.

For more information about AudioSuite plugins, see "AudioSuite Processing" on page 1262.

TCE (Time Compression and Expansion) Edit To Timeline Selection

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) When the Edit and Timeline selections are unlinked, you can compress or expand an audio selection to fit the Timeline selection. On audio tracks, **TCE Edit to Timeline Selection** uses the TCE AudioSuite Plugin selected in the Processing preferences (see "Processing Preferences" on page 169).

TCE Edit To Timeline Selection is not available on Elastic Audio and Melodyne–enabled tracks.

To fit an Edit selection to the Timeline:

1. Deselect **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
2. With the Selector tool, select the audio material to be compressed or expanded.
3. In any Timebase ruler, select the time range where you want to fit the audio material.
4. Choose **Edit > TCE Edit to Timeline Selection**. The Edit selection is compressed or expanded to the length of the Timeline selection.

TCE Edit to Timeline Selection on Multiple Tracks and Channels

The **TCE Edit to Timeline** command can be used on multichannel selections, and selections across multiple tracks. All clips are compressed or expanded equally by the same percentage value, based on Edit selection range. This ensures that the rhythmic relationship between the different channels or tracks is maintained.

Fitting an Audio Clip to an Edit Selection

Clips can be dragged from the Clip List to fit within an Edit selection. The dragged clip is compressed or expanded to fit within the selection. On audio tracks, fitting an audio clip to the Edit selection uses the TCE AudioSuite Plugin selected in the Processing preferences (see "Processing Preferences" on page 169). On Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, it uses the track's selected Elastic Audio plugin (see "Elastic Audio Plugins" on page 1345).

To fit an audio clip to an Edit selection:

1. With the Selector tool, make an Edit selection in an audio track.
2. Command-Option-drag (Mac) or Control-Alt-drag (Windows) the clip from the Clip List to the track with the selection. The start of the clip is positioned at the selection start, and the clip is compressed or expanded to match the length of the selection.

Fit to Selection on Multiple Tracks and Channels

The **Fit to Selection** command supports dragging multiple clips from the Clip List to multiple tracks, or multichannel tracks.

All dragged clips are compressed or expanded equally by the same percentage value, based on length of the clip last clicked before dragging.

Rating Clips

You can rate different clips on a scale of 1 to 5, where 5 is the highest (or best) and 1 is the lowest (or worst). Clip rating is useful for identifying which takes (clips) you like the most when compositing playlists. You can display or hide the clip rating in clips to facilitate track compositing or regular editing. You can also show or hide Playlist lanes based on the ratings of clips in the playlist (see "Filtering Lanes" on page 982).

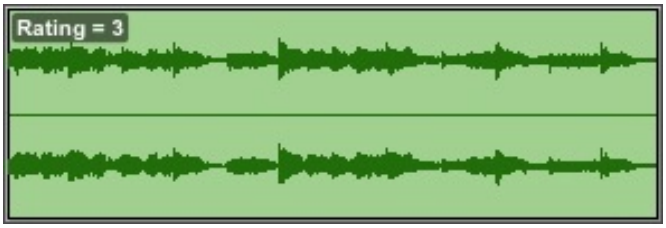
To rate a clip:

1. Select the clip.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Clip > Rating**, and select a ranking of 1 to 5.
   - Right-click the clip, choose **Rate**, and select a ranking of 1 to 5.

You can rate selected clips during playback by pressing Command+Option+Control (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start (Windows) and then typing the rating number (1–5) on the numeric keypad.

To display ratings in clips:

- Select **View > Clip > Rating**.



Clip with Rating shown

To hide ratings in clips:

- Deselect **View > Clip > Rating**.

36 Fades and Crossfades

You can quickly and easily apply fade-ins, fade-outs on audio clips, and crossfades between adjacent audio clips. Crossfading is the process of fading between two clips of audio to prevent pops, clicks, or sudden changes in sound. Crossfades have many applications, from smoothing transitions between clips to creating special audio effects. The crossfade duration, position, and shape are all user-definable.

About Crossfades and Curves

To create a crossfade between two clips, use the Selector tool to select across the end point of the first clip and the start point of the second. The length of the selection determines the length of the crossfade. Though fades may appear to be discrete clips, they cannot actually be separated from the clips in which they were created. You can, however, create fade-ins and fade-outs for individual clips (see "Creating Fades at the Beginnings and Ends of Clips" on page 951).

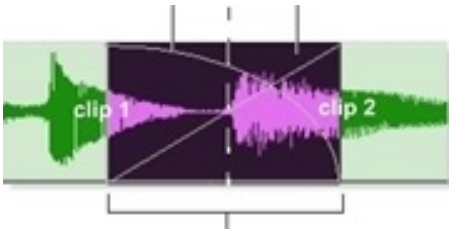
Use the Fades dialog to select, view, and manipulate the curves used to perform fades and crossfades. Different volume curves can be assigned to the fade-out and fade-in portions of crossfades. The Fades dialog can also be used to audition a fade or crossfade before applying it.

The type of selection you make determines the character of the crossfade.

Since crossfades are created by fading between overlapping audio material, a crossfade cannot be performed on clips that do not contain audio material beyond their clip boundaries.

If a clip references insufficient data to execute a selected fade or crossfade, you are prompted to either skip those fades or to adjust the bounds of the selection to execute those fades.

Standard Crossfade (Centered)

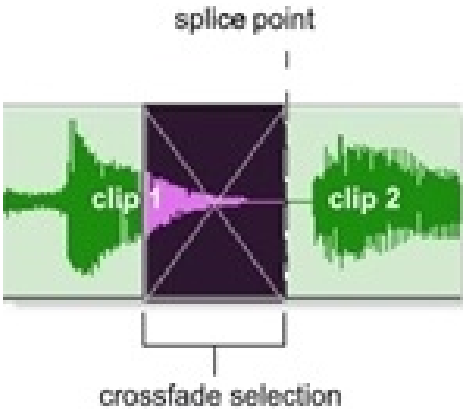


Centered crossfade

This type of selection creates a crossfade on both sides of the splice point, which affects the volume of clip 1 and clip 2. It is the most common type of crossfade.

This crossfade type requires that clip 1 contain audio material beyond its end point, and clip 2 contain audio material before its start point.

Pre Crossfade

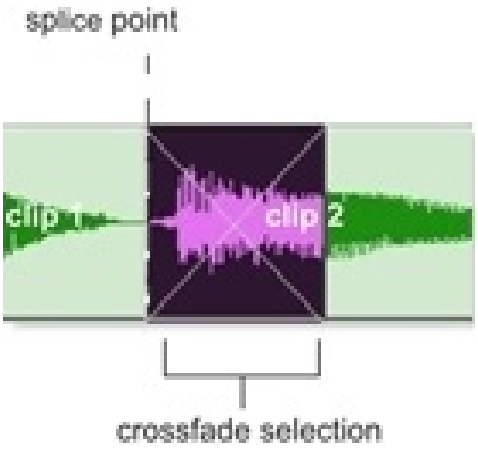


Pre crossfade

This type of selection creates a crossfade before the splice point. This lets you maintain the volume of the very beginning of clip 2 instead of fading across it, which is useful if there is a strong attack at the beginning of clip 2 that you want to preserve. When making selections for crossfades that occur on the border of two clips, you can use the Tab key to move the cursor to the exact beginning or end of a clip.

This crossfade type requires that clip 2 contain audio material before its start point.

Post Crossfade



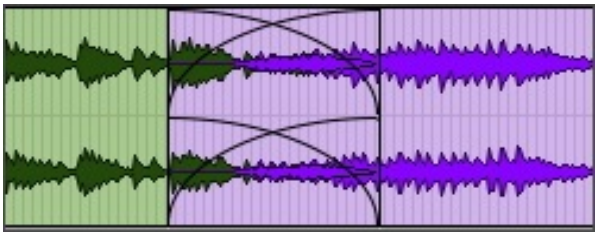
Post crossfade

This type of selection creates a crossfade after the splice point. It is useful if you want to maintain the amplitude of clip 1 until its very end. When making selections for crossfades that occur on the border of two clips, you can use the Tab key to move the cursor to the exact beginning or end of a clip.

This crossfade type requires that clip 1 contain audio material beyond its end point.

Overlapping Crossfades View

Pro Tools lets you view overlapping waveforms in crossfades.



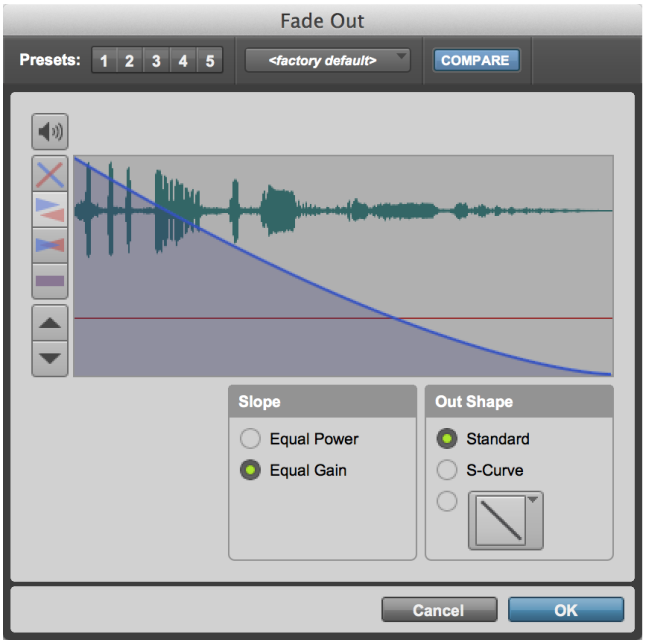
Overlapping Crossfades view

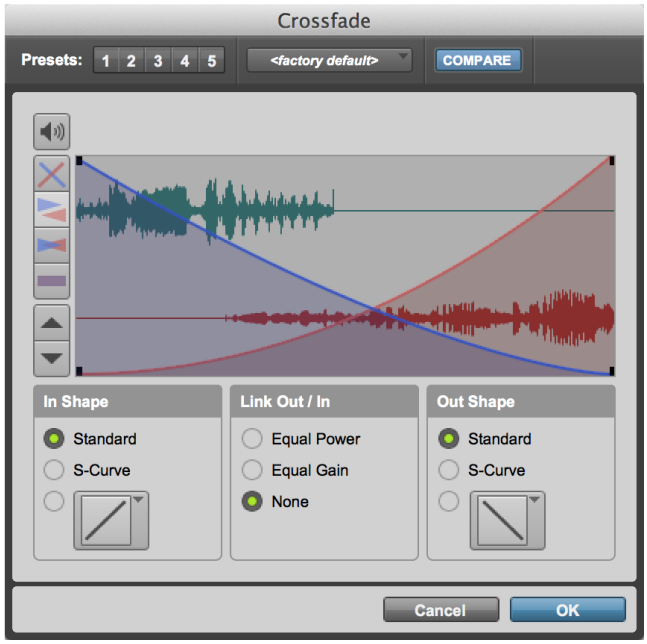
To show (or hide) overlapping crossfades:

- Select (or deselect) **`View > Waveform > Overlapping Crossfades`**.

Fade Dialogs

Choose **`Edit > Fades > Create`** to apply the appropriate fade to the Edit selection. Use the corresponding Fade dialog (Fade In, Fade Out, Crossfade) to select, view, preview fades and crossfades, and edit fade curves.





The controls in the Fades dialog include:



Audition

Click this button to audition fades. Pro Tools supports fade auditioning directly from your audio interface outputs.



View First Track (Crossfades Only)

If you are cross-fading between more than one track, this button allows you to view and preview the audio of the first in a pair of adjacent tracks.



View Second Track (Crossfades Only)

If you are cross-fading between more than one track this button allows you to view and preview the audio of the second in a pair of adjacent tracks.



View Both Tracks (Crossfades Only)

Click this button to display the waveforms of the first two adjacent tracks in a multitrack crossfade.



Fade Curves Only

Click this button to display the specified fade curves without showing the actual audio waveforms. This is the default view when you open the Fades dialog.



Fade Curves and Separate Waveforms

Click this button to display the specified fade curves along with separate views of the fade-in and fade-out waveforms.



Fade Curves and Superimposed Waveforms

Click this button to display the specified fade curves along with superimposed views of the fade-in and fade-out waveforms.



Fade Curves and Summed Waveform

Click this button to display the specified fade curves along with a single waveform representing the summation of the any crossfaded audio.



Zoom In

Click this button to scale the view of the waveform's amplitude upwards. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) for the default view scale.

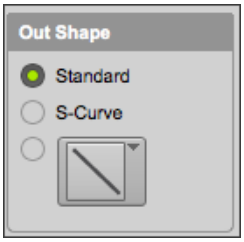


Zoom Out

Click this button to scale the view of the waveform's amplitude downwards. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) for the default view scale.

Fade-Out Shape Settings

The Out Shape setting lets you define the shape of the fade-out from a clip for a fade, or from clip 1 for a crossfade.



Standard

Selects a single continuous fade curve. This creates a general-purpose fade that can be edited by clicking and dragging the curve in the curve editor.

S-Curve

Selects an S-shaped curve, which inverts its beginning and end characteristics. This makes it possible to fade out faster at the curve's start and slower at its end, for example. S-shaped curves can be useful with material that is difficult to crossfade effectively. S-curves can be edited by clicking and dragging the curve in the curve editor.

Preset Curves

Seven commonly used preset curves are provided for fast fade creation. These cannot be edited by clicking and dragging in the curve editor.

For more information on adjusting the fade shape, see "Manually Adjusting Fade Shapes in Fade Windows" on page 957.

The seven presets are as follows:

Icon	Name	Description
	Preset Curve 1	Stays at full volume throughout the fade, then immediately drops the volume at the end of the fade.
	Preset Curve 2	Fades out relatively slowly, keeping the volume fairly high throughout the duration of the fade.
	Preset Curve 3	Fades out slightly faster, keeping the volume slightly lower during the fade.
	Preset Curve 4	Fades out with a linear fade. This is the default curve.
	Preset Curve 5	Fades out quickly at the beginning of the crossfade.
	Preset Curve 6	Drops the volume even more quickly at the beginning of the fade.
	Preset Curve 7	Silences any audio at the beginning of the fade.

Fade-In Shape Settings

The **Shape** setting lets you define the shape of the fade-in to a clip for a fade, or to clip 2 for a crossfade.

Standard

Selects a single continuous fade curve. This creates a general-purpose fade that can be edited by clicking and dragging the curve in the curve editor.

S-Curve

Selects an S-shaped curve, which inverts its beginning and end characteristics. This makes it possible to fade out faster at the curve's start and slower at its end, for example. S-shaped curves can be useful with material that is difficult to crossfade effectively. S-curves can be edited by clicking dragging the curve in the curve editor.

Preset Curves

Seven commonly used preset curves are provided for fast fade creation. These cannot be edited by clicking and dragging in the curve editor.

For more information on adjusting the fade shape, see "Manually Adjusting Fade Shapes in Fade Windows" on page 957.

The seven presets are as follows:

Icon	Name	Description
	Preset Curve 1	Fades in at full volume immediately at the beginning of the fade and keeps it there throughout the fade.

Icon	Name	Description
	Preset Curve 2	Fades in quickly in the beginning, reaching full amplitude fairly early in the fade.
	Preset Curve 3	Fades in moderately fast.
	Preset Curve 4	Fades in with a linear fade curve. This is the default curve.
	Preset Curve 5	Fades in slowly at the beginning of the fade.
	Preset Curve 6	Fades in even more slowly than the previous curve.
	Preset Curve 7	Silences any audio until the end of the fade.

Fade Slope Settings

The Fade In and Fade Out dialogs provide two options for the slope of the fade. The **Slope** setting lets you define the slope of the fade.

Equal Power

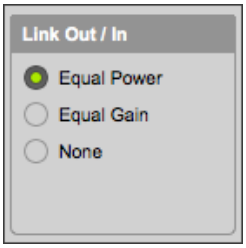
Recommended for material that is not phase coherent. With this fade, you can Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the fade curve to reset it to its default shape.

Equal Gain

Recommended for material that is phase-coherent or nearly phase-coherent. With this fade, you can Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the fade curve to reset it to its default shape.

Link Settings

(Crossfades Only)



The **Link** setting links the selected fade-out and fade-in curves of a crossfade. If you adjust one curve, the corresponding curve is also adjusted. This ensures that the resulting crossfade is an *equal power* or *equal gain* crossfade, depending on which one you select.

Equal Power

Recommended for material that is not phase coherent, as in the case of a crossfade between two completely different types of material. Use this option to avoid the volume drop that can occur with an Equal Gain crossfade. With this fade, you can Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the fade curve to reset it to its default shape.

Equal Gain

Recommended for material that is phase-coherent or nearly phase-coherent, as in the case of a crossfade between identical clips/instruments (for example, a repeated drum loop). Use this option to avoid clipping that can occur when using an Equal Power crossfade. With this fade, you can Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the fade curve to reset it to its default shape.

None

Disables linking between the fade-out and fade-in curves, and lets you freely adjust them separately, including start and end points.

For more information on adjusting the fade shape, see "Manually Adjusting Fade Shapes in Fade Windows" on page 957.

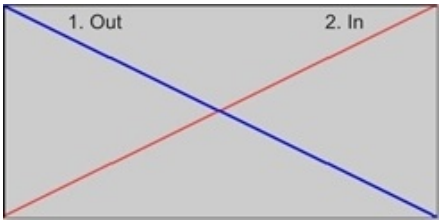
For information on adjusting the start and end points of fades in a crossfade, see "Adjusting the Start and End Points of a Crossfade" on page 957

Typical Curve Combinations

Following are the available combinations of fade-out and fade-in curves.

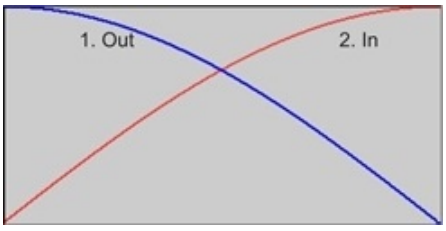
Linear Crossfade

This is a good general purpose crossfade with a smooth, even transition between clip 1 and clip 2.



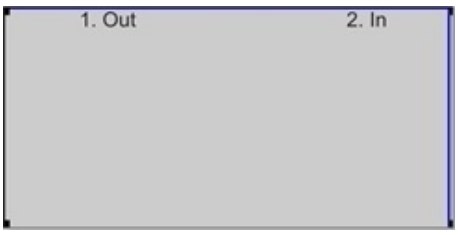
Equal Power Crossfade

This is a good general purpose crossfade useful in cases where a linear crossfade seems to create a noticeable drop in volume across the splice point.



Overlap Fade

This combination of curves keeps both clips at full amplitude throughout the crossfade: clip 2 “jumps in” at the beginning and clip 1 “jumps out” at the end.

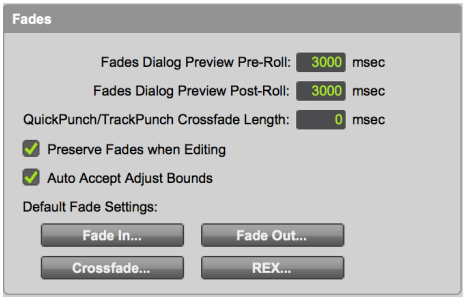


Fade and Crossfade Preferences

You can set default fade and crossfade settings. These settings load as your "base" settings when you use the Create Fades command, and the Fade to Start and Fade to End commands.

To set the fade and crossfade preferences:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Editing** tab.
2. Set the Pre-Roll and Post-Roll times for Fade previews.



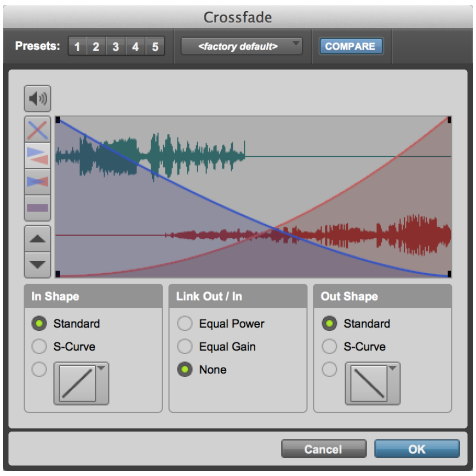
Fade preferences

3. Click **Fade In** and set the default shape for fade-ins when using the Smart Tool, then click **OK**.
4. Click **Fade Out** and set the default shape for fade-outs when using the Smart Tool, then click **OK**.
5. Click **Crossfade** and set the default shape for crossfades when using the Smart Tool, then click **OK**.
6. Click **OK**.

To apply the default fade or crossfade shape, make an Edit selection and press Command+Control+F (Mac) or Control+Start+F (Windows).

Fade Presets

Pro Tools provides five Fade Presets so that you can easily store and recall your most commonly used fade settings. You can also save and import Fade Preset settings.



Presets at the top of the Crossfade dialog

To store a Fade preset:

1. Configure the Fades dialog as you like.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Preset button where you want to store the current Fades dialog settings.

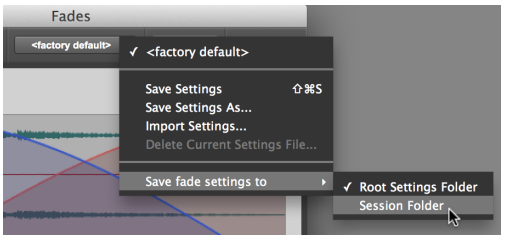
To recall a Fade preset:

- Click the Preset button that contains the settings you want to recall.

  Press Control+1–5 (Mac) or Start+1–5 (Windows) to recall the corresponding preset.

Fade Settings Menu

Use the Fade Settings menu commands to save, copy, paste, and manage fade settings as presets (Fade settings files).



Fades Settings menu commands include:

<factory default>

Restores the default settings for the Fades dialog.

Save Settings

Saves the current settings. This command overwrites any previous version of the preset.

Save Settings As

Saves the current settings as a new preset under a different name.

Import Settings

Imports a fade settings file (.fdpreset) from a location other than the Root Settings folder or Session folder.

Delete Current Settings File

Permanently deletes the current fade settings file (.fdpreset) from disk.

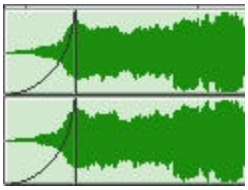
Save Fade Settings To

Selects the folder where Fades preset files (.fdpreset) are saved. If you select **`Session Folder`**, the settings are saved in a folder named "Fades Presets" within the current Session folder. If you select **`Root Settings Folder`**, the settings are saved in the Pro Tools Root folder specified in the Operation preferences.

Creating Fades at the Beginnings and Ends of Clips

Pro Tools lets you create fade-ins and fade-outs at the beginnings and ends of clips.

With Pro Tools Ultimate, you can also use an automatic fade-in/out option, which applies *real time* fade-ins/outs to all clips during playback automatically. For more information, see "Using AutoFades" on page 955.



Clip with a fade-in

Creating Fade-Ins and Fade-Outs

Depending on how you make the selection, you can position a fade-in or fade-out at the exact beginning or end of a clip, or position it so it extends into a blank area of the track. The length of the selection in the clip determines the length of the fade-in or fade-out.

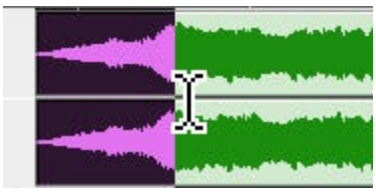
You can also fade to the beginning or end of a clip from an insertion point.

Although fades appear to be discrete clips, they cannot be separated from the clips in which they were created.

When changing tempo in a tick-based audio track, fade-ins and fade-outs remain with their parent clips. Fades maintain their absolute duration and are consequently recalculated after any tempo changes.

To create a fade-in:

1. Select the beginning of the clip that you want to fade in. The selection must extend to the exact beginning of the clip or a blank area prior to the clip in the track.

   Selecting the beginning of a clip for a fade-in

2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Fades > Create**.
   - Press Command+F (Mac) or Control+F (Windows).

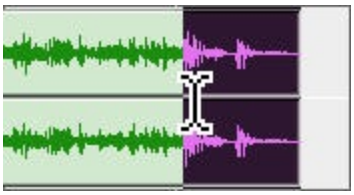
   To apply a Fade In using the Default Fade In setting (in the Editing Preferences page), and without opening the Fades dialog, press Command+Control+F (Mac) or Control+Start+F (Windows).

3. Select the fade-in curve and configure the other Fade settings.
4. Click the Audition button to audition the fade.
5. Adjust the curve by dragging it or by selecting a different shape from the **In Shape** pop-up menu.
6. Click **OK**.

   The selected fade curve appears in the clip.

To create a fade-out:

1. Select the end of the clip that you want to fade out. The selection must extend to the exact end of the clip or a blank area after the clip in the track.



Selecting the end of a clip for a fade-out

2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Fades > Create**.
   - Press Command+F (Mac) or Control+F (Windows).

   To apply the Fade Out using the Default Fade Out setting (in the Editing Preferences page), and without opening the Fades dialog, press Command+Control+F (Mac) or Control+Start+F (Windows).

3. Select the fade-out curve and configure the other Fade settings.
4. Click the Audition button to audition the fade.
5. Adjust the curve by dragging it or by selecting a different shape from the **Out Shape** pop-up menu.
6. Click **OK**.

   Pro Tools calculates the fade and the selected fade curve appears in the clip.

   Fade lengths can be resized with any of the Trim tools, including Nudge Trim commands. See "Using the Trim Tools" on page 887 and "Trimming with Nudge" on page 934.

To fade from the insertion point to a clip start point:

1. Place the cursor at a location in the clip.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Fades > Fade To Start**.
   - Press Control+D (Mac) or Start+D (Windows).

   The fade is applied based on the Fade In preferences (see "Fade and Crossfade Preferences" on page 950).

To fade from the insertion point to a clip end point:

1. Place the cursor at a location in the clip.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Fades > Fade To End**.
   - Press Control+G (Mac) or Start+G (Windows).

   The fade is applied based on the Fade Out preferences (see "Fade and Crossfade Preferences" on page 950).

Creating a Crossfade

To create a crossfade between two clips:

1. With the Selector tool, click at the point where you want the crossfade to begin in the first clip and drag to where you want it to end in the second clip. Crossfade selections can begin and end anywhere in their respective clips.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Fades > Create**.
   - Press Command+F (Mac) or Control+F (Windows).

   To apply a Crossfade using the Default Crossfade setting (in the Editing Preferences), and without opening the Fades dialog, press Command+Control+F (Mac) or Control+Start+F (Windows).
3. Use the view buttons to adjust the view of the crossfade. It may take a few moments to calculate the waveform display for long selections.
4. Select an **Out Shape** and an **In Shape**.
5. Select a **Linking** option.
6. Click the Audition button to audition the crossfade. For long crossfades, it may take Pro Tools a few moments to calculate and load the audio into playback RAM.
7. Do one of the following:
   - Adjust the curves by selecting different preset shapes with the **Out Shape** and **In Shape** pop-up menus.
   - Drag the Fade-In and Fade-Out curves to a custom shape. By choosing None as the Linking option, you can drag the beginning or end points of a fade curve to adjust its beginning or end point.
8. Click the Audition button to audition the crossfade again.
9. When the crossfade sounds right, click **OK**.

Crossfade lengths can be resized with any of the Trim tools, including Nudge Trim commands. See "Using the Trim Tools" on page 887 and "Trimming with Nudge" on page 934.

To remove a crossfade, do one of the following:

- Select the area of the track containing any crossfades you want to delete and choose **Edit > Fades > Delete**.
- Select the crossfade with the Time Grabber tool and press Delete (Mac) or Backspace (Windows).
- Right-click the crossfade with any of the edit tools and select **Delete Fades** from the pop-up menu.

To trim a crossfade:

1. Select the crossfade with the Time Grabber tool, or double-click it with the Selector tool.
2. With any of the Trim tools, trim either side of the crossfade. The crossfade is recalculated to reflect the newly trimmed length.

Crossfades on Tick-Based Audio Tracks

Crossfades are re-rendered after changing tempo in a tick-based audio track. The new crossfade is the same duration as the crossfade prior to the tempo change.

If there is not enough audio material to complete the crossfade, or if the new crossfade area falls outside of valid clip boundaries, the crossfade is removed.

Pre and Post Crossfade Selections

By making a selection that begins or ends precisely on the border of two clips, you can create "pre" or "post" crossfades. Use the Tab key to place the insertion point at the exact beginning or end of a clip.

To create a pre- or post-crossfade:

1. With the Selector tool, click in the track that contains the clips you want to crossfade.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Press Tab to move forward to the next clip boundary.
   - Press Option+Tab (Mac) or Control+Tab (Windows) to move back to the previous clip boundary.
3. Extend the selection by doing one of the following:
   - Shift-drag to adjust your selection, or press Shift+Tab to extend the selection forward to the next clip boundary.
   - Press Option+Shift+Tab (Mac) or Control+Shift+Tab (Windows) to extend the selection back to the previous clip boundary.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Fades > Create**.
   - Press Command+F (Mac) or Control+F (Windows).
5. Select a fade type and click **OK**.

Using AutoFades

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only)

Pro Tools Ultimate can automatically apply real-time fade-ins and fade-outs to all clip boundaries in the session on playback. Specify the duration (0 to 10 ms) for automatic real-time fades with the **Auto Clip Fade In/Out Length** preference in the Operation Preferences page). These fade-ins and fade-outs are performed during playback and do not appear in the Edit window.

AutoFades are not applied to AudioSuite processing.

This feature is especially useful in post production situations such as dialogue tracking. For example, you can assign both a dialogue track and a "room tone" track with matching background to the same voice. You can then set the **AutoFade** option to a moderate length (4 ms or so) so that whenever a silence occurs in the dialog, playback switches smoothly to and from the background track without clicks or pops.

Using automatic fade-ins/outs saves you the trouble of editing to zero-crossings or creating numerous rendered fades in order to eliminate clicks or pops in playback. However, those clicks or pops still exist in the underlying sound file. Consequently, those anomalies still appear if the Duplicate AudioSuite plugin or the **Export Clips As Files** command (from the Clip List) are used to duplicate multiple clips as a continuous file. To render these real-time auto fades to disk, choose **File > Bounce Mix**.

To set the length of automatic fade-ins/outs:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. Type a value between 0 and 10 ms for the **Clip Auto Fade In/Out Length**. A value of zero (the default) means that no auto-fading will occur.

3. Click **OK**. The AutoFade value is saved with the session, and is automatically applied to all free-standing clip boundaries until you change it.

Creating Fades and Crossfades in Batches

Using Batch Fades, you can create many fades at once. Select across several clips and use the **Create Fades** command to create crossfades for each clip transition. If your selection includes clips that already have crossfades, you can modify them.

To apply crossfades between multiple clips:

1. With the Selector tool, click in the first clip in which you want to create a crossfade. Make sure that the selection includes the entire clip.
2. Drag to extend the selection to include the last clip you want to crossfade. Make sure that the selection includes the entire clip.



Selected clips for Batch Fades

3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Fades > Create**.
   - Press Command+F (Mac) or Control+F (Windows).
4. In the Batch Fades dialog, select whether you want to **Create New Fades**, **Adjust Existing Shape & Slope**, **Adjust Existing Length**, or a combination of these options for fade ins, crossfades and fade outs.

   If you choose to create new fades *and* new fade-ins and outs, new crossfades are created at each clip boundary that is bordered by another selected clip, a fade-in is created at the start of the first clip, and a fade-out is created at the end of the last clip.



Batch Fades dialog

5. Select the placement of the Fades: Pre-Splice, Centered, or Post-Splice (see "About Crossfades and Curves" on page 943).
6. Enter a length in milliseconds for Fade In, Crossfades, and Fade Out.
7. Click **OK**.

   Pro Tools creates the fades and crossfades for all selected clips.

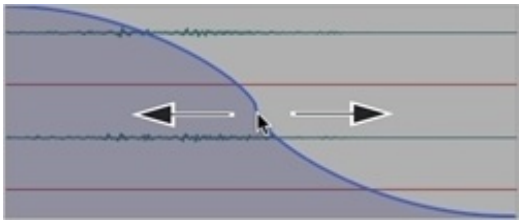
   Fade lengths can subsequently be resized with any of the Trim tools, including Nudge Trim commands. See "Using the Trim Tools" on page 887 and "Trimming with Nudge" on page 934.

Manually Adjusting Fade Shapes in Fade Windows

If the **Fade Shape** setting for a Fade In, Fade Out, or Crossfade is set to **Standard** or **S-Curve**, Pro Tools lets you adjust the fade shape in the any of the corresponding Fade window (Fade In, Fade Out, and Crossfade) using the mouse. This includes Batch Fades and Fade windows in the Editing preferences.

To adjust the fade (or crossfade) shape:

1. Create a new fade (or crossfade) or open the Fade (or Crossfade) window for an existing fade (or crossfade).
2. Ensure that the Fade Shape is set to either **Standard** or **S-Curve**, and not to one of the seven preset Fade Shapes.
3. In the Fade (or Crossfade) window, click on the fade shape and drag to the left or the right until you get the fade shape you want.



Manually adjusting the fade shape

For Crossfades, you can edit only the fade-in shape of the curve by pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging left or right. To edit only the fade-out portion of the curve, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while dragging.

4. Click **OK**.

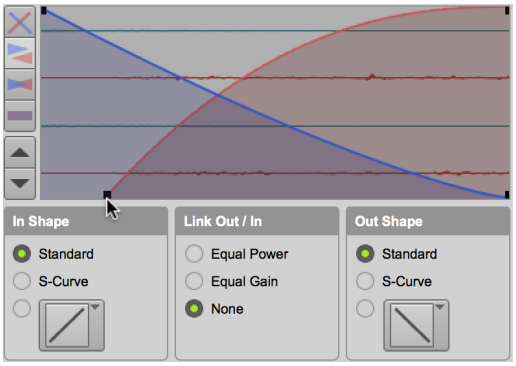
Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the fade curve to reset it to its default shape.

Adjusting the Start and End Points of a Crossfade

If the **Link** setting for a Crossfade is set to **Standard** or **None**, Pro Tools lets you adjust the start and end points of the fade in and fade out of the crossfade independently. This includes the Batch Fades and Crossfade windows in the Editing preferences.

To adjust the start and end points of a crossfade:

1. Create a crossfade or open the Crossfade window for an existing crossfade.
2. Ensure that the **Link** setting for the Crossfade is set to **None**.
3. Do one or both of the following:
   - To adjust the start point of either the Fade In or Fade Out of the crossfade, click and drag the black square the appears at the beginning of the fade to the right (or to the left if you have already changed the start point from the default location).
   - To adjust the end point of either the Fade In or Fade Out of the crossfade, click and drag the black square the appears at the end of the fade to the left (or to the right if you have already changed the end point from the default location).



Adjusting the Fade In start point of a crossfade

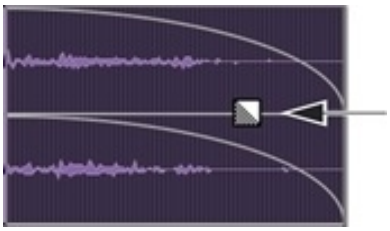
4. Once you have set the start and end points of the fades as you like, click OK to close the Crossfade window and apply your changes.

Adjusting Fade Shapes with the Smart Tool in the Edit Window

Pro Tools lets you adjust fade and crossfade shapes in the Edit window using the Smart Tool.

To adjust a fade-in, fade-out, or crossfade in the Edit window:

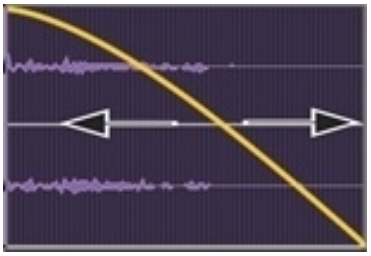
1. Select the Smart Tool.
2. Position the cursor over the fade in the vertical middle of the clip until the corresponding Fade or Crossfade cursor appears.



Smart Tool showing Fade-out cursor

If the Smart Tool Fade Adjustment preference is set to use the Command key (Mac) or the Control key (Windows), press the Command key (Mac) or the Control key (Windows) while positioning the cursor.

3. Click (the fade shape highlights yellow) and drag to the left or right to adjust the fade shape.



Task Manager Status indicator, tasks in progress

4. Release the mouse when the fade shape is what you want.

Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) with the Selector Tool to adjust fades in the same way as with the Smart Tool.

If the Edit selection includes two or more tracks with more than one fade, hold the Shift key while adjusting the shape of a fade to change all fades in the Edit selection.

While adjusting a fade shape in the Fades dialog or using the Smart Tool in the Edit window, the exact curve and waveform update to match. After adjusting the fade curve and seeing the exact, real-time updates to the curve and waveform, the persistent fade drawn in the Edit window is a more general representation that may not look exactly like the fade curve when you were adjusting it.

Changing Fade Shapes in the Edit Window

Pro Tools lets you change the shape of any selected fade in the Edit window using keyboard shortcuts to cycle through all available fade shapes in order: Standard, S-Curve, and seven parabolic fade shapes (see "Fade-Out Shape Settings" on page 946 and "Fade-In Shape Settings" on page 947).

To change the fade shape of any fade in the Edit window:

1. Make an edit selection that includes the fade (or fades) you want to change. Only completely selected fades will be affected.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Press Option+Control+Left Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Start+Left Arrow (Windows) to change to the previous preset fade shape.
   - Press Option+Control+Right Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Start+Right Arrow (Windows) to change to the next preset fade shape.

Fades Options in the Edit Selection Right-Click Menu

Pro Tools lets you set the Fade Shape (**Standard** or **S-Curve**) and the Fade Slope (**Equal Power** or **Equal Gain**) for fades and crossfades from the Right-click menu in the Edit window. The corresponding Shape and Slope for the selected fade are checked in the menu. If the edit selection includes two or more fades with different Shape settings, the **Standard** and **S-Curve** options appear in italics (and with no check marks). Likewise, if the edit selection includes two or more fades with different Slope settings, the **Equal Power** and **Equal Gain** options appear in italics (and with no check marks).

You can also edit Batch Fades from the Right-click menu in the Edit window.

To set the Shape for a fade or crossfade in the Edit window:

1. Right-click the fade you want to change.
2. Select the desired Shape from **Fades** submenu: **Standard** or **S-Curve**.

To set the Slope for a fade or crossfade in the Edit window:

1. Right-click the fade you want to change.
2. Select the desired Slope from **Fades** submenu: **Equal Power** or **Equal Gain**.

To edit Batch Fades in the Edit window:

1. Make an Edit selection that includes multiple whole clips with fades.
2. Right-click the Edit selection and choose **Fades > Batch Fades**.
3. Configure the Batch Fades dialog as desired and click **OK**.

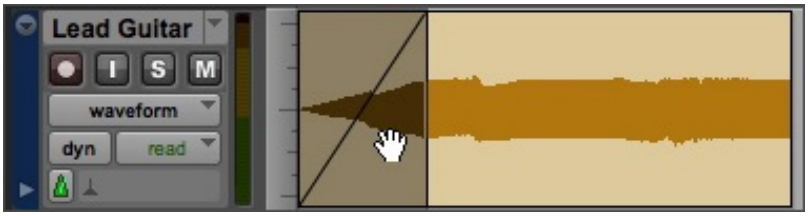
Moving and Nudging Fades and Crossfades

Fades and crossfades can be moved or nudged in tracks, independently of their contributing clips. Moving or nudging fade-ins or fade-outs reveals or hides audio as the fade is moved from the edge of a contributing clip. Moving or nudging crossfades changes the overlap point of the contributing clips. Moving or nudging fades is also constrained by underlying clip boundaries.

Moving or Nudging Fades or Crossfades within Clips

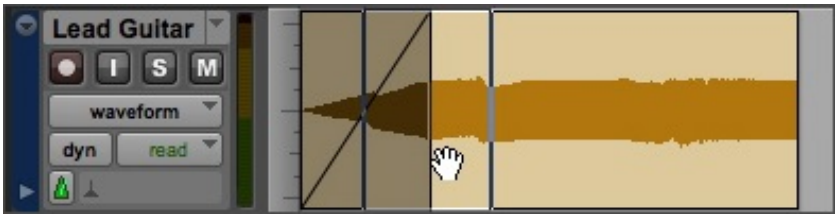
To move or nudge a fade or crossfade within its contributing clips:

1. Select the fade or crossfade by doing one of the following:
   - Use the Time Grabber tool to select the fade.
   - Use the Selector tool to select a range that includes the fade.

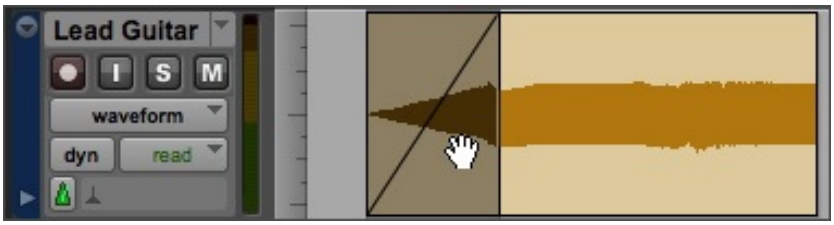


Selecting a fade with the Time Grabber

2. Move the fade by doing one of the following:
   - Drag the fade with the Time Grabber tool to a new location on the track.
   - Nudge the fade by pressing Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to move the fade forward or backward on the track.



Dragging the fade with the Time Grabber



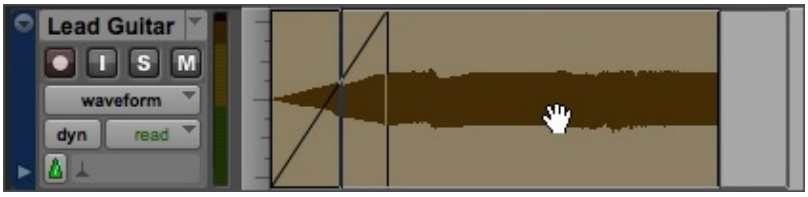
Result of moved fade

Moving Clips Containing Fades or Crossfades

When you move or nudge a clip selection that contains a fade-in, fade-out, or crossfade, the fade moves with the selection.

To move a clip selection with fades or crossfades:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click a clip with the Time Grabber tool (or double-click with the Selector tool) to select the clip along with the fade (in or out).
   - Select multiple clips that include the fades and crossfades you want to move.
2. Move the clip selection by doing one of the following:
   - Drag the clip selection with the Grabber tool to a new location on the track.
   - Nudge the clip selection by pressing Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to move the clip forward or backward on the track.



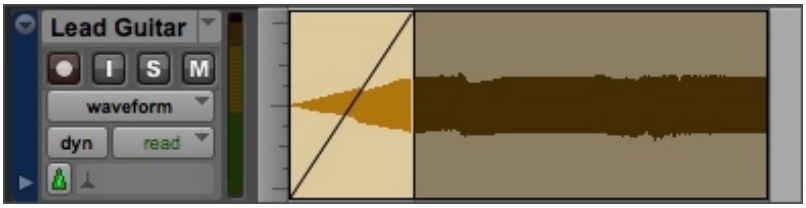
Dragging a clip with its fade

Nudging Clips Adjacent to Fade-Ins or Fade-Outs

When you nudge a clip selection adjacent to a fade-in or fade-out, but do not select the fade, the adjacent fade stretches or shrinks to maintain the fade start or end point. The amount of change depends on the amount of audio material outside the fade start or end point.

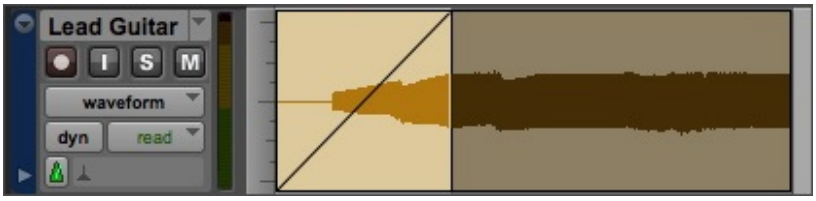
To a nudge clip without its fade:

1. Select the clip, but not the fade.



Selecting a clip without its fade

2. Nudge the clip by pressing Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad.



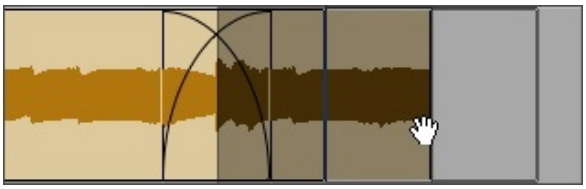
Nudging a clip without its fade

Moving Clips Adjacent to Crossfades

When you move either of the clips that contributes to a crossfade, the clips separate. The status of the fade depends on the Preserve Fades when Editing preference (in the Editing Preferences page).

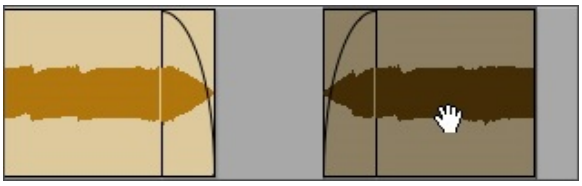
To separate crossfaded clips and retain the corresponding fades:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Editing** tab.
2. Select **Preserve Fades when Editing**.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.
4. Use the Time Grabber or Separation Grabber tool to select one of the contributing clips to a crossfade.



Selecting a clip with a crossfade

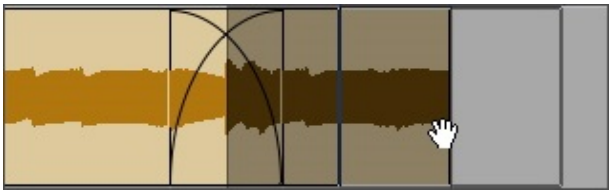
5. Drag the selected clip with the Grabber.



Separating clips while preserving fades

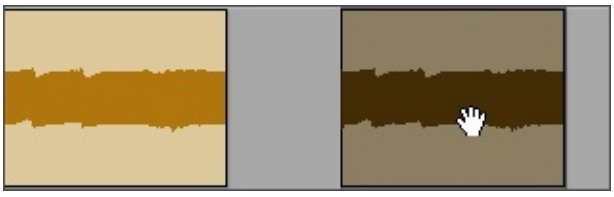
To separate crossfaded clips and remove the fade:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Editing** tab.
2. Deselect **Preserve Fades when Editing**.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.
4. Use the Time Grabber or Separation Grabber tool to select one of the contributing clips to a crossfade.



Selecting a clip with a crossfade

5. Drag the selected clip with the Grabber.



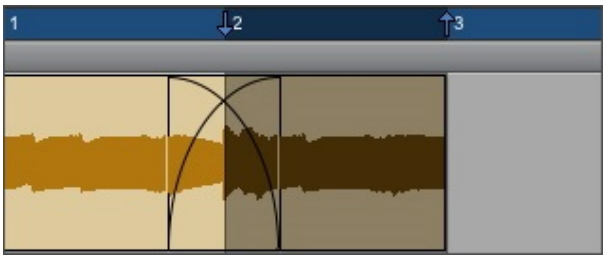
Nudging Clips Adjacent to Crossfades

When you nudge either of the clips that contributes to a crossfade, the fade stretches to preserve the relative position of the crossfade start and end points. The amount of stretch depends on the amount of overlap between the contributing clips.

If you nudge a clip beyond the boundary of available audio for the crossfade, the fade is removed.

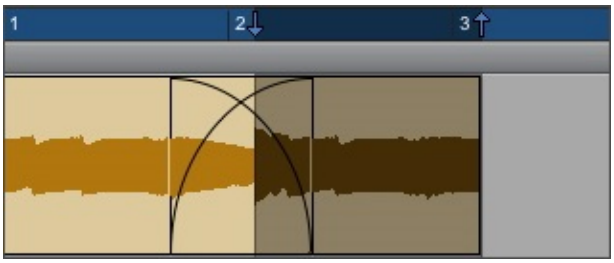
To nudge a clip and stretch its crossfade:

1. Use the Time Grabber tool to select one of the contributing clips to the crossfade.



Selecting a clip with a crossfade

2. Nudge the clip by pressing Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad.



Stretching the crossfade by nudging

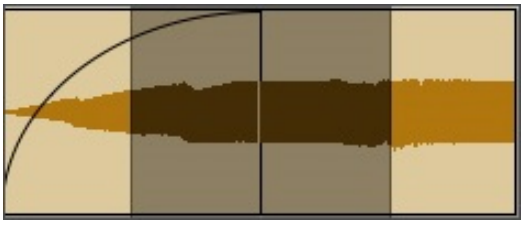
Separating Clips that Include Fades or Crossfades

You can create clips from track material that overlaps with fades or crossfades. If the **`Preserve Fades when Editing`** option is enabled in the Editing Preferences page, the fades from the source clip are adjusted to the new clip.

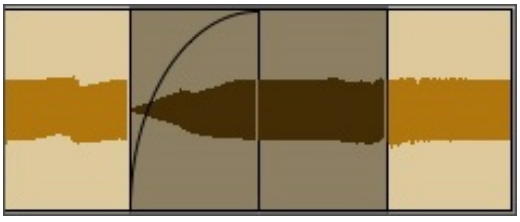
To separate a clip that overlaps with a fade or crossfade:

1. With the Selector tool, drag to select the material for the new clip.
2. Choose **`Edit > Separate Clip > At Selection`**.

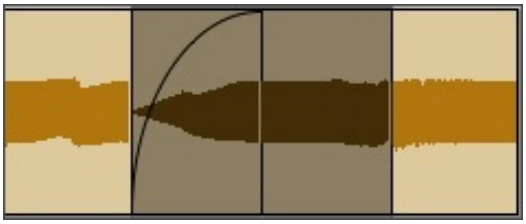
   Where your selection overlaps any fade-ins or fade-outs, the fade is trimmed to fit the selection.



Selecting material that overlaps a fade-in

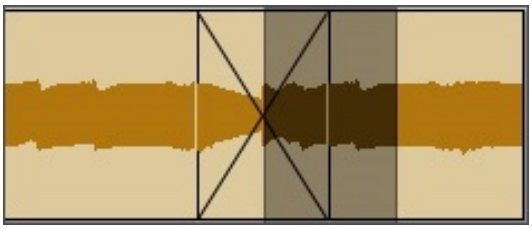


Result of Separate Clip command on fade-in

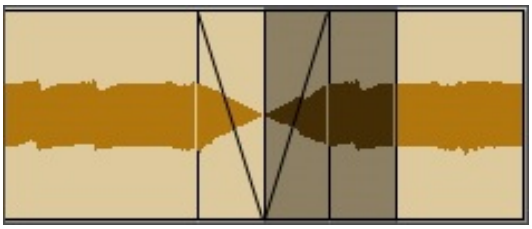


Result of Separate Clip command on fade-in

Where your selection overlaps a crossfade, the crossfade is separated into a fade-out and fade-in at the selection boundary.



Selecting material that overlaps a crossfade



Result of Separate Clip command on crossfade

If the Preserve Fades when Editing option is not enabled in the Editing preferences, any fades within the selection are deleted when editing.

Trimming Clips that Include Fades or Crossfades

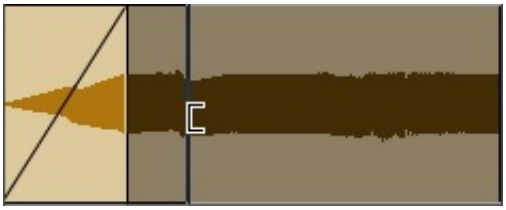
You can trim clips that include fades or crossfades.

Trimming a Clip to a Fade Boundary

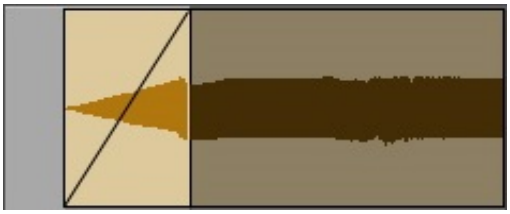
You can trim clips that are adjacent to fade and crossfade boundaries.

To trim a clip on a fade boundary:

- With the Trim tool, click the clip boundary and drag to trim the clip. The fade remains constant and follows the new clip boundary.



Dragging a clip boundary with the Trim tool



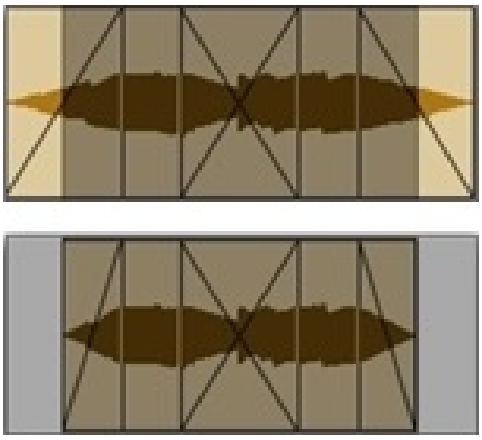
Result of trimming the clip

Trimming to a Selection Across Fades or Crossfades

You can trim clips to selections that include fades or crossfades.

To trim a clip to a selection that includes fades, do one of the following:

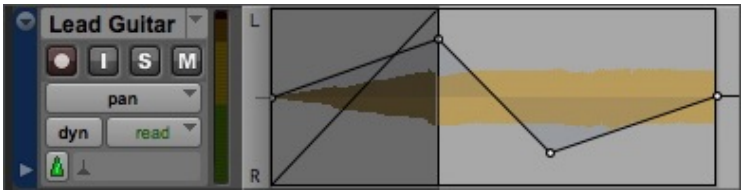
- Make a selection in the track and choose **Edit > Trim > To Selection**. You can Trim across multiple clips and fades. Affected fades are adjusted to the new clip boundaries.
- Click with the Selector in the clip and choose **Edit > Trim > Start to Insertion** or **End to Insertion**. You can trim to clip or fade boundary in the track.



Trimming to a selection across multiple fades

Fade Boundaries and Shapes Displayed in Automation View

Fade boundaries and fade shapes are shown and can be edited in Automation views, allowing for more precise viewing and editing of automation data. For more information on Automation and Automation views, see "Automation" on page 158.



Fade information in Automation view

37 Playlists

The ability to create *playlists* is a powerful feature of Pro Tools. Each track maintains a “main” playlist and any number of “alternate” edit playlists.

Edit playlists let you take a snapshot of a track’s current arrangement of clips, thereby freeing you to experiment with alternate arrangements, returning as necessary to previously saved playlists.

A playlist, which can consist of a single clip or many clips, can only be assigned to a track if it is not in use by another track. While you can create an almost unlimited number of edit playlists, which are shared among all tracks, each track has its own dedicated *automation playlist*.

Automation playlists for audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks store data for volume, pan, mute, and plugin controls. Automation playlists for MIDI tracks, however, store *only* mute information; continuous controller events, program changes, and Sysex events are stored in MIDI clips and therefore reside within edit playlists for both MIDI and Instrument tracks (see "Automation" on page 158).

Working with Playlists

When you create a new track, it contains a single, empty playlist until you record, import, or drag and drop material to it.

Audio material can be dragged and dropped onto a track from the Clip List, Workspace browsers, from Windows Explorer or the Mac Finder.

New playlists can be created that are empty or duplicates of the current playlist. Once created, you can recall, rename, and delete playlists as needed by using the Playlist selector.



Playlist selector

New and duplicated playlists are auto-named with the track name, followed by a Period (.) and the playlist number. For example, the first duplicated playlist on a track named “Kick” is auto-named “Kick.01,” subsequent duplicated playlists are auto-named “Kick.02,” “Kick.03,” and so on.

Creating a Playlist

You can create new empty playlists for recording or importing audio and MIDI. This can be useful for creating alternate takes of audio or MIDI, or for constructing alternate arrangements.

To create a new (empty) playlist:

1. Click the track's Playlist selector and choose **New**.
2. Type a name for the new playlist and click **OK**.

   An empty playlist with the specified name appears in the track.

   Press Control+\ (Mac) or Start+\ (Windows) to create a new playlist for the first selected track in the session.

Duplicating a Playlist

When you edit a track, you can work with a copy of the track's playlist and keep the original playlist arrangement intact.

To duplicate a track's current playlist:

1. Click the track's Playlist selector and choose **Duplicate** from the pop-up menu.
2. Type a name for the new playlist and click **OK**.

   The duplicated playlist appears in the track and the track's name is changed to the name of the new playlist.

   Press Command+Control+\ (Mac) or Control+Start+\ (Windows) to duplicate the main playlist for first selected track in the session.

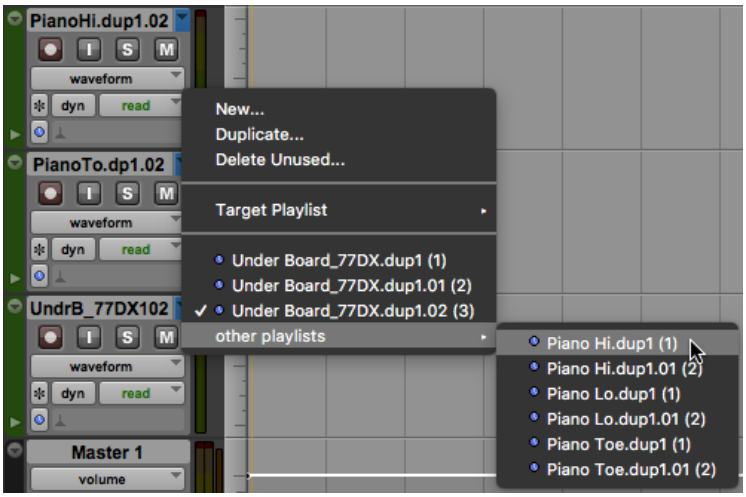
Assigning a Playlist to Another Track

By default, a playlist is typically available only for the track on which it was created. However, if the playlist is no longer in use on its original track or any other track, it can be reassigned in another track using the Other Playlists feature. When a playlist is reassigned to another track (assigned on any track), it is unavailable to other tracks including the track on which it originated.

An audio playlist's timebase is saved with the playlist. When assigning an unassigned playlist to any track, the track assumes the saved timebase of the playlist.

To assign a track playlist:

- Click the track's Playlist selector and do one of the following:
  - Select one of the track's playlists.
  - Select a playlist from a different track by clicking the Other Playlists submenu, and selecting a playlist.



Selecting a playlist from a different track

The selected playlist appears in the track and the track's name is updated to that of the selected playlist.

Renaming a Playlist

You can rename a playlist by renaming the track to which it is assigned.

To rename a track's assigned playlist:

1. Double-click the track's name.
2. Type a new name and click **OK**.

   Both the track and playlist names are updated.

Deleting a Playlist

You can delete a playlist from a session entirely. However, since playlists require minimal disk space, you do not need to delete them to conserve storage.

To delete one or more playlists from a track:

1. Click the track's Playlist selector and choose **Delete Unused**.
2. Select the unassigned playlists you want to delete. Shift-click (Windows or Mac), Control-click (Windows), or Command-click (Mac) to select multiple playlists.
3. Click **OK** to delete the selected playlists. This operation cannot be undone.

You can also delete playlists in Playlists view. Right-click the Playlist Name on a lane or in the Track List and choose Delete.

When deleting a track from a session, you have the option of deleting or keeping its playlists, so they can be used on other tracks.

Show Next and Previous Playlist

Pro Tools lets you quickly and easily cycle through playlists on any track containing the Edit cursor using keyboard shortcuts.

To show the next playlist in the main playlist for tracks that contain the Edit cursor:

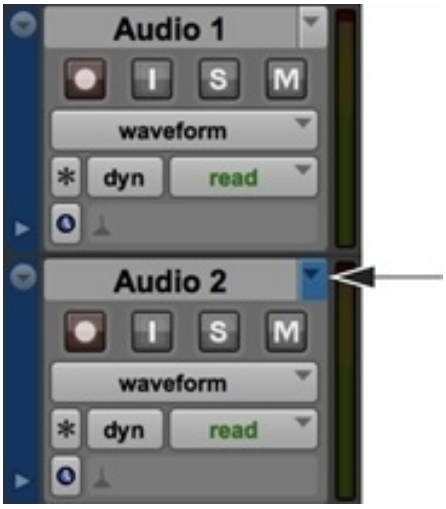
- Press Shift+Down Arrow.

To show the previous playlist in the main playlist for tracks that contain the Edit cursor:

- Press Shift+Up Arrow.

Additional Playlists Indicator

When a track contains only the main playlist, the Playlist selector is gray. However, when a track contains more than one playlist, the Playlist selector turns blue.



Two tracks, Audio 1 with main playlist only (gray) and Audio 2 with multiple playlists (blue)

Playlists and Edit Groups

Creating new playlists with grouped tracks automatically increments the suffixes of the playlist names for each track of the active edit group. This lets you revert back to an earlier take by switching the playlist takes by group.

Using this method, you can add new tracks to the existing group and the suffixes for their playlist names are synchronized with the original tracks.

Empty playlists are created automatically to keep the playlist takes synchronized when switching back to the earliest playlist takes in the group.

To keep your playlist names and performances synchronized (example workflow):

1. Create new tracks and group them together.

   For more information on grouping tracks, see "Grouping Tracks" on page 417.

2. Make sure the group is enabled.
3. Create a new playlist (by clicking the Playlist selector in one of the tracks in the group and choosing New). The default suffix will now be ".01"—signifying take 1.
4. Record take 1, then create a new playlist. The playlists on all tracks in the group increment to ".02."
5. Create new tracks (for example, for an additional musician or microphone), then add these tracks to the group (or create a new group with all the tracks).
6. Increment all the playlists by clicking the Playlist selector in one of the tracks in the group and choosing **New**.

   All the playlists will now have the same suffix appended to them. (Creating additional playlists in any of the group tracks will increment all of their playlists to keep them synchronized.)
7. If you want to hear the .01 take on the first group of tracks, you can switch any playlist in the group back to playlist .01.

   All tracks in the group have playlists numbered with .01 suffixes (even those tracks that were added to the original group after the earlier takes). Empty playlists are automatically created on these newly-added members so that playlist numbers match across all members of the group.

Elastic Audio and Alternate Playlists

Alternate playlists on Elastic Audio-enabled, tick-based tracks are only affected by tempo changes. Otherwise, alternate playlists are not affected by editing Warp or Event markers in the main playlist.

Track Compositing

Pro Tools provides *track compositing* tools for audio, Instrument, and MIDI tracks. Track compositing is the process of assembling various selections from alternate takes, or playlists, to construct the best possible version of a performance from multiple recording passes. Using Playlists view for an audio track, you can select the best parts from the track's alternate playlists and copy them to the main playlist. This lets you quickly and easily create the "perfect take" from multiple alternate playlists.

Track Compositing Example

In this workflow, you will be introduced to some common track compositing tasks:

- Configure a session for this workflow.
- Loop record multiple takes on an audio track.
- Audition and select the best take.
- Copy the best take to the target playlist.

The following example relates to audio compositing, but the same can be done with MIDI on Instrument and MIDI tracks.

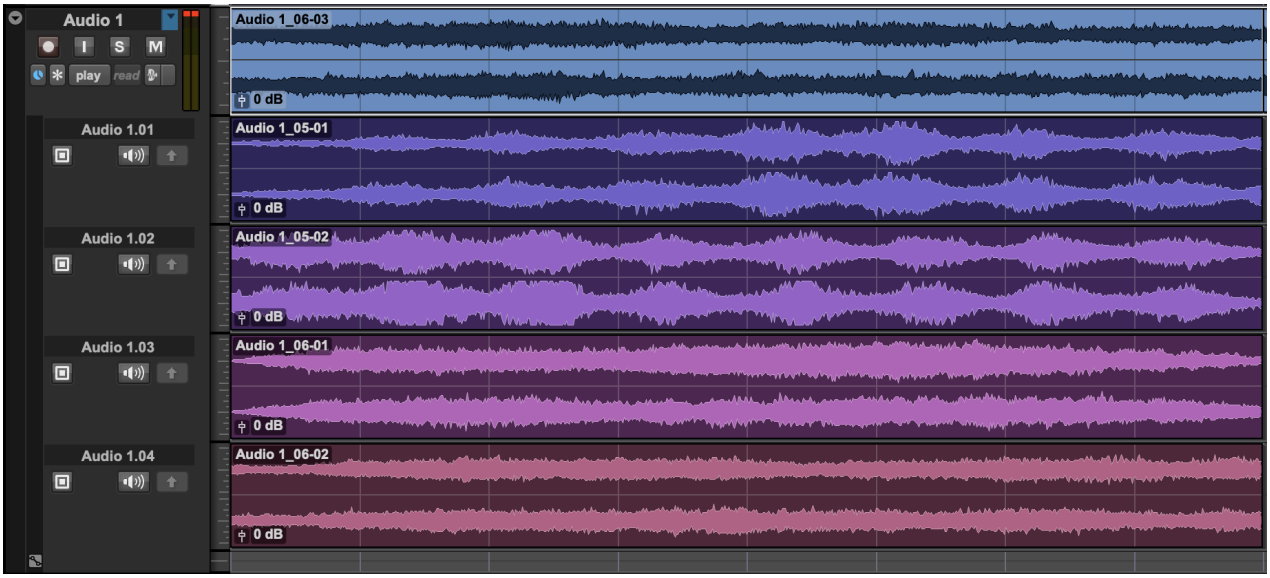
To configure a session:

1. Open an existing Pro Tools session or create a new one.
2. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **Operation** tab.
3. On the Operation page, in the Record section, select the **Automatically Create New Playlists When Loop Recording** option.
4. Click **OK**.

To loop record multiple takes:

1. Create a new audio track (stereo or mono), or use an existing track.
2. Make sure the source you want to record is correctly connected and routed to the track input.
3. From the Track View selector, select **Playlists**.
4. To hear track material up to the start point of the loop, enable pre-roll and set the pre-roll time.
5. Enable Loop Recording by doing one of the following:
   - Select **Options > Loop Playback**.
   - Right-click the Play button in the Transport and select **Loop**.
6. Make sure that **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** is selected.
7. With the Selector tool, select the loop range on the track.
8. Record enable the audio track by clicking its Record Enable button.
9. Click Record in the Transport to arm Pro Tools for recording.
10. Click Play to start recording.
11. When finished, click Stop to stop recording.
12. If you do not want to make another loop record pass, record disable the audio track.

After you have stopped loop recording, notice that all of the loop recording takes are revealed in Playlist lanes below the main playlist (including the whole audio file clip of all of the loop record passes).

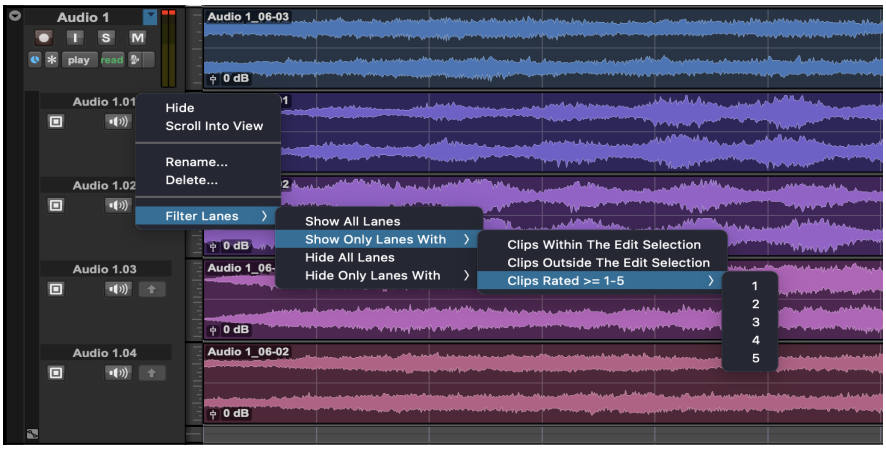


Playlists view showing multiple alternate playlists

If the Automatically Create New Playlists When Loop Recording option was disabled before you started loop recording, Right-click the clip in the main playlist and choose Matches › Expand Alternates to New Playlists.

To hide the playlist for the whole file clip, do one of the following:

- Right-click on the Playlist lane and choose **Hide**.
- With the same Edit selection that you used for loop recording intact, Right-click the Track Name or any of the Playlist Lane Names and choose **Filter Lanes > Show Only Lanes With > Clips Within the Edit Selection**.



Filtering Playlist lanes viewed

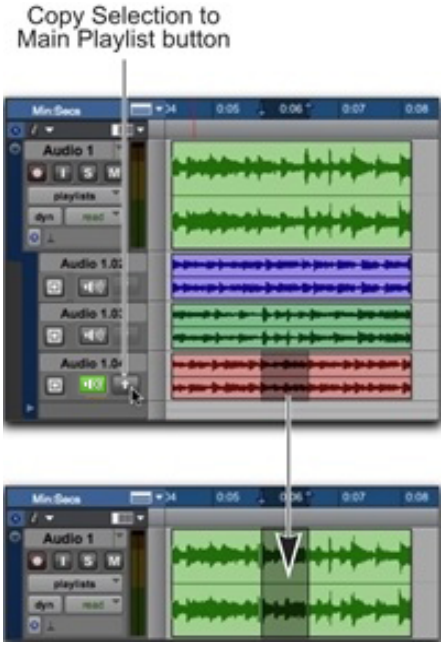
To audition alternate playlists:

1. Enable Loop Playback by doing one of the following:
   - Select **Options > Loop Playback**.
   - Right-click the Play button in the Transport and select **Loop**.

2. With the same Timeline selection intact, and the same pre-roll/post-roll settings enabled, start playback. The main playlist plays back.
3. Click the Solo button for the alternate playlist lane you want to audition. Repeat this step for each playlist lane. (Soloing a Playlist lane only solos the playlist in the track, it does not mute any other tracks in the session.)

To select and copy the best take to the target playlist:

1. Once you have identified the best take, make any changes to the Edit selection. This is the selection that will be copied to the target playlist.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Copy Selection To > Target Playlist`**.
   - Right-click the selection and choose **`Copy Selection to Target Playlist`**.
   - Click the Copy Selection to Target Playlist button for the Playlist lane.



Copying the Edit selection in an alternate playlist to the target playlist

Press Option+Control+V or Option+Shift+Up Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Start+V or Alt+Shift+Up Arrow (Windows) to copy the selection to the target playlist.

Playlists View

Playlists view lets you view the main playlist in the track, and also any alternate playlists associated with the track. Alternate playlists are displayed directly below the track in *Playlist lanes*.

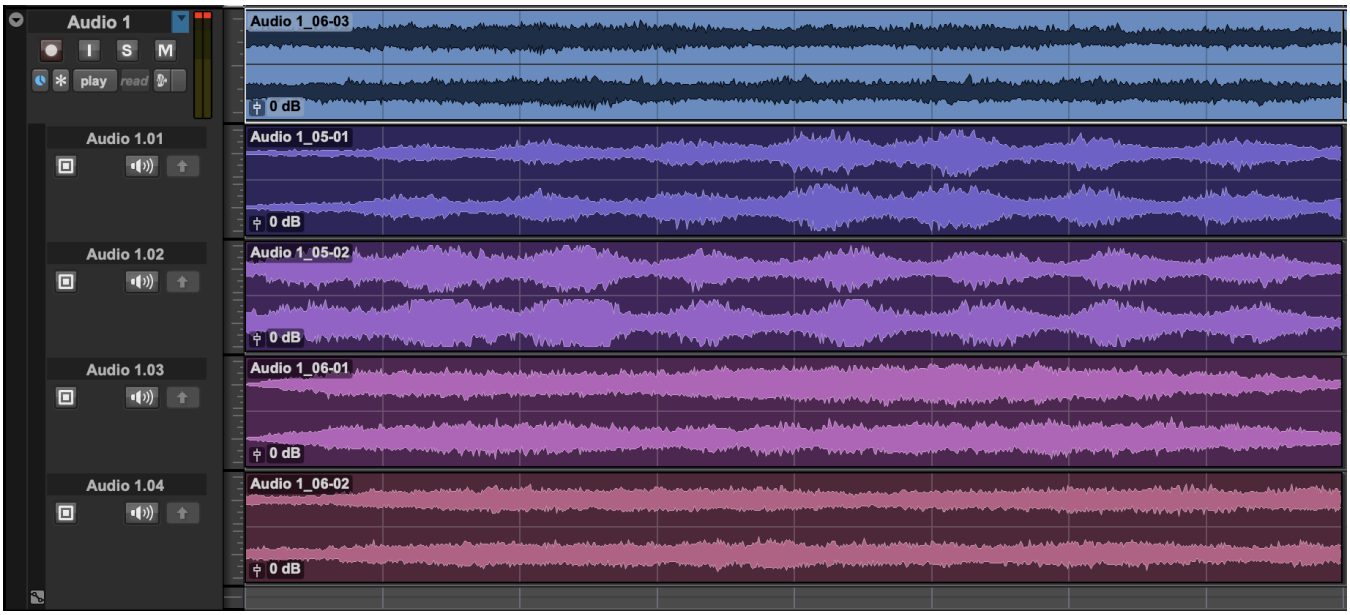
You can edit alternate playlists in Playlists view just like the main playlist in Waveform view. In Playlists view, edits that are applied to range selections are applied to all shown alternate playlists. Alternate playlists that are not shown are not affected.

Before starting work with Track Compositing, duplicate the track's Main Playlist to keep it intact as a backup alternate playlist.

Clip groups are not supported in Playlists Track View.

To view the Playlist lanes for a track:

If the track contains one or more alternate playlists in addition to the main playlist, they are displayed in lanes under the main playlist. Regardless, the bottom Playlist lane is always empty and can be used for adding clips to create new alternate playlists.



Audio track with alternate playlists in Playlists Track view



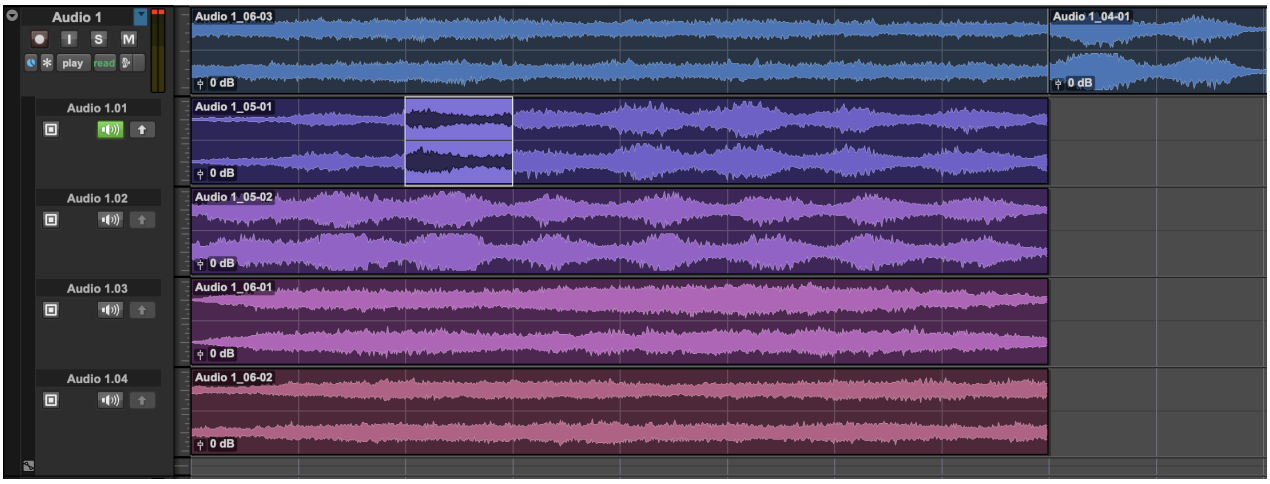
Instrument track with alternate playlists in Playlists Track view

Auditioning Alternate Playlists

Only the main playlist plays back through the track audio output path. To hear an alternate playlist, audition the Playlist lane. The auditioned lane then plays through the track audio output path instead of the main playlist.

To audition an alternate playlist:

1. Click the Audition button for the Playlist lane you want to audition. (Auditioning a Playlist lane only auditions the playlist in the track; it does not mute any other tracks in the session.)



Soloing an alternate playlist

2. Start Pro Tools playback.

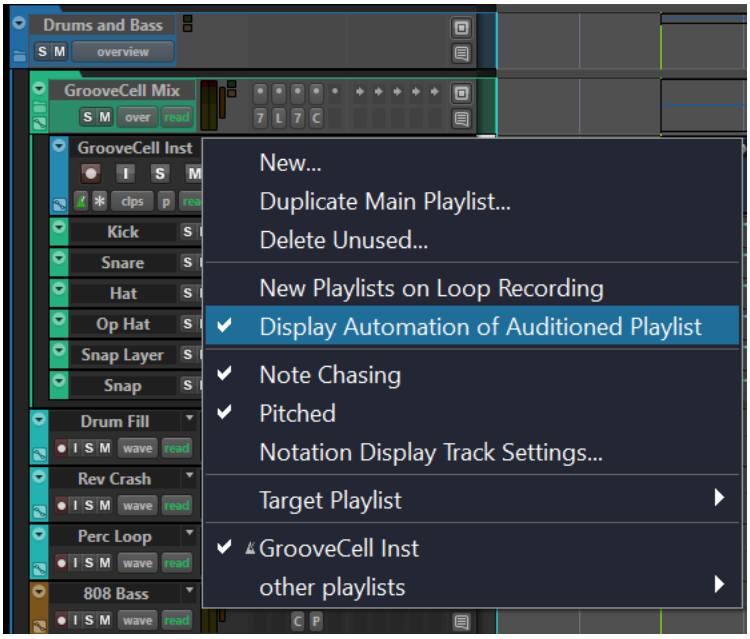
Press Shift+S to audition any one Playlist lane containing the Edit cursor. If more than one Playlist lane contains the Edit cursor, the topmost lane is soloed.

Use Control+P and Control+";" (Mac) or Start+P and Start+";" (Windows) to move the Edit cursor up and down through Playlist lanes.

Displaying Automation (CC and Velocity) of Audition Playlist Option

To display Automation (CC and Velocity lanes) for any playlist you are auditioning:

- Click the Playlist selector and enable **`Display Automation of Auditioned Playlist`**.



Copying and Pasting Edit Selections to Other Playlists

Once you have found a selection in a playlist that you want to use in another playlist (such as the main playlist), copy and paste the selection to the target playlist. In this way you can construct the best combination of selections from alternate playlists.

In addition to manually copying and then pasting the selection to another playlist, Pro Tools provides several commands for copying and pasting the selection to any other playlist:

Copy Selection To Target Playlist

Copies and pastes the selection to the target playlist. Any material already on the target playlist at the same location is overwritten.

Copy Selection to New Playlist

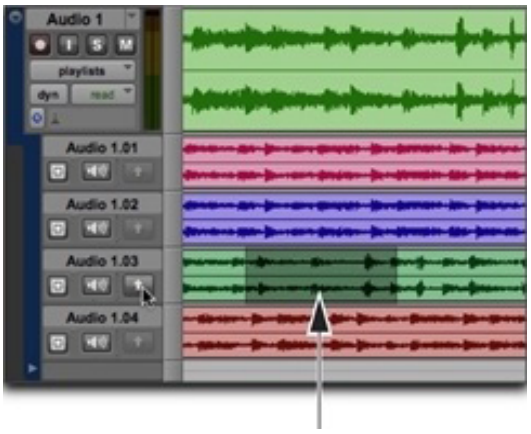
Creates a new, empty target playlist and copies and pastes the selection to the new target playlist.

Copy Selection to Duplicate Playlist

Duplicates the current target playlist and copies and pastes the selection to the duplicate of the target playlist. The previous target playlist moves to a new Playlist lane.

To copy a selection in an alternate playlist to the target playlist:

1. In Playlists view, make a selection in an alternate playlist.

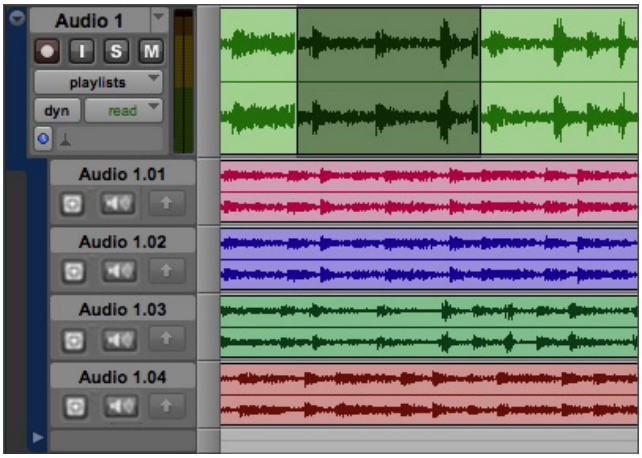


Making a selection in an alternate playlist

2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Copy Selection To Target Playlist button in the Playlist Lane controls.
   - Choose **Edit > Copy Selection to Target Playlist**.
   - Right-click the selection and choose **Copy Selection To Target Playlist**.

Press Option+Control+V (Mac) or Alt+Start+V (Windows) to copy the selection to the target playlist.

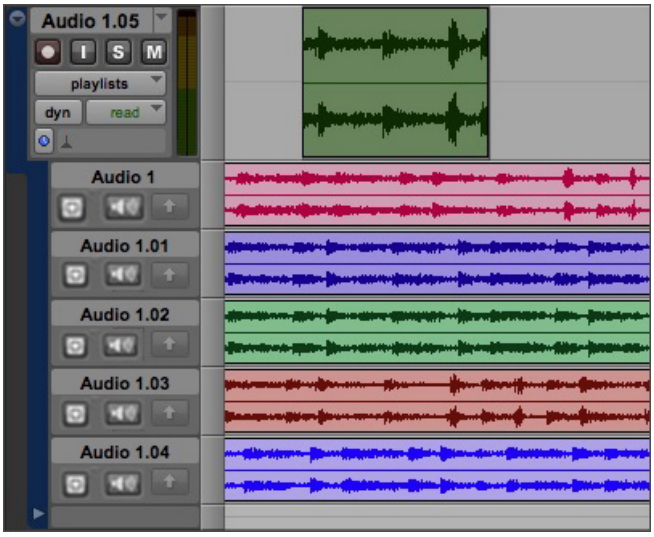
The selection from the alternate playlist is copied to the same time location in the target playlist.



Selection copied to the target playlist

To copy a selection in an alternate playlist to a new target playlist:

1. In Playlists view, make a selection in an alternate playlist.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Copy Selection To > New Playlist`**.
   - Right-click the Edit selection and choose **`Copy To > New Playlist`**.
   - Press Control+Shift+Left Arrow (Mac) or Start+Shift+Left Arrow (Windows).

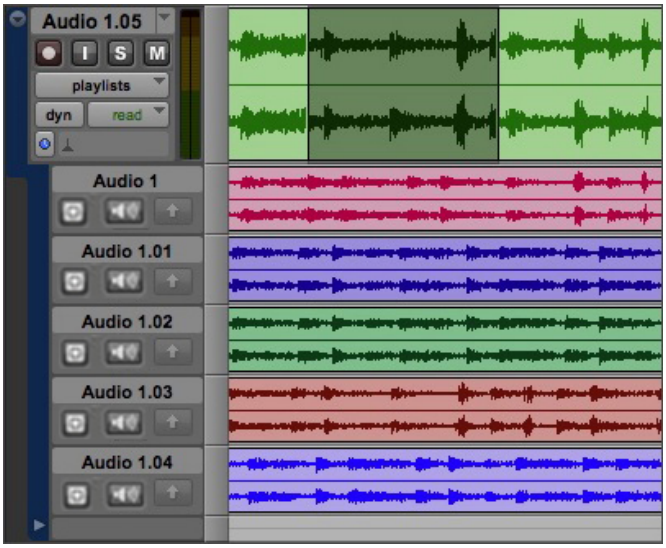


Selection copied to a new target playlist

To copy a selection in an alternate playlist to a duplicate of the target playlist:

1. In Playlists view, make a selection in an alternate playlist.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Copy Selection To > Duplicate Playlist`**.

- Right-click the Edit selection and choose **Copy To > Duplicate Playlist**.



Selection copied to a duplicate of the target playlist

To copy the current edit selection to an existing playlist:

1. Make an Edit selection.
2. Right-click the Edit selection and choose **Copy To > <playlist>**.

Cutting and Pasting Edit Selections to Other Playlists

Once you have found a selection in any playlist that you want to use in another playlist, you can move (cut and paste) the selection to any other playlist.

Pro Tools also lets you move entire playlists from one track to another while in Playlist view.

In addition to manually cutting and then pasting to another playlist, Pro Tools provides several commands for moving the selection to other playlists:

Move Selection To Target Playlist

Cuts and pastes the selection to the target playlist. Any material already on the target playlist at the same location is overwritten.

Move Selection to New Playlist

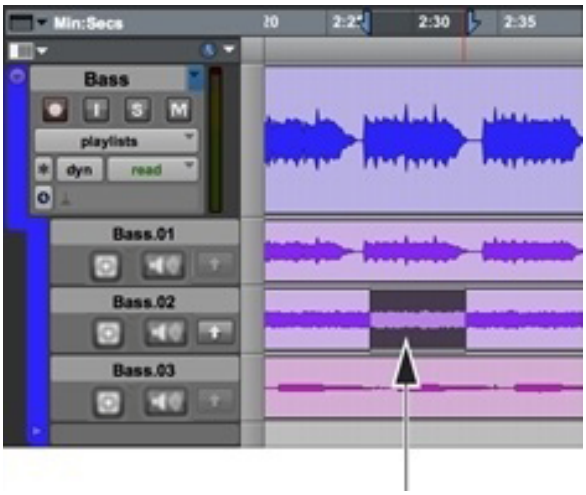
Creates a new, empty target playlist and cuts and pastes the selection to the new target playlist.

Move Selection to Duplicate Playlist

Duplicates the current target playlist, and cuts and pastes the selection to the duplicate of the target playlist. The result being that the previous target playlist moves to a new Playlist lane and the new target playlist is empty.

To move a selection in an alternate playlist to the target playlist:

1. In Playlists view, make a selection in an alternate playlist.



Making a selection in an alternate playlist

2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Move Selection To > Target Playlist`**.
   - Right-click the Edit selection and choose **`Move To > Target Playlist`**.
   - Press Option+Control+M (Mac) or Alt+Start+M (Windows).

   The selection from the alternate playlist is moved to the same time location in the target playlist.

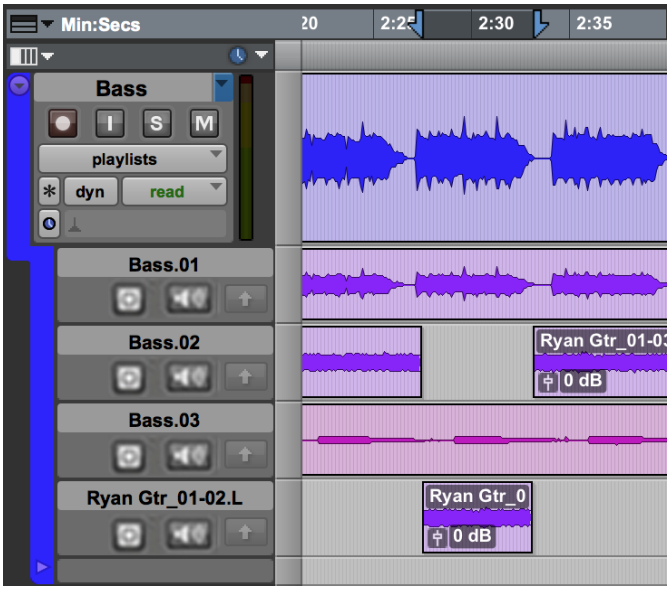


Selection moved to the target playlist

To move a selection in an alternate playlist to a new playlist:

1. In Playlists view, make a selection in any playlist.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Move Selection To > New Playlist`**.
   - Right-click the Edit selection and choose **`Move To > New Playlist`**.

- Press Control+Shift+N (Mac) or Start+Shift+N (Windows).



Selection moved to a new playlist

To move a selection in an alternate playlist to a duplicate of the target playlist:

1. In Playlists view, make a selection in an alternate playlist.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Move Selection To > Duplicate Playlist`**.
   - Right-click the Edit selection and choose **`Move To > Duplicate Playlist`**.



Selection copied to a duplicate of the target playlist

To move the current edit selection to an existing playlist:

1. Make an Edit selection.
2. Right-click the Edit selection and choose **`Move To > <playlist>`**.

Dragging Clips to Playlists Lanes

You can drag and drop clips to any available Playlist lane on any track that has the same channel width. For example, you cannot drag and drop a stereo clip to a mono track Playlist lane. Similarly, you can drag clips from any Playlist lane to any other track of the same channel width.

Pro Tools also lets you drag clips from Instrument track playlists to audio tracks and their playlists. When dropping a clip from any Instrument track playlist the clip is rendered as audio (as output from the Instrument track).

Editing in Playlist Lanes

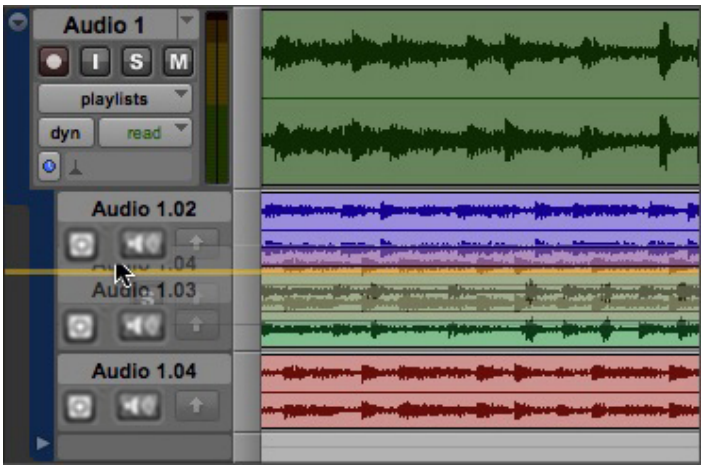
You can edit clips in Playlist lanes in the same way that you do in the main playlist. You can even move clips between different Playlist lanes (including the main playlist), between different tracks, and to different points in time. However, you will not be able to hear your edits on Playlist lanes unless the lane you are editing is soloed (see "Auditioning Alternate Playlists" on page 973).

Reordering Playlist Lanes

You can reorder Playlist lanes the same way you reorder tracks.

To reorder Playlist lanes:

- Click the name of the alternate playlist and drag it to the location you want.



Reordering Playlist lanes

Resizing Playlist Lanes

You can resize Playlist lanes the same way you resize tracks.

To resize the track and all Playlist lanes together, do one of the following:

- Click the line in between lanes and drag up or down. The track and all Playlist lanes resize accordingly.
- Right-click the vertical scale between the playlist area and the Playlist Lane controls and select the lane size you want. The track and all Playlist lanes resize accordingly.

Press Control+Up/Down Arrow key (Mac) or Start+Up/Down Arrow key (Windows) to resize heights for tracks, playlists, and lanes containing the Edit cursor or Edit selection.

To resize a single Playlist lane, do one of the following:

- Control-click the line in between lanes and drag up or down. The upper lane resizes accordingly.



Resizing a Playlist lane

- Control-Right-click the vertical scale between the playlist area and the Playlist Lane controls and select the lane size you want.



Selecting a preset size for a Playlist lane

Renaming Alternate Playlists

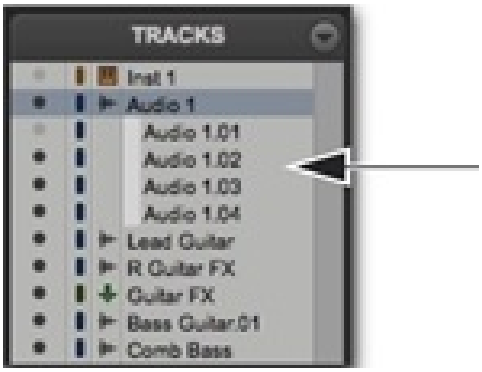
You can rename alternate playlists the same way you rename tracks.

To rename an alternate playlist:

1. Double-click the name of the alternate playlist.
2. In the resulting Name dialog, type the name you want.
3. Click **OK**.

Alternate Playlists in the Track List

When an audio track is set to Playlists view, all of its associated playlists appear listed under the track name in the Track List. The names of associated alternate playlists are indented to distinguish Playlist lanes from tracks. From the Track List you can show and hide alternate playlists. You can also access the Right-click menu for alternate playlists, which lets you apply **Show** or **Hide**, **Scroll Into View**, **Rename**, **Delete**, and **Filter Lanes** commands.



Track List showing Playlist lanes for "Audio 1" track

Filtering Lanes

You can filter Playlist lanes to show or hide them based on different criteria.

To filter Playlist lanes:

1. Right-click the Track Name or the Playlist Name.
2. From the Right-click menu, select one of the following:
   - **Show All Lanes**
   - **Show Only Lanes With > Clips Within The Edit Selection**
   - **Show Only Lanes With > Clips Outside The Edit Selection**
   - **Show Only Lanes With > "Clips Rated >= 1–5"**
   - **Hide All Lanes**
   - **Hide Only Lanes With > Clips Within The Edit Selection**
   - **Hide Only Lanes With > Clips Outside The Edit Selection**
   - **Hide Only Lanes With > "Clips Rated >= 1–5"**

   Playlist lanes are shown and hidden accordingly.

Matching Alternate Clips

Pro Tools lets you exchange clips in the main playlist on tracks with matching alternate clips from other playlists associated with the same track, from other tracks, or from the Clip List. Matching alternate clips are clips that meet certain criteria. For example, clips that have the same *User Time Stamp* are matches.

There are several ways to create matching alternate clips in Pro Tools:

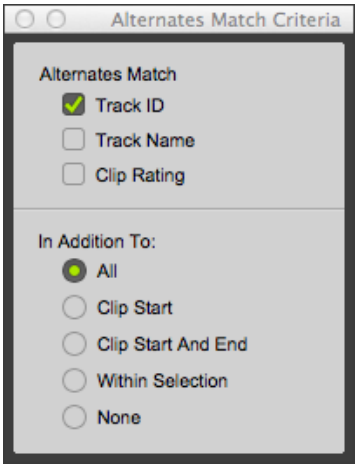
- When punch recording (audio or MIDI), Pro Tools creates matching clips for the original clip (if any) and the new punch recorded clip.
- When loop recording (audio or MIDI), Pro Tools creates multiple matching clips for each recording pass.
- When duplicating playlists (audio or MIDI), there will be matching alternate clips between playlists.
- When importing multichannel audio from a field recorder, there will be matching alternate clips between channels.

Pro Tools also provides several ways to access and audition multiple matching alternate clips:

- Use the Clip Right-click menu to select matching alternate clips according to certain criteria.
- Use the Alternate Takes pop-up menu to select matching alternate clips.
- Use the Expand Alternates to New Tracks command to copy matching alternate clips to new tracks.
- Use the Expand Alternates to New Playlists command to copy matching alternate clips to new alternate playlists on the same track. Then use Playlists view to access the alternate playlists.

Matching Criteria

The Matching Criteria window lets you select the criteria for matching alternate clips. This lets you refine the list of available matching clips in the Alternate Takes pop-up menu and Clip Right-click Matches submenu.



Matching Criteria window

Matching Criteria affects MIDI as well as audio clips.

To configure the Matching Criteria options for matching alternate clips:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the clip with the Selector or the Grabber tool and select **Matches > Match Criteria**.
   - With the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) at the precise beginning of the loop or punch range and select **Match Criteria**.
2. In the Matching Criteria window, select any combination of the following Alternates Match options:
   - **Track ID**
   - **Track Name**
   - **Clip Rating**
3. Select one of the following **In Addition To** options:
   - **All**
   - **Clip Start**
   - **Clip Start and End**
   - **Within Selection**
   - **None**

4. Leave the Matching Criteria window open to change the settings as appropriate while compositing tracks. Close the Matching Criteria window when you are done.

Matching Criteria settings are saved with your Pro Tools session.

Matching Criteria Options

Alternates Match Options

The following Alternates Match options can be selected in any combination:

Track ID

Any clips recorded to the same track are considered matching. Use this option for selecting alternate takes from loop or punch recording.

Track Name

Any clips that share the same root name with the track or playlist are considered matching. For example, the Matches for a track named “Gtr.L” would show the clips “Gtr.L_01” and “Gtr.L_02-01,” but not “Guitar.L_01.”

Clip Rating

Any clips that have the same Rating are considered matching. Enable this option if you have rated clips (see "Rating Clips" on page 942).

In Addition To Match Options

The following In Addition To Match options are mutually exclusive.

All

Any clips that include the time location of the Edit cursor; or any clips that are either partly or fully within the current time range of the Edit selection.

Clip Start

Any clips that have the same start time as the time location of the Edit cursor or Edit selection.

Clip Start and End

Any clips that have the same start and end times as the Edit selection.

Within Selection

Any complete clips that are entirely within the Edit selection.

None

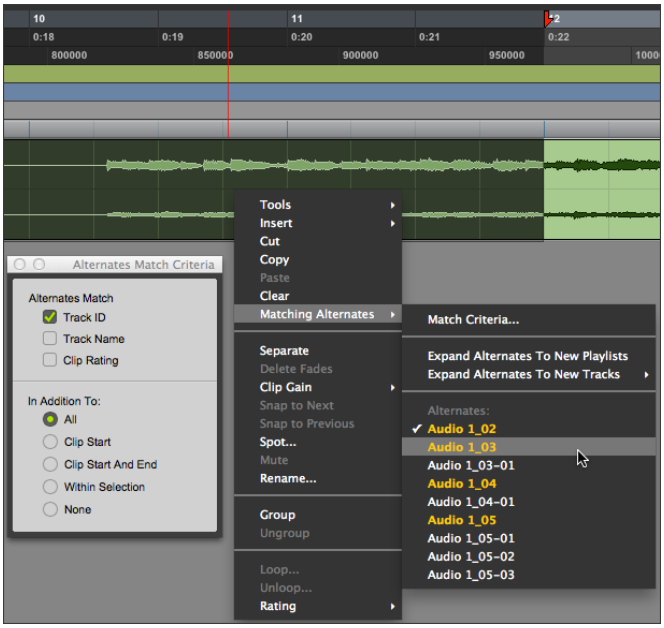
No other criteria in addition to the selected Alternates Match options are used to filter matching alternate clips.

Selecting Alternate Takes on Tracks

Each clip resulting from a punch or loop record pass has an identical start time (the *User Time Stamp*). You can select and audition alternate takes from the Right-click Matches submenu or the Alternate Takes pop-up menu—even during playback.

To select an alternate take:

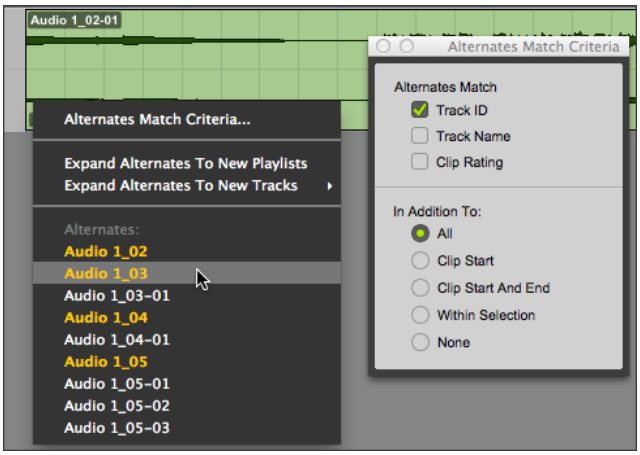
1. Configure the Matching Criteria window if necessary (see "Matching Criteria" on page 983).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the clip with the Selector or the Grabber tool, and select a matching alternate take from the Matches submenu in the pop-up menu.



Right-click Matches submenu

   - If the take currently residing in the track is selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) anywhere on the selected take and select a different take from the Alternate Takes pop-up menu.
   - With the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) at the precise beginning of the loop or punch range and select a different take from the Alternate Takes pop-up menu.

To cycle through matches for the selected clip, press Command+Option+Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Control+Alt+Up/Down Arrows (Windows).



Alternate Takes pop-up menu

The selected matching alternate clip (take) replaces the clip in the main playlist and snaps precisely to the correct location.

One way to ensure that subsequent recording takes have the same *User Time Stamp* (and as such can be available as matching alternate clips) is to store punch and loop record selections as Memory Locations. Then, if you later need to record additional takes, recall the corresponding Memory Location.

To change the User Time Stamp of other clips so that they can be available as alternate matching clips for a specific location, use the **Time Stamp** command in the Clip List menu.

Matches and Multiple Tracks

If you have loop recorded on multiple tracks, and each track contains multiple takes with identical User Time Stamps, you can change all takes simultaneously.

To switch takes for multiple tracks:

1. Configure the Matching Criteria window (see "Matching Criteria" on page 983), so that the following options are enabled:
   - **Track Name**
   - **Selection Range**
2. With the Selector tool, select the take range for each track you want to replace.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the Edit selection and select a different matching alternate take from the Matches submenu.
   - Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Edit selection and select a different take from the Alternates pop-up menu.

   The selected take replaces the previous take and snaps to the correct location on each track.

Automatically Create New Playlists when Loop Recording

When loop recording, Pro Tools creates a single file containing all recording passes where each recording pass is a clip in the file. On the track, only the last recording pass is present as a clip in the main playlist. All other clips (recording passes) are hidden, but can be recalled as matching alternate clips (takes).

When enabled, the new **Automatically Create New Playlists When Loop Recording** option in the Operation Preferences page automatically copies each clip (take) to a new playlist in the track. This facilitates using Playlists view for auditioning and selecting alternate takes.

To automatically create new playlists when loop recording:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Operation** tab.
2. In the Recording section, enable the **Automatically Create New Playlists When Loop Recording** option.
3. Click **OK**.

For more information on loop recording, see "Loop Recording Audio" on page 799.

Expanding Alternate Takes to New Playlists or Tracks

Pro Tools lets you copy alternate takes and channels to new playlists or tracks. This is useful for auditioning, editing, and mixing multiple alternate takes or channels. Alternate takes are created when punch and loop recording. Alternate channels are included with files imported into Pro Tools from field recorders.

Expanding Alternate Takes to New Playlists

Expanding alternate takes to new playlists readily facilitates track compositing. Once you have expanded alternate takes to new playlists on a track, you can audition and edit them in Playlists view to assemble the best takes in the main playlist.

To expand alternate takes to new playlists:

1. Identify the clip on the main playlist with matching alternate clips (takes).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the clip and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Playlists**.
   - If the clip is selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) anywhere on the selected clip and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Playlists**.
   - If the clip is not selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) at the precise beginning of the loop or punch range and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Playlists**.

   All matching alternate clips are copied to new playlists on the track. To view all playlists for the track, select Playlists view. In any track view, you can also select any available alternate playlist as the main playlist from the Playlist selector.

Expanding Alternate Takes to New Tracks

Expanding alternate takes to new tracks readily facilitates auditioning, editing, and mixing alternate takes, each on separate tracks.

To expand alternate takes to new tracks:

1. Identify the clip on the main playlist with matching alternate clips (takes).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the clip and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Tracks**.
   - If the clip is selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) anywhere on the selected clip and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Tracks**.
   - If the clip is not selected, with the Selector tool, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) at the precise beginning of the loop or punch range and choose **Matches > Expand Alternates To New Tracks**.
3. Then choose one of the following from the Expand Alternates To New Tracks sub-menu:
   - By Track Name

     Names all new tracks after the source track name.
   - By Clip Name

     Names each new tracks after the corresponding original clip names that you see in the Matches list.
   - By Track and Clip Name

     Names all new tracks after the source track name, but with the corresponding original clip names in parenthesis.

     All matching alternate clips are copied to new tracks.

Expanding Alternate Channels to New Playlists or Tracks

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) When working with a mono clip that is part of a multichannel recording imported from a field recorder, you can expand that clip (or a selected portion of it) to new playlists that reflect its matching alternate channels while preserving any edits or fades (see "Working with Field Recorders in Pro Tools" on page 1903).

Conditions for Alternate Channel Availability

An alternate channel is available to replace the original channel (represented by the clip or portion of a clip selected on the Timeline) if all of the following are true:

- Both channels are part of a multichannel recording made simultaneously on one or more field recorders.
- Certain metadata matches between the original channel and the alternate channel.
- The metadata embedded during shooting and recording has been preserved prior to import into Pro Tools.

With multichannel recordings from one or more field recorders, both channels must overlap at least once between their start timecode and end timecode positions, and must also meet one of the following conditions:

- Matching Scene and Take
- Matching Shoot Date (applies only if Scene and Take contain any information for both channels)
- Matching Tape name
- Matching Sound Roll name
- Alternate channel Sound Roll name matches current channel Tape name
- Alternate channel Tape name matches current channel Sound Roll name

Expanding Channels to New Playlists

To expand alternate channels to new playlists:

1. In the Timeline, do one of the following:
   - To expand only a portion of the clips on the track, make a selection that includes or overlaps any number of clips on a track, and Right-click (Windows or Mac) or Control-click (Mac) the selection.
   - To expand all of the clips on the track, Right-click (Windows or Mac) or Control-click (Mac) the track name.
2. Choose the Expand to New Playlists pop-up menu, and select one of the following methods by which to expand alternate channels for the selection to new tracks:
   - By Channel Name
   - By Channel Number
   - By Channel Name and Number
   - By Timecode Only

   If alternate channels are available, Pro Tools expands them to new playlists (including the channel represented in the original track) according to the selected option.

Expanding Channels to New Tracks

To expand alternate channels to new tracks:

1. In the Timeline, do one of the following:
   - To expand only a portion of the clips on the track, make a selection that includes or overlaps any number of clips on a track, and Right-click (Windows or Mac) or Control-click (Mac) the selection.
   - To expand all of the clips on the track, Right-click (Windows or Mac) or Control-click (Mac) the track name.
2. Choose the Expand Channels to New Tracks pop-up menu, and select one of the following methods by which to expand alternate channels for the selection to new tracks:
   - By Channel Name
   - By Channel Number
   - By Channel Name and Number
   - By Timecode Only

   If alternate channels are available, Pro Tools expands them to new tracks (including the channel represented in the original track) according to the chosen parameters.

   ⚠ **It is not possible to rename files encoded with XML metadata. The file extension will always be .A1 and .A2 (even for stereo files). Also, it is not possible to rename files with a .L/.R suffix. As a result, Pro Tools does not always recognize these channels as a stereo pair.**

Expanding Channels by Timecode Only

The **`Expand To New Tracks By Timecode Only`** command lets you expand an entire track or only selected clips to new playlists on the same track or to new separate tracks, thus revealing all other clips recorded at the same timecode location, regardless of channel name or number. This is especially useful when expanding edited guide tracks to original source audio that was recorded while referenced to timecode, but where channel names or numbers were not written to the audio files.

Example Workflow: Working with a Guide Track for Live Concert Videos

1. Multitrack audio is recorded in Pro Tools while chasing timecode. A mono or stereo mix is recorded simultaneously as a guide track for the video editor.
2. The picture and audio guide tracks are edited in a video editing application.
3. The edited audio guide tracks are exported from the video editor as an AAF (or OMF) sequence, including handles of at least 2 frames.
4. The AAF (or OMF) sequence is imported into Pro Tools as a new session. The original source audio files and unedited guide track are also imported into the session.
5. The original unedited guide track is relinked to the session (see "Relinking the Original Unedited Guide Track" below).
6. The Pro Tools editor Right-clicks the name of the guide track and selects **`Expand Channels to New Tracks > By Timecode Only`**. The original source tracks expand to new tracks with edits and fades that match the guide track.

Relinking the Original Unedited Guide Track

After importing the AAF (or OMF) sequence and original source audio files into the session, it is recommended that you relink the edited guide track to the original unedited source audio.

To relink the original unedited guide track:

1. In the Workspace browser, locate the session and open the Audio Files folder.
2. Right-click the edited guide track audio file in the browser and choose **Relink Selected**.
3. In the upper pane of the Relink window, navigate to the original unedited guide track audio file that was recorded in Pro Tools.

   If the original unedited file is not available, you can relink to any of the source audio files as long as they have the same start and end times as the guide track.

4. In the Select Files To Relink pane, select the edited guide track file.
5. Drag the original unedited guide track audio file into the Candidates pane. If a dialog appears stating that one or more files are shorter than the media file you are trying to relink, click **Yes** to select it for relinking anyway.
6. Check the box to the left of the file in the Candidates pane so that the Link icon appears.
7. Click **Commit Links** at the top of the Relink window and then close the Relink window.
8. You can now Right-click the name of the guide track and select **Expand To New Tracks > By Timecode Only**. All expanded tracks should be synchronous with the guide track.

Target Playlist

Pro Tools lets you designate any playlist on a track as the *Target* playlist. You can then use key commands to do the following when compositing—or "comping"—multiple takes of a performance:

- Quickly cycle through and audition Edit selections for clips in other playlists, whether in Waveform or Playlist view.
- Copy or move an Edit selection to the Target playlist from Waveform view without having to switch to Playlist view.
- Composite Grouped tracks.

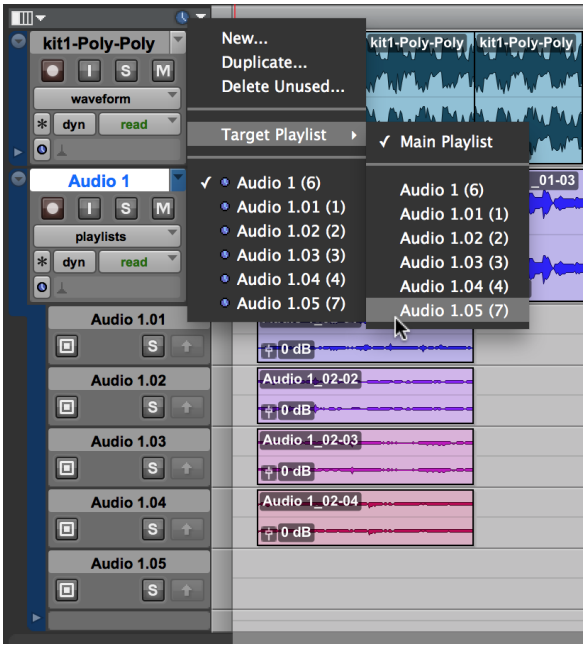
The Main playlist is the Target playlist by default.

Designating the Target Playlist

The designated Target playlist is the destination for all edits whether you are editing in Playlist view or Waveform view. Editing to Target playlists in Waveform view is especially useful when editing grouped tracks.

To designate any playlist as the Target playlist from any track view:

1. Click the Playlist selector.
2. Select **Target Playlist > Main Playlist** or **<playlist name>** for any other available playlist.



Designating the Target Playlist for a stereo audio track

In Playlist view, the Target button for the targeted playlist turns blue. If the Target playlist is displayed as the main playlist, the Playlist selector is blue. If the Target playlist is not displayed as the main playlist, the Playlist selector is orange.

Active Edit Groups are observed and kept in sync on the Timeline. For example, if 10 tracks are grouped and a Target playlist is defined on one of those tracks, the playlists on the other 9 tracks that correspond to that playlist are also designated as the Target playlist for their respective track.

If a Clip Group spans multiple tracks, the Clip Group is broken if the any of the tracks in the Clip Group are not also Edit grouped when switching to Playlists view.

To designate any playlist as the Target playlist from Playlists view:

1. Select Playlists view for the track you want to work with.
2. Click the Target button for the Playlist you want to designate as the target. The button turns blue.

Click the Target button again to make the Main playlist the Target playlist.



Designating an alternate playlist in Playlists view (Playlist selector is orange to indicate that the playlist displayed as the Main playlist is not the target)

To designate the playlist currently displayed as the Main playlist as the Target playlist using key commands:

1. Place the Edit cursor in the playlist you want to target.
2. Press Command+Shift+Right Arrow (Mac) or Control+Shift+Right Arrow (Windows).

Designating alternate playlists as the Target playlist using keyboard shortcuts is not currently supported.

Working with Target Playlists

After you have designated Target playlists for tracks you can work quickly when comping from different playlists using key commands. Key modifiers can also be used to target the same playlist in all tracks of the same type or in all selected tracks of the same type (audio, MIDI, Instrument, or Video).

To show the Target playlist as the Main Playlist:

- Press Shift+Right Arrow.

To toggle between the two most recently viewed Main playlists:

- Press Shift+Left Arrow.

To copy the current Edit selection to the Target playlist, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Edit > Copy To > Target Playlist`**.
- Right-click and choose **`Copy To > Target Playlist`**.
- Press Option+Shift+Up Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Shift+Up Arrow (Windows).
- Press Control+Option+V (Mac) or Start+Alt+V (Windows).

To move the current Edit selection to the Target playlist, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Edit > Move To > Target Playlist`**.
- Right-click and choose **`Move To > Target Playlist`**.
- Press Option+Shift+T (Mac) or Alt+Shift+T (Windows).

This key combination replaces Option+Shift+M (Mac) or Alt+Shift+M (Windows) in executing the Move to Main Playlist command in earlier versions of Pro Tools.

To target the same playlist in all tracks:

1. In Playlists view, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Target button for the playlist you want to target.
2. Hold Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), click on the Playlist Selector menu, then click the Target Playlist sub-menu and click on the playlist you want to target.

To target the same playlist in all selected tracks:

1. In Playlists view, Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the Target button for the playlist you want to target.
2. Hold Option-Shift (Mac) or Alt-Shift (Windows), click on the Playlist Selector menu, then click the Target Playlist sub-menu and click on the playlist you want to target.

To focus the first playlist:

- Press Shift+Home (full-sized keyboard).
- Press fn+Shift+Left arrow (laptop).

To focus the last playlist:

- Press Shift+End (full-sized keyboard).
- Press fn+Shift+Right arrow (laptop).

To move ahead five playlists:

- Press Shift+Page Down (full-sized keyboard).
- Press fn+Shift+Down arrow (laptop).

To move back five playlists:

- Press Shift+Page Up (full-sized keyboard).
- Press fn+Shift+Up arrow (laptop).

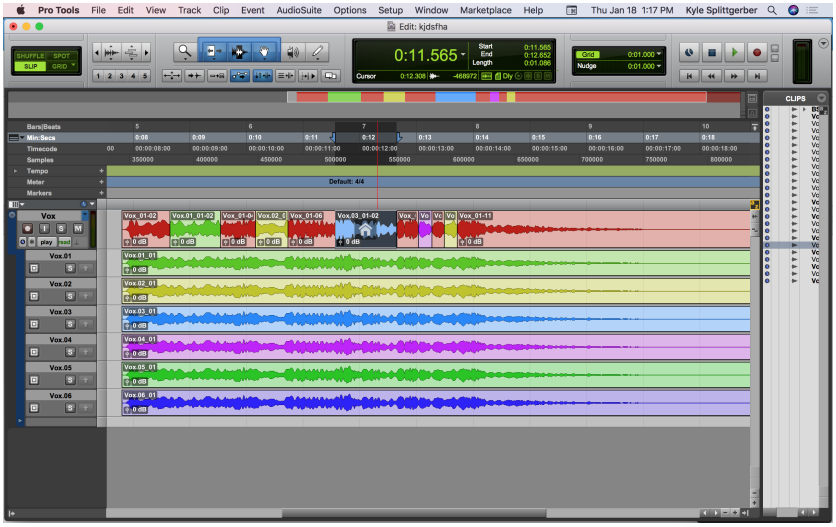
Cycling Audio Within a Selection

To cycle in audio in the Edit selection from the previous playlist:

- Press Command+Shift+Up Arrow (Mac) or Control+Shift+Up Arrow (Windows).

To cycle in audio in the Edit selection from the next playlist:

- Press Command+Shift+Down Arrow (Mac) or Control+Shift+Down Arrow (Windows).



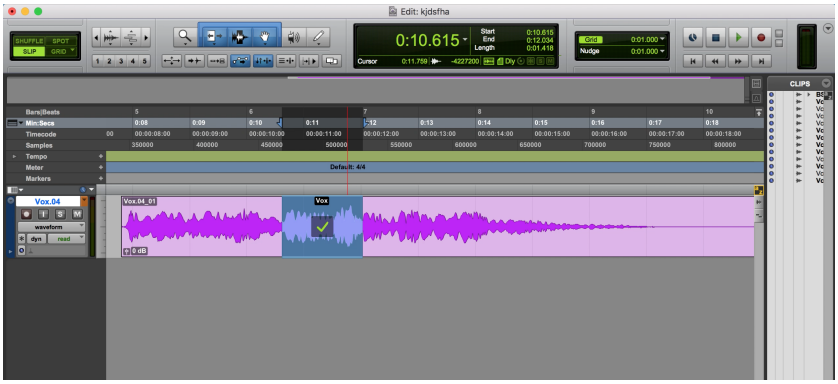
Home icon indicating that the audio selection cycled through all alternate playlists to its original playlist

When cycling through playlists, when you return to the starting playlist a "home" icon appears, no clip edits are made, and any previous clip separation edits are healed.

Visual Indicators when Working in Waveform View

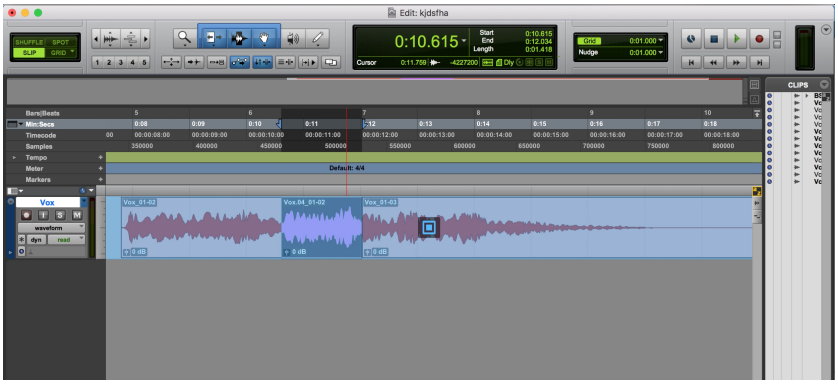
The following indicators provide visual feedback when working with Targeted Playlists in Waveform view.

- Immediately following the execution of either the **`Copy To Target Playlist`** or the **`Move To Target Playlist`** commands, a green check-mark icon, a light blue overlay the size of the selection, and the name of current Target playlist are briefly displayed in the center of the selection.



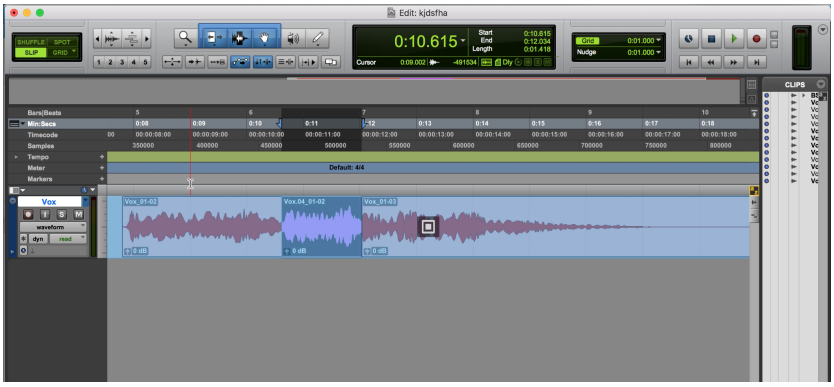
Green checkmark over clip promoted to the Target playlist

- If you designate the playlist in the Main playlist view as the Target playlist (using either the keyboard shortcut or the menu command), a blue target icon and light blue overlay the size of the Main playlist are briefly displayed.\



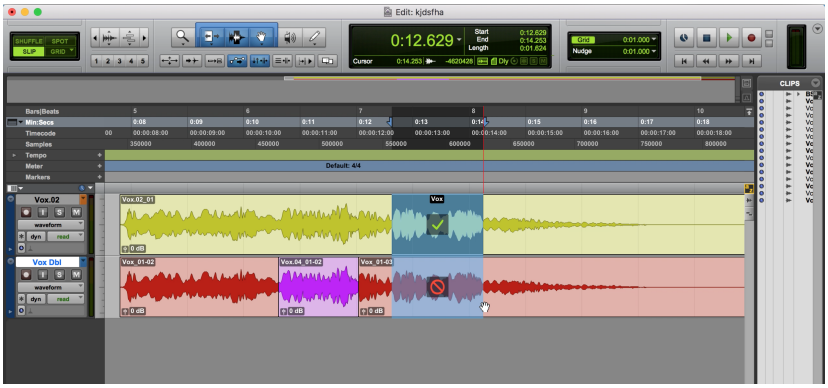
Blue target indicating that the Main playlist is the Target playlist

- If you disable the Main playlist as the Target playlist (using either the keyboard shortcut or the menu command), a gray target icon and a light blue overlay the size of the Main playlist are briefly displayed.



Gray target indicating that the Main playlist is no longer the Target playlist

- If you send a selection to the Target playlist from the Target playlist, a red “not allowed” icon is briefly displayed at the center of the selection.



“Not allowed” icon indicating a disallowed action

Track Compositing Keyboard Shortcuts

Pro Tools provides a powerful combination of keyboard shortcuts to streamline track comping workflows.

Action	Mac	Windows
Solo the Playlist lane containing the Edit cursor	Shift+S	Shift+S

Action	Mac	Windows
Move the Edit cursor up and down through Playlist lanes	Control+P and Control+ Semicolon (;)	Start+P and Start+ Semicolon (;)
Show the previous or next playlist in the main playlist for tracks that contain the Edit cursor	Shift+Up Arrow/Shift+Down Arrow	Shift+Up Arrow/Shift+Down Arrow
To designate the Target playlist for the playlist containing the Edit insertion	Command+Shift+Right Arrow	Control+Shift+Right Arrow
To designate the Target playlist for the playlist containing the Edit insertion for all tracks	Command+Option+Shift+ Right Arrow	Control+Alt+Shift+Right Arrow
To show the Target playlist as the Main Playlist	Shift+Right Arrow	Shift+Right Arrow
To toggle between the current and most recent Main playlists	Shift+Left Arrow	Shift+Left Arrow
Copy the selection to the Target playlist	Option+Shift+Up Arrow or Option+Control+V	Alt+Shift+Up Arrow or Alt+Start+V
Move the selection to the Target playlist	Option+Shift+T	Alt+Shift+T
Copy the selection to a new playlist	Option+Shift+Down Arrow	Alt+Shift+Down Arrow
Move the selection to a new playlist	Option+Shift+N	Alt+Shift+N
To cycle in material in the Edit selection from the previous playlist	Command+Shift+Up Arrow	Control+Shift+Up Arrow
To cycle in material in the Edit selection from the next playlist	Command+Shift+Down Arrow	Control+Shift+Down Arrow
Create a new playlist for the first selected track in the session	Control+\	Start+\
Create a new playlist for each track in the session	Control+Option+\	Start+Alt+\
Create a new playlist for each selected track in the session	Control+Option+Shift+\	Start+Alt+Shift+\
Duplicate the main playlist for the first selected track in the session	Command+Control+\	Control+Start+\
Duplicate the main playlist for each track in the session	Command+Option+Control+\	Control+Alt+Start+\
Duplicate the main playlist for each selected track in the session	Command+Option+ Control+Shift+\	Control+Alt+Start+Shift+\
Focus the first playlist (with Edit selection in the Main playlist)	Shift+Home (full-sized keyboard) fn+Shift+Left Arrow (laptop)	Shift+Home (full-sized keyboard) fn+Shift+Left Arrow (laptop)
Focus the last playlist (with Edit selection in the Main playlist)	Shift+End (full-sized keyboard) fn+Shift+Right Arrow (laptop)	Shift+End (full-sized keyboard) fn+Shift+Right Arrow (laptop)

Action	Mac	Windows
Move ahead five playlists (with Edit selection in the Main playlist)	Shift+Page Down (full-sized keyboard) fn+Shift+Down Arrow (laptop)	Shift+Page Down (full-sized keyboard) fn+Shift+Down Arrow (laptop)
Move back five playlists (with Edit selection in the Main playlist)	Shift+Page Up (full-sized keyboard) fn+Shift+Up Arrow (laptop)	Shift+Page Up (full-sized keyboard) fn+Shift+Up Arrow (laptop)
Target the same playlist in all audio tracks	Shift-click the Target button for the playlist you want to target	Shift-click the Target button for the playlist you want to target
To target the same playlist in all tracks of the same type (audio, MIDI, Instrument, or Video)	Shift-click the playlist you want to target in the Playlist selector menu	Shift-click the playlist you want to target in the Playlist selector menu
Target the same playlist in all selected audio tracks	In Playlists view, Option-Shift-click the Target button for the playlist you want to target	In Playlists view, Alt-Shift-click the Target button for the playlist you want to target
Target the same playlist in all selected tracks of the same type (audio, MIDI, Instrument, or Video)	Option-Shift-click the playlist you want to target in the Playlist selector menu	Alt-Shift-click the playlist you want to target in the Playlist selector menu

38 Beat Detective

Beat Detective is a powerful tool for analyzing, editing, and manipulating audio or MIDI data that has an inherent rhythmic character.

Beat Detective analyzes an audio or MIDI selection, identifies its peak transients or accented notes, and generates *beat triggers* based on the detected peak transients or MIDI notes. From these beat triggers, Beat Detective can:

- Extract tempo and beat information to create Bar|Beat Markers that can be used to define the session's tempo map. See "Generating Bar|Beat Markers with Beat Detective" on page 1008.
- Extract tempo and groove information as groove templates, called DigiGrooves. These templates can be applied to audio or MIDI using Beat Detective or Groove Quantize (see "DigiGroove Templates" on page 1009.
- Separate an audio selection into discrete clips, and then conform (or "quantize") separated clips to the session's tempo map, or to groove templates. See "Separating Clips with Beat Detective " on page 1011 and "Conforming Clips with Beat Detective " on page 1013.

Beat Detective and Source Material

Beat Detective is most effective with audio or MIDI that has clear attack transients or accent patterns (including most instruments used in popular music, such as drums, guitar, or bass). Beat Detective will be less successful with audio material with soft attacks, or legato phrasing (such as strings and vocals).

Uses for Beat Detective

Beat Detective can be useful in many situations, including:

Extracting Tempo from Audio and MIDI

Beat Detective can generate Bar|Beat Markers, from which it can extract the tempo—even if the audio or MIDI contains varying tempos, or material with a swing feel. Additionally, once Bar|Beat Markers have been generated, other audio and MIDI clips and events can be quantized to them.

Creating DigiGrooves

Beat Detective can extract groove templates, called DigiGrooves, from an audio or MIDI selection. DigiGrooves can be used to apply the groove, or feel of the captured passage to other audio selections (using Groove Conform) or MIDI data (using Groove Quantize).

Conforming Audio Clips

Beat Detective can conform ("quantize") audio with a different tempo, or with varying tempos, to the session's current tempo map, or to a groove template.

"Tightening Up" Performances

Beat Detective can be used to improve the timing of some audio material by calculating and extracting its average tempo, and then conforming its rhythmic components—clips separated with Beat Detective—to the session's tempo map.

Loop Matching

Since Beat Detective can extract tempo and beat information from audio and MIDI, and conform audio to an existing tempo map or groove template, this makes it very useful for aligning loops with different tempos or grooves. If a loop is at a different tempo than the current session, Beat Detective lets you quickly

separate each beat in the loop and conform them to the tempo map (as an alternative to time compressing or expanding the loop, which can alter the pitch and tone of the audio).

Remixes

Beat Detective can be used for remixes or creating new rhythms. It can extract tempo from the original drum tracks, or in some instances the original stereo mix. New audio or MIDI tracks can then be conformed to the original material, or the original material can be conformed to new drum tracks, achieving an entirely new feel.

When working with tick-based audio, use Beat Detective's Clip Separation command to quickly separate audio clips into individual "hits" (or slices). You can also create a clip group of the separated clips to facilitate editing and arranging.

Smoothing Post Production Edits (Audio Only)

Beat Detective's Edit Smoothing can be used to automatically clean up Foley tracks that contain many clips requiring trimming and crossfading, effectively removing the gaps of silence between the clips (thus retaining the room tone throughout the track).

Beat Detective Requirements

Beat Detective is available with all Pro Tools systems.

RAM Requirements for Beat Detective

Beat Detective operations can require a large amount of RAM, especially when working with multiple tracks and lengthy selections. To avoid low memory situations with Beat Detective, do the following:

- If you begin to experience slower Beat Detective response, add more RAM to your computer.
- If your computer does not have extra RAM, work with shorter selections, or individual tracks.
- Set the Editing preference for Levels of Undo to a smaller value (see "Levels of Undo and Memory" on page 867). Memory-intensive editing operations, such as Edit Smoothing (audio only) with Beat Detective, can use up a large amount of memory when in the Undo queue.

The Beat Detective Window

Beat Detective is managed from the Beat Detective window.



To open the Beat Detective window, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Event > Beat Detective`**.
- Press Command+8 (Mac) or Control+8 (Windows) on the numeric keypad.

Beat Detective is a floating window that can be left open while working. This lets you adjust the controls in real time during playback, while viewing the beat triggers that appear in your selection in the Edit window.

Beat Detective Modes

The Beat Detective window is divided into three sections: Operation, Selection, and Detection. Depending on the Operation mode, the controls in the Action section change. The Selection options for Beat Detective are available in each of the Operation modes.

The Beat Detective modes include the following:

Operation

Lets you choose to analyze either MIDI or audio material.

Bar|Beat Marker Generation

Generates Bar|Beat Markers corresponding to transients detected in the audio selection or according to accent patterns with MIDI notes.

Groove Template Extraction

Extracts the rhythmic and dynamic information from audio or MIDI, and saves this information to the Groove Clipboard, or as a DigiGroove template.

Clip Separation (Audio Only)

Separates and creates new clips based on transients detected in the audio selection.

Clip Conform (Audio Only)

Conforms all separated clips within the selection to the current tempo map. Beat Detective can conform audio clips to groove templates (such as DigiGroove templates) in addition to standard quantization.

Edit Smoothing (Audio Only)

Fills the gaps between conformed clips by automatically trimming them, and inserts crossfades.

Defining a Beat Detective Selection

Whether you will be generating Bar|Beat Markers, extracting a DigiGroove template, or separating clips to be conformed, you must always define the audio or MIDI selection to be analyzed. The Beat Detective window provides tools to define and capture the selection range, time signature, and swing (sub-division) content for the selected audio.

To ensure the best possible results with Beat Detective, make sure the selected passage starts exactly on the attack of the first beat.

For Beat Detective to generate beat triggers that are metrically accurate, the length and meter of the selection must be correctly defined. In addition, the selection should not contain any meter or tempo changes.

Use Loop playback to check the accuracy of your selection.

To define a selection for Beat Detective:

1. In the Edit window, select a range of audio or MIDI material in a single track or in multiple tracks.

   To keep the Edit selection intact while playing or looping from any location, deselect Options › Link Timeline and Edit Selection.

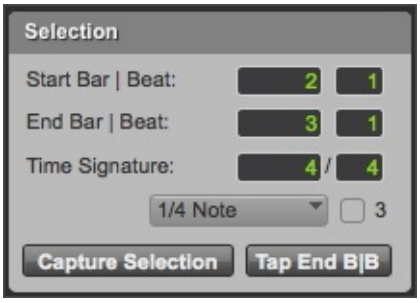


Making an audio selection for Beat Detective

Make sure the selection's start and end points fall cleanly on the beat. To zero in on an audio clip's start and end points, zoom to the sample level and use the Tab to Transients option (see "Tabbing to Transients" on page 915).

To avoid losing an existing selection, save and recall an Edit selection by saving it as a Memory Location. See "Memory Locations" on page 1194.

2. Choose **Event > Beat Detective**.
3. You must define or capture the selection every time you make a new selection or change the tempo map. To define the selection range, do one of the following:
   - If the tempo and meter of the audio selection do not match the session's default tempo and meter, enter the Time Signature, and Start Bar|Beat and End Bar|Beat locations. For a four-bar selection that starts on beat 1, enter 1|1 and 5|1.
   - If the tempo and meter of the audio selection do not match the session's default tempo and meter, and you are unsure of the length of the material, enter the **Time Signature** and the **Start Bar|Beat** location; then start playback, and click the **Tap End B|B** button repeatedly to automatically calculate the **End Bar|Beat**. When using **Tap End B|B** with long selections, continue to tap until the **End Bar|Beat** stabilizes. Once stabilized, you may need to manually adjust the number to the nearest bar boundary.
   - If the selection's tempo and meter match the session tempo and meter (see "Calculating Tempo with Beat Detective " on the next page), and it aligns correctly with the session's bars and beats, click the **Capture Selection** button. The correct **Time Signature**, and **Start Bar|Beat** and **End Bar|Beat** values will be filled in automatically.



As long as the audio material is correctly aligned with the session's tempo map, use Capture Selection each time you make a new selection or make any changes to the tempo map (such as changing tempo or meter).

The Selection definition is not retained when a session is closed and re-opened.

4. To improve Beat Detective's accuracy in analyzing swung notes, select the **Contains** option that indicates the smallest sub-division of the beat contained in the selection. The **Contains** option includes quarter-notes, eighth-notes, sixteenth-notes (the default setting), thirty-second-notes, and a triplet modifier. The selected **Contains** option determines the groove template grid locations for

DigiGroove templates.

Beat Detective Analysis

Beat Detective provides several analysis algorithms for beat detection appropriate to different types of audio material.

High Emphasis

Works well with high frequency, inharmonic material, such as cymbals and hi-hats, while avoiding low frequency material.

Low Emphasis

Works well with low frequency material, such as bass guitar and kick drum, as well as with most harmonic material, such as piano or rhythm guitar.

Enhanced Resolution

Works well with the broadest range of material, such as full mixes and loops.

Beat Detection Across Multiple Tracks

When analyzing a selection with multiple tracks, Beat Detective analyzes each independently. Transients that are detected in any track appear as Beat Triggers across all selected tracks regardless of whether or not the detected transient resides in any other track. However, for closely aligned events on multiple tracks, Beat Detective only identifies the first detected transient of a beat event.

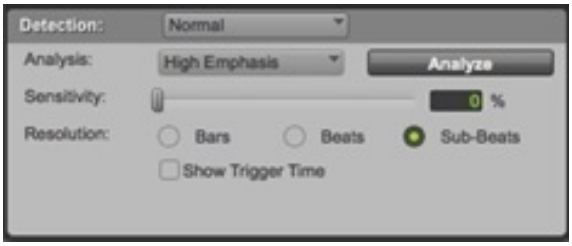
For example, if you have four drum tracks—kick, snare, and a pair of overheads—transients in the overhead mics tracks occur a little later than the closely miked snare and kick tracks because it takes more time for the sound to travel from the source to the microphones. If you make a selection across all four tracks and analyze them using Beat Detective, only the transients in the kick and snare tracks will be identified as beat triggers because the transients on overheads will be recognized as being part of the same beat events (only a little bit late). For information on individually analyzing multiple tracks, see "Using Collection Mode" on page 1019.

Calculating Tempo with Beat Detective

If you know the meter, and start and end points of the audio selection, use Beat Detective to calculate its tempo.

To calculate a selection's tempo with Beat Detective:

1. Make an Edit selection in the Edit window or a MIDI Editor window (MIDI only) and define the selection in the Beat Detective window as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000.
2. Select **Bar|Beat Marker Generation**.
3. In the Detection section (Normal mode), click **Analyze**.
4. Set **Sensitivity** set to 0%.



Beat Detective, Detection mode

5. Click **Generate**.

   Bar|Beat Markers are automatically generated at the beginning and end of the selection, indicating the material's tempo and meter.



Beat Detective generated Bar|Beat Markers identifying tempo and meter

Generating Beat Triggers

Once you have accurately defined the selection range, Beat Detective can generate beat triggers based on detected MIDI notes or audio peak transients. The range and type of transients found can be adjusted with the Detection settings, allowing you to zero in on the bars, beats, and sub-beats in the material, while avoiding the non-rhythmic content.

To generate beat triggers from an audio selection:

1. In the Edit window, make an audio selection.
2. Select **Audio** from the **Operation** pop-up menu.
3. In the Beat Detective window, select one of the following modes:
   - Bar|Beat Marker Generation
   - Groove Template Extraction
   - Clip Separation (audio only)
4. Define or capture the selection as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000.
5. From the **Analysis** pop-up menu, choose a detection algorithm.
6. Click **Analyze**.
7. Depending on the rhythmic content of the selection, set the **Resolution** to **Bars**, **Beats**, or **Sub-Beats**.
8. Adjust the **Sensitivity** until beat triggers appear on the beats and sub-beats in the selection.

   Bar triggers are indicated with thick lines, beat triggers with medium lines, and sub-beat triggers with thin lines.



Beat triggers

9. You can zoom to the sample level and click the **Scroll Next** button to scroll to the next trigger within the selection. To scroll to the previous trigger, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the **Scroll Next** button (see "Navigating Consecutive Beat Triggers" on page 1008). This is useful to confirm that the beat triggers are appearing in the appropriate locations. If *false triggers* appear between the beats or sub-beats (representing non-rhythmic material), delete them (see "Deleting

Beat Triggers" on page 1006), or reduce the **Sensitivity** value.

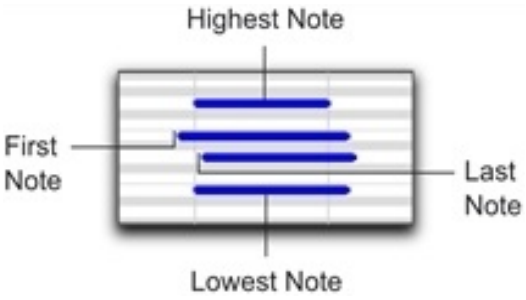
10. To display the metric locations for the triggers, select the **Show Trigger Time** option.
11. If you cannot get the beat triggers to appear at the right locations, repeat steps "From the Analysis pop-up menu, choose a detection algorithm." on the previous page–"To display the metric locations for the triggers, select the Show Trigger Time option." above, trying one of the other Analysis algorithms (High or Low Emphasis).

To generate beat triggers from a MIDI selection:

1. In the Edit window, set the MIDI track you want to use to Notes view.
2. In the Edit window, or in a MIDI Editor window, make a selection across a range of MIDI notes. Make certain that the selection start and end points are at musically relevant locations, such as barlines.
3. Choose **Event > Beat Detective**.
4. Select **MIDI** from the **Operation** pop-up menu.
5. In the Beat Detective window, select one of the following modes:
   - Bar|Beat Marker Generation
   - Groove Template Extraction
6. Define the selection range. If the tempo and meter of the audio selection do not match the session's default tempo and meter, enter the **Time Signature**, and **Start Bar|Beat** and **End Bar|Beat** locations. For example, for a four-bar selection that starts on beat 1, enter 1|1 and 5|1.
7. If your MIDI track contains chords, choose one of the following MIDI chord recognition algorithms from the **Analysis** pop-up menu:
   - Last Note
   - First Note
   - Loudest Note
   - Average Location
   - Highest Note
   - Lowest Note
8. Click **Analyze**.

MIDI Chord Recognition

Since MIDI notes in a chord may be played at slightly different moments, Beat Detective interprets notes that are close together (closer than half the time value that is set in the Selection Contains field) as a chord.



MIDI chord analysis

Beat Detective uses the criteria you set in the **Analysis** pop-up menu to interpret the location of the beat in relation to the chord.

Last Note

Sets the beat trigger to the start of the last note played in the chord.

First Note

Sets the beat trigger to the start of the first note played in the chord.

Loudest Note

Sets the beat trigger to the start of the note in the chord played with the highest velocity.

Average Location

Sets the beat trigger to a point that represents the average between the start of the first note played in the chord, and the last note played in the chord.

Highest Note

Sets the beat trigger to the start of the highest note played in the chord.

Lowest Note

Sets the beat trigger to the start of the lowest note played in the chord.

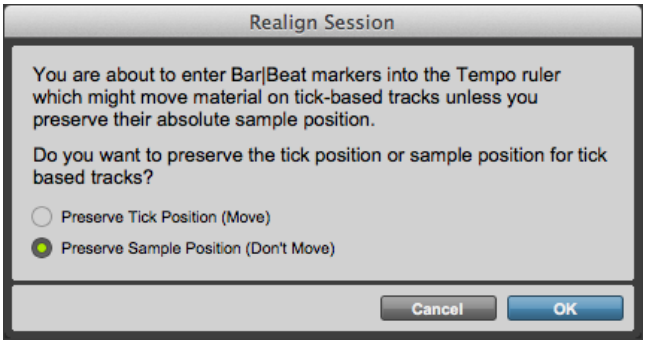
Realign Session

Beat Detective's *Realign Session* function lets you generate Bar|Beat markers without tick-based material shifting. This is useful if you want to extrapolate Bar|Beat markers from tick-based material to align the tempo map and Bar|Beat grid to the tick-based material.

You can also switch tick-based material, such as a MIDI performance, to be sample-based and then manually insert Bar|Beat markers.

Generating Bar|Beat markers in sessions with tick-based material, such as MIDI tracks and tick-based audio tracks, can cause the tick-based material to shift in absolute time. This can be useful if you want to align the tick-based material to Bar|Beat markers generated from sample-based material.

When you generate Bar|Beat Markers in a session that contains tick-based audio or MIDI, Beat Detective gives you the option to preserve the position of the session's tick-based material, or to allow the material to shift.



Realign Session dialog

To generate Bar|Beat Markers with Beat Detective in a session with tick-based tracks:

1. In the Edit window, make an audio or MIDI selection.
2. In the Beat Detective window, select **`Bar|Beat Marker Generation`**.
3. Define or capture the selection as described in"Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000.

4. Set the **Resolution** to **Bars** or **Beats**.
5. Click **Generate**.
6. Do one of the following:
   - In the Realign Session dialog, choose **Preserve Tick Position** if you want to let the tick-based material shift in absolute time.
   - Choose **Preserve Sample Position** if you want to have the tick-based material maintain its absolute position. This option can be useful when adding a meter and tempo map to a freely played performance.
7. Click **OK**.

Tips for Getting Useful Beat Triggers

Use the following tips to verify beat triggers:

- To focus on a particular area in the selection, unlink the Timeline and Edit Selections and set the playback range by clicking or dragging in any Timebase ruler.
- Check the thickness of the beat triggers to see if they align properly with the audio material. Thick triggers fall on barlines, medium triggers fall on beats, and thin triggers fall on sub-beats.
- Select the option for **Show Trigger Time** and see if the (assumed) metric locations of the triggers align with the material. A false trigger should be moved or deleted because it can cause subsequent triggers to appear in the wrong locations (see "Editing Beat Triggers" below).
- Consider whether lengthy selections should first be broken down into smaller selections, which could be more easily managed. For example, working in 8- or 4-bar sections might yield better results more quickly.
- Beat triggers are preserved when switching between audio and MIDI modes. This allows using MIDI triggers for editing audio, or collecting triggers from combinations of MIDI and audio tracks.
- For selections across multiple tracks, consider whether it may be easier to work with them individually, or in Collection mode. See "Detection (Normal) and Collection Mode " on page 1018.

Editing Beat Triggers

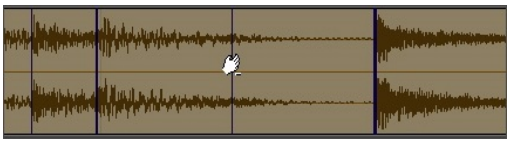
Even though Beat Detective offers a great deal of flexibility in how transients are detected, there may be times when beat triggers must be deleted, moved, or manually inserted. Additionally, triggers can be promoted so they are retained at lower sensitivity settings.

Deleting Beat Triggers

False triggers, which do not represent an actual beat or sub-beat in the source material, may appear when raising the **Sensitivity** to detect quiet material. In these instances you can locate and manually delete any false triggers.

To delete a beat trigger:

1. With the Beat Detective window open, select any Grabber tool in the Edit window.
2. Locate the false trigger you want to delete. Transients for false triggers usually have smaller peaks than the other trigger points, and typically fall between the sub-beats.



Deleting a beat trigger

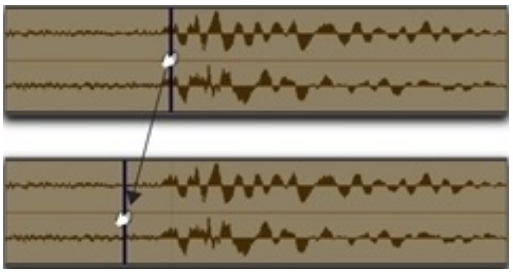
3. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the trigger to delete it.

Moving Beat Triggers

You can adjust the placement of triggers to allow for the attack of their transients, or to compensate for an individual transient that is slightly ahead of or behind the beat.

To move a beat trigger:

1. With the Beat Detective window open, select any Grabber tool in the Edit window.
2. Locate the beat trigger you want to move and drag it left or right.



Moving a beat trigger

Inserting Beat Triggers

If an important beat or sub-beat is not detected, because it is too quiet, you can manually insert a beat trigger.

To insert a beat trigger:

1. With the Beat Detective window open, select any Grabber tool in the Edit window.
2. Click in the selection where you want to insert the new trigger. After inserting a beat trigger, you can drag it left or right to adjust its placement (see "Moving Beat Triggers" above).

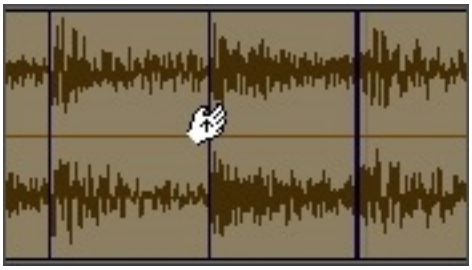
If you click too close to an existing trigger, the existing trigger will be moved to the new location.

Promoting Beat Triggers

To ensure that important beat triggers do not disappear when lowering the **`Sensitivity`**, you can *promote* them. This is useful if a selection has numerous false triggers (too many to bother deleting) at a Sensitivity level where crucial, necessary beat triggers are also displayed. If lowering the **`Sensitivity`** and the needed triggers to disappear, simply promote them first.

To promote a beat trigger:

1. Raise the **`Sensitivity`** until the transient is detected and a beat trigger appears.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the beat trigger to promote it.



Promoting a beat trigger

3. If necessary, repeat steps "Raise the Sensitivity until the transient is detected and a beat trigger appears." on the previous page–"Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the beat trigger to promote it." on the previous page to promote additional beat triggers.
4. Lower the **Sensitivity** to a value where the false triggers disappear.

   Once beat triggers are promoted, they will only disappear if the Sensitivity value is set to 0%. To *demote* all beat triggers in the selection—returning them to their original state—click the Analyze button.

Redefining a Beat Trigger's Metric Location

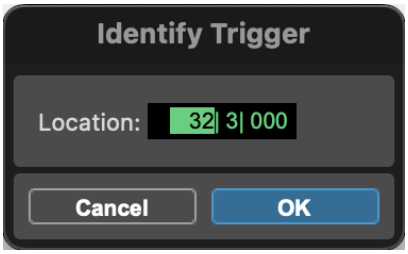
It is vital that beat triggers are accurately placed at the correct metric location. If a detected transient is slightly off the beat, Beat Detective may assign it, as well as other transients in the selection, to the wrong metric location.

For example, if you have a bass track where a note was intended to be a downbeat, but was played too early, Beat Detective may define its location as occurring a little before the downbeat. If you then separate and conform the clip containing this note, it will be moved to the wrong location. Subsequent clips may be moved to the wrong locations as well.

If a beat trigger is not assigned the correct metric location, relocate it using Identify Trigger.

To change the metric location of a beat trigger:

1. Double-click the beat trigger you want to relocate. The Identify Trigger dialog opens.



2. In the Identify Trigger dialog, enter the correct location for the trigger, then click **OK**.

Navigating Consecutive Beat Triggers

Use the **Scroll Next** button to move from the currently selected beat trigger to the next beat trigger. To move to the previous beat trigger, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the **Scroll Next** button. This is particularly useful for editing consecutive beat triggers when zoomed in at the sample level.

Generating Bar|Beat Markers with Beat Detective

Once Beat Detective has accurately detected the peak transients in the audio selection and accurately generated beat triggers, the triggers can be converted to Bar|Beat Markers. Bar|Beat Markers generated by Beat Detective create a tempo map that can be used throughout the session.

Once a tempo map has been generated, other audio clips and MIDI notes can be conformed to the Bar|Beat Markers generated by Beat Detective.

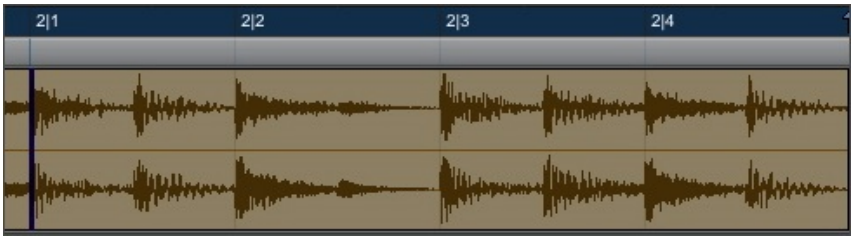
If you want to match the audio material to the session's existing tempo map or a groove template, do not generate Bar|Beat Markers from the material. Instead, use Beat Detective to separate and conform the material (see "Separating Clips with Beat Detective " on page 1011).

If you are simply aligning a sloppy part to the other tracks, you probably do not need to generate Bar|Beat markers.

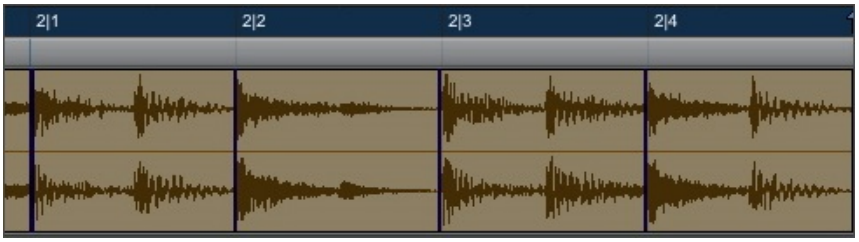
To generate Bar|Beat Markers with Beat Detective:

1. Make an Edit selection.
2. In the Beat Detective window, select Bar|Beat Marker Generation mode.
3. Define or capture the selection as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000.
4. Set the **Resolution** to **Bars** or **Beats**, and configure the **Detection** setting so the selection's peak transients (or MIDI Note Ons) are accurately detected (see "Generating Beat Triggers" on page 1003).
5. Click **Generate**.

   Bar|Beat Markers are generated, based on the beat triggers, and appear in the Tempo ruler.



Bar|Beat Markers generated at Bar resolution



Bar|Beat Markers generated at Beat resolution

Working with Sub-Beats

Tempo is derived from Bar|Beat Markers. Groove, or feel, is derived from Sub-Beats—the deviation of subdivisions of the beat from the strict tempo grid determines the groove or feel.

To extract the groove from a selection, set the Detection Resolution to Sub-Beats. This ensures that the inner rhythms within each bar (if they indeed exist) are represented when generating Bar|Beat Markers. These Bar|Beat Markers can then be used to quantize other audio clips or MIDI tracks, thereby conforming to the Bar|Beat Markers generated by Beat Detective.

When quantizing clips or MIDI notes to Bar|Beat Markers on sub-beats that represent a swing feel, make sure to use a straight quantize value (with the Swing option for Quantize disabled).

DigiGroove Templates

Beat Detective allows the fine timing nuances of a rhythmic performance to be extracted and saved as a groove template, called a DigiGroove template. DigiGrooves can be saved locally to the Groove Clipboard, or saved to disk as DigiGrooves.

Groove templates can be used to transfer the feel of a particular performance to:

- Selected audio clips using Groove Conform (see "Groove Conform" on page 1015).
- Selected MIDI data using Groove Quantize (see "Groove Quantize" on page 1410).

Groove templates are “quantization maps” derived from real musical performances. The rhythmic character of each performance is analyzed and stored as a groove template. Beat Detective analyzes an audio selection for transient peaks according to a defined threshold and maps the rhythmic relationships to a 960 parts per quarter note (ppq) template.

When creating DigiGroove templates, Beat Detective also analyzes the dynamics of a performance. MIDI velocity data is saved from MIDI tracks, and accents and peak levels in audio data are incorporated into the groove template as velocity data, which can be applied to change the dynamics of MIDI tracks.

Beat Detective translates the amplitude of signals in audio tracks to MIDI velocity according to a linear scale. For example:

- A 0 dBFS signal equals a MIDI velocity of 127.
- A –6 dBFS signal equals a MIDI velocity of 64.
- A –12 dBFS signal equals a MIDI velocity of 32.
- A –48 dBFS signal equals a MIDI velocity of 1.

Capturing this information is very important to preserving the feel of a performance, and can add life to MIDI tracks that lack dynamics.

Beat Detective only captures duration data from MIDI tracks, not from audio tracks.

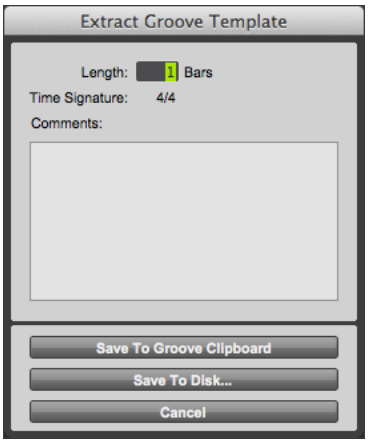
Extracting Groove Templates

To extract a Groove Template:

1. In the Edit window, make an Edit selection (including audio or MIDI). The selection should consist of one or more complete bars, starting and ending on downbeats.

   When extracting Groove Templates, the captured selection must not include Bar|Beat Markers. Otherwise, the accuracy of the Groove Template will be compromised.

2. In the Beat Detective window, select **`Groove Template Extraction`**.
3. Define or capture the selection as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000.
4. Configure the Detection options so the selection’s peak transients (or MIDI Note Ons) are accurately detected (see "Generating Beat Triggers" on page 1003).
5. Click **`Extract`**.
6. In the Extract Groove Template dialog, enter comments about the groove. You can enter a maximum of 255 characters to describe the groove. Comments can be viewed using the Show Info button in the Beat Detective window.



7. Do one of the following:
   - To save the extracted template for use in the current session, without writing the template file to disk, click **Save To Groove Clipboard**. (This template will be lost when you close the current session.)
   - To save the extracted template to disk in order to use it in other sessions or share it with other Pro Tools users, click **Save To Disk**. Enter a name for the template and click **Save**. (Do not change the location of DigiGroove template files and folders or they will not be available in your sessions.)
   - Click **Cancel** to cancel without saving the template.

Use folders and subdirectories to organize DigiGroove templates. However, be sure they are always located in Applications/Avid/Pro Tools/Grooves (Mac) or C:\Program Files\Avid\Pro Tools\Grooves (Windows). Groove template files located elsewhere will not be available in either Groove Quantize or Beat Detective.

Swing Content for Generating Groove Templates

When defining swing content of the selection, select the **Contains** eighth-note option if the audio selection has a heavily swung eighth-note groove. If the audio selection has relatively straight eighth-notes, use the **Contains** sixteenth-note option. This lets the resultant DigiGroove template be applied more easily elsewhere. Although a groove might be based upon non-swung eighth-note material, you might want to apply the template to material that contains sixteenth-notes. If a template only has eighth-note resolution, but the material being conformed contains sixteenth-notes, adjacent sixteenth-notes will be mapped to the same eighth-note location.

Groove Extrapolation

Beat Detective's ability to extract tempo data from a wide range of material is enhanced by its powerful "groove extrapolation" logic. Groove extrapolation automatically generates beat triggers for inclusion in groove templates even if a peak transient is not detected. For example, a drum loop might not have a hit on beat 3, consequently no peak transient is detected and no beat trigger is generated. Beat Detective will extrapolate from other beat triggers in the selection and create a trigger for beat 3 in the groove template.

In addition, extrapolated triggers preserve the feel of triggers generated from detected peak transients. For example, if a bar of kick drum detected three beat triggers, all of which were 20 ticks ahead of the beat, any extrapolated beat triggers will also be mapped 20 ticks ahead of the beat.

Separating Clips with Beat Detective

(Audio Only)

Once beat triggers appear in your selection, they can be used to define start and end points for new clips that can be separated automatically. The new clips can then be conformed to the session's existing tempo map, or to a groove template.

If you want to clean up the timing for the selection, without affecting the tempo, make sure to first calculate the tempo by generating Bar|Beat Markers (see "Calculating Tempo with Beat Detective " on page 1002).

To separate clips with Beat Detective:

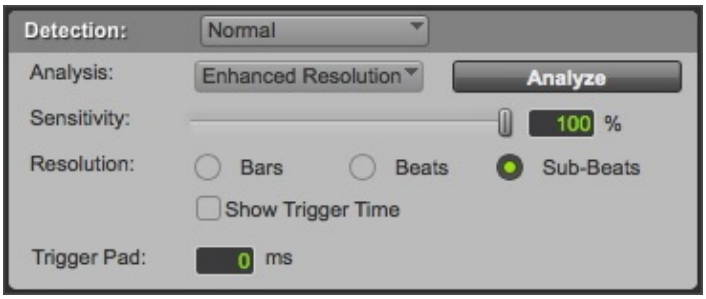
1. In the Edit window, make an audio selection.
2. In the Beat Detective window, select **Clip Separation**.
3. Define or capture the selection as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000.

4. Configure the Detection options so the selection's peak transients are accurately detected (see "Generating Beat Triggers" on page 1003).
5. Click **Separate**.

   Clips are separated based on the detected beat triggers.

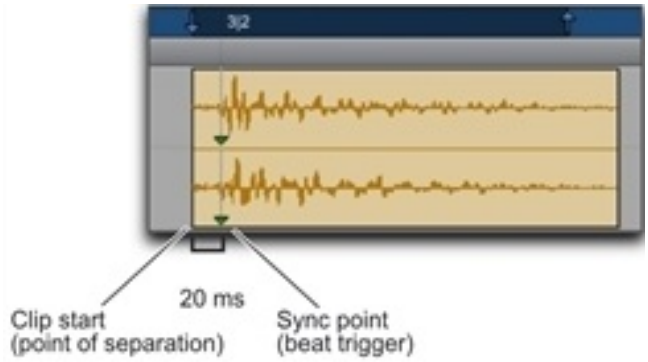
Trigger Pad

When separating clips, the Beat Detective window displays an option called Trigger Pad.



Detection settings, Clip Separation mode

Type a value (0–50 ms) in this field to pad clip start points—where the point of separation is located in relation to the beat trigger (transient). This creates a space between the clip start point and the clip sync point, thereby ensuring that the attack portion of the material remains intact.



Separated clip with 20 ms Trigger Pad

When conforming separated clips, the clip sync point determines where the clip is placed (see "Sync Points" on page 1232).

Separating Multiple Tracks

You can use beat triggers from a single track, or subset of tracks, to separate a group of tracks.

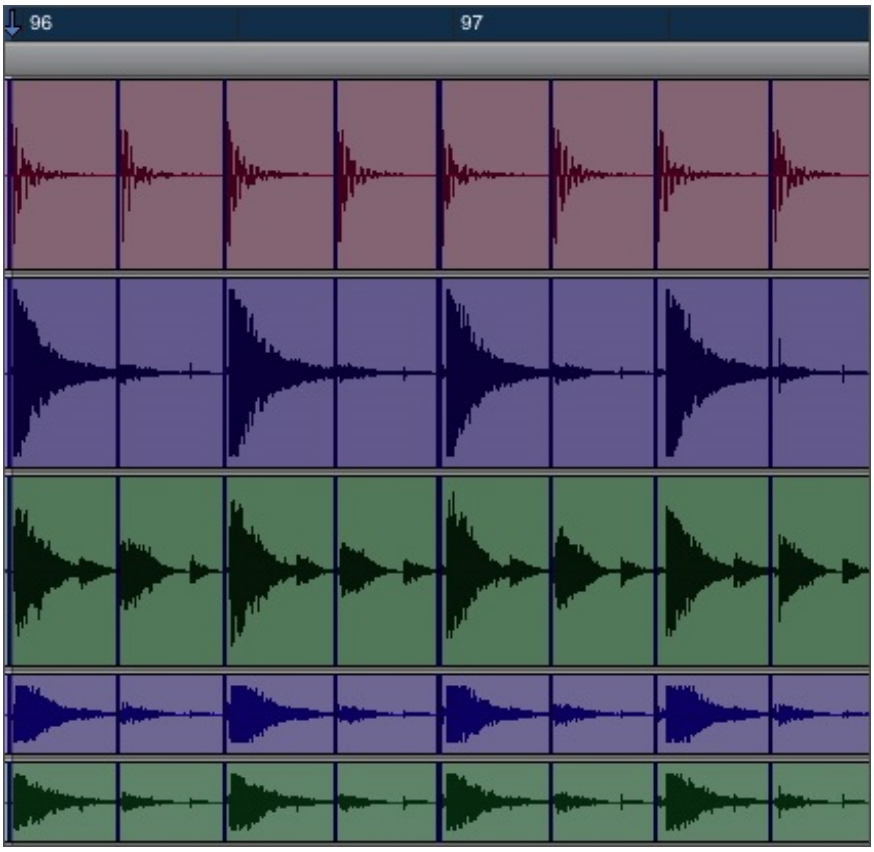
In the following example, the defined selection is a drum loop consisting of two bars of 5/4. The kick, snare, hi-hat, and overhead microphones are recorded to separate tracks.

Analyzing the loop's kick drum track, with the detection **Resolution** set to **Beats**, Beat Detective places beat triggers at the transients on beats 1 and 4.



Kick drum track with beat triggers

Extending the selection to the snare, hi-hat, and overhead microphones tracks, and then performing the separation, results in separated clips in each of the drum tracks at the same location, based on the beat triggers from the kick drum track.



Kick drum, snare, hi-hat, and overhead microphones tracks with beat triggers

The separated clips can then be conformed as a group.

You can also use Collection mode when working with multiple tracks. Collection mode lets you analyze and detect triggers on tracks individually, and if you choose, add only the unique triggers from the current track to the overall collection. For more information, see "Detection (Normal) and Collection Mode " on page 1018.

Conforming Clips with Beat Detective

(Audio Only)

After clips have been separated with Beat Detective, the clips can then be conformed using one of two modes:

Standard Conform

Uses the session's current tempo map (Grid)

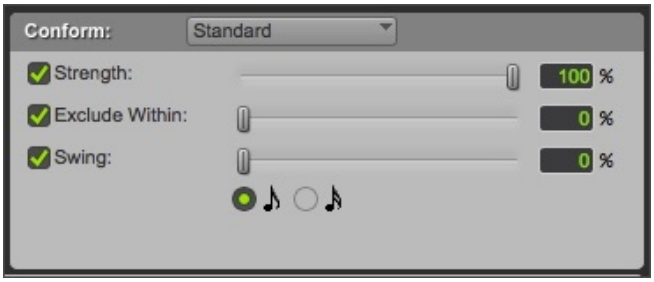
Groove Conform

Uses groove templates.

Beat Detective will conform any selected clip, whether or not it was separated with Beat Detective. However, in order to successfully conform clips with Beat Detective, the clip start points must correspond to the start of the material that will align with the session's bars and beats. This should generally not be a problem if the clips were separated with Beat Detective (rather than manually separated or trimmed).

Standard Conform

This is similar to using the **Clip > Quantize to Grid** command, but with one important difference: With a single operation, Beat Detective can adjust the position of all clips, whether they have a straight or swing feel.



Beat Detective, Standard Conform options

To conform clips using Standard Conform:

1. In the Beat Detective window, select **Clip Conform**.
2. Make sure **Standard** is selected.
3. In the Edit window, if not already selected, select the separated clips you want to conform. Make sure the selection's start and end points fall cleanly on the beat.
4. In the Beat Detective window, define or recapture the selection as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000.
5. To affect how strongly the clips are conformed to the Grid (tempo map), select the **Strength** option and specify a percentage value with either the slider or by typing in a value:
   - Lower percentage values preserve the original feel of the clips.
   - Higher percentage values align the clips more tightly to the tempo map, with 100% aligning precisely to the tempo map.

   To "tighten up" the original feel while retaining it, set the Strength option to 85–88%.
6. To affect which clips are conformed, select the **Exclude Within** option and specify a percentage value with the slider or by typing in a value:
   - Lower percentage values ensure that clips further away from the Grid are conformed, while those closer to the Grid are not.
   - Higher percentage values ensure that clips closer to the Grid, as well as those further away, are conformed.

   To "tighten up" the original feel while retaining it, set the Exclude Within option to 10–15%.

7. To achieve a swing feel for the conformed clips, select the **Swing** option and whether the swing is based on eighth-notes or sixteenth-notes, then specify a percentage value with the slider or by typing in a value:
   - Smaller percentage values yield less swing, with 0% yielding none.
   - Larger percentage values yield more swing, with 100% yielding a triplet, swing feel.
   - Percentage values between 100–150 move the clips beyond a triplet, swing feel, toward the next sixteenth-note boundary (provided the Swing note value is set to eighth-notes).

   If Beat Detective has successfully captured enough of the sub-beats from a selection before separating, you can successfully conform with the Swing option to change the groove from a "straight" feel to one that is swung. You can also import a groove template containing a swing feel (see "Groove Conform" below).

8. Click **Conform** to automatically conform all clips in the selection.



Clips conformed with Beat Detective

9. Audition the new conformed clips by clicking Play in the Transport.
10. Do one of the following:
    - If necessary, select **Edit > Undo**, and repeat steps "In the Beat Detective window, define or recapture the selection as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000." on the previous page–"Click Conform to automatically conform all clips in the selection." above trying a different set of Conform settings.
    - If necessary, apply Edit Smoothing (see "Edit Smoothing " on the next page).

Groove Conform

Instead of using a grid based on the session's tempo map, Groove Conform uses a grid based on a groove template, or DigiGroove. DigiGrooves can be used to apply the feel of a captured passage to the selected audio clips. For information about creating DigiGroove templates, see "DigiGroove Templates" on page 1009.

To conform clips using Groove Conform:

1. In the Beat Detective window, select **Clip Conform**.
2. Select **Groove**.



Beat Detective, Groove Conform options

3. In the Edit window, if not already selected, select the separated clips you want to conform. Make sure the selection's start and end points fall cleanly on the beat.
4. In the Beat Detective window, define or recapture the selection as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000.

   When using Groove Conform, the captured selection must not include Bar|Beat Markers. Otherwise, the accuracy of the Groove Template will be compromised.
5. From the Groove Template pop-up menu, select the **Groove Clipboard** or a saved groove template (for information on creating groove templates, see "DigiGroove Templates" on page 1009).
6. To see comments about the selected template, click **Show Info**.
7. To affect how strongly the clips are conformed to the groove template, select the **Timing** option and specify a percentage value with either the slider or by typing in a value:
   - Lower percentage values preserve the original feel of the clips.
   - Higher percentage values align the clips more tightly to the groove templates grid, with 100% aligning precisely to the template grid.
   - If the slider is set to 200%, clips move to a location that is twice the difference between the original clip location and the position of the referenced template event.

   For example, if a note was played at Bar 1|1|060 (a 16th note), and the corresponding template event is at 1|1|073, a slider value of 100% results in the note being shifted to 1|1|073; a slider value of 200% shifts the note to 1|1|086.
8. To conform the material before applying the groove template, enable the **Pre-Process Using Standard Conform** option.

   With this option enabled, Beat Detective conforms clips to the current Standard Conform settings before applying the groove template. For material in which the performance was not accurate, enabling **Pre-Process Using Standard Conform** can lead to better results by ensuring that the performance is accurately mapped to the correct bars, beats, and sub-beats before the groove template is applied. Experimentation is the best way to determine when it is appropriate to use this option.

   When conforming an audio passage to a heavily swung groove template, enabling Pre-Process using Standard Conform will often yield better results.
9. Click **Conform** to automatically conform all clips in the selection.
10. Audition the new conformed clips by clicking Play in the Transport.
11. Do one of the following:
    - If necessary, select **Edit > Undo**, and repeat steps "In the Beat Detective window, define or recapture the selection as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000." above–"Click Conform to automatically conform all clips in the selection." above trying a different groove template or Groove Conform settings.
    - If necessary, apply Edit Smoothing (see "Edit Smoothing " below).

Edit Smoothing

(Audio Only)

After clips are conformed, there may be gaps between the clips. These gaps can cause the material to sound unnatural on playback.



Beat Detective, Smoothing options

Beat Detective can automatically fill the gaps between clips, and even add crossfades if you choose. The **Edit Smoothing** option can be used with clips that have been conformed, or with a track that contains many clips that need to be trimmed and crossfaded (such as in a sound effects track). This automated process of smoothing clip edits can save many hours of tedious editing.

To use Edit Smoothing on conformed clips:

1. In the Beat Detective window, select **Edit Smoothing**.
2. Select a Smoothing option:
   - Fill Gaps

     Select this option to trim clip end points so that the gaps between clips are filled.
   - Fill And Crossfade

     Select this option to trim clip end points and automatically add a pre-fade (in ms) directly before each clip start point.
3. In the Edit window, if not already selected, select the range of conformed audio clips you want to smooth. Make sure the selection's start and end points fall cleanly on the beat.
4. Click **Smooth** to smooth the edits for the selected clips.



Clips before and after Edit Smoothing

5. Audition the results by clicking Play in the Transport.
6. If necessary, select **Edit > Undo**, and repeat steps "Select a Smoothing option:" above–"Audition the results by clicking Play in the Transport. " above trying a different **Crossfade Length**.

Edit Smoothing Creates Sync Points

After smoothing edits with Beat Detective, sync points (corresponding to the material's start point) are automatically created for the conformed clips. This allows you to later conform the clips to a different tempo map or groove template, or use different Conform settings.

However, sync points are only created as they are needed: If gaps between clips are created during Clip Conform, Fill Gaps in Edit Smoothing mode will trim clips to fill the gap and a sync point will be created at each clip's original start point. If there is no gap between clips, no sync point will be created by Edit Smoothing.

For more information on clip sync points, see "Sync Points" on page 1232.

Consolidating Clips after Edit Smoothing

The process of separating, conforming, and smoothing with Beat Detective can leave tracks with many clips and many crossfades. If you are working with multiple tracks, the density of these edits may lead to system performance problems.

If performance is not an issue, use the Clip Group command for easier editing and manipulation of clips. This can be useful for arranging beats that were sliced with Beat Detective, especially if you plan on changing tempos with tick-based audio tracks. For more information on clip groups, see "Clip Groups" on page 1251.

Once you are satisfied with the results from Beat Detective, it is recommended that you flatten the tracks with the **Consolidate** command. For all clips selected, **Consolidate** creates a single, contiguous audio file to reduce the session's edit density. "Consolidating Clips" on page 940

Before consolidating a large selection across multiple tracks, make sure there is enough RAM available. "RAM Requirements for Beat Detective" on page 999

Detection (Normal) and Collection Mode

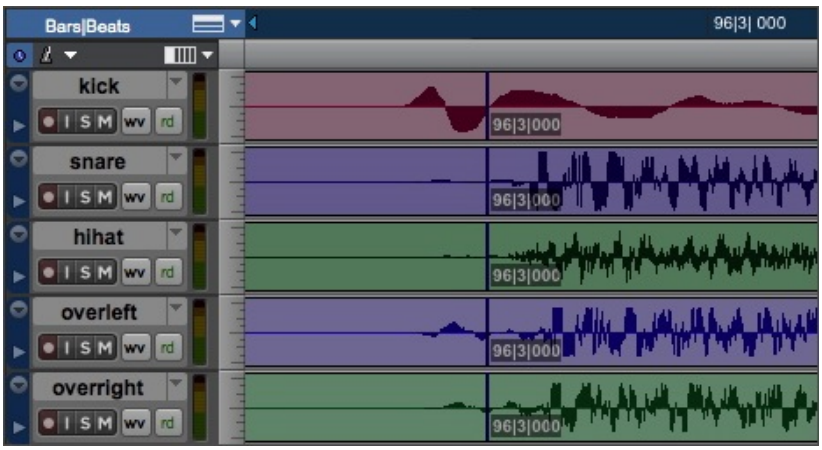
In some instances, it may be difficult for Beat Detective to successfully analyze multiple tracks with the same Detection settings. With Beat Detective's Collection mode, you can collect a set of beat triggers from different tracks, each with different Detection settings, and use the collection of triggers to generate Bar|Beat Markers or DigiGroove templates, or separate new clips. Collection mode is the only way to analyze and create beat triggers on one track, and apply them to another track.

This method of selectively adding beat triggers from separate analysis passes on different tracks, until you get only the triggers you want, is potentially much more effective than manually deleting, inserting, or adjusting incorrect or false triggers.

Drum Tracks and Collection Mode

Suppose you have drum tracks for kick, snare, hi-hat, and overhead mics. If you analyze a selection across all of the tracks, you may get many false triggers when you raise the Sensitivity slider high enough to capture the hi-hat material (coming mainly from the tracks for the overhead mics).

However, if you analyze only the track for the overhead mics, the resulting beat triggers are slightly later than the material on the other tracks (since it will take more time for the sound to reach the overhead mics). If you then extend the selection to the other drum tracks and separate them, the clips from the kick, snare, and tom tracks will be cut slightly late.

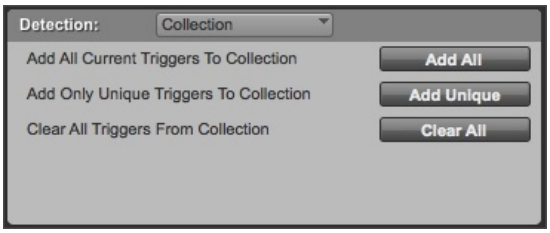


Overhead mics generate late beat triggers

Using Collection mode, you can analyze each drum track separately, one at a time, optimizing the Detection settings for each track until you get the triggers you want. The triggers for each track can be added successively to the collection, or you can choose to collect only the unique triggers from a track. The collection of triggers that results can then be used to generate Bar|Beat Markers or a DigiGroove template, or separate new clips.

Using Collection Mode

Collection mode is available in Bar|Beat Marker Generation, Groove Template Extraction, or Clip Separation mode (audio only), and is accessed by selecting **Collection** in the **Detection** pop-up menu.



Beat Detective, Collection mode options

To use Collection mode:

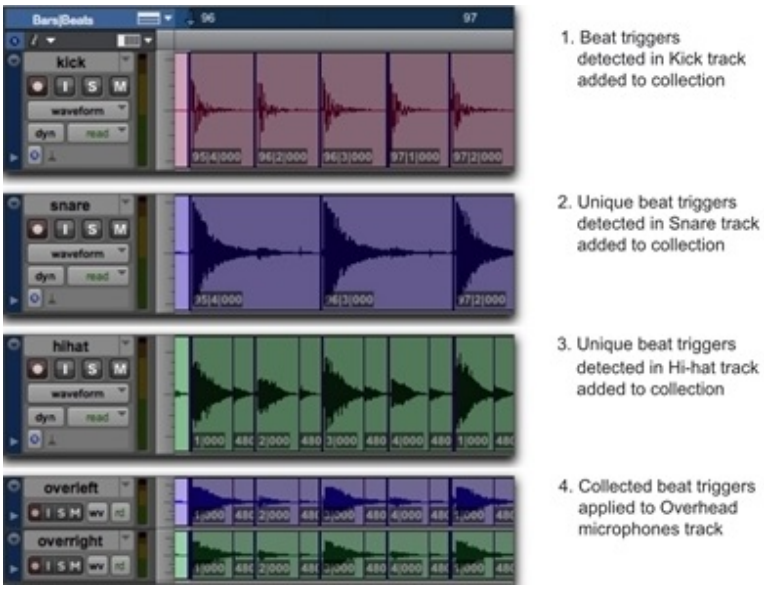
1. In the Edit window, make an audio selection on a single track. Make sure the selection's start and end points fall cleanly on the beat.
2. In the Beat Detective window, select one of the following modes:
   - Bar|Beat Marker Generation
   - Groove Template Extraction
   - Clip Separation (audio only)
3. Define or capture the selection as described in "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000.
4. Configure the Detection options so the selection's peak transients are accurately detected (see "Generating Beat Triggers" on page 1003).
5. From the **Detection** pop-up menu, select **Collection**.
6. In the Detection (Collection Mode) section, click **Add All** to add all the current beat triggers to the collection.
7. From the **Detection** pop-up menu, select **Normal** and move the selection to the next track you want to analyze. Make sure to keep the selection range constant for each track.

   Press Control+P (Mac) or Start+P (Windows) to move the selection up, or Control+Semi-colon (Mac) or Start+Semi-colon (Windows) to move the selection down.

   With Commands Keyboard Focus enabled, press "P" to move the selection up, or Semi-colon (;) to move the selection down. Hold the Shift key to retain and add to the current selection.
8. Configure the Detection options so the selection's peak transients are accurately detected (see "Generating Beat Triggers" on page 1003).
9. Select **Collection** again.
10. Do one of the following:

- In the Detection (Collection Mode) section, click **Add Unique** to add only the *unique* triggers from the track to the collection. When you choose to add unique triggers, Pro Tools looks for triggers that are close to triggers already collected from other tracks. Where triggers already exist, the newly detected triggers are discarded.
- Click **Add All** to add *all* triggers to the collection.
- Click **Clear All** to clear *all* triggers from the collection.

Each new set of triggers added to the collection appears in a different color. If successive triggers in the collection are located closely together (for example, because of microphone leakage), Beat Detective keeps only the earlier triggers.



Overhead mic track displaying a collection of beat triggers containing unique triggers generated from the kick, snare, and hi-hat tracks.

11. Repeat steps 7–10 for each additional track you are analyzing.

    The beat triggers stored in the Collection mode are saved with sessions. Therefore, when a session is opened later, the previous collection material is still there (until it is cleared).

12. Once the beat triggers have been added to the collection, you can use them to generate Bar|Beat Markers or groove template, or separate clips. However, this must be done from the Collection Mode section (when the triggers are displayed in multiple colors).

To separate clips across multiple tracks, make sure to extend the selection to any additional tracks before separating.

Part VI: MIDI

Learn how to compose and shape MIDI and music notation in Pro Tools.

- "MIDI Editing" on page 1022
- "MIDI Editors" on page 1071
- "Score Editor" on page 1099
- "MIDI Editors" on page 1071
- "MIDI Polyphonic Expression (MPE)" on page 1132

39 MIDI Editing

Pro Tools provides powerful MIDI editing tools. You can create and edit individual MIDI notes and controller events with the Pencil, Trim, and Grabber tools in the Edit window, MIDI Editor windows (see "MIDI Editors" on page 1071), and the Score Editor window ("Score Editor" on page 1099).

For information on clip-specific editing for both MIDI and audio, see "Editing Clips and Selections" on page 927.

For information about editing MPE per-note controller data, see Editing MPE Data .

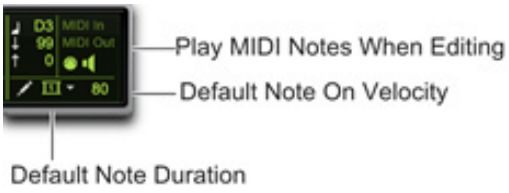
You can use the various MIDI Operations (such as Quantize, Transpose, Change Velocity, and Change Duration) to destructively transform groups of MIDI notes in terms of pitch, timing, dynamics, and phrasing (see "MIDI Operations" on page 1400).

Additionally, you can use Real-Time Properties to nondestructively affect MIDI on playback or play-through (see "MIDI Real-Time Properties" on page 1062).

Pro Tools also provides numerous zoom and view tools that are optimized for MIDI editing.

MIDI Editing Options

Pro Tools provides a few options for determining MIDI editing behavior. These options are available in the Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, and the Score Editor window. However, these options are only available if there is at least one MIDI or Instrument track in your Pro Tools session.



MIDI Editing Controls in the Edit window

Play MIDI Notes When Editing

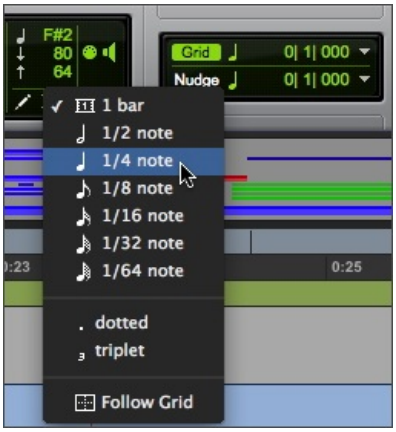
When enabled, the Play MIDI Notes When Editing option causes MIDI notes to play (send a MIDI Note On message) when editing.

Default Note Duration

The Default Note Duration setting lets you define the default note duration for inserting notes manually. The Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, and Score Editor window can each have a different Default Note Duration setting.

To select a Default Note Duration:

1. Click the Default Note Duration setting in the Edit window, a MIDI Editor window, or the Score Editor window.
2. Select the Default Note Duration value you want. (For example, select the 1/4 Note option to insert quarter notes with the Pencil tool.)



Selecting a Default Note Duration in the Edit window

The Default Note Duration setting updates to show the selected note value.



Default Note Duration, quarter note selected

3. To define a dotted or triplet duration, do one of the following:
   - To dot the selected Default Note Duration value, click the Default Note Duration setting and select **Dotted**.
   - To make the selected Default Note Duration value a triplet, click the Default Note Duration setting and select **Triplet**.

Follow Grid

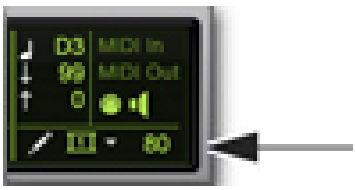
Select the **Follow Grid** option to have the Default Note Duration follow the selected Grid value. To stop following the Grid value, select the rhythmic value for the Default Note Duration setting.

Default Note On Velocity

The Default Note On Velocity setting lets you define the default Note On velocity for inserting notes manually. The Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, and Score Editor window can each have a different Default Note On Velocity setting.

To define the Default Note On Velocity, do one of the following:

- Click the Default Note On Velocity setting in the Edit window, a MIDI Editor window, or the Score Editor window and drag up or down.
- Click the Default Note On Velocity setting in the Edit window, a MIDI Editor window, or the Score Editor window, type a new number and press Enter.



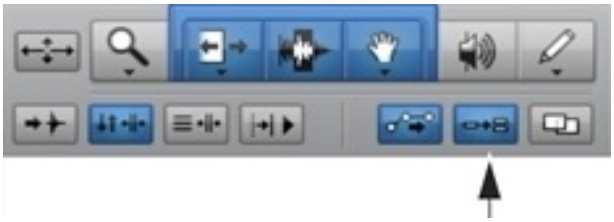
Default Note On Velocity

Mirrored MIDI Editing

Mirrored MIDI Editing lets you edit MIDI clips and have your edits apply to every copy of the same MIDI clip. This can be particularly useful when editing looped MIDI clips.

To enable Mirrored MIDI Editing, do one of the following:

- Select **Options > Mirror MIDI Editing**.
- Enable the Mirrored MIDI Editing button in the Edit window, MIDI Editor window, or Score Editor window.



Mirrored MIDI Edit button in the Edit window

In Mirrored MIDI Editing mode, the Mirrored MIDI Editing button flashes Red once as an edit is made to alert you that your edit is being applied to more than one clip.

To disable Mirrored MIDI Editing, do one of the following:

- Deselect **Options > Mirror MIDI Editing**.
- Disable the Mirrored MIDI Editing button in the Edit window, MIDI Editor window, or Score Editor window.

If Mirrored MIDI Editing mode is disabled, and you edit notes of looped clips in Notes view, the edit flattens the loop. Similarly editing clip groups separates the clip groups.

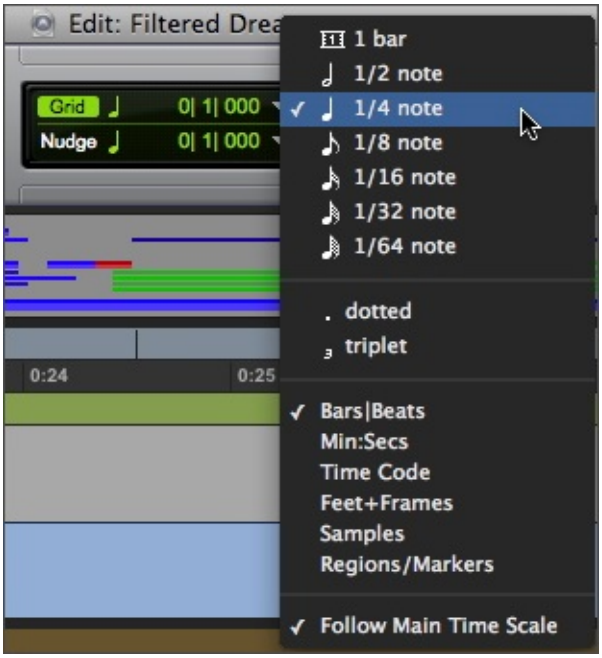
Setting the Grid Value

When inserting MIDI notes with the Pencil tool, the Grid value determines the Note On location of each note, or other characteristics, based on the Pencil tool shape (see "Using the Pencil Tool" on the next page). The Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, and Score Editor window can each be set to a different Grid value.

For more information on Grid mode, see "Grid Mode" on page 873.

To set the Grid value for MIDI editing:

1. Click the Grid Value selector and select Bars|Beats. If the **Follow Main Time Scale** option is enabled you can simply set the Main Time Scale to Bars|Beats (see "Setting the Main Time Scale" on page 1147).
2. Click the Grid Value selector again and select a note value (such as 1/4, 1/8, or 1/16).



Selecting the Grid value in the Edit window

3. To define a dotted or triplet value, do one of the following:
   - To dot the selected Grid value, click the Grid Value selector again and select **Dotted**.
   - To make the selected Grid value a triplet, click the Grid Value selector again and select **Triplet**.
4. Verify the default session meter and tempo (see "Setting the Session Meter" on page 768 and "Setting the Session Tempo" on page 769).

To show (or hide) grid lines in the Edit window or in a MIDI Editor window:

- Select (or deselect) the Grid button.



Grid button selected in the Edit window

To increase the grid value incrementally:

- Press Shift+Equal (=).

To decrease the grid value incrementally:

- Press Shift+Minus (–).

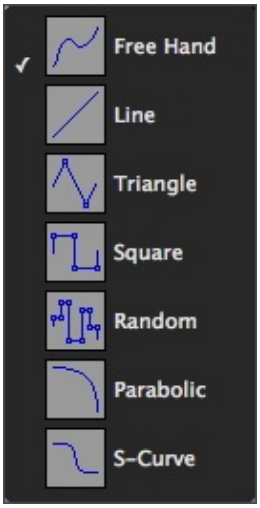
Using the Pencil Tool

The Pencil tool is useful for creating and editing MIDI data. The first five Pencil tool shapes (Free Hand, Line, Triangle, Square, and Random) can be used to create MIDI notes with varying durations and velocities. In the Edit window MIDI Editor windows, and the Score Editor window, note velocities are determined by the Pencil tool shape). The various Pencil tool shapes can be particularly useful for drawing and editing different types of MIDI control data—for example, try using Line for volume, Triangle for pan, Free Hand for pitch bend, and Square or Random for velocity.

Parabolic and S-Curve Pencil shapes are used for drawing tempo events only in the Tempo Editor. *"Drawing Tempo Events" on page 1159*

To select the Pencil tool shape:

1. Click the Pencil tool icon in the Toolbar for the Pencil tool shape pop-up menu.
2. Select a Pencil tool shape.



Pencil tool shapes available for MIDI

Pencil Tool Shapes for MIDI

Free Hand

In the Edit window on MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes view, in MIDI Editor windows, and in the Score Editor, the Free Hand shape inserts a single MIDI note whose velocity is defined by the Default Note On Velocity setting. The pitch, location, and duration of the note are determined by where on the track you click with the mouse.

When editing MIDI velocities or continuous controller data, the Free Hand shape draws freely according to the movement of the mouse. The shape is reproduced as a series of steps according to the Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data MIDI preference.

When editing automation or MIDI control data with the Pencil tool, you can switch between the current Pencil Tool shape (such as Line) and Free Hand pencil editing using the Command key (Mac) or the Control key (Windows). When editing with the selected Pencil shape, the Pencil cursor angles to the left. When editing in Free Hand with the key modifier, the Pencil cursor angles to the right.

Line

In the Edit window on MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes view, in MIDI Editor windows, and in the Score Editor, the Line shape inserts a series of MIDI notes on a single pitch whose velocities are defined by the Default Note On Velocity setting. The duration and spacing for the inserted notes are determined by the current Grid value and the Default Note Duration setting.

When editing MIDI velocities or continuous controller data, the Line shape draws in a straight line from click to release. MIDI continuous controller values change in steps according to the **`Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data`** option in the MIDI Preferences page.

Triangle

In the Edit window on MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes view, in MIDI Editor windows, and in the Score Editor, the Triangle shape inserts a series of MIDI notes on a single pitch whose velocities oscillate between the Default Note On Velocity setting and 127 according to a triangle pattern. The duration and spacing for the inserted notes are determined by the current Grid value and the Default Note Duration setting.

When editing MIDI velocities or continuous controller data, the Triangle shape draws a triangular pattern that changes direction according to the current Grid value. MIDI controller values change in steps according to the **Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data** option in the MIDI Preferences page.

Square

In the Edit window on MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes view, in MIDI Editor windows, and in the Score Editor, the Square shape inserts a series of MIDI notes on a single pitch whose velocities alternate between the Default Note On Velocity setting and 127. The duration and spacing for the inserted notes are determined by the current Grid value and the Default Note Duration setting.

When editing MIDI velocities or continuous controller data, the Square shape draws a square pattern that repeats at a rate based on the current Grid value.

Random

In the Edit window on MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes view, in MIDI Editor windows, and in the Score Editor, the Random shape inserts a series of MIDI notes on a single pitch whose velocities change randomly within the range between the Default Note On Velocity setting and 127. The duration and spacing for the inserted notes are determined by the current Grid value and the Default Note Duration setting.

When editing MIDI velocities or continuous controller data, the Random shape draws a series of random values that change at a rate based on the current Grid value.

Inserting MIDI Notes

In addition to recording, step recording, and importing MIDI into Pro Tools, you can manually insert MIDI notes using the Pencil tool.

When inserting MIDI notes or other MIDI data with the Pencil tool, MIDI clip boundaries are created on the nearest barlines.

To insert a MIDI Note on a track in the Edit window:

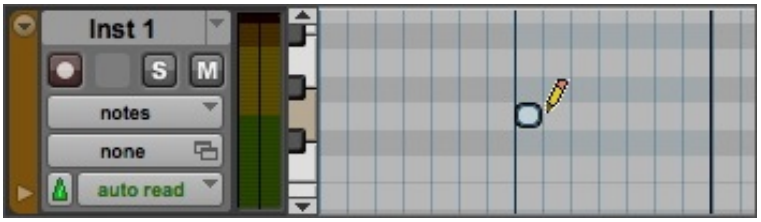
1. In the Edit window, set the MIDI or Instrument track to Notes view.
2. Select the Pencil tool and make sure it is set to Free Hand. The cursor will change to the Pencil tool when located over the playlist area of a MIDI or Instrument track in Notes view.
3. To insert quarter notes on the beat, do the following:
   - Set the Main Time Scale to Bars|Beats.
   - Set the Edit mode to Grid.
   - Set the Grid value to quarter notes.
   - Set the Default Note Duration value either to quarter notes (or to **Follow Grid**).
4. Move the Pencil tool into the playlist area for the MIDI or Instrument track. Use the Edit window's ruler and the track's mini-keyboard as a reference to locate the pitch and time location you want.

   When using the Pencil tool, the Cursor location and value are displayed in the Window Toolbar.



Cursor location and value

5. When you reach the pitch and time location you want, click to insert the note.



MIDI note inserted with the Pencil tool

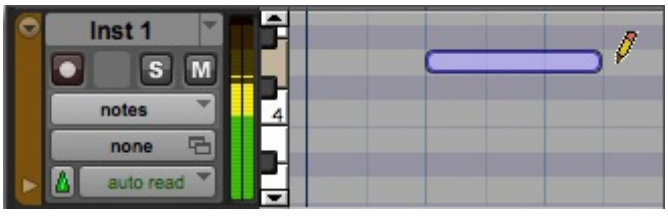
With the Smart Tool active (see "Using the Smart Tool" on page 895), Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) to change the cursor to the Pencil tool and insert MIDI notes; Option-Control-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-click (Windows) to delete notes.

With Grid mode enabled, the start point of the MIDI note snaps to the nearest Grid boundary by default. With the Free Hand Pencil tool, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) after clicking and holding to temporarily suspend Snap to Grid.

The velocity for inserted notes is determined by the Default Note On Velocity setting. The duration is determined by the Default Note Duration value. When in Grid mode, the Note On location is determined by the Grid value.

If the Play MIDI Notes When Editing option is enabled, each note sounds as it is inserted.

The Pencil tool can be dragged after clicking (and before releasing) to adjust the note's pitch or duration. Drag right to lengthen the note without changing its start point. Drag left to shorten the note without changing its end point.



Adjusting the duration for an inserted note

With the Grid mode enabled, the end point of the MIDI note snaps to the nearest Grid boundary by default. Command-drag (Mac) or Control-drag (Windows) with the Pencil tool to temporarily suspend Snap to Grid.

Inserting a Series of Notes

In the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows, the Line, Triangle, Square, and Random Pencil tool shapes can be used to enter a series of identical pitches with varying velocities. The duration and spacing for the inserted notes are determined by the current Grid value and the Default Note Duration setting.

When the Default Note Duration is greater than the Grid value, the inserted notes are truncated to match the Grid value and not overlap.

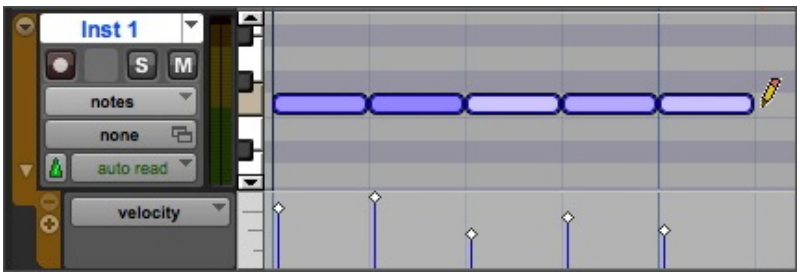
The note velocities are determined by the Pencil tool shape:

- Use the Line shape to enter notes with identical velocities.
- Use the Triangle shape for a ramp up and down of velocities.
- Use the Square shape for alternating velocities of loud and soft.
- Use the Random shape for a series of notes with random velocities.

For example, to insert a series of notes with random velocities in the Edit window:

1. In the Edit window, set the MIDI or Instrument track to Notes view.
2. Select the Pencil tool and make sure it is set to Random.
3. To insert consecutive quarter notes on the beat, do the following:
   - Set the Main Time Scale to Bars|Beats.
   - Set the Edit mode to Grid.
   - Set the Grid value to quarter notes.
   - Set the Default Note Duration value either to quarter notes (or to **`Follow Grid`**).

   With these settings, the notes are inserted spaced one quarter note apart.
4. Click at the point to insert the first note and drag to the right until the number of notes you want have been inserted.



Inserting a series of notes with the Pencil tool

Manually Editing MIDI Notes

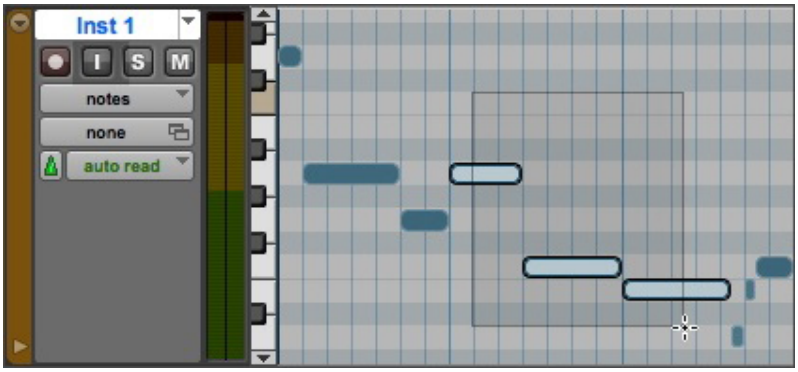
All aspects of a MIDI note can be edited in the Edit window or in a MIDI Editor window, including start and end points, duration, pitch, and velocity. The Selector, Grabber, and Pencil tools can operate on individual notes or groups of notes.

Selecting MIDI Notes

MIDI notes must be selected before they can be edited.

To select MIDI notes, do one of the following:

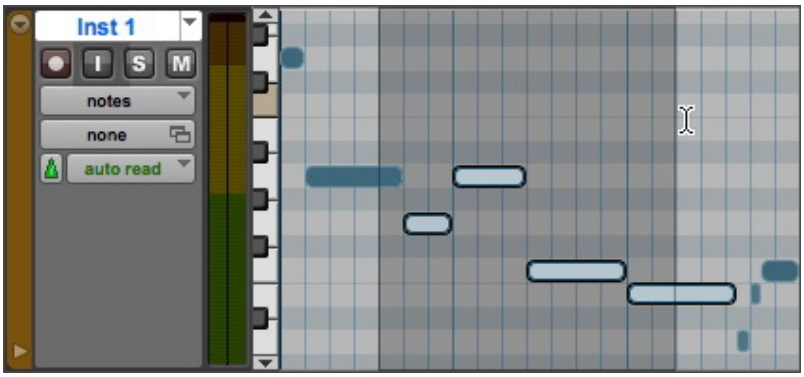
- With the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool, Shift-click each note.
- With any Grabber tool, move the cursor to where there are no notes (the Marquee appears) and click and draw a rectangle around the group of notes you want to edit.



Selecting notes with a Grabber tool

When using a Grabber tool, if any portion of the rectangle touches a note (either its start or end point), the note is included in the selection. However, selections made with a Grabber tool are object selections and do not include underlying controller and automation data for the MIDI track.

- With the Selector tool, drag across a range of notes.



Selecting notes with the Selector tool

When using the Selector tool, a note's start point must be included in order for it to be selected. When a MIDI or Instrument track is in Notes or Clips view, selections made with the Selector tool are range selections and include all underlying controller and automation data.

With the Selector tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to get the Note Selector tool in the Edit window and MIDI Editor windows (the Selector tool always makes note selections in the Score Editor). The Note Selector tool selects all MIDI notes within the duration of the selection as objects and does not select any other MIDI events (such as controller data or program changes).

To deselect one or more notes from a selection:

- With the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool, Shift-click the notes so they become deselected.

You can also select notes in the Select/Split Notes window. See "Select/Split Notes Command" on page 1428.

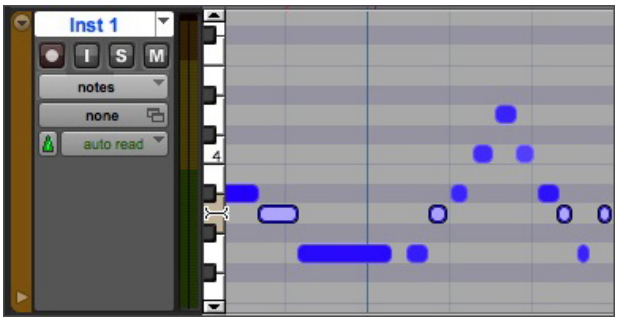
Selecting and Auditioning MIDI Notes with the Mini-Keyboard

Use the mini-keyboard on MIDI and Instrument tracks to select and play notes on that track. You can click on the mini-keyboard with any Edit tool.

Use the scroll wheel on your mouse or the track pad on your laptop to scroll the piano roll up or down on a MIDI or Instrument track to view the note range you want to work with.

To play a note on a MIDI or Instrument track, and select all notes of that pitch on the track:

- With any Edit tool selected, click a key on the mini-keyboard.



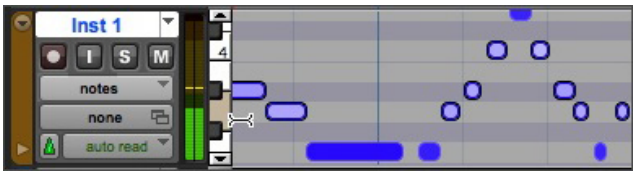
Playing a note with the mini-keyboard and selecting all notes of that pitch

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to play notes without making a selection.

Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to select or deselect notes, and to make noncontiguous selections.

To select and play a range of notes on a MIDI or Instrument track:

- With any Edit tool selected, click a key and drag up or down on the mini-keyboard.



Playing a range of notes with the mini-keyboard and selecting all notes of including those pitches

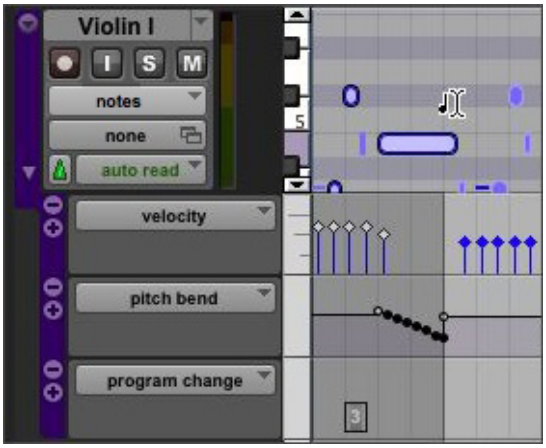
You can also Shift-click on the mini-keyboard to extend or contract the range of notes.

Selecting Only MIDI Notes Using the Note Selector Tool

In Notes or Velocity view on MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Edit window, or in a MIDI Editor window, the Selector tool makes a time range selection that includes all MIDI event types in addition to MIDI notes and velocities (such as program changes, and continuous controller data). The Note Selector tool can be used to select *only* MIDI notes and velocities in a time range selection.

To select only MIDI notes and velocities with the Note Selector tool:

1. Select the Selector tool.
2. On MIDI or Instrument tracks in the Edit window in Notes or Velocity view, or in a MIDI Editor window, Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) over the time range that includes the notes you want to select.



Selecting only MIDI notes using the Note Selector tool

When using the Smart tool and pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), the Selector is available in the upper part of the Track and the Note Selector is available in the lower part of the track.

Editing MIDI Notes in Grid or Relative Grid Mode

When sequencing MIDI for music (such as drum patterns or synth pads), you will typically set the Main Timebase ruler to Bars|Beats—and keeping the default Timebase setting of ticks for MIDI and Instrument track—in order to maintain alignment with the tempo and meter of the music. Thus, you will typically want to edit MIDI notes (and other MIDI data) in Grid mode with the Grid set to the lowest common rhythmic value—for instance, if the shortest rhythm in the sequence is a sixteenth-note, set the Grid value to a sixteenth note (see "Setting the Grid Value" on page 1024).

However, if recorded a MIDI performance to a click and you may want to keep the timing of the performance intact in relation to the Grid rather than quantizing the performance to the Grid when editing it. If so, use Relative Grid mode when editing. With Relative Grid mode is enabled, any part of the MIDI performance maintains its relative offset from the Grid when moving, when cutting or copying and pasting, or when cutting or copying and merge pasting (**`Edit > Paste Special > Merge MIDI`**) selected MIDI notes.

Also see "Absolute and Relative Grid Mode" on page 1229.

Using the Grabber Tools

Use the Grabber tools to select, move, separate, and arrange clips on tracks. There are three modes for the Grabber tool: Time Grabber, Separation Grabber, and Object Grabber. For more information about arranging clips, also see "Arranging Clips" on page 1217.

When in Grid mode and in Notes view on MIDI and Instrument tracks, clicking anywhere in the timeline outside of a clip with the Grabber tool places the Edit insertion point at the nearest grid location.

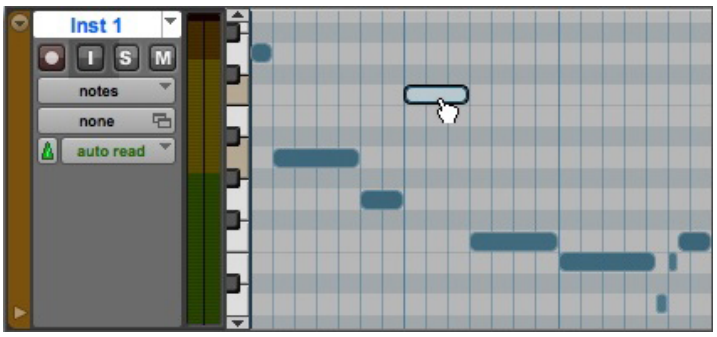
Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while clicking with the Grabber tool in notes view temporarily toggle to Slip mode.

Transposing Notes

MIDI notes can be transposed by dragging them up or down with the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool. If several notes are selected before dragging, each is transposed.

To transpose a MIDI note:

1. Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Notes view.
2. Select the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool.
3. While pressing Shift, drag the note up or down.



Transposing with a Grabber tool

The Shift key ensures that the transposed note maintains its original start point.

While dragging, each new note sounds and the Cursor Location Value indicator (in the Edit window) indicates the number of semitones and direction (+/–) for the transposition.

Hold Control (Mac) or Start (Windows), and then press Plus (+) on the numeric keypad to transpose the selected MIDI notes up by one semitone, or press Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to transpose the selected MIDI notes down by one semitone.

To transpose a copy of the note, leaving the original unchanged, press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging.

MIDI notes can also be transposed using the Transpose Event Operation (see "Transpose" on page 1425) or MIDI Real-Time Properties (see "MIDI Real-Time Properties" on page 1062).

Moving Notes

Like clips, MIDI notes can be dragged left or right with the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool to change their start point. If several notes are selected before dragging, they are all moved together.

To move a MIDI note:

1. Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Notes view.
2. With the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool, drag the note left or right (press Shift while dragging to preserve the note's pitch).

   As the note is dragged, the Cursor Location Value indicator (in the Edit window) displays the new start point.

   If the Edit mode is set to Grid, the dragged note snaps to the nearest Grid boundary. If the Edit mode is set to Spot, the Spot dialog opens.

To copy the selected notes, leaving the originals intact, press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging.

The placement of MIDI notes can also be adjusted with Shift (see "Shift Command" on page 1234) or Nudge (see "Nudging Clips" on page 934).

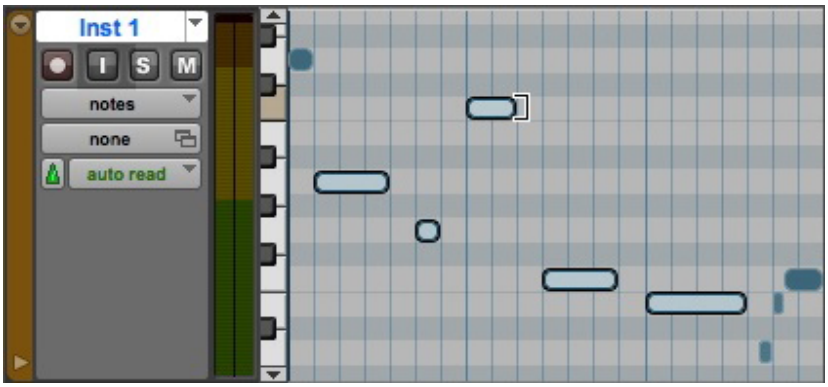
Trimming Note Start and End Times

Like clips, start and end points for MIDI notes can be adjusted with the Trim tool. If several notes are selected when performing the trim, each note is changed.

The Trim tool can also be used on MIDI clips. For more information, see "Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool Functionality on MIDI Clips" on page 1041.

To change the start or end points for a group of MIDI notes:

1. Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Notes view.
2. Using the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool, Shift-click each note you want to trim.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Select the Trim tool.
   - Use the Pencil tool.
4. Move the cursor near the beginning of any of the highlighted notes, so the Trim tool appears. Drag right to shorten the notes, or drag left to lengthen them.



Changing note end times with the Trim tool

If the Edit mode is set to Grid, the dragged start or end point snaps to the nearest Grid boundary. If the Edit mode is set to Spot, the Spot dialog opens, where you can enter the new location for the note's start or end point.

When in Grid mode, use the Command key (Mac) or Control key (Windows) to temporarily disable Grid mode.

Notes can also be trimmed with the **`Trim Clip to Selection`** command (see "Trim to Selection Command" on page 932) and the **`Trim To Insertion`** command (see "Trimming with Nudge" on page 934).

Trimming MIDI Notes with Nudge

You can trim the start and end points of selected MIDI notes by the current Nudge value.

To trim the selected MIDI notes start or end points by the Nudge value:

1. Configure the Nudge value (see "Defining the Nudge Value" on page 935).
2. With the Time Grabber tool, select the MIDI notes you want to trim.
3. Do one of the following:

- While pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), press Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to trim the start point of the selected MIDI notes by the Nudge value.
- While pressing Command (Mac) or Control (Windows), press Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad to trim the numeric keypad to trim the end point of the selected MIDI notes by the Nudge value.

Transposing MIDI Notes with Nudge

You can transpose selected MIDI notes by semi-tonal increments using Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad.

To transpose the selected MIDI notes by semitones:

1. With the Time Grabber tool, select the MIDI notes you want to transpose.
2. Do one of the following:
   - While pressing Control (Mac) or Start (Windows), press Plus (+) on the numeric keypad transpose the selected MIDI notes up by one semitone.
   - While pressing Control (Mac) or Start (Windows), press Minus (–) on the numeric keypad transpose the selected MIDI notes down by one semitone.

Separating MIDI Notes

The **Separate** command lets you separate MIDI notes at the Edit cursor location or at the boundaries of the Edit selection. When in Notes view in the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows, separating MIDI clips creates new MIDI notes but does not create new MIDI clips. However, when in Clips view in the Edit window, separating MIDI clips only creates new MIDI clips. Also, if the Edit selection includes any audio tracks, the **Separate** command separates only clips on MIDI and Instrument tracks regardless of the Track View setting.

To separate MIDI notes at the Edit cursor location or at the boundaries of the Edit selection:

1. Make an Edit selection or place the Edit cursor at the location where you want to separate one or more MIDI notes.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Separate > At Selection**.
   - Right-click in the Notes pane and choose **Separate**.

   Press Command+E (Mac) or Control+E (Windows) to separate MIDI notes at the selection.

To separate MIDI notes on the grid:

1. Set the Grid value.
2. Make an Edit selection or a marquee selection that includes the MIDI notes you want to separate.
3. Choose **Edit > Separate > On Grid**.
4. In the Pre-Separate Amount dialog, click **OK**.

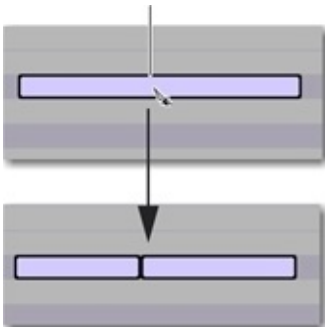
Separate and Consolidate Tools for MIDI Notes

In Notes view in the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows, both the Pencil and Grabber tools can be used to separate MIDI notes and to consolidate MIDI notes.

The cursor updates to show a “knife” for the Separate tool and a “bandage” for the Consolidate tool.

To separate a MIDI note with the Separation tool:

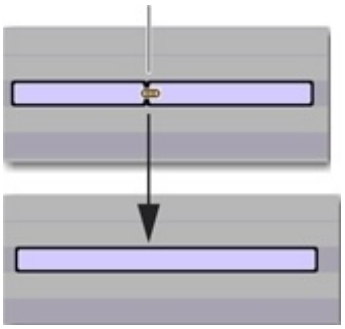
- With the Grabber or Pencil tool, Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Start-Shift-click (Windows) on the MIDI note at the location where you want the separation.



MIDI note separated into two using the Separate Tool

To consolidate MIDI notes with the Consolidate tool:

- With the Grabber or Pencil tool, Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Start-Shift-click (Windows) between the separated MIDI notes.



Consolidating MIDI notes into one using the Consolidate Tool

Consolidating MIDI Notes

The **`Consolidate`** command lets you combine two or more consecutive MIDI notes of the same pitch into a single MIDI note.

To consolidate MIDI notes:

1. Select the MIDI notes you want to consolidate.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Consolidate`**.
   - Right-click the selected notes and choose **`Consolidate`**.

   Press Option+Shift+3 (Mac) or Alt+Shift+3 (Windows) to consolidate adjacent selected MIDI notes of the same pitch.

Muting MIDI Notes

The **`Mute`** command lets you mute individual MIDI notes. If entire clips are selected, the **`Mute`** command prompts you to either mute clips or MIDI notes.

To mute one or more MIDI notes:

1. Select the MIDI notes you want to mute.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Mute Notes**.
   - Right-click the selected MIDI notes and choose **Mute Notes**.

To unmute one or more MIDI notes:

1. Select the MIDI notes you want to unmute.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Unmute Notes**.
   - Right-click the selected MIDI notes and choose **Unmute Notes**.

Press Command+M (Mac) or Control+M (Windows) to mute and unmute selected MIDI notes.

Manually Editing Note Velocities

When a MIDI or Instrument track is set to Velocity view, or when the Velocity lane is revealed under a track, each note's attack velocity is represented with a velocity stalk. The taller the velocity stalk, the higher the velocity value (0–127).

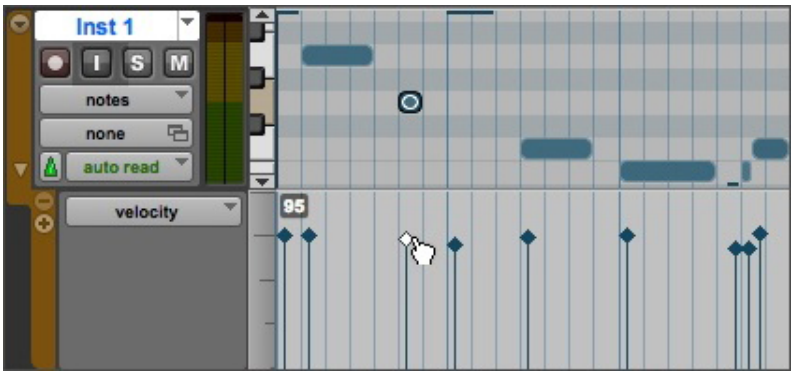
To edit MIDI velocity in the Edit window:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Velocity view.
   - Reveal the Controller lane for the MIDI or Instrument track and show Velocity.



Revealing the Velocity Lane

2. Select any Grabber tool.
3. Drag the top (diamond) of the velocity stalk up or down.



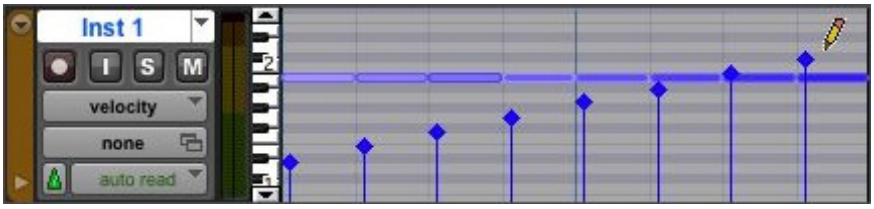
Dragging a velocity stalk

The velocities for a range of notes can be edited with any Pencil tool.

For fine-resolution editing of velocity values, Command-click-drag (Mac) or Control-click-drag the top of the velocity stalk to the desired value.

To draw velocity values for a crescendo:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Velocity view.
   - Reveal the Controller lane for the MIDI or Instrument track and show Velocity.
2. Select the Pencil tool with the shape set to Line.
3. Click at the beginning of the note range, near the bottom of the velocity range, and drag to the right and up until the line encompasses the range of notes you want to include in the fade.



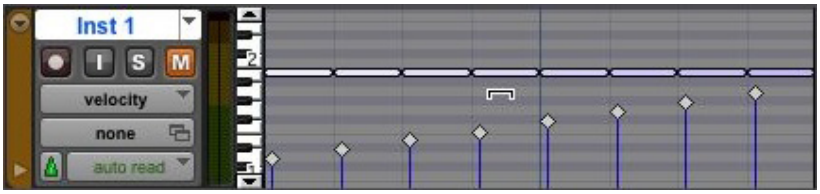
Changing velocities with the Line shape

You can also use the Trim tool to scale the velocities for all selected notes. This is useful if you like the velocity relationship between the notes, but want them all to be louder or softer.

When in Velocity view, the Trim tool can be used to trim note durations in addition to changing velocities.

To scale velocities with the Trim tool:

1. Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Velocity view.
2. Using the Selector tool or any Grabber tool, select the range of notes to be edited.
3. With the Trim tool, click near the range of selected notes and drag up or down. Dragging up increases the velocities for each note and dragging down decreases them.

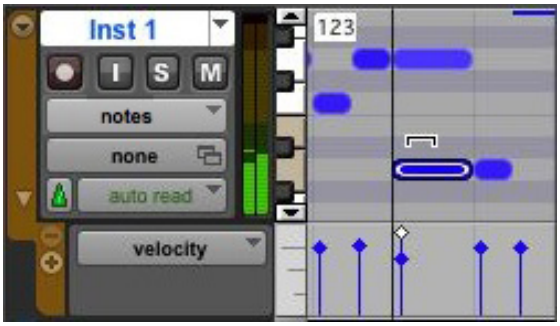


Changing velocities with the Trim tool

Velocity Trim Tool

To trim the velocity of one or more selected MIDI notes:

- With the Grabber tool selected, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the note and drag up or down. Notice that the Grabber tool changes to the Velocity Trim tool.



Editing simultaneous velocities

Drag up to increase the velocity value, or down to decrease it. While dragging, the diamond turns blue and the associated note becomes selected. The dragged velocity values are reflected in the Cursor Location Value indicator (in the Edit window).

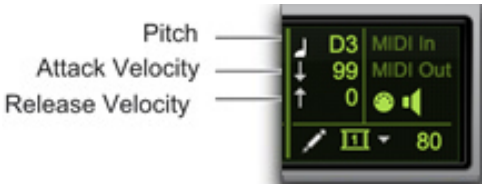
If two notes have the same start time (with velocity stalks on top of each other), Command-drag (Mac) or Control-drag (Windows) the actual note up or down to adjust its velocity.

Auditioning Velocity Changes

If the Play MIDI Notes When Editing option is enabled, Pro Tools plays the note at the new velocity when editing velocities for MIDI notes with the Grabber tool. This lets you hear when you have the velocity setting you want for a MIDI note.

Typing in Note Attributes

When an individual note is selected with the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool, its attributes are displayed in the Event Edit area.



Event Edit Area showing MIDI track information

Pitch is listed by note name and octave number. Attack and release velocities are listed with their MIDI values (0–127). Edit Selection Start, End, and Length times are displayed in the Main Time Scale.

To change an attribute for a MIDI note:

1. In the Edit window, with a MIDI or Instrument track set to Notes View, select the note with the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool.
2. Click in the Attributes text box and do one of the following:
   - Enter the new value on the numeric keypad.
   - Press the Up or Down Arrow to increment or decrement to the new value.
   - Drag up or down to scroll to the new value.

- Play the new note value on your MIDI keyboard controller.

Press Forward Slash (/) to move between the fields in the Event Edit area.

You can also change attributes of MIDI notes in the MIDI Event List (see "MIDI Event List" on page 1123).

Multiple Notes and Event Edit Area

When multiple notes are selected, you can enter values in the Event Edit area fields to affect all selected notes. A triangle (delta symbol) to the left of the displayed note indicates that multiple notes are selected.

A new value in the Start field moves the first note in the selection to that location, with all other notes moving with it.



Multiple notes in the Event Edit area

Values entered in the pitch and velocity fields add to or subtract from the values for all selected notes. For example, to transpose all selected notes down an octave, enter a value of –12 for pitch.

Deleting MIDI Notes

In addition to deleting selected notes with the **Clear** command in the Edit menu, individual notes can also be deleted with the Pencil tool.

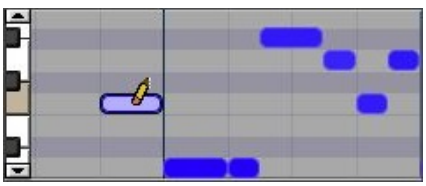
To delete a group of MIDI notes with the Clear command:

1. Using the Grabber or Selector tool, select the notes to be deleted (see "Selecting MIDI Notes" on page 1029).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Clear** to delete the selected notes. The track's underlying controller data remains intact.
   - With any Edit tool, Right-click any selected note and choose **Clear**.
   - Press the Delete (Mac) key or Backspace (Windows).

When deleting MIDI notes within a time range selection, all underlying controller and automation data is also deleted.

To delete a single MIDI note with the Pencil tool:

- With the Pencil tool selected, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the note. The Pencil tool changes to an Eraser when Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) is pressed.



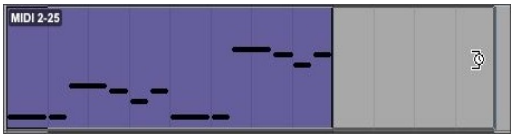
Deleting a note with Pencil tool

Program change events and Sysex events can also be deleted by Option-clicking (Mac) or Alt-clicking (Windows) them with the Pencil tool.

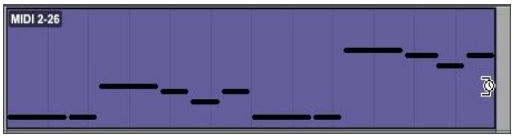
Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool Functionality on MIDI Clips

The Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool is useful for matching a MIDI clip to the length of another clip, a tempo grid, or any other reference point.

With the Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool, you can move the MIDI clip's start or end point to expand or compress the clip, scaling the MIDI data accordingly regardless of the track's timebase (ticks or samples).



Before trimming a MIDI clip with the Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool



After trimming a MIDI clip with the Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool

Using the Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool in Grid Mode

The Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool (TCE Trim tool) can be used in Grid mode to match a clip to the tempo of a session or a section of a session, or to create "double time" or "half time" performances.

To compress or expand MIDI clips in Grid mode:

1. Set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. If necessary, set the MIDI or Instrument track to Clips view.
3. Select the TCE Trim tool.
4. With the TCE Trim tool, drag the MIDI clip's start or end point to compress or expand the clip to the Grid (for example, by quarter notes). A new MIDI clip is automatically created, and appears both in the playlist and in the Clip List.

Using the Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool in Slip Mode

To compress or expand MIDI clips in Slip mode:

1. Set the Edit mode to Slip.
2. Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Clips view.
3. Select the TCE Trim tool.
4. With the TCE Trim tool, drag the MIDI clip's start or end point to compress or expand the clip freely A new MIDI clip is automatically created, and appears both in the playlist and in the Clip List.

Using the Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool in Spot Mode

In Spot mode, clicking with the TCE Trim tool in a clip opens the Spot dialog. You can specify the location where you want the clip to start or end, or the duration of the clip, and the clip is automatically compressed or expanded as specified.

To compress or expand MIDI clips in Spot mode:

1. Set the Edit mode to Spot.
2. Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Clips view.
3. Select the TCE Trim tool.
4. Click the MIDI clip near its start or end point. The Spot dialog opens. Using any Time Scale, enter a new start or end time (or duration) for the clip, and then click OK. A new MIDI clip is automatically created, and appears both in the playlist and in the Clip List.

Using the Time Compression/Expansion Trim Tool in Shuffle Mode

In Shuffle mode, the trimmed clip will always begin at the original clip's start point regardless of whether you trim from the front to the rear or from the rear to the front.

To compress or expand MIDI clips in Shuffle mode:

1. Set the Edit mode to Shuffle.
2. Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Clips view.
3. Select TCE Trim tool.
4. With the Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool, drag the MIDI clip's start or end point to compress or expand the clip freely. A new MIDI clip is automatically created, and appears both in the playlist and in the Clip List.

Continuous Controller Events

Continuous controller events for MIDI and Instrument tracks are displayed in the form of a line graph with a series of editable breakpoints. Controller events for MIDI and Instrument tracks differ from automation data for audio tracks in that the breakpoints are stepped (instead of vector-based), where each breakpoint represents a single controller event.

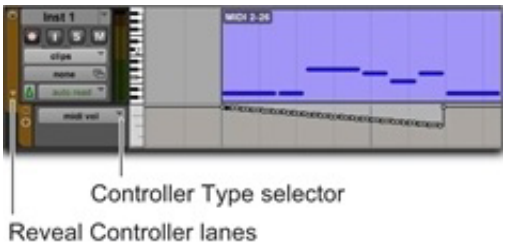
To show MIDI Controller data for a track, do one of the following:

- Select the corresponding Track View from the Track View menu.



Instrument track displaying MIDI Volume events in MIDI Volume view

- Reveal the corresponding MIDI Controller lane under the track.



Instrument track displaying MIDI Volume lane

Continuous controller events that can be inserted and edited in Pro Tools include:

- volume
- pan
- pitch bend
- aftertouch (mono)
- MIDI controllers, 0–127

Polyphonic aftertouch cannot be viewed in the Edit window. To view polyphonic aftertouch in Pro Tools, use the MIDI Event List (see "MIDI Event List" on page 1123).

MIDI controller #7 (volume) and #10 (pan) are treated by Pro Tools as automation data. This means that these controller events (along with Mutes) can be recorded and automated from the Mix window; in addition, each MIDI or Instrument track's automation mode affects how these events are played back and recorded. While a MIDI track's volume, pan, and mute events can be suspended, all other controller events in the track always play. Instrument tracks support both MIDI volume, pan, and mute, and audio volume, pan, and mute.

To avoid overwriting existing MIDI volume and pan automation data, record in MIDI Merge mode. When recording in MIDI Merge mode, existing volume and pan data play back while recording new MIDI data.

Continuous controller events (including volume and pan) can be recorded from an external MIDI controller (such as a keyboard or control surface), and they can be inserted in a MIDI track's playlist using the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool.

Inserting and Editing Controller Events

Continuous controller events can b edited with any of the following methods:

- Individual breakpoints can be dragged with any Grabber tool to adjust their location or value.
- A group of selected breakpoints can be scaled up or down with any of the Trim tools.
- New controller events can be drawn in with the Pencil tool to replace existing events. Events can be drawn with the Pencil tool (set to Free Hand, Line, Triangle, Square, or Random).
- Controller events can be cut or copied and pasted, as well as nudged or shifted.

For vertically constrained, fine-resolution editing of any control breakpoint, Command-Shift-click-drag (Mac) or Control-Shift-click-drag the breakpoint to the desired value.

To copy continuous MIDI controller events and paste to a different MIDI controller, use Special Paste (Edit › Paste Special › To Current Automation Type). For example, you might want to use the same control data for volume and a cut-off filter, or for pan and pitch bend. For more information, see "Special Paste Function for Automation Data" on page 1612.

Edits to volume data affect all tracks within an enabled Edit Group. This is not the case, however, for other controller playlists (such as pan). To insert and edit other controller types across all tracks in an Edit Group, press the Control key (Mac) or Start key (Windows) while performing the edits.

Setting Resolution for Inserted Controller Events

When inserting controller events with the Pencil tool, the density of the events is determined by the **`Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data`** setting in the MIDI Preferences page.

To set the Pencil tool resolution:

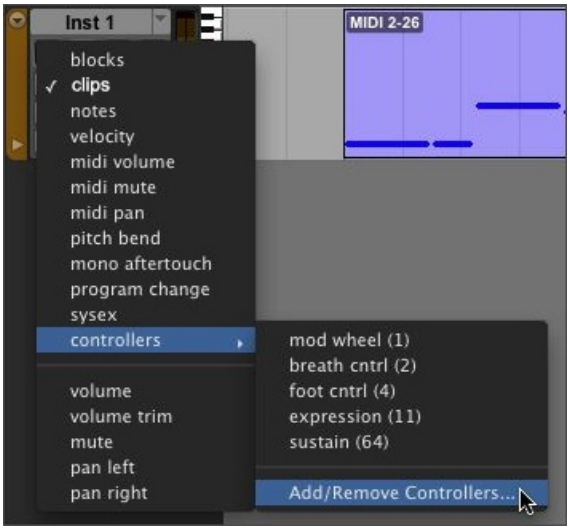
1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, then click the **MIDI** tab.
2. Type a value (1 to 100 milliseconds) for **Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data**.
3. Click **OK**.

   To edit a continuous controller event with the Pencil tool, the controller first has to be added to the Automated MIDI Controllers list.

   The controller is automatically added to the Automated MIDI Controllers list when you record controller information from an external device.

To manually enable a continuous controller for automation:

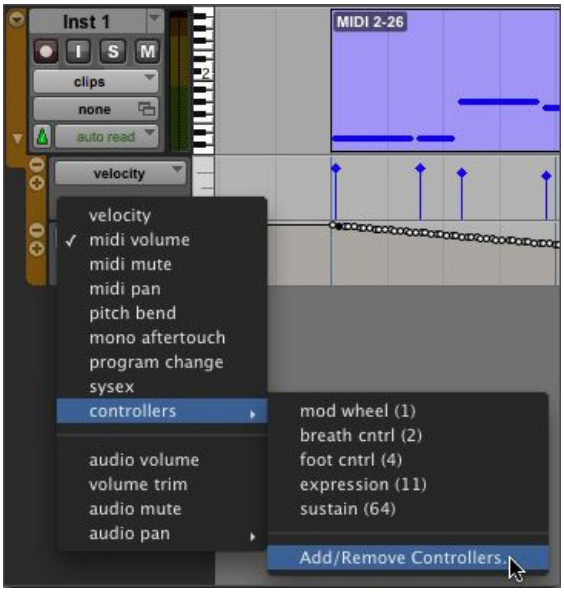
1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Track View selector for the MIDI or Instrument track you want to edit, and select Add/Remove Controller from the controllers submenu.



Selecting Add/Remove Controllers from the Track View selector

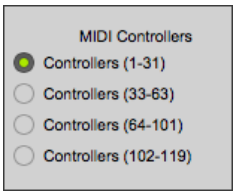
   - If Controller lanes are revealed under the MIDI or Instrument track you want to edit, click the Controller Type selector for the Controller lane under the track and select Add/Remove

Controller from the controllers submenu.



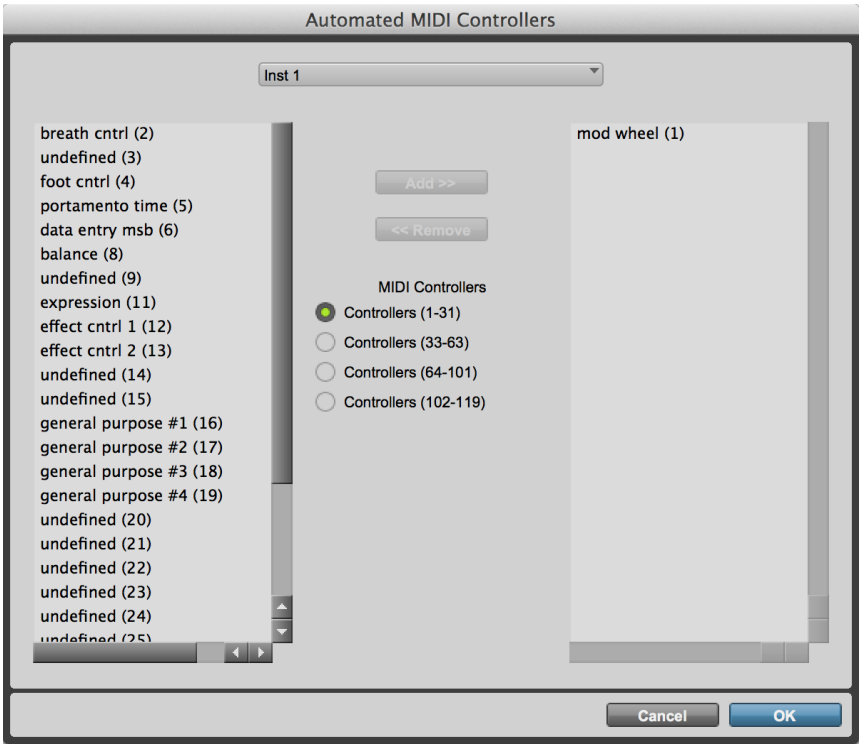
Selecting Add/Remove Controllers from the Controller Type selector on a Controller lane

2. In the Automated MIDI Controllers dialog, select the MIDI Controllers range for the controller you want to automate.



Selecting the MIDI Controllers range

3. Select the controller that you want to automate from the list on the left, and click **Add**. The selected controller is added to the Automated MIDI Controllers list on the right.



Automated MIDI Controllers dialog

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 as necessary until you have added all of the MIDI controllers you want for automation.
5. To remove a controller from the Automated MIDI Controllers list, select it in the list on the Right and click **Remove**.
6. Click **OK** to close the Automated MIDI Controller dialog.

When you record continuous controller information from an external MIDI device, the controller is automatically added to the MIDI Controllers list.

MIDI Controller Numbers Shown in Track View and Controller Lane Selectors

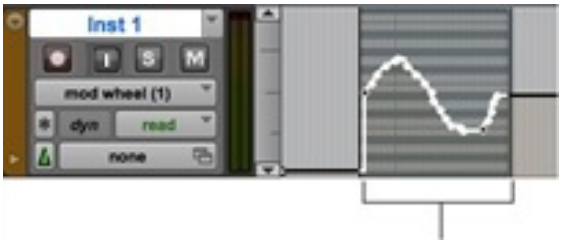
MIDI Continuous Controller (CC) numbers are shown in parenthesis in the Track View and Controller Lane selectors. Aside from common controller number assignments like “Mod Wheel” (1), “Volume” (7), or “Sustain Pedal” (64), many MIDI continuous controllers are simply “unassigned” in the standard MIDI specification. This can be confusing if you are editing data for several “unassigned” or otherwise generic continuous controllers, so by having the controller number always shown next to the name in parenthesis, you can easily see which continuous controller you are editing.



MIDI CC numbers shown in Track View and Controller Lane selectors (in addition to the standard name, if any)

Clip Boundaries Shown in MIDI Control Automation Track Views

When working on Instrument and MIDI tracks in any MIDI Controller Automation view (such as Velocity, Pitch Bend, or Mod Wheel) Clip boundaries are displayed. This provides context for note and MIDI Controller data visible on the track as you are editing. MIDI clip boundaries are also shown in MIDI Editor windows. This is useful for navigating various MIDI views when editing and arranging MIDI clips and MIDI data.



Clip boundaries shown around MDI control data in Mod Wheel Track view

Keyboard Shortcuts for Navigating MIDI

Using Tab to Transients with MIDI Clips and MIDI Notes

Tab to Transients works with MIDI clips and MIDI notes and MIDI CC events on MIDI and Instrument tracks much like it does with audio clips and audio transients on audio tracks.

Tab to Transients Disabled

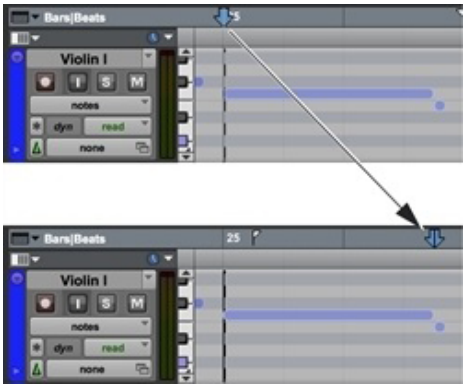
When Tab to Transients is disabled, pressing Tab moves the insertion point to the next MIDI clip boundary regardless of the track view (just like with audio clips).



Insertion point tabbed to next clip boundary on a MIDI track in notes view (Tab to Transients disabled)

Tab to Transients Enabled

When Tab to Transients is enabled, pressing Tab moves the Edit insertion to the beginning of the next note on, note off, or clip boundary regardless of the track view (just like with audio transients), but does not make note selections.



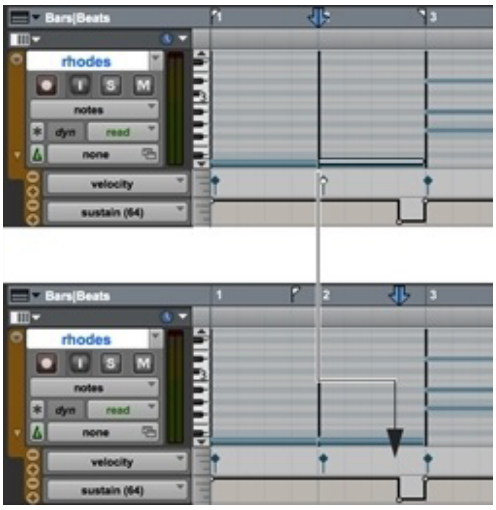
Insertion point tabbed to next MIDI event on a MIDI track in notes view (Tab to Transients enabled)

- *Press Option+Tab (Mac) or Alt+Tab (Windows) to move the insertion point to the previous clip boundary or MIDI event.*

- *Hold the Shift key while pressing Tab—or Option+Tab (Mac) or Alt+Tab (Windows)—to move the insertion point and make or extend the edit selection.*

Tabbing to Notes and MIDI CC Events in Notes View with Controller Lanes Shown

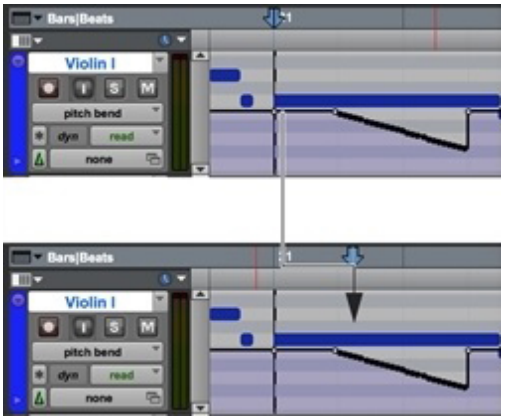
When a MIDI or Instrument track is set to Notes view and Tab to Transients is enabled, press the Tab key to move to the next MIDI note or MIDI CC event (such as MIDI CC 64 Sustain Pedal) shown in a revealed controller lane. Press Option+Tab (Mac) or Alt+Tab (Windows) to move to the previous note or MIDI event.



In Notes view with MIDI controller lanes shown and Tab to Transients enabled, Tab to move to a MIDI CC event

Tabbing to MIDI CC Events in MIDI CC Track Views

When a MIDI or Instrument track is set to any MIDI Controller track view and Tab to Transients is enabled, press the Tab key to move to the next MIDI event shown in that track view. Press Option+Tab (Mac) or Alt+Tab (Windows) to move to the previous MIDI event.



In Pitch Bend view, moving from one pitch bend event to the next using the Tab to Transients

Using the Arrow Keys in Notes or Velocity View or in MIDI Editor Windows

In Notes or Velocity view on MIDI and Instrument tracks, or in MIDI Editor windows, you can use the Arrow Keys (with or without modifier keys) to navigate, select, transpose, or trim MIDI notes, or edit velocities.

Navigating Notes

Use the Left and Right Arrow keys to navigate to and select the previous or the next note.



In Notes view, moving from one note to the next using the Right Arrow key

For MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes view where any MIDI Controller lanes shown, the Left and Right Arrow keys only navigate through MID notes and skip all MIDI CC events shown in any Controller lane.

Selecting Notes

Hold the Shift key while using the Left and Right Arrow keys to extend the note selection.



In Notes view, selecting notes using the Right Arrow key while holding the Shift key

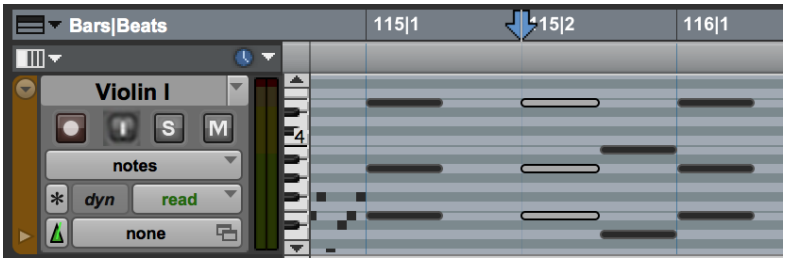
Navigating and Selecting Notes in Chords

When navigating through chords with the Left and Right Arrow keys, each note in the chord is recognized as a single event. This lets you move through each note in the chord, selecting each individually.



In Notes view, navigating the notes of a chord with the Right Arrow key

Use the Shift key with the Left and Right Arrow keys to select more than a single note in a chord.



In Notes view, selecting the notes of a chord using the Right Arrow key while holding the Shift key

Transposing MIDI Notes with the Arrow Keys

Use the Up and Down Arrow keys, with or without additional key modifiers, to transpose selected MIDI notes up and down on MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes or Velocity view, or in MIDI Editor windows.

To transpose selected notes up or down by semitones:

- Press the Up Arrow to transpose up or the Down Arrow to transpose down a semitone.

To transpose selected notes up or down by an octave:

- Press Shift+Up Arrow to transpose up or Shift+Down Arrow to transpose down by an octave.

To transpose notes in key according to Key markers in the Key ruler:

- Press Control+Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Start+Up/Down Arrows (Windows).

To duplicate and transpose selected notes up or down by semitone:

- Press Option+Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Alt+Up/Down Arrows (Windows).

To duplicate and transpose selected notes up or down by octave:

- Press Option+Shift+Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Alt+Shift+Up/Down Arrows (Windows).

To duplicate notes when transposing in key (to create chords):

1. Press Control+Option+Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Start+Alt+Up/Down Arrows (Windows) to duplicate the notes in key.
2. Then Press Control+Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Start+Up/Down Arrows (Windows) to transpose the duplicate notes to the desired chord tone in the key.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to add more notes to the chord.

Trimming MIDI Notes with the Arrow Keys

Use the Left and Right Arrow keys with key modifiers to trim selected MIDI notes on MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes or Velocity view, or in MIDI Editor windows.

To trim the note off value of selected notes incrementally by the current grid value, do one of the following:

- Press Option+Left Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Left Arrow (Windows) to shorten selected notes.
- Press Option+Right Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Right Arrow (Windows) to lengthen selected notes.

To trim the note off value of selected notes incrementally by the next larger grid value of the current grid value, do one of the following:

- Press Option+Shift+Left Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Shift+Left Arrow (Windows) to shorten selected notes.
- Press Option+Shift+Right Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Shift+Right Arrow (Windows) to lengthen selected notes.

To trim the note on value of selected notes incrementally by the current grid value, do one of the following:

- Press Option+Control+Left Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Start+Left Arrow (Windows) to lengthen selected notes.
- Press Option+Control+Right Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Start+Right Arrow (Windows) to shorten selected notes.

To trim the note off value of selected notes incrementally by the next larger grid value of the current grid value, do one of the following:

- Press Option+Control+Shift+Left Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Start+Shift+Left Arrow (Windows) to shorten selected notes.
- Press Option+Control+Shift+Right Arrow (Mac) or Alt+Start+Shift+Right Arrow (Windows) to lengthen selected notes.

Editing MIDI Note Velocities with the Arrow Keys

Use the Up and Down Arrow keys with key modifiers to change the velocities of selected MIDI notes on MIDI and Instrument tracks in Notes or Velocity view, or in MIDI Editor windows.

To increase or decrease the velocities of selected notes in increments of 5:

- Press Command+Up/Down Arrow (Mac) or Control+Up/Down Arrow (Windows).

To increase or decrease the velocities of selected notes in increments of 15:

- Press Command+Shift+Up/Down Arrow (Mac) or Control+Shift+Up/Down Arrow (Windows).

Patch Select (Program and Bank Changes)

Each MIDI and Instrument track can have a default program change that is sent each time the track plays. Additional program changes can be inserted at any point within the track.

Program changes are sent to external MIDI devices. Instrument plugins in Pro Tools do not respond to program change information.

About Program and Bank Changes

The MIDI protocol lets you choose from a range of 128 programs (0–127). However, most MIDI instruments have several banks of 128 programs. To specify a bank, a *bank select* message must be sent. Some instruments use Controller 0 to switch the bank while others use Controller 32; some use a combination of the two. The Patch Select dialog in Pro Tools lets you use either of these bank select messages when inserting a program change event. Refer to the manufacturer's documentation for your MIDI device to see which Controller value it uses.

If you do not know what bank select command your instrument uses, you can record MIDI to Pro Tools while making a bank change from the instrument. Then review the bank select information your instrument has recorded into Pro Tools in the MIDI Event List.

Some older MIDI devices (such as the Kurzweil K1000) use a program change instead of a Bank Select message to switch banks. For these devices you may find it necessary to send two program change messages to access a particular program, where the first sets the bank and the second sets the program.

Default Program Change

The default program change for each MIDI track is specified by clicking on the Patch Select button, from either the Mix or Edit window. Once specified, the default program change message is sent to your instrument when playing the track.

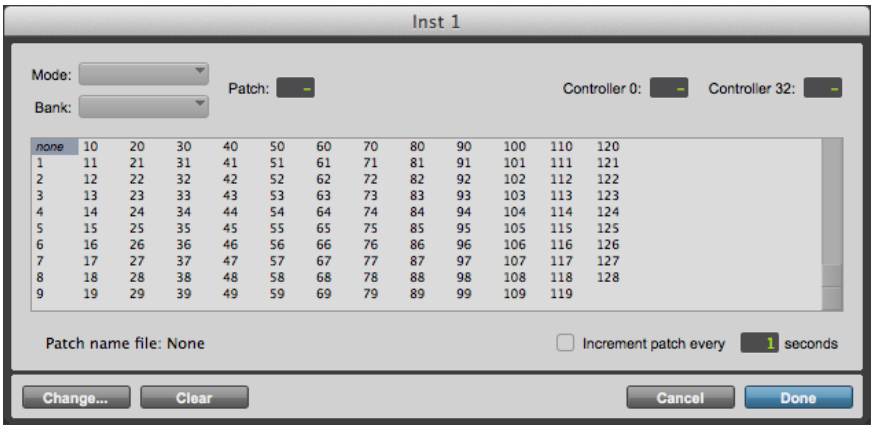
To set the default program change for a MIDI or Instrument track:

1. From the Mix or Edit window, click the Patch Select button.



Patch Select buttons

2. Do one of the following:
   - In the Patch Select dialog, select a program number.



   - If you are using patch name files, select a patch name (see "MIDI Patch Names" below).
3. Click **Done**.

   Once selected, the program number (or patch name) appears in the Patch Select button in the Edit window.



Patch Select button, Edit window

Unlike recorded and inserted program change events, the default program change does not appear in the track's playlist.

To clear the default program change, select **None** in the Patch Select dialog.

MIDI Patch Names

Pro Tools supports XML (Extensible Markup Language) for storing and importing patch names for external MIDI devices (such as MIDI instruments). Pro Tools installs MIDI patch name files (.midnam) for the factory default patch names of many common MIDI devices.

MIDI patch name files (.midnam) can be edited in any text editor, or you can use third-party patch librarian and editor software to create your own custom patch names.

On Mac, these files reside in /Library/Audio/MIDI Patch Names/Avid.

On Windows, these files reside in Program Files\ Common Files\Avid\Pro Tools\MIDI Patch Names\.

To import MIDI patch names into Pro Tools:

1. Choose **Setup > MIDI > MIDI Studio**.
2. Do one of the following depending on your computer platform:
   - On Mac, verify the MIDI Device name in the MIDI Studio window (see "MIDI Studio Setup (Mac)" on page 196).
   - On Windows, verify the MIDI Device name in the MIDI Studio Setup window (see "MIDI Studio Setup (Windows)" on page 201).

   For information on configuring MIDI on Windows and Mac systems, see "Configuring MIDI" on page 196.
3. Verify the Instrument or MIDI track output is correctly assigned to the MIDI device.
4. Click the Instrument or MIDI track Patch Select button.



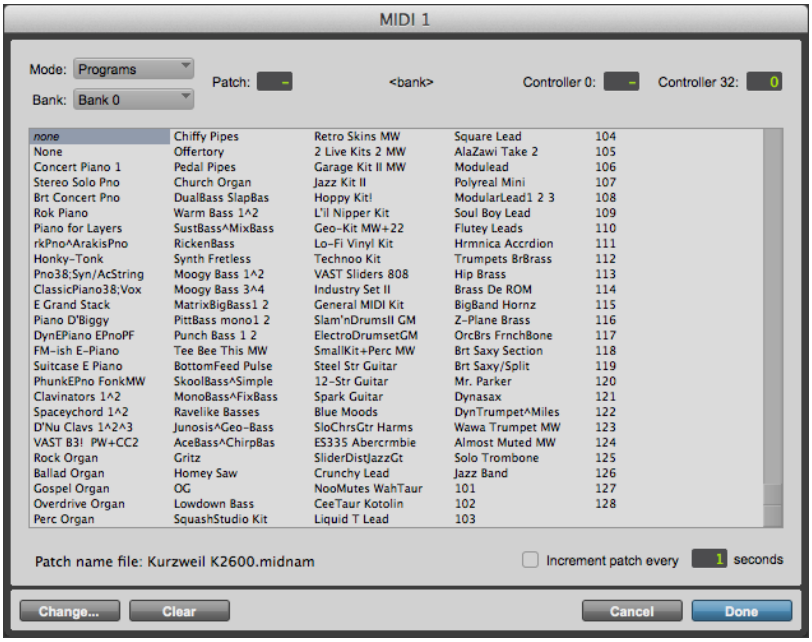
Patch Select button, Edit window



Patch Select button, Mix window

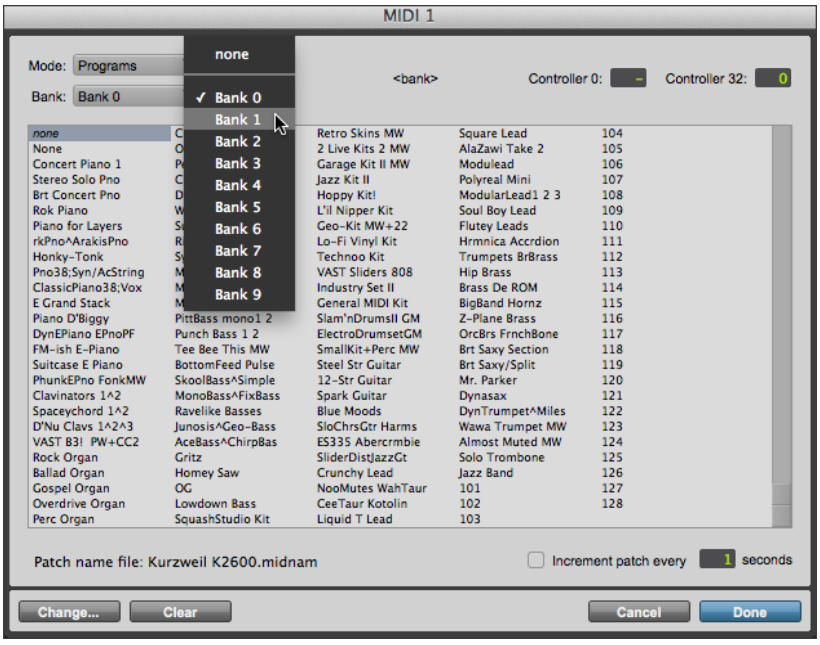
5. In the Patch Select dialog, click **Change**.
6. In the Open dialog, do one of the following:
   - On Mac, navigate to /Library/Audio/MIDI Patch Names/Avid/‹name of manufacturer›, and select the MIDI Patch Name file (.midnam) for the MIDI device.
   - On Windows, navigate to Program Files\Common Files\Avid\Pro Tools\MIDI Patch Names\‹name of manufacturer›, and select the MIDI Patch Name file (.midnam) for the MIDI device.
7. Select the MIDI Patch Name file (.midnam) for the MIDI device.
8. Click **Open**.

   The Patch Select dialog is populated by patch names from the selected file.



Patch Select dialog with patch names

9. For MIDI devices that have multiple banks of patches, select which bank of patches you want from the **Bank** pop-up menu.



Choosing a bank in Patch Select dialog

Once patch names have been imported into Pro Tools, they are available for that MIDI device in all sessions.

To clear patch names:

1. In the Patch Select dialog, click the **Clear** button.
2. Click **Done**.

Inserting and Editing Program Changes

Program changes can be inserted into a track's playlist with the Pencil tool. Existing program changes can be edited, moved, and copied and pasted.

On some instruments, changing programs during playback can interrupt playback. To avoid this, place program change events in the track where there are no notes sounding.

To insert a program change with the Pencil tool:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Program Change view.
   - Reveal the Controller lane for the MIDI or Instrument track and show Program Change.
2. If you want the inserted event to snap to a Grid value, enable Grid mode.
3. Click with the Pencil tool in the track's playlist at the point where you want to insert the program change.
4. In the Patch Select dialog, select a program number (or patch name) and, if necessary, specify a bank change value.
5. Click **Done** to insert the program change event in the track's playlist.



Program change event

To edit a program change event:

1. With the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool, double-click the program change event you want to edit.
2. In the Patch Select dialog, select the new program number, or name and specify a bank change value (if necessary).
3. Click **Done**.

To move a program change event:

- With the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool, drag the program change event left or right.

  If the Edit mode is set to Grid, the dragged event snaps to the nearest Grid boundary. If the Edit mode is set to Spot, the Spot dialog opens.

  The placement of program changes can also be adjusted with Shift (see "Shift Command" on page 1234) or Nudge (see "Nudging Clips" on page 934).

To delete a program change event:

1. With the Track View or Controller lane set to Program Change view, click the program change event with any Grabber tool to select it.

   If the clip contains other events you want to delete, you can delete the clip and the Program Change event will also be deleted.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Clear** to remove the selected events from the track.
   - Press Delete (Mac) or Backspace (Windows).

Individual program change events can also be deleted by Option-clicking (Mac) or Alt-clicking (Windows) them with the Pencil tool.

Auditioning Programs

When the Patch Select dialog is open, Pro Tools can automatically scroll through the different patches for a track's assigned MIDI device.

To audition patches:

1. If you want to audition patches for a MIDI track or Instrument during playback, click Play in the Transport.
2. Open the Patch Select dialog by clicking the Patch Select button, or by inserting or editing a program change event in a MIDI or Instrument track.
3. Click a program number (or patch name)—the starting point from which you will scroll through the patches.
4. Type a value for the number of seconds that will elapse between each program change.
5. Select the **Increment Patch** option.

   After the specified number of seconds, Pro Tools selects the next patch and transmits the program change to the track's assigned MIDI output.
6. When you are finished auditioning settings, deselect the **Increment Patch** option and select the program number (or patch name) you want and click **Done**.

System Exclusive Events

System Exclusive (Sysex) events can be recorded to MIDI or Instrument tracks in Pro Tools (see "MIDI Step Input" on page 827). Once the events are recorded, they appear in the track's playlist as blocks when the Track View is set to **Sysex** or a Controller lane set to **Sysex** is shown.



Sysex event block, Sysex view shown

While the contents of recorded System Exclusive events cannot be directly edited in Pro Tools, the events can be moved or nudged, copied and pasted, or deleted.

To record a Sysex event:

1. Create a new MIDI track.
2. Set the MIDI track Input to the MIDI port to which your MIDI device is connected.
3. Configure your MIDI device to send Sysex (such as a bulk dump).
4. Start recording in the Transport.

   To begin recording the Sysex transfer from your MIDI device at the Timeline insertion point, enable Wait For Note.
5. Start the Sysex transfer from your MIDI device.
6. When the Sysex transfer from your MIDI device is complete, click Stop in the Transport.

To move a Sysex event:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Sysex view.
   - Reveal the Controller lane for the MIDI or Instrument track and show Sysex.
2. With any Grabber tool, drag the Sysex event left or right.

   If the Edit mode is set to Grid, the dragged event snaps to the nearest Grid boundary. If the Edit mode is set to Spot, the Spot dialog opens.

   The placement of Sysex event blocks can also be adjusted with Shift (see "Shift Command" on page 1234) or Nudge (see "Nudging Clips" on page 934).

To delete one or more Sysex events:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Set the MIDI or Instrument track to Sysex view.
   - Reveal the Controller lane for the MIDI or Instrument track and show Sysex.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Clear`** to remove the selected events from the track.
   - Press Delete (Mac) or Backspace (Windows).

   Individual Sysex event blocks can also be deleted by Option-clicking (Mac) or Alt-clicking (Windows) them with the Pencil tool.

Note and Controller Chasing

Note Chasing

Note Chasing allows long, sustained MIDI notes to be heard when playing from a point after their start time. For example, if a note's start time is at 1|1|000 and lasts for 8 measures (until 9|1|000), note chasing lets you begin playing from bar 5 and still hear the note that started at 1|1|000 as it continues to sustain until 9|1|000.

`Note Chasing` is an option that can turned on and off individually for each MIDI or Instrument track. By default, new MIDI and Instrument tracks have **`Note Chasing`** enabled.

To enable Note Chasing for a MIDI track:

- Click the track's Playlist selector and select the **Note Chasing** option.



Note Chasing enabled in Playlist selector

Make sure to disable **Note Chasing** when working with samplers that are playing loops. If a MIDI track, for example, is triggering a 4-bar drum loop and you begin playing at bar 3, the loop will begin playing at the wrong time and be out of synchronization with the other tracks.

Controller and Program Chasing

Pro Tools always chases continuous controller events and program changes for MIDI tracks. This ensures that controller values and patches for MIDI devices are always set correctly.

For example, suppose a MIDI track lasting 32 measures starts with a MIDI volume of 127 and in the last bar fades down to 0. If after playing the track in its entirety you attempt to play from bar 8, the initial MIDI volume of 127 is chased and sent to the track's assigned device—otherwise the track would not be heard since the most recent volume event sent would have been 0.

Chasing also occurs for a MIDI track's default program change, along with any program change events residing within the track. Therefore, if you have chosen a default program change for a track, when playing from any point within the track, the program change event is sent to the track's assigned device.

Default Controller Values and Chasing

Though new MIDI tracks appear to have default values for continuous controller playlists, this is actually not the case. For example, when viewing a MIDI track's Mod Wheel playlist, you'll see that the breakpoint line is set to a default of zero. However, since the modulation wheel on your MIDI controller may be purposely set to a different value, the default value in the track is not transmitted when playing.

For example, if you record Mod Wheel automation that changes from 0–90 towards the end of the track, and you then play from the beginning of the track, or from anywhere before the change, having the Mod Wheel value remains at 90 until the 0 value is reached is not likely to be what you want.

To ensure that the default controller value for a playlist is sent (and chased), click the initial breakpoint at the beginning of the track, move it slightly, and set it back to the default value.

Offsetting MIDI Tracks

Pro Tools can offset MIDI tracks globally or individually.

When Delay Compensation is active, MIDI and Instrument tracks are automatically delay-compensated to provide low latency monitoring. For more information, see "Delay Compensation for MIDI" on page 1505.

Global MIDI Playback Offset

Pro Tools provides a preference for MIDI offset that lets MIDI and Instrument tracks play back earlier or later (than audio tracks) by the specified number of samples. The offset affects playback only and does not alter in any way how MIDI data is displayed in the Edit window.

This capability is provided in large part to compensate for the audio monitoring latency in host-based Pro Tools. If you are monitoring the output of external MIDI instruments with an external mixer or sound system (or headphones), there is no latency. If, however, you are monitoring the output of your MIDI devices through a Pro Tools interface (such as 003 family devices), your MIDI tracks sound slightly later than your audio tracks. The larger the setting for the **H/W Buffer Size** (128, 256, 512, or 1024 samples), the larger the latency.

By configuring the **Global MIDI Playback Offset** setting, you can align your MIDI tracks to play back slightly earlier (by a specified number of samples), thereby compensating for any latency when monitoring audio in Pro Tools host-based systems.

To configure the Global MIDI Playback Offset:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **MIDI** tab.
2. Enter the number of samples (–10,000 to 10,000) for the **Global MIDI Playback Offset** setting. A negative value causes the MIDI tracks to play back earlier than the audio tracks; a positive value causes the MIDI tracks to play back later. To allow for monitoring latency in Pro Tools host-based systems, set the offset to a value that is roughly equivalent to the **H/W Buffer Size**.
3. Click **OK**.

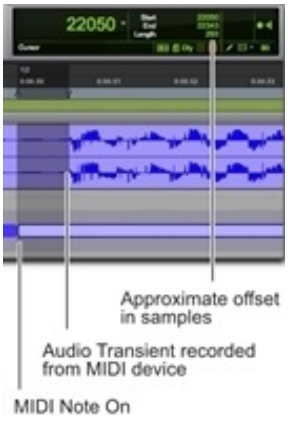
The Global MIDI Playback Offset can also be set from the MIDI Track Offsets window. You can also apply MIDI Real-Time Properties delay to offset MIDI (see "MIDI Real-Time Properties" on page 1062).

Individual MIDI and Instrument Track Offsets

You can offset individual MIDI and Instrument track offsets in Pro Tools to compensate for delays in MIDI devices (the time it takes to trigger events on a sampler or synth).

For example, if you have some kick drums that are being played by an audio track in Pro Tools and want them to be exactly synchronized with kick drums that are being played by a MIDI device, you may need to use a MIDI offset. In this example, it will usually take at least 5 ms to trigger the MIDI notes, and it could take even longer, depending on the MIDI device.

You can measure the latency for a MIDI device assigned to a MIDI track by recording its audio output back into Pro Tools. Compare the sample locations for the recorded audio events against the original MIDI notes to calculate the latency.



Measuring MIDI latency

To configure a MIDI or Instrument track offset for a track:

1. Choose **Event > MIDI Track Offsets**.



2. Click in the Sample Offset column for the MIDI or Instrument track and enter the number of samples (–10,000 to 10,000) for the offset. A negative value causes the MIDI or Instrument tracks to play back earlier than the audio tracks; a positive value causes the MIDI or Instrument tracks to play back later.

   The equivalent offset in milliseconds is displayed in the msec Offset column. This value cannot be edited, but updates when a new value is entered in the Sample Offset column.

3. Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) to accept the entered offset value.

   To reset all offsets for all MIDI and Instrument tracks, click the **Reset** button in the upper left of the window.

Stuck Notes

If you encounter stuck notes with any of your MIDI devices, you can silence them with the **All MIDI Notes Off** command.

To turn off all stuck notes:

- Choose **Event > All MIDI Notes Off**.

Press Command+Shift+Period (.) (Mac) or Control+Shift+Period (.) (Windows) for the All MIDI Notes Off command.

Remove Duplicate Notes

The **Remove Duplicate Notes** command is used to remove duplicate MIDI notes. If a note starts within the first 25% of the duration of a note of the same pitch which is already sounding (or within an eighth-note, whichever is shorter), it is considered a duplicate and is combined with the previous note. If it starts later than that, the first note is shortened so that it ends at the same tick at which the new one starts.

To remove duplicate notes:

1. Make an Edit selection including the duplicate notes you want to remove.
2. Choose **Event > Remove Duplicate Notes**.

Quantize MIDI

Pro Tools provides several different ways for quantizing MIDI notes and events:

- Input Quantize (see "Input Quantize" on page 812)
- Quantize Events (see "Quantize" on page 1402)
- MIDI Quantize command (see "MIDI Quantize Command" below)
- Quantize tools (in the Edit window and MIDI Editor window toolbars) (see "Edit and MIDI Editor Window Toolbar Quantize Controls" on page 1405)
- MIDI Real-Time Quantize property ("Quantize" on page 1064)

MIDI Quantize Command

The **`MIDI Quantize`** command lets you quantize selected MIDI notes without necessarily having to open the Quantize MIDI Operations window. This command follows the current settings of the Quantize page of the MIDI Operations window whether it is open or not.

To quantize MIDI note:

1. Select the MIDI notes and events that you want to quantize.
2. If necessary, configure the settings in the Quantize MIDI Operations window (**`Event > MIDI Operations > Quantize`**).
3. Do one of the following:
   - If the Quantize MIDI Operations window is open, click **`Apply`**.
   - Choose **`Clip > MIDI Quantize`**.
   - Click the Quantize button in the Edit window or MIDI Editor window toolbar.
   - Press Command+Option+0 (Mac) or Control+Alt+0 (Windows).

   The selected MIDI notes (and events) are quantized according to the current settings in the Quantize MIDI Operations window.

MIDI Real-Time Properties

MIDI Real-Time Properties let you change some MIDI properties of MIDI and Instrument tracks (or MIDI clips) during playback. There are five types of MIDI Real-Time Properties: Quantize, Duration, Delay, Velocity, and Transpose.

MIDI Real-Time Properties can be adjusted during playback, so you can listen to the results. Once you have found the settings you want, you can write the settings to the selected tracks or clips. This overwrites the corresponding MIDI properties on selected tracks or clips and resets the Real-Time Properties display to its default settings.

Real-Time Properties can be adjusted in the Real-Time Properties view in the Edit window, or in the Real-Time Properties window.



For MIDI Real-Time Properties to apply to incoming MIDI data with MIDI Thru enabled, the corresponding MIDI and Instrument tracks must be record-enabled.

Real-Time Properties View

Real-Time Properties view in the Edit window only applies to tracks. To apply Real-Time Properties to clips, use the Real-Time Properties window (see "Real-Time Properties Window" on the next page).

To enable Real-Time Properties view in the Edit window:

- Select **View > Edit Window > Real-Time Properties**.

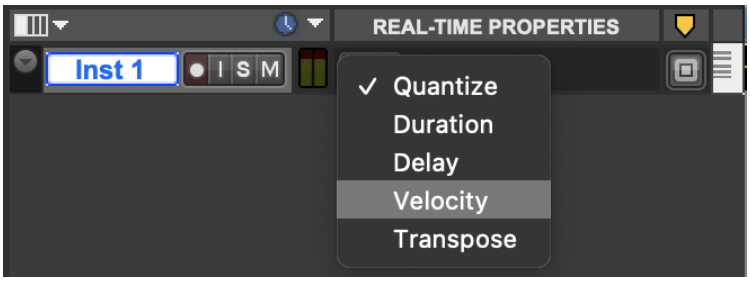


Real-Time Properties column in the Edit window

For Micro, Mini, and Small track heights, the Real-Time Properties column only displays one or two properties, accordingly. The first one or two properties that are enabled are displayed automatically.

To select a different Real-Time Property in Mini or Small track height view:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) on a real-time property element to select a different element from the pop-up menu.



Real-Time Properties pop-up menu with Mini Track Height

Real-Time Properties Window

Using the Real-Time Properties window, you can apply Real-Time Properties to selected tracks or clips.

To open the Real-Time Properties window:

- Choose **Event > MIDI Real-Time Properties**.

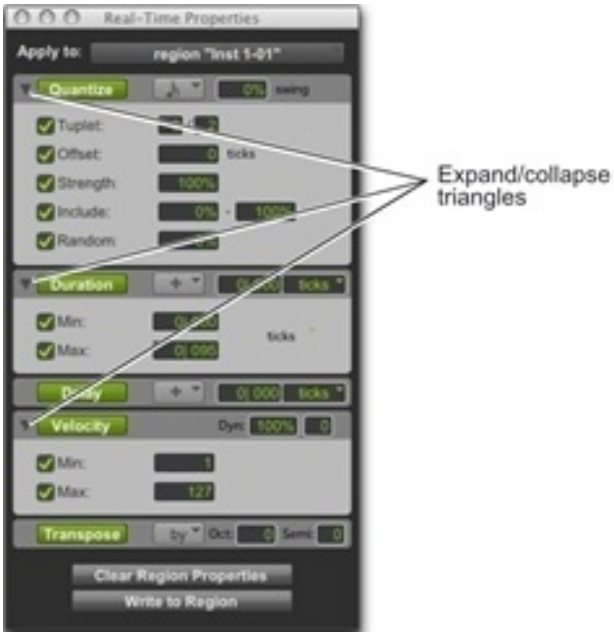


Real-Time Properties window with properties enabled

The Real-Time Properties window can be used to apply either track-based or clip-based Real-Time Properties by making an Edit selection and selecting tracks or clips from the Apply To pop-up menu.

Expanded Real-Time Properties Window

In the Real-Time Properties window, Quantize, Duration, and Velocity each provide an expand/collapse triangle to show or hide additional settings.



Real-Time Properties window, expanded view

Enabling Real-Time Properties

To enable Real-Time Properties:

1. Select a track, or make an Edit selection.

   When using Real-Time Properties, enable Link Track and Edit Selection mode to make a track selection from an Edit selection (see "Linking or Unlinking Track and Edit Selections" on page 904).

2. In Real-Time Properties view in the Edit window, or in the Real-Time Properties window, select Real-Time Properties by clicking the property name (Quantize, Duration, Delay, Velocity, or Transpose). Enabled Real-Time Properties are highlighted and display their settings.
3. If you are using the Real-Time Properties window and Link Track and Edit Selection mode is enabled, select the track or clip to affect from the Apply To pop-up menu.
4. Configure the Real-Time Properties settings (see "Real-Time Properties Settings" below).

   Enabled Real-Time Properties are heard on playback and play through for the selected tracks and clips.

Real-Time Properties Settings

Quantize

Quantize either can be based on a grid or a groove template. For grid quantize, additional tuplet and grid offset settings are available in addition to the standard MIDI quantize properties. For groove quantize, additional controls are provided to set the extent to which the groove's duration and velocities are applied. Both grid and groove quantize also let you set a strength amount, an "include" range, and a randomize amount.

Quantize cannot be applied as a Real-Time Property to MIDI Input and Thru.

Quantize Pop-Up Menu

Select the quantize value, including all standard note rhythm values between whole notes and 64th notes, including dotted and triplet options. This pop-up menu also provides access to all standard and custom groove templates.



Selecting a Grid Quantize value or a Groove Template

Swing Value

Enter the amount of swing as a percentage between 0 and 300%.

Tuplet Value

Enable **`Tuplet`** and enter the ratio for the tuplet (1–99), such as 3 to 2 or 5 to 4. **`Tuplet`** is only available in the expanded Real-Time Properties window.

Offset Value

Enable **`Offset`** and enter the offset value in Ticks between –2000 and 2000. **`Offset`** is only available in the expanded Real-Time Properties window.

Strength Value

Enable **`Strength`** and enter the amount as a percentage between 0 and 100%. **`Strength`** is only available in the expanded Real-Time Properties window.

Include

Enable **`Include`** and enter the range between 0 and 100%. **`Include`** is only available in the expanded Real-Time Properties window.

Random

Enable **`Random`** and enter a percentage between 0 and 100%. **`Random`** is only available in the expanded Real-Time Properties window.

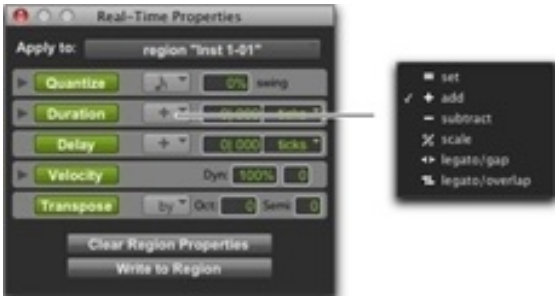
Duration

Duration can be used to increase or decrease the duration of MIDI notes by a fixed amount or by a percentage. This is useful for creating legato or staccato passages.

⚠ **Duration cannot be applied as a Real-Time Property to MIDI Input and Thru.**

Duration Mode Pop-Up Menu

Select one of the following options from the Duration Mode pop-up menu: **`Set`**, **`Add`**, **`Subtract`**, **`Scale`**, **`Legato/Gap`**, or **`Legato/Overlap`**.



Set

Select to set notes to the specified duration.

Add

Select to add the specified duration to the current duration of each note.

Subtract

Select to subtract the specified duration from the current duration of each note.

Scale

Select to scale the current duration of each note by a percentage from 1 to 400%.

Legato/Gap

Select to extend each note to the following note. The specified duration is the subtracted to create a consistent gap between notes.

Legato/Overlap

Select to extend each note to the following note. The specified duration is then added to create a consistent amount of overlap.

Duration Amount

If the Ticks/Notes pop-up menu is set to ticks, enter a duration as a number of quarter notes plus a number of ticks, such as 4|000. If the Ticks/Notes pop-up menu is set to a note size, enter a number to by which to multiply that note size, such as seven 16th notes.

Ticks/Notes Pop-Up Menu

The Ticks/Notes pop-up menu lets you select either Ticks or a note size for Note Durations. There is also a Ticks/Notes pop-up menu for the Minimum and Maximum Durations options.



Minimum and Maximum Durations

Enable either or both minimum and maximum durations and enter a value in quarter notes plus ticks or as a multiple of a note size. The Minimum (**Min**) and Maximum (**Max**) Durations options are only available in the expanded Real-Time Properties window.

Delay

Delay lets you delay or advance all MIDI data in the selected clip or track. Select "+" from the Delay pop-up menu to delay MIDI data, or select "–" to advance MIDI data. Select **Ticks** or Milliseconds (**MS**) from the Ticks/Milliseconds pop-up menu. Enter the Delay amount in Tick or Millisecond values. Delay is limited to a maximum of value of 2000 ms or 999 ticks.



Duration cannot be applied as a Real-Time Property to MIDI Input and Thru.

Velocity

Velocity lets you change MIDI velocity by a percentage or by constant value. Enter a percentage value in the Dynamics field to scale velocity around the median velocity of 64. You can also enter an offset by adding (+) or subtracting (–) values between 1 and 127. You can also enter Minimum and Maximum Velocity value limits. The Minimum (**Min**) and Maximum (**Max**) Velocity options are only available in the expanded Real-Time Properties window.

Velocity can be applied as a Real-Time Property to MIDI Input and Thru on record-enabled MIDI and Instrument tracks.

Transpose

Transpose lets you transpose MIDI notes up or down by a specified number of octaves and semitones, or in key by scale steps (based on the Key Signature ruler). You can also transpose to a specified pitch. Select **By**, **To**, or **In** from the Transpose pop-up menu to transpose by an interval, to a specific pitch, or in key by scale steps.

To transpose by an interval, enter the number of octaves and semitones as a positive or negative numbers.

To transpose to a specific pitch, enter the MIDI note name.

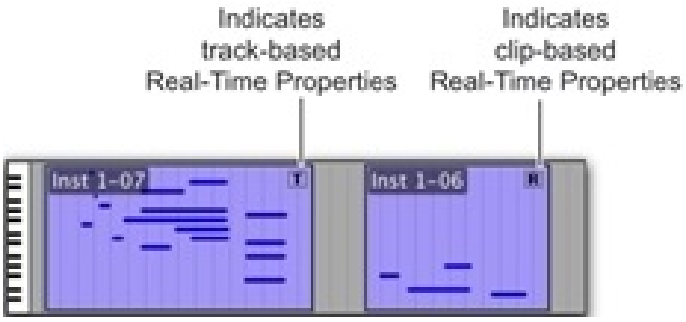
To transpose in key by scale steps, enter the number of steps as a positive or negative numbers. For example, enter +2 to transpose up by thirds in key (a unison plus a second equals a third).

Transpose can be applied as a Real-Time Property to MIDI Input and Thru on record-enabled MIDI and Instrument tracks.

Real-Time Properties on Tracks and Clips

Real-Time Properties can be configured to apply to an entire track (all clips on that track), or on a clip-by-clip basis. Track-level properties also provide real-time MIDI input processing of velocity and transposition.

The presence of track-based Real-Time Properties are indicated by a “T” displayed in the upper right-hand corner of MIDI clips. Clip-based Real-Time Properties are indicated by an “R” displayed in the upper right-hand corner of the clip. Clips boundaries including the “T” and the “R” displays are indicated in Notes view and in MIDI Editor windows, but not in the Score Editor window.



Track-based and clip-based Real-Time Property indicators

Clip-Based Real-Time Properties

Clip-based Real-Time Properties can only be applied using the Real-Time Properties window (**`Event > MIDI Real-Time Properties`**). Real-Time Properties can be applied to multiple clips. Once Real-Time Properties have been assigned to a clip, the clip can be moved or copied and pasted and retain its Real-Time Properties.

Track-Based Real-Time Properties

All track-based Real-Time Properties consistently apply to MIDI data throughout the entire track. However, clips with clip-based Real-Time Properties will take precedence over any track-based Real-Time Properties. You can clear clip-based Real-Time Properties by selecting the clip and clicking the **`Clear Clip Properties`** button in the Real-Time Properties window (see "Writing Real-Time Properties to Tracks or Clips" below).

For greater flexibility, when Real-Time Properties are assigned on a track basis they are actually contained in a track playlist. This lets you create multiple playlists containing different Real-Time Property settings.

Writing Real-Time Properties to Tracks or Clips

Once you have found the settings you want, you can write Real-Time Properties to the selected tracks or clips using the Real-Time Properties window. Real-Time Properties are applied to the current MIDI data on the track or in a clip.

To write Real-Time Properties to tracks:

1. Enable Link Track and Edit Selection.
2. Select one or more tracks to which you want to apply Real-Time Properties.
3. Open the Real-Time Properties window (**`Event > MIDI Real-Time Properties`**).
4. Select **`Tracks`** from the **`Real-Time Properties Apply To`** pop-up menu.
5. Configure the Real-Time Property settings.

6. Do one of the following:
   - Click the **Write to Track** button in the Real-Time Properties window.
   - Choose **Track > Write MIDI Real-Time Properties**.

To write Real-Time Properties to clips:

1. Select one or more clips to which you want to apply Real-Time Properties.
2. Open the Real-Time Properties window (**Event > MIDI Real-Time Properties**).
3. If Link Track and Edit Selection is enabled, select **Clips** from the **Real-Time Properties Apply To** pop-up menu.
4. Configure the Real-Time Property settings.
5. Click the **Write to Clip** button.

To clear Real-Time Properties from a clip:

1. Select the clip for which you want to clear Real-Time Properties.
2. Open the Real-Time Properties window (**Event > MIDI Real-Time Properties**).
3. Select **Clips** from the **Real-Time Properties Apply To** pop-up menu.
4. Click the **Clear Clip Properties** button.

Real-Time Properties In the MIDI Event List

In the MIDI Event List, the presence of track-based Real-Time Properties are indicated by a "T" displayed to the right of each event. Clip-based Real-Time Properties are indicated by an "R."

For more information on the MIDI Event List, see "MIDI Event List" on page 1123.

Display of Real-Time Properties Effects

The **Display Events as Modified by the Real-Time Properties** option determines if Pro Tools displays the effects of Real-Time Properties in both the Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, the Score Editor window, and the MIDI Event List. The Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, the Score Editor window, and the MIDI Event List all display the effects of Real-Time Properties when the **Display Events as Modified by Real-Time Properties** option is enabled. With this option disabled, the effects of Real-Time Properties are heard but not seen—you *see* the notes and other MIDI events at their original locations, pitches, durations, and velocities, but you *hear* them as they are affected by the Real-Time Properties settings.

To enable or disable the Display Events as Modified by Real-Time Properties option:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **MIDI** tab.
2. Enable or disable the **Display Events as Modified by Real-Time Properties** option.
3. Click **OK**.

Real-Time Properties Effects Displayed in the MIDI Event List

The MIDI Event List takes into account the effect of Real-Time Properties whenever the **Display Events as Modified by Real-Time Properties** option is enabled. When editing or inserting an event in a track or clip with active Real-Time Properties, Pro Tools takes the properties into account and edits or inserts the event in a different place if necessary to match the effect of the Real-Time Properties.

Real-Time Properties Effects Displayed in the Edit Window

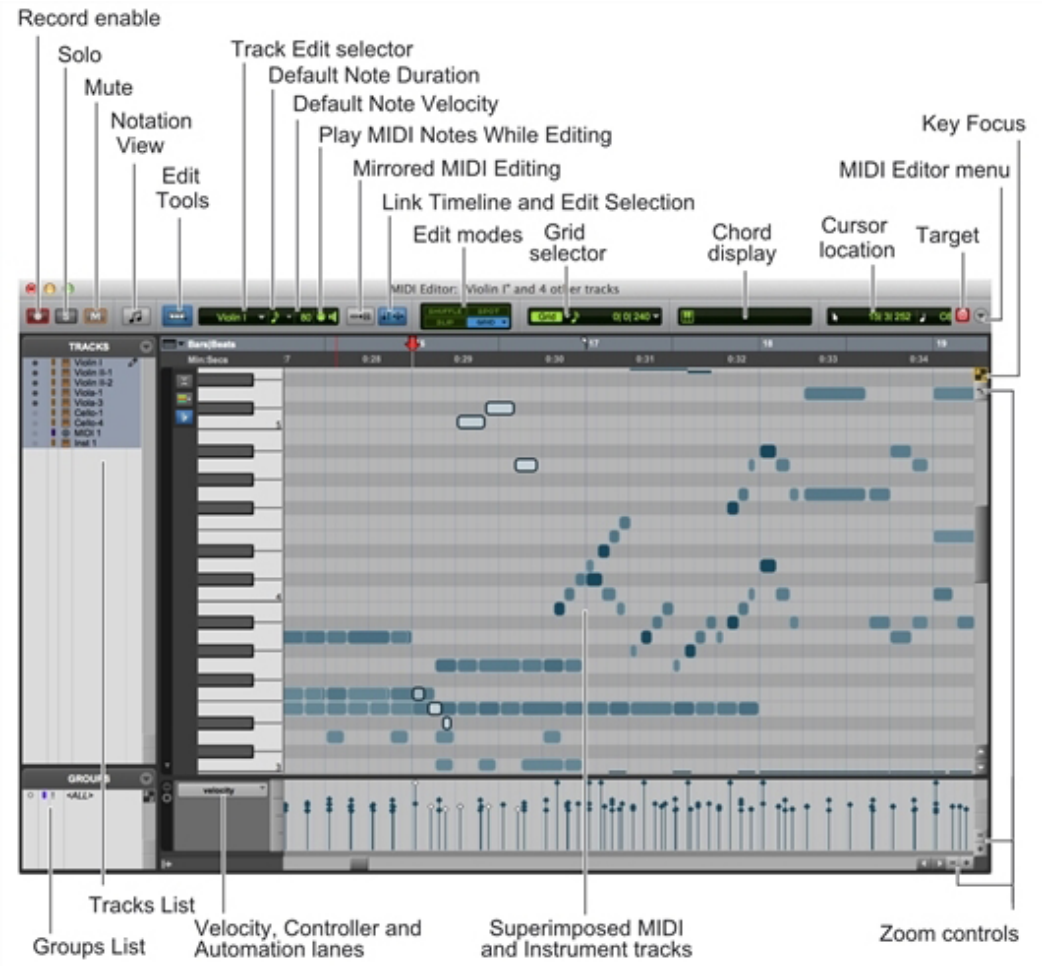
MIDI events appear where they sound in the Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, and the Score Editor window, with the Display **`Events as Modified by Real-Time Properties`** option enabled in the MIDI preferences. However, MIDI events are not actually written to their modified locations until you write the Real-Time Properties to the track or clip.

When moving MIDI events, the actual locations (pitch or time) move by the amount the events are dragged, but the effect of Real-Time Properties is displayed.

When inserting an event in a track or clip with active properties, Pro Tools takes the properties into account and edits or inserts the event in a different place if necessary to match the effect of the Real-Time Properties.

40 MIDI Editors

Pro Tools provides MIDI Editor windows for detailed MIDI editing.



MIDI Editor window

Superimposed MIDI and Instrument Tracks

MIDI Editor windows display and let you edit MIDI data (notes, velocities, and continuous controller data) for one or more MIDI or Instrument tracks. When displaying multiple tracks in a MIDI Editor window, MIDI notes from different tracks are superimposed. MIDI Editor windows can also show Automation and MIDI CC lanes.

Automation and Controller Lanes

Velocity, other continuous controller data (MIDI and Instrument tracks), and automation data (Instrument tracks only), can be edited along with MIDI notes and appear in *Controller lanes* under the Notes pane. Velocities for MIDI notes on multiple tracks are also superimposed in the Velocity lane. However, for all other automation and controller data, additional lanes are shown for each automation or controller type for each track.

For example, if two Instrument tracks are shown in a MIDI Editor window, the MIDI notes for each track are superimposed in the Notes pane and the velocities for each track are superimposed in the Velocity lane. However, you would see two Mod Wheel Controller lanes, one for each track; and you would see two Volume lanes, one for each track.

Opening a MIDI Editor Window

To open a MIDI Editor window, do one of the following:

- Choose **Window > MIDI Editor**.
- In the Edit window, Right-click a MIDI clip on the track, or the track name in the track controls or in the Track List, and choose **Open In MIDI Editor** or **Open in Docked MIDI Editor**.
- In the Score Editor window, Right-click anywhere on the score, or on a track name in the Track List, and choose **Open In MIDI Editor** or **Open in Docked MIDI Editor**.

Press Control+"=" (Mac) or Start+"=" (Windows) to open a MIDI Editor window.

If the MIDI Editor option is selected as the "Double Clicking a MIDI Clip Opens" setting in the Pro Tools MIDI Preferences, you can double-click a MIDI clip to open it in a MIDI Editor.

To open additional MIDI Editor windows, do one of the following:

- Deselect the Target button in the open MIDI Editor window and open another MIDI Editor window.
- Right-click in the open MIDI Editor window and select **Open in New MIDI Editor**.

To bring an open MIDI Editor window to the front:

- Choose **Window > MIDI Editor** and select the MIDI Editor window you want.

To cycle through all open MIDI Editor windows, press Control+"=" (Mac) or Start+"=" (Windows) repeatedly until the window you want is in the front.

MIDI Editor Window Toolbar

The MIDI Editor window toolbar is similar to the Edit window toolbar, but with a few exceptions. Each MIDI Editor window and the Edit window can be configured independently of one another. For example, you can have Notation view enabled in one MIDI Editor window, but not another; or you can have a MIDI Editor window set to Grid mode, but the Edit window set to Slip mode. You can also customize the toolbar in MIDI Editor windows.

Record-Enable, Solo, and Mute Buttons



In a MIDI editor window, the Record-enable, Solo, and Mute buttons affect tracks in all windows. They let you either audition the tracks shown in the current MIDI Editor window without the rest of the mix, or let you hear just the mix without the tracks shown in the MIDI Editor window. Additionally, these buttons provide a quick visual indication as to whether or not any MIDI or Instrument tracks are record-enabled, soloed, or muted.

Record-Enable

The Record-enable button lets you record-enable (or record-disable) all the tracks currently displayed in the MIDI Editor window.

Solo

The Solo button lets you solo all the tracks currently displayed in the MIDI Editor window.

Mute

The Mute button lets you mute all the tracks currently displayed in the MIDI Editor window.

Mixed Record-Enable, Mute, and Solo States

The Record-enable, Solo, and Mute buttons in MIDI Editor windows are global controls in that they affect all tracks shown in a MIDI Editor window. If you independently record-enable, solo, or mute tracks in the Edit window that are also shown in a MIDI Editor window, the appearance of the Record-enable, Solo, and Mute buttons update to indicate mixed states. Mixed states occur when one or more tracks shown in the MIDI Editor window, but not all, are record-enable, soloed, or muted respectively.

Notation View



The Notation view button lets you view MIDI notes in the MIDI Editor window as music notation. In Notation view, MIDI and Instrument tracks are not superimposed, but are shown as staves just like in the Score Editor window.

You can access the Notation Display Track Settings in a MIDI Editor window when in Notation view. Select the Notation Display Track Settings option from the Track List menu or Right-click in the Notes pane and select the Notation Display Track Settings option from the Right-click menu. For more information, see "Notation Display Track Settings" on page 1110.

Edit Tools

The Edit tools in MIDI Editor windows can be viewed as a single tool with a pop-up menu for selecting other tools, or as an expanded, complete row of Edit tool icons just like in the Edit window. The Edit tools in MIDI Editor windows function exactly the same way for MIDI data as in the Edit window. Edit tool settings can be set independently in each MIDI Editor window, and are independent of tool selection in the Edit window and Score Editor.

To view the Expanded Edit tools in a MIDI Editor window, do one of the following:

- Click the MIDI Editor Window Toolbar menu and select **Expanded Edit Tools**.
- Right-click in the toolbar and select **Expanded Edit Tools**.

To revert to the single Edit Tool icon with the Edit Tool pop-up menu:

- Deselect **Expanded Edit Tools**.

MIDI Editing Controls

The MIDI Editing controls function exactly the same way in MIDI Editor windows as in the Edit window.



Play MIDI Notes When Editing, Link Timeline and Edit Selection, and Mirrored MIDI Editing are all global settings that are available in the Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, and in the Score Editor window.

Track Edit Selector

If more than one MIDI or Instrument track is shown in the MIDI Editor window, the Track Edit selector lets you select which track is "pencil-enabled." You can manually insert MIDI notes only in pencil-enabled tracks. You can also pencil-enable tracks in the Track List (see "Manually Inserting MIDI Notes" on page 1091).

Default Note Duration

The Default Note Duration selector lets you define the default note duration for manually inserted notes.

Default Note On Velocity

The Default Note On Velocity setting lets you define the default Note On velocity for manually inserted notes.

Play MIDI Notes When Editing

When enabled, Play MIDI Notes When Editing causes MIDI notes to sound when you insert them with the Pencil tool, click them with the Grabber tool, Tab to them, or select them with the Note Selector tool.

Link Timeline and Edit Selection

When this button is enabled, the Timeline and Edit selections are linked. When it is disabled, you can make Timeline and Edit selections independently of one another.

Mirrored MIDI Editing

Mirrored MIDI Editing lets you edit MIDI clips and have your edits apply to every copy of the same MIDI clip. This can be particularly useful when editing looped MIDI clips.

⚠ **If Mirrored MIDI Editing mode is disabled, and you edit notes of looped clips in Notes view, the edit flattens the loop. Similarly, editing clip groups separates the clip groups.**

Edit Modes

The Edit modes in MIDI Editor windows function exactly the same way for MIDI data as in the Edit window. Edit mode settings are unique to each MIDI Editor window and are also set independently of the Edit window.



Cursor Location Display

The Cursor Location display in MIDI Editor windows functions exactly the same way in MIDI Editor windows as in the Edit window.

Edit Selection Display

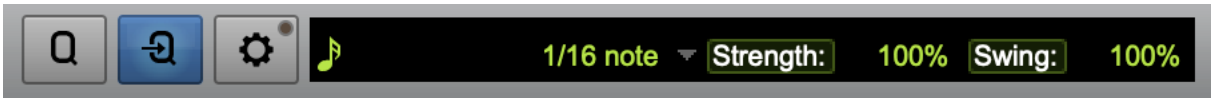
The Edit Selection display in MIDI Editor windows functions exactly the same way for MIDI data in MIDI Editor windows as in the Edit window. The Selection display can be shown or hidden in the Toolbar.

To show (or hide) the Edit Selection display in a MIDI Editor window, do one of the following:

- Click the MIDI Editor Window Toolbar menu and select (or deselect) **`Selection Display`**.
- Right-click in the toolbar and select (or deselect) **`Selection Display`**.

Quantize Controls

MIDI Editor windows provide a group of controls for Quantize functions in Pro Tools. These display and let you set certain quantization parameters (such as Grid, Strength, and Swing for note grids, and Groove, Timing, and Velocity for groove templates) that previously were only accessible in the Quantize page of the MIDI Operations window. Changes to Quantize settings in any of the toolbars or the Quantize page of the MIDI Operations window are mirrored in the others.



To show (or hide) the Quantize controls in a MIDI Editor window:

1. Click the MIDI Editor Window menu or Right-click anywhere in the MIDI Editor window toolbar.
2. Select (or deselect) `Quantize Controls`.

For more information, see "Edit and MIDI Editor Window Toolbar Quantize Controls" on page 1405.

MIDI Input Display

The MIDI Input display shows note and chord names as they are received by tracks shown in the Edit and MIDI Editor windows. For example, when an Instrument or MIDI track is record-enabled and a MIDI controller is assigned to its Input, note names and recognized chords are displayed as you play your controller.



Display of a single note being played



Display of a known chord being played



Display of several notes being played simultaneously that Pro Tools does not recognize as a chord

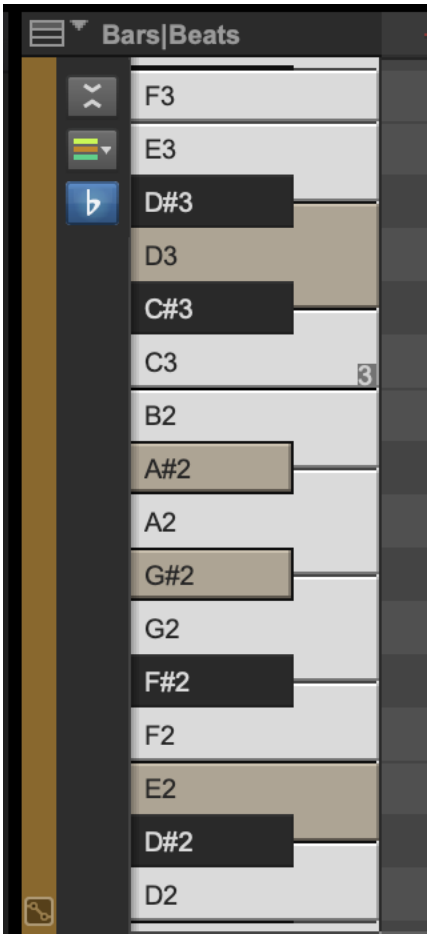
To show (or hide) the MIDI Input display in a MIDI Editor window:

1. Click the MIDI Editor Window menu or Right-click anywhere in the MIDI Editor window toolbar.
2. Select (or deselect) `MIDI Input Display`.

Note names are displayed as the note letter name and register number (for example, C3 or C4) or as the MIDI note number (for example, 60) according to the specified Note Display option in the Pro Tools MIDI Preferences (`Setup > Preferences > MIDI`).

Pressed Notes Displayed on Keyboard

Incoming MIDI notes from an external MIDI controller or from the virtual keyboard are indicated on the keyboard on the left of the MIDI Editor.



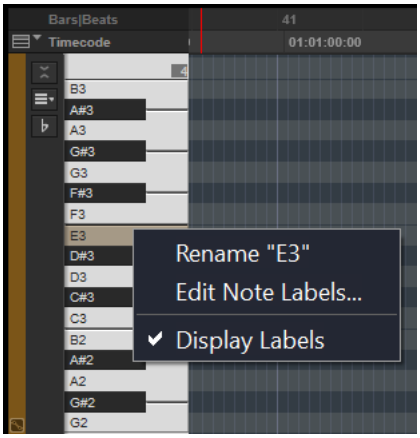
Incoming MIDI notes indicated on keyboard: E2, G#2, A#2, and D3

Custom Note Labels in MIDI Editors

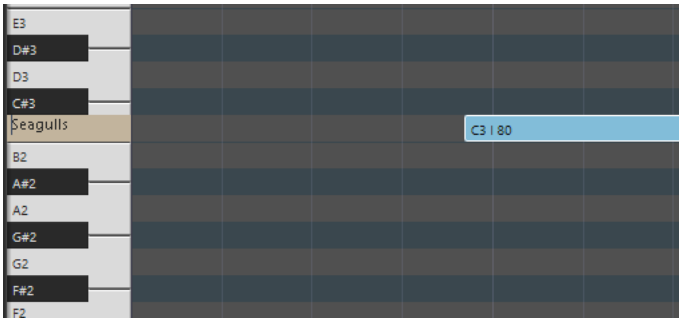
Pro Tools lets you add custom labels to keys in the piano roll on the left side of MIDI and Instrument tracks in MIDI Editors. This is especially useful when programming drum tracks or when working with samplers triggering sound effects, for example.

To add a custom label to a note in the piano roll on a MIDI or Instrument track:

1. Select the MIDI or Instrument track you want in a MIDI Editor.
2. Right-click on a key of the piano and select **Rename**, or Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) on a key.



3. Type the custom label on the key.



Press Esc to revert.

4. Press Enter or Return, or click outside of the key to apply the change.
5. Repeat for all keys for which you want to set custom labels.

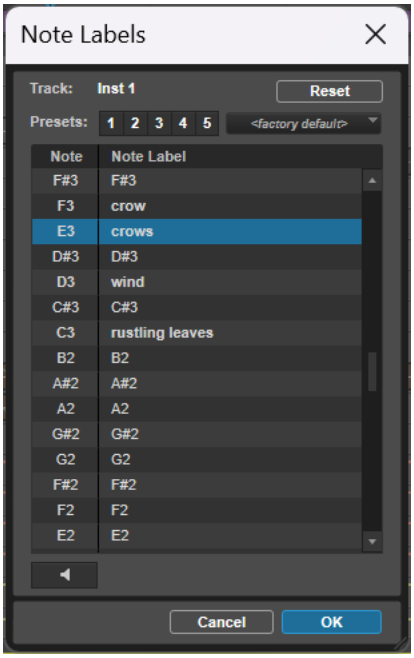
Displayed note labels follow the track selected for editing.

To open the Note Labels dialog for custom note labels:

- Right-click any key on the keyboard for a track in a MIDI Editor and choose **`Edit Note Labels`**.

To add a custom note label in the Note Labels dialog:

1. In the Note Labels dialog, double-click the Note Label for the Note you want.
2. Type the custom label you want.
3. Press Enter.
4. Click **`OK`** to save your changes and close the Note Labels dialog.



Press Tab to move to the next text field or Shift+Tab to move to the previous text field.

To reset custom note labels, do one of the following:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to reset a single key.
- Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) to reset all custom names.
- In the MIDI Custom Setup dialog, click **Reset**.

To audition a note in the Note Labels dialog:

1. Enable auditioning by clicking the Audition button (speaker icon) so that it highlights blue.
2. Click the note you want to audition.
3. When you are done click the Audition button again so that it is no longer highlighted.

Custom Note Label Presets

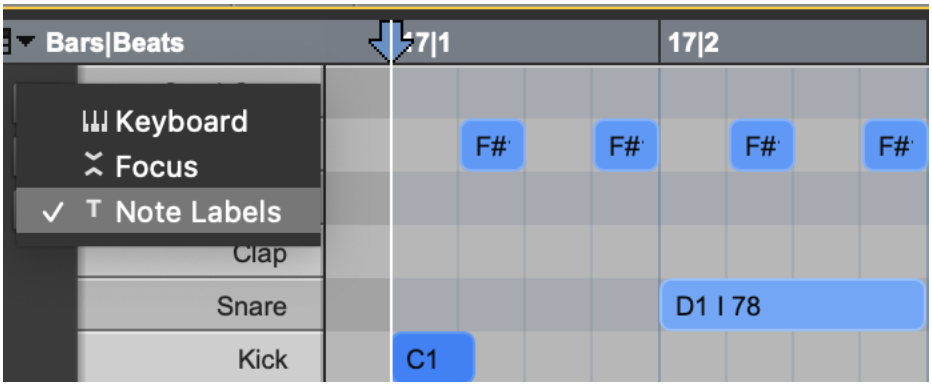
The Note Labels dialog lets you create, edit, and recall Note Label Presets (just like in many other Pro Tools dialogs). Note Label presets are stored in Documents/Pro Tools/Pro Tools Presets/MIDI Custom Settings/Note Labels.

Note Labels View

Enable Note Labels view to show only notes with custom note labels. This is especially useful for drum programming.

To enable (or disable) Note Labels view:

1. Select the MIDI or Instrument track you want in a MIDI Editor.
2. Click the MIDI Editor view selector and select (or deselect) **Note Labels**.



Grid and Nudge Selectors

When the **Expanded Grid/Nudge Display** option is enabled in the MIDI Editor Window menu, the Grid and Nudge selectors in MIDI Editor windows function exactly the same way for MIDI data in MIDI Editor windows as in the Edit window.

When the **Expanded Grid/Nudge Display** option is disabled in the MIDI Editor Window menu, you can toggle between Grid Display and Nudge Display using the Grid/Nudge Display selector.



Target

Generally, the Target button for MIDI Editor windows functions just like the Target button for Plugin, Output, and Send windows. Additionally, the Target button in a MIDI Editor window synchronizes its Timeline location view to the Timeline location view in the Edit window. Any changes to the Edit selection in

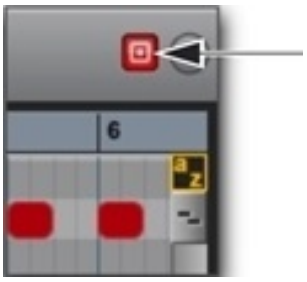
the Edit window are reflected in the Targeted MIDI Editor window. There can only be one targeted MIDI Editor window at a time. The targeted MIDI Editor window can also be stored in a Window Configuration. Targeted MIDI Editors zoom to display the entire clip selection of the Edit Window.

One or more untargeted MIDI Editor windows can remain open and available at the same time, just like untargeted Plugin windows. Targeting an untargeted MIDI Editor window disables any other targeted MIDI Editor window.

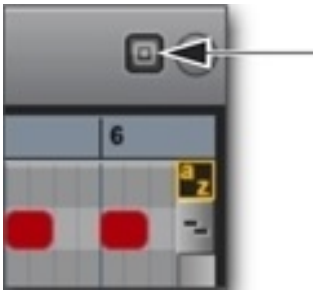
The front-most window, regardless of whether it is targeted, always receives Commands Keyboard Focus and control surface focus.

To enable or disable the Target for a MIDI Editor window:

- Click the Target button for the MIDI Editor window so that it is highlighted (targeted) or unhighlighted (untargeted).



Targeted MIDI Editor window



Untargeted MIDI Editor window

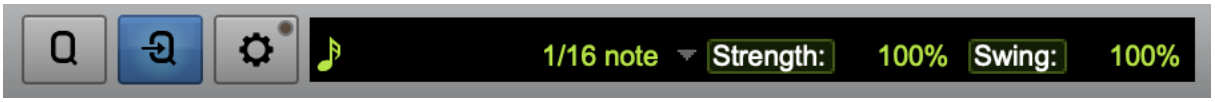
MIDI Editor Window Menu

The MIDI Editor Window menu provides access to MIDI Editor Window Display options and Scrolling options.

MIDI Editor Window Display Options

Quantize Controls

When selected, the **`Quantize Controls`** option shows the Quantize controls in the MIDI Editor window toolbar.



Selection Display

When selected, the **`Selection Display`** option shows the Edit Selection Display in the MIDI Editor window toolbar.



Expanded Edit Tools

When selected, the **Expanded Edit Tools** option displays all of the Edit Tools in the MIDI Editor window toolbar.



Expanded Edit tools displayed in a MIDI Editor window

When this option is not selected, only the icon for the selected Edit tool is displayed. Any of the other Edit tools can be selected from the Edit Tool pop-up menu.



Edit Tool pop-up menu

Expanded Grid/Nudge Display

When selected, the **Expanded Grid/Nudge Display** option displays the Nudge selector in addition to the Grid selector in the MIDI Editor window toolbar.



MIDI Input Display

When selected, the **MIDI Input Display** option shows the MIDI Input display in the MIDI Editor window.



Display of a known chord being played

Track List

When selected, the **Track List** option displays the Track List in the MIDI Editor window.

Display Options Submenu

Pro Tools lets you display pitch names (such as C4, A3, or F#5) in the MIDI Editor.

These options, as well as the state of the Show Flats button, can be set differently between the docked MIDI Editor and MIDI Editor windows.



To show pitch names and velocities in the MIDI Editor:

- Click the MIDI Editor menu and select any of the following:
  - **`Pitch Label on Notes`**: Enable to show the pitch name on notes in the MIDI Editor.
  - **`Pitch Label on Keyboard`**: Enable to show Pitches on the Keyboard on the left of the MIDI Editor.
  - **`Velocity on Notes`**: Enable to show Velocity values on notes in the MIDI Editor

Scrolling Submenu

The Scrolling submenu lets you select the scrolling options for the MIDI Editor window independently of other MIDI Editor windows and the Edit window. The scrolling options include:

No Scrolling

The MIDI Editor window does not scroll during or after playback. The playback cursor moves across the MIDI Editor window, indicating the playback location.

After Playback

The playback cursor moves across the MIDI Editor window, indicating the playback location. When playback has stopped, the MIDI Editor window scrolls to the final playback location.

Page

The playback cursor moves across the MIDI Editor window, indicating the playback location. When the right edge of the MIDI Editor window is reached, its entire contents are scrolled, and the playback cursor continues moving from the left edge of the window.

Continuous

The MIDI Editor window scrolls continuously past the playback cursor, which remains in the center of the window. With this option, playback is always based on the Timeline selection (unlike the **`Center Playhead Scrolling`** option).

Center Playhead (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

The MIDI Editor window scrolls continuously past the *Playhead*, which is represented as a blue line in the center of the window (or a red line when recording).

Follow Edit Window

When selected, the MIDI Editor window follows the scrolling option selected for the Edit window (**`Options > Edit Window Scrolling`**).

Keep MIDI Editor Window On Top

The MIDI Editor window lets you set it to remain in the foreground even when clicking on and focusing another window (such as the Edit or Mix windows).

Enable the **`Keep Window On Top`** option in the MIDI Editor window menu to ensure that the window remains in the foreground when working with other windows. When this option is disabled, clicking on another window (such as the Edit or Mix windows) brings that window to the front and the MIDI Editor window may be hidden behind it.

To keep the MIDI Editor window always in front of all other windows:

- From the MIDI Editor window menu, select the **`Keep Window On Top`** option.

Customizable Toolbar

You can customize the toolbar in MIDI Editor windows by rearranging, and showing and hiding the available controls and displays just like in the Edit window or the Score Editor window.

Changing Toolbar Display Options

To change the toolbar display options in a MIDI Editor window toolbar:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the MIDI Editor Window Toolbar menu.
   - Right-click in the toolbar.
2. From the pop-up menu, select or deselect any of the following:
   - Expanded Edit Tools
   - Expanded Grid/Nudge Display
   - Selection Display

Rearranging Controls and Displays

You can rearrange the controls and displays in the MIDI Editor window toolbar just like in the Edit window or the Score Editor window.

To rearrange controls and displays in a MIDI Editor window toolbar:

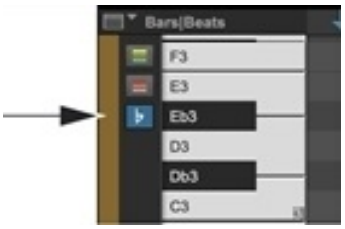
- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the controls or displays you want to move and drag them to the location in the Toolbar you want.

Show Sharps or Flats

Pro Tools lets you show the note spellings of the “black keys” as either sharps or flats.

To display note spellings with flats (or sharps):

- Click the Show Flats icon so that it lights (or so that it is not lit).



MIDI Editor Zoom Controls

Vertical and Horizontal Zoom In and Out Buttons

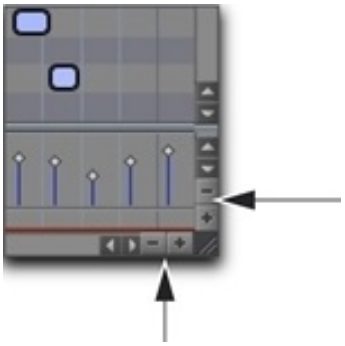
In addition to the Zoom controls in the Toolbar, Pro Tools provides horizontal and vertical zoom buttons in the lower-right corner of MIDI Editor windows.

Vertical Zoom Buttons

Zoom the lane heights proportionally for Automation and Controller lanes.

Horizontal Zoom Buttons

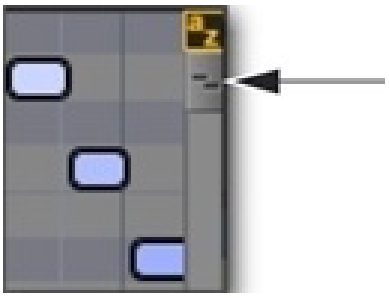
Zoom the Timeline just like the Horizontal Zoom controls in the MIDI Editor window toolbar.



Horizontal and Vertical Zoom In and Out buttons

MIDI Zoom In and Out Buttons

Pro Tools provides MIDI Zoom In and Out buttons in the upper-right corner of MIDI Editor windows. These controls function exactly the same as the MIDI Zoom controls in the toolbar, and let you zoom in and out vertically on MIDI notes.



MIDI Zoom In and Out buttons

Track List

The Track List in MIDI Editor windows lets you show or hide MIDI and Instrument tracks in the MIDI Editor window. The Track List settings are unique to each MIDI Editor window. However, the order of tracks in the Track List is global. Sorting or changing the order of tracks affects the Track List in every window.

Track List Columns

In MIDI Editor windows there are four columns for the Track List:

Show/Hide

Indicates which tracks are shown or hidden in the MIDI Editor window.

Track Color

Displays the track color for each track by type or by track.

Name

Displays the name for each track.

Pencil

Lets you enable a track for manually entering MIDI notes with the Pencil tool.

Showing and Hiding Tracks

To show MIDI and Instrument tracks in a MIDI Editor window:

- Enable the Track Show/Hide icon in the Track List for tracks you want to show in the MIDI Editor window.

To show (or hide) all MIDI and Instrument tracks in a MIDI Editor window:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any Track Show/Hide icon in the Track List.

To hide selected MIDI, Instrument, and Auxiliary Input tracks in a MIDI Editor window:

Track List Right-Click Menu

In addition to common track management commands, the Track List Right-click menu shares commands with both the Track List menu and the Notes Pane Right-click menu.

The following options are available depending on the track type (Auxiliary Input, Instrument, or MIDI):

Option	Description
Hide	Hides the selected track.
Hide and Make Inactive	Hides the selected track and makes it inactive.
Make Inactive	Makes the selected track inactive.
Export MIDI	Exports the selected track as a MIDI file.
New	Opens the New Track dialog.
Rename	Renames the selected track.
Duplicate	Duplicates the selected track.

Option	Description
Split into Mono	Splits the selected stereo Instrument or Auxiliary Input track into two mono tracks.
Delete	Deletes the selected track.
MIDI Real-Time Properties	Opens the MIDI Real-Time Properties window for the selected track.
Open in New MIDI Editor	Opens the tracks displayed in the current MIDI Editor window in a new MIDI Editor window. The new MIDI Editor window will be untargeted.
Open in Score Editor	Opens the shown tracks in the Score Editor window.
Open in MIDI Event List	Opens the selected track in the MIDI Event List.
Notation Display Track Settings	Opens the Notation Display Track Settings window.

To access the MIDI Editor Track List Right-click menu:

- Right-click on any Track Name in the Track List.

Groups List

The Groups List in MIDI Editor windows provides the same functionality as in the Edit window. You can create, edit, and delete Edit Groups using the Groups List in any MIDI Editor window. The Groups List is linked between the Edit window and all MIDI Editor windows.

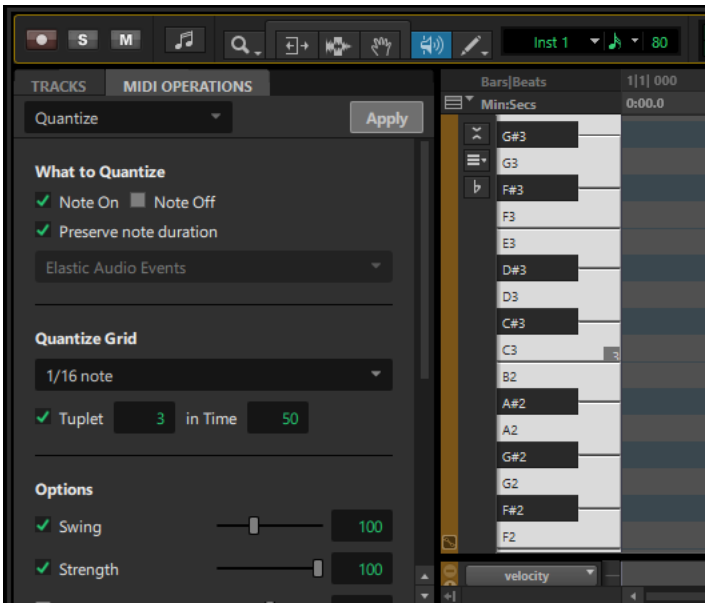
For information on grouping tracks, see "Grouping Tracks" on page 417.

MIDI Operations in MIDI Editors

MIDI Editors provide access to MIDI Operations in a pane to the left of the Editor pane.

To view MIDI Operations in a MIDI Editor:

- Click the **`MIDI Operations`** tab in the Tracks list pane.



For more information, see "MIDI Operations" on page 1400.

To show the Tracks list:

- Click the **Tracks** tab to the left of the **MIDI Operations** tab.

Timebase and Conductor Rulers

Timebase and Conductor rulers in MIDI Editor windows function exactly the same as in the Edit window. However, the Edit window and each MIDI Editor window can have a unique view of the Timeline in terms of which Timebase and Conductor rulers are shown, and in terms of zoom level and time location.

MIDI Notes Focus View

When Focus view is enabled, the keyboard rows are limited to the notes that are used throughout the tracks shown in the MIDI Editor.



MIDI Editor Focus view enabled

When recording, Focus view expands in real time to display the new note rows for any incoming notes that are not already part of the view. Moving one or more notes up and down either using a mouse or keyboard is limited to the note rows of Focus view. The same applies for other actions such as **Duplicate**, or **Copy** and **Paste**. Transposing the notes by octaves using Shift+Up/Down arrows adds new note rows to the view. MIDI Operations and Real-time Properties also interact with Focus view and any operation that is applied is reflected in Focus view.

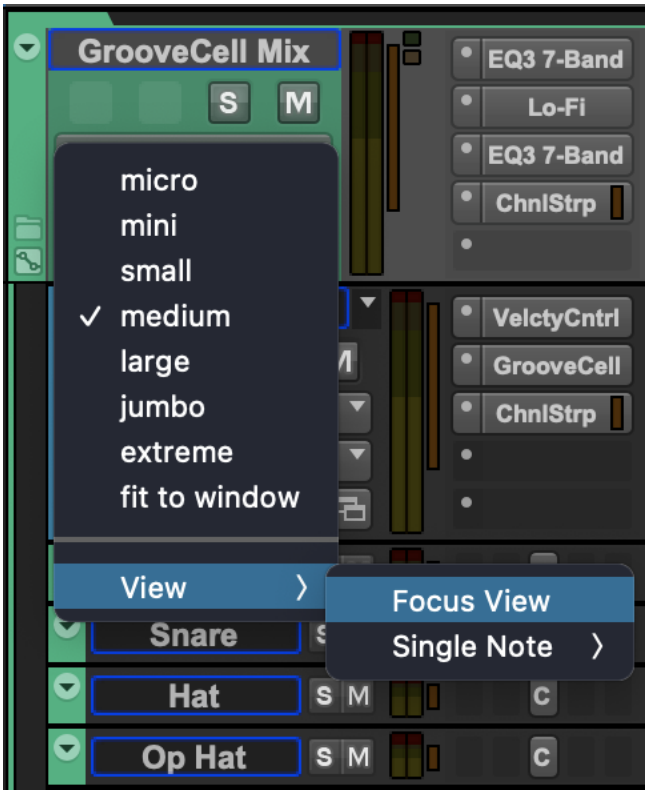
MIDI Notes Focus View in the Edit Window

MIDI Notes Focus View is also available in the Edit window for MIDI and Instrument tracks.

To enable Focus view on a track in the Edit window:

Click the Track Options menu in the upper-left corner of the track header.

Select View › Focus View.

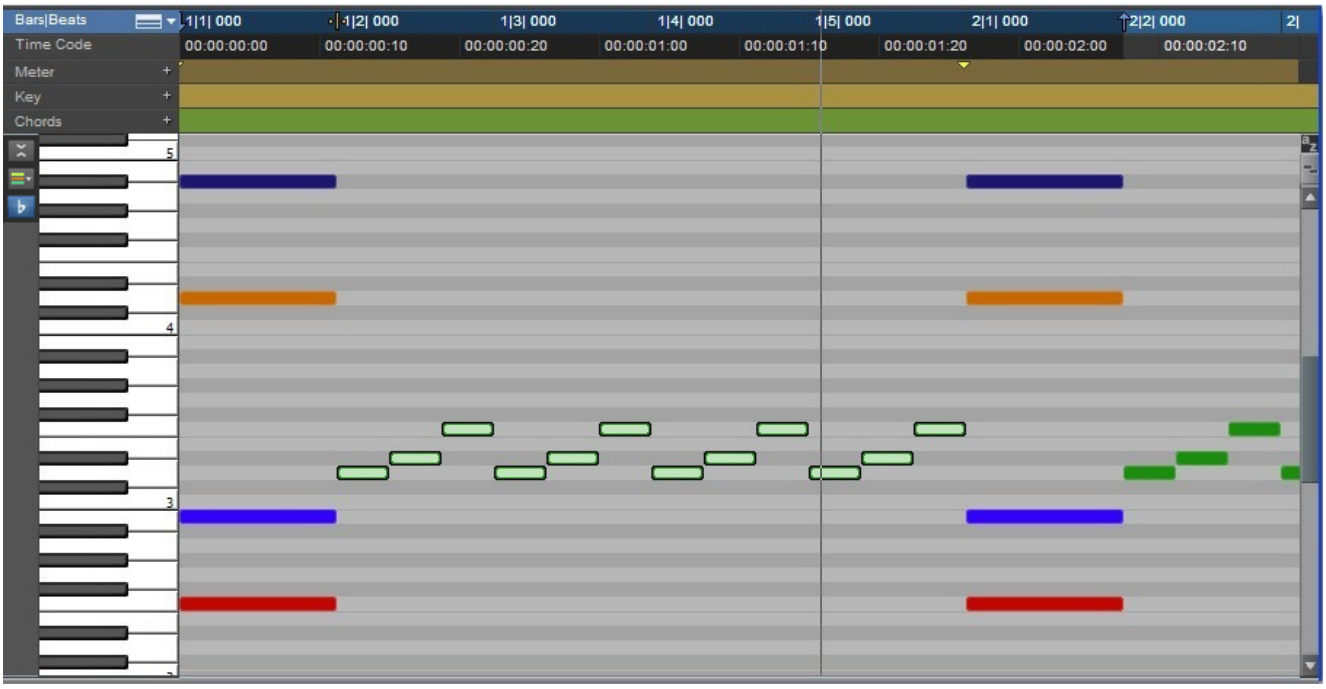


Selecting Focus View on an Instrument track\

Superimposed Notes View

The Notes pane in MIDI Editor windows lets you view and edit MIDI notes superimposed from different MIDI and Instrument tracks such that you can easily edit multitrack arrangements in a single constellation of color-coded notes. The Notes pane lets you edit MIDI notes much the same way as in Notes view on MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Edit window, except you can edit MIDI notes on multiple MIDI and Instrument tracks at the same time.

You can also view and edit MIDI notes in Notation view in the Notes pane (see "Notation View" on page 1094).



MIDI Editor window, Notes pane with five superimposed Instrument tracks

Color Coding MIDI Notes

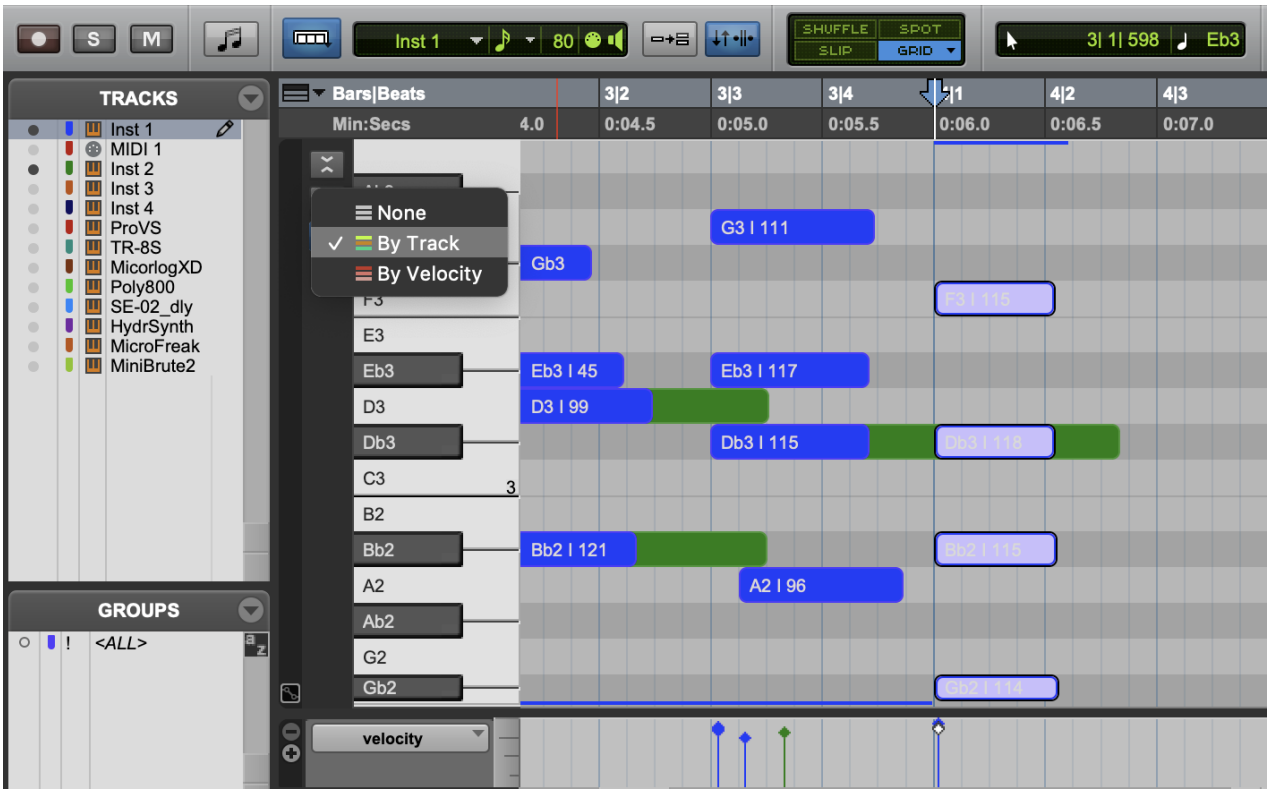
You can color code MIDI notes by Track or by Velocity.

Color Coding by Track

When Color Coding by Track is enabled, tracks in the MIDI Editor are temporarily assigned one of sixteen fixed colors, in the order they appear in the Track List.

To Color Code MIDI notes by Track:

- Enable the Color Code MIDI Notes By Track button.



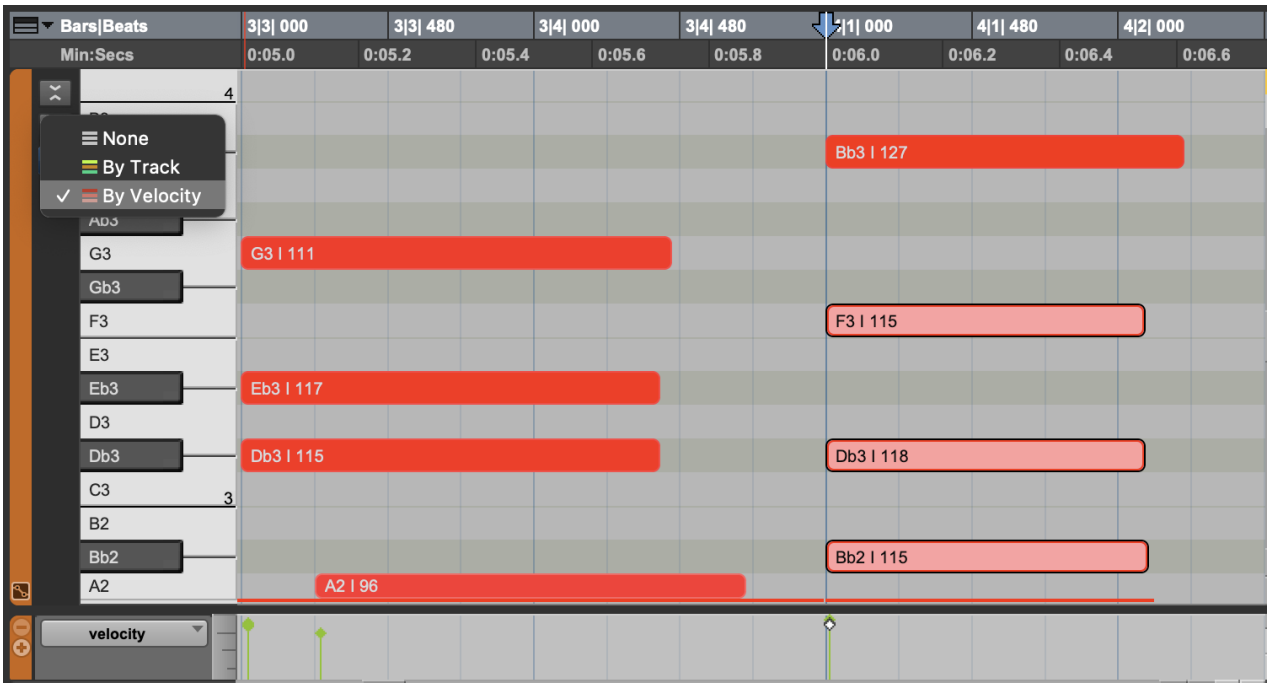
Color Code MIDI Note By Track enabled in MIDI Editor window

Color Coding by Velocity

When Color Coding by Velocity is enabled, MIDI notes are all the same red color (hue) on all tracks displayed, and MIDI notes vary in color saturation (from a light red to a dark red) based on the Note On velocity. Notes with low velocities are lighter in color and those with high velocities are darker.

To Color Code MIDI notes by Velocity:

- Enable the Color Code MIDI Notes By Velocity button.



Color Code MIDI Notes By Velocity enabled in MIDI Editor window

No Color Coding

When neither Color Coding by Track nor Color Coding by Velocity are enabled, notes are drawn in the MIDI Editor in as the same color they are in the Edit window—using the color coding options as set in the Track Color Coding settings in the Display Preferences.



No Color Code enabled in MIDI Editor window

Editing MIDI Notes

You can edit any note on any track shown in the Notes pane. You edit MIDI notes in the Notes pane the same way as in Notes view for MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Edit window, except that notes from different tracks are superimposed.

For more information on editing MIDI notes, see "MIDI Editing" on page 1022.

Manually Inserting MIDI Notes

Using the Pencil tool, you can manually insert MIDI notes to any pencil-enabled track shown in the Notes pane. If only one track is viewed in the MIDI Editor window, that track will automatically be pencil-enabled. If multiple superimposed tracks are shown in the Notes pane, MIDI notes will be inserted on the pencil enabled tracks only.

For more information on manually inserting MIDI notes, see "Inserting MIDI Notes" on page 1027.

To insert MIDI notes on a specific track in the Notes pane:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Select the track you want pencil-enabled from the Track Edit selector in the Toolbar.



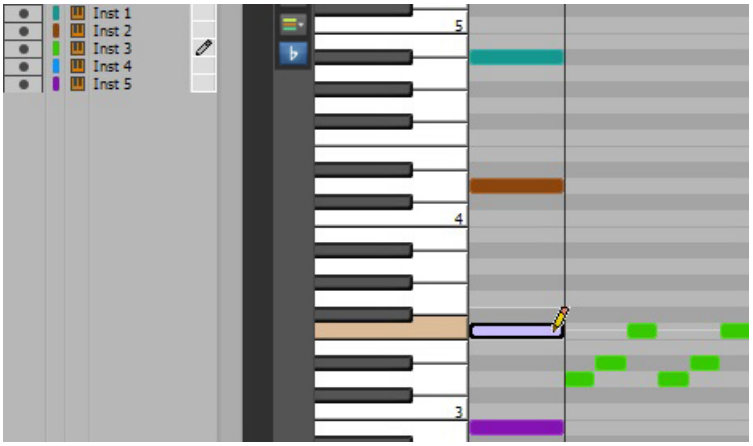
   Only tracks that are currently shown in the MIDI Editor window are available in the Track Edit selector pop-up menu.

   - Click the Pencil column in the Track List to pencil-enable the track you want.



"Blade Pad Midi" track pencil-enabled

2. With the Pencil tool, click at a time and pitch location to insert a MIDI note on the pencil-enabled track with the default Note On velocity and the selected Default Note Duration.



Inserting a MIDI note on track “Inst 3”

To pencil-enable multiple contiguous tracks, Shift-click in the Pencil column of the range of tracks you want. To pencil-enable multiple discontiguous tracks, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) in the Pencil column of any additional tracks. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to pencil-enable all tracks. Manually inserted notes are written to all pencil-enabled tracks.

Notes Pane Right-Click Menu

The Notes Pane Right-click menu provides several useful commands for editing, exporting, and viewing MIDI data.

To access the MIDI Editor Right-click menu:

- Right-click anywhere in the Notes pane.

Notes Pane Right-Click Menu Options

Tools

The Tools submenu lets you select any Edit tools relevant to the Score Editor.

Zoomer

Selects the Zoomer tool.

Trim

Selects the Trim tool.

Selector

Selects the Selector tool.

Grabber

Selects the Grabber tool.

Scrubber

Selects the Scrubber tool.

Pencil

Selects the Pencil tool.

Smart

Selects the Smart tool.

Zoomer Tools

Lets you select Normal Zoom or Single Zoom.

Pencil Tools

Lets you select any of the Pencil tools.

Insert

The Insert submenu lets you insert key changes, meter changes, and chord symbols at the location of the Edit cursor.

Key Signature

Inserts a key change.

Meter

Inserts a meter change.

Chord Symbol

Inserts a chord symbol.

Marker on Ruler

Inserts a marker on the Marker ruler.

Marker on Track

Inserts a marker on the focused track.

Cut

The **`Cut`** command cuts the current Edit selection.

Copy

The **`Copy`** command copies the current Edit selection.

Paste

The **`Paste`** command pastes the clipboard to the current Edit selection or at the current Edit cursor location. Any MIDI notes already present at the same location are overwritten.

Merge

The **`Merge`** command pastes the clipboard to the current Edit selection or at the current Edit cursor location and merges the pasted data with any MIDI notes already present at the same location.

Copy to

The **`Copy to`** command copies the current Edit selection.

Move to

The **`Move to`** command ...

Clear

The **`Clear`** command ...

Separate

The **Separate** command lets you separate MIDI notes at the Edit cursor location.

Consolidate

The **Consolidate** command lets you consolidate selected multiple consecutive MIDI notes of the same pitch.

Mute

The **Mute** (or **Unmute**) command lets you mute (or unmute) selected MIDI notes.

MIDI Real-Time Properties

Selecting the **MIDI Real-Time Properties** option opens the MIDI Real-Time Properties window.

MIDI Operations

The MIDI Operations submenu lets you select any of the MIDI Operations windows (such as Quantize or Change Velocity).

Open In Docked MIDI Editor

Selecting the **Open In Docked MIDI Editor** option opens all shown tracks in a docked MIDI Editor in the Edit window.

Open In Untargeted MIDI Editor

Selecting the **Open In Untargeted MIDI Editor** option opens all shown tracks in an untargeted MIDI Editor window.

Open In Score Editor

The **Open In Score Editor** option opens the shown tracks in the Score Editor window.

Open in MIDI Event List

The **Open In MIDI Event List** option opens the selected track in the MIDI Event List.

Display Notation

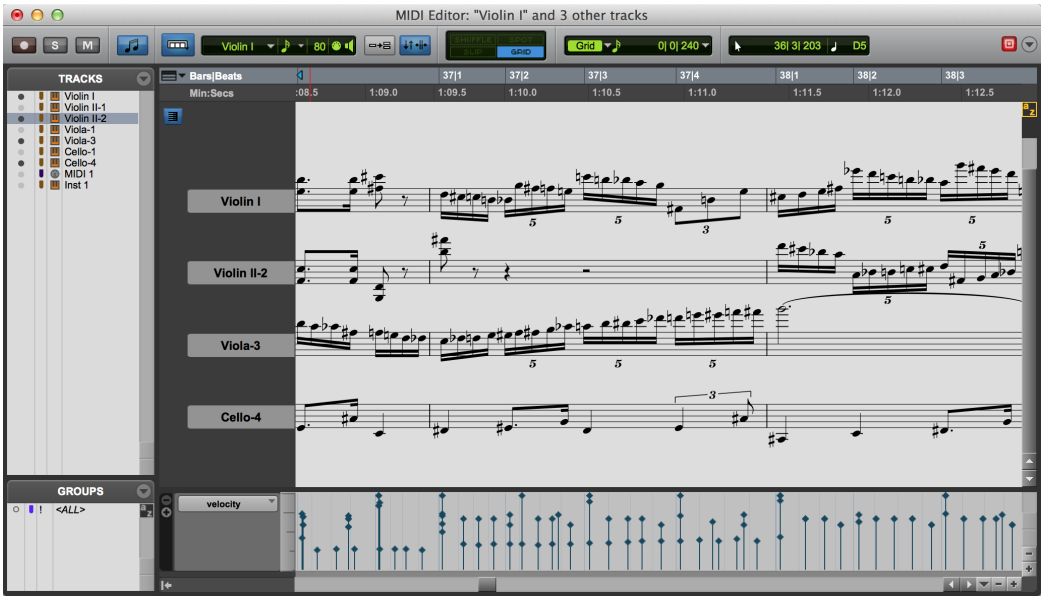
Selecting the **Display Notation** option changes the MIDI Editor to Notation view. Deselecting this option reverts the MIDI Editor to Notes view.

Notation View

The Notes pane in MIDI Editor windows can also display MIDI notes in standard music notation. In Notation view, each MIDI and Instrument track is displayed independently, with one track per staff.

In MIDI Editor windows, notation is displayed as a continuous timeline and not in page view as in the Score Editor window.

For information on editing notation, see "Editing Notes" on page 1114.



MIDI Editor window, Notes pane in Notation view

To enable Notation view, do one of the following:



- Enable the Notation view button in the MIDI Editor window toolbar.
- Right-click in the Notes pane and select **`Notation View`**.

  Editing in Notation view in a MIDI Editor window works the same way as in the Score Editor window, but with the advantage of having access to Velocity, Controller, and Automation lanes.

  In Notation view, the Trim tool functions as the Grabber tool when over a note and as the Note Selector tool when not over a note.

  In Notation view, the Edit mode is automatically set to Grid and cannot be changed.

Double Bar in Notation View

The Double Bar button is only available in Notation view. When enabled, the **`Double Bar`** option shows the final double bar line in the MIDI Editor window. The double bar line is located at the end of the last MIDI clip or event in the session.



Double Bar enabled in a MIDI Editor window

When the **`Double Bar`** option is disabled, there will be a number of empty bars at the end of the last event in the session. The number of empty bars is determined by the **`Additional Empty Bars In The Score Editor`** setting in the MIDI Preferences page (**`Setup > Preferences`**). Disable the **`Double Bar`** option to manually enter notes in the Score Editor after the last MIDI clip or event in the session.

Notation View Right-Click Menu

When in Notation view, the Notes Pane Right-click menu provides slightly different options than when in Superimposed Notes view.

In both views, the following options are available:

- Tools
- Insert
- Cut
- Copy
- Paste
- Clear
- Separate
- Consolidate
- Mute
- MIDI Real-Time Properties
- MIDI Operations
- Open In New MIDI Editor
- Open In Score Editor
- Open In MIDI Event List.
- Display Notation

In Notation view, the additional **`Notation Display Track Settings`** option is available in the Right-click menu. Select this option to open the Notation Display Track Settings dialog and configure the display settings for tracks in Notation view. For information on the Notation Display Track Settings dialog, see "Notation Display Track Settings" on page 1110.

Velocity, Controller, and Automation Lanes

MIDI Editor windows let you edit velocities, MIDI controller data, and automation for all shown MIDI, Instrument, and Auxiliary Input tracks in lanes under the Notes pane. You can move and resize Automation and Controller lanes just like in the Edit window. When viewing multiple MIDI and Instrument tracks, the velocities for notes on separate tracks are superimposed in a single lane, just like notes in the Notes pane. However, all other Controller lanes are grouped by automation and controller type, and provide individual lanes for each shown track.

To show or hide lanes under the Notes pane:

- Click the Show/Hide Lanes button.

To add lanes:

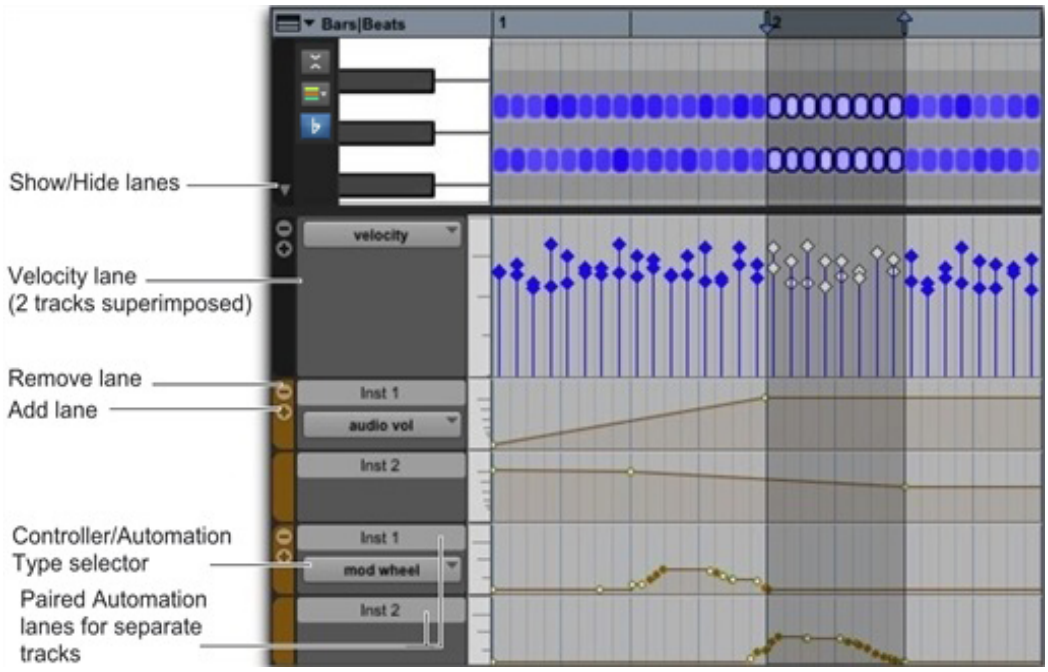
- Click the Add Lane button.

To remove lanes:

- Click the Remove Lane button.

To change the Automation or Controller type for a lane:

- Click the Automation or Controller Type selector and select the Automation or Controller type you want.



Velocity, Controller, and Automation lanes for two stereo Instrument tracks

Controller and Automation Lanes Right-Click Menu

The Right-click menu in Controller and Automation lanes provide slightly different options than in the Notes pane.

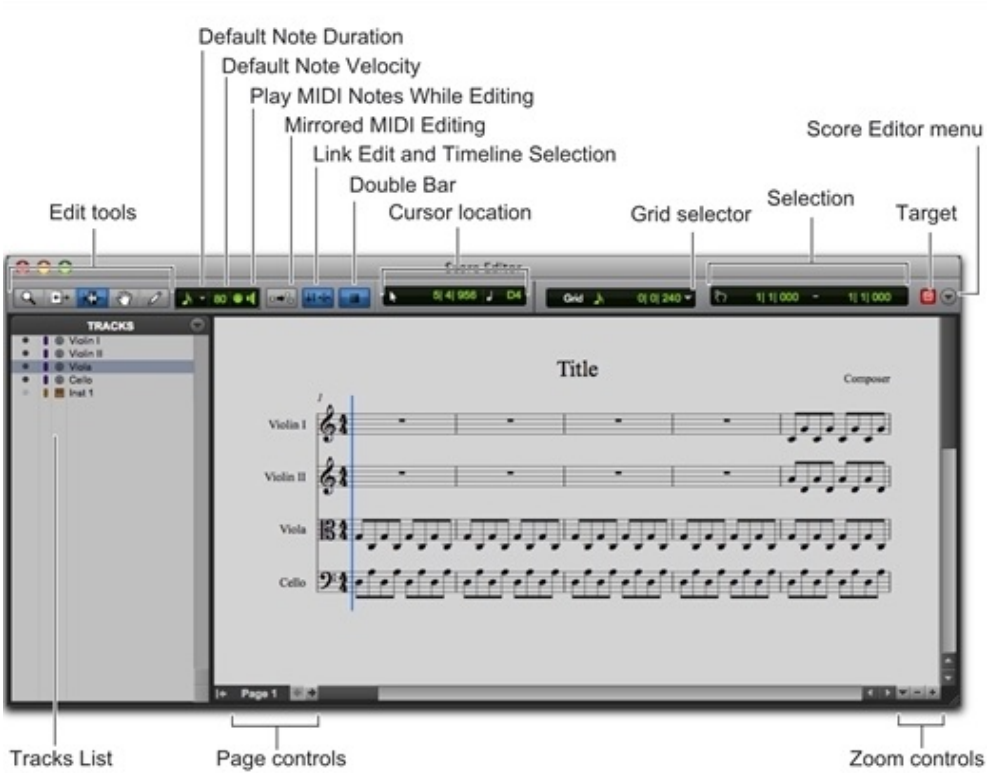
The following options are available:

- Tools
- Insert
- Cut
- Copy
- Paste
- Copy to
- Move to
- Clear
- Cut Special (All Automation, Pan Automation, Plugin Automation)
- Copy Special (All Automation, Pan Automation, Plugin Automation)
- Paste Special (Merge MIDI, Merge Markers, Repeat to Fill Selection, To Current Automation Type)
- Separate
- Consolidate
- Mute
- MIDI Real-Time Properties
- MIDI Operations

- Open In New MIDI Editor
- Open In Score Editor
- Open In MIDI Event List.
- Display Notation

41 Score Editor

The Score Editor window lets you view, edit, arrange, and print MIDI from your session as music notation. MIDI notes are transcribed in real-time whether you record, import, draw (with the Pencil tool), or Step Enter MIDI.



Opening the Score Editor Window

To open the Score Editor window:

- Choose **`Window > Score Editor`**.

Press Option+Control+"=" (Mac) or Alt+Start+"=" (Windows) to show the Score Editor window.

To open the Score Editor window with a single MIDI or Instrument track shown:

1. Ensure that there is no Edit selection.
2. Right-click the Track name of an unselected track in the Edit or Mix window, or in the Track List of the Edit, Mix, or MIDI Editor window.
3. From the Right-click menu, choose **`Open In Score Editor`**.

To open the Score Editor window with the current Edit selection shown:

1. In the Edit window or in a MIDI Editor window, make an Edit selection on one or more tracks that includes what you want shown in the Score Editor window.
2. Right-click the Edit selection and choose **`Open In Score Editor`**.

If the Score Editor option is selected as the "Double Clicking a MIDI Clip Opens" setting in the MIDI Preferences page, you can double-click a MIDI clip to open it in the Score Editor.

Edit Tools

The Edit tools in the Score Editor window function much the same as in the Edit window, but with a few differences for editing music notation.

Zoomer

Use the Zoomer tool to zoom in and out around a particular area in the score.

The Zoomer tool provides two modes:

Normal Zoom

The Zoomer tool remains selected after zooming.

Single Zoom

The previously selected Edit tool is automatically reselected after zooming.

Press the F5 key to select the Zoomer tool and toggle between Normal and Single Zoom modes.

Also see "Score Editor Zoom Controls" on page 1108

Normal Zoom Mode

To zoom around a certain point in the score:

1. Click the Zoomer tool pop-up menu and select Normal Zoom mode.
2. Click once with the Zoomer tool at a location within the score. The score is zoomed in by one level and is centered around the zoomed location.
3. To zoom back to the previous level, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) with the Zoomer tool.

To marquee zoom to a particular area of the score:

1. Click the Zoomer tool pop-up menu and select Normal Zoom mode.
2. Drag in the score, making a marquee selection of the area to which you want to zoom.



Marquee zooming with the Zoomer tool

The zoomed area fills the entire Edit window.

Single Zoom Mode

Single Zoom mode returns you to the previously selected tool after a zoom has been performed.

For example, when using the Pencil tool you can select the Single Zoomer tool, and once the Zoom operation has been performed, Pro Tools automatically switches back to the Pencil tool.

Single Zoom is identified with an arrow to the right of the Zoomer icon. (Normal Zoom mode does not show the arrow.)

To use Single Zoom mode:

- Click the Zoomer tool pop-up menu and select Single Zoom mode.

Trim

The Trim tool lets you lengthen or shorten the duration of a note in the Score Editor window.

Press the F6 key to select the Trim tool.

Note Selector

Use the Note Selector tool to select notes on one or more staves in the Score Editor window. Selected notes highlight blue. Selected notes can be deleted, moved, transposed, and processed (using MIDI Operations).

Press the F7 key to select the Note Selector tool.

The Note Selector tool makes a range selection that only includes MIDI notes and velocities. It does not include any other MIDI data, such as program changes or continuous controller data.

Grabber

Use the Grabber tool to select one or more notes in the Score Editor window. You can also use the Grabber tool to move single notes, or all selected notes, to a different pitch or time location.

Press the F8 key to select the Grabber tool.

Pencil

Use the Pencil tools to insert, select, move, or delete notes in the Score Editor window. The various Pencil tools differ in how they draw note durations, repeated notes, and velocities, but function the same when drawing notes on tracks in Notes view in the Edit window or in a MIDI Editor window.

To select a Pencil tool:

- Click the Pencil tool pop-up menu and select the Pencil tool you want.

Press the F10 key repeatedly to cycle through the different Pencil tools.

The following Pencil tools are available in the Score Editor:

Free Hand

The Free Hand Pencil tool lets you draw single notes of varying duration.

Note velocities are determined by the Default Note Velocity setting (see "Default Note On Velocity" on the next page).

The minimum duration of the note is determined by the selected Default Note Duration (see "Default Note Duration" on the next page).

Line

The Line Pencil tool lets you draw multiple notes of the same pitch and duration.

Note velocities are determined by the Default Note Velocity setting (see "Default Note On Velocity" on the next page).

The duration is determined by the selected Default Note Duration (see "Default Note Duration" below).

The start time for each note is determined by the selected Grid value (see "Grid" on page 1104).

Triangle

The Triangle Pencil tool lets you draw a series of MIDI notes on a single pitch whose velocities oscillate between the defined Default Note Velocity and 127 in a triangle pattern. The duration of each note is determined by the current Grid value.

The duration is determined by the selected Default Note Duration (see "Default Note Duration" below).

The start time for each note is determined by the selected Grid value (see "Grid" on page 1104).

Square

The Square Pencil tool lets you draw a series of MIDI notes on a single pitch whose velocities alternate between the defined Default Note Velocity and 127 in a square pattern. The duration of each note is determined by the current Grid value.

The duration is determined by the selected Default Note Duration (see "Default Note Duration" below).

The start time for each note is determined by the selected Grid value (see "Grid" on page 1104).

Random

The Square Pencil tool lets you draw a series of MIDI notes on a single pitch whose velocities change randomly within the range between the defined Default Note Velocity and 127 in a square pattern. The duration of each note is determined by the current Grid value.

The duration is determined by the selected Default Note Duration (see "Default Note Duration" below).

The start time for each note is determined by the selected Grid value (see "Grid" on page 1104).

Default Note Duration

The Default Note Duration selector lets you define the default note duration for manually inserted notes.

To define the Default Note Duration:

- From the Default Note Duration selector, select a note value. Select the Follow Grid option if you want the Default Note Duration to use the selected Grid value.

  If you want dotted note values, also select the Dotted option.

  If you want triplet note values, also select the Triplet option.



Default Note On Velocity

The Default Note On Velocity setting lets you define the default Note On velocity for manually inserted notes.

Play MIDI Notes When Editing

When enabled, the Play MIDI Notes When Editing option causes MIDI notes to sound when you insert them with the Pencil tool or drag them with the Grabber tool.



Play MIDI Notes When Editing enabled in the Score Editor window

Link Timeline and Edit Selection

When this button is enabled, the Timeline and Edit selections are linked. When it is disabled, you can make Timeline and Edit selections independently of one another.



Link Timeline and Edit Selection enabled in the Score Editor window

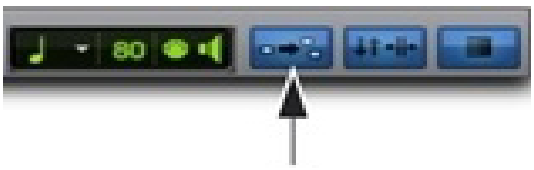
Mirrored MIDI Editing

Mirrored MIDI Editing lets you edit MIDI clips and have your edits apply to every copy of the same MIDI clip. This can be particularly useful when editing looped MIDI clips.

In Mirrored MIDI Editing mode, the Mirrored MIDI Editing button flashes Red once as an edit is made to alert you that your edit is being applied to more than one clip.

To enable Mirrored MIDI Editing, do one of the following:

- Select **`Options > Mirror MIDI Editing`**.
- Select the Mirrored MIDI Editing button in the Edit window, MIDI Editor window, or Score Editor window.



Mirrored MIDI Editing disabled in the Score Editor window

To disable Mirrored MIDI Editing, do one of the following:

- Deselect **`Options > Mirror MIDI Editing`**.
- Disable the Mirrored MIDI Editing button in the Edit window, MIDI Editor window, or Score Editor window.

⚠ **If Mirrored MIDI Editing mode is disabled, and you edit notes of looped clips in Notes view, the edit flattens the loop. Similarly, editing clip groups separates the clip groups.**

Double Bar

When enabled, the Double Bar option shows the final double bar line in the Score Editor window. The double bar line is located at the end of the last MIDI clip or event in the session. Enable the Double Bar option when you are ready to print the score.

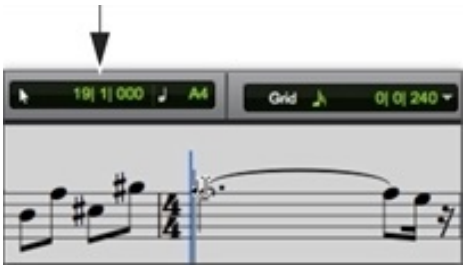
When the Double Bar option is disabled, there will be a number of empty bars at the end of the last MIDI clip in the session. The number of empty bars is determined by the **Additional Empty Bars In The Score Editor** setting in the Pro Tools MIDI Preferences (**Setup > Preferences**). Disable the Double Bar option to manually enter notes in the Score Editor after the last MIDI clip.



Double Bar enabled in the Score Editor window

Cursor Location

The Cursor Location display provides information about the current cursor location in Bars|Beats|Ticks and pitch.



Cursor Location indicator in the Score Editor window

Grid

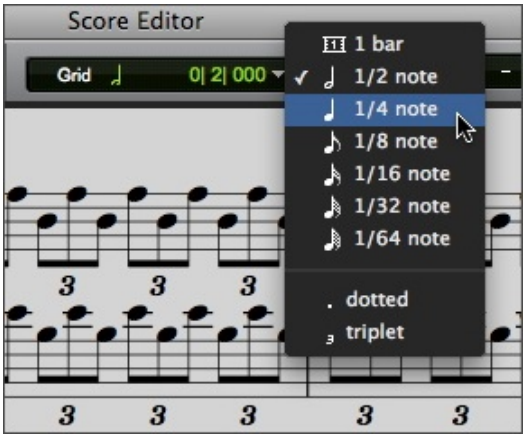
The Grid selector lets you define the Grid value for MIDI notes inserted and displayed in the Score Editor window.

To set the Grid value for the Score Editor window:

- From the Grid Value pop-up menu, select a note value.

  If you want dotted note values, also select the Dotted option.

  If you want triplet note values, also select the Triplet option.

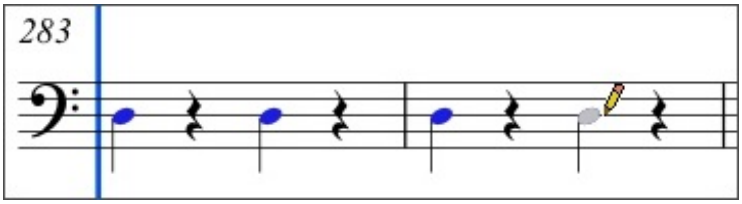


Setting the Grid value

Inserting Notes on the Grid

When inserting MIDI notes with the Pencil tool (using the Line, Triangle, Square, or Random shapes), the Grid value determines the Note On location and the Default Note Duration value determines the note duration (see "Default Note Duration" on page 1102).

For example, if the Default Note Duration is set to quarter notes and the Grid is set to half notes, drawing with the Line Pencil tool creates alternating quarter notes and quarter note rests.



Inserting notes on the Grid

If the selected Grid value is shorter than the Default Note Duration, the Grid value determines both the Note On location and note duration for notes inserted with the Pencil tool. For example, if the Default Note Duration is set to quarter notes and the Grid is set to eighth notes, drawing with the Line Pencil tool creates a sequence of eighth notes.

Score Editor Window Target

When the Target is enabled for the Score Editor window, navigating the Edit window automatically navigates the Score Editor window as well. For example, if in the Edit window you navigate to bar 32, beat 3 in a MIDI track, when you view the Score Editor window it too will show the same location.

When the Target is disabled, the Score Editor does not update to show the current Edit window selection or Edit cursor location.

Score Editor Window Menu

The Score Editor Window menu provides access to the Expanded Edit Tools, Selection Display, Track List, and Scrolling options.

Expanded Edit Tools

When selected, the **`Expanded Edit Tools`** option displays all of the relevant Edit Tools in the Score Editor window toolbar.

When this option is not selected, only the icon for the selected Edit tool is displayed. Any of the other Edit tools can be selected from the Edit Tool pop-up menu.

Selection Display

When selected, the **`Selection Display`** option shows the Edit Selection Display in the MIDI Editor window toolbar.



Track List

When selected, the **`Track List`** option displays the Track List in the Score Editor window.

Scrolling

The Scrolling submenu lets you select the scrolling options for the Score Editor window independently of the Edit window and any MIDI Editor windows. The scrolling options include:

No Scrolling

The Score Editor window does not scroll during or after playback. The playback cursor moves across the Edit window, indicating the playback location.

After Playback

The playback cursor moves across the Score Editor window, indicating the playback location. When playback has stopped, the Score Editor window scrolls to the final playback location.

Page

The playback cursor moves across the Score Editor window, indicating the playback location. When the right edge of the current page shown in the Score Editor window is reached, it scrolls to the next page and the playback cursor continues moving from the left edge of the window.

Follow Edit Window

When selected, the Score Editor window follows the scrolling option selected for the Edit window (**`Options > Edit Window Scrolling`**).

For Pro Tools HD systems, the Continuous and Center Playhead scrolling options are not available in the Score Editor window. If the Score Editor window is set to the Follow Edit Window scrolling option and the Edit window is set to either the Continuous or Center Playhead scrolling options, the Score Editor window scrolls by page.

Keep Score Editor Window On Top

The Score Editor window lets you set it to remain in the foreground even when clicking on and focusing another window (such as the Edit or Mix windows).

Enable the **`Keep Window On Top`** option in the Score Editor window menu to ensure that the window remains in the foreground when working with other windows. When this option is disabled, clicking on another window (such as the Edit or Mix windows) brings that window to the front and the Score Editor window (whichever one you are working with) may be hidden behind it.

To keep the Score Editor window always in front of all other windows:

- From the Score Editor window menu, select the **`Keep Window On Top`** option.

Customizable Toolbar

You can customize the toolbar in the Score Editor window by re-arranging, and showing or hiding the available controls and displays just like in the Edit window or MIDI Editor windows.

Changing Toolbar Display Options

To change the toolbar display options in the Score Editor window toolbar:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Score Editor Window Toolbar menu.
   - Right-click in the Toolbar.

2. From the pop-up menu, select or deselect any of the following:
   - Selection Display
   - Expanded Edit Tools

Rearranging Controls and Displays

To rearrange controls and displays in a MIDI Editor window toolbar:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the controls or displays you want to move and drag them to a new location in the Toolbar.

Track List

The Track List lets you show and hide MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Score Editor. It also provides access to the Notation Display Track Settings and Score Setup (see "Notation Display Track Settings" on page 1110 and "Score Setup" on page 1112).

To show or hide the Track List in the Score Editor window:

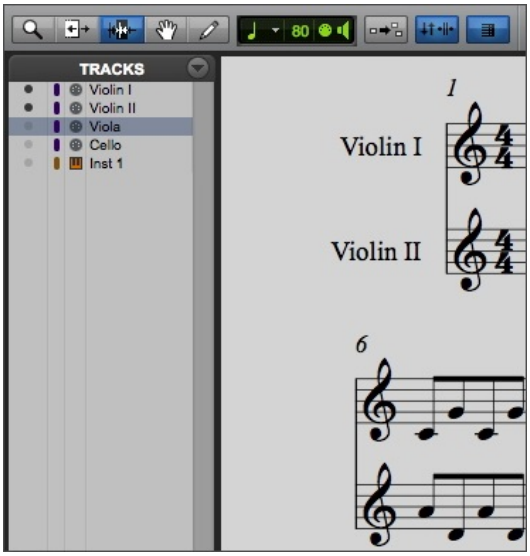
- From the Score Editor Window menu, select or deselect **`Track List`**.

Showing and Hiding Tracks

Use the Track List to show and hide MIDI and Instrument tracks as staves in the score.

To show MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Score Editor:

- Enable the Track Show/Hide icon in the Track List for tracks you want to show in the score.



Partial Score: Violin I and Violin II shown; all other tracks are hidden

To show all MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Score Editor:

- From the Track List menu, select **`Show All Tracks`**.

To show only selected MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Score Editor:

1. In the Track List, select the MIDI and Instrument tracks you want to show in the score.
2. From the Track List menu, select **`Show Only Selected Tracks`**.

To hide MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Score Editor:

- Disable the Track Show/Hide icon in the Track List for tracks you want to hide in the score.

To hide all MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Score Editor:

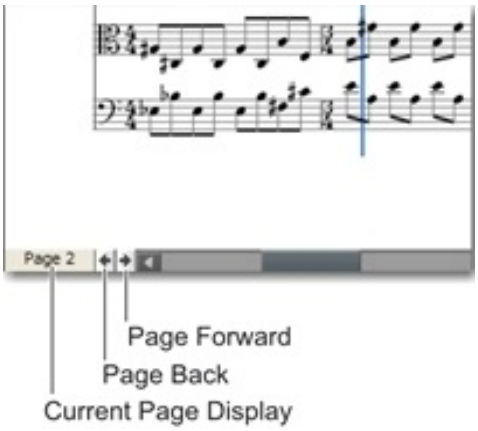
- From the Track List menu, select **`Hide All Tracks`**.

To hide selected MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Score Editor:

1. In the Track List, select the MIDI and Instrument tracks you want to hide in the score.
2. From the Track List menu, select **`Hide Selected Tracks`**.

Page Controls

The Score Editor window provides controls for navigating forward and backward by page. The current page number is displayed in the lower-left corner of the window.



To display the next page of the score:

- Click the Page Forward button.

To display the previous page of the score:

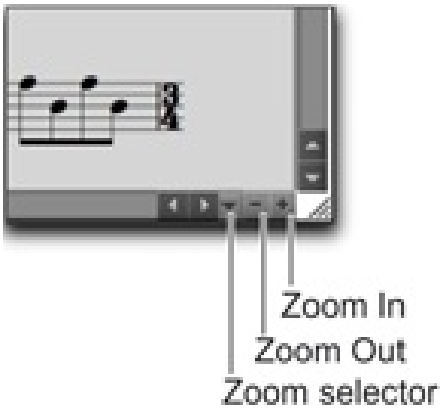
- Click the Page Back button.

To display any specific page of the score:

1. Click the Current Page display.
2. Type the page number for the page you want to view.
3. Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows).

Score Editor Zoom Controls

In addition to the Zoomer tool, the Score Editor provides Zoom In and Out buttons in the lower right hand corner of the window. It also provides a Zoom selector that lets you zoom to a preset percentage or page size. When using these Zoom controls, the Score Editor zooms around the current Edit selection.



Score Editor Zoom controls

To zoom in one level:

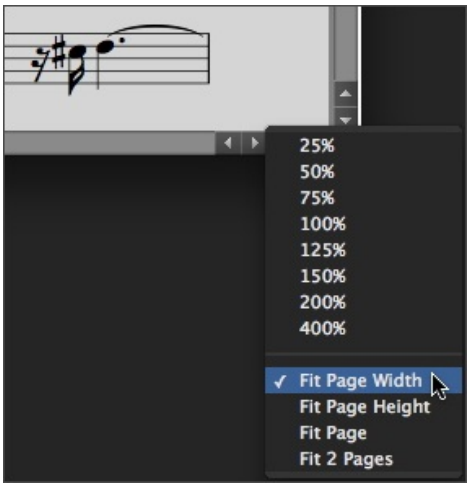
- Click the Zoom In button.

To zoom out one level:

- Click the Zoom Out button.

To zoom to a preset percentage:

1. Click the Zoom selector.
2. From the Zoom pop-up menu, select the zoom percentage.



Selecting a zoom percentage from the Zoom pop-up menu

To zoom to a page size:

1. Click the Zoom selector.
2. From the Zoom pop-up menu, select the page size.

Zoom to Page Sizes

The Zoom pop-up menu provides the following page sizes:

- Fit Page Width

  Zooms so that the width of one page fits in the Score Editor window.
- Fit Page Height

  Zooms so that the height of the page fits in the Score Editor window.

- Fit Page

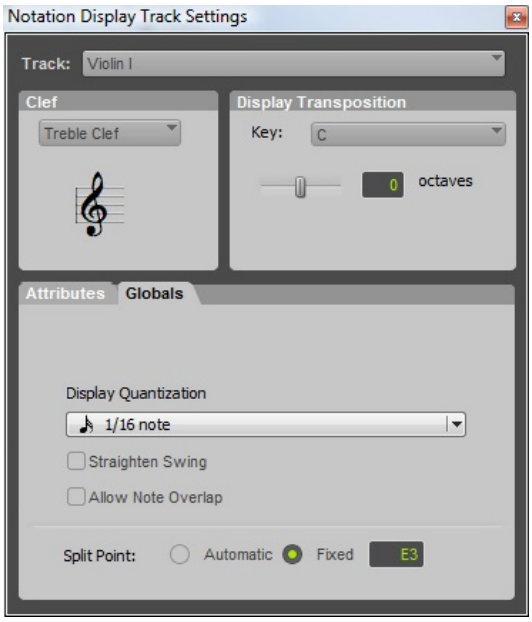
  Zooms so that an entire page fits in the Score Editor window.

- Fit 2 Pages

  Zooms so that two pages fit horizontally in the Score Editor window.

Notation Display Track Settings

The Notation Display Track settings determine how individual MIDI and Instrument tracks appear in the Score Editor. You can set the Clef, Display Quantization, and whether or not to display the track at "concert pitch" or as a transposing instrument (such as a B-flat tenor sax).



To configure the Notation Display Track settings:

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the Track menu in the Score Editor, select **`Notation Display Track Settings`**.
   - Right-click in the Score Editor and select **`Notation Display Track Settings`**.
   - Double-click a Clef on a Staff.
2. From the Track pop-up menu, select the MIDI or Instrument track whose Notation Display Settings you want to change.
3. Configure the settings.
4. Repeat the preceding steps for other MIDI and Instrument tracks as necessary.

Notation Display Track Settings Options

Track

From the Track pop-up menu, select the track you want to configure.

Clef

From the Clef pop-up menu, select the Clef you want for the selected track from the following options:

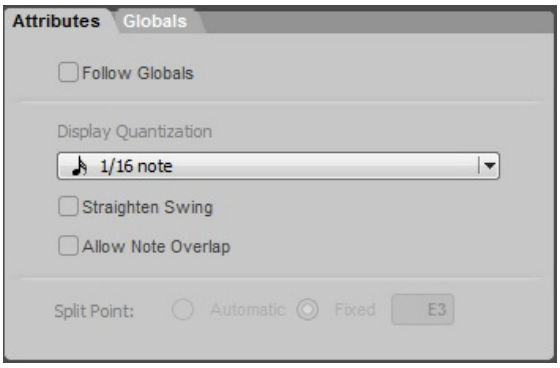
- Grand Staff
- Treble Clef
- Bass Clef
- Alto Clef
- Tenor Clef

Display Transposition

From the Key pop-up menu, select the key of Transposition for the track. For instruments that transpose from another octave, you can also adjust the Octave slider. For example, for a Bass Clarinet track, select the Key of B-flat and set the Octave slider to +1. This way, when you print the Bass Clarinet part, the player will be able to read the part and concert pitch will sound correctly a major ninth below where the part is written.

Attributes

The **Attributes** tab lets you specify the notation display quantization settings for the selected track. If the **Clef** is set to **Grand Staff**, you can also set the **Split Point** to divide notes between the treble and bass clefs.



Notation Display Track Settings window, Attributes tab

Follow Globals

When the **Follow Globals** option is selected, the track attributes use the global attributes settings (see "Globals" on the next page). This option is enabled for all tracks by default.

Display Quantization

The **Display Quantization** setting lets you select the quantization grid for the display of MIDI notes in music notation. MIDI notes in Pro Tools still maintain their original start time and duration, but this setting affects what note values are displayed. The notation display is quantized to the nearest select note value.

Straighten Swing

When enabled, the **Straighten Swing** option causes “swung” notes to be displayed as straight notation. For example, a run of swung eighth notes will be displayed as straight eighth notes.

Allow Note Overlap

Pro Tools only displays a single rhythmic line on a single staff. When two notes that start at different times overlap, the first note will be truncated when the second note begins. If the **Allow Note Overlap** option is enabled, Pro Tools displays the full length of overlapping notes using tied notes.

Split Point

When the Clef for the selected track is set to Grand Staff, the selected **Split Point** setting determines at which pitch the notes are placed in either the upper or lower staff of the Grand Staff.

Automatic

When selected, Pro Tools splits notes between the upper and lower staves of the Grand Staff based on logical note groupings.

Fixed

When selected, you can specify a particular pitch at which to split notes between the upper and lower staves of the Grand Staff.

Globals

The **Globals** tab provides the same settings as the **Attributes** tab (see "Attributes" on the previous page). You can select which tracks follow the settings in the **Globals** tab in the **Attributes** tab for each track.

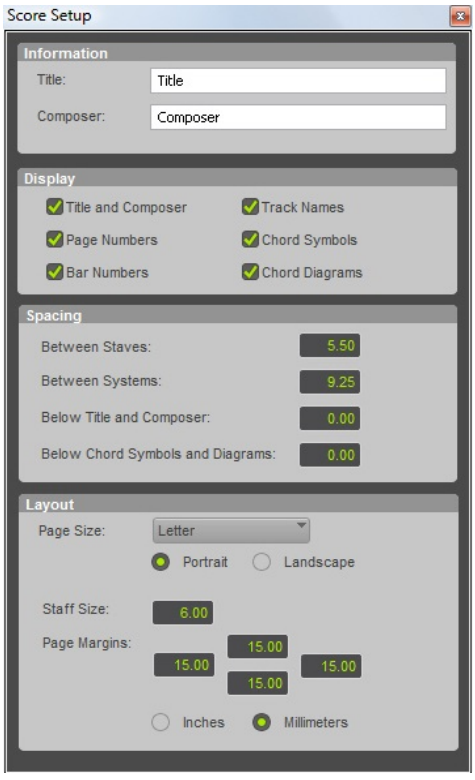
Score Setup

The Score Setup window lets you set up the page layout and staff spacing. You can enter the Title and Composer for the score. You can also select what elements of the score to display. Changes to the Score Setup update instantly in the Score Editor.

To open the Score Setup, do one of the following:

- Choose **File > Score Setup**.
- From the Track List menu in the Score Editor window, select **Score Setup**.
- Right-click in the Score Editor window and select **Score Setup**.

Score Setup Window Options



Information

Title

Enter the Title for the score. This appears at the top of the first page.

Composer

Enter the Composer for the score. This appears in the upper right-hand corner of the first page.

Display

The Display options determine which score elements you want displayed in the score. Deselect the elements you do not want displayed in the score.

Title and Composer

Select to display the Title and Composer on the score.

Page Numbers

Select to display Page Numbers at the bottom of each page.

Bar Numbers

Select to display Bar Numbers at the beginning of each system above the top staff.

Track Names

Select to display Track Names for each staff at the beginning of the score.

Chord Symbols

Select to display chord symbols in the score.

Chord Diagrams

Select to display Chord Diagrams (guitar tablature) in the score (see "Chord Symbols and Diagrams" on page 1120).



Disable the Chord Diagrams option when printing charts and lead sheets where you just want to see chord symbols.

Spacing

Between Staves

Enter the spacing you want between staves.

Between Systems

Enter the spacing you want between systems.



On pages where the music is vertically justified, the distance between staves and systems will be larger than the numbers specified.

Below Title and Composer

Enter the spacing you want between the Title and Composer and the first staff of the score.

Below Chord Symbols and Diagrams

Enter the spacing you want between Chord Symbols and Diagrams and the top stave of each system.

Layout

Page Size

Select the page size (**`Letter`**, **`Legal`**, **`Tabloid`**, or **`A4`**).

Portrait

Select to set the page orientation to Portrait.

Landscape

Select to set the page orientation to Landscape.

Staff Size

Enter the Staff Size.

Page Margins

Enter the size for the top, bottom, left, and right page margins.

Inches

Select to enter Stave Size and Page Margins in inches.

Millimeters

Select to enter Stave Size and Page Margins in millimeters.

Editing Notes

MIDI note editing in the Edit window, MIDI Editor windows, and the Score Editor window all affect the same MIDI data. When editing in one window, your edits are reflected in all other windows.

The Score Editor provides simple score editing tools for entering, moving, and transposing MIDI notes as music notation:

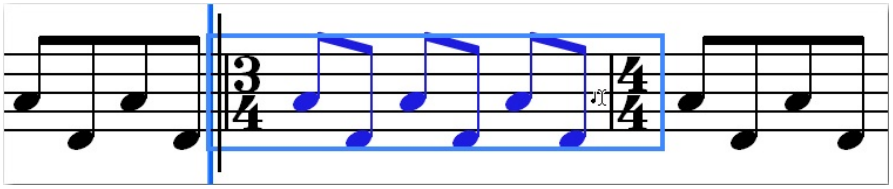
- The Trim tool lets you lengthen or shorten the duration of notes.
- The Note Selector tool lets you make object selections of notes in the score.
- The Grabber tool lets you select and move notes to another time or pitch location on the same track.
- The Pencil tool lets you insert notes and move them to another time or pitch location on the same track.

Selecting Notes

You can use either the Note Selector tool or the Grabber tool to select notes on one or more staves.

To select notes on one or more staves with the Note Selector tool:

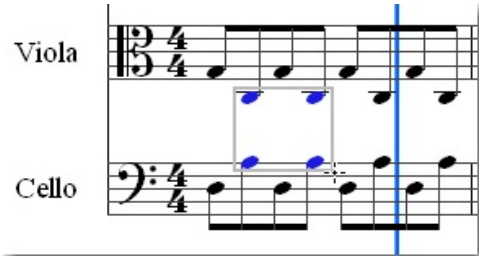
1. Click the Note Selector tool.
2. Drag in the score to highlight the notes you want to select.



Selecting notes with the Note Selector tool

To make a marquee selection on one or more staves with the Grabber tool:

1. Click the Grabber tool.
2. Drag in the score to highlight the notes you want to select.



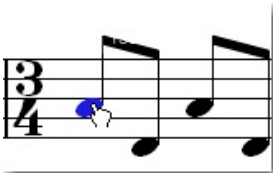
Selecting notes with the Grabber tool

Transposing Notes

You can use the Grabber tool or the Pencil tool to manually transpose a note up or down. You can also use the Transpose Event Operation (**`Event > MIDI Operations > Transpose`**) to transpose selected notes.

To transpose a single note:

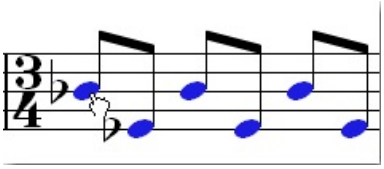
1. Click the Grabber tool.
2. Drag the note you want to transpose up or down.



Transposing a note with the Grabber tool

To transpose all selected notes:

1. Click the Grabber tool.
2. Drag around the notes you want to Transpose to select them.
3. Drag any of the selected notes up or down to transpose them.



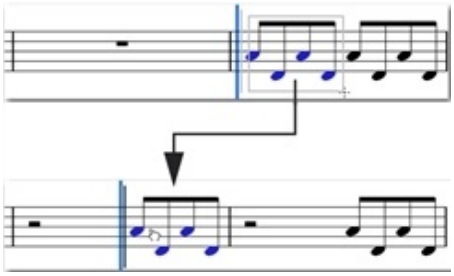
Transposing selected notes with the Grabber tool

Moving Notes

Use the Grabber tool to move selected notes from one time location to another time location on the same staff. When moving notes in the Score Editor, the underlying MIDI notes maintain their position relative to the Grid.

To move notes to another time location:

1. Click the Grabber tool.
2. If you want to move more than one note, drag around the notes you want to move to select them.
3. Drag any of the selected notes to another time location on the same staff.



Moving selected notes with the Grabber tool

You can also Nudge notes in the Score Editor by the currently selected Grid value.

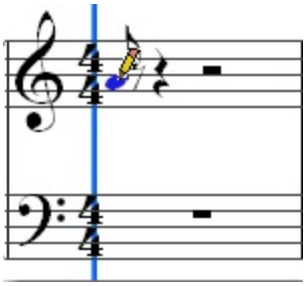
Inserting Notes

Use the Pencil tool to manually insert notes in the Score Editor. When you insert a note, the Score Editor automatically places it on the Grid and creates rests where appropriate.

You can also enter notes by recording MIDI, importing MIDI from a file, or using Step Input (Event › MIDI Operations › Step Input).

To manually insert a note:

1. Select the Default Note Duration setting (see "Default Note Duration" on page 1102).
2. Select the Grid setting (see "Grid" on page 1104).
3. Select the Default Note On Velocity (see "Default Note On Velocity" on page 1102).
4. Click the Pencil tool and select Free Hand.
5. With the Free Hand Pencil tool, do any of the following:
   - Single-click at the time location and pitch you want to enter a single note of the selected Default Note Duration.



Entering a single note with the Pencil tool

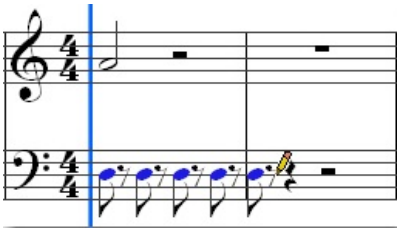
- Click at the time location and pitch and drag to the right to increase the duration of the note.



Entering a single longer note with the Pencil tool

To manually insert multiple notes of the same pitch:

1. Select the Default Note Duration setting (see "Default Note Duration" on page 1102).
2. Select the Grid setting (see "Grid" on page 1104).
3. Select the Default Note On Velocity (see "Default Note On Velocity" on page 1102).
4. Click the Pencil tool and select any of the following shapes:
   - Line
   - Triangle
   - Square
   - Random
5. Click at the time location and pitch and drag to the right. Repeated notes of the selected Default Note Duration are entered on the selected Grid. The Note On velocities for each note are determined in part by the Default Note On Velocity setting and the selected Pencil tool shape (see "Pencil" on page 1101).



Entering multiple note of the same pitch with the Line Pencil tool

Rests

The Score Editor automatically adds rests as necessary. Rests cannot be moved or inserted manually.

Score Editor Right-Click Menu

The Score Editor Right-click menu provides several useful commands for editing, exporting, and formatting the score and MIDI data.

To access the Score Editor Right-click menu:

- Right-click anywhere on the score.

Score Editor Right-Click Menu Items

Tools

The Tools submenu lets you select any Edit tools relevant to the Score Editor.

Zoomer

Selects the Zoomer tool.

Note Selector

Selects the Note Selector tool.

Grabber

Selects the Grabber tool.

Pencil

Selects the Pencil tool.

Insert

The Insert submenu lets you insert key changes, meter changes, and chord symbols into the score at the location of the Edit cursor.

Key

Inserts a key change.

Meter

Inserts a meter change.

Chord

Inserts a chord symbol.

Cut

The **Cut** command cuts the current Edit selection.

Copy

The **Copy** command copies the current Edit selection.

Paste

The **Paste** command pastes the clipboard to the current Edit selection or at the current Edit cursor location. Any MIDI notes already present at the same location are overwritten.

Merge

The **Merge** command pastes the clipboard to the current Edit selection or at the current Edit cursor location and merges the pasted data with any MIDI notes already present at the same location.

Clear

The **Clear** command clears (deletes) the current Edit selection.

MIDI Operations

The MIDI Operations submenu lets you select any of the MIDI Operations windows (such as Quantize or Change Velocity).

Open in Docked MIDI Editor

Choosing the **Open in Docked MIDI Editor** option opens the tracks shown in the Score Editor in the docked MIDI Editor in the Edit window.

Open in MIDI Editor

Choosing the **Open in MIDI Editor** option opens the tracks shown in the Score Editor in the a MIDI Editor window.

Open in MIDI Event List

The **Open In MIDI Event List** option opens the selected track in the MIDI Event List.

Notation Display Track Settings

Choosing the **Notation Display Track Settings** option opens the Notation Display Track Settings dialog (see "Notation Display Track Settings" on page 1110).

Score Setup

Choosing the **Score Setup** option opens the Score Setup dialog (see "Score Setup" on page 1112).

Send to Sibelius

Choosing the **Send to Sibelius** option command sends the score exactly as it appears in the Score Editor window to Sibelius notation software (see "Exporting Scores" on page 1122).

Print Score

Choosing the **Print Score** command prints the score (see "Printing Scores" on page 1122).

Key Changes

You can add, edit, and delete Key Signatures in your score. Key Signatures affect the note spelling of MIDI notes in the score. For example, MIDI note number 58 (“B-flat 3”) is B-flat in F major, but it is A-sharp in B major.



You can also add and delete Key Signatures in the Key Signatures ruler in the Edit window or in any MIDI Editor window.

To add a Key Signature:

1. With the Note Selector, Grabber, or Pencil tool, Right-click at the location in the score where you want to change key and select **Insert > Key Change**.
2. In the Key Change dialog, select the mode (major or minor), the key, its location and range, and how you want it to affect pitched tracks.
3. Click **OK**.

The selected Key Signature is displayed in the score and the note spellings for notes after the key change are updated accordingly.

To edit a Key Signature:

1. With the Grabber tool, double-click the Key Signature you want to edit.
2. Enter values in the Key Change dialog and click **OK**.

To delete a Key Signature:

- With the Grabber tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Key Signature you want to delete.

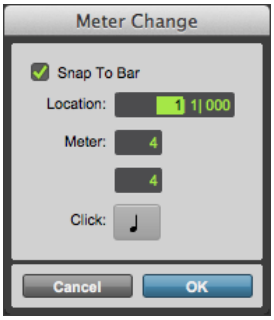
Meter Changes

You can add, edit, and delete Meters in your score. Meter changes affect the number of bars in the score (and in your session). When changing meter, notes are not moved, but the barlines will be redrawn.

You can also add and delete Meters in the Meter ruler in the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows.

To add a Meter change:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Event > Time Operations > Change Meter**.
   - With the Note Selector, Grabber, or Pencil tool, Right-click at the location in the score where you want to change meter and select **Insert > Meter Change**.
2. In the Meter Change dialog, enter the Location and Meter for the meter change.



3. If you want the inserted meter event to fall cleanly on the first beat of the nearest measure, select the **Snap To Bar** option.
4. Select a note value for the number of clicks to sound in each measure. For a dotted-note click value, select the dot (.) option in addition to the note value.

   For some meters, it may be desirable to use a dotted value for the click. For instance, if using a meter of 6/8, a dotted quarter note click (yielding two clicks per measure) is generally more suitable than a straight eighth note click (six clicks per measure).

5. Click **OK** to insert the new meter.

To edit a Meter change:

1. With the Grabber tool, double-click the Meter event you want to edit.
2. Enter values in the Meter Change dialog and click **OK**.

To delete a Meter change:

- With the Grabber tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Meter event you want to delete.

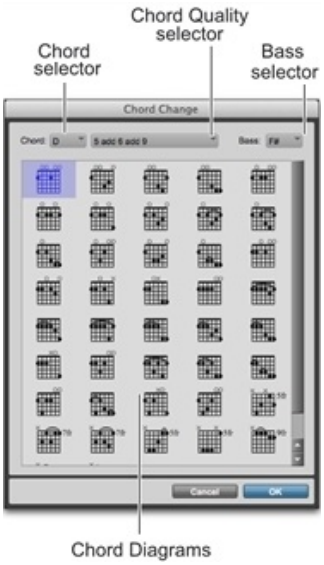
Chord Symbols and Diagrams

You can add, edit, and delete chord symbols and chord diagrams (guitar tablature) in your score. Chord symbols have no effect on MIDI data. Also, chord symbols are not included when exporting MIDI data from Pro Tools to a MIDI file, but they are included when exporting to a Sibelius file (.sib) or when using the **Send to Sibelius** command.

You can also add and delete chord symbols in the Chord Symbol ruler in the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows. However, Chord Diagrams (guitar tab) are only displayed in the Score Editor window.

To insert a chord symbol:

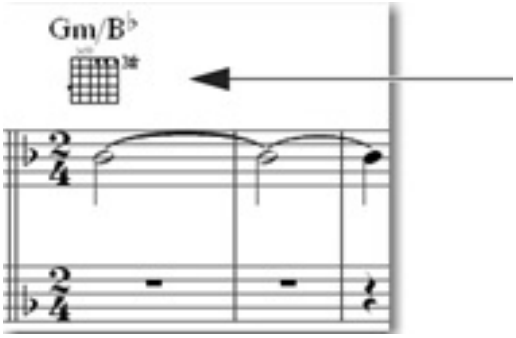
1. With the Note Selector, Grabber, or Pencil tool, Right-click at the location in the score where you want to add a chord symbol and select **`Insert > Chord`**.
2. In the Chord Change dialog, select the name for the root of the Chord from the Chord selector (such as D).



Chord Change dialog

3. Select the quality from the Chord Quality selector (such as major or minor).
4. Select the bass note of the chord from the Bass selector (such as B-flat for an inverted G minor chord).
5. Select a Chord Diagram (guitar tablature) from the available options.
6. Click **OK**.

   The selected chord symbol is placed above the top staff in the system.



Chord symbol and diagram in the score

To edit a chord symbol:

1. With the Grabber tool, double-click the chord symbol you want to edit.
2. Make changes in the Chord Change dialog, and click **OK**.

To move a chord symbol:

- With the Grabber tool, drag the chord symbol to a new location.

To delete a chord symbol:

- With the Grabber tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the chord symbol you want to delete.

To display or hide chord symbols in the score:

- In the Score Settings dialog (**File > Score Setup**), enable or disable the **Chord Symbols** option.

To display or hide chord diagrams (guitar tab) in the score:

- In the Score Settings dialog (**File > Score Setup**), enable or disable the **Chord Diagrams** option.

Exporting Scores

Pro Tools lets you export the score from your session as a Sibelius (.sib) file. You can then open your score in Sibelius as transcribed by Pro Tools, edit the notation in Sibelius, and print the score and parts from Sibelius.

Sibelius 5.x or higher is required to open .sib files exported from Pro Tools.

To export a score from Pro Tools:

1. Configure the score for your session in Score Editor window.
2. Choose **File > Export > To Sibelius**.
3. Select a destination and click **Save**.

To send the score from your Pro Tools session to Sibelius, do one of the following:

1. Configure the score for your session in the Score Editor window.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **File > Send to Sibelius**.
   - Right-click in the Score Editor and choose **Send to Sibelius**.

   Pro Tools exports all Instrument and MIDI tracks shown in the Score Editor to Sibelius as a .sib file and launches Sibelius if it is installed on your computer. You can then further edit the notation in Sibelius and print the score or parts from Sibelius.

Printing Scores

Pro Tools lets you print the score from your Pro Tools session. The score will be printed exactly as it appears in the Score Editor window. Configure the Score Setup and show or hide any MIDI and Instrument tracks. Only those tracks that are shown in the score will be printed.

To print the score from your Pro Tools session:

1. Open the Score Editor window and configure your score.
2. Choose **File > Print Score** or Right-click in the Score Editor window and choose **Print Score**.
3. Configure the Print dialog as desired and click **Print** (Mac) or **OK** (Windows).

Press Command+P (Mac) or Control+P (Windows) to print the score.

42 MIDI Event List

The MIDI Event List displays a detailed list of all events in a single MIDI or Instrument track. The events are displayed with text and numbers, allowing you to precisely edit their location, length, and event values.



Events in the MIDI Event List can be copied and pasted, selected, or deleted. Any MIDI event (except Sysex data) can be inserted and edited in the list. Certain MIDI event types can be hidden with the View Filter.

Unlike playlists in the Edit window, you can insert and display polyphonic aftertouch in the MIDI Event List.

Mute data for MIDI and Instrument tracks is not displayed in the MIDI Event List.

Opening the MIDI Event List

To open the MIDI Event List, do one of the following:

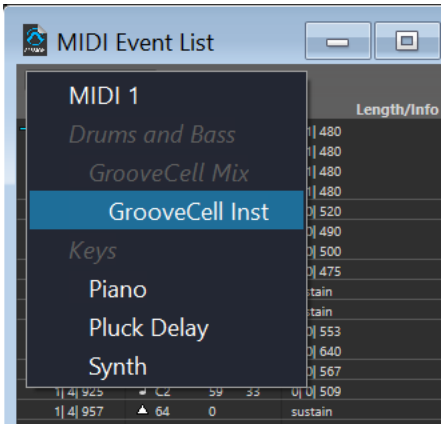
- Choose **`Window > MIDI Event List`**.
- Right-click a MIDI or Instrument track name in the Mix or Edit window, or in the Track List.

Press Option+Equal (Mac) or Alt+Equal (Windows) to open the MIDI Event List.

Track Selector

The Track selector in the MIDI Event List both indicates the currently displayed MIDI or Instrument track and can be used to choose a different MIDI or Instrument track to be displayed.

The Track selector in the MIDI Event List also shows any parent Folder tracks greyed out and in italics. Folder, Instrument, and MIDI tracks contained by a parent Folder track are indented accordingly.



Number of Events

The number of MIDI events on the selected track are displayed at the top of the MIDI Event List.

Target

The Target button for the MIDI Event List determines whether or not the MIDI Event List follows the Edit cursor and Edit selections in the Edit window and MIDI Editor windows. For example, when the Target is enabled, the Events shown in the MIDI Event List update to show the event in the Edit selection in the Edit window. When the Target is disabled, the MIDI Event List shows the same events regardless of changes to the Edit selection in other windows.

MIDI Event List Menu

The MIDI Event List menu contains commands and options for the MIDI Event List (see "MIDI Event List Options" on page 1131).

Columns in the MIDI Event List

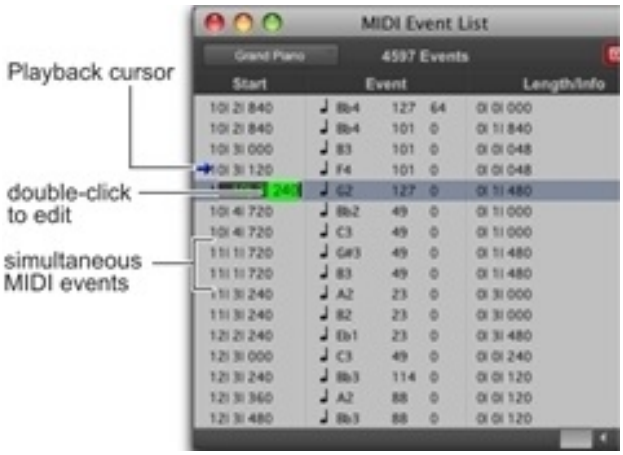
Information for the events in the MIDI Event List is displayed in the following three columns:

Start Column

Displays the start location, using the Main Time Scale, for each event. Locations can also be displayed in the Sub Time Scale when the Show Sub Counter option is selected in the Options pop-up menu.

The playback cursor appears as a blue arrow (red, when tracks are record-enabled) in the Start column.

When several events reside at the same location, the location is only indicated for the top event, with the others dimmed. The dimmed locations can be edited by double-clicking them.



MIDI Event List columns

Event Column

Displays the event type, indicated by an icon, and associated event values.

Length/Info Column

Displays the end point or length for notes, depending on which option is selected in the Options pop-up menu. Also displayed are the names for continuous controller events and program changes.

View Filter for MIDI Event List

You can use the View Filter to specify which event types are displayed in the MIDI Event List. This can help you zero in on only the events you want to affect; it also protects MIDI events from being edited or deleted. Events not displayed in the MIDI Event List still play back.

The View Filter can be set to display "all" messages, "only" the specified messages, or "all except" the specified messages.

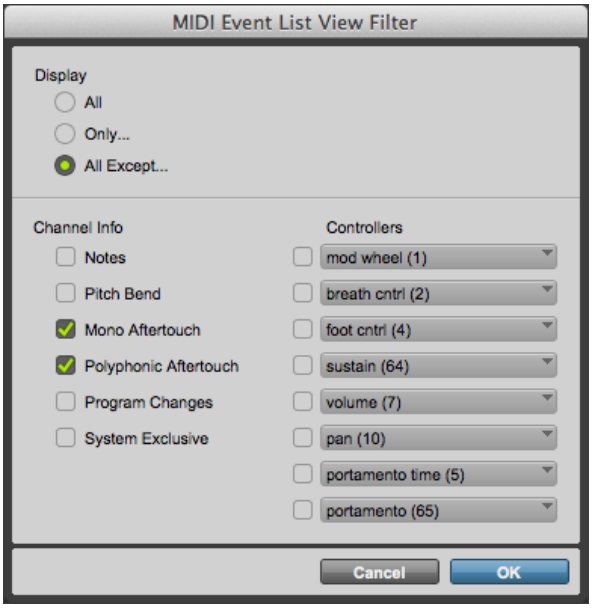
When inserting an event type that has been filtered from the MIDI Event List, that event type will no longer be filtered.

Example: To filter the display of aftertouch and System Exclusive Messages in the MIDI Event List:

1. In the MIDI Event List, choose **`View Filter`** from the MIDI Event List menu.

   With the MIDI Event List as the front-most window, press Command+F (Mac) or Control+F (Windows) to open the MIDI Event List View Filter dialog.

2. In the MIDI Event List View Filter dialog, select the **`All Except`** option.



3. Select the options for **`Mono Aftertouch`**, **`Polyphonic Aftertouch`**, and **`System Exclusive`**. Leave all other messages deselected.

   When using the **`All Except`** option, the selected events are not displayed. Conversely, when using the **`Only`** option, only the selected events are displayed.

4. Click **`OK`**.

Navigating in the MIDI Event List

You can use the Tab and Arrow keys to move through the MIDI Event List. You can also locate to the Edit start point, or any other specified location.

To move through the MIDI Event List, do any of the following:

- Double-click to edit a value.
- Press Tab or the Down Arrow to move to the next event (with or without the edit field selected).
- Press Option+Tab (Mac) or Control+Tab (Windows) or the Up Arrow to move to the previous event (with or without the edit field selected).
- With an edit field selected, press the Right Arrow to move to the next edit field to the right.
- With an edit field selected, press the Left Arrow to move to the next edit field to the left.

To keep the last event selected, press Shift while moving to the next or previous event.

To go to the Edit start point:

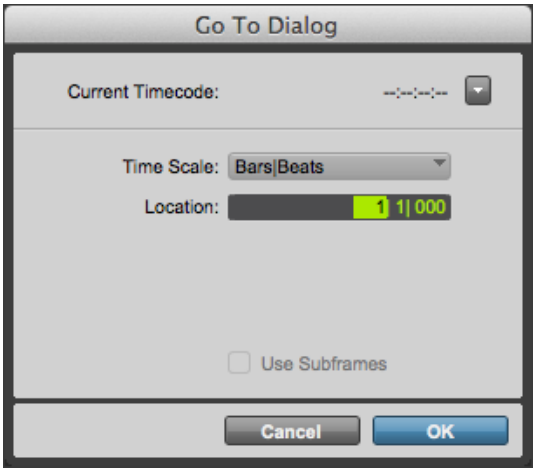
- In the MIDI Event List, choose **Scroll To Edit Selection** from the MIDI Event List menu.

To go to a specific location in the MIDI Event List:

1. In the MIDI Event List, choose **Go To** from the MIDI Event List menu.

   With the MIDI Event List as the front-most window, press Command+G (Mac) or Control+G (Windows) to open the Go To dialog.

2. In the Go To dialog, choose a format from the **Time Scale** pop-up menu.



3. If using Timecode, you can select the **Use Subframes** option.
4. Enter the location you want to go to, then click **OK**.

   The following items from the MIDI Event List menu affect navigating in the MIDI Event List:

   - When the **Page Scroll During Playback** option is selected, the MIDI Event List scrolls during playback.
   - When **Scroll During Edit Selection** is selected, the MIDI Event List is scrolled automatically when the Edit selection changes in the Edit window.

Inserting Events in the MIDI Event List

You can insert events in the MIDI Event List by choosing an event type from the MIDI Event List menu. Following are several examples of inserting events in the MIDI Event List.

To insert a note in the MIDI Event List:

1. From the MIDI Event List menu, select **`Insert > Note`**.

   With the MIDI Event List as the front-most window, press Command+N (Mac) or Control+N (Windows) to Insert a note.

2. Enter the location, pitch, attack (Note On) and release (Note Off) velocities, and length for the new note. To move between the Event Entry fields, use the Left and Right Arrow keys.



   When a field is selected, enter a value with any of the following methods:

   - Enter the value on the numeric keypad.
   - Drag up or down to scroll to the value.
   - Play the note on your MIDI controller keyboard, then press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard to confirm the value.

   With the Start field selected, you can automatically enter the location of another event already in the track by clicking that event.

3. Do one of the following:

   - To insert the note and remain in Event Entry mode, press Enter on the numeric keypad.
   - To insert the note and exit Event Entry mode, press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.
   - To exit Event Entry mode, without inserting the note event, press Escape on the alphanumeric keyboard.

To insert a controller event in the MIDI Event List:

1. From the MIDI Event List menu, choose **`Insert > Controller`**.

   With the MIDI Event List as the front-most window, press Command+L (Mac) or Control+L (Windows) to Insert a controller event.

2. Enter the location, controller “type” number, and controller value for the new event. The controller name is displayed in the Length/Info column, to the right of the controller value. To move between the Event Entry fields, use the Left and Right Arrow keys.



3. When a field is selected, enter a value with any of the following methods:

- Enter the value on the numeric keypad.
- Press the Up or Down Arrow to scroll to the value.
- While pressing Command (Mac) or Control (Windows), drag up or down to scroll to the value.
- Play the controller event on your MIDI controller keyboard, then press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard to confirm the value.

With the Start field selected, you can automatically enter the location of another event already in the track by clicking that event.

4. Do one of the following:
   - To insert the controller event and remain in Event Entry mode, press Enter on the numeric keypad.
   - To insert the controller event and exit Event Entry mode, press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.
   - To exit Event Entry mode, without inserting the controller event, press Escape on the alphanumeric keyboard.

To insert a program change in the MIDI Event List:

1. From the MIDI Event List menu, choose **`Insert > Program Change`**.

   With the MIDI Event List as the front-most window, press Command+P (Mac) or Control+P (Windows) to Insert a program change event.

2. Enter the location for the new event.
3. Enter a Program Change number and Bank Select value (if necessary). The program change name is displayed in the Info column.



You can click in the Length/Info column to open the Program Change window (for details, see "Patch Select (Program and Bank Changes)" on page 1052).

With the Start field selected, you can automatically enter the location of another event already in the track by clicking that event.

4. Do one of the following:
   - To insert the program change and remain in Event Entry mode, press Enter on the numeric keypad.
   - To insert the program change and exit Event Entry mode, press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.
   - To exit Event Entry mode, without inserting the program change, press Escape on the alphanumeric keyboard.

Inserting Another Event

After inserting an event, you can easily insert another event of the same type. The event type to be inserted is indicated at the bottom of the Insert menu.

Example: After inserting a note, to insert another, do one of the following:

- From the MIDI Event List menu, select **`Insert > Another Note`**.

With the MIDI Event List as the front-most window, press Command+M (Mac) or Control+M (Windows) to Insert a note.

When the option for Insert At Playback Location is enabled (see "MIDI Event List Options" on page 1131), you can use the keyboard shortcuts for inserting "another" event to insert events on-the-fly.

Editing Events in the MIDI Event List

Events in the MIDI Event List can be edited, selected, deleted, and copied and pasted.

To edit an event in the MIDI Event List:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click the event field you want to edit.
   - To edit a selected event, press Command+Enter (Mac) or Control+Enter (Windows).
2. Enter a new value with any of the following methods:
   - Enter the new value on the numeric keypad.
   - While pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), press the Up or Down Arrow to scroll to a new value.
   - While pressing Command (Mac) or Control (Windows), drag up or down to scroll to a new value.
   - Play the new note or controller value on your MIDI controller keyboard, then press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard to confirm.
3. Do one of the following:
   - To enter the new event value and move to another field or event, use the Arrow keys.
   - To enter the new value and remain in Edit Entry mode, press Enter on the numeric keypad.
   - To enter the new value and exit Edit Entry mode, press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.
   - To exit Edit Entry mode without entering the new value, press Escape on the alphanumeric keyboard.

Selecting Events in the MIDI Event List

To select a range of events in the MIDI Event List, do one of the following:

- Click the event at the beginning of the selection and drag to the ending event.
- Shift-click the event at the beginning of the selection, then Shift-click the ending event.

To select noncontiguous events in the MIDI Event List:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) each event.

To deselect an event in the MIDI Event List:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the selected event.

Notes selected in the MIDI Event List can be modified by any of the commands in the MIDI Operations window (see "MIDI Operations" on page 1400).

Deleting Events in the MIDI Event List

To delete an event in the MIDI Event List:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the event you want to delete.

To delete a selection of events in the MIDI Event List:

1. Select the events you want to delete by either dragging in the Start column, or by Shift-clicking each event.
2. To view only the events you want to delete, use the View Filter (see "View Filter for MIDI Event List" on page 1125). Events not displayed cannot be deleted.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Clear`** to delete all selected events.
   - Press Delete (Mac) or Backspace (Windows) on the alphanumeric keyboard.

Copying and Pasting Events in the MIDI Event List

To copy and paste events in the MIDI Event List:

1. Select the events you want to copy in the MIDI Event List.



Selecting in the MIDI Event List

2. Choose **`Edit > Copy`**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - To paste the material at an existing event's location, click the event in the MIDI Event List.
   - To paste the material at any location, choose Go To from the Options menu in the MIDI Event List, enter the location where you want to paste, and click OK.
   - Choose **`Edit > Paste`**. The events from the Clipboard are pasted, replacing any existing

events already there.

To paste events without overwriting other events, use the Edit › Paste Special › Merge MIDI command.

MIDI Event List Options

The MIDI Event List menu provides the following options:

Show Sub Counter

Displays event times in the Sub Time Scale.

Go To

Opens the Go To dialog, where you can specify a location, based on any of the supported Time Scales, to which the Edit insertion point is moved.

Scroll To Edit Selection

Scrolls the MIDI Event List to the Edit start point or Edit insertion point.

Page Scroll During Playback

Scrolls the MIDI Event List during playback.

Show Note Length

Displays note lengths, instead of note end times, in the Length/Info column of the MIDI Event List.

Show Note End Time

Displays note end times, instead of note lengths, in the Length/Info column of the MIDI Event List.

Insert

Provides a submenu of options that let you insert any type of MIDI event.

Insert At Edit Location

Defaults the location for inserted events defaults to the Edit start point or Edit insertion point.

Insert At Playback Location

Lets you insert events in the MIDI Event List in real time while listening to the session playback.

Insert At Playback Location With Grid

Snaps the location for events inserted in real time to the grid.

View Filter

Opens the View Filter dialog, where you can specify which events are displayed in the MIDI Event List (see "View Filter for MIDI Event List" on page 1125).

Keep Window On Top

Keeps the MIDI Event List window in the foreground even when clicking on and focusing another window (such as the Edit or Mix windows). Enable the **`Keep Window On Top`** option in the MIDI Event List menu to ensure that the window remains in the foreground when working with other windows. When this option is disabled, clicking on another window (such as the Edit or Mix windows) brings that window to the front and the MIDI Event List may be hidden or partially covered behind it.

43 MIDI Polyphonic Expression (MPE)

Pro Tools supports recording, playing back, and editing MIDI Polyphonic Expression (MPE). MPE provides individual note-by-note continuous control data (such as pitch bend or modulation) for exceptional expressive control over each individual note in a MIDI performance. MPE also delivers advanced, real-time sound design possibilities, letting you morph timbre, filters, and effects dynamically during a live performance.

MIDI control messages, such as pitch bend or modulation (CC1), apply to all notes played on a single MIDI channel simultaneously. However, with MPE, each note is assigned its own dedicated MIDI channel (within a range of 15 channels). This means that expressive gestures (such as finger pressure, slide, or per-note pitch bend/vibrato), can be applied to individual notes in a chord, offering a level of nuanced performance control not possible with regular MIDI.

Note that only certain MIDI controllers (such as Expressive E Osmose and ROLI Seaboard), external MIDI devices (such as Modal Electronics Cobalt 8), and Virtual Instrument plugins (such GForce MAP or Serum 2) support MPE.

For information about the MPE specification, visit https://midi.org/mpe-midi-polyphonic-expression.

MPE and Pro Tools

To use MPE in Pro Tools, you need:

- MPE-capable controller (optional)
- MPE-enabled Instrument or MIDI track
- MPE-capable MIDI device or Virtual Instrument plugin

*Depending on your MPE-capable MIDI controller, you will use either **Poly** or **Mono** mode for MPE (configured in MIDI Input Devices (**Setup > MIDI > Input Devices**). Similarly, when you assign your MIDI input device to a MIDI or Instrument track, set that track to MPE **Poly** or **Mono**.*

MPE Modes

MPE can be used in either **Poly** or **Mono** mode depending on the sort of MPE-capable MIDI controller you use.

Poly Mode

An MPE controller (like the Roli Seaboard) lets you play polyphonically, assigning MIDI channels 2–16 to the notes you play. Any per-note expression for that note (such as pitch bend, pressure, and CC74) is recorded on the same channel as the note. As long as you don't play 15 notes at the same time, there is no loss or interference of data.

In Poly mode, if you record from your controller in one take, and play it through your external MPE sound module or MPE plugin, there is no overlap of notes on a channel, and per-note controllers do not interfere with each other. However, if you do overdub recording, especially with MIDI Merge enabled, or if you edit the track by moving notes around, changing their duration, or pasting notes from elsewhere, it is possible to get overlapping notes and controller data. In this mode, Pro Tools allocates available channels automatically to prevent overlaps.

⚠ **While unlikely, it is possible to have overlapping note channels in Poly mode. If this occurs, you can re-channelize notes by changing the Track MPE setting from Poly to Off and back again. You can also move, trim, or otherwise edit a note with channel overlap to initiate re-channelization.**

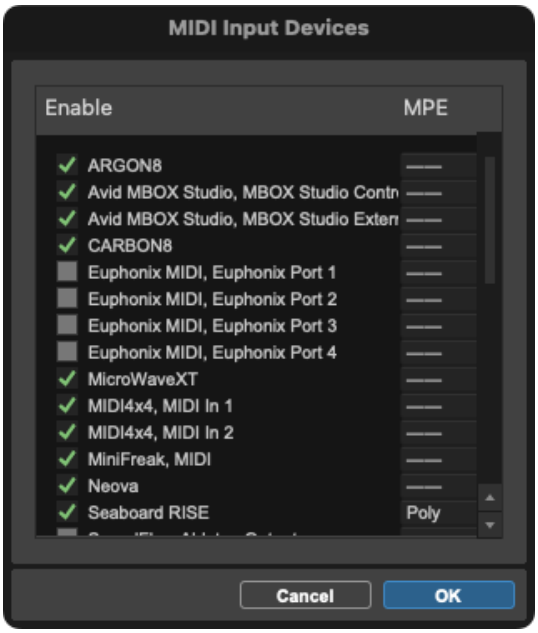
Mono Mode

An MPE controller with a small number of "rows" or "strings" (such as a MIDI guitar) assigns a channel to each row, and generally refrains from playing more than one note at a time on each row. In Mono mode, no automatic re-channelization occurs.

MPE MIDI Input Devices

To enable MPE for a MIDI input device:

1. Choose **Setup > MIDI > MIDI Input Devices**.



2. Select either **Poly** or **Mono** (depending on your MPE MIDI controller—see MPE MIDI Input Devices).



3. Click **OK**.

MPE Instrument and MIDI Tracks

Pro Tools lets you set individual Instrument and MIDI tracks to use MPE. MPE-enabled tracks let you record, edit, and play back MPE data.

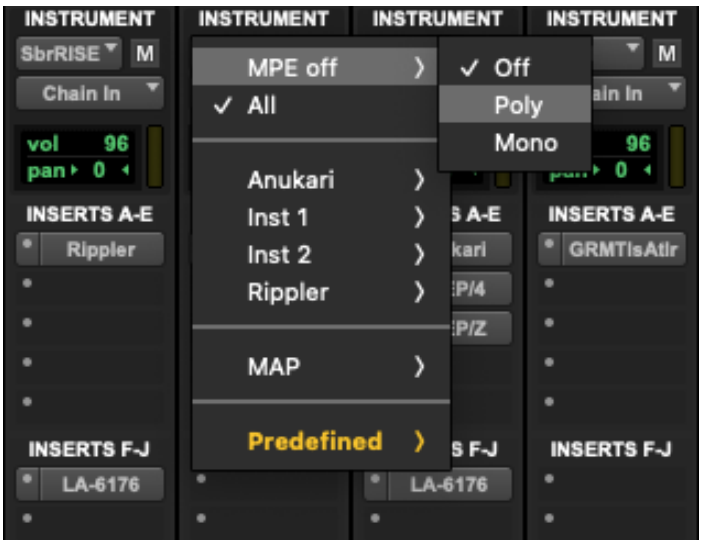
Pro Tools preserves both per-note controller data and note channelization when switching between MPE and non-MPE tracks.

To set a MIDI or Instrument track to use MPE:

- From the track MIDI Input selector, select either **`MPE > Poly`** or **`MPE > Mono`** accordingly (see MPE Instrument and MIDI Tracks).



Selecting MPE Input mode on a MIDI track



Selecting MPE Input mode on an Instrument track

To disable MPE on a MIDI or Instrument track:

- From the track MIDI Input selector, select **`MPE > Off`**.

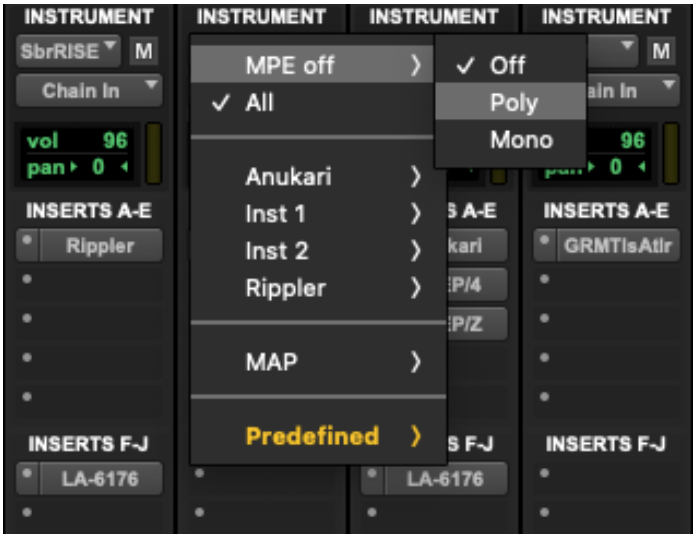
Recording MPE

Using an MPE-capable MIDI controller, you can record MPE performance data on MPE-enabled MIDI and Instrument tracks.

*To be able to record per-note mono aftertouch with MPE-capable instruments, you must first ensure that **`Mono Aftertouch`** is disabled in the MIDI Input Filter dialog (**`Setup > MIDI > MIDI Input Filter`**).*

To record MPE data on a MIDI or Instrument track:

1. Set the track MIDI input to MPE **`Poly`** or **`Mono`** according to your MPE-capable MIDI controller.



2. Select your MPE controller as the MIDI input for your MIDI or Instrument track.
3. Do one of the following:
   - For an Instrument track, insert an MPE Instrument plugin on the track or assign the MIDI output to an external MPE-capable sound module.
   - For a MIDI track, assign the MIDI output to an MPE Instrument plugin on another track or to an external MPE-capable sound module.

   You may need to enable MPE and configure MPE settings on your synth.
4. Configure the MIDI Settings in the Transport window or in the Edit Window Toolbar.
5. Record-enable the MIDI or Instrument track.
6. Record-enable the Transport.
7. Start recording your MPE performance.
8. Stop recording at the end or your performance.

Editing MPE Data

Per-note MPE data can be edited in controller lanes on MPE-enabled MIDI and Instrument tracks in the Edit window and MIDI Editor windows. It can also be edited in the MIDI Event List.

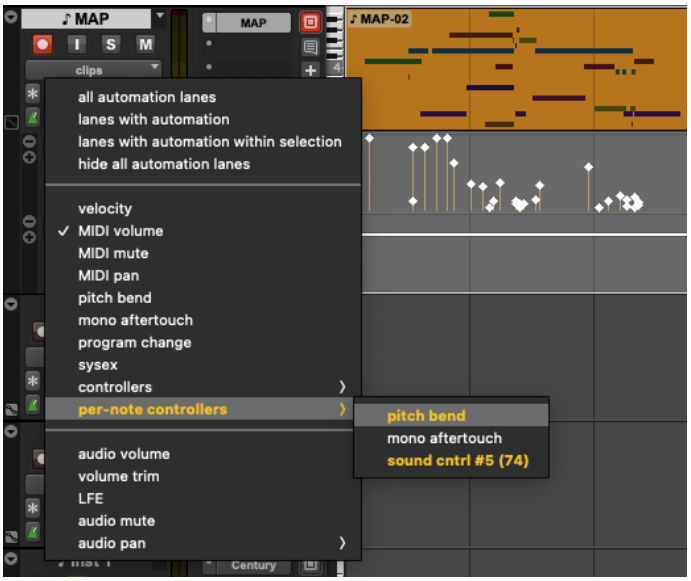
Transposing a note has no effect on the automation.

You can use the Pencil tool to manually enter MPE data in per-note controllers lanes.

Viewing MPE Data

To view per-note controller data, do one of the following:

1. In the Edit window or in a MIDI Editor, click the Reveal Controller Lanes button.
2. Select the controller you want to view from the **`per note controllers >`** submenu of the Controller Type selector.



Editing MPE Data in the Edit or a MIDI Editor Window

Generally, the same editing actions available for track automation and MIDI CC data work for MPE per-note controller data. However, you can only edit MPE data for selected notes.



An automation line is shown for each note in the track, spanning the length of the note. As you move or change the length of a note, the automation moves and scales with it.

Selector Tool

Use the Selector tool to make a timeline selection in an automation lane. As you drag, it sets the note selection for any notes above it.

Grabber Tool

Click and drag individual MPE data breakpoints with the Grabber tool to edit its value or location. Click to add, or Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to delete breakpoints.

Shift-click the notes you do not want to edit.

Trimmer Tool

Without a timeline selection, the Trim tool trims MPE data for all selected notes. With a timeline selection, it only trims data inside the selection.

Pencil Tool

The Pencil tool affects all MPE data for notes in the range of its gesture.

Deleting MPE Data

To delete MPE data:

1. Select the MPE data that you want to delete.
2. Choose **`Edit > Clear`**, or press Delete or Backspace.

MPE Editing Restrictions

The following MPE data editing actions are only supported on one note at a time:

- Duplicate time selection
- Cut/Copy time selection
- Paste at insertion point

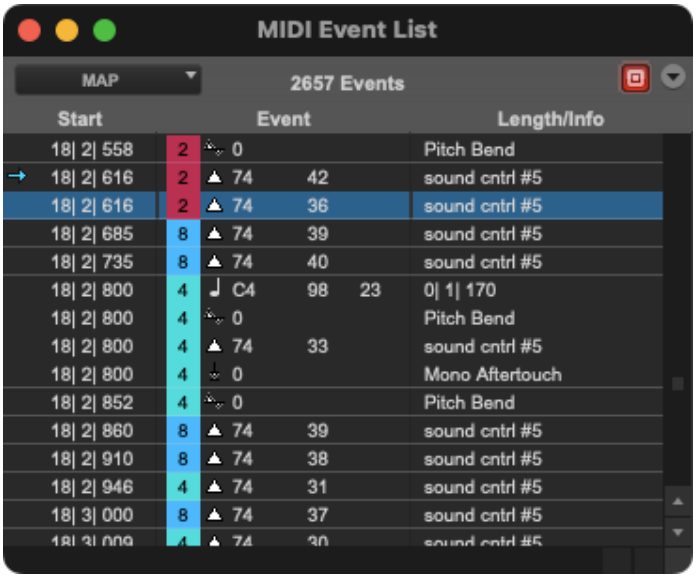
Editing MPE Data in the MIDI Event List

To edit MPE data in the MIDI Event List:

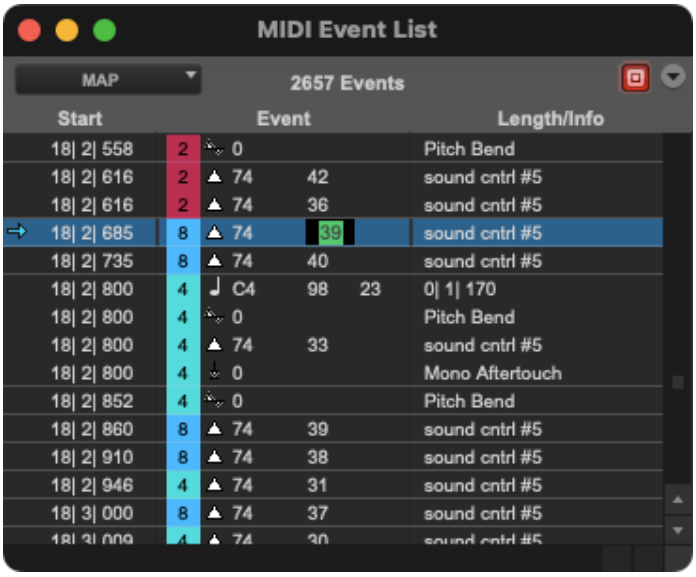
1. Choose **`Window > MIDI Event List`**.

   Notes selected in the Edit or a MIDI Editor window open focused in the MIDI Event List.

2. Locate the MPE data you want to edit. (MPE note channels are listed and color coded.)



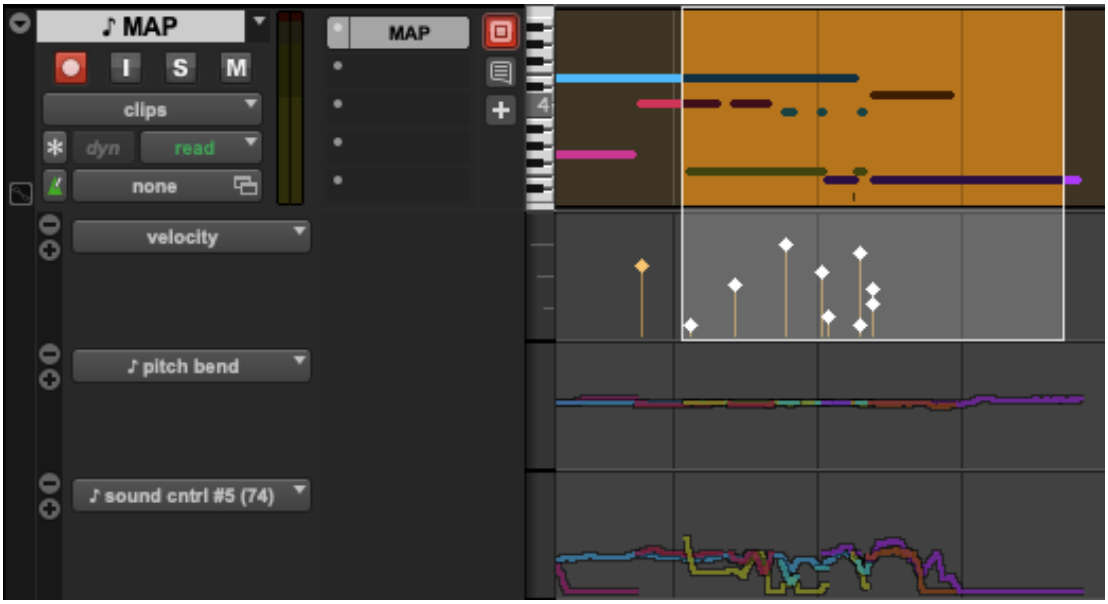
3. Double-click the Start, Event CC#, or CC value depending on which you want to edit.



4. Type the desired value for the MPE event and press Enter.

MPE Channel Color Coding

MPE controller data is color coded by channel by default. For example, if you record a performance that includes varying vibrato for 4 separate notes in a chord, the 4 channels of MPE control data are 4 different colors.



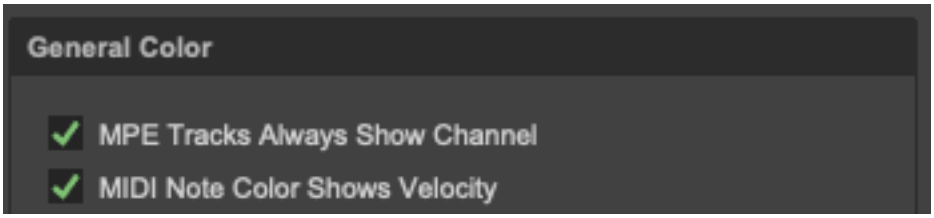
Color-coded notes display on Edit Window

MPE Tracks Always Show Channel Option

You can disable (or enable) MPE channel color coding.

To disable (or enable) MPE channel color coding:

1. Choose **`Setup > Preferences > Display`**.
2. Under **`General Color`**, disable (or enable) **`MPE Tracks Always Show Channel`**.



3. Click **`OK`**.

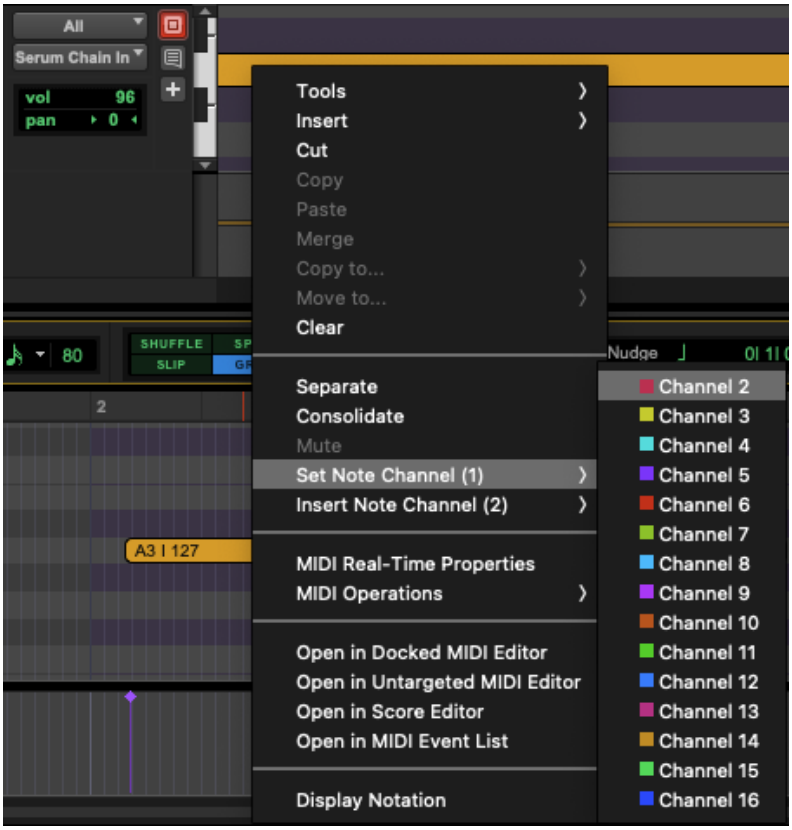
Press Command+Option+Control+M (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+M (Windows) to toggle the MPE Channel Color preference on or off.

Note-Channel Management in Mono Mode

In Mono mode, there is no note channelization. As such, if you need to manage note channel assignments in Mono mode, you can do so manually.

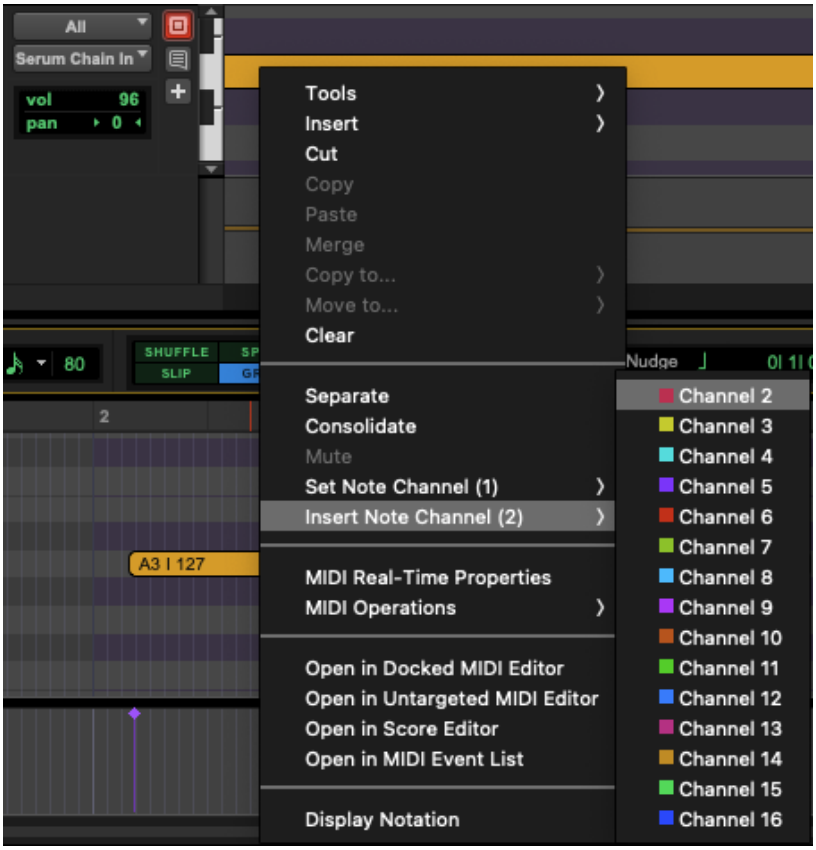
To set the MPE Note Channel for selected notes:

1. Make an MPE note selection in the Edit window or a MIDI Editor window.
2. Right-click the selection and select the desired channel from the **`Set Note Channel`** submenu.



To assign a Note Channel for inserted notes:

1. Make an MPE note selection in the Edit window or a MIDI Editor window.
2. Right-click the selection and select the desire channel from the **`Insert Note Channel`** submenu.



- Duplicate time selection
- Cut/Copy time selection
- Paste at insertion point

Part VII: Arranging

Learn how to control tempo, meter, and time signatures, and how to arrange material.

- "Time, Tempo, Meter, Key, and Chords" on page 1143
- "Memory Locations" on page 1194
- "Arranging Clips" on page 1217
- "Clip Loops and Groups" on page 1246

45 Time, Tempo, Meter, Key, and Chords

In Pro Tools, editing and arranging is typically done on tracks against a fixed *Timeline*.

Clips and events can be anchored to points in absolute time, or relative time, as measured on the session's Timeline. The Timeline includes two different types of rulers for measuring time: Timebase rulers and Conductor rulers.

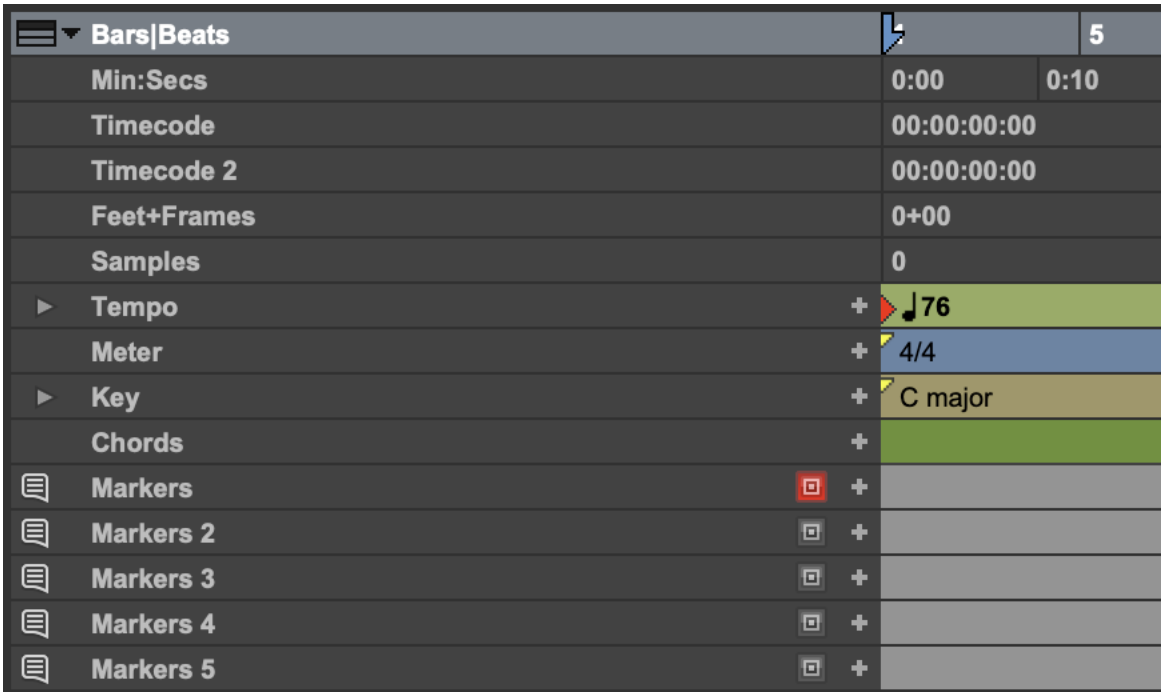
Pro Tools also provides Marker rulers for Memory Location (see "Memory Locations" on page 1194).

The Timebase rulers can measure time in two different ways: sample-based time (absolute time) and tick-based time (relative time). For example, the Minutes:Seconds ruler measures absolute time and the Bars|Beats ruler measures relative time.

The relative time of the Bars|Beats ruler is determined in part by tempo and meter. Tempo, Meter, and Key Signature rulers reside in Conductor tracks. Tempo and meter events affect the timing of tick-based tracks, and also provide the tempo and meter map for the Bar:Beat grid and Click. You can edit tempo events in the Tempo ruler or Tempo Editor.

Key changes can affect MIDI notes when applying transposition. You can edit key and key changes in the Key Signature ruler.

Timebase Rulers and Conductor Rulers



All rulers displayed

Timebase Rulers

Any or all of the following Timebase rulers can be displayed at the top of the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows:

Bars|Beats

Displays the Time Scale in bars and beats. Use this Time Scale if you are working with musical material that must align with bars and beats. The Bars|Beats Time Scale is relative and is affected by the session's tempo and meter map.

> *To ensure your tracks align with the bars and beats in your session, record with a click (see "Recording with a Click" on page 765). Material that is recorded without listening to a click can still be aligned to bar and beat boundaries in Pro Tools with the Identify Beat command (see "Identify Beat Command " on page 1174), or with Beat Detective (see "Beat Detective" on page 998).*

Minutes:Seconds

Displays the Time Scale in minutes and seconds. As you zoom in farther with the Zoomer tool, the Time Scale begins to display tenths, hundredths, and thousandths of a second. The Minutes:Seconds Time Scale is absolute.

Timecode

Displays the Time Scale in frames. The Timecode Rate and Session Start time are set from the Session Setup window. The Timecode Time Scale is absolute, based on the frame rate.

Pro Tools supports the following frame rates:

- 23.976 fps
- 24 fps
- 25 fps
- 29.97 fps
- 29.97 fps drop
- 30 fps
- 30 fps drop
- 47.952 fps
- 48 fps
- 50 fps
- 59.94 fps
- 59.94 fps drop
- 60 fps
- 60 fps drop
- 100 fps
- 119.88 fps
- 119.88 drop
- 120 fps
- 120 fps drop

Secondary Timecode Ruler

A secondary timecode ruler, labeled Time Code 2, lets you reference video frame rates in the Timeline that are different from the session Timecode rate. However, you *cannot* Spot to the Timecode 2 ruler and it *cannot* be set as the Main Time Scale. The secondary timecode ruler can be set to show any Pro Tools supported frame rate.

The Timecode 2 ruler can display the same frame rates as the Timecode ruler.

Feet+Frames

Displays the Time Scale in feet and frames for referencing audio-for-film projects. The Feet+Frames time display is based on the 35 millimeter film format. The Feet+Frames Time Scale is absolute, based on the frame rate.

Samples

Displays the Time Scale in samples. This format is very useful for high-precision sample editing. The Samples Time Scale is absolute, based on the sample rate.

In addition to providing a timing reference for track material, the Timebase rulers are also used to define *Edit selections* for track material, and *Timeline selections* for record and play ranges.

With the Selector tool, drag in any Timebase ruler to select material across all tracks in the Edit window or MIDI Editor window. To include the Conductor tracks in the selection, press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging.

Conductor Rulers

Any or all of the following Conductor rulers can be displayed:

- Markers (1–5)
- Tempo (and Tempo Editor)
- Meter
- Keys (and Key Signature Staff)
- Chords

The Meter and Tempo rulers indicate changes in meter and tempo within the Session. The Key Signature ruler indicates changes of key. The Chord Symbols ruler shows chord markers. The Markers ruler displays markers to important track locations.

For more information on Memory Location markers, see "Memory Locations" on page 1194.

Displaying Rulers

To display all rulers:

- Select **`View > Rulers > All`**.

To remove a ruler from the display, do one of the following:

- Option-click the ruler's name (to the left of the ruler display).
- Choose **`View > Rulers`**, and deselect a ruler option.

To display only the Main Time Scale in the Timebase ruler:

- Select **`View > Rulers > None`** ("Main Time Scale" on the next page.)

To add a specific ruler to the display, such as the Markers ruler, for instance:

- Select **`View > Rulers > Marker`**.

To change the display order for the rulers:

- Drag a ruler's name up or down to a collocation.

To copy the range selection from a Conductor ruler to make an Edit selection in the top track in the Edit window (or in the Notes pane in MIDI Editor windows):

- Press Control+; (semicolon) (Mac) or Start+; (semicolon) (Windows).

Ruler View Selector

The Timebase and Conductor rulers can also be configured with the Ruler View selector.



Ruler View selector in the Edit Window.

Main Time Scale

While all Timebase rulers can be displayed simultaneously in the Edit and MIDI Editor windows, there is only one that represents the *Main Time Scale*. This ruler is also called the Main Timebase ruler.

The Main Time Scale determines the time format used for:

- The Main Counter in the Transport
- The Main Counter at the top of the Edit window or MIDI Editor window
- Start, End, and Length values
- Pre- and post-roll amounts
- Grid and Nudge values

The Main Time Scale can be set to the following formats:

- Bars|Beats
- Minutes:Seconds
- Timecode

- Feet+Frames
- Samples

Setting the Main Time Scale

To set the Main Time Scale, do one of the following:

- Click a Main Counter selector (located at the top of the Edit or Transport window (when it is set to display Counters) and select a Time Scale.



Main Counter selector (in the Edit window)

- If a Timebase ruler is displayed, click its name so it becomes highlighted.

> *Setting the Main Time Scale to the timebase currently displayed in the Sub Counter switches the two Time Scales, setting the Sub Time Scale to the previous timebase of the Main Time Scale.*



Switching the Main Time Scale from Bars|Beats to Min:Sec

Navigating with the Main Counters

The Main Counters (at the top of the Edit window and in the Transport window) provide a convenient way to navigate to a specific time location.

> *The Main Counter indicator in the Transport window only displays when the Transport is set to display Counters.*

To navigate with a Main Counter:

1. Click in a Main Counter.
2. Type in a location.
3. Press Enter (Windows or Mac) or Return (Mac) to automatically navigate to a new location.

The Sub Counter

Below each Main Counter is a Sub Counter that can be shown or hidden. The Sub Counter provides an additional timing reference.

To show (or hide) the Sub Counter in the Edit window:

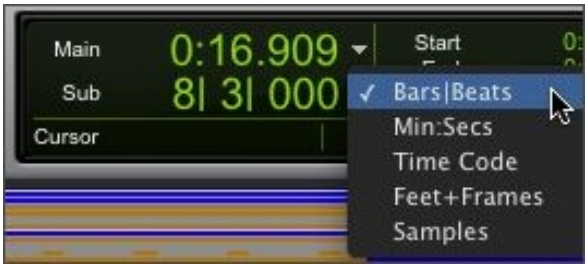
- From the Main Counter selector, select (or deselect) the **`Show Sub Counter`** option.

To show the Sub Counter in the Transport window:

- From the Transport Window menu, ensure that the **Counters** and **Expanded Transport** options are enabled.

To set the Time Scale for the Sub Counter:

- Click the Sub Counter selector and select a Time Scale.



Sub Counter selector (in the Edit window)

Tick-Based Timing

Pro Tools is a sample-based program with an internal MIDI resolution of 960,000 pulses per quarter note (ppq). However, when the Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats, the display resolution in Pro Tools is 960 ppq and the Timebase is tick-based.

In the Bars|Beats Time Scale, Pro Tools is tick-based (960 ticks to a quarter note). Some amount of sample-rounding may occur when placing events at certain locations (see "Sample Rounding and Edit Operations" on page 1151).

When working in Bars|Beats, you will often want to specify tick values for a number of operations, including:

- Placing and spotting clips
- Setting lengths for clips or MIDI notes
- Locating and setting play and record ranges (including pre- and post-roll)
- Specifying settings in the Quantize and Change Duration pages of the MIDI Operations window
- Setting the Grid and Nudge values

When the Main Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats, and you are using tempo changes, set the Linearity Display Mode to Linear Tick Display (see "Changing the Linearity Display Mode" on page 1165). This will keep the Bars|Beats ruler fixed (at the selected zoom level) and sample-based rulers such as Minutes:Seconds will scale to fit any tempo changes while bar lengths remain constant.

The following table lists the number of ticks for each of the main note sizes:

Note Value	Normal	Dotted	Triplet
1/2 note	1920	2880	1280
1/4 note	960	1440	640
1/8 note	480	720	320
1/16 note	240	360	160
1/32 note	120	180	80
1/64 note	60	90	40

Tick- and Sample-Based Timebases

Pro Tools lets you set any track timebase to either sample-based or tick-based.

Audio tracks in Pro Tools are sample-based by default. This means that audio clips and events are located at specific sample locations, and they do not move from that location if the tempo changes in the session—even though their bar and beat locations do change.

MIDI and Instrument tracks in Pro Tools are tick-based by default. This means that MIDI clips and events are located at a specific bar and beat locations, and they do not move from that location if the tempo changes in the session—even though its sample location does change.

Sample-Based Audio and MIDI

With a sample-based audio track, all audio clips in the track have an absolute location on the absolute Timeline (for example, on the Samples or Minutes:Seconds Timebase ruler). Audio stays fixed to the sample time, regardless of any tempo or meter changes occur in a session.

On sample-based MIDI and Instrument tracks, all MIDI events in the track have an absolute location on the absolute Timeline (for example, on the Sample or Minutes:Seconds Timebase ruler). MIDI events stay fixed to the sample time, regardless of where tempo or meter changes occur in a session.

Tick-Based Audio and MIDI

Tick-based audio is fixed to the relative time of the Bars|Beats Timebase ruler, and moves relative to the sample Timeline when tempo and meter changes occur. However, MIDI and Elastic Audio events, and tick-based audio clips (non–Elastic Audio) respond differently to tempo changes in respect to duration. MIDI note events and Elastic Audio clips change their duration when tempo is adjusted, while non–Elastic Audio audio clips do not. Tempo changes affect only the location of the beginning (or sync point) of each audio clip in a tick-based (non–Elastic Audio) audio track.

You can select whether a track is sample-based or tick-based when it is created, or change timebases later.

To have all new tracks default to tick-based, enable the New Tracks Default to Tick Timebase option in the Editing Preferences.

Tick-Based Elastic Audio

Tick-based Elastic Audio tracks automatically apply Real-Time (or Rendered) Elastic Audio processing (TCE) when changing tempo. For more information, see "Tempo Changes and Tick-Based Elastic Audio Tracks" on page 1156.

Switching Timebases

All Pro Tools tracks can be switched between being sample-based or tick-based.

Track height affects how various track controls appear in the Edit window. The Timebase selector, which is used for switching a track's timebase, is only visible in Medium or larger track heights.

To switch the timebase of a track, do one of the following:

- If the track's height is set to Medium or larger, click the Timebase selector for the track and select the timebase. The Timebase selector icon changes to reflect your choice.

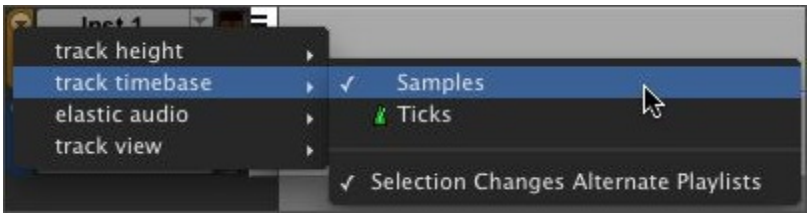


Timebase selector (samples)



Timebase selector (ticks)

- If the track's height is set to Small (or smaller), click the Track Height selector and select the timebase from the Track Timebase submenu.



Track Height pop-up menu

Alternate Playlist Timebases

When you change a track's timebase, you can choose to apply the timebase change to that track only, or to the active Playlist and all alternate playlists for that track.

To configure a timebase change to affect timebases of all playlists in a track:

- Click the Timebase selector (or Track Height Selector) and enable the **`Selection Changes Alternate Playlists`** option.

Groups

When you change the timebase for an audio track that is part of an active Edit group, all the tracks in the group will change to the same timebase.

Audio Clip Location

In tick-based audio tracks, the location of an audio clip is determined by the clip's start point, unless the clip contains a sync point.

If the clip contains a sync point, the sync point determines where the audio clip is fixed to the grid.

Marker Location

When creating markers and Selection Memory Locations, you can specify whether they have an Absolute (sample-based) or Bar|Beat (tick-based) reference. For more information, see "Bar|Beat and Absolute Reference" on page 1200.

Sample Rounding and Edit Operations

When audio material in Pro Tools is sample-based, some amount of sample-rounding may occur with some edits when the Main Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats. This is most evident when you need audio clips to fall cleanly on the beat (as when looping) and notice that the material is sometimes a tick or two off. With a few simple precautions, this can be avoided.

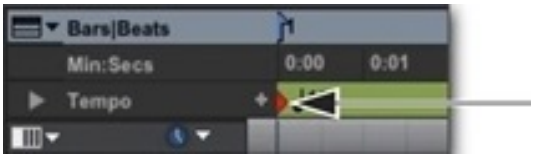
To ensure that selections are precisely aligned to the grid for looping, copying, duplicating, or repeating, consider the following:

- If you use the Selector tool, enable Grid mode and select the appropriate grid value (such as sixteenth notes).
- For the greatest accuracy, type the selection Start and End points in the Event Edit area.
- Do not select the material with any of the Grabber tools (or by double-clicking with the Selector tool).

Song Start Marker

The Song Start Marker defines the initial tempo for Bar|Beat-based material. New sessions open with a default tempo of 120 BPM.

When a new session is created, the Song Start Marker has no associated meter event. A meter event is added automatically at the Song Start if you add another meter event anywhere else on the Meter ruler.



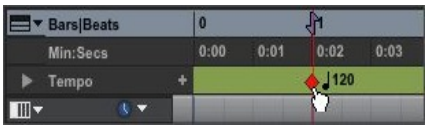
Song Start Marker

The Song Start Marker can be moved, but it cannot be deleted.

The position of the Song Start Marker can also be changed in the Time Operations window, see "Move Song Start " on page 1185.

To move the Song Start Marker by dragging:

- In the Tempo ruler with any Edit tool, drag the Song Start Marker left or right.



Dragging the Song Start Marker

If the Edit mode is set to Grid, the Song Start Marker moves in increments of the current Grid value.

To move the Song Start Marker only, without moving any tick-based data, press Control+Shift (Mac) or Start+Shift (Windows) while dragging. When dragging the Song Start Marker only, dragging is constrained to whole bar increments only.

To edit the initial tempo in the Song Start Marker:

1. In the Tempo ruler, double-click the Song Start Marker.
2. In the Change Tempo dialog, enter a new BPM value.
3. Click **OK**.

Tempo

The Tempo ruler lets you edit Tempo events one at a time or according to tempo curves. You can edit tempo visually in the Tempo Editor, or make precise changes in tempo using the Tempo Operations window.

To display the Tempo ruler:

- Select **View > Rulers > Tempo**.

To set the default session tempo, see "Setting the Session Meter and Tempo " on page 768.

You can use Beat Detective to generate Bar|Beat markers (tempo map). For more information, see "Generating Bar|Beat Markers with Beat Detective" on page 1008.

When working with tempo changes and tick-based material, set the Linearity Display Mode to Linear Tick Display.

Tempo Events

Tempo events can be assigned to the Song Start Marker to replace the default tempo (of 120 BPM), and they can be inserted anywhere else within the session to change tempo.

In Manual Tempo mode, the Tempo ruler is ignored and the session plays at the tempo defined in the Transport window, See "Using Manual Tempo Mode" on page 770.

Current Tempo

As tempo events are encountered during playback, the session's current tempo is displayed in the Transport window.



Current Tempo in Transport window

Inserting Tempo Events

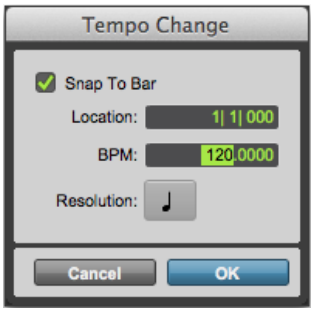
To insert a tempo event:

1. Click in the Tempo ruler where you want to insert the tempo event.
2. Click the Add Tempo Change button at the left of the Tempo ruler.



Add Tempo Change button

3. In the Tempo Change dialog, enter the Location and BPM value for the tempo change.



Tempo Change dialog

4. To place the inserted tempo event cleanly on the first beat of the nearest measure, select the **Snap To Bar** option.
5. To base the BPM value on something other than the default quarter note, select a different note value.
6. Click **OK**. The new tempo event is inserted and appears in the Tempo ruler.



Inserted tempo event

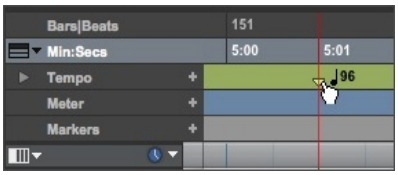
Each tempo event has a small green triangle next to it that indicates its location. These triangles can be dragged to move the tempo event, and they can be double-clicked to edit the tempo event.

Moving and Editing Tempo Events

Existing tempo events can be moved, edited, deleted, copied, and pasted.

To move a tempo event by dragging:

- In the Tempo ruler, drag the triangle for the tempo event left or right.



Dragging a tempo event

If the Edit mode is set to Grid, the dragged event snaps to the current Grid value.

To edit a tempo event:

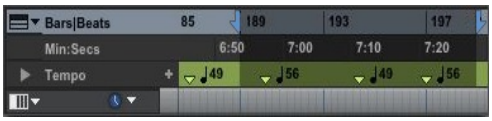
1. In the Tempo ruler, double-click the tempo event.
2. In the Tempo Change dialog, enter a new Location or BPM value for the tempo event.
3. Click **OK**.

To delete a tempo event:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the tempo event (the cursor changes to a Grabber with a "–").

To copy and paste several tempo events:

1. With the Selector tool, drag in the Tempo ruler to select the range of bars that includes the tempo events.



Tempo events selected

Press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging to select across all Conductor tracks.

2. Choose **Edit > Copy**.
3. Click in the Tempo ruler at the point where you want to paste the tempo events.
4. Choose **Edit > Paste**. The contents of the Clipboard are pasted from the insertion point, replacing any existing tempo events.

To extend an Edit selection in a track to the Tempo ruler:

1. With the Selector or Grabber tool, make a Timeline selection.
2. Shift-click in the Tempo ruler.

To select all tempo events:

- Double-click with the Selector tool in the Tempo ruler.

To clear a range of selected tempo events:

1. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. Drag with the Selector tool in the Tempo ruler to select the tempo events you want to remove.
3. Choose **Edit > Clear** to delete the selected tempo events.

Tap Tempo

You can manually set the tempo for a Pro Tools session by tapping on your computer keyboard. You can also use a connected MIDI keyboard to tap tempo.

To set the Manual Tempo by tapping on a computer keyboard:

1. To view the MIDI controls in the Transport window, select **View > Transport > MIDI Controls**.
2. In the Transport window, click the Tempo Ruler Enable (Conductor) button so it becomes unhighlighted. Pro Tools switches to Manual Tempo mode. In this mode, any tempo events in the Tempo ruler are ignored.



Tempo Ruler button (unhighlighted), set to Manual Tempo mode

3. Click in the Tempo field so it becomes highlighted and tap the "T" key on your computer keyboard repeatedly at the new tempo.

You can apply the new tempo to the entire session by changing the default tempo of the Song Start Marker. See "Song Start Marker" on page 1151.

To set the Manual Tempo by tapping on an external MIDI keyboard:

1. To view the MIDI controls in the Transport window, select **View > Transport > MIDI Controls**.
2. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **MIDI** tab.
3. Ensure that **Use MIDI to Tap Tempo** is selected.
4. In the Transport window, click the Tempo Ruler Enable (Conductor) button so it becomes unhighlighted. Pro Tools switches to Manual Tempo mode. In this mode, any tempo events in the Tempo ruler are ignored.
5. Click in the Tempo field so it becomes highlighted and tap in the tempo by playing a note repeatedly at the new tempo on your MIDI keyboard controller.

To compute the new tempo, Pro Tools averages the last eight (or fewer) taps to determine the correct tempo. The computed BPM value appears in the Transport Tempo field.

Tempo and Automation Drift

(With Sample-Based Clips on Tick-Based Tracks Only)

When a track is sample-based, the track's automation playlist is unaffected by changes in tempo. This means that automation is always aligned with any sample-based audio on the track with sample accuracy.

When a track is tick-based, the automation breakpoints change to match the changes in tempo.

Generally, when applying tempo changes with tick-based MIDI and Elastic Audio, this is desirable. In fact, you will probably want to set all of the tracks in your session that contain automation to tick-based. This way any tempo changes affect all tick-based track automation and track material equally. However, when working with sample-based (non-Elastic) audio on tick-based tracks, tempo changes affect the start location of audio clips, but not their duration.

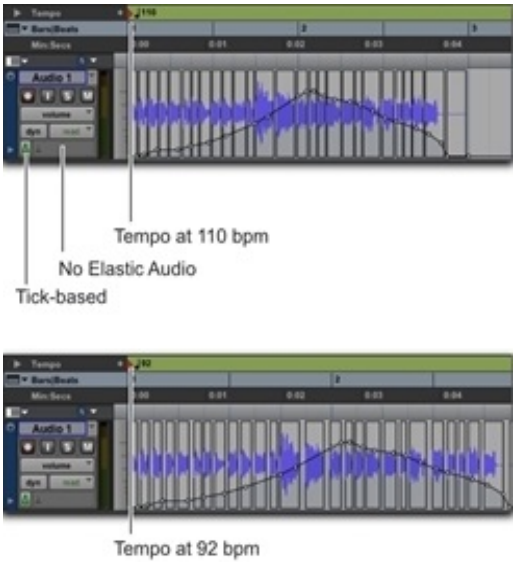
Since the length of each sample-based audio clip in a track is unaffected by changes in tempo, existing automation data is not aligned with the audio after a tempo change is made to a tick-based audio track.



Tempo change applied to long sampled-based audio clip on a tick-based track, showing automation drift

Minimizing Automation Drift

In general, automation drift is more pronounced with larger sample-based audio clips. By creating many small clips, the effects of automation drift can be minimized, because the start points of each subsequent clip changes as the tempo changes. When tempo is decreased, automation expands. When tempo is increased, automation contracts.



Tempo change applied to small sample-based clips on a tick-based track, showing minimal automation drift

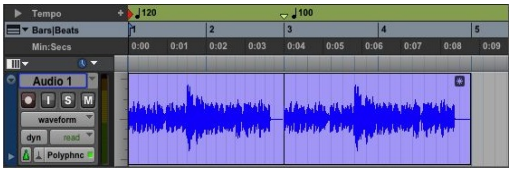
To break an audio clip into smaller clips, use Beat Detective. For more information, see "Beat Detective" on page 998.

You can also separate clips at transients or based on the current grid resolution. For more information, see "Separate Commands" on page 927

Tempo Changes and Tick-Based Elastic Audio Tracks

Clips on tick-based, Elastic Audio-enabled tracks apply Time Compression and Expansion (TCE) based on tempo changes. For simple tempo changes, clips on tick-based Elastic Audio-enabled tracks automatically conform to match the new tempo. Tempo changes do not affect sample-based, Elastic Audio-enabled tracks.

In the following figure, the first two-bar clip is at its native tempo of 120 bpm. The second two-bar clip has been conformed to the tempo change of 100 bpm. Since the second clip has been warped to remain two bars long at the slower tempo, it displays the Clip Warp indicator in the upper right-hand corner of the clip.



Tempo conformed audio, linear tempo change

For tempo curves, such as an accelerando or ritardando, Tempo Event Warp markers are automatically created corresponding to each tempo event, and the clip conforms accordingly. The following figure shows a clip in Warp view. Notice how the audio conforms to the tempo curve.



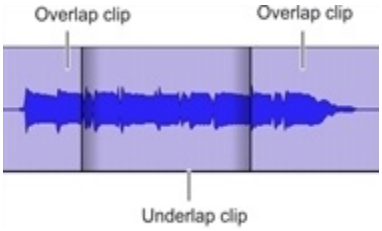
Tempo conformed audio, tempo curve

Tempo Event-generated Warp markers cannot be edited. They only show where the audio has been warped in order to conform to tempo changes.

If you change the track timebase from ticks to samples, any Tempo Event–generated Warp markers convert to regular, editable Warp markers.

Tempo Changes and Tick-Based Audio Tracks

When a tick-based audio track has multiple clips, and Elastic Audio is not enabled, an increase in tempo can cause neighboring clips to overlap. Audio clips can be set to display a "shadow" to indicate overlapping clip boundaries.



Outer clips overlapping middle clip, Overlap Shadows enabled

To toggle the display of Overlap Shadows:

- Choose **View > Clip > Overlap Shadows**.

Changing Clip Overlap/Underlap

After tempo changes with tick-based audio, and other edits, clips may overlap in undesired ways. To correct this, a clip can be brought to the front, or sent behind neighboring clips as needed.

To change the clip overlap or underlap:

1. In the Edit window, choose the clip or clips you want to re-order.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Clip > Bring to Front** to make the clip overlap the neighboring clips.
   - Choose **Clip > Send to Back** to make the clip underlap the neighboring clips.

   If multiple overlapping clips are selected, Pro Tools will apply the command to each clip as that clip relates to the neighboring clip on the right.

Conform to Tempo

Pro Tools lets you conform clips on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks (both sample- and tick-based) to the session tempo. If necessary, the **Conform to Tempo** command analyzes the selected clips to determine its tempo and duration (in bars and beats), and then applies Elastic Audio processing to conform the clip to match the session tempo.

To conform a clip to the session tempo:

1. Select the clip you want to conform to the session tempo.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Clip > Conform to Tempo**.
   - Right-click the clip you wan to conform to tempo and select **Conform to Tempo**.

   Pro Tools analyzes the clip's entire file for Elastic Audio events and tempo. If a tempo is detected, and a duration in bars and beats is determined, the clip conforms automatically to the session tempo. If a tempo and duration is not detected (such as with a clip that is a single drum hit or with a long clip with no clear tempo), the clip is not conformed to the session tempo.

   You can also use telescoping warp in Warp view to manually conform a long clip to the session tempo. See "Telescoping Warp" on page 1352.

   Conform to Tempo can only be applied to clips and cannot be applied to clip groups. To conform clip groups to the tempo, ungroup the clip group, then apply Conform to Tempo to the underlying clips, and then regroup those clips.

Alternate Playlists and Tempo

Alternate playlists on Elastic Audio-enabled, tick-based tracks are only affected by tempo changes. Otherwise, alternate playlists are not affected by editing Warp or Event markers in the main playlist.

Graphic Tempo Editor

The Tempo Editor, a resizeable window beneath the Tempo ruler in the Edit Window, lets you view and edit tempo information graphically.

Displaying the Tempo Editor

The Tempo Editor is an expansion of the Tempo ruler, opening in the rulers section of the Edit Window.



Tempo Editor

To display the Tempo Editor, do one of the following:

- Select **View > Rulers > Tempo**, then select **View > Rulers > Tempo > Tempo Editor**
- Click the Tempo Editor expand/collapse triangle.

Zooming and Scrolling in the Tempo Editor

To zoom in vertically in the Tempo Editor:

- Click the Tempo Editor Zoom In button (“+”).

To zoom out vertically in the Tempo Editor:

- Click the Tempo Editor Zoom Out button (“–”).



Zoom In and Out buttons in the Tempo Editor

To scroll vertically in the Tempo Editor, do any of the following:

- Click the Scroll Up Arrow to scroll up.
- Click the Scroll Down Arrow to scroll down.
- Drag the Scroll bar up or down.

Editing Tempo Events in the Tempo Editor

Tempo events in the Tempo Editor can be edited with any of the following methods:

- Individual tempo events can be dragged with any of the Grabber tools to adjust their location or value.
- A group of selected tempos can be scaled up or down with the Trim tool.
- New tempo events can be drawn in with the Pencil tool to replace existing ones.
- Tempo events can be copied and pasted, nudged, and shifted.

Drawing Tempo Events

Tempo events can be drawn in the Tempo Editor using the follow Pencil tool shapes.

Free Hand

The Free Hand shape draws freely according to the movement of the mouse. The shape is reproduced as a series of steps according to the Tempo Edit Density setting. (For more information, see "Selecting Tempo Edit Density" on the next page.)

Line

The Line shape draws in a straight line from click to release. Tempo values change in steps according to the Tempo Edit Density and Resolution.

Parabolic

The Parabolic shape draws the best possible curve to fit your freehand drawing. The shape is reproduced as a series of steps according to the Tempo Edit Density setting.

S-Curve

The S-Curve shape draws a best possible fit of an S-Curve to your freehand drawing. The shape is reproduced as a series of steps according to the Tempo Edit Density setting.

⚠ **The Triangle, Square, and Random Pencil tool shapes do not apply to tempo events.**

Selecting Tempo Resolution (BPM Rate)

The Tempo Editor lets you specify the beat note value for tempo events by changing the Tempo Resolution. The beat note value selected for the Tempo Resolution is usually based on the meter. For example, in 4/4 the beat is a quarter note and in 6/8 the beat is (usually) a dotted-quarter note.



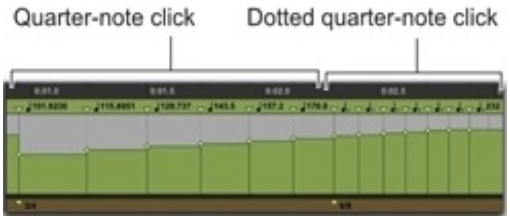
Tempo Resolution selector and pop-up menu

To select the Tempo Resolution (BPM rate) for Pencil tool edits, do one of the following:

- Click the Tempo Resolution selector and select the appropriate note value from the pop-up menu. The Tempo Resolution for tempo events created by drawing with the Pencil tool are set to the specified note value for the BPM rate.
- Click the Tempo Resolution selector and select **`Follow Metronome Click`**. The Tempo Resolution for tempo events created by drawing with the Pencil tool automatically mirror the click values set by meter events in the Meter ruler.

A tempo curve can have different BPM values if there are meter click changes within the selected range.

💡 *Because it can be unnecessarily complicated to set meter events separately for each Tempo event, selecting Follow Metronome Click is recommended in most cases.*



Tempo curve with different click values

Selecting Tempo Edit Density

The Tempo Editor lets you specify the density of tempo events created in the Tempo ruler when you draw a tempo curve with the Pencil tool.



Tempo Edit Density selector and pop-up menu

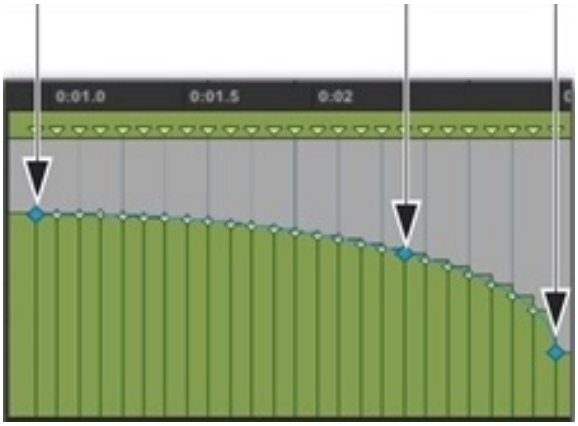
To select the Tempo Edit Density for Pencil tool edits:

- Click the Tempo Edit Density selector and select a time value from the pop-up menu. Tempo events created by drawing with the Pencil tool are placed in the Tempo ruler at the specified density.

Pressing Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) before drawing a pencil line conforms already created tempo events to the drawn line rather than creating new tempo events.

Curve Adjustment Mode

Immediately after you draw new tempos using the Pencil tool, a tempo curve appears in blue, outlining the newly created tempo graph. Blue adjustment handles on the curve let you adjust the shape and size of the new tempo graph.



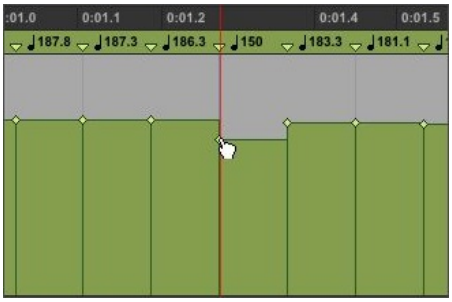
Tempo Curve Adjustment handles

All the new tempo events under the curve will change as you move the Tempo Curve Adjustment Handles. To adjust the curve shape without the track data adjusting immediately, press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) while adjusting the curve. Tempo events will change to fit the new curve when you release the mouse button.

The blue adjustment handles are only active until a new tool is selected or a new command is executed.

Creating New Tempo Settings with Grabber Tools

The Grabber tools let you create new tempo settings by dragging tempo events in the Tempo Editor.



Using a Grabber tool to change a tempo event

To change the tempo of a tempo event:

- With the Grabber tool, drag a tempo event up or down.

To adjust the location of the tempo change:

- With the Grabber tool, drag a tempo event to the left or right.

To remove a tempo event:

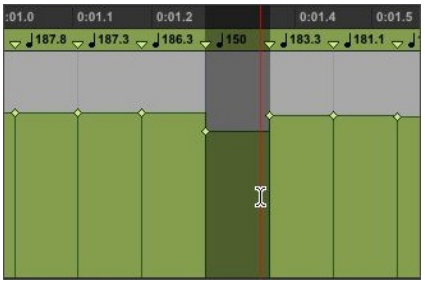
- With the Grabber tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the tempo event.

Selecting Tempo Events

You can easily select a single tempo event, or an entire tempo curve within the Tempo Editor.

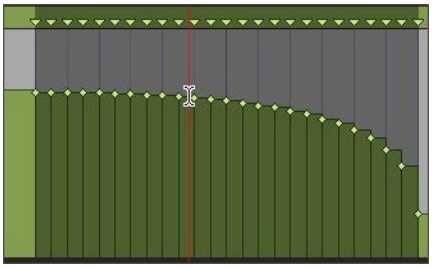
To Select a tempo event in the Tempo Editor:

- Using the Selector tool or any Grabber tool, double-click between two tempo events. The first event is selected.



To Select a tempo curve in the Tempo Editor:

- Using the Selector tool or any Grabber tool, triple-click on a horizontal tempo line in the curve that you want to select.



Extending Tempo Selections

You can extend Tempo selections to the next or the previous tempo event.

To extend a tempo selection:

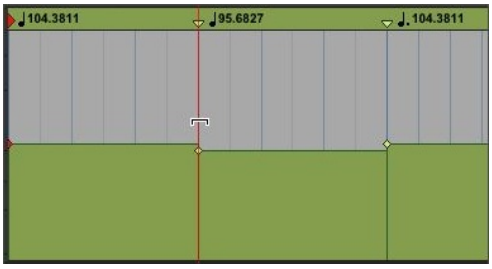
1. With the Selector tool, select a range of tempo events.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Press Shift+Tab to extend the selection to the next tempo event.
   - Press Shift+Option+Tab (Mac) or Shift+Control+Tab (Windows) to extend the selection to the previous tempo event.

Scaling and Stretching Tempo Events with the Trim Tool

The Trim tool lets you scale all the tempo events of the session, or within a Timeline selection. The Trim tool also lets you stretch a clip of tempo events to cover a longer or shorter area in the Timeline.

To scale all the session's tempo events with the Trim tool:

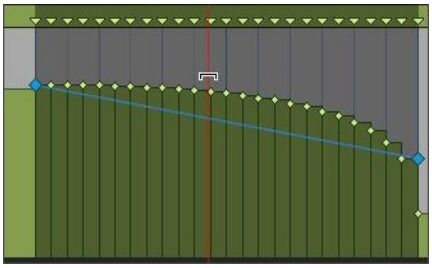
1. Open the Tempo Editor.
2. With the Trim tool, click above any tempo event and drag up or down. Dragging up increases the tempo values for all tempo event in BPM; dragging down decreases them.



Changing all tempo events with the Trim tool

To scale selected tempo events with the Trim tool:

1. Open the Tempo Editor.
2. With the Selector tool, select the area you want to edit.
3. With the Trim tool, click within the selected area, and drag up or down. Dragging up increases the tempo values of the selection in BPM; dragging down decreases them.

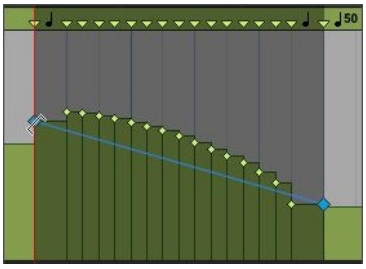


Changing selected tempo events with the Trim tool

To adjust the rate of tempo change over absolute time with the Trim tool:

1. Open the Tempo Editor.
2. With the Selector tool, select the area you want to edit.
3. With the Trim tool, click either the start or end handle for the selected range, and drag up or down. The BPM values for tempo events scale accordingly and tempo events scale over a longer or shorter

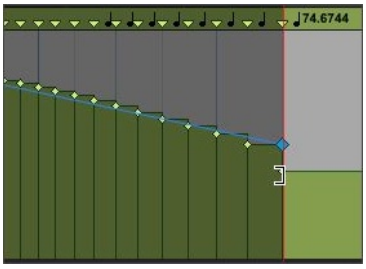
amount of absolute time.



Adjusting the rate of tempo change with the Trim tool

To scale the duration of tempo changes with the Trim tool:

1. Open the Tempo Editor.
2. With the Selector tool, select the area you want to edit.
3. With the Trim tool, click at the start or end of the selection, and drag horizontally. Tempo events do not change in terms of actual BPM values, but they are scaled over a longer or shorter amount of absolute time.



Scaling the duration of selected tempo events with the Trim tool

Moving, Cutting, Pasting and Nudging in the Tempo Editor

To move a selected group of tempo events in the Tempo Editor:

1. Open the Tempo Editor.
2. With the Selector tool, select the area you want to move.
3. With any Grabber tool, click on any selected tempo event and drag horizontally to move the tempo events to a new location.

Press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging to move a copy of the tempo events.

To copy and Paste tempo events in the Tempo Editor:

1. Open the Tempo Editor.
2. With the Selector tool, select the area you want to copy.
3. Choose **`Edit > Copy`**.
4. Click in the Tempo Editor at the point where you want to paste the tempo events.
5. Choose **`Edit > Paste`**. Your copied selection is pasted from the insertion point, replacing any existing tempo events.

To nudge a selection in the Tempo Editor:

1. Open the Tempo Editor.
2. With the Selector tool, select the area you want to nudge.
3. Do one of the following:
   - On the numeric keypad, press Plus (+) to move the selected tempo events forward by the Nudge value.
   - Press Minus (–) to move the selection back by the Nudge value.

Changing the Linearity Display Mode

The Timeline can be viewed in either a Linear Tick (relative) scale or a Linear Sample (absolute) Time Scale. MIDI and Instrument tracks, audio tracks, and Tempo curves can appear and function very differently depending on the timebase display settings.



Linearity Display Mode selector and pop-up menu

The Linearity Display Mode pop-up menu determines whether the Tempo Editor displays tempo events in an absolute (samples) timebase or a relative (ticks) timebase.

Linear Sample Display

The display of the Timeline is sample-based and the location of tick-based events (like Bars and Beats) shift after a tempo curve is drawn. That is, as you change tempo, the location of bars and beats move against the fixed sample-based Timeline (such as Minutes:Seconds). When working with sample-based material, such as when you are tracking or mixing, make sure that Linear Sample Display is selected. This is especially true if you intend to align the tempo and meter map to sample-based events.

Linear Tick Display

The display of tempo events is tick-based and tempo event Bar|Beat locations remain constant after the tempo curve is drawn and all sample-based events move against bar beat locations in the Timeline. When working on any tick-based material, such as MIDI notes or Elastic Audio events, make sure that Linear Tick Display is selected. This is especially true if you will be making tempo changes, but want the bars and beats to remain fixed in the Timeline.

Drawing tempo events using the Linear Tick Display causes Bar|Beat based material to move. This can make it difficult to work on tick-based material. In most cases, you will want to use Linear Sample Display when drawing tempo changes.

To change the timebase display:

- Click the Linearity Display Mode selector and select a timebase from the pop-up menu.

Tempo Edit Density and Linearity Display Mode

When the Tempo Edit Density setting (in the Tempo Editor) and the Linearity Display Mode setting are both set to either a Bars|Beats Time Scale or to an absolute Time Scale, Tempo edits appear evenly spaced. When the Tempo Edit Density setting and the Linearity Display Mode setting are set so that one is set to an absolute Time Scale and the other is set to a Bars|Beats Time Scale, the number of Tempo edits appear to increase or decrease over time (against absolute time).

Tempo Operations Window

The Tempo Operations window lets you define tempo events over a range of time (or measures). The time range is specified in the time format chosen for your Main Time Scale. In addition, the Tempo Operations window lets you:

- Fit a specific number of Bars|Beats into a precise time range.
- Create tempos that speed up or slow down, both linearly and over various curves.
- Scale and stretch existing tempos.

The Tempo Operations window is not available in Manual Tempo mode.

The Tempo Operations window has six pages, one for each type of tempo operation.

Constant

Lets you create a constant tempo over a selected range of time.

Linear

Lets you create tempos that change evenly over a selected range of time.

Parabolic

Lets you create tempos that accelerate or decelerate following a tempo curve that changes the tempo more rapidly or less rapidly over the selection time.

S-Curve

Lets you create tempos that accelerate or decelerate following a tempo curve with a definable breakpoint that determines mid-curve times and tempo values.

Scale

Lets you scale tempos within the selection by a percentage amount.

Stretch

Lets you select a clip of tempo events and apply them to a larger or smaller selection area.

To open a specific Tempo Operations window page:

- Choose **`Event > Tempo Operations`**, followed by one of the Tempo Operations page commands (such as **`Constant`**).

If the Tempo Operations window is already open, you can select any of the pages from the pop-up menu at the top of the window.

To open the last active Tempo Operations window page:

- Choose **`Event > Tempo Operations > Tempo Operations Window`**.

Press Option+2 (Mac) or Alt+2 (Windows) on the number keypad to open the Tempo Operations window and display the last active Tempo Operations page.

To define tempo events over a range of time:

1. Make a selection in the Timebase or in a track.
2. Choose **`Event > Tempo Operations > Tempo Operations Window`**.
3. Select a Tempo Operation page from the pop-up menu at the top of the Tempo Operation window.
4. Change the settings for the page you have chosen, as necessary.
5. Do one of the following:
   - Click **`Apply`**.
   - Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) to automatically apply the values and close the window.

Constant

The Constant page in the Tempo Operations window lets you create a constant tempo over a selected range of time.



Constant page (Advanced Option)

Advanced

When this option is selected, the selection range changes to the Main Time Scale format, and additional and modified options become available.

Calculate (Advanced Option)

Calculates either the tempo, or the selection end time.

Selection Start and End

Specifies the start and end point for the tempo change in Bars|Beats. When an Edit selection is made, the Start and End fields will display the selection boundaries.

End Time (Advanced Option)

Displays the selection end time. When the Main Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats, the end time is displayed in the Sub Time Scale. When the Main Time Scale is set to any absolute timebase, the end time is calculated and displayed in Bars|Beats. Changing the end time value causes the tempo to change.

Tempo

Specifies the tempo, in beats per minute (BPM), to apply to the selected range.

Resolution (Advanced Option)

Lets you select the BPM note value for your tempo setting.

Selecting "Follow Metronome Click" will set the tempo BPM note value to mirror the click value set in the meter markers.

Density (Advanced Option)

Lets you specify the density of the tempo change events written to the Tempo ruler.

Preserve Tempo after Selection

If selected, the previous tempo setting that was in effect at the selection end point is preserved after the selection. If unselected, the last tempo event created by the tempo operation continues to the end of the session, or until the next tempo event beyond the selected range.

Linear

The Linear page in the Tempo Operations window lets you create tempos that change evenly over a selected range of time.



Linear page (Advanced Option)

Advanced

When this option is selected, the selection range changes to the Main Time Scale format, and additional and modified options become available.

Calculate (Advanced Option)

Calculates either the selection end time, the start tempo, or the end tempo.

Selection Start and End

Displays the start and end points for the tempo change in the currently selected Main timebase. When an Edit selection is made, the Start and End fields will display the selection boundaries. Changing start or end values changes the selection range.

End Time (Advanced Option)

Displays the absolute time for the selection end. When the Main Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats, the end time is displayed in the Sub Time Scale. When the Main Time Scale is set to any absolute timebase, the end time is calculated and displayed in Bars|Beats. Changing the end time value causes the tempo to change.

Tempo Start and End

Displays the tempo, in beats per minute (BPM), for the start and end points of the selected range. Changing the tempo causes the end time value to change.

Resolution (Advanced Option)

Lets you select the BPM note value for your tempo setting.

Selecting "Follow Metronome Click" will set the tempo BPM note value to mirror the click value set in the meter markers.

Density (Advanced Option)

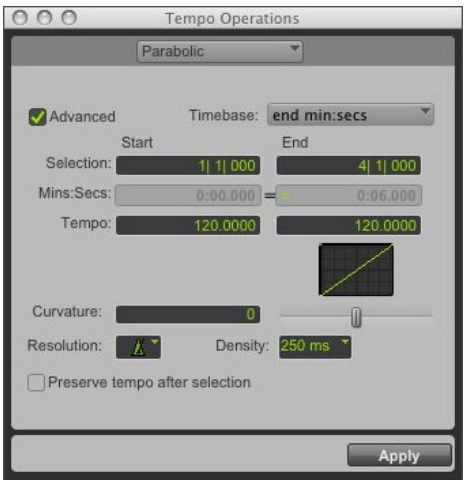
Lets you specify the density of the tempo change events written to the Tempo ruler.

Preserve Tempo after Selection

If selected, the previous tempo setting that was in effect at the selection end point is preserved after the selection. If unselected, the last tempo event created by the tempo operation continues to the end of the session, or until the next tempo event beyond the selected range.

Parabolic

The Parabolic page in the Tempo Operations window lets you create tempos that accelerate or decelerate by following a tempo curve, which changes the tempo more rapidly or less rapidly over the selection time.



Parabolic page (Advanced Option)

Advanced

When this option is selected, the selection range changes to the Main Time Scale format, and additional and modified options become available.

Calculate (Advanced Option)

Calculates the selection end time, the start tempo, the end tempo, or the curvature of the tempo change.

Selection Start and End

Displays the start and end points for the tempo change in the currently selected Main timebase. When an Edit selection is made, the Start and End fields will display the selection boundaries. Changing start or end values changes the selection range.

End Time (Advanced Option)

Displays the absolute time for the selection end. When the Main Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats, the end time is displayed in the Sub Time Scale. When the Main Time Scale is set to any absolute timebase, the end time is calculated and displayed in Bars|Beats. Changing the end time value causes the tempo to change.

Tempo Start and End

Displays the tempo, in beats per minute (BPM), for the start and end points of the selected range. Changing the tempo causes the end time value to change.

Curvature

Specifies and displays a numerical and graphic representation of the tempo curve. Negative numbers indicate a more rapid tempo change at the beginning of the time range, and positive numbers indicate a more rapid tempo change at the end of the time range. This value can be set with the Curvature slider.

Resolution (Advanced Option)

Lets you select the BPM note value for your tempo setting.

Selecting "Follow Metronome Click" will set the tempo BPM note value to mirror the click value set in the meter markers.

Density (Advanced Option)

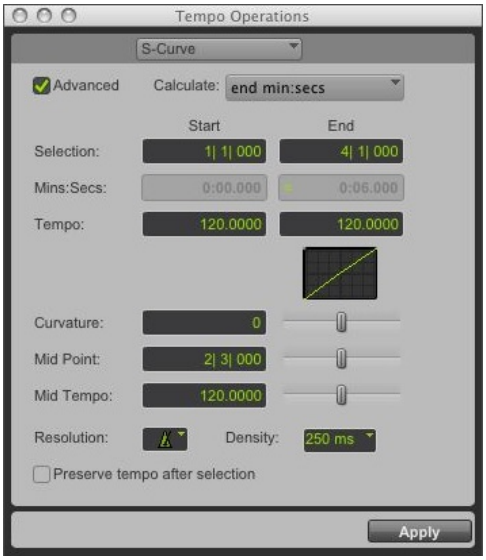
Lets you specify the density of the tempo change events written to the Tempo ruler.

Preserve Tempo after Selection

If selected, the previous tempo setting that was in effect at the selection end point is preserved after the selection. If unselected, the last tempo event created by the tempo operation continues to the end of the session, or until the next tempo event beyond the selected range.

S-Curve

The S-Curve page in the Tempo Operations window lets you create tempos that accelerate or decelerate by following a tempo curve with a definable breakpoint that determines mid-curve times and tempo values.



S-Curve page (Advanced Option)

Advanced

When this option is selected, the selection range changes to the Main Time Scale format, and additional and modified options become available.

Calculate (Advanced Option)

Calculates either the selection end time, the start tempo, the end tempo or the curvature of the tempo change.

Selection Start and End

Displays the start and end points for the tempo change in the currently selected Main timebase. When an Edit selection is made, the Start and End fields will display the selection boundaries. Changing start or end values changes the selection range.

Start and End Time (Advanced Option)

Displays the absolute time for the selection end. When the Main Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats, the end time is displayed in the Sub Time Scale. When the Main Time Scale is set to any absolute timebase, the end time is calculated and displayed in Bars|Beats.

Tempo Start and End

Displays the tempo, in beats per minute (BPM), for the start and end points of the selected range. Changing the tempo causes the end time value to change.

Curvature

Specifies and displays a numerical and graphic representation of the tempo curve. Negative numbers indicate a more rapid tempo change at the start and end of the of the time range, with a low rate of change around the midpoint. Positive numbers indicate a low rate of change near the start and end of the selected range, with rapid tempo change around the midpoint. This value can be set with the Curvature slider.

Mid Point

Specifies the Main Time Scale location for the curve mid point. This value can be set with the Mid Point slider.

Mid Tempo

Specifies the tempo at the mid point. This value can be set with the Mid Tempo slider.

Resolution (Advanced Option)

Lets you select the BPM note value for your tempo setting.

Select "Follow Metronome Click" will set the tempo BPM note value to mirror the click value set in the meter markers.

Density (Advanced Option)

Lets you specify the density of the tempo change events written to the Tempo ruler.

Preserve Tempo after Selection

If selected, the previous tempo setting that was in effect at the selection end point is preserved after the selection. If unselected, the last tempo event created by the tempo operation continues to the end of the session, or until the next tempo event beyond the selected range.

Scale

The Scale page in the Tempo Operations window lets you scale tempos within the selection by a percentage amount.



Scale page (Advanced Option)

Advanced

When this option is selected, the selection range changes to the Main Time Scale format, and additional and modified options become available.

Calculate (Advanced Option)

In combination with settings chosen in the Scale pop-up menu, the Calculate pop-up menu lets you calculate the selection end time, the average tempo, the start tempo, or the end tempo.

Scale (Advanced Option)

In combination with settings chosen in the Calculate pop-up menu, the Scale pop-up menu lets you scale all tempos, the start tempo, or the end tempo.

Scaling all tempos scales each tempo in the selected range equally. Scaling the start tempo scales the tempos unevenly, scaling the first tempo event the most, scaling each consecutive tempo event less until the end tempo which is not scaled. Scaling the end tempo scales the tempos unevenly, scaling the last tempo the most, scaling each previous tempo event less until the start tempo which is not scaled.

Selection Start and End

Displays the start and end points for the tempo operation in the currently selected Main timebase. When an Edit selection is made, the Start and End fields will display the selection boundaries. Changing start or end values changes the selection range.

Start and End Time

Displays the absolute time for the selection start and end points. When the Main Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats, times are displayed in the Sub Time Scale. When the Main Time Scale is set to any absolute timebase, times are calculated and displayed in Bars|Beats.

Average Tempo

Displays the Average Tempo, in beats per minute (BPM), across the selected range. Changing the Average Tempo changes the Scale percentage.

Scale

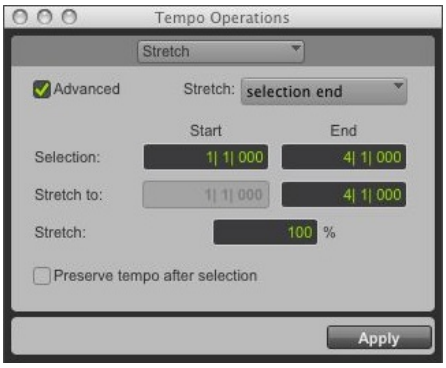
Displays the percentage by which the tempo is scaled, in beats per minute (BPM), across the selected range. Changing Scale changes Average Tempo.

Preserve Tempo after Selection

If selected, the previous tempo setting that was in effect at the selection end point is preserved after the selection. If unselected, the last tempo event created by the tempo operation continues to the end of the session, or until the next tempo event beyond the selected range.

Stretch

The Stretch page in the Tempo Operations window lets you select a clip of tempo events and apply them to a larger or smaller selection area.



Stretch page (Advanced Option)

Advanced

When this option is selected, the selection range changes to the Main Time Scale format, and additional and modified options become available.

Selection Start and End

Specifies the range of tempo events that you want to modify. When an Edit selection is made, the Start and End fields will display the selection boundaries.

Stretch To End

Specifies a new end point for the clip to which you want to apply the selected tempo events. Changing the end point causes the Stretch percentage to change.

Stretch To Start (Advanced Option)

Specifies a new start point for the clip to which you want to apply the selected tempo events. Changing the end point causes the Stretch percentage to change.

Stretch

Specifies the percentage of time for the selected tempo events to cover.

Preserve Tempo after Selection

If selected, the previous tempo setting that was in effect at the selection end point is preserved after the selection. If unselected, the last tempo event created by the tempo operation continues to the end of the session, or until the next tempo event beyond the selected range.

Identify Beat Command

The Identify Beat command lets you establish a tempo/meter map for audio that was recorded without a click, or for imported audio with unknown tempos.

The Identify Beat command analyzes a selection range (usually with a distinct number of beats or measures) and calculates its tempo based on the specified meter. In doing this, Bar|Beat Markers for the calculated tempo are inserted and appear in the Tempo ruler at the beginning and end of the selection; in addition, meter events are inserted into the Meter ruler.

Use Beat Detective to generate Bar|Beat Markers within a selection that includes rhythmic changes on beats or sub-beats (see "Beat Detective" on page 998).

Bar|Beat Markers

Bar|Beat Markers look similar to tempo events, but instead have small blue triangles to indicate their location.



Bar|Beat Marker

Choosing Bar|Beat Markers or Tempo Events

Because tempo events are tick-based, and Bar|Beat Markers are sample-based, they cannot be mixed. If a session contains tempo events and you attempt to insert Bar|Beat Markers, existing tempo events are converted to Bar|Beat Markers (and vice versa).

Tempo events can also be manually converted to Bar|Beat Markers and vice versa. When converting between Tempo events and Bar|Beat Markers, some amount of sample rounding may occur.

To use either tempo events or Bar|Beat Markers:

1. Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and click the Add Tempo Change button.
2. Select either **`Tempo Events`** or **`Bar|Beat Markers`** from the pop-up menu.

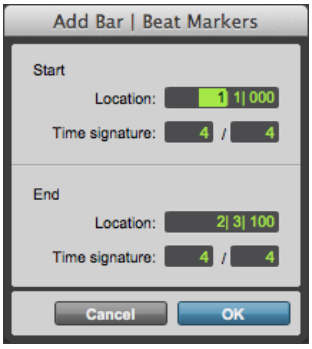


Tempo ruler pop-up menu

Identifying Beats

Identifying the beat of a one-bar drum loop and creating Bar|Beat Markers for it:

1. Place a one-bar drum loop at the beginning of an audio track.
2. Select **`View > Rulers > Samples`**. This ensures that the selected audio material will be sample-accurate.
3. Select the audio clip with the Time Grabber tool and choose **`Event > Identify Beat`**.
4. In the Bar|Beat Markers dialog, specify the start and end locations for the inserted Bar|Beat Markers. Since this example deals with a one-bar loop, enter 1|1|000 and 2|1|000.



Identify Beat dialog

5. If necessary, specify a time signature for the start and end range.
6. Click **OK** to automatically calculate the new tempo and insert the necessary Bar|Beat Markers and meter events. Any existing tempo and meter events residing within the selection are deleted.



Bar|Beat Markers inserted

When working with a selection, the **Identify Beat** command only calculates a single tempo for the selected range. If the tempo varies from measure to measure, or beat to beat, you'll need to use the **Identify Beat** command for each tempo variance (making sure to accurately define a precise selection range or beat location for the tempo change).

To accurately define tempos for a range of audio with the **Identify Beat** command, make certain that the initial selection represents an accurate length of bars and beats. You may want to first loop the selection on playback to see if it plays accurately (see "Loop Playback Mode" on page 752). To avoid drift, and remain sample-accurate, select the audio material with the Time Scale set to Samples rather than Bars|Beats.

When identifying beats, select as large an area as possible. For example, if you have a four-bar-long audio file you want to identify, select the entire four bars instead of just one bar, in order to minimize rounding errors (see "Sample Rounding and Edit Operations" on page 1151).

Dragging Bar|Beat Markers

Bar|Beat Markers can be dragged to new locations so they can align with audio clips that have been moved, or so that they can align to a slightly different point within an audio clip. This results in neighboring MIDI data being adjusted to align with the new tempo map.

Because Bar|Beat Markers are sample-based and tempo events are tick-based, they behave differently when you drag them in the Tempo ruler.

When dragging a Bar|Beat Marker:

- Its BPM value is recalculated along with the Bar|Beat Marker to its immediate left. Bar|Beat Markers to the right of the dragged marker remain unchanged.
- Its bar and beat location is dragged *with* the Bar|Beat Marker. If the Bar|Beat Marker was originally placed at 3|1|000, it remains there (unless it is edited).
- Its sample and Timecode locations change, as calculated for by the new tempo for the Bar|Beat Marker.
- Neighboring MIDI events, along with the Bars|Beats ruler, shrink or expand as necessary to adjust for the new tempo.



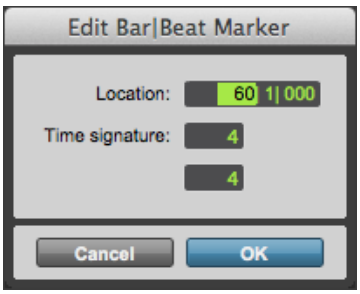
Dragging a Bar|Beat Marker

When dragging a tempo event:

- The tempo event is placed at a new bar and beat location. The sample and Timecode locations for the event are updated as well.
- The BPM value for the dragged tempo event remains constant, as do any other tempo events in the session.
- Neighboring MIDI events and audio clips on tick-based tracks, along with the ruler, shrink or expand as necessary to adjust for the new tempo location.

Editing Bar|Beat Markers

A Bar|Beat Marker can be edited to redefine its bar and beat location, which also redefines the start or end point of the range being analyzed for tempo. This is different from dragging a Bar|Beat Marker.



Edit Bar|Beat dialog

To edit a Bar|Beat Marker:

1. In the Tempo ruler, double-click the Bar|Beat Marker.
2. In the Edit Bar|Beat dialog, enter a new Location for the Bar|Beat Marker.
3. Enter a new Time Signature.
4. Click OK.

To delete a Bar|Beat Marker:

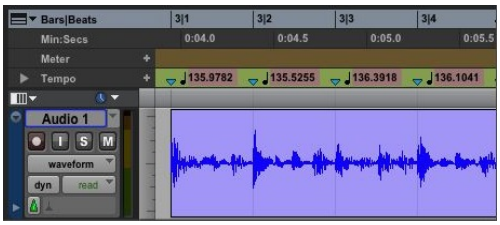
- With the Grabber tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Bar|Beat Marker.

Inserting Bar|Beat Markers One at a Time

Sample-Based Material with Varying Tempos

You can insert Bar|Beat Markers one at a time by setting an Edit insertion point (instead of making a selection) before using the Identify Beat command. The ability to identify each beat, one at a time, is especially useful when working with sample-based material with varying tempos.

For instance, if you have a measure that accelerates slightly, you can insert a Bar|Beat Marker on each beat so the tempo is accurately reflected.



Bar|Beat Markers on each beat

After the Bar|Beat Markers are inserted, further adjustments in the tempo map are possible by dragging each of the Markers, as necessary, to align with the associated beat within the audio.

Meter Events

You can change meter in the Meter ruler, or make precise meter changes in the Time Operations window.

Meter events can be inserted at the beginning of a session to replace the default meter (of 4/4), and they can be inserted anywhere within the session for additional meter changes.

To display the Meter ruler:

- Select **`View > Rulers > Meter`**.

Current Meter

As meter events are encountered during playback, the session's current meter is displayed in the Transport window.

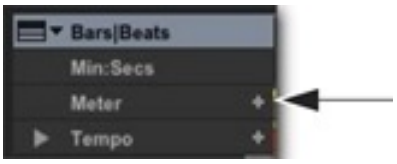


Current meter displayed in Transport window

Inserting Meter Events

To insert a meter event:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Event > Time Operations > Change Meter`**.
   - Click the Add Meter Change button at the right of the Meter ruler.



Add Meter Change button

   - With the Grabber, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) at the location where you want to insert the event.



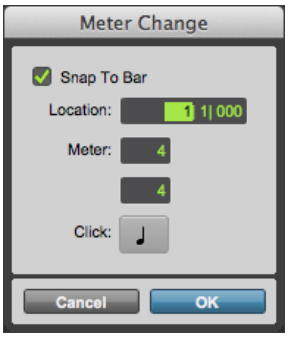
Manually inserting a meter event

   - Double click the meter display in the Transport window.



Current meter displayed in Transport window

2. In the Meter Change dialog, enter the Location and Meter for the meter change.
3. If you want the inserted meter event to fall cleanly on the first beat of the nearest measure, select the **`Snap To Bar`** option.



Meter Change dialog

4. Select a note value for the number of clicks to sound in each measure. For a dotted-note click value, select the dot (.) option.

> *For some meters, it may be desirable to use a dotted value for the click. For instance, if using a meter of 6/8, a dotted quarter note click (yielding two clicks per measure) is generally more suitable than a straight eighth note click (six clicks per measure).*

5. Click **OK** to insert the new meter event. The new meter event is inserted and appears in the Meter ruler.



Inserted meter event

Each meter event has a small yellow triangle next to it that indicates its location. These triangles can be selected for copying and pasting, and they can be double-clicked to edit the meter event.

Editing Meter Events

Existing meter events can be edited, deleted, copied, and pasted.

To edit a meter event:

1. In the Meter ruler, double-click the meter event.
2. In the Meter Change dialog, enter a new Location or Meter for the event.
3. Click **OK**.

To delete a meter event:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the meter event.

To copy and paste several meter events:

1. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. Drag in the Meter ruler to select the range that includes the meter events. If the beginning of the selection includes a meter event, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) so the Selector tool appears.

   Press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging to select across all Conductor tracks.

3. Choose **Edit > Copy**.
4. Click in the Meter ruler at the point where you want to paste the meter events.
5. Choose **Edit > Paste**. The contents of the Clipboard are pasted from the insertion point, replacing any existing meter events.

To extend an Edit selection in a track to the Meter ruler:

1. Using the Selector tool or any Grabber tool, select a track range.
2. Shift-click in the Meter ruler.

Shift-click again in the Meter ruler to remove it from the selection.

To select all meter events:

- With the Selector tool, double-click in the Meter ruler.

To clear a range of selected meter events:

1. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. Drag in the Meter ruler to select the meter events you want to remove.
3. Choose **Edit > Clear** to delete the selected meter events.

Partial Measures

As necessary, Pro Tools will create a partial measure to accommodate the inserted meter event. When a meter event is preceded by a partial measure, the meter event is displayed in italics in the Meter ruler.



Partial measure of 4/4

Partial measures can also occur when pasting meter events to locations other than the first beat of a measure.

To insert meter events while avoiding partial bars, use the Change Meter command in the Time Operations window. *"Change Meter" below*

Time Operations

The Time Operations window lets you:

- Change Meter
- Insert Time
- Cut Time
- Move Song Start

To open a specific Time Operations window:

- Choose **Event > Time Operations**, followed by one of the Time Operations commands (such as **Change Meter**).

  If the Time Operations window is already open, you can select any Time Operation from the pop-up menu at the top of the window.

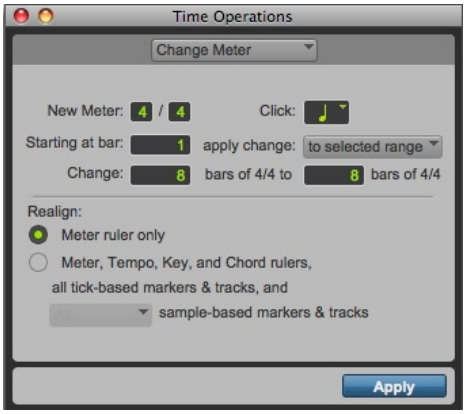
To open the last active Time Operations window:

- Choose **Event > Time Operations > Time Operations Window**.

  Press Option+1 (Mac) or Alt+1 (Windows) on the number keypad to open the Time Operations window and display the last active Time Operations window.

Change Meter

Change Meter in the Time Operation window lets you specify complex meter changes for Bar|Beat-based material. You can enter meter changes at a particular bar, make a meter change over a selected area of time, or add meter changes sequentially one bar at a time.



Change Meter window

Change Meter Examples

To change the meter over a range of bars:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Drag with the Selector tool to select a range of bars to change.
   - To have the meter change apply until the next meter event, click where you want the meter change to begin with the Selector tool. The meter change will be made at the beginning of the nearest bar.
2. Choose **Event > Time Operations > Change Meter**.
3. Specify a new meter and click setting. Pro Tools will automatically set the selection options to fit the new meter to the selected range as closely as possible, adding or subtracting beats a necessary.
4. Select **To Selected Range** in the **Apply Change** pop-up menu.
5. Select which rulers and tracks you want to realign after meter changes have been made.
6. Click **Apply**.

To add a series of meter changes, one measure at a time:

1. Do one of the following:
   - With the Selector tool, click where you want the meter change to begin. The meter change will be made at the beginning the nearest bar.
   - Enter the first measure number in the Starting At Bar field.
2. Choose **Event > Time Operations > Change Meter**.
3. Specify a new meter and click setting.
4. Select **Until the Next Bar** from the **Apply Change To** pop-up menu.
5. Click **Apply** to enter the new meter and to move the insertion point to the end of the new measure.
6. Specify a new meter and click setting for the next measure.
7. Repeat steps 5–6 for every additional meter change you want to insert.

Change Meter Options

Options for the **Change Meter** command include:

New Meter

Lets you specify a new time signature. The first field lets you enter the number of beats (up to 99) in a measure, and the second field lets you enter the note length that counts as one beat.

Click

Lets you specify the note value that will trigger the metronome click. For example, if an eighth note is chosen, a click is played for every eighth note, regardless of tempo.

Starting at Bar

Sets the bar where the meter change is added. Meter changes made in the Change Meter page can only be made at the beginning of a bar.

Apply Change To

Lets you apply the meter change to the selected range, to the end of the session, or until the next bar.

Change

The Change fields let you specify the number of bars of the new meter that you want to have replace the selected range.

Pro Tools automatically calculates the nearest whole bar number, or you can specify a number of bars to be affected. Time is inserted or deleted, in whole bar increments, at the end of the selection, as necessary on all affected tracks when you override the calculated range.

Realign

The Realign controls let you choose which items to realign after a meter change has been made. You can choose to realign meter events, or choose to realign meter and tempo events, tick-based markers and tracks, and also all or none of the sample-based markers and tracks.

Meter Ruler Only

Applies the meter change and realigns only the Meter ruler. All other rulers and tracks are unaffected.

Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord Rulers, all Tick-Based Markers and Tracks, and Sample-Based Markers and Tracks

Applies the meter change and realigns the Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord rulers, and all tick-based markers and tracks. Using the pop-up menu, you can also choose to realign **All** or **No** sample-based markers and tracks. Time is inserted or deleted as needed at the end of the selection to preserve the alignment of material following the selection.

Insert Time

Insert Time in the Time Operation window lets you insert an amount of blank time (silence) into Conductor rulers, MIDI tracks, and audio tracks.



Insert Time window

Insert Time Example

To insert four empty measures of 4/4 time into a session:

1. Set the Main Time Scale to Bars|Beats.
2. Choose **Event > Time Operations > Insert Time**.
3. Enter the measure where you want to insert the measures in the Start field.
4. Enter four measures in the Length field.
5. Select the Realign option for **Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord Rulers, Tick-Based Markers and Tracks** and **All Sample-Based Markers and Tracks**.
6. Click **Apply**.

Insert Time Options

Options for the **Insert Time** command include:

Start, End, and Length

Sets the start and end points for the selection, and the selection length.

Set Meter

If your Main Time Scale is Bars|Beats, Set Meter lets you specify a new meter for the inserted time. The selection is quantized to the nearest bars, and the previous meter is inserted after the selection. If your Main Time Scale is sample-based, Set Meter is not available.

Realign

The Realign settings let you select which items shift (occur later) when time is inserted, as follows:

- If your Main Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats, you can choose to realign meter events *only*, or choose to realign a combination of Meter and Tempo rulers, all tick-based markers and tracks, and your choice of sample-based tracks.
- If your Main Time Scale is set to an absolute timebase (such as Min:Secs), you can choose to independently realign conductor events, tick-based markers and tracks, and your choice of sample-based tracks.

Meter Ruler Only

If your Main Time Scale is Bars|Beats, you have the option to insert time into the Meter ruler only. Meter events after the start point of the selection are shifted past the end point by the length of time selection.

If your Main Time Scale is sample-based, **Realign Meter Ruler Only** is not available.

Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord Rulers, Tick-Based Markers and Tracks, and Sample-Based Markers and Tracks

Lets you insert time into the Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord rulers, and all tick-based markers and tracks. Events after the start point of the selection are shifted past the end point by the length of time inserted.

If the Timeline selection includes any audio clips on tick-based tracks, the audio clips are separated at the Start point, and the new clip containing the previous selection is shifted to the end point.

Using the pop-up menu, you can also choose to insert time into **All** or **No** sample-based markers and tracks. If **All** is selected and the selection includes any audio clips on sample-based tracks, the selected portions of the audio clips are separated at the Start point, and the new clip containing the previous selection is shifted to the end point.

Cut Time

Cut Time in the Time Operation window lets you cut a specified amount of time (both Timebase and track data) from Conductor rulers, MIDI tracks, and audio tracks.



Cut Time window

Cut Time Example

To cut thirty seconds of time from a session:

1. Set the Main Time Scale to Minutes:Seconds.
2. Choose **Event > Time Operations > Cut Time**.
3. With the Selector tool, click at the beginning of the area that you want to cut.
4. Enter thirty seconds (0:30.000) in the Length field.
5. Select the Realign option for **Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord Rulers, all Tick-Based Markers and Tracks** and **All Sample-Based Markers and Tracks**.
6. Click **Apply**.

Cut Time Options

Options for the **Cut Time** command include:

Start, End, and Length

Sets the start and end points for the selection, and the selection length.

Realign

The Realign controls let you choose which items shift when time is cut, as follows:

- If your Main Time Scale is set to Bars|Beats, you can choose to realign meter events *only*, or choose to realign a combination of Meter and Tempo rulers together, all tick-based markers and tracks, and your choice of sample-based tracks.
- If your Main Time Scale is set to an absolute timebase (such as Min:Secs), you can choose to independently realign conductor events, tick-based markers and tracks, and your choice of sample-based tracks.

Meter Ruler Only

If your Main Time Scale is Bars|Beats, you have the option to remove time from the Meter ruler only. Meter events within the selection are removed, and meter events that occur after the end point of the selection are shifted to the selection start point.

If your Main Time Scale is sample-based, **Realign Meter Ruler Only** is not available.

Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord Rulers, Tick-Based Markers and Tracks, and Sample-Based Markers and Tracks

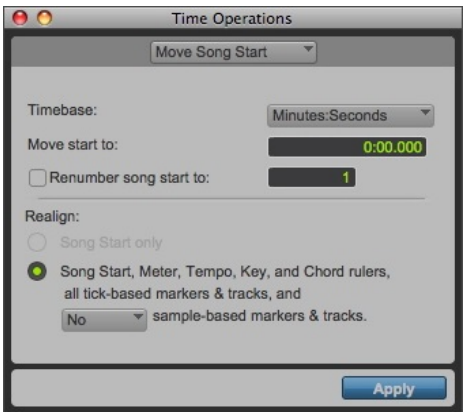
Cuts time and realigns the Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord rulers, and all tick-based markers and tracks.

If the time selection includes any tick-based clips, the selected area of the clips is deleted, and clips following the selection are shifted forward.

Using the pop-up menu, you can also choose to cut time from **All** or **No** sample-based markers and tracks. If **All** is selected and the selection includes any audio clips on sample-based tracks, the selected area of the clips is deleted, and clips following the selection are shifted forward.

Move Song Start

Move Song Start in the Time Operation window lets you redefine the location of the Song Start Marker.



Move Song Start window

Move Song Start Example

To move the Song Start Marker to 15 seconds on the Timeline:

1. Choose **Event > Time Operations > Move Song Start**.
2. Select **Minutes:Seconds** from the Timebase pop-up menu.
3. In the Move Song Start To field, enter “0:15:000” to move the song start forward by 15 seconds.
4. If you want to renumber the bars so that the Song Start Marker sits at a different bar, select the **Renumber Song Start** option, and enter the bar number.
5. Select whether you want to move **All** or **No** sample-based markers and tracks.
6. Click **Apply**.

Move Song Start Options

Options for the Move Song Start command include:

Timebase

Lets you precisely redefine the position of the Song Start Marker measured by any supported timebase.

Move Start To

Sets the location for the Song Start Marker in the chosen timebase.

Renumber Song Start To

When enabled, this lets you set the Song Start Marker to any bar number.

Move

The Move controls let you choose which items shift when the Song Start is moved, as follows:

Song Start Only

Moves the Song Start Marker only.

Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord Rulers, all Tick-Based Markers and Tracks, and Sample-Based Markers and Tracks

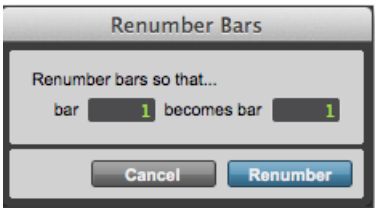
Moves the Song Start Marker, events in the Meter, Tempo, Key, and Chord rulers, all tick-based markers and tracks, and your choice of all or no sample-based markers and tracks.

Renumbering Bars

You can use the **Renumber Bars** command to renumber all bars in the session, effectively changing the bar locations for all clips, meter and tempo events while leaving their position intact. In doing so, however, the Timecode and sample locations of the session data are not changed.

To renumber bars:

1. Choose **Event > Renumber Bars**.
2. Specify the bar you want to renumber, along with the new bar number, then click Renumber.



Renumber Bars dialog

Key Signatures

The Key Signature ruler lets you add key signatures to Pro Tools sessions. Key signatures can be imported and exported with MIDI data. This is especially useful when exporting MIDI sequences for use in notation programs like Sibelius (see "Exporting Sibelius Files" on page 670). The default key signature is C major.

Key Signature Ruler

The Key Signature ruler lets you add, edit, and delete key signatures. You can use key signatures to indicate key and key changes in your Pro Tools session. Key signatures can also be used for certain diatonic functions, such as transposing in key or constraining pitches to the specified key.



Key Signature ruler

To view the Key Signature ruler, do one of the following:

- Select **View > Rulers > Key Signature**.
- From the Ruler View selector in the Edit window, select **Key**.

You can also show or hide the Key Signature Staff for the Key Signatures ruler.

To view the staff for the Key Signature ruler:

1. Show the Key Signature ruler.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select **View > Rulers > Key Signature Staff**.
   - Click the Show/Hide triangle on the Key Signature ruler.

Changing Key Signatures

You can add, edit, or delete key signatures.

To add a key signature:

1. Place the cursor in the Timeline where you want to add a key signature.
2. Do one of the following:
   - **Choose Event > Add Key Change**
   - Click the Plus (+) button in the Key Signature ruler.
3. In the Key Change dialog, select the mode (major or minor), the key, its location and range, and how you want it to affect pitched tracks.
4. Click **OK**.

To edit a key signature:

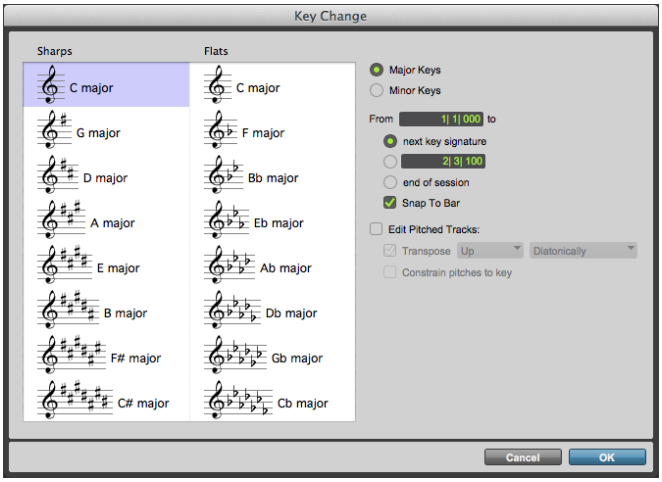
1. Double-click the Key Signature marker in the Key Signature ruler.
2. Make changes in the Key Change dialog.
3. Click **OK**.

To delete a key signature, do one of the following:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Key Signature marker in the Key Signature ruler.
- Make a selection in the Key Signature ruler that includes the key signature you want to delete and choose **Edit > Clear** or press Delete.

Key Change Dialog

The Key Change dialog lets you specify the mode (major or minor), the key (from seven flats to seven sharps), the range affected (for example, from Bar 1 to the next key change), and whether or not MIDI notes on pitched tracks are transposed or constrained to key (see "Pitched Tracks" on page 1189). The Key Change dialog opens whenever you add or edit a Key Signature marker.



Key Change dialog

Major Keys

Displays the major keys from seven flats to seven sharps.

Minor Keys

Displays the minor keys from seven flats to seven sharps. Pro Tools only applies the natural minor mode.

Sharps

Lets you select any of the sharp keys to seven sharps and C major (or A minor).

Flats

Lets you select any of the flat keys to seven flats and C major (or A minor).

From

Lets you specify where to place the Key Signature marker in Bars|Beats.

To

Lets you specify to where you want the key change to take effect: to the next Key Signature marker, to a selection, or to the end of the session.

Snap to Bar

Snaps the Key Signature marker to the barline.

Edit Pitched Tracks

Enabling the Edit Pitched Tracks option lets you transpose existing MIDI notes on Pitched tracks up or down, either diatonically or chromatically based on the key change, or constrain pitches to the new key. For more information on Pitched tracks, see "Pitched Tracks" on the next page.

Transpose

When the Edit Pitched Tracks option is enabled, lets you transpose existing MIDI notes on Pitched tracks up or down, diatonically or chromatically. For example, if the session is in C major and you are adding a key change to D minor, select Edit Pitched Tracks, Transpose, Up, and Diatonically to transpose notes on Pitched tracks up a whole step and then lower the third, sixth, and seventh scale degrees by a half step. The sequence C, D, E is transposed to D, E, F (natural, rather than sharp as happens when transposing chromatically).

When transposing diatonically, chromatic notes are maintained when changing key. For example, when changing key from C major to E major, the note B-flat is transposed to D-natural. This lets you maintain “blue-notes” when changing keys and applying diatonic transposition.

Constrain Pitches To Key

When the Edit Pitched Tracks option is enabled, lets you constrain pitches to the notes of the new key. This means that any diatonic pitches of the old key on Pitched tracks that are not in the new key are individually transposed to the nearest diatonic pitch of the new key. For example, when changing from C major to D major, the sequence C, D, E, F, G changes to C-sharp, D, E, F-sharp, G.

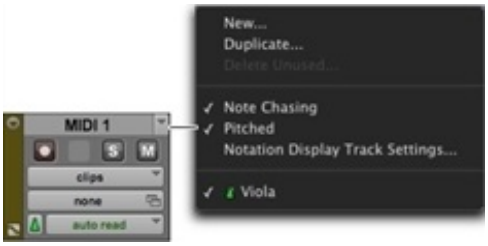
Constraining pitches to key also constrains any chromatic pitches to the new diatonic scale. For example, when changing from C major to D major, the sequence C, D, D-sharp, E changes to C-sharp, D, D, E.

Pitched Tracks

Pitched tracks are MIDI or Instrument tracks that can be affected by transpositions due to key changes (including constrain to key). MIDI and Instrument tracks are "pitched" by default. However, if you have MIDI or Instrument tracks assigned to drum machines or samplers, you do not want those tracks to be affected by key changes because of key mappings. You can deselect the Pitched option for specific MIDI and Instrument tracks so that they will not be affected by key changes.

To select (or deselect) Pitched tracks:

- Click the track's Playlist selector and select (or deselect) the **Pitched** option.



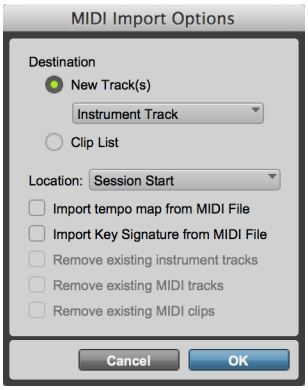
Pitched enabled in Playlist selector

Importing Key Signatures

When importing MIDI (or session data with MIDI), you can select whether or not to import any key signatures stored in MIDI files.

Import MIDI

The Import MIDI dialog includes the **Import Key Signature from MIDI File** option. When selected, key signatures (if present) are imported into Pro Tools with any other MIDI data.



Import MIDI dialog

Import Session Data

The Import Session Data dialog includes the **Import Key Signature/Chord Map** option. When selected, key signatures (if present) and chord markers (if present) are imported into the current session with the imported session data.

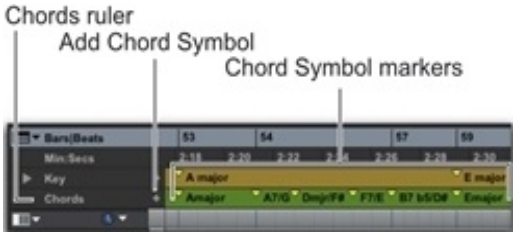
Chord Symbols

The Chord Symbols ruler lets you add chord symbols to Pro Tools sessions in the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows. You can also add chord symbols and diagrams in the Score Editor ("Chord Symbols and Diagrams" on page 1120).

Chord symbols have no effect on MIDI data. Also, chord symbols are not included when exporting MIDI data from Pro Tools to a MIDI file, but they are included when exporting to a Sibelius file (.sib) or when using the **Send to Sibelius** command.

Chord Symbols Ruler

The Chord Symbols ruler lets you add, edit, and delete chord symbols. You can use chord symbols to indicate the chord changes in your Pro Tools session.



Chord Symbols ruler

To view the Chord Symbols ruler, do one of the following:

1. Select **View > Rulers > Chord Symbols**.
2. From the Ruler View selector in the Edit window or in a MIDI Editor window, select **Chords**.

To add a chord symbol:

1. Place the cursor in the Timeline where you want to add a chord symbol.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Place the cursor in the timeline, then click the Plus (+) button in the Chords ruler.
   - While pressing the Control (Mac) or Start key (Windows), move the cursor into the Chords ruler (where the cursor changes to the Grabber with a "+") and click at the location where you want to place the chord symbol.
3. In the Chord Change dialog, select the name for the root of the chord, the chord quality, the bass note of the chord, and the chord diagram (chord diagrams are only displayed in the Score Editor).
4. Click **OK**.

To change a chord symbol:

1. Double-click the Chord Symbol marker in the Chord Symbol ruler.
2. Make changes in the Chord Change dialog.
3. Click **OK**.

To move a chord symbol:

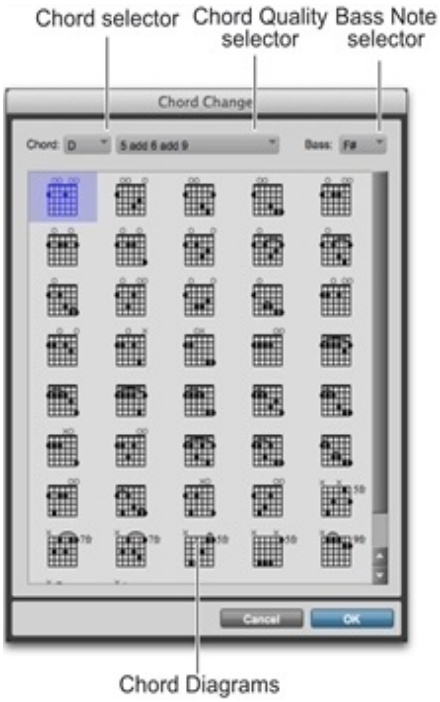
- Drag the Chord Symbol marker to a new time location.

To delete a chord symbol, do one of the following:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Chord Symbol marker in the Chords ruler.
- Make a selection in the Chords ruler that includes the chord symbols you want to delete and choose **Edit > Clear** or press Delete.

Chord Change Dialog

The Chord Change dialog lets you specify a commercial chord symbol and chord diagram (guitar tab) to place in the Chords ruler or on the score in the Score Editor. The Chord Change dialog opens whenever you add or edit a Chord marker.



Chord Change dialog

Chord

Select the name for the root of the Chord (such as D).

Chord Quality

Select the chord quality from the selector (such as major or minor).

Bass

Select the bass note of the chord (such as B-flat for a G minor chord in first inversion).

Chord Diagram

Select the chord diagram for guitar tablature.

To show or hide chord symbols and diagrams in the Score Editor, select or deselect the corresponding option in the Score Setup dialog.

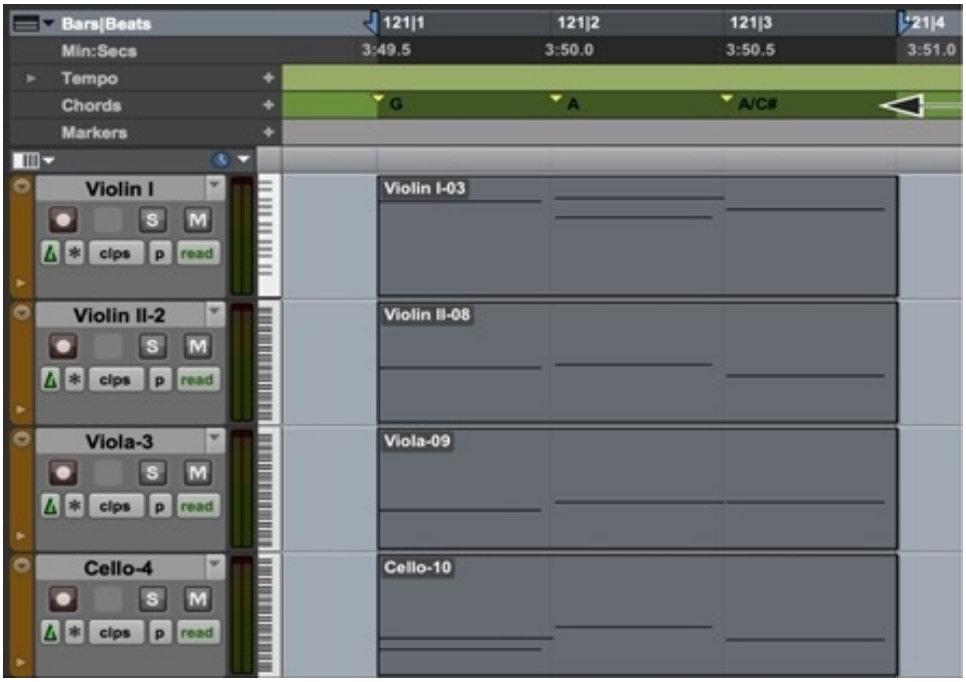
Extract Chords From Selection

Pro Tools lets you analyze selected MIDI clips to identify chords, and then add them to the Chord Symbols ruler in the Edit window as well as in MIDI Editor windows. Depending on the Score Setup Display settings (`File > Score Setup`), analyzed chords will also be shown as Chord Symbols and Chord Diagrams in the Score Editor window. When analyzing MIDI clips, Pro Tools can only recognize chords that are available in the Chord Change dialog. Chord Symbol markers are added to the Chord Symbol ruler quantized to quarter-note intervals on the Timeline. Chord extraction is useful for scoring in addition to providing chord symbols for charts and recording overdubbed performances.

To analyze MIDI clips for chord content and add Chord Symbol markers to the Chord Symbols ruler:

1. Select one or more whole MIDI clips.
2. Choose **`Event > Extract Chords from Selection`**.

   Pro Tools adds Chord Symbol markers to the Chord Symbols ruler for all chords detected in the selected MIDI clips.



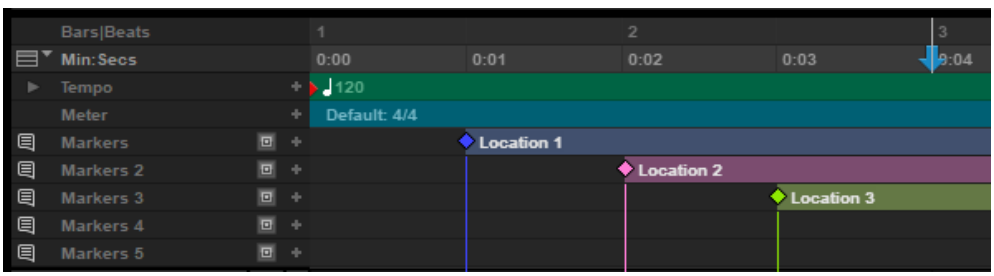
Chord Symbol markers added to the Chord Symbols ruler for all chords detected in the selected MIDI clips

Marker Rulers

Up to five Marker rules can be shown in the Ruler view: the previously available Main ruler plus up to four additional, alternate rulers (2–5). Enabled marker rulers show in the timeline. Each ruler can independently be targeted and show comments. Multiple Marker rulers can be useful for assigning markers and memory locations by category in post-production workflows (such as dialog, FX, music, and so on), or to provide more horizontal space to view markers and memory locations with comments when zoomed out on the timeline

To show Marker Rulers, do one of the following:

- Select the desired Marker rulers from the Ruler View selector.
- Select the desired Marker rulers from **`View > Rulers`**.



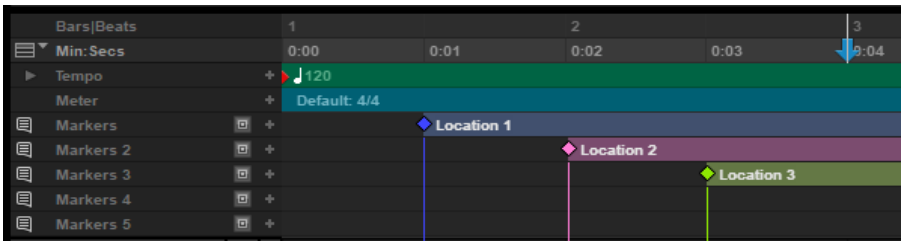
All Marker rulers displayed

Marker rulers can be reordered by clicking and dragging.

Renaming Alternate Marker Rulers

To rename Alternate marker rulers:

1. Double-click the name of the marker ruler you want to rename.
2. In the resulting dialog, type the name you want.



Ruler Name dialog

3. Click OK.

46 Memory Locations

Memory Locations provide a powerful way to navigate your session while editing and arranging.

Each session can save up to 32,000 Memory Locations that can be used to recall:

- Markers to important locations in the session
- Edit selections across one or more tracks
- Record and play ranges, along with pre- and post-roll times
- Track settings that include Show/Hide status, Track Heights, and zoom values
- Edit and Mix Groups enables
- Window Configurations

Memory Locations are viewed and sorted in the Memory Locations window, where they can be recalled by clicking the Memory Location.

Creating Memory Locations

Memory Locations can be created in different ways, based on the type of Memory Location:

Marker Memory Location

Refers to a specific point in the timeline or on a track.

Selection Memory Location

Refers to an Edit Selection

General Properties Memory Location

Refers to a combination of session settings (such as zoom settings, pre- and post-roll times, Show/Hide status for tracks, Track Heights, and Edit and Mix Group enables).

When creating Memory Locations, the next available number is assigned to it. This number is used in recalling the Memory Location from the numeric keypad.

To create a Marker or Memory Location on the timeline:

1. Configure any session settings you will save with the Marker Memory Location, such as zoom settings, pre- and post-roll times, Show/Hide status for tracks, Track Heights, and Edit and Mix Group enables.
2. If necessary, enable **`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**.
3. Ensure that a Markers ruler is displayed (**`View > Rulers > Markers`**).
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click with the Selector tool in any track or ruler at the location where you want to place the Marker. To place a Marker at the beginning of a clip, select the clip with the Time Grabber tool. Click the Add Marker/Memory Location button (or press Enter on the numeric keypad) on the Marker ruler you want.



Add Marker/Memory Location button

- While pressing the Control (Mac) Start key or (Windows), move the cursor into a Marker ruler (where the cursor changes to the Grabber with a "+") and click at the location where you want to place the Marker.



Manually inserting a Marker

5. In the New Memory Location dialog, select the Marker option and set the Reference to either **Bar|Beat** or **Absolute**.
6. Enter a **Name** for the new Marker and select any General Properties you want to save with the Marker.
7. Click **OK**. The Marker is created and appears in the Markers ruler, and in the Memory Locations window.

To create a Selection Memory Location:

1. Configure any session settings you will save with the Selection Memory Location, such as zoom settings, pre- and post-roll times, Show/Hide status for tracks, Track Heights, and Edit and Mix Group enables.
2. Select a range of material in one or more tracks.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Press Enter on the numeric keypad.
   - From the Memory Locations Window menu, choose **Add Memory Location**.
4. In the New Memory Location dialog, select the **Selection** option and set the Reference to either **Bar|Beat** or **Absolute**.
5. Enter a **Name** for the new Memory Location and select any General Properties you want to save with it.
6. Click **OK**. The Selection Memory Location is created and appears in the Memory Locations window.

To create a General Properties Memory Location:

1. Configure any session settings you will save with the Selection Memory Location, such as zoom settings, pre- and post-roll times, Show/Hide status for tracks, Track Heights, and Edit and Mix Group enables.
2. Press Enter on the numeric keypad.
3. In the Memory Location dialog, select the **None** option.
4. Enter a **Name** for the new Memory Location and select any General Properties you want to save with it.
5. Click **OK**. The General Properties Memory Location is created and appears in the Memory Locations window.

In the New Memory Location dialog, you can Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any General Property to enable or disable all properties. You can also Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) any property to toggle its state and the state of all other General Properties.

To create a Track Marker:

1. To show (or hide) Track Marker controls, do one of the following:
   - Select (or deselect) **View > Edit Window Views > Marker Controls**.
   - From the Edit Window View selector, select (or deselect) **Marker Controls**.
2. Select the Target for Markers on the track where you want to add a new marker.
3. Place the Edit cursor where you want to add a Marker.
4. Click the Add Marker button on the track.
5. In the New Memory Location dialog, select the Marker option and set the Reference to either **Bar|Beat** or **Absolute**.
6. Enter a Name for the new Marker and select any General Properties you want to save with the Marker.
7. Click **OK**. The Marker is created and appears in the Marker Lane on the track, and in the Memory Locations window.

Marker Ruler and Track Marker Controls



Marker Ruler controls



Track Marker controls

Marker rulers and tracks provide the following controls for creating and viewing markers:

Prioritize Marker Name vs Comment

Pro Tools can show either Marker names or comments on the Marker ruler. For Track Markers, if it has no comment the Marker name is shown. In marker lane view, the name and comment are displayed at larger track heights. The text will wrap if it runs into another marker, and it will center vertically above the name as it does so.

Target for Markers

You can target the Marker ruler or any track. The target can only be active on one track or on the Marker ruler at any given time. If the Marker controls are hidden, the location of the target is maintained.

Add Marker

Click to add a marker at the current Edit location.

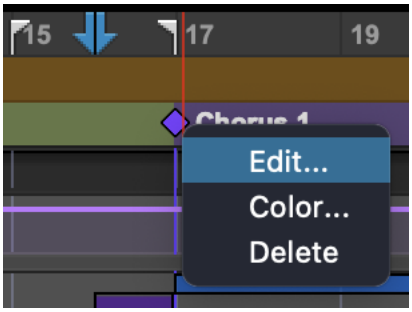
Press Command+Enter (Mac) or Control+Enter (Windows) to add a marker to the targeted ruler or track at the current edit or playback location. Press Enter (Mac and Windows) to add a marker to the Marker ruler at the current edit location or playback location without opening the New Memory Location dialog.

Show/Hide All Rulers Command

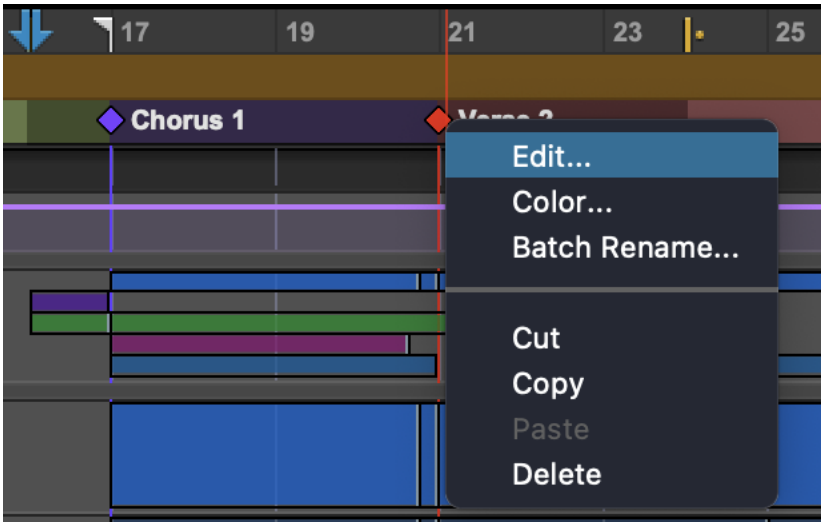
You can assign a custom keyboard shortcut to the **`Show All Marker Rulers`** command (**`Setup > Keyboard Shortcuts`**). This lets you show or hide all Marker Rulers at once with a custom key command. There are separate commands for the Edit window and MIDI Editors respectively.

Marker Context Menu

Marker rulers and lanes provide a right-click context menu that lets you edit, color, and delete individual markers, as well as copy, cut, paste, delete, batch rename, and color an entire selection of markers.



The menu options vary depending on if a marker is within an edit selection or not.



Marker Line Display Options

The **`View`** menu provides a **`Marker Displays`** submenu with the following options for Marker Rulers and Track Marker Lanes:

- **`Track Lane`** (Shift+U)
- Show/Hide **`Ruler Lines`** (Control+Option+Command+R or Control+Alt+Start+R)
- Show/Hide **`Folder Lines`** (Control+Option+Command+F or Control+Alt+Start+F)

- **Ruler Lane Color**
- **Track Lane Color**

Creating Memory Locations During Playback

When the **Auto-Name Memory Locations When Playing** option is enabled in the Editing Preferences page, Memory Locations can be created during playback, without opening the New Memory Location dialog. This option can also be selected from the Memory Locations Window menu.

This capability is useful if you want to mark certain locations while listening during a record pass, or if you want to mark frame locations while viewing a video scene.

To create a Marker during playback:

1. From the Memory Locations Window menu, select **Default To Marker**. This ensures that new Memory Locations default to being Markers.
2. From the Memory Locations Window menu, select **Auto-Name Memory Locations**.
3. For inserted Markers to have a Bar|Beat reference, make sure to set the Main Time Scale to Bars|Beats.
4. Click Play in the Transport.
5. When the location is reached, press Enter on the numeric keypad. A Marker is automatically created and appears in the Markers ruler.

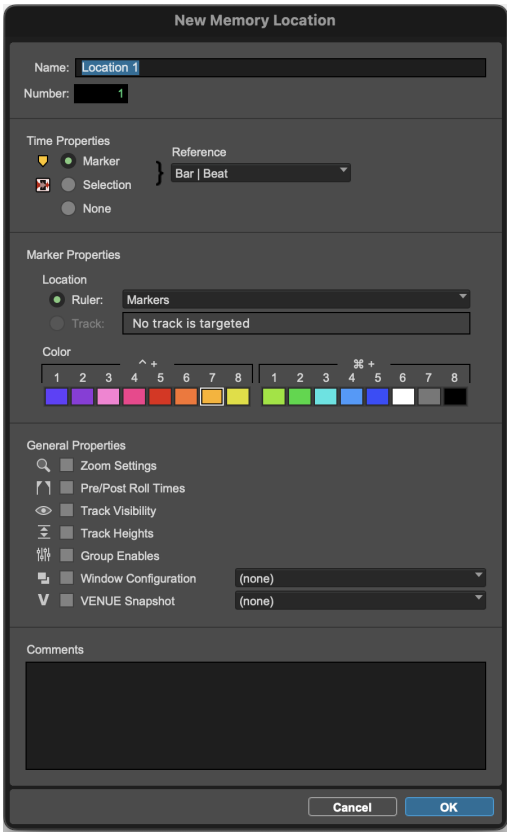
Auto-created Markers are named with increasing numbers, for example, “Marker 1,” “Marker 2,” and “Marker 3.”

When the **Default To Marker** option is deselected, new Memory Locations default to whatever type was last created. Therefore, if a Selection Memory Location was created last, it will be the type that is created during playback. In this case, the name for the created Memory Location is based on the start of the Edit selection using the time format for the Main Time Scale (such as “2|2|305” or “0:02.658”).

When Use Separate Play and Stop Keys option is enabled in the Operation Preferences page, it overrides using the Enter key to add Memory Location markers. When this option is enabled, press Period (.) and then Enter on the numeric keypad to add a Memory Location marker. The new marker is created when you press Enter.

Properties of Memory Locations

When creating a new Memory Location (see "Creating Memory Locations" on page 1194) you are prompted to define its *Time Properties* and *General Properties*.



Memory Locations window

Time Properties

Under Time Properties, a Memory Location can be set to Marker, Selection, or None. This determines the type of Memory Location that is created. Each of these three Memory Location types can also save any combination of General Properties.

Marker

Recalls a Timeline location whose reference can be either Bar|Beat (tick-based) or Absolute (sample-based). When recalling a *Marker Memory Location*, the playback cursor moves to the Marker's location and the start and end times in the Transport window are also updated. If the Timeline and Edit Selections are linked, the edit cursor also moves to the Marker location.

Markers appear in the Markers ruler with a thin yellow line extending down through all tracks in the Edit window (to assist in arranging and aligning track material). You can click a Marker in the Markers ruler to recall its location along with its stored General Properties.



Markers in the Markers ruler

Selection

Recalls an Edit selection or edit cursor location whose reference can be either Bar|Beat (tick-based) or Absolute (sample-based). A *Selection Memory Location* lets you store Edit selections, for one or more tracks, that you return to often within a session. If the Timeline and Edit Selections are linked, a Selection Memory Location can recall record and play ranges.

Only contiguous selections can be saved with Memory Locations. Noncontiguous selections, made with the Object Grabber tool, will be recalled as if the selections were made with the Time Grabber tool.

None

Recalls no Time Properties and is therefore referred to as a *General Properties Memory Location*.

Bar|Beat and Absolute Reference

The Reference pop-up determines whether the Marker or Selection Memory Location is Bar|Beat or Absolute. When set to Bar|Beat, the Memory Location is tick-based and its bar and beat location remains constant if the tempo is changed—though its relation to the absolute sample location changes accordingly.

When set to Absolute, the Memory Location is sample-based and its bar and beat location shifts if the tempo is changed—though its sample location remains constant, along with its relation to audio material.



Bar|Beat Marker (left) and Absolute Marker (right)

In the Markers ruler, Markers that are Bar|Beat appear as yellow chevrons, and Markers that are Absolute appear as yellow diamonds.

For Track Markers, you can also select the **`Follow Track Timebase`** option.

Marker Properties

Location Selector

You can select either a Marker Ruler or a Track as the marker Location under Marker Properties. The target track name is be displayed as “read-only” text.

- *Press Enter to set the selection to the Main Ruler.*
- *Press Command+Enter (Mac) or Control+Enter (Windows) to set the location to the targeted track.*

Color Selector

Marker Properties include a limited color palette for Marker lines drawn through tracks. The selected Color determines the Marker icon color, as well as the Marker line color (unless custom Marker Line colors are specified in the Color Palette window). The Marker color may also dictate the color of the marker lane or ruler depending on the selected Show Markers Lane Colors For option in the Display Preferences (see Marker Colors Preferences).

- *Press Control+1–8/Command+1–8 (Mac) or Control+1–8/Alt+1–8 (Windows) to set the marker color.*

Colors also translate when opening a session generated from Media Composer.

General Properties

All three types of Memory Locations (Marker, Selection, and None) can store and recall any combination of the following General Properties:

Number

Change the number to overwrite an existing Memory Location, or to reorder Memory Locations in the Memory Locations window.

Name

Enter a descriptive name for each memory location.

Zoom Settings

Recalls the horizontal, audio, and MIDI zoom values for audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks.

Pre/Post Roll Times

Recalls pre- and post-roll times (but not whether they are enabled). This property can be stored with a Selection Memory Location to recall record and play ranges along with pre- and post-roll.

Track Show/Hide

Recalls which tracks are hidden. Use this property to display groups of tracks for editing and mixing.

Track Heights

Recalls all Track Heights. Use this option along with Zoom Settings to recall edit environments that are suited for particular tasks, such as editing down to the sample level or trimming MIDI notes.

Group Enables

Recalls which Edit and Mix Groups are enabled. This option is helpful in recalling groups for particular edit and mixing operations, such as muting all drum tracks or fading a stereo pair.

Window Configuration

Recalls a specific Window Configuration. This option is helpful in recalling specific Window Configurations to facilitate editing or mixing tasks. For more information on Window Configurations, see "Window Configurations" on page 278.



If you are using VENUE Link for interoperability between Pro Tools and an Avid VENUE console, additional options will appear. For more information, see the VENUE Live Recording Guide.

Comments

All three types of Memory Locations (Marker, Selection, and None) can store and recall comments. You can enter a maximum of 255 characters to describe the Memory Location. You can also edit comments previously entered.



See "Creating Memory Locations" on page 1194 and "Editing Memory Locations" on the next page for more information.

Recalling Memory Locations

Memory Locations can be recalled from the Memory Locations window and from the numeric keypad. Additionally, Memory Location Markers can be recalled by clicking them in the Markers ruler.

To recall a Memory Location:

1. Select **Window > Memory Locations** to display the Memory Locations window.
2. If recalling a Selection Memory Location that defines a record or play range, ensure that **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** is selected.
3. Do one of the following:
   - In the Memory Locations window, click the Memory Location to recall it.
   - With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Classic, press the Memory Location number followed by Period (.).
   - With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport or Shuttle, press Period (.), the Memory Location number, and Period (.) again.

When recalling a Memory Location from the numeric keypad, the Memory Locations window does not need to be open.

To recall a Marker from the Markers ruler:

- Select **View > Rulers > Markers** to display the Markers ruler.
- Click the Marker you want. The playback cursor locates to the Marker and any General Properties stored with the Marker are recalled.

Even if the Markers ruler is not displayed, Markers can be recalled from the Memory Locations window, or from the numeric keypad.

Editing Memory Locations

Memory Locations can be renamed, edited, deleted, and copied and pasted.

To rename a Memory Location:

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the Memory Locations window, double-click the Memory Location to open the Edit Memory Location dialog.
   - In the Marker ruler, double-click the Marker to open the Edit Memory Location dialog and relocate the insertion point at the marker location.
   - In the Marker ruler, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Marker to open the Edit Memory Location dialog without locating the insertion point at the marker location.
2. Enter the new name for the Memory Location, and click **OK**.

To redefine the General Properties stored with a Memory Location:

1. Make changes to the session's zoom settings, pre- and post-roll times, Show/Hide status of tracks, Track Heights, or Group Enables.
2. Do one of the following:
   - In the Memory Locations window, double-click the Memory Location to open the Edit Memory Location dialog.
   - In the Marker ruler, double-click the Marker to open the Edit Memory Location dialog and relocate the insertion point at the marker location.
   - In the Marker ruler, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Marker to open the Edit Memory Location dialog without locating the insertion point at the marker location.

3. In the Memory Location dialog, select the General Properties you want to save with the Memory Location.
4. Enter a name for the Memory Location and click **OK**.

To change a Memory Location from one type to another:

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the Memory Locations window, double-click the Memory Location to open the Edit Memory Location dialog.
   - In the Marker ruler, double-click the Marker to open the Edit Memory Location dialog and relocate the insertion point at the marker location.
   - In the Marker ruler, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Marker to open the Edit Memory Location dialog without locating the insertion point at the marker location.
2. In the Memory Location dialog, select either **Marker**, **Selection**, or **None** as the Memory Location type.
3. Enter a name for the Memory Location and click **OK**.

To change the Selection stored with a Memory Location:

1. Select **View > Rulers > Markers** to display the Markers ruler.
2. Select a range of material in one or more tracks.
3. In the Memory Locations window, Control-click (Mac) or Right-click (Windows) the Memory Location that you want to redefine.
4. Enter a name for the Memory Location and click **OK**.

To move a Marker by dragging:

- In the Markers ruler, drag the Marker left or right.

  If the Edit mode is set to Grid, the dragged event snaps to the current Grid value. If using Spot mode, the Spot dialog opens.

To align a Marker to a different location:

1. If necessary, select **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
2. Do one of the following:

   In any of the Timebase rulers, click with the Selector tool at the new location.

   Click in the playlist for any track. To align the Marker to the start of a clip, select the clip with the Time Grabber tool.
3. Do one of the following:
   - If the Marker is visible on-screen, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Marker Memory Location that you want to redefine. The Marker snaps to the new location.
   - In the Memory Locations window, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Marker Memory Location that you want to redefine. The Edit Memory Location window appears. Enable the **Update Position** (to update the position of a Marker) or **Update Selection** (to update the selection boundary locations) setting.

4. Click **OK**.



Update Position/Selection setting in Edit Memory Location dialog

Selections are edit selection-based, while Markers will follow the position of the playhead.

Update Position and Update Selection are global settings (their state persists when opening new sessions).

Deleting Memory Locations

To delete a Memory Location, do one of the following:

- Select the Memory Location and choose **Delete Memory Location** from the Memory Locations Window menu.
- In the Memory Locations window, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Memory Location.

To delete all Memory Locations, do one of the following:

- Choose **Delete All** from the Memory Locations Window menu.
- Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) any Memory Location in the Memory Locations window.

To delete a Marker from the Markers ruler:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Marker.

Copying Marker Memory Locations

To copy and paste a range of Markers:

1. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.
2. Drag in the Tempo ruler to select the range of measures that includes the Markers. If the beginning of the selection includes a Marker, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) so the Selector tool appears.

   Press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging to select across all Conductor tracks.

3. Choose **Edit > Copy**.
4. Click in the Markers ruler at the point where you want to paste the tempo events.
5. Choose **Edit > Paste**. The contents of the Clipboard are pasted from the insertion point, replacing any existing Markers.

To extend an Edit selection in a track to the Markers ruler:

1. Using the Selector or Grabber tool, select a track range.
2. Shift-click in the Markers ruler.

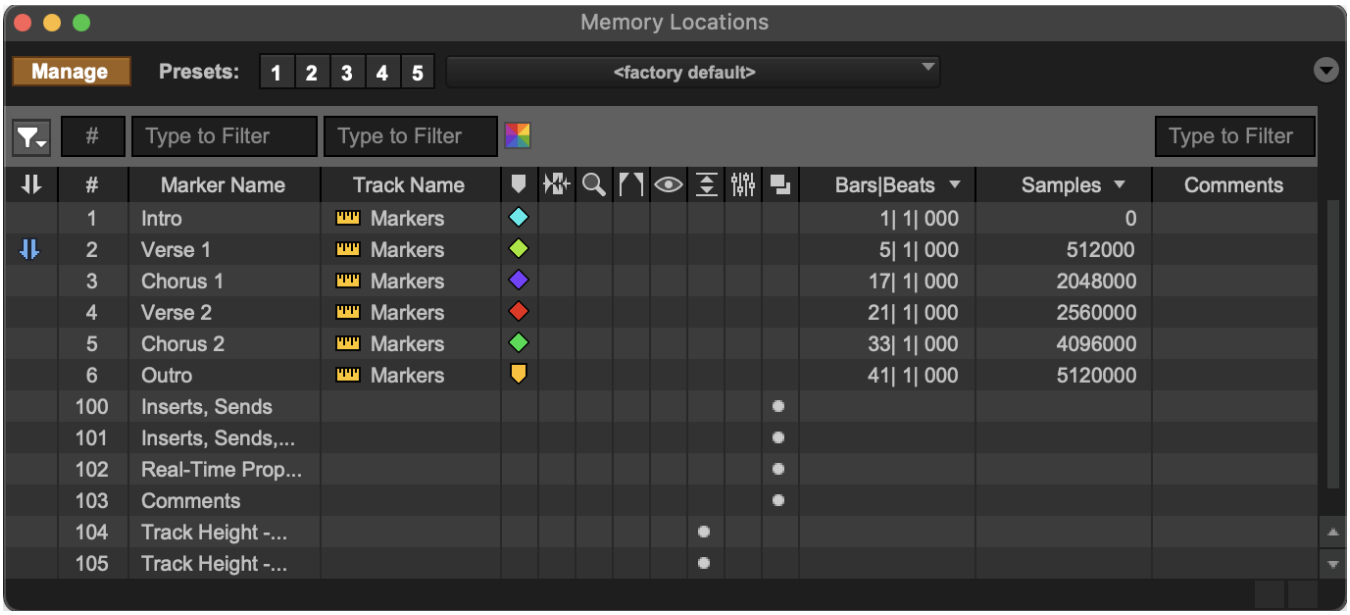
Shift-click again in the Markers ruler to remove it from the selection.

To select all Markers in the Markers ruler:

- With the Selector tool, double-click in the Markers ruler.

Memory Locations Window

In the Memory Locations windows, Memory Locations are listed with assigned number, name, and View Filter icons. Locations can be recalled or edited from this window.



Memory Locations window with View Filter icons

To recall a Memory Location from the Memory Location window:

- Click the Memory Location.

With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Classic, press the Memory Location number followed by Period (.). With the Numeric Keypad mode set to Transport or Shuttle, press Period (.), the Memory Location number, and Period (.) again.

Filtering Memory Locations

Filter By Text

The Memory Locations window lets you filter by Marker Number (**#**), **`Marker Name`**, **`Track Name`**, and text in **`Comments`**. Type text in any of the boxes to filter. The focused box has a yellow border. Any non-focused box that contains a filter has a blue border to show that the filter is engaged.

Filter By Attribute

The Filter menu (Funnel icon) lets you filter Memory Locations by any attribute. The Filter (Funnel) icon illuminates if any filtering is active. Attribute filters are subtractive, so deselecting hides items containing that attribute from the Memory Location window.

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Funnel icon to set the filter to its default.

Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) the Funnel icon to reset all filters in the window to their defaults.

The Filter menu lets you enable (or disable) filtering by the following:

- Marker
- Selection
- No Time Property
- Absolute
- Bar | Beat
- Zoom Settings
- Pre/Post Roll Times
- Track Visibility
- Track Heights
- Group Enables
- Window Configurations
- VENUE Snapshots
- Empty Comments
- Main Ruler
- Basic Folder Tracks
- Routing Folder Tracks
- Audio Tracks
- Aux Inputs
- Master Faders
- VCA Masters
- MIDI Tracks
- Instrument Tracks
- Video Tracks
- Targeted Track Only
- Selected Tracks Only
- Edit Selection Only

Real-time Filters

Real-time filters only show markers related to the selected item. They may be added together to increase the results.

The following filter out any memory locations that do not meet the selected criteria:

Targeted Track Only

Enabling this option filters out all markers that are not part of the targeted track or ruler.

Selected Tracks Only

Enabling this option filters out all markers that are not on selected tracks.

Edit Selection Only

Enabling this option filters out all markers that are not included within the edit selection.

Filter By Icon

Selecting any one of the icons shows only Memory Locations that include that attribute. Selecting another icon expands the results to also include Memory Locations with that attribute.

Filter By Color

Click the color icon and select a color to filter Markers by color.

Filter Presets

Presets can be used to save the filters, sort order, and column views in the Memory Location Window. It is possible to store named presets, or 1–5 quick presets.

Mac

/Users/‹user›/Documents/Pro Tools/Pro Tools Presets/Memory Location Window

Win

‹same relative location. See export mix location›

To save a Filter Preset:

1. Configure filters as desired.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) a number

To recall a Filter Preset, do one of the following:

- Click a preset number.
- Press Control+1–5 (Mac) or Start+1–5 (Windows).

Previous and Next Memory Locations

Use the following keyboard shortcuts to navigate Memory Locations:

- Press Period+Plus (.+) on the number keypad to go to the next Memory Location.
- Press Period+Minus (.–) on the number keypad to go to the previous Memory Location.
- Press Period+Period (..) on the number keypad to refresh the current Memory Location.

The window automatically scrolls to a memory location when it is recalled and the selection is updated.

You can continue to press + or – to continue navigating up or down through the list of Memory Locations. Press any other key to exit navigation mode.

Making Multiple Selections in the Memory Locations Window

You can make multiple selections in the Memory Locations window.

To select multiple contiguous memory locations, do one of the following:

- Deselect the Manage icon (unlink selection and recall), and then click and drag to select the memory locations you want.
- Shift-click the range of memory locations you want.

To select multiple non-contiguous memory locations:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the memory locations you want to select.

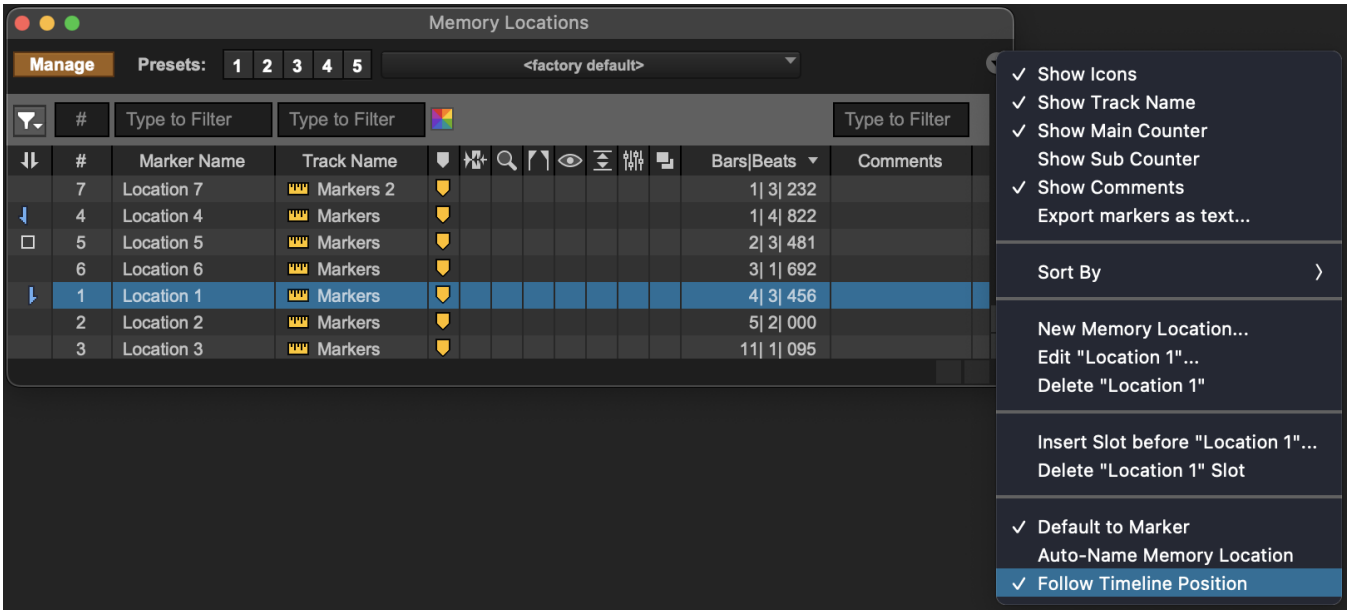
Managing Memory Locations

When **Manage** is enabled (lit), window behavior is designed to manage memory locations, rather than recall them. This allows for multi-selection and batch editing. Bulk selection key modifiers can be used in the window, and you can use the Up/Down arrows to navigate, Shift select, and Command select (Mac) or Control select (Windows).

When **Manage** is disabled (unlit), you can recall memory locations. Select the name of a memory location to recall it, and the selection can be extended to the 'recall' column, just as with the previous **Link** mode. Selecting multiple memory locations is disallowed. Shift selecting moves the selection to the newly selected memory location and recalls it, and the Edit selection on the timeline is extended. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click behaves as a standard click and just recall/select the clicked memory location. The Up/Down arrows are passed to the Edit Window and cannot be used to navigate in the Memory Locations window.

Memory Locations Commands and Options

You can select viewing and sorting options, along with commands for creating and removing Memory Locations, from the Memory Locations Window menu.



Memory Locations Window menu

View Filter Submenu

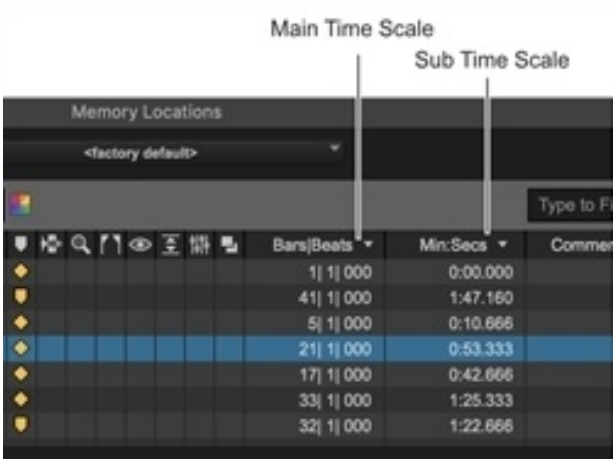
Provides commands to show or hide specific memory location properties:

- Show Icons
- Show Track Name
- Show Main Counter
- Show Sub Counter
- Show Comments
- View Markers
- View Selections
- View Locations with Zoom Info
- View Locations with Pre/Post Roll Info

- View Locations with Track Show/Hide Info
- View Locations with Track Height Info
- View Locations with Group Info
- View Locations with Window Configuration Info
- Show Markers Only
- View All

Show Main Counter

When selected, a column appears in the Memory Locations window that displays the locations based on the Main Time-scale for Markers, and the start times for Selection Memory Locations. General Property Memory Locations display nothing in this column.



Main/Sub Counters in the Memory Locations window

You can click at the top of the Main Time Scale column for a pop-up menu that lets you change the Main Time Scale.

Show Sub Counter

When selected, a column appears in the Memory Locations window that displays the locations based on the Sub Time Scale for Markers, and the start times for Selection Memory Locations. General Property Memory Locations display nothing in this column.

You can click at the top of the Sub Time Scale column for a pop-up menu that lets you change the Sub Time Scale.

Show Comments

When selected, a column appears in the Memory Locations window that displays the comments for each of the Markers.

Sort by

You can sort Memory Locations in by **`Number`**, **`Marker Name`**, **`Track Name`**, **`Track Order`**, **`Time`**, or **`Color`**. The selected category can then be sorted in **`Ascending`** or **`Descending`** order.

New Memory Location

Choose this command to create a new Memory Location.

Edit ‹Name›

Opens the Edit Memory Location dialog for the selected Memory Location. You can also double-click a Memory Location in the Memory Locations window to edit it.

Clear ‹Name›

Clears the selected Memory Location, but does not remove its slot. Subsequent Memory Locations are not renumbered.

- *Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) a Memory Location in the Memory Locations window to clear it.*

Delete All

Deletes all Memory Locations. The next Memory Location you add starts at slot number 1.

Insert Slot Before ‹Name›

Adds a new, empty Memory Location slot above the selected Memory Location, and renumbers all subsequent Memory Locations.

Delete ‹Name› Slot

Deletes the selected Memory Location, and renumbers all subsequent Memory Locations.

Default To Marker

When selected, new Memory Locations default to Markers, though in the New Memory Location dialog you can still define the new Memory Location as one of the other types.

Auto-Name Memory Location

When selected, Memory Locations are created automatically without encountering the New Memory Location dialog. If the **`Default To Marker`** option is selected, a Marker Memory Location is auto-created. Otherwise, the Memory Location type is determined by whatever type (Marker, Selection, or None) was created last.

Follow Timeline Location

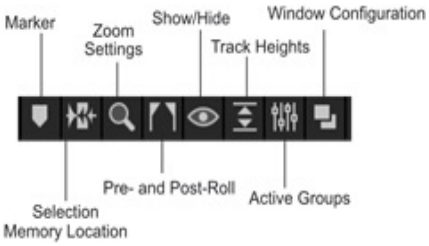
When selected, the **`Follow Timeline Selection`** option forces the sort order. There is a button to control it at the top of the recall column. Timeline selection icons appear in the recall list to show you where you are in the Timeline.

You can extend your selection in the Memory Locations window using the Shift modifier with the Previous and Next commands. If you are re-assigning the corresponding key commands in the Keyboard Shortcuts window, be sure to re-assign both the **`Locate`** and **`Extend Selection`** variations of the command.

The start and end points of the selection follow along with the timeline position. The Previous and Next commands only follow the markers visible in the list when the command is enabled, even if the window is closed. Filter column shows the start and end endpoints, as well as the duration of selections containing memory locations. Sort order is forced in this mode.

View Filter Icons

When Show Icons is selected in the Memory Locations pop-up menu, the Memory Locations window provides an icon-based “View Filter” that lets you show or hide Memory Locations based on the properties they contain.



Memory Locations View Filter icons

To show or hide Memory Locations containing a specific property:

- Click the appropriate icon.

Color and Properties

When a view icon is enabled, it appears in color. When it is disabled, it appears gray.

If an icon is disabled (grayed out), all Memory Locations associated with that property are hidden. However, if a Memory Location contains other properties for an icon that is enabled, it is still displayed.

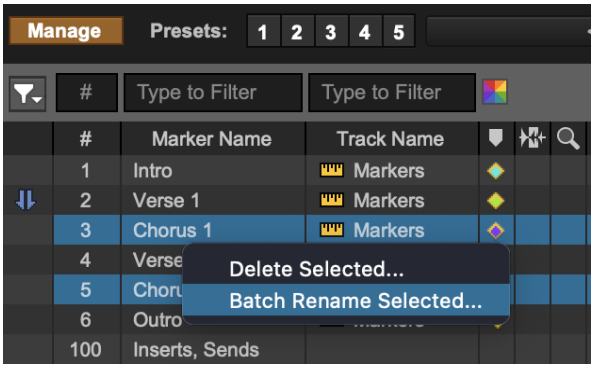
In addition, the View Filter provides a useful reference for which properties are stored in each Memory Location (indicated by a row of icons for each Memory Location).

Batch Rename Memory Locations

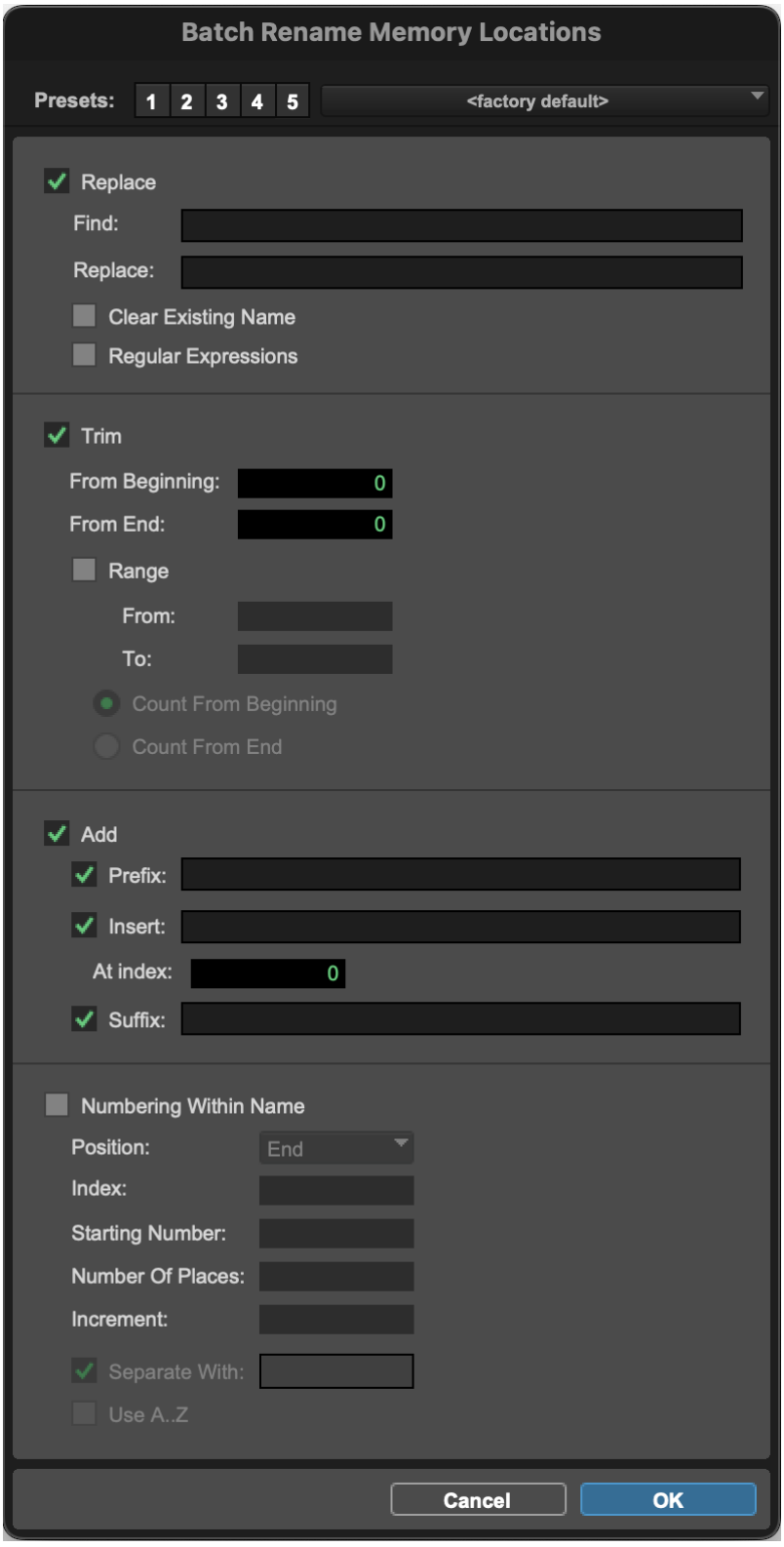
Pro Tools lets you batch rename Memory Locations.

To batch rename Memory Locations:

1. Choose **Window > Memory Locations**.
2. Enable **Manage**.
3. Select the Memory Locations you want to rename.
4. Right-click any selected Memory Location and choose **Batch Rename Selected**.



5. Configure the Batch Rename Memory Locations dialog as desired and click **OK**.



Number applies only to the memory location name, and not the actual memory location number.

Presets are located in the "Batch Memory Location Rename" folder directly next to the other folders in /Documents/Pro Tools/Pro Tools Presets/.

Track Markers

Pro Tools lets you add and edit markers on any targeted track, as well as on the Marker ruler.

Adding Markers

Markers can be added in one of 3 ways:

- Click the Add Marker "+" button on the track or Marker ruler.
- Use a keyboard shortcut, such as Command+Enter (Mac) or Control+Enter (Windows).
- Right-click within the track contents and select Insert › Marker on Ruler or Insert › Marker on Track.

Track Marker Views

There are two ways a marker can be displayed on a track:

Marker Lane

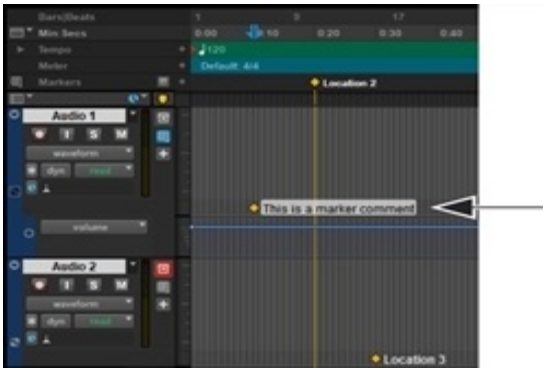
A small lane below the track, but above automation lanes. The Marker Lane is hidden when in Marker view.

Marker View

Overlays markers over track contents and hides the Marker Lane.

Marker Lane

The Marker Lane for any track only appears if the track has at least one marker on it, and the track is in any view other than the Marker view.



Track Marker lanes

You can then show or hide the Marker Lane as desired (see Track Marker Controls and Lanes).

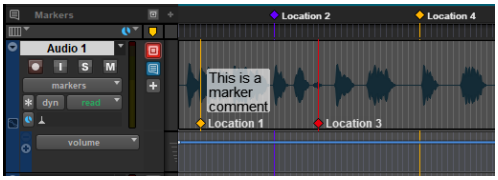
To show (or hide) Track Marker lanes, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **`View > Track Marker Lane`**.
- Press Shift+U.

When reducing the track height, the Marker Lane stays the same size, but the Marker controls are hidden at smaller track heights.

Markers View

The Markers view shows markers over any track contents. This track view shows either the marker name or comment. At larger track heights, both marker name and comment are shown.



Editing with Track Markers

Any selected Track marker and any Track markers in an edit selection can be cut, copied, pasted, duplicated, and repeated, just as they can on the Marker ruler.

To edit a marker:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click the marker you want to edit.
   - Command-click (Mac) and Control-click (Windows) the marker you want to edit.
2. Configure the resulting Edit Memory Location dialog as desired (see "Properties of Memory Locations" on page 1198).
3. Click OK.

Marker Follows Edit (MFE)

Edit selection behavior is determined by the status of the Marker Follows Edit (MFE) setting regardless of whether or not the Marker Lane is shown. Enable MFE when you want the marker to follow edits to the main track elements or clips. Disable MFE when you do not want Track Markers to be affected by edits to clip and other track elements.



Marker Follows Edit (MFE) button enabled

When MFE is enabled and a Marker Lane is shown, the Edit cursor and Edit selection span the active track playlist and track Marker Lanes. Markers on a track, even if not visible, follow the selection on the main playlist (similar to how automation follows edits when the Automation Follows Edit option is enabled). When disabled, the Edit cursor and Edit selections are specific to the section of the track in which they are made. The MFE button is disabled by default.

MFE determines what is copied. Disable MFE to paste without restrictions.

Press Shift+Y to toggle MFE on or off.

When MFE is disabled, you can Shift-click into a Marker Lane to extend the selection.

Select Between Markers

To select between markers:

- Double-click between the two markers to make an Edit selection between two markers.
- Triple-click to select from the first to the last marker in the session.

When markers are included in a selection matching exact clip boundaries, only the left-most marker is counted as included in the selection. Clip and track actions such as cut, copy, paste, and duplicate will include the left-most marker, while the right-most marker will not be included.

Snap Marker to Edit Selection

To snap a marker to the beginning of the Edit selection:

- Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) a maker.

To snap a marker to the end of the Edit selection:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) and Control-Start-click (Windows) a marker within the Edit selection.

Key Commands for Selecting Marker Lanes

To move the Edit selection to the previous Marker Lane, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Move Edit Selection to Previous Marker Zone.`**
- Press Command+Option+Control+P (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+P (Windows).

To move the Edit selection to the next Marker Lane, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Move Edit Selection to Next Marker Zone.`**
- Press Command+Option+Control+; (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+; (Windows).

To extend the Edit selection to the previous Marker Lane, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Extend Edit Selection to Previous Marker Zone.`**
- Press Command+Option+Control+Shift+P (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+Shift+P (Windows).

To extend the Edit selection to the next Marker Lane, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Edit > Selection > Extend Edit Selection to Next Marker Zone.`**
- Press Command+Option+Control+Shift+; (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+Shift+; (Windows).

To remove the top-most selected view, including explicitly selected Marker lanes (selected either using mouse or keyboard):

- Press Control+Option+P (Mac) or Start+Alt+P (Windows).

To remove the top-most selected view, including explicitly selected Marker lanes (selected either using mouse or keyboard):

- Press Control+Option+; (Mac) or Start+Alt+; (Windows).

Dragging Markers Between Tracks and Between Tracks and the Marker Ruler

Dragging a marker either horizontally or vertically constrains it to the direction you first drag the marker within a certain threshold. Once you break that threshold, you can move the marker freely. If you move a marker horizontally first, the movement is constrained horizontally. Likewise, if you drag a marker vertically first, the movement is constrained vertically.



Shift-click and drag a marker to constrain vertical movement.

Move Selection to Main Marker Ruler

Pro Tools lets you move an Edit selection to a new track if you left-click on the track name while Timeline and Edit selection are linked. You can also do this with Marker Rulers. Unlike tracks, rulers cannot be selected, but you can click on the ruler name area of any ruler to move the edit selection to that ruler, regardless of the linked state of the Timeline and Edit selection.

To move an Edit selection to a Ruler:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Ruler name.

To extend an Edit selection to a Ruler:

- Shift-click a Ruler name or Marker area.

Copy and Merge Paste Track Markers

When copying and pasting Track Markers from one Marker Lane to another overwrites markers in the target lane. Pro Tools lets you copy and merge paste markers from one lane to another.

To copy and merge paste Track Markers:

1. Copy the Track Markers you want to paste to another track.
2. Place the Edit cursor at the location in another Track Marker Lane.
3. Choose **`Edit > Past Special > Merge Markers (or`** press Option+V (Mac) or Alt+V).

47 Arranging Clips

Pro Tools provides several ways of arranging clips on tracks including, but not limited to, moving them with the Grabber tool, nudging, cutting or copying and pasting, spotting them to a time location, and so on. The exact placement of clips in a track depends on whether the Edit mode is set to Shuffle, Slip, Spot, or Grid (see "Edit Modes" on page 872).

Placing Clips from the Clip List on to Track Playlists

Once you have created a clip, it appears in the Clip List. From the Clip List you can drag it to a track to add to an existing arrangement of clips on a track, or you can create a new track and start adding clips from scratch.

You can locate clips in the Clip List by typing the first few letters of their name (see "Keyboard Selection of Clips" on page 440).

To place a clip from the Clip List on a track:

1. In the Clip List, select the clip or clips you want to place.
2. Drag the selected clips from the Clip List to a location in a track.

   If dragging multiple clips, the clips are placed on adjacent tracks left to right or on multiple tracks from top to bottom depending on the selected **`Timeline Drop Order`** option (see "Setting Timeline Drop Order" below).

   If dragging a stereo audio clip, it must be placed in a stereo track or in two mono tracks.

Clips are placed according to the current Edit mode:

- In Shuffle mode, existing track clips are slid as necessary to make room for the new clip.
- In Spot mode, you are prompted by the Spot dialog to enter a location for the dragged clip (see "Spotting Clips" on page 1226).
- In Grid mode, the dragged clip snaps to the nearest Grid boundary.

You can temporarily disable Grid mode while dragging a clip by holding down the Command key (Mac) or Control key (Windows) after clicking with the mouse.

- In Slip mode, the clips are placed exactly where they are dropped in the destination track.

Working with Multiple Items from the Clip List

Setting Timeline Drop Order

The **`Timeline Drop Order`** option in the Clip List menu sets whether tracks dragged from the Clip List are dropped sequentially in a single track or spread across multiple tracks, as follows:

Top to Bottom

When enabled, clips spread across *multiple* destination (drop) tracks or on new tracks (when dragging to the area below the last track or to the Track List).

Left to Right

When enabled, clips are placed sequentially in a *single* destination (drop) track or on a new track (when dragging to the area below the last track or on to the Track List).

To set the Clip List Drop Order:

- Choose **Clip List > Timeline Drop Order**, and then **Top to Bottom** or **Left to Right**.

Dragging and Dropping Multiple Items from the Clip List

To drag and drop multiple items from the Clip List to multiple new tracks:

1. From the Clip List menu, choose **Timeline Drop Order > Top to Bottom**.
2. Search and sort the Clip List to configure the order in which items will be placed.
3. Select multiple items in the Clip List and do one of the following:
   - To create new tracks and place items to a specific location, drop items at the location along the area below the last track.
   - To create new tracks and have items placed at the start of the session, drop the items on the Track List.



New tracks after dropping multiple Clip List items, with Timeline Drop Order set to Top to Bottom mode

To place multiple items across multiple existing tracks:

1. From the Clip List menu, choose **Timeline Drop Order > Top to Bottom**.
2. Select multiple items in the Clip List and drop them in the playlist of a compatible track at the target location. When the cursor is over a compatible destination, the clip outlines appear at the location.

To drag and drop multiple items from the Clip List to a single track:

1. From the Clip List menu, choose **Timeline Drop Order > Left to Right**.
2. Search and sort the Clip List to configure the order in which items will be placed.
3. Select multiple items in the Clip List and do one of the following:
   - To create a new track and spot the first item to a specific location, drop at the location in the area below the last track shown in the Edit window.
   - To create a new track and have the first item placed at the start of the session, drop the items on the Track List.

- To place items in an existing track, drop the items in the Edit playlist for the track.



A new track created by dropping multiple Clip List items with Timeline Drop Order set to Left to Right mode.

If the selected items include mixed types of clips (such as audio and MIDI, or clip groups and MIDI) the appropriate track types will be created and each corresponding item will be placed in them. Similarly, if the selected items include multiple formats (mono, stereo, or other) new tracks of each format will be created and those clips placed in them.

Placing Clips at the Edit Insertion Point

You can drag a clip from the same track, from another track, or from the Clip List, and align its start, end, or sync point to the Edit insertion point. This technique is useful in post production since it lets you set an Edit selection point during playback or while stopped and then quickly place sound effects at the edit insertion point.

With Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, when the Scrolling option is set to Center Playhead, clips snap to the playhead, instead of the Edit insertion point.

To place the start of a clip at the Edit insertion point:

1. Place the Edit insertion point at the desired location on a track.
2. Select one or more clips in the Clip List that you want to spot to that location.

   This can change the location of the Edit insertion point. If so, replace the Edit insertion point to where you want.

3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Spot to Edit Insertion`** from the Clip List menu.
   - Control-drag (Mac) or Start-drag (Windows) selected clips from the Clip List to the track.
   - Control-Option-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-click (Windows) to spot a single, selected clip to the Edit insertion point.
   - Right-click a clip and choose **`Spot to Edit Insertion`**.

The selected clip is placed at the Edit insertion point on the track.

When spotting more than one selected clip to the Edit insertion point, clips are placed according to the selected Timeline Drop Order setting (Top to Bottom or Left to Right). The channel width of the selected clip must match the channel width of the target track.

To place the end of a clip at the Edit insertion point:

1. With the Selector tool, click in the track at the time location where you want to place the end of the clip.
2. Do one of the following:

- While pressing Command+Control (Mac) or Control+Start (Windows), drag the clip from the Clip List, or from another track, to the destination track.
- If the clip is already in the track, Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the clip with the Time Grabber tool.

To place the sync point of a clip at the Edit insertion point:

1. With the Selector tool, click in the track at the time location where you want to place the sync point of the clip.
2. Do one of the following:
   - While pressing Control+Shift (Mac) or Start+Shift (Windows), drag the clip from the Clip List, or from another track, to the destination track.
   - If the clip is already in the track, Shift-Control-click (Mac) or Shift-Start-click (Windows) the clip with the Time Grabber tool.

Aligning Clips with the Edit Insertion Point

The start, end, and sync point of one clip can be aligned to the start of a different clip on another track.

In Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, when the Scrolling option is set to Center Playhead, clip start, end, and sync points align to the playhead.

To align the start point of a clip to the Edit insertion point:

1. Place the Edit insertion point where you want.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Control-drag (Mac) or Start-drag (Windows) a clip from the Clip List to another track.
   - If the clip is already in the track, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the clip you want to move with the Time Grabber tool (or with the Smart tool positioned over the middle, lower-third of the clip).

Option-Control-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-click (Windows) and drag to align a copy of the clip rather than moving the clip.

To align the end point of a clip to the Edit insertion point:

1. Place the Edit insertion point where you want.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Command-Control-drag (Mac) or Control-Start-drag (Windows) a clip from the Clip List to another track.
   - If the clip is already in the track, Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the clip you want to move with the Time Grabber tool (or with the Smart tool positioned over the middle, lower-third of the clip).

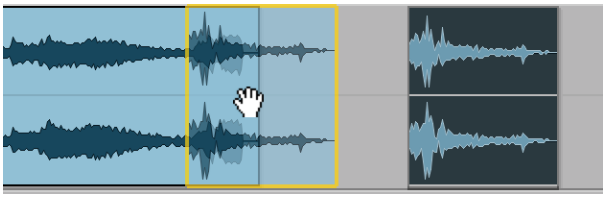
Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Start-Alt-Start-click (Windows) and drag to align a copy of the clip rather than moving the clip.

To align the sync point of a clip to the Edit insertion point:

1. Place the Edit insertion point where you want.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Control-Shift-drag (Mac) or Start-Shift-drag (Windows) a clip from the Clip List to another track.
   - If the clip is already in the track, Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Start-Shift-click (Windows) the clip you want to move with the Time Grabber tool (or with the Smart tool positioned over the middle, lower-third of the clip).

Arranging with Transparent Clip Overlays

Transparent clip overlays can be useful for visually aligning the placement of one clip over another clip (for example, if you want to align a particular transient of one clip over a particular transient in another clip).



Visually aligning the placement of one clip over another with Clip Transparency enabled

To toggle the display of clip transparency:

- Select or deselect **`View > Clip > Transparency`**.

Moving Clips with the Grabber Tools

Use the Grabber tools to move one or more clips, or the Edit selection, to another location.

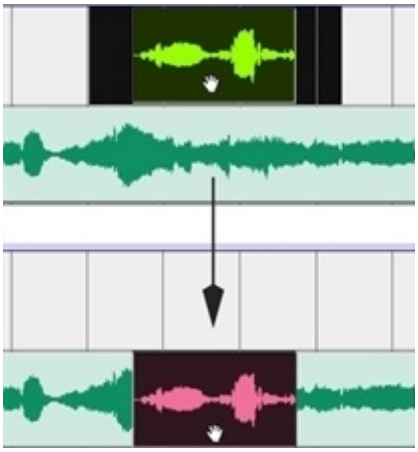
Hold Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) when dragging the selection with a Grabber tool to copy the selection rather than cut it.

To move one or more clips, or the Edit selection, with one of the Grabber tools:

1. Select one or more clips, or make an edit selection.
2. With one of the Grabber tools (Time, Separation, or Object), drag the selection to the new location.

Time Grabber and Object Grabber

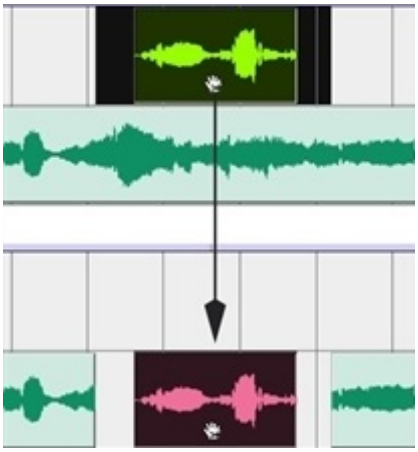
If you are moving audio data, the Time Grabber and Object Grabber tools overlay only the audio data on the destination track.



Moving a selection with the Time Grabber

Separation Grabber

The Separation Grabber replaces the entire selected range on the destination track Timeline.



Moving a selection with the Separation Grabber

Layered Editing

Pro Tools provides the option to enable layered editing so that you don't lose partially overlapped clips while editing. This is true for both audio and MIDI.

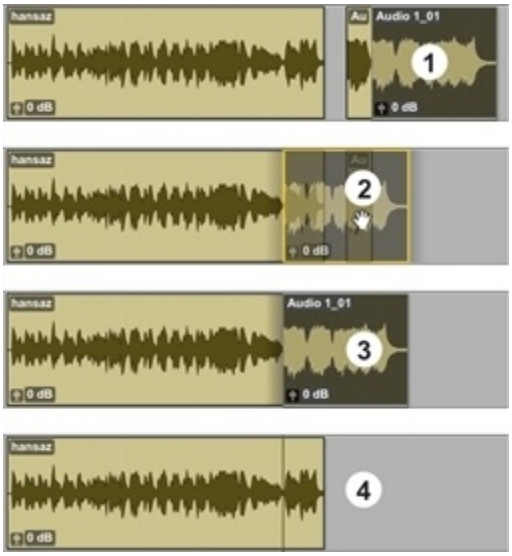
To enable (or disable) layered editing, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **Options > Layered Editing**.
- Click the Layered Editing button in the Edit Window toolbar so that it is lit (or unlit).



Layered Editing button (enabled)

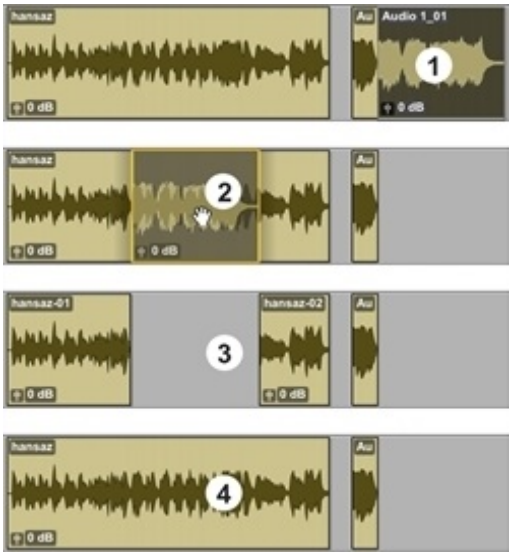
When the **Layered Editing** option is enabled, any partially overlapped clips are revealed when cutting, clearing (deleting), or moving the overlapping clip. Note that if any clip is fully overlapped by another, larger clip, it is removed from the timeline. In "Editing with Layered Editing enabled" below, the clip “Audio 1_01” (1) is moved (2) to fully cover one clip and partially cover another clip (3). When that clip (“Audio 1_02-01”) is cleared, the fully covered clip is gone, but the partially covered clip is revealed (4).



Editing with Layered Editing enabled

Press Command+Delete (Mac) or Control+Delete (Windows) to clear all track data within the edit selection regardless of whether or not Layered Editing is enabled.

When the **Layered Editing** option is disabled, overlapped clips remain “trimmed” to the start or end time of the overlapping clip. In "Editing with Layered Editing disabled" below, the clip “Audio 1_01” (1) is moved to cover the middle of a larger clip (2). When that clip (“Audio 1_01”) is cleared, the overlapped clip has a hole punched in it (3). If Layered Editing is enabled in this case, the underlying clip is completely revealed and healed (4).



Editing with Layered Editing disabled

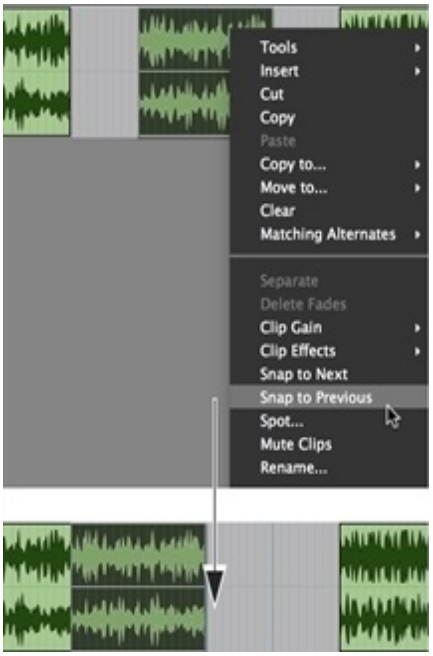
Snapping to the Preceding or Next Clip on a Track

A clip—or an Edit selection including one or more clips on the same track or on multiple tracks—can snap to the end of the preceding clip or to the beginning of the following clip. This is useful for "butt splicing" adjacent clips on a track.

To snap to the preceding clip on a track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - With the Time Grabber, select a clip.
   - With the Selector, select an area in a track that contains whole clips. The clips do not need to be adjacent.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Snap To > Previous**.
   - Right-click the clip or Edit selection and choose **Snap to Previous**.
   - Press Option+Control+, (Mac) or Alt+Start+, (Windows).

The selected clip snaps to the preceding clip on the track so that the two clips are "butt-spliced."



Snapping a clip to the previous clip in a track

To snap to the next clip on a track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - With the Time Grabber, select a clip.
   - With the Selector, select an area in a track that contains whole clips. The clips do not need to be adjacent.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Snap To > Next**.
   - Right-click the clip or Edit selection and choose **Snap to Next**.
   - Press Option+Control+. (Mac) or Alt+Start+. (Windows).

The selected clip snaps to the following clip on the track so that the two clips are "butt-spliced."



Snapping a clip to the next clip in a track

You can also use the Snap To commands with an Edit selection that includes multiple clips on one or more tracks.

Arranging Clips in Shuffle Mode

In Shuffle mode, you can move clips freely within a track or onto another track, but their movement is constrained by other clips. That is, if you place several clips in a track, their start and end points automatically snap to each other. You can then "shuffle" their order, but you cannot separate them from each other and you cannot make them overlap as in Slip mode. In Shuffle mode, adding another clip to the beginning of a track moves all subsequent clips to the right by the length of the clip added.

To shuffle clips:

1. Enable Shuffle mode (see "Edit Modes" on page 872).
2. Drag a mono clip from the Clip List to an empty track. The clip snaps to the beginning of the track.
3. Drag a second clip from the Clip List to the same track, somewhere in the middle. The start point for the second clip snaps to the end of the first clip.
4. With the Time Grabber tool, drag the second clip to the beginning of the track. Pro Tools "shuffles" the position of the two clips. The second clip now occurs first, yet the two still cling together.
5. Experiment more with Shuffle mode by dragging additional clips to the track and rearranging them.

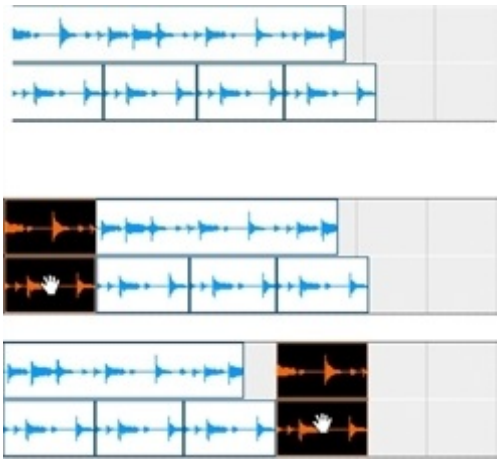
Locked clips (see "Locking Clips" on page 1236), and all clips occurring after the locked clip, are not displaced when other neighboring clips are moved in Shuffle mode. If there is not enough room to place or duplicate a clip in front of a locked clip, the insertion area is disabled.

If you place a clip while in Slip mode and switch to Shuffle mode, Pro Tools preserves the relative timing and position of the slipped clip, and any space between it and other clips.

With certain workflows, it is important to exclude Shuffle mode in order to ensure that clips stay time-aligned while editing. Shuffle Lock prevents you from inadvertently entering Shuffle mode by disabling all key commands and control surface switches for Shuffle mode. For more information, see "Shuffle Lock" on page 872.

Shuffling Multiple Tracks and Multichannel Clips

Selections across multiple tracks or on multichannel tracks can be shuffled. Unlike shuffling clips on a single track, any partially selected clips are cut and moved along with the dragged clip. This lets you retain only the material that corresponds to the dragged clip.



Shuffling a clip results in cutting the channel

Arranging Clips in Slip Mode

In Slip mode, clips can be moved with the Time Grabber tool and placed freely within a track, or onto other tracks. In this mode, it is possible to place a clip so that there is space between it and other clips in a track. When the track is played back, this space is silent. It is also possible to move a clip so that it overlaps or completely covers another clip.

To slip clips:

1. Enable Slip mode (see "Edit Modes" on page 872).
2. Drag a clip from the Clip List to an empty track.
3. Drag a second clip from the Clip List to the same track, somewhere in the middle. The second clip is placed wherever you release it. It does not snap to the first clip as in Shuffle mode.
4. Drag the clips to different locations within the track to get a feel for moving them in Slip mode. Try placing the second clip so that it slightly overlaps the first clip. Play back the results.

Spotting Clips

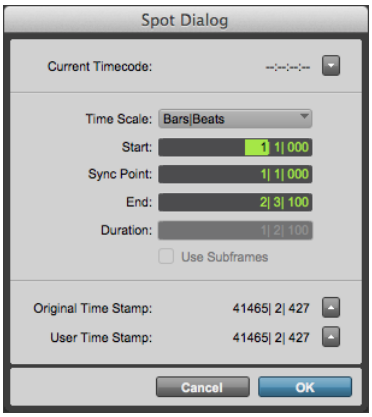
Spot mode is useful for sessions in which you want to spot clips to precise locations based on any of the Time Scales. This is useful when performing post production tasks. In Spot mode you can spot a clip by specifying a Timecode frame or bar and beat location, by capturing an incoming timecode address, or by using the clip's time stamps.

For even quicker spotting, if you are using VITC, use the Auto-Spot Clips command to spot a clip to the current Timecode frame location with the Time Grabber tool. For more information, see "Auto-Spotting Clips" on page 1860.

For more information on using Timecode with Pro Tools, see "Working with Synchronization" on page 1837.

To spot a clip:

1. Enable Spot mode (see "Edit Modes" on page 872).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Drag a clip from the Clip List, or drag audio files or sessions from a Workspace browser to an existing track.
   - Click a clip already in a track with the Time Grabber tool.
3. In the Spot dialog, select a time format from the **Time Scale** pop-up menu. Each of the fields in the Spot dialog are dis played in the chosen Time Scale.



Spot dialog

4. If the Time Scale is set to Timecode, select the **Use Subframes** option to display subframes in the fields for improved accuracy.
5. Do one of the following:
   - Click in the field for Start, Sync Point, or End and type in a new location. Changing one of these locate points automatically updates the other locate points.
   - Click one of the up arrows next to Original Time Stamp or User Time Stamp to enter the associated values into the currently selected field.
   - If you are using an external Timecode source, click the down arrow next to the Current Timecode display—or press Equal (=) on the numeric keypad—to capture an incoming timecode address.
6. Click **OK**. The clip is moved to the new location specified for its start, end, or sync point.

If a clip does not have a sync point defined, the Sync Point field in the Spot dialog functions the same as the Start field.

Right-Click Commands for Spotting Clips

You can use Right-click commands with a key combination to spot clips in a track.

In earlier versions of Pro Tools, Right-clicking in a clip with the Grabber tool would spot the clip to a selection.

To spot a clip to a selection:

1. Click or drag with the Selector tool to locate the cursor or make a selection in the track where you want to spot the clip.
2. Command-Right-click (Mac) or Control-Right-click (Windows) the clip and choose any of the following from the pop-up menu:
   - **Move Clip Start to Selection Start**
   - **Move Clip Sync to Selection Start**
   - **Move Clip End to Selection Start**.

Clip Time Stamps

When a clip is created, it is time stamped relative to the Timecode start time specified for the session. This Original Time Stamp is permanently stored with the clip and cannot be changed. If a clip is ever moved, it can easily be placed at its original position from the Spot dialog.

When the Original Time Stamp for a clip is initially set, this same location is also used to define the clip's User Time Stamp.

Unlike the Original Time Stamp, the User Time Stamp can be redefined with the Time Stamp command in the Clip List menu (see "Time Stamping" on page 1861).

Time Stamps in the Workspace

Columns are provided in Workspace browsers for both the Original and User Time Stamps.

Time Stamps and Matches

Clips with identical User Time Stamps appear together in the Matches submenu in the Right-click menu when auditioning takes (see "Selecting Alternate Takes on a Track" on page 801).

Arranging Clips in Grid Mode

Grid mode provides several useful capabilities for moving and placing clips in track playlists. This mode is especially useful for lining up clips at precise intervals, as when working with a session that is bar- and beat-based. Grid boundaries, depending on the Main Time Scale, can be based on frames, bar and beat values, minutes or seconds, or a number of samples.

Grid mode also provides two operational modes, Absolute and Relative. These modes control how the Grid is applied (see "Absolute and Relative Grid Mode" on the next page).

To temporarily suspend Grid mode and switch to Slip mode while dragging a clip, hold the Command key (Mac) or Control key (Windows).

Setting Up the Grid

When the Draw Grid in Edit Window option is enabled in the Display Preferences page, vertical Grid lines appear in the Edit window.

Grid lines in the Edit window can also be enabled and disabled by clicking the Timebase ruler name after it becomes highlighted.

Defining the Grid Value

In addition to affecting the placement of clips, the Grid value also constrains Timeline and Edit selections, and determines how the **Clip > Quantize to Grid** command works.

To set the Grid value:

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the **View > Main Counter** menu, select the Time Scale for the Grid value.
   - To keep the Main Time Scale and use a different time format for the Grid, deselect **Follow Main Timebase** in the Grid value pop-up menu.
2. Do one of the following:
   - From the Grid value pop-up menu, select the time value for the Grid boundaries.



Grid value pop-up menu showing Bars|Beats

   - To define a Grid based on the session's Markers, selections, and clip boundaries, select **Clips/Markers** from the Grid value pop-up menu.

To increase the grid value incrementally:

- Press Shift+Equal (=).

To decrease the grid value incrementally:

- Press Shift+Minus (–).

Absolute and Relative Grid Mode

Grid mode can be applied in Absolute or Relative mode.

- In Absolute Grid mode, moving any clip snaps the clip start to Grid boundaries. If a clip's start point falls between beats, and the Grid is set to 1/4 notes, dragging the clip will *snap* its start time to the nearest 1/4 note (the current absolute Grid value). Similarly, when moving MIDI notes (and other MIDI data), the start of the first MIDI event in the selection snaps to the nearest Grid location. Likewise, when cutting or copying and pasting clips or MIDI data while in Grid mode, the start of the clip or the start of the first MIDI event snaps to the nearest Grid location.
- In Relative Grid mode, clips can be moved by Grid (or Nudge) *units*. If the start point of a clip is offset from the Grid, the clip maintains its relative grid offset at the new location. Similarly, when moving MIDI notes (and other MIDI data), the start of the first MIDI event in the selection maintains its relative offset from the nearest Grid location. Likewise, when cutting or copying and pasting clips or MIDI data while in Relative Grid mode, any offset from the Grid is preserved. Also when pasting and merging MIDI data (**Edit > Special Paste > Merge MIDI**) while in Relative Grid mode, the pasted and merged MIDI data maintains its relative grid offset.

To select Absolute or Relative Grid mode:

- Click the Grid mode selector and select **Absolute Grid** or **Relative Grid**.

To temporarily suspend Grid mode and switch to Slip mode while dragging a clip, hold the Command key (Mac) or Control key (Windows).

To place, move, or paste a clip (or MIDI data) while in Grid mode:

1. Configure the Grid value (see "Defining the Grid Value" on page 1228).
2. Enable Grid mode.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Drag a clip from the Clip List to an existing track.
   - With the Time Grabber tool, drag a clip already in a track to a new location.
   - Cut or Copy a clip (or selected MIDI data) and Paste it to a new location.

The clip's start point (or the beginning of the selected MIDI data) snaps to the closest Grid boundary. If the clip has a sync point defined, the sync point snaps to the Grid boundary.

To place, move, or paste a clip (or selected MIDI data) while in Relative Grid mode:

1. Configure the Grid value (see "Defining the Grid Value" on page 1228).
2. Enable Relative Grid mode.
3. Do one of the following:
   - With the Time Grabber tool, drag a clip that starts offset from the grid to a new location.
   - Cut or Copy a clip (or selected MIDI data) whose start time is offset from the Grid and Paste it to a new location.

The beginning of the moved or pasted clip (or selected MIDI data) maintains its relative offset from the nearest Grid location.

Replacing Audio Clips

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only)

Use the Replace Clip function to replace multiple instances of an audio clip in a playlist with another clip. This is useful in post production if you use a sound effect, room noise, or atmosphere clip many times in a session, and later decide to replace one or all of the original clips with a different clip.

This is also useful in music production if you want to replace a certain loop or sample (for example, a drum beat) with a new one. You can use this com positionally, if you know the tempo of a section or session, to create a scratch piece with "rough" clips of the correct length, and later replace them with "final" clips of the same length.

To replace clips by dragging and dropping:

1. Select a clip in a track's playlist that you want to replace. The selection can extend beyond the clip's end point, to include material from the replacement clip that is longer than the original clip.
2. Command-Shift-drag (Mac) or Control-Shift-drag (Windows) the replacement clip from the Clip List to the selected clip. The Replace Clip dialog opens.

   Command-Shift-drag (Mac) or Control-Shift-drag (Windows) any clip from the Clip List to any unselected clip on a track to open the Replace Clip dialog without first making a selection.
3. Configure the Replace Clip dialog (see "Replace Clip Dialog Options" on the next page).
4. Click OK.

Replacing Clips from the Clip List

The Replace Clips command is also available in the Clip List menu. To use this command, make sure there is a clip selected in a track and a different (replacement) clip selected in the Clip List.

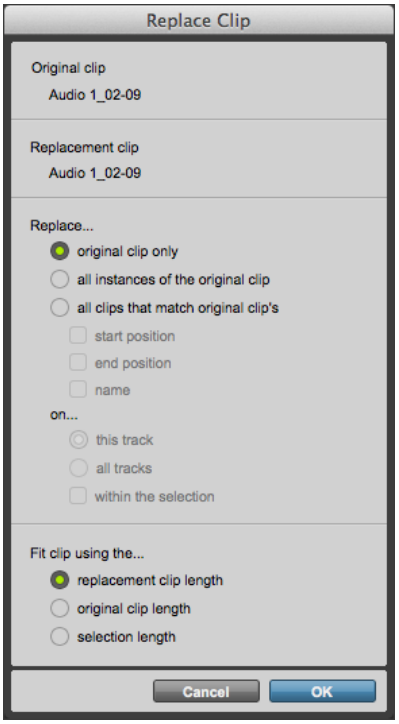
To replace clips using the Clip List menu:

1. Select a clip in a track to be replaced.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Right-click the replacement clip in the Clip List and choose **Replace Clips** from the pop-up menu.
   - Select the replacement clip in the Clip List and choose **Replace Clips** from the Clip List menu. (If the **Clip List Selection Follows Edit Selection** preference is enabled, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the selected clip to deselect it, then Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the replacement clip to select it, and then choose **Replace Clips** from the Clip List menu.)
3. Configure the Replace Clip dialog (see "Replace Clip Dialog Options" below).
4. Click OK.

Replace Clip and Multichannel Tracks

The Replace Clip command supports dragging multichannel clips from the Clip List to multichannel tracks, provided they are the same channel format. For example, you can replace a selected stereo clip in a stereo audio track with another stereo clip from the Clip List. However, you cannot replace it with two mono audio clips. Additionally, you cannot replace clips in multiple mono tracks with multichannel clips.

Replace Clip Dialog Options



Replace Clip dialog

The following options are available in the Replace Clip dialog:

Replace: Original Clip Only

Replaces only the selected clip with the replacement clip dragged from the Clip List.

Replace: All Instances of the Original Clip

Replaces all instances of the selected clip that fit the On criteria with the replacement clip from the Clip List.

- **`On This Track`**: replaces clips that fit the Match criteria and are on the same track as the original clip.
- **`On All Tracks`**: replaces clips that fit the Match criteria for all tracks in the session.
- **`On Within the Selection`**: replaces clips that fit the Match criteria within the current selection.

Replace: All Clips that Match Original Clip's

Replaces all clips that fit the Match criteria and the On criteria with the replacement clip from the Clip List.

- **`Start Position`**: replaces all clips that have the same original *start* time as the selected clip. This includes clips that may have been auto-created when trimming end points.
- **`End Position`**: replaces all clips that have the same original *end* time as the selected clip. This includes clips that may have been auto-created when trimming start points.
- **`Name`**: replaces all clips that come from the same audio file and have been renamed to the same name
- **`On This Track`**: replaces clips that fit the Match criteria and are on the same track as the original clip.
- **`On All Tracks`**: replaces clips that fit the Match criteria for all tracks in the session.
- **`On Within the Selection`**: replaces clips that fit the Match criteria within the current selection.

Clip matching uses all specified Match criteria. For example, if you select Start Position and End Position, all clips from the same original audio file as your selection with the same original start and end times will be replaced.

Fit Clip Using The: Original Clip Length

If the replacement clip is smaller than the original clip, the clip is placed in the playlist and any remaining audio from the original clip is removed.

If the replacement clip is larger than the selection, it is placed in the playlist and trimmed to fit within the length of the original clip.

Fit Clip Using The: Original Selection Length

When the playlist selection extends beyond the original clip, the replacement clip (if larger than the original clip) is trimmed to fit within the selection.

Fit Clip Using The: Replacement Clip Length

The replacement clip is placed in its entirety, regardless of the length of the original clip or selection.

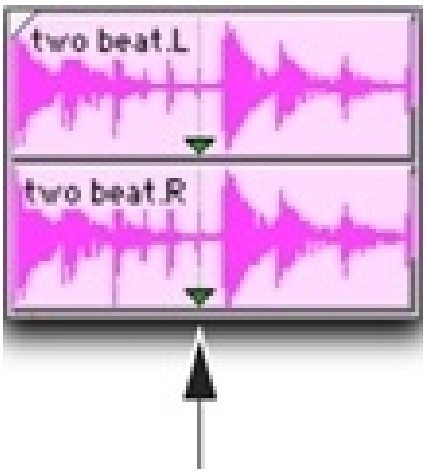
Sync Points

The placement of clips in Grid and Spot mode can be based on the definition of a clip sync point. Sync points can be added to audio, MIDI, and video clips and also to clip groups. Sync points are used when a specific point within a clip must be aligned to the Grid or to a particular Timecode or bar/beat location. This capability is especially important when placing music and sound effects for film and video work.

For example, suppose you had an audio clip for a door slam that included the creak of the door closing, the actual slam, and the reverb of the slam. Using a sync point for the slam sound in the clip lets you spot it to a specific time in the session.

To define a clip sync point:

1. Enable Slip mode (see "Edit Modes" on page 872).
2. Do one of the following:
   - With the Selector tool, click at the point in the clip where you want the sync point.
   - Press the Down Arrow key while playing back.
3. Choose **`Clip > Identify Sync Point`**. A small down arrow appears at the bottom of the clip, with a vertical, light gray line indicating the location of the sync point.



Sync Point

To change the location of a sync point:

- With the Selector tool, click at a point in a clip and choose **`Clip > Identify Sync Point`**. The new location is identified as the sync point for the clip.

You can also move the location of a sync point by dragging it (see "Dragging Sync Points" below).

Removing Sync Points

To remove a sync point, do one of the following:

- Select the entire clip and choose **`Clip >Remove Sync Point`**.
- Choose the Time Grabber tool, then Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the sync point to delete it.

Displaying Sync Points

Sync points in audio clips may displayed or hidden.

To disable the display of sync points in audio clips:

- Deselect **`View > Clip > Sync Point`**.

To enable the display of sync points in audio clips:

- Choose **`View > Clip > Sync Point`**.

Dragging Sync Points

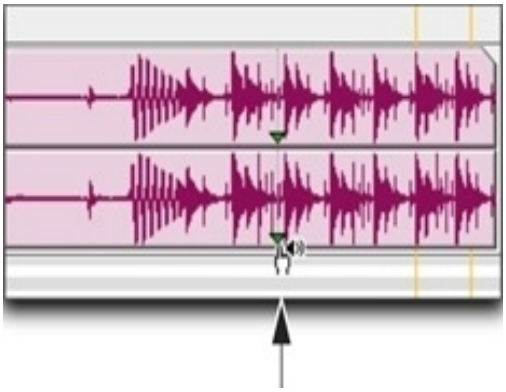
You can drag a sync point to another position in the audio clip.

To set the sync point by dragging:

1. If you want the sync point to snap to the current Grid value, enable Grid mode (see "Edit Modes" on page 872).
2. Select the Time Grabber tool.
3. Drag the sync point to a new location.

Scrubbing Sync Points

While viewing an audio waveform can be a good way to set a sync point, a waveform display may not always reveal the desired spot in the audio material. By scrubbing while moving the sync point over an audio waveform, you can listen for the exact location to place the sync point.



Scrubbing a Sync Point (cursor)

To scrub while dragging the sync point:

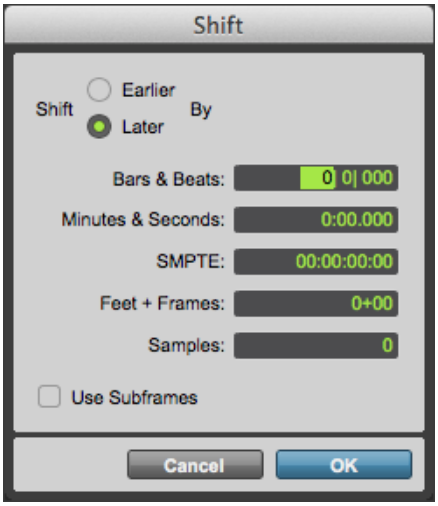
1. If you want the sync point to snap to the current Grid value when you finish scrubbing, set the Edit mode to Grid (see "Edit Modes" on page 872).
2. Select the Scrubber tool.
3. Drag the sync point to a new location. The sync point scrubs the audio as you move it.

Shift Command

Use the **Shift** command to move track material forward or back in time by a specified amount. The **Shift** command can operate on selections, clips, MIDI notes, MIDI controller data, and automation breakpoints.

To shift a selection or clip:

1. With the Selector or Time Grabber tool, select the track material you want to shift. The selected material can reside on multiple tracks.
2. Choose **Edit > Shift**. In the Shift dialog, select whether the data will be moved **Earlier** or **Later**.
3. Click in one of the Timebase fields to specify the amount by which the material will be shifted. Entering a value in one Timebase field automatically updates the others.



4. If you want to shift material with greater precision, select the **Use Subframes** option.
5. Click **OK**. The material is shifted earlier or later by the specified amount.

If a portion of a clip was selected, new clips are created from the selection and from any material outside of the selection.

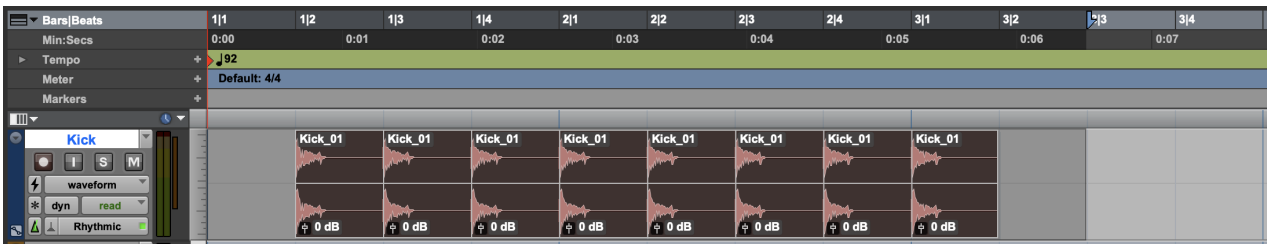
The **Shift** command works the same regardless of the Edit mode. For example, adjacent clips are overlapped in Shuffle mode, the Spot dialog does not appear when in Spot mode, and shifted material does not snap to the Grid when in Grid mode.

Space Clips

The **Space Clips** command sets the space between selected clips on the timeline by a specified amount in the selected timebase. This can be useful for arranging selected clips, adding space between songs when mastering, or even creating beat patterns among other possibilities.

To add time between clips and reposition them on the Timeline:

1. Select clips on one or more tracks in the Edit window.



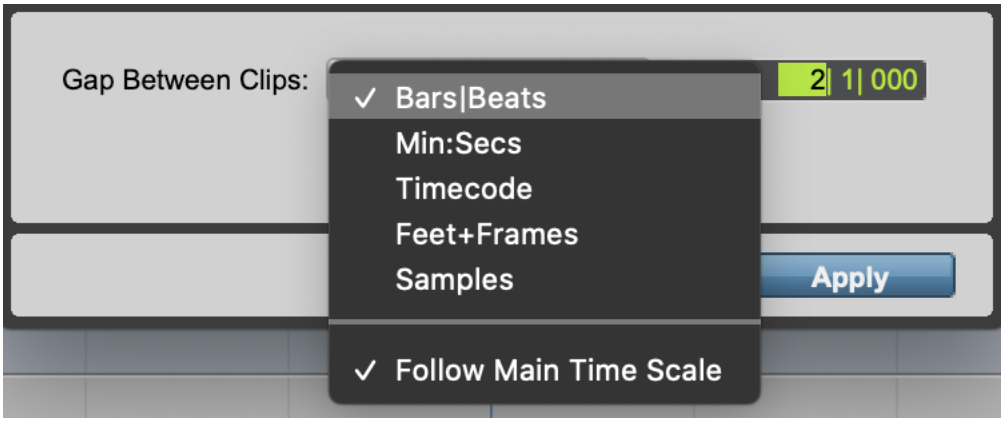
Selected clips to be re-spaced

2. Choose **Edit > Space Clips**.

   Press Option+Shift+H (Mac) or Alt+Shift+H (Windows) to open the Space Clips dialog.

3. In the Space Clips dialog, select the **Timebase**.

   Press Command+Up/Down Arrow keys (Mac) or Control+Up/Down Arrow keys (Windows) to cycle through the Time Scale options.



Space Clips dialog, selecting Timebase

4. If desired, select **`Follow Main Time Scale`** to have the Space Clips dialog open with the Main Time Scale of the session selected by default.
5. Enter a value for the amount of time to set the **`Gap Between Clips`**.

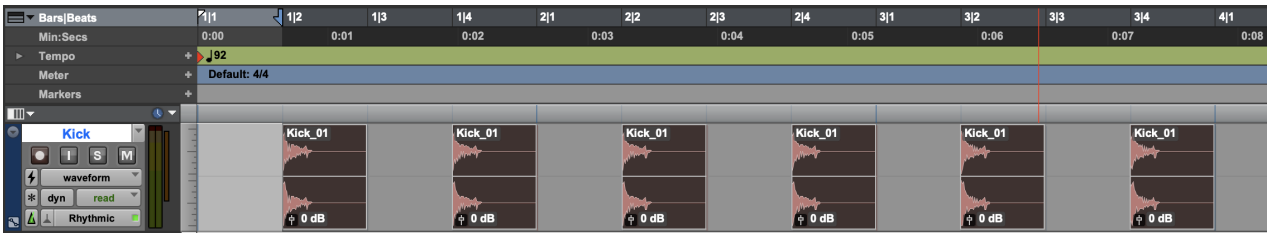
Press Left/Right Arrow keys to move the cursor to the previous or next time division (for example, press the Right Arrow key to move from minutes to seconds to milliseconds).



Space Clips dialog, entering amount

If there are any spaces between selected clips and you set the Gap Between Clips to 0 in any Timebase, all selected clips move so that they are abutted.

Selected clips re-spaced with the specified amount of time between them.



Selected clips re-spaced

Locking Clips

In many cases you may want to “lock” clips or clip groups to a specific time location to keep them from being moved or otherwise edited inadvertently. Pro Tools provides two different commands for locking clips: Edit locking and Time locking.

Edit Locking Clips

If you have a clip or group of clips that you want to protect from being inadvertently edited, you can Edit lock them. Clips that are Edit-locked cannot be edited (such as cutting, deleting, separating, trimming, or adjusting clip gain) or moved to a different time location. Copied edit-locked clips can be pasted to any other track or time location, but the copy will also be Edit-locked at the new time location.

⚠ **Edit locking takes precedence over Time locking. You can Edit lock a Time locked clip, but you cannot Time lock an Edit locked clip without unlocking it first.**

To Edit lock (or unlock) a clip:

1. With the Time Grabber, select the clip or clips to Edit lock (or unlock). The clips can reside on multiple tracks.
2. Choose **`Clip > Edit Lock/Unlock`**.

   ❑ *Press Command+L (Mac) or Control+L (Windows) to Edit lock or unlock the selected clip.*



Edit Lock icon

When Edit-locked, a small Edit Lock icon appears in the clip and it cannot be moved, deleted, or edited. If you attempt to perform edits on a locked clip, Pro Tools alerts you (see "Allowing Editing of Edit-Locked Clips" on the next page).

In Shuffle mode, Edit-locked clips, and all clips occurring after the locked clip, are not displaced when other neighboring clips are moved.

On tick-based Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, Edit-locked clips conform to tempo changes, but not other Elastic Audio processing (such as Quantize or manual warping) can be applied.

Time Locking Clips

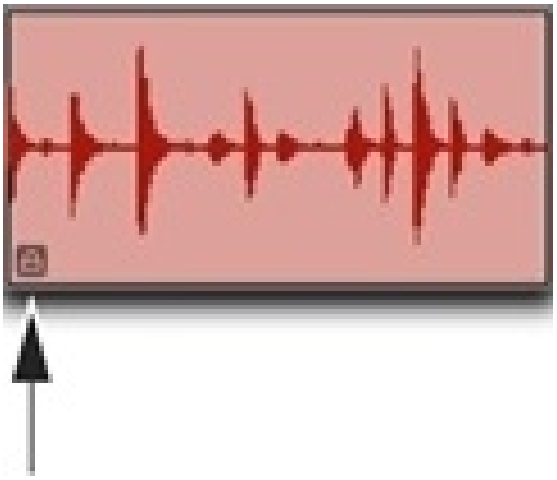
For clips that you want to lock to a particular location in a track (a beat, Timecode frame, or sample location), you can lock it in place so it cannot be moved accidentally. Time-locked clips cannot be moved. However, they can be edited in ways that do not move the clip to a different time location (such as separating, trimming, AudioSuite processing, or even moving the clip to another track). Time-locked clips can also be deleted. When separating a Time-locked clip, any new clips will also be locked to their time locations.

To Time lock (or unlock) a clip:

1. With the Time Grabber, select the clip or clips to Time lock (or unlock). The clips can reside on multiple tracks.
2. Choose **Clip > Time Lock/Unlock**.

   Press Option+Control+L (Mac) or Alt+Start+L (Windows) to Time lock or unlock the selected clip.

   When Time-locked, a small Time Lock icon appears in the clip and the clip cannot be moved, but it can be edited or even deleted.



Time Lock icon

In Shuffle mode, Time-locked clips, and all clips occurring after the locked clip, are not displaced when other neighboring clips are moved.

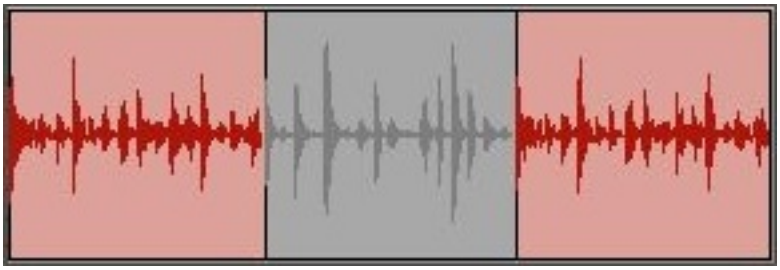
On tick-based Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, Time-locked clips conform to tempo changes, but not other Elastic Audio processing (such as Quantize or manual warping) can be applied.

Allowing Editing of Edit-Locked Clips

If you attempt to edit an Edit-locked clip, Pro Tools warns you and prompts you to **Cancel** or **Allow** the edit. If you allow an edit that keeps any part of the clip intact, the clip remains locked.

Muting/Unmuting Clips

Choosing the **Mute/Unmute Clip** command mutes playback of a selected clip. Choosing the command a second time unmutes the clip. Clips that are muted become dimmed to indicate their status.



Muted audio clip (middle)

To mute or unmute a clip or clips:

1. With the Time Grabber, select the clip or clips you want to mute or unmute. The clips can even reside on multiple tracks.
2. Choose **Edit > Mute/Unmute**. When muted, clips are dimmed.

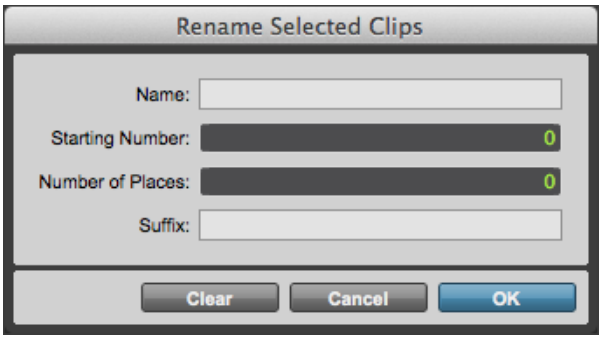
Stripping Silence from Clips

Strip Silence analyzes audio selections—across multiple tracks—and removes (or extracts) any areas of silence, dividing the selection into smaller clips and removing the silent areas.

You can use Strip Silence to strip (remove) silence from a clip, or instead, extract the audio and keep the silence. Getting rid of silent areas is useful when preparing to compact audio (see "Compacting an Audio File" on page 940). Strip Silence automatically separates the selection into separate clips, which is useful if you want to quantize audio to musical values, or locate sound effects to Timecode locations.

Auto-Naming for Strip Silence

The **Rename** button in the Strip Silence window opens the Rename Selected Clips dialog, which determines how clips are named when stripping silence. The dialog remembers your previous settings, which can be cleared by clicking the **Clear** button.



Rename Selected Clips dialog

Name

Specifies the base name for clips created with Strip Silence.

Number

Specifies the number at which sequential auto-numbering starts.

Zeros

Specifies the number of zeroes that occur before the appended auto numbers.

Suffix

Specifies text appended to the end of the name, after the auto numbering.

For example, if you set these naming options to:

- Name = SFX
- Auto Number Start = 23
- Leading Zeros = 1
- Suffix = .Reel1

The names generated for clips created by Strip Silence would be:

- SFX023.Reel1
- SFX024.Reel1
- SFX025.Reel1
- SFX026.Reel1

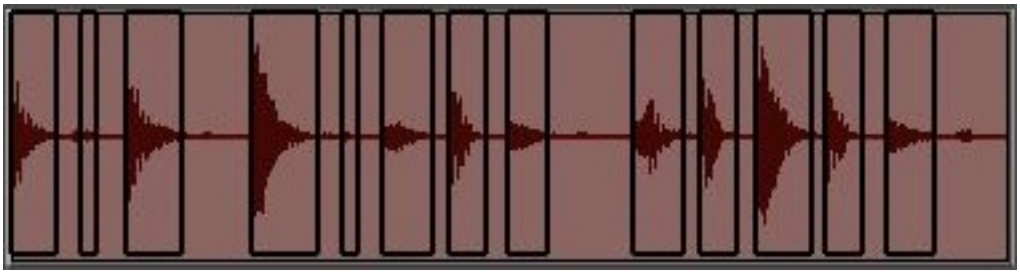
Using Strip Silence

To strip silence from an audio selection:

1. Select one or more audio clips.
2. Choose **`Edit > Strip Silence`**.

   Press Command+U (Mac) or Control+U (Windows) to open the Strip Silence window.

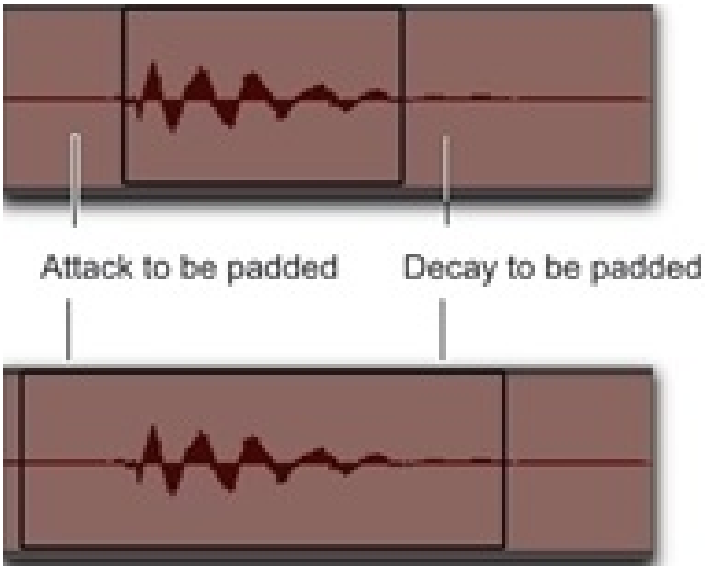
3. To set the naming scheme for clips created with Strip Silence, click **`Rename`** to open the Rename Selected Clips dialog. For details, see "Auto-Naming for Strip Silence" on the previous page.
4. In the Strip Silence window, adjust the settings for **`Strip Threshold`** and Minimum Strip Duration (**`Min Strip`**) until Strip Silence rectangles appear in the selection.



Strip Silence rectangles

For finer resolution on these controls, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while adjusting them.

5. To retain material before and after the new clips, adjust the settings for **`Clip Start Pad`** and **`Clip End Pad`**.



Strip Silence, padding clip start and end points

6. Once the Strip Silence rectangles encompass the audio that you want to keep, press the **`Strip`** button.

The material defined as silence is removed from the selection and new clips are created, which also appear in the Clip List.

Strip Silence is nondestructive and does not remove audio data from parent audio files. In addition to the **Undo** command, you can use the **Heal Separation** command to restore stripped material.

Strip Silence works with stereo and multichannel tracks, and keeps their audio clips phase-coherent.

To extract audio from an audio selection using Strip Silence:

1. Make an Edit selection.
2. Choose **Edit > Strip Silence**.
3. To set the naming scheme for clips created with Strip Silence, click **Rename** to open the Rename Selected Clips dialog (see "Auto-Naming for Strip Silence" on page 1239).
4. In the Strip Silence window, adjust the settings for **Strip Threshold** and Minimum Strip Duration (**Min Strip**) until the Strip Silence rectangles appear in the selection.
5. Click the **Extract** button.

All audio above the designated threshold is deleted and the "silent" portions of the track are left.

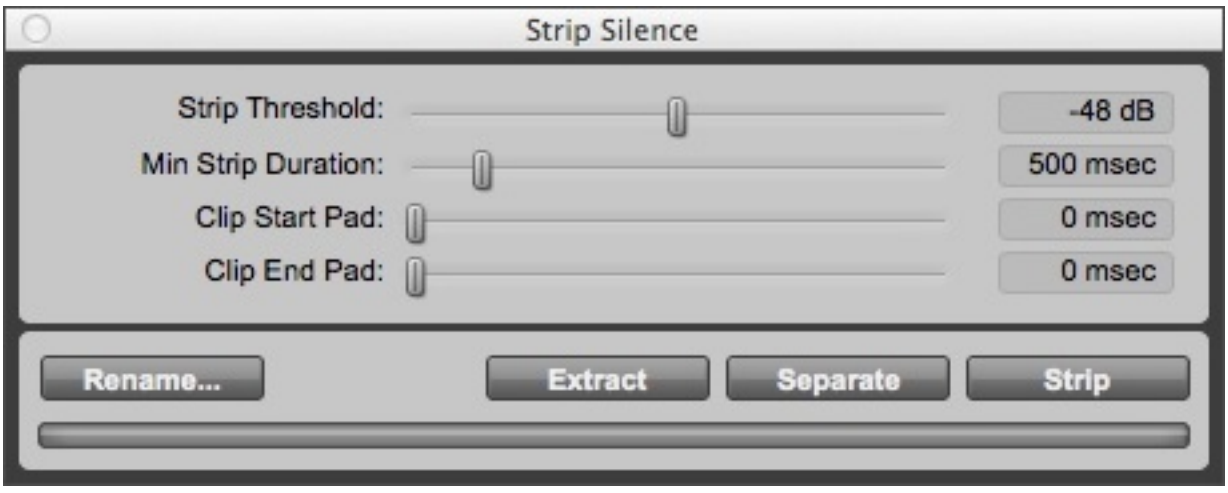
To separate clips using Strip Silence:

1. Make an Edit or Timeline selection.
2. Choose **Edit > Strip Silence**.
3. To set the naming scheme for clips created with Strip Silence, click **Rename** to open the Rename Selected Clips dialog (see "Auto-Naming for Strip Silence" on page 1239).
4. In the Strip Silence window, adjust the settings for **Strip Threshold** and Minimum Strip Duration (**Min Strip**) until the Strip Silence rectangles appear in the selection.
5. Click the **Separate** button.

New clips are created based on the boundaries detected by Strip Silence.

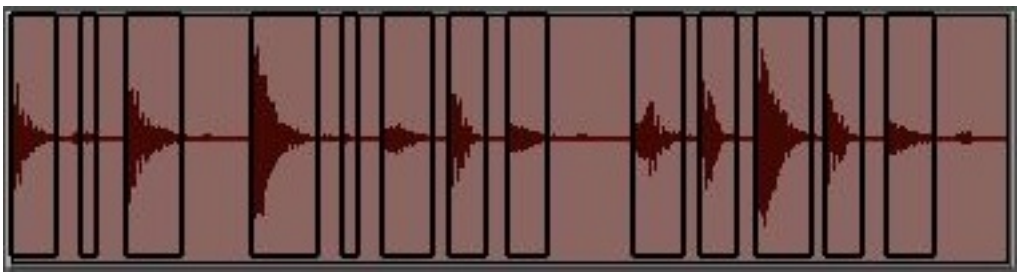
The Strip Silence Window

The Strip Silence window contains the following controls that let you set the parameters by which *silence* is defined when using Strip Silence.



Strip Silence window

Adjusting these controls causes rectangles to temporarily appear in the selection, indicating areas of silence that will be affected by the Strip, Extract, or Separate commands.



Strip Silence rectangles

Strip Threshold

Sets the amplitude threshold (from –96 dB to 0 dB) for Strip Silence. Audio falling below this threshold is considered silence and removed. Audio above the threshold is retained and defined as new clips.

Minimum Strip Duration

Sets the minimum duration (from 0 to 4,000 ms) that the material above the threshold must last to be considered silence. Use this control to avoid countless small clips that may occur within a selection.

Clip Start Pad

Specifies a time value to be added to the beginning of each new clip created with Strip Silence. This is useful for preserving musical material that falls below the threshold, such as the breath before a vocal phrase, or the finger slide before a guitar chord.

Clip End Pad

Specifies a time value to be appended to the end of each new clip created with Strip Silence, thereby preserving the nuances in the decay of the material.

Strip

Clears the detected silence, but leaves the clips containing audio on the track.

Extract

Clears the audio and leaves the silent portions of the track (in other words, an “inverse” strip silence feature that is ideal for generating room tone or ambience to use elsewhere).

Rename

Opens the Rename Selected Clips dialog (see "Auto-Naming for Strip Silence" on page 1239).

Separate

Separates clips based on the boundaries detected by Strip Silence.

Inserting Silence

The **`Insert Silence`** command is a simple and convenient way to insert silence on audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks. This command lets you make a selection on a track (or tracks) and insert precisely that amount of silence.

⚠ **The Insert Silence command also affects markers in any selected Conductor Rulers (such as the Tempo or Meter rulers).**

In Shuffle mode, all data on the track is shuffled later in the track by an amount equal to the selection.

In Grid mode, the Insert Silence command works just like the Clear command.

Shuffle Mode

When inserting silence on multiple tracks in Shuffle mode, the following conditions apply:

- If any track is displayed as audio or MIDI data, the selected duration of silence is inserted into the audio or MIDI data and all underlying automation data on all selected tracks. All subsequent clips are shuffled by the amount of silence inserted. On MIDI tracks, only notes that are selected from the beginning are affected, so if you have selected the tail of a note and you Insert Silence, the note will remain unchanged.
- If all selected tracks are displayed as automation data, the selected range is cleared of automation data only of the type visible on each track. Clips are *not* shuffled. Instead, a blank gap appears equal to the length of the selection.
- If all selected tracks are displayed as automation data, press the Control (Mac) or Start key (Windows) while choosing the Insert Silence command to inserts silence on all automation playlists for all selected tracks. Clips are *not* shuffled.

Slip Mode

When inserting silence on multiple tracks in Slip mode, the following conditions apply:

- If any track is displayed as audio or MIDI data, the selected range is cleared of audio or MIDI data and all underlying automation data on all selected tracks.
- If all selected tracks are displayed as automation data, silence is inserted only into the automation type visible on each track.
- If all selected tracks are displayed as automation data, press the Control (Mac) or Start key (Windows) while choosing the Insert Silence command to insert silence on all automation playlists for all selected tracks.

To insert silence into a track:

1. Make a selection in a track or tracks. The length of the selection determines the duration of the silence inserted.
2. Choose **Edit > Insert Silence**.

In Shuffle mode, Pro Tools inserts the selected amount of silence. In the process, it splits the clips at the beginning of the insertion point, and moves the new clips later in the track by an amount equal to the length of the selection.

Duplicating Clips

The **Duplicate** command copies a selection and places it immediately after the end of the selection. Though this is similar to using **Copy** and **Paste**, **Duplicate** is more convenient and faster, particularly when working with data on multiple tracks.

To make more than one copy of a selection, use the **Repeat** command (see "Repeating Clips" on the next page). You can also loop clips (see "Clip Looping" on page 1246).

As with the **Copy** and **Paste** commands, certain rules apply when duplicating material on multiple tracks (see "Editing Across Multiple Tracks" on page 871).

To duplicate a selection or clip:

1. If working with material that is bar- and beat-based, such as loops, set the Main Time Scale to Bars|Beats.
2. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.

3. Make an Edit selection.
4. Choose **Edit > Duplicate**. The material is placed immediately after the selection's end point.

Press Command+D (Mac) or Control+D (Windows) to Duplicate any selected clips.

In Shuffle mode, the duplicated data is placed directly after the end of the selection. Clips occurring after it slide to accommodate the duplicated material. In Slip mode, the duplicated material overlaps any adjacent data.

When using **Duplicate** (or **Repeat**) with MIDI notes that were selected with the Time Grabber tool, material is always duplicated one measure later, and is merged with existing track material (instead of replacing it).

Duplicating Audio and Keeping It On The Beat

When using **Duplicate** (or **Repeat**) for audio that must fall cleanly on the beat (such as rhythmic loops), it is important that you select the audio material with the Selector tool, or by typing in the start and end points in the Event Edit area. If you select an audio clip with the Time Grabber tool (or by double-clicking it with the Selector tool), the material may drift by several ticks because of sample-rounding.

If, on the other hand, you want to **Duplicate** (or **Repeat**) audio that is not bar- and beat-based, set the Time Scale to any format except Bars|Beats. This ensures that the duplicated audio material has the correct number of samples and is accurately placed.

Duplicate and Extend Selection

When working on music using audio loops and MIDI sequences, you may want to duplicate the track content of an Edit selection and include both the original and the duplicate in a new selection. This can be especially useful when working with repeating material in Grid mode with the Main Timebase ruler set to Bars|Beats. For example, you might have a 2 bar audio loop or MIDI sequence that you want to extend to 4 and then 8 bars, and then copy and paste to another location.

To duplicate and extend the Edit selection:

1. Make an Edit selection that include audio or MIDI on a track.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Selection > Duplicate and Extend**.
   - Press Command+Option+Control+Shift+D (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+Shift+D (Windows).

Repeating Clips

The **Repeat** command is similar to **Duplicate**, but lets you specify the number of times the selected material is duplicated.

As with the **Copy** and **Paste** commands, certain rules apply when repeating material on multiple tracks (see "Editing Across Multiple Tracks" on page 871).

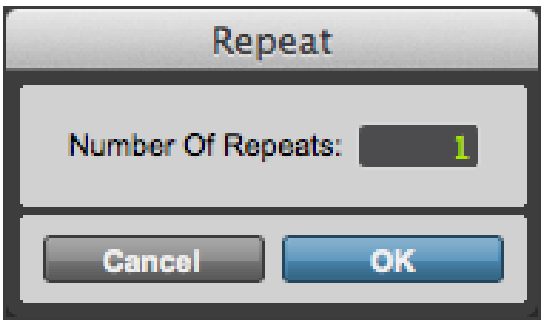
You can repeatedly paste copied data until it completely fills a selection (see "Special Cut, Copy, Paste, and Clear Commands" on page 870).

You can also loop clips (see "Clip Looping" on page 1246).

To repeat a selection or clip:

1. If working with material that is bar- and beat-based, such as loops, set the Main Time Scale to Bars|Beats.
2. If you want to constrain the selection to the current Grid value, set the Edit mode to Grid.

3. Make an Edit selection.
4. Choose **Edit > Repeat**. In the Repeat dialog, enter the number of times you want the material to repeat, then click **OK**.



Repeat dialog

Press Option+R (Mac) or Alt+R (Windows) to open the Repeat dialog for any selected clips.

The material is placed immediately after the selection's end point, and duplicated the specified number of times.

In Shuffle mode, the repeated data is placed directly after the end of the selection. Clips occurring after it slide to accommodate the repeated material. In Slip mode, the repeated material overlaps any subsequent data.

48 Clip Loops and Groups

Pro Tools lets you loop clips and group clips (called a *clip group*).

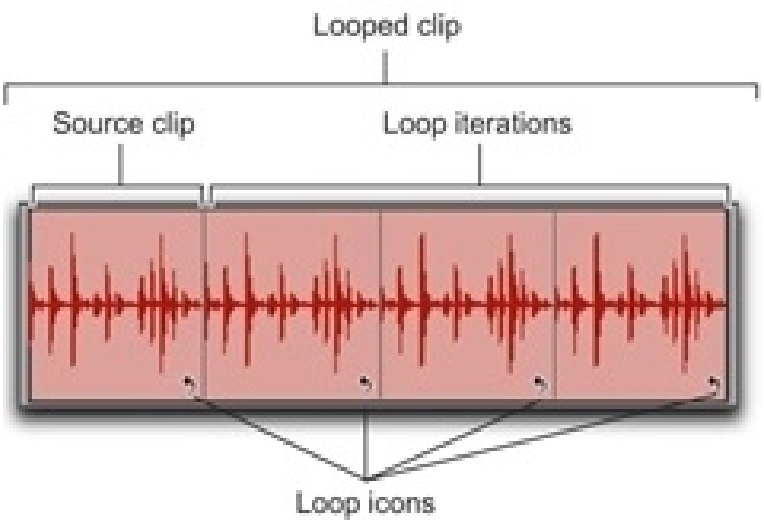
Clip Looping

Pro Tools lets you loop audio clips, MIDI clips, and clip groups. Looping clips is an easy and powerful way to repeat a single clip on a track or clips across tracks for composing and arranging. Looping clips provides more flexibility than the **Repeat** and **Duplicate** commands.

Looped clips repeat the source clip as many times as specified in the Clip Looping dialog, or enough to fill the specified Loop Length (such as 30 seconds or until the next clip on the track). The *source clip* is the original clip selected for looping. *Loop iterations* are all looped clips following the source clip. In cases where a specific number of repetitions has not been indicated, the last loop iteration is truncated to fill to the end of the selection or specified Loop Length.

Once looped, the looped clip can be edited much like a clip group. For example, selecting and moving a looped clip selects and moves the source clip and all its loop iterations together.

Looped clips (all iterations) display a Loop icon in the lower, right corner or each loop iteration.



Looped clip

Looping a clip does not loop any automation associated with the source clip. Use the Copy Special and Paste Special Repeat To Fill Selection commands to copy automation for the source loop to all loop iterations (see "Automation and Looped Clips" on page 1250).

Creating Looped Clips

You can create looped clips using the Loop command or using the Loop Trim tool.

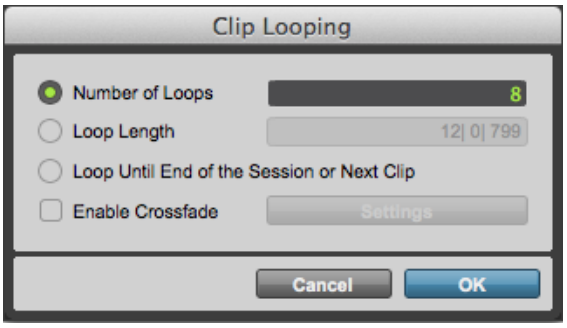
For information on using the Loop Trim tool, see "Loop Trim Tool" on page 891.

To loop a clip:

1. Select an audio or MIDI clip, or clip group. You can also select clips across tracks for looping.
2. Do one of the following:

   Choose **Clip > Loop**.

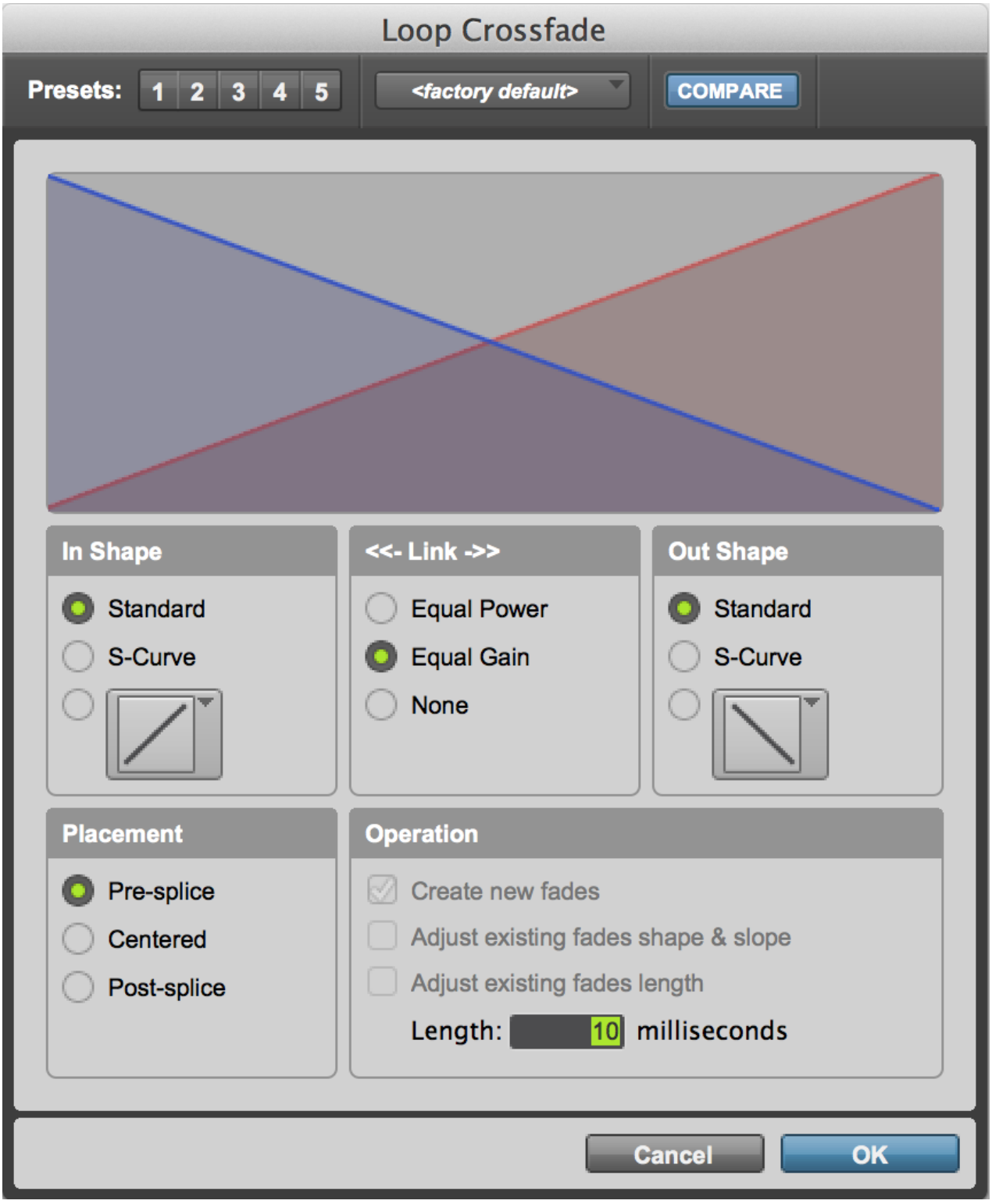
   Right-click the clip you want to loop and select **Loop**.



Clip Looping dialog

Press Command+Option+L (Mac) or Control+Alt+L (Windows) to open the Clip Looping dialog.

3. In the Clip Looping dialog, do one of the following:
   - Select the **Number of Loops** option and enter the number of times to loop the clip.
   - Select the **Loop Length** option and enter the duration according to the main timebase. If the duration is not an exact multiple of the source loop's duration, the last loop iteration will be truncated.
   - Select the **Loop Until End of Session or Next Clip** option. The looped clip will be repeated until the end of the session, or until the next clip on the track. If necessary, the last loop iteration will be truncated to fit.
4. To add a crossfade at the loop point, select the **Enable Crossfade** option. To edit the loop crossfade, do the following:
   - Click the **Settings** button.
   - Configure the Loop Crossfades.
   - Click **OK**.



Loop Crossfade dialog

For information on working with crossfades, see "Fades and Crossfades" on page 943.

5. In the Clip Looping dialog, click OK.

Unlooping Clips

To unloop a looped clip:

1. Select the looped clip.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Clip > Unloop**.
   - Right-click the clip you want to unloop and select **Unloop**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click **Remove** to unloop and remove all loop iterations except the first full loop iteration (source clip).
   - Click **Flatten** to unloop and create individual clips from each loop iteration.

Clip Ungroup functions on loops the same as using the Unloop command and choosing Flatten.

To unloop and ungroup a selection down to its individual clips:

1. Select a looped clip that contains one or more clip groups.
2. Choose **Clip > Ungroup All**.

Unlooping and Flattening Looped Clips with Separate Clips Menu Commands

The **Separate Clips** commands (**At Selection**, **On Grid**, and **At Transients**) automatically unloop and flatten looped clips before separating.

Editing Looped Clips

Looped clips can be edited as a group (all loop iterations together) or as individual clips (each loop iteration). For example, selecting a looped clip with the Grabber tool selects the entire loop (the source clip and all its loop iterations), but clicking the Loop icon of one of the loop iterations selects only that one iteration.

Moving a looped clip moves the source clip and all its loop iterations together as a group. Loop iterations cannot be moved independently of their source clip. If you move or paste another shorter clip over a looped clip the loop is continued after the new clip. The parts of a separated looped clip can be adjusted independently.

Manually warping any part of a looped clip in Warp view separates only that iteration from the looped clip.

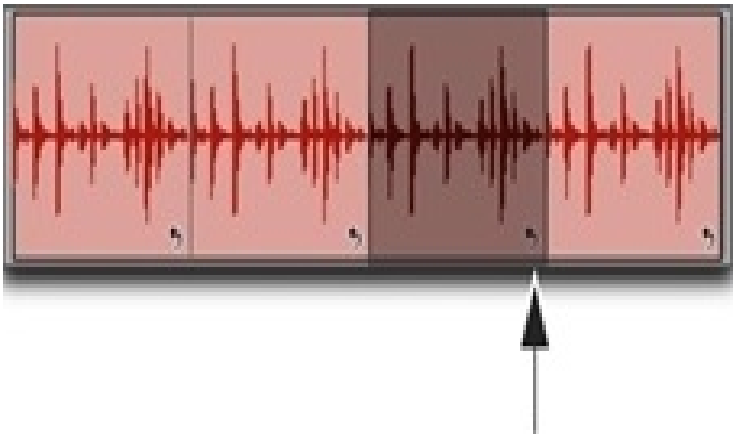
To select a looped clip as a group (all loop iterations), do one of the following:

- With the Grabber tool or Smart Tool, single-click the looped clip.
- With the Selector tool, double-click the looped clip.

The source clip and all its loop iterations are selected.

To select an individual source clip or loop iteration, do one of the following:

- With the Grabber tool or Smart Tool, single-click the Loop icon of the source clip or loop iteration.
- With the Selector tool, single click the Loop icon and drag to the left until the clip is selected.



Loop icon

Tabbing to Transients and Clip Boundaries

With Tab to Transients enabled you can tab both to transients and clip boundaries in a looped clip. Normal Tab (Tab to Transients disabled) tabs to the start and end boundaries of the entire looped clip. For more information, see "Tabbing to Transients" on page 915.

Trimming Looped Clips

Trimming looped clips can be done using the Trim tool, the Loop Trim tool, or one of the Trim Clip commands. The Loop Trim tool trims the entire looped clip. The Trim tool trims only the individual loop iteration while increasing or decreasing the number of loop iterations to fill the total length of the looped clip.

For information on trimming looped clips using the Loop Trim tool, see "Loop Trim Tool" on page 891.

If the source clip is extended to the left by using the Trim tool to change the total length of the looped clip, the source clip is moved earlier in the Timeline and loop iterations fill in up to the point where the last original loop iteration ended. If the trim to the left is part of the source clip's length, the source clip is not moved and a partial loop iteration is created to the left of the source clip. This is a powerful feature that lets you make quick changes to your arrangement by using partial loops as upbeats, or by extending looped sound effects or ambiance earlier in a film score.

To trim a looped clip to the selection:

1. Use the Selector tool to make an Edit selection including some or all of the looped clip.
2. Choose **Edit > Trim Clip** and one of the **Trim Clip** commands (**To Selection**, **To Fill Selection**, **Start to Fill Selection**, or **End to Fill Selection**).

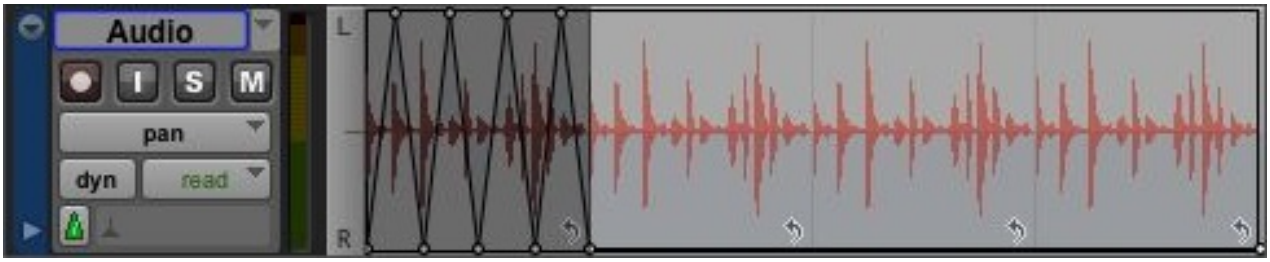
Automation and Looped Clips

Looping an audio clip does not loop any automation associated with the source clip. This lets you apply automation across an entire looped clip. For example, you may want to have a long volume fade across part or all of a looped clip that is independent of any one single loop iteration.

You can also repeat automation on each loop iteration. For looped audio clips, use the **Copy Special** and **Paste Special Repeat to Fill Selection** commands to copy and paste any or all automation data from the source clip to some or all of its loop iterations.

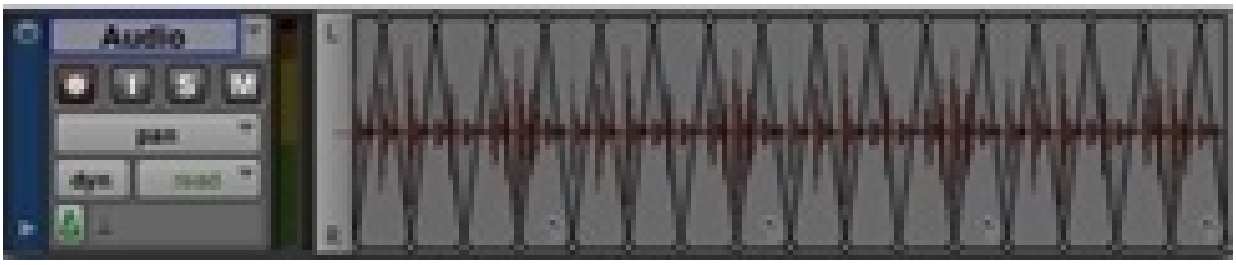
To copy and paste automation from the source clip to loop iterations:

1. Select the source clip.
2. Choose **Edit > Copy Special** and one of the **Copy Special** commands (**All Automation**, **Pan Automation**, or **Plugin Automation**), depending on what automation you want to copy.



Selected Pan automation for Special Copy

3. Select the entire looped clip.
4. Choose **Edit > Paste Special > Repeat to Fill Selection**.



Pan automation Special Paste to Fill Selection

Clip Groups

A *clip group* is a collection of any combination of audio and MIDI clips that looks and acts like a single clip. Clip groups are essentially containers holding one or more clips. Clip groups can be created on single or multiple adjacent audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks. Clip groups let you "nest" multiple clips into "macro" clips for groove and tempo manipulation, editing, and arranging.

Clip groups can be placed on tracks alongside standard clips, and edited using many of the same editing techniques as regular clips. Certain edits to a clip group will apply to all clips contained by the clip group, such as **Cut** or **Delete**. Other edits only apply to the boundaries of the clip group and do not affect the underlining clips, such as **Trim**.

Each clip group is saved with the session as a Clip Group file (.rgrp). Clip group files can be exported from and imported into different Pro Tools sessions.

Clip groups are especially useful for:

- Grouping tick-based audio clips that have been separated into many small clips, such as with individual hits of a drum pattern. Many such small clips can easily be created with Beat Detective or the **Separate Clip At Transients** command, or imported as REX or ACID files.
- Grouping parts and sections of your session to facilitate composition and arranging. For example, grouping the clips of a brass section during the chorus to copy it to the next chorus.

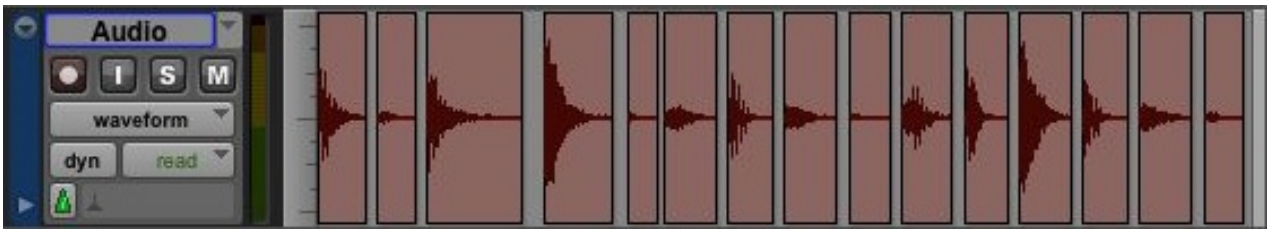
Clip groups are completely independent of and unique from Mix and Edit Groups.

Clip groups are not supported on audio tracks set to Playlists view. Changing an audio track to Playlist View automatically ungroups any clip groups on the track.

Creating Clip Groups

To create a clip group:

1. Select one or more clips on one or more tracks. (For more information on multitrack clip groups, see "Multitrack Clip Groups" on page 1254).



Selecting clips to be grouped on a single audio track

   The size of the selection determines the size of the clip group. The selection can start and end on any clip boundary, empty space, or even in the middle of a clip. Selections starting or ending within a clip will separate the clip at the selection boundary when you create a clip group. Clip groups created from object-based selections include all selected and unselected clips between the first and last selected clip on the track.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Clip > Group`**.
   - Right-click the Edit selection and choose **`Group`**.
   - Press Command+Option+G (Mac) or Control+Alt+G (Windows) to group selected clips.

The Group and Ungroup Clip menu commands apply to any Edit selection regardless of the current Track View.

The clip group appears as one clip with the clip groups icon in the lower left corner. Clip groups also appear in the Clip List.



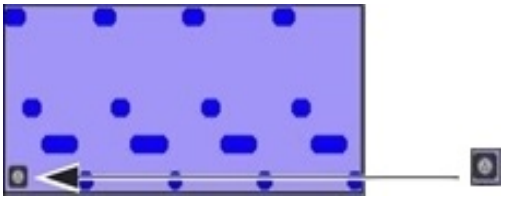
Clip Group icons on an audio track and in the Clip List

Clip Group Timebase Format

Clip groups are created in the same timebase format (samples or ticks) as the tracks on which they are created. Multitrack clip groups can include both sample-based and tick-based tracks.



Audio Clip Group icon on an audio track



MIDI Clip Group icon on a MIDI track

Clip groups can be created from empty selections. This can be useful when working in Shuffle mode to preserve the gaps between clips.

Ungrouping Clips

To ungroup a clip group:

1. Select a clip group.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Clip > Ungroup**.
   - Right-click the Edit selection and choose **Ungroup**.
   - Press Command+Option+U (Mac) or Control+Alt+U (Windows) to ungroup selected clip groups.

The clip group disappears, revealing all underlying clips and any nested clip groups. When there are multiple nested clip groups, the **Ungroup** command will ungroup the front-most top-layer clip group only, preserving any underlying clip groups.

To ungroup a clip group (and include all of its nested clip groups):

1. Select a clip group.
2. Choose **Clip > Ungroup All**.

Regrouping Clips

The **Regroup** menu command undoes the last **Ungroup** command and regroups all the individual clips as a clip group. This lets you ungroup a grouped clip, edit its underlying clips, and regroup it to continue working on higher-level composition and arranging.

To regroup a clip group:

1. Select any clip from the ungrouped clip group.
2. Choose **Clip > Regroup**.

   Press Command+Option+R (Mac) or Control+Alt+R (Windows) to regroup selected clips that were formally part of a clip group.

   If you used the **Ungroup All** command, the **Regroup** command recreates all previous nested clip groups.
3. If you regrouped an ungrouped clip group that was used more than once in the session, do one of the following when the **Change All** dialog opens.
   - Choose **Modify** to apply your changes to all other instances of the same clip group.
   - Choose **Copy** to create a copy and apply your changes only to the copied clip group.

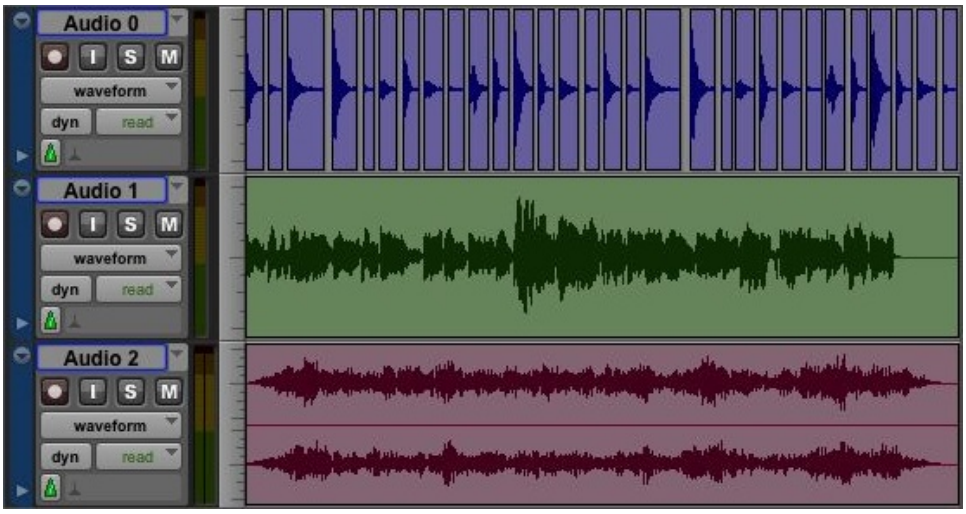
Multitrack Clip Groups

Multitrack clip groups (clip groups created across multiple tracks) are useful for grouping parts (such as multi-miked drum tracks), and for composing and arranging. Multitrack clip groups can be created across any combination of audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks, and can include either or both tick-based or sample-based tracks.

Multitrack clip groups work much like single-track clip groups. Multitrack clip groups appear as a single object across adjacent tracks.

To create a multitrack clip group:

1. Select clips across multiple adjacent tracks.

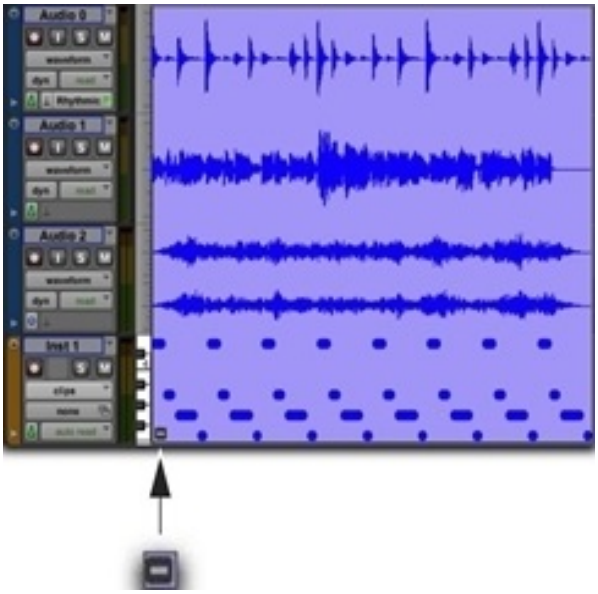


Selecting clips to be grouped across multiple tracks

2. Choose **`Clip > Group`**.



Clip Group icon



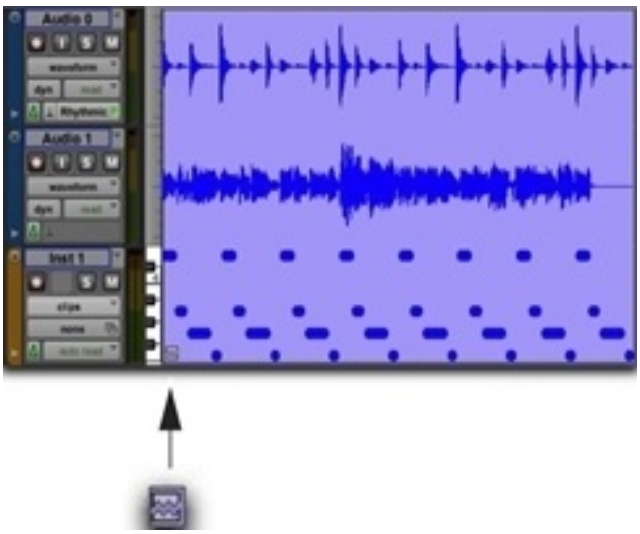
Mixed Clip Group icon (for a multitrack clip group of sample- and tick-based audio, and tick-based MIDI)

Multitrack clip groups create nested clip groups of multiple clips by track before grouping them across tracks.

The Regroup command supports multitrack clip groups.

Separated Multitrack Clip Groups

You can insert, move, hide, or delete tracks in multitrack clip groups, but it may break the clip group. A separated clip group displays a break in the Clip Group icon. Separated clip groups will continue to function as a single clip group, but the separated icon indicates that the clip group displayed is somehow incomplete or separated across nonadjacent tracks.



Separated Clip Group icon

A clip group is separated when you do any of the following:

- Insert a track within a multitrack clip group.
- Move a track that is part of a multitrack clip group so that it is no longer adjacent with the other tracks of the clip group.
- Hide a track that is part of a multitrack clip group.
- Delete a track that is part of a multitrack clip group.
- Change the tempo of a mixed sample-based and tick-based clip group.
- Record into a clip group.
- Change playlists on a track that is part of a multitrack clip group.
- Change to Playlists view.
- Apply manual warping in Warp view.

There may be situations where you want separated clip groups. For example, if you use the same accompaniment on verses one and two of a song, you can group the parts of verse one and copy them as a clip group for verse two, but still have a continuous vocal track in the middle of those clip groups.

If you want to delete a track and keep the clip group intact, first ungroup the clip group, then delete track, and then Regroup the clip group. The clip group will be recreated intact, but without the deleted track.

Clip Groups on Tick-Based Tracks

When changing tempos, clip groups on tick-based tracks adjust their length by adjusting the position of all enclosed clips accordingly. This can be useful for arranging rhythmic material and for playing back clip groups imported from REX and ACID files.



A clip group on a tick-based audio track at 120 BPM and at 160 BPM

Changing Clip Group Timebase

The timebase format of a clip group can be changed by:

- Changing the track's timebase.
- Dragging the clip group to a track with a different timebase.

Changing the timebase creates a copy of the original clip group. Both clip groups (the original and the copy) appear in the Clip List, but they have different timebases.

Converting Samples to Ticks

When dragging a clip group from a sample-based track to a tick-based track, the length of the clip group does not change. This is because clip groups are converted from samples to ticks after they are moved into tick-based tracks. The length of the clip group only changes with subsequent tempo changes. If appropriate, change the local tempo on the tick-based track to match the tempo of the sample-based clip group before moving a sample-based clip group to a tick-based track.

Converting Ticks to Samples

When dragging a clip group from a tick-based track to a sample-based track, the length of the clip group does not change unless it is moved to another time location with a different tempo. This is because clip groups are converted from ticks to samples after they are moved into the sample-based tracks.

Multitrack Clip Groups with Sample- and Tick-Based Tracks

Multitrack clip groups can include both sample-based and tick-based tracks. However, changing the tempo separates the clip group between sample-based tracks and tick-based tracks.



A multitrack clip group separated across sample-based and tick-based tracks after changing tempo

Editing Clip Groups

Clip groups are edited in much the same way as regular clips: They can be named, moved, cut, copied, pasted, trimmed, muted, locked, and so on. However, there are a few significant differences between editing regular clips and clip groups.

Editing MIDI Clip Groups

If a MIDI clip within a clip group is modified in any way, a new clip copy is created and placed over the clip group. For example, if you record, draw in a new note, edit MIDI controller data, or quantize a Timeline selection, a new clip is created over the clip group.

Editing Audio Clip Groups

Certain audio editing commands create new clips over clip groups. To use these commands and maintain the clip group, ungroup the clip group, perform the edit, and then regroup the clip group.

The following edit commands create new clips over clip groups:

- AudioSuite processing of a grouped clip results in a new clip over the clip group.
- Consolidating a selection of a grouped clip creates a new audio file and clip over the clip group.
- Recording into a clip group creates a new audio file and clip over the clip group.
- Pencil tool waveform redraw results in a new clip over the clip group.

Tabbing to Transients and Clip Boundaries

With Tab to Transients enabled, the Tab key moves the Location Cursor to transients and clip boundaries within a clip group.

With Tab to Transients disabled, the Tab key moves the Location Cursor to clip group boundaries only (and the sync point, if present).

For more information, see "Tabbing to Transients" on page 915.

Trimming Clip Groups

Trimming clip groups with the Standard Trim tool works the same way as trimming regular clips, regardless of whether you are trimming a single-track clip group or a multitrack clip group.

Trimming a clip group does not trim the underlying clips, but rather trims the clip group boundaries. All underlying clips retain their original length and location. This is true for all underlying audio and MIDI clips, and nested clip groups. If you trim the clip group shorter, underlying clips may not be heard on playback because they are outside the clip boundaries of the trimmed clip group.

When trimming clip groups with the TC/E Trim tool, it applies only to audio *or* MIDI clips, depending on which clip type in the group you trim, and creates a new clip over the clip group.

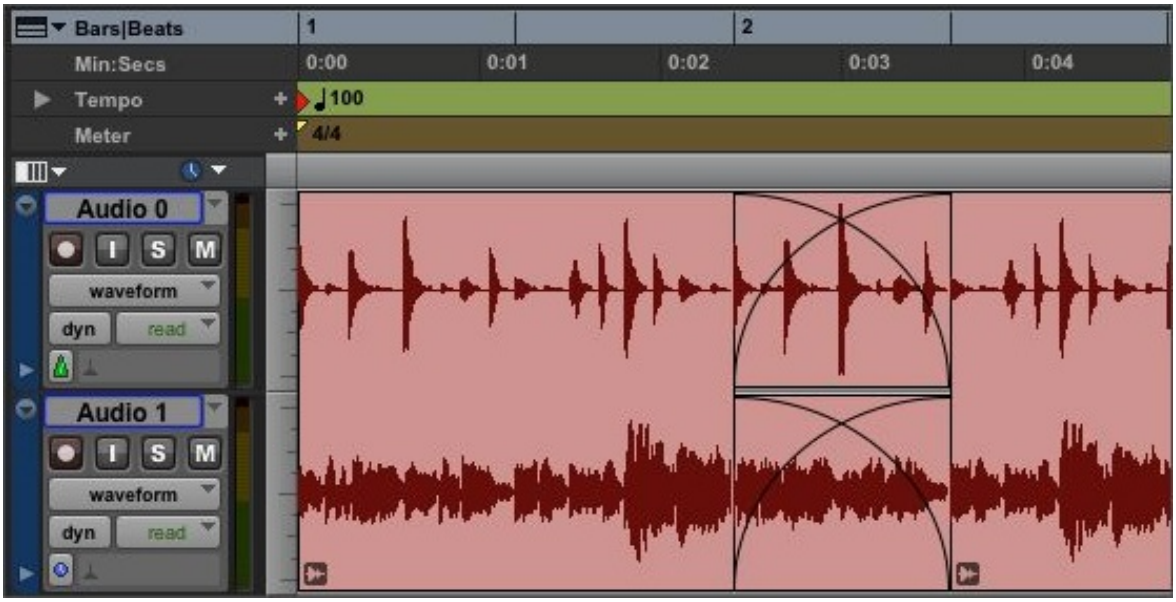
If you ungroup clips after trimming a clip group in (shorter), audio clips falling outside of the bounds of the current clip group are trimmed to fit the clip group boundary or removed.

Recording

When recording audio or MIDI, new clips are created over (in front) of clip groups instead of being included in the clip group. To record into a clip group, first ungroup the clip group, then record, and then regroup the clip group. The clip group will be recreated intact with the newly recorded material.

Fades and Crossfades on Clip Groups

Clip groups can have fades and crossfades just like regular clips. Fades only apply to audio clips. In addition to crossfading between clip groups, you can also crossfade between clip groups and regular audio clips.



Two adjacent multitrack clip groups with crossfades on the audio tracks, but not on the MIDI track

Ungrouping a clip group removes any clip group level fades or crossfades. Fades and crossfades are restored by the Regroup command.

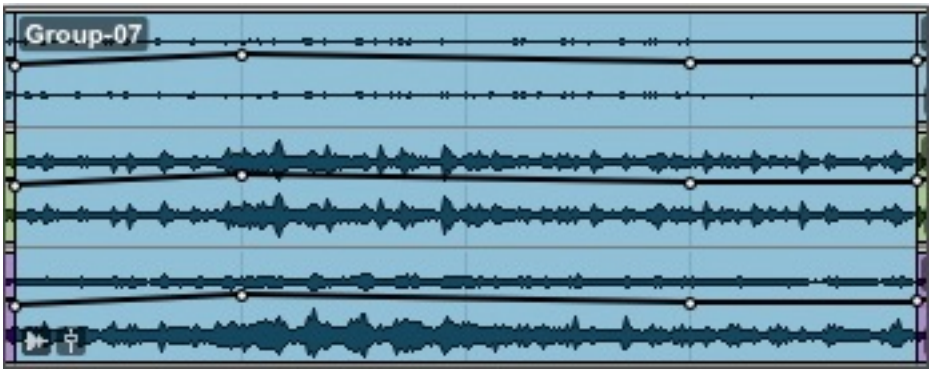
Clip groups that contain clips with fades are not allowed on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks.

When changing tempo with clip groups on tick-based tracks, you may need to Ungroup, redo or create new fades, and then Regroup in order to maintain the fades.

For information on working with fades and crossfades in Pro Tools, see "Fades and Crossfades" on page 943.

Clip Groups and Clip Gain

Clip gain settings for individual clips are preserved in clip groups. Additionally, you can adjust the clip gain settings for clip groups. Clip gain editing on clip groups behaves just like individual clip gain editing (see "Clip Gain" on page 1274).



Clip group with clip gain settings shown

To adjust the clip gain settings for individual clips within a clip group, the clips must first be ungrouped, edited, and then regrouped.

Clip gain settings are preserved when clip groups are exported. Clip groups can then be imported into other sessions with the same clip gain settings.

Importing and Exporting Clip Group Files

Pro Tools can export and import clip groups as clip group files (.cgrp) to do any of the following:

- Separate clip group metadata from audio files to avoid unnecessary file copy operations when exporting audio clip groups composed from multiple source files
- Export MIDI data as part of a clip group
- Create multitrack loops

Clip groups created in Pro Tools 10 and later (.cgrp) cannot be imported into earlier versions of Pro Tools, but region groups (.rgp) created in earlier versions of Pro Tools can be imported into Pro Tools 10 and later.

Clip group files store the following metadata:

- References to all audio files within the clip group
- Clip names and relative location in tracks
- Embedded fades and crossfades
- Clip gain settings for the clip groups as well as for individual clips within the group
- Clip group names and format (single or multitrack)
- All MIDI data present in the clip group (such as notes, controllers, Sysex, and so on)
- Track names
- Elastic Audio Warp markers and TCE factor
- Clip timebase (samples or ticks)
- Sync points
- Loops
- Tempo map

Clip group files do not store the following:

- Automation
- Plugins
- Track routing
- Meter map
- Clip List information

For more information, see "Importing and Exporting Clip Group Files" on page 715.

Part VIII: Processing

Learn how you can process audio and MIDI to refine your material.

- "AudioSuite Processing" on the next page
- "Clip Gain and Clip Effects" on page 1274
- "Elastic Audio" on page 1335
- "Melodyne Editing and Audio to MIDI" on page 1367
- "Integrated ARA Plugins" on page 1374
- "Committing, Freezing, and Bouncing Tracks" on page 1386
- "MIDI Operations" on page 1400
- "HEAT" on page 1438

48 AudioSuite Processing

AudioSuite plugins are used to render processing and modify audio files on disk. AudioSuite processing applies non-real-time, or *rendered*, audio processing to selected audio clips in your Pro Tools session. Depending on how you configure an AudioSuite plugin, it will either alter the original source audio file or create an entirely new audio source file.

For information on individual AudioSuite plugins included with Pro Tools, see the Audio Plugins Guide.

AudioSuite Menu

AudioSuite plugins are accessed through the AudioSuite menu. Plugins can be organized in the AudioSuite menu in Pro Tools by Flat List (with plugins in alphabetical order), Category, Manufacturer, or Category *and* Manufacturer.

For more information, see "Plugin Menu Organization" on page 1519.

To open the AudioSuite Plugin window:

1. Make an Edit selection that includes the audio clip, or clips, you want to process.
2. From the AudioSuite menu, select the plugin you want.

AudioSuite Window

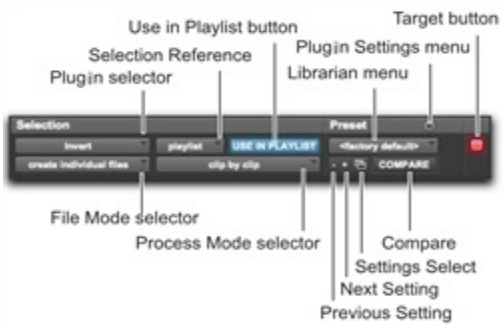
When you select a plugin from the AudioSuite menu, the AudioSuite window appears. From this floating window you can access and edit the controls for the selected AudioSuite plugin.



AudioSuite window, EQ III 1-Band shown

AudioSuite Window Header

The AudioSuite Window header provides controls for changing AudioSuite plugins and setting presets, and how AudioSuite processing will be applied.



AudioSuite window header

AudioSuite Plugin Selector

From this menu you can select any AudioSuite plugin installed in your Plugins folder. Plugins are listed in the Plugin selector pop-up menu according to the Organize Plugins Menu By setting in the Display Preferences page.



Plugin menu (flat list, non-category view)

Selection Reference

This menu aims the selected process at either clips selected in an audio track or playlist, or at clips selected in the Clip List.

When you select a clip on-screen (in either a track/playlist or the Clip List) Pro Tools normally selects both occurrences of the clip. Since you may not want to process both, this menu provides a convenient means of limiting the AudioSuite process to clips selected in one or the other.



Selection Reference pop-up menu (Invert plugin shown)

Playlist

Applies AudioSuite processing to clips on the Timeline (playlists on audio tracks). Processed clips also appear in the Clip List.

Clip List

Applies AudioSuite processing only to selected clips in the Clip List. Processing is not be applied to clips on the Timeline (playlists on audio tracks).

If the Use In Playlist option is enabled in addition to Clip List being selected in the Selection Reference pop-up menu, the processing will be applied to the selected clip in both the playlist and the Clip List.

AudioSuite Processing Clip Groups in the Clip List

AudioSuite plugins process Clip Groups in the Clip List with certain limitations. With audio files, AudioSuite processes are applied to all copies of a unique audio file in your session when the **Clip List** option and the **Use in Playlist** option are selected. However, when a Clip Group is selected for Audio Suite processing in the Clip List, Pro Tools does not recognize the Clip Group as audio. This is because a Clip Group is not treated as audio until it is actually used in a track. To apply AudioSuite processing to a Clip Group in the Clip List, first ungroup the Clip Group, and then regroup it after processing.

To apply an AudioSuite process to all copies of a Clip Group in a session at once, do the following:

1. Select the Clip Group to be processed.
2. From the Clip menu, select **Ungroup All**. All elements of the group will remain selected.
3. Perform the AudioSuite processing.
4. From the Clip menu, select **Regroup**.

When prompted, choose **Modify** to apply the AudioSuite process to all copies of the Clip Group in the session, or **Copy** to apply it only to the selected Clip Group.

Use In Playlist Button

This button determines whether AudioSuite processing will replace all instances of the selected clips everywhere in the session, or only the occurrences of the clips that are currently selected.

Use In Playlist Off

When **Use in Playlist** is disabled, a new, processed version of the selected clip will be added to the Clip List. No original clips will be replaced or overwritten anywhere in the session.

Use In Playlist On, Reference = Clip List

When Use in Playlist is enabled and the Selection Reference pop-up menu is set to Clip List, all copies of the selected clip will be replaced everywhere in the session.

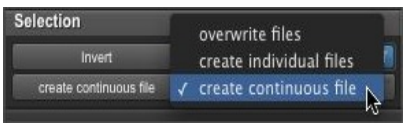
Use In Playlist On, Reference = Playlist

When **Use in Playlist** is enabled and the Selection Reference is set to Playlist, only clips selected in tracks in the Edit window will be replaced. If the session includes other copies of the clip used in other playlists, those copies of the original, unprocessed clip will not be replaced.

If the Selection Reference pop-up menu is set to Clip List, the Use in Playlist button is automatically be disabled to ensure that you do not accidentally replace every occurrence of the clip in a session.

File Mode Selector

This menu lets you select whether or not the AudioSuite plugin will process the selected audio destructively or nondestructively, and how the original files will be modified.



File Mode pop-up menu (Invert plugin shown)

There are three File mode options:

Overwrite Files

Processes the selected clips destructively, overwriting the original audio. Not all AudioSuite plugins can be used destructively.

Create Individual Files

Processes the selected clips nondestructively, creating a new audio file for each clip. The new audio files are added to the session, leaving the original source audio files in the Clip List unchanged. (Whether the processed audio is added to the current playlist or only to the Clip List, is determined by the Selection Reference setting.)

Create Continuous File

Processes the selected clips nondestructively and creates a new audio file consisting of the selected clips consolidated into a single, unbroken clip. This mode is particularly useful if you are assembling a composite track from multiple takes. This mode is not available when the Selection Reference is set to **`Clip List`**.

The Create Continuous File option is not available with some time domain plugins. To achieve a similar result, use the Duplicate plugin to consolidate clips processed with these plugins.

Process Mode Selector

If you have made a selection that includes multiple clips, this pop-up menu lets you specify whether AudioSuite processing is performed on a clip-by-clip, or entire-selection basis.



Process Mode selector (Invert plugin shown)

Clip by Clip

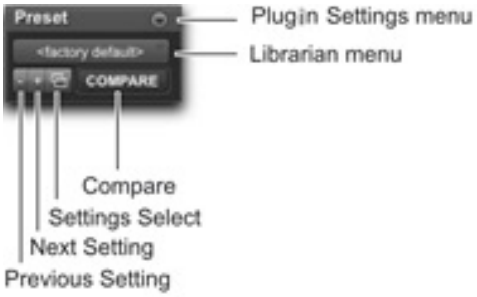
Analyzes each clip in a selection individually, rather than over the entire multi-clip selection as a whole.

Entire Selection

Uses the entire selection for analysis. All clips will be analyzed and processed relative to the entire selection.

AudioSuite Plugin Preset Controls

Most AudioSuite plugins let you load and save presets (plugin settings files). However, some AudioSuite plugins, such as DC Offset Removal or Duplicate, do not provide Preset controls since they have no parameter controls.



AudioSuite Preset controls

For more information about plugin presets, see "Plugin Presets" on page 1532.

Plugin Selector

Lets you select any AudioSuite plugin installed on your system.

Plugin Settings Menu

Lets you copy, paste, save, and import plugin presets.

Plugin Librarian Menu

Recalls settings files (presets) saved in the plugin's root settings folder or in the current session's Settings folder.

Next (+) and Previous (–) Setting Buttons

Lets you select the next or previous plugin setting from the Plugin Librarian menu.

You will lose the current plugin settings if they are not saved before you use the Next and Previous Setting buttons. Always save your plugins settings as presets using the Plugin Settings menu.

Plugins Settings Select Button

Accesses the Plugin Settings dialog, which lists the presets for the current plugin. From this list, you can select a new preset, or audition a series of presets.

Compare

Toggles between the original saved plugin preset and any changes you have made to it so you can compare them.

Target Button

Pro Tools lets you view multiple AudioSuite plugin windows at the same time. The AudioSuite plugin window provides a Target button. Untargeted plugin windows remain open, while the targeted plugin window can switch between different AudioSuite plugins and receive keyboard input.

To target or untarget AudioSuite plugin windows:

- Click the Target button in the AudioSuite plugin window so that it is lit (targeted) or unlit (untargeted).

Other AudioSuite Controls

In addition to the standard AudioSuite controls that are common to all AudioSuite plugins, there are a number of special-purpose controls found only on certain plugins:

Key Input Selector

Selects a track/bus to be used to trigger processing. In order to use this feature, the key input source audio must occur at the same time as the target audio. Side-chain input is monophonic. "Side-Chain Input" on page 1530

Side-chain inputs for plugins have no effect on AudioSuite processes when the Selection Reference is set to Clip List.

Channel Mode Button

The Channel Mode button lets you process contiguous channels within a selected clip as though they were mono or stereo tracks (and in some cases greater-than-stereo tracks), regardless of the type of tracks they occupy.

Mono Mode

Processes each contiguous channel within a selected clip as a separate mono track. For example, a clip comprised of six mono tracks would be processed as six mono tracks.

Stereo Mode

Processes each contiguous pair of channels within a selected clip as a stereo track. When applied to an odd number of channels, the plugin processes the last odd, unpaired channel as mono, using the left channel settings of the stereo plugin. If you want the last track to be processed in stereo, you must select an additional track to pair it with—an empty one if necessary.

For example, a clip comprised of two mono tracks would be processed as a stereo track, with the first mono track processed as the left channel and the second mono track processed as the right channel.

Multi Mode

Processes each set of three or more contiguous channels within a selected clip as a multichannel greater-than-stereo track, with the number of selected channels determining the type of track. For example, five contiguously-selected channels would be processed as a 5.0 track, while seven contiguously-selected channels will be processed as a 7.1 track.

Multi mode is available only for certain plugins, such as Dynamics III.

AudioSuite Window Footer

The AudioSuite Window footer provides controls for previewing and applying AudioSuite processing.



AudioSuite window footer

Preview Button

The **Preview** button in the AudioSuite window lets you audition the effect of a plugin before you process the audio. By adjusting the plugin controls while you listen to this audio preview, you can fine-tune the effect. Not all AudioSuite plugins support previewing.

The Preview function routes audio to the specific outputs selected for the **Audition Path** setting in the Outputs page of the I/O Setup dialog. Make sure you have configured this option correctly for your system or you may not be able to hear previewed audio.

For more information on using the I/O Setup dialog to configure your system's audio outputs, see "Audition Path" on page 69.

Before you preview AudioSuite processing, be aware that:

- The performance of the Preview function depends on the speed of your CPU. Faster computers preview AudioSuite effects better than slower computers.
- Regardless of how many tracks and clips are currently selected, the Preview button will audition only the first selected stereo track or the first selected pair of mono tracks.
- In Mono mode, only the first channel of any selected multichannel clip will be previewed.

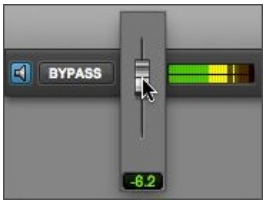
- If you are processing using Clip-by-Clip mode, the Preview function will preview only the first clip within a multi-clip selection. To hear all selected clips, temporarily select **Create Continuous File** from the File Mode menu before previewing.

Preview Volume Control

The Preview Volume control in the AudioSuite window lets you adjust the volume for previewing AudioSuite processing.

To adjust the volume for previewing AudioSuite processing:

1. Click the Preview Volume control.
2. In the resulting pop-up fader, drag up to increase the preview volume or drag down to decrease the preview volume.



Adjust the volume for previewing AudioSuite processing

Preview Volume Level Meters

The Preview Volume Level meters display the levels for previewed AudioSuite processing. This can help you watch for clipping in the processed signal.

Bypass Button

When **Bypass** is enabled in the AudioSuite window, the selected audio is auditioned without AudioSuite processing. The **Bypass** button applies only to previewing. It does not affect actual AudioSuite processing.

Reverse Button

Pro Tools provides a **Reverse** button in the AudioSuite plugin window footer for Reverb and Delay plugins. This lets you easily render reverse delay and reverb effects with a single click. Clicking the **Reverse** button provides three processes in one:

- First, it reverses the Edit selection.
- Then, it processes the reversed Edit selection with the current plugin settings.
- Finally, it reverses the processed Edit selection.

Whole File Button

When the **Whole File** button is enabled in the AudioSuite window, the selected audio is rendered as a new clip whose duration exactly matches the selection. However, the clip can be trimmed out as far as the whole file. This option is not available in **Create Continuous File** mode or when rendering with **Entire Selection** mode combined with **Create Individual Files** mode.

Handle Length

The Handle Length field lets you set the Handle Length for rendering from 0.00 to 60.00 seconds. This means that you trim clips out past the rendered selection after processing up to the set Handle Length. For more information, see "AudioSuite Handles" on page 1271.

Render Button

Clicking the **Render** button in the AudioSuite window begins AudioSuite processing of the selected audio. Processing can occur during playback (though it may take slightly longer). Processed files are auto-named with the clip or audio file's name and include an acronym for the chosen AudioSuite process.

New files are written to the hard disk specified for that track in the Disk Allocation dialog, or to the same drive as the original file if the clip is not currently on a track. "Automatic File Naming of AudioSuite-Processed Audio" below

Multichannel Processing

Most AudioSuite plugins can process up to 48 channels of audio simultaneously.

When processing multiple clips of different formats (mono and multichannel surround, for example), all channels will be processed according to the channel format of the AudioSuite plugin. Mono AudioSuite plugins can process stereo clips and stereo AudioSuite plugins can process mono clips.

Undoing AudioSuite Processing

If you have processed an audio selection nondestructively, the **Undo** and **Redo** commands let you undo the selected AudioSuite process. You can undo or redo an AudioSuite process during audio playback.

Undo is not available when a plugin is configured for destructive editing since the process has already overwritten the source audio file.

Automatic File Naming of AudioSuite-Processed Audio

When new audio files are created as a result of AudioSuite processing, Pro Tools will auto-name these files according to the type of plugin used. The name of the clip determines the prefix, while the type of AudioSuite plugin determines the suffix.

Automatic file naming follows these rules:

- New clips are named beginning with the clip name, followed by an abbreviation of the current AudioSuite process, followed by standard Pro Tools file and clip numbering.
- If a plugin's File Mode is set to **Overwrite Files**, the original clip's name will not be changed.
- If a plugin's File Mode is set to **Create Individual Files**, the resulting clips will have an abbreviated version of the plugin name appended to them.

Using AudioSuite Plugins

AudioSuite plugins can be applied to whole clips, partial clips, or selections that are made up of whole and partial clips across one or more tracks.

When audio selected in the Edit window includes partial clips, the clips will automatically be split into two or more clips when they are processed. Processing is applied only to the selection, leaving other clips unchanged.

Processing a locked clip will cause the clip to become unlocked, and processing a muted clip will cause it to become unmuted.

Only audio files on locally connected hard drives can be processed with AudioSuite plugins. You cannot process audio files on remote hard drives over a network (unless it is an Avid Unity network).

To process audio with an AudioSuite plugin:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Make an Edit selection of the audio you want to process.
   - Select audio clips in the Clip List that you want to process.
2. Choose an AudioSuite plugin from the AudioSuite menu.
3. Adjust the plugin controls for the effect you want. These settings determine how the file is processed and what effect the processing has on the original clips.
   - To process the selected clip only in the track in which it appears, select **Playlist** for the Selection Reference. Alternatively, if you want to process the selected clip in the Clip List only, select **Clip List**.
   - If you want to process and update every occurrence of the selected clip throughout your session, enable the **Use In Playlist** button (and also select **Clip List** as the Selection Reference). Alternatively, if you do not want to update every occurrence of the selected clip, deselect the **Use In Playlist** button.
   - To configure the plugin for destructive processing, select **Overwrite Files** for the File Mode. This will overwrite and permanently modify the original source audio files.
   - Alternatively, to configure the plugin for nondestructive processing, select **Create Individual Files** for the File Mode. This will create new audio files that have been processed with the AudioSuite plugin settings and leave the original source audio files untouched.
   - If you have selected multiple clips for processing and want to create a new file that connects and consolidates all of these clips together, select **Create Continuous File** for the File Mode.
4. Click the **Preview** button to audition the AudioSuite processing of the selected material.
5. Make any further adjustments to the plugin controls if necessary.
6. When you are satisfied with the results, click the **Render** button.

The selected audio is processed according to the specified settings. Pro Tools appends text to the clip name indicating the AudioSuite process that has been applied. Any new audio files appear in the Clip List.

Selecting Tracks for AudioSuite Processing

Because AudioSuite processes are performed on the specific clips that you select, it is important that you select only those clips, or parts of clips, you actually want to process.

When processing a single audio channel with an AudioSuite plugin, make sure that the plugin is set to Mono mode, if available.

Selecting Tracks for Delay or Reverb Processing

Because some AudioSuite effects such as delay and reverb add additional material to the end of the selected audio, it is important that you make a selection that is *longer* than the original source material so that the plugin can write it to the audio file. If you select only the original material, without leaving additional space at the end, any reverb decay or delay that occurs after the end of the clip will be cut off.

To compensate for this, place the clip in a track and select the audio *plus* an amount of blank space at the end of the clip equal to the amount of delay or reverb decay that you have added in the plugin. The plugin will then have space at the end of the clip in which to write the final delay or decay. If you select more time than needed, you can trim it after applying AudioSuite processing.

AudioSuite Handles

Pro Tools lets you render clips with AudioSuite plugins and include "handles" beyond the current edit selection from 0.00 to 60.00 seconds, or even the whole file referenced by the clip. This means that you trim clips out past the rendered selection after processing.

To render a clip with AudioSuite handles:

1. Make the audio selection that you want to render.
2. Select the AudioSuite plugin you want to use from the AudioSuite menu.
3. Adjust the AudioSuite plugin options and settings.
4. Do one of the following:
   - In the Handle Length field, enter a value for the Handle Length (0.00 to 60.00 seconds). The default Handle Length can be set in the Preferences dialog.



Handle Length field in the AudioSuite plugin window

   - Select the **Whole File** option to render the whole file. Note that only the current edit selection will appear in the Timeline.



Whole File option selected in the AudioSuite plugin window

5. Click **Render**.

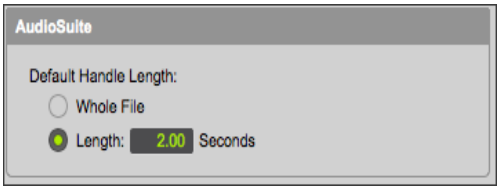
   The selection is rendered as a new clip whose duration exactly matches the selection. However, the clip can be trimmed out as far as the specified Handle Length.

AudioSuite Default Handle Length Preferences

Pro Tools provides two preferences for setting the default AudioSuite Handle Length.

To set the default AudioSuite Handle Length:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Processing** tab.
3. In the AudioSuite section, select one of the following options:
   - Whole File—by default, renders the whole file referenced by the selection.
   - Length—by default, renders the selection plus any additional available audio up to the specified Handle Length (0.00 to 60.00 seconds)



Default Handle Length in the AudioSuite section of the Processing Preferences

4. Click OK.

Using AudioSuite Plugins in Stereo

Some AudioSuite plugins can be used in either mono or stereo. If you plan to use them in stereo, consider the following:

- To process a mono track and obtain a stereo result, select the track or clip plus an empty track or clip. Then set the plugin to Stereo mode and select the Sum Inputs button (if present) to center the dry signal. When you process the audio, the result will be two tracks or clips that represent the right and left channels of the processed audio. You should then pan these tracks hard right and hard left in your mix.
- If you set a plugin to Stereo mode, then select an odd number of Pro Tools tracks for processing (as opposed to an even number), the plugin will process the selected tracks in pairs, in stereo. However, the last odd, unpaired track will be processed as mono, using the left channel settings of the stereo plugin. If you want the last track to be processed in stereo, you must select an additional track to pair it with—an empty one if necessary.

For more information, see "Channel Mode Button" on page 1266.

Conditions for AudioSuite Rendering with Handles, Fades, Clip Gain, and Metadata

Most AudioSuite plugins provide several options for rendering clips, but only certain settings let you apply AudioSuite handles. For example, AudioSuite Handles are not available with Entire Selection mode (since the point of this option is to render the whole selection only). Fades and crossfades, and clip gain settings are preserved or rendered depending on the File mode and AudioSuite Rendering mode settings. Additionally, clip metadata can be preserved for rendered clips under certain conditions. The following conditions apply.

Handle creation, and Fade, Clip Gain, and Metadata preservation criteria for AudioSuite rendering

File Mode	Rendering Mode	Handle Behavior	Whole File	Fades	Clip Gain	Metadata
Overwrite File	Clip By Clip	No Handles	Unavailable	Preserved	Preserved	Preserved
Overwrite File	Entire Selection	No Handles	Unavailable	Rendered	Rendered	Preserved
Individual Files	Clip By Clip	Handles created	Available	Preserved	Preserved	Preserved
Individual Files	Entire Selection	No Handles	Unavailable	Rendered	Rendered	Preserved
Continuous File	Clip By Clip	Handles created at the beginning	Unavailable	Rendered	Rendered	Not preserved

File Mode	Rendering Mode	Handle Behavior	Whole File	Fades	Clip Gain	Metadata
		and end of the new continuous file				
Continuous File	Entire Selection	Handles created at the beginning and end of the new continuous file	Unavailable	Rendered	Rendered	Not preserved

⚠ **Some plugins that rely on the Edit selection for processing (including plugins that require an analysis pass) may not work as expected when using handles. In this case, it is recommended that the handle length be set to zero.**

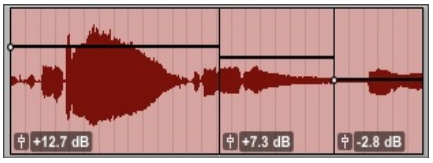
⚠ **Destructive recording and Destructive Punch recording are not supported with AudioSuite rendered clips with handles.**

49 Clip Gain and Clip Effects

Clip Gain

Pro Tools provides clip-based gain for quick and easy gain matching of clips (formerly called regions in Pro Tools) from different sources in a Pro Tools session. Clip-based gain is applied pre-mixer (pre-fader and before any plugin processing). This is especially useful when working with field recordings and sample libraries in post-production sessions.

By adjusting the clip gain for individual clips on a single track, you can match their relative gain levels so that you do not have to execute complex track volume automation to compensate.



Multiple clips with different (static) Clip Gain settings

The clip gain settings stay with the clip, which means you can move, and copy and paste clips with their corresponding clip gain settings. Clip gain settings can be imported from AAF and OMF sequences exported from Media Composer. Likewise, clip gain settings can be exported from Pro Tools with AAF sequences (but not OMF) to be imported into Media Composer.

All clips have a clip gain of 0 dB by default. Clip gain can be adjusted from –144 dB to +36.0 dB.

Static and Dynamic Clip Gain

You can have either *static* or *dynamic* clip gain settings for a single clip. Static clip gain simply means that there is a single gain setting for the entire clip (see "Simple Clip Gain Adjustment" on page 1276). Dynamic clip gain means that you can have gain settings for a clip that vary over time (see "Graphically Editing Clip Gain" on page 1277).

Clip Gain Info View

When Clip Gain Info view is enabled (**`View > Clip > Clip Gain Info`**), the Clip Gain Fader icon is shown at the beginning of the clip, in the lower left corner. If the clip uses static clip gain, the static Clip Gain value (–144 dB to +36.0 dB) for the clip is displayed to the right of the Clip Gain Fader icon. For a clip that has dynamic clip gain (using breakpoint gain settings), the Clip Gain value is not shown.

Clip Gain commands (including the Clip Gain Fader and its Right-click commands) only apply to the single, whole clip with which it is associated.



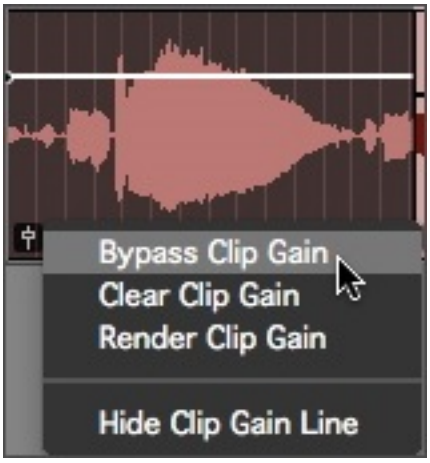
Clip Gain icon

To show or hide Clip Gain icon, do one of the following:

- Select or deselect **View > Clip > Clip Gain Info**.
- Press Control+Shift+"=" (Equal) (Mac) or Start+Shift+"=" (Equal) (Windows).

Clip Gain Fader Icon Right-Click Menu

You can Right-click the Clip Gain Fader icon for any individual clip to access relevant clip gain commands for that clip.



Clip Gain Icon Right-click menu

The Clip Gain Fader icon Right-click menu operates independently of the Clip Gain sub-menu that is accessible when Right-clicking on an Edit selection. When rendering clip gain settings, the resulting clip provides handles for trimming out the clip based on the Default Handle Length settings in the Processing Preferences.

Bypass Clip Gain

When **Bypass Clip Gain** is selected in the Right-click menu, the current clip gain settings are bypassed and the clip plays back with 0 dB gain adjustment.

Clear Clip Gain

Choose **Clear Clip Gain** in the Right-click menu to clear the clip gain settings for the clip.

Render Clip Gain

Choose **Render Clip Gain** in the Right-click menu to render the current clip gain settings for the clip. After the clip is rendered with its new gain, the clip gain settings are reset to 0 dB.

Show/Hide Clip Gain Line

Select **Show/Hide Clip Gain Line** in the Right-click menu to show or hide the Clip Gain Line for all clips.

Clip Gain Line

The Clip Gain Line lets you edit the clip gain settings for any given clip using breakpoint editing, much like with track-based volume automation. However, unlike track-based volume automation, the clip gain settings are always associated with the clip rather than with the track. The Clip Gain Line can be shown or hidden for all clips in the Edit window.



Clip Gain Line (with multiple breakpoints)

To show or hide the Clip Gain Line, do one of the following:

- Select or deselect **View > Clip > Clip Gain Line**.
- Press Control+Shift+"-" (Hyphen) (Mac) or Start+Shift+"-" (Hyphen) (Windows).
- Right-click the Clip Gain Fader icon on any clip and choose **Show Clip Gain Line** or **Hide Clip Gain Line**.
- Right-click any clip and choose **Clip Gain > Show Clip Gain Line** or **Clip Gain > Hide Clip Gain Line**.

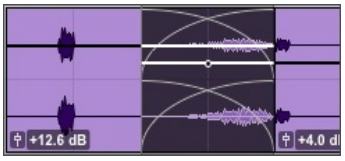
The Clip Gain Line is only shown when the track height is set to Small or larger.

Clip Gain Line and Crossfades

Clip gain is applied on a clip-by-clip basis. When cross-fading between clips, the Clip Gain Line for the first clip carries through the fade out segment of the crossfade and the Clip Gain Line for the second clip carries through the fade in segment of the crossfade. Consequently, crossfades can display two Clip Gain Lines, one for the first clip and one for the second clip.



Clip Gain Lines prior to applying a crossfade



Clip Gain Lines after applying a crossfade

Editing Clip Gain

Pro Tools lets you adjust the gain settings for a clip using the Clip Gain Fader for quick and easy adjustments, or using breakpoint editing on the Clip Gain Line for detailed clip gain control.

If a clip is Edit-locked and you attempt to edit clip gain, you are prompted to Cancel or Allow the edit.

Simple Clip Gain Adjustment

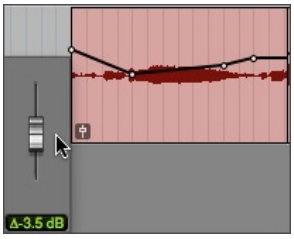
You can adjust clip gain using the Clip Gain Fader icon for quick and easy clip gain adjustments.

To boost or attenuate the current clip gain settings for a single clip:

1. Ensure that the **`Clip Gain Info`** option is enabled.
2. Click the Clip Gain Fader icon on the clip and drag the Clip Gain fader up or down to boost or attenuate the clip gain settings for the clip.



Clip Gain fader, adjusting static clip gain value



Clip Gain fader, adjusting all breakpoint clip gain values

Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while adjusting the Clip Gain fader for fine control.

Graphically Editing Clip Gain

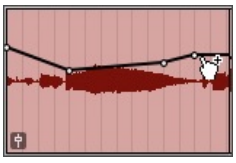
You can graphically edit clip gain using breakpoints on the Clip Gain Line for individual clips. When you drag a clip gain breakpoint up or down, the change in the gain setting value is numerically indicated. Dragging a clip gain breakpoint to the left or right adjusts its timing.

Using the Grabber Tool

Using the Grabber tool, you can add, adjust, and delete individual clip gain breakpoint settings.

To add a clip gain breakpoint with the Grabber tool:

1. Ensure that the **`Clip Gain Line`** option is enabled.
2. Select the Grabber tool.
3. Click at any point on the Clip Gain Line for the clip to add a breakpoint. The Grabber points and displays a Plus sign (“+”).

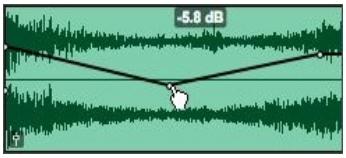


Adding a clip gain breakpoint with the Grabber tool

Press Control+Shift+E (Mac) or Start+Shift+E (Windows) to add a Clip Gain breakpoint at the current Edit location.

To adjust a clip gain breakpoint with the Grabber tool:

1. Ensure that the **Clip Gain Line** option is enabled.
2. Select the Grabber tool.
3. Click any breakpoint on the Clip Gain Line and move it up or down to adjust the gain, or left to right to adjust the timing. The gain setting is displayed in dB over the selected breakpoint.



Adjusting a clip gain breakpoint with the Grabber tool

To delete a clip gain breakpoint with the Grabber tool:

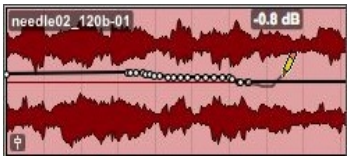
1. Ensure that the **Clip Gain Line** option is enabled.
2. Select the Grabber tool.
3. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the breakpoint you want to delete. The Grabber points and displays a Minus sign ("–").



Deleting a clip gain breakpoint with the Grabber tool

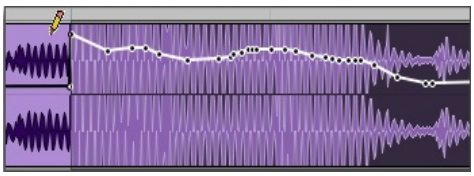
Using the Pencil Tool

The Pencil tool lets you create new breakpoints by clicking once on the graph line. Pro Tools lets you use the Free Hand, Line, Triangle, Square, and Random Pencil Tool shapes for drawing clip gain. The Parabolic and S-Curve Pencil Tool shapes are not available for editing clip gain.



Using the Pencil tool (Free Hand) to draw clip gain settings

When drawing clip gain settings with the Pencil tool, its effect is bounded by the Edit selection if the pencil gesture crosses into the selection. However, if the pencil gesture is entirely outside of a selection, it creates clip gain breakpoints outside of the selection.



Using the Pencil tool (Free Hand) to draw clip gain settings bound by the Edit selection

To add clip gain breakpoints with the Pencil tool:

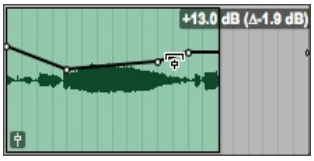
1. Ensure that the **Clip Gain Line** option is enabled.
2. Select the Pencil tool.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click once on the Clip Gain Line to add a single breakpoint.
   - Drag on the Clip Gain Line to draw breakpoints.

To delete a clip gain breakpoint with the Pencil tool:

1. Ensure that the **Clip Gain Line** option is enabled.
2. Select the Pencil tool.
3. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the breakpoint you want to delete.

Using the Trim Tools

The Trim tools let you adjust all selected breakpoints up or down by dragging anywhere within that selection. Unlike track-based Volume automation, which scales when trimming, clip gain provides true trimming (where clip gain settings maintain their fixed relations to one another when trimming).



Using the Trim tool to boost or attenuate clip gain breakpoints

To trim the selected clip gain settings up or down:

1. Ensure that the **Clip Gain Line** option is enabled.
2. Make an Edit selection that includes the clip gain settings that you want to adjust.
3. Select the Trim tool.
4. Drag up or down over the Clip Gain Line within the Edit selection.

Nudging Clip Gain

Pro Tools lets you nudge the selected clip gain settings up or down by the **Nudge Clip Gain By** amount specified in the Pro Tools Editing Preferences. You can also nudge the selected clip gain settings back or forward in the clip by the specified nudge amount.

You can also nudge Clip Gain up or down with EUCON. See the Using EuControl Surfaces guide, or the S4/S6 Guide for more info.

To set the Nudge Clip Gain By amount:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Editing** tab.
3. Enter a value for the **Nudge Clip Gain By** setting.
4. Click **OK**.

To nudge the selected clip gain up:

- Press Control+Shift+Up Arrow (Mac) or Start+Shift+Up Arrow (Windows).

To nudge the selected clip gain down:

- Press Control+Shift+Down Arrow (Mac) or Start+Shift+Down Arrow (Windows).

If you have a mouse with a scroll wheel, you can use the scroll wheel to nudge the selected clip gain settings up or down. Press Control+Shift (Mac) or Start+Shift (Windows) and scroll the scroll wheel up or down.

To nudge the selected clip gain backward, do one of the following:

- Press Control+Shift+"–" (Minus) (Mac) or Start+Shift+"–" (Minus) (Windows).
- Press Control+Shift+M (Mac) or Start+Shift+M (Windows).
- Press Control+Shift+"," (Comma) (Mac) or Start+Shift+"," (Comma) (Windows).

To nudge the selected clip gain forward, do one of the following:

- Press Control+Shift+"+" (Plus) (Mac) or Start+Shift+"+" (Plus) (Windows).
- Press Control+Shift+"." (Period) (Mac) or Start+Shift+"." (Period) (Windows).
- Press Control+Shift+"/" (Slash) (Mac) or Start+Shift+"/" (Slash) (Windows).

Clearing Clip Gain

Pro Tools lets you clear the clip gain settings for the current Edit selection. This resets the clip gain for the selection to 0 dB. For clips only partially included in the Edit selection, only the clip gain settings within the Edit selection are affected.

To clear clip gain, do one of the following:

- Right-click a clip or Edit selection and choose **`Clip Gain > Clear Clip Gain`**.
- Right-click the Clip Gain Fader icon for a single clip and choose **`Clear Clip Gain`**.
- Select a clip or make an Edit selection and choose **`Edit > Clip Special > Clear Clip Gain`**.
- Select a clip or make an Edit selection and press Control+Shift+B (Mac) or Start+Shift+B (Windows).
- Press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) and click Clip Gain Fader icon for a single clip.

Cutting, Copying, and Pasting Clip Gain

Pro Tools lets you cut, copy, and paste clip gain settings, so that you can apply the clip gain settings from one clip to any other. Clip gain settings cannot be cut, copied, or pasted across clip boundaries.

To cut clip gain settings:

1. Select a single whole clip or make an Edit selection within a single whole clip.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Edit > Cut Special > Cut Clip Gain`**.
   - Press Control+Shift+X (Mac) or Start+Shift+X (Windows).

   The selected clip gain settings are cut and copied to the clipboard. Clip gain breakpoints on the clipboard are time-stamped with the playback times in the timebase of the track being copied (which means you can cut and paste clip gain settings from clips on tick-based tracks and have the pasted clip gain settings match the corresponding bar:beat locations of clips on other tick-based tracks).

   You can cut clip gain settings from any Edit selection. However, if you want to cut and paste clip gain settings, you can only paste the clip gain settings cut from a single clip.

To copy clip gain settings:

1. Select a single whole clip or make an Edit selection within a single whole clip.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Copy Special > CopyClip Gain**.
   - Press Control+Option+Command+C (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+C (Windows).
   - Right-click any single whole clip selection and choose **Clip Gain > Copy Clip Gain**.

   The selected clip gain settings are copied to the clipboard. Clip gain breakpoints on the clipboard are time-stamped with the playback times in the timebase of the track being copied (which means you can copy and paste clip gain settings from clips on tick-based tracks and have the pasted clip gain settings match the corresponding bar:beat locations of clips on other tick-based tracks).

To paste clip gain settings:

1. Cut or Copy the clip gain settings you want.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select another clip.
   - Make an Edit selection within a single whole clip.
   - Place the Edit In Point where you want the cut or copied clip gain settings to be pasted.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Paste Clip Gain**.
   - Press Command+V (Mac) or Control+V (Windows).

   The clip gain settings on the clipboard are pasted into the clip starting at the Edit In Point. The clip gain settings are pasted in their entirety, but only apply to a single clip. If the pasted clip gain settings extend beyond the end of the clip, they are all still associated with the clip. This means that if you trim out the clip later, the pasted clip gain is revealed. When pasting clip gain within a clip (rather than to a single whole clip of the same duration), breakpoints are added before and after the pasted data so that any clip gain settings outside the paste do not change.

Converting Clip Gain and Track Volume Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Pro Tools lets you convert clip gain settings to track-based volume automation, as well as letting you convert track-based volume automation to clip gain settings.

When converting clip gain settings to volume automation, the clip gain settings are cut from the clip and pasted to track-based volume automation at the same timeline locations as the clip.

When converting track-based volume automation to clip gain, the volume automation is cut from the track volume automation playlist and pasted to the clip. Once volume automation has been converted to clip gain, the clip gain settings stay with the clip when moved, cut, copied, or pasted.

To convert clip gain settings to track-based volume automation:

1. Select a clip or make an Edit selection.
2. Choose **Edit > Automation > Convert Clip Gain to Volume Automation**.

⚠ **Any clip gain settings above +12 dB are lost when converted to volume automation. Also, clip gain settings within crossfades are crossfaded as part of the volume automation.**

To convert track-based volume automation to clip gain:

1. Select a clip or make an Edit selection.
2. Choose **Edit > Automation > Convert Volume to Clip Gain**.

Coalescing Clip Gain and Track Volume Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Pro Tools lets you coalesce clip gain settings to track-based volume automation, as well as letting you coalesce track-based volume automation to clip gain settings.

When coalescing clip gain settings to volume automation, the clip gain settings are cut from the clip and coalesced with track-based volume automation at the same timeline locations as the clip.

When coalescing track-based volume automation to clip gain, the volume automation is cut from the track volume automation playlist and coalesced with the selected clip gain settings. Once volume automation has been coalesced to clip gain, volume automation is set to 0 dB for the selection.

To coalesce clip gain settings to track-based volume automation:

1. Select a clip or make an Edit selection.
2. Choose **Edit > Automation > Coalesce Clip Gain to Volume Automation**.

To coalesce track-based volume automation to clip gain settings:

1. Select a clip or make an Edit selection.
2. Choose **Edit > Automation > Coalesce Volume to Clip Gain**.

Any clip gain settings above +12 dB are lost when it is coalesced to volume automation. Also, clip gain within crossfades is crossfaded as part of the volume automation.

Bypassing Clip Gain

Pro Tools lets you bypass the current clip gain settings for any selected whole clip. This means that you can hear the clip without any clip gain adjustments without losing your current clip gain settings.

To bypass (or unbypass) clip gain for a clip, do one of the following:

- Select one or more whole clips and choose **Clip > Clip Gain > Bypass Clip Gain** (or choose **Clip > Clip Gain > Unbypass Clip Gain)**.
- Right-click the Clip Gain Fader icon for a clip and select (or deselect) **Bypass**.
- Right-click a clip or an Edit selection and choose **Clip Gain > Bypass Clip Gain** (or choose **Clip Gain > Unbypass Clip Gain**).

The clip gain settings for any whole clips within the Edit selection are bypassed (or unbypassed).

Rendering Clip Gain

Pro Tools lets you render the current clip gain settings for any selected whole clip. Rendering clip gain applies the current clip gain settings to a new clip and sets the clip gain settings for the new clip to 0 dB.

To render clip gain for a clip, do one of the following:

- Select one or more whole clips and choose **Clip > Clip Gain > Render Clip Gain**.
- Right-click the Clip Gain Fader icon for a clip and choose **Render Clip Gain**.
- Right-click a clip or an Edit selection and choose **Clip Gain > Render Clip Gain**.

Clip gain for any whole clips within the Edit selection is rendered and their clip gain settings are reset to 0 dB.

For clips with any clip gain settings other than 0 dB, the Prepare DPE Tracks command (for DestructivePunch) automatically renders all clip gain settings and resets all clip gain settings to 0 dB.

When processing in an AudioSuite mode that renders in clip gain, any clip gain settings are rendered first, and then AudioSuite processing is applied. Clip gain is reset to 0 dB for the resultant clip. However, when creating individual files with AudioSuite, or overwriting files clip-by-clip, clip gain settings are preserved. For more information, see *"Conditions for AudioSuite Rendering with Handles, Fades, Clip Gain, and Metadata" on page 1272.*

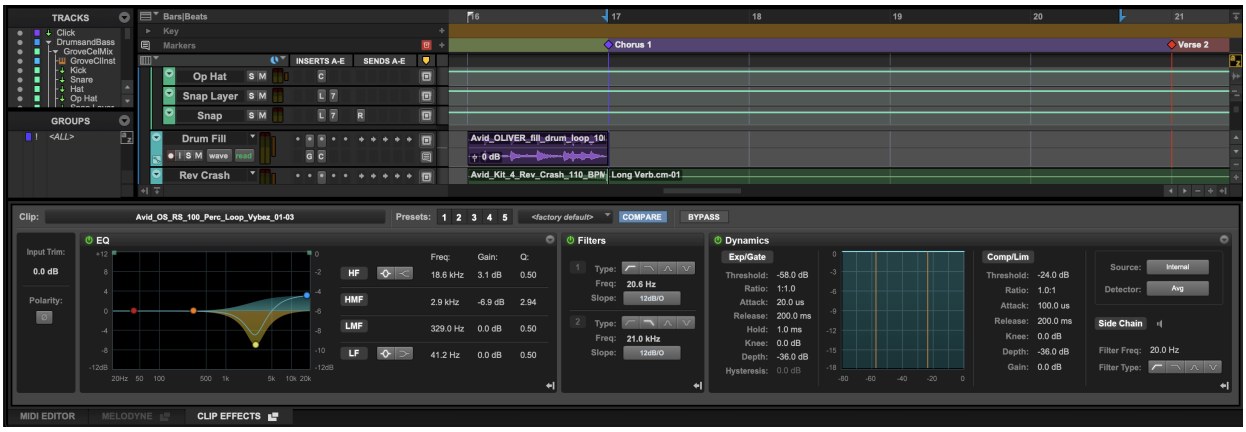
Clip Effects

Pro Tools provides clip-based effects that let you apply non-destructive EQ, filtering, and dynamics processing to any whole audio clip on any audio track. This lets you modify the sound of any single whole clip or a selection of whole clips on one or more tracks without having to use rendered AudioSuite processing or having to process entire tracks using plugin inserts. Clip effects processing uses the same algorithms as the Avid Channel Strip plugin (based on the Euphonix System 5 console channel strip effects), and provides similar controls and settings.

Clip effects settings always stay with the clip, which means you can move, and **Cut** or **Copy** and **Paste** clips along with their corresponding clip effects settings (clip effects settings are also maintained with other edit commands, such as **Duplicate** or **Loop**). You can also **Cut Special > Cut Clip Effects** or **Copy Special > Copy Clip Effects**, and **Paste Clip Effects** settings independently of the selected clip's audio.

You can save and import clip effects settings as presets. You can also use your computer keyboard to quickly store and recall presets just like you can with plugin inserts and AudioSuite plugins.

Clip effects are fully supported with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio software. However, while Pro Tools Artist and Intro software can open and playback sessions and projects with clip effects as well as **Bypass**, **Clear**, and **Render** clip effects (if present), it cannot create or edit clip effects. Clip effects use the host processor (Native processing) on all systems.



Clip Effects display

Clip Effects Display

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

With Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio, clip effects controls are displayed at the bottom of the Edit window in the same space as the docked MIDI Editor and the Melodyne Editor (see "Clip Effects display" on the previous page). You can toggle between Clip Effects display, the MIDI Editor, and Melodyne Editor, but they cannot both be viewed at the same time.

To show or hide the Clip Effects display, do one of the following:

- Select or deselect **`View > Other Displays > Clip Effects`**.
- Select or deselect **`Clip Effects`** from the Edit Window Toolbar menu.
- Click the **`Clip Effects`** tab at the bottom of the Edit window.
- Press Option+6 (Mac) or Alt+6 (Windows). The behavior of this key command varies slightly depending on the edit selection: if no whole clip is selected, it shows or hides the Clip Effects display while leaving the Edit window focused; if one or more whole clips are selected, it shows and focuses the Clip Effects display (if the display is shown, but not focused, it becomes focused) or hides the display.

Clip Effect Floating Window

The Clip Effects display can be detached from the bottom of the Edit window as its own floating window.

To open the Clip Effects window, do one of the following:

- Select **`Window > Clip Effects`**.
- In the Edit window, click the Open Clip Effects icon.

To keep the Clip Effects window floating on top of other windows:

- In the Clip Effect Window menu, select **`Keep Window on Top`**.

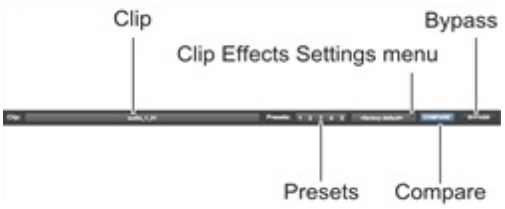
To close the Clip Effects window, do one of the following:

- Deselect **`Window > Clip Effects`**.
- In the Clip Effects window, click the Close Window icon.
- In the Edit window, click the Close Window icon on the Clip Effects tab.

Clip Effects Header

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

The header at the top of the Clip Effects display provides controls for **`Presets`**, **`Compare`**, and **`Bypass`** controls as well as displaying the name of the selected, whole **`Clip`**.



Clip Effects header

Clip

Displays the name of the selected, whole clip. If more than one whole clip is selected, the number of selected whole clips is displayed.

Presets

Lets you store and recall up to five presets (see "Clip Effects Presets and Settings Files" on page 1297).

Clip Effects Settings Menu

Provides commands to save, copy, paste, and manage clip effects settings as presets (see "Clip Effects Settings Menu" on page 1298).

Compare

Toggles between the original saved Clip Effects preset and any changes you have made to it so you can compare them.

Bypass

Lets you bypass clip effects processing (see "Bypassing Clip Effects" below).

Applying Clip Effects

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio let you apply clip effects to one or more selected whole clips on one or more tracks. The specific clip effects settings applied to that selection remains with any whole clips within that selection until you clear or change those settings. Each subsequent selection of one or more whole clips can be assigned its own unique clip effects settings.

To apply clip effects:

1. Make an edit selection that includes at least one whole clip.
2. If not already shown, reveal the Clip Effects display (see "Clip Effects Display" on the previous page).
3. Choose a preset or adjust the clip effects settings as desired (see "Clip Effects Settings" on page 1289).

⚠ **Clip effects cannot be applied to committed or frozen tracks.**

Bypassing Clip Effects

Pro Tools lets you bypass the current clip effects settings for any selected whole clip. This lets you can the clip without any clip effects while maintaining your current clip effects settings.

To bypass (or unbypass) clip effects for a clip:

1. Select one or more whole clips.
2. Adjust the Clip Effects settings as desired (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only).
3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Clip > Clip Effects > Bypass Clip Effect** (or **Clip > Clip Effects > Unbypass Clip Effects**).
   - Right-click a clip or an Edit selection and choose **Clip Effects > Bypass Clip Effects** (or **Clip Effects > Unbypass Clip Effects**).
   - Click the **Bypass** button in the Clip Effects Display header so that it is lit (or unlit).

   The clip effects settings for any whole clips within the Edit selection are bypassed (or unbypassed).

Rendering Clip Effects

Pro Tools lets you render the current clip effects settings for selected whole clips. Rendering clip effects applies the current clip effects settings to a new whole-file clip and clears the clip effects settings.

To render clip effects for a clip:

1. Select one or more whole clips.
2. Adjust the Clip Effects settings as desired (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only).
3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Clip > Clip Effects > Render Clip Effects**.
   - Right-click and choose **Clip Effects > Render Clip Effects**.

Clip effects are rendered when exporting selected tracks as AAF.

Clip Effects Signal Chain and Rendering

Clip effects are applied after elastic audio or Melodyne and before clip gain. The signal chain from an audio clip on a track to the track fader is as follows:

- Audio File › Elastic Audio/Melodyne › Clip Effects › Clip Gain › AudioSuite › Fades › Inserts › Fader

Rendering always leaves down-stream processing in place while rendering upstream elements. The following examples show what is rendered in the signal chain depending on which commit or render command is used.

	What is rendered by process							
Command	**Audio File**	**Elastic Audio/ Melodyne**	**Clip Effects**	**Clip Gain**	**Audio Suite**	**Fades**	**Inserts**	**Fader**
committing Elastic Audio/ Melodyne	rendered	rendered						
rendering Clip Effects	rendered	real-time	rendered					
rendering Clip Gain	rendered	real-time	rendered	rendered				
rendering AudioSuite	rendered	rendered	rendered	rendered	rendered			
consolidating audio clips	rendered	rendered	rendered	rendered	rendered if present	rendered		
freezing tracks	rendered	rendered	rendered	rendered	rendered if present	rendered	rendered	

Clip Effects Signal Chain Ordering

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) By default the signal chain order for clip effects is EQ › Filters › Dynamics. However, you can reorder this signal chain however you like. For example, maybe you want your dynamics processing before the EQ and Filters.

To change the signal chain order of clip effects:

- Click and drag the title bar of the effect you want to move to the desired location in the signal chain. (For example, drag the Dynamics section to the left of the EQ.)



Reordering the clip effects signal chain (dragging Dynamics to before EQ)

Showing or Hiding the EQ, Filters, and Dynamics Sections

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) You can independently show or hide the EQ, Filters, and Dynamics sections of the Clip Effects display to use less screen space. These sections are shown by default.



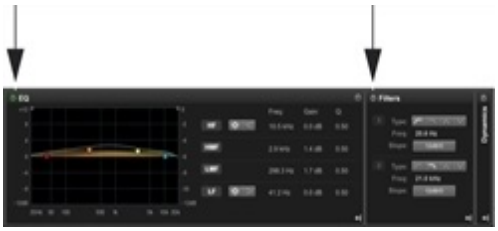
Filters and Dynamics sections hidden

To hide (or show) the Dynamics, EQ, or Filters section of the plugin window:

- Click the Show/Hide icon in the lower-right corner of the section you want to show or hide.

Enabling or Disabling EQ, Filter, and Dynamics Effects

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) You can independently enable or disable EQ, Filter, and Dynamics processing in the Clip Effects display. For example, you may want to apply Dynamics processing, but not EQ or filtering; or, you may want to apply only EQ.



Clip Effects, EQ enabled, Filters and Dynamics disabled

To enable or disable specific Clip Effects processing:

- Click the Enable/Disable button for the effect so that it is highlighted (enabled) or grayed out (disabled).

Clip Effects Status View

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) When Clip Effects Status view is enabled (**`View > Clip > Clip Effects Status`**), **`ø`**, **`EQ`**, and **`DYN`** are displayed in the upper right corner of the clip depending on which effects are being applied to the clip. **`ø`** is displayed when the phase is inverted. **`EQ`** is displayed when EQ or Filtering is applied to the clip. **`DYN`** is displayed when Dynamics processing or Input Gain is set to any value other than 0.0 dB.



Clip Effects Status shown

To show or hide Clip Effects Status:

- Select or deselect **View > Clip > Clip Effects Status**.

Clip Effects Special Edit Commands

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Cut Clip Effects

Cutting clip effects copies the clip effects settings to the clipboard and resets the settings for the selected whole clip (or clips) to **<factory default>**.

To cut clip effects:

1. Select one or more whole clips with clip effects.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Cut Special > Cut Clip Effects**.
   - Press Control+Option+Command+X (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+X (Windows).

Copy Clip Effects

Copying clip effects copies the clip effects settings for selected whole clips to the clipboard while leaving the settings for those clips intact.

To copy clip effects:

1. Select one or more whole clips with clip effects.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Copy Special > Copy Clip Effects**.
   - Right-click the edit selection and choose **Clip Effects > Copy Clip Effects**.
   - Press Control+Option+Command+C (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+C (Windows).

Paste Clip Effects

When Clip Effects are cut or copied to the clipboard, the **Paste** command changes to **Paste Clip Effects** in the **Edit** menu.

To paste clip effects:

1. Special Cut or Copy Clip Effects from one or more whole clips.
2. Select one or more whole clips with or without clip effects.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Paste Clip Effects**.
   - Right-click the edit selection and choose **Clip Effects > Paste Clip Effects**.
   - Press Command+V (Mac) or Control+V (Windows).

Clear Clip Effects

Clearing clip effects resets the settings for the selected whole clip (or clips) to **<factory default>**.

To clear clip effects:

1. Select one or more whole clips with clip effects.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Edit > Clear Special > Copy Clip Effects**.
   - Right-click the edit selection and choose **Clip Effects > Clear Clip Effects**.
   - Press Control+Option+Command+B (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+B (Windows).

Clip Effects Settings

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Input Trim and Polarity Invert



Input Trim and Polarity Invert controls

Input Trim

The Input Trim control sets the input gain for clip effects before EQ processing. This lets you make up gain or prevent clipping at the input stage.

To Trim the input signal, do one of the following:

- Click in the Input Trim field and type a Trim value (–36.0 dB to +36.0 dB).
- Click **Trim** and drag up or down to adjust the Input Trim setting.

Polarity Invert

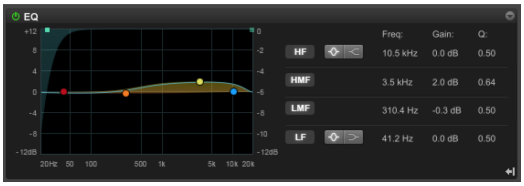
The Polarity Invert button at the top of the Input section inverts the phase (polarity) of the input signal, to help compensate for phase anomalies that can occur either in multi-microphone environments or because of mis-wired balanced connections.

To enable (or disable) phase inversion on input:

- Click the Polarity Invert button so that it is highlighted. Click it again so that it is not highlighted to disable it.

EQ and Filters

Clip effects provides a high-quality 4-band parametric equalizer and two separate filters for shaping the frequency spectrum of your audio.



EQ controls

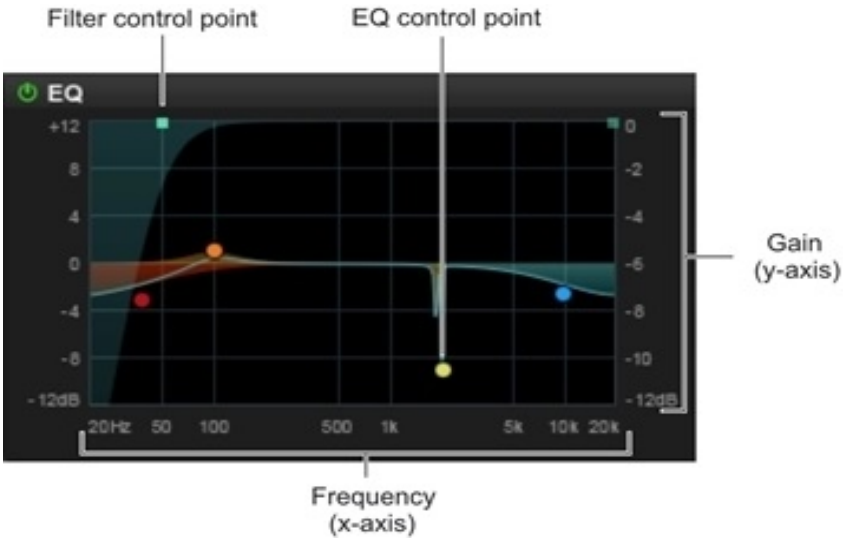
Frequency Graph

The EQ section of the Clip Effects display (see "Frequency Graph" below) provides an interactive Frequency Graph display that shows the response curve for the current EQ settings on a two-dimensional graph of frequency and gain. The Frequency Graph display also lets you modify frequency, gain, and Q settings for individual EQ bands by dragging their corresponding points in the graph. The Frequency Graph display also plots the frequency, Q, and filter shape of the two filters (when either or both are enabled).

Adjusting EQ and Filter Controls on the Frequency Graph

You can adjust the following EQ and Filter controls by dragging control points directly in the Frequency Graph display:

- *Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Start-Shift-click (Windows) the control point for any frequency band to solo that frequency band. Drag left or right to change the frequency value.*



Frequency Graph

Frequency

Dragging a control point to the right increases the Frequency setting. Dragging a control point to the left decreases the Frequency setting.

- *Press the Shift key while clicking and dragging an EQ control point up or down to adjust the Gain setting without changing the Frequency. Likewise, press the Shift key while clicking and dragging an EQ control point left or right to adjust the Frequency setting without changing the Gain setting.*

Gain

Dragging a control point up increases the Gain setting. Dragging a control point down decreases the Gain setting.

- *Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) an EQ control point to invert its Gain setting.*

Q

Click within the curve of an EQ control point and drag up or down to increase or decrease the Q setting. For the Low and High Frequency Bands, the **Q** control is only available when the EQ Type is set to Peak. For Filter control points, drag it up or down to adjust the Q for that filter. The **Q** control is only available when the Filter Type is set to Band Pass or Notch.

You can also Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) and drag a control point up or down to increase or decrease the Q setting.

Frequency Graph Gain Resolution

Clip Effects let you view the gain scale on the Frequency Graph display either in 3 dB increments from –12 dB to +12 dB or in 6 dB increments from –24 dB to +24 dB.



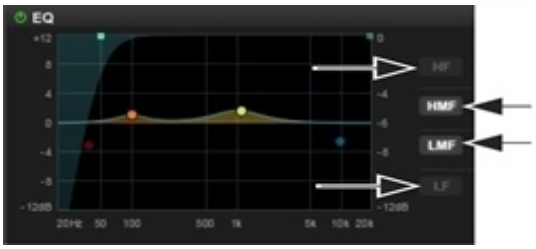
Frequency Graph Gain Resolution toggle

To change the Frequency Graph Gain resolution:

- Click the Graph Resolution toggle.

Enable/Disable EQ Bands and Filters

Click the Enable/Disable button for an EQ frequency band (**HF**, **HMF**, **LMF**, or **LF**) or a filter (**1** or **2**) to enable or disable that frequency band or filter. Buttons are lit when enabled, and unlit when disabled.



EQ Frequency Band enable/disable buttons (HF and LF disabled, and HMF and LMF enabled)

High and Low Frequency EQ Controls

Enable the **HF** button for the high frequency band of the EQ and the **LF** button for the low frequency band. The both the high and low frequency band can be set to be either a Peak or Low Shelf EQ.

EQ Type

Enable either the Peak or Shelf button to set the EQ type for the frequency band.

Frequency

Sets the center frequency for the frequency band.

Gain

Boosts or attenuates the corresponding frequencies for the frequency band.

Q

Sets the width of the EQ band. Higher Q values represent narrower bandwidths. Lower Q values represent wider bandwidths. The **Q** control is only available when the EQ Type is set to Peak.

High Mid and Low Mid Frequency EQ Controls

Enable the **HMF** button for the high mid–frequency band of the EQ and the **LMF** button for the low mid–frequency band. Both bands are peak EQs.

Frequency

Sets the center frequency for the frequency band.

Gain

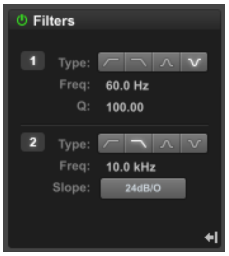
Boosts or attenuates the corresponding frequencies for the frequency band.

Q

Sets the width of the frequency band. Higher Q values represent narrower bandwidths. Lower Q values represent wider bandwidths.

Filter 1 and 2 Controls

Enable the **1** button for the first filter and the **2** button for the second filter. Both filters provide the same set of controls that can be independently configured.



Filter 1 and 2 controls

Type

Lets you select from the following Filter Type options: High Pass, Low Pass, Band Pass, and Notch.

Freq (Frequency)

Sets the center frequency for the selected Filter Type (from 20 Hz to 21.0 kHz).

Slope

Sets the slope for the filter from the selected Frequency to –INF (12 dB/O or 24 dB/O). The **Slope** control is only available when the Filter Type is set to Low Pass or High Pass.

Q

Sets the width of the filter around the center frequency band. Higher Q values represent narrower bandwidths. Lower Q values represent wider bandwidths. The **Q** control is only available when the Filter Type is set to Band Pass or Notch.

Dynamics

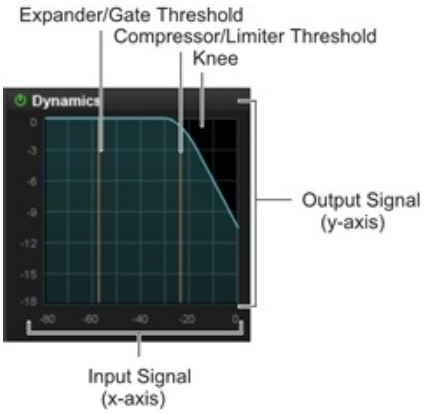
The Dynamics section of the Clip Effects display provides Expander/Gate, Compressor/Limiter, and Side Chain processing all in one. This section also provides a dynamics graphic display for Expander/Gate and Compressor/Limiter processing.



Dynamics controls

Dynamics Graph

The Dynamics Graph display shows a curve that represents the level of the input signal (on the horizontal x-axis) and the amount of gain reduction applied (on the vertical y-axis). The display shows two vertical lines representing the Threshold setting for the Expander/Gate and the Compressor/Limiter, respectively. Use this graph as a visual guide to see how much dynamics processing you are applying to the incoming audio signal.



Dynamics Graph

Dynamics Graph Resolution

Clip effects let you view the gain reduction scale on the Dynamics Graph display either in 3 dB increments from 0 dB to 18 dB or in 6 dB increments from 0 dB to –36 dB.



Dynamics Graph Resolution toggle

To change the Dynamics Graph resolution:

- Click the Dynamics Graph Resolution toggle.

Adjusting Controls on the Dynamics Graph

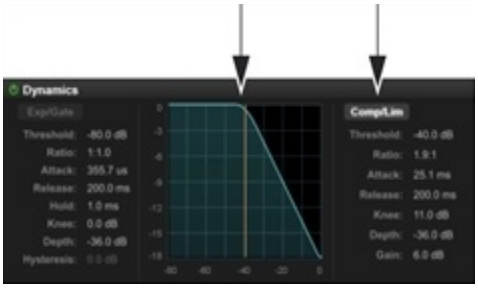
You can drag in the Dynamics Graph display to adjust the corresponding Expander/Gate and Compressor/Limiter controls. The cursor updates to show which control is being adjusted:

- Expander/Gate Ratio
- Expander/Gate Knee
- Expander/Gate Threshold

- Gate Depth
- Hysteresis
- Compressor/Limiter Ratio
- Compressor/Limiter Knee
- Compressor/Limiter Threshold
- Limiter Depth

Enable/Disable Expander/Gate and Compressor/Limiter

Click the Enable/Disable button for **`Exp/Gate`** or **`Comp/Lim`** to enable or disable the corresponding dynamics processing. Buttons are lit when enabled, and unlit when disabled.



Dynamics, Exp/Gate disabled and Comp/Lim enabled

Expander/Gate Controls

Threshold

Sets the level below which an input signal must fall to trigger expansion or gating. Signals that fall below the threshold will be reduced in gain. Signals that are above it will be unaffected. The Dynamics Graph display shows the threshold as a vertical line.

Attack

Sets the attack time, or the rate at which gain is reduced after the input signal crosses the threshold. Use this along with the Ratio setting to control how soft the Expander gain reduction curve is.

Ratio

Sets the amount of expansion. For example, if this is set to 2:1, it will lower signals below the threshold by one half. At higher ratio levels the Expander/Gate functions like a gate by cutting off signals that fall below the threshold. As you adjust the ratio control, refer to the Dynamics Graph display to see how the shape of the expansion curve changes.

Depth

Sets the depth of the Expander/Gate when closed. Setting the gate to higher range levels allows more and more of the gated audio that falls below the threshold to peek through the gate at all times.

Hold

Specifies the duration (in seconds or milliseconds) during which the Expander/Gate will stay in effect after the initial attack occurs. This can be used as a function to keep the Expander/Gate in effect for longer periods of time with a single crossing of the threshold. It can also be used to prevent gate chatter that may occur if varying input levels near the threshold cause the gate to close and open very rapidly.

Release

Sets how long it takes for the gate to close after the input signal falls below the threshold level and the hold time has passed.

Knee

Sets the rate at which the Expander/ Gate reaches full effect once the threshold has been exceeded.

Hysteresis

Adjusts whether or not the gate rapidly opens and closes when the input signal is fluctuating near the Threshold. This can help prevent undesirably rapid gating of the signal. Hysteresis applies a differential threshold for signals that are rising, as opposed to signals that are falling, to reduce the chance of the gate opening when you don't want it to. For example, if the threshold is set to –30 and Hysteresis is set to 10, the gate opens when the signal reaches –20 and closes when signal reaches the set threshold of –30. This control is only available when Ratio is set to Gate, otherwise it is grayed out.

Compressor/Limiter Controls

Threshold

Sets the level that an input signal must exceed to trigger compression or limiting. Signals that exceed this level will be compressed. Signals that are below it will be unaffected.

Attack

Sets the attack time, or the rate at which gain is reduced after the input signal crosses the threshold. The smaller the value, the faster the attack. The faster the attack, the more rapidly the Compressor/ Limiter applies attenuation to the signal. If you use fast attack times, you should generally use a proportionally longer release time, particularly with material that contains many peaks in close proximity.

Ratio

Sets the compression ratio, or the amount of compression applied as the input signal exceeds the threshold. For example, a 2:1 compression ratio means that a 2 dB increase of level above the threshold produces a 1 db increase in output. The compression ratio ranges from 1.0:1 to 20.0:1. Once the Ratio control passes 20.0:1 the Compressor/ Limiter effect functions as a limiter rather than a compressor.

At the limiter setting (**`LMTR`**), for every decibel that the incoming signal goes over the set Threshold, 1 dB of gain reduction is applied. Once the **`Ratio`** control passes the **`LMTR`** setting, it provides negative ratio settings from –20.0:1 to 0:1. With these settings, for every decibel that the incoming signal goes over the set Threshold, more than 1 dB of gain reduction is applied according to the negative **`Ratio`** setting. For example, at the setting of –1.0:1, for each decibel over the set threshold, 2 db of gain reduction is applied. Consequently, the output signal is both compressed and made softer.

Depth

Sets the amount of gain reduction that is applied regardless of the input signal. For example, if the Limiter is set at a Threshold of –20 dB and Depth is set at 0 dB, up to 20 dB of gain reduction is applied to the incoming signal (at 0 dB). If you set Depth to –10 dB, no more than 10 dB of gain reduction is applied to the incoming signal.

Release

Sets the length of time it takes for the Compressor/Limiter to be fully deactivated after the input signal drops below the threshold. Release times should be set long enough that if signal levels repeatedly rise above the threshold, the gain reduction recovers smoothly. If the release time is too short, the gain can rapidly fluctuate as the compressor repeatedly tries to recover from the gain reduction. If the release time is too long, a loud section of the audio material could cause gain reduction that continues through soft sections of program material without recovering.

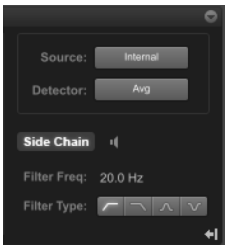
Knee

Sets the rate at which the compressor reaches full compression once the threshold has been exceeded. As you increase this control, it goes from applying *hard-knee* compression to *soft-knee* compression. With hard-knee compression, compression begins when the input signal exceeds the threshold. This can sound abrupt and is ideal for limiting. However, with soft-knee compression, gentle compression begins and increases gradually as the input signal approaches the threshold, and reaches full compression after exceeding the threshold. This creates smoother compression.

Gain

Lets you boost overall output gain to compensate for heavily compressed or limited signals.

Side Chain Processing



Side Chain controls

Dynamics processors typically use the detected amplitude of their input signal to trigger gain reduction. This split-off signal is known as the side chain. Compressor/Limiter and Expander/Gate processing also features filtering on the side chain. By filtering the side chain, you can make dynamics processing more or less sensitive to certain frequencies. For example, you might configure the side chain so that certain lower frequencies on a drum track trigger dynamics processing.

Source

The **`Source`** selector lets you set the source for side chain processing: **`Internal`** or **`All-Linked`**.

Internal

Uses the amplitude of the input signal to trigger dynamics processing. With greater-than-stereo multichannel processing, the input signal for each stereo pair effects only those same channels, and likewise mono channels are effected only by their own input signal. For example, with an LCR multichannel format, the processing for the Center channel is only triggered when the Center channel input signal reaches the threshold. However, when the input signal reaches the threshold on the Left or the Right channel, processing is triggered for both the Left and the Right channel.

All-Linked

Applies dynamics processing equally to all channels when the input signal reaches the threshold on any input channel, except for the LFE channel (if present). The LFE channel is always processed independently based on its own input signal.

Detection

The **`Detection`** options include **`Peak`** or **`Avg`** (Average).

Peak

Applies side-chain processing according to the detected peak amplitude.

Average

Applies sidechain processing according to the detected average amplitude.

Filter Frequency

The Filter Frequency control lets you set the frequency for the selected Filter Type.

Filter Type

Four Filter Type options are available for side-chain processing:

Low Pass

Applies a low pass filter to the side-chain processing at the selected frequency.

High Pass

Applies a high pass filter to the side-chain processing at the selected frequency.

Notch

Applies a notch filter to the side-chain processing at the selected frequency.

Band Pass

Applies a band pass filter to the side-chain processing at the selected frequency.

Listen Mode

The Side Chain pane in the Dynamics section provides a Listen button. When enabled, Listen mode lets you hear the input signal that feeds the dynamic section. This can be either the internal side chain (including the applied filter) or all linked channels of the source audio.

To enable (or disable) Listen on the Side Chain:

- Click the Listen button (speaker icon) in the Side Chain section so that it is highlighted. Click it again so that it is not highlighted to disable it.

Clip Effects Presets and Settings Files

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) In addition to the stored settings named in the Clip Effects Settings menu, clip effects provides five preset buttons so that you can easily store and recall your most commonly used settings. You can also save and import Clip Effects settings using the commands in the Clip Effects Settings menu.

To store a Clip Effects preset:

1. Configure the clip effects settings as you like.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Preset button where you want to store the current clip effects settings.

To recall a Clip Effects preset:

- Click the Preset button that contains the settings you want to recall.

  If the Editing preference "1–5 Number Keys Control" is set to "Clip Effects Presets," you can press Control+1–5 (Mac) or Start+1–5 (Windows) to recall the corresponding preset. If Commands Keyboard Focus is also enabled in the Edit window, just press the number for the preset you want (1–5).

Press Command+Control+1–5 (Mac) or Control+Start+1–5 (Windows) to apply the number keys to the opposite of what is set for the 1–5 Number Keys Control preference (for example, if Zoom Presets is selected, these key combinations would apply to Clip Effects Presets instead). If Commands Keyboard Focus is enabled for the Edit window, press Command+1–5 (Mac) or Control+1–5 (Windows).

Clip Effects Settings Menu

Clip effects settings are saved and recalled just like Plugin settings. The Clip Effects Settings menu commands include:

<factory default>

Restores the default settings for clip effects.

Save Settings

Saves the current settings. This command overwrites any previous version of the preset.

Press Control+Option+Command+S (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+S (Windows) to save the current Clip Effects settings.

Save Settings As

Saves the current settings as a new preset under a different name.

Import Settings

Imports a Clip Effects Settings file (.tfx) from a location other than the Root Settings folder or Session folder.

Delete Current Settings File

Permanently deletes the current Clip Effects Settings file (.tfx) from disk.

Lock (Unlock) Settings File

Locks (or unlocks) the selected Clip Effects Settings file so that it cannot (or can) be edited.

Copy Settings

Copies the selected Clip Effects Settings to the clipboard.

Paste Settings

Pastes Clip Effects Settings from the clipboard.

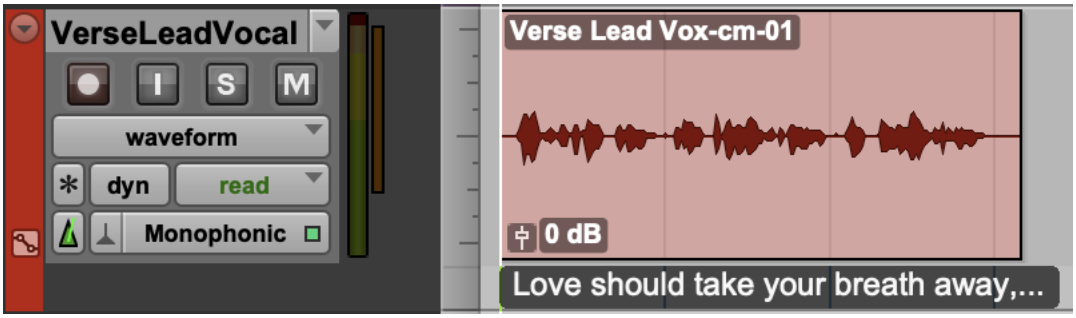
Save Clip Effects Settings To

Selects the folder where Clip Effects settings files are saved. If you select **Session Folder**, the settings are saved in a folder called **Channel Strip** in the **plugin Settings** folder in the current session folder. If you select **Root Settings Folder**, the settings are saved in the **Documentation and Settings** folder specified in the **Operation** preferences.

49 Transcription

Pro Tools Studio and Ultimate provide tools to transcribe speech from audio to text. This is especially useful for editing dialog in post-production, making radio edits, and even song writing.

When transcribing text from audio, the Pro Tools Speech to Text Engine analyzes the entire audio file. Transcription data is stored in the header for WAV files or separately in the session folder for other file types. Note that since transcription requires analysis of entire audio files, it may take some time for the transcription to complete. You can monitor the progress of the transcription in the Task Manager. Also, note transcription occurs in the background so that you can continue to work in Pro Tools on other tasks.



Pro Tools Speech to Text Engine is installed separately from Pro Tools. If you attempt to transcribe text from audio, but the library is not installed, you are prompted to install it.

Transcription is only available with Pro Tools Studio and Pro Tools Ultimate.

Speech to text supports the following:

- The ability to analyze clips on the timeline or in the Clip List and transcribe the words contained in the audio, and where they start in audio files.
- Navigate, make selections, and edit audio using text information as your guide.
- Search and locate content on the timeline by text.
- Search, preview, access, and use content that is not on the timeline by text.

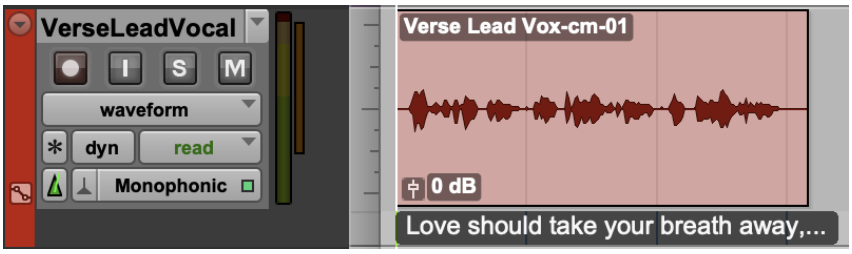
An internet connection is not required to use Transcription.

Track Transcription

To transcribe text from audio on an entire track:

- Right-click the Track Name plate and enable **`Keep Track Transcribed`**.

The transcription is displayed in a lane under the main track view. Any audio that you subsequently record or add to the track will also be transcribed. When **`Keep Track Transcribed`** is disabled, audio that is subsequently recorded or added to the track is not automatically transcribed. Any transcriptions up to this point remain.



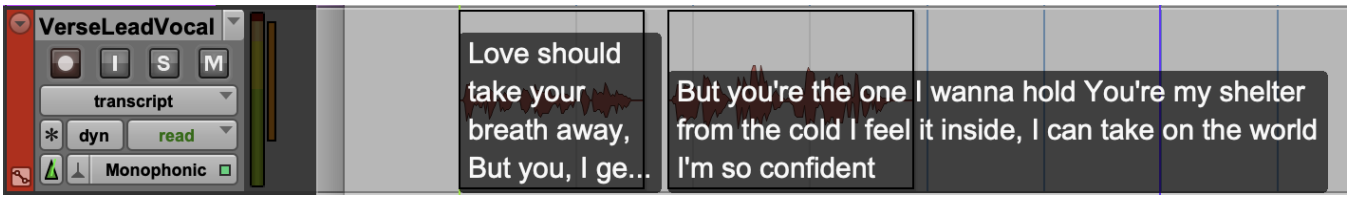
To show (or hide) the Track Transcription lane:

1. Select the track you want.
2. Select (or deselect) **`View > Track Transcription Lane`**.

Press Control+Shift+U (macOS) or Start+Shift+U (Windows).

To view the transcription over the audio waveform:

- Click the track view selector and select **Transcript**.



Transcription Track View

Clip Transcription

You can transcribe text from audio on a clip by clip basis (even though the entire audio file will be analyzed), either on clips in the Timeline or in the Clip List.

To transcribe text from an audio clip in the Timeline or in the Clip List:

- On the Timeline or in the Clip List, right-click a clip (or a selection of multiple clips) and choose **Transcription > Transcribe**.

To clear the transcription from a clip:

- On the Timeline or in the Clip List, right-click the clip and choose **Transcription > Clear Transcription**.

⚠ **This will clear transcriptions from the whole audio file, so it affects all clips from the same file.**

To reload transcription data for clips from WAV files:

- On the Timeline or in the Clip List, right-click a clip (or a selection of multiple clips) and choose **Transcription > Reload Transcription Data**.

Re-Transcribe Text

Pro Tools lets you re-transcribe text from an already-transcribed file, but using different settings (such as changing the language, or using a different analysis option) to get a better transcription. It does not recall cleared transcription data.

To re-transcribe using different settings:

1. On the Timeline or in the Clip List, right-click a clip (or a selection of multiple clips) and choose **Transcription > Re-Transcribe**.
2. The Transcription Settings window appears (see , change the settings as desired and click **OK**.

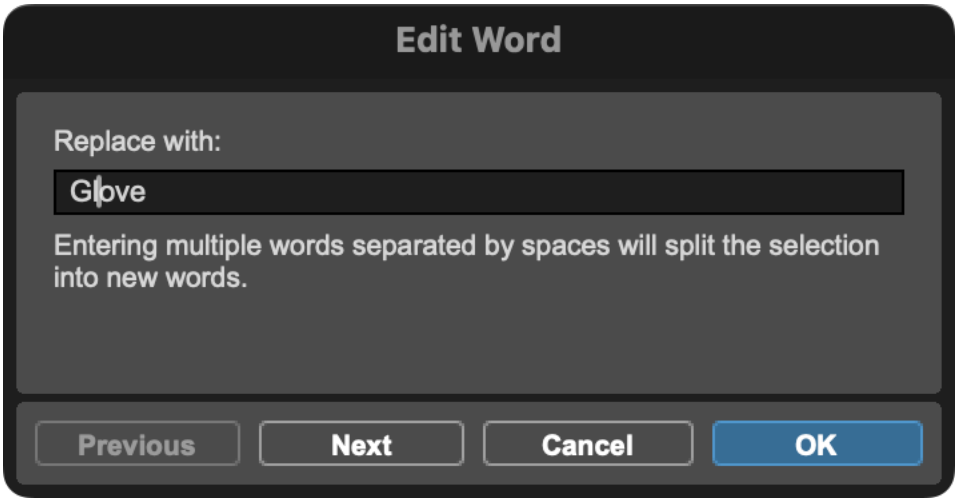
Edit, Join, and Clear Words

Pro Tools lets you edit words in transcriptions. This is useful if you need to correct any mis-transcribed words or phrases.

*The Keyboard Shortcuts window (**Setup > Keyboard Shortcuts**) lets you define custom key commands for **Edit Word**, **Join Words**, and **Clear Word**(s) commands for both the Edit and Transcript windows.*

To edit transcribed words in the Edit window (Transcription Lane or Transcript view) or in the Transcript window (Timeline or Files view):

1. Right-click the word and choose **`Transcription > Edit Word`**.
2. In the Edit Word dialog, edit the word as desired and click **`OK`**.

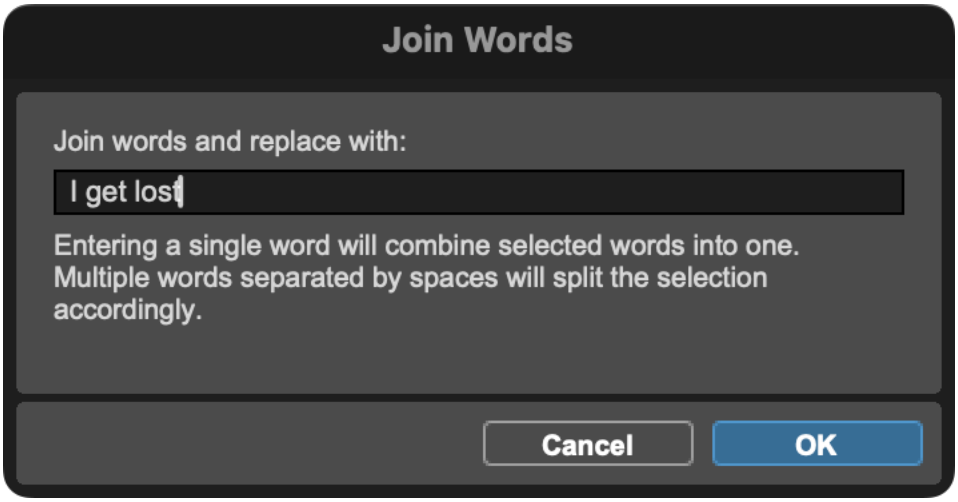


You can enter multiple words separated by spaces (for example, if you want to replace the single word "Mississippi" with two words "Ms. Hippy"). Doing so divides the original word index into multiple segments so each word becomes its own separate entry. Be aware that when doing this, timings for the new words will be approximated. You can also leave the replacement text empty, which effectively clears the word.

You can use the Previous and Next buttons to navigate between words in the selected clip/file, or use Command+left arrow/right arrow (macOS) or Control+left arrow/right arrow (Windows). In the case of clips in the Edit window and Transcript window Timeline view, the buttons/shortcuts only let you navigate through visible text for a clip. If a clip has been trimmed, it is not possible to navigate to words that are not seen.

To join words:

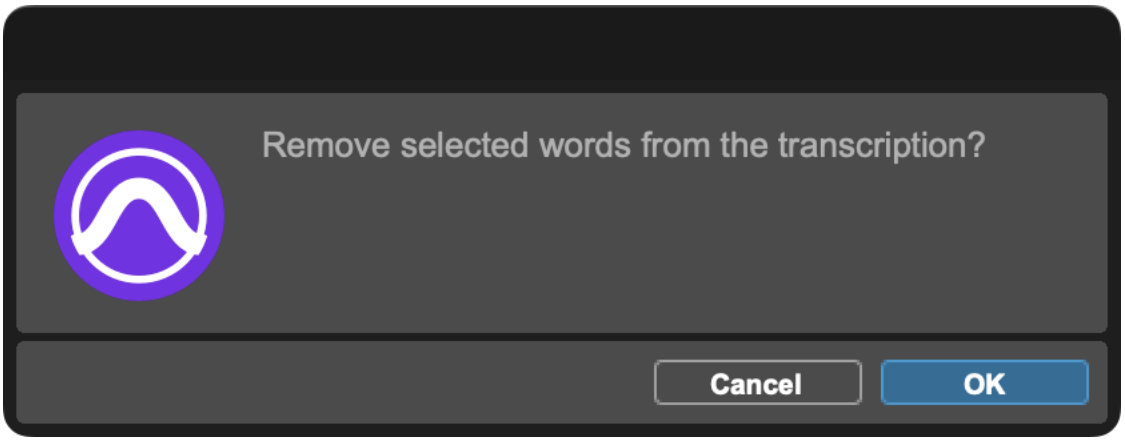
1. Select and right-click the words you want joined, and choose **`Transcription > Join Words`**.
2. In the Join Words dialog, edit the words as desired and click **`OK`**.



Entering a single replacement word and pressing **OK** *creates a single word index from the beginning of the first selected word to the end of the last selected word. However, you can also enter multiple replacement words, but doing so re-divides the total duration of the selection into multiple segments corresponding to the number of words entered, and the timing of each word is approximated.*

To clear word(s):

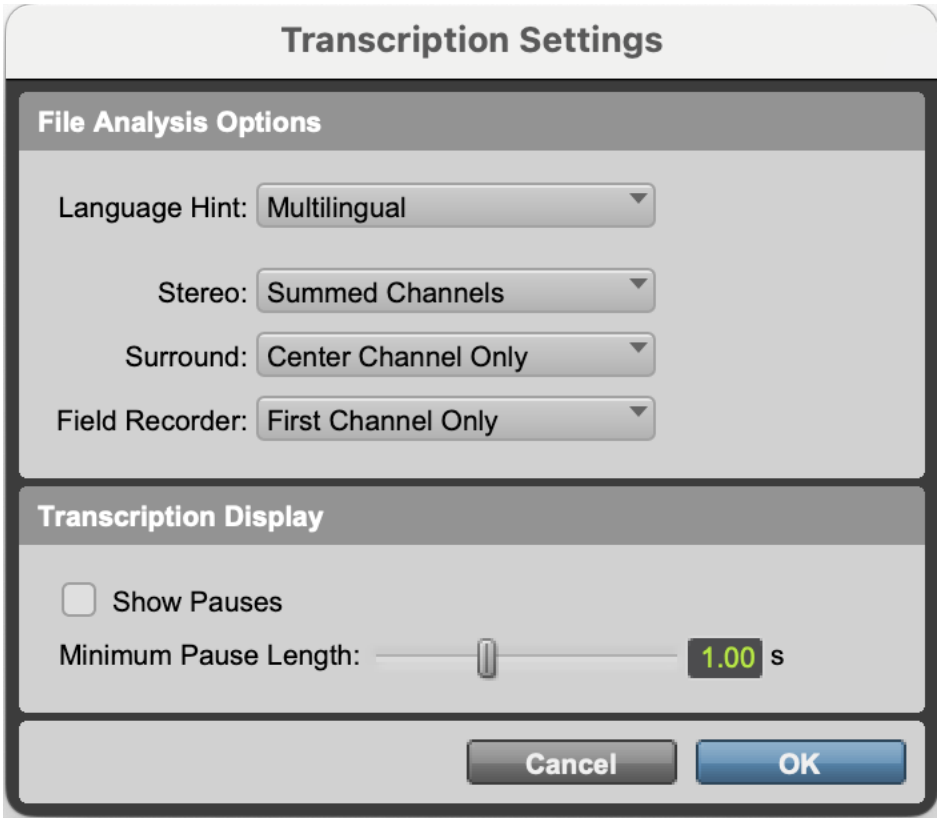
1. Right-click the word(s) you want to clear, and choose **Transcription > Clear Word(s)**.
2. When prompted click **OK** to clear the word.



Transcription Settings

To access Transcription Settings, do one of the following:

- Choose **Setup > Transcription Settings**.
- In the Transcription window (**Window > Transcript**), click the Settings button (gear icon) in the upper-right corner of the window.



File Analysis Options

Language Hint

This setting determines what the algorithm expects when it is transcribing audio. Multilingual acts as an auto-detect, while a specific language assumes that any incoming speech is in the specified language. If your audio is in a single language, select that language to ensure the most accurate possible transcription.

The following languages are available:

- Multilingual ‹default›
- Arabic
- Danish
- German
- English
- Spanish
- Farsi
- French
- Hebrew
- Hindi
- Indonesian
- Italian
- Japanese
- Korean
- Dutch
- Polish
- Portuguese
- Russian
- Swedish
- Thai
- Turkish
- Mandarin

Stereo

Select the desired option for how transcription analysis handles stereo audio:

- **`Summed Channels`**: sums both left and right channels prior to analysis and transcription.
- **`Individual Channels`**: analyze and transcribe both left and right channels independently.
- **`Left Channel Only`**: analyze and transcribe only the left channel.
- **`Right Channel Only`**: analyze and transcribe only the right channel.

Surround

Select the desired option for how transcription analysis handles surround (LCR to 9.1.6) audio:

- **`Summed Channels`**: sums all channels prior to analysis and transcription.
- **`Individual Channels`**: analyze and transcribe each channel individually.
- **`Center Channel Only`**: analyze and transcribe only the center channel.

Field Recorder

Select the desired option for how transcription analysis handles audio imported from a Field Recorder:

- **`Summed Channels`**: sums all channels prior to analysis and transcription.
- **`Individual Channels`**: analyze and transcribe each channel individually.
- **`First Channel Only`**: analyze and transcribe only the first channel.

Transcription Display

Show Pauses

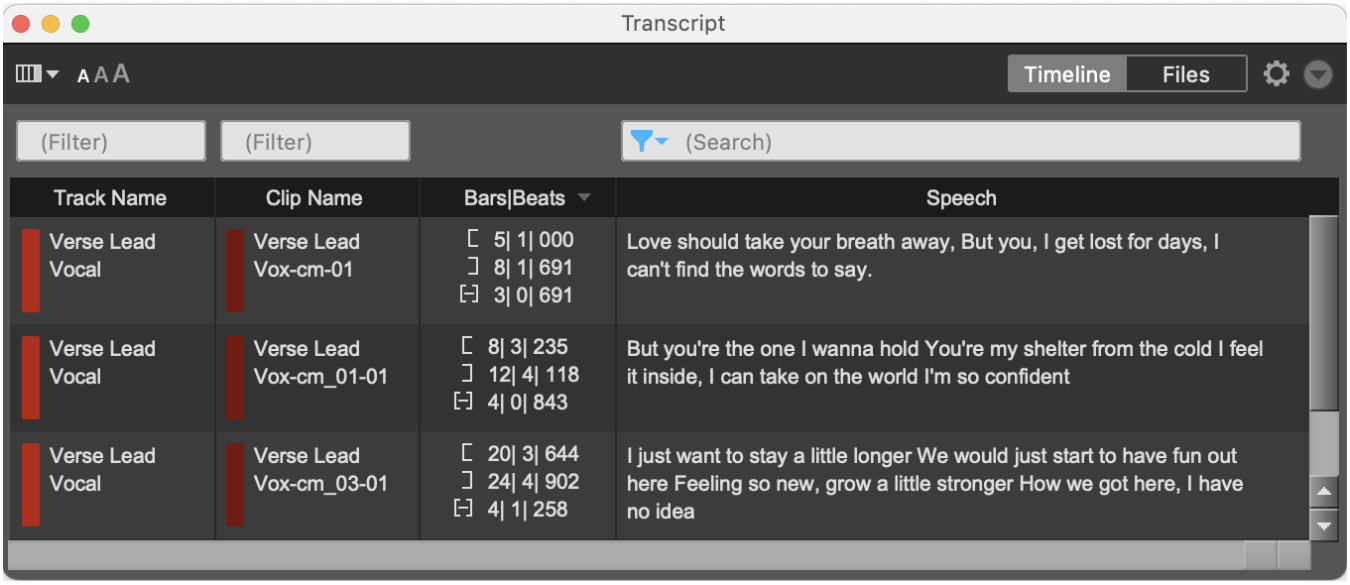
Enable (or disable) to show (or hide) pauses in-between words. Pauses appear as an ellipsis [...].

Minimum Pause Length

Adjust the **`Minimum Pause Length`** as desired between 0.10 and 2.50 seconds.

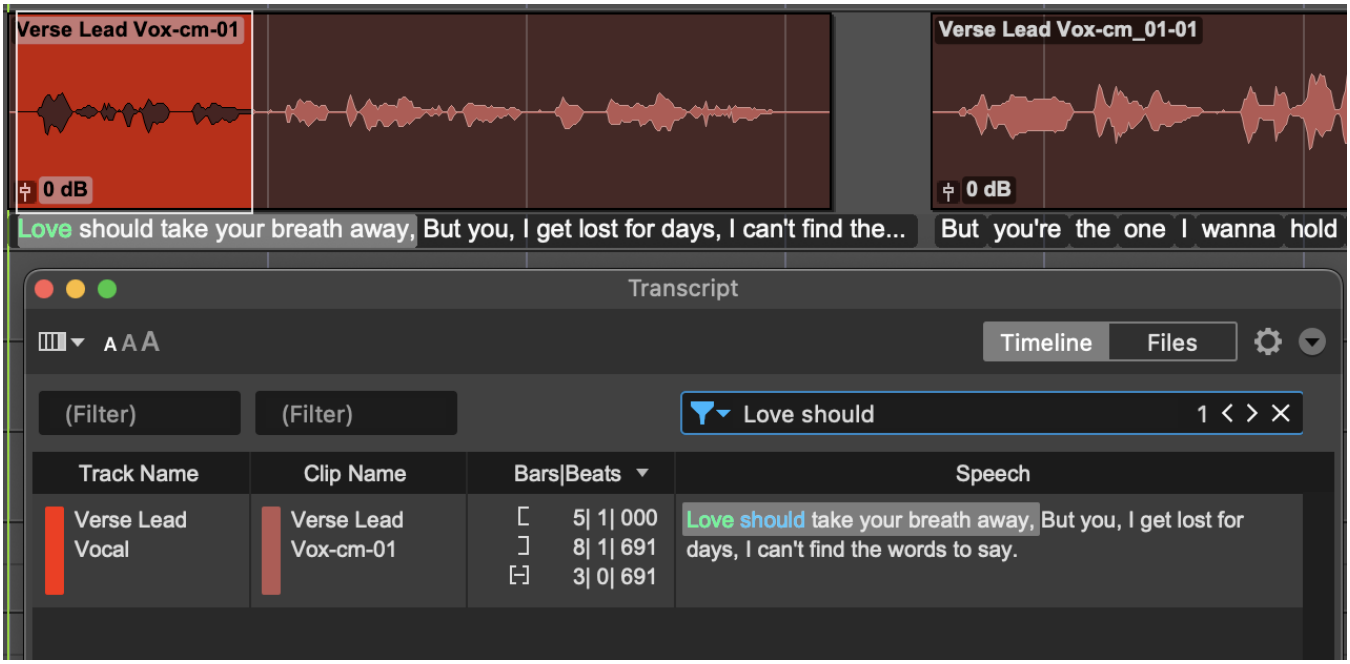
Transcript Window

The Transcript window provides two views: **`Timeline`** and **`Files`**. It lets you search for text, select and audition audio by text, and configure the Transcription Settings.



Selecting Transcribed Text

You can select transcribed text either using the mouse cursor on transcribed test or by using Search in the Transcript window. Selected text in the Timeline view is also focused in on the timeline in the Edit window.



For information on using text search in the Transcript window, see "Common Controls" below.

To select transcribed text in the Transcript window:

- Click and drag to select the text you want in the Speech column.

Double-click to select a whole word, triple-click to select all of the text in the row, Shift-click to extend (or shorten) the selection.

Common Controls

The following controls are common to both Timeline and Files views in the Transcript window.

Font Size

To set the font size between small, medium, and large:

- Click the Font Size icon.

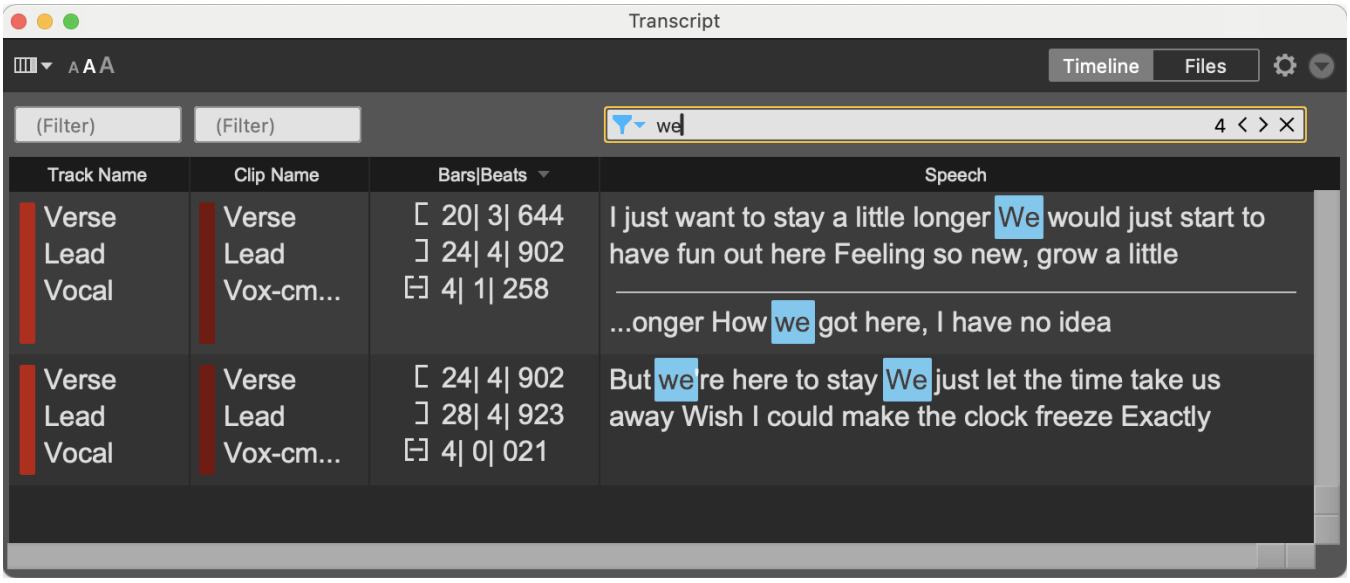


Search

The Search field lets you search transcribed audio by text. You can further refine your search using filters.

Press Command+Left or Right Arrow (Mac), or Control+Left or Right Arrow to move to the previous or next result (this is especially usefully when Auto-Preview is enabled).

Press Shift+Command+Left or Right Arrow, or Control+Shift+Left or Right Arrow (Windows) to move to the previous or next result and select the entire word to which the search term belongs.



As with the Clip List, the Transcript Window includes a Search History of the 20 most recently searched items.

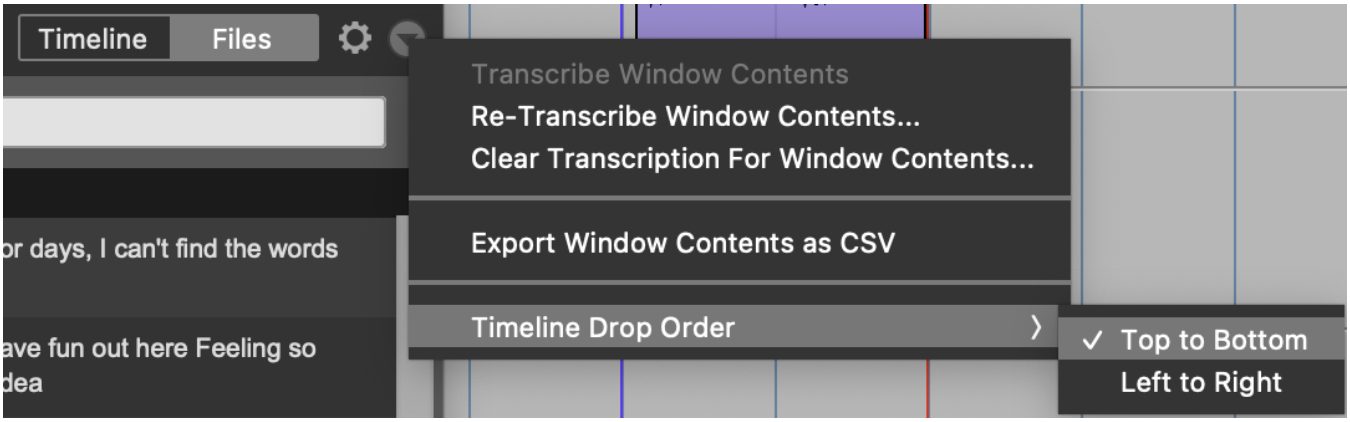
Search Filters

In addition to the text filters at the top of each column, you can access the following filters from the Filter (funnel) icon.

To filter search results, select (deselect) any of the following:

- Untranscribed Audio
- Empty Transcriptions
- Edit Selection Only (Timeline View only)
- Track Selection Only (Timeline View only)
- Hidden Tracks (Timeline View only)

Transcript Window Menu



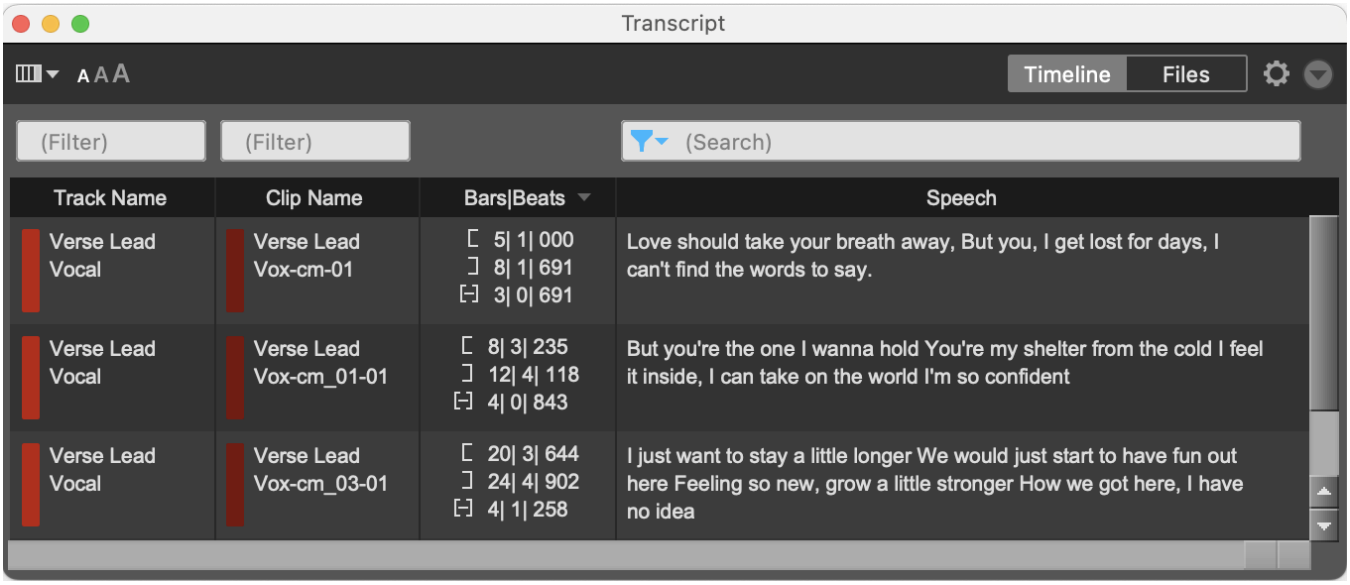
The Transcript Window menu provides the following commands:

- **`Transcribe Window Contents`**: Transcribes any clips and files shown in the current Transcript window view that have not already been transcribed. If there are no clips or files showing that have not been transcribed, this command is grayed out.

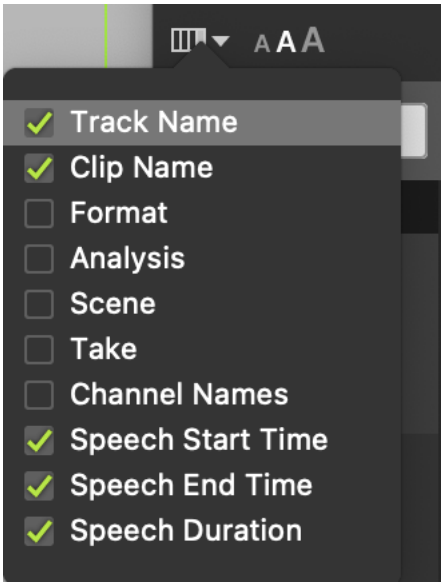
- **`Re-Transcribe Window Contents`**: Re-transcribes all clips and files shown in the current Transcript window view using the current transcription settings. This is useful if you had previously transcribed with the wrong language hint, or with analysis options that did not give the best results and you want to re-transcribe with different settings.
- **`Clear Transcription for Window Contents`**: Clears all transcription data for all clips and files shown in the current Transcript window view. If no clips or files have transcription data this command is grayed out.
- **`Export Window Contents as CSV`**: Exports a CSV (comma-separated value) file of all the columns and rows that are currently shown in the Transcript window. This is useful for generating a text-based summary of any transcribed audio in the session along with related data (such as start and end times, durations, and clip and track names along with the actual speech data itself). Hidden columns are not part of the export and any filters applied also affect the output. Speech data that is truncated in a row (due to exceeding five lines) is still exported in full.
- **`Timeline Drop Order`** (Files View only):
  - **`Top to Bottom`**: When dragging and dropping from the Transcribe window to the timeline, selections are dropped on tracks from top to bottom. New tracks are created as necessary.
  - **`Left to Right`**: When dragging and dropping the Transcribe window to the timeline, selections are dropped on tracks from left to right. New tracks are created as necessary.

Timeline View

Timeline view provides a locked, manually filterable view of all of the transcribed text in the session, representing what you hear when you play back, left to right, top to bottom. In Timeline view you can navigate and edit audio by making text selections. Selecting text in the Transcript window makes a corresponding edit selection in the Edit Window. Conversely, an edit selection in the Edit Window is reflected by highlighted text in the Transcript window. This is especially useful for finding audio by text on the timeline and editing audio on tracks.



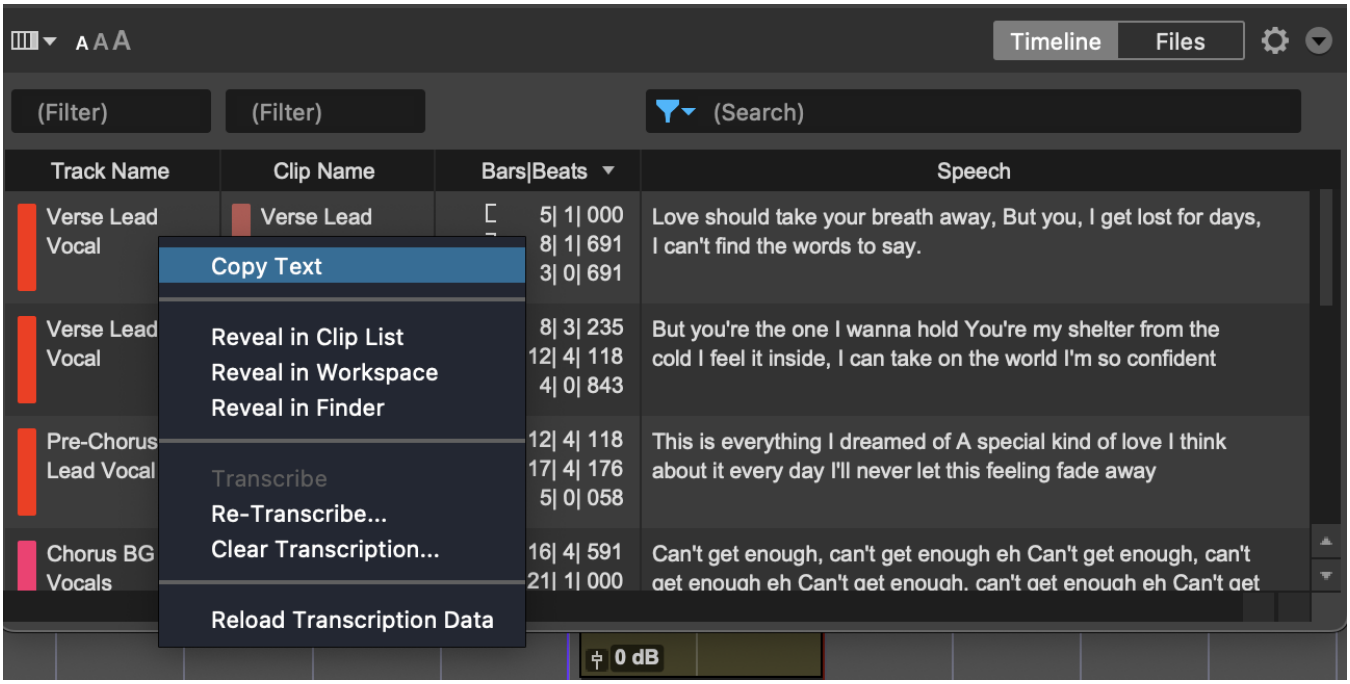
Timeline View Menu



The Timeline View menu lets you select which columns to show. Track Name and Clip Name are shown by default. The Main Counter location and Speech columns are always shown.

- **`File Name`**: Displays the file name.
- **`Format`**: Displays the file channel width format.
- **`Analysis`**: Displays the Analysis setting used to transcribe the file.
- **`On Timeline`**: Displays a check mark if the file or clips from the file are on the timeline.
- **`Scene`**: Displays the scene.
- **`Take`**: Displays the take.
- **`Channel Names`**: Displays channel names in the file.
- **`Speech Start Time`**: Displays the start time (using the selected timebase) of the transcription.
- **`Speech End Time`**: Displays the end time (using the selected timebase) of the transcription.
- **`Speech Duration`**: Displays the duration (using the selected timebase) of the transcription.

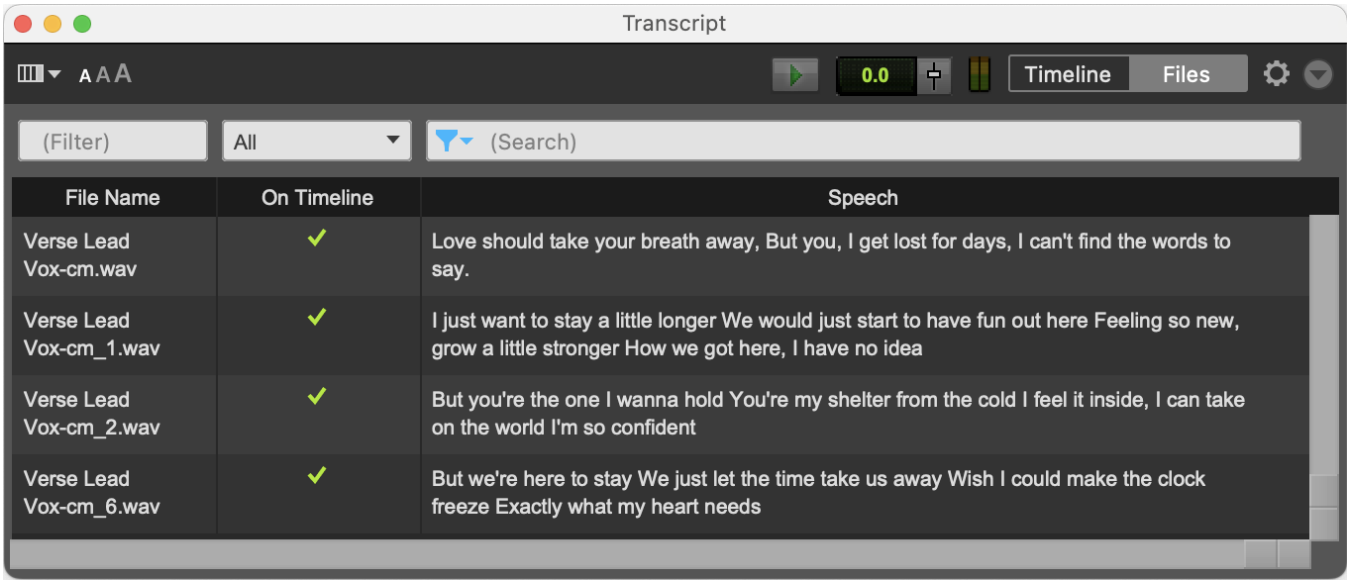
Timeline View Right-Click Menu



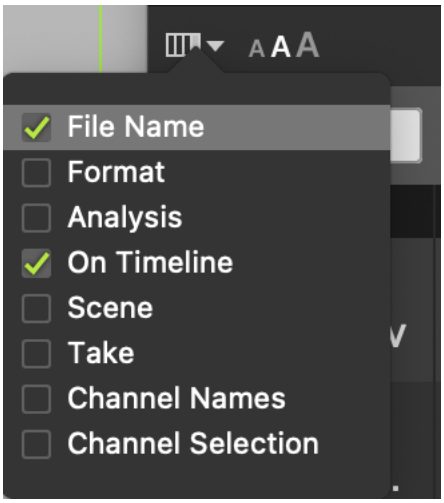
- **`Copy Text`**: copies the selected text to the clipboard.
- **`Reveal in Clip List`**: reveals the clip in the Clip List.
- **`Reveal in Workspace`**: reveals the clip in a Workspace browser.
- **`Reveal in Finder/Explorer`**: reveals the file containing the clip in the Finder (Mac) or Explorer (Windows).
- **`Transcribe`**: transcribes the clip.
- **`Re-Transcibe`**: re-transcribes the clip.
- **`Clear Transcription`**: clears the transcription from the clip.
- **`Reload Transcription Data`**: reloads transcription data for the clip from the file (WAV only).

Files View

Files view displays the contents of the session, and lets you search for content, preview, and copy or spot selections to the timeline. You can see and filter files that are used or not used on the timeline. Use Files view to drag and drop audio from the Transcribe window to the timeline in the Edit window.



Files View Menu

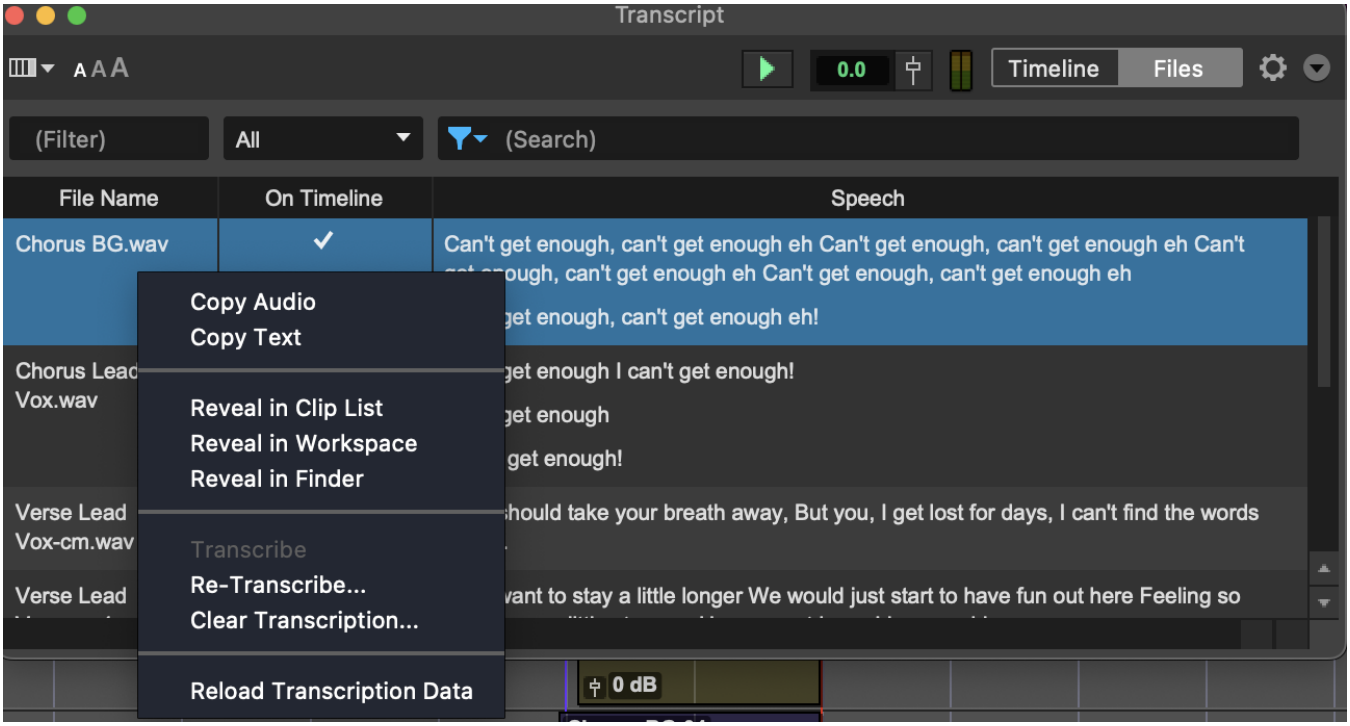


The Files View menu lets you select which columns to show. File Name and On Timeline are shown by default. The Speech column is always shown.

- **`File Name`**: Displays the file name.
- **`Format`**: Displays the file channel width format.
- **`Analysis`**: Displays the Analysis setting used to transcribe the file.
- **`On Timeline`**: Displays a check mark if the file or clips from the file are on the timeline.
- **`Scene`**: Displays the scene.
- **`Take`**: Displays the take.
- **`Channel Names`**: Displays channel names in the file.
- **`Channel Selection`**: Determines which channel's data to copy (for example, to the timeline) and also which channel to audition.

> *The Channel Selection selector only appears for interleaved multichannel files that contain a summed transcription analysis. Interleaved files that have individual channel analysis show each channel with an analysis on separate rows. Multi-mono files always show each file on a separate row.*

Files View Right-Click Menu



- **`Copy Audio`**: copies the audio for the selected text to the clipboard.
- **`Copy Text`**: copies the selected text to the clipboard.
- **`Reveal in Clip List`**: reveals the file in the Clip List.
- **`Reveal in Explosive`**: reveals the file in a Workspace browser.
- **`Reveal in Finder/Explorer`**: reveals the file in the Finder (Mac) or Explorer (Windows).
- **`Transcribe`**: transcribes the file.
- **`Re-Transcibe`**: re-transcribes the file.
- **`Clear Transcription`**: clears the transcription from the file.
- **`Reload Transcription Data`**: reloads transcription data from the file (WAV only).

Playback Audio

Click the Play button to audition selected text in the Transcript window in **`Files`** view. Click it again to stop playback.

Right-click the Play button to select (or deselect) the following Preview options:

Loop Preview

When enabled, the selected text or file loops on playback.

Auto-Preview

When enabled, selecting text or a file automatically plays back.

Spacebar Toggles File Preview

Enable to use the Spacebar to start and stop playback.

The Loop Preview and Auto-Preview options are especially useful for scanning through alternate takes.

Volume

The Volume fader lets you adjust the playback volume.

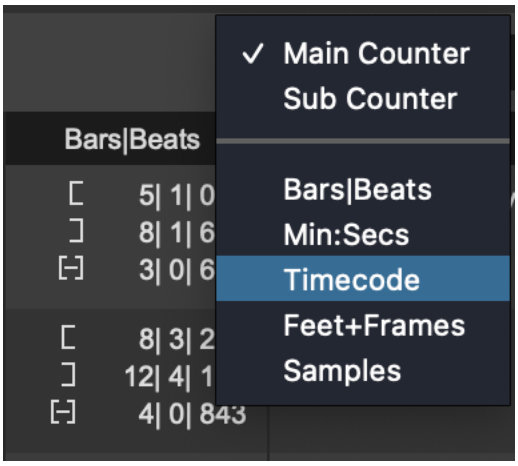
Meters

The meters display the audio volume.

Timebase Selector

To specify the timebase displayed in the Speech Start/End/Duration column:

- Select the desired Timebase from the Timebase selector.



Editing with Text

Once you have transcribed text from your audio, you can use it as a reference to edit that audio. You can select text in the Transcription lane of any given track, in Transcript Track view, or in the Transcript window and select the corresponding audio as well.

Drag and Drop Text to Timeline

In Files view, you can drag and drop files from the Transcript window to a track or blank space (creating a new track) in the timeline. You can also press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) to drag and drop selected text from the Transcript window in Files view to a track or blank space in the timeline to place the corresponding audio on an existing track or to create a new track.

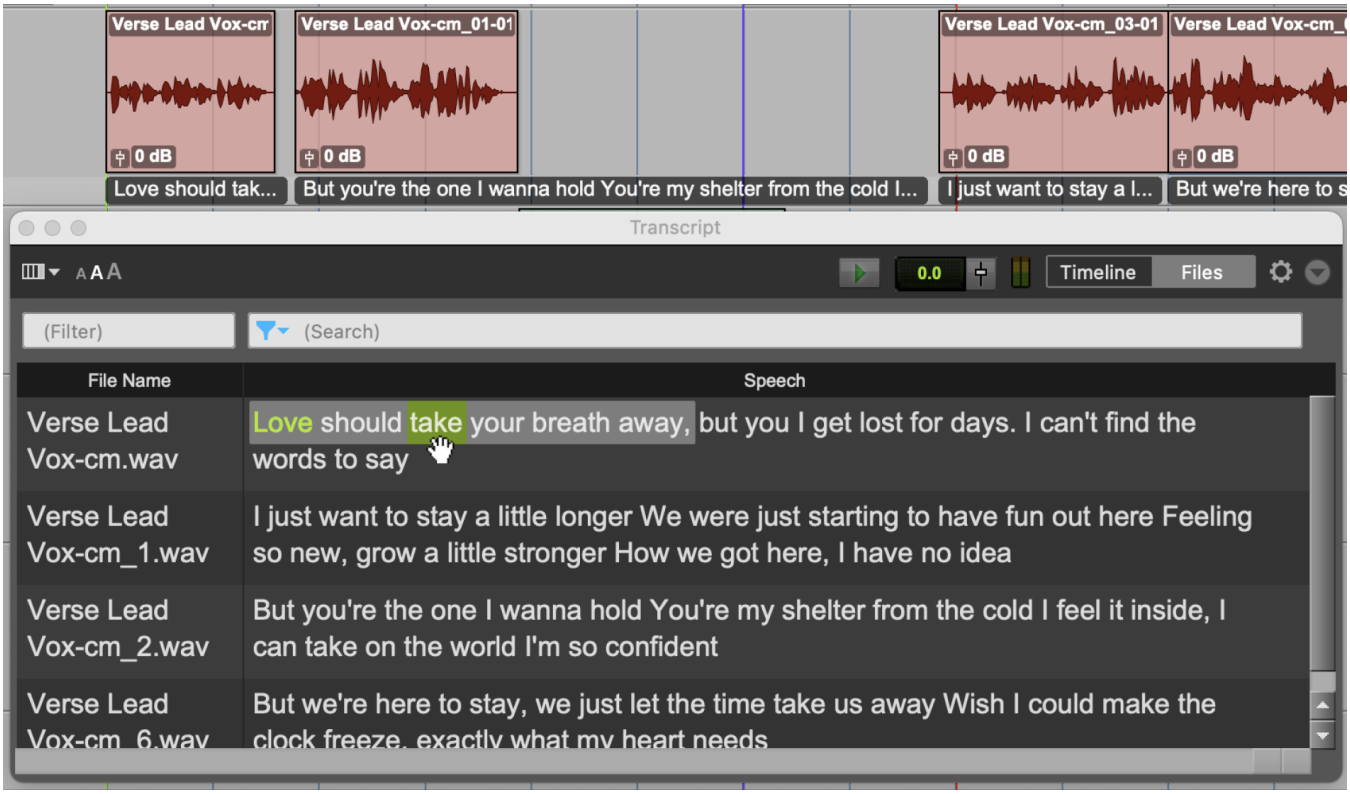
To add a file from the Transcript window to the timeline:

- In Files view, click and drag any row to an existing track or to blank space in the Edit window to create a new track.

To add text associated audio from the Transcript window to the timeline:

1. Select the text you want to add to the timeline.
2. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) and drag the selected text to an existing track or to blank space in the Edit window to create a new track.

Right-click and choose Transcription › Copy Audio, then Paste to tracks in the timeline.

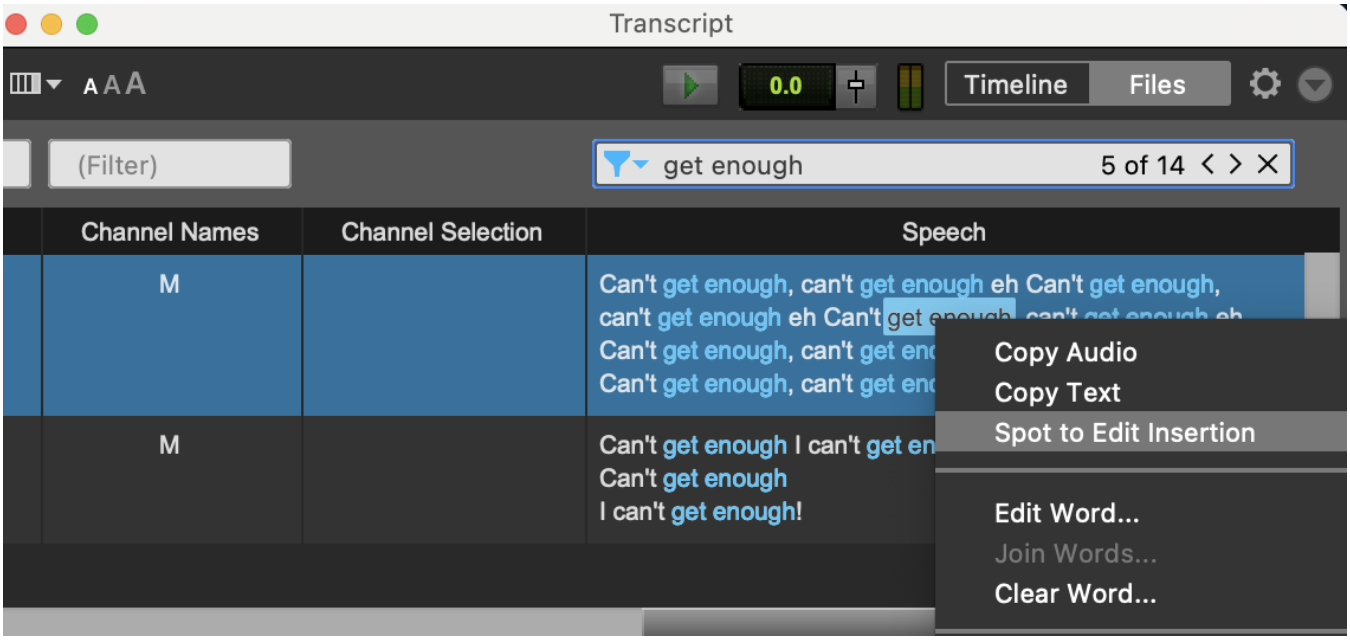


Spot to Edit Insertion in Transcript Window

Pro Tools lets you make a selection in the Transcript window Files view and spot the selected content to the Edit insertion point in the Timeline.

To spot text to the Edit insertion:

1. Place the Edit insertion point to the location you want on a track in the Edit window.
2. In the Transcript window, select the text you want to spot.
3. Right-click and choose **`Spot to Edit Insertion`**.



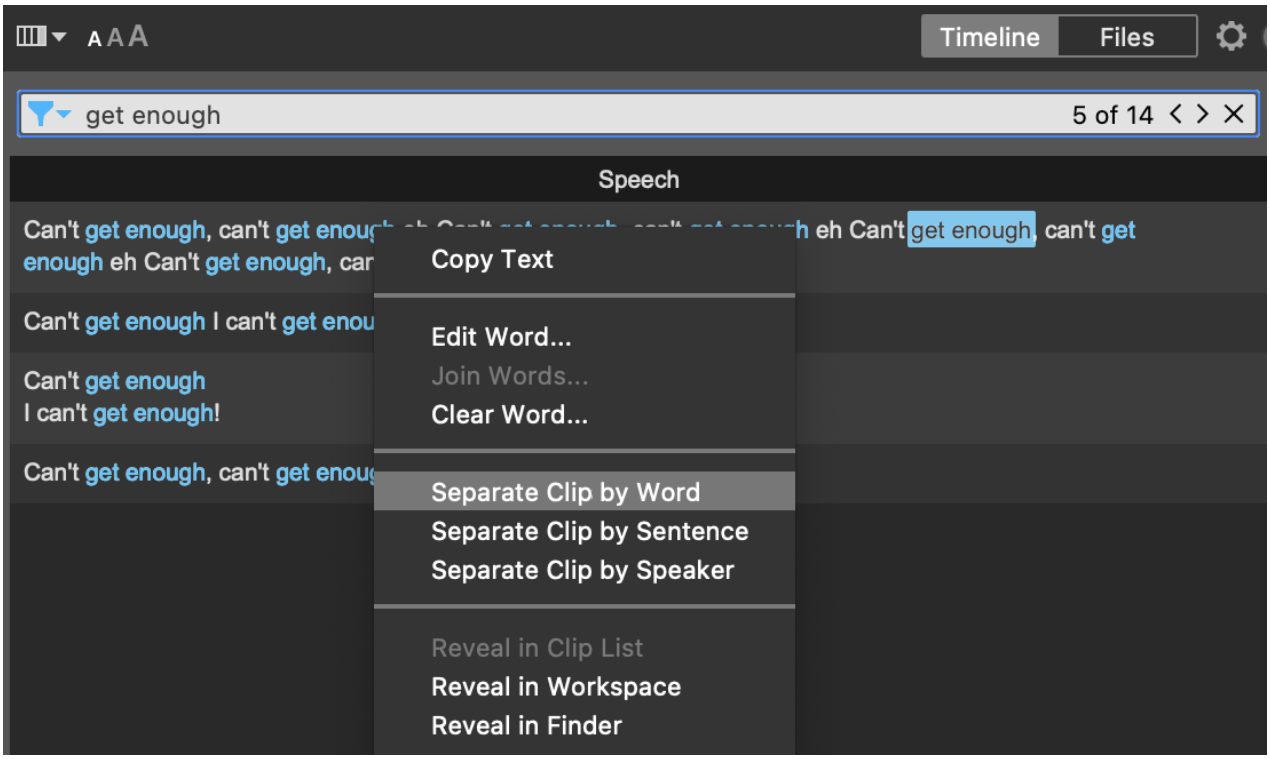
You can also Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) and drag a selected word or phrase from the Transcription window to an audio track on the Timeline.

SSeparate Clip by Word, Sentence, or Speaker

Pro Tools lets you separate a clip by word, sentence, or speaker. This only operates on a single clip at a time, and the operation is performed on the clip as a whole.

To separate clip by word, sentence, or speaker in the Transcript window:

1. Select Timeline view in the Transcript window.
1. Right-click and choose on of the following:
    - Separate Clip by Word
    - Separate Clip by Sentence
    - Separate Clip by Speaker



Navigate to Audio by Text

Pro Tools lets you navigate to and focus audio in the Timeline by transcribed text.

To place the insert point at the beginning of the word and scroll it into view:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) a word in either the Transcript window (Timeline view) or Transcription Lane of a track.

To select, scroll into view, and zoom to fit selection:

- Command-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Shift-click (Windows) a word in either the Transcript window (Timeline view) or Transcription Lane of a track.

Transcribe in the Workspace

Pro Tools lets you **Transcribe**, **Re-Transcribe**, and **Clear Transcription** from the Workspace for single files, a selection of files, or the contents of entire folders (whether there is a session open or not). This eliminates the need to import all audio files into a session in order to transcribe them.

For any non-writable file transcribed from the Workspace outside of a session, its transcription data is written to an AnalysisData.ptadb file found in /Users/Shared/Pro Tools (macOS) or C:\Users\Public\Pro Tools (Windows). When importing such a file into a session, its transcription data is copied into the session's cache file.

To Transcribe, Re-Transcribe, or Clear Transcription for one or more files in the Workspace:

- In a Workspace browser, right-click a single file, folder, or a selection of files or folders, and choose one of the following:
  - **Transcription > Transcribe**
  - **Transcription > Re-Transcribe**
  - **Transcription > Clear Transcription**

Transcription Settings without Session Open

Pro Tools lets you access the Transcription Settings window (**Setup > Transcription Settings**) whether or not a session is open so you can adjust language and multichannel settings as desired before transcribing or re-transcribing from the Workspace.

Transcription and Transcription Channel Column

The **Transcription** column displays transcriptions in audio files.

The **Transcription Channel** column in the Workspace that lets you right-click to select the channel that includes the transcription data you want to view for an interleaved multichannel or field recorder file.

Searching by Transcription in the Workspace

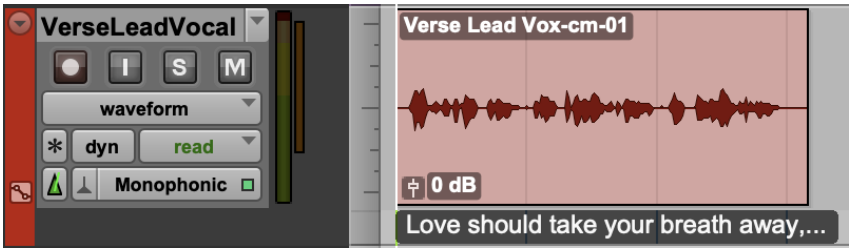
Pro Tools lets you search the Workspace by transcribed data. Transcription text is found when performing a simple ("Any Text Column") search, as well as when searching specifically for only transcription data using Advanced Search. For interleaved files that have transcription data for more than one channel, the file appears in search results even though the specific channel on which the match was found on is not identified.

Track Transcription

To transcribe text from audio on an entire track:

- Right-click the Track Name plate and enable **Keep Track Transcribed**.

The transcription is displayed in a lane under the main track view. Any audio that you subsequently record or add to the track will also be transcribed. When **Keep Track Transcribed** is disabled, audio that is subsequently recorded or added to the track is not automatically transcribed. Any transcriptions up to this point remain.



To show (or hide) the Track Transcription lane:

1. Select the track you want.
2. Select (or deselect) **`View > Track Transcription Lane`**.

Press Control+Shift+U (macOS) or Start+Shift+U (Windows).

To view the transcription over the audio waveform:

- Click the track view selector and select **`Transcript`**.



Transcription Track View

Transcription data is automatically transferred to newly created files when consolidating selections, rendering clips using AudioSuite plugins, committing tracks or selections, bouncing tracks, and when files are rendered as part of a Media Composer compatible session.

Show Transcription Lane per Track

The track **`Show Transcription Lane`** option is enabled by default for all audio tracks, although the lane is only shown when there is at least one clip with transcribed data on the track.

`View > Track Transcription Lane` *must be enabled for any transcription to show regardless of the track* ***`Show Transcription Lane`*** *status.*

To show (or hide) the Transcription lane for any audio track:

- Right-click on the track name and select (or deselect) **`Show Transcription Lane`**.



Clip Transcription

You can transcribe text from audio on a clip by clip basis (even though the entire audio file will be analyzed), either on clips in the Timeline or in the Clip List.

To transcribe text from an audio clip in the Timeline or in the Clip List:

- On the Timeline or in the Clip List, right-click a clip (or a selection of multiple clips) and choose **`Transcription > Transcribe`**.

To clear the transcription from a clip:

- On the Timeline or in the Clip List, right-click the clip and choose **Transcription > Clear Transcription**.

⚠ **This will clear transcriptions from the whole audio file, so it affects all clips from the same file.**

To reload transcription data for clips from WAV files:

- On the Timeline or in the Clip List, right-click a clip (or a selection of multiple clips) and choose **Transcription > Reload Transcription Data**.

Re-Transcribe Text

Pro Tools lets you re-transcribe text from an already-transcribed file, but using different settings (such as changing the language, or using a different analysis option) to get a better transcription. It does not recall cleared transcription data.

To re-transcribe using different settings:

1. On the Timeline or in the Clip List, right-click a clip (or a selection of multiple clips) and choose **Transcription > Re-Transcribe**.
2. The Transcription Settings window appears (see , change the settings as desired and click **OK**.

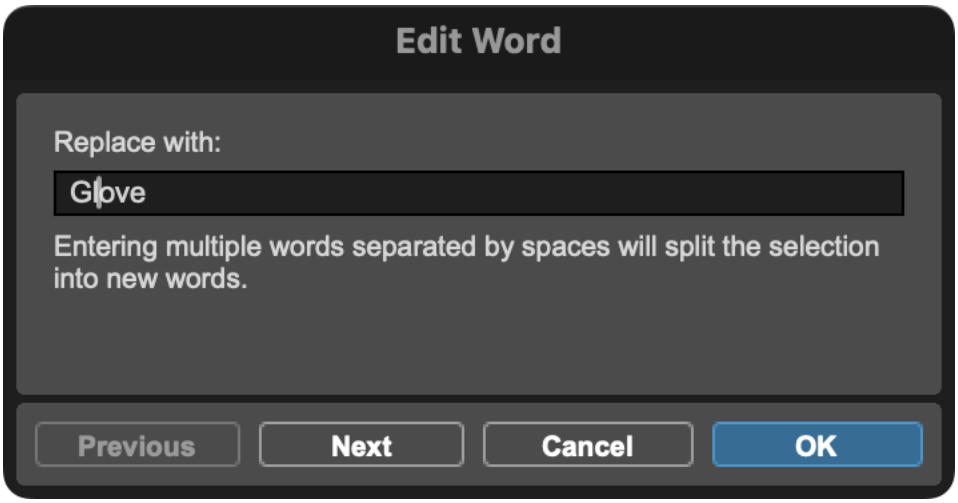
Edit, Join, and Clear Words

Pro Tools lets you edit words in transcriptions. This is useful if you need to correct any mis-transcribed words or phrases.

*The Keyboard Shortcuts window (**Setup > Keyboard Shortcuts**) lets you define custom key commands for **Edit Word**, **Join Words**, and **Clear Word**(s) commands for both the Edit and Transcript windows.*

To edit transcribed words in the Edit window (Transcription Lane or Transcript view) or in the Transcript window (Timeline or Files view):

1. Right-click the word and choose **Transcription > Edit Word**.
2. In the Edit Word dialog, edit the word as desired and click **OK**.

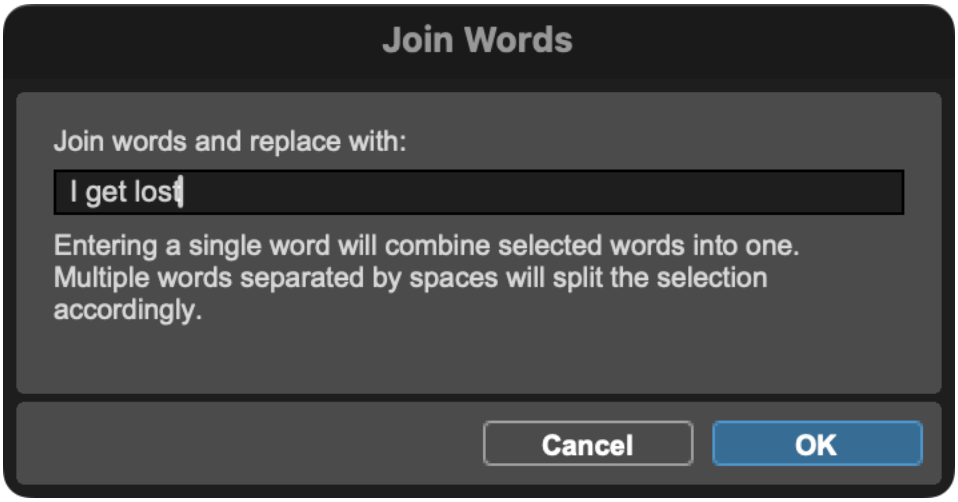


You can enter multiple words separated by spaces (for example, if you want to replace the single word "Mississippi" with two words "Ms. Hippy"). Doing so divides the original word index into multiple segments so each word becomes its own separate entry. Be aware that when doing this, timings for the new words will be approximated. You can also leave the replacement text empty, which effectively clears the word.

You can use the Previous and Next buttons to navigate between words in the selected clip/file, or use Command+left arrow/right arrow (macOS) or Control+left arrow/right arrow (Windows). In the case of clips in the Edit window and Transcript window Timeline view, the buttons/shortcuts only let you navigate through visible text for a clip. If a clip has been trimmed, it is not possible to navigate to words that are not seen.

To join words:

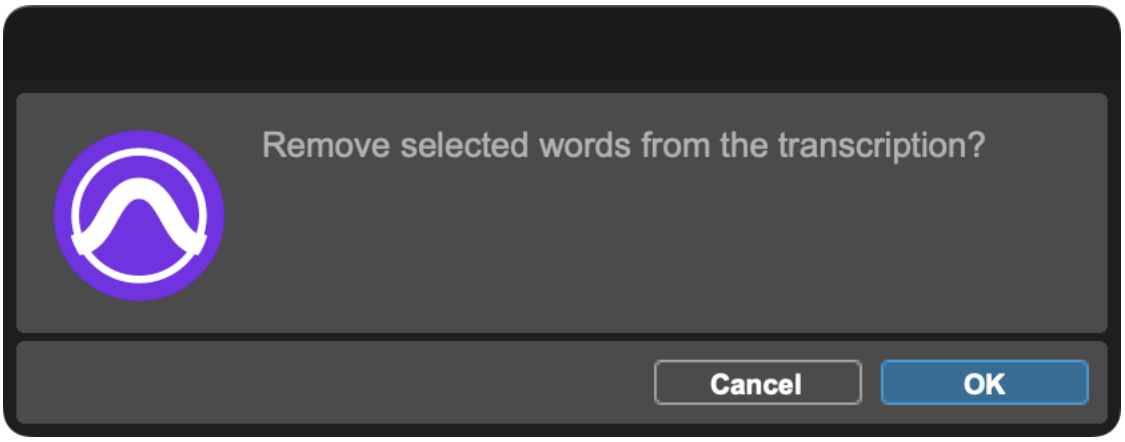
1. Select and right-click the words you want joined, and choose **`Transcription > Join Words`**.
2. In the Join Words dialog, edit the words as desired and click **`OK`**.



*Entering a single replacement word and pressing **`OK`** creates a single word index from the beginning of the first selected word to the end of the last selected word. However, you can also enter multiple replacement words, but doing so re-divides the total duration of the selection into multiple segments corresponding to the number of words entered, and the timing of each word is approximated.*

To clear word(s):

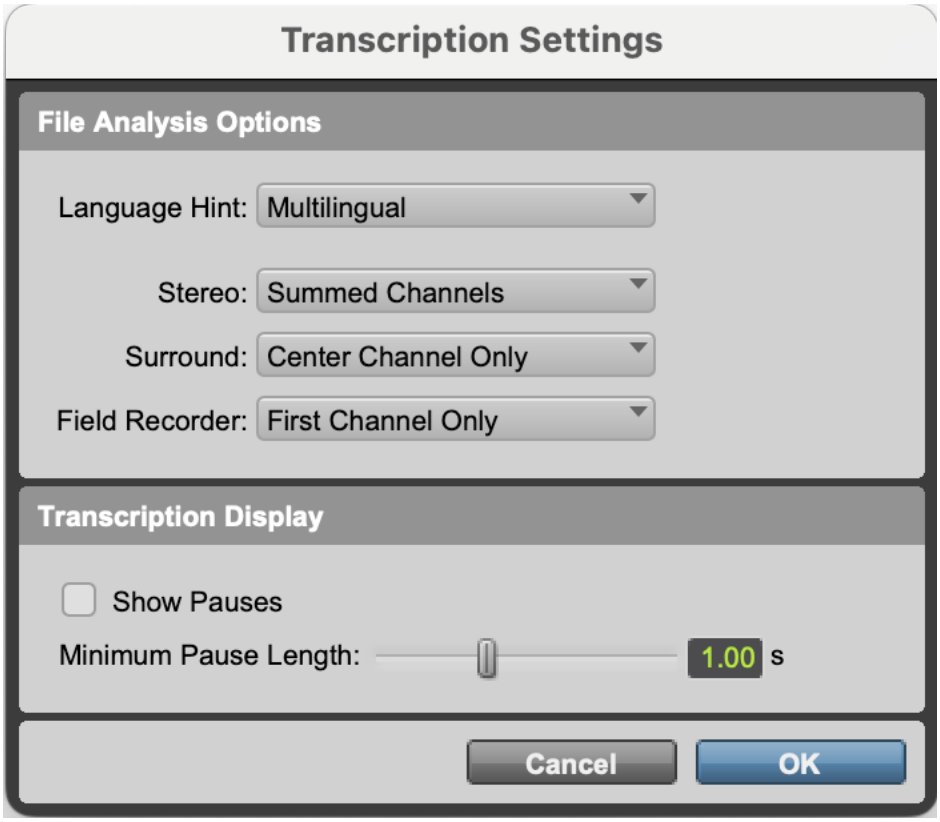
1. Right-click the word(s) you want to clear, and choose **`Transcription > Clear Word(s)`**.
2. When prompted click **`OK`** to clear the word.



Transcription Settings

To access Transcription Settings, do one of the following:

- Choose **`Setup > Transcription Settings`**.
- In the Transcription window (**`Window > Transcript`**), click the Settings button (gear icon) in the upper-right corner of the window.



File Analysis Options

Language Hint

This setting determines what the algorithm expects when it is transcribing audio. Multilingual acts as an auto-detect, while a specific language assumes that any incoming speech is in the specified language. If your audio is in a single language, select that language to ensure the most accurate possible transcription.

The following languages are available:

- Multilingual ‹default›
- Arabic
- Danish
- German
- English
- Spanish
- Farsi
- French
- Hebrew

- Hindi
- Indonesian
- Italian
- Japanese
- Korean
- Dutch
- Polish
- Portuguese
- Russian
- Swedish
- Thai
- Turkish
- Mandarin

Stereo

Select the desired option for how transcription analysis handles stereo audio:

- **`Summed Channels`**: sums both left and right channels prior to analysis and transcription.
- **`Individual Channels`**: analyze and transcribe both left and right channels independently.
- **`Left Channel Only`**: analyze and transcribe only the left channel.
- **`Right Channel Only`**: analyze and transcribe only the right channel.

Surround

Select the desired option for how transcription analysis handles surround (LCR to 9.1.6) audio:

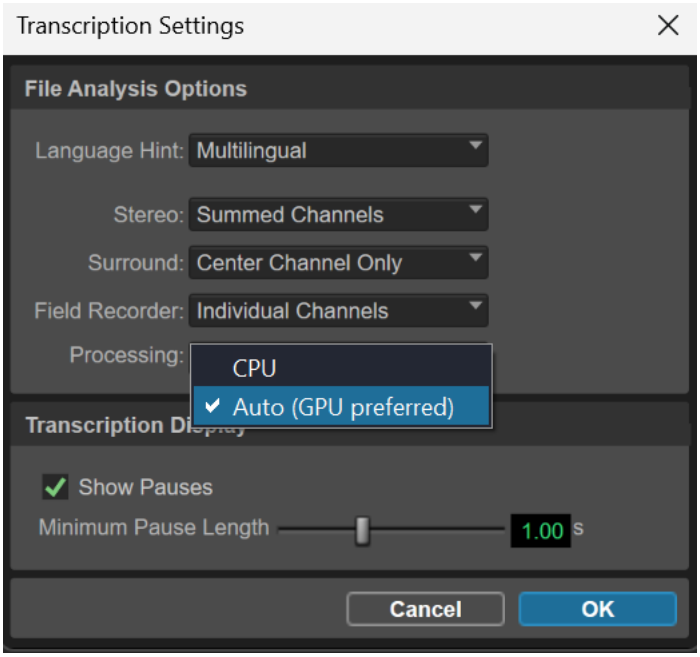
- **`Summed Channels`**: sums all channels prior to analysis and transcription.
- **`Individual Channels`**: analyze and transcribe each channel individually.
- **`Center Channel Only`**: analyze and transcribe only the center channel.

Field Recorder

Select the desired option for how transcription analysis handles audio imported from a Field Recorder:

- **`Summed Channels`**: sums all channels prior to analysis and transcription.
- **`Individual Channels`**: analyze and transcribe each channel individually.
- **`First Channel Only`**: analyze and transcribe only the first channel.

Transcription Processing Mode (Windows Only)



On Windows, Pro Tools runs a short test to determine if the GPU can be used for transcription rather than the CPU. If it returns a failure, Pro Tools presents a message that processing will be handled by the CPU and that you can save that choice for future processing. Generally, the GPU provides faster processing for transcription.

Transcription Display

Show Pauses

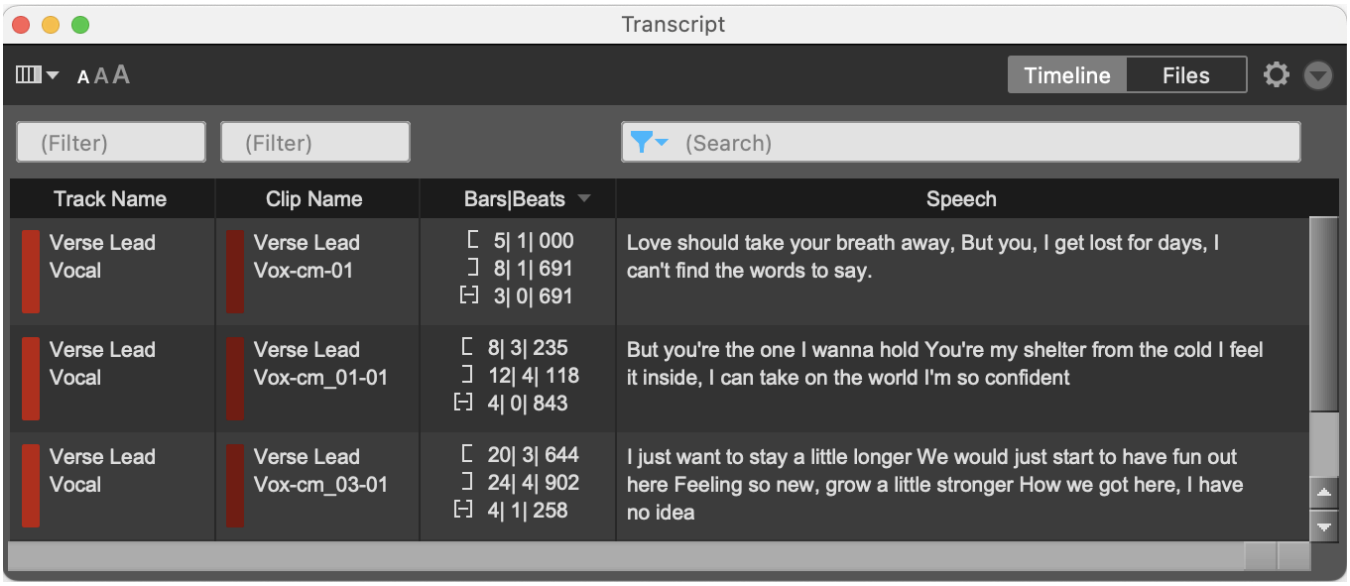
Enable (or disable) to show (or hide) pauses in-between words. Pauses appear as an ellipsis [...].

Minimum Pause Length

Adjust the **`Minimum Pause Length`** as desired between 0.10 and 2.50 seconds.

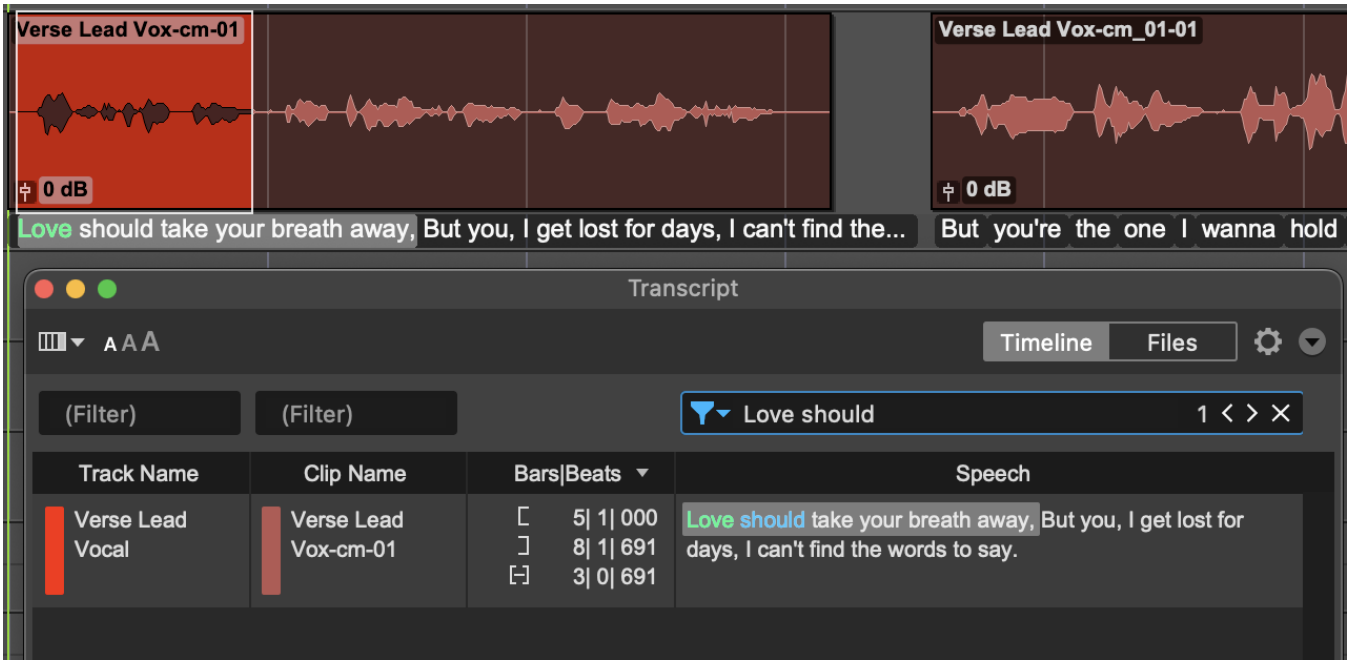
Transcript Window

The Transcript window provides two views: **`Timeline`** and **`Files`**. It lets you search for text, select and audition audio by text, and configure the Transcription Settings.



Selecting Transcribed Text

You can select transcribed text either using the mouse cursor on transcribed test or by using Search in the Transcript window. Selected text in the Timeline view is also focused in on the timeline in the Edit window.



For information on using text search in the Transcript window, see "Common Controls" below.

To select transcribed text in the Transcript window:

- Click and drag to select the text you want in the Speech column.

Double-click to select a whole word, triple-click to select all of the text in the row, Shift-click to extend (or shorten) the selection.

Common Controls

The following controls are common to both Timeline and Files views in the Transcript window.

Font Size

To set the font size between small, medium, and large:

- Click the Font Size icon.

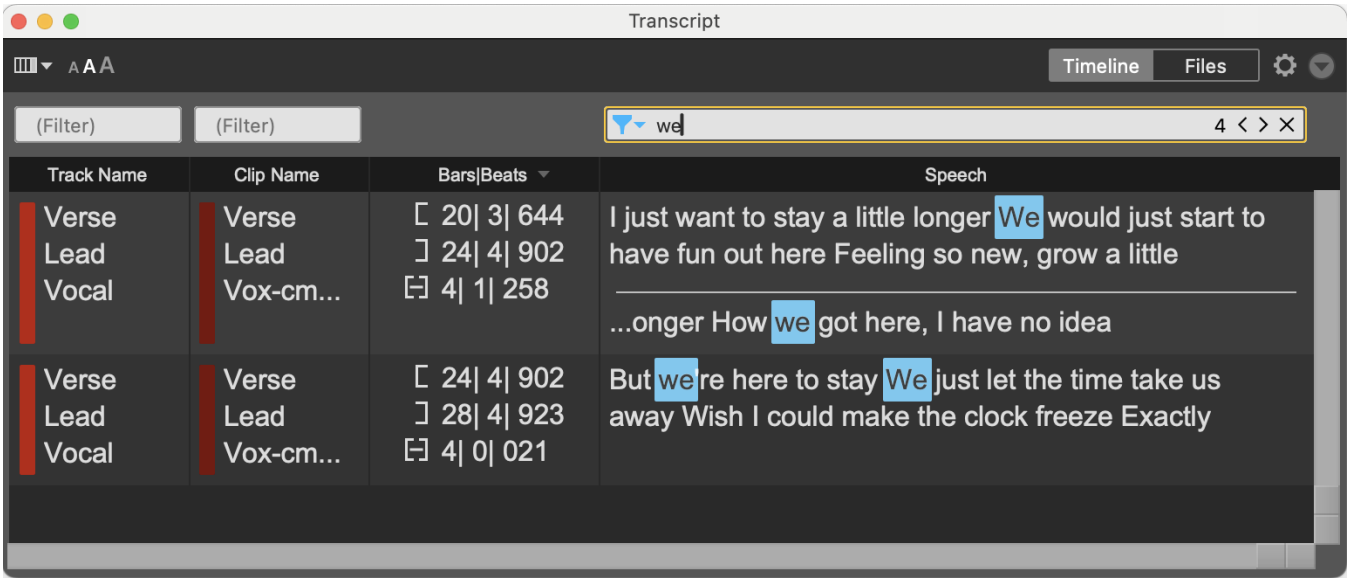


Search

The Search field lets you search transcribed audio by text. You can further refine your search using filters.

Press Command+Left or Right Arrow (Mac), or Control+Left or Right Arrow to move to the previous or next result (this is especially usefully when Auto-Preview is enabled).

Press Shift+Command+Left or Right Arrow (Mac), or Control+Shift+Left or Right Arrow (Windows) to move to the previous or next result and select the entire word to which the search term belongs.



As with the Clip List, the Transcript Window includes a Search History of the 20 most recently searched items.

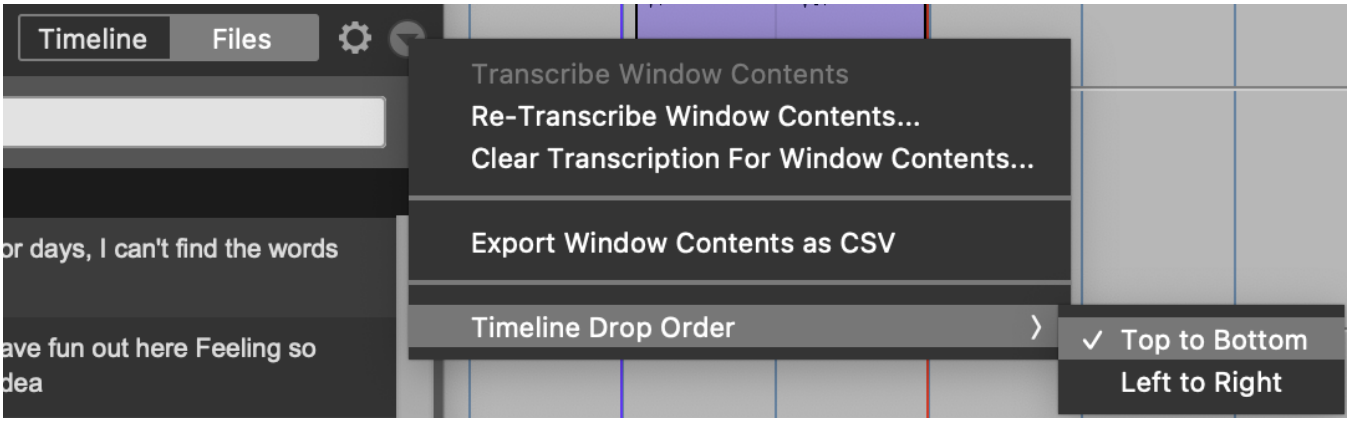
Search Filters

In addition to the text filters at the top of each column, you can access the following filters from the Filter (funnel) icon.

To filter search results, select (deselect) any of the following:

- Untranscribed Audio
- Empty Transcriptions
- Edit Selection Only (Timeline View only)
- Track Selection Only (Timeline View only)
- Hidden Tracks (Timeline View only)

Transcript Window Menu

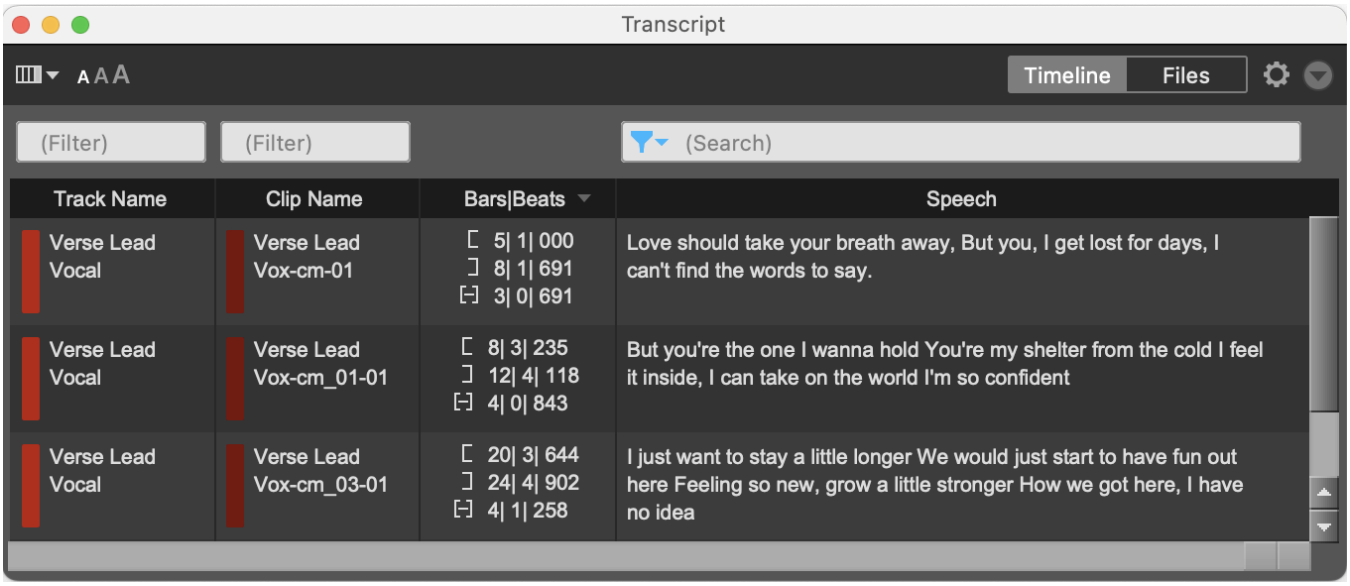


The Transcript Window menu provides the following commands:

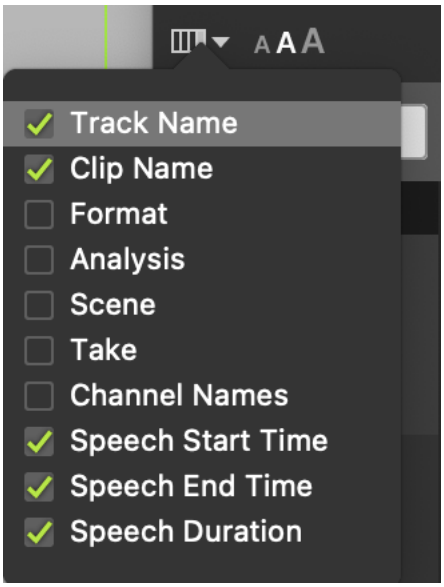
- **`Transcribe Window Contents`**: Transcribes any clips and files shown in the current Transcript window view that have not already been transcribed. If there are no clips or files showing that have not been transcribed, this command is grayed out.
- **`Re-Transcribe Window Contents`**: Re-transcribes all clips and files shown in the current Transcript window view using the current transcription settings. This is useful if you had previously transcribed with the wrong language hint, or with analysis options that did not give the best results and you want to re-transcribe with different settings.
- **`Clear Transcription for Window Contents`**: Clears all transcription data for all clips and files shown in the current Transcript window view. If no clips or files have transcription data this command is grayed out.
- **`Export Window Contents as CSV`**: Exports a CSV (comma-separated value) file of all the columns and rows that are currently shown in the Transcript window. This is useful for generating a text-based summary of any transcribed audio in the session along with related data (such as start and end times, durations, and clip and track names along with the actual speech data itself). Hidden columns are not part of the export and any filters applied also affect the output. Speech data that is truncated in a row (due to exceeding five lines) is still exported in full.
- **`Timeline Drop Order`** (Files View only):
  - **`Top to Bottom`**: When dragging and dropping from the Transcribe window to the timeline, selections are dropped on tracks from top to bottom. New tracks are created as necessary.
  - **`Left to Right`**: When dragging and dropping the Transcribe window to the timeline, selections are dropped on tracks from left to right. New tracks are created as necessary.

Timeline View

Timeline view provides a locked, manually filterable view of all of the transcribed text in the session, representing what you hear when you play back, left to right, top to bottom. In Timeline view you can navigate and edit audio by making text selections. Selecting text in the Transcript window makes a corresponding edit selection in the Edit Window. Conversely, an edit selection in the Edit Window is reflected by highlighted text in the Transcript window. This is especially useful for finding audio by text on the timeline and editing audio on tracks.



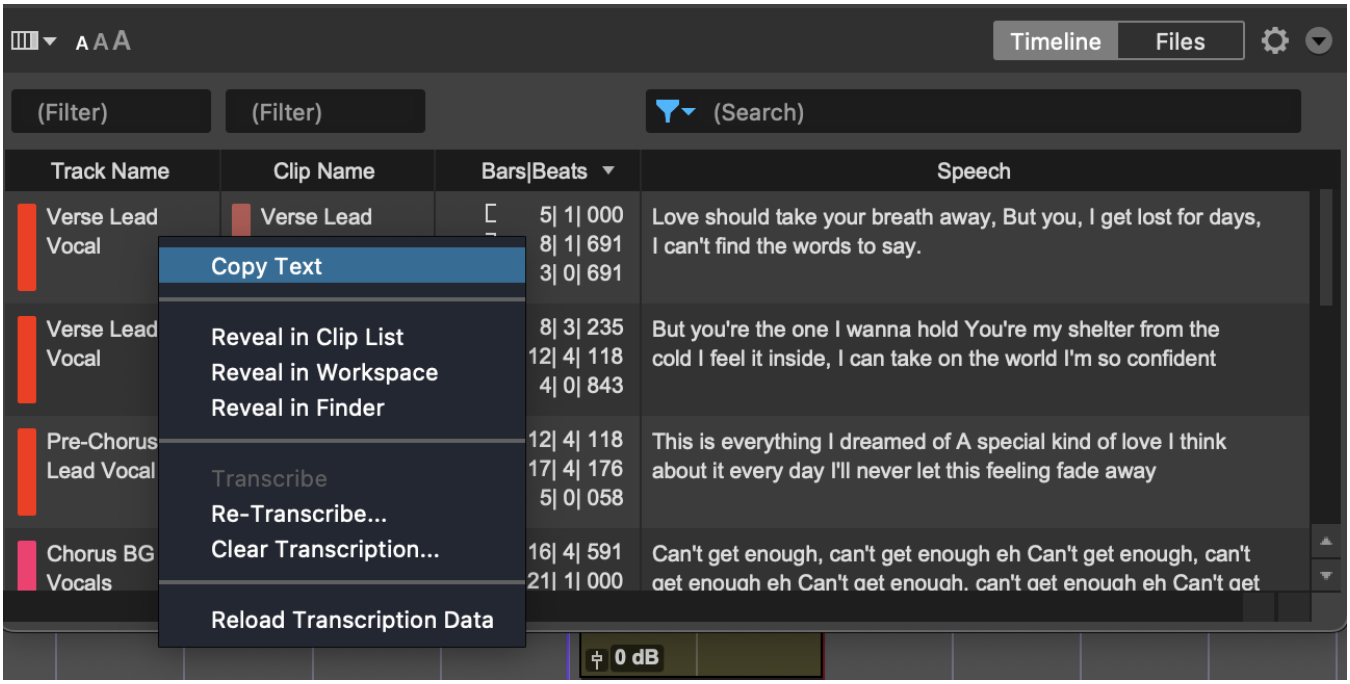
Timeline View Menu



The Timeline View menu lets you select which columns to show. Track Name and Clip Name are shown by default. The Main Counter location and Speech columns are always shown.

- **`File Name`**: Displays the file name.
- **`Format`**: Displays the file channel width format.
- **`Analysis`**: Displays the Analysis setting used to transcribe the file.
- **`On Timeline`**: Displays a check mark if the file or clips from the file are on the timeline.
- **`Scene`**: Displays the scene.
- **`Take`**: Displays the take.
- **`Channel Names`**: Displays channel names in the file.
- **`Speech Start Time`**: Displays the start time (using the selected timebase) of the transcription.
- **`Speech End Time`**: Displays the end time (using the selected timebase) of the transcription.
- **`Speech Duration`**: Displays the duration (using the selected timebase) of the transcription.

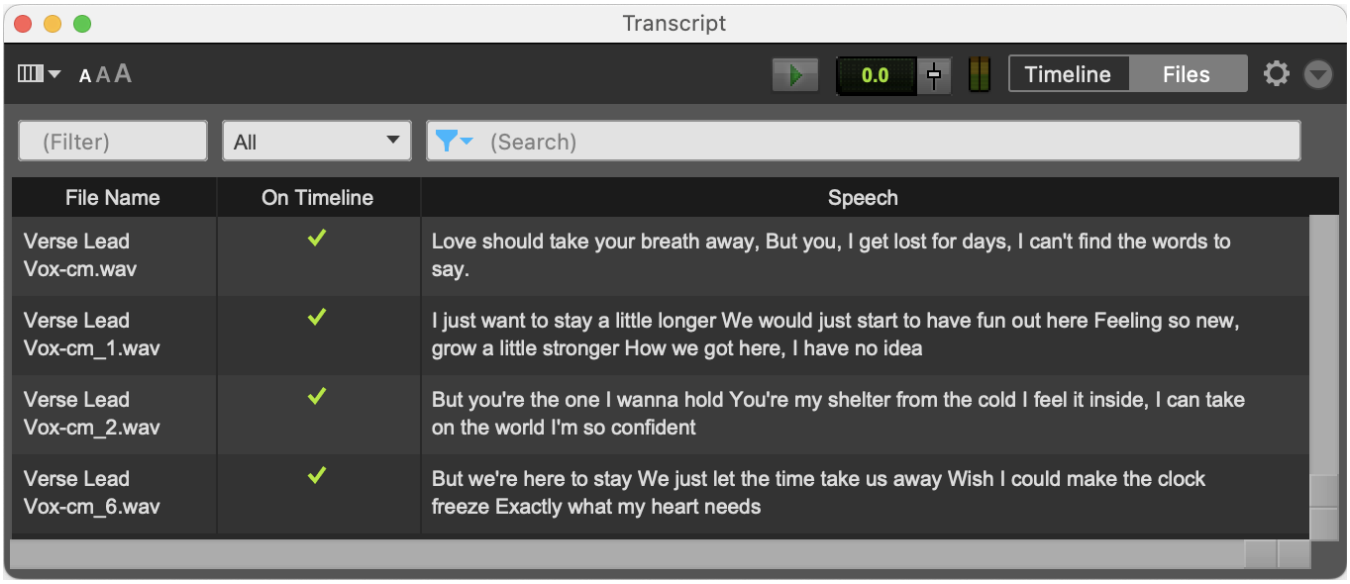
Timeline View Right-Click Menu



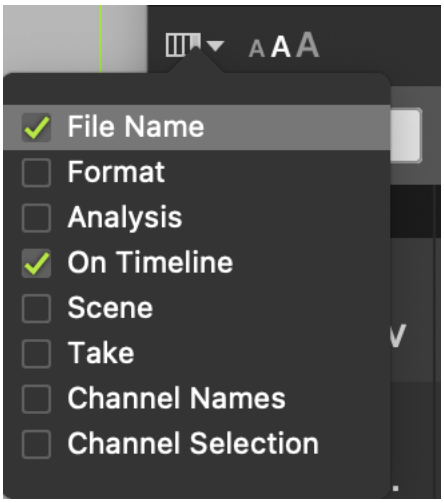
- **`Copy Text`**: copies the selected text to the clipboard.
- **`Reveal in Clip List`**: reveals the clip in the Clip List.
- **`Reveal in Workspace`**: reveals the clip in a Workspace browser.
- **`Reveal in Finder/Explorer`**: reveals the file containing the clip in the Finder (Mac) or Explorer (Windows).
- **`Transcribe`**: transcribes the clip.
- **`Re-Transcibe`**: re-transcribes the clip.
- **`Clear Transcription`**: clears the transcription from the clip.
- **`Reload Transcription Data`**: reloads transcription data for the clip from the file (WAV only).

Files View

Files view displays the contents of the session, and lets you search for content, preview, and copy or spot selections to the timeline. You can see and filter files that are used or not used on the timeline. Use Files view to drag and drop audio from the Transcribe window to the timeline in the Edit window.



Files View Menu

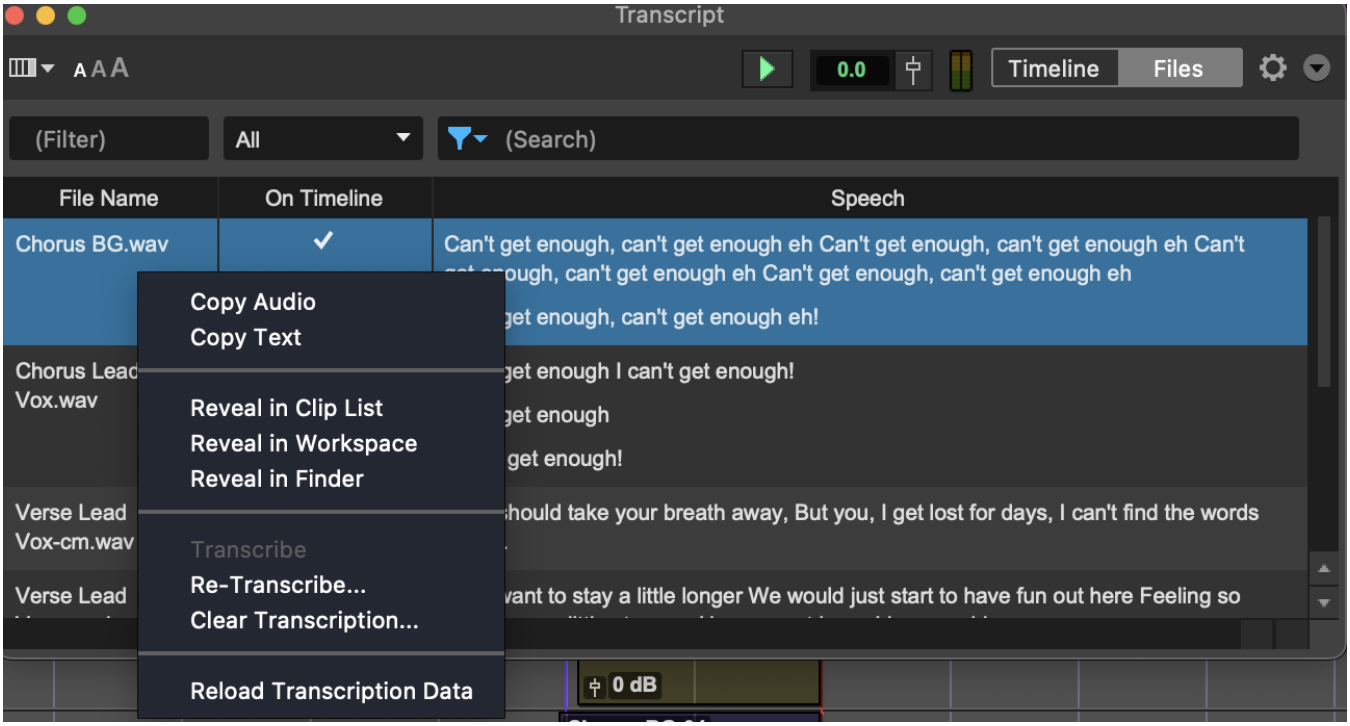


The Files View menu lets you select which columns to show. File Name and On Timeline are shown by default. The Speech column is always shown.

- **`File Name`**: Displays the file name.
- **`Format`**: Displays the file channel width format.
- **`Analysis`**: Displays the Analysis setting used to transcribe the file.
- **`On Timeline`**: Displays a check mark if the file or clips from the file are on the timeline.
- **`Scene`**: Displays the scene.
- **`Take`**: Displays the take.
- **`Channel Names`**: Displays channel names in the file.
- **`Channel Selection`**: Determines which channel's data to copy (for example, to the timeline) and also which channel to audition.

> *The Channel Selection selector only appears for interleaved multichannel files that contain a summed transcription analysis. Interleaved files that have individual channel analysis show each channel with an analysis on separate rows. Multi-mono files always show each file on a separate row.*

Files View Right-Click Menu



- **`Copy Audio`**: copies the audio for the selected text to the clipboard.
- **`Copy Text`**: copies the selected text to the clipboard.
- **`Reveal in Clip List`**: reveals the file in the Clip List.
- **`Reveal in Explosive`**: reveals the file in a Workspace browser.
- **`Reveal in Finder/Explorer`**: reveals the file in the Finder (Mac) or Explorer (Windows).
- **`Transcribe`**: transcribes the file.
- **`Re-Transcibe`**: re-transcribes the file.
- **`Clear Transcription`**: clears the transcription from the file.
- **`Reload Transcription Data`**: reloads transcription data from the file (WAV only).

Playback Audio

Click the Play button to audition selected text in the Transcript window in **`Files`** view. Click it again to stop playback.

Right-click the Play button to select (or deselect) the following Preview options:

Loop Preview

When enabled, the selected text or file loops on playback.

Auto-Preview

When enabled, selecting text or a file automatically plays back.

Spacebar Toggles File Preview

Enable to use the Spacebar to start and stop playback.

The Loop Preview and Auto-Preview options are especially useful for scanning through alternate takes.

Volume

The Volume fader lets you adjust the playback volume.

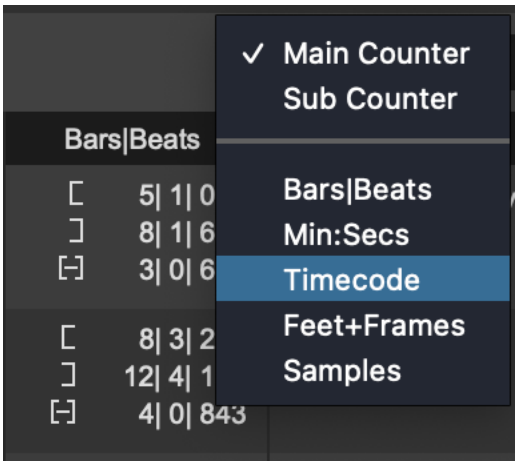
Meters

The meters display the audio volume.

Timebase Selector

To specify the timebase displayed in the Speech Start/End/Duration column:

- Select the desired Timebase from the Timebase selector.



Editing with Text

Once you have transcribed text from your audio, you can use it as a reference to edit that audio. You can select text in the Transcription lane of any given track, in Transcript Track view, or in the Transcript window and select the corresponding audio as well.

Drag and Drop Text to Timeline

In Files view, you can drag and drop files from the Transcript window to a track or blank space (creating a new track) in the timeline. You can also press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) to drag and drop selected text from the Transcript window in Files view to a track or blank space in the timeline to place the corresponding audio on an existing track or to create a new track.

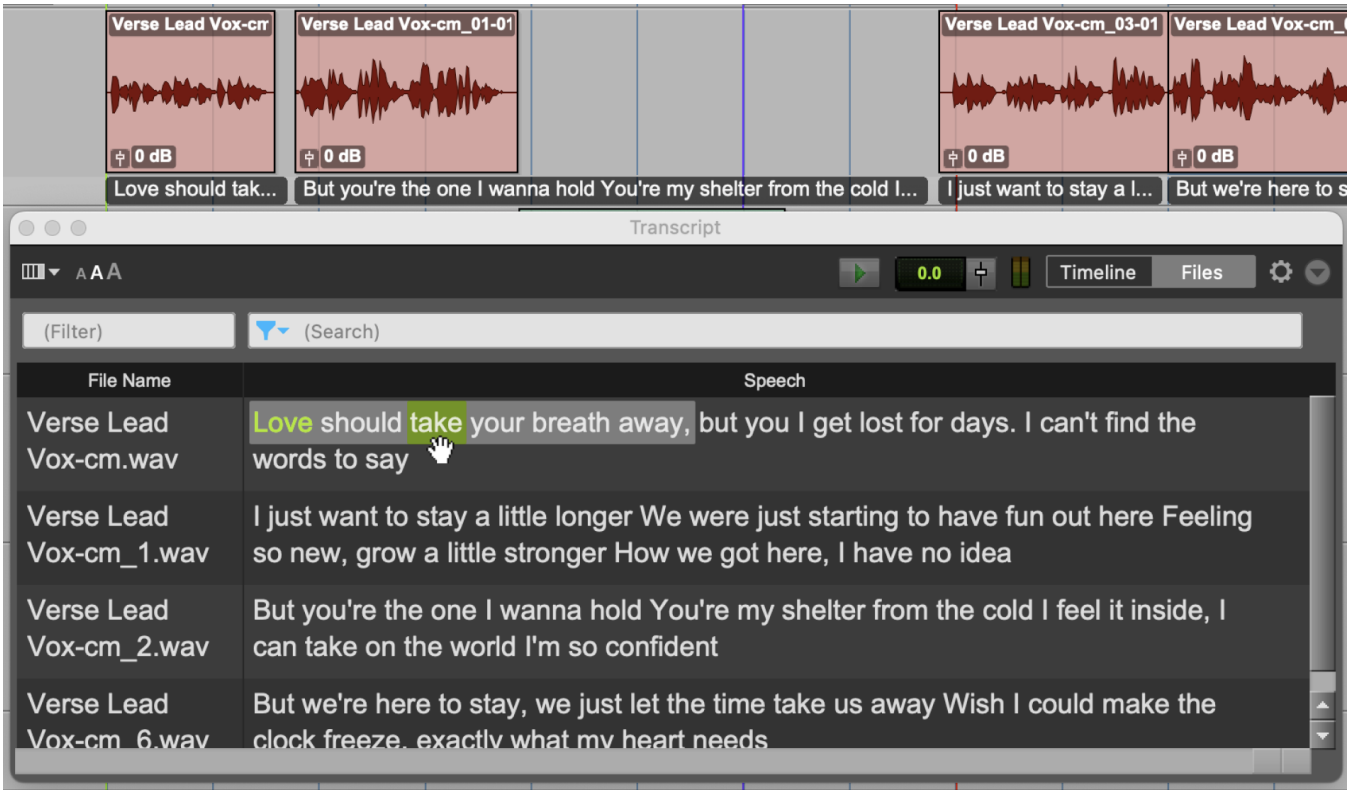
To add a file from the Transcript window to the timeline:

- In Files view, click and drag any row to an existing track or to blank space in the Edit window to create a new track.

To add text associated audio from the Transcript window to the timeline:

1. Select the text you want to add to the timeline.
2. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) and drag the selected text to an existing track or to blank space in the Edit window to create a new track.

Right-click and choose Transcription › Copy Audio, then Paste to tracks in the timeline.

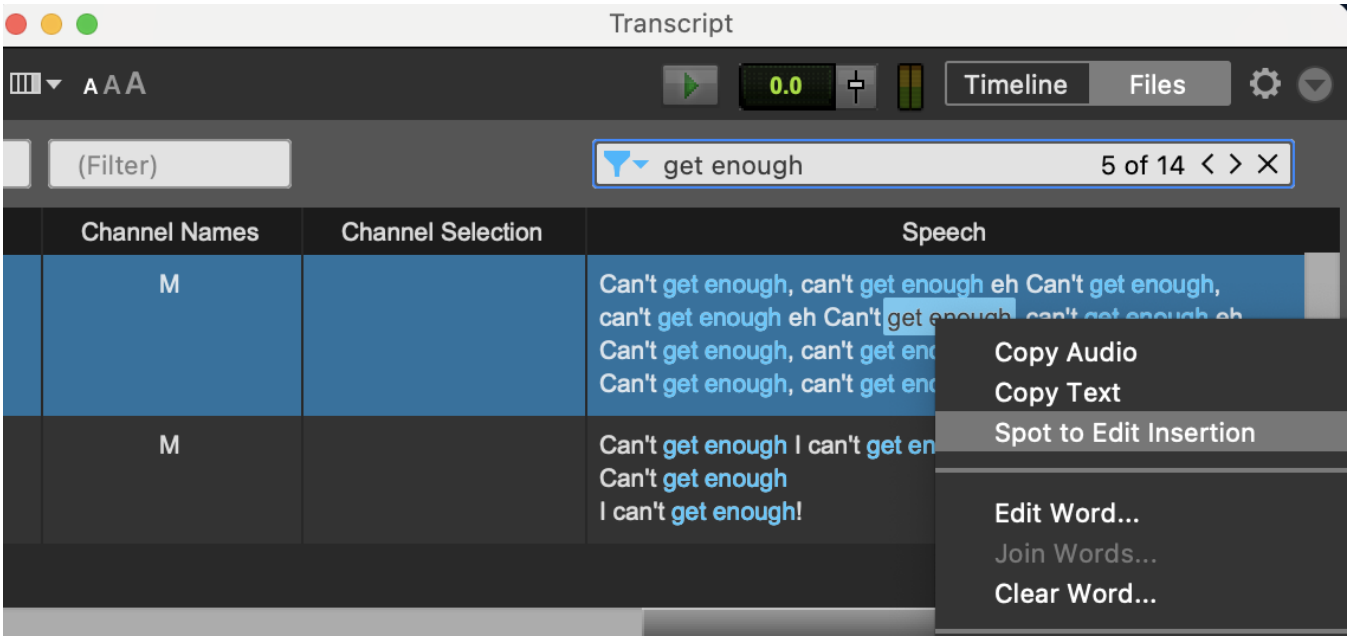


Spot to Edit Insertion in Transcript Window

Pro Tools lets you make a selection in the Transcript window Files view and spot the selected content to the Edit insertion point in the Timeline.

To spot text to the Edit insertion:

1. Place the Edit insertion point to the location you want on a track in the Edit window.
2. In the Transcript window, select the text you want to spot.
3. Right-click and choose **`Spot to Edit Insertion`**.



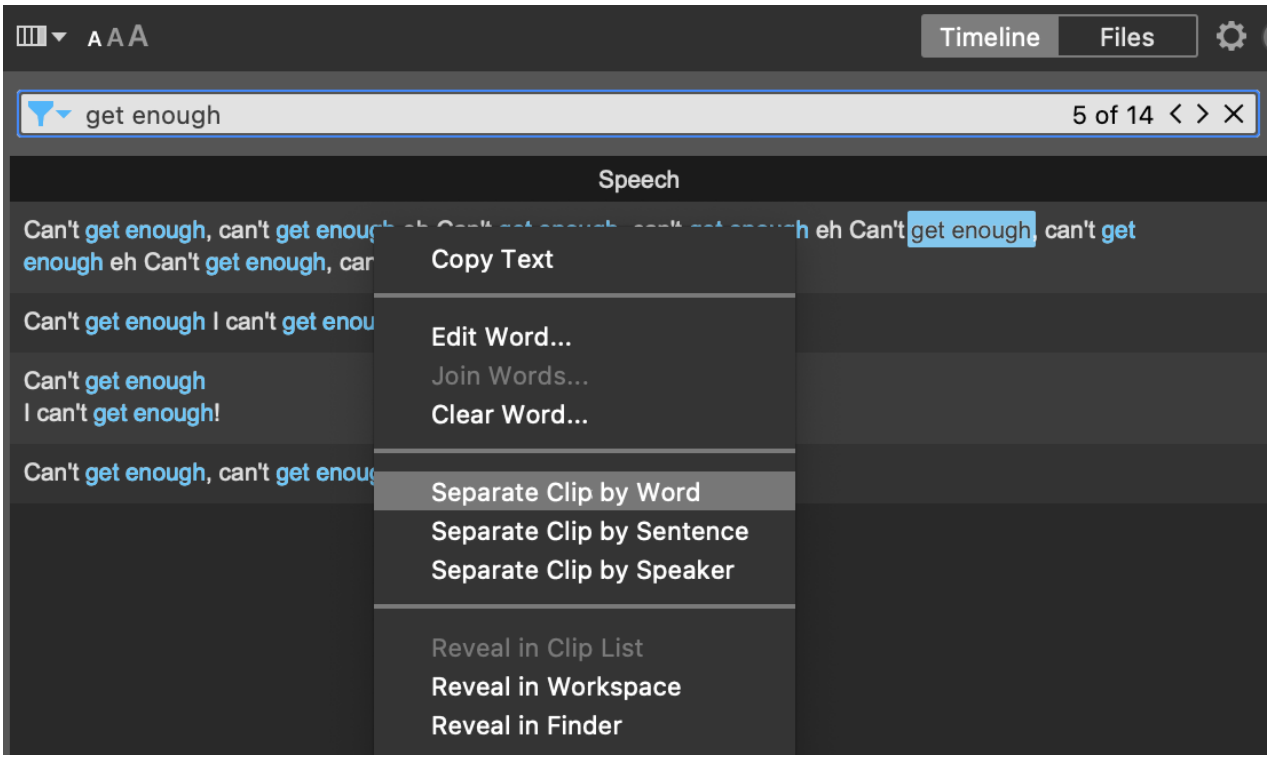
You can also Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) and drag a selected word or phrase from the Transcription window to an audio track on the Timeline.

Separate Clip by Word, Sentence, or Speaker

Pro Tools lets you separate a clip by word, sentence, or speaker. This only operates on a single clip at a time, and the operation is performed on the clip as a whole.

To separate clip by word, sentence, or speaker in the Transcript window:

1. Select Timeline view in the Transcript window.
1. Right-click and choose on of the following:
    - Separate Clip by Word
    - Separate Clip by Sentence
    - Separate Clip by Speaker



Navigate to Audio by Text

Pro Tools lets you navigate to and focus audio in the Timeline by transcribed text.

To place the insert point at the beginning of the word and scroll it into view:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) a word in either the Transcript window (Timeline view) or Transcription Lane of a track.

To select, scroll into view, and zoom to fit selection:

- Command-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Shift-click (Windows) a word in either the Transcript window (Timeline view) or Transcription Lane of a track.

To scroll the Transcript and Edit windows to the selection:

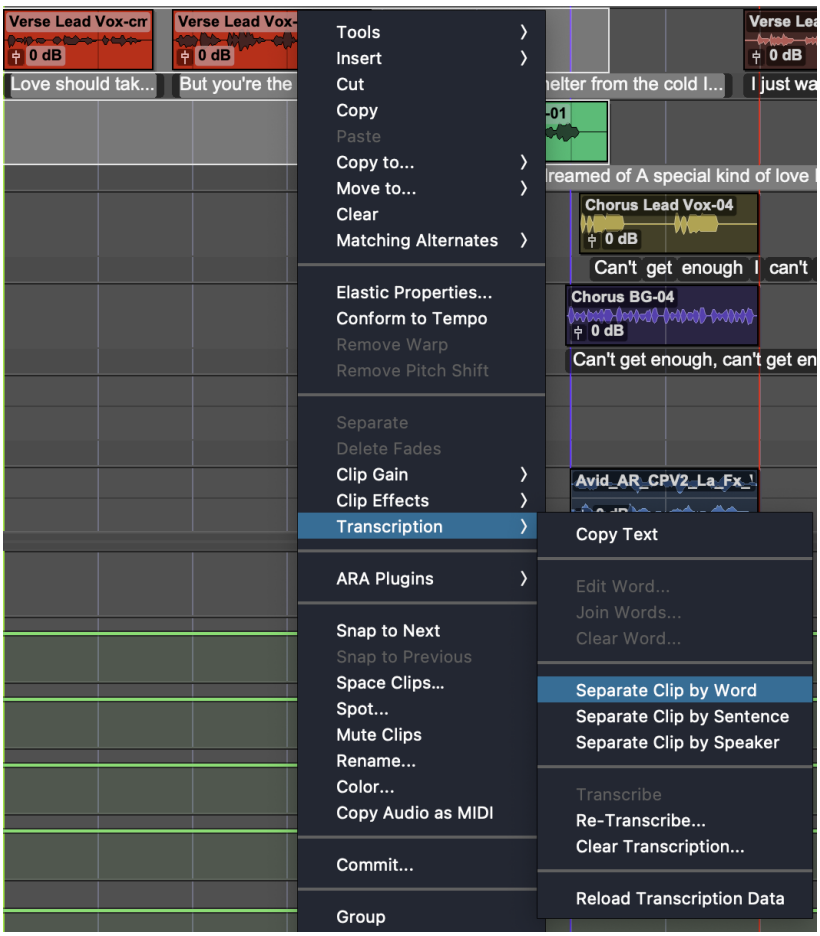
- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) a word (or selection of words) in the Edit window.

Separate Clip by Word, Sentence, or Speaker on Tracks

`Separate Clip by Word/Sentence/Speaker` options are available in the Clip Right-click menu on tracks. Unlike the Transcript window, the track-based separate options apply to the selection and can be applied across multiple clips and tracks.

To separate a clip by Word, Sentence, or Speaker:

1. Select one or more transcribed clips on the Timeline.
2. Right-click a selected clip and choose **`Transcription > Separate Clip by Word`**, **`Separate Clip by Sentence`**, or **`Separate Clip by Speaker`**.



Transcribe in the Workspace

Pro Tools lets you **`Transcribe`**, **`Re-Transcribe`**, and **`Clear Transcription`** from the Workspace for single files, a selection of files, or the contents of entire folders (whether there is a session open or not). This eliminates the need to import all audio files into a session in order to transcribe them.

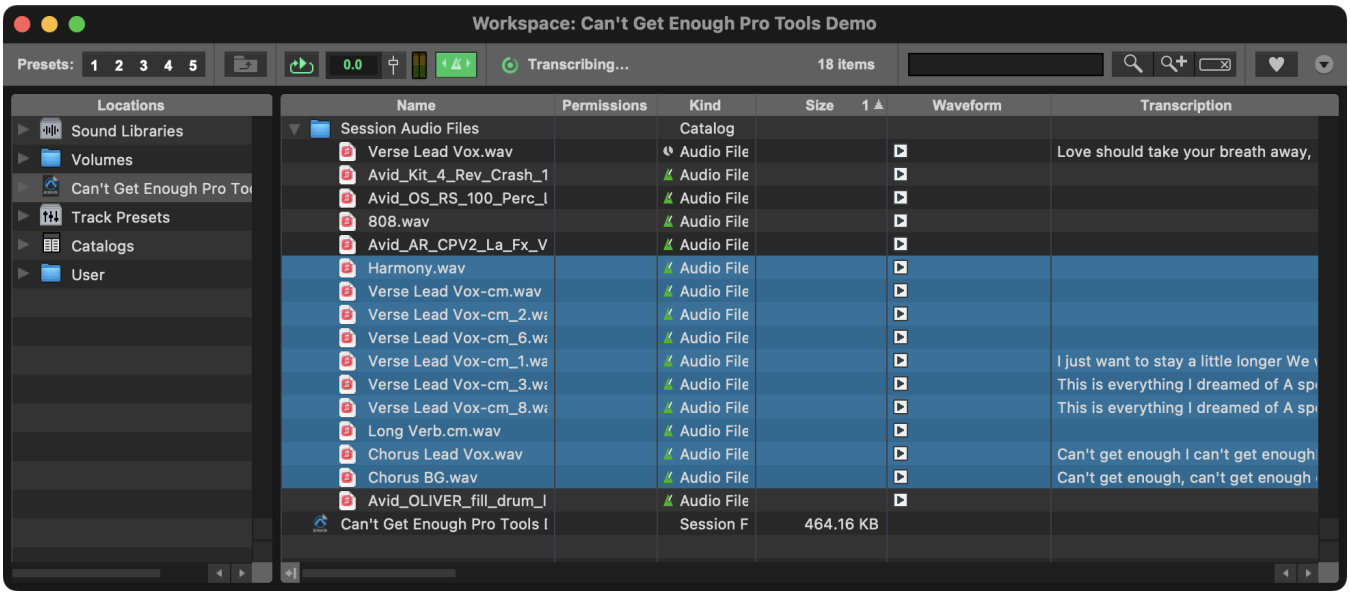
For any non-writable file transcribed from the Workspace outside of a session, its transcription data is written to an AnalysisData.ptadb file found in /Users/Shared/Pro Tools (macOS) or C:\Users\Public\Pro Tools (Windows). When importing such a file into a session, its transcription data is copied into the session's cache file.

To Transcribe, Re-Transcribe, or Clear Transcription for one or more files in the Workspace:

- In a Workspace browser, right-click a single file, folder, or a selection of files or folders, and choose one of the following:
  - **Transcription > Transcribe**
  - **Transcription > Re-Transcribe**
  - **Transcription > Clear Transcription**

Transcription Indicator in Workspace

The Workspace displays a transcription progress indicator when transcribing files in a Workspace.



Transcription Settings without Session Open

Pro Tools lets you access the Transcription Settings window (**Setup > Transcription Settings**) whether or not a session is open so you can adjust language and multichannel settings as desired before transcribing or re-transcribing from the Workspace.

Transcription and Transcription Channel Column

The **Transcription** column displays transcriptions in audio files.

The **Transcription Channel** column in the Workspace that lets you right-click to select the channel that includes the transcription data you want to view for an interleaved multichannel or field recorder file.

Searching by Transcription in the Workspace

Pro Tools lets you search the Workspace by transcribed data. Transcription text is found when performing a simple ("Any Text Column") search, as well as when searching specifically for only transcription data using Advanced Search. For interleaved files that have transcription data for more than one channel, the file appears in search results even though the specific channel on which the match was found on is not identified.

50 Elastic Audio

Elastic Audio provides track-based Real-Time and Rendered Time Compression and Expansion (TCE) and clip-based pitch shifting (transposition). Pro Tools Elastic Audio uses exceptionally high-quality transient detection algorithms, beat and tempo analysis, and real-time TCE and pitch shifting processing algorithms. Elastic Audio lets you quickly and easily transpose the pitch of audio clips and tempo conform (beat match) audio to the session's Tempo map. It also provides an unprecedented degree of control over transient detection and TCE processing on an event-by-event basis.

With Elastic Audio, Pro Tools analyzes entire audio files for transient *events*. For example, an event can be a drum hit, a sung note, or chord played by a guitar. These detected events can then serve as control points for *warping* the audio. Pro Tools can warp (TCE) audio events automatically, such as automatically conforming audio to the session tempo or quantizing audio events, or you can warp audio manually using standard editing tools in Warp view.

Elastic Audio is useful in several common workflows: working with loops, correcting performances, remixing, sound design and special effects, and film scoring.

Working with Loops

If you work with loops, Elastic Audio lets you preview your loops in Workspace browsers at their native tempo (BPM) or at the session tempo (BPM). You can even preview the loop while the session is playing back. When you find the loop you like, drag it from the browser and drop it into the session. The loop automatically conforms to the session tempo map and Bar|Beat grid. You can then further manipulate its timing and also transpose the clip to match the pitch of other loops in your session.

Correcting Performances

Elastic Audio lets you quantize audio to tighten up a performance or even manually re-align that one note that was played just a little late. Or, you might decide that the performance is excellent, but just a little under tempo. Tick-based Elastic Audio automatically warps audio to conform to tempo changes. When you change your tracks to tick-based and increase the session tempo, the audio automatically time compresses to match.

Remixing

Elastic Audio lets you quickly beat match an entire song to the session tempo and Bar|Beat grid. You can also transpose clips to match pitch.

Sound Design and Special Effects

Use Elastic Audio to achieve special effects with extreme or widely variable TCE or pitch manipulation. Use the Varispeed algorithm to achieve tape-like effects for speed and pitch change.

Film Scoring

If you are scoring a film scene, use Elastic Audio to fit the music to the required duration. You can even use tempo changes to achieve accelerandos and ritardandos.

Remember, when using tempo adjustments for sessions that include multiple cues, tempo changes may affect the timecode position of other cues later on the Timeline.

Elastic Audio is not recommended for pull up and pull down workflows. Use the Session Setup window real time pull up or pull downs, or the presets included with Time Shift or X-Form AudioSuite plugins.

Example Elastic Audio Workflow

In this workflow, you will be introduced to some common Elastic Audio tasks for working with loops:

- Create and configure a new session for this workflow.
- Locate and preview a loop in a Workspace browser at the session tempo.
- Import the loop at the session tempo on a tick-based, Elastic Audio-enabled track.
- Change the session tempo to change the tempo of the clip on tick-based, Elastic Audio-enabled tracks.
- Quantize the audio to apply a Groove Template to the rhythm.
- Transpose the clip to match the pitch of the imported audio to other audio and MIDI in the session.

Create and configure a new session or project:

1. Create a new Pro Tools session or project.
2. Set the session's Main Timebase ruler to Bars|Beats.
3. Be sure to display the Tempo and Meter rulers.
4. Use the default tempo of quarter-note equals 120 BPM.

Locate and preview a loop in a Workspace browser at the session tempo:

1. Open the Workspace (**`Window > Workspace`**).
2. Navigate to the folder where you keep your drum loops. Double-click the folder name to open a browser window showing just the folder's contents.
3. Select the loop you want to preview.

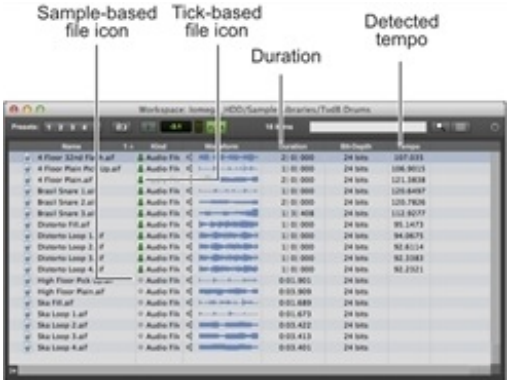
   Audition Paths for previewing are selected in the I/O Setup window (Choose Setup › I/O and click the Output tab).

4. Click the Preview button to preview the loop at its native tempo.



Preview and Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo buttons in a Workspace browser

5. Click the Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button so that it highlights.
6. Click the Preview button again and the file previews at the session tempo.
7. Notice that if the loop was sample-based to begin with, once it is analyzed the file's Duration is now measured in Bars and Beats instead of Minutes and Seconds, the Sample-based icon is replaced by the Tick-based icon, and the detected tempo of the file is displayed in the Tempo column.



Elastic Audio controls and indicators in the Workspace

8. Repeat the preceding steps to preview other loops at the session tempo.

Import the loop at the session tempo:

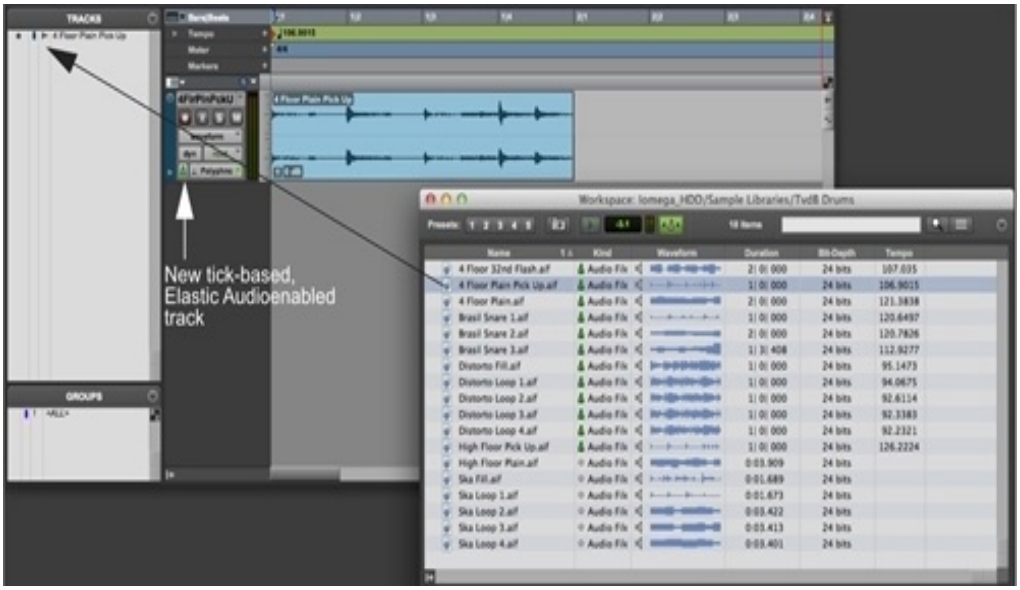
1. Make sure that the Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button is still highlighted. This ensures that the file will be imported as a tick-based, Elastic Audio clip and can be conformed to the session tempo.
2. Drag and drop the loop from the browser to the Track List in the session's Edit window.

   If All Files is selected as the Drag and Drop From Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo option in the Processing Preferences page, you can also drag and drop audio files from the Desktop and they are imported as tick-based Elastic Audio.

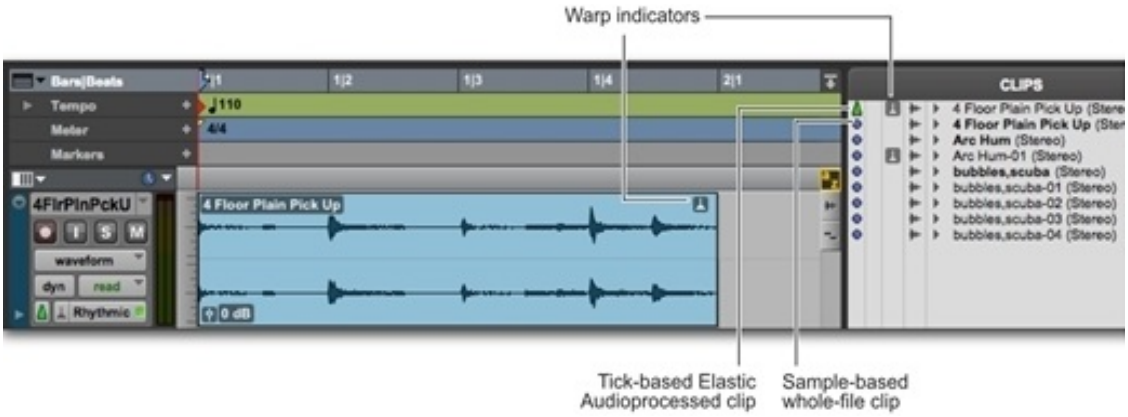
3. One of the following occurs:
   - If there are no tracks in the session *and* the file is tick-based, you are prompted to either import the tempo from the file or use the session tempo. To keep the session tempo and have the loop conform to the session tempo, click **`Don't Import`**.
   - If there are tracks in the session, the file is imported and automatically conformed to the session tempo.
4. A new tick-based audio track is created with the Default Elastic Audio plugin enabled.
5. Since you chose to not import the file's original tempo, you will notice that the loop conforms to the tempo map and Bar|Beat grid of the session. A Warp indicator appears in both the clip in the track and in the Clip List.

   Also in the Clip List, notice that there are two clips. One is the sample-based whole file clip (the imported source file) and the other is the tick-based Elastic Audio–processed copy.

   You can also conform clips on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks to the session tempo using the Conform to Tempo command (see "Conform to Tempo" on page 1158).



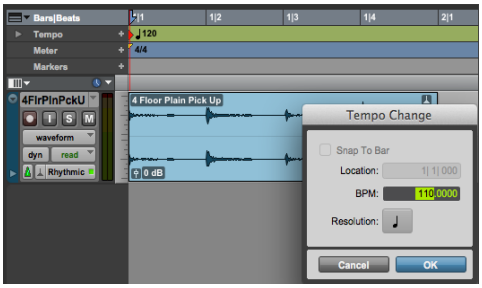
Dragging and dropping a tick-based audio file from a Workspace browser to the Track List



Imported tick-based audio file with Elastic Audio processing

Change the session tempo to change the tempo of the clip:

1. Change the tempo from the default 120 BPM to 110 BPM (see "Tempo" on page 1152).



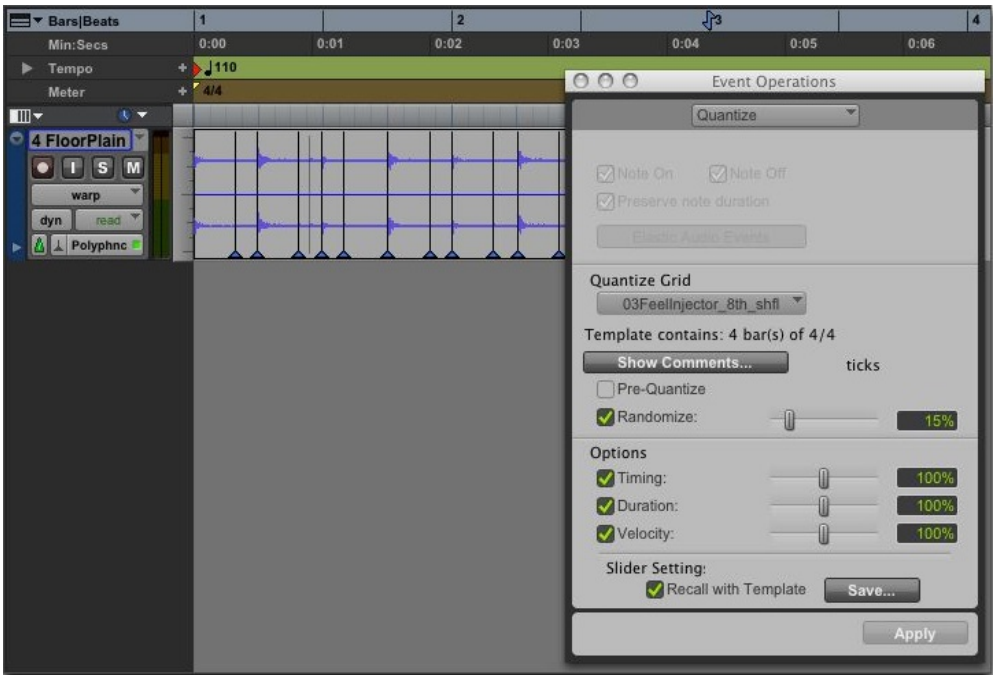
Changing the default tempo

2. Notice that since the clip is on a tick-based, Real-Time Elastic Audio-enabled track it automatically conforms to the new tempo.

Quantize audio to apply a Groove Template:

1. Select the clip on the tick-based, Real-Time Elastic Audio-enabled track.
2. Choose **`Event > MIDI Operations > Quantize`**.
3. In the What to Quantize section, make sure **`Elastic Audio Events`** option is selected.

4. From the **Quantize Grid** pop-up menu, select a Groove Template.
5. Set any other options.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. In the following figure, notice that the audio has been quantized according to the selected Groove Template. In Warp view, you can see that Warp markers have been added at every Event marker near the Quantize Grid and were used to apply quantization to those events.



Quantized audio events (Warp markers) in Warp view

Transpose the audio clip down a whole-tone:

1. Select the clip on the Elastic Audio-enabled track.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Transpose**.
3. Select the **Transpose By** option.
4. Enter "–2" semitones.
5. Click **Apply**.

Elastic Audio Tracks

Any audio track in your Pro Tools session can be Elastic Audio enabled. Elastic Audio tracks can be either sample- or tick-based. Sample-based Elastic Audio-enabled tracks let you apply real-time or rendered Elastic Audio processing by editing in Warp view, applying Quantize, and using the TCE Trim tool. However, only tick-based Elastic Audio tracks also automatically apply Elastic Audio processing based on tempo changes in the session.

To have all new tracks be tick-based, enable the New Tracks Default To Tick Timebase option in the Editing preferences.

When creating new tracks by dragging and dropping audio from a Workspace browser, if the Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo option is enabled, Pro Tools creates tick-based Elastic Audio-enabled tracks regardless of whether the Elastic Audio analyzed file is tick-based or sample-based. If the Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo option is not enabled, Pro Tools creates regular sample-based tracks.

With Pro Tools Ultimate with HDX, Elastic Audio is disallowed on voiced tracks. Use dynamic voice allocation for tracks on which you want to use Elastic Audio.

Enabling Elastic Audio Tracks

To enable Elastic Audio on a track:

1. Create a new audio track or choose an existing audio track.
2. Click the track's Elastic Audio Plugin selector, and select the Elastic Audio plugin appropriate to your track material and the results you want from the pop-up menu: **`Polyphonic`**, **`Rhythmic`**, **`Monophonic`**, **`Varispeed`**, or **`X-Form`** (see "Elastic Audio Plugins" on page 1345).



Elastic Audio Plugin pop-up menu

Any audio clips on the track temporarily go offline while they are analyzed and come back online when the analysis is finished. The waveform for audio clips that are offline for Elastic Audio analysis appears grayed out.

When recording to a real-time Elastic Audio-enabled track, once recording is stopped, the newly recorded audio temporarily goes offline while it is analyzed and comes back online as soon as the analysis is finished.

3. From the track's Elastic Audio Plugin pop-up menu, select **`Real-Time Processing`** or **`Rendered Processing`** for Real-Time or Rendered Elastic Audio processing.

Elastic Audio processing can be Real-Time or Rendered. Real-Time Elastic Audio processing is immediate, but it is more demanding of system resources. Rendered Elastic Audio processing is non-real-time, but is less demanding of system resources. If you are working on a system with limited resources, use Rendered Elastic Audio processing. For more information, see "Real-Time and Rendered Elastic Audio Processing" on page 1344.

Elastic Audio Favorites

Pro Tools lets you set your favorite Elastic Audio plugin in a track Elastic Audio/ARA Plugin selector.

To add a favorite Elastic Audio plugin:

- From the track Elastic Audio/ARA Plugin selector, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Elastic Audio plugin you want to assign as a favorite.



Repeat this to add additional plugin favorites.

Favorite plugins appear at the top of the Selector menu.



To remove an Elastic Audio or ARA plugin from favorites:

- From the track Elastic Audio/ARA Plugin selector, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Elastic Audio plugin you want to remove from favorites.

Creating New Tracks with Elastic Audio Enabled

New tracks are created with Elastic Audio automatically enabled in the following cases:

- When the **Enable Elastic Audio On New Tracks** option is enabled in the Processing Preferences page (see "Elastic Audio Options" on page 663).
- When dragging and dropping tick-based, Elastic Audio analyzed files from Workspace browsers to the Track List or empty space in the Edit window with the **Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo** option enabled (see "Elastic Audio on Import" on page 655).
- When dragging and dropping REX or ACID files from the Desktop (if either **REX and ACID Files Only** or the **All Files** option is enabled for the **Drag and Drop from Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo** setting in the Processing Preferences page) or a Workspace browser (if the Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button is enabled) to the Track List or empty space in the Edit window (see "Importing ACID and REX Files" on page 659).

Disabling Elastic Audio Tracks

To disable Elastic Audio on a track:

1. From the track's Elastic Audio Plugin selector, select **None – Disable Elastic Audio**.
2. If the track had any Elastic Audio-based processing, you are prompted to **Cancel**, **Revert**, or **Commit**.
   - Cancel

     Leaves Elastic Audio enabled on the track.
   - Revert

     Removes any Elastic Audio processing, reverts clips on the track to their original duration, and disables Elastic Audio on the track.
   - Commit

     Renders and commits any Elastic Audio processing on the track, writes new files to disk, and disables Elastic Audio on the track.

Committed Clips

Clips that are committed, either by disabling Elastic Audio on a track or by moving a clip to a track without Elastic Audio enabled, are written to disk as new audio files. These new audio files include the audio in the clip, plus any fades, and also an additional 5 seconds of audio before and after the clip, if available.

Disabling Elastic Audio and Alternate Playlists

Disabling Elastic Audio on a track affects all playlists on the track. All playlists on the track are committed or reverted depending on which option you choose.

Elastic Audio Track Controls

Audio tracks provide controls for enabling Elastic Audio, selecting the Elastic Audio plugin, and selecting whether Real-Time or Rendered Elastic Audio processing.



Elastic Audio Track controls

Elastic Audio Plugin Selector

Selects the Elastic Audio plugin for Elastic Audio processing (see "Elastic Audio Plugins" on page 1345). You can also use the Elastic Audio Plugin selector to disable Elastic Audio processing, and to select either Real-Time or Rendered processing (see "Real-Time and Rendered Elastic Audio Processing" on page 1344).

Elastic Audio Plugin Button

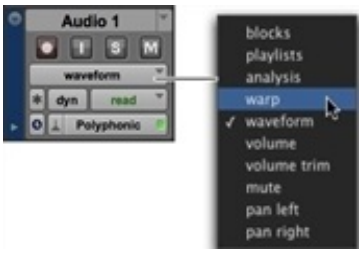
Displays the name of the selected Elastic Audio plugin. Click the Elastic Audio Plugin button to open the Elastic Audio Plugin window (see "Elastic Audio Plugins" on page 1345).

Real-Time or Rendered Processing Indicator

Lights when Elastic Audio processing is real-time and dims when Elastic Audio processing is rendered (see "Real-Time and Rendered Elastic Audio Processing" on the next page).

Elastic Audio Track Views

There are two special Track Views for Elastic Audio-enabled tracks: Warp and Analysis.



Track View pop-up menu

Warp View

Warp view lets you manually “time warp” (Elastic Audio process) audio. In Warp view you can create and edit Warp markers. If you are using Elastic Audio to correct the timing of a performance, or to achieve special effects, work in Warp view (see "Editing in Warp View" on page 1350).

Analysis View

Analysis view lets you edit detected Event markers. In most cases you will not need to use Analysis view. However, with material that does not have clear transients, you may want to work in Analysis view to add or relocate Event markers, or to delete erroneous Event markers. For example, when using Elastic Audio to correct the timing of a performance, you may need to add, move, or remove Event markers in Analysis view to achieve the highest quality Elastic Audio processing (see "Editing in Analysis View" on page 1357).

Elastic Audio Analysis

When recording, pasting, moving, or importing un-analyzed audio to an Elastic Audio-enabled track, or when enabling Elastic Audio on an existing audio track, Pro Tools automatically analyzes the audio for transient events. In Waveform view, the waveform initially appears grayed out because clips go offline during Elastic Audio analysis. Once the analysis is complete, the audio comes back online. Elastic Audio analysis is file-based, which means that even if you are only working with a small clip of a large file, the entire audio file is analyzed.

Elastic Audio analysis detects *transient events* in the audio file. These transient events are indicated by Event markers. Event markers are displayed in both the Warp and Analysis track views. Elastic Audio analysis also calculates the native tempo of the analyzed audio file and its duration in bars and beats.

Elastic Audio analysis data (detected events, tempo, and duration in Bars|Beats) is stored with the file. In Workspace browsers, analyzed audio files are indicated by a check mark to the left of the file name, and these files display their duration in Bars|Beats, their timebase as ticks, and their native tempo in BPM.

Tempo Detection

Elastic Audio analysis does its best to detect a regular tempo for all analyzed audio. Any audio containing regular periodic rhythm can be successfully analyzed for tempo and duration in bars and beats. Analyzed files in which a tempo was detected are treated as tick-based files. Tick-based files can be conformed to the session tempo for preview and import.

Analyzed files in which no tempo was detected are treated as sample-based files. If there is only a single transient in the file (such as with a single snare hit), no tempo will be detected. Also, longer files that contain tempo changes or rubato, or that do not contain regular periodic rhythmic patterns will probably not have a detected tempo and will be treated as sample-based files.

Event Confidence

Transient events are detected with a certain degree of confidence. The level of confidence is based on the relative clarity of transients.

For example, a drum loop is likely to have clear, sharp transients. These will be detected with a high degree of confidence. However, a legato violin melody may not have clear, sharp transients, so transients will be detected with a lower degree of confidence.

Note that peak amplitude is not the most important measure for event confidence. The clarity of transients is measured in part by the spectral transition from one moment to the next. This tends to favor higher frequency content in terms of event confidence. For example, changing the Event Sensitivity in the Elastic Properties window for a selected drum loop results in the clearer transients of the higher frequency hi-hat hits having more event confidence than the less well defined transients of the lower frequency kick drum hits even though kick drum hits have a higher peak amplitude.

Pro Tools is very aggressive with its transient detection in order to detect every possible audio event. Consequently, it is possible to have erroneously detected events. These events will be analyzed with a low degree of confidence and can be filtered out by lowering the Event Sensitivity in the Elastic Properties window (see "Event Sensitivity Property" on page 1361). Filtering out any false transients can result in higher quality Elastic Audio processing.

Conversely, for material with few clear transients, Elastic Audio analysis may not accurately detect audio events, and those detected may be detected with a low level of confidence. You can relocate or add Event markers where necessary in Analysis view (see "Editing in Analysis View" on page 1357).

For example, a slow synth pad may not have clear transients and detected Event markers may be incorrectly located or may have not been detected at all. In Analysis view, you can relocate, remove, and add Event markers as necessary (such as where the chord changes). Accurately locating Event markers yields better results when applying Elastic Audio processing.

When processing non-rhythmic audio (such as legato strings) with the Polyphonic plugin, reducing the number of Event markers often yields better sounding results. You can either manually remove Event markers in Analysis view (see "Editing in Analysis View" on page 1357) or lower the Event Sensitivity setting in the Elastic Properties window for the clip you want to process (see "Elastic Properties Window" on page 1359).

Real-Time and Rendered Elastic Audio Processing

Real-Time Elastic Audio processing means that any changes to Elastic Audio processing—whether it be a tempo change or a manual TCE warp, or pitch shifting—take effect immediately. However, Real-Time Elastic Audio processing can be very demanding on your system's resources. Consequently, you may want to use Rendered Elastic Audio processing in some cases. With Rendered Elastic Audio processing, when you make a change to Elastic Audio processing, any affected audio clips temporarily go offline, a new "rendered" audio file is generated, and any affected audio clips come back online.

In rendered mode, any change you make is rendered using the original source audio to avoid generational loss from multiple subsequent edits.

To set an Elastic Audio track to Real-Time or Rendered:

1. Click the track's Elastic Audio Plugin selector.
2. From the pop-up menu, select an Elastic Audio plugin.
3. From the pop-up menu, select one of the following:
   - **Real-Time Processing**
   - **Rendered Processing**

Select Real-Time processing for tick-based Elastic Audio processing (such as tempo changes). Rendered audio processing can be useful for sample-based Elastic Audio processing or if you need to save system resources.



Elastic Audio Plugin selector

To toggle between Real-Time and Rendered Elastic Audio processing, Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Elastic Audio Plugin button.

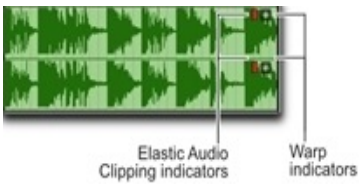
About Rendered Files

Pro Tools creates temporary files for Rendered Elastic Audio processing. These files are kept in an auto-created Rendered Files folder in the session folder. Once you commit Rendered Elastic Audio processing to a track, a new file is written to disk in the Audio Files folder, and the temporary rendered file from which it was created is deleted from the Rendered Files folder.

Clipping Indicator

(Rendered Processing Only) Since Rendered Elastic Audio processing is not real-time, it does not report clipping due to Elastic Audio processing in the Elastic Audio plugin window. Instead, when clipping occurs due to Rendered Elastic Audio processing, the clip displays an Elastic Audio Processing Clipping indicator just to the left of the Warp indicator.

To avoid clipping on playback, lower the Input Gain for the clip in the Elastic Properties window (see "Elastic Properties Window" on page 1359).



Elastic Audio Clipping indicator

Elastic Audio Plugins

Pro Tools provides several algorithms for real-time and rendered track-based Elastic Audio processing. The selected Elastic Audio plugin determines how the audio is processed. Each plugin uses different algorithms for Elastic Audio processing. Different algorithms are better suited to different types of audio. Select the

plugin whose algorithm is appropriate to the material on the track you want to process.

Elastic Audio plugins have their own selector that is only available in the Edit window. You cannot insert Elastic Audio plugins on track inserts.

Elastic Audio plugins provide few to no adjustable parameters. The adjustable controls, if any, are available in the Elastic Audio Plugin window. Elastic Audio plugin parameters cannot be automated.

To open an Elastic Audio Plugin window:

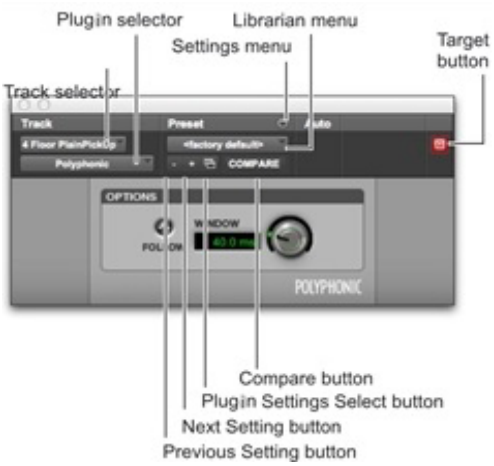
- Click the Elastic Audio Plugin button.



Elastic Audio plugin button

Elastic Audio Plugin Window Controls

The Elastic Audio Plugin window provides a set of controls in the window header that are common to all Elastic Audio plugins.



Elastic Audio plugin controls

Track Selector

Lets you access any other audio track in the session.

Plugin Selector

Lets you select any Elastic Audio plugin or disable Elastic Audio.

Plugin Settings Menu

Lets you copy, paste, save, and import plugin presets.

Plugin Librarian Menu

Recalls Elastic Audio plugin settings files (presets) saved in the plugin's root settings folder or in the current session's Settings folder.

Next (+) and Previous (–) Setting Buttons

Lets you select the next or previous preset from the Plugin Librarian menu.

You will lose the current plugin settings if they are not saved before you use the Next and Previous Setting buttons. Save your plugin settings as presets using the Plugin Settings menu.

Plugins Settings Select Button

Accesses the Plugin Settings dialog, which lists the presets for the current plugin. From this list, you can select a new preset, or audition a series of presets.

Compare

Toggles between the original saved plugin settings and any changes you have made to it so you can compare them.

Target Button

When multiple Elastic Audio Plugin windows are open, clicking this button selects that plugin as the target for any computer keyboard commands. Deselecting the Target button lets you open another targeted Elastic Audio Plugin window.

Polyphonic Plugin

The Polyphonic plugin is a general, all-purpose algorithm that is effective with a wide range of material. For complex loops and multi-instrument mixes, use the Polyphonic plugin. The Polyphonic plugin supports clip-based pitch shifting.

The Polyphonic plugin is the default plugin for previewing and importing from Workspace browsers or the Clip List.



Elastic Audio plugin: Polyphonic

Follow

Selecting the Follow option enables an envelope follower that simulates the original acoustics of the audio being stretched. Click the Follow button to enable or disable envelope following.

Window

The Polyphonic plugin provides a single control for adjusting the analysis window size for TCE processing. Experiment with adjusting the Window size for different types of material until you achieve the best results. The following table provides some recommended Window sizes for different types of material.

If you frequently work with distinct types of material, you may want to find the best Window settings for each type of material and save them as plugin settings for quick and easy recall.

Type of Material	Recommended Window Size
General purpose	30–40 ms
Percussive	20 ms or lower
Pads and other legato material	60 ms or higher

Rhythmic Plugin

The Rhythmic plugin is best suited to material with clear attack transients, such as drums. The Rhythmic plugin supports clip-based pitch shifting.



Elastic Audio plugin: Rhythmic

Decay Rate

The Decay Rate control determines how much of the decay from a transient is heard in the processed audio when time stretching. When the Rhythmic plugin is selected, any gaps between transients resulting from time stretching are filled in with audio. The Decay Rate determines how much of this audio is heard by applying a fade out rate. Adjust the Decay Rate up to 100% to hear the audio that is filling the gaps created by the time stretching with only a slight fade, or adjust down to 1.0% to completely fade out between the original transients.

Monophonic Plugin

The Monophonic plugin is best suited to monophonic material where you want to keep the formant relationships intact, such as with vocals. The Monophonic plugin is also well suited to monophonic instrumental lines, such as a bass track. The Monophonic plugin provides no plugin specific parameters.



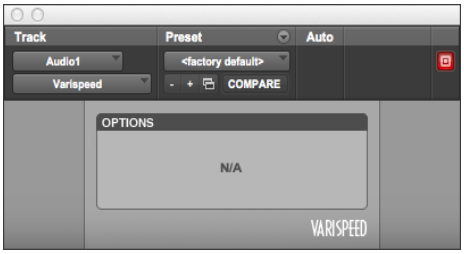
Elastic Audio plugin: Monophonic

Elastic Audio pitch shifting is not supported with the Monophonic algorithm.

The Monophonic plugin analyzes pitch as well as peak transients in order to provide higher quality TCE to pitched material. Consequently, analysis for the Monophonic algorithm takes longer than for the Polyphonic, Rhythmic, and Varispeed algorithms. Also, when switching from another Elastic Audio plugin to Monophonic, Pro Tools reanalyzes any audio on the track to collect the extra analysis data.

Varispeed Plugin

Use the Varispeed plugin to link time and pitch changes for tape-like speed change effects, and post production workflows. The Varispeed plugin provides no plugin specific controls.



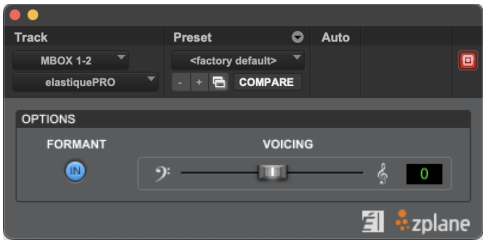
Elastic Audio plugin: Varispeed

Try using Varispeed with Quantize on drum loops for some interesting effects.

élastique Pro Plugin

Use the élastique Pro plugin by zplane.development for Elastic Audio processing. élastique Pro is a general purpose time-stretching engine that offers unmatched quality for professional productions and broadcast applications. élastique Pro sounds especially good when stretching long material or whole songs.

The time-stretching engine is based on state-of-the-art psychoacoustic models and signal processing theory resulting in sharp transients and crystal clear vocals without phasing artifacts, making stretching artifacts obsolete. élastique Pro offers stable timing and inter-channel phase coherence. As a special feature, élastique Pro provides formant preserving pitch shifting for both polyphonic and monophonic audio.



Elastic Audio plugin: zplane élastique

Formant

Sets a spectral envelope shift factor. If the shift factor is the same as the pitch shift factor, formant preserving pitch shifting is performed. Otherwise you can shift the formants (envelope) separately.

Voicing

Sets the order of the spectral envelope estimation (**`Voicing`**). To ensure best timbre-shifting quality for different types of input signals, adjust the dominant frequency region of the input signal with the **`Voicing`** slider. The default position of the slider should work for most audio. However, try moving the slider to the left when the dominant frequency is low or moving it to the right when the dominant frequency is high to see if there is a beneficial effect on the quality of the timbre-shifting. The Voicing setting has no impact on the pitch-shifting quality—it only affects the formant-shifting quality.

X-Form Plugin

(Rendered Only) The X-Form® Elastic Audio plugin is a modified version of the standalone X-Form AudioSuite processing plugin (based on the Radius® algorithm from iZotope). The X-Form Elastic Audio plugin is for Rendered Elastic Audio processing only and cannot process in real-time or as an AudioSuite plugin. It provides the highest quality time compression algorithms for music production, sound design, and audio loop applications. Use it to manipulate audio loops for tempo matching or to change vocal tracks for formant correct pitch shifting.



Elastic Audio plugin: X-Form

Quality

Select either **Maximum** or **Low (Faster)** from the Quality pop-up menu. **Maximum** is the slowest processing algorithm, but provides the highest quality results. **Low (Faster)** produces relatively good results and is much faster than the **Maximum** setting.

Formant

For audio material with clear formants, enable Formant to preserve the formant shape of audio when applying TCE processing.

Audio with a fundamental pitch has an overtone series, or set of higher harmonics. The strength of these higher harmonics creates a formant shape, which is apparent if viewed using a spectrum analyzer. The overtone series, or harmonics, have the same spacing related to the pitch and have the same general shape regardless of what the fundamental pitch is. It is this formant shape that gives the audio its overall characteristic sound or timbre. When pitch shifting audio, the formant shape is shifted with the rest of the material, which can result in an unnatural sound. Keeping this shape constant is critical to formant correct pitch shifting and achieving a natural sounding result.

Editing in Warp View

In Warp view, you can manually "time warp" (TCE) audio to correct or adjust the timing of a performance, or create special effects. In Warp view, you can add, move, and delete Warp markers. Warp markers are used to fix a specific point in the audio (typically a detected transient event) to a specific point in the Timeline. In this way, you can apply detailed and nuanced "warping" (TCE) of audio events.

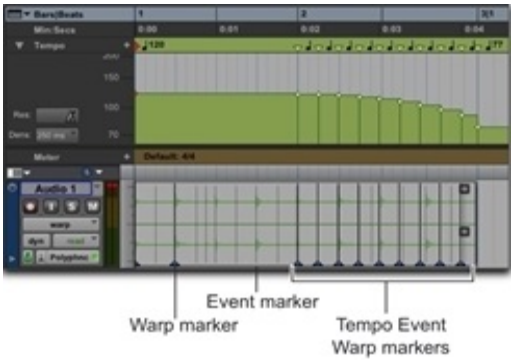
Warp view is only available for Elastic Audio-enabled tracks.

To display Warp view:

1. Click the Elastic Audio-enabled track's Track View selector.
2. Select **Warp** from the Track View pop-up menu.

Elastic Audio Markers in Warp View

Three types of markers are visible in Warp view: Event markers, Warp markers, and Tempo Event–generated Warp markers. Use Event markers and Warp markers as control points for applying Elastic Audio processing.



Elastic Audio markers in Warp view

Event Markers

Event markers indicate detected (or manually created) audio events. Event markers are only displayed in Warp view and Analysis view. In Warp view, Event markers appear as gray vertical lines that do not fully extend to the top and bottom of the track. With the Grabber tool in Warp view, you can drag Event markers to apply various kinds of warping depending on whether or not Warp markers are present in the clip as well. In Warp view, you cannot add, relocate, or delete Event markers. Use Analysis view to edit Event markers (see "Editing in Analysis View" on page 1357).

The display of Event markers is dependent on Horizontal Zoom. If you are zoomed out too far, Event markers are not displayed. To see Event markers, zoom in.

Warp Markers

Warp markers anchor the audio to a specific point in the Timeline. Warp markers are only displayed in Warp view. In Warp view, a Warp marker appears as a thick black vertical line with a triangle at its base.

To better understand how Warp markers work, think of the audio clip as a rubber band, the Timeline as a ruler, and Warp markers as pins. Warp markers can be used to pin a specific point of the rubber band (the audio) to a specific point on the ruler (the Timeline). If you pin down one point of the rubber band to one point on the ruler, use a second pin to pin down another point of the rubber band to another point on the ruler, and then place a third pin equally between them on the rubber band, but fix it to a point on the ruler closer to the second pin, the rubber band will be stretched (or expanded) between the first and middle pins, and relaxed (or compressed) between the middle pin and the last pin.

In Warp view, you can add, relocate (without warping), and delete Warp markers. You can also move a Warp marker to apply Elastic Audio processing (see "Warping Audio" on the next page).

To add a Warp marker:

1. Make sure you are in Warp view,
2. Do one of the following:
   - With the Pencil tool, click anywhere in the clip to add a Warp marker at that location. If you click on an Event marker, a Warp marker is created on top of the Event marker.
   - With the Grabber tool, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) anywhere in the clip to add a Warp marker at that location. If you click on an Event marker, a Warp marker is created on top of the Event marker.
   - With the Grabber tool, if no Warp markers are present in the clip, or if Warp markers are only present prior to the location where you want to add a new Warp marker, double-click an Event marker to add a Warp marker on top of the Event marker.

- With the Grabber tool, double-click anywhere in the clip where an Event marker is not present to add a Warp marker at that location.
- With the Grabber tool, single-click any Event marker prior to another existing Warp marker in the clip to add a Warp marker on top of that Event marker.
- With any Edit tool, Right-click anywhere in the clip and select **Add Warp Marker** from the pop-up menu to add a Warp marker at that location. If there is an Edit selection, Warp markers are added at the selection start and end.

To relocate a Warp marker (without applying warping):

- With the Grabber or the Pencil tool, Control-drag (Mac) or Start-drag (Windows) a Warp marker to a new location.

To delete a Warp marker:

1. Make sure you are in Warp view,
2. Do one of the following:
   - With the Grabber tool, double-click a Warp marker.
   - With the Grabber or the Pencil tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) a Warp marker.
   - With any Edit tool, Right-click a Warp marker and select **Remove Warp Marker** from the pop-up menu.

To delete all Warp markers in a selection:

1. In Warp view, make an Edit selection that includes only the Warp markers you want to delete (and none of the Warp markers you want to keep).
2. Do one of the following:
   - Press Delete or Backspace on your computer keyboard.
   - With any Edit tool, Right-click the Edit selection and select **Remove Warp Marker** from the pop-up menu.

Tempo Event-Generated Warp Markers

Tempo Event-generated Warp markers are not editable and are only displayed to indicate where Elastic Audio processing has been applied to conform the audio to Tempo Events. You will only see Tempo Event-generated Warp markers on tick-based tracks.

If you change the track timebase from ticks to samples, any Tempo Event-generated Warp markers convert to regular, editable Warp markers.

For more information, see "Tempo Changes and Tick-Based Elastic Audio Tracks" on page 1156.

Warping Audio

In Warp view, you can manually warp audio in three specific ways: Telescoping Warp, Accordion Warp, and Range Warp.

Automation does not follow manual warping of audio clips, including TCE trimming and quantization of Elastic Audio. However, automation does follow tempo changes on tick-based tracks.

Telescoping Warp

Telescoping Warp can be applied to any audio clip before or after a Warp marker as long as no other Warp marker precedes or follows it accordingly. The audio can be on a sample- or tick-based track. Telescoping Warp is especially useful for adjusting audio files to match the session tempo map and Bar|Beat grid.

To apply Telescoping Warp to a clip:

1. Make sure you are in Warp view,
2. Do one of the following:
   - With the Grabber tool, drag any Event marker that is after the last Warp marker in the clip to the left or right to Telescope-Warp the audio that is after the Warp marker in or out. If no Warp marker is present in the clip, one is created automatically at the clip start. The clip start remains anchored to its location on the Timeline.
   - With the Grabber tool, Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) any Event marker that is before the first Warp marker in the clip to the left or right to Telescope-Warp the audio that is before the Warp marker in or out. If no Warp marker is present in the clip, one is created automatically at the clip end. The clip end remains anchored to its location on the Timeline.



Before and after warping, applying Telescoping Warp with the clip start fixed

Workflow Example

Beat match a song to the session tempo and Bar|Beat grid using Telescoping Warp:

1. Make sure the Main Timebase ruler is set to Bars|Beats.
2. Set the default tempo and meter.
3. Select Grid mode.
4. Import a song, or any other longer audio file from a Workspace browser.
5. Make sure that Elastic Audio is enabled on the track.
6. Select Warp view.
7. Make sure there are no Warp markers present on the clip. If necessary, delete any existing Warp markers.
8. With the Pencil tool, add a Warp marker at the bar 1 downbeat location within the clip.
9. With the Grabber tool, drag the single Warp marker to the bar in the Timeline where you want the downbeat of the audio file to start.
10. Drag the Event marker on the downbeat of bar 2 of the clip to Telescope warp the audio such that the Event marker matches the corresponding bar number in the Bars|Beats ruler.
11. If the clip's tempo varies, add a Warp marker to the next downbeat location at the tempo change and repeat the preceding steps.

Accordion Warp

Accordion Warp applies Elastic Audio processing on both sides of a singe Warp marker in a clip. This lets you expand or compress the audio equally on both sides of a fixed point. Accordion warp is useful for audio files where the downbeat occurs in the middle of the clip.

To apply Accordion Warp to a clip:

1. In Warp view, add a single Warp marker at the point in the clip that you want to remain fixed on the Timeline.
2. With the Grabber tool, drag any Event marker that is before or after the single Warp marker to the left or the right.



Before and after warping, applying Accordion Warp to a clip around a fixed point

Range Warp

Range Warp applies Elastic Audio processing between two fixed points in a clip. To apply Range Warp, there must be at least two Warp markers present in the clip.

To apply Range Warp within a clip:

1. In Warp view, add a Warp marker at the first point that you want to fix to the Timeline.
2. Add another Warp marker to the end point that you want to fix to the Timeline.
3. With the Grabber tool, drag an Event marker between the two Warp markers to the left or right. A Warp marker is added on top of the Event marker and the audio is compressed or expanded on either side of the dragged marker while the audio outside the bounding markers remains unaffected.



Before and after warping, applying Range Warp between two Warp markers in a clip

Range Warp with an Edit Selection

Pro Tools lets you apply Range Warp between bounding Warp markers, but keeps the timing intact between other Warp markers within an Edit selection.

To apply Range Warp with an Edit Selection:

1. In Warp view, add a Warp marker at the first point that you want to fix to the Timeline.
2. Add another Warp marker to the end point that you want to fix to the Timeline.
3. Add any number of Warp markers in between.
4. With the Selector tool, make an Edit selection that includes the Warp markers in between the bounding Warp markers.
5. With the Grabber tool, drag any of the Warp markers within the Edit Selection to the left or the right.



Before and after warping, applying Range Warp to a selection between bounding Warp markers

Elastic Audio processing is only applied to the audio between the bounding Warp markers and the first and last Warp markers in the Edit Selection. All audio between the first and last Warp markers in the Edit Selection maintain their relative timing.

Individual Range Warp

Individual Range Warp applies warping to a single audio event in relation to the adjacent audio events.

To apply Individual Range Warp:

1. In Warp view, with the Grabber tool, Shift-click a Warp marker or an Event marker. If not already present, Warp markers are automatically created on the adjacent Event markers.
2. Drag to the left or right to warp the clicked event.



Before and after warping, applying Individual Range Warp

Warped Clips

Clips that have been warped either manually or automatically by tempo change, quantization, or pitch shifting display a Warp indicator in the upper right-hand corner of the clip. This indicator is visible in any track view. Since unwarped clips can reside on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, clips on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks do not necessarily display the Warp indicator. The Warp indicator only indicates that Elastic Audio processing has been applied to a clip.



Warp indicator in a clip in Waveform view

Displaying the Warp Indicator

The Warp indicator for Elastic Audio clips can displayed or hidden.

To toggle the display of the Warp indicator in Elastic Audio clips:

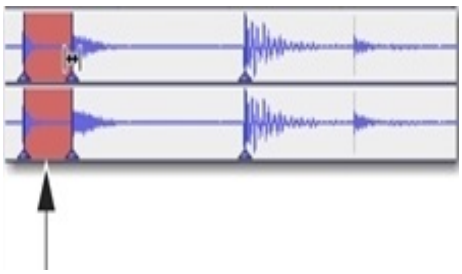
- Select or deselect **`View > Clip > Processing State`**.

Out of Range Processing

Pro Tools lets you apply extreme amounts of Elastic Audio processing. However, at such extremes, it is possible to go out of the selected Elastic Audio plugin's processing range. When this happens, it is possible that not every sample will be processed correctly and you may encounter audio drop outs.

The valid range for Elastic Audio TCE processing is 1/4x to 4x for all Elastic Audio plugins except X-Form, which supports 1/8x to 8x. TCE less than or greater than these ranges is effectively "out of range."

When out of range processing occurs, the section of the audio clip that is out of range turns red. You can still apply Elastic Audio processing, but you are warned by the color change that the TCE factor is out of the normal range of Elastic Audio processing.



TCE Factor is out of range (in red)

⚠ **The TCE Factor in the Elastic Properties window supports extreme ranges from 1–9999%. However anything outside of 25–400% will be "out-of-range" and will be displayed in red.**

Removing Clip Warping

If you have applied any warping to a clip, you can remove warping and revert the clip to its original duration. This can be useful if you are not satisfied with the results and want to revert to the pre-warped clip. Warp markers are not deleted when applying the Remove Warp command, but any warping is undone.

To remove clip warping:

1. Select the clip for which you want to remove warping.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Clip > Remove Warp**.
   - With any Edit tool, Right-click the clip and select **Remove Warp** from the pop-up menu.

Remove Warp can only be applied to clips and cannot be applied to clip groups. To unwarp clip groups you must first ungroup the clip, then apply Remove Warp to the underlying clips, and then regroup those clips.

Edit Groups and Warp Editing

Elastic Audio-enabled tracks can be included in Edit Groups. For Elastic Audio-enabled tracks that are part of an Edit Group, applying Elastic Audio processing on one track likewise applies it to all other tracks within that Edit Group.

If corresponding Warp markers are not already present on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks that are part of an Edit Group, new Warp markers are created on those tracks when you add or move a Warp marker on any track that is part of the Edit Group.

Editing in Analysis View

In Analysis view, you can add, move, promote, and delete Event markers. Usually, Pro Tools accurately detects all the transient events (Event markers) in an audio file and you will not need to work in Analysis view. However, Pro Tools may not accurately detect every audio event or may erroneously detect audio events with some types of audio material. This is especially true for audio without clear transients, such as legato strings, melismatic vocals, or soft synth pads.

Use Analysis view to manually correct the presence and location of Event markers. The accurate identification of audio events yields the best results when applying Elastic Audio processing.

To display Analysis view:

1. Click the Elastic Audio-enabled track's Track View selector.
2. Select **Analysis** from the Track View pop-up menu.

Analysis view is only available for Elastic Audio-enabled tracks.

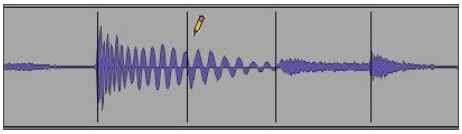
In Analysis view, you can only edit Analysis markers using the Edit tools. You cannot use the Edit tools for any clip editing. Switch to Warp or Waveform views for clip-based editing capabilities with the Edit tools.

When manually editing Analysis markers, Pro Tools writes temporary Elastic Audio analysis files (.aan) to the session's Rendered Files folder. Any unused temporary analysis files are purged when you close the session.

Adding Event Markers

To add an Event marker:

1. Make sure you are in Analysis view.
2. Do one of the following:
   - With the Pencil tool, click at the location where you want to add an Event marker.
   - With the Grabber tool, double-click at the location where you want to add an Event marker.
   - With the Grabber tool, Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) at the location where you want to add an Event marker.
   - With any Edit tool, Right-click at the location where you want to add an Event marker and select **`Add Event Marker`** from the pop-up menu.

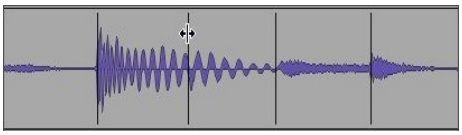


Adding an Event marker with the Pencil tool

Moving Event Markers

To move an Event marker:

1. Make sure you are in Analysis view,
2. Do one of the following:
   - With the Pencil tool, drag the Event marker to a new location.
   - With the Grabber tool, drag the Event marker to a new location.



Moving an Event marker

Promoting Event Markers

Event markers are detected with relative degrees of confidence (between 1% and 100%). You can filter out extraneous Event markers by adjusting the Event Sensitivity setting in the Elastic Properties window; event markers with the least confidence are filtered out first. However, some significant events may not be recognized with a high degree of confidence. In this case, you may want to promote the Event marker to ensure that it is not filtered out when reducing the Event Sensitivity setting. Promoted Event markers, like manually created or moved Event markers, have 100% confidence.

To promote an Event marker:

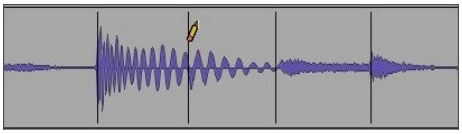
- In Analysis view, with the Grabber or Pencil tool (or with the Smart Tool in the bottom half of the track), single-click the Event marker you want to promote.

Promoted Event markers look the same as detected Event Markers. To see all Event markers that have 100% confidence, reduce the Event Sensitivity setting in the Elastic Properties window (see "Event Sensitivity Property" on page 1361).

Deleting Event Markers

To delete an Event marker:

1. Make sure you are in Analysis view.
2. Do one of the following:
   - With the Pencil tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Event marker you want to delete.
   - With the Grabber tool, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Event marker you want to delete.
   - With the Selector tool, make an Edit selection that includes any Event markers you want to delete and press Delete or Backspace on your computer keyboard.
   - With the Selector tool, make an Edit selection that includes any Event markers you want to delete, Right-click the selection, and choose Remove Event Marker from the pop-up menu.



Deleting an Event marker with the Pencil tool

Edit Groups and Event Editing

Elastic Audio-enabled tracks can be included in Edit Groups. For Elastic Audio-enabled tracks that are part of an Edit Group, editing Event markers on one track likewise applies to all other tracks within that Edit Group.

Elastic Properties

Each clip on an Elastic Audio-enabled track has specific Elastic Audio properties (such as tempo, meter, TCE factor, Input Gain, and Pitch Shift).

The Elastic Properties window lets you view and change the properties for selected clips. For example, you can reduce the Input Gain for Elastic Audio processing to avoid clipping that can occur during processing.

From the Elastic Properties window, you can also filter Event markers for Elastic Audio clips on tick-based tracks. Filtering Event markers can result in better quality Elastic Audio processing of material with ambiguous transients.

To view the Elastic Properties for a clip:

1. Select a clip on an Elastic Audio-enabled track. The track can be either sample- or tick-based.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Clip > Elastic Properties`**.
   - Right-click the clip and choose **`Elastic Properties`**.

Press Option+5 (Mac) or Alt+5 (Windows) on the numeric keypad to open the Elastic Properties window.

Elastic Properties Window

The Elastic Properties window displays information about Elastic Audio processing and analysis for one or more clips. You can also use the Elastic Properties window to adjust Elastic Audio processing and analysis data.

There are different Elastic Properties available in the Elastic Properties window, depending on whether the track is tick-based or sample-based. If the track is sample-based, a reduced set of Elastic Audio Properties are displayed.



Elastic Properties, tick-based



Elastic Properties, sample-based

Clip Property

The Clip property in the Elastic Properties window displays the name of the clip and indicates whether or not the clip is on a tick or sample-based track. If more than one clip is selected, the number of selected clips is displayed. If clips on both tick and sample-based tracks are selected, only the reduced set of properties are displayed.

Source Length Property

(Tick-Based Tracks Only) The Source Length property in the Elastic Properties window displays the length of the clip based on the source file in bars and beats. If the length of the source file was analyzed incorrectly, you can change it.

To change the Source Length of a clip:

1. Open the Elastic Properties window for the clip.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Type the correct bar, beat, and tick values in the Source Length field.
   - If the duration was incorrectly analyzed as being half the duration of the source file, click the **x2** button.
   - If the duration was incorrectly analyzed as being twice the duration of the source file, click the **1/2** button.

Changing the duration of a clip on an Elastic Audio-enabled track using the TCE Trim tool updates the Source Length in the Elastic Properties window.

Source Tempo Property

(Tick-Based Tracks Only) The Source Tempo property in the Elastic Properties window displays the average tempo of the source file, which is calculated based on the detected transient events and the length of the file. If the tempo of the source file was analyzed incorrectly, you can change it.

To change Source Tempo of a clip:

1. Open the Elastic Properties window for the clip.
2. Select the correct note value for the beat from the Tempo Resolution pop-up menu. For example, if the source file is in 5/8, select 1/8 note.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Type the tempo in the Source Tempo field.
   - If the tempo was incorrectly analyzed as being half the tempo of the source file, click the **x2** button.
   - If the tempo was incorrectly analyzed as being twice the tempo of the source file, click the **1/2** button.

Meter Field

(Tick-Based Only) Elastic Audio analysis does not calculate meter and assumes all files are in 4/4. If you work with meters other than 4/4, use the Meter property to correctly identify the source meter.

To change Meter of a clip:

1. Open the Elastic Properties window for the clip.
2. Click in the Meter nominator field and type the correct number of beats per measure. For example, if the clip is in 3/4, type 3.
3. Click the Meter denominator field and type the correct note value. For example, if the meter is in 6/8, type 8.

TCE Factor Property

The TCE Factor property in the Elastic Properties window displays the percentage of change applied to the source file. On tick-based tracks, this property is display only and cannot be edited. On sample-based tracks, you can change the TCE Factor to apply TCE to the clip. The percentage of the TCE factor is always calculated in relation to the source file. The TCE Factor value turns red when Elastic Audio processes exceeds the valid range (see "Out of Range Processing" on page 1356).

Event Sensitivity Property

The Event Sensitivity property in the Elastic Properties window lets you filter Event markers based on the analysis confidence level. The confidence level for any detected transient event is based, in part, on the clarity of the transient. For example, if the file is a drum loop, loud accented hits will be analyzed with a higher degree of confidence than a soft, unaccented hit.

The Event Sensitivity acts like a threshold for showing only the transient events that were detected with a high degree of confidence. In Warp or Analysis track views you will see the number of Event markers decrease or increase as you lower or raise the Event Sensitivity.

Lowering the event sensitivity can help reduce the number of erroneously detected transients. In turn, this can result in better sounding Elastic Audio processing. Pro Tools preserves the detected transients when applying TCE in order to avoid flamming and granulation of the transients. Consequently, false transients are also preserved and the resulting sound quality can be less than desirable. If you are working with audio material that does not have clearly defined transients, you may want to lower the Event Sensitivity in the Elastic Properties, or you may want to even edit the Event markers in Analysis view.

If lowering the Event Sensitivity results in filtering out important Event markers, you can promote those Event markers in Analysis view (see "Promoting Event Markers" on page 1358).

For REX files, Pro Tools converts the slices as Events with 100% confidence. Consequently, setting the Event Sensitivity from 99% to 1% does not filter out any events based on slices. However, if you set the Event Sensitivity to 0%, all markers are filtered out regardless.

When you change the Event Sensitivity property, Pro Tools writes temporary filtered Elastic Audio analysis files (.aan) to the session's Rendered Files folder. Any unused temporary filtered analysis files are purged when you close the session.

Reset Button

Click the **Reset** button in the Elastic Properties window to reset event analysis data for the clip to match the original file. The Event Sensitivity property is reset to 100%.

Input Gain Property

It is possible to encounter clipping when time compressing audio. Real-Time Elastic Audio plugins provide a Clip indicator to let you know when clipping has occurred and the Elastic Audio plugin button turns red. Rendered Elastic Audio clips display a Clip indicator on the clip when clipping has occurred (see "Clipping Indicator" on page 1345).

If you encounter clipping when processing Elastic Audio, use the Input Gain property in the Elastic Properties window to attenuate the gain of the audio signal before it is processed.

Pitch Shift Property

(Polyphonic, Rhythmic, and X-Form Only) The Pitch Shift property in the Elastic Properties window lets you pitch shift whole clips on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks using the Polyphonic, Rhythmic, and X-Form plugins. You apply real-time or rendered pitch shifting in semitones and cents by +/– 2 octaves.

Elastic Audio Clip-Based Pitch Shifting

(Polyphonic, Rhythmic, and X-Form Only) In addition to Pro Tools Elastic Audio time compression and expansion capabilities, you can also change the pitch of whole audio clips in semitones and cents in the range of +/– 2 octaves.

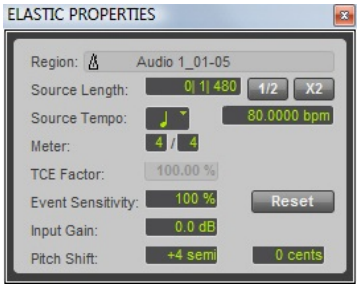
Elastic Audio pitch transposition is not supported with the Monophonic algorithm. However, if you switch to the Monophonic plugin after pitch shifting with another plugin, the pitch metadata for the clip is maintained.

Elastic Audio pitch transposition cannot be applied to looped clips or clip groups.

To pitch shift a clip:

1. Make sure the clip, or clips, you want to pitch shift are on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks (using the Polyphonic, Rhythmic, or X-Form algorithm).
2. With the Grabber or Selector tool, select the audio clip you want to pitch shift. Only clips that are completely selected will be affected.
3. Open the Elastic Properties window for the clip.

4. Adjust the **Pitch Shift** settings up ("+") or down ("–") by an amount in semitones and cents.



Elastic Properties window

To transpose the pitch of an audio clip in the Transpose window:

1. Make sure the clip, or clips, you want to Transpose are on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks (using the Polyphonic, Rhythmic, or X-Form algorithm).
2. With the Grabber or Selector tool, select the audio clip you want to transpose. Only clips that are completely selected will be affected.
3. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Transpose**.



MIDI Operations, Transpose

4. Do one of the following:
   - Adjust the **Transpose By** settings by an amount in Semitones and Cents.
   - Adjust the **Transpose From** and **To** settings by an amount in Semitones and Cents.

   The Transpose All Notes To and the Transpose In Key settings can only be applied to MIDI notes. When only audio clips are selected, these options are unavailable.

5. Click **Apply**.

Varispeed and Pitch Shifting

When using the Varispeed algorithm, pitch transposition and time compression/expansion are always linked. If you apply pitch transposition to an audio clip using the Polyphonic or Rhythmic algorithms, that transposition data is stored in the metadata for the clip. Consequently, if you then switch to Varispeed, change the TCE factor, and then switch back to the original Elastic Audio algorithm, the clip will revert to the original amount of pitch shifting while maintaining the amount of time compression/expansion applied by the Varispeed algorithm.

Removing Clip Pitch Shifting

If you have applied any pitch shifting to a clip, you can remove pitch shifting and revert the clip to its original pitch. This can be useful if you are not satisfied with the results and want to revert to the pre–pitch shifted clip.

To remove clip pitch shifting:

1. Select the clip for which you want to remove warping.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Clip > Remove Pitch Shift**.
   - With any Edit tool, Right-click the clip and select **Remove Pitch Shift**.

Remove Pitch Shift can only be applied to clips and cannot be applied to clip groups. To remove pitch shifting from clip groups you must first ungroup the clip, then apply Remove Pitch Shift to the underlying clips, and then regroup those clips.

AudioSuite Processing and Elastic Audio Clips

Real-Time Elastic Audio processing is non-destructive. However, since AudioSuite plugins process the entire clip and write a new audio file (or actually apply destructive processing), when applying AudioSuite processing to clips on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, any Elastic Audio processing is rendered first, the rendered file is then processed by AudioSuite, and the resulting new audio file is analyzed for Elastic Audio processing.

Moving Elastic Audio Between Tracks

Pro Tools analyzes, conforms, and commits audio in different ways when moving audio clips between tracks with Elastic Audio enabled and tracks without Elastic Audio enabled. The following table shows the different results for moving clips between real-time Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, Rendered Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, and audio tracks without Elastic Audio.

From	To	Result
Real-time Elastic Audio–enabled track	Rendered Elastic Audio–enabled track	Render clip with destination track's Elastic Audio plugin
Real-time Elastic Audio–enabled track	Audio track (no Elastic Audio)	Render clip with source track's Elastic Audio plugin and commit the clip to the destination track
Rendered Elastic Audio–enabled track	Real-time Elastic Audio–enabled track	Apply real-time Elastic Audio processing using the destination track's Elastic Audio plugin
Rendered Elastic Audio–enabled track	Audio track (no Elastic Audio)	Commit to track
Audio track (no Elastic Audio)	Real-time Elastic Audio–enabled track	Calculate Elastic Audio analysis and apply real-time Elastic Audio processing using the destination track's Elastic Audio plugin
Audio track (no Elastic Audio)	Rendered Elastic Audio–enabled track	Calculate Elastic Audio analysis and render the clip using the destination track's Elastic Audio plugin

From	To	Result
Pitched Elastic Audio–enabled track	Audio track (no Elastic Audio)	Render clip pitch shift with source track's Elastic Audio plugin and commit the clip to the destination track

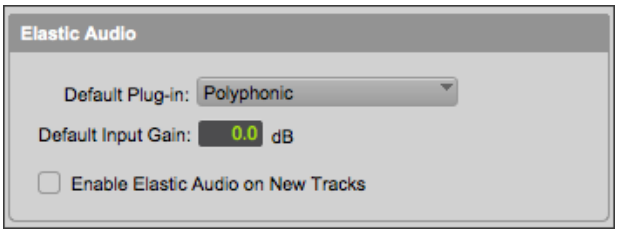
Clips that are committed, either by disabling Elastic Audio on a track or by moving a clip to a track without Elastic Audio enabled, are written to disk as new audio files (see "Committed Clips" on page 1342.)

Approximate Waveforms

With Real-Time Elastic Audio processing, the drawing of waveforms is only approximate. For example, if you bus record a Real-Time Elastic Audio processed track, you will notice that the Waveform on the source track does not necessarily exactly match the recorded track. However, be assured that what you hear is an accurate rendition of the Real-Time Elastic Audio processing even if the waveform drawing on the source track is only approximate.

Elastic Audio Preferences

The Elastic Audio settings in the Processing Preferences page determine which Elastic Audio plugin is used for preview and import, and whether or not new tracks are created with Elastic Audio enabled using the selected default plugin.



Default Plugin

Lets you select any Real-Time Elastic Audio plugin as the default plugin for previewing and importing Elastic Audio. The selected default Elastic Audio plugin is also used when new tracks are created with Elastic Audio enabled. The Elastic Audio Plugin selector in Workspace browsers inherits the selected Default Plugin setting. Likewise, changing the selected plugin in Workspace browsers updates the selected Default Plugin setting in the Processing Preferences page.

Default Input Gain

Lets you attenuate the signal input to Elastic Audio plugins by 0 to –6 dB for preview and import. If you experience clipping due to Elastic Audio processing during preview or after import, you may want to set the Default Input Gain to slightly attenuate the audio signal input for Elastic Audio processing. This preference also applies to any audio imported to an Elastic Audio-enabled track.

If you commit any clips on a track (by disabling Elastic Audio on the track) that were imported with Input Gain, their clip-based In put Gain is reset to 0.

The Elastic Properties window inherits the Default Input Gain preference. To apply further clip-based Input Gain for Elastic Audio processing, select the clip and adjust the Input Gain setting in the Elastic Properties window (see "Elastic Properties Window" on page 1359).

Enable Elastic Audio on New Tracks

When selected, new tracks are created with Elastic Audio enabled. The selected default Elastic Audio plugin is used.

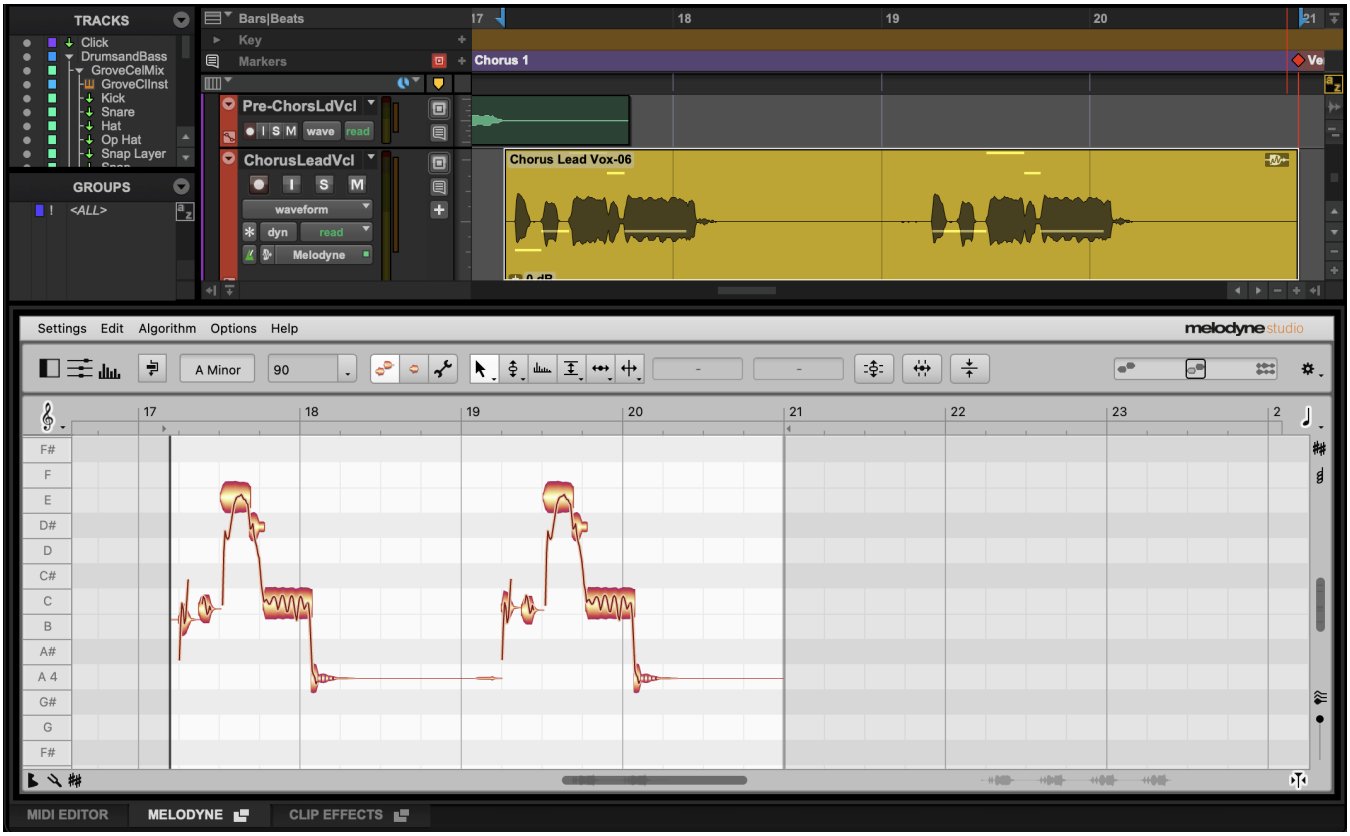
If the Enable Elastic Audio on New Tracks option is selected, you may want to also select the New Tracks Default to Tick Timebase option in the Editing Preferences page.

51 Melodyne Editing and Audio to MIDI

Pro Tools integrates Melodyne from Celemony to let you edit audio and to convert audio to MIDI.

Integrated Melodyne Editing

Pro Tools lets you edit audio with Melodyne from within the Edit window. Pro Tools provides a docked Melodyne editor at the bottom of the Edit window along with the docked MIDI Editor and Clip Effects, each organized in tabs. You can analyze and edit whole audio tracks or single audio clips using Melodyne.



Melodyne tab in the Edit window

Melodyne Essentials is installed with all tiers of Pro Tools, and a Melodyne Essentials license is included with all versions except Pro Tools Intro. You can purchase a license separately from Celemony to use Melodyne editing in Pro Tools Into or upgrade to a Pro Tools subscription plan). You can also upgrade from Melodyne Essentials to Melodyne Studio from Celemony for use with any tier of Pro Tools. Pro Tools Studio and Ultimate also let you edit greater-than-stereo tracks with Melodyne.

To show the Melodyne editor, do one of the following:

- Choose **`View > Other Displays > Melodyne`**.
- Click the **`Melodyne`** tab at the bottom of the Edit window.
- Press Option+8 (Mac) or Alt+8 (Windows).

Melodyne Floating Window

The Melodyne display can be detached from the bottom of the Edit window as its own floating window.

To open the Melodyne window, do one of the following:

- Select **Window > Melodyne**.
- In the Edit window, click the Open Melodyne icon.

To keep the Melodyne window floating on top of other windows:

- In the Melodyne Window menu, select **Keep Window on Top**.

To close the Melodyne window, do one of the following:

- Deselect **Window > Melodyne**.
- In the Melodyne window, click the Close Window icon.
- In the Edit window, click the Close Window icon on the Clip Effects tab.

Melodyne Analysis Display on Clips



Melodyne analyzed clip, note overlay and ARA analysis icon

Audio clips that have been analyzed by Melodyne display both an ARA icon in the upper right corner of the clip and transparent Melodyne note overlay on the audio clip representing the results of Melodyne pitch analysis. There are two different ARA icons, a slightly opaque one for a clip that is only analyzed and a solid one for when there are actually Melodyne audio modifications to the clip.

Melodyne Track and Clip Commands

Any audio track or clip can be analyzed by and edited in the Melodyne tab at the bottom of the Pro Tools Edit window.

To analyze an audio track and edit it with Melodyne, do one of the following:

- Select the audio track and choose **Track > Melodyne > Edit**.
- Right-click the audio track name and choose **Melodyne > Edit**.
- From the audio track Elastic Audio/ARA plugin selector, choose **Melodyne**.

Selecting Melodyne editing on Elastic Audio tracks changes the Elastic Audio plugin to Melodyne.

To analyze an audio clip and edit it with Melodyne, do one of the following:

- Select the audio clip and choose **Clip > Melodyne > Edit**.
- Right-click the audio clip and choose **Melodyne > Edit**.
- Select the audio clip and press Control+Shift+A (Mac) or Start+Shift+A (Windows).

Editing Audio in Melodyne

For information about editing audio with Melodyne, please refer to documentation from https://www.celemony.com/.

Once you start to make edits in Melodyne, Pro Tools provides the following commands:

Edit

Analyzes the track or selected audio clip and opens the Melodyne editor at the bottom of the Edit window.

Clear

Clears all Melodyne edits.

Bypass

Bypasses Melodyne processing.

Render

Renders Melodyne edits on the track or selected clip.

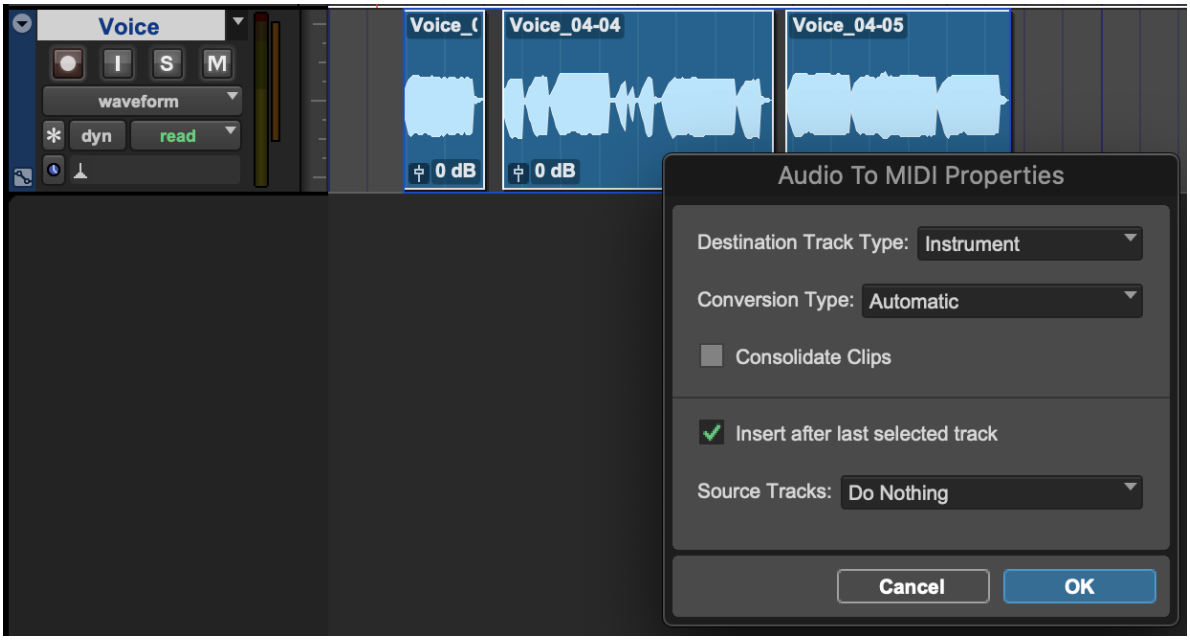
Melodyne edits are undoable and redoable using its own separate edit history (undo queue) from Pro Tools.

Extract MIDI from an Audio Track

Pro Tools lets you extract MIDI pitch and velocity data from selected audio tracks and paste it to new MIDI or Instrument tracks.

To extract MIDI from audio and write it to a new MIDI or Instrument track:

1. Select an audio track and do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > Extract MIDI to New Track**.
   - Right-click the track name in the Track List, or in the Mix or Edit window and choose **Extract MIDI to New Track**.



Extracting MIDI from a source audio track

2. In the resulting Audio to MIDI Properties dialog, do the following:
   - Select the **Destination Track Type** (**MIDI** or **Instrument**).
   - Select the **Conversion Type** appropriate to the selected audio (such as **Melodic** for melodic material or **Percussive** for drums). The available options are dependent on the selected **Audio to MIDI Plugin** are found in **Setup > Preferences > Processing**.
3. Enable **Consolidate Clips** to create a single MIDI clip from multiple audio clips on the source audio track.

4. Enable **Insert after last selected track** to place the new MIDI or Instrument track after the last selected track.
5. Select the desired option for what to do with the **Source Tracks**:
   - Hide and Make Inactive: Select to hide and make the source audio tracks inactive.
   - Make Inactive: Select to make the source audio tracks inactive (without hiding them).
   - Mute: Select to mute the source audio tracks.
   - Delete: Select to delete the source audio tracks.
   - Do Nothing: Select to leave the source audio tracks intact.

   Press Command+Left/Right Arrow (Mac) or Control+Left/Right Arrow (Windows) to move through the Source Track options.
6. Click **OK**.

   MIDI is extracted from audio on the source track(s) and pasted to the same timeline location on the new MIDI or Instrument track(s).



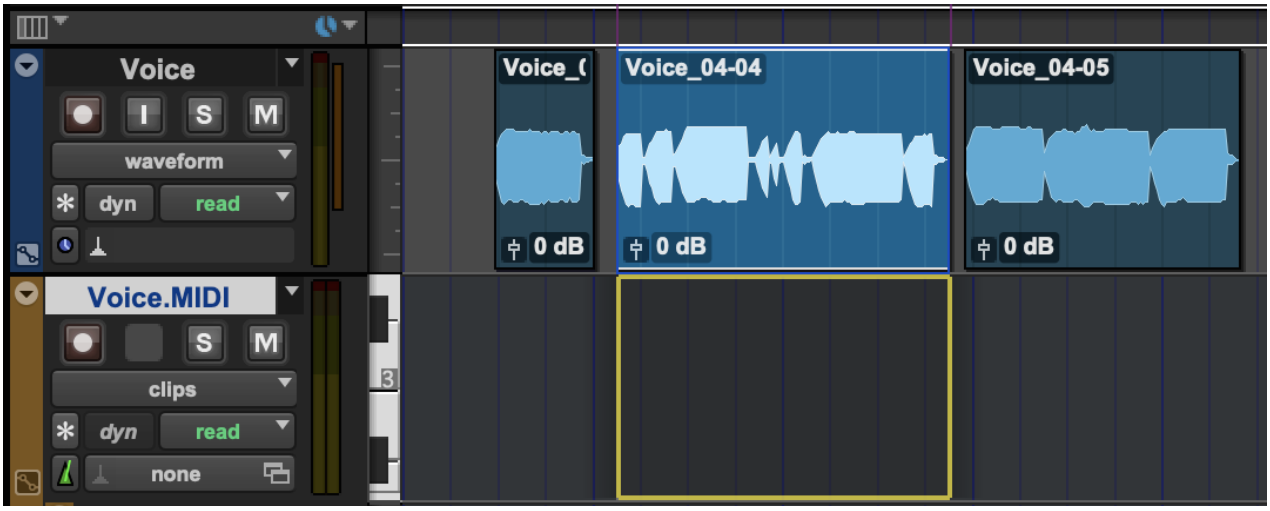
Extracted MIDI on a new Instrument track

Drag and Drop Audio to MIDI

Pro Tools lets you select one or more audio clips (including clip groups) and drag them to MIDI or Instrument tracks either from audio tracks or the Clip List to convert the source audio to MIDI. You can also, drag and drop audio files (or clip groups) to MIDI or Instrument tracks from the macOS Finder or Windows Explorer, or from Workspace browsers.

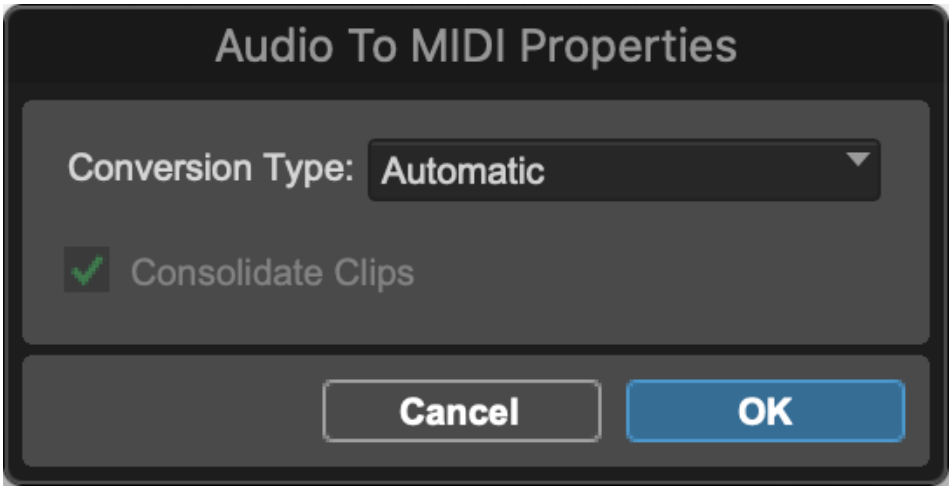
To convert audio to MIDI by drag and drop:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Select one or more audio clips (or clip groups) on an audio track or in the Clip List.
   - Select one or more audio files (or clip groups) on the Desktop or in a Workspace browser.
2. Drag and drop the selected clips or files to a MIDI or Instrument track.



Dragging and dropping an audio clip from an audio track to an Instrument track

3. In the resulting Audio to MIDI Properties dialog, select the most appropriate **`Conversion Type`** option for the source audio (for example, select **`Percussive`** for drums or **`Melodic`** for solo saxophone and so one).



Audio to MIDI Properties dialog when copying audio as MIDI

4. If you are dragging and dropping multiple audio clips to a MIDI or Instrument track, enable the **`Consolidate Clips`** option to create a single MIDI clip from the source audio clips.

   Selected clips are copied as MIDI to the destination track.



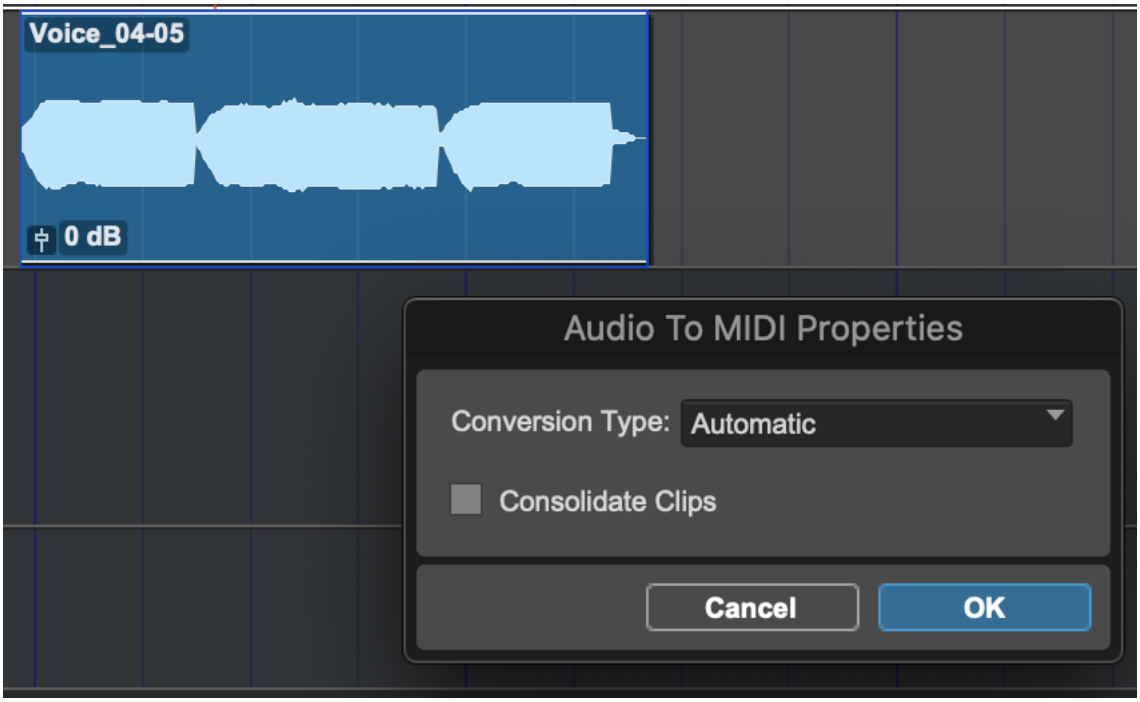
MIDI clip extracted from audio clip

Copy Audio and Paste as MIDI

Pro Tools lets you copy audio as MIDI from selected audio clips on audio tracks or in the Clip List, and paste MIDI extracted from that audio to MIDI and Instrument tracks.

To copy and paste audio as MIDI:

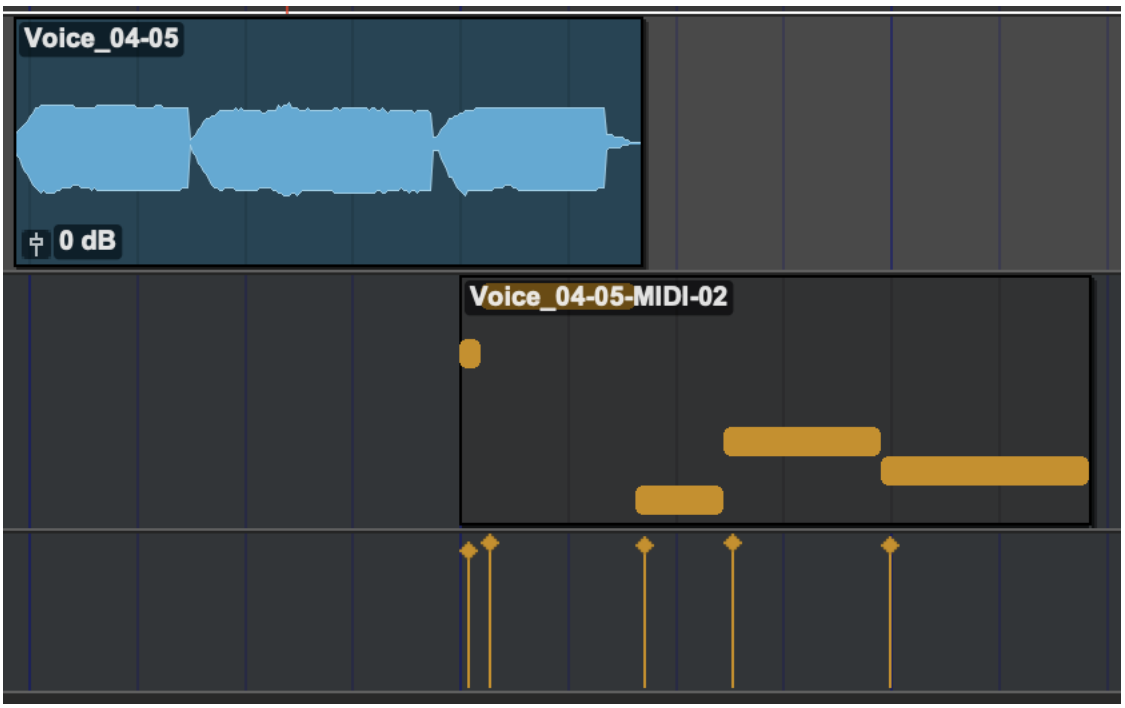
1. Do any of the following:
   - Right-click an audio clip on an audio track or in the Clip List and choose `Copy Audio as MIDI`.
   - Select one or more audio clips in the Clip List, then either choose `Copy Audio as MIDI` from the Clip List menu or right-click a selected audio clip and choose `Copy Audio as MIDI`.
   - Make an edit selection on an audio track that includes any audio (partial, whole, or multiple clips), right-click the selection and choose `Copy Audio as MIDI`.



Copying audio to MIDI

2. In the resulting Audio to MIDI Properties dialog, select the most appropriate **Conversion Type** option for the source audio (for example, select **Percussive** for drums or **Melodic** for a solo vocal line).
3. Enable the **Consolidate Clips** option to create a single MIDI clip from the source audio.
4. Place the edit cursor at the time location on a MIDI or Instrument track where want to paste the extracted MIDI.
5. Choose **Edit > Paste**, or press Command+V (Mac) or Control+V (Windows).

   The MIDI extracted from the copied audio is pasted as a new MIDI clip to the time location of the edit cursor on the target MIDI or Instrument track.



Copying audio to MIDI

Integrated ARA Plugins

In addition to Melodyne, Pro Tools supports the following third-party integrated ARA plugins:

- "Integrated Melodyne Editing" on page 1367
- Acon Digital Acoustica Essentials
- "iZotope RX Spectral Editor" on page 1376
- "SoundRadix " on page 1381
- Synchro Arts
- "SpectraLayers Go " on page 1384
- "WaveLab Go " on page 1385

For details about using supported individual third-party integrated ARA plugins, refer to the manufacturer's documentation.

Pro Tools supports these integrated ARA plugins, but only iZotope RX Spectral Editor and Celemony Melodyne are included and installed with Pro Tools Ultimate, Studio, and Artist. Other supported ARA plugins may include trial versions but must otherwise be purchased separately.

Adding ARA Plugins to Tracks or Clips

Integrated ARA plugins can be added in the following ways:

- Assigning to the entire track (all track content is analyzed):
  - Assign it to the track from the Track top level menu: **`Track > <ARA plugin name> > Edit`**.
  - Assign it to the track using the Track Right-click menu.
  - Assign it to the track using the Elastic Audio/ARA selector.
- Assigning it to specific clips, and only the selected clips are analyzed:
  - Assign it using **`Clip > <ARA plugin name> > Edit`**.
  - Assign it using the Clip Right-click menu.

Pro Tools lets you assign, change, or remove Elastic Audio or ARA plugins for a given track within a track group. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) when changing the EA or ARA plugin on a track while keeping the rest of the tracks in the group intact.

Favorite ARA Plugins

Pro Tools lets you set your favorite ARA plugin in a track Elastic Audio/ARA Plugin selector.

To add a favorite ARA plugin:

- From the track Elastic Audio/ARA Plugin selector, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the ARA plugin you want to assign as a favorite.

  Repeat this to add additional plugin favorites.

Favorite plugins appear at the top of the Selector menu.



To remove an ARA plugin from favorites:

- From the track Elastic Audio/ARA Plugin selector, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the ARA plugin you want to remove from favorites.

ARA Data Management

Overview

Since ARA plugins create a great deal of ARA data for analysis and processing, storing it in the Pro Tools session file is inefficient, so this ARA data is stored separately from the session file. Clip data is broken into separate smaller files. This lets Pro Tools trigger an update during Session Save operations only for the clips that have had ARA changes applied since the last save.

Applying ARA editing to clips that reference large audio files triggers an update to ARA data of the entire large file when saving the session. A 'Saving ARA Data...' progress bar may appear indicating that a large amount of ARA data is being saved as well.

If you need to work with a small portion out of the large source file, consolidate to a new file and then making the desired ARA edits.

ARA Data in the Session Folder

A folder called "ARA Data" is created at the root of the session folder. Whenever a clip with ARA analysis or edits is created in the session, a separate folder named after the ARA plugin is created and it contains ARA analysis data for that plugin.

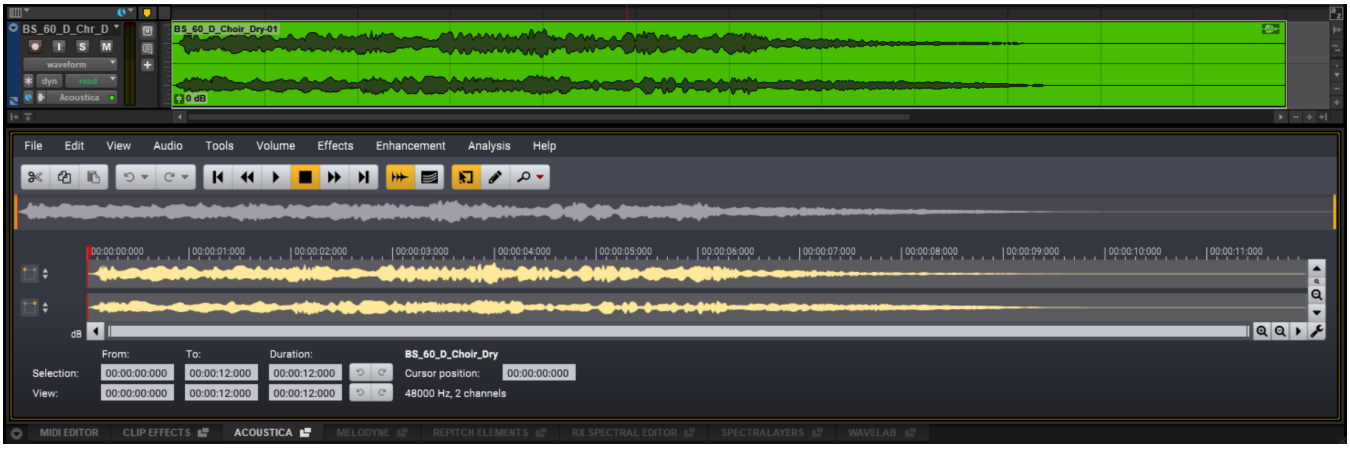
If you open a session created in previous versions of Pro Tools with Melodyne ARA, make some edits, and then Save, you are prompted by the Save As option to leave the original session intact.

Pro Tools 2024.6 or later requires Melodyne version 5.4 to be installed in order to properly support the ARA data architecture in the session folder. Melodyne 5.4 is included with the Pro Tools installers.

Acon Digital Acoustica Essentials

Pro Tools provides integrated ARA support for Acoustica from Acon Digital. Acoustica is an audio editor that includes a collection of powerful tools for audio restoration, noise reduction, and creative audio signal processing. If you own an Acoustica license, you can use the full feature set of Acoustica as an ARA plugin in

Acoustica Essentials is installed separately from Pro Tools. You can download the installer using Avid Link or from your online MyAvid account.



For complete documentation of Acoustica, visit Acon Digital's website.

iZotope RX Spectral Editor

The iZotope RX Spectral Editor lets you edit selected audio in the frequency domain. This is useful for audio repair, including de-noise, de-click, hum-removal, and more. iZotope RX Spectral Editor is included with Pro Tools Ultimate, Studio, and Artist.



The RX Spectral Editor ARA plugin does not require a separate license to run in Pro Tools Ultimate, Studio, or Artist. When first accessing the plugin, it will be ready to use after accepting the terms of the EULA (end-user license agreement).

RX Spectral Editor is only available in Pro Tools as an ARA 2.0 plugin.

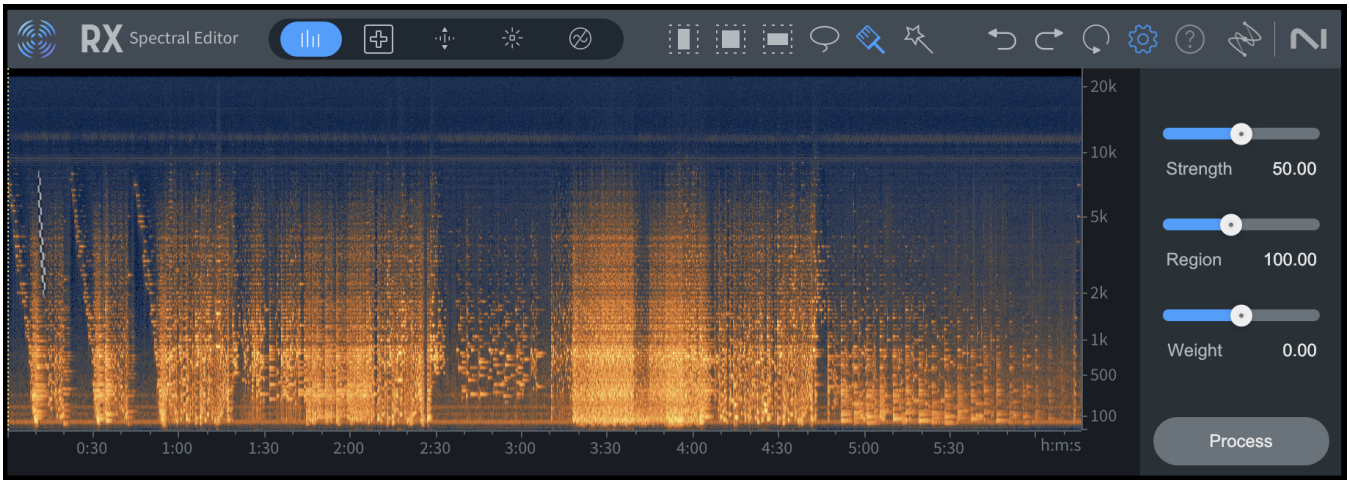
Clip Selection and Playback

Selected audio appears in the spectrogram view of the RX Spectral Editor ARA when selecting the audio clip in a track. If the selection is made across multiple clips, only the leftmost clip is displayed in the Spectrogram view. You can make a selection in the Spectrogram view of RX Spectral Editor and set parameters on the right as desired.

RX Spectral Editor ARA Processing Modes

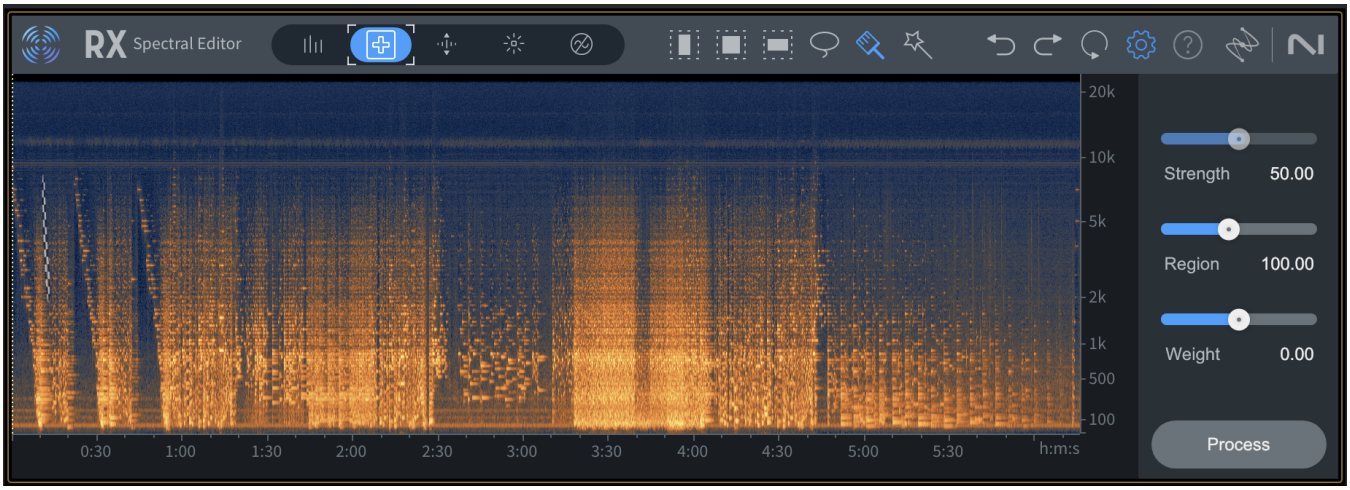
Attenuate

Use Attenuate mode to remove sounds by comparing the content inside of your selection to the content outside of your selection. It modifies dissimilar audio in your selection to be more similar to the surrounding audio. Attenuate does not re-synthesize any audio.



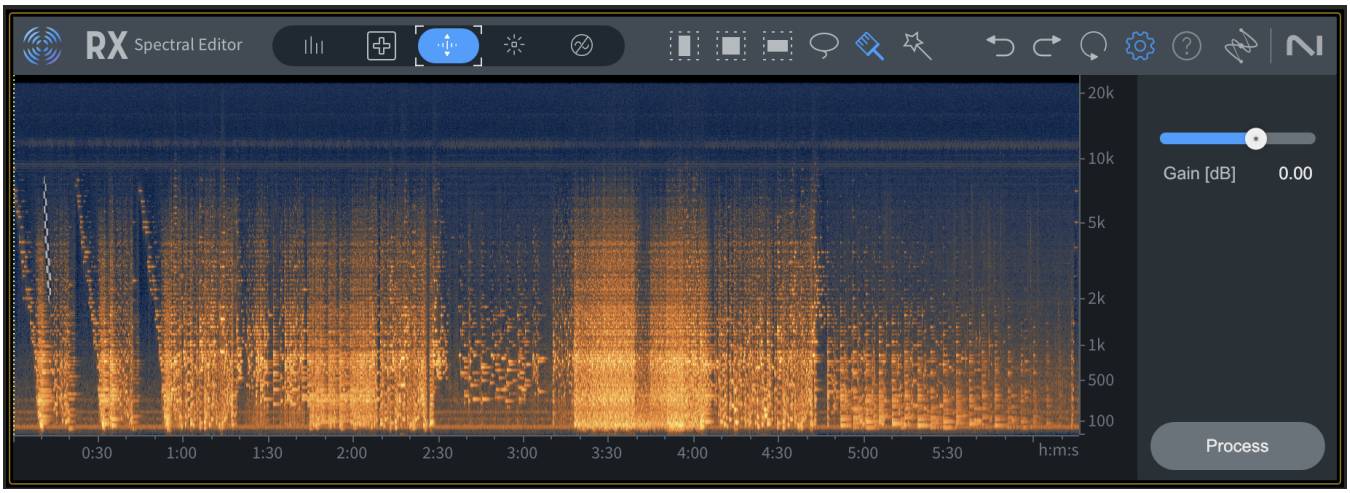
Replace

Use Replace to re-synthesize badly damaged sections (such as gaps) in tonal audio. It completely replaces the selected content with audio interpolated from the surrounding data.



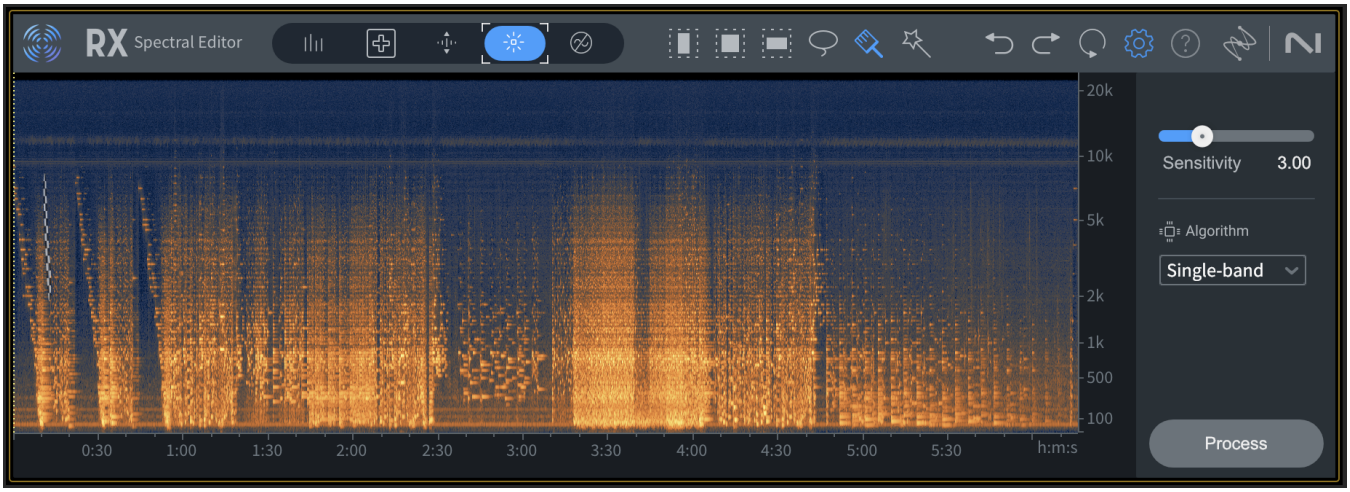
Gain

Gain is used for bringing the level of your audio up or down. Gain can be applied to a specific time-frequency selection, allowing you to manually attenuate or boost selections in the Spectrogram window.



De-click

De-click analyzes audio for amplitude irregularities and smoothes them out. This means that you can use De-click to remove a variety of short impulse noises, such as clicks caused by digital errors, mouth noises, and interference from cell phones.



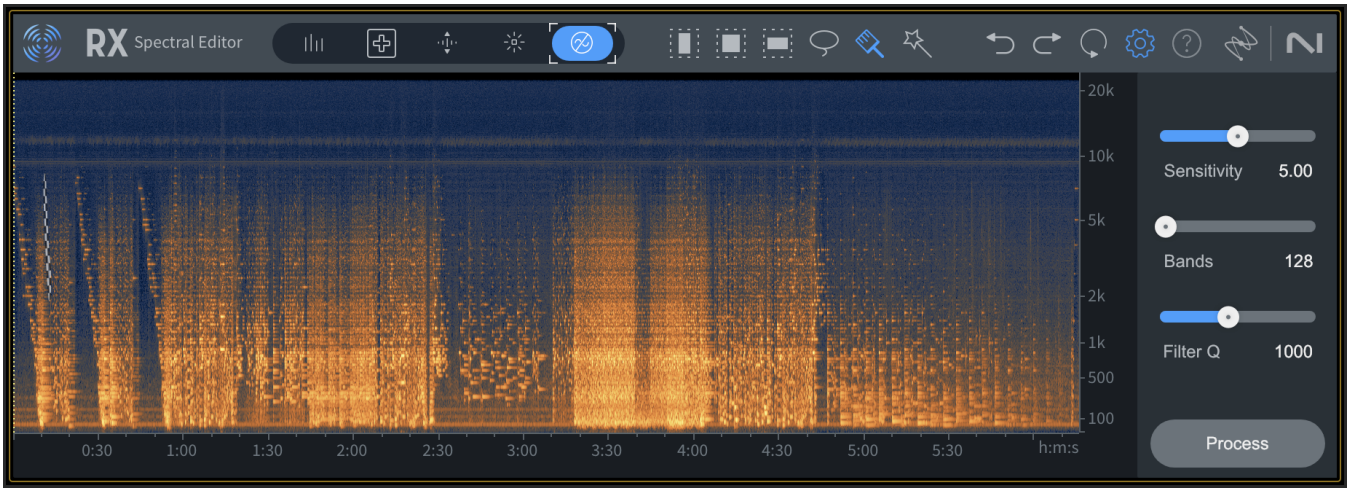
De-click Parameters

- Algorithm: Provides options for adjusting the configuration and processing quality of click interpolation, depending on the types of clicks and pops present in the audio.
  - Single-band: Processes quickly and works well on very narrow “digital” clicks.
  - Multi-band (periodic clicks): Uses multi-band processing for removing regularly repeating clicks with a wider spectrum, or regular clicks that have concentrated low or high energy (such as thumps or optical soundtrack perforation noise).
  - Multi-band (random clicks): Uses multi-band processing for wider vinyl clicks and thumps, with a protective algorithm for preserving periodic audio elements characteristic to certain instruments such as brass or vocals.

  - Low-latency: Works well on mouth clicks and other clicks that cannot be handled by other algorithms. This mode has very low latency and is suitable for real-time work in RX De-click plugin.
- Sensitivity: Determines how many clicks are detected in the signal. Increasing sensitivity can impact plosives, which can in turn reduce or damage the original signal.

De-hum

De-hum is designed to remove persistent tonal noise, such as AC noise, electrical buzz or interference introduced by EMF (Electro-magnetic fields). De-hum includes 2 modes: a Static mode that is best for ground noise or simple hums with a few harmonics, and a Dynamic mode for complex hums or buzz.



De-hum Parameters

- Sensitivity: Adjusts the amount of hum that will be removed.
- Bands: Controls the number of dynamic notch filters, which update their gains based on the input signal to avoid ringing. Adjust to higher values for complex hums, at the expense of transparency.
- Filter Q: Controls the bandwidth of the notch filters.

RX Spectral Editor Common Controls



Once an audio clip is loaded in the spectrogram view of the Spectral Editor, the following controls become available (controls 6-9 are common for Attenuate and Replace modes):

1. Selection Tools: Determines the tool type used when making selections in the spectrogram.
   - Time selection tool [T]: Select a range of time within the file (horizontally within the spectrogram).
   - Time-Freq selection tool [R]: Makes rectangular selections in the spectrogram display to isolate sounds by time and frequency.
   - Freq selection tool [F]: Makes frequency only selection (vertical in spectrogram).
   - Lasso selection tool [L]: Makes a selection based on a free-form outline drawn with your cursor on the spectrogram.

- Brush selection tool [B]: Draw a free-form selection using a defined brush size in time and frequency in RX's spectrogram. The size of the Brush Selection tool can be adjusted by clicking and holding on the Brush Tool icon.

With the Brush tool selected, you can also hold Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and move the mouse wheel to make the brush size larger or smaller.

- Magic Wand selection tool [W]: Automatically selects similar harmonic content surrounding the selected material. Click on the spectrogram to select the most prominent tone under the cursor when the magic wand is selected. Clicking on an existing selection with the Magic Wand tool automatically selects the overtone harmonics or related audio components of your current audio selection.

You can use the Brush or Lasso tools first to broadly define a sound and then use Magic Wand to refine your selection to include relevant harmonic material.

2. Undo/Redo: Reverts/re-applies one processing step in your history.
   - Editing copies of clips: The Undo function in Spectral Editor applies to all non-unique copies of a clip. If you want to edit different copies of the same clip independently using Spectral Editor, bounce them first.
   - Undo history warning: Undo history is cleared when a session is saved.
3. Reset: Reverts all changes in the audio to the unprocessed state.
4. Settings: Opens the plugin General Settings menu.
5. Help: Opens help documentation in your default web browser.

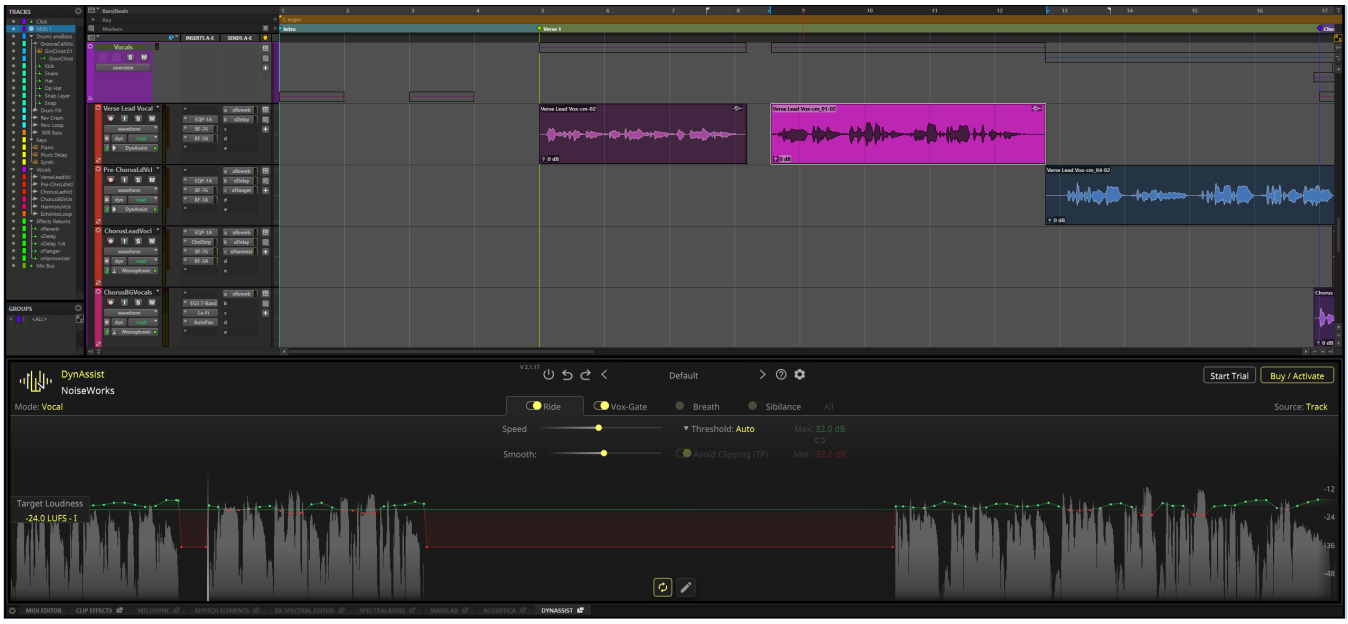
Keyboard Commands

When the RX Spectral Editor is focused, you can use the following keyboard shortcuts to execute commands in the Spectral Editor:

Action	Mac	Windows
Undo in Spectral Editor	Command+Z	Control+Z
Redo in Spectral Editor	Command+Shift+Z	Control+Shift+Z
Switch to Attenuate mode	Command+1	Control+1
Switch to Replace mode	Command+2	Control+2
Switch to Gain mode	Command+3	Control+3
Switch to De-click mode	Command+4	Control+4
Switch to De-hum mode	Command+5	Control+5
Process	Command_Enter	Control+Enter
Choose Time selection tool	1	1
Choose Time-frequency selection tool	2	2
Choose Frequency selection tool	3	3
Choose Lasso selection tool	4	4
Choose Brush selection tool	5	5
Choose Magic wand selection tool	6	6

NoiseWorks DynAssist Lite

Pro Tools provides integrated ARA support for DynAssist by NoiseWorks, and includes DynAssist Lite (a feature reduced version of the DynAssist). DynAssist lets you level the gain over entire vocal tracks, detect and display breaths and sibilances, and remove unwanted pauses with the content-aware Vox Gate.



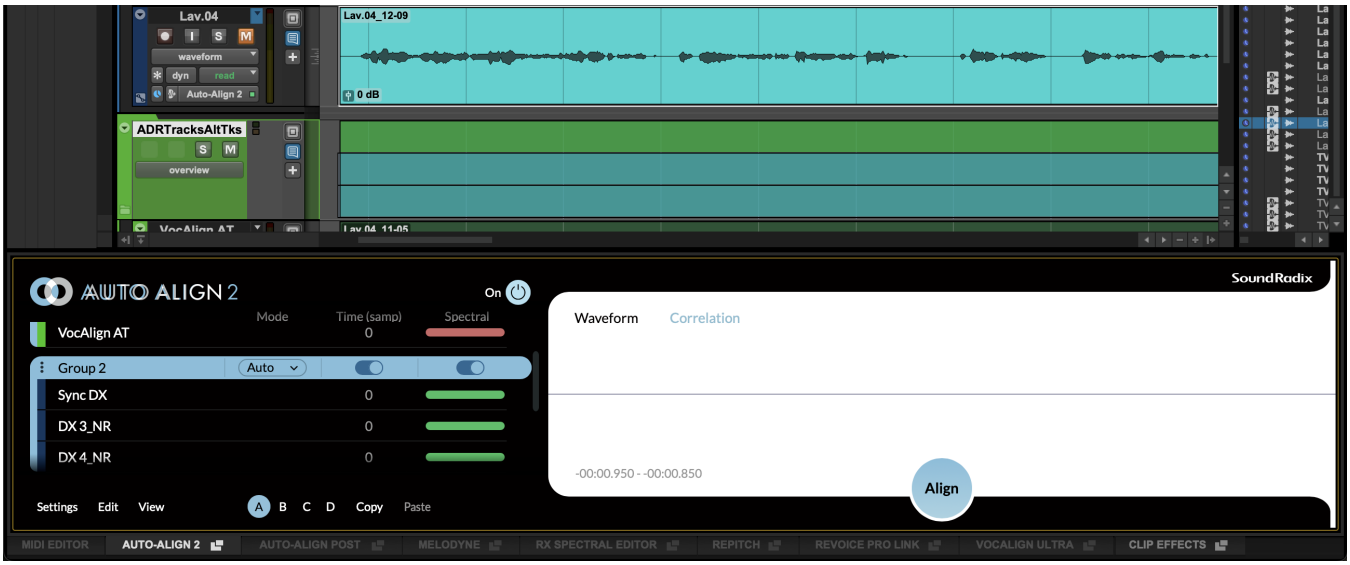
For complete documentation of DynAssist, visit NoiseWorks's website.

SoundRadix

- SoundRadix Auto-Align 2 (60-day trial included)
- SoundRadix Auto-Align Post 2 (not included)

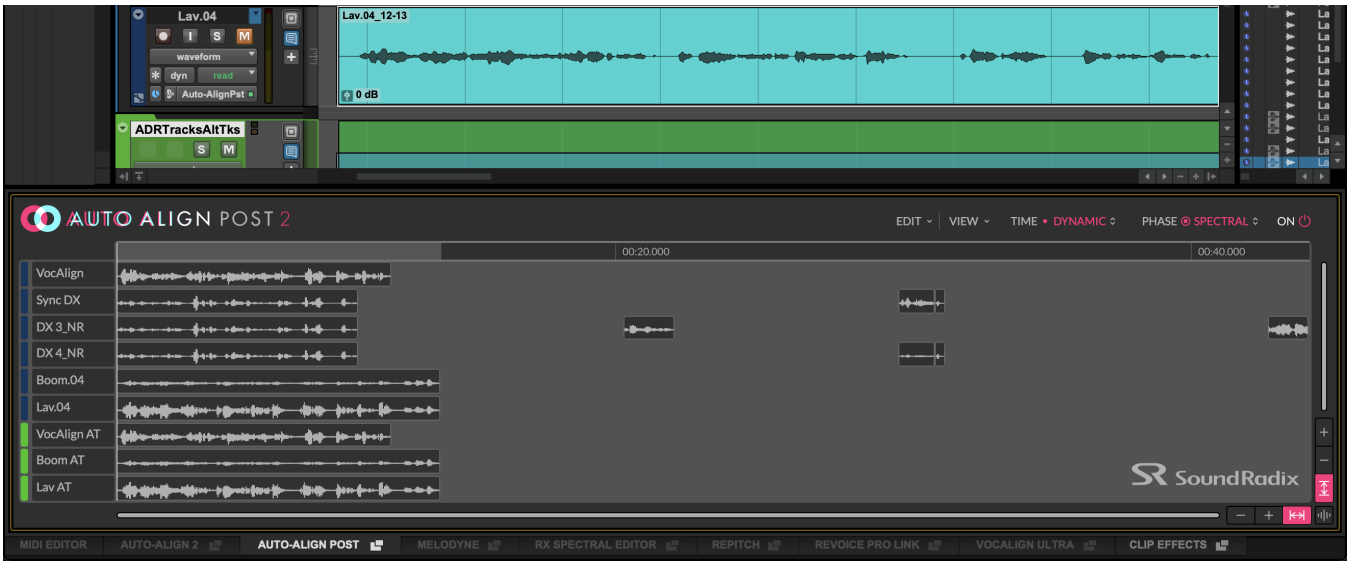
Auto-Align 2

Auto-Align 2 lets you automatically synchronize recordings from multiple sources (mics) regardless of their proximity to the source. This means that multiple channels of audio recorded from the same source using multiple microphones, regardless of positioning, can quickly and easily be phase aligned to match a specified guide track.



Auto-Align Post 2

Auto-Align Post 2 lets you time-align moving location microphones dynamically. Use Auto-Align Post to mix boom and lav microphones, while eliminating comb-filtering and phase artifacts caused by the time-of-arrival differences.



Synchro Arts

- Synchro Arts RePitch Elements and RePitch Standard (RePitch Elements included—60-day trial only for Pro Tools Intro)
- Synchro Arts VocAlign Standard and VocAlign Pro (not included)
- Synchro Arts ReVoice Pro (not included)

Synchro Arts RePitch Elements and Standard

RePitch Elements and RePitch Standard let you automatically correct pitch or modify the detailed pitch, timing, level, and formants of a single-pitched audio signal. Using the unique SynchroLink technology from Syncho Arts, RePitch can also seamlessly provide guide tracks to VocAlign Ultra, to automatically transfer the pitch and/or timing characteristics of the guide track to one or more other audio signals.



VocAlign Standard and Pro

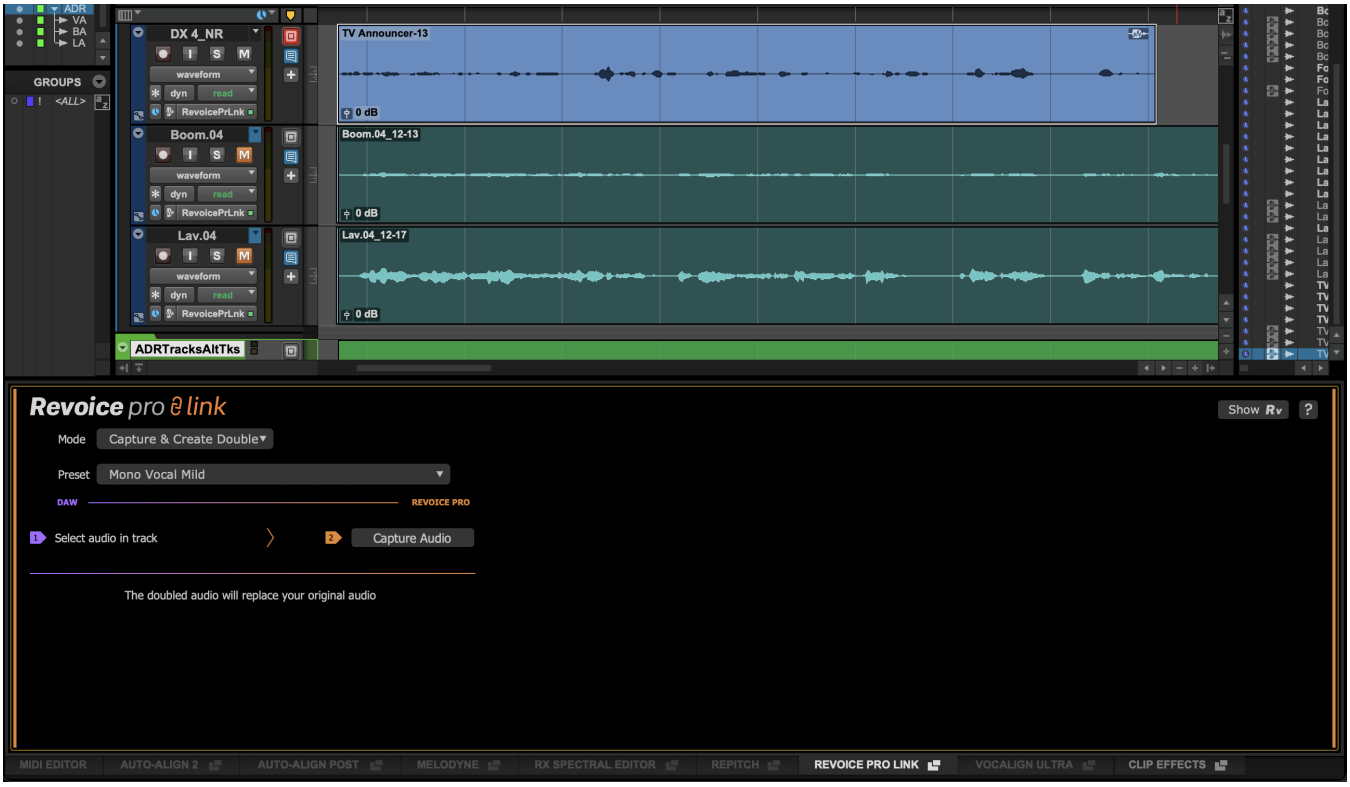
VocAlign Standard and VocAlign Pro let you automatically match the timing and pitch of one audio signal to the timing and pitch of another audio signal.


808 Bass
Keys
GROUPS
<ALL>
Group 1
ChorusBGVocls
waveform
dyn
read
VocAlign 6 Pro
EQ3 7-Band
Lo-Fi
AutoPan
xReverb
HarmonyVocals
xReverb
Chorus BG-05
0 dB
Harmony-01
VocAlign Pro
Slightly Loose- Timing [Default]
0:42
0:44
0:46
0:48
0:50
0:52
0:54
0:56
GUIDE
Capture
Chorus BG-04 (Chorus BG Vocals)
SYNC POINTS
DUB
GROUP: 1
Capture
The DUB track contains the audio that will be modified to match the Guide above
PROTECTED AREAS
OUTPUT
MIDI EDITOR
CLIP EFFECTS
AUTO-ALIGN 2
AUTO-ALIGN POST
MELODYNE
RX SPECTRAL EDITOR
REPITCH ELEMENTS
REVOICE PRO LINK
VOCALIGN 6 PRO

ReVoice Pro

ReVoice Pro lets you automatically create double (or multiple) tracks from multiple takes, modify the inflection of spoken phrases from one actor's take to match another take (or even a different actor), create one or more realistic double tracks from a single input track. or tighten up the time and pitch of “stacks” of lead and harmony parts.

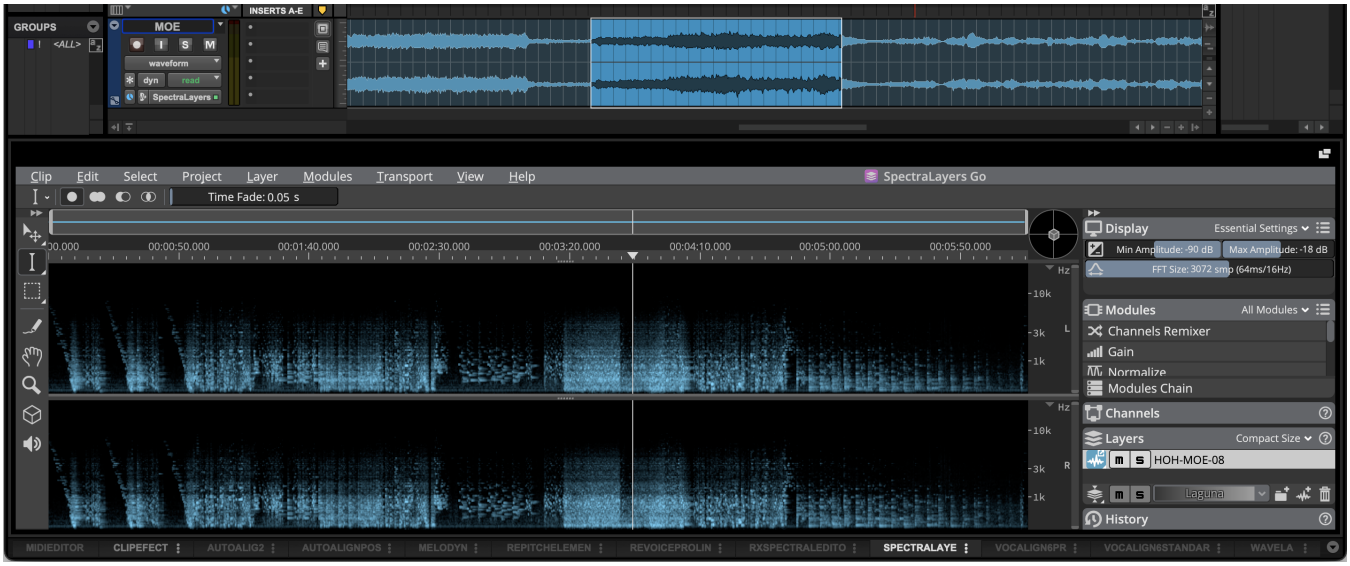
⚠ **Currently Revoice Pro exclusively works as a standalone application. Use the Revoice Pro Link plugin to transfer audio from and back to Pro Tools (note that Revoice Pro Link does not perform any processing).**



SpectraLayers Go

Pro Tools provides integrated ARA support for SpectraLayers from Steinberg Media Technologies GmbH. SpectraLayers Go is a feature-reduced version included with Pro Tools for every paying customer. If you own a SpectraLayers Pro license, you can use the full feature set of SpectraLayers Pro as an ARA plugin in Pro Tools.

SpectraLayers Go is installed separately from Pro Tools. SpectraLayers Go provides powerful tools for spectral editing audio clips on tracks in Pro Tools.



SpectraLayers Go in the docked ARA editor in the Edit window

For complete information about using SpectraLayers Go, see the SpectraLayers Go documentation from Steinberg online at https://steinberg.help/spectralayers-manuals/spectralayers-go/spectralayers-go-11/ or locally at: /Applications/SpectraLayers/11.app/Contents/Resources/help/SpectraLayers_Go.html on macOS or C:\Program Files\Steinberg\SpectraLayers 11\Resources\help\SpectraLayers_Go.html on Windows.

WaveLab Go

Pro Tools provides integrated ARA support for WaveLab Go from Steinberg Media Technologies GmbH. WaveLab Go is a feature-reduced version included with Pro Tools for every paying customer.

Wavelab Go is installed separately from Pro Tools. WaveLab Go provides powerful tools for audio mastering, analysis, editing, restoration, and batch conversion on audio tracks in Pro Tools.



WaveLab Go in the docked ARA editor in the Edit window

WaveLab Go documentation is available from Steinberg's online help center. You can also click the ? (question mark) icon in the WaveLab Go ARA plugin window.

53 Committing, Freezing, and Bouncing Tracks

Commit Tracks

Pro Tools lets you “commit” tracks, where a new track is created containing the audio rendered from the output of the source track. This is useful for freeing up processing power on your system, as well as for sharing sessions with other systems that may not have all of the plugins used in the session.

You can commit the following track types: audio, Auxiliary Input, MIDI (only when routed to an Instrument plugin), and Instrument tracks. Committing a track is undo-able.

To commit one or more tracks:

1. Select one or more tracks and do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > Commit**.
   - Right-click a track and choose **Commit Tracks**.
   - Press Option+Shift+C (Mac) or Alt+Shift+C.
2. Configure the resulting Commit Tracks dialog as desired (see "Commit Tracks Dialog" on page 1388).
3. Click **OK**.

What Gets Committed

Committing a track always renders the following:

- Clip gain
- Clip effects
- All Inserts (or Commit to Insert)
- HEAT, if Pre-Insert
- Elastic Audio
- ARA (Melodyne, RX Spectral Editor, and so on)

The following source track data is always copied to the new track when committed:

- Timebase
- Elastic Audio Algorithm
- Solo Safe
- Track Input assignment (unless the channel width changes)
- Track Output assignment
- HEAT settings

The following source track data can optionally be rendered if selected in the Commit Tracks dialog:

- Pan automation
- Volume automation

The following source track data can optionally be copied if selected in the Commit Tracks dialog:

- Sends
- Group assignments

Clip Boundaries Maintained on Committed Tracks

When committing a track, clip boundaries are maintained with different results depending on the following criteria:

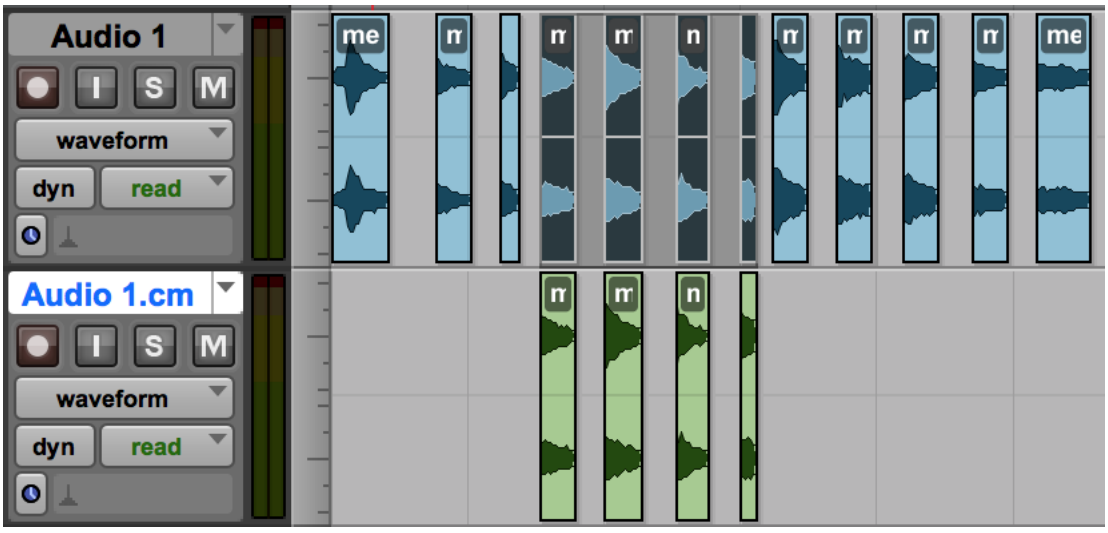
When **Commit** is set to **Selected Tracks**, the start and end of each clip on the track is maintained in the rendered copy.

When **Commit** is set to **Edit Selection**, the start and end of the edit selection determine the start of the first clip and the end of the last clip on the rendered copy. All clip boundaries in between are maintained.

When the **Consolidate Clips** option is selected, the rendered copy results in a single consolidated clip.



Source Track (top) and Committed track (bottom) with Commit set to Selected Tracks and the Consolidate Clips option enabled



Source Track (top) and Committed track (bottom) with Commit set to Edit Selection and the Consolidate Clips option disabled

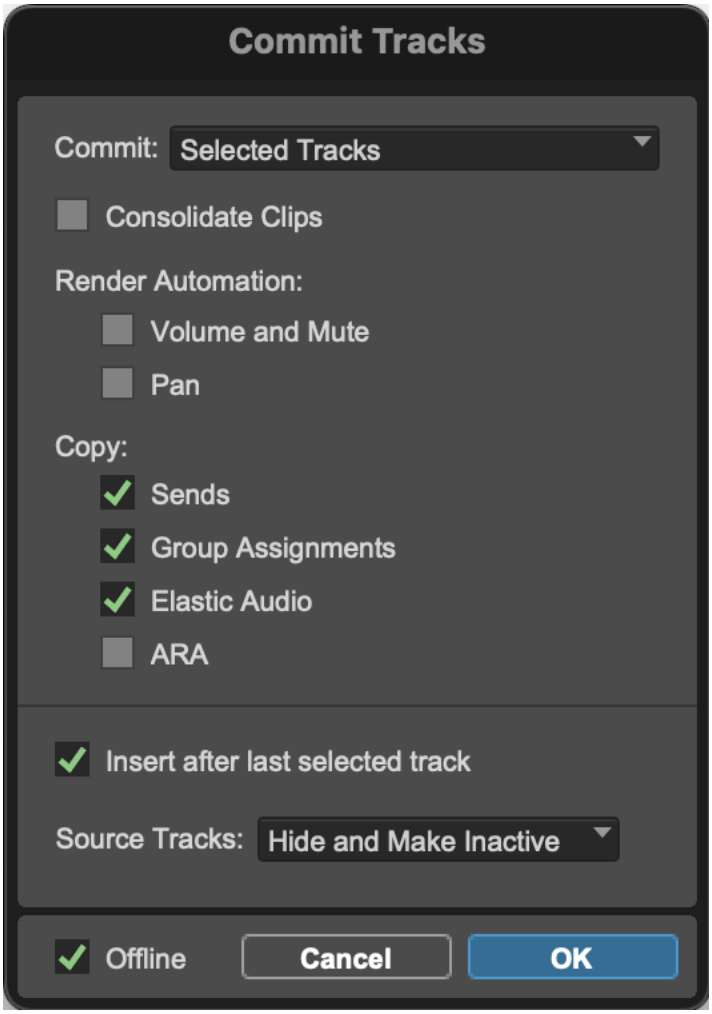
If the audio signal from a source track remains above –144 dBFS after the end of a clip due to plugin processing (such as with time base effects like reverb or delay), the rendered clip is extended to include the ongoing audio signal. Once the audio signal drops below –144 dBFS, the rendered clip ends. If the audio signal from the source track continues past the end of one clip and into the beginning of the next, the rendered track merges the source clips into a single clip.

Note that plugins with intentionally high noise floors, such as amp modeling plugins, may extend rendered clip boundaries.

Committed Auxiliary Input tracks reference the clip boundaries from audio tracks routed to the input of the Auxiliary Input track and preserve them whenever possible.

Commit Tracks Dialog

The Commit Tracks dialog provides several options for how you want selected tracks committed.



Commit Tracks dialog

Commit

Select either **`Selected Tracks`** or **`Edit Selection`** to determine what is committed.

Selected Tracks

Commits all selected tracks from the beginning of the first clip on the track to the end of the last clip on the track. If the Consolidate Clips option is disabled, all clip boundaries are maintained.

Edit Selection

Commits only the current Edit selection. If the Consolidate Clips option is disabled, all clip boundaries within the edit selection are maintained.

If there is an Edit selection in the session, press Command+Up/Down Arrow (Mac) or Control+Up/Down Arrow (Windows) to switch between the Commit options.

Consolidate Clips

Select to consolidate all clips on a track (or all clips in the edit selection) into a single new complete file clip.

Render Automation

The **`Render Automation`** options determine whether or not Volume and Mute or Pan automation is rendered in committed tracks.

Volume and Mute

Select to render Volume and Mute automation to committed tracks. If this option is selected, Volume automation is reset to unity and Mute automation is reset to unmuted for all committed tracks. If it is not enabled, Volume and Mute automation playlists are copied to committed tracks.

Pan

Select to render Pan automation to committed tracks. If this option is selected, Pan automation playlists are reset to the defaults for all committed tracks. If it is not enabled, Pan automation playlists are copied to committed tracks.

Copy

The **`Copy`** options determine whether or not sends or Group assignments are copied to committed tracks.

Sends

Select to copy sends from the source track to the committed track.

Sends cannot be copied if pan automation is rendered resulting in a different channel width and follow main pan (FMP) is not enabled, or if volume automation is rendered and the send is set to pre-fader (PRE).

Group Assignments

Select to copy Group Assignments from the source track to the committed track.

Insert After Last Selected Track

Select the **`Insert After Last Selected Track`** option to have new committed tracks placed after the last selected track. When disabled, each committed track is placed immediately following the source track.

Source Tracks

The **`Source Tracks`** options determine what happens to the source tracks that are committed to new tracks.

Hide and Make Inactive

Select to hide and make the source tracks inactive.

Make Inactive

Select to make the source tracks inactive (without hiding them).

Mute

Select to mute the source tracks (without hiding them).

Delete

Select to delete the source tracks.

Do Nothing

Select to leave the source tracks intact.

Press Command+Left/Right Arrow (Mac) or Control+Left/Right Arrow (Windows) to move through the Source Track options.

Offline

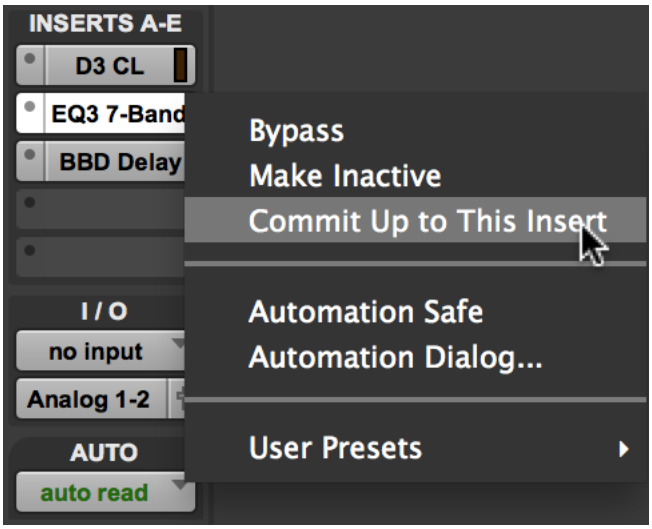
Select to commit selected tracks offline. When this option is deselected, Pro Tools commits selected tracks in real time. Any source tracks that use Hardware Inserts include their processing as well.

Commit Up To This Insert

Pro Tools lets you commit a track or Edit selection up to an individual plugin insert on a track. For example, you might want to commit a virtual instrument plugin, but continue to adjust processing plugins, like EQ or dynamics.

To commit a track up to a single insert:

1. Ensure that Inserts view is shown in either the Edit or Mix window.
2. Right-click on the insert up to which you want to commit the track and choose **`Commit Up To This Insert`**.



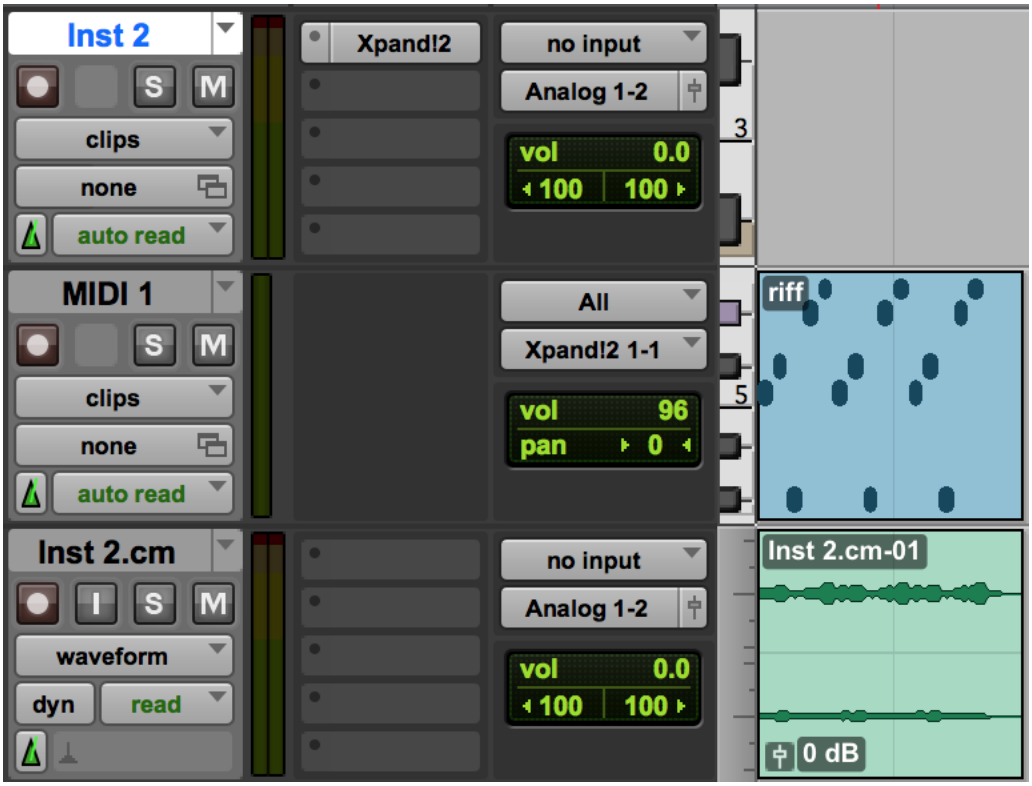
Commit Up To This Insert

Press and hold the Option key (Mac) or the Alt key (Windows) to Commit all tracks up to the selected insert.

3. Configure the resulting Commit Tracks dialog as desired (see "Commit Tracks Dialog" on page 1388).
4. Click **`OK`**.

Committing MIDI

Pro Tools lets you commit MIDI tracks as long as the MIDI output assignment is set to an Instrument plugin on another track. Commit is unavailable for MIDI tracks assigned to external MIDI devices.



Source MIDI Track (middle) assigned to a Virtual Instrument plugin on the Instrument track (top) and the Committed track (bottom)

When more than one MIDI track are routed to the same Instrument plugin, you can commit one, some, or all of the MIDI tracks. Only selected MIDI tracks are committed. For example, if you have four MIDI tracks routed to a single Instrument plugin on another track (audio, Auxiliary Input, or Instrument), and you select only MIDI tracks 1–3, the committed track will include only the notes from those tracks while the notes from MIDI track 4 are excluded. Similarly, if you have a complex MIDI arrangement and you only want to commit one part of it, select the MIDI track you want to commit and the rendered audio will only include the MIDI performance from that track.

Committing MIDI Clips by Drag and Drop

You can commit MIDI clips on Instrument tracks by dragging and dropping the MIDI clip from the source track to an audio track of the same channel width.



Audio rendered by dragging and dropping a MIDI clip from an Instrument Track (top) to an audio (bottom)

Committing Tracks with Multiple Output Assignments

If the source track is assigned to multiple output paths of different channel widths, and **Pan** automation is rendered, a new track with committed audio is created for each channel width. For example, if the output of the source track is assigned to a mono output path, a stereo output path, and a 5.1 output path, three separate tracks with separate committed files are created, each with the corresponding channel width. If the track output is assigned to multiple output paths of the same channel width, only one track and committed file is created.

If **Pan** automation is *not* rendered, and the source track is assigned to multiple output paths, the track output assignments are copied to a single committed track.

Committing Tracks with Inserts that Have Auxiliary Output Sends

Some plugins, such as Pro Multiband Dynamics and many Virtual Instrument plugins, let you assign Auxiliary Output Sends (AOS) from the plugin to track inputs of other tracks (such as audio or Auxiliary Input tracks). When committing a track that has a plugin that is assigned to Auxiliary Output Sends, you are prompted to also commit any tracks that are assigned to the plugin Auxiliary Outputs. Choose **Yes** to commit those tracks as well or **No** to commit only the source track.

Rendered File Bit Preference

The **Rendered File Bit Depth** preference on the Processing Preferences page (**Setup > Preferences > Processing**) determines the bit depth of new audio files created using the **Track Commit** command.

Always Use 32-bit

When this option is selected, new audio files created using **Track Commit** are 32-bit files regardless of the session bit depth. Since the mixer in Pro Tools is 32-bit floating point, it is recommended that you use the default **Always Use 32-bit** option. This ensures that what you hear on the source track is what you get on the committed track.

Follow Session Settings

When this option is selected, new audio files created using **Track Commit** command are the same bit depth as the session. If you select the **Follow Session Settings** option, it is possible the committed audio may clip (since you are truncating from 32-bit floating point to 24- or 16-bit). However, you may want to select this option if you need to have all audio generated by the session follow a particular bit-depth.

Track Freeze

Pro Tools lets you "freeze" audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks. When you freeze a track, the source material (audio and MIDI) on the track is replaced with audio that has been processed by all of the plugins on the track (or only up to a specified insert), including instrument plugins. This process is reversible, so you can "unfreeze" frozen tracks.

Freezing tracks is useful for freeing up processing power in your session for other tracks and processing tasks. It is especially useful for exchanging sessions with other systems that may not have all of the same plugins as your system. Rather than committing tracks as final print tracks, you can freeze tracks that you want to share but might want to keep editing while that track is shared or out for review.

The ability to unfreeze a track lets you go back and adjust plugin settings or edit track material (such as audio or MIDI data to correct a note or rhythm) and then re-freeze the track.



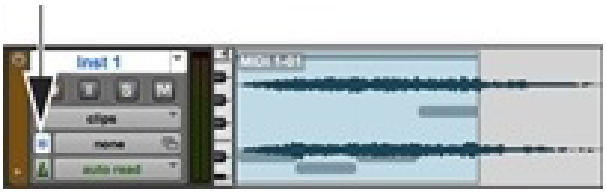
Editing is disabled on frozen tracks. To make edits, unfreeze the track, make the edits you want, and then re-freeze the track. For more information, see *"Editing Restrictions on Frozen Tracks" on page 1395.*

To freeze (or un-freeze) one or more tracks, do one of the following:

- Select one or more tracks and choose **Track > Freeze** (or **Unfreeze**).
- Click the Track Freeze icon in the Track controls so that it is highlighted (or unhighlighted).
- Right-click on the track name and select **Freeze** (or **Unfreeze**).

Option-Shift-Click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-Click (Windows) to freeze all selected tracks. Option-Click (Mac) or Alt-Click (Windows) to freeze all audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks.

When a track is frozen, any plugins on the track are made inactive. On Instrument tracks, the waveform of the frozen audio is superimposed over the MIDI data on the track as a visual cue.



Frozen Instrument track, Freeze icon highlighted

On Auxiliary Input tracks, the waveform of the frozen audio is shown as a visual cue.



Frozen Auxiliary Input track with source audio track shown—Freeze icon highlighted

On audio tracks, any plugins on the track are made inactive and the waveform updates to show the processed, or “frozen” audio.



Frozen audio track, before and after—Freeze icon highlighted

What Gets Frozen

The following track data is rendered when freezing a track:

- Plugins and automation for all plugins (except for any plugins remaining active when using **Freeze to Insert**)
- Clip gain
- Clip effects
- HEAT (if set to pre-insert)
- Elastic audio

The following track controls are maintained and are not rendered with track freeze:

- Volume
- Volume Trim
- Mute
- Pan
- Send Level
- Send Level trim
- Send Mute
- Plugin automation for plugins that are not frozen (when using **Freeze to Insert**)

Freezing Audio and Instrument Tracks

When freezing audio and Instrument tracks, the rendered ("frozen") audio starts at the beginning of each clip on the track and ends either at each clip end point or after the processed audio of the clip (such as with time-based plugin processing like reverb or delay) falls below –144 dBFS for at least 60 seconds. Muted clips are not rendered.

Freezing Auxiliary Input Tracks

When freezing Auxiliary Input tracks, audio is rendered ("frozen") starting when audio is detected at the track input. Audio stops rendering when the audio signal drops below –144 dBFS for 60 seconds.

Freezing Tracks with Inserts that Have Auxiliary Output Sends

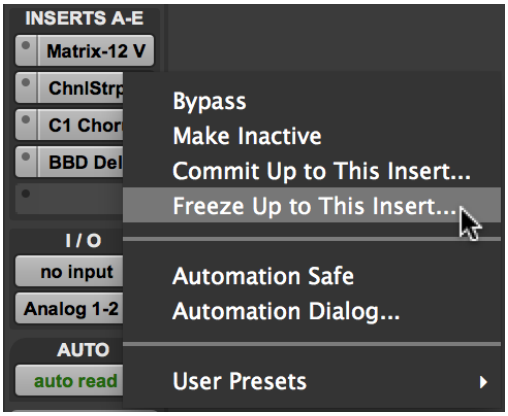
Some plugins, such as Pro Multiband Dynamics and many Virtual Instrument plugins, let you assign Auxiliary Output Stems (AOS) from the plugin to track inputs of other tracks (such as audio or Auxiliary Input tracks). When freezing a track that has a plugin that is assigned to Auxiliary Output Stems, you are prompted to also freeze any tracks that are assigned to the plugin Auxiliary Outputs. Choose **Yes** to freeze those tracks as well or **No** to freeze only the source track.

Freeze Up To This Insert

Pro Tools lets you freeze a track up to an individual plugin insert on the track. For example, you might want to freeze a virtual instrument plugin, but continue to adjust processing plugins, like EQ or dynamics.

To freeze a track up to a single insert:

1. Ensure that Inserts view is shown in either the Edit or Mix window.
2. Right-click on the insert up to which you want to freeze the track and choose **Freeze Up To This Insert**.



Freeze Up To This Insert (Freezing up to insert B)

When any plugin processing on a track is frozen, frozen inserts are italicized and grayed out. The also display the Track Freeze icon.



Track frozen through inserts A and B

Editing Restrictions on Frozen Tracks

Frozen tracks disallow most editing functions. To edit a frozen track, unfreeze it, make your edits, and then re-freeze the track.

The following editing actions are *not* allowed on frozen tracks:

- Editing clips or clip contents is disallowed.
- Elastic Audio is disallowed.
- Clip gain and clip effects are disallowed on frozen tracks.
- AudioSuite rendering is disallowed on frozen tracks.
- Tempo changes, Song Start changes, and enabling or disabling the Conductor Track are not allowed when there are frozen tracks in the session.
- Insert and Cut Time operations are disallowed in a session if there are frozen tracks.
- HEAT is unavailable for frozen Auxiliary Input and Instrument tracks.
- Instrument Tracks are removed from the MIDI Editor window while frozen and MIDI parameters including Real Time Quantize settings cannot be adjusted until the track is unfrozen.
- Clips used on a source playlist for a frozen track cannot be removed from the session until the track is unfrozen.

The following editing actions are allowed on frozen tracks:

- Editing and writing of all basic track automation parameters including sends.
- Editing and writing of automation on unfrozen plugins as well as addition and removal of plugins on unfrozen inserts (when using the Freeze Up to This Insert functionality)
- Changing the track output path.

Global Freeze Tracks

The Global Freeze Tracks icon lights when one or more tracks in the session are frozen. You can use the Global Freeze Tracks icon to freeze (or unfreeze) all audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks in the session or project. You can also specify which track types you want (or don't want) to freeze.

The indicator only illuminates if a visible track in the session is frozen. Freezing and unfreezing does not apply to inactive or explicitly hidden tracks. Tracks that are hidden only because they are in a closed folder are still counted as visible.

⚠ **Tracks cannot be frozen while hidden or inactive.**



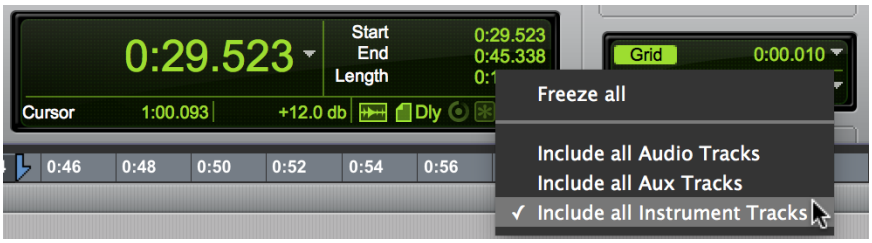
Global Freeze Tracks, one or more tracks frozen

To globally freeze or unfreeze tracks, do one of the following:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Global Freeze icon so that it is lit (frozen) or unlit (unfrozen).
- Right-click the Global Freeze icon and choose **`Freeze All`** or **`Unfreeze All`**.

To freeze (or unfreeze) only certain track types:

1. Right-click the Global Freeze icon and select (or deselect) which track types you want to include (or exclude):
   - **`Include all Audio Tracks`**
   - **`Include all Aux Tracks`**
   - **`Include all Instrument Tracks`**



Only Include Instrument Tracks selected in the Global Freeze Right-click menu

2. Do one of the following:
   - Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Global Freeze icon.
   - Right-click the Global Freeze icon and choose **`Freeze All`** or **`Unfreeze All`**.

If any of the Include options are unselected, you can still Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Global Freeze icon to freeze (or unfreeze) all tracks of all types. The selected Include options remain selected.

Bounce Track

Pro Tools lets you bounce individual tracks from your session or project. Track Bounce is useful for delivering audio files from tracks in the session without having to re-route sub-master stems or individual tracks for bus recording. You can just select the desired source tracks and Bounce them to disk.

You can Bounce the following track types: audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks.

To bounce a track from your session or project:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Select the track you want to bounce and then choose **Track > Bounce**.
   - Right-click the track you want to bounce and select **Bounce**.
   - Press Command+Option+Shift+B (Mac) or Control+Alt+Shift+B (Windows).
2. In the Track Bounce dialog, configure the options as desired.
3. Click **Bounce**.

If there is a timeline selection, the bounce includes only the selection. Otherwise, the bounce starts at the beginning of the session or project and ends with the last sample of audio on the track.

If the source track is assigned to multiple output paths of different channel widths, and **Pan** automation is rendered, a new file is created for each channel width. For example, if the output of the source track is assigned to a mono output path, a stereo output path, and a 5.1 output path, three separate files are created, each with the corresponding channel width. If the track output is assigned to multiple output paths of the same channel width, only one file is created. If **Pan** automation is not rendered, only one new file is created and it will have the same channel width as the source track.

Track Bounce Dialog

The Track Bounce dialog provides the same options as the Bounce Mix dialog (see "Bounce Options" on page 1642), but with the additional option to render (or not render) track volume and pan automation.



Track Bounce dialog

Render Automation

The **`Render Automation`** options determine whether or not Volume or Pan automation is rendered for bounced tracks.

Volume

Select to render Volume automation from bounced tracks.

Pan

Select to render Pan automation from bounced tracks.

54 MIDI Operations

Various events in Pro Tools (such as groups of MIDI Notes, audio clip start times or sync points, and whole clips) can be transformed with MIDI Operations.

MIDI Operations Window

The MIDI Operations window provides commands to transform groups of MIDI notes to affect pitch, timing, and phrasing. The Quantize and Restore Performance operations can also be applied to audio clip start times (or sync points) and Elastic Audio events. Transpose can also be applied to whole clips on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks.

The MIDI Operations window has nine pages, one for each MIDI Operations command.

- Quantize
- Restore Performance
- Flatten Performance
- Change Velocity
- Change Duration
- Transpose
- Select/Split Notes
- Input Quantize
- Step Input

The MIDI Operations window can be left open. This provides quick access to apply a command or try out different options for a particular command.

MIDI Operations are also accessible in the MIDI Editor pane of the Edit window and in MIDI Editor windows.

You can apply quantize, duration, delay, and transpose to MIDI nondestructively using MIDI Real-Time Properties. See "MIDI Real-Time Properties" on page 1062.

To open a specific MIDI Operations window pane:

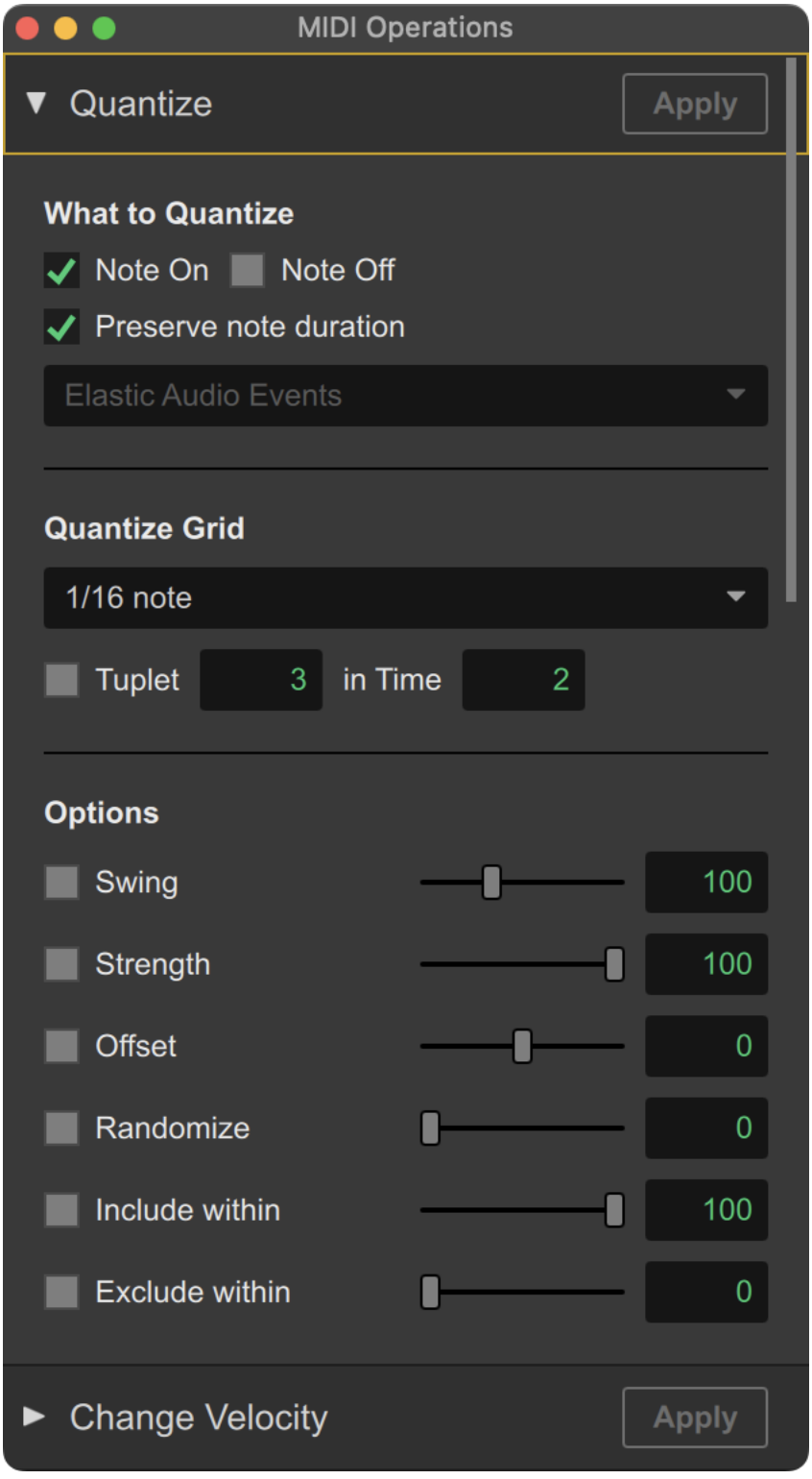
- Choose **Event > MIDI Operations**, followed by one of the MIDI Operations (such as **Quantize**).

To show (or hide) any Event Operation pane while the MIDI Operations window is open:

- Click the reveal triangle for the pane you want to show.

Press Command+Up/Down Arrow (Mac) or Control+Up/Down Arrow (Windows) to open the previous or next panel while closing all others.

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) on any reveal triangle to open or close all panels in the MIDI Operations window.



MIDI Operations window (Quantize shown)

To open the last active MIDI Operations window page:

- Choose **`Event > MIDI Operations > MIDI Operations Window`**.

To open the MIDI Operations window, press Option+3 (Mac) or Alt+3 (Windows).

If the MIDI Operations window is already open, you can select any of the pages from the pop-up menu at the top of the window.

To apply an MIDI Operations command, do one of the following:

- Click **Apply** or press Enter on the numeric keypad. This applies the command and leaves the window in the foreground.
- Press Return (Mac) or Enter on the alphanumeric keyboard (Windows). This applies the command and closes the window.

When using the MIDI Operations window and MIDI Real-Time Properties at the same time, MIDI Operations are applied to the actual MIDI data. MIDI Real-Time Properties are applied on top of the actual MIDI data.

To undo a command in the MIDI Operations window:

- Choose **Edit > Undo**.

Using the MIDI Operations Window

Use the following methods to configure options in the MIDI Operations window:

- To move forward and back through the various fields, press Tab or Shift+Tab.
- Increment or decrement selected fields with the Up and Down Arrow keys. Hold these keys to scroll quickly through the values.
- Drag up or down in a selected field to scroll to a new value.
- Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) while adjusting sliders for finer resolution.
- For selected pitch and velocity fields, play a note on your MIDI controller keyboard to automatically enter it.
- Changing a value for a particular control (such as the Swing Percentage in the Quantize window), automatically enables the control.

Quantize

The **Quantize** command can be applied to MIDI notes, audio clips, and Elastic Audio events. For MIDI, quantization adjusts MIDI note locations and durations so that timing is improved, or so that a particular rhythmic “feel” is achieved. For audio clips, quantization adjusts the start times (or sync points) of audio clips. For Elastic Audio, quantization adjusts to the location of detected transient events and applies Elastic Audio processing accordingly.

The MIDI Quantize command (Clip › MIDI Quantize) uses the quantize settings in the MIDI Operations window.

The Quantize MIDI Operations window lets you apply Grid Quantize based on rhythmic values (such as a 16th note) or using Groove Quantize based on Groove Templates. Slightly different options are provided for Grid Quantize and Groove Quantize.

The **Quantize Event Operation** and **Quantize to Grid** commands can both be used to quantize clips. However, each command also has a specific additional use.

Use the **Quantize to Grid** command (**Clip > Quantize to Grid**) to adjust the start points (or sync points) for selected clips. The **Quantize to Grid** command can be applied to both MIDI and audio clips (see "Quantizing Clips to Grid" on page 938).

The Quantize Event Operation, on the other hand, can be applied to MIDI notes and Elastic Audio events individually in addition to audio clip start times (or sync points). Some notes or events may be moved back in time, others forward. For MIDI notes only, some may be shortened, some lengthened, and some more drastically affected than others.

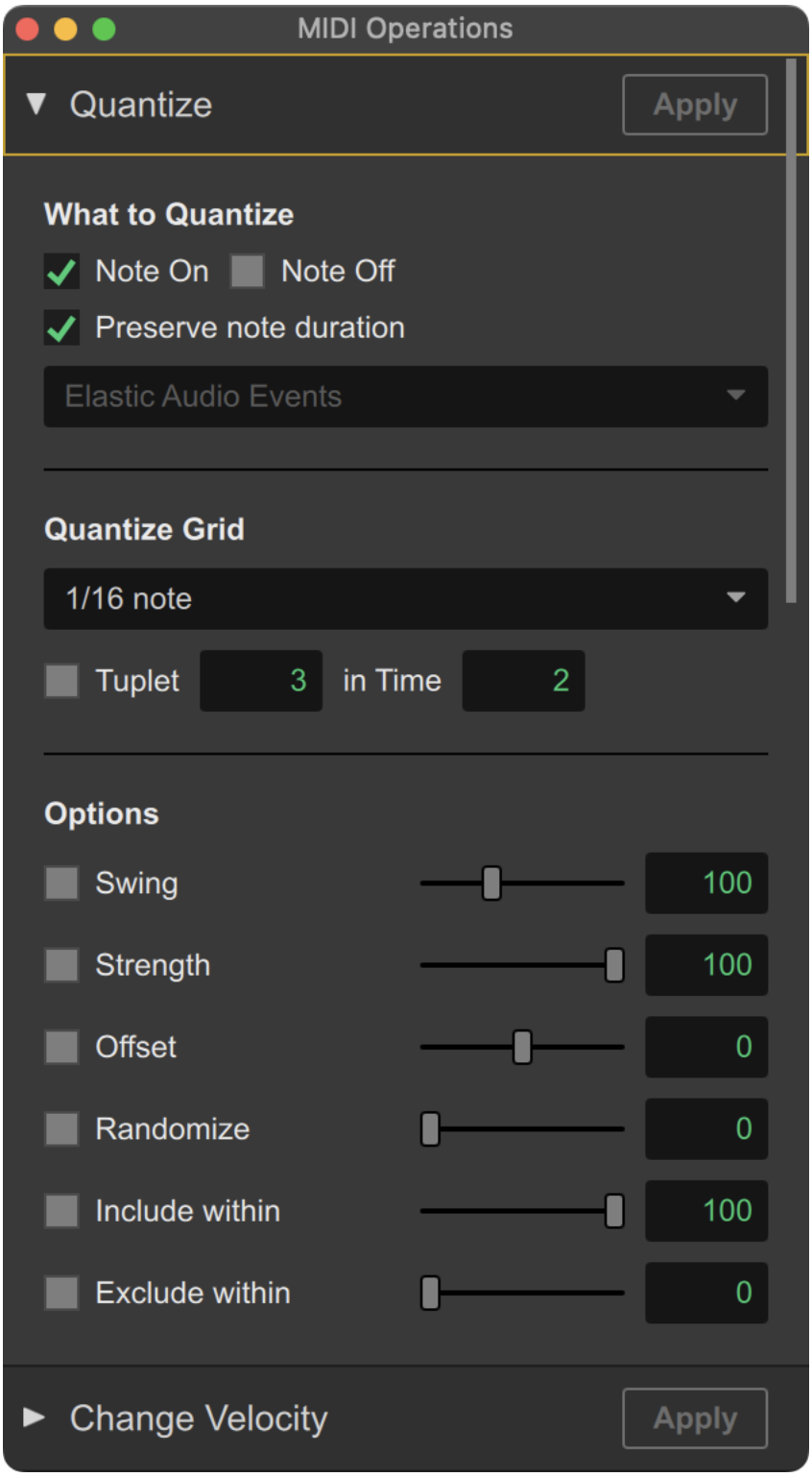
You can also quantize MIDI input, see "Input Quantize Command" on page 1431.

The settings in the Quantize window are saved with each session. To store your favorite settings for use in future sessions, save them as part of a session template (see "Session Templates" on page 246).

To open the Quantize window:

- Choose Event › MIDI Operations › Quantize.

  Press Option+0 (Mac) or Alt+0 (Windows) to open the Quantize window.



MIDI Operations window, Quantize

To select Grid Quantize:

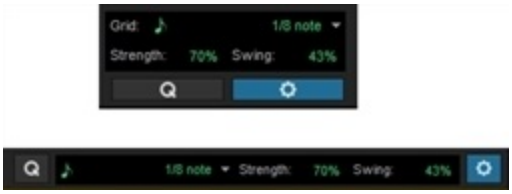
- From the Quantize Grid pop-up menu, select a note value.

To select Groove Quantize:

- From the Quantize Grid pop-up menu, select a groove template.

Edit and MIDI Editor Window Toolbar Quantize Controls

The Edit and MIDI Editor windows provide a group of controls for Quantize functions in Pro Tools. These display and let you set certain quantization parameters (such as **Grid**, **Strength**, and **Swing** for note grids, and **Groove**, **Timing**, and **Velocity** for groove templates) that are mirrored in the **Quantize** page of the MIDI Operations window. Changes to Quantize settings in any of the toolbars or the **Quantize** page of the MIDI Operations window are mirrored in the others.



Quantize controls in the Edit window toolbar (top) and in the MIDI Editor window toolbar (bottom)

To quantize any selection using the current Quantize settings, do one of the following:

- Click the Q button.
- Press Command+Option+0 (Mac) or Control+Alt+0 (Windows).

To open the Quantize window:

- Click the Quantize Settings button (gear icon).

  If any parameters not displayed in the toolbar (such as **Offset** or **Randomize**) are enabled, the Quantize Settings button (gear icon) lights blue.

  Click **Strength** and **Swing** to toggle them on and off.

Grid Quantize

The Quantize window can apply Grid Quantize when a specific rhythmic value or **Follow Bars|Beats Grid** is selected for **Quantize Grid**. When a groove template is selected in the Quantize pop-up menu, Groove Quantize can be applied. For information on Groove Quantize, see "Groove Quantize" on page 1410.

What to Quantize

The What to Quantize settings determine what aspects of any selected MIDI notes are quantized: Note Ons (attacks), Note Offs (releases), or both. You can also select whether to quantize audio clips or Elastic Audio events. Depending on what type of track material is selected, not all options will be available. If only MIDI is selected, the **Audio Clips** and **Elastic Audio Events** options are unavailable. If only audio is selected, the **Note On**, **Note Off**, and **Preserve Note Duration** options are not available.

Note On

When selected, MIDI note start points are quantized.

Note Off

When selected, MIDI note end points are quantized.

Preserve Note Duration

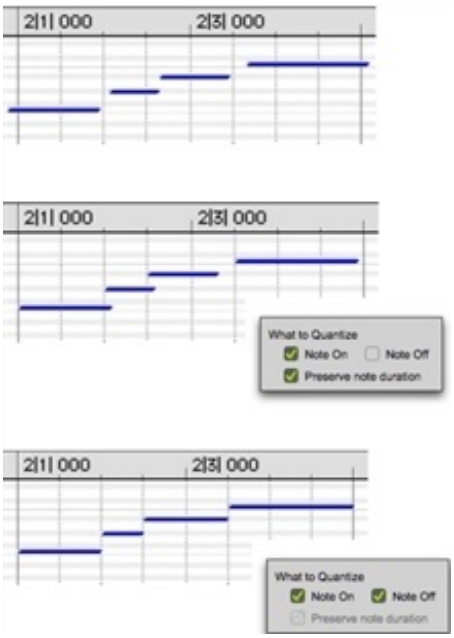
When selected, MIDI note durations are preserved.

When deselected with the **Note On** option selected, note end points are not moved.

When deselected with the **Note Off** option selected, note start points are not moved.

If the options for both **Note On** and **Note Off** are selected, the **Preserve Note Durations** option is unavailable.

The following figure shows how MIDI notes are adjusted by the different What To Quantize options.



Before quantizing, followed by two examples showing the results of different What To Quantize settings

Audio Clips

When selected in the What to Quantize pop-up menu, Quantize is applied to clip start times (or sync points if present) for selected audio clips. MIDI clips are not affected. Typically, you will only want to apply quantization to sliced audio clips or clip groups (such as imported REX files or clips created using the Separate Clips at Transients command or Beat Detective). Quantization can be applied to mixed selections of MIDI notes and audio clips.

Elastic Audio Events

When selected in the What to Quantize pop-up menu, Quantize is applied to detected transient events within the Edit selection on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks. Quantization can be applied to mixed selections of MIDI notes and Elastic Audio events. Warp markers are created automatically on top of Event markers nearest the quantize grid. Quantize then uses these Warp markers to apply quantization.

Quantize Grid

Quantize Grid Pop-Up Menu

Determines the beat boundaries to which MIDI notes, Elastic Audio events, and audio clip start points are aligned. Any size from whole notes (1/1) to sixty-fourth notes (1/64), including dotted and triplet values, can be selected for the Grid size. You can also select **Follow Bars|Beats Grid** to quantize to the current Bars|Beats Grid setting for the session.

Relative Grid mode does not affect the Quantize Grid.

Tuplet

Select the **Tuplet** option to quantize according to irregular note groupings, such as quintuplets (5 in the time of 4). The Quantize Grid for tuplets is calculated from the note size selection and the Tuplet value. For example, if an sixteenth note equals 240 ticks, quintuplet sixteenth notes with 5 in time of 4 would yield a Grid size of 192 ticks or (240 ticks/5)*4.

Offset Grid By

Offsets the Quantize Grid forward or back in time by a specified number of ticks. Use this option to achieve a pushed feel (by using negative values) or a laid back feel (by using positive values).

To Quantize just the backbeats, set the Quantize Grid to half-notes with an Offset of 960 ticks.

Randomize

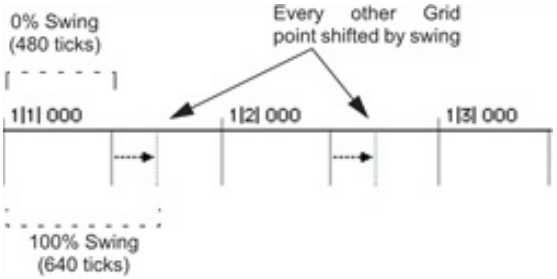
When selected, MIDI notes, Elastic Audio events, and audio clips are moved randomly forward or back in time (after the Quantize occurs). For example, with the Quantize Grid set to eighth notes and Randomize set to 50%, notes and events are placed up to a 32nd note before or after the beat boundary. The Randomize setting also affects note durations (if Releases is selected).

Additional Grid Quantize Options

Additional Grid Quantize options include:

Swing

When selected, every other Grid boundary is shifted by the specified percentage value (0–300) to achieve a “swing” feel. A Swing value of 0% yields no swing, while 100% yields a triplet feel. Settings above 100% progressively narrow the swing until the maximum of 300%, at which every other Grid boundary is moved to the next Grid point.



Include Within

When selected, MIDI Note Ons and MIDI Note Offs, Elastic Audio events, and audio clips are only quantized if located within the specified percentage of the Quantize Grid. Use this option to clean up downbeats without affecting notes that are “swung” or wildly off the beat.

The following figure shows the Quantize Grid set to quarter notes with the Include Within option set to 50%. In this example, only the MIDI Note Ons and MIDI Note Offs falling within the shaded area (equivalent to an eighth note area around each beat) are quantized.

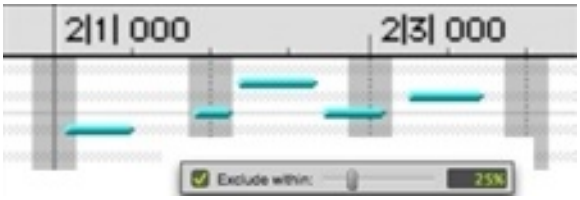


Include Within option

Exclude Within

When selected, MIDI Note Ons and MIDI Note Offs, Elastic Audio events, and audio clips are not quantized if located within the specified percentage of the Quantize Grid. Use this option to preserve the feel of events close to the beat, while correcting others that are drastically away from the beat.

The following figure shows the Quantize Grid set to quarter notes with the Exclude Within option set to 25%. In this example, MIDI Note Ons and MIDI Note Offs falling within the shaded area (equivalent to a sixteenth note area around each beat) are not quantized.



Exclude Within option

Strength

When selected, MIDI notes, Elastic Audio events, and audio clips are moved a percentage toward the Quantize Grid. Lower percentages preserve the original feel of the events, higher percentages align the notes more tightly to the Grid.

Grid Quantize Examples

The following examples illustrate some of the more common uses for Grid Quantize.

If you intend to loop playback while quantizing, you may want to deselect Options › Link Timeline and Edit Selection. This ensures that the play range does not change when selected events are moved in the course of quantizing and undoing.

After quantizing, you can use Restore Performance to revert to the original version (see "Restore Performance Command" on page 1416.)

Straight Quantize

To quantize to a straight sixteenth note feel:

1. Select the range of MIDI notes, Elastic Audio events, or audio clips to be quantized.
2. Choose **`Event > MIDI Operations > Quantize`**.
3. Under What to Quantize, select the **`Note On`** option for quantizing MIDI notes. To also quantize MIDI note durations, select the **`Note Off`** option. If you are quantizing audio, select **`Audio Clips`** or **`Elastic Audio Events`** from the pop-up menu.
4. From the Quantize Grid pop-up menu, select sixteenth notes (1/16). Make sure that the other options for Tuplet, Offset Grid By, and Swing are not selected.
5. Ensure that the remaining Quantize options are deselected.
6. Click **`Apply`**.

Quantizing While Preserving the Original Feel

You can quantize less strictly, to preserve the original feel of your recorded MIDI and audio tracks.

To quantize while preserving the original feel:

1. Select the range of MIDI notes, Elastic Audio events, or audio clips to be quantized.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Quantize**.
3. Under What to Quantize, select the **Note On** option for quantizing MIDI notes. To also quantize MIDI note durations, select the **Note Off** option. If you are quantizing audio, select **Audio Clips** or **Elastic Audio Events** from the pop-up menu.
4. From the Quantize Grid pop-up menu, select the note value you want to use.
5. Ensure that the other options for Tuplet, Offset Grid By, and Swing are not selected.
6. Select the **Exclude Within** option with a value of 10–15%.
7. Select the **Strength** option with a value of 70–80%.
8. Ensure that the remaining Quantize options are deselected.
9. Click **Apply**.
10. Audition the change. If the desired effect is not achieved, undo the edit and experiment with different values for **Exclude Within** and **Strength**.

Quantizing with Swing

If you are working with MIDI hi-hats or bass lines or audio equivalents, you may want to apply more of a swing feel when quantizing.

To quantize with an eighth note swing feel:

1. Select the range of MIDI notes, Elastic Audio events, or audio clips to be quantized.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Quantize**.
3. Under What to Quantize, select the **Note On** option for quantizing MIDI notes. To also quantize MIDI note durations, select the **Note Off** option. If you are quantizing audio, select **Audio Clips** or **Elastic Audio Events** from the pop-up menu.
4. From the Quantize Grid pop-up menu, select eighth notes (1/8).
5. Select the Swing option with the Swing percentage you want:
   - For a light swing, use 12%.
   - For a tighter swing-like groove, use 24%.
   - For a true “triplet-like” swing feel, use 50–75%.
6. Ensure that the options for Tuplet, Offset Grid By, and Randomize are not selected.
7. Click **Apply**.
8. Audition the change. If the desired effect is not achieved, undo the edit and experiment with different Swing percentages.

Quantizing with Randomize

If quantized events sound too mechanical or “on the beat,” use the **Randomize** option in the Quantize window to make them sound more natural.

To "humanize" the rhythmic feel of events:

1. Select the range of MIDI notes, Elastic Audio events, or audio clips to be quantized.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Quantize**.
3. Under What to Quantize, select the **Note On** option for quantizing MIDI notes. To also quantize MIDI note durations, select the **Note Off** option. If you are quantizing audio, select **Audio Clips** or **Elastic Audio Events** from the pop-up menu.
4. From the Quantize Grid pop-up menu, select the note value you want to use.
5. Select the **Randomize** option and enter a value of 5%.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. Audition the change. If the desired effect is not achieved, undo the edit and experiment with different Randomize percentages.

Experimenting with Grid Quantize

When using the **Quantize** command, you may have to experiment with many of the controls to achieve the results you want. Try different values for **Include Within** and **Exclude Within**, and **Strength**; these controls determine which notes are affected and how drastically they are changed. Additionally, use the **Randomize** option, which adds a percentage of randomness to the quantization, to make tracks sound less "mechanical."

Groove Quantize

In the Quantize window, you can apply Groove Quantize when a groove template is selected in the Quantize Grid pop-up menu. Groove quantize adjusts MIDI note locations and durations, Elastic Audio events, and audio clips according to a *groove template* rather than a strict quantization grid. Groove templates extract the particular rhythmic feel of a recorded audio or MIDI performance so that is can be applied to another MIDI sequence or audio selection. DigiGroove templates can be generated using Beat Detective.

Groove Templates

Groove templates (such as DigiGroove templates) are "quantization maps" derived from real musical performances. The rhythmic character of each performance is analyzed and stored as a groove template. Groove templates can be used to transfer the feel of a particular performance to MIDI notes (Timing, Duration, and Velocity), Elastic Audio events, and audio clips.

DigiGroove templates can be created using Beat Detective. Beat Detective analyzes an audio selection for transient peaks according to a defined threshold and maps the rhythmic relationships to a 960 parts per quarter note (ppq) template. Beat Detective can also analyze a MIDI selection for Note Ons and velocities to generate groove templates. These template can then be used with Groove Quantize, as well as with Beat Detective.

For information on Beat Detective and creating groove templates, see "Beat Detective" on page 998.

DigiGroove templates are also available from Avid and third-party manufacturers.

Numerical Sound's Feel Injector Templates (960 ppq) are supported in Pro Tools, but DNA Groove Templates (192 ppq) are not.

Groove Quantize Settings

Quantize Grid Pop-Up Menu

Determines which groove template to use for quantization. All groove template files in the Grooves folder are available in the Quantize Grid pop-up menu.

Grooves files are stored in the Grooves folder in the Root Settings Folder. You can change the location of the Root Settings Folder in the Operation Preferences (see "User Media and Settings Location" on page 145).

If you organize your groove templates in sub-folders in the Groove folder, they appear as submenus in the pop-up menu. Once you have selected a groove template, specific information about the template's meter and duration (in bars) is displayed under the pop-up menu.

Show Comments

The Comments field displays any comments saved with the groove template from Beat Detective. The Comments field cannot be edited in the Quantize page, but can be edited when saving a groove template from the Groove Quantize page.

Pre-Quantize

Enable to hard quantize the selected MIDI notes to a sixteenth-note grid before applying Groove Quantize.

Groove Quantize Options

Timing

Enable to apply Groove Quantize to the selected MIDI notes, Elastic Audio events, or audio clips. Use the slider to change the amount of quantization applied to the selection. If the slider is set to 0%, there is no change in timing. A setting of 100% moves notes to the underlying template locations. If the slider is set to 200%, events move to a tick location that is twice the difference between the original event location and the position of the referenced template event.

For example, if an event was played at Bar 1|1|060 (a 16th note), and the corresponding template event is at 1|1|073, a slider value of 100% results in the event being shifted to 1|1|073 (a slider value of 200% shifts the note to 1|1|086).

The default value for the Timing slider is 100%.

Duration

Enable to influence the durations of the selected MIDI notes. The Duration option does not apply to audio selections. At a setting of 100%, durations are changed to match the current groove template. Set to 200%, durations increase and decrease based on the ratio of the original duration of the selected notes and the durations in the template.

The default value for the Duration slider is 100%.

Beat Detective does not extract duration information from audio performances. DigiGroove templates created using Beat Detective contain a fixed duration value that is 50% of the selected template resolution (see "Defining a Beat Detective Selection" on page 1000).

Velocity

Enable to influence the velocities of the selected MIDI notes. The Velocity option does not apply to audio selections. If the slider is set to 0% there is no change to the selected velocities, a setting of 100% sets all velocities to match the current groove template. A velocity setting of 200% typically results in over-exaggerated velocities—loud notes increasing and soft notes decreasing in volume.

For example, if two adjacent notes have equal velocities of 80, and the two corresponding template velocities are 70 and 90, setting the slider to 200% changes the velocities to 60 and 100.

The default value for the Velocity slider is 100%.

Recalling Options Slider Settings

To Save the groove template with the current Options Slider Settings:

1. In the Quantize window, select **Recall with Template** if you want to restore all Groove Quantize Options to the settings that are saved with the current template.
2. Click the **Save** button.
3. Enter or edit any comments you want to save with the template.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click the **Save** button to save the groove template with the current Options Slider Settings.
   - Click the **Save As** button to make a copy of the groove template with the current Options Slider Settings. In the resulting Save dialog, enter a name for the copy and click **Save**.

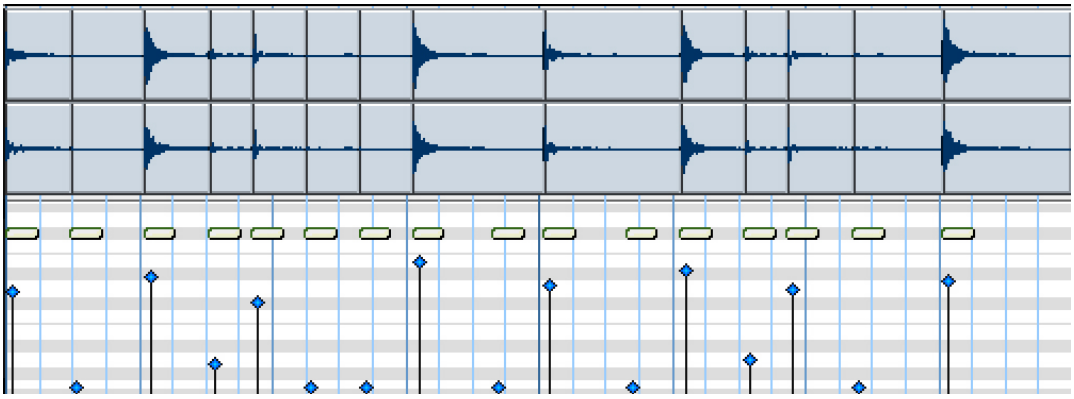
   Slider settings can be lost if any of the following operations are performed without saving the settings first:
   - Another MIDI Operations window is selected.
   - The MIDI Operations window is closed.
   - You switch to another groove template.

Applying Groove Templates

Groove templates can be of any length and can be applied to any number of bars. Typically, you will apply groove templates to selections of the same bar length and meter. However, groove templates can be applied to different meters—for example, a groove template in 6/8 can be applied to a selection in 4/4. Also, it is not necessary to start on the downbeat when making a selection to apply a groove template.

To apply Groove Quantize:

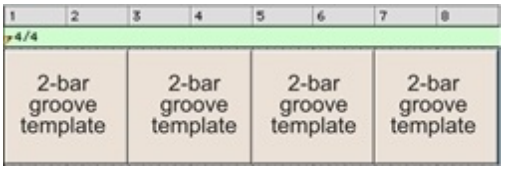
1. With the Grabber or Selector tool, select the MIDI notes, Elastic Audio events, or audio clips you want to Groove Quantize.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Quantize**.
3. Select a groove template from the Grid Quantize pop-up menu.
4. Enable **Timing**, **Duration**, and **Velocity**, and adjust their sliders to the percentages you want.
5. If desired, enable **Pre-Quantize**.
6. Click the **Apply** button.



A DigiGroove template (derived from the audio shown) applied to a series of sixteenth-notes with Timing and Velocity both set to 100%

Mapping Groove Templates

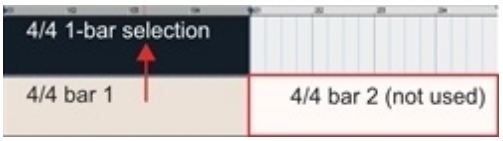
Pro Tools applies groove templates relative to the song start. For example, a two-bar groove template repeats starting at every odd-numbered bar in the session (bar 1, 3, 5, 7...).



2-bar groove template, repeating template grid

Template Mapping for Equal Meters And Odd Numbered Bars

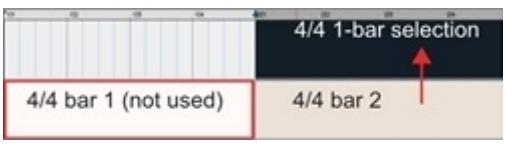
If a two-bar groove template is applied to a selection of one bar of the same meter, only the first bar of the template is used. If the selection does not encompass bar boundaries, for example 1|2|000 to 2|1|000, the groove template only modifies the selected notes.



Applying 2-bar groove template to a 1-bar selection, odd numbered bar

Template Mapping for Equal Meters And Even Bars

If a selection starts on an even bar, only the appropriate portion of the groove template will be used. For example, if the selection is two bars long and starts on an even bar, the template applies bar 2 before bar 1.

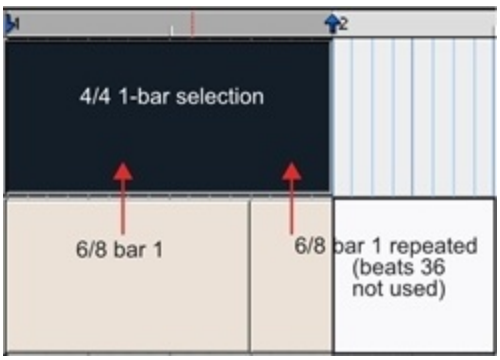


Applying a 2-bar groove template to a 1-bar selection, even numbered bar

Template Mapping for Unequal Meters

In cases where the Groove Templates and track selections are based on different meters, the template will be repeated or truncated to match the number of beats in the selection.

For example, if the Groove Template contains fewer beats than the selection, such as a one-bar template in 6/8 being applied to a one-bar selection in 4/4, the template repeats to make up the difference.



Applying a 1-bar groove template in 6/8 to a 1-bar selection in 4/4

If the Groove Template contains more beats than the selection on a track, such as a one-bar template in 6/4 being applied to a two-bar selection in 4/4, only uses the appropriate number of beats.



Applying a 1-bar groove template in 6/4 to a 1-bar selection in 4/4

Behavior for Mixed Meters

If the selection contains mixed meters, the groove template will always be mapped so that the downbeats are aligned. For example, if the Groove Template consists of one-bar of 4/4 and it is being applied to a selection of one-bar of 4/4 followed by a bar of 7/16 and one-bar of 5/8, the downbeat of the Groove Template is aligned with the downbeats in the selection and only uses the appropriate number of beats from the Groove Template.



Applying a 1-bar groove template in 4/4 to a 3-bar selection in different meters

You can reset the groove template grid by adding a new meter marker (it can be the same meter). The groove template will restart at the meter marker regardless of the measure number or whether or not the meter has actually changed.

Quantizing Elastic Audio

Pro Tools lets you apply Quantize to Elastic Audio events as well as MIDI notes. Quantize can be applied to Event and Warp markers closest to the quantize grid on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks, regardless of whether they are sample- or tick-based. When quantizing, Event markers closest to the quantize grid are promoted to Warp markers and all Warp markers closest to the quantize grid are quantized based on the Quantize settings.

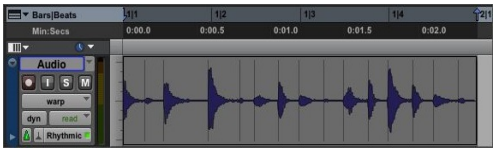
Quantization can also be applied to clip start times (or sync points) on all audio tracks, whether they are Elastic Audio-enabled, or sample- or tick-based. This lets you quickly quantize audio clips without applying TCE, and is especially useful when working with "one-shot" clips (single-event clips) such as sliced clips or clip groups.

Use Restore Performance to undo quantization of audio and MIDI. See "Restore Performance Command" on the next page.

To quantize Elastic Audio events:

1. Select the audio you want to quantize on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks. (Audio not on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks will not be quantized.)
2. Choose **Events > MIDI Operations > Quantize**.
3. In the Quantize window, select **Elastic Audio Events** from the What to Quantize pop-up menu.
4. Set the Quantize Grid and Options settings.
5. Click **Apply**.

   The Warp and Event markers closest to the Quantize Grid are quantized accordingly. TCE is applied between these markers and all other markers maintain their position relative to the Quantize Grid.



Before quantizing Elastic Audio Events in Warp view



After quantizing Elastic Audio Events in Warp view

Quantizing Audio Clips

Pro Tools lets you quantize audio clip start times (or sync points) using the Quantize operation. Audio clip start times (or sync points) are quantized to the nearest quantize grid value.

To quantize audio clips:

1. Select the audio clips you want to quantize.

   Quantizing clip groups only adjust the location of the clip group start (or sync point). To quantize the underlying sliced clips in a clip group, you must first ungroup, then quantize, and then regroup. For more information on clip groups, see "Clip Groups" on page 1251.

2. Choose **Events > MIDI Operations > Quantize**.

3. In the Quantize window, select **Audio Clips** from the What to Quantize pop-up menu.
4. Set the Quantize Grid and Options settings.
5. Click **Apply**.

   The clip start times (or sync points if present) are quantized according to the quantize settings.



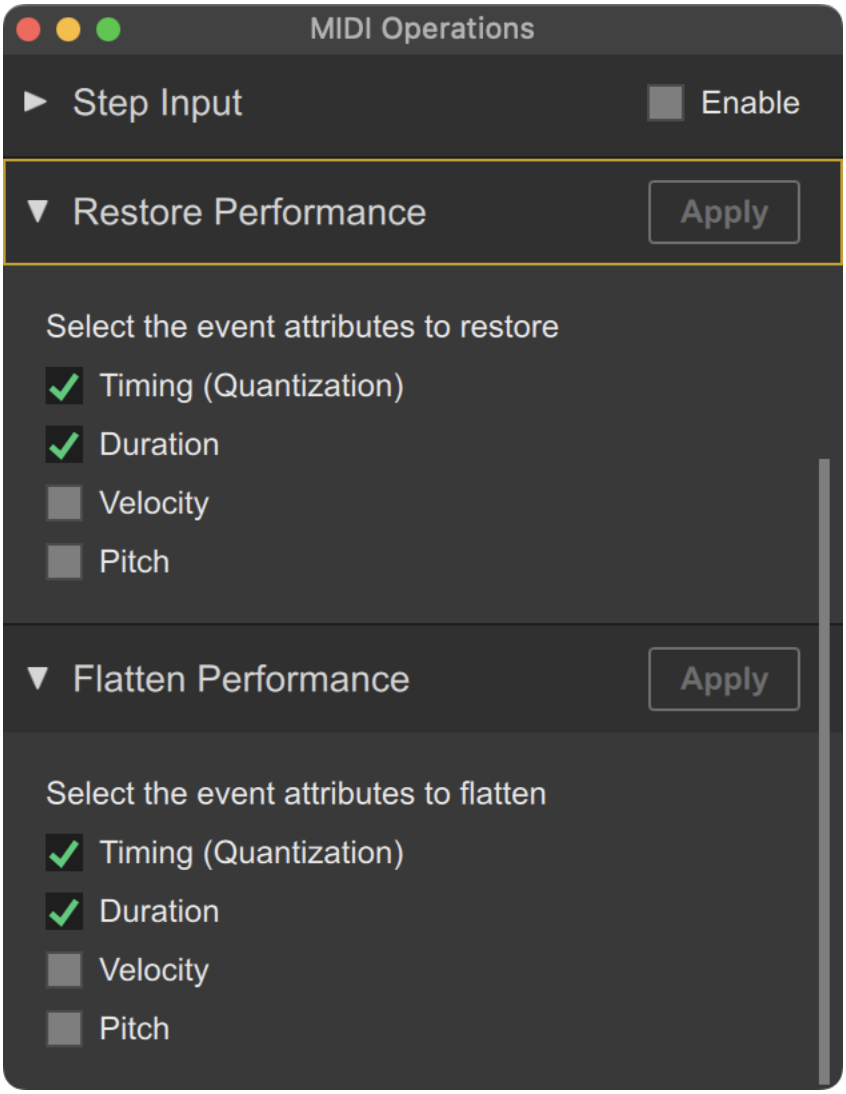
Before and after quantized audio clips

Quantizing Mixed Selections

You can apply Quantize to both MIDI notes and audio clips, or both MIDI notes and Elastic Audio events at the same time. However, you cannot apply Quantize to both audio clips (non-Elastic Audio) and Elastic Audio events at the same time.

Restore Performance Command

The **Restore Performance** command in the MIDI Operations window reverts all selected MIDI notes to their original state (when first recorded or manually inserted), even after the session has been saved, or the Undo queue has been cleared. **Restore Performance** can also be applied to quantized Elastic Audio Events or quantized audio clips.



MIDI Operations window, Restore Performance

The Restore Performance command can be undone.

The following MIDI note, Elastic Audio Event, and audio clip attributes can be restored:

Timing (Quantization)

Restores the original start times of the selected notes, audio clips, and Elastic Audio Events. For MIDI only, this changes the durations of selected notes if the **`Duration`** option is not enabled.

Duration

Restores the original durations of the selected notes. If the **`Timing (Quantization)`** option is not enabled, the start times of selected notes are not restored and the end times are affected. Duration has no effect on audio.

Velocity

Restore the original velocities of the selected notes. Velocity has no effect on audio.

Pitch

Restores the original pitches of the selected notes and pitch shifted Elastic Audio clips.

To restore the original time, duration, velocity, or pitch for selected MIDI notes, audio clips, or Elastic Audio Events:

1. Select the MIDI notes, audio clips, or Elastic Audio Events you want to restore.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Restore Performance**.
3. Select which performance attributes to restore.
4. Click **Apply**.

Any changes made through the **Quantize**, **Change Duration** (MIDI only), **Change Velocity** (MIDI only), or **Transpose** commands are undone and the original "performance" is restored. Also, any MIDI notes that were recorded with Input Quantize enabled are restored (see "Input Quantize Command" on page 1431).

Restore Performance does not undo cut, copied, pasted, or otherwise manually moved MIDI notes, audio clips, or Elastic Audio events.

Restore Performance does not undo Duration changes made by trimming the start of a note. Trimming the start of a note essentially changes the note's timing, and therefore is treated by Pro Tools the same as if it were manually moved.

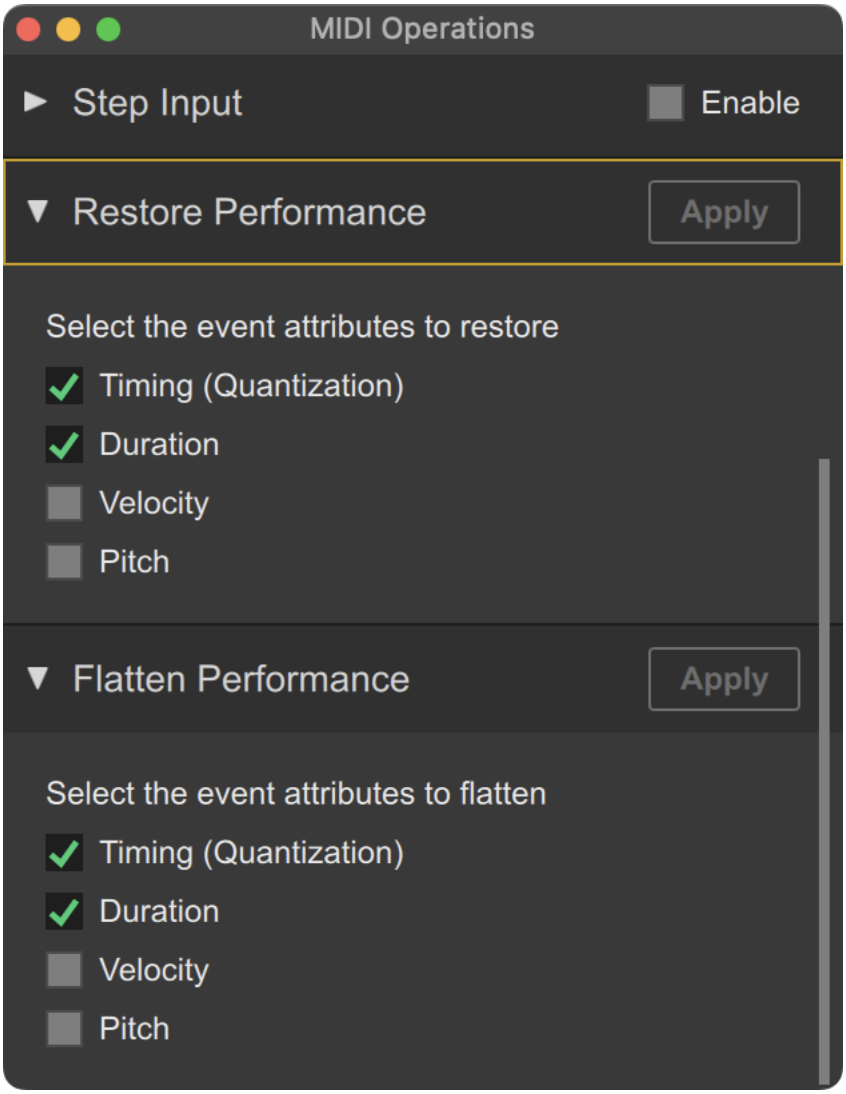
Removing Input Quantize

Restore Performance can be used to remove quantization on input for MIDI notes. For example, if you recorded a performance with Input Quantize on, you can still restore the performance as it was actually played.

For information on Input Quantize, see "Input Quantize Command" on page 1431.

Flatten Performance

The **Flatten Performance** command in the MIDI Operations window "locks in" the current performance for selected notes, creating a new "restore to" state for the specified note attributes when using **Restore Performance**.



MIDI Operations window, Flatten Performance

⚠ **The Flatten Performance command can be undone.**

To flatten the performance:

1. With the Grabber or Selector tool, select the MIDI notes you want to flatten.
2. Choose **`Event > MIDI Operations > Flatten Performance`** to open the Flatten Performance page.
3. Select the note attributes to flatten. (For descriptions of these attributes, see "Restore Performance Command" on page 1416).
4. Click **`Apply`**.

Change Velocity

The **`Change Velocity`** command in the MIDI Operations window automatically adjusts Note On (attack) and Note Off (release) velocities for selected MIDI notes. Use it to make notes louder or softer, or to create crescendos or decrescendos.

Velocities can also be edited manually with the Pencil and Grabber tools (see "Manually Editing MIDI Notes" on page 1029).

You can also change velocity non-destructively in real-time using MIDI Real-Time Properties. See "MIDI Real-Time Properties" on page 1062.

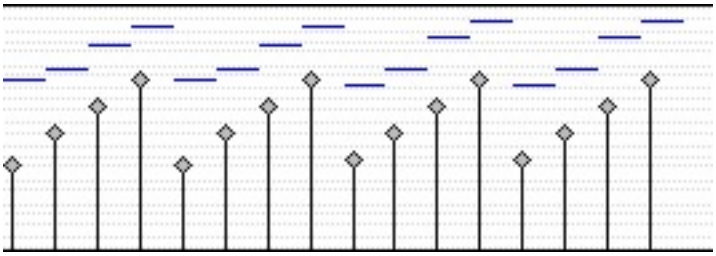
Fading Velocities

To change velocities smoothly over time:

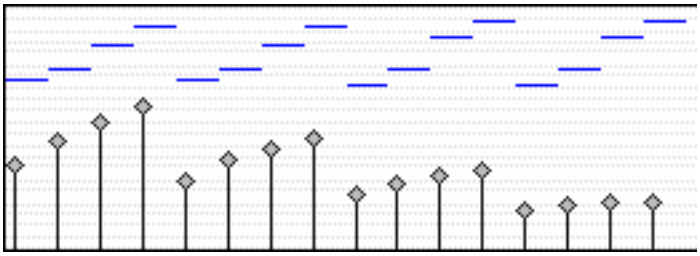
1. Select the range of MIDI notes to be edited.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Change Velocity**.
3. Select the **Change Smoothly** option with the range set from 127 to 0.
4. Click **Apply**.

Preserving Existing Velocity Relationships

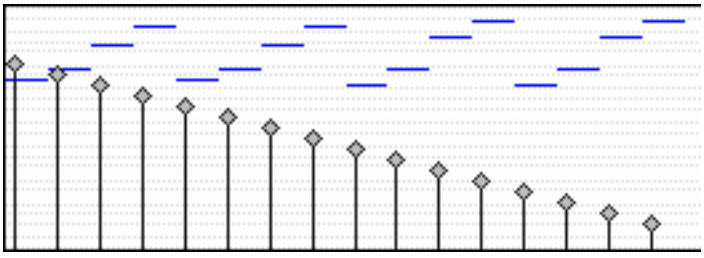
To partially preserve the existing velocity relationships and still achieve velocity fades, use the option for Change Smoothly by Percentage. The following figures illustrates the difference between the two Change Smoothly options



Original velocities



Velocities after Change Smoothly by Percentages, 100% to 20%



Velocities after Change Smoothly by Percentages, 100 to 10

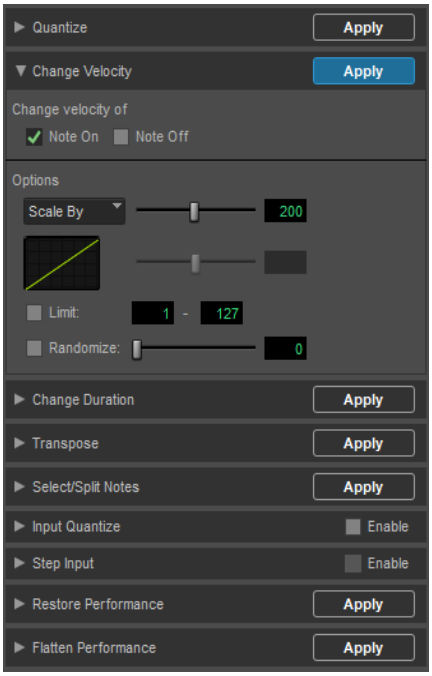
Scaling Velocities

Many times existing note velocities already have the relationship between them that you want, but are either too soft or too loud overall. In these instances, use the Scale By option.

For example, to make velocities 20% louder:

1. Select the range of MIDI notes to be edited.
2. Choose **`Event > MIDI Operations > Change Velocity`**.
3. Select the **`Scale By`** option with the percentage value set to 120.
4. Click **`Apply`**.

Change Velocity Settings



MIDI Operations window, Change Velocity page

Velocity values usually affect the loudness of MIDI notes. Depending on how velocity is mapped with any MIDI instrument, velocities may also affect other aspects of an instrument's sound (such as filter cutoff, envelopes, and modulations).

The settings in the Change Velocity window are saved with each session. To store your favorite settings as the default for use in future sessions, save them as part of a session template (see "Session Templates" on page 246).

Note On

Applies the Change Velocity options to the MIDI Note On.

Note Off

Applies the Change Velocity options to the MIDI Note Off.

While there are options for adjusting both the Note On (attack) and Note Off (release) velocities for notes, most MIDI devices ignore release velocity information. To see if your instrument supports release velocities, see the manufacturer's documentation.

Set All To

Sets all velocities to the specified value (1–127).

Add

Adds to existing velocity values by the specified amount (1–127).

Subtract

Subtracts from existing velocity values by the specified amount (1–127).

Scale By

Scales all velocities by a percentage amount (1–400%).

Change Smoothly

Allows velocities to change smoothly from one value to another over time.

Change Smoothly by Percentage

Allows velocities to change smoothly from one percentage value to another over time.

The curve for this change can be adjusted (+/– 99) to affect how gradually the change occurs.

Limit To

When selected, restricts the **Change Velocity** command to a minimum and maximum range after the selected Change Velocity option has been applied (and also after any randomization has been applied).

Randomize

When selected, the selected Change Velocity option is randomized by the specified percentage value after the selected Change Velocity option has been applied. For example, with the **Set All To** option enabled and set to a value of 64, and with **Randomize** enabled and set to a value of 50%, the resulting velocities will be anywhere between 48 and 80 (+/– 25% of the velocity value).

To randomize selected velocities without applying any other Change Velocity options:

1. Enable the **Scale By** option and set it to 100%.
2. Enable **Randomize** and set the amount of randomization you want.
3. Click **Apply**.

Velocity Ranges

The valid range for MIDI note velocities is 1–127. The Change Velocity command will never result in moving velocities outside this range; 1 is always the lowest and 127 is always the highest. This means that you can encounter situations where the Change Velocity command has no effect on a particular note.

For example, if a note with a velocity 64 is scaled by 200%, the new velocity would be 127. Attempting to scale or increase the velocity any further yields no further change.

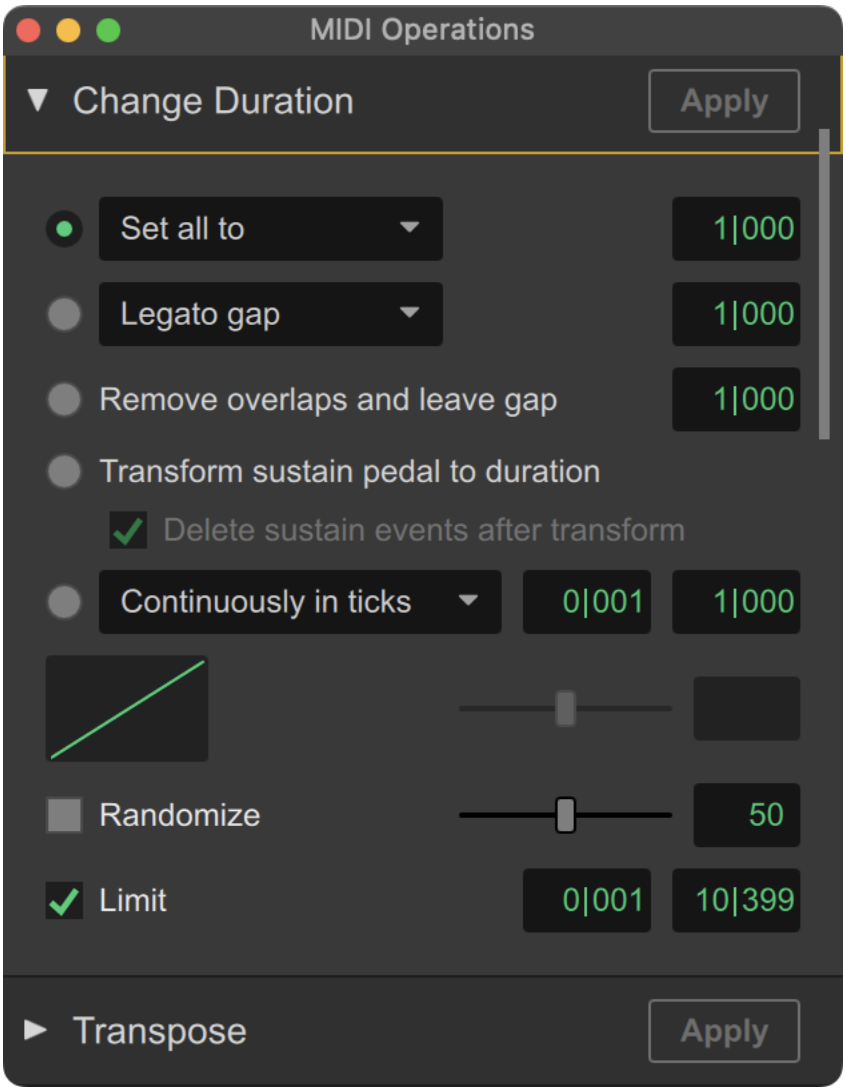
Change Duration

The **Change Duration** command in the MIDI Operations window adjusts durations for selected MIDI notes. Use it to affect the articulation of the selected notes by making them more staccato or legato.



You can also change note duration nondestructively in real-time using MIDI Real-Time Properties. See "MIDI Real-Time Properties" on page 1062.

Change Duration Settings



MIDI Operations window, Change Duration

The settings in the Change Duration page are saved with each session. To store your favorite settings as the default for use in future sessions, save them as part of a session template (see "Session Templates" on page 246).

Set/Add/Subtract/Scale Option

Set All To

Sets all durations to a length specified in quarter notes and ticks.

Add

Adds to the durations by a specified number of quarter notes and ticks.

Subtract

Subtracts from the durations by a specified number of quarter notes and ticks.

Scale by

Shortens or lengthens durations based on a percentage value (1–400%).

Legato

Enable the legato option to add legato to the MIDI selection. Select **Gap** or **Overlap** from the Legato pop-up menu and enter the gap or overlap in beats and ticks.

Remove Overlap

The **Remove Overlap** option removes any note overlap for all notes of the same pitch. This command is different from Legato in that non-overlapping notes of the same or different pitches remain unchanged. To create a gap between previously overlapping notes, enter the gap in beats and ticks.

Transform Sustain Pedal To Duration

The **Transform Sustain Pedal To Duration** option extends the length of all notes that are sounding when the sustain pedal (controller 64) is down (64 to 127) to the point when the sustain pedal goes up (0 to 63). Enable the **Delete Sustain Pedal Events** option to convert sustain pedal events to note durations. Converting sustain pedal events to note duration can greatly simplify editing while maintaining the desired performance effect. For example, if a sustain pedal down event is deleted while editing, the subsequent MIDI performance loses its legato effect.

Change Continuously Option

The **Change Continuously** option lets you change the duration of notes continuously in ticks or by percentage. Adjust the Curve slider to modify the shape of the change.

Change Continuously in Ticks

Allows note lengths to change smoothly from one duration to another over time. Duration values are specified in quarter notes and ticks.

Change Continuously by Percentage

Allows note lengths to change smoothly from one percentage value to another over time.

The curve for this change can be adjusted (+/– 99) to affect how gradually the change occurs.

Limit Range

When selected, restricts the **Change Duration** command to a minimum and maximum range (in quarter notes and ticks).

Randomize

When selected, the **Change Duration** command is randomized by the specified percentage value. For example, using “Set all to” with a value of 480 ticks, along with a Randomize value of 50%, yields durations anywhere between 360 and 600 (+/– 25% of the duration value).

Change Duration Examples

To make notes more staccato:

1. Select the range of MIDI notes to be edited.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Change Duration**.

   Press Alt+P on Windows or Option+P on Mac to open the Change Duration window.
3. Select the option for **Scale By** with a percentage value of 50.
4. Click **Apply**. The durations for the selected notes are reduced by 50%.

   With this option you may have to experiment with the percentage value to achieve the desired effect.

To make notes more legato:

1. Select the range of MIDI notes to be edited.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Change Duration**.
3. Select the **Legato** option.
4. From the Legato pop-up menu, select **Overlap**.
5. Enter 0|000 for the amount of overlap.
6. Click **Apply**.

The end points for the selected notes are extended to the start point of the next note, thereby eliminating the space between each note.

Transpose

While the Grabber tools can be used to manually transpose individual MIDI notes, or small groups of notes, the Transpose command in the MIDI Operations window can be used for entire MIDI tracks and clips. One of the more common uses for Transpose is to change the key for your MIDI tracks. You can define an Edit Group for MIDI tracks that you want to transpose, making sure to exclude any drum tracks from the group so they aren't transposed. You can even transpose in key.

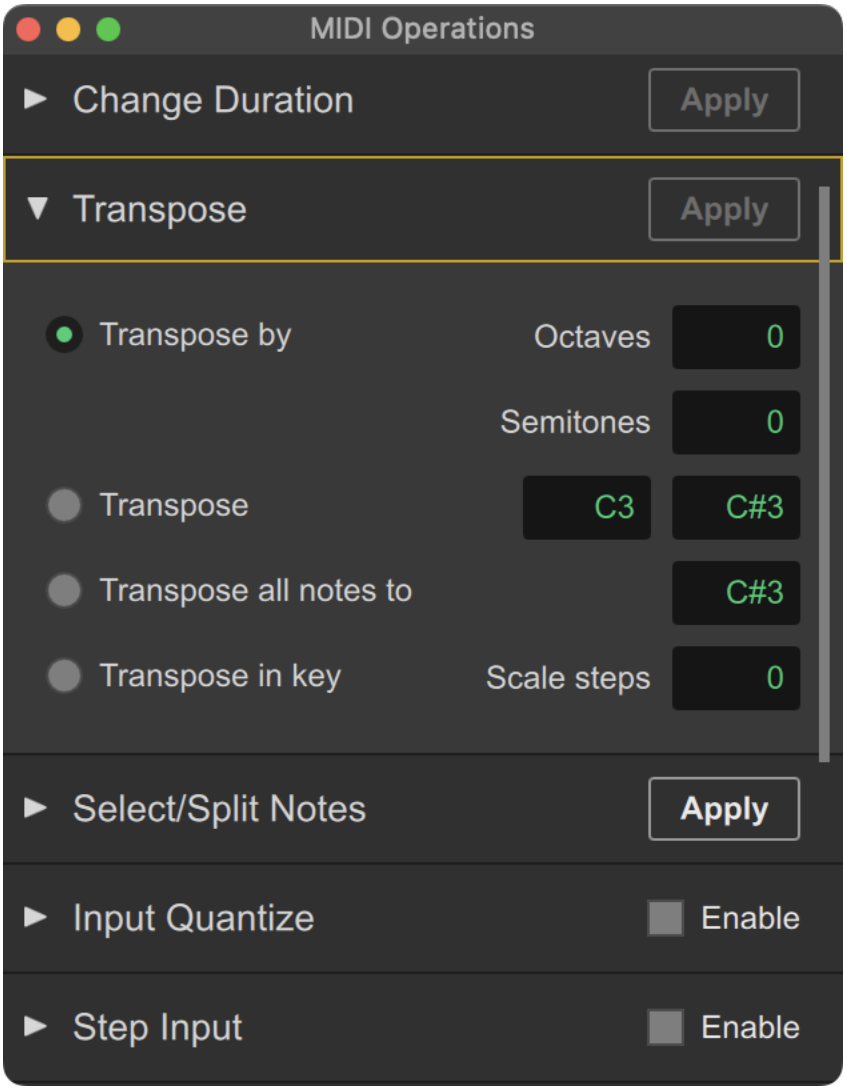
You can also transpose MIDI notes nondestructively in real-time using MIDI Real-Time Properties. See "MIDI Real-Time Properties" on page 1062.

The Transpose command can also be applied to whole clips on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks using the Polyphonic, Rhythmic, or X-Form plugins.

For information on Transposing Elastic Audio clips, see "Elastic Audio Clip-Based Pitch Shifting" on page 1362.

Elastic Audio pitch transposition is not supported with the Monophonic algorithm.

Elastic Audio pitch transposition cannot be applied to looped clips or clip groups.



MIDI Operations window, Transpose

Transpose By (Octaves)

Transposes selected MIDI notes by up to +/– 10 octaves, or transposes selected Elastic Audio clips up to +/– 2 octaves.

Transpose By (Semitones)

Transposes selected MIDI notes up or down chromatically by up to +/–127 semitones, or transposes selected Elastic Audio clips up or down chromatically by up to +/– 48 semitones (4 octaves).

Transpose (From and To)

Transposes selected MIDI notes, or selected Elastic Audio clips, by semitones, as expressed by the difference between the source and destination pitches. Transposing from C3 to F#3, for example, transposes the notes up by an augmented fourth (six semitones).

Transpose All Notes To

Transposes all selected notes to the same pitch. Use the slider or the number entry box to enter the pitch to which to transpose all selected notes. This option is not applicable to Elastic Audio clips.

Transpose In Key

Transposes selected notes in key up or down by scale steps (based on the Key Signature ruler). This option is not applicable to Elastic Audio clips.

To transpose MIDI notes:

1. If you will be transposing a group of tracks, enable the Edit Group.
2. Select the MIDI notes you want to transpose.
3. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Transpose**.

   Press Option+T (Mac) or Alt+T (Windows) to open the Transpose window.
4. Select the Transpose option (**By**, **From and To**, **All Notes To**, or **In Key**).
5. Set the corresponding pitch fields.

   With any pitch field selected, play a note on your MIDI controller to automatically enter it as the pitch value.
6. Click **Apply**.

To transpose all notes on a track down by an octave:

1. With the Selector tool, double-click in the track to select all of its MIDI notes.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Transpose**.
3. Select the **Transpose By** option.
4. Enter a value of –1 octave.
5. Click **Apply**.

To transpose selected notes in key:

1. Select the MIDI notes you want to transpose.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Transpose**.
3. Select **Transpose in Key**.
4. Adjust the slider (or type a number) for the number of scale steps (+ or –) by which you want to transpose the selection. For example, to transpose down a third, enter "–2."
5. Click **Apply**.

To transpose an Elastic Audio clip:

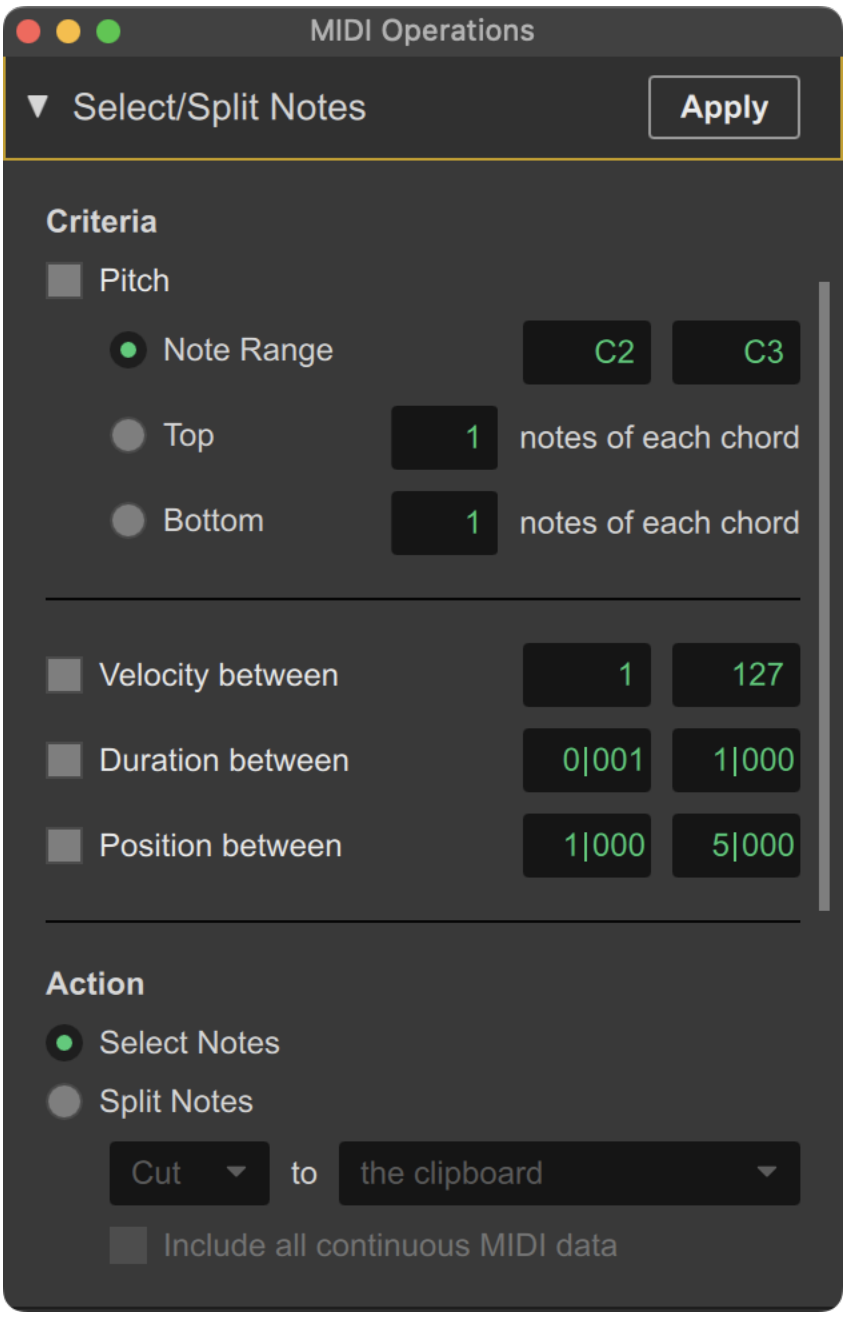
1. Make sure the clip, or clips, you want to Transpose are on Elastic Audio-enabled tracks.

   Elastic Audio pitch transposition is not supported with the Monophonic algorithm.
2. With the Grabber or Selector tool, select the audio clip you want to transpose. Only clips that are completely selected will be affected.
3. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Transpose**.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Adjust the **Transpose By** settings by an amount in semitones and cents.
   - Adjust the **Transpose From** and **To** settings by an amount in Semitones and Cents.

   The Transpose All Notes To and the Transpose In Key settings can only be applied to MIDI notes. When only audio clips are selected, these options are unavailable.
5. Click **Apply**.

Select/Split Notes Command

The Select/Split Notes command in the MIDI Operations window provides a complete set of tools to select and split MIDI notes based on a wide variety of criteria. Additional tools are provided to specify whether selected data is copied to the clipboard or to new tracks, whether the data is split to multiple new tracks or a single destination, and more.



MIDI Operations window, Select/Split Notes

Select/Split Notes Settings

Pitch Criteria

All Notes

Selects all notes.

Notes Between

Selects a range of notes between the specified upper and lower note. Values for the notes can be entered in pitch (C1–G8) or MIDI note numbers (0–127).

Top

Selects the highest note or notes in each chord.

Bottom

Selects the lowest note or notes in each chord.

Other Criteria

Velocity

Enable the **`Velocity`** option to specify a range of velocities for selecting or splitting notes. Enter minimum and maximum velocities.

Duration

Enable the **`Duration`** option to specify a range of durations (in beats and ticks) for selecting or splitting notes. Enter minimum and maximum durations.

Position

Enable the **`Position`** option to select or split all notes that fall into a range of relative beat and tick locations within each bar. The minimum value determines the start of the range, the maximum value sets the end of the range.

Action

Select Notes

Selects MIDI notes based on the specified criteria.

Split Notes: The Clipboard

Copies the selected data to the clipboard only.

Split Notes: A New Track

Copies all selected data to a single, new track. If the selection includes multiple tracks, that same number of tracks are created. The new tracks duplicate the original track type (Instrument or MIDI).

Split Notes: A New Track per Pitch

Copies all selected data to multiple new tracks (one new track for each pitch). New tracks zoom to single-note display. If the selection includes multiple tracks, each track has its data split separately.

Include All Continuous MIDI Data

Includes all continuous MIDI data, including pitch bend and aftertouch, on the entire track, without any restriction on time selection.

Selecting and Splitting Notes

To select and split notes:

1. Do one of the following:
   - With the Grabber or Selector tool, select the range of MIDI notes that contains the notes.
   - To affect all the MIDI notes on a track, click in the track with the Selector tool, so that it contains a flashing edit cursor.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Select/Split Notes**.
3. Configure the Pitch Criteria.
4. Configure the Other Criteria (Velocity, Duration, and Position).
5. Enable the **Select** or **Split** option.
6. From the Split Notes pop-up menu, select **Copy** or **Cut**.
7. If splitting notes, select the **Copy** or **Cut** to destination.
8. If splitting notes, enable the **Include All Continuous MIDI Data** option. Enabling this option includes all controller data associated with the split notes in newly created tracks. Leave this option deselected to split only note data to new tracks.
9. Click **Apply**.

Any Real-Time Properties associated with the track or clips are copied to new tracks created by Select/Split Notes.

Selecting a Pitch Range of Notes

A common use for Select/Split Notes is to select a single note for the entire length of a clip or track. This is especially useful if you want to select a note in a MIDI drum track (such as a hi-hat), and affect it over the selected time range with the **Quantize**, **Groove Quantize**, **Transpose**, or **Change Duration** command.

To select only the hi-hats in a General MIDI drum track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - With the Grabber or Selector tool, select the range of MIDI notes that contains the notes.
   - To affect all the MIDI notes on a track, click in the track with the Selector tool, so that it contains a flashing edit cursor.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Select/Split Notes**.
3. Select the **Notes Between** option with the note range set to F#1 and F#1 (if the **MIDI Note Display** setting in the MIDI Preferences page is set to **Standard Pitch**).

   For a General MIDI drum kit, the closed hi-hat is assigned to MIDI note number 42 (F#1 at Standard Pitch). If the hi-hat for your drum kit is assigned to a different note, make sure to specify it.
4. Click **Apply**.

You can also select all notes of a specific pitch on a track using the mini-keyboard. For more information, see "Selecting MIDI Notes" on page 1029.

Selecting Notes in a Chord

Another use for Select/Split Notes is to select only the upper or lower notes in a chord. Many times you may only want to affect the upper or lower notes in a chord—for example, to increase velocities or transpose pitches.

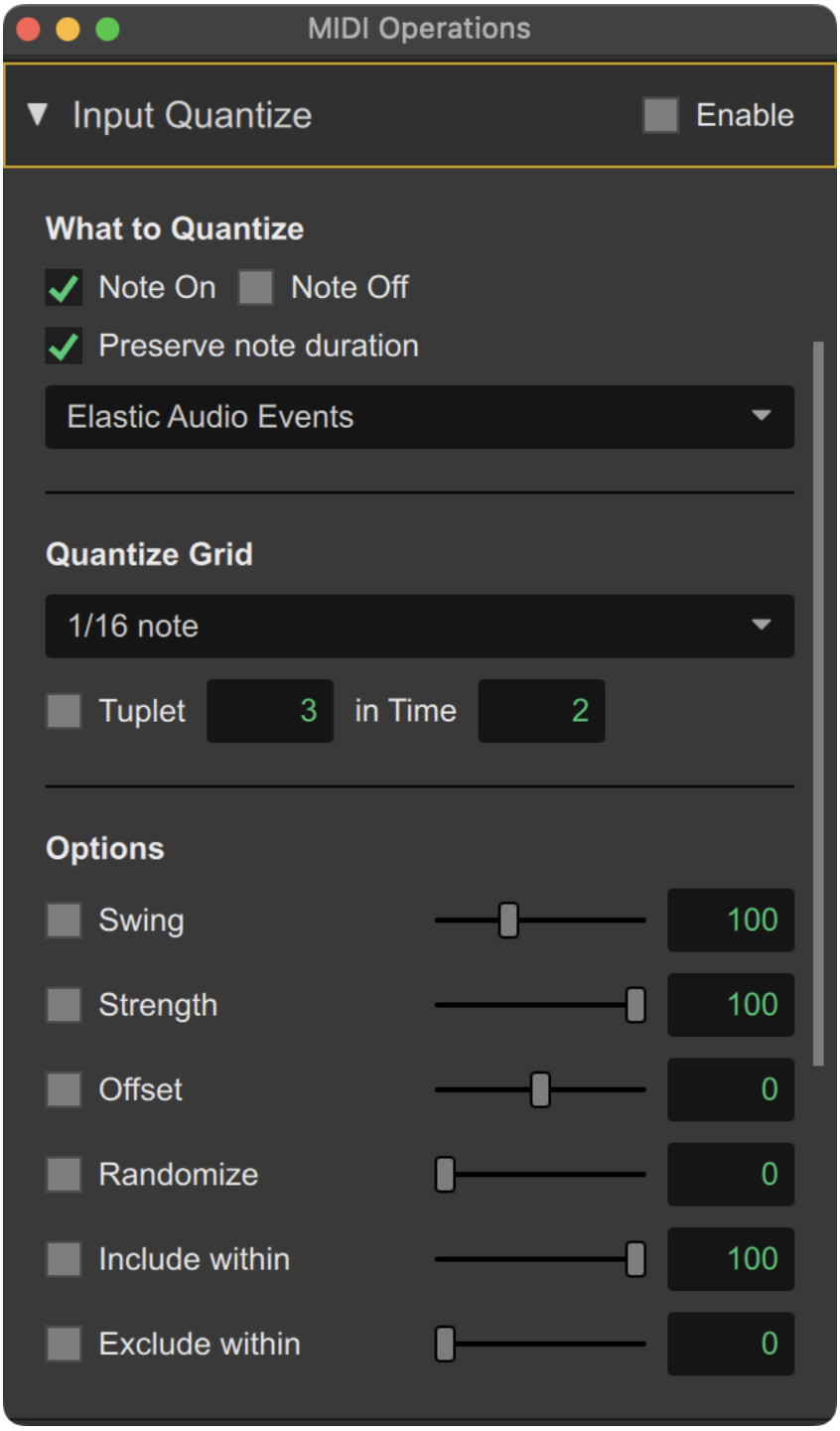
To select only the bass notes in a chord:

1. Do one of the following:
   - With the Grabber or Selector tool, select the range of MIDI notes that contains the notes.
   - To affect all the MIDI notes on a track, click in the track with the Selector tool, so that it contains a flashing edit cursor.
2. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Select/Split Notes**.
3. Select the Bottom option and leave the number of notes set to 1.
4. Click **Apply**.

In order for notes to be considered a chord, their start times must be within thirty-two ppq ticks of each other.

Input Quantize Command

When Input Quantize is enabled in the MIDI Operations window, all recorded MIDI notes are quantized automatically.



MIDI Operations window, Input Quantize

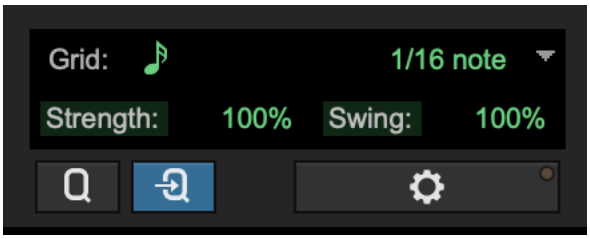
Use Input Quantize for drum machine style loop recording (see "Loop Recording in MIDI Merge Mode" on page 824).

To enable Input Quantize:

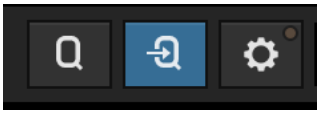
1. Choose **Event > MIDI Operations > Input Quantize**.
2. In the Input Quantize page, select **Enable Input Quantize**.
3. Configure the other options in the Input Quantize page. (For more information on the Quantize options, see "Quantize" on page 1402.)
4. When finished, close the MIDI Operations window.

Input Quantize Button in Edit Window and MIDI Editor Toolbars

Pro Tools lets you enable (or disable) Input Quantize for MIDI in the toolbar of the Edit Window or MIDI Editors.



Input Quantize enabled in the Edit Window toolbar

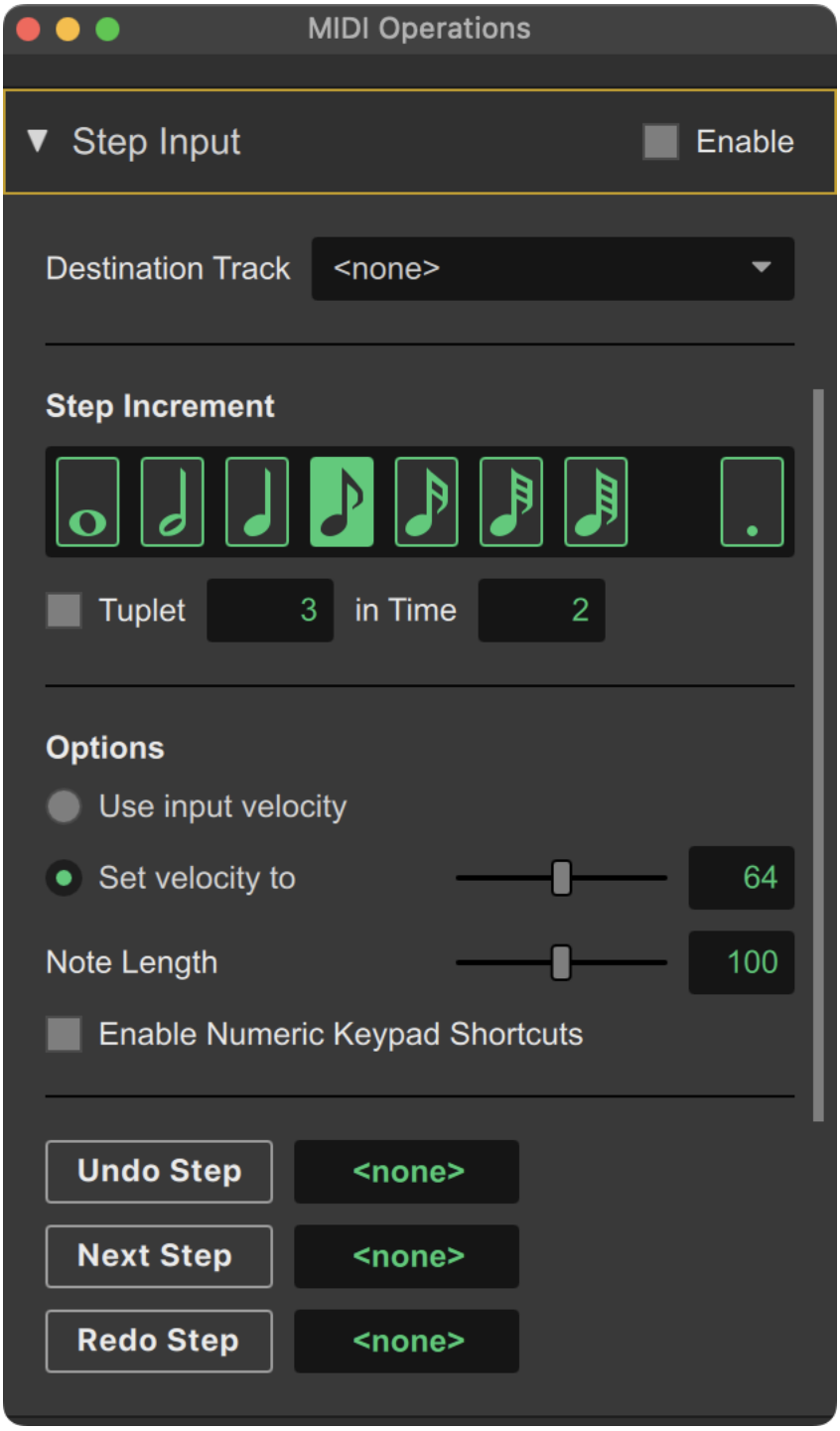


Input Quantize enabled in the MIDI Editor toolbar

*Right-click on the Input Quantize (or Quantize) button to open the MIDI Operations window with **Input Quantize** (or **Quantize**) expanded.*

Step Input Command

Step Input in the MIDI Operations window lets you use a MIDI controller to enter notes individually, one step at a time. This gives you precise control over note placement, duration, and velocity. With MIDI step input you can also create musical passages that might be difficult to play accurately, or at a fast tempo.



MIDI Operations window, Step Input

Use Step Input to enter MIDI notes in the Score Editor or in MIDI Editor windows.

To enter MIDI notes with Step Input (using an external MIDI device):

1. Make certain your external MIDI device is properly connected and working with Pro Tools.
2. Choose **`Event > MIDI Operations > Step Input`**.
3. Select the **`Enable`** option.

When Step Input is enabled, each previously record-enabled MIDI or Instrument track is taken out of record enable, and if the Default Thru Instrument preference is defined, it is disabled.

4. Choose the MIDI or Instrument track for step entry from the Destination track pop-up menu.
5. Choose the note value you want to enter from the Step Increment section.
6. Play a note or chord on your MIDI instrument. This enters the note and moves to the next step of the insertion point.

If you do not have a MIDI keyboard or other external MIDI device, you can use the MIDI Keyboard window to enter MIDI notes using Step Input. See *"MIDI Keyboard Window" on page 827,*

To increase a note's length while using Step Input:

1. Play and hold a note on your MIDI instrument.

   When a note is being held on the MIDI keyboard, Next Step changes to read "Increment."

2. Choose the note value that you would like to add and press the Increment button.

   Release the note on your MIDI keyboard to move to the next step insertion point.

Step Input Controls

The Step Input page has the following controls:

Enable

When selected, adds MIDI events to the destination track when you play your external MIDI keyboard. Additionally, each previously record-enabled MIDI track is taken out of record enable.

If a Default Thru Instrument is defined in the MIDI Preferences page, it is disabled when Step Input is enabled, and is re-enabled when Step Input is no longer disabled.

Destination

Lets you select the destination track for the Step Input from a pop-up list of all the MIDI tracks in your session.

Step Increment Section Controls

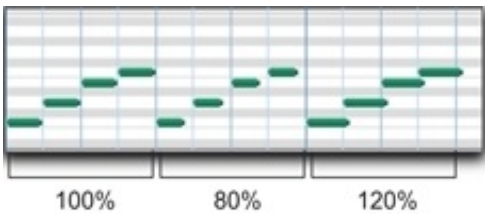
The controls in the Step Increment section let you set the spacing and duration of MIDI events entered using the Step Input operation. You can select any size from whole notes to sixty-fourth notes (including dotted values).

Tuplet

Lets you input irregular note groupings (such as triplets or quintuplets). The tuplet length is calculated from the note spacing selection and the Tuplet values. For example, an eighth note equals 480 ticks, so tuplet eighth notes with 3 in time of 2 would yield a note spacing of 320 ticks (480 ticks / 3 * 2).

Note Length

Lets you select the note length as a percentage of the spacing value. For example, an eighth note equals 480 ticks, so an eighth note with an 80% duration would be 384 ticks long.



Note length percentages

Step Input Options

Use Input Velocity

When selected, MIDI notes are recorded using the velocity that you play on your MIDI keyboard.

Set Velocity To

When selected, MIDI notes are recorded with the velocity that you specify in the Velocity field. This value can be set with the Velocity slider.

Enable Numeric Keypad Shortcuts

When selected, Step Input options can be selected from the numeric keypad. "Numeric Keypad Shortcuts for Step Input" on the next page

Undo Step, Next Step, and Redo Step

Use the **Undo Step** and **Next Step** buttons to do the following:

- Move the step insertion point, by either removing the previous note or by advancing the insertion point by the Step Increment value.
- Lengthen and shorten notes that are being held on the MIDI controller, by adding or removing Step Increment values. The Step Increment value can be changed mid-note to create a note with a hybrid note length.

Use the **Redo Step** button to sequentially redo any previously undone steps.

Undo Step

When the previous note has been released from the MIDI keyboard, and the insertion point has moved forward to the next note, **Undo Step** removes the entire last note.

When a note is being held on the MIDI keyboard, **Undo Step** changes to read “Decrement,” and removes the last Step Increment length that was added to the held note.

Next Step (or Increment)

When no note is being held on the MIDI keyboard, **Next Step** moves the insertion point by the Step Increment value, essentially inserting a musical rest.

When a note is being held on the MIDI keyboard, **Next Step** changes to read “Increment” and adds the Step Increment value to the held note, increasing its length by the Step Increment value.

While the note is being held, the Step Increment value can be changed, allowing you to create notes of any musical length.

Redo Step

Reinserts the last note that was removed by the Undo Step operation.

Triggering the Undo Step, Next Step, or Redo Step Buttons

The **Undo Step**, **Next Step**, and **Redo Step** buttons can be set to be triggered by an external MIDI synth, drum pad, or other controller.

To set Undo Step, Next Step and Redo Step MIDI triggers:

1. Place the Edit insertion on a track at the location where you want to enter the first MIDI note.
2. Choose **`Event > MIDI Operations > Step Input`**.
3. Locate the button you want to assign a MIDI event to, and click in the field below the button.
4. Play the MIDI event you want to use as a trigger.

   If you use a continuous controller as a trigger (such as Pitch Bend), you should make certain to use an extreme controller value to avoid erroneous data input.

5. Press Enter to confirm the MIDI trigger assignment.

Numeric Keypad Shortcuts for Step Input

When **`Enable Numeric Keypad Shortcuts`** is selected, you can apply many of the controls in the Step Input page, as well as several selection controls, using your computer's numeric keypad.

Step Input Shortcuts	Key
Whole note	1
1/2 note	2
1/4 note	4
1/8 note	5
1/16 note	6
1/32 note	7
1/64 note	8
Dotted note	. (decimal key)
Toggle Tuplet on/off	3
Next step	Enter
Undo step	0
Nudge forward	+
Nudge back	–
Select Main Counter	=
Edit Selection indicators	/

55 HEAT

HEAT (Harmonically Enhanced Algorithm Technology) is a software option that adds “analog color” to Pro Tools Ultimate or Studio software. HEAT is available in both DSP and Native formats. To use HEAT, iLok authorizations are required for both HEAT and Pro Tools Ultimate or Studio.

HEAT is applied to all active audio tracks in your session, emulating magnetic recording tape combined with harmonic coloration commonly experienced with analog mixing consoles. Use HEAT to open up your mixes with warm, analog-modeled soft-saturated distortion.

Enabling HEAT

When enabled, HEAT is applied to all active audio tracks in your session, emulating the effect of an analog mixing console. HEAT is supported with all mono, stereo, and surround formats.

With HDX systems, HEAT uses DSP resources on all active audio tracks. This is important to know because as you increase (or decrease) the number of audio tracks in the session, you also increase (or decrease) the amount of DSP resources required to keep HEAT hot. Note that HEAT does not use DSP resources on inactive audio tracks.

With Pro Tools Ultimate Software on Native systems or Pro Tools Studio software, HEAT uses the host-processor.

To enable (or disable) HEAT in a session, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **Options > Activate HEAT**.
- Select (or deselect) the HEAT On/Off button in the Mix window in HEAT view.

You can also enable the **Enable HEAT in New Sessions** option in the Pro Tools Preferences to have HEAT automatically enabled for all new sessions.

To enable (or disable) HEAT for new sessions:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Processing** tab.
3. In the DSP Management section, select (or deselect) the **Enable HEAT in New Sessions** option.
4. Click **OK**.

About HEAT Processing

HEAT provides global controls for Drive and Tone. These affect all audio tracks where HEAT is not bypassed.

Drive

The **Drive** control introduces non-linear processing that emulates magnetic recording tape combined with harmonic information commonly found in analog gear.

Turning the **Drive** control counter-clockwise emulates tape-based non-linear distortion. As with tape, increasing the **Drive** control level by turning it counter-clockwise increases harmonic content by adding higher frequency odd harmonics (starting with the 3rd and 5th harmonics). HEAT also emulates the recording and reproduction equalizers of tape decks that further modifies the harmonic content. As a result, when turning the **Drive** control counter-clockwise, HEAT fattens up the bottom and mid-range of the processed audio and smooths high-frequency transients as you increase the processing.

Turning the **Drive** control clockwise has a more aggressive effect, adding an even harmonic series commonly found in triode tube circuits to the odd harmonic series. This can give the effect of prized tube microphones and other tube based analog gear.

Note that the harmonic structure changes with signal level and the amount of processing being applied, just like it does with vacuum tubes in the analog world.

Tone

As with tape, there can be loss of high frequencies with respect to low frequencies if driven far enough, as the high frequencies start compressing sooner than the low frequencies. HEAT can compensate for these losses, adding more detail and some brightness too, depending on the program material and its level. Moving the **Tone** control away from its default position accentuates (clockwise) or de-accentuates (counter-clockwise) the amount of detail and brightness.

The effect of the **Tone** control is different, depending on the **Drive** control setting. The amount and character of the harmonic content is changed by this control, in a non-linear fashion, unlike what a tone control in an equalizer would do.

HEAT Processing

With HEAT processing, the peaks in the signal are being reduced while the low level harmonic content is increased, thus reducing the level of existing peaks. Think of it as a tube or tape doing soft clipping, “squashing” the peaks and causing analog compression over a wide dynamic range.

How Much Processing Should I Use?

HEAT processing is level and program dependent. Although a general setting usually works for many sources, some settings that work best for one source may not have the desired effect for another source. If you need a general purpose setting try adding two steps of the **Drive** control (in either direction).

Since your ears may not be used to the changes to the harmonic content that HEAT provides, you may need to spend a little time listening to the effect of HEAT processing on your program material to acclimate yourself. The human ear loves a little harmonic generation. Experiment with the settings to discover what sounds best to you.

Once you are used to how the program material sounds with some HEAT processing, disabling HEAT can highlight the subtle yet significant effect of HEAT on your program material.

The amount of processing can result in subtle changes or drastic changes depending on what the program is like, and how it was recorded. The difference between processing an analog or digital recording can be subtle or drastic. It may be easier to hear the effect of the processing in material that is more “open,” as opposed to material that is more dense. The amount of low frequency information added also affects how you hear the processing.

HEAT Controls

HEAT provides a simple set of master controls for the tuning the color of the effect, and a set of controls for each audio track in your session.

HEAT Master Controls

The HEAT Master controls let you adjust the amount and color of HEAT processing for all audio tracks. Take some time to experiment with different settings until you get the desired tone color for your mix.



On/Off (HEAT)

Enables (or disables) HEAT in your Pro Tools session.

Bypass (BYPASS)

Bypasses HEAT processing without disabling it. Note that bypassing HEAT does *not* free up DSP or Native resources needed for HEAT.

Meter

Displays the average amount of HEAT processing across all audio tracks.

Drive

Adjusts the amount of Drive for HEAT, which emulates the distortion you get when overdriving an analog channel strip on a console. At the default 12 o'clock position, no HEAT processing is applied. Turn the knob counter-clockwise to add odd harmonics to the mix (a magnetic tape saturation–like effect). Turn the knob clockwise to add even harmonics to the odd harmonic series for the effect of simulating a triode tube circuit.

Tone

Adjust the Tone (bass to treble) for HEAT. Turn the control to the right for a brighter sound and to the left for a darker sound.

Showing and Hiding HEAT Master Controls

HEAT Master controls can be viewed in the Mix window.

To show (or hide) HEAT Master controls:

- Click the Show/Hide HEAT View button in the lower right corner of the Mix window.



Show/Hide HEAT Master View button in the Mix window

HEAT Track Controls

HEAT track controls are available on all audio tracks. HEAT only affects audio tracks.



HEAT Track controls

Bypass (BYP)

Bypasses HEAT processing for the individual audio track. Note that bypassing HEAT on individual tracks does *not* free up the DSP resources used by HEAT for that track.

Pre/Post Insert (PRE)

Sets HEAT processing to be Pre or Post inserts on the individual track. HEAT processing is Pre Inserts when the PRE button is lit.

Meter

Displays the amount of HEAT processing on the individual audio track. On multichannel tracks, the meter shows the average amount of HEAT applied to all channels of that track.

Showing and Hiding HEAT Track Controls

HEAT Track controls can be viewed in the Mix window.

To show (or hide) HEAT Track controls, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **`View > Mix Window Views > HEAT`**.
- Select (or deselect) **`HEAT`** in the Mix Window View selector.

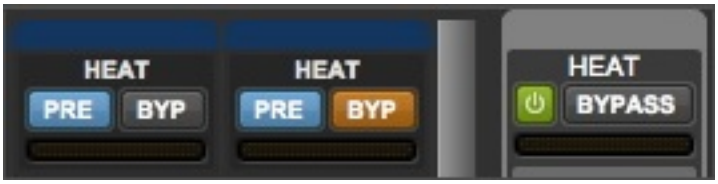


Selecting HEAT in the Mix Window View selector

Master Bypass and Track Bypass Indicators

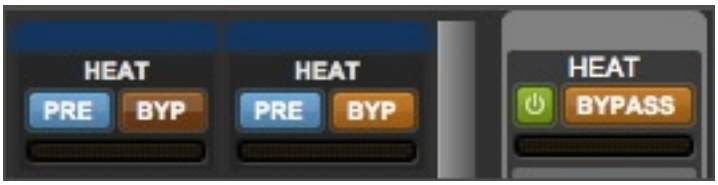
The Track Bypass button is color coded to indicate whether or not HEAT is explicitly (or implicitly) bypassed when Master Bypass is enabled. Explicitly bypassed tracks remain bypassed when disabling the Master Bypass.

When a track is explicitly bypassed, the BYP button is bright orange.



HEAT Track and Master controls with bypassed track

When the Master Bypass is enabled, it is bright orange and any explicitly bypassed track BYP buttons also remain bright orange. For any implicitly bypassed track, the BYP button changes to dark orange.



HEAT Track and Master controls with Master bypass

A Note About Other Track Types

HEAT only affects audio tracks. It is not applied to Instrument, Auxiliary Input, or Master tracks. If you are using virtual instrument plugins on an Instrument or Auxiliary Input track and want to apply HEAT, you can either bus record audio from that track to an audio track, or you can bus the output of the track to the input of an audio track and enable Input monitoring.

DSP and Voice Requirements

(HDX Systems Only) The amount of DSP resources used by HEAT is based on the number of voices used for audio tracks, the type of DSP hardware, and the session sample rate.

The following table lists the number of mono audio tracks per DSP chip that are available with HEAT processing enabled.

Available number of mono audio tracks per DSP chip

DSP Chip Type	44.1/ 48 kHz	88.2/ 96 kHz	176.4/ 192 kHz
HDX	86	42	19

Stereo tracks require twice the DSP of mono tracks, and surround formats require as much DSP per channel as the corresponding number of mono tracks (for example, a 5.1 track uses the same amount of DSP as 6 mono tracks).

Insufficient DSP Resources

It is possible that your system may have insufficient DSP resources to add more audio tracks to the session when HEAT is enabled (because there is not enough DSP available for HEAT on the new tracks). Should this occur, Pro Tools prompts you to do one of the following:

- Create the new tracks, but make them inactive. (Inactive audio tracks do not use any DSP resources.)
- Disable HEAT and create the new tracks.

When opening a session that was saved with HEAT enabled, but your system does not have enough DSP to apply HEAT to all active audio tracks in the session, HEAT is automatically disabled. The session notes dialog will indicate that HEAT has been made inactive.

Once the session is open, you can manage which tracks you want to have active with HEAT enabled within the DSP limitations of your system. You can also expand your HDX system with additional cards to increase the available DSP resources for HEAT.

In some cases, if the session you are opening has a lot of active DSP plugins, the session may open with HEAT enabled, but make some of the session's DSP plugins inactive. This is because HEAT processing takes priority over DSP plugin processing.

Voice Requirements

When enabling HEAT, extra voices may be required to make HEAT active if HEAT is set to Pre insert on a track and the first plugin on that track is a Native plugin. If there are an insufficient number of voices available, HEAT cannot be activated.

If HEAT is already active, set to Post insert on a track, and a Native plugin is the first plugin on that track, HEAT may require extra voices to be changed to Pre insert. If there are an insufficient number of voices available, the Pre button will be inactive until you increase the number of voices (in the Playback Engine) or until more voices are made available (such as by making some audio tracks inactive).

Using HEAT with a Control Surface

(ICON and C|24 Only) You can use the following features provided on ICON (D-Control™ and D-Command) and C|24 to control HEAT.

For information about using HEAT with Avid control surfaces, see the Using EuControl Surfaces guide (for EuControl devices) or the S4/S6 Guide.

D-Control and D-Command

With D-Control or D-Command, you can access HEAT Master Controls in the Custom Fader section, and HEAT channel controls directly from the channel strips.

Master Controls

HEAT Master Controls include On/Off, Bypass, Drive, and Tone.

To access HEAT Master Controls from D-Control or D-Command:

- Shift+Control+Press the Plugins switch in the Custom Fader section.

HEAT creates a Custom Fader for HEAT and maps controls to the middle encoders as described below.

D-Control

D-Control provides HEAT Master Controls within a single Custom Fader (#8)

Encoder	Parameter	Action
#3	HEAT (On/Off)	Rotate the encoder, or press encoder 3 BMP, to toggle
#4	MstByp (Master Bypass)	Rotate encoder, or press encoder 4 BMP, to toggle
#5	Drive	Rotate encoder
#6	Tone	Rotate encoder

D-Command (Custom Fader 7 and 8)

D-Command provides HEAT Master Controls in the encoder sections of two Custom Faders (7 and 8).

Encoder	Parameter	Action
#1 (Fader 7)	HEAT (On/Off)	Press BMP to toggle, or rotate the encoder
#2 (Fader 7	MstByp (Master Bypass)	Press BMP to toggle, or rotate the encoder
#1 (Fader 8)	Drive	Rotate encoder
#2 (Fader 8)	Tone	Rotate encoder

Channel HEAT Bypass and Pre/Post

When HEAT is enabled in a session, each channel strip provides HEAT Bypass and Pre/Post. You can access these channel settings directly from D-Control and D-Command channel strips. Channel HEAT controls follow Do To All and Do to All Selected modifiers.

To access HEAT in the channel strip:

1. Make sure HEAT is enabled in the session.
2. Shift+Control+Press the channel Inserts switch.

D-Control

On D-Control, encoders/BMP switches 5 and 6 map to HEAT Pre/Post and Bypass, respectively.

To toggle a channel between (HEAT) Pre or Post Inserts:

- Do one of the following:
  - Rotate encoder 5
  - Press encoder 5 BMP switch.

To toggle a channel in or out of HEAT Bypass:

- Do one of the following:
  - Rotate encoder 6
  - Press encoder 6 BMP switch.

D-Command

On D-Command, both channel encoders and their BMP switches map to HEAT Pre/Post (upper encoder row) and Bypass (lower encoder row).

To toggle a channel in or out of HEAT Bypass:

- Do one of the following:
  - Rotate the lower encoder.
  - Press the lower encoder's BMP switch.

To toggle a channel between (HEAT) Pre or Post Inserts:

- Do one of the following:
  - Rotate the upper encoder.
  - Press the upper encoder's BMP switch.

HEAT supports Flip mode for both its Master and Channel controls.

C|24

C|24 lets you adjust HEAT Master Controls from encoders 21–24, and HEAT channel controls in each channel strip.

Master Controls

To access HEAT Master Controls on C|24:

- Press the Soft Keys switch in the Channel Bar. To exit, press the Soft Keys switch again.

HEAT Master Controls are mapped to the encoder and encoder switches of channel strips 21–24, as shown in "HEAT Master Controls on C|24" below.

Channel HEAT Bypass and Pre/Post

When HEAT is enabled in a session, each channel strip provides HEAT Bypass and Pre/Post. You can access these channel settings directly from C|24 channel strips. Channel HEAT controls follow Do To All and Do to All Selected modifiers.

To access HEAT channel controls:

1. Make sure HEAT is enabled in the current session.
2. In the channel strip, press and hold the channel Insert switch. To exit, press the same switch again.

To toggle a channel in or out of HEAT Bypass:

- Press the channel Bypass switch.

To toggle a channel between (HEAT) Pre or Post Inserts:

- Rotate the channel encoder, or press the encoder switch, and choose Pre or Post.

HEAT Master Controls on C|24

Encoder:	21	22	23	24
Parameter	HEAT (On/Off)	MstByp (Master Bypass)	Drive	Tone
Action	Press the Encoder switch to toggle	Press the Encoder switch to toggle	Rotate encoder	Rotate encoder

Part IX: Mixing

Get an overview of basic mixing, and learn how to use plugins and automation.

- "Basic Mixing" on page 1447
- "Plugin and Hardware Inserts" on page 1512
- "DSP Mode" on page 1555
- "Automation" on page 1569
- "Mixdown" on page 1638

56 Basic Mixing

Mixing in Pro Tools involves working with elements of audio signal flow, including inputs, outputs, buses, inserts, and sends, for purposes of submixing and mixdown.

In addition to the final mixdown, mixing tasks can occur any time during a session.

During mixing, real-time plugins and hardware inserts provide effects and signal processing (see "Plugin and Hardware Inserts" on page 1512).

Mixing Concepts

Mixing involves making decisions about elements such as volume levels, panning, and effects in your studio. While you can control many variables in your studio (such as speakers and room acoustics), you cannot control the listening environment in which your final mix will be heard. The following tips will help you make your mix sound as good as possible to as many listeners as possible:

Alternate Speakers and Reference Monitoring

Listen to your mixes on a variety of different speakers to gauge how well the mix will translate to different playback systems.

Reference Mixes

Make audio CDs and MP3-encoded files of rough mixes and audition them outside the studio in different listening environments.

Format Compatibility Monitoring

Check stereo mixes for compatibility with mono playback systems, and multichannel surround mixes for compatibility with stereo playback systems.

Metering and Calibration

Meters provide a visual display of signal levels. They tell whether signal is getting to a channel, and how loud or soft a signal is relative to (above or below) “0.”

By calibrating all your equipment to standard reference levels, a consistent level can be achieved (and metered) among different recording devices in a studio, throughout a facility, or throughout an entire production chain. For example, a level of –18 dBFS coming out of a DAT deck should play and meter at –18 dBFS in Pro Tools.

Calibrating Audio Interfaces

(HD I/O Only) If you are using an HDX or HD Native system with an HD I/O, use the Calibration Reference Level option (in the Operation Preferences page) to set the reference level when Pro Tools is in Calibration mode.

For instructions on calibrating an HD I/O, see the HD I/O Guide.

Signal Flow by Track Type

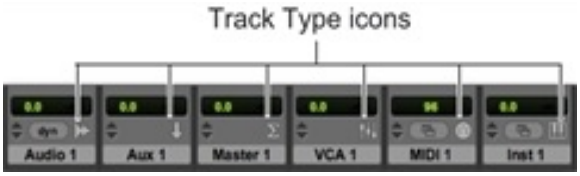
Pro Tools provides the following track types:

- Audio
- Auxiliary Input (and Routing Folder)
- Master Fader
- MIDI
- Instrument
- VCA Master

Audio, Auxiliary Input (and Routing Folder), Master Fader, and Instrument tracks can route audio. MIDI and Instrument tracks can route MIDI data.

VCA Master tracks do not pass audio or MIDI data, but do affect controls on other tracks. See "VCA Master Tracks" on page 1454.

Tracks can be identified in the Mix window by their Track Type icon.



Audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, VCA Master, MIDI, and Instrument tracks

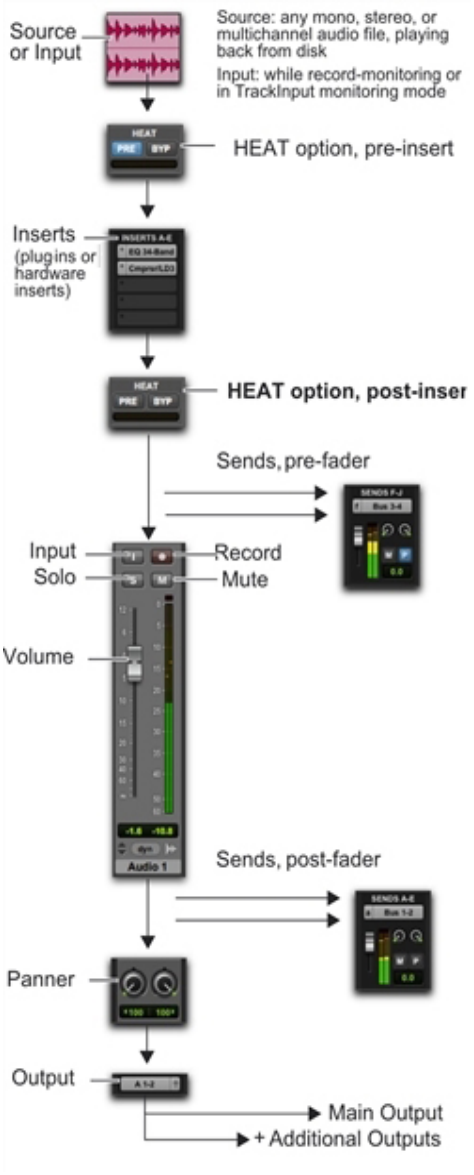
For information on creating tracks, see "Creating Tracks" on page 331.

Audio Tracks and Signal Flow

Audio tracks play audio from disk, record audio to disk, and monitor input signals when record-enabled or in TrackInput monitoring mode. Inserts on audio tracks are pre-fader. Sends on audio tracks can be pre- or post-fader.

Mono and stereo audio tracks are available on all Pro Tools systems.

Multichannel audio tracks and surround mixing formats are supported by Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only.

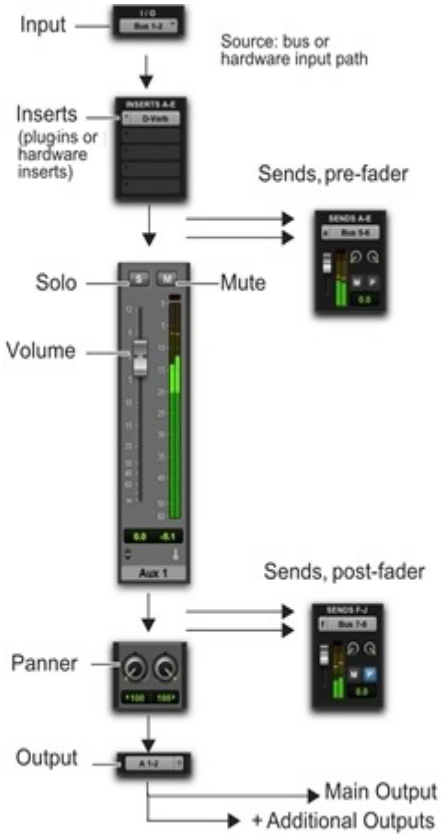


Audio track audio signal flow

Auxiliary Input Tracks and Signal Flow

Auxiliary Input tracks provide the same signal routing options as audio tracks, except that their input must come from an internal bus or hardware input. Inserts on Auxiliary Inputs are pre-fader.

Routing Folder tracks provide the same signal routing options as Auxiliary Input tracks.



Auxiliary Input track audio signal flow

Auxiliary Input tracks are used as inputs for audio from external MIDI instrument and other sources, as well as to submix internal bus and output paths. They can be fully automated. When using Auxiliary Input tracks as inputs for external sources, adjust the source output levels to achieve proper recording levels.

Common Uses for Auxiliary Inputs

Auxiliary Inputs can be used to:

- Apply real-time plugins or an external processor to a submix, using the Auxiliary Input as an effects return (such as reverb or bus line compression)
- Input audio from external MIDI instruments and other audio sources into the mix, to monitor or route to audio tracks for recording to disk (such as from the audio outputs of a MIDI synthesizer)
- Consolidate volume control of any submix under a single fader
- Mix multiple outputs from an instrument plugin.

Routing an Auxiliary Input

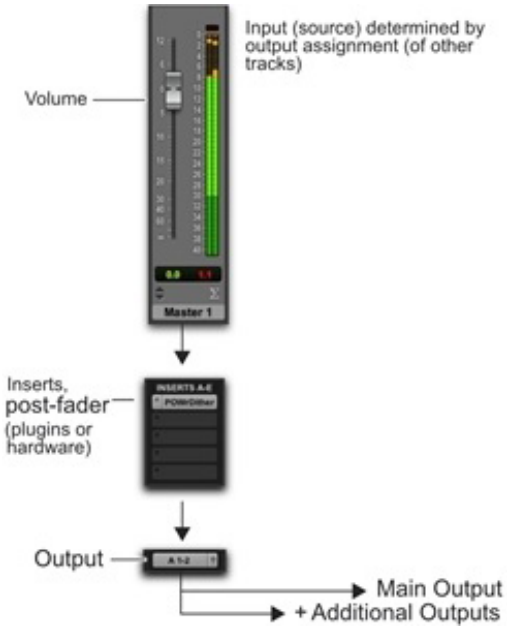
To route an Auxiliary Input:

1. Click the Input Path selector of the Auxiliary Input and choose an input or bus path.
2. Click the Output Path selector of the Auxiliary Input and choose an output or bus path.
3. Adjust the Auxiliary Input fader to set the return volume.

See the submix examples in "Signal Routing for Monitoring and Submixing" on page 1491.

Master Fader Tracks and Signal Flow

Master Fader tracks control the master output levels of output and bus paths. When assigned to an active output or bus path, they provide post-fader effects processing and master level control for a main mix, headphone and cue mixes, stems, effects sends, and other signal routing applications. Master Faders support all track formats supported on your Pro Tools system.



Master Fader track audio signal flow

Master Faders do not consume any of your system's audio processing power. Master Faders provide up to five *post-fader* inserts and no sends. Also, Master Fader tracks do not have Pan sliders, or Mute and Solo buttons.

Unlike inserts on audio tracks and Auxiliary Inputs, Master Fader inserts are post-fader. This lets you insert a dither plugin, or similar plugin, on your master mix, and affect its processing with the Master Fader level (for more information, see "Dither" on page 1507).

If you absolutely must have a pre-fader insert on your Master Fader signal, set up an Auxiliary Input before the Master Fader. For example, if you want compression on the mix, but you also want to fade out the mix, insert a compression plugin on the Auxiliary Input track and insert a dither plugin on the Master Fader track that is assigned to the Output path of the Auxiliary Input track. Then you can fade out with the Master Fader without changing the compression threshold for the mix.

Master Fader Meters

Meters on Master faders always show post-fader levels, regardless of the Pre-Fader Metering setting in the Options menu.

Master Faders and Paths

Master Faders can be assigned to main or sub-paths as defined in the I/O Setup. Multiple Master Faders cannot be assigned to the same path.

Active and Inactive Master Faders

When a Master Fader track is inactive, its associated plugins, I/O assignments, and their resources are made inactive.

When a Master Fader output assignment (path assignment) is made inactive, the Master Fader no longer controls the master gain of that path.

When you duplicate a Master Fader track, the duplicated track's assignment will be inactive.

Common Uses for Master Faders

Master Faders can be used to:

- Control and process output mixes
- Monitor and meter an output (such as a bus or hardware output) to guard against clipping
- Control submix levels
- Control effects sends levels
- Control submaster (bussed tracks) levels
- Apply dither or other inserts to an entire mix
- Control the monitoring path with a EUCON control surface

Use Master Faders to control submix levels, send level masters, and other outputs. Master Faders can control either output or internal buses. You can use a Master Fader track assigned to an Output path as a master volume control. You can also use a Master Fader track assigned to a bus to trim the inputs to Auxiliary Input tracks for submixes to avoid clipping.

Using a Master Fader

To use a Master Fader as a stereo master volume control:

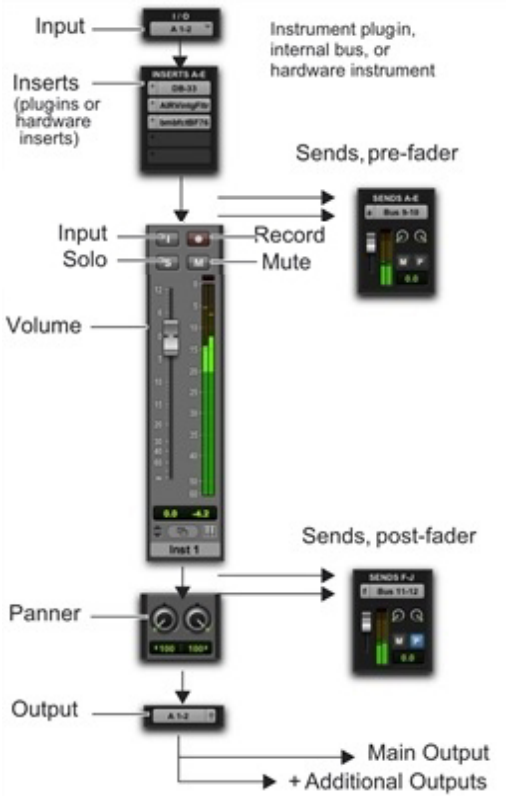
1. Create a stereo Master Fader track.
2. Set the outputs of all audio tracks in the session to the main output path (for example, outputs 1–2 of your primary audio interface) and set the panning for each track.
3. Set the output of the Master Fader to the main output path.

To use a Master Fader to trim the input to a submix:

1. Create an Auxiliary Input track.
2. Bus the signal from audio tracks in your session to the input of the Auxiliary Input track.
3. Create a stereo Master Fader track and assign the Output to the bus path that feeds the Auxiliary Input track.

Instrument Tracks and Signal Flow

Instrument tracks provide the same audio signal routing options as Auxiliary Input tracks, except that their input must come from an instrument plugin inserted on that Instrument track, or from a bus or hardware input.



Instrument track audio signal flow

Instrument tracks are used as inputs for instrument plugins, and other sources (including internal buses). They can be fully automated. When using an Instrument track as an input for an external source, adjust the output level at the source to achieve proper recording level.

Common Uses for Instrument Tracks

By playing back MIDI from or through an Instrument track you can control and monitor the audio from:

- Instrument plugins, such as software synthesizers or samplers.
- External MIDI instruments, such as synthesizers and samplers

Routing with an Instrument Track

To route audio from an external MIDI instrument to an Instrument track:

1. Click the Input Path selector of the Instrument track and choose the corresponding hardware input for your external MIDI instrument.
2. Click the Output Path selector of the Instrument track and choose an output or bus path.
3. In Instruments view, click the MIDI Input selector, and assign a device and channel from the pop-up menu to record and control the external MIDI instrument.
4. In Instruments view, click the MIDI Output selector, and assign the port and channel for the external MIDI instrument from the pop-up menu.Adjust the Instrument fader to set the volume.

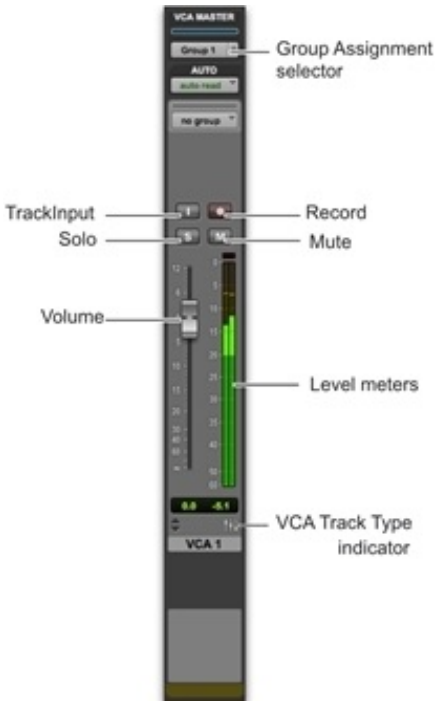
For information on assigning MIDI input and output for Instrument tracks, see "Assigning MIDI Input and Output for Instrument Tracks" on page 368.

For information inserting plugins on tracks, see "Inserting Plugins on Tracks" on page 1517.

VCA Master Tracks

VCA Master tracks emulate the operation of voltage-controlled amplifier channels on analog consoles, where a VCA channel fader would be used to control, group, or offset the signal levels of other channels on the console.

VCA Master tracks do not pass audio, so they do not have inputs, outputs, inserts or sends. A Mix group is assigned to a VCA Master track, which appears in the VCA track's Group Assignment selector. The controls of the tracks in that Mix group, called the *member* tracks, are modified by the controls on the VCA Master.



VCA Master track

VCA Member Track Control Indications

Unlike VCAs on traditional analog consoles, VCA Master tracks in Pro Tools directly affect their member tracks, so that the controls on each member track always show their actual values:

- The output level of each member track is indicated by the position of its fader.
- The solo, mute, record enable, and TrackInput status of each member track are indicated by the corresponding controls on the track.

This ensures that even when a VCA Master track is not visible, the true state of its member tracks is accurately displayed.

VCA Member Track Controls and Group Behavior

When a group is assigned to a VCA Master, the VCA-modifiable controls (Volume, Mute, Solo, Record Enable and TrackInput) on its member tracks, by default, do not follow any grouped behavior that may be set in the Attributes page of the Groups dialog. This lets you control the output levels of the group's member tracks while retaining the ability to adjust individual member track levels.

Member tracks can be set to follow normal grouped behavior. See "Assigning Groups to VCA Masters" on page 1456.

Common Uses for VCA Master Tracks

By grouping tracks in a Mix group and assigning that group to a VCA Master track, you can:

- Control the output levels of all the VCA group's member tracks without the need to bus them to an Auxiliary Input track or to the same output path
- Create multiple, nested VCA groups and control the output levels of multiple submixes at the same time
- Automate a submix by automating its VCA Master track

VCA Master Track Controls

The controls on a VCA Master track affect the corresponding controls on the member tracks in its assigned Mix group. VCA Master tracks have the following controls:

Volume

The VCA Volume fader controls the Volume fader on audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, Master Fader, and other VCA Master tracks in a VCA-controlled group. (Volume faders on MIDI tracks are not affected.) Volume faders on member tracks move to show the *composite level*, or the level on each track resulting from the position of the VCA Master Volume fader.

Mute

The VCA Mute button controls the mute state of audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, MIDI, and other VCA Master tracks in a VCA-controlled group. Muting a VCA-controlled group does not change the underlying mute state of member tracks. (Mute buttons on member tracks that were previously unmuted show an implicit mute.)

Solo

The VCA Solo button controls the solo state of audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, MIDI, and other VCA Master tracks in a VCA-controlled group.

- Soloing a VCA Master will implicitly mute all tracks except its member tracks, thereby indirectly soloing the member tracks.
- Soloing a VCA Master will clear any explicit solos on its member tracks, leaving them indirectly soloed, and implicitly mute all other tracks.
- Explicitly soloing a member track while its VCA Master track is soloed will override the VCA Master solo.

Record Enable

The VCA Record Enable button toggles the Record Enable status of only those audio, Instrument, and other VCA tracks that have already been record-enabled individually. You can then toggle record enable on and off for those tracks using the VCA Master Record Enable.

To temporarily force all member tracks to toggle their record enable status:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Record Enable button on the VCA Master.

TrackInput

The VCA TrackInput button toggles the input monitor status of only those audio tracks in a VCA-controlled group that are record-enabled. You can toggle input monitor status for those tracks using the VCA Master TrackInput button.

To temporarily force all member tracks to toggle their input monitoring status:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the VCA Master TrackInput button on the VCA Master.

Level Meter

On VCA Master tracks, level meters indicate the highest level occurring on any of its individual tracks, not a summed level of all member tracks.

The channel format of level meters on the VCA Master is set according to the channel formats of its member tracks, as follows:

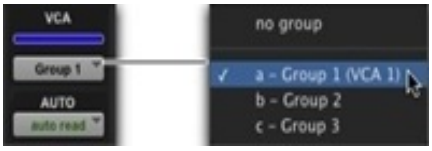
- If all member tracks are the same channel format (mono, stereo or a multichannel format), the number of level meters on the VCA Master track is identical to that of the member tracks.
- If the member tracks are different formats, the number of level meters on the VCA Master track is set to one.

Assigning Groups to VCA Masters

An existing Mix group can be assigned to a VCA Master, or a new Mix group can be assigned to a VCA Master while it is being created. Only one group can be assigned to a VCA Master at a time. A VCA Master cannot control a group that includes itself.

To assign an existing group to a VCA Master:

- Click the Group Assignment selector on the VCA Master track and choose an available group from the pop-up menu.



Assigning an existing group to a VCA Master

To assign a new group to a VCA Master:

1. While creating a new group, select Mix or Mix/Edit as the Group type.
2. In the Group dialog, choose an available VCA Master track from the VCA pop-up menu.

Track Membership in Multiple VCA Groups

It is possible for a single member track to be a member of more than one VCA-controlled group. In this case, the contribution of all VCA Master Volume faders is summed on the member track. Mute, Solo, Record Enable, and TrackInput follow the same rules for enabling or disabling member tracks.

Allowing Grouped Behavior of VCA Member Track Controls

When a track is a VCA member track, its Volume, Mute, Solo, Record Enable, and TrackInput controls follow VCA functions, and normally do not follow Mix group behavior.

However, these member track controls can be set to allow Mix group behavior in addition to their VCA functions.

To allow grouped behavior of VCA-related controls on member tracks:

1. Choose **`Setup > Preferences`** and click **`Mixing`**.
2. In the Automation section, deselect the **`Standard VCA Logic for Group Attributes`** option.
3. Click **`OK`**.

Volume, Mute, Solo, Record Enable, and TrackInput are made available as Mix group attributes in the Group dialog.

Inserts

Pro Tools lets you insert up to ten inserts (A–E and F–J) on each audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, or Instrument track. Each insert can be either a software *plugin insert* or a *hardware insert*, or an *instrument plugin* (see "Plugin and Hardware Inserts" on page 1512).

Inserts provide the following features:

- Plugins and hardware inserts route the signal from the track through the effect of your choice, and automatically return it to the same track.
- Hardware inserts send and return the signal to corresponding input and output channels of an audio interface, which can be connected to outboard effects.
- Some Instrument plugins accept audio from the track input (letting you use them as processing plugins).
- Inserts on audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks are pre-fader.
- Inserts on Master Faders are post-fader.
- Inserts can be bypassed or made inactive.
- Most plugin controls are fully automatable.

Track Output Format and Plugins

Pro Tools supports mono, multi-mono, stereo, and multichannel plugins (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only).

Because inserts process in series, changing the plugin format can alter the channel format. For example, inserting a mono-to-stereo plugin on a mono Auxiliary Input changes the signal path from that plugin through the rest of the track. This restricts all hardware inserts or plugins after the stereo plugin to be stereo-in/stereo-out plugins (or the supported multichannel format).

Plugin Formats

Pro Tools supports mono and stereo plugins, including the following three types of plugin paths:

- mono in/mono out
- mono in/stereo out
- stereo in/stereo out

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio sessions also support 3–8 channel multi-mono and multichannel plugins.

Configuring Inserts View in the Mix and Edit Windows

Audio tracks, Auxiliary Inputs, Master tracks, and Instrument tracks include two sets of inserts Views: Inserts A–E (inserts 1–5) and Inserts F–J (inserts 6–10). The View menu provides separate options for viewing each of set of inserts in the Mix and Edit windows.

To display inserts in the Mix window:

1. Select any of the following:
    - **View > Mix Window > Inserts A–E.**
    - **View > Mix Window > Inserts F–J.**

To display inserts in the Edit window:

- Select any of the following:
  - **View > Edit Window > Inserts A–E.**
  - **View > Edit Window > Inserts F–J.**

HEAT

HEAT (Harmonically Enhanced Algorithm Technology) is a software option that adds "analog color" to Pro Tools mixes. HEAT is applied to all active audio tracks in your session, emulating the effect of an analog mixing console. Use HEAT to open up your mixes with warm, analog-modeled soft-saturated distortion. Using HEAT in conjunction with the Stereo Pan Depth option (in the Session Setup window) lets you emulate the effect of classic analog consoles right in Pro Tools.

For more information, see "HEAT" on page 1438.

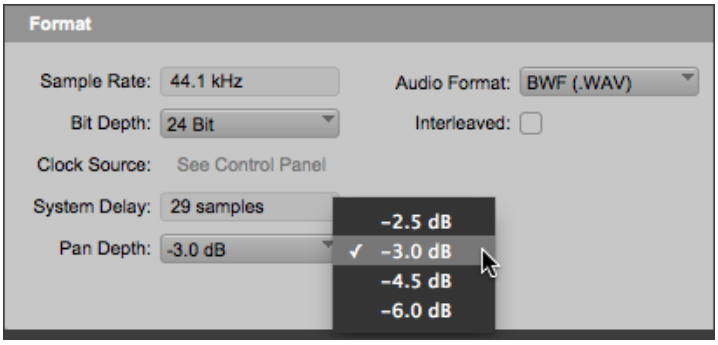
Stereo Pan Depth

Pro Tools lets you select the pan depth for stereo output paths. You can set the Pan Depth in the Session Setup window. The **Pan Depth** setting lets you set the amount of signal attenuation when a track is routed to a stereo output and panned to center.

The Surround Mixer requires slightly more DSP resources than the Stereo Mixer. Consequently, if you plan to regularly mix in stereo and use a Pan Depth of –2.5, you may want to use the Stereo Mixer plugin.

To set the stereo pan depth:

1. Choose **Setup > Session** to open the Session Setup window.
2. Select an option from the **Pan Depth** selector.



Session Setup window, selecting Pan Depth

Stereo Pan Depth Options

The following **Pan Depth** options are available:

–2.5 dB

The standard stereo pan depth setting in Pro Tools 8.0.x and lower. When opening Pro Tools 8.0.x or earlier session in Pro Tools 8.1 and later, this is the default option.

–3.0 dB

The industry standard pan depth for surround mixers and many consoles. This is the default setting for new Pro Tools 8.1 and later sessions.

–4.5 dB

The standard pan depth for many British analog consoles.

–6.0 dB

The standard pan depth for full mono compatibility.

For greater than stereo formats (such as 5.1), all surround output panning is fixed at –3.0 dB. The variable pan depth options are only available for stereo outputs.

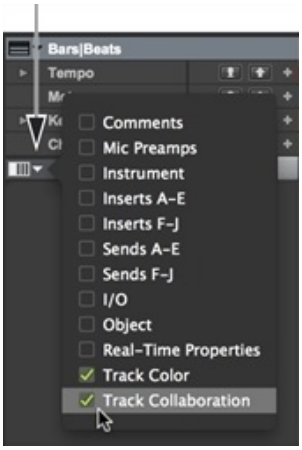
Views in the Mix and Edit Windows

The Mix and Edit windows can be configured to show or hide various mixing controls, using menu commands or view selectors.

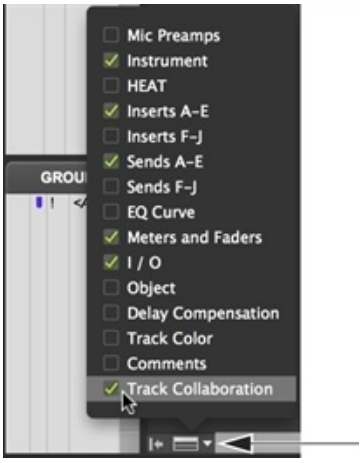
Most of these views are available in both windows, unless noted otherwise.

Window View Selectors

Both the Edit window and Mix window provide Window View selectors to configure their views.



Edit Window View selector



Mix Window View selector

Displaying Views

To display all views in the Mix or Edit window, do one of the following:

- Select **View > Mix Window** (or **Edit Window**) **> All**.
- Click the Mix Window View selector (or Edit Window View selector), and select **All**.

To display none of the views in the Mix or Edit window, do one of the following:

- Select **View > Mix Window** (or **Edit Window**) **> None**.
- Click the Mix Window View selector (or Edit Window View selector), and select **None**.

To show or hide available views in the Mix and Edit windows, do one of the following:

- Choose **View > Mix Window** (or **Edit Window**) and select or deselect one of the view types (such as **Comments**).
- Click the Mix Window View selector (or Edit Window View selector), and select or deselect one of the view types (such as **Comments**).

Hiding Views in the Edit Window

You can quickly hide View columns in the Edit window using the mouse with keyboard modifier.

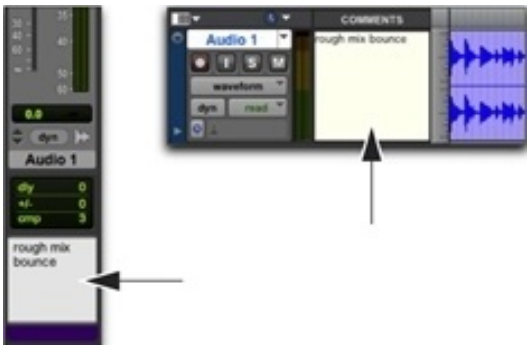
To hide a View column in the Edit window:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) at the top of the column you want to hide (Mic Pre, Comments, Instrument, Inserts A–E, Inserts F–J, Sends A–E, Sends F–J, I/O, Real-Time Properties, or Track Color).

Window View Options

Comments View

Shows any text entered as comments in the Track Name/Comments dialog. For more information, see "Renaming Tracks" on page 334.



Comments View in the Mix and Edit windows

Mic Preamps View

Shows controls in each track for Avid PRE or Pro Tools | Carbon.

For more information, see the PRE Guide or the Pro Tools | Carbon Guide.



Mic Preamps View

Instruments View

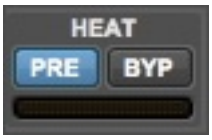
Shows MIDI controls on Instrument tracks (MIDI Input selector, MIDI Output selector, MIDI volume, MIDI pan, and MIDI mute).



Instruments View

HEAT View (Mix Window Only)

Shows HEAT track controls on audio tracks in the Mix window. This view is only available in the Mix window for Pro Tools with an authorized version of the HEAT option installed.

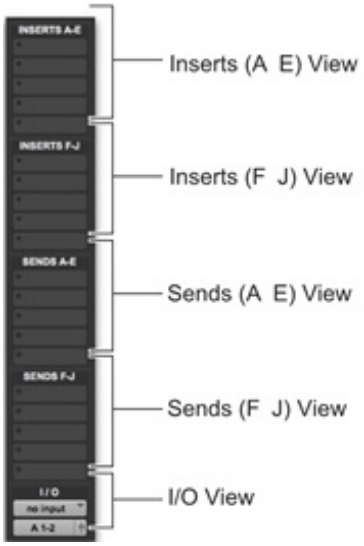


Inserts View (Inserts A–E and Inserts F–J)

Shows inserts (software plugins and hardware I/O inserts) in each track. For more information, see "Configuring Inserts View in the Mix and Edit Windows" on page 1457.

Sends View (Sends A–E and Sends F–J)

Shows send assignments in each track. Deselect to hide. For more information, see "Configuring Sends View in the Mix and Edit Windows" on page 1475.



Views in the Mix window

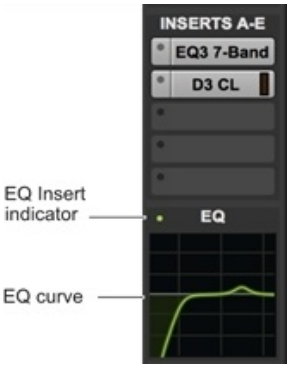
EQ Curve View (Mix Window Only)

The EQ Curve view in the Mix window indicates whether or not an EQ plugin is inserted on the track, and if so, displays the curve of that EQ. The EQ Insert indicator is lit when there is an EQ plugin inserted on the track and it is grayed out if there is no EQ plugin inserted on the track. The EQ Curve updates to show any changes to the EQ inserted on the track. If there is more than one EQ inserted on a track, the EQ Curve view displays the sum of the EQs.

Not all EQ plugins support EQ Curve view. Most EQ audio plugins from Avid and some third-party plugins support EQ Curve view. Other EQ plugins light the EQ Insert indicator, but no EQ Curve is displayed for these plugins.

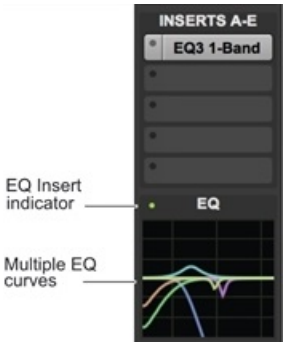
To show (or hide) the EQ Curve view in the Mix window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **`View > Mix Window > EQ Curve`**.
- Select (or deselect) **`EQ Curve`** from the Mix Window View selector.



EQ Curve view in the Mix window

For supported unlinked multi-mono EQ plugins (such as EQ III), the EQ Curve display shows a color-coded EQ curve for each channel.



EQ Curve view in the Mix window displaying the EQ curves for each channel of a 5.1 unlinked multi-mono EQ plugin

Meters and Faders View (Mix Window Only)

Shows track meters and faders. Hiding Meters and Faders can be useful for conserving screen space, especially if you are working with a control surface.



Meters and Faders View (Mix window)

I/O View (Edit Window Only)

Shows Input and Output selectors, and Volume and Pan indicators in each track.



I/O View (Edit window)

Click on the volume or pan indicators in the Edit window I/O View to adjust the volume or pan controls with a pop-up fader.



I/O View Volume pop-up fader (Edit window)



I/O View Pan pop-up slider (Edit window)

Object View (Pro Tools Ultimate or Studio with Dolby Atmos Only)

Shows the Object controls for audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks (mono or stereo only).



Object view (Edit window)

Real-Time Properties View (Edit Window Only)

Shows controls for Real-Time Properties for MIDI and Instrument tracks. For more information on Real-Time Properties, see "MIDI Real-Time Properties" on page 1062.



Real-Time Properties View (Edit window)

Delay Compensation View

The Delay Compensation View displays the total amount of plugin and hardware insert delay on each track, lets you apply a user offset of track delay, and displays the total amount of delay that Pro Tools applies to each track. The Delay Compensation View can be shown or hidden in the Mix Window.



Delay Compensation View

Delay values can be specified in either samples or milliseconds, as selected in the Mixing Preferences page. For more information on Delay Compensation, see "Delay Compensation" on page 1500.

Track Color View

Shows track color in each track. For detailed information, see "Color Coding for Tracks, Clips, Markers, and Groups" on page 383.

Track Collaboration View (Projects Only)

Shows the collaboration controls for tracks. For more information about collaboration, see "Track Collaboration Track View in the Edit and Mix Windows" on page 572.



Track Collaboration View (Edit window)



Track Collaboration View (Mix window)

Audio Input and Output Paths

Pro Tools lets you configure the physical input and outputs of your audio interfaces and also internal bus paths and subpaths in the I/O Setup dialog and the Hardware Setup dialog. These hardware inputs and outputs, and internal bus paths can be assigned as inputs and outputs on audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, and Master Fader tracks.

Input Audio Path

Input Path selectors determine the source input for audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, and (optionally) Instrument tracks. Track inputs can be set from hardware inputs or internal bus paths or subpaths. For detailed information on assigning track inputs, see "Assigning Audio Inputs" on page 357.

Hardware input and bus paths can be configured in the I/O Setup. For more information, see "I/O Setup" on page 55.

You can also define what physical ports are routed to Pro Tools input ports in the Hardware Setup dialog. For more information, see "Configuring the Playback Engine" on page 107.

Output Audio Path

Track Output Path selectors route the post-fader signals to the assigned output or bus paths. The Output Path selector routes the main track output to the chosen main or sub-path. Tracks can be routed directly to hardware output or internal bus paths and subpaths for submixing (main or sub-paths).

The track format (mono, stereo, or multichannel) determines the available main and sub-path choices for track output. For detailed information on assigning track outputs, see "Assigning Audio Outputs" on page 358.

When audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks are created, their mono, stereo, or greater-than-stereo multichannel format is defined:

- Mono tracks can be assigned to any available mono, stereo, multichannel main and sub-paths.
- Stereo tracks can be assigned to any available mono, stereo, or multichannel main and sub-paths.
- Multichannel tracks (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only) can be assigned to any path of any channel width. When routing multichannel tracks to paths with narrower channel widths, the output is folded down to the narrower channel width. When routing multichannel tracks to paths with wider channel widths, the output is fanned out. For fold down and fan out, Pro Tools uses the routing coefficients defined in the Mixing Preferences (see "Routing Coefficients" on page 160).

Output Windows

Output windows provide the essential track mixing controls (such as track panning and volume), as an alternative to Mix and Edit window views. Multichannel Output and Send windows also provide expanded Panner views, and other surround-specific controls. See "Surround Panning and Mixing" on page 1684.

Output windows are useful in large sessions to leave important tracks in an anchored location, unaffected by Mix and Edit window (or control surface) banking. See "Output Windows for Tracks and Sends" on page 1485.

Multiple Output Assignments

Pro Tools audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, and Instrument tracks can be assigned to multiple output paths. Assigning to multiple paths is an efficient way to route an identical mix to other discrete outputs, for simultaneous monitor feeds, headphone mixes, or other situations where a parallel mix is needed.

To assign a track to multiple outputs:

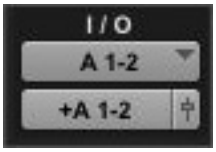
1. Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Track Output selector and select a main output path.
2. Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) additional output paths in the track's Output Path selector. Newly selected output destinations are added as additional outputs.
3. Do one of the following to close the Output selector menu and assign all selected paths:
    - Press Return.
    - Press Esc.
    - Click anywhere outside the Output selector menu.

Option-Control-click (Mac) or Alt-Start-click (Windows) to add the assignment to all tracks, or Option-Shift-Control-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-Start-click (Windows) to add the assignment to all selected tracks.

Display of Multiple Output Assignments

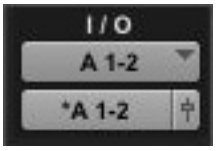
When a track is assigned to multiple output paths, the Output Path selector denotes multiple assignment status and active/inactive status with the following indicators:

- A plus sign (+) indicates that the track has multiple output assignments.



Indication of multiple output assignments

- In the Output Path selector menu, all currently assigned track outputs are checked to indicate they are active for the current track.
- An asterisk (*) indicates that one or more currently assigned outputs is Inactive.



Indication of multiple output assignments with at least one inactive output

Inactive Outputs

An output path can be made inactive, either globally in the I/O Setup dialog (affecting all tracks assigned to that path), or locally per assignment (only affecting that output on that audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, or Instrument track).

To make an output path inactive, do one of the following:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Output selector.
- Right-click the Output selector and select **`Make Inactive`**.

When opening sessions, outputs will be made inactive automatically if the required hardware or other resources are not available.

Inactive outputs retain all associated automation playlists. Edits made in the session also affect the inactive track's output automation playlists.

See "Making Tracks Inactive" on page 375.

To make an inactive output path active, do one of the following:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Output selector.
- Right-click the Output selector and select **`Make Active`**.

Inactive Outputs and DSP Resources

Making a track output inactive silences the output, while retaining all automation and playlist data. Inactive outputs do not consume resources for HDX DSP mixer connections, but any assigned plugins on the track continue to use their required DSP resources. Host-based AAX plugins require CPU resources. DSP-based AAX plugins use the DSP available on HDX cards.

You can free up DSP of an unused plugin by making its track inactive, or by making just the plugin inactive.

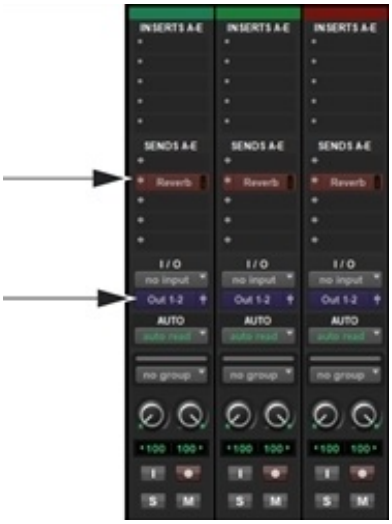
See "Active and Inactive Items" on page 19, and "Making Inserts Inactive" on page 1516 for more information.

About the "No Output" Option

Track outputs can be set to **No Output**. Assigning a track output to **No Output** causes any panning automation associated with the track to be lost. Tracks assigned to **No Output** will not be audible, but they do not free their associated DSP resources.

I/O Path Color

Pro Tools lets you color code Input, Output, Bus, Dolby Atmos (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only), and Insert paths. Color coded paths display their assigned color on Input, Output, Send, and Insert Name plates in the Edit, Mix, Send, and Output windows.



Mix window with color coded output and bus paths

See "Path Colors" on page 101.

Sends

Pro Tools lets you insert up to ten sends (A–E and F–J) on each audio track, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, or Instrument track.

Sends provide the following features:

- Sends can be set as pre- or post-fader.
- Sends can show level meters.
- Send level, pan, mute, and LFE controls can be configured to follow Groups.
- Send level, send mute, and send pan (for stereo and multichannel sends) are fully automatable. See "Automating Sends " on page 1587.
- Send controls can be displayed and edited from the Mix or Edit windows, or in their own output windows.
- Sends can be assigned to available output and bus paths (main or sub-paths), in mono or stereo, or

any of the supported multichannel formats for surround mixing.

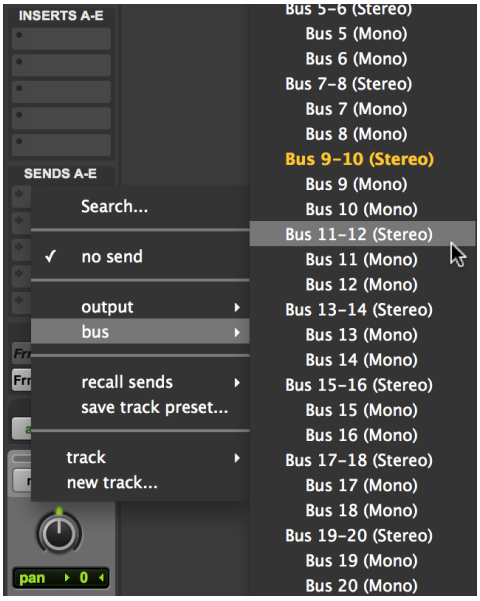
- Each send can have multiple assignments (for example, to available output and bus paths).

To be audible in Pro Tools, sends must be returned to the mix through an Auxiliary Input, audio track, or Instrument track. The sends can then be monitored and processed through an Auxiliary Input (or Instrument track), recorded to audio tracks, and bounced to disk. (Bouncing and mixdown are explained in "Mixdown" on page 1638)

Assigning Sends to Tracks

To add a send to a track:

1. Make sure Sends View is enabled in the Mix or Edit window (see "Views in the Mix and Edit Windows" on page 1459 for information).
2. Click the Send selector on the track and choose a path from the pop-up menu.



Assigning a send to a stereo bus path

The send can be a mono or stereo (or any of the supported multichannel formats for surround mixing) output or bus path. Paths that are already assigned are highlighted.

Multichannel sends (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only) can be assigned to any path of any channel width. When routing multichannel sends to paths with narrower channel widths, the output is folded down to the narrower channel width. When routing multichannel sends to paths with wider channel widths, the output is fanned out. For fold down and fan out, Pro Tools uses the routing coefficients defined in the Mixing Preferences (see "Routing Coefficients" on page 160).



Send window (stereo)

3. Set the output level of the send in the Send window by doing one of the following:
   - Adjust the Send Level fader.
   - Set the send level to unity gain (0 dB) by Option-clicking (Mac) or Alt-clicking (Windows) the Send Level fader.

   When you create a new send, its initial output level depends on the setting of the **Sends Default to −INF** preference.

   Pans for sends can be linked to the panning on the track's main output path by enabling the **Send Pans Default To Follow Main Pan** preference.

To change the default setting for sends:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Sends Default to "−INF."**
   - Deselect **Sends Default to "−INF"** and new sends will default to unity gain (0 dB).
3. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Send Pans Default to Follow Main Pan**.
   - Deselect **Send Pans Default to Follow Main Pan** to have panning control over the sends independent of the panning on the track's main output path.

To remove a send from a track:

- Click the Sends button on the track and choose **No Send** from the pop-up menu.

Search Send Paths

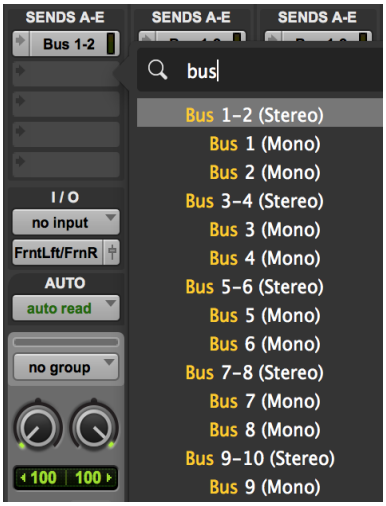
To search for a path in a Send:

1. Click the path selector for the send you want to assign and do one of the following:
   - Type the first character of the path name you want.
   - Click `Search`.
   - Press Tab.



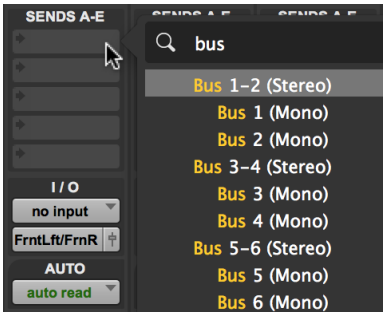
Searching a path selector

2. Type a few letters included the path name that you want. Only paths whose names that include those letters (highlighted yellow) now appear in the list (maximum of 20).



Searching a path selector, typing to find a path

3. Select the desired path with the mouse, or use the Up and Down arrow keys to select the path name.



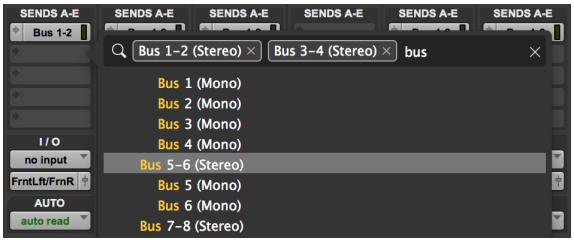
Searching a path selector, single path found by typing the first letters of its name

4. Do one of the following:
   - Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) again to close the selector menu.
   - Click anywhere outside the menu.

You can also search Track Presets by name from the Sends selector. (Track Presets are not available from the Track Input or Output selectors.)

To search for and assign multiple paths (Sends and Track Outputs only):

1. Type to search for each additional path assignment, do one of the following:
   - Tab to confirm current tag that you are typing.
   - Press Shift+Return.
   - Click the entry.
2. Press Return to close the selector menu and assign the outputs.



Searching and assigning multiple outputs

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to assign sends to the same path for all tracks of the same type.

Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) to assign sends to the same path for all selected tracks.

Muting Sends

Pro Tools lets you mute sends individually, for all selected tracks in your session, or just for sends A–E or F–J on selected tracks.

To mute (or unmute) a sends from the Send window or in the Mix window in Expanded Send view:

- Click the Mute button for the send.

To mute (or unmute) sends from the Track menu:

1. Select the tracks on which you want to mute sends. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to select all tracks shown in the session.
2. Select one of the following:
   - **Track** > **Mute Sends** > **All**.
   - **Track** > **Mute Sends** > **A–E**.
   - **Track** > **Mute Sends** > **F–J**.

Key Commands for Muting Sends

Pro Tools provides key commands for muting sends on tracks in the Mix window:

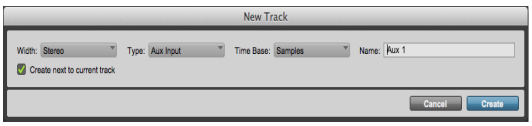
- Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) a Send Assignment button in the Mix or Edit window to Mute it and all sends below it on a track.
- Control-Option-click (Mac) or Start+Alt-click (Windows) a Send Assignment button in the Mix or Edit window to Mute it and all sends below it on all tracks. This lets you mute all sends in your session with a single click.
- Press Shift+Q to mute (or unmute) all sends on selected tracks.
- Press Shift+4 to mute (or unmute) sends A–E on selected tracks.
- Press Shift+5 to mute (or unmute) sends F–J on selected tracks.

Creating and Assigning a New Track from a Send

Pro Tools lets you create a new Auxiliary Input, Audio, or Instrument track from the Send selector and automatically assign the send to the Input of the new track using an available internal mix bus.

To create a new track from a send:

1. On an existing track, click the Send selector and select **New Track**.
2. In the resulting New Track dialog, select the **Width**, **Type**, and **Time Base** for the new track.



New Track dialog

3. Type a Name for the new track.

The name entered is used for both the new track and the new mix bus. (For example, if you entered the name “Drum Sub,” Pro Tools creates a new Auxiliary Input track named “Drum Sub” and also creates an internal mix bus named “Drum Sub.”)

4. Select (or deselect) whether you want the new track to be created next to the current track (with the send).
5. Click **OK**.

   Pro Tools creates a new track with the output of the originating send automatically routed to the input of the new track using an available internal mix bus.



New Auxiliary Input track with audio track send automatically assigned to Bus 1–2

Assigning an Existing Track from a Send

Pro Tools lets you assign a send directly to an active Auxiliary Input, Audio, or Instrument track using an available internal mix bus. Note that the destination track must be set to either an internal mix bus or to **No Input** in order to be available for assignment.

To assign a send to an available input on an existing track:

1. On an existing track, click the Send selector and select **Track**.
2. From the **Track** submenu, select the destination track you want.



Assigning a send to an existing Auxiliary Input track

Pro Tools automatically routes the send to the input of the selected track using an available internal mix bus.

Send Formats

Mono and Stereo Sends

When you click the Sends button on a track, you can choose from a list of mono or stereo output or bus paths.

Multichannel Sends (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only)

When you click the Sends button on a track, you can choose from a list of multichannel output or bus paths.

Send Path Selector Choices

The choices available in track Send selectors include bus and output paths.

The names, format, and channel mapping of buses and output paths can be customized in the I/O Setup dialog. See "Output buses" on page 88.

Internal Mix buses

Pro Tools provides internal mix buses for routing signals internally. Internal bus paths are useful for submixing and processing with plugins. Bus paths are defined in the I/O Setup dialog, and are available in all supported channel formats (mono, stereo, or multichannel, as supported on your system).

Hardware Outputs

Hardware sends are often used for headphone cue mixes, or for sending signals to external effects processors. Sends do not automatically return audio as do hardware inserts.

Configuring Sends View in the Mix and Edit Windows

Audio tracks, Auxiliary Inputs, and Instrument tracks include two sets of Sends Views: Sends A–E (sends 1–5) and Sends F–J (sends 6–10). The View menu provides separate options for viewing these sends in the Mix and Edit windows.

To display sends in the Mix window:

- Select any of the following:
  - **View > Mix Window > Sends A–E.**
  - **View > Mix Window > Sends F–J.**

To display sends in the Edit window:

- Select any of the following:
  - **View > Edit Window > Sends A–E.**
  - **View > Edit Window > Sends F–J.**

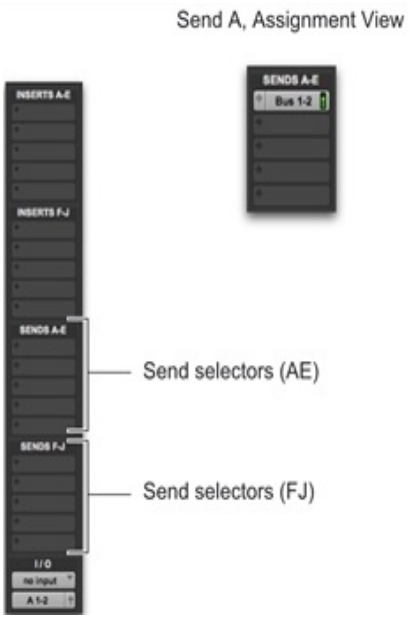
Sends View Options

Sends are displayed in the Mix and Edit window according to the Sends A–E View and Sends F–J View options. Each Send View has six view choices: Assignments View and five individual Send Views (A–E or F–J).

Assignments View

This is the default Sends View, showing all five of the Sends A–E or Sends F–J sends on all tracks displayed in the Mix and Edit windows.

In Assignments View, send controls are adjusted from Send Output windows (see "Output Windows for Tracks and Sends" on page 1485). You can also adjust some send controls in Expanded Send views (see "Expanded Send Views (A–J)" on the next page).



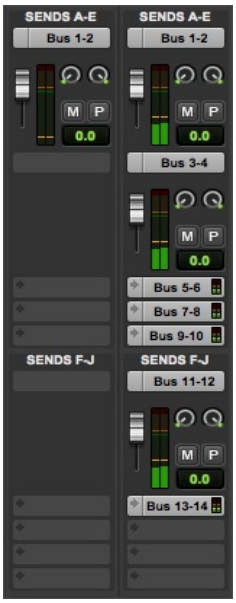
Assignments View, no sends (left) and with an assigned send (right)

To show (or hide) send assignments:

- Do one of the following:
  - Select (or deselect) **View > Sends A–E > Assignments.**
  - Select (or deselect) **View > Sends F–J > Assignments.**
  - Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) any Send selector to toggle between Sends view and Expanded Sends view.

Expanded Send Views (A–J)

Pro Tools lets you expand any combination of individual send assignments views. Expanded Send Views provide send level, pan, and mute controls for a single send across all tracks. Send controls can be adjusted directly from these Send Views. Sends can also be opened for control or metering in Send windows. See "Output Windows for Tracks and Sends" on page 1485.



Expanded Sends view for Sends A, B, and F

To expand (or collapse) a send:

- Select (or deselect) **View > Expanded Sends > Send <n>** (A–J).

  Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) a send selector to expand or collapse the send.

To expand all sends:

- Choose **View > Expanded Sends > All**.

  Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) a send selector to expand or collapse all sends within the send group (Sends A–E or Sends F–J).

To collapse all sends:

- Choose **View > Expanded Sends > None**.

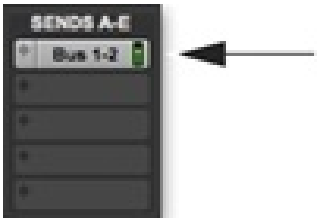
Meters in Send Assignments

Pro Tools can show segmented level meters to the right of the send path name in the Send Assignment button in normal sends view. Sends only show post-send fader metering.

To show (or hide) meters in Send Assignments, do one of the following:

- Choose **Setup > Preferences > Metering** and select (or deselect) the **Show Send Assignment Level Meter** option (see "Show Send Assignment Level Meter" on page 167).
- Right-click on a track meter and select (or deselect) the **Show Send Assignment Level Meter**

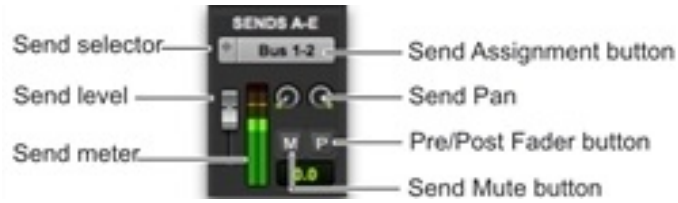
option.



Assignments View, meters shown

Editing Sends in the Mix and Edit Windows (Individual Send Views)

Individual Send Views (such as Send A) display all the controls of an individual send in the sends area of the Mix and Edit windows. These views provide full access to all controls for that send on all tracks.



Send A View, with mono send shown

Send level and mute can follow Mix groups, to adjust multiple send controls from a single set of controls.

Individual Send Views and Meters

When you display the controls for an individual send, you also have the option of displaying send level meters.

Send level meters show peak values and indicate clipping that occurs while the meter is displayed (if a send clips any time before its meter is displayed, this is not shown). If you are using a slower computer, hiding send level meters can improve screen redraw times.

To clear a send meter's Clip indicator:

- Click the Clip indicator.

To clear all meters, do one of the following:

- Option-click any Clip indicator.
- Choose **`Track > Clear All Clip Indicators`**.
- Press Option+C (Mac) or Alt+C (Windows).

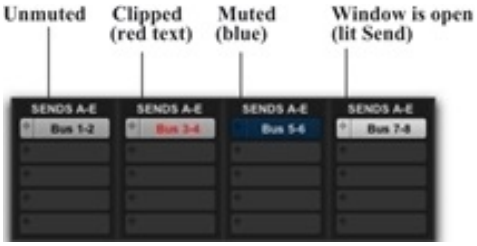
In Assignment View, edit sends by opening their Output windows. See "Output Windows for Tracks and Sends" on page 1485.

Send Status Display

When displaying all controls for an individual sends, the Send status is visible directly in the Mix or Edit windows.

In Assignment View, Send status is displayed as follows:

- By default, the Send button is gray, to indicate that it is unmuted.
- The Send button text is red when the send has clipped.
- The Send button is blue when the send is muted.
- The Send button is lit whenever a send's window is open.



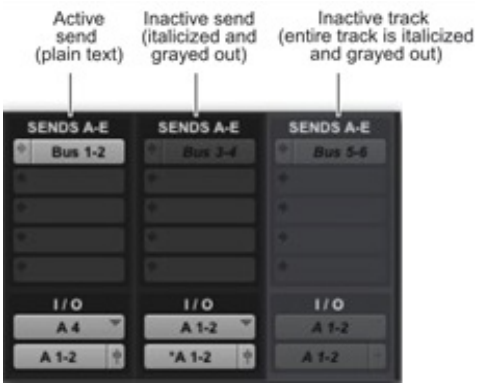
Indication of Send mute, clipping, and window status

If you use a control surface (such as S1, S6, or the Avid Control app) with Pro Tools, colored outlines around sends, inserts, and outputs indicate the current controller focus.

Inactive Sends

Sends can be made inactive. Inactive sends free their DSP and mixer resources, while retaining their position in track Sends View. Inactive sends do not output audio. However, Inactive sends retain all related automation playlists. In addition, edits made to clips on tracks with inactive sends can still affect the sends automation playlists.

When opening sessions, sends will automatically be made inactive if the required hardware or other resources are not available.



Display of inactive sends

To make a send inactive, do one of the following:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) on the Send assignment.
- Make the Track inactive. See "Making Tracks Inactive" on page 375.

To toggle sends in the same position (A–J) and assigned to the same path on all tracks active or inactive:

- Command-Control-Option click (Mac) or Control-Start-Alt click (Windows) a send button in the position you want to toggle.

To toggle sends in the same position (A–J) and assigned to the same path on all selected tracks active or inactive:

- Command-Control-Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Start-Alt-Shift-click (Windows) a send button in the position you want to toggle.

Moving or Copying Sends

Sends can be moved or copied to other tracks, or to other positions on the same track by dragging. Sends can be dragged to create new sends at the destination, or dragged onto existing send assignments to replace them.

Sends can be moved and copied to tracks with compatible send formats (mono, stereo, or other). Pro Tools alerts you when you try to move or copy a send to an incompatible destination. (For more information, see "Send Format and Track Compatibility" below).

To move a send:

- Drag the send name to a new position in the original track or in a different track.

To copy a send:

- Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) the send to a new position.

Moving or copying a send maintains all routing assignments, automation, level/pan/mute settings, and output format.

Send Format and Track Compatibility

Sends can only be copied to other tracks with a compatible send output format (mono, stereo, or other). In addition, the following conditions apply when moving or copying sends among tracks:

- When copying a stereo send from a mono track to a stereo track, Send pan automation (if any) will be dropped without warning.
- When copying a stereo send from a stereo track to a mono track, the left Send pan automation data is retained and the right side data is dropped. A warning dialog appears for you to confirm or cancel this destructive operation.
- When moving or copying a send and replacing an existing send, all automation on the existing send will be replaced. A warning dialog appears for you to confirm or cancel this destructive operation.

Copying Track Settings to Sends

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Sometimes you need send settings to match the settings in the track itself—for example, to provide a headphone mix based on the main mix. You can copy the current values or the entire automation playlist from selected tracks to any of their sends.

For more information, see "Copying Track Automation to Sends" on page 1588.

Linking Send Pan and Main Pan Controls

You can link pan controls of individual Sends to the Main pan controls of their corresponding tracks. This can help you quickly setup cue mix (headphone mix) or effects processing bus routing.



Follow Main Pan button

Linked Send pan controls appear in light gray.

To link a Send's Pan controls to the Main Pan controls of a track:

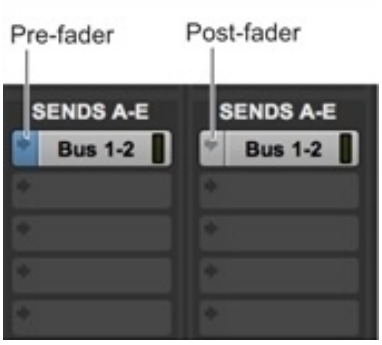
1. Click the Send Assignment button for the Send you want to link to open the Send window.
2. In the Send window, click the FMP (Follow Main Pan) button.

To change the default FMP (Follows Main Pan) setting for newly created Sends:

1. Choose **`Setup > Preferences`** and click **`Mixing`**.
2. Under Setup, select or deselect the **`Send Pans Default to Follow Main Pan`** option.

Pre/Post–Fader Indicator for Sends

In Sends view in both the Mix and Edit windows, the Sends selector changes color to indicate whether a Send is Pre-fader (blue) or Post-fader (no color). This lets you quickly see which sends are Pre-fader and which are Post-fader simply by glancing at the Sends view of tracks in the Mix or Edit window.



Pre/Post-fader indicators in Sends view, Mix window shown

AAX Render Plugin Bed Sends

Track sends to AAX Renderer beds (such as Audio Vivid or MPEG-H renderers) are auxiliary sends used to route audio from a track into internal buses that correspond to specific AAX Renderer bed inputs when active. AAX Bed assignments insert a Pro Tools mixer of a specified width in between the track output and send assignment and the renderer plugin. This lets you pre-pan the signal before the signal reaches the renderer plugin. The send level controls the amount of the track signal contributing to the bed.

⚠ **The 360RA Renderer does not support beds.**

Functional behavior:

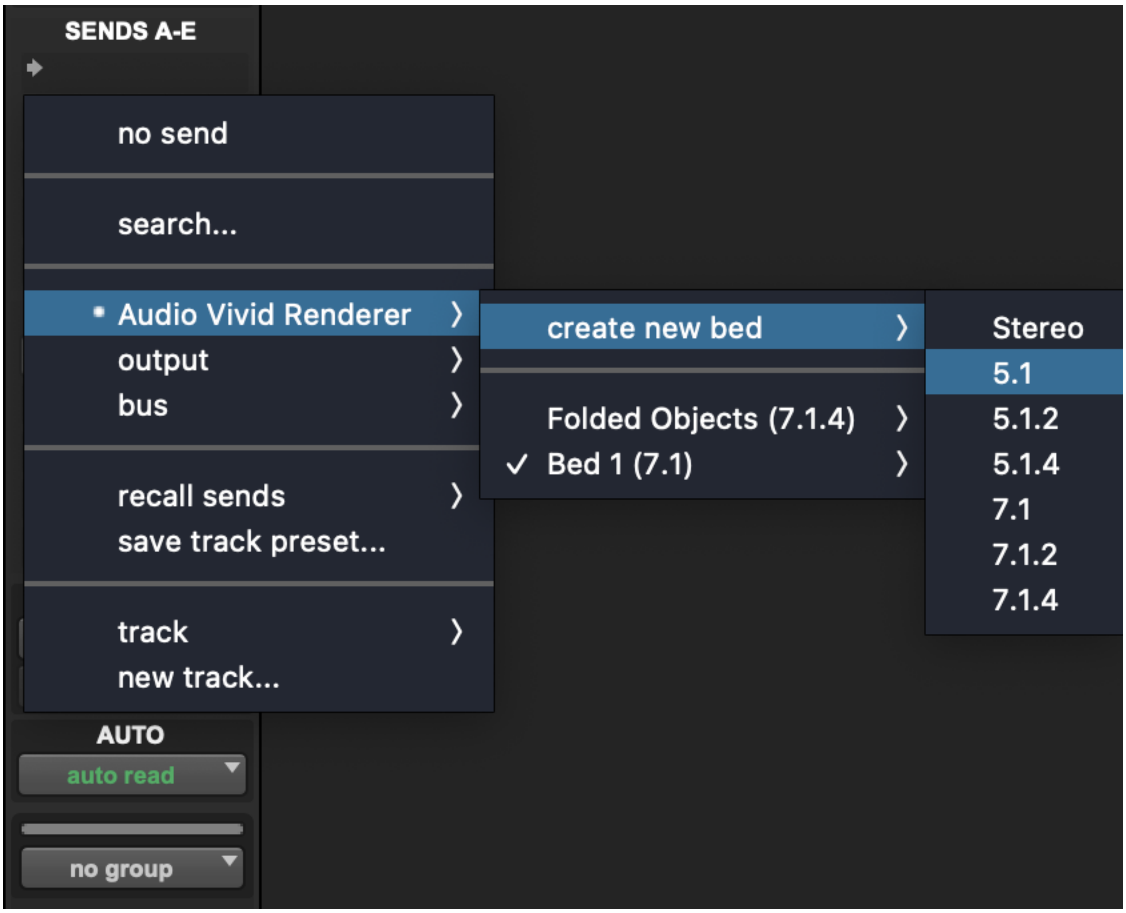
- Multiple tracks can contribute to the same bed using sends.
- Sends to AAX Beds cannot be sent to multiple destinations.
- Renderer plugin Beds do not support subpaths.
- Renderer plugin sends use the Pro Tools panner (not the Pro Tools Immersive Panner).

Bed Path Management

Bed paths can be created and managed directly from the Send Assignment menu when an AAX Renderer is active in the session. From this menu, you can:

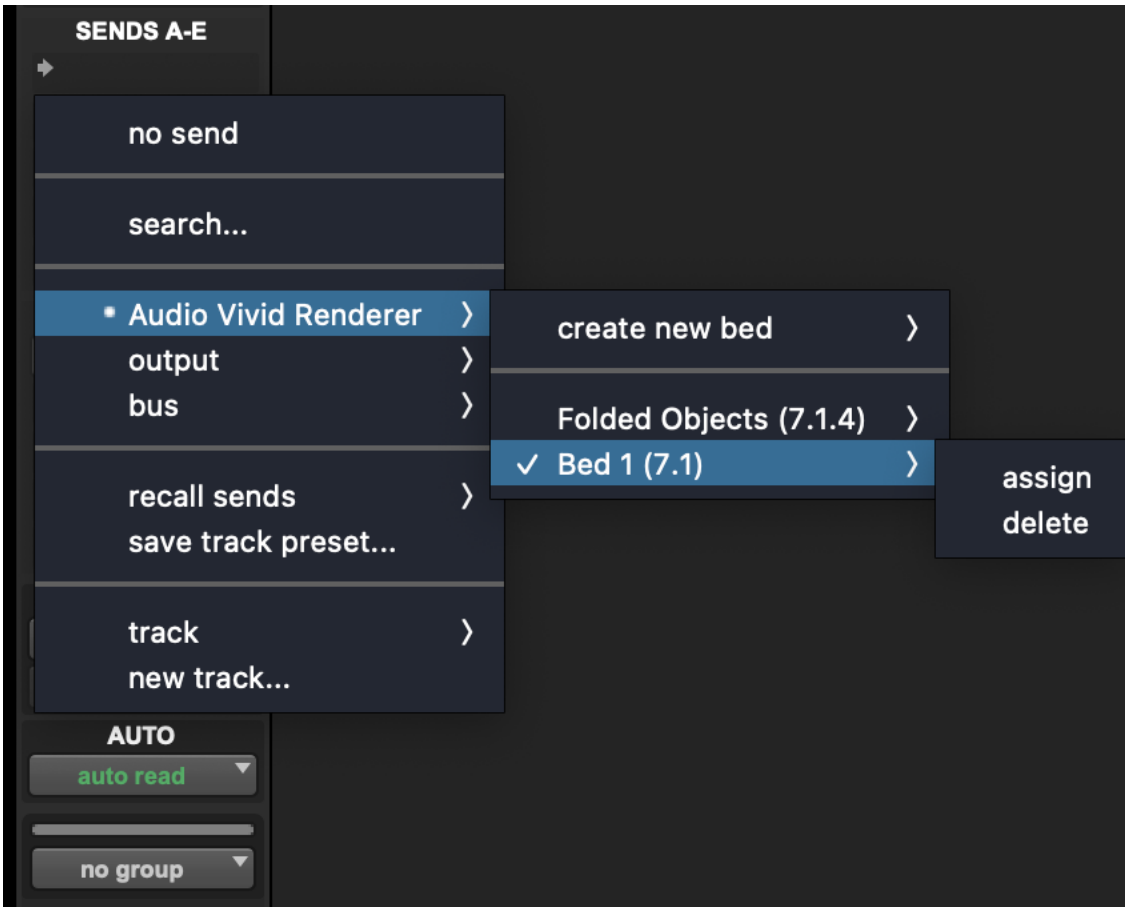
To create and assign a track to a bed:

- From the Send selector, choose **`Renderer > Create New Bed`** and select the channel width you want.



To reassign a track to a different bed:

- From the Send selector, choose **`Renderer > Bed <n> > Assign`**.



To delete an existing bed path:

- From the Send selector, choose **`Renderer > Bed <n> > Delete`**.

Format and Width Constraints

Sends to beds can only be created for channel widths supported by the destination mixer plugin (AAX Renderer). If the renderer does not support a given format, that send configuration will not be available.

Mixer and Panning Behavior

- AAX Bed send assignments always use the Pro Tools panner.
- The panner FMP (Follow main pan) setting is automatically disabled when the main output and send panners do not match.

Format Migration Behavior

When migrating a session to a different renderer or format while having sends assignments to AAX beds:

- If the bed format differs, a new bed is created in the destination format that most closely matches the channel width of the source bed and the send remains assigned to the new width.
- If the source session bed send width exceeds what the destination renderer supports, the send to bed is dropped.
- If the destination format does not support beds, the send to beds are dropped.

To show only tracks based on the track Input or Output assignment, Send assignment, or Hardware Insert assignment:

- Right-click the assignment selector and choose **Show Only Assignments To** for the bus you want. All other tracks are automatically hidden.

To restore all previously shown tracks:

- Right-click any assignment selector and choose **Restore Previously Shown Tracks**.

Bus Interrogation Options

Pro Tools lets you select or show tracks based on the track input or output assignment, send assignment, or hardware insert assignment. This can be useful for quickly identifying all tracks that use a specific input, internal bus, output bus, or hardware insert.

Right-click the assignment selector and choose from the following options:

Select Assignments To

This option selects all tracks that use a specific input, internal bus, output bus, or hardware insert.

Show Assignments To

This option shows all tracks, including hidden tracks, that use a specific input, internal bus, output bus, or hardware insert. All other tracks remain shown as well.

Show Only Assignments To

This option shows only those tracks that use a specific input, internal bus, output bus, or hardware insert. All other tracks are automatically hidden.

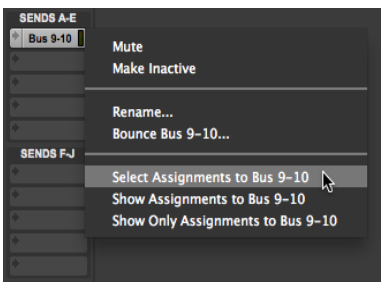
Restore Previously Shown Tracks

This option restores the previous state of shown and hidden tracks. This option is only available if tracks have been hidden by using the **Show Only Assignments To** option.

Press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while Right-clicking and selecting any of the Bus Interrogation commands to apply the command to all related paths and sub-paths. For example, Press Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while Right-clicking an output selector and choosing Show Only Assignments To Bus 1. If Bus 1 is a sub-path of Bus 1–2, all tracks using path Bus 1–2, and all tracks using sub-paths Bus 1 and Bus 2 are shown, and all other tracks are hidden.

To select tracks based on the track Input or Output assignment, Send assignment, or Hardware Insert assignment:

- Right-click the assignment selector and choose **Select Assignments To** for the bus you want.



Choosing the Select Assignments To Bus 9–10 option

To show all tracks based on the track Input or Output assignment, Send assignment, or Hardware Insert assignment:

- Right-click the assignment selector and choose **Show Assignments To** for the bus you want. Any hidden tracks with the corresponding assignment are shown.

To show only tracks based on the track Input or Output assignment, Send assignment, or Hardware Insert assignment:

- Right-click the assignment selector and choose **Show Only Assignments To** for the bus you want. All other tracks are automatically hidden.

To restore all previously shown tracks:

- Right-click any assignment selector and choose **Restore Previously Shown Tracks**.

Output Windows for Tracks and Sends

Track Output and Send windows provide standard Pro Tools track, send, Target, and other controls. Track outputs and sends can be opened for display and editing in dedicated windows.

- Track Output windows provide track fader, pan, automation, solo, and mute controls.
- Send windows provide send level, pan, automation, and mute controls.
- Standard Output and Send window controls provide additional routing, assignment, and display settings.

To open a track Output window:

- Click the Output Window button in the channel strip.



Opening a track Output window

To open a Send window:

- Click the Send Assignment button in the Mix or Edit window.



Opening a Send window

To view a different track Output or Send window:

- Click an Output Window button, or Send Assignment button, in the Mix or Edit window.

  If a similar Output window was already open with a highlighted Target icon (red, lit), the newly selected send will open in its place.

Opening Multiple Output Windows

Multiple Track Output and Send windows can be displayed simultaneously using either of the following methods.

To open additional Track Output or Send windows:

- Shift-click any Track Output Window button or Send Assignment button.

To set a window to remain open when opening additional Track Output or Send windows:

- Make sure the Target is disabled.



Multiple Send windows open

Track or Send Fader, Pan Controls, and Solo, Mute, and Automation Controls

Output windows provide the associated track's Volume fader, Pan controls, Solo and Mute switches, and Automation Mode selector. Use these to adjust or automate the controls of the Output window.

Panner Linking

Stereo outputs provide two panning controls, one for each side of the left/right pair. Multichannel outputs provide a multichannel panner.

The Output window provides controls to link channels for precise panning of stereo and multichannel tracks.

In the linked state, all sides match changes to any other side's Pan control. This is Absolute Link mode. To mirror panning changes, see "Inverse Linked Panning" on the next page.

When unlinked, Pan controls are completely independent of each other.



Unlinked (left), linked (middle), front inverse linked (right) Send windows

To enable linking:

- Enable the Link icon.

To unlink an output for independent panning:

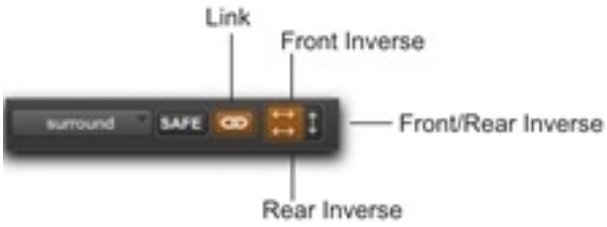
- Deselect the Link icon.

Inverse Linked Panning

When linked and set to Inverse mode, panning moves are inverted or reversed in the other channels.

Inverse panning reflects one side's location and direction in the other side. For example, when enabled for Front Inverse, if you pan one side of a stereo track output from right to left, the other side will exactly mirror that movement and pan left to right.

Front Inverse linking is available on all systems. Rear Inverse, and Front/Rear Inverse linking are available on Pro Tools HD systems only, and only appear as options on multichannel plugins and panners/output windows.



Link and Inverse selectors (multichannel track)

To enable inverse linking:

1. Enable the Link icon.
2. Select an Inverse mode.

Standard Selector Controls in Output Windows

All Output windows provide standard selectors for path, automation, and other controls in the top area of the window (the Output Editor area).



Output window standard controls



Send window standard controls

Track Selector

Provides access to any audio track, Auxiliary Input, or Master Fader in the session.

Output View Selector

Provides access to other outputs (track and send) in the track, if any, displaying the selected output in the current window.

Send View Selector (Send Window Only)

Provides access to other sends on the track.

Output Path Selector

Allows you to assign the Output path for the current track or send.

Pre/Post Fader Button (Send Window Only)

Determines whether the send is pre- or post-fader.

FMP (Follow Main Pan) (Send Window Only)

Determines whether or not panning for the send follows the panning settings of the track. When the FMP button is enabled, the Panning controls in the Send window become unavailable and the panning for the send is determined by the panning settings for the track.

Automation Safe

Protects track and send level, pan, and other controls from automation overwrites by placing them in Automation Safe mode. See "Automation" on page 1569 for more information.

Inverse Pan

Reflects one side's panning location and direction in the other side (for example, left- and right-channel Pan controls).

Link and Unlink

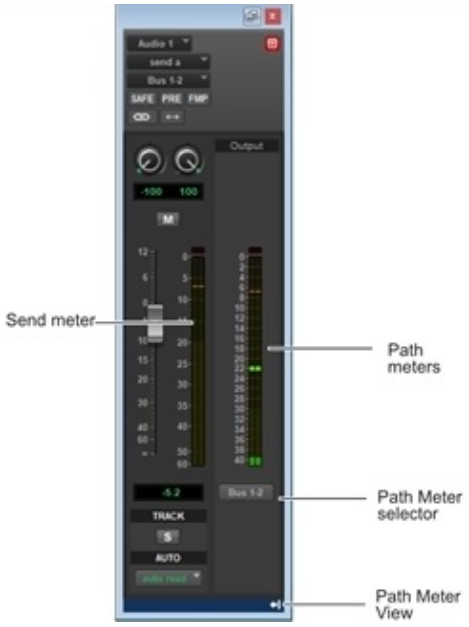
Lets you link and unlink left and right (or other) outputs in stereo (or multichannel). Unlinked mode provides discrete adjustment of individual sides, or channels. When linked, all changes affect all channels. See "Panner Linking" on page 1487.

Target

Identifies the target of plugin settings commands. Also sets the current window for display of Output windows.

Path Meter View

Opens the path Meter View. These meters display levels of the selected path (not the levels of the track or send).



Path Meter View in a Send window

Output Meters

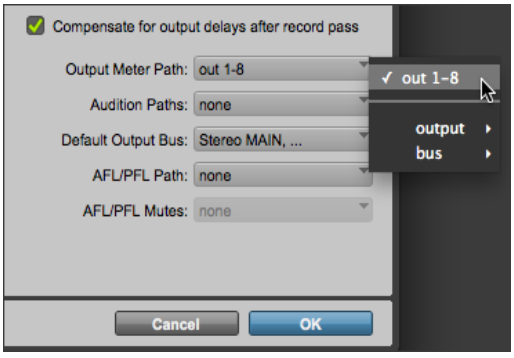
Pro Tools provides Output meters in the Transport window and Edit window that display the monitoring levels for signals routed to the physical outputs on your audio interfaces from your session or to internal buses in the session. The top LED is red and indicates clipping at the converters on your audio interface (DAC) on the corresponding channels or on internal buses.

For Pro Tools Ultimate or Studio systems using greater than stereo output paths, up to 8 meters are shown. The number of Output meters displayed is determined by the selected Output paths on tracks. The meters are ordered according to the channel order of the Output paths as configured in the I/O Setup.

The audio paths monitored in the Output meters are determined by the **Output Meter Path** setting in the Output page of the I/O Setup.

To set the Output Meter Paths:

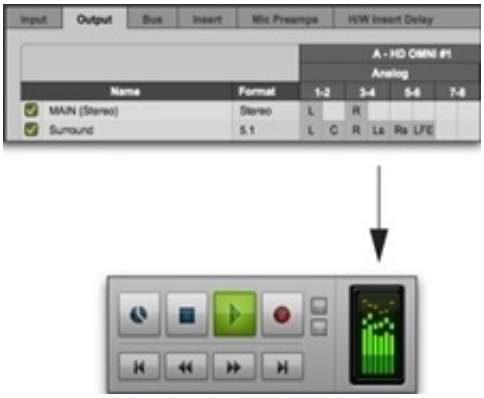
1. Choose **Setup > I/O Setup**.
2. Select the **Output** tab.
3. From the Output Meter Path selector, select the desired output path for metering.



Selecting the Output Meter Path in the I/O Setup

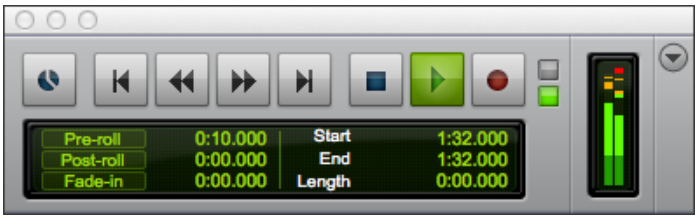
4. Click **OK**.

The channel order is determined by the configuration of the output paths in the I/O setup.



Output Meters channel order determined by the Output configuration in the I/O Setup

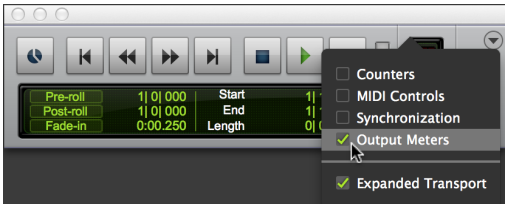
For all Pro Tools systems using stereo output paths, stereo meters are shown (L/R).



Stereo Output Meters in the Transport window

To show (or hide) Output Meters in the Edit window transport or in the Transport window:

- From the Edit window or Transport window menu, select (or deselect) **`Output Meter`**.



Selecting the Output Meters option in the Transport Window menu

Signal Routing for Monitoring and Submixing

The bussing and mixing features in Pro Tools support many possibilities for submixing and monitoring, including the ability to:

- Monitor and mix playback of audio tracks with audio inputs or with MIDI instruments
- Bus submixes for effects processing or monitoring (including headphone or “cue” mixes)
- Mix submixes with Master Faders

Monitoring and Mixing Audio with Auxiliary Input Tracks

Use Auxiliary Input tracks to monitor and mix audio from external sources, such as MIDI instruments, tape, or microphone inputs, in a Pro Tools mix.

To use an Auxiliary Input track to monitor and mix external audio sources:

1. Connect the audio outputs of your audio source (such as a MIDI synthesizer or tape output) to available inputs on your Pro Tools audio interface.
2. If necessary, configure the I/O Setup dialog for the input paths you plan to use (see "I/O Setup" on page 55).
3. Use an existing or create a new Auxiliary Input track with a channel format that corresponds to the channel format of your audio source (mono, stereo, or multichannel).
4. Set the input of the Auxiliary Input track to the corresponding input path.
5. Assign the track output to the appropriate path or paths for monitoring.
6. Adjust the Auxiliary Input fader to mix the audio input.

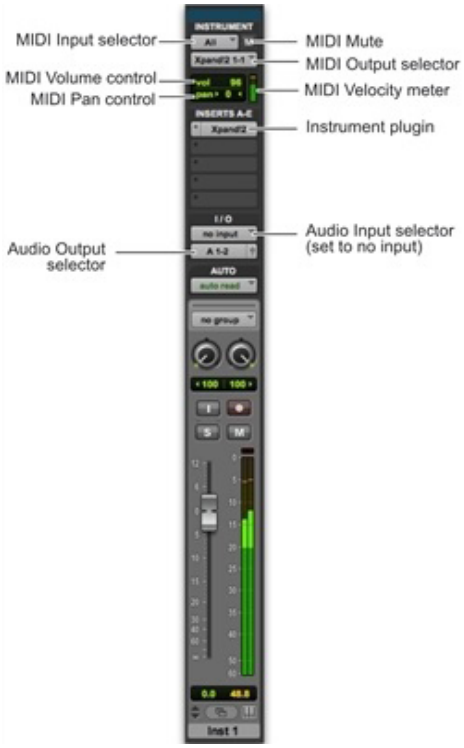
Monitoring and Mixing Audio with Instrument Tracks

Use Instrument tracks to monitor and mix audio from instrument plugins or external MIDI instruments in a Pro Tools mix.

To use an Instrument track to monitor and mix the output of an instrument plugin:

1. Use an existing or create a new Instrument track.
2. Choose **`View > Mix Window > Instruments`** to show the MIDI controls of the Instrument track.
3. Select an instrument plugin from the first Insert selector on the Instrument track (such as Xpand^2).
4. The virtual MIDI node (port) for the instrument plugin should be automatically selected for the Instrument track's MIDI Output. If not, select the MIDI channel and corresponding port for the instrument plugin from the MIDI Output selector.
5. Assign the track audio output to the appropriate path or paths for monitoring.
6. Adjust the Instrument track fader to mix the audio input.
7. If you are controlling the Instrument plugin from the Instrument track, you can also mix using the MIDI Volume and Pan controls in the Instrument View.

For information on configuring audio and MIDI signal routing for controlling and monitoring ReWire client applications, see the Audio Plugins Guide.



Instrument track configured to control and monitor an instrument plugin (Xpand^2 shown)

To use an Instrument track to monitor and mix audio from an external MIDI instrument:

1. Connect the audio outputs of your external MIDI instrument (such as a MIDI synthesizer) to available inputs on your Pro Tools audio interface.
2. If necessary, configure the I/O Setup dialog for the input paths you plan to use (see "I/O Setup" on page 55).
3. Connect the MIDI input and output of your external MIDI instrument to available MIDI input and output ports on your MIDI interface.
4. If necessary, configure the MIDI Studio Setup (**`Setup > MIDI > MIDI Studio`**).
5. Use an existing or create a new Instrument track with a channel format that corresponds to the channel format of your audio source (mono, stereo, or multichannel).
6. Choose **`View > Mix Window > Instruments`** to show the MIDI controls of the Instrument track.
7. Set the audio input of the Instrument track to the corresponding input path.
8. In the Instrument track's Instrument View, set the MIDI output to the corresponding MIDI port connected to the MIDI input of your external MIDI instrument.
9. Assign the track output to the appropriate path or paths for monitoring.



Instrument track configured to control and monitor an external MIDI instrument (K2600 shown)

10. Adjust the Instrument track fader to mix the audio input.
11. If you are controlling the external MIDI instrument from the Instrument track, you can also mix using the MIDI Volume and Pan controls in the Instrument View.

To monitor and mix audio from an Instrument plugin with multiple audio outputs:

1. Use an existing or create a new Instrument track.
2. Choose **`View > Mix Window > Instruments`** to show the MIDI controls of the Instrument track.
3. Select a multi-output instrument plugin from the first Insert selector on the Instrument track (such as Xpand!^{2}).
4. The virtual MIDI node (port) for the instrument plugin should be automatically selected for the Instrument track's MIDI Output. If not, select the MIDI channel and corresponding port for the instrument plugin.
5. In the plugin window, assign the individual audio outputs of the plugin.
6. Create an Auxiliary Input track for each output of the plugin. Make sure the channel format of the Auxiliary Inputs corresponds to the channel format of the plugin outputs (mono, stereo, or multichannel).
7. Set the inputs of the Auxiliary Input tracks to receive the individual outputs of the plugin.
8. Assign the outputs of the Auxiliary Input tracks to the appropriate path or paths for monitoring.

9. Adjust the Auxiliary Input faders to mix the individual outputs of the plugin.



Instrument plugin with multiple outputs routed to Auxiliary Input tracks

Creating a Submix

A submix is created by routing multiple audio sources to a common bus or output path. This “submixes” the sources to a single path that can be returned to an Auxiliary Input, where the submix can be processed with plugins or external effects processors.

Audio is routed to a submix by assigning any combination of sends and track output to available bus or output paths.

When routing mono signals with internal mix buses, be sure to use mono buses rather than splitting stereo buses. Since Pro Tools keeps stereo buses phase aligned, splitting stereo buses can result in inaccurate delay compensation.

Submixing with Track Outputs or Sends

You can use both track outputs and sends to route audio for submixing, depending on whether you want a *discrete* or *send and return* submix.

Discrete Submix Output

Pro Tools lets you discretely route source audio through a submix. This is preferred for dither or other mastering processing, where you do not want unprocessed audio heard in addition to the processed signals. Use track outputs (not sends) to assign tracks to a bus path for discrete submixing. In this arrangement, the balance of processed and unprocessed signal is controlled by plugin wet/dry settings.

To create a discrete submix:

1. Set the output of the tracks you want to include in the submix to a stereo bus path.
2. Pan each track.
3. Choose **Track > New**.
4. Specify the track type (**Aux Input**) and format (**stereo**), then click **Create**.
5. Set the input of the Auxiliary Input to the same bus path to which you assigned all contributing tracks.
6. Set the output of the Auxiliary Input track to your main stereo mix outputs (typically, outputs 1–2).
7. Set the Auxiliary Input Track level.
8. To process the submix, assign a plugin or hardware insert on the Auxiliary Input.
9. Set the controls of the plugin. The plugin Bypass and Wet/Dry controls (if available) determine the amount of effect heard.

The contributing track faders control the balance within the submix. The Auxiliary Input track controls the output levels of all tracks routed to it.

You can apply mix automation to the volume, pan, mute, and send level, send pan, and send mute controls of the Auxiliary Input.

You can also bounce a submix to disk to free up the voices for use by other tracks. See "Mixdown" on page 1638 for more information.

Send and Return Submixing for Effects Processing

When you are submixing for reverb, delay, and similar effects processing, use sends to achieve traditional send/return bussing. You can use a real-time plugin or a hardware insert as a shared resource for all tracks included in a submix. The wet/dry balance in the mix can be controlled using the track faders (dry level) and Auxiliary Input fader (effect return, or wet, level).



See "Plugin and Hardware Inserts" on page 1512 for more information.

To create an effects return submix with a plugin or hardware insert:

1. Assign each track's main output to your main mix outputs.
2. On the source tracks, assign a send (mono or stereo) and select a mono or stereo bus path from the Send selector. Configure the sends for pre- or post-fader, as needed.
3. Choose **Track > New**.
4. Specify the track type (**Aux Input**) and format (**stereo**), then click **Create**.
5. From the Auxiliary Input track's Input Path selector, select the send bus path.
6. Solo safe the track so that if you solo another track that uses the effects send, you won't mute the effects return (see "Solo Safe Mode" on page 373).
7. Assign a plugin or hardware insert on the Auxiliary Input.
8. Set the effect to "100% wet," and set any other controls.
9. From the Auxiliary Input track's Output Path selector, select an output path (main outputs).

   Adjust the individual track faders to balance the dry (unprocessed) tracks. With the send set to pre-fader, the amount of effect is controlled by the level of the Send Level fader or the Auxiliary Input

Volume fader. If the send is post-fader, the Send Level fader follows volume level.



Send/return setup for a plugin or hardware insert

Send and Return Submixes with External Devices

To create an effects return submix with an external device:

1. Assign each track's main output to your main mix outputs.
2. Assign a send (mono or stereo) and set the send destinations on the source tracks to the output path connected to the external device. Configure the sends for pre- or post-fader, as needed.
3. Choose **`Track > New`**.
4. Specify the track type (Aux Input) and format (stereo or mono), then click **`Create`**.
5. From the Auxiliary Input track's Input Path selector, select the input path connected to the external device.
6. From the Auxiliary Input track's Output Path selector, select an output path (main outputs).
7. Adjust the individual track faders to balance the dry (unprocessed) tracks.

   The amount of effect is controlled by the level of the Send Level fader or the Auxiliary Input Volume

fader.



Send/return setup for an external device

Creating Monitor Submixes

Route track sends to one or more Auxiliary Input tracks to monitor submixes in a studio environment. You can monitor the main mix in the control room on one or more pairs of audio outputs while you route a submix to another pair of audio outputs for a headphone or "cue" mix for the "talent." For example, you may want to provide the bassist with a submix of the drums and their own track for overdubbing a new bass part.

With cue mixes, when recording overdubs it is recommended that there be no inserts (or at least only inserts with very low delays) on the record track to avoid any unnecessary latency in the monitoring signal path.

To create a monitor submix:

1. Assign each track's main output to your main mix outputs.
2. Assign a send (mono or stereo) and set the send destinations on the source tracks to the output path connected to the external device. Configure the sends for pre- or post-fader, as needed.
3. Choose **`Track > New`**.
4. Specify the track type (**`Aux Input`**) and format (**`stereo`** or **`mono`**), then click **`Create`**.
5. From the Auxiliary Input track's Output Path selector, select the output path (not the main outputs) for monitoring the mix.

Adjust the Auxiliary Input track fader to control the volume for the monitor mix.



Drum submix for monitoring

Creating a Master Send Level Control

A Master Fader can control the overall level of bus and output paths.

To create a Master send level control:

1. Choose **`Track > New`**.
2. Specify the track type (**`Master Fader`**), and mono, stereo, or any of the supported multichannel formats for surround mixing.
3. Click **`Create`**.
4. Do one of the following:

- Set the output of the Master Fader to the same path that you are using to send to an Auxiliary Input track.
- Set the output of the Master Fader to match the path that you have chosen for your effects send.

You can then adjust send levels to balance the source tracks, and use the Master Fader as a master level control for the entire submix.

Soloing Tracks in a Submix

Soloing any tracks implicitly mutes all other tracks, including Auxiliary Inputs. Solo-safing an Auxiliary Input prevents this implicit muting and lets the Auxiliary Input continue to pass audio when its source tracks are soloed.

To solo safe an Auxiliary Input:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Solo button on the Auxiliary Input track.

To solo an individual track that is part of a group:

- Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the Solo button.

Generating Stereo Output from a Mono Send/Return

You can use an Auxiliary Input to generate a stereo output from a mono send. Set the send destination to a mono Auxiliary Input track and place a mono to stereo plugin on the Auxiliary Input. The output of the Auxiliary Input becomes stereo.

To create a “stereo” effect from a mono source, you must use reverb, delay, or other time domain effects.

Delay Compensation

Pro Tools provides automatic Delay Compensation for managing DSP and host-based delays from plugin inserts, and mixer routing (bussing and sends). With Delay Compensation enabled, Pro Tools maintains phase coherent time alignment between tracks that have plugins with differing delays, tracks with different mixing paths, tracks that are split off and recombined within the mixer, and tracks with hardware inserts.

When Delay Compensation is enabled, Pro Tools allocates 16,383 samples at 44.1/48 kHz, 32,767 samples at 88.2/96 kHz, or 65,534 samples at 176.4/192 kHz of Delay Compensation for each mixer channel.

To maintain phase coherent time alignment, Delay Compensation should always be enabled during playback and mixing. Delay Compensation should also be used in most recording situations.

Enabling Delay Compensation

To enable Delay Compensation:

- Select **`Options > Delay Compensation`**.

  When Delay Compensation is enabled, the Delay Compensation status indicator in the Edit Window Toolbar is displayed.



Delay Compensation indicator

⚠ **The Delay Compensation indicator in the Edit window turns red if you have any delays in the session that exceeds the maximum available delay compensation (see "Delay that Exceeds the Compensation Limit" on page 1504). Red can also indicate that you have created a feedback loop that cannot be compensated for. For example, if the output of a track is routed to the input of the same track. Mouse over the Delay Compensation indicator in the Edit window to see if the tooltip identifies this as a problem.**

The Delay Compensation View for tracks can be displayed in the Mix Window (see "Delay Compensation View" below).

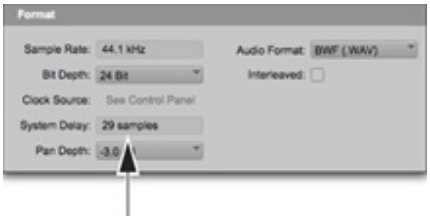
Delay Compensation Time Mode

Delay values can be specified in either samples or milliseconds, as selected with the **`Delay Compensation Time Mode`** setting in the Mixing Preferences page.

System Delay

Pro Tools adds the exact amount of delay to each track necessary to make that particular track's delay equal to the total System Delay. The total system delay is the longest delay reported on a track, plus any additional delay caused by mixer routing.

The System Delay is shown in the Session Setup window (**`Session > Setup`**). Reference the reported System Delay to monitor whether or not you are close to exceeding the Delay Compensation limit.

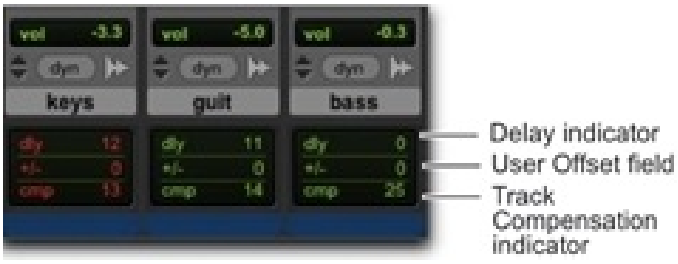


System Delay in Session Setup window

Pro Tools Ultimate accounts for converter delays when using Automatic Delay Compensation. However, when using non-HD hardware, System Delay only displays internal delay and does not take into account any latency incurred by the analog-to-digital (ADC) or digital-to-analog (DAC) converters in your audio interface.

Delay Compensation View

The Delay Compensation View displays the total amount of plugin and hardware insert delay (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only), and the total amount of delay that Pro Tools applies to each track. You can also apply an offset for track delay on a track-by-track basis. The Delay Compensation View can be shown or hidden in the Mix Window.



Delay Compensation View

Delay Compensation view only shows the insert delay for each track. To view the complete system delay, including mixer delays, check the System Delay in the Session Setup window (see "System Delay" on the previous page).

To view Delay Compensation information:

- Select **View > Mix Window > Delay Compensation.**

Metering Follows Delay Compensation Values

Pro Tools lets you set meters to follow delay compensation values. Meters coming directly from hardware inputs can be controlled independently from meters for internal buses.

To set meters to follow Delay Compensation values:

1. Right-click the **Dly** indicator in the Edit window toolbar.
2. Select any of the following:
   - **Meters > Bus.**
   - **Meters > Input.**



Dly indicator right-click menu

When enabled, the timing of the meter is delayed to match presentation time (when the audio arrives at the hardware output). When disabled, the meters react immediately.

Delay Compensation View Indicators and Field

Delay (dly) Indicator

The Delay (dly) indicator reports the total plugin and hardware insert delay on the track. The Delay indicator's report to Pro Tools Delay Compensation Engine can be bypassed when Delay Compensation is enabled. This is useful for manually time-aligning a track when the total delay on a track exceeds the Delay Compensation limit. See "Delay that Exceeds the Compensation Limit" on page 1504.

The display color indicates reported track delay, as follows:

Green

Indicates that track delay reporting is enabled and the track does not exceed the available amount of Delay Compensation.

Orange

Indicates that this is the track reporting the longest plugin and hardware insert delay in the session.

Red

Indicates that the amount of plugin and hardware insert delay on the track exceeds the available amount of Delay Compensation (see "Delay that Exceeds the Compensation Limit" on page 1504).

Gray

Track delay report is bypassed.

User Offset (+/–) Field

This field lets you adjust track delays manually while Delay Compensation is enabled. The User Offset is added to or subtracted from the amount of delay applied by Track Compensation.

The User Offset is useful for the following cases:

- For manually time-aligning a track if a plugin is incorrectly reporting its delay.
- For adjusting the timing "feel" of a track.

To change track delay using the User Offset field:

1. In the Delay Compensation View, click in the User Offset edit field.
2. To set your delay value (in samples or milliseconds depending on your current preferences), do one of the following:
   - Enter a positive number (with or without the "+" modifier) for a positive delay (later in time) or negative number (with the "–" modifier) for a negative delay (earlier in time).
   - Drag in the User Offset field to scroll to a new value. For finer resolution, Command-drag (Mac) Control-drag (Windows).
   - Press the Up and Down Arrow keys to increase or decrease the numerical values.
3. Press Enter.

To bypass the user delay:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Start-Control-click (Windows) the User Offset field. The user-defined delay appears grayed out and does not apply to the track.

Track Compensation (cmp) Indicator

This indicator shows the amount of Delay Compensation Pro Tools applies to each track.

The display color indicates the amount of Delay Compensation applied, as follows:

Green

Track compensation is enabled and the track does not exceed the Delay Compensation limit. The amount of Delay Compensation shown in the indicator is applied to the track.

Blue (Audio Tracks Only)

Indicates that Delay Compensation is force-enabled on the track. When the track is record-enabled or TrackInput-enabled, Delay Compensation is not suspended and remains enabled (see "Overriding Low Latency Monitoring During Recording" on page 1505).

Red

Indicates that the track delay exceeds the available amount of Delay Compensation and no Delay Compensation is applied to the track (see "Delay that Exceeds the Compensation Limit" on the next page).

Gray

Indicates that Delay Compensation for the track is bypassed and no delay is applied to the track.

Delay Compensation for Side-Chains

Pro Tools lets you automatically compensate for signal delays in side-chain processing. In some cases, you may want to disable automatic delay compensation for side-chains (such as for sessions created on previous versions of Pro Tools where you have manually compensated for side-chain delays).

To enable (or disable) automatic delay compensation for side-chains:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Mixing** tab.
3. Select (or deselect) the **Compensate Side Chains** option.
4. Click **OK**.

Delay Compensation for Hardware Inputs

Pro Tools lets you automatically compensate for signal delays in hardware inputs. In some cases, you may want to disable automatic delay compensation for hardware inputs (such as for sessions created on previous versions of Pro Tools where you have manually compensated for delays).

To enable (or disable) automatic delay compensation for hardware inputs:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Mixing** tab.
3. Select (or deselect) the **Compensate HW Inputs** option.
4. Click **OK**.

Delay that Exceeds the Compensation Limit

When the total delay on a track exceeds the total available amount of available Delay Compensation (selected in the Playback Engine dialog), no Delay Compensation is applied on that track. Any audio on that track will no longer be properly time-aligned and will be out of phase. Both the Delay indicator and Track Compensation indicator turn red to show that the track delay exceeds the Delay Compensation limit. The maximum available Delay Compensation is applied to all other tracks.

However, you can manually compensate for delay on tracks that exceed the Delay Compensation limit.

To compensate for delay that exceeds the compensation limit:

1. Bypass the reported delay for the track by doing one of the following:
   - Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Delay indicator.
   - Right-click the Delay indicator and select **Disable Plugin Delay**.

   The track information is grayed out once it is bypassed.
2. Manually nudge any audio data on the track earlier by the amount of delay reported in the track's Delay indicator.

Use the Time Adjuster plugins to manually offset tracks in real-time. For more information, see the Audio Plugins Guide.

Low Latency Monitoring During Recording

When an audio track is armed for recording (record-enabled), TrackInput-enabled, DestructivePunch-enabled, or punched in, the track's Delay Compensation is automatically suspended (and the Track Compensation indicator displays 0). This reduces monitoring latency on those track outputs. When the track is played back (with both record-enable and TrackInput disabled) it is correctly time-aligned with the other delay-compensated tracks.

Tracks that are not record-enabled still apply Delay Compensation. Pro Tools automatically compensates for any timing discrepancies between the recorded material and the delay-compensated mix.

For more information about Low Latency Monitoring with host-processing only Pro Tools systems, see "Low Latency Monitoring" on page 785.

Overriding Low Latency Monitoring During Recording

You can override Low Latency Monitoring During Recording on record-enabled tracks, but this may introduce latency in the signal path corresponding to the amount of Delay Compensation. This latency may be acceptable depending on the recording source. For example, in certain "non-performance" workflows, overriding Low Latency Monitoring During Recording ensures that delay compensation is applied consistently regardless of whether a track is record- or punch-enabled, or whether Pro Tools is recording or playing back.

In certain dubbing workflows you may want to cascade bus recordings to multiple tracks. In these cases, be sure to override Auto Low Latency on all cascaded Record or InputMonitor tracks. Also, if you are punch recording, be sure to not use Native plugins on any Record or InputMonitor–enabled tracks or you will hear an audible click as any Native plugins on those tracks are automatically bypassed or un-bypassed when punching in and out.

To override Low Latency Monitoring During Recording on specific record tracks:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Track Compensation indicator. Delay Compensations is applied to the track and the Track Compensation indicator displays in blue.
  - *Command-Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Start-Shift-click (Windows) the Track Compensation indicator to override Low Latency Monitoring for all selected tracks.*
  - *Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) the Track Compensation indicator to override Low Latency Monitoring for all tracks.*

Delay Compensation on Auxiliary Inputs

Delay Compensation on Auxiliary Inputs can be bypassed to let you monitor outside sources (such as the audio tracks of a controlled video deck) with minimal latency, while still reporting the track's delay.

To bypass an Auxiliary Input's Delay Compensation:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Start-Control-click (Windows) the Track Compensation indicator. The reported track delay will be zero, and will appear grayed out.

Delay Compensation for MIDI

Pro Tools automatically maintains time alignment between recorded MIDI events and delay compensated playback.

When Delay Compensation is enabled, a MIDI event that is recorded to sound "in time" with delay-compensated material actually is recorded late by the length of total delay in effect. To compensate, MIDI events are shifted back in time by the total session delay following each MIDI recording pass. MIDI playback after a record pass with Delay Compensation enabled accounts for the low latency recording path and maintains phase coherent time alignment with MIDI playback.

When any Instrument or MIDI track is record enabled, all Instrument and Auxiliary Input tracks with Instrument plugin inserts that are configured to receive MIDI in Pro Tools are set to low-latency mode. In this case, the Delay Compensation indicators for those tracks display 0.

Low-Latency Recording with Virtual MIDI Instruments and Delay Compensation

When a MIDI or Instrument track that is routing MIDI data to an instrument plugin is record-enabled, Pro Tools automatically suspends Delay Compensation through the main outputs of the audio track, Auxiliary Input, or Instrument track on which the instrument plugin is *inserted*. This allows for latency-free monitoring of the instrument plugin during recording.

Delay Compensation for Instrument plugins works only when all MIDI and audio connections take place inside Pro Tools. While Pro Tools does not suspend Delay Compensation when you are using ReWire to connect software synthesizers and samplers in other ReWire client applications (such as Reason), Pro Tools cannot account for any latency within the ReWire client itself.

MIDI and Audio Processing Plugins

Some audio processing plugins (such as Bruno and Reso) and many instrument plugins let you process audio while allowing MIDI data to control processing parameters. When you record enable a MIDI or Instrument track that is controlling an audio processing plugin, the track the plugin is inserted on will go into low-latency mode, effectively making the processed audio play early. The steps to prevent this and keep audio time-aligned depend on the type of track on which the plugin resides.

To keep audio time-aligned when recording using a MIDI controlled plugin on an audio track:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Start-Control-click (Windows) the Track Compensation indicator for the audio track to apply Delay Compensation.

To keep audio time-aligned when recording using a MIDI controlled plugin on an Auxiliary Input:

1. Command-Control-click (Mac) or Start-Control-click (Windows) the Track Compensation indicator for the Auxiliary Input to bypass Delay Compensation.
2. Enter the total system delay into the User Offset field.

Configuring Cue Mixes with Delay Compensation

If you already have a Pro Tools session that uses various plugin inserts and mixer routing, you will most likely want to have **Delay Compensation** enabled. However, if you want to record overdubs with a recording artist, "the talent," you will need to configure monitoring mixes (headphone or "cue" mixes).

Use sends to bus cue mixes to audio output paths for headphone monitoring by the talent. In addition to the main mix, which will monitor in the control room, route track sends to one or more additional audio output paths tracks for cue mix monitoring. Using sends lets you configure different mixes from the main mix for cue mix monitoring. For example, when recording a guitarist, they may want to hear themselves more in the cue mix than you will want to hear in the main mix.

Example configuration using sends for cue mixes:

1. Assign each track's main output to your main mix outputs.
2. Assign a send (mono or stereo) for each track and set the send outputs to output paths 3 and 4 on your audio interface.
3. Enable the FMP (Follow Main Pan) button on all of the sends so that the cue mix has the same panning as the main mix.
4. Set all of the sends to unity and to post-fader. This lets you use the same mix for the talent, but also lets you boost (or attenuate) the level of the talent's signal in the cue mix by adjusting the send level as needed.
5. Choose **Track > New**.
6. Specify the track type (**Master Fader**) and format (**stereo**), then click **Create**.
7. From the Master Fader track's Output Path selector, select output paths 3 and 4 for monitoring the mix.
8. Adjust the Master Fader track's fader to control the overall volume for the cue mix.

With Delay Compensation enabled, it is recommended that you do not use any inserts on any Auxiliary Input or Master Fader tracks you may be using to control the cue mix volume. Also, you should avoid using inserts on any record tracks. (Some low latency inserts may be acceptable depending on the talent's preference.)

9. Repeat the preceding steps for additional cue mixes on additional outputs on your audio interface as necessary.

Setting a Hardware Insert Delay Offset

You can manually compensate for the delay (latency) of any external hardware devices (such as an effects unit) used in your session, you can set the amount of Hardware Insert Delay Compensation (in milliseconds) for each external device in the I/O Setup. These times will be used by the Delay Compensation Engine to time-align input paths when the hardware insert is in use and Delay Compensation is enabled

To set an insert delay offset:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click the **H/W Insert Delay** tab.
3. Type a value, in milliseconds, in the field corresponding with the input where the hardware insert is connected.

Insert delay offsets only have an effect when the I/O is used for hardware inserts.

Determining Your Hardware's Insert Delay

Refer to the documentation for your external hardware to see if it identifies the hardware latency, or use the following procedure in Pro Tools to determine the latency for hardware inserts.

To determine your hardware's insert delay:

1. Ensure that **Automatic Delay Compensation** is enabled (**Options > Delay Compensation**).
2. Change your session's Main Time Scale to Min:Sec.
3. Create two tracks.
4. Place a short tone (or other sound with a definitive beginning) on track 1.
5. Insert the HW insert on track 1.
6. Ensure that only the dry signal is being passed through the device.
7. Bus the output of track 1 to the input of track 2.
8. Record enable track 2 and press Record Enable and Play in the Transport window to play back the audio in track 1 and record it to track 2.
9. After recording, zoom in and measure the difference between where the audio starts in track 1 and track 2. The difference is the value you would enter as your hardware's insert delay offset.

Dither

Dither is used to minimize quantization artifacts when reducing the bit depth of an audio signal, for example, from 24-bit to 16-bit. Quantization artifacts are most apparent when a signal is near the low end of its dynamic range, such as during a quiet passage or a fade-out.

Dither minimizes quantization artifacts by introducing very low-level random noise to a signal, which smooths out the distortion that can result when the signal's bit depth is reduced.

With dither there is a trade-off between signal-to-noise performance and less-apparent distortion. Proper use of dither lets you get better subjective performance when reducing the bit depth of audio.

Dither in Pro Tools

There are several ways dither can be used in Pro Tools. Each has a specific application within the various operations that could benefit from using dither.

Dither Plugins for Mixdown

Whenever you are mixing down or bouncing to disk and your destination bit depth is lower than 24-bit, insert a dither plugin on a Master Fader that controls the output mix. You can use real-time dither plugins from Avid or third-party manufacturers.

For important information on using dither when mixing down or bouncing to disk, see "Using Dither" on page 1638.

For more information on Dither plugins, see the Audio Plugins Guide.

Dither on Export and Import

When you export audio to a lower bit depth, or when you import an audio file into a session that is at a lower bit depth than the file, a preset, noise-shaped dither is applied.

For more information about the application of dither on export, see "Exporting Audio" on page 663. For more information about the application of dither on import, see "Bit Depth Conversion and Dither" on page 653.

Noise Shaping

Noise shaping can further improve audio performance and reduce perceived noise inherent in dithered audio. Noise shaping uses filtering to shift noise away from frequencies in the middle of the audio spectrum (around 4 kHz), where the human ear is most sensitive.

Noise Shaping is available in the Dither and POW-r Dither plugins.

For more information on using Noise Shaping, see the Audio Plugins Guide.

Using an Ethernet Control Surface with Pro Tools

Avid offers several Ethernet-based control surface options for Pro Tools.

EUCON

Pro Tools supports Avid control surfaces using EUCON (Extended User Control). EUCON is an innovative high-speed Ethernet protocol developed by Avid to allow hardware control surfaces to directly communicate with software applications (such as Pro Tools). EUCON control surfaces include the following:

- Avid S4 and Avid S6
- EuControl devices, including the Avid Control app, Dock, S1, and S3.

Avid S4 and S6

Avid S4 and S6 are modular, ergonomically designed control surfaces for Pro Tools and EUCON-compatible digital audio workstations (DAWs). S4/S6 use the EUCON Ethernet protocol to provide fast, reliable data transmission. S4/S6 are flexible and scalable. Modules can be arranged in many ways, and can be added to address new workflows or increase the number of strips.

EuControl

Avid Control, Dock, S1, and S3

The Avid Control app lets you control Pro Tools over a wireless network from an Apple iPad or Android tablet using EuControl. When combined with S1, S6, or the Dock, Avid Control provides additional touch workflows for recording and mixing.

The Avid Dock is a multi-purpose controller that can be used alone or in combination with other EuControl devices. S1 is an 8-fader control surface, and up to four S1s can be used simultaneously. S3 is a 16-fader control surface.

For more information about Avid Control, visit www.avid.com/products/avid-control.

D-Control and D-Command

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) D-Control and D-Command tactile control surfaces are part of ICON, a flexible, integrated system that extends the functionality of Pro Tools.

C|24

C|24 is a dedicated control surface that provides access to nearly all Pro Tools recording, mixing, editing, signal routing, plugin control, and automation features.

Enabling an Ethernet Control Surface in Pro Tools

The ways you can enable EUCON depend on which version of Pro Tools and operating system you are using.

- Mac only: When running Pro Tools 2022.12 or later natively on Apple Silicon Macs, the previously available Ethernet Controllers tab in Pro Tools Setup › Peripherals is no longer provided (use the EUCON controls in the Edit window Toolbar to toggle EUCON on or off, and to see status).
- On Windows, or when running under Rosetta on Apple Silicon Macs, the Ethernet Controllers tab remains available to enable EUCON (in addition to the Edit window Toolbar controls for EUCON introduced in Pro Tools 2022.12).

EUCON in the Toolbar

To show EUCON controls in the Edit window:

1. Click the Edit Window Toolbar menu (in the upper-right corner of the window). Or Right-click in the Toolbar.
2. From the menu, select EUCON. EUCON controls are shown in the Tool bar.

To turn EUCON on or off:

- Click the EUCON button. EUCON is enabled when the background is lit green with black text.

  For more information see the Using EuControl Surfaces guide.

Peripherals

To enable an Ethernet control surface in Pro Tools:

1. Choose **`Setup > Peripherals`** and click the **`Ethernet Controllers`** tab.
2. Select **`Enable`**.
3. If your Ethernet control surface consists of more than one unit, select the units in numerical order as

you want them arranged left to right.

4. Click **OK**.

For more information, see the documentation that came with your Ethernet control surface.

To enable EUCON control in Pro Tools:

1. Choose **Setup > Peripherals**.
2. Select the **Ethernet Controllers** tab.
3. Select the **EUCON** option.
4. Click **OK**.

   When the **EUCON** option is selected, Pro Tools is enabled for control by one or more EUCON-compatible controllers.

Using a MIDI Control Surface with Pro Tools

MIDI Control Surfaces add hands-on control to many Pro Tools functions, allowing you to adjust faders and knobs, activate transport controls, or edit plugin parameters.

Command|8

Command|8 is a compact USB-based MIDI control surface for Pro Tools systems.

The Command|8 driver is only installed with Pro Tools 10.x.

For complete instructions on connecting and configuring Command|8, see the Command|8 Guide.

Other MIDI Control Surfaces

Pro Tools supports some MIDI control surfaces that use HUI controller personalities, as well as certain M-Audio keyboards and Komplete Kontrol from Native Instruments.

MIDI Control Surface Personalities

MIDI Control Surface Personalities are files that allow Pro Tools to communicate with the MIDI control surface. When you install Pro Tools, these files are installed by default in the Controllers folder inside the Pro Tools application folder. If the files are not present, run the Pro Tools installer to install the personality files.

Connecting a MIDI Control Surface

If your Pro Tools hardware includes MIDI ports, you can connect a MIDI control surface directly to your system. If it does not include MIDI ports, you will need to use a MIDI Interface. USB MIDI control surfaces (such as the Command|8) and FireWire control surfaces (such as the 003) do not require an additional MIDI connection to your computer.

To connect a (non-USB or FireWire) MIDI control surface:

1. Using a standard 5-pin MIDI cable, connect the MIDI Out port on your MIDI control surface to the MIDI In port on your Pro Tools hardware or MIDI interface.
2. Using a standard 5-pin MIDI cable, connect the MIDI In port on your MIDI control surface to the MIDI Out port on your Pro Tools hardware or MIDI interface.
3. If you have a multi-port MIDI interface, note which MIDI port the control surface is connected to.

Configuring Your System for a MIDI Control Surface

A MIDI Control Surface is configured in the same way as any other MIDI device in Pro Tools, using Audio MIDI Setup (Mac) or MIDI Studio Setup (Windows).

For complete instructions on configuring your MIDI studio, see the User Guide that came with your system.

Enabling a MIDI Control Surface in Pro Tools

To enable a MIDI control surface in Pro Tools:

1. Choose **Setup > Peripherals** and click the **MIDI Controllers** tab.
2. Choose your MIDI control surface device name from the **Type** pop-up menu.
3. Choose the MIDI control surface's source port from the **Receive From** pop-up menu.
4. Choose a destination port from the **Send To** pop-up menu.
5. If your MIDI control surface has more than eight channel strips, or if you are using multiple devices of the same type in series, choose the appropriate number of channel strips from the pop-up menu under **#Ch's**.
6. Click **OK**.

You can configure additional MIDI control surfaces (up to a total of four) by repeating the above steps. Make sure that none of the control surfaces are assigned to the same MIDI source and destination ports or channels in the Pro Tools Peripherals dialog.

Enabling the MIDI Control Surface as an Input Device

You must ensure that the MIDI control surface is enable as an input device in Pro Tools.

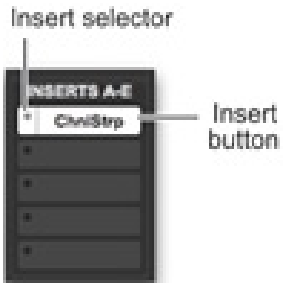
To enable a MIDI control surface as an input device:

1. Choose **Setup > MIDI > Input Devices**.
2. Select the source port that you selected in the **Receive From** pop-up menu in the MIDI Controllers page of the Peripherals dialog.
3. Click **OK**.

If you want to prevent control surface MIDI data from reaching Pro Tools, you can deselect its source port in the MIDI Input Enable window.

57 Plugin and Hardware Inserts

A Pro Tools insert routes the signal from the track to an effect of your choice and automatically returns it to the same track. Inserts do not alter the original audio source files, but process audio in real time, during playback. You can permanently apply real-time effects to tracks by recording or bouncing the effect to disk (see "Mixdown" on page 1638 for more information).



Insert button and selector on a track

Pro Tools provides up to ten unity-gain inserts on each audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, and Instrument track. Audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument track inserts are pre-fader, and Master Faders inserts are post-fader.

When more than one plugin or hardware insert is used on a track, they are processed in series. Each effect is added to that of any previous inserts (flowing from top to bottom in the Mix window Inserts View, and left to right in the Edit window Inserts View).

Inserts on audio tracks and Auxiliary Inputs and Instrument tracks are pre-fader. You can cause clipping if you boost their gain to extremes, especially on tracks recorded at high amplitude. Watch on-screen metering for indication of clipping. (Inserts on Master Faders are post-fader.)

Types of Inserts

An insert can be either a software DSP *plugin* or a *hardware insert*.

Plugin Inserts

Plugin inserts are software inserts that process audio material on a track in real time. For example, the EQ, compressor, and delay plugins supplied with your Pro Tools system can be used as real-time plugin inserts.

For more information about the plugins included with your Pro Tools system, see the Audio Plugins Guide.

Additional real-time plugins are available from Avid and from many third-party developers.

For information about optional plugins, choose Avid Link › Marketplace.

Hardware I/O Inserts

Hardware I/O inserts can route audio through an external device connected to parallel inputs and outputs of an audio interface. You can process the audio material on a track with a hardware insert in real time.



Hardware I/O insert

Insert paths require audio interface inputs and outputs, and are determined by the I/O Setup configuration of your system.

Using Inserts for Effects Processing

Inserts can be used in two ways:

On Single Tracks

An insert can be applied to an individual audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, or Instrument track.

With in-line inserts, you control the amount of effect by adjusting the balance (or the wet/dry mix) controls of the plugin or external device.

As Shared Resources

An insert can be used as a shared resource in a send-and-return arrangement, by bussing signals from several tracks to an Aux Input, and then applying the insert to that track. You can then control the send level for each track, and the overall level of the effect can be controlled from the Auxiliary Input track. Using sends and other signal routing features helps maximize your system's processing power.

For examples of send and return buses and other submixing setups, see "Signal Routing for Monitoring and Submixing" on page 1491.

Insert Formats

Mono Inserts

Used on mono tracks. Inserts that occur on a track after a stereo insert are automatically used in stereo as well.

Stereo Inserts

Used on stereo tracks. A stereo hardware I/O insert sends the signal to an input/output path.

Mono In/Stereo Out Plugin Inserts

Used to return a stereo effect from a mono source. Certain plugins (such as D-Verb™) let you generate stereo output from a mono channel. A track made into stereo in this way has panning controls for each channel of the stereo signal. Any inserts that occur on a track after a stereo insert are automatically used in stereo as well.

Multi-Mono Plugin Inserts

Used on stereo or greater-than-stereo multichannel tracks when a multichannel version of the plugin is not available. Controls for all channels are linked by default so that you can adjust them in tandem. You can unlink controls for independent adjustment using the Master Link button. "Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins" on page 1548

Multichannel Plugin Inserts

Used on stereo and greater-than-stereo multichannel tracks. On greater-than-stereo multichannel tracks, the controls for all channels are generally linked together.

Relinking may cause automation to be lost. See "Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins" on page 1548.

MIDI Inserts

Used on Instrument tracks only. Inserts that occur on a track after a stereo insert are automatically used in stereo as well.

For information about MIDI signal flow with MIDI-capable plugins, see "MIDI Signal Flow" on page 368.

Plugin Formats

There are three plugin formats supported by Pro Tools (DSP, Native, and AudioSuite), two of which can be used as real-time inserts, as follows:

DSP Plugins

Provide real-time plugin processing using DSP-based processing with HDX systems only.

Native Plugins

Provide real-time plugin processing using host-based processing.

MIDI Effects Plugins

Provide real-time MIDI effects processing on Instrument tracks.

AudioSuite Plugins

Provide non-real-time (rendered), file-based processing plugins for Pro Tools.

For information on using AudioSuite plugins in Pro Tools, see "AudioSuite Processing" on page 1262.

Depending on your Pro Tools software, real-time plugins can be used as follows:

HDX Systems

HDX systems with the Playback Engine set to HDX Classic let you use both DSP and Native plugins on audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks.

With HDX systems, Native plugins may use additional voices and introduce extra latency based on the HW Buffer Size. See "Inserting Native and DSP Plugins on Tracks" on page 1518.

Pro Tools Host-Based Systems

Native plugins can be used on audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks.

For tips on maximizing Native plugin performance, see "Configuring the Playback Engine" on page 107.

Pro Tools | Carbon and HDX Hybrid Systems

With Pro Tools | Carbon and HDX systems using the HDX Hybrid Engine, Native plugins can be used on audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks. Native plugins are automatically converted to DSP on tracks in DSP Mode.

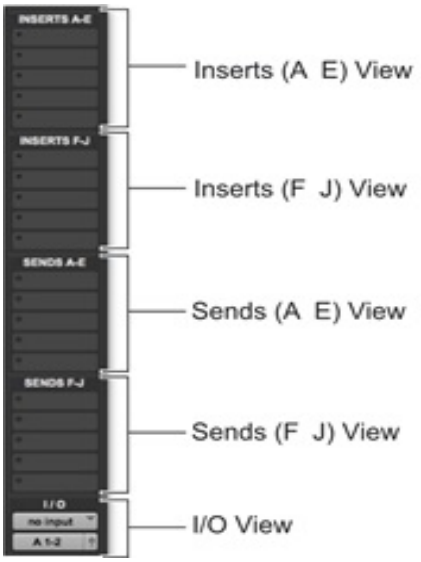
For more information plugins in DSP Mode, see "DSP Mode" on page 1555.

Viewing Inserts

Both the Mix and Edit windows can be configured to show or hide inserts A–E and F–J. Plugin windows provide complete access to plugin controls.

To show (or hide) inserts, do one of the following:

- In the Mix window (or Edit window), select **View > Mix Window** (or **Edit Window**) **> Inserts A–E** or **Inserts F–J**.

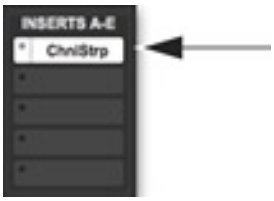


inserts and Sends in the Mix window

- Select **Inserts A–E** or **Inserts F–J** from the Edit Window or Mix Window View selector.

Display of Plugin Window Status

In the Mix and Edit window, the plugin button and selector display the currently inserted plugin, its bypass state (see "Bypassing Plugins" on page 1546), focus status, and window status.

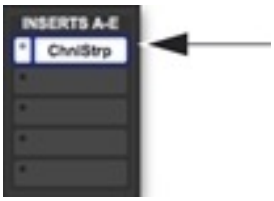


Lit plugin name indicates open plugin window

Indicating the Controller Focus

For most control surfaces, only one plugin can be focused at a time. ICON control surfaces can have up to four plugins focused at once (using the EQ and Dynamics controls, and Custom Faders on your control surface).

The current controller focus, if any, is indicated with a color outline around its name:



Controller focus

Making Inserts Inactive

Plugin and hardware inserts can be made inactive to free up their resources for other uses. When a plugin insert is inactive it retains its assignment, position, and related automation playlists. However, it will not pass audio and does not consume any DSP resources.

When opening sessions, inserts will automatically be made inactive in any of the following situations:

- The system has insufficient DSP resources
- A plugin is not installed
- A plugin type is not available
- Opening the session results in plugin type substitutions. This can happen if the type is available but substituting would result in an unsupported condition, such as opening a session containing a DSP-based plugin for which a host-based version is unavailable.

To make an insert inactive, do one of the following:

- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the Insert button.
- Right-click the Insert button and select **`Make Inactive`**.
- Make the track inactive. See "Making Tracks Inactive" on page 375.

To toggle inserts in the same position on all tracks active or inactive:

- Command-Control-Option click (Mac) or Control-Start-Alt click (Windows) an Insert button in the position you want to toggle.

To toggle inserts in the same position on all selected tracks active or inactive:

- Command-Control-Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Start-Alt-Shift-click (Windows) an Insert button in the position you want to toggle.

Inactive Plugin Inserts

Inactive plugin inserts retain all associated automation playlists. In addition, any edits made in the session affect the plugin automation playlists. You cannot record automation or adjust the controls for an inactive plugin.



Display of inactive plugins



Display of inactive Plugin window

Inactive Hardware Inserts

Inactive hardware inserts retain their assignments, but do not pass audio and do not consume any DSP resources.

Hardware inserts do not provide a bypass control. You can use the inactive feature whenever you need to mute or bypass a hardware insert.

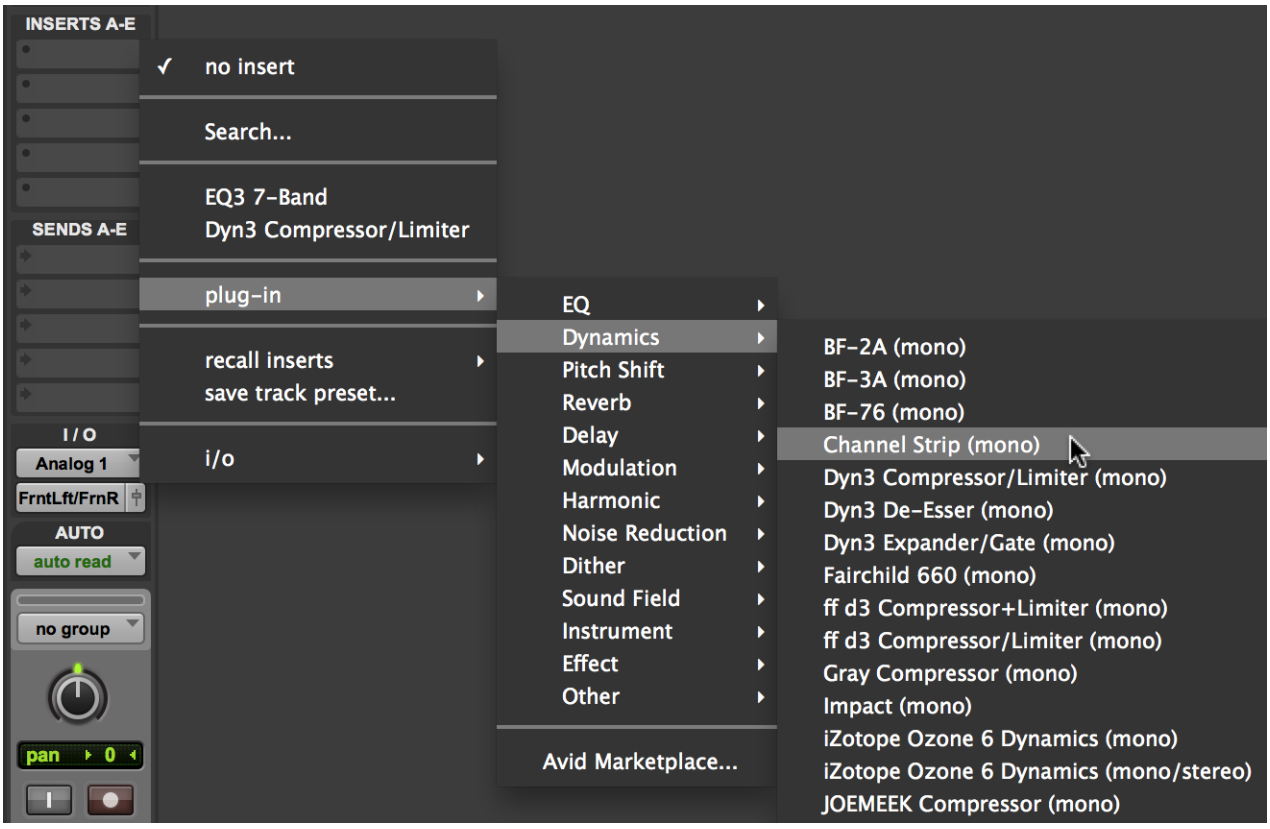
Inserting Plugins on Tracks

To use a real-time plugin, insert it on a track.

Plugins cannot be inserted or removed during recording.

To insert a plugin on a track:

1. Make sure the Inserts (A–E or F–J) View is shown in the Mix or Edit window.
2. Click the Insert selector on the track and select the plugin that you want to use. (See "Plugin Formats" on page 1514 for related information.)



Inserting mono Dynamics plugin

To remove an insert from a track:

- Click the Insert selector and choose **`No Insert`**.

You can insert a plugin on a track by dragging one of its Plugin Settings (.tfx) files from a Workspace browser onto an available track Insert position in the Mix window. See "Dragging and Dropping Plugin Settings Files" on page 1538.

Inserting Native and DSP Plugins on Tracks

(HDX Systems Only) HDX systems with the Playback Engine set to HDX Classic let you use both Native (host-based) and DSP plugins on tracks.

HDX systems using the HDX Hybrid Engine switch between Native plugins and DSP plugins on tracks depending on whether or not DSP Mode is enabled. For more information, see Chapter 52, "DSP Mode."

Using Only Native Plugins

With HDX systems, the initial insert of a Native plugin may cause additional latency, and in large sessions, may use an additional voice, under the following conditions:

- When inserted on an Auxiliary Input or Master Fader track
- When inserted on an Instrument track that does not contain an instrument plugin
- When inserted after a DSP plugin on any kind of track

Subsequent Native plugins on the same track do not take up additional voices unless a DSP plugin is inserted between those Native plugins.

In large sessions, when using Native plugins on a track, an additional voice may be used in each occurrence of any of the following conditions:

- When you use the external key side-chain of a Native plugin on that track
- When you select multiple track outputs for that track (one voice used for each output)
- When you select an AFL/PFL Path output in the Output tab of the I/O Setup dialog (one voice used for each channel)

Combining Native and DSP Plugins

With HDX systems, when Native and DSP plugins are combined on tracks, the order in which they are inserted produces different results:

Native Plugins Grouped Before DSP Plugins

On audio tracks, no additional voices are used, and no processing latency occurs. Native plugins are bypassed when the track is record enabled or TrackInput monitoring is enabled for that track.

Native Plugins Grouped After DSP Plugins

On audio, Auxiliary Input, Master Fader and Instrument tracks, each initial insert of a Native plugin after a DSP plugin on a track may cause processing latency, and in large sessions, may use additional voices. Native plugins remain active while the track is record enabled or TrackInput monitoring is enabled for that track.

To optimize voice usage and minimize latency, group plugins of the same type together, especially if inserting Native after DSP plugins. Otherwise, additional voices may be used unnecessarily.

When combining Native and DSP plugins on a track, use one of the following strategies based on your recording needs:

- To ensure that Native plugins stay active when you record enable a track or use TrackInput monitoring, order all DSP plugins before Native plugins.
- To conserve voices and minimize processing latency, order all Native plugins before DSP plugins.

Native Virtual Instrument plugins cannot follow Native processing plugins.

Plugin Menu Organization

You can customize how plugin lists (plugin menus) are organized in the Insert selector and Plugin selector.

Use the **Organize Plugin Menus By** setting in the Display Preferences page to organize plugin menus in a **Flat List** (with plugins in alphabetical order), or by **Category**, **Manufacturer**, or **Category and Manufacturer**.

Control Surface Support

Control surfaces with multi-color LCDs (such as D-Control) indicate plugins as follows:

- Plugin categories (such as EQ) and plugin manufacturers (such as Aphex) are indicated in yellow (amber) text.
- Specific plugins located in the plugin subfolders (such as EQ III in the EQ subfolder) are indicated in green text.

Control surfaces with single-color displays (such as Command|8) do not indicate plugin view choices. They display contents of a plugin folder as a single list of plugins.

"Organize Plugin Menus By" Setting

Flat List

Organizes plugins in a single list, in alphabetical order.

Category

Organizes plugins by process category (such as EQ, Dynamics, and Delay), with individual plugins listed in the category submenus. Plugins that do not fit into a standard category (such as the Signal Generator), or third-party plugins that have not had a category designated by their developers, appear in the Other category. Plugins can appear in more than one category.

Plug in categories include:

- EQ
- Dynamics
- Pitch Shift
- Reverb
- Delay
- Modulation
- Harmonic
- Noise Reduction
- Dither
- Sound Field
- Instrument
- Other
- Effects

The Effects subfolder organizes special effects, multi-effect processors, and other plugins. All plugins that specify their plugin category as an "Effects" type will be displayed within the Effects subfolder.

If no plugins within a certain category are installed on your system, the subfolder named for that category will not appear in the menu.

Manufacturer

Organizes plugins by their manufacturer, with individual plugins listed in the manufacturer submenus. Plugins that do not have a Manufacturer defined will appear in the "Other" manufacturer folder.

If no plugins by a certain manufacturer are installed on your system, the subfolder named for that manufacturer will not appear in the menu.

Category and Manufacturer

Organizes plugins in two levels of menus. The top menus display plugins by process category (such as EQ, Dynamics, and Delay), with individual plugins listed in the category submenus. The bottom menus display plugins by manufacturer, with individual plugins listed in the manufacturer submenus.

To select how plugins are organized:

1. Open or create a session.
2. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click **Display**.
3. Click the **Organize Plugin Menus By** pop-up menu, and select one of the view options.
4. Click **OK**.

The **Organize Plugin Menus By** setting is saved with Pro Tools preferences (it is not saved with the Pro Tools session file).

Width-Changing Plugins Organized in Sub-menu

Whenever a plugin supports four or more channel widths, the different channel width options are provided in a sub-menu for that plugin. This helps manage clutter in the Plugin Inserts menu. Previously, width-changing plugins could show many repeat instances in the Plugins list. Note that when the **Organize Plugin Menus By Flat List** option is enabled in the Preferences, plugins do not appear in a sub-menu.

MIDI Plugins

(Instrument Tracks Only) Pro Tools provides a MIDI plugins category for inserts on Instrument tracks. MIDI plugins affect track MIDI in real-time on playback or live MIDI input. Use MIDI effect plugins to add MIDI effects such as note stacking or velocity processing to enhance parts and arrangements. MIDI effects plugins can make a sequence sound more like a human performance or help you discover fresh musical and rhythmic creative ideas.

For detailed information about Avid and included third-party MIDI plugins, see the Avid Audio and MIDI Plugins Guide (Help › Audio Plugins Guide) or Pro Tools Help (Help › Pro Tools Help).

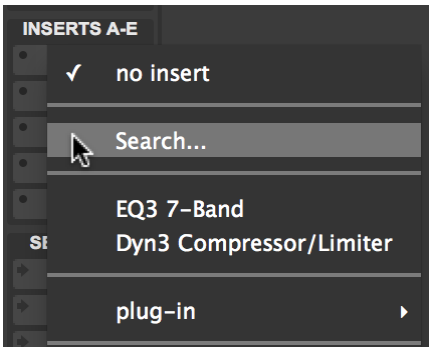
To insert a MIDI plugin on an Instrument track:

1. In either the Mix or Edit window, ensure that Inserts view is enabled.
2. Click the first available insert and select the MIDI plugin you want from the MIDI plugin submenu. (Note that MIDI plugins can be used with any insert.)
3. Insert a virtual instrument plugin after any MIDI plugins inserted on the track (or route the MIDI output to an external MIDI device).

Plugin Insert Search

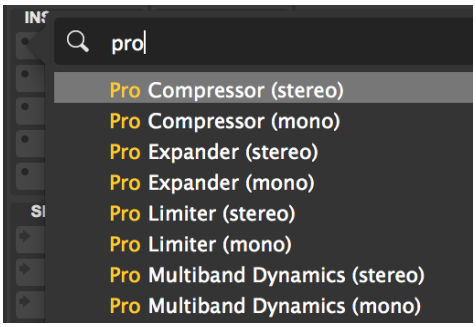
To find a plugin in an Insert selector by typing:

1. Click the insert selector on a track where you want to insert a plugin and do one of the following:
   - Type the first character of the plugin name you want.
   - Click `Search`.
   - Press Tab.



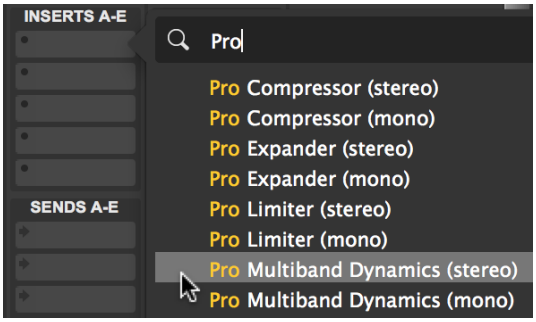
Searching Insert selector

2. Type a few letters included in the plugin name that you want. Only plugins whose names include those letters (highlighted yellow) now appear in the list (maximum of 20).



Search Insert selector, typing “Pro “ in the Search popover menu to find a plugin

3. Select the desired plugin with the mouse, or use the Up and Down arrow keys to select the plugin name.



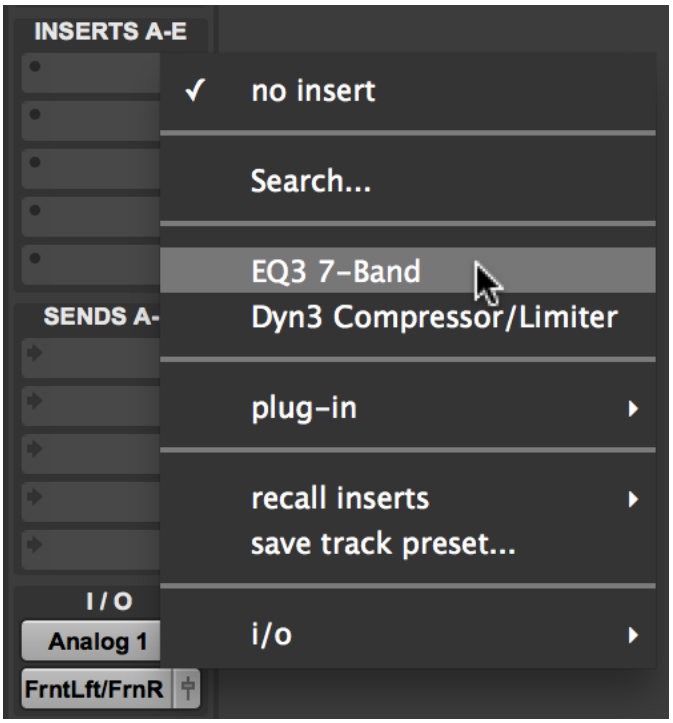
Navigating search results using the Up and Down Arrow keys

4. Press Return (Mac) or Enter (Windows) to insert the selected plugin.

You can also search Track Presets by name from the Insert selector. Depending on the preset, this lets you insert multiple pre-configured inserts on the track.

Default EQ and Dynamics Plugins

You can set a default EQ plugin and Dynamics plugin, which places them at the top of the Insert selector pop-up menu on-screen, and first in the list of menu choices when assigning inserts on ICON worksurfaces.



Default plugin display in the Insert selector menu

To set a default plugin:

1. Choose **`Setup > Preferences`** and click **`Mixing`**.
2. Under Setup, choose a plugin from the **`Default EQ`** or **`Default Dynamics`** pop-up menu.
3. Click **`OK`** to close the Preferences window.

Plugin Favorites

To find a plugin faster, a plugin can be designated as a *favorite*. Favorite plugins are shown at the top of the plugin menu.

When a plugin becomes a favorite, it is still shown in its plugin category and its name appears in bold.



Menu display of favorite plugins

To designate a plugin as a favorite:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click(Windows) the Insert selector and select a plugin to designate it as a favorite.

To change the status of a plugin favorite:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Insert selector and select a plugin favorite that you no longer want designated as a favorite.

When selecting the plugin favorite to change, you can select the plugin from the list of favorites at the top of the plugin menu, or in its plugin category (where the plugin appears in bold).

Moving and Duplicating Plugin and Hardware Inserts

You can move or duplicate an insert by dragging it to a different position on the same track or a different track. Inserts that are moved or duplicated retain their original settings and automation.

Plugins cannot be moved or duplicated during recording.

To move an insert:

- Drag the insert to a new insert location.



Moving a plugin

Dragging an insert on top of an existing insert will replace it and any automation.

To duplicate an insert:

- Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) the insert to a new insert location. Duplicated plugin inserts retain their original settings and automation.

You can also duplicate Sends. See "Moving or Copying Sends " on page 1480

Pro Tools lets you drag and drop plugins from one insert to between inserts. This results in reordering of plugin inserts on the target track, moving any plugins below it down to the next slot below (assuming one is available). A yellow line indicates where the plugin will be inserted.



Dragging and dropping a plugin between inserts

A red line appears if you cannot insert the plugin between inserts either because there is no free insert or it is not allowed because of routing issues.

Moving Plugins to Tracks with Different Channel Widths

Pro Tools lets you move a plugin from a track of any channel width to a track of any other channel width, as long as the destination width is supported by the plugin.

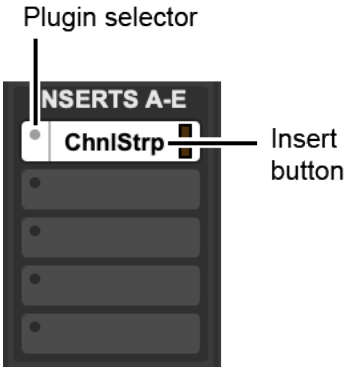
To move a plugin from a track of one channel width to one of another channel width:

- Hold Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while dragging the plugin to a track with a different channel width.

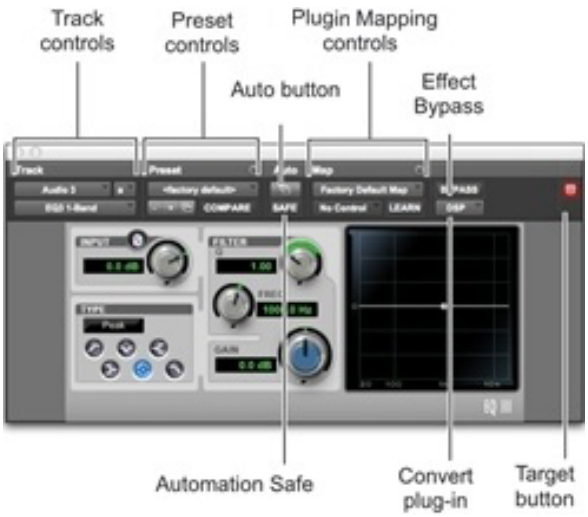
If any multi-mono plugins on a stereo or larger track are un-linked when dragged to a track of a different width you are prompted to relink the un-linked channels.

Plugin Windows

A Plugin window appears whenever you click a plugin's Insert button on a track. This floating window lets you adjust the controls of any real-time plugin insert in use on a track.

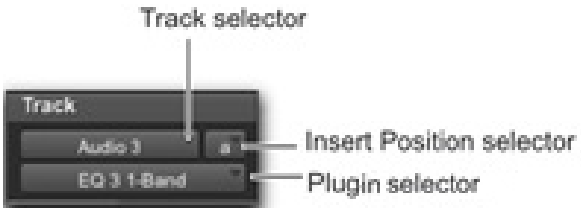


Insert button and selector on a track



Plugin window (mono 1-Band EQ III shown)

Track Controls in the Plugin Window



Track controls in the plugin window

Track Selector

Accesses any track in the session except MIDI, VCA, and Video tracks.

Insert Position Selector

Accesses any insert on the current track.

Plugin Selector

Lets you select any real-time plugin installed in the Plugins folder (that is created when you install Pro Tools).

Key Input Selector

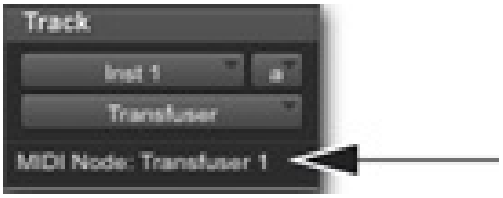
Lets you select audio on a particular input or bus and route it to trigger the plugin. This selector only appears on plugins that feature side-chain processing. Key inputs are monophonic.



Key Input selector (Dyn III Compressor/Limiter shown)

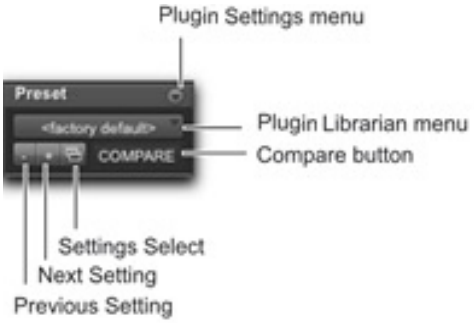
MIDI Node Display

Shows MIDI node information for MIDI-enabled plugins. MIDI nodes are virtual connections from Pro Tools to software instruments and other MIDI-enabled plugins. MIDI nodes are useful for routing multiple MIDI tracks to different channels of a single virtual MIDI device. MIDI node numbers are also displayed in a track's MIDI Output selector. The MIDI node indicator only appears in plugins that can receive MIDI.



MIDI Node Display indicator (Transfuser shown)

Preset Controls in the Plugin Window



Preset controls in the plugin window

Plugin Settings Menu

Lets you copy, paste, save, and import plugin settings.

Plugin Librarian Menu

Recalls plugin presets (plugin settings files saved in the plugin's root settings folder or in the current session's Settings folder). "Plugin Presets" on page 1532

Next (+) and Previous (–) Setting Buttons

Let you select the next or previous preset from the Librarian menu.

⚠ **You will lose the current settings if they are not saved before you use the Next and Previous Setting buttons. Always save your plugin settings as a preset using the Plugin Settings menu.**

Plugin Settings Select Button

Accesses the Plugin Settings dialog, which lists the presets for the selected plugin. From this list, you can audition and select plugin presets.

Compare

Toggles between the original saved plugin settings and any changes you have made to it so you can compare them.

Automation Controls in the Plugin Window



Automation controls in the plugin window

Auto Button

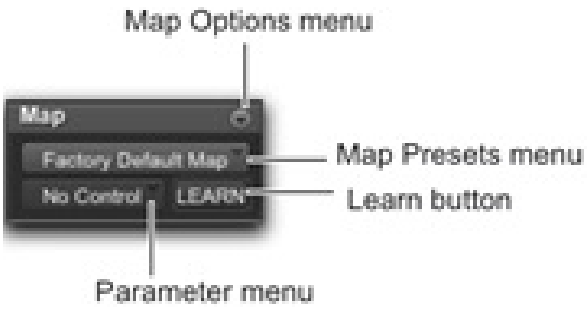
Lets you enable individual plugin controls for automation recording. "Automating Plugins " on page 1589

Automation Safe

When enabled, prevents existing plugin automation from being overwritten.

Plugin Map Controls in the Plugin Window

(Control Surfaces Only) When a supported control surface is declared in Pro Tools, Plugin Map controls appear in the plugin window.



Plugin Map controls in the plugin window

Map Options Menu

Lets you create, rename, save, delete, import, export, and set default plugin maps.

Map Presets Menu

Lets you choose from available custom Plugin Maps for the plugin.

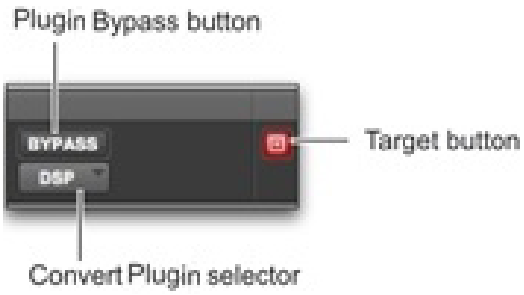
Learn Button

Puts the plugin in Learn mode, where you can map plugin parameters to a control surface.

Parameter Menu

When in Learn mode, lets you select a parameter on the plugin for mapping. If you click a parameter in the plugin window while in Learn mode, this menu shows the name of the parameter.

Additional Plugin Controls in the Plugin Window



Plugin Map controls in the plugin window

Effect Bypass Button

Disables the currently displayed plugin. This lets you compare the track with and without the effect.

Convert Plugin Selector

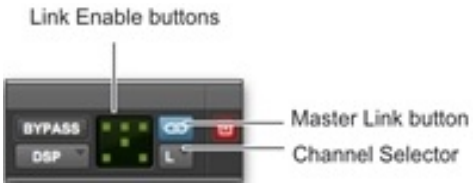
Lets you convert the insert from a DSP plugin to a Native plugin of the same type (or vice-versa). This feature can only be used on plugins that are available in both DSP and Native formats.

⚠ **Converting from DSP to Native is disallowed on Auxiliary Input tracks.**

Target Button

When multiple Plugin windows are open, clicking this button selects that plugin as the target for any computer keyboard commands.

Multi-Mono Controls in the Plugin Window



Plugin window (multi-mono 1-Band EQ shown)

Master Link Button

When enabled, links the controls on all channels of a multi-mono plugin so that they can be adjusted in tandem.

Link Enable Buttons

Let you selectively link or unlink the controls of specific channels of a multi-mono plugin. Each square represents a speaker channel. The Master Link button must be disabled to use the Link Enable buttons.
"Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins" on page 1548

Channel Selector

Accesses a specific channel within a multichannel track for plugin control editing. This menu appears only on multi-mono plugins inserted on tracks with more than one channel. Shift-clicking this selector opens a separate Plugin window for each channel of the multichannel track on which the plugin is inserted.

Opening Plugin Windows

To open a plugin window:

- Click the plugin button in Inserts view in the Mix or Edit window.

By default, each plugin you open will appear in the same location as a currently open plugin, replacing it in the same window location.

Opening Multiple Plugin Windows

Pro Tools normally displays a single plugin window from which you can adjust the controls of any session plugin. You can also open additional Plugin windows for specific plugins. Once you begin working with multiple plugin windows, you will need to click the Target button on the plugin whose controls you want to adjust using keyboard commands.

To open an additional plugin window:

- In the Mix window, Shift-click the Insert button of a plugin. The new plugin window opens untargeted.

To open plugin windows for each channel of a multi-mono plugin:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Channel selector in the Plugin window of a plugin insert.

To close all currently open plugin windows:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the close box of any currently open plugin window.

Using Plugin Window Controls

All plugins provide standard Pro Tools controls for track and insert selection, bypass, and other controls, in addition to the EQ, dynamics, and other processor-specific controls.

To select a different plugin on the same track:

- Click the Insert selector and select another plugin from the pop-up menu.

To choose a different track:

- Click the Track selector and select another track from the pop-up menu.

Target Window and Settings Shortcuts

When multiple plugin windows are open, a highlighted target indicates the target window. Pro Tools keeps a single plugin target window. Opening a new plugin opens it as the new target window, in the same location. In addition, the plugin target window is also the focus of keyboard shortcuts for plugin settings.

Editing Plugin Controls

You can adjust plugin controls by dragging the control's slider or knob, or by typing a value into the control's text box. For instructions on editing specific plugins, see the plugin's documentation.

For information about the specific controls of each of the plugins (installed with Pro Tools), see the Audio Plugins Guide. Additional free plugins (and paid plugin options) that can be installed with Pro Tools are also documented in the Audio Plugins Guide.

To adjust a plugin control:

1. Begin audio playback so that you can hear the control changes in real time.
2. Adjust the controls of the plugin for the effect you want.
3. Close the Plugin window to save the most recent changes.

Editing Plugin Parameters Using a Mouse

You can adjust rotary controls by dragging horizontally or vertically. Parameter values increase as you drag upward or to the right, and decrease as you drag downward or to the left.

Keyboard Shortcuts

- For finer adjustments, Command-drag (Mac) or Control-drag (Windows) the control.
- To return a control to its default value, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the control.

Editing Plugin Parameters Using a Computer Keyboard

You can use your computer keyboard to edit plugin controls.

If multiple Plugin windows are open, Tab and keyboard entry remain focused on the plugin that is the target window.

The plugin target window is the focus of keyboard shortcuts for plugin settings. To make a plugin the target for any computer keyboard commands (including key shortcuts), click the plugin's Target button in its Plugin window.

To change control values with a computer keyboard:

1. Click or Navigate to the control text field that you want to edit to activate the field.

   To move forward through the different control fields, press the Tab key. To move backward, press Shift+Tab.

2. Change the value by doing one of the following.
   - To increase a value, press the Up Arrow on your keyboard.
   - To decrease a value, press the Down Arrow on your keyboard.
   - Type the value.

   In fields that support values in kilohertz, typing "k" after a number value will multiply the value by 1,000. For example, type "8k" to enter a value of 8,000.

3. Do one of the following to confirm the value:

- Press Enter on the numeric keyboard to input the value and remain in keyboard editing mode.
- Press Return (Mac) or Enter on the alphanumeric keyboard (Windows) to enter the value and leave keyboard editing mode.

To clear all clip indicators in the session, including plugin clipping:

- Press Option+C (Mac) or Alt+C (Windows).

Plugin Automation and Safe Modes

All real-time plugins can be fully automated, and support all Pro Tools Automation modes (Write, Touch, and Latch, plus Trim).

The Auto button opens the Plugin Automation dialog, where you can enable individual plugin controls for automation recording (see "Automating Plugins " on page 1589).

The Safe button engages Automation Safe mode. When enabled, existing plugin automation is protected from being overwritten (see "Record Safing Plugin Automation" on page 1591).

Side-Chain Input

The *side-chain* input is the split-off signal used by a plugin's detector to trigger dynamics processing, and is generally drawn internally from the input signal. However, some plugins let you switch between internal and external side-chain processing.

With external side-chain processing, a plugin's detector is triggered by an external signal (such as a separate reference track or audio source) known as the *key input*.

A typical use for external side-chain processing is to control the dynamics of one audio signal using the dynamics of another signal (the key input). For example, a kick drum track could be used to trigger gating of a bass track to tighten it up, or a rhythm guitar track could be used to gate a keyboard pad.

When using a dynamics insert keyed to an external side chain using physical I/O, it is recommended that the plugin be the first insert (Insert A) on a track.

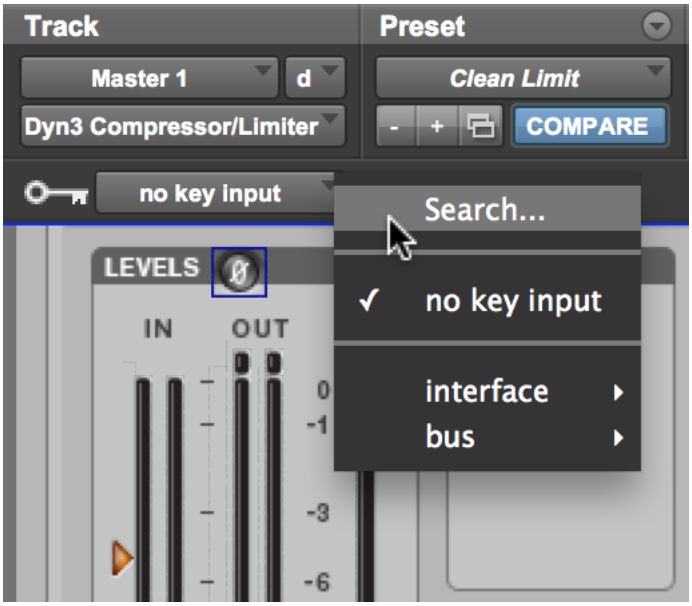
Side-Chain Filters

Some plugins feature key high-pass and low-pass filters. These controls let you define a specific frequency range in the side-chain signal with which to trigger the plugin effect. A common production technique is to use these controls to filter a drum track so that only specific high frequency sounds (such as a hi-hat) or low frequency ones (such a tom or a kick) trigger the effect.

Using a Key Input for External Side-Chain Processing

To use a key input for external side-chain processing:

1. Click the plugin's Key Input selector and select the input or bus carrying the audio you want to use to trigger the plugin; or select **Search** to find the desired key input by typing the path name.



Searching and selecting a Key Input

2. Click the External Key to activate external side-chain processing.
3. Press the Spacebar to begin playback. The plugin uses the input or bus that you chose as a key input to trigger its effect.
4. During playback, do any of the following to fine-tune key input triggering:
   - To hear the audio source you have selected to control the key input, enable Side-Chain Listen or Key Listen (depending on the plugin). When finished, disable Side-Chain Listen/Key Listen to resume normal plugin monitoring.
   - To filter the key input so that only specific frequencies trigger the plugin, use the filtering controls (if available) to select the frequency range.
5. Adjust the plugin's Threshold control (if available) and other controls as needed.

Delay Compensation for Side Chains

Pro Tools lets you apply automatic Delay Compensation to side-chains.

To apply Delay Compensation to side-chains:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Click the **Mixing** tab.
3. Enable the **Compensate Side Chains** option.
4. Click **OK**.

Plugin Bus Outputs

Some plugins (such as some virtual instrument or multi-band processing plugins) provide separate bus outputs you can use to route audio from the plugin to the input of another track for additional processing, monitoring, or recording.



Assigning a plugin bus output to the input of an Auxiliary Input track

⚠ A plugin with an output bus assigned to the input of another track cannot be moved to that track.

⚠ A plugin with any assigned output buses cannot be removed or replaced until all plugin output buses are unassigned.

Plugin Presets

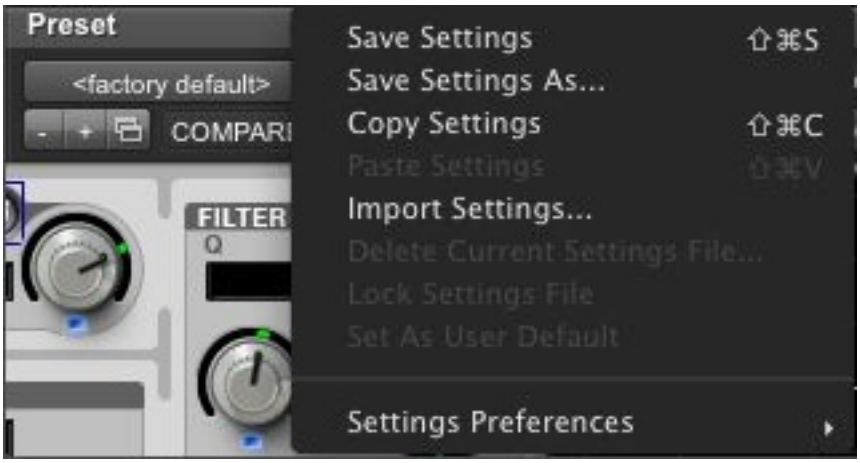
Pro Tools makes it easy to create your own library of plugin settings, or *presets*. Using the Plugin Settings menu, you can copy, paste, save, and import these settings from plugin to plugin, or from session to session.

Once you create and save settings files to disk (and tell Pro Tools where to find them by assigning to a *root* folder) they appear both in the Plugin Librarian menu and in the Plugin Settings dialog. They also appear as plugin settings files (.tfx) in Workspace browsers.

You can use the Plugin Settings dialog to audition and select plugin settings (see "Plugin Settings Dialog" on page 1536).

Plugin Settings Menu

Use the Plugin Settings menu commands to save, copy, paste, and manage plugin settings as presets (plugin settings files).



Plugin Settings menu

Plugin Settings menu commands include:

Save Settings

Saves the current settings. This command overwrites any previous version of the preset.

Save Settings As

Saves the current settings as a new preset under a different name.

Copy Settings

Copies the current plugin settings. You can then apply these settings to the same type of plugin on a different track by choosing the track in the Plugin window and pasting the settings with the **`Paste Settings`** command.

Paste Settings

Pastes plugin settings copied with the **`Copy Settings`** command.

Import Settings

Imports a plugin settings file (.tfx) from a location other than the Root Settings folder or Session folder.

Delete Current Settings File

Permanently deletes the current plugin settings file (.tfx) from disk.

Lock Settings File

Prevents the current preset from being overwritten by the **`Save`** command. If you attempt to save any changes to the plugin settings, you will be prompted to save them using a different name or disk location.

Set As User Default

Defines the current preset as the User Default for the selected plugin.

Settings Preferences

The Settings Preferences submenu provides commands for configuring preferences for saving and importing presets. They include:

Set Plugin Default To

Sets the default preset to either **Factory Default** (the standard default setting for that plugin) or **User Default** (your custom setting).

Save Plugin Settings To

Selects the folder where presets (plugin settings files) are saved. If you select **Session Folder**, the settings are saved in a folder named "Plugin Settings" within the current Session folder. If you select **Root Settings Folder**, the settings are saved in the folder you specified with the **Set Root Settings Folder** command. You can change the location of the Root Settings Folder in the Operation Preferences (see "User Media and Settings Location" on page 145).

To save plugin settings to any location other than the default Plugin Settings folder, you must first create a folder named "Plugin Settings" in the new location and then save to that folder.

Choosing a Destination for Settings

Before you save plugin settings, select their destination folder.

To select a destination folder:

- From the Plugin Settings menu, choose **Settings Preferences > Save Plugin Settings To**, and select **Session Folder** or **Root Settings Folder**.

If you selected **Root Settings Folder**, Pro Tools saves to the default Root Plugin Settings folder unless you have specified a different location for the Root Settings folder.

To select a different Root Settings folder:

1. From the Plugin Settings menu, choose **Settings Preferences > Set Root Settings Folder**.
2. Select the folder you want to use as your Root folder and click **Select**.

Creating Subfolders for Settings

To make it easier to find specific types of settings, you can subdivide settings files by creating subfolders for them.

To create a settings subfolder:

1. From the Plugin Settings menu, choose **Save Settings**.
2. Click the **New Folder** button and type a name for the subfolder.
3. Name the preset and click **Save**. The plugin settings file is saved within the subfolder.

Managing Presets

Use the Plugin Settings menu to manage plugin presets.

Unlinked multi-mono plugins have specific rules for settings. "Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins" on page 1548

To save a preset:

1. Choose **Save Settings** from the Plugin Settings menu.
2. Type a name and click **OK**. The setting appears in the Plugin Librarian menu.

Press Command+Shift+S (Mac) or Control+Shift+S (Windows) to save plugin settings.

To load a plugin preset:

- Choose the name of the preset from the Plugin Librarian menu.

To import a preset:

1. Choose **Import Settings** from the Plugin Settings menu.
2. Locate the settings file you want to import and click **Open**. Pro Tools loads the setting and copies it to the root destination folder.

To copy plugin settings:

- Choose **Copy Settings** from the Plugin Settings menu.

  Press Command+Shift+C (Mac) or Control+Shift+C (Windows) to copy plugin settings.

To paste plugin settings:

1. Open the destination plugin.
2. Choose **Paste Settings** from the Plugin Settings menu.

   Press Command+Shift+V (Mac) or Control+Shift+V (Windows) to paste plugin settings.

To create a custom User Default preset:

1. Create and save a plugin settings file.
2. Select **Set As User Default** from the Plugin Settings menu.

To make a plugin default to your custom preset:

- From the Plugin Settings menu, select **Settings Preferences > Set Plugin Default To > User Setting**.

Changing Presets with the Next (+) and Previous (–) Setting Buttons

These buttons let you select the next or previous preset in the Plugin Librarian menu.

To change plugin presets using the +/– buttons:

- Click the Plus (+) or Minus (–) buttons to select the next or previous preset. The next (or previous) preset is enabled, and the Plugin Librarian menu changes to show the name of the new preset.

  You will lose the current plugin settings if they are not saved before you use the Next and Previous Setting buttons. Always save your plugin settings to the selected Root Settings folder.

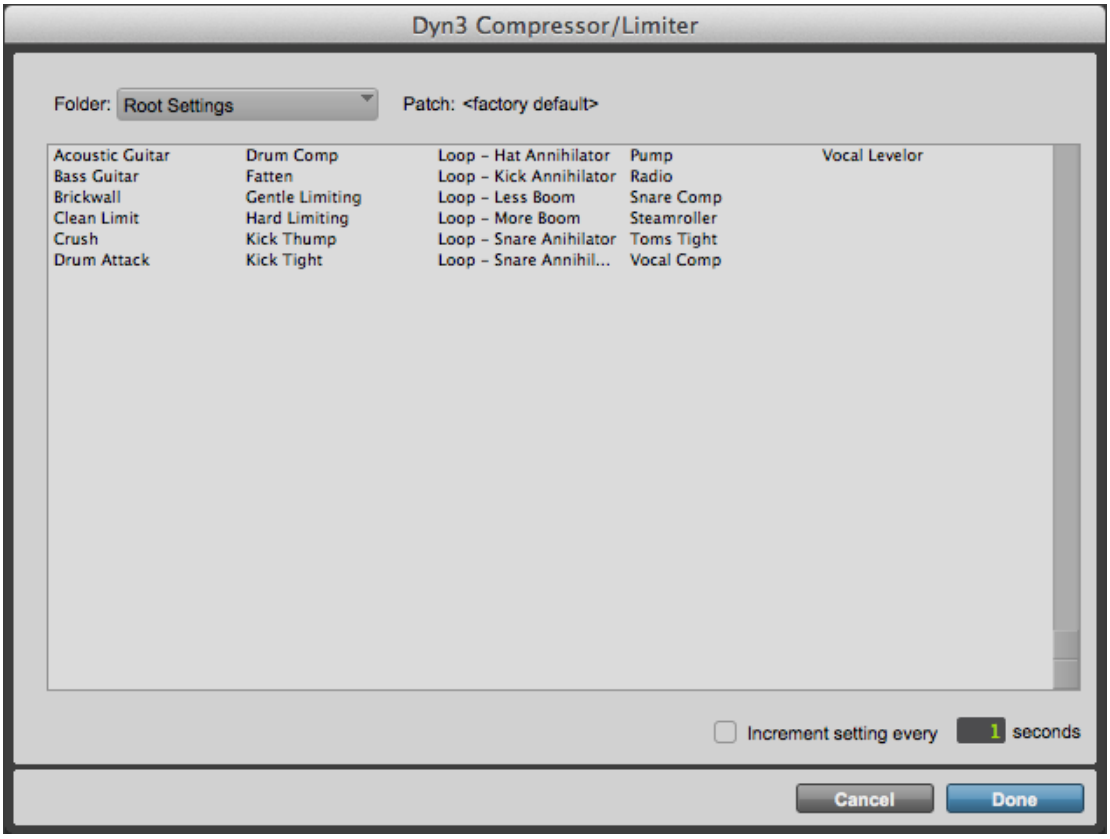
Editing Settings on Unlinked Multi-Mono Plugins

When a multi-mono plugin is unlinked, importing, copying, pasting, or bypassing settings affects only the currently selected channel.

Plugin Settings Dialog

The Plugin Settings dialog lists the presets for the current plugin type. From this list, you can audition and select presets.

Use the Folder pop-up menu at the top of the Plugin Settings dialog to switch between plugin settings subfolders, or root and session settings folders.



Plugin Settings dialog

The Plugin Settings dialog includes the following:

Folder

This pop-up menu lets you switch between presets located in root or session folders (and any available subfolders).

Patch Field

This field displays the name of the active (highlighted) preset.

Increment Patch Every X Sec

This option lets you audition plugin presets in series by automatically scrolling through them for a specified number of seconds.

To change plugin presets using the Plugin Settings dialog:

1. Click the Settings Select button.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select a preset from the dialog list.
   - Use the Arrow keys to scroll through the available presets.

   To switch between plugin settings subfolders, press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and use the Up/Down Arrow keys.
3. Click **Done**.

Auditioning Plugin Presets

When the Plugin Settings dialog is open, you can have Pro Tools automatically scroll through and audition the plugin settings files saved in the plugin's root settings folder or in the current session's settings folder.

To audition plugin presets:

1. Click the Settings Select button.
2. From the dialog list, click a preset—the starting point from which you will scroll through the settings files.
3. Enter a value for the number of seconds that will elapse between each preset change.
4. Select the **Increment Setting** option.

   After the specified number of seconds, Pro Tools selects the next preset.
5. When you are finished auditioning presets, do one of the following:
   - Click **Done** to stop incrementing patches, and to close the Plugin Settings dialog.
   - Deselect the **Increment Patch** option to stop incrementing patches and keep the Plugin Settings dialog open. Then select the preset you want and click **Done**.

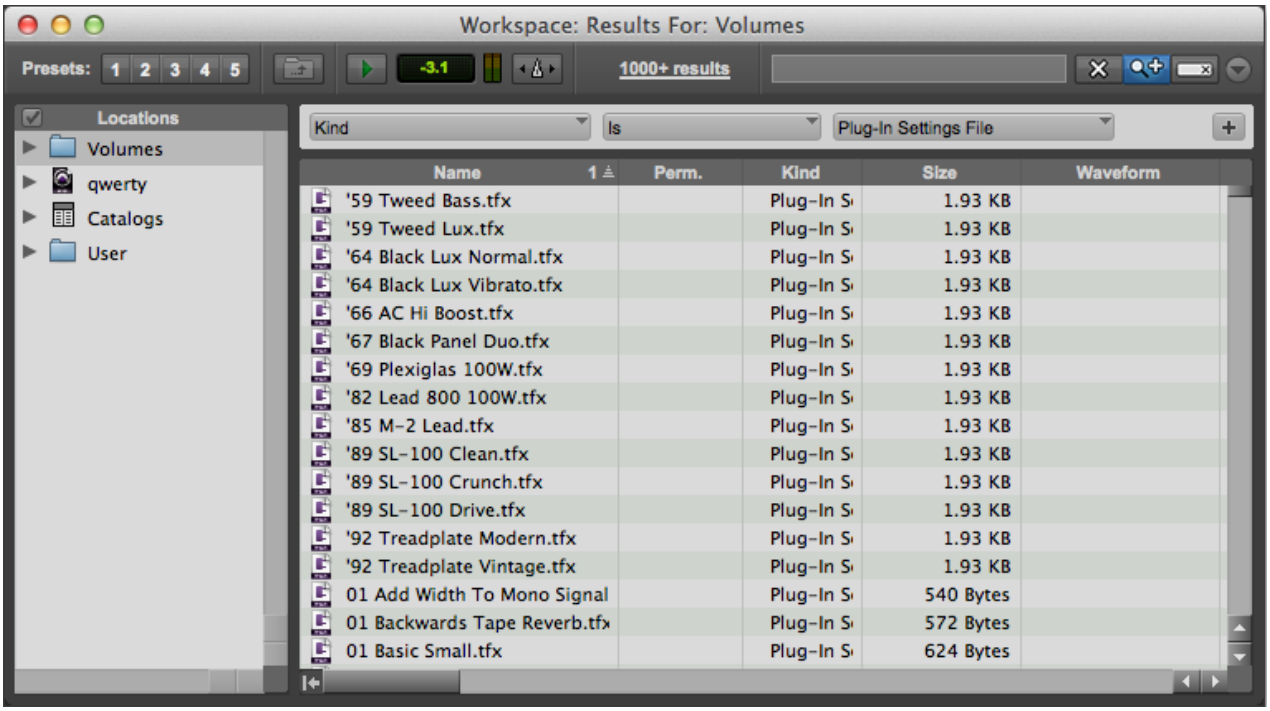
Workspace and Plugin Settings Files

Workspace browsers recognize plugins settings files (.tfx) as a known Type and lets you drag and drop them to Pro Tools plugin windows and Inserts. You can also search for plugin settings by type.

Searching for Plugin Settings Files

To search for plugin settings files:

1. In the Workspace browser, click the Advanced Search icon.
2. For the search criteria, select **`Kind > Is > Plugin Settings File`**.



Searching for plugin settings files

3. To further narrow your search, set additional search criteria as desired.

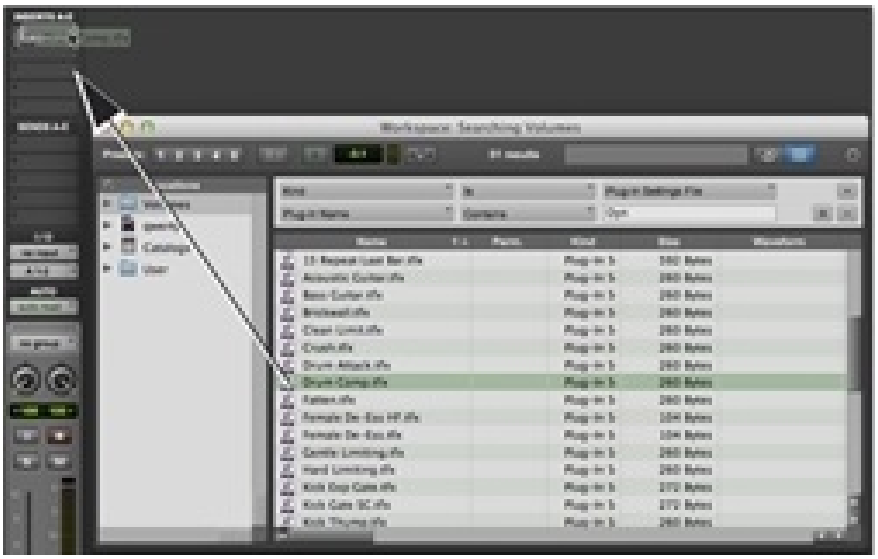
You can create catalogs of specific plugin settings that you work with frequently to streamline your workflow. For more information on Catalogs, see "Catalogs" on page 543.

Dragging and Dropping Plugin Settings Files

You can insert a plugin with a specific plugin settings file, as well as change plugin settings of inserted plugins by dragging and dropping plugin settings files from a Workspace browser.

To insert a plugin by drag and drop:

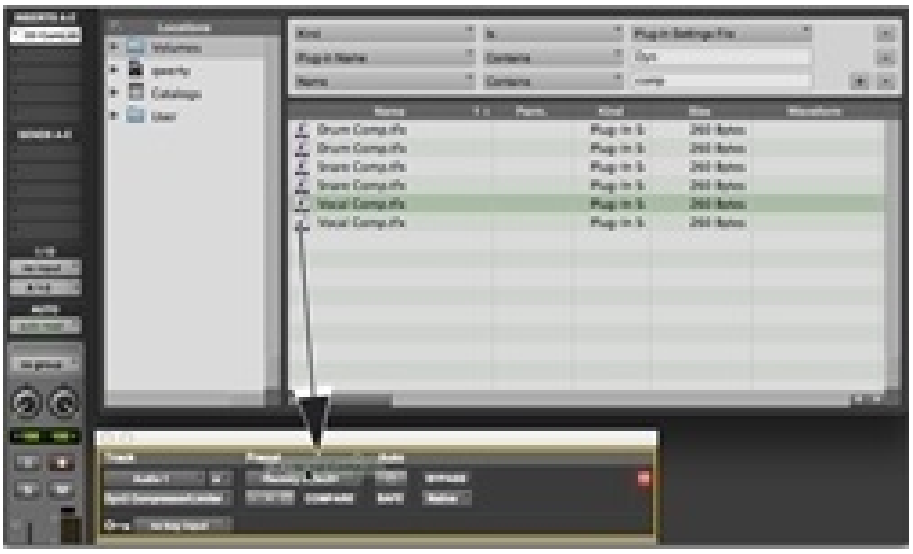
- Drag a plugin settings file from a Workspace browser to an Insert in the Mix (or Edit) window.



Dragging and dropping a plugin settings file to an Insert

To change a plugin preset by drag and drop:

- Drag a plugin settings file from a Workspace browser to the plugin window. The plugin settings file must be for the same plugin name. For example, you cannot replace a 1-Band EQ 3 with a plugin setting for 4-Band EQ 3.



Dragging and dropping a plugin settings file to a plugin

Selecting Plugin Presets from the Plugin Selector

Pro Tools lets you select plugin settings from the Insert Right-click menu using the **`User Presets`** submenu.

To select a plugin setting for a plugin insert in the Mix or Edit window:

1. With Inserts view shown, Right-click the plugin Insert in the Mix or Edit window.
2. From the **`User Presets`** submenu, select the plugin setting you want.



Insert Right-Click menu in the Mix window

Plugin Mapping

(Control Surfaces Only) Pro Tools lets you customize the arrangement of plugin parameter controls on supported control surfaces. You can save these customized *plugin maps* as presets and export them for use across different sessions and systems. Plugin Maps are stored in the Plugin Maps folder in the Pro Tools Root Settings folder. You can change the location of the Root Settings Folder in the Operation Preferences (see "User Media and Settings Location" on page 145).

Plugin Learn Mode

Plugins can be put into Learn mode, from which any automatable plugin parameter can be mapped to a channel strip encoder, switch, or (in Flip mode) fader on the control surface.

Plugin Map Presets

A map for a plugin can be saved and recalled for any plugin of the same type.

You can save multiple map presets for a single plugin, and switch between maps at any time during a session.

You can also use multiple map presets on different instances of a plugin at the same time. This is useful for virtual instrument plugins with multiple configurations, or for multi-user workflows on large systems.

You can set a custom plugin map to be the default map for a plugin, so that the same map is used for all default instances of that plugin.

Plugin Map Files

Plugin maps can be exported (as *.pim* files) for use in other sessions and on other systems with a similar type of control surface (8-fader surface, 24-fader surface, or ICON surface).

Control Surface Mapping

When you create a custom plugin map, its parameters are arranged in *pages* that correspond to the controls on the control surface. The size of a page depends on the type of control surface. Each custom plugin map allows up to 200 pages of mapped parameters.

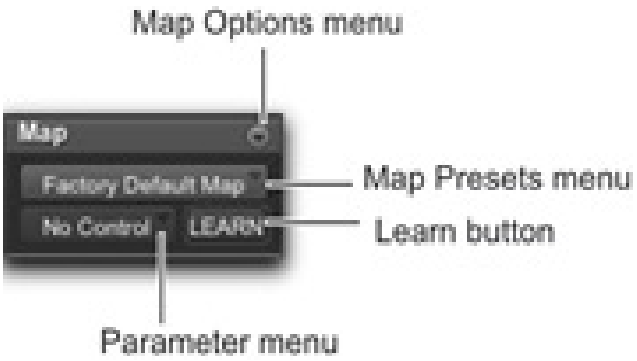
Plugin mapping is stored according to the following types of control surfaces:

- 003
- C|24
- Command|8
- D-Control
- D-Command
- EUCON-compatible controllers
- M-Audio controllers

If you import a plugin map that was created on a different type of control surface, it will appear as an inactive choice in the Map Presets menu.

Plugin Map Controls

When a supported control surface is declared in Pro Tools, Plugin Map controls appear in the plugin window.



Plugin Map controls in the plugin window

Map Options Menu

Lets you create, rename, save, delete, import, export, and set default plugin maps.

Map Presets Menu

Lets you choose from available custom Plugin Maps for the plugin.

Learn Button

Puts the plugin in Learn mode, where you can map plugin parameters to a control surface.

Parameter Menu

When in Learn mode, lets you select a parameter on the plugin for mapping. If you click a parameter in the plugin window while in Learn mode, this menu shows the name of the parameter.

Plugin Map controls can be shown or hidden.

To show (or hide) Plugin Map controls:

- Select (or deselect) **View > Plugin > Map Controls**.

Creating Plugin Maps

This topic covers creating plugin maps on the following control surfaces:

- C|24
- 003
- Command|8

For details on plugin mapping for D-Control and D-Command, see the D-Control Guide and D-Command Guide.

Putting a Plugin into Learn Mode

When you first put a plugin into Learn mode, a new plugin map is created (with the default name “Custom Map”), and the plugin is focused on the control surface, but with a blank page of controls, ready for mapping.

Only one plugin can be in Learn mode at a time.

To put a plugin into Learn mode, do one of the following:

- Click the **Learn** button in the plugin window.
- From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **New Map**.

To take a plugin out of Learn mode, do one of the following:

- Click the active **Learn** button in the plugin window.
- Close the plugin window.
- Click the **Learn** button in a different plugin window.

Plugins are automatically taken out of Learn mode when moved to a different insert position, made inactive, or converted between DSP and Native formats.

Creating and Editing Plugin Maps

To create a custom map of plugin parameters:

1. Open the plugin whose mapping you want to customize.
2. Put the plugin into Learn mode. The plugin is focused on the control surface, but with a blank page of controls, ready for mapping.
3. In the plugin window, click the plugin parameter you want to map. The parameter name appears in the Parameter menu.
4. On the control surface, do one of the following:
   - Turn the encoder or press the channel Select switch where you want to map the parameter.
   - If the control surface is in Flip mode, move the fader or press the channel Select switch where you want to map the parameter.
5. Repeat steps "In the plugin window, click the plugin parameter you want to map. The parameter name appears in the Parameter menu. " above-"On the control surface, do one of the following:" above for each parameter you want to map.
6. Take the plugin out of Learn mode.

To change parameter mapping in a plugin map:

1. Open the plugin whose custom map you want to change.
2. Choose the map you want to change from the Map Preset pop-up menu.
3. Put the plugin into Learn mode. The plugin is focused on the control surface.
4. Do the following for each parameter mapping you want to change:
    a. In the plugin window, click the new plugin parameter you want to map. The parameter name appears in the Parameter menu.
    b. On the control surface, page to the encoder or switch where you want to change the mapping, and turn the encoder or press the switch.
5. Take the plugin out of Learn mode.

To remove parameter mapping from a plugin map:

1. Open the plugin whose custom map you want to change.
2. Choose the map you want to change from the Map Preset pop-up menu.
3. Put the plugin into Learn mode. The plugin is focused on the control surface.
4. Do the following for each parameter mapping you want to remove:
    a. Make sure the Parameter menu displays **No Control**.
    b. On the control surface, page to the encoder or switch where you want to remove the mapping, and turn the encoder or press the switch.
5. Take the plugin out of Learn mode.

Saving Plugin Maps

You can save plugin maps as presets for reuse on the same Pro Tools system.

Plugin maps are saved as global preferences on a Pro Tools system, so they are available to all sessions created on the system.

When you create a map for a plugin, that map becomes available to all other plugins of the same type and channel format.

If you want to map the same plugin in different channel formats (such as mono, stereo and 5.1 surround) you need to create a separate plugin map for each format.

You can also export plugin maps for use on other Pro Tools systems with a similar control surface (see "Exporting and Importing Plugin Maps" on page 1545.

To save a copy of a custom plugin map:

1. Open the plugin whose map you want to copy.
2. Choose the map you want to copy from the Map Presets pop-up menu.
3. From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **Save Map As**.
4. Enter a name for the plugin map.
5. Click **OK**. The new copy becomes the active plugin map.

To rename a custom plugin map:

1. Open the plugin whose map you want to rename.
2. Choose the map you want to rename from the Map Presets pop-up menu.
3. From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **Rename Map**.
4. Enter a new name for the plugin map.
5. Click **OK**.

Deleting Plugin Maps

From the plugin window, you can delete individual plugin maps.

You can also delete all custom plugin maps on the system, reverting all plugins to their Factory Default plugin maps.

⚠ **On D-Control and D-Command systems, when you delete all plugin maps, you are also deleting all Custom Fader Plugin mappings.**

To delete a custom plugin map:

1. Open the plugin whose map you want to delete.
2. Choose the map you want to delete from the Map Presets pop-up menu.
3. From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **Delete Current Map**.
4. Click **Delete**.

To delete all plugin maps from the system:

1. Open any plugin in the session.
2. From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **Delete All Maps**.
3. Click **Delete**.

Setting a Custom Plugin Map as the Default Map

You can set a custom plugin map as the default map for a plugin, instead of the Factory Default map.

When you set a custom plugin map as the default, it applies across the entire session. All instances of that plugin that were set to the Factory Default map, or to another custom default map, change to the new default.

If you change parameter mapping in the custom plugin map that has been set as the default, the changes will propagate to all instances of the plugin using that default.

⚠ **When you export a plugin map, the default map setting for that plugin is also exported. When that map is imported, the default setting is also updated, and all instances of the plugin change to the new default.**

How Default Plugin Map Settings are Stored

Default map settings are stored as global (system-wide) Pro Tools preferences, so they are applied to all sessions that you subsequently open or create on that system.

⚠ **If you plan to work with the same plugin mapping on multiple sessions, back up your settings by exporting all plugin maps on a regular basis and saving the .pim file with your sessions.**

To set a custom plugin map as the default plugin map:

1. Open the plugin whose default plugin map you want to change.
2. Choose the map you want to use as the new default from the Map Presets pop-up menu.
3. From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **Set As Default.**

Hiding Default Plugin Map Pages

When you create a custom plugin map, its parameters are arranged in *pages* that correspond to the groups of controls that appear on a control surface.

When you page through the controls for a plugin on a control surface, the pages for custom plugin maps appear first, and the pages for the Factory Default map appear after the custom pages.

You can hide the Factory Default pages of a plugin, so that only the custom pages appear on the control surface. This applies to all instances of the plugin.

To hide the Factory Default pages of a plugin map:

1. Open the plugin whose default plugin map pages you want to hide.
2. From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **Hide Factory Default Pages.**

Exporting and Importing Plugin Maps

Plugin maps can be exported as *.pim* files for use on other Pro Tools systems.

When exporting plugin maps, you can choose to save individual map files for each plugin, or a single map file containing all the plugin maps for the system.

⚠ **On D-Control and D-Command systems, when you export all plugin maps, you are also exporting Custom Fader Plugin mapping to the same file. For more information, see the D-Control Guide or D-Command Guide.**

To export an individual plugin map:

1. Open the plugin whose map you want to export.
2. Choose the map you want to export from the Map Presets pop-up menu.
3. From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **Export Current Plugin Map.**
4. Choose a location for the map file.
5. Click **Save.**

To export all plugin maps in the system to a single map file:

1. Open any plugin in the session.
2. From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **Export All Plugin Maps.**
3. Choose a location for the map file.
4. Click **Save.**

To import a map file:

1. Open the plugin where you want to import a plugin map.
2. From the Map Options pop-up menu, choose **Import Plugin Maps From File.**
3. Locate the plugin map (.pim) file you want to import.
4. Click **Open.**

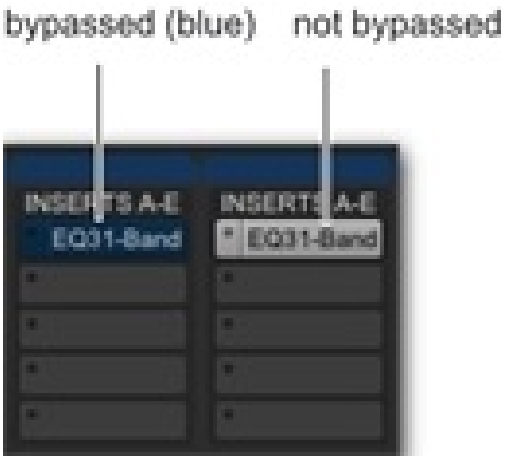
Bypassing Plugins

Plugins can be bypassed from their Plugin window, or from the Mix and Edit window Inserts View.

To bypass a plugin, do one of the following:

- Click the Plugin window's Effect Bypass button.
- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the plugin's Insert button in the Mix or Edit window.

When a plugin is bypassed, its Insert button turns blue. If only some of the channels of a multi-mono plugin are bypassed, its Insert button turns purple.



Indication of bypassed plugin state

To bypass (or pass) certain Inserts using the Track menu, choose:

1. Select the tracks on which you want to bypass inserts. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) to select all tracks shown in the session.
2. Choose **`Track`** › **`Bypass Insert`**.
3. Select (or deselect) one of the following:
   - All

     Bypasses all Inserts on all selected tracks in the session.
   - Inserts A–E

     Bypasses Inserts A–E on all selected tracks in the session.
   - Inserts F–J

     Bypasses Inserts A–E on all selected tracks in the session.
   - EQ

     Bypasses all EQ plugins on all selected tracks in the session. For those plugins that are available in multiple categories (such as Channel Strip), only the EQ portion of the plugin is bypassed.
   - Dynamics

     Bypasses all Dynamics plugins on all selected tracks in the session. For those plugins that are available in multiple categories (such as Channel Strip), only the Dynamics portion of the plugin is bypassed.
   - Reverb

Bypasses all Reverb plugins on all selected tracks in the session.

– Delay

  Bypasses all Delay plugins on all selected tracks in the session.

– Modulation

  Bypasses all Modulation plugins on all selected tracks in the session.

Key Commands for Bypassing Inserts

Pro Tools provides key-click commands for bypassing inserts on selected tracks in the Mix window:

- Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) an Insert Assignment button in the Mix or Edit window to bypass it and all inserts below it on a track.
- Control-Option-click (Mac) or Start+Alt-click (Windows) an Insert Assignment button in the Mix or Edit window to bypass it and all inserts below it on all tracks. This lets you bypass all plugins in your session with a single click.
- Press Shift+A to bypass (or un-bypass) all inserts on selected tracks.
- Press Shift+2 to bypass (or un-bypass) inserts A–E on selected tracks.
- Press Shift+3 to bypass (or un-bypass) inserts F–J on selected tracks.
- Press Shift+E to bypass (or un-bypass) all EQ plugins on selected tracks.
- Press Shift+C to bypass (or un-bypass) all Dynamics plugins on selected tracks.
- Press Shift+V to bypass (or un-bypass) all Reverb plugins on selected tracks.
- Press Shift+D to bypass (or un-bypass) all Delay plugins on selected tracks.
- Press Shift+W to bypass (or un-bypass) all Modulation plugins on selected tracks.

HiDPI Scaling with Some 3rd-Party Plugins

Not all 3rd-party plugins support Pro Tools HiDPI Mode. Pro Tools provides an option in the Pro Tools Plugin window to use Windows OS HiDPI scaling for these plugins on a case-by-case basis.



To enable Windows HiDPI scaling for a plugin:

- Click the Scaling button in the upper-right corner of the plugin window (just under the Target button) to toggle Windows HiDPI Display Scaling on (blue) or off (gray).



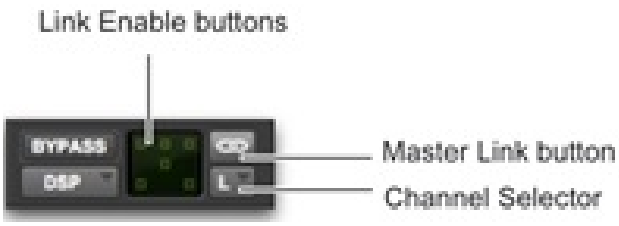
The plugin UI scales to match the Windows OS display scaling options in Windows Settings.

For more information about HiDPI scaling, see Enable HiDPI Mode (Windows Only).

Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins

When a multi-mono plugin is used on a stereo track or greater-than-stereo multichannel track (Pro Tools Ultimate or Studio only), the controls are linked by default. Adjusting the Gain control on one channel, for example, will adjust it for all channels.

You can unlink multi-mono plugin controls on specific channels of a track and edit them independently. You can also selectively link the controls of specific channels.



Channel selector and Link controls (shown with Link disabled)

To unlink controls on a multi-mono plugin:

- Deselect the Master Link button.

To access controls for a specific channel:

- Select the channel from the Channel selector.

To link the controls of specific channels:

1. Deselect the Master Link button if it is not already deselected.
2. Click the Link Enable buttons for the channels whose controls you want to link.



All channels linked except the LFE

Drag and Drop Audio Clips from Pro Tools to AAX Plugins

Pro Tools lets you drag and drop audio clips (stereo or mono) from tracks in the Edit window and Workspace Browsers to AAX plugins, such as Kontakt Player or GrooveCell. When a clip is dragged and dropped into an AAX plugin window it will be committed with any Clip Gain, Clip Effects, Elastic Audio, ARA and track insert processing applied, and a new file will be created in the Audio Files folder within the session folder.



Dragging and dropping clips from audio tracks to GrooveCell

Dragging and dropping a clip from a Pro Tools track results in a post-fader rendered audio file. Consequently, if you drag and drop a clip from a track in Pro Tools that is muted (for example), the resulting file will contain no audio.

Holding any modifier key while dragging a clip prevents it from being dropped into a plugin. This avoids any conflicts with regular audio editing functions.

Pro Tools also lets you drag and drop multiple audio clips from audio tracks to AAX plugins (such as GrooveCell or Kontakt) to create layered samples. You can also can “chop a loop” by transient and then drag and drop those audio clips onto separate pads of a plugin.

Using Hardware Inserts

You can connect external devices, such as reverb or effects processors, to your Pro Tools system and use them as hardware inserts on individual tracks or on submixes.

Pro Tools inserts utilize corresponding hardware input and output channels to send and return the audio. Inserts can be defined, and their channels mapped to audio interface channels on the Insert page in the I/O Setup dialog.

If you plan to use a device as an insert, be sure to connect the device to matching inputs and outputs on your system. For example, a hardware insert being supplied by outputs 7–8 needs to be returned to hardware inputs 7–8.

Delay Compensation can be applied to Hardware Inserts. See "H/W Insert Delay (Compensation) Page" on page 64.

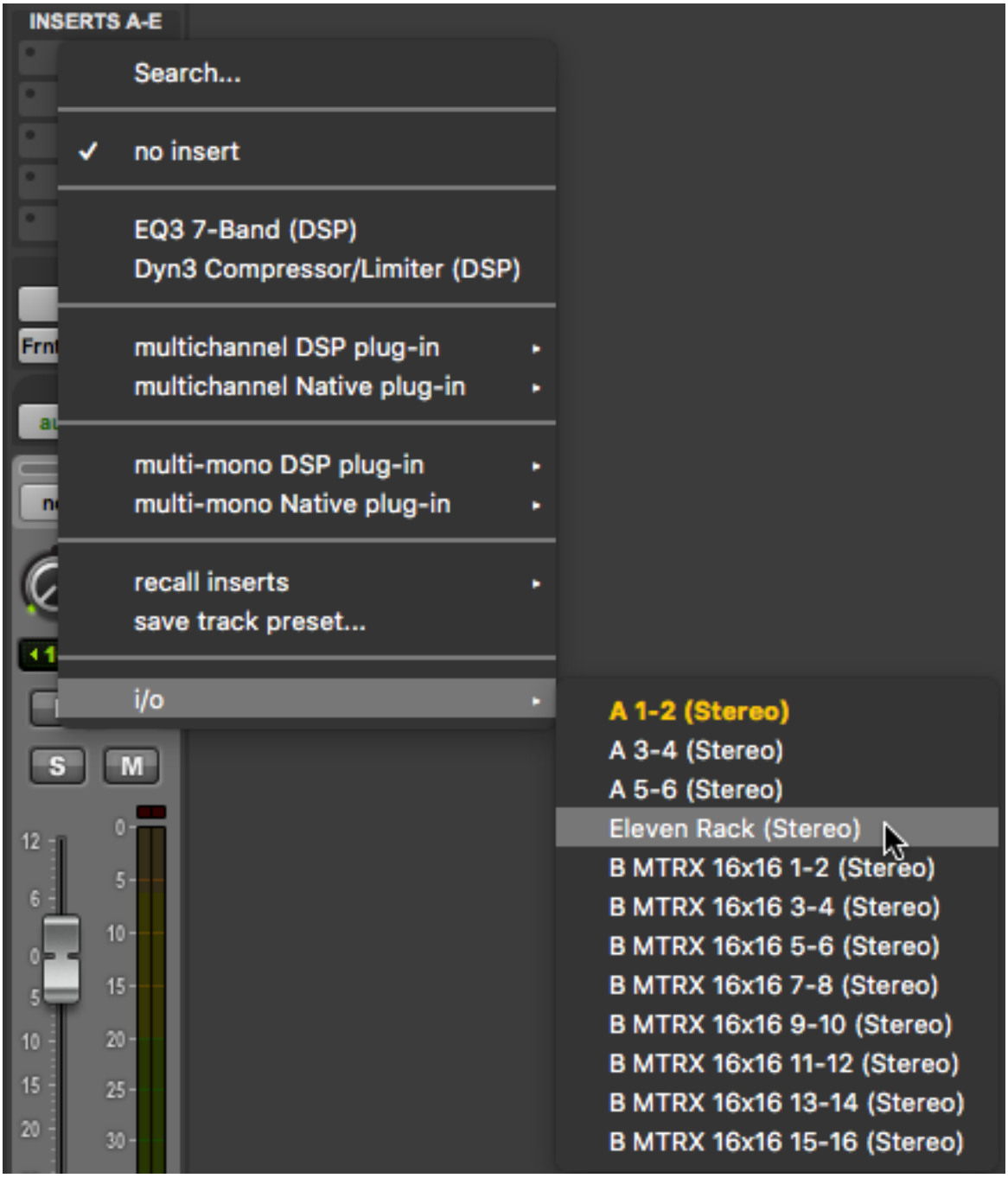
To define a hardware insert:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**, then click the **Insert** tab.
2. Select an insert path, or click **New Path** to create a new Insert path.
3. Double-click the Path Name to enter a custom path name for the insert.
4. Make sure the insert path is set to the correct format (mono, stereo, or other).
5. Map inserts in the Channel Grid as needed. Insert and Output paths have special rules regarding channel mapping (see "Valid Paths and Requirements" on page 87).

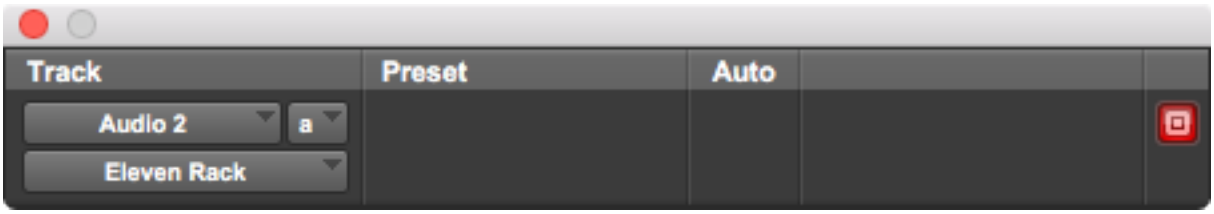
Assigning Hardware Inserts

To assign an external hardware insert to a track:

- Select an insert from the track Insert selector.



Selecting a hardware I/O insert



Hardware Insert window

Bypassing Hardware Inserts

Hardware inserts do not provide a bypass control. To monitor playback without a hardware insert, either set it to Inactive, remove it by reassigning it to No Insert, or use a bypass switch on the hardware device itself. (See "Making Inserts Inactive" on page 1516 for more information.)

Connecting and Integrating External Devices

Pro Tools can create dedicated connections to external analog or digital devices. The number and type of connections depends on what kind of system you have.

To connect an external device to a Pro Tools system:

1. Connect an unused output (or pair of outputs for a stereo device) of your Pro Tools system to an input of the external signal processor.
2. Connect the output of the external signal processor to an unused input (or pair of inputs for a stereo device) of your Pro Tools system.
3. Define what physical ports are routed to Pro Tools input and output ports, as appropriate, in either the Hardware Setup dialog or I/O Setup dialog.
4. Define output, input, or insert paths as appropriate in the I/O Setup dialog.

If you plan to use a device as an insert, be sure to connect the device to matching inputs and outputs on your system. For example, to use outputs 7–8, the insert has to use inputs 7–8 also.

For additional information on connecting external devices, see the User Guide that came with your system.

Connecting Effects Units Digitally

If you want to use the digital inputs and outputs on your Pro Tools system as effects sends and returns to a digital effects device, Pro Tools should be the clock master in most cases. Set your digital effects device to accept an external digital clock so that it synchronizes to Pro Tools.

To set up a digital send to an external device for HDX and HD Native systems:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**
2. Select the audio interface from the Peripherals list (HD I/O, HD MADI, or HD OMNI).
3. Select an audio format and clock format, and set the appropriate channel pair to **Digital**.
4. Select **Internal** from the **Clock Master** pop-up menu.
5. Click **OK**.

To set up a digital send to an external device from a Pro Tools system with 003, 003 Rack+, or 003 Rack:

1. Choose **Setup > Playback Engine** and choose the peripheral.
2. Do one of the following:
   - If the external device is connected to the S/PDIF RCA jacks, deselect S/PDIF Mirroring. (When S/PDIF Mirroring is on, digital output at the S/PDIF RCA jacks exactly mirrors the output of analog Channels 1–2.)
   - If the external device is connected to the Optical ports, choose a format (most likely S/PDIF for an effects device) from the Optical Format pop-up menu.
3. Choose **Internal** from the **Clock Master** pop-up menu.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Optionally, configure the I/O Setup dialog with new path names for effects routing.

If you set the Optical Format to S/PDIF, Pro Tools will watch the Optical port for any audio input, and ignore any audio input on the S/PDIF RCA jacks.

Using External Clock Sources (for Recording and Monitoring)

When recording or monitoring, Pro Tools can synchronize to an external clock source. Options for external clock vary according to the type of Pro Tools system you are using.

HDX and HD Native Systems

HDX and HD Native systems can receive external clock through any of the digital inputs on any Avid HD audio interface (including AES/EBU, S/PDIF, and Optical).

For details on audio interface connections, see the guide for your audio interface.

To select an external clock source for HDX or HD Native systems:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. Select the appropriate audio interface in order to display its settings in the Main page.
3. If necessary, enable the appropriate Digital Format (if you have not already done so, according to the instructions in your User Guide or I/O Guide).
4. Set the **Clock Master** to match the type of input.
5. Configure input routing of the digital source, using the Input and Output pop-up menus, if necessary.
6. Click **OK** to close the Hardware Setup dialog.

Pro Tools Systems with 003, 003 Rack+, or 003 Rack

Pro Tools can receive external clock from the Optical input or S/PDIF input.

To select an external clock source for a Pro Tools system with 003, 003 Rack+, or 003 Rack:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. Set the **Clock Master** to match the type of input.
3. If you select **Optical**, make sure the **Optical Format** matches the type of optical input you are sending to your Pro Tools system.

If you set the Optical Format to S/PDIF, Pro Tools will watch the Optical port for external clock, and ignore any clock input on the S/PDIF RCA jacks.

Pro Tools Systems with Eleven Rack

Pro Tools can receive external clock from the AES/EBU input or S/PDIF input.

To select an external clock source for Eleven Rack:

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. Set the **Clock Master** to match the type of input.

Pro Tools Systems with Mbox Pro or Mbox (3rd generation)

Pro Tools can receive external clock from the S/PDIF input on these interfaces.

To select an external clock source from Pro Tools with an Mbox Pro or Mbox (3rd generation):

1. Choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. Select **SPDIF/RCA** (Mac) or **SPDIF** (Windows) from the **Clock Master** pop-up menu.
3. Click **OK**.

⚠ **Your digital input device must be connected and powered on for Pro Tools to synchronize to it. If your input device is not powered on, leave the Clock Master set to Internal.**

58 DSP Mode

DSP Mode for Ultra-Low Latency Monitoring

(HDX Hybrid Engine or Pro Tools | Carbon Only)

HDX systems using the HDX Hybrid Engine and Pro Tools | Carbon systems let you use DSP Mode to ensure ultra-low latency input and record monitoring with dedicated HDX DSP.

DSP Mode can be can enabled or disabled on a track-by-track basis for Audio, Auxiliary Input, Instrument, Routing Folder, and Master Fader tracks.

To ensure the lowest possible latency for input and record monitoring, DSP and Native plugins cannot be active on the same track while DSP Mode is enabled. For tracks with DSP Mode enabled, all Native plugins on the track (if any) switch to DSP (if a DSP version is available). Any Native-only plugins on the track are automatically bypassed while in DSP Mode.

If you want to offload Native processing from the host CPU to dedicated DSP processing with HDX cards or Pro Tools | Carbon, you can enable DSP Mode on audio tracks regardless of whether or not they are record-armed or input-enabled.

DSP Mode States

The following track-based DSP Mode states are possible, as indicated by the DSP Mode icon:

DSP Mode Enabled

When DSP Mode is enabled on a track, the DSP Mode button turns bright green. All Native plugins with DSP versions switch to DSP while Native only plugins are bypassed. The entire signal path for the track runs on the DSP mixer in Pro Tools | Carbon or the DSP on HDX cards.

Native Mode (DSP Mode Disabled)

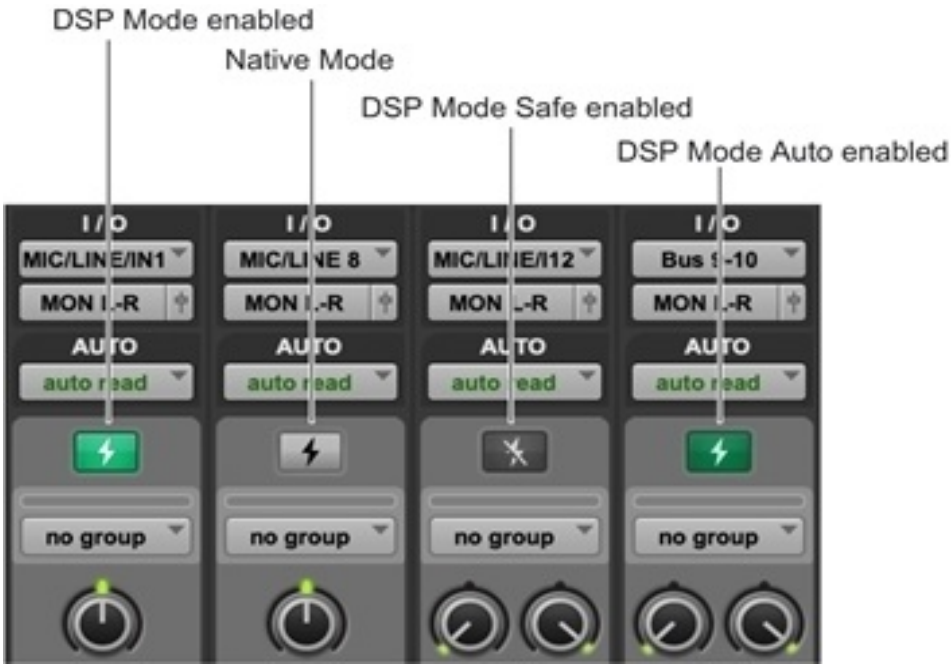
When DSP Mode is disabled on a track it is in Native Mode and the DSP Mode button is gray. All plugins on the track are Native only.

DSP Mode Safe

When DSP Mode Safe is enabled on a track, DSP Mode will not be automatically enabled on that track.

DSP Mode Auto Enabled

If any track is part of the signal chain of another track that is set to DSP Mode, it is automatically set to DSP Mode. When DSP Mode is automatically enabled on a track, the DSP Mode button turns dim green.



DSP Mode button states

Enabling DSP Mode

Enable DSP Mode on tracks for low-latency monitoring during recording or input monitoring. With DSP Mode enabled:

- Protecting low latency is the highest priority.
- The track and its entire signal chain run on the DSP on HDX cards or Pro Tools | Carbon HDX DSP.
- Any Native plugins on the track that are not available in DSP format are bypassed.
- HEAT is not supported on audio tracks in DSP Mode. In the Mix window, HEAT is bypassed for all audio tracks in DSP Mode.

To enable DSP Mode on a track, do one of the following:

- In the Mix or Edit window, click the DSP Mode button on the track so that it lights bright green.
- In the Mix or Edit window, right-click the DSP Mode button on the track and select DSP Mode.



Track DSP Mode button enabled: in the Edit window (top) and in the Mix window (bottom)

- Right-click the Track name in the Track List, or in the Edit or Mix window, and select DSP Mode. The DSP Mode button is not shown when the Track Height is set to Small, Mini, or Micro in the Edit

window. In this case, use this method to enable (or disable) DSP Mode, or do so in the Mix window.



Right-click a track name to enable DSP Mode in the Edit window

Select the Enable DSP Mode when Tracks with Hardware Inputs are Record-Armed/Input-Enabled option in the Operation Preferences (Setup › Preferences) to automatically enable DSP Mode when record arming or enabling input monitoring tracks. See *"Operation Preferences" on page 142.*

Enabling DSP Mode Safe

Use DSP Mode Safe to prevent DSP Mode from being automatically enabled on a track. This is useful if you want to route any audio from a DSP Mode–enabled track with any plugins that are only available in Native format. For example, you might want to send audio from a DSP Mode–enabled audio track to a DSP Mode Safe–enabled Auxiliary Input track for processing with a reverb plugin that is only available as a Native plugin. DSP Safe Mode can also be useful if you just need to avoid using DSP for plugins on a track for any reason.

To enable DSP Mode Safe on a track, do one of the following:

- Right-click the Track name in the Track List, or in the Edit or Mix window, and select **DSP Mode Safe**.



Enabling DSP Mode Safe on a track in the Mix window

- In the Mix or Edit window, right-click the DSP Mode button on the track and select **DSP Mode Safe**.
- In the Mix or Edit window, Command-click the DSP Mode button on the track.

Tracks in DSP Mode provide ultra-low-latency monitoring, whereas tracks in Native Mode introduce latency when monitoring live inputs. Consequently, live audio monitored both through tracks in DSP Mode and tracks in Native Mode (including DSP Mode Safe-enabled tracks) may not be aligned.

DSP Mode Indicators for Plugins, Inserts, Sends, and Outputs

DSP-Compatible Badge for plugins

For plugins that are available in both Native and DSP formats, the DSP-Compatible Badge appears to the right of plugin name in the Plugin Insert selector. Plugins without this badge are only available in Native format and, if inserted on a track, are automatically bypassed when DSP Mode is enabled on that track.

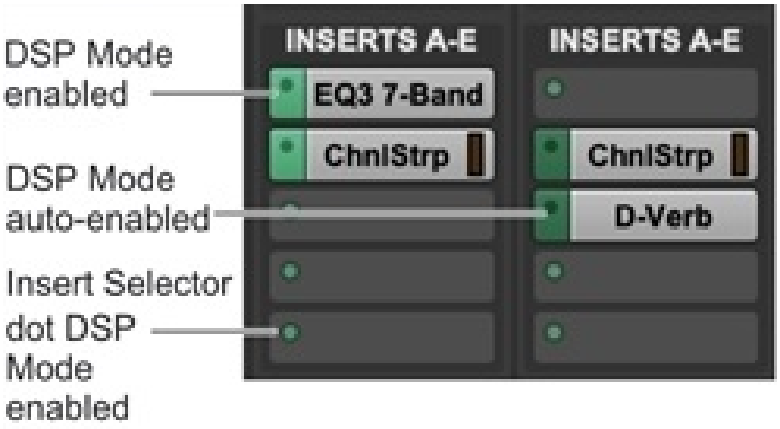


DSP-compatible badge

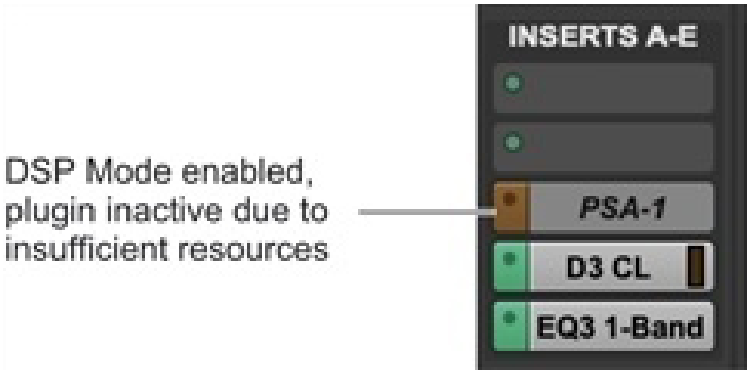
DSP Mode Insert Indicators

Plugin Insert selectors change color to indicate whether DSP plugins are inserted on a track that is DSP Mode enabled or DSP Mode auto-enabled, or if a plugin has been made inactive due to insufficient DSP resources.

DSP Mode	Color
Enabled	Green
Auto-enabled	Dark Green
Inactive due to insufficient resources	Dark Orange



Insert DSP Mode indicators



DSP Mode Insert inactive indicators

Plugin Format Indicator in plugin Windows

The Plugin Format indicator is color coded to indicate whether DSP plugins are inserted on a track that is DSP Mode–enabled or DSP Mode–auto enabled, or if a plugin has been made inactive due to insufficient DSP resources. Similarly, with Dynamics plugins, the Key Input selector turns dark orange to indicate that there are insufficient DSP resources.



DSP Mode enabled



DSP Mode automatically enabled



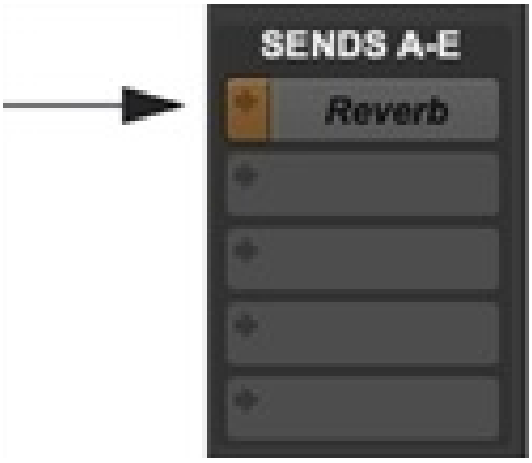
DSP Mode, DSP plugin inactive due to insufficient DSP resources



DSP Mode, Key Input inactive due to insufficient DSP resources

Send Selector DSP Mode Indicator

When a Send is made inactive due to insufficient DSP resources, the Send selector appears dark orange and any text is italicized.



DSP Mode-enabled, send inactive due to insufficient resources

Output View Selector DSP Mode Indicator

When a track output is made inactive due to insufficient DSP resources, the Output View selector appears dark orange and any text is italicized.



DSP Mode-enabled, track output inactive due to insufficient resources

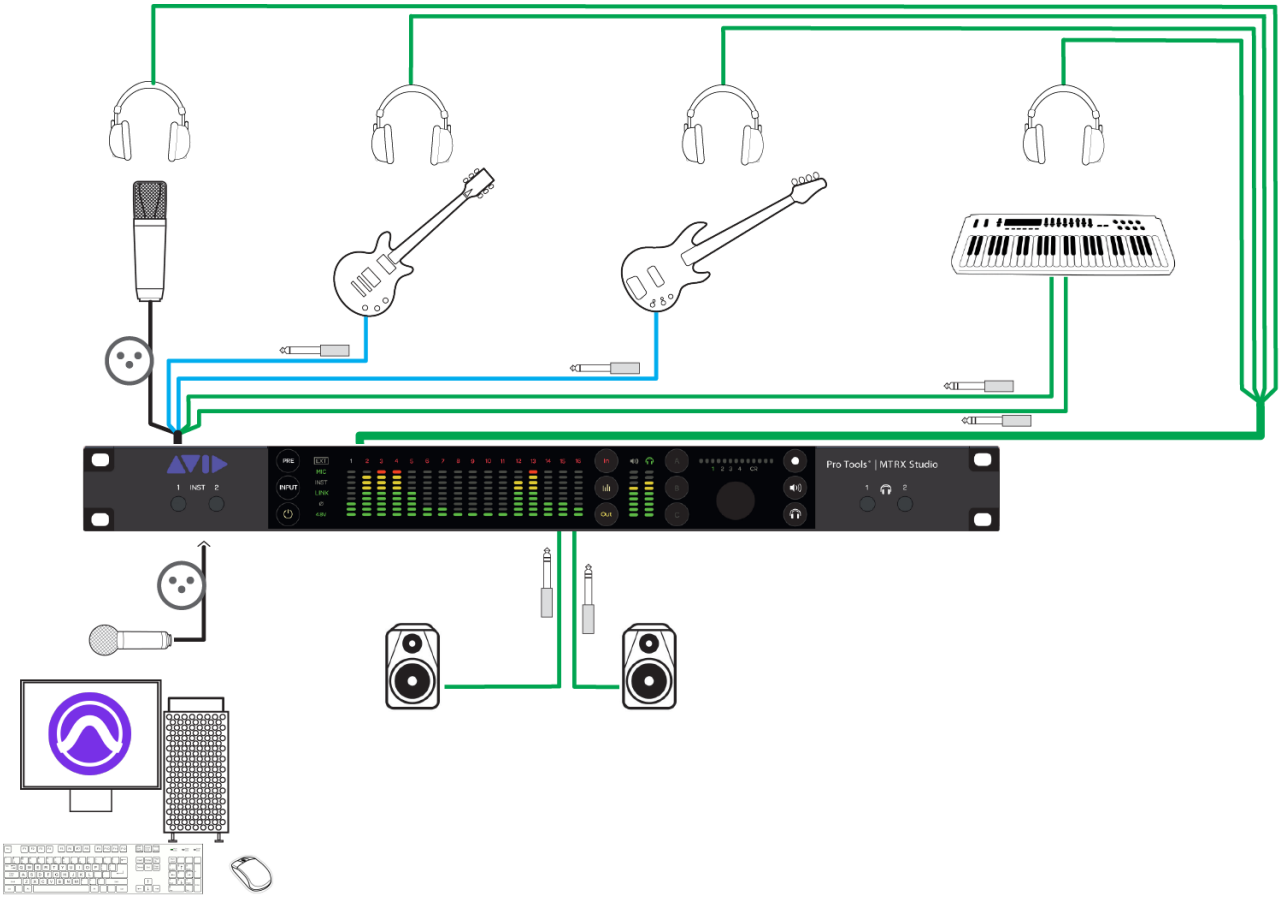
Workflow Example: Recording in DSP Mode for Ultra-Low Latency Monitoring

The following workflow example uses DSP Mode for recording a singer with DSP plugin processing and low-latency monitoring.

This example session is made up of the following tracks (see the graphic on the next page):

- 3 mono audio tracks for vocals, guitar, and bass. Each track has EQ and dynamics plugins, and the vocal track also has a slap-back delay.
- 2 stereo audio tracks, one for electric piano and another for drum loops. Each track has EQ and dynamics plugins.
- 1 stereo Auxiliary Input track for reverb processing.
- 2 Master Fader tracks, one for control room monitoring and the other for the singer's headphones. Each has a limiter on it.
- 1 mono Auxiliary Input track for the built-in talkback mic.

The following diagram shows the physical studio connections for this workflow example. While this workflow example only reviews recording vocals in DSP Mode with a dedicated headphone mix, you can just as easily have independent headphone mixes for the rest of the band.



Physical studio connections (HDX Hybrid Engine with MTRX Studio shown)

Adjust the Mix for Recording

Start playback to set the levels and panning of the instruments to get the mix you want in the control room monitors. Set the send levels from each track to balance the headphone mix. Input-enable the vocal track and use the talkback mic to communicate with the singer and adjust the headphone mix to the singer's liking. Once the singer is happy with the headphone mix, you are ready to record some vocals.



Session with the band already recorded

Record with Ultra-Low Latency Monitoring

Enable DSP Mode on the vocal track. Notice that all tracks that are part of the signal chain for the vocal track have DSP Mode enabled automatically: the reverb Auxiliary Input track and both Master Fader tracks.

All plugins on these tracks switch from Native to DSP format (any Native only plugins on any of these tracks are automatically bypassed). Record-arm the vocal track, and when the singer is ready, start recording. The singer will hear themselves in the mix with virtually no latency.



Recording vocals in DSP Mode for ultra-low latency monitoring

Use DSP Mode Safe to Record with Native Reverb

Let's assume that you have a Native-only reverb plugin that you really like. You can still record vocals with virtually no latency in their monitor mix while still using your favorite Native-only reverb plugin to process all of the audio tracks. Enable DSP Mode Safe on the reverb track and set the wet/dry mix on the reverb plugin to 100% wet. Enable DSP Mode on the vocal track—DSP Mode is enabled for all tracks in the signal chain of the vocal track except for the reverb track. Record-arm the vocal track and when the singer is ready, start

recording. There will be latency on the reverb track, but given the nature of reverb processing it won't really be noticeable. The important thing is that the talent won't hear any latency in the mix with their performance.



Session configured for recording vocals, but with Auxiliary Input track in DSP Mode Safe for Native reverb processing

Tips for Using DSP Mode

To ensure optimal workflows in DSP Mode:

- Use input and output gain controls on Native-only plugin inserts to make up for any undesirable changes in signal level when switching between Native Mode and DSP Mode.
- Since DSP Mode does not reduce latency for tracks that are not part of a live signal path, avoid enabling DSP Mode on tracks that are not part of the signal chain for recording and input monitoring. However, note that DSP Mode can be used to offload plugin processing from the CPU when mixing without consequence.
- To avoid unnecessarily enabling DSP Mode automatically on tracks that are fed by other channels of a multi-channel bus, use dedicated mono bus paths instead of mono sub-paths of stereo buses when routing mono audio signals with tracks in DSP Mode. You will need to specifically create mono bus paths in I/O Setup since the default bus paths will always be stereo with mono sub-paths.
- Avoid routing unrelated signals to the channels of a multichannel bus. For example, avoid routing a guitar signal to the left channel and a bass signal to the right channel of the same stereo bus.

59 Automation

Pro Tools features dynamic automation of mixing controls on each of the track types. You can write automation moves and view them in real time during playback and recording in your session. You can also edit automation data with the same techniques you use to edit audio and MIDI data.

Automation Accuracy with Control Surfaces

Control Surfaces

D-Control, D-Command, C|24, and Command|8 control surfaces support the automation features in Pro Tools. Pro Tools control surfaces provide 10-bit resolution, or 1,024 steps of fader resolution. Pro Tools interpolates this input to 24-bit resolution on playback, resulting in extremely accurate and smooth fader automation.

For details on using control surfaces to create mix automation, see your control surface guide.

EUCON

Avid control surfaces using EUCON, such as S6, Dock, S1, S3, and Artist Series controllers, provide 12-bit resolution fader and knob control.

MIDI Control Surfaces

Most MIDI control surfaces have 7-bit resolution, or 128 steps. Pro Tools interpolates this input to 24-bit resolution on playback, resulting in accurate and smooth fader automation.

Automation Overview

Pro Tools provides many options for recording, replacing, and editing automation data.

The basic steps for automation recording are:

- Enable the automation type that you want to record (volume, pan, mute, send level, send pan, send mute, or plugin automation).
- Put the appropriate tracks in an automation writing mode (Write, Touch, or Latch, or a Trim mode).
- If you are automating a plugin, enable the individual plugin controls to be automated.
- Automation Safe any plugins, outputs, or sends that have existing automation data that you want to protect from being overwritten.
- Begin playback to begin automation recording, and adjust controls as needed. Pro Tools remembers all moves performed on enabled controls.

To edit automation once it has been recorded, you can:

- Repeat the above steps to write new automation over the previous data.
- Graphically edit the automation data in the Edit window.
- Cut, copy, paste, or delete automation data (certain restrictions apply).

Automation Playlists

Each Pro Tools track contains a single automation playlist for each automatable parameter. The available options vary depending on track type, track channel width, and track output path channel width.

On audio tracks, these parameters include:

- Volume
- Volume Trim (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- LFE (.1 surround outputs only, Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Mute
- Object Toggle (Object tracks only, Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Pan
- Send Level
- Send Level Trim (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Send Pan
- Send Mute
- Plugin controls

Routing Folder tracks let you view and edit track automation, such as Volume and Pan, either in the corresponding track view or in Automation lanes. Routing Folder track automation is independent of any automation on member tracks, and editing Routing Folder track automation does not affect the automation on member tracks.

On Auxiliary Input tracks (and Routing Folder tracks), these parameters include:

- Volume
- Volume Trim (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- LFE (.1 surround outputs only, Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Mute
- Object Toggle (Object tracks only, Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Pan
- Send Level
- Send Level Trim (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Send Pan
- Send Mute
- Plugin controls

On Master Faders, these parameters include:

- Volume
- Volume Trim (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Plugin controls

On MIDI tracks, these parameters include:

- MIDI Volume
- MIDI Pan
- MIDI Mute
- pitch bend
- mono aftertouch

- program change
- Sysex
- controllers

On Instrument tracks, these parameters include:

- MIDI Volume
- MIDI Pan
- MIDI Mute
- pitch bend
- mono aftertouch
- program change
- sysex
- controllers
- Audio Volume
- Volume Trim (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- LFE (.1 surround outputs only, Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Mute
- Object Toggle (Object tracks only, Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Pan
- Send Level
- Send Level Trim (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Send Pan
- Send Mute
- Plugin controls

On VCA Master tracks, these parameters include:

- Volume
- Volume Trim
- Mute

You can display and edit each of these automatable playlists individually from Pro Tools, even during playback.

In addition, on MIDI and Instrument tracks you can display and edit other continuous MIDI controller data (such as mod wheel, breath controller, foot controller, or sustain) in a similar manner. For more information on editing MIDI data, see "Continuous Controller Events" on page 1042.

Automation Playlists with Audio and MIDI Clips

Pro Tools handles audio clips and their automation playlists differently from MIDI clips and their automation playlists.

Audio Tracks

On audio tracks, automation data resides on a separate playlist from audio data and clips. Each edit playlist on an audio track shares the same automation data.

MIDI and Instrument Tracks

On MIDI tracks and Instrument tracks, all controller automation data except for MIDI Mute data, or audio mute (Instrument tracks only), is stored in the MIDI clip that contains it. Each edit playlist on the track is separate, and represents a distinct performance, complete with controller automation.

MIDI Mute data is independent of the MIDI data in a MIDI clip. This lets you mute playback of individual MIDI or Instrument tracks in Pro Tools without altering the controller data.

Trim Automation Playlists

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Separate Trim automation playlists are available for Volume trim and Send Level trim. Volume trim is available on all track types except MIDI tracks. Send Level trim is available on audio tracks only.

Each Trim automation playlist shows the position of the Trim fader with yellow breakpoint automation that can be edited. For more information on Trim playlists, see "Trim Mode" on page 1575 and "Viewing Automation" on page 1579.

Multiple Edit Playlists and Audio Track Automation

All edit playlists on a single audio track share the same automation data. When you record or edit automation data in an audio track, the automation data is stored in the track's corresponding automation playlist so it can be edited with, or independently from, its associated audio clips.

MIDI continuous controller data always follows clip editing, with the exception of mute. See "MIDI and Instrument Tracks" above for more information.

- When you copy or cut audio data from a track while it is in Waveform view, the underlying automation data is cut or copied with it.
- If you paste audio data from other locations or tracks into an edit playlist, you may change the underlying automation data on the track.
- When you trim clips using **`Edit > Trim`**, the underlying automation data remains unchanged.

For more information, see "Editing Automation" on page 1601.

Duplicating Tracks for Playlist Editing

The **`Duplicate Track`** command provides a convenient way to make a working copy of a track to experiment with routing, plugins, and automation. This protects the original track and its automation data from being edited or overwritten.

For more information, see "Duplicating Tracks" on page 339.

Automation Modes

Automation modes control how a track's automation data is written and played back. Each track provides an Automation Mode selector for selecting the track's Automation mode.

Off Mode

Off mode turns off automation for all automatable parameters:

- Volume
- Pan
- Mute

- Send volume, pan, and mute
- Plugin controls
- MIDI volume, pan, and mute

In Off mode, automation data for these parameters is ignored during playback. All other MIDI controller data is sent.

Automation can be switched from Off to another Automation mode during playback or record.

Read Mode

Read mode plays any automation that was previously written for a track.

Write Mode

Write mode writes automation from the time playback starts to the time it stops, erasing any previously written automation for the duration of the automation pass.

AutoMatch can be applied to a Write automation pass. See "AutoMatch Time" on page 1578.

"After Write Pass, Switch To" Option

You can set Pro Tools to automatically change to Touch mode or Latch mode, or remain in Write mode after the completion of an automation pass in Write mode.

To set the Automation mode after a Write pass:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Under Automation, select an **After Write Pass, Switch To** option (**Touch**, **Latch**, or **No Change**).
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.

Touch Mode

Touch mode writes automation only while a fader or switch is touched or clicked with the mouse. When the fader is released, the writing of automation stops and the fader returns to any previously automated position, at a rate determined by the AutoMatch and Touch Timeout settings. See "Automation Preferences" on page 1577.

In Touch mode, certain control surfaces start writing automation as soon as you touch them. These include touch-sensitive fader controllers, such as D-Control, D-Command, C|24, 003, or Command|8.

With other control surfaces in Touch mode, writing of automation does not begin until the fader hits the *pass-through point*, or the previously automated position. Once you reach the pass-through point with the fader, or a non-touch sensitive rotary control, writing of automation begins and continues until you stop moving the fader.

Latch Mode

Latch mode works in the same way as Touch mode, writing automation only if you touch or move a control. However, unlike Touch, writing of automation continues until you stop playback or "punch out" of the automation pass by changing the Automation mode to Read or Touch.

AutoMatch can be applied to a Latch automation pass. See "AutoMatch Time" on page 1578.

Latch mode is particularly useful for automating Pan controls and plugins on non-touch sensitive rotary controls, since it does not time out and revert to its previous position when you release a control.



See also "Writing Automation to the Start, End, or All of a Track or Selection" on page 1616.

AutoJoin with Latch Mode

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Pro Tools provides two different methods to resume writing automation on controls that were active at the point where the transport stopped:

AutoJoin

Lets you automatically resume writing automation in Latch mode.

Join

Lets you manually resume writing automation in Latch mode. To Join, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the **Auto Join** button in the Automation window (**Window > Automation**). Join is also available with supported control surfaces.

To enable AutoJoin from Pro Tools:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Click the **AutoJoin** button.

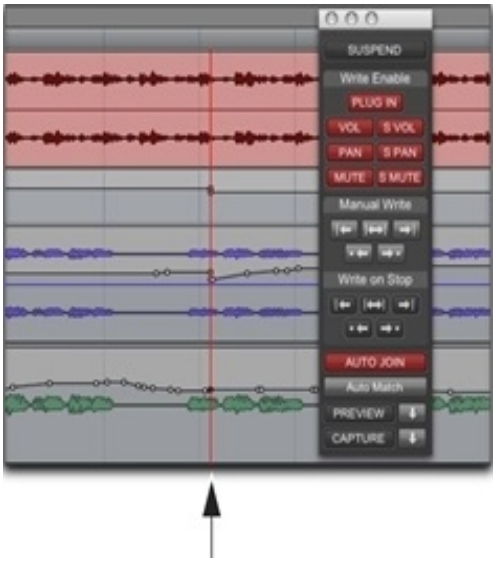


AutoJoin Enable button in the Automation window

See your control surface guide for details on using Join and AutoJoin with a control surface.

AutoJoin Indicator

After a Latch automation pass with AutoJoin enabled, the AutoJoin indicator appears in the Pro Tools Edit window.



AutoJoin indicator in the Edit window

The AutoJoin indicator is a vertical line that signifies the point where the last automation pass was stopped, and the point where the "join" will automatically occur on all tracks that were writing during that previous pass. When automation writing is resumed from this point, the line disappears.

To use Join or AutoJoin to resume writing on controls that were writing when the transport stopped, restart the transport before the AutoJoin indicator.

Touch/Latch Mode

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Touch/Latch Automation mode places a track's Volume control in Touch mode and all other automatable controls in Latch mode.

In Touch/Latch mode, the Volume control follows Touch behavior, writing automation when touched and returning to previously written levels when released.

All other controls follow Latch behavior, writing automation when touched and continuing until playback stops, or until you punch out of writing automation.



Selecting Touch/Latch mode

Trim Mode

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio can adjust (or *trim*) existing track volume and send level automation data in real time. Pan, mute and plugin automation cannot be trimmed in this manner. Trim mode works in combination with the other Automation modes (Read, Touch, Latch, Touch/Latch, and Write) and is useful when you want to preserve all of your volume automation moves, but need to make levels a bit louder or softer to balance a mix. For more information, see "Trim Automation Modes" below.

When writing automation in Trim mode, fader moves write *relative* rather than *absolute* values. The existing automation data is changed by the amount of increase or decrease (or the *delta* value) indicated by the faders.

When Trim mode is enabled, non-trimmable controls behave in the same manner as in the standard Automation modes, with the exception of Write/Trim mode, where non-trimmable controls operate as in Touch mode.

Trim Automation Modes

When a track is in a Trim automation mode (except for Trim Off) its main Volume faders and all Send level faders are displayed in yellow. When trimming, a track's Volume indicator or Send Level indicator shows the delta value being written rather than the absolute value.

Behavior of the Trim Automation modes also depends on the Coalesce Trim Automation preference setting. See "Coalescing Trim Automation" on page 1615.

Trim Off

Trim Off turns off reading and writing of all automation (main and trim) for a track. All automation moves are ignored during playback. Trim faders are temporarily set to zero when a track is set to Trim Off mode.

Depending on the Coalesce Trim Automation preference setting, changing a track to Trim Off can coalesce Trim automation on that track. See "Coalescing Trim Automation" on page 1615.

Automation can be switched from Trim Off to another Automation mode during playback or record.

Read Trim

In Read Trim mode, Volume and Send level Trim faders are disengaged from the main automation playlist and follow any existing Trim automation. You can move a Trim fader during playback to audition new trim values, but no automation is written. When the Trim fader is released, it returns to any previously written Trim automation values.

If a track does not contain Trim automation, you can move a Trim fader during playback to audition new trim values, but no automation is written. The Trim fader retains its position until the track is removed from Trim mode, or if you manually coalesce the Trim level.

When this mode is enabled, non-trimmable controls (all controls other than track volume and send level) behave as if they are in regular Read mode—no automation data is written.

Touch Trim

In Touch Trim mode, Volume and Send level Trim faders are disengaged from the main automation playlist and follow any existing Trim automation. When a Trim fader is touched, writing of Trim automation begins. When the fader is released, writing stops and the fader returns to any previously written Trim automation values.

The rate of the fader's return to previous trim values is determined by the AutoMatch Time specified in the Automation Preferences page. See "AutoMatch Time" on page 1578 for more information.

When this mode is enabled, non-trimmable controls (all controls other than track volume and send level) behave as if they are in regular Touch mode—they follow the previously written automation until touched. When they are touched, their absolute positions are written until the control is released or until playback stops.

Latch Trim

In Latch Trim mode, Volume and Send level Trim faders are disengaged from the main automation playlist and follow any existing Trim automation. When a Trim fader is touched, writing of Trim automation begins. Writing of Trim automation continues until playback stops, or until you punch out of writing automation.

When this mode is enabled, non-trimmable controls (all controls other than track volume and send level) behave as if they are in regular Latch mode—they follow the previously written automation until touched. When they are touched, their absolute positions are written until playback is stopped.

Touch/Latch Trim

In Touch/Latch Trim mode, Volume and Send level faders are disengaged from the main automation playlist and follow any existing Trim automation. The main Volume Trim fader follows Touch Trim behavior, and Send level Trim faders follow Latch Trim behavior.

Write Trim

In Write Trim mode, as soon as playback begins, writing of Trim automation begins for Volume and Send levels, and continues until playback stops, or until you punch out of writing automation.

When Write Trim mode is enabled, non-trimmable controls (all controls other than track volume and send level) are not in Write mode, but behave as if they are in *regular Touch mode* (no automation is written unless a control is touched). This is to prevent the controls from overwriting all of their automation data on every pass in Write Trim mode.

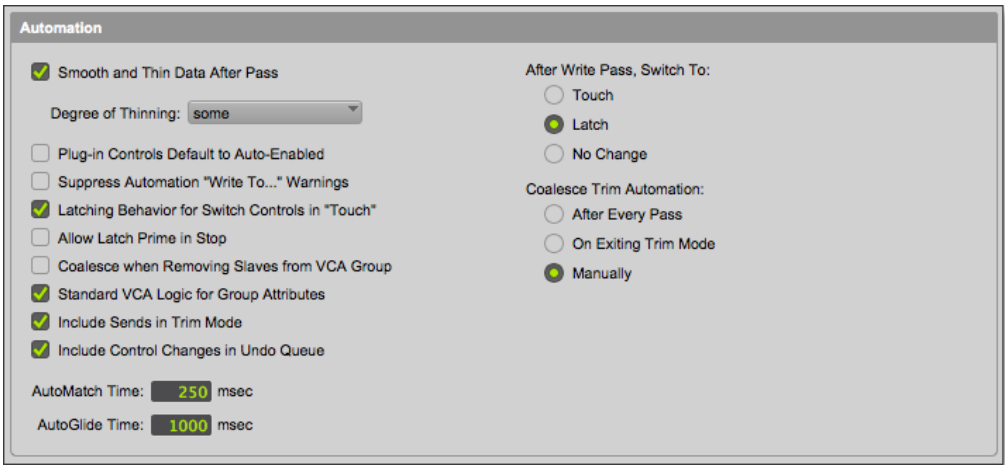
The "After Write Pass, Switch To" preference affects Write Trim mode. After an automation pass in Write/Trim mode, tracks automatically switch to the Trim mode version of the setting specified by this preference.

Automation Preferences

Pro Tools gives you several options for controlling the writing and playback of automation data.

To display Automation preferences:

- Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.



Mixing Preferences page, Automation

For detailed information on Pro Tools Automation preferences, see "Mixing Preferences" on page 155.

Send Levels and Trim Mode

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) You can set Pro Tools to exclude Send levels from Trim mode, so that only the Main Volume goes into Trim when a track is put into Trim mode. This gives you more flexibility in setting Send levels while in Trim mode.

To exclude Send levels from Trim mode:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Under Automation, deselect **Include Sends in Trim Mode**.

   Any uncoalesced automation on a Send will still coalesce when the other automation on its track is coalesced, even if "Include Sends in Trim Mode" is deselected.

3. Click **OK**.

Smoothing

When you perform automation moves (including Trim moves) with a continuous control, Pro Tools records the move as a series of very small steps, resulting in a staircase pattern with many breakpoints. Smoothing intelligently resolves this staircase pattern into a single, smooth ramp from one breakpoint to the next. (Smoothing does not apply to switched controls such as mutes or plugin bypasses.) With smoothing enabled, the resulting automation data is often a more accurate representation of actual automation moves.

Thinning

Thinning automatically reduces the overall number of breakpoints in an automation playlist (including Trim playlists) in order to improve system performance. The amount of thinning applied is determined by the Degree of Thinning setting in the Automation Preferences page. When using high amounts of thinning, the resulting automation may differ noticeably from the original automation moves. Thinning only applies to audio tracks, and does not affect MIDI tracks. For instructions, see "Thinning Automation" on page 1599.

AutoMatch Time

AutoMatch Time is the amount of time it takes for a fader to return (by ramping up or down) to the level of automation still on the track as the automation pass ends. This time value is set in the Automation Preferences page (see "Automation Preferences" on the previous page).

AutoMatch is automatically applied to all Touch mode passes, and can be applied to Latch or Write passes.

The AutoMatch Time also determines the rate at which delta values written with the Trim will return to 0 dB (delta value of zero).

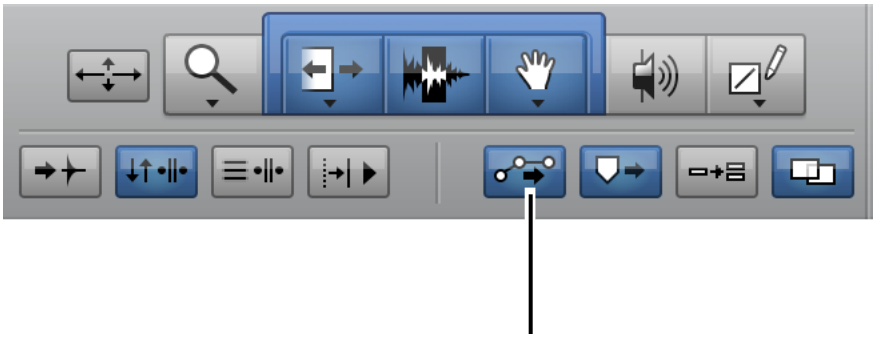
The AutoMatch feature works with continuous controls (such as Volume or Pan) by ramping their values back to previously automated levels. There are some stepped controls (for example, the EQ type in the 1-band EQ plugin) that provide more than two discrete steps over their operational range. AutoMatch has no effect on these controls.

Automation Follows Edit Option

When disabled, automation events are not affected by edits to audio or MIDI notes. When enabled, automation events are affected by edits to audio or MIDI notes.

To enable or disable Automation Follows Edit, do one of the following:

- Select or deselect **Options > Automation Follows Edit**.
- Click the Automation Follows Edit indicator in the Edit window toolbar. The indicator is highlighted blue when enabled. When disabled, the indicator is highlighted orange.



Automation Follows Edit indicator in the Edit window

Automation Safe

Outputs, sends, and plugins can be placed in Automation Safe mode. In Automation Safe mode, any automation associated with an Output window (such as track or send level, panning, or mute), or plugin on that track, is protected from being overwritten while automating other items on that track.



Automation Safe enabled send

Automation Safe mode suspends automation recording for the selected track output, send, or plugin that is enabled. You can also suspend automation recording and playback session-wide from the Automation window. See "Enabling and Suspending Automation" on page 1595.

Viewing Automation

Pro Tools creates a separate playlist in the Edit window for each type of automation in a track, including a playlist for each type of Trim automation. This data can be viewed and edited in the same way as audio and MIDI data. You can either change Track Views to show the automation you want, or you can reveal an Automation lane under the track regardless of its Track View.

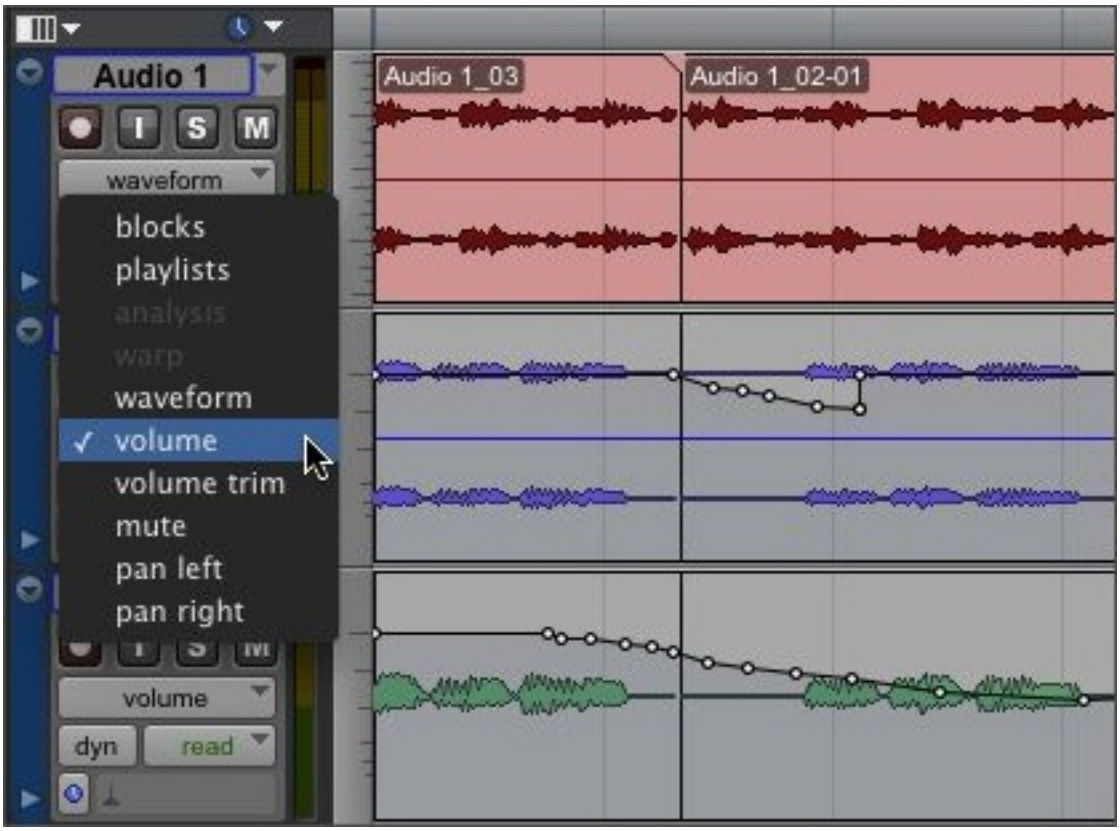
You can easily toggle between different Track Views. See "Changing Track Views" on page 346.

Track Views

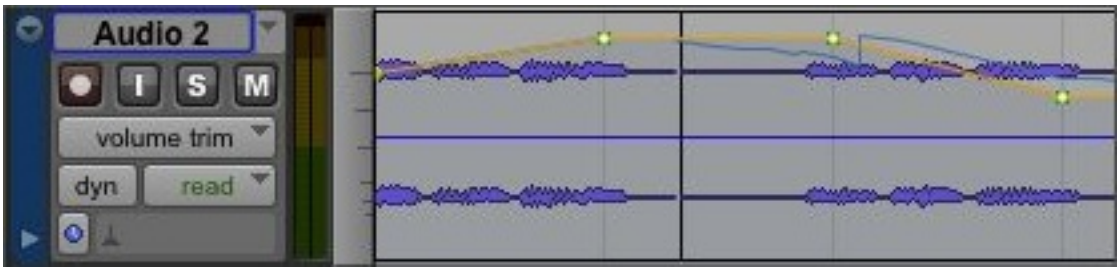
You can view automation data by type by selecting the corresponding Track View.

To display an automation playlist in the Track View:

- Click the Track View selector and select from the automation type you want to view.



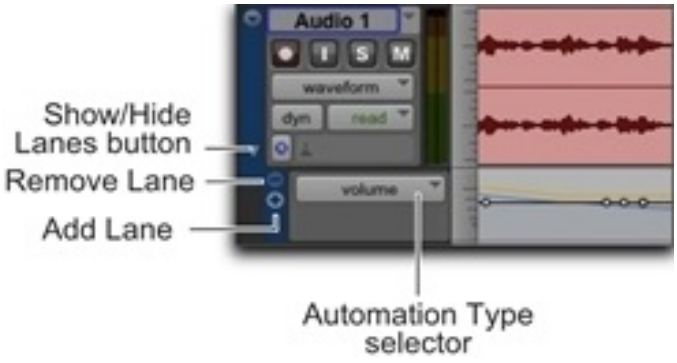
Displaying a standard automation playlist



Trim automation playlist

Automation and Controller Lanes

In the Edit window, you can view automation and controller data under a track (regardless of the selected Track View). Each track provides Automation and Controller lanes that let you edit track automation and controller data without changing the Track View. You can edit automation and controller data in lanes exactly the same way that you do in different automation and controller Track Views.



Revealing an Automation lane

Automation and Controller lanes can be shown or hidden. You can also add and remove lanes. These lanes always remain under the track, but you can resize and reorder lanes independently of one another.

To show or hide Automation lanes under the main track view, do one of the following:

- Click the Show/Hide Lanes button.
- Click the Automation/Controller Type selector and choose **`hide all automation lanes`**.

To add a lane:

- Click the Add Lane button.

To remove lanes:

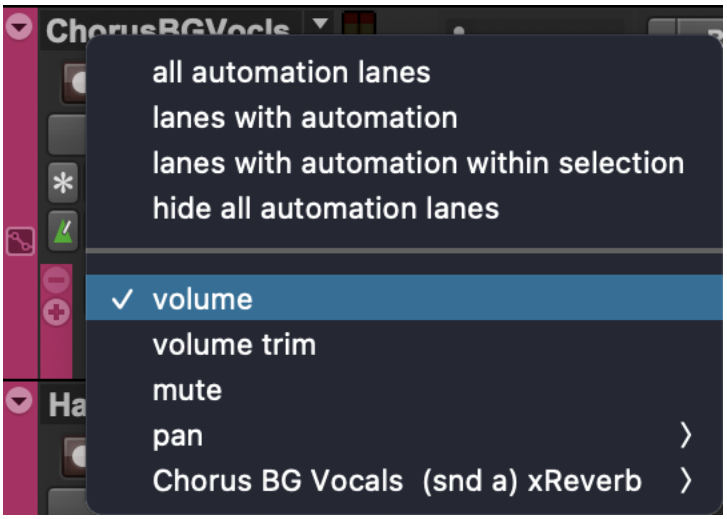
- Click the Remove Lane button.

To mute a lane:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the name plate of the automation lane.

To change the Automation or Controller type for a lane:

- Click the Automation/Controller Type selector and select the Automation or Controller type you want.



Selecting the Automation type for a lane

To show all or only certain automation lanes, do one of the following:

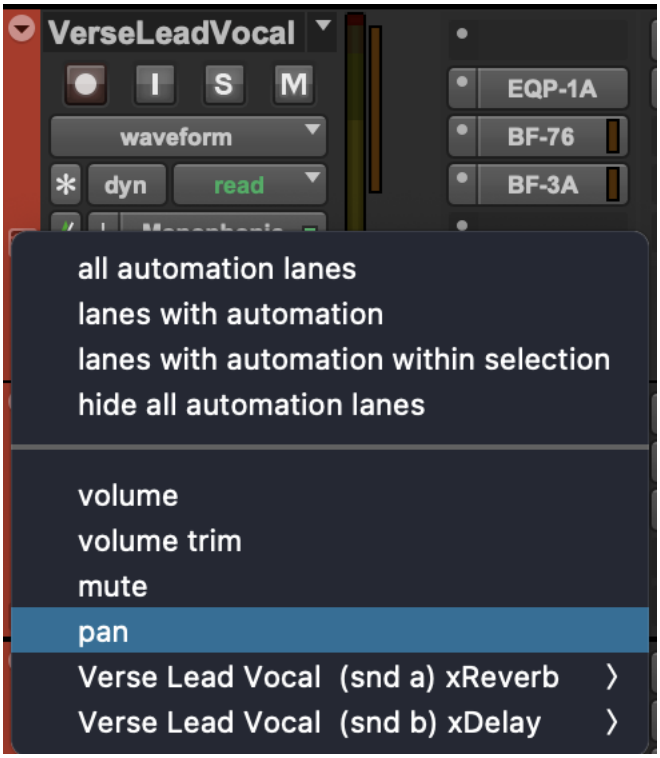
- Click the Automation/Controller Type selector and choose **`all automation lanes`**.
- Click the Automation/Controller Type selector and choose **`lanes with automation`**.
- Click the Automation/Controller Type selector and choose **`lanes with automation within selection`**.

Automation in a selection is recognized if there is a breakpoint or a ramp in the automation line.

All of these commands can be assigned custom Keyboard Shortcuts (Setup › Keyboard Shortcuts).

To replace all Automation and Controller lanes under the track with a single lane of the specified automation or controller type:

1. Right-click the Show/Hide Lanes button.
2. Select the Automation or Controller type you want.



Right-click menu for selecting a single Automation or Controller lane

To resize the height of all Automation and Controller lanes for a track, do one of the following:

- Right-click on the vertical zoom scale just to the right of the track controls and select the height from the pop-up menu.
- Drag the bottom line of any given Lane Controls column up or down. The cursor changes to indicate that you can resize the lane.

Press Control+Up/Down Arrow key (Mac) or Start+Up/Down Arrow key (Windows) to increase or decrease height of any lane that contains the Edit cursor or an Edit selection.

To resize the height of a single Automation or Controller lane for a track:

- Press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) while selecting the Lane Height setting.

To reorder lanes:

- To reorder lanes on-screen, drag the lane control section to new positions in the Edit window.

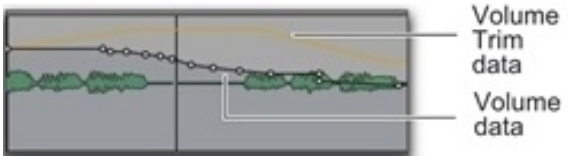
Displaying Trim Automation Along with the Main Playlist

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) The appearance of Trim automation depends on how it is set to be coalesced. See "Coalescing Trim Automation" on page 1615.

If automation is not set to coalesce after every automation pass, you can display Trim automation data along with the main Volume or Send level automation data in the same automation view. This Trim automation display cannot be directly edited.

To display the Trim automation playlist along with main automation playlist on tracks:

- Select **`View > Automation > Trim Playlist`**.



Display of Trim automation in a main Volume playlist

Displaying the Composite Automation Playlist

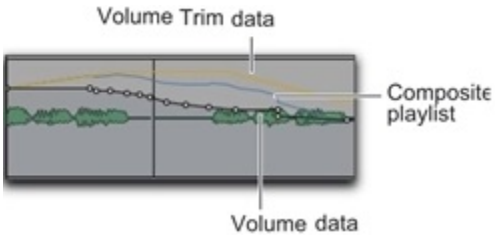
(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

If automation is not set to coalesce after every automation pass, you can display a composite automation playlist that shows the contribution of the Trim automation to the main Volume or Send Level automation data. This composite playlist display cannot be directly edited.

The composite playlist is shown in both the main automation playlist and the Trim automation playlist.

To display the composite playlist:

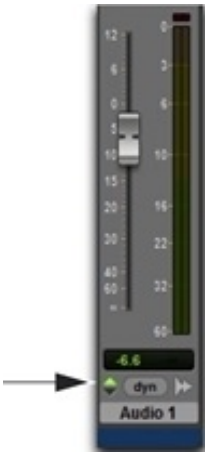
- Select **`View > Automation > Composite Playlist`**.



Display of Trim automation and the composite playlist in a main Volume playlist

AutoMatch Indicators

There are triangular AutoMatch indicators at the bottom left of each channel strip in the Mix window. When lit, these indicate the direction the fader will automatically move when Auto-Matching.



Triangular AutoMatch indicator on a channel strip

Indication of Automation in Track View and Automation Lane Selectors

Automation Track view and Automation lane selectors display orange to indicate which automation playlists currently contain automation.



“volume” in Track View selector displays orange to indicate the presence of automation



"volume" in Automation Lane selector displays orange to indicate the presence of automation

Writing Automation

You can write automation for all automatable controls by moving those controls during playback or recording.

Select the Enable Automation in Record option in the Operation Preferences to write automation while recording.

To write automation on tracks:

1. Choose **`Window > Automation`**.
2. Make sure the automation type is write-enabled.



Automation window

3. In the Mix or Edit window, click the Automation Mode selector on each of the tracks you want to automate, and set the Automation mode. For the initial automation pass, select **Write**.



Setting the Automation mode of a track

4. Start playback to begin writing automation.
5. Move the controls you want to automate (such as a track volume fader).
6. When you have finished, stop playback.

   After the first automation pass, you can write additional automation to the track without completely erasing the previous pass by choosing Touch mode or Latch mode. These modes add new automation only when you actually move a control. (See "Automation Modes" on page 1572.)

To write additional automation to a previous pass:

1. Enable **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**.
2. In the Edit window, make a selection or place the cursor in the location where you want to start writing automation.
3. In the Mix or Edit window, click the Automation Mode selector on each of the tracks you want to automate, and set the Automation mode to Touch or Latch mode.
4. Start playback to begin writing automation.
5. Move the controls you want to automate.
6. When you have finished, stop playback.

If you write automation in Touch mode with Loop Playback enabled, writing of automation will automatically stop at the end of the looped selection. At the beginning of each successive loop, you can then touch or move the control again to write new data.

Storing an Initial Control Position

When you create a new audio, Auxiliary Input, VCA Master, MIDI, or Instrument track, it is automatically placed in Read mode. Even though the track is in Read mode, you can set the initial position of any automatable control, and it is saved with your session.

In this initial state, only a single automation breakpoint appears at the beginning of each automation playlist. If you move the control without writing automation, this breakpoint will move to the new value.

You can permanently store the initial position of an automatable control by doing any of the following:

- Place the track in Write mode and press Play to write a few seconds of automation data to the track
- Manually place a breakpoint on the automation playlist somewhere after the initial breakpoint. (See "Graphical Editing of Automation Data" on page 1601 for more information.)

Automating Switched Controls

When automating switched controls (such as mutes, plugin bypasses, or switched controls on plugins) Pro Tools treats them as touch sensitive controls. Automation data is written for as long as the switch or button for that control is pressed or touched.

For example, if you have just written a series of mute on/off states on a track in quick succession, the manual method for clearing this automation data would require you to move to the Edit window, choose automation playlist for Mute, select the mute automation data, and delete it. In Pro Tools, this can be done automatically.

To automate a switched control (such as the Mute button):

1. Perform another automation pass on the track.
2. When you reach the location of the mute state you want to remove, hold the switched control (such as the Mute button).

   When playback gets to the first muted section, the Mute button becomes highlighted.

3. As long as the button is held, Pro Tools overwrites the underlying data on the track with the *current state* of the switch (on or off) until playback is stopped.

Automating Switched Controls in Touch Mode

When automating switched controls (including mute, plugin bypass, and any switched control on a plugin) in Touch mode, these controls will latch in their current state after they are touched.

However, to preserve any automation for that switched control later in the Timeline, this latched behavior ends if either of the following occurs:

- If an existing automation breakpoint is encountered, Pro Tools stops writing automation at that point.
- If you stop playback or punch out of writing automation before reaching an existing automation breakpoint, Pro Tools AutoMatches to the underlying automation state.

Setting Switched Controls for Momentary Behavior

In some cases, such as when overwriting or extending Mute automation, you may want to momentarily write automation for a control by holding it down, and not have the control latch.

To set switched controls for momentary behavior:

1. Choose **Options > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Deselect **Latching Behavior for Switch Controls in "Touch."**
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.

Automating Sends

Pro Tools provides automation of send level, send mute, and send pan (for stereo and multichannel sends only). This makes it easy to control effect levels and placement during mixdown with great precision.

Send level and mute can also be configured to follow groups.

To automate a send level, mute or pan:

1. In the Automation window, make sure the automation type is write-enabled (send level, send mute, send pan).
2. In the Mix or Edit window, set the Automation mode for each track containing sends you want to automate. For each track, click the Automation Mode selector and set the Automation mode. For the initial automation pass, choose Write mode.
3. If sends are not currently visible on your tracks, select **View > Mix Window** (or **Edit Window**) > **Sends A–E** (or **Sends F–J**).
4. To display send controls, do one of the following:
   - Click the send to open the Output window for the send that you want to automate.
   - Select **View > Sends A–E** (or **Sends F–J**) and select one of the individual views (such as **Send A**).
5. Start playback to begin writing automation.
6. Move the controls you want to automate.
7. When you have finished, stop playback.

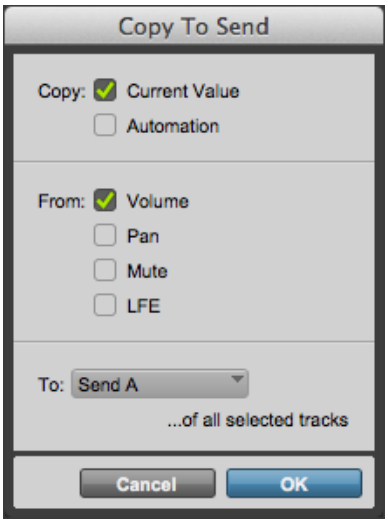
Send level, mute, and pan can also be configured to follow Mix Groups (see "Automation Preferences" on page 1577).

Copying Track Automation to Sends

There may be times where you want a track's send settings or automation to mirror the settings or automation in the track itself, for example, when creating a headphone mix based on the main mix, or when an effect level needs to follow the levels in a main mix. You can copy the current settings or the entire automation playlist for the selected controls to the corresponding playlist for the send.

To copy a track's settings or automation to one of its sends:

1. Select the tracks you want to edit by clicking on the track names to highlight them.
2. Choose **Edit > Automation > Copy to Send**.



Copy To Send dialog

3. In the Copy to Send dialog, do any of the following:
   - Select **Current Value** to copy the current settings of the corresponding controls.

- Select **Automation** to copy the entire automation playlist for the corresponding controls.

4. Select the controls you want to copy.
5. Select the sends to which to copy the automation, and click **OK**.

You can undo the results of the **Copy to Send** command.

Automating Plugins

You can automate changes to virtually all plugin controls. Automating a plugin is slightly different from other automation procedures, because you must enable individual plugin controls for automation.

To enable plugin controls for automation:

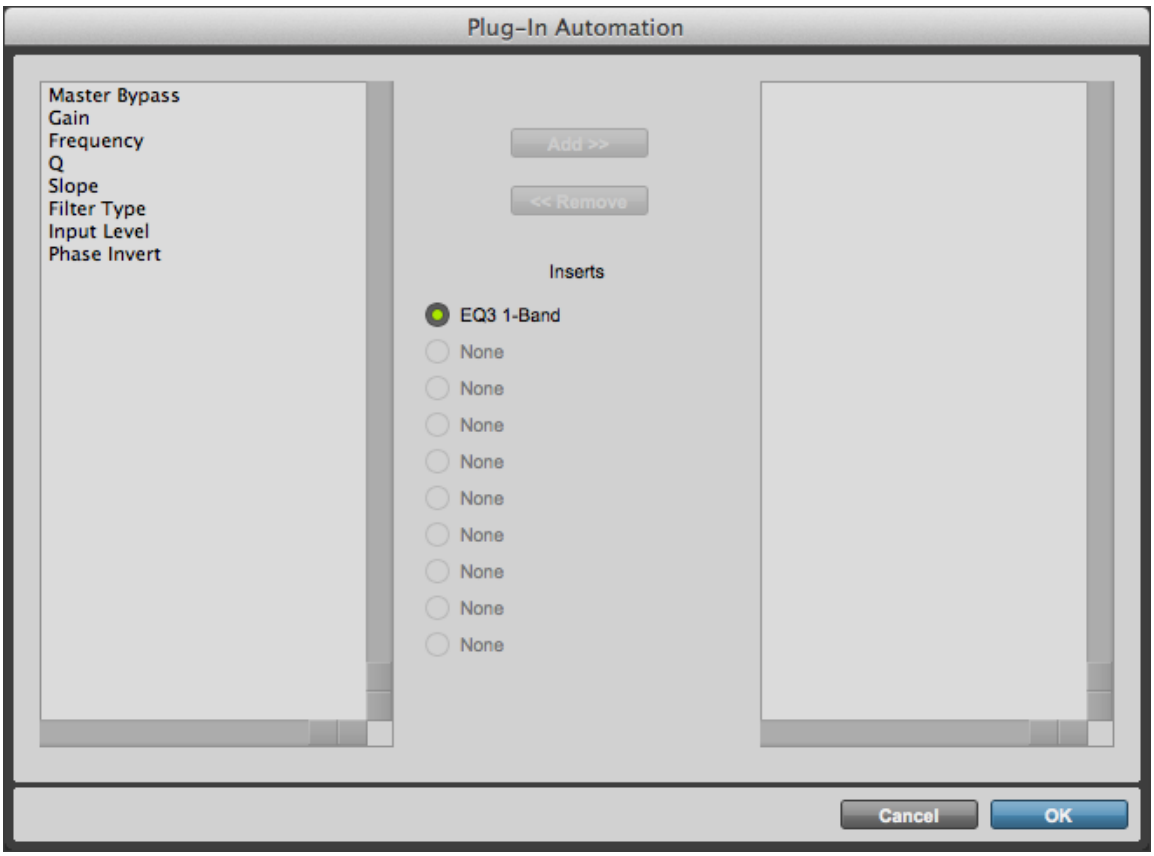
1. Open the Plugin window for the plugin you want to automate.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Automation Enable button in the Plugin window.



Automation Enable button for accessing the Plugin Automation dialog

   - Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) the Track View selector in the Edit window.

3. In the plugin automation dialog, choose the controls to automate and click **Add**. If there are multiple plugins on the same track, you can select from among them by clicking their buttons in the Inserts section of this dialog.



Plugin automation dialog

4. Click **OK** to close the Plugin Automation dialog.

To automate a plugin:

1. In the Plugin Automation Enable window, make sure plugin automation is enabled for the controls you want to automate.
2. In the Mix or Edit window, for each track containing plugins you want to automate, click the Automation Mode selector and set the Automation mode. For the initial automation pass, select **Write**.
3. Start playback to begin writing automation, and move the controls you want to automate.
4. When you have finished, stop playback.

Enabling Automation for Individual Plugin Parameters

You can enable individual plugin controls directly from the Plugin window.

To enable a plugin parameter from the plugin window:

1. Make sure the plugin window is open for the plugin you want to automate.
2. Command-Option-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-click (Windows) the control for the parameter.



Enabling plugin automation for individual parameters

Enabling Automation for All Plugin Parameters

To enable all plugin parameters:

1. Make sure the plugin window is open for the plugin you want to automate.
2. Command+Option+Control-click (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start-click (Windows) on the Auto button at the top of the plugin window.

Automatically Enabling Plugins for Automation

You can set Pro Tools to automatically enable all controls of a plugin for automation when you first add the plugin to your session.

To automatically enable all plugin controls for automation:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Select **Plugin Controls Default to Auto-Enabled**.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.

Color Indication of Automation Mode for Plugin Parameters

In the Plugin window, the controls for plugin parameters highlight in different colors to indicate whether or not a control is automated in what automation mode. The color also is different depending on whether or not a parameter is being controlled by a control surface.

The following table shows the color coding for automated plugin parameters, with and without a control surface.

Automation Mode:	Off	Read	Touch, Latch, Write
No Control Surface	none	Green	Red
Control Surface	none	Blue	Yellow

Record Safing Plugin Automation

You can protect plugin automation from being overwritten by using Automation Safe mode.

To enable plugin safe mode:

1. Open a plugin.
2. Click the **Safe** button so that it is highlighted.



Automation Safe enabled plugin

AutoMatching Controls

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Use the AutoMatch button in the Automation window to automatically change automation controls to their existing automation levels.



AutoMatch button in the Automation window

AutoMatching All Controls

You can AutoMatch all currently writing controls to their existing automation levels.

To AutoMatch all currently writing controls:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Make sure the automation types you want to AutoMatch are write-enabled.
3. Start playback.
4. When you reach a point in the track where you want to return control to their previously written values, click the AutoMatch button in the Automation window.

All currently writing controls stop writing automation and return to any previously written values according to the AutoMatch Time setting in the Mixing preferences.

AutoMatching Individual Tracks

You can invoke AutoMatch on individual tracks. All controls currently writing automation on the track stop writing and return to existing automation levels.

To AutoMatch all controls on a track:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Automation Mode selector on the track.

AutoMatching Individual Automation Types

You can invoke AutoMatch on individual automation types across a session.

To AutoMatch all controls of one automation type:

- In the Automation window, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the button for the automation type (Volume, Pan, Mute, Plugin, Send level, Send pan, or Send mute).

AutoMatching Individual Controls

(D-Control and D-Command Only) On ICON worksurfaces, you can invoke AutoMatch on individual controls or control types on single channels.

To AutoMatch all controls of a type on a channel:

- Hold Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and press any of the following in the Channel Strip Mode controls for the track whose controls you want to AutoMatch:
  - Inserts
  - Sends
  - Pan
  - Dyn (D-Control only)
  - EQ (D-Control only)

To AutoMatch a pan control or the controls for an individual insert or send:

1. Press the switch in the Channel Strip Mode controls to display the Pan controls or the top level of Inserts or Sends for the channel.
2. Hold Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and press the Rotary Encoder Select switch for the control you want to AutoMatch:
   - For Sends, the Send level, pan, and mute will AutoMatch.
   - For Inserts, all automated controls will AutoMatch.
   - For Pan, all pan sliders on the channel will AutoMatch.

To AutoMatch all controls for a plugin displayed in the Dynamics or EQ section:

- Hold Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and press the Auto switch in the Dyn or EQ section of the console.

Priming Controls for Writing Automation in Latch Mode

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

If a track is in Latch or Touch/Latch automation mode, you can prime individual controls for writing automation while the transport is stopped. This *Latch Prime* capability lets you prepare for an automation pass before starting playback.

To prime controls for writing automation in Latch mode while the transport is stopped:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Under Automation, select **Allow Latch Prime in Stop**.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.
4. In the Automation window, make sure the controls you want to automate are write-enabled.
5. Click the Automation Mode selector on the track where you want to write automation and do one of the following:
   - Choose Latch mode to allow priming of all automation-enabled controls on the track.
   - Choose Touch/Latch mode to leave the main Volume fader in Touch mode and allow priming of all other automation-enabled controls.
6. While the transport is stopped, touch or move the controls you want to start writing at the beginning of the automation pass. When at least one control on a track is primed, the Automation Mode selector displays in red.



Automation mode indicator before (left) and after priming of latched controls (right)

7. Start playback. All primed controls begin writing automation at their primed values.
8. Stop playback to finish the automation pass. All tracks are taken out of their Latch Prime state.

You can use the Write to Punch command at the end of your automation pass to write the current value back to the start of the pass.

Taking Tracks and Controls Out of Latch Prime

You can take individual tracks or automation types out of their Latch Prime state before or during an automation pass.

- When you take a track or automation type out of Latch Prime before starting playback, it stays in Latch mode but the corresponding controls are not primed to write when playback starts.
- When you take a track or automation type out of Latch Prime during an automation pass, the corresponding controls AutoMatch to their currently written values.
- If you AutoMatch a control that is in a Latch Prime state, the control will no longer be primed.

To take a track out of Latch Prime:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Automation Mode selector on the track.

The selector button unbolds to indicate that the track is no longer primed.

To take all tracks out of Latch Prime, do one of the following:

- Option-Command-click (Mac) or Alt-Control-click (Windows) the Automation Mode selector on a track.
- Click the **AutoMatch** button in the Automation window.



AutoMatch button in the Automation window

To take all selected tracks out of Latch Prime, do one of the following:

- Option-Command-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Control-Shift-click (Windows) the Automation Mode selector on a track.
- Alt-Shift-click (Windows) Option-Shift-click (Mac) the AutoMatch button in the Automation window.

To take an automation type out of Latch Prime on all tracks, do one of the following:

- In the Automation window, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the button for the automation type (Volume, Pan, Mute, Plugin, Send level, Send pan, or Send mute).



Automation type buttons in the Automation window

Rolling Through Automation Punch Points in Latch Prime

After you prime controls for writing automation while the transport is stopped, you can set Pro Tools to automatically punch in at that point after issuing a back and play command, or after rolling back and locking to timecode.

To set Pro Tools to automatically punch in automation writing on a track:

1. Locate the cursor where you want to punch in automation.
2. Prime controls for writing while the transport is stopped. (See "Priming Controls for Writing Automation in Latch Mode" on page 1593.)
3. In the Automation window, click the **AutoJoin** button.
4. In the Automation window, click the **Capture** button and then click the **Punch Capture** button. The AutoJoin marker (a vertical red line) appears on-screen at the punch point.



Capture button in the Automation window



Punch Capture button in the Automation window

5. Issue a Back and Play command, roll back the external machine to before the punch in point, or enable pre-roll.
6. Start playback. When the transport reaches the punch-in point, automation writing begins.

Enabling and Suspending Automation

From the Automation window, you can enable or suspend writing for the following types of automation across all tracks:

- Volume
- Volume trim
- Pan
- Mute
- Plugin
- Send level
- Send level trim
- Send pan
- Send mute
- Object/Bus (Pro Tools Ultimate or Studio with Dolby Atmos only)

Automation can be suspended or enabled during playback (without having to stop the Transport).

Suspending Automation on All Tracks

To suspend automation on all tracks:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To suspend writing of all automation on all tracks, click the **Suspend** button.
   - To suspend writing of a specific type of automation on all tracks, click the button for that automation type (volume, mute, pan, plugin, send level, send mute, or send pan).



Suspend button in the Automation window

To suspend Trim automation on all tracks (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only):

- In the Automation window, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the **Suspend** button.

  The **Suspend** button highlights yellow to indicate that Trim automation is suspended.

Suspending Automation for Individual Controls

You can suspend automation for one or more controls. When a control is suspended, its control name is italicized in the Track View selector.

Suspending automation from the Edit window obeys Edit groups. To suppress grouped behavior, hold Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) while suspending a control.

To suspend automation for individual controls on a track:

1. In the Edit window, set the Track View selector to show the automation playlist for the control you want to suspend.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To suspend writing and playback of automation for only the displayed control, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the control name in the Track View selector.
   - To suspend writing and playback of automation for all controls, Command-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Shift-click (Windows) the name of any control in the Track View selector.

- To suspend writing and playback of automation for a specific control on all tracks, Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) the name of the control in the Track View selector.

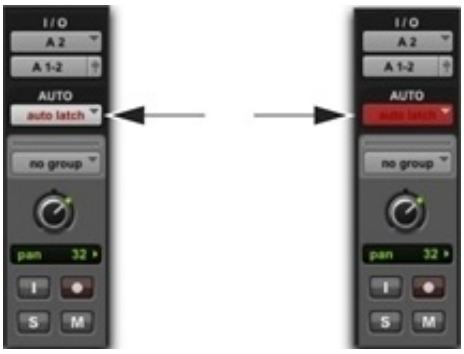
To suspend Trim automation for individual controls on a track (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only):

1. In the Edit window, set the Track View selector to show the automation playlist for the Trim control you want to suspend (Volume Trim or Send level Trim).
2. Do one of the following:
   - To suspend only the displayed Trim control on a single track, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the control name in the Track View selector.
   - To suspend the displayed Trim control on all tracks, Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) the control name in the Track View selector.

Viewing Automation Enable Status

Track Automation Mode Selectors

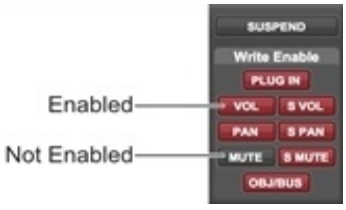
- When a track is enabled for automation but not writing automation, the Automation mode selector shows the mode in normal red text.
- When any control on a track is writing automation, the Automation mode selector shows the mode highlighted in red.



Automation Mode selector showing enabled state (left) and writing state (right)

Automation Window Buttons

- When an automation type is writing automation on any track in the session, the corresponding button in the Automation window displays bold red text.
- When an automation type is enabled but is not writing anywhere in the session, the corresponding button in the Automation window displays normal red text.



Automation window showing possible automation states

Automation Enable Guidelines

The following rules determine whether automation is enabled for a track:

- Although Pro Tools shows a single Automation mode for each track, all automatable controls associated with that track are not necessarily in the same Automation mode.
- If automation is globally suspended in the Automation window, all automatable controls behave as if they were in Off mode, regardless of the track's current Automation mode.
- If automation for a control is suspended by Command-clicking (Mac) or Control-clicking (Windows) its name in the Track View selector, that control behaves as if it were in Off mode, regardless of the track's current Automation mode.
- If automation for a control is suspended in the Automation window, that control behaves as if it is in Read mode when the track is in a writable Automation mode (Touch, Latch, or Write mode).

Deleting Automation

Automation data takes the form of a line graph with editable breakpoints. The easiest way to remove automation in a track or selection is to manually delete breakpoints from the automation playlist.

Removing data in this manner is different from using the Cut command, which creates anchor breakpoints at the boundaries of the remaining data. For details, see "Cutting, Copying, and Pasting Automation" on page 1608.

To remove automation data, display the automation playlist you want to edit by selecting it from the Track View selector, or by revealing it in an Automation lane, and do one of the following:

To remove a single breakpoint:

- With the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool, Option-click (Mac)or Alt-click (Windows) the breakpoint.

To remove several breakpoints at once:

- Use the Selector tool to select a range that contains the breakpoints, and press Delete (Mac) or Backspace (Windows).

To remove all automation data of the displayed type:

- Click with the Selector tool in the track and choose **`Edit > Select All`**, then press Delete (Mac) or Backspace (Windows).

To remove all automation for all automation playlists on a track:

1. Use the Selector tool to select a range of data to be removed.
2. Press Control+Delete (Mac) or Start+Backspace (Windows).

All automation data within the selection is removed for *all* automation playlists on that track, regardless of whether automation is write-enabled for those controls.

Clearing Trim Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) If Trim automation has not been coalesced on a track, you can clear it. When you clear Trim automation, automation breakpoints on all Trim playlists are deleted and all Trim faders are reset to zero.

To clear Trim automation:

1. Select the track where you want to clear the Trim automation.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **`Track > Clear Trim Automation`**.
   - Right-click the track name and choose **`Clear Trim Automation`**.

Thinning Automation

Pro Tools writes a maximum density of automation data during an automation pass in the form of breakpoints. Since Pro Tools creates ramps between breakpoints, it may not need all of the captured points to create a sonically accurate representation of the automation moves that you have made. Each breakpoint takes up space in memory allocated for automation, so thinning data by removing unneeded breakpoints can maximize system efficiency and performance.

Pro Tools provides two different ways to thin automation data: automatically with the **Smooth and Thin Data After Pass** option and manually with the **Thin Automation** commands.

Smooth and Thin Data After Pass

When this option is selected in the Mixing Preferences page, Pro Tools automatically thins the automation breakpoint data after each automation pass.

In the default settings for new sessions, the **Smooth and Thin Data After Pass** option is selected, with the **Degree of Thinning** setting set to **Some**. In most cases, this setting yields optimum performance while providing an accurate reproduction of your automation moves.

If you select **None** for the **Degree of Thinning** setting, Pro Tools writes the maximum possible number of breakpoints. You can still perform thinning at any time with the **Thin Automation** command. For more information on smoothing automation data, see "Smoothing" on page 1578.

Thin Automation Commands

The **Thin Automation** and the **Thin All Automation** commands lets you selectively thin areas where automation data is too dense. You can use the Undo command to audition the results of thinning (comparing thinning and not thinning) before you apply it permanently.

To manually thin automation:

1. In the Edit window, click the Track View selector to display an automation type you want to thin, or reveal the corresponding Automation lane.
2. With the Selector tool, highlight the automation data you want to thin. To thin automation for the entire track, click in the track with the Selector tool and choose **Edit > Select All**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - To thin only the currently displayed type of automation, choose **Edit > Automation > Thin**.
   - To thin all types of automation, choose **Edit > Automation > Thin All**.

Drawing Automation

Use the Pencil tool to create automation events for audio and MIDI tracks by drawing in any automation or MIDI controller playlist, including Trim automation if it has not been coalesced.

The Pencil tool can be set to draw a series of automation events with the following shapes:

Free Hand

Draws freely according to the movement of the mouse. In audio tracks, the shape has the number of breakpoints needed to smoothly interpolate and reproduce the automation shape. In MIDI tracks, the shape is reproduced as a series of steps, according to the resolution setting in the MIDI Preferences page.

Line

Draws a straight line. In audio tracks, the line has a single breakpoint at either end. In MIDI tracks, the controller value changes in steps according to the resolution setting in the MIDI Preferences page.

Triangle

Draws a sawtooth pattern that repeats at a rate based on the current Grid value. In audio tracks, the pattern has a single breakpoint at each extreme. In MIDI tracks, the controller value changes in steps according to the resolution setting in the MIDI Preferences page. Amplitude is controlled by vertical movement of the Pencil tool.

Square

Draws a square pattern that repeats at a rate based on the current Grid value. Amplitude is controlled by vertical movement of the Pencil tool.

Random

Draws a random pattern of levels that change at a rate based on the current Grid value. Amplitude is controlled by vertical movement of the Pencil tool.

The Parabolic and S-Curve Pencil shapes are not available for editing automation.

Using Pencil Tool Shapes

You can draw automation for audio as well as MIDI tracks. For example, use the Triangle pattern to control continuous functions, or the Square pattern to control switched functions such as Mute or Bypass.

Since the Pencil tool draws these shapes using the current Grid value, you can use it to perform panning in tempo with a music track, or on frame scene changes when working in post production.

For more information on MIDI continuous controller data, see "Continuous Controller Events" on page 1042.

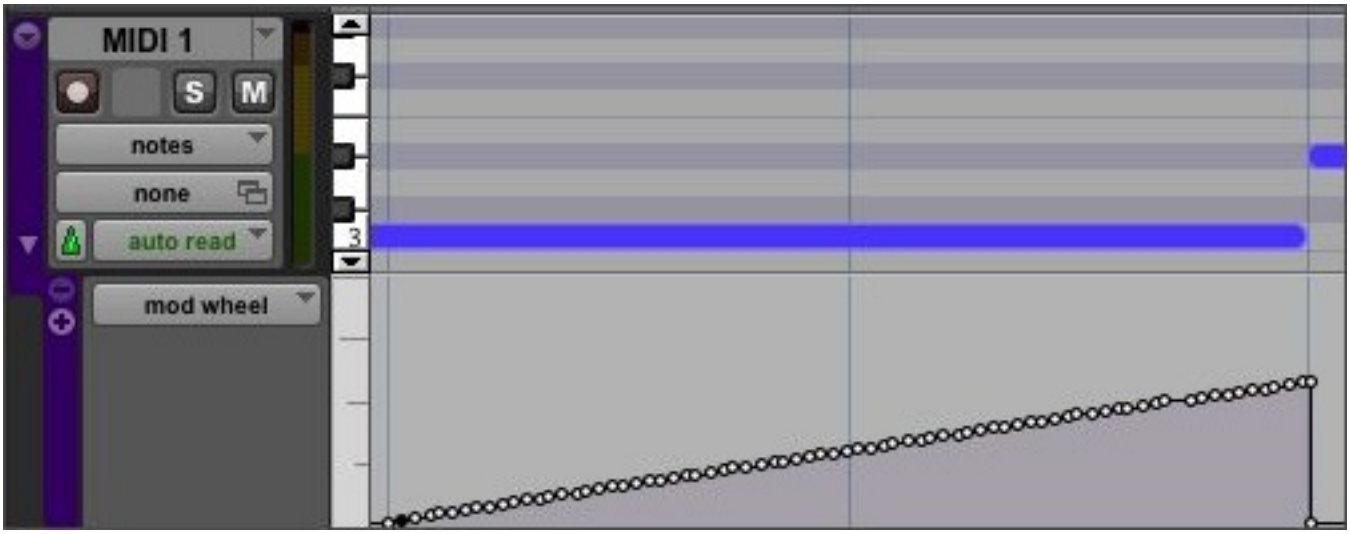
Resolution of MIDI Controller Data

When using the Pencil tool to draw MIDI automation, the data is drawn as a series of discrete steps. You can control the resolution (or density) of these steps to help manage the amount of MIDI data sent for a given MIDI controller move.

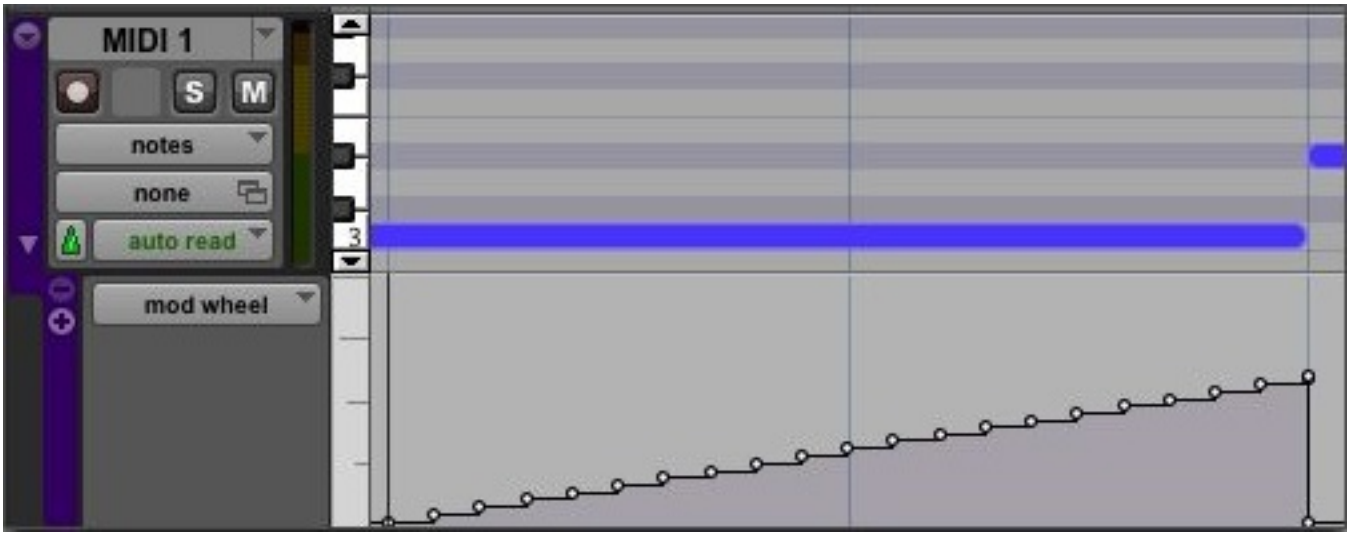
To set the resolution for the Pencil tool:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **MIDI**.
2. Enter a value for **Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data**. The value can range from 1 to 100 milliseconds.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.

The following illustrations show the same MIDI controller automation drawn with different Pencil tool resolution settings.



MIDI Data drawn with resolution of 10 ms



MIDI Data drawn with resolution of 100 ms

For better performance, consider selecting a smaller value for MIDI controls that need higher resolution (such as MIDI volume), and a larger value for controls that may not require a high resolution (such as Pan).

Editing Automation

For all tracks in a session, Pro Tools provides several ways to edit automation data—including Trim automation if it has not been coalesced (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only). You can edit automation data graphically by adjusting breakpoints in any automation playlist. You can also cut, copy, and paste automation data in the same manner as audio and MIDI data.

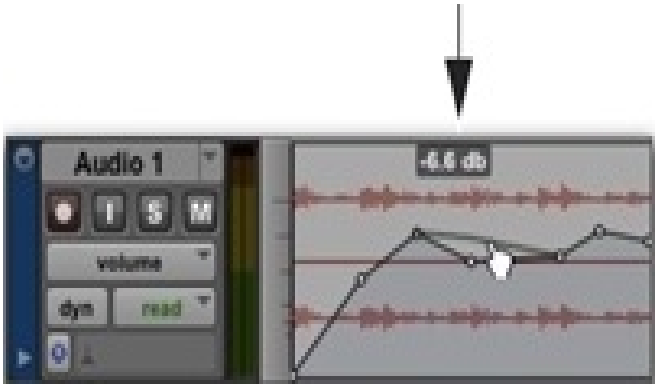
Graphical Editing of Automation Data

Automation data takes the form of a line graph with editable breakpoints.



Automation breakpoint

By dragging these breakpoints, you can modify the automation data directly in the Edit window and MIDI Editor windows. When you drag an automation breakpoint up or down, the change in value is numerically or textually indicated.



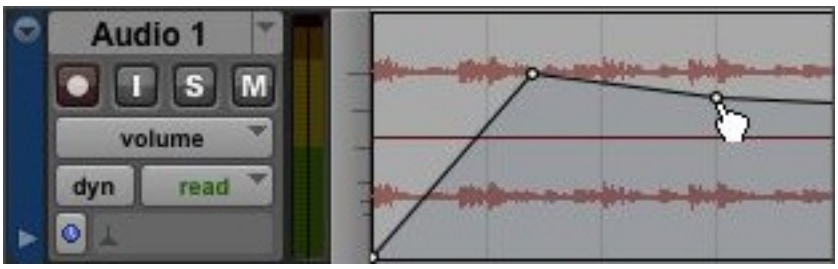
Automation breakpoint value

Dragging an automation breakpoint to the left or right adjusts the timing of the automation event.

To view the breakpoint automation type on any track, either select the corresponding Track View or reveal the corresponding Automation or Controller lane under the track.

Using the Grabber Tools

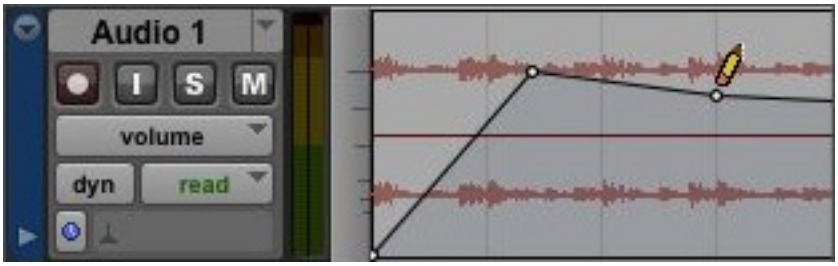
The Grabber tools lets you create new breakpoints by clicking on the graph line, or adjust existing breakpoints by dragging them. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) breakpoints with a Grabber tool to remove them.



Using the Grabber tool to create a new breakpoint

Using the Pencil Tool

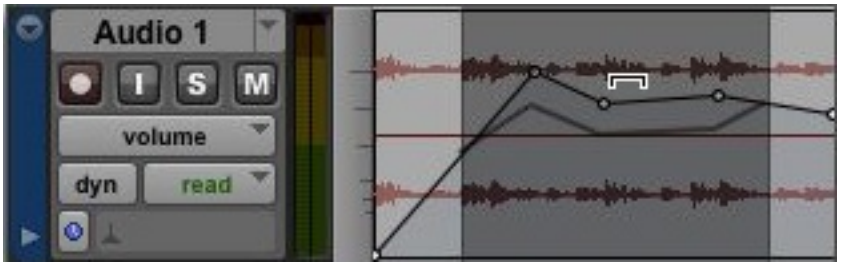
The Pencil tool lets you create new breakpoints by clicking once on the graph line. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) breakpoints with the Pencil tool to remove them.



Using the Pencil tool to delete a breakpoint

Using the Trim Tools

The Trim tools let you adjust all selected breakpoints up or down by dragging anywhere within that selection.



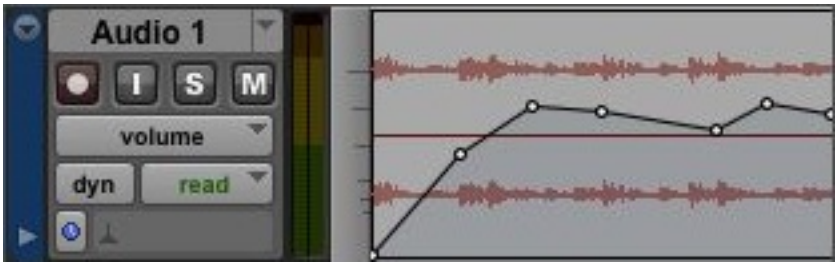
Using the Trim tool to move breakpoints

Editing Automation Types

Each automatable control has its own automation playlist, that can be displayed by choosing it from the Track View selector. "Viewing Automation" on page 1579.

Editing Volume Automation

Drag a breakpoint up or down to change the volume (dB value). Drag a breakpoint to the left or right to adjust the timing of the volume change.



Track volume automation

Editing Pan Automation

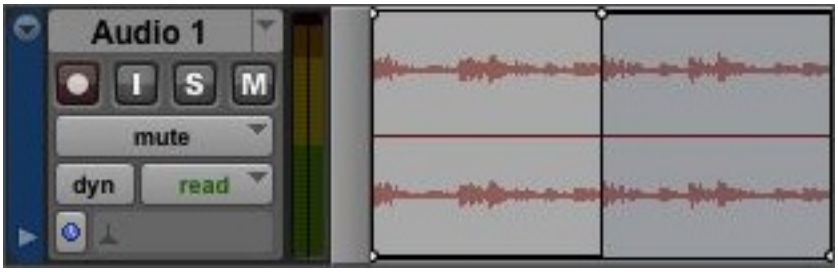
Drag a breakpoint down to pan right, and up to pan left. Drag a breakpoint to the left or right to adjust the timing of the panning moves.



Track Pan automation

Editing Mute Automation

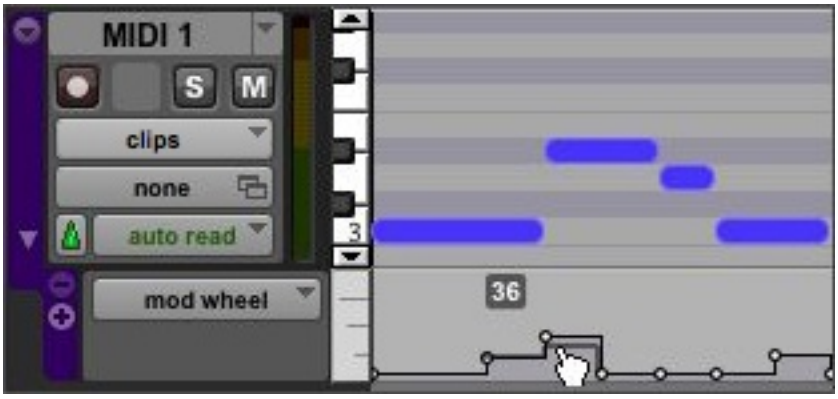
Drag the breakpoint down to mute a section. Drag a breakpoint up to unmute the section. Drag a breakpoint to the left or right to adjust the timing of the mute.



Track mute automation

Editing Stepped Control Automation

Automation for certain controls (such as MIDI controller values or plugin settings) appears as a stepped pattern on the breakpoint line. Drag a breakpoint up or down to a different step to change to a new control value. Drag a breakpoint to the left or right to adjust the timing of the stepped control change.



Stepped control automation

Editing Automation Breakpoints

To edit automation breakpoints, display the automation playlist for the control you want to edit by selecting it from the Track View selector, then do one of the following:

To create a new breakpoint:

- Click with the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool on the line graph.

To edit a single breakpoint:

- Click an existing point on the line graph with any Grabber tool and drag it to a new position.

For vertically constrained, fine-resolution editing of any automation breakpoint, Command-Shift-click-drag (Mac) or Control-Shift-click-drag the breakpoint to the desired value.

To clear a single breakpoint:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) with any Grabber tool.

To edit several breakpoints at once:

- Use the Selector tool to select a range in the automation playlist that contains the breakpoints, and do one of the following:
  - To move the breakpoints earlier or later in the track, press the Plus key (+) to nudge them later (to the right) or the Minus key (–) to nudge them earlier (to the left). The breakpoints move by the current Nudge value.

    When you nudge a selection containing breakpoints, if necessary, new anchor breakpoints are created to preserve the slope of the automation within the selection.

  - To adjust the breakpoint values, click with any of the Trim tools in the selection and drag the breakpoints up or down.

    Enable the Double-Click Selects Automation Breakpoints option to double-click and select between breakpoints.

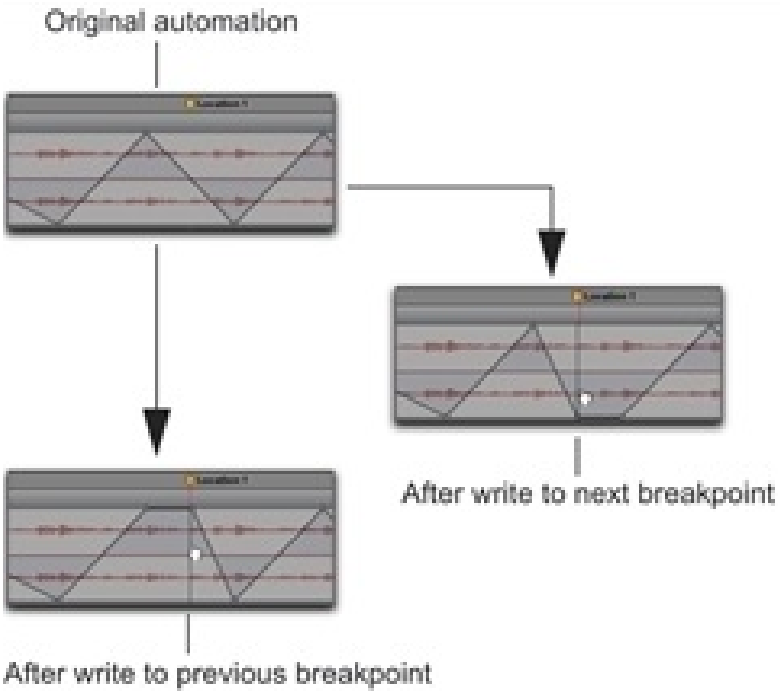
    When you use a Trim tool to edit a selection containing breakpoints, new anchor breakpoints are created before and after the selected area. To suppress creation of anchor breakpoints while using a Trim tool, hold Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows) while trimming.

To edit all breakpoint values in a clip:

- Click in the clip with any of the Trim tools and drag the breakpoints up or down.

Constraining New Breakpoints to the Next or Previous Automation Value

New automation breakpoints can be constrained and written to the same value as the next or previous breakpoint.



Constraining and writing new breakpoints (at Marker 1)

To write a new breakpoint to the next automation value:

- Hold Option+Shift (Mac) or Alt+Shift (Windows) while writing a breakpoint (by clicking with any Grabber tool in a track's automation playlist).

To write a new breakpoint to the previous automation value:

- Hold Command+Option (Mac) or Control+Alt (Windows) while writing a breakpoint (by clicking with any Grabber tool in a track's automation playlist).

The Smart Tool cannot be used to write a new breakpoint to the next or previous automation value.

Editing Automation on Stereo and Multichannel Tracks

Stereo and multichannel tracks display a single automation playlist per track. Only one playlist for volume and mute is available for the stereo or multichannel track.

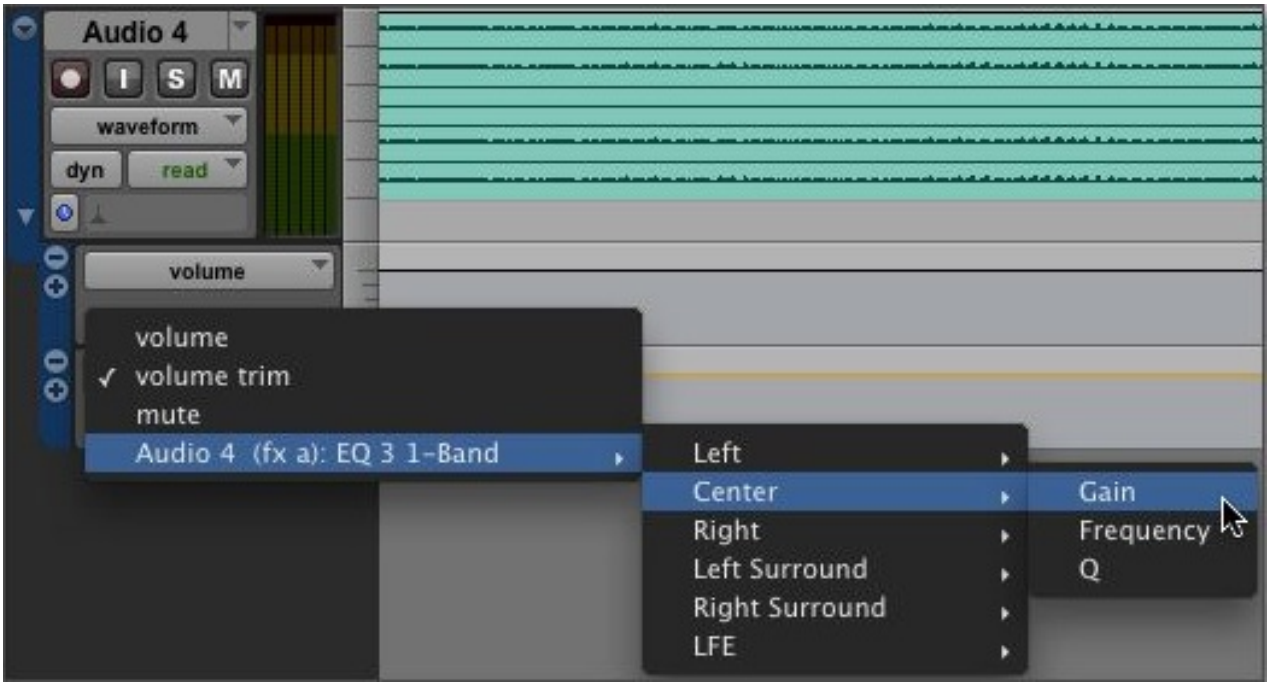
Plugin Automation Playlists on Stereo and Multichannel Tracks

Some multichannel plugins provide a single set of automatable controls for all channels in a track. Other multichannel plugins and all multi-mono plugins provide a single set of controls for all channels when linked, or discrete controls for each channel when unlinked. See your plugin guide for more information.

For multi-mono plugins, automation playlists for each individual channel can be displayed and edited when the plugin is unlinked, and the track is in showing Automation lanes.

To view and edit the individual playlists of a multi-mono plugin:

1. Unlink the plugin.
2. Select the automation playlist from the Track View selector or reveal it in an Automation lane under the track.



Selecting an automation lane for an unlinked multi-mono plugin control

Editing Automation on Grouped Tracks

When you edit automation on an audio track that is a member of an active Edit Group, the same type of automation is also edited on all tracks that are part of that group. This occurs even if the playlist for that type of automation is not currently displayed on the other grouped tracks.

Examples

- If you create new automation breakpoints on a grouped track (with the Pencil tool or any Grabber tool), other members of the group have breakpoints placed relative to that track.
- If you move automation on a grouped track (with any of the Trim tools), other members of the group have their breakpoints trimmed relative to that track. This lets you trim entire sections of a mix.



Trimming automation on an active grouped track

To individually edit a automation for a member of a group without affecting the other members, do one of the following:

- Press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) while you perform the edit.

Cutting, Copying, and Pasting Automation

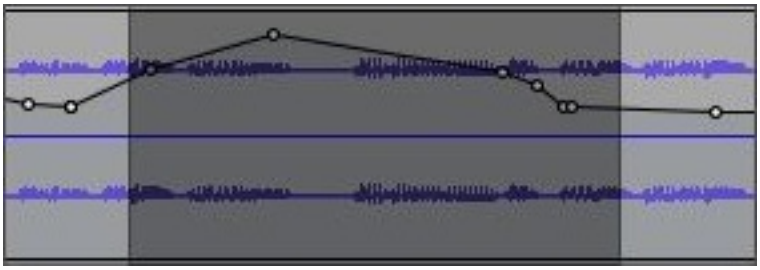
Cutting automation data is different from *deleting* it, and yields different results (although both change the existing automation data). *Copying* automation leaves the original automation data intact.

You *delete* automation data by selecting a range of breakpoints and pressing Delete (Mac) or Backspace (Windows). See "Deleting Automation" on page 1598 for details.

You *cut* automation data by selecting a range of breakpoints from an automation playlist and selecting the **`Cut`** command.

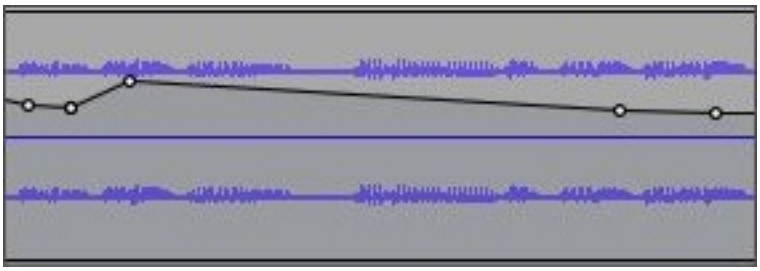
When you cut automation data and when you paste it into a new location, anchor breakpoints are added to the beginning and end points of the data. This is done to preserve the true slope (of continuous controls, such as Volume faders or pans) or state (of switched or stepped controls, such as Mutes) of the automation data both inside and outside the selection.

The following illustrations show the difference between cutting and deleting automation data. In the following figure, a track is set to display volume automation, and a range of automation data is selected.



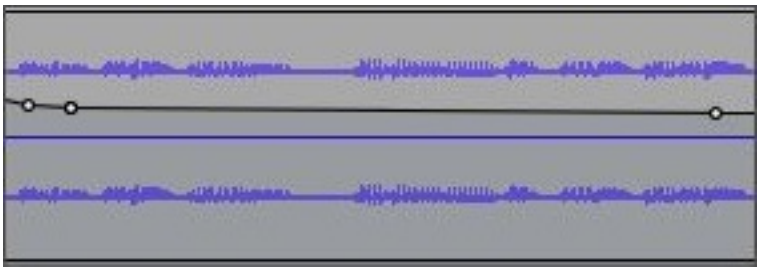
Selecting automation data

If the **Cut** command is chosen, anchor breakpoints are created at each end of the selection, and the automation slope on either side of the cut data is preserved, as shown in the following figure.



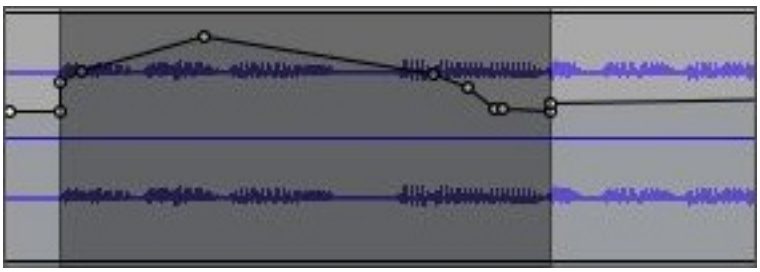
After cutting the automation data

If the data is deleted by pressing Delete (Mac) or Backspace (Windows), the automation data is removed, and automation values span the gap between pre-existing breakpoints, as shown in the following figure.



After deleting the automation data

In addition, if cut or copied data is pasted elsewhere in a track, breakpoints are created at the end points of the pasted data to preserve its “neighboring” (incoming and outgoing) automation value and slope, as shown in the following figure.



After pasting the automation data in another location

You cannot cut or copy automation data from an automation playlist unless that playlist includes at least one breakpoint in it. The selection you are cutting or copying does not need to include any breakpoints, but without at least one breakpoint on an automation playlist, there is no automation data to copy.

Editing and Track Views

Audio, MIDI, and Instrument tracks each have a Track View that acts as the Master View for purposes of editing. When the Master View is displayed, any edits performed on the track apply to all data in the track.

The Master Views are:

- Audio tracks: Blocks and Waveform
- MIDI and Instrument tracks: Blocks, Clips, and Notes

For example, when an audio track is set to Waveform or Blocks, cutting, copying and pasting affects the audio data and all types of automation data on that track. If the track is set to show Pan automation, only the Pan data is affected.

When a selection includes multiple tracks, if any of those tracks is in its Master View, *all* data on all selected tracks is affected.

To edit all automation types on an Auxiliary Input or Master Fader track, do one of the following:

- Make an Edit selection that includes at least one audio or MIDI track that is displayed in its main format.
- Press Control while cutting or copying the automation data.

For additional flexibility, you can use playlists or the Duplicate Track command to work nondestructively on a copy of the edit data.

Tips for Cutting, Copying and Pasting Automation

- On audio tracks, when you are in Waveform View and cut or copy a section of the waveform, any automation data associated with the waveform is also cut or copied.
- On audio tracks, when you are in Waveform View and cut audio data from a track also containing automation data, breakpoints are automatically created at the boundaries of the remaining automation data.
- On audio tracks, pasting waveform data also pastes any associated automation data.
- On Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, or Instrument tracks, only the displayed automation data is cut or copied. To cut or copy all automation data on these types of tracks, press Control while cutting or copying.
- In tracks where an automation playlist contains no data (when there is only a single breakpoint at the very beginning of the track), if you cut data, no new breakpoints are created.
- In cases where clips overlap (such as when moving clips in Slip mode) and an overlapping clip is removed, any overlapped automation breakpoints are lost.
- If cut or copied data contains a type of automation not currently on the target track, Pro Tools prompts you before allowing you to paste the data.
- Cut or copied automation data for plugins or sends that do not exist on the target track is ignored when pasted.

Cut, Copy, Clear, and Paste Special Commands

Four "special" commands—**Cut Special**, **Copy Special**, **Paste Special**, and **Clear Special**—simplify the tasks involved with moving or clearing different types of automation data and MIDI controller data between tracks, sends, and plugins. These commands let you:

- Edit automation and MIDI controller data only (without associated audio or MIDI notes).
- Edit automation and MIDI controller data without having to change Track Views

In addition, the **Paste Special** command lets you copy one data type to another (for example, Left Pan data into the Right Pan playlist).

⚠ **You cannot paste MIDI controller data to automation data nor automation to MIDI.**

Cut Special

The **Cut Special** commands let you cut just automation data from the current selection (without associated audio or MIDI notes) and place it in memory to paste elsewhere, as follows:

All Automation

Cuts all automation or MIDI controller data whether it is shown or not.

❑ *To cut all automation, press Option+Shift+X (Mac) or Alt+Shift+X (Windows).*

Pan Automation

Cuts only pan automation or MIDI pan data whether it is shown or not.

Plugin Automation

Cuts only the plugin automation that is shown.

Copy Special

The **Copy Special** commands let you copy just automation data from the current selection (without associated audio or MIDI notes) and place a copy of it in memory to paste elsewhere, as follows:

All Automation

Copies all automation or MIDI controller data whether it is shown or not.

Pan Automation

Copies only pan automation or MIDI pan data whether it is shown or not.

Plugin Automation

Copies only the plugin automation that is shown.

Paste Special

The **Paste Special** commands let you paste automation data into another clip (without affecting associated audio or MIDI notes) in the following ways:

Merge

Lets you add the pasted data to any existing automation data of the same type in the destination selection. This can be useful for consolidating MIDI data from several tracks into a single MIDI track. For example, you like the pitch bend on the synth trombones and want to apply it to the synth guitar.

Repeat to Fill Selection

Pastes multiple iterations of the automation data to the entire selection range. If you select an area that is not an exact multiple of the copied clip size, the remaining selection area is filled with a trimmed version of the original selection. This lets you easily create drum loops and other repetitive effects. Before the data is pasted, Pro Tools prompts you to specify a crossfade to smooth transitions between clips.

To Current Automation Type

Pastes the automation data or MIDI controller data from the clipboard to the selection as current automation type or MIDI controller. This lets you copy automation from any type to any other type. For example, you can copy a Left Pan automation to Plugin automation. You can also copy MIDI volume data and paste it to MIDI pan.

Clear Special

The **Clear Special** commands let you clear just automation data from the current clip, as follows:

All Automation

Clears all automation or MIDI controller data whether it is shown or not.

Pan Automation

Clears only pan automation or MIDI pan whether it is shown or not.

Plugin Automation

Clears all automation for any plugin with at least one automation lane shown.

Special Paste Function for Automation Data

Normally, when you copy and paste automation data, it is pasted in an automation playlist of the exact same type (for example, Left Pan data is pasted into the Left Pan playlist).

However, there may be times when you want to paste from one data type to another (for example, Left Pan data into the Right Pan playlist).

The **Special Paste** command lets you copy one data type to another.

If you want to paste automation or MIDI controller data only (without its associated audio or MIDI notes), use the Paste Special command.

For this special paste mode to function, the following must be true:

- Every track selected for pasting must be currently displayed as automation data.
- There must be only one automation playlist on the Clipboard for each target track. (The **Special Paste** command cannot copy multiple automation playlists for each track.)

⚠ **You cannot interchange automation data between audio and MIDI tracks, or between continuous controls (such as faders or pans) and switched or stepped controls (such as mute or MIDI controllers).**

To paste data into a different automation playlist:

- Press the Control (Mac) or Start key (Windows) when choosing **Edit > Paste**.

Converting Volume Automation and Clip Gain

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Pro Tools lets you convert clip gain settings to track-based volume automation, as well as letting you convert track-based volume automation to clip gain settings. For more information, see "Converting Clip Gain and Track Volume Automation" on page 1281.

Coalescing Volume Automation and Clip Gain

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Pro Tools lets you coalesce clip gain settings to track-based volume automation, as well as letting you coalesce track-based volume automation to clip gain settings. For more information, see "Coalescing Clip Gain and Track Volume Automation" on page 1282.

Glide Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) The **Glide Automation** commands let you manually create an automation transition (or glide) from an existing automation value to a new one, over a selected area.

When gliding multiple parameters at the same time, such as with the Surround Panner or plugins, use the Edit › Automation › Glide to All Enabled option.

For MIDI automation, Glide To commands only apply to MIDI Volume, MIDI Pan, and MIDI Mute. MIDI parameters cannot use the Write To commands.

To apply a Glide Automation to the current automation parameter type:

1. In the Automation window, make sure the automation type is write-enabled.
2. Click the Track View selector to choose the automation type you want to automate.
3. Drag with the Selector tool in the track to select the area you want to write the glide to.
4. Change the automation parameter to the value you want at the end of the selection. For example, to glide automation volume to –Infinity, move the Volume fader to –Infinity.
5. Choose **Edit > Automation > Glide to Current**.

You can also press Option+Forward Slash (/) (Mac) or Alt+Forward Slash (/) (Windows).

To apply a Glide Automation to all current enabled parameters:

1. In the Automation window, make sure the automation types are write-enabled.
2. In each track you want to automate, click the Track View selector and select from the pop-up menu the automation type you want to automate.
3. With the Selector tool, drag horizontally to include all the tracks you want to automate in a selection (drag vertically to define the time range).
4. In each track you want to automate, change the automation parameter to the value you want at the end of the selection.
5. Choose **Edit > Automation > Glide to All Enabled**.

You can also press Option+Shift+Forward Slash (/) (Mac) or Alt+Shift+Forward Slash (/) (Windows).

To apply a Glide Automation to pan only:

1. In the Automation window, make sure that Pan automation is write-enabled.
2. Click the Track View selector to choose Pan automation.
3. Drag with the Selector tool in the track to select the area you want to write the glide to.
4. Change the pan automation to the value you want at the end of the selection.
5. Choose **Edit > Automation > Glide Pan Only**.

You can also press Control+Shift+Forward Slash (/) (Mac) or Start+Shift+Forward Slash (/) (Windows).

Glide Automation Considerations

When Glide Automation is applied to automation data, it behaves as follows:

- When a selection is made, automation breakpoints are written at the start and end points of the Glide Automation. The automation value at the start of the selection is the start point of the Glide Automation and the end of the selection is the end point of the Glide Automation. The Glide Automation that is created between the two is based on the length of the selection and the end value that is selected.
- If automation breakpoints follow the selection, they are not changed, but the value selected for the end of the selection is written from the end point up until the next breakpoint.
- If no automation breakpoints follow the selection, the value selected for the end of the selection is written to the end of the track.
- If no selection is made, a breakpoint is written to the current location, and the value selected for the Glide Automation is written to the next breakpoint.
- The **`Glide Pan Only`** command lets you glide all pan automation parameters without affecting other automation enabled playlists. This is particularly useful for surround tracks.

Trimming Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) If you have already written automation, you can modify automation data for track volume and send levels in real time by using Trim mode. When a track is trim-enabled, you are not recording absolute fader positions, but relative changes in the existing automation. See "Trim Mode" on page 1575 for more information.

To enable Trim mode:

- In the Mix or Edit window, click the Automation Mode selector of the track where you want to trim automation, and select **`Trim`**.



When a track's Trim mode is enabled, its Volume and Send Level faders turn yellow, and its Automation Mode selector is outlined in yellow. This outline appears solid if the track is trim-enabled, and flashes whenever trimming is occurring on the track's volume or send levels.

Writing Trim Automation

The writing of Trim automation depends on how it is set to be coalesced. See "Coalescing Trim Automation" below. If automation is not set to coalesce after every automation pass, Trim automation moves are written to a separate Trim playlist.

To trim track Volume or Send levels:

1. In the Automation window, make sure the automation type (Volume or Send level) is write-enabled.
2. Click the Automation Mode selector of the track where you want to write automation and choose the automation mode (**Touch**, **Latch**, **Touch/Latch**, or **Write**).
3. Click the Automation Mode selector and select **Trim**.
4. Start playback, and adjust the Volume or Send levels.
5. Stop playback to finish the Trim pass.

Coalescing Trim Automation

You can set Pro Tools to commit, or *coalesce*, Trim automation to the main automation playlist by the following methods:

After Every Pass

Trim moves are automatically applied when the transport is stopped at the end of an automation pass. Trim automation playlists are cleared, and Trim faders are returned to zero.

On Exiting Trim Mode

Trim moves are stored separately in the Trim automation playlist until they are coalesced. Trim automation is automatically coalesced on a track only when you take the track out of Trim mode. You can repeat an automation pass, edit Trim automation manually on any of the Trim playlists, or clear Trim automation before coalescing with this method.

Even when automation is set to coalesce on exiting Trim mode, you can use the Coalesce Trim Automation command to commit Trim moves at any time.

Manually

Trim moves are stored separately in the Trim automation playlist until they are coalesced. With this setting, the only way to coalesce Trim moves is with the **Coalesce Trim Automation** command. You can repeat an automation pass, edit Trim automation manually on any of the Trim playlists, or clear Trim automation before coalescing with this method.

To set the method by which Trim Automation is coalesced:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Under Coalesce Trim Automation, select one of the following:
   - **After Every Pass**
   - **On Exiting Trim Mode**
   - **Manually**

To coalesce Trim automation on a track when exiting Trim mode:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Under Coalesce Trim Automation, select **On Exiting Trim Mode**.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.

4. Make sure the Pro Tools transport is stopped.
5. On the track where you want to coalesce Trim automation, click the Automation Mode selector and deselect **Trim**.

The Trim automation is applied to the main automation playlist, Trim automation playlists are cleared, and Trim faders are returned to zero.

⚠ **If transport is playing and you are writing automation, you cannot directly enter or exit Trim mode. You must AutoMatch before exiting Trim mode. This prevents any abrupt jumps in automation values.**

To manually coalesce Trim automation on a track:

1. Select the track where you want to coalesce the Trim automation.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > Coalesce Trim Automation**.
   - Right-click the track name and choose **Coalesce Trim Automation**.

The Trim automation is applied to the main automation playlist, Trim automation playlists are cleared, and Trim faders are returned to zero.

Writing Automation to the Start, End, or All of a Track or Selection

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Pro Tools lets you write current automation values from any insertion point forward (or backward) to the end (or beginning) of a track or Edit selection in a track, or to an entire track or Edit selection, while performing an automation pass.



Write Automation to Start, End, and All buttons in the Automation window

The standard **Write Automation to Start**, **All**, or **End** commands do not operate when the Pro Tools transport is stopped. It only affects automation for those parameters that are currently write-enabled and currently writing automation data.

Optionally, **Write Automation to Start**, **All**, and **End** can be configured to always be applied automatically. See "Writing Automation to the Start, End or All of a Track or Selection on Stop" on page 1618.

💡 *For MIDI automation, the Write To commands only apply to MIDI Volume, MIDI Pan, and MIDI Mute. MIDI parameters cannot use the Write To commands.*

Requirements for Standard Write Automation Commands

For automation data to be written for a specific parameter, the associated track must be in one of the following Automation modes and meet the following conditions:

Latch Mode

The control for the parameter must be changed (touched) during the automation pass.

Touch Mode

The control for the parameter must be changed (touched).

Write Mode

All controls on that track must be in Write mode.

This command can be undone.

To write current automation values to the start, end, or all of a track or Edit selection:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Make sure that the automation type is write-enabled.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click in a track at an insertion point.
   - Drag with the Selector tool to select a portion of the track.
4. Start playback.
5. Make sure you are actively writing on the appropriate track if you are in Latch or Touch mode.
6. When you reach a point in the track or selection that contains the automation data you want to apply, click the **Write Automation to Start**, **All**, or **End** button in the Automation window.
7. Stop playback.

   The current values of all write-enabled automation at that point are written to the corresponding area of the track/selection.

Write to Start, End or All and Trim Mode

While in Trim mode, it is also possible to write trim delta values for track volume and send levels to the start, end or all of a track or Edit selection.

To write current trim delta values to the start, end, or all of a track or selection:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Make sure the automation type (track volume or send level) is write-enabled.
3. In the Mix or Edit window, click the Automation Mode selector of the track you want to trim automation, and select **Trim**. The track Volume and Send Level faders turn yellow.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click in a track at an insertion point.
   - Drag with the Selector tool to select a portion of the track.
5. Click Play to begin playback.
6. When you reach a point in the track or selection that contains the trim setting (delta value) you want to apply, click the **Write Automation to Start**, **All**, or **End** button in the Automation window.

7. Stop playback.

   The relative changes to the track volume and send levels at that point are written to the corresponding area of the track/selection.

Writing Automation to the Start, End or All of a Track or Selection on Stop

The Automation window provides options for writing automation on any automation playlist (including Trim playlists) after a valid automation pass has been performed.

The Write Automation to Start, End, or All modes can be configured to disable or remain enabled after a valid automation pass.

See "Requirements for Standard Write Automation Commands" on the previous page.



Write On Stop buttons in the Automation window

To configure Write on Stop modes to disable after an automation pass:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Click to enable one of the Write On Stop modes (**Start**, **All**, **End**).

   The enabled Write on Stop arrow appears in blue.

To configure Write on Stop modes to remain enabled after an automation pass:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) one of the Write On Stop buttons (Start, All or End) to enable the Write On Stop mode.

   The enabled Write on Stop arrow appears in red.

Writing Automation to the Next Breakpoint or to the Punch Point

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) While performing an automation pass, Pro Tools lets you write current automation values from the current insertion point forward to the next automation breakpoint, or back to the punch point (the location in the track where automation writing started).

- Write Automation to Next Breakpoint lets you update automation within a track without overwriting automation located earlier or later in the Timeline, and without having to define a selection before editing automation.

- Write Automation to Punch Point lets you fill back an automation value within a track after finding the right level or setting during an automation pass, without having to go back and repeat the pass.

Like the standard **Write Automation to Start**, **End**, and **All** commands, the **Write Automation to Next Breakpoint** and **Write Automation to Punch Point** commands do not operate when the Pro Tools transport is stopped. They only affect automation for those parameters that are currently write-enabled and currently writing automation data.

For MIDI automation, the Write To commands only apply to MIDI Volume, MIDI Pan, and MIDI Mute. Other MIDI parameters cannot use the Write To commands.

Optionally, the **Write Automation to Next Breakpoint** and **Write Automation to Punch Point** commands can be configured to be applied automatically after a valid automation pass has been performed. See"Writing Automation to the Next Breakpoint or to the Punch Point on Stop" on page 1621.

Write Automation to Next Breakpoint and Write Automation to Punch Point have the same requirements as Write Automation to Start, End and All commands. See "Writing Automation to the Start, End, or All of a Track or Selection" on page 1616.

To write current automation values to the next breakpoint:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Make sure that the automation type is write-enabled.
3. Click in a track to define an insertion point.
4. Start playback.
5. Make sure you are actively writing on the appropriate track if you are in Touch, Latch, or Touch/Latch mode.
6. When you reach a point in the track where you want to apply the current settings, click the Write Automation to Next Breakpoint button.



Write To Next Breakpoint buttons in the Automation window

7. Stop Playback.

   The current values of all controls being written at that point are written up to the next breakpoint.

Write Automation to Next Breakpoint remains enabled after a valid automation pass. Unlike standard Write Automation commands, it cannot be configured to disable after an automation pass.

To write current automation values back to the automation punch point:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Make sure the automation type is write enabled.
3. Click in a track to define an insertion point.
4. Start playback.
5. Make sure you are actively writing on the appropriate track if you are in Touch, Latch, or Touch/Latch mode.
6. When you reach a point in the track where you want to apply the current settings, click the Write Automation to Punch Point button.



Write To Punch Point buttons in the Automation window

The current values of all write-enabled parameters are written back to the point where the first control began writing automation.

Write To Next Breakpoint or Punch Point and Trim Mode

While in Trim mode, it is also possible to write trim values for track volume and send levels to the next written breakpoint or back to the automation punch-in point.

To write current trim values to the next breakpoint or to the punch point:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Make sure that the automation type (track volume or send level) is write-enabled.
3. In the Mix or Edit window, click the Automation Mode selector and select **Trim**. The track Volume and Send Level faders turn yellow.
4. Click in a track to define an insertion point.
5. Start playback.
6. When you reach a point in the track where you want to apply the current trim values, click the Write Automation to Next Breakpoint button in the Automation window.

To write current trim values to the punch point:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Make sure that the automation type (track volume or send level) is write-enabled.
3. In the Mix or Edit window, click the Automation Mode selector and select Trim. The track Volume and Send Level faders turn yellow.
4. Click in a track to define an insertion point.
5. Start playback.
6. When you reach a point in the track where you want to apply the current trim values, click the Write Automation to Punch Point button in the Automation window.

Writing Automation to the Next Breakpoint or to the Punch Point on Stop

The Automation window provides an option for automatic Write Automation to Next Breakpoint on Stop or Write Automation to Punch Point on Stop.

Write Automation to Next Breakpoint remains enabled after a valid automation pass. Unlike standard Write Automation commands, it cannot be configured to disable after an automation pass.

To configure Write Automation to Next Breakpoint on Stop:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Click the Write Automation to Next Breakpoint on Stop button or the Write Automation to Punch Point button.

When this option is enabled, automation writing will be performed automatically forward to the next breakpoint after a valid automation pass has been performed.

To configure Write Automation to Punch Point on Stop:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Click the Write Automation to Punch Point on Stop button.

When this option is enabled, automation writing will be performed automatically back to the automation punch-in point after a valid automation pass has been performed.

Guidelines for "Write To" Commands

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Using "Write To" Commands During Playback

You can carry out any of the **Write Automation To** commands without stopping the Pro Tools transport. On supported control surfaces, the corresponding "Write To" button flashes until you stop the transport.

While the Pro Tools transport is moving, issuing **Write Automation To** commands affects writing of automation in the following ways:

- Write to Start/Selection Start: Currently writing controls continue writing automation
- Write to All/Selection: Currently writing controls (except controls in Write mode) punch out of writing automation
- Write to End/Selection End: Currently writing controls (except controls in Write mode) punch out of writing automation

- Write to Next Breakpoint: Currently writing controls (except controls in Write mode) punch out of writing automation
- Write to Punch point: Currently writing controls continue writing automation

For MIDI automation, the Write To commands only apply to MIDI Volume, MIDI Pan, and MIDI Mute. MIDI parameters cannot use the Write To commands.

Applying "Write To" Commands to Selected Tracks

The **Write Automation To** commands normally apply to all tracks currently writing automation. It is possible to apply these commands to selected tracks only.

To apply any of the "Write Automation To" commands to currently selected tracks:

1. Select the tracks where you want to apply the **Write To** commands.
2. Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the corresponding "Write Automation To" button.

Suppressing Warnings when Using "Write To" Commands

When you carry out any of the **Write Automation To** commands (except Write to Next Breakpoint), Pro Tools posts a dialog warning that automation values will be changed in the session. You can suppress these warnings.

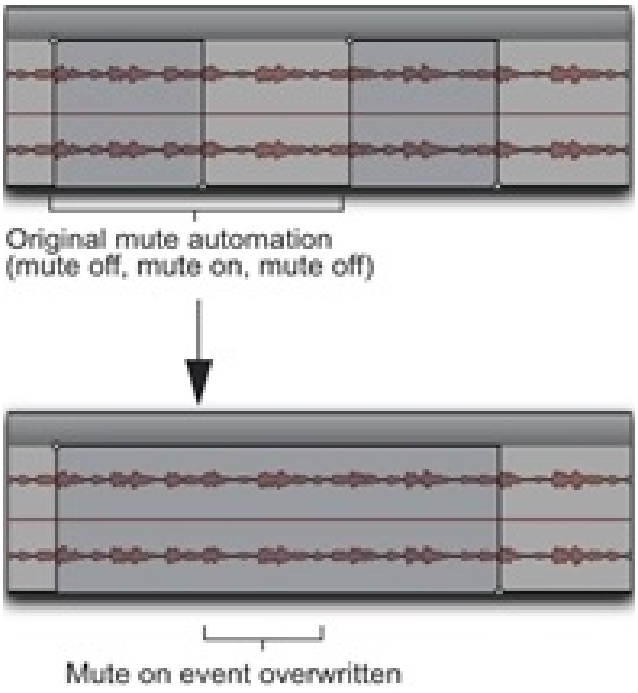
To suppress "Write To" warning dialogs:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Mixing**.
2. Under Automation, select **Suppress Automation "Write To" Warnings**.

Overwriting or Extending Mute Automation

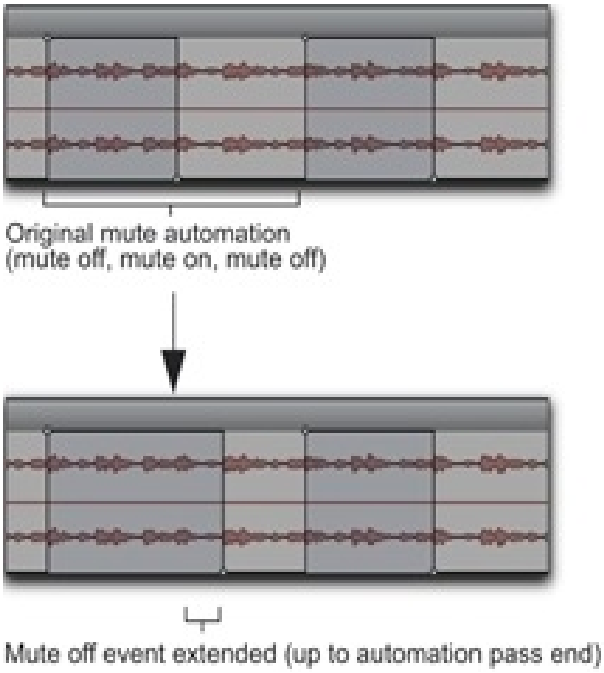
(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Pro Tools lets you overwrite or extend an existing mute event in real time, without changing the current mute state.

A mute event can be overwritten when the automation pass begins before the first mute event and ends after the second event. In this case, the current on/off state of the mute is maintained.



Overwriting a mute automation event

A mute event can be extended when the automation pass begins before an on or off event and stops before the end of the second event.



Extending a mute automation event

Mute Overwrite/Extend is Supported in Touch and Latch Mode, as follows:

Touch Mode

Writes the current state as long as the Mute button is held.

Latch Mode

Writes the current state until you stop or AutoMatch out.

To overwrite a mute state on one or more tracks:

1. Choose **Window > Automation**.
2. Make sure Mute is write-enabled.

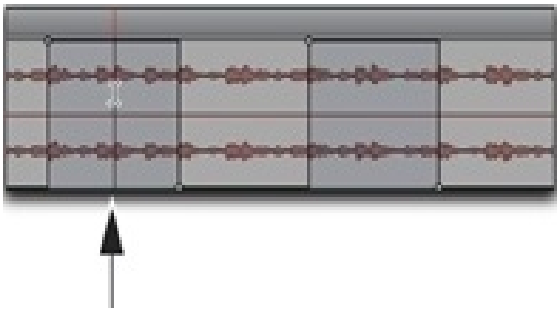


Mute enable button in the Automation window

3. In the Mix or Edit window, click the Automation Mode selector of the track where you want to overwrite the mute state, and set the Automation mode to Touch or Latch mode.

   To overwrite mute states on multiple tracks, set all tracks to the same Automation mode.

4. In each track you want to automate, click the Track View selector and select mute.
5. Place the cursor before the start of the mute event you want to overwrite.



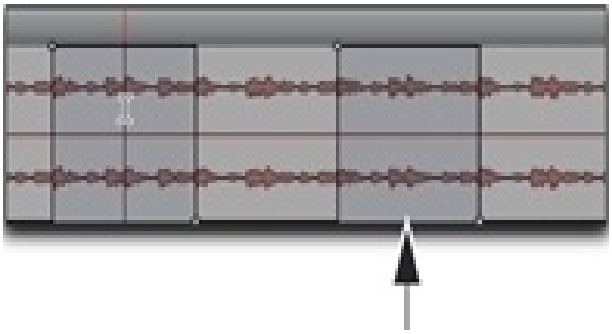
Placing the cursor before the start of a mute event

6. Start playback.
7. Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and the track Mute button before the start of the mute event you want to overwrite.

   To overwrite mute states on multiple tracks, press Option+Command (Mac) or Alt+Control (Windows) and the Mute button on one of the tracks to be automated.

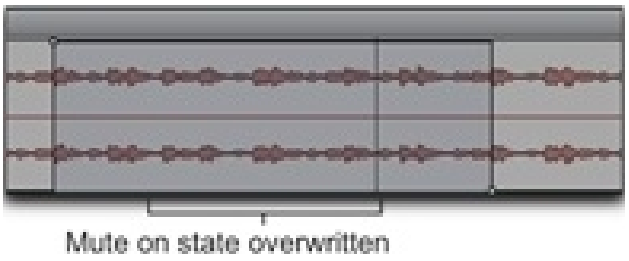
8. After the end of the second mute event, release the key and the Mute button.

   With Touch mode, you have to hold the Mute button for the duration of the write.



Stopping automation pass after the end of a mute event

9. When you have finished the automation pass, stop playback.



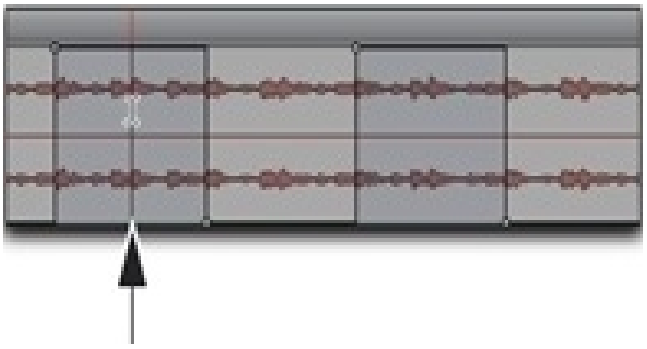
Example of mute state overwritten

To extend a mute state on a track:

1. Choose **`Window > Automation`**.
2. Make sure mute is write-enabled.
3. In the Mix or Edit window, click the Automation Mode selector of the track you want to automate, and select Touch or Latch mode.

   To extend mute states on multiple tracks, set all the tracks to the same Automation mode.

4. In each track you want to automate, click the Track View selector and select mute.
5. Place the cursor before the start of the mute event you want to extend.



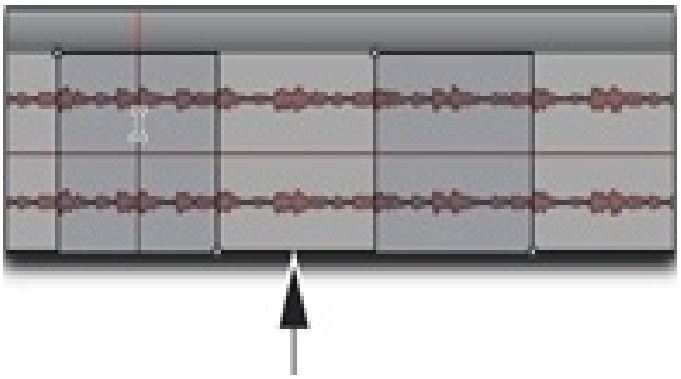
Placing the cursor before the start of a mute event

6. Start playback.
7. Press Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and the track Mute button before the start of the mute event you want to extend.

   To extend mute states on multiple tracks, press Option+Command (Mac) or Alt+Control (Windows) and the Mute button on the track.

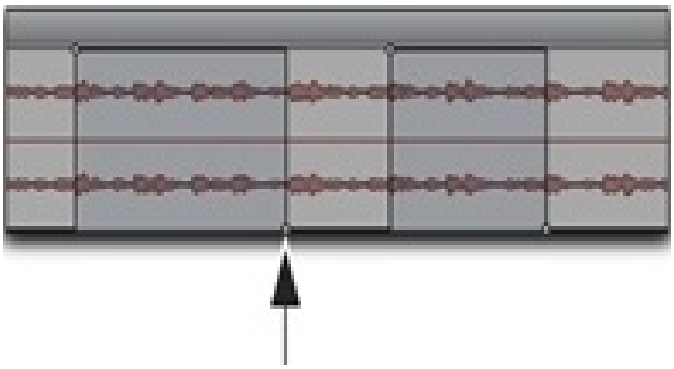
8. Before the end of the second mute event, release the key and the Mute button.

⚠ If you extend past the subsequent on or off event, the entire event will be changed.



Stopping automation before the end of a mute event

9. When you have finished the automation pass, click Stop.



Example of mute state extended (up to automation pass end)

Creating Snapshot Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio let you write automation data values for multiple parameters in a single step. You can write snapshot automation in two ways:

To a Selection

Automation data is written to the Timeline selection (as well as the Edit selection if linked). Anchor breakpoints are placed just before and after the selection so that data outside the selection is not affected.

To a Cursor Location

Automation data is written at the insertion point. After the insertion point, the automation ramps to the next breakpoint value, or if no breakpoints exist, remains at the newly written value for the remainder of the session.

💡 *For MIDI automation, the Write To, Trim To, and Glide To commands only apply to MIDI Volume, MIDI Pan, and MIDI Mute. MIDI parameters cannot use the Write To commands.*

For more information on cutting, copying, and pasting automation data within a session, see "Writing Automation to the Start, End, or All of a Track or Selection" on page 1616.

To write snapshot automation:

1. In the Automation window, make sure that the parameters you want to edit are write-enabled. Deselect any parameters whose automation you want to preserve.
2. In the Edit window, click the Track View selector to show the automation you want to edit.
3. Write a breakpoint in the playlist if none currently exists, as follows:
   - Place the cursor in the playlist (or make an Edit selection), then press Command+Forward Slash (/) (Mac) or Control+Forward Slash (/) (Windows).
   - Select the Grabber tool and click anywhere in the playlist.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Select an area in the track's playlist (or within multiple tracks) where you want to apply the automation.
   - Place the cursor at an Edit insertion point.
5. Adjust the controls you want to automate. You can also change a plugin preset.
6. Choose **Edit > Automation** and do one of the following:
   - To write the current value to only the currently displayed automation parameter, choose **Write to Current**.
   - To write the current settings for all automation parameters enabled in the Automation window, choose **Write to All Enabled**.

Adding Snapshot Automation to Empty Automation Playlists

When you use a **Write Automation** command on an automation playlist with no previously written automation data, the selected value is written to the entire playlist and not just the selected area.

This is because a playlist with no automation data contains only a single automation breakpoint that corresponds to the current position of the control for the parameter. The position of the breakpoint is updated whenever the parameter value is changed.

If you do not want the **Write Automation** command to write the selected automation value to the entire playlist, you can:

- Anchor the automation data by placing the cursor at the end of the session (or any other end point) and choosing **Write to Current**.
- Click with any Grabber tool on each side of the selection.

This lets the **Write Automation** command write only to the selected area.

Writing Snapshot Automation over Existing Automation Data

When you move the playback cursor, the automated controls in Pro Tools update to reflect the automation data that is already on the track. To keep the settings you have made for a snapshot, you can suspend automation parameters to prevent them from updating.

To write snapshot automation over existing data:

1. In the Automation window, make sure that the automation parameters you want to edit are write-enabled. Deselect any parameters whose automation you want to preserve.
2. Adjust the controls for the parameters you want to automate.
3. Click the Automation Mode selector and select Off mode for the tracks where you want to apply the automation.
4. With the Selector, select the range where you want to apply the automation.

5. Choose **Edit > Automation** and select one of the following from the submenu:
    - To write the current value to only the automation parameter currently displayed in the Edit window, choose **Write to Current**.
    - To write the current settings for all automation parameters enabled in the Automation window, choose **Write to All Enabled**.
6. Click the Automation Mode selector and select Read mode for the tracks you want to play back with automation.

Capturing Automation and Applying it Elsewhere

The **Write Automation** commands can also be used to capture automation states at specific locations in a track and apply them to other locations in the track.

To capture and apply automation:

1. In the Automation window, make sure that the automation parameters you want to edit are write-enabled. Deselect any parameters whose automation you want to preserve.
2. Click the Automation Mode selector and select Read mode for the tracks that have automation you want to capture.
3. Ensure that **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** is selected.
4. With the Selector tool, select the location where you want to capture automation. All automated controls update to reflect the automation at that location. (If you make a selection, the controls update to reflect the automation at the beginning of the selection.)
5. In each track you want to apply the captured automation, click the track's Automation Mode selector and set the Automation mode to **Off**.
6. With the Selector tool, select the location where you want to apply the automation.
7. Enable the automation parameters previously suspended.
8. Choose **Edit > Automation** and select one of the following from the submenu:
    - To write the current value to only the automation parameter currently displayed in the Edit window, choose **Write To Current**.
    - To write the current settings for all automation parameters enabled in the Automation Enable window, choose **Write To All Enabled**.
9. Click the Automation Mode selector and select Read mode for the tracks you want to play back with automation.

Snapshot Automation and Trimming of Automation Data

Pro Tools lets you use trim values as snapshots and apply the *relative* changes (delta values) to the selected automation by using the Trim Automation command. This works in much the same way as the **Write Automation** command, except that it writes delta values instead of absolute values to automation data.

You can use trim values in writing snapshot automation to any automatable parameter.

To create a snapshot of relative changes in automation data:

1. In the Automation window, make sure that the automation parameters you want to edit are write-enabled. Deselect any parameters whose automation you want to preserve.
2. Select the area of the track you want to edit. All automated controls update to reflect the automation at the beginning of the selection.
3. Move the controls for the parameter up or down by the amount you want to change the data.
4. Choose **Edit > Automation** and do one of the following:

- To write the current delta value to only the currently displayed automation parameter, choose **Trim to Current**.
- To write the current delta value for all automation parameters enabled in the Automation window, choose **Trim to All Enabled**.

Previewing Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Automation Preview mode lets you audition changes to a mix and compare them to existing automation values without committing them to the automation playlist.

When you put Pro Tools in Automation Preview mode, you can preview values for automation-enabled controls on any track that is in a writable automation mode.

While in Automation Preview mode, when you touch or move a control, it *isolates* the control, disengaging it from its automation playlist. The control stops reading or writing automation, allowing you to freely audition changes.

When you have found a level or state that you want to use, you can then commit or *punch* the previewed value to the automation playlist for the isolated controls.

- If you punch during playback, the automation mode is set to Latch and writing begins at the preview value.
- If you punch while the transport is stopped, the automation mode is set to Latch and the control is primed at the preview value.

It is not necessary for the Allow Latch Prime in Stop preference to be enabled for Preview to put a control into Latch Prime.

Previewing New Automation Values

To preview a new automation value for a control:

1. Make sure the track where you want to preview the value is enabled for automation (Touch, Latch, Touch/Latch or their corresponding Trim modes).
2. Make sure the automation type you want to preview is enabled in the Automation window (Volume, Pan, Mute, Send level, Send pan, Send mute, or Plugin).
3. Click the **Preview** button in the Automation window. The button lights green to indicate that Preview mode is active.



Preview controls in the Automation window

4. To isolate a control, touch or move an automation-enabled control. You can isolate controls during playback or while the transport is stopped.

   The Automation Mode indicator on the track lights green to indicate that at least one of its controls is isolated, and the Punch Preview button in the Automation window lights to indicate a preview value is available to punch.

5. Start playback and adjust the isolated control to audition the changes.

Taking Controls Out of Isolated State

You can take controls out of their isolated state without leaving Preview mode.

To take all controls on a track out of their isolated state, do one of the following:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the automation mode selector on the track.
- Change the track automation mode to Read or Off.

To take all controls of an automation type out of their isolated state:

- In the Automation window, disable the automation type.

Isolating Multiple Controls

In some cases, such as when starting a new mix, you may want to isolate multiple controls at the same time.

To isolate all currently write-enabled controls:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the **`Preview`** button.

To isolate all write-enabled controls on all selected tracks:

- Option-Shift- click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the **`Preview`** button.

Suspending Preview Mode

You can temporarily suspend Preview mode, allowing you to toggle between preview values and existing automation.

To suspend Preview mode:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the **`Preview`** button.

Punching Preview Values

After you have isolated a control and auditioned a new value, you can punch (write) the value to the automation playlist.

To punch a preview value to the automation playlist:

- Click the lit Punch Preview button.

Preview Mode and "Write To" Commands

The **Write Automation To** commands work as follows with Preview mode:

Before Punching Preview Values

The **Write Automation To** commands (except **Write to Next Breakpoint**) can be used to extend previewed values. The **Write Automation To** command will only apply to isolated controls. Pro Tools remains in Preview mode.

After Punching Preview Values

The **Write Automation To** commands (except **Write to Next Breakpoint**) can be used to extend the punched value in the same manner as other automation.

Capturing Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) You can capture current automation values at one location in a session and quickly apply them in another location with the **Capture** and **Punch Capture** commands. The **Capture** command temporarily stores the value of all controls currently writing automation, and the **Punch Capture** commands writes those stored values to all enabled automation types.

- ICON Systems allow for the capture of up to 48 different values, or *snapshots*.
- All other systems allow for the capture of a single value.



Capture controls in the Automation window

Capturing Automation Values

You can capture the current automation values of actively writing controls.

To capture automation values:

1. Make sure all tracks whose automation values you want to capture are in a write-enabled state (Write, Touch, Latch, Touch/Latch or Latch).
2. Make sure the automation types you want to capture are enabled in the Automation window (Volume, Pan, Mute, Send level, Send pan, Send mute, or Plugin).
3. Start playback. When you reach a location where you want to capture the current automation states, click the **Capture** button in the Automation window.

The Punch Capture button in the Automation window lights to indicate a captured value is available to punch.

Punching Captured Automation Values

After automation values are captured, they can be punched (written) to another location in the track. Any tracks set to **Read** or **Off** are unaffected.

- If you punch during playback, the automation mode of any track set to **Touch** is set to **Latch** and writing begins at the captured value.
- If you punch while the transport is stopped, the automation mode of any track set to **Touch** is set to **Latch** and the control is primed at the captured value.

To punch captured automation values:

1. Move to a location where you want to apply the captured automation states. You can do this during playback or while the transport is stopped.
2. Click the Punch Capture button in the Automation window to apply the captured automation states. The captured states are applied to all automation types that are currently enabled in the Automation window.

Capturing Automation Values for All Controls

You can capture the state of all automatable controls (except on tracks with their Automation Mode set to **Off**) in a session, regardless of whether they are currently writing automation.

To capture the automation values of all controls:

- When you reach a location where you want to capture the current automation states, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the **Capture** button.

To capture the automation values of all controls on selected tracks only:

- When you reach a location where you want to capture the current automation states, Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the Capture button.

Punching Automation Values for All Controls

You can punch all captured automation values to another location on their corresponding tracks (except those tracks with their Automation Mode set to **Off**).

To punch the automation values of all controls:

- When you reach a location where you want to apply the captured automation states, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Punch Capture button. Any track set to **Read** or **Touch** are set to **Latch**. Any tracks set to **Off** are unaffected.

To punch the automation values of all controls on selected tracks only:

- When you reach a location where you want to apply the captured automation states, Option-Shift-click (Mac) or Alt-Shift-click (Windows) the Punch Capture button. Any selected tracks set to **Read** or **Touch** are set to **Latch**. Any selected tracks set to **Off** are unaffected.

Capture and Trim Mode

The **Capture** and Punch Capture commands work with Trim automation in the same way as regular automation. Pro Tools saves Trim status when capturing, so if you attempt to punch captured Trim values while displaying a non-Trim automation playlist, Pro Tools will automatically apply the values to the corresponding Trim playlist.

Punch Capture and "Write To" Commands

After issuing a **Punch Capture** command, the affected controls are writing automation (in Latch mode), so any of the **Write Automation To** commands can be used to extend the punched value in the same manner as other automation.

Capture and Preview Mode

Loading Captured Values into Preview

You can preview and modify captured automation values in Preview mode before punching the values to the automation playlist.

To capture an automation value and use it to preview:

1. Make sure the track where you want to preview the value is enabled for automation (Touch, Latch, Touch/Latch or their corresponding Trim modes).
2. Make sure the automation type you want to preview is enabled in the Automation window (Volume, Pan, Mute, Send level, Send pan, Send mute, or Plugin).
3. Capture an automation value that you want to preview in another location on a track. (See "Capturing Automation Values" on the previous page.)
4. Go to a location where you want to preview the captured automation states, and click the Preview button in the Automation window.
5. Click the Punch Capture button.

   The affected controls are isolated and updated to the captured values. The Punch Preview button in the Automation window lights to indicate the preview value is available to punch.
6. Start playback and adjust the isolated control to audition the changes.
7. When you are ready to punch the preview value to the automation playlist, click the lit Punch Preview button.

Capturing Values While in Preview Mode

When you are in Preview mode, you can capture the values of isolated controls and apply them elsewhere on a track. By capturing preview values, you can leave the underlying automation unchanged at the place where you capture.

On ICON systems, you can use preview mode to capture multiple snapshots without changing automation.

To capture a preview value:

1. Activate Preview mode and isolate a control. (See "Previewing New Automation Values" on page 1629).
2. Start playback and adjust the isolated control to audition the changes.

3. When you are ready to capture preview value, click the Capture button in the Automation window.

The Punch Capture button in the Automation window lights to indicate a captured value is available to punch.

VCA Master Track Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) You can automate changes to VCA Master track controls (as well as the controls for VCA member tracks).

Displaying Automation on VCA Master Tracks

The following controls on VCA Master tracks can be automated and have separate automation playlists:

- Volume
- Volume trim (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only)
- Mute

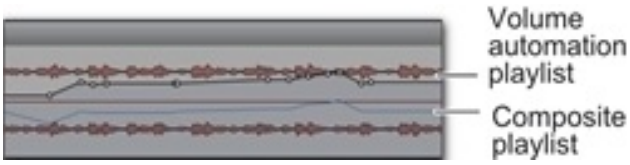
These automation playlists follow the same behavior as automation playlists on other track types. For more information on Volume trim automation, see "Trimming Automation" on page 1614.

Displaying the Composite Automation Playlist on Member Tracks

When a track is a VCA member, you can display a composite automation playlist that shows the contribution of the VCA Master to the Volume or Mute automation data on the member track. This composite playlist reflects the actual position of the Volume fader on the member track. The composite playlist display cannot be directly edited.

To display the composite playlist on VCA member tracks:

- Select **`View > Automation > Composite Playlist`**.



Viewing composite automation on a VCA member track

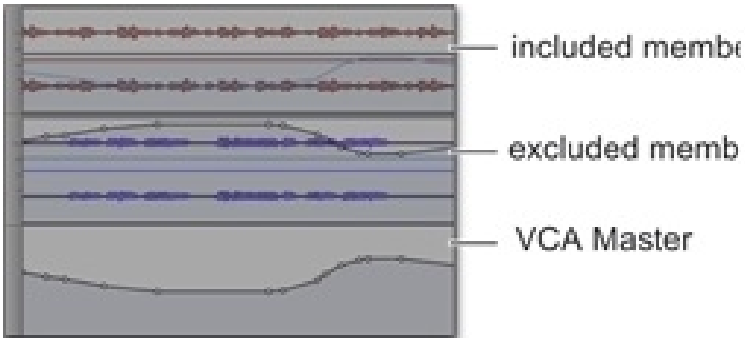
Excluding VCA Member Tracks from VCA Master Automation

When you are writing automation on a VCA Master track, the corresponding moves will appear on the composite automation playlist of each of its member tracks. If you want to exclude a member track from an automation pass, write-enable the member track for automation.

To exclude a member track from VCA Master track automation pass:

1. Write-enable the VCA Master track for automation (Write, Touch or Latch mode).
2. Write-enable the member track you want to exclude for automation (Write mode).
3. Make sure other member tracks that you want to include in the pass are not write-enabled for automation.
4. Start playback.
5. Move the fader on the VCA Master track.
6. Stop playback.

Automation is written on the excluded member track such that the fader moves on the VCA Master track are canceled out, and the fader on the excluded member track does not move on subsequent playback.



Automation for excluded VCA member track, canceling VCA Master automation

Inverse VCA Automation

VCA tracks can be used to preserve the relative automation of its members while a fader on a member track is manually moved (or written over) in a subsequent automation pass. When you move the VCA fader, it applies a relative gain change to all its member tracks. For example, if you move the VCA up by +3 dB, every member fader moves up by +3 dB while maintaining individual member track levels. Inverse automation occurs when a member track fader is manually adjusted after VCA automation has been written.

Fader "Clutch"

In this example, you have a VCA controlling a group of tracks and have written an overall volume move on the VCA Master by +6 dB boost over a 2-second section. While the VCA automation is running, if you manually adjust the volume fader on one of the member tracks (or if you write automation to it) to a fixed, static level, effectively "clutching" it out of the VCA's control at that moment. Pro Tools plays back the track at the set leveleven though the VCA automation is adding +6 dB of gain to all other member tracks. Pro Tools automatically writes an inverse automation curve of –6 dB on the member track automation playlist at the moment you "clutch" the fader.

Composite Volume Graph

Pro Tools displays a Composite Volume Graph on all VCA member tracks. This blue line shows the combined, final output volume of the track, which is the sum of the track's automation plus the VCA automation. The "inverse" move is the member track automation required to make the Composite Volume Graph match the level you have set manually. The inverse automation lets you override the dynamic control of the VCA on an individual track while the VCA is active.

Coalescing VCA Automation

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) There are several ways to commit, or *coalesce*, the contribution of a selected VCA Master track's Volume and Mute automation to the automation playlists of its member tracks.

Clearing a VCA Master

You can use a VCA Master to write grouped automation, coalesce the VCA automation to all of the member tracks, and clear the automation on the VCA Master. The coalesced tracks will play back exactly as they did when they were in the VCA group.

To coalesce automation from a VCA Master to all of its member tracks and retain the VCA Master:

1. Select the VCA Master track whose automation you want to coalesce.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Track > Coalesce VCA Master Automation**.
   - Right-click the VCA Master track name and choose **Coalesce VCA Master Automation**.

The composite Volume level and Mute state are coalesced to each of the member tracks. The VCA Master Volume fader is reset to zero, the VCA Mute is set to unmuted, and any automation on the VCA Master is cleared.

Deleting a VCA Master

You can temporarily use a VCA Master to write grouped automation, then coalesce the VCA automation to all of the member tracks by deleting the VCA Master. The coalesced tracks will play back exactly as they did when they were in the VCA group.

To coalesce automation from a VCA Master to all of its member tracks and delete the VCA Master track:

1. Select the VCA Master track whose automation you want to coalesce.
2. Choose **Track > Delete**.

The composite Volume level and Mute state are committed to each of the member tracks.

⚠ This action cannot be undone.

Removing a Member Track from a VCA Group

You can remove an individual member track from a VCA group, which commits the VCA automation to that track, leaving the VCA Master and the other member tracks untouched. The coalesced member track plays back exactly as it did when it was in the VCA group.

To coalesce automation from a VCA Master to an individual member track:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Modify Groups** from the Groups List menu.
   - Click the Group ID indicator on the track and choose **Modify**.
   - Right-click the Group name in the Groups List and choose **Modify**.
2. In the Groups dialog, select the VCA-controlled group that includes the member track.
3. In the Groups dialog, click Tracks and remove the member track from the group.
4. Click **OK**.

The member track is removed from the VCA group, and the composite Volume level and Mute state are coalesced to the track.

Duplicating a Member Track

When you duplicate a member track without duplicating its group assignments, the VCA automation is coalesced to the duplicate track. The coalesced duplicate plays back exactly as if it were in the VCA group.

To coalesce automation from a VCA Master to a single member track by duplicating the track:

1. Select the member track whose automation you want to coalesce.
2. Choose **Track > Duplicate**.
3. In the Duplicate Track dialog, deselect **Group Assignments**.

4. Click **OK**.

   The composite Volume level and Mute state are coalesced to the duplicate track. The original member track is preserved, and the VCA group is unchanged.

Coalescing Automation Across an Edit Selection

You can commit VCA automation across an Edit selection in a VCA Master track, without committing the automation on the entire length of the track.

To coalesce automation in an Edit selection on a VCA Master track:

1. Select the VCA Master track whose automation you want to coalesce.
2. Make an Edit selection in the VCA Master track that includes the range of automation you want to coalesce.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Hold Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) and choose **Track > Coalesce VCA Master Automation**.
   - Hold Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) and Right-click the VCA Master track name and choose **Coalesce VCA Master Automation**.

   The composite Volume level and Mute state are committed to each of the member tracks over the Edit selection. The VCA Master Volume is set to zero, the VCA Mute state is set to unmuted, and any automation on the VCA Master is cleared for the selected area only.

60 Mixdown

Pro Tools lets you mix down by *recording* a mix to new audio tracks or by *bouncing* a mix to disk.

Recording to Tracks

This is the process of submixing and recording the submix to new audio tracks, as you would any other track input signals. This method requires available tracks, voices, and bus paths to accommodate the submix and the new tracks. While recording to tracks, you can manually adjust mixer or other controls.

Record to new tracks if you want to adjust mixer controls during the mixdown.

Bounce Mix

The **Bounce Mix** command lets you write a final mix, create a new audio loop, print effects, or consolidate any submix to new audio files on disk in any of several possible audio file formats. Any available output or bus path can be selected as the Mix Source. Sample rate, bit depth, and other conversion processes can be applied during or after the bounce.

Selecting Audio for Loops, Submixes, and Effects

Both **Bounce Mix** and recording to tracks operate on the current Timeline or Edit selection, if one exists. This makes it easy to turn multitrack selections into mono, stereo, or multichannel loops. Submixes, stems, and other specialized types of mixes can also be recorded (or "printed") to disk using either method, or played out to another recording, transfer, or archiving medium.

Printing effects to disk is the technique of permanently adding real-time effects, such as EQ or reverb, to an audio track by bussing and recording it to new tracks with the effects added. The original audio is preserved, so you can return to the source track at any time. This can be useful when you have a limited number of tracks or effects devices.

AudioSuite plugins provide another option for writing (or "printing") a plugin effect to disk. For more information, see *"AudioSuite Processing" on page 1262.*

Using Dither

Dither can significantly improve audio quality when reducing the bit depth of digital audio.

When to Use a Dither Plugin

You should use a dither plugin in any situation where you are reducing bit depth, for example, when mixing down to a 16-bit file with the Bounce Mix command, or when sending your final mix to an external digital device that records at 16-bit resolution.

A dither plugin is necessary even when mixing down to 16-bit from a 16-bit session. Even though 16-bit sessions use 16-bit files, they are still processed at higher internal bit depths. Pro Tools systems use 24-bit audio input and output signal paths, and internal 64-bit floating point processing for mixing and audio processing.

For this reason, whether you are working with a 32-bit floating-point session, or a 24-bit session or a 16-bit fixed-point session, the following are recommended:

- When mixing down to a 16-bit destination, use a dither plugin on the main output.
- When bus recording a submix to a track in the same session, *do not* use a dither plugin on the destination track.

- When mixing down to a 24-bit destination, *do not* use a dither plugin on the main output.
- When mixing down to an analog destination with any 24-bit capable interface, *do not* use a dither plugin on the main output.
- During normal recording and playback, bypass any dither plugin on the main output.

Bounce Mix and Dither

Bouncing to disk does *not* apply dither when reducing bit depth. To apply dither when bouncing to disk, you should insert a dither plugin as the last processor in the signal path on a Master Fader assigned to the Mix Source audio output path.

Using a dither plugin on a Master Fader is preferable to an Auxiliary Input because Master Fader inserts are post-fader. As a post-fader insert, the dither plugin can process changes in Master Fader level.

If you do not use a dither plugin on your Mix Source path, and you choose to convert to a lower resolution during or after bouncing to disk, the resulting file will be converted by truncation.

Using Dither on an Output Mix

Pro Tools includes real-time dither plugins that improve 16-, 18-, or 20-bit performance and reduce quantization artifacts when reducing the bit depth of an output mix.

To use a dither plugin on an output mix:

1. Choose **Track > New** and create a (stereo) Master Fader track.
2. Set the output of the Master Fader to the output or bus path you want to bounce.
3. Assign the outputs of all audio tracks in the session to the same path you selected in step 2. The Master Fader now controls the output levels of all tracks routed to it.
4. On the Master Fader, insert a dither plugin as the last processor in the signal chain.
5. In the dither plugin window, choose an output Bit Resolution and Noise Shaping setting.
6. Do one of the following:
   - Play back the session to record (or "layback") Pro Tools output to lower bit-rate media (such as 16- or 20- bit Blue-ray).
   - Choose **File > Bounce Mix**. In the Bounce Mix dialog, select the appropriate bit depth (such as 16-bit for CD audio). Before being converted by the **Bounce Mix** command, the signal is processed according to the resolution and noise shaping settings in the dither plugin inserted on the Master Fader.



For information about dither plugins, see the Audio Plugins Guide.

Sample Rate Conversion and Bit Depth Reduction

If you want to do both a sample rate conversion and a bit depth reduction when mixing down, first convert the sample rate while maintaining the higher bit depth, and then reduce the sample rate-converted file to the lower bit depth, using a dither. By keeping the higher bit depth when performing the sample rate conversion, you ensure the highest possible audio quality.

Bus Recording to Tracks

You can create a submix in your Pro Tools session and bus record it to available tracks in the same session. This technique lets you add live input to the mix, as well as adjust volume, pan, mute, and other controls during the recording process. You can also use this technique instead of Bounce Mix to create mixed tracks directly in your Pro Tools session.

Voice Requirements for Recording a Submix

Recording a submix to new tracks requires an available voice for each track that you want to record. Make sure you have enough voices available to play back all tracks that you want to record and enough voices available to record the destination tracks.

In contrast, the Bounce Mix command lets you bounce all available voices to disk without holding any in reserve, but you cannot manually change any controls during the bounce. For more information, see "Bounce Mix" below.



For information about voice management, see "Track Priority and Voice Assignment" on page 363.



With HDX systems, Native plugins placed on Auxiliary Input, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks may use additional voices and may introduce extra latency based on the H/W Buffer Size. For more information, see "Inserting Native and DSP Plugins on Tracks" on page 1518.

To record a submix to a track:

1. Apply any plugins or external processors you want to add to your audio tracks or Auxiliary Inputs before you record.
2. Set the main channel output of the tracks you want to include in the submix to a bus path. If you are using stereo or multichannel tracks, set the panning of each track.
3. Make sure **Loop Record** is not enabled.
4. Choose **Track > New** and create one or more mono, stereo, or multichannel audio tracks.
5. If you are recording in stereo, pan the new stereo track (or mono tracks) hard left and right.
6. Set the input of each destination track to the bus path from which you are recording.
7. Set the output of your new tracks to your main output path.
8. Ensure that **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection** is selected.
9. Select audio to record.

   The start, end, and length of the recording can be based on the cursor location or Timeline and Edit selections.

   - Selection-based recording automatically punches in and out of recording at the selection start and end. Be sure to include time at the end of a selection for reverb tails, delays, and other effects.
   - If you do not make a selection, recording will begin from the location of the playback cursor. Recording will continue until you press Stop.
10. Record enable the new tracks and click Record in the Transport.
11. Click Play to begin recording the submix.
12. If recording a selection, recording will stop automatically. If performing an open-ended recording, click Stop, or punch out of recording.
13. When the recording has finished, you can export the bus recorded clip using the **Export Clips as Files** command (see "Exporting a Clip as a New Audio File" on page 664).

Bounce Mix

The **Bounce Mix** command lets you export your mix, including sub-mixes, to multiple file formats without having to create extra dedicated audio tracks in your session for bus recording. Bouncing writes to separate audio files, so you do not have to reserve any tracks for a bounce. A bounce can be done offline (faster than real-time) or in real-time (so you can listen to audio playback of your mix during the bounce process).

You can use the **Bounce Mix** command to write audio loops, sub-mixes, stems, or any other session audio to disk as a new audio file in any of several audio file formats. You can use it to create final mono, stereo, and multichannel master files. **Bounce Mix** also provides conversion options for sample rate, bit resolution, and format. It even lets you automatically import bounced files after the bounce is complete. Use Bounce Mix presets to store and recall your most commonly used Bounce settings.

To Bounce Mix (basic instructions):

1. Make a Timeline selection to define the range to be bounced.
2. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
3. Configure the Bounce options (see "Bounce Options" on the next page).
4. Click **Bounce**.

When you Bounce Mix, the resulting file includes the following:

Audible Tracks

All audible tracks that are routed to the output which is selected as the source of the bounce are included in the bounce. Any muted tracks are not included in the bounce. If you solo one or more tracks, only the soloed tracks are included in the bounced mix.

Automation

All read-enabled automation is played back and incorporated in the bounced mix.

Inserts and Sends

All active inserts, including real-time plugins and hardware inserts, are applied to the bounced mix.

Selection or Track Length

If you make a selection in a track, the bounced mix will be the length of the selection. If there is no selection in any track, the bounce will be the length of the longest audible track in the session.

Time Stamp Information

Bounced material is automatically time stamped so that you can drag it into a track and place it at the same location as the original material. For more information about time stamping, see "Time Stamping" on page 1861.

Bounced Files Are Delay-Compensated

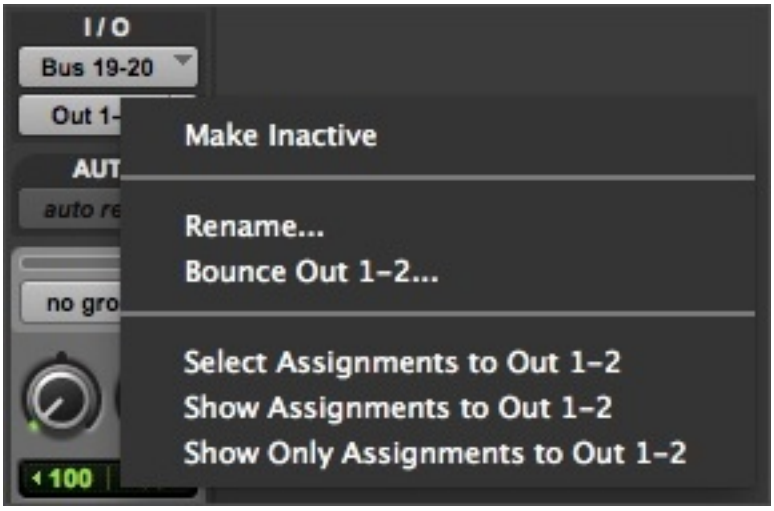
Pro Tools compensates for any bus and plugin delays when bouncing to disk. This means that if a bounced file is imported back into a session, and placed directly in time against the source mix, it is time-aligned with the original source mix.

Record-Enabled Tracks and TrackInput-Enabled Tracks Cannot Be Bounced

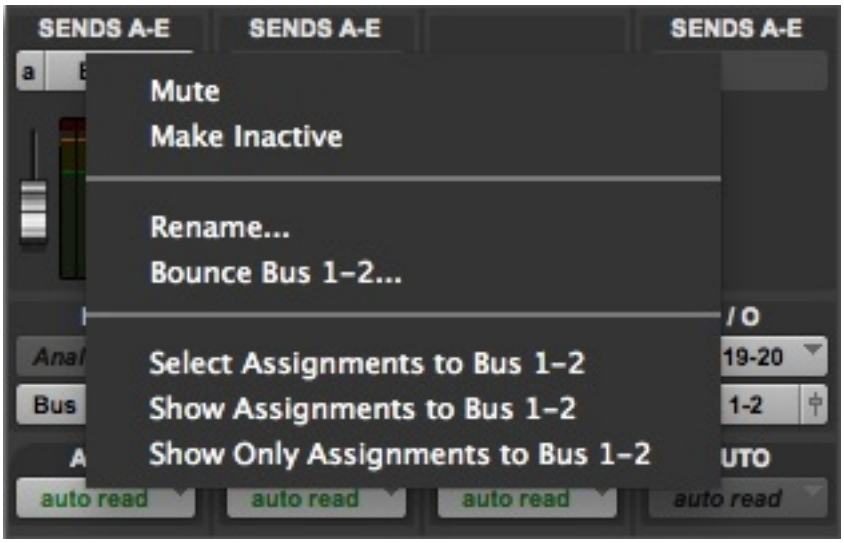
Pro Tools does not include tracks that are either record-enabled or in Input Only monitoring mode in the bounce.

Bounce From Sends or Track Outputs

Pro Tools lets you open the Bounce dialog pre-configured to use the channel path of any given send or track output using Right-click menus.



Track Output Right-Click menu in the Mix window



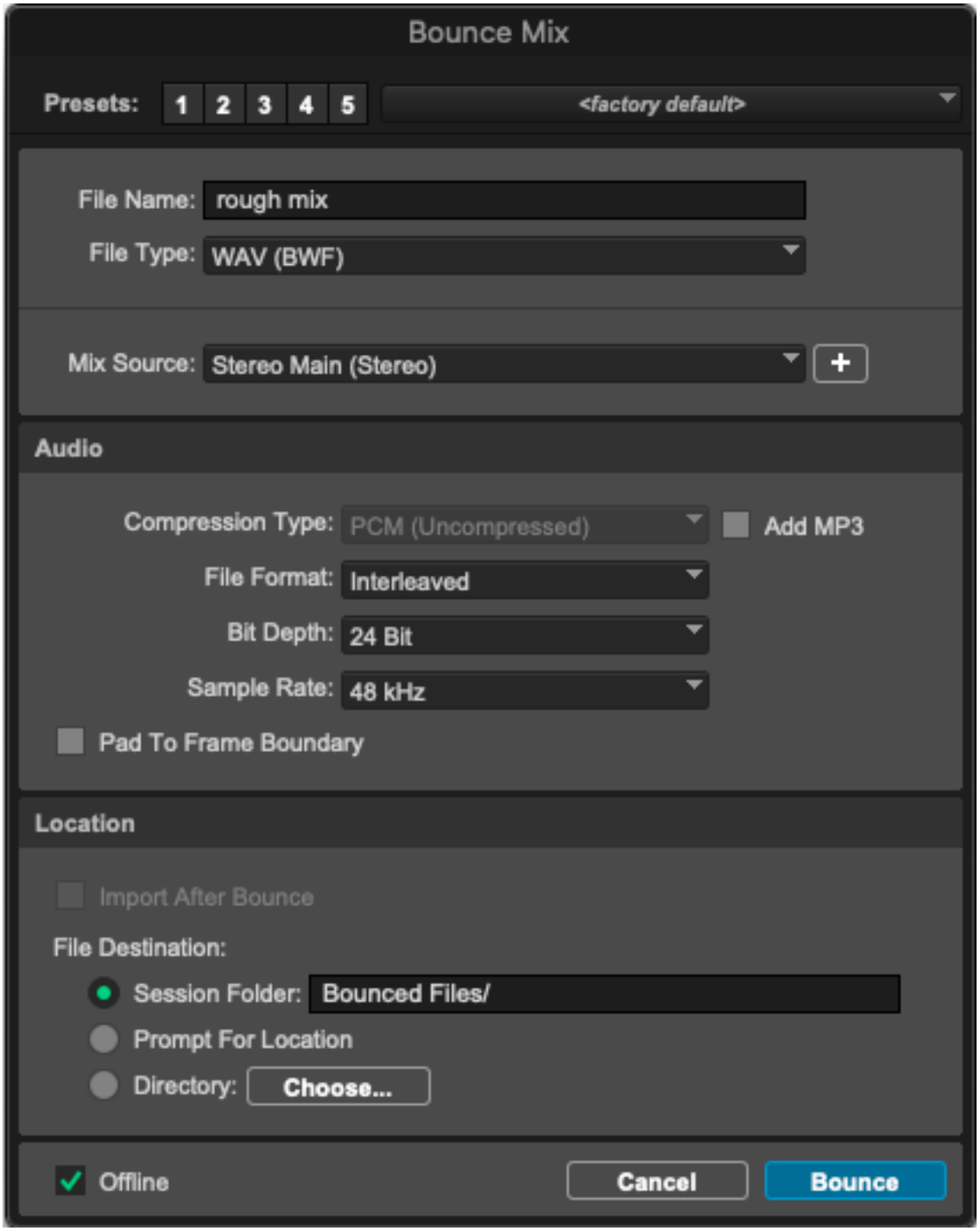
Send Right-Click menu in the Mix window

To Bounce an Output or Send path to disk:

1. Right-click the Output Path selector or the Send Path selector for the desired track Output or Send.
2. From the right-click menu, choose Bounce ‹path›.
3. The Bounce dialog opens with the Output or Send path selected as the Mix Source.
4. Configure the other Bounce settings as desired and click **Bounce**.

Bounce Options

When you use the **Bounce Mix** command, you can configure several file options.



Bounce Mix dialog

Presets

The Bounce Mix window provides two preset options that let you quickly store and recall your most commonly used Bounce settings. For example, you may regularly use the same settings for different delivery formats depending on the nature of the projects you work on. Store and recall the Bounce settings that you most commonly use on your local Pro Tools system with the Presets buttons. You can store up to 5 quick presets on the buttons numbered 1–5 by command-clicking (Mac) or control-clicking (Windows) on the buttons and recall them by clicking on the buttons or by pressing Control+1–5 (Mac) or Start+ 1–5 (Windows). You can also store as many named presets as you want using the Bounce Settings menu.

To store a Bounce preset:

1. Configure the Bounce Mix dialog as you like.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Preset button where you want to store the current Bounce Mix dialog settings.

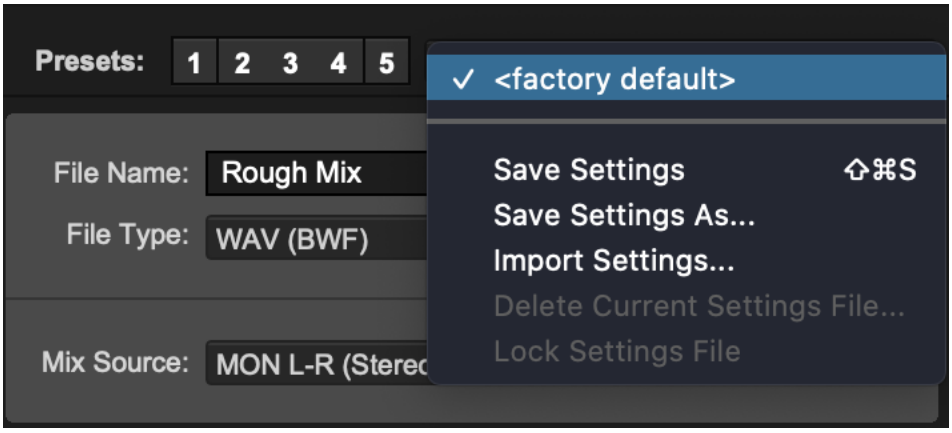
To recall a Bounce preset:

- Click the Preset button that contains the settings you want to recall.

  Press Control+1–5 (Mac) or Start+1–5 (Windows) to recall the corresponding preset.

Bounce Settings Menu

Use the Bounce Settings menu commands to save, import, delete, and manage Bounce settings as presets, or Bounce settings files (.ptpreset). Bounce settings files include all settings in the Bounce Mix dialog except for the **`File Name`**. They also include **`Mix Sources`** (if they match the output paths used in the session) and **`Locations`** (if the specified location directory path settings are available on the current Pro Tools system). By default, Bounce settings files are stored in /Documents/Pro Tools/Pro Tools Settings/Bounce/. Named Bounce settings files in the default Pro Tools Settings folder are listed in the Bounce Settings menu right under **`<factory default>`**. You can save as many Bounce settings files as you want, and Bounce settings files can be shared with other Pro Tools systems.



Bounce Settings menu

Bounce Settings menu commands include:

<factory default>

Restores the default settings for the Bounce Mix dialog. Any additional Bounce settings files that are stored in the default directory are also listed here in alphabetical order.

Save Settings

Saves the current settings. This command overwrites any previous version of the preset.

Save Settings As

Saves the current settings as a new preset under a different name.

Import Settings

Imports a Bounce settings file from a location other than the Root Settings folder or Session folder.

Delete Current Settings File

Permanently deletes the current Bounce settings file from disk.

Lock/Unlock Settings File

Locks the current Bounce settings file so that it cannot be edited or deleted. Choose **Unlock Settings File** to unlock the file for editing.

File Name

Pro Tools provides a **File Name** text entry field for Bounce Mix. Type the **File Name** you want for the bounced file. For multi-source bounces, the entered file name is appended with the name of the Mix Source and a number (incremented for each source): "‹file name›_‹source name›_‹*n*›."

File Type

The **File Type** selector lets you select the file type for bounced files.

- *Press Command+Up/Down arrows (Mac) or Control +Up/Down arrows (Windows) to cycle through the available File Types.*

WAV (Broadcast .WAV Format)

This format is supported on Windows and Mac. To use a WAV file in Pro Tools, you can drag and drop from a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer or Mac Finder, or a folder, or you can use the **Import Audio** command. Files in this format do not have to be converted to be used in Pro Tools.

WAV (Dolby Atmos ADM BWF)

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only) Dolby Atmos® ADM BWF is a Dolby Atmos master file format used to carry audio and metadata for production and distribution (see "Export ADM files" on page 1775).

AIFF (Audio Interchange File Format)

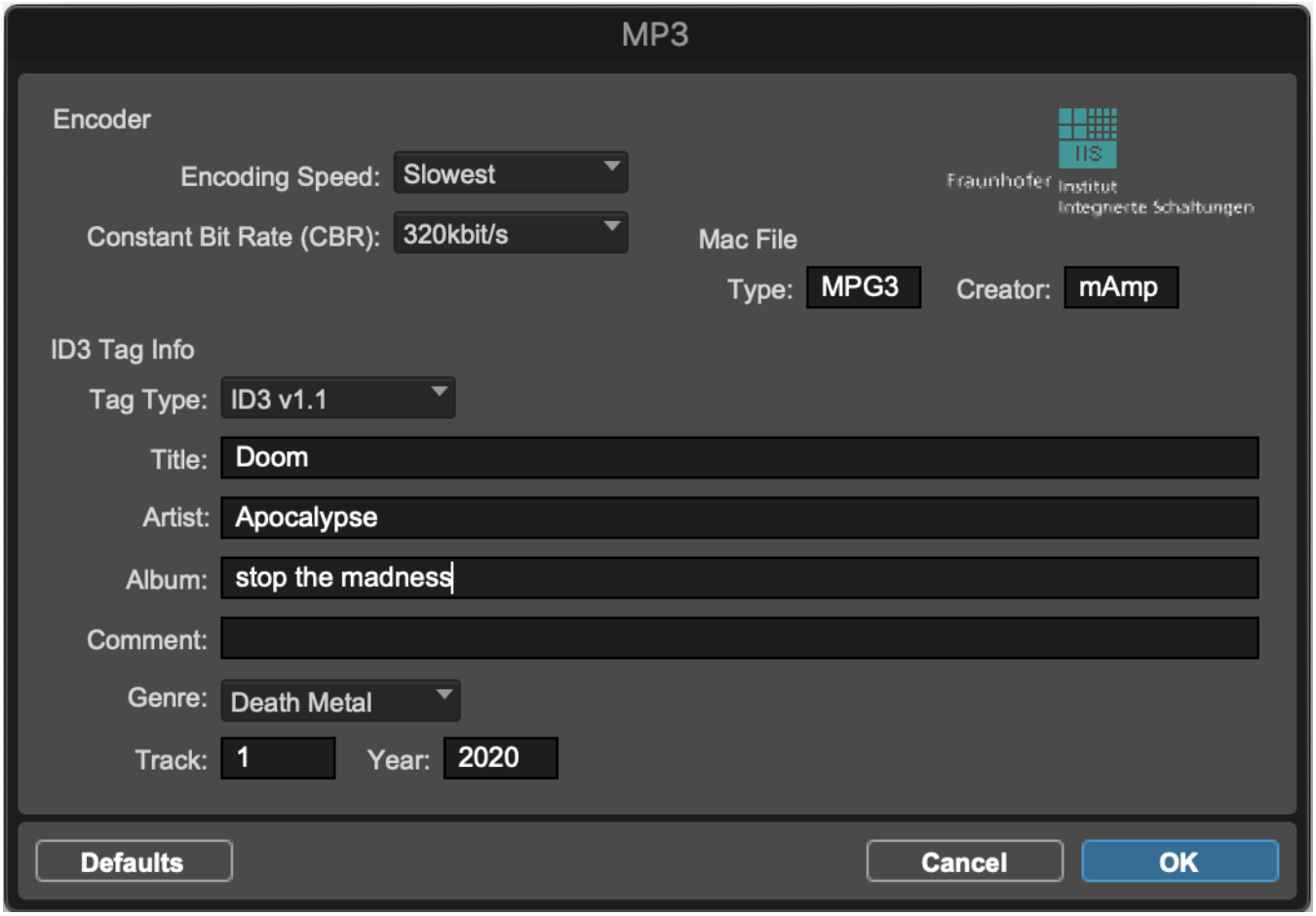
This format is supported on Windows and Mac. To use an AIFF file in Pro Tools, you can drag and drop from a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer or Mac Finder, or you can use the **Import Audio** command. Files in this format do not have to be converted to be used in Pro Tools.

M4A (MPEG-4 Audio)

Pro Tools lets you Bounce Mix to M4A stereo or mono AAC files at 44.1 and 48 kHz with constant or variable bit rates (CBR or VBR). MPEG-4 audio files (.M4a) contain a digital audio stream encoded with AAC compression standards. This audio container was first used by Apple to differentiate MPEG-4 audio files from the popular MP4 video file container. The AAC compression in M4A files downsizes audio data while preserving a high-level of quality. Because of that, M4A audio files are comparatively smaller in size and great for storing and sharing digital music, audiobook content, podcasts, and so on. It is the standard for delivering music tracks and other audio content from Apple iTunes Store, and is supported by all major platforms (Mac, Windows, Linux, Android, and iOS).

MP3 (MPEG-1 Layer 3)

The MPEG-1 Layer 3 (MP3) compression format is used for streaming and downloading audio over the Internet, and for playback on portable devices.



MP3 Export Options

When you select this format, the **Resolution** pop-up menu in the Pro Tools Output Options dialog is unavailable. The resolution is set by the encoder.

The sample rate chosen is given to the codec as a base sample rate for operations. The actual sample rate of the resulting file is determined in the MP3 Encoder Options dialog. For example, if a base sample rate of 48000 Hz is chosen, the MP3 Encoder Options dialog will allow output streams in 48, 24, or 12 kHz, depending on encoding quality.

When you export or bounce to MP3 format, you can set the following options:

Encoder Settings

- Encoder Speed

  Determines the audio quality of the bounced file. There are two options: **Highest Quality** and **Fastest Encoding Time**.

  The **Highest Quality** option can take up to five times longer to process audio than the **Fastest Encoding** option, so you should use it only when the highest fidelity is essential and you have the time to devote to the encoding process.

- Constant Bit Rate (CBR)

  Encodes the file at a single bit rate that you choose from the **Constant Bit Rate (CBR)** pop-up menu. Because the bit rate is fixed, the quality of the encoded audio will vary depending on the nature of the material being compressed. The **128 kbit/s** option is generally best for streaming over the Internet, since it has predictable bandwidth requirements.

ID3 Tag Info Settings

- ID3 Tag Type

  The ID3 tag stores data about the encoded audio file that is used by MP3 players to display information about the file. Pro Tools supports three versions of this tag, in order to provide backward compatibility with older MP3 players:

  - ID3 v1.0: Appears at the end of a streaming MP3 file, so that tag information is only displayed after software streaming is finished.
  - ID3 v1.1: Same as version 1.0, but adds track number information to the tag.
  - ID3 v2.3: Appears at the front of a streaming MP3 file, so that tag information is displayed when streaming begins.

    While ID3 v2.3 is the current standard MP3 format, not all MP3 players support ID3 v2.3. Contact the player software developer for compatibility information.

- Title/Artist/Album/Comment

  Type the title, artist, and other information for the MP3 file. This information is displayed by many MP3 players.

- Genre

  Choose a genre for the file. This information is displayed by many MP3 players, and can appear in searchable catalogs and databases.

- Track Number

  If you select ID3 tag type v1.1 or v2.3, you can enter a CD track number for the file. This information is displayed by many MP3 players.

- Year

  Enter a year for the file. This information is displayed by many MP3 players.

Default Button

To restore all settings in this dialog to their default values, click **Defaults**.

MXF (OP-Atom)

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only) While OP-Atom MXF files can contain either one channel of audio or one track of video per file, Pro Tools can only export audio when bouncing to **MXF (OP-Atom)**. Also, to ensure compatibility with Non-Linear Editors (such as Avid Media Composer) when bouncing to **MXF (OP-Atom)**, **Multiple Mono** is automatically selected as the only available option for **File Type** and **Pad To Frame Boundary** is enforced.

MOV

.mov files can include both video and multiple channels of audio (see "Bounce Mix to MOV" on page 1956). This option is only available if there is video in the session.

Windows Media

(Windows Only) Windows Media formatted files can contain audio, video, or script data stored in Windows Media Format. A Windows Media Format file may have a .asf or .wmv file name extension.

Mix Source

All currently active output paths (both internal mix buses and output buses) and any physical outputs used in the session are available as the **Mix Source**.

To set the Mix Source:

- Select a bus path, output path, or physical output from the Mix Source selector.

Bus

bounced file includes only audio routed to the selected internal mix bus path.

Output

The bounced file includes only audio routed to the selected output bus path.

Physical Output

The bounced file includes only audio from all output paths mapped to the selected physical output. This is useful when working with overlapping output paths.

Bouncing Multiple Sources Simultaneously

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio let you bounce up to 24 sources of up to 10 channels each in standard surround formats (up to 7.1.2), or up to 16 channels for ambisonics (3rd order), each simultaneously.

To bounce multiple sources to disk:

1. Make a Timeline selection to define the range to be bounced.
2. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
3. Click the "+" button to the right of the first **Mix Source** selector to add additional Mix Sources (up to 16 simultaneous Mix Sources).

   Press Command+Shift+Down arrow (Mac) or Control+Shift+Down arrow (Windows) to add Mix Sources.

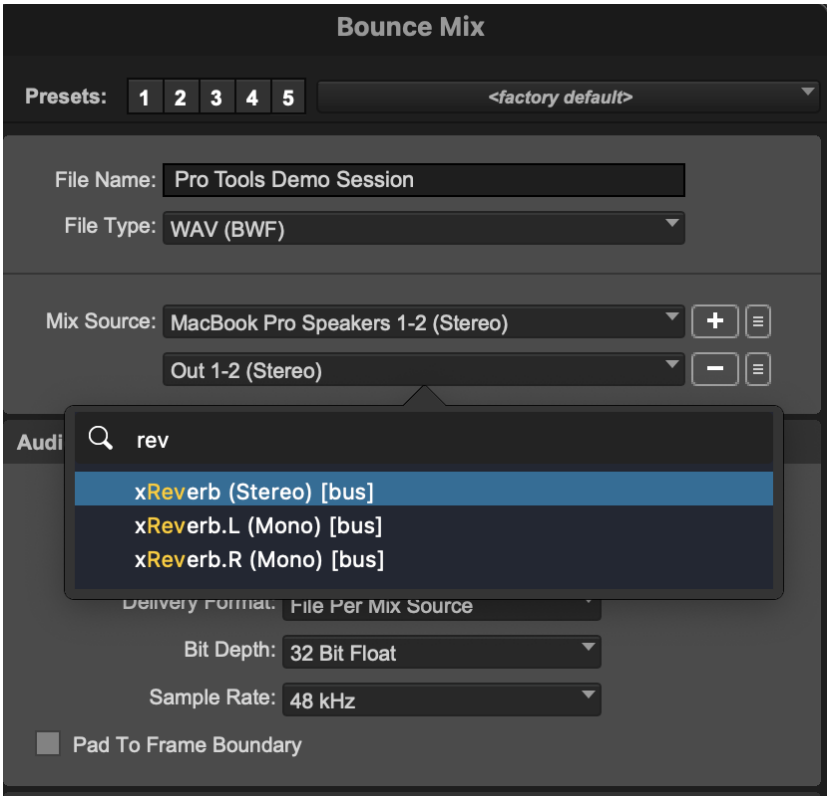
4. Select the desired output or bus path for each **Mix Source**.
5. If necessary, click the "–" button to the right of any Mix Source (except the first) to remove it from the bounce.

   Press Command+Shift+Up arrow (Mac) or Control+Shift+Up arrow (Windows) to remove the bottom Mix Source.

6. To re-order Mix Sources, click and drag them up or down in the list. Sources are written to bounced files in the order they appear in the list from top to bottom.
7. Configure all other Bounce options as desired.
8. Click **Bounce**.

Search Mix Source Outputs

Pro Tools lets you search for the names of output paths in the Bounce Mix window.



To search for output paths by name in the Bounce Mix window:

1. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
2. Click the Mix Source selector and choose the **Search** option.
3. Type the name of the output path you want to find.

The output type is indicated by brackets at the end of the name.

Compression Type

The **Compression Type** setting typically defaults to **PCM (Uncompressed)** for most **File Types** and cannot be changed. If **MP3** is selected as the **File Type**, it updates to **MP3** and cannot be changed. For M4A, the options include **AAC (Constant Bit Rate)** and **AAC (Variable Bit Rate)**.

Quality

When bouncing to M4A, Pro Tools lets you select the **Quality** of the bounce: **Good**, **Better**, or **Best**.

Add MP3

The **Add MP3** option in the Bounce Mix dialog lets you simultaneously create an MP3 version of each Mix Source in addition to the selected **File Type** (such as **WAV**).

File Format

This is the format for the bounced result. Options include **Mono (Summed)**, **Multiple Mono**, and **Interleaved**.

To set the format of the bounced file:

- Select a file format from the Format selector.

Mono (Summed)

Creates a single disk file that is a summed mono mix of the current sources being monitored.

Before bouncing to disk, make sure your levels are below –3 dB to avoid clipping that occurs when left and right signals exceed –3 dB below maximum, or full code (0 dBFS).

Multiple Mono

Creates multiple mono files with the same number of channels as the source path.

- If the source output or bus path is stereo, two mono files will be created, and appended with ".L" and ".R" suffixes on bounce.
- If a multichannel format is used (for example, six-channel, 5.1), individual mono files will be created for each member of the path. Files will be appended with path suffixes according to the path definition in the I/O Setup dialog.
- If the source output or bus path is mono, the pop-up menu will switch from multiple mono to mono, and will create one mono file (no summing of multiple sources).

Interleaved

Creates a single, interleaved file that contains all of the bounced streams from the chosen output path. In an interleaved stereo bounce, tracks assigned to odd-numbered outputs are sent to the left channel, and tracks assigned to even-numbered outputs are sent to the right channel.

Pro Tools also lets you bounce multichannel interleaved files of any supported multichannel file type (such as 5.1). This can simplify file management of mixes and projects for backup and archiving.

Delivery Format

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio let you bounce multiple stems to separate files or to a single, interleaved WAV (BWF) file. The later lets you export multiple delivery formats to a single multichannel file for optimized file transfer workflows. For example, you can combine separate stereo and 5.1 stems in a single, interleaved 8-channel BWF file for delivery.

The **Delivery Format** selector only appears if you have more than one **Mix Source** specified and the File Type is set to **WAV (BWF)**.

To bounce multiple stems to a singe BWF:

1. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
2. For **Mix Source**, add and select the stems you want to bounce.

   Stems are written to channels in the bounced file in the order they appear in the Bounce Mix dialog from top to bottom. You can reorder source stems by dragging them up or down.

3. For **File Type**, select **WAV (BWF)**.
4. For **File Format**, select **Interleaved**.
5. For **Delivery Format**, select **Single File**.
6. Configure other options as desired.
7. Click **Bounce**.

   The **Mix Source** stems are bounced and embedded in a single WAV file (BWF) in the order they are listed from top to bottom in the Bounce Mix dialog. The resulting file includes each stem in WavEXT channel order with an additional iXML stem/channel definition embedded in the file. When Pro Tools imports one of these files, it remains a single interleaved file as long as the channel count is below 32. If there are more than 32 channels, they are all split out into mono files. In all cases, each stem appears in the Clip List as its own autonomous multi-channel clip (just as if they were each their own file).

Bit Depth

This setting lets you select between three different bit depths for the bounce conversion. Note that **Bounce Mix** does not apply dither when converting during or after a bounce to a lower resolution. If you need to bounce to a lower resolution file, use a dither plugin on a Master Fader track assigned to the Mix Source path. This dithers the bounced file, before the **Bounce Mix** conversion truncates the bounced file to the selected bit depth resolution. (See "Using Dither" on page 1638.)

To set the resolution of the bounced file:

- Select a bit depth from the **Bit Depth** selector.

The following **Bit Depth** options are available:

16-Bit

This is the Compact Disc standard bit resolution.

If your session is 16-bit, you should still use a dither plugin on the output mix, because all Pro Tools systems process audio internally at higher bit depths.

24-Bit

This setting provides the highest resolution that is compatible with most audio interfaces. It is useful when you want to create a final mix without losing any resolution (for example, if you are delivering a final mix that will be ready to master).

32-Bit Float

This setting provides the highest resolution for internal Pro Tools mixing and plugin processing. It is useful when you want to export and re-import loops and sound effects into your Pro Tools session, or when you are exchanging files between Pro Tools sessions.

Sample Rate

This option lets you save to any of several sample rates. Choices are dependent on your Pro Tools system and audio interfaces. Options can include sample rates from 8 kHz to 192 kHz, including sample rates with Pull Up and Pull Down options.

Common Sample Rates

The following are the more common sample rates, and their applications. Higher sample rates provide better audio fidelity for recording and playback, and also for processing with dynamics, dither (with noise shaping), and analog emulation plugins.

192 kHz

This is a supported sample rate for some audio DVDs, and provides the highest quality audio fidelity with compatible audio interfaces (such as the HD I/O).

176.4 kHz

You may want to work at a sample rate of 176.4 kHz if the final delivery will be at 44.1 kHz (such as compact disc). This will provide a slightly faster sample rate conversion to 44.1 kHz than from 192 kHz.

96 kHz

This is a supported sample rate for DVD audio and provides high-quality audio fidelity with compatible audio interfaces (such as the HD I/O and 003).

88.2 kHz

You may want to work at a sample rate of 88.2 kHz if the final delivery will be at 44.1 kHz (such as compact disc). This will provide a slightly faster sample rate conversion to 44.1 kHz than from 96 kHz.

48 kHz

This is a standard sample rate for Professional and DVD video, as well as some broadcast and recording label archiving, and is supported by DA-88/98, DAT, and ADAT decks.

44.1 kHz

This is the standard sample rate for compact discs (CD), and is supported by DA-88/98, DAT, and ADAT decks.

Additional sample rate options include 8 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 16 kHz, 22.050 kHz, and 32 kHz.

Custom

For a custom sample rate, click in the sample rate window and manually enter in a value from 4,000 to 200,200 samples.

Pull Up and Pull Down Rates

All available sample rates support pull up and pull down rates, or other specialized rates.

M4A is limited to 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz.

Pad to Frame Boundary

Enable this option in the Bounce Mix dialog to create a bounced file that pads to a frame boundary by rounding up to the nearest frame location on either side of the bounce range to ensure placement accuracy in a Non-Linear Editor, such as Avid Media Composer.

Import After Bounce

The **`Import After Bounce`** option automatically imports newly bounced files into the Clip List so you can place them in tracks. If your newly bounced files are split stereo files (Multiple Mono), they are listed together in the Clip List.

The Import After Bounce option is only available if the target sample rate for the bounce is the same as the sample rate of the current session, and the target resolution (bit rate) is the same or lower than the resolution of the session.

Location

Session Folder

Enable this option to bounce files to a location within the Session folder. By default a Bounced Files folder is used, but you can change the by typing a new name. If there is no folder with that name, it will be created. If it already exists, it will be used. For example, if you type “Audio Files”, the session Audio Files folder is used. For Projects, since they do not have a session folder, the Documents/Pro Tools/Bounced Files folder is used instead.

You can also create sub-folders for bounced files by typing a ‹folder name›/‹sub-folder name› (Mac) or ‹folder name›\‹sub-folder name› (Windows). For example, type “Mixes/MP3s” (Mac) or “Mixes\MP3s” (Windows).

These folder names are saved and recalled with presets. This way you can save presets with folder locations that are always relative to your session location.

Prompt for Location

Enable this option to be prompted for the location where you want to save the bounced file after you click **Bounce**.

Directory

Enable this option to save the bounced file to the default directory location. Click the **Choose** button to specify a different directory for bounced files than the default location. This is useful if there is a static location where you want the bounced file to be written. You can save multiple static locations and recall them with presets.

Offline Bounce

Pro Tools provides an **Offline** option for **Bounce Mix**. This lets you bounce faster-than-real-time in most cases (depending on the session mixer size and DSP plugin complement).

To bounce audio to disk offline:

1. Make a Timeline selection to define the range to be bounced.
2. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
3. In the Bounce dialog, enable the **Offline** option.
4. Configure the Bounce options as desired.
5. Click **Bounce**.

Limitations of Offline Bounce

When using the Offline Bounce option, the following are not included in the bounce:

- Hardware Inserts
- External MIDI driven audio (such as outboard MIDI synthesizers or samplers).
- External audio sources monitored by Auxiliary Input tracks.
- DSP only plugins (Offline Bounce always uses the Native version of DSP plugins, but only if they are available).
- Any audio source that is synchronized externally.

Any HEAT processing in the bounce path is included with offline bounce.

Speed of Offline Bounce

The speed of offline bounce can be affected by the following:

- CPU Usage—The speed of your CPU and how much CPU is in use by the system and other applications. You can monitor CPU usage in the System Usage window.
- Disk Usage—For example, if the Disk meter in the System Usage window reads 50% when you are playing back the session, offline bounce will max out at two times the speed of real-time simply because it is physically impossible to read the disk data from the drive fast enough. If you can increase the **Disk Playback Cache Size** (**Setup > Playback Engine**) to cache all audio on the timeline, this should not be an issue (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only).
- If there is an unbalanced use of your computer's core processors due to large mixers and Native plugin usage, you can check to see if the individual core CPU meters are unbalanced in the CPU section of the System Usage window. Removing or making Native plugins inactive on Auxiliary Input and Master Fader tracks may help alleviate this problem.
- Some third-party plugins may slow down off-line bounce due to their CPU requirements.

Note that for some sessions that use very large mixer configurations with lots of DSP-based plugins and automation, it is possible that Offline Bounce may actually be slower than bouncing in real time.

Cancel

The **Cancel** button closes the Bounce Mix dialog without initiating the Bounce Mix conversion.

Bounce

The **Bounce** button initiates the Bounce Mix conversion. A Save dialog opens in which you can navigate to and select where you want to save the bounced file. Once you have selected the location and clicked **Save**, a progress window opens and progressively shows you how much time remains for the bounce to complete.

Recording a Submix (with Bounce Mix)

You can create a submix with the **Bounce Mix** command by muting tracks or bypassing inserts that are not part of the submix, and selecting the part of the session you want to bounce; or, you could solo only the audio you want to bounce.

You can also create a submix by recording to new tracks. For details, see "Sample Rate Conversion and Bit Depth Reduction" on page 1639.

To bounce a submix to disk:

1. Configure your submix using sends, Auxiliary Inputs, and Master Faders. (See "Signal Routing for Monitoring and Submixing" on page 1491.)
2. Do one of the following:
   - To bounce the entire session, click Return to Zero in the Transport window to go to the beginning of the session.
   - To bounce a portion of the session, enable **Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection**, and make a selection in the Edit window.
3. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
4. Configure bounce options and settings.
5. Verify the bit resolution for the bounced file matches the bit resolution of the session.
6. Verify the sample rate for the bounced file is supported by the session and the audio interface.
7. If required, verify the file type and format for the bounced file matches the file type and format of the session.
8. Click **Bounce**.

To bring bounced files back into tracks, do one of the following:

- Enable the **Import after Bounce** option prior to bouncing to disk. Once bounced files are imported to the Clip List, you can drag and drop them to tracks.
- Import the bounced file(s) into the session using the **Import Audio** command (**File > Import > Audio**).
- Drag and drop the bounced files from a Workspace browser or the desktop.

Final Mixdown (with Bounce Mix)

In final mixdown, you create a mix that includes all your edits, automation, and effects processing.

To bounce a final mix to disk:

1. Adjust track output levels, and finalize any mix automation for each track in the session.
2. Adjust any real-time plugin and effects settings and automation for each track in the session.
3. Make sure that all of the tracks you want to include in the bounce are audible (not muted or inactive).
4. Assign the output of each of the tracks you want to include in your bounce to the same output or bus path.
5. Add dither (see "Using Dither" on page 1638).
6. Do one of the following:
   - To bounce the entire session, click Return to Zero in the Transport to go to the beginning of the session.

     By default, the bounce will end at the last audio waveform or MIDI note. To end the bounce sooner, make an Edit or Timeline selection to define the end (and start) of the bounce.

   - To bounce a portion of the session, enable **`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**, and make a selection in the Edit window.
7. Choose **`File > Bounce Mix`**.
8. Choose the source path you want to bounce.
9. Configure other Bounce Mix settings as appropriate. See "Bounce Options" on page 1642.
10. Click **`Bounce`**.

Mastering

In the final mastering process, you might record directly to disk, Blue-ray, DAT, DVD, CD, stereo mastering recorder, or a multitrack recorder (for surround mixes).

Once you have created a master of your session, you can transfer it to a portable medium for duplication. You can transfer the master file to CD or DAT to be used as a master for pressing compact discs.

Mastering to a Digital Recorder

Although it is usually best to master sessions directly to hard disk, Pro Tools also lets you master digitally, direct to any AES/EBU-equipped or S/PDIF-equipped digital recorder such as a DAT deck.

Mastering and Audio Compression

Although audio compression is often an indispensable tool in analog recording, it can present problems in the digital domain. If you compress an input signal at a very high ratio, you create a signal that contains a much higher overall power level compared to its transients. By recording a number of such signals at the highest possible level on multiple tracks, you create a scenario that is more likely to clip the mixed output signal.

High-power compressed signals, when mixed together, create an extremely high-level output. This output may rise above the full-code level, resulting in clipping.

To avoid this problem, watch the overall level of your program material—use a meter on a Master Fader, or use an external mastering deck's meters to help identify clipping. If you are mastering to hard disk, avoid mixing full-code audio signals together at unity or "0" level, as this invariably causes clipping.

Mastering and Error-Correcting Media

Random access media (such as hard disks, or USB or flash drives) can produce a true digital copy of your data, because every bit value is maintained. Sequential media (such as digital tape) use error correction schemes to fix the occasional bad data that is received in a digital transfer. These corrections are deviations from the actual data, and with successive reproductions, represent a subtle form of generation loss.

You can avoid this loss by creating and maintaining masters on random-access digital media (such as a hard drive) and transferring them to sequential digital media only as needed.

Part X: Surround

Immerse yourself in Pro Tools surround mixing capabilities, including Dolby Atmos, Ambisonics, and more.

- "Pro Tools Setup for Surround" on page 1658
- "Multichannel Tracks and Signal Routing" on page 1668
- "Surround Panning and Mixing" on page 1684
- "Mixing to Dolby Atmos" on page 1715
- "Immersive Audio with 360RA WalkMix Creator" on page 1784
- "Ambisonics" on page 1832

61 Pro Tools Setup for Surround

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio software both let you work with surround formats up to 7.1, and up to 7.1.2 with Dolby Atmos®.

Surround Mixing in Pro Tools

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) Pro Tools supports mixing in the following multichannel (greater than stereo) formats: LCR, Quad, LCRS, 5.0, 5.1, 6.0, 6.1, 7.0, 7.0 SDDS (Sony Dynamic Digital Sound), 7.1, and 7.1 SDDS.

For information on fundamental surround concepts, see the Pro Tools Sync & Surround Concepts Guide.

Dolby Atmos Surround Formats

With Dolby Atmos, Pro Tools supports 7.0.2 and 7.1.2 formats.

Immersive Surround Formats

The following immersive surround formats are supported: 5.0.2, 5.1.2, 5.0.4, 5.1.4, 7.0.4, 7.1.4, 7.0.6, 7.1.6, 9.0.4 (Pro Tools Ultimate only), 9.1.4 (Pro Tools Ultimate only), 9.0.6 (Pro Tools Ultimate only), and 9.1.6 (Pro Tools Ultimate only).

These track formats are included with a few particular use cases in mind:

- Monitoring returns from the Dolby Atmos Renderer, such as live re-renders, and imported offline re-renders.
- Plugin processing that would like to take full advantage of the 3D space, such as reverbs and delays.
- Mixing in other immersive formats, such as MPEG-H.

Pro Tools Audio Connections for 5.1 Mixing

While all 5.1 mixing formats provide the same speaker arrangement, there are three primary standards in use for the track layout of the individual channels that comprise the 5.1-format multichannel mix.

In the following table, it is assumed that surround channels are assigned to outputs 1–6 of a Pro Tools audio interface. Use channels 7–8 to monitor a stereo mix for a stereo version, or for cue mixes and monitoring.

Track Layouts for 5.1 Formats

Formats	Track Layout					
	1	2	3	4	5	6
Film (Pro Tools default)	L	C	R	Ls	Rs	LFE
SMPTE/ITU for Dolby Digital (AC3)	L	R	C	LFE	Ls	Rs
DTS	L	R	Ls	Rs	C	LFE
C|24	L	C	R	Ls	Rs	Lf

The following table shows the X-MON mono track routing for a 7.1 SDDS mix. A 5.1 mix should use the same routing, excluding outputs 2 and 4 (Lc and Rc).

Default Track Layout for 7.1 SDDS Format

Formats	Track Layout							
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
X-MON	L	Lc	C	Rc	R	Ls	Rs	LFE

To connect your audio interfaces for 5.1 format mixing and monitoring:

1. Determine the 5.1 format and track layout you want to use.
2. Connect the output channels of your audio interface to the corresponding input channels of your monitoring system according to the assignments listed in the tables above.

If you use a control surface, see its guide for more information.

7.1 and 7.0 Formats

7.1 and 7.0 Format

HD-DVD and Blu-Ray systems use the following track layout for 7.1 and 7.0 surround formats:

3 front channels

Left (L), Center (C), Right (R)

2 side channels

Left Surround Side (Lss) and Right Surround Side (Rss)

2 rear channels

Left Surround Rear (Lsr) and Right Surround Rear (Rsr)

1 LFE channel (7.1 only)

Low Frequency Effects

The following table shows the default mono track routing for a 7.1 mix in Pro Tools.

Default Track Layout for 7.1 Format

Track Layout							
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
L	C	R	Lss	Rss	Lsr	Rsr	LFE

7.1 and 7.0 SDDS Formats

The Sony Dynamic Digital Sound (SDDS) 7.1 and 7.0 surround formats use the following track layout:

5 front channels

Left (L), Left Center (Lc), Center (C), Right Center (Rc), Right (R)

2 rear channels

Left Surround Rear (Ls) and Right Surround Rear (Rs)

1 LFE channel (7.1.2 only)

Low Frequency Effects

The following table shows default mono track routing for a 7.1 SDDS mix in Pro Tools.

Default Track Layout for 7.1 SDDS Format

Track Layout							
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
L	Lc	C	Rc	R	Ls	Rs	LFE

7.1.2 and 7.0.2 Formats

(Dolby Atmos) Pro Tools lets you create 7.0.2 and 7.1.2 surround format input, output, insert, and bus paths in the I/O Setup for mixing to Dolby Atmos. Pro Tools can likewise create tracks with 7.0.2 and 7.1.2 channel widths.

For more information, see "Mixing to Dolby Atmos" on page 1715.

7.0.2 and 7.1.2 Track Layouts

7.0.2 and 7.1.2 formats are nine- and ten-channel surround formats, respectively. The mono channels of these two surround formats always appear using the following track layouts (top to bottom in a track and left to right in meters): L C R Lss Rss Lsr Rsr LFE Lts Rts.

3 front channels

Left (L), Center (C), Right (R)

2 side channels

Left Surround Side (Lss) and Right Surround Side (Rss)

2 rear channels

Left Surround Rear (Lsr) and Right Surround Rear (Rsr)

1 LFE channel (7.1.2 only)

Low Frequency Effects

2 overhead channels

Left Top Surround (Lts) and Right Top Surround (Rts)

7.0.2 and 7.1.2 Path Orders

Set the Default Path Order for new paths in the Out put page of the I/O Setup. Changing the **`Path Order`** does not affect the track layout order or metering, but it does change the channel order of the output path to the assigned physical outputs on the audio interface.

7.0.2

L C R Lss Rss Lsr Rsr – Lts Rts (Film)

7.0.2

L R C – Lss Rss Lsr Rsr Lts Rts (SMPTE)

7.1.2

L C R Lss Rss Lsr Rsr LFE Lts Rts (Film)

7.1.2

L R C LFE Lss Rss Lsr Rsr Lts Rts (SMPTE)

5.0.2 to 9.1.6 Immersive Surround Formats in Pro Tools

Pro Tools lets you create 5.0.2 to 9.1.6 immersive surround format input, output, insert, and bus paths in the I/O Setup. Pro Tools can likewise create tracks with 5.0.2 to 9.1.6 channel widths.

Once the paths have been created, they are available in any path input or output selector, such as track input and output assignments, sends, and so on.

5.0.2 to 9.1.6 paths can also be used for internal buses, monitoring, auditioning, and output metering.

5.0.2 to 9.1.6 formats work in Pro Tools just like any other multichannel surround format, but with the addition of two overhead channels. Because of the overhead channels, additional automatable panning controls are provided (see "3D Panner" on page 1736).

Ambisonics Formats

Pro Tools lets you create 1st through 7th Order Ambisonics channel formats for input, output, insert, and bus paths in the I/O Setup for Ambisonics mixing workflows. Pro Tools can likewise create tracks with 1st through 7th Order Ambisonics channel widths.

For more information, see "Ambisonics" on page 1832.

Configuring Pro Tools for Multichannel Sessions

Configuring Pro Tools and sessions for multichannel mixing can be done in any (or all) of the following ways:

New Sessions

You can create a new session and choose a surround mix I/O Settings file as the *default* I/O Setup. See "New Sessions and I/O Settings" on the next page.

Remixing Sessions in Surround (Importing Multichannel I/O Setups)

By creating or importing a surround mix I/O Settings file in the I/O Setup dialog, multichannel paths can be made available in any stereo (or other format) session. You can then reassign track routing from the original stereo paths to multichannel paths. Inactive and active paths simplify reassignment. See "Importing Multichannel I/O Setups" on page 1664.

Custom Multichannel Paths

You can customize and redefine existing paths in the I/O Setup dialog. For more information, see "Custom Multichannel Paths" on page 1665.

Importing Session Data

By using the Import Session Data command (**`File > Import > Session Data`**), you can import tracks and media from other sessions plus their associated paths and track assignments. After importing session data, you can use the I/O Setup dialog to configure main and sub-paths for the requirements of the session. For more information, see "I/O Setup" on page 55.

New Sessions and I/O Settings

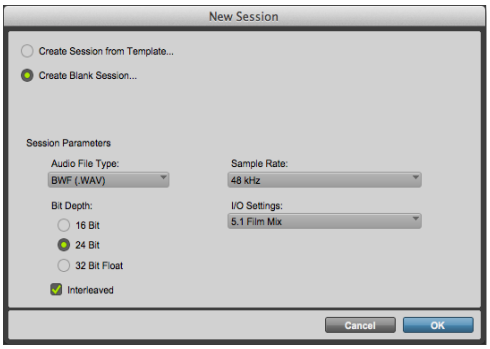
When you create a new session, you can specify a surround format that you want to use as your I/O Setup. Default path configurations are provided as I/O Settings files, for stereo and surround mixing.

To see multichannel options in Pro Tools, the Surround Mixer plugin must be installed in the Plugins folder. This plugin can be installed with Pro Tools (see the User Guide for your Pro Tools system). If it is not installed, you can move it from the Plugins (Unused) folder to the Plugins folder.

Once you create the new session, you can create and import tracks, import audio, and assign signal routing to set up your mix.

To create a new session for multichannel mixing:

1. Choose **File > New Session**.
2. Select the **Create Blank Session** option.
3. Select the **Audio File Type**, **Sample Rate**, and **Bit Depth**.

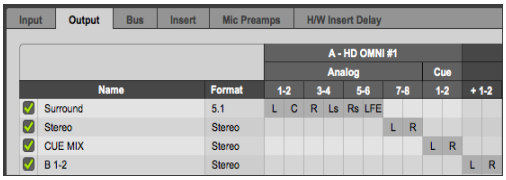


New Session dialog, 5.1 Film Mix I/O setting selected

4. From the **I/O Settings** menu, select one of the following options:
   - **5.1 Film Mix**
   - **5.1 SMPTE/ITU**
   - **5.1 DTS Monitoring**
   - **C24 Mix**
   - **Control 24 Mix**
   - **Dolby Audio Bridge** (**Mono** or **Stereo**)
   - **FB 360 2nd Order Ambisonics**
   - **FB 360 3rd Order Ambisonics**
   - **ICON X-MON Mix**
5. Click **OK**.
6. In the Save dialog, name the session, navigate to the location where you want to save the new session, and click **Save**.

   The surround presets preconfigure the I/O Setup dialog for the new session with default 5.1 format

main and sub-paths for outputs and buses.



Standard 5.1 format (film) output paths

Surround Mix Settings Files

The surround mix I/O Settings provide output and bus paths for six specific track layout standards in the new session. (For information on inputs and insert paths, see "Default Input and Insert Paths with 5.1 Settings" on the next page.)

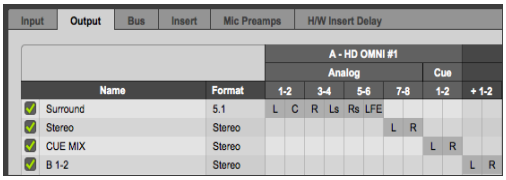
Settings Files and Track Layouts

5.1 Settings	Track Layout
5.1 Film Mix	L C R Ls Rs LFE
SMPTE/ITU Mix	L R C LFE Ls Rs
DTS Mix	L R Ls Rs C LFE
C24 Mix	L C R Ls Rs Lf
Control 24 Mix	L C R Ls Rs LFE
ICON X-MON Mix	L Lc C Rc R Ls Rs LFE

All available 5.1 format (and greater) I/O Settings (Film, SMPTE/ITU, DTS, C24 Mix, or ICON X-MON Mix) provide the following default output and bus paths for the new session:

Default 5.1 Output Paths

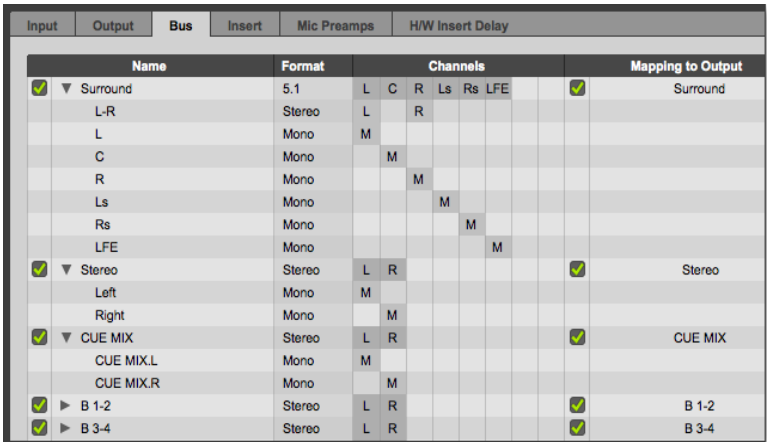
- One 5.1 main output path.
- One stereo main path.



I/O Setup, Output page, default 5.1 (Film) Output assignments

Default 5.1 Bus Paths

- One 5.1 main output bus path, with sub-paths for 5.0 (no LFE), left/right (stereo), LCR, and center (mono).
- One stereo main output bus path with two mono sub-paths.



I/O Setup, Bus page, default 5.1 (Film) Output Bus assignments

Default Input and Insert Paths with 5.1 Settings

The 5.1 Mix settings files provide default stereo main paths and mono sub-paths for inputs and inserts. If you need multichannel input paths or inserts, you can create them in the I/O Setup (see "Custom Multichannel Paths" on the next page).

Importing Multichannel I/O Setups

The I/O Setup dialog can import and export settings files. This is useful when you want to remix a stereo session in surround. You can also use this feature to prepare a session for transfer to a different Pro Tools system, or to save and exchange I/O Settings.

To import a multichannel I/O Setup settings file:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click the **Output** tab.
3. Click **Import Settings**.
4. Select the settings file (.pio) to import and click **Open**.
5. If the current session has path definitions that do not match those in the imported settings file, Pro Tools asks whether you want to delete the existing paths or retain them and add the imported settings to your session.
   - Click **No** to add new paths to your current I/O Setup configuration.
   - Click **Yes** to replace your current I/O Setup configuration with the imported settings.
6. Click the **Bus** tab.
7. If the Bus page does not show the correct output bus mappings for the imported I/O Settings file, click the **Default** button (for **All buses** or for **Output buses**).
8. Click **OK** to close the I/O Setup.

Exporting I/O Settings

Exporting I/O Setup settings files lets you build a library of multichannel setups for different projects.

To export an I/O Setup settings file:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click **Export Settings**.
3. Name and Save your current I/O Settings.

Custom Multichannel Paths

The I/O Setup dialog lets you create and customize signal paths for any supported multichannel mixing format.

Multichannel paths and sub-paths are assigned to input and output channels in the Channel Grid. When you select a preset 5.1 I/O Settings file, default layout for the corresponding multichannel format paths you create will match the selected format's track layout.

In addition, the I/O Setup dialog, like the Main page of the Hardware Setup dialog, provides controls for routing the physical inputs and outputs on your audio interface to available inputs and outputs in Pro Tools.

When creating 5.1 format paths, you can specify the default track layout. See "Path Order" on page 71.

Reassigning Channels

The I/O Setup dialog and its Channel Grid also let you reassign channels. This is especially useful for routing channels within a multichannel path, without having to repatch your audio interfaces.

You can reassign paths to any required configuration, limited only by your systems resources, and the I/O Setup dialog requirements for channel overlapping and naming (see "Valid Paths and Requirements" on page 87 for more information).

See also "Example Paths and Signal Routing for a Surround Mix" on page 1678.

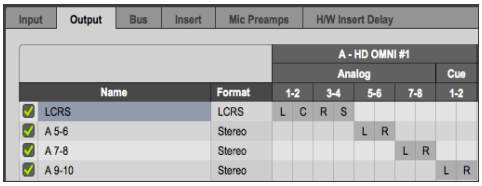
Example LCRS Setup

The following example shows one possible way to configure the I/O Setup dialog to mix in 4-channel LCRS format, with an HD OMNI.

For additional I/O Setup information, see "Output buses" on page 88.

To define an LCRS path:

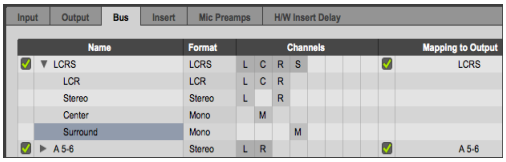
1. Choose **Setup > I/O**, and click the **Output** tab.
2. Click **New Path**.
3. Select **LCRS** from the Path Format selector.
4. Name the path LCRS.
5. In the Channel Grid, click in the box below the first (left-most) audio interface channel for the path. Pro Tools automatically fills up the adjacent units to the right. If you click in the LCRS row under channel 1, the LCRS path will be assigned to channels 1–4.



Output page, LCRS output path

6. Click the **Bus** tab.
7. If the Bus page does not show the correct output bus mappings for the LCRS output, click the **Default** button (for **All buses** or for **Output buses**).
8. Select the new LCRS path and click the Reveal Sub-paths triangle.

9. If not all of the sub-paths are present, do the following:
    - Click **New Sub-Path**.
    - Name the new sub-path LCR and select LCR as the Path format. Click in channel 1 in the LCR row to assign the bus path.
    - Select the LCRS path, click **New Sub-Path**, and create a stereo sub-path for front Left and front Right.
    - Select the LCRS path, click **New Sub-Path**, and create a mono sub-path for the Center channel.
    - Select the LCRS path, click **New Sub-Path**, and create a mono sub-path for the Surround channel.



Bus page, LCRS output bus with sub-paths

10. Click **OK** to close the I/O Setup.

5.1 Tracks, Formats, Assignments, and Metering

Path definitions in I/O Setup determine how audio is routed through, and metered on, your audio interfaces.

Pro Tools internal (on-screen) metering of 5.1 format paths always follows the Film track layout:

- L C R Ls Rs LFE

Pro Tools track layout of 5.1 format audio tracks in the Edit window also conforms to the Film layout (arranged top to bottom). See "5.1 Track Layouts, Routing, and Metering" on the next page.

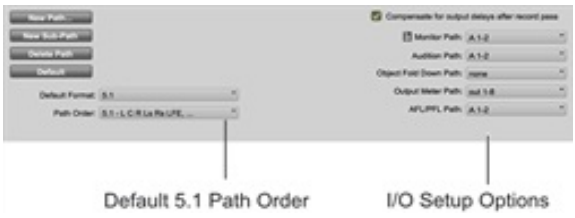
In the I/O Setup dialog, you can route these signals out of your audio interfaces according to any track layout (such as DTS or SMPTE/ITU).

To re-assign channels in a path:

- Drag a channel to a new valid location in the Grid. Other channel assignments will move (shuffle) to accommodate dragged channels.

Default I/O Selectors in I/O Setup

The Output page of the I/O Setup dialog provides selectors for setting I/O defaults in your multichannel sessions.



Default selectors in the I/O Setup dialog

Default Format

Sets the default format for new Output paths and for when you click the **Default** button.

Path Order

Selects the default track layout (or, path order) for new Output paths.

Monitor Path

Selects the monitor path for the main mix output of your Pro Tools sessions.

Audition Path

Selects the monitoring path for previewing audio in the Clip List, Import Audio dialogs, and a Workspace browser. Only outputs on your primary interface can be used as your Audition path.

Object Fold Down Path

Selects the Output path for monitoring Object audio when not connected to a Dolby Atmos Renderer.

Output Meter Path

Selects the path that will be shown in the control surface output meters as well as in the Transport Output meters. See "5.1 Tracks, Formats, Assignments, and Metering" on the previous page for more information.

Default Output Bus

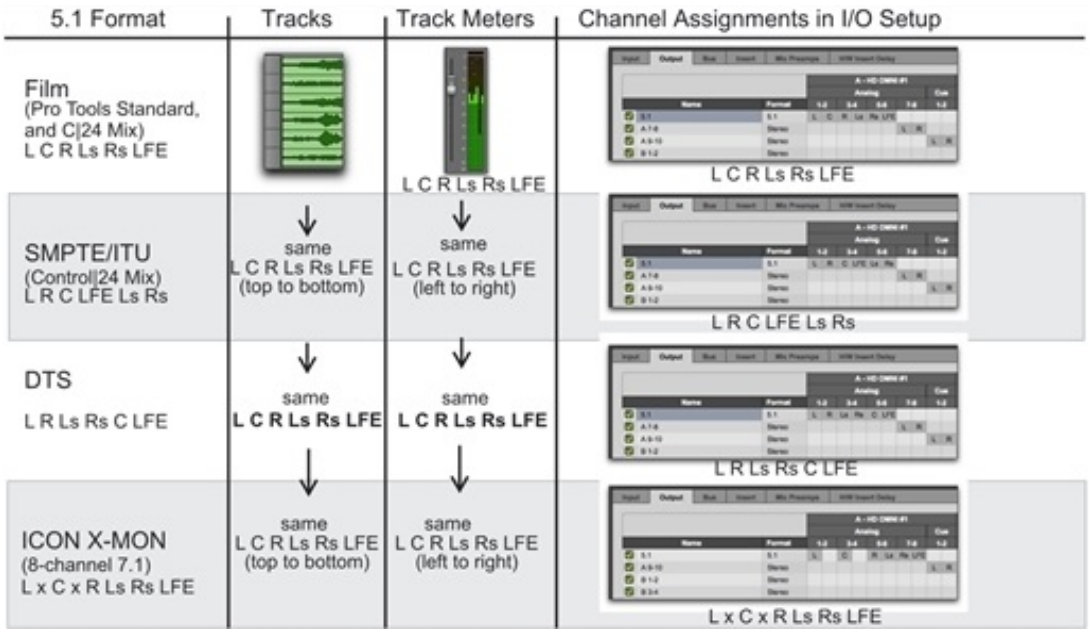
Selects the default output bus path for all new tracks, for each supported track format.

The New Track Default Output can be set to bus paths, as well as output paths.

AFL/PFL Path (HDX or HD Native Systems Only)

Selects where tracks are routed to when they are soloed in AFL (After Fader Listen) or PFL (Pre Fader Listen) Solo mode.

5.1 Track Layouts, Routing, and Metering



Track layout of different 5.1 formats

62 Multichannel Tracks and Signal Routing

Surround sessions typically include a combination of mono, stereo, and multichannel audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks, and inserts and buses.

Multichannel surround mixing is supported with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio software only.

Once the appropriate I/O Setup has been imported or configured, audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folder, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks can be mixed in multichannel for surround using Pro Tools mixing features.

Multichannel I/O and signal routing is determined by the paths defined in the I/O Setup dialog.

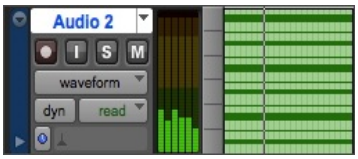
Multichannel Audio Tracks

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Multichannel audio tracks contain an individual channel for each signal in the track (for example, a 5.1 track would have six channels for left, center, right, left surround, right surround, and LFE).

Multichannel audio tracks can be:

- Recorded directly into Pro Tools, using multiple microphones or microphone arrays, or routed to appropriate multichannel Pro Tools Input paths
- Imported from other Pro Tools sessions
- Edited, processed, and mixed in combination with mono and stereo tracks



5.1 format multichannel audio track

5.1 format audio files and tracks conform to the Film track layout standard. Regardless of path assignments in the I/O Setup dialog, all 5.1 format audio tracks and meters follow the Film standard track layout:

- L C R Ls Rs LFE

Multichannel audio tracks are not required to mix in multichannel formats. Mono, stereo, and all supported track formats can be mixed using Pro Tools track outputs and sends (see "Multichannel Signal Routing" on page 1671).

Placing Audio in Multichannel Tracks

You can drag audio files and clips from Workspace browsers, the Clip List, Windows Explorer, or Mac Finder, or from other tracks, to place them in multichannel audio tracks.

To do so, the number of channels being dragged must match the destination track format. For example, you can only drag a stereo pair or two mono clips onto a stereo audio track. Similarly, you can only place audio into an LCR track when you have selected three clips. With 5.1 tracks, you must select six mono files or clips.

When dragged into a multichannel track, audio files are placed from top to bottom in the exact order that they appear in the Clip List or playlist from which they came (Top to Bottom must be selected for in the Clip List menu › Timeline Drop Order). For this reason, you may want to rename audio files before dragging them, so that they are placed in the preferred order. Rename them so that sorting them By Clip Name in the Clip List results in the preferred order. (For example, with a 5.1-format track, you can rename the audio tracks so that the arrangement of the tracks corresponds to L, C, R, Ls, Rs, and LFE.)

Solo, Mute, and Gain in Multichannel Tracks and Paths

Stereo and multichannel tracks consist of multiple audio signals, linked together. By default, multichannel tracks are linked and are controlled by a single channel fader, and solo and mute switches.

For discrete control of signals, multichannel tracks can be converted into individual mono tracks. For discrete level and phase adjustment, you can insert and unlink a multi-mono Trim plugin. Both of these techniques are explained below.

Once converted to mono, multichannel tracks cannot be relinked into their original multichannel format. However, a multichannel track can be reassembled by dragging the corresponding number of mono files (with the appropriate file suffixes) into a multichannel track, although some automation data may be lost. As an alternative, record the submix of the mono tracks to disk on a multichannel track.

To convert a multichannel track into discrete mono tracks:

1. Select the multichannel track.
2. Choose Track › Split Into Mono.

To have discrete control of gain on individual channels of a multichannel track:

1. Insert a multi-mono Trim plugin on the multichannel track.
2. Unlink the Trim plugin by clicking the Link icon so that it is unlit.
3. Use the Channel selector to display the controls for a channel, and adjust the gain.

See "Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins" on page 1674 for more information.

Track and Output Formats

When you create new tracks, you specify mono, stereo, or a supported multichannel format for the new tracks.

In the Mix and Edit windows, the track format of a track's output is always visible by the number of track meters contained in its fader strip (for example, a single meter for mono tracks, a pair of meters for stereo tracks, and six meters for 5.1 tracks).

Assigning track output determines the format of that output. For example, a mono track always has a single track meter, even when assigned to a stereo output path. If that same mono track is assigned to a 5.1 output path, it's output will be split among those six output channels, depending on the position of its panner.

Changing Format

Changing the output format for a given track has several effects:

- The panner that appears in the track will change to reflect the new output format.
- It may be necessary for one or more pan related automation playlists to be created or deleted.

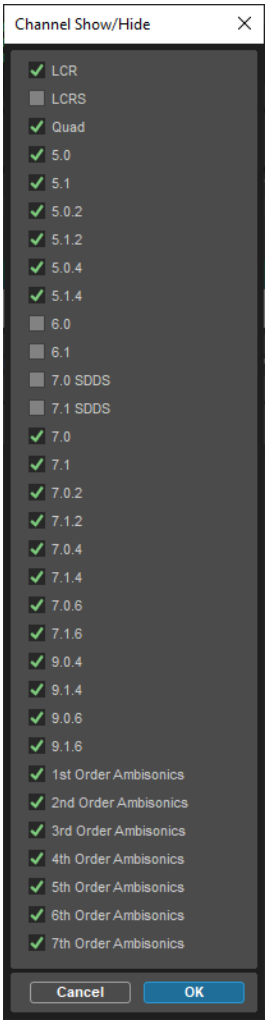
Because changing the output format has these effects, a warning dialog appears whenever you change the output format of a track to a format of fewer channels. Specifically, this will occur whenever automation playlists will have to be deleted.

Channel Width Filtering

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Only) Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio software let you filter which multichannel formats appear in the **Track Format** selector in the New Tracks dialog and also for the **Default Path** and **New Paths Format** selectors in the I/O Setup. Note that it does not prevent opening or displaying sessions with existing track or bus widths that would otherwise be hidden by the current Channel Show/Hide settings.

To filter channel widths for new tracks, or for default or new I/O Setup paths:

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the New Tracks dialog, choose **Show/Hide** in the New Track Format selector.
   - In the New Paths dialog in the Input, Output, Bus, or Insert page of the I/O Setup, choose **Show/Hide** in the New Paths Format selector.
   - In the Default Format selector in the Input, Output, or Insert page of the I/O Setup, choose **Show/Hide**.
2. Configure the Channel Show/Hide dialog as desired: select the formats you want shown and deselect the formats you want hidden.



Channel Show/Hide dialog

3. Click OK.

Multiple Output Assignments and Track Format

When a track is assigned to more than one path of differing formats, the main output for that track will match the format of the assigned path with the greatest number of channels.

Multiple Outputs and Automation Playlists

When a track has multiple output assignments, Pro Tools sorts panning data appropriately for each assigned path. For example, if you assign a mono track to a stereo path and a 5.1 path simultaneously, that track will have a 5.1 panner in the Mix or Edit window. When you pan the track, Pro Tools interprets the 5.1 panning moves into stereo panning moves.

This provides a type of parallel mixing. You can create a variety of mixes of differing formats all at the same time by routing your elements to multiple paths.

Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) any control in an Output window to show its automation playlist in the Edit window and view any pan automation.

Multichannel Signal Routing

To mix in a multichannel format, tracks are assigned to multichannel paths.

Tracks can be mixed in surround using the following two methods:

- By setting a track main output to a multichannel path.
- By assigning a multichannel send to route audio to a multichannel path.



Two different ways to configure tracks for multichannel mixing

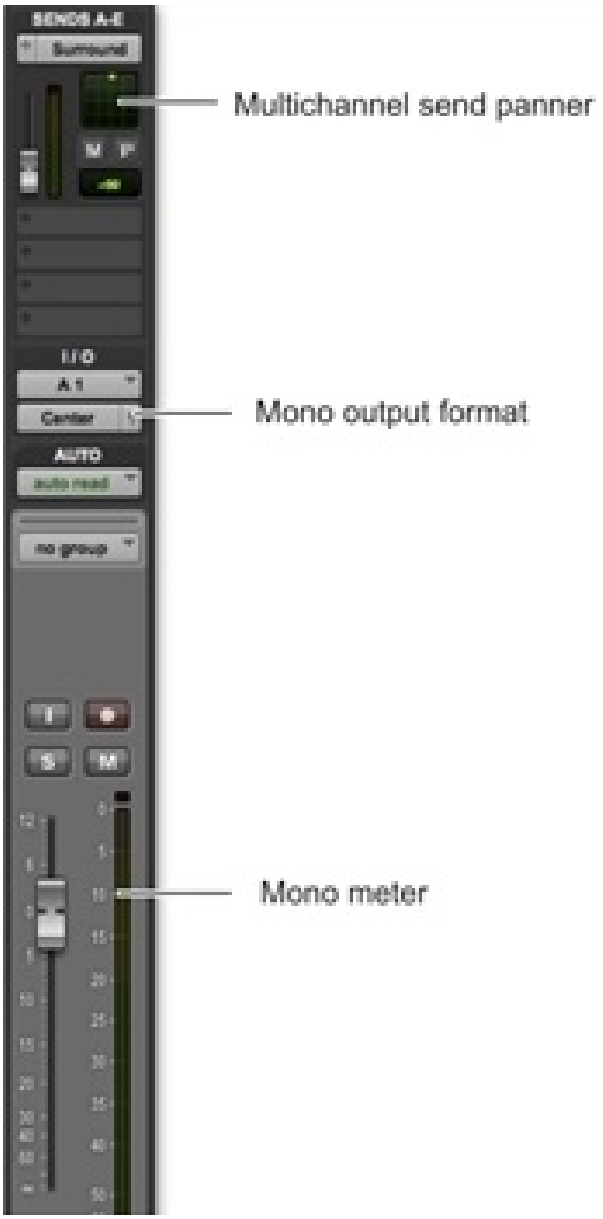
Multichannel Track Outputs

Tracks can be routed to multichannel output or bus paths using the track's Output Path selector. This provides a multichannel panner and meter in the Mix and Edit window I/O View.

Additional output assignments can be added by Control-clicking (Mac) or Start-clicking (Windows) the Selector tool and assigning another path.

Multichannel Sends

All track formats, including mono and stereo, let you assign one or more multichannel sends. This provides a multichannel panner in the Sends View. Sends are also useful to bus tracks for multichannel plugin processing. The following figure shows a mono audio track with a 5.1 (6-channel) send (View › Sends A–E › Send A).



A mono audio track with a mono output format and a multichannel send

Pro Tools bussing and submixing features are available for all channel formats, from mono/stereo through 8-channel. For examples of multichannel monitoring, effects processing, and bussing, see "Mixing with Paths and Sub-Paths" on page 1676. For mono and stereo mix examples, see "Basic Mixing" on page 1447.

Multichannel Auxiliary Inputs and Master Faders

A multichannel Auxiliary Input or Master Fader is used as a return for the multichannel bus. Sends are useful when you need to create an additional, independent mix simultaneously (perhaps of a distinct format), requiring dedicated fader, mute, solo, and automation controls.

You can assign Master Faders to main and sub-paths. Main paths must match the format of the Master Fader, and only one Master Fader can be active and assigned to any single (active) main or sub-path. A Master Fader cannot be assigned to a sub-path if its associated main path is already assigned on another Master Fader. See "Master Fader Tracks and Signal Flow" on page 1451.

Multichannel Instrument Tracks

Multichannel tracks can be used to monitor and route multichannel instrument plugins or multichannel external MIDI instruments.

Mono, Multi-Mono and Multichannel Plugins

Plugins can be used in mono, multi-mono, or multichannel formats.

For information about mono, stereo, and mono-in/stereo-out plugins, see "Plugin and Hardware Inserts" on page 1512.

Multi-Mono Plugins

Are designed for use on stereo or greater-than-stereo multichannel tracks. Multi-mono plugins are useful, or required, in the following situations:

- When a plugin does not involve multichannel correlated processing (for example, when applying EQ to select sides of a multichannel signal)
- When you need to adjust signals within the multichannel track independently
- When a plugin does not support multichannel formats

When a multi-mono plugin is first inserted on a multichannel track, the plugin controls are linked. You can unlink them for independent adjustment. See "Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins" below for more information.

Multi-mono plugs-ins can also be inserted on stereo tracks, to apply unlinked plugins on the left and right channels.

Multichannel Plugins

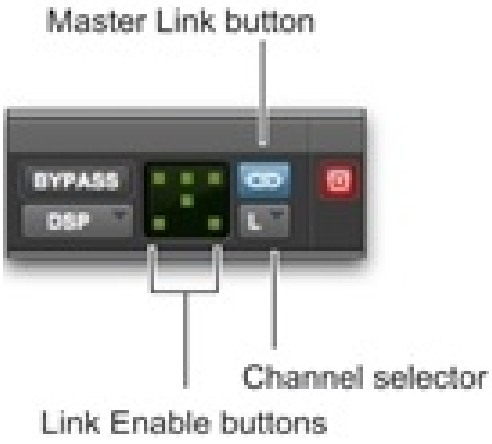
Are designed for use on stereo and multichannel tracks that require correlated processing, including stereo and multichannel limiting, compression, and similar effects.

Linking and Unlinking Controls on Multi-Mono Plugins

When a multi-mono plugin is used on a multichannel track of more than two channels, the controls are normally linked. Adjusting the Gain control on one channel, for example, will adjust it for all channels.

If necessary, you can unlink plugin controls on specific channels of a track and edit them independently. You can also selectively link the controls of specific channels.

For example, to apply equal filter cutoffs to the Ls and Rs (surround) channels in a 5.1 mix, you could link enable just those channels in an unlinked, multi-mono EQ plugin. Adjusting the controls in the plugin window for either channel (Ls or Rs) adjusts the other, linked channel as well.



Channel selector and Link controls

Channel Selector

Accesses a specific channel within a multichannel track for plugin parameter editing. This menu appears only on multi-mono plugins inserted on tracks with more than two channels.

Master Link Button

When enabled, links the controls on all channels of a multi-mono plugin so that they can be adjusted in tandem.

Link Enable Buttons

Let you selectively link the controls of specific channels of a multi-mono plugin. Each square represents a speaker channel. The Master Link button must be disabled to use the Link Enable buttons.

To unlink controls on a multi-mono plugin:

- Deselect the Master Link button. It is lit when linked, unlit when unlinked.

To access controls for a specific channel:

- Select the channel from the Channel selector.

To open a plugin window for all channels of a multi-mono plugin:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Channel selector.

To link the controls of specific channels:

1. Deselect the Master Link button if it is not already deselected.
2. Click the Link Enable buttons for the channels whose controls you want to link.

Paths in Surround Mixes

Because Pro Tools provides a flexible routing and submixing environment, you can maximize your system's available resources by first identifying the elements that you want to pan dynamically and those that can be placed in certain channels only (see "Mixing with Paths and Sub-Paths" on the next page).

Once you have identified these elements in your session, you can use a combination of main and sub-path assignments, and multichannel panning.

Mixing with Paths and Sub-Paths

It is rare that every track needs to be “flown” (actively panned in between more than a pair of speakers). In most situations, certain elements are placed in certain speakers and remain there, providing the foundation for a mix.

The following figure illustrates an example of how panning and signal routing can be combined in a multichannel mix.

See "Extending Stereo Mixing Conventions to Surround Mixing" on page 1679 for related information.

When to Use Assign Multichannel Outputs

- Assign 5.1 paths only to those tracks that need to be panned to all six channels.

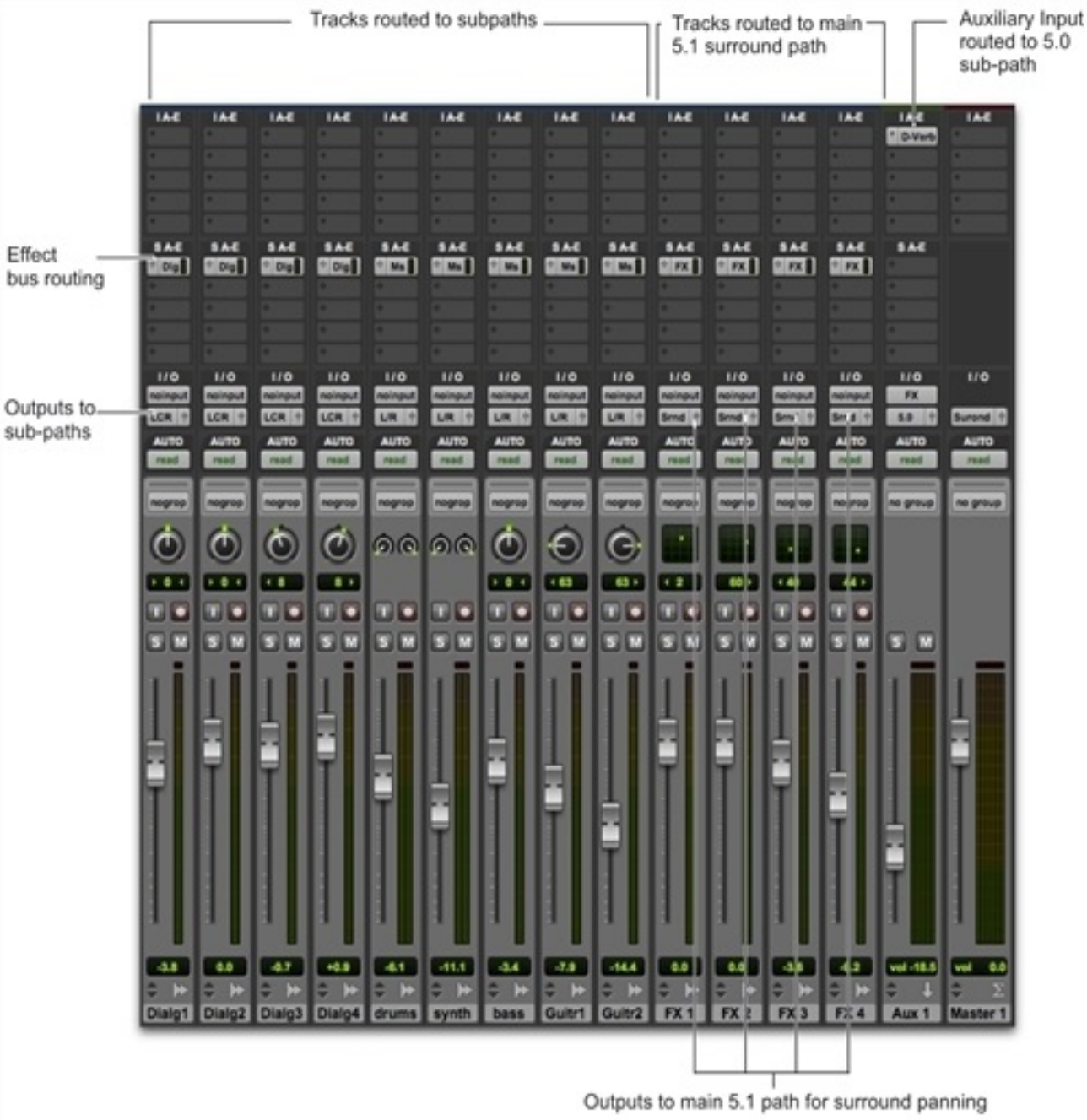
For example, a sound effects track with a jet fly-over should be assigned a 5.1 path to fly the sound from front-to-back. In a music mix, you can fly a solo instrument or make a synth pad swirl around the room as a special effect.

Elements that need to be heard in all speakers simultaneously can also be assigned to the multichannel output, whether or not they require active panning in the sound field.

When to Use Sub-Paths

- To help simplify large sessions, use sub-paths to route *static* (or, stationary) elements directly to the output channel or channels.

For example, film dialog is often mixed to the center channel to anchor this essential sound element to the picture. Instead of assigning a six-channel panner to dialog tracks and panning the tracks to the center speaker only, you can route the dialog track’s main output to a mono (Center) sub-path.



Using signal routing and sub-paths to mix in surround

Extending Stereo Mixing Conventions to Surround Mixing

Stereo mixing sets the precedent for active and static panning, and surround mixing can benefit from the same basic principles.

Panning a sound back-and-forth between the left and right speakers is best used as a special effect. In a typical music mix, the basic tracks are placed in the stereo sound field and remain there.

Surround mixes can become incoherent if too many elements are continuously moving, For special effects, some tracks can be panned *dynamically*, bouncing between speakers or sweeping from one side to the other.

Example Paths and Signal Routing for a Surround Mix

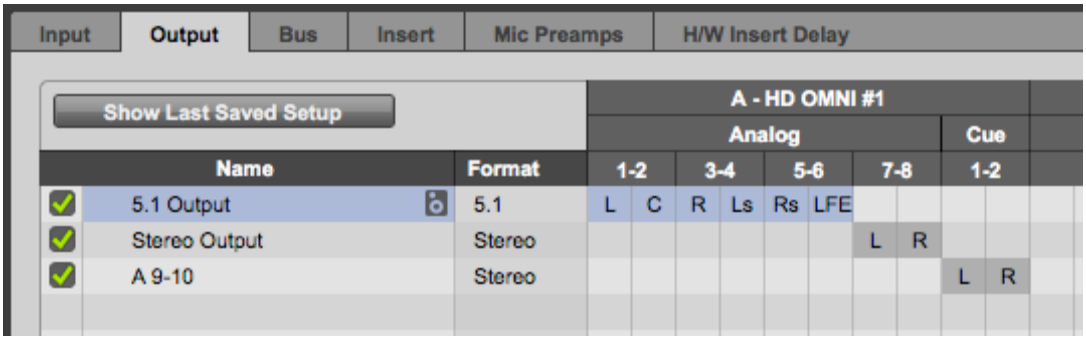
Signal routing is the key element in any Pro Tools surround session. Signal routing is configured and defined in the I/O Setup dialog.

The examples that follow show how Auxiliary Inputs, Master Faders, and other Pro Tools signal routing features can be used for stem mixes, submixes, and similar project needs.

In these examples, music and effects are being mixed for a trailer, in 5.1 surround. Separate stem mixes (for music and for effects) are to be mastered to 8-track MDM.

Example Output Paths

The following figure shows output paths defined in the I/O Setup dialog of an example session that was created on a HDX system with an HD OMNI audio interface.

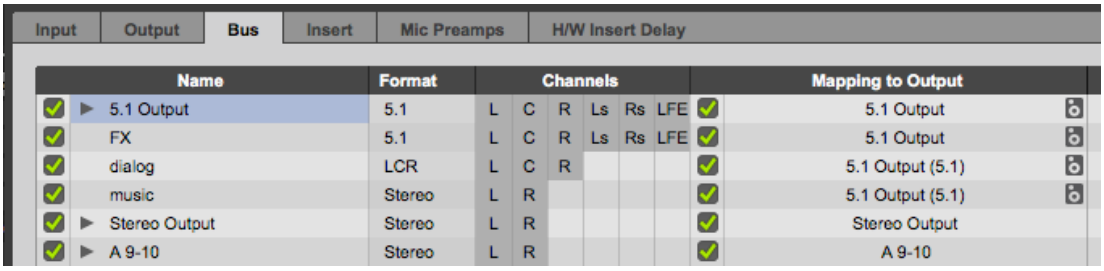


I/O Setup, example output paths

Example Bus Paths

The following figure shows example bus paths.

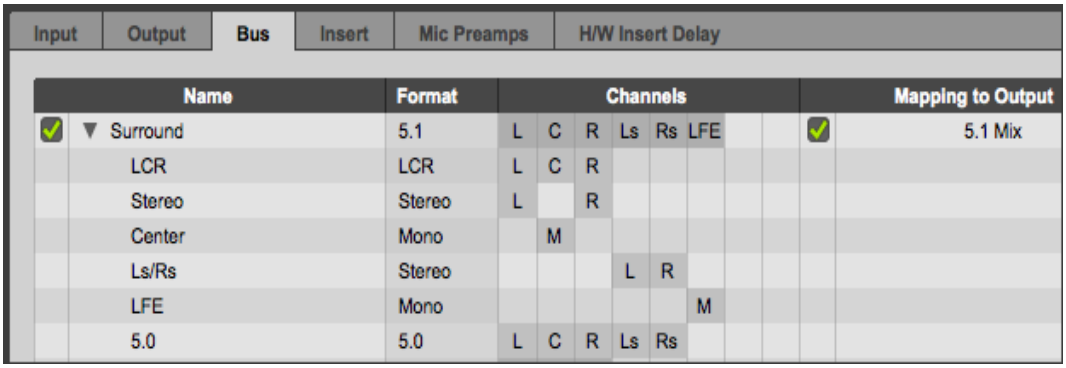
An LCR format path (“Dialog”), a stereo format path (“Music”) and a 5.1 format path (“FX”) have been defined, each with several of their own sub-paths.



I/O Setup, example bus paths

Example Sub-Paths

Sub-paths let you route to selective channels within the multichannel surround output. In the following figure, the Surround bus has several sub-paths that show this.



I/O Setup, example sub-paths

LCR Sub-Path

The forward 3-channel sub-path. Use this type of sub-path routing to mix dialog, or other forward-facing sound effects.

Stereo Sub-Path

The forward stereo sub-path. Use this type of sub-path routing to mix music stems and effects to the front left and right speakers.

Center Sub-Path

The front center-channel sub-path provides a discrete mono path for the center channel.

Ls/Rs Sub-Path

The surround, rear left and right stereo sub-path. Use this type of sub-path to mix surround effects.

LFE Path

The LFE sub-path provides a discrete mono path for the LFE channel.

5.0 Sub-Path

The 5.0 path is a 5-channel sub-path. Use this type of sub-path routing to conserve mixing resources with tracks you want to keep out of the LFE channel.

Signal Routing Examples

The following examples show how main and sub-paths can be used, using an example session consisting of a 5.1 main mix, with music and effects stems (or submixes).

Submix Stem Examples

The following figure shows a routing configuration for an effects submix. Two tracks are routed to stereo bus sub-paths, while others are assigned to an LCR and a mono bus sub-path. Two tracks (one mono, one stereo) are assigned to multichannel buses for surround panning. A 5.1 Auxiliary Input assigned to the FX main bus path serves as a submixer.

Extending Stereo Mixing Conventions to Surround Mixing

Stereo mixing sets the precedent for active and static panning, and surround mixing can benefit from the same basic principles.

Panning a sound back-and-forth between the left and right speakers is best used as a special effect. In a typical music mix, the basic tracks are placed in the stereo sound field and remain there.

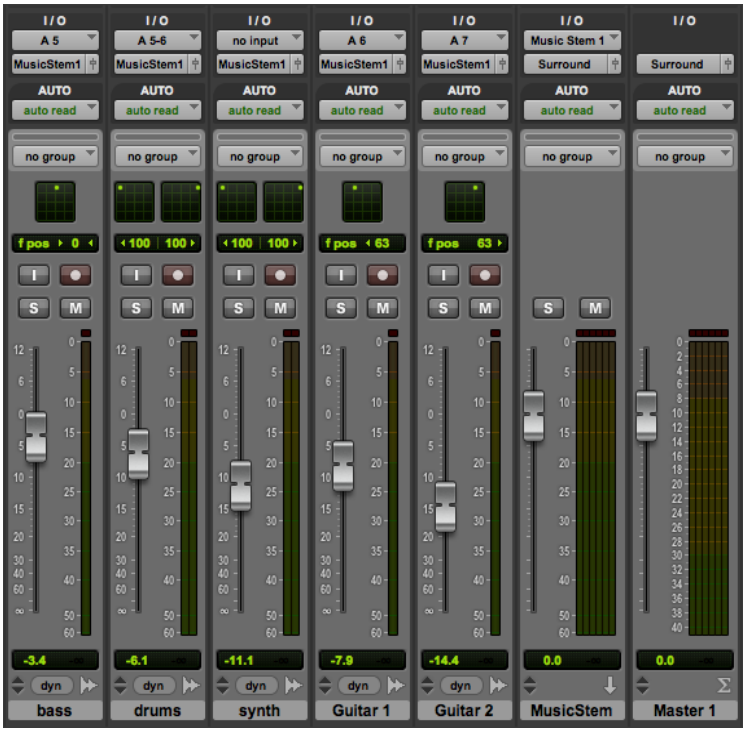
Surround mixes can become incoherent if too many elements are continuously moving, For special effects, some tracks can be panned *dynamically*, bouncing between speakers or sweeping from one side to the other.

The following figure shows a routing configuration for effects tracks.



FX stem

The following figure shows a routing configuration for music tracks.



Music stem

Most of the music tracks in this example are routed to the front left/right channels, using a stereo sub-path. A 5.1 Auxiliary Input controls the bus and stem output.

Multiple Output Assignments

Multiple output assignments make it possible to configure a number of multi-format mixes. For example, you can assign an additional stereo output to tracks and create a stereo mix at the same time as a 5.1 mix. For more information, see "Multiple Output Assignments" on page 1466.

LFE Examples

LFE tracks and other audio can contribute to the LFE output in two ways:

- Using the LFE fader in Output windows. This LFE signal is post-fader.
- Using a custom sub-path to route channels discretely.

The following figure shows a channel Output window, sending and metering the LFE channel.



LFE fader

Using the LFE fader, you can add any amount of any multichannel path to the overall LFE output. In the above example, the track's Center percentage has been turned off, and the LFE fader has been raised to route it to the LFE channel.

The following figure shows how a "traditional" LFE track can be routed to only the LFE channel. This example uses a custom-defined LFE sub-path to the FX main bus path.



Discrete LFE routing, with main output to mono LFE channel

LFE faders can follow Mix and Edit Groups. For information, see "Selecting Group Attributes" on page 427.

For instructions on creating a sub-path, see "Custom Multichannel Paths" on page 1665.

LFE and Filtering

Pro Tools applies no filtering to LFE signals. Some delivery requirements may require filtering for the LFE track.

Flexible Track Routing

Pro Tools lets you route track outputs and sends to paths of any channel width. When routing a track output or send with a wider channel width to a path with a narrower channel width (such as from 5.1 to stereo), Pro Tools automatically downmixes ("folds down") to the narrower path. Similarly, when routing a

track output or send with a narrower channel width to a path with a wider channel width (such as from 5.1 to 7.1), Pro Tools automatically upmixes ("fans out") to the wider path. Since Pro Tools can automatically fan out when routing to wider channel widths, you may not need to use subpaths with large multichannel surround post sessions.

Track inputs, object assignments, and hardware inserts still require matching channel widths.

This first time you make a mismatched routing assignment, Pro Tools presents a warning informing you that output or send will be fanned or folded, and that the routing assignment will be removed if the session is opened in Pro Tools 2021.7 or earlier.

The Routing Coefficient settings in the Mixing Preferences are used when folding down or fanning out from track outputs and sends to paths of different channel widths (see "Routing Coefficients" on page 160).

When opening a session that was created in Pro Tools 2021.10 that uses the Modern Fold Down coefficients in an earlier version of Pro Tools, a warning dialog appears informing you that the session was saved in a newer version of Pro Tools and may contain critical data ignored by the currently installed version. Any unsupported routing assignments in the session will be dropped.

Fold Down and Fan Out Indicators

When a track or send is folded down or fanned out by routing within the session, < (indicating fan out) or > (indicating fold down) is displayed for fold down to the left of the assignment name. If it is folded or fanned at the bus to output level, the indicator appears on the right side. Indicators are displayed on both sides if both internal routing and output routing assignments are made.



Track output fold down indicator (internal bus)

63 Surround Panning and Mixing

Before you can pan a track in surround, it must be assigned to an appropriate multichannel output or bus path.

See "Pro Tools Setup for Surround" on page 1658 for more information on multichannel configurations and I/O Setup options. For multichannel signal routing, see "Multichannel Tracks and Signal Routing" on page 1668.

Multichannel surround mixing is supported with Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio software only.

The I/O Setup dialog defines the busing and output architecture of the Pro Tools multichannel surround mixer. If you have not already done so, it is recommended that you become familiar with main and sub-paths and the I/O Setup dialog before starting multichannel Pro Tools projects.

Introduction to Pro Tools Surround Panning

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only) There are four different track panning methods available:

- In the Edit window, using the reduced-height Panner Grid in the I/O View
- In the Mix window, using the reduced-height Panner Grid
- In the Output window, using the full-size Panner Grid
- Through pan automation editing

Certain Pro Tools control surfaces provide additional panning options. See the documentation for your control surface.

Mix and Edit Window Panner Grids

In the Mix and Edit window, multichannel Panner Grids are displayed on tracks that have multichannel track or send output assignments.

To pan from the Mix or Edit window:

1. To pan in the Edit window, make sure I/O View is being shown (**`View > Edit Window > I/O`**). Panner Grids are always displayed in Mix window tracks that support panning.
2. Begin playback.
3. Drag in the appropriate multichannel track's Panner Grid in the Mix or Edit windows.



Drag to pan in the Track Grid

The Pan Location cursor follows your movements as long as you hold the mouse button. Movements are scaled so that, once you click to “grab” the Pan Location cursor, you do not need to limit your movements to the small Track Grid area.

Pan Location Cursor Color while Automating

The Pan Location cursor is green when the track is in Automation Read mode, red in an Automation Touch, Latch, Touch/Latch, or Write modes, and yellow in Automation Off (or Automation Suspend) mode.

In Trim mode, the Volume fader and LFE fader are yellow.

Output windows provide additional features and controls (and a much larger Grid). For details, see "Output Windows" below.

Output Windows

Output windows provide panning controls (called panners), as well as standard Pro Tools controls, for tracks of all mix formats (from 3-channel LCR through 8-channel 7.1).

Panning for immersive formats (from 5.0.2 to 9.1.6) uses the 3 panner (see “3D Panner” on page 1326).

For information on Output window standard controls, see "Standard Controls" on the next page. For information on Output window panning controls, see "Surround Panner Controls" on page 1687.

Some of the features of Output windows include:

- X/Y (joystick-style) panning
- 3-Knob panning
- Full Divergence and Center Percentage control
- AutoGlide
- LFE feed
- Multichannel meters
- Pro Tools target window support

Multiple panners can be opened simultaneously, or a single window can display the current panner.

To open an Output window:

- Click the Output Window button (the small fader at the right edge of the Output selector for a track in the Mix or Edit window (I/O View).

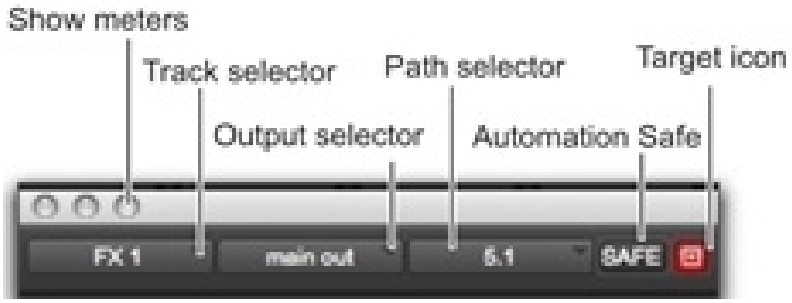


Opening a multichannel Output window

For instructions on managing multiple Output windows, see "Output Windows for Tracks and Sends" on page 1485.

Standard Controls

All Output windows provide standard Pro Tools controls for routing, path assignment and other track features. These controls are located at the top of all Output, Send, Insert, and Plugin windows (see "Standard Selector Controls in Output Windows" on page 1488).



Panner Control section

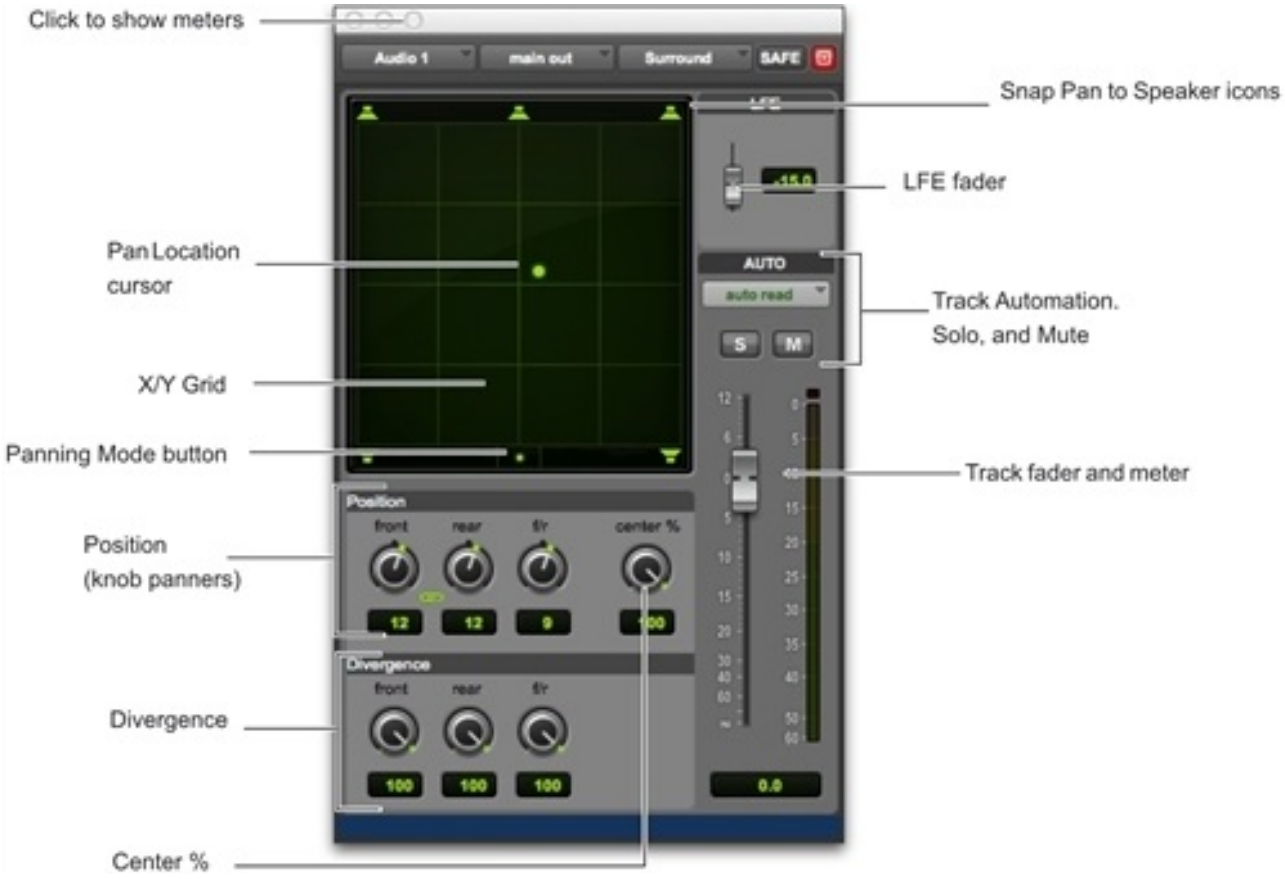
Track Fader, Solo, Mute, and Auto

All Output windows provide track volume and mute controls. You can adjust and automate track volume, or mute, directly using these controls. The larger fader and Mute button are equivalent to those in the Pro Tools Mix window.

Surround Panner Controls

When assigned to tracks or paths with four or more channels, the Output window provides an X/Y Grid for surround panning. The speakers associated with the panner's multichannel format are displayed in their relative positions outside the Panner Grid. These speakers are also used as Snap Pan to Speaker controls.

This section identifies all the controls and features found in Pro Tools multichannel panners.



Output window with a 7.1 format multichannel panner

The X/Y Grid and Pan Location Cursor

The X/Y Grid is where multichannel panning information is input and displayed. You can input pan information using X/Y mode, 3-Knob mode, or by entering numeric values in the Position data fields. You can also edit pan automation graphically in the Edit window.

Multichannel panners default to X/Y mode. In X/Y mode, the track's current pan position is represented by a green dot. This dot is the Pan Location cursor, and its color indicates track automation status using standard Pro Tools colors:

- Green

  The track is in automation Read mode.
- Red

  The track is in automation Write, Touch, Latch, or Touch/Latch mode.
- Yellow

  The track is in automation Off mode (or Automation Suspend) mode.

Panning Mode Button

This button, located below the X/Y Grid, provides access to Surround panning modes (see "Panning Modes" on the next page).

Position Controls

The Position controls let you set the positions of the panner.

Front

Displays and controls the current front X-axis (left/right) position of the panner.

Rear

Displays and controls the current rear X-axis (left/right) position of the panner. In default X/Y Panning mode, Rear is linked to Front position and cannot be controlled independently.

F/R (Front/Rear)

Displays and controls the current Y-axis position of the panner.

Front/Rear Linking

Links (or unlinks) the Front and Rear left/right positions controls (they are linked by default). When linked, the F/R control pans the signal front to back always along the same left/right path. When unlinked, you can pan front to back diagonally according to independent Front and Rear settings.



Front and Rear positions linked (left) versus Front and Rear positions unlinked (right)

Center % Control

Center % controls how much of the signal is routed to the center speaker. This lets you mix a track to the front with a phantom center (0% Center value) or to three-channel (LCR) when panning front.

Divergence Controls

Divergence determines the width of the panned signal with respect to neighboring speakers. (For more information, see the *Pro Tools Sync & Surround Concepts Guide*). There are three Divergence controls:

Front, Rear, and F/R Divergence

Provide separate, automatable divergence control over front speakers, rear speakers, and between front/rear, respectively.

For examples of how divergence settings affect output panning, see "Divergence and Center Percentage" on page 1693.

Snap Pan to Speaker Icons

The Snap Pan to Speaker icons let you force the panner to the speaker's location. For example, clicking on the upper left speaker moves the Pan Location cursor to the upper left corner of the X/Y Grid.

LFE Fader

The LFE fader is only available in ".1" surround formats (5.1, 6.1, and 7.1).

The LFE fader determines how much of the current track's signal will be routed to the LFE channel. LFE faders in Track and Send windows can follow groups. The Pro Tools LFE channel is always full-bandwidth. For more information on how to use the LFE fader, see "LFE Faders in Multichannel Panners" on page 1697.

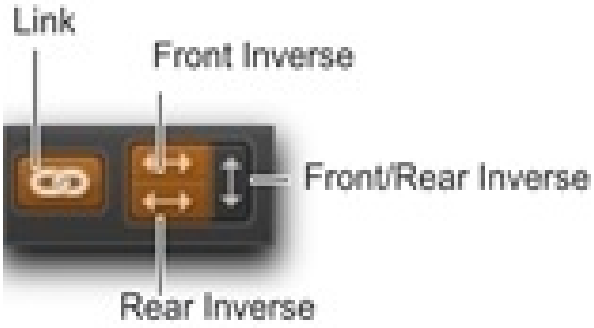
Multichannel Panner Linking

Stereo tracks with multichannel outputs provide left and right multichannel panners. The Output window provides controls to link the left and right channels for precise panning.

When you create a stereo track that is routed to a multichannel output, the following pan linkage controls are active by default:

- Link (links Left and Right pan controls)
- Front Inverse (inverts Left and Right pan control linkage across front)
- Rear Inverse (inverts Left and Right pan control linkage across rear)

The Front/Rear Inverse pan control is unlinked by default.



Stereo multichannel panner controls showing default linking

Panning Modes

The Panning Mode button provides access to four panning modes: X/Y mode, Divergence Editing, 3-Knob mode, and AutoGlide mode. Panning controls can be automated in all four modes.

Pro Tools provides the following Panning Modes:

X/Y Mode

Joystick-style panning by dragging the Pan Location cursor within the X/Y Speaker Grid. See "X/Y Panning" on the next page for more information.

3-Knob Mode

Point-to-point panning, between pairs of speakers. See "3-Knob Panning" on the next page for more information.

Divergence Editing

The divergence X/Y Grid can be dragged to resize the divergence boundaries. See "Divergence Editing Mode" on page 1695.

AutoGlide Mode

Point-to-point panning from the Pan Location cursor to a new destination over a specified AutoGlide Time. See "AutoGlide Mode" on page 1692 for more information.

To enable a Panning Mode:

- Click on the Panning Mode button in the Surround Panner until the mode icon is displayed.

X/Y Panning

To pan in X/Y mode:

1. Click on the Panning Mode button until the X/Y mode icon is displayed.
2. Drag the Pan Location cursor, or click anywhere in the Grid and drag to pan the track. The location of the Pan Location cursor determines the pan position of the signal. For example, to pan something to the left rear speaker, move the Pan Location cursor to the lower-left corner of the Grid.

It is not necessary to click exactly on the Pan Location cursor. Clicking anywhere in the Grid will move the Pan Location cursor relative to where you click or take over with a hardware panner. Panning does not jump to the click position.

To snap the Pan Location cursor to a location in the Grid:

- Command-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Shift-click (Windows) at the location in the X/Y Grid.

Grid Options and Shortcuts

Fine-Adjust Mode

Hold the Command key (Mac) or Control key (Windows) for fine adjustment of all Panner controls.

Constraining to X or Y Movement

Shift-drag the Pan Location cursor to constrain its movement to the X or Y direction.

Reset to Default

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) in the Panner Grid to reset all controls to their default position.

Snap Pan to Speaker

Click one of the Snap Pan to Speaker icons to force the panner to that speaker location.

Display Automation in Edit Window

Control- Command-Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) a control to display that control's playlist in the Edit window.

All Pan controls can be automated, including pan position and divergence. See "Automation" on page 158 for details.

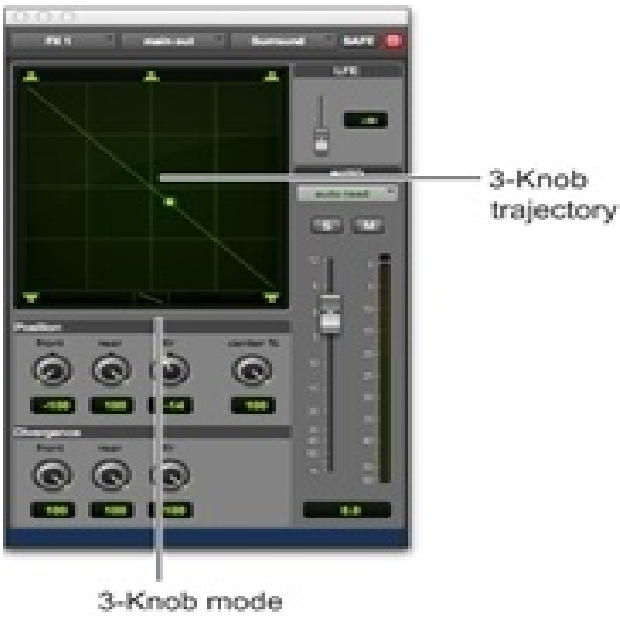
3-Knob Panning

Pro Tools provides 3-Knob mode as an additional way to input pan moves.

3-Knob mode lets you do the following:

- Pan in straight lines, moving the Pan Location cursor using the Position rotary knobs with full movement of front, rear, and front-rear position
- Pan discretely between pairs of speakers.

For example, when panning front-left to rear-right in 3-Knob mode, audio will be heard from just those two speakers (assuming full divergence is in effect).



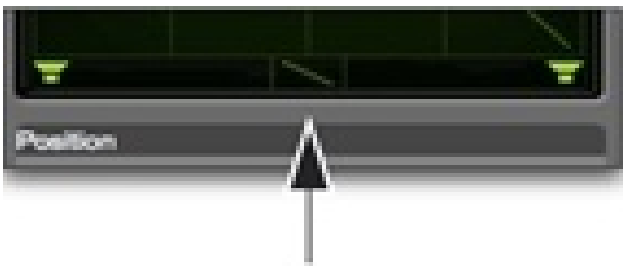
Panning and metering in 3-Knob mode

By comparison, in X/Y mode a diagonal pan may result in audio being heard in some or all channels.

The difference is that 3-Knob mode pans discretely between the front and rear position of the panning *trajectory*, while X/Y mode panning takes place in the full 360° Panning Grid. Divergence and Center Percentage are variable in both Panning modes.

To enable 3-Knob Panning mode:

- Click on the Panning Mode button until the 3-Knob mode icon is displayed.



Panner Mode button set to 3-Knob mode

The panner trajectory line appears across the Grid, extending from the front (X-axis) to the rear (Y-axis).

To pan in 3-Knob mode:

1. Adjust the Front and Rear Position knobs to set the trajectory line.
2. Rotate the Front/Rear Position knob to pan along the trajectory. The Pan Location cursor is constrained to the white trajectory line.

To change the 3-Knob trajectory angles, do one of the following:

- Drag either end point (Front or Rear) of the trajectory line.
- Adjust the Front or Rear Position controls.

To change the current trajectory position (left-to-right) and retain its current angles:

- Drag the trajectory line (not its end points) to a new position.

AutoGlide Mode

AutoGlide mode lets you quickly write Surround Panner automation by clicking new locations in the Surround Panner window, instead of manually moving the Surround Panner controls.

When writing automation in AutoGlide mode, the Pan Location cursor cannot be dragged from its location.

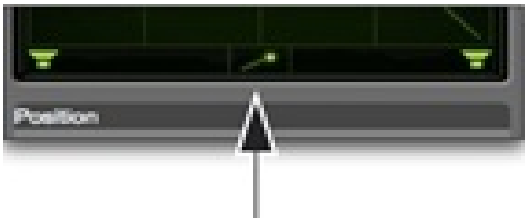
The time it takes to glide from point to point (from the Pan Location cursor to the new destination) is called the AutoGlide Time. This time is set in the Mixing Preferences page and has a range of 10 msec to 10000 msec (10 seconds).

To set the AutoGlide Time

1. Choose **`Setup > Preferences`** and click **`Mixing`**.
2. Set the AutoGlide Time in the Automation section.

To do an AutoGlide automation pass:

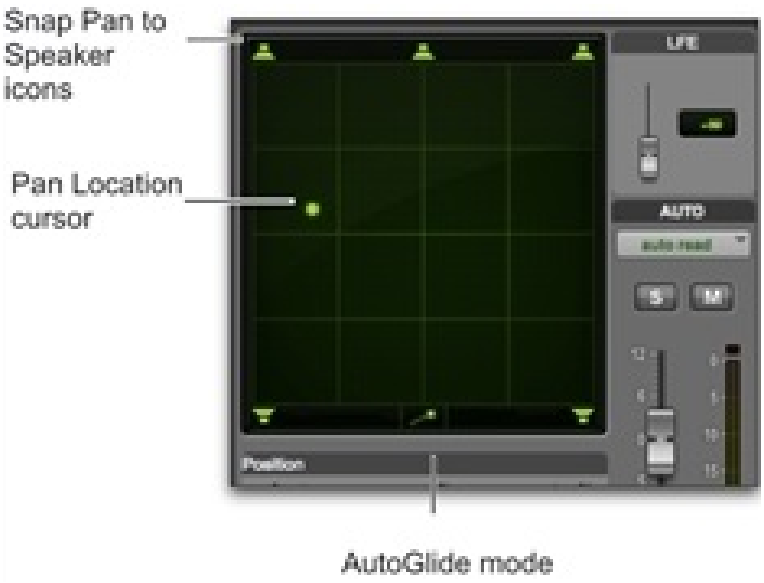
1. Click the Panning Mode button until the AutoGlide mode icon is displayed.



Panner Mode button set to AutoGlide mode

The Panning Mode button displays a slanted dotted line that ends with a filled in dot (representing a cursor) at its top right corner.

2. In the Mix or Edit window, click the Automation Mode selector and select an Automation mode for the track you want to automate.
3. Press Play to begin playback.
4. Set a new destination for the cursor by doing one of the following:
   - Click a Snap Pan to Speaker icon to glide to its speaker location.
   - Click in the pan window to glide to a specific location in the X/Y Grid.



Panning Mode button (AutoGlide mode shown)

The Pan Location cursor will begin to move towards the new destination in the time it takes to travel the AutoGlide Time. When the new destination point is reached, a new breakpoint will be written at the new location.

5. Repeat the previous step if you want to write additional panning moves.
6. Stop the transport when finished.

Divergence and Center Percentage

The Divergence and Center Percentage controls range from 0 to 100, and can be automated. They are especially useful for ensuring audibility and coverage in large venues, and to increase clarity of voices.

Front Divergence

Controls divergence between front speakers (X-axis only).

Rear Divergence

Controls divergence between the rear speakers (X-axis only).

Front/Rear Divergence

Controls divergence between front and rear (the Y-axis).

Center % (Percentage)

Determines whether there is a *discrete* center image, a completely *phantom* center image, or a variable amount in between.

Side % (Percentage)

Determines whether there is a *discrete* side image, a completely *phantom* side image, or a variable amount in between the right and left side channels for 7.1 and 7.0 formats.

Divergence

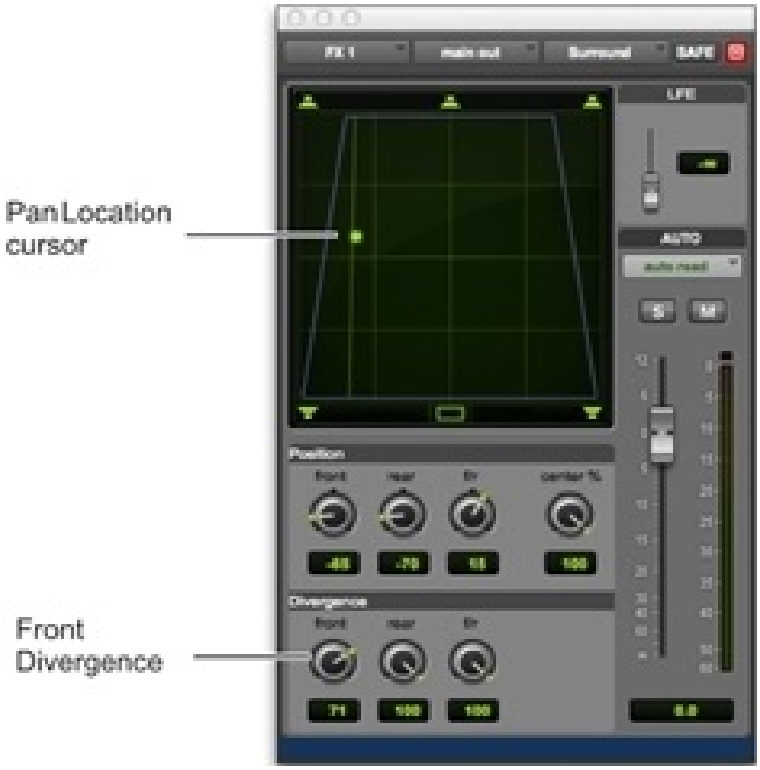
In the Panner Grid, the current divergence values are displayed using a purple outline.



Divergence display and controls

By default, Pro Tools surround panners are 100% or fully divergent, meaning that a signal that is panned completely to one speaker will only be audible in that speaker.

Lower divergence settings result in a progressively wider source signal. When Divergence is less than 100%, tracks will be routed to neighboring speakers to some degree, even when the Pan Location cursor is positioned next to a single speaker.



Front Divergence at less than 100% for wider panning

To adjust divergence:

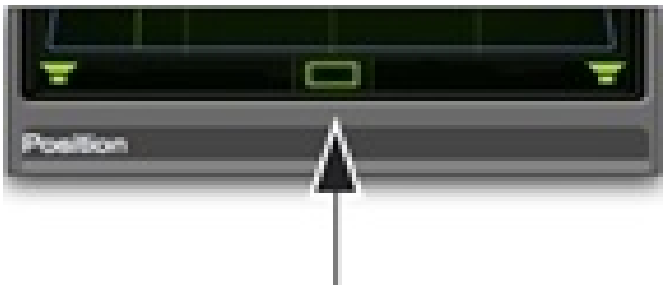
- Adjust the Front, Rear, and Front/Rear Divergence controls as necessary.

Divergence Editing Mode

In Divergence Editing mode, you can adjust the divergence boundaries by dragging directly in the Divergence Grid.

To adjust divergence graphically:

1. Click on the Panning Mode button until the Divergence Editing icon is displayed.



Panner Mode button set to Divergence Editing

2. Drag in the Grid to resize the divergence boundaries.

Center % (Percentage)

In LCR, LCRS, 5.0, 5.1, 6.0, 6.1 7.0, 7.0 SDDS, 7.1, and 7.1 SDDS surround formats, the **`Center %`** controls whether there is a discrete center channel for the track or a phantom center channel.

Center Percentage Example

In film and video production, the center channel often contains dialog. To enhance the clarity of dialog, it is often beneficial to keep elements such as music out of the center speaker. By reducing the Center Percentage on music tracks, music panned to the front of the soundfield can be panned to only the left and right speakers, forcing them to have a variable phantom center image.

To adjust Center Percentage:

- Adjust the Center Percentage knob.

  As you reduce the Center Percentage value, the center speaker at the top of the Grid becomes less visible. At 0, the center speaker is completely invisible, reflecting the setting for fully phantom center.



Center % set to 0 (no center speaker shown)

Side % (Percentage)

For 7.1 and 7.0 surround formats, the **Side %** controls whether there are discrete side channels for the track or a phantom side channel.

To adjust Side Percentage:

- Adjust the Side Percentage knob.

  As you reduce the Side Percentage value, the speakers at the sides of the Grid become less visible. At 0, the side speakers are completely invisible, reflecting the setting for fully phantom center.



Side % set to 50% (side center speakers dimmed)

LFE Faders in Multichannel Panners

The LFE fader controls how much of the track is sent to LFE. LFE faders are only available when a track is assigned to a path whose format supports LFE (5.1, 6.1, or 7.1).

For general information about LFE, sub channels, and related topics, see the Pro Tools Sync & Surround Concepts Guide.

To mix to the LFE channel:

- Adjust the LFE fader in any ".1" surround format Output window.

LFE Faders and Groups

Track and send LFE faders can follow Mix and Edit Groups by being enabled in the Group Attributes page in either the Create Groups or Modify Groups dialog. LFE faders can be assigned to follow groups as a global attribute or on a group by group basis. See "Selecting Group Attributes" on page 427.

LFE Enable

Some multichannel plugins, including the multichannel Dynamics III Compressor/Limiter, provide LFE Enable. This lets you enable or bypass processing of the LFE channel if present.



LFE Enable in the multichannel Dynamics III Compressor/Limiter

To process the LFE channel in a multichannel plugin:

- Click to enable LFE Enable in supporting multichannel plugins. LFE Enable is highlighted when LFE processing is enabled, and unhighlighted when LFE processing is bypassed.

When LFE Enable is unavailable, try using the multi-mono version of the plugin.

Pan Playlists

Multichannel panners have an automation playlist for each position and divergence control.

Pan automation can be drawn, edited, cut, copied, and pasted from the Edit window. For more information, see "Automation" on page 158.

Immersive Surround Panner

Height Pan Laws

All height channels in immersive surround formats have the channel positions against the edges of the room, to take full advantage of the three dimensional space. Sound is heard immediately if panned inward on the ceiling. Note that 7.1.2 height channels have a slightly different pan law, as specified by Dolby for use with beds feeding the Dolby Atmos Renderer. Signal on the ceiling does not pan into the middle of the room until you have reached a quarter of the distance inward.

Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) on a floor-level speaker icon to snap to the speaker location without affecting height.

63 Pro Tools Immersive Panner

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio provide an immersive panner for object panning with Fraunhofer MPEG-H or Audio Vivid renderers. The Pro Tools Immersive Panner is based around the concept of an anchor point. This single point can be controlled by multiple meta and macro controls. Additionally, each source channel has its own pan parameters. The combination of the individual and meta control values result in the ultimate position of each channel in 3D space and is represented in the Plugin Automation lane channel position as Composite Pan lanes.

When the Pro Tools Immersive Panner is used on mono source track it has a limited set of controls and the anchor is hidden.

The Pro Tools Immersive Panner is not available with Dolby Atmos Renderers or the Pro Tools mixer. It is only available with AAX Renderer plugins.



Pro Tools Immersive panner, mono track



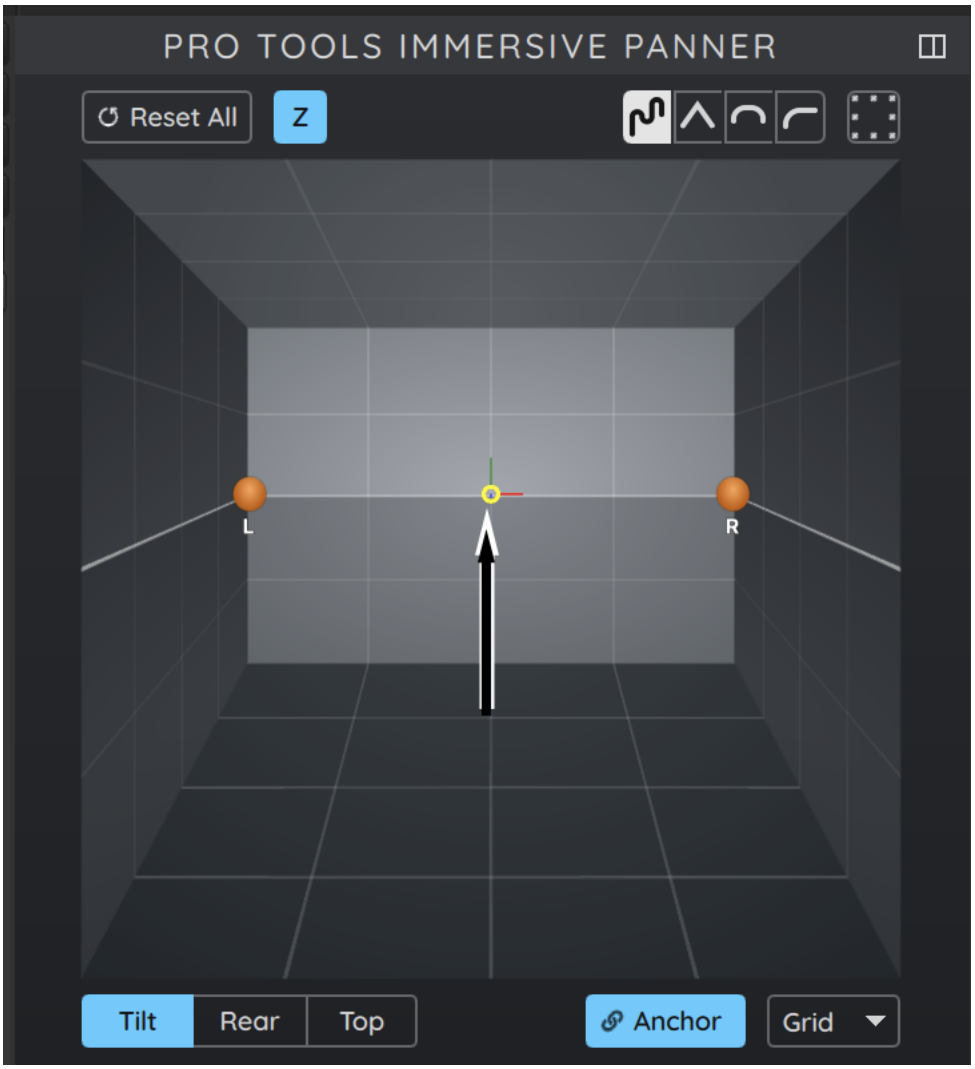
Pro Tools Immersive Panner, stereo



Pro Tools Immersive Panner, LCR with C as the Focus Channel

Anchor Point

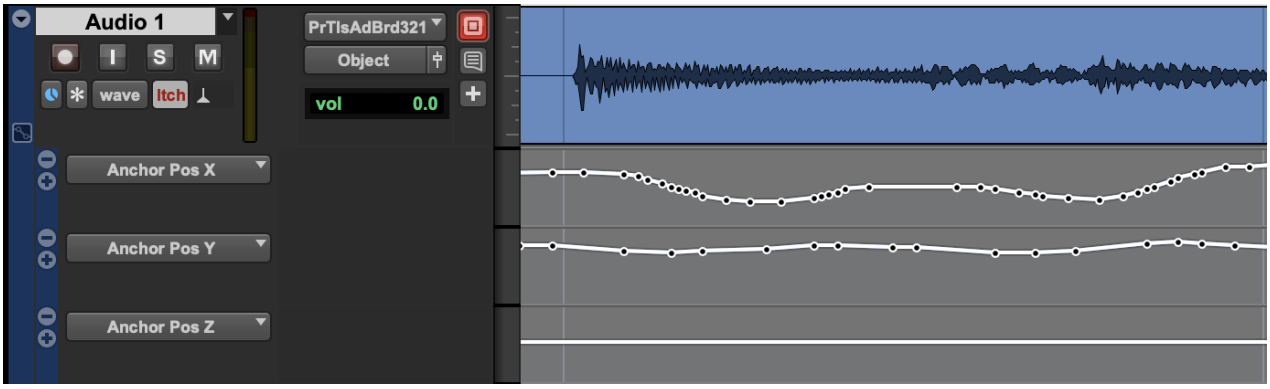
You can drag the anchor point to control panning for all track audio channels in accordance with the other Pro Tools Immersive Panner settings. By default, the anchor point is only shown for stereo or greater channel widths.



Pro Tools Immersive Panner, stereo with anchor point shown

To pan one or more source channels using the anchor point:

1. Configure the Pro Tools Immersive Panner settings as desired.
2. Click and drag the anchor point while recording pan automation.



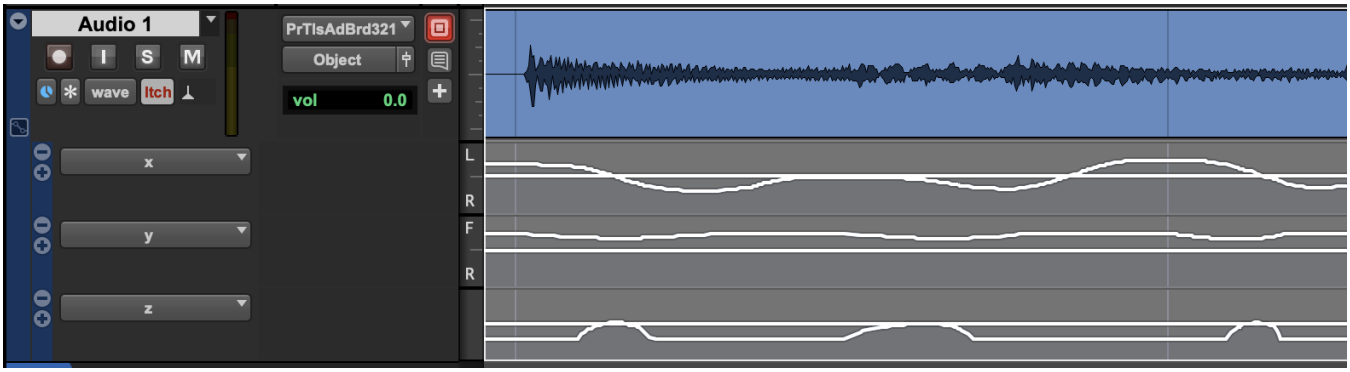
- *Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) and drag for fine control.*
- *Shift-click and drag to confine movement to first dragged direction.*
- *Command-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Shift-click and drag to confine movement to first dragged direction with fine control.*

Meta and Macro Controls

A Meta Control is parameter that affects one or more channel positions but is not directly responsible for final channel position. Each contains its own automation lane.

A Macro Control is a parameter that affects one or more controls in the pan plugin. It does not affect pan position directly, but rather by proxy by remote controlling other pan parameters and it does not have its own automation lane.

When Automation is written, the sum of Meta and Macro controls is represented as Pan automation composite lines on X, Y, and Z channel pan automation lanes.



Expanded View

Expanded view lets you reference the speaker layout and click to pan the anchor or the focused object to any speaker location.



Top Panel Controls

Reset All

Click the **Reset All** button to set all panner controls to their default settings.

Z

Click the **Z** button to enable or disable panning along the Z axis (height).

Height Modes

Sets the Height mode for the track. Choices include FreeForm mode (manual height adjustment), and Wedge, Sphere, and Ceiling modes (automatic height modes). Height mode can be automated.



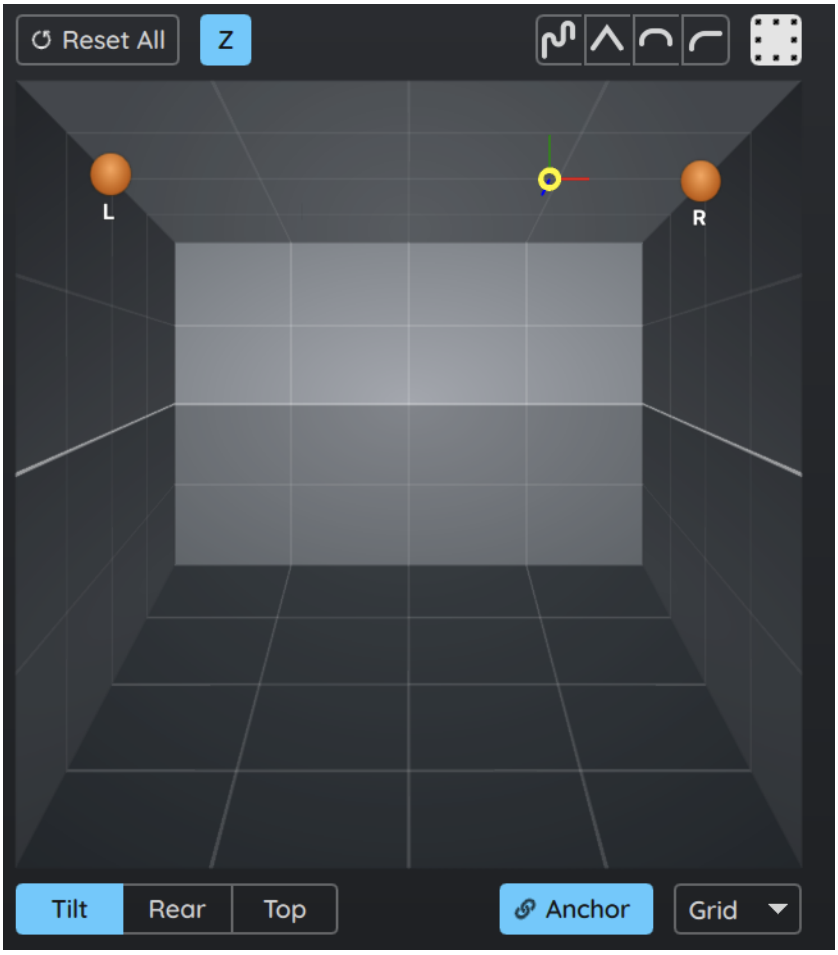
Height modes, FreeForm selected

To select the Height mode:

- Click a Height mode icon to select that mode.

Walls

Click the Walls button to enable or disable whether or not object panning is constrained to the walls.

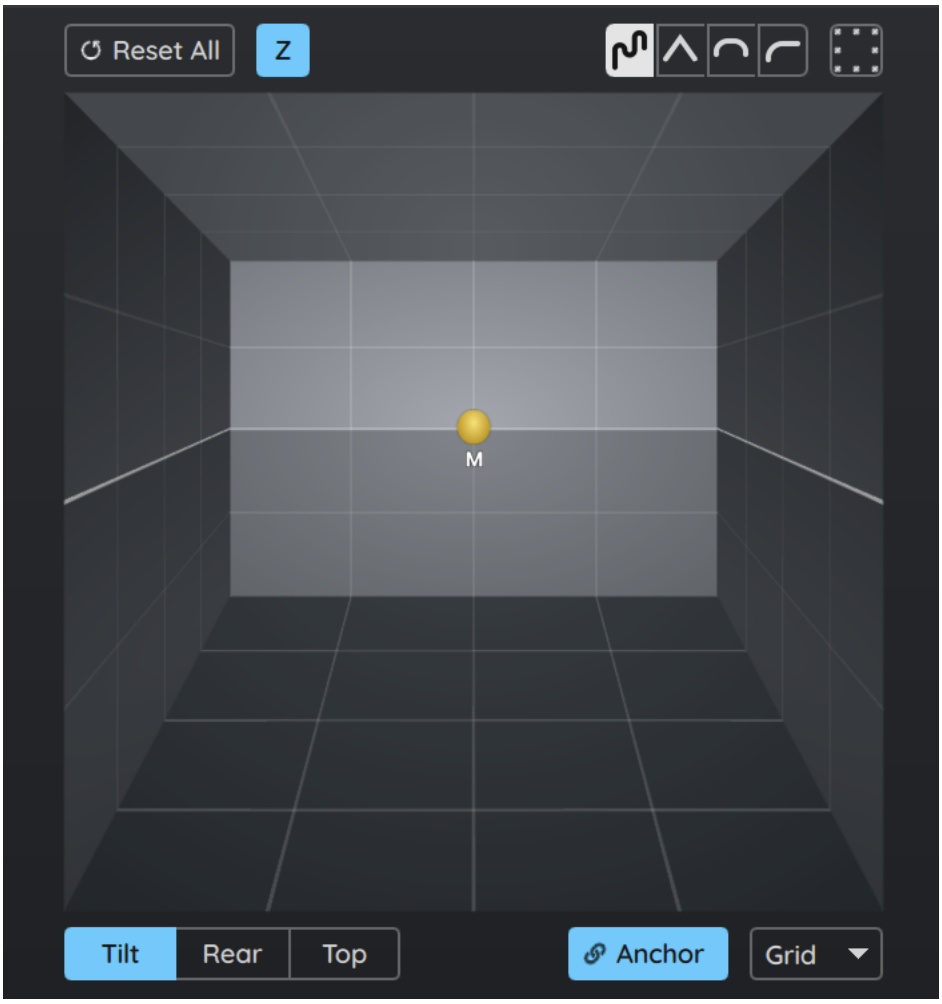


Walls enabled, stereo objects

Room Views

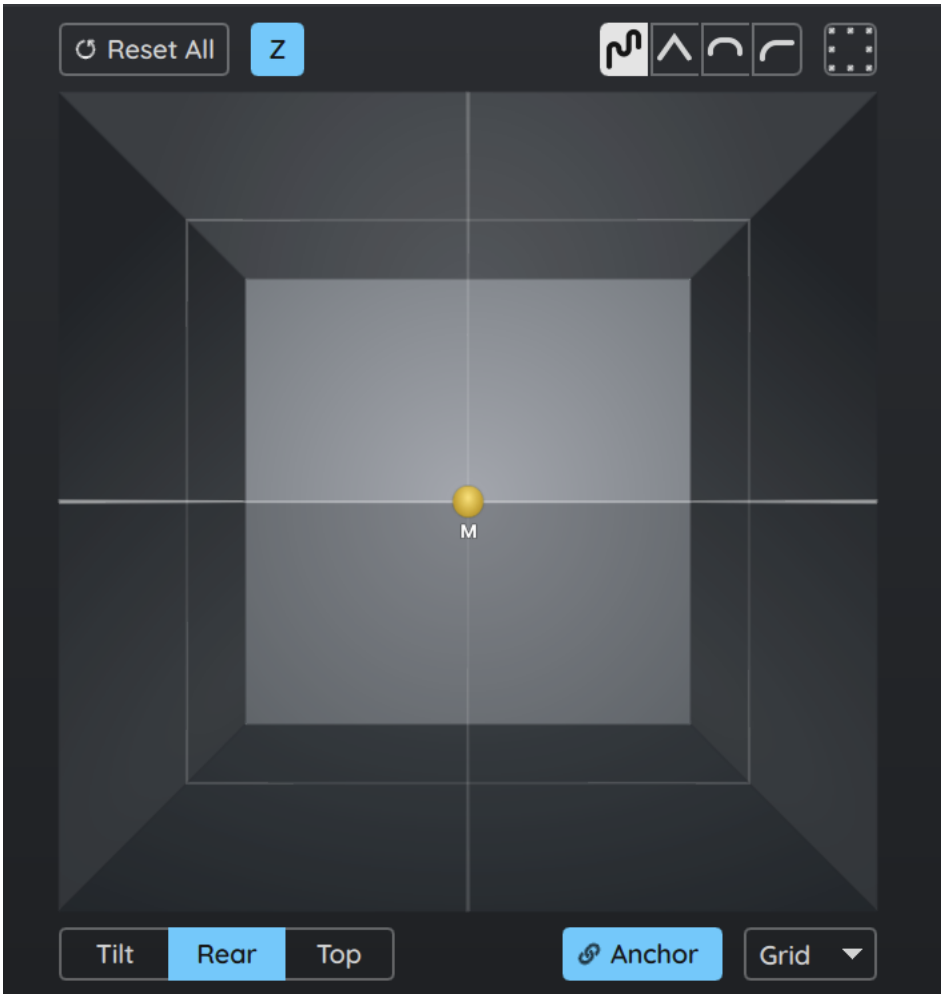
The Pro Tools Immersive Panner has 3 room views:

- **`Tilt`**: Provides a rear view with a slight angle. This view behaves much like the regular Pro Tools panner. Drag the object up and down to pan forward and back on the Y axis.



In Tilt view, Control-Option-click (Mac) or Start-Alt-click (Windows) and drag the anchor point or object to adjust the Orbit control.

- **Rear**: Provides a direct rear view. Drag the object up and down to pan top and bottom on the Z axis.



- *In Rear view, Control-Option-click (Mac) or Start-Alt-click (Windows) and drag the anchor point or object to adjust the Tilt X control.*
- *In Rear view, Control-Option-Command-click (Mac) or Control-Start-Alt-click (Windows) and drag the anchor point or object to adjust the Roll setting with fine control.*
- *In Rear view, Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Start-Shift-click (Windows) and drag the anchor point or object up or down to adjust the Y setting.*
- *In Rear view, Command-Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Start-Shift-click (Windows) and drag the anchor point or object up or down to adjust the Y setting with fine control.*

- **Top:** Provides a direct overhead view. Drag the object up and down to pan forward and back on the Y axis.

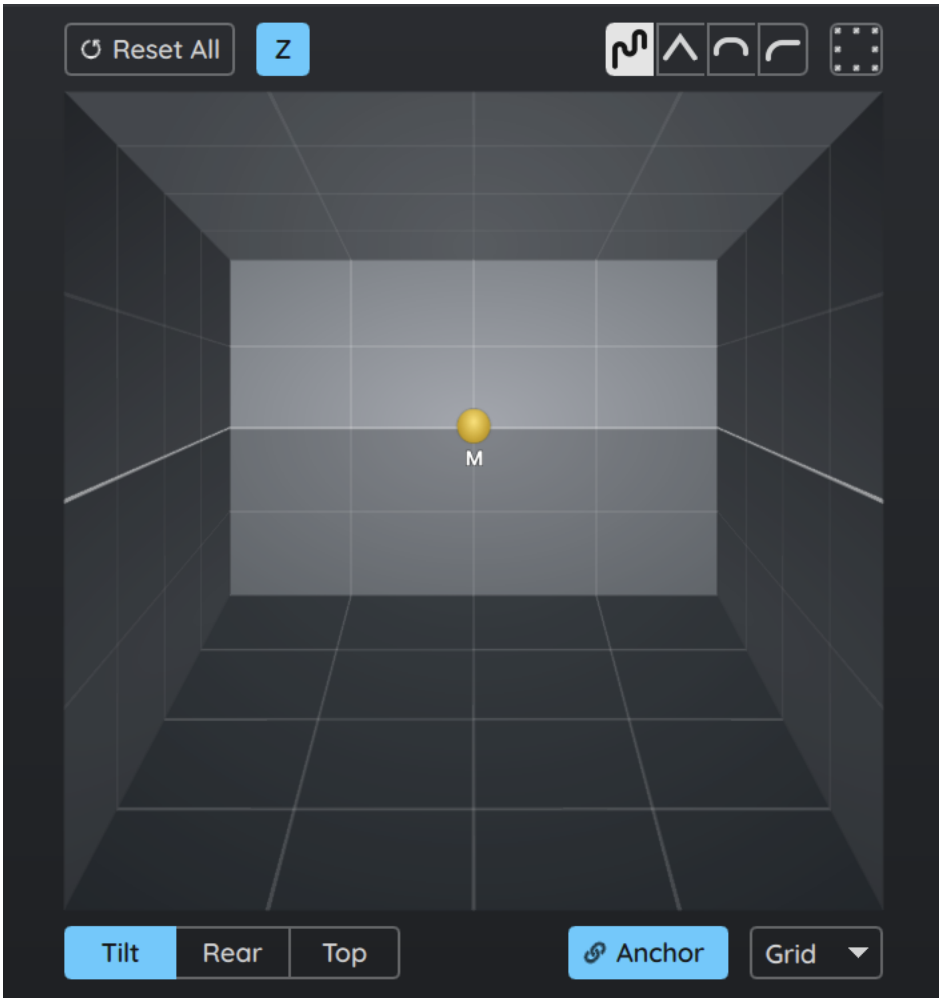


- *In Top view, Control-Option-click (Mac) or Start-Alt-click (Windows) and drag the anchor point or object to adjust the Orbit control.*
- *In Top view, Control-Option-Command-click (Mac) or Control-Start-Alt-click (Windows) and drag the anchor point or object to adjust the Orbit setting with fine control.*
- *In Top view, Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Start-Shift-click (Windows) and drag the anchor point or object up or down to adjust the Z setting.*
- *In Top view, Command-Control-Shift-click (Mac) or Control-Start-Shift-click (Windows) and drag the anchor point or object up or down to adjust the Z setting with fine control.*

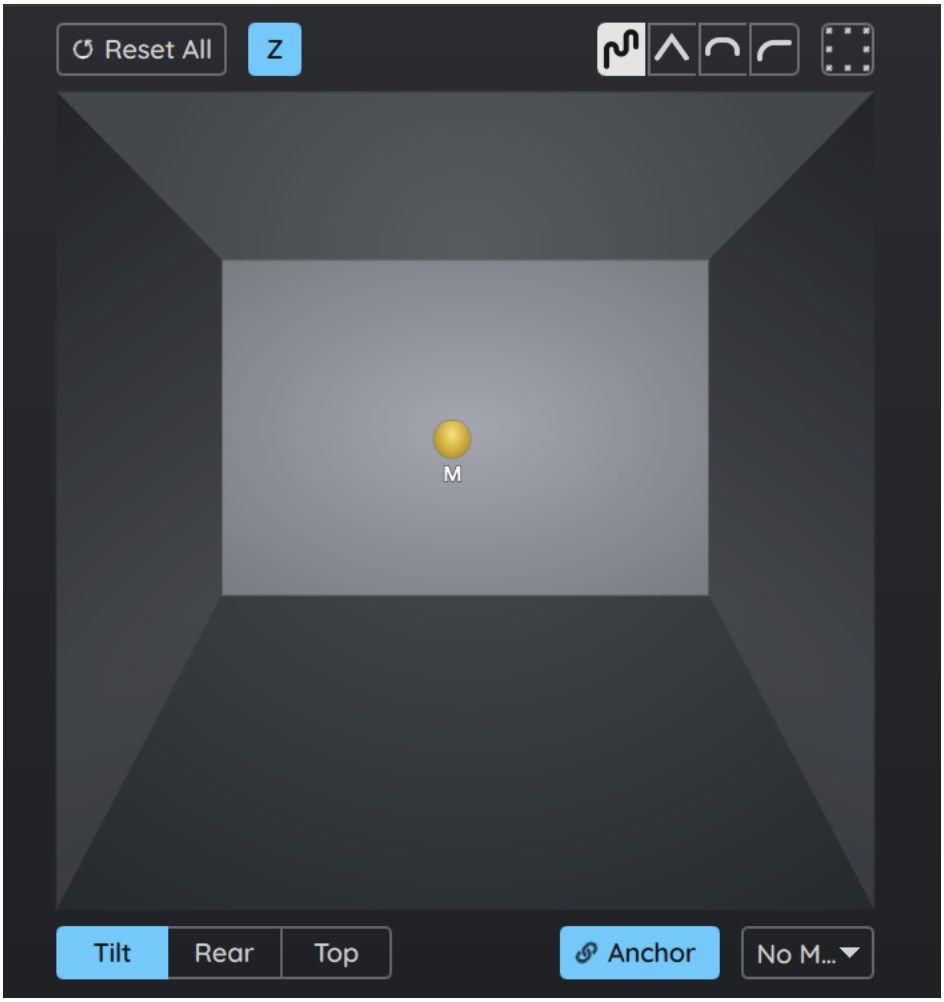
Room Guides

You can select from the following for room guides:

- **`Grid`**: Shows grid lines in the room.



- **`No Markings`**: No grid lines are shown.



- **`Speaker Placement`** (only available in Top View): Speaker locations are indicated.



Anchor Link

The Link Anchor button determines what happens when dragging the anchor point in the pan graph.

When linked, only the anchor can be moved (unless additional keyboard modifiers are used). Dragging the anchor point moves all of the objects (whch represent individual input channels). This adjusts only the position of the Manipulate controls, but not the actual channel lane values.

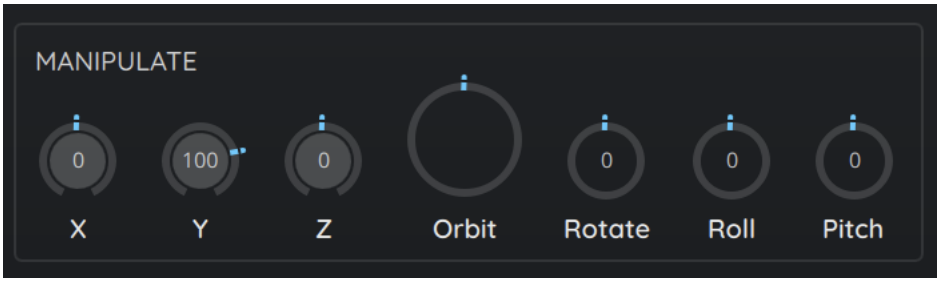
When unlinked, the anchor or individual objects can be dragged. If the anchor is sitting in the same position as an object, the anchor movement takes priority.

When the anchor and channel match position, and the anchor is linked, advanced controls are hidden. When the anchor is unlinked—or the anchor is linked, but the channel and anchor position do not match—the advanced controlsare shown.

Press Control (Mac) or Start (Windows) to clutch Anchor Link off.

Command-Control-click (Mac) or Control-Start-click (Windows) the anchor point to reverse the Anchor Link and drag with fine with control.

Manipulate



X, **Y**, and **Z**: These are Meta controls for the L/R, Front/Rear, Top/Bottom positions of the anchor point in the room.

Orbit: This Macro control adjust the anchor X, Y, and Rotate parameters, causing the anchor to orbit around the center of the room.

Rotate: This Meta control rotates the direction of the anchor left and right, causing the channel positions to follow relatively in the room. Otherwise known as *yaw*. This control is not available with a mono source and the anchor point is unlinked.

Roll: This Meta control rolls the anchor left and right, causing the channel positions to follow relatively in the room. This control is not available with a mono source and the anchor point is unlinked.

Pitch: This Meta control rolls the anchor left and right, causing the channel positions to follow relatively in the room. This control is not available with a mono source and the anchor point is unlinked.

Spin

The **Spin** controls help automate the movement of fully rotatable parameters. For example, you may want to do live momentary movements that do not necessarily relate to a tempo, or you might want the movement to relate to and adapt with the tempo of a song.



Spin Mode Selector: **Free**, **Note**, and **Bar** options are exclusive. The dotted and triplet selections are supplementary, and their behavior only applies to the **1/2**, **1/4**, and **1/8** note options, and they can be selected at any time.

Spin Rate Knob: For Bars and Notes, the Spin Rate is relative to the selected rhythmic value. For example, 100% of a 1/4 note means that one rotation happens every quarter note. Free modes spin slower or faster depending on the specified percentage, and is based on how many milliseconds it takes for a full rotation.

Spin Target Selector: Determines which parameter is affected by the spin control.

- **Orbit** ‹default›
- **Rotate**
- **Pitch**

- **Roll**

Scale

The **Scale** controls let you adjust the available space between the channels and the anchor. Think of it like a room within a room. When the scale positions are at 100%, the rooms match in size.



Scale controls are not available with a mono source and the anchor point is unlinked.

Spread: This Macro control adjusts the **Width**, **Depth**, and **Height** controls relative to their current position.

Width: This Meta control sand expands from the left and right of the anchor point.

Depth: This Meta control shrinks and expands from the front and back of the anchor point.

Height: This Meta controls shrinks and expands from the top and bottom of the anchor point

Channel Controls



Each channel has a specific set of controls.

X, **Y**, and **Z**: These Meta control determine the specific channel L/R, Front/Rear, Top/Bottom position in the room relative to the anchor and the scaling parameters. Those values do not change when the anchor point position, orientation, or scale changes.

Size: This Meta control determines the channel size.

Channel Link Button

When enabled, groups of channels are linked together. This affects positional and size parameters for channels in the groups. Channel groups are pre-defined. Most of the time, channels are linked in L/R pairs. The one exception is L C R, which moves in a group of 3.

Channel groups have pre-defined inversion settings. When linked, L/R 'X' positions are always inverted. 'Y' and 'Z' are not inverted. In an LCR group, C's 'X' will ignore L/R movements. If C is moved, L/R will always follow without any inversion.

This control is not available with a mono source when the anchor point is unlinked.

Channels View

For assigned objects with channel widths greater than stereo (LCR or wider only), you can expand the Pro Tools Immersive Pannner window to show Channels view. Channels view provides the same controls per input channel (objects) as the Focus Channel controls: **X**, **Y**, **Z**, and **Size**.

To show (or hide) Channels view in the Pro Tools Immersive Panner window:

- Click the Show/Hide Channels view button.



64 Mixing to Dolby Atmos

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio software let you mix to Dolby Atmos® multichannel formats, with additional support for playback and recording of object audio and panning metadata when used with a Dolby Atmos renderer. You can use an external renderer, such as the Dolby Atmos Renderer, or the Pro Tools internal renderer.

To get started mixing to Dolby Atmos:

1. Make sure you are familiar with the concepts and terminology described in "Dolby Atmos Overview" below.
2. Do one of the following, as appropriate:
   - "Enabling the Internal Renderer" on page 1717.
   - "Enabling the External Renderer" on page 1718.
   - "Configuring Pro Tools Using Core Audio with the Dolby Atmos Renderer" on page 1719.
3. Configure the Pro Tools Session Setup and I/O Setup for Dolby Atmos (see "Configuring Session Setup for Dolby Atmos" on page 1720 and "Configuring the I/O Setup for Dolby Atmos" on page 1720).
4. Configure and route beds, objects, groups, and panning as desired.

Dolby Atmos Overview

(Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio Software Only)

Dolby Atmos is an immersive technology that lets you position sound elements in a three dimensional space. You can create a single mix that can be monitored and delivered in a variety of formats.

Dolby Atmos uses what is called a “renderer” to generate the mix. The renderer uses beds and objects as its input sources. These sources are used to generate a main mix for monitoring. The Dolby Atmos renderer is also capable of generating additional copies of the mix, known as “re-renders,” which can be used for headphones, loudness measurement, printing the mix, and various types of offline mix deliveries.

To help you get started, Pro Tools provides a newly revised Dolby Atmos mixing template and a new Dolby Atmos Demo session in Dashboard Getting Started page (File › Dashboard › Getting Started).

Audience Immersion

With Dolby Atmos, two critical elements significantly improve the audience experience over 5.1 and 7.1 systems:

- Sounds originating overhead
- Greater spatial control and resolution

Elements of a Dolby Atmos Mix

A Dolby Atmos mix consists of three primary elements:

Beds

A bed is a channel-based premix or stem that includes multichannel panning, and does not need dedicated panning via Dolby Atmos metadata. Use a bed for stereo or surround panning. A bed can be thought of as a traditional channel-based stem with the rules and expectations of stem configurations (such as 2.0, 5.1, and 7.1). These are fixed locations in space that are tightly constrained to traditional speaker environments, including theatrical environments where a speaker array might be used.

In Dolby Atmos, the largest bed configuration that exists is 7.1.2. This configuration allows for Low-Frequency Effects (LFE), with left and right side walls, and an additional overhead stereo pair. Dolby Atmos supports the use of multiple beds.

Objects

An object is a discrete audio element that can be placed anywhere in the three-dimensional soundfield. Objects can consist of mono or stereo content and are positioned using dedicated Dolby Atmos panning. Use objects for precision positioning of your content. An audio object can utilize as few, or as many, speakers as defined by the positional and size metadata for that object. Objects can be static or moving and are not constrained to the outside edges of the Dolby Atmos soundfield.

Dolby Atmos Metadata

Program-level metadata is a broad term that describes the metadata that exists across the entire mix (or program), which stays the same for the duration of the mix. This information can influence how the mix sounds, or it can be descriptive. Trim and downmix settings, binaural settings, and bed/object groups are all considered program-level metadata.

Dolby Atmos Renderer

Pro Tools has two modes for mixing in Dolby Atmos, internal and external. The internal mode has the Dolby Atmos renderer built directly into Pro Tools. The external mode leverages a connection to the Dolby Atmos Renderer application, which can be purchased separately.

Internal Renderer

The Pro Tools Dolby Atmos internal renderer supports direct monitoring of the following formats: 9.1.6 and 9.1.4 (Pro Tools Ultimate only), 7.1.4, 7.1.2, 5.1.4, 5.1.2, 7.1, 5.1, 2.0 Direct, 2.0, Binaural. Binaural can be monitored from your main output or sent as an independent headphone mix, letting you maintain a separate monitor format from your speakers. Dolby Atmos integration provides "unlimited" re-renders in any supported monitoring format. It also provides two independent live re-renders that can be used either for loudness metering with your choice of plugin (or as an additional 5.1 or 2.0 send/print of the mix) or for separate headphone monitoring (stereo or binaural) respectively.

The internal renderer uses the same rendering algorithm as the Dolby Atmos Renderer application. Cinema users should continue to use the Dolby Atmos Renderer for Cinema.

External Renderer

Pro Tools also supports the external Dolby Atmos Renderer application, and you can easily toggle between the Internal and External modes. You may decide that the built-in Dolby Atmos renderer meets your needs most of the time, but there are a few use cases where the separate Dolby Atmos Renderer application is required. You may also find yourself in a situation where a session needs to travel between a system configured with the Dolby Atmos Renderer application and a system with the built-in Dolby Atmos renderer. For more information, see "Reasons to Use an External Renderer" on page 1719.

“3D” Multichannel Formats

A Dolby Atmos bed supports up to a maximum channel width of 7.1.2. While 7.0 and 7.1 are standard surround channel widths (in this case, 7 surround channels and an optional LFE channel for low frequency content played back though a sub-woofer), the additional “.2” indicates another two audio channels that are mixed to stereo (left and right) overhead speakers (or speaker groups). This adds the dimension of height to surround sound for truly three-dimensional audio. While 7.1.2 beds are sufficient for most channel-based mixing needs, some plugins, such as reverbs and delays, may want to take full advantage of the ceiling space. Pro Tools supports channel configurations with additional height speakers, such as 5.0.4 to 9.1.6. While these cannot be sent directly to an external renderer, it is possible to use statically panned

objects to send the additional height speakers to the Dolby Atmos renderer. Depending on your system configuration, the internal renderer supports up to 9.1.6 monitoring. Pro Tools provides track presets to aid with these configurations.

All height channels in immersive surround formats have the channel positions against the edges of the room to take full advantage of the three dimensional space. Sound is heard immediately if panned inward on the ceiling. Note that 7.1.2 height channels have a slightly different pan law, as specified by Dolby for use with beds feeding the Dolby Atmos renderer (internal or external). Signal on the ceiling does not pan into the middle of the room until you have reached a quarter of the distance inward.

Mixing to Dolby Atmos with Pro Tools Ultimate or Studio

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio both provide the following features supporting mixing to a Dolby Atmos renderer (internal or external):

- Up to 7.1.2 channel width for direct routing of beds to the Dolby Atmos renderer.
- Up to 7.1.6 (Pro Tools Studio) and up to 9.1.6 (Pro Tools Ultimate) for advanced mixing configurations being sent to the Dolby Atmos renderer, as well as monitoring returns and re-renders.
- Mapping to dedicated Dolby Atmos Renderer Inputs in the I/O Setup.
- Object view for mono and stereo audio, Auxiliary Input, Routing Folders, and Instrument tracks.
- Automated switching between assigned track Output and an Object output path for mono and stereo audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks.
- Object panning of mono and stereo sources.
- 3D “Theater” panning view.
- Enhanced object re-recording (dubbing) workflows.

Dolby provides both hardware and software solutions for rendering and mastering a Dolby Atmos mix. You can run the Dolby Atmos Renderer on the same machine as Pro Tools (Mac only), or on a separate machine. Contact Dolby for complete information about Dolby Atmos product solutions.

Pro Tools Restrictions when Mixing to Dolby Atmos

When you create a Pro Tools session for Dolby Atmos workflows, the following restrictions apply:

Use 48 kHz or 96 kHz Session Sample Rates

If working with different sample rates during sound creation or premixing, convert the session sample rate to 48 kHz or 96 kHz before working with a Dolby Atmos renderer.

Only Use a Supported Session Timecode Rate

For home theater workflows, the Dolby Atmos renderer supports mixing and creating masters at the following timecode rates: 23.976, 24, 25, 29.97, 29.97 drop frame, and 30 frames per second (fps).

Set the Hardware Buffer Size to 1,024 Samples (Recommended)

Sessions used to author Dolby Atmos mixes tend to be very large and processor intensive. Using the highest available Hardware Buffer Size setting is recommended for optimal performance and reliability on your Pro Tools system.

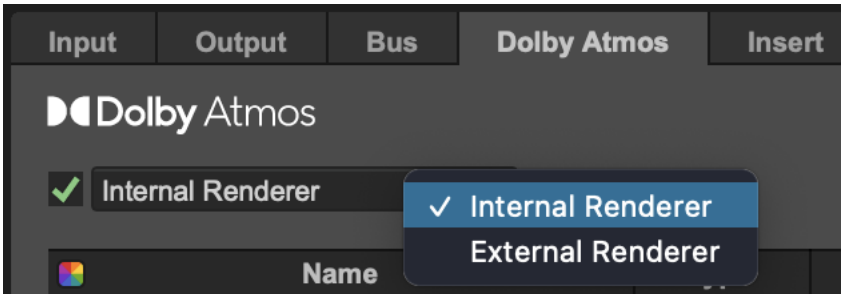
Enabling the Internal Renderer

Pro Tools provides an internal Dolby Atmos renderer. Enable the **`Internal Renderer`** and configure I/O Setup to access the Dolby Atmos Renderer window.

The internal renderer is not supported with the HDX Classic Playback Engine.

To enable the internal renderer:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O** and click the **Dolby Atmos** tab.
2. Enable and select **Internal Renderer**.



I/O Setup, Dolby Atmos: selecting Internal Renderer

3. Click **Default** to create the default Bed and Objects (mono or stereo).
4. Configure the rest of the I/O Setup as desired.
5. Click **OK**.

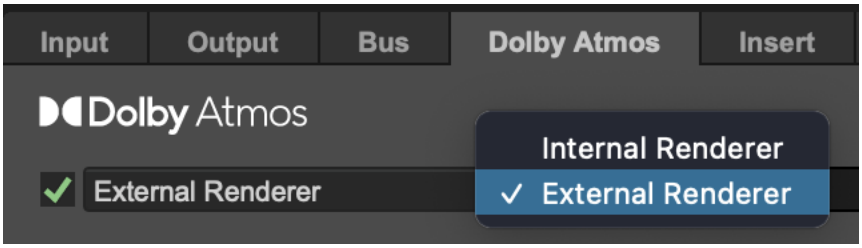
See "Dolby Atmos Renderer Window" on page 1748.

Enabling the External Renderer

The Dolby Atmos page in the I/O Setup lets you configure the network connections required for sending Dolby Atmos metadata between Pro Tools and an external Dolby Atmos renderer, which can be either local or remote on the network.

To setup the network connection between Pro Tools and an external Dolby Atmos renderer:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click the **Dolby Atmos** tab.
3. Enable and select **External Renderer**.



I/O Setup, Dolby Atmos: selecting External Renderer

4. Specify the Dolby Atmos Renderer host in the **Dolby Atmos Renderer Host** field by doing one of the following (if there is more than one Dolby Atmos renderer on the network, make sure you specify the correct one for the Pro Tools system):
   - Enter the IP Address for the Dolby Atmos renderer on the network with an audio connection to your Pro Tools system.
   - Click the **Dolby Atmos Renderer Host** drop-down selector to see a list of Dolby Atmos renderers (or other Dolby Atmos rendering and mastering workstations) identified on the

network and select one that has an audio connection to your Pro Tools system.

- If your Pro Tools machine is using a software Dolby Atmos renderer locally, type **localhost** or select it from the drop-down selector.

The **Connection Status** indicator lights solid if the connection is successful. It flashes on and off if the connection is not successful. You can still work on the session even if not connected to the Dolby Atmos renderer, but **Enable** must be selected.

5. If desired, enable **Link Object and Audio Rendering** in the Preferences (see "Mixing Preferences" on page 155).
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the I/O Setup dialog.

Reasons to Use an External Renderer

The decision to use the built-in Dolby Atmos renderer as opposed to the Dolby Atmos Renderer application is purely dependent on your workflow needs. To help you decide what is right for you, here are some reasons why you still may require the external Dolby Atmos renderer:

- Dolby Atmos Music Panner support
- Support for larger post-production workflows like dubbing using multi-system configurations and object metadata recording
- Recording and punching into a .atmos file
- Export of MP4 files
- Built-in room correction tools
- Additional speaker configurations (beyond 9.1.6, 7.1.4, 5.1.4, 5.1.2, 7.1, 5.1, 2.0, Binaural)
- Speaker array mode
- Ability to monitor live re-renders beyond what is currently supported by the internal renderer.

Configuring Pro Tools Using Core Audio with the Dolby Atmos Renderer

(macOS only) Pro Tools supports up to 130 outputs with Core Audio when used in conjunction with the Dolby Atmos renderer (input support with Core Audio is limited to 64 channels with Pro Tools Studio and 256 channels with Pro Tools Ultimate).

32 channels).

Using Core Audio Outputs with Pro Tools and Dolby Atmos Renderer

To configure Dolby Atmos renderer and Pro Tools with increased output channel counts:

1. Install the Dolby Atmos Renderer, version 3 or higher.
2. Launch the Dolby Atmos Renderer.app.
3. Open the Dolby Atmos Renderer Preferences.
4. Set the **Audio Driver** to **Core Audio**.
5. Set the **Audio Input** to **Dolby Audio Bridge** (Mac only).
6. Set the **Audio Output** to the device that you will use for monitoring (which can be HDX using Core Audio, or any other Core Audio device).
7. Confirm and close the Preferences.
8. Leave the Dolby Atmos Renderer application running.

9. Launch Pro Tools.
10. Choose **Setup > Playback Engine**.
11. For **Playback Engine**, select **Dolby Audio Bridge**.
12. The recommended **Hardware Buffer Size** is dependent on the session sample rate: 1,024 samples for a 48 kHz session or 2,048 samples for a 96 kHz session.
13. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the Playback Engine dialog.
14. Choose **Setup > I/O** and click the **Dolby Atmos** tab.
15. Enable and select **External Renderer**.
16. Connect to the Dolby Atmos Renderer application, type **localhost** or select it from the drop-down selector.
17. Configure the rest of the I/O Setup as desired.
18. Click **OK**.

The Dolby Atmos Renderer and Pro Tools are now configured to use up to 130 output channels with Core Audio.

Dolby Atmos Page Sub-paths

Pro Tools lets you create sub-paths for Dolby Atmos beds (objects are only stereo or mono and do not support custom subpaths).

To create subpaths for a Dobly Atmos bed:

1. On the Dolby Atmos page of the I/O Setup, select the Dolby Atmos bed for which you want to create sub-paths.
2. Click **New Sub-Path**.
3. Configure the New Sub-Paths dialog as desired and click **Create**.

Configuring Session Setup for Dolby Atmos

To configure the Session Setup for Dolby Atmos:

1. Choose **Setup > Session**.
2. In the Format section, set **Timecode Rate** to the appropriate supported Timecode rate for mixing:
   - For home theater workflows, the Dolby Atmos renderer supports mixing and creating masters at the following timecode rates: 23.976, 24, 25, 29.97, 29.97 drop frame, and 30 frames per second (fps).
   - For cinema workflows using the RMU v1.6x, the Dolby Atmos renderer supports creating masters at 24 fps only.
3. If mixing with a 24 fps session, in the Timecode Settings section, do the following:
   a. Set **Audio Rate Pull Up/Down** to **None**.
   b. Set **Video Rate Pull Up/Down** to **None**.

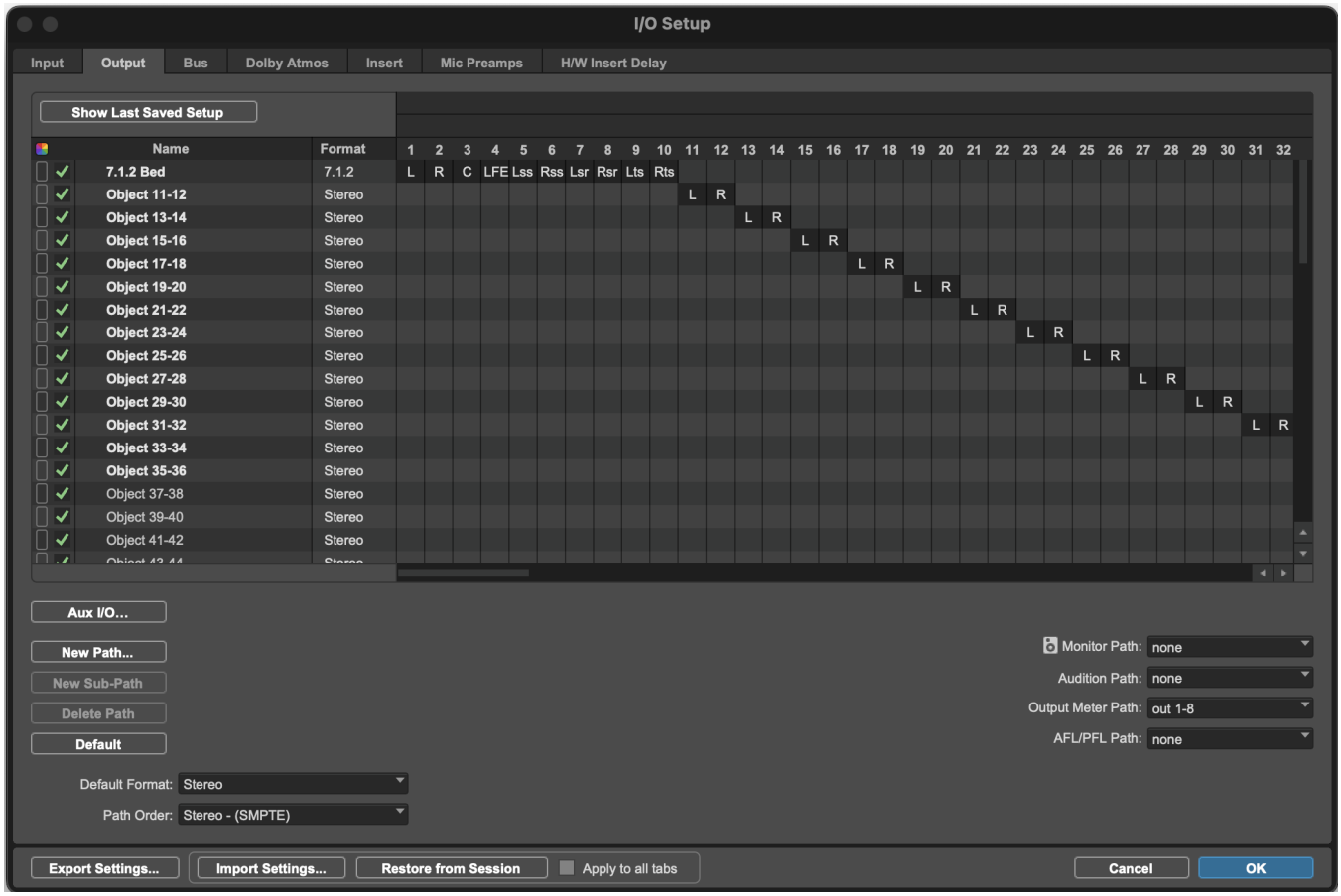
Configuring the I/O Setup for Dolby Atmos

Configure the I/O Setup according to the needs of where and how your Pro Tools system fits into the larger Dolby Atmos workflow.

For additional information about configuring and using Pro Tools with the Dolby Atmos renderer, see the Dolby documentation included with your Dolby Atmos Renderer software.

Output Page

Configure the **Output** page of the I/O Setup for routing beds and objects to an external renderer, for monitoring the output of the internal renderer, or for monitoring returns from an external renderer.



I/O Setup, Output page configured for playback to a Dolby Atmos Renderer

Manually Creating and Configuring Dolby Atmos Paths for External Renderer Workflows

To manually create and configure a custom Dolby Atmos path:

1. In the Output page, create outputs for Beds and Objects that match the Input Configuration of the connected renderer. In the New Path dialog, disable the Auto-create related bus paths option to prevent buses from being created in the Bus page.
2. Create a matching set of Bed and Object paths in the Dolby Atmos page, and map the newly created paths to the corresponding output paths.

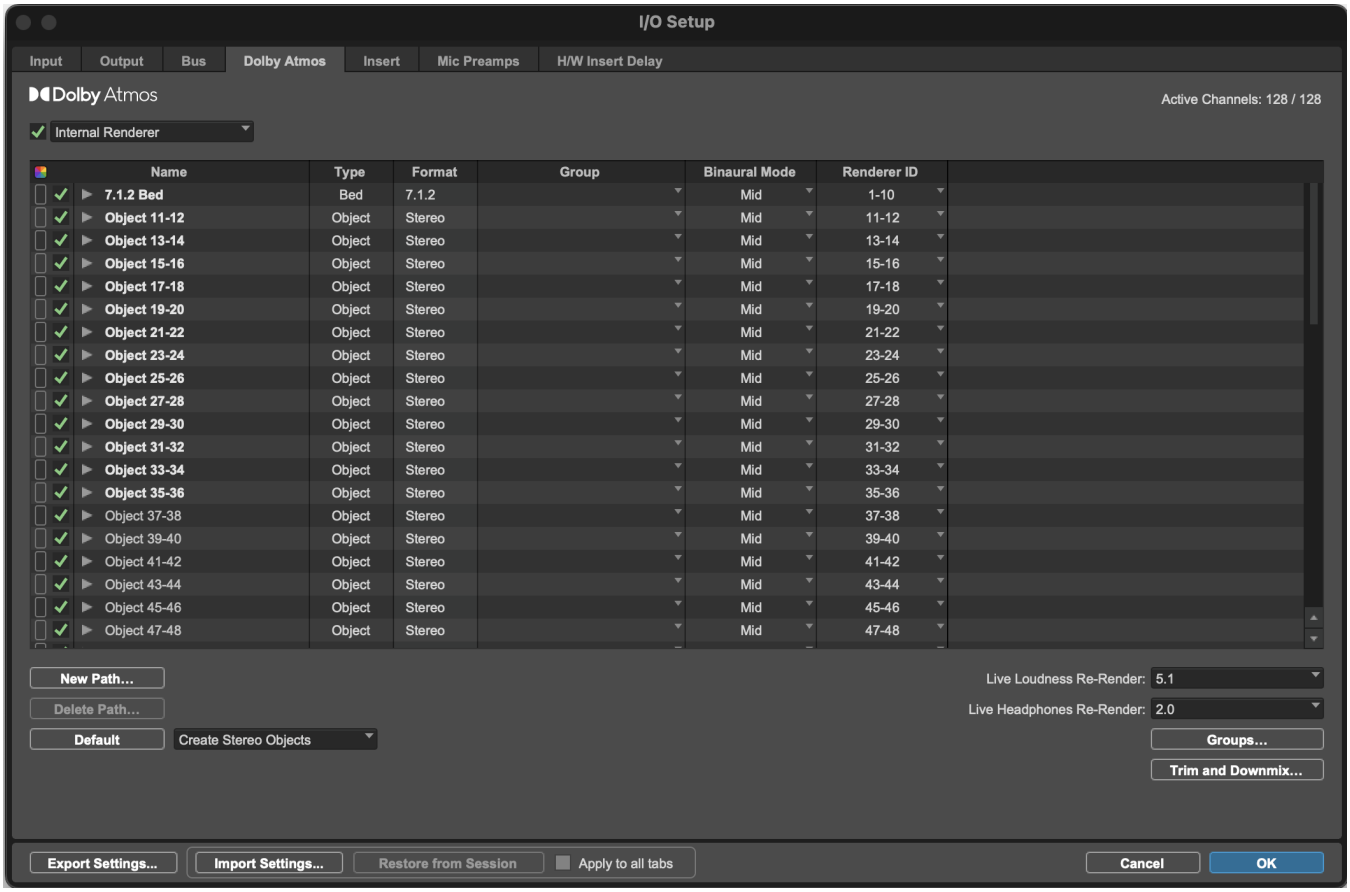
   Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) a checkbox in the Mapping to Output column to automatically map all matching paths at once.

3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the I/O Setup dialog.

If desired, enable Link Object and Audio Rendering in the Preferences (see "Mixing Preferences" on page 155).

Dolby Atmos Page

Configure the **Dolby Atmos** page of the I/O Setup for Dolby Atmos mixing and monitoring using the **Internal Renderer** or an **External Renderer**.



I/O Setup, Dolby Atmos page

Column Displays and Controls

The columns on the Dolby Atmos page provide both controls and displays for each of the rows of Bed and Object paths. Note that when **External Renderer** is selected, there is also a column for Mapping to Outputs (which is also available in the Bus page of the I/O Setup).

Color

Displays the color for the bed or object path. Click to select a color for the path from the color palette. Path colors follow the color of any assigned Dolby Atmos group if not otherwise specified.

Path Enable/Disable

Click to select (or deselect) and enable (or disable) a path.

Name

Displays the path name and provides the input description that is added to an exported ADM file. Double-click to rename the path. Beds and Objects that are used in the session are in bold. Path names can be displayed as text on the Object indicators in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window (see "Show Options" on page 1753).

Type

Displays Bed or Object according to the path type.

Format

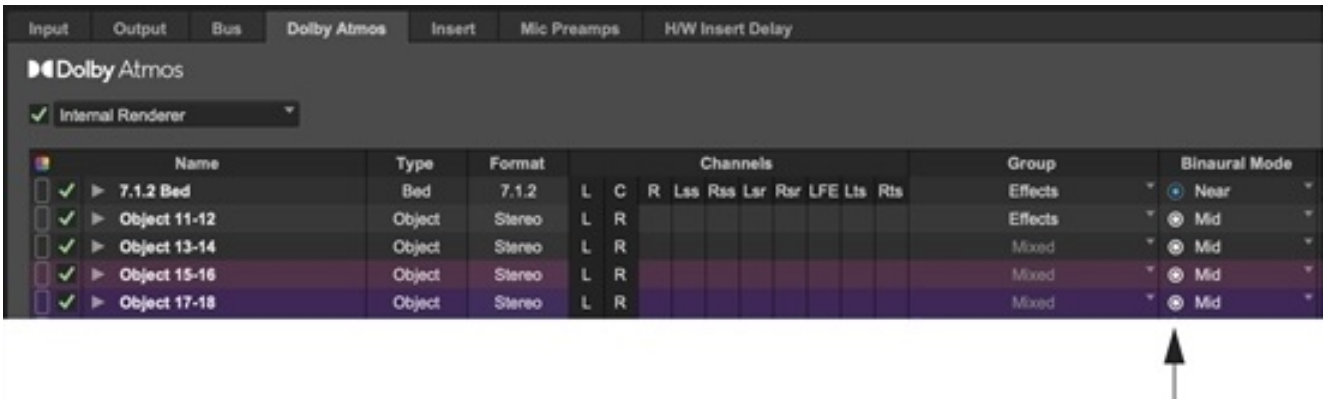
Displays the channel width of the path (which is defined upon path creation).

Group

Displays the currently selected group name, if any, and lets you select from existing groups (see "Bed/Object Groups" on page 1726).

Binaural Mode

Binaural icons are shown in the Internal Dolby Atmos tab of I/O Setup (Internal Renderer only). Select from the various Binaural distance model settings (**`Off`**, **`Near`**, **`Mid`**, and **`Far`**) to apply varying levels of spatialization to each of the bed or object channels. For more information, see "Binaural Render Mode" on page 1767.



Binaural Mode is only available when using the Internal Renderer. It does not apply to any connected External Renderer nor is it used when bouncing an ADM or re-renders when using an External Renderer.

Renderer ID

Dolby Atmos supports up to 128 channels of audio. Pro Tools identifies each one of these channels with an ID. Each object must have a unique ID. Beds, however, can share an ID or have an independent ID.

In most cases it is recommended to use the automatically assigned ID, which is uniquely assigned upon path creation. There are times, such as after importing session data, where you must manually manage the IDs due to conflicts from the incoming paths. For more advanced workflows you may want to overlap the bed IDs to consolidate the number of channels, but still allow different groups to be assigned to different beds. This provides more flexibility when using group assignments to select which elements of the mix are included with bounced re-renders.

Mapping to Output

(External Renderer Only) Displays the selected Output mapping for each Bed and Object path. Lets you select an available Output path mapped to the external renderer for each Bed and Object.

In earlier versions of Pro Tools, Mapping to Output for Dolby Atmos was on the Bus page. Note that previously mapped buses remain mapped when you open with a legacy session.

Internal/External Renderer Controls

On the Dolby Atmos page, controls for selecting and configuring the renderer vary depending on whether **`Internal Renderer`** or **`External Renderer`** is selected.

Enable Renderer

Select (or deselect) to enable (or disable) the specified renderer (Internal or External). This option must be selected to mix to Dolby Atmos regardless of whether you are connected to a renderer.

Internal/External Renderer

Select **Internal Renderer** or **External Renderer**. When **External Renderer** is selected, additional renderer configuration options are displayed.

When switching between an external and the internal renderer, any outputs mapped to external renderer paths are automatically de-activated. Then when switching back to Internal mode, these outputs are re-activated. You need to manually disable any overlapping paths before closing I/O Setup.

Renderer Host

(External Renderer Only) Enter the IP Address for the External Dolby Atmos Renderer on the network that you want to use or select it from the from the drop-down list. Enter localhost if you are mixing to the Dolby Atmos Renderer application locally.

Connection Status

(External Renderer Only) When Pro Tools is successfully connected to an external Dolby Atmos renderer, the Connection Status indicator lights solid. This indicator flashes on and off when Dolby Atmos is enabled, but the connection fails and Pro Tools is unable to communicate with the renderer. If Dolby Atmos is not enabled, the Connection Status indicator remains unlit.

Default

(Internal Renderer Only) Click the **Default** button to create the default Bed and Object paths.

Create Mono or Stereo Objects

Select either **Create Mono Objects** or **Create Stereo Objects** to create new mono or stereo object paths in the **Dolby Atmos** page of the I/O Setup. When clicking **Default**, all new Object paths will be created as either mono or stereo accordingly.

Pull Config

(External Renderer Only) **Pull Config** takes the place of the Default button when **External Renderer** is selected. Click the Pull Config button to have Pro Tools check the currently connected renderer and create beds and objects that resemble the Input Configuration of the Dolby Atmos Renderer application. Binaural and group assignments are pulled over for each of the paths, and the Input descriptions are used for the path names. Pulling the configuration from the renderer also creates any needed Output paths and automatically maps them to the beds and objects in the Dolby Atmos tab.

Trim and Downmix information is also pulled over and stored even though it is not utilized when **External Renderer** is selected. This information is available in the Trim and Downmix window if you switch to the internal renderer.

If there is an active connection to the Dolby Atmos Renderer application, enabling Dolby Audio Bridge as an Aux IO output device will automatically pull from the renderer and create the necessary output paths directly under the Dolby Audio Bridge I/O.

Create Stereo/Mono Objects

The Dolby Atmos Renderer application does not have a notion of stereo objects. Select either Create Mono Objects or Create Stereo Objects to create new mono or stereo object paths. Pro Tools creates the paths in the Dolby Atmos page. When Stereo is selected, pulling the configuration groups any objects with consecutive IDs in stereo pairs where possible.

If you have a custom set of mono and stereo objects, it is recommended that you create all necessary Dolby Atmos and Output paths manually.

Live Re-Render Paths

(Internal Renderer Only) Re-renders are copies of the mix, in addition to your main monitoring. In some cases, they may be generated using a different format, or contain only a subset of the sound elements. Pro Tools supports two different kinds of re-renders, offline and live.

Offline re-renders are available when using the internal or external renderer. They are used and configurable from the Bounce Mix window (see "Bounce Mix, Metadata, and ADM/Re-render Files" on page 1780).

Live re-renders in Pro Tools are only available when using the internal renderer. They are configurable from I/O Setup or from the Dolby Atmos Renderer window. Two simultaneous stock live re-renders are available for Loudness metering and Headphone monitoring respectively. Custom live re-renders can be configured separately. Live re-renders appear in a 're-renders' submenu on the input of tracks with a compatible width.

Live re-renders are copies of the main monitor mix and are affected by the mute buttons in the Dolby Atmos Renderer Window.

Live Custom Re-renders

Unlimited custom re-renders can be configured with specific formats and contents (see "Stock and Custom Re-Renders" on page 1777).

Live Loudness Re-render

Loudness is calculated from the 5.1 copy of the mix only, not the stereo copy. Loudness is calculated from the 5.1 copy of the mix only, not the stereo copy. You can use a third-party loudness metering plugin, or use this re-render to print the downmix in your session. Select the desired path format (or **Disabled**) for loudness metering of the live re-render: 2.0 Direct, 2.0, or 5.1. This path can be assigned to the input of a track where you can use a loudness metering plugin.

Live Headphones Re-render

Provides a Binaural, 2.0 Direct, or 2.0 copy of the mix. Route to headphones from an output that is different from your main monitors. Select either Binaural, 2.0 Direct, or 2.0 (or Disabled) for headphone monitoring.

If your main monitor is set to Binaural, your headphone re-renders must also be set to Binaural.

Groups

Click the **Groups** button to open the Groups dialog (see "Bed/Object Groups" on the next page). Groups are used to tag elements of the mix. In post-production, they are often used to assign beds and objects to the various stems by category (dialog, music, effects, and so on), but you can use them for any creative purpose you want. Groups can be used when bouncing re-renders, letting you create mixes that only contain elements that are tagged with the specific Group assignments.

Trim and Downmix

(Internal Renderer Only) Click the **Trim and Downmix** button to open the Trim and Downmix dialog (see "Trim and Downmix" on page 1762). Note that the text on this button lights orange if the currently open session has different settings than your New Session Defaults.

Bed/Object Groups

The Dolby Atmos renderer and Pro Tools both let you create, edit, and manage Bed/Object Groups. This is useful for categorizing beds and objects into different groups (such as FX or Foley) that can be used for creating re-renders in the Dolby Atmos renderer. You can assign individual bed and object buses to Bed/Object Groups.

Groups are often used to derive re-render mixes with the Dolby Atmos renderer. You can create specific renderings of various groups to a designated channel width. For example, you can render out Music and FX groups to a 5.1 mix directly from the Dolby Atmos renderer using groups as a filtering mechanism. Additionally, group names can be used as prefixes or suffixes on track names in Pro Tools when re-importing an ADM file. This can serve a great organizational cue to orient yourself with a fresh ADM import.

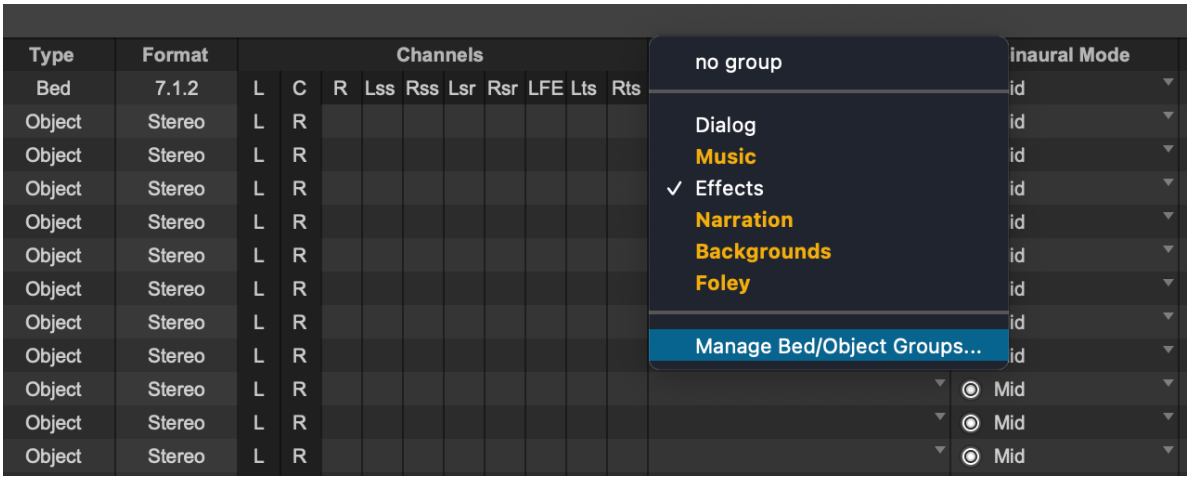
Note that the Dolby Atmos RMU does not send its group list to Pro Tools like the Dolby Atmos Renderer application does. If you want to add group information into an ADM file when working with the Dolby Atmos RMU, manage groups with Pro Tools and create/assign the Bed/Object groups you need. Additionally, bed descriptions are not carried over into Pro Tools or the resulting ADM file when working with the Dolby Atmos RMU, but object descriptions are. Both are carried over when using the Dolby Atmos Renderer application.

Bed/Object Group Management

Pro Tools manages a list of Groups that you can define. When using an External Renderer, additions or changes to these groups are not reflected in the renderer, but you can add them to the Pro Tools list when pulling the configuration. The Pro Tools Group list is used for generating re-renders, and it is also included in any resulting ADM files.

To manage Bed/Object Groups in Pro Tools:

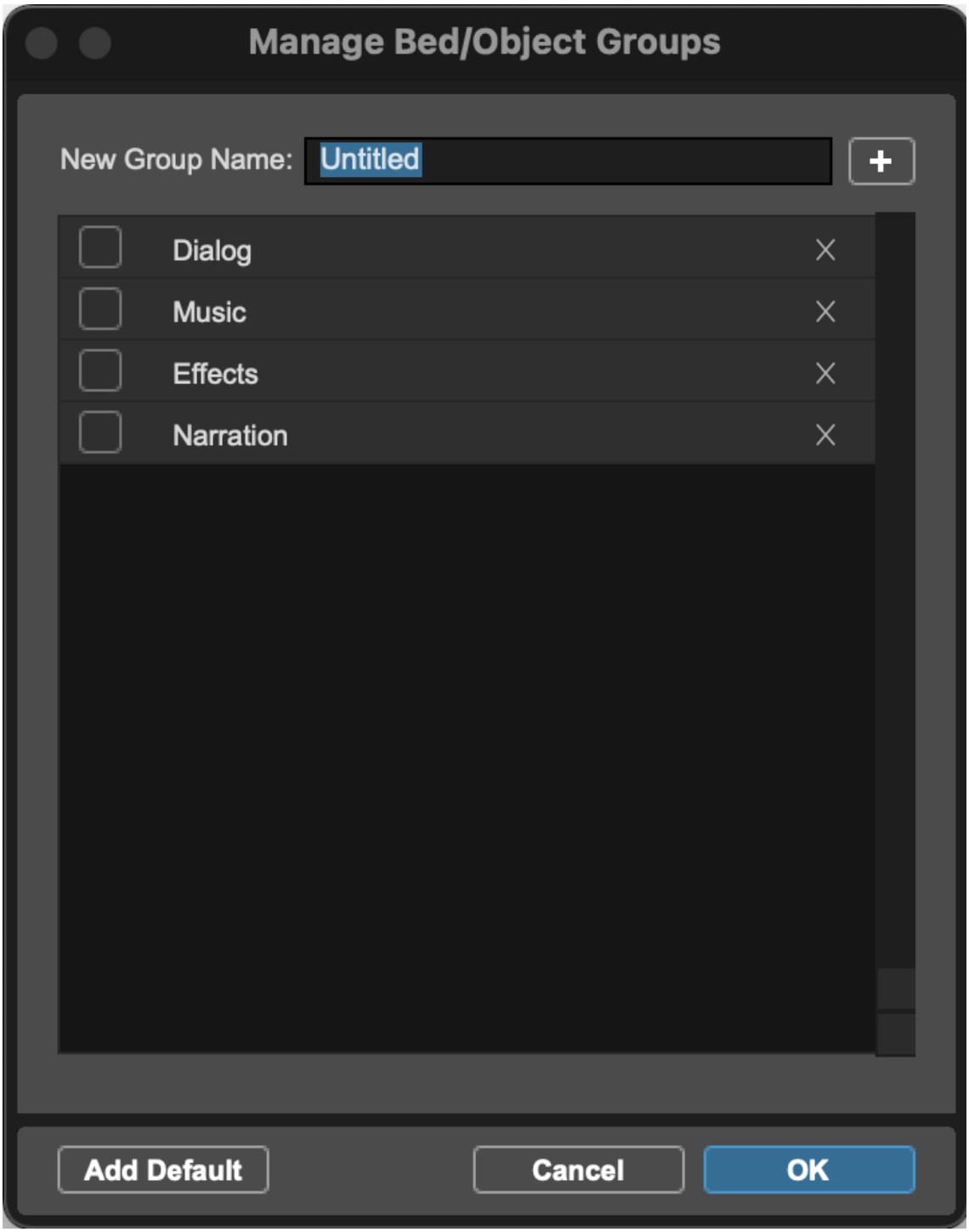
1. Open the I/O Setup (**`Setup > I/O`**) and click the **`Dolby Atmos`** tab.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the **`Groups`** button.
   - In the **`Bed/Object Group`** column, click the selector in any row and choose **`Manage Bed/Object Groups`**.



I/O Setup, Dolby Atmos page, selecting Manage Bed/Object Groups

3. Pro Tools does not start with any Groups, but you can click Add Default to add a default set:

- Dialog
- Music
- Effects
- Narration
- Backgrounds
- Foley



Manage Bed/Object Groups dialog

4. If you are using the internal renderer, you can do any of the following:

- Type a name for a New Group and click the "+" button or press enter to add it to the Groups list.
- Click the name of a group in the list and type to rename it.
- Click the "X" to the right of the name of a group in the list to delete it.
- Color code groups.

5. Do either of the following:
   - Click **Cancel** to close the dialog without making any changes.
   - Click **OK** to close the dialog and save your changes.

Bed/Object Group Assignments

Use the Group column in the Dolby Atmos Tab to define groups. When bouncing to ADM BWF, group assignments currently reflected in the Pro Tools I/O Setup are included in the file.

To assign a Bed or Object bus to a group:

1. Open the I/O Setup (**Setup > I/O**) and click the **Dolby Atmos** tab.
2. In the **Group** column, click the selector for the bus you want to assign.
3. Select the desired group name (such as **FX**). To remove a bus from a group, select **no group**.

Groups Color Coding

The Manage Bed/Object Groups dialog includes the option to color code Dolby Atmos Groups. Dolby Atmos Bed and Object paths inherit the assigned Group color unless you have uniquely assigned a color to a Bed or Object path.

To open the Manage Bed/Object Groups dialog:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O** and click the **Dolby Atmos** tab.
2. Click the **Groups** button.

The Groups list is empty by default, but you can add the default post-production set by clicking the Add Default button, or type a New Group Name and click the Plus (+) button to add custom groups one at a time.

To assign a color to a group:

1. In the Manage Bed/Object Groups dialog, click the Color icon to the left of the group name in the list.
2. From the resulting Color Palette, click to select the desired color. Bed and object paths inherit the Group color if the path does not already contain an explicit color assignment.
3. Click **OK**.

Clear Unused Dolby Atmos Groups

Pro Tools lets you clear unused Dolby Atmos Groups in a session. This is useful for maintaining a manageable number of groups after importing other sessions in shared workflow environments.

To clear unused Dolby Atmos Groups in a session:

1. Open the Dolby Atmos Groups dialog.
2. Click **Clear Unused**.
3. Click **OK**.

Mixing Bed Material

While you can directly output the bed mix in the renderer (internal or external), you can also mix bed material for a Dolby Atmos mix to 7.1.2. Bus record the bed mix to a 7.1.2 audio track in preparation for playback and mixing to a Dolby Atmos renderer.



Example Bed mix

To configure a Pro Tools session for mixing bed material (7.1.2 example):

1. In the Output page of the I/O Setup, create a 7.1.2 Output path assigned to the first ten physical outputs of your audio interface (for monitoring the mix with a 7.1.2 speaker configuration).
2. In the Bus page of the I/O setup, create a 7.1.2 bus and map it to the 7.1.2 output (“Bed Monitor”).
3. Then map that 7.1.2 output bus to the first 10 inputs of the Dolby Atmos renderer.
4. Create another 7.1.2 bus with the **`Auto-create sub-paths`** option enabled (“Bed Mix”).
5. Create a new 7.1.2 audio track.
6. Assign the 7.1.2 track Output to the 7.1.2 Bed output path (“Bed Monitor”).
7. Assign the 7.1.2 track Input to the 7.1.2 internal bus (“Bed Mix”).
8. Create as many new tracks as needed for source audio.
9. Assign the track Output for each source track to the 7.1.2 internal bus (“Bed Mix”).
10. Enable Input monitor on the 7.1.2 audio track.
11. Mix the audio on the source tracks to the 7.1.2 audio track using volume and pan automation.

Object Names and Properties

Object descriptions defined on the Dolby Atmos renderer are displayed in the Dolby Atmos page after pulling the input configuration.

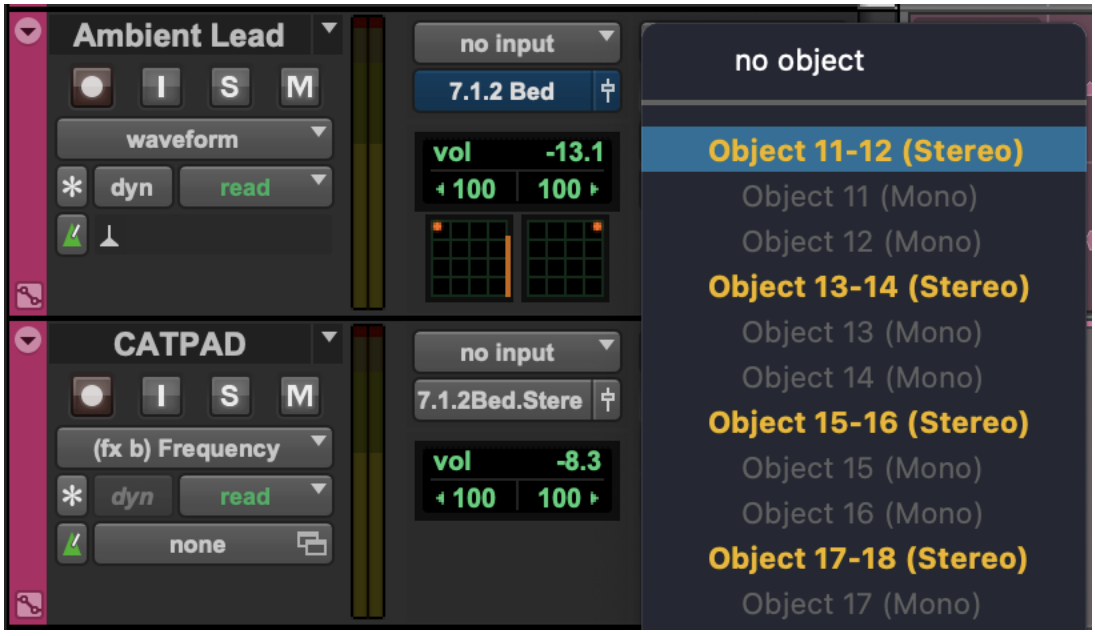
Track Object Output Assignment

After you have created Objects in the Dolby Atmos page of the I/O Setup, you can assign any single mono (or stereo) audio, Auxiliary Input, or Instrument track to a unique object output path.

To assign a new track to an object output path:

1. Create a new mono (or stereo) audio, Auxiliary Input, or Instrument track.
2. Show Object view in the Edit or Mix window (see "Object View in the Edit and Mix Windows" on page 1732).
3. From the Object Output Path selector in Object view, select the desired available object output path (see "Object Path Selector" on page 1734).

Object output paths are only available if they match the track channel width (mono or stereo).



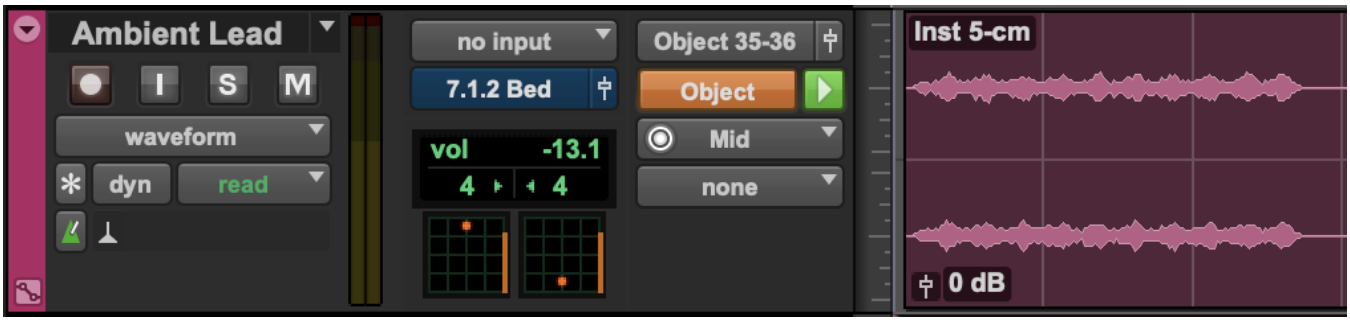
Selecting an object output path for a mono audio track

Toggle the track to **Object** to bypass the track Output entirely and send track audio directly to the Dolby Atmos renderer (see "Bus/Object Toggle" on page 1734).

Bus Output

When a track is toggled to **Bus**, track audio follows the selected Output path (in I/O view) but, for example, a 7.1.2 object panner appears in the track Output window, as well as in the track I/O view in the Edit and Mix windows. The channel width of the selected Output path persists, but its panning is now controlled by the 7.1.2 object panner.

Object Output



Audio track set to Object

When a track is toggled to **Object**, track audio follows the selected object output path (in Object view) and the track Output (in I/O view) is completely bypassed. The track audio follows the assigned object output path.

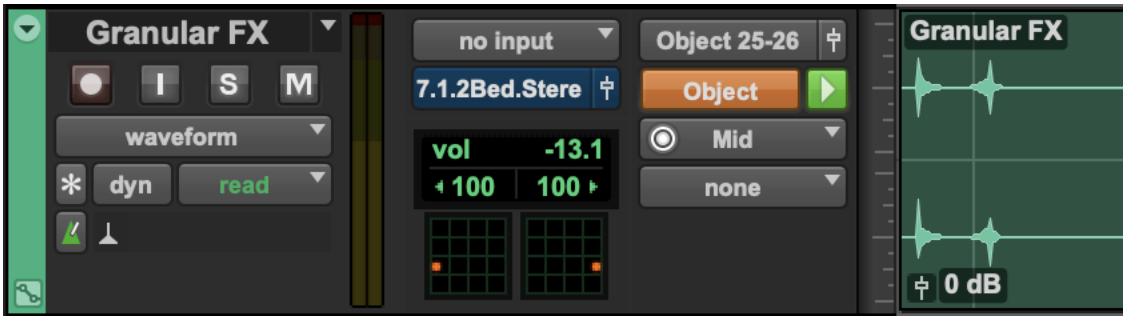
The Object panner appears in the track Output window, as well as in the track I/O view in the Edit and Mix windows. All pan controls are available and automatable, but no panning is applied to the track audio in Pro Tools. Rather, Pro Tools converts pan automation to Dolby Atmos metadata, which is sent to the Dolby Atmos renderer.

Object View in the Edit and Mix Windows

Edit and Mix Window Object view provides Object controls for audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks (mono and stereo only). In the Edit window, these controls appear between the **I/O** column and the **Real-Time Properties** column of all Track and Ruler views. In the Mix window, these controls appear between the **I/O** selectors and the **Auto** selector. Object view can be shown or hidden independently in both the Edit and Mix windows.

To show (or hide) the Edit Window Object view, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **View > Edit Window Views > Object**.
- From the Edit Window View selector, enable (or disable) **Object**.



Object Track view, Edit window

To show (or hide) the Object controls in the Mix window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **View > Mix Window Views > Object**.
- From the Mix Window View selector, enable (or disable) **Object**.



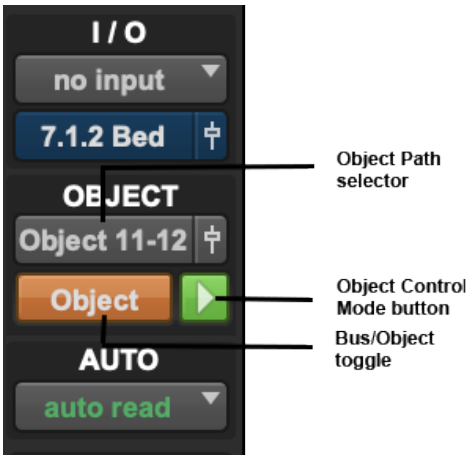
Object view, Mix window

Object Controls

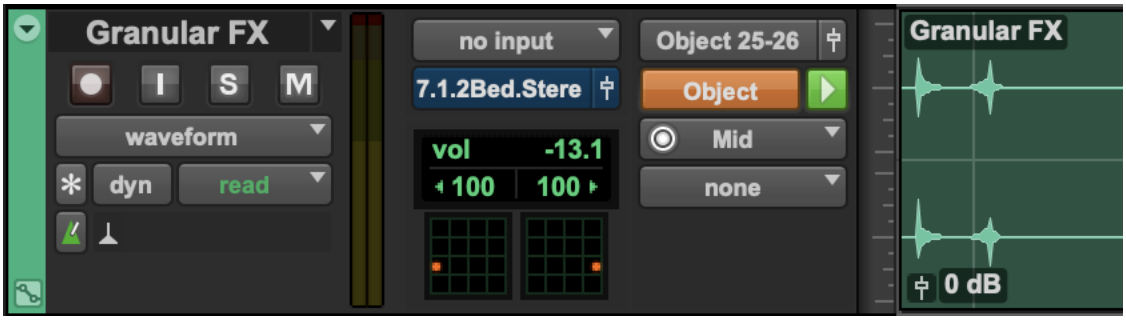
Object controls shown in the Edit and Mix window Object view mirror each other on a track-by-track basis. These controls let you assign audio, Auxiliary Input, and Instrument tracks to object output paths, automate toggling of the track between the Bus and Object output, and set the control mode for object panning metadata. Object controls when using an External renderer are limited compared to when using the Internal renderer.



Object controls in the Mix window, Internal renderer



Object controls in the Mix window, External renderer



Object controls in the Edit window, Internal renderer



Object controls in the Edit window, External renderer

Object Path Selector

The Object Path Selector lets you assign the track to any available object output path (defined in the Bus page of the I/O Setup).



Selecting an object output path for a mono audio track

Output Window Button

The Output Window button in the Object view opens the Output Window for the track.

Bus/Object Toggle

The Bus/Object toggle switches the routing of track audio between the Output selected in the I/O view (**Bus**) and the selected object output path (**Object**).

- When toggled to **Bus**, the track behaves like a normal Pro Tools track. The only exception is that track panning is controlled by the object panner regardless of the channel width of the selected Output.
- When toggled to **Object**, the selected Output in I/O view is completely bypassed and track audio follows the selected object output path to the Dolby Atmos renderer. Also, all pan automation is translated to Dolby Atmos metadata and sent to the Dolby Atmos renderer. No panning automation is applied to the track audio in Pro Tools.

Bus/Object toggle can be automated (see "Object/Bus Toggle Automation" on page 1744).

Object Control Mode

The Object Control Mode button lets you cycle between the three different Master Object Control modes: Master, Record, and Off/Bypass. Click the Object Control Mode button to cycle through and select the Object Control mode.

⚠ **Object pan metadata for a track is only included in an exported BWF ADM file if Object Control Mode is set to Master for that track.**

	Mode	Description	Purpose
	Master	Object assigned, sending metadata	Set by default if no other tracks are already assigned to this object, use this mode to control an object on the Dolby Atmos renderer.
	Record	Object assigned, record mode	Use this mode in a re-recording workflow to record pan automation sent from a Master panner on the network.
	Off/bypass	Object assigned, no metadata being sent	Use this mode to mix multiple tracks of audio to the same object output path. In this workflow, one track set as Master controls the panning, while one or more other tracks with the same object output path assignment but set to Off/bypass feed audio to the object output path but without sending pan metadata.

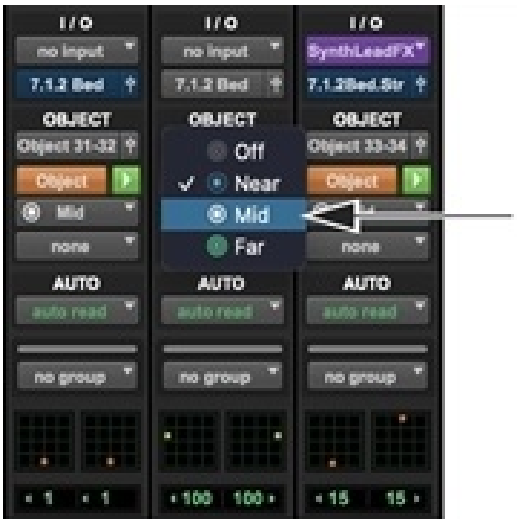
Binaural and Group Settings on Tracks

Pro Tools lets you toggle between Binaural mode and Dolby Atmos Group settings on the Object section of tracks in both the Mix and Edit windows when using the Internal Renderer. Assigning binaural mode settings on tracks lets you change the mode in real-time and directly hear the affect on the mix, without having to stop and visit IO Setup. Assigning the groups on the track lets you categorize the objects or bed assigned to the track more quickly, giving you better context for the assignment. Binaural mode and Group settings are hidden from tracks in External renderer mode.

Binaural Track Settings



Edit Window: Binaural mode settings



Mix Window: Binaural mode settings

Group Track Settings



Edit Window: Group settings



Mix Window: Group setting

This setting is dependent on the Object/Bus state since both an Object and a Bed can be assigned to a track and they might have independent settings. The selector displays **`Mixed`** if sub-paths are assigned to different settings. For example, if a stereo object is assigned to a stereo track, but its mono sub-paths are assigned to different mono tracks and each have different groups and binaural settings.

3D Panner

When a mono or stereo track is assigned to a 5.0.2 to 9.1.6 output bus, or to an object output path, it uses the corresponding 3D panner.



Output window in standard (2D) view for a mono track assigned to a 7.1.2 bus (left) and an Object (right)

Panner Controls and Indicators

The following elements of the Pro Tools Output window are specific to the 3D surround and Object panners. The Output window for each provides the same controls, except that the Object panner additionally provides the Object Output Path selector and the Object Control Mode button, and the x.0.x panner excludes the LFE fader.

Theater Mode

The Pro Tools Panning Mode selector provides the **`Theater`** option, which is only available with the 3D surround and Object panners. When this mode is selected, the panner displays a 3D/Theater view.



Enabling Theater mode

Theater mode provides a 3D room view that can be rotated.

To rotate the room view in Theater mode:

- Move the cursor over the room view and use the scroll-wheel to rotate the room up or down. Scroll all the way down for top-down view.



Theater mode, view rotated to “top-down”

Indication of Height, Proximity, and Location in 3D/Theater Mode

Height

Adjusting the Height value raises or lowers the Height plane. See 1 in "Graphic representation of height, proximity, and location in Theater mode" on the next page.

Proximity

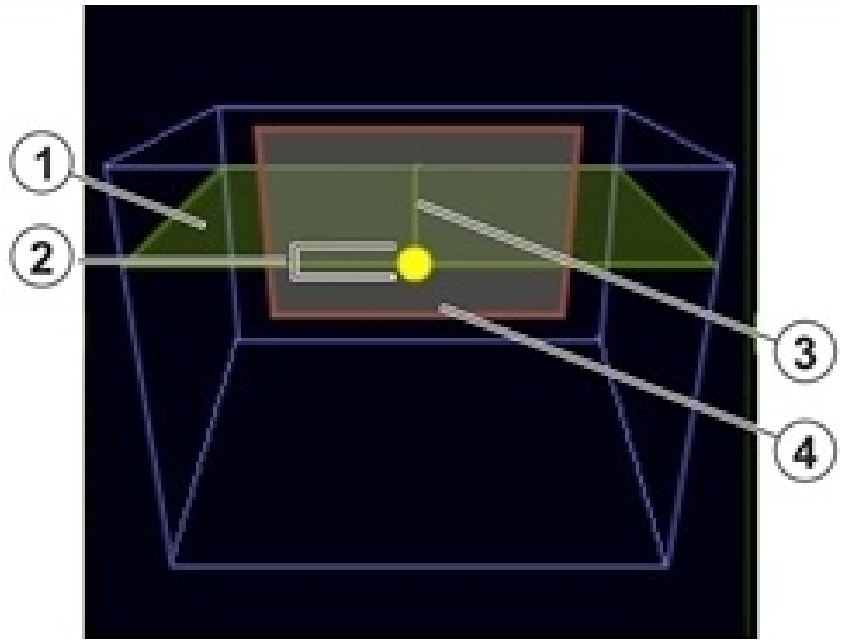
The size of the pan dot indicates proximity (whether the element is closer or further away relative to the current view). The pan dot appears smallest when panned furthest away and largest when panned nearest (see 2 in "Graphic representation of height, proximity, and location in Theater mode" below).

Location

Pan lines appear on the Height plane to indicate Left/Right and Front/Rear location. See 3 in "Graphic representation of height, proximity, and location in Theater mode" below.

Screen

The Screen image provides a visual reference for the front room in all views. See 4 in "Graphic representation of height, proximity, and location in Theater mode" below.



Graphic representation of height, proximity, and location in Theater mode

Height Mode

Sets the Height mode for the track. Choices include FreeForm mode (manual height adjustment), and Wedge, Sphere, and Ceiling modes (automatic height modes). Height mode can be automated.



Height mode and Height Enable

To select the Height mode:

- Click a Height mode icon to select that mode.

To toggle Height on/off:

- Click the Height Enable icon. When lit, Height is enabled (requires FreeForm Height mode).
- Height Enable can be automated.

Control-Click (Mac) or Start-Click (Windows) on a floor-level speaker icon to snap to the speaker location without affecting height.

Height

The Height knob becomes available when FreeForm mode and Height is enabled/active. Height can be automated.

Adjusting Height in standard 2D view displays a vertical bar to the right of the pan grid to indicate relative height of that track. In addition, the size of the pan dot increases as Height is increased.

In Theater mode a colored Height plane shows the current Height value. The size of the pan dot indicates proximity (see "Indication of Height, Proximity, and Location in 3D/Theater Mode" on page 1738).

Zones

The Zones selector sets the speaker Zone (Zone Mask). Choices include All, F/S (front and side), F/R (front and rear), FC/R (front, center and rear), Front, and Rear. Speaker icons surrounding the panner grid appear as appropriate for the current Zone.

For 9.x.x panners, L/R and LW/RW are part of the same zone.



Zones selector

To select the Zone:

- Right-click, or click and hold on the Zones selector and set the Zone.

Zones can be automated.

Size

Increases or decreases the element size. When Size is set to any value above 0/off, a transparent grid (or cube if in 3D/Theater mode) surrounds the pan dot. The grid/cube gets larger as Size is increased, and smaller as it is decreased.



Size indicator in standard 2D view

To change the element Size:

- Adjust the Size knob, or hold down Shift and use the scroll wheel.

Speaker Snap

You can toggle Dolby Atmos Speaker Snap on or off for tracks assigned to an Object.

To enable (or disable) Speaker Snap:

- Click the Speaker Snap icon to toggle on/off.

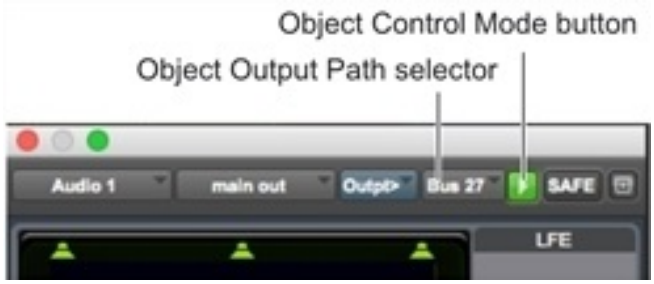


Speaker Snap icon (shown disabled)

Do not confuse Dolby Atmos Speaker Snap with the Pro Tools panner ability to click a speaker icon to "jump" the pan dot to a location.

Object Output Path Selector and Object Control Mode

Across the top of the Output window are the Audio Output Path selector, the Object Output Path selector, and the Object Control button.



Height mode and Height Enable

Available only on tracks assigned to an object output path, these controls let you assign the track to a different Object and configure its Object Control mode, respectively. These controls are also available in Object view in the Edit and Mix windows.

Object Output Path Selector

Click the Object Output Path selector to assign the track to an Object (see "Object Path Selector" on page 1734).

Toggling Object/Bus Assignment

Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Object Output Path selector or the pan dot to toggle the track audio output between the selected Object path or selected track output (output bus). Toggling between object output and bus output assignments can be automated (see "Bus/Object Toggle" on page 1734).

Object Control

Click the Object Control mode button to cycle through and select the Object Control mode (see "Object Control Mode" on page 1734).

Object/Bus Assignment and Automation Mode Indication

The Pan Dot control in Output windows, and in the graphic panner in I/O view on tracks in both the Edit and Mix windows changes color to show whether track audio follows the selected output bus path shown in the I/O view or the selected object output path shown in the Object view as well whether the Track Automation mode is set to Read, any Write mode, or is Off.

Pan Dot Color Indication

Pan Dot Color	Object/Bus	Automation Mode
Green	Bus	Read
Orange	Object	Read
Red	Any	Any Write mode
Yellow	Any	Off
Gray	Object, but off/bypassed	

About Object Bypass

Bypass can be used to establish a workflow where multiple source tracks are assigned to the same object but only one of them is sending pan metadata to control the panning on the Dolby Atmos renderer. For more information, see "Dolby Atmos PEC/DIR Recorder Workflow Example" on page 1769.

Object/Bus Toggle Automation

The Object/Bus Toggle setting can be automated on object tracks. To be able to write Object/Bus Toggle automation for all Object tracks in the session, ensure that it is enabled in the Automation window. If you want to ensure that no Object/Bus Toggle automation is written at all, or if want to ensure that existing Object/Bus Toggle automation is not over-written, disable it in the Automation window.



Object/Bus toggle (shown disabled) in the Automation window.

Auto-Height Overrides Height Automation Option

With multichannel panning automation, Pro Tools lets you re-purpose existing Front, Rear, and Front/Rear pan automation for Height automation when mixing to Dolby Atmos (7.0.2 or 7.1.2). When this option is enabled, the selected auto-height mode overrides any Height automation, generating new height automation automatically. This way you don't have to re-write all new automation when opening existing 5.1 or 7.1 sessions and re-mixing them for Dolby Atmos (7.0.2 or 7.1.2 panning).

The Auto-Height Overrides Height Automation option defaults to on if the track already has a main output assignment prior to assigning an object output (assuming a re-use workflow). This option defaults to off when translating automation from the Dolby Atmos Panner plugin and also when a track has an object output assigned but no main output assigned.

To commit automatically generated height automation, use the Coalesce Pan Guide Automation command. See "Coalesce Pan Guide Automation" on the next page.

To enable (or disable) Auto-Height Overrides Height Automation:

1. Open the Output window for the track you want.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Double-click the Height Mode selector.
   - Right-click the Height Mode selector and select (or deselect) **`Auto-Height Overrides Height Automation`**.



Right-clicking Height mode to select Auto-height Overwrite Height Automation

⚠ When exchanging Pro Tools HD 12.8.2 sessions or higher that use Auto-Height Overrides Height Automation with Pro Tools HD 12.8 or 12.8.1 systems, be sure to Coalesce Pan Guide Automation first so that Height Pan Automations plays back correctly.

Coalesce Pan Guide Automation

When using the **`Auto-Height Overrides Height Automation`** option to automatically generate Height automation, you can commit that automation using the **`Coalesce Pan Guide Automation`** command. Committed Height automation is calculated by interpolating Front, Rear, and Front/Rear pan automation, and the selected Auto-Height mode.

To automatically generate Height automation from Front, Rear, and Front/Rear pan automation, and the selected Auto-Height mode for one or more tracks:

1. Select the tracks for which you want to generate Height automation.
2. Choose **`Edit > Automation > Coalesce Pan Guide Automation`**.

Duplicating Object Track Pan Automation and Dolby Atmos Panner Plugin Automation

When exchanging sessions between Pro Tools 12.8 or later and earlier versions of Pro Tools (such as Pro Tools 12.7.1), you probably want to ensure that object tracks have duplicate automation for track panning (Pro Tools 12.8) and Dolby Atmos panner or the Dolby Atmos Music Panner (version 1.2 or later and Pro Tools 2022.4 or later) plugin automation.

When opening an older session in Pro Tools 12.8 or later, you may prefer to use pan automation for object tracks rather than Dolby Atmos panner plugin automation.

To duplicate Dolby Atmos or Dolby Atmos Music panner plugin automation to track pan automation:

1. Select the object track (or tracks) with the Dolby Atmos panner plugin automation you want to duplicate.
2. Choose **Edit > Automation > Duplicate Dolby Atmos Plugin automation to track pan automation**.

All Dolby Atmos and Dolby Atmos Music panner plugin automation is duplicated as track pan automation. Both copies of the automation remain the same until you change the automation of one or the other. If you remove the Dolby Atmos panner plugin from an object track, its automation is lost.

When opening a Pro Tools 12.8 (or later) session that uses pan automation to generate Dolby Atmos metadata in a lower version of Pro Tools (such as Pro Tools 12.7.1), the pan automation is lost. Duplicate the pan automation for object tracks to Dolby Atmos panner plugin automation to ensure that these tracks playback as objects when opened in the lower version of Pro Tools.

To duplicate track pan automation to Dolby Atmos panner plugin automation:

1. Select the object track (or tracks) with pan automation you want to duplicate.
2. Ensure that the Dolby Atmos panner plugin is inserted on the track,.
3. Choose **Edit > Automation > Duplicate track pan automation to Dolby Atmos Plugin automation**.

All track pan automation is duplicated as Dolby Atmos panner plugin automation. Both copies of the automation remain and remain the same until you change the automation of one or the other. If you remove the Dolby Atmos panner plugin from the track, its automation is lost.

Object Controls Mix Attribute for Grouped Tracks

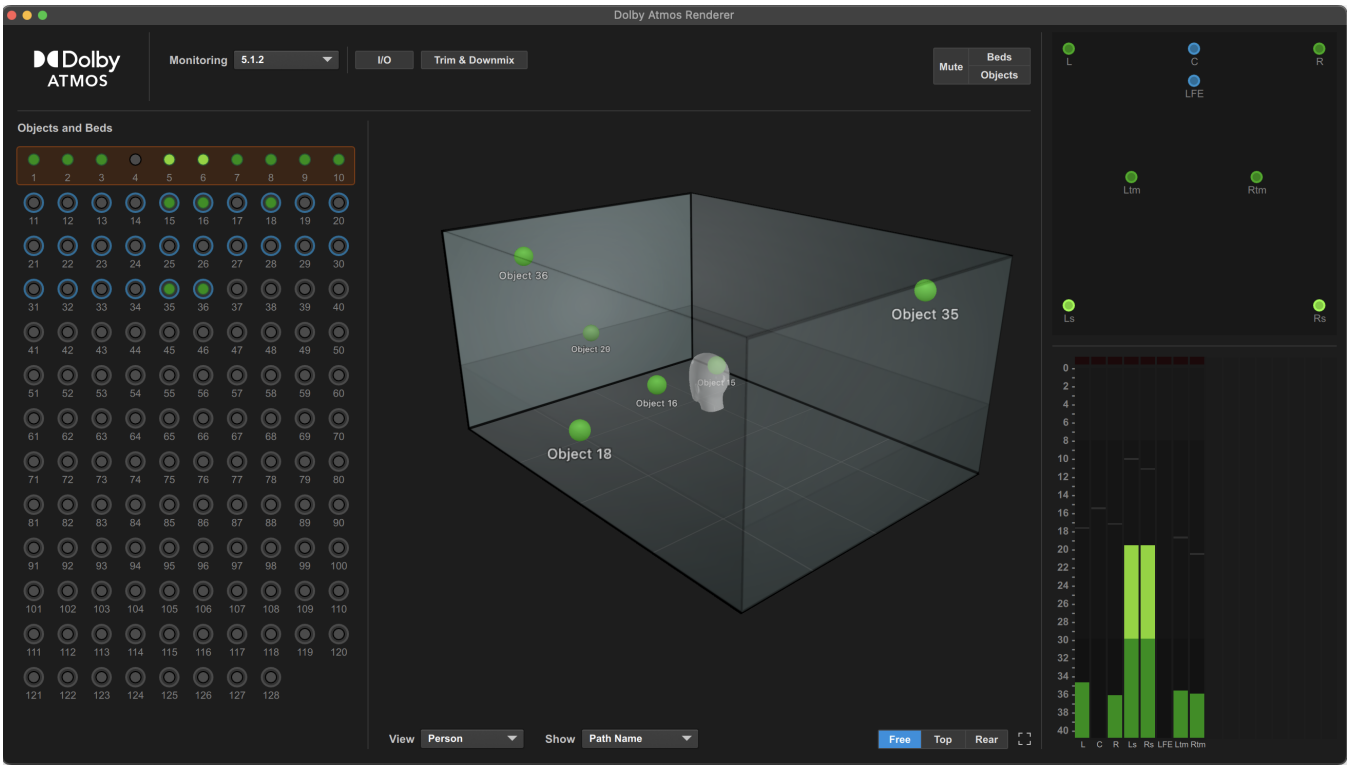
You can enable **Object Controls** in the Globals tab of the Groups dialog to link Object Control mode and Object/Bus toggle for all object tracks in the Group.



Object Controls option in Groups › Globals

Dolby Atmos Renderer Window

The Dolby Atmos Renderer window provides controls and views for the internal renderer.



The Dolby Atmos Renderer window in Pro Tools very much resembles the main window of the Dolby Atmos application.

To show (or hide) the Dolby Atmos Renderer window, do one of the following:

- Select (or deselect) **`Window > Renderer`**.
- Press Command+Control+= (Mac) or Control+Start+= (Windows).

Monitoring Controls

Select the desired **`Monitoring`** format (monitoring paths are defined in the I/O Setup). Channel formats that are equal to or smaller than the monitor format specified in the I/O Setup are available as monitoring options.

Monitoring

Available monitoring options based on your chosen Monitor Path

		Available Monitoring								
		9.1.6	7.1.4	7.1	5.1.4	5.1.2	5.1	2.0	2.0 Direct	Binaural
Monitor Path	9.1.6	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	9.1.4	–	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	7.1.6	–	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	7.1.4		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	7.1.2	–	–	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	7.1	–	–	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	5.1.4	–	–	–	x	x	x	x	x	x
	5.1.2	–	–	–	–	x	x	x	x	x
	5.1	–	–	–	–	–	x	x	x	x
	Stereo	–	–	–	–	–	–	x	x	x

I/O Button

Click the `I/O` button to open the I/O Setup (see "Bed/Object Groups" on page 1726).

Trim and Downmix Button

Click the Trim & Downmix button to open the Trim and Downmix dialog (see "Trim and Downmix" on page 1762).

Mute Buttons

Mutes affect stock live re-renders but do not affect custom live re-renders. Note that mutes are not reflected on any tracks, but the Mute indicator (`M`) lights in the Edit Window Toolbar.

Mute

Click to mute (or unmute) all renderer channels (Beds and Objects).

Beds

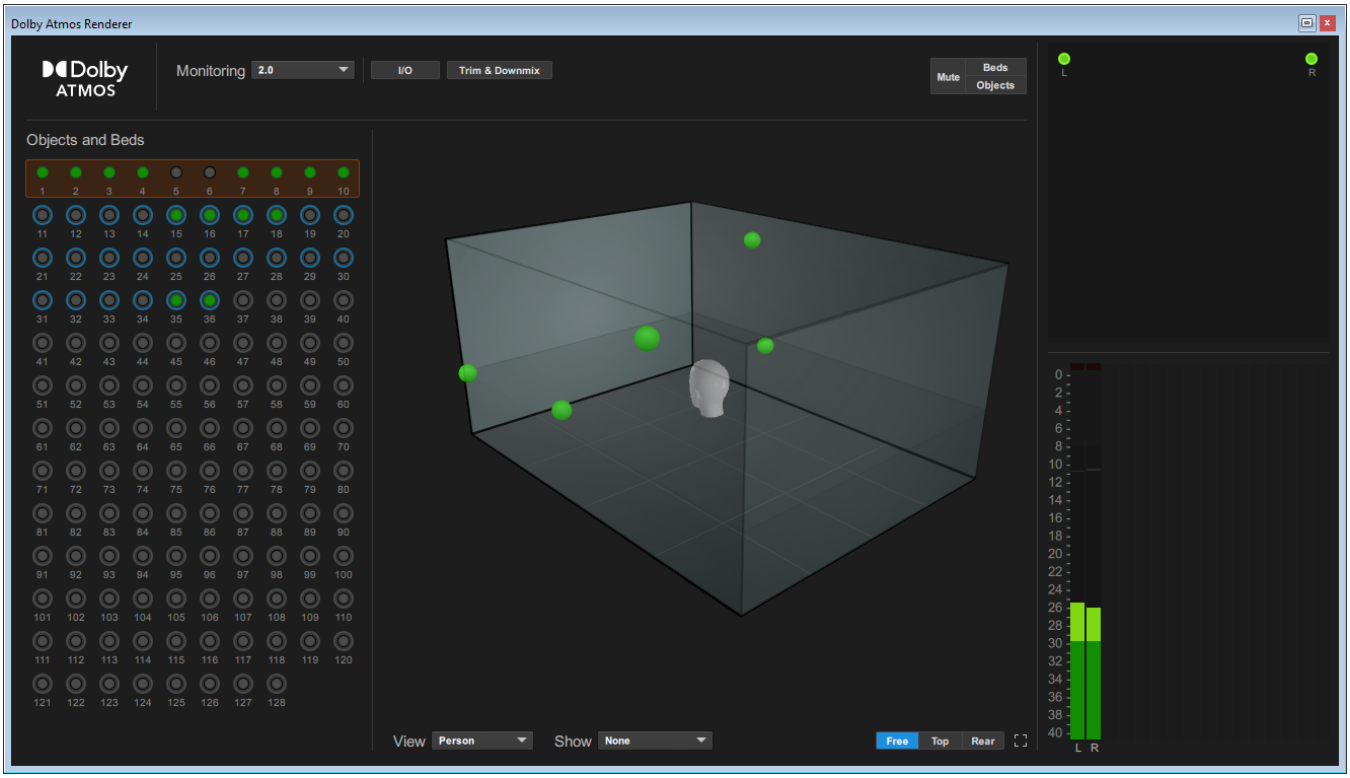
Click to mute (or unmute) all Beds.

Objects

Click to mute (or unmute) all Objects.

Input Status Indicators

The input status section represents all available 128 channels and how the channel IDs are assigned to beds and objects. IDs that are assigned to objects show if a track has an active connection to the object with the `Object Control Mode` set to `Master`. Beds are represented by a band.

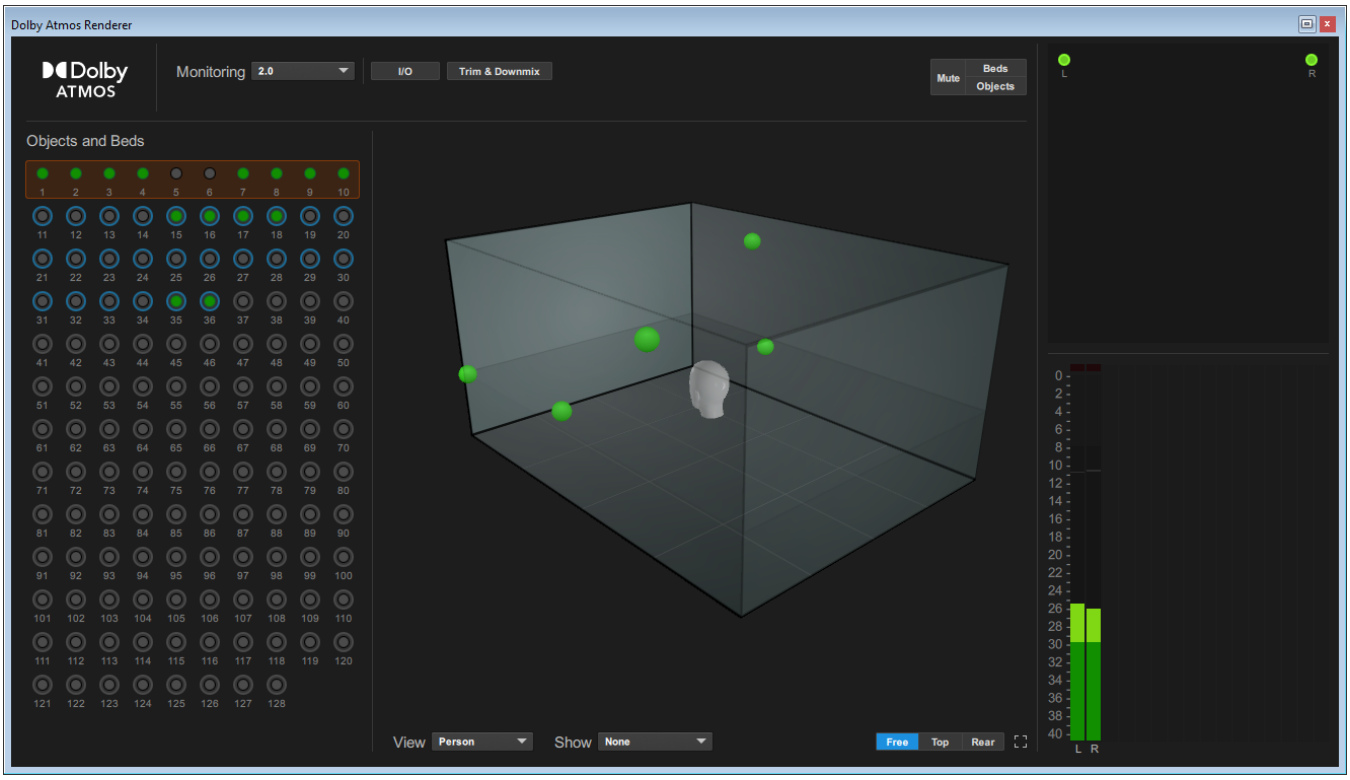


Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Objects and Beds Input indicators

Signal can be monitored for any connected objects and beds using peak metering. Signal starts registering at –90 dB and is color coded by decibel level.

Decibel Level	Color
–90 dB	Dark Green
–20 dB	Light Green
–6 dB	Yellow
0 dB	Red

Objects View



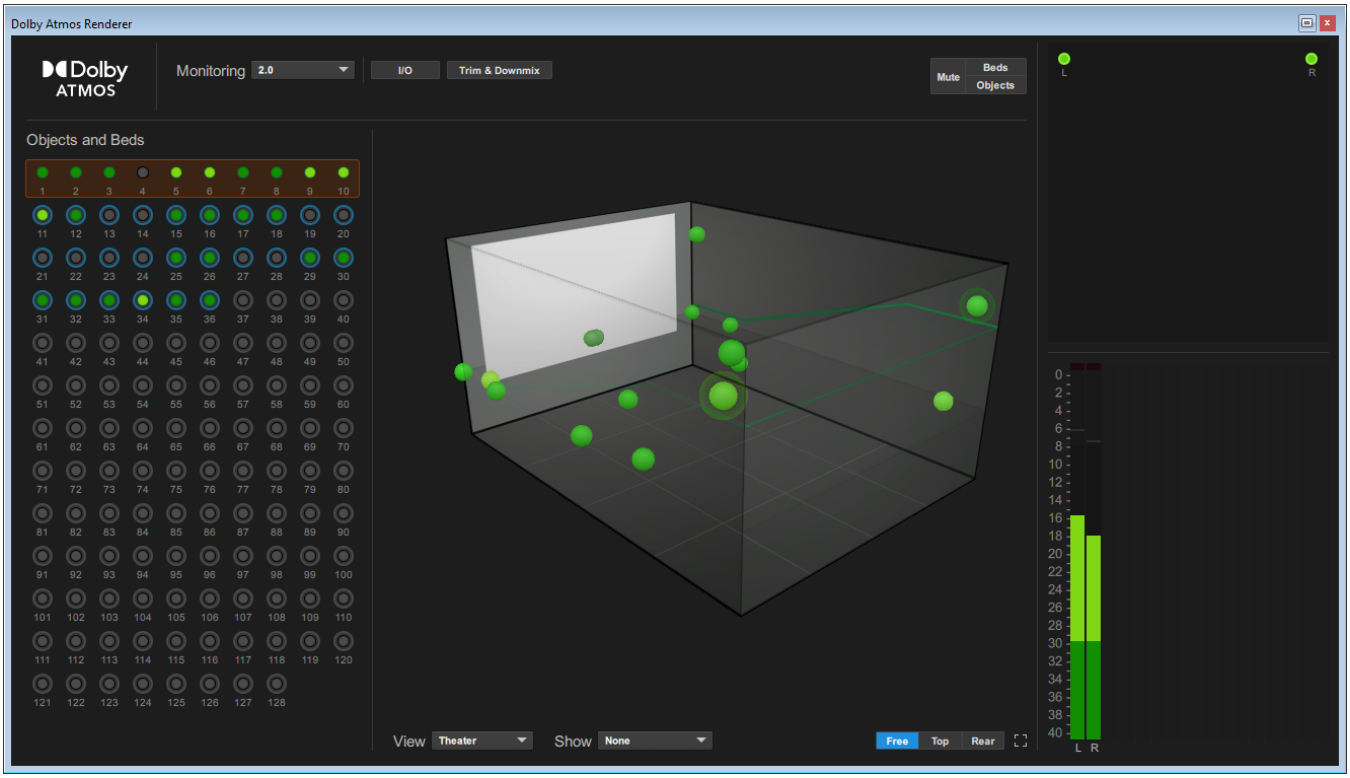
Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Person view (Object ID shown)

View

The Dolby Atmos Renderer window provides multiple views for the visualization of Object movement in a three dimensional listening environment. To help you visualize the mix in the intended listening environment, there are two display modes: **`Theater`** and **`Person`**. These display modes are purely aesthetic and do not affect the sound in anyway.

Theater

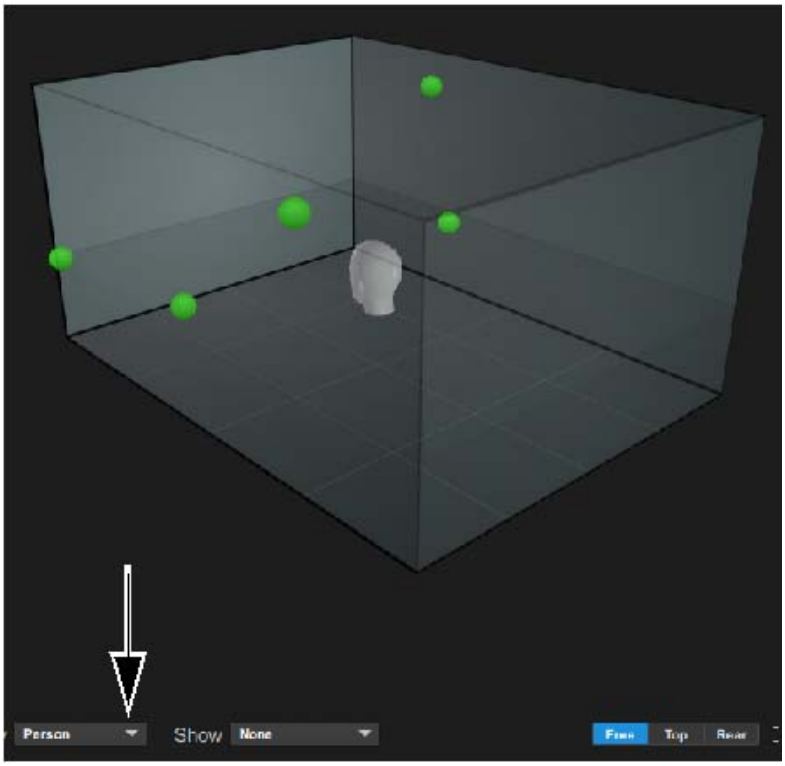
Theater view is intended for mixing sound to picture. It offers a screen and lines to represent the seating rake of a theater. Objects are displayed between the bottom and the top of the screen, to help visualize where they are placed in the listener's environment.



Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Theater view

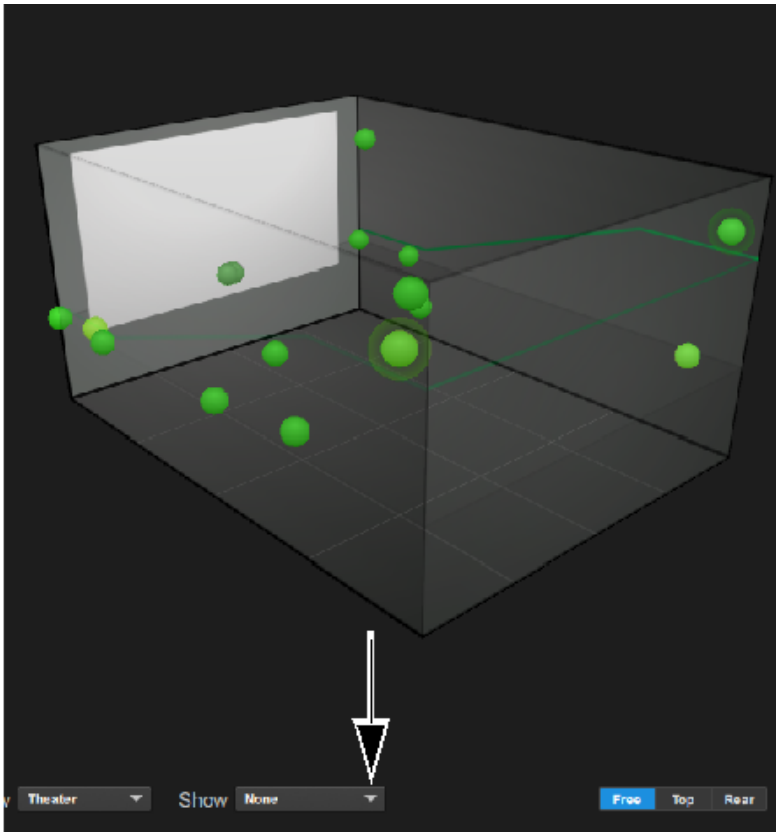
Person

Person view is intended for mixing music or in a binaural headphone environment. Objects at zero height appear at ear level of the listener.



Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Person view

Show Options



Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Show none

None

Object orbs are displayed with no identifier.

Object ID

Object orbs are displayed with the Object ID.

Group Name

Object orbs are displayed with the assigned Group Name (if any).

Binaural Mode

Object orbs are displayed with the assigned Binaural mode (`Off`, `Near`, `Mid`, or `Far`).

Path Name

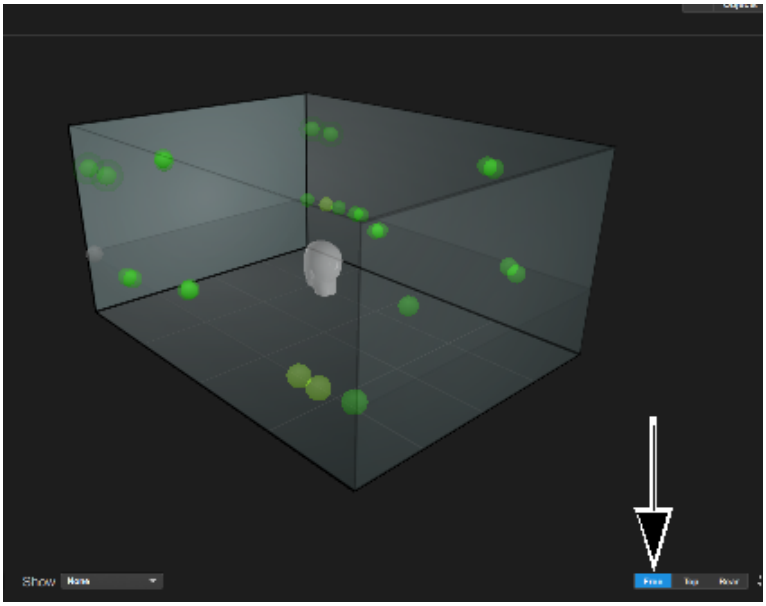
Object orbs are displayed with the Path Name from the `Dolby Atmos` page in the I/O Setup.

View Modes

There are three different view modes, Free, Top, and Rear. These modes help you inspect how the objects are moving amongst each other in a 3D space, from different angles. Each mode is optimized for a specific purpose.

Free

Lets you freely rotate the room by clicking and dragging.

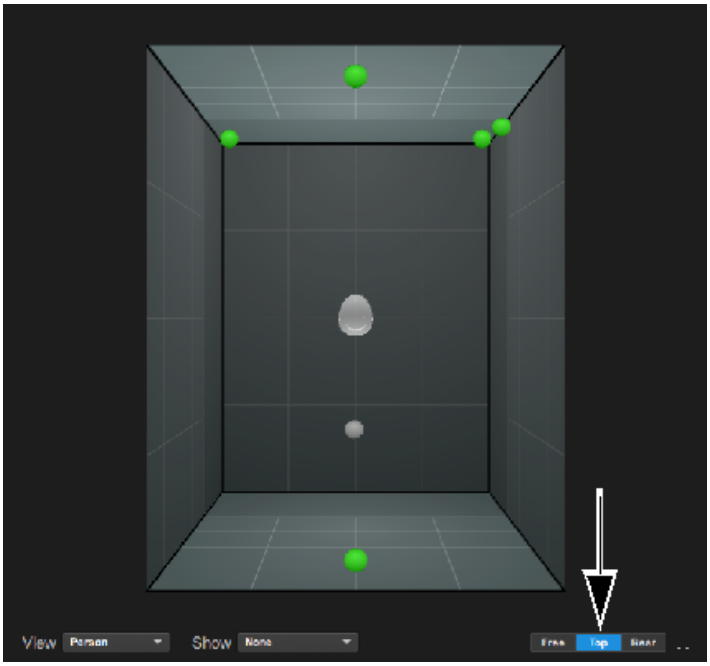


Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Person Free display

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the window in any mode to return to Free mode in the default position.

Top

Shows a top-down view of the space, offering more depth than when rotating the room manually.

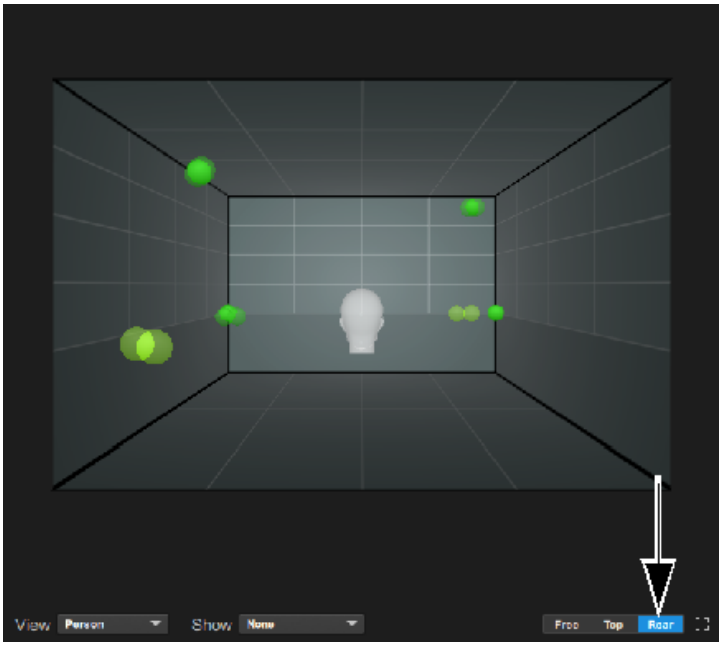


Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Person Top display

Double-click the room to toggle between the Top view and Free view in the last rotated position.

Rear

Shows a rear view of the space, offering more depth than when rotating the room manually.



Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Person Rear display

Full screen

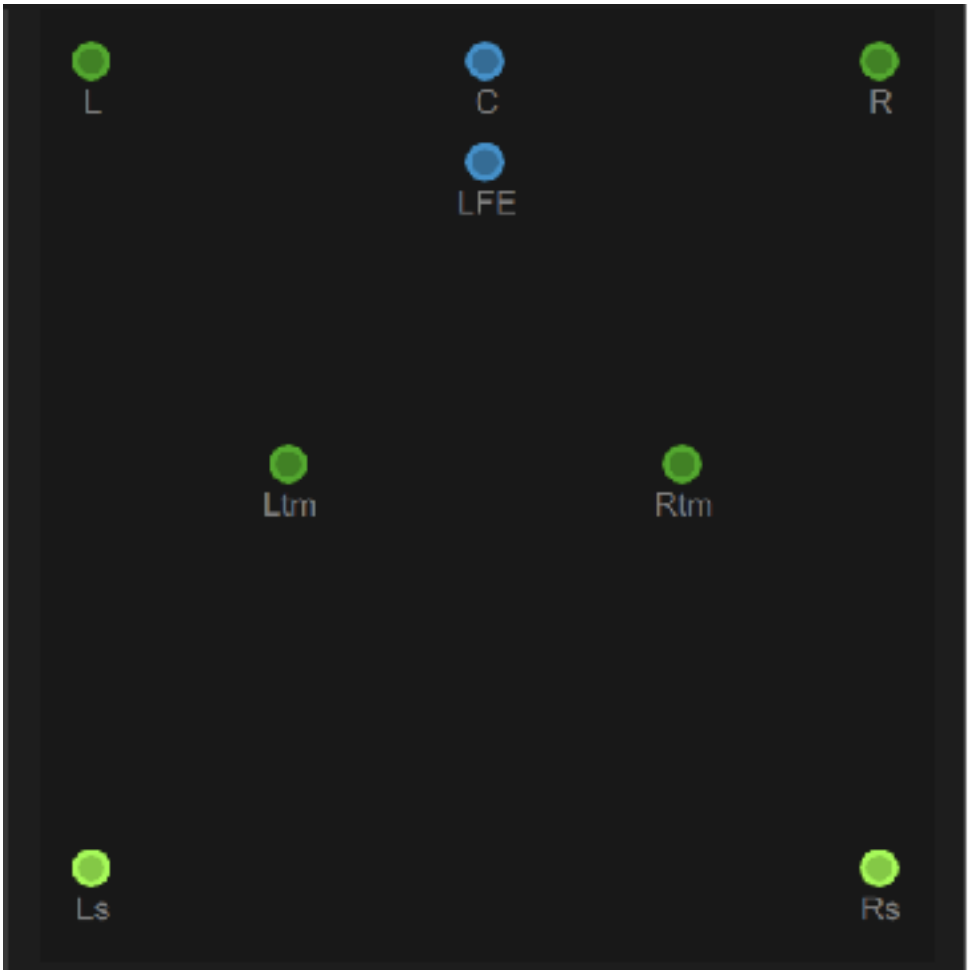
Enable Full Screen mode to hide the Input Status indicators and expand Objects view.



Dolby Atmos Renderer window, enter Full Screen

Room Configuration Display

The Room Configuration display shows the location of speakers in the room for the selected monitoring configuration. The metering and clip-light indicators follow the ballistics of the larger output meters.



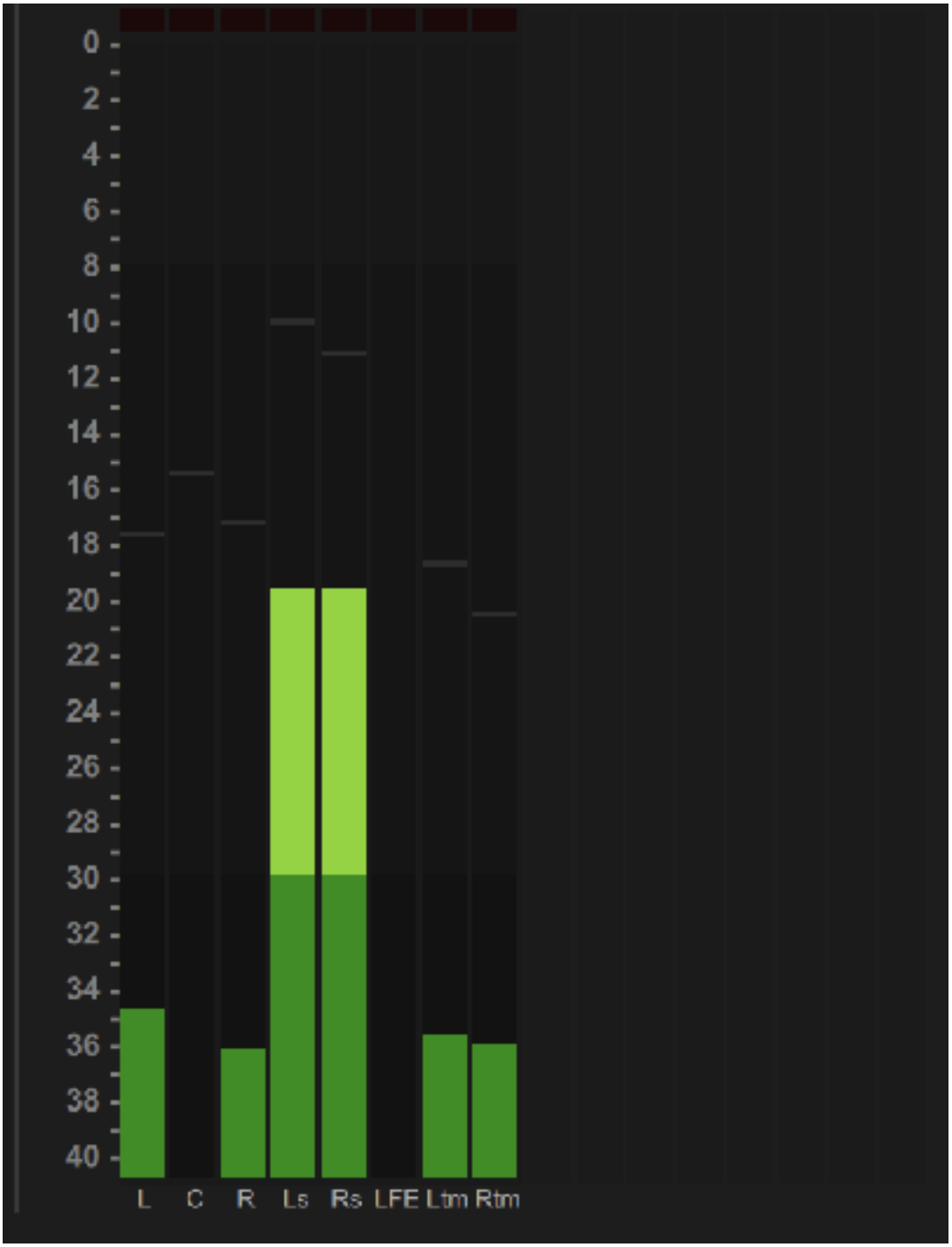
Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Room Configuration display

Output Meters

The Output meter provide multichannel metering for the selected monitoring configuration. The metering ballistics follow the **Master Meters** setting (**Setup > Preferences > Meters**). Setting the Master Meters to PPM Digital with a 1.5 sec decay closely mirrors the ballistics of the external Dolby Atmos Renderer application (see "Metering Preferences" on page 163).

Clip Light behavior follows the Clip Indication setting and may be cleared by clicking on it.

❑ *To clear all indicators in the application, press Option+C (Mac) or Alt+C (Windows).*



Dolby Atmos Renderer window, Output meters

Meter order can be changed between Film and Dolby order. Right-click the meters and select the desired channel order for metering. The Dolby order follows the same order as the output meters in the Dolby Atmos Renderer application.

9.1.6 Examples:

- `Film` = L C R Lw Rw Lss Rss Lsr Rsr LFE Ltf Rtf Ltm Rtm Ltr Rtr
- `Dolby` = L R C LFE Lw Rw Lss Rss Lsr Rsr Ltf Ltm Ltr Rtm Rtf Rtr

9.1.4 Examples:

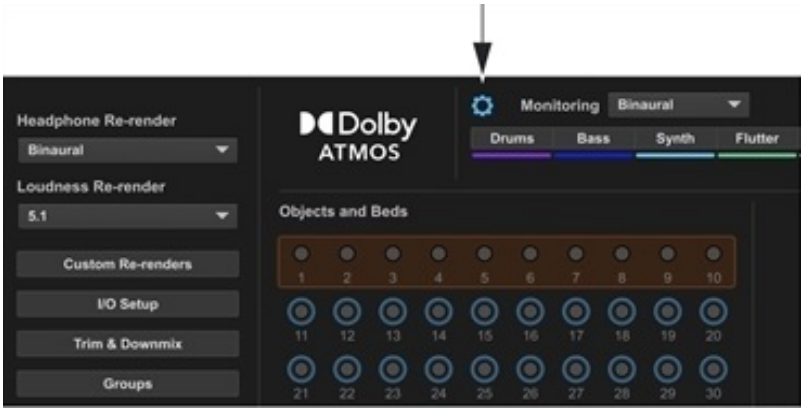
- **`Film`**= L, C, R, Lw, Rw, Lss, Rss, Lsr, Rsr, LFE, Ltf, Rtf, Ltr, Rtr
- **`Dolby`**= L, R, C, LFE, Lw, Rw, Lss, Rss, Lsr, Rsr, Ltf, Ltr, Rtf, Rtr

7.1.2 Examples:

- **`Film`** = L, C, R, Lss, Rss, Lsr, Rsr, LFE, Ltm, Rtm
- **`Dolby`** = L, R, C, LFE, Lss, Rss, Lsr, Rsr, Ltm, Ltm

Dolby Atmos Settings Pane

You can access Dolby Atmos Settings from the Dolby Atmos Renderer window.



Click the gear icon button to open a pane to the left of the window where you can access the following settings:

- Headphone Re-Render (drop-down)
- Loudness Re-Render (drop-down)
- Custom Re-Render (button)
- I/O Setup (button)
- Trim & Downmix (button, opens the Trim and Downmix window)
- Groups (button)

Trim and Downmix Mismatch

The Trim and Downmix button in the Settings pane and also in the I/O Setup lights orange if there is a delta between tabs in the window. Since this button is not visible 100% of the time, the Settings button (gear icon) lights orange accordingly if the pane is closed.



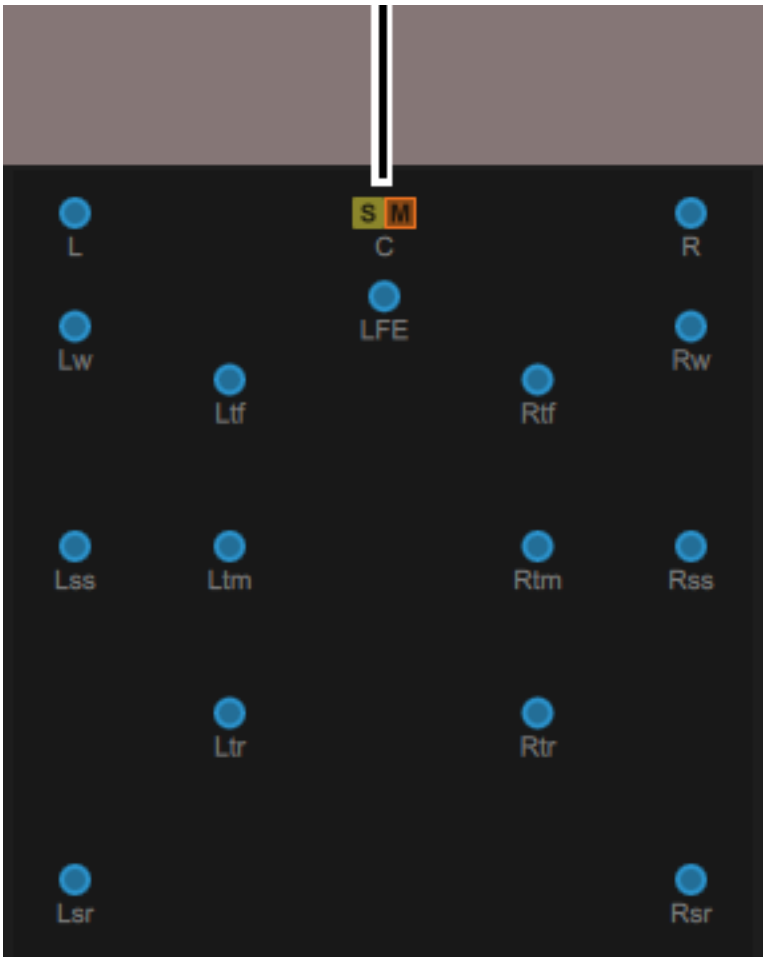
Dolby Atmos Settings pane, delta in Trim and Downmix settings indicated

Solo and Mute Speakers

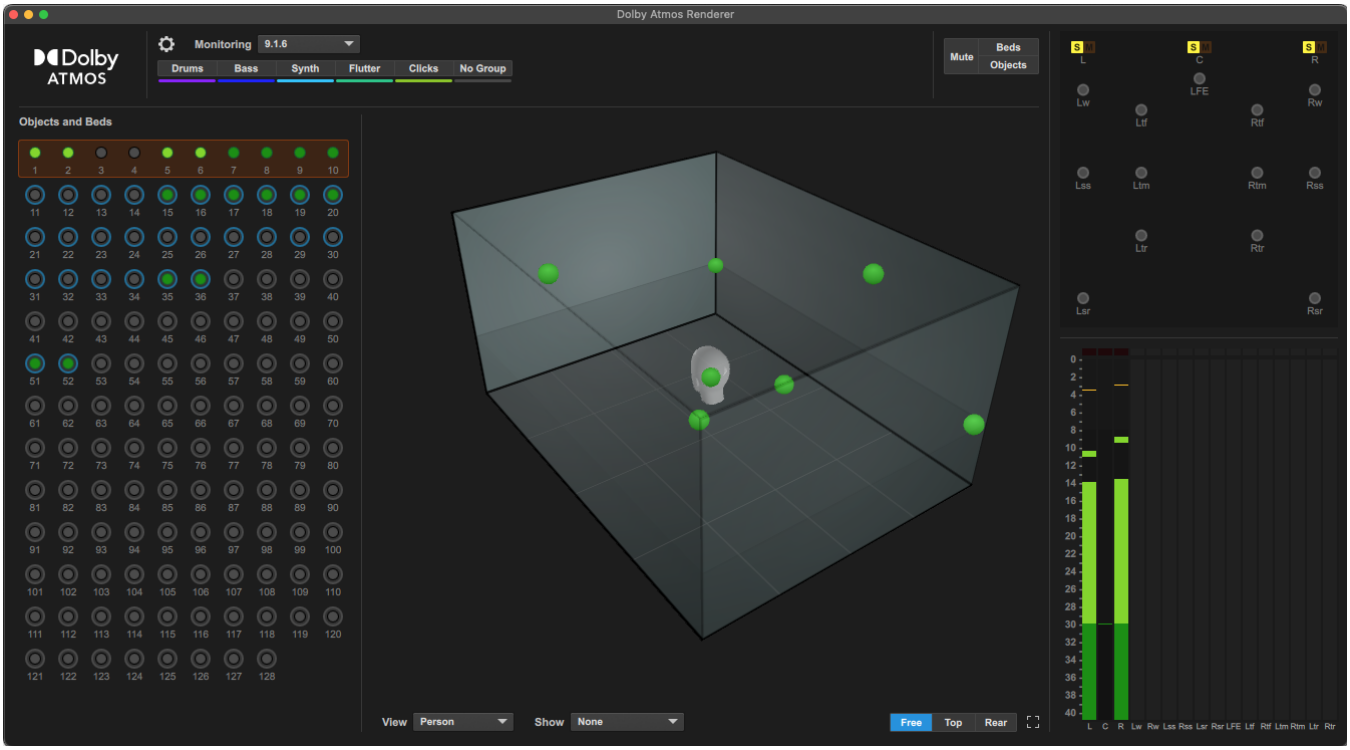
Pro Tools lets you solo or mute speakers in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window.

To solo or mute speakers in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window:

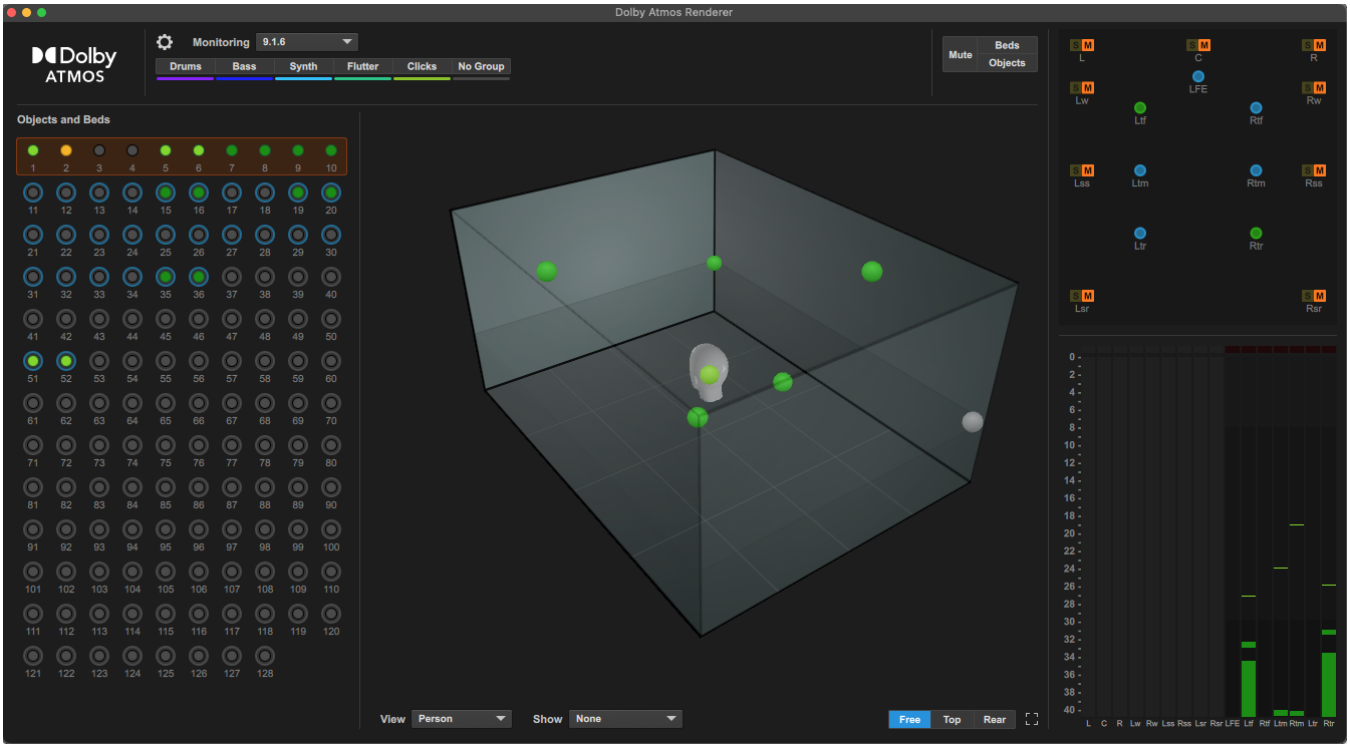
1. Move the mouse cursor over a speaker icon to show solo and mute buttons.



2. Click the solo or mute button (it latches, and persists, even if you change monitoring formats).



L C R speakers soled in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window



Surround speakers muted in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window

To solo or mute an entire horizontal row, such as L/C/R or Lsr/Rrs:

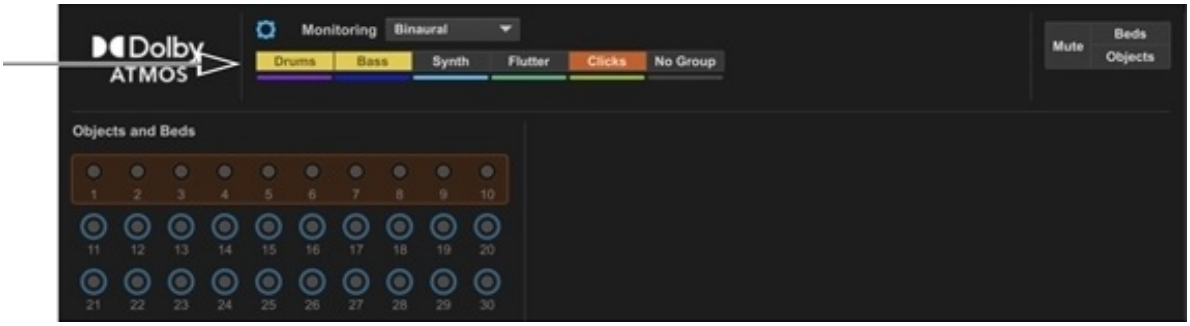
- Control-click (macOS) or Start-click (Windows) any speaker in the row.

To solo or mute an entire plane:

- Option-click (macOS) or Alt-click (Windows) any speaker on either the floor or ceiling.

Solo and Mute Dolby Atmos Groups

The Dolby Atmos Renderer window lets you solo and mute Dolby Atmos Groups. Groups appear at the top of the Dolby Atmos Renderer window if they are assigned to an active track in the session.



Dolby Atmos Renderer window: Solo (Yellow) and Mute (Orange) Groups

To solo any Group in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window:

- Click the Group name to solo the group Click it again to unsolo The button is yellow when the group is soloed.

The Solo Status button at the top of the Edit window lights if any Groups are soloed in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window. You can click the Solo Status button to clear all solos.

Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) any Group to act as a reverse-mode-clutch for X-OR and Latch. If in Latch mode, it results in an X-OR solo. If in X-OR mode, it results in a Latch solo.

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any Group to enable or disable solo for all Groups. Any muted Groups remain muted.



Soloed and Muted Groups indicated in the Edit window

To mute any Group in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window:

- Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to mute the group. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) it again to unsolo. The button is orange when the group is muted.

Mute status is indicated by the **M** button at the top of the Edit window. If any Groups are muted in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window the **M** button lights.

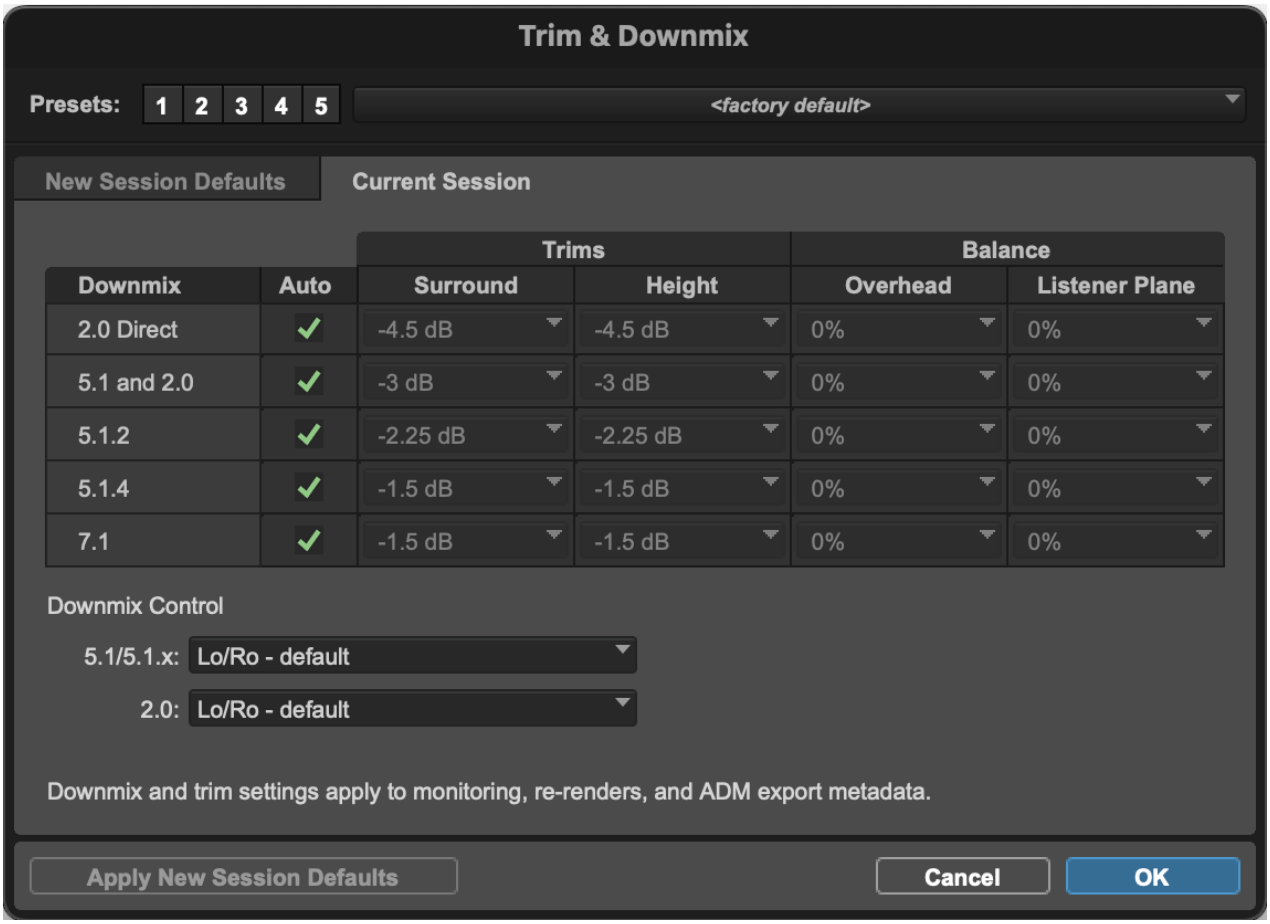
Command-Option-click (Mac) or Control-Alt-click (Windows) any Group to enable or disable mute for all Groups.

Trim and Downmix

Click the **Trim & Downmix** button (in the Dolby Atmos page of the I/O Setup or in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window) to open the Trim and Downmix dialog. Trim and Downmix controls determine how the surrounds and heights are processed for different mixing formats. These settings apply to monitoring, offline and live re-renders, and the settings are embedded as metadata in any bounced ADM files.

To open the Trim and Downmix dialog:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **Setup > I/O**, click the **Dolby Atmos** tab.
   - Choose **Window > Dolby Atmos Renderer**.
2. Click the **Trim and Downmix** button.



Trim and Downmix dialog

Presets

Pro Tools lets you store and recall different configurations of the Trim and Downmix dialog as presets.

The Presets controls work much like the Presets controls for Batch Renaming, Fades, and Clip Effects.

Presets Buttons

The Track Trim and Downmix dialog provides five Presets buttons that let you store and recall your most commonly used configurations.

You can also save and recall settings using the Librarian menu.

To store a preset:

1. Configure the dialog as you like.
2. Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Presets button where you want to store the current settings.

To recall a preset:

- Click the Presets button that contains the settings you want to recall.

Librarian Menu

Use the Librarian menu to save and recall presets files (.ptpreset). These are usually saved to and recalled from the Pro Tools Presets folder (`/Documents/Pro Tools/Pro Tools Presets/`). However, you can save to and recall from any directory location on your system. Preset files can be shared and used on any other Pro Tools system as well.

The Librarian menu commands include:

‹factory default›

Restores the default settings.

Save Settings

Saves the current settings. This command overwrites any previous version of the preset.

Press Command+Shift+S (Mac) or Control+ Shift+S (Windows) to save the current settings.

Save Settings As

Saves the current settings as a new preset. You can name the preset and save it to any location on your system.

Import Settings

Opens the Choose a Settings File dialog focused on the default folder. Settings files stored in this location are listed by name under ‹factory default› in the Librarian menu. In the Choose a Settings File dialog, you can navigate to any location on your system to select and import the Settings preset file you want.

Delete Current Settings File

Permanently deletes the current settings file from disk.

Lock (Unlock) Settings File

Locks (or unlocks) the selected Settings file so that it cannot (or can) be edited.

New Session Defaults/Current Session

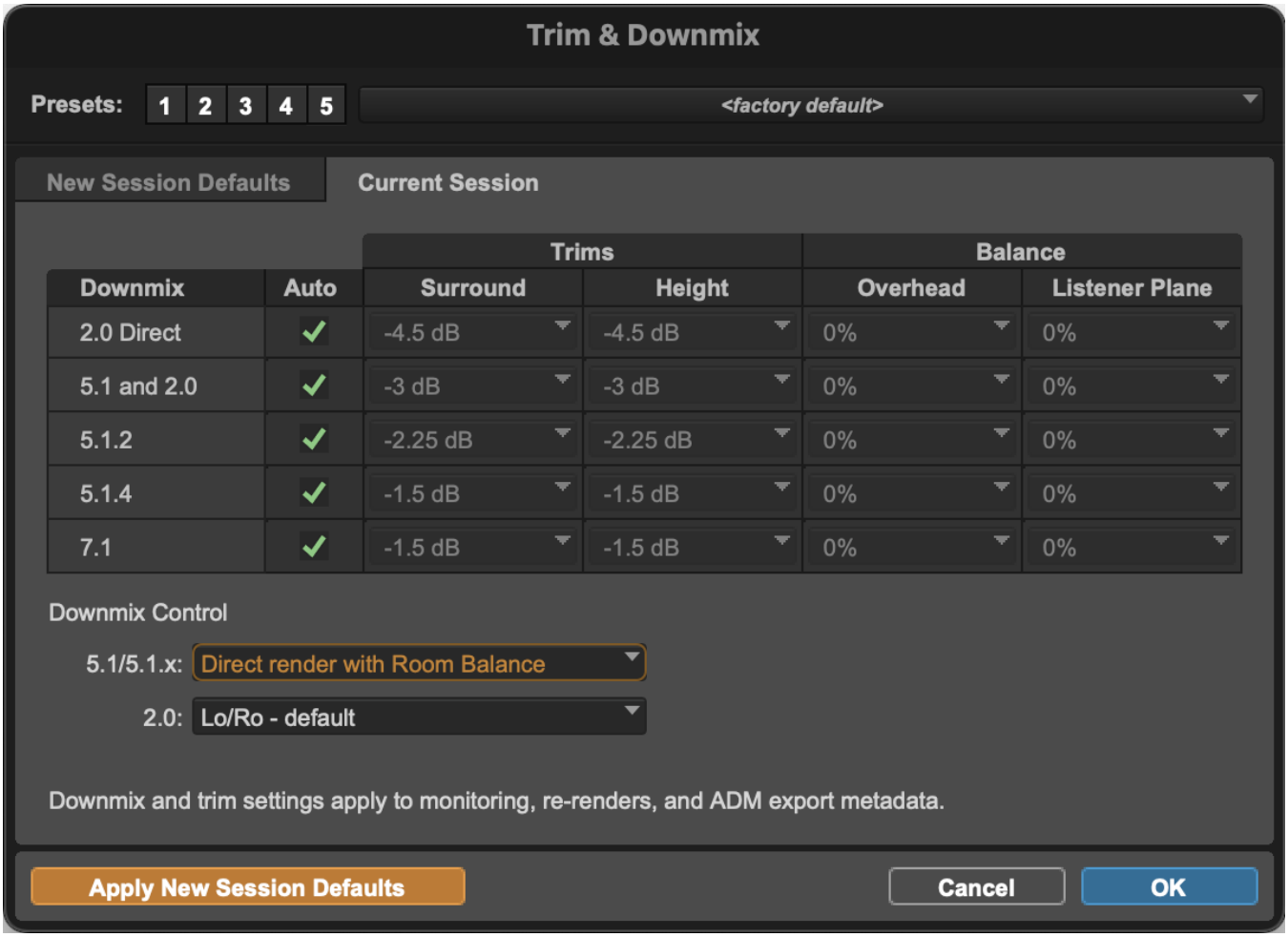
The Trim and Downmix Window is divided up into two tabs, `New Session Defaults` and `Current Session`. Because this window affects the sound of the session, it is important that the settings travel with the session. However, it is also important that opening a session does not affect your own personal defaults.

New Session Defaults

Settings in this tab determine the settings for any newly created session. They do not affect the sound of the current session.

Current Session

Settings in this tab affect the current session. If a setting differs between the currently open session and the **`New Session Defaults`** tab, settings that differ light orange to help you identify them. If there are differences, the **`Apply`** button at the bottom of each tab also lights orange. This button—**`Apply Current Session`** (on the **`New Session Defaults`** pane)/**`Apply New Session Defaults`**(on the **`Current Session`** pane)—lets you to pull over the settings from the opposite tab.



Trim and Downmix settings mismatched

The Trim and Downmix buttons in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window and in the I/O Setup also light orange to warn you when you open a session that contains settings which are different from your defaults.

Apply Current Session/Apply New Session Defaults Button

Click **`Apply Current Session`** to use the current session settings for new session defaults. Click **`Apply New Session Defaults`** to use the new session settings for the current session.

Downmix

Target downmix format: 2.0 Direct, 5.1 and 2.0, 5.1.2, 5.1.4, and 7.1.

Auto

Enable to automatically set the **`Trims`** and **`Balance`** settings for the target downmix format. Disable this option to set the **`Trims`** and **`Balance`** settings for the target downmix format manually.

Trims

Surround

Set a dB trim for the surround content when it is folded into the mix.

Height

Set a dB trim for the overhead content when it is folded into the mix.

Balance

Overhead

Specify where the overhead content folds down toward the front or the rear of the soundscape.

Listener Plane

Specify where surround content folds down toward the front or the rear of the soundscape.

Downmix Control

5.1/5.1.x

Lo/Ro Default

Downmixes to 7.1 and then to 5.1 using the following coefficients:

- LS = 0 dB x Lss + 0 dB x Lrs
- Rs = 0 dB x Rss + 0 dB x Rrs

Dolby Pro Logic IIx

Downmixes to 7.1 and then to 5.1 using the following coefficients:

- Ls = Lss + (–1.2 dB x Lrs) + (–6.2 dB x Rrs)
- Ls = Lss + (–6.2 dB x Lrs) + (–1.2 dB x Rrs)

Direct Render with Room Balance

Downmixes from Dolby Atmos to 5.1 (without downmixing from 7.1) by applying an updated Dolby rendering algorithm that reduces the comb filter effects associated with phantom imaging of objects positioned halfway between the front and rear of the room. Room balance refers to how the renderer deals with content that is panned between the midpoint and rear of the room. With this setting, the content is presented at a constant level in the surround speakers between the rear and midpoint of the room, avoiding any need for phantom imaging until it is in the front half of the room.

Direct Render

Downmixes from Dolby Atmos to 5.1 (without downmixing via 7.1) by using the rendering engine in the Dolby Atmos renderer to accurately re-create the sound field at the central listening position using phantom imaging between the surround speakers and front speakers.

2.0

Lo/Ro Default

Downmixes to 2.0 using the following coefficients:

- LS = 0 dB x Lss + 0 dB x Lrs
- Rs = 0 dB x Rss + 0 dB x Rrs

Lt/Rt (Dolby Pro Logic II) and Lt/Rt (Dolby Pro Logic II) w/ Phase 90

Downmixes to 2.0 using the following coefficients:

- Lt = L + (–3 dB × C) – (–1.2 dB × Ls) – (–6.2 dB × Rs)
- Rt = R + (–3 dB × C) + (–6.2 dB × Ls) + (–1.2 dB × Rs)

Stereo direct is not downmixed using an additional downmix layout. As a result the front/back balance of stereo direct trims does not affect the output signal when an object is at maximum height, or if the surround and height trims are set to zero.

2.0 Direct

Traditional 2.0 mixes are first mixed to either 7.1 to 5.1 and then to 2.0, or to 5.1 to 2.0 (depending on your downmix settings). Stereo Direct creates a 2.0 mix without any extra down-mixing from larger formats. While stereo Direct Trim settings are included in the metadata for BWF ADM files, most decoders currently on the market use the traditional 2.0 settings. Stereo Direct can be used for monitoring or for generating re-renders.

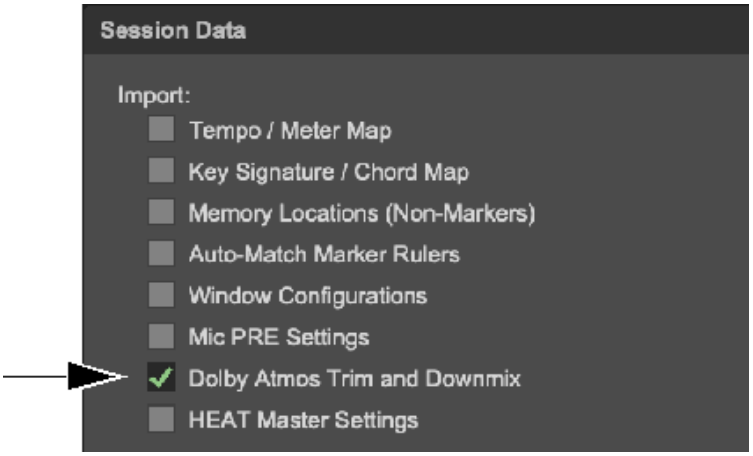
Import Trim and Downmix Settings

You can import Trim and Downmix settings from either sessions or ADM files using **Import Session Data**.

The Trim and Downmix Window is only available when using the internal renderer, however, it is still possible to import trim and downmix settings into the Pro Tools session when using an external renderer. Settings are stored so that they are available in the case that internal mode is used later.

To import Trim and Downmix settings from a session or ADM file:

1. Choose **File > Import > Session Data**.
2. Navigate to the location of the session or ADM file you want, select it, and click **Open**.
3. Select the **Dolby Atmos Trim and Downmix** option under **Session Data**.



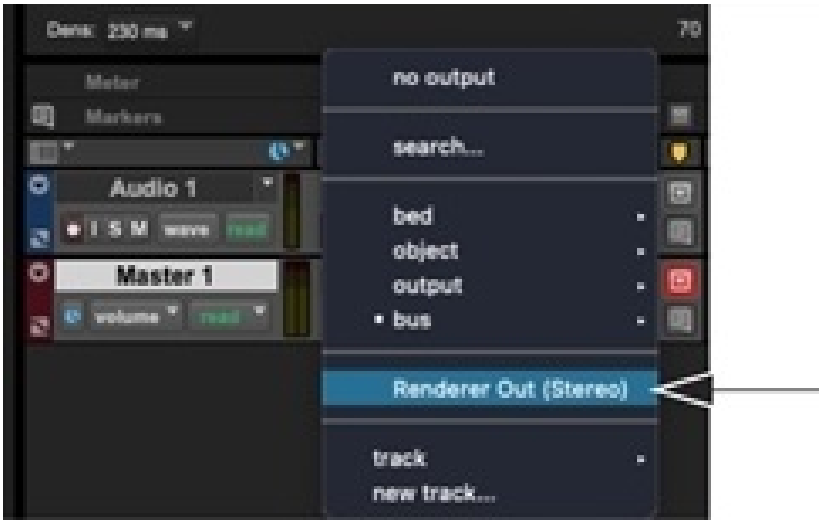
Import Session Data, Dolby Atmos Trim and Downmix option enabled

4. Click **OK**.

Using a Master Fader to Control Internal Renderer Monitoring

You can create a Master Fader track that matches the width of your Monitor Path. This is the final output stage before the main monitoring output of the renderer reaches the speakers. This Master Fader is useful for volume attenuation of the renderer output, room tuning plugins, or any final limiting. Plugins on the Master Fader are included when you bounce the main monitor output.

You can bounce the main output while the renderer is processing.



Assigning a Master Fader to the Renderer Monitor output

If the Master Fader is assigned in a session, and that session is opened on a system with a different width monitor path, and plugins are present on the Master Fader, Pro Tools prompts you to change the width of the Master Fader. If no plugins are present, Pro Tools automatically changes the width.

Binaural Render Mode

Binaural Render mode lets you apply distance model metadata to each of the object or bed channels in your mix. This additional processing is only applied to monitoring and re-renders when their respective formats are set as binaural. The various Binaural distance model settings (**`Off`**, **`Near`**, **`Mid`**, and **`Far`**) apply varying levels of spatialization to each of the bed or object channels. Consider these settings as the amount of virtualized distance between an object or bed and the listener's head. Binaural Render Mode metadata is written to the entire ADM export, from beginning to end. It is not possible to automate this setting.

Binaural output is not designed for playback over speakers.

The binaural metadata is applied to the headphone output during monitoring, recording, or playback of a master. This metadata is not included with speaker processing. For more information, visit Dolby's FAQ online.

Binaural monitoring requires additional CPU processing, so if your session is nearing the limits of your CPU, you may want to change your Monitoring and Live Headphone Re-render from Binaural to 2.0.

The Binaural format only works with the main monitoring output and the stock headphone re-render at higher buffer sizes. The following table lists the HW buffer size requirements for Pro Tools systems at 48 kHz and 96 kHz.

Pro Tools System	Sample Rate	HW Buffer Size
Non-HDX	48 kHz	512 and higher
	96 kHz	1024 and higher
HDX Hybrid Engine	48 kHz	1024 (only)
	96 kHz	2048 (only)

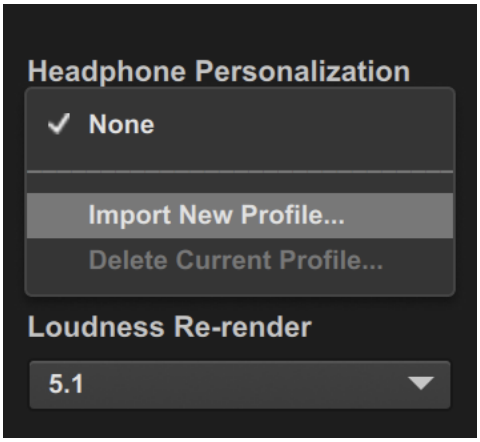
Custom binaural re-renders are supported at all buffer sizes.

Headphone Personalization

Dolby Atmos headphone personalization, or Personalized Head Related Transfer Function (PHRTF), lets you create a profile of your head using a mobile app. Monitoring with a Dolby Atmos personalized profile improves spatial and timbral accuracy of Dolby Atmos headphone mixes, providing a more accurate and consistent monitoring experience. You can then load that profile into the Dolby Atmos Internal Renderer.

To import a .personalized.headphone profile:

1. Ensure that the Dolby Renderer is enabled.
2. Choose **Window > Renderer**.
3. In the Dolby Atmos Renderer window, click the gear icon.
4. From the **Headphone Personalization** selector, choose **Import New Profile**.



5. Navigate to and select the .personalized_headphone profile you want.
6. Click **Open**.

   The imported profile is now selected in the **Headphone Personalization** selector.

File locations:

On macOS: /Users/‹username›/Library/Application Support/Avid/Dolby Atmos renderer/Binaural Configurations

On Windows: \Users\UserName\AppData\Local\Avid\Dolby Atmos Renderer\Binaural Configurations
Format files : .personalized_headphone

To delete the current .personalized_headphone profile:

1. Choose **Window > Renderer**.
2. In the Dolby Atmos Renderer window, click the gear icon.
3. From the **Headphone Personalization** selector, select the .personalized_headphone profile you want to delete.
4. From the **Headphone Personalization** selector, choose **Delete Current Profile**.
5. When prompted to confirm that you want to delete the file, click **Delete**.

   The deleted profile is moved to the trash.

Dolby Atmos PEC/DIR Recorder Workflow Example

In a typical Dolby Atmos mix, two or more Pro Tools | HDX systems provide playback of tracks and stems. An additional Pro Tools | HDX system is configured as the recorder (dubber). The recorder also communicates with the Dolby Atmos renderer.

By linking Object and audio recording on the Pro Tools recorder system, audio and metadata punch in/out occur simultaneously on the Pro Tools recorder.

Metadata

Only for Object panning in the Dolby Atmos renderer (or rendering and mastering workstation). This includes Pro Tools tracks with their Object Toggle set to **Object**.

Pro Tools Pan Automation

Only for Bus panning in Pro Tools (tracks with Object Toggle set to **Bus**).

The following section is an example workflow of how to configure and operate Pro Tools and a Dolby Atmos renderer.

Configuring the Pro Tools Recorder

To configure the Pro Tools recorder system:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**, click to display the **Dolby Atmos** tab, then do the following:
   - If necessary, establish communication with the Dolby Atmos renderer (see "Enabling the External Renderer" on page 1718).
   - Click **OK** to close the Peripherals dialog.
2. Recommended: Choose **Setup > Preferences**, click to display the **Operation** tab, then do the following:
   - Select **Enable Automation in Record**.
   - Select **PEC/Direct Style Input Monitoring**.

   *When PEC/Direct Style Input Monitoring is enabled, the Pro Tools Input Monitor switch label lights green and shows **P** (for PEC, playing back from disk), or is unlit and shows **D** (for Direct, input monitoring). When this setting is not enabled, the Input Monitor switch label shows **I** (Input) either lit green when Input mode is active, or unlit when playing back from disk.*
3. Click to display the Mixing tab and disable **Link Object and Audio Recording** only if you do not want to record object metadata along with object audio.
4. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.
5. Enable DestructivePunch, TrackPunch, or QuickPunch. (For details, see "Punch Recording Modes" on page 833)

If you are tracking with DSP hardware, you might want to re-assign a track directly to the main output while overdubbing, so you can maintain DSP low latency. The signal will not be spatialized, but you can assign it back to the renderer when you are done. This lets you use a high buffer size while keeping low latency for the overdub.

To configure tracks and mix from a playback system to a recording system:

1. On each object track on the recording system, set the Object Control mode to Record.



   You can set the Object Control mode by clicking the Object Control button shown in the Track Output window, or in the Mix and Edit windows when showing Object view. If your system includes an S6 with a Master Post Module, you can use its Record arm switch.
2. Enable the desired Automation mode for each track (such as Touch, Latch, or Touch/Latch).
3. On-screen, the pan dot turns red indicating the track is in an automation write mode.
4. Record enable all tracks (if using DestructivePunch, be sure to Prepare DPE Tracks if necessary).
5. On the playback system, set Object Control Mode to Master for the corresponding object.
6. Begin playback and adjust parameters, toggling monitor source as needed. Toggle the monitor source on the recorder as needed.
7. When ready, punch into the recorder system to record pan metadata and audio from the player to the recorder. (Typically, using Destructive Punch mode.)

You will most commonly use Satellite to synchronize the playback and recording systems (see "Satellite Link" on page 1962).

Importing Bed/Object-Related Track Data from Another Session

When importing session data from another Dolby Atmos session, you can import the bed and object output path assignments (if any) as well as Bus and object toggle setting for tracks selected for import. This is vital when importing tracks already defined as objects from another session.

To import bed and object tracks from another session:

1. Choose **File > Import > Session Data**.
2. Navigate to the session from which you want to import object tracks, select it and click **Open**.
3. In the Tracks section of the Import Session Data dialog, identify the tracks you want to import (Source) and specify the **Destination** for each track (either create a new object track or replace an existing object track).
4. In the **Track Data to Import** dialog, ensure that the **Bed/Object Assignment and Toggle Setting** option is enabled (this option is selected by default).
5. To include Group assignments for each track, ensure that the **Bed/Object Group Assignment** option is enabled (this option is selected by default).

6. Configure the rest of the Import Session Data dialog as desired and click **OK**.



Track Data to Import, Bed/Object Assignment and Toggle Setting and Bed/Object Group Assignment options enabled

Importing ADM BWF Files

A Dolby Atmos Master File in Broadcast Wave format is a .wav file (ADM BWF) that includes audio and Dolby Atmos metadata. Pro Tools can import a Dolby Atmos ADM BWF (.wav) file into a session with all audio and metadata converted to pan automation.

After creating a Dolby Atmos master file set with the Dolby Atmos renderer, you can use the Dolby Atmos Conversion Tool to convert the Dolby Atmos master to a .wav (ADM BWF) file, export it directly from the Dolby Atmos renderer, or even export it from Pro Tools using **Bounce Mix**.

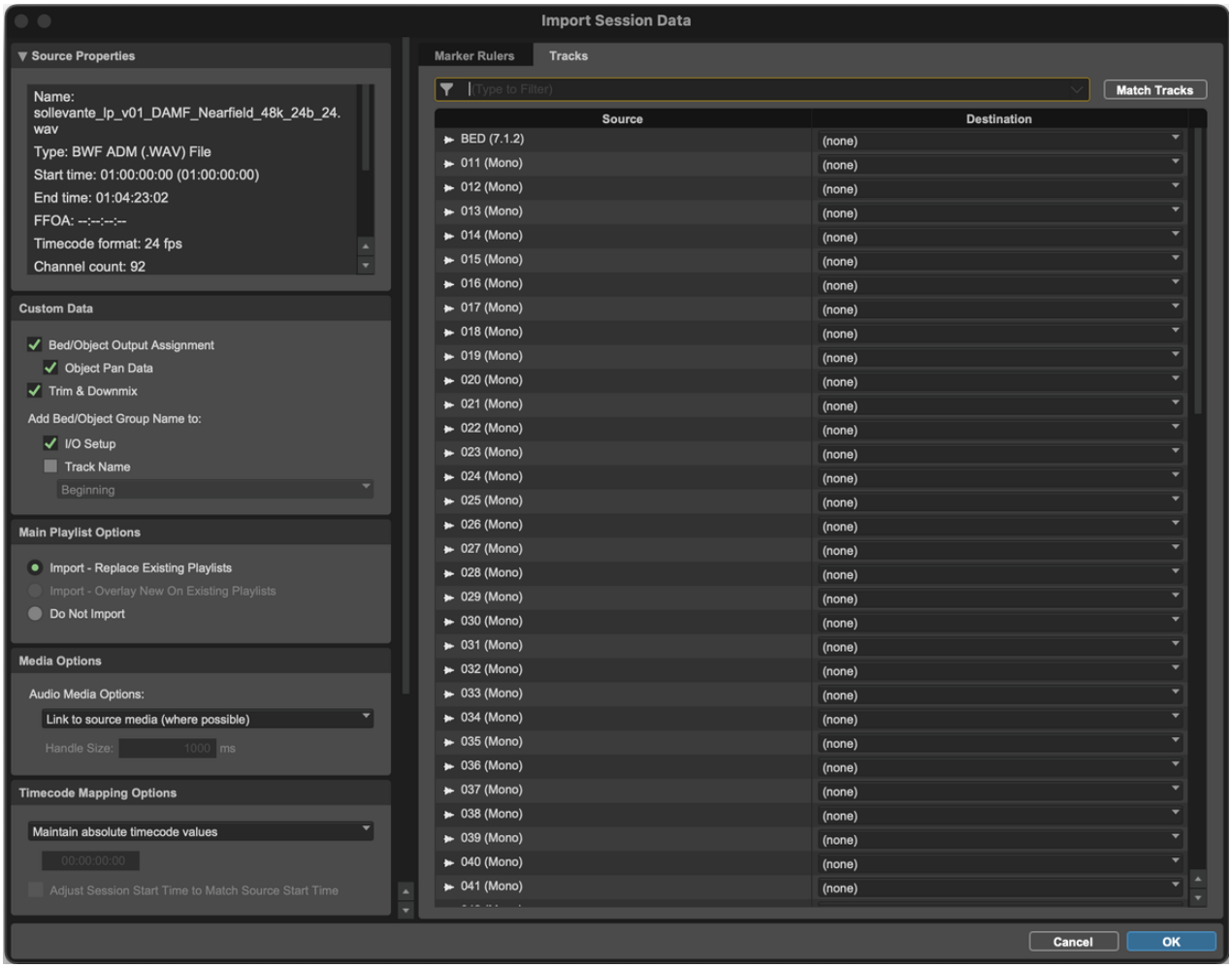
Pro Tools also lets you link to an ADM file when importing session data. This makes for much faster session data import since Pro Tools does not need to convert the ADM into multi-mono files.

Linking to a WAV ADM BWF file is useful for quickly opening a file for inspection, or when basic edits need to be performed before re-exporting. This is quicker than creating new media upon import, and it does not take up additional disk space. However, linked ADM files are more demanding on CPU and disk usage. It is recommended that you use a fast drive, such as an SSD to mitigate these demands. If you encounter any significant performance issues, use the Force to target session format option instead.

Performance decreases significantly if any clips linked to an ADM are shifted from their locations relative to one another. In other words, you can move the entire ADM around on the timeline, but the system load will be much lighter if you leave the clips lined up at the same start time.

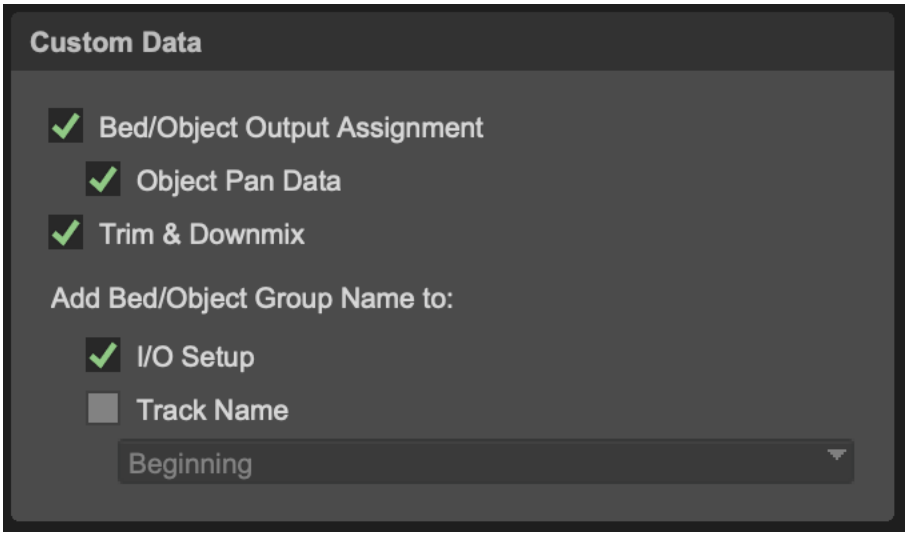
To import an ADM file into Pro Tools:

1. Create a new session.
2. Choose **File > Import > Session Data**.
3. Navigate to and select the .wav (ADM BWF) file you want to import.
4. Click **Open**.



Import Session Data from an ADM file

5. In the Import Session Data dialog, select a Destination for the Source tracks in the .wav (ADM BWF) file.



Import Session Data, custom data for ADM files

6. Select what Custom Data to import:

- Bed/Object Output Assignment

  Imports bed and object output path assignments for imported tracks.

- Object Pan Data

  Imports Dolby Atmos metadata and converts it to track pan automation.

- Add Bed/Object Group Name to I/O Setup

  Lets you add the bed or object group name to the Output Bus path in the I/O Setup for each imported track. This option is only available if Pro Tools is currently set to manage Bed/Object Groups.

- Add Bed/Object Group Name to Track Name

  Lets you add the bed or object group name to the **Beginning** or the **End** of the track name.

- Import – Replace Existing Playlists

  Imports the media and replaces the Main playlist media and panning data.

- Import – Overlay New On Existing Playlists

  Imports the media and overlays media and panning data on existing playlists.

- Do Not Import

  Lets you to import panning data without the media.

7. Configure any other Import Session Data settings as desired.
8. Click **OK**.

You can import audio from .wav (ADM BWF) files using the Import Audio command or by dragging and dropping the file into a session. However, only the audio is imported, and bed and channel order may be lost.

For more information about Dolby Atmos Master files, contact Dolby.

ADM File Metadata on Import

Pro Tools shows the following information in the Import Session Data dialog when importing an ADM file:

- Name
- Type
- Start Time
- End Time
- FFOA (First Frame of Action)
- Timecode Format
- Bed Configurations
- Number of Beds
- Number of Objects
- Audio Sample Rate
- Audio Bit Depth
- Application and version that created the ADM

Opening Legacy Dolby Atmos Sessions

When a Pro Tools 2023.9 (or earlier) Atmos session (configured with buses mapped to beds and objects) is opened in Pro Tools 2023.12 (or later), the buses move to the Dolby Atmos page, where you can choose to use an external Dolby Atmos Renderer application or the internal renderer.

If you used Pro Tools 2023.9 (or earlier) to feed an output-mapped-bus to an external renderer, but that bus was not mapped to a bed, the bus does *not* automatically move to the Dolby Atmos tab—therefore it cannot work with the internal renderer or be included in an ADM or re-render bounce. However, this can be corrected by right-clicking on the bus and choosing **Move to Dolby Atmos tab as a Bed**.

Export ADM files

Pro Tools lets you export to the ADM BWF file format with Dolby Atmos content. ADM BWF files can include audio and Dolby Atmos metadata from the Dolby Atmos renderer or a Dolby Atmos master.

This facilitates quick export of Dolby Atmos mixes using Offline bounce directly from Pro Tools. You can generate new ADM files from a new session with new metadata, or rework previous ADM files, passing along or changing the previous metadata accordingly.

An ADM file bounced from Pro Tools includes all channels (beds and objects) active in the session that are mapped to the Dolby Atmos renderer.

To export Dolby Atmos ADM from a Pro Tools session:

1. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
2. In the Bounce Mix dialog, type the **File Name**.
3. Select **WAV (Dolby Atmos)** as the **File Type**.
4. Select the desired **Sample Rate** for the export in the Audio section.
5. Configure the Dolby Atmos section of the Bounce Mix dialog according to your delivery requirements (see "Dolby Atmos Bounce Mix Options" below).
6. Enable or disable **Offline** for offline or real-time bounce.
7. Click **Bounce**.

Pro Tools thins automation in exported Dolby Atmos BWF WAV ADM files for any time range that does not contain any audio content. This can dramatically reduce the size of an ADM file, particularly when there is a large panning automation ramp between clips in different areas of the timeline.

Dolby Atmos Bounce Mix Options

The Dolby Atmos pane of the Bounce Mix dialog displays the number of Beds and Objects to be included in the bounced ADM file. These are defined by the Bed and Object buses that are mapped to the Dolby Atmos renderer. Only Bed and Object buses that are mapped to the Dolby Atmos Renderer are included in the bounced ADM file. All unmapped paths are excluded. You can also embed program-level metadata, Bed and Object Group assignments, FFOA (First Frame of Action) timecode location, and other Dolby Atmos renderer settings.

When using any of these options, Pro Tools take the **Trim and Downmix**, as well as the **Binaural** information from the selected source. **Group** information and Bed/Object descriptions always come from Pro Tools.

Beds and Objects

Beds and objects are included automatically in the bounced ADM file if the following criteria are met:

- They must be mapped to a bed or object to the Dolby Atmos renderer in the **Dolby Atmos** pane of the I/O Setup.
- The beds and objects must be actively used in the session.

An ADM file bounced from Pro Tools includes all channels (beds and objects) active in the session that are mapped to the Dolby Atmos renderer. The **Dolby Atmos** page of the I/O Setup lets you map beds in a similar way to that of objects. Once these mappings are made for the active beds and objects in the session, the number of mapped Beds and the number of mapped Objects are displayed in the Bounce Mix dialog.

Audio from any object-assigned tracks not set to Master is included in the bounced ADM BWF file as long as another active track routed to the same object is set to Master. However, any pan data from those tracks is excluded.

Beds

Displays the number of Beds mapped to the Dolby Atmos renderer in the **Dolby Atmos** pane of the I/O Setup. Beds are bounced at the output point in the signal chain. Bouncing at the output point ensures that all audio being sent to the Dolby Atmos renderer is included in the bounce.

Objects

Displays the number of Objects mapped to the Dolby Atmos renderer in the **Dolby Atmos** pane of the I/O Setup. Each object is bounced as a unique mono object channel.

Object pan metadata for a track is only included in an exported BWF ADM file if Object Control Mode is set to Master for that track.

I/O Setup Button

Click the **I/O Setup** button to open the I/O Setup and validate Bed and Object mappings before bouncing to an ADM file. If necessary, configure the **Dolby Atmos** page of I/O Setup for the ADM bounce. Be sure that all Beds and Objects that you want to include in the bounce are mapped to the Dolby Atmos renderer.

? Button

Click the **?** button for information about beds and objects to be bounced. For a detailed report of what will be included in the bounce, click the **Report** button in the Info dialog (or click OK to close it). The resulting Included Dolby Atmos Renderer Mappings dialog lists the beds and objects to be included in the ADM WAV export. For beds, the assigned output name is listed. For objects, the assigned object name is listed. Additionally, associated Dolby Atmos Renderer inputs are listed as well as Bed/Object Groups (if any are assigned).

Add FFOA

FFOA (First Frame of Action) is an optional piece of metadata used to define where the content starts on the Pro Tools Timeline. Check your content delivery specifications to see if this is a required piece of metadata for the ADM file you need to deliver or not. If so, be sure to enable the Add FFOA option. In the Bounce Mix window, the FFOA timecode location defaults to the nearest hour that is equal to or later than the start of the timeline selection in the session. Entering a timecode location that is before the timeline selection start is disallowed.

Frame Rate

The Frame Rate specified in the Session Setup is displayed in the Bounce Mix dialog for reference only and it cannot be changed. Note that drop fame rates higher than 30 fps are not supported. Frame Rates larger than 30 fps are shown as their SD derivative, and SD derivative will be embedded in the bounced ADM. For example, a 48 fps session displays 24 fps in this field.

Sample Rate

48 kHz and 96 kHz are supported for export.

Embed Program-Level Metadata

Program-level metadata refers to metadata that is not time variable and applies to the ADM BWF master as a whole. It is not part of the dynamic object metadata. It consists of static settings, often used to affect the resulting sound of the mix, as well as the final Dolby encoding process. Program-level metadata is fixed for the entire session.

Program level metadata consists of the following:

- Downmix
- 5.1 downmix
- 5.1 to 2.0 downmix
- Trim metadata
- Front/back balance
- Binaural render mode metadata

Using the Internal renderer, only the Connected Renderer Settings option is available. When using an External renderer, there are three different options for embedding program-level metadata:

Factory Default

Uses the factory default settings of the Dolby Atmos renderer to for any applicable program-level metadata.

Connected Renderer

Uses the connected Dolby Atmos renderer setting as metadata for the bounced ADM BWF file. This option is only available if the Dolby Atmos renderer is connected with Pro Tools.

Previous ADM File

Uses the metadata from the last ADM file imported into the Pro Tools session. If no ADM has been imported to the current session, the most recent import since launch will be available. The name of the last imported ADM file is displayed to the right of this option in the Embed Program-Level Metadata selector for reference. If more than one ADM file has been imported into the session, only the metadata from the latest ADM file is maintained.

Bed and Object Groups are always passed through with the current I/O Setup assignments. The Embed Program-Level Metadata setting does not apply to these groups.

Stock and Custom Re-Renders

Pro Tools supports two different kinds of re-renders: stock and custom.

Stock Re-Renders

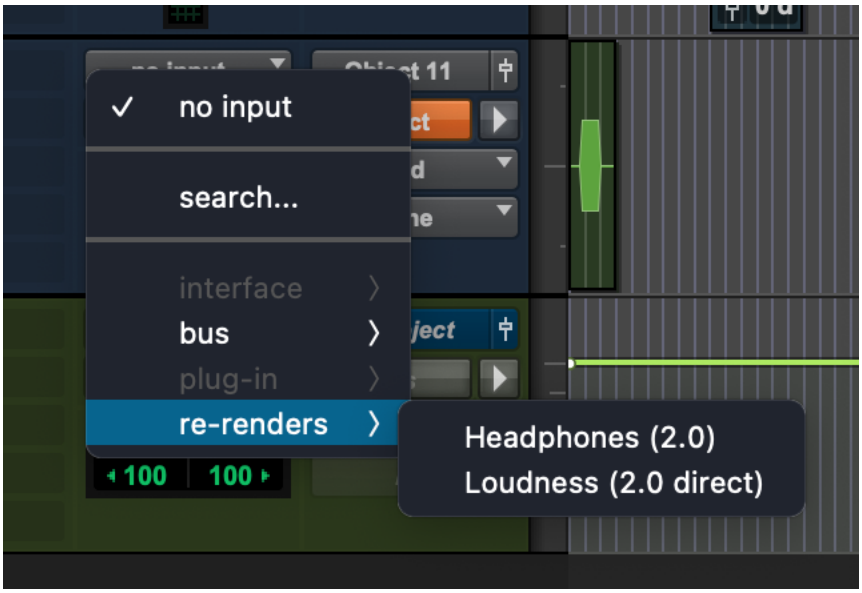
Pro Tools offers two stock re-render options: **`Loudness`** and **`Headphones`**. These are exclusively for routing audio back into the session for monitoring.

Loudness Re-Render

To be routed to a track with a loudness metering plugin. The Loudness Re-Render can be configured as 2.0 Direct, 2.0, or 5.1 on the Dolby Atmos tab the I/O Setup.

Headphones Re-Render

To be sent to headphones through an output different from your main monitors. The Headphones Re-Render can be configured as 2.0 Direct, 2.0, or Binaural on the Dolby Atmos tab of the I/O Setup.



Selecting a Dolby Atmos Re-Render path as a track input for monitoring

Stock re-renders cannot be accessed in the Bounce Mix window. They follow the mute state in the Dolby Atmos Renderer window. They also require very low CPU overhead unless binaural processing is engaged for the headphones re-render. These re-render options follow the H/W Buffer Size, so you can get lower latency monitoring if needed. This means that binaural processing is disabled at lower buffer sizes.

Custom Re-Renders



Custom Re-Renders can be used to route audio back into the session or for bouncing to disk (File › Bounce Mix). Custom Re-Renders let you configure a copy of the mix in any format supported for monitoring Dolby Atmos within Pro Tools. You can also filter out elements of the mix by group, bed, or object. Note that while there is no hard limit for the number of custom re-renders you can create, the more "live" re-render streams you have, the more CPU resources will be used.

Live re-renders are suspended when using the External Dolby Atmos Renderer, but custom re-render configurations remain accessible for Bounce to Mix.

To ensure optimal performance, custom re-renders always run at the highest possible H/W Buffer Size supported by the selected Playback Engine regardless of the actual H/W Buffer Size selected in the Playback Engine. If you require lower latency, you can use the stock re-renders at a lower H/W Buffer Size. Since custom re-renders are always running at the highest possible H/W Buffer Size, you can keep using binaural processing when the actual H/W Buffer Size selected in the Playback Engine is lower.

To create custom re-renders:

1. Do one of the following:
   - On the Dolby Atmos page of the I/O Setup, click **`Custom Re-Renders`**.
   - In the Dolby Atmos Renderer window, click the Custom Re-Renders button in the settings pane.
   - In the Bounce Mix window, set Dolby Atmos as the File Type and enable Re-Renders, then click Configure.
2. Type the Name you want for a New Re-Render path and click + (plus).

3. If you want the new re-render to be live, select Live. This makes the re-render available to track inputs of matching width in Pro Tools. Offline re-renders are only available for Bounce Mix and do not use any additional CPU.
4. Select the channel Format you want for the new re-render.
5. Select either Full Mix or Custom for the selected re-render.
6. For Custom re-renders, select (or deselect) the Types and Groups you want to include in the re-render.
7. Repeat the previous steps to create additional re-renders.

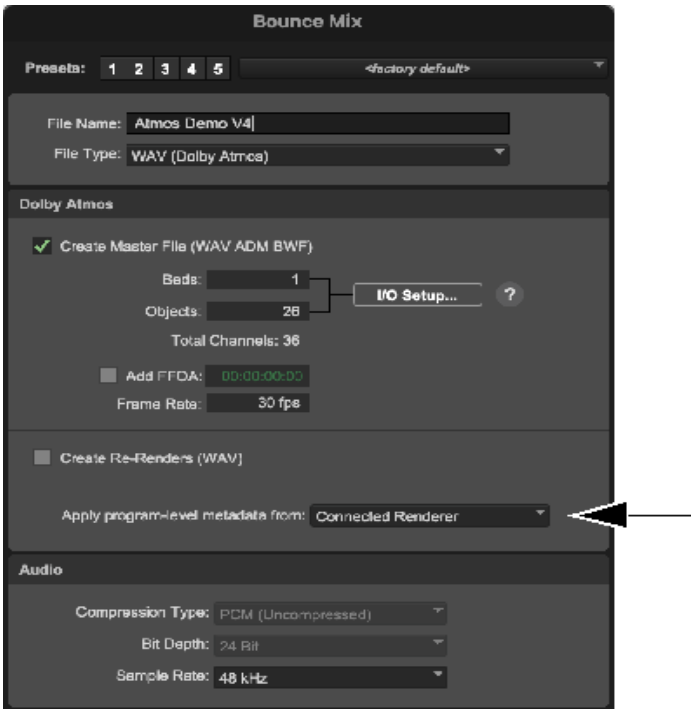
If a track had a live re-render assigned as an input, and that re-render is taken offline, the track input remains assigned and is made inactive.

Bounce Mix, Metadata, and ADM/Re-render Files

Program-level metadata always uses the current renderer settings when bouncing ADM and re-render files. This means that Trim and Downmix, Binaural, and Group settings all come from the settings in Pro Tools.

When using the external renderer, there are three options:

- Connected Renderer
- Previous ADM File
- Factory Default



Bounce Mix dialog, Apply program-level metadata from setting with External Renderer

When using any of these options, Pro Tools takes the Trim and Downmix, as well as the Binaural information from the selected source. Group information and Bed/Object descriptions always come from Pro Tools.

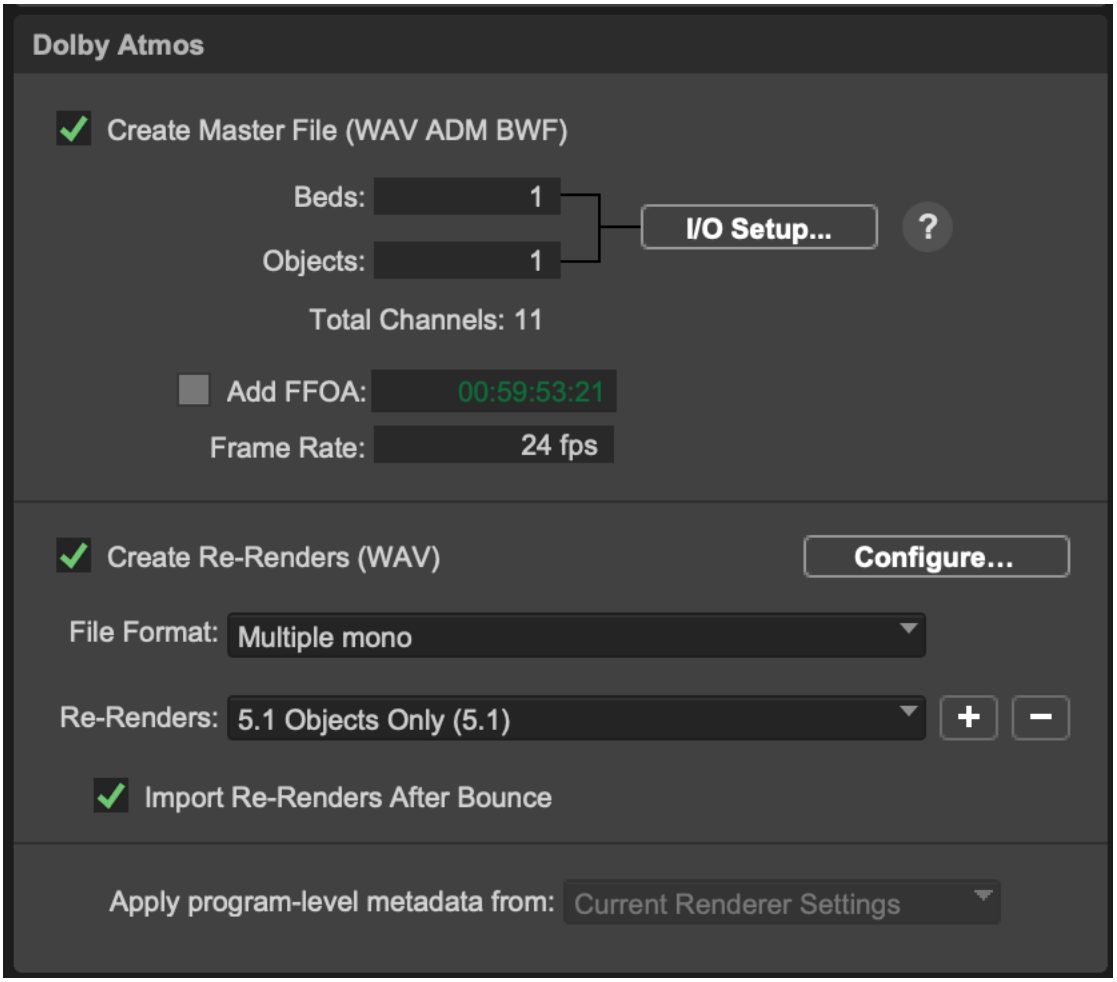
Offline Bounce of Dolby Atmos Re-renders

Pro Tools lets you bounce re-renders of 9.1.6 or 9.1.4 (Pro Tools Ultimate only), 7.1.4, 7.1.2, 7.1, 5.1.4, 5.1.2, 5.1, 2.0, 2.0 Direct, and Binaural Dolby Atmos mixes offline. The full mix can also be included, or it can be filtered by **Bed**, **Object**, and/or **Group**. Configurations can be saved and recalled in the Bounce Mix window either manually or with Presets. Multiple renders can be included along with the master ADM file in a single bounce.

⚠ Only two re-renders are allowed with online bounce. The quantity is not limited with offline bounce

To prepare a bounce of rendered mixes:

1. The session must contain Dolby Atmos elements. Any objects and beds that would otherwise appear in an ADM export may be included in a re-render.
2. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
3. Select **WAV (Dolby Atmos)** as the **File Type**. The **Create Master File (WAV ADM BWF)** option is enabled by default.



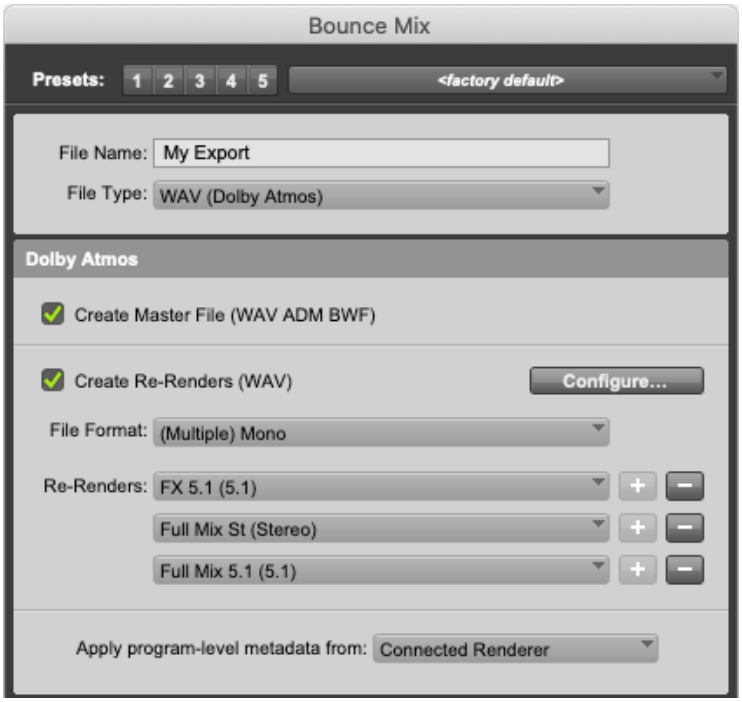
Create Master File (WAV ADM BWF) option

4. Enable the **Create Re-Renders (WAV)** option.
5. Configure re-render settings. Once configured they will persist between sessions. You can also save re-render presets and recall them at any time.



Re-Renders dialog

6. Add your configured re-render(s) to be included in the bounce.



Re-Renders configured for Bounce Mix

7. Select the desired **File Format**:
   - **Multiple Mono**
   - **Interleaved**
8. Select the desired source to **Apply Program Level Metadata From**:
   - **Factory Default**
   - **Connected Renderer**
   - **Previous ADM File**
9. Click **Bounce**.

Re-Renders Bounce Options

File Format

Select either the **Multiple Mono** or **Interleaved** option.

Interleaved

Exported interleaved files are bounced directly to the selected folder. File names use the following convention:

Re-Render

- Definition
- ‹*Bounce Name*›_‹*Re-Render name*›.wav
- Example
- MyProject_5.1 Full Mix.wav

ADM

- Definition
- ‹*Bounce Name*›.wav
- Example
- MyProject.wav

Multi-Mono

Exported re-renders are bounced to separate sub-folders for each re-render. Channel names are appended to the end of each file name.

Re-Render

- Definition
  - Folder Name: ‹*Bounce Name*›_‹*Re-Render name*›
  - File Name: ‹*Bounce Name*›_‹*Re-Render name*›.‹*channel abbreviation*›.wav
- Example
  - Folder Name: MyProject_5.1 Full Mix
  - File Names: MyProject_5.1 Full Mix.L.wav, MyProject_5.1 Full Mix.R.wav, etc.

Program Level Metadata

Program Level Metadata applies to both the exported ADM file and any re-render files. This means **`Trim`**, **`Downmix`**, and **`Binaural Render Mode (BRM)`** settings from the connected Dolby Atmos renderer or last-imported ADM may be passed through and applied to the re-renders, as well as being encoded as metadata in the ADM file.

Composite Beds

Pro Tools lets you assign individual Dolby Atmos groups to different beds that share the same output. This means you can maintain a single bed in the Dolby Atmos renderer and also sub-divide the content by groups when creating re-renders. This is very helpful when working with high channel counts (if channels are at a premium and need to be reserved for more objects). This lets you generate re-renders for different groups with unique content in each of the beds, but without using extra channels for each bed.

Internal Renderer Bounce, Commit, and Freeze

Pro Tools lets you Bounce, Commit and Freeze signal output from the Dolby Atmos Internal Renderer. This means that if you are using the Internal Renderer and monitoring through the specified Monitor Path, you can use Bounce Mix to bounce the physical output. This will include the renderer output, any signal manually assigned to the monitor path, as well as any processing on the Master Faders for the renderer or Monitor Path.

Pro Tools also lets you Freeze, Commit, or Track Bounce tracks that are receiving live re-renders as their input. This is very useful when dynamics processing is required for any re-render stem delivery since any inserts on the receiving tracks are included.

Lastly, you can use tracks with live re-renders to export a Media Composer–compatible session. This can include a selected range, and will automatically be padded with silence up to frame boundaries.

64 Immersive Audio with 360RA WalkMix Creator

Pro Tools Studio and Ultimate let you use Audio Futures 360RA WalkMix Creator for immersive audio mixing and rendering. 360RA is ideal for creating immersive mixes for headphones, stereo speakers, home audio systems, and virtual and augmented reality systems using 360RA ADM file playback.

For more information about the 360RA surround format, visit https://electronics.sony.com/360-reality-audio.

Installing and Activating 360RA WalkMix Creator Lite

360RA WalkMix Creator Lite is included with your Pro Tools Studio or Ultimate license, but you will need to download and install it separately.

You can upgrade to the full version of Sony WalkMix Creator at 360ra.com.

To install 360RA WalkMix Creator Lite:

1. From your myavid.com account or using Avid Link, download and run the 360RA WalkMix Creator Lite installer.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the installation.

To activate 360RA WalkMix Creator Lite:

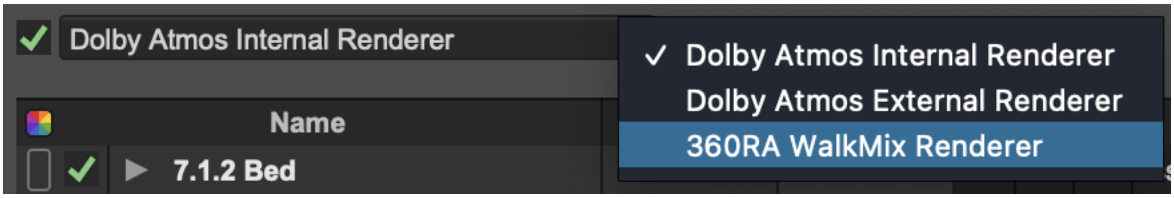
1. Visit 360ra.com and create an account.
2. Launch Pro Tools and enable the 360RA WalkMix Renderer.
3. In the 360RA WalkMix settings, click **Activate** and follow the onscreen instructions.
4. In the 360RA WalkMix Panner window, click **Activate** and follow the onscreen instructions.

360RA WalkMix Renderer

To mix in 360RA immersive audio, enable the 360RA WalkMix Renderer.

To select the 360RA WalkMix Renderer:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O**.
2. Click the **Renderer** tab.
3. Select **360RA WalkMix Renderer** and ensure that the Renderer is enabled.

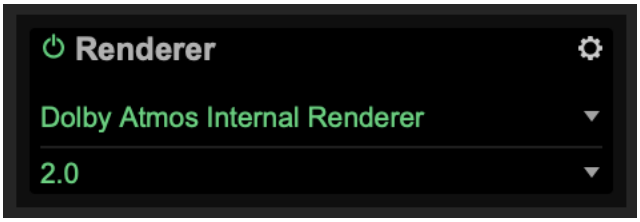


4. Click **OK**.

You can also select the 360RA WalkMix Renderer in the Edit window Renderer view.

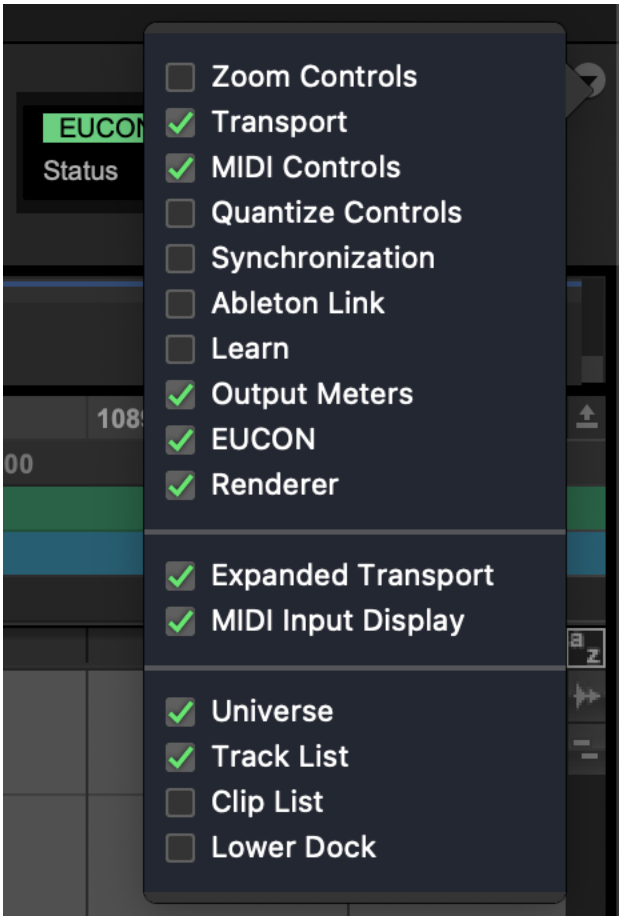
Renderer View in the Edit Window

Pro Tools provides a Renderer view in the Edit Window toolbar where you can select the Renderer (Dolby Atmos or 360RA), access Renderer settings, enable or disable the selected renderer, and select the Monitor path for the selected renderer.



To show (or hide) Renderer view in the Edit Window toolbar:

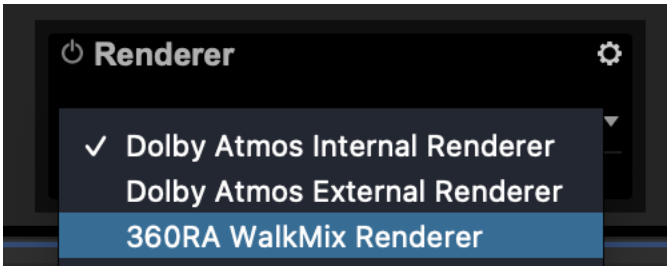
- Select (or deselect) Renderer in the Edit Window Toolbar menu.



To set the Renderer in the Edit window:

1. Ensure that **`Renderer`** view is enabled.
2. Select the desired Renderer:
   - **`Dolby Atmos Internal Renderer`**
   - **`Dolby Atmos External Renderer`**

– **360RA WalkMix Renderer**



To set the Monitor path for the selected Renderer in the Edit window:

1. Ensure that **Renderer** view is enabled.
2. Select the desired Monitor path (configured in **Setup > I/O**).
3. Click **OK**.

360RA WalkMix Renderer Window

To open the 360RA WalkMix Renderer window, do one of the following:

- In the Edit Window Toolbar Renderer controls, click the Gear icon.
- Choose **Window > Renderer**.

  Press Control+Command+= (Mac) or Control+Start+= (Windows).

Authenticate

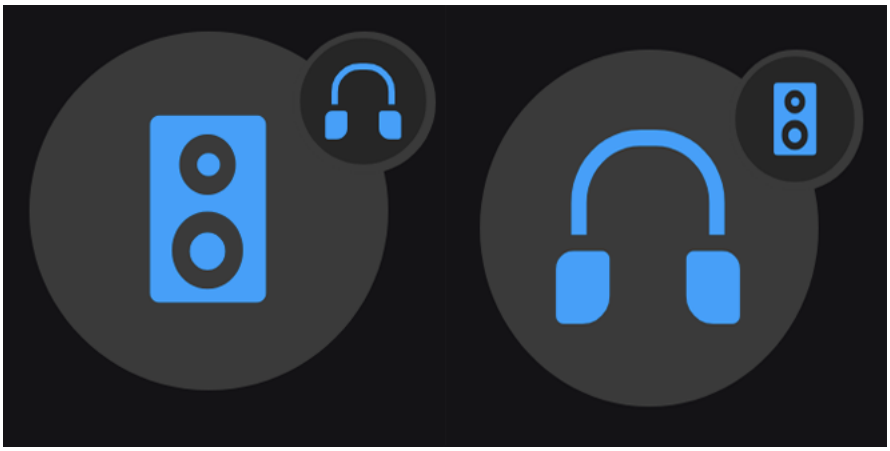
Before you can use the 360RA WalkMix settings, you must **Activate** 360RA WalkMix Creator and create an account at 360ra.com. Subsequently you need to **Authenticate** your 360.ra account by signing in.

360RA Renderer Window Views

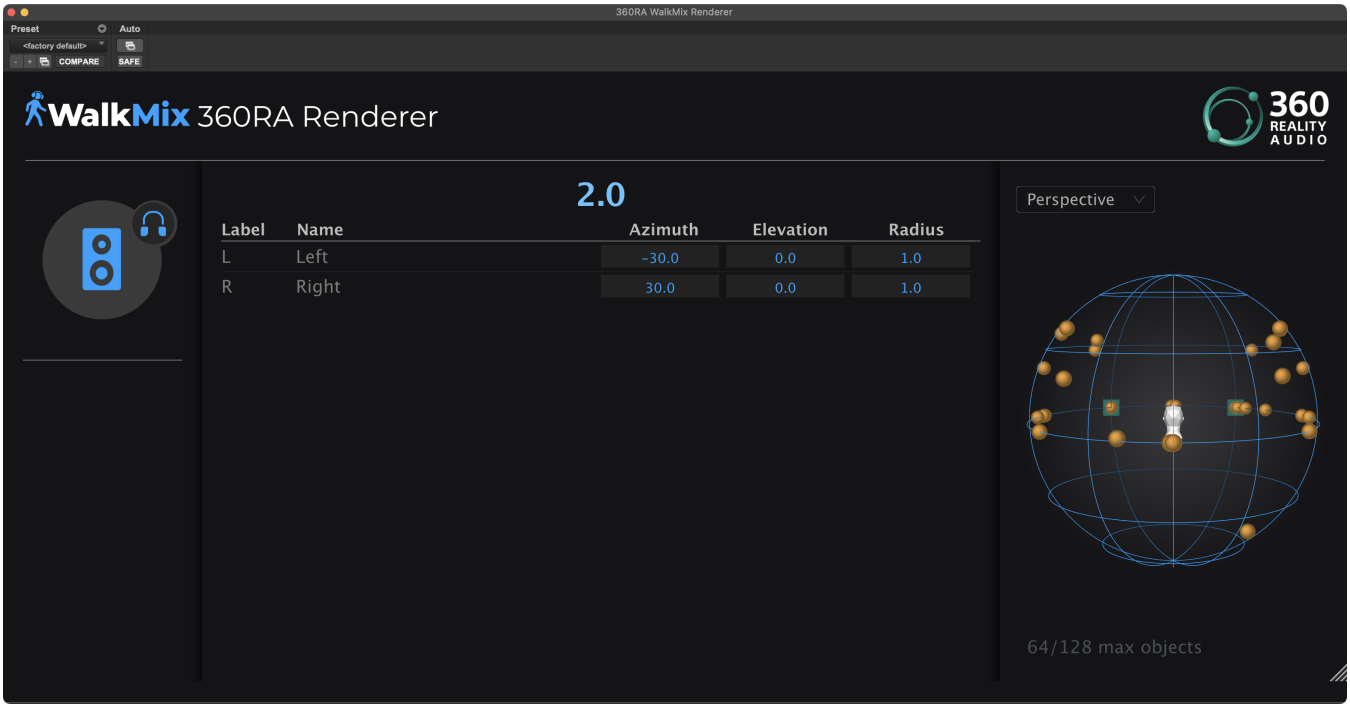
In the 360RA Renderer window, you can switch between Speaker and Headphones view.

To toggle between views in the 360RA Render window:

- Click the Speaker/Headphone icon.



Speaker View



Label

Displays the **`Label`** (such as **`L`** and **`R`**) for each channel object shown in the Spherical 360RA panner.

Every channel of any track whose output is assigned to the 360RA WalkMix Renderer appears as a unique object in the Spherical Panner.

Name

Displays the full **`Name`** (such as **`Left`** and **`Right`**) for each assigned object.

Azimuth

Displays the **`Azimuth`** value for each assigned object.

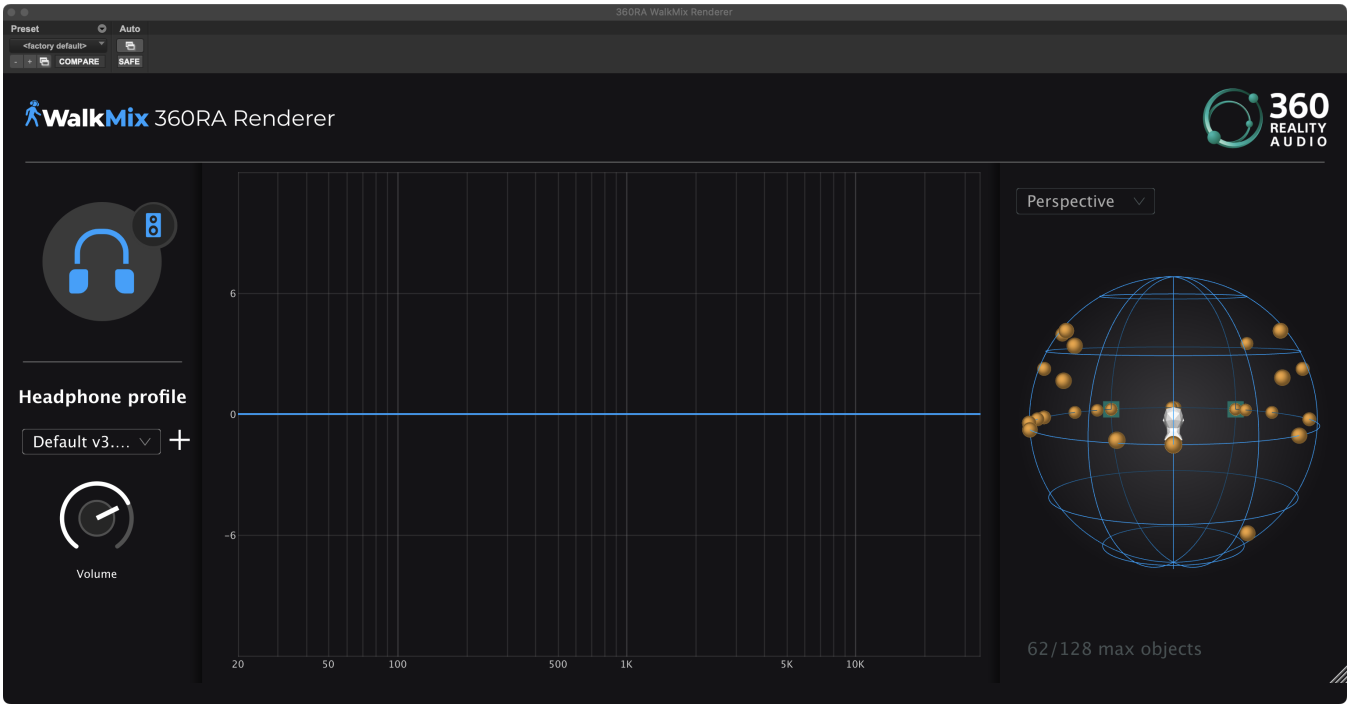
Elevation

Displays the **`Elevation`** value for each assigned object.

Radius

Displays the **`Radius`** value for each assigned object.

Headphone View



Headphone Profile

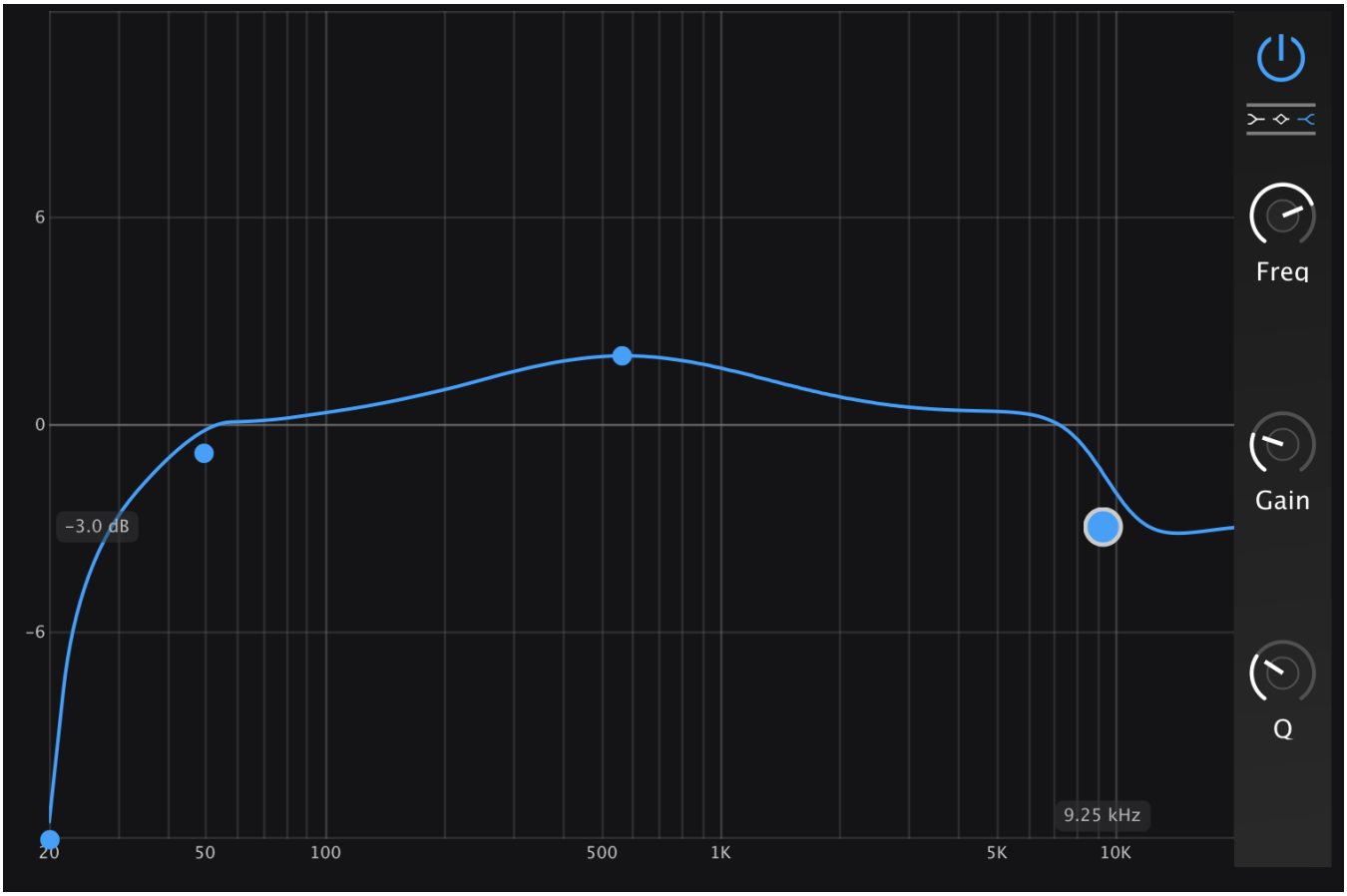
Lets you select and import Headphone profiles.

Volume

Lets you adjust the renderer output Volume between –INF and 6.00 dB.

EQ

Click on the frequency graph to add a parametric EQ band (up to 15 bands). You can click and drag the EQ band on the EQ graph to select it change its **`Freq`** (left/right) and **`Gain`** (up/down) settings.



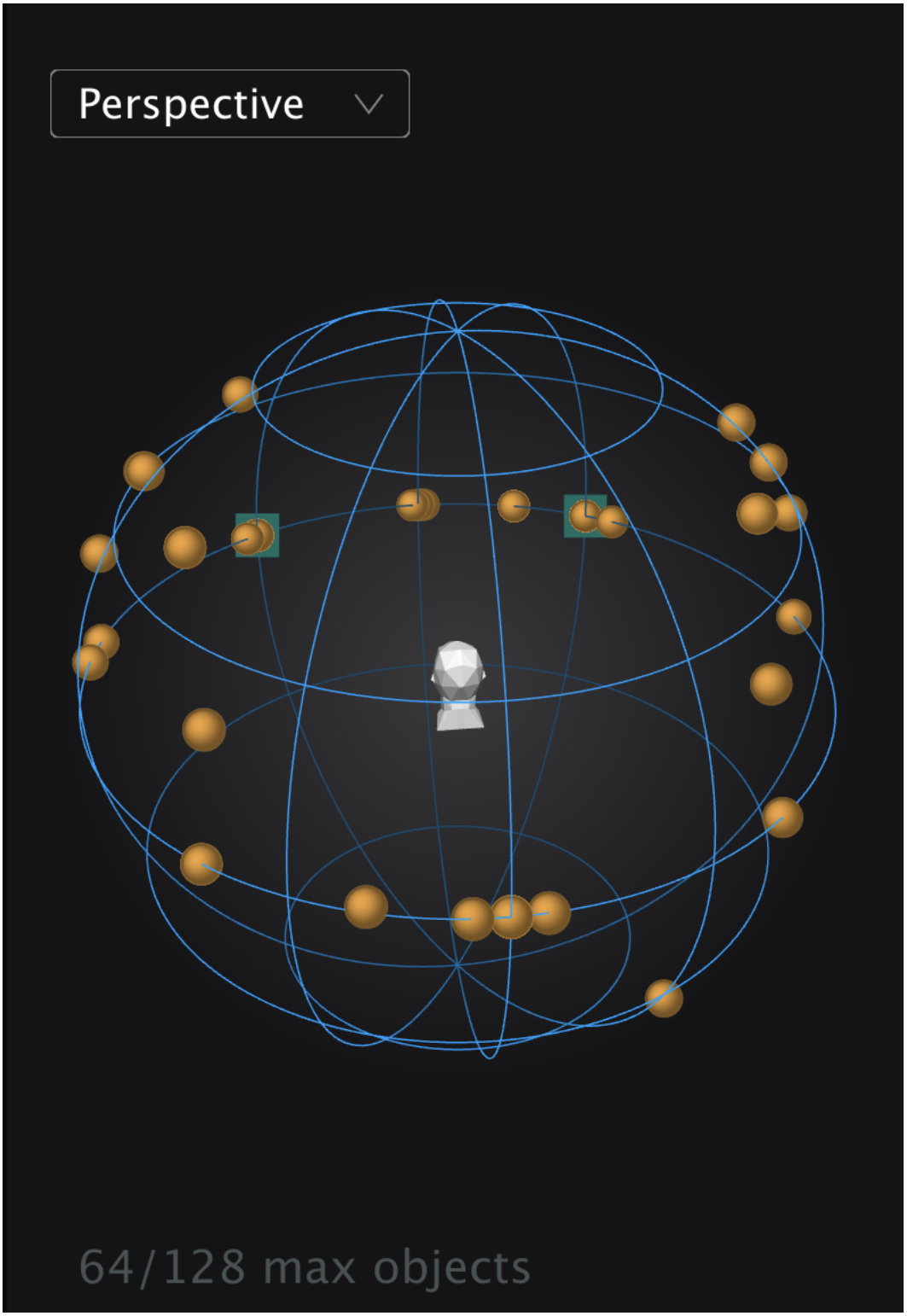
- **Power**: Click to enable or disable the EQ band.
- **Type**: Click to select Low Shelf, Band, or High Shelf.
- **Freq**: Click and drag to adjust the frequency from 20 Hz to 20.00 kHz.
- **Gain**: Click and drag to adjust the gain from –12.0 dB to 12 dB.
- **Q**: Click and drag to adjust the q from 0.10 to 10.00.

Spherical Panner Display

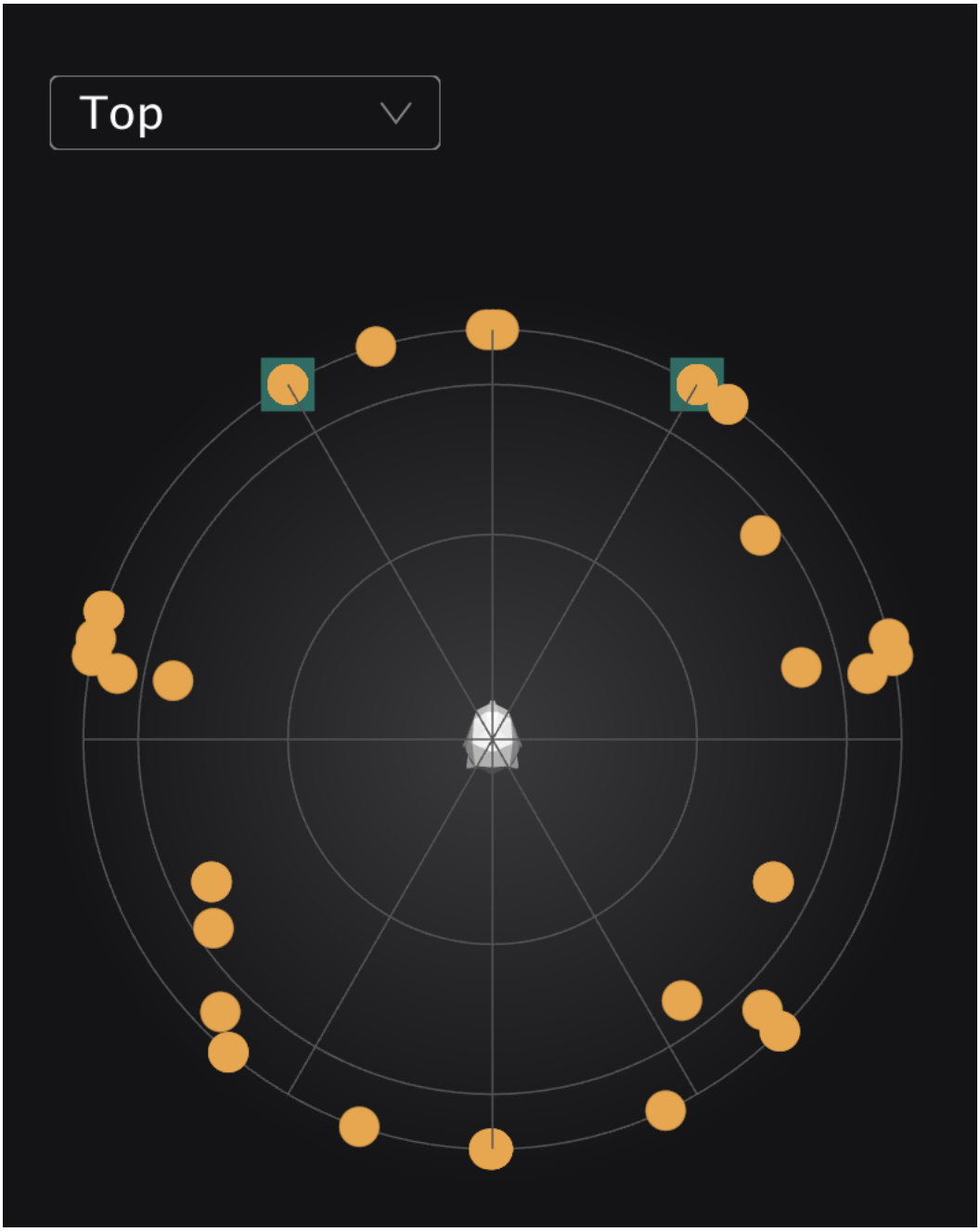
Dynamically displays 360RA objects as panned in the entire mix during playback (or at the current Edit location on the Timeline). You can choose from several different views of the Spherical Panner. The number of 360RA Objects used out of the number available (up to 128) is displayed below the Spherical Panner. Each object appears a ball in the Spherical Panner. Object locations are display only in the Render Settings window. To Write or Edit 360RA Object panning, do so in the Track Output window or in the Track Automation Lanes.

Perspective

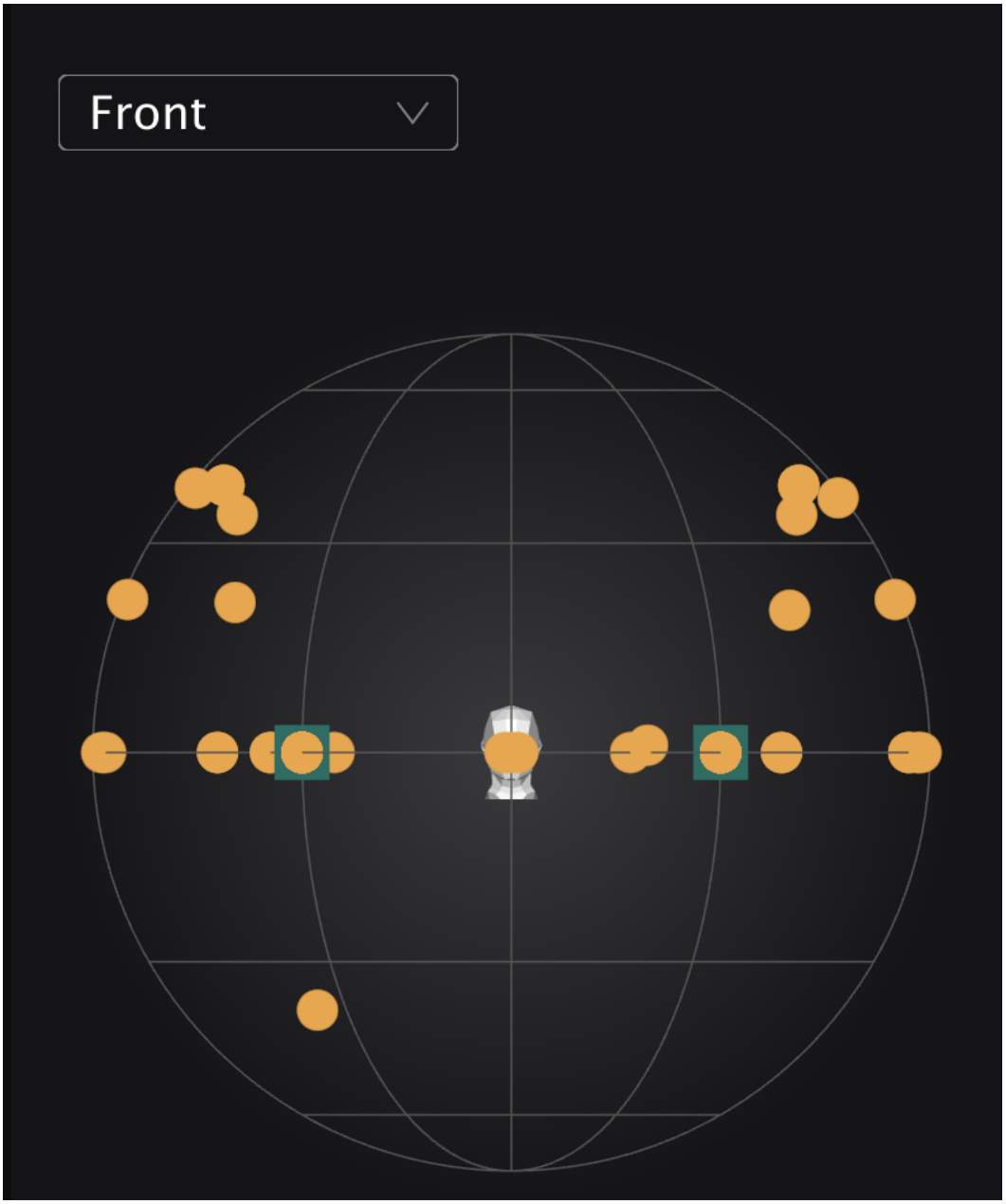
Perspective provides a full 360 view of all objects in the mix. You can click and drag on the Spherical Panner to change orientation (in Perspective view only).


Perspective
64/128 max objects

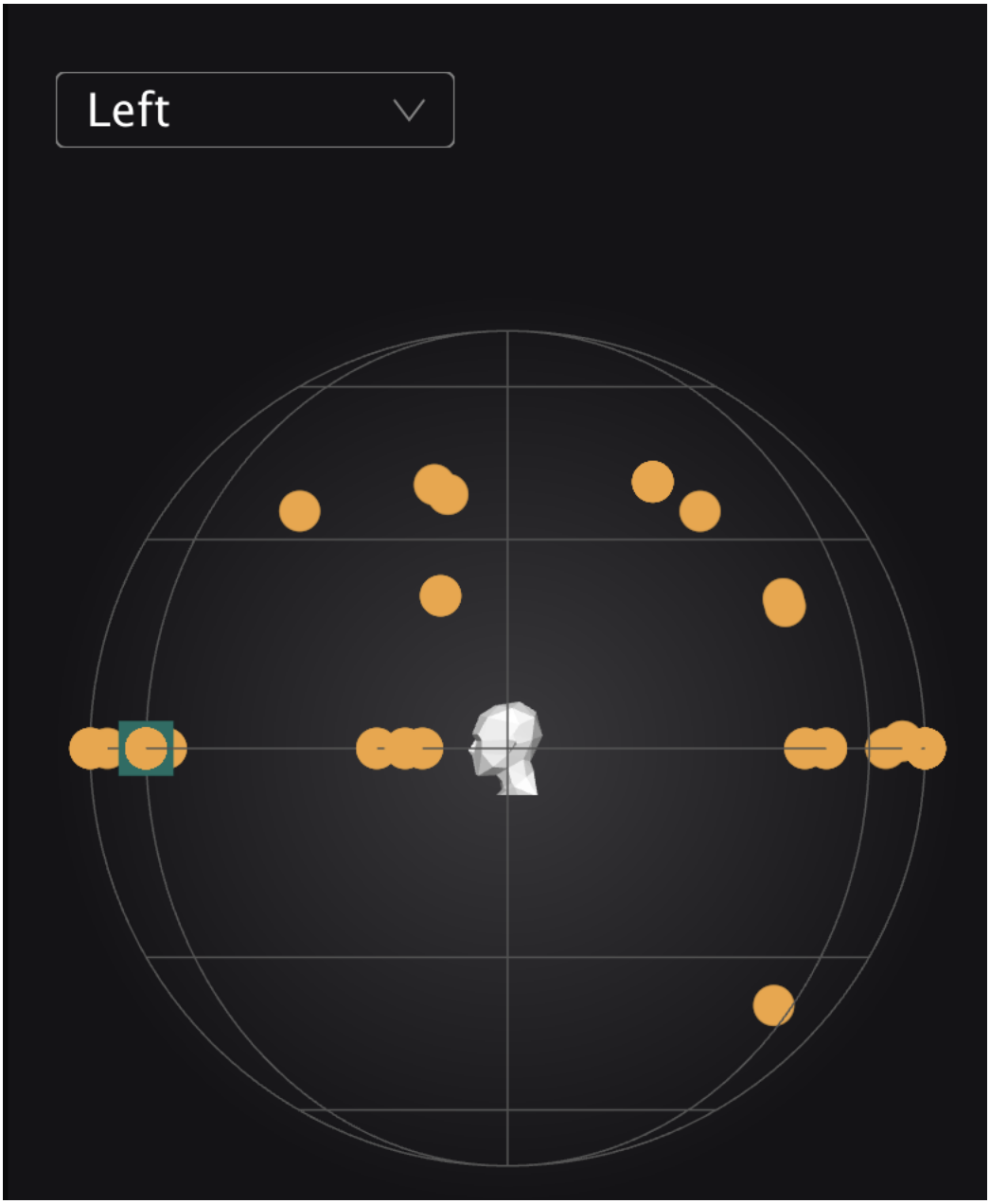
Top



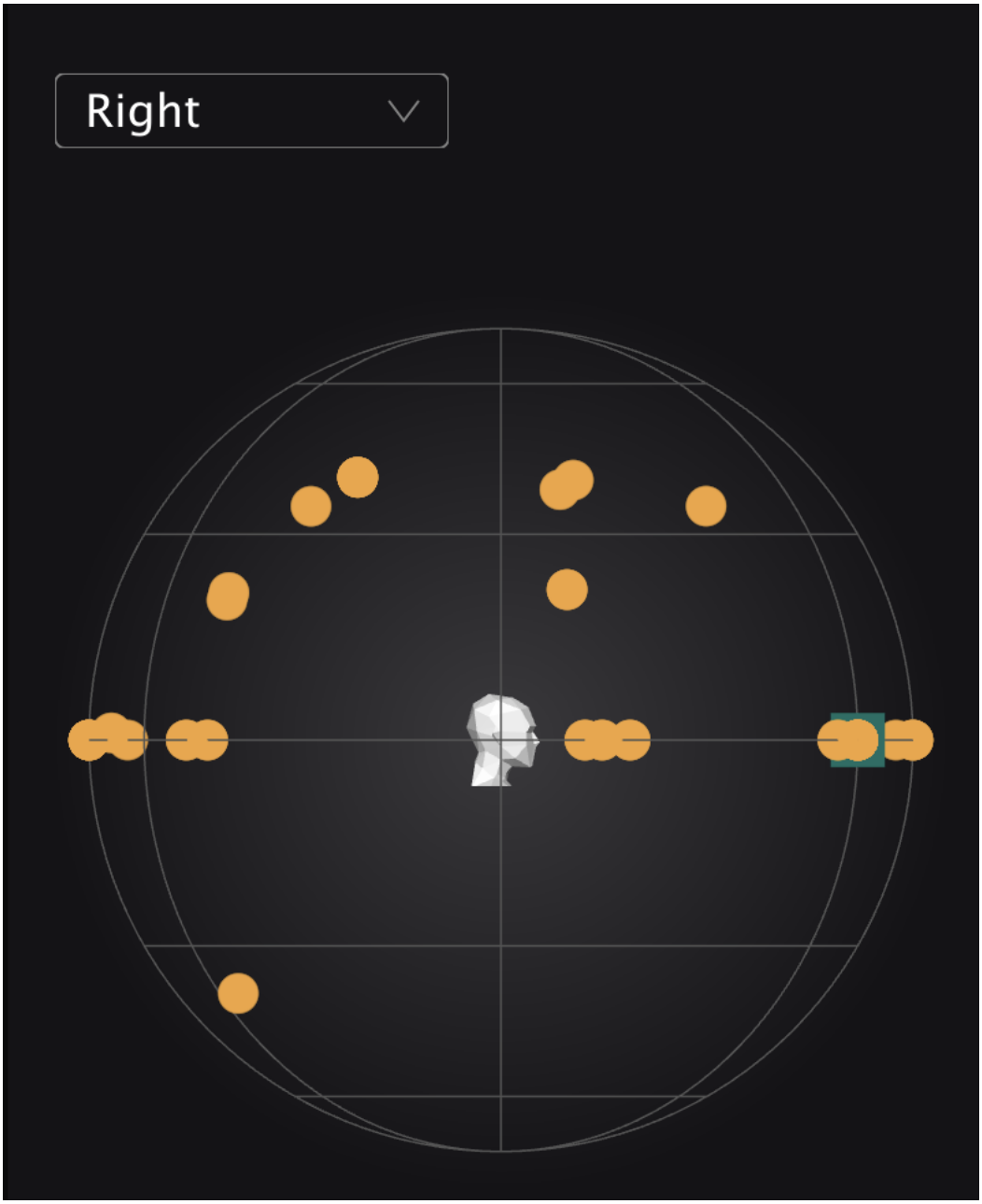
Front



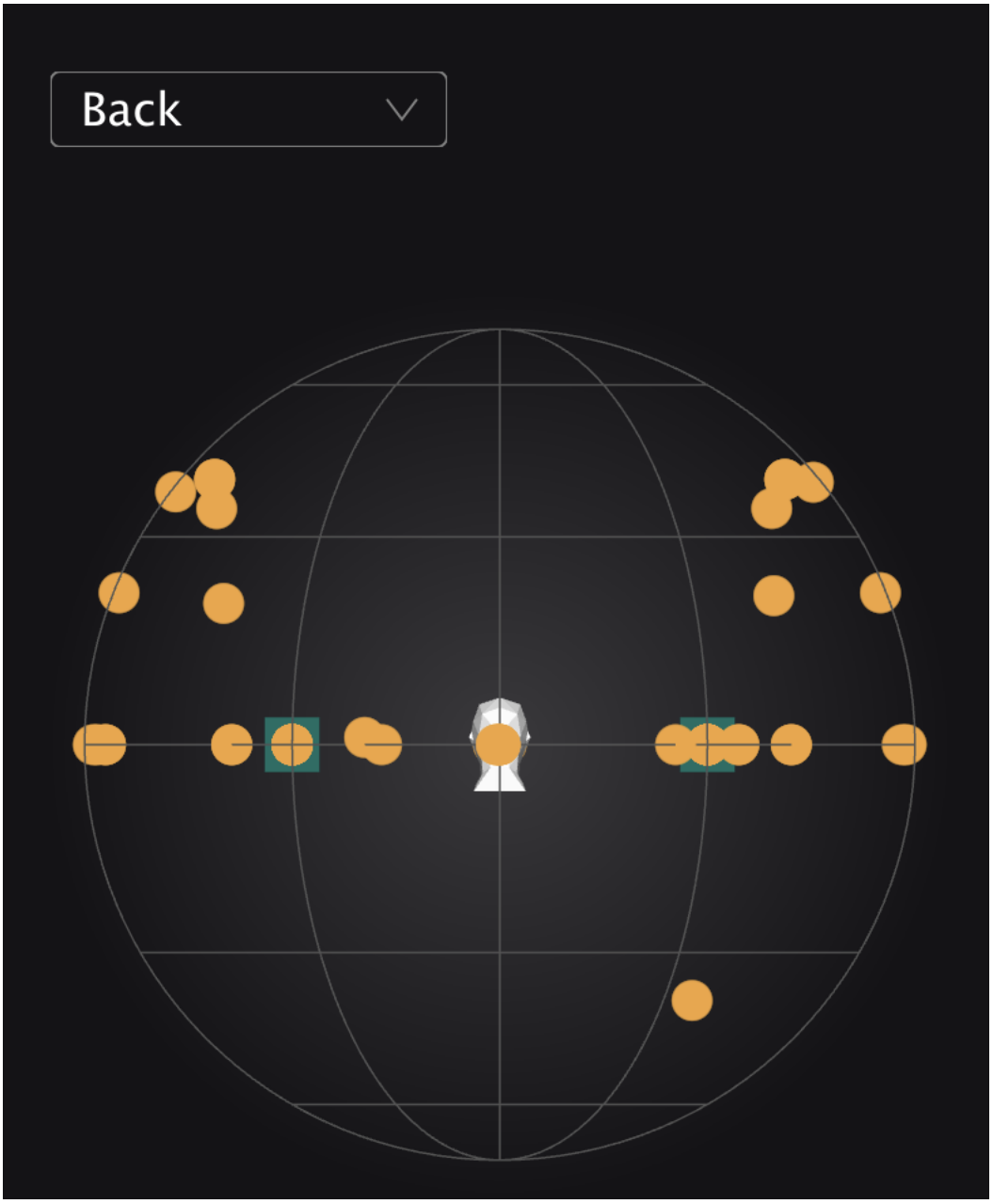
Left



Right



Back



360RA WalkMix Object Assignments

When 360RA WalkMix renderer is enabled you can assign the output of a track to the active renderer. This automatically instantiates a source plugin mixer to make the connection. 360RA WalkMix only supports Object creation. Object assignments insert a source mixer plugin that is the width of the track. 360RA supports all channel widths (except Ambisonics). However, any LFE channel is ignored, so any x.x.x (such as 7.1.4) or x.x (such as 5.1) surround format is displayed as x.0.x (such as 7.0.4) or x.0 (such as 5.0) respectively in the renderer.

Unlike with Dolby Atmos®, object assignments using the 360RA WalkMix Renderer are exclusive to each assigned track. They cannot be created or renamed in the I/O Setup, and they cannot be renamed by right-clicking on a track I/O selector. When an output is assigned to an object, it cannot be assigned to any other outputs (multiple outputs).

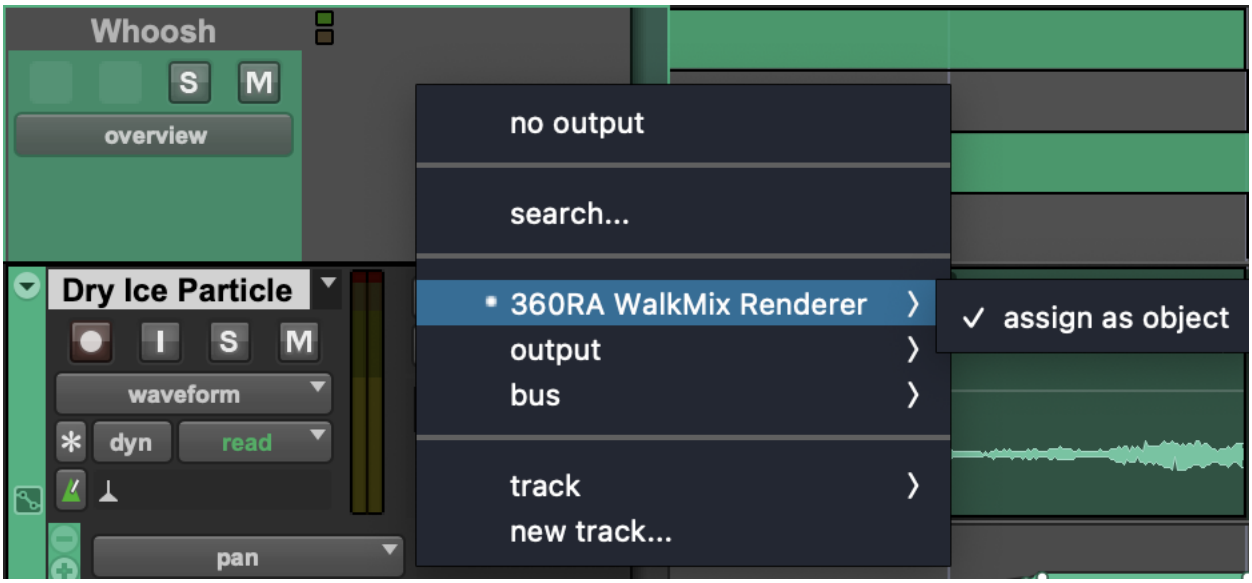
⚠ **Greater than stereo 360RA objects are removed when switching to Dolby Atmos. Mono and stereo objects are migrated and Pan is converted from Spherical to Pro Tools automation. This works the same way when switching from Dolby Atmos to 360RA.**

Object Assignments

Pro Tools with 360RA WalkMix Creator Lite supports up to 128 object assignments in a session. Assign tracks as objects in the 360RA WalkMix Render to include that track in the immersive mix.

To assign a track as a 360RA Leukemic Renderer object:

- In the Edit or Mix window, click the track audio Output selector and select **`360RA WalkMix Render > Assign As Object`**.

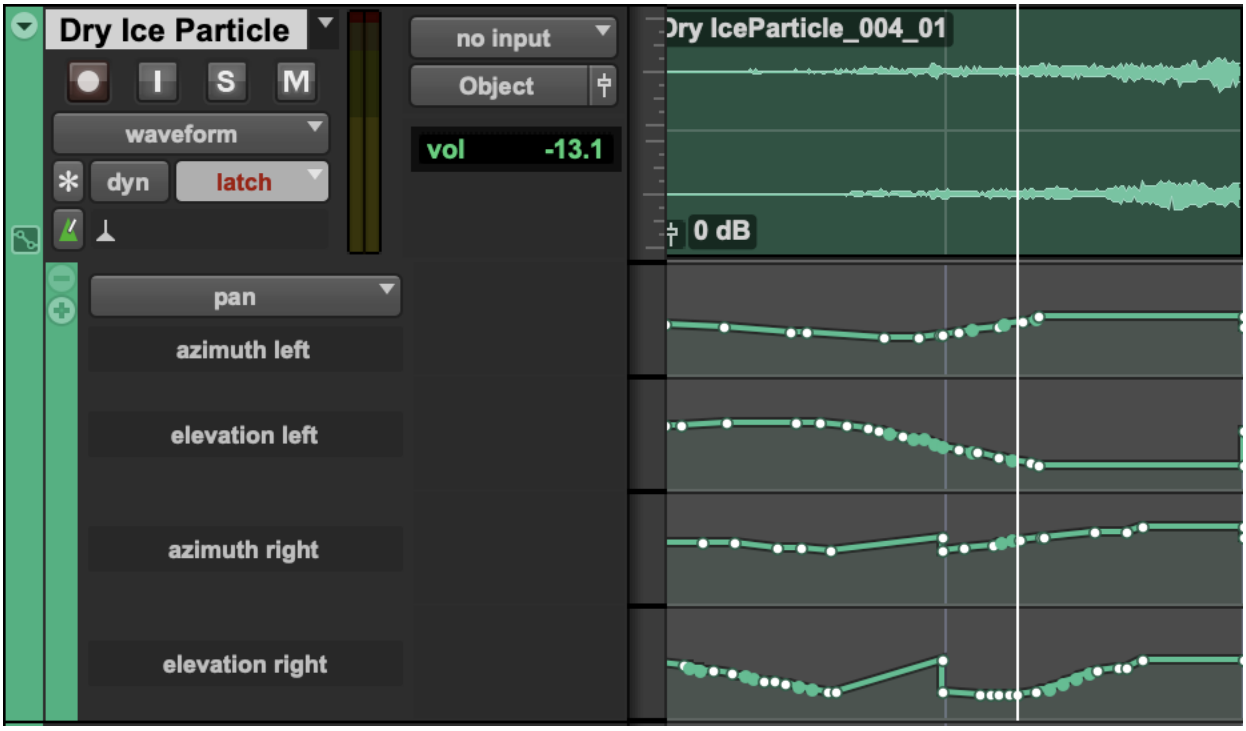


Object Panning

You can write automation for objects by clicking and dragging them in the 360RA Spherical panner (see "360RA WalkMix Object Assignments" on the previous page) and by drawing and editing Pan automation on tracks (see "360RA WalkMix Object Assignments" on the previous page).

360RA WalkMix Pan Automation

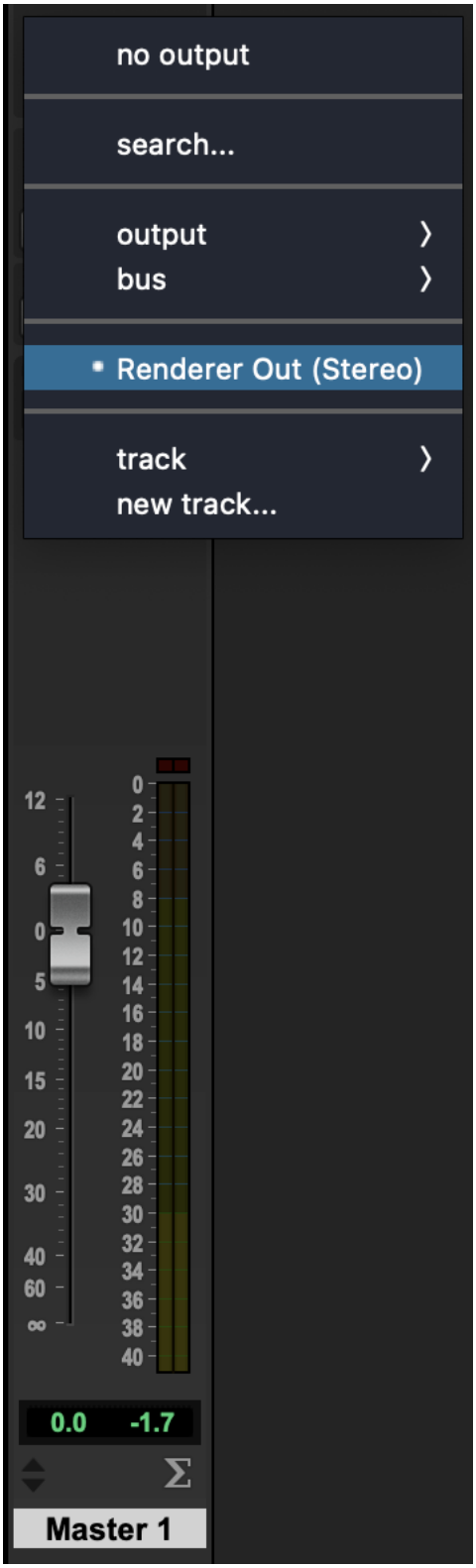
Pro Tools lets you edit **`Azimuth`** and **`Elevation`** automation for each channel in track Automation lanes.



Renderer Master Track

When the 360RA WalkMix Renderer is enabled, you can assign the Output of a Master Fader track to Renderer Out. This lets you:

- Control of overall level or the 360RA mix.
- Insert plugins to process the 360RA mix.


no output
search...
output
bus
Renderer Out (Stereo)
track
new track...
12
6
0
5
10
15
20
30
40
60
∞
0
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
18
20
22
24
26
28
30
32
34
36
38
40
0.0
-1.7
Σ
Master 1

Import ADM File

To import a 360RA ADM .WAV file:

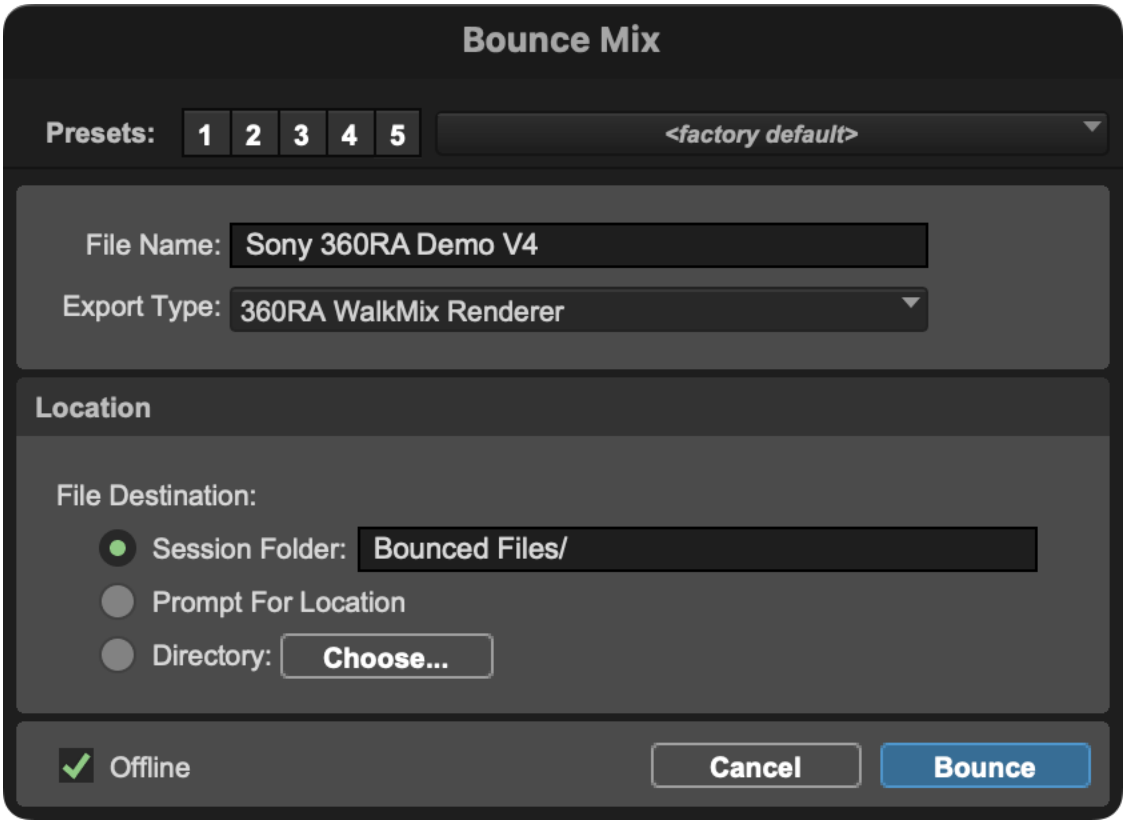
1. Create a new session and enable the 360RA WalkMix Renderer.
2. Choose **File > Import > Import ADM**.
3. Navigate to the 360RA ADM .WAV file, select it, and click **Open**.

⚠ **Importing 360RA ADM files is not supported with 360RA WalkMix Lite. Upgrade to the full version to be able to import a 360RA ADM file.**

Export 360RA Rendered File

You can export a 360RA ADM .WAV file from Pro Tools using **Bounce Mix**. This file can be played back by devices that support 360RA playback. It can also be imported into other Pro Tools sessions using the 360RA WalkMix Renderer.

1. **To export a 360RA AMD .WAV file:**
2. Configure your session for the desired mix.
3. Select the range on the Timeline that you want to export (such as from the start to the end of a song).
4. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
5. Select **360RA WalkMix Renderer** as the **Export Type**.
6. Type the **File Name**.
7. Specify the **File Destination**.
8. If desired, select **Offline** bounce.
9. Click **Bounce**.



64 Audio Vivid

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio on (macOS only) support UWA Audio Vivid. Audio Vivid provides 3D spatial position audio editing capabilities, supports binaural, 2.0, 5.1 to 7.1.4 spatial rendering, and lets you export WAV, ADM, and Audio Vivid standard MP4 (AV3A) formats.

Audio Vivid features:

- Import ADM format files in Pro Tools.
- The position and trajectory of sound can be defined by using the Panner's audio-visual control function, and the audio-visual location can also be controlled using the Audio Vivid panner.
- Trajectory automation.
- Spatial audio monitoring and mixing (binaural, stereo, 5.1, 5.1.4, 7.1, 7.1.2, and 7.1.4) using the rendering algorithms in Audio Vivid Renderer.
- Bounce Mix of the current Audio Vivid project.

Install the Audio Vivid Production Suite

The Audio Vivid Production Suite includes both the Audio Vivid Panner and the Audio Vivid Renderer.

Panner: Supports the definition of the position and trajectory of sound, and set the spatial position and sound movement trajectory of mono/stereo.

Renderer: Is equipped with multiple rendering algorithms and supports binaural, stereo, 5.1, 5.1.4, 7.1, 7.1.2, and 7.1.4 rendering monitoring. It also supports up-down mixing of sound and channel compression.

To install the Audio Vivid Production Suite:

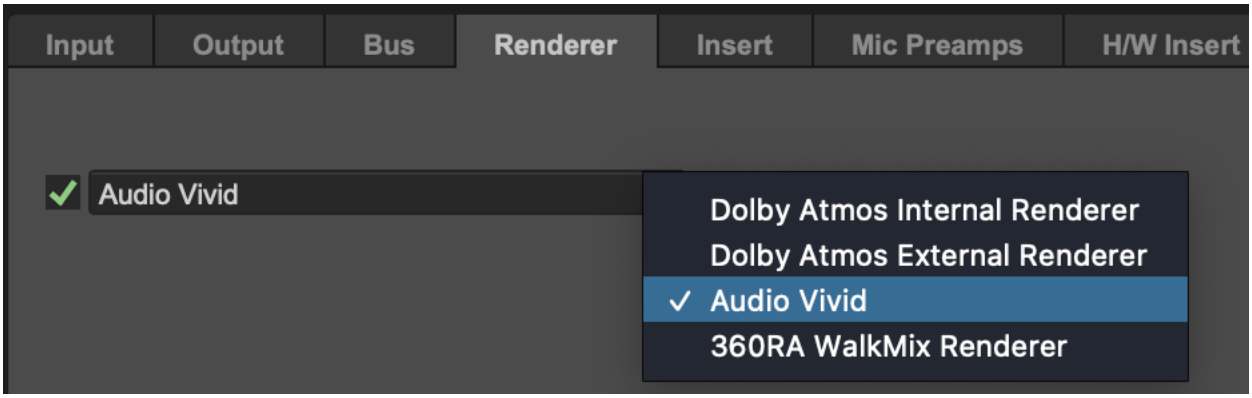
1. Download and run the Audio Vivid Production Suite installation package.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions and use the default installation path to complete the installation.

Configure the Audio Vivid Renderer

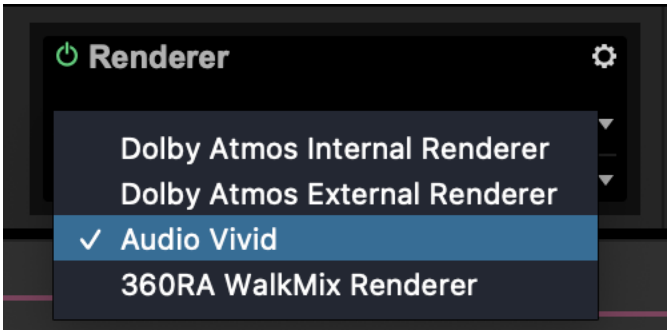
After installing the Audio Vivid Production Suite, you can select the Audio Vivid Renderer in either the I/O Setup or in the Renderer controls in the Edit Window toolbar.

To enable the Audio Vivid Renderer, do one of the following:

- Choose **Setup > I/O > Renderer**, select **Audio Vivid** from the Renderer selector, and click **OK**.



- In the Renderer controls in the Edit Window toolbar, select **Audio Vivid** from the Renderer selector.



Audio Vivid Object and Beds Assignments

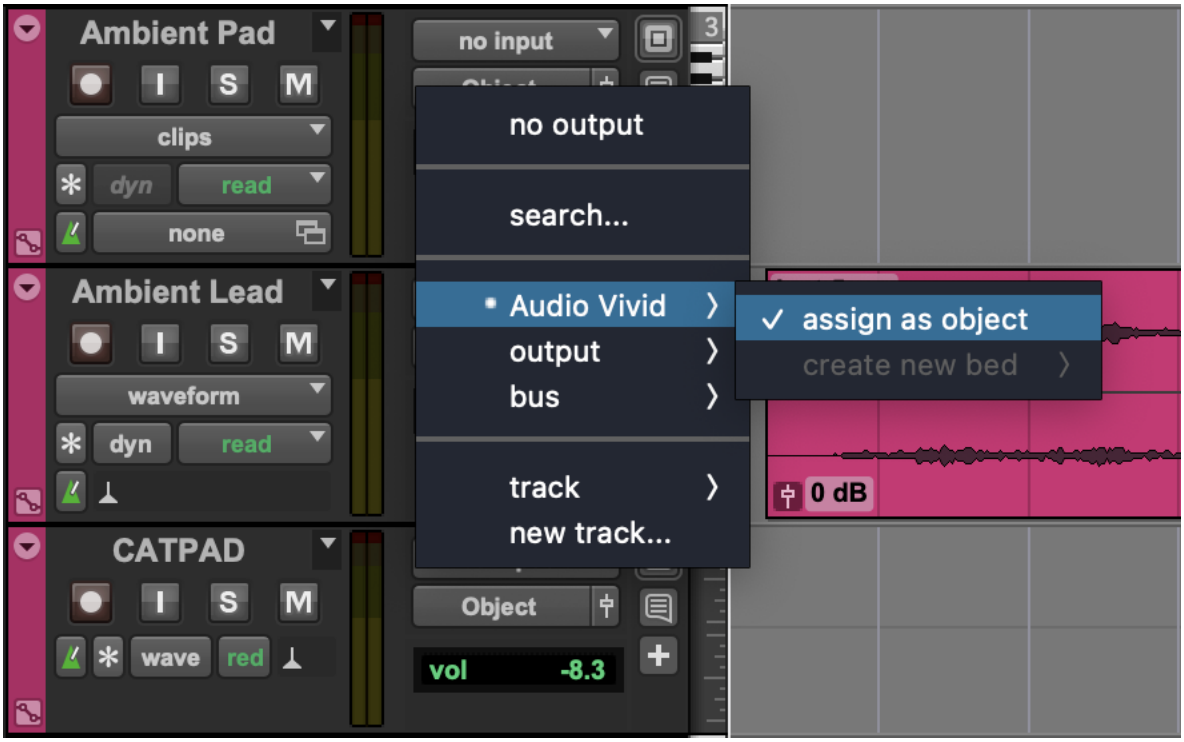
When the Audio Vivid renderer is enabled, you can assign the output of a routable track in the session to the renderer as an object. This automatically instantiates a source plugin mixer to make the connection.

Object Assignments

Object assignments insert a source mixer plugin that is the width of the track. They are only allowed on track widths that are supported by the destination Renderer plugin.

To assign a track as an Audio Vivid Object:

1. Ensure that the Audio Vivid Renderer is enabled.
2. From the track output selector, select **`Audio Vivid > Assign as Object`**.



⚠ **Unlike Dolby Atmos, object assignments are exclusive per track and are made from the track output section. They cannot be created or renamed in the I/O Setup, and they cannot be renamed by right-clicking on a track I/O plate. When an output is assigned to an object, it cannot be routed to multiple outputs.**

Bed Assignments

Similar to Objects, when the Audio Vivid Renderer is enabled you can assign track outputs to an Audio Vivid/Bed. Bed assignments insert a Pro Tools mixer of a specified width in between the track output/send assignment and the Audio Vivid plugin. This lets you pre-pan the signal before the signal reaches the Audio Vivid plugin. Beds can only be created for widths that the destination mixer plugin supports as inputs. Beds always use Pro Tools panning, even if the destination mixer uses another pan format.

Audio Vivid supports Bed channel widths of Stereo, 5.1, 5.1.2, 5.1.4, 7.1, 7.1.2, and 7.1.4.

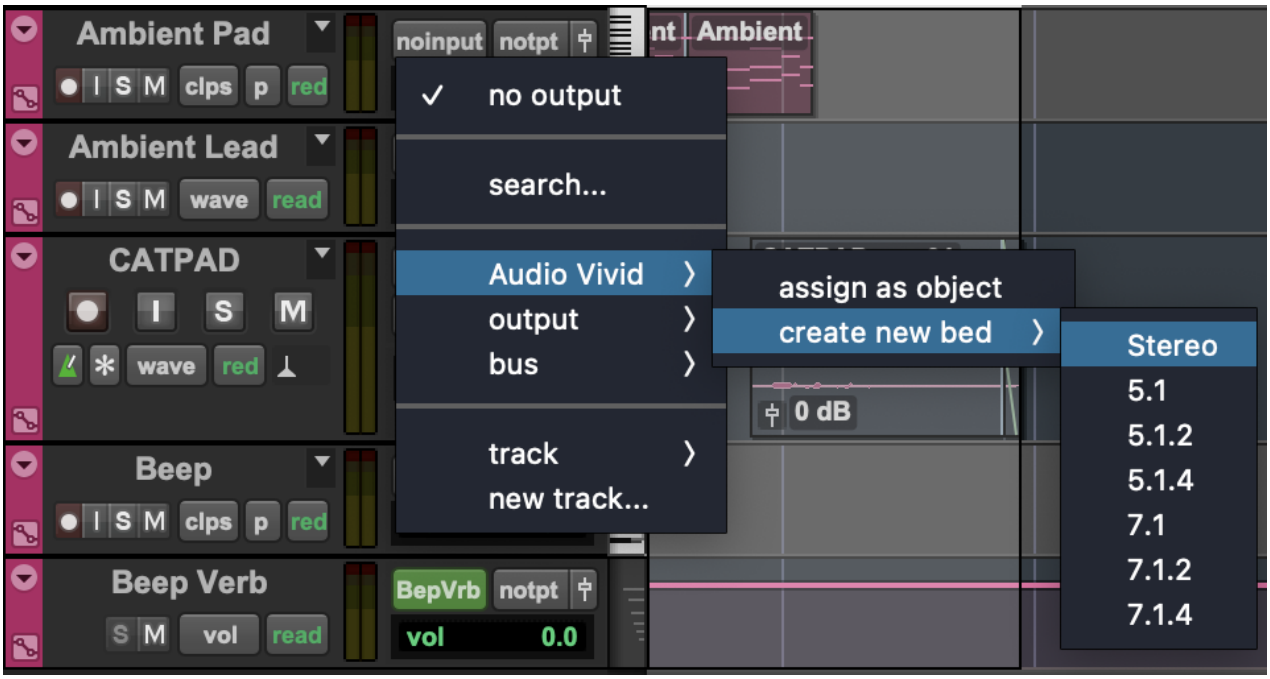
Audio Vivid Beds do not support subpaths. If a track is assigned to a subpath in a Dolby renderer, a new Bed is created during migration that matches the main Bed path width.

For information on assing track sends to beds, see AAX Render Plugin Bed Sends.

Audio Vivid does not support Track send assignments to Beds. When migrating a session from Dolby Atmos to Audio Vivid, any Sends assigned to Beds are removed. These assignments will be restored when switching back to the original configuration.

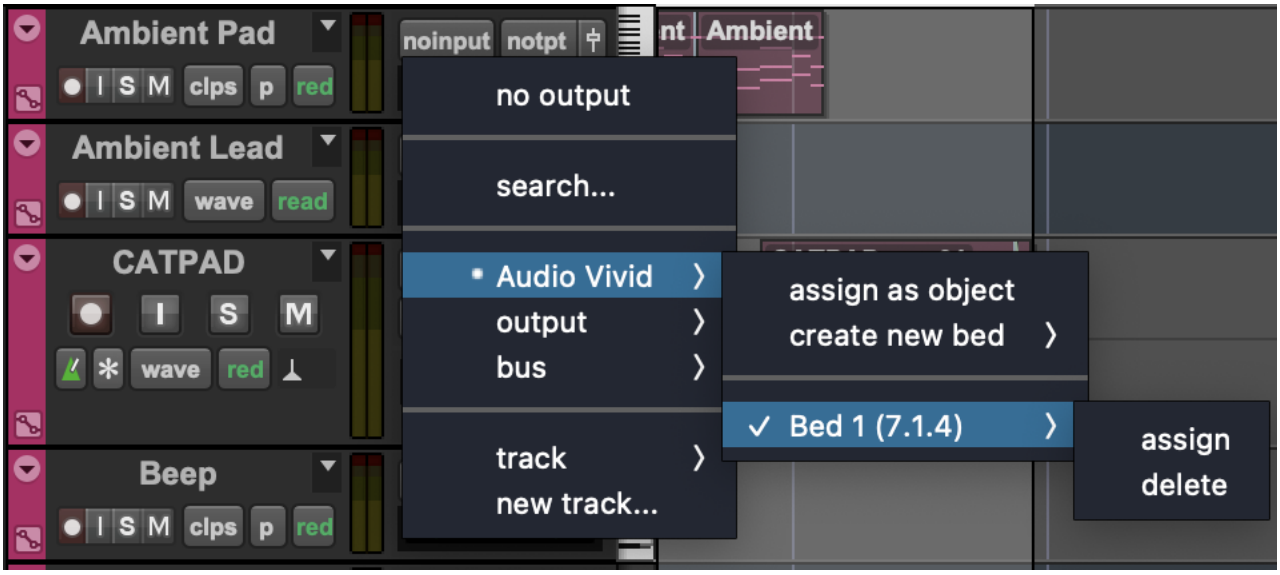
To create and assign a new Audio Vivid bed:

- From the track Output selector, choose **`Audio Vivid > Create New Bed`** and select the desired channel width.



Managing AAX Beds

Bed paths can be added and managed using the track Output selector in Edit and Mix windows. It is possible to create a new Bed, assign track to a Bed, or delete a Bed. Beds can be reused by other tracks in session.



Renderer Switching and Bed Data Migration

When switch between renderers for the first time, for any formats that support Beds, all existing Bed-related metadata is automatically migrated to the destination format. The following properties are preserved with this initial migration:

Track Assignments

Tracks that were assigned to a specific Bed in the source renderer are automatically reassigned to the corresponding Bed in the new renderer.

Custom Path Names

Any user-defined names for Beds are retained and transferred.

Color Settings

Custom color configurations applied to Beds are migrated to ensure consistency in visual layout and workflow.

Bed Width Compatibility

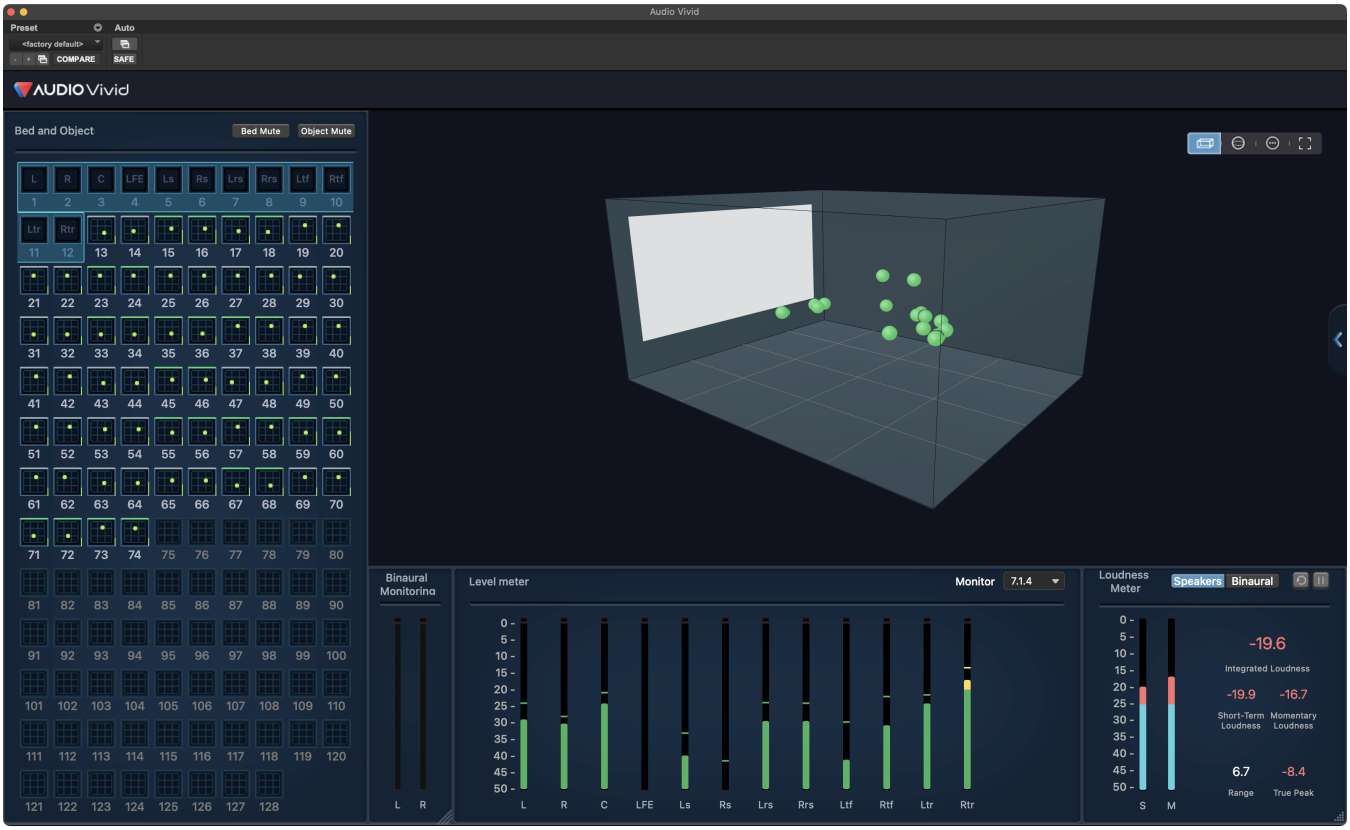
If a Bed width used in the source format is not supported in the destination renderer, a new Bed is created in the destination format using the width that most closely matches the Bed channel width from the source renderer.

If the Bed width in the source format is larger than what the destination renderer supports, the associated track is migrated as assigned to object, otherwise the tracks are left unassigned if object routing is not supported.

Post-Migration Variations

After first changing the renderer, any changes made to existing Beds (such as reassignments, renaming, or color adjustments) are stored as a separate renderer-specific variation within the session. This ensure that each renderer can maintain its own independent Bed configuration while still preserving the initial migration mapping.

Audio Vivid Renderer Window



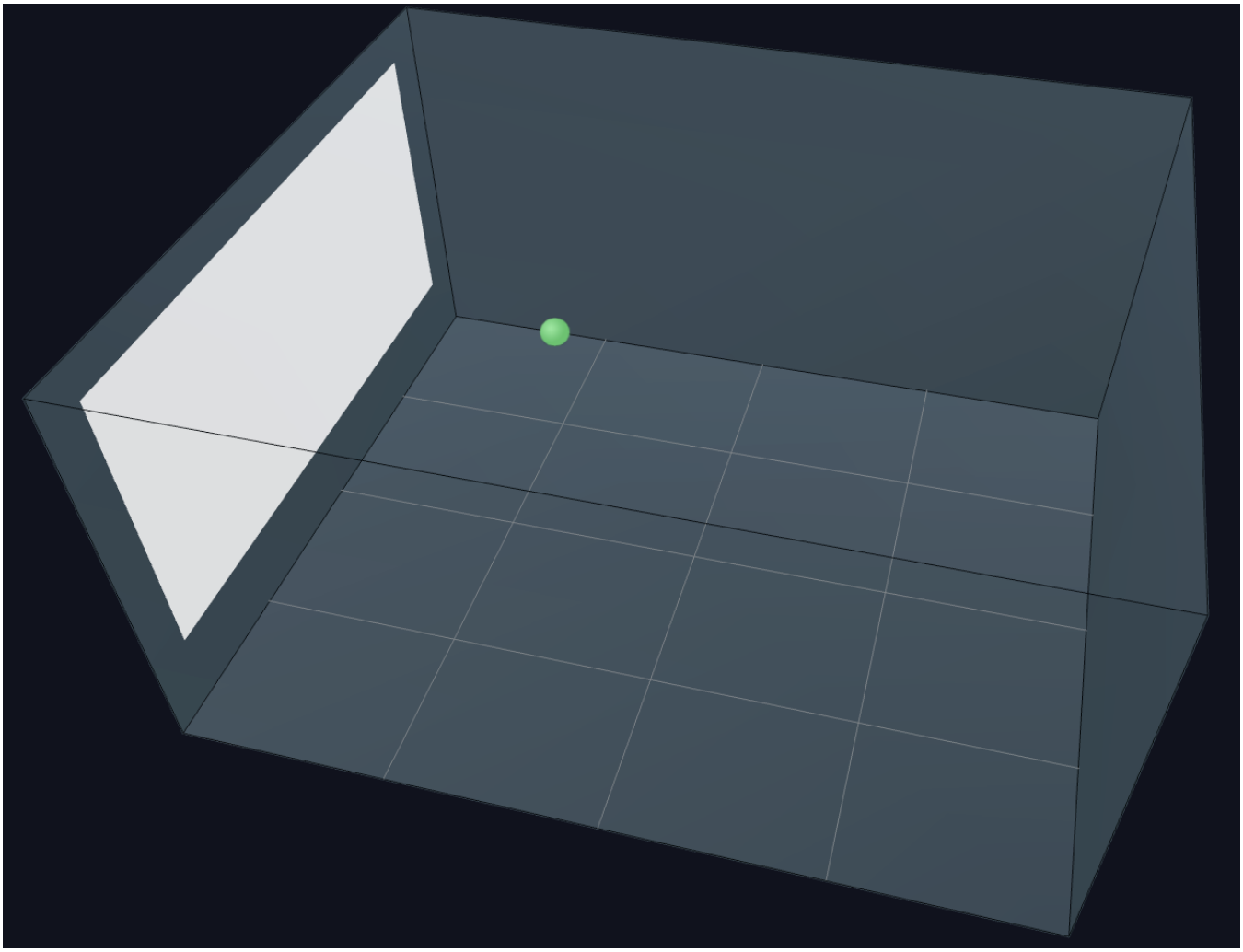
To open the Audio Vivid Renderer window, do one of the following:

- In the Edit Window Toolbar Renderer controls, click the Gear icon.
- Choose **`Window > Renderer`**.

  Press Control+Command+= (Mac) or Control+Start+= (Windows).

Theater View

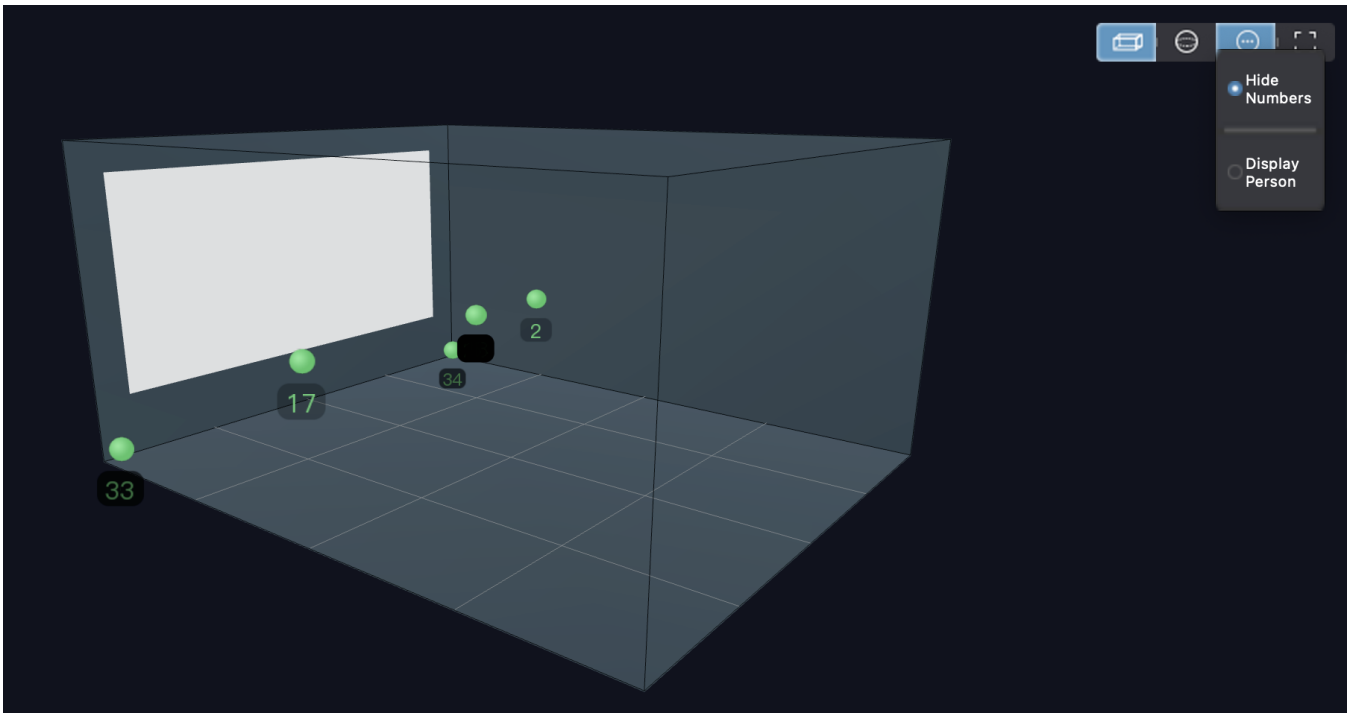
Theater view displays a screen at the front of the virtual theater to orient panning. You can click and drag the display to reorient perspective.



Object View Options

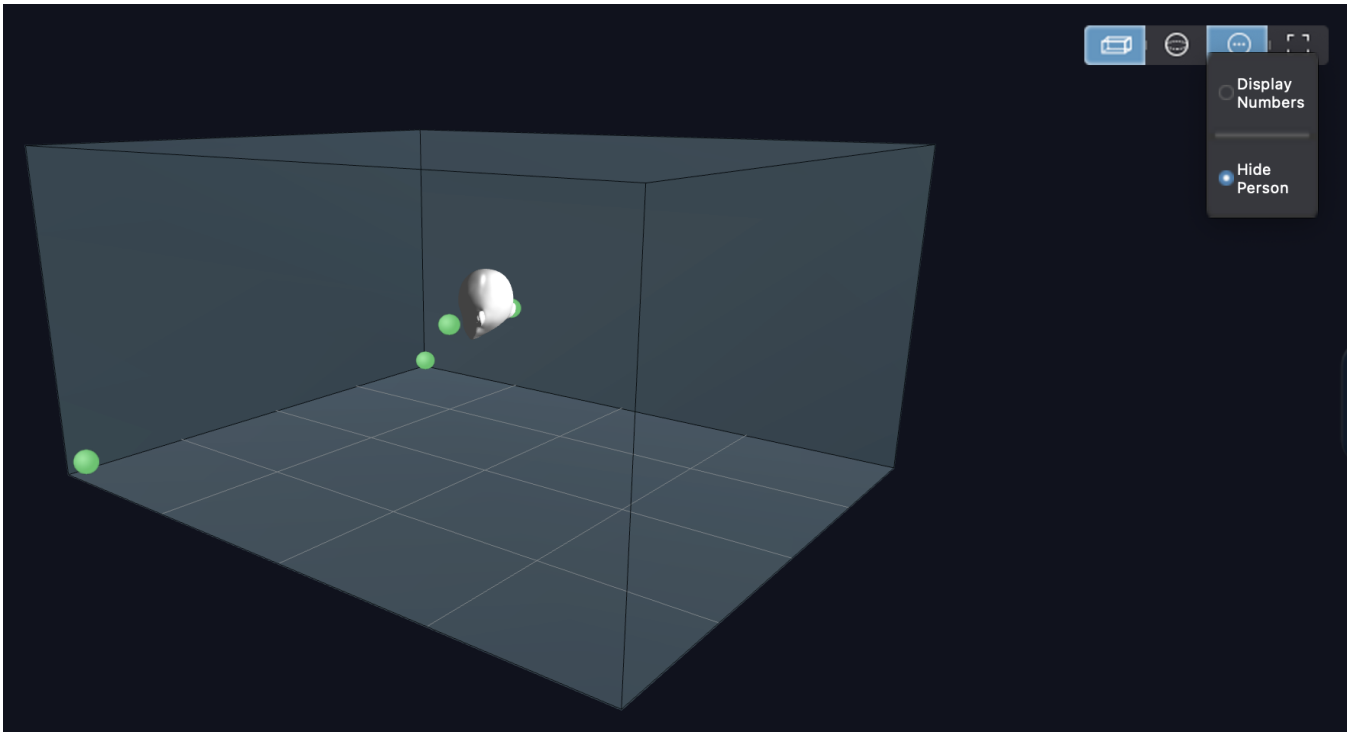
Hidden Numbers

Enable to show Object numbers in the 3D display.



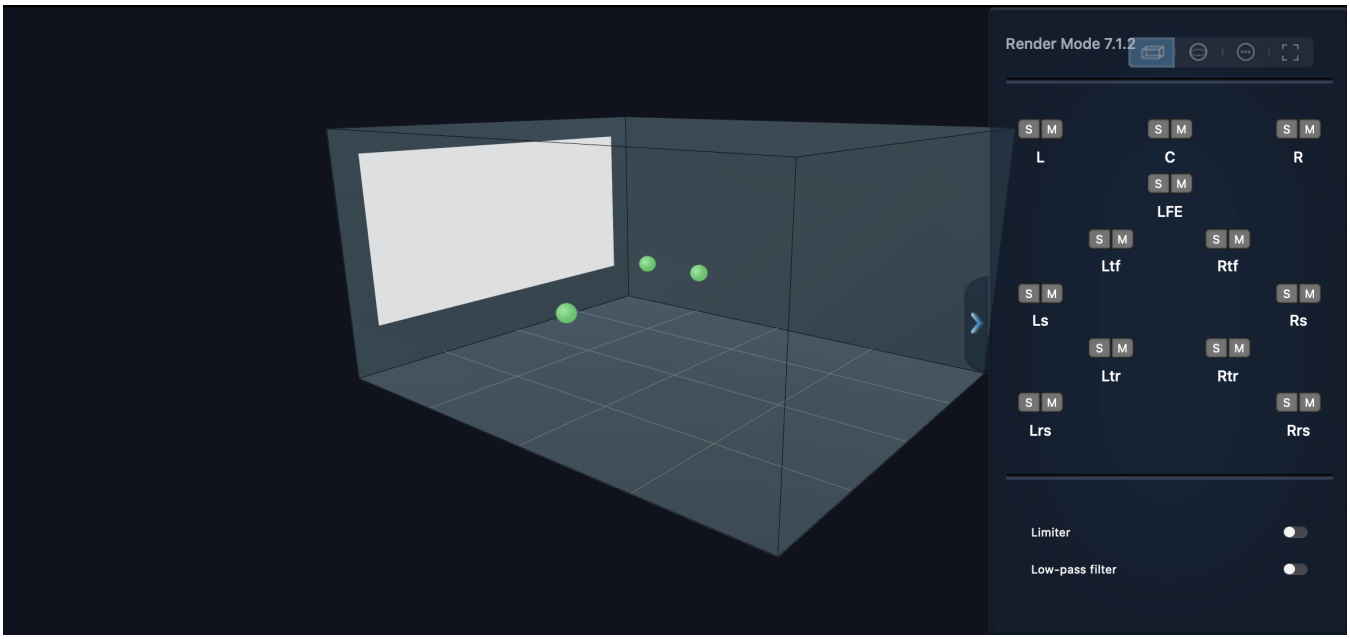
Display Person

Enable to show a virtual head showing the listening position in the 3D panning space instead of the virtual theater screen.



Speakers View

Click the < icon on the right side of the 3D display to show Speakers view. Click the > icon to hide Speakers view.



S

Click **S** to solo the corresponding speaker.

M

Click **M** to mute the corresponding speaker.

Limiter

Click to toggle the Limiter on and off.

Low-pass Filter

Click to toggle the Low-pass Filter on and off.

Bed and Object Panel

The input status section represents all available 128 channels and how the channel IDs are assigned to beds and objects. Channels that are assigned to objects show if a track has an active connection to the object (13–128). Beds are represented by a band (1–12).

Bed Mute

Click to mute (or unmute) all Beds.

Object Mute

Click to mute (or unmute) all Objects.

Monitor Level Meters

The monitoring level display area shows the level values of the corresponding speaker or binaural monitoring in the current rendering mode. Binaural monitoring is only enabled in Binaural mode. The level meter shows a dual-level display: the top horizontal line indicates the peak level and the level column shows the RMS level.

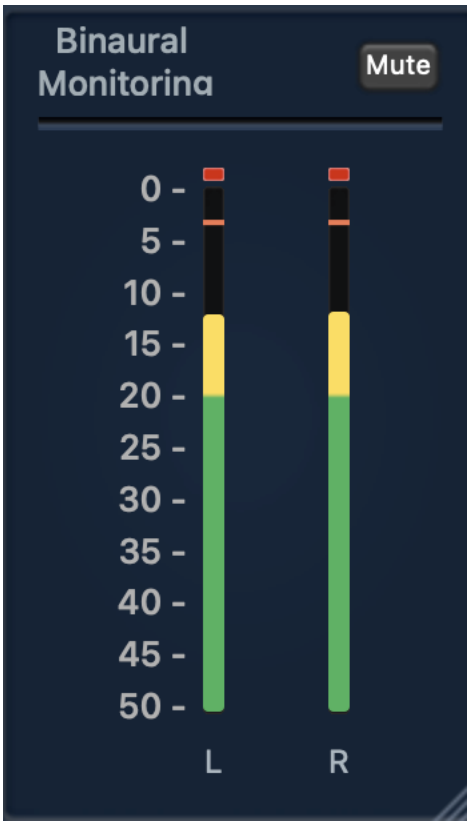
Monitor Selector

Select the desired monitor format: **`7.1.4`**, **`7.1.2`**, **`7.1`**, **`5.1.4`**, **`5.1.2`**, **`5.1`**, or **`2.0`**.

Meters are ordered from left to right: L/R/C/LFE/LS/Rs/Lrs/Rrs/Ltf/Rtf/Ltr/Rtr.

Binaural Monitoring

Click the lower-right corner of the Binaural Monitoring pane to expand the view.

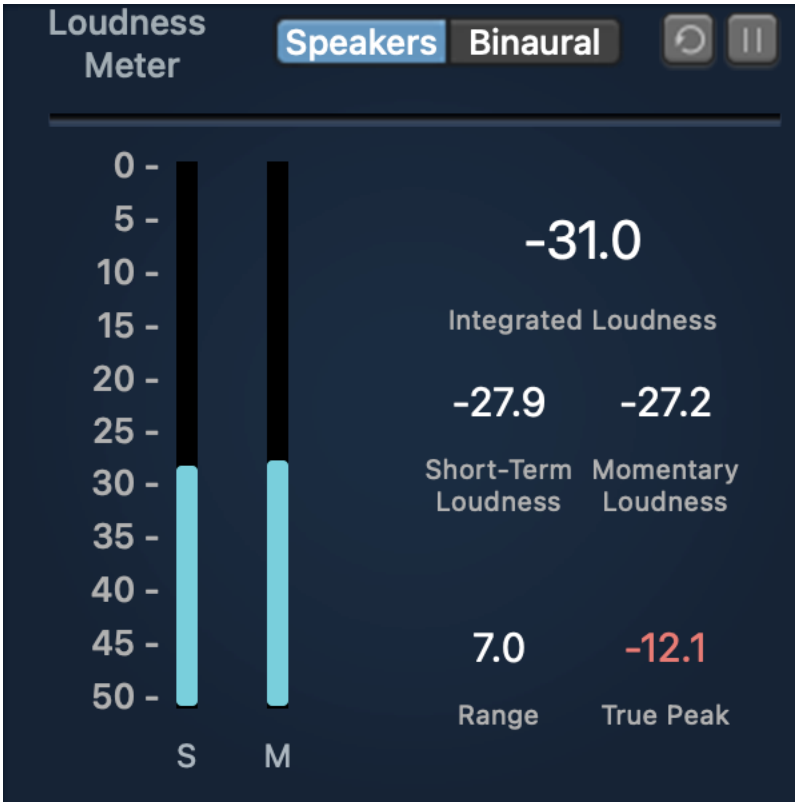


Loudness Meters

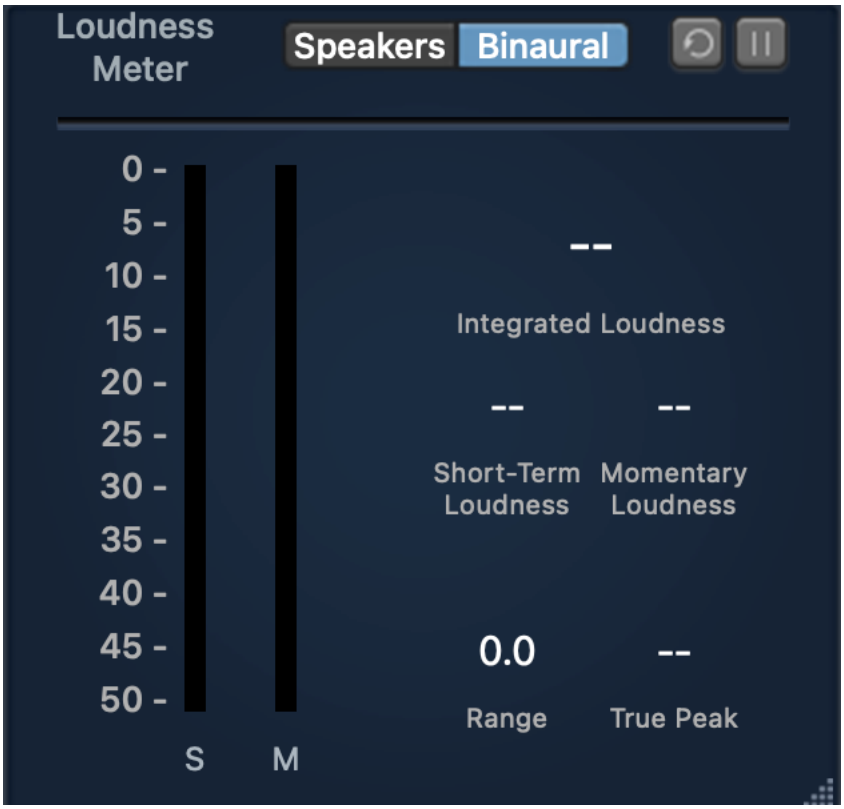
Provides real-time monitoring of signal loudness after rendering. When short-term loudness, instantaneous loudness, comprehensive loudnes,s and true peak exceed the warning value, they turn red. Values can be reset (measured from the current playing content) or paused (the current values are displayed).

Speakers or Binaural

Select whether you want to view the values for **`Speakers`** or for **`Binaural`** output.



Loudness Meter Speakers view



Loudness Meter Binaural view

S/M Meters

The bar chart of the loudness meter shows Short term and Momentary, and the horizontal line shows Short term Max and Momentary Max.

Integrated Loudness

The average loudness of the entire audio segment.

Short-Term Loudness

Extracts signals within 3 seconds expresses the average loudness within 3 seconds.

Momentary Loudness

The loudness is within 400 ms and updated every 100 ms, with a very sensitive response.

Range

Measures the change in loudness of audio materials in LU (loudness unit).

True Peak

The maximum peak level of the digital signal.

Refresh

Click the Refresh button to reset the values measured from the current playing content.

Hold

Click the Hold button to pause the current values.

Audio Vivid Object Panner

Audio Vivid Panner is designed for 3D acoustic spatial position editing operations. You can drag the objects to record panning automation, as well as set step key points and trajectories for spatial rendering.

To open the Audio Vivid panner for a track:

- Click the track's Output Window button.



Space Editing and Display

Pointer Tool



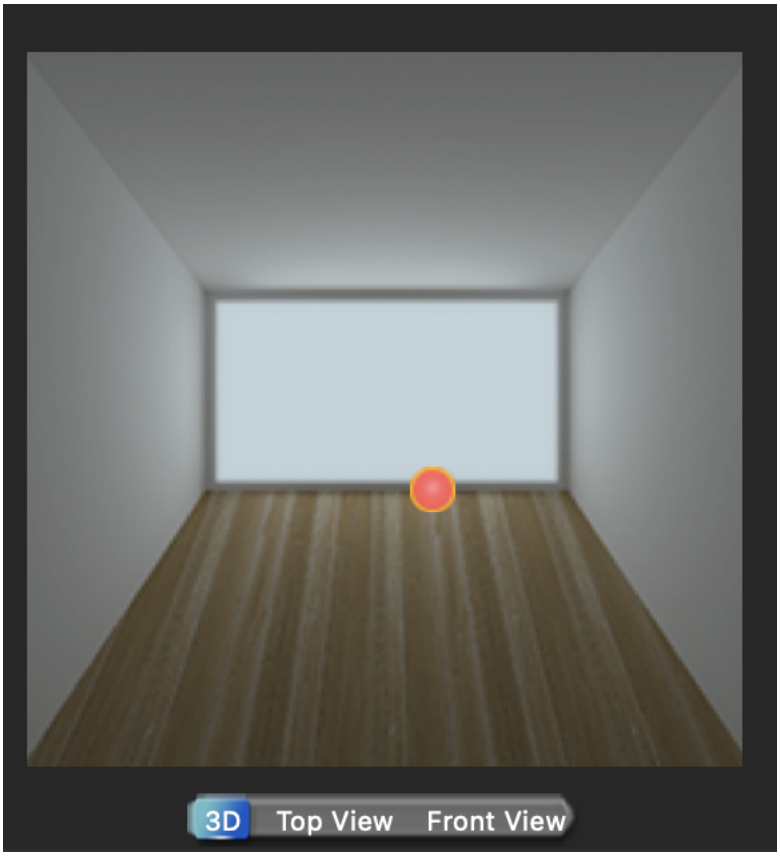
Lets you click and drag the Object to place it in the XYZ panning coordinates and to record panning automation.

Object

Audio Vivid objects appear as colored circles in the Pan Display. You can click and drag objects to reposition them in the XYZ panning coordinates.

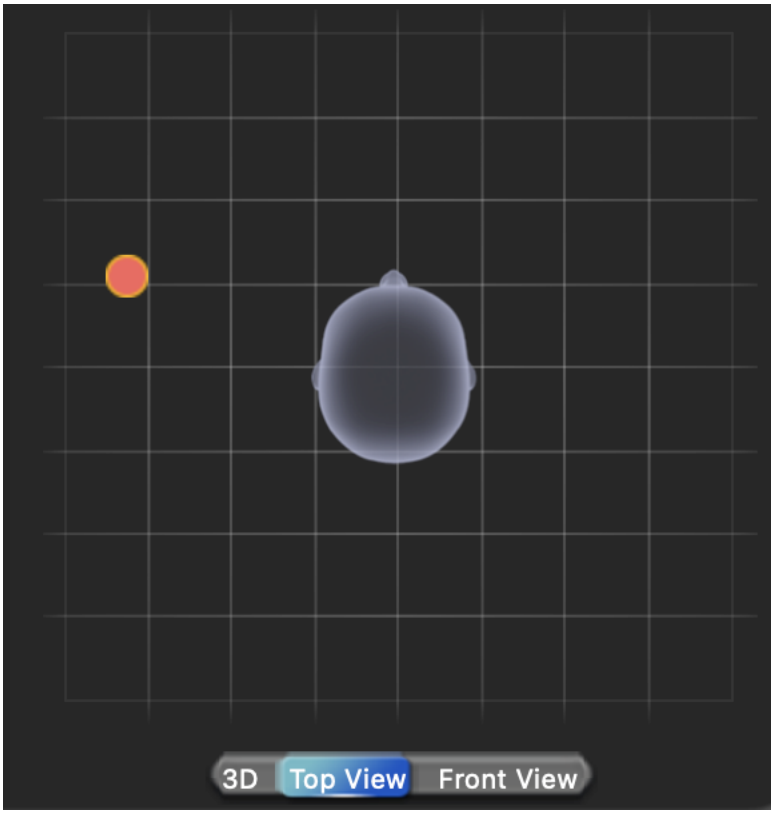
3D View

3D view provides a virtual theater space for orienting object panning.



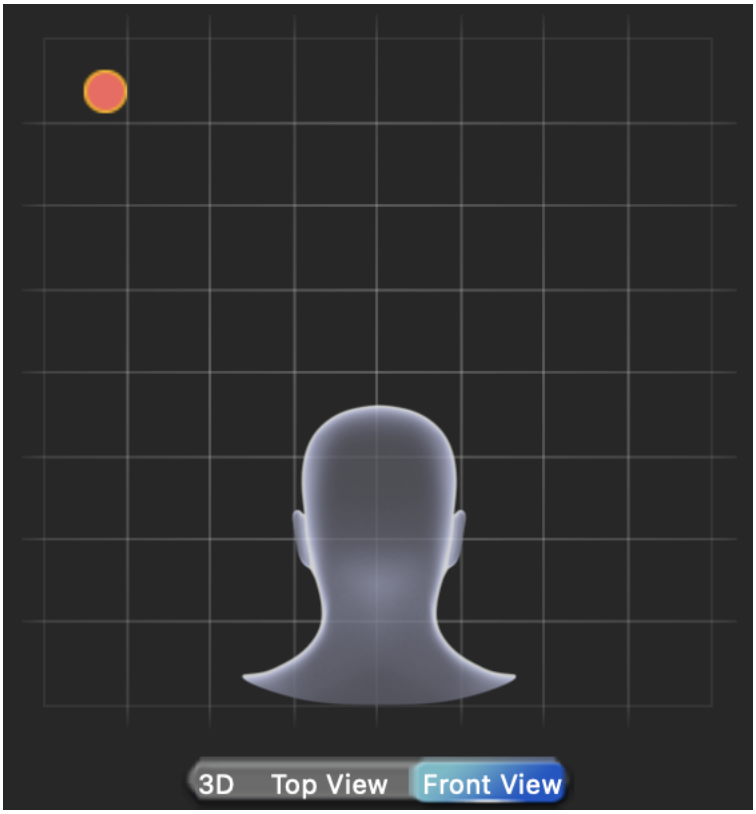
Top View

`Top View` provides an overhead view for orienting object panning.



Font View

`Front View` provides a forward looking view for orienting object panning.



Function Knobs

The **`Location Edit`** Function knobs provide position editing for fine adjustment of spatial positioning of audio objects.



Step

Click to show or hide the **`Step`** controls.

X

Adjust the object location along the **`X`** access.

Y

Adjust the object location along the **`Y`** access.

Z

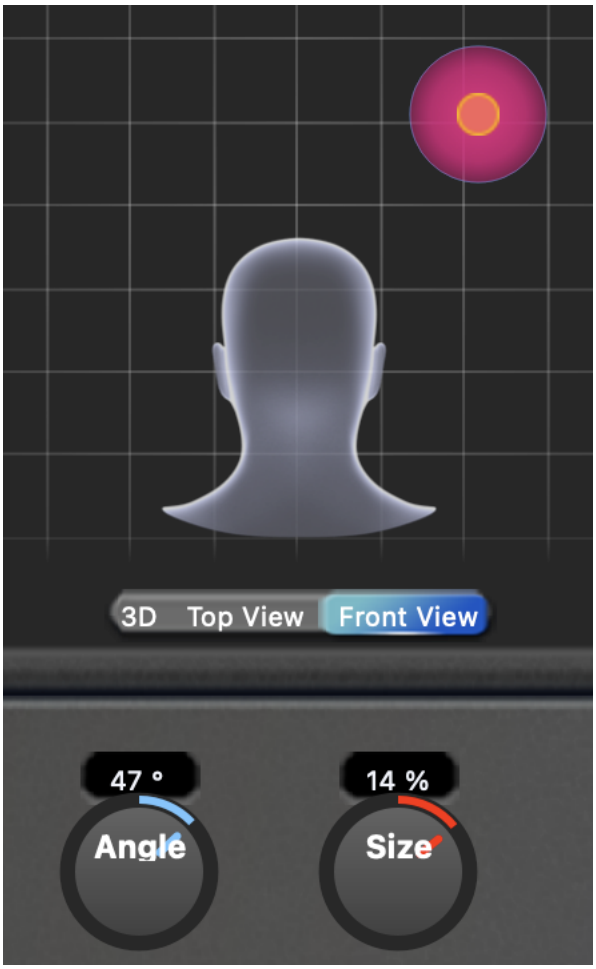
Adjust the object location along the **`Z`** access.

Angle

Adjust the **`Angle`** of the object location.

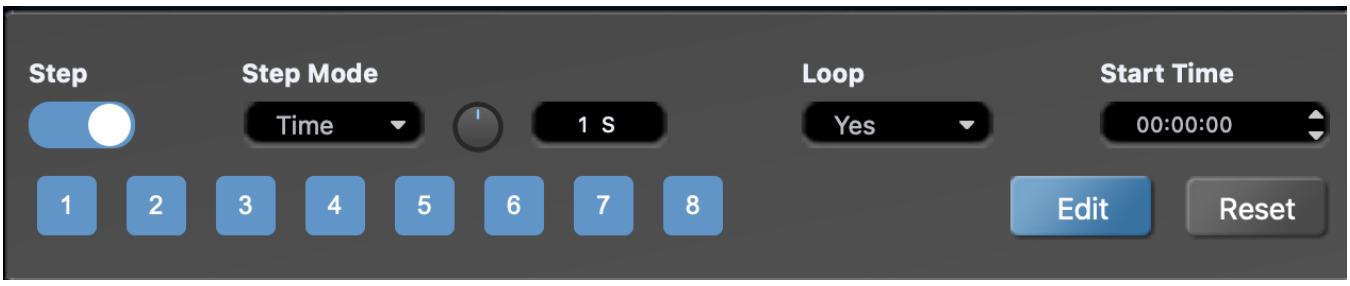
Size

Adjust the **`Size`** of the object to give it a sense of mass. The object graphic expands to indicate increased **`Size`** settings.



Step Controls

The Step panel provides key point and trajectory editing tools. These let you edit the object movement trajectory at each step, with a maximum of 8 step points.



⚠ Step editing is not supported during playback.

The Panner step function lets you edit the movement trajectory of each step. Once the editing is successful, the sound source points will move along the set trajectory over time. It supports editing up to 8 step points at most. In step mode, there are two forms: key point editing and trajectory editing. These two forms can be switched by using their respective unique tools. The same step does not support editing in both forms simultaneously.



Edit/Complete/Reset

Click **`Edit`** to start editing. Click **`Complete`** when done. Click **`Reset`** to revert.

Step/Trajectory Tools



Step assistance tools and trajectory editing tools support free trajectory drawing or fixed-shape trajectory drawing. With Edit enabled, the Step/Trajectory editing tools become available.

Erase Step/Trajectory Tool

 Select, and click to erase a step.

Step Model

Select either **`Time`** or **`Beat`** mode to define the duration of the current step.

Loop

Enable to cycle the corresponding Step.

Start Time

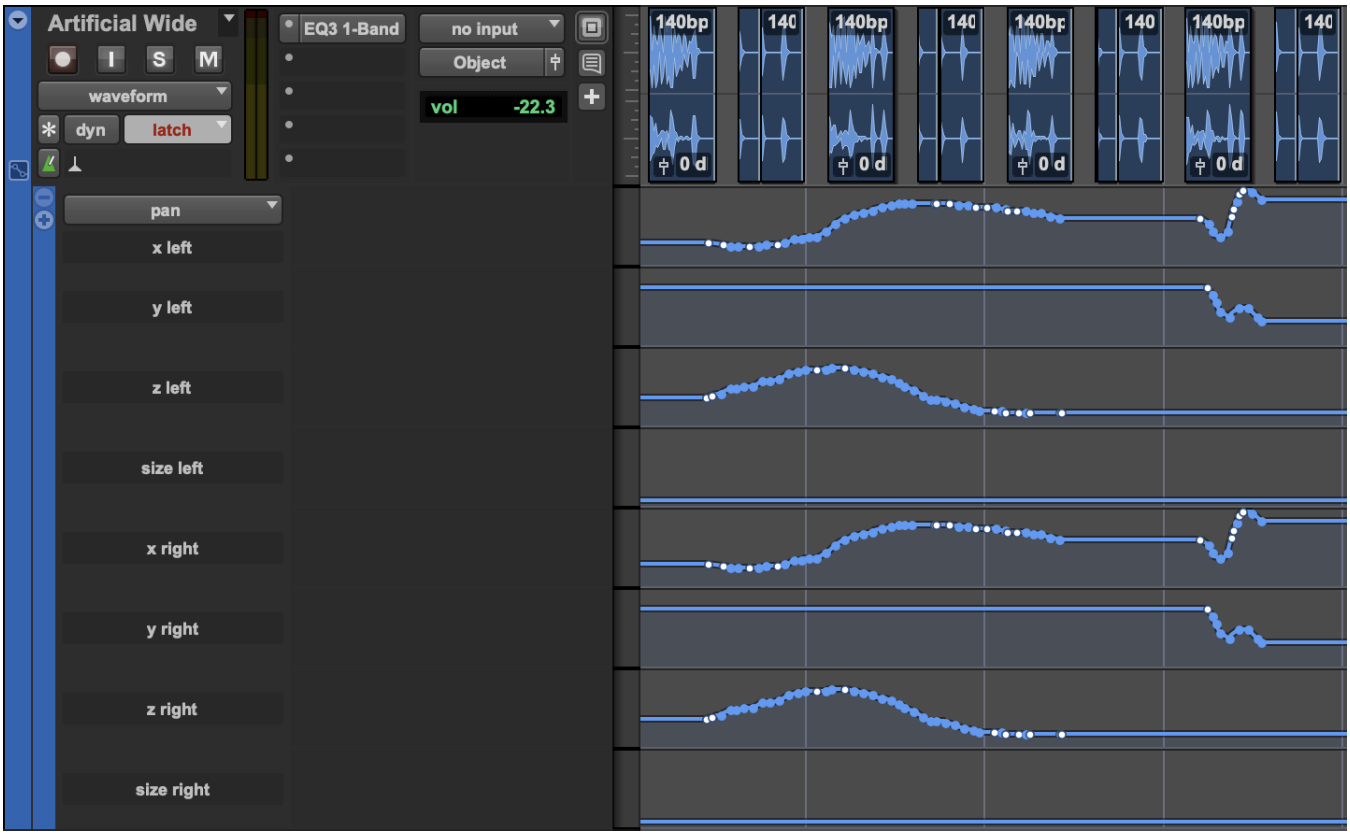
Step start time setting, time units: minutes, seconds, milliseconds.

Step 1–8

Click to select, and click again to close the step point. When the current step point is edited, it will jump to the next step point. When the 8th step point is edited, it will jump to the 1st step. One step point can be edited with one trajectory or eight key points.

Audio Vivid Panning Automation

Audio Vivid panning automation include **`X`**, **`Y`**, **`Z`**, and **`Size`** for each channel on the track.



XYZ Panner and Conversion

Audio Vivid 3D panning is based on Cartesian XYZ coordinates for object positioning within immersive audio mixes. When switching from a different Renderer (such as Dolby Atmos) to Audio Vivid for the first time, Pro Tools automatically converts pan data between the Pro Tools and the Audio Vivid Cartesian (XYZ) coordinate panning system.

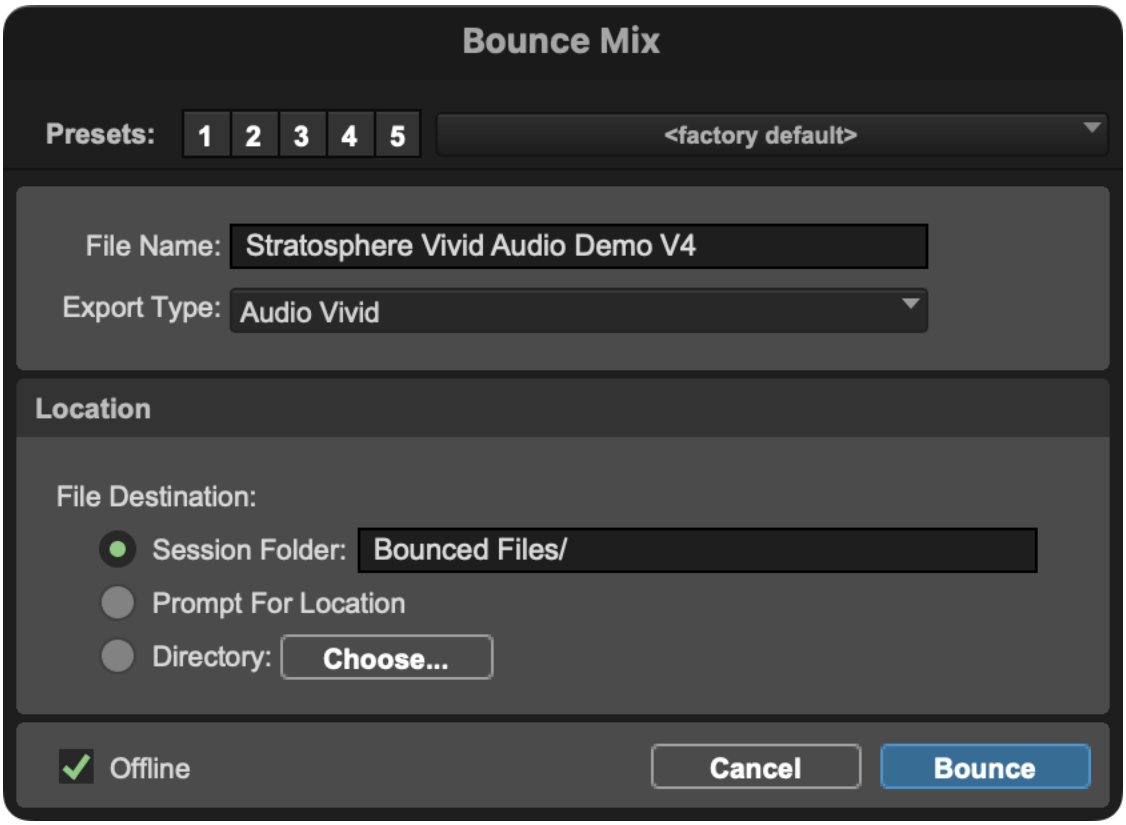
As with other immersive audio formats, it is also possible to perform this conversion on demand at any time using the Global Renderer Track menu.

Export

You can export Audio Vivid mixes using Bounce Mix.

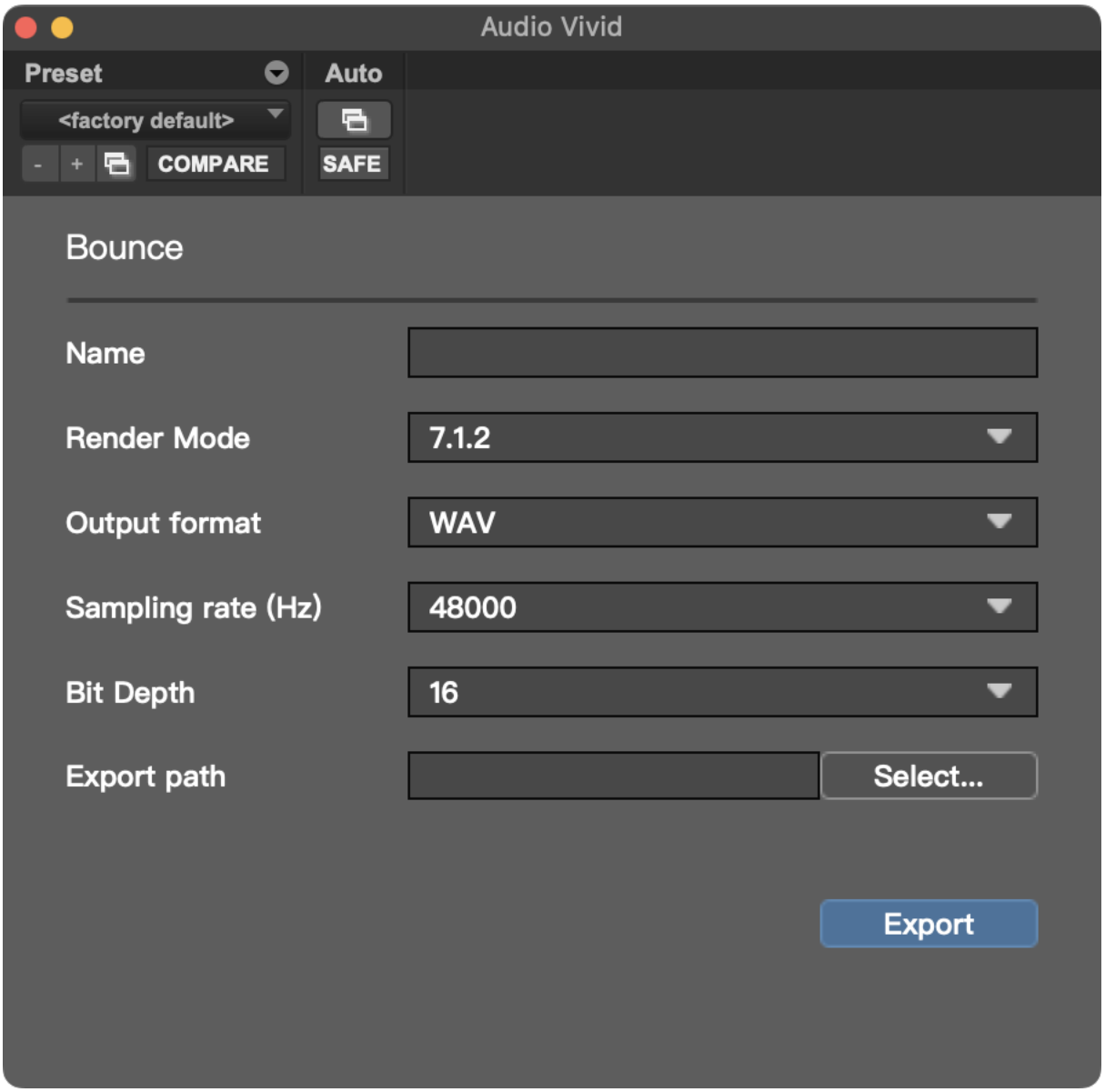
To export your Audio Vivid mix:

1. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.
2. Select **Audio Vivid** as the **Export Type**.



3. Click **Bounce**.
4. Configure the resulting Audio Vivid Bounce dialog as desired (see "Audio Vivid Bounce Options" on the next page).
5. Click **Export**.

Audio Vivid Bounce Options



Name

Type the **Name** you want for the exported file.

Render Mode

Select the desired channel width for **Render Mode**: **7.1.4**, **7.1.2**, **7.1**, **5.1.4**, **5.1.2**, **5.1**, **2.0**, or **Binaural**.

Output Format

Select the desired file format: **WAV**, **ADM BWF**, or **MP4 (AV3A)**.

Sampling rate (Hz)

Select the desired sample rate: **4100**, **48000**, **88200**, or **96000**.

⚠ 88.2 kHz is not available with MP4(AV3A).

Bit Depth

Select the desired Bit Depth: **`16`** or **`24`**.

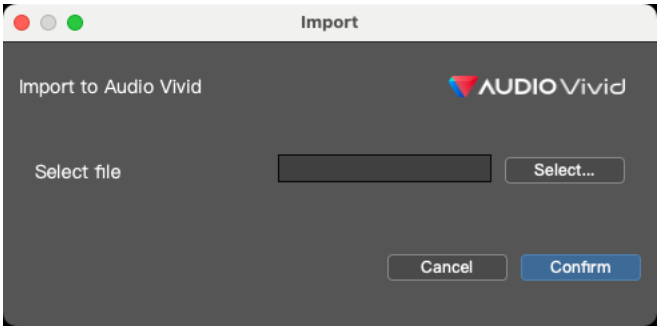
Export Path

Click the **`Select`** button to specify the **`Export Path`**.

Import

To import an Audio Vivid ADM file into a session:

1. Create and configure a new session for the Audio Vivid ADM file (or open an existing session).
2. Ensure that the Audio Vivid Renderer is enabled.
3. Choose **File > Import > Import to Audio Vivid**.

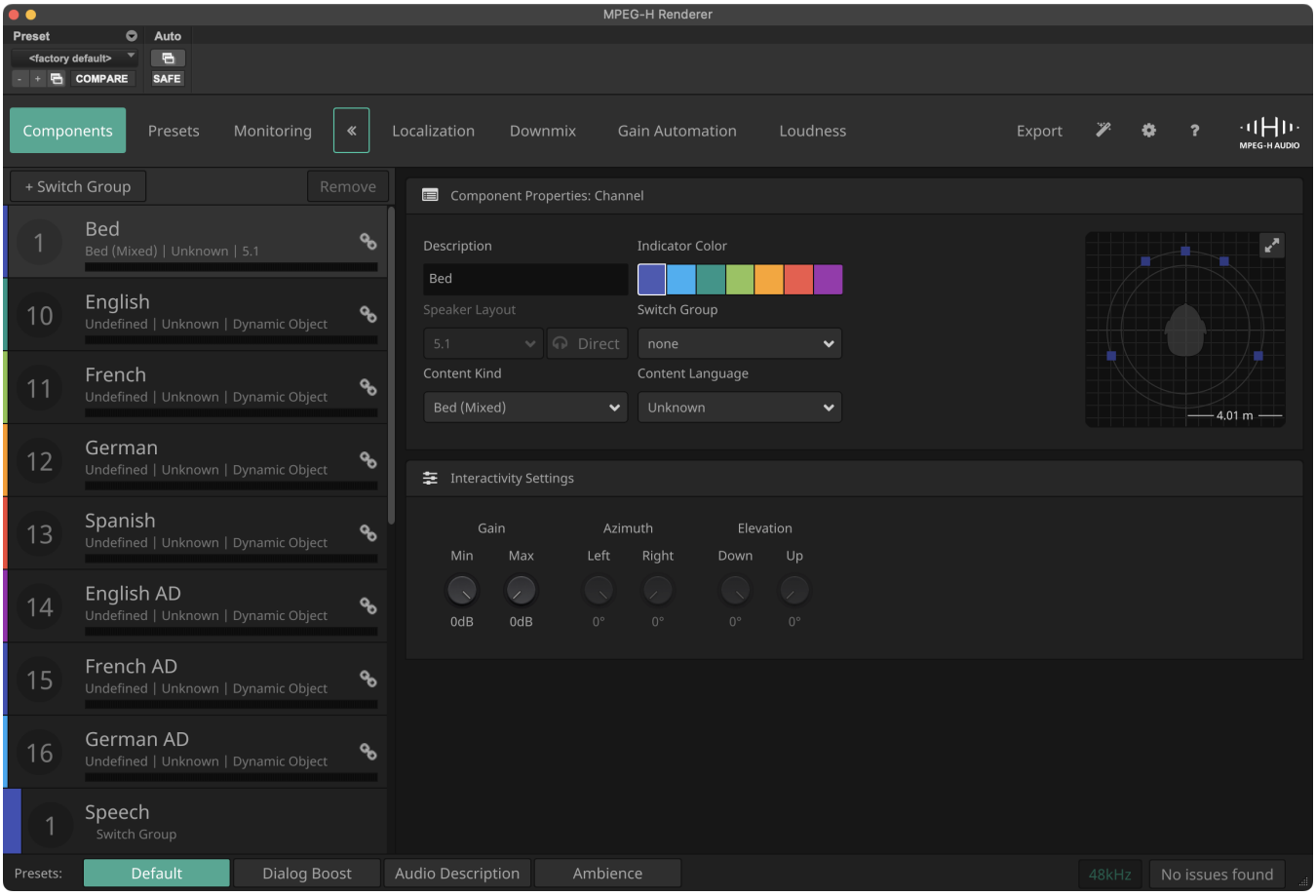


4. In the resulting Import dialog, click **Select** and navigate to and select the Audio Vivid ADM file that you want to import, then click **Open**.
5. Click **Confirm**.

64 Fraunhofer MPEG-H Audio Renderer

Pro Tools Studio and Ultimate support MPEG-H Audio, enabling the creation of rich, immersive and interactive audio experiences. The MPEG-H Audio technology, developed by the Moving Picture Experts Group (MPEG) with core contribution by Fraunhofer IIS, lets you create multifaceted immersive experiences that span from custom entertainment to advanced accessibility features. At the core of MPEG-H Audio are powerful personalization capabilities, including interactive object positioning, adjustable dialogue levels, dynamic gain metadata for advanced ducking applications, customizable audio descriptions, and support for multiple languages. Features like adaptive background attenuation (ABA) allow background sounds to be dynamically reduced in an automatic process to deliver personalized gain metadata to improve speech intelligibility, further enhancing accessibility. Creators can choose which elements remain fixed and which are user-adjustable, maintaining full control over their artistic intent while offering audiences a more engaging and tailored listening experience.

For detailed information about the controls and settings the MPEG-H Renderer window, refer to the documentation from Fraunhofer https://mpegh.com/protoolsManual/.



MPEG-H Audio provides:

- **Immersive audio**—Places your audience right in the middle of the action.
- **Personalized audio**—Lets you select your preferred audio presentation from several pre-configured versions within the same stream. Seamlessly switch between languages and adapt the audio mix to your needs and preferences.
- **Universal delivery**—MPEG-H can go everywhere. On the go, in your living room, in your home theatre, or in the car. One production, encoded into one bit stream that is delivered to many different devices, such as TV sets, loudspeakers, headphones, or MPEG-H equipped AV receivers or soundbars. At the core of this flexibility is the integrated MPEG-H renderer, which automatically adapts the audio playback to the specific listening environment and device capabilities. This ensures an optimal and consistent listening experience—no matter how or where the content is consumed.
- **Improved accessibility**—Features for enhanced speech intelligibility with dialog boost options and automated background attenuation (ABA) for audio description and voice over help your content reach a wider audience.

Broadcasters and streaming providers around the globe count on MPEG-H Audio for their services. It is the only audio system of the world's first terrestrial UHD TV service in South Korea and, in Brazil, it was selected as the only mandatory audio system for the next-generation TV 3.0 broadcast service. Immersive MPEG-H Audio content can be played back over TV sets, Audio/Video Receivers, mobile devices, and MPEG-H Audio equipped soundbars which are already available.

MPEG-H Renderer Features

- Ability to use the MPEG-H Audio Renderer as an option in Pro Tools
- Creation of MPEG-H Audio components directly via Pro Tools Tracks output selector
- MPEG-H Audio Renderer assignments and pan data can be migrated, retained and managed between Pro Tools supported immersive formats
- MPEG-H Master file import (MPEG-H Production Format, MPEG-H BWF/ADM, MPEG-H MXF/S-ADM)
- Pro Tools Bounce Mix support (offline)
- Spatial control of Object based components with Pro Tools Immersive Panner
- MPEG-H Audio dynamic metadata creation and handling
- Setup assistant integration for easy kick start of broadcast typical multi-languages scenes
- Loudness measurement (offline) and metering (online) for audio components and presets
- Adaptive Background Attenuation (ABA)
- New session templates for the most common use cases

Supported Renderer Channel Widths

- Stereo
- LCRS
- Quad
- 5.0
- 5.1
- 5.1.4
- 7.1
- 7.1.2
- 7.1.4
- 7.1.6
- 9.1.4

Supported File Formats

- BWF/ADM
- MPF
- Template XML
- MXF/S-ADM

⚠ **The MPEG-H Renderer is only compatible with 48 kHz sessions.**

Installing MPEG-H Renderer

MPEG-H Renderer must be installed for the MPEG-H Renderer to be available in Pro Tools.

To install MPEG-H Renderer:

1. Download the MPEG-H Renderer installer from Avid Link or your online MyAvid products page.
2. Unzip the installer and launch it.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the installation.

   The MPEG-H Renderer.aaxplugin components is installed.

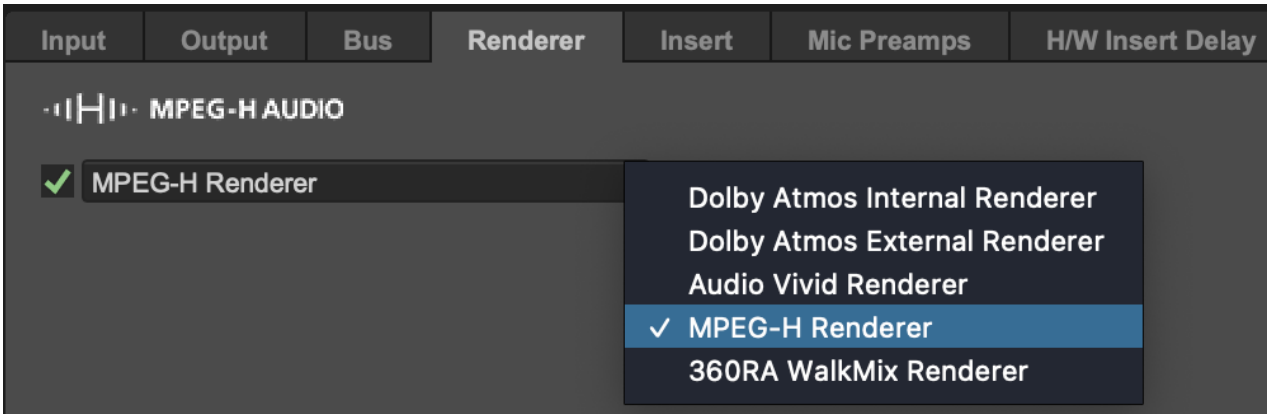
MPEG-H Renderer Setup

Enabling MPEG-H Renderer

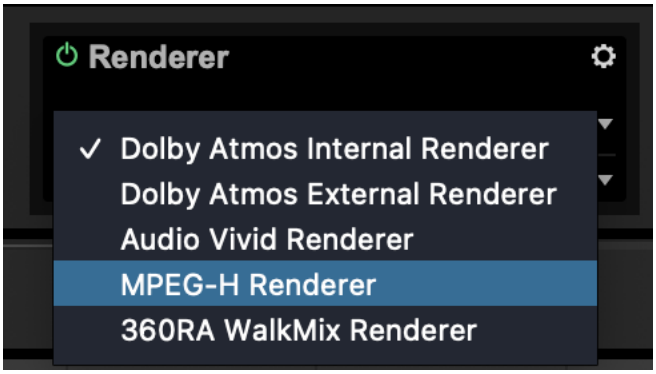
When MPEG-H Renderer plugin is installed, the destination mixer is available as a renderer option in Pro Tools.

To enable the MPEG-H Renderer, do one of the following:

- Choose **Setup > I/O > Renderer**, select **MPEG-H** from the Renderer selector, and click **OK**.



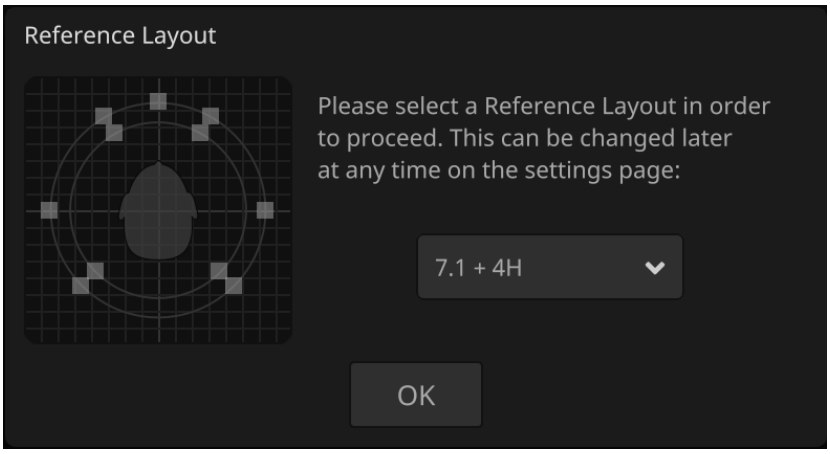
- In the Renderer controls in the Edit Window toolbar, select **MPEG-H Renderer** from the Renderer selector.



Rendering Format

The list of available rendering formats are MPEG-H Audio rendering formats that fit into the currently used monitor path width.

Reference Layout



When you first enable the MPEG-H Renderer in a Pro Tools session, you are prompted to specify the **Reference Layout**. The options include: **Mono**, **2.0**, **3.0**, **3.0 Surr**, **Quad**, **LCRS**, **5.0**, **5.1**, **5.1+Back**, **7.1 (60 deg)**, **7.1 (110 deg)**, **5.1+2H**, **5.1+4H**, **7.2+3H**, 5.1+6H, **7.1+4H**, **7.1+6H**, and **9.1+4H**.

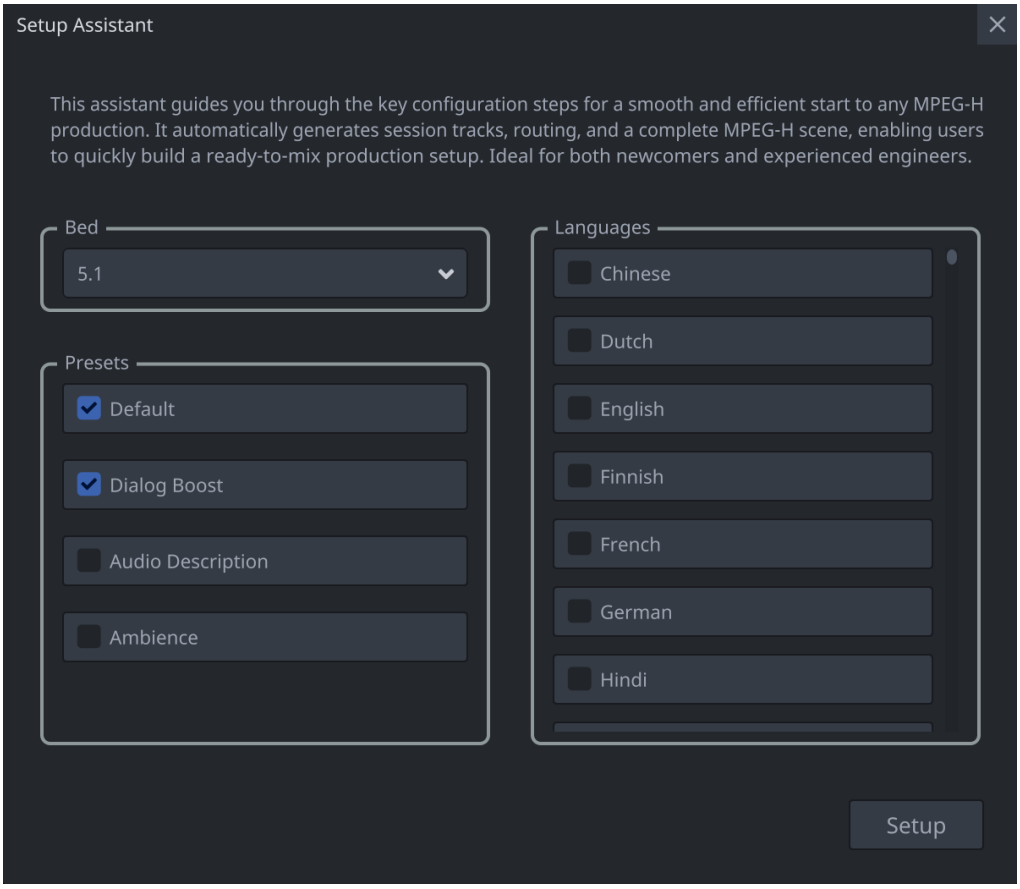
- Without existing channel components, the renderer prompts you to specify the **Reference Layout** when first opening it.
- Creating a bed prior to setting the **Reference Layout**, automatically determines the appropriate **Reference Layout**.
- The **Reference Layout** automatically adapts to fit the largest bed.
- Manual adjustments of the **Reference Layout** can be made in the settings tab of the MPEG-H Audio renderer.

Setup Assistant

The Setup Assistant can be used to guide you through the key configuration steps for a typical MPEG-H Audio production with a single bed and multiple languages. You can also access the Setup Assistant by pressing the "Magic Wand" button ( ) in the top bar of the MPEG-H Audio Renderer window. Based on selected options, the Setup Assistant creates the required tracks, assignments and fully configured MPEG-H Audio scene.

The Dialog Boost Preset is a representation of the default mix with +9 dB offset for dialog components. The Audio Description Preset is a mix with pre-configured gain sequences for ducking the bed and dialog components to achieve maximum accessibility. The Ambience Preset only includes the bed component. All initial settings can be finetuned later in the production process.

⚠ **You must remove existing Objects/ Beds assignments before running Setup Assistant again.**



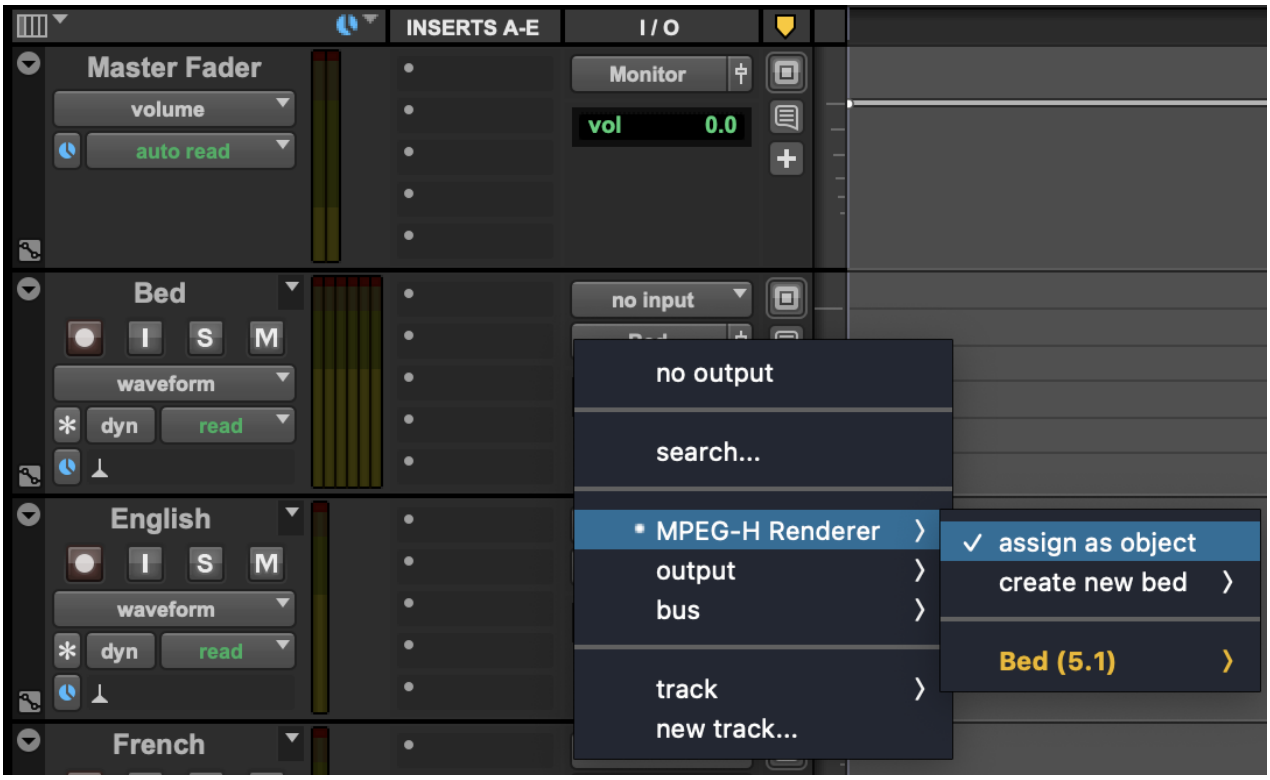
Creating MPEG-H Objects and Beds

Once you have enabled the MPEG-H Renderer and Setup you session, you can assign tracks to MPEG-H Objects and Beds. Any tracks created using the Setup Assistant are automatically assigned.

The created MPEG-H Audio object component can be added to scene presets or switchgroups. The immersive panner is used to position objects.

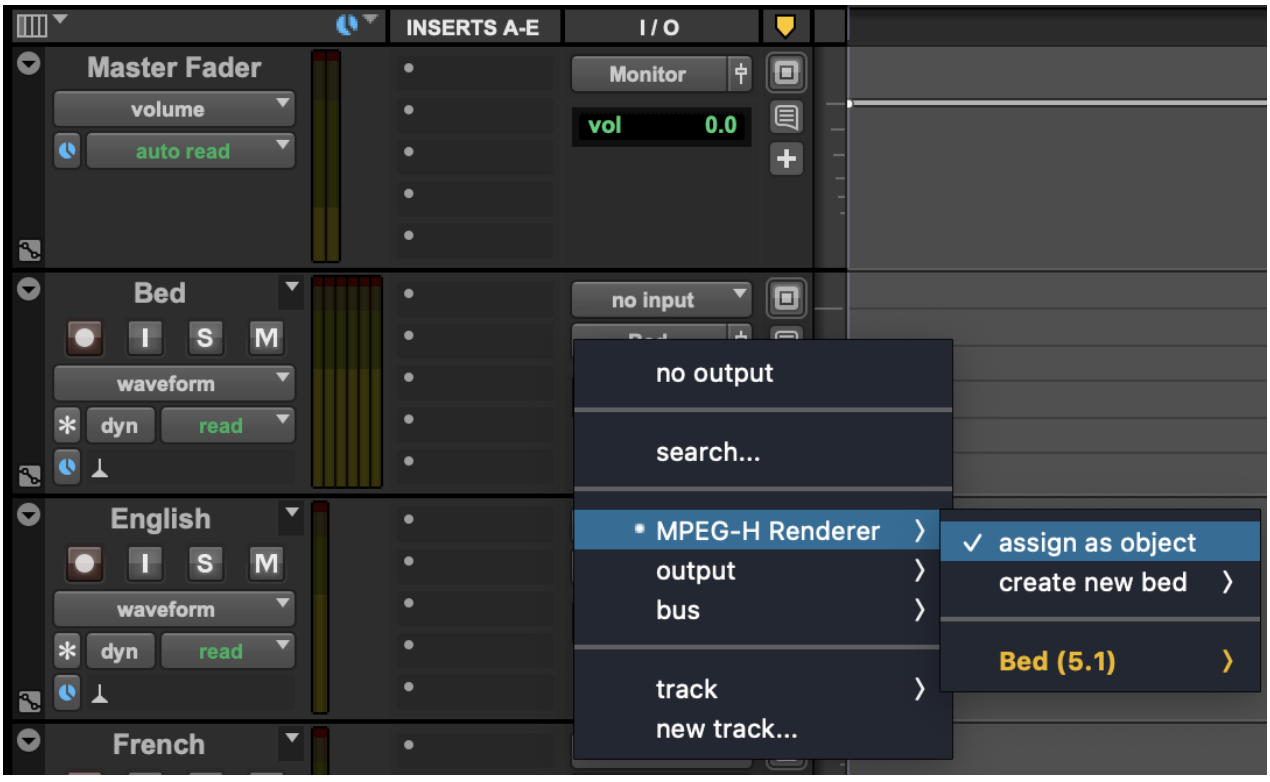
To create an MPEG-H Object:

- From the track Output selector, select **`MPEG-H Renderer > Assign as Object`**.



To assign a track to a Bed:

- From the track Output selector, select **`MPEG-H Renderer > Bed <n> > Assign`**.



To delete a MPEG-H Audio Object:

- From the track Output selector, select a different output that is not an MPEG-H Renderer object.

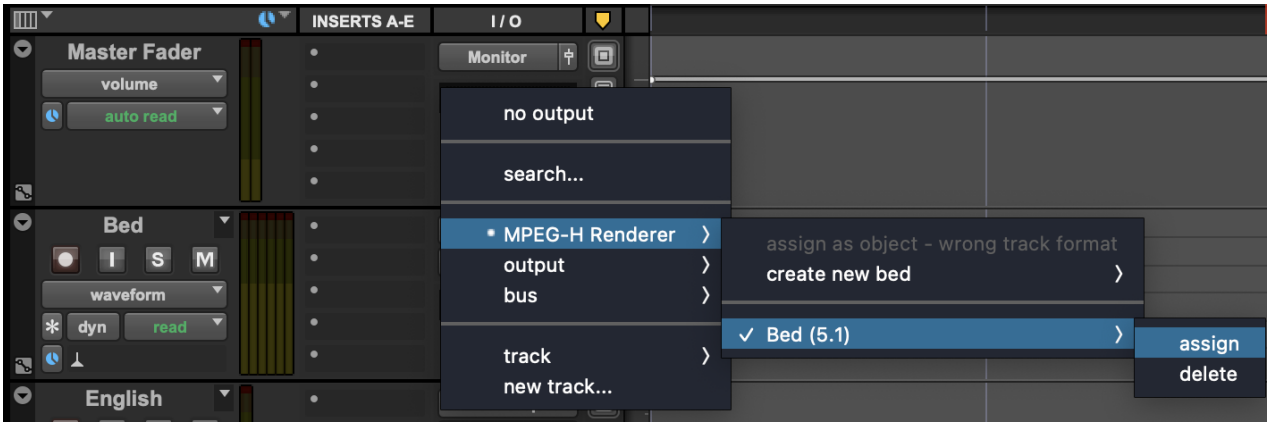
To create a new MPEG-H Bed from a track or send:

- From the track Output or Send selector, select **`MPEG-H Renderer > Create New Bed`** and select the desired channel width.

  For every new created bed a specialized Bed Bus is created and the selected Track is assigned to that bed. Multiple tracks can be assigned to the same bed. This also creates a corresponding MPEG-H Audio channel component in the renderer. This component can be added to scene presets or switchgroups.

To create a new MPEG-H Bed from a track:

- From the track Output selector, select **`MPEG-H Renderer > Bed <(Format)> > Assign`**.



To delete a Bed assignment:

- From the track Output or Send selector, select no output or anything other than **`MPEG-H Renderer > Bed <(Format)>`**.

  If there are no more Tracks assigned to a Bed bus, the MPEG-H Audio channel components are marked as unconnected in the renderer.

To delete a specialized Bed bus:

- From the track Output or Send selector, select **`MPEG-H Renderer > Bed <(Format)> > delete`**.

  This also deletes the MPEG-H Audio channel component.

For information about assigning track sends to Beds, see Sends to AAX Render Plugin Beds.

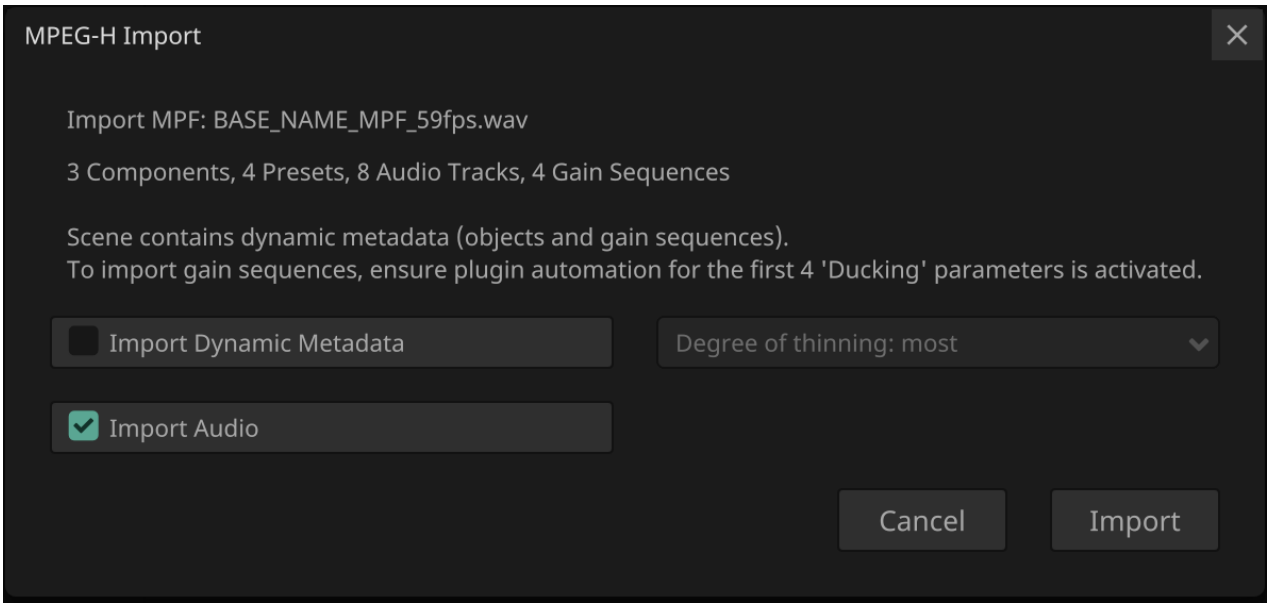
Import

To import MPEG-H Audio supported file:

1. Ensure that the MPEG-H renderer is enabled.
2. Choose **`File > Import > MPEG-H Master`**.
3. Select one of these file types:
   – MPEG-H BWF/ADM from a .wav-file
   – MPEG-H Production Format from a 16/32 channel .wav-file
   – MPEG-H MXF/S-ADM from a .mxf-file

– MPEG-H template from a .xml-file (static metadata only, no audio)

4. Click **Open**.
5. Configure the MPEG-H Audio Import settings in the Renderer window.



   - **Import Audio**: Select to import audio from the MPEG-H Master file. Disable if only scene configuration is needed.
   - **Import Dynamic Metadata**: Select to import dynamic metadata, which can be objects positions or gain sequences. To import **Gain sequences**, plugin automation for the **Ducking** parameter must be enabled in the renderer. The automation data for Gain Sequences can be accessed in the automation lanes for **Ducking** of a Master Fader track with output **Renderer Out**.

     For import or automated creation of gain sequences with ABA, ensure ducking parameter automation is enabled in the renderer.

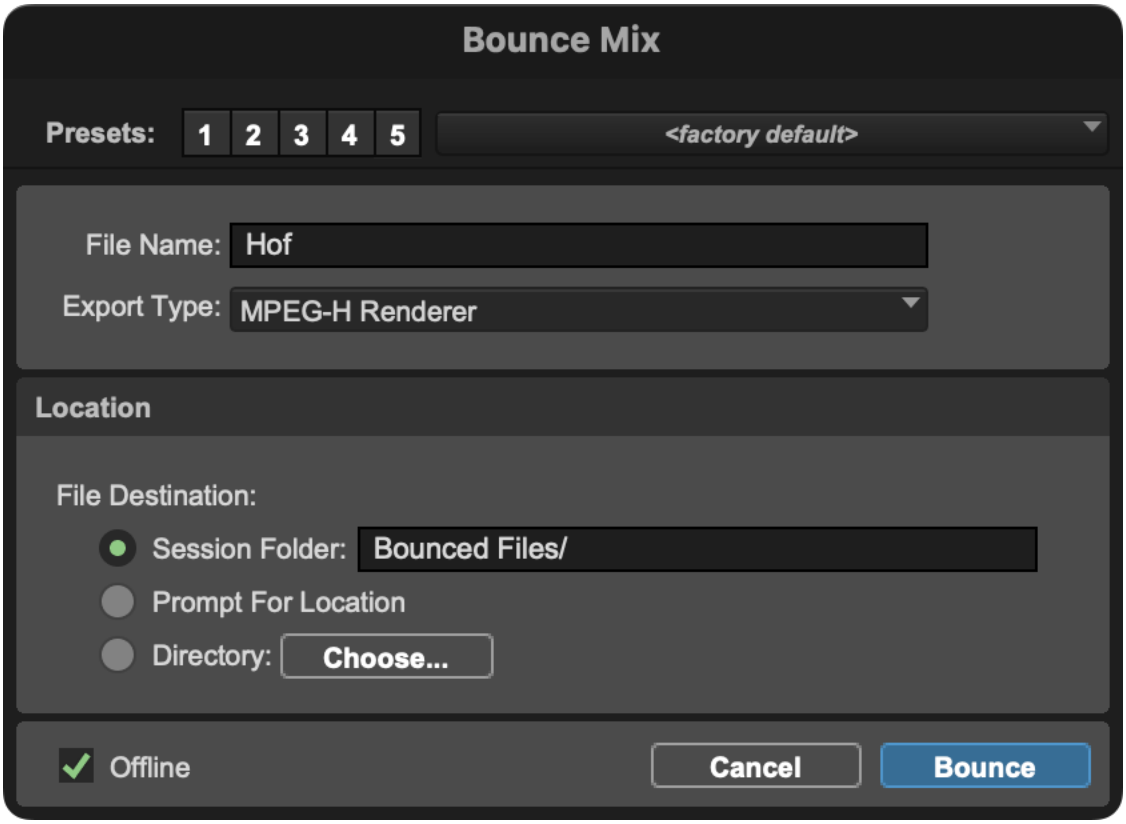
   - **Degree of Thinning**: If Import Dynamic Metadata is enabled, you can select the degree of metadata thinning you want: **Most**, **Some**, or **Full** (no thinning).
6. Click **Import**.

   The import process creates the required tracks and assignments, and loads the MPEG-H Audio scene. It is displayed in the renderer and can be played back and modified.

Export

To export an MPEG-H file:

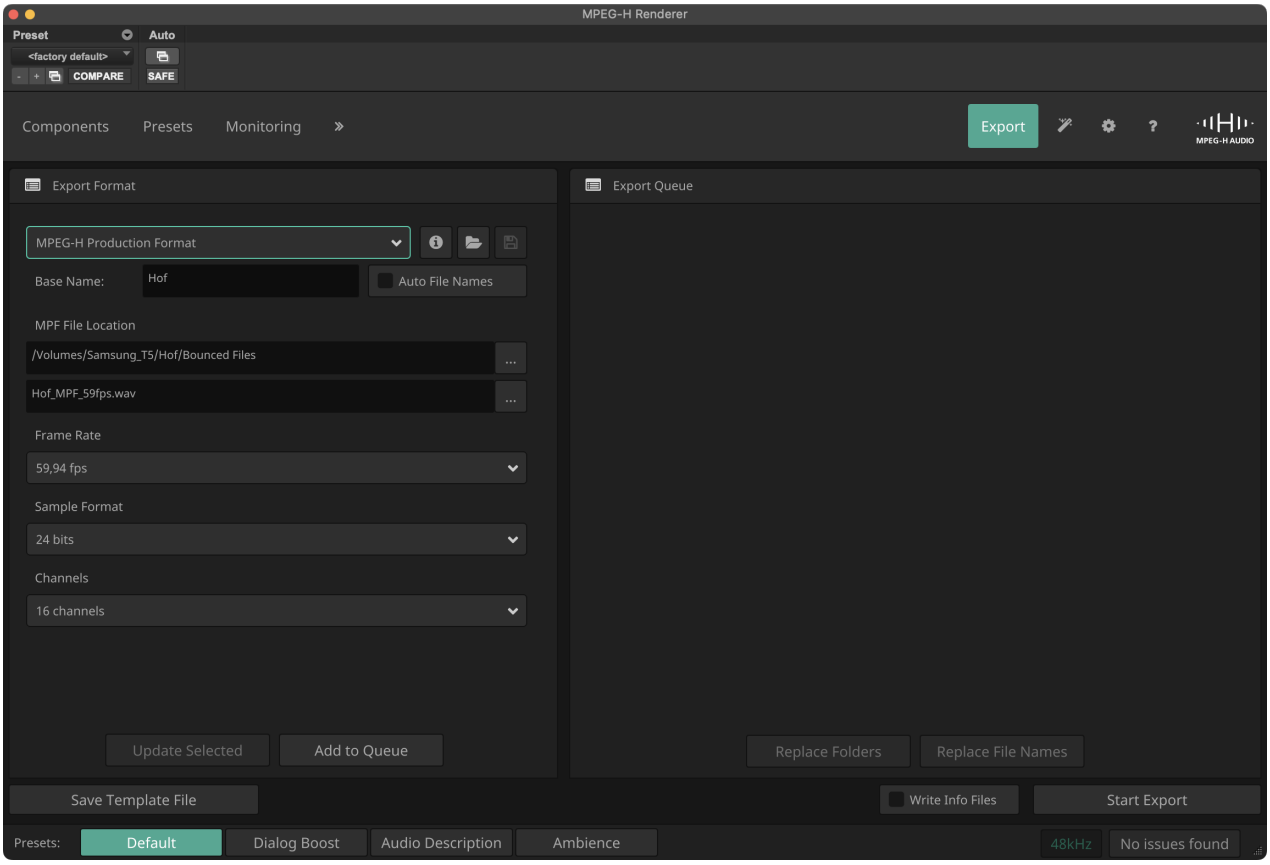
1. Ensure that the MPEG-H renderer is enabled.
2. Make the Timeline selection for what you want to export.
3. Choose **File > Bounce Mix**.



4. Select **`MPEG-H`** as the **`Export Type`**.
5. Type the **`File Name`**.
6. Set the **`File Destination`**.
7. Click **`Bounce`**.

Note that if you uncheck offline, the online bounce is silent.

8. Configure the settings in the **Export** page in the resultant MPEG-H Renderer window.



9. Make sure the MPEG-H Audio scene is valid and the export queue is correctly configured.
10. Different MPEG-H Audio Master File Formats can be selected and added to the export Queue with individual file locations.
    - **MPEG-H Production Format**
    - **Broadcast Wave Format/Audio Definition Model**
    - **MXF/S-ADM**
    - **Channel Mix**
11. The **Base Name** and **MPE File Location** are transferred from the Bounce Mix window.
12. Select the **Frame Rate**.
13. Select the **Sample Format**.
14. Select the number of **Channels**.
15. Click **Add to Queue** to add the selected export format to the queue.
16. Click **Start Export**.

    Export progress is indicated and you are notified when the export is complete.

65 Ambisonics

Pro Tools Support for Ambisonics

Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio software provides support for 1st through 7th Order Ambisonics channel formats (4-, 9-, 16-, 25-, 36-, 49-, and 64-channel formats respectively). Import Ambisonics audio recordings, record Ambisonics audio in Pro Tools using Ambisonics miking techniques, or use supported 3rd-party AAX Ambisonics panning, and encoding and decoding plugins to create your own Ambisonics mixes from source audio tracks.

What is Ambisonics?

Ambisonics is a "full-sphere" surround sound technique that is capable of representing sound sources that are stationary or in motion, and at variable distances from above, below, and all around the listener. More interestingly though, higher order Ambisonics can represent sound sources that seem to remain fixed in a sound field while the listener's perspective changes with their head position (as opposed to "head-locked" stereo mixes). Ambisonics audio mixes are used for 3D audio in virtual reality and gaming applications, as well as 360 video. However, the possibilities for Ambisonics are only just beginning to be explored commercially.

1st Order Ambisonics correspond to physical microphone pickup patterns using an omni-directional microphone in conjunction with figure-eight capsules oriented along three spatial axes. Miking for 1st Order Ambisonics is a three-dimensional extension of common Mid/Side stereo (M/S) miking techniques that adds additional difference channels for height and depth. This results in *B-format* audio (WXYZ), or 1st Order Ambisonics, which consists of four discrete audio channels: W for sound pressure (omni-directional—the M in M/S), X for the front-minus-back sound pressure gradient, Y for left-minus-right (the S in M/S), and Z for up-minus-down.

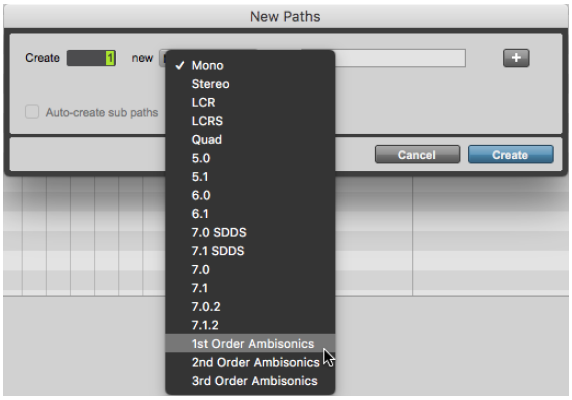
1st Order Ambisonics is most commonly used for horizontal-only surround because of positional errors and shading effects that result from adding a fourth microphone. Higher-order Ambisonics provide greater positional resolution of sound sources in the sound field. Higher-order difference signals are derived from several spatially distributed (usually omni-directional) capsules using sophisticated digital signal processing. Higher-order Ambisonics can also be rendered from channel-based audio recordings (such as mono and stereo) strictly using Ambisonics plugin processing in Pro Tools.

Configuring the I/O Setup for Ambisonics

Pro Tools lets you create 1st through 7th Order Ambisonics input, output, and bus paths. Typically, you will only need to create bus paths in Ambisonics formats for most Ambisonics mixing workflows. Create Ambisonics Input paths if you will be recording Ambisonics right into Pro Tools using Ambisonics miking techniques (using specially configured microphone arrays or specialized commercially available Ambisonics microphones). It is unlikely that you would ever need to create Ambisonics Output paths unless you are playing back Ambisonics from one Pro Tools system and recording it on another Pro Tools system or using another system to decode Ambisonics audio.

To create an Ambisonics bus path:

1. Choose **Setup > I/O** and click the **Bus** tab.
2. Click the **New Path** button.
3. Create the buses that you need with the desired Ambisonics format.



Selecting 1st Order Ambisonics as the format for a new bus path

4. Click **Create**.
5. Click **OK** to close the I/O Setup.

Ambisonics Sub-Paths

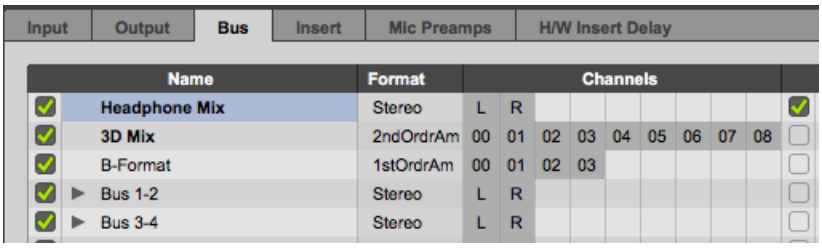
Any higher-order Ambisonics path can have lower-order Ambisonics sub-paths. For example, a 3rd-order Ambisonics path can have 2nd and 1st–order sub-paths, and a 2nd-order Ambisonics path can have a 1st-order sub-path. All supported orders of Ambisonics paths can have mono sub-paths. Since Ambisonics channels do not map directly to speaker channels, all other channel-width formats are disallowed as sub-paths for Ambisonics paths.



Selecting a 2nd Order Ambisonics sub-path for a 3rd-order Ambisonics path

Channel Ordering for Ambisonics Audio Signal Paths

Ambisonics formats use discrete channel orderings that are distinct from channel-based surround formats (such as 5.1). In Pro Tools, the individual channels of all Ambisonics formats are numbered from left to right in the I/O Setup starting with 00 (or W in B-format) and increase incrementally. For example, the individual channels for 1st Order Ambisonics are 00, 01, 02, 03 (WXYZ); and for 2nd Order Ambisonics are 00, 01, 02, 03, 04, 05, 06, 07, 08.



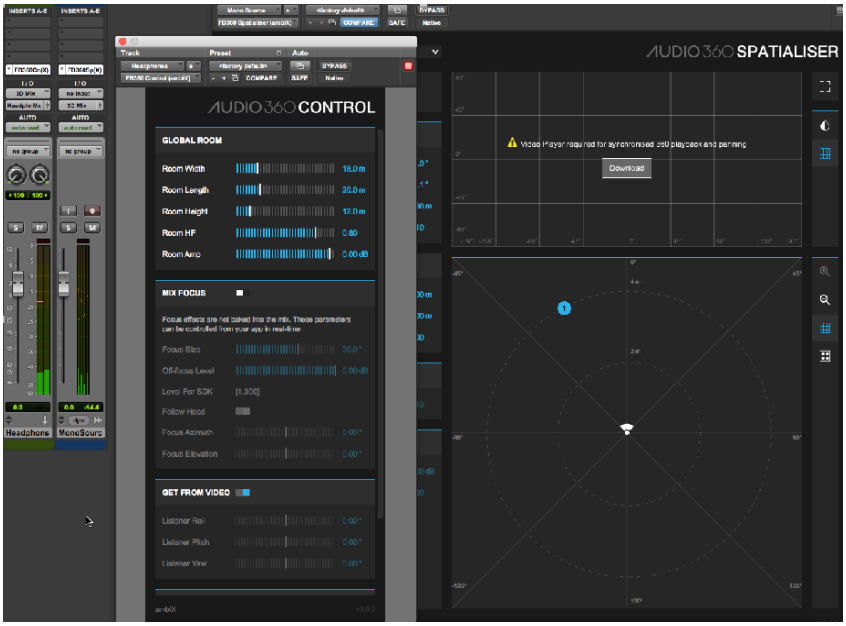
Ambisonics bus paths with standard channel orders in the I/O Setup

The individual channels of Ambisonics formats do not correspond to speaker signal mappings like other surround formats (such as 5.1—L C R Ls Rs LFE). In most cases, use Ambisonics panning, encoder and decoder plugins to accurately mix and monitor Ambisonics mixes over headphones. However, even though Ambisonics formats do not directly map to common channel-based surround speaker configurations, various alternate speaker configurations can be used for the playback of Ambisonics mixes.

⚠ **Do not use multi-mono plugins following any Ambisonics plugins. Likewise, any plugin processing of source tracks should only be inserted before Ambisonics plugins.**

Ambisonics Mixes in Pro Tools

Creating Ambisonics mixes in Pro Tools usually entails using Avid-qualified third-party AAX Ambisonics panning plugins on source audio tracks and routing the output of those tracks to an Auxiliary Input track with an Ambisonics format–to-stereo plugin for headphone monitoring. Ambisonics mixing workflows and configurations vary depending on the source material, specific Ambisonics plugins used, and required delivery formats.



Mono audio mixed in 2nd Order Ambisonics to stereo for headphone monitoring

Example—configuring Pro Tools to mix from a mono source audio track to a 2nd Order Ambisonics stereo mix using FB360 Audio plugins:

1. Ensure that the I/O Setup is configured with a 2nd Order Ambisonics bus path (see "Configuring the I/O Setup for Ambisonics" on page 1832).
2. Create a mono audio track with audio you want to mix to 2nd Order Ambisonics.

   Depending on the Ambisonics panning plugin you are using, source audio tracks can be mono or stereo, or even surround formats (such as 5.0 or 7.0) or Ambisonics formats (such as B-format).

3. Assign the Output of the track to the 2nd Order Ambisonics bus path.
4. Insert the FB360 Spatialiser plugin on the track (if you want to process the audio with other plugins on the track, they must precede the Ambisonics plugin).

   Repeat steps 3–5 to create additional source tracks for the Ambisonics mix.

5. Create a 2nd Order Ambisonics Auxiliary Input track.
6. Assign the 2nd Order Ambisonics bus path to the Input of the Auxiliary Input track.
7. Insert the FB360 Control plugin on the Auxiliary Input track.

8. Assign the Output of the Auxiliary Input track to the main stereo output of your audio interface for headphone monitoring.

   In order to avoid coloring the audio projected from speakers with the room ambiance, Ambisonics mixes are typically monitored over headphones.

9. Automate panning of mono source to 2nd Order Ambisonics with the FB360 Spatialiser plugin.
10. Playback and monitor Ambisonics mix over headphones.

Ambisonics panning, encoding and decoding plugins typically change the track channel width (such as mono to 2nd Order Ambisonics). It is important to know that for some Ambisonics plugins that change track channel widths you must first create the track with the appropriate channel format (such as mono source or 2nd Order Ambisonics input) and then assign the appropriate track output (such as mono to 2nd Order Ambisonics) before you can insert the appropriate Ambisonics plugin.

Clip effects editing is not supported for clips on Ambisonics tracks. When a timeline selection is made that includes clips from both Ambisonics and non-Ambisonics tracks, only clips on non-Ambisonics tracks are processed by clip effects. If clip effects are applied to one or more clips on a non-Ambisonics track and then dragged-and-dropped to an Ambisonics track, clip effects processing of those clips play back, but clip effects for these clips cannot be edited until they are moved back to a non-Ambisonics track.

Folding Down Ambisonics

You can route ambisonics formats to other formats for monitoring, but not for conversion between formats. When routing between Ambisonics and other formats, the following conditions apply:

- Ambisonics routed to a channel-based format are summed to mono at –3 dB.
- Channel-based formats routed to ambisonics are summed to channel 0 at –3 dB.
- Ambisonics of a lower order routed to a higher order map to the first channels only.
- Ambisonics of higher order routed to a lower order map the first channels to what is available in the lower order format, but drop any channels above that.

Part XI: Sync and Video

Learn how to establish and maintain synchronization between multiple Pro Tools systems and other devices, and how to work with video in Pro Tools.

- "Working with Synchronization" on page 1837
- "Pro Tools | MachineControl" on page 1867
- "Working with Field Recorders in Pro Tools" on page 1903
- "Working with Video in Pro Tools" on page 1924

66 Working with Synchronization

Synchronization allows one system to output timecode and the other devices to *chase* (follow) that timecode. Pro Tools can synchronize with other devices using Timecode.

Pro Tools Synchronization Options

There are several options for synchronizing Pro Tools to an external source or using Pro Tools as the master device.

Sync X and SYNC HD Synchronization Options

By adding Sync X or SYNC HD to your HDX or HD Native system, you can use Pro Tools with your synchronization peripheral as the master clock in your synchronization setup. All other devices then clock to your Pro Tools synchronization peripheral.

You can use Pro Tools in conjunction with a synchronization peripheral, such as Sync X or SYNC HD, to generate LTC, MTC, or MMC commands. When your synchronization peripheral is reading incoming timecode, it regenerates the timecode through the LTC and/or MTC output. This signal can be passed along to other devices.

Timecode Trigger Only

This solution does not require a synchronization peripheral, but is really only useful for short projects if both systems are extremely close in speed. Even the best systems will rarely stay perfectly synchronized for longer than a couple of minutes.

Timecode Trigger Resolved with Pro Tools | Sync X

(HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

You can use Pro Tools | Sync X to resolve Pro Tools recording and playback speed while locking to timecode with any of the following clock sources:

- Video Reference
- LTC (Linear Time Code)
- Bi-phase/Tach
- Pilot Tone
- AES3
- AES3-id
- 10 MHz
- Word Clock

For instructions on connecting Sync X to your system, see the Pro Tools | Sync X Guide.

Timecode Trigger Resolved with a SYNC HD

(HDX and HD Native Systems Only)

You can use SYNC HD to resolve Pro Tools recording and playback speed while locking to timecode with any of the following clock sources:

- LTC
- Video source (SD format only)
- House video reference (SD format only)
- VITC
- Word Clock
- AES/EBU “null” clock
- Pilot Tone
- Bi-Phase

For instructions on connecting a SYNC HD to your system, see the SYNC HD Guide.

MachineControl

Sync X and SYNC HD support MachineControl with Pro Tools Ultimate software. MachineControl provides specialized features for post production synchronization tasks including remote track arming, deck emulation, and serial timecode.

For more information, see Chapter 60, “MachineControl.”

Ext. Clock Output

Pro Tools can be used as the master device in your synchronization setup, where all other devices then follow Pro Tools Word Clock output.

To set Ext. Clock Output:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Hardware**.
2. Click the **Ext. Clock Output** pop-up menu and select an available signal.
3. Click **OK** to close the Hardware Setup dialog.

Session Setup Window

The Session Setup window lets you configure various timecode-related settings on your system, as well as certain session format settings (such as bit depth, pan depth, audio format, and interleaved). The window also includes display-only areas for session sample rate, system delay, and timecode-related data (such as incoming time).

The Session Setup window is organized into three sections. The **Format** section is at the top of the window and is always shown. The **Timecode Settings** section is at the bottom of the window and can be shown or hidden. The middle section can also be shown or hidden, and it differs depending on whether or not you are using a synchronization peripheral. With a SYNC HD or no synchronization peripheral, it is the **SYNC Setup & Timecode Offsets** section. With Sync X, it is the **Sync X Setup & External Offsets** section.

To show the Session Setup window:

- Choose **Setup > Session**.

Press Command+2 (Mac) or Control+2 (Windows) to open the Session Setup window.

To show (or hide) the Sync X Setup/SYNC Setup section:

- Click the Sync X Setup/SYNC Setup expand/collapse triangle.

This section lets you configure either Sync X or SYNC HD settings if one is connected.

To show (or hide) the Timecode Settings section:

- Click the Timecode Settings expand/collapse triangle.

The controls in this section provide freewheel options, and separate Pull Up and Pull Down selectors for audio and video rates.



Session Setup window with Sync X



Session Setup window with a SYNC HD



Session Setup window with no synchronization peripheral

Format Displays and Controls in the Session Setup Window

The **Format** section of the Session Setup window includes displays and controls for timecode-related settings on your system, as well as certain session format settings (such as bit depth, pan depth, audio format, and so on).

Sample Rate

This display indicates the sample rate for the current session.

Bit Depth

This menu indicates the bit depth for the current session. You can change the bit depth for all newly recorded or imported (and converted) files in the session by selecting a different **Bit Depth** option. For information on each option, see "Bit Depths" on page 219.

Clock Master/Clock Source

Use this menu to configure the **Clock Master** (Pro Tools | HDX and HD Native systems) or **Clock Source** (non-HDX/HD Native systems). You can choose between Sync X or SYNC HD if either is connected, an internal clock source from an audio interface, or an external clock source connected to an audio interface.

Changes made to Clock Master in the Hardware Setup dialog are reflected in the Session Setup window.

Clock Master/Clock Source Options

Pro Tools lets you select the **Clock Master** with HDX and HD Native systems. With non-HD systems, this setting is the **Clock Source** and its options depend on your audio interface.

Sync X

When using Sync X as the **Clock Master**, Pro Tools uses Sync X as the master clock. Sync X can use its Internal clock or reference an external clock source, selected in the Sync X Setup section of the Session Setup window.

SYNC

When using SYNC HD as the **Clock Master**, Pro Tools uses SYNC HD as the master clock. SYNC HD can use its Internal clock or reference an external clock source, selected in the SYNC Setup section of the Session Setup window.

Internal

In Internal mode, your system references your peripheral's internal clock and plays back at the session's sample rate.

External Clock Sources

Depending on your audio interface, external Clock Source options can include **AES/EBU**, **S/PDIF**, **S/PDIF Optical**, **ADAT Optical**, **TDIF**, and **Word Clock** (optional word clock rates are available at higher session sample rates). External sources can be any multiple of the "base" rate. The base rate is 44.1 kHz for 88.2 and 176.4 kHz sources. The base rate is 48 kHz for 96 and 192 kHz sources. If an external source is chosen and no valid sync clock is detected at the External Clock In, the I/O reverts to Internal mode.

If either Sync X or SYNC HD is enabled in the Peripherals dialog, and is correctly connected in the Loop Sync chain, it can be the Loop Master, and your audio interfaces will clock to Loop Sync.

For more information on external clock sources with a synchronization peripheral, see the Pro Tools | Sync X Guide or the SYNC HD Guide.

System Delay

When Delay Compensation is enabled (**Options > Delay Compensation**), this displays the total amount of delay (in samples) applied by the system to compensate for delays incurred by plugin processing and mixer routing.

Pan Depth

This lets you select the pan depth for stereo output paths in the Pro Tools session. Pan depth is the amount of signal attenuation when a track is routed to a stereo output and panned to center. For information on each option, see "Stereo Pan Depth" on page 1458.

Audio Format

This displays the current file format for audio files recorded in the session. You can change the audio file format for all newly recorded or imported (and converted) files in the session by selecting a different **Audio Format** option. For more information, see "Mixed Audio File Formats" on page 220.

Interleaved

Enable the **Interleaved** option to ensure that all newly recorded or imported (and converted) stereo or greater-than-stereo multichannel files in the session will be interleaved audio files. For more information, see "Interleaved Multichannel and Multi-Mono Audio Files" on page 220.

Session Start

Use this field to specify a Timecode start time for your session. For more information, see "Setting a Session Start Time (Start Frame)" on page 1846.

Session Length

Use this field to specify a limit for the length of the session measure in timecode (between 6 and 24 hours). Used in conjunction with the Session Start setting, the Session Length field lets you specify the desired working range for the session when Pro Tools is controlled by an external transport (such as with MachineControl, MMC, or Satellite Link). If a timecode location is received outside of this range, Pro Tools will not respond. Pro Tools responds only when a timecode location within range is received. This prevents untended jumps to the end of the timeline, thus providing intelligent handling of 24-hour timecode.

Timecode

If your Clock Reference Source is set to Internal and Pro Tools is generating timecode, this displays the current timecode value generated by Pro Tools. If Pro Tools is following timecode from an external source, the incoming timecode value is displayed.

Timecode Rate

The **Timecode Rate** setting lets you set the Timecode Rate in frames per second for the session.

Feet+Frames Rate

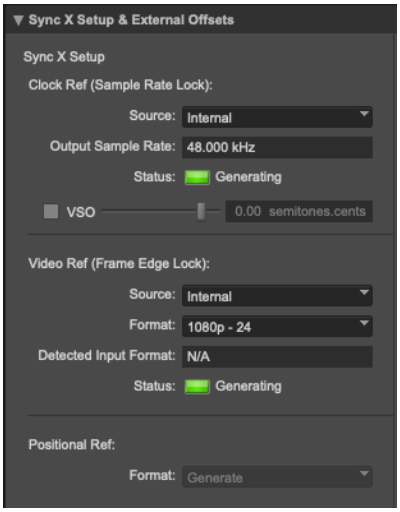
The **Feet+Frame Rate** setting lets you set the Feet+Frame rates for sessions. Set this rate to match the rate of the film projector, or the video if the film projector speed is taken into account. For example, doing a Telecine transfer from a 24 fps film projector to NTSC video would necessitate the projector running at 23.976 fps. This is regardless of whether the session is using pull down audio or not.

Timecode 2 Rate

The **Timecode 2 Rate** setting lets you set a secondary frame rate that can be displayed in the ruler alongside the main Timecode ruler. This lets you reference frame rates in the Timeline that are different from the session timecode rate (also see "Timebase Rulers" on page 1143).

Sync X Setup in the Session Setup Window

(HDX and HD Native Systems with Sync X Only) The controls in the **Sync X Setup** section of the Session Setup window let you configure the Clock Reference, Video Reference, and Positional Reference settings for Sync X.



For complete information on configuring Sync X using the Session Setup window, see the Pro Tools | Sync X Guide.

Clock Ref (Sample Rate Lock)

Select the **Clock Reference Source** for Sample Rate Lock, both for Pro Tools and any connected external devices. Depending on the selected source, Sync X will either generate clock signal (if **Internal** is selected), or it will lock to the incoming clock signal from the selected external device (such as if **Word Clock** is selected).

When the Clock Ref: Source is set to 10 MHz in the Session Setup, and Video Ref: Source is set to Internal, the video reference signal that is generated from the Sync X is relative to the incoming 10 mHz clock.

Video Ref (Frame Edge Lock)

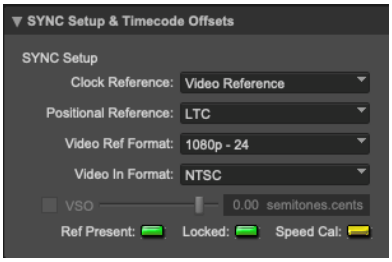
Select the **Video Reference Source** and **Format** for video Frame Edge Lock in Pro Tools, and external devices and outputs connected to the Sync X VIDEO REF GEN ports.

Positional Reference

Select the appropriate Positional Reference **Format** for incoming timecode. If Sync X is generating timecode, this setting reads **Generate** and other options are not available.

SYNC HD Setup in the Session Setup Window

(HDX and HD Native Systems with a SYNC HD Only) The controls in the **SYNC Setup** section of the Session Setup window let you configure SYNC HD settings, including clock reference, positional reference, video reference format, video input format, and Variable Speed Override (VSO).



For complete information on configuring SYNC HD using the Session Setup window, see the SYNC HD Guide.

Clock Reference

This menu lets you set the Pro Tools clock reference.

- When using a SYNC HD, the Clock Reference selector lists all supported clock types.
- When using HDX or HD Native systems without a SYNC HD, choices include any currently-enabled digital format or source available from your Avid HD audio interface (such as AES, S/PDIF, or Word arriving at an HD audio interface Word Clock In port).

Positional Reference

Sets the timecode source for Pro Tools to use for positional reference.

Video Ref Format

Sets the video reference format for the SYNC HD.

Video In Format

Indicates the expected format at the Video In connector on the SYNC HD (SD format only).

VSO (Variable Speed Override)

When using the Internal Clock Source with Sync X or SYNC HD, you can enable **VSO** (variable speed override) and adjust the slider to fine-tune the speed (and pitch) of Pro Tools or any device clocking to Sync X or SYNC HD. VSO is available at any positional reference setting, but only when **Clock Ref Source** is

set to **Internal**. If timecode is being generated while using VSO, the frame rate of the generated timecode varies proportionally to VSO changes (sample rate).

VSO with HD MADI

When using VSO with Sync X or SYNC HD, and HD MADI, it is possible to exceed the available MADI stream bandwidth. When VSO exceeds the maximum frequency for the current nominal sample rate, audio drops out. The maximum frequency for VSO at each nominal sample rate is listed in the following table.

Varispeed maximum sample rate limits with HD MADI

Nominal sample rate	Channel Count	Maximum Frequency
44.1/48 kHz	64	48.8 kHz
44.1/48 kHz	56	55.6 kHz
88.2/96 kHz	32	97.5 kHz
88.2/96 kHz	28	111.5 kHz
176.4/192 kHz	16	194.9 kHz
176.4/192 kHz	14	223.0 kHz

External Timecode Offsets in the Session Setup Window

External Timecode Offsets

In the **External Offsets** section, Pro Tools lets you compensate for devices that are consistently offset by a fixed number of frames (such as some color–corrected video masters), or for material that starts at a different time than the session.

Pro Tools provides four different types of **External Offset** settings depending on which and whether or not you are using a synchronization peripheral.

These offsets include:

- **MMC** (MIDI Machine Control)
- **9-PIN** (Deck Control with a synchronization peripheral only)
- **LTC** (Sync X Only) or **Sync** (SYNC HD or other MTC peripherals only).
- **Satellite** (Satellite Link)

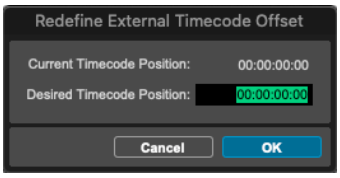
Unique values can be defined for each of these types of offsets, or you can link all to adjust in unison.

Positive and negative offset values can be entered to offset Pro Tools timecode display later or earlier, respectively.

Additional options for External Offsets are available when using MachineControl with Pro Tools Ultimate software (see "Pro Tools | MachineControl" on page 1867).

To redefine the External Timecode offsets:

1. Choose **Setup > External Timecode Offset**.



Redefine External Timecode Offset dialog

2. In the Redefine External Timecode Offset dialog, enter the offset you want in the **Desired Timecode Position** field.
3. Click **OK**.

LTC Sample Offset (Sync X) or Sample Offset (Sync HD)

This field lets you enter an offset in samples (+/–) to fine-tune the point at which Pro Tools synchronizes relative to incoming Timecode: LTC with Sync X, or LTC or VITC with SYNC HD.

Use this to compensate for timing differences between various Timecode converters or analog-to-digital/digital-to-analog converters. For example, a value of –50 makes an event in Pro Tools occur 50 samples before the same event in incoming LTC. This does not apply to synchronization for Satellite systems.

This field allows a range of plus or minus roughly one frame's length in samples. For instance, if the session is at 48 kHz and the Timecode Rate is 24 FPS, the range is +/–2002 samples (1 frame).

Timecode Settings in the Session Setup Window

Freewheel

The choices in the Freewheel section let you configure how Pro Tools will *freewheel*, or continue playback if timecode is interrupted or corrupted. Use these options to protect against errors that can occur if your timecode source has “drop outs” or temporary lost signals.

None

The minimum 4 frames of freewheel is applied when chasing LTC, VTIC, or Serial Timecode. No freewheel is applied with MTC.

Frames

Sets a number of frames to freewheel, from 4 to 40 frames. This value defaults to 8 frames, which is the recommended setting for most applications.

Jam Sync

Lets Pro Tools trigger synchronization to incoming timecode, and continue to play back even if timecode input is completely interrupted. It can be useful if timecode is damaged, or has been accidentally erased from your source tape.

Pull Up/Down

Pro Tools Ultimate lets you “pull up” or “pull down” the current sample rate.

For more information on applying pull factors in Pro Tools, see "Pull Up and Pull Down" on page 1848.

Pull up and pull down are applied differently in different workflows. Make sure you check each project's specific workflow before you begin your work.

Preparing to Work with Timecode

The first step when preparing to work with Timecode is to choose an appropriate Timecode frame rate. Pro Tools supports all standard frame rates. If you are working with timecode striped tape, it is important to know the frame rate. A synchronization peripheral is useful for this.

Configuring Pro Tools for Timecode

Synchronization and MachineControl system settings are enabled in the Pro Tools Peripherals dialog (**Setup > Peripherals**). These settings are *system* settings, and remain constant regardless of the particular session you are working on. Configure these settings before opening a session.

MachineControl is only supported on HDX and HD Native systems with a synchronization peripheral.

Other settings are configured in the Session Setup window, such as the session **Timecode Rate**, the **Feet+Frames Rate**, the **Session Start** frame, and time display format. These settings are *session-specific* settings. These settings can only be configured when a session is open.

Selecting a Timecode Format

To choose a Timecode Format:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Session**.
2. Choose a frame rate (format) from the **Timecode Rate** selector.
3. Enter the Timecode **Freewheel Frames** (if any) in the designated box (see "Freewheel" on the previous page).

Setting a Session Start Time (Start Frame)

The Session Setup window lets you set a Session Start frame for your session. Video work tapes are rarely striped beginning at a Timecode frame address of 00:00:00:00. You can quickly enter a start time for your session based on an appropriate frame number from your project tape. The Pro Tools Timecode-related functions (such as Spot mode) will then use this value as their reference for the session's start point.

Start Time When Striping Tape

If you are generating timecode, it is a good practice to stripe your timecode beginning at 01:00:00:00 (subtracting time for the head format, such as initial black, bars and tone, or logos). This prevents problems that can occur with some synchronizers when the striped timecode crosses from 23:59:59:29 to 00:00:00:00 (commonly referred to as the "midnight" boundary).

To set a Timecode Start Time for your session:

1. Choose **Setup > Session**.
2. Enter a Timecode frame number in the Session Start field.

To capture an incoming Timecode address as the session start time:

1. Click in the **Session Start** field.
2. Begin playback of the timecode source.
3. At the location where you want to capture the incoming value, press Equal (=) in the numeric keypad.

4. Press Enter to accept the value. You can then edit the captured address. The session uses the frame number you enter as its Timecode start frame when online.
    - If you are changing the session start time in an open session in which tracks already exist, a warning dialog appears when you press Enter. Choose from one of two options:
    - If there are existing clips on the tracks and you are changing the original Timecode start frame to a later time (from 00:00:00:00 to 01:00:00:00, for example), all existing clips on tracks will remain in their relative positions, but will start later by the time value added to the start frame.

Maintain Timecode

Places the additional session time at the start of the session, and keeps existing clips in their original timecode locations.

Maintain Relative Position

Places the additional session time at the start of the session, and maintains the relative position of existing clips to the new start frame. For example, if you change the session start frame from 01:00:00:00 to 00:59:00:00, Pro Tools adds one minute of session time to accommodate the new start frame, and moves all existing clips earlier in time to maintain their relative position to the start frame.

Redefining a Feet+Frames Position

Use the **Current Feet+Frames** command to redefine the Feet+Frames position at the current insertion point. The session start time is recalculated based on the new, relative Feet+Frames location.

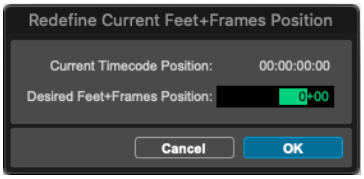
Typically, this command is used for integrating test tones, pre-roll, Academy leader, and similar pre-program material into Pro Tools sessions. Redefining Feet+Frames does not redefine the session start time.

To set a relative frame position for a session (Feet+Frames):

1. With the Selector tool, click in a track (or make a selection) where you want to redefine the position.

    If your insertion or selection is not on a grid boundary, it will round to the closest boundary.

2. Choose **Setup > Current Feet+Frames Position**.



Redefine Current Feet+Frames Position dialog

3. Enter a Feet+Frame position to correspond to the timecode shown in the dialog.
4. Click **OK**.

Redefining a Timecode Position

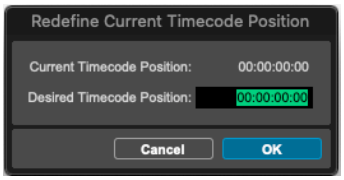
Use the **Current Timecode Position** command to redefine the current timecode position and session start time. By creating an insertion point (or selection), and then entering the new timecode position for that location, the session start time will be recalculated based on the new, relative Timecode location.

To redefine a current Timecode code position:

1. With the Selector tool, click in a track (or make a selection) where you want to redefine the position.

    If your insertion or selection is not on a grid boundary, it will round to the closest boundary.

2. Choose **Setup > Current Timecode Position**.



Redefine Current Timecode Position dialog

3. Enter a new Timecode frame number in the dialog to correspond to the timecode shown in the dialog.
4. Click **OK**.

Displaying Time in Timecode Frames

In Pro Tools, you can set the Main Time Scale to Timecode and this will be displayed in the Main Counter. Though Pro Tools will still synchronize to incoming Timecode if the Time Scale is displayed in Bars|Beats, Accouterments's, or Feet.Frames, it is usually more useful to use Timecode as your reference.

To set the Main Time Scale to Timecode, do one of the following:

- Choose **View > Rulers > Timecode**.
- Click the Main Counter selector in the Edit window and select **Timecode**.

Pro Tools displays timecode values in the currently selected Timecode frame rate.

Sub Counter and Sub Time Scale Display

You can display a Sub Time Scale in the Sub Counter. For example, if the Main Time Scale is set to Timecode, and you want to compare Timecode to "wall clock," when you are using 29.97 Non-Drop frame rate, click the Sub Counter selector and select Min:Secs as the Sub Time Scale.

Pull Up and Pull Down

Pro Tools supports up to 4% pull up and pull down, with support for an additional 0.1% up or down. Separate rates can be set for session audio and video (when video has been imported or captured into the session).

4% pull-up and pull-down designations are approximations. The exact percentage is obtained by evaluating the fractions 25/24 (pull-up) and 24/25 (pull-down) using the session sample rate.

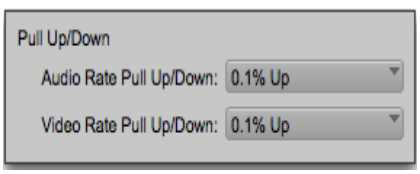
While Sync X or a SYNC HD is not required in order to use the extended pull up and down options provided in Pro Tools, Sync X and SYNC HD are the only devices that can be controlled from within Pro Tools that recall and restore pull factors automatically when a session opens. Other synchronization peripherals must be configured manually.

Pull up and pull down settings do not affect timecode generated by SYNC HD.

Configuring Pull Up and Pull Down

To pull up or pull down audio or video:

1. Choose **Setup > Session**. (Or press Command+2 (Mac) or Control+2 (Windows).)
2. From the Timecode Settings section of the Session Setup window, select a Pull Up/Down Rate.



Session Setup window

Audio Rate Pull Up/Down

Controls the audio sample rate. See "Audio Sample Rate Pull Up and Down" below.

Video Rate Pull Up/Down

Controls the video rate. See "Video Frame Rate Pull Up and Down" on the next page.

The choices available in these menus are determined by the session frame rate and sample rate. Combinations can be applied by choosing from both menus.

The choices available in these menus are also determined by the Preferences and the **Auto Match Pull Factors** option in the Timecode Rate menu. See "Extended Pull Up and Pull Down Preference and Session Setup Controls" below and "Auto Match Pull Factors" below.

Extended Pull Up and Pull Down Preference and Session Setup Controls

The **Audio Rate Pull Up/Down** setting offers all possible combinations of pull ups and pull downs for the audio sample rate, regardless of the session frame rate.

Auto Match Pull Factors

The **Auto Match Pull Factors** option is available from the session Timecode Rate menu in the Session Setup window. When **Auto Match Pull Factors** is enabled, Pro Tools adjusts audio and video playback rates as needed to match any changes to the current session Timecode Rate.

Auto Match Pull is applied relative to the current pull up setting. While enabled, if the session frame rate is changed in such a way that the video would have to be pulled by an unsupported amount, the video remains unaffected.

This setting is latching, is not enabled by default, and its state is stored with the session.

Example of Auto Match Pull Factors

The **Auto Match Pull Factors** option links audio and video pull factors when changing session frame rate. For example, assume a Pro Tools session is set to a frame rate of 25 fps, the audio and video are both playing with no pull ups, and Auto Match Pull Factors is enabled.

If you then change the session Frame Rate to 24 fps, both the Audio and Video Rate Pull settings would change by –4.0% (the appropriate pull setting required by the change in frame rate).

Auto Match-enabled pull factors are applied to any existing Audio Rate Pull Up/Down or Video Rate Pull Up/Down settings.

For example, if audio was already being pulled –0.1% when you changed the session Frame Rate from 29.97 to 24 fps, then the Audio Rate Pull Up/Down menu would switch to **None**.

Audio Sample Rate Pull Up and Down

The **Audio Rate Pull Up/Down** setting applies pull up or down factors to session audio record and playback. All pull rates are available, regardless of session frame rate.



See also "Auto Match Pull Factors" above.

Audio Rates and Pull Up/Down Options

The following table lists actual sample rates of each pull up and pull down option and combination (rounded to the nearest whole Hz): Note that not all pull up and pull down rates are available with Sync X or SYNC HD at 176.4 kHz and 192 kHz sample rates.

Sample Rates at Pull Up and Pull Down Settings

Pull Up/Down	Sample Rate					
	44100	48000	88200	96000	176400	192000
+4.1667% and +0.1%	45983	50050	91967	100100	N/A	N/A
+4.1667%	45938	50000	91875	100000	N/A	N/A
+4.1667% and –0.1%	45892	49950	91783	99900	N/A	N/A
+0.1%	44144	48048	88288	96096	176576	192192
–0.1%	44056	47952	88112	95904	176224	191808
–4.0% and +0.1%	42378	46126	84757	92252	N/A	N/A
–4.0%	42336	46080	84672	92160	N/A	N/A
–4.0% and –0.1%	42294	46034	84587	92068	N/A	N/A

Video Frame Rate Pull Up and Down

The **Video Pull Up/Down** setting lets you change the frame rate of video playback independently from the audio pull up/down rate. Note that video pull rates are saved with the session.

See also "Auto Match Pull Factors" on the previous page.

The choices available for **Video Rate Pull Up/Down** depend on the file format and frame rate of the video, and whether or not you are using video hardware.

With no video hardware, Pro Tools supports 0.1% pull up and pull down at all project frame rates when monitoring video in the Pro Tools Video window.

However, when monitoring with video hardware, certain frame rates only support pull in certain directions (as follows):

- 23pNTSC can only pull up by 0.1%
- 24pNTSC can only pull down by 0.1%
- 24pPAL can only pull up by 4%
- 25pPAL can only pull down by 4%

Video Rates and Pull Up/Down Options

The following table summarizes which pull up or pull down rate is supported with hardware (both hardware and software) or only in the Pro Tools Video window (software only) for each engine frame rate and raster size. Note that some pull up and down rates are not supported at all for certain project frame rates.

Project rates and supported pull up and pull down with or without hardware

Engine Frame Rate	Engine Raster Size	1% pull up	1% pull down	4% pull up	4% pull down
23.976	Any	software only *	software only	N/A	N/A

Engine Frame Rate	Engine Raster Size	1% pull up	1% pull down	4% pull up	4% pull down
24	Any	software only	software only *	N/A	N/A
25	Any	software only	software only	N/A	N/A
29.97	Any	software only *	software only	N/A	N/A
30i	Any	software only	software only *	N/A	N/A
47.952	Any	software only *	software only	N/A	N/A
48	Any	software only	software only *	N/A	N/A
50	Any	software only	software only	N/A	N/A
59.94	Any	software only *	software only	N/A	N/A
60	Any	software only	software only *	N/A	N/A
100	Any	software only	software only	N/A	N/A
119.88	Any	software only *	software only	N/A	N/A
120	Any	software only	software only *	N/A	N/A
23.976	NTSC	both hardware and software *	software only *	N/A	N/A
24	NTSC	software only	both hardware and software *	N/A	N/A
24	PAL	software only	software only	both hardware and software *	N/A
25	PAL	software only	software only	N/A	both hardware and software *

* Suggested pull rates for any given project frame rates appear highlighted in the Video Rate Pull Up /Down selector.

Effect of Using Pull Up or Pull Down

This topic describes how related Pro Tools features are affected by pull up and down rates.

Video Pull Up and Pull Down and Timecode Ruler

Video pull up and down does *not* affect the Timecode ruler. Be sure to set the session Frame Rate to the correct frame rate for your project. For example, if working with 24 fps video and you pull the video up by 4%, switch the session Frame Rate to 25 fps to keep the Timecode ruler aligned. Similarly, if working with 24 fps video that is pulled down by 0.1%, switch the frame rate of the session to 23.976. When working with 25 fps Avid media and the video is set to pull down by 4%, set the session Frame Rate to 24 fps.

Plugins and Pull Up and Pull Down

For proper operation at larger (4%) pull rates, plugins must utilize sample clock instead of an absolute time clock. All Pro Tools audio plugins are based on sample clock.

Putting Pro Tools Online

To trigger playback or recording from an external source, the Pro Tools Transport must be placed *online*. This tells Pro Tools to listen for incoming timecode.

To put the Pro Tools Transport online, do one of the following:



- Choose **Options > Transport Online**.
- Click the Online button in the Transport.
- Press Command+J (Mac) or Control+J (Windows).

The Online button flashes while Pro Tools waits for a Timecode frame to trigger playback. When timecode is received, playback begins and the Online button becomes highlighted. The Edit Selection indicators in the Edit window, and the Incoming Time field in the Session Setup window display the incoming timecode.

To take Pro Tools offline, do one of the following:

- Deselect **Options > Transport Online**.
- Deselect the Online button in the Transport window.

Recording Online

The Operation Preferences page contains two options that affect how Pro Tools initiates recording when online.

Record Online at Timecode (or ADAT) Lock

Makes online recording begin as soon as Pro Tools receives and locks to timecode or ADAT sync. In this case, you do not need to make an insertion or selection in a track to designate a start point.

Record Online at Insertion/Selection

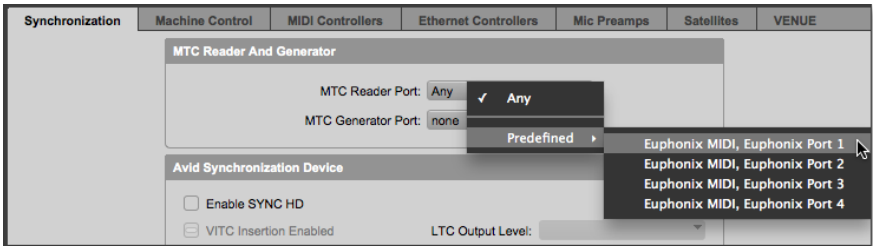
Makes online recording begin wherever you have placed the insertion point in a track. Recording then continues until Pro Tools stops receiving timecode. If you make a Timeline selection, Pro Tools will record online only for the length of the selection.

Generating Timecode

Using Sync X or a SYNC HD, Pro Tools can generate LTC and MIDI Timecode (MTC). Without Sync X or a SYNC HD, Pro Tools can only generate MTC. Other devices can be configured to follow Pro Tools generated timecode.

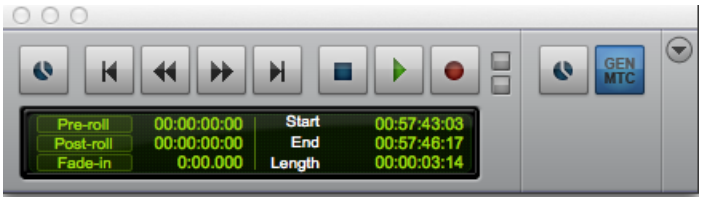
To generate MIDI Timecode from Pro Tools without a synchronization peripheral:

1. Choose **Setup > Peripherals** and click the **Synchronization** tab.
2. From the **MTC Generator Port** setting, select the MIDI output port on which you want to transmit MIDI Timecode (MTC).



Selecting the MTC Generator Port

3. From the Transport Window menu (or the Edit Window menu), select **Synchronization**.
4. Click the **Gen MTC** button so that it highlights.



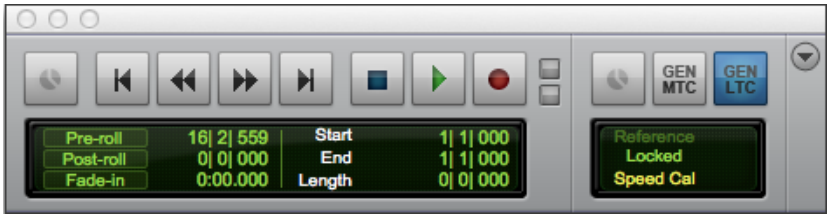
Transport, Gen MTC enabled

5. Start playback.

To generate timecode using Sync X or a SYNC HD:

1. Connect the Sync X or SYNC HD LTC Out to the Timecode in connector on the devices you want to follow Pro Tools. If you are synchronizing a device that recognizes MTC, connect the MTC OUT connector of Sync X or SYNC HD to the MIDI IN connector of the external device.
2. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Peripherals** and click the **Synchronization** tab.
3. In the Synchronization Device section of the Synchronization page, select **Enable SYNC Peripheral**.
4. Click **OK** to close the Peripherals dialog.
5. Choose **Setup > Session**, and choose the appropriate frame rate for the **Timecode Rate** setting.
6. In the Sync X or Sync Setup section of the Session Setup window, choose a clock reference from the Clock Reference selector. Not all clock choices are available at all sample rates. See "External Clock Sources" on page 1841.)
7. From the Transport Window menu (or the Edit Window Toolbar menu), select **Synchronization**.
8. Enable **GEN LTC** to generate both Linear Timecode and MIDI Timecode.

⚠ **Neither Sync X or SYNC HD will output MTC if only GEN MTC is enabled. Both Sync X and SYNC HD always output MTC when generating LTC, so enable GEN LTC to output MTC. For more information, see the Pro Tools | Sync X Guide or the SYNC HD Guide.**



Transport window, Synchronization options shown

⚠ **Press Command+Control+J (Mac) or Control+Start+J (Windows) to enable (or disable) Generate LTC (GEN LTC).**

9. Start playback.

Pro Tools generates and outputs timecode from Sync X or SYNC HD.

Limitations for Synchronization with Video Input or Video Reference

Sync X and SYNC HD can generate timecode at any frame rate when locked to Video Reference (Sync X and SYNC HD) or Video In (SYNC HD only), regardless of the frame rate of the incoming video reference signal. However, with SYNC HD if you choose to generate timecode using a frame rate that does not match the video signal, the frame edges in the Pro Tools session (and the frame edges of the timecode you are generating) will not be aligned with the video frame edges.

⚠ **If you change timecode rates in the middle of a session, many LTC/VITC-to-MIDI Timecode converters need to be turned off and turned on again to recognize the new frame rate.**

Using MIDI Machine Control

Pro Tools provides the capability to transmit location information to external devices and to control their transports using MIDI Machine Control (MMC).

Controlling External Devices Using MMC

Any device that supports MMC can be controlled directly from within Pro Tools, with either the device or Pro Tools acting as clock master.

The external devices supported by Pro Tools implement “open loop” communications only. Because of this, while Pro Tools is the Transport Master, any direct operation of the receiving device’s transport will not be communicated back to Pro Tools. Instead, you can use the Transport pop-up to select the external device (MMC in the pop-up) and use the Pro Tools on-screen transport controls to drive the device.

Pro Tools does not support remote track arming of MMC-controlled external devices. You need to manually arm tracks for recording on the external device.

💡 *Pro Tools Ultimate with MachineControl option supports remote track arming for Sony 9-pin and V-LAN enabled devices. See "Remote Track Arming" on page 1858*

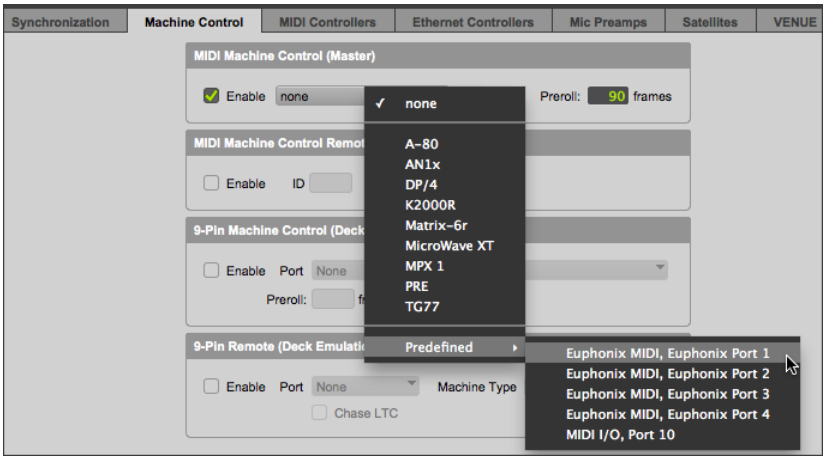
Enabling MIDI Machine Control in Pro Tools

Pro Tools as MMC Master

When Pro Tools is the Master, it sends MMC commands to external devices and receives MTC information back.

To control an external device using MIDI Machine Control with Pro Tools:

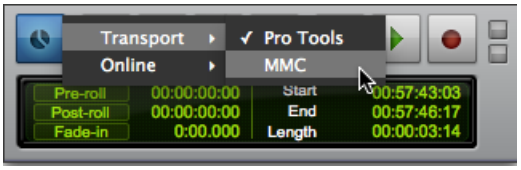
1. Connect a MIDI Out port on your Pro Tools MIDI interface to an appropriate port on the external device.
2. Connect the MTC out from the external device to a MIDI In port on your Pro Tools MIDI Interface.
3. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Peripherals** and click the **Synchronization** tab.
4. Deselect the **Enable SYNC HD** option if it is selected.
5. From the **MTC Reader Port** pop-up menu, select the MIDI In port to which the external device is connected (the source of MTC information from external devices).
6. Click the **Machine Control** tab in the Peripherals dialog.
7. In the MIDI Machine Control (Master) section, select **Enable**.
8. In the MIDI Machine Control Master section, select the MIDI Out port to which the external device is connected from the pop-up menu.



Selecting the MIDI Out port for MMC

9. Set the MMC ID number for which this information will be sent in the "ID" field.

   MMC commands contain an ID number to identify which machine should respond to the MMC command. There are 128 MMC ID numbers, from 0–127. The default of ID #127 is a special setting that transmits to all 128 MMC IDs. With a setting of 127, Pro Tools will transmit MMC commands to all MMC IDs.
10. Set a pre-roll time for the external MMC device. Pre-roll is needed to provide the device with sufficient time to lock to the timecode transmitted by Pro Tools. This value will vary depending on the external device. If the pre-roll time is insufficient, the device may not be ready to lock until after the current timecode position has passed.
11. Click **OK** to close the Peripherals dialog.
12. In the Pro Tools Transport window, Right-click the Online button and select **Transport > MMC**.



Selecting Transport › MMC

Pro Tools will now be able to control the selected device's transport and act as the clock master.

13. To have the Pro Tools transport chase the playback location of the external MMC device, click the Online button in the Transport window so that it flashes blue.

Pro Tools Following MMC

When Pro Tools is configured to follow MMC, it receives MMC commands from the master device and sends MTC information back to the external MMC device.

In order for Pro Tools to receive MMC commands, the MMC source must be enabled in the MIDI Input Enable dialog. For more information, see "Enabling Input Devices" on page 809

To control Pro Tools using an external device using MIDI Machine Control:

1. Connect a MIDI In port on your Pro Tools MIDI interface to an appropriate port on the master device.
2. Connect a MIDI Out port on your Pro Tools MIDI Interface to the MTC in port on the master device.
3. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Session**.
4. In the Timecode Settings section of the Session Setup window, select Using MTC.
5. Choose **Setup > Peripherals** and click the **Synchronization** tab.
6. Deselect the **Enable SYNC HD** option if it is selected.
7. From the **MTC Generator Port** pop-up menu, select the MIDI Out port to which the master device is connected (this the destination of MTC information from Pro Tools).
8. Click the **Machine Control** tab in the Peripherals dialog.
9. In the MIDI Machine Control Remote section, select **Enable**.
10. Set the MMC ID number (channel) on which this information will be received in the "ID" field.
11. Click **OK** to close the Peripherals dialog.

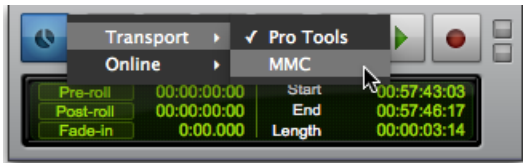
Pro Tools will now respond to MMC commands from the external device.

Operating MMC Devices with the Pro Tools Transport

You can use the Pro Tools Transport window as the remote controller for all your enabled devices (such as a nonlinear video deck). To do so, set the enabled devices to listen to the address you enter for MMC. The Transport window will then drive the Pro Tools transport and any other devices following MMC.

To control external devices from the Pro Tools Transport:

- Right-click the Online button in the Transport and select either **Pro Tools** or **MMC**. The selected deck will act as Transport Master.



Selecting the Transport Master

  - When the Transport Master is set to **Pro Tools**, the playback position is governed by the on-screen cursor in Pro Tools.
  - When the Transport Master is set to **MMC**, the playback position is governed by the external device's play position.

MMC Transport Settings

When using MMC, you can set the following options for machine transport behavior in the Synchronization Preferences page.

Machine Chases Memory Location

When selected, navigating to a specific location in a session with a Memory Location causes a connected transport to chase to that location.

Machine Follows Edit Insertion/Scrub

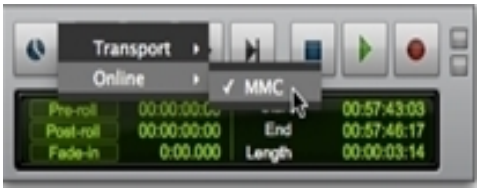
When selected, navigating to a specific location in a session by moving the selection point or by scrubbing a track causes a connected transport to chase to that location.

Taking a Device Offline

Use the Transport Online Right-click menu to take a MIDI (or Machine) device offline.

To take a device offline:

1. Click the Transport Master selector.
2. In the Transport, click on the Online pop-up menu and deselect the device (Machine or MIDI). Device choices depend on the current Transport Master and which devices have been set up in Pro Tools.



Deselecting Online › MMC

To bring a device back online, click and reselect it in the Online pop-up menu.

The Online pop-up menu will only display devices that have been properly set up in Pro Tools. To set up MIDI devices, see "Enabling MIDI Machine Control in Pro Tools" on page 1854. To set up machine devices, see "Pro Tools | MachineControl" on page 1867.

Setting Minimum Sync Delay

Lock-up time delay is the initial amount of prime time your system's devices need to achieve synchronization "lock." This amount varies for each device. Pro Tools lock up delay is set by entering a value for **Minimum Sync Delay** in the Synchronization preferences. The lowest value available is 0 frames. Find the shortest possible lock-up time that your equipment can operate at consistently, and set this as the **Minimum Sync Delay**. On systems utilizing MachineControl, enabling the Use Serial Timecode setting in the Session Setup window will make machines lock up much faster. (Serial timecode requires both the synchronization peripheral and external devices to be locked to house video reference.)

To set a Minimum Sync Delay:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **Synchronization** tab.
2. Enter a number of frames in the **Minimum Sync Delay** field.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

Configuring Minimum Sync Delay for External MMC Devices Locked to House Sync

When controlling a house-synced device from Pro Tools through MMC, the device will first lock to the MMC location and then align the color framing. Within house sync code are 4 frames for ensuring color frame lock. If the minimum synchronization setup time is less than the time required to achieve both location and color frame lock, playback will begin before the device has aligned the color frames. In this scenario, you should set the **`Minimum Sync Delay`** to be more than the time required for color frame lock. This is not a problem with a synchronization peripheral, which will drop out of lock until the color frame is locked.

Remote Track Arming

Pro Tools Ultimate software with MachineControl lets you remotely arm tracks on supported 9-pin decks. Without MachineControl, Pro Tools does not support remote track arming of external devices. MachineControl lets Pro Tools control or respond to external Sony 9-pin machines, in addition to providing remote track arming from within Pro Tools.

Choose Setup › Machine Track Arming Profiles to configure your system, and choose Window › Machine Track Arming to display the Machine Track Arming window.

Press Control+Option+Command+J (Mac) or Control+Alt+Start+J (Windows) to enable (or disable Remote mode. If using a D-Command or D-Control work surface, press the 9-pin Remote button.

For information on remote track arming with MachineControl, see "Pro Tools | MachineControl" on page 1867.

Spotting Clips to Timecode Frame Locations

Spotting is the process of assigning music and sound cues to specific Timecode frame locations in a film or video. This function can be used to spot:

- Entire clips, selected with the Time Grabber tool. Multiple clips can also be selected, and Pro Tools will reference the first clip in your selection.
- A specific location within a clip, by clicking with the Selector tool at that location, and choosing **`Clip > Identify Sync Point`**.
- Sessions or tracks, dragged from a browser to the session Timeline or Clip List.

Spot Mode

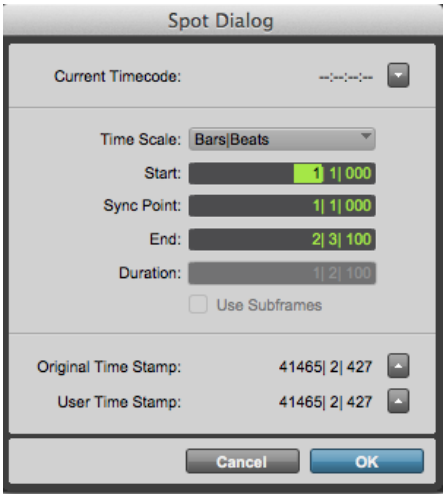
In Spot mode, a clip in a track can be quickly spotted by simply clicking it with the Time Grabber tool.

You can also drag a clip from a Workspace browser, or from the Clip List, to a track while in Spot mode.

The Spot Dialog

The Spot dialog appears when you drag a clip to a track or click a clip with the Time Grabber tool in Spot mode. The numeric fields function as both data displays and editing controls for the currently selected clips.

Information in these fields is displayed in Timecode, Minutes:Seconds, Feet.Frames, Samples, or Bars|Beats, depending on which Time Scale format is selected.



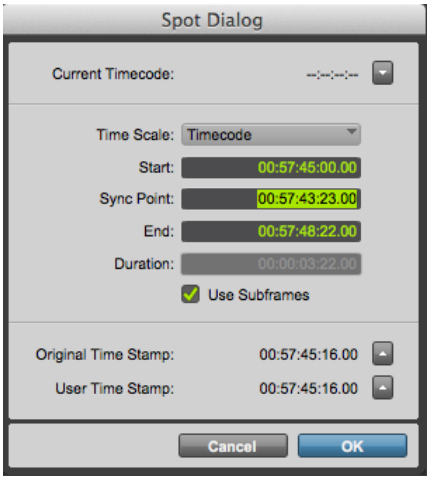
Spot dialog

A highlighted numeric field indicates the current active field for numeric entry editing. Entering a value in a field allows you to move a selected element to the time location that you enter. The Start, Sync Point, and End fields are accessible when the Time Grabber tool is active. Only the Start or End (depending on where you click the mouse) and Duration fields are active when one of the Trim tools is active (see "Using the Trim Tools in Spot Mode" on page 1861).

To increase or decrease Timecode values in the Spot dialog by a specific number of frames, press Plus (+) or Minus (–) on the numeric keypad, enter a number, and press the Enter key.

Use Subframes Option

A subframe is 1/100th of a frame. The **`Use Subframes`** option enables you to use these smaller units for greater accuracy. This command adds an additional time field in the Timecode hours:minutes:seconds:frames box, which appears as the far right time field when enabled. Use a Period (.) to separate subframe values from whole frames.



Additional time field with “Use Subframes” enabled

Subframe measurements are not available in the Current Time field.

Capturing Timecode

Pro Tools also lets you capture frame locations on the fly in the Spot dialog by pressing the Equal key, or by clicking the **Current Timecode** button while valid timecode is being received by Pro Tools. With VITC (SYNC HD only), you can accurately capture a paused or crawling VTR's Timecode location.

When **Timecode** is selected for the Time Scale, pressing the Equal key captures the incoming timecode. When Bars|Beats is selected for the Time Scale, pressing the Equal key will capture to the nearest measure.

Although Capture Timecode works with free-running Linear Timecode (LTC) or VITC, frame numbers of a paused frame can only be captured with VITC.

SYNC HD can read VITC. With MachineControl and either Sync X or a SYNC HD, you can also read serial timecode.

To use Remote mode with MachineControl, you will need an approved serial port. For a complete list of currently approved ports, visit https://kb.avid.com/articles/en_US/compatibility/en352813.

To spot a clip to a specific Timecode frame:

1. Enable Spot mode.
2. Set the Main Time Scale to **Timecode**. (See "Setting a Session Start Time (Start Frame)" on page 1846.)
3. Identify the Timecode frame location where you want to trigger playback of your clip by pausing your video deck on that frame.
4. With the Time Grabber tool, click a clip in a track, or in the Clip List, and drag it into a track. The Spot dialog appears.
5. Enter the Timecode frame location by doing one of the following:
   - If you are using VITC, you can press the Equal (=) key on the numeric keypad, or click **Current Timecode** to enter a paused VTR's current Timecode location.
   - If you are using LTC, when Timecode is selected for the Time Scale, press the Equal (=) key on the numeric keypad to capture the incoming timecode. When Bars|Beats is selected for the Time Scale, press the Equal key to capture the nearest measure.
6. If you recorded the clip while online, you can use the **Original Time Stamp** button to recall and enter the Timecode frame location at which the clip was originally recorded. You can also access a user-defined Time Stamp by clicking the **User Time Stamp** button. See "Time Stamping" on the next page for more information.
7. Click **OK** to close this dialog. The clip spots to the chosen Timecode frame location. When the session is online, this frame number will trigger playback of the clip.

Auto-Spotting Clips

The Pro Tools Auto-Spot Clips option simplifies the task of spotting clips even further. If you are using VITC (SYNC HD only) with this option enabled, or MachineControl, you can pause your video at an appropriate Timecode frame location, click a clip with the Time Grabber tool, and the clip will be automatically spotted to the current timecode location.

You can also use MachineControl's serial timecode ability to auto-spot by enabling MachineControl and enabling serial timecode in the peripheral.

To Auto-Spot a clip:

1. Choose **Options > Auto-Spot Clips**.
2. If you are using VITC, identify the Timecode frame location where you want to trigger playback of your clip by pausing your video deck on that frame.
3. Click the clip with the Time Grabber tool. The clip will be automatically spotted to the current timecode location (or machine location).

Clicking a clip with any of the Trim tools will allow you to trim the clip to the current timecode location.

Auto-spotted clips are spotted by their start times, unless you have identified a Sync Point (see "Identifying a Synchronization Point" on the next page). If the clip contains a Sync Point, the clip is spotted to it.

Using the Trim Tools in Spot Mode

You can use the Spot dialog to trim your clips, including start/end/duration times and referencing incoming timecode addresses. If you click a clip with any of the Trim tools in Spot mode, the Spot dialog will appear, allowing you to enter a value in the Start or End and Duration fields to specify exactly where you want to trim the clip's beginning or end. Use this to edit the length of a clip to correspond to a particular visual "hit point."

Trimming a clip that contains a sync point (see "Identifying a Synchronization Point" on the next page) does not affect the Timecode location of the sync point, unless the clip is trimmed past the sync point.

Time Stamping

Pro Tools time stamps every clip recorded online with the original Timecode location at which audio was recorded. You can recall this original Timecode location for a clip by clicking the Original Time Stamp button in the Spot dialog.

You can also spot a clip to a separate user-defined time stamp, defined using the **Time Stamp** command in the Clip List menu. Once the clip is time stamped using this command, you can click the **User Time Stamp** button to re-spot a clip to its user-defined Timecode location.

Show Original Timecode in Clips

This command displays the original "time stamped" Timecode locations in all clips currently placed in tracks. This Timecode frame number represents the time at which the clip was originally recorded online with Pro Tools, and does not necessarily reflect the clip's current Timecode location in a track.

To show (or hide) Original Time Stamps in clips:

- Select (or deselect) **View > Clip > Original Time Stamp**.

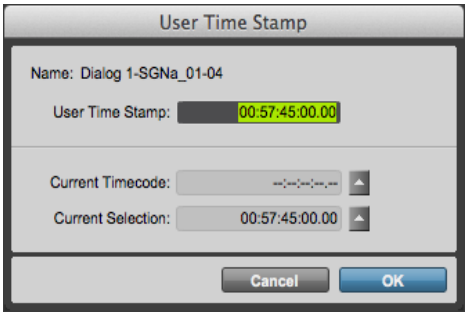
Creating a User Time Stamp

If you want to create a separate user-defined Timecode time stamp, you can use the **Time Stamp** command in the Clip List menu. This command lets you select a clip (or clips) and redefine its Timecode time stamp. The Original Time Stamp and the User-Time Stamp are then stored with your session.

When audio is first recorded, the User Time Stamp will match the Original Time Stamp, but you can change the User Time Stamp at any time using the Time Stamp command. This feature is particularly useful in post production situations where the Timecode on video "work prints" often changes from one edit revision to another.

To time stamp a clip (or clips) with a new Timecode frame number:

1. In a track, select the clip that you want to time stamp.
2. From the Clip List menu, choose the **Time Stamp** command.



User Time Stamp dialog

3. Enter a new Timecode location by doing one of the following:
   - Enter the numbers manually (with the help of the arrow keys).
   - To capture the incoming timecode address, click the **Current Timecode** button (or press the Equal key).
   - To enter the start time of the current on-screen selection, click the **Current Selection** button.
4. Click **OK**.

This command can be used in "batch mode" to set new time stamps for several clips at a time. To do this, select several clips and choose the **Time Stamp** command. One after another, a dialog will open for each clip, allowing you to quickly enter new values.

Once entered, the user time stamps can be displayed in all clips currently placed in tracks.

To show (or hide) User Time Stamps in clips:

- Select (or deselect) **View > Clip > User Time Stamp**.

Identifying a Synchronization Point

The Pro Tools **Identify Sync Point** command lets you identify a specific point within a clip for audio spotting purposes.

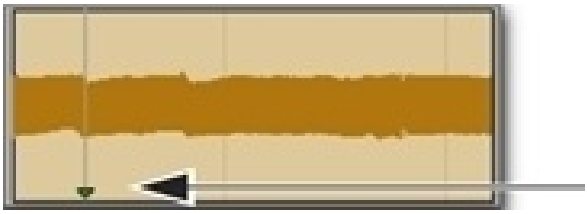
Imagine the following sound effects spotting scenario: You have a single sound effect that consists of a creaky door slamming shut, followed by a few seconds of ambient reverberation. The slam portion of the effect—which you must precisely match to picture—occurs neither at the very beginning of the audio file nor at the very end. It is somewhere in the middle, making it tough to spot. In this scenario, use the **Identify Sync Point** command to create a point in the clip and synchronize that point to a Timecode frame.

For more information on Sync Points, see "Sync Points" on page 1232.

To create a sync point in a clip:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Click with the Selector tool at the point in the clip that you want to synchronize to a Timecode frame location.
   - Press the Down Arrow key while playing back.

2. Choose **Clip > Identify Sync Point**. The current Timecode location is automatically entered as the Timecode location for the sync point. A small down arrow appears at the bottom of the clip, with a vertical, light gray line indicating the location of the sync point.



Sync Point in an audio clip

Troubleshooting Timecode Synchronization

If you are having problems getting Timecode synchronization to work properly, you can troubleshoot your system and solve common problems.

Stripe Timecode Before You Record

All tapes in your setup (both audio and video) must be striped with Timecode before any audio is recorded onto them or to Pro Tools. If tapes aren't striped, your system may seem to work, but synchronization will never properly occur. The machines and Pro Tools will drift farther and farther apart the longer they run.

The same problem occurs when audio is recorded into Pro Tools without a resolved Timecode source (for example, if it was recorded before the current session). The audio cannot be accurately synchronized with an analog tape recorder or video tape deck, since the Pro Tools audio was not recorded referenced to the Timecode from the analog tape deck or video tape deck.

Resolve All Components of Your System

When striping timecode, make sure that the timecode generator and the video record deck are resolved to the same crystal reference. For example, when striping 29.97 Drop Frame timecode onto a VTR, both the Timecode generator and the VTR should be resolved to the same "black burst" or house sync generator. During playback, the master deck should be resolved to "black burst" or house sync.

This convention provides compatibility for your tape between the record and playback passes, and when it is played back in other facilities on different equipment. This also means that when playing back a tape striped with timecode, the playback deck should be resolved to the same synchronization rate as the record deck was resolved to at the time of the striping. When you stripe timecode using an audio transport, it should be "free-running" and unresolved, but should be resolved with a house sync-referenced synchronizer during playback.

Know the True Frame Rate on Your Media

If you get your media from a production company instead of recording them yourself, be absolutely sure that they indicate the Timecode frame rate used on the tape correctly. Several timecode formats use the same frame count (such as 23.976 fps and 24 fps) yet they run at slightly different frame rates per second.

A synchronization peripheral (and some third-party products) can be used to help determine frame rate.

29.97 fps Non-Drop Rate Not Recognized

29.97 fps Non-Drop is a slightly slower version of 30 fps Non-Drop timecode. When 29.97 fps Non-Drop is used with color video, each video frame matches up with each Timecode frame without having to use a drop-frame coding. This makes any frame number mathematics much simpler, since no frame numbers are dropped.

Some hardware and software devices do not recognize 29.97 Non-Drop as a separate frame rate. For example, any standard LTC/VITC-to MTC-converter does not explicitly recognize it. You must set the converter to expect 30 fps Non-Drop instead. In fact, many devices that read Timecode work acceptably by reading 29.97 Non-Drop if they are set to expect 30 fps Non-Drop.

Any Timecode reader that uses the timecode numbers to make real-time calculations (as Pro Tools does when it tries to trigger and synchronize to Timecode) also needs to know that the frame format is 29.97 and not 30 fps. Since Pro Tools allows this choice of frame rate this does not really pose a problem. The problem exists because many users cannot readily distinguish 29.97 from 30 fps.

Even though NTSC tapes only use 29.97, some production companies will distribute video work prints striped with 29.97 fps but mark them as "30 fps NTSC," by which they actually mean 29.97 fps Non-Drop.

By the time you get the tape, you may have no idea what's actually on it. Feeding 29.97 Non-Drop to Pro Tools when it is set for 30 fps Non-Drop will result in timing errors of about 1.8 frames per minute, causing audio playback to trigger out of sync.

Use a Consistent Clock Source

When possible, media files should be played back using the same sync reference signal they were recorded with. This assures the closest match between record and playback sample rates.

Disabling Avid Audio Sever to Prevent Clock Disruptions with Sync X or Sync HD

(Mac Only)

When you quit Pro Tools, the **Loop Master** changes from Sync X or Sync HD to the primary audio interface in the system, and the HDX or HD Native Core Audio driver becomes the **Clock Master** for the primary audio interface in the system rather than your Sync X or Sync HD. These changes may disrupt audio outputs of Loop Synced interfaces or those following word clock generated by Sync X or Sync HD. Disruptions are more significant if the Core Audio driver is set to a different sample rate than Pro Tools. Once Pro Tools is relaunched, the **Loop Master** and **Clock Master** revert to Sync X or Sync HD.

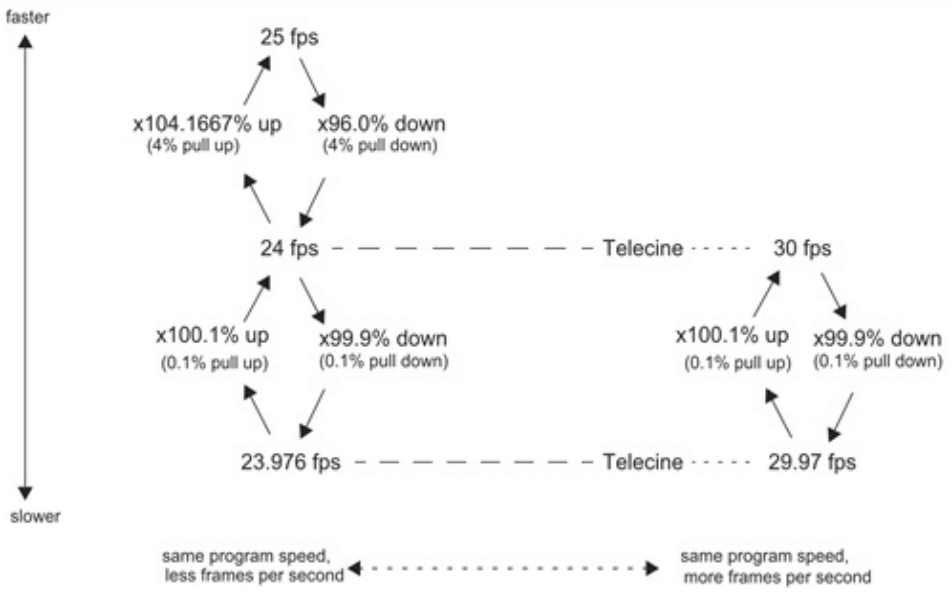
To prevent the **Loop Master** and **Clock Master** from changing (thereby stabilizing the clock) when quitting Pro Tools, disable the Avid Audio Server.

To disable Avid Audio Server:

1. Locate Avid Audio Server at **/Applications/Avid/AvidAudioServer**.
2. Rename **Avid Audio Server** (for example, rename it to "**#AvidAudioServer**").
3. Reboot your computer.

To revert to the default behavior, reinstall the Avid HD Driver and reboot your computer.

Speed Correction for Film, NTSC Video, and PAL Video



Frame rates, telecine transfers, and relative playback speeds

Sample Rate Conversion Using Source Sample Rates at Pull Up and Pull Down Setting

From:	To:	Pull:	Source Sample Rate					
NTSC Video	PAL	+0.1% then +4.1667%	45983	50050	91967	100100	n/a	n/a
Film	PAL	+4.1667%	45938	50000	91875	100000	n/a	n/a
NTSC Video	Film	+0.1%	44144	48048	88288	96096	176576	192192
Film	NTSC Video	–0.1%	44056	47952	88112	95904	176224	191808
PAL	Film	–4.0%	42336	46080	84672	92160	n/a	n/a
PAL	NTSC Video	–4.0% then 0.1%	42294	46034	84587	92068	n/a	n/a
NTSC Video = 23.976/29.97 fps Film = 24/30 fps PAL = 25 fps			Destination Sample Rate					
			44100	48000	88200	96000	176400	192000

Sample Rate Conversion Using Destination Sample Rates at Pull Up and Pull Down Setting

NTSC Video = 23.976/29.97 fps **Film = 24/30 fps** **PAL = 25 fps**			**Source Sample Rate**					
			44100	**48000**	**88200**	**96000**	**176400**	**192000**
From:	**To:**	**Pull:**	**Destination Sample Rate**					
NTSC Video	PAL	+0.1% then +4.1667%	42294	46034	84587	92068	n/a	n/a

NTSC Video = 23.976/29.97 fps Film = 24/30 fps PAL = 25 fps			Source Sample Rate					
			44100	48000	88200	96000	176400	192000
From:	**To:**	**Pull:**	**Destination Sample Rate**					
Film	PAL	+4.1667%	42336	46080	84672	92160	n/a	n/a
NTSC Video	Film	+0.1%	44056	47952	88112	95904	176224	191808
Film	NTSC Video	–0.1%	44144	48048	88288	96096	176576	192192
PAL	Film	–4.0%	45938	50000	91875	100000	n/a	n/a
PAL	NTSC Video	–4.0% then 0.1%	45983	50050	91967	100100	n/a	n/a

67 Pro Tools | MachineControl

Pro Tools | MachineControl™ provides serial communication between Pro Tools and Sony® 9-pin compatible synchronizers, and video or audio machines.

MachineControl Requirements

MachineControl requires Pro Tools Ultimate software running on a Pro Tools | HDX or HD Native system. A Pro Tools synchronization peripheral is recommended.

Serial Deck Control Mode Requirements

For Tighter Lockups

- For Serial Deck Control, use of a synchronization peripheral, such as Sync X or SYNC HD, is recommended.
- For near sample accurate Serial Deck Control, a synchronization peripheral is required.
- If you are not using a synchronization peripheral with Pro Tools, some features of MachineControl can be used by connecting the deck to the computer with the proper cable and adapter configuration.

See "Connecting Machines for Serial Control Mode" on page 1869.

Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Requirements

A synchronization peripheral is required when running MachineControl 9-Pin Remote Deck Emulation mode, as it provides frame-accurate LTC.

Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation does not work using the serial ports on a synchronization peripheral or using the Serial port on an HDX card, HD Native card, or HD Native Thunderbolt. Instead, you must connect the remote controller to your Pro Tools system using one of the methods detailed in "Connecting Machines for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode" on page 1870.

MachineControl Components

To use MachineControl with Pro Tools Ultimate software you will need the following components (sold separately), based on your operating system:

Mac Systems

- A supported USB serial adapter, such as the Colin Broad 422 USB serial adapter
- Serial Deck Control cable: Male 8-pin mini-DIN to male 9-pin cable
- Remote 9-pin Deck Emulation cable: Male 8-pin mini-DIN to female 9-pin cable

Windows Systems

- A supported USB serial adapter, such as the Colin Broad 422 USB serial adapter for computers without a COM port
- Serial Deck Control cable: RS-232 to RS-422
- 9-pin Turnaround adapter (for Remote 9-pin Deck Emulation mode)

Cables and Connections

MachineControl requires its own connections between Pro Tools hardware, the computer, and external machines. Connections differ depending on your Pro Tools audio interface, operating system, and on which of the two MachineControl operational modes you want to use: Serial Deck Control mode or Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode.

When using a supported third-party paddle device with Pro Tools, you can use both Serial Deck Control mode and Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode simultaneously. See "Using a Paddle Device in Local Mode" on page 1893 for more information.

Cables

MachineControl requires the following cables and adapters (sold separately), depending on your computer platform:

Mac Systems

Remote Deck Emulation Mode Cable

Male 8-pin mini-DIN to female 9-pin cable, required for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation.

Serial Deck Control Cable

Male 8-pin mini-DIN to male 9-pin cable, for Deck Control.

USB Serial Adapter

A supported USB serial adapter, such as the Colin Broad 422 USB serial adapter, is required for serial to USB connections on the Mac.

Windows Systems

Serial Deck Control Cable

RS-232 to RS-422 cable, for serial timecode and all other MachineControl functions.

Turnaround Adapter

9-pin adapter, used with RS-232 to RS-422 cable, for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation.

USB Serial Adapter

A supported USB serial adapter, such as the Colin Broad 422 USB serial adapter, is required for serial to USB connections on Windows computers without a COM port.

Do not substitute 9-pin or serial adapters for either MachineControl cable. Each cable is specifically wired for one operation mode.

Serial Deck Control Mode

Serial Deck Control mode supports bi-directional communication between Pro Tools and a compatible external machine. With this feature you can:

- Synchronize to serial timecode
- Arm tracks on the machine remotely
- Control a transport from Pro Tools
- Configure machine settings and options.

For computers that do not have serial ports, a supported USB serial adapter (not provided) is required to make the MachineControl connection. For a list of qualified USB serial adapters, visit www.avid.com/compatibility.

Pro Tools HDX and HD Native Systems

For Pro Tools HD and HDX or HD Native systems with a synchronization peripheral, you can use a Serial to 9-pin connection or a 9-pin to 9-pin connection for Serial Deck Control mode.

CPU to Deck Connection

This type of connection yields the best performance, especially with linear decks. Use the included Serial Deck Control cable for this type of connection.

Synchronization Peripheral to Deck Connection

This type of connection is suitable for non-linear decks. If you are using a SYNC HD, as many as two machines can be connected to the two 9-pin Out ports. You can control one machine at a time, and switch between them from within Pro Tools. Pro Tools | Sync X provides a single 9-pin Out port. These ports support all MachineControl modes except Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode. For Remote Deck Emulation mode on Mac systems or Windows computers without a COM port, a supported USB serial adapter is required.

Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

This mode enables a form of *deck emulation* in Pro Tools. When the Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode cable is used on a supported system, Pro Tools can respond to record-arming, transport, and other standard 9-pin commands from an external machine.

While in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode, Pro Tools always generates timecode, and can be either the timecode master or follow external timecode.

- On Mac systems, use the Remote 9-Pin Emulation Mode cable. This mode requires a supported serial adapter connected to a computer USB port, and a properly wired configuration. See "Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode" on page 1888 for details.
- On Windows systems, Remote 9-pin Deck Emulation mode uses an RS-232 to RS-422 cable and a Turnaround adapter connected to an available serial or COM port on the computer. If no COM port is available, a supported serial adapter connected to a USB port on the computer is required.

Connecting Machines

This section describes how to connect machines for Serial Control Mode or Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode. All cables and adapters are sold separately.

Connecting Machines for Serial Control Mode

For Best Serial Deck Control

For best serial deck control, connect your deck as follows depending on whether you are using a Mac or a Windows computer.

To connect a deck to a Mac computer:

1. Connect a supported USB serial adapter, such as the Colin Broad 422 USB serial adapter, to a USB port on the computer.
2. Connect a male mini DIN-8 serial to male 9-pin D-sub Deck Control cable to the end of the adapter.
3. Connect the other end of the cable to the machine.

To connect a deck to a Windows computer, do one of the following:

- Connect the computer's COM port to the machine, using a 9-pin RS-322 to RS-422 cable.
- For computers that do not have a COM port, use a supported USB serial adapter, such as the Colin Broad 422 USB serial adapter, with the cable to connect the machine to a USB port on the computer.

For Limited Serial Deck Control (Non-Linear Decks Only)

- Connect a standard 9-pin cable from the 9-pin Out port on Sync X, or one of the 9-pin Out ports on SYNC HD, to the 9-pin input of the machine. Due to performance limitations, this configuration should be used primarily with non-linear decks.

Connecting Machines for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

To connect a machine for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode (Mac Systems):

1. Connect a supported USB serial adapter to a USB port on the computer.
2. Connect a male mini DIN-8 serial to female 9-pin Deck Emulation cable to the end of the adapter.
3. Connect the end of the cable to the machine.

To connect a machine for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode (Windows Systems), do one of the following:

- Connect the Turnaround adapter to the RS-322 to RS-422 cable, and connect them from an available serial or COM port on your computer to the 9-pin output of the machine.
- For computers that do not have a COM port, use a supported USB serial adapter, such as the Colin Broad 422 USB serial adapter, with the cable to connect the machine to a USB port on the computer.

Do not use the Serial port on your HDX card, HD | Native card, HD | Native Thunderbolt, or the 9-pin port(s) on the synchronization peripheral for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode. The Serial port should only be used for synchronization peripheral connections.

Using a Rosetta Stone Adapter with MachineControl

(Windows Only) Using the Rosetta Stone adapter (sold separately) with MachineControl on Windows lets you increase reliability for long cable runs for Serial Deck Control mode or Remote mode.

⚠ **A Rosetta Stone RS-232 to RS-422 adapter (model 2/8 or 2/9) and additional RS-232 and RS-422 cables are required.**

To increase reliability in long cable runs in Serial Deck Control mode:

1. Connect the RS-232 cable from your computer's COM port into the RS-232 side of the Rosetta Stone adapter. If no COM port is available, use a supported USB serial adapter connected to a USB port on your computer.
2. Connect the RS-422 cable from the RS-422 side of the Rosetta Stone to the deck or 9-pin patch bay. If a longer run is needed, add more 9-pin cable on the RS-422 end.

Starting Up Your System

To ensure that the components of your Pro Tools system communicate properly with each other and your external machines, start them in a particular order.

Start up your Pro Tools system in this order:

1. Turn on any external machines (VTR, ATR, synchronizer, and monitors).
2. Turn on any MIDI interfaces, MIDI devices and synchronization peripherals.
3. Lower the volume of all output devices in your system.

4. Turn on Pro Tools audio interfaces. Wait at least fifteen seconds for your system hardware to initialize.
5. Turn on your computer and launch Pro Tools.

Machine Local and Remote Modes

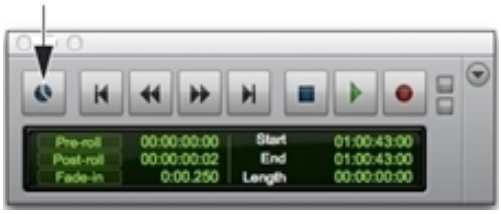
Be sure to set your machine-controllable device to “remote” or “ext” mode to receive the 9-pin information (not “local” or front-panel mode). With some supported machines, if all other communication is established and the machine is not in remote mode, Pro Tools will indicate machine “local” mode.

MachineControl Communication Modes

MachineControl supports two machine communication modes: Serial Deck Control mode and Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode.

Serial Deck Control Mode

With *Serial Deck Control mode*, you can use the Pro Tools Transport window to control an external deck.



Online button, Right-click to set Transport Master

Transport

The setting of the Transport Master determines the type of Serial Deck Control, as follows:

Transport = Pro Tools

The Transport window controls the Pro Tools Timeline. When online, the deck locates relative to actions taken in the Pro Tools Timeline.

Transport = Machine

The Transport window controls the machine. When Pro Tools is Online, the Pro Tools Timeline chases the machine.

Transport = MMC

The Transport window controls MIDI Machine Control (MMC). When Pro Tools is Online, the Pro Tools Timeline chases MMC.

Cueing and Pre-Roll

Pro Tools Preference settings let you optimize MachineControl operation, including adjustable machine pre-roll, selectable edit and memory location chasing.

Pro Tools sessions can be as long as 24 hours. MachineControl features are disabled for the final minutes of the 24-hour period, to allow for pre-roll to be used at the beginning of the session without unwanted machine shuttling.

Track Arming

When the Transport Master is set to **Transport = Machine**, you can arm tracks of external machines from within Pro Tools for layback and transfer. Features include individual record enables for up to 48 external tracks, with selectable record protocol and mode. Machine profiles included with the software let you pre-configure track arming for many machine types.

Serial Timecode

When the Positional Reference is set to **Serial Timecode** in the Session Setup window, Pro Tools can control an external machine via the Serial Deck Control cable. This setting also enables Pro Tools to receive timecode directly using only the Serial Deck Control cable.

(This mode requires that the 9-pin device be capable of transmitting serial timecode. It also requires that the Pro Tools and the device receive a common video reference.)

Using a Paddle Device in Local Mode

When using MachineControl in Local mode with or without an external synchronizer, you can use a supported third-party paddle device to issue the following Pro Tools track commands:

- Input monitoring
- Record Enable
- Record Safe
- Solo
- Solo Mute

See "Using a Paddle Device in Local Mode" on page 1893.

Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

With Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode (also called *Remote 9-Pin* mode), an external synchronizer can take control over Pro Tools transport and recording functions.

Pro Tools responds to commands sent by the master 9-pin machine controller, but because Pro Tools is in Remote mode, many of its transport commands are locked out.

Remote and Remote/LTC Chase Modes

When using an external machine controller to control Pro Tools, you can configure Pro Tools to emulate a 9-pin deck in either of the following modes:

Remote mode

Pro Tools emulates a device that can generate timecode or follow timecode.

Remote/LTC Chase mode

Pro Tools emulates a device that receives track and transport arming commands, while chasing incoming LTC.

Track Arming

In Remote Deck Emulation mode, you can arm Pro Tools tracks from an external machine.

Features include remote control of individual record enables for up to 112 tracks, with selectable record protocol and mode. Included factory and user programmable profiles let you configure track arming for any machine type.

For arming tracks during playback, see "TrackPunch Audio Recording" on page 839 and "DestructivePunch Audio Recording" on page 843.

Setting Up Machine Control

Online and Offline Operation

Pro Tools can remotely control, or be controlled by, any approved enabled external device. You can select a device by using the Transport Master selector in the Transport window.



Transport online, Transport = Machine (9-pin Deck Control)

To trigger Pro Tools playback or recording from an external source, the Pro Tools Transport needs to be *online*. There are four ways to put the Pro Tools Transport online:

- Click the Online button in the Transport window.
- Choose **Options > Transport Online**.
- Press Command+J (Mac) or Control+J (Windows).
- Press Option+Spacebar (Mac) or Alt+Spacebar (Windows).

Pro Tools can generate LTC while the Transport is online, but only when Positional Reference is set to Serial Timecode.

The Online button in the Transport window indicates online status. It flashes while enabled and waiting for synchronization, and stays lit when lock is achieved.

Transport Controls

With MachineControl, the Pro Tools Transport window becomes a multi-function controller.

Counter Display

The Pro Tools Edit window counter displays the current machine (9-pin) or session timecode location, depending on which device is the Transport Master, plus any current Session Start Time Offsets being applied. (See "External Timecode Offsets in the Session Setup Window" on page 1844 for more information.)

The Incoming Time display in the Session Setup window always shows absolute incoming timecode, without any offsets.

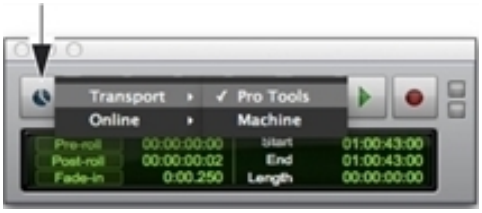
Transport Master

To selecting the Transport Master:

- Right-click the Online button in the Transport and select **Transport > Pro Tools** or **Transport > Machine**.

  You can also press Control+backslash (\) to toggle between Pro Tools, the Machine, and Remote

transport.



Selecting the Transport Master

Transport = Pro Tools

In this mode, the controls in the Transport window are focused on Pro Tools playback and recording.

When the transport is online, the machine controls Pro Tools, and the session locks to the machine's timecode. The machine follows Preferences for Machine Chase and Online Record.

When the transport is offline, the Pro Tools Transport window controls Pro Tools only.

Transport = Machine

In this mode, the controls in the Transport window are focused on the machine connected and enabled for Serial Deck Control mode. Record commands are sent to the machine only.

When the transport is online, Pro Tools follows the machine. The Transport window controls the machine, and Pro Tools chases and locks to it.

In addition, when Auto-Spot Clips is enabled, clips are spotted to the current machine time, and the Trim tool trims to the current machine time.

For details on Auto-Spotting, see "Auto-Spotting Clips" on page 1860.

When the transport is offline, the Pro Tools Transport window controls the machine only.

Toggling the Transport while Online

When the Transport window is online, toggling the Transport Master between Pro Tools and your machine will also toggle between controller and controlled.

Toggling the Online Status of a Device

Use the Online pop-up menu in the Transport Master selector to toggle the online status of a Machine device.

To put a device online (or offline):

- Right-click the Online button in the Transport and select (or deselect) **`Online > Pro Tools`** or **`Online > Machine`**.

  Device choices depend on the current Transport Master and which devices have been set up in Pro Tools.



Online menu in Transport window

The Online pop-up menu will only display devices that have been properly set up in Pro Tools. To set up machine devices, see "Serial Deck Control Mode" below. To set up MIDI devices, see "Using MIDI Machine Control" on page 1854.

Online Display Information

Several display elements of the Edit and Transport windows provide machine status information during MachineControl use, as follows:

- When Pro Tools is online, the Transport Online button flashes. “Waiting for Sync” will be displayed in the status box in the lower left corner of the Edit window.
- The Transport Online button continues to flash until you click Play and timecode lock occurs (all devices locked and responding in sync).
- The Timecode display in the Edit window shows the Machine Time when the machine is Master.
- Upon lockup, the Timecode display switches to show the session time.
- When set to 9-pin Deck mode, the Online button icon updates to show a 9-pin icon.

Remote Mode

In Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode, you put Pro Tools in Remote mode to enable Machine Control operation.

When you put Pro Tools in Remote mode, it responds to commands sent by the master 9-Pin machine. Many Pro Tools commands, including transport controls, are inactive in the Transport window.

When you take Pro Tools out of Remote mode, it operates in Local mode and ignores commands from the 9-pin machine controller. Pro Tools responds only to requests from the 9-pin machine controller for machine type and status, and returns that it is in Local mode.

To put Pro Tools in Remote mode:

1. Choose **`View > Transport > Synchronization`**.
2. Click the Remote button in the Transport window.



Remote button in the Transport window

For more information on Remote mode in Pro Tools, see "Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode" on page 1888.

Serial Deck Control Mode

Serial Deck Control mode is available whenever MachineControl is connected using the Serial Deck Control cable. For more information about connecting Pro Tools for Serial Deck Control mode, see "Cables and Connections" on page 1868.

When connected for Serial Deck Control mode, MachineControl enables all Pro Tools track arming, synchronization, and Transport features, as available on your system. Serial Deck Control mode also supports 9-pin serial timecode (see "Using Serial Timecode for Positional Reference" on page 1877). Some features require a synchronization peripheral, as noted throughout this chapter.

For information on track arming, see "Remote Track Arming" on page 1883.

Configuring Serial Deck Control (Overview)

To configure Pro Tools for Serial Deck Control, do the following:

1. Open an existing session or create a new one.
2. Set up a MachineControl device. (See "Configuring a MachineControl Device for Deck Control" below.)
3. Configure Pro Tools Machine Control preferences and Online Options in the Preferences dialog. (See"Preferences for Serial Deck Control Mode" on page 1878.)
4. Configure Pro Tools session settings in the Session Setup window. (See"Session Setup Window and MachineControl" on page 1879.)
5. In the Pro Tools Transport window, select Pro Tools or Machine as the Transport Master. (See "Selecting Pro Tools or the Machine as the Transport Master" on page 1881.)
6. Use the Transport window to play back material. (See "Playback in Serial Deck Control Mode" on page 1882.)

Configuring a MachineControl Device for Deck Control

To set up a MachineControl device:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Peripherals**.
2. If you are using a synchronization peripheral, click the **Synchronization** tab and select **Enable SYNC Device**.
3. Click the **Machine Control** tab in the Peripherals dialog.
4. In the 9-pin Machine Control (Deck Control) section, select **Enable**.



Configuring MachineControl for Serial Deck Control

5. Select the 9-pin MachineControl port from the **Port** pop-up menu.

   Do not use the designated machine serial port for any other function (such as timecode or MIDI metronome). Make sure that 9-pin is the only communication on the selected port.

6. Choose the appropriate machine profile from the **Machine Type** pop-up menu.

   Pro Tools lets you define and save custom machine profiles. See "Remote Track Arming" on page 1883 for more information.

7. Set machine pre-roll for use when the Transport Master is set to Pro Tools. (See "Machine Pre-Roll" on the next page for more information.)

   Machine pre-roll is different from the main Transport pre-roll that is set in the Transport window.

   If you are using a synchronization peripheral and your machine has timecode reader capability, you can use serial timecode for Positional Reference.

8. Click **OK** to close the Peripherals dialog.

Machine Pre-Roll

You can set a variable amount of machine pre-roll to account for the time it may take the machine to achieve servo lock. Shorter pre-roll values are usually better for non-linear machines. Longer pre-roll values are usually better for older tape transports.

The Machine pre-roll value is added to any pre-roll specified in the Pro Tools Transport window.

To set MachineControl pre-roll:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Peripherals**, and click the **Machine Control** tab.
2. In the 9-pin Machine Control (Deck Control) section, type the number of frames of pre-roll in the **Preroll** box.
3. Click **OK**.

Selecting Machines in Serial Deck Control Mode

When using Sync X with a machine connected to 9-pin port, or a SYNC HD with machines connected to each of its two 9-pin ports, or with machines connected directly to the computer, use the Peripherals dialog to choose which machine to control.

To select a machine for Serial Deck Control mode:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Peripherals** and click the **Machine Control** tab.
2. In the 9-pin Machine Control (Deck Control) section select **Enable**.
3. Choose **Sync X 9-Pin Out**, **SYNC 9-Pin Out 1** or **SYNC 9-Pin Out 2**, or an available serial port from the Port pop-up menu.
4. Choose the appropriate machine profile from the **Machine Type** pop-up menu.
5. Click **OK** to close the Peripherals dialog.

Using Serial Timecode for Positional Reference

If you are using a synchronization peripheral and your machine has 9-pin serial timecode capability, you can use sserial timecode for positional reference. This improves lockup times.

To use serial timecode for positional reference, a Video Reference signal must be present, as indicated by the Status indicator in the Session Setup and Edit windows. Both the synchronization peripheral and the external machine should be locked to the same video reference signal.

When using Serial Timecode for positional reference, you can regenerate LTC.

To enable Serial Timecode:

1. Choose **Setup > Session**.
2. Choose **Serial Timecode** from the **Positional Reference** pop-up menu.

To regenerate LTC when locking to Serial Timecode:

1. Choose **Setup > Session**.
2. Choose **Serial Timecode** from the **Positional Reference** pop-up menu.
3. In the Transport window, click the **GEN LTC** button.



GEN LTC button in Transport window

Preferences for Serial Deck Control Mode

Configure preferences for MachineControl playback and recording in Pro Tools.

Playback Options

To set Machine Control and Synchronization options:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **Synchronization** tab.
2. Select the desired **Machine Control** options.
3. Set **Synchronization** options as desired.
4. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

Machine Control Section

Machine Chases Memory Location

When selected, navigating to a specific location in a session with a Memory Location causes a connected transport to chase to that location.

Machine Follows Edit Insertion/Scrub

When selected, navigating to a specific location in a session by moving the selection point or by scrubbing a track will cause a connected transport to chase to that location.

- When the connected device is a linear device (such as a tape deck), select **Linear Devices (jog)** to set Pro Tools to send jog commands.
- When the connected device is a non-linear device (such as a random-access video recorder or another Pro Tools system), select **Non-Linear Devices (cue)** to set Pro Tools to send cue commands.

Machine Cues Intelligently

When selected, if you navigate to a cue point that is more than 10 seconds from the current location, Pro Tools will command a connected transport to fast wind to the new location at full speed to within 10 seconds of the cue point. Cueing will then slow to normal speed until the point is reached. This can significantly speed up tape cueing with certain video transports.

Stop at Shuttle Speed Zero

Causes Pro Tools to send a Stop command whenever you stop shuttling. This is useful if you have a machine that requires an explicit stop command to park correctly.

Non-Linear Transport Error Suppression

When Transport = Pro Tools, keeps Pro Tools from sending a Stop command when taken offline. This prevents Pro Tools from stopping any other 9-pin devices connected to the system.

Synchronization Section

Minimum Sync Delay

Sets the amount of time (in frames) for devices to achieve synchronization “lock.” This amount varies for each device. For more information, see "Setting Minimum Sync Delay" on page 1857.

Delay Before Locking to Longitudinal Timecode

Sets the amount of time (in frames) for Pro Tools to lock to incoming LTC. Use this option when locking Pro Tools to a stable timecode source (such as a non-linear machine or LTC generator) and not a linear tape machine.

Delay Before Locking to Serial Timecode

Sets the amount of time (in frames) for Pro Tools to wait before attempting to lock to machines that issue servo lock messages. This setting allows time for the servo mechanisms to achieve stable lock.

Recording Options

To set Serial Deck Control mode recording options:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **Operation** tab.
2. Select or set the **Online Options** in the **Record** section.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

Online Options

Record Online at Timecode (or ADAT) Lock

When selected, online recording begins as soon as Pro Tools receives and locks to incoming timecode.

Record Online at Insertion/Selection

When selected, online recording begins at the edit cursor location. Recording continues until Pro Tools stops receiving timecode. If you make a selection, Pro Tools records online for the length of the selection.

Session Setup Window and MachineControl



Session Setup window with Sync X

Session Settings for MachineControl

Use the steps in this section to quickly configure the basic session settings for MachineControl.

For detailed information about the Session Setup window, see "Session Setup Window" on page 1838.

Basic Session Settings

Confirm the following settings for each session.

To configure a session for MachineControl:

1. Open an existing session or create a new one.
2. Choose **Setup > Session**.
3. In the Format section, do the following:
   - Set a **Session Start** time.
   - Set the session **Timecode Rate** and **Feet+Frames Rate**.



Basic session settings in the Session Setup window

Additional Pro Tools MachineControl Commands

The following commands are available in all MachineControl operating modes.

Current Timecode Position

Use this command to redefine the current timecode position and session start time. By creating an insertion point (or Edit selection), and then entering the desired new timecode position for that location, the session start time will be recalculated based on the new, relative timecode location.

For example, if you place an insertion point at 01:02:04:11, choose **Setup > Current Timecode Position**, and enter 01:00:08:00 to correspond to the first frame of film, this adjusts the session start time such that the insertion point location is now 01:00:08:00.

To redefine the current timecode location:

1. Enable Link Edit/Timeline.
2. Click the Grid mode selector. This ensures that your selection is on a frame boundary.
3. Locate Pro Tools to the beginning of the relevant material (usually the first audio of a scene, a 2 pop, or similar).
4. If appropriate, cue the external timecode source to the location where you want to align the current Pro Tools insertion point. Note the timecode location, or copy it to the clipboard.
5. Choose **Setup > Current Timecode Position**.
6. Type the new timecode position in the **Desired Timecode Position** text box, or paste the timecode position into the text box, if you copied it to the clipboard.
7. Click **OK**.

Current Feet+Frames Position

Use this command to redefine the Feet+Frames position at the current insertion point (or the Timeline Selection In Point).

Redefining Feet+Frames does not redefine the session start time.

Typically, this command is used for integrating test tones, pre-roll, and similar pre-program material into the Pro Tools session ahead of the first hour timecode position on the Timeline. In most cases when working on reels of film, the user will want to set the first hour mark in the session to equal +0 feet and frames, to line up properly with the start of the Academy leader for each reel of film.

To set a relative frame position for a session (Feet+Frames):

1. Enable Link Edit/Timeline.
2. Click the Grid mode selector. This ensures that your selection is on a frame boundary.
3. With the Selector tool, click in a track (or make a selection) where you want to redefine the position.
4. Choose **Setup > Current Feet+Frames Position**.
5. Enter a Feet+Frame position in the **Desired Feet+Frames Position** text box.
6. Click **OK**.

Create Machine Track Arming Profile

The Create Machine Track Arming Profile command lets you create and save machine descriptions as Machine Profiles. Profiles are provided for an ever-increasing list of common machines, or you can customize profiles for specific situations and requirements. Options include the ability to emulate a different machine type, remap and rename audio tracks, and choose to include or exclude the video and timecode tracks, when available. For more information, see "Creating a Track Arming Profile" on page 1885.

Selecting Pro Tools or the Machine as the Transport Master

In Serial Deck Control mode, the deck is always the timecode master. However, the start of machine playback changes based on the Transport Master mode you are using.

The setting of the Transport Master (located in the Pro Tools Transport window) determines where the deck will start playback when the Pro Tools Transport sends a play command to the deck Control, as follows:

Transport = Pro Tools

In this mode, the Transport window controls the Pro Tools Timeline position (playback and recording). When you click Play in the Transport window while it is online, the deck locates relative to the current Pro Tools Timeline.

- When the Transport window is online, the machine locates to a position ahead of the current Timeline insertion point. This location ahead is equal to the sum of the machine pre-roll and the Transport pre-roll. Once the machine has located to this total pre-roll position, it plays, sending timecode to Pro Tools, which chases that incoming timecode. The machine follows the Preferences settings for Serial Deck Control. (See "Preferences for Serial Deck Control Mode" on page 1878.)
- When the Transport window is offline, the Pro Tools Transport window controls Pro Tools only.
- All record commands are sent to Pro Tools, not the machine.

Transport = Machine

In this mode, the Transport window controls the machine connected and enabled for Serial Deck Control mode. Record commands are sent to the machine only. When online and a Play command is given, the machine plays from its current location, feeding timecode to Pro Tools, which chases the incoming timecode from the deck.

- When the Transport window is online, Pro Tools chases the timecode coming from the machine. The Transport window controls the machine, and Pro Tools chases and locks to it.
- All record commands in this mode are directed to the deck only.
- When Auto-Spot is turned on, clips are spotted to the current machine time, and the Trim tool trims to the current machine time.
- When the Transport is offline, the Pro Tools Transport window controls the machine only.

To select a Transport Master:

1. In Pro Tools, Right-click the Online button in the Transport to display the Transport Master pop-up menu.



Online button in the Pro Tools Transport window

2. From the Transport Master pop-up menu, select **`Pro Tools`** or **`Machine`**.

Press Control+backslash (\) (Windows) or Command+backslash (\) (Mac) to toggle between available Transport Master choices.

Toggling the Transport while Online

When the Online button is highlighted, toggling the Transport Master between Pro Tools and Machine also toggles between generating/following timecode.

Playback in Serial Deck Control Mode

To play or cue your machine independently of Pro Tools:

1. Make sure Pro Tools is not online (the Online button in the Transport window is not flashing).
2. Right-click the Online button in the Pro Tools Transport and select **`Transport > Machine`**.
3. Click any of the buttons in the Pro Tools Transport window to control your machine.

Pro Tools always displays incoming LTC or 9-pin time in the incoming time field in the Session Setup window during fast-wind, and switches during playback to display the current positional reference.

To automatically locate your deck to pre-roll into your current Timeline insertion time each time you play back:

1. Make sure Pro Tools is not online (the Online button in the Transport window is not flashing).
2. Right-click the Online button in the Pro Tools Transport and select **`Transport > Pro Tools`**.
3. Put Pro Tools online.
4. Click Play in the Transport window.

If the tape in the machine is striped with timecode that matches your Session time, the machine will locate to the total pre-roll position ahead of the Pro Tools on-screen selection/insertion point or memory location, and begin playing back. Pro Tools will chase its timecode output.

Machine Remote Setting

If the Transport Master selector will not stay set to Machine, or if it switches to Pro Tools from Machine, check your machine's Local/Remote setting. It should be set to Remote to receive commands from the Pro Tools Transport.

Machine Cueing

MachineControl provides two Cue modes for remote machine operation: *Search* and *Hi-speed*.

- In Search mode, the tape remains laced during Fast Forward or Rewind.
- In Hi-speed mode, the tape is unlaced before fast-forward/rewind. The Transport window indicates the status of the tape as described below.

Search Mode

In Search mode, the tape is laced against the heads when the machine is paused or searching, and the Stop button stays lit (it does not flash) and the Play button flashes. When cueing in this mode, the Fast Forward or Rewind button also lights when searching in either direction.

To fast forward and rewind in Search mode:

1. Right-click the Online button in the Pro Tools Transport and select **`Transport > Machine`**.
2. Click Play in the Transport window or press the Spacebar to begin machine playback, then press the Spacebar again to pause the machine (this is to ensure that the tape is laced).
3. Click Fast Forward or Rewind in the Transport window to search the tape.

Some devices do not support a shuttle mode in which the tape stays laced. These decks unlace the tape before shuttling. Refer to your tape machine's guide for more information.

Hi-Speed Mode

In Hi-speed mode, the tape is unlaced, and all Transport window buttons are dark. When you cue in this mode, only the selected Fast Forward or Rewind button lights.

To fast forward and rewind in Hi-speed mode:

1. Right-click the Online button in the Pro Tools Transport and select **`Transport > Machine`**.
2. To unlace the tape, click Stop in the Transport window or press Command+period(.).
3. Click Fast Forward or Rewind in the Transport window. The Pro Tools cursor indicates the current machine location.
4. Press the Spacebar to pause the machine.

Some devices may not support all shuttle modes, and may not accept the above shuttle commands. In these cases, the Fast Forward and Rewind buttons in the Pro Tools Transport window flash, and clicking them places the device in true Fast Forward /Rewind mode.

Spotting to the Machine

To spot clips to the machine's current location, use Pro Tools Spot mode or Auto-Spot Clips.

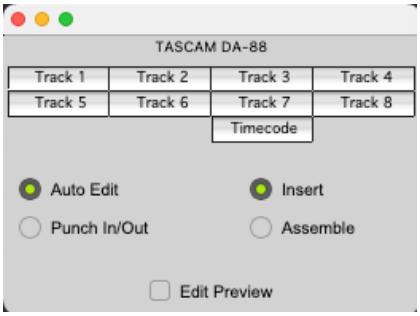
Remote Track Arming

Pro Tools with MachineControl provides the ability to record-arm audio, video, or timecode tracks on external decks, and rehearse an edit.

On MachineControl-equipped systems, the Machine Track Arming command is available in the Pro Tools Window menu. The Machine Track Arming window lets you configure track arming during sessions using the settings appropriate for the current Track Arming Profile (see "Identifying Your Machine" below).

To display the Machine Track Arming window, do one of the following:

- Select **`Window > Machine Track Arming`**.
- Press Command+6 on the Numeric Keypad (Mac) or Control+6 on the Numeric Keypad (Windows).



Machine Track Arming window

Configuring Track Arming

Pro Tools provides automatic, direct support for track configuration of most common video decks. If your deck is supported, MachineControl identifies and displays your machine's track layout.

Even if your machine is not directly supported, the Track Arming window lets you arm tracks, set the Record Protocol and configure the Record mode for the machine.

You can also define, save, and load customized device profiles. (See "Creating a Track Arming Profile" on the next page.)

Not all machines support independent arming of their audio tracks locally or remotely, and some machines require a separate utility menu selection. Pro Tools remote track arming cannot operate in these situations.

Identifying Your Machine

When you configure Pro Tools for MachineControl, it automatically loads the track arming profile for the identified machines.

For more information on basic Pro Tools settings for MachineControl, see "Configuring a MachineControl Device for Deck Control" on page 1876.

If Pro Tools does not recognize your machine, or if you want your machine to emulate a different type of device (for example, to use a different track layout), you can load a generic machine profile.

If you are using a generic machine profile, be sure to double-check record behavior using non-essential tapes before using MachineControl's remote track arming functions.

For maximum flexibility, use Track Arming Profiles to create, customize, and manage multiple machine descriptions (see "Creating a Track Arming Profile" on the next page).

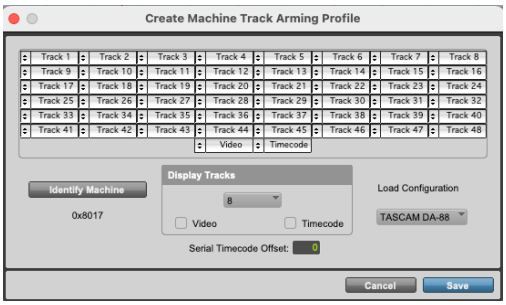
Creating a Track Arming Profile

The Create Track Arming Profile dialog provides extensive control over Pro Tools track arming. You can customize arming, track naming, and mapping, and save configurations for different machines as Track Arming Profile files. These Profiles can be imported to quickly reconfigure Track Arming as needed for future projects. You can also test track mapping, and remap tracks if needed.

Use the Create Track Arming Profile feature to create profiles for machines that may not be included with Pro Tools, and to manage multiple profiles.

To create a machine Track Arming Profile:

- Choose **Setup > Machine Track Arming Profiles**.



Create Machine Track Arming Profile dialog

When you create a new Track Arming Profile, a Stop command is sent to any connected machine to protect elements on tape.

Choosing a Machine ID

To recognize your machine:

- In the Create Machine Track Arming Profile dialog, click **Identify Machine**.

  MachineControl queries the connected machine for its machine ID, which is then displayed below the Identify Machine button.

You can edit or replace the ID manually if needed. See "Entering a New Byte Code" on the next page for more information.

Configuring a Profile

The Create Machine Track Arming Profile dialog lets you specify track names and track mapping.

Customizing Names for Track Arming Buttons

You can rename the Track Arm buttons displayed in each Track Arming Profile to better describes the recording taking place. For example, an eight track profile might be easier to use with tracks named Dx-L, Dx-R, FX-L, FX-R, Mx-L, Mx-R, Lt, and Rt, for eight tracks comprised of stereo Dialog, stereo FX, stereo Music, and an Lt-Rt mix.

To edit the name of a track arming button:

1. In the Create Machine Track Arming Profile dialog, double-click the Track Arm button you want to rename.
2. Enter a new track name in the dialog, and click **OK**.

Remapping Tracks

You can remap track buttons to target different tracks on the machine.

To remap tracks:

1. In the Create Machine Track Arming Profile dialog, click the Track button you want to remap to display its remap pop-up menu.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Choose a new target track.
   - Choose a different machine profile from the Load Configuration selector.

Reassigning the Byte Value for a Track

In a remote machine's firmware, each record track on the machine has a unique hexadecimal byte code that tells the machine which track should be armed when an arm command is received from a remote master. The standard profile (the default setup) corresponds to the Sony P-2 protocol, but many decks have their own unique mapping of byte codes to track numbers for a particular deck.

If an audio or video track, or the deck timecode track do not arm when you click its corresponding track arming button, you may need to assign a different hex value to the button.

To select a different hex value for an individual track arm button:

- Select another hex value byte code from the Byte Code sub-menu for the appropriate track arm button.

Entering a New Byte Code

As the Sony P2 protocol continues to expand, more manufacturers add specific byte code commands that may be listed in the current byte code list. Pro Tools lets you create entirely new, custom byte codes. This lets you enter additional byte commands as needed to support new features as they are added to decks.

Choosing a Record Protocol

The Machine Track Arming window provides the following two options for configuring the recording protocol of the target deck:

Auto Edit

This mode is a highly accurate way to ensure that the target deck will record only within the boundaries of an on-screen selection. (If your deck does not support Auto Edit, use Punch In/Punch Out, as explained below.)

In Auto Edit mode, the record in/out points are downloaded to the target deck (along with any pre- or post-roll), and the deck is responsible for performing the insert punch in/out at the specified times (see "Rules for On-Screen Selections" on the next page for details).

Because this protocol removes the vagaries of CPU timing from the remote recording process, Auto Edit is frame-accurate. It is also the best way to ensure that your machine will punch out correctly and avoid accidental erasure of audio, even in the event of a CPU error.

Punch In/Out

This mode uses Pro Tools to control the process of punch in/out. Instead of downloading the punch points (as in Auto Edit), Pro Tools actually performs them during the record pass. Because serial communication has inherent delays, timing with Punch In/Punch Out mode cannot guarantee frame-accuracy (though it will almost always be within 2 to 3 frames).

Choosing a Record Mode

The Machine Track Arming window provides two options for Record mode:

Insert

Insert mode is used to perform insert editing (punching in individual tracks) where one or more audio tracks is replaced by new material and the video material is retained.

Assemble

Use Assemble mode when you want to:

- Begin recording program onto a completely blank tape (unformatted)
- Append program to the remainder of a tape which already has program you want to keep

Assemble mode is not appropriate for audio laybacks to video masters.

Assemble mode should be used carefully because it arms *all* tracks on the target deck for recording—including the video track, timecode track and control track. When performing an Assemble edit, all material on all tracks after the edit in point will be replaced. Because a break in the control track will result at the edit out point, any remaining program material after an Assemble edit may be unusable.

To avoid accidentally recording over program material, experiment with Assemble and Insert modes on a dispensable tape to familiarize yourself with the edit capabilities of your deck.

⚠ Assemble mode replaces all the elements on the target tape deck—audio, video, and timecode. Use this mode with caution.

Rules for On-Screen Selections

The Record Protocol buttons let you choose between the two different record protocol options (**`Auto Edit`** and **`Punch In/Punch Out`**). Regardless of which option is used, however, Pro Tools follows these rules for record selection:

- If there is an on-screen selection, recording will take place over the period of the selection and punch out at the out point of the selection.
- If pre- or post-roll is enabled, recording takes place only in the selection area, not during pre- or post-roll.
- If there is no selection (only a start location), recording will continue until it is manually stopped.
- If you make a selection in Pro Tools that crosses the "midnight" boundary (00:00:00:00), make sure your deck can handle this situation. Experiment with a dispensable tape to familiarize yourself with the crossover capabilities of your deck.

Rehearsing a Layback to an External Device

Before laying back audio to an external device, you can rehearse the layback using Edit Preview (Rehearse) mode. In Edit Preview mode, instead of performing an edit insert (recording) on armed remote tracks, the input is monitored without recording.

While in Edit Preview mode, the Transport Record button flashes yellow when armed and lights solid yellow when rehearsing. Armed tracks are indicated by yellow track buttons in the Track Arming window.

To rehearse a layback:

1. In Pro Tools, select the audio you want to rehearse for layback, or place the playback cursor at a start point.
2. Choose **`Window > Machine Track Arming`**.
3. In the Track Arming window, select **`Edit Preview`**.
4. In the Track Arming window, arm the tracks you want to rehearse by clicking the corresponding buttons. The buttons light yellow to indicate armed status.

5. Right-click the Online button in the Pro Tools Transport and select **Transport > Machine**.
6. In the Pro Tools Transport window, click the Online button to put Pro Tools online.
7. In the Pro Tools Transport window, click Record. The button flashes yellow to indicate Edit Preview (Rehearse) mode.
8. In the Pro Tools Transport window, click Play. The machine cues to the selection in point or insert point and starts playing back. Pro Tools then synchronizes to the deck, and the deck records as determined by the settings for Record Protocol and Record mode in the Track Arming window.

Arming Tracks Remotely for Layback

To arm tracks remotely for layback, you need to first configure Track Arming for your machine.

To configure Track Arming:

1. Make sure your machine is properly connected and configured to following Pro Tools.
2. Open the Track Arming window.
3. Select a Record Protocol (Auto Edit or Punch In/Out).
4. Select a Record mode (Insert or Assemble).

Once the Track Arming options are configured, you can change the Track Arming window to "small view" and still see the track arm buttons.

To perform a layback:

1. In Pro Tools, select the audio to lay back, or place the playback cursor at a start point.
2. In the Remote Track Arming window, arm the appropriate tracks on the machine.
3. Right-click the Online button in the Pro Tools Transport and select **Transport > Machine**.
4. Make sure the Pro Tools Transport is online.
5. Click Record in the Transport window to arm recording.
6. Click Play in the Transport window.

Your machine will cue to the selection start minus all relevant pre-roll, then begin to play back. Pro Tools will then sync to the deck, and the target deck will record as determined by your settings for Record Protocol and Record mode. If you did not create an on-screen selection, deck recording will continue until you manually stop playback.

Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode makes Pro Tools operate as a virtual tape deck, supporting most standard Sony P2 9-pin commands. For a list of supported commands, see "9-Pin Commands" on page 1893.

By default, Pro Tools emulates a Sony BVW-75 model video deck. You can also configure Pro Tools to emulate other machines. For more information, see "Alternate Machine Types" on page 1890.

For instructions on connecting Pro Tools for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode, see "Cables and Connections" on page 1868.

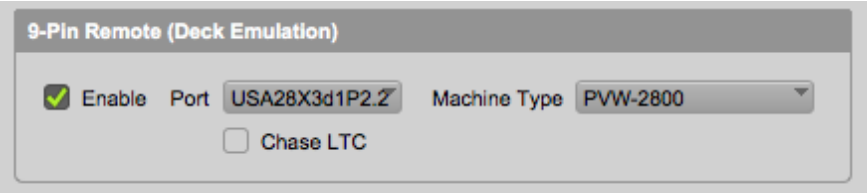
Generating Timecode in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

Pro Tools with MachineControl and a synchronization peripheral can generate frame-edge aligned timecode at 1x play speed while in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode.

Configuring Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

To configure Pro Tools for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode:

1. Choose **Setup > Peripherals**, and click the **Synchronization** tab.
2. Choose **SYNC** from the **Device** pop-up menu.
3. Click the **Machine Control** tab in the Peripherals dialog.
4. In the 9-Pin Remote (Deck Emulation) section, select **Enable**.



Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode settings.

5. Select the 9-pin MachineControl port from the **Port** pop-up menu.
6. Choose the appropriate machine profile from the **Machine Type** pop-up menu.
7. If you want Pro Tools to ignore transport commands and just chase LTC, enable **Chase LTC**.
8. Click **OK** to close the Peripherals dialog.
9. In the Transport window, click the Remote button to put Pro Tools in Remote mode.



Remote button in Transport window

10. Choose **Setup > Session**, and ensure that the following settings are configured:
    - The **Clock Master** should be set to **Sync X** or **SYNC**.
    - The **Clock Reference** should be set to **Video Reference**.
    - If you did not enable **Chase LTC**, the **Positional Reference** should be set to **Generate**. This is required for Pro Tools to lock to the video reference with frame edge accuracy.
    - If you enabled **Chase LTC**, the **Positional Reference** should be set to **LTC**.
11. If you will be recording, select a Record mode by right-clicking the Record button in the Transport window.
12. Begin machine playback.

See "Optimizing Playback in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode" on page 1892.

Selecting Full Remote Mode or Remote/LTC Chase Mode

Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode lets a master device control Pro Tools track and transport arming.

When Pro Tools is in Remote mode, Remote 9-pin Deck Emulation operates in Full Remote mode or in Remote/LTC Chase mode.

When Pro Tools is not in Remote mode, it ignores commands from the 9-pin machine controller. Pro Tools responds only to requests from the 9-pin machine controller for machine type and status, and responds that it is in Local mode.

Full Remote Mode

In Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode, when Pro Tools is in Remote mode and Chase LTC is not enabled, Pro Tools is in one of the two following states:

- When the **Delay after Play Command** preference is set to zero, Pro Tools is set to function as the timecode master. Pro Tools locates, then plays when it gets a play command.
- When the **Delay after Play Command** preference is set towards 30 frames, another machine is the timecode master. Pro Tools locates, sends timecode position responses, and when its timecode lines up with the timecode master device, goes into play in sync with the timecode master device.

To set the timecode master in Full Remote mode:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **Synchronization** tab.
2. In the **Remote Mode** section, do one of the following:
   - Set the **Delay after Play Command** preference to zero, to set Pro Tools to behave as the timecode master.
   - Set the **Delay after Play Command** preference towards 30 frames, to set Pro Tools to chase timecode, by delaying playback until its timecode can properly synchronize.

     Generally, delay should only be added if Pro Tools is having problems starting and locking to a machine during playback or record. For example, if Pro Tools tries to lock, and the Transport window lights go from play to shuttle or fast-forward to rewind many times before locking, you should increase the Delay After Play setting by a few frames.

Remote/LTC Chase Mode

When **Chase LTC** is enabled, Pro Tools can still respond to track arming and record commands. However, Pro Tools will chase incoming LTC instead of controlling or being controlled with the machine controller. By having Pro Tools follow the LTC source instead of being controlled by the machine to Pro Tools timecode, you can avoid the waiting (and tape wear) that occurs while a machine transport locates and bumps tape to the cue point.

In Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode, when Pro Tools is in Remote Mode and Chase LTC is enabled, it communicates record status to the machine.

Receiving Commands While Chase LTC is Enabled or Disabled

When **Chase LTC** is enabled, Pro Tools waits until it receives only specific transport record and track record commands from the machine.

When **Chase LTC** is not enabled, Pro Tools listens to all transport commands coming through the serial connection, including bump and crawl commands necessary for a tape machine to locate.

Scrubbing and Chase LTC

The **Chase LTC** option does not affect scrubbing. Pro Tools video playback will always respond to locate and scrubbing command, even if **Chase LTC** is enabled.

Alternate Machine Types

By default, MachineControl lets Pro Tools emulate a Sony BVW-75. If you use a machine that follows a different 9-pin command set, you can configure Pro Tools for that machine's description.

To configure Pro Tools for an alternate machine:

1. Choose **Setup > Peripherals**, and click the **Machine Control** tab.
2. In the 9-Pin Remote (Deck Emulation) section, choose a machine profile from the **Machine Type** pop-up menu.
3. Click **OK**.

Special settings have been created for specific machine controllers (such as the Soundmaster ION). When under the control of a specific machine controller, first check if there is a specific setting for that machine controller.

Preferences for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

Pro Tools provides the following preference settings to configure Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode options.

Remote Mode Section

Ignore Track Arming

Sets Pro Tools to ignore incoming track arming (record enable) commands. This is useful if you are using a master controller to arm tracks on other machines, but you do not want to arm tracks in Pro Tools.

Set Servo Lock Bit At Play

Enable this option when using a synchronizer to control Pro Tools in Remote mode to minimize lock-up times during recording.

Allow Track Arm Commands in Local Mode

Enables a supported third-party paddle device to issue the following Pro Tools track commands while in Local mode:

- Input monitoring
- Record Enable
- Record Safe
- Solo
- Solo Mute

See "Using a Paddle Device in Local Mode" on page 1893.

Punch In Frame Offset

Sets an offset in frames to compensate for punch-in timing advances or delays.

Punch Out Frame Offset

Sets an offset in frames to compensate for punch-out timing advances or delays.

Delay After Play Command

Sets the amount of time (in frames) for Pro Tools to wait after receiving a Play command before starting the audio engine. This can prevent false starts when locking to synchronizers that are not fully supported by Pro Tools.

For more information, see "Selecting Full Remote Mode or Remote/LTC Chase Mode" on page 1889.

To set Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode preferences:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **Synchronization** tab.
2. Select or set Machine Control options in the Remote mode section:
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences dialog.

Playback in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

Pro Tools plays back audio only when the received command requires audio playback at 1X speed in the forward direction. Reverse playback and varispeed playback are not supported in Pro Tools.

Optimizing Playback in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

When using Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode with an unsupported synchronizer, clicking Play may display multiple nudge and bump messages caused by Pro Tools attempting to achieve lock before the master device has stabilized.

The **Delay After Play Command** preference lets you configure a short delay before Pro Tools attempts to lock with the master device. This allows the master device to stabilize before Pro Tools locks with it in order to avoid nudge and bump messages.

For more information, see "Preferences for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode" on page 1355.

Recording in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

MachineControl lets Pro Tools support Auto Edit (selection-based) and Punch-in/Punch-Out (QuickPunch) commands.

Pro Tools must have QuickPunch or TrackPunch with tracks enabled when recording with an edit controller in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode.

Preview Edit and Rehearse modes are not supported by Pro Tools.

Auto Edit Recording

When a machine sends Auto Edit commands to Pro Tools in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode, the edit in and out points are converted to a Pro Tools Timeline selection. This selection, with offsets options, will then be used to record on all armed tracks when Pro Tools receives the Perform Auto Edit Record command.

Punch In/Out Recording

Punch-In/Punch-Out Recording supports punch-on-the-fly, with Pro Tools in QuickPunch mode. In this mode, tracks are armed before the record pass, and recording begins and ends when Punch-In and Punch-Out commands are received form the master machine.

QuickPunch must be enabled and the required voices must be available in Pro Tools for Punch-In/Punch-Out recording commands to work. This mode must be set manually in Pro Tools.

Track Arming in Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode

In Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode, Pro Tools can be configured to either respond to, or ignore, track arming (record enabling) commands. Pro Tools communicates track record status back to the control machine.

9-Pin Commands

In Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode, Pro Tools with MachineControl can respond to the following 9-pin commands from compatible workstations, synchronizers, and other devices:

- Play
- Stop
- Pause
- Rewind
- Forward
- Cue To
- Poll Timecode
- Record Arm Track
- Set In/Out Point (for Auto Edit)
- Set Pre/Post Roll (for Auto Edit)
- Perform Auto Edit Record
- Perform Punch-In/Punch-Out Record (requires QuickPunch mode and voices)
- Return Status-Online, State, Tracks Armed
- Servo Lock
- Clear “In” Point

Ignore Track Arming Commands

You can set Pro Tools to ignore incoming track arming (record-enable) commands. Use this to record-safe Pro Tools if, for example, you are using a master 9-pin transport controller to arm tracks on several other machines, but not Pro Tools tracks. You can still manually arm Pro Tools audio tracks, as needed.

To have Pro Tools ignore remote track arming commands:

1. Choose **`Setup > Preferences`**, and click the **`Synchronization`** tab.
2. In the Remote Mode section, select **`Ignore Track Arming`**.

Using a Paddle Device in Local Mode

When using MachineControl in Local mode (with or without an external synchronizer), you can use a supported third-party paddle device to issue the following Pro Tools track commands:

- Input monitoring
- Record Enable
- Record Safe
- Solo
- Solo Mute

Using these features involve the following steps:

1. Connect the supported third-party paddle device to your system.
2. Make sure the Allow Track Arm Commands in Local Mode preference is enabled.
3. Serial Deck Control and Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation ports must be configured simultaneously.

Connecting a Supported Third-Party Paddle Device to Your Pro Tools System

To connect a supported third-party paddle device to your Pro Tools system, use the same method you would use to connect a deck for Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode.

See "Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode" on page 1888 for detailed information on connecting a machine to Pro Tools.

Allow Track Arm Commands in Local Mode Preference

The **Allow Track Arm Commands in Local Mode** preference must be enabled in order to control Pro Tools with a paddle device in Local mode.

To enable the Allow Track Arm Commands in Local Mode preference:

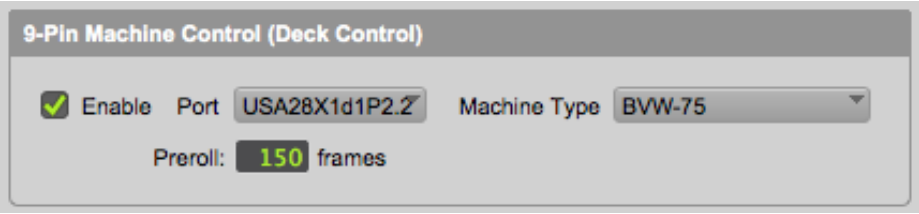
1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**, and click the **Synchronization** tab.
2. Select **Allow Track Arm Commands in Local Mode**.

Configuring Ports for a Deck and a Supported Third-Party Paddle Device

Before connecting a paddle device and a deck to Pro Tools simultaneously, both the Serial Deck Control port and the Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation port may be configured.

To configure Serial Deck Control and Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation ports to operate simultaneously:

1. Choose **Setup > Peripherals**, and click the **Synchronization** tab.
2. Ensure that **Sync X** or **SYNC** is enabled.
3. Click the **Machine Control** tab.
4. In the 9-pin Machine Control (Deck Control) section, select **Enable**.



Configuring MachineControl for Serial Deck Control

5. Select the 9-pin MachineControl port from the **Port** pop-up menu.
6. Choose the appropriate machine profile from the **Machine Type** pop-up menu.

See "Serial Deck Control Mode" on page 1875 for detailed information about configuring and using Serial Deck Control mode.

7. In the 9-Pin Remote (Deck Emulation) section, select **Enable**.

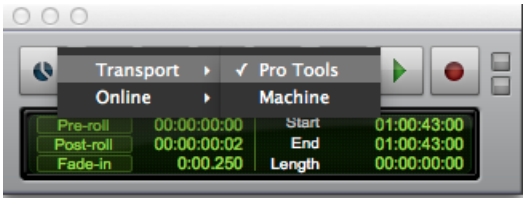


Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode settings

8. Select the 9-pin MachineControl port from the **Port** pop-up menu.
9. Choose the appropriate machine profile from the **Machine Type** pop-up menu.
10. Make sure **Chase LTC** is not selected.
11. Click **OK** to close the Peripherals dialog.

To set Pro Tools to Local mode:

- Right-click the Online button in the Pro Tools Transport and select **Transport > Machine**.



Setting Transport to Pro Tools.

Deck Control Key Commands

Command	Mac	Windows
Rewind	Shift+‹	Shift+‹
Fast Forward	Shift+›	Shift+›
Shuttle Backward	Option+comma	Start+comma
Shuttle Forward	Option+period	Start+period
Toggle Transport Master	Command+\	Control+\
All Transport Buttons Off/Unthread Tape	Command+period	Control+period
Search Mode Toggle (Play-Pause/Stop)	Spacebar/ Command+period	Spacebar/ Control+period
When Transport = Machine:		
Cue to Selection In Point	Command+Left Arrow	Control+Left Arrow
Cue to Selection Out Point	Command+Right Arrow	Control+Right Arrow
Cue to Selection In Point Minus Preroll	Option+Left Arrow	Alt+Left Arrow
Cue to Selection Out Point Minus Preroll	Option+Right Arrow	Alt+Right Arrow

Machine IDs

The following table lists the machine profiles supported in MachineControl by their Pro Tools hexadecimal ID.

For special IDs to support 48-track arming, see "48 Track Profiles" on page 1898.

Machines and Hex ID Numbers

The first 0x signifies hex value. The next four numbers signify the machine ID. The name of the associated machine follows.

Machines, by ID number

ID number	Machine
0x0000	Generic 1
0x0001	Generic 2
0x1000	BVU-800
0x101C	BVU-950
0x1019	BVU-920
0x1080	BVU-900
0x104C	VO-9850
0x1048	VO-9800
0x102C	SVO-9600
0x2000	BVW-10
0x2001	BVW-40
0x2002	BVW-11
0x2003	BVW-15
0x2010	BVW-35
0x2020	BVW-60
0x2021	BVW-65
0x2022	BVW-95
0x2023	BVW-96
0x2024	BVW-70
0x2025	BVW-75
0x2125	*BVW-75P*
0x4000	DVR-10
0x4003	DVR-18
0x4002	DVRC-10
0x4020	DVR-20
0x4022	DVR-28
0xF019	AJ-D350 (D3)
0x3011	DVR-2100
0x3000	DVR-1000
0x0010	BVH-2000
0x0011	BVH-2000
0x0110	BVH-2000 PS

ID number	Machine
0x0111	BVH-2000 PS
0x0018	BVH-2180
0x0020	BVH-2500
0x0120	*BVH-2500 PS*
0x0030	BVH-2700
0x0040	BVH-2800
0x0048	BVH-2830
0x0050	BVH-3000
0x0060	BVH-3100
0x0150	BVH-3000 PS
0x0160	BVH-3100 PS
0x2041	PVW-2800
0x1211	ASC Virtual Recorder
0x1011	Fostex D-10
0xF027	Otari R-DAT
0x7001	PCM-7030
0x7001	TASCAM DA-88
0x7003	PCM-800
0x7000	PCM-7000
0xA088	AG-DS555
0xA084	AG-DS770
0x0001	AG-DS7750
0xF033	AJ D640
0x2051	UVW-1800
0xB000	DVW-500
0xB010	DVW-500
0xA050	V1
0x1021	SVP-5600
0x2124	BCB-70
0x2101	BVW-40P
0x8017	DSR-1500A
0x6007	3348HR
0x6005	3348HRV
0x6003	3324
0xA0A1	SoundMaster ATOM

ID number	Machine
0xD0E1	Pro Tools
0x20E0	HDW-500
0x20A0	SRW-5000

Tascam DA-88 and other decks can be set to emulate other machines. If a deck is set to emulate another type of machine, the machine type being emulated will be displayed.

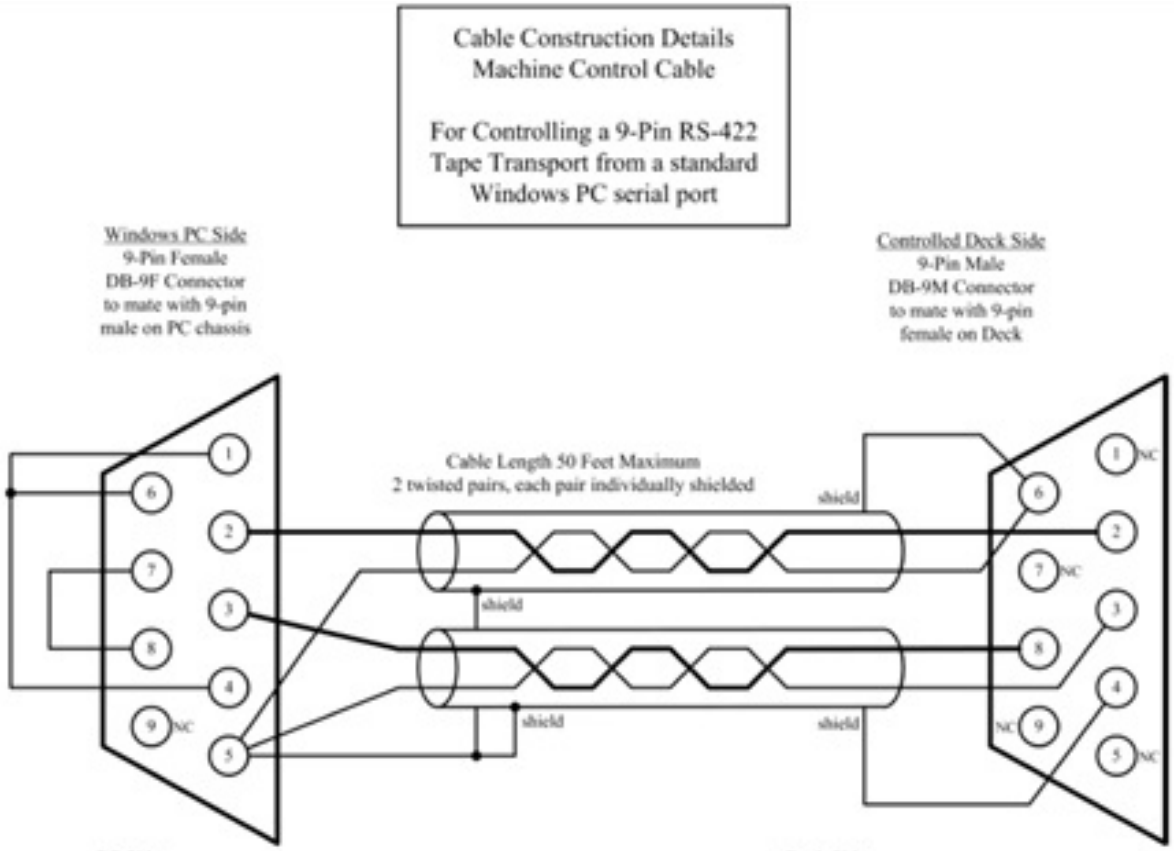
48 Track Profiles

The following are special Machine IDs to support 48-track arming.

ID	Machine
0x6007	3348HR
0x6005	3348HRV
0x6003	3324

9-Pin Cable Pinouts

Serial Deck Control Mode Cable:
D Sub 9-Pin Male to D Sub 9-Pin Female (Windows Only)



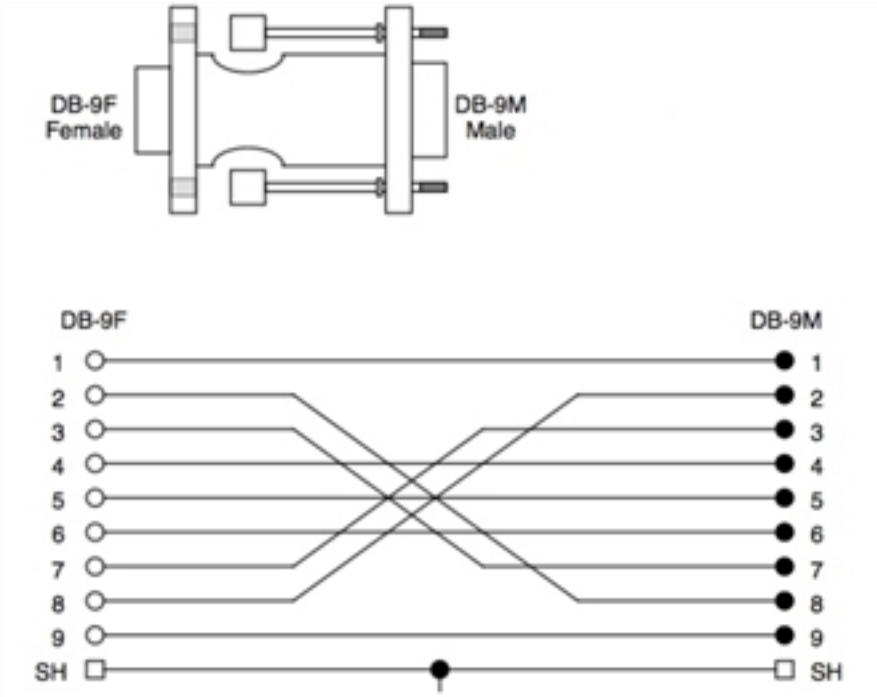
PC Side
Pin Assignments on DB-9F Connector

1 - DCD (Input; Data Carrier Detect)
2 - RxD (Input; Receive Data)
3 - TxD (Output; Transmit Data)
4 - DTR (Output; Data Terminal Ready)
5 - SG (Signal Ground)
6 - DSR (Input; Data Set Ready)
7 - RTS (Output; Request to Send)
8 - CTS (Input; Clear to Send)
9 - RI (Input; Ring Indicator) (No Connect)

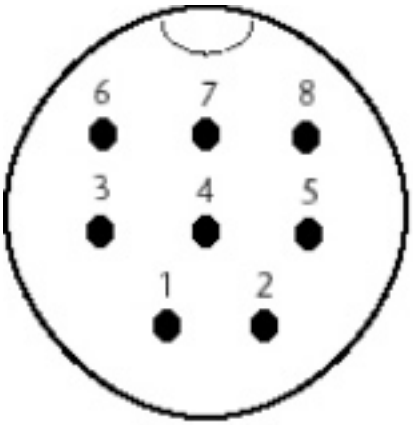
Deck Side
Pin Assignments on DB-9M Connector

1 - No Connection
2 - Output; TxD (-)
3 - Input; RxD (+)
4 - Shield for Input Twisted Pair on Pins 3 & 8
5 - No Connection
6 - Shield for Output Twisted Pair on Pins 2 & 7
7 - Output; TxD (+) (No Connection)
8 - Input; RxD (-)
9 - No Connection

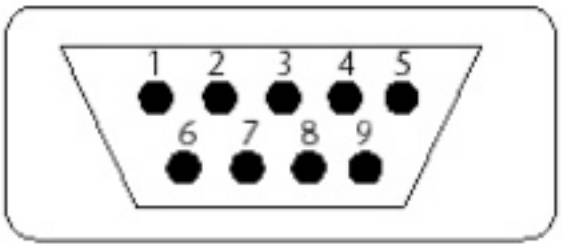
MachineControl Controller/Controlled Adapter



Serial Deck Control Cable:
Mini DIN 8 Male to D Sub 9-Pin Male (Mac Only)



Mini DIN 8-Pin Male

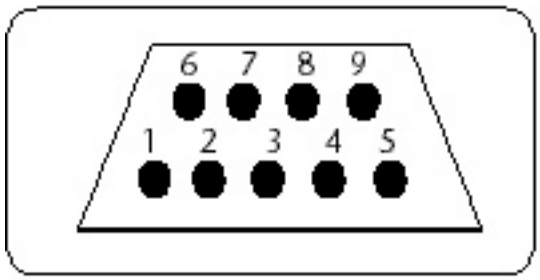


D Sub 9-Pin Male

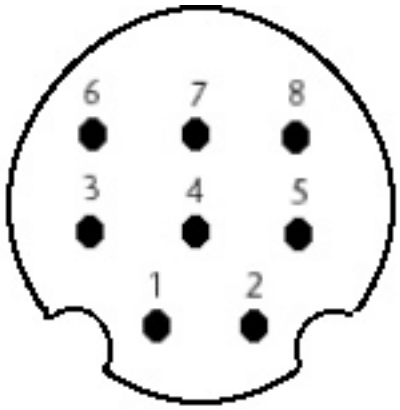
Serial Deck Control Cable (Macintosh)

Mini - 8		DB-9
1		NC
2		NC
3		8
4		1
5		2
6		3
7		NC
8		7
Shield		NC Shield

Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Cable: Mini DIN 8-Pin to D Sub 9-Pin Female (Mac Only)



D-Sub 9-Pin Female



Mini DIN 8-Pin Male

Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation Mode Cable (Macintosh)

DB-9		Mini - 8
NC	———	1
NC	———	2
2	———	3
9,1	———	4
8	———	5
7	———	6
NC	———	7
3	———	8
NC Shield		Shield

Shielding

The outside shielding of the D-Sub 9-pin (female) should be wired to the outside shielding of the Mini DIN 8-pin (male).

68 Working with Field Recorders in Pro Tools

Pro Tools Ultimate lets you import multichannel audio files and metadata recorded by field recorders.

Field Recorder and Production Workflow Terminology

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) Before working with field recorders in Pro Tools Ultimate, you may want to review a brief glossary of common field recorder and production terms.

Field Recorder Terminology

The following terminology applies to field recorders in general:

Metadata

Metadata is used to describe the following:

- Information embedded in a media file. This may include scene, take, sample rate, bit depth, external clip names, the name of the videotape from which the media file was captured, and even timecode values.
- Information embedded in Pro Tools sessions or other *sequences*, including what files are used, where they appear in a timeline, and automation.
- For AAF or OMF sequences, information about automation or clip-based gain.

Digital Field Recorders

A *field recorder*, also known as a hard disk location audio recorder, is a device used by a production sound mixer during a film or video shoot to make a multichannel recording of multiple microphone inputs recorded simultaneously.

Depending on the capabilities and settings of a field recorder, multichannel recordings can include one or more tracks (up to 32) and are saved as monophonic or polyphonic audio files on a hard drive, DVD-RAM, or Flash media.

Multichannel recordings made by a field recorder should be encoded with start and end time stamps representing SMPTE timecode or linear timecode (also known as LTC). Most field recorders also allow manual entry of additional types of metadata, including Channel Name/Number, Scene, Take, Circled Take, User Bits, and more.

Pro Tools can import monophonic and polyphonic files and certain types of metadata entered on field recorders.

Production Sound Mix

For each multichannel recording made by a field recorder, the production sound mixer may designate a *production sound mix* comprising either a representative channel or a mixdown of other selected channels in the recording.

The production sound mix is intended to function as a general reference of all audio recorded within an individual multichannel recording, and is typically used by the Avid video editor when assembling a sequence.

Broadcast WAV Files (BWF)

A WAV file containing a BEXT chunk is known as a Broadcast WAV file (or BWF) while still maintaining a .WAV file extension. Broadcast WAV files can contain both BEXT and iXML chunks, or a BEXT chunk by itself.

BEXT and iXML Chunks

BEXT and iXML chunks are sets of metadata found within a Broadcast WAV file.

Limitations

The following limitations apply to handling of imported metadata from field recorders.

- The BEXT specification as described here adds some features that conform to standards used by Avid video editing applications and Pro Tools—specifically, Description metadata is interpreted differently.
- When you import multiple files in which the same metadata are populated with different values, Pro Tools imports the value that is first present based on the following order:
  - Avid OMF-wrapped media or MXF media
  - Any iXML chunk metadata in a BWF
  - Any BEXT chunk metadata in a BWF

Production Terminology for All Production Workflows

The following terminology applies to all production workflows:

Timecode

There are four types of timecode, depending on your production:

Keycode

Each frame of film stock is embedded during manufacturing with a unique identifying timecode position known as *keycode*.

SMPTE Timecode

Also known as LTC or linear timecode. The generating clock of this timecode can be based on the time of day or can be set to ascend beginning from a certain starting time of day.

Minutes:Seconds

Timecode based on minutes and seconds.

Wild

No timecode. Most consumer digital video recorders do not have the ability to generate timecode.

Production Sound Mixer

The production sound mixer uses a field recorder to record multichannel audio during a shoot, and later delivers those source files to one or more parties:

- Telecine operator (film workflow only)
- Avid video editor
- Pro Tools editor

Production Terminology for Film Workflows Only

The following terminology applies only to film workflows:

Shootlist

The shootlist is a document in which the camera assistant records each scene and take relative to its keycode value on the film stock. It is later used by the telecine operator to synchronize the audio and video together.

Sound Log

The sound log is a document in which the production sound mixer records each scene and take relative to its beginning timecode position.

Slate Operator and Clapboard Information

The slate operator holds and labels the slate (also known as a *clapboard*) for each new scene and take. At the start of each take, the slate operator claps the slate, which simultaneously captures the following information:

- The scene, take, and timecode information is captured visually on film.
- The sound of the slate clapping is captured by the field recorder, which should be using the same timecode as displayed on the slate.

The telecine operator uses all of the information above to synchronize used film stock to the recorded audio in order to create the telecine videotape.

Telecine and Telecine Videotape

The *Telecine* is a machine used to transfer film footage and synchronized audio to videotape (referred to as the *dailies*).

The telecine videotape contains the dailies. The SMPTE timecode on the telecine videotape will be different from the timecode recorded on location.

FLEx File

The FLEx file is a text file generated during a telecine session that relates film keycode, field recorder timecode, and telecine videotape timecode. When the telecine videotape is batch digitized in the Avid video editing application, the information in the FLEx file is used to assign the original (location) timecode to the resulting audio and video source files.

Supported Field Recorder Audio Files and Metadata

Pro Tools supports the following audio files recorded by field recorders:

- OMF-wrapped media
- MXF
- Broadcast WAV (BWF) files with the following metadata:
- Both BEXT and iXML chunks
- BEXT metadata but no iXML metadata

Displaying Field Recorder Metadata in Pro Tools

You can enable or disable the display of field recorder metadata within clips in the Timeline and the Clip List.

To enable or disable the display of field recorder metadata in playlists, do the following:

- From **`View > Clip`**, select or deselect either of the following options:
  - Channel Name
  - Scene and Take

To show or hide field recorder metadata in the Clip List:

1. Click the Clip List menu, and choose Show.
2. From the Show submenu, select or deselect either of the following options:
   - Channel Name
   - Scene and Take

When enabled in the Clip List, Scene and Take metadata are added to every clip when available in the corresponding audio file.

Workspace Support for Field Recorder Metadata

Workspace browsers display the following metadata from multichannel recordings made with field recorders.

- Duration
- File Comment
- Date Modified
- Date Created
- # Channels
- Format
- Sample Rate
- Bit Depth
- Original Time Stamp
- User Time Stamp
- Tape
- TC Rate (renamed from FPS)
- Channel Names
- Scene
- Take
- Shoot Date
- Sound Roll
- Sound Roll TC
- Sound Roll TC Rate
- User Bits
- Tape ID
- Project
- Circled
- Clip Name

To show or hide field recorder metadata in Workspace browsers:

- Right-click the column header and select or deselect any of the Recorder Metadata types.

About Tape and Sound Roll Metadata

Avid video editing applications and field recorders use Tape to represent different kinds of metadata: Avid uses Tape to store the telecine videotape name, while a BWF file with a BEXT chunk or iXML chunk uses Tape to store the name of the sound roll.

To avoid this overlap, Pro Tools preserves Tape metadata from the Avid video editing application and maintains the Sound Roll and Tape metadata from BWF audio files in their respective metadata fields.

About Shoot Date Metadata

Many field recorders do not populate the Shoot Date field, relying instead on the file's Creation Date to indicate date of production. When Pro Tools imports a field recorder file, it checks to see if the Shoot Date field is populated. If it is empty, Pro Tools copies the Creation Date of the original file to the Shoot Date field of the new files.

Editing the Channel Name

The Channel Names field in the Workspace displays the channel name, followed the by channel number in parentheses. You can edit the Channel name for BWF files. When editing the channel name, anything you enter in parentheses will be discarded. However, the channel number will always be preserved.

Field Recorder Workflows

Using Pro Tools Ultimate to work with field recorder files from a film, video, or digital shoot involves the following steps:

1. Before receiving source files, ensure that metadata have been preserved ("Ensuring Metadata of Source Files Have Been Preserved" below).
2. Receive source files ("Receiving Source Files" below).
3. Import source files into Pro Tools ("Importing Source Files into Pro Tools" on the next page).
4. Replace edits from the production sound mix with audio from different takes of the same scene ("Selecting a Matching Field Recorder Channel to Replace a Clip" on page 1911).

Ensuring Metadata of Source Files Have Been Preserved

Before you receive source files, it is important to ensure that the files have been prepared properly at each phase of the production process so that their original metadata is preserved.

If the original metadata has not been preserved, you can use other types of data (such as File Creation Date or File Name) to find related channels. However, the matching process will be easier if metadata has been preserved.

Receiving Source Files

When involved in the audio post-production of edited video sequences, you need both of the following sets of source files:

- AAF or OMF sequence with an edited production sound mix synced to video (such as referenced QuickTime movies or Avid video)
- Raw Production source files representing multichannel recordings from a field recorder

You will receive these files either separately (from the Avid video editor and production sound mixer) or together as part of an AAF or OMF sequence export including raw production source audio (from the Avid video editor).

Separate Deliveries of Source Files

When you receive an AAF or OMF sequence from the Avid editor and raw production source audio from the production sound mixer, you import the sequence, then either import the raw production source audio, or instruct Pro Tools to search for matching audio outside the session.

Once the production audio is imported or located, Pro Tools will be able to match them together.

See "Importing an AAF or OMF Sequence into Pro Tools" below and "Importing Raw Production Source Audio Directly into Pro Tools" on the next page.

Single Delivery of Source Files

There are two methods the Avid editor may use to prepare the files before exporting them:

- Production source audio has been auto-synced in the Avid Bin and placed on the Timeline
- Production source audio has been auto-synced and resides only in the Avid Bin

Production Source Audio in Timeline Auto-Synced to Edited Production Sound Mix

The production source audio in the Avid Bin has been auto-synced to the edited located sound mix, and all audio channels reside in the Avid Timeline.

When you import this type of sequence into Pro Tools, the edited video, edited production sound mix, and all production source audio will be available to import directly into the Timeline.

Production Source Audio Auto-Synced and Resides Only in the Avid Bin

In an Avid video editing application, the raw production source audio has been auto-synced to the edited production sound mix, but all audio channels reside only in the Avid Bin.

In this case, the AAF or OMF sequence does not contain or reference the production source audio when imported into Pro Tools. The Avid editor must deliver the production files to Pro Tools separately. The Avid editor may either deliver the production audio files from the Avid or OMFI Media Files folder, or they may deliver the raw production source audio files, which have not passed through Media Composer.

Importing Source Files into Pro Tools

This topic describes importing production source audio from the following types of files:

- AAF or OMF sequences
- Raw production source audio (if received separately from the AAF or OMF sequence)

Importing an AAF or OMF Sequence into Pro Tools

To open an AAF (or OMF) sequence as a Pro Tools session:

1. Launch Pro Tools.
2. Choose **File > Open Session**.
3. In the Open Session dialog, navigate to the AAF or OMF sequence you want to import.
4. Click **Open**.
5. Name your session in the File Name field.
6. Select WAV from the Audio File Type pop-up menu.

7. Select the I/O Settings to use for the session. Several pre-configured I/O Settings are included with your system, or you can select a custom I/O Setting that you have created.
8. Click **Save**. The Import Session Data dialog appears.

   Pro Tools lets you open and import OMF or AAF sequences that reference audio files with mixed sample rates or bit depths. Audio files will be converted to the highest sample rate and of the files being imported (for new sessions) or to the current sample rate (for existing sessions). Files with mixed bit depths that are already at the target sample rate are imported without conversion.

9. Choose Link to Source Media (Where Possible) from the Audio Media Options pop-up menu.
10. Choose Link to Source Media from the Video Media Options pop-up menu.
11. In the Source Tracks section, select tracks to import by clicking the pop-up menu to the right of each track name and selecting Import As New Track.

    To select multiple tracks, Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) on any track pop-up menu and select Import As New Track.

12. Change other parameters.
13. Click **OK**.

Pro Tools creates a new Audio Files folder, Video Files folder, cache.wfm file, and session file at the designated locations. This session matches the audio file type, sample rate, and bit depth of the audio in the selected AAF or OMF. Any selected tracks in the Source Tracks section of the Import Session Data dialog are automatically placed in the Timeline.

For more information about importing AAF and OMF sequences in Pro Tools, see "Importing AAF and OMF Sequences" on page 688.

Importing Raw Production Source Audio Directly into Pro Tools

If the AAF or OMF sequence you imported into Pro Tools did not include raw production source audio, you may import it into the session separately using media supplied by the production sound mixer.

You can import monophonic or polyphonic audio files from field recorders into Pro Tools using any of the following methods:

- Using **File > Import > Audio**, and selecting the files you want to import.
- Dragging files to the Clip List from the Workspace browser or the desktop.

In projects with large amounts of production audio, it may not be convenient to import all production audio into Pro Tools for reference. You can set Pro Tools to search for matching audio in areas outside the session when it looks for matching field recorder files. For more information, see "Select Areas to Search" on page 1914.

Repairing Audio Misalignment When Importing Audio Not Exported from Avid

When you use Pro Tools to import raw production source audio that was not exported from an Avid video editing application—such as audio delivered separately from an AAF or OMF sequence—that audio may be offset with the audio in the AAF or OMF sequence by as much as half a frame.

This misalignment results from the incompatibility between frame-accurate time stamping in Avid video editing applications and sample-accurate time stamping in Pro Tools. When you attempt to link the two, the misalignment results.

In order to repair this discrepancy, you may need to manually offset the raw production source audio after importing it into Pro Tools. Another option is to use a utility like SynchroArts Titan to process and align the source audio.

Don't Convert Sample Rate on Import Preference

In some workflows, it is common for production audio to be recorded at 48.048 kHz to accommodate for a pull down to 48 kHz applied downstream in the workflow. When importing audio at this special sample rate, Pro Tools can either sample rate convert the file to 48 kHz, or pull the file down to 48 kHz in real time during playback.

If you plan to import audio at 48.048 kHz and want Pro Tools to apply the 48 kHz pull down in real time, do the following:

To set the Don't Convert Sample Rate on Import Preference:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences**.
2. Select the Processing tab.
3. In the **Import** section, find the **Don't Convert Sample Rates on Import** preference setting.
4. Enable that preference to activate real-time pull down for 48.048 kHz audio files.

Designating Field Recorder Tracks

Working with field recorder data often requires Pro Tools to do additional administrative work to locate and keep track of production field recorder channels and metadata. This file handling can be system-intensive when working with large amounts of data.

Pro Tools lets you specially designate field recorder tracks after importing them, ensuring that Po Tools only does field-recorder-specific file operations on channels that actually contain field recorder data.

To designate a field recorder track:

1. Right-click on the name of the track you want to designate as a field recorder track.

   To designate more than one track as a field recorder track, select the tracks and right-click the name of one of the selected tracks.

2. Click **Field Recorder Guide Track**.
3. Repeat for each field recorder track in the session.

   Each mono field recorder track must be designated to enable the special Pro Tools field recorder features for that track.

   To remove the field recorder designation from a track that has been designated, Right-click its name and deselect the Field Recorder Guide Track option. .

Displaying Multichannel Files from a Field Recorder in the Clip List

When importing multichannel recordings from a field recorder, Pro Tools saves the multichannel audio as interleaved audio files, which display as single items in the Clip List.

In previous versions of Pro Tools, multichannel files were saved as separate files, one for each channel. Pro Tools treats these groups of related clips as single items. An expand/collapse triangle next to an item in the Clip List indicates this type of grouped multichannel clip. If you're working with material imported by an earlier version of Pro Tools, you may see these collective clips.

For multichannel audio clips imported from field recorders to be shown as collective clips, both component clips must have the following properties:

- Same length
- Same clip name prefix (such as *Audio File* or *Audio File_01*)
- Consecutively-numbered clip name suffix, from *A1* through *A8*

For example, the clips *Audio File_01.A1* and *Audio File_01.A2* would be grouped as a multichannel clip in the Clip List.

If an existing stereo or multichannel grouped clip has been dragged onto multiple mono tracks and edited in such a way that one or more components are no longer the same length, the stereo display is removed and the clips are displayed as individual clips in the Clip List.

Selecting a Matching Field Recorder Channel to Replace a Clip

Once you have imported an AAF or OMF sequence into the Timeline, you can replace the original production sound mix with an equivalent matching field recorder channel while preserving the original edits.

If the Import Session Data process imported all production source audio directly into the Timeline, this procedure is unnecessary.

Replacing a Clip with a Matching Segment from a Matching Field Recorder Channel

You can replace a mono clip (or selected portion of a mono clip) with a matching segment of a matching field recorder channel that was recorded simultaneously. Any fades performed on the original clip are automatically applied to the replacement clip, and any pre-existing automation on that track is unchanged.

Using this feature is especially useful when combining it with duplicating the production sound mix track. For example, you could replace the audio from a boom microphone with the audio from a lavalier microphone—while preserving any edits or fades from the original edited production sound mix in the AAF or OMF sequence.

To replace a clip with a matching field recorder channel:

1. In the Timeline, make a selection that includes or overlaps the clip or portion of the clip you want to replace.
2. Do one of the following:
   - With any Edit tool, Right-click the selection you want to replace, then select Matching Field Recorder Channels from the pop-up menu.
   - With the Selector tool, Command-option-click (Mac) or Control-alt-click (Windows) the selection you want to replace.
3. From the **`Matching Field Recorder Channels`** pop-up menu, select the name of the matching clip that you want to use to replace the original clip.

   You can hold Command-option (Mac) or Control-alt (Windows) and use the up and down arrow keys to step through the list of available matches for the selection.

   The first time you open the Matching Field Recorder Channels menu for a certain clip, Pro Tools must search for matching channels, and displays "Searching for metadata in the background." Close and open the menu again once the search is complete to see the found matches.

If the production sound mixer entered the channel name (or some other descriptive reference) during shooting, the Matching Field Recorder Channels pop-up menu displays this information.

4. Repeat this procedure for every clip you want to replace on each track.

To cycle through matches for the selected clip, press Command+Option+Up/Down Arrows (Mac) or Control+Alt+Up/Down Arrows (Windows).

Conditions for Matching Field Recorder Channel Availability

By default, a matching field recorder channel is available to replace the original channel (represented by the clip or portion of a clip selected on the Timeline) if all of the following are true:

- Both channels are part of a multichannel part of a recording made simultaneously on one or more field recorders.
- Both channels overlap at least once between their start timecode and end timecode positions.
- Criteria set in the Match Criteria dialog is met.
- The metadata embedded during shooting and recording has been preserved prior to import into Pro Tools.

For information on how to ensure that metadata have been properly preserved in your source files, see "Ensuring Metadata of Source Files Have Been Preserved" on page 1907.

However, different field recorders can behave differently, and in some cases, available metadata can be incorrect, incomplete, or missing. To aid in finding matching field recorder channels in these situations, Pro Tools lets you control its channel match criteria.

Field Recorder Channels Match Criteria

For maximum flexibility, the Field Recorder Channels Match Criteria dialog lets you set the criteria Pro Tools uses to find matching field recorder channels.



Field Recorder Channels Match Criteria window

You can find matches using any or all of the following identifying data points:

File Creation Date

The date the files were created, as specified by the operating system.

Shoot date

The shoot date of the content, as specified by iXML metadata.

Scene

The scene number of the content, as specified by iXML metadata.

Scene and Take

The scene number and take number, as specified by iXML metadata.

⚠ **Matching channels by take can only be done if also matching by scene.**

Tape Name

The tape name, as specified by iXML metadata, must match the tape name of the guide file.

Sound Roll Name

The sound roll name, as specified by iXML metadata, must match the sound roll name of the guide file.

Sound Roll Name to Tape Name

The tape name, as specified by iXML metadata, matches the sound roll name of the guide file.

Tape Name to Sound Roll Name

The sound roll name, as specified by iXML metadata, matches the tape name of the guide file.

💡 *When matching by the above criteria, Pro Tools will accept timecode matches in both Original Time Stamp and Sound Roll Timecode.*

First X Characters in File Name

Matches files based on a user-specified number of characters in the file name, starting at the beginning.

Channel Name

The channel name, as specified by iXML metadata.

Channel Number

The channel number, as specified by iXML metadata.

Name and Sort Tracks By

This option lets you set the method Pro Tools uses to name and sort the audio files created by expanding matching field recorder channels.

To set match criteria:

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the Edit window, Right-click on a mono clip, and choose **`Matching Field Recorder Channels > Match Criteria`** from the pop-up menu.
   - In the Edit window, Command-option click (Mac) or Control-alt-click (Windows) on a mono clip, and choose **`Field Recorder Channel Match Criteria`** from the pop-up menu.
   - Right-click the name plate of the track you want to find matches for, and choose **`Field Recorder Channel Match Criteria`** from the pop-up menu. .

2. In the Field Recorder Channels Match Criteria window, select the matching conditions you want Pro Tools to search.
3. Choose ANY or ALL from the Match Timecode Plus pop-up menu. Choosing ANY will find matches based on any one of the criteria you've set. Choosing ALL will require that all of the criteria you've set must be matched for Pro Tools to consider a prospective match valid.

   When looking for the largest number of matches, choose ANY Then, you can use ALL to narrow down your matches to a specific shoot date, channel name, or other identifying data point.

4. In future searches for matching field recorder channels, Pro Tools will follow the guidelines you've set, until you change them again.

The Reset button toggles all criteria to their default values.

Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) any item to select or deselect all criteria in the dialog.

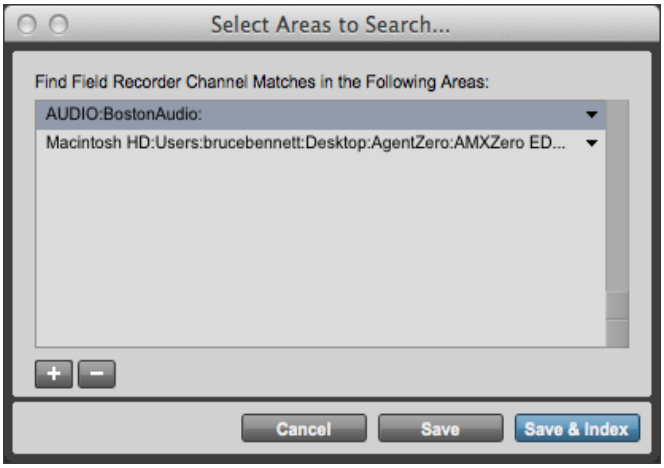
Select Areas to Search

By default, Pro Tools searches for matching field recorder files in the Audio Files folder for the current session. Because field recorders often accumulate large amounts of audio data, importing the necessary files into your Pro Tools session can be a slow and complex task.

The **Select Areas to Search** option lets you specify additional locations (such as alternate folders or hard drives) for Pro Tools to search for matches.

To select areas to search for matching field recorder tracks:

1. Right-click the name of a field recorder track.
2. Click **Select Areas to Search.**



Select Areas to Search dialog

3. Navigate to a folder or hard drive you want Pro Tools to search for matches.
4. Click **Choose** to confirm your choice.

   Pro Tools will show an error message if you try to add a subfolder whose parent folder is already in the list of search areas.

5. To delete a search area from the list, select it and click the Minus (–) button.
6. Do one of the following:

- Click **Save** to close the Select Areas to Search dialog and save the new search area settings.
- Click **Save & Index** to save the new search area settings and re-index the selected folders. For more information, see "Re-Indexing" below.

Re-Indexing

When new audio is added to one of the designated search areas, Pro Tools must index the contents of that folder before the new audio can be accessed.

To re-index all alternate search areas:

1. In the **Field Recorder Channels Match** dialog, click **Select Areas to Search**.
2. Click **Save & Index** to save the current settings and re-index all search areas in the list.

Missing Search Folders

Folders that you select as search areas can go missing for a variety of reasons (such as deletion or the absence of a needed hard drive). If a folder is missing, Pro Tools shows an error message when you open the **Select Areas to Search** dialog. The missing path name is displayed in the list in gray-colored italic text.

Field recorder files imported through searches outside the session are always imported as .WAV if any conversion needs to take place, to preserve the field recorder metadata. Session file type selected in the Session Setup window is ignored.

Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels to New Tracks

When working with a mono clip that is part of a multichannel recording, you can expand that clip (or a selected portion of it) to new tracks that reflect its matching channels while preserving any edits or fades.

Matching field recorder channels are mono channels that were usually recorded simultaneously with the original clip (such as multichannel recordings made by one or more field recorders). For information on setting the detailed criteria that matching channels must meet, see "Conditions for Matching Field Recorder Channel Availability" on page 1912.

For example, this feature lets you easily create different versions of an edited dialogue track corresponding to multiple channel inputs (microphones) that were recorded simultaneously.

To expand matching field recorder channels to new tracks:

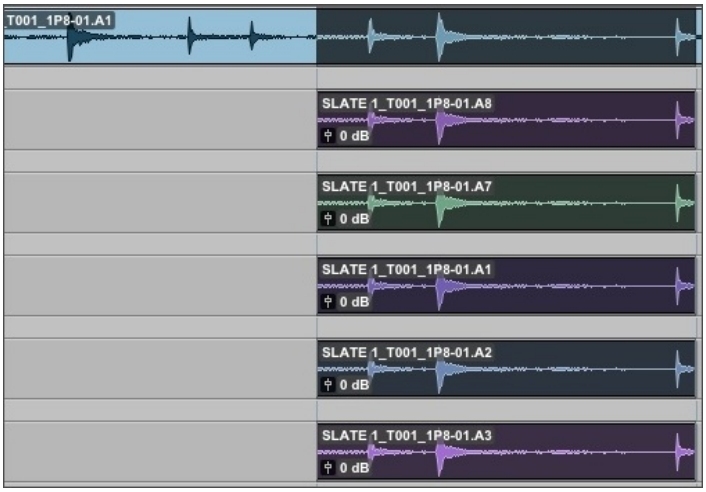
1. In the Timeline, do one of the following:
   - To expand a single clip on a single track, right-click the clip.
   - To expand a portion of the clips on the track, make a selection that includes or overlaps any number of clips, and Command-option-click (Mac) or Control-alt-click (Windows) the selection.
   - To expand all of the clips on a mono track, Right-click the track's name plate.

   The channel you plan to expand must be mono.
2. Click the Expand Channels to New Tracks submenu, and select one of the following methods by which to expand matching field recorder channels for the selection to new tracks:
   - By Match Criteria
   - By Timecode Only

When expanding only a portion of the clips on a track, the By Match Criteria option will be grayed out if there are no valid matches found, or if the ANY option is chosen in the Field Recorder Channels Match Criteria dialog and no criteria are selected.

See "Determining the Method of Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels to New Tracks" below for more information on how each of these options expand to new tracks.

If matching field recorder channels are available, Pro Tools expands them (plus the channel represented in the original track) to new tracks according to the chosen parameters.



Result of expanding a selection to new tracks

Determining the Method of Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels to New Tracks

Matching field recorder channels may be expanded to new tracks based on the channel match criteria specified in the Field Recorder Channels Match Criteria dialog (For more info, see "Field Recorder Channels Match Criteria" on page 1912), or by timecode only.

Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels by Match Criteria

Choosing **`Expand Channels to New Tracks > By Match Criteria`** creates a new track for each unique channel found in matching channels of the selection that meets the criteria you've specified.

If channels with duplicate match criteria (such as Channel Name or Channel Number) are encountered, additional tracks are created for each duplicate channel. The new channels share the name of the original channel they were expanded from, appended with a period, followed by an identifying number. The first matching channel will be appended by .2, the second by .3, and so on.

Each new track contains only channels that match according to the specified match criteria, with edits and fades preserved from the original selection. Gaps reflect clips from the original selection that did not have a matching channel with that channel name.

Naming and Sorting Expanded Channels

For maximum flexibility, Pro Tools lets you control the naming and sorting of new channels created by the Expand Channels to New Tracks by Match Criteria command.

This parameter can be set in the Field Recorder Channels Match Criteria dialog (for more info, see "Field Recorder Channels Match Criteria" on page 1912.)

How Tracks Are Named When Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels by Channel Name

Tracks expanded this way are named as follows:

- For unique channel names that create only one track, each track is named using the original track's name plus the channel name. For example, expanding the unique channel name *Boom* from the track *Guide.A1* would create a new track called *Guide.A1.Boom*.
- For unique channel names that create two or more tracks, each of the new tracks that share channel names are named by appending a period, followed by an identifying number. The first matching channel will be appended by .2, the second by .3, and so on. For example, expanding the duplicate channel names *Boom* from the track *Guide.A1* would create *Guide.A1.2* and *Guide.A1.3*.

How Tracks Are Named When Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels by Channel Number

Tracks expanded this way are named as follows:

- For unique channel numbers that create only one track, each track is named using the original track's name plus the channel number. For example, expanding the unique channel number *A1* from the track *Guide.A1* would create a new track called *Guide.A1.A1*.
- For unique channel number that create two or more tracks, each of the new tracks that share channel numbers are named by appending a period, followed by an identifying number. The first matching channel will be appended by .2, the second by .3, and so on. For example, expanding the duplicate channel numbers *A1* from the track *Guide.A1* would create *Guide.A1.A1.2* and *Guide.A1.A1.3*.

How Tracks Are Named When Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels by Channel Name & Number

Tracks expanded this way are named as follows:

- For unique channel name and number combinations that create only one track, each track is named using the original track's name plus the channel name and number. For example, expanding the unique channel name and number *combination Boom.A1* from the track *Guide.A1* would create a new track called *Guide.A1.Boom.A1*.
- For unique channel name and number combinations that create two or more tracks, each of the new tracks that share channel name and numbers are named by appending a period, followed by an identifying number. The first matching channel will be appended by .2, the second by .3, and so on. For example, expanding the duplicate channel names *Boom.A1* from the track *Guide.A1* would create *Guide.A1.A1.2* and *Guide.A1.A1.3*.

Expanding Matching Field Recorder Channels by Timecode Only

The **`Expand Channels To New Tracks By Timecode Only`** command lets you expand an entire track or only selected clips to new playlists on the same track or to new separate tracks, thus revealing all other clips recorded at the same timecode location, regardless of channel name or number. This is especially useful when expanding edited guide tracks to original source audio that was recorded while referenced to timecode, but where channel names or numbers were not written to the audio files.

When finding matches by timecode only, Pro Tools will reference both Original Time Stamp and Sound Roll Timecode. If a cross-match is found between Tape and Sound Roll Name (or vice versa) Pro Tools will also look for cross-matches between Original Time Stamp and Sound Roll Timecode.

Example Workflow: Working with a Guide Track

For live concert videos, the video is captured separately while the audio is recorded in Pro Tools. The video editor will use a guide audio track that is edited along with the video in their video editing software (such as Avid Media Composer). The edited guide track is then returned to Pro Tools, but it needs to be expanded to the conformed original source tracks for mixing and mastering.

1. Multitrack audio is recorded in Pro Tools while chasing timecode. A mono or stereo mix is recorded simultaneously as a guide track for the video editor.
2. The picture and audio guide tracks are edited in a video editing application (such as Avid Media Composer).
3. The edited audio guide tracks are exported from the video editor as an AAF (or OMF) sequence, including handles of at least 2 frames.
4. The AAF (or OMF) sequence is imported into Pro Tools as a new session.
5. The original source audio files and unedited guide track are also imported into the session.
6. The original unedited guide track is relinked to the session (see "Relinking the Original Unedited Guide Track" below).
7. The Pro Tools editor Right-clicks the name of the guide track and selects **`Expand Channels to New Tracks > By Timecode Only`**. The original source tracks expand to new tracks with edits and fades that match the guide track.

Relinking the Original Unedited Guide Track

After importing the AAF (or OMF) sequence and original source audio files into the session, it is recommended that you relink the edited guide track to the original unedited source audio.

To relink the original unedited guide track:

1. Open a Workspace browser. Select your session in the Locations column, then open or expand the Session Audio Files folder.
2. Right-click the edited guide track audio file in the browser and choose **`Relink Selected Items`**.
3. In the upper pane of the Relink window, navigate to the original unedited guide track audio file that was recorded in Pro Tools.

   If the original unedited file is not available, you can relink to any of the source audio files as long as they have the same start and end times as the guide track.

4. In the Select Files To Relink pane, select the edited guide track file.
5. Drag the original unedited guide track audio file into the Candidates pane. If a dialog appears stating that one or more files are shorter than the media file you are trying to relink, click **`Yes`** to select it for relinking anyway.
6. Check the box to the left of the file in the Candidates pane so that the Link icon appears.
7. Click **`Commit Links`** at the top of the Relink window and then close the Relink window.

You can now Right-click the name of the guide and select **`Expand To New Tracks > By Timecode Only`**. All expanded tracks should be synchronous with the guide track.

Film Workflow

This topic describes the film workflow from shooting to the point where the Avid editor is ready for editing, and is intended for the following parties:

- Camera assistant
- Camera operator
- Production sound mixer
- Telecine operator
- Pro Tools editor

Overview of Film Workflow

The following describes an overview of the steps necessary to a film workflow:

1. Set up before shooting.
2. Shoot.
3. Telecine transfer.
4. Batch digitize in Avid video editing application.

Following these steps ensures that timecode metadata are preserved from the moment shooting begins to the final delivery of source files to the Pro Tools editor.

Setting Up Before Shooting (Film Workflow)

Before each day's shooting begins, the production sound mixer should decide on a unique name—preferably ascending by day—and enter that exact name in the Tape BEXT or iXML metadata field inside the Broadcast WAV file.

For example, the production sound mixer might use *T001* for the first day's shooting, *T002* for the second day's shooting, and so forth.

Shooting (Film Workflow)

1. Shooting proceeds as follows:
   - Film camera begins rolling.
   - One or more field recorders begin recording. The production sound mixer has designated one or two channels as a *production sound mix*, which is a consolidation of one or more channels in each multichannel recording.
2. During shooting, the following timecode information is captured:
   - The camera captures images to film, each frame of which is embedded during manufacturing with a unique identifying timecode position known as *keycode*.
   - One or more field recorders simultaneously make multichannel recordings that are embedded with SMPTE timecode based on time of day (or *longitudinal timecode*).
3. During shooting, the following information is noted:
   - The camera assistant keeps a written record (called a *shootlist*) documenting each scene and take with a corresponding keycode position.
   - The production sound mixer also keeps a written record (also called a *sound log*) documenting each scene and take with a corresponding timecode position.
4. The slate operator claps the slate to indicate the beginning of the take. The field recorder records the audio of the clap, and the film camera captures the following images:
   - Scene and take number (written on the slate)
   - Exact moment the slate closes
   - Timecode position of the slate closing
5. Shooting ends and the take is complete.

Telecine Transfer (Film Workflow)

When shooting is complete for the day, the following components are delivered to the telecine operator:

- Processed film stock
- Multichannel location audio
- Written shootlist and sound log

The telecine operator generates the *dailies* (a videotape containing the day's shots) by transferring the film and audio to a videotape. The shootlists will be used as a guide.

To use a telecine to create dailies:

1. Load film and audio into the telecine.
2. Enter the Tape name or Sound Roll name (whichever was used during the production) *character for character* into the telecine.

   ⚠ **To ensure that metadata are preserved for the Pro Tools editor, it is critical to enter the Tape name or Sound Roll name character for character. For example, if the metadata was T001 (with two zeroes), enter T001 with two zeroes—not T01 with one zero or T0001 with three zeroes.**
3. Using the camera assistant's shootlist, locate the film frame representing the first keycode position of the film in the shootlist (which should be just before the slate is clapped).
4. Locate the film to the first frame where the slate clap occurs, and note the timecode position displayed on the slate.
5. Locate the audio to the exact timecode position listed on the slate in the film frame (which lines up the audio with the film).
6. Play back the film and audio to test that they are synchronized. If they are not synchronized, make small manual adjustments as needed until the film and audio are synchronized.
7. Once the film and audio are properly synchronized, lock the film and audio in place.
8. Insert a blank videotape into the VTR connected to the telecine, and manually assign linear timecode (LTC) information to the videotape.
9. Begin the telecine capture. During the telecine capture, the following occurs:
   - The telecine begins capturing the synchronized film and audio to the videotape, with linear timecode (LTC) assigned to the videotape beginning from where you entered the start timecode.
   - A FLEx file is created, where scene and take information is automatically written and associated to the film keycode and telecine videotape timecode relative to audio timecode.
10. When the telecine transfer is complete, deliver the following to the Avid editor:
    - Telecine videotape
    - FLEx file
    - Shootlist
    - Sound log
    - Location audio media

Batch Digitizing the Telecine Videotape to Digital Files (Film Workflow)

This phase of the workflow begins after the Avid editor receives the following components from the telecine operator:

- Telecine videotape
- FLEx file
- Shootlist

- Sound log

In some cases, you may also receive location audio from the production sound mixer.

In a film workflow, the Avid editor batch digitizes the telecine videotape to digital video and audio files in order to edit them.

To batch digitize a telecine videotape to digital source files:

1. In the Avid video editing application, import all relevant FLEx files into Avid Log Exchange. Avid Log Exchange displays a list of all scene and take combinations, with associated film keycode, audio timecode, and relative videotape timecode.
2. In Avid Log Exchange, select the items in the FLEx file that represent the scenes and takes you want to batch digitize from the videotape.
3. Process the selected scenes and takes in the FLEx file. Avid Log Exchange sends the selected items to the Avid video editing application, where they are loaded into the Bin as offline media.

   Any metadata required for matching (such as Tape name) should be visible in the undigitized clips.

4. In the Avid Bin, select the items you want to capture.
5. Load the telecine videotape into the Avid, and begin the batch digitize. The Avid automatically batch digitizes the scenes and takes selected in the Avid Bin, and uses the FLEx file to assign each of the digitized video and audio files with the timecode information matching the original keycode and timecode information from the shoot.
6. When the batch digitize is complete, use the Avid video editing application to edit audio and video.
7. When you are finished editing, export the edited sequence as an AAF or OMF sequence so that it can be imported into Pro Tools.

Video and Fully Non-Linear Workflows

This topic describes both video and fully non-linear workflows from shooting to the point where the Avid editor is ready for editing, and is intended for the following parties:

- Camera assistant
- Camera operator
- Production sound mixer
- Avid editor
- Pro Tools editor

Overview of Video and Fully Non-Linear Workflows

The following describes an overview of the steps that are necessary in these workflows:

1. Set up before shooting.
2. Shoot.
3. Digitize video in Avid video editing application (video workflow only) or import digital video files directly into Avid video editing application (fully non-linear workflow only).

Following these steps ensures that timecode and other metadata are preserved from the moment shooting begins to the final delivery of source files to the Pro Tools editor.

Setting Up Before Shooting (Video and Fully Non-Linear Workflows)

Before shooting begins, the camera operator and the production sound mixer should ensure the following:

- The field recorder's audio output feeds the video camera's audio input.
- Both the field recorder and the video camera should be locked to the same production timecode.

Matching Tape Name to Sound Roll Metadata for Video Shoots

Before loading the videotape into the video camera, the camera operator physically labels the videotape with a unique name. The production sound mixer must enter that exact name in the Tape BEXT or iXML metadata field inside the Broadcast WAV file.

After you import a file containing Tape metadata into Pro Tools, the metadata displays in the Sound Roll field in Workspace browsers.

Matching Tape Name to Sound Roll Metadata for Fully Non-Linear Shoots

After loading the digital video storage into the camera, the camera operator gives it a unique name. The production sound mixer must enter that exact name in the Tape BEXT or iXML metadata field inside the Broadcast WAV file.

To ensure that metadata are preserved for the Pro Tools editor, it is critical to enter the Tape name character for character. For example, if the metadata was T001 (with two zeroes), enter T001 with two zeroes—not T01 with one zero or T0001 with three zeroes.

Shooting (Video and Fully Non-Linear Workflows)

1. Shooting proceeds as follows:
   - Camera begins rolling.
   - One or more field recorders begin recording. The production sound mixer has designated one or two channels as a *production sound mix*, which is a consolidation of one or more channels in each multichannel recording.
2. During shooting, the following timecode information is captured:

   The camera captures images to video or file embedded with SMPTE timecode based on time of day (or *longitudinal timecode*).

   One or more field recorders simultaneously make multichannel recordings that are embedded with SMPTE timecode based on time of day (or *longitudinal timecode*).
3. The slate operator claps the slate to indicate the beginning of the take. The field recorder records the audio of the clap, and the film camera captures the following images:
   - Scene and take number (displayed on the slate)
   - Exact moment the slate closes
   - Timecode position of the slate closing
4. Shooting ends and the take is complete.

Digitizing a Videotape in the Avid Video Editing Application

(Video Workflow Only) This phase of the workflow begins after the Avid editor receives the following components from the camera operator and the production sound mixer:

- Videotape
- Multichannel recordings

In a video workflow, the Avid editor digitizes the videotape to digital video and audio files in order to edit them. Before doing so, however, the Avid editor must name the tape.

To digitize a videotape to digital source files:

1. Load the videotape into the Avid system.
2. When prompted to name the videotape, enter the exact Tape name used by the camera operator and the production sound mixer.

   ⚠ **To ensure that metadata are preserved for the Pro Tools editor, it is critical to enter the Tape name character for character. For example, if the metadata was T001 (with two zeroes), enter T001 with two zeroes—not T01 with one zero or T0001 with three zeroes.**
3. Digitize the videotape loaded into the Avid.
4. When the digitize is complete, use the Avid video editing application to edit audio and video.

When you are finished editing, export the edited sequence as an AAF or OMF sequence so that it can be imported into Pro Tools.

Importing Digital Video Directly into the Avid Video Editing Application

(Fully Non-Linear Workflow Only) This phase of the workflow begins after the Avid editor receives the following components from the camera operator and the production sound mixer:

- Digital video (on flash card, hard drive, or some other file-based storage)
- Multichannel recordings

In a fully non-linear workflow, the Avid editor simply has to import the video and audio media into the Avid video editing application in order to edit them.

To import video into the Avid video editing application:

1. In the Avid video editing application, create a Bin.
2. Import the video files directly into the Bin.
3. When the Disk Label Import dialog appears, enter the exact Tape name used by the camera operator and the production sound mixer.

   ⚠ **To ensure that metadata are preserved for the Pro Tools editor, it is critical to enter the Tape name character for character. For example, if the metadata was T001 (with two zeroes), enter T001 with two zeroes—not T01 with one zero or T0001 with three zeroes.**
4. Use the Avid video editing application to edit audio and video.
5. When you are finished editing, export the edited sequence as an AAF or OMF sequence so that it can be imported into Pro Tools.

69 Working with Video in Pro Tools

Pro Tools Studio lets you do the following:

- Import supported video files to a single video track
- Lock video tracks
- Extract audio from supported video file formats
- Scrub audio in tandem with video
- View video in the Video window or output it through an Avid supported video peripheral to an external monitor
- Bounce the video track to QuickTime (macOS Mojave and below, and Windows with QuickTime installed only)
- Bounce Mix to MOV

Pro Tools Ultimate also lets you do the following:

- Import multiple video files into the Timeline
- Create up to 64 video tracks
- Perform basic video clip editing on the Timeline
- Select from multiple video playlists on each video track
- Organize, group, and edit video clips with audio clips
- Manage multiple video clips in the Clip List
- Undo multiple video operations

⚠ **Pro Tools Artist does not support video.**

Avid Video Engine (AVE)

Pro Tools uses the Avid Video Engine (AVE) for video playback. AVE lets you simultaneously view desktop video (native video) and video monitored using an Avid or third-party video peripheral. AVE provides support for a wide range of QuickTime and Avid HD and SD MXF video formats on Pro Tools video tracks without transcoding (including Avid DNxHD).

To enable the Avid Video Engine for Pro Tools:

1. Choose **Setup > Playback Engine**.
2. Enable the **Video Engine** option to use Pro Tools with the Avid Video Engine.
3. Click **OK**.

Video Format Support in Pro Tools

Video File Types

Pro Tools supports the following file types for video import and playback.

- H.264
- H.265
- .mov

- .mp4
- .m4v
- .mxf
- OP1a
- OP-Atom

Pro Tools supports having both .mov and .mxf media on the same video track.

Video Codec Support

Each file type has own set of supported codecs. Pro Tools supports several types of Intra Frame and Long GOP codecs. DNxHD and DNxHR are examples of Intra Frame codecs, and H.264 is an example of a Long GOP codec. Due to the nature of these codec types, it is recommend that you work with an Intra Frame codec on your timeline for the best performance.

Rate and Raster Support

Pro Tools supports video files with frame rates up to 60 fps, and raster sizes up to 4096x3112. Working with high frame rate and/or high raster size video is CPU intensive. It is important to take the size and complexity of your session into consideration, as well as the CPU speed and core count of your machine. Video playback competes with computer resources used to playback audio and plugin processing. In many cases it may be worth working with a lower frame rate and raster size video, with a lower bandwidth codec. For example, 30 fps (or under), 1920x1080 raster, and DNxHD LB or SQ. If you require high frame rate or high raster video, and you are working with a CPU intensive session, it is recommended that you use a dedicated Pro Tools or Media Composer Satellite system.

For the latest recommendations and compatibility information regarding codec, raster, and frame rate support, visit the Knowledge Base article on Avid Qualified Video Rates Rasters and Codecs for Pro Tools.

Check Latest Compatibility Documentation

The list of file types and codecs supported by Pro Tools is updated frequently to keep pace with the demands of the industry. There are also different requirements or abilities depending on your operating system. Refer to the following articles for the latest information on video related compatibility.

macOS File Type Compatibility

Visit the Knowledge base article on Pro Tools File Type Support.

General Information on Supported Video Formats

Visit the Knowledge base article on Avid Qualified Video Rates Rasters and Codecs for Pro Tools.

Video Peripheral Compatibility Information

Visit the Knowledge base article on Pro Tools Video Peripherals.

Before Starting Your Project

Before you start any project that requires working with video, consider the following:

Machine Capabilities

Not all computers are suited for all types of video files. Some rate, raster, and codec combinations may not playback smoothly on underpowered machines. Please visit www.avid.com for the most up-to-date performance and compatibility recommendations.

Separate Video-Only and Audio-Only Drives

For best results, always use separate video-only and audio-only drives. For complete information on hard drive requirements, visit www.avid.com.

Frame Rate

Before receiving video, find out the frame rate. Use this frame rate when setting the frame rate of your Pro Tools sessions and when capturing video.

Creator Application and Codec

Before receiving video as media files, find out the application and codec used to create those files. Then confirm that you can play those files in Pro Tools. It is always a good idea to get a sample file in advance.

Video Timecode Burn-in

Before receiving video files, request that the timecode display to be “burned in” (superimposed) if possible. This will help you place the file at the correct timecode location in the Pro Tools Timeline.

Sufficient Space on Video Drives

Ensure sufficient space is available on separate dedicated video-only drives. Video files take up significantly more space and bandwidth than audio. It is recommended that video files be kept on separate drives from audio files to help avoid performance problems.

Separate Video-Only and Audio-Only Drives

For best results, always use separate video-only and audio-only drives. For complete information on hard drive requirements, visit www.avid.com.

Video Tracks

Video tracks let you add or import video to the Timeline, as follows:

- Pro Tools Studio lets you import one video track per session, with a limit of one video playlist and one MXF or QuickTime video file on that track.
- Pro Tools Ultimate lets you add multiple video tracks to the Timeline, with multiple video playlists and multiple video files per track.
- Pro Tools Ultimate lets you mix QuickTime and MXF video tracks in the Timeline (but not on the same video track).

To create a video track in Pro Tools, do one of the following:

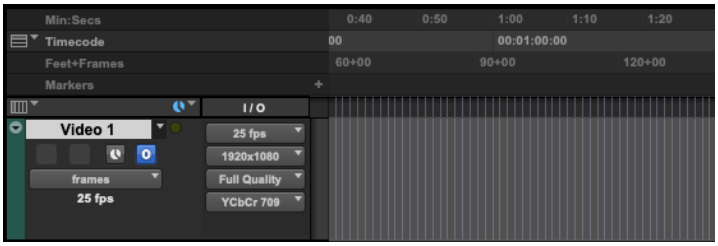
- Use **File > Import** to import a video file.
- Drag a video file to the Timeline.
- Use **File > Import > Session Data** to import a session or AAF sequence containing a video track.

For more information, see "Importing Video into Pro Tools" on page 1938.

To create a new video track with Pro Tools Ultimate:

1. Choose **Track > New**.
2. Select **Video Track** from the Track Type pop-up menu.
3. Enter the number of new video tracks.
4. Click **Create**.

A new empty video track appears. Video tracks may appear slightly different depending on your system configuration or the type of video added to a video track.



Empty video track

Multiple Video Tracks in the Timeline

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) You can add multiple video tracks to the Timeline, but only one video track can be played back at a time. This track is known as the *main video track*.

Multiple Video Track Playlists

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) Playlists provide an easy way of changing back and forth between alternate versions of a video track.

You can perform all of the same operations with video playlists as you can with audio playlists, including:

- Duplicating a playlist
- Creating a playlist
- Assigning a playlist to another video track
- Renaming a playlist
- Deleting a playlist

For more information, see "Playlists" on page 966.

Multiple Codecs on an Individual Video Track

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) A single video track can contain video clips compressed with different video codecs of the same type of video. For example, you can add QuickTime files that were compressed using multiple codecs to the same video track.

However, once the first video file has been added to a session, all additional video files added to the Timeline must have the same video frame rate as the first video file.

Main Video Track

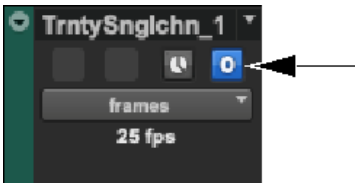
The main video track is the video track that is currently online, and will be played back with any audio in the session.

When the main video track is offline, you can play back the audio in your session without playing back the video. When the video is offline, the Video Online button changes to gray so you can tell at a glance whether your video is offline or simply playing black fill.

If no video track is currently online, the main video track is the video track that was last online.

To select the main video track:

- Click the Video Online button of any track that is offline (gray) to put it online (blue), making that track the main video track.



Video Online button (online)

Video Track Controls and Indicators

Video Track View

The video track can be viewed in Frames View or in Blocks View, both of which display all video clip boundaries and metadata. Video frame images are displayed only in Frames View.

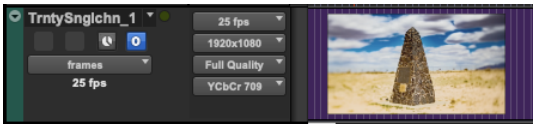
When switching from Blocks mode to Frames mode during playback, the video track will not update to displaying frames until playback is stopped.

To set the view for the video track:

- On the video track, select Frames or Blocks from the View Options pop-up menu.

Frames View

In Frames View, video data is displayed as pictures in the video track. These pictures are computed based on the video image, and scale according to your track zoom and height settings. They allow you to easily find a scene or sequence in the video track.



Video track in Frames View

Frames do not display properly if you change zoom settings during playback. Blank frames are drawn until playback is stopped. You should stop playback before changing zoom settings if you want to view frames.

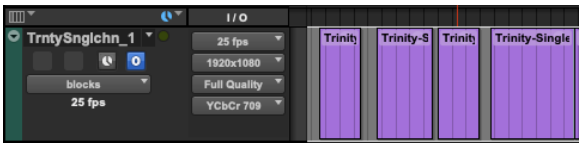
If video pull up or pull down is enabled, frames do not change position.

Frames View Performance

When using Frames View to view video content in the video track, your computer may exhibit reduced or sluggish performance. If this happens on your computer, hide the video track or switch to Blocks View.

Blocks View

In Blocks View, video frames are replaced by colored blocks.

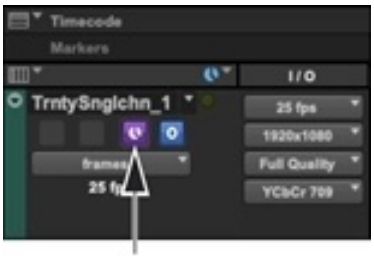


Video track in Blocks View

Timecode Overlay Button

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) The Timecode Overlay button lets you toggle Timecode Overlay on (blue) and off (gray) for the Video window (see "Timecode Overlay" on page 1953).

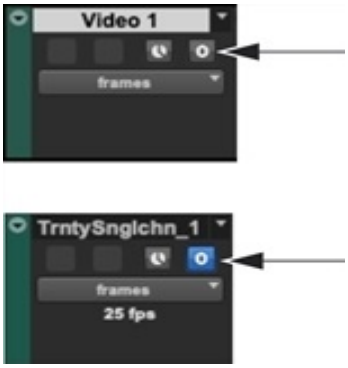
Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the Timecode Overlay button to open the Timecode Overlay Settings dialog.



Timecode Overlay button, enabled

Video Online Button

The Video Online button lets you select the main video track, switch that track online or offline, and see at a glance by color whether a video track is offline (gray) or online (blue).



Video Online button (offline (top) and online (bottom)

To switch a video track online or offline:

- Click the Video Online button of any track that is offline (gray) to put it online (blue), making that track the main video track.
- Click the Video Online button of the main video track to take it offline, and Pro Tools will not output video.

With Pro Tools Ultimate, press Shift+J to cycle through all shown video tracks to determine which one is online.

Video Dropped Frames Indicator

Pro Tools provides an indicator on video tracks to warn you of dropped frames during playback. The Dropped Frames indicator lights to indicate dropped frames during playback. If you encounter a warning about dropped frames during playback, the tooltip provides an issue report when you stop playback.



Dropped Frames indicator red Previous playback report in tooltip

Dropped Frames indicator states

Indicator	Playback Status	Issue
Not lit	Stopped	No dropped frames detected in last playback pass or indicator reset
Not lit	Playing back	No dropped frames detected
Red	Playing back	Dropped frames detected
Red	Stopped	Dropped frames detected during the last playback pass; Issues reported in tooltip

To clear the Dropped Frames indicator during or after playback, click it. It clears automatically when you resume playback.

Press Option+C (Mac) or Alt+C (Windows) to clear all clip indicators and also the Dropped Frames indicator.

Move the mouse cursor over the indicator to show a tooltip that reports the following information after playback is stopped:

- Playback Duration: ‹Time in Hr Min Sec›
- Dropped Frames: ‹sum of skipped, pipeline dropped frames›
- Disk Read Times: ‹in ms›
- Possible Reason(s) for Dropped Frames

Possible reasons for dropped frames can include:

Disk may be too slow

reported if the hard drive could not keep up with the video media during playback. Possible solutions include:

- Use a faster drive that can handle the bandwidth of the media.
- Use a local drive if the media resides on network storage.
- Use Bounce Mix to create a lower bandwidth MOV file to use in the session.
- Split audio and video media onto separate drives to remove bandwidth contention.

Audio and video engines do not have a common clock

Reported if video hardware is connected, but there is no common clock between the audio and video interfaces. The video engine will drop or duplicate frames to stay in sync with the audio engine. In some cases this is unavoidable because the hardware does not support video reference. To avoid this, use Pro Tools Ultimate software with a Pro Tools | Sync X or SYNC HD a common video reference to the video hardware.

File may be encoded in a way that is not optimized for use with the Avid Video Engine

Reported if some files are encoded in a way that is not optimal for playback in Pro Tools. For a list of qualified codecs, visit the Avid Knowledge Base.

CPU/GPU may be underpowered

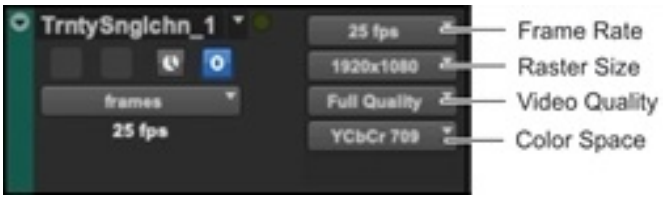
Reported if there is not enough CPU or GPU processing power.

Video Track Settings

Pro Tools provides Video track settings for Frame Rate, Raster Size, Output, and for Video Quality on playback.

To view (or hide) Video track controls in the Edit window:

- Select (or deselect) **`View > Edit Window Views > I/O`**.



Video Track Output controls

Engine Rate and Raster Settings

The engine Frame Rate and Raster Size selectors determine how a video file is processed and output by the video engine. In most cases, the engine settings should match the attributes of the video file for optimal playback performance. In some cases, however, there can be mixed file raster sizes, or the video may be a non-standard frame rate or raster size, in which case real time frame rate or raster size conversion must be done to match the file to the selected engine settings.

Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to override Pro Tools and select the desired Frame Rate or Raster Size.

Default Engine Settings for Imported Video

The video engine Frame Rate and Raster Size settings are set slightly differently when importing an AAF containing a sequence versus an individual video file (such as a QuickTime file).

AAF/OMF

When importing an AAF, the engine settings are determined by the Project Type set in the AAF (which is defined in Media Composer). For AAFs that come from other applications, Pro Tools uses the Single File logic, and the engine settings are based on the first file on the timeline.

Single File

When importing a single video file, QuickTime or MXF, Pro Tools picks the optimal video engine Frame Rate and Raster Size based on the file attributes. If the file attributes perfectly fit in a standard Frame Rate and Raster Size, that Frame Rate and Raster Size are used.

Frame Rate

While Pro Tools does not allow mixed frame rates, it does allow different resolutions. The Frame Rate selector lets you set the Frame Rate to best match mixed resolutions for the session. In general, you will not need to change the Frame Rate.

For Avid MXF video, Frame Rate is set automatically. However, when you are working with mixed resolutions, Pro Tools lets you set the closest matching resolution for the session using the Frame Rate setting.

If a file is imported that does not match any standard Frame Rate, Pro Tools uses the closest possible Frame Rate. Note that you can select any other standard Frame Rate, in which case Frame Rate conversion is unavoidable, so be sure to select the Frame Rate that works best for your project.

Raster Size

Pro Tools can accept almost any Raster Size as long as the dimension of each side of the video file is a multiple of 2. Video plays back at its native size and aspect ratio in the Pro Tools Video window. Hardware display is limited only by the capabilities of the hardware.

While Pro Tools does not allow mixed frame rates, it does allow different resolutions. If two or more files with different resolutions are imported, the options in the Raster Size selector increase to match the attributes of the files in the session.

If a file is imported that does not match a standard Raster Size, Pro Tools plays back the file at the native Raster Size. Note that you can select any other standard Raster Size.

QuickTime Media

When importing a QuickTime movie, the following conditions may apply:

- Pro Tools automatically sets the Frame Rate and Raster Size on import based on the QuickTime movie's frame rate and resolution.
- If multiple Frame Rates and Raster Sizes are possible, Pro Tools lets you select from the best possible matches available.
- If the frame rate is close to a whole value, Pro Tools rounds to the nearest frame rate (for example, 29.972 is rounded to 29.97)
- For imported QuickTime media with unknown Frame Rates and Raster Sizes (such as stills or screen captures), change the settings to best match other video files in the session.

❑ *Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) to override Pro Tools and select the Frame Rate or Raster Size.*

Support for Video Peripherals

Using the Avid Video Engine, Pro Tools provides support for external video monitoring of MXF and QuickTime media using Avid or third-party video peripherals.

To enable (or disable) external video monitoring with qualified video hardware:

1. Ensure that your Avid or Avid-qualified third-party video hardware is correctly installed and configured.
2. Open or create a session with video.
3. Select (or deselect) **Options > Enable Video Hardware**.

Clocking Video and Audio Hardware with Pro Tools

Pro Tools requires separate audio and video interfaces. Each has its own clock speed, so it is best to resolve both clocks to the same external video reference clock source to prevent drift, and to ensure that audio and video begin playback together. For the most accurate synchronization, connected audio interfaces and video peripheral should follow and lock to the same external clock source (such as Sync X or a SYNC HD). If this is not possible, Pro Tools does its best to keep accurate sync with the video peripheral.

For best video performance, it is recommended that you use Pro Tools with Sync X or a Sync HD, a video peripheral that can accept video reference, and then send video reference to both parts of the system. That being said, it may be acceptable in certain workflows to allow slewing with only a frame of drift.

It is assumed that external reference for all interfaces is always derived from the same source. This includes combinations of audio and video. They must be from the same generator and running at the same relative speed.

Clocking scenarios

Pro Tools	Video Interface	Behavior	Prerequisites	Use Cases
Clock Source: Sync X Sync HD	Clock Source: Video Reference	Pro Tools and the video engine will use same top-of-frame to begin playback in sync.	Pro Tools Ultimate	Synchronizing a single system with a video peripheral.
Clock Reference: Video Reference		Playback will not drift.	Pro Tools HD Hardware Sync HD	Synchronizing one or more systems with analog gear and a video peripheral.
			Video peripheral capable of external video reference	Synchronizing multiple systems that interchange analog audio with each other and a video peripheral.
Clock Source: Sync X Sync HD	Clock Source: Video Reference	Pro Tools and the video engine will use same top-of-frame to begin playback in sync.	Pro Tools Ultimate Pro Tools HD Hardware	Synchronizing a single system with a video peripheral.
Clock Reference: External Digital Clock (e.g., Word Clock or		Playback will not drift.	Sync HD Video peripheral	Synchronizing one or more systems with analog gear and a video peripheral.

Pro Tools	Video Interface	Behavior	Prerequisites	Use Cases
AES) Video Reference: Connected and matching Video Ref Format			capable of external video reference	Synchronizing multiple systems that interchange digital audio with each other, as well as a video peripheral.
Clock Source: Audio Interface Clock Reference: External Digital Clock (e.g., Word Clock or AES)	Clock Source: Video Reference	Pro Tools and the video engine will begin playback within +/–1 frame of each other. The offset will vary within this range by a different amount with the start of each playback pass. Playback will not drift any further for the duration of the playback pass.	Audio interface capable of external digital clocking Video peripheral capable of external video reference	Synchronizing a single system with a video peripheral when a Sync HD is not available for the system. This may be because it is not present, or the system does not contain a Pro Tools Ultimate with HD hardware.
Clock Source: Audio Interface Clock Reference: Internal	Clock Source: Internal	Pro Tools and the video engine will begin playback within +/–1 frame of each other. The offset will vary within this range by a different amount with the start of each playback pass. Playback will drift over time because the engines are not resolved to the same clock. The video engine will detect if the clock has drifted by a 1/2 a frame more. If this is the case, it will drop or duplicate a frame, depending on the direction of the drift, to keep up (*slewing*).	Video peripheral	Audio or video peripheral is not capable of external reference. This includes using the built-in computer audio. If one peripheral does not/cannot have an external clock source, there is no benefit to applying an external clock source to the other peripheral, in regards to A/V sync. However, it may be beneficial to apply external clock reference to one peripheral for other reasons, such as the interchange of digital audio signal with another audio interface.

Supported Frame Rates and Raster Sizes with Video Hardware

Depending on your video hardware, you may be limited to a specific range or combination of Frame Rates and Raster Sizes. When working with video hardware, Pro Tools analyzes the specific capabilities of the attached video peripheral. Pro Tools attempts to set the video engine to match the attributes of the first imported video file, but if the detected Frame Rate or Raster Size is not supported by the attached video peripheral, the video engine conforms to the best match supported by the video peripheral.

Since video hardware may only support specific rate and raster configurations, you may find that certain frame rates are listed as **hardware n/a** when certain raster sizes are selected as well as the inverse. Please check your the documentation provided with your video hardware for supported format specifications.

Supported and Unsupported Frame Rates

If the video peripheral does not support the Frame Rate of the imported video file, the Frame Rate is set to the highest available Frame Rate relative to the video file. For example, if the imported video file is 120 fps, Pro Tools first tries to use 120 fps. If the video peripheral does not support 120 fps, Pro Tools tries to use 60 fps. If the video peripheral does not support 60 fps. Pro Tools tries 30 fps, and so on.

When Pro Tools uses a frame rate that is non-native to the media, and the Frame Rate automatically selected by Pro Tools is not what you want, you can select the best matching Frame Rate from the Frame Rate selector. Any options not supported by the hardware are listed as hardware n/a and are inactive in the list.

Supported and Unsupported Raster Sizes

The Raster Size also attempts to display at the native file size. If the hardware does not support this, Pro Tools uses the native size for the video engine and desktop display, but the hardware automatically displays the closest match that it can support for the selected frame rate. This means that software video window display accurately matches the dimensions of the file, but the video hardware plays it at the closest compatible size. The video engine setting displays “hardware n/a” in the Raster Size selector for any raster that the video hardware does not support, and the list shows other standard choices that both hardware and software can agree on.

If the picture does not display, or displays incorrectly, it is recommended that you select a Raster Size and Frame Rate combination that the hardware supports.

⚠ **Changing the frame rate may be restricted or prevented if any rendered video effects from an AAF are present in the Pro Tools session.**

Video Quality

Use the Video Quality selector to set the video quality for the track on playback. You can choose from options that range from best performance (lower video quality) to full quality. These options can also be selected by Right-clicking in the Video window.

The following options are available:

Full Quality

Select the **Full Quality** option to process and play back the full image raster for the project. **Full Quality** uses a bit depth of 8 bits. This option provides the highest video playback quality by processing every image pixel. In interlaced projects, this option processes the full width of every line in both fields. In progressive projects, this option processes the full width of every scan line.

Full Quality 10-bit

Select the **Full Quality 10-bit** option to process and play back the full image raster for the project. This option uses a bit depth of 10 bits, which provides higher quality processing. This option is only available with video hardware connected.

Pro Tools supports HDR color spaces. For the most accurate color representation with HDR color spaces, select Full Quality 10-Bit on the video track. This setting is only available when a video peripheral is connected, and it is only utilized with the video hardware. Note that 10-Bit video requires more processing power than other settings.

Draft

Select the **Draft** option to process and play back the full image raster for the project that uses 1/4 of the image information. The **Draft** option uses a bit depth of 8 bits. This option subsamples 50% of the raster width. For interlaced projects, this option uses one field. For progressive projects, this option uses 50% of the scan lines.

Best Performance

Select the **Best Performance** option to process and play back the full image raster for the project using 1/16 of the image information. The **Best Performance** option uses a bit depth of 8 bits. This option subsamples 25% of the raster width. For interlaced projects, this option uses 50% of the lines in one field. For progressive projects, this option uses 25% of the scan lines.

Color Space

The video track **Color Space** selector setting controls the color space used by the video engine for processing video files in the session.

Pro Tools uses **YCbCr 709** as the default for most imported files. You can choose the detected color space for a more accurate color representation, but it may require more CPU processing cycles, which will have performance implications.

When importing an AAF, Pro Tools uses the color space information from the AAF, if it exists, to set the color space on the video track. However, not all AAFs contain color space information, in which case Pro Tools uses the first clip in the sequence to determine the color space instead.

Limiting Available Color Space Options

The full list of available color spaces is extensive, so Pro Tools automatically filters the number of color space settings shown in the **Color Space** selector when possible. For example, when color space is set automatically using the metadata from an imported file, all other color space options are filtered out and not available. If you then import another file with a different color space, that color space option also becomes available.

To override the color space filter, Command-click (Mac) or Control-click (Windows) the selector and all color space options are available. The recommended color space options for imported files are highlighted yellow.

Color Space Adapters

If the selected color space does not match the native color space of the file, the video engine does its best to apply behind-the-scenes color adapters. These color adapters try to accurately represent the file's color when processed in a different color space. This is typically only an issue when multiple files imported to the timeline contain different color spaces.

The **Color Adapters** option is disabled by default. Enable this option if multiple files, with different color spaces are present on the timeline and you need them to conform to a single color space.

For information on Video Window Color Space options for the Pro Tools Video window, see "Setting the Video Window Color Space" on page 1948.

Locking Video Tracks

You can lock one or more video tracks to prevent any video clips on those tracks from being edited.

When a video track is locked, Pro Tools restricts all editing operations involving the track (except for locking and unlocking video clips).

A locked video track displays a small lock to indicate that the video track has been locked and cannot be edited. (The lock does not appear if the Track Height of the video track is set to Mini.)

To lock a video track:

1. Select the video tracks you want to lock.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Control-click (Mac) or Start-click (Windows) the name of any selected video track, and select **Locked**.
   - Right-click the name of any selected video track, and select **Locked**.

   Locking or unlocking a video track does not alter the lock status of individual clips. If a clip was locked before you lock the track, the clip will still be locked when you unlock the track. However, unlocking a clip in a locked track will not allow you to edit that clip. It will behave as if the clip were locked until you unlock the track.

You can Edit lock or Time lock individual Video clips. For more information about locking clips, see "Locking Clips" on page 1236.

Video Engine Rate

The *video engine rate* represents the number of video frames output by Pro Tools per second, and is determined automatically by the frame rate of the first video file added to a session. Video files subsequently added to the session must have the same video frame rate as the video engine rate.

The video frame rate is displayed for each video file in the Workspace browsers, and the current video engine rate is displayed in the I/O View of the main video track.

See "Video File Rate Indicator" below for information on the Video Engine Rate indicator in the I/O View.

The video engine rate is independent of the session's timecode rate, which determines the number of frames displayed per second in grids, rulers, and counters. You can set the session timecode rate manually with the Timecode Rate pop-up menu in the Session Setup window. In order for the grids and rulers to align with the actual frames of the video files in the Timeline, the session's Timecode Rate setting should be set to match the video engine rate.

Video File Rate Indicator

The Video File Rate indicator displays only in the main video track (whether it is online or offline) and shows the video file frame rate, which is the number of video frames per second output by Pro Tools.



Video File Frame Rate indicator

The Video File Rate indicator is normally white, but turns red if one of the following conditions are present:

- The video file frame rate does not match the session's current Timecode Rate setting.
- A pull up has been applied to the video, causing the video file frame rate to differ from the session Timecode Rate.

The Timecode Rate is set in the Session Setup window. For more information, see "Session Setup Window" on page 1838.

See "Pull Up and Pull Down" on page 1848 for detailed information on using video pull up and pull down.

Importing Video into Pro Tools

Audio Codecs Supported within Video Formats

Pro Tools supports the following file types and audio codecs. One or more stems of audio may be imported from these files. Imported audio is converted to the current session audio file format on import.

- .mov
- PCM (uncompressed) and AAC audio
- .mp4
- PCM (uncompressed), and AAC audio
- .m4v
- AAC audio
- .mxf
- PCM (uncompressed) audio
- OP1a (audio from a combined audio/video MXF)
- OP-Atom video (video only)

MXF OP-Atom video is also supported when importing session data from an AAF. For more information about the MXF files in Pro Tools, see chapter 21 ‹insert title here›

Import Methods

Pro Tools provides the following methods of importing video files into the Timeline, Clip List, and new or existing video tracks:

- Using the Import Video command (**File > Import > Video**)
- Dragging from the Clip List to the Timeline (Pro Tools Ultimate only)
- Dragging from a Workspace browser or from Windows Explorer or Mac Finder
- Using the **Import Session Data** command (**File > Import > Session Data**)—this lets you import video from another Pro Tools session, or from an AAF file, but not individual video files

The video frame rate of the first video file added to a session determines the session's video engine rate. Video files subsequently added to the session must have the same video frame rate as the video engine rate.

In general, audio and video media should be stored on separate dedicated drives. When importing audio and video at the same time by linking to media, however, Pro Tools may copy both to the same drive. To avoid performance problems, move the video to a video playback drive before importing the audio and video into your session.

In a Workspace browser, you can designate your audio drives to play or record audio but only transfer video, or vice versa. You may use these settings to ensure that your audio and video are on the correct volumes. For detailed instructions, see "Volume Permissions" on page 500.

Importing Video into Pro Tools Using the Import Video Command

The Import Video menu command lets you choose one or more video files to import into Pro Tools.

When you use this method to import video into Pro Tools, the Video Import Options dialog appears. This dialog contains multiple options for customizing how files are imported.

To import video into Pro Tools using the Import Video command:

1. Do one of the following:
   - Choose **File > Import > Video**.
   - Press Command+Option+Shift+I (Mac). or Control+Alt+Shift+I (Windows).
2. In the Select Video File to Import dialog, select one or more video files.
3. Click **Open**.
4. Configure the Video Import options, and click **OK** to import video into Pro Tools.

See "Configuring Video Import Options" on the next page for detailed instructions.

Importing Video into Pro Tools with Drag and Drop

You can drag video files from a Workspace browser or from Windows Explorer or Mac Finder to the Timeline, a track, a Track List, or the Clip List.

When you use this method to import video into Pro Tools, the Video Import Options dialog appears. This dialog contains multiple options for customizing how files are imported.

To import video into Pro Tools using drag and drop:

1. Drag one or more video files from a Workspace browser or from Windows Explorer or Mac Finder to the Track List, Timeline, or an existing video track.
2. Configure the Video Import options, and click **OK** to import video into Pro Tools.

See "Configuring Video Import Options" on the next page for detailed instructions.

Importing Video into Pro Tools Using Import Session Data

You can use the Import Session Data command to import video from other Pro Tools sessions or from an AAF sequence. Any video files you import must have the same video frame rate as any video file already present in the session.

For information on importing session data, see "Importing Session Data" on page 670.

Dragging Video Files from the Clip List to the Timeline

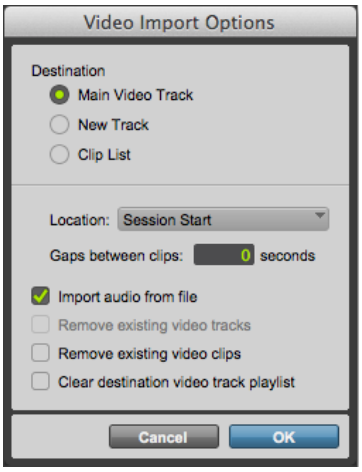
(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) You can add video files to the Timeline by dragging and dropping directly from the Clip List to a video track.

To add video files to a video track by dragging them from the Clip List:

1. Select one or more video files in the Clip List.
2. In any Edit mode, drag the selected video files to a blank area in the Timeline (to create a new video track) or an existing video track (to place it within that track).

Configuring Video Import Options

The Video Import Options dialog appears when you import video into Pro Tools by using the Import Video command or dragging video files from a Workspace browser or from Windows Explorer or Mac Finder.



See "Bypassing the Video Import Options Dialog" on the next page for details on bypassing the Video Import Options dialog when dragging and dropping video files.

Destination Section

The Destination section of the Video Import Options dialog lets you choose a general destination for imported video in Pro Tools.

Main Video Track

The video file is imported directly to the track that is currently online (known as the main video track) and into the Clip List. If no track is currently online, the video file will be imported to the last existing video track that was online.

New Track

Each video file is imported into its own individual track and into the Clip List.

Clip List

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) Each video file is imported directly into the Clip List, where it will be available to drag and drop into the Timeline.

Location Pop-Up Menu

If you do not select the Clip List as a destination in the Destination section, the Location pop-up menu lets you choose precisely where in the Timeline Pro Tools places imported video.

Session Start

Places the video file at the start of the session.

Song Start

Places the video file at the Song Start position.

Selection

Places the video file at the edit cursor position or within the selection (if one was made).

Spot

Displays the Spot dialog, which lets you spot video to precise locations based on any of the Time Scales.

Original Time Stamp

(Avid Video Only) Places Avid video in the Timeline at a timecode location that corresponds to the timestamps from the original source tape. With multiple video files, this places all video files in the Timeline at their respective original timestamps.

Additional Video Import Options

Gaps Between Clips

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) When you import more than one video file into a track, they will be shuffled together by default. This option lets you indicate the number of seconds by which each video clip will be separated when imported into the video track.

Import Audio from File

(QuickTime Video Only) When selected, the audio from the QuickTime video file you are importing will be extracted and placed into new mono or stereo audio tracks in the Timeline. (Mono or stereo audio with a sample rate of 48 kHz or lower are supported.) When unselected, only the video portion of the video file will be imported into Pro Tools.

Remove Existing Video Tracks

When selected, all existing video tracks will be deleted before Pro Tools imports video into the session.

Remove Existing Video Clips

When selected, all existing video clips will be removed from the Timeline and the Clip List before Pro Tools imports video into the session (but left on disk). This option is useful if you want to import a video file into the session with a video frame rate that does not match the current video engine rate.

See "Video Engine Rate" on page 1937 for more information.

Clear Main Video Track Playlist

When selected, all existing video clips in the currently-selected playlist on the main video track will be removed from the track before Pro Tools imports video into the session. No other playlists, video tracks, or video clips will be affected. (This option is only enabled if the main video track is selected as the Destination option.)

Bypassing the Video Import Options Dialog

You can bypass the Video Import Options dialog when dragging video files into Pro Tools. The video files are added exactly where you drop them in the Timeline following the current Pro Tools editing mode.

To bypass the Video Import Options dialog when importing video into Pro Tools:

- Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) one or more video files from a Workspace browser, Windows Explorer, or Mac Finder into the Clip List or the Timeline.

Importing Audio from Video Clips

Pro Tools lets you right-click on selected video clips to import the audio even if you imported video without its associated audio.

To import audio from a video clip:

1. Right-click on a video clip in a video track or in the Clip List.
2. Choose **Import Audio From Movie**.
3. In the resulting dialog, specify the location where you want to save the audio and click **Open**.
4. In the Audio Import Options dialog, select whether you want to import the audio to the **Clip List** or to a **New Track**.
5. If you selected **New Track**, select the Location for the audio:
   - **Session Start**
   - **Song Start**
   - **Selection**
   - **Spot**
6. Click **OK** to import the audio (or click **Cancel** to cancel the import).

Sample Rate Conversion Quality

If you import QuickTime audio that was not originally recorded at the session's sample rate, the sample rate is converted to match the audio to your session. Pro Tools allows you to choose the quality of the sample rate conversion by means of the Conversion Quality setting in the Processing Preferences page.

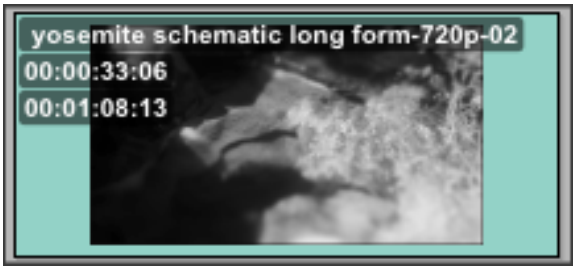
There are five possible settings, ranging from Low (lowest quality) to Tweak Head (highest quality). The higher the quality of sample rate conversion, the longer it takes to convert the bounced file.

To set the sample rate conversion quality:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click the **Processing** tab.
2. Click the **Conversion Quality** pop-up menu and select a conversion setting.

Video Clips

You can create video clips that function in much the same way as audio clips.



Video clip as displayed in Frames View in the Timeline

A video clip is a segment of video data, and can be a portion of video or an entire video file. In Pro Tools, video clips are created from QuickTime or Avid video files, and can be arranged in corresponding video track playlists. Video clips can also be grouped, looped, and color coded.

When using Pro Tools Ultimate, you can add, edit, and change viewing options for video clips in the same ways as audio clips. All edits to video clips are nondestructive. (See "General Video Editing" below for more information.)

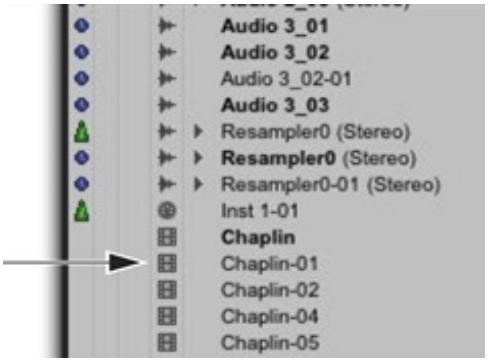
Just like audio clips, video clips display in Pro Tools in the Clip List or the Timeline (see "Video Clips in the Clip List" below).

When using Pro Tools Studio, the following limitations apply to video clips:

- You can add only one video clip to a session. It can be played back, but cannot be edited and will not be listed in the Clip List.
- When you import video or open a session created by Pro Tools Ultimate, only the main or first available video track containing QuickTime clips will be imported. You can play back and view multiple clips, and tab through clip boundaries. However, you cannot edit them.

Video Clips in the Clip List

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) A video clip displays in the Clip List with a small video icon next to its name.



For more information, see "The Clip List" on page 432.

Showing or Hiding Video Clips in the Clip List

The Clip List menu provides commands that let you show or hide video clips in the Clip List.

To show or hide video clips in the Clip List:

1. In the Edit window, click the Clip List menu, and choose **Show**.
2. Select the **Video** option to show or hide video clips.

General Video Editing

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) Most editing operations that are available for audio clips can also be applied to video clips. This section describes all available video editing operations. Unless noted, the procedure for each video editing operation is the same as its audio editing counterpart.

See the appropriate topic for detailed information on performing editing operations.

Basic Video Editing Features

- Nondestructive editing
- Display of clip names, clip times, and other data in playlists
- Multiple video playlists
- Multiple Undo
- Video clips and video clip groups in Clip List
- All Edit modes
- All Edit Tools (except for Time Compression Expansion and Pencil tools)

Playing and Selecting Video Track Material

- Selecting within video frame boundaries (see "Selecting within Video Frame Boundaries" on the next page)
- Selecting and editing across multiple tracks (see "Selecting and Editing Across Multiple Audio and Video Tracks" on the next page)
- Link or unlink track and Edit selections
- Auto-scroll video tracks
- Loop playback
- Video Universe window (see "Browsing Video in the Video Universe Window" on page 1949)

Working with Clips and Selections

- Capture clips
- Separate clips and Separate Grabber Tool
- Clip overlap and underlap
- All trimming commands except for TCE
- Heal separated clips
- Place, align, slide, shuffle, and spot clips
- Nudging (quantized to frame boundaries)
- **Shift** command (moving track material back or forward in time by a specified amount)
- **Quantize Clip to Grid** (rounds to nearest video frame)
- **Replace Clip** command
- **Cut**, **Copy**, **Paste**, and **Clear** commands
- **Special Cut**, **Copy**, **Paste**, and **Clear** commands
- Repeat to fill selection
- Editing across multiple tracks
- **Duplicate** command
- **Repeat** command
- Clip groups (see "Video Clip Groups" on page 1946)
- Clip looping

Managing Clips

- Insert space (see "Using the Insert Silence Command to Insert Space in Video Tracks" on the next page)
- **`Compact Selected`** (nothing happens to the video, and at least one audio track must be selected)
- All naming and displaying of clip commands

General Editing Operations Not Applicable to Video Clips

The following editing operations are applicable to audio clips, but are not applicable to video clips:

- Fades
- Mute/unmute clips
- AudioSuite plugins
- Waveform Repair with the Pencil tool
- Strip Silence
- Consolidate clips

Selecting and Editing Across Multiple Audio and Video Tracks

You can create a selection across multiple audio and video tracks, and cut, copy, or paste audio and video simultaneously. Audio and video that is selected and cut, copied, or pasted follow the current Edit mode.



Selecting and editing across multiple tracks (Slip mode shown)

Selecting within Video Frame Boundaries

Pro Tools does not let you select, play back, or edit a partial video frame. The following rules apply when selecting or editing video:

- When you make a selection in a video track, the selection boundaries follow the current Grid setting but round to the nearest video frame boundary, as follows:
- If the selection includes more than half of a video frame, the full video frame is included within the selection.

- If the selection includes less than half of a video frame, that video frame is not included in a video selection.
- When you paste a selection containing video to a video track, the insertion point automatically aligns with the closest video frame boundary.

When you paste audio and video simultaneously, this video frame re-alignment may result in the audio not being positioned exactly where you placed it. A warning dialog displays when this occurs.

Using the Insert Silence Command to Insert Space in Video Tracks

The **Insert Silence** command lets you make a selection on a track (or tracks) and insert precisely that amount of space. You can also select across video and audio tracks, and use the Insert Silence command to insert audio silence and space simultaneously.

In Shuffle mode, all video data on the track is shuffled later in the track by an amount equal to the selection. In Slip, Grid, or Spot mode, the **Insert Silence** command works just like the **Edit > Clear** command.

To insert space into a video track:

1. Make a selection in a track or tracks. The length of the selection determines the duration of the space inserted.
2. Choose **Edit > Insert Silence**.

Renaming Video Disk Files

When renaming audio clips in either the Timeline or the Clip List, you have the option of also renaming the audio files on disk. However, this does not apply to video files on disk.

To rename video files on disk, you must rename them in a Workspace browser or in Windows Explorer or Mac Finder.

Changes made in the operating system will not automatically update the information displayed in the Workspace browser.

Video Clip Groups

(Pro Tools Ultimate Software Only) You can include video clips within clip groups for the following operations:

- Creating clip groups
- Creating multitrack clip groups (including audio tracks)
- Editing clip groups
- Creating fades and crossfades for audio files in clip groups
- Importing and exporting clip group files

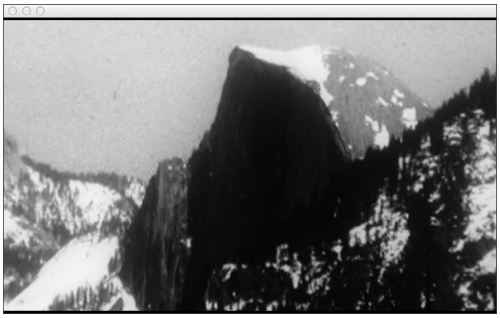
See "Clip Groups" on page 1251 for detailed information on working with clip groups.

Using the Video Window

Pro Tools provides a Video window that lets you view, display, or scrub video.

To display the Video window, do one of the following:

- Select **Window > Video**.
- Press Command+9 (Mac) or Control+9 (Windows).



Resizing the Video Window

You can resize the Video window by dragging or using the Video window pop-up menu.

To resize the Video window by dragging:

- Place the cursor at any corner of the Video window, and drag the window to the size you want.

To resize the Video window by using the Video window pop-up menu:

- Right-click (Windows or Mac) or Control-click (Mac) the Video window, and choose from the following resize options:
  - Quarter Size
  - Half Size
  - Actual Size
  - Double Size
  - Full Screen

Managing Aspect Ratio in the Video Window

The selected Raster Size of the main video track determines the aspect ratio of the Video window. Pro Tools lets you include video media with different aspect ratios on a single video track. When viewing video with mixed aspect ratios, Pro Tools lets you stretch (or squeeze) mismatched aspect ratios to fit or to maintain differing aspect ratios.

To set the Pro Tools Video window preference for managing mixed aspect ratios:

- Right-click in the Video window and select **Stretch** or **Pillarbox/Letterbox**.

Stretch

When the **Stretch** option is selected, the picture scales to match the width and height dimensions of the Video window. If the picture's aspect ratio does not match the Video window's aspect ratio, the image is stretched or squeezed accordingly.

Pillarbox/Letterbox

When the **Pillarbox/Letterbox** option is selected, the picture scales to create the largest possible image without cropping, while maintaining the original aspect ratio of each video clip. When this option is selected and you have video media with mixed aspect ratios on the online video track, or video that does not match the aspect ratio of the video window, there will be visible black borders around video that uses a smaller aspect ratio than the Video window. Additionally, this option can result in a significant increase in CPU usage. If you encounter performance problems, consider using the **Stretch** option.

Quality

The **Full Quality**, **Full Quality 10-bit**, **Draft**, and **Best Performance** options are available from the Right-click menu (see "Video Quality" on page 1935).

Setting the Video Window Color Space

Pro Tools provides several options that determine how the selected session color space is displayed on your desktop monitor. The results vary from monitor to monitor, but in most cases **Rec.709 [full range]** provides the best results (selected by default).

To select a Video Window Color Space option:

- In the Pro Tools Video window, Right-click and choose one of the following options from **Video Window Color Space**: **Follow Video Track**, **Rec.709**, **SRGB**, **DCI P3**, **Rec.709 [full range]**, **Rec.2020**, or **ACESproxy**.

The Follow Video Track option sets the color space for the video window to match the setting on the video track.

When using video hardware, you can use the Video Hardware Control Panel to make adjustments to the external display color if necessary. See "Playing Video to an External Monitor Using a Video Peripheral" on page 1952.

Scrubbing the Video Track

Pro Tools lets you scrub video directly on a video track. When scrubbing on a video track, only the video scrubs (no audio plays). Video scrubbing is displayed in the Video window. If video hardware is connected, you can choose to scrub video with external video monitoring as well as in the Video window.

When scrubbing audio with a video track online, both audio and video scrub synchronously.

To scrub a video track:

1. Select the Scrubber tool.
2. Click in the video track and drag the Scrubber.

To scrub with finer precision, press the Command key while scrubbing.

Shuttling the Video Track

Shuttle Lock mode lets you use the numeric keypad to shuttle a video track and one or two audio tracks forward or backwards at specific speeds. Numbers 0 through 9 provide progressively faster speeds, as follows:

- To stop shuttling, press 0.
- To increase the speed progressively towards normal speed, press numbers 1 through 4.
- To shuttle at normal speed, press 5.
- To increase the speed progressively faster than normal speed, press numbers 6 through 9.

Only the main video track is shuttled. When multiple audio tracks are selected, only the first two tracks are shuttled.

To play the video track with the shuttle lock:

1. With Pro Tools Ultimate, make sure the Operation preference for Numeric Keypad mode is not set to Shuttle (see "Operation Preferences" on page 142).
2. Make sure the Video Online button in the video track you want to scrub is set to an online (blue) status.
3. With the Selector tool, click in the audio track where you want playback to begin. To shuttle on two tracks, Shift-click in a second audio track.
4. Press the Control (Mac) or Start key (Windows) and a number on the numeric keypad: 0–9 (9 is fastest, 5 is normal speed, and 0 stops shuttling). Once Shuttle Lock mode is initiated, Fast Forward and Rewind become highlighted in the Transport window.
5. Press additional keys to change the playback speed, or press Plus (+) or Minus (–) to switch the playback direction (plus for forward, minus for backward).
6. To stop playback, press Control+0 (Mac) or Start+0 (Windows).

To exit Shuttle Lock mode, do one of the following:

- Click Stop in the Transport.
- Press the Spacebar.

Video Window "Always On Top"

The Video window can be set to always be displayed on top of other applications regardless of whether Pro Tools is the focused application or not.

To ensure that the Video window always appears on top of other applications:

- Right-click in the Video window and select the **`Always On Top`**.

If you want to share the Video window over a screen sharing application such as Microsoft Teams or Google Meet, be sure to disable this option.

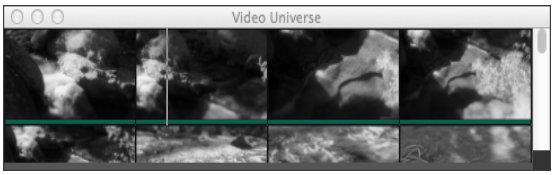
Browsing Video in the Video Universe Window

The Video Universe window lets you view, navigate, zoom, and select video clips on the main video track.

The Video Universe window displays the center video frame of each video clip in the main video track. Video frames are ordered sequentially according to their order in the Timeline, and the colored strip under each frame represents the color coding for that clip.

To display the Video Universe window:

1. Make sure the Video Online button in the main video track is set to online status (blue).
2. Choose **`Window > Video Universe`**.



Video Universe with video frames representing video clips on the main video track

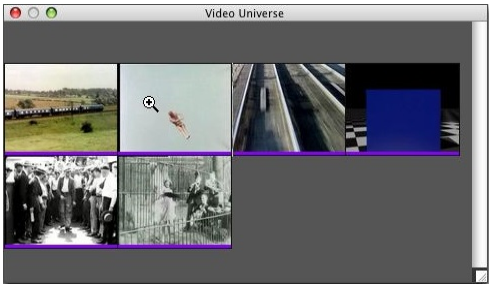
Increasing or Decreasing the Size of Video Frames

To increase or decrease the size of video frames in the Video Universe window:

- Right-click (Windows or Mac) or Control-click (Mac) anywhere in the Universe, and select **Increase** or **Decrease**.

Selecting Zoom Resolutions in the Video Universe

When you move the cursor over the top half of a video frame in the Video Universe, it displays and behaves as a zoom tool. This tool lets you zoom in on one or more video clips to fill the entire Edit window display.



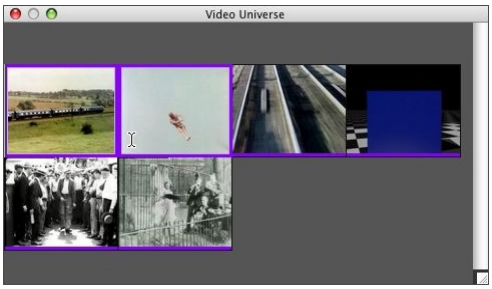
Video frame with zoom tool

To use the Video Universe window to zoom video clips in the Edit window:

1. Move the cursor over the top half of any video frame until it becomes a zoom tool.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To move the beginning of a video clip to the far left of the Timeline while maintaining the current zoom resolution in the Edit window, click the video frame representing the clip once.
   - To zoom in on a video clip so that it fills the entire Edit window, double-click the video frame representing the clip.
   - To zoom a range of selected clips so that they fill the Edit window, drag on the video frames that represent the clips.

Selecting Ranges in the Video Universe

When you move the cursor over the bottom half of a video frame in the Video Universe, it displays and behaves as a selector tool. This tool lets you select ranges within one or more video clips in the Edit window.



Video frame with selector tool

To use the Video Universe window to select ranges in video clips in the Edit window:

1. Move the cursor over the bottom half of any video frame until it becomes a selector tool.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To place the cursor at the beginning of a video clip, click the video frame representing the video clip.
   - To select an entire video clip from start to end, double-click the video frame representing that clip.
   - To select one or more entire clips from start to end, drag the video frames representing the video clips.

If the Edit window does not display the selected video clips, it will automatically scroll to show the beginning of the selection.

Selecting Zoom Resolutions and Ranges Simultaneously in the Video Universe

When you move the cursor over a video frame in the Video Universe while pressing Option (Mac) or Alt (Windows), the cursor appears as a selector tool. This tool lets you zoom and select ranges simultaneously.

To use the Video Universe window to select and zoom simultaneously in the Edit window:

1. Move the cursor over any area of any video frame in the Video Universe window until it becomes a selector or zoom tool.
2. To select a range of video clips while simultaneously zooming to fill the Edit window, Option-drag (Mac) or Alt-drag (Windows) multiple video frames.

Pro Tools Video Preferences

The Video section of the Pro Tools Operation Preferences provides the following options:

Enable GPU

Pro Tools video processing is done on the GPU (Graphics Processing Unit) in order to free up the CPU for Pro Tools audio and MIDI. If you are using a slower GPU and encounter poor video playback, you may want to disable this option and have the video processing done on the CPU.

Prevent Tearing

When enabled, Pro Tools buffers video to prevent visual artifacts with horizontal movement in situations where video sync does not match the screen refresh rate. This options is not available when the **`Enable GPU`** option is disabled.

Play Start Latency

If you are working on a slower computer, set the **`Play Start Latency`** setting to a higher value. The range is from **`1-Shortest`** to **`5-Longest`**.

Tips for Optimizing Video Playback

When using Pro Tools to play video files, the quality of the playback is dependent on the following:

- Quality of the video hardware (graphics card) used to play back the digitized video
- Speed of your computer and hard drive
- Size (in pixels) of the video file
- Codec and level of compression used

For more consistently smooth video playback, here are some suggestions:

- Use a low bandwidth intra-frame codec, such as DNxHD LB or SQ.
- Re-compress the video to a standard video resolution (such as 1920 x 1080. Be sure to use a resolution that is supported by your video codec.
- Select an engine raster and rate setting that matches the frame rate and resolution of the file.
- Use the fastest computer and graphics card possible.
- Use a supported video peripheral and driver. Refer to the Knowledgebase article on Pro Tools Video Peripherals.
- Set Scrolling option to None (**`Options > Scrolling > None`**).
- Hide the video track when not needed (or change from Frames to Blocks view).
- Ensure that any unnecessary software is not running.
- Resize the Video window to actual size.
- If you are having poor performance, or any other any anomalies, try disabling the GPU in the Pro Tools Operation Preferences. In most cases, utilizing the GPU will increase performance, but some configurations will perform better when the video processing is done using the CPU.

Compensating for Video Monitoring Delays

You can compensate for delays in the video output that may be introduced by external decoders and certain types of displays (such as projectors or plasma screens).

To compensate for delays caused by video monitoring devices:

1. Choose **`Setup > Video Sync Offset`**.
2. In the Set Video Sync Offset dialog, enter a value in the QuickTime Video Offset field or Windows Media Video Offset field that is appropriate to compensate for the delay caused by your video monitor chain.



Video Sync Offset dialog

Once this value is set, it should not need to be updated unless you change components in your video monitoring chain (such as projectors or plasma screens).

Playing Video to an External Monitor Using a Video Peripheral

With a qualified video peripheral, Pro Tools can play and display MXF and QuickTime video files with frame edge-locked HD image output to a variety of professional HD monitors.

Video Hardware Settings

For Avid Artist Series video peripherals, and qualified third-party video peripherals, the control panel software for the connected peripheral runs separately from Pro Tools and is typically installed with the driver or supporting software for the peripheral. Use the hardware-specific control panel to configure your video hardware if necessary.

To access the control panel for your video hardware:

- Choose **Setup > Video Hardware Control Panel**.

External Display Color Space

When using video hardware, picture is sent to the video hardware using the selected session color space. Use the Video Hardware Control Panel to make adjustments to the display color for your video hardware if necessary.

Video Reference

Video output can be locked to external video reference, including Black Burst and Tri-Level Sync.

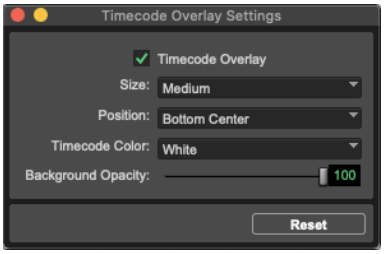
⚠ **Pro Tools Ultimate should be locked to a suitable clock reference, such as a SYNC HD. If no external audio clock is referenced, audio will not be frame-edge aligned and may drift.**

Timecode Overlay

(Pro Tools Ultimate Only) Pro Tools lets you enable a real-time timecode overlay for both the Video window in Pro Tools as well as on any connected video hardware display.

To enable and configure Timecode Overlay:

1. Choose **Setup > Timecode Overlay Settings**.



Timecode Overlay Settings window

2. In the resulting Timecode Overlay Settings window, enable the **Timecode Overlay** option. You can also enable or disable Timecode Overlay by clicking the Timecode Overlay button in the video track controls.
3. Adjust the **Size**, **Position**, **Color**, and **Opacity** settings as desired. Adjust the **X** and **Y** settings to fine-tune the location of the Timecode Overlay.



Pro Tools Video window with Timecode Overlay

To revert to the default settings:

- Click the **Reset** button in the Timecode Overlay Settings window.

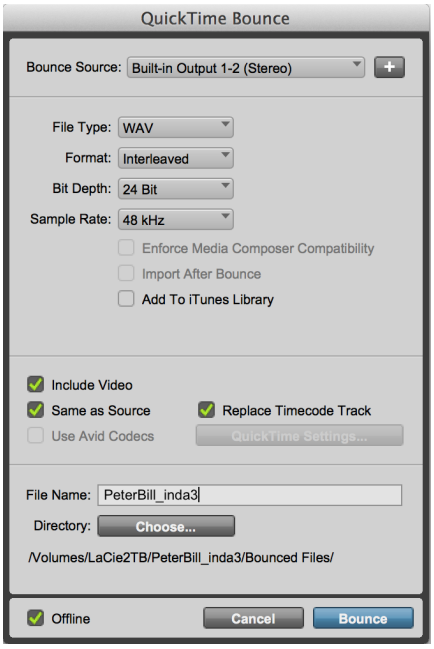
Bouncing the Video Track to a QuickTime Movie

(macOS Mojave and Below, and Windows with QuickTime Installed Only) When you have finished your final mix and synchronized your audio events to the movie, you can bounce the main video track and a mono, stereo, or greater-than-stereo (Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio only) mixdown of your session to a new QuickTime movie. Pro Tools Ultimate and Studio also let you bounce multiple stems to QuickTime.

You can choose from a variety of standard QuickTime codecs, which are fully compatible with other applications that support QuickTime .mov files.

To bounce video and audio in the video track to a QuickTime movie:

1. Finalize your mix (or stems).
2. Make sure the video track you want to bounce is currently the main video track. (The track's Video Online button must be highlighted blue.)
3. Make sure that all of the audio tracks you want to include in the bounce are audible (not muted or inactive).
4. Assign the output of each of the tracks you want to include in your bounce to the same stereo output or bus path.
5. Do one of the following:
   - To bounce the entire session, click Return to Zero in the Transport to go to the beginning of the session.
   - To bounce a portion of the session, enable **`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**, and make a selection in the Edit window or the Timeline.
6. Choose **`File > Bounce to > QuickTime Movie`**. The QuickTime Bounce dialog appears.



QuickTime Bounce dialog

7. Select your main mix output or bus path from the Bounce Source selector. If desired, select additional bounce sources (see "Bouncing Multiple Sources Simultaneously" on page 1648).

   All selected sources in the QuickTime bounce are added as audio tracks to the QuickTime movie file in order from top to bottom.

8. Configure the File Type, Format, Bit Depth, and other Bounce options as desired (see "Bounce Options" on page 1642).
9. Select the **Include Video** option to include the online video track in the bounce.
10. Select **Same as Source**, **Replace Timecode Track**, and **Use Avid Codecs** as appropriate (see "Bounce to QuickTime Settings" below0).
11. If you are bouncing Avid to QuickTime and you want to configure QuickTime video settings, click **QuickTime Settings**.

    Refer to Apple's documentation for detailed information on configuring QuickTime movie settings.

12. Enable the **Offline** option for faster-than-real-time bounce.
13. Click **Bounce**.
14. Select a destination for the new QuickTime movie, enter a new name, and click **Save**.

Bouncing video may can take longer than real-time, depending on the format of the source video, the format of the bounced video, and processing speed.

Bounce to QuickTime Settings

When bouncing to QuickTime, the following additional options are available:

Include Video

Enable this option to include the online video track in the bounced QuickTime file.

Same as Source

Select the **Same As Source** option to bounce to QuickTime using the same video resolution as the online video track. The **Same As Source** option is not always available with some types of LongGOP and LongGOP QuickTime media (such as XDCAM), or when mixing multiple Codecs on a track.

Replace Timecode Track

When the **Same as Source** option is selected, enable the **Replace Timecode Track** option to have the timecode track in the bounced QuickTime file replaced by the selected timecode range in the session. If no timecode track is present in the source video file, the timecode range from the session is added to the bounced QuickTime file.

Note that when **Same as Source** is not enabled, a completely new file is generated and the selected timecode range in the session is used regardless of the **Replace Timecode Track** option.

Use Avid Codecs

The **Use Avid Codecs** option is only available when using codecs that are installed with the Avid LE (available from www.avid.com) or PE Codec packs (included with the Pro Tools installer). Select this option if two similar codecs are present on a system. For example, DV25 is usually included with a standard QuickTime installation, but Avid also offers a DV25 codec that is optimized for use with Avid products (such as Pro Tools and Media Composer).

When bouncing an Avid codec to QuickTime, the Avid codec must be installed to playback the QuickTime file in QuickTime Player on any playback system.

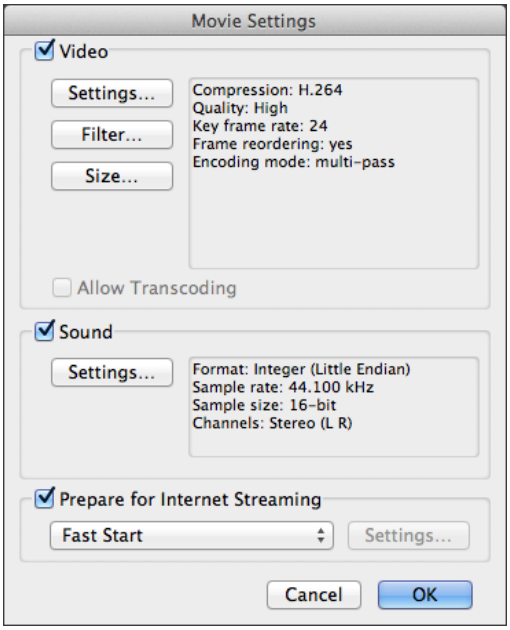
QuickTime Settings

Pro Tools lets you transcode video to QuickTime using the QuickTime Settings options (the encoder plugin for QuickTime must be installed). When bouncing to QuickTime, if the video in the session is not a valid video resolution or codec for QuickTime, you are prompted to use the QuickTime Settings to transcode the

video to a valid QuickTime resolution and codec.

To transcode video to a valid QuickTime resolution:

1. Choose **File > Bounce To > QuickTime**.
2. In the QuickTime Bounce dialog, enable the **Include Video** option.
3. Click **QuickTime Settings**. (If the video you are bouncing is a valid QuickTime resolution and codec, **QuickTime Settings** is grayed out).
4. In the Movie Settings dialog, configure the settings as desired.



Movie Settings dialog

5. Click **OK**.
6. In the QuickTime Bounce dialog, configure the other settings as desired.
7. Click **Bounce**.

When bouncing to QuickTime from Pro Tools, the Sounds settings in the Movie Settings dialog are ignored.

Bounce Mix to MOV

Pro Tools provides an option to bounce to MOV, but only if the session contains video. Bounce to MOV lets you transcode video to new files along with PCM or AAC audio.



Bounce Mix dialog, MOV selected with Video settings shown

To Bounce Mix to MOV:

1. Finalize your mix (or stems).
2. Make sure the video track you want to bounce is currently the main video track. (The track's Video Online button should be highlighted blue.)
3. Make sure that all of the audio tracks you want to include in the bounce are audible (not muted or inactive).
4. Assign the output of each of the tracks you want to include in your bounce to the same output or bus path.
5. Do one of the following:
   - To bounce the entire session, click Return to Zero in the Transport to go to the beginning of the session.
   - To bounce a portion of the session, enable **`Options > Link Timeline and Edit Selection`**, and make a selection in the Edit window or the Timeline.
6. Choose **`File > Export > Bounce Mix`**.
7. Select **`MOV`** as the **`File Type`**. The Video pane appears between the Audio and Location panes in the Bounce Mix dialog.
8. Select the **`Mix Source`** for the audio you want included in the .mov file.
9. Select the **`Compression Type`**: **`PCM`** or **`AAC`** (see "MOV Export with PCM or AAC Audio" on page 1960).
10. Configure the Audio settings as desired (see "Bounce Options" on page 1642).

11. Configure the Video settings as desired (see "Video Settings" below).
12. Configure the **Location** settings as desired.
13. Enable **Offline** if desired.
14. Click **Bounce**.

    Video is bounced at the current engine Frame Rate and Raster Size. For example, if the video track indicates an engine Frame Rate of 29.97, a Raster Size of 1920x1080, and it is set to Progressive, the bounced .mov file will have the same characteristics. Additionally, any bounced .mov file that includes video must be transcoded to a specified codec. However, not all codecs are available at all Frame Rates and Raster Sizes.



For complete information on settings in the Bounce Mix dialog, see "Bounce Mix" on page 1640.

Audio Settings

When **MOV** is selected as the **File Type** for Bounce Mix, the Audio pane provides different options than when bouncing audio only. For more information, see "MOV Export with PCM or AAC Audio" on page 1960.

Video Settings

When **MOV** is selected as the **File Type** for Bounce Mix, the Video pane appears and provides different Video settings depending on the selected Codec.

Include Video

Enable the **Include Video** option to include the video in the bounced .mov file. Disable this option to bounce audio only to .mov. When this option is disabled, all other Video settings are grayed out and unavailable.

Same as Source

Pro Tools supports **Same as Source** (SAS) exports of DNxHD/HR, Apple ProRes, and H.264 files using the Bounce Mix window. **Same as Source** is typically much faster than transcoding and help ensure that the source file attributes are passed through to the resulting exported file. Note that Pro Tools always creates a .MOV file, regardless of the source file type.

Certain criteria must be met in order to allow a **Same as Source** bounce for a file. Other criteria are codec specific.

DNxHD/HR and Apple ProRes:

- MOV and MXF source files are supported.
- Partial files can be included in the timeline selection.
- Multiple source files may be included in the timeline selection, but all clips within the range must be exactly the same codec, compression type, and resolution.
- Blank space (black frames) can exist before, between, and after the selected video clips.

H.264

- MOV and MP4 source files are supported.
- The entire file must be included in the timeline selection, and only one file can be selected at a time.
- Blank space can be included in the selection before or past the end of the clip, but not in the middle.

Transcode

The Transcode option is automatically enabled if Include Video is enabled. The bounced video will be transcoded using the selected **Codec**. Note that not all codecs are available at all Frame Rates and Raster Sizes.

Codec

The following codecs are available for transcoding: DNxHD, DNxHR, Apple ProRes, H.264, and H.265.

Compression

Depending on the selected **Codec**, different Compression options are available.

DNxHD

Provides the following compression options:

- DNxHD LB (lowest bandwidth)
- DNxHD SQ
- DNxHD HQ (highest bandwidth)

DNxHR

Provides the following compression options:

- DNxHR LB (lowest bandwidth)
- DNxHR SQ
- DNxHR HQ (highest bandwidth)

Apple ProRes

Provides the following compression options:

- ProRes Proxy (lowest bandwidth)
- ProRes LT
- ProRes 422
- ProRes HQ (highest bandwidth)

Encoding Mode

The H.264 and H.265 codecs provides two different options for the Encoding Mode: **CBR** and **VBR Single Pass**. Note that Bit Rate values depend on the raster size of the Video Engine. H.265 provides an additional **Encoding Quality** control that lets you balance quality and bit-rate precision with encode speed.

CBR (Constant Bit Rate)

When selected as the **Encoding Mode**, you can set the **Bit Rate** in Mbps. Select this option to ensure a consistent bit rate and predictable rate and file size, or if you are delivering the bounced .mov file for web-based streaming.

VBR (Variable Bit Rate) Single Pass

When selected as the **Encoding Mode**, you can set the **Target Bit Rate** and the **Max Bit Rate**, both in Mbps. Use this option to achieve the optimal bit rate and file size (depending on the content of the video).

VBR typically takes longer than CBR encoding, but it is preferred for most non-web content delivery.

⚠ **H.264 files can contain many different properties, some files may be prevented from export using Same as Source. Constant Frame Rate (CFR) files are supported, but Variable Frame Rate (VFR) files are excluded from Same as Source bounces.**

Include Timecode Overlay

Enable the **`Include Timecode Overlay`** option to burn in timecode to the bounced .mov file. When enabled, this option uses the Timecode Overlay Settings as configured for the session (**`Setup > Timecode Overlay Settings`**).

Color Space and Bounce Mix

When exporting video using Bounce Mix, transcoding to a new file uses the selected color space of the video track. When enabled, the **`Same as Source`** option only exports files using the **`YCbCr 709`** color space.

⚠ **If a color space is not supported for export, you are notified and YCbCr 709 is used instead.**

MOV Export with PCM or AAC Audio

Pro Tools can export either PCM (uncompressed) or AAC (compressed) audio when bouncing to MOV.

When bouncing AAC audio, you can select either a constant bit rate (CBR) or variable bit rate (VBR) encoding modes for mono, stereo, 5.1, or 7.1 mix sources:

- CBR lets you select a specific bit rate for the file being exported. The available bit rates change depending on the sample rate of the export, and the audio mix source stem width. Use CBR for the most predicable file size and sound quality.
- VBR does not offer a bit rate setting. Instead, it lets you choose a quality setting. The higher the quality, the longer the export time and the larger the file size will be. Use VBR for the best quality-to-size ratio.

AAC export supports 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, and 96 kHz sample rates, and a single stem of audio.

PCM audio supports all sample rates, bit depths, and channel widths.

MOV Timecode Track Support

The timecode track in an MOV file is used to display the location information in QuickTime Player. It can also be used as location information in other applications. Pro Tools recognizes the first frame of the timecode track as the “Original Timestamp” of the file. This means that MOV timestamp information can be displayed in Workspace browsers, in Clip Info, and most importantly, in the Spot window.

Bouncing video using the **`Same as Source`** option in the Bounce Mix dialog lets you choose whether you pass through the timecode track from the original MOV file or replace the timecode track with the location of the video on the Pro Tools timeline. To pass through the original timecode track, disable the Replace Timecode Track option. Note that transcoding a new MOV file always replaces the timecode track.

Part XII: Satellite Systems

Learn how to aggregate multiple audio and video systems using Satellite features.

- "Satellite Link" on page 1962
- "Pro Tools Video Satellite" on page 1972
- "Media Composer Video Satellite" on page 1976

70 Satellite Link

Avid Satellite Link lets you link multiple systems over an Ethernet network so that you can cue, play, and stop the transports, make play selections, and solo tracks across any of the systems from any linked workstation. Each satellite network consists of one satellite administrator and between 1 and 11 satellite members, for up to a total of 12 systems depending on your configuration. Each satellite can have different functionality depending on the software, software license, and attached hardware. These functionality differences are referred to by roles, designed to serve specific workflow needs.

Satellite Administrator:

- Requires a Pro Tools Ultimate software license:
- Responsible for claiming the satellite members in the satellite network.
- There can be only one administrator per satellite network.
- Can issue and receive transport commands.
- Can send and receive solo information.
- Can claim one additional Video Satellite when HD hardware is not connected. Since a synchronization peripheral cannot be used, synchronization will be near frame accurate.
- Can claim up to 11 additional Satellites when HD hardware is in use. A synchronization peripheral is required for near sample accurate playback.

Pro Tools Satellite

- Designed to be an extension of the Satellite Administrator for audio playback and recording.
- Can issue and receive transport commands.
- Can send and receive solo information.
- Requires Pro Tools Ultimate software, Pro Tools | HD hardware, and a synchronization peripheral for near sample accurate playback.

Pro Tools Video Satellite

- Designed to offload video playback to a different system.
- Can receive transport commands but cannot issue them.
- Pro Tools Ultimate may also be used as a Video Satellite. It is possible to add HD hardware and a synchronization peripheral for better playback accuracy.
- A single Pro Tools Studio system may be added to the satellite network.

This system may only receive transport commands. It cannot send transport commands, and it cannot send or receive solo information.

Media Composer Video Satellite

- Designed to offload video playback to a different system.
- Allows direct access to a Media Composer sequence, without the need to export a flattened file.
- Can issue transport commands only when connected to a single Pro Tools system, otherwise transport commands can only be received.

For more information, see "Pro Tools Video Satellite" on page 1972 and "Media Composer Video Satellite" on page 1976.

From each linked Pro Tools system, Satellite Link lets you link and unlink networked systems and see the link status of other connected systems.

By setting Satellite Link preferences, you can configure linked Pro Tools systems for single- or multi-operator workflows.

Satellite Link can be used simultaneously with MachineControl, allowing one linked Pro Tools system to go online and drive a 9-pin capable device.

On systems with a D-Control or D-Command console, Satellite Link can work in conjunction with ICON Multi-mode. This lets you operate the transport selectively for up to four networked Pro Tools systems from a single D-Control console, or up to two Pro Tools systems from a D-Command.

A selection of Satellite Link controls have been EUCONized. For more information on controlling Satellite Link functions from EUCON devices, see the *Pro Tools EUCON Guide*.

Satellite Link Requirements and Compatibility

Satellite System Requirements

The following is required for each Pro Tools system on the network:

- Avid-qualified computer
- Pro Tools | Ultimate Software
- Configurations with more than 1 satellites require the following for each system:
- HDX or HD Native hardware
- Pro Tools | Sync X or SYNC HD
- Ethernet connection to a Local Area Network (LAN)

All Pro Tools systems in a Satellite Link network must be resolved to a common video reference, or "house sync," using SYNC HD.

Configuring Satellite Link

To set up multiple Pro Tools systems in a Satellite Link network, configure basic network settings and the Satellite Link network on each Pro Tools system.

Configuring Network Settings

Satellite Link systems communicate over Ethernet Local Area Networks. You can configure the network settings on each Pro Tools system to build one or more Satellite Link networks on the same LAN.

Satellite Link requires all linked systems to be connected to an Ethernet Local Area Network. All systems should be on the same subnet. If possible, they should also be on the same Ethernet switch, to minimize response time over the network.

Ethernet Interface

On computers with multiple Ethernet interfaces, you can select the interface you want to use for Satellite Link communications.

To select the Ethernet interface for Satellite Link:

1. Choose **Setup > Peripherals** and click **Satellites**.
2. Under **Advanced Network Settings**, choose the Ethernet interface from the **Interface** pop-up menu.

3. Click **OK**.

TCP/UDP Port

Systems in a Satellite Link network need to use the same TCP/UDP port to communicate. Available satellite systems will only appear on other satellite systems using the same port.

By default, Satellite Link uses TCP/UDP port 28282. However, if the default port is already in use, or if you want to set up separate Satellite Link networks, you can select a different TCP/UDP port for Satellite Link communication.

To select the TCP/UDP port for Satellite Link communication:

1. Choose **Setup > Peripherals** and click **Satellites**.
2. Under **Advanced Network Settings**, enter the TCP/UDP port number you want the system to use.

   For Satellite Link to function properly, you must select a TCP/UDP port number between 1024 and 65534.

3. Click **OK**.

Configuring a Satellite Link Network

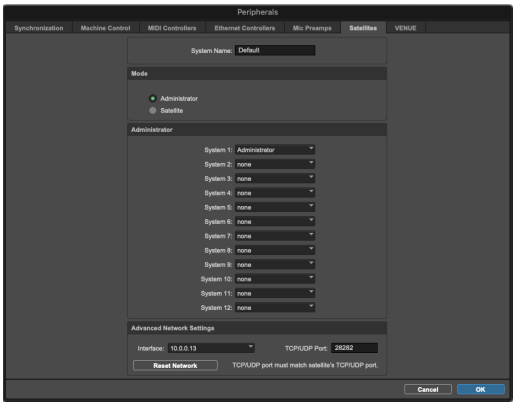
To set up Pro Tools systems for Satellite Link operation, one Pro Tools system on the network must be designated an *administrator* system.

Other systems on the network are configured as *satellite* systems, and are added to the network from the administrator system.

Configuring Satellite Systems

Do the following for each Pro Tools system you want to configure as a Satellite Link satellite:

1. Choose **Setup** › **Peripherals** and click **Satellites**.
2. In the **System Name** text box, enter a name for the system.
3. Under **Mode**, choose **Satellite**.
4. Click **OK**.



Configuring a satellite in the Satellites page of the Peripherals dialog

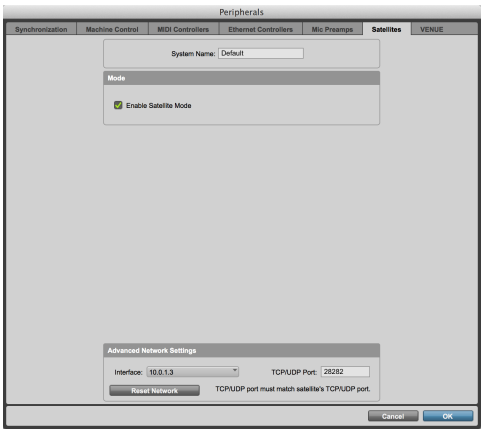
To configure a Media Composer system as a video satellite:

1. In Media Composer, choose **Edit > Preferences**.
2. In the Project window, click the **Settings** Tab and double-click **Video Satellite**.
3. In the Video Satellite Settings window, select **Video Satellite Mode**.

4. Click **OK**.

To configure a non-HD Pro Tools System as a video satellite:

1. On the satellite Pro Tools system, choose **Setup** > **Peripherals** and click **Satellites**.
2. In the **System Name** text box, enter a name for the system.
3. Under **Mode**, choose **Enable Satellite Mode**.
4. Click **OK**.



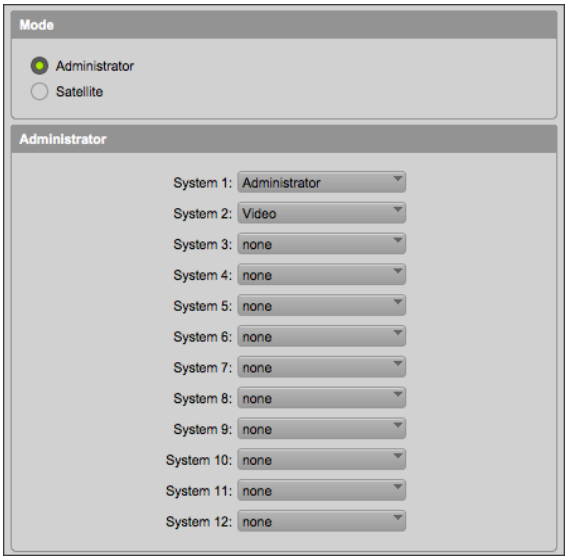
Configuring a Pro Tools Video Satellite system in the Satellites page of the Peripherals dialog

Configuring an Administrator System

Pro Tools Ultimate with HD hardware can administer up to 11 satellite systems, whereas without HD hardware it can only administer 1 satellite system (typically for used for monitoring video).

To configure a Pro Tools system as a Satellite Link administrator:

1. Choose **Setup** > **Peripherals** and click **Satellites**.
2. In the **System Name** text box, enter a name for the system.
3. Under **Mode**, choose **Administrator**.
4. Under **Administrator**, choose the current system from the **System 1** pop-up menu.
5. Click **OK**.



Configuring the Administrator system in the Satellites page of the Peripherals dialog

Adding Satellites to the Network

When systems have been configured as satellites, they become available on the administrator system. The satellite systems are then *declared* from the Administrator system to build the Satellite Link network.

To declare satellite systems:

1. On the administrator system, choose **Setup** > **Peripherals** and click **Satellites**.
2. Under **Administrator**, declare the systems you want to use as satellites from the System 2-12 pop-up menus.
3. Click **OK**.

   The administrator and declared satellite systems appear in the Synchronization section of the Transport. The display re-sizes to show all available systems.



Declared satellites in the Synchronization section of the Transport window

Linking Satellite Systems

When a Pro Tools system has been declared as a satellite, it can then be placed in a linked state from the local machine or from another satellite. When a system is linked, the following features and commands can be controlled across all linked systems:

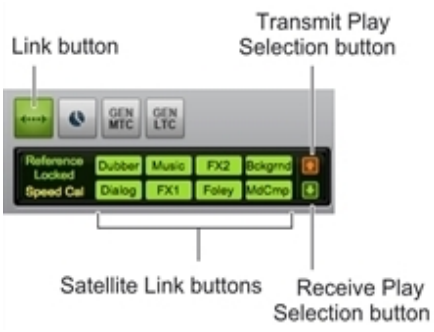
- Linking and unlinking of the system
- Transport controls (Stop, Play, FF, RW)
- Play selections
- Scrub/Shuttle location
- Channel solo (including Solo clear)
- Clearing system errors (such as AAE errors)

Satellite Link Controls

When a Pro Tools system has been declared as a satellite, Satellite Link controls can be shown in the Transport.

To display Satellite Link controls in the Transport window:

- Choose **View > Transport > Synchronization** and **View > Transport > Expanded**.



Satellite Link controls in the Transport window

Link Button

The Link button controls the link status of the local system. When linked, the button is highlighted.

Satellite Link Buttons

Satellite Link buttons control the link status of the other satellite systems on the network. On every other system, one of these buttons corresponds to that system's main Link button.

Link buttons highlight to indicate linked status of the remote system. A Satellite Link button highlights red if that system stops playback due to an error or the opening of a modal dialog.

Transmit and Receive Play Selections Buttons

The Transmit Play Selections and Receive Play Selections buttons in the Transport mirror the **Transmit Play Selections** and **Receive Play Selections** options in the Satellites section of the Synchronization preferences (**Setup > Preferences > Synchronization**). The button highlights when the option is enabled.

Transmit Play Selections

When enabled, causes a linked Pro Tools system to send the Edit window selection to all other linked Pro Tools systems. On other linked systems that are set to receive play selections, the selection is mirrored in the Edit window.

Receive Play Selections

When enabled, causes a linked Pro Tools system to receive Edit window selections from all other linked Pro Tools systems that are set to transmit play selections.

Linking Systems During Playback

You can link or unlink a system while it or any other linked system is playing back ("join in play"), and the transports will play in sync. In cases where both systems are playing back, the newly linked system will cue to the location of the system on which the link was initiated.

Linking Pro Tools Systems in a Satellite Network

To link (or unlink) the local Pro Tools system:

- Click the Link button in the Transport so that is highlighted (or unhighlighted).

  Press Option+Shift+L (Mac) or Alt+Shift+L (Windows) to link or unlink the local system.

To link (or unlink) remote satellite systems:

- Click the corresponding Satellite Link button for the remote system in the Transport so that it is highlighted (or unhighlighted).

To link (or unlink) all declared satellite systems:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Link button or a Satellite Link button in the Transport so that they are all highlighted (or unhighlighted).

Linking Play Selections

You can set linked Pro Tools systems to transmit and receive play selections from other satellite systems. This lets you configure your setup to selectively mirror Edit window selections between systems, or to have all systems mirror Edit window selections on all other systems.

- If you are working in a multi-user dub stage environment where dialog, FX, and music reside on different systems, it can be useful to set those systems to only transmit play selections, and set the recorder/video Pro Tools system to only receive play selections.
- If you are working in a single-user mix environment and are moving between systems, it can be useful to set all systems to transmit and receive play selections, so that you can work with the same selection on any system.

To set satellite Pro Tools systems to mirror play selections on other satellite systems, do the following:

1. On the systems where you will be making play selections, do one of the following:
   - Click the Transmit Play Selections button in the Transport so that it is highlighted.
   - Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Synchronization**. Then, in the **Satellites** section of the Synchronization page, select the **Transmit Play Selections** option. Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.
2. On the systems that you want to mirror the play selections, do one of the following:
   - Click the Receive Play Selections button in the Transport so that it is highlighted.
   - Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Synchronization**. Then, in the **Satellites** section of the Synchronization page, select the **Receive Play Selections** option. Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.

Solo Linking

You can set linked Pro Tools systems to transmit the solo status of their tracks and receive solo status information from other satellite systems.

- If you are working in a multi-user dub stage environment where dialog, FX, and music reside on different systems, it can be useful to set those systems to send and receive solos, and set the recorder/video Pro Tools system so that it does not transmit or receive solos.
- If you are working in a single-user mix environment and are moving between systems, it might be useful to set all systems to transmit and receive solos, so that solos propagate across all systems.

Solo Safe

When Solo Linking is enabled, tracks on all systems retain their Solo Safe status.

Solo Clear

When Solo Linking is enabled, all solos are cleared on systems set to receive solos.

To set satellite systems to transmit or receive solo status:

1. On the systems that you want to solo tracks, do the following:
   - Choose Setup › Preferences and click **Synchronization**.
   - In the **Satellites** section of the Synchronization page, select the **Transmit Solos** option.
2. On the systems where you want tracks to follow solo behavior for solos on other systems, do the following:
   - Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Synchronization**.
   - In the **Satellites** section of the Synchronization page, select the **Receive Solos** option.
   - Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.
3. Make sure the systems are linked.

Using Solo Link without Linking Transport Controls

If you are synchronizing multiple Pro Tools systems to an external synchronizer, you can still take advantage of the Solo Link feature.

You can set a satellite Pro Tools system to always send its solo status, whether linked or unlinked, so you can solo tracks across systems without linking transport controls.

To set a satellite Pro Tools system to always solo even when it is not linked:

1. Choose **Setup > Preferences** and click **Synchronization**.
2. In the **Satellites** section of the Synchronization page, select the **Solo Independent of Linked State** option.
3. Click **OK** to close the Preferences window.

Solo Link Behavior in the Solo Modes

Solo in Place

With Solo Link, when using Solo In Place, the mode of solo operation is determined by the system transmitting the solo.

- If a linked system is in Solo Latch mode, soloing a track on that system adds to the number of tracks in solo, regardless of the solo mode of other systems set to receive solos.
- If a linked system is in Solo X-OR mode, soloing a track on that system cancels all other system's solos regardless of the solo mode of other systems set to receive solos.

AFL and PFL Modes

With Solo Link, AFL and PFL solos on a linked system have no effect on other systems.

An AFL-soloed track on a linked system can be muted by a Solo In Place on another system. To avoid this, use PFL instead of AFL.

Satellite Link Errors

Clearing Errors on Linked Systems

By default, linked systems continue to operate if one of the systems experiences an error and its transport stops. The Satellite Link button for the remote system reporting the error highlights red on all other systems in the network. Any error message on a linked system appears in the tool tip for the corresponding Satellite Link button in the Transport.

You can set each system independently to stop playback when it encounters an error.

To clear an error dialog on a remote linked system:

- In the Transport on any other system in the network, Shift-click the Satellite Link button for the affected system.

To set a linked system to stop the transport on all systems when an error occurs:

- Make sure the **AAE Errors Stop All Linked Systems** option is selected in the Synchronization Preferences.

To set all systems to stop the transport when an error occurs, make sure this option is selected on all linked systems.

Playback and Modal Dialogs

Linked systems stop playback (or prevent playback from starting) if a modal dialog (such as the I/O Setup, Hardware Setup, or Playback Engine dialog) is opened on any linked system.

To avoid interrupting playback on another system when opening a modal dialog, unlink the system before opening the dialog.

Resetting All Satellites on the Network

If one or more satellite systems on the network encounters a problem and the network becomes unstable, Pro Tools lets you reset all Satellites on the network to get back up and running as quickly as possible.

To reset all satellite systems on a network, do one of the following:

- Command-Option-Control-Click (Mac) or Control-Alt-Start-Click (Windows) the Satellite Link button in the Transport of any Pro Tools Satellite system on the network.
- In the Satellite page of the Peripherals window (**`Setup > Peripherals > Satellite`**), click the **`Reset Network`** button, and then click **`OK`**.

Using Satellite Link with MachineControl

MachineControl Deck Control Mode can be used to operate a 9-pin synchronization device (such as a Soundmaster ATOM or a CB Electronics 9-Pin synchronizer), allowing Pro Tools to act as a "code only master" for systems controlled by the synchronizer.

Satellite Link lets you use MachineControl on one linked Pro Tools system at a time.

- When one linked Pro Tools system is already online and you go online with another linked Pro Tools system, Satellite Link will automatically take the first system offliine.
- Any linked Pro Tools systems set to "Transport=Pro Tools" will follow Satellite Link transport commands.
- Any linked Pro Tools systems set to "Transport=Machine" cannot transmit Satellite Link transport commands, but will follow Satellite Link transport commands if they are offline.

Control Surface Support for Satellite Link

Linking Satellite Systems

EUCON Control Surfaces

Use the Soft Keys to link and unlink Satellites. For more information, see the guide for your EUCON controller(s).

(D-Control, D-Command, and C|24)

To link or unlink the local Pro Tools system:

- Hold Command (Mac) or Control (Windows) and press the Machine Online switch in the Transport section.

Satellite Link Soft Keys

(D-Control and D-Command)

To link or unlink other satellite systems:

1. Hold Control (Mac) or Alt (Windows) and press the Modes switch in the Automation Soft Keys section.
2. Press the Soft Key that corresponds to the name of the system that you want to link or unlink.

The Soft Key lights solid to indicate that the corresponding system is linked, and flashes to indicate that the corresponding system is displaying an error.

To link or unlink all declared satellite systems:

- Hold Option+Command (Mac) or Alt+Control (Windows) and press the Online switch in the Transport section.

To toggle the solo transmit status of the local Pro Tools system:

1. Hold Control (Mac) or Alt (Windows) and press the Modes switch in the Automation Soft Keys section.
2. Press the Soft Key that corresponds to “Transmit Solo.”

The Soft Key lights solid to indicate that transmit solo is enabled.

71 Pro Tools Video Satellite

Pro Tools Video Satellite is a powerful post-production option that uses a separate computer running Pro Tools Software for synchronized video playback.

By off-loading video playback duties to a separate computer, Pro Tools Video Satellite contributes to the best possible performance on the administrator Pro Tools system.

Pro Tools Video Satellite uses a single Pro Tools Studio system for video playback in a Satellite configuration. Pro Tools Video Satellite requires Pro Tools Studio software (not Pro Tools Ultimate software) and can use any Avid-supported non-HD audio interface (such as Pro Tools | Carbon or Dolby Audio Bridge using Core Audio). A Pro Tools Video Satellite cannot use a video reference, so it will not be as accurate as an Media Composer Video Satellite.

Pro Tools Video Satellite System Requirements

- Avid-qualified computer
- Pro Tools Studio software
- Supported video peripheral (optional)
- Client monitor (optional)
- Black burst or tri-level video reference generator, if using a video peripheral
- Ethernet connection to a Local Area Network (LAN)

Video Output Options

Pro Tools Video Satellite lets you output video through your desktop display, an Avid video peripheral, or a 3rd party video peripheral. Display through options through a video peripheral will be dependent on its capabilities.

For a list of the latest supported Avid peripherals and drivers, visit Pro Tools Video Peripherals.

Connecting a Pro Tools Video Satellite System

To connect the Pro Tools Video Satellite system to the administrator Pro Tools system, that system must be designated an *administrator* system.

The Pro Tools Video Satellite system is set up as a *satellite* system, and then is declared from the administrator system.

For complete instructions on configuring a Satellite Link network including a Pro Tools Video Satellite system, see "Configuring Satellite Link" on page 1963).

Configuring the Main Pro Tools System as an Administrator

To configure the main Pro Tools system as an administrator:

- See "Configuring an Administrator System" on page 1965.

Configuring the Pro Tools Video Satellite System

To set up the Pro Tools Video Satellite system:

- See "Configuring Satellite Systems" on page 1964.

Declaring the Pro Tools Video Satellite System

When the Pro Tools Video Satellite system has been configured as a satellite, it becomes available on the administrator system. The satellite system is then declared by the Administrator.

To declare the satellite system on the administrator system:

- See "Adding Satellites to the Network" on page 1966.

  The systems appear, in order, from left to right, in the Synchronization section of the Transport window.

Only one Pro Tools Video Satellite system can be connected to a Satellite Link network.

Linking the Pro Tools Video Satellite System

After a Pro Tools system has been connected as a video satellite, it can then be placed in a linked state. When this system is linked, it follows the transport commands from the administrator system, and runs in sync with it. When the satellite system is unlinked, its transport acts like a normal Pro Tools system.

The administrator Pro Tools system does not respond to playback commands from the Pro Tools Video Satellite system. Transport commands must originate from the main Pro Tools system.

Link Controls

When a Pro Tools system has been declared as a satellite, the following controls appear in the Transport window:

Link Button

Controls the link status of the local system.

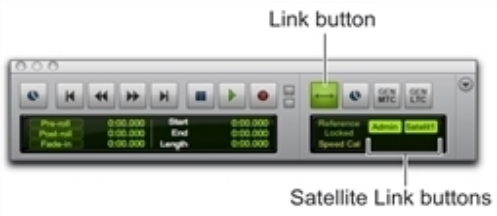
Satellite Link Buttons

control the link status of the other satellite systems. On every system, one of these buttons corresponds to that system's main Link button.

Link buttons highlight to indicate linked status.

To display link controls in the Transport:

- Choose **View** > **Transport** > **Synchronization** and **View** > **Transport** > **Expanded**.



Link controls in the Transport window

To link or unlink the local Pro Tools Video Satellite system:

- Click the Link button in the Transport.

  Press Option+Shift+L (Mac) or Alt+Shift+L (Windows) to link or unlink the video satellite.

To link or unlink the administrator Pro Tools system or other satellite systems:

- Click the corresponding Satellite Link button in the Transport window.

To link or unlink all declared satellite systems:

- Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (Windows) the Link button or one of the Satellite Link buttons in the Transport window.

Linking Systems During Playback

You can link the Pro Tools Video Satellite system while the administrator Pro Tools HD system is playing back, and the transports will synchronize.

Pro Tools Video Satellite Operation

AAE Errors

By default, the two linked systems will continue to operate if one of the systems experiences an error and its transport stops.

The administrator system can be configured to stop playback if an AAE error occurs on the Pro Tools Video Satellite system, or any other Satellite Link satellite.

To clear an error dialog on the Pro Tools Video Satellite system from the main Pro Tools system:

- In the Transport window on the other linked system, Shift-click the Satellite Link button for the affected system.

  If the administrator system is configured to Transmit Play Selections, those selections will be transmitted to the Video Satellite system. However, selections made on the Video Satellite system will not be transmitted to the administrator system.

To set the Pro Tools Video Satellite system to stop the transport on both systems when an error occurs:

- On the administrator Pro Tools system, make sure the **`AAE Errors Stop All Linked Systems`** option is selected in the Synchronization Preferences page.

  If one of the systems encounters an AAE error, its satellite link button will light up red in the transport window on the other system. Hold the mouse pointer over the button to view the error, if necessary.

Modal Dialogs

Linked systems will stop playback if a modal dialog box (such as the I/O Setup, Hardware Setup, or Playback Engine dialog) is opened on any linked system. The corresponding Satellite Link button for that system highlights red on all other systems.

A system cannot play back when a modal dialog box is open.

Spotting Video to the Pro Tools Timeline

Once a session is created (or an existing session opened) on the satellite Pro Tools system, and the video has been imported, the video must be set to the correct start time so that it runs in sync with the audio on the main Pro Tools system. Video can be spotted to the desired start time by matching timecode or feet+frames values.

Compensating for Different Start Times in Pro Tools and a Pro Tools Video Satellite

In some cases, you may want the Pro Tools Video Satellite system to be offset from the administrator system to accommodate for external deck offsets or differences in session start time.

You can control the amount of offset by changing the Timecode Offset parameters on the Pro Tools Video Satellite system.

To compensate for different start times:

1. In Pro Tools, go to **`Setup > Session`**. The Session Setup window appears.
2. In the Timecode Offsets section, compensate for the offset between Pro Tools and a Pro Tools Video Satellite as follows:
   - If the start time of the video clip in video satellite falls *before* the start time of the administrator Pro Tools session, type a positive timecode value into the Satellite Offset field.
   - If the start time of the video clip in video satellite falls *after* the start time of the administrator Pro Tools session, type a negative timecode value into the Satellite Offset field.

Compensating for Monitor-Induced Output Delay

Many monitors add a delay to the video output of one or more frames. You can compensate for this delay by advancing the video output by the necessary number of frames.

To set the number of frames to offset video output:

1. On the video satellite system, cchoose **`Setup > Video Sync Offset`**.
2. In the Video Sync Offset field, type a positive value that matches the amount of delay in the monitors. You may need to try a few different settings.

72 Media Composer Video Satellite

Media Composer Video Satellite is a powerful post-production option for Pro Tools, employing a separate computer running Avid Media Composer software for synchronized video playback, capture, and conversion.

Media Composer Video Satellite can use either a single Media Composer system in a Satellite configuration. Media Composer Video Satellite can play full sequences and does not require a video mixdown. Media Composer Video Satellite requires a Pro Tools Ultimate administrator in the Satellite configuration.

Media Composer software with the Video Satellite option can output and capture video with any support Avid or third-party video peripheral.

Media Composer Video Satellite Requirements

Media Composer Video Satellite requires the following system components:

- Avid-qualified computer
- Pro Tools Ultimate Software
- HDX or HD Native hardware with a SYNC HD (optional, but recommended for most accurate sync)
- A second Avid-qualified computer for Media Composer
- Avid video peripheral (optional, but required for high-quality video output and best synchronization)

Video Peripherals

For high-quality frame edge-aligned video playback, you must add the I/O capabilities of an Avid or third-party video peripheral.

Both Pro Tools and Media Composer should be resolved to a common clock source for accurate playback synchronization. This can be achieved by applying video reference to the video peripheral that is compatible with the Media Composer project settings. The same video reference should be applied to the SYNC HD.

In more complex clocking scenarios, it is possible to apply both video reference and Word Clock or AES to the SYNC HD, as long as it is derived from the same Clock Source.

It is possible for both systems to play together without a common clock source, but the start of play will not be as accurate, and playback may drift over long playback passes.

When using an Avid video peripheral that supports a video reference input, one of the following is also required:

- An NTSC/PAL black burst generator
- A tri-level sync generator

Video Output Options

Media Composer Video Satellite lets you output video through a full screen desktop display, an Avid video peripheral, or a third-party video peripheral. Display through options through a video peripheral are dependent on its capabilities.

Full-Screen Playback Using Output to a Computer Monitor

With a supported video card installed, Media Composer Video Satellite provides full-screen playback of SD or HD video on your primary or secondary computer monitor.

Video Frame Rate and Monitor Refresh Rate

When you play back video on a monitor with a refresh rate that differs from the video frame rate (as is often the case during playback of video through a computer monitor), the output yields visual artifacts and offsets in synchronization between audio and video. For example, this occurs during playback of a 24 fps video clip on a monitor with a refresh rate of 75 Hz.

If your workflow requires high-quality playback, you must output video through an Avid video peripheral to a video monitor.

The artifact and audio/video sync issues occur as follows:

Frame "Tearing" & Video "Stutter"

Frame "tearing" is the horizontal distortion on rapidly moving or heavily edited sequences. Video "stutter" is the subtle shifting of video during playback.

You can remedy one of these issues at a time (but not simultaneously) using the Flip On Vertical Sync option, located in the Full Screen Playback Settings dialog.

Audio/Video Synchronization Offset

Audio/ video synchronization varies slightly with each frame. Though usually not noticeable to the eye, more precise measuring devices cause offsets in AV sync of up to 1/2 frame or more. This is normal whenever using the output of a computer's monitor card, and does not affect capture, editing, or layback.

Supported Video Resolutions

Media Composer Video Satellite supports the import, capture, and playback of a wide range of video resolutions and frame rates.

For detailed information on supported resolutions and frame rates, see Avid Media Composer online help or visit the Avid website (www.avid.com).

To launch online help in Media Composer:

- Choose **`Help > Online Help`**.

Media Composer Video Satellite Workflows

The following sections describe workflows for using Pro Tools with Media Composer configured as an Media Composer Video Satellite:

- Connecting Pro Tools to a satellite
- Linking Pro Tools to a satellite
- Capturing audio and video
- Batch capturing audio and video
- Laying back audio and video

Using a Video Satellite in a MediaCentral | Production Management Environment

Using a Video Satellite system in a MediaCentral | Production Management environment is useful for networked file management. For additional information on Pro Tools support with MediaCentral | Production Management, see the *Pro Tools Production Management Guide*.

Connecting Pro Tools and a Video Satellite

In order for Pro Tools and the video satellite to synchronize their transports, they must be *linked*. Before linking can occur, however, you must establish basic communication channels between them. When the Pro Tools and the video satellite systems have established this communication, they are *connected*.

To connect the Pro Tools and video satellite systems, they must first be connected using Ethernet.

In addition, the Video Satellite option must be enabled on the Media Composer system, and the systems must be connected.

⚠ **Running other applications simultaneously with Media Composer can cause unpredictable behavior, including AV sync problems, frame dropping and audio stuttering. It is suggested that you not launch other applications when Media Composer is running. This can occur with or without the use of Satellite mode.**

Conditions for Connecting Pro Tools and a Video Satellite

The following conditions apply to connections between Pro Tools and video satellites:

- Quitting a Pro Tools application that is acting as administrator to a video satellite releases the video satellite so that it can be linked to other Pro Tools systems.
- If you quit Pro Tools while a satellite is connected, Pro Tools attempts to re-connect to the same satellite on relaunch.
- When linked to a Video Satellite, Pro Tools does not chase MIDI Timecode (MTC).

Troubleshooting the Satellite Connection

If the satellite does not appear in the Administrator pop-up menu, verify the following:

1. Ensure that Media Composer is fully launched.
2. In Media Composer, go to the Project window and choose **`Settings > Video Satellite`**. Ensure that Video Satellite Mode is enabled.
3. In the Satellite page of the Pro Tools Peripherals dialog, select a different Ethernet port from the Interface menu. Many computers have more than one Ethernet port or “interface”. The interface selected here must be the one connected to the same network as the satellite.
4. In the Project window in Media Composer, click the **`Settings`** tab, then double-click **`Video Satellite Settings`** and check that the TCP/UDP Port is the same as the TCP/UDP Port shown in the Satellite pane in the Pro Tools Peripherals dialog. (Both ports default to 28282.)

   ⚠ **For Video Satellite to operate properly, the TCP/UDP port you set must be between 1024 and 65534.**
5. If the TCP/UDP port settings are the same, verify with your network administrator that the port shown is not being blocked on the network.
6. Check that all Ethernet cables are completely plugged in and working. In most cases, there are LEDs that show activity at the Ethernet ports.
7. Video satellite playback will not function in the following conditions:
   - Certain dialogs are open in either Pro Tools or Media Composer.
   - Media Composer is not the active application.

- Pro Tools does not have an open session, or Media Composer does not have an open sequence.
- If you experiencing any irregularities, choose **Setup > Peripherals > Satellites** in Pro Tools on the Satellite Administrator and click **Reset Network**.

Matching Media Composer and Pro Tools Settings in a Video Satellite System

In order to accurately synchronize playback between Pro Tools and Media Composer, the following parameters must be correctly matched:

- Media Composer Project Type and Pro Tools Timecode Rate, Clock Reference, and Video Format
- Pro Tools Audio Pull-Up setting and Media Composer Edit Play Rate
- Timecode Format (Drop Frame or Non-Drop Frame)

For Pro Tools to play in sync with Media Composer as a video satellite, all of these settings are interdependent. A mismatch in any of these settings will cause Pro Tools to display an error message.

Media Composer Starting TC timecode setting and the Pro Tools session start do not have to match exactly, but should usually be close.

When working with 24p and 23.976 projects, Media Composer defaults to displaying frames mapped to 29.97 fps timecode. In order to keep the Pro Tools and Media Composer timecode displays in sync when working in 24p or 23.976 projects, click the timecode display above the Record monitor and choose **Sequence > Timecode > 24 > Mas**.

To avoid sync problems during later stages of post production, it is strongly recommended in most cases to change the settings in Pro Tools to match those of the sequence open in Media Composer.

Matching Media Composer Project Type to Pro Tools Timecode Rate, Clock Reference, and Video Ref Format

This section explains how to match the Media Composer Project Type to the Pro Tools Timecode Rate, Clock Reference, and Video Format.

To ensure that your video satellite system will play back or capture using the proper settings:

1. In Media Composer, click the **Format** tab in the Project window.
2. Select the desired setting from the Project Type pop-up menu.

   In most cases, changing the Media Composer project type is not advisable. You should change the Pro Tools Timecode Rate unless you are creating an SD down-convert from an HD project. See the Pro Tools Reference Guide.

   The Project Type is also established when creating a new project in Media Composer.
3. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Session**.
4. Select a timecode setting from the Timecode Rate pop-up menu that is compatible to the Media Composer Project Type setting.
5. Make sure that a compatible clock source is available and connected correctly.
6. Select the connected clock reference from the Clock Reference pop-up menu.
7. Select a compatible video format from the Video Ref Format pop-up menu.

   Video Ref Format cannot be changed for most HD frame rates.

Matching Audio Pull-Up and Edit Play Rate

By default, Media Composer plays back sequences at the frame rate specified in the name of the project type. For example, a 2 PAL project plays at 25 fps. The notable exception is 30i NTSC, which actually plays at 29.97 fps.

When working with 23.976, 24p NTSC, 24p PAL, and 25p PAL projects, you can change the playback rate (known as the *Edit Play Rate*) without affecting other properties in order to slow down or speed up playback slightly. This is the video equivalent of the audio pull-up/down setting in Pro Tools.

To change the Edit Play Rate:

1. In the **Settings** tab of the Project window, open the Film and 24P setting.
2. Select an Edit Play Rate matching your configuration according to the following table.

24p projects (PAL and NTSC) use a default Edit Play Rate that does not match the project rate. 24p PAL defaults to 25 fps and 24p NTSC defaults to 23.976 fps.

To change audio pull up/down settings in Pro Tools:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Session**.
2. From the Timecode Settings section of the Session Setup window, select a rate from the Audio Rate Pull Up/Down pop-up menu.
3. Click **OK** to apply the new pull up/down rate to the session.

Compatibility Table

The following table describes compatibility between Avid Project Format and Edit Play Rate, and Pro Tools Timecode Rates, Audio Pull Up/Down Rate, Clock Reference, and Video Format.

Rate and Sync Ref Compatibility between Avid and Pro Tools

Media Composer			Pro Tools		
Avid Project Format	Edit Play Rate	Video Peripheral Video Ref	PT Timecode Rate	PT Audio Rate Pull Up/Down	SYNC HD Video Ref Format
23.976p NTSC	23.976	NTSC	23.976	None	NTSC
	24	NTSC	24	0.1% Up	NTSC
24p NTSC	24	NTSC	24	None	NTSC
	23.976	NTSC	23.976	0.1% Down	NTSC
30i NTSC	29.97	NTSC	29.97	Variable	NTSC
24p PAL	24	PAL	24	None	PAL
	25	PAL	25	4% Up	PAL
25p PAL	25	PAL	25	None	PAL
	24	PAL	24	4% Down	PAL
25i PAL	25	PAL	25	None	PAL
720p/23.976	23.976	720p/59.94	23.976	None	720p/59.94 (or NTSC)
720p/25	25	720p/50	25	None	720p/50 (or PAL)

720p/29.97	29.97	720p/59.94	29.97	None	720p/59.94 (or NTSC)
720p/50	50	720p/50	25	None	720p/50 (or PAL)
720p/59.94	59.94	720p/59.94*	29.97	None	720p/59.94 (or NTSC)
Media Composer(continued)			Pro Tools (continued)		
Avid Project Format	Edit Play Rate	Mojo DX or Nitris DX Video Ref	PT Timecode Rate	PT Audio Rate Pull Up/Down	SYNC HD Video Ref Format
1080p/23.976	23.976	1080p23	23.976	None	1080p/23.97 (or NTSC)
1080p/24	24	1080p24	24	None	1080p/24 (or PAL or NTSC)
1080p/25	25	1080p25	25	None	1080p/25 (or 1080i/50 or PAL)
1080p/29.97	29.97	1080p29	29.97	None	1080i/59.94, 1080psf-29.97 (or NTSC)
1080i/50	50	1080i/50	25	None	1080i/50, 1080psf-25 (or PAL)
1080i/59.94	59.94	1080i/59.94	29.97	None	1080i/59.94, 1080psf-29.97 (or NTSC)
1080p30	30	1080p/30	30	None	1080p30
1080p50	50/25	1080p/50	50	None	1080p50
1080p59.94	59.94/29.97	1080p/59.94	59.94	None	1080p59.94
1080p60	60/30	1080p/60	60	None	1080p60

2k, 4k, and UHD settings and reference should mirror 1080p for the relative frame rate.

100/119.88/120 fps are supported with Media Composer Video Satellite configurations, but video hardware will be disabled.

Media Composer supports locking the video peripheral to black burst or tri-level sync at most HD rates that expects a reference that is a multiple of 25 or 29.97 fps.

Video peripheral reference rates in this table are a general guideline. Consult the documentation for your specific video hardware peripheral, as it may support different reference rates.

Matching Timecode Format (Drop Frame or Non-Drop Frame)

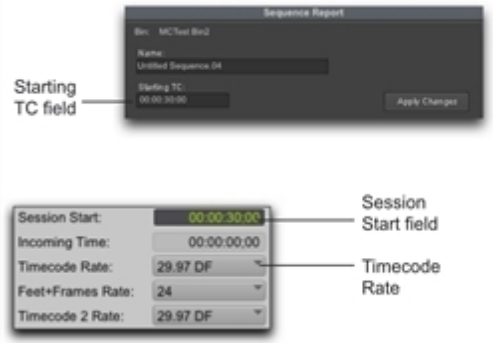
Pro Tools and Media Composer must be set to the same timecode format (either Drop Frame or Non-Drop Frame).

To ensure timecode format settings are compatible:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **Setup > Session**. If the Timecode rate pop-up menu displays "DF" after the frame rate, Pro Tools is set to Drop Frame.
2. In Media Composer, right-click the Record monitor, and choose **Sequence Report**.

   In some project formats, Media Composer can be configured for Drop Frame or Non-Drop Frame, while the corresponding Pro Tools timecode rate can only be set to Non-Drop Frame. In such cases, Media Composer sends Non-Drop timecode information to Pro Tools, even if it is set to Drop Frame. The following project formats in Media Composer exhibit this behavior: 23.976p NTSC, 24p NTSC, and 720p/23.976.

   If the numbers in the TC fields are separated by semi-colons instead of colons, the project is set to Drop Frame.



Clip Info dialog (Media Composer, top) and a portion of the Session Setup window (Pro Tools, bottom)

3. If both timecode formats do not match, do one of the following:
   - To force Pro Tools to match the timecode format of Media Composer, select the compatible timecode format from the Timecode Rate pop-up menu.
   - To force Media Composer to match the timecode rate of Pro Tools, type semi-colons (Drop Frame) or colons (Non-Drop Frame) between the numbers in the Starting TC field, and press Enter.

Matching Media Composer Starting TC Timecode Setting and Pro Tools Session Start

In almost all cases, the first frame of video is located at the start of the Media Composer sequence. However, Pro Tools sessions often have silence at the head to create countoffs or silence.

For example, a Media Composer sequence may start at 01:00:00:00 while the matching Pro Tools session starts at 00:59:55:00—allowing five seconds of silence before the audio starts.

In some cases, starting playback from Media Composer at a point which is more than a minute earlier than the start of the Pro Tools session may fail. Change the Pro Tools session start time to be earlier.

To set the default start time for new sequences in Media Composer:

1. In the Project window, click the **Settings** tab and then double-click the **General** setting.
2. Type in the desired starting timecode in the Default Starting TC field.

To change the start time of an existing sequence in Media Composer:

1. In Media Composer, open the bin containing the existing sequence.
2. If needed, re-size the bin window so that you can see the Start column of the bin window.
3. In the Start column for the sequence for which you want to set a new start time, type the new start time using semi-colons (for Drop Frame) or colons (for Non-Drop Frame), and press Enter.
4. Click **OK** to confirm.

Compensating for Different Sequence Start Times in Pro Tools and a Video Satellite

You can compensate for any offsets that might occur if the start times of an Avid sequence differ between Media Composer and Pro Tools.

To compensate for different sequence start times:

1. In Pro Tools, go to **Setup > Session**. The Session Setup window will appear.
2. In the External Timecode Offset section, compensate for the offset between Pro Tools and Video Satellite as follows:
   - If the start time of the video satellite sequence falls before the start time of the Pro Tools sequence, type a positive timecode value into the Satellite Offset field.
   - If the start time of the video satellite sequence falls after the start time of the Pro Tools sequence, type a negative timecode value into the Satellite Offset field.

Compensating for Monitor-Induced Output Delay

Many monitors add a delay to the video output of one or more frames. You can compensate for this delay by advancing the video output by the necessary number of frames.

To set the number of frames to offset video output:

1. In Media Composer, choose **Settings > Video Satellite Settings**.
2. In the Video Satellite Offset field, type a positive value that matches the amount of delay in the monitors. You may need to try a few different settings.

Linking or Unlinking Pro Tools and a Video Satellite

After you have connected and configured a single Pro TTools HD system and an Media Composer Video Satellite system in a Satellite Link network, you can control their behavior with controls in the Pro Tools and Media Composer transports. However, if more than one Pro Tools HD system is connected and configured in a Satellite Link network that includes an Media Composer Video Satellite system, playback can be started only from a Pro Tools HD system on the network.



Standard Pro Tools MachineControl Option functionality is unaffected and independent from the video satellite transport operations. However, chasing MIDI Machine Control or MIDI timecode while linked to a video satellite is not supported.

When linked, Pro Tools and Media Composer support the following transport operations:

- With audio playback:
- Play
- Half-speed Play
- Loop Play
- Shuttle

- Scrub
- Record
- Loop Record
- FF/REW (with the Audio During FF/RW preference turned on in Pro Tools)
- Without audio playback:
- Locate
- Nudge
- Selecting

When using the J, K and L keys to shuttle in Media Composer, Pro Tools will play audio at 1x forward, but not in reverse or any other possible playback speeds.

Trim, Color Correction and Effects modes in Media Composer and Symphony are not supported with Media Composer Video Satellite.

In Media Composer, enable the Play Preparation Delay option (Settings › Video Satellite) to avoid possible errors on playback start in sequences with high bandwidth video or unrendered effects. Enable the Loop Preparation Delay option to similarly avoid problems when looping playback.

Link Controls

When a Pro Tools HD system is configured as an administrator, the following controls can be shown in the Transport window:

Link Button

Controls the link status of the local system.

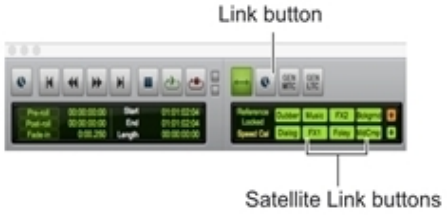
Satellite Link Buttons

control the link status of the other satellite systems. On every system, one of these buttons corresponds to that system's main link button.

Link buttons highlight to indicate linked status.

To display linking controls in the Transport window:

- Choose **`View > Transport > Synchronization`** and **`View > Transport > Expanded.`**



Linking controls in the Pro Tools Transport window

To link or unlink the local Pro Tools system:

- Click the Link button in the Transport window.

  Press Option+Shift+L (Mac) or Alt+Shift+L (Windows) to link or unlink the local system.

To link or unlink other satellite systems:

- Click the corresponding Satellite Link button in the Transport window.

To link or unlink the video satellite system from within Media Composer, do one of the following:

- Click the Satellite Link button to change it to a linked (green) or unlinked (gray) state.

Press Option+Shift+L (Mac) or Alt+Shift+L (Windows) to link or unlink the local system.

Link buttons flash briefly when establishing the network clock.

If Media Composer shows an error dialog, the Satellite Link button for the Video Satellite in Pro Tools will turn red. Hold the cursor over the link button to view the dialog. To dismiss the dialog, shift-click the video satellite system's Satellite Link button.

Controlling Linking with a Control Surface

To toggle the link button on the Pro Tools system (ICON and C|24):

- Press Control + the Online button (Mac) or Alt + Online (Windows) on the control surface.

To toggle the Satellite Link buttons (D-Control or D-Command only):

1. Press Command + the Modes button (Mac) or Control + Modes (Windows) on the control surface to display all linked systems in the softkeys display.
2. The Modes button will light up. Pressing Modes again will exit the Satellite Link mode.
3. The softkeys corresponding with each machine can then be pressed to link or unlink that machine.

Video Satellite and EUCON Control and Work Surfaces

A selection of system linking controls have been EUCONized. For more information on controlling Video Satellite functions from EUCON devices, see the *Pro Tools EUCON Guide*.

Capturing Audio and Video with a Video Satellite System

You can use a video satellite system to capture audio to Pro Tools and video media to Media Composer in a single pass.

Before Capturing Audio and Video

Before capturing audio and video from tape, ensure that you have made the following connections.

For connections with an Avid video peripheral, do the following:

1. Connect the desired outputs of the video deck to the corresponding inputs on the video peripheral.
2. Connect the audio source to the inputs of your primary Pro Tools HD audio interface

For more information, see the guide for your Pro Tools HD audio interface.

For connections without an Avid video peripheral, do the following:

- For FireWire-based connections, connect the FireWire cable directly to the FireWire port on the Media Composer system.

Since video and audio are streamed in one signal over FireWire, it is not necessary to connect any audio inputs.

If you are capturing video using FireWire, you must capture both audio and video into Media Composer, because a single FireWire cable provides both video and audio. This audio can then be exported over to Pro Tools.

Conditions for Capturing Audio and Video

The following conditions apply to capturing audio and video with a video satellite system:

- Due to technical limitations, when capturing video from a device being controlled using a 1394 connection, audio sync will be up to 3/4 of a frame out of sync.
- If you want to capture a 29.97 telecine video tape to a 24 fps project, you must first capture both audio and video on Media Composer and then export the audio back to Pro Tools. For manually exporting an AAF Sequence, see the *Avid Media Composer Guide*.

Configuring Pro Tools and a Media Composer Video Satellite for Capturing

Before configuring Pro Tools and Media Composer for synchronized capturing, ensure that the two applications have matching settings. For detailed information, see "Matching Media Composer and Pro Tools Settings in a Video Satellite System" on page 1979.

Configuring Pro Tools for Capturing within a Video Satellite System

To configure Pro Tools for capturing audio:

1. In Pro Tools, choose **`Setup > Session`**, and ensure the following:
   - Clock Source pop-up menu is set to SYNC.
   - Clock Reference pop-up menu is set to Video Reference.
2. If Clock Reference pop-up menu is set to another source, like Word Clock, make sure that the Ref Present LED is lit, and that the clock reference that the SYNC is locked to matches that of the VTR.
3. Route the audio inputs to the desired tracks.
4. Record enable the audio tracks to which you want to capture audio.
5. Click the Record Enable button in the Transport.

Configuring Media Composer for Video Capture

Media Composer Video Satellite supports video capture to a new or existing sequence using the Capture Tools in Media Composer. See Media Composer documentation for configuration details.

Playing Back Captured Audio and Video with a Video Satellite System

Once you have finished capturing with a video satellite system, the captured clip appears in the Record Monitor and in the Timeline. Audio appears in the Pro Tools Timeline.

To view the captured clip, do the following:

- Click Play (or press the Spacebar) in Pro Tools or Media Composer.

Re-Digitizing an Existing Sequence

Media Composer can open sequences created on other Avid editing systems. However, you may first want to re-digitize some or all of the media files because they were the wrong resolution, or missing.

When using this procedure with a video satellite, you must capture the audio to Media Composer and then export an AAF sequence referencing or containing the embedded audio to Pro Tools.

Digitizing from an EDL

Media Composer includes Avid EDL Manager software, which lets you open an EDL from another editing application, create a Media Composer sequence from that EDL, then re-digitize the sequence.

When using this procedure with a video satellite, you must capture the audio to Media Composer and then export an AAF sequence referencing or containing the embedded audio to Pro Tools.

Laying Back Audio and Video to Tape

You can layback audio from Pro Tools and video from Media Composer to tape using the Digital Cut Tool in Media Composer. See Media Composer documentation for configuration details. Note that the 9-pin connection must be on the Media Composer system.

The Universal Mastering feature in Symphony is not supported with Video Satellite.

To minimize the chance of dropped frames, it is recommended that all effects be rendered before performing a layback.

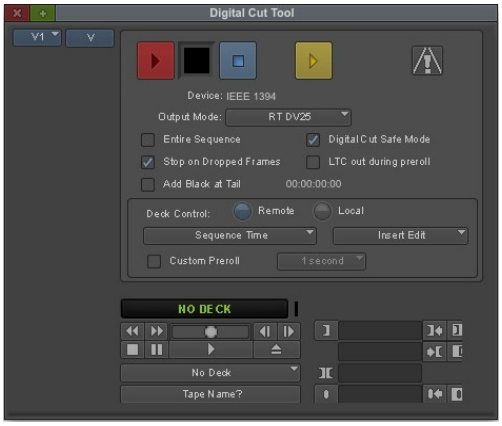
When laying back to an SDI VTR or 1394 device that requires audio and video to be combined in a single stream, you must export the audio to Media Composer from Pro Tools or combine audio and video signals using a third-party summing device, and then lay back the final sequence to tape.

To record audio and video to tape from Media Composer and Pro Tools simultaneously:

1. Make sure that your system is set up as follows:
    a. Pro Tools and the Media Composer video satellite computers are linked.
    b. Audio outputs on the Pro Tools HD audio interface are connected to the appropriate audio inputs on the VTR.
    c. Video outputs from Media Composer system are connected to the VTR.
    d. If you are using deck control, the deck control cable from Media Composer is connected to the VTR, and the VTR is set to Remote mode.

        When using Media Composer in Satellite mode for 24p and 23.976 projects, only the 24 and 23.976 Output Formats are supported. The 29.97 Output Format (+25% playback speed with no pulldown) is not supported in Satellite mode for 24p and 23.976p projects.

2. Insert a video tape into your VTR.
3. To ensure that the tape deck is properly configured, refer to the following topic in Media Composer Help (**`Help > Avid Media Composer Help`**): *Configuring a Deck or Multiple Decks*.
4. Do one of the following:
    - Select one of the displayed tape names and click **`OK`**.
    - Click New to add a new tape to the list.
5. Drag the sequence you want to record to tape from the bin to the Record Monitor.
6. Select Output › Digital Cut. The Digital Cut Tool appears.



Digital Cut Tool

7. If you want to set In and Out points for a digital cut.
8. Do one of the following:
   - Select the **Entire Sequence** option to record the entire sequence.
   - Deselect the **Entire Sequence** option and set the In and Out points in the Timeline.
9. If you are laying back over a FireWire (1394) connection (Special › Device › IEEE 1394), select the appropriate output mode from the Output Mode pop-up menu as follows:
   - If all of the media on your Timeline is DV25, or if it is all DV50, and all of your effects are rendered, you can achieve a slightly higher quality of output by selecting DV25 or DV50 as appropriate.
   - Otherwise, you must select the RT DV25 or RT DV50 options to render and transcode all of your video to that format.
10. Select the **Stop on Dropped Frames** option if you want Media Composer to automatically stop the tape if the audio and video does not record correctly.
11. Select the **Add Black At Tail** option, and type the amount of black you want added to the end of the sequence.
12. Select one of the following from the Deck Control options:
    - Local mode

      You will initiate recording manually.
    - Remote mode

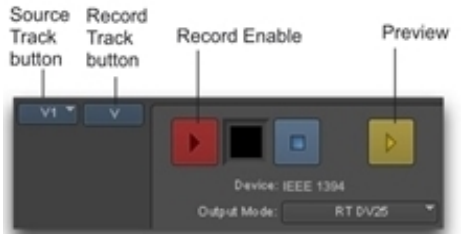
      Media Composer will start the VTR and drop into record at the specified timecode.
13. If you chose Remote mode, select one of the following options:

    Sequence Time

    Starts recording based on sequence time. For example, if the sequence starts at 01:00:00:00 in the Timeline, Media Composer will start recording when the tape reaches 01:00:00:00.
    - Record Deck Time

      Starts recording wherever the VTR is currently parked.
    - Mark In Time

      Starts recording at the address entered in the top window to the right of the transport controls.
14. In the Source Track buttons, select the top video track. Only the selected video tracks and the video tracks below it will be recorded.



Selected Source tracks

15. If you selected Remote mode, use the Record Track buttons on the right to select which audio and video tracks to enable for recording on the tape.
16. Click the yellow **Preview** button to check that all of the tracks you selected are playing and that the insert points on the tape are correct.
17. Do one of the following:
    - To record using Local mode, press play and record on the VTR. When ready, click the Record button in the Digital Cut window.
    - To record using Remote mode, press Record in the Digital Cut window. Media Composer will queue the tape, play, then drop in at the appropriate location.

When doing a Digital Cut with an Avid Mojo DX or Nitris DX video peripheral, Output Mode should be set to "Real Time" when using non-FireWire video outputs, for best A/V sync performance.

Be sure to record at least a few seconds of black to the tape before performing a digital cut This will guarantee that the video tape is correctly formatted when your digital cut starts.

Index

.

.aac 652

.aif 651

.aifc 651

.aiff 651

.m4a 652

.m4v 652

.mov 652

.mp3 652

.mp4 652

.mxf 652

.personalized.headphone profile 1768

.ptsketch file format 587

.ptxp file type 410

.rx 652

.rx2 652

.sd2 652

.snd 652

.wav 651

‹

‹ALL› Group 430

#

1st Order Ambisonics 1832

3D audio 1832

3-knob panning 1690

5.1 surround formats 1666

7.0.2 and 7.1.2 surround formats 1660

7.1 and 7.0 surround formats 1659

9-Pin MachineControl settings 190

29.97 FPS Non-Drop 1863
360RA WalkMix Creator Lite 1785
360RA WalkMix Renderer 1785
360RA WalkMix Renderer window 1787

A

AAC
  CBR 1960
  VBR 1960
AAC audio 652, 1960
AAF
  color space 1936
  exporting 701, 706
  import static track mute settings 698
  import translation settings 696
  importing 688
  linked media 23
  metadata 21, 1903
  opening in Pro Tools 689
AAX Ambisonics panning plugins 1834
Abandon Changes command 576
Absolute Grid mode 874, 1229
ACID files 652
  importing 659
Acon Digital 1376
Acoustica 1376
Acoustica Essentials 1375
Activate Pro Tools Power Scheme option 119
active 19
  inserts 1516
  tracks 375
Active Busses display 92

Add Default Channel Assignments option 78

Add Key Change command 1187

Add Marker/Memory Location button 1194

Add Meter Change button 1178

Add MP3 option 1649

Add New Playlists at Bottom or Top Preference option 152

Add Tempo Change button 1152, 1174

Add Unique Triggers 1020

Add/Select Tabs menu 276

adding tags 527

Adjust Session Start Time to Match Source Start Time 678

ADM file 1772, 1775

- export 1775
- import 1772
- metadata displayed in Import Session Data dialog 1774

Advanced Meter Type settings 166

advanced metering 327

Advanced Video Logging option 149

AES31/Broadcast compliant BWF (.wav) 722

AFL (After Fader Listen) 371

AFL/PFL Path 70

After Fader Listen (AFL) mode 371

After Playback Scrolling option 746

After Write Pass, Switch To option 159, 1573

AIFC file format 699

AIFF file format 1645

ALAC 652

All MIDI Notes Off command 1061

Allow All-Track Mute option 374

Allow Latch Prime in Stop option 158

Allow Sends to persist during LLM option 156, 785

Allow Track Arm Commands in Local Mode option 181, 1894
alternate matching takes 801, 984
Alternate Takes pop-up menu 802, 985
Always Fill Channel Strips When Banking option 157
Always Show EUCON Assignable Knob Highlight option 157
Ambisonics 1832
    B-format 1832
    configuring I/O Setup 1832
    creating mixes 1834
    discrete channel orderings 1833
    FB360 Audio plugins 1834
    folding down 1835
    Higher-order 1832
Ambisonics formats 1661
Analysis view 1343, 1357
Anchor All Automation Playlists option 713
anchor point
    immersive panning 1702
Anonymous Usage Data option 149
Apple Lossless 652
Apply Real-Time Properties option 669
ARA Data folder 222
ARA plugins 1374
    favorites 1374
archiving sessions (with Compact command) 940
arming
    safe (ignore) 1893
Arrangement
    Sketch window 602
Artist Chat window
    Pro Tools Projects 553

ASIO4ALL 113
aspect ratios (Video window) 1947
Assemble mode 1887
Assign Tags popover window 528
Assignments View (Sends View option) 1476
Atmos ADM BWF files 1772
Attributes (Groups List) command 420
attributes (groups) 425
audio
    convert to MIDI 1369
Audio During Fast Forward/Rewind option 143, 743
audio file formats 220, 651, 1645
audio files 10
    compacting 940
    default names 774
    importing 651
    mixed file types 236
Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo 504
Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo button 534
Audio Files folder 221
audio format 709, 1841
Audio Futures 360RA WalkMix Creator 1784
Audio Media options 677
    on export 709
    on import 693
Audio MIDI Setup (AMS) (Mac) 120, 196
Audio Pull Up and Pull Down 1849, 1979
Audio Pull Up/Down setting 1980
Audio Pull-Up and Edit Play Rate 1980
audio signal paths 56

audio to MIDI 1369
drag and drop 1370
Audio to MIDI Properties dialog 1369, 1371, 1373
Audio Track RecordLock option 146, 837
audio tracks 9
5.1 format 1658
and Output format 1669
and surround sessions 1668
bouncing to disk 1640
channel strips 302
creating a tempo map for 1174
disabling Elastic Audio 1342
enabling Elastic Audio 1340
loop recording 799
placing audio in multichannel tracks 1668
punch recording 796
recording multiple 789
signal flow 1448
track controls 310
Waveform View 855
Audio Vivid 1801
Bed assignments 1803
Bed channel widths 1803
Export 1818
import ADM file 1821
install 1801
Loudness meters 1809
monitoring level display 1808
Object assignments 1802
Panner 1811
Renderer 1801

Renderer window 1805
Speakers view 1808
Audio Vivid Production Suite 1801
Audio Zoom In button 877
Audio Zoom Out button 877
AudioSuite menu 287
AudioSuite plugins 1262-1263, 1269-1270, 1514
Bypass button 1268
Clip by Clip mode 1265
Clips List command 1263
Create Continuous File command 1265
Create Individual Files command 1265
Default Handle Length preferences 170
Entire Selection mode 1265
File Mode selector 1264
Handle Length setting 1268
multichannel processing 1269
Overwrite File command 1265
Playlist command 1263
Preview 1267
Preview Volume 1268
Render button 1269
Reverse button 1268
search by name 30
Selection Reference selector 1263
Target button 1266
Use in Playlist button 1264
using 1269
Whole File button 1268
AudioSuite window 1262
Audition Paths selector 69

auditioning
clips in the Clips List 69, 442
fades 945
in browsers 532
MIDI notes 1030
pre/post-roll 748
programs 1057
selection start and end points 749
takes 801
Auto Accept Adjust Bounds option 152
Auto Backup option 145
Auto button (plugins) 1526
Auto Create Sub-Paths option 79
Auto Edit 1886, 1892
Auto Input Monitoring mode 782
Auto Insert Default Plug-Ins preference 157
Auto Match Pull Factors 1849
Auto Rename Clips List command 445
Auto-Align 2 1381
Auto-Align Post 2 1382
Auto-Color Alternate Takes option 141
Auto-Create Related Path option 79
auto-created clips 854
hiding 447
renaming 443
AutoFades 955
AutoGlide mode 1692
AutoGlide Time preference 160, 1692
Auto-Height Overrides Height Automation option 1744
AutoJoin
command 1574

indicator 1574
AutoMatch
all controls 1592
button 1591
indicators 1583
individual automation types 1592
individual controls 1592
Auto-Match Marker Rulers option 687
AutoMatch Time preference 160, 1578
Automatic Analysis on Tick-based Tracks option 172
Automatic Ownership 578
Automatically Copy Files on Import option 170, 661, 673
Automatically Create Click Track in New Sessions option 175
Automatically Download New Shared Tracks option 178
Automatically Find and Relink 721
automating
plugins 1589-1590
sends 1587
switched controls 1587
VCA Masters 1634
automation 1569
and multichannel pan 1698
and multiple output assignments 1671
breakpoints 1605
capturing and applying elsewhere 1628, 1631
clips 859
coalescing clip gain to volume automation 1282
coalescing Trim automation 1615
coalescing VCA automation 1635
coalescing volume automation to clip gain 1282
converting clip gain to volume automation 1281

converting volume automation to clip gain 1282
copying 1608
creating 1590
cutting 1608
deleting 1598
delta values 1576
display of fade boundaries and shapes 965
drawing with Pencil 1599
editing 898, 1601
enabling 1595
grouped tracks 1607
hidden tracks 353
modes 1572
Object/Bus Toggle 1744
on multichannel tracks 1606
pass-through point 1573
pasting 1608
playlists 966, 1569, 1579
relative and absolute 1576
Safe button 1526
safing 1579
smoothing 1578
snapshot 1626
Special Paste mode 1612
stepped 1604
suspending 1595-1596
thinning 1578, 1599
Track View 867
trimming 1614
writing 1585
writing on stop 1618

writing to next breakpoint 1618
writing to selection, selection start or end 1616
Automation Enable window 1585
Automation Follows Edit option 1579
Automation lanes 1580
in MIDI Editor windows 1096
in the Edit window 1580
Automation Mode selector 1572
automation modes
Latch 1573
Latch Trim 1577
Off 1572
Read 1573
Read Trim 1576
Touch 1573
Touch Trim 1576
Touch/Latch 1575
Touch/Latch Trim 1577
Trim Off 1576
Write 1573
Write Trim 1577
Automation preferences
AutoMatch Time preference 1578
Smooth and Thin Data After Pass option 1599
Automation Preview mode 1629
Punch Preview button 1631
suspending 1630
Write Automation To commands 1631
Auto-Name Memory Locations While Playing option 152, 1198
Auto-Name Separated Clips option 151, 929

auto-naming
and Strip Silence 1239
audio files and clips 774
playlists 966
QuickPunch clips 835
separated clips 929
takes 774
Auto-Spot 1874, 1882
Auto-Spot Clips 1883
Auto-Spot Clips command 1860
Aux I/O 99
Auxiliary Input track
convert to Routing Folder track 397
Auxiliary Inputs 15, 301
channel strips 304
monitoring and mixing 1491
signal flow 1449
track controls 311
AVB 35
AVE 7
Avid Account 2
creating 2
Avid Artist Series video peripherals 1952
Avid Audio Engine (AAE) 6
Avid Audio Server (Mac only) 1864
Avid Link 4
Profile 550
Avid Master Account 2, 206
signing in 208
signing out 208
Avid Profile 550

Avid Video Engine (AVE) 7, 118, 1924

B

Back and Play command 744
Back command 744
Back/Forward Amount 144, 744
Back/Forward commands 744
backing up sessions automatically 145, 222
Backup to Cloud 223, 254
bank select 1052
Bar|Beat Markers
  and tempo events 1175
  audio with varying tempos 1177
  editing 1176
  from Identify Beat command 1174
  generated with Beat Detective 1008
  moving 1175
bars
  renumbering 1186
Bars|Beats Time Scale 1144
Basic Folder tracks 302, 389
  channel strips 309
  track controls 317
Batch Clip Renaming dialog 449
Batch Rename
  clips 445
  files 455
  Right-click track command 356
  tracks 335
  Tracks List command 448
Batch Rename Clips 445
Batch Rename Tracks 335

batch renaming 449
Batch Track Renaming dialog 449
Beat Detective 998-999
beat triggers
deleting 1006
generating 1003
inserting 1007
moving 1007
promoting 1007
Collection Mode 1018
conforming clips 1013
defining a selection 1000
detecting transients 1003
DigiGroove templates 1009
edit smoothing 1016
extrapolation 1011
generating Bar|Beat Markers 1008
groove templates 1010
Scroll Next 1008
separating clips 1011
system requirements 999
templates 1009
Trigger Pad 1012
window 1000
with multiple tracks 1012
Bed Audio (or Bed Material) 1715
Bed/Object Assignment and Toggle Setting 1770
B-format 1832
Big Counter window 741
Bi-Phase/Tach
pulses-per-frame setting 187

Wiring setting 187
bit depth 219, 709, 1840
Blocks View
audio track 342
video track 1928
Bounce
Right-click track command 355
track 1397
Bounce Mix 1642
Add MP3 1649
bounce multiple stems to separate files 1650
bounce multiple stems to single file 1650
Delivery Format 1650
Dolby Atmos ADM BWF 1775
Location 1652
presets 1643
search outputs 1648
to MXF (OP-Atom) 1647
Bounce Mix command 1638, 1640, 1642, 1654
bit depth options 1651
channel format options 1649
dither 1638
File Type 1645
Format 1649
Offline option 1653
Output Path selector, from the 1642
recording a submix 1654
sample rate conversion options 1651
Send Path selector, from the 1642
source path 1647
time stamps 1641

Bounce settings files 1643
Bounce settings files (.ptpreset) 1644
Bounce Settings menu 1644
Bounce settings presets 1643
Bounce to MOV 1956
audio settings 1958
Include Timecode Overlay 1960
video settings 1958
Bounce to QuickTime Movie command 1954
Bounced Files folder 221
breakpoints 1605
Avid keyframes 1602
clip gain 1277
Bring to Front command 1157
browsers 498
display options 507
opening 499
sorting 509
Buffer Size (Hardware) 784
bus interrogation 1484
bussing
multichannel sends 1673
sends 1468
signal paths 55
submixing and effects processing 1491
surround examples 1678
BW64 651
BW64 audio file format 723
BWF (.WAV) file format 1645
Bypass button (plugins) 1527
Bypass Clip Effects command 1285

Bypass Clip Effects settings 1285

Bypass Clip Gain setting 1282

C

cables

included cables 1867

wiring diagrams 1901-1902

Cache Size 119

Calculator Entry mode (for numeric entry) 912

Calibration Mode command 765

canceling record takes 789, 820

Capture Clip command 927

capturing automation values 1631

capturing timecode 1860

Carbon 35, 42

Carbon Expanded Systems 43

Catalogs (Workspace) 502

Celemony 1367

Center % (Percentage) 1693

Center % in Output window 1695

Center Playhead Scrolling option 747

centered crossfade 943

Change Duration command 1400, 1422

Change Edit to Match Timeline command 918

Change Meter command 1178, 1180

Change Tempo command 1153

Change Timeline to Match Edit command 918

Change Track Channel Width 338

Change Track Width command 338, 356

Change Velocity command 1400, 1419

channel mapping

default path order 71

editing 86
re-mapping 86
Channel selector 1528
for multi-mono plugins 1675
Channel Show/Hide dialog 1670
channel strips 13
audio tracks 302
Auxiliary Inputs 304
Basic Folder tracks 309
Instrument tracks 308
Master Fader tracks 305
MIDI tracks 307
Routing Folder tracks 310
VCA Master tracks 306
channel width filtering 1670
channel widths
filtering 1670
channels 13
Chase LTC mode 1890
chasing
MIDI controller events 1059
MIDI notes 1058
MIDI program changes 1059
Chat
individual chat 561
projects 558
start new 560
Chord Change dialog 1190
chord diagrams 1190
chord symbols 1120, 1190
Chord Symbols ruler 1189

chords 1189
Classic Numeric Keypad mode 28, 144
Clear
    Tracks List command 448
Clear All Clip Indicators command 324-325, 1478
Clear Clip Gain command 1280
Clear command (Clips List) 447
Clear command (Edit menu) 869
Clear Special commands (automation) 1612
Clear Trim Automation
    Right-click track command 355
Clear Trim Automation Track command 1598
click 766-767
Click II plugin 766
click track 766
clicks and pops, avoiding 858
Clip Auto Fade In/Out Length preference 955
clip boundaries
    extending selections to 910
    moving edit cursor to 914
    moving Playhead to 751
clip definitions 665
clip effects 1283
    applying 1285
    bypassing 1285
    rendering 1285
Clip Effects display 1284
Clip Effects Status 865
Clip Effects tab 273
clip gain 1274
    adjusting with the Clip Gain Fader 1277

breakpoint editing 1277
bypassing 1282
clearing 1280
Clip Gain Info view 1274
Clip Gain Line 1275
clip groups 1259
coalescing clip gain to volume automation 1282
coalescing volume automation to clip gain 1282
converting clip gain to volume automation 1281
converting volume automation to clip gain 1282
copying 1281
cutting 1280
Default Handle Length preferences 170
dynamic 1274
editing 1276
editing with the Grabber tool 1277
editing with the Pencil tool 1278
pasting 1281
rendering 1282
static 1274
static clip gain value display 1274
Clip Gain Fader 1277
Clip Gain Fader icon 1274
Clip Gain Info view 1274
Clip Gain Line 1275
Clip Gain Nudge Value setting 151
clip group file format (.rgrp) 715, 1260
clip groups 855, 1251
changing timebase format 1256
creating 1252
editing 1257

exporting to different hard drives 718
fades and crossfades 1258
importing 716
importing and exporting 715
mixed 1254
multitrack 1254
regrouping 1253
separated 1255
tick-based 1256
timebase format 1252
trimming 1258
ungrouping 1253
video 1946
Clip Groups folder 221
Clip Hold options 167, 324
Clip Info dialog 1982
Clip information 444
clip launcher 587
Clip List
detach or dock 436
tab behavior 276
Clip Matching Options setting 151
Clip menu 287
Bring to Front command 1157
Capture command 927
Identify Sync Point command 1862
Lock command 1237
Mute/Unmute command 1238
Quantize to Grid command 938
Remove Sync Point command 1233
Send to Back command 1157

Ungroup All Clips command 1253
Ungroup Clips command 1253
Unlock command 1237
Unloop Clips command 1249
Clip Name
Right-click menu 289, 448
View option 863
Clip Time View option 863
Clip Transparency view 1221
Clip Views
Transparency 1221
clip-based effects 1283
clip-based gain 697, 1274
clipping 764
clips 11, 342, 855
aligning to clip start points 1220
auto-created 854
automation 859
auto-naming options 445
auto-spotting 1860
bringing to front 1157
capturing 927
clearing 870
clearing Real-Time Properties 1069
clip effects 1283
Conform to Tempo 1158
conforming with Beat Detective 1013
consolidating 940
copying 868
creating 927
crossfading between 954

cutting 868
default names 774
displaying names 863
displaying times 863
dragging from Clips List 1217
dragging to multichannel tracks 939
duplicating 1243
Edit-locking 1237
exporting as audio files 664
extending selections to include 910
filtering 438
finding 438-439
fitting to an Edit selection 941
gain 1274
healing separations 931
hiding auto-created 447
in the Sketch Window 596
inserting silence into 1242
locking 1236-1237
looping 1246
managing 443
MIDI 818
moving clips with fades 960
moving in Grid mode 1230
multichannel 855
muting 1239
nudging 935
nudging clips with fades 960
offline 855
Original Time Stamp 1228
pasting 869

placing at Edit insertion point 1219

placing in tracks 1217

quantizing 938, 1415

removing pitch shift (Elastic Audio) 1364

removing silence from 1240

removing unused 447

removing warp (Elastic Audio) 1357

renaming in the Clips List 443

renaming on a track 862

repeating 1244

replacing 1230

search by name 30

Select options 441

selecting 894, 906

selecting all in a track 906

sending to back 1157

separate by Word, Sentence, or Speaker 1333

separating 927

separating with Beat Detective 1011

separating with Separation Grabber 930

shifting 1234

shuffling 1225-1226

slipping 1226

snapping to 1224

snapping to next 1224

sorting 437

spotting 1227, 1860

stripping silence from 1239

sync points 1232, 1862

time stamping 1861

Time-locking 1238

trimming by Nudge value 934, 1034-1035
trimming start/end points 887
trimming to Edit insertion point 932
trimming unwanted data from 932
unlocking 1237
User Time Stamp 1228
user-defined 443, 447, 854
video 1942
warped (Elastic Audio) 855, 1356
whole-file 854
Clips List 432
and MIDI clips 433
auditioning clips 442
displaying file info for audio clips 435
dragging from 1217
Export Clips as Files command 664
filitering clips 438
filter by name 434
finding clips 439
Keyboard Focus 27
menu 434
previewing clips 442
selecting clips 439
sorting 437
Spot to Edit Insertion command 1219
Clips List Keyboard Focus 440
Clips List menu 1861
Auto Rename command 445
Clear command 447
Compact command 940
Export Clip Definitions command 665

Export Selected As Files command 706
Find command 439
Rename command 443
Select options 441
Selected Unused command 447
Show Auto-Created option 447
Sort By options 437
Time Stamp Selected command 1228
Timeline Drop Order option 1217
Clips List Selection Follows Edit Selection option 151, 435, 906
Clips View 341, 343, 859
Clock Master 123, 1840
Clock Reference setting 1979
Clock Reference Source setting 1842
Clock Source 1553
Close Session command 250
closing plugin windows 1528
Cloud Projects tab 215
Cloud Storage Usage Meter 572
Coalesce Clip Gain to Volume Automation command 1282
Coalesce Pan Guide Automation command 1745
Coalesce Trim Automation
Right-click track command 355
Coalesce Trim Automation options 160
Coalesce VCA Master Automation
Right-click track command 355
Coalesce Volume to Clip Gain command 1282
Coalesce when Removing Members from VCA Group option 158
coalescing
Trim automation 1615
VCA automation 1635

Collaboration 550
undownloaded shared tracks 581
collaboration
inviting contacts to collaborate 554
responding to an invitation 555
Collaboration Preferences 177
collaboration transaction logs 557
Collection Mode (Beat Detective) 1018
Color Coding
Apply to Channel Strip 387
options 383
Color Palette window 290, 386
Color setting (for window dub) 188
Color Space 1936
Color Adapters 1936
Color-coding I/O paths 101
Column 274, 496
Command|8 1510
Commands Keyboard Focus 26
Commands Search 30
Comments View 336, 1460
Commit
Right-click track command 355
Commit Track 1386
Commit Tracks dialog 1388
Commit Up To This Insert 1390
Committing Elastic Audio 1342
Compact command 940
Compact Selected
Tracks List command 448
compacting audio files 940

Compare button (plugins) 1526
compatibility 2, 1980
Compensate HW Inserts option 160
Compensate Side Chains option 160
compensating
for monitor delay 1975, 1983
for video satellite offsets 1975
compensating for signal delays in hardware inputs 1504
compensating for signal delays in side-chain processing 1503
Compensation for Input Delays After Record Pass option 68
Compensation for Output Delays After Record Pass option 68
compositing 970
Conductor button 271
Conductor Ruler Ownership control 584
Conductor Ruler Ownership control right-click menu 584
Conductor rulers 1145
including in selections 913
configuring
MMC 1855-1856
Timecode 1846
configuring a paddle device 1894
Conform to Tempo command 1158
connecting
external audio devices 1552
Consolidate command
audio 940
MIDI notes 1036
Consolidate From Source Media 709
Consolidate Handle Length 694, 709
Consolidate Handle Size 709
Consolidate Source Audio Media 694

consolidating media 544
Constant command (Tempo Operations) 1167
Contacts
invite to collaborate 554
inviting 552
respond to invitation 553
Continuous Scroll with Playhead option 748
Continuous Scrolling During Playback option 747-748
continuous zoom 877
control surfaces
C|24 1509
Command|8 1510
D-Command 1509
D-Control 1509
control track 1887
controller events 1042
and MIDI clips 860
editing 1043
editing with Smart Tool 898
inserting 1043
Controller lanes 1042, 1580
in MIDI Editor windows 1096
in the Edit window 1580
Controllers folder (controller personalities) 1510
Conversion Quality option 652, 1942
Convert WAV files to AES31/BroadcastWave option 170, 661, 722
convert audio to MIDI 1369
Convert Aux To Routing Folder
Right-click track command 356
Convert Aux to Routing Folder command 397
Convert Clip Gain to Volume Automation command 1281

Convert Plug-In selector 1527
Convert Volume to Clip Gain command 1282
converting sessions 234
Copy and paste MIDI between Pro Tools and Sibelius 670
Copy Audio as MIDI
Tracks List command 448
Copy Audio as MIDI command 1372
Copy Clip Gain command 1281
Copy command 868
Copy From Source Media 709
Copy from Source Media (Video) 677, 695
Copy Settings command 1533
Copy Source Audio Media 694
Copy Special commands 1611
Copy to Send command 1588
Copy/Move Indicators 864
copying
MIDI notes with the Split command 1428
plugin settings 1535
selections and clips 868
track automation to sends 1588
track control settings to sends 1480
Core Audio 6
count off 767
Countoff button 271
CPU peak indicator 132
CPU Total meter 132
Create Catalog from Selection 505
Create Click Track command 766
Create Fades command 954-955
Create Machine Track Arming Profile 1885

creating
clip groups 1252
clips 927
crossfades 954
fade-ins/outs 952
Markers and Memory Locations 1194
settings subfolders 1534
Crossfade Preference for Pre/Post-Roll option 152, 950
crossfades
creating with Smart Tool 896
DestructivePunch 836
equal gain 949
equal power 948-949
Fades dialog 945
in batches 956
linear 949
overlap 949
Overlapping Waveforms view 944
pre/post 955
removing 954
TrackPunch 836
trimming 954
cueing
hi-speed mode 1883
search mode 1883
Current Feet+Frames command 1847
Current Meter indicator 271, 1177
current tempo 271, 1152
Current Timecode Position command 1847
Custom FF/REW Speed preference 144

Custom Note Duration
Follow Grid 1023
custom note labels 1076
custom session templates 246
Custom Shuttle Lock Speed preference 144, 900
Cut Clip Gain command 1280
Cut command 868
Cut Special commands 1611
All Automation 1611
Pan Automation 1611
Plug-In Automation 1611
Cut Time command 1180, 1184
cutting
automation 1608
MIDI notes with the Split command 1428
selections and clips 868

D

Dark UI Theme option 138
Dashboard
Accept or Reject collaboration invitations 255
Backup to Cloud 254
Open Revision History 253
Dashboard window 209
DAT recorder, recording from 806
Data Collection and Personalization options 149
D-Command 1509
D-Control 1509
Deck Emulation settings 190
default
audition path 69
meter 768

output path 70
path order 71
paths 82
program change 1052
start time for Media Composer sequences 1982
tempo 769
Default (Paths) 83
Default Automatic Naming to English option 138
Default Clip Color Coding options 139
Default Dynamics preference 156, 1522
Default EQ preference 156, 1522
Default Fade Settings 153
Default Format
channel width filtering 1670
Default Format selector 71
Default Handle Length options 170
Default Input Gain preference 172
Default Note Duration 1022
Default Note On Velocity setting 1023
Default Plug-In preference 172
Default Settings, for TC/E plugin 171
Default Thru Instrument 811
Default Track Color Coding options 139
Degree of Thinning preference 158
delay 1975, 1983
MIDI Track Offsets 1060
Delay (dly) indicator 1502
Delay After Play Command option 1891
Delay After Play Command preference 181
Delay Before Locking to LTC option 180, 1879
Delay Before Locking to Timecode option 180, 1879

Delay Compensation 1500
applying to automatically bypassed tracks 835, 1505
bypassing 1503
changing track delay 1503
Compensate HW Insets 160
Compensate Side-Chains 160
Delay (dly) indicator 1502
enabling 1500
exceeding compensation limit 1504
H/W Insert 64
hardware inputs 1504
hardware insert delays 64, 1507
meters follow delay compensation values 1502
MIDI Beat Clock 176
MIDI Timecode 176
mode 1501
side-chains 1503
Time Mode option 160
User Offset (+/–) field 1503
viewing 331, 1464
Delay Compensation Status indicator 261
Delay Compensation Time Mode option 160, 1501
Delay Compensation View 331, 1464, 1502
Delay Compensation View option 1502
Delay for External Devices options 176
Delay plugins 1512
Delay setting (Real-Time Properties) 1067
Delete Active Groups (Groups List) command 420, 424
Delete Current Settings File command 1533
Delete Current Settings File command (fades) 951
Delete Fades command 954

Delete Group command 420, 424
Delete Index for All Offline Volumes 505
Delete Track command 339, 356
delete version
Revision History
Delete version 243
deleting
automation 1598, 1608
groups 424
Memory Locations 1204
MIDI Event List items 1130
MIDI notes 1040
paths in I/O Setup 85
playlists 968
program changes 1056
sysex events 1058
tracks 338
unused clips 447
Delivery Format selector
Bounce Mix 1650
Destination Audio Sample Rate 696, 708
destination folder for plugin settings 1534
destructive editing 940
Destructive Record mode 772, 798
destructive recording 798
DestructivePunch 843
crossfades 836
Prepare DPE Tracks command 845
preparing for 844
DestructivePunch File Length preference 147, 844
diagnostics 149

DigiGroove templates 1009
Digital Cut Tool (Media Composer) 1987
DigiTest 106
Disable “Input” When Disarming Track (In “Stop”) option 146
Disable DSP Mode when Disabling Record/Input option 147
discrete signal control 1669
Disk Allocation 779
and cross-platform sessions 781
and system volume 781
Disk Cache meter 132
Disk meter 132
Disk Space window 779
Display (Groups List) command 420
Display Events as Modified by Real-Time Properties option 175, 1069
Display Preferences 136
Clip Hold options 167
Draw Grids in Edit Window option 873
Language options 138
Peak Hold options 166
displaying
all rulers 1145
clip names 863
clip times 863
file info for audio clips 435
Meter Ruler 1177
Original Time Stamps 1861
Tempo ruler 1152
User Time Stamps 1862
dither
and Bounce Mix 1638
on Master Faders 1639

resolution and Bounce to Disk 1651
divergence
drawing 1695
using 1693
Documentation and Settings setting 145
Dolby Atmos 1715
ADM import 1772
Bed Audio (or Bed Material) 1715
Bed/Object Groups 1726
Binaural Render mode 1767
Bus/Object toggle 1734
Custom Re-Renders 1779
Dolby Atmos Metadata 1716
Enable 1720
enabling External Renderer 1718
enabling Internal Renderer 1717
external renderer 1716
I/O Setup Dolby Atmos page 1722
I/O Setup Output page 1721
internal renderer 1716
Link Object and Audio Recording optio 159
Live Headphones Re-render 1725
Live Loudness Re-render 1725
mixing bed material 1730
monitor with Master Fader 1762
Object Audio (or Objects) 1716
Object Control Mode 1734
Object controls 1732
object output path 1730
Object Path selector 1734
PEC/DIR Recorder Workflow example 1769

Pull Config from external renderer 1724
renderer 1716
re-renders 1781
restrictions 1717
Stock Re-Renders 1777
Theater mode 1737
Trim & Downmix 1762
Dolby Atmos ADM BWF files 1775
Dolby Atmos headphone personalization 1768
Dolby Atmos Metadata 1716
Dolby Atmos Renderer 1719
configuring with Core Audio 1719
Dolby Atmos Renderer application 1716
Dolby Atmos Renderer window 1748
Don't Limit Search Results 505
Double Selection command 911
Double-Clicg on Audio Clip Opens preference 151
Double-Click Selects Automation Breakpoints option 151
Double-Clicking a MIDI Clip Opens option 175
Download
Right-click track command 354
Download All New Changes button 571
Download All Shared Tracks button 571
Download command 577
Download Ruler Changes control 584
Download Ruler Changes Right-click menu 584
Download Track Changes control 576
Download Track Changes Right-click menu 577
drag and drop
from the Clips List to tracks 1218
importing audio files 653

importing MIDI files 668
Drag and drop audio clips to plugins 1549
Drag and Drop From Desktop Conforms to Session Tempo options 171, 662
Draw Grids in Edit Window option 873
Dropped Frames indicator 1929
DSP
active and inactive items 19
and inactive inputs and outputs 362
and inactive outputs 1468
and inactive sends 1479
and no output 1468
and overall resources 18
and Send meters 1478
DSP Mode 1555
enabling 1556
tips 1568
ultra-low latency monitoring 1555
workflow example 1563
DSP Mode auto-enabled 1555
DSP Mode Safe 1558
DSP usage meters 133
dubber emulation 146, 837
Duplicate
Right-click track command 356
Duplicate and Extend command 1244
Duplicate and Extend Edit selections 1244
Duplicate and Extend Selection command 911
Duplicate command 1243
Duplicate Dolby Atmos Plugin automation to track pan automation 1746
Duplicate Group command 420
Duplicate Track command 339, 1572

Duplicate track pan automation to Dolby Atmos Plugin automation 1746
duplicating
inserts 1523
MIDI note selections 1244
playlists 967
selections and clips 1243
sends 1480
Duration
Real-Time Properties 1065
durations, for MIDI notes
editing with Change Duration command 1422
making more legato 1425
making more staccato 1424
randomizing 1424
Dynamic Plug-In Processing option 118
Dynamic Transport
Playhead behavior 754
Dynamic Transport Follows Timeline Selection During Playback option 143, 754
Dynamic Transport mode 753
Dynamics plugins 1512

E

Edit commands 867-869
edit cursor 742
and scrubbing 898
moving to clip boundaries 914
placing with the Selector tool 894
Edit Groups 422
and selections 905
Edit Insertion Follows Scrub/Shuttle option 143, 898
Edit insertion point
placing clips at 1219

spot clip from Clips List 1219
trimming clips to 932
Edit Markers 904
and selection length 909
Edit menu 287
Change Edit to Match Timeline command 918
Change Timeline to Match Edit command 918
Clear command 869
Clear Special commands 1612
Consolidate command 940
Copy command 868
Copy Special commands (automation) 1611
Copy to Send command 1588
Create Fades command 954-955
Cut command 868
Cut Special commands 1611
Delete Fades command 954
Duplicate command 1243
Fade To End command 953
Fade To Start command 953
Fades command 945
Heal Separation command 931
Identify Sync Point command 1233
Insert Silence command 1242
Paste command 869
Play Edit Selection command 750
Play Timeline Selection command 750
Redo command 865
Repeat command 1244
Repeat to Fill Selection command 870
Select All command 906

Separate Clip commands 927
Shift command 1234
Space Clips 1235
Strip Silence command 1239-1240
TCE Edit to Timeline Selection command 941
Thin All Automation command 1599
Thin Automation command 1599
Trim Automation to All Enabled command 1629
Trim Automation to Current command 1629
Trim Clip End to Fill Selection command 933
Trim Clip End to Insertion command 932
Trim Clip Start to Fill Selection command 933
Trim Clip Start to Insertion command 932
Trim Clip to File commands 934
Trim Clip to Fill Selection command 933
Trim Clip to Selection command 932
Undo command 865
Write Automation commands 1627-1628
Edit mode buttons 260
Edit modes 872
and placing clips 1217
Grid 873
Relative Grid 874
Shuffle 872
Shuffle Lock 872
Slip 873
Spot 873, 1858
Edit Play Rate setting 1979-1980
edit playlists 966
Edit selection
doubling 911

duplicate and extend 911
extend to track above 913
extend to track below 913
halving 911
move earlier by selection amount 911
move later by selection amount 911
removing bottom track from multitrack selection 913
removing top track from multitrack selection 913
Edit Selection Follows Clips List Selection option 151, 906
Edit Selection indicators 911
Edit selections
auditioning with Playhead enabled 750
copied from Timeline selection 918
copied to Timeline selection 918
making with the Selector tool 894
sliding in the Ruler 915
edit smoothing (Beat Detective) 1016
Edit tools 876
Grabber 876, 907
Pencil 876, 901
Scrubber 876, 898
Selector 742, 876
Smart Tool 876
Trim 876, 887
Zoomer 876-877
Edit window 259
All View option 1460
Clip Effects view 273
docked MIDI editor 273
half-screen 748
None Views option 1460

pin tracks 375
Pinned tracks pane 375
quantize controls 1405
scrolling from the Ruler 919
Universe view 920
View options 259
Edit Window
EUCON Status Control 263
Edit Window Default Length preference 137, 266
Edit Window Follows Bank Selection option 157
Edit window View options 1460
Edit Window View selector 1459
Edit Window Views
Track Collaboration 572
Edit/Tool Mode Keyboard Lock 902
editing
across multiple tracks 871
and Edit modes 872
automation 1601
Bar|Beat Markers 1176
breakpoints 1605
controller events 1043
during playback 854
Edit modes 872
Grid mode 873, 875
Grid modes 1229
hidden tracks 353
Markers 1202
Memory Locations 1202
meter events 1179
MIDI clips 860

MIDI Event List 1129
MIDI notes 1029
nondestructively 853
nondestructively (audio) 859
nondestructively (MIDI) 862
note attributes 1039
note durations 1422
note velocities 1037, 1419
program changes 1056
Shuffle Lock mode 872
Shuffle mode 872
Slip mode 873
Spot mode 873
tempo events 1153
Track View 867
waveforms 858
Editing Preferences 150
Auto-Name Memory Locations While Playing option 1198
Auto-Name Separated Clips option 929
Clips List Selection Follows Edit Selection option 435, 906
Conversion Quality option 652
Crossfade Preference for Pre/Post-Roll option 152, 950
Edit Selection Follows Clips List Selection option 906
QuickPunch Crossfade Length preference 836
Separate Clip Operates On All Related Takes option 929
editing tags 527
Edit-locking clips 1237
Effect Bypass button 1527
Elastic Audio 1335
Accordion Warp 1354
adding Event markers 1358

analysis 1343
analysis in Workspace 530-531
Analysis view 1343, 1357
AudioSuite processing 1364
batch analysis 531
Clipping indicator 1345
committing 1342
Conform to Tempo 1158
creating new tracks 1341
deleting Event markers 1359
disabling 1342
Edit Groups 1357
élastique plugin 1349
enabling on tracks 1340
event confidence 1344
Event markers 1351
favorites 1340
Individual Range Warp 1355
Monophonic plugin 1348
moving clips between tracks 1364
moving Event markers 1358
out of range processing 1356
pitch shift 1362
Plug-In selector in browsers 534
plugins 1345
Polyphonic plugin 1347
preview at session tempo 535
processing types 1344
promoting Event markers 1358
properties 1359
quantizing 1415

Range Warp 1354
removing pitch shift 1364
removing warp 1357
Rendered files 1345
regenerating 539, 721
Rhythmic plugin 1348
TCE algorithms 1345
Telescoping Warp 1352
tempo detection 1343
Tempo Event–generated Warp markers 1352
tempo-based warping 1156
track controls 1342
track views 1343
tracks 1339
transpose 1363
Varispeed plugin 1348
Warp indicator 1356
Warp markers 1351
Warp view 1343, 1350
warped clips 1356
workflows 1335-1336
X-Form plugin 1349
Elastic Audio Plug-In Selector 1342
Elastic Audio preferences 172
Elastic Audio-enabled tracks 1339
Elastic Properties window 1359
élastique 1349
Embed Eleven Setting From selector 72
embedded media 23
Enable 178
Enable “Track Notes” Dialog option 178

Enable DSP Mode when Tracks with Hardware Inputs are Record-Armed/Input-Enabled option 147
Enable Dub Window option 188
Enable Elastic Audio on New Tracks preference 172
Enable GPU option 148
Enable HiDPI Mode 138
Enable Session File Auto Backup option 145
enabling
Auto Backup option 145
automation 1595
groups 429
MIDI input devices 809
plugin automation 1530
End To Insertion command 932
Enforce Mac/PC Compatibility option 237
Enforce Media Composer Compatibility option 707
EQ Curve view 1462
EQ plugins 1512
equal gain crossfades 949
equal power crossfades 948-949
Ethernet Controllers 192
EUCON 192, 1508, 1569
EUCON Control
Right-click track command 357
EUCON Status Control 263
Event Edit Area 1039
Event menu 287
All MIDI Notes Off command 1061
Beat Detective command 999
Change Meter command 1178
Identify Beat command 1174
MIDI commands 1400

MIDI Event List 1123
MIDI Operations 1400
MIDI Track Offsets command 1060
Remove Duplicate Notes command 1061
Renumber Bars command 1186
Tempo commands 1166
Time commands 1180
Event Operations commands 1400
Change Velocity command 1419
Input Quantize command 1433
Select/Split Notes command 1430
Event Operations window 1402
Exit command (Windows) 255
Expand Channels to New Playlists 988
Expand to New Tracks
Right-click track command 357
Expanded Transport View 285, 792
Export
ADM file 1775
Audio Media options 709
OMF/AAF Options 707
Sample Rate Conversion options 708
Selected Tracks to Sequence in Production Management 711
export
MOV 1956
Export Clip Definitions
Tracks List command 448
Export Clip Definitions command 665
Export Clip Groups command 718
Export Clips as Files
Tracks List command 448

Export Clips as Files command 664
Export MIDI
Right-click track command 355
Export MIDI command 668
Export MIDI Settings dialog
Apply Real-Time Properties option 669
MIDI File Format pop-up menu 669
Export Selected As Files command 706
Export Selected Tracks as OMF/AAF command 701, 704
Export Selected Tracks to Sequence in Production Management 711
Export Session Info as Text command 713
Export Settings button (I/O Setup) 95
exporting 650
AAF files 701, 709
audio 663-664
clip definitions 665
clip groups 718
markers 669
MIDI tracks 668
OMF files 709
OMFI files 701
Score to Sibelius 1122
sessions as text 713
Sibelius (.sib) files 1122
stereo interleaved files 665
Expressive E Osmose 1132
Ext. Clock Output 125, 1838
Extend Edit Down command 913
Extend Edit Up command 913
extending selections 910, 1162
to adjacent tracks 913-914

to clip boundaries 910
to include adjacent clips 910
to Markers and Memory Locations 910
to next tempo event 1163
Extensions 275
SoundFlow 479
Splice 456
StemSeparator 485
external clock source 1553
external MIDI instruments 830
external side-chain processing 1530-1531
External Timecode Offsets 1844
Extract Chords from Selection 1192
Extract MIDI to New Track
Right-click track command 355
Extract MIDI to New Track command 1369
extrapolation 1011

F

factory I/O settings 92
Fade Files folder 221
Fade settings 950
Fade Settings menu 951
Fade To End command 953
Fade To Start command 953
fade-in shapes 947
fade-out shapes 946
fades 951
adjusting with Smart Tool 896
AutoFades 955
creating 952
creating with Smart Tool 896

equal gain 948
equal power 948
in batches 956
moving 960
nudging 960
presets 950
Slope setting 948
Fades command 945
Fades dialog 945
In Shape 947
Link option 948
Out Shape 946
Fast Forward 743
Fast Forward button 268
FB360 Audio plugins 1834
Feet+Frame Rate setting 1842
Feet+Frames
redefining position 1847
Feet+Frames Time Scale 1145
field recorder
expanding alternate channels to new playlists 988
importing monophonic audio files 661
importing polyphonic audio files 661
Field Recorder Guide Track
Right-click track command 356
file formats
M4A 1645
file formats (audio)
AIFF 1645
BWF (.WAV) 1645
MP3 1645

file management 719
File menu 287
Bounce Mix command 1640
Close Session command 250
Exit command (Windows) 255
Export MIDI command 668
Export Selected Tracks as OMF/AAF command 701
Export Session Info as Text command 713
Import Audio to Track command 656
Import Clip Groups command 716
Open Session command 230
Revert to Saved command 233
Save As command 234
Save command 233
Save Copy In command 235
Filter Clip List menu 433
Filter Clips 434
filtering clips 438
Filtering Memory Locations in the Memory Locations window 1205
final mixdown 1654
Find All Candidates command 541
Find Clips List command 439
Find Matching Tracks option 679-680
Find Talent 551
finding clips 439
finding clips in the Clips List 438
First Invite Shares All Tracks option 178
Flatten Performance command 1400, 1418
Focus view 1086
Fold Down coefficients 161

Folder tracks 302, 389
add tracks to existing 398
adding tracks to 397
Basic 302, 389
channel strip 309
track controls 317
drag and drop 398
editing 400
importing 672
muting 374
opening and closing 396
Overview 342, 400
removing tracks from 399
Routing 389, 392
channel strip 310
track controls 318
save as Track Preset 406
soloing 371
Tracks List 354
Force Audio Media to Target Session Format 694
Force Upload command 576-577
Forward and Play command 744
Forward command 744
frame rate
and refresh rate 1977
pull up and pull down 1849
Frames 1928
Frames View (video tracks) 1928
frame-tearing 1977
Fraunhofer IIS MPEG-H Audio technology 1821
Fraunhofer immersive audio 1821

freewheeling timecode 1845

Freeze

Right-click track command 355

Freeze Track 1392

Front Divergence 1693

Front/Rear Divergence 1693

G

Gain Reduction meter 328

General Color options 139

generating timecode 1852

GForce MAP 1132

Glide Automation commands 1613

global (system-wide) preferences 182

Global Freeze Tracks indicator 261

Global MIDI Playback Offset preference 175, 1060

Global Track Collaboration 569

Go to End button 268

Grabber tools 876, 895, 907, 1032

editing breakpoints with 1161, 1602

editing clip gain breakpoints with 1277

Object Grabber tool 895, 907

selecting MIDI notes with 1030

Separation Grabber tool 895, 930

Time Grabber tool 895

Grid mode 873, 1230

Absolute 874, 1229

Clips/Markers option 875

configuring 875

Draw Grids in Edit Window option 873

Relative 874, 1229

setting the Grid value 1229

suspending 1230
with Slip, Shuffle, or Spot enabled 874
Grid value 1024, 1228
setting for MIDI editing 1024
Grid Value selector 875
Groove Quantize 1410
groove templates 1009-1010, 1410
applying 1412
mapping 1413
Group Assignment selector 1454
group chat
renaming 564
group chats 561
Chat
group chats 561
Group ID indicator 420
Group Name 420
Group Track command 422
groups
‹ALL› 430
attributes 425
automation editing 1607
control offsets 430
creating 422
deleting 424
duplicating 424
Edit Groups 422
enabling 429
hidden tracks 353
keyboard selection 429
Mix Groups 422

modifying 423
renaming 423
Groups
pinning 382
Groups dialog 421
Groups List 418
Keyboard Focus 27
menu 419
guitar tablature 1190

H

H.264
exporting 1959
H.265
exporting 1959
H/W Buffer Size 784
H/W Insert Delay 64
half-screen 748
half-speed playback 751
half-speed recording 807
Halve Selection command 911
hard drives
and Compacting Audio 940
recording to system volume 781
Round Robin Allocation 780
Hardware Buffer Size 107, 117
hardware I/O inserts 1512
delays 64
hardware I/O sends 1475
Hardware Insert Delay Compensation 64, 1507
Hardware Settings
Launch Control Panel 121

Hardware Setup
Buffer Size 784
Ext. Clock Output 125
HD I/O 129
HD MADI 130
HD OMNI 126
Launch Setup App 122
MTRX 131
HD audio interfaces 46
HD I/O 49
configuration 129
HD MADI 50
configuration 130
VSO limits 1844
HD Native systems 45
HD OMNI 48
configuration 126
HDX
capabilities 44
DSP usage meters 133
number of voices 45
HDX Classic 109
HDX Hybrid Engine 115
DSP Mode 1555
voices 45
HDX systems 43
Heal Separation command 931
HEAT 1438
import Master Settings 688
Help 288
Tool Tips 137, 290

Help menu 25, 288
HFS+ drives
and Windows systems 723
hidden tracks
and selections 905
group edits 353
groups 353
Hide All Floating Windows command 282
Hide and Make Inactive
Right-click track command 354
Hide/Show
Right-click track command 354
hiding
auto-created clips 447
High Contrast UI option 294
hi-speed mode 1883
Horizontal Position setting 188
Horizontal Zoom In button 877
Horizontal Zoom Out button 877
Hybrid I/O Channels (HDX Hybrid Engine) 117

I

I/O path
color 101
I/O Plate Saturation control 102
I/O Settings 92
I/O Setup 55
Bus page 60
Color coding paths 101
controls 65
customizing 73
dialog 55

Dolby Atmos page 61
factory settings files 92
H/W Insert Delay page 64
I/O routing 74
importing for surround 1664
Input page 58
Insert page 62
last used 95
Low Latency Monitoring 71
Mic Preamps 63
options 68
Output page 59
paths 77
settings files 92
sub-paths 80
surround 1678
surround formats 1662
surround mix settings file 92
I/O View 320, 1463
Identify Beat command 1174-1175
Identify Sync Point command 1233, 1862
Idle MTC Enabled option 187
IDs (machine) 1895
Ignore Changes command 577
Ignore Errors During Playback/Record option 118
Ignore for Future Download 354
Ignore Track Arming option 181, 1891, 1893
illegal characters 231, 721
Immersive Panner
Anchor Link 1711
Channel controls 1713

Channels view 1714
Expanded view 1703
Height modes 1704
Link Anchor button 1711
Macro controls 1703
Manipulate controls 1712
Meta controls 1703
Rear view 1707
Room guides 1708
Room views 1706
Scale controls 1713
Spin controls 1712
Tilt view 1706
Top Panel controls 1704
Top view 1708
Immersive Panning
anchor point 1702
immersive surround formats 1658
Import
ADM file 1772
Audio Media options 693
MXF files 703
Right-click track command 354
Sample Rate Conversion options 696
Sequence from Production Management 699
Timecode Mapping options 695
Import as Offline Satellite Media 677, 695
Import Audio to Track command 656
Import Clip Groups command 716
Import HEAT Master Settings 688
Import Key Signature Map option 687

Import Markers 687
Import Memory Locations 687
Import MIDI 666
Import project version data 243
Import Rendered Audio Effects 696
Import REX Files as Clip Groups option 170, 662
Import Sequence from Production Management 699
Import Session Data 680
Import Session Data command 671
Import Settings button (I/O Setup) 95
Import Settings command (plugins) 1533
Import Settings command fades) 951
Import to Audio Vivid 1821
Import Video command 1939
Import Volume Automation 697
Import Window Configurations 687
importing 650
audio 651
clip groups 716
copying during 673
copying imported files 672
Folder tracks 672
HEAT Master Settings 688
key signature map 687
Markers 666, 687
Memory Locations 687
MIDI tracks 665
multichannel audio files from a field recorder 661
multichannel I/O Settings 1664
offline items from Catalogs 545
plugin settings 1535

PRE settings 687
referencing imported files 672
session data 673
tempo and meter map 687
tracks for other sessions 670
using drag and drop 653
Window Configurations 687
importing audio from video clips 1942
importing video 1938
inactive 19
inputs 362
inserts 1516
Master Faders and assignments 1451
outputs 362
paths 85
paths, global 85
sends 1479
track path assignments 362
tracks 375
In-app Tutorial 5
Include All Member Tracks option 406
Include Control Changes in Undo Queue option 159
Include Instrument/MIDI output option 686
Include Sends in Trim Mode option 159
Include Timecode Overlay option 1960
individual chat 561
in-place auditioning 442
input connections 13, 764
Input Devices command 810
Input Filter command 811
input levels 764

Input Only Monitoring mode 782
Input Path selector 320, 357
Input Quantize command 1400, 1433
Insert mode 1887
Insert Position selector 1525
Insert Silence command 1242
Insert Time command 1180, 1182
inserting
controller events 1043
events in MIDI Event List 1126
meter events 1178
MIDI notes 1027
plugins on tracks 1517
program changes 1056
tempo events 1152
Insertion Follows Playback option 755
inserts 1457, 1512
duplicating 1523
hardware I/O 1512
hardware insert delays 64
labeling 1550
making inactive (and active) 1516
MIDI 1513
mono 1513
mono-to-stereo 1513
moving 1523
plugins 1512
post-fader on Master Faders 1451, 1512
send and return processing 1513
shared within a submix 1496
single track processing 1513

stereo 1513
Inserts View 1461
Inserts View options 1457
Instrument plugins 829
Instrument track
MIDI Chains 368
MPE 1133
Instrument Track Chain 368
Instrument tracks 301
channel strips 308
Clips View 342
MIDI Input selector 368
MIDI Output selector 368
monitoring and mixing 1492
Notes View 342
recording 814
signal flow 1452
surround mixing 1674
track controls 316
Instruments View 1461
Intel Turbo Boost option 119
Interchange workflow
embedded media 23
Interchange Workflow
linked media 24
interleaved audio file 220
interleaved option (sessions) 220, 1841
Internal mode (Clock Source option) 1841
internal side-chain processing 1530
Inverse linked panning 1488
inverse VCA automation 1635

Invite Contacts to Collaborate 555

Items to Copy 237

Preserve Folder Hierarchy command 238

iXML 1650

iZotope 1376

J

Jam Sync 1845

Join command 1574

Joining Project Downloads All Shared Tracks option 178

K

Keep Track Transcribed

Right-click command 356

Keep Track Transcribed option 1299, 1315

Keep Unused Folders on Session Close option 178

Keep Window on Top 505

key input 1525, 1530

Key Input selector 1266, 1525

key signature map 687

Keyboard Focus 25

Clips List 27, 440

Commands 26

Groups List 27

keyboard shortcuts 1529

global key commands 25

numeric entry 912

recording 789

Knowledge Base 288

L

Language options 138, 737

Last Used 95

Latch automation mode 1573
AutoJoin 1574
Join 1574
Latch option 372
Latch Trim automation mode 1577
Latching Behavior for Switch Controls in “Touch” option 158
latency 117
Launch Control Panel button 121
Launch Setup App button 122
layback 1888
Layered Editing option 937, 1222
LCRS path examples 1665
Learn tab 216
Level meters
for audio tracks 322
for Aux Input, Master Fader, and Instrument tracks 322
Levels of Undo preference 154, 867
LFE
enable in plugins 1697
faders 1697
routing examples 1681
Librarian menu 1526
Light UI Theme option 138
Limit Character Set option 237
Limit Number of Real-Time Threads option 119
Linear command (Tempo Operations) 1168
linear crossfades 949
Linear Sample Display 1165
Linear Tick Display 1165
Linearity Display Mode 1165

link controls 1984
displaying 1984
link button 1984
Satellite Link buttons 1984
Link controls
accessing mini-link buttons from a control surface 1985
linking systems to a control surface 1985
Link Enable buttons 1528
in multi-mono plugins 1675
Link Object and Audio Recording option 159
Link Record and Play Faders option 146, 784
Link Selection button 903, 905
Link Timeline and Edit Selection option 903
Link to Source Media (Video) 677, 694
Link Track and Edit Selection option 337, 904
linked media 23
linking
inverse panning 1488
multi-mono plugins 1674
plugin controls 1548
stereo panners 1487, 1689
local (current session) preferences 182
Local Control 811
Local Waveform Cache Versions preference 148
Local/Remote 1883
locating
the playback cursor 742
with Fast Forward/Rewind 743
with Location indicators 919
Location indicators 918-919

locations
dragging MIDI notes 1033
quantizing MIDI notes 1408
randomizing MIDI notes 1407, 1410
Locators to Import 697
Lock Clip command 1237
AudioSuite rendering 1269
Lock Settings File command 1533
Locked
Right-click track command 355
Logging 149
Loop Playback option 752
and Touch mode 1586
loop points 790
Timeline Selection Markers 791
Loop Record mode 772, 800
loop recording
and pre/post-roll 800
audio 799
MIDI 824
multiple takes (MIDI) 825
Loop Trim tool 891
looped clips 1246
copying and pasting automation 1251
creating 1247
editing 1249
selecting 1249
trimming with Loop Trim tool 892
unlooping 1249
looping
clips 1246

playback 752
selections 752
loops
creating with the Loop Trim tool 891
Loop Trim tool 891
recording with reverb or delay 1640
Low Latency Monitoring
Bounce Mix 786
Low Latency Monitoring option 785
Low Latency Monitoring path 71
LTC Output Level setting 187
LTC Sample Offset (Sync X) 1845

M

M4A 1645
M4a file format 1645
machine
pre-roll 1877
profiles 1885, 1896
Transport Master 1874, 1881
Machine Chases Memory Location option 180, 1857, 1878
Machine Control (Peripherals dialog) 189
Machine Cues Intelligently option 180, 1878
Machine Follows Edit Insertion/Scrub option 180, 1857, 1878
machine IDs 1895
MachineControl 54, 1867
Deck Control settings 190
Deck Emulation 190
Main Counter
display Timecode 1848
Main Counters 1147
main paths 56

Main Time Scale 1146-1147, 1848
Main Timebase ruler 1146
Make (Track) Inactive
Right-click track command 354
Make (Track) Inactive command 375
managing clips 443
Manual Ownership 578
Manual Tempo mode 271, 770
Manually Find and Relink 720
mapping paths in I/O Setup 86
Marker Colors
options 140
Marker ruler
controls 1196
Marker rules 1192
Marker Target Follows First Selected Track option 152
Markers 697, 1199
creating 1194, 1198
deleting 1204
editing 1202
exporting 669
extending selections to 910
importing 666, 687
moving 1203
sorting 1209
tick-based and sample-based 1200
viewing options 1205
Markers ruler 1145, 1199
Master Fader
EUCON Monitor path control 357

Master Faders 1451
as a stereo master volume control 1452
as master send level control 1499
channel strips 305
inactive 1451
inserts 1512
meters pre/post fader 1451
multichannel 1673
post-fader inserts 1451
signal flow 1451
track controls 313
trimming the input to a submix 1452
Master Link button 1527
in multi-mono plugins 1675
Master View for tracks 347, 1610
mastering 1655
Matches 984
Matches (alternate takes) 801, 984
Matching Criteria window 803, 983
MBOX Studio 40
Media Composer
Edit Play Rate 1979
linking and unlinking from 1985
linking to Pro Tools 1983
Project Type 1979
Starting TC Timecode setting 1979
Timecode Format 1979
troubleshooting satellite connections 1978
Video Satellite 194, 1976
Media Composer Video Satellite 1962, 1976
media data 21

MediaCentral | Production Management
export to 711
import sequence from 699
Melodyne 1367
audio file import and export 656
Melodyne Essentials 1367
Memory Location
recall in Memory Locations window 1205
Memory Locations 1194, 1200
creating 1194, 1198
deleting 1204
editing 1202
extending selections to 910
importing 687
Markers 1199
recalling 1201
recalling Edit selections 794
renaming 1202
search by name 30
Selection Memory Locations 1200
storing Edit selections 792
Memory Locations window 1199, 1202
filtering Memory Locations 1205
recall Memory Location 1205
View Filter 1210
viewing options for Markers 1205
Memory meter 132
Merge mode (see MIDI Merge mode) 773
Messages list
pinning chats 565
unpinning chats 565

metadata 21, 1903
Metadata Inspector window 248
meter
current 1177
default 768
display 271
Meter button 769
meter events 1177
editing 1179
inserting 1178
meter map 687
Meter Ruler
displaying 1177
extending an Edit selection to 1179
Meter Type 329
Metering Preferences 163
metering, advanced 327
Advanced Meter Type settings 166
Digital VU option 164
Fader and Meter scales 327
Gain Reduction meter 328
K options 165
Linear (Extended) option 164
Linear option 164
Meter Type setting 329
PPM options 164
Pro Tools Classic option 164
RMS option 164
Sample Peak option 164
VENUE options 165
VU option 164

meters 1502
follow delay compensation values 1502
for MIDI tracks 322
pre/post fader levels 324
Sends View 1478
Meters and Faders View 1463
Metronome button 767
Metronome Click button 271
Mic Preamps
configuring 193
I/O Setup 63
Mic Preamps View 1460
MIDI 7
assigning channels 366
configuring MIDI setup 120
consolidating notes 1036
controller events 1042
Default Thru Instrument 811
editing in a MIDI Editor window 1091
editing with Arrow Keys 1049
extract from audio 1369
import by drag and drop 668
importing 666
loop recording 824
muting notes 1036
offsets 1059
patch name files (.midnam) 1053
patch names 1053
playing back 740
Retrospective Record 831
select and split notes 1428

separating notes 1035
setting the Grid value for editing 1024
setup (Mac) 196
setup (Windows) 201
Sketch Window Editor 609
MIDI Beat Clock 757
offsets 758
transmitting 757
transmitting over IAC 758
MIDI Chain 368
MIDI clips 859
and Clips List 433
and controller events 860
and punch recording 823
created on barlines 818
guidelines for editing 860
MIDI controller devices 809
Local Control 811
MIDI controller events
chasing 1059
MIDI Controllers 191
MIDI Editor
Automation lanes 1096
Controller lanes 1096
custom note labels 1076
editing MIDI notes 1091
Focus view 1086
MIDI Operations 1085
Notation view 1094
Note Labels view 1078
Superimposed Notes View 1087

Velocity lane 1096
MIDI Editor view (in the Edit window) 273
MIDI Editor window
Quantize Controls 1075
MIDI Editor windows 1071
Quantize controls 1074
quantize controls 1405
MIDI Event List 1123
deleting events 1130
editing events 1129
inserting events 1126
navigating in 1125
Options menu 1131
selecting events 1129
View Filter 1125
MIDI File Format pop-up menu 669
MIDI files 11
MIDI files (see Standard MIDI Files) 666
MIDI Input Device
MPE 1133
MIDI Input Display 1075
MIDI Input Monitoring Follows Selected Track 175
MIDI Input selector 320, 365
Instrument track 368
MIDI Keyboard window 827
MIDI Live Mode 821
MIDI Machine Control 1855
MIDI Machine Control (MMC) 1854
configuring in Pro Tools 1855-1856
controlling external devices with 1854
Master settings 189

Remote settings 189
MIDI Merge mode 271, 773, 813
MIDI Merge Release mode 176, 814
MIDI meter 322
MIDI Note Color Shows Velocity option 139
MIDI Note Display options 176
MIDI notes 1030
attributes 1039
chasing 1058
deleting 1040
duplicating selected 1244
editing 1029
durations 1422
pitch 1032
velocities 1037, 1419
inserting 1027
lengths in ticks 1148
mini-keyboard 1030
moving 1033
quantizing 1410
scrolling 861
selecting 1030
splitting 1428
transposing 1032, 1425
trimming start/end points 1034
MIDI Operations
in MIDI Editor 1085
MIDI Operations commands
Change Duration command 1422
Flatten Performance command 1418
Quantize command 1402

Restore Performance command 1416
Step Input command 1433
Transpose command 1425
MIDI Operations window 1400
MIDI Output selector 320, 367
Instrument track 368
MIDI plugins 1520
MIDI Polyphonic Expression (MPE) 1132
MIDI Preferences 172
Global MIDI Playback Offset preference 1060
Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data option 175, 1043, 1600
MIDI Preferences page 172
MIDI program changes
chasing 1059
MIDI Quantize command 1062
MIDI Real-Time Properties 1062
on tracks and clips 1068
Right-click track command 356
settings 1064
MIDI recording 809
canceling takes 820
enabling input devices 809
Input Filter 811
Merge/Replace mode 813
monitoring with MIDI Thru 810
quantizing on input 812, 1431
System Exclusive data 828
undoing a take 820
Wait for Note 812
MIDI Replace mode 271, 773, 813

MIDI Setup commands
Input Devices command 810
Input Filter command 811
MIDI Beat Clock command 757
MIDI Studio Setup (MSS) (Windows) 120, 201, 1054
MIDI Thru command 811
MIDI Timecode (MTC)
Idle MTC Output 187
MIDI track
MPE 1133
MIDI Track Offsets command 1060
MIDI tracks
and MIDI offsets 1059
assigning to multiple channels 816
channel strips 307
Clips View 341, 343, 859
default program change 1052
input 365
loop recording 824
note chasing 1059
Notes View 342-343, 861
output 366
punch recording 822-823
recording 809, 814
selecting a pitch range in 1430
Sysex View 1057
track controls 315
Velocity View 1037
MIDI Volume fader 322
MIDI Zoom In button 877
MIDI Zoom Out button 877

midnight boundary 1887

mini-keyboard 861, 1030

Minimize Additional I/O Latency option 118

Minimum Sync Delay option 180, 1857

Minutes:Seconds Time Scale 1144

Mirror MIDI Editing 1024

missing files 720

  skipping 538

mix busses 1475

Mix Groups 422

Mix window 257-258

  All View option 258, 1460

  EQ Curve view 1462

  None Views option 1460

  track controls 257

  track width 331

Mix Window Follows Bank Selection option 157

Mix window View options 1460

Mix Window View selector 1459

Mix Window Views

  Track Collaboration 573

mixed bit depths 236

mixed file types 236

mixing down to stereo 1654

Mixing Preferences 155

MMC 1854

MMC (see MIDI Machine Control) 1854

Modal Electronics Cobalt 8 1132

Modify Group command 420

Modify Groups command 420

Momentary Solo Latch option 373

monitoring
during punch recording 797
MIDI recording with MIDI Thru 810
monitoring modes 782
Auto Input 782
Input Only 782
MOV
Bounce to 1956
bounce with AAC audio 1960
Move Edit Left command 911
Move Edit Right command 911
Move Song Start command 1180, 1185
Move To
Right-click track command 355
Move To New Folder command 397
Move To New Folder dialog 397
Move To Top Level command 399
moving
Bar|Beat Markers 1175
clips with fades 960
fades 960
inserts 1523
Markers 1203
MIDI notes 1033
plugins to tracks of different channel widths 1524
program changes 1056
sysex events 1058
MP3 audio 652
MP3 file format 1645
MPE 1132
Edit window 1136

editing 1135
editing per-note controller data 1136
in Pro Tools 1132
Insert Note Channel option (Mono mode) 1141
MIDI Editor windows 1136
MIDI Event List 1137
mode select in MIDI Input Device dialog 1133
mode select on tracks 1133
Mono mode 1133
Mono mode note-channel management 1139
note channel color coding 1138
Poly mode 1132
recording 1135
Set Note Channel option (Mono mode) 1140
viewing per-note controller data 1136
MPE Tracks Always Show Channel option 139, 1139
MPE-enabled tracks 1133
MPEG-H 1821
export 1829
import master file 1828
MPEG-H Renderer
features 1823
installation 1824
objects and beds 1826
setup 1824
MTC (MIDI Timecode) 1845
MTC Generator Port setting 186
MTC Reader Port setting 186
MTRX 51
configuration 131
MTRX II 52

MTRX Studio 53
Multi-Cam Resolution files 691
multichannel clips 855
multichannel plugins 1674
multichannel tracks 787
and automation 1606
dragging clips to 939
names for 774
replacing clips in 1231
splitting 939
multilingual application support 737
multi-mono
plugin Channel selector 1675
plugins 1674
multi-mono audio files 220
multiple tracks
and Beat Detective 1012
audition takes 803, 986
editing across 871
extending selections to 913-914
fitting audio clips to Edit selection 941
nudging clips in 936
pasting to 871
selecting 912
separating clips on 929
shuffling clips on 1226
Mute Audio Inputs in Auto Input option 849
Mute automation 1604
Mute button 374
Mute Overwrite/Extend 1622
Mute Record-Armed Tracks While Stopped option 147, 849

Mute/Unmute Clip command 1238
muted clips and AudioSuite processing 1269
muting
clips 1239
MIDI notes 1036
sends 1473
tracks 374
MXF
importing 703
MXF (Material Exchange Format) files 703
MXF (OP-Atom) 1647

N

Narrow Mix View option 331
navigating Workspace browsers 499
New
Right-click track command 355
New Group (Groups List) command 420
New Memory Location dialog 793
New Paths dialog 78
New Paths format 1670
New Session command 95
New Subpath dialog 80
New tab 210
New Track command 332
New Track Default Output selector 70
New Tracks Are Shared option 178
New Tracks Default To Tick Timebase option 152, 663
Next Setting button (plugins) 1526
No Output option 1468
no scrolling during playback 746
Noise Burst Peak Protection option 173

NoiseWorks DynAssist Lite 1381
noncontiguous selections 907
nondestructive editing (audio) 859
nondestructive editing (MIDI) 862
Nondestructive Record mode 771
nondestructive recording 797
recording to a new playlist 799
with QuickPunch 835
Non-Linear Transport Error Suppression option 180, 1878
non-real-time plugins 1262
Normal Zoom mode 879, 1100
Notation Display Track Settings
Right-click track command 356
Notation Display Track settings 1110
Notation view 1094
Note Chasing option 1058
Note Labels view 1078
Note Selector tool 1031
notes (see MIDI notes) 1027
Notes View 342-343, 861
Nudge value 935
trimming clips by 934
trimming MIDI notes by 1034-1035
nudging 934
by next Nudge value 936
clip contents 937
clips with fades 960
fades 960
multiple clips 936
selection range 909
selection start/end points 909

selections and clips 935
setting the Nudge value 935
Number of Voices setting 117
numeric entry
shortcuts 912
Numeric Keypad modes 28, 144
Classic 28, 144
Shuttle 29, 144, 900
Transport 29, 144
Use Separate Play and Stop Keys 145

O

Object Audio (or Objects) 1716
Object controls 1732
Object Grabber tool 895, 907-908
object output path 1730
Object Path selector 1734
Object Select in Edit Window
Tracks List command 449
Object selections 907
Object View 1464
Object/Bus Toggle 1744
offline
clips 855
files, selecting in Workspace 506
Offline (faster-than-real-time) Bounce 1653
offline projects 223
offset
setting for video satellite start time 1975
OMF 701
embedded media 23
exporting 706

import translation settings 696
importing 688
linked media 23
media data 21
metadata 21, 1903
opening in Pro Tools 689
publishing options 710
Online (Transport window) 1873
Online button 267
online help 1977
Online options 147, 1879
online project 223
online recording 1852
Only Include Clips on Timeline option 697
On-Screen Selections 1887
on-the-fly punch recording
QuickPunch 772, 838
OP1a MXF files 652, 703
OP-Atom MXF files 652, 703, 1647
Open in MIDI Event List
Right-click track command 356
Open in New MIDI Editor
Right-click track command 356
Open in New Workspace 505
Open in Score Editor
Right-click track command 356
Open Revision History 253
Open Session command 230
Open tab 213
Open Unresourced DSP Plug-Ins as Native preference 172
Opening an AAF sequence in Pro Tools 689

Opening an OMF sequence in Pro Tools 689
opening plugin windows 1528
Operation Preferences 142
Audio During Fast Forward/Rewind option 743
Clip Auto Fade In/Out Length preference 955
Edit Insertion Follows Scrub/Shuttle option 898
Link Record and Play Faders option 784
Machine Chases Memory Location option 1857
Machine Follows Edit Insertion/Scrub option 1857
Record Online option 1852
Use F11 for Wait for Note 813
Operation/Destination Track pop-up menus 679
Operations menu
Calibration Mode command 765
Link Timeline and Edit Selection option 903
Link Track and Edit Selection 337, 904
Low Latency Monitoring option 785
Optimizations settings
Playback Engine 118
Optimize Performance at Low Buffer Sizes option 119
Options menu 288
Auto-Spot Clips command 1860
Delay Compensation option 1500
Destructive Record mode 798
Link Track and Edit Selection option 337, 904
Loop Playback option 752
Loop Record mode 800
MIDI Thru command 811
Mirror MIDI Editing command 1024
Pre/Post Roll option 795
Pre-Fader Metering option 324

Scrolling options 746
Solo Latch options 372
Transport Online command 1852
Organize Plug-In Menus By option 137, 1519
Organize Track I/O Menus By options 137
Original Time Stamp 1228, 1861
Other Playlists menu 967
Output Meter Path selector 69
Output Options
Sample Rate 1651
Output Path selector 320, 358
Output Window button 1686
Output windows 1466
outputs
assigning multiple outputs 1466
default 5.1 paths and sub-paths 1663
format and tracks 1669
to multichannel paths 1672
overlap crossfades 949
Overlap Shadows 864
overlapping paths 87
Overview
Folder tracks 342
Overview track view 400
Overwrite Indicator 864

P

P (Playback Only volumes) 500
Pad to Frame Boundary 1652
paddle device 1894
configuring ports for 1894
connecting to a Pro Tools system 1894

Page Scrolling option 746-747, 1081, 1106
Pan automation 1603
Pan Depth 1458, 1841
Pan indicator 321
Pan Odd Tracks Left/Even Tracks Right 697
Pan slider 321
panning
3-knob 1690
automation and groups 1607
fine-adjust mode 1690
grids 1684
guidelines 1677, 1679
Height 1740
Height mode 1739
immersive 1698
linked stereo 1487, 1689
multichannel automation playlists 1698
Size 1741
Speaker Snap 1742
take over in grid 1690
Theater mode 1737
trajectory 1692
Use Absolute Pan Linking option 156
X/Y mode 1690
Zones 1740
Parabolic command (Tempo Operations) 1169
Parallel Task Optimization preference 172
Participant menu 564
pass-through point 1573
Paste command 869
Paste Settings command 1533

Paste Special commands (automation) 1611
pasting
automation 1612
multiple data types 871
plugin settings 1535
selections and clips 869
to multiple tracks 871
with Repeat to Fill Selection command 870
Patch Select button 1052
Path Order selector 71
paths 56
active and inactive 85
audition 69
creating 77
creating multichannel 1665
customizing 82
default mono and stereo 82
default order 71
default output 70
deleting 85
editing 82
for surround 1675
last used 95
main 56
mapping 86
multichannel example 86
overlapping 87
reordering 84
selecting 84
sub-path surround examples 1678
sub-paths 56

PCM (uncompressed) audio 651
Peak Hold options 166, 324
Peak indicator 321
Peak view 856
PEC/Direct Style Input Monitoring option 147
Pencil tool 876, 901, 1025
as Eraser 1040
drawing automation 1599
editing breakpoints 1602
editing clip gain 1278
editing Tempo 1159
Free Hand 1026
inserting MIDI notes 1027
Line 1026, 1159
Random 1027
repairing waveforms with 901
resolution for inserted controller events 1043
selecting the Pencil tool shape 1026
shapes 1026, 1599
Square 1027
Triangle 1027
Pencil Tool Resolution When Drawing Controller Data option 175, 1043, 1600
pending tasks 549
Performance Volume 497
Peripherals
Enable SYNC HD 186
Ethernet controllers 192
Machine Control 189
MIDI Controllers 191
PRE 193
Satellites 193

SYNC HD settings 186
Sync X Enabled 186
Sync X settings 186
Synchronization 184
VENUE 195
Peripherals dialog 184, 809
Peripherals list 124-125
Personal for Tailored Experience option 149
personalities 1510
Personalized Head Related Transfer Function (PHRTF) 1768
PFL (Pre Fader Listen) 372
Pin (Sketch) to Session 590
pinned tracks 375
Pinned Tracks pane
Edit window 375
resizing 381
Pinned Tracks preferences 140
Pinning grouped tracks 382
pinning tracks
in the Edit window 375
pitch (MIDI notes)
transposing 1032
Pitch Memory Enabled option 187
pitch shifting 1362
pitch, for MIDI notes
transposing with Transpose command 1425
Play button 268
Play Edit Selection command 748, 750
Play MIDI Notes When Editing option 1022
Play Start Follows Timeline Selection option 143
Play Start Latency setting 148

Play Start Marker Follows Timeline Selection option 754
Play Timeline Selection command 748, 750
playback
audio 739
MIDI 740
no scrolling 746
starting 739
stopping 739
playback cursor 742
Playback Cursor locator 742
Playback Engine 107
Cache Size 119
Hardware Buffer Size 117
HDX Classic 109
HDX Hybrid 115
Number of Voices 117
Optimizations 118
Sample Rate 117
Playback Engine setting 109
Playhead 747, 1082
and Edit selections 750
and Timeline selections 750
moving to clip boundaries 751
playing
and making selections 907
at half-speed 751
audio 739
Edit selections with Playhead enabled 750
from a track point 743
MIDI 740
selections 748

Timeline selections with Playhead enabled 750
tracks 739, 788
Playlist lanes 972
Playlist selector 12, 966
playlists 12, 966
adding 967
and groups 969
and multichannel tracks 1606
and nondestructive MIDI editing 862
assigning 967
automation playlists 966, 1569, 1579
auto-naming 966
changing timebase of 1150
deleting 968
duplicating 967
edit playlists 966
Playlist selector 966
recalling 967
recording to new 799
renaming 968
setting pre/post-roll in 795
Target 990
Playlists view 972
plugin controls
adjusting 1529
linking 1548
Plug-In Controls Default to Auto-Enabled option 158
plugin inserts 1512
plugin maps 1540
creating 1542
deleting 1544

importing and exporting 1545
Learn mode 1540
managing 1543
setting default 1544
Plug-In selector
for AudioSuite plugins 1263
for real-time plugins 1525
plugin settings 1534
Plug-In Settings menu 1525, 1533
Plug-In Settings Select button 1526
plugin windows
opening and closing 1528
plugins
and pull rates 1852
and surround mixing 1674
automating 1589
bypassing from window 1546
Category 1519
Category and Manufacturer 1520
Channel selector for multi-mono 1675
creating a default setting 1535
drag and drop audio into 1549
enabling for automation 1530, 1590
favorites 1522
Flat List 1519
for surround 1674
inserting on tracks 1517
Librarian menu 1526
linking and unlinking 1548, 1674
Manufacturer 1520
mono-to-stereo 1513

moving to a track of a different channel width 1524
multichannel 1513
multi-mono 1513, 1674
Next Setting button 1526
Organize Plug-In Menus By command 1519
Plug-In Settings menu 1525
Plug-In Settings Select button 1526
presets 1532
Previous Setting button 1526
removing from tracks 1517
Plugins
searching for 1521
post crossfades 944, 955
Post-Roll button 269
Power view 856
PRE 54
configuring 193
I/O Setup 63
pre crossfades 944, 955
Pre Fader Listen (PFL) mode 372
PRE settings 687
Pre/Post Fader button 1489
Pre/Post Roll option 795
pre/post-fader inserts 1512
pre/post-roll
and loop recording 800
and punch recording 796
auditioning 748
setting 794
Pre/Post-Roll Flags 795, 904
Pre-Fader Metering option 324

preferences
Automatically Copy Files on Import option 673
changing 135
DestructivePunch 836
DestructivePunch File Length 844
global 182
local 182
Mute Audio Inputs in Auto Input 849
Mute Record-Armed Tracks While Stopped 849
Pause during Playback 549
Project Media Cache setting 145
Remote mode 1891
Tool Tips Display 290
TrackInput 783
TrackPunch 836
Zoom Toggle 153
Preferences dialog 135
Prepare DPE Tracks command 845
Pre-Process using Standard Conform 1016
pre-roll
compensating 1877
machine 1877
setting for machine from Pro Tools 1877
Pre-Roll button 269
Preserve Fades when Editing option 152
Preserve Folder Hierarchy command 238
presets
plugin maps 1540
plugins 1532
Presets
Bounce Mix 1643

Prevent Others from Overwriting Open Session File Extension option 178
Prevent Tearing option 148
preview
AudioSuite processing 1267
in context 536
reserving voices 536
voice requirements 536
Preview Volume
AudioSuite 1268
previewing
audio in browsers 532
clips in the Clips List 442
Previous Setting button (plugins) 1526
Prime for Playback mode (Play Pause) 751
Prime for Record mode (Record Pause) 789
Print Score 1122
Pro Tools
Audio Pull Up and Pull Down 1979
Clock Reference setting 1979
configuring for Dolby Atmos Renderer with Core Audio 1719
Copy MIDI from and paste to Sibelius score 670
Drop Frame setting 1979
file management 719
Help 288
Knowledge Base 288
link controls 1984
displaying 1984
linking and unlinking systems 1984
main menus 287
Non-Drop Frame setting 1979
session file 221

session file icon 8
Session Start setting 1979
systems 35
Timecode Rate setting 1979
Transport Master 1874, 1881
Video Format setting 1979
Video Satellite 1978
Video Satellite settings 1979
video track 1928
Web browsers 277
Pro Tools | Carbon 35, 42
DSP Mode 1555
Pro Tools | Carbon Expanded system 43
Pro Tools | Carbon Pre 43
Pro Tools | MachineControl 1867
Pro Tools | MTRX 51
Pro Tools | MTRX II 52
Pro Tools | MTRX Studio 53
Pro Tools | S6 1508
Pro Tools Aggregate I/O 111
Pro Tools and Avid terms 22
Pro Tools application language 737
Pro Tools Artist
software capabilities 37
Pro Tools Artist software 35
Pro Tools Audio Bridge 200
Pro Tools Extensions 275
Pro Tools HD systems 35
Pro Tools Immersive Panner 1698
Pro Tools Intro
software capabilities 36

Pro Tools Intro software 35
Pro Tools menu
Quit command (Mac) 255
Pro Tools Projects list 559
Pro Tools Projects window 550
Pro Tools Satellite 1962
Pro Tools Search 30
Pro Tools Sketch 17, 206, 587
Pro Tools Sketch app 206
Pro Tools Stem Separator 485
Pro Tools Studio
software capabilities 38-39
Pro Tools Studio software 35
Pro Tools systems
QuickPunch 834
Pro Tools Ultimate
capabilities with HD Native hardware 45
capabilities with HDX hardware 44
Pro Tools Video Satellite 1962, 1972
Process Mode selector 1265
processing
AudioSuite 1269
multichannel for AudioSuite 1269
processing bandwidth 131
Processing Preferences 169
Profile 550
program changes 1052
and bank select 1052
auditioning 1057
default, for MIDI tracks 1052
deleting 1056

editing 1056
inserting 1056
moving 1056
Program Level Metadata
ADM file 1784
project
save as a session 245
project chat 558
Project Media Cache 145
Project messages 560
Project Notes window 249
project ownership 568
Project Type (Media Composer) 1979
projects 16, 222
deleting 251
invitation to collaborate 555
leaving 557
offline 223
online 223
project chat 558
putting online 254
removing participants 556
renaming 250
restore from cloud 252
sharing 566
sharing offline 723
taking offline 254
Projects
in the Artist Chat window 553
Projects list
pinning projects 565

unpinning projects 565
pull up and pull down 1849, 1852
Pull Up/Down settings 1848
pulses-per-frame
Bi-Phase/Tach 187
Punch Capture button 1632
Punch In Frame Offset 1891
Punch In Frame Offset preference 181
Punch In/Out 1886
Punch Out Frame Offset 1891
Punch Out Frame Offset preference 181
punch points 790
Timeline Selection Markers 791
Punch Preview button 1631
punch recording
and monitoring 797
and pre/post-roll 796
audio 796
MIDI 822
MIDI tracks 823

Q

Quantize
audio clips 1406, 1415
Elastic Audio events 1406, 1415
MIDI Editor windows 1074
quantizing clips to grid 938
Real-Time Properties 1064
Quantize Clips to Grid command 1228
Quantize command 1400, 1402
Quantize Controls 1075
Quantize controls 1405

Quantize Edits to Frame Boundaries option 707
Quantize to Grid command 938
Quantize window 1407
quantizing
MIDI notes 1410
MIDI on input 812, 1431
QuickPunch 772, 834, 838
clip/take numbering 835
crossfades 836
Pro Tools HD systems 834
QuickPunch Crossfade Length preference 152, 836
QuickTime movies
optimizing for playback 1951
sync 1952
Quit command (Mac) 255

R

R (Record and Playback volumes) 500
Randomize Marker Color Upon Creation option 140
randomizing
note durations 1424
note locations 1407
Read automation mode 1573
Read Trim automation mode 1576
real-time plugins 1512
Real-Time Properties
clearing 1069
clip-based 1068
Delay 1067
Display Events as Modified by Real-Time Properties option 175
Duration 1065
enabling 1064

in the Edit window 1070
in the MIDI Event List 1069
on tracks and clips 1068
Quantize 1064
settings 1064
track-based 1068
Transpose 1067
Velocity 1067
View 1062
viewing 1062
writing to clips 1069
writing to tracks 1068
Real-Time Properties View 1062, 1464
Real-Time Properties window 1063
Rear Divergence 1693
Recalculate Waveform Overviews
Tracks List command 448
Recall Memory Location Selection at Original Track option 152
Recall Track Preset
Right-click track command 355
Record button (Transport) 268
Record Enable button 776, 840
Record Enable Buttons
Cancel Previous on All Tracks preference 146
Cancel Previous on Audio Tracks preference 146
Latch Audio Tracks preference 145
record modes 771, 1886
and MIDI 773
Destructive Record mode 772
Loop Record mode 772
Nondestructive Record mode 771

QuickPunch 772
Record Online at Insertion/Selection option 147, 1879
Record Online at Timecode (or ADAT) Lock option 147, 1879
Record Online option 1852
record protocol 1886
Auto Edit 1886
Punch In/Out 1886
Record Safe mode 778
recording 787
a mono audio track 787
a stereo audio track 787
a submix to disk 1639
additional takes 797
at half-speed 807
bouncing to disk 1640
canceling takes 789
destructively 798
from a digital source 805
from Record Pause mode 789
Instrument tracks 814
keyboard shortcuts 789
Loop Record 800
MIDI clips 818
MIDI tracks 814
multichannel tracks 787
multiple audio tracks 789
nondestructively 797
online 1852
QuickPunch mode 838
record enabling tracks 776
Remote mode 1892

status LED 840
System Exclusive data 828
to a new playlist 799
to the system volume 781
undoing a take 788
with a count off 767
with Round Robin Allocation 780
with the click 765
Rectified view 856
Recycle (Rex 1 and 2) 652
Redefine Current Timecode Position 1880
redefining
Feet+Frames position 1847
timecode position 1847
Redo command 865
Refer to Source Audio Media Where Possible 693
Refer To Source Media 709
refresh rate 1977
Regenerate Missing Rendered Files 721
Regroup Clip command 1253
regular expressions 453
related takes
and Separate Clip command 929
Relative Grid mode 874, 1229
relinking
Find Links 541
Linking Options 542
Remote 9-Pin Deck Emulation mode 1871, 1888
Chase LTC 1890
connections 1870
preferences 1891

see also Remote mode 1891
Remote LTC mode
Transport Master 1875, 1890
Remote mode
and track arming 1892
Auto Edit 1892
commands 1893
playback 1892
recording 1892
Transport Master 1875, 1890
Remote Mode options 180
Remove Duplicate Notes command 1061
Remove Edit From Bottom command 913
Remove Edit From Top command 913
Remove Local Cache 250
Remove Sync Point command 1233
removing
crossfades 954
plugins from tracks 1517
sends 1470
Rename
Right-click track command 355
Tracks List command 448
Rename command (Clips List) 443
Renamed Audio Files
save copy in 722
renaming
auto-created clips 443
clips in the Clips List 443
clips on tracks 862
Memory Locations 1202

playlists 968
renaming project versions 241
Render Clip Effects command 1285
Render Clip Effects settings 1285
Render Clip Gain command 1282
Rendered File Bit Depth options 171, 1392
Rendered Files folder 221, 1345
Renderer Migration Utility 735
Renumber Bars command 1186
Repeat command 1244
Repeat to Fill Selection command 870
repeating selections and clips 1244
RePitch Elements 1382
RePitch Standard 1382
Replace Clip
Tracks List command 448
Replace Clip command 1230
and multichannel tracks 1231
Replace Clip dialog 1231
Replace mode (see MIDI Replace mode) 773
Reserve Voices For Preview In Context option 143, 536
Reset Bi-Phase button 188
Reset Logging 149
Restore Performance command 1400, 1416
Restore version 242
rests (Score Editor) 1117
Retrospective Record 831
Return to Zero button 267
Reveal in Explorer (Windows)
Tracks List command 449

Reveal in Finder (Mac
Tracks List command) 449
Reveal in Finder/Explorer 505
Reveal in Workspace
Tracks List command 449
Revert to Saved command 233
Revision History 239
Restore 242
Version List 240
ReVoice Pro 1384
Rewind 743
Rewind button 267
REX files
importing 659
RF64 651
RF64 audio file format 722
ROLI Seaboard 1132
Root Settings folder 951, 1533-1534
Round Robin Allocation 780
Route Tracks to New Folder option 398
Routing Coefficients
Current Session settings 161
New Session defaults 161
Routing Coefficients preferences 161
Routing Folder tracks 389, 392
channel strips 310
track controls 318
Ruler View options 1145
Bars|Beats Time Scale 1144
Feet+Frames Time Scale 1145
Minutes:Seconds Time Scale 1144

Samples Time Scale 1145
Timecode Time Scale 1144
Ruler View selector 1146
rulers
changing display order 1145
Conductor rulers 1145
displaying all 1145
pull up and pull down 1852
scrolling in 919
Timebase rulers 1143
zooming in 881
RX Spectral Editor 1376

S

S6 1508
safing automation 1579
Sample Offset (Sync Offset) 1845
Sample Rate Conversion options 678, 696, 708
Sample Rate Conversion Quality 171, 652, 662, 696, 709, 1942
Sample Rate Convert Audio 696
Sample Rate setting 1651
Hardware Setup dialog 122
Playback Engine dialog 117
sample-based timing 1148, 1200
Samples Time Scale 1145
Satellite Administrator 1962
Satellite Link 1962
administrator 1962
option 193
preferences 181
Satellites 193
Save As command 234

Save command 233
Save Copy In command 234-235
Save History 240
Save Logs 149
Save Track Preset
Right-click track command 355
Save Track Preset dialog 404
saving a copy of a session 234
saving Fades settings
Save Settings As command 951
Save Settings command 951
saving plugin settings 1535
Save fade settings to command 951
Save Plug-In Settings To command 1534
Save Settings As command 1533
Save Settings command 1533
saving sessions with a new name 233
Scale command (Tempo Operations) 1172
scaling note velocities 1038, 1420
Scan Audio File(s) for Irregularities 507
Scene
dragging from Sketch window to session Timeline 602
in Sketches 601
Score Editor
chord symbols and diagrams 1120
editing in 1114
exporting a score 1122
opening 1099
page controls 1108
printing 1122
rests 1117

zoom controls 1108
Score Setup window 1112
Scroll Into View
Right-click track command 355
Scroll Into View command 338
Scroll to Track Banks Controllers option 157
Scroll To Track dialog 337
scroll wheel
and MIDI track Note display 862, 886
scrolling a Pro Tools window 919
zooming in the Edit window 886
zooming in the Edit windows 886
scrolling
a track into view 338
in the ruler 919
MIDI Notes View 861
Mix and Edit windows to tracks 920
Notes View up or down 886
Pro Tools window vertically or horizontally 919
Scrolling options 746
After Playback 746
Center Playhead 747
Continuous Scrolling During Playback 747
No Scrolling 746
Page 746-747, 1081, 1106
Scrub Trim tool 890
Scrubber tool 876, 898
in Shuttle mode 899
selecting with 914
scrubbing 898
a single audio track 899

and edit cursor 898
on two audio tracks 899
playback speed and direction 899
resolution 899
video tracks 1948
with Scrub Trim tool 890
with the Selector 899
S-Curve command (Tempo Operations) 1170
SD II files
convert on import 661
SDDS surround formats 1659
Search
and assign multiple Send paths 1472
AudioSuite plugins by name 30
clips by name 30
commands 30
Memory Locations 30
Plugin Insert menu 1521
Send selector 1471
tags 525
Track Groups by name 30
Track Input selector 360
Track Output and assign multiple paths 361
Track Output selector 360
tracks by name 30
search mode 1883
Secondary Timecode Ruler 1144
Select All command 906
Select Clips List options 441
Select Parent in Workspace option 439
Select Tracks in Group command 420

Select Unused Clips command 447
Select/Split Notes command 1400, 1428, 1430
Split notes action 1429
Selected Timeline Range Only option 713
selecting
a pitch range of notes 1430
across all tracks 913
across multiple tracks 912
clips 906
during playback 907
in MIDI Event List 1129
items in browsers 515
MIDI notes 1030
noncontiguous clips 907
notes in a chord 1430
track material 905
with Edit Selection indicators 912
with Scrubber 914
selecting tracks for AudioSuite processing 1270
Selection Changes Alternate Playlists option 1150
Selection commands
Play Edit Selection 748
Play Timeline 748
Selection Memory Location 1200
moving stored selection 1203
selections
across multiple tracks 905, 912
and Bounce Mix 1641
and Edit Groups 905
and hidden tracks 905
and Timeline Selection Markers 905

auditioning start and end points 749
changing length 909
clearing 870
consolidating 940
copying 868
cutting 868
duplicating 1243
during playback 907
extending 910, 1162
extending to the Meter Ruler 1179
extending to the Tempo ruler 1154, 1204
including Conductor rulers 913
looping 752
moving to adjacent tracks 914
moving to the next/previous clip 915
non-contiguous 907
nudging 909, 935
nudging start/end points 909
Object 907
pasting 869
playing 748
repeating 1244
shifting 1234
storing with Memory Locations 1200
Selector tool 742, 876, 893
making a Timeline selection 895
making an Edit selection 894
placing the edit cursor 894
scrubbing with 899
selecting an entire clip 894
selecting an entire track 894

selecting MIDI notes with 1030
Send fully overlapped clips to playlist while editing option 151
Send fully overlapped clips to playlist while recording option 151
Send level 1468
Send mute 1468
Send pan 1468
Send Pans Default to Follow Main Pan option 156
Send to Back command (Clip menu) 1157
Send To Sibelius command 1122
sends 1468
adding 1469
and multichannel mixing 1673
Assignments View 1476
automating 1587
changing default setting 1470
copying track automation to 1588
default level 1470
displaying controls for 1478
for hardware I/O 1475
for mix busses 1475
labeling 1550
mono or stereo 1475
multichannel 1673
removing 1470
view options 1475
Sends
AAX Renderer beds 1481
Pre/Post-fader indicators 1481
searching paths 1471
Sends Default to -INF option 156
Sends View 1461

Separate Clip commands 927
and multiple tracks 929
and related takes 929
At Selection 928
At Transients 928
On Grid 928
Separate Clip Operates On All Related Takes option 151, 929
Separate MIDI notes 1035
Separation Grabber tool 895, 930
Serial Deck Control mode 1871, 1875
serial timecode 1877
Serum 2 1132
servo lock 1877
session
save as a project 243
session data
importing 670
Session Data Online Status indicator 261
Session Data to Import menu 682
session file 221
Session File Backups folder 222
Session Length 1841
session parameters 236
Session Setup
Session Length 1841
Session Setup window 1838
Audio Format 1841
Bite Depth 1840
Clock Master 1840
External Timecode Offsets 1844
Feet+Frames Rate 1842

Format section 1840
Freewheel settings 1845
Interleaved 1841
LTC Sample Offset 1845
Pan Depth 1841
Pull Up/Down 1848
Sample Offset 1845
Sample Rate 1840
Session Start 1841, 1846
SYNC Setup section 1843
Sync X Setup 1842
System Delay 1841
Timecode 2 Rate 1842
Timecode display 1842
Timecode Rate 1842
Session Start setting 1846, 1979
sessions 8
audio format 1841
backups 145, 222
bit depth 219, 1840
closing 250
creating for surround mixing 1661
files 8
frame rate 1842
interleaved 220, 1841
interleaved multichannel audio files 220
mixed audio formats 220, 236
mixed bit depths 236
multi-mono audio files 220
opening 230
opening from a Transfer volume 231

sample rate 219, 1840
sharing between different versions 726
sharing between Pro Tools Ultimate and Pro Tools 724
sharing between Pro Tools Ultimate, Studio, and Artist 725
start frame 1841
templates 246
Set As User Default command 1533
Set Plug-In Default To command 1534
Set Record Tracks to Auto Input command 783
Set Record Tracks to Auto Input option 782
Set Record Tracks to Input Only command 783
Set Record Tracks to Input Only option 782
Set Servo Lock Bit at Play option 181
setting
punch/loop points 790
satellite start time offset 1975
settings
choosing a destination for 1534
copying 1535
creating 1535
creating subfolders 1534
pasting 1535
saving 1535
Settings Preferences command 1534
Setup menu 288
Click/Countoff Options dialog 767
Disk Allocation 779
I/O Setup 55
MIDI Studio 1054
Preferences command 135
Session Setup 1838

Video Sync Offset command 1952
Share Track control 574
Shared as Frozen option 576
Shared track, unowned 577
Shared Tracks Conflict 242
Shift command 1234
shortcuts for keyboard input 1529
Show All Tracks Group command 421
Show Artist Chat button 570
Show Auto-Created option 447
Show Marker Lane Colors For options 140
Show Offline Volumes 505
Show Only Tracks in Group command 421
Show Target Playlist(s) After Sending Clip Selection option 152
Show/Hide Tracks in Group command 420
Show/Hide Tracks List/Groups List View button 350, 419
Shuffle Lock mode 872
Shuffle mode 872
and locked clips 1237-1238
and moving clips 1225
shuttle
fixed mode option 900
Shuttle Numeric Keypad mode 29, 144, 900
Sibelius
Copy MIDI from and paste to Pro Tools session 670
Sibelius (.sib) file 1122
Side % (Percentage) 1693
side-chain 1530
filters 1530
processing 1525

signal flow
audio tracks 1449
Auxiliary Inputs 1450
Instrument tracks 1453
Master Faders 1451
signal paths 56
signal routing
and default path order 71
basics for surround 1671
example 15
surround examples 1679
Single Zoom mode 880, 1100
SIP (Solo In Place) 371
Size setting (for window dub) 188
Sketch 587
adding MIDI notes in Clip Editor 609
Arrangement 602
clip Editor 607
Clip Properties 600
clips 596
creating in Pro Tools 587
creating new in Pro Tools 588
deleting MIDI notes in Clip Editor 609
dragging Arrangement to session Timeline 603
Global FX 620
mixer 618
opening in Pro Tools 588
pin to session 590
playing back clips 597
Pro Tools Sketch Window controls 590
recording audio clips 598

recording MIDI clips 598
saving 234
saving in Pro Tools 589
Scenes 601
Sketch Window Preferences 594
Sketch Window toolbar 592
tracks 604
zooming in the Sketch window 609
Sketch app 587
Sketch window 17, 206, 587
Media Browser 590
Sketches 17, 206, 587
Skip All 720
Slewing options 149
slices 999
Slip mode 873
and moving clips 1226
Smart Tool 876, 895
adjusting fades with 896
creating crossfades with 896
creating fades with 896
editing automation 898
editing controller events with 898
Elastic Audio tracks 896
MIDI tracks 897
multichannel tracks 898
Smart Tool Fade Adjustment 153
Smooth and Thin Data After Pass option 158, 1599
smoothing automation 1578
SMPTE ID 693
SMPTE IDs 719

Snap Pan to Speaker icons 1689
Snap To Bar option 1178
Snap To commands 1224
Snap To Grid 874
snapping to the following or preceding clip 1224
snapshot automation 1626
adding to empty automation playlists 1627
and trim values 1628
writing over existing automation 1627
Solo button 371
Solo in Place (SIP) mode 371
Solo Latch options 372
Solo modes 371-372
Solo Safe mode 373
soloing
tracks 371
tracks in a submix 1500
Song Start Marker 1151
editing tempo 1152
moving 1151
Sony Dynamic Digital Sound (SDDS) 1659
Sort By options 437
sorting
clips 437
data in browsers 509
Markers 1209
Sound Designer II
convert on import 661
Sound Libraries 494
adding 523
removing 523

Sound Resource (AIDL – Mac Only) 652
Soundbase
Assign Tags popover window 528
excluding tags from search 526
searching tags 525
Sound Libraries 494
SoundFlow 479
Flows 482
macros 480
SoundRadix 1381
Source Audio Sample Rate 696, 708
source media 693, 709
Source Path 1647
Space Clips command 1235
Spacebar Toggles File Preview 504
Special Paste 1612
SpectraLayers 1384
SpectraLayers Go 1384
speech to text 1298
Splice 456
auditioning search results 465, 474
metadata filters 457
search by text 457
Search with Sound 462, 471
split (MIDI) 1428
Split Into Mono
Right-click track command 356
Split Into Mono Track command 939, 1669
split mono audio files 220
Split notes action 1429
splitting stereo and multichannel tracks 939

Spot clip to Edit insertion point from Clips List 1219
Spot dialog 1227, 1859
Use Subframes option 1859
User Time Stamp button 1861
Spot mode 873, 1858
and moving clips 1226
trimming clips in 1861
Spot to Edit Insertion
Tracks List command 448
Spot To Edit Insertion 506
spotting
auto-spotting 1860
clips 1227, 1858, 1860
SRC (Sample Rate Conversion) options 678
Standard MIDI Files 666
exporting 668
importing 665
Standard VCA Logic for Group Attributes option 159
start frame (sessions) 1841
start time 1880
start time for Media Composer sequences 1983
Start To Insertion command 932
Start, End, and Length display 792
Starting TC Timecode setting
matching to Session Start setting 1979
Steep Breakpoint Smoothing Time preference 160
Steinberg 1384-1385
Stem Separator 485
auditioning stems 493
clear stems 493
importing stems 491

installing 486
processing audio files 492
Step Input command 1400, 1433
stepped control automation 1604
stereo interleaved files, exporting 665
stereo tracks
dragging clips to 939
names for 774
replacing clips in 1231
splitting 939
Stop at Shuttle Speed Zero option 180, 1878
Stop button 268
Stretch command (Tempo Operations) 1173
Strip Silence command 1239-1241
stuck notes 1061
stutter 1977
Sub Counter selectors 1148
Sub Time Scale 1148, 1848
subfolders, creating for settings 1534
subframes 1859
submixes
applying an insert to 1496
bouncing to disk 1639
soloing tracks in 1500
sub-paths 56, 80
examples for surround 1676
supported audio file formats 651
Suppress Automation “Write To” Warnings option 158
Suppress Name Dialog When Creating New Playlists option 152
surround
5.1 format paths 1666

and sends 1673
basic signal routing 1671
center percentage (%) 1695
configuring Pro Tools 1661, 1668
discrete level, solo, mute 1669
importing I/O Settings 1664
pan playlists and automation 1698
panning grids 1684
settings files 1662
side center percentage (%) 1696
using paths 1675
using sub-paths, examples 1676
Suspend All Groups (Groups List) command 420
suspending
automation 1595-1596
writing automation 1595
swing 1407, 1409
SYNC HD
Clock Reference selector 1843
enable 186
Peripherals dialog 186
Positional Reference 1843
preventing clock disruption on Mac 1864
Pull Up/Down settings 1848
resolving to 1837
Session Setup window 1843
Video In Format 1843
Video Ref Format 1843
VSO 1843
Sync Offset 1845

SYNC peripherals
generating timecode with 1853
resolving with 1837
sync options 1837
Sync Point View option 1233
sync points 1862
for clips 1232
from Beat Detective 1017
identifying 1233, 1862
Sync X
Clock Reference Source 1842
enable 186
Peripherals dialog 186
Positional Reference Format 1843
preventing clock disruption on Mac 1864
Pull Up/Down settings 1848
resolving to 1837
Session Setup window 1842
Video Format 1843
Video Reference Source 1843
VSO 1843
Synchro Arts 1382
synchronization 184
black burst 1863
MIDI Beat Clock 757
MMC 1854
options 1837
resolving 1863
troubleshooting 1863, 1977-1979
Synchronization Device settings 186
synchronization peripherals 54

Synchronization Preferences 179
Sysex View 1057
System Delay 1841
System Exclusive data 1057
deleting 1058
moving 1058
recording 828
system resources 18
system settings
Cache Size 119
Clock Master system setting 123
Hardware Buffer Size 107, 117
Hardware Setup 122
Number of Voices 117
Playback Engine 109
Sample Rate 117
System Usage window 131, 133
systems
ASIO 35
AVB 35
Core Audio 35
hardware accelerated 35
HD 35
HD Native 35
HDX 35
Pro Tools 35
Pro Tools | Carbon 35
Pro Tools Artist 35
Pro Tools Intro 35
Pro Tools Studio 35
Pro Tools Ultimate 35

WASAPI 35

T

T (Transfer volumes) 500
Tab to Transients button 746, 915
Tags
adding 527
Assign Tags popover window 528
editing 527
excluding from search 526
searching 525
take over (surround pan) 1690
takes
auditioning 801
default names 774
matching alternates 801, 984
MIDI 826
multiple tracks 803, 986
numbering for QuickPunch 835
recording additional 797
selecting an alternate take 801, 985
Tandem Trimming option 893
tanscription 1298
tapping in the tempo 770
Target button (plugins) 1527
Target playlist 990
Target Project Timecode Format 707
Task 261
Task Manager 546, 659
Task Manager Status indicator 261
tasks
failed 549

grouped 549
paused 548
pausing during playback 549
pending 549
TC/E Plug-In preference 171, 889
TCE Edit to Timeline command 941
TCE Trim tool 888-890
templates
Beat Detective 1009
DigiGroove 1009
Pro Tools session 246
tempo
current 1152
default 769
display 271
effects on Markers and Memory Locations 1200
Manual Tempo mode 770
tapping in 770
Tempo Edit Density pop-up menu 1161
Tempo Editor 1159
Tempo Event Warp markers 1156
Tempo Event–generated Warp markers 1352
tempo events 1152
and Bar|Beat Markers 1175
editing 1153
extending selections to 1163
inserting 1152
tempo map 687
from Identify Beat command 1174
Tempo Operations commands
Constant command 1167

Linear command 1168
Parabolic command 1169
Scale command 1172
S-Curve command 1170
Stretch command 1173
Tempo Operations window 1166
Tempo Resolution selector 1160
Tempo ruler
displaying 1152
extending an Edit selection to 1154, 1204
Tempo Ruler Enable button 271
Theater mode 1737
Thin All Automation command 1599
Thin Automation command 1599
thinning automation 1578, 1599
tick-based timing 1148, 1200
Time Compression/Expansion plugin 941
Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool 171, 888
trimming MIDI 1041
Time Grabber tool 895, 908
Time Operations commands 1180
Change Meter command 1180
Cut Time command 1184
Insert Time command 1182
Move Song Start command 1185
Time Operations window 1177, 1180
Time Scale 1146
Bars|Beats 1144
Feet+Frames 1145
Main 1147, 1848
Minutes:Seconds 1144

Samples 1145
Sub 1148, 1848
Timecode 1144
Time Slots meter 132
Time Stamp
Tracks List command 448
Time Stamp command 803, 986, 1861
Time Stamp Selected command 1228
time stamps 710, 1861
Bounce Mix 1641
Timebase rulers 1143
and Timeline selections 917
Edit Markers 904
Pre/Post-Roll Flags 904
sliding Edit selections 915
sliding Timeline selections 918
Timecode 2 1144
Timeline Selection Markers 904
Timecode
configuration 1846
format 1846
preparing 1846
Start Frame 1846
start frame (sessions) 1841
SYNC HD 1837
Sync X 1837
timecode 1979
and Jam Sync 1845
and Pro Tools Drop Frame limitations 1982
capturing 1860
compensating for start time offsets 1975, 1983

forcing a match on a satellite system 1982
freewheeling 1845
generating 1852
matching between Pro Tools/satellite 1982
matching format for 1981
redefine current 1880
redefining position 1847
track 1887
Timecode 2 Rate setting 1842
Timecode 2 ruler 1144
Timecode display 1842, 1848
Timecode Format 1979
Timecode Mapping options 678
on import 695
Timecode Overlay
configure 1953
Timecode Overlay button 1929
Timecode Rate setting 1842, 1979
Timecode Time Scale 1144
Timeline and Edit selection, unlinked 903
Timeline Data Online Status indicator 261
Timeline Drop Order option 1217
Timeline Insertion/Play Start Marker Follows Playback option 747, 755
Timeline Selection Markers 791, 904
and Edit selections 905
selection length 909
Timeline selections 917
Timeline selections 916
auditioning with Playhead enabled 750
copied from Edit selection 918
copied to Edit selection 918

in Timebase rulers 917
making with the Selector tool 895
sliding in the Ruler 918
start, end, and length fields 269
Timeline Selection Markers 917
Time-locking clips 1238
toggling
track height 348
Track View 347
Tool Tips 137, 290
Toolbar focus 28
Touch automation mode 1573
Touch Timeout option 158
Touch Trim automation mode 1576
Touch/Latch automation mode 1575
Track and Master Meter Types Linked option 164
track arming
112-track IDs 1898
and Remote mode 1892
create machine profile 1885
IDs 1896
ignore 1893
remapping tracks 1885
Track Bounce 1397
Track Bounce dialog 1397
Track Channel Width
changing 338
Track Collaboration controls 574
Track Collaboration tools 569
Track Color View 1465
Track Commit 1386

Track Compensation (cmp) indicator 1503
track compositing 970
track controls
audio tracks 310
Auxiliary Input tracks 311
Basic Folder tracks 317
Edit window 311-319
Elastic Audio 1342
Instrument tracks 316
Master Fader tracks 313
MIDI tracks 315
Routing Folder tracks 318
VCA Master tracks 314
video tracks 319
track data 854
Track Format
channel width filtering 1670
Track Freeze 1392
Track Groups 417
Track Height 348
resizing 348
track layout
default path order 71
track level meters 322
Track Marker
creating 1196
Track menu 287
Clear All Clip Indicators command 324-325, 1478
Delete command 339
Duplicate command 339, 1572
Group command 422

Make Inactive command 375
New Track command 332
Set Record Tracks to Auto Input 782-783
Set Record Tracks to Input Only 782-783
Split Into Mono command 939, 1669
Write MIDI Real-Time Properties command 1069
Track Name commands 354
Track Name/Comments dialog 335
Track Number command 336
Track Offset options 678, 695
track ownership
rejecting a request for 580
rejecting request 580
relinquishing 579-580
requesting 578
rescinding 579
responding to a request 579
seizing 579
Track Ownership control 577, 579
Track Ownership Request indicator 570, 579
Track Position Numbers Stay with Hidden Tracks option 137
Track Presets 404
creating 404
in Workspace browsers 413
saving 404
saving Folder tracks 406
Track Presets files (.ptxp) 410
Track Record Enable indicator 269
Track selector 1525
Track Transcription Lane 1299, 1316

Track View 341
Blocks 342
changing 346
Clips 341, 343, 859
edit content 867
Master View 1610
Notes 342-343, 861
Overview 342
Playlists 972
Sysex 1057
toggling 347
Velocity 1037
Waveform 855
Track View selector 344
Track View Toggle 347
track width 331
TrackInput Monitor button 782
TrackInput Monitor indicator 269
TrackPunch
crossfades 836
preferences 836
tracks 9
5.1 format track layout 1668
adding comments 336
adding to selection 913-914
appending new material to end of 798
Color Coding options 383
commit 1386
conflicts between track and cloud copies 580
converting multichannel tracks into mono tracks 1669
creating a click track 766

creating new Elastic Audio tracks 1341

deleting 338

duplicating 339, 1572

Elastic Audio 1339

formats 302

freeze 1392

grouping 417

hiding 352-353

locating with Fast Forward/Rewind 743

making inactive/active 375

Master View 347, 1610

metering 324

moving selections between 914

muting 374

names 331, 334

pinned (in the Edit window) 375

placing clips in 1217

playback priority 364

playing 739, 788

record enabling 776

remapping 1885

scrolling shortcut 920

search by name 30

selecting across multiple 912

selecting clips 906

selecting in Timebase rulers 913

selecting material in 905

soloing 371

surround 1668

Track Height 348

Track View 341, 346

transposing 1425
trimming unwanted data from 932
types 301
video 1926
Tracks (Groups List) command 420
Tracks List 350
Cloud icon 581
Folder tracks 354
hiding 350
menu 351
showing 350
Tracks List Right-click menu
Download 354
Ignore for Future Download 354
Import 354
Tracks Presets
creating new tracks from 410
trajectory panning 1692
Transcribe
Right-click command 356
transcribe
audio clip 1300, 1317
audio track 1299, 1315
in the Workspace 1315, 1333
Transcript window 1304, 1322
Transcription 1298
edit words 1318
Separate Clips 1333
transcription
editing 1312, 1330
Files view 1309, 1327

re-transcribe 1300, 1318
Timeline view 1307, 1325
Transfer files 720
selecting in Workspace 506
Transfer volume 497
transients 855
detecting with Beat Detective 1003
tabbing to 746, 915
Transparency 864
transparent clip overlays 1221
Transport 266
Count Off 767
Meter 769
Metronome 767
Transport Master 1856, 1871, 1873, 1882
machine 1874, 1881
Pro Tools 1874, 1881
Remote 1875, 1890
Remote LTC 1875, 1890
selecting 1873
toggling 1874
transport master 1881
Remote LTC 1890
toggling 1882
Transport Numeric Keypad mode 29, 144
Transport Online option 1852
Transport RecordLock option 146, 837, 848
Transport View options 270, 741, 792, 794
Transport window 266
MIDI controls 270
pre/post-roll 269, 794

record status display 840
start, end, and length fields 269, 792
transport controls 266
Transpose
Elastic Audio 1363
MIDI notes 1425
Real-Time Properties 1067
Transpose command 1400, 1425
transposing 1425
by octave 1427
key 1427
MIDI notes 1032
tracks 1425
Trim automation
coalescing 1615
Trim Automation commands 1628
Trim to All Enabled 1629
Trim to Current 1629
Trim Clip commands
End to Fill Selection 933
End to Insertion 932
Start to Fill Selection 933
Start to Insertion 932
To File 934
To Fill Selection 933
To Selection 932
Trim Clip to File Boundaries command 934
Trim Clip to File End command 934
Trim Clip to File Start command 934
Trim to All Enabled Automation command 1629
Trim to Current Automation command 1629

trim tool
tandem trimming 893
Trim tool
when Transport = Machine 1874, 1882
Trim tools 876, 887
Loop Trim tool 891
Scrub Trim tool 890
Time Compression/Expansion Trim tool 171, 888, 1041
trimming automation 1163, 1603
trimming clip gain 1279
trimming
automation breakpoints 1163, 1603, 1614
clip gain breakpoints 1279
clip start/end points 887
clips by Nudge value 934, 1034-1035
clips to Edit insertion point 932
clips with Scrub Trim tool 890
crossfades 954
note start/end points 1034
unwanted clip and track data 932
Tweak Head setting (Conversion Quality) 1942

U

UI Customization 292
UI Theme setting 138
UI Themes 291
unavailable resources 231
Undo command 788, 865
Undo History window 866
Undo Queue 866
Ungroup All Clips command 1253
Ungroup Clips command 1253

Unicode language support 736

Unique ID 693, 719

Universe view 920

unlinked Timeline and Edit selection 903

unlinking plugin controls 1548, 1674

Unlock Clip command 1237

Unloop Clips command 1249

Upload All New Changes button 570

Upload command 576

Upload Ruler Changes control 583

Upload Ruler Changes Right-click menu 583

Upload Track Changes control 575

Use Absolute Pan Linking option 156

Use F11 for Wait for Note option 175, 813

Use MIDI to Tap Tempo option 175

Use Separate Play and Stop Keys option 145

Use Subframes option 1859

User Default setting 1535

User Offset (+/–) field 1503

User Time Stamp 1228, 1862

user-defined clips 443, 447, 854

UWA Audio Vivid 1801

V

variable speed override 1843

VCA automation

- clutch member track 1635
- member track inverse automation 1635

VCA Masters

- assigning groups 1456
- channel strips 306
- clearing 1635

controls 1455
deleting 1636
displaying automation 1634
mixing 1454
track controls 314
track type 301, 1454
velocities (MIDI)
drawing with Pencil 1038
editing 1037, 1419
fading 1420
Real-Time Properties 1067
scaling 1038, 1420
Velocity Trim tool 1039
Velocity View 1037
VENUE 195
VENUE Link 54, 195
version conflicts 242
Version List 240
Vertical Position setting 188
Video
Dropped Frames indicator 1929
video
Bounce to Mov 1956
color space 1936
export 1956
importing 1938
Pillarbox/Letterbox option 1947
playback 1976
Stretch option 1947
timecode overlay 1953
Video Clip Groups 1946

video clips 1942
importing audio from 1942
Video Engine option 118
video engine rate 1937
Video File Rate indicator 1937
video files 11
Video Files folder 222
Video Format setting 1979
Video Hardware Control Panel 1952
Video Import Options dialog 1940
Video Media options 677
Video Online button 1928-1929
Video Pull Up and Pull Down 1849
Video Reference Source setting 1843
Video Satellite 1972
avoiding sync issues 1979
connecting 1978
Media Composer 194, 1976
quitting Pro Tools 1978
settings 1979
troubleshooting satellite connections 1978
video satellite offset 1975
video stutter 1977
Video Sync Offset command 1952
video track 1887
video tracks 302, 1926
Color Space 1936
Frame Rate 1932
locking 1937
main video track 1927
Raster Size 1932

scrubbing 1948
settings 1931
shuttling 1948
track controls 319
Video Quality 1935
viewing as blocks 1928
Video Universe window 1949
Video window 1946
Always on Top option 1949
mixed aspect ratios 1947
Video Window command 1947
View Filter (Memory Locations window) 1210
View Filter (MIDI Event List) 1125
View menu 287
Clip Name View option 863
Clip Sync Point View option 1233
Clip Time View options 863
Edit window View options 259, 1460
Mix window View options 258, 1460
Narrow Mix View option 331
Track Number command 336
Transport View options 270, 741, 792, 794
viewing blocks in the video track 1928
views
Delay Compensation 331
I/O View 320
Inserts View 1461
Sends View 1461
Wide Meters View 326
VITC
Generate Lines setting 187

Read Lines setting 187
Read Lines, defaults 187
VITC Insertion Enabled option 187
VocAlign 1382
VocAlign Pro 1382
VocAlign Standard 1382
Voice selector 364
voices 834
and track priority 364
number available with HDX 45
number available with HDX Hybrid Engine 45
Voices meter 132
volume
Performance 497
Transfer 497
Volume automation 1603
Volume fader 322
Volume indicator 321
Volume permissions 500
VSO 1843
sample rate limits with MADI 1844

W

Wait for Note 270, 812
Warp indicator 1356
Warp markers 1351
adding 1351
deleting 1352
relocating (without applying warping) 1352
Warp view 1343, 1350
warped clips (Elastic Audio) 855
warping audio (Elastic Audio) 1352

WASAPI 114
WAV file format 722, 1645
AES31/Broadcast compliant 722
Wave Extensible 651
WAVE Extensible file format 722
WaveCache 530
WaveCache.wfm file 222, 498
Waveform View 855
Waveform View options 855
Outlines 857
Peak 856
Power 856
Rectified 856
waveforms 855
and zero-crossing 858
avoiding clicks and pops 858
guidelines for editing 858
repairing with Pencil tool 901
WaveCache 530
Workspace 530
WaveLab Go 1385
WavEXT 1650
While loading waveforms, display in low resolution option 173
Whole File button (AudioSuite) 1268
whole-file clips 854
Wide Meters View 326
Window Configuration List 283
Window Configurations 278
importing 687
window dub
horizontal position 188

setting color 188
size 188
vertical position 188
Window menu 288
Automation Enable command 1585
Big Counter command 741
Color Palette 386
Disk Space command 779
Edit command 259
Memory Locations command 1202
Mix command 258
System Usage command 133
Task Manager command 659
Transport command 267
Undo History command 866
Workspace command 781
windows
arranging 281
Cascade 282
closing 282
hiding all floating windows 282
Tile 281
Tile Horizontal 281
Tile Vertical 281
Windows Audio Device (WASAPI) 114
Windows HiDPI scaling
Plugin window toggle 1547
Word Clock 125, 1986
workflows 847
Workspace 493
Audio Files Conform to Session Tempo 504

auditioning 532

Automatically Find and Relink 539

Auto-Preview mode 535

browser display options 507

browser menu 504

Calculate Waveform 530

candidates for relinking 540

Catalogs 495, 543-544

Comments 514

Copy and Relink 538

copying database items 515

Create Catalog from Selection 505

database 497

database items 510-511, 513

Delete Index for All Offline Volumes 505

deleting database items 515

Don’t Limit Search Results 505

Elastic Audio analysis 530

Elastic Audio Plug-In selector 534

exclude tags from search 526

Failed Tasks 549

Find Links 541

indexing 503

Keep Window on Top 505

Linking Options 542

links 536

Loop Audition mode 535

Manually Find and Relink 538

Missing files 536, 538

moving database items 515

navigating 499

Open in New Workspace 505

Paused Tasks 548

Performance Volume 497

preferences 549

previewing 532-533, 535

Quick Search 516

Regenerate Missing Rendered Files 539

Relink window 495, 539

relinking 536

Reveal in Finder/Explorer 505

Right-click menu 505

saving a search as a Catalog 522

searching 516

searching with tags 525

session 494

Show Offline Volumes 505

Skip All 538

sorting columns 509

Sound Libraries 494

Spacebar Toggles File Preview 504

Spot To Edit Insertion 506

suitable volumes (see Transfer files) 537

Task Manager window 495

Tasks 548

Track Presets 495

Transcribe 1315, 1333

Transfer files 536-537

Transfer Volume 497

volume permissions 500

Volumes 494

WaveCache 498

waveform display 530
Workspace browsers 273, 493, 496, 781
Track Presets 413
Workspace.wksp file 498
Write 1628
Write Automation commands 1627-1628
Write automation mode 1573
Write Automation To commands 1631
Write Automation to Next Breakpoint command 1619
Write Automation to Next Breakpoint on Stop command 1621
Write Automation to Selection/Selection Start/Selection End buttons 1616
Write MIDI Real-Time Properties command 1069
Write Trim automation mode 1577
writing
automation 1585
automation on stop 1618
automation to next breakpoint 1618
automation to selection, selection start or end 1616
snapshot automation 1627

X

XML (MIDI patch names) 1053
X–OR (Cancels Previous Solos) Solo Latch option 372

Z

zero-crossing 858
Zoom buttons 877
Zoom Presets 882
Zoom Toggle 882
Zoom Toggle preferences 153, 883
Zoomer tool 876-877, 879
zooming 877
a track area 880, 1100

around a track point 879, 1100
continuously 877
horizontally for all tracks 877
in the ruler 881
in the Tempo Editor 1159
on a selection 879
out to the entire session 879
recalling zoom levels 882
return to the previous zoom level 879
storing zoom levels 882
to make all clips visible 879
vertically 878
with a scroll wheel 886
Zoom Toggle 882
zplane élastique 1349



For technical support go to
www.avid.com/support